PVRCHAS

PILGRIMES.

FN FIVE BOOKES.

The first, Containing Peregrinations and Discoueries, in the remotest North and East parts of ASIA; called TAR-

The second, Peregrinations, Voyages, Discourries, of CHINA, TARIA, RVSSIA, and other the North and East parts of the World, by English-men and others.

The third, Voyages and Discoueries of the North parts of the World, by Land and Sea, in A st A, E v R O P E, the Polare Regions, and in the North-west of MERICA.

The fourth, English Northerne Nauigations, and Discoueries:

Relations of Greenland, Greenland, the North-west passage,
and other Archice Regions, with later RVSSIAN

OCCURRENTS.

The fifth, Voyages and Trauels to and in the New World, called America: Relations of their Pagan Antiquities and of the Regions and Plantations in the North and South parts thereof, and of the Seas and Iland advector.

The Third Part.

Unus Deus, Una Veritas.



LONDON

Printed by William Stansby for Henrie Fetherstone, and are to be sold at his shop in Pauls Church-yard at the signe of the Rose.



4 4 2 2

HONORABLEAND RIGHT REVEREND

> FATHER IN GOD:

Lord Bishop of LINCOLNE, Lord Keeper of the GREAT SEALE of

ENGLAND, &c.

Right Reverend and Honourable:



Hefe PILGRIMS deliuering a Historic of the World in their owne Trauels by Sea and Land, not onely needed authoritie from the Admiraltie, but fearing suspition of Rict without warrantable assemblie, become humble Sutors for your Lordships fauour. So shall they in the approbation of both (to apply by a warrant of Ego dixi, dy eftis, the Patriarchs mysticall Dreame to our Historicall purpose) Gen. 28.12.

finde a Scala Cali to alcend from the ground where they are proftrate Petitioners, to the Princes Highnesse, whence authorised they may againe descend and become the Commons of Common Readers. Order requires a Medium betwixt Princely Height and his Lowlinesse, whose function is also tearmed Holy Orders, as further tying him to that equall inequalitie; wherein hee beseecheth your Lordship as by speciall Office and in Proprietie to owne that which hee hath presumed to offer to the Prince in Capite, Quemadmodum sub opiimo rege omnia. Rex imperio possidet , Domini dominio. Ad reges potestas

Sence Benefity. pertinet , ad fingulos proprietas. Many are the reasons which moued the Author to obtrude his PI L-GRIMS on your Lordship; because he is deeply obliged Yours for former fauours, euen then when you were initiated in the Mysteries of Honour (learning by feruice to Command) in the Discipline of that Honorable Worthy, Lord Chancellor E G E R TON! because some conceptions of this Worke were in your Honourable Iurisdiction of Westminster, whither lest some traduce Trauellers for Vagrants, they returne in hope of Santtuarie, not so much trusting to the ancient Liberties. as to your Lordships liberall respect to literate endeauours : because these Trauellers adventuring the world, seeke like Iacob at his going

and returne, a Reuerend Fathers Blessing and Confirmation. The Author likewise being called on for his promised Europe, submits himfelfe to your Lordlhips Order, heere tendring of that debt, what hee is able, in readie payment. The worke it felfe also being a Librarie in this kind, presents it selfe to your Honour, the Founder of two famous Libraries, one in Westminster, (where the Stones & renued Fabrikes speake your Magnificence) the other in that famous Nurserie of Arts and Vertue Saint I OHN'S Colledge in Cambridge, which sometime knew you a hopefull Sonne, but now acknowledgeth your Lord(hip a happie Father, where also the Author first conceived with this Travelling Geniw, whereof (without trauelling) he hath trauelled euer fince. Learning. the Aduancer of your Honour, hath fecured her welwillers not to bee rejected in whatfoeuer indeauours (Scribimus indocti, doctiq.) to aduance Learning. The greatnesse of Nature to goodnesse of Nature, varietie of Estates to a prime Pillar of State, the Historie of Religions to a Religious Prelate, of Antiquities to an Antiquarie, cannot bee altogether

vnwelcome : that I mention not the dependance of London Ministers Liuings (fined by the Times iniquitie) on your Lordships equal Sentence. These Causes have moved; One hath inforced; these PIL-GRIMES are your Servants, fitly to called à Servando, faued by your Aug. & C.D. & Lordships hand when they were giving up the ghost, despairing through a fatall stroke of euer seeing light.

Most humbly therefore, sue vnto your Honour, these PILGRIMES for acknowledgement, efteeming your Lordships Name in fore-front a cognilance of bleft Libertie and best Seruice; Now when Janus sends many with gratefull emulations to present their acclamations of a New Yeere, presenting (a wordie rather then worthy Present) a World, yea, a New world, ingreat part one Age younger to mens knowledge then America, fometimes stilled by that Name. I had written other Causes of my addresse to your Honour, but dare not proceed to interrupt Others more weightie. In all humble earnestnesse beseecheth, now in this Festivall time, the Author with his PILGRIMES to finde HospiDEDICATORIE.

tall entertainment, not at your Honours table, where Great affaires of Church and State are feasted (except some recreation some times permit) but with Schollers and Gentlemen in the Hall, which will welcome fuch Guests as your Lordship shall Countenance. So thall you encourage euer to pray for the increase of your Lordships happinesse

Happie Seruice of his MAIESTIE.

Your Lordihips

most bounden.

SAMVEL PVRCHAS





THE CONTENTS OF THE CHAPTERS AND PARAGRAPHS

IN THE SECOND BOOKE OF THE SECOND

PART OF PURCHAS HIS PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I. He Iournall of Friar William de Rubru-quis, a French man, of the Order of the Minorite Friars, unto the East parts of the World, Anno Dom. 1253. H. CHAP. II.

Tartarian and Northerne Relations written in Latin by the fameus Friar Roger Bacon. H. p. 52 Relations of Vincentius Beluacenfis, the most of which he received from Friar Simon de San-&o Quintino, one of the foure Friars fent by Pope Innocent the fourth to the Tartars : feruing to the illustration of the former.

ĆHAP. III. Relations touching the Tartars, taken out of the Historie of R. Wendouer, and Mat. Paris : with certaine Epiftles of the same subiect. CHAR. IIII.

The first booke of Marcus Paulus Venerus, or of Master Marco Polo, a Gentleman of Venice, bis Voyages.

d. I. The verages of Master Nicolo and M. Maffio, from Constantinople to the Great Can, and their comming home to Venice: their fecond verage with the Authour and re-

d. 2. Observations of M. Polo, of Armenia, Turkie, Zorzania, Baldach, Persia, Chirmain, Cobniam, Ormus, Knaue-fooles paradife, and other Easterne parts in Asia , and Armenia the

chan, Carchan, Peym, the dreadfull Defart of b. 10 Of the firme Land of the Greater Inpag.73. | dia. Lop and Tanguth.

d. 4. of Carchoran, the originall, proceedings and exploits of the Tartars; of Prieft Iohn and his discendants. Customes of the Tartars. Of Bargu, Erginul, Xandu, the Cans Citie and Palace; of Muske : of Strange Sorcerers, and anstere Monkes.

d. s. of Cublai Can, his Raigne and Atts. Magnificent feafts and huntings, Court and Counfell. His Citic Cambalu and glorious Pa-

d. 6. The Cans provisions for Embassadours and for Posts , against Dearth ; for High-waves : for the Poore in Cambalu, for Aftrologers ; Tartars Wine, Fuell, Religion, Opinions, Behauiour, Court-neatneffe: Polos proceeding from Cambalu westward. Of Pulisangan, Gouza, Tainfu. Pianfu, Thaigin, Cacianfu, Quenzaufu, Sindinfu, Thebeth, Caindu, Caraian, Carachan, Cardandan and Vociam.

d. 7. Of the Province of Mien and Bengala, how they were conquered to the Can: of Cangigu, Amu, Tholoman, Cintigui, and some other parts of Cataio. And of the Conquest of Man-

Q. 8. Of the Cities of Manei (now ralled China) and the rarities thereof : the many wonders of Ouinfai, the Palaces, Pleasures, Rites and Gouernment, observed by the Natines, and the Tar-

D. 9. The Ships of India described, the He of Zipangu, the Sea Chin, and World of Ilands, the d. 3. Of Sapurgan, Balac, Thaican, Scaffem, swal aluas, Zcilan, and other llands, with the ra-Balaxiam, Bafcia, Chefmur, Vochan, Samar-rities therein.

pag. 104 CHAP

Ca + 2. V.

The Historie of Ayton , or Anthonic the Ar- turne to Cataio. menian, of Alia, and Bectally touching the Tartarn. H.P.

of the Tarrars : and of Cangius, or Cingis his his fact- bole. otosimings.

conquels. Of Hoccorn and his three somes expe- : za, and description thereof. Bu disposition of in: designed of Gino Cares of Mangu Can, who estate and design was viffeed by the Ring of Armenia, and baorefed; of the expedition of his brother Ha-

3. 3. Of Cobila Can the fft Emperourafihe Tarrat ann Of the warre with Barcha, and Tartarian ourself with the Christians, Haciaons death. Allts of the Solgan of Egypt. Of Abaya and other Commer and Succe Cours of Haloon, D. 117.

4. a. of Argon the some of Abaga, and Re-22:00 ha brother; of Baido, and of the explosis tugall; here abbreasated. H.P. of Cafan execut the Soldan of Beyot, and a- i

4. Cafan dreth, Carbanda facceedeth; bes neighbouring Regions. Apolage. The Anthors entrance into a Religious habit. Of Tamor Can the fixt Emperour, and of Chapar, Hochrai, and Carbanda, three other hubandrie of China; their contemps of the idle. Tartarian Kings. D22.12 (.

CHAP. VI.

aile. CHAP. VII.

The Voyage of Nicolo di Conti a Venetian, se the Indies, Mangi, Cambalu and Quinfai, with some observations of those places.

CHAP. VIII.

into French by Ican du Bec, Abbat of Morti-

3. 1. Tamerlans birth and person, bu expedition against the Muscouite; bu marriage with the Cans danghter; bis over-throwing of Ca-

dition into China, entring the Wall, conquering 112.

the King, and ai poling of the Countres, and re-

3 2. The aiff rence; between Tamerian and page 108. Bajazet see Turke, his resume to Samercand. of the King dome of Cathay, and divers and Expedition against Baiazet; the battell and other Produces of Alia, and of the first baberation cuctorie his Caping of Baiazet, and making him

1. 1 Encrease of Samarcand : Afaires of 4. 2. Of Changing Can his second vision and China: Faneral: of the Can; comming to Onin-

> Reports of Chaggi Memet & Penlan of Ta-239.112. bas in the Pronince of Chalan , tauchmorbis tranels and polernations in the Countres of the Great Can. vma M. G. Baptilla Ramufic. cag: 54. C # 42. %

> A Treatife of China, and the advenue 30rions, princen de Galbar da Cruz a Dominican Frian, and dedicated to Sebalitan King of Por-Of Camboia and the Bramenes there; the paget 23. cante of his going to China : Of China and the

> > 5. 2. Cantan described; the publike and prisate buildings and government. The hipping and and provision for impotent poore.

4. 2. Of their mechanical Trades, Merchan-Tranels and Memorials of Sir John Mande- difes and Moneyes : sheer promisions of flesh and pag. 128. filb; the Perfons and attree of Memand Women :

2. s. Of their Louthies . Mandermes or Magifrates, their creation printledges, maintenance; pag-158. of Prifons and Tortures; of the King and of EmbaTadours.

5. 4. Of the Portugall commerce with the Extracts of Albacen bu Arabike Historic of Chinois; of the senere Infine executed upon Tamerian touching bis Martial travels , done certaine Magistrates, for wrongs done to the Por-

> 4. 6. Of the Religion in China; difficultie of bringing in Christianitie. Terrible Earth-anakes and Tempelts in China. pag.1,5.

CHAP. XI. The relation of Galcotto Perera, a Gentleman 2. Cataio, Cambalu; Tamerlans Expe. men of good credit, that lay prisoner in Chi-

The

The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the second Booke of the Second part of Purchas his PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I. He beginning of English Discourries towards the North, and North-east, by Sir Hugh Willoughby, Richard Chancellor, and others; of the Mulcouie Trade, as also Voyages by Ruffia, ouer the Caspian Sea, and sence and appeale to Pequin; rarities observed thorow diners Regions of Tartaria.

6. I. The first voyage for discouerie with three the China Kingdome , and of their admirable Thips (et forth under the charge of Sir Hugh Willoughby, Knight, in which he dyed; and Muscopia was discouered by Captaine Chancellor. ibid.

Some additions for better knowledge of this Voyage, taken by Clement Adams, Schoole-mafter to the Queenes Henshmen, from the mouth of Captaine Chancellor.

The Copie of the Duke of Moscouie and Emperour of Ruffia his Letters, fent to King Edward Hispitals and provisions for the Poore. The Kings the Sixth, by the hands of Richard Chancel-

D. 2. The first voyage made by Master Anthonie lenkinson, from the Citie of London, toward the Land of Russia, begun the twelfih of May, DAG.232. in the yeere 1557.

Q. 3. Notes taken out of another mans Relation of the same voyage, touching the Ruffian

4. The voyage of Master Anthony Ienkinfon, made from the Citie of Mosco in Ruffia, to the Citie of Boghar in Bactria, in the geere 1558. written by himselfe to the Merchants of London, of the Moscouie Companie.

\$. 5. Advertisements and reports of the fixt voyage into the parts of Persia and Media, gathered out of fundrie Letters written by Chri-Ropher Borough; and more especially a voyage ouer the Caspian Sea, and their Shipwracke and miseries there endured by the Ice. pag.243.

A Letter of Master Henrie Lane, to the worlhipful Mafter William Sanderson, contayning a briefe discourse of that which puffed in the North-east discouerie, for the space of three and sbirtie yeeres.

CHAP. II. Observations of China, Tartaria, and other Easterne parts of the World, taken out of Fernam Mendez Pinto his Peregrination.

Q. 1. Mendez his many miserable aduentures, bis ftrange Expedition with Antonio de Faria; diners Coasts visited, Pirats tamed, miferies saf- The Answere of Don Pedro de Acunna, Gofered, glorie recouered.

2. 2. Antonio Faria his taking of Nouda a cheo in China.

Citie in China, triumpin at Liampoo; strange voyage to Calempluy, miferable lipporrack. p. 258 0. 3. Their Shipwrack in which Faria and most of them were drowned; the miserable wandrings of the rest to Nanquin : their imprisonment, lenin those places and wayes; of the beginnings of

d. 4. Mindo Salt pits : Mines of Coretumbaga, Copper-workes ; Idolatrie and Christianities China Trades, and River Faires , their comming to Pequin, trial and fentence. Rarities of Pe-

D. S. Foure buildings incredibly admirable in Pequin, and divers of their Superstitions: their renenues and Court; their Sects.

0. 6. Their remoone to Quansie, quarrels, miferies ; Tartarian buge Armie , and loffe at the fiege of Pequim , reported. Quantie taken, and Nixianco : Mendez his explois. Their entertainment by the Tartar King , and going to Cauchinchina with his Emballadours , with many Tartarian obsernations. CHAP. III.

Spanish plantation of the Philippinas , and what entercourse hath thence hapned betwixe them and the Chinois. Q. I. Firft disconcrie of the Philippinas:writ-

ten by Friar Juan Gonzales de Mendoza. ibid. 4. 2. First plantation of the Philippinas , by Michael Lopez de Legaspi. d. 3. of Limahon a China Robber and Roner, by whose occasion the Spaniards fent into

D. 4. Friar Martin de Herrada , and other Spaniards entertainment in China, and their returne to the Philippinas.

Two Letters taken out of Barrolome Leonardo de Argensola bis Treatise, called Conquista delas islas Mahicas , printed at Madrid, 1609. pag. 336, 337. mentioning the comming of two English fhips to China : which feeme to be two This of the fleet of Beniamin Wood : The former written by the Visitor of Chincheo in China, vnto the Gouernour of the Philippinas, Don Pedro de Acunna. H. P.

pag:252. | wernour of the Philippinas, to the Vifitor of Chinpag.310. CHAP

The report of a Mahometan Merchant, which had beene in Cambalu : and the troublesome trauell of Benedictus Goes, a Portugali Iesuite, from Lahor to China by land, thorow the Tartars Countries. pag. 310.

CHAP. V. A generall collection and historicall representation of the lesuites entrance into lapon and China, untill their admission in the Royall Citie

of Nanquin.

d. 1. of Francis Xauier, Melchior Nunnes, Valignanus, Ruggerius and Palius.

Q. 2. Iaponian Embassage to the Pope : Of Nabunanga and Quabacondono their government : Corai inuaded , Embaffage from China, Taicosamas Temple, and Ogoshosamas succes-

d. 3. Ruggerius enters againe into China with Ricius, and is forced backe to Amacao; thence fent for againe by the Vice-roy. Sande and Almeida are fent to them, and enter the Countrey as farre as Cequion, and returne to Sciauchin.

d. 4. Falle brethren and others accusations detected, they are expelled Sciauchin : erect a Seat at Xauceum. Monasterie of Nanhoa and other things of note in those parts. They alter their habit ; Voyage to Nanquin ; the Lake, Riners, I lols and other rarities.

d. 5. Nanquin described; Ricius expelled thence, be letleth at Nancian, thence goeth to Nanquin againe, and to Pequin ; description of it, the way thisher, the Kings Palace, and of Sucen, and Hamcen.

d. 6. Letters from Tather Longobard and Taifo, Ricius his enter ... inment at Nanquin and residence there. The Chinois unlearned lear-

CHAP. VI. A Letter of Father Diego de Pantoia, one of the Companie of IEsvs, to Father Luys de Guzman . Prouinciall in the Prouince of Toledo : written in Paquin, which is the Court of the King of China, the ninth of March, the yeere 1602. H.P.

Q. I. Difficulties of entring China, their dwelling at Nanquin, going from thence to Paquin, with Prefents for the King, troubles in the way by an Eunuch.

Q. 2. The King fends for them , is delighted of. with their Clocks and Pictures; they are fout up, after take a House, are admired for learning; Christianitie of China. pag. 356.

0. 2. The description of the Kingdome of China; of Catay and Musk; the dinision into Pto-

uinces: Citses and Townes described. River. Shipping, Commodities, Diet, and feeding. pag. 260.

Q. 4. Their moneyes, apparell, persons, trades. wealth, learning, marriages, superstitions, rites, and opinions.

Q. S. Their bad Souldierie and Artillerie Degrees priviledges bonours and promotions of learning, Their Authors and Bookes, and Printing. The Mandarins commended.

d. 6. Of the government of China: Of the Mandarins : the China complements and manifold nicities.

Q. 7. Of their Women : Of the Tartars Conquest, acts and expulsion. The greatnesse of the King, and neighbouring States. Of the Queenes pag.375.

CHAP. VII. A discourse of the Kingdome of China, taken out of Ricius and Tripautius, contaming the countrey, people, government, religion, rites, lects. characters, fludies, arts, acts; and a Map of China added, drawne out of one there made with Annotations for the understanding thereof. pag. 380. D. 1. Of the name, Scite, and greatnesse: the

Tributaries, commoditie, arts , printing , feales, inke, pencill-pennes and fannes. 0. 2. Of their Characters and writing downeward : their studies, Ethikes, Astrologie, Physike. authentike Authors , Degrees how taken both Phi-

lo(opbicall and Militarie. D. a. Of the Tartarian conquest : Of Humuu the Establisher of the present government. The Reuenues. Magistrates in the Courts Royall. Prouinces, Cities, Orders, Exaltations, Visitations,

Deprinations.

O. 4. Their manifold rites in Salutations, Entertainments, and other civilitie : to the King and Magistrates: Of Burials and Marriages, Birthdayes; their Men, Women, Names and Games, Habites.

d. s. Of their Superflitions, Cruelties, feares of Magistrates, of the Kings kindred, of Strangers and Souldiers. Their Deities and three Sects: Priefts, Nunnes, Monasteries, Legends,

Q. 6. Of firangers, and forraine Religions in

Q. 7. The Map of China, taken out of a China Map , prinsed with China Characters : illufirated with Notes, for the understanding there-

CHAP. VIII. A continuation of the lefuites Ads and observations in China till Ricius his death and some yeers after. Of Hanceu or Quinlay. An Extract of Monfarts tranell.

The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the third Booke of the first part of Purchas his PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I. Treatife of Russia and the adjourning Regions , written by Doller Giles Fletcher, Lard Ambaffadour from the late Queene, Euer-glorious Elizabeth, to Theodore then Emperour of Ruffia, A. D. 1588.

A briefe discouerte of the Northerne disconeries of Seat, Coasts, and Countries, delinered in order as they were hopefully begun, and have ever fince happily beene continued by the fingular indufire and charge of the Worshipfull Societie of Mulcouia Merchants of London, with the ten fenerall Voyages of Captaine Thomas Edge the Aushour.

d. I. Greenland first discourred by Sir Hugh Willoughby: the Voyages of Frobifher, Pet, and lackman . Dauis . the Dutch ; First Morfe and Whale-killing, with further discoueries.

Q. 2. Dutch, Spanish , Danish difturbance; alfo by Hull men, and by a new Patent , with the Succeeding Successe and further disconcries till this

pag.466.
3. The description of the several sorts of Whales, with the manner of killing them : Whereto is added the description of Greenland. p.470. The description of Greenland. CHAP. III.

The first Nauigation of William Barents , 4list Bernards , into the North Seas ; Written by Gerart de Veer.

CHAP. IIII. A briefe declaration of Barents his fecond Nanigation, made in Anno 1595 behind Norway Mulcoma, and Tartaria, written by Gerart de pag.478.

CHAP. V. The third verage Northward to the Kingdoms of Cathaia, and China, in Anno 1596. Written by Gerare de Veer.

Q. I. What happened to them at Sea, before they came to build their Honse. ibid.

D. 2. Their cold, comfortle ffe, darke and dread full winter : the Sunnes absence, Moones light, Sunnes unexpected returne with miraculous speed. Of Beares, Foxes, and many many wonders. p. 492. 1. 3. Their preparation to goe from thence :

they depart in a Boat and Scate both open, and come to Cola, 1143. miles. Their many dangers by Beares, Ice, Famine, Scorbute, in the ra, and his wintering there, with Master William

This was written by William Barentson in a loofe Paper, which was lent mee by the Reverend Peter Plantius in Amfterdam, March the feuen and twentieth, 1609. pag.518. CHAP. VI.

A Treatise of Iuer Boty a Gronlander. translated out of the North language into High Dutch. H.

The Course from Island to Groneland. p. 520. CHAP. VII.

A description of the Countries of Siberia, Samoieda, and Tingoelia. Together with the lourneves leading unto the same Countries toward the East and North-east, as they are daily frequented by the Molcouites.

8. 1. Discource of Siberia, and the subjecting of the fame to the Ruffes.

0. 2. A briefe description of the Wayes and Riuers, leading out of Molcouis toward the East and North-east into Siberia, Samoiedia, and Tingoefia as they are daily frequented by the Ruffes: with further discoueries towards Tartaria and

2. 3. A Note of the travels of the Ruffes ouer Land, and by water from Mezen, neere the Bay of Saint Nicholas to Pechora, to Obi, to Yeniffe, and to the Riner Geta . even wnto the Frontiers of Caraia ; brought into England by Mafter John Mericke, the English Agent for Moscouie, and translated out of the Russe by Richard Finch. H.

CHAP. VIII. A voyage made to Pechora 1611. Written by William Gourdon of Hull, appointed chiefe Pilos, for discouerie to Ob, Oc. H.

CHAP. IX. A Letter of Richard Finch to the Right Wor-Sir Thomas Smith , Governour ; and to the rest of the Worshipfull Companie of English Merchants, trading into Ruffia : touching the former voyage, and other observations. H. pag. 534.

The names of the places that the Rulles Sayle by, from Pechorskoie Zauorot, to Mongozey: with the manner of their travell, and distance betweene each place, or time of Sayling, Halling, and Rowing unto the Same.

CHAP. X. The Vorage of Mafter Iolias Logan to PechoPuriglone, and Marmaduke Wilson. Anno 1611. H.

Extradis taken out of two Letters of Iofias Lo- ket. gan from Pechora, to Master Hakluyt Prebend pag. 546. of Westminster. CHAP. XI.

A briefe relation of a Voyage to Pechora, and mintering there, began in the yeere 1611. Written William Purfeloue, H.

Other ob fernations of the faid William Purf-

The travell from Pechora to Permia, Ougoria, and to the River Ob, and the Townes situated thereupon, ouer Land.

Commedities for Pechora, Siberia, Permia, Ougoria, and among the Tinguffies. pag. 552. Commedities for the Tinguffies.

CHAP. XII.

Later observations of William Gourdon, in bis wintering at Puftozera, in the yeeres 1614. and 1615. with a description of the Samoveds life. H. CHAP. XIII.

Diners Voyages to Cheric Iland, in the geeres 1604, 1605, 1606, 1608, 1609. Written by Io. pag.556. nas Poole. H.

CHAP. XIIII. Diners Votages and Northerne disconcries of that worthy irreconerable Disconerer Master Henrie Hudion. His Discouerie toward the North Pole, fet forth at the charge of certaine Worthipfull Merchants of London, in May 1607. Written partly by John Playle one of the Companie, and partly by H. Hudfon. H. CHAP. XV.

A fecond voyage or employment of Mafter Henrie Hudson, for finding a passage to the East Indies by the North-east : written by himfelfe. H. CHAP. XVI.

The third verage of Mafter Henric Hudson toward Noua Zembla, and at his returne, his passing from Farre Ilands, to New-found-Land. and along to fortie foure degrees and ten minutes, and thence to Cape Cod, and fo to thirtie three degrees; and along the Coaft to the Northward, to fortie two degrees and an halfe, and up the River seere to fartie three degrees. Written by Robert Juet of Lime house. H. pag.581.

CHAP. XVII. An Abltract of the lournall of Mafter Henrie Hudlon, for the disconerie of the North-west paffage, begun the 17. of Aprill, 1610. ended with his thall. end, being treacher only exposed by some of the pag.596. times. Companie. H.

A larger discourse of the same voyage, and pap. 541. the successe thereof, written by Abacuk Pric-

A Note found in the Deske of Thomas Widhouse, Student in the Mathematikes, be beine one of them who was pat into the Shakop. pag. 600.

CHAP. XVIII.

The discoveries of M. M. Nicolo, and Antonio Zeni, gathered out of their Letters by Francisco Marcolino: whereso is added Quirino bis (bipporacke. H.P.

The fhipwracke of Mafter Piero Quirino, de-(cribed by Christophoro Fiorauanti, and Nicolo di Michiel, who were present there : here contracted. H. P. pag. 611.

CHAP. XIX.

Ancient commerce betwixt England and Norway, and other Northerne Regions.

CHAP. XX.

A briefe Memoriall of the great travels by Sea and Land, of Mafter George Barkley . Merchant of London, in Europe, Afia, Africa, and America, and their Ilands. D42.625.

CHAP. XXI.

Collections out of Martin Bromouius de Riezerfedea (ent Ambasladour from Stephen King of Poland, to the Crim Tartar : Contagning & description of Tartaria , or Chersonesus Taurica, and the Regions Subjett to the Percop or Crim Tartars, with their Caffornes prinate and publike in peace and warre.

CHAP. XXII. Dithmar Blef kens bis Voyages, and History of Island 454 Groenland. Dag. 643. of the Islanders Religion. The Life and Manners of the Islanders: ibid. Of the wonderfull flanding Pooles Lakes and Founeines in Illand.

Of the wonderfull Mountaines in Island.pag.648. Of the Riches of the Manders. pag.649. Of the Indeement of the Islanders. pag.650. of Groneland. .pag.651.

CHAP. XXIII.

Extracts of Arngrim lonas, an Islander, bis Chrymogza a History of Island : published Anno Dom. 1609. H.P. 8. 1. Of Island, the Situation, Difconerie, Plan-

tation and Language. D. 2. A discourse of the first Inhabitants of the Northerne World, Supposed to be Giants expelled from Canaan. Of the Islanders Houfes, Fewell, Vi-

Q. 3. Of their Politie , and Religion in old

The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the fourth Booke of the Second part of Parchas his PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I. Voyage fet forth by the Right Worthipfull Sir Thomas Smith, and the rest of the Musco-Duic Company, to Cherry Iland: and for a further Discouerie to bee made towards the North-Pole, for the likelihood of a Trade or a passage that way, in a Ship called the Amitic, of burthen feuentie tunnes; in the which I Ionas Poole was Mafter, hau-

having foureteene Men and one Boy : Anno Dom. A briefe note what Beafts, Fowles, and Fishes were

seene in this land.

CHAP. II. A Commission for Ionas Poole our Seruant, appointed Mafter of a [mall Barke called the Elizabeth. of fiftie tunnes burthen, for Discouery to the Northward of Greeneland, given the last day of May, 1610. H.P.

CHAP. III. Abriefe Declaration of this my Voyage of Discouery to Greeneland, and towards the Welt of it, as followeth : being fet forth by the right Worthipfull Sir Thomas Smith, Gonernour of the right Worlhipfull Company of new Trades, &c. written by Ionas Poole, H. CHAP. IIII.

A Relation written by Ionas Poole of a Voyage to Greeneland, in the yeere 1612: with two Shippes, the one called the VV hale, the other the Scahorse, fet out by the right Worshipfull the Muscouie Merchants.H.

CHAP. V. A lournall of the Voyage made to Greeneland with fixe English Shippes and a Pinnelle, in the yeere 1613. written by Mafter William Baffin. H.P. CHAP. VI.

A Vojege of Difconery to Greeneland, &c. An. 1614. written by Ro. Potherbye. H.P. pig.720. CHAP. VII.

A true report of a Votare, Anno 1615 for Difcowerie of Seas, Lands, and Hands, to the Worthwards; as it was performed by Robert Potherbie, in a Pinnaffe of twenty tunnes called the Richard of London H.P.

A Letter of Robert Fotherby to Captain Edge written in Croffe-rode, Inly 15.1615. pag 331. CHAP. VIII.

Divers other Voyages to Greenland, with Letters of thole which were there employed, communicated to me by Master William Heley, in the yeere 1617. angell, to Sr Thomas Smith, then Lord Embas-

1618.1619. 1620. 1621. 1623. A Letter of Master Robert Salmon'so Mafter Sherwin. In Sir Thomas Smiths Bay, the 24. of lune 1618. A Letter of Mufter Th. Sherwin : Bell found

this 20. of lune, 1618. A Letter of James Beuersham to Master Helev. From Faire-bauen, the 12. of July, 16ts. ibid. A Letter of John Chambers to W. Fleley, Bel-

found, Jane 16. 1619. A Letter of I. Catcher to Mafter Heley from

Faire-hauen. Laus Deo, this fewenteenth of Pane, A Letter of Robert Salmon from Sir Thomas

Smiths Bay, July 6. 1621. Laus Deo in Faire-Hauen,the foure and twentieth of lune, 1623. Mafter Catchers Letter : the wine and twenti-

eth of lune 1622. Captaine VVilliam Goodlards Letter EBcl-

found this eight of July, 1623. CHAP. IX.

The late changes and manifold alterations in Ruffia fince Iuan Vafilowich to this prefent, gathered out of many Letters and Obsernations of Engfish Endbassadours and other Travellers in those

d. 1. of thereigne of Iuan, Pheodore his foune,

The most folemne and magnificent corpnation of Pheodor Juanowich, Emperour of Ruffia, Or.the tenth of lune, in the yeere 1,84. feene and obfermed by Master Ierom Horsey Gentleman and feruant to ber Masellie.

2. Occurrents of principal Note while happened in Ruffia, in the sime while the Honorable Sir Thomas Smith remained there Embaffalour from bis Maieflie.

3. 3. One pretending bim Pife to be Demetrius, with the Popes and Poles belpes attaineth the Reaffian Empire bu Arts, Alts Mariage, fauour to the Englith, and mifrable and. The Copie of a Letter fent franche Emperor De-

metry Euanowich, otherwife called Griffico O-

The Copie of the translation of a Commission that was fent from the Mosko, from the Emperour Demetry Euanowich, alias Gryfhea Otreapyoue by a Courtier named Gauaryla Samoylowich Salmanoue, who was fent downe to the Castle of Arch-

The Copie of the Translation of a new Priviledge that was given to the Company, by the Emperour Demerry Enanowich, otherwise called Gryshca Otreapyoue, the which Priviledge was Cent into England over-land by Olyuer Lvilet Merchant.

and (cruant to the forefaid Company. The Copie of the translation of a Contract, made by the Emperour Demetry Euanowich otherwife called Gryscha Otreapyoue, and the daughter of the Palatine Sendamersko, chiefe Generall of Poland.

D. A. The Copie of the Translation of a Letter fent from the new Emperour Vaffily Euanowich Shoskey to the Kines Majelly by Malter John Mericke. pag.764.

Captaine Margarets Letter to Master Mericke from Hamborough, Ian.29. 1612. pag. 780. d. 5. Of the miserable estate of Russia after Swiskeys deportation, their election of the King of Polands Sonne, their Interregnum and popular estate, and choosing at last of the present Emperour, with some remarkeable accidents in his time.H.P.

me.H.P. pag.782. Pacta inter Primarium Ducem Exercituum Regni Polonia, & inter Heroes Mofconia. p. 783. CHAP. X.

A briefe Copie of the points of the Contracts betweene the Emperours Maiestie and the Kings Maieftie of Sweden : in Stolbona the feuen and twentieth of February, 1616.

CHAP. XI. A Relation of two Russe Cossacks tranailes, out of Siberia to Catay, and other Countries adionning thereunto. Alfo a Copie of the last Patent from the Mulcouite. A Copie of a Letter written to the Emperour from his Gouernours out of Sibe-

The Copie of the Altine Chars, or tolden Kings Letter to the Emperour of Ruffia.

A Description of the Empires of Catay and Labin, and other Dominions aswell inhabited as places of Pasture called Viulles and Hords, and of the great River Ob, and other Rivers and Land paffages.

CHAP. XII. Notes concerning the discourry of the River of Ob, taken out of a Roll , written in the Ruffian | yeere of our Lord 1616. tongue, which was attempted by the meanes of Antonie Marsh, a chiefe Factor for the Moscouie North-east. H.

Thereport of Master Francis Cherry & Mos. | fer Brigges. H.P.

Carrier San

pag.759. | couic Merchant, and Master Thomas Lyndes touching a warme Sea to the South-east of the River Ob, and a Note of Francis Gaulle. H.P. p. 806. CHAP. XIII.

Discoueries made by Englishmen to the Northwelt : Voyages of Sir Sebastian Cabot, Master Thorne, and other Ancients : and Master Weymouth.H.P.

The Voyage of Captaine George Weymouth. intended for the discovery of the North-west Passage toward China, with two flye Boates. pag. 809.

CHAP. XIV. lames Hall-his Voyage forth of Denmarke for the discovery of Greenland, in the veere 1604. abbreusated. H. pag.814.

CHAP. XV. The second Voyage of Master Iames Hall, forth of Denmarke into Greeneland, in the yeere 1606. contracted. H.

CHAP. XVI. The Voyage of Master Iohn Knight (which had beene at Greeneland once before 1605. Captaine of a Pinnasse of the King of Denmarke) for the Discouery of the North-west passage, begunne the eighteenth of Aprill, 1606. H.

CHAP. XVII.

The fourth Voyage of Iames Hall to Groaneland, wherein he was fet forth by English Admenturers, Anno 1612 and flaine by a Greenelander. Written by William Baffin. H.

CHAP. XVIII. A true Relation of (uch things as happened in the fourth Voyage for the Discouerie of the Northwest Passage, performed in the yeere 1615, written by William Baffin, H. P. pag-836.

CHAP. XIX. .

A briefe and true Relation or Iournall, containing such accidents as happened in the fift Voyage, for the discourry of a passage in the North-west. (et forth at the charges of the right Worlhipfull Sir Thomas Smith Knight, Sir Dudly Digges Knight, Mafter Ichn Mostenholme Efquire, Mafter Alderman Iones, with others, in the good fhip called the Discouery of London; Robert Bileth Mafter, and my felfe Pilot , performed in the CHAP. XX

A briefe Discourse of the probability of a pas-Company of England, 1584 with other notes of the | fage to the Westerne or South Sea, illustrated with pag \$04. testimonies: and a briefe Treatife and Map by Mapag.848.

The

The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the Fifth Booke of the second part of Purchas his

PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I. Description of the west Indies, by Antonio de Herrera, bu Maiesties chiefe Chroni-Lacler of the Indies, and his Chronicler of Castile. H. P.

The Presidents, Counsellors, Secretaries, and Attourners, which vose this prefent day have ferned, and doe ferme in the Supreme Councell of the Indies, from their first Disconerie.

The Gouernours and Vice-royes, which have rouerned untill this time, the Kingdomes of New-Spaine pag.917.

CHAP. II. Observations gathered out of the First, Second. Third, and Fourth Bookes of Iolephus Acosta, a learned lefuite, touching the naturall historic of the Heanens, Ayre, Water, and Earth, at the West Indics. Alfo of their Beafts, Fifhes, Fowles, Plants, and other

remarkeableravities of Nature. pag.918. d. 1. Of the fashion and forme of Heanen, at the new-found World, and of the Ayre and Winds. ibid. d. 2. Of the Ocean that insirons the Indies, and | ba.

of the North and South Seas, their ebbing, flowing, Fishes, fishing, Lakes, Rivers, and Springs. pag. 928. d. 3. Of the qualitie of the Land at the In-

dies in generall. Properties of Peru', and of new Spaine, and other parts: Of Vulcanes and Earthanakes.

d. 4. Of Metals in the Indies, and especially of the Gold and Silver, and Quick-filver. pag.941. D. S. Of Emeralds, Pearles, Indian Bread, Trees,

Frusts. Flowers naturall, and carried thither from

D. 6. Of Beafts and Fowles in the In-Of Fowles that are proper to the Indies, and

Venilon. CHAP. III.

Extracts of Gonzalo Ferdinando de Ouiedo his Summarie and the generall Historic of the In-

Of the Mynes of Gold, and the manner of working Of the manner of fishing for Pearles. pag.972.

Of the familiaritie which certains of the Indians base with the Deuill, and bow they receive answere of him of things to come , and other superstiti-

Of divers particular things, as Wormes, Serpents, Beasts, Fowles, Trees, &c.

Of Trees, Fruits, and Plants. pag.981. Of Reedes or Canes. pag. 982.

Of venemous Apples, wherwish they poy (on their

Of Filhes, and of the manner of fishing. p.086. Of the increase and decrease (that is) riling and falling of our Ocean Sea, and South Sea, called the Seaof Sur.

Of the Braight or narrow passage of the Land. lying betweene the North and South Sea, by the which Spices may much fooner and easilier be brought from the Ilands of Molucca into Spaine by the West Ocean, then by that way wherby the Portugals faile into the East India.

How things that are of one kinde, differ in forme and qualitie, according to the nature of the place where they are engendred or grow, and of the beasts salled Tigres.

Of the manners and cultomes of the Indians of the Firme Land, and of their Women. pag. 991. Of the chiefe Hands, Hispaniola and Cu-

CHAP. IIII.

Mexican Antiquities gathered out of the writings of Iosephus Acosta a learned lesaite. pag. 1000. d. 1. Of the ancient Inhabitants of new Spain, and of the fixe Linages of the Nauatlacas. Of the Mexican Exodus, and adventures by the way: the foundation of Mexico, their first King and Tri-

d. 2. Of the second King Vitzilouitli; and of his successours and their Acts vatill the reigne of Motezuma their last King. pag.1009.

\$. 3. Of the election of great Motezuma, the last King of Mexico: his pompe and manner of gouernment, prodigious fore warnings, of his ruine, and the Spanish conquest.

CHAP. V.

Of the ancient Superstitions of the Mexicans and Indians of America, gathered out of the fifth booke of Iosephus Acosta. pag. 1026. CHAP. VI.

Civill Customes and Arts of the Indians taken out of Acostas 6. Booke. pag.1050. CHAP. VII.

The Historie of the Mexican Nation , described in pictures by the Mexican Author explained in the Mexican language; which exposition translated inpag. 975. I to Spanish, and thence into English, together with Mir. 44 .2

d I. The Mexican Chronicle. ibid. 6. 2. The fecond part of this Booke contaming the particular Tributes , which every Towne Subdued payed unto the Lords of Mexi-

3. 3. The third part of this Booke, contagneth the private behaviour in Marriages, education of Children, and Trades : with the Martiall . Ecclesiafficke, and Civill policie of the Mexican peopag. 1102.

CHAP. VIII. Conquest of Mexico and New Spaine, by Hernando Cortes.

CHAP. IX.

Larger Relations of things most remarkeable obferued by the Spaniards at their first comming . Cholallas holies; Popocatepecs albes. Mutezumas multiforme Magnificence and Maieftie. Mexican Citie and Temple, with other Antiquities gathered out of the Third part of the Historie of Francis Lopez de Gomara. pag.1123.

The Hill called Popocatepec. Description of Mexico as it flourished in these pag.1121.

Other Mexican Antiquities, Letters, Numbers. Teeres, Dayes, Weekes, &c. Pag. 1135.

Their reckoning by numbers.

1 111 5 ter. H.

CHAP. VII. The admirable admentures and france fortunes of Master Anthonie Kniuet, which went with Mafter Thomas Candish in his fecond Voyage to he South Sea, 1591. H.P. pag. 1201. the South Sea. 1591. H. P.

of the fecond Part.

and after, till hee was taken by the Portuibid.

d. 2. Anthonie Krinet his comming to the R. of Innero, and vlage amonest the Portugals, and Indians : bis diners Tranels thorow diners Regions of those parts.

d. 3. His frange trauels with twelue Portugals, whom the Sauages did eate. His life with the Canibals : and after that with the Portugals, from whom hee fleeth to Angola, is brought backe, and after manifold chances, is shipped to Lif-

D. 4. The divers Nations of Sauages in Brafill, and the adjoyning Regions : their diversities of Conditions, States, Rites, Creatures, and other thinges remarkeable which the Author observed in his many yeeres manifold Peregrinations.

The Giants of Port Defire, and Inhabitants of Port Famine : alfo Angola, Congo, and Maffangana, and Angica, Countries of Afripag. 1232.

Q. 5. The description of diners Rivers, Ports, Harbours, Ilands of Brafill : for instruction of Naui-CHAP. VIII.

Relations of Mafter Thomas Turner who lined the best part of two yeeres in Brafill,&c. which I received of him in conference touching his CHAP. IX.

The taking of Saint Vincent and Puerto Bello, by Captaine William Parker of Plimouth, the feuenth of February, 1601. CHAP. X.

Certaine Notes of a Voyage made by David Middleton into the West Indies with Captaine Michael Geare, Ann. Dom. 1601. H. pag. 1242. CHAP. XI.

The Description of the Ile of Trinidad, the rich

owne hand to Sir Triftram Gorges his Execu- Country of Guiana, and the mightie River of pag. 1192. Orenoco, written by Francis Sparrey, left there by Sir Walter Baileigh, 1505, and in the end taken by the Spaniards and fent Prifoner into Spaine. and after long Captinitie got into England by great pag. 1247.

CHAP. XII. Captaine Charles Leigh bu Voyage to Gufana, and plantation there. H. pag 4 250.

> OHAP. XIFI. A. Inda.

A true Relation of the traiterous Maffacre of the most part of threescore and Guen Emplish men Tet on Land out of a Ship of Sir Oliph Leagh, bound for Guiana, in Santa Lucia, an Iland of the West Indic, the three and twentieth of Auguff, written by Iohn Nicol. H. P. pag. 1255.

CHAP. XIIII.

The Relation of Master Iohn Wilson of Wanfreed in Effex, one of the last tenne that veturned into England from Wiapoco in Guiana, 1606. H. CHAP. XV.

Part of a Treatife written by Mafter William Turner, Sonne to Dodler Turner of London a Phylitian touching the former Voyage, H. pag. 1265

CHAP. XVI.

A Relation of a Voyage to Guiana performed by Robert Harcourt of Stanton Harcourts in the Countie of Oxford Elaure. The names of the Rivers falling into the Sea from Amazones, to Dessequebe, and of the fenerall Nations inhabiting those Rivers. pag.1282.

CHAP. XVII.

A Relation of the habitation and other Obseruations of the River of Marwin, and the adjoyning Rivers from Brabiffe to the Amazones. p.1286

CHAP. XVIII.

A Description and Discouerie of the River of Amazons . by William Davies Barber Surgeon of London. pag. 1287.

The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the fixth Booke of the Second part of Purchas his PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I. Briefe Relation of the fenerall Voyages . vndertaken and performed by the Right Honourable, George, Earle of Cumberland, in his owne person, or at his owne charge, and by his direction: collected out of the Relations and Iournals of credible persons Actors therepag.1141.

CHAP. II. The Voyage to Saint Iohn de Porto Rico, by the

Right Honourable, George, Earle of Cumberland, ges. written by himfelfe. H. pag.1150. CHAP. III.

Alarge Relation of Port Ricco Voyage; written as is reported, by that learned man and reverend Dinine Doctor Eglambie, his Lordships Chaplaine and Attendant in that Expedien; very much abbreviated, H.

d. I. The Ships employed in the Voyage and accidents on the Coasts of Spaine, in the Canaries, and the Nauigation thence to Domini-

d. 2. Description of Dominica and the Virgines. Their landing on Port Ricco, March, fights and taking the Towne.

Q. 3. The Fort Mora befreged and taken. The Towne described : the Mines. Purpose to hold the place; altered by the death and sicknesse of mapag. 1162.

A resolution, which they were to trust to.D. 1162. niards. His Lord hips departure. Description of

2. 5. Accidents by Sea in their war to the Azores and there. pag. 1174. CHAP. IIII.

The first Voyages made to divers parts of America by Englishmen, Sir Sebastian Cabot, Sir Thomas Pert : alfo of Sir Iohn Hawkins, and Sir Francis Drake, and many others : colletted briefly out of Master Camden, Master Hakluit, and cther Writers.

A briefe Historie of Sir Francis Drakes Voya-

A briefe recitall or nomination of Sea-fights other Englishmens Voyages related at large in the printed Workes of Master Hakluit. pag.1186. CHAP. V.

The Relation of Peter Carder of Saint Verian in Cornwall, within feuen miles of Falmouth, which went with Sir Francis in his Voyage about the World, begun 1577. who with seven others in an open Pinnasse or Shallop of fine tunnes, with eight O ares, was seperated from his Generall by foule weather in the South Sea, in October, Anno 1578. who returning by the Straites of Magellan toward Brasill, were all cast away, faue this one onely aforenamed, who came into England nine yeeres after miraculously, bauing escaped many strange dan. gers, aswell among divers Sauages as Christi-CHAP. VI.

Master Thomas Candish his Discourse of his 0. 4. Purpose of returne. Treatie with the Spa- fatall and disastrous Voyage towards the South Sea. with bis many disaduentures in the Magellan the Iland, the Beafts, Fruits, Plants, &c. pag. 1168. Straits, and other places; written with his

The

PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I. Treatife of Brafill, written by & Portugall which had lone lived there. H. pag. 1289. d. 1. Of the beginning and originallof the Indians of Brafill, and of their Customes, Relirions, and Ceremonies.

190 1 Th 180

b. 2. Of their manner of killing and eating of Humane flesh : and of their creating Gentle-

0. 3. Of the dinersitie of Nations and Lanquages, and of the Soyle and Climate. pag. 1207. 8. 4. Of the Beafts , Land-ferpents , and Fowles. pag. 1301.

of Land-Inakes and Servents. pag.1303. Of the Fowles that are in the Land, and are thereon fultamed. pag.1304. 00 5. Of the Brafilian Trees for Fruit, Medi-

cine, and other vees; and their Herbes of rare opepag. 1306. Of the Herbes that yeeld Fruit, and are ea-

n. pag.1309. d. 6. Of the Fishes that swimme in the Saltwater : alfo Shel-fifbes, Trees, and Fowles of the Sea : of Rivers and the Creatures which line therein ; and the Beafts and Plants brought thither out of Portugall.

Birds that doe feed, and are found in the Salt-

Fresh-water Snakes (and Creatures of the wa-

Of the Beafts, Trees and Herbes, that came from Portugall, and doe grow and breed in Bra-

CHAP. II. Articles touching the dutie of the Kings Maiefie our Lord, and to the common good of all the effate of Brasill. Written (as is thought) by the Anthor of the former Treatife. H.

CHAP. III.

Extracts out of the Historie of Iohn Lerius a Frenchman, who lined in Brafill with Monsieur Villagagnon, Anno 1557. and 58.H.P. pag. 1325 is againe fet foorth : their fight; the English and Plants of Brafill.

0. 2. Of the Warre, Battailes , Fortitude, and Weapons of the Barbarians : and of their Relidren, Policie, Hofpitalitie, Difeafes, Physicians, Funerals and Lamentations.

CHAP. IIIT. The Travels of Hulderike Schnirdel in twentie yeeres space, from 1534. to 1554. abbreuiased. H. P.

d. 1. His Voyage up the River of Plate, founds tion of Townes, their expedition up the River of Parana and Parabol; the people of thefe

d. 2. Martin Evollas made Generall. Gabreros comming : Scherues Voyage. Nunner his in-Solence. Diners people and accidents descri-

Q. 3. A long and troublefome March from Affumption into Peru. The Authors returne. p. 1362

CHAP. V.

The Observations of Sir Richard Hawkins. Knight, in his Voyage into the South Sea. An. Dom. 1592. once before published, now reviewed and corretted by a written Copie, illustrated with Notes. and in diners places abbreniated.

d. I. What bappened in this Voyage before they came neeve the Equinoctiall Line, with diners accidentall Discourses vefull for Nauigators. pag. 1367

Q. 2. Considerations of Currents : the Scorbute : fire in Ships ; Fishes which attend them : Sea bawking and Hunting : their comming to Brafill and observations thereof.

d. 3. Tharltons treacherie : Discouerie of Land vnknowne : Entrance of the Straits, accidents therein, and description thereof : Diners occalionall discourses for the furtherance of Marine and Naturall knowledge.

d. 4. Entrance into the South Sea ; Discouerie of the South parts of the Straits to bee but Ilands. pag. 1320. by Sir Francis Drake (which the Hollanders fcribe to Maire and Schouten.) Of the Iland Mocha, and the parts adioyning.

0. 5. The Vice-roy fends an Armado against the English ; which vieweth them and returneth : Q. 1. Of the Beafts, and other lining Creatures, | yeeld upon composition : diners Martial discourpag.1398.

CHAP. VI. A briefe Note written by Master Iohn Ellis, one of the Captaines with Sir Richard Hawkins, is Q. 3. Of their Marriages, Education of Chil- his Voyage through the Strait of Magelan, begun the ninth of Aprill, 1592. concerning the faid Srait, and certaine places, on the Coast and Inland of pag.1415.

CHAP. VII. A briefe Relation of an Englishman which had beene thirteene yeeres Captine to the Spaniards in Peru, c. H.

CHAP. VIII. The Relation of Alexandro Vrfino concerning the Coall of Terra Firma, and the fecress of Peru. and Chili, where bee had lined foure and thirtie reeres. H.

CHAP, IX. Notes of the West Indies, gathered out of Pedro Ordonnes de Ceuallos, a Spanish Priest, his larger Observations. pag. 1420.

CHAP. X.

Relation of the new discouerie in the South Sea, made by Pedro Fernandez Giros Portugez, 1600, with his Petitions to the King, one Englished, another in Spanish. D48-1422-

The Copie of a Petition presented to the Kine of Spaine, by Captaine Peter Ferdinand de Quir. souching the discouerie of the fourth part of the World, called Terra Australis Incognita : and of the oreat riches and fertilitie of the fame : Printed with licenfe in Siuill, An. 1610.

Mose of Australia del Espiritu Santo. written by Master Hakluyt. pag.1432.

CHAP. XI.

The Historic of Lopez Vaz a Portugall (taken by Captaine Withrington at the Riner of Plate, Anno 1586. with this discourse about bim) touching American places, discoueries and occurrents ; and sent to his Maiestie.

CHAR. XII.

Briefe extracts translated out of Icrom Benzos three bookes of the New World touching the Spaniards craell handling of the Iudians, and the effects thereof. CHAP. XIII.

Observations of things most remarkable, collested ons of the first part of the Commentaries Royall, evritten by the Inca Garcilaffo de la Vena. Ne. turall of Cozco, in nine bookes ; Of the Orioinall. Lines , Conquells , Lawes and Idolatries of the Incas, or ancient Kings of Peru.

CHAP. XIIII.

The suppliment of the Hiftorie of the Incas. briefly collected out of the Authors fecond part, or Generall Historie of Peru.

CHAP. XV.

Briefe Notes of Francis Pizarro his conquest of Peru, written by a Spanish Captaine therein employed. pag. 1489. CHAP. XVI.

The Conquest of Peru and Cusco, called New Castile, and directed to the Emperour by Francisco de Xeres, Secretarie to Captaine Francis Pizarro which conquered them. pag.1491.

CHAP. XVII.

Relations of occurrents in the Conquest of Peru after Fernand Pizarros departure, written at Xauxa, Iuly 15. 1534. by Pedro Sancho, Notarie Generall in the Kingdoms of New Castile, and Secretarie to the Governour Fr. Pizarro, Subscribed by the faid Gonernour himselfe and others. pag.1494

The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the Eight Booke of the Second part of Purchas his PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I.

True Relation of Aluaro Nunez, called Capo di Vacca, concerning that which bappened to the Fleet in India, whereof Pamphilo Naruacz was Gouernour, from the yeere 1527. Untill the yeere 1536, who returned vato Siuil with three of his Companions onely: Translated out of Ramusio, and abbreniated. H.P. pag.1499.

Q. I. Their Fleet; and admirall and unheard of

troubleforme paffages, incounters, difaftrous fucceffe, building Boates for returne.

d. 2. Mifery pursues them at Sea, and betrages them to the Indians : their milerable Lines and d. 3. Their flight from the Indians to others.

wonderfull cures, backe and belly cares : their trauels therow the Country, and bungry aduentures. Diners peoples and their Customes. d. 4. They come to the South Sea, and tranell

Tempeft : their entrance into Florida : the Lakes, | through a plentifull Countrey, till they meet with Spaniards:

CHAP. II.

Ferdinando de Soto bis Posage to Florida, and Discourie of the Regions in that Continent with the Trauels of the Spaniards soure yeers together therein, and the accidents which befold them written by a Portugall of the Companie, and here contrasted.

Pag. 1532.

§ I. Sotos entrance into Florida, taking of Iohn Ortiz ene of Naruaz his Companie, comming to Paracoffie, and dissers other Caciques, with accidents in the way.

§ 2. Sotos further Discouries in Florida,

and manifold Adventures till bee came to Tulla. pag. 1528. d. 2. His departure to Autiamque, Ortiz bis

O. 3. His aeparture to Authamque, Old 2 su Death and disfers following: Soto takes thought and dyeth. Moscosco fucceedeth. They leave Florida, and arrive at Panuco. pag. 1550. CH AP. III.

Diners expeditions from Mexico, and other parts of New Spaine and New Biskay, effectally to the more Martherly parts of America, by diners Spainards in a hundred reverse face.

pag. 1756.

D. I. The Relation of Nunno di Guiman written to Charles the fift Emperour; translated out of Ramusios third Tome, and abridant bid.

V. 2. The Voyage of Frier Marco de Nica, Don Fr. Vasquez de Coronado, Don Antonio de Espeio, and diuers into New Mexico, and the adiopaing Coasts and Lands. pag. 1560.

6.3. Extracts out of certaine Letters of Father Martin Perez of the Societic of I Exvs, from the new Actiflon of the Promince of Cinoloa, to the Fathers of Mexico, dated in the month of Detember, 1501. With a Letter added, written 1605. of later Differencies. H. pag. 1562.

A Letter written from Valladolid by Ludonicus Tribaldus Tolctus, to Mafter Richard-Hakluy, translated out of Latine, touching luan de Onate his Discouerses in New Mexico, sinehundred leagues to the North from the Old Mexico. H. pag. 1567.

The Prologue of the Bishop Frier Bartholomew de las Casas, or Casaus, to the most high and mightie Prince, Our Lord Don Philip Prince of Spaine.

pag 1568.

CHAP. IIII.

A briefe Narration of the destruction of the Indies by the Spaniards: written by a Frier Bartholmew de las Casas, a Spaniard, and Bishop of Chiapa in America.

of the the of Histonniola.

pag. 1569.

Of the two Iles Saint Iohn, & Iamayca p. 1573 Of the Ile of Cuba. ibid.

of Terra Firma, or the firme Land. pag. 1574
of the Province of Nicaragua. pag. 1576.
of New Spaine: pag. 1577.

of the Province and Realme of Guarima-

of New Spaine, and Panuco, and Xalif-

Of the Realme of Yucatan. pag. 1581.
Of the Province of Carthagene. pag. 1882.
Of the Province of Carthagene.

Of the Coast of Péarles, and of Paria, and of the sle of the Trinitic. ibid. Of the River Yuja pari. pag. 1887.

Of the Reiser Yuia pari. pag. 1587.
Of the Realme of Venefuela. ibid.
Of the Provinces of the firme Land, or quarter that is called Florida.

is called Florida. pag. 1589.

Of the River of La plata. ibid.

Of the mightie Realmes, and large Provinces of

Of the new Realme of Granado. pag. 1591.

Part of a Letter written by one which faw things

The summe of the Disputation betweene Frier Bartholomew de las Casas or Casaus, and Dottor Sepulueda.

CHAR. V.

Notes of Voyages and Plantations of the French in the Northerne America: both in Florida and Canada. pag. 1603.

CHAP. VI.
The Veyage of Samuel Champlaine of Brouage, mise onto Canada, in the scere 1603. edicated to Charles de Montmorencie, &c. High Admirallof France. H. pag. 1605

CHAP. VII.

The Patent of the French King to Monsser de
Monts, for the Inhabiting of the Countries of
La Cadia Canada, and other places in New

The Vegage of Monsieur de Monts into New France, written by Marke Lescarbot. pag. 1620. CHAP. VIII.

Collections out of a French Booke, called Additions to Noua Francia; contagning the Accidents there, from the yeere 1607.10 1611. pag. 1642. C. H. A.P. IX.

The first Plantation of English Colonies in Virginia, briefly mentioned. pag. 1645.

CHAP. X.

The Relation of Captaine Gosnols Foyage to the
North part of Virginia, begun the fix and twentieth
of March, Anno 42. Elizabetha Regina 16:2.
and deliured by Gabriel Archer, a Gentleman in

shefad Vojage. H. pag. 164

Myses of the fame Popuse, Taken our of a Tractate written by lanks Rollies is 50 Walter Raileigh, and of Macco Proper to Winginia. pag. 1651.

Cyar. XII.

A Voyage (et ent from the citie of Brittoll, at the charge of the chiefest New chants and inhabitants of affects and cities with a final ship and a Banke for the Difenery of the North part of Virginia; in the prevented, under the command of mee Mattin Prince. H. pag. 16:44.

A Relation of the vorage made to Virginia, in the Elizabeth of London, Barke of fifte tunnes by happened durin, Captaine Bartholmew Gilbert, in theyever 1603. which are relatively written by Musler Thomas Canner, a Gentleman and Prizes.

pag. 1647. of Barnards Inne, bis Companion in the same Voy.

Extracts of a Virginian Polace made An. 1604.
Extracts of a Virginian Polace made An. 1604.
by Captaine George Waymouth, in the Archangell. Set footh by the Right Honourable Henric Earle of South Hampton, whithe Lord Thomas Artifield, written by James Rollent H.P. pag. 1059.

The description of the Ilands of Azores, or the Flemish Ilands, taken out of Lishcoten, with consider constructs, and Englishedts. pag 1667.
Of certaine notable and minimum hold Accidents that happened during long continuance in Terceta is in which are related many English Flests, Sea-pilits,

The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the Ninth Booke of the Second part of Purchas his

P for the Plantaien of Virginia, Aprillibe tents 1666.

CHAP. II.

Observations gathered varof a Discourse of the
Plantation of the Southerne Colonie in Virginia by
the English, 1606. Written by that Honorable Gensteman Master George Percy. H. pag. 1684.
CHAP. III.

The Description of Virginia by Captaine Iohn
Smith, inlarged only bis written Notes: pag. 1691.
Of such things which are naturall in Virginia,
and how they of them.
Of their planted Fruits in Virginia, and how they

viethem. pag. 1696. a
Of the watural Inhabitants of Virginia, and their
Customes. pag. 1697.

Of their Religion. pag. 1701-Of the manner of the Virginians Gouernment. pag. 1703.

CHAP. IIII.

The proceedings of the English Colonie in Virginia, taken faithfully out of the writings of Thomas Smulley, Cape-Merchant, Anas Todkill, Dotier Russell, Nathaniel Powell, William Phetiplace, and Richard Pot, Richard Wiffin, Tho. Abbay, Tho. Hope; and fine enlarged out of the Writings of Captaine 10th Smith, principal Legent and Patient in these Virginian Occurrents, from the beginning of the Plantation 1606. till Anno 1610. Semblas debreuisted.

The Proceedings and Accidents, with the fectand Jupply- pag. 1719.

A Letter of Master Gabriel Archer, teaching the Voyage of the Fleet of Ships, which arrived at Virginia, without Sir Thomas Gates, and Sir George Summers, 1609. H. pag. 1733.

CHAP. VI.

A true reportorie of the wracke, and redemptition for Thomas Gates, Knight; upon and tom the llands of the Bermudas: the comming to Virginia, and the effect of that Colonic them, and after, under the Government of the Lord La Warre, July 15,1610. written by Will. Strachy. Efg. 34. p. 1734

Q. I. A most dreadfull Tempest (the manifold deaths whereof are beere to the life described) their Wracke on Bermuda, and the description of those llands. . pag. 1734

Q. 2. Actions and Occurrents whiles they contimucal in the llands: Rusens fent for Virginia; Dimers Mutinies; Paine executed: Two Pinnaces built. pag.1742-

Q. 3. Their departure from Bermuda and arriuall in Virginia: Miferies there, departure and returne upon the Lord La Warres arraining. Income Towne described. P22, 1747.

Q. 4. The Lord La Wartes beginnings and proceedings in Iames Towne, Sir Thomas Gates feat into England; his and the Companies testimony of Virginia, and couse of the late miscries. pag. 1754. CHAP. VII.

The Voyage of Captaine Samuell Argal, from

the

CHAP. VIII. A Chort Relation made by the Lord De la Warre. to the Lords and others of the Counfell of Virginia. touching his unexpected returne home, and afterwards delinered to the generall Assembly of the faid Companie, at a Court holden the 24. of June, 1611. Publified by anthority of the (aid Counfell, pag. 1762. CHAP. IX.

A Letter of Sir Samuell Argoll, touching bis Voyage to Virginia, and Actions there : Written to Master Nicholas Hawes. Iune, 1612. H. p. 1764.

CHAP. X. - Notes of Virginian Affaires in the government of Sir Thomas Dale and of Sir Thomas Gates, eill Ann. 1614. taken out of Mafter Ralph Hamor (Secretarie to the Colonie) bis Booke. pag. 1766.

CHAP. XI. A Letter of Sir Thomas Dale, and another of Master Whitakers, from lames Towne in Virginia. lime 18. 1614. And a peece of a Tractate. written by the faid Master Whitakers from Virginia the reere before. pag. 1768.

To the R. and my most esteemed friend, M.D.M. at his house at F.Cb. in London.

Partof a Tractate written at Henrico in Virginia, by M. Alexander Whitaker, Minister to the Colonie there, which then gouerned by Sir Thomas Dale, 1613.

CHAP. XII. of the Lotterie : Sir Thomas Dales returne the Spaniards in Virginia. Of Pocahuntas and Tomocomo : Captaine Yerdley and Captaine Argoll (both fince Knighted) their Government; the Lord La Warres Death, and other occurrents til Anno 1619.

CHAP. XIII. The estate of the Colonie, Anno 1620. and Mafler Dermers Letter to me from Virginia, touching his Voyage for the South Sea.

A Note of the Shipping, Men, and Provisions fent to Virginia, by the Treasurer and Companie, ta the yeere 1610. pag.1776.

CHAP. XIIII. A true Relation of a Sea-fight betweene two great and well appointed Spanish Ships, or Men of Warre; and an English fhip, called the Margaret and Iohn, or the Black Hodge, going for Virginia. pag. 1780

CHAP. XV. Virginian affaires fince the yeere 1620. till this present 1624.

d. I. A Note of the shipping, Men, and provisions muda and miffing the fame, his pattern ouer toward fent and provided for Virginia, by the Right Honon-Sagadahoc and Cape Cod, and fo backe againe to rable Henry Earle of South-hampton, and the Companie, and other private Adventurers, in the peere 1 62.1.6 c. With other Occurrents then publifled by the Companie.

Shins and People And for the benefit of the Photogrations shele things following have beene here done this yeere.ibid. Other Occurrents of mote.

pag.1784. 0. 2. Newes from Virginia in Letters fent thence 1621. partly published by the Company, partly transcribed from the Originals, with Letters of his Maiestie, and of the Companie touching Silkeworkes.

rkes. pag.1787. His Matesties gracious Letter to the Earle of South hampton, Trefurer, and to the Counfell and Companie of Virginia bere : commanding the present letting up of Silke-workes, and planting of Vines in Virginia.

d. 2. The barbarous Massacre committed by the Sauages on the English Planters, March the two and twentieth, 1621, after the English acmpt. pag. 1788.

Planter or personall Aduenturer to Virginia : and accidents lince the Maffacre. CHAP XVI.

English Voyages to the Summer Hands : Henry Mays Shipwracke there 1502. The first Colone

A Copie of the Articles which Mafter R. More. Goner wour Deputie of the Summer Hands . prepounded to the Company that were there with him to be subscribed unto, which both bee and they subscribed the fecond of August, in his House, Anno 1612. which about the fame time bee fent into England. to the Worshipfull Companie of the Aduentu-

CHAP. XVII.

Relations of Summer Hands, taken out of Mafter Richard Norwood, bu Man and Notes added thereto, printed 1622. The Historic of the Creatures growing or lining therein, being inlarged out of Captaine Smiths written Relations. pag. 1796. CHAR. XVIII.

Extracts out of Captaine John Smiths Historie of Bermudas, or Summer Hands, touching the English ucts and occurrents there from the beginning of the Plantation. pag.18e1.

CHAP. XIX. Briefe intelligence from Virginia by Letters, a Supplement of French-Virginian occurrants, and pag. 1783. I their Supplantation by Sir Samuel Argal, inright of the fecond part.

of the English plantation. CHAL XX.

pag. 1805. | benefits which may grow to this Kingdome from American-English Plantations . and Decially Virginias Verger : or a difcourfe showing the those of Virginia and Summer Hands. p. 1800.

The Contents of the Chapters and Paragraphs in the tenth Booke of the Second part of Purchas his

PILGRIMS.

CHAP. I. Briefe Relation of the disconerie and plantation of New England: and of fundric accidents therein occurring, from the yeer of our Lord 1607. to this prefent 1622 published by the Prefident and Conneell, and dedicated to the Princes Highneffe, bere abbreniated p. 1827. CHAP. II.

The vorage of Master Henrie Challons, intended for the North plantation of Virginia, 1606. taken by the way, and ill vied by Spaniards: written by John Stoneman Pilot. H. CHAP. III.

Extracts of a Booke of Captaine Iohn Smith, printed 1622, called New Englands trialls, and continuing the Storie thereof, with Motines to the businesse of fishing there.

An Abstract of Letters sent from the Colonie in New England, Inly fixteene, 1622. p. 1840.

CHAP. IIII.

A Relation or Iournall of a plantation fetled at Plimoth in New England, and proceedings therof ; printed 1622. and here abbreniated. D.1842. CHAP. V.

Good newes from New England : or , a relation of things remarkable in that Plantation: written by E. Winflow, and here abbrenta-CHAP. VI.

liam Alexander Knight, for the plantation of New Scotland in America, and his proceedings therein: with a description of Mawdolnen for bester knowledge of those parts. pag.1871.

The description of the Country of Maw oofhen. discovered by the English, in the yeere 1602. 3,5, 6, 7, 8, and 9. H. pag. 1873.

The beginning of the Patent for New-foundland : and the plantation there made by the English, 1610. delinered in a Letter dated thence from M. Guy , to M. Slany : Alfo of the weather the three first winters, and of Captaine Weston : with other remarkable occurrents. H. pag. 1876.

Mafter John Guy his Letter to Mafter Slany Treasurer, and to the Counsell of the New-foundland plantation.

To Master John Slany Treasurer, and others of the Councell and Companie of the New-foundland plantation, the 29. of July, 1612. pag. 1879. CHAR VIII.

Captaine Richard Whitbournes voyages to New found land, and observations there, and thereof; taken out of his printed booke. p. 1882. A Relation of New found-land. pag. 1884. CHAPP IX.

The names of diner's honourable persons and others, who have windertaken to helpe to aduance his Maiesties plansation in the New-found-land: written by the faid R.W. with extracts of cer-Nous Scotis. The Kings Patent to Six Wil- table Letters written from thence. pag. 1888.

The fecond Part of the tenth Booke.

GHAP. X. D luers warlike Fleets fet forth to Selection Queenes religious triumph. the Spaniards, by our English Debora, Queene Elizabeth , of glorious memorie : Her manifold delineries and victories. CHAP. XI.

The Popes Bull, the King of Spaines preparations, the Duke of Medinas Expedition, the Duke of the Coast of Andaluzia, and of this Armie of of Parmas Forces, for the invalion of England : his Majelise, and Knight of the honorable Order diners Sea fights twixt the English and Spanish of the golden Fleece. Fleets, the Sea flight of the Spanish, and mife- The true relation of the successe of the Catholike

Able disafters in their returne. Their lies: The Squadron of the Galeons of Portugall. p. 1808.

Don Alonso Peres de Gusman, the good Dake pag. 1891. of Medina, Sidonia, Countie of Nebla . Marquelle of Casheshe in Africa. Lord of the Citie of Saint Lucar, Captaine Generall of the Occian Sea.

The Contents of the tenth Booke

Armie against their Enemies, by the Letters of the Post-master of Logrono of the fourth of September, and by Lesters from Roan of the 31. of Anguft, and by Letters from Paris of the Kings Emballadour there: wherein hee declareth the impriforment of Francis Drake, and other great Nobles | fler Hackluyt, and others. of England, and how the Queene is in the field with an Armie, and of a certaine mutinie which mas amongst the Queenes Armie, with the successe of the faid Catholike Armie fince they entred in Whe Grovne, till they came on the Coast of England, with two Ballets compounded by Christouer Brano, a blindemen of Cordowa, printed with bisence by Gabriel Ramos Beigrano printere and pag. 1913.

CHAP. XII. Generalls, written (as is thought) by Colonell An- rences. tonie Wingfield, imployed in the same voyage, i formerly published by bis friend to whom it was advertisements touching his Maieflies care for written and here abbreniated.

CHAP. XIII. A briefe and true report of the Honourable

voyage unto Cadiz, 1596. of the overshrow of the Kings Fleet, and of the winning of the Citie, with other accidents, gathered out of Meteranus, Ma-

CHAP XIIII.

The verage to the Iles of Azores, under the conduct of the Right Honorable Earle of Effex,

D. 1. Therelation thereof by the faid and other Commissioners. 0. 2. A larger relation of the faid Iland voy-

age, written by Sir Arthur Gorges Knight, colle-Ged in the Queenes ship talled the Waft Spite. A discourse of the Portugall voyage, Anno wherein he was then Captaine; with Marine and 1589. Sir John Norris and Sir Francis Drake Martiall discourses added according to the occur-

ences. pag.1938. The Conclusion of the Worke, with some later





Maps and Peeces cut in Brasse or VVood in the last ten Bookes.

▲ Merica	p.857	Lithuania_	p.629
A America Meridionalis		Liuonia_	p.627
America Septentrionalis	p.853	Magellan Streight	p. 9co
Map of the Artlike Pole	p.625	Mexican hieroglyp!	cic. bistor. cut
Borussia or Prussia	p.626	in 65. peeces	p.1067, &c.
Hondius bis Map of China	p.361	to 1117.	
Purchas bis Map of China	p.402	Moscouia_	p.778
Denmarke T	p.622	Norwegia_	p.620
England		Polonia_	p.၀ _{ရှိ} ဝ
Florida_	p.689	Rusia	p.220
Great Britaine and Ireland	p.1981	Nous Scotia	p.1874
Greenland	p.4 6 8	New Spaine	p.871
Vlphilas Gottick letters	p.658	Tartaria	p. 234
Hispaniola	p.861	Taurica Chersonesus	p. 632
f stand		Virginia_	p.1692





PEREGRINATIONS

AND DISCOVERIES, IN THE

REMOTEST NORTH AND EAST

PARTS OF ASIA. CALLED TARTARIA AND

CHINA.

THE FIRST BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

The Iournall of Frier WILLIAM DERVERVQVIS. a French-man, of the Order of the Minorite Friers, Dnto the East parts of the World, Anno Dom. 1253.



O the most Excellent and most Christian Lord, Lowis, by Gods grace the Renowmed King of France, Frier William de Rubrus, * the meanest of the Minorites * Master Hab. Order, wisheth health and continuall Triumph in had published

It is written in the Booke of Ecclesiasticus, concer- Author, but ning the Wileman: He shall trauell into foreme Coun-tries, and good and enil shall beetry in all thingin. The found in Bent very fame Action (my Lord and King) haue I atchie- Colledge Liued: howbeit, I with, that I have done it like a wife brary in Comman, and not like a Foole. For many there bee, that fitte community of the branch of the performe the same Action which a wife mandoth, not nicate it to the wifely but more vndifcreetly : of which number I feare Worldjet being my felfe to bee one. Notwithstanding, howsever I metropublihave done it, because you commanded mee, when I dethave done it, because you commanded mee, when I dethave done it, because you commanded mee, when I dethave done it, because you commanded mee, when I dethave, a say

Language, I

tars, and you wished mealso that I should not seare to write long Letters, I have done as your begin with the Maiestie enioyned me : yet with feare and reuerence, because I want words and Eloquence suf- Tartars, as be-Merchants) one thousand and eight miles, and is in a manner, divided into two parts. About or Many bethe midd thereof are two Prounces, one towards the North, and another towards the South. cameknowne the middle thereof are two Prouinces, one towards the North, and another low also be rough.

The South Prouince is called Sympolia, and it is the Caffle and Port of the Soldan of Turkee by them.

Eccion 370.2. but the North Province is called of the Laimes, Gufaria: of the Greekes, which inhabit vpon (affaia, or the Sea shoare thereof, it is called Caffaria, that is to say, Cafaria. And there are certayne head- Gafaria,

lands thretching forth into the Sea towards Sympolis, Alfo, there are three hundred miles of diagrams

to your Highneile aiwell as I can.

LIB. L

flance betweene Synopolis and Cassaria. Infomuch that the distance from those points or places to Constantinople, in length and breadth is about feuen hundred miles : and feuen hundred miles also from thence to the East, namely, to the Countrey of Hiberia, which is a Province of Georgia. At the Province of Gafaria or Caffaria, wee arrived, which Province is in a man-G: Tria ner, three square, having a Citie on the West part thereof called Kersona, wherein Saint Clewent fuffered Martyrdome. And fayling before the faid Citie, wee faw an Iland, in which a Church is faid to be built by the hands of Angels. But about the midft of the faid Propince toward the South, as it were, vpon a sharpe Angle or Point, standeth a Citie called Soldaia, direct-Soldaia. ly against Synopolis. And there doe all the Turkie Merchants, which Traffique into the North Countries, in their Iourney outward, arrive, and as they returne home-ward also from Russia, 10 and the faid Northerne Regions, into Turkie. The forefaid Merchants transport thither Ermines and gray Furres, with other rich and coffly Skinnes. Others carrie Clothes made of Cotton or Bombaft, and Silke, and divers kinds of Spices. But vpon the East part of the faid Province ftandeth a Citie called Matriga, where the River Tanais dischargeth his ftreames into the Sea of Pontus, the mouth whereof is twelve miles in breadth. For this River, before it entreth into the Sea of Pontus, maketha little Sea, which bath in breadth and length feuen hundred miles, and it it is in no place thereof aboue fixe paces deepe, whereupon great Veffels cannot faile ouer it. Howbeit the Merchants of Conftantinople, arriving at the forelaid Citie of . Materta. fend their Barkes vuto the River of Tanais to buy dryed fiftes, Sturgeons, Thoffes, Barbils. and an infinite number of other fishes. The foresaid Province of Cassaria, is compassed in with 20 the Sea on three fides thereof : namely, on the Weit-fide , where Kerfona , the Citie of Saint Clement is situate : on the South-side the Citie of Soldaia, whereat we arrived : on the East-side Maricandis, and there stands the Citie of Matriga, vpon the mouth of the River Tanais. Beyond the faid mouth standeth Zikia, which is not in subjection vnto the Tartars: also the peo-Zika. ple called Suem and Hibers, towards the East, who likewise are not under the Tartars Dominion. Moreouer, towards the South, standeth the Citie of Tratefunda, which hatha Gouernour proper to it felfe, named Guydo, being of the Linage of the Emperours of Constantinople, and is Subject vnto the Tartars. Next vnto that is Synopolis, the Citie of the Soldan of Turkie, who likewise is in subjection vnto them. Next vnto these lyeth the Countrey of Vasacina, whose Sonne is called Aftar, of his Grand-father by the Mothers fide, who is not in subjection. All the 30 Land from the mouth of Tanais West-ward as farre as Danubius is under their Jurisdiction, Yea. beyond Danubins also, towards Constantinople, Valakia, which is the Land of Allanus, and Bulgaria minor, as farre as Solonia, doe all pay Tribute vnto them. And besides the Tribute impoled, they have also, of late yeares, exacted of every houshold an Axe, and all such Corne as they found lying on heapes. We arrived therefore at Soldaia, the twelfth of the Kalends of June. And divers Merchants of Constantinople, which were arrived there before vs, reported that certayne Messengers were comming thither from the Holy Land, who were desirous to trauell vnto Sartach. Notwithstanding, I my selfe had publikely given out vpon Palme Sunday within the Church of Santia Sophia, that I was not your nor any other mans Meffenger, but that I travelled unto these Infidels according to the Rule of our Order. And being arrived, the said Merchants 40 admonished me to take diligent heed what I spake : because they having reported mee to bee a Messenger, if I should say the contrary, that I were no Messenger, I could not have free passage granted vnto me. Then I spake after this manner vnto the Governours of the Citie, or rather vnto their Lieutenants, because the Gouernours themselues were gone to pay Tribute vnto Baatu, and were not as yet returned. We heard of your Lord Sartach (quoth 1) in the Holy Land, that he was become a Christian : and the Christians were exceeding glad thereof, and especially the most Christian King of France, who is there now in Pilgrimage, and fighteth against the Saracens, to redeeme the holy places out of their hands : wherefore I am determined to goe vnto Sartach, and to deliuer vnto him the Letters of my Lord the King, wherein hee admonisheth him concerning the good and commoditie of all Christendome. And they received vs with 50 gladnesse, and gaue se entertaynment in the Cathedrall Church. The Bishop of which Church was with Sartach, who told me many good things concerning the faid Sartach, which afterward I found to be nothing fo. Then put they vs to our choice, whether wee would have Carts and Oxen, or packe-horses to transport our Carriages. And the Merchants of Constantinople aduifed me, not to take Carts of the Citizens of Soldana, but to buy covered Carts of mine owne (fuch as the Ruffians carry their Skinnes in) and to put all our Carriages, which I would daily take out, into them : because, if I should vie Horses, I must be constrayed at every baite to take downe my Carriages, and to lift them vp againe on fundry Horses backes : and besides, that I should ride a more gentle pace by the Oxendrawing the Carts. Wherefore, contenting my selfe with their euill counfell, I was trauelling vnto Sartach two monethes, which I could have done 60 in one, if I had gone by Horfe. Ibrought with me from Conft antimople (being by the Merchants

aduised so to doe) pleasant Fruits, Muskadell Wine, and delicate Bisket bread to present vnto

the Gouernours of Soldara, to the end I might obtayne free pallage : because they looke fauou-

rably vpon no man which commeth with an empty hand. All which things I bestowed in one

of my Carts (not finding the Gouernours of the Citie at home) for they told me, if I could carry them to Sarrach, that they would be most acceptable vnto him. Wee tooke our Journey therefore about the Kalends of June, with foure couered Carts of our owne, and with two other which we borrowed of them, wherein we carried our bedding to rest vpon in the night, and they allowed vs fine Horses to ride vpon. For there were just fine persons in our company : namely, I my f-life and mine affociate Friet Bartholomew of Cremona, and Gofer the Bearer of thele Prefenes, the man of God Turgemannus, and Nicolus my Scruant, whom I bought at Conftantinople, with some part of the Almes bestowed vpon me. Moreouer, they allowed vs two men, which draue our Carrs and gaue attendance vnto our Oxen and Horfes. There bee high Promontories Io on the Sea thour from Kerfona vivo the mouth of Tanais. Allo there are fortie Caft's between Kersona and Soldaia, every one of which almost have their proper Languages: amongst whom there were many Gother, who spake the Dutch Tongue. Beyond the faid Mountaynes towards the North, there is a most beautifull Wood growing on a Plaine full of Fountaynes and Freshets. And beyond the Wood there is a mightie plaine Champian, continuing fine dayes Iourney vnto the very extreamitie and borders of the laid Prouince North-ward, and there it is a narrow forcing Ishmus or neck Land, having Sea on the East and West fides thereof, infomuch that there is a Ditch made from one Sea vnto the other. In the fame Plaine (before the Tartars forang vo) were the Comanians wont to inhabit, who compelled the fore-taid Cities and Castles to pay Tribute vnto them. But when the Tarsars came vpon them, the multitude of the Comanians and entred into the fore-faid Prouince, and fiedall of them, even vnto the Sea shoare, beeing in such extreme Famine, that they which were aliue, were constrayned to eate vp those which were dead : and (as a Merchant reported vnto me who faw it with his owne eyes) that the liuing men deuoured and tore with their teeth, the raw flesh of the dead, as Dogges would gnaw vpon Carrion. Towardes the Borders of the faid Prouince there bee many great Lakes: vpon the Bankes whereof are Salt-pits or Fountaynes, the water of which io loone as it entreth into the Lake, becommeth hard Salt like vnto Ice. And out of those Salt-pits Baa's and Sartach haue great Reuenues: for they repayre thither out of all Ruffia, for Salt : and for each Cart loade they give two Webbes of Cotton, amounting

to the value of halfe an Tperpera. There come by Sea also many Shippes for Sale, which 30 pay Tribute energy one of the maccording to their burthen. The third day after wee were entred, me thought I was come into a new World. Whose life and manners I will describe vn-

to come. They have divided all Seythia among themselves, which Aretcheth from the Ri- Of the Tartart, uer Danubius euen vnto the rifing of the Sunne. And euery of their Captaines, according to the and of their great or small number of his people, knoweth the bounds of his Pastures, and where hee ought houses. to feed his Cattell Winter and Summer, Spring and Autumne. For in the Winter they descend vnto the warme Regions South-ward. And in the Summer they afcend vnto the cold Regions North-ward. In Winter when Snow lyeth vpon the ground, they feed their Cattell vpon Paflures without water, because then they vie Snow in flead of water. Their houses wherein they fleepe, they ground voon a round foundation of Wickers artificially wrought and compacted together : the Roofe whereof confifteth (in like fort) of Wickers, meeting about into one little Roundell, out of which Roundell ascendeth vpward a necke like vnto a Chimney, which they court with white Felt, and oftentimes they lay Morter or white Earth vpon the faid Felt, with the powder of bones, that it may thine white. And fometimes also they couer it with blacke Felt. The faid Felt on the necke of their house, they doe garnish over with beautifull varietie of Pictures. Before the doore likewise they hang a Felt curiously painted ouer. For they 50 spend all their coloured Felt, in painting Vines, Trees, Birds, and Beafts thereupon. The faid houses they make solarge, that they contayne thirtie foot in breadth. For measuring once the breadth betweene the wheele-ruts of one of their Carts , I found it to bee twentie feet ouer : and when the house was upon the Cart, it stretched ouer the wheeles on each fide five feet at the least. I told two and twent ie Oxen in one Teame, drawing an house vpon a Cart, eleuen in one order according to the breadth of the Cart, and eleuen more before them: the Axletree of the Cart was of an huge bigneffe like vnto the Malt of a Ship. And a fellow itood in the doore of the house, upon the forc-stall of the Cart driving forth the Oxen. Moreover, they make certayne foure fquare Baskets of imall flender Wickersas bigge as great Chefts: and afterward, from one lide to another, they frame an hollow lidde or couer of fuch like Wickers, 60 and make a doore in the fore-fide thereof. And then they couer the faid Chest or little House with black Felt, ubbelouer with Tallow or Sheeps Milke to keep the rain from foking through,

which they deck likewise with printing or with feathers. And in such Chests they put their

whole Houshold-stuffe and Treature. Also the same Chests they doe strongly binde vpon

Hev haue in no place any fetled Citie to abide in, neither know they of the Celestiall Citie Chap. 2.

departed out of the Precincts of Soldain, wee found the Tartars. Amongst whom beeing The Tartaris

other Carts, which are drawne with Camels, to the end they may wade through Rivers, Neither doe they at any time take downe the faid Chefts from off their Carts. When they

46

take downe their dwelling houses, they turne the doores alwayes to the South; and next of all they place the Carts laden with their Chefts, here and there, within halfe a frones cast of the House : insomuch that the House standeth betweene two rankes of Carts. as it were, betweene two Walles. The Matrones make for themselues most beautiful Carts. The benefit of which I am not able to describe vnto your Maiefly but by Pictures only : for I would right wila Painter in lingly haue painted all things for you, had my Skill beene ought in that Art. One rich Moal or firange Coun- Tariar hath two hundred, or one hundred fuch Carts with Chefts. Duke Baain hath fixteene Wives, every one of which hath one great house, besides other little houses, which they place behind the great one, being as it were Chambers for their Maidens to dwell in. And vnto energy of the faid houses doe belong two hundred Carts. When they take their houses from off the IQ Carts, the principall Wife placeth her Court on the West Frontier, and so all the rest in their order : fo that the last Wife dwelleth vpon the East Frontier : and one of the faid Ladies Courte is distant from another about a stones cast. Whereupon the Court of one rich Moal or Tartar will appeare like vnto a great Village, very few men abiding in the fame. One woman will guide twenty or thirty Carts at once, for their Countries are very plaine, and they binde the Carts with Camels or Oxen, one behind another. And there fits a Wench in the fore-most Cart driuing the Oxen, and all the refidue follow on a like pace. When they chance to come at any had passage, they let them loose, and guide them ouer one by one : for they goe a slow pace, as fait as a Lambe or an Oxe can walke.

Idols.

Chap. 3. Haung taken downe their houses from off their Carts, and turning the doores South-ward, Of their Beds, they place the bed of the Master of the house, at the North part thereof. The womens Puppers, Ima- place is always on the East-side, namely, on the left hand of the good man of the house sitting vpon his bed with his face South-wards: but the mens place is vpon the West-side, namely, at the right hand of their Master. Men when they enter into the house, will not in any case hang their Quivers on the womens side. Ouer the Masters head there is alwayes an Image, like a Puppet, made of Fealt, which they call the Masters Brother : and another ouer the head of the good Wife or Miftris, which they call her Brother, being fastened to the wall : and aboue betweene both of them, there is a little leane one, which is, as it were the keeper of the whole house. The good Wife or Mistris of the house placeth aloft at her beds feet, on the right hand, the 30 Skinne of a Kid Auffed with Wooll or some other matter, and neere vnto that a little Image or Pupper looking towards the Maidens and women. Next vnto the doore also on the womens fide, there is another Image with a Cowes Vdder, for the women that milke the Kine. For it is the dutie of their women to milke Kine. On the other fide of the doore next vnto the men. there is another Image with the Vdder of a Mare, for the men which milke Mares. And when they come together to drinke and make merrie, they iprinkle part of their Drinke vpon the Image which is about the Mafters head : afterward vpon other Images in order : then goetha Seruant out of the house with a cup full of Drinke sprinkling it thrise towards the South, and bowing his knee at every time : and this is done for the honour of the Fire. Then performeth he the like Superstitious Idolatry towards the East, for the honour of the Ayre: and then to the West for the honour of the water; and lastly, to the North in the behalfe of the Dead. When the Master holdeth a cup in his hand to drinke, before hee tasteth thereof, hee powreth his part voon the ground. If he drinketh fitting on Horse-backe, he powreth out part thereof voon the necke or mane of his Horse before he himselfe drinketh. After the Servant aforesaid hath so discharged his cups to the foure quarters of the World, hee returneth into the house : and two other Servants stand ready with two cups, and two basons, to carrie Drinke vnto their Master and his Wife, fitting together vpon a bed. And if hee hath more Wines then one, shee with whom he slept the night before, fitteth by his side the day following : and all his other Wives must that day resort vnto the same house to drinke : and there is the Court holden for that day : the gifts also which are presented that day, are layd up in the Chests of the said Wife. And upon 50 a bench stands a Vessell of Milke, or of other Drinke and drinking cups.

Chap. 4.

IN Winter time they make excellent drinke of Rice, of Mill, and of Honey, being well and high coloured like Wine. Also they have Wine brought vnto them from farre Countries. In dinkes, and Summer time they care not for any drinke, but Cosmos. And it standeth alwayes within the how they pro- entrance of his doore, and next vnto it flands a Minstrell with his Fiddle. I saw there no such uoko one ano- Citernes and Vials as ours commonly bee, but many other Musicall Instruments which are not vied among vs. And when the Mafter of the houle begins to drinke, one of his feruants crieth out with a loude voyce, Ha, and the Minstrell playes vpon his Fiddle. And when they make any great solemne feast, they all of them clap their hands , and dance to the noyse of Mulicke, 60 the men before their Master, and the women before their Mistris. And when the Master hath like custome in drunke, then cryes out his feruant as before, and the Minstrell stayeth his Mulicke. Then drinke they all round both men and women, : and sometimes they carowse for the victorie very filthily and drunkenly. Also when they will prouoke any man, they pull him by the Eares to the drinke, and so lug and draw him strongly to stretch out his throat clapping their hands, and

dancing before him. Moreouer, when some of them will make great feasting and rejoycing, one of the companie takes a full Cup, and two other fland, one on his right hand, and another on his left, and so they three come tinging to the man who is to have the Cup reached wnto him, fill linging and dancing before him: and when he stretcheth forth his hand to receive the Cup. they leape fuddenly backe, returning againe as they did before, and fo having deluded him thrice or four times by drawing backe the Cup, vntill he be merrie, and hath gotten a good appetite, then they give him the Cup, finging and dancing, and stamping with their feet, vntill he hath done drinking.

Oncerning their food and victuals, be it knowne vnto your Highnede, that they doe, with- Chap. e. Jour all difference or conception, care all their dead Carions. And amongst formany droues Of their food it cannot be, but some Cattell must needs die. Howbeit in Summer, so long as their Cosmos, and victuals. that is, their Mares milke lasteth, they care not for any food. And if they chance to have an Oxe or an Horse die, they drie the fleth thereof: for cutting it into thinne slices, and hanging Dryingof fleth it up against the Sunne and the wind, it is presently dried without Salt, and also without stench in the wind. or corruption. They make better Puddings of their Hories then of their Hogs, which they eate being new made : the reft of the flesh they reserve vntill Winter. They make of their Oxe skins great bladders or bags, which they doe wonderfully drie in the smoake. Of the hinder part of their Horsehides, they make very fine Sandals and Pantofles. They give voto fiftie of 20 an hundred men, the fielh of one Ramme to eate. For they mince it in a bowle with Salt and an manere men, un men ou our ramme to take the state of the same that a bowle with sale which Water (other Sauce they have none) and then with the point of a Knife or a little Forke which they make for the same purpose (such as we vie to take roafted Peares and Apples out of Wine they make for the same purpose). withall) they reach vato euery one of the companie a mortell or twains, according to the mul-titude of Guefts. The Matter of the house, before the Rams flesh be distributed, first of all himfelfe taketh thereof, what he pleafeth. Alfo, if he giveth vnto any of the companie a speciall part, the receiver thereof mult eate it alone, and mult not impart ought thereof vnto any other. Not being able to eate it up all, hee carries it with him, and deliners it unto his boy, if hee be present, to keepe it: if not, hee puts it vp into his Saptargat, that is to say, his foure square Budget, which they vie to carrie about with them, for the fauing of all fuch prouision, & wherein they lay up their bones, when they have not time to gnaw them throughly, that they may

burnish them afterward, to the end that no white of their food may come to nought.

I faften a long line vnto two posts standing frestly in the ground, and vnto the same line they How they the the young Foales of those Mares, which they meane to milke. Then come the Dammes make their to fland by their Foales gently fuffering themselves to be milked. And if any of them be too drinke, called varuly, then one takes her Foale, and puts it under her, letting it fucke a while, and prefently carrying it away againe, there comes another man to milke the faid Mare. And having gotten a good quantitie of this Milke together (being as fweet as Cowes milke) while it is new they power into a great bladder or bag, and they beat the faid bag with a piece of wood made for the purpose, having a Club at the lower end like a mans head, which is hollow within : and fo soone as they beat upon it, it begins to boyle like new Wine, and to be sowre and sharpe of taste, and they beate it in that manner till Butter come thereof. Then tafte they thereof, and being indifferently sharpethey drinke it : for it biteth a mans tongue like the Wine of Raspes, when it is drunke. After a man hath taken a draught thereof, it leaveth behind it a tafte like the tafte of Almond-milke, and goeth downe very pleasantly, intoxicating weake braynes: also it caufeth vrine to be anoyded in great measure. Likewise Caracosmos, that is to say, Blacke Cosmos, Caracosmos for great Lords to drinke, they make on this manner. First, they beat the faid Milke solong till the thickest partithereof descend right downe to the bottome like the lees of white Wine, and that which is thinne and pure remayneth aboue, being like vnto Whay or white Mul. The faid lees and dregs being very white, are given to feruants, and will cause them to sleepe exceedingly. That which is thinne and cleere their Mafters drinke : and in very deede it is maruellous sweet and wholsome liquor. Duke Bastu hath thirtie Cottages or Granges, within a Duke Bastu, dayes journey of his abiding place : euery one of which serueth him daily with the Caracofmos of an hundred Mares milke, and so all of them together every day with the Milke of three Store of shoufand Mares, befides white Milke which other of his Subjects bring. For even as the Huf. Mares, and

bandmen of Spria bestow the third part of their fruits, and carrie it vnto the Courts of their Marts mike. Lords, even so doe they their Mares milke every third day. Out of their Cowes milke they first churne Butter, boyling the which Butter vnto a perfect decoction, they put it into Rams skins, 60 which they reserve for the same purpose. Neither doe they sale their Butter : and yet by reafon of the long feething, it putrifieth not: and they keepe it in flore for Winter. The churn-milke which remayneth of the Butter, they let alone till it be as fowre as possibly it may be, then they boyle it, and in boyling it is turned all into Curds, which Curds they drie in the Sun, making them as hard as the droffe of Iron: and this kind of food also they store vp in Sachels

Heirdrinke, called Cosmos, which is Mares milke, is prepared after this manner. They Chap. 6.

against Winter. In the Winter season when Milke fayleth them, they put the foresaid Cords (which they call Gry-ve) into a bladder, and powring hot water thereinto, they beat it luftly till they have resolved it into the said Water, which is thereby made exceedingly sowre, and that they drinke in flead of Milke. They are very forupulous, and take diligent heed that they drinke not faire Water by it felte. Reat Lords have Cottages or Granges towards the South, from whence their Tenants bring

Ithem Millet and Meale against Winter. The poorer fort prouide themselves of such neces-

tayles, nor any kind by Mife with short tayles. They have also certaine little beafis, called by

with thicke water, and are therewithall contented. They will neither eate Mile with long 10

Chap.7. Or he beaffs which they car faries, for the exchange of Rams, and of other beafts skins. The Tartars flaues fill their bellies or their parmen s, and of their manner of hunting.

them, Sogur, which he in a Caue twentie or thirtie of them together, all the whole Winter fleeping there for the space of fixe moneths; and these they take in great abundance. There are alloa kind of Conies having long tayles like vnto Cats: and on the outfide of their tayles grow blacke and white haires. They have many other small beast's good to eat, which they know and differne right well. I saw no Deere there, and but a few Hares, but a great number of Roes. I faw wild Alles in great abundance, which be like vnto Mules. Alfo I faw another kind of beaft. called Areak, having in all refemblance the bodie of a Ram, and crooked hornes, which are of fuch bignesse, that I could scarce lift up a paire of them with one hand and of these hornes they make great drinking cups. They have Eaulcons, Girfaulcons, and other Hawkes in great plenticall which they carrie upon their right hands and they put alwaies about their Faulcons. neckes a ftring of Leather, which hangeth downe to the midft of their gorges, by the which

vie the left f.ft. Another ftrange cuftome, which I leaue to bee feanned by Falconers themfelues.

firing, when they cast them off the fift at the game, with their left hand they bow downe the heads and breasts of the faid Hawkes, left they should be toffed up and downe, and beaten with the wind, or left they should foare too high. Wherefore they get a great part of their victuals by hunting and hawking. Concerning their garments and attire, be it knowne vnto your Maiestie, that out of Cataya, and other Regions of the East, out of Persia also, and other Countries of to South, there are brought vnto them Stuffes of filke, Cloth of gold, and Cotton clothwhich they weare in time of Summer. But out of Ruffia, Movell , Bulgaria the greater , and Palcatir, that is, Hungaria the greater, and out of Kersis (all which are Northerne Regions, and 10 full of Woods) and alto out of many other Countries of the North, which are subject vinto them, the Inhabitants bring them rich and coffly skins of divers forts (which I never faw in our Countries) wherewithall they are clad in Winter. And alwaies against Winter they make themselves two Gownes, one with the surre inward to their skinne, and another with the surre outward, to defend them from wind and phow, which for the most part are made of Wolves skins, or Poxe skins, or elfe of Papions. And when they fit within the house, they have a finer Gowne to weare. The poorer fort make their upper Gowne of Dogs or of Goats skins, When they goe to hunt for wild beafts, there meets a great companie of them together, and emironing the place round about, where they are fire to find fome game, by little and little they are proach on all files, till they have gotten the wild beafts into the midit, as it were into a circle, 49 and then they discharge their Arrowes at them. Also they make themselves Breeches of skins. The rich Tartars sometimes fure their Gownes with pelluce or filkeshae, which is

exceeding foft, light, and warme. The poorer fort doe line their clothes with Cotton cloth.

which is made of the finest wooll they can picke out, and of the courser part of the faid wooll.

they make Felt to couer their houses, and their chifts, and for their bedding also. Of the same

wooll, being mixed with one third part of Horse hairs, they make all their cordage. They make

for all which purposes they spend a great quantitie of their wooll. And thus much concerning

Great expense also of the faid Felt coverings for their stooles, and caps to defend their heads from the weather:

the attire of the men.

Chap.8. Of the fashion which the Tartars vie in cutting their haire, and of the attire of their women.

He men shaue a plot foure square upon the crownes of their heads, and from the two formost corners they share, as it were, two scames downe to their temples : they share also their temples, and the hinder part of their head; energinto the mape of the necke: likewife they shaue the fore-part of their scalpe downe to their foreheads, and vpon their foreheads they leave a locke of haire reaching downe vnto their eye-browes : vpon the two hindermost corners of their heads, they have two lockes also, which they twine and braid into knots and fo bind and knit them under each care one. Moreover their womens garments differ not from their mens, fauing that they are somewhat longer. But on the morrow after one of their women is married, finee shares her scalpe from the middest of her head downe to her forebead, and weares a wide garment like vnto the hood of a Nunne, yealarger and longer in all parts then 60 a Nunnes hood, beeing open before, and gire unto them under the right fide. For hetrein doe the Tartare differ from the Turkes: because the Turkes fasten their garments to their bodies on the left fide : but the Tartare alwaies on the right fide. They have allo an ornament for their heads, which they call, Betta, beeing made of the barke of a Tree, or of some such other ligh-

ter matter as they can finde, which by teafon of the thicknesse and roundnesse thereof cannot he holden but in both hands together : and it hath a fquare sharpe spite rising from the too thereof, being more then a cubite in length, and fashioned like vnto a Pinacle. The faid Botta they couer all ouer with a piece of rich Silke, and it is hollow within : and vpon the midft of the faid spire or square top, they put a bunch of Quils, or of slender Canes a cubite lone and more and the faid bunch on the top thereof, they beautifie with Peacockes Feathers, and round about all the length thereof, with the Feathers of a Malards taile, and with precious thones alto. Great Ladies weare this kind of ornament vpon their heads, binding it from ly with a certaine Hat or Coyfe, which harh a hole in the crowne, fit for the foire so come through Io it and under the forefaid ornament they court the faires of their heads, which they gather up round together from the hinder part chereof to the crowne; and fo lap them vp in a knot or hundell within the faid Boisa; which afterward they bind ftrongly vader their throats. Hereupon when a great company of such Gentlewomen ride together, and are beheld a farre off, they feeme to be Souldiers with Helmets on their heads, carrying their Lances veright: for the faid Botts appeareth like an Helmet wieles Lance ouer it. All their Women fit on horfe-backe, befinding their Horfes like men : and they binde their hoods or gownes about their waftes with a sky-coloured Silke Skarfe, and with another Skarfe they gird it about their breafts : and they hinde also a piece of white Silke like a Mutter or Maske under their eyes, reaching downer vntotheir breaits. Their Gentlewomen are exceeding fat, and the leffer their nofes be, the faior rer they are elleemed : they dambe ouer their freet faces with greafe too fhamefully : and they neuer lyein bed for their trauell of child-birth.

He duties of Women are to drive Cares : to lay their houles voon Cares, and to take them Chap. o. downe sgaine; to milke Kine; to make Butter and Gry-or, to dreffe skinnes, and to few Of the duties them, which they vitually few with thread made of finewes, for they divide linewes in flender injoyned vate them, which they visually new with appear many or mewors, provery under minors in motion the Tartaina-threads, and then twine them into one long thread. They make Sandals and Socks, and other words, and Garments. Howbeit they never wash any apparell: for they say, that God's then angry, and of the labors, that dreadfull thunder will enfue, if washed garments be hanged forth to dry; yea, they beate and also of fuch as walh, and take their garments from them. They are wonderfully afraid of thunder : for their marri-30 in the time of thunder they thrust all thrangers out of their houses, and then wrapping them? ages. feliges in blacke Felt; they lye hidden therein, till the thunder be ouer-paft. They neuer wash their dilhes or bowles : yea, when their fielh is fodden, they wall the platter wherein it mift

he put, with fealding hot broath out of the pot, and then powre the faid broath into the por a gaine. They make Felt also, and couer their houses therewith. The duties of the Men are, to make Bowes and Arrowes, Stirrops, Bridles and Saddles : to build Houles and Carts, to keepe Horses, to milke Mares, to churne Colmos and Mares Milke, and to make bags wherein to put it : they keepe Camels also, and lay burtlens upon the n. As for Sheepe and Goats, they rend and milke them, as well the Men as the Women. With Sheeps Milke thicked and falted, they dreffeand tan their Hides. When they will wash their hands or their heads, they fill their 40 mouthes full of Water, and spowting it into their hands by little and little, they firinkle their haire, and wash their heads therewith. As touching marriages, your Highnesse is to understand. that no man can have a Wife among them till he hath bought her : whereupon fometimes their Maids are very stale before they be married , for their Parents alwaies keepe them till they can fell them. They keepe the first and second degrees of Confanguinitie inuiclable, as wee doe; but they have no regard of the degrees of Affinitie for they will marrie together, or by freceffion, two Sifters. Their Widowes martie not at all, for this reason; because they believe that all who have ferred them in this life, shall doe them ferrice in the life to come also. Whereupon they are perfwaded, that every Widow after death shall returne voto her owne Husband. And here-hence arifeth an abominable and filthy custome among them; namely, that the Sonne mar-

50 Father or Mother, falleth by inheritance alwaies to the younger Sonne. Whereupon he is to provide for all his Fathers Wives, because they are part of his Inheritance as well as his Fathers polleffions. And then it he will, he vieth them for his owne Wives : for he thinkes it no infurie or difparagement vnto himfelie, although they returne vnto his Father after death. Therfore when any man hath bargained with another for a Maid, the Father of the faid Damofell makes him a feast : in the meane while she fleeth vnto some of her Kinstolkes to hide her lelfe. Then faith her Father vitto the Bridegroome: Loe, my Daughter is yours, take her where sound you can finde ber. Then he and his friends feeke for her till they can find her, and having found her, he must take her by force and carry her (as it were) violently vnto his owne house.

rieth fometimes all his Fathers Wives except his owne Mother : For the Court or House of the

Oncerning their Lawes, or their Execution of Inflice, your Maieftie is to bee advertised, Of their exethat when two men fight, no third man dare intrude himself: to part them. Yea, the Fa- cusion of luther dare not help his owne Sonne. But he that goes by the worst, mult appeale vnto the Court fice and ludgof his Lord. And whofoeuer elfe offereth him any violence after appeale, is put to death. But ther deaths

Sepulchres.

were) captine. They punish no man with sentence of death, vnlesse he bee taken in the deed doing, or confesseth the same. But being accused by the multitude, they put him vnto extreame torture, to make him confesse the truth. They punish murther with death, and Carnall copulation also with any other belides his owne. By his owne, I meane his Wife or his Maid Servant, for he may vie his Slaue as hee lifteth himselfe. Hainous theft also or felony they punish with death. For a light theft, as namely, for stealing of a Ram, the partie (not being apprehended in the deed doing, but otherwise detected) is cruelly beaten. And if the Executioner layes on an hundred strokes, hee must have an hundred staves; namely, for such as are beaten upon sentencequen in the Court. Also counterfeit Messengers, because they feine themselues to be Mes- 10 fengers, when as indeed they are none at all, they punish with death. Sacrilegious persons they vie in like manner (of which kind of Malefactors your Maieftie shall vinderstand more fully hereafter) because they esteeme such to bee Witches. When any man dyeth, they lament and howle most pittifully for him: and the faid Mourners are free from paying any tribute for one whole yeare after. Also, whosoeuer is present at the house where any one growne to mans estate lyeth dead, he must not enter into the Court of Mangu-Con, till one whole yeare be expired. If it were a child deceased, hee must not enter into the faid Court till the next moneth after. Neere vnto the graue of the partie deceased, they alwaies leaue one Cottage. If any of their Nobles (being of the flocke of Chingis, who was their first Lord and Father) deceaseth, his Sepulchre is vnknowne. And alwaies about those places where they interre their Nobles, there is 20 one house of men to keepe the Sepulchres. I could not learne that they vie to hide Treasures in the graves of their dead. The Comanians build a great Toombe over their dead, and erect the Image of the dead partie thereupon, with his face towards the East, holding a drinking Cup in his hand before his Nauell. They erect also voon the Monuments of rich men, Pyramides, that is to fay; little starpe houses or pinacles: and in some places I saw mightie Towers made of Bricke, in other places Pyramides made of stones, albeit there are no stones to be found thereabout. I saw one newly buried, in whose behalfe they hanged vp sixteene Horse-hides, vnto each quarter of the world foure, betweene certaine high poits : and they fet besides his Graue Cosmos for him to drinke, and slesh to eate: and yet they laid that he was baptized. I beheld other kinds of Sepulchres also towards the East: namely, large floores or pauements made of stone, some round, and some square; and then source long stones pitched vpright, about the said 30 pauement towards the foure Regions of the world. When any man is ficke, he lyeth in his bed. and causeth a signe to be set voon his house, to signifie that there lyeth a sicke person there . to the end that no man may enter into the faid house: whereupon none at all wifit any ficke partie but his servant onely. Moreover, when any one is sicke in their great Courts, they appoint Watch-men to ftand round about the faid Court, who will not fuffer any person to enter within the Precincts thereof. For they feare leaft euill spirits or winds should come together with the parties that enter in. They efteeme of Soothfayers, as of their Priefts.

he must goe presently without all delay : and he that hath suffered the iniury, carrieth him (as it

Cbsp. 11. Of our first mong the Tarters, and of

Nd being come among it those barbarous people, me thought (as I faid before) that I was 40 And being come amongst those parbarous people, me thought (as I and before) that I was
Aentred into a new world: for they came flocking about vs on horse-backe, after they had made vs a long time to awaite for them fitting in the shadow, under their blacke carts. The first question which they demanded, was, whether we had ever beene with them heretofore, or no? And giving them answere that we had not, they began impudently to beg our victuals from vs. And we gaue them some of our Bisket and Wine, which wee had brought with vs from the Towns of Soldais. And having drunke off one Flagon of our Wine, they demanded another; faying, That a man goeth not into the house with one foote. Howbeit we gape them no more, excusing our selves that we had but a little. Then they asked vs, whence we came, and whither we were bound! I answered them with the words about mentioned: that wee had heard concerning Duke Sartach, that hee was become a Christian, and that vnto him our determination 50 was to travell, having your Maiesties Letters to deliver vnto him. They were very inquificine to know whether I came of mine owne accord, or whither I were lent ! I answered, that no man compelled me to come, neither had I come, vnlesse I my selfe had beene willing : and that therefore I was come according to mine owne will, and to the will of my Superior, I tooke diligent heed neuer to say that I was your Maiesties Embassadour. Then they asked what I had in my Carts; whether it were Gold or Silver, or rich Garments to carrie vnto Sartach? I anfwered, that Sarrach should see what we had brought, when we were once come vnto him, and that they had nothing to doe to aske such questions, but rather ought to conduct me vnto their Captaine, and that he, if he thought good, should cause me to be directed vnto Sartach : if not, that I would returne. For there was in the same Province one of Baats his Kinsmen, called Sca- 60 cati, vnto whom my Lord the Emperour of Constantinople had written Letters of request, to fuffer me to paffe through his Territorie. With this answere of ours they were fatisfied, giving vs Horses and Oxen, and two men to conduct vs. Howbeit, before they would allow vs the forefaid necessaries for our journey, they made vs to awaite a long while, begging our bread for

their young Brats, wondring at all things which they faw about our Servants, as their Kniues, Gloues, Purles and Points, and defiring to haue them. I excused my selfe that wee had a long way to trauell, and that we must in no wife so some depriue our selues of things necessary. to finish so long a journey. Then they faid, that I was a very variet. True it is, that they tooke nothing by force from me : howbeit they will beg that which they fee very importunatly and shamelesty. And if a man bestow ought vpon them, it is but cost lost, for they are thanklesse wretches. They esteeme themselves Lords, and thinke that nothing should be denyed them by any man. If a man gives them nought, and afterwards stands in need of their service, they will do right nought for him. They gave vs of their Cowes Milke to drink, after the Butter was chur-To ned out of it, being very fowre, which they call Apram. And fo we departed from them. And in very deed it feemed to me that we were escaped out of the hands of Diuels. On the morrow we were come vnto the Captaine. From the time wherein we departed from Soldaia, till wee arrived at the Court of Sartach, which was the space of two moneths, we never lay in House or Tent, but alwaies under the starry Canopie, and in the open Aire, or under our Carts. Neither yet faw we any Village, nor any mention of building where a Village had beene, but the graues of the Comanians, in great abundance. The fame evening our guide which had conducted vs.gaue vs some Cosmos. After I had drunke thereof, I sweat most extreamely for the noueltie and strangenesse, because I neuer dranke of it before. Notwithstanding, me thought it was very sauory, as indeed it was.

Droues of Oxen, and Horles, and at the Flockes of Sheepe. I could lee but a rew men that guid how the Christella ded all these matters: whereupon I inquired how many men hee had vnder him, and they told frant drinke me that he had not aboue five hundred in all, the one halfe of which number we were come patt, no Colmos. as they lay in another Lodging. Then the Servant which was our Guide told mee, that I must present somewhat vnto Scacatai: and so he caused vs to stay, going himselfe before to give notice of our comming. By this time it was pall three of the clocke, and they vnladed their houfes neere vnto a certayne water: And there came vnto vs his Interpreter, who being aductifed 30 by ve that we were never there before, demanded some of our victuals, and wee yeelded vnto his request. Also hee required of vs some garment for a Reward, because hee was to interpret our Savings vnto his Maiter. Howbeit, we excused our selues as well as we could. Then hee asked vs, what we would prefent vnto his Lord : And we tooke a flagon of Wine, and filled a Maund with Bisket, and a Platter with Apples and other Fruits. But he was not contented therewith, because we brought him not some rich garment. Notwithstanding, wee entred so into his presence with feare and bashfulnesse. Hee sate upon his bed holding a Citron in his hand, and his Wife fate by him: who (as I verily thinke) had cut and pared her Nofe betweene the Eves that the might feeme to be more flat and faddle-nofed : for the had left her felfe no Nofe at all in that place, having anounted the very fame place with a blacke Oyntment, and her Eye-browes also: 40 which fight feemed most vgly in our Eyes. Then I rehearfed vnto him the fame words, which I had spoken in other places before. For it stood ws in hand to vie one and the same speech in all places. For we were well fore-warned of this circumstance by some which had been amongst A caucat right the Tartars, that we should never vary in our Tale. Then I belought him, that he would vouch- worthy the nofafe to accept that small gift at our hands, excusing my selfe that I was a Monke, and that it was tingagainst our profession to possesse Gold, or Silver, or precious Garments, and therefore that I had not any fuch thing to give him, howbeit he should receive some part of our victuals in stead of a bleffing. Hereupon he caused our Present to be received, and immediately distributed the same among his men, who were met together for the same purpose, to drinke and make merry. I deliuered also vnto him the Emperour of Constantinople his Letters (this was eight dayes after the 50 Feaft of Ascension) who sent them forth- with to Soldaia, to have them interpreted there: for they were written in Greeke, and he had none about him that was skilfull in the Greeke Tongue. He asked vs also whether we would drinke any Cosmos, that is to say, Mares Milke: (For those that are Christians among them, as namely, the Ruffians, Grecians, and Alamans, who keepe Superstition, their owne Law very strictly, will in no case drinke thereof, yea, they account themselues no the Kingdome Christians after they have once drunke of it, and their Priests reconcile them vnto the Church, as meate and if they had renounced the Christian Faith.) I gaue him answere, that wee had as yet sufficient of drinke. our owne to drinke, and that when our drinke fayled vs, we must be constrayned to drinke such as should bee given vnto vs. Hee enquired also what was contayned in our Letters, which your Maiestie sent vnto Sartach? I answered : that they were sealed up , and that there was nothing

60 contayned in them, but good and friendly words. And he asked what words wee would deliuer

vnto Sariach? I answered: the words of Christian Faith. Hee asked againe what these words

were? For he was very defirous to heare them. Then I expounded vnto him as well as I could,

by mine Interpreter, (who had no wit nor any vtterance of speech) the Apostles Creed. Which

after hee had heard, holding his peace, he shooke his head. Then hee assigned vnto vs two men,

On the morrow after we met with the Carts of Scacettail laden with houses, and me thought (Bap. 12, that a mightie Citic came to meete me. I wondred also at the great multitude of huge Otthe Court Droues of Oxen, and Horses, and at the Flockes of Sheepe. I could see but a few men that gui- of Scacatai. &

who should give attendance upon our felues, upon our Horses, and upon our Oxen. And hee caused vs to ride in his company, till the Messenger whom he had fent for the Interpretation of the Baperours Letters, was returned. And so wee trauelled in his company till the morrow atter Pentecost.

Chap. 13. tecoft or Whitfon Ecue. " Oi, Akes.

Pon the E-uen of Pentecost, there came vnto vs certayne Alanians, who are there called Aciss, being Christians after the manner of the Grecians , ving Greeke Bookes and Grenion came var cian Priefts : howbeit, they are not Schismatikes as the Grecians are, but without acception of persons, they honour all Christians. And they brought vnto vs sodden flesh, requesting vs to eat of their meate, and to pray for one of their company beeing dead. Then I faid, because it was 10 the Eeuen of fo great and to folemne a Feast Day, that wee would not eate any flesh for that sime. And I expounded vnto them the Solemnitie of the faid Feaft, whereat they greatly rejoyced : for they were ignorant of all things appertaying to Christian Religion , except only the Name of Christ. They and many other Christians, both Ruffians, and Hungarians demanded of ys, whether they might be faued or no, because they were constrayned to drinke Cosmos, and to eate the dead carkalles of fuch things, as were flaine by the Saracens, and other Infidels! Which even the Greeke and Russian Priests themselves also esteeme as things strangled or effered vnto Idols : because they were ignorant of the times of Fasting, neither could they have obserued them albeit they had knowne them. Then instructed I them aswell as I could and strengthened them in the Faith. As for the flesh which they had brought, wee referred it vntill the 20 feast day. For there was nothing to be fold among the Tartars for Gold and Silver, but onely for Cloath and Garments, of the which kind of Merchandize wee had none at all. When our Seruants offered them any Coyne, called Tperpera, they rubbed it with their fingers, and put it vnto their nofes, to try by the smell whether it were Copper or no. Neither did they allow vs any food but Cowes Milke onely, which was very fowre and filthy. There was one thing most necellary greatly wanting vnto vs. For the water was fo foule and muddy, by reason of their Horfes, that it was not meete to be drunke. And but for certaine Bisket, which was by the goodnesse of God remaining vnto vs, we had vndoubtedly perished.

Cloth is the chiefe Merchandile in Tarrete.

Cb10. 14.

7 Pon the day of Pentecost there came unto vs a certaine Saracen, unto whom, as he talked with vs, we expounded the Christian Faith. Who (hearing of Gods benefits exhibited which find that vinto mankind, by the Incarnation of our Saujour Christ, and the Resurrection of the dead, and he wouldbe the Hidgement to come, and that in Baptisme was a washing away of sinnes) said, that hee would be baptized. But when wee prepared our felues to the baptizing of him, hee fuddenly or cereane mounted on horfe-back, laying, that he would go home and confult with his wife what were best med to bee L:- to be done. And on the morrow after he told vs, that he durft in no case receive Baptisme, because then he should drinke no more Cosmos. For the Christians of that place affirme, that no true Christians ought to drinke thereof : and that without the faid liquor hee could not liue in that Defart. From which opinion, I could not for my liferemoue him. Wherefore be it knowne of a certaintie vinto your Highnesse, that they are much estranged from the Christian Faith, by 40 reason of that opinion which hath beene broached and confirmed among them by the Russians. of whom there is a great multitude in that place. The fame day Scacatai the Captaine aforefaid gaue vs one man to conduct vs to Sarrach, and two other to guide vs vnto the next Lodging, which was distant from that place five dayes Iourney for Oxen to travell. They gave vnto vs alioa Goate for victuals, and a great many Bladders of Cowes Milke, and but a little Colmos, because it is of so great estimation among them. And so taking our Journey directly toward the North, mee thought that wee had pasted through one of Hell gates. The Servants which conducted vs began to play the bold Theeues with vs , feeing vs take folittle heed vnto our felues. At length having loft much by there Theeuery, harme taught vs wildome. And then wee came vnto the extremitie of that Province, which is fortified with a Ditch from one Sea vnto ano- 10 ther : without the bounds whereof their Lodging was fituate. Into the which, fo foone as wee had entred, all the Inhabitants there feemed vnto vs to be infected with Leprofie : for certayne base fellowes were placed there to receive Tribute of all fuch as tooke Sale out of the S.l.-pits aforesaid. From that place they told vs that we must trauell fifteene dayes Journey, before we should find any other people. With them we dranke Cosmos, and gaue vnto them a basket full of Fruits and of Bisket. And they gave vnto vs eight Oxen and one Goate, to sustayne vs in fo great a Icurney, and I know not how many bladders of Milke. And fo changing our Oxen, we tooke our Journey which wee finished in tenne dayes, arriving at another Lodging : neither found weany water all that way, but onely in certayne Ditches made in the Valleyes, except two Rivers. And from the time wherein wee departed out of the forefaid Province of Gafaria, 60 we travelled directly East-ward, having a Sea on the South-side of vs , and a waste Defart on the North, which Detart, in some places, reacheth twentiedayes Journey in breadth, and there is neither Tree, Mountayne, nor Stone therein. And it is most excellent Pasture. Here the Comanians, which were called Capthac, were wont to feed their Cattell. Howbeit by the Datch-

Iourney.

men they are called Valani, and the Prouince it selie Valania. But Isidore calleth all that tract Valani. of Land Aretching from the River of Tanais to the Lake of Maois, and so along as farre as Danabus, the Countrey of Alama. And the fame land continueth in length from Dambius vito Tanais (which divideth Asia from Europe) for the space of two moneths journey, albeit a man Tanais (Which diminering ages to ride; and it was all ouer inhabited by the Commitons, Thelength of thould ride post as fast as the Tartars vie to ride; and it was all ouer inhabited by the Commitons, Thelength of thould rue poit as tale as the Auras as farre as the River of Edil, or Volga: the space betweene Commia. the two which Riuers is a great and long journey to bee travelled in ten daies. To the North of the fame Prounce lyeth Ruffia, which is full of wood in all places, and stretcheth from Polonia Ruffia. and Hangaria, even to the River of Tanais : and it hath beene wasted all over by the Tartars, and

Io as yet is daily wasted by them. Hey preferre the Saracens before the Ruffians, because they are Christians, and when they Chap. 15. are able to give them no more gold nortifuer, they drive them and their Children like flocks Of our afficial. of Sheepe into the wildernesse, constraining them to keepe their Cattell there. Beyond Rassia ons which wee of Sheepe into the wildermene, constraining them to keepe their Latentheir. Beyond Ryllad filling a lyeth the Countrey of Pruffia, which the Dube Knights of the order of Saint Martie Hofpitall filling and the Countrey of Pruffia, which the Dube Knights of the order of Saint Martie Hofpitall filling and the Countrey of Pruffia, which the Dube Knights of the order of the Saint Martie of the Saint Martin Sai ly win Ruffies, if they would put to their helping hand. For if the Tartars should but once know buriall.

that the great Priest, that is to say, the Pope did cause the Ensigne of the Crosse to be displaied Pissifia, against them, they would flie all into their Desart and solitarie places. Wee therefore went on 20 towards the East, seeing nothing but Heauen and Earth, and sometimes the Sea on our right hand, called the Sea of Tanais, and the Sepulchres of the Comanians, which appeared vnto vs two leagues off, in which places they were wont to burie their kindred altogether, So long as we were trauelling through the Defart, it went reasonably well with vs. For I cannot sufficiently expresse in words the irkesome and tedious troubles which I sustained, when I came at any of their places of abode. For our Guide would have vs goe in vnto every Captaine with a preor their places of about the form of their places would not extend fo farre. For we were every day eight persons of vs farreame feending our wayfaring prouision, for the Tartars servants would all of them eate of our victue beare in Sumi als. We our felues were fine in number, and the fernants our Guides were three, two to drive mere our Carts, and one to conduct vs vnto Sartach. The flesh which they gaue vs was not sufficient 30 for vs; neither could we find any thing to be bought for our money. And as we fate vnder our

Carts in the coole shadow, by reason of the extreame and vehement heate which was there at that time, they did fo importunately and shamelessy intrude themselues into our company, that they would even tread vpon vs, to see whatfoever things we had. Having lift at any time to ease themselues, the filthie Lozels had not the manners to withdraw themselues farther from vs, then a Beane can be cast. Yea, like vile slovens they would lay their tailes in our presence, while they were vet talking with vs: many other things they committed, which were most tedious and loathfome vnto vs. But aboue all things it grieued me to the very heart, that when I would vt. ter ought vnto them, which might tend to their edification, my foolish interpreter would say: vou should not make me become a Preacher now; I tell you, I cannot nor I will not rehearse 40 any fuch words. And true it was which he faid, for I perceived afterward, when I began to have

a little smattering in the language, that when I spake one thing, hee would say quite another. whatfoeuer came next vnto his witleffe tongues end. Then feeing the danger I might incurre in speaking by such an Interpreter, I resoluted much rather to hold my peace, and thus we trauelled with great toile from lodging to lodging, till at the length, a few daies before the Feast of Saint Marie Magdalene, we arrived at the banke of the mightie River Tanais, which divideth Alia from Europa, euen as the River Nilus of Agypt difioyneth Afia from Africa. At the same place where we arrived, Baatu and Sartach did cause a certaine Cottage to be built vpon the Easterne banke of the River, for a companie of Russians to dwell in, to the end, they might transport Ambaffadours and Merchants in Ferrie-boates ouer that part of the Riuer. First, they ferried 50 vs ouer, and then our Carts, putting one wheele into one Liter, and the other wheele into another

Liter, having bound both the Liters together, and so they rowed them ouer. In this place our Guide played the foole most extreamely. For he imagining that the said Russians, dwelling in the Cottage, should have provided vs Horses, sent home the Beasts which wee brought with vs, in another Cart, that they might returne vnto their owne Masters. And when we demanded to haue fome beasts of them, they answered, that they had a priviledge from Baatu, whereby they were bound to none other service, but onely to ferrie over Goers and Commers : and that they received great tribute of Merchants in regard thereof. Wee staied therefore by the said Rivers fide three daies. The first day they gaue vnto vs a great fresh Turbut : the second day they be-Howed Rye bread, and a little flesh voon vs, which the Purueyer of the Village had taken vp at

60 every house for vs : and the third day dryed Fishes , which they have there in great aboundance. The faid River was even as broade in that place, as the River of Sein is at Paris. And before wee The breading came there, wee passed over many goodly waters, and full of Fish: howbeit the barbarous and Tenin. rude Tartars know not how to take them : neither doe they make any reckoning of any Fish. except it bee fo great, that they may prey vpon the flesh thereof, as vpon the flesh of a Ram.

He is much de-

This River is the limit of the East part of Ruffia, and it springeth out of the Fonnes of Meetis, which Fennes fretch vnto the North Ocean. And it runneth Southward into a certaine great Sea leuen hundred miles about, before it falleth into the Sea called Pontus Euxinus. And all the Rivers which we passed ouer, ran with full streame into those quarters. The foreskid River hath great store of wood also growing vpon the West side thereof. Beyond this place the Tartars einning of Au alcend no farther vnto the North : for at that feafon of the yeere, about the first of August. they guft, the Ta- begin to returne backe vnto the South. And therefore there is another Cottage somewhat lower where Passengers are ferried ouer in Winter time, and in this place we were driven to great extremitie, by reason that we could get neither Horses, nor Oxen for any money. At length, afcer I had declared vnto them, that my comming was to labour for the common good of all ro Christians, they sent vs Oxen and Men; howbest wee our selues were faine to trauell on foot, At this time they were reaping their Rye. Wheate prospereth not well in that soile. They have the feed of Millium in great abundance. The Russian women attire their heads like vnto our women. They embroider their Safegards or Gownes on the outfide, from their feet vnto their knees with partie-coloured or grey stuffe. The Russian men weare Caps like vnto the Dutch men. Also they weare voon their heads certaine sharpe and high-crowned Hats made of Felt, much like vnto a Sugar-loafe. Then trauailed we three daies together, not finding any people. And when our felues and our Oxen were exceeding wearie and faint, not knowing how farre off we should find any Tartar, on the sudden there came two Horses running towards vs. which we tooke with great joy, and our Guide and Interpreter mounted vpon their backs, to fee how farre off they could descrie any people. At length, vpon the fourth day of our journey, having 20 found some Inhabitants, we reioyced like Sea faring men, which had escaped out of a dangerous Tempest, and had newly recoursed the Hauen. Then having taken fresh Horses, and Oxen, we paffed on from lodging to lodging, till at the last, vpon the second of the Kalends of August, we arrived at the habitation of Duke Sartach him felfe.

Chap. 16. Of the Dominion of Sar-

the Caffin Sca.

He returneth

Chap. 17. Of the Court A Nd wee found Sartach lying within three daies iourney of the River Etilia: whose Court feemed vnto vs to be very great. For he himselfe had fix wives, and his eldeft ionne also of Satathand had three wives : every one of which women hath a great houle, and they have each one of them has three writes federy one or which women man a great room arm of Coiat, who is a man about two hundred Carts. Our guide went vinco a certaine Nefferion named Coiat, who is a man of the control of the ficence thereof great authoritie in Sartachs Court. He made vs to goe very farre vnto the Lorisgate. For to Colar, the Nello- they call him who hath the Oifce of entertayning Ambaffadours. In the evening, Colar commanded vs to come vnto him. Then our Guide began to enquire what wee would prefent him withall, and was exceedingly offended, when hee faw that wee had nothing ready to prefent.

He Region lying beyond Tanais, is a very goodly Countrey, having store of Rivers and Woods toward the North part thereof. There are mightie huge Woods which two forts of people doe inhabit. One of them is called Moxel, being meere Pagans, and without Law. They tach, and of his haue neither Townes nor Cities, but onely Cottages in the Woods. Their Lord and a great part 30 of themselues were put to the Sword in high Germanie. Whereupon they highly commend the Subjects, of themiciaes were put to the award in high garmann, the top of the bondage of the Tariars, The people of braue courage of the Almans, hoping as yet to be delinered out of the bondage of the Tariars, by their meanes. If any Merchant come vnto them, hee must prouide things necessary for him, with whom hee is first of all entertained, all the time of his abode among them. If any lyeth with another mans wife, her husband, valeffe he be an eye-witneffe thereof, regardeth it not: for they are not icalous ouer their wives. They have abundance of Hogs, and great store of Honie and Waxe, and divers forts of rich and coffly Skins, and plentie of Faulcons. Next vnto them are other people called Merclas, which the Latines call Merdus, and they are Saracens. Beyond called Alerdai them is the River of Etilia, or Volga, which is the mightiest River that ever I faw. And it isfubeing Santenne eth from the North part of Bulgaria the greater, and fo trending along Southward, disimboqueth 40 into a certaine Lake, containing in circuit the space of foure moneths trauell, whereof I will speake hereafter. The two foresaid Rivers, namely, Tanais and Etilia, otherwise called Volca. towards the Northerne Regions, through the which we travailed, are not diffant afunder about ten daies journey, but Southward they are divided a great space one from another. For Tanais descendeth into the Sea of Pontus : Etilia maketh the forefaid Sea or Lake, with the helpe of many other Rivers, which fall thereinto out of Persia. And wee had to the South of vs huge high Mountaines, vpon the fides thereof towards the faid Defart, doe the people called Copys, and the Alani or Acas inhabit, who areas yet Christians, and wage warre against the Tartars. Beyond them, next vnto the Sea or Lake of Etilia, there are certaine Saracens called Lefgi, who are in f. biection vnto the Tartars. Beyond thefe is Porta ferrea, or the Iron gate, now called 50 Derbene, which Alexander built to exclude the barbarous Nations out of Persia. Concerning the fituation whereof, your Maiestie shall understand more about the end of this Treatile: for I trauailed in my returne by the very same place. Betweene the two foresaid Rivers, in the Regions through the which we passed, did the Comanians of old time inhabit, before they were outrun by the Tartars.

We stood before him, and he sate maiestically, having mutick and dancing in his presence. Then Hinake vato him in the words before recited, telling him for what purpole I was some vato his Lord, and requesting to much fauour at his hands, as to bring our Letters vnto the fight of his Lord, I excuted my felfe also, that I was a Monke, not having, nor receiving, nor ving any gold. or filter, or any other precious thing, faue onely our Bookes, and the Veitments wherein wee ferried God; and that this was the cause why I brought no present vnto him, nor vnto his Lord. For I that had abandoned mine owne goods, could not be a transporter of things for other men. Then he answered very courteously, that being a Monke, and so doing, I did well; for so I should observemy yow : neither did himselfe stand in need of bught that we had , but rather was ready To to bestow your vs such things as we our selves stood in need of ; and hee caused vs to sit downer and to drinke of his Milke. And prefently after, hee requested vs to fay our denotions for him : and wee did fo. Hee enquired also who was the greatest Prince among the Francks? And I faid. the Emperour, if he could enjoy his owne Dominions in quiet. No (quoth hee) but the King of France. For hee had heard of your Hignesse by Lord Baldwine of Henault. I found there also one of the Knights of the Temple who had beene in Cypran, and had made report of all things which he faw there. Then returned we vinco our Lodging. And on the morrowaiwe fent him a flaggon of Muscadell Wine (which had lasted verie well in so long a lourney) and a boxe full of Bisket, which was most acceptable vnto him. And hee kept our Seruants with him for that Euening. The next morning hee commanded mee to come vnto the Court, and to bring the Kings Letters and my Vestments, and Bookes with mee: because his Lord was desirous to fee them. Which we did accordingly, lading one Cart with our Bookes and Veftments, and another with Bisket. Wine, and Fruits. Then hee caufed all our Bookes and Veftments to bee land forth. And there flood round about vs many Tartars, Christians, and Saracens on Horsebacke. At the fight whereof, hee demanded whether I would befrow all those things voon his Lord or no : Which faying made mee to tremble, and grieued mee full fore. Howbert, diffembling our griefe as well as we could, we shaped him this Answere : Sir, our humble request is that our Lord your Maiter would vouchfafe to accept our Bread, Wine, and Fruits, not as a Prefent because it is too meane, but as a Benediction, least we should come with an emptie hand before bim. And hee fiell fee the Letters of my Souereigne Lord the King; and by them hee shall vn-30 derstand for what cause we are come vnto him , and then both our selves, and all that wee have, shall stand to his courtesse: for our Vestments bee holy, and it is valawfull for any but Priess to touch them. Then he commanded vs to inueft our felues in the faid Garments, that we might goe before his Lord; and we did fo. Then I my felfe putting on our most precious Ornaments. tooke in mine armes a very faire Cushion, and the Bible which your Maiestie gave mee, and a most beautifull Pfalter, which the Queenes Grace bestowed upon mee, wherein there were goodly Pictures. Mine Affociate tooke a Miffall and a Croffe : and the Clerke having put on his Surplice, tooke a Cenfer in his hand. And so we came vnto the presence of his Lord; and they lifted up the Felt hanging before his doore, that hee might behold us. Then they caused the Clerke and the Interpreter thrice to bow the knee : but of vs they required no fuch fubmission. And they diligently admonished vs to take heed, that in going in, and in comming out. wee touched not the threshold of the house, and requested vs to sing a Benediction for him. Then we entred in, finging Salue Regina, And within the entrance of the doore flood a bench with Colmos, and drinking cups thereupon. And all his Wives were there affembled. Also the Moals or rich Tartars thrusting in with vs pressed vs fore. Then Coiat carryed vnto his Lord the Cenfer with Incenfe, which hee beheld very diligently, holding it in his hand, Afterward he carryed the Pfalter vnto him, which he looked earneftly vpon, and his Wife also that fate beside him. After that he carryed the Bible : then Sartach asked if the Gospell were contayned therein ! Yea (faid I) and all the holy Scriptures befides. He tooke the Croffe also in his hand, and demanded concerning the Image, whether it were the Image of Christ or no. I faid it was.

The Nestorians and the Armenians doe neuer make the figure of Christ vpon their Crosses. No good con-50 Wherefore either they feeme not to thinke well of his Paffion, or elfe they are ashamed of it. sequence. Then hee caused them that stood about vs, to stand aside, that hee might more fully behold our Ornaments. Afterward I deliuered vnto him your Maiesties Letters, with the Translation thereof into the Arabicke and Spriacke Languages. For I caused them to bee translated at Acon, into the Character and Dialect of both the faid Tongues. And there were certayne Armenian Priests, which had skill in the Turkish and Arabian Languages. The aforesaid Knight also of the Order of the Temple had knowledge in the Syriake, Turkish, and Arabian Tongues. Then wee departed forth , and put off our Vestments, and there came vnto vs certayne Scribes together with the forefaid Coiat, and caused our Letters to bee interpreted. Which Letters be-

60 ing heard, hee caused our Bread, Wine and Fruits to bee received. And hee permitted vs also to carrie our Vestments and Bookes vnto our owne Lodging. This was done vpon the Feast of S. Peter ad vincula.

Ch.1p.18. How they were giuen in

14

He next morning betimes came vnto vsa certayne Priest, who was brother vnto Coiat. I requelling to have our boxe of Chrisme, becaule Sarrach (as he faid) was detirous to fee it: and fo we gaue it him. About Euentyde Coint fent for vs, faying : My Lord your King wrote good words vate my Lord and Matter Sartach. Howbeit there are certayne matters of difficultie in Fasher of Sar- them, concerning which he dare not determine ought, without the adulte and counfell of his Father. And therefore of accessitie you must depart voto his Father, leaving behind you the two Carts, which you brough bither yesterday with Vestments and Bookes, in my custodie: because my Lord is defirous to take more diligent view thereof. I presently suspecting what mischiefe might enfue by his courtoufnesse, fail vnto him : Sir, we will not onely leave those with you, but the two other Cartsalio, which we have in our possession, will wee commit vine your 10 cultodie. You shall not (quoth he) leave those behind you, but for the other two Carts first named, wee will faishe your request. I faid that this could not conveniently bee done : but needs we must leave all with him. Then he asked, whether we meant to tarrie in the Land lanswered : If you throughly understand the Letters of my Lord the King, you know that we'are even so determined. Then he replyed, that we ought to bee patient and lowly : and so wee departed from him that Euening. On the morrow after he fent a Nefferian Prieft for the Carts, and wee caufed all the foure Cares to be delinered. Then came the forefaid brother of Coint to meetvs. and separated all those things, which we had brought the day before vnto the Court, from the reft, nassely, the Bookes and Vertments, and tooke them away with him. Howbeit Coist had commanded, that we should carrie those Vestments wish vs, which we were in the presence of 20 Sartach, that we might put them on before Baatu, if need should require : but the said Priest tooks them from vs by violence, saying : thou haft brought them vnto Sartach, and wouldest thou carrie them vito Baatus? And when I would have rendred a reason, hee answered : bee not too talkatine, but goe your wayes. Then I faw that there was no remedie but patience : for wee could have no accesse vinto Sartach himfelfe, neither was there any other, that would doe vs Luftice. I was afraid alto in regard of the Interpreter, leaft he had spoken other things then I faid vnto him : for his will was good, that wee should have given away all that we had. There was yet one comfort remayning vnto mee : for when I once perceived their covetous intent, I conserved from among our Bookes the Bible, and the Sentences, and certayne other Bookes which I made speciall account of. Howbeit, I durft not take away the Psalter of my Souereigne 20 Ladie the Queene, because it.was too well knowne, by reason of the Golden Pictures therein. And so we returned with the two other Carts vnto our Lodging. Then came hee that was anpointed to be our Guide vinto the Court of Baars, willing vs to take our Tourney in all postehafte: voto whom I faid, that I would in no case haue the Carts to goe with me. Which thing he declared unto Coias. Then Coias commanded, that wee should leave them and our Servant with him. And we did as he commandeed. And so travelling directly East-ward towards Baathe third day we came to Etilia or Volga: the fireames whereof when I beheld , I wondred from what Regions of the North fuch huge and mightie waters should descend, Before we were devarted from Sartach, the forelaid Coist, with many other Scribes of the Court laid vnto vs: do: not make report that our Lord is a Christian, but a Moal. Because the name of a Christian 40 feemeth vinto them to be the name of fome Nation. So great is their ptide, that albeit they beleeue perhaps some things concerning Christ, yet will they not be called Christians, being defirous that their owne name, that is to fay, Moal should be exalted aboue all other names. Neither will they be called by the name of Tartars. For the Tartars were another Nation, as I was informed by them.

They are come as farre 25 Tog4.

The Tarters will be called

> Chap. 19. How Sartach. and Manga-Can and Ken-Can doe reue rencevnto Christians. This Historie of Presbyter Ichn in the North-caft,is alleaged at large by Gerar-dus Mercator in his generali

A T the same time when the Fronchmon tooke Anioch, a certayne man named Con Con, had Dominion outer the Northerne Regions, lying the teabouts. Con is a proper name: [an is a name of authoritie or dignitie, which fignifieth a Diviner or Sooth-sayer. All Diviners are called Can among them. Whereupon their Princes are called Can, because that vnto them be- 50 longeth the gouernment of the people by Divination. We doe read also in the Hillorie of Antiochia, that the Turkes lent for ayde against the Frenchmen, vnto the Kingdome of Con Can. For out of those parts the whole Nation of the Turkes first came. The said Con was of the Nation of Kara-Catay. Kara fignifieth blacke, and Catay is the name of a Countrey. So that Kara-Catay fignifieth the blacke Catsy. This name was given to make a difference betweene the foresaid people, and the people of Cates inhabiting Eath-ward over against the Ocean Sea: concerning whom your Maiestie shall vnderstand more hereafter. These Catayans dwelt vpon certayne Alpes, by the which I trauelled. And in a certaine plaine Countrey within those Alpes, there inhabited a Nestorian shepheard, being a mightie Gouernour ouer the people called Tay-From whence. man, which were Christians, following the Sect of Nefforms. After the death of Con Can, 60 the Turies first the faid Naftorson exalted himselfe to the Kingdome, and they called him King John, reporting ten times more of him then was true. For io the Nestorians which come out of those parts, vie to doe. For they blaze abroad great rumours, and reports vpon iust nothing. Whereupon they gave out concerning Sartach, that he was become a Christian, and the like also they reported concerning Manga Can, and Ken Can : namely, because these Tartars make more account of Christians, then they doe of other people, and yet in very deed, themselues are no Christians. So likewife there went forth a great report concerning the faid King lohn. Howbeit, when I travelled along by his Territories, there was no man that knew any thing of him. but onely a few Nestorians. In his Pastures or Territories dwelleth Ken Can, at whose Court Frier The place of Andrew was. And I my felte passed by it at my returne. This lobn had a Brother, being a Ken Kan his mightieman also, and a Shepheard like himselfe, called Unt, and he inhabited beyond the aboad, mightic man also, and a Shepheard Fixe himtere, cance om, and he himsolited beyond the Vatem, or Alpes of Gara Caray, being distant from his Brother lobn, the space of three weekes journey. Vate Can.

CHAP.I. Ken Can bis abode. Worthippers of Deuils. Cyngis, a Black-Imith.

He was Lord oner a certaine Village, called Cara Garam, having people also for his Subjects, The Village of To named Crit, or Merkin, who were Christians of the Sect of Nestorius. But their Lord abando- Cara Carana ning the worship of Christ, following after Idols, recaining with him Priests of the faid Idols, crit & Merkit. who all of them are Worshippers of Deuils and Sorcerers. Beyond his Pastures, some tenne or fifteene dayes journey, were the Pattures of Moal, who were a poore and beggerly Nation; Moel in old without Gouernor, and without Law, except their Sooth-fayings, and their Davinations, vnto times beager. the which detestable studies , all in those parts doe apply their minds. Neere vato Moal were ly people. other poore people, called Tartars. The forefaid King John dyed without Iffue Male, and thereupon his Brother Une was greatly inriched, and caused himselfe to be named gan : and his Droues and Flockes raunged even vnto the Borders of Moal. About the fame time there was one Cyngis, a Blacke. Smith, among the people of Moal. This Cyngis stole as many Cartell from Cyngis. 20 Vut Can, as he could possibly get : infomuch, that the Shepheards of Vut complained vnto their Lord. Then prouided he an Armie, and marched vp into the Countrey of Moal, to feeke for the faid Crugis. But Crugis fled among the Tarears, and hid himselve among it them. And Was having taken some spoiles both from Moul, and also from the Tartars, returned home. Then ipake Comess vnto the Tarters, and vnto the people of Most, faying : Sirs, because we are diffitute of a Gouernor and Captaine, you fee how our Neighbours doe oppresse vs. And the Tartars

fame time was the Daughter of Vas taken, which Gagis married vnto one of his Sonnes, by whom the conceined, and brought forth the great Can, which now reigneth, called Mangu-Can. Mangu-Can. 30 Then Cyagis fent the Tartars before him in all places where he came and thereupon was their name published and spread abroad : for in all places, the people would cry out : Lee, the Tartars come, the Tartars come. Howbeit, through continuall warras, they are now, all of them in a manner, confumed and brought to nought. Whereupon the Made indeuour what they can, to extinguish the name of the Tartars, that they may exalt their owne name. The Countre's wherein they first inhabited, and where the Court of Cyngis Comas yet remaineth, is called Mancherule. But because Tartaria is the Region, about which they have obtained their Conqueffs, they effeeme that as their royall and chiefe Citie, and there for the most part doe they elect their great Can.

Now, as concerning Sartach, whether hee believes in Christ or no, I know not. This I Chap. 20. am fure of, that he will not be called a Christian. Yea, nother he seemeth vnto mee to Of the Rufderide and skoffe at Christians. He lyeth in the way of the Christians, as namely, of the Rufa fians, Hungari fians, the Valachians, the Bulgarmus of Bulgaria the leffe, the Soldainnes, the Kerkis, and the Alanians: who all of them passe by him, as they are going to the Court of his Father Baats, to Castian Sez. carrie gifts; whereupon he is more in league with them. Howbeit, if the Saracens come, and bring greater gifts then they, they are dispatched sooner. He lath about him certaine Nestan rian Priefts, who pray voon their Beades, and fing their deuotions. Also, there is another vitder Baatu, called Berta, who feedeth his Cattell toward Porta Ferrea, or Derbent, where lyeth Or Borto.

the pallage of all those Saracens which come out of Persia, and out of Turke to goe vnto Baa- . in 50 tu, and passing by, they give rewards vnto him. And he professeth himselfe to be a Saracen, and will not permit Swines flesh to be eater in his Dominions. Howbeit, at the time of our returne, Balus commanded him to remooue himselfe from that place, and to inhabite vpon the East side of Volga: for he was vnwilling that the Saragens Messengers should passe by the faid Berta, because he saw it was not for his profit. For the space of soure daies while wee remained in the Court of Sartach, wee had not any victuals at all allowed vs. but once onely a little Cosmos. And in our journey betweene him and his Father, wee travelled in great fearer For certaine Russians, Hungarians, and Alanians, being Servants vnto the Tartars, (of whom they have great multitudes among them) affemble themselves twentie or thirtie in a company, and to fecretly in the night conveying themselves from home, they take Bowes and Ar-

60 rowes with them, and whomforger they finde in the night feafon, they put him to death, hiding themselves in the day time. And having tyred their Horses, they goe in the night vato a company of other Horses feeding in some Patture, and change them for new, taking with them allo one or two Horses besides, to eate them when they stand in neede. Qurguide therefore was fore atraid, leaft we should have met with such companions.

and Mosts appointed him to be their Chieftaine. Then having fectetly gathered together an Armie, bee brake in fuddenly vpon Unt, and ouercame him, and Out fled into Catana. At the

In this Journey we had dyed for Famine, had wee not carryed fome of our Bisket withvs. At length we came vnto the mightie Riuer of E-ha, or Volga. For it is foure times greater, then the River of Sein, and of a wonderfull depth : and issuing forth of Bulgaria the greater, it runneth into a certayne Lake or Sea, which of late they call the Hirean Sea, according to the name of a certaine Citie in Persa, standing vpon the shoare thereof. Howbeit Isidare calleth it the Cafison Sea. For it hath the Cafpion Mountaynes and the Land of Perfia fituate on the South-fide shereof: and the Mountaynes of Musiber, that is to lay, of the people called Assalini towards the East, which Mountaynes are conjoyned vnto the Caspian Mountaynes: But on the North-fide thereof lyeth the same Defart, wherein the Tartars doe now inhabit. Howbeit heretofore there dwelt certayne people called Changla. And on that fide it receiueth the ffreames 10 of Etilia, which River increaseth in Summer time, like vnto the River Nilus in Egypt. Vpon the West part thereof, it hath the Mountaynes of Alani, and Lessi, and Porta ferrea, or Derbent, and the Mountaynes of Georgia. This Sea therefore is compafied in on three fides with the Mountaynes, but on the North-fide with plaine ground. Frier Andrew in his Journey travelled round about two fides thereof, namely, the South and the East-lides : and I my felse about other two, that is to fay, the North-fide in going from Baatu to Mangu-Can, and in returning likewife 1 and the West-fide in comming home from Beats into Syria. A man may trauell round about it in foure moneths. And it is not true which Isidore reporteth, namely, that this Sea is a Bay or Gulfe comming forth of the Ocean : for it doth, in no part thereof, ioyne with the O-

Chap. 21. Of the Court of Baatu : and how we were entertayned by The North Ocean,

Allrazan.

cean, but is enuironed on all fides with Land. A Lebe Region extending from the West shoare of the foresaid Sea, where Alexanders Iron gate, otherwise castled the Citie of Derbent, is situate, and from the Mountaynes of Alaria, all along by the Fennes of Maoiis, whereinto the River of Tanais falleth, and fo forth, to the North Ocean, was wont to be called Albania. Of which Countrey Isidore reporteth, that there bee Dogges of such an huge stature, and so fierce, that they are able in fight to match Bitls, and to mafter Lions. Which is true, as I vnderstand by diuers, who told me, that there towards the North Ocean, they make their Dogges to draw in Carts like Oxen, by reason of their bignelle and itrength. Moreouer, vpon that part of Etilia where we arrived, there is a new Cottage built, wherein they have placed Tartars and Ruffians both together, to ferrie ouer, and transport Mellengers going and comming, to and fro the Court of Basts. For Basts remayneth vpon the farther fide towards the East. Neither ascendeth hee in Summer time more Northward then the foresaid place where we arrived, but was even then descending to the South. From Ianuary vntill August, both he and all other Tartair ascend by the banks of Rivers, towards cold He descended and Northerly Regions, and in August they begin to returne backe againe. Wee passed downer downe the Riunto the Villages of Bulgaria the greater, standing toward the North, it is size dayes lourney, which what Deuill carried the Religion of Mahomet thither. For, from Derhent, which is vpon the extreme borders of Persia, it is aboue thirtie dayes sourney to passe ouerthwart the Defart, and so to ascend by the banke of Etilia, into the foresaid Countrey of Bulgaria. All 40 which way there is no Citie, but onely certayne Cottages neere unto that place where Etilia falleth into the Sea. Those Bulgarians are most wicked Saracens, more earnestly professing the dam-The description hable Religion of Mabones, then any other Nation what seems, more cornettuy protesting the damthe Court of Baats, I was aftonied at the fightethereof: for his Houles or Tents leemed as though they had beene some huge and mightie Citie, stretching out a great way in length, the people ranging vp and downe about it for the space of some three or source leagues. And even as the people of Ifrael knew every man, on which fide of the Tabernacle to pitch his Tent : even so every one of them knoweth right well, towards what fide of the Court hee ought to place his house Horda fignia one or them knowed light the Cart. Whereupon the Court is called in their Language Horda, fith the midft, when he takes it from off the Cart. Whereupon the Court is called in their Language Horda, which fignifieth, the midft : because the Gouernour or Chieftaine among them dwels alwayes 50 in the middeft of his people: except onely that directly towards the South no subject or interiour person placeth himselfe, because towards that Region the Court gates are set open ; but vnto the right hand, and the left hand they extend themselues as farre as they will, according to the conveniencie of places, to that they place not their houses directly opposite against the Court, At our arrivall wee were conducted vnto a Saracen, who provided not for vs any victuals at all. The day following, we were brought vnto the Court : and Baats had caused a large Tent to bee erected, because his house or ordinary Tent could not contayine so many men and women as were assembled. Our Guide admonished vs not to speake, till Baats had given vs commandement so to doe, and that then we should speake our minds briefly. Then Baats demanded whether your Maieltie had lent Ambassadors vnto him or no ? I answered, that your Maiestie had sent Messen 60 gers to Ken-Can: and that you would not have fent Mellengers vnto him, or Letters vnto Sartach, had not your Highnesse beene perswaded that they were become Christians : because you fent not vnto them for any feare, but onely for congratulation, and courtefies fake, in regard that you heard they were connerted to Christianitie. Then led he vs vnto his Paullion : and we were

charged not to touch the cords of the Tent, which they account in flead of the threshold of the house. There we stood in our habit bare-footed, and bare-headed, and were a great and strange foectacle in their eyes. For indeed Frier lobn de Plano Carpini, had beene there before my com- 100m de Plane ming: howbeit, because he was the Popes Messenger, he changed his habit that hee might not Carp.ni. be contemned. Then wee were brought into the very midft of the Tent, neither required they of vs to doe any reuerence by bowing our knees, as they vie to doe of other Messengers. Wee ftood therefore before him for the space wherein a man might have rehearled the Plalme, Milereremei Dem : and there was great filence kept of all men. Baatn himselfe sate vpon a seat long and broad like vnto a Bed, gilt all ouer, with three flaires to afcend thereunto, and one of his In Ladies fate beside him. The men there assembled, fate downe scattering, some on the right hand of the faid Lady, and some on the left. Those places on the one side which the women filled not up (for there were only the Wives of Baata) were supplyed by the men. Also, at the very entrance of the Tent, flood a bench furnished with Cosmos, and with flately great cups of Silner and Gold, being richly fet with Precious Stones. Bann beheld vs earneftly, and wee him: and he feemed to me to resemble in personage, Monsieur Iohn de Beaumont, whose soule resteth

in peace. And he had a fresh ruddie colour in his countenance. At length hee commanded vs to

focake. Then our Guide gaue vs direction, that we should bow our knees and speake: Where-

vpon I bowed one knee as vnto a man : then he fignified that I should kneele vpon both knees: and I did to, being loth to contend about fuch circumstances. And againe, hee commanded me to 20 speake. Then I thinking of Prayer vnto God, because I kneeled on both my knees, beganne to pray on this wife : Sir, we befeech the Lord, from whom all good things doe proceed, and who harly given you thele earthly benefits, that it would pleafe him hereafter to make you partaker of his heavenly bleffings: because the former without these are but vaine and improfitable. And Ladded further. Be it knowne vnto you of a certaintie, that you shall not obtayne the joyes of Heauen, vnleffe you become a Christian : for God faith, Whofoener beleeueth and is baptized. Shalbe (aued : but be that beleeneth not, Shalbe condemmed. At this word he modeftly smiled ; but the other Moals began to clap their hands, and to decide vs. And of my filly Interpreter, of whom especially I should have received comfort in time of need, was himselfe abashed and veterly dashe out of countenance. Then, after filence made, I said vnto him, I came vnto your Sonne, because we Sourreigne Lord the King of France: and your Sonne fent me hither vnto you. The cause of my

30 heard that he was become a Christian : and I brought vato him Letters on the behalfe of my comming therefore is best knowne vnto your selfe. Then he caused me to rife vp. And he en- The Leiters of quired your Maiesties Name, and my name, and the name of mine Associate and Interpreter, the Frank and caused them all to be put downe in writing. He demanded likewise (because hee had beene informed, that you were departed out of your owne Countries with an Armie) against whom you waged warre ? I answered : against the Saracens, who had defiled the House of God at Ierusalem. He asked also, whether your Highnesse had euer before that time sent any Messengers vnto him, or no ? To you Sir? (faid I) neuer. Then caused he vs to sit downe, and gaue vs of his Milke to drinke, which they account to be a great fauour, especially when any man is admitted

4 0 to drinke Colmos with him in his owne house. And as I fate looking downe vpon the ground. he commanded me to lift vp my countenance, being delirous as yet to take more diligent view of vs. or elfe perhaps for a kind of Superstitious observation. For they, esteeme it a figure of ill lucke, or a prognottication of euill vnto them, when any man fits in their prefence. holding downe his head, as if he were fad : especially, when hee leanes his cheeke or chin voon his hand. Then we departed forth, and immediately after came our Guide vnto vs, and conducting vs vnto our Lodging, faid vnto mee : Your Mafter the King requesteth that you may remayne in this Land, which request Baats cannot fatisfie without the knowledge and confent of Manou-Can. Wherefore you, and your Interpreter must of necessitie goe vnto Mangu-Can. Howbeit your alfociate, and the other man shall returne vnto the Court of Sartach, staying there for you, till you 50 come backe. Then began the man of God mine Interpreter to lament, esteeming himselse but a dead man. Mine Affociate also protested, that they should sooner chop off his head, then withdraw him out of my company. Moreover, I my felfe faid, that without mine Affociate I could

not goe; and that we flood in need of two Semants at the least, to attend upon vs. because, it one should chance to fall fick, we could not be without another. Then returning vnto the Court, he told these Savings vnto Baatu. And Baatu commanded, saving : let the two Priests and the Interpreter goe together, but let the Clerke returne vnto Sartach. And comming againe vnto vs, hee told vs even fo. And when I would have spoken for the Clerke to have had him with vs, he faid : No more words : for Bastu hath refolued, that fo it shall bee , and therefore I dare not goe vnto the Court any more. Gofer the Clerke had remayning of the Almes money be-6c flowed vpon him, twentie fixe Tperperas, and no more; ten whereof he kept for himselfe and for the Lad, and fixteene hee gaue vnto the man of God for vs. And thus were we parted a funder with teares: he returning vnto the Court of Sartash, and our felues remayning still in the same

place.

7 Pon Affumption Euen our Clerke arrived at the Court of Sarrach. And on the morrow at-

18

They trauell the banke of

Hungarians,

A Comonian.

Or, Kangitte.

Chap. 23. Of the River of lagac : Or, Inc. and of diucrs Regions or Nati-Ide, twelue daies iourney from Volga. Pafcatir. The Hungarians deleended from the Bafcirdes.

Valachians.

ter, the Neltonian Priests were adorned with our Vestments in the presence of the faid Seriach. Then were our felues were conducted vnto another Hoft, who was appointed to prouide vs house-roome, victuals, and Hories. But because wee had not ought to bestow vpon him, hee did all things untowardly for vs. Then wee rode on forward with Baats, defcending along by the bancke of Etiles, for the space of five weekes together: Somefue weekes by times mine Affociate was so extreamly hungry, that hee would tell mee in a manner weeping, that it fared with him as though hee had neuer eaten any thing in all his life before. There is a Faire or Market following the Court of Bastu at all times : but it was fo farre diflant from vs, that wee could not have recourse thereunto. For wee were constrained to 10 walke on foote for want of Horses. At length certaine Hungarians (who had sometime beene after a fort Clergie men) found vs out; and one of them could as yet fing many Songs without booke, and was accounted of other Hungarians as a Prieft, and was fent for vnto the Funerals of his deceated Countrey-men. There was another of them also pretily well instructed in his Grammar: for he could understand the meaning of any thing that we spake, but could not anfwere vs. Thefe Hungarians were a great comfort vnto vs, bringing vs Cosmos to drinke, vez. and iometimes fielh for to eate also : who, when they requested to have some Bookes of vs. and I had not any to give them (for indeed we had none but onely a Bible, and a Breuiary) it grieued me exceedingly. And I faid vnto them : Bring me some Inke and Paper, and I will write for you fo long as we shall remaine here : and they did so. And I copied out for them Horas bea- 20 ta Virginis, and Officium defunctorum. Moreouer, vpon a certaine day, there was a Comanian that accompanied vs. faluting vs in Latine, and faying: Saluete Domini. Wondering thereat. and faluting him againe, I demanded of him, who had taught him that kind of falutation! He faid, that he was baptized in Hungaria by our Friers, and that of them he learned it. Hee faid moreover, that Basis had enquired many things of him concerning vs, and that he rold him the effate of our Order. Afterward I faw Bantu riding with his company, and all his Subjects that were housholders or Masters of families riding with him, and (in mine estimation) they were not five hundred persons in all. At length about the end of Holy-rood, there came a certaine rich Most vnto vs (whole Father was a Millenary, which is a great Office among them) fay-Aiourney of ing, I am the man that must conduct you vnto Mangu-Can, and we have thither a journey of 30 fouremoneths fouremoneths long to travell, and there is such extreame cold in those parts, that stones and trees doe even rive afunder in regard thereof. Therefore I would wish you throughly to aduise your felues, whether you be able to indure it or no. Vnto whom I answered : I hope by Gods helpe, that we shall be able to brooke that which other men can indure. Then hee faid : if you cannot indure it, I will forfake you by the way. And I answered him: it were not inst dealing for you fo to do, for we go not thither vpon any bufineffe of our owne, but by reason that we are fent by our Lord. Wherefore, fithence we are committed vnto your charge, you ought in no wife to forfake vs. Then he faid; all shall be well. Afterward he caused vs to shew him all our garments : and whatfoeuer he deemed to bee leffe needfull for vs, he willed vs to leaue it behind in the custodie of our Hoth. On the morrow they brought vnto each of vs a furred Gowne, 40 made all of Rams skinnes, with the Wooll still vpon them, and breeches of the same, and boots also or buskins according to their fathion, and shooes made of felt, and hoods also made of skins The fixeenth, after their manner. The fecond day after Holy-rood, we began to fet forward on our journey, having three guides to direct vs : and we rode continually East-ward, till the feast of All-Saints. Throughout all that Region, and beyond also did the people of Changle inhabite, who were by Forty fix daics parentage discended from the Romans. Vpon the North fide of vs wee had Bulgaria the greater, and on the South, the forefaid Caft ian Sea.

Auing trauelled twelue daies iourney from Etilia, we found a mightie River called Iaoae: which River issuing out of the North, from the land of Pascatir, descended into the fore- 50 faid Sea. The language of Pascatir, and of the Hungarians is all one, and they are all of them Shepheards, not having any Cities. And their Countrey bordereth vpon Bulgaria the greater, on the West frontier. From the North-East part of the said Countrey, there is no Citie at all. Out of the faid fore-named Region of Pascatir, proceeded the Hunnes of old time, who afterward were called Hungarians. Next with it is Bulgaria the greater. Isidore reporteth, concerning the people of this Nation, that with fwift Hories they trauerfed the impregnable walls and bounds of Alex under, (which, together with the Rockes of Caucasus, served to restraine those barbarous and blood-thirstie people from inuading the Regions of the South) infomuch that they had tribute paid vnto them, as farre as Agypt. Likewise they wasted all Countries even vnto France. Whereupon they were more mightie then the Tartars as yet are. And vnto 60 them the Blacians, the Bulgarians, and the Vandals inyned themselves. For out of Bulgaria the greater, came thole Bulgarians. Moreouer, they which inhabite beyond Dambius, neere vnto Constantinople, and not farre from Palcatir, are called Ilac, which (fauing the pronunciation) is all one with Blac, (for the Tartars cannot pronounce the Letter B) from whom also discended

the people which inhabite the Land of Affani. For they are both of them called Ilac, (both thele and the other) in the languages of the Ruffians, the Polonians, and the Bohemans. The Sclauonians speake all one language with the Vandals, all which banded themselves with the Hunnes : and now for the most part, they write themselves vnto the Tartars: whom God hath raised up fro the vermoit parts of the earth, according to that which the Lord faith: I will prouble Deut, 32.v. 21. them to every framely such as keepe nothis Law) by a people, which is no people, and by a foolsh Nation well anger thim. This prophecy is fulfilled, according to the literall fense thereof, upon all Nations which observe not the Law of God. All this which I have written concerning the Land of Pafcair, was told me by certaine Friers Pradicants, which travelled thither before e-10 uer the Tartars came abroad. And from that time they were subdued vnto their neighbours the Bulgarians being Saracens, whereupon many of them proued Saracens alfo. Other matters concenting this people, may be knowne out of Chronicles. For it is manifest, that those Prouinces beyond Confiantinople, which are now called Bulgaria, Valachia, and Sclauonia, were of old time Provinces belonging to the Greeker. Alfo Hungaria was heretofore called Pannonia. And wee camlean huse were riding ouer the Land of Changle, from the feast of Holy-rood, vntill the feast of All-Saints: plane Countravelling almost ruery day (according to mine estimation) as farre, as from Paris to Orleans, trey. and foretimes farther, as we were trouided of Post-horses; for some dates we had change of horfes twice or thrice maday. Sometimes we trauefled two or three daies together, not finding any people, and then we were conftrained not to ride to faft. Of twentie or thirtie Horles we 20 had glwaies the worft, because we were Strangers. For enery one tooke their choice of the best Horfes before vs. They promided me alwaies of a ffrong Horfe, because I was very corpulent and heavy : but whether he ambled a gentle pale or no, I durft not make my question. Neither yet

durit I complaine, although he trotted full fore. But every man must bee contented with his lot as it fell. Whereupon we were exceedingly troubled; for often rimes our Horles were tyred before we could come at any people. And then we were confirmined to beate and whip on our Horfes, and to lay our Garmenes voon other emptie Horfes : yea, and fometimes two of vs to

ride vpon one Horie.

F honger and thirft, cold and wearineffe; there was no end. For they gaue vs no victuals, Chap. 24. 30 Obus onely in the successing. In the morning they vied to give vs a little drinke, or some fod. Of the hunger den Millet to tip off. In the evening they bestowed fiesh vpon vs, as namely, a shoulder and and thirst, and breast of Rams Mucton, and energy man a measured quantitie of broath to drinke. When wee had fufficient of the fleih-broath, we wete maruelloutly well refreshed. And it feemed to mee flained in our most elessant, and most nourishing drinke. Every Saturday I remained fasting vntill night, journed. without eating or drinking of ought. And when might came, I was constrained, to my great griefe and forrow, to cate fiesh. Sometimes we were faine to eate fiesh halfe fodden, or almost raw, and all for want of Fewell to feethe it withall; especially, when we lay in the fields, or were benighted before we came at our journeys end : because we could not then conveniently gather rogether the dung of Horses or Oxen: for other fewell we found but seldome, except 40 perhaps a few thornes in some places. Likewise vpon the banckes of some Rivers, there are woods growing here and there. Howbeit they are very rare. In the beginning our guide highly distained vs, and it was tedious vnto him to conduct such base fellowes. Atterward, when he began to know vs somewhat better, he directed vs on our way by the Courts of rich Moals. uers. and we were requested to pray for them. Wherefore, had I carried a good Interpreter with me. I should have had opportunitie to have done much good. The forefaid Chingis, who was the first great Can or Emperour of the Tartars, had foure Sonnes, of whom proceeded by naturall difcent many children, every one of which doeth at this day enion great possessions : and they are daily multiplyed and dispersed over that huge and vast Desart, which is in dimensions, like vnto the Ocean Sea. Our guide therefore directed vs. as we were going on our journey, vnto 50 many of their habitations. And they maruelled exceedingly, that wee would receive neither Gold nor Silver, nor precious and costly garments at their hands. They inquired also, concerning the great Pope, whether he was of fo lasting an age as they had heard? For there had gone a report among them, that hee was fine hundred yeares old. They inquired likewise of our Countries, whether there were abundance of Sheepe, Oxen, and Horses, or no? Concerning the Ocean Sea, they could not conceine of it, because it was without limits or bankes. Vpon Eight daies the Euen of the feath of All-Saints, wee for looke the way leading towards the East, (because journy Souththe people were now descended very much South) and wee went on our journey by certaine ward Aless, or Mountaines directly South-ward, for the space of eight daies together. In the forefaid Defart I faw many Affes (which they call Colan) being rather like vnto Mules: thefe did High Moun-60 our guide and his companions chafe very eagerly : howbeit, they did but lofe their labour, for taines. the beafts were two swift for them. Vpon the feuenth day there appeared to the South of vs Manured huge high Mountaynes, and we entred into a place which was well watered, and fresh as a Gar-grounds.

den, and found Land tilled and manured. The eight day, after the feaft of All-Saints, wee arri- lage of the Saned at a certaine Towne of the Saracens, named Kenchat, the Gouernour whereof met our Guide ratens.

The fewenth day of No-

Many Lakes.

at the Townes end with Ale and Cups. For it is their manner at all Townes and Villages, fishiect vnto them, to meete the mellengers of Baats and Mangu-Can with meate and drinke. Ar the same time of the yeere, they went upon the Ice in that Countrey. And before the feaft of Saint Michael, we had frost in the Defart. I enquired the name of that Province : but being now in a strange Territorie, they could not tell mee the name thereof, but onely the name of a very fmall Citie in the same Prouince. And there descended a great River downe from the Moun-A great River, taynes, which watered the whole Region, according as the Inhabitants would give it passage, by making divers Chanels and Sluces : neither did this River exonerate it felfe into any Sea, but was swallowed vp by an hideous Gulfe into the bowels of the earth, and it caused many Fennes or Lakes. Also I saw many Vines, and dranke of the Wine thereof.

Chap. 25. How Ban was put to death: and concerning the habitation of the Dutch men. A Cottage. The Mouncounce of Call eafus are extended vnto the Eafterne Sea. The Civic of

Talas, or Chin-

Frier Andrew.

Certaine Alpes wherein the Cara Catayans inhabited. A mightie Ri-Ground tilled. Едини.

A Lake of fiftecne daies compaffe.

Contomanni.

THe day following, we came vnto another Cottage neere vnto the Mountaynes. And I enquired what Mountaynes they were, which I vnderstood to bee the Mountaines of Caucafur. which are stretched forth, and continued on both parts to the Sea, from the West vnto the East : and on the West part they are conjoyned vnto the foresaid Caspian Sea, where into the River of Volga dischargeth his itreames. I enquired also of the Citie of Talas, wherein were certaine Duich men, servants vnto one Buri, of whom Frier Andrew made mention, Concerning whom also I enquired very diligently in the Courts of Sartach and Baats. Howbeit I could have no intelligence of them, but onely that their Lord and Maiter Ban was put to death your the occasion following: This Ban was not placed in good and fertile Pastures. And vpon a certaine day being drunken, hee spake on this wise vnto his men. Am not I of the stocke and kindred of Chingis Can, as well as Baatu? (for in very deede he was brother or Nephew vnto Base tu.) Why then doe I not passe and repasse vpon the banke of Etilia, to feede my Cattell there. as freely as Baats himfelfe doth : Which speeches of his were reported vnto Baats, Whereupon Baats wrote vnto his feruants to bring their Lord bound vnto him. And they did fo. Then Baatu demanded of him whether he had spoken any such words ! And he confessed that he had. Howbeit (because it is the Tarsars manner to pardon drunken men) he excused himselfe that he was drunken at the fame time. How durst thou (quoth Baats) once name mee in thy drunkennesse: And with that hee caused his head to be chopt off. Concerning the foresaid Dutch men. I could not understand ought, till I was come unto the Court of Mangu-Can. And there I was 30 informed that Mangu-Can had removed them out of the jurisdiction of Baatn, for the space The Village of of a moneths journey from Talas Eastward, vnto a certaine Village, called Bolac: where they are fet to dig gold, and to make armour. Whereupon I could neither goe nor come by them. I passed very neere the said Citie in going forth, as namely, within three daies iourney thereof; but I was ignorant that I did io : neither could I have turned out of my way, albeit I had knowne so much. From the foresaid Cottage we went directly Eastward, by the Mountaines aforesaid. And from that time we transiled among the people of Mangu-Can, who in all places fang and danced before our Guide, because he was the messenger of Baats. For this curtesie they doe afford each to other : namely , the people of Mangu-Can receiving the messengers of Baatu in He entreth in- manner aforesaid : and so likewise the people of Basin entertaining the messengers of Mangu- 40 to the Territo- Can. Notwithstanding, the people of Baatuare more surly and stout, and shew not so much ries of Manga- curtesie vnto the subjects of Manga-Can, as they doe vnto them. A few daies after we entered upon those Alpes where the Cara Catayans were wont to inhabit. And there we found a mightie Riuer : insomuch that we were constrained to imbarke our selues, and to faile ouer it. Afterward we came into a certaine Valley, where I faw a Castle destroyed, the walls whereof were onely of mulde : and in that place the ground was tilled also. And there wee found a certaine Village, named Equius, wherein were Saracens, speaking the Persian language: howbeit they dwelt an huge distance from Persta. The day following, having passed over the foresaid Alper, which descended from the great Mountaynes Southward, wee entred into a most beautifull Plaine, having high Mountaynes on our right hand, and on the left hand of vs a certaine Sea or 50 Lake, which containeth fitteene daies journey in circuit. All the foresaid Plaine is most commodiously watered with certaine Freshets, distilling from the said Mountaynes, all which doe fall into the Lake. In Summer time we returned by the North shoare of the faid Lake, and there were great Mountaines on that fide alfo. Vpon the fore-named Plaine there were wont to bee great store of Villages : but for the most part they were all wasted, in regard of the fertile Pathures, that the Tartars might feede their Cattell there. We found one great Citie there, named Coilae, wherein was a Mart, and great store of Merchants frequenting it. In this Citie wee remained fifteene daies, staying for a certaine Scribe or Secretarie of Baats, who ought to have of Merchants, accompanied our Guide for the dispatching of certaine affaires in the Court of Manen, All this Countrey was wont to bee called Organism: and the people thereof had their proper language, 60 and their peculiar kind of writing. But it was altogether inhabited of the people, called Contomanni. The Neftorians likewise in those parts vie the very same kind of language and writing. They are called Organa, because they were wont to bee most skilfull in playing vponthe Organs or Citherne, as it was reported vnto mee. Here first did I see worshippers of Idols, concerning whom, bee it knowne vnto your Maiestie, that there bee many sects of them in the East Countries.

He first fort of these Idolaters are called Ingures : whose Land bordereth vpon the foresaid Chap. 26. Land of Organum, within the faid Mountaines Eastward : and in all their Cities Nessorians How the Nessodoe inhabit together, and they are dispetied likewise towards Perfia, in the Cities of the Sara-rians, 8 ratens, cens. The Citizens of the forefaid Citie of Cailac had three Idol-temples; and I entred into and idolates two of them, to behold their foolish superfictions. In the first of which, I found a man hauing a are toyned totwo of them, to behold their roomin inperintions. In the mittor which, I found a man nating a gether.

Croffe painted with Inke vpon his hand, whereupon I supposed him to be a Christian; for he anfor (wered like a Christian vnto all questions which I demanded of him. And I asked him, Why called legace therefore haue you not the Croffe with the Image of lefu Christ thereupon ? And he antivered, Idolaters, We have no fuch custome. Whereupon I coniectured that they were indeed Christians a but, that for lacke of inftruction they omitted the foresaid ceremonic. For I saw there behind a certaine Cheft (which was vnto them in stead of an Altar, whereupon they set Candles and Oblations) an Image having wings, like vnto the Image of Saint Michael, and other Images allo, holding procedure their fingers, as if they would bleffe fome body. That evening I could not find any thing elfe. could not find any thing elfe. For the Saracens doe onely inuite men thither, but they will not have them speake of their Religion. And cherefore, when I enquired of the Saracens concerning fuch Ceremonies, they were offended thereat. On the morrow after were the Kalends, and the Saracens feast of Pasteo-20 uer. And changing mine Inne or lodging the fame day, I tooke vp mine aboade neere vinto another Idol-Temple. For the Citizens of the faid Citie of Cailac doe curreously inuite, and los singly entercaine all messengers, every man of them according to his abilitie and portion. And entring into the foresaid Idol-temple, I found the Priests of the faid Idols there. For alwaies at the Kalends they fet open their Temples, and the Priests adorne themselues, and offer vo the peoples Oblations of Bread and Fruits. First therefore, I will describe vnto you those rices and erremonies which are common vnto all their Idol-temples and then the superstitions of the forchid legares, which be, as it were, a fest diftinguished from the rest. They doe all of them worship towards the North, clapping their hands together, and proftrating themselves on their knees you the earth, helding allo their foreheads in their hands. Whereupon the Nefferians of 30 those parts will in no case toyne their hands together in time of prayer : but they pray difplaying their hands before their breafts. They excend their Temples in length East and West; and yon the North fide they build a Chamber, in manner of a Vestrie, for themselves to goe forth into. Or tometimes it is otherwise. If it be a foure square Temple, in the midft of the Temple towards the North fide thereof, they take in one Chamber in that place where the Quire should stand. And within the said Chamber, they place a Chest long and broade like vnto a Table, and behind the faid Cheft towards the South, itands their principall Idoll: which I faw at Caratarum, and it was as big as the Idoll of Saint Christopher. Also a certaine Nestorian Privit, which Frier William had beene in Catay, faid that in that Countrey there is an Idoll of fo huge a bigneffe, that it may was at Caract be feenetwo daies journey before a man come at it. And fo they place other Idols round about "". 40 the forelaid principall Idoll, being all of them finely gilt ouer with pure gold : and vpon the faid Cheft, which is in manner of a Table, they fer Candles and Oblations. The doores of their Temples are alwaies open + wards the South, contrary to the customes of the Saracene. They have alfo great Bels like vinto vs. And that is the cause (as I thinke) why the Christians of the Bast will in no case viegreat Bells. Notwithstanding, they are common among the Russians, and Greeians of Gafaria.

A LI their Priests had their heads and heards shauen quite ouer : and they are clad in Saffron Chap. 27. Acoloured garments: and being once shauen, they leade an vnmarried life from that time Of their Tem-Lacoloured garments: and being once induen, they reduce an infinitely the front state with plet and Idols, forward: and they line an hundred or two hundred of them together in one Closter or Couent, and how they 50 Vpon those daies when they enter into their Temples, they place two long Formes therein: and how they behave themand so fitting voon the faid Formes like Singing men in a Quire, namely, the one halfe of them felues in wotdirectly over against the other, they have certaine bookes in their hands, which sometimes they thisping their lay downe by them vpon the Formes : and their heads are bare follong as they remaine in the talle good, Temple. And there they reade loftly vnto themselues, not vttering any voice at all. Whereupon comming in amongst them, at the time of their superstitious denotions, and finding them all fitting mute, in manner aforesaid, I attempted divers waies to provoke them vnto speech, and yet could not by any meanes possible. They have with them also whithersoever they goe, a certaine ftring, with an hundred or two hundred Nut-fiels thereupon, much like to our bead-roll which wee carrie about with vs. And they doe alwaies vtter thele words: On mam Hact ani ; 60 God thou knowest : as one of them expounded it voto me. And so often doe they expect a reward at Gods hands, as they pronounce these words in remembrance of God. Round about their Temple they doe alwaies make a faire Court, like vnto a Church-yard, which they enuiron with a good wall: and upon the South part thereof, they build a great Portall, wherein they fit and conferre together. And vpon the top of the faid Portall, they pitch a long Pole right vp, exal-

ting it, if they can, about all the whole Towne befides. And by the fame Pole all men may know that there stands the Temple of their Idols. These rites and ceremonies aforesaid, be common vnto all Idolaters in those parts. Going vpon a time towards the foresaid Idoll-temple, I found certaine Priests fitting in the outward Portall. And those which I faw, feemed vato mee, by their shauen beards, as if they had beene French men. They wore certaine ornaments upon their heads, made of Paper; The Priests of the foresaid Ingures doe vie such attire whithersoener they goe. They are alwaies in their Saffron coloured lackets, which bee very flraight, being laced or buttened from the bosome right downe, after the French fashion, and they have a Cloake your their left shoulder, descending before and behind under their right arme, like unto a Deacon care rying the houssel-box in time of Lent. Their letters or kind of writing the Tartars did receive: 10 So doe the . They begin to write at the top of their paper, drawing their lines right downer and so they people of this reade and multiply their lines from the left hand to the right. They doe vie certaine papers and navieto write, characters in their Magicall practices. Whereupon their Temples arefull of fuch thort ferolls drawing their hanged round about them. Also Mangu-Can hath sent letters vnto your Maiestie, written in the lines perpendicularly downe language of the Moals or Tartars, and in the foresaid hand or letter of the Ingures. They burne ward, and not their dead according to the ancient custome, and lay vp the ashes in the top of a Pyramis, Now. as we doe, from after I had fate a while by the forelaid Priests, and entred into their Temple, and seene many of the right hand their Images, both great and small, I demanded of them what they believed concerning God ? And they answered : Wee beleeve that the e is onely one God. And I demanded farther : Whether doe you beleeue that he is a Spirit, or some bodily substance ? They faid : Wee beleeue that bee is a 20 Spirit. Then faid 1 : Doe you beleeue that God euer tooke mans nature vpon him : Then they answered; No. And againe I said: Sithence yee beleeue that hee is a Spirit, to what end doe you make so many bodily Images to represent him : Sithence also you beleeve not that hee was made man : why doe you refemble him rather vnto the Image of a man then of any other creature? Then they answered, saying : we frame not those Images whereby to represent God. But when any rich man amongst vs, or his sonne, or his wife, or any of his friends deceaseth he caufeth the Image of the dead partie to be made, and to be placed here : and we in remembrance of him doe reverence thereunto. Then I replyed . You doe thefe things onely for the friendship and flatterie of men. No (faid they) but for their memorie. Then they demanded of mee. as it were in fcotting wife : Where is God? To whom I answered : Where is your foule ! they faid. In 30 our bodies. Then faid I, Is it not in every part of your bodie, ruling and guiding the whole bodie, and yet notwithstanding is not seene or percejued ! Euen so God is euery where, and ruleth all things, and yet is he inuitible, being understanding and wisedome it selfe. Then being designation rous to hade had some more conference with them, by reason that mine Interpreter was wearie. and notable to expresse my meaning, I was constrained to keepe silence. The Moals or Tartars are in this regard of their fect : namely, they believe that there is but one God : howbeit, they make Images of felt, in remembrance of their deceased friends, couring them with five most rich and coftly garments, and putting them into one or two Carts, which Carts no man dare once touch; and they are in the custodie of their Sooth-fayers, who are their Priests, concerning whom, I will give your Highnesse more at large to viderstand hereafter. These Sooth-savers or 40 Dinners, doealwaiesattend vponthe Court of Mangu, and of other great personages. As for the poorer or meaner fort, they have them not, but fuch onely as are of the stocke and kindred of Chingis. And when they are to remoue or to take any journey, the faid Dininers goe before them, euen as the cloudie Pillar went before the Children of Ifrael. And they appoint ground where the Tents must be pitched, and first of all they take downe their owne houses: and after them the whole Court doth the like. Also vpon their festivall daies or Kalends, they take forth the foresaid Images, and place them in order, round or circle wife within the house. Then come the Moals or Tastars, and enter into the same house, bowing themselves before the said Images and worthin them. Moreouer, it is not lawfull for any stranger to enter into that house. For vpon a certaine time I my selfe would have gone in, but I was chidden full well for my labour. 50

Chap. 28. fundry Nations: and of certaine peoi pie which The Countrey of Presbyser Tangut-

To Vt the forefaid *Ingures* (who live among the Christians and Saracens) by their fundry diffur-Btations, as I suppose, have beene brought vnto this, to beleeue that there is but one onely God. And they dwelt in certaine Cities , which afterward were brought in subiection vnto Thingis Can : whereupon hee gaue his daughter in marriage vnto their King. Alfo the Citie of Garagarum it felfe, is in a manner within their Territorie, and the whole Country of King or Presbyter Iohn, and of his brother Vat, lyeth neere vnto their Dominions : fauing that they inhabit in certaine Pathures Northward, and the faid Ingures betweene the Mountaynes towards owne parents, the South, Whereupon it came to passe, that the Moals received letters from them. And they are the Taptars principall Scribes; and all the Nefforians almost can skill of their Letters. Next 60 unto them; betweene the foresaid Mountaynes Eastward, inhabiteth the Nation of Tangut, who are a most valiant people, and tooke Chingu in battell. But after the conclusion of a league, he was let at libertie by them, and afterward libblued them. Thele people of Tangut have Ox-StrangeOxen, en of great strength, with tailes like vnto Horses, and with long shag haire vpon their backs

CHAP, I. and bellies. They have legs greater then other Oxen have, and they are exceeding fieres. There Oxen draw the great houles of the Moals: and their hornes are flender, long, ftreight, and most tharpe pointed : infomuch that their owners are faine to cut off the ends of them. A Cow will not fuffer her felfe to be ccupled vitto one of them, vileffe they whatle or fing vitto her. They haue alfo-the qualities of a Buffe : for if they fee a man cloathed in red, they runne vpon him immediately to kill him. Next vnto them are the people of Teber, men which were wont to eate the carkalles of their decealed parents : that for pities lake , they might make no other Sepulchre for them, then their owne bowels. Howbest of late they have lett off this cuffome, becaule that thereby they became abominable and odious vnto all other Nations. Notwithftan-Io ding, who this day they make fine Cups of the Skulls of their parents, to the end, that when they drinke out of them, they may amidft all their iollities and delights, call their dead parents to remembrance. This was told mee by one that faw it. The faid people of Tebet have great Abundance of plentie of gold in their Land, Whofocuer therefore wanteth gold, diggeth til he hath found fome 8 ald. quantitie, and then taking fo much thereof as will ferue his turne, hee layeth vp the refidue within the earth : because, if he should put it into his Chest or Store-house, he is of opinion that within the earth. I faw some of those people, The aure of being very deformed creatures. In Tangut Haw lufty tall men, but browne and fwart in colour, the people of The lugures are of a middle stature, like vnto our French men. Among the lugures is the original Tappas, and of and reove of the Turkifb, and Comanian Languages. Next vnto Teber are the people of Langa the tugures. 20 and Solanga, whole mellengers I faw in the Tatter Court. And they had brought more then Land and Soand Solange, which memory one of which was drawne with fix Oxen. They bee little language ten great Carts with them, enery one of which was drawne with fix Oxen. They bee little languages

browne men like vnto Spansards. Alfo they have lackets, like vnto the vpper Veftatent of a Schangereiem-Deacon, faiing that the fleenes are fomewhat streighter, And they have Miters vpon their heads ble Spagietor like Bishops. But the fore-part of their Miter is not to hollow within as the hinder part:neither is it sharpe pointed or cornered at the top : but there hang downe certaine square staps compa-Sted of a kind of Straw, which is made rough and rogged with extreame heate, and is so trimmed, that it glittereth in the Sunne-beames, like vnto a Glasse, or an Helmet well burnished. And about their Temples they have long bands of the foresaid matter, fastened vnto their Miters, which houer in the winde, as if two long hornes grew out of their heads. And when the 30 wind toffed them vo and downe too much, they tie them over the middeft of their Miter, from

one Temple to another: and fo they lie circle wife ouerthwart their heads. Moreouer, their principall mellenger comming vnto the Tarters Court, had a table of Elephants toothabout him, of a cubit in length, and a handfull in breadth, being very smoothe. And whensoeuer he spake vnto A table of Elethe Emperor himselte, or vnto any other great personage, he alwaies beheld that table, as if hee phans sooth, had found therein those things which hee spake : neither did hee cast his eyes to the right hand, nor to the lett, nor voon his face with whom he talked. Yea, going too and fro before his Lord, hee looketh no where but onely vpon his table. Beyond them (as I vnderstand of a certaintie) there are other people called Muc, having Villages, but no one particular man of them appro- The people priating any Cattell vnto himselfe. Notwithstanding, there are many slocks and droues of Cat-called Aure

40 tell in their Countrey, and no man appointed to keepe them. But when any one of the aftandeth in neede of any beat, hee ascendeth vp vnto a hill, and there maketh a shoute, and all the Cattell which are within hearing of the noyle, come flocking about him, and fuffer themselues to be handled and taken, as if they were tame. And when any messenger or stranger commeth into their Countrey, they shut him vp into an house, ministring there things necessary vnto him, untill his businesse be dispatched. For if any stranger should trauell through that Countrey, the Catttell would flie away at the very tent of him, and fo would become wilde. Beyond Muc is Great Catall. great Cataya, the Inhabitants whereof (as I suppose) were of old time, called Seres. For from them are brought most excellent stuffes of silke. And this people is called Seres, of a certaine Towne in the fame Countrey. I was credibly informed, that in the faid Countrey, there is one

Towne having Walls of filter, and Bulwarkes or Towers of gold. There bee many Provinces * Irom hence in that Land, the greater part whereof are not as yet subdued vinto the Tartars. And the ' Sea is supplied by lyeth betweene them and India. These Catayans are men of a little flature, speaking much Master Hachalyeth betweene them and India. These Catayans are men or a little flature, speaking much is industric(as through the nose. And this is generall, that all they of the East haue small eyes. They are exhibited through the nose. cellent workemen in every Art : and their Physicians are well skilled in the Vertues of Herbs, of a Manuand judge exactly of the Pulie; But vie no Vrinals, nor know any thing concerning Vrine. Icriprin Beanet and muge exactly of the Punts Dec. Vi. This I faw, for there are many of them at Caracarum. And they are alwaiss wont to bring up Colledge in all their children in the fame trade whereof the father is. And therefore they pay formuch tributous the other part. bute; for they give the Moallians every day one thousand and five hundred Cellines or Iascots: hechadow (Ialcot is a piece of filuer weighing ten Markes) that is to lay, every day fifteene thousand of an inter-60 Markes, beside silkes and certaine victuals, which they receive from thence, and other fest Copic of Markes, belide filkes and certaine victuals, which they recent from the fernices which they doe them. All these Nations are betweene the Mountaynes of Caucasiu, his. The Chapters which they doe them.

ters disagree, as being (I thinke) rather some Transcribers duuison then the Authors. Yet bane I followed the numbers I found, quen where they are obscureft. The Friers Latin for some barbarous words and phrases, hath beene troublesome to translate. The worke I hold a lewell of Ansiquitie, now first entirely publike.

Idolury.

on the North fide of those Mountaines to the East Sea, on the South part of Scythia, which the Shepheards of Moal doe inhabit : All which are tributarie vnto them, and all given to Idolatry. and report many fables of a multitude of gods, and certaine Deified men, and make a pedigree of the gods as our Poets doe.

Neftarians. Carbay.

this day.

Nellorians.

ruption of

The Nestorians are mingled among them as Strangers; so are the Saracens as farre as Cather. The Nestorians inhabit fifteene Cities of Cathay, and haue a Bishopricke there, in a Citie called Segin. But further, they are meere Idolaters. The Priests of the Idols of the faid Nations, have Segni a Citic of all broad yellow hoods. There are also among them (as I vnderstood) certaine Hermits luine in the Woods and Mountaines, of an auftere and strange life. The Nestorians there know nothing. They are fo at for they say their Seruice, and haue holy Bookes in the Syrian tongue, which they know not. Io The cuil oua-So that they fing as our Monkes doe, who are ignorant of Grammar; and hence it commeth. lities of the that they are wholly corrupted. They are great Viurers and Drunkards, and some of them al-Hence by corso who live among the Tartars, have many Wives, as the Tartars have. When they enter into the Church, they wash their lower parts, as the Saracens doe. They eate flesh on Friday of manners and the weeke, and hold their Feafts that day, after the manner of the Saracens. The Bishop comes ignorance of feldome into those Countries, perchance, scarse once in fiftie yeares. Then they cause all their faith, feemeth little Children (which are Males) to be made Priests, euen in the Cradell; so that all their men the Apoftacy almost are Priests : and after this they marrie Wiues, which is directly against the decrees of of the greateff part of Affate the Fathers : they are also Bigami, for the Priefts themselves, their first Wife being dead, marrie have happed the Fathers: they are all Simonits, for they give no holy thing freely. They are very carefull for their Wines and Children, whereby they apply themselues to gaine, and not to the sprea- 20 by Tartarian ding of the Faith. Whence it commeth to passe, while some of them bring vp some of the Noinuations and Saracenicall. bilities chil iren of Moal (although they teach them the Gospell, and the Articles of the All Priefts. All Priefts.

Confider our Faith) yet by their euill life and couetousnesse, they drive them further from Christianitie: Author a Frier. Because the life of the Moallians, and Tuinians (who are Idolaters) is more harmelesse whose trauels then theirs.

we rather embrace, then (in such passages) his distinctive. They were later Fathers which made such Decrees, contrary to the Father of truth which ordained marriage in Lesies Priest-bood, and chose married men to the Apostleship: and forewarned of another Father. who with Doctrines of Deuils should prohibite meate and marriage, under colour of Priests chastitie, making the Temple stewes to carnall and ipirituall whoredome,

Chap. 26. Of fuch things Nouemb. 30.

WE departed from the forestaid Citie of Cailac on Saint Andrewes day. And there wee found almost within three leagues, a whole Castle or Village of Nestorians. Entring as befell them, into their Church, we fang, Salne Regina, &c. with ioy, as loud as we could, because it was long departingfrom fince we had seene a Church. Departing thence, in three daies we came to the entrance of that Country of the Prouince, in the head of the foresaid Sea, which seemed to vs as tempethous as the Ocean and we faw a great Hand therein. My Companions drew neere the shoare, and wet a Linnen cloath therein, to taste the Water, which was somewhat salt, but might bee drunke. There went a certaine Valley ouer against it, from betweene the great Mountaines, betweene South and East: and betweene the hils, was another certaine great Sea; and there ranne a River through that 40 Valley, from the other Sea into this. Where came fuch a continuall winde through the Valley. that men paffe with great danger, least the wind carrie them into the Sea. Therefore wee left the Valley and went towards the North, to the great hilly Countries, couered with deepe Snow, which then lay vpon the Earth : fo that vpon Saint Nicholas day we beganne now to haften our journy much, and (because we found no people, but the land themselves (to wit) men appointed from daies journey to daies journey together, the Messengers together. Because in many places in the hilly Countries) the way is narrow, and there are but few fields, fo that betweene day and night we met with two Iani, whereupon of two daics journeys we made one. Extreme cold, and travelled more by night then by day. It was extreame cold there, fo that they lent vs their Goats skins, turning the haire outward.

Decemb.6.

Decemb. 7.

A dangerous

The second Sunday of Aduent in the evening, we passed by a certaine place betweene very terrible Rockes : and our Guide fent vnto me, intreating me to speake some good words, wherewith the Deuils might be driven away; because in that passage, the Deuils themselves were wont fuddenly to carrie men away, so that it was not knowne what became of them. Sometimes they violently fnatched a Horse and left the man : sometimes they drew out a mans bowels, and left the emptie carkaffe vpon the Horse. And many such things did often fall out there. Then we lang with a loud voyce, Credo in Deum, &c. And by the Grace of God, wee palled through (with all our company) vinhurt. After that, they beganne to intreat me, that I would write them Papers to carrie on their heads : and I told them, I would teach them a word which they should carrie in their hearts, whereby their soules and bodies should be saued ener- 60 laitingly. But alwaies when I would teach them, I wanted an Interpreter : Yet I wrote them the Creede and the Lords Prayer; faying, Heere it is written whatloeuer a man ought to beleeue concerning God. Here also is that prayer, wherein we begge of God whatsoeuer is needfull for a man. Whereupon beleeue firmely that which is written here, although you cannot

understand it, and aske of God that he do that for you which is contained in this written Praver : because with his owne mouth he taught it his friends, and I hope he will saue you. I could not doe any thing elle, because it was very dangerous to speake the words of doctrine by such an Interpreter, nav almost impossible, because he was ignorant.

A Free this, wee entred into that plaine where the Court of Ken-Cham was, which was Chap. 27.

Wont to be the Countrey of the Naymans, who were the peculiar Subjects of Prefiguer Of the Country. Tobn : but at that time I faw not that Court , but in my returne, Yet heere I declare vnto you try of the Noga what befell his Ancestry, his Soone and Wives. Ken-Cham being dead, Baata defired that Man-befell he stock 10 en should be Chan. But I could vinderstand in certaintie of the death of Ken. Frier Andrew of Ken-chan his faid, that he dyed by a certaine medicine given him : and it was ful pected that Bantu caused it sonne & wives. tobe made. Yet I heard otherwise, for he summoned Baats, to come and doe him homage. And B. au. Bastu tooke his journey speedily with great preparation; but he and his Seruants were much afraid, and fent one of his Brothers before, called Stiebin: who when he came to Ken, and should Stiebin and Ken waite you his Cup, contention arifing betweene them, they flue one another. The Widow killone anoof Stichin kept vs a whole day, to goe into her house and bleffe her, that is, pray for her. There-thet. fore Ken being dead, Manon was chosen by the consent of Baatn. And was then chosen when Frier Andrew was there. Ken had a certaine Brother, called Siremon, who by the counfell of Kens Wife and her Vallals, went with great preparation towards Mangu, as if he meant to doe 20 him homage, and yet in truth he purposed to kill him, and destroy his whole Court. And when he was neere Mangu, within one or two daies journey, one of his Wagons remained broken in the way. While the Wagoner laboured to mend it, in the meane space came one of the Seruants of Manen, who kelped him : he was so inquisitive of their journey, that the Wagoner reuealed vnto him what Siremon purposed to doe. Then turning out of the way, as if hee little regarding it, went vnto the herd of Horses, and tooke the best Horse hee could choose, and pofting night and day, came speedily to the Court of Manga, reporting vnto him what he had heard. Then Mangu quickly affembling all his subjects, caused foure rings of Armed men to compasse his Court, that none might goe in or out : the rest he sent against Siremon, who tooke him, (not suspecting his purpose had beene discourred) and brought him to the Court with

Then he and his eldeft Sonne Ken Chan were flaine, and three hundred of the Nobilitie of the Tarters with them. The Noble Women also were fent for, who were all beaten with burning fire brands to make them confesse : and having confessed, were put to death. His youngest sonne Ken, who could not be capable or guiltie of the conspiracy, was left aliue : And his Fathers Palace was left vnto him, with all belonging vnto it, as well Men as Chattels: and we paffed by it in our returne. Nor durft my Guides turne in vnto it, heither going nor comming: For the Lady of the Nations fate there in heavineffe, and there was none to comfort her.

30 all his followers. Who when Mange lay the matter to his charge, strait-way confessed it.

Hen went wee vp againe into the high Countries, going alwaies towards the North. At Chap. 28. 40 I length on Saint Stephens day we entred into a great Plaine like the Sea, where there was not Of their comfo much as a Mole-hill. And the next day, on the feast of S. John the Euangelist, we came vato ming to the the Palace of that great Lord. But when we were neere it, within fine daies journey, our Hoft Court of Manwhere we lay, would have directed vs a way farre about, fo that wee should yet travaile more 2" chan. then fifteene daies. And this was the reason (as I vinderstood) that wee might goe by Orah Kerule Onam Kerule their proper Countrey, where the Court of Chingis-Cham is. Others faith that he the preper did it for this purpose, that he might make the way longer, and might shew his power the more. Country of For so they are wont to deale with men comming from Countries not subject to them. And our the Tation. Guide obtained with great difficultie, that we might go the right way. For they held vs vpon this from the morning till three of the clocke. In that way also, the Secretarie(whom we expe-

50 cted at Cailar) told me, that it was contained in the Letters which Bautn fent to Mangu-Chan, that wee required an Army and ayde of Sartach against the Saracens. Then I began to wonder much, and to be greatly troubled: for I knew the Tenor of the Letters, and that no mention therof was made therein : faue that yee aduifed him to be a friend to all Christians, and should exalt the Crosse, and be an enemy to all the enemies of the Crosse and because also the Interpreters were Armenians, of the greater Armenia, who greatly hated the Saracens; left perhaps they had interpreted any thing in cuill part to make the Saracens more odious and hatefull at their pleafure, I therefore held my peace, not speaking a word with them, or against them; for I feared to gainfay the words of Baatu, least I should incurre some false accusation without reasonable cause. We came therefore the foreland day vinto the faid Court. Our Guide had a great house appointed

60 him, and we three a little Cottage, wherein wee could scarfe lay our stuffe, make our beds, and haue a little fire. Many came to visit our Guide, and brought him drinke made of Rice, in long itrait mouthed bottles, in the which I could discerne no difference from the best Antifiodorensian Wine, faue that it had not the fent of Wine. We were called, and straightly examined upon what businesse we came. I answered, that we heard of Sartach that he was a Christian : we came

therefore vnto him; the French King fent him a Packet by vs, he fent vs to Bastu his Father: & his Father hath fent vs hither, hee should have written the cause, wherevon they demanded whether we would make peace with them? I answered, he hath sent Letters vnto Sariach as a Christian : and if he had knowne, he were not a Christian, hee would neuer haue fent him Letters, to treate of peace: I fay, he hath done you no wrong: if he had done any, why should you warre vpon him, or his people, he, willingly (as a just man) would reforme himselfe, and defire peace. If yee without cause will make warre with him, or his Nation, we hope that God (who is inft) will helpe them. And they wondred, alwayes repeating, why came yee, feeing yee came not to make peace. For they are now so puffed up with pride, that they thinke the whole World should delire to make peace with them. And truly, if I might bee suffered, I would preach to Warre against them to the vttermost of my power) throughout the whole World. But I would not plainly deliuer the cause of my comming, lest I should speake any thing against that which Bastu commanded. I told them therefore the whole cause of my comming thither. was

Decemb. 28.

The day following we were brought vnto the Court, and I thought I could goe bare-foot, as I did in our Countrey : whereupon, I layd afide my shooes. But such as come to the Court. alish farre from the house where the Great Chan is, as it were a Bow-shot off: where the Horses abide, and a Boy to keepe them. Whereupon, when wee alighted there, and our Guide went with vs to the house of the Great Chan, a Hungarian Boy was present there, who knew vs fto wit) our Order. And when the men came about vs, and beheld vs as Monsters, especially be- 20 cause we were bare-footed, and demanded whether we did not lacke our feet, because they supposed we should strait-way have lost them, that Hangarian told them the reason, shewing them the condition of our Order. Then the chiefe Secretary (who was a Nestorian and a Christian, by whose counsell and aduice almost all is done) came vnto vs, to see vs , and looked earneftly vnon vs. and called the Hungarian vnto him, of whom he demanded many Questions. Then we were willed to returne vato our Lodging.

Chap. 29. Ot a Christian and continuance of the Winter.

An Armenian Their confe-Armenian Monke.

Monkish Re-(ue)lation.

And when we returned, at the end of the Court towards the East, farre from the Court, as much as a Crosse-bow could shoot at twice, I saw a house, vpon the which there was a little Croffe, then I reloyced much, supposing there was some Christianitie there. I went in boldly ot the conte-rence with 50- and found an Altar very well furnished, for there in a Golden cloth were the Images of Christ gias the coun- and the bleffed Virgin, and Saint Lohn Baptiff, and two Angels, the lineaments of their bodies and terfeit Armeni- garments diftinguished with Pearle, and a great filter Croffe having precious stones in the corners, and the middle thereof, and many other Embroyderings and a Candle burning with Oyle before the Altar, having eight Lights. And there fate an Armenian Monke, forme-what blacke and leane, clad with a rough hairen Coate to the middle legge, having vpon it a blacke Cloke of brittles, furred with spotted Skinnes, girt with Iron under his haire-cloth. Presently after wee entred in, before we faluted the Monke, falling flat vpon the ground, we fang, Aue Regina Calorum, &c. and he rising, prayed with vs. Then faluting him, we fate by him having a little fire rence with the vs much, faying, that we should boldly speake, because we were the Messengers of God, who is greater then all men. Afterwards he told vs of his comming, faying, he came thither a moneth before vs, and that he was a Heremite of the Territorie of Hiernfalem, and that the Lord appeared to him three times, commanding him to goe to the Prince of the Tartars : And when he deferred to goe, the third time God threatned him, and ouerthrew him vpon the ground, saying, he should dye, vnleffe he went; and that he told Mangu Chan, that if he would become a Chriftian, the whole World should be obedient vnto him; and the French and the Great Pope should obay him : and he aduised me to say the like vnto him. Then I answered, brother, I will willingly perswade him to become a Christian: (For I came for this purpose, to preach thus vnto him for a brother and a friend : but I will never promife, that they shall become his Servants, and pay him Tribute, as these other Nations; because in so doing I should speake against my conscience, then he held his peace. We went therefore together to our Lodging, which I found a cold Harbour ; and we had eaten nothing that day, fo we boyled a little flesh and Millet in the broth of flesh to sup. Our Guide and his companions were drunken at the Court: and little care was had of vs. At that time the Messengers of Vastace were there hard by vs, which weeknew not: And the men of the Court made vs rife in great haste, at the dawning of the day. And I went bare-foot with them a little way, vnto the house of the faid Messengers. And they demanded of them, whether they knew vs. Then that Grecian Souldier calling our Order and my companion S. Francis Dr. nilter, and all his fellowes, gaue great testimony of vs. Then they demanded whether wee had peace or war with Vaftace? we have (faid I) nor war nor peace. And they demanded, how that might be! Because (faid I) their Countries are far removed one from the others, and meddle not together. Then the Messenger of Vastace said wee had peace, giving mee a caueat : so I held my

der not Catholike; Uni. uerfally fit ing

before him in a Pan. Therefore we told him the caule of our comming. And he began to comfort 40 all) I will promife him alfo, that the French, and the Pope will much rejoyce thereat, and account 50 to remembrance, because he had feene him in the Court of Vastace, with Frier Thomas, our Mi- 60 tongue. That morning, my toes ends were frozen, to that I could no longer goe bare-foot : for

CH AP.I. Tuinians Idolaters, Respect of Priests, Description of Mangu Chan. 27

in those Countreyes the cold is extreame sharpe: and from the time when it beginneth to freeze it neuer ceafeth vntill May : nay, in the moneth of May it freezed euery morning; Froft vntill the but in the day time it thawed through the heate of the Sunne : but in the Winter it monethof neuer thawes, but the Ice continues with every winde. And if there were any winde May. there in the Winter, as it is with vs, nothing could live there, but it is alwaics milde weather vntill Aprill, and then the winds arife, and at that time when wee were there (about Weather vinin riping and with the winde killed infinite creatures. In the Winter little frow Easter in the fell there: but about Easter, which was in the latter end of Aprill , there fell so great a snow, end of the end that all the streets of Caracarum were full; that they were fayne to carrie it out with their of Aprill, And that all the streets of Caracarum were run; once they or the Carts, and Breeches of the same, see Snew in 10 Carts. Then they first brought vs (from the Court) Ramskin Coats, and Breeches of the same, the end of and Shooes, which my Companion and Interpreter received. But I thought I had no need of Aprill, them, because I supposed my Pelt-garment (which I brought from Basin) was sufficient for me.

Then the fift of Januarie we were brought vnto the Court : and there came Nefforian Priefts vato me, (I not knowing they were Christians) demanding which way we worshipped ? I faid, onto the East. And this they demanded because wee had shauen our beards by the aduice Shauing. of our Guide, that wee might appears before Chan according to the fashion of our Countrey: whereupon, they thought wee had beene Tunians (to wit) Idolaters. They made vsalio expound out of the Bible. Then they demanded what reuerence wee would doe to Chan, whether after our owne fashion, or theirs? To whom I made answere. Wer age Priests, given to the Respect of 20 ferrice of God; Noblemen in our Countrey will not fuffer Priefts to bow their knees before Priefts.

them, for the honour of God; neuerthelesse, wee will humble our selues to all men, for the Lords take. Weecame from a farre Countrey. It yee pleafe, wee will first fing prayles vnto God, who hath brought vs fafe hither from afarre; and after, wee will doe what being pleafeth the Lord; with this exception, that he command vs nothing which may bee against the worflip and honour of God. Then they entring into the house, delivered what wee had faid. So their Lord was contented. And they fet vs before the gate of the house, lifting vp the Felt which hung before the gate. And because it was Christmas wee began to fing, From the first Easterne Land,

A Solis ortus cardine, Et vlaue Terra limitem, Christum canamus Principem. Natum Maria Virgine.

Let vs Christ laud and sing Bleft Virgins Sonne, our King. Nd when wee had sung this Hymne, they searched our legs, and our bosoms, and our armes, Chap. 20

To furtheft Westerne Strand,

A whether wee had Knines about vs. They made our Interpreter vngird himfelfe, and leaue Of the Admithis Girdle and his Knife, without in the custodie of a Doore-keeper. Then we came in. And in the entrance there stood a Bench with Cosmos, by the which they go chan, and his

make our Interpreter stand; and caused vs to sit vpon a Forme before the Ladies. The whole description, house within was hanged with Cloth of Gold : and on a certaine Hearth in the middle of the and their conhouse, there was a hre made of thornes and Wormewood roots (which grow there very bigge) ference with and Oxe dung. But he fate you a Bed clothed with a spotted skin or Furre, bright, and shi-40 ning like a Seales skin. Hee was a flat-noted man, of a middle frature, about the age of flue and tion of Manga fortie yeeres; and a little pretie young woman (which was his wife) fate by him, and one of chan. his daughters, Crina by name, (a hard-fauoured woman) marriageable, with other little ones, fate next vnto them vpon a Bed. For that was the house of a certaine Christian Ladie, whom he dearely loued, by whom he had the forefail daughter : and hee married that young wife befide : but yet the daughter was Mistresse of all that Court , which was her Mothers. Then he

made them aske vs, what we would drinke, whether Wine, or Ceracina, that is, drinke made

of Rice, or Caracolus, that is, cleere Cowes milke, or Ball, that is, Mede made of Honey: for

they vie these foure kinds of Drinkes in the Winter. Then I answered, Sir, wee are not men who take pleasure in drinke. What pleaseth you shall contene vs. Then he commanded drinke Drinke of Rice who take pleature in drinke. What pleatern you man content so, I within commitment and Dinkerstrate of Rice to be given vs, cleere and fauoury, as white Wine: whereof I taited a little for reue-ischere and femous that the state of them. And our Interpreter (to our misfortune) thool by the Butlers: who gaue him falter to be much drinke, and hee was q ickly drunke. Then Cham cauded Falcons, and other birds to bee wine. The brought with him, which he tooke vpon his fift, and lookes vpon them; and after a long time Indians call it he commanded vs to speake. Then we were to bow the knees. And hee had his Interpreter, a Racke. certaine Nestorian, whom I knew not to bee a Christian; and wee had our Interpreter, such an one as he was, who now also was drunke. Then I said, Wee first give thankes and praise to God, The Oration who hath brought us from so removed parts of the World, to see Mangi Chan to whom God hath gi- of Friet William who hath brought us from so removed parisos the revolution see many Chair, to become see anto Mangues un so great power upon Earth: and wee befeech our Lord, by whose command wee line and die, that he Chan. would grant him a long and a profperous life. (For this they defire, that men pray for their lives.)

Then I told him: Sir, Wee have beard of Sartach that he was a Christian; and the Christians who The like Let-Then I told him: Sr. We have beard of Sattach that be mas a Unrifting, and not conjuguant more than the cook of heard it, but specially the French King renjectd: wherefore we came cume hom, and one Lord and extra ground or King Edwa. King that specially the manufacture of v. wherein were words of peace: and amongst other things, her tellished better is, c.c., of vs, who fe feruants wee are, and intreated him to suffer us to abide in his Country. For it is our for another office to teachmen to line according to the Law of God. And her fent us to Baatu his father: and Fins. D 2

Baatu hath fent us hither unto you. Ton are they to whom. God hath given great Dominion upon earth ; We therefore intreat your Highnesse , to give us leave to continue in your Countrey to doe the fernice of God for you, your Wines and Children. Wee have neither Gold nor Silver, nor precious stones to present unto you, but our selnes, whom we present to serve, and pray unto God for you. At the least, give vi leave to continue while the cold be past. My Companion is so weake, that hee cannot by any meanes transile on Horse-backe without bazzard of his life. For my Companion willed The univer of me, and adjured me, to craue leave to stay. For we supposed we must returne to Bastu, unlesse of Manue Chan, bis speciall Grace he gave us leave to stay. Then he began to answer: Even as the Sunne spread: Many claim. But pecual Grace or game vs scame to 1575, the time vegation among the common persons on which the bit between energy where, 16 out power and Batters fixeds it field every where: 16 that wee have no flood and deli-neede of your Silver and Gold. Hitherto I vinderstood my Interpreter: but further, 1 could not 10 perceine any perfect sentence. Whereby I casily found hee was drunke, and Maneu Chan drunken Inter-himselte was drunke also, as I thought. Yet with this, (as it seemed to mee, hee ended his speach) that he was displeased that we came first to Sartach, before wee came to him. Then feeing the defect of my Interpreter, I held my peace, this onely excepted, that I intreated his Highnesse hee would not be displeased, for that which I spoke of Gold and Silver : because I spoke it not that he had need of such things, or defired them, but because we would willingly honour him with temporall and spirituall things.

Then he made vs rife, and fit downe againe; and after some few words, doing our dutie to him. we went out, and his Secretaries, and that Interpreter of his (who had the bringing up of one of his Daughters) went together with vs. And they began to bee very inquifitine of the 20 Kingdome of France, whether there were many Rams, Oxen and Horses there, as if presently they should enter and take all. And oftentimes I was faine to bridle my felfe much, in dissembling anger and indignation. And I answered, There are many good things there which yee shall see, if yee happen to come thither. Then they appointed vs one, who should have care of vs. And we went wnto the Monke : and when we came out againe, ready to goe to our lodging, the foresaid Interpreter came vnto vs; saying, Mangu Chan hath compassion on you, and gives you two moneths time to flay. Then the extreame cold will be past, and he fends to you : Here within ten daies iourney there is a good Citie, called Caracarum, if yee will go thither, he will cause necessarie things to be given you: but if yee will abide heere, yee may, and yee shall have necessaries : yet it will be a troublesome thing for you to follow the Court. And I answered : 30 The Lord preserve Mangu Chan, and grant him a good and long life. We have found this Monk heere, whom we thinke to be an holy man, and that by the good pleasure of God he came into peareth ch.36. these parts, wherefore we would willingly stay with him, because wee are Monkes, and wee would pray together for the life of Chan. Then he held his peace and departed. And we went vnto our house, which we found very cold, and without any Fuell, as yet failing, and it was night. Then he, to whom we were recommended, prouided vs Fuell, and a little meate. Our Guide was now to returne to Baatu, who defired a Carpet of vs, which (by his Commandement) we left in the Court of Baatn : which we gave him, and he peaceably departed fo, kiffing our right hand, and confessing his fault, if he suffered vs to indure hunger and thirst voon the way. We pardoned him, crauing pardon of him and his whole Family, if we had given them 40 any euill example.

Chap. 31. Of Paichs of Ments in Lotharingia, and William Box-Building in requeft.

aracarum ten

daies iourney

from the

Court of

Mangu Chan,

toward the

Certaine Woman of Mentz in Lotharingia, called Pascha, found vs, who made vs great A Certaine Woman or naems in Lenbarragia, cauca rajers, round vs. who name vs great Acherer, according to the power, who belong to the Court of that Lady, which was a Chri-flian, of whom I poke before; who told vs of her strange pouertie which she indured before

she came to the Court; but now she was well to live, for she had a young Husband, a Ruterian, (by whom she had three very faire Children) who was skilfull in building, which amongst chier the Gold- them is an excellent Art. Moreover, she told vs, that at Caracarum, there was a certaine Goldfmith, a Parif- fmith, called William, borne at Paris; whose surname was Bouchier, and his Fathers name Lamrence Bouchier, and the thinketh he hath a Brother yet vpon the Great Bridge, called Roger Bon- 50 chier. And the told me, that he had a certaine young man which he brought vp, whom hee accounted as his Son, who was an excellent Interpreter. But Mange Chan delivered to the forefaid Gold-smith, three hundred Iascots, that is, three thousand Markes, and fiftie Worke-men to make a piece of worke, so that she feared he could not send his Sonne vnto me. For she heard some say vnto her in the Court, The men which came from your Countrey are good men, and Mangu Chan would willingly fpeak vnto them, but their Interpreter is nothing worth : therefore the was carefull for an Interpreter. Then I writ vnto the foresaid Gold-smith, certifying him of my comming hither, and requesting him, that if he could, he would fend me his sonne. They also rec- And he wrote me answere, that he could not that Moone, but the next, his worke should bee konby Moones perfected, and then he would fend him vnto me. We stayed therefore with other Messengers. 60 And it is otherwise with Messengers in Baatu's Court, then in the Court of Mangu Chan. For in the Court of Baats, there is one Iani on the East fide, who receive thall such as come from the West, and so of other Countries of the world : But in the Court of Mangu, they are all together under one Iani, and they may fee and visit one another. In Baain's Court they know not

one another, and know not one of another, whether hee be a Messenger or no; because they know not one anothers lodging, nor fee one another but in the Court : and when one is called, Crasis a front perchance another is not called. For they goe not to the Court, valeffe they bee fent for. Wee fortreffe of the perchance another is not called. For they goe not to the Court, which they be left for the Soldan of Mons found there a ceitaine Christian of Damafers, who faid he came in behalfe of the Soldan of Mons the help Land. Regatis, and of Crac; who defired to become friend and tributarie to the Tartars.

HE yeare also before I came thither, there was a certaine Clerke of Acon, who called him- Chan. 22. telfe Ramund, but in truth his name was Theodolus; and he tooke his journey from Coprus Of Theodolus with Frier Andrew, and went with him into Persia, and got him certaine Instruments of Amo. the Cleike of To ricus there in Persia, who abode there after Frier Andrew. Frier Andrew returning, hee went seen, how hee rious there in Persia, who abode there after Peter Anarem. Tries or narem returning, nee went forward with his Instruments, and came to Mangu Chan; who being demanded wherefore he certained Mangue Chan; who being demanded wherefore he certained Mangue Chan; and Chan nen, written in golden Characters, and commande I him to fend them to the Emperour of the ned of Valacia Tarters, because he should bee Lord of the whole Earth, and that he should peri wade men to us. make peace with him. Then Mangu faid vnto him; If thou hadit brought those Letters which Frier Andrew came from heaven, and the Letters of thy Lord, then hadit beene welcome. Then he answecame from heaven, and the Letters or tny Lord, then haute beene welcome. Then he answer prob by Persia. red That he brough: Letters, but they were with other things of his, vpon a certaine wilde and Blaichemous pampered Gelding, which escaping fled from him through the Woods and Mountaines, io flattery. that he had loft all. And it is very true, that many fuch chances often happen : wherefore a man

20 mult very warily hold his Horse when he alighteth for necessitie. Then Mangu demanded the name of the Bilhop. He faid, he was called Odo. Whereupon he told him of Damascus, and Maiter William, who was Clerke of the Lord Legat. Then Chan demanded in whole Kingdome it was ! To whom he made answer, That it was vinder a certaine King of the Frankes, called Moles : (for he had heard of that which happened at Mallora; and he would have faid, that they were of your Servants) moreover, hee told Chan that the Saracens were betweene the Frankes and him, who hindred his way. But if the way had beene open, he would have fent Mellengers, and willingly have made peace with him. Then Mangu Chan asked him, If hee would bring his Meffengers to that King, and that Bishop? He told him he would, and also to the Pope. Then Mangu caused an exceeding strong Bow to bee made, which two men could ac scarle bend, and two Arrowes, whose heads were of Silver, full of holes, which sing when they are shot like a whittle. And he mioyned Moal whom hee should fend with the faid Theodolus; Thou shalt goe to that King of the Franker, to whom this man shall bring thee, and thou shalt present him with these in my behalfe, And if he will have peace with vs, we will win ie the Countrey vpon the Saracens, even home to him, and will grant him the rest of the Countrey vnto the West : If otherwise, bring backethe Bow and Arrowes vnto vs, and tell him we shoot farre, and fmite strongly with such Bowes. Then he caused Theodolus to goe forth, whose In-

this man, marke well the Waies, the Countries, and their Cafiles, Men and Munition, Then the young man blamed Theodolius, faving, He had done ill, in conducting the Meffengers of the Tartars with him, for they went for no other cause, but to spy. Then hee answered, That he would fet them on the Sea, that they should not know whence they came, or which way to returne. Mangu g me also vnto Moal his golden Ball, or Tablet, to wit, a plate of Gold of an hand- The Golden breadth, and halfe a cubit long, wherein his commandement is ingraisen: Who to carrieth that, Emperor of may command what he will, and it is done without delay. So then Theodolus came to Vastacius, the Tariors. determining to palle over to the Pope, that he might deceme the Pope, as he had deceived Margu V-flacus King Chan. Then Valtacius demanded of him, whether he had Letters to the Pope, because he was a or Poniss. Meffenger, and should conduct the Meffengers of the Tartars? But, not being able to shew the Letters, he tooke him and spoiled him of all that hee ha gotten, and cast him in prison. And Moal fell ficke and dyed there. But Vastucius fent backe the golden Tablet to Mangu Chan, by Or, Erferant.

terpreter Master Williams Sonne was, and in his hearing, he said vnto Meal. Thou shalt go with

50 the feruants of Moal : whom I met at Affaron in the entrance into Turkie, who told mee what happened to Theodolus. Such Coiners runne through the world, whom the Moallians kill when Sergius an Arthey can take them. Now the Epiphany was at hand, and that Armenian Monke, Sergins by menian Monke, name, told me. That he should baptize Mangu Can vpon the Holy-day. I intreated him to labour by all meanes that I might be prefent, that I might beare withede that I faw it : and hee promifed he would.

THE feastivall day came, and the Monke called me not, but at fixe of the clocke I was fent Or Margu I for to the Court, and I faw the Monke with the Priests returning from the Court with his Chemsholyday, Cross, and the Priests with the Censer and the Gospell. For that day Mangu Chan made a principall wife 60 feast. And his custome is, that vpon such daies as his Sooth-sayers doe appoint vnto him fea- and his eldest fliuall, or with the Nestorian Priests sometimes make Holy-daies, that then he holds his Court: some came to And upon such dates the Christians come first with their furniture, and pray for him and bleffe the Diane cohis Cup. They then departing, the Saracen Priefts come and doe the like. Next after them, the Nellyings. come the Idolatrous Priors and doe the fame. And the Monke told me, that he onely believes and or their

the fishy bewings

the Christians, yet will haue all to pray for him; but he lyed, for he beleeueth none, as you shall hereafter heare, yet all follow his Court, as flyes doe Honey. And he giveth vnto all, and all men thinke they are his Familiars; and all prophesie prosperitie vnto him. Then wee sate before the Court a long space, and they brought vs fiesh to eate. To whom I made answere, that we would not eate there, but if they would prouide vs meate, they should prouide it for vs at our house. Then they faid, get yee home to your house; because you were inuited for no other cause but to eate. Therefore we returned by the Monkes, who blushed at the Lye bee told me, wherefore I would not speake a word of that matter. Yet some of the Nesterians would affirme vnto mee. that he was baptized : to whom I faid, that I would never believe it, nor report icto others, fee-We came to our cold and emptie house, they prouided vs bedding and Couerlets, they brought

vs also fuell, and gaue vs three the carkasse of one little leane Ramme, meate for sixe dayes; and euery day a little Platter full of Millet, and lent vs a Caldron and a Triuet to boyle our flesh: which being fodden, we fod our Millet in the broath of the fielh. This was our meate, and it had well sufficed vs, if they had suffered vs to eate in peace. But there are so many hunger-starued, who are not prouided of meate : that, as foone as they faw vs dreffe meate, they thrust in voon vs. and must eate with vs. There I found by experience, how great a Martyrdome liberalitie is in pouertie. Then the cold began much to prevaile: and Mangu (ban fent vs three Pek-coates of the Skinnes of Papions (Papionum), whole haire they turne outward; which we thankfully receined. They demanded also, how we were prouided of necessary food ? To whom I answered, 20 that little meate sufficed vs, but we have not an house wherein to pray for Mangu Chan. For our Cottage was so little, that we could scarce stand vpright in it, nor open our Bookes, as soone as wee made fire. Then they brought him word: and hee fent vnto the Monke to know, if hee would have our company : who gladly answered, that hee would. From that time wee were prouided of a better house : and we went downe with the Monke before the Court. where none lodged but we, and their Sooth-fayers : but they lodged neever, before the Palace of the greatest Lady : and wee in the furthest end towards the East, before the Palace of the last Lady. And The 13. of lan. that was done the day before Ottabis Epiphania. On the morrow (to wit) in Ottanis Epiphania, all the Neilorian Priests came together before day at the Chappell, and smote vpon a board. and fang Matines folemnely, and put on their Ornaments, preparing the Cenfer and the 30

preuzyleth.

Cotota Caten Wife of Mangu

Incenfe. And while they stayed wayting thus, behold, in the morning, the principall Wife Cotota Caten by name, (Caten is as much as Ladie, and Cotota her proper name) came into the Chappell with many other Ladies, and with her eldeft Sonne, called Baltu, and other little ones of here: And they cast themselves downe vpon the Earth, ducking after the manner of the Nesterians. of Mangu Chas. and after this, they touched all the Images with their right hands, alwayes kiffing their hands after they had touched, and after that, they gave their right hands to all that flood about them in the Church. For this is the custome of the Nestorians when they come into the Church. Then the Priests sang many things, giving the Lady Incense in her hand, and she put it voon the fire: then they perfumed her. After this, when the day was cleere, shee began to put off the Orna- 40 ment of her head, which is called Baccha: and I faw her bare foull, then fhee commanded vs to goe forth, and as I went out, I faw a filuer Baion brought : whether they baptized her or no . I know'not : but I know, they celebrate not Maffe in a Tent, but in a standing Church. And in the Easter I faw them baptize, and hallow Fount with great Solemnitie, which now they

And while we went into our house, Mangu Chan himselfe came, and went into the Church, or Oratory, and a Golden Bed was brought, on which hee fate by his Queene, ouer against the Altar. Then were we fent for, not knowing that Mangu was come. And the Doore-keepers fearched vs, left we should have Knives about vs. But comming into the Oratory, having a Bible, and a Breuiary in my bosome, I first bowed downe vnto the Altar, and after to Mangu Chan: 50 and so passing by, we stood betweene the Monke and the Altar. Then they made vs sing a Psalme after our manner, and chaunt it. But we fang of that profe, Veni Santte Spiritus, Grc. And Cham caused our Bookes to be brought vnto him, the Bible, and the Breuiarie : and diligently inquired concerning the Images, what they fignified. The Neftorians answered him at their pleasure, becaule our Interpreter came not in with vs. And when I was first before him, I had the Bible in my bosome, which he commanded to be brought vnto him, who looked earnestly vpon it. Then he departed, and his Ladie remayned there, and distributed gifts to all the Christians there, shee gaue the Monke a Jafeet, and to the Archdeacon of the Priests another : she caused a Nasse to be spread before vs (to wit) a piece of Cloth, as broad as a Couerlet of a Bed, very large, and a * Buckeram, which when I would not receive, they fent them to my Interpreter, who had them 60 to himselfe. He brought the Nassic to Cyprus, which he sold for eightie Sultanines of Cyprus; but it was much the worle for the carriage. Then drinke was brought (to wit) drinke made of Rice and red Wine, like Wine of Rochell, and Cosmos. * Then the Ladie holding the cup full in her hand, defired bleifing vpon her knees, and all the Priefts fing with a loud voyce, and shee drunke

Mares Milke,

CHAP.I. Nestorians drinking, fast, friday. Tartar-duining. Threshold.

it up: and I and my companion must fing. Another time, when all of them were almost drunke, then meate was brought (to wit) the carkaffe of one Ramme which was prefently denoured: and after that, great files, which are called Carpes, without Salt; or Bread : whereof I eate a little, so they passed the day, vntill the Eneming. And when the Lady her selfe was drunke, she tooke her Chariot (the Priests finging) and went her way. The next Sunday, when (There was Inneary 20, a Mariage in Cana of Galily) is read for the Goipell; Chans Some came (whole Mother was a Christian) and did the like, but not with so great Solemnitie. For he gaue no gifts, but made the Priests drinke, till they were drinke, and gaue them parched Millet to eate.

Before the first Sunday in Lent, the Nestorians fast three dayes, which they call the Fast of Io- Of the Fast of 10 nas, which he preached to the Niniuites. And the Armenians fall fine dayes , which they call the the Nestrians,

Fast of Saint Sorkis, which is the greatest Saint amongst them.

and of their The Nestronans beginne their Fast upon Tuesday, and end it upon Thursday; fo that upon Processions Friday they eate fielh. And all that time I faw the Chancelor (to wit, the great Secretarie of vito the Court State called Bulgai) make them a pittance of flesh voon the Friday; and they blessed the flesh of Mangu chan with great Solemnitie, as the Patchall Lambe is bleffed : but he eate none with them; and this Directed Son, Vienged of Willielman Parisiensis, who was his very familiar friend. The Monke lent to Man-Saint Saint Saint ou to fail that weeke, which (as I heard) hee did : fo that on the Sabbath of Septnagefima (at Leut. which time it is as it were Eafter to the Armenians) wee went on Procession to the house of Manua Chins Mangu: and the Monke, and we two (being first searched whether wee had Knines) went in Courtvilled 20 with the Priefts, before him. And while we went in, one of the Senants went forth, carrying out the shoulder bones of Rammes, burnt to the blacknesse of Coales. Whereupon 1 manuelled greatly, what it should meane, whereof after I had inquired, I vnderstood, that hee neuer doth any thing, before he haue confulted with thole bones. Whereupon hee doth not fo much as fuf-

fer a man to enter his house, but first consulteth with that bone, which kind of Dinination, is When he purposeth to doe any thing, he causeth three of those bones to be brought vnto him. How they di-

vnburnt; and holding them he thinketh of the thing, whereof he will contait, whether he may uine by d vinturint; and holding them he trainkers of the traing, whereof he will conside, whether he may booker blades doe it or not: and then deliuereth the bones to bee burnt, and there are alwayes two little of Rammes Roomes, hard by the houle where he lyes, where those bones are burnt; which are diligently burntblacke. 30 fought for every day thorow all the Leskar or Tent-dwelling. When they are burnt blacke, they In M. Interior bring them vnto him, then hee lookes vpon them, whether the bones (by the heate of the fire) for Voyage a be cleft right length-wayes : then the way is open, that he may do it. But if the bones be crac- mong the Tarbe cleft right length-wayes: then the way is open, that he may do it. Due if the bonies be clear in tart, ye may ked athwart, or round pieces flye out of them, then he doth it not a for the bone is alwayes cleft in reade of fuch the fire, or the thinne skin which ouer-spreadeth it. And if one of the three be cleft forth right, a Dimination. yet he doth it. When therefore wee went in before him (aduised before, that wee should not touch the threshold) the Neffortan Priests brought him Incenses, and he put it vpon the Censor, Threshold-Suand they cenfed him. Then they fung, blefing his cup, and after them the Monke pronounced perficion. his bleffing, and we must bleffe last. And when he saw vs holding the Bible before our breft, he Theydoc the caused it to be brought vnto him, that he might fee it, which hee diligently looked vpon. Then like in Florida. 40 after he had drunke, and the chiefe Priest had wayted on his Cup, they gaue the Priests drinke: After that, we went forth, and my companion stayed last. And when wee were without, my

companion (when hee should have gone out after vs) turned his face to Chan, bowing himselfe vnto him : and then, haiftly following vs, he flumbled at the threshold of the house.

And when we went in halte toward the house of Baltu his eldest Sonne, they that observed the threshold, layd hands on my companion, and made him stay, that hee should not follow vs, calling one, and commanding him to carrie him to Bulgai, who is the great Secretary of the Court, and judgeth those that are arraigned of life and death. But I knew it not, yet when I looked backe, and faw him not comming, I thought they detayned him, to give him some lighter garments: For he was weake, and so laden with Pelt-garments that he could scarce goe. Then 50 they called our Interpreter, and made him fit with him : but wee went to Chans eldeft Sonnes Balues Court house, who had two Wives, and was lodged at the right fide of his Fathers Court: who as who was eldest foone as he faw vs comming, leaping from his bed whereon he fate, cast himselfe vpon the earth, chan. fmiting his fore-head against the ground, worshipping the Crosse, and arising, caused it to be set vpon a new cloth, in an high place by him, very honourably. He hath a Schoolemaster, a Nestorian Priest called Danid, a very Drunkard, who teacheth him. Then he made vs sit, and give the Priests drinke, and hee also dranke, receiving the blething from them. Then wee went voto the Court of the fecond Lady, which was called Cota, who followed Idolaters : whom wee found lying ficke a bed. Then the Monke made her rife out of her bed, and worthip the Croffe, bowing her knees thrice, and ducking toward the ground : he standing with the Crosse at the West-

60 fide of the house, and she on the East: this being done, they changed places, and the Monke went with the Crosse vnto the East, and shee vnto the West. And hee boldly commanded her (although the were so weake, that the could scarce stand upon her feet) that shee should cast hertelfe downe thrice againe, and worship the Crosse, toward the East after the manner of the Christians : which she did, and he taught her to make the signe of the Crosse vpon her forehead.

After the lay downe upon her bed, and praying for her, we went unto the third house, where a Christian Lady vied to be: who being dead, a young woman succeeded her, who together with the Daughter of her Lord, joyfully received vs : and all that whole house reverently worthinped the Croile. And the fet it vpon a Velnet cloth in an high place, and thee caused meate to bee brought (to wit) the carkaffe of one Ramme, which being fet before the Lade, flee caused it to be distributed to the Priests, But I and the Monke were very warie of the meate and drinke. for the meate being eaten, and much drinke drunke, wee were to goe to the Damofell Cerina. who lodged behind that great house, which was her Mothers : who at the comming in of the Croffe, cast her felte upon the Earth, and worthipped it very demoutly, because shee had beene well taught to to doe, and thee let it in a high place, vpon a piece of tilke. And all those clothes 10 whereon the Croffe was fet, were the Monkes. ... A certaine Armenian brought this Croffe who came with the Monk (as he faid) from Hieru-

falem; and it was of filter, weighing about some foure markes; and it had foure Precious Stones in the corners, and one in the middle. It had not the Image of our Sauiour (because the Armeni-The Gourt of ans and the Nefforians are alhamed, that Christ should appeare nayled to the Crosse) and hee had the third Lady, presented it (by the Monke) to Mangu Chan. And Mangu demanded of him what hee defired? The Armenians to whom he answered, That he was the Sonne of an Armenian Pricft, whose Church the Saracens had destroyed, and craued his helpe for the building agains of that Church. Then hee afare shaned to ked him, for how much it might be built againe; he answered, for two hundred Jalcots (that is) for two thousand markes : and he commanded Letters to be given him, to him who received the 20 fastaed to the Tribute in Perfis, and Armenia the greater, that they should pay him the faid summe of silver. Mangu built a This Croffe the Monke carried with him every where. And the Priefts feeing the gaine thereof. began to enuie him. Wee were therefore in the house of the faid Damosell, and shee gave the The Court of Priests much drinke. From hence wee went vnto the fourth house, which was the last in number and honour. For he vied not to come often to that Ladie, and her house was very old, and her felfe nothing gracious. But after Easter Chan made her a new house, and new Chariots. She likewife as the fecond knew little or nothing of Christianitie, but followed Soothfayers, and Idolaters. Yet at our comming in, thee worthipped the Croffe, as the Monke and the Priefts taught her. There also the Priests dranke againe. And from that place wee returned to our Oratorie, which was neere thereabouts: the Priests accompanying vs with great howling and out-cryes in their drunkennesse, which there is reprehensible neither in man nor woman. Drunkennede. Then my fellow was brought home, and the Monke sharply rebuked him because he touched

not reproues- the threshold. On the morrow Bulgai came (who was a Iultice) and diligently inquired, wheble among the ther any had warned vs to take heed of touching the threshold. And I answered, Sir, wee had

Croffe.

Church.

the fourth

Lidy.

w:scured of Sergus the counterfeit Monke. Li ence is granted him to carrie the Croffe aloft.

Rubarbe and th Croile Mi-Superfrings. Holy water not knowne in the Eaft.

never after fulfer him to come into any of the houses of Mangu Chan. TT happened afterwards, that the fame Ladie Cota, which was ficke about Septuagefing. was How Ledy Cota I ficke almost vinto death : and distination by Lots of the Idolaters could profit her nothing, Then Mangu fent vnto the Monke, demanding of him, what might bee done for her. And the 30 Monke indifcreetly answered, that it shee were not cured, hee should cut off his head, having made that antwere, the Monke called vs, declaring the matter vnto vs with teares, intreating to watch with him that night in Prayer: which we did. And he had a certayne Roote which is called Rubarbe; and hie cut it almost to powder, and put it in water, with a little Crucifixe which he had, wherein the Image of our Saujour was advanced: whereof he reported, that by it he knew, when the ficke should recouer or dye. For it they should escape, it stucke to the breft of the ficke, as if it were gladd, it otherwife it flucke not at all. And I flill thought that Rubarbe had beene some holy Relike, which he had brought from the Holy Land of Hierusalem. And he gaue all ficke persons of that water odrinke : fo that it could not bee, but their bowels racie-workers should be griped with so bitter a Potion: which alteration in their bodies they accounted a Miracle. Then I told him (when he was about to make fuch a water) that hee should prepare some of that Holy water, which is made in the Church of Rome, which hath great vertue to expell Deuils : because I vinderstood thee was vexed of a Deuill. And at his intreatie, wee made him some Holy water, and he mingled Rubarbe, and put his Crucifixe all the whole night in the water to temper it. I said moreouer, that if hee were a Priest, that the Order of Priest hood hath great power to expell Deuils. And he faid it was very true, and yet hee lyed, because hee had no order nor knew any one Letter : but was a Weauer, as I vnderstood after, in his Countrey, when I returned. On the morrow therefore I, and the Monke, and two Nefforian Priests went unto the forelaid Ladie. And fhee was in a little house, behind her greater house. When wee came in, thee fate in her bed, and worthipped the Croffe, and fet it honourably by her young 60 cloth of Silke, and drunke of the blefled water with Rubarbe, and washed her broft. And the Monke requested me to reade a Gospell ouer her, so I read the P. show of our Lord according vinto Ioha. At length the was cheered, and felt her felfe better : and thee caused foure lateots to bee brought, which she first layd at the feet of the Crosle, and after gaue me to the Monke, and rea-

not our Interpreter with vs : how could we vnderstand? Then hee pardoned him, But would

ched me one, which I would not receive. Then the Monke Aretching forth his hand, tooke it, and gaue either of the Priefts one : fo that, at that time fhee gaue fortie Markes. Then fhee cauled Wine to be brought, and gaue it the Priests to drinke; and I must drinke thrice from her hand, in honour of the Trinitie. Shee began also to teach mee the Language, jesting with mee, because I was dumbe, not having any Interpreter. On the morrow we returned to her againe. And Mangu Chan hearing that we came that way.

made vs come in vnto him, because hee vnderstood that the Lady was somewhat better, and we found him with a few ieruants, supping liquid Tam, to wit, meat made of paste, for comforting the head : and the burnt shoulder-blades of a Ram lay before him : and he tooke the Crosse Io in his hand, but that hee kiffed or worthipped it, I faw not : but looked vpon it, and asked some questions, I know not what. Then the Monke craued leave to carry the Crosse alost vpona Lance: because I had spoken to the Monke before concerning this. And Mangu answered, Carry it as you thinke best to doe it. Then doing our duty to him, wee went to the foresaid Ladie, and we found her lutie and cheerfull; and the still drunke of the bleffed Water, and wee read the Paffion ouer her. And those miserable Priests neuer taught her the Faith, nor aduised her to bee baptifed. But I fate there mute, not able to speake any thing, but shee still taught me the Langrage : and the Priefts neuer find fault with any kind of Sorcerie. For there I law foure fwords Sorcerie of halfe drawne out of the sheath, one at the head of the Ladies bed, another at the feet, and two foure words. other, on either fide of the doore one. I saw also there one filuer Chalice, of our Chalices, which 20 peraduenture was taken or stolne out of some Church of Hangary; and it hung against the walls full of ashes, and vpon those ashes there was a blacke stone. And concerning such things, the

Priests never teach them that they are euill : Nay, they themselves doe, and teach such things,

We visited her three daies, so that shee was restored to perfect health. After that, the Monke made a Banner full of Croffes, and got a Cane as long as a Lance, and we carried the Croffe aloft. I honored him as my Bishop, because hee could speake the Language; yet hee did many things The Crosse which pleased me not: for he caused a Chaire which may be folded to bee made for him, such as carried about. Bishops vie to haue, and Gloues, and a Cap of Peacocks feathers, and vpon it a little Crosse of

30 Verses of the Psalter (as they faid) vpon two rods, which were soyned together, being held of two men. The Monke was present at such things. And many other vanities appeared in him, which displeased me. Yet wee ioyned our selves to his societie for the honor of the Crosse. For we carried the Croffe advanced through all the Tents finging : Vexilla Regis prodeunt, &c. Wherevpon the Saracens were much dismaied. CInce we came to the Court of Mangu Chan, he rode but twice towards the South : and from Chap. 36. Sthat time he beganne to returne towards the North, which was toward Caracarum. Where- A description

gold : I was well pleased with the Croffe. Hee had scabbed feete, which hee laboured to grace

with ointments, and was very presumptuous in speech. The Neftorians also repeated certaine

vpon Inotedall the way, a thing of which Malter Baldwin of Hannonia had spoken to mee at of the Coun-Conflantinople (who was there) that he had feene this onely wonderfull, that he alwaies afcen- tries about the 4 o ded in going, and neuer descended. For all Rivers came from the East into the West, either di- Court of Manded in going, and neuer descended. For all Kiners came from the East this the Vett, either disgrading or indirectly (that is to say) bending towards the South or North. And I enquired of the their manner Priests which came from Cataga, who testified this same. From that place where I found Mangu of writing, and Chan, voto Cacaya, were twentie diecs sommer, going towards the South and East. To Onan Kerule, their money, which is the proper Country of Moall, where the Court of Chingis is, were ten daies sourney right East. Chap.3. And in those parts of the East there was no Citie: yet there were people which are called Su-Moall, that Al Rivers benis to fay, Moall of the Waters : for Su is as much to fay as Water. These people line upon Fish, and hunding towards ting, having neither Flocks nor Heards. Towards the North likewife, there is no Citie, but a poore people the South and feeding Cattell, who are called Kerkis. The Orangei are also there, who binde smoothe filed bones vn- North sunce der their feete, and thrust themselves forward woon the congented Snow and Ice, with such swifinesse, west, 50 that they take Birds and Beasts. And many other poore people there are on the North side, so farre as they may fread themselnes for the cold. And they is me on the West, with the Countrey of Palatir, Chap. 15. which is Hangaria the Greater, whereof I have Spoken before. The bound or limit of the North corner Su-Most, the is not knowne, for the extremitie of the cold: for in that place there are continual forces or heapes of Water Tattars is not knowne, for the extremitte of the cold: for in that place there are continual prices or neapes of to the Eaft, is-Snow. I was inquilitize of the Moniters or monitrous men, whereof Islamus and Solinus make using your fife. report. They told me they neuer faw any fuch, whereof we much wonder, whether it bee true Kerks. or no. All the Nations aforefaid (although but poore) yet they must ferue in some trade: for it Orangai. was the commandement of Chingis, that none should bee free from service, till hee were so old, Pascair on the that he could labour no longer, by any meanes. Vpon a time a certaine Priest of Cataya sate with West. mee, clothed with a red coloured cloth; and I demanded of him whence hee had fuch a colour. Chap.19. 60 And he told me, that in the East parts of Cataya there were high craggie Rock, wherein certaine Muteruma Creatures dwell, having in all parts the shape of men, but that they bow not the knees, but commanded walke (I know not how) leaping: which are not about one cubit long, and their whole body is the like in No. walke (I know not how) leaping: which are not about one cutiff roug, and their whole body is a Biffaria, couered with haire; who have their abode in Caues which no man can come vnto. And they A description of Apes, or elfe an embleme or Apith fable, and perhaps by the Chinois instented, to fell their wares the dearer.

that hant them goe vinto them, and carry firong drinke with them, as frong as they can make. and make pits in the Rocks like Cups, filling them with that firong drinke. For Cataia as vet hathno Wine (but now they beginne to plant Vineyards) for they make drinke of Rice. The Hunters therefore hide themselves, then the foresaid Creatures come out of their holes, and tafte the faid drinke, and crie Chin-chin. Then they come together in great multitudes and drinke the faid drinke, and are made drunke, fo that they fleepe there. Then the Hunters come, and bind them hand and feete while they are fleeping; and after, they open the Veine in their necke, and draw forth three or foure drops of bloud from every one, and let them goe free. And Most precious that bloud (as he told me) is most precious to die purple.

Purple. Cataiavoon the Occan. Taute and Manfe, who dwell in Hands. whole Sea freezeth in the Winter. Cataia paper writing in Cataia like that the Rutenians.

multitude of

those that

He told it also for truth (which neuerthelesse I doe not beleeue) that there is a Prouince beyond to Cataia, into the which, at whatfoeuer age a man enters, he continueth in the fame age wherein he entred, Cataia is voon the Ocean. And Master Willielms Parisiensis told me, that the same Meffengers of certaine people which are called Taute and Manfe, who inhabit Ilands, whose Sea is frozen in the winter, to that the Tartars may invade them; who offered two thousand Tumen or lascots veerely, so they would let them live in peace. Tumen is a piece of money contayning ten Markes. The common money of Cataia is Paper made of Bombaste, the breadth and length of an hand, upon the which they imprint lines, like the Seale of Mangu. They write with a Penfill wherewith Painters paint; and in one figure they make many letters comprehen-The manner of ding one word. The people of Thebet write as wee doe, and they have Characters very like ours. They of Tangut write from the right hand vnto the left, as the Arabians, and multiply the lines ascending vpward. Ingur, as aforesaid, from about downeward. The common mony of 20 of the people of the Rutenians are little ipotted and grifel'd skins. When we came with the Monke, hee charitably admonished vs to abstaine from fiesh, and that our servants should eate fiesh with his fer-Their manner mants: but he would promife vs Meale, and Oyle or Butter. Which wee did, though it much of writing in grieued my Companion, by reason of his weakenesse: wherefore our foode was Millet and Butter, or Patte folden in water with Butter, or fowre Milke, and vnleauened bread baked in Oxe-The money of dung, or Horse-dung.

Chap. 37.
Of Manageness and the Cotota with all her company, fasted that weeke, who came enery day to our 30 faft of the peo-Oratorie, and gaue meate vnto the Priests, and other Christians, whereof a great multitude flocked thither the first weeke, to heare their dutie. And she gaue to me and my Companion, to in Lent. The each a Coate and Breeches of gray Samit (Samito) furred with course haire (Stuppa letz) beproued for the cause my companion complained much of the weight of his Skinnes, which I received for my fellowes comfort, excusing my felfe neuerthelesse, that I would not weare such clothes. I gaue to my Interpreter what belonged to me. Then the Porters of the Court feeing that fo great a multitude came daily to the Church, which was within the bounds of the keepers of the Court. they fent one of their fellowes vnto the Monke, declaring vnto him , that they would not have fo great a multitule come together within the precincts of the Court. then the Monke roughly answered, that he would know whether they commanded this from Mangu Chan? hee added 40 moreouer certaine threatning speeches, as if he would accuse them to Mangu Chan. Then they preuenting him, accused him before Mangu; That he was too full of words, and that he gathered together too great a multitude to heare him speake. Afterward, the first Sunday in Lent, being called to the Court (and the Monke being shamefully demanded whether hee had a Knife. infomuch that he put off his shooes) wee came in before Chan himselfe, who having the burnt shoulder-blade of a Ramme in his hand, looked upon it, and (as it were) reading in it, began to reproue the Monke, demanding, that feeing he was a man that should pray vnto God, why hee Spoke so much with men ! but I stood behind with my head bare : and Chan saying vinto him, Why dost thou not put off thy Cap, when thou commest before me, as that Francke doth and commanded me to be called neerer. Then the Monke being much abashed, put off his Cap, con- 52 trary to the custome of the Greekes and Armenians. And when Chan himfelfe had spoken many things sharply vnto him, wee went out. Then the Monke deliuered me the Crosse to beate to the Oratorie, because he could not carry it for shame.

> After a few daies he was reconciled vnto him, promiting that he would goe to the Pope, and that he would bring all the Nations of the West to his obedience. Whereupon, he returning to the Oratorie after that conference had with Chan, began to enquire of mee touching the Pope, if I beleeved he would fee him if he came vnto him in the behalfe of Mangu, and it hee would furnish him with Horses vnto Saint lames? He demanded also of you, if I thought you would fend your sonne vnto Mangu? Then I countailed him, that he should take heede that hee did not promise lyes to Mangu, because the last errour should bee worse then the first; and that God 60 needeth not our lyes, that we should speake deceitfully for him.

At that time there arose a certaine question betweene the Monke and a Priest called longs , a Learned man, whose father was an Archdeacon, and the other Priests accounted him for a Mafter and an Archdeacon. For the Monke faid, That man was created before Paradife, and that

CHAP. 1. Manichæan blassbemie, Hypocrituall feast-fast, Artisciall silver Tree. 35

the Scripture faid fo. Then was I called to bee an arbitrator of that question. But I being 1910rent that they contended about this, answered, that Paradise was made upon Tuesday, when the other Trees were made, and that Man was made the fixt day. Then the Monke began to lay, Monkes, Ma-Did not the Deuill bring earth the first day from the foure parts of the world, and making clay sichaen blif. Dut not the Deuni Dring care the hind and God infpired his fould? Then hearing this Harrelie of phemie of the made the bodie of man therewith, and God infpired his fould. Then hearing this Harrelie of phemie of the made the bodie of man therewith, and God infpired his fould. the Monke, and that he fo publikely and shamelessly recited it, I reproued him sharply, saying, he should put his finger upon his mouth, because he knew not the Scriptures, and that he should take heed, that he faul it not, whereby he might be faulty: And he began to mocke me, because I was ignorant of the Language. I departed therefore from him, going to our houle. It fell out te firewards, that he and the Priess went on Proceffion to the Court, without calling mee; because the Monke spake not to me for the foresaid reproofe, nor would be carrie me with him, as he was wont. When therefore they came before Mangu, (I being not feene among them) hee earneitly demanded where I was, and why I came not with them? The Priests fearing, excufed themselves. But returning, they told me the words of Mangu, and murmured at the Monke. After this, the Monke was reconciled to me, and I to him, intreating him, that he would helpe me with his Language, and I would helpe him in the holy Scripture. For a brother that is holpen of a brother, is as a frong Citie. After the first weeke of falting, the Ladie ceased to come vnto the Oratorie, and to give meat, and drinke, which wee were wont to have, for the Monke fuffered it not to be brought, flying, that Mutton far or Suet was put in the confection thereof: 20 and thee gaue no Oyle, but very feldome: fo that we had nothing but browne Bread, and paft boyling in water, that we might suppe broath; because we had no water, but of dislocad Snow, Snow water, or of ke, which was exceeding nought. Then my Companion began to be much grieued: fo or water office, Jacquainted Danid (the Schoole-mafter of Chant eldeft fonne) with our necessities, who made exceeding 1 acq cainted Dana (the Schoole-matter of Coan Charles Wine, Flowre, and Oyle. Neither the report thereof to Chan: and he commanded to give vs Wine, Flowre, and Oyle. Neither the No hit care Neftorians, nor the Armenians, eate fish, by any meanes, in the Lent. Then they gave vs a bottle in Lent. of Wine. The Monketaid he would not eate but on the Sunday: and then the Ladie her selfe fent meat of boyled patte with vinegar to suppe. But he had a Chift by him under the Altar, Hypocricall with Almonds and Rainins, and dried Prunes, and many other fruits, which hee ate all theday, feath fait, when locuer hee was alone. Wee are once a day, and that in great affliction: for as soone as they knew, that Mangu Chan had given vs Wine, most impudently they came in vpon vs like 30 Dogs, both the Nefforian Priefts, who were drunke all the day in the Court, and the Moallians also, and the feruants of the Monke. The Monke also, when any came vnto him, to whom he would gine drinke; he sent to vs for Wine. So that, the Wine caused our greater affliction

one of those Pipes runs with Wine, another with Caracosmos, that is, clarified Whay; another

with Ball, that is, drinke made of Honey, another with drinke made of Rice, called Teracina.

And enery drinke hath his veffell prepared of filuer, at the foot of the Tree , to receive it. Be-

tweene those foure Pipes in the top, he made an Angell holding a Trumpet; and suider the Tree,

he made an hollow vault, wherein a man might be hid; and a Pipe afcendeth through the heart

out the Palace there is a Chamber, wherein the drinkes are layd, and there are fernants readie

there to powre it out, when they heare the Angell founding the Trumpet. And the boughes of

the Tree are of filuer, and the leaves and Peares. When therefore they want drinke, the Ma-

fter Butler cryeth to the Angell, that he found the Trumpet. Then he hearing (who is hid in

60 of the Tree vnto the Angell. Hee first made Bellowes, but they gave not wind enough. With-

felues, nor durst we, that being fpent, defire any more from the Court.

then comfort; because wee could not denie it without offence. If wee gaue, wee wanted our Bout mid-lent Master Williams sonne came, bringing with him a faire filuer Croffe, made Chap. 38. A after the French falhion, having the Image of Christ all of filter fastened vpon it at the A Description

top : which the Monkes and Prietts feeing , put it away : this Croffe hee was to prefent in the of the worke behalf of his Mafter to Bulgai, who was the chiefe Secretarie of the Contr; which when to william Bulgard. I was offended. The fame young man alforded and Manua Chan the state that the state of the Contract of the state of the heard, I was offended. The same young man also declared to Mangu Chan, that the worke the Palace of which he commanded to be made, was finished, which worke I described vnto you. Mangu Mangu Chan at hath at Caracarum a great Court, hard by the walls of the Citie, enclosed with a bricke-wall; Caracarum,into as the Priories of Monkes are enclosed with vs. In that place, there is a great Palace, wherein which Chie he holdeth his drinkings twice a yeere: once in Easter, when hee passeth that way, and once in Palm funday. Summer, when he returneth. And this latter is the greater : because then all the Nobles (who dwell farre some two moneths journey off in any place) meet together at his Court. And then Two moneths hee gives vnto them gifts and garments, and shewes his great glorie. There are many other journey. houses there, as large as Granges, wherein his victuals, and treasures are stored. In the entrance 50 of that great Palace (because it was vnseemely to bring in bottles of Milke, and other drinkes) Master William Parifiensis made him a great filuer Tree, arthe root whereof were foure filuet The Descrip-Lions, having one Pipe lending forth pure Cowes milke, and the foure Pipes were consayed tion of a most within the Tree, vn:o the top thereof: whole tops spread backe againe downward: and your artificiall succ

euery one of them was a golden Serpent, whose tayles twine about the bodie of the Tree. And

the Vault) blowes the Pipe strongly, which goeth to the Angell: And the Angell sets his Trumpet to his mouth, and the Trumpet foundeth very shrill. Then the Seruants hearing, which are in the chamber, every of them powre forth their drink into their proper Pipe, and the Pipes powre it forth from aboue, and they are received below in Veffels prepared for that purpole : Then the Butlers draw them, and carry them through the Palace, to men and women.

The deferiori. on of the Pa-

36

And the Palace is like a Church, having the middle Ile, and the two fides beyond the two rewes of Pillars, and three gates on the South. And within before the middle gate flands the tree. And Char himselfe sitteth in the North front, in an high place, that hee may bee seene of all. And there are two degrees of steps afcending vnto him, by the one, he that carryeth his cup commeth vp vnto him, and by the other he descendeth. That space which is in the middle, be- to tweene the tree and the fleps whereby they afcend vnto him, is voyde. For there flandeth hee that wayteth on his Gup, and the Messengers, which bring Presents. And hee sitteth there a. boue like a God. On the right fide (to wit) toward the West are the men on the left women For the Palace stretcheth it selfe out in length from North to South by the Pillars. On the right fide are places full of feates lifted vp, like the Sellar of an house; whereon his Sonnes and Brethren inc. On the left fide is the like, where his Wives and Daughters fit. One only woman fitteth there about by him, but not so high as hee. When therefore hee had heard, that the Worke was finished, hee commanded the chiefe Workeman to set it in his place, and make it fit. And about Passion Sunday, hee went before with small houses, leaving his greater houses be-

there fell a great Snow. Whereupon hee fent about mid-night to the Monke and vs. intra-

ting vs to pray vnto God, that hee would mitigate that wind and cold, because all the

the Paffion he hind : And the Monke and we followed him; and he fent vs another Bottle of Wine. And hee 20 goeth towards passed betweene the hilly Countries, where there was great wind, and an extreame cold, and

beafts which were in the trayne were in icopardie, especially because all that time they were with young and readie to bring forth. Then the Monke fent him Incense, requiring him to put it on the coales and offer it to God : which, whether he did, I know not. But the Tempest They enter Car cealed, which had now continued two dayes, and now the third day drew neere. On Palme Sunday we were neere Caracarana: In the dawning of the day we bleffed the Willow boughes. whereon as yet there appeared no bud, and about nine of the clocke we entred the Citie. carrying the Crossealoft with the Banner, passing through the middle of the street of the Saracens, 30 where the Market and Faires are vnto the Church : and the Nestorians met vs on Procession. And entring into the Church, we found them prepared to celebrate the Maffe : which beeing celebrated, they all communicated, and they asked mee, whether I would communicate: I anfwered that I had drunke before, and the Sacrament should not be received but falling. Maffe being faid, it was now Euening. Mafter William brought vs with great ioy to his Inne to fup with him : who had a Wife, the Daughter of a Lotharingian, borne in Hungarie, who could speake the French and the Language of Comania. We found also there a certayne other man called Basilius, the Sonne of an Englishman, borne in Hanigarie, who also was skilfull in the foresaid Languages. Supper being ended, they brought vs to our Cottage, which the Tarters had appointed vs, in a certayne plat of ground neere the Church, with the Oratory of the Monke. On the 40 morrow Chan himselfe entred into his Palace. And the Monke and L, and the Priests went vnto him. They suffered not my companion to goe, because he stumbled at the threshold. I much deliberated with my selfe what I should doe, whether I should goe or no. And fearing offence, if I should depart from other Christians, and because it pleased him : and fearing left that good might be hindred, which I hoped to obtaine, I chose rather to go, although I saw their actions ful of Sorcery and Idolatrie : nor did I any other thing there, but pray for the whole Church with a loud voyce, and also for Chan himselfe, that God would direct him to the way of eternall falnation. We therefore went into that Court which was sufficiently ordered. And in the Summer Rivers are conveyed into every place, whereby it is watered. After this we entred into the Palace, full of men and women, and stood before Chan, having the foresaid Tree at our backs, which 50 with the Vessels thereof tooke vp a great part of the Palace. The Priests brought two little Loques, and fruit in a Platter, which they prefented vnto him , bleffing them, And the Butler brought them wato him fitting aloft in a very high place, much raised. And hee presently began to eate one of the Loanes, and ient another to his Sonne, and to a certayne yonger Brother of his. who was brought vp by a certayne Nesterian, and knew the Gospell, who also sent for my Bi-

ble, that he might fee it. After the Priefts the Monke faid his Prayer, and I after the Monke.

Then he promised, that the next day he would come vnto the Church, which is great enough,

and faire, and all the feeling about was coursed with filke wrought with Gold. The next day

he went his way, willing the Priefts to excuse him, that he durit not come to the Church, be-

sarum, and other Priests of the Court, that they might celebrate Easter there.

caule he anderstood the dead were carried thither. But we, and the Monke remayned at Cara- 60

Mangu Chan

Maundie

Maundie Thursday drew neere, and Easter, and I had not our Vestments, and I considered Chap. 39.

The manner how the Nestorians made the Sacramentall Bread, and I was much troubled. The manner what I should doe; whether I should receive the Sacrament of them, or should celebrate it in their how the Niston what I mound not whether I mount recent when the same the Verments, and Chalice, and wpon their Altar, or should altogether abstaying from the Sacraments. Sacramental Then there were a great multitude of Christians, Hungarians, Alanians, Ratenians, Georgians, and Bread. The Armenians; all which had not seene the Sacrament innce they were taken: because the Nesto- Christians rians would not admit them to their Church, vnleffe they were baptized of them, as they faid, conteffe themver they made no mention of this to vs. And they offered their Sacrament freely to vs, and made feines, and reyet they made no mention of this to vs. And they offered their manner of Confectation. And also on ceiue the Same fland in the doore of the Quire, that I might see their manner of Confectation. And also on crament of

CHAP.I. Celebration, Receiving the Sacrament, Confession, Theft excused.

the Visill or Eeuen before Eafter, by the Font, that I might fee their manner of baptizing. They Frier william fay, they have of that Oyntment, wherewith Mary Magdalene anounted the feet of our in the dayes of Lord, and they power in as much of that Oyle, with that which they lay alide, and kneade their the Lords Sup bread therewith. For all those people of the East put fat in their bread , in stead of Leuen or Per, and Easter

Butter, or Suet of a sheepes tayle, or Oyle.

They fay also that they have of the flowre, whereof the bread was made, which the Lord confecrated; and alwayes powre out so much Oyle with it, as the flowre they lay aside. And they haue a Chamber hard by their Quire, and an Ouen, where they bake the bread, which they must conferrate with great reverence. They therefore make one Loafe of an hand breadth, with the forefaid Oyle, which they first breake into twelve pieces, according to the number of the Apo-20 files : and after divide those pieces, according to the multitude of the people : and the Priest gives the bodie of Christ to every one in his hand. And then every man taketh it out of the Palme of his hand with reuerence, and stretcheth his hand to the top of his head.

The forefaid Christians, and the Monke himselfe were very earnest, intreating vs for Gods TheChristians fake, that wee would celebrate. Then I made them bee confessed, by an Interpreter, as I desire the Sacould, reckoning up the tenne Commandements, and the feuen deadly Sinnes, and other Confession. things, for the which a man ought to bee grieued, and confessed. All of them publikely ex- These exclusion cufed themselves concerning Theft, saying, that without Theft they could not line, because ded the ten their Masters prouided them neither food nor rayment. Then considering, that they had Commande. their Malters prouded them neitner rood nor rayments. Then composing, that they ments per-taken away the perfons and their substance without just cause, I said voto them, that they have these fel-30 might lawfully take necessaries, of the goods of their Masters, and I was readie to main- lowes were of tayne it to the face of Mangu Chan.

Some of them also were Souldiers, who excused themselves, that they must needs goe rersminde, to the Warres, or else they should bee flaine; I firmely forbad them to goe against the Chri- which thought ftians, and that they should not hurt them , they should rather suffer themselves to bee K-Hemy had flaine. for so they should become Martyrs. And I said, that if any would accuse mee of Decalogue. this Doctrine before Mangu Chan, I would bee readie to preach the same in his hearing. For the Neftorians themselves of the Court were present, when I taught this; of whom I was fuspitions, least they should report ill of vs. Then Master William caused an Iron to bee made 40 for vs,, to make Hofts, and hee had certayne Veilments which hee had made for himselfe :

for he had some knowledge in Learning, and behaued himselfe as a Clerke. Hee caused the Image of the bleffed Virgin Marie to bee graven after the French fashion, and ingraved the History of the Gospell (in the Casements) very faire, and made a certayne filter Boxe, to lay vp the bodie of Christ therein, and the Relikes, in certayne little holes cunningly made in the fides of the Boxe.

Hee made alto a certayne Oratorie vpon a Chariot, very fairely painted with holy Histories. I therefore tooke his Vestments and blessed them , and wee made Hosts , after our manner, very faire; and the Neftonians affigued mee their Font for Baptisme, wherein The Partiarch there was an Altar. And their Patriarch fent them from Baldach, a square Hide like a por- of the Nestoritable Altar, made with Chrisme, which they vie in stead of confecrated Stone. There- ans remayneth 50 fore I celebrated on the Day of the Lords Supper, in their filuer Chalice and Diffi, which at Ealdach were very great Veffels; I did the like also on Easter day. And wee communicated the people with the blefling of God, as I hope. But they baptized in the Vigill of Eafter more

then threefcore persons very orderly. There was great toy generally among all Christians.

THen it hapned that Master William was grieuously sicke, and when hee was vpon reco- Chap.40. uerie, the Monke viliting him, gaue him Rubarbe to drinke, so that hee had almost William Boukilled him. Then vifiting him, when I found him foill at eafe, I asked him, what hee had chirris ficke, eaten or drunke? And hee told mee, the Monke had given him the forefaid Potion, and hee weth him Rudrunke two little Dishes full, thinking it had beene Holy Water. Then I went to the Monke, barbe; the and find voto him, Either goe as an Apostle doing Miracles indeed, by vertue of Prayer, and Priest Ionas is the Holy Ghoft, or doe as a Physician according to the arte of Medicine. You give a strong William admit

miftre: hthe Lords Supper vitto him, and anionteth him beeing readie to dye. Hee reprouerb the Monke for his Sorceties.

Potion of Physicke to drinke, to men not prepared, as if it were a certayne hollow thing, for the which you will incurre a foule scandall, if it come to the knowledge of men. From that time he began to feare and to beware of him.

It happeth at that time, that that Priest was sicke, who was, as it were, the Archdeacon of nus s ficke and the relt and his frien Is lent for a certayne Saracen, which was a Sooth-faver. Who faid vnto them, A certagne leane man, who neyther easeth, nor drinketh, nor fleepes in a Bed, is anory with him: of bee can obtaine his bleffing hee may recover. Then they understood it was the Monke. And about mid-night, the Priests Wife, his Sister, and his Sonne came, intreating that hee would come, and bleffe him. They also raised vs vp, to intreate the Monke. Then he said vnto vs , intreating him : Let him alone, because hee with three others, who likewise tooke enil courses, 10 confulted to goe vnto the Court, to procure Mangu Chan, that I and you should bee expelled from these parts.

For there arose a contention among them, because Mangu and his Wiues sent source Iascots and certayne Silkes upon Eafter Eeuen to the Monke and Priests, to distribute among them. And the Monke had kept vnto himfelie one Iafcot for his part, and of the other three, one was counterfeit, for it was Copper. Where pon it fremed to the Priests, that the Monke had kept too great a portron to himselfe. Whence (it might bee) that they had some words among themselfus, which were reported to the Monke. When day came I went vnto words among themselfus, which were reported to the Monke. When day came I went vnto the Prieit, hauing an extreme griere in his fide, and spitting bloud : whereupon I thought it was an Impostume. Then I counselled him (if he had any thing that was an others) to restore 20 The Nellarians 1t. He faid, hee had nothing. I spoke vnto him also of the Sacrament of Extreme Vnction. knowner Ex- Who answered, we have no such custome, neither doe our Priests know how to doe it : I intreat tremeVaction, you, that you would doe it for mee, as you know best to bee done. I aduifed him allo concerning Confession, which they frequent not, hee spake shortly in the Eare of a certayne

Priest, one of his fellowes.

After this hee beganne to bee better, and hee intreated mee to goe for the Monke. So I went, but the Monke would not come at the first : yet when hee heard hee was some-what better, hee went with his Croffe. And I also went, and carryed (in a Boxe of Mafter Willians) the bodie of Chrift, which I had referued voon Easter Day, at the intreatie of Maiter Williams. Then the Monke beganne to kicke him with his feet , and hee most humbly im-

Then I faid vnto him; It is the custome of the Church of Rome, that the ficke should receive the Bodie of Christ, as it were prouision for their journey, and a defence against all the Deceits of the Enemie. Behold, the Bodie of Christ, which I confecrated on Easter Day. You must be confessed, and desire it. Then said hee with a great Faith, I desire it with all my heart. Which, when I had discouered, hee, with great affection said, I beleeue, that this is my Creatour and my Sauiour, who gaue mee life, and will restore it againe vnto mee after death in the generall Refurrection: and so tooke the Bodie of Christ (from my hand) made after the manner of the Church of Rome. Then the Monke abode with him, and gaue him (in my absence) I know not what Potions. On the morrow hee beganne to have the pangs of 40 death vpon him. Then taking their Oyle, which they faid, was holy, I anointed him according to the manner of the Church of Rome, as they intreated mee. I had none of our Oyle, becaule the Priests of Sartach kept all.

fen with one that dyeth, carno: come into the pre-

And when wee should fing a Dirge, and I would have beene present at his end, the Monke fent vnto mee, willing me to depart, because if I should bee present, I could not come into the He thirispres houle of Mangu Chan, for one whole yeare. Which, when I had told his friends, they faid, it was true : and requested me to depart, left I might be lundered in that good, which I might promote. Afloone as her was dead, the Monke fail vnto mee, care not : I haue killed him with my Prayers. This fellow only was Learned, and opposed himselse against vs: the rest know nothing. Henceforth Mangu Chan himselfe, and they all will crouch at our feete. Then hee de- 50 Prince, for the clared vnto me the forefaul Answere of the Sooth-layer. Which (not beleeuing it) I inquired of the Priests who were friends of the dead, whether it were true or no. Who said it was, Bod blindnes, But whether he were pre-instructed or not, that they knew not. Afterwards I found, that the The Monkey. Monke called the forelaid Sooth-fayer and his Wife into his Chappell, and caused dust to bee feth Dminut- fifted, and to divine vnto him. For hee had a certayne Ruterian Deacon, who divined to him. Which, when I understood, I was astonied at his foolishnosse, and said vnto him, Brother, a man fill of the Holy Ghoft which teacheth all things, should not demand Answeres or Counsell from Sooth-sayers; seeing all such things are forbidden, and they excommunicated, who follow such things. Then hee beganne to excuse himselfe that it was not true, that hee fought after such things. But I could not depart from him, because I was placed there by 60 the commandement of Chan himfelte, nor could I remocue my felfe without his speciall command.

Oncerning the Citie of Caracarum, know this, that excluding the Palace of Chan himfelfe . it is not to good, as the Cattle of Saint Denis : and the Monasterie of Saint De-Chap. 41. mis is tenne times more worth then that Palace, and more too. There are two fireets there: on of the Cione of the Saracens, where the Faires are kept : and many Merchants have recourse thither, tie of caracaby realon of the Court, which is alwayes neere, and for the multitude of Messengers. There rum, they are is another fitreet of the Cataians, who are all Artificers. Without those fitreets there are great examined: Palaces, which are the Courts of the Secretaries. There are there twelve kindes of Idolatries fenderh h.s. of divers Nations. Two Churches of Mahomet, where the Law of Mahomet is proclaimed : brethren aone Church of the Christians at the end of the Towne. The Towne is inclosed with a mudde gainst divers To Wall, and hath foure Gates. On the East part Millet and other Graine is fold, which yet is Kingdomes, feldome brought thither. On the West, Sheepe and Goates. On the South, Oxen and Waggons are fold. At the North, Horles are fold. Following the Court, before the Ascension, wee Saraconsfarecame thither the Sunday before the Ascension. The next day after, we were called before Bul. well The Wick gai, who is a Justice, and chiefe Secretarie, both the Monke and all his Family, and wee; and of Mangu Chan all the Meffengers and Strangers, which frequented the house of the Monke. And wee were dyethcalled before Bulgar feuerally, first the Monke, and after wee, and they beganne diligently to inquire whence wee were, and for what purpose wee came, and what our errand was? And this inquirie was made, because it was told Mangu Chan, that foure hundred Hassaines, or fecret Murtherers were gone forth in divers Habits to kill him. About that time the forefaid 20 Ladie was restored to health, and shee sent for the Monke; and hee not willing to goe, answered : flee bath fent for Idolaters about her, let them cure her, if they can, I will goe no more. Vpon Ascension Eeuen, wee were in all the houses of Mangu Chan : and I saw when hee should drinke, how they cast Cosmos to their Idols of Felt, Then I said to the

Moreover, Mangu Chan hath eight Brethren, three by the Mother, and five by the Father. One of them of his Mothers fide, hee fent into the Countrey of the Haffafines, who are called by them Mulibet: and hee commanded to kill them all. Another went towards The Countrey Perfia, and is now entred therein, to goe (as is thought) into Turkie, from thence to fend of the Haffa-30 Armies against Baldach, and Vastacius. One of the other he sent into Cataia, against some that since, or Mulirebelled. His youngest Brother of the same venter, hee kept nigh himselfe, whose name was bet. Arabacha, who holdeth his Mothers Court which was a Christian, whose Seruant Master Some of Ge-William is : for one of his Brothers, on the Fathers fide, tooke him in Hungarie in a certayne Ci- taigrebell. tie, called Belgrade, where there was a Norman Bishoppe, of Belle-Ville neere Roan, with a certayne Nephew of the Bishoppes, whom I saw there at Caracarum. And hee gave Master William to Mangues Mother, because shee was very earnest to have him. When she was dead. Master William came backe againe to Arabucha, with all things else pertayning to the Court of his Mother : and from him hee came to the knowledge of Mangu Chan. Who after the finishing of the foresaid Worke, gaue vnto Master William an hundred Iascots, that is, a thou-40 fand Markes.

Monke, What fellowshippe hath Christ with Beliall. What part hath our Crosse with

On the Eeuen therefore of the Ascension, Mangu Chan said, hee would goe to his Mothers Court, and visit her, for it was neere. And the Monke said, hee would goe with him, and giue his bleffing to his Mothers foule. Chan was well contented. In the Eurning, the day of Accepton day. the Ascension, the foresaid Ladie was very much pained. And the chiefe of the Sooth Jayers fent to the Monke, commanding him that the Table should not be smitten. On the morrow, when the whole Court remound, the Court of the forefaid Ladie remayned fill. And when wee came to the place where the Court should stay, the Monke was commanded to depart further from the Court, then hee was wont : which hee did. Then Arabucha met his brother Arabuchathe Chan. So the Monke, and wee, feeing that hee was to paffe by vs, met him with the Crofle, yongerbro 30 And hee calling vs to minde, because sometimes he had beene at our Oratorie, ftretching forth ther of Manga his hand, made a Croffe vnto vs, like a Bishop. Then the Monke taking Horle, followed cham. him, bearing certayne Fruits. But hee alighted, before his brothers Gourt, wayting, while hee came from hunting. Then the Monke alighted there, and offered him the Fruit, which hee received. And hard by him fate two Saracens, of the Nobilitie of the Court of Chan. But Araducha vinderstanding of the contention betweene the Christians and the Saracens, enquired of Ignorant zeale the Monke if hee knew the faid Saracens; and hee answered, I know they are Dogges: abstrayer of why haue you them so neere you! but they replyed; why, say they, doe you wrong vs, the Faith, a

your Mahomet are vile Dogges. Then they beganne to answere Hasphemously against Christ; of Tailorina 60 and Arabucha forbad them, faying, speake not so blasphemously, for weeknow, that the Stratemine. Messas is God. That very houre there arose so great a winde over all the street, that the Wines of the Deuils feemed to runne through them. Andafter awhile, there came Rumours, that the La- dyeth, die was dead,

when wee doe none to you! To whom the Monke faid, I speake the truth : and yee, and cause perhaps

The next morning, Chan returning towards his Court another way. For this is their Sorcerie, that they neuer returne the lame way they came. Moreouer, while the Court abode heere, after the remoone thereof, none dare paffe that way (neither Horseman nor Footman) where the Court stayed, fo long as any shew of the fire made there, remayneth. That day certayne Saracens kept company with the Monke vpon the way, prouoking him, and disputing with him. And when hee could not defend himfelfe with Argument, and they mocked him, hee would have lashed them with the Whip which hee held in his hand; and hee went so farre, that the foresaid words were reported at the Court. And wee were commanded to depart with other Messengers, and not abide before the Court, where wee were wont. And I alwayes hoped, the King of Armenia would come. There came fome about Eafter from Bo- 10 lac, where those Ducchmen are, for whose fake chiefly I went thither, who told mee, that the Dutch Priest should come to the Court. Therefore I mooued no Question to Manen. concerning our flav, or departure. And in the beginning hee gaue vs leaue to flay but two monethes: and now fine monethes are past. This was done about the end of May. And wee had continued there all Ianuary, February, March, Aprill, and May. But hearing no newes of the King, or the faid Prieft, and fearing left wee should returne in the Winter, whose sharpnesse wee had or the land priett, and teating ter we manufacture that the state of the property of the present ending the property of the present end to the property of the present end to the it were easier for vs to returne in Summer, then in the Winter. Hee presently sent vnto mee, commanding, that I should not goe farre off, because his pleasure was to speake 20 with mee the next day. But I told him, that if hee would speake with mee, hee should fend for Master Williams Sonne , for my Interpreter was not sufficient. And hee , that spake with mee, was a Saracen, who had beene a Messenger to Vastacim: and (blinded with Rewards) counfelled Vastacius to send Ambassadours to Mangu Chan, and the meane while the time palled: for Vaftacius thought , hee would prefently enter his Countrey. So hee sent, and after hee knew them, hee little regarded them, nor made peace with them, neither did they yet enter his Countrey : nor shall they bee able, so long The Tarun do as they dare defend themselues, nor did they eaer take any Countrey by Force, but by more by deceit Deceit. And because men make peace with them, vnder colour of that peace they o-

then by force. nerthrow them.

Then hee beganne to bee very Inquisitive of the Pope, and of the King of the Franckes. and of the way to goe to them. But the Monke hearing this , aduised mee secretly not to answere him, because he would procure, that an Ambassadour should be sent. Whereupon I held my peace, not willing to answere him. And hee spake vnto mee I know not what injurious words; for the which the Neftorian Priests would have accused him : so that hee had either beene flaine, or beaten all to clouts, but I would not.

examined

Chap. 42. ON the morrow, (to wit) the Sunday before Pentecoft, they brought mee to the Court:
They are often On the morrow of the Court came vnto mee: one of Mod I, who wayteth vpon Chans cup, and the reft, Saracens, inquiring on the behalfe of Chan, wherefore I came? Then I 40 wherfore they told them the foresaid words, how I came to Sartach, and from Sartach to Baats, and how Baats fent me thither. Whereupon, I faid vnto him, I have nothing to speake on the behalfe of any to make com- man, vnleffe I should speake the words of God vnto him, if he would heare them; for he should parison of Di- best know what Basts hath written to him. They stucke vpon this word, demanding, what words of God I would speake vnto him? thinking I would prophelie vnto him some prosperous The most lear- thing, as many vie to doe. To whom I answered: if yee will that I speake the words of God Friet William vnto him, get me an Interpreter. Who faid, we have fent for him, yet speake by this Interprewith the Idolater, as you may: wee shall understand you well. And they vrged mee much to speake. Then I ters. The Sa- faid: This is the word of God: To whom more is committed, more is required at his hands, anovaccus accornon- the ralfo : to whom more is forginen, hee ought to lone more out of these true words of God, I faid, to 50 ledge the cruth Mangu bimfelfe, that God bath given him much. For the power and riches which bee hath, the Idols of the Tuinians have not given him, but the Omnipotent God, who hath made Heanen and Earth, in whose conference of bands all Kingdomes are, and hee translatesh them from Nation to Nation for the sinnes of men. Friet William, Wherefore if he love him, it shall goe well with him : if otherwise, let him know, that God will require all with the Ser, these things at his bands, even to the vitermost farthing. Then faid one of the Saracens, Is there any man that loueth not God? I answered, God faith, if any man loue me, he will keepe my Commandements: and be that loueth me not, keepeth not my Commandements. Therefore, hee that keepeth not the Commandements of God, loneth not God. Then faid hee, have yee bin in Heaven, that yee might know the Commandements of God! No faid I, but he bath given them from Heaven to boly men : and at the last himselfe descended from Heauen, teaching vs : and wee have those things in the 60 Scriptures, and we fee by the workes of men, whether they keepe them or no. Whereto hee replyed, will yee then fay that Mangu Chan keepes not the Commandements of God ? To whom I faid, Your Interpreter wil come, as yee lay, then before Mangu (ban'it it please him) I wil recite the

CHAP. I. The Can wavers betwixt Ethnikes, Saracens and Christians,

Commandements of God, and he shall be his owne Indge, whether hee keepe them or not. So they departed, and told him, that I faid, hee was an Liolater or a Tume, and kept not the Commandements of God. The next day, he fent his Secretaries vnto mee, faying : Our Lord fends vs vnto you, faving. Yee are heere Christians, Saracens, and Times : and every of you faith, his Makes Charl Law is better, and his Letters (to wit) Bookes, are truer. Wherefore hee would, that yee all deficeth to come together, and make comparison, that energy one write his words, that he might know the haue a compacome together, and make comparison, that every one write his words, that he might know the rion in de truth. Then I laid, Bleffedbe God, who hath put this in the heart of Chan, but our Scriptures faid, the concerning discovery the concerning discovery that the concerning discovery that the concerning discovery the conce Servant of God must not bee contentious, but meeke unto all: wherefore I am readie without strife and uine things. contention, to render an account of the faith and hope of Christians, to every one that shall require it. between the 10 Then they wrote my words, and brought them to him. Then the Nesterians were comman. Criffians, Sadded, to prouide themselues, and write what they would speake, and the Saracens likewise, and tree.

the Tunians alfo. On the morrow hee fent the Secretaries againe, favng: Mangu Chan would know, wherefore yee came to these parts, to whom I faid : That hee shall know by the Letters of Bastu. Then faid they, Bastues Letters are left, and hee hath forgotten, what Bastu wrote with him, wherefore he would know of you, Then I omew at imboldned, I faid vinto them. The His Answeredutie or office of our Religion is to preach the Goffell to all: whereupon, when I heard of the fame of the people of Moal, I had a defire to come unto them: and while I was thus purposed, we heard of Sattach, that he was a Christian. Then I directed my lourney unto him: And my Sourceigne Lord the King of

20 the Frankes fent him Letters, contaying good words: and other words befides, testifie of us unto him, what men wee are when bee made request, that hee would suffer vs to continue with the people of Moal. Then be fent vs to Baatu, and Baatu to Manga Cha . It bereupon we intreated, and yet intreat him to fuffer us to flay. But they wrote all, and made relation thereof vnto him. On the morrow, he fent to me againe, faying: Chan knowes well en augh that yee have no meffage vnto him, but yee came to pray for him as many other Priests doe : But hee ceman leth, whether ever any of your Embalfadours were with him, or ours with you? Then I declared all vinto them concerning Dayid and Frier Andrew, to they putting all in writing, reported the fame vnto him. Then he fent againe vnto me, faying : Our Lord Chan far h, yee have flayed long here, his pleature is, Mauga Chân that yee returne vinto your Country; withall, hee demandeth whether yee would conduct his will have them 20 Emballadours with you. To whom I made answere, that I durit not carrie his Emballadours returne. beyond his owne Countrey : because there is a Warlike Nation betweene vs and you, and

the Sea and Mountaynes, and I am a prore Monke : and therefore dare not take vpon mee to bee his Guide. So they having fet downe all in writing, returned. Whitfon Eeuen came; The Neftorians writ Chronicles from the Creation of the World to Whitfunday the Paffion of Christ; and passing over the Passion, they spake of the Resurrection of the dead, Ecuen.

and of the Afcention, and of the comming to Judgement. Wherein fomewhat was to be reprehended which I told them, and wee likewite wrote the Symbole of the Maffe, Credo in vnum Deum. Then I demanded of them, how they would proceed. They faid, they would first dispute with the Saracens. I shewed them, this was no good course : for the Saracens in this agree with vs, 40 who affirme, there is but one God. Wherefore, yee shall have them to helpe you against the Tuines: to they were contented. Then lasked tem, it they knew how Idolatry had his first How Idolatry originall in the World, and they could not tell. Then I told them and they faid; yee shall de- began first in clare these things vnto them : and then let vs speake, for it is hard to speake by an Interpreter. the World. To whom I faid: make tryall, how yee will behaue your felues against them : I will take the Tuinians part, and yee the Christians. Suppose I am of that Sect, that fay, there is no God. Proue yee there is a God. For there is a certayne Sect there, which faith, That every foule, and euery vertue in what thing foeuer, is the God thereof, and that otherwife there is no God. Then the Nestorians knew not how to prooue any thing, but only that which their Writing declareth. I faid, they believe not the Seriptures : if yee thew one, they will shew another. Then I

50 counfelled them, to let me first talke with them: because if 1 sho. 1.1 be ouercome, they might yet have libertie of speech: if they should be overthrowne, I should have no hearing. They agreed Wee were therefore gathered together on Whidfon Euen at our Oratorie, and Mangu Chan fent three Writers, who should be Judges : one Christian , one Saracen , and one Tuine : And it was proclaimed before. This is the Commandement of Mangu Chan : And none dare fay that the The Proclams-Commandement of God is otherwise: He commandet b that none freshe contentious or inturious words tion of Manga to other, nor make any tumult, whereby this businessemight be hindered, voon paine of his head. Then all were ident : And there was a great affembly there : for every partie inuited the wifelt of their Nation, and many others came flocking thither. Then the Christians fet me in the mid-

dle of them, willing the Tuinians to speake with mee. Then they (who are many in number) The murmu-60 began to murmure against Mangu Chan, because never any Chan attempted thus much, to search ring of the Iinto their fecrets. Then they opposed one vnto mee, who came from Catata, having his Inter- dol tors apreter : and I had Mafter Williams Sonne. And he first faid vinto me : Friend, if you bee brought to guid Mangu

the Manichees in Catale, as a fprout from cting all the Easterne Phi-10 ophic and Religions. A Pythagarest

potent.

God knowes

The beginning a non plus, you must seeke a wifer then your selfe. But I held my peace. Then hee demanded The beginning whereof I would first dispute seither how the world was made so what becomes of the foules of the disputa-tion concer-after death : To whom I answered : Friend, this should not be the beginning of our speech. All ning the Chritthings are of God, and he is the Fountayne and head of all. Wherefore we ought to I peake first than Religions of God; of whom yee thinke otherwise then we doe. And Mangu defires to know who bewish an lightleeues better. Then the Arbitrators judged this to bee reasonable. They would have begunne We ought fift with the forelaid questions, because they hold them for the strongest; for they are all of the Heto speak: of relie of the Manichees: heleeuing, that the one halfe of things is had, and the other good : and that God.

The herefie of the least there are two Principia. And concerning the foules they all thinke they paffe from body to body. Infomuch as one of the wilest of the Nestorian Priests demanded of mee, con- ta cerning the foules of bruite Beafts, whether they could fly any whither where they should not be compelled to labour after death ! for confirmation also thereof (as Master William told mee) a the Magi, infe- certaine child was brought from Cataia, who (according to the quantitie of his body) was not three yeeres old, yet not withflanding was capable of any reason; who affirmed of himlelfe, that he had beene three times incorporated, and knew letters, and how to write. I faid to the toresaid Tuinian, Wee firmely believe with the heart, and confesse with the mouth, that there is a God, and there is but one God, and one in perfect unitie. What beleene you? Hee laid : Fooles fay there is but one God, but Wife men fay there are many. Are there not great Lords in your Country, and Here is a greater Lord, Mangn Chan? So is it of the gods : because in divers Countries there are divers. To whom I faid : You make an ill example or comparison of men with God; for so every migh- 20 tie man in his countrey may be called a god. And when I would have diffolued the fimilitude, hee preuented me, inquiring; What manner of God is yours, whereof you speake, that hee is but Gadis Omni. one? I answered : Our God, beside whom there is no other, is Omnipotent, and therefore needeth not the helpe of another : nay, all we have neede of his helpe, it is not so with men. No man can doe all things. And therefore there must be many Lords in the earth, because no one can support all. Againe, be knowes all things, therefore be needes not a Counfeller : nay, all wifedome is from him. Moreoner, be ss perfect ly good, and needeth not our good : nay, in him we line, mone, and have our being. Such is our God, and Godperfectly therefore you must not hold there is any other. It is not so, faith he. Nay, there is one highest in the Heauens, whose Generation we know not yet, and ten are vnder him, and vnder them there is one Inferiour. And in the Earth there are infinite. Then hee would have added other fables. 30 So I asked him of that highest God, whether he thought he were Omnipotent for of any other God : and fearing to answer, hee demanded, if your God bee such as you say, Why made bee the balfe of things enill? It is falle faid I. Whoso maketh any enill is no God, and all things what sener are good. At this word all the Tuinians maruelled, and let it downe in writing, as falle, or impossible. Then he began to aske, Whence therefore commeth evill You aske amile, faid I; For first you flould demand, what emil is, before you aske whence it is. But returne unto the first question, whether you believe that any God is Omnipotent, and after I will answer you to all what soener you will demand. Then hee fate a long time and would not answer; Infomuch, as the Writers on the behalfe of Chan, were faine to command him to answer. At length hee answered : That no God was Omnipotent. Then all the Saracers brake out into great laughter : Silence being made, I laid, There- 40 fore none of your gods can fine you is all dangers, because such a chance may happen, wherein he bath no power. Againe, no man can ferue two Masters. How then can you ferue so many Lords in Heanen and in earth. The Auditorie willed him to answer. But he held his peace. Then when I was about to alleadge reasons to proue the truth of the divine Essence, and the Trinitie, in every mans hearing, the Nestorians of the Countrey faid vnto me, that it was enough, because they meane to fpeake. So I gaue them place : And when they would have diffputed with the Saracons : they answered : We grant that your Law is true, and what soener is m the Gospell is true : Wherefore wee will not dispute with you in any thing : and they confessed, that they beg at the hands of God in their prayers, that they may die the death of the Christians. There was there a certaine old Priest of the Sect of Ingurs, who confesse one God, yet they make Idols, with whom they talked much, so

The Sarasens aniwer , that the Gospell is The Sect of the lugars.

Chap 43.

The day of

Pentecoft be

is called be-

tore Mangu

VPon Whitfonday Mangu Chan called mee before him, and the Twinan with whom I di-funted, and before I went in, Master Williams sonne my Interpreter, said unto me, that we must returne vnto our Countrey; and that I should speake nothing against it, because he vnderhis Interpreter. Then he faid vnto me: Tell me the truth , whether you faid (when I fent my pleafed your Highnesse) I will tell you the words I spake. Then I recited what I had spoken : and his resurne by Baats, he crameth leave to flay there, which is not graumed

racens fang together with a loud voice, the Tuinians holding their peace : and after that, they all drunke abundantly. itood it for a certaine. When I came before him, I must kneele, and the Tunnian by mee, with 60 chin, who con- Writers vnto you) that I was a Tuinian? Then I answered. My Lord, I said not so, but (if it felleth the faith be ipeaketh of he answered; I thought well, you faid not to, for it was a word which you should not speake,

shewing all till the comming of Christ to judgement, declaring the Trinitie to him and the Sa-

racens by similitudes. All of them harkened without any contradiction; yet none of them

faid. I beleeve, and will become a Christian. The conference ended, the Nestorians and the Sa-

but your Interpreter hath ill interpreted it; so hee reacheth foorth his staffe towards mee, whereon he leaned, faying : Feare not. I fmiling faid foftly, If I feared, I had not come hither. A token of fa-Then he demanded of the Interpreter what I had faid? So he repeated my words with him. Af- uour. terwardhe beganne to confesse his Faith vnto me. Wee Moallians (faith he) beleeue, that there The faith of is but one God, through whom we line and dye; and we have an vyright heart towards him. Then (faid the Tariars. 1) God grant youthis, for without this gift it cannot be. And he demanded what I faid : fo the Interpreter told him; then he added turther. That as God hath ginen unto the hand diners fingers, Go be hath given many wases to men. God hath given the Scriptures to you, and ye Christians keep them not. Te finds it not in the Scriptures, that one of you shall dispraise another? Doe you finde it, laid he?

CHAP.I.

Tartars Futh. Baatus greatnesse. Tartarian Sorcerers.

Io No, faid I, but I fignified vnto you from the beginning, that I would not contend with any. I Beake is not, faith he, touching you. In like manner, yee finde it not, that for Money a man ought to Acline from Inflice. No Sir, laid I, and truly, neither came I into thele parts to get Money; nay. Irefused that which was given me. And there was a Writer present there, who gave testimony that I had refused a Iascot, and certaine pieces of Silke : I speake it not (faid he) for that. God hath given you the Scriptures, and yee keepe them not : But be hath given vs Sonth-layers, and we doe that which they bid vs, and we line in peace. He dranke foure times as I thinke, before hee disclosed these things. And while I hearkned attentiuely whether hee would confesse any thing elle concerning this Faith, he beganne to speake of my returne, saying : You have stayed a long He speakehof

time heere, my pleasure is therefore, that you returne. You faid, you durst not carrie my Em- the Fryersee 20 baffadours with you. Will you carrie my meffage or my Letters ? And from that time I could turnes neither haue place nor time to shew him the Catholike Faith. For a man cannot speake before him, saue what he pleaseth, vniesie he were an Embassadour. But an Embassadour may speake what he will : And they alwaies demand, whether he have any thing elfe to fay. But he fuffered me to speake no more: but I must heare him, and answere Interrogatories. Then I answer

red. That if he could make me understand his words, and that they were fet downe in writing, I would willingly carrie them to my power. Then he asked me, if I would have Gold or Siluer, or costly garments ! I said, we receive no such things : but we have not expenses, and without your helpe, we cannot get out of your Countrey. Then faid he, I will prouide you all necesfaries throughout my Countrey, will you any more? I answered, it sufficeth me : Then he de-30 manded, how farre will you be brought? I faid, Let our Passe bring vs into the King of Armemines Countrey : if I were there, it were enough. He answered : I will cause you to be conucyed thither, and after looke to your selfe. And hee added : there are two eyes in one head; and though they bee two, yet there is one aspect of both, and whither the one directeth the fight the other doth. You came from Baatu, and therefore you must returne by him: when hee had Baatus greatthus faid, I craued licence to speake. Speake on, faith hee. Then faid I; Sir, wee are not men of neffe. warre: wee defire that they have dominion of the world, who would more instly gouerne it, according to the will of God. Our office is to teach men to line according to the will of God: for this Hee craueth

purpose came we into these parts, and would willingly baue remained beere, if it had pleased you: leave againe to purpose came we into these parts, and would willings base remained neere, if it has pleased your stay in the Tar-but seeing it is your pleasure that we returne, it must bee so. I will returne and carrie your Letters tare Country, 40 according to my power, as yee have commanded. I would request your magnificence, that when I but it is not base carried your Letters, it might bee lawfull for me to returne unto you with your good liking, granted. chiefely, because yee have poore Servants of yours at Bolac, who are of our language; and they want a Priest, to teach them and their children their Law, and I would willingly flay with them. Then answered he : Know you whether your Lords would fend you backe to me ? Then faid I ; Sir, I know not the purpose of my Lords: but I have lucence from them to goe whether I will, where it were needfull to preach the word of God: and it seemeth to mee, that it were very necessarie in these parts: whereupon, whether they fend Embassadours backe or no, if it pleased you, I would returne. Then hee

held his peace, and fate a long space as it were in a Muse. And my Interpreter willed me, to Hedeparteth speake no more, and I carefully expected what he would answere. At length he said : You have from the pre-50 a long way to goe, make your felfe itrong with food, that you may come lufty into your Coun-trey. And he caufed them to give me drinke. Then I departed from his prefence and returned not againe. If I had had power to doe wonders as Mofes did, peraduenture hee had humbled

himfelfe. Ooth-sayers therefore, as hee confessed, are their Priests: and what soeuer they command to A description Soch-sayers therefore, as hee confessed, are their Priests: and whattoeuer they command to of the Toriaribee done, is performed without delay. Whose office I describe vnto you, as I could learne of an Sorcerers, Malter William, and others, who reported vnto me things likely to be true. They are many; and and of their they have alwaies one Captaine or chiefe Prieft : who alwaies placeth his house before the great divers ard vnhouse of Mangu (ban, neere, within a stones cast. Vnder his custodie (as I said before) are the lawfull behaus-60 Chariots which beare their Idols. The others are behind the Court, in places appointed for them. Chiefe Price

And they who have any confidence in that Art, come vnto them from divers parts of the of the Tarters. World. Some of them are skilfull in Aftronomie, specially the chiefe of them. And they fore- Some of them tell to them the Eclipse of the Sunne and the Moone, and when it shall come to passe. All the know Astrono. people prepare them food, so that they need not goe forth of the doore of their house. And Eckipses. when

ucry yearc.

fore-rell their are allotent. for when any

The falle ac-

the Neftorians in Caraia.

when there is an Eclipfe, they play upon their Timbrels and Organs, and make a great noise, and a lou'e crye, when the Eclipse is past, they give themselves to feathing, and drinking, and make They forestell great joy. They foretell fortunate and valueky dayes for all butinetic or affaires. Whereupon lucky and vn- they neuer legie an Armie, nor vndertake Warre without their direction. And they had long for unat cans fine returned into Hungarie: but their Sooth-layers doe not fuffer them. They make all thines mance of all which are fent to the Court palle betweene fires, and they have a due portion thereof. They business were also purge all the houshold-stuffe of the Dead, drawing them betweene the fires. For when forcer in one dieth, all things whatfleeuer appertayne to him, are feparated, and not mingled with finey confeall other things of the Court, till all be purged by the Fire. So did I fee it done to the Court of the betweene fires. Friar Andrew, and his fellowes should goe betweene the fires, both because he brought presents. Friar Andrew, as alfo for that they belonged to him, who was dead, (to wit) Ken Chan. No fuch thing was and his cllows required of me, because I brought nothing. If any living creature, or any thing else, fall to the ground, while they thus make them paffe betweene the fires , that is theirs. They also the The ninth day minth day of the Moone of May, gather together all the white Mares of the Herd, and confeof the Moone crate them. The Christian Priests also must come together thither with their Censers, Then or May followilly kept c- they cast new Cosmos vpon the ground, and make a great Feast that day; because then they thinke they drinke Cosmos first, as it is the fashion tomewhere with vs, touching Wine, in the Feath of Saint Bartholmen, or Sixtue, and of fruits, in the Feath of Saint James and Christopher. They also are inusted, when any child is borne, to foretell his deftinie. They are fent for also when any isticke, to vie their Charmes : and they tell whether it bee a naturall infirmitie . or 20 by Sorcetie. Whereupon that woman of Mentz, whereof I foake before, told mee a wondiffinies, and derfull thing. On a certaine time, very coffly Furres were prefented, which were layd downe at the Court

of her Ladie, who was a Christian as I faid before. And the Sooth-favers drew them through betweene the fires, and tooke more of them then was their due. And a certaine woman, under whole custodie the treasure of her Ladie was , accused them thereof vnto her Ladie : wherevoon the Ladie her felie reproued them. It fell out after this, that the Ladie her felfe began to be licke, and to fuster certaine fudden passions in divers parts of her bodie. The Sooth-favers were called : and they fitting farre off, commanded one of those Maidens, to put her hand youn 30 the place where the griefe was, and if thee found any thing, thee thould fnatch it away. Then thee arifing did fo. And the found a piece of Felt in her hand, or of some other thing. Then they commanded her to put it upon the ground; which being layd downe, it began to creepe, as if it had beene some living Creature. Then they put it into the water, and it was turned as it were, into a Horfe-leach: and he faid, fome Witch hath hurt you thus with her Sorceries: and they accused her that had accused them of the Furres, who was brought without the Tents into the fields, and received the baltinado feuen dayes together there, and was thus the Sorcerers. tormented with other punishments, to make her confesse; and in the meane space her Ladie died. Which shee understanding, faid unto them, I know my Ladie is dead, kill mee, that I may goe after her, for I neuer did her hurt. And when thee confelled nothing, Manon Chan 40 commanded to faffer her to line. Then the Sorcerers accused the Ladies daughters Nurse, of whom I spake before : w ho was a Christian, and her husband was the chiefe among all the Neforian Priefts, to flee was brought to punishment, with a certaine Maide of hers, to make her confesse. And the Maide confessed, that her Mistresse sent her to speake with a certaine Horse, to demand answeres. The woman also her felfe, confessed some things which shee did to bee beloued of her Ladie, that the might doe her good, but thee did nothing that might hurt her. Shee was demanded alfo, whether her husband were privile to it: thee excused him, for that he had burnt the Characters and Letters which she had made. Then shee was put to death, and Manou The Bishop of Chan sent the Priest her husband to the Bishop which was in Cataia, to be judged, although he were not found culpable.

In the meane time it fell out, that the principall wife of Mangu Chan, brought forth a fonne, and the Sooth-fayers were called, to fore-tell the Destinie of the child, who all prophecied prosperitie, and faid, he should live long, and be a great Lord : after a few dayes, it happened, the child died. Then, the mother enraged, called the Sooth-fayers, faying, you faid my fonne should line, and loe hee is dead. Then they faid, Madam, behold wee fee that Sorcereffe, the Nurle of Chirina, who the other day was put to death, flee hath killed your forme; and behold wee fee. thee carries him away. Now there remayned one fonne and a daughter of that woman growne to full age in the Tents: and the Ladie fent presently for them in a rage, and caused the young man to be flayne of a man, and the maide of a woman, in revenge of her fonne, whom the Soothfayers affirmed to be killed of their mother not long after, Mangu Chan dreamed of those chil- 60 dren, and demanded in the morning, what was become of them. His feruants were afraid to tell him : and he being troubled the more, demanded where they were, because they had anpeared vnto him in a Vition by night. Then they told him. So hee prefently fending for his wife, demanded whence shee learned, that a woman should give fentence of death, without the

prinitie of her Husband . And he caufed her to be flut up feauen dayes, commanding to give her The Reuenge no meat. But the man who (who flew the young man) he caused to be beheaded; and the head of Manguether, no meat. Due the man who (who had kild the Mayde; and made her to be capelled ypon his Wie to be hung about the womans necke, who had kild the Mayde; and made her to be capelled ypon his Wie to be hung about the womans necke, who had kild the Mayde; and made her to be capelled ypon his Wie to be the proposed to the p to be hung about the womans included the Tents, and after to be put to Death. Hee had also put theren. his Wife to death, but for the Children he had by her: And he went out of his Court, and retur-

ned not till after one Moone. of not till after one moone. The Sorcerers also trouble the Ayre with their charmes: and when the Cold is so great na- The Sorcerers turally, that they cannot apply any remedy, then they fearch out fome in the Campe, whom touble the they accuse, that the cold comes through their meanes, so they are put to Death without any Ayre with their 10 delay. A little before I departed thence, one of the Concubines was ficke, and languified long, Charmes.

and they mumbled their Charmes ouer a certaine Dutch Slaue of hers, who slept three dayes. Who, when she came to her selfe, they demanded, what she had seene? And she had seene many perfons, of all which, thee judged they thould all thortly dye : And because the faw not her Miftresthere, they judged the should not dye of that ficknes. I faw the Maydes head yet aking by reason of that leepe. Some of them asso call upon Deuils, and gather them together (who will The Sorteres haut answers from the Deuill) in the night vnto their house, and they put sodden fiesh in the raise vp deuils. middeft of the house, and that Chan who invoketh, beginneth to say his Charmes, and having a Tymbrell, finites it ftrongly against the ground; at length he begins to raue, and causeth himselfe tobe bound. Then the Deuill comes in the darke, and gives him flesh to eate, and makes him an-20 fwer. On a certaine time, (as Master William told me) a certaine Hungarian hid himselfe with them, and the Deuill being vpon the house, cryed, that hee could not come in, because a certaine Christian was with them. He hearing this, fled with haste, because they began to search for him.

These things and many other doe they, which were too long to report.

A Feer the Fealt of Penticost they began to make ready their Letters, which they meant to Chap. 45. fend vario you. In the meane while, he returned to Carecurum, and held a great Solemnity, Great Solemnity, init about the fitteenth of June: and hee defired, that all the Embaffadours should be prefent.

Chass Letters The last day also he sent for vs, but I went to the Church to Baptise three Children of a cer- to Lodowicke taine poore Dutch-man, whom we found there. Master William was chiefe Butler at that Feast, King of France 30 because he made the Tree which powred foorthdrinke. And all the Poore and Rich fung and the Fries because he made the I rec which powred to. Then he began to make an Oration vnto them, companion danneed, and clapped their hands before Char. Then he began to make an Oration vnto them, flareshwish hayeshwish faying; I have fent my Brethren farre off, and have fent them into danger, into forraigne Nations: the Tarias: the Tarios:
Now it shall appeare what yee will doe, when I shall send you, that our Common-wealth may be inlarged. they returne Euery day in thosefoure dayes, hee changed garments, which hee gaue themall of one colour, e- to Caracatum. uery day, from the shooes even to the tyre of the head. At that time I saw the Embassadour of This is also the uery day, from the shooes even to the tyre of the mean. At that that the state of the manner of the the Calipba of Baldach, who caused himselfe to bee carried vpon a Horse-litter, between two manner of the chief Calipba of Baldach, who caused himselfe to bee carried vpon a Horse-litter, between two manner of the chief calibration of the calibration of the chief calibration of the calibration of the chief calibration of the cali Mules, to the Court : of whom some said, that he made peace with them : so that they should Florida. siue him ten thouland Horse for his Army. Others said, that Manga said, hee would not make The Embash-Peace, vnleffe they would destroy all their Munition. And the Embassadour answered; when dour of the Ca-40 you will plucke off your Horle hoofes, we will destroy our Munition: I faw also there, the Em- light of Baldach you will place on your solden of India, who brought with him eight Leopards, and ten Hare- The Embassahounds taught to fit ypon the Horle buttockes, as Leopards doe. When I inquired of India, which downsot a cerway it lay from that place, they shewed me towards the West. And those Embassadours retur- taine Soldan of ned with me, almost for three Weekes together, alwayes west ward? I saw also the Embassadors India. ned with me, almost for three Weekes together, alwayes wettward: 1 law alto the Embaldadors are of the Solden of Timbe, who brought him rich prefents: And he ansilvered (as I heard) he need to the Weld en bether Gold nor Sthuer, but men: wherefore he required them to provide him an Army. In that case are not to the weld to the contract of the sold heard to the sold hear the feast of Saint John he held a great Drinking, and I caused one hundred and fine Carts, and by three weeks ninety Horses to be numbred, all lalen with Cowes milke : And in the feast of the Apostles S.Pe- iourney. ninety Horses to be numbred, all laden with Cowes milke: And in the least of the Apottes S. Fee

The Feast of

ter and S. Paul, in like manner. At length the Letters being dispatched, which he fendeth to you,

Saint 106m, they called me, and interpreted them, the tenor whereof I writ, as I could vinderstand them by Iune 24. my Interpreter, which is this. The commandement of the eternal God is this : There is but one The Letters of Eternall God in Heauen : upon Earth let there be but one Lord Chingis Chan, Temingu Tingij, That Mangu Chan, to is to fay the found of Yron : (They call Chingis, the found of Yron, because hee was a Smith : and Lodewicke the

puffed up with pride, they call him now the Sonne of God.) This is the word which is floden to Franck King. you. Whatfoeuer Moals wee are, whatfoeuer Naymans, whatfoeuer Merkets, whatfoeuer Multilman, where soeuer eares may heare, whether soeuer Horse may goe, there, cause it to bee heard, and un- Moall. derstood, since they have beard my commandement, and would not believe it, and would leny an Army Nayman against vs, yee shall heare and see, that they shall be as having Eyes, and not seeing, and when they would hereit. hold any thing, they shallbe without hands, and when they would walke, they shall be without feet. This is the 60 commandement of the Eternall God, by the vertue of the Eternall God : by the great world of the Mcall. The comandement of Mangu Chan is given to the French King, King Lodouck, and all other Lords, and Priests and to the great world of the Frankes, that they understand my wordes, and the commaundement of the Eternall God, made to Chingis Chan. Nor from Chingis Chan, nor others after him.

came this commandement unto you. A certaine man called David came unto you, as an Embaffadour

eben-chan, is called (unecan, of leha de Place Carpini.

of the Moalls, but he was a lyar, and with him you (ent your Embassadours to Chen-chan, After Chen-chan was dead, your Embaffadours came to bis Court. Charmis his wife fent you Cloth, called Nafic. But to know matters appertayning to Warre and Peace, and to lettle the great World in quiet and to fee to doe good . That wicked woman , more vile then a Dog, how could free know how to doe it? Thole two Monkes which came from you unto Sartach, Sartach fent them to Baatu: but Baatu, because Mangu Chan is the greatest over the World of the Moalls, sent them unto us. But now, that the oreat World and the Priests, and the Monkes might line in peace, and entry their goods, that the commandement of God might be heard among you, wee would have fent our En balladours of Moall with your Priests: but they answered, that betweene vs and you there was a warlike Nation, and many bad men, and troublesome wayes; so as they feared they could not bring our Embassadours safe onto 10 you, but if we would deliver them our Letters, contayning our commandement to King Lodowick, they would carrie them. For this cause wee sent not our Embassadours with them: But wee have fent the commandement of the eternall God by your faid Priests. It is the commandement of the eternall God. which wee have given you to understand. And when you shall heare and beleeve it, if yee will obey us. fend your Embafadosus unto us, fo hall wee be certified, whether yee will have peace with us, or warre. When by the power of the eternall God, the whole World Shall be in unitie, ioy, and peace, from the rifing of the Sunne, to the going downe of the same, then shall it appeare what wee will doe. When yee shall heare and understand the commandement of the eternall God, and will not bear ken to it, nor believe it, saying, our Countrey is farre off, our Hells are strong, our Sea is great, and in this considence, shall levie an Armie against vs, to know what wee can doe, Hee which made that which was hard, easie; and that which an was farre off, neere; the eternall God himselfe knowes it.

And they called vs your Embaffadors in the Letters. Then I faid vnto them, call vs not Embuffadors, for I faid well to Chan, that wee are not the Embaffadors of King Lodowicke. Then they went vnto him and told him. But when they returned, they faid vnto me: that he held it much for our good, and that he commanded them to write as I should direct them. Then I told them, they should leave out the name of Embassadour, and call vs Monkes and Priests. In the meane time, while these things were doing, my Companion hearing that wee must returne by the Wildernesse to Basts, and that a man of Mould should be our Guide, he ranne (without my privitie) to Bulgai the chiefe Scribe, fignifying to him by fignes that he should die, if he went that way. And when the day came, wherein we should have our Passe (to wit) a fortnight af- 30 ter the Feaft of Saint Iohn; when we were called to the Court, the Scribes faid vnto my Companion, Behold Mangus pleafure is, that your Companion returne by Baats, and you fay, you are ficke, and it appeareth fo : Mangu fayth thus, It you will goe with your Companion, goe: but let it be your owne fault; because peraduenture you may remayne with some Ians, that will not prouide for you, and it will bee an hinderance to your Companion. But if you will flav heere, he shall prouide necessaries for you, till some Embassadours come, with whom you may

He departeth the 9. of July.

Note.

They depart Court to Ca-

returne more easily, and by a way where there are Villages. The Friat answered, Gold grant Chan a prosperous life; I will flay. Then I said vnto the Friar; Brother, bee adulted what you doe. I will not leave you. You leave not me (fayth he) but I leave you : because, if I goe with you. I fee the death of my bodie and foule , because I have not patience in intolerable labour. 40 Then they held three Garments or Coats, and faid vnto vs, Yee will not receive Gold, or Siluer, and yee haue stayed long here, and prayed for Chan: hee entreats you, that at the least euethere from the ry one of you would receive a fingle Garment; that yee depart not emptie from him. Then 27.0f December of the must receive them, for reverence of him : for they account it a very eurll thing, when their gifts are contemned. First, he caused vs to bee often asked, what we would have? And wee alwaies answered the same thing: so that the Christians insulted over the Idolaters, who seeke nothing but gifts. And they answered, that wee were fooles: because if hee would give them his whole Court, they would willingly take it and should doe wifely to. Receiving therefore the Garments, they be fought vs to make our prayers for Chan; which we did. So, taking our leaue, we went to Caracarum. But it happened upon a certaine day, while wee were with the 50 Monke, farre from the Court, with other Embassadours; that the Monke caused the Table to be ftrucken to hard that Mangu Chan heard it, and demanded what it was. Then they told him. So he asked, why he was remoued fo farre from the Court. They told him, because it was troublesome to bring him Horses and Oxen every day vnto the Court and faid further, that it were better, that he should stay at Caracarum. Then Chan fent vnto him, saying, if hee would goe to Caracarum, and flay there, neere about the Church, he would give him all things necessarie. But the Monke antiwered, I came from the holy Land of Ierufalem hither, by the commandement of God, and left that Citie, wherein there are a thouland better Churches then that cf Caracarum. If he please that I stay here and pray for him, as God commanded me, I will stay: if not , I will returne to the place from whence I came. So that every evening Oxen were 60 brought him voaked to the Carts, and in the morning he was brought vnto the place wherehee vied to be before the Court. And a little before wee departed thence, a certaine Nellorien came, who feemed to bee a wife man: Bulgai the chiefe Secretarie placed him before his Court; to whom Chan fent his children, that he should blesse them.

VV Ee came therefore to Caracarum. And while wee were in Malter Williams houle, my Chap. 46.

Guide came vito me, and brought me ten Infoots, whereof he left fine in Malter Wil. They come to hand, willing him to fpend them in the behalfe of Chan, for the Friars necessities, which Cratarum Reremayned there: other fine he left in the Mand of the Man of God, my Interpreter, comman-turning, he accompanied ding to thend them upon the way, for my necessities. For Master williams had given them such Baatu a whole uning to spend them spond to that, and the state of the s intractions, without our knowledge, a preferring changed one mice money, and untrauted it moneth; derito the poor Cariffians, which were there: for all their eyes were fixed upon vs. Wee spent parting, begon another in buying necessarie things for vs. as garments, and other things, which we wanted, the toward the another in buying necessarie things for vs, as garments, and other things, wherein hee gayned somewhat Towne South to the Wight the third, the Man of God himselfe, bought some things, wherein hee gayned somewhat Towne South. IC Which was profitable vato him : we spent the rest, and that to; because since wee came into Perfia, lufficient necessaries were no where given vs: nor yet any where among the Tartaris. He returned but we feldome found any thing to be fold there. Matter William, fometimes your Citizen, fends by Paffa. you a certaine Girdle fet with a certaine precious-stone, which they vie to weare against thund A precious der and lightning, and infinitely falutes you, alwaies commending you to God in his prayers: flore good auer and inglicing, and immirrey learnes you, a water commenting you to the aring prayers and thought for whom, I shall neuer bee able to render sufficient thankes to God and you. Wee toptized said lightning, there in all fixe soules. Wee therefore departed one from the other with teares: my Comparate lightning. nion remayning with Mafter William; and I returning alone, with my Interpreter, my Guide. and one feruant; who had commandement to take one Mutton in foure dayes, for, vs foure. Wee came therefore in two moneths and ten dayes from Caracaram to Bastu, and neuer law Towne, From Caracaram to Bastu, and neuer law Towne, came therefore in two moneths and ten dayes from Caracaram to Basin, and neot law I owner, one to the Richard t euer reft, in those two moneths, and ten dayes; saue one day, because wee could not get Horses, two moneths, Weereturned for the most part by the same kind of people, and yet through other Countries and tendayes

altogether: for we went in the Winter, and returned in the Summer, and by the higher parts in unity, of the North by farre; except, that fifteene dayes journey, wee mult goe and returne alwaies hard by a certaine River, between the Mountaines, where there is no lodging, but by the Ri- A River benefit. nated by a certainte retuent, occurred to meetings three dayes, taking no food but Colmos. Once Mountaines Mountaines wee were in great danger, not being able to finde any people, our prouision fayling vs, and our of siteene Horles tyred. When I had trauelled twentie dayes, I heard newes of the King of Armenia, that dayes journey. he had pailed by. In the end of August I met with Sartach himselfe, who went to Mangu Chan with Flockes The end of and Herds, and with his Wiues and Children: yet his great Families remayned betweene Ta- August hemes

CMangu Chan would not have mee returne, and carrie in Sections. Hee answered, that I must to Mangu.

performe the will of Mangu Chan. Then I asked Coinc for your children. Hee answered, they coinc the Priest were in the Court of Baats carefully recommended. I also required to have our Clothes, and of Sartach. Bookes againe: who answered, Did yee not bring them to Sartach? I faid, I brought them to Sartach, but I gaue them not vnto him, as yee know: and I replied to him, what answere I made, when he demanded whether I would give them to Sartach. Then hee answered, you say true, and none can relift the truth. Heft your goods with my father, who remayneth neere Sa-40 rai; which is a new Towne Bastu hath made vpon Ettita, on the Eaft shoare : but our Priests Saraisa new have some of the westments. If any thing like you (said I) keepe it, so my Bookes be restored. Town-built Then he told me, he would report my words to Sartach. I must have Letters (faid I) to your Volsa. Father, to restore mee all. But he was readie to bee gone, and said vnto mee, The traine of the Ladies followeth vs neere at hand. Yee shall alight there, and I will fend you Sartachs answere by this man. I was very carefull he should not deceine me; yet I could not contend with him. Late in the euening the man came vnto me, whom he shewed me, and brought two Coats with him, which I thought had beene all of Silke, vncut: and he faid vnto me, Behold two garments : the one, Sartach hath fent to you; and the other, if it feeme good to you, you shall prefent to the King, on his behalfe. To whom I answered, I weare no such garments, I will pre-50 fent them both vnto my King, in honour of your Lord. Then faid hee, doe with them what you please; but it pleased me to send them both vnto you, and I fend them to you by the bearer of these presents. He delivered him Letters also to the Father of Coiac, to restore mee all which appertayined vinto me, because he had no need of any thing which was mine. So wee came to They come to appertayined vinto me, because he had no need of any thing which was mine. So we came to the Court of Bastu the same day I departed thence, the yeere past; the second day after the Bastu September 2007. Exaltation of the bleffed Croffe. And I found our young men in health, yet much afflicted with tem. 16.1254. penurie, as Goffet told me. And if the King of Armenia had not comforted them, and recommended them to Sartach, they had perished: for they thought I had beene dead. The Tartars The Kingof also demanded of them, if they could keepe Oxen, or mike Mares. For, if I had not returned, torted them, they had beene brought into their feruitude,

After this, Bastu caused me to come vnto him, and made the Letters (which Mangu Chan fends vnto you) to be interpreted vnto me. For io Maneu wrote vnto him , that if it pleafed him to adde any thing, or leaue out, or change, hee should doe it. Then faid hee, yee shall carrie these Letters, and cause them to bee vinderstood. Hee demanded also what way I would goe, These inzen whether by Sea, or Land ! I faid, the Sea was flut, because it was Winter, and I must goe by in the Winter.

nais and Etilia: And I did my dutie to him, faying, I would willingly stay in his Countrey; but Sartach in his Mangu Chan would not have mee returne, and carrie his Letters. Hee answered, that I must returne going

Hungarie. Bigavimus wane-trauclling with Baatu a whole mo-His Guide was a lugar. They depart from Battu. The feuen mouthes of the River of The Village Sumerkent, or Alrocan is in the laritude of 45. degrees. They goe no further downe, then Sumerheus The River of Votes frozen ouer. He commeth to Sarai. Sara: is vpon Etilia. This place is now from Afracan 60.Verfla.

Chap. 47. From Sarai of the Alani. and by the by Alexanders Inclosuresor Walls, by the Citie Shamaghi, by the gre... Plaine Mour, and the

A thort way by Land. For I shought you had beene yet in Spria, fo I directed my journey towards Persia. For if I had thought you had passed into France, I would have gone into Hungarie: fo I should forner have come into France, and by a more easie way then into Syria. Then wee travelled . moneth with him, before wee could have a Guide. At length, they appointed mee a certaine lugar, who vnderstanding I would give him nothing, and that I would goe forth-right into dr. menia, caused Letters to be made, to conduct me to the Soldan of Turkie, hoping he should receive gifts of the Soldar, and that he should gayne more that way. Then we tooke our journey speedily (fifteene dayes before the Feast of Al-Saints) towards Sarai, going forth right Southward, descending neere to Etilia, which is divided into three Armes there below : every one where-17.0fOctober, of is almost twice as big as the River of Damiats. It maketh foure other leffer Armes; so that to we passed that River in seven places by Boat. Vpon the middle Arme is the Village, called Sumerkent. without a wall: but when the River overflowes, it is compaffed with water. The Tartars were eight yeeres about it before they could take it : and the Alani, and the Saracens were in it. There we found one Dutco-man, with his wife, a very good man, with whom Goller flaved in the Winter: for Sartach fent him thither to eafe his Court. About those parts was Basin on the one fide of the River, and Sarrach on the other, about Christmas, and they goe no further downe. And it falleth out, that all the Riuer is frozen, fo they passe ouer. Here is great store of graffe, and there among the Caues theeues hid themselves, till the Ice melt, Coiacks father, receiving Sartachs Letters, reftored my veltments vnto mee, except three Albes and an Amice trimmed with fine Silke, and a Stole, and a Girdle, and a Tualia adorned with golden embroyderie, and a Surplice. He restored also vnto me the filter Plate, except the Cenfer, and 20 the little Boxe where the Chrisme was. All which, the Priests which were with Sarrach had. Hee restored my Bookes, except our Ladies Psalter, which hee kept with my leave, because ! could not denie it him : for he faid, Sartach tooke much delight in it. Hee also requested me, that if it happened, that I returned vnto those parts againe, I would bring them a man that knew how to make Parchment : for he made a great Church (by the Commandement of Sara tach) vpon the West side of the River, as he said, and a new Towne. Yet I know that Sartach the East fide of meaneth no fuch matter. Sarai and the Palace of Baats, are voon the Easterne fide of the River. And the Valley through which the Armes of the River are spread abroad, contayneth more then feuen leagues in bredth. And there is great store of fish there. A Bible also in verse, and a cere so called Victory, taine Booke in the Arabian, worth thirtie Sultanies, and many other things I neuer recourred.

O departing from him on the Fealt of All-Saints, alwaies going toward the South, in the Fealt of Saint Martin, we came to the Mountaines of the Alani. Betweene Baata and Sarai in fifteene dayes we found no people, but one of his fonnes, who went before him, with the Mountains Falcons, and his Falconers, who were many, and one little Village. From the Feaft of All-Saints. for fine dayes, we found not a man : and wee were almost in great danger by reason of thirst, Swaces called one whole day and a night finding no water, till about three of the Clocke the next day, the Alani in thole Mountaines yet hold out, fo that, of ten of the Subiects of Sartach, two must Derbent, by the come, to guard the straight and narrow passages of the Hills, lest they come forth of the Moun. 40 Citie Samaron taines, and fteale their Cattell in the Playne. Betweene the Alani, and Porta Ferrea, which is two dayes journey thence, where the Playne of Arcaeci beginneth, betweene the Capian Sea and the Mountaines, there are certaine Saracens called, Lefgi, betweene the Mountaines, who likewise resist : so that those Tartars, who dwell at the foot of the Mountaines of the Alani. were faine to give vs twentie men, to bring vs beyond the Iron gate, or Porta Ferres. And I was glad, because I hoped to see them armed. For I could never see their Armour, though I had beene very delirous. And when we came to the dangerous Passage, of twentie there were two of fhis, where which had Hatergions. And I demanded, whence they had them? They faid, they had gotten Gur and Araves them of the Alams aforesaid, who are good Worke-men for such things, and excellent Smiths. meet together. Whereupon, I thinke, they have small store of Armour, but Quiuers, and Bowes, and Leather 50 lackes. I faw them presented with Iron Plates, and Iron Sculls (capillos) out of Persia. And flore of Armor faw two alfo, who presented themselves to Mangu, armed with Coats made of Hogs skins bent inward, of rough Leather, which were very vnht, and vnwildy. Before we came to Porta fer-A Castle of the rea, wee found one Castle of the Alani, which was Mangu Chans: for hee had subdued that Countrey. There we first found Vineyards, and drunke Wine. The day following, wee came A description to Porta ferrea, which Alexander the Macedonian King made. And it is a Citie whose East end of Porta ferres, is voon the Sea illoare, and there is a little Plaine betweene the Sea and the Monntaines, through which the Citie is stretched forth in length vnto the top of the Mountaine which bordereth vpon it on the West: fo that there is no way aboue, for the roughnesse of the Mountaines, nor below for the Sea, but forth-right through the middeft of the Citie ouerthwart, where there is 60 an Iron gate, from whence the Citie hath the name. And the Citie is more then a mile long, and in the top of the Hill a strong Castle; and it is as much in bredth, as a great stones cast; it hath very strong walls without Trenches, and Turrets of great polished stones. But the Tartars have deltroyed the tops of the Turrets, and the Bulwarkes of the Walls, laying the Turrets euen with the Wall. Beneath that Citie, the Countrey was wont to bee like a Paradife. Two dayes journey hence, we found another Citie called Samaron, wherein there were many Samaten 2 Ci-

lenes. And when we past it, we saw walles descending from the Mountaines to the Sea. And the of lenes. leauing the way by the Sea by those walles, because it bent towards the East, wee went up into the high Countries towards the South. On the morrow, wee paffed through a certaine Valley. The inclosures the high Countries towards the South. On the morrow, were pained through a certaine valley, or walks of Awherein the foundations of walles appeared, from one mountaine to another, and there was no
kxander wherein the tops of the Mountaines. These were sometimes the Inclosures or walles of Other inclosures way chrough the wops of the Mations, (to wit) the Shepheards of the Wildernes, that they sures where the could not inuade the inhabited Countries and Cities. There are other walles or Inclosures where Inter are, to lever are. The next day we came vnto a certaine great Citie, called Samag. And after this, we Or Samagi. lewes are. The next day we can't war, through which the River Car floweth, of the which Plaine. the Cure have their name, whom we call Georgians. And it runneth through the middle of Ti- Cur or the Rifis, which is the Metropolis of the Curgines, and in comes directly from the West running to the uer crus. East, to the foresaid Caspian Sea, and it hath excellent Salmons. In that plaine wee found Tar. The Geneticus. tar againe. Also by that plaine comes the River Araxes, which commeth from the greater Ar. The Give Tituri againe. And by that South and West: of which it is called the Land Ararat, which is Armenia it felfe. Whereupon in the booke of the Kings it is faid of the Sonnes of Sennacherib', that Note that the hauing flaine their Father they fled into the Land of the Armenians. And in Efay it is faid, that Hebrew text they fled into the Land of Ararat. To the West then of that most beautifull Plaine is Cargia, In bath Ararat they fled into the Land of Arara. Notice well that the contract of the into the places, that Plaine the Crofmini were wont to be. And there is a great Citie in the entrance of the contract of the Crofmini were wont to be. And there is a great Citie in the entrance of the contract of the Crofmini were wont to be. Mountaines, called Ganges, which was their Metropolis, stopping the Georgians that they could Giri not come downe into the Plaine. Then wee came to the Bridge of Ships, which were faftened A bridge of together with a great Yron chaine, stretched forth croffe the River, where Car, and Araxes meet Ships.

Frer that, wee went alwayes voward by Araxes, whereof it is faid; Pontem dedignatur A- Chap. 48. Araxis, Araxes disdaines a Bridge; Leauing Persia, and the Caspian mountaines on the left They alwaies hand, towards the South: on the right hand, we rai, and the great Sea toward the Well: going goes to the Ri.
Southwest, betweene the South and the Welt. We passed through the meadowes of Barchs, who by the Gide 30 is Genetall of that Armie, which is there within Araxis : And hee hath made the Cargi, and Pannen, by the Turkes, and Persians subject to him. There is another Gouernour (in Persia at Tantinum, ouer the Country of Tribute) called Argon. Both which, Manga Chan hath called home to give place to his Brother Sabenia, by the comming into those Countries. That Countrey which I have described to you, is not properly Castle Marjescomming into those Countries. That Countries which I had been to you, is not properly gen, by Aini, a

Per sia, but was sometimes called Hyrcania. I was in Bacchues house, and hee gaue vs Wine to Citte of Sahen drinke, and he himfelfe dranke Cofmes, which I would willingly have drunke, if he had given it fa; they came me : yet it was the best new Wine : but Cofmos is more wholsome for an hunger-staruen man, to the Head of Wee went up therefore by the River Araxes, from the Fealt of Saint Clement, vnto the fecond Araxis. Sunday in Lent, till we came to the head of the River. And beyond that Mountaine where itrifeth, there is a goodly Citie, called Arferum, which belongeth to the Soldan of Turkie. And Baccous Prince 40 neare thereabout Emphrates arileth towards the North, at the foot of the Mountaines of Cargia: of the Tartans: neare thereabout Emphrates arrieth towards the North, at the loot of the Mountaines of Unique of whom per-to whose Spring I had gone, but the Snow was so great, that no man could goe out of the trodden haps the Citie path : on the other fide of the Mountaines of Caucafus, towards the South arifeth Tigris.

together. But Car lofeth his name there,

When we departed from Bacebu, my Guide went to Taurinum to Speake with Argon, carry- caspian Sca(of ing my Interpreter with him. But Bacehs caused me to bee brought to a certaine Citie, called which it is now Naznan, which sometimes was the head of a certaine great Kingdome, and the greatest and fai- called the Sca reft Citie; but the Tartars have made it a Wildernes. And there were sometimes Eight hundred Churches of the Armenians there : now there are but two little ones : for the Saracens name have destroyed them : In one of the which, I held the feast of Christmas as I could with our The head of Clerke. And the next day following, the Priest of that Church dyed : to whose buriall came a Tigris. certaine Bishop, with twelue Monkes of the high Countries. For all the Bishops of the Arme.

OTURNARY

OTU nians are Monkes, and of the Greekes likewile for the greater part. I hat Billiop told me, that there was a Church necre that, where Saint Bartholmen, and likewile Saint Indas Thaddens were of Armenia. martyred: but there was no way open for Snow. He told me also, that they have two Pro- Barlbohner and phets: The first or chiefe is Methodius the Martyr, who was of their Country, and plainely Pro- Tooddem Marphefied of the Ismaelites. Which Prophetie is fulfilled in the Saracens. The other Prophet is called tyrs. phefied of the Ismaelites. Which Prophetie is fulfilled in the Saracens. The other Prophet is called The Prophetie Acaron, who when hee dyed, Prophetied of a Nation of Archers, that should come from the of Methodius. North, faying ; That they should Conquer all the Countries of the East : and should spare the Or Acatron, his Kingdome of the East, that he might give them the Kingdome of the West. But he faith, our Prophesic. Friers the Frankes being Catholikes, beleeve them not : And they shall possesse the Countries from North to South : and shall come vnto Constantinople, and shall take the Port of Constanti-

60 nople. And one of them, who shall be called a Wife man, shall enter the Citie: and seeing the Churches and rites of the Frankes, shall cause himselfe to be Baptized, and shall counsell the Frankes, how they may kill the Emperour of the Tartars; and there they shall be confounded. Hearing this, the Frankes which shall be in the middle of the Land, (to wit) Hiernfalem, shall fet

Bacchu on the

Mountaines on the which Or Cemanium aTowne or a

Armenians, shall pursue them : fo that the French King shall place his Roy Il Throne at Taurinum in Persia, And then all East Countries, and all the unbeleeving Nations shall be converted to the Faith of Christ. And there shall be so great Peace in the world, that the Living shall say to the Dead, Woe be vnto you wretches, that lived not vntill these times. I read this Prophesie brought to Constantinople by the Armenians, which remaine there, but I made light of it. Yet, when I spake with the said Bishop, calling it to minde, I regarded it the more. And throughout all that Armenia, they as firmely believe this Prophelie as the Gofpell. Hee laid vinto vs also : Euen as the Soules in Limbo expected the comming of Christ for their delivery ; fo doe we looke for your comming that we might be freed from this flauery, wherein wee hane fo long lived. Neere the 10 City (Vaxnin) aforefaid, there are Mountaines, on the which (they fay) the Arke of Noab refted. Nesh Arke re- And there are two one greater then the other, and Araxes runneth at the foote of them. And there is a little Towne there, called Cemainum, which is by Interpretation, Eight: for (they fav) it was to called of the Eight persons, which came foorth of the Arke, and built it. Many have affayed to climbe the greater Hill, and could not. And that Bishop told me, that a certaine Monke was very much troubled, and an Angell appeared vnto him, and brought him a piece of the wood of the Arke, willing him to trouble himfelfe no more. That piece of Wood they had in their Church, as he told me. Neither is the Hill to high in appearance, but that men might well get vp vnto it. A certaine Old man shewed me a furficient reason, why none should climbe it. They The Mountain call that Mountaine Maffu: and it is of the Feminine gender in their Tongue. No man (faith 20 he) must climbe vp Massis because it is the Mother of the world.

Armenian (a.

fied.

Tephelis.

Ianuary 14. Snow. Lanuary 18. The Countrey

me; who abode in Georgie, with a certaine Prior of the Sepulcher, who possesset lands there. And he had learned somewhat of the Tarters language. Who went with a certaine Hungarian Frier to Taurinum, to defire Argons Paffe to Sartach. When they came there, they could not have accesses and the Hungarian Frier returned by me to Tepbelis with one Servant : but Frier Bernard remained at Taurinum with a certaine Lay Frier, whose language he understood not. We went out of the Citie of Vannan in oftanis of the Epiphanie : for we had flayd long there by reason of the Snow. We came therefore in foure dayes to the Countrey of Sabenfa, a certain Curgine, sometimes mighty, but now tributary to the Tartars, who destroyed all his Munition : 30 whose Father Zacharias got that Countrey of the Armeniums, having delivered them from the hands of the Saracens. And there are many faire Villages of true Christians, having Churches right like the Frankes. And every Armenian hath in his house, in an honourable place, a wooden hand holding a Croffe, and he fets a burning Lampe before it : And that which we doe with holv Water, sprinkling it to drive away wicked Spirits, they doe the same with Frankinsence. For enery enening they burn Frankinsence, carrying it through all the corners of the house, to rid them of all kinde of Enemies. I ate with the forefaid Sabenfa, and he did me great reverence, both he and his Wife, and his fonne Zachary was a very-faire and wife young man. Who demanded of me, that if he should come vnto you, whether yee would entertaine him ! for he so hardly brooketh the Dominion of the Tartars, that, though he have plenty of all things, he had rather tra- 40 uaile into a strange Country, then indure their Lord-like Dominion. They said further, that they were sonnes of the Church of Rome: and if the Lord Pope would fend them any ayde, they would bring all the bordering Nations vnto the subjection of the Church.

In that Citie (of Varnan) Frier Bernard Cathalane, of the Order of the Preaching Friers found

A Towne of Sabensa. The Countrey of the Soldans of Turkie. day in Lent.

The Popes

From that Towne of his, in fifteene dayes, we entred the Countrey of the Soldan of Turkie, vpon the first Sunday in Lent. And the first Castle we found, is called Marfengen. All in the Cafile were Christians, Armenians, Curgines, and Greekes: The Saracens onely haue the Dominion. There, the Captaine of the Castle said, he had received commandement, that no victuals should be given to any Franke, or to the Ambassadours of the King of Armenia, or of Vastacius. So that from the place where wee were the first Sunday in Lent, vnto Cyprus, (whether I came eight dayes before the Fealt of Saint John Baptift) we must buy our prouision. He, who was my guide 50 procured me Horses, and tooke money for the victuals, and put it in his purse. When he came into the Fields, seeing a slocke any where, hee violently tooke one Sheepe, and gaue it to his family to eate, and maruailed I would not eate of his robbery. In the Purification I was in a certaine Ci-February the at the called Ains, which was Sahenfas, whose situation is most strong: and there are there a thou-The Citie Ami, fand Armenian Churches, and two Synagogues of the Saracens. The Tarrars place 2 Baily there. belonged to There five Preaching Friers met me, whereof foure came from Province in France, and the fift ioyned himselfe to them in Syria, and they had but one sicke Boy, who could speake Turkish, and a little French : And they had the Popes letters to Sarrach, and to Mangu Chan, and to Buri; letters to Sar- fuch as your Highnes gaue me, Letters of request, that they would fuffer them to continue in their Countrey, and Preach the Word of God, &c. But when I toll them what I had feene, and how 60 they fent me backe againe, they directed their journey to Tephelis, where there are Friers of their Order, to confult what they should doe. I faid vnto them they might well passe, by those Letters, if they would : but they should bee well affured to indure much labour, and render an account of their comming: for feeing they had no other meffage, but the office of Preaching, they

would care but a little for them, and chiefly, because they had no Interpreter. What they did after,I know not.

He second Sunday in Lent, we came to the head of Aravis, and passing beyond the top of Chap.ag. the Mountaine, we came to Euphrates; by the which wee descended eight dayes, alwayes They come to coing to the Weit, vnto a certaine Caitle, called Camuth. There Euphrates bendeth to the South Eughrates, to towards Halapia, But we paifing the Ruer went through very high hilly Countries, and through the Caffle catowards Halapia. But we pating the River went through very high him y Countries, and through math, they palle the deepe Snow to the West. There was so great an Earthquake there that yeare, that in one into Countries, and Citie called Arlengan, tenne thousand persons noted by name, persshed, beside poore men of terward to deto whom there was no notice taken. Riding three dayes together, we faw the gaping of the Earth, tiochia. and as it was cleft by the Earthquake, and the heapes of Earth which came from the Mountaines, thenceto Trias it was ciert by the Latinguage and filled the valleyes; to that if but a little more of the Earth had beene moued, that which Efay the Citie Arfocaketh had beene literally fulfilled. Enery valley shall be filled, and enery Mountaine, and little bill farga mightily hall be humbled. We passed through the Valley where the Soldan of Turkie was vanquished of the shaken with an Tartars. It were too long to write how he was ouercome. But a certaine feruant of my guides Earthquake. who was with the Tartars, faid; That the Tartars were not about tenne thousand in the whole, the carriedous and a certaine Curgine, a feruant of the Soldans, faid ; That there were two hundred thousand usn with the Soldan, all Horsemen, In that plaine where the Battaile was, nay that flight, there brake The Vall . out a great Lake, at the time of the Earthquake. And my heart told me; that all that Earth ope- where the Sale an ned her mouth to receive yet more blood of the Saracens. We were in Sebaffe of the leffer Ar- dan of Turbie ned her mouth to receive yet more blood of the Saracens. We were in Security of the Church of was ranguishmenia in Easter weeke. There we visited the Tombes of forty Martyrs. There the Church of ed of the Tom. Saint Blace flandeth : but I could not goe thither, because it was aboue in the Castle. On Low-tern Sunday we came to Cefaria of Cappadocia; where there is a Church of Saint Bafill the great. A- Schaffe of the bout fifteene daves after we came to Iconium, making small journies, and resting in many places : lester Aomenia. because we could not so readily procure Horses. And my guide did this of purpose; taking vpon mada, him to follicite his owne busines three dayes, in every Towne: whereupon, I was much grieved, but durst not speake, because he might have sold, or slaine me and our fervants, and there was reducing none to gaine-lay it. I found many Frankes at Iconium, and a certaine Ianuenfian Marchant, cal- Iconium. led Nicholas de Santto Syrio. Who with a certaine companion of his a Venetian, called Boniface de 30 Molendino, carried all the Allum out of Tarkie, so that the Soldan could not fell any, but to thole two: and they made it so deare, that what was wont to be sold for fifteene Bizantians, is now The Selden of fold for fifty. My guide prefented me to the Soldan; The Soldan faid, he would willingly cause Iconium. me to be convayed to the Sea to Armenia, or Cilicia. Then the forefaid Marchant knowing that the Saracens made little accompt of me, and that I was much burthened with the company of

my guide (who troubled me euery day to give him gifts) cauled me to be conveyed to Curcum a ha a Hauen of the King of Armenia. I came themer the day before the Afcension, and stayed till the out seainst day after Penticott. Then I heard, that Ambassadours came from the King to his Father. Then I the East part of went freedily to the Kings father, to demand, whether hee had heard any newes of his Sonne : the Hand of Gr. And I found him fet with all his Sonnes one excepted, called Barum Ufin: Who made a certaine prus. 40 Caftle. And he received newes from his Sonne, that hee was returned : And that Mangu Chan Barum Vin. had much eafed his Tribute, and had given him a Priviledge, that no Ambaffadour should come Ayax or Gierro

into his Countrey. Whereupon the old man himfelfe, with all his Sonnes made a great Banquet. June the 16, he And he canfed me to be conveyed to the Sea, to the Hauen called Aijax : and thence I vaffed on came to Cypris. uer into Cyprus. And at Nucofia I found our Prouinciall, who the fame day carried me with him line to to Antiochia, which is in very weake state. Wee were there on the Feast of Saint Peter and Tripolo, Paul. From thence we came to Tripolis, where our Chapter was, in the Affumption of the Blef- August 15.

Nd our Provincial determined that I should leave Acon not suffering me to come vnto you; Char. 50. Commanding, to write vnto you, what I would by the bearer of these Presents. And not He wracth daring to relift contrarie to my chedience, I did according to my power, and understanding : craking Lodowik uing pardon of your muincible Clemencie for my superfluities, or wants, or for any thing that and giveth his shall be vindifcreetly, nay foolishly spoken, as from a man of little vinderstanding, not accusto- adulte, for senmed to indite long Histories. The Peace of God which passeth all under standing preserve your ding of a fee heart and understanding.

I would willingly fee your Highmesse, and certayne spiritual friends, which I have in your the Tartars, Kingdome. Wherefore, if it should not bee contrarie to your Maiesties liking, I would befeech you to write to our Provinciall, that he would let me come vnto you, and returne therely agains into the Holy Land.

Concerning Turkie, your Maiestie shall understand, that the tenth man there, is not a Sarae The weake ecen: nay, they are all Armenians, and Greekes, and Children rule over them. For the Soldan who flat o, Talke. was conquered of the Tarrars, had a lawfull Wife of Hiberia, by whom he had one feeble Sonne, concerning whom he charged, that he should be the Soldan. He had another of a Greeke Concubine, whom he gaue to a certayne great Admirall. The third, hee had of a Turke. To whom

The Baftard

The weake eftate of Va-Ru us and Af-

The flare of the King of Hung ria. Gadfrey of Bul-I'm and many

in food and raymient.

many Turks and Turcomans being gathered together, they purposed to have slaine the Sonnes of the Christians. They ordayned also (as I understood) ti at after they had gotten the Victorie. they would deilroy all the Churches, and kill as many as would not become Saracens. But hee was ouercome, and many of his men flaine. Hee renued his Armie the fecond time, and then was taken, and is yet in Prifon, Pacaster the Sonne of the Greeke Concubine procured of Filia-Paraffer geneth fler, that he might be Soldan, because the other was weake, whom they fent to the Tartars. the Kingdome. Whereupon his Kindred on the Mothers fide (to wit) the Hiberi, and the Curgi were angry. So that a child ruleth in Turkie, having no Treature, few Warriours, and many Enemies. The Son of Vastacin is weake, and hath warre with the Sonne of Affan, who likewife is a child, and worne out with the feruitude of the Tartars. Wherefore, if an Armie of the Church should to come to the Holy Land, it were a very easie thing to subdue all these Countries, or to passe

The King of Hungarie hath not about thirtie thousand Souldiers. From Cullin to Constantinople are not about threefcore dayes journey by Waggons. From Conflantinople are not formany dayes journey to the Countrey of the King of Armenia. In old time, valiant men paffed through these Countries, and prospered, yet they had most valiant Resisters; whom God hath now deother Princes. Arroyed out of the Earth. And we need not be in danger of the Sea, nor in the mercie of Savlers. And the price which wee should give for traight, were sufficient for expenses by Land. I Tarturs thriftie speake it confidently, if your Countrimen (I say not Kings and Souldiers) would goe, as the Kings of the Tartars goe, and bee contented with tuch victuals, they might winne the whole 20 World. It feemeth not expedient (as I thinke) that any Frier goe vinto the Tartars any more, as I did, or as the Preaching Friers doe. But if our Souereigne Lord the Pope would honourably fend a Bilhop, and answere their tollies: which they have thrife written to the Frankes: once fhould be tent to Pope Innecent the Fourth of Sacred Memorie, and twice to your Maiettie, once by David, who to the Tartors, deceived you, and now by me, he might speake vnto them what he would, and also cause them to put those things in writing. For they heare whatsoeuer an Ambassadour will speake. and alwayes demand, if he will lay any more. But he must have a good Interpreter ; nay, many Interpreters, and large Expenses.

> COr the Readers better satisfaltion touching the former Authour, and knowledge of the North 30 Pparts of Alia and Europe and for His owne sake also, I have added this Transcript of our famous Countriman Frier Bacon, which I have not Englished, both to prevent tediousnelle in this Worke, otherwise more then enough voluminous: and because he was an Historian, no Traneller; and the vie thereof is principally to such as can reade his owne whome; a good part also being the same with that which our former Frier hath delinered.

CHAP. II.

Ex quarta parte Maioris operis fratris Rogeri Bacon, Angli excerpta quædam de Aquilonaribus mundi partibus.

Mare Scythi.

Porta ferrea vel

Derbent Vid.

Phu.1-6.c.11.

videfis etiam

O tel. Thef.

Geog. Mare Caspium



D Aquilonarem vero partem Indix, vt dictum est, sunt Mare Scythicum . & montes illi magni, qui Caucalus & Taurus, & multu alije nominibus vocantur, secundum dinersitatem locorum & Gentium. Et ab Occidente eft Perfida fen Parthia & Media. Deinde sub eis ad Occidentem eft Melopotamia & tota Syria, vt dichumeft. Sedin confinio Media & Parthia eft Porta ferrea Alexandri; que est Cinitas denomina-

ta a Portis. Et ille porte dicuntur Calpix, non Caucana, ve dicit Plinius. Nam alie sunt porta Caucasia, ve postea dicetur. Quia in littore Maris Calpia sunt ha Porta. Est enim Mare quoddam quod fit ex concur su maximorum suminum venientium ab Aquilone, & Calpium vocatur, 50 stone Hircanicum fecundum Plunum. Nam Catpij & Hircani fuper lutora illina Maris inhabitant. Non igitur est hoc Mare veniens ab Oceano, ve Indores & Plunius, & omnes Authores Occidentales scribunt. In hoc enim casu non habuerunt experientiam certam, nec per se, nec per alios, sed ex rumore

In libris autem de moribus Tartarorum, & per fide dignos, qui in illis Regionibus fuerunt, patet, quod hoc Mare sit ex concur su fluminum. Et est Mare satis magnum, Nam circuitus est quatuor menfium. Es Hircania prope, eft super littue Meridionale illius Maris in termino Parthix. Et vbi Par-Mare Caipium this coniungitur Medic in Portu illis, extenditur à Portis Calpijs versus Orientem, vt dien Plinius. terra undiquiq, Deinde contra residuum Media ad eius Septentrionem, dad Occidentem Hircania est maior Armenia: & eam dinidit Euphrates à Capadocia, ve dien Plinius. Proper quod Capadocia est ad Occiden- 60 tem Armenia maiorie. Deinde ver fus Syriam & Mare nostrum eft Cilicia, qua diciver Armenia mmor. Vnde iacet partim Medio, partim in Occidente Capadocia; & eine principium non distat ab Antiochia per duas dietas. Sub Cilicia ad Septentrionem super Mare comprehenditur Pamphilia, ve dicit Plinius, neglecta gente Haurica, vel non computata per se propter prausatem, sed sub eu comprebenfa, In Cilicia est Tarfus Metropolis eius ; in quo natus fuit Beatus Apostolus Paulus, Et durat Cilicia à meridie in Septentrionem per Tarium in latitudine circuter quatuor dietas versus Turkiam. Turkia. Nam ad Septentrionem Ciliciz est Lycaonia, vbi est Iconium celeberrona Cinitas; à qua Lycaonia Lycaonia ivan au sepenita. Unde Princeps eorum vocatur Soldanus Iconij & Turkir. Et a finiou Arme-Soldanus nik vique leonium funt octo dieta. Nomina Provinciarum in his Regionibus funt multum mutata prop- Iconi ter querras. Nam Turkia multas terras occupat que apud Authores babent nomina antiqua. Vi est pars Alice minoris, & Phrygia & Lydia. Atia vero maior continet plus medietate Mundi, & tetum. prater Europam & Africam : unde continet hanc Afram minorem. Et hac nunc vocatur apud Gracos Anatoli, id est, Orientalis Græcia : in qua est Galatia; unde Galatæ, quibus scribit Apostolus:

IO & Trois dienter illa formofissima Cinitat: & sunt alia mute, vt Ephetus, & 7. Ecclesia Apocalyp. lis; & Nicea : unde Synodus Nicena, & multa alia. Et ab Iconio vique Nicean funt 20. dieta in affate: & abea vique ad Brachium Santli Georgij (quod apud antiquos vocatur Hellespontus) More mer Italiam & Antiochiam. Et ibt terminatur Alia minor. Et habet à parte Occidentis Thraciam, Macedoniam, & Achaiam. A parte vero meridiei babet Mare illud, quod est inter Italiam & Graciam, & Antiochiam, & Egyptum. Ab Oriente babet Phrygiam. Nam vt dieit Plinius curialite, Phrygia Troadi supereucta Septentrionali sua parte Galatis continua est, meridiana Lycaonia ab Occidente Capadocia habet. Et dicit quod Lydia, Phrygia ex ortu falis vicina est, unde fuit Croclus ditifiimin Rex Lydoru. Brachium vero Sancte Georgij eft frietum multum, o habes Coitantinopolim ab Occidente in Europa, Et extenditur à Mari magno quod est inter Asiam & Egyptum, Syriam, & I-

20 talia, circuter centum leucas versus Aquilonem, vsq. ad aliud Mare, quod vocatur Ponticum, & Mare Muius Et ifind Mare habet formamarcus Scytlici; o multas Regiones disterminat Vnde hic incipiunt Regiones Aquilonares: de quibus Philosophi meridiani parum scuerunt, scundum qued Ethicus ditro- Descriptio Mais nomus refert in sue libro. Sed hic perambulauit omnes has Regiones, & Mare Oceanum Septentriona-ioiu. nommu rejers in justicus. Volo sequi ipsum : & miniominus libros de moribus Tartarorum : & Reciones Assis precipue fratrem Willielmum, quem Dominus Rex Francia, Lodouicus in Syria existens misit ad ter- lonares. ram Tattarorum anno Domini 1253. Quifrater scripsit Domino Regi sium Regionum & Marium. Oceanus Sep-Extenditur autem hoc Mare maius ab Occidente, scilicet à Constantinopolitin Oriens, per mille quadringenta milliaria in longum : & in medio eius coarttatur ex viraq parte in angulos : & in angulo ribus ofus ell meridiano est castrum & portus Turkix, quod vocasur Sinopolis : A parte vero Aquilonic babes aliud maxime. 30 castrum in anoulo, quod vocatur Soldaia; o est in Prouincia qua nune Castaria dicitur, ideft, Caisa- Sinopolis.

ria. Et sunt trecenta miliaria inter Sinopolim & Soldaiam. Et bac est lutitudo maris inter illos an- Soldaia. oulos, Et ista castra sunt duo portus famost, à quibus transcunt homines à meridianis Regionibus ad Aquelonares & è contrario. Et ab istis caftris versus Occidentem seu Constantinopolim extenditur Mare per septingenta milliaria in longum & latum, simuliter ad Orientem per septingenta. Et ista Prouincia Caffaria circundatur Mari a tribus lateribus. Namin Occidente habet partem Maris Pontici, vbi Caffaria slim Cattaria circundatur vizari a tribus cuici iossi. Tumi vi occuri, co prope eam est Insula, in qua est Tem- sui appellata est ciuntas Kersona, in qua suit Sanstus Clemens martyrisatus; o prope eam est Insula, in qua est Tem- suit appellata Taurica Cherplum, quod dicitur Angelicus manibus praparatum, in quo corpus Sancti sepultum fuit. Et a Kerioua sonesus. print, grou annual frant quadringinta castra, quorum quodlibet fere habet proprium Idioma. Et sunt ibi Kersous cinitas multi Goti, qui omnes loquuntur Teutonicum. Et à parte meridiei Cassaria extenditur Mare Ponti- Goti. 4 Ccum : Et in Oriente ems cadit flumen Tanais in Mare, vbi habet latitudinem duodecim miliariorum.

whi est Civitus Matrica. Et flumen illud versus Aquilonem facit Mare quoddam, habens septuacinta Matrica civitas miliaria in longitudine & latitudine, nufquam habens profunduatem ultra 6. pedes. Et hoc Mare est Palus Maoiis. Palus Mzotis famosifima, de qua Philosophi & Historia & Poeta loquuntur.

Et flimen Tanais extenditur vitra illam paludem versus Aquilonem vsg, ad montes Riphæos; qui Montes Riphæi. funt in Vitimo Aquilonis : à quibus montibus oritur hoc flumen, & descendit per longum terratraclum in Paludem supradictam, saciens eam: & ultra eam disgraditur, & fluit in Mare Ponticum, vt predixi. Et bec flumen fam (um dividit Europam ab Asia in locis illis , & Palus illa & plures paludes funt contigua: fed quafi pro una computantur, & vocantur paludes Maotis: vel Mastila in aductino, Paludes seitur illa que vocantur Mare illud vadosum sunt in Oriente Castaria; & pars summu Tanais, que est inter paludes & Mare Ponticum. Et hac Pronincia Callaria habet ab Aquilone va-

Stam Colitudinem, que extenditir a flumine Tanai in Oriente vig, ad Danubium in Occidente itinere vista solitudo. duorum mensium velociter equitando, sicus equitant Tartari. Et hoc est una die quantum est ab Aure-Tartaricum lianis Pariliis, Vnde durat hec terra circuter 4, menfes, secundum quod alig homines communiter equi- ilir ergo eft e4. tant. Et hac terra fut tota Cumanorum, qui dicebantur Captac. Sed Tartari destruverum cam to. milariorum vo. tant. Et hacterra junt tota Cumanorum, qui accessium Capiac. Seu l'atteriacifment au florum. taluer, & interfecerunt Cumanos, prater partem que fugit ad Regnum Hungaria, qui s'ent et tributaCuniani. ru : Et à Teuronici decitur Valana: A Plinio & Hodoro & cateris Alania Occidentalis. Et hac Capiac. Prouncia babet Danubum, & Polonium, & Hungariam, ab Occidente. Et ab Aguilone istius Alania Occi-Pronincia est Russia magna : que smiliter à Polonia in ona parte sua extenditur ad Tanaim; sed in dentalu. magna sui parte habet Leucoma a in Occidente (que est terra ita maens sent Alemannia:) Ad cuius Russiamana.

6c partem Occidentalem unt melta terra in circuitu Maris cuinflam : quod Mare fit per multa Brechia Marie Ocean que vervoit per medium Dacia, & vilva ver us Orientem dilatat se magnum Mare, state Succism-qued ab Occidente babr: Daciam & Sweciam : Sed Swecia e st ad Aquilonem Dacia: declivans ali-lucia. quantulum in Orientem oltra Daciam: oltra quas ad Aquilonem est Norquegia. Deinde Marimag- Sweia. no interiecto funt Scotia & Anglia : & Marsparuo interposito Hibernia. Nota sum he Regiones : sed Norquegia

fit ex concurlu fluminum. lid.Erm. Pin. 1.6.c.13. Prolem zus primus prodidit Cacundatum. Capadocia. Cilicia vel Artaneo eas propter votitiam altorum. Si ergo à finibus Occidentalibus ex parte Aquilonis ascendamus

1.0 one line lings. Linonia. Proffia. Semigailia,

Albania.

verlin Orientem, primo est Hibernia, secundo Britannia maior, qua continet Angliam & Scotiam : Deinde Norgurgia, Swecia, Dacia, & post in Orientem versus est mugnum mare pradictum, qued Marc Orientale, vocatur mare Orientale; quia Oceanus non se extendit vitra aliud mare: Sed super latus Aquilonare istius maris immediate post angulum Swecia: est Estonia: deinde Liuonia versus Orientem illins mavocations trio. ris: deinde Curonia sen Curlandia declinando ad Meridianum latus: postea Prussia magna terra in le in nofini bi- Meridiano latere : deinde Pomerania : postea Lubec portus magnus & famosus in consinio Daciae es Saxonia. In medio istius maris est Insula quadam, que vocatur Gotlandia. Et super Liuoniam ad Orientem est Semigallia. Curoniam circundat Leuconia praditla, e etiam circundat Ruffia macha ex vtraque parte maris dicti, & terminatur Meridiana ad Prustiam & Poloniam. Polonia vero sacet to ad Meridiem Pruffiæ : & ad Meridiem eius est Bohemia : deinde Auftria. Et ad Occidentem terrarum istarum Alemannia : & postea Francia & Hispania. Sed ha nota sunt : facio tamen mentionem . propter alias. Ad Orientem Austriz & Bohemiz est Hungaria, ad quam Occidentalis pars Albaniz Danubii ducde. descendit. Nam cadit super Danubium, qui fluit per medium Hungaria, & vitra eam in mare Ponticum per duodecim ostia magna. In termino vero Hungariæ Orientalie a parte Aquilonio occurrit * Vel Valathi. Moldauia, comra quam ad Meridiem Danubij sunt * Balchi & Bulgari & Constantinopolis, que terre antiquitus vocabantur Thracia. Albania igitur Occidentalis extenditur à Danubio post finem Hungaria versus Orientem vsque ad flumen Tanaim ; habens Cassariam à Meridie, & Balchiam. Bulgariam & Constantinopolim. Ab Occasu vero Hungariam & Poloniam, & extremitatem.

Ruix: ab Aquilone babet totam longitudinem Ruffix.

quorum fabulis.

Albania Occi-

Et ultra Russam ad Agnilonem est Gens Hyperborea, que sie nominatur a montibus magnis, qui 20 vocantur Hyperborei. Et hac Gens propter aeris salubritatem viuit in syluis. Gens longana vique quo fastidiant mortem, optimarum consuctudinum. Gens quieta & pacifica, nulli nocens, nec ab alia Gente molestatur : sed confugiunt ad eam sicus ad as sum. Qualiter ausem potest Regio ibi esse temperatissima. tetiqi prius in complexionibus locorum Munds. Et sic habemus regiones Aquilonares in Europa notabiles. Ritus vero istarum Gentium sunt dinersi. Nam Pruteni, Curlandi, Liuonij, Estonij, Semigalli, Leuconij funt Pagani. Alani vero non funt, quia Tartari ceperunt terram illam, er fuganerunt omnes, vique in Hungariam. Et Cumani funt Pagani : & Alani fuerunt similiter, fed deleti funt, Ruteni funt Christiani, & funt seismatici, babentes ritum Gracorum, sed non viuntur lingua Graca: immo lingua Sclauonica : que est una de linguis, que plures occupat regiones. Nam Rustiam, Polo- 30 niam & Bohemiam, & multas alsas Nationes tenet. Tartari vero à Danabio in ho

Alani deleti. Deeft linea.

Pagani.

Tartari.

in terram Alanorum seu Cunamorum, & viterius, vique fere ad partes vitimas Orientis, & alias Nationes eis vicinas ad Aquilonem & Meridiem subinganerunt pro maxima parte. Nam alique Gentes sunt in montanis & locis tutissimis, quas non possunt debellare, licet sint cis vicini, quie funt inexturnabiles.

Montes Riphæi. Albania fu-

Eulia floren,

ware Edel, &

Volga creicit

non ex eadem

causa, quia Ni-

lus nec codem

Tanais quidem fluuius descendit à montibus Riphæis altissimis, qui sunt in vero Aquilone: neceit vitra illos ad Aquilonem habitatio. Et in termino Orientali Ruff & & Alania, vbi mercatores & alu Hot Cafale bodie connensunt de Hungaria & Callaria, & Polonia & Ruffia est quoddam Cafale, vbi nauigio pertranfivocatur Asou, tur slumen Tanais. Et est Tanais ibi ad latitudmem Sequanæ Paritijs. Et vlira slumen illudest Albania superior of que ad alind slumen magnum, quod vocatur Etilia, que maior est in quadruplo quam. 40 Sequana : & est de maioribus fluminibus Mundi ; & crescit in astate sicut Nilus : & à parte Aquilonis distat hoc stumen à Tanai per decem dietas : sed versus meridiem multum seperantur. Nam Tanais cadit in mare Ponticum, & Etilia in mare Caspium : & facit illud mare, cum alijs fluminibus multis, que veniunt de Perside & aligs locis. Nam a Pontico mari secundam Plinium sunt tricenta octoginta milliaria vique ad mare Calpium. Et in hac terra habitabant Cumani. Sed Tartari delene. modo; sed Hye. runt omnes, sicut ex altera parte secerunt ofque ad D mubium, ot distum est. Et Tartari habent pecom congelatur; ra infinita, & habitant in tentoriys, non habentes villu nec castra nisi rarissime. Et unu Princeps cum affice Equefiunt exercitu, & cum suis armentis gregum vagatur inter duo slumina. Vi vnus inter Borithenem Cr Tanaim : alius inter Tanaim & Etiliam ; & fic vlira versus Orientem, quia semper dinift sunt per de ex fabulu & pascua & aquam. Et à l'annario incipiunt adirepartes Aquilonares inxta stumina osque ad Augustum: 50 antiquands on C tune redeunt ver sus meridianas propter frigus Aquilonis in byeme. Et ver sus Aquilonem d stat Etiquitatis nugis. tilia à Prouincia Cassaria per unum mensem o tres dietas, sicus equitant Tartari. Hec vero terra Docte tomen au- Tartarorum inter Tanaim & Etiliam habet ab Aquilone quasdam Gentes : & primo est Gens Athor ise, cause timphasa prope montes Riphasos, qua est similis Hyperboress in "omnibus. Et ha dua Gentes sur prope polum in Aquilone. Sed remotius ab Aquilone vitra Tanaim est primo Gens que vocatur Mo-Subiella Tartaris. Et sunt adhuc sine lege pure Pagani : ciuitatem non habent, sed casulas in sil-Etilia, velVol. nis. Dominus corum & magna pars corum fuerunt interfecta in Polonia per Polonos & Alemanga. Etil. Tar- nos & Boemos. Nam Tartari duxerunt eos ad bellum cum Polonis : & multum approbant Polonos taricum nomen. & Alemannos de firenuitate; sperantes adbuc liberars à seruitute Tartarorum per eos. Si mercator Volga Missaur ventat inter eos, oportet quod ille in cuius domo primo hospitatur, det et expensas quantum vult ibi mo- 60

bicum. Nota rari. Hac enim est consuctudo illius Regionis. Post hos ad Orientem est Cens quadam que vocatur quad maior Bul. Mercluini, subielli Tarcaris. Sed sunt Saraceni, babentes legem Machemett. Post eos est Etilia Russia dictur. flumen pradictum quod descendit à maiori Bulgaria, de qua postes dicetur. A meridie vero istius Re-Muscouia, gionis Tartererum super more Ponticum funt Hibert & Georgiani. Et in Georgia est metropolis

cuitus, qua vocatur Tephelis, in qua Fratres Pradicatores habent domum. Es viterius versus Orien- Tephelis. tem est terra Coralminorum: sed delett sunt à Tartaris. Et in bis locis solebant antiquitus esse Ama. Comminideles zones, fecundum Plinium & Ethicum Aftronomum. Amazones enim, vi refert Ethicu, fuerunt Amazones, nutieres ducentes exercitum magnum ex mulieribis fine viris collectum: que advocantes viros cortis Para. temporibus anni conceperunt: sed masculos genitos interfecerunt, seminas reservando, quarum in inuentuic mamillas dexiras per artificium chirurgia abstulerunt ne in sagutando reciperent impedimentum. per mamillas : & Minotauros as Centauros, monstra serocustima nutrinerunt à innentute mamilliiuu. unde antecedebant eas sicut matres suas : Tomnem exercitum premebant magis per bausmods monstra, quam per arma : & similiter Elephantes à inuentute nutriebant & assuccebant ad bella : & 10 fe per centum annos vastabant meridianas partes afix & Græcia, donec ab Hercule fuerunt sedu-

ita & diftruita. u differencia. Hac vero loca Georgianorum & Corasminorum bibent terram Soldavi Turkiæ & Capidociam à Meridie, Nam in latere Meridiano maris Pontici est terra Soldani vique ad Sinopolim, de qua prius dictum est : & post eam in codem latere maris versus Occidentem est terra Valtacij, scilicet Terra V. stacij Gracia Orientalis. Nam Occidentalis vocatur vbi Constantinopolis est, & Regiones es annexe ci- fitus. Regnun tra Brachium Santti Georgii in Europa. Sed Armenia maior est super Capadociam ad Orientem. In pezonda; Et ideo illa Armenia etsi Meridiana sit respectu Georgiu, tamen in Orientem tendit, & extenditur vsane Mediam & Melopotamiam. Et bac terra tota aftimatur à multis effe terra Ataiat; propter boc Terra Araiat. quod in Ilaia dicitur, quod filis Sennacherib interfeito patre fugerunt in Atarat: In libro Requin.

an diener, quad fugerent in Arm. nam. Sed Ieronimu. vodecimo libro Juper Ilaiam foliut hoc dicens: Ararat regio in Armenia campestris per quam Araxis sinit incredibilie obertatis ad radices montie Tauri, qui vique illuc extenditur. Quapropter Ararat non est tota Armema, sed regio determinata; magna tamen est. Nam Araxes fluuius, à quo Ararat regio nominatur, extenditur à capite suo per iter trium mersium & amplicas. Caput autem eius est Fons in monte Armenia vbi proprie oritur Eu- De hot dubie. phrates ex parte Aquilonis, & Tigris ad aliud latius montis versus Meridiem. In montibus autem Atmenia testante Scriptura requieuit Arca No: Sed non in quibuscunque montibiu: quoniam non est in istis, vois oriumur ista tria stumina magna, sed in altissimo Tauri montis cacumine, vois Ararat Tria stumina ex regio est, secundum quod dien Ieronimus undecimo super liaiam; Area in qua liberatus est Noe cef- esclim mentibus fante diluuio non ad montes generaliter Armenia. sed ad montes Tauri alissimos, qui Ararat imminent

30 campis. Es prope illos montes est ciuitas qua maxima fuit, antequam eum destruxerunt Tartari. Nam fuerunt in ea oclingenta Ecclesia Hermonorum. Et intempore Fratris Willelmi, cum transsuit per Friter Willeleam, von fuerunt nist dua paruula: Et ibs prope fuerunt Martyrizati Beatus Bar holomzus & Bea- mus. tus Iulas Thaddaus. Et ibi funt due Propheise. Una est Beati Methodij Martyris, qui fuit de Vid. fun in Rue Gente illa. Et plane prophetaut de Ifmaelitis que prophetia impleta est in Saracenis. Alius Prophe- brug. ta corum vocatur Abaton, qui prophetauit de Tarraris & destructione corum. Dicit enim, quod ab Bartholo-Agustone veniet Gens Sagittaria, que omnes Nationes Orsentis subingabit : Et veniunt in Regnum Iudas Tha-Occidentis, scilicet ad Constantin spolim, & ibs per Principes Occidentis destruentur. Et tunc conuertentur omnes Gentes Christi: 5 erit tanta pax obique, quod vini dicent morinis: Ve vobis, quod non vix ilis vique nune. Et imperator Chr stianus p net soitum suum in Taurino in Periide. Et Her-

40 meni habent istam prophetiam sicut Euangelium. Et ciuitas memorata vocatur nune Naxuan ; que Nune Nacho Colebat elle caput Regni: & est versus partes Aquilonares Armen z. Nam à festo Santti Clemen- chuan. tis afcendit Frater Willelmus inxta Ataxem vbi terminatur verfus Aquilonem; & in festo Natalis venit ad illam civitatem; & in Octavis Epiphania recessit ab ea : & per A: axem init vsque ad caput eius in secunda Dominica qui dragesima : & non longe plus est à ciuitate illa ad vitimum Armeniæ àparte Meridiei, quam ad Aquilonem. Deinde superius ad Orientem sunt montes Alanorum, & Aas, Alani, Aas, qui funt Christiani, & recepunt maifferenter omnes Christianos tam Latinos quam Gracos: unde non funt scismutici, & pugnant cum Tartaris; & similiter Alami. Post eos ad Orientem sunt Saraceni, que vocantur Lelgi, qui similater propter terra foristudirem pugnant cum Tattaiis.

Post illos ad Orientem funt Porte Calpix super Mare Calpium, qua Alexander magnus confiru- cent xit in concur su Montsum. Nam cum volus expugnare Gen em Aquilonarem no potust propter illus Oentis ferocitatem & multitudinem. Et, ot dieit Ethicus, stetit per annum vnum & mensestres, vt defenderet se ab cis, & ingenus quod talis pessima Gens susset in partibus Aquilonis; & exclimauit ad Deum, ut apponeret remedium, ne mundus desti neretur per eos. Sed. licet non fuit dignus exaudiri, tamen Deus su bonitate, & propier salutem generu humani, iussu siere terra motum maximum, C' montes distantes per stadium conjuntes sunt v sque ad latitudinem vinus Porta. E: Alexander tunc fecit fundi columnas ereas mira magnitudinis. & crexit portas & liniuit eas bitumine, quod nec igne, giamex infalia nec aqua,nec forro diffolni poffet, quad acquifinit ex Infulis maris. Nec potuerunt dinini aliquo modo nifi maris. per terra motum: & tam diruta funt, Nam Frater Willelmus transsuit per medium earum cum Tetta- Porta ferrea ris. Et eft ibi ciuitas que vocatur Porta ferrea Alexandri: à qua versus orientem incipit Hircania super Alexandri. Hiscanum mare, quod est Calpium, ve superins dillumest. Nam Hiscania saces super littus meridionale

60 illius maris, co extenditur of g ad terminos India: à coius Hircania latere meridionali funt Media & Parchia; fient prins fuit annotatum. Ha vero Porta non funt Caucatia, sed Caipia, ve dien Plinius : nec Caucathe sunt Calpiæ. Nam Caucathe distant a Calpijs per ducenta milliaria versus mare Ponticum : Et à mari Pontico distant per centum milliaria circa partes Hiberix & Georgia.

Gond Maron Et ifta loca cum montibus interiacentibus vocantur clauftra Alexandri, per que cobibuit Gentes Aquiinha inca milu- Ionates ne irruerent in terras Meridianas deuastando eas. Nam Alexander multa bella gessit cum es. Judge: his toris inc'uû. · Dr ludgi

56

Antichriffus. Christian evpell income the tichriftum. Joranem præfensem

Rogerus Bacon visittempare Lodouici 9 Occanus Aquilonaris. Antiqui anti-

Christic Da.

mensum. hide Turco-

ficum fine Molmetica : que iam pridem ad Titus Grecoma. do Chrilianos tranfüt, hodica Finis Aquilo-

Pafcatur terra. Magna Hanga-Blaci, Valachia

tust ute. Et consider andum est diligenter de locis ifis. Nam Gog & Magog de quibus Ezechiel Pro-Hantes and the phetat, & Apocalyptis, in hijs locus funt únclusis. Secundum quod dicit letonimus undecimo libro super efigentes pre- Ezechielem; Gog Scythica gens trans Caucelum & Maotim & Caspium mare ad Indiam vique commes aliam tenduntur. Et aprincipe Gog, connes qui subditi sunt Magog appellantur. Et Iudici similiter, quot 10 therait he arti- Orofius & alie fancti referunt exituros. Atque, ficut Ethicus feribit, Alexander inclusit viointi duo Charles Sa. Reona de stirpe Gog & Megog, exitura in diebus Antichristi : Qui mundum primo vastabunt, & e ne costrain, Regna de stree Gog & Mogog, exitura in asebus Antichristi: Qui munaum primo vastabunt, & Ponuficii see, deinde obuiabunt Antichristo, & vocabunt eum Deum deorum; sicut & Beatus Jeronimus confiret nies & Con- mat. O quim' necessarium est Ecclesia Dei, vit Prelati & viri Catholici hac loca considerent : non perentes, expe- folum propter conversionem Gentium in illis leis, & consolationem Christianorum captinorum ibiil mt tamen An- dem, sed propter persecutionem Antichristi, vt sciatur unde venturus sit, & quando, per hanc considerente venturum rationem & alias multas. Aportis vero Caspijs incipit Mare Caspium extendi in longum ad Orientem & in latum ad Aquinontrant mous Ionem. Et est non minus quam Ponticum Mare, ve dicit Plinius : Et habet facium quatuor menone Magnoini firm in circuitu. Frater vero Willielmus in redeundo ab imperatore Tartarcrum circuinit Latus Occi- 20 quitain myserio dental, & in cundo adeum perambulauit latus Aquilonare; ve ipse resulte Domino Rege Francia, qui nunc est, Anno Domini, 1253. Et a parte Aquilonis habet vaftam Solitudinem, in qua funt Tartari : Et vitra eos funt multa Regiones Aquilonares antequam permenitur ad Oceanum. Et ideo non potest Frater Willich iftud Mareeffe finus maris Oceani: quod tamen fere omnes authores scribunt. Sed experientia buius tempores facta per fratrem Willielmum & bomines alios fideles docet quod non venit a Mari, fed fit per

ve refere Ethicus, & aliquando infra tres dies ceciderunt ex veraque parte multa millia hominum

Alexand r tamen magis arte & ingenio vicit, quam armorum poteffate. Et cum fuerunt excitati fi-

cu: V'th de caucrnis suis, non potuerat eos reprimere per violentiam : Sed Deus invit per terre motum

& clausuras montium: Nunc autem rupta funt; & din est quod fracta sunt, sine terra motu, seu ve-

flumina magna & multa, quorum congregatione fit hoc mare Calpium & Hircanum. Tota vero bac terr Tarcarorum a l'anai vique ad Etiliam fuit Cumanorum, qui vocabautur Canregis Francix. gle : quiomnes sunt deleti per Tattaros. Et tota ista terra vocabatur Albania antiquitus. Et hic sint Canes maximi, ita ot Leones, & tauros perimant: Et homines ponunt eos in bigis & aratris. Deinde vitra Etiliam eft tertius principatus Tartarorum : Et destructe sunt gentes indigene ab eis : Et suerunt 20 Cumani Cangle, sient prius. Et durat principatus ille à flumine Etilia in Orientem per iter quatuor Cumani idem mensium ex parte meridionali, vsque veniatur ad terram principalem imperatoris : Sed ex parte Aquiqui Cangle, & Ionari durat per iter duorum mensium & decem dierum. Ex quo patet, qued Cumania fuit terrarum maxima. Nam a Danubio v (que ad terram banc in qua Imperator residet habitabant Cumani. Que omnes sunt destructi à Tartaris, preter eos qui fugerunt ad regnum Hungaria. Et hic principatus habet Terraprincipalis ab Aquilone primo Maiorem Bulgariam; à qua venerunt Bulgari, qui sunt inter Constantinonolin & Hungariam & Sclauoniam. Nam bac que in Europa est minor Bulgaria, habet linguam illo-Cumania max- rum B. Igarorum qui funt in maiori Bulgaria, que est in Alia. Et iste Bulgari funt pessimi Saraceni. ima terrarum 50- Et boc est mirabile: quoniam illa terra distat a porta ferrea seu a Portis Caspijs triginta diebus & plus per transuersum Solitudinis: Et est in sine Aquilonis. Unde mirum est valde, quon ad costam distan- 40 Bulgaria maior tes a Saracenis peruenit fetta Machome i. Et de hae Bulgaria venit Etilia, de qua dictum est. Post (que hodie Ruf cam ad orientem est terra Pascatur, qua est magna Hungaria, a qua exinerunt Huni : Qui postea Hungri; modo dicuntur Hungari. Qui colligentes secum Bulgaros, & alias Nationes Aquilonares, sicut dicit Ifidorus, Clauftra Alexandri ruperunt : Et foluebatur eis tributum vique in Egygtum. Et detem:wis Maho- struxerunt terras omnes v sque in Franciam. Vnde maioris potentia fuerunt, quam adhuc "sunt Tartari. Et magna pars eorum residet in terra que nune vocatur Hungaria vitra Bohemiam & Austriam, que est modo apud latinos regnum Hungariae. Et sunta terram Pascasur sent Blaci de Blacia maiori : à qua venerant Blaci in terra Affani inter Conflantinopolim & Bulgariam, & Hungariam, & Hungariam minorem. Nam populus ille dicitur nunc a Tartaris Ilac; quod idem est quod Blac. Sed Tartarinesciunt sonare B. literam. A parte vere meridiei Istins Solutudinis Tartarorum est mare Calpium: 50 Et deinde montes Caucali v (que in Orientem. Et extenditur hie principatus ab Etilia v (que in Catayam Nigram : unde vocatur Cara Cataia. Et Cara idem eft, quod Nigra : Et dicitur Cataia Nigia, ud differentiam alterius Cataix, qua est longe vitra hanc ad Orientem multis regionibus distantem ab ssta Cataia Nigra : de qua postea dicitur. Et hac terra cum sibi adiacentibus est terra imperatoris Tar-* Se licet in no. tarorum pracipui, in quibus vagatur semper cum curia sua, ascendendo in astate ad frigidae regiones; t oribusilla Or. O m byeme ad culidas. Et bac Cataia Nigra fuit terra Presbyteri Ioannis, sen Regui Ioannis; de quo tanta fama folebat effe : & multa falfa dict a funt & (cripta. Hie vero oportet exprimi originem Tartarorum : .. on solum propter enidentiam distinctionis regionum

Mare Caspium maiorem sed propter ip sam Gentem, que nunc famos filma est, & subdit mundum pedibus. Sciendum igi-Montes Caucait tur, quod cum bellum fuit Antiochia, tune regnaunt in Terra ista Coir Can. Nam in historia Antio- 60 Catain Nigra, chena legitur. Quod Turci miserunt pro succursu contra Francos ad regnum Coir Can, qui tenebat Monarchiam in regionibus Aquilonis, tempore illo, quo capta fuit Antiochia qui fuit de Cara Catala. Coir

Caraia Nigra fuit Terra Presbytteri Ichannis, de que multa falfa , nes falfitate mineri transfet fabula ad Abostinos novamo, dedit nobis Preibsterum Ioannem Africanum. Turci. Legnum Coir Can.

ver, est nomen proprium: Can est nomen dignitatis; & sonat idem quod Dininator. Nam principes ibi revont populum per duinationes & ferentin que instruunt homines in futuris, sine sint partes Physica, et Altronomia & scient: a experimentalis, sine artes Magica, quibus totum Oriens est deditu & imbutum. Omoes igitur imperatores Tautarorum vocantur Can : ficut apud nos vocantur imperatores & Reges. Mortuo vero ifto Csit, fuit quidam paffor Neitorinus in terra illa potent & Dominus super populum, qui populus vocatur Naiman; qui erant Coristiani, Neitorini. Qui sunt mali Christiani: Et tamen Naiman predient fe effe subiectos Romanx Ecelesie. Et ift Neitorini non solum funt ibi in Terra Naiman, sed lus. per omnes regiones vique in Orientem funt difperfi. Ifte vero paftor erexit fe in Regem; & vocatus eff Prelister & Rex Ionannes. Huic Iohanni erat frater quidam pastor potent Vnc nomine : babens fua to pascua vitra fratrem summ per iter trium Septimanarum; Et erat Dominus cuiusdam Villa, que dici. Giractium

tur Caracarum : que est nunc ciu tas Imperialis, & maior in terra Imperatoris : Et tamen non est ita ville. bona ficut Santhis Dionysius inxta Parifics in Francia; ficut feripfit frater Willelmus Domino Regi. Et virra palena ishins circiter duodecim dietas erant pasena Moal, qui erant pauperes homines, & stulti Pascus Moal. ac simplices sine lege : inxta quot fuerunt aly pauperes qui vocabantur Tartari, similes ess. Morino Tartari. igitur lohanne Rege eleuaus se in Regem Vnc frater eius, & vocaust se Can : unde Vnc-Can dicebatur : qui milic armenta sua versus terminos Moal. Inter ques Moal erat faber quidam nomine Cingis, Cingis siber. furans & rapiens animalia Vnc-can. Quo congregante exercitum Cingis fugit ad Tattaros : Qui dixu ad cos o ad Moal : Quia sumus sine duce ideo Vicini nostri opprimunt nos. Et factus est Dux corum, o congregato exercituirruit super Vnc-can, o vicit cum, o fattus est princeps in terra, o vo-20 caust fe Cingis-can : Et accepit filiam Vic, & dedit eam filio fuo in vxorem , ex qua natus est Mangu Can, qui regnum dinisti istis principibus Tartarosum, qui nunc regnant & discordant ab invicem. Ad hunc entm Manga Can fuit frater Willelmus. Et ipfe Cingis Can vbig, pramittebat Tartaros

in pugna. Unde exiut fama Tartarorum : qui fere deleti sunt per crebra bella. Et licet propier hanc cau ann nos istam Gentem vocemun Tartatos, apud quos cit imperium & Dominum: : tame semper funi Imperatores & principes de gente Moal. Nec volunt vocars Tartari sed Moal: quia primus eorum imperator seiliset Cingis-can, sut Natione Moal. Unde non habuerunt ad huc ante istos qui nunc reguant nift tres scilicet Cingis-can, & Ken-can, & Mangu-can. Qui Ken-can fuit filius Cingis, & Cingis can. Mangu slius eius. Hec igitur gens Moalest stulisssma ab origine prima, & pauperrima : Que tamen Hocita-can. permissione Diuina paulatina omnes Nationes vicinas subingauit & totam mundi latitudinem in paruo Mangu-con. 30 tempore prostrauit. Que si effet concors primo congressu Egyptum & Affricam vastaret, vt sic ex tempore prostrauit. Zue se esse concors promo congress and parte Aquilonis regnant vsq, in Poloniam. Quia Tota Russia

Bulgaria & Blachia sunt eis tributaria : Ita quod v fq. ad terram Conffantinopolitanam tenet eorum ta. Imperium. Et Soldanus Turkia, & Rex Armenia, & princeps Antiochia, & omnes principes Orientis via, in Indiam sunt eis subietti, prater pancos, qui aut nimis distant, aut habent loca in Montanis tutifims, que expugnari non poffunt.

Primo igitur in terra vbi imperator moratur est, Cataia Nigra, vbi fuit Presbyter Iohannes. Post Caiaia Niera. eam est terra fratris [ni vitra per iter trium Septimanarum. Deinde terra Moal ; & Tartarorum vitra voi fuit Presireos per iter quasi due decem dectarum. Sed tota bac terra est in qua moratur Imperator vagans per di ter lobannes. eos per iter quasi due decem dectarum. Dea tota nac terra est no qua moteunt imperanto vagano per una Terra Moal. Cin. Sed quia Ciracarum, cum Regione eius fuit prima adquisitio eorum ; ideo Ciuit tem illam ha-rum.

bent pro imperiale : Et prope illam eligunt sum Can, id est Imperatorem. Deinde post Moal & Tarta- Ornan Kerule, ros ad Orientem sunt fortes homines, qui vocantur Tangut; quiceperunt primo Cingis-can in beller Caracarum, Sed pace facta iterum subiug auit cos. Ist homines habent Boues fortissimos, habentes Candas plenas pilis Civitas Imperiaficut Equi: Quorum vacca non permittunt fe Mingi, nifi cautetur eis. Et fifti Boues vident bominem Tangut. indutum rubeis, in fliunt in eum volentes interficere. Post istos ad Orientem sunt bomines qui vocantur Vac. x mulea Tebeth: qui solebant comedere parentes suos causa pietatis, vi non faccrent eis alia Sepulchra nisi cacanuad viscera sus. De quibus scribum Philosophi, vi Plinius, Solinus & alis : Et frater Willelmus testatur Mulgendum. in libro suo : ac frater Iohannes de Plano Carpini similiter in libro, quem composuit de Tartaris, inter Tebeih. 50 quos fuit Anno Domini, 1246. miffus a Domino Papa in legationem ad Imperatorem Tartarorim. Vidab Hak. to.

Sed quia fuerunt ex boc facto abhominabiles omit Nationi, ideo iam mutaverunt hunc ritum & ta- 1.0 ap Vincen. men adone de offins capitum faciunt ciphos, in quibus bibunt propter memoriam parentum (uorum... Post spec bift. 1.32. ifter ad Orientem funt parui bomines & fufci fient Hilpani, & dicuntur Solangi. Quorum nuncij Solangia cum veniunt ad curiam al cuius, habent in manu tabulam de Ebore, in qua inspiciunt cum narrant ca que volunt, acsi omnia essent ibi scripta. Et ultra eos est quidam Populue, quorum animalia non appropriant alieni, nec habent cust dem. Sed si aliquis indigena vult habere aliquod animal, stat super collem & vociferat sicu: vult, & veniunt ad vocem sum, & accipit quod vult. Quod si extrancus veniret, odore suo sugaret omnia, & saceret ea Syluestria. Et ideo cum homo venit extraneus, claudunt eum in domo, o dant es necessaria una, donec babeat responsum de eus pro quibus venit, nec permutent eum va-

50 gari per regionem. Vitra bos est Catala (qua Seres dicitur apud Philosophos.) Et est in extremitate O-tremitace Oririentis , a parte Aquilonati refectu Indie, dius ab ea per sinum Maris & Montes. Et bic fiunt pan - enu. ni serici opimi, & in magna copia. Vode ab hac terra deseruntur ad alias regiones. Et hic populus aspir.st multum per nares: Et sunt optimi Artifices in omni arte. Et sunt boni Medici apud cos in omnibus pratergram de Vina, cains indicio non utuntur, sed per Pulsum y alta signa optime diindicant : Et

Tel Aforcolo-Descriptio Simia.

bene cognescent vires berbarum, & totius medicina potestatem. Multi ex eu sunt apud Tartaros. Es istorum Cataiorum moneta vulgaris est charta de hambasio in qua imprimunt quasdam lineas. Nec mirum; Cum Ruteni, qui prope nos funt, habent promoneta fuciem . Heiperolorum. Et ifta Cataia non diffat per 120. dietas à terra en qua moratur Imperator. Et in illa terra funt rupes excelfa, in qui bus habitant quadam creature habentes per omnia formam humanam; non tamen genna flociunt, fed ambulant saltando : sed non sunt longitudinis maioris, quam cubiti; & vestitur totum co pus crinique. Et venatores portant cerussiam, & saciunt soueas in rupibus ad modum cyphorum: Et illa animalia venunt & bibunt ceruisiam, & inebriantur, & dormiunt, & sic capiuntur: Et venatores ligant eis manue & pedes, & aperiunt venam in collo, & extrahunt tres vel quatuor guttas sanguinis, & dissoluentea, ac permittunt abtre. Et ille sanguis est preciosissimus pro purpura.

Patriarcha Ne-

Idolatte.

Sciendum vero, quod à principio Cataix magna nigra vique ad finem Orientis sunt principaliter I. dolatra : fedmixti funt inter eos Saraceni & Tartari, Neftoriani, qui funt Christiani imperfetti babentes Patriarcham suam in Oriente; qui visuat Regiones, & ordinat infantes in cunabulis ad sacros ordines: quia ip se solut ordinat; & non potest venire ad vnum locum nisi quast in quinquaeinta annis. Et bungin Ethio ille diest se habere authoritatem à Romana Ecclesia ab antiquo; & paratus est obedire, si via esset aperta. Et isti docent silios Nobilium Tartarorum Euangelium & sidem, & alios quando possunt. Sed quia parum (ciunt, & funt malorum morium, ideo Tattari despiciunt eos. Et consecrant in milla vnum panem latum ad modum palma, & dividunt primo in duodecem partes, secundum numerum Apostolorum; & postea illus partes dividunt secundum numerum populi. Et Sacerdos dat vnienique corpus Christi in manu sua; & tunc quilibet assumt de palma sua cum reuerentia. Sed I dolatra praualent in multitudi- 20 ne in omnibus hijs Regionsbus. Et omnes conuensunt in hoc quod habem Templa sicut nos , & campanas magnas. Et ideo Ecclesia Grzeorum & totims Oruntis nolunt babere campanas. Ruteni tamen babens &

Rafura. Callitas. Collegia Sacer-Cords nucleo-

Ingres.

Tebeth.

Tangut.

Catal Orienta.

Chinzi vtun-

Omnes Sacerdotes eorum radunt caput & barbam, & seruant castitatem ex quo radunt caput: Et vinunt centum vel ducentum in una congregatione. Diebus quibus intrant Templum ponunt duo [camna, & fedent e Regione, chorus contra chorum in terra, habentes libros in manibus, quos a liquando deponunt super illa scamna : & babent capita di scoperta quamdiu sunt in Templo legentes in silencio: & nullo modo loquerentur in Templo nisi verba offici, sui. Habent etiam in manibus quocunque vadunt quandam cordam centum vel ducentum nucleorum sicut nos Pater noster: & dicunt super hac verba, On. Maio. Baccan, id est, Deus tu nosti. Hac sunt communia omnibus Idolatris. Sed tamen lugres, qui 20 habitant in terra vbi Imperator moratur, differunt ab alijs. Nam alij non ponunt vnum Deum, sed plures, & creaturam adorant. Isti vero propter Viciniam Christianorum & Saracenorum ponnut vinum. Deum. Et sunt optimi scriptores : vnde Tartati acceperunt listeras eorum : & illi sunt magni scriptores Tartarorum. Et ist scribunt à sur sum in deor sum, & à sinistru in dextram multiplicant lineas és legunt. Tebeth Gribunt sicut nos, & babent signtas similes nostris. Tangut scribunt à dextra in sinifram sicut Arabes, sed multiplicant lineas ascendendo. Catai Orientales scribunt cum punctorio, aus pingunt pictores: & faciunt in una figura plures literas comprehendentes unam dictionem. Et ex boc venium Caracteres, qui habent multas literas simul. Vnde veri Caracteres & Philosophici sun Rompositi ex literis, & babent sen sum dictionum. Et tota terra a Danubio vsa, in Orientem vocatur apud Antiquos Scythia, a quo Scythæ. Et omnes Regiones Tartarorum funt de Scythia : & etiam Russia, 40

modi penicillis. de charafteribus Caracteres Phitotum víq, ad Alamaniam.

And thus much ex quarta parte Compendis Studis Theologia F.R. Baconi.

V.B. Spec. hift. lib.32. Mai, Michou, 1.2.c. 5. faith two of them went to the Cham: out they

Relations of VINCENTIVS BELVACENSIS, the most of which heereceized from Frier S I M ON de Sancto Quintino, one of the foure Friers fent by Pope INNOCENT the Fourth to the Tartars: feruing to the illustration of the former.

Nno, 1246. Curne, who is also called Gog Cham, was advanced to the Imperiall Throne of 50 A the Tartars. All their Barons being affembled, placed a golden feat in the midfl, whereon thers tent another they caused him to sit; and set a Sword before him, saying, Wee will, and defire, and command de Plana Carijas thee to rule ouer vs. He demanded if they were contented, to doe, come, goe, slay as he should and his fellow, command. They answered yea. Then faid he, The word of my mouth shall henceforth bee my whose story is Sword: and they all consented. After this they spread a Felt on the ground, and set him thereon, faying, Looke upwards and acknowledge God, and looke downe on the Felt whereon thou fitteff. If thou shalt gonerne well, wilt be liberall, inst, and honour thy Princes according to their dignitie, thou shalt reigne magnificent, and the whole World shall be subject to thy Dominion, and God will give thee all thy hearts desire; if otherwise thou shalt bee miserable and so poore, that the Fels shall not bee left the: whereon thou fittest. This done, they let his Wife with him on the Felt : and lifted them up 69 both so fitting, and proclaimed them Emperour and Empresse of the Tartars. After which they hum Ocoddi Cas brought before him infinite flore of Gold, and Silver, and Gemmes, with all which remayned to Chagadan, who distributed what he pleased, and reserved the rest. Then began they to drinke untill night after their manner; and afterward solden flesh came in Carts without Salt, and a

Vincent 1.32.

mongit foure or fine they distributed a joynt thereof. They call him Can, concealing his proper name, and he boafts himselie the Sonne of God. He hath a Prince in the Confines of Persia, called Baioth Noy (Noy, fignifieth his dignitie, Baioth is his name) which hath fubdued the Conntries of Christians and Saracens to the Mediterranean Sea. Another talled Corenzam remayneth in the Well Frontiers with threefcore thousand vinder him. The greatest Prince is Bathath, who Batha. hath under him one hundred and three score thousand Tarters, and four hundred and fiftie thoufand Christians and others. The Chams forces are inhumerable.

Anno Dom. 1247. Frier Afeelinns fent by the Pope, came into the Campe of the Tarrats with other Friers Preachers : where the Captayne Baioth-noy, by Messengers demanded, whose Mesto fengers they were. Frier Afeiline answered for them all, I am the Messenger of the Lord Pope, who among ft Christians is greater then any man, reputed a Father and Lord. They replyed, how proudly doeyee lay your Pope is greater then any ! Knowes he not that the Cham is Son of God, and Baieth-noy and Batho are his Princes! Afcelines answered, the Pope knowes nos them, but heares that the Tartars have comne out of the East, and have destroyed infinite multitudes. And had he knowne the names of Cham or his Princes, he would not have omitted their names in the Letters which we bring. But beeing grieued for the flaughters of fo many. especially Christians, with the aduice of his Brethren the Cardinals, he hath sent vs to the next Tartarian Armie we could find, to exhort the Generall thereof to cease fuch attempts, and to repent of that which they have done. The Messengers went and came divers times betwixt, e-20 uery time in change of Garments, and were very follicitous for Gifts and Prefents which the Friers had none to giue. And besides they denyed to performe the Ceremonies of kneeling to Baioth-nor, left they should thereby intimate a subjection of the Pope to the Tartars: whereupon The foure hee confulted to put them all foure to death, to which a Messenger sent from the Great Cham were Assessment hee consulted to put them all foure to death, to winth a wieneger that thou the liead : whereata Alberite, Alex would not consent. The Frien only would put vp their hoods and bow the liead : whereata ander, and Si-Tartar asked whereas you Christians adore stockes and stones, that is Crosses imprinted on them; man. why doe you refuse to doe so to Baioth-noy, whom Cham the Sonne of God hath commanded to be adored. Ascelmus answered, Christians adore not stockes and stones, but the signe of the Croffe theron, for his fake which dyed on a Croffe, adorning it with his mebers as precious Iew- See a kke diels and confecrating it with his bloud, purchaining thereby our falluation. So cannot wee doe to sincision of your Lord. Baileb.nog lent them word, that hee would find them with their Letters to the Ethnick. Ang. Cham, which they refused. Then he sent for the Letters which were translated first into Persian. in Pfelatis. and thence into the Tartar Language. Hee held them there with many Trickes and Illusions. many weeks with hard fare and ill viage. And after much adoe he returned with Bases nors anfwer, having first had a Messenger with Letters from the Cham.

B Aioth nost Letter was this to the Pope. The word of Baioth nost. Pope, know this; thy Mef-General came and brought thy Letters to us. Thy Messengers spake great words; we know not whether thom gamest them so in charge, or whether they spake it of themselves. In thy Letters thou hads written; yee kill, slay, and destroy many men. The precept of God stable and firme, who contained the face of the whole world, unto us is this. Wholoener Shall beare the Statute on their owne Land, let them reald Water and Patrimonie, and let them deliner power to him which contagneth the face of the whole World. But who soener will not heare the Precept and Statute, but shall doe otherwise, let them be rooted out and Dut we opener run an out time trees in a state and Precept. If ye will yetld Water and Parti-monse on our Lund, it is meet that thou Pope thy felfs in thim per for come to ver, and to him which com-sumets the face of the whole Earth's and if thou will not heart the flatter Precept of God and of the which contagneth the face of the whole Earth , weeknow not, God knowes. It is meet that before thou commest, thou fendeft Meffengers, and that thou signifiest to us whether thou commest or no whether thou wilt compound with vs, or be Enemie. And fend an Answere of the Procept quickly to vs. This Precent by the hands of Aybeg and Sargis, we have (ent in the moneth of Iuly, the twentieth day of the Moone. In the Territorie of the Castle Sitiens.

He Copie of the Chams Letters to Baioth-noy. By the Precept of the liming God Cingil-cham the Sonne of God, sweete and venerable suith, that God is high oner all, her is God immortall, and upon Earth Cingis-cham, is Lord alone. Wee will that this come into every place to the hearing of all, to the Provinces obeying us, and to the Provinces, obeying against vs. It is therefore meete that thou O Baioth-noy excite them and make it knowne to them , that this is the commandement of the living and immortall God: that thou also incellantly make knowne thy desire touching this, and notifie my commandement in all places, where a Messenger may come. And who focuer hall gamfay thee shall be hunted, and his Land shall be wasted. And I affure thee, that who-60 foener shall not heare this my Mandate, shall bee deafe; and who foener shall doe according to this my sudgement, knowing peace and not doing it, shall be lame. Let this my Ordinance come to the knowledge of all. Whosener shall heare and neglect to observe it shall be destroyed and slaine. Manifest this O Baioth-noy. And who soener desireth the profit of his House, and will serne us, shall bee saued and bonoured. And who somer shall contradict, studie thouse correct them at thine owne pleasure.

TJ. Bel 1.22 C 00.

* Hee was Au-

thor of a great

ftory, which is

wholly afcri-

bed to Paris

by the moft.

Dacia is here.

as often by la-

ter Authours

corruptly ta-

the ancients

Vnto Lewis the French King were fent certayne Messengers from a great man, called Ercal. This teemes that; and there was prefent Frier Andrew of Lontumel a Dominican, who knew Danid the This teemes to be that Sar. chiefe of them, having feene him in the Armie of the Tartars. Thefe brought Letters in Partachin Ruhuq. Gan and Arabike Letters. They reported also that a great King of the Tartars called Chamwae Erealthen pre- become a Christian, with most of his followers. And now the said Erealthen had received Baptisme and was come forth from Cham with a great Armie to aduance the Christian Faith, and to destroy the Aduersaries thereof; and much desired the French Kings loue. They thought also that the faid Ercalthay would the next Eafter befiege Baldach. These told the King also of the Tartarian Affaires. Whereupon he fent Messengers with Letters and Iewels to Ercalibar, with a Tent or Chappell of Scarlet fairely embroydered, with the Storie of the Passion, with Orna-10 ments thereto and things fitting for Diuine Seruice, with a piece of the wood of the Holy Croffe, exhorting him to proceed in the Faith. The Messenger were the foresaid Frier Andrew with two other Friers and two Clerkes. Transcripts of all were fent into France.

CHAP. III.

Relations touching the Tartars, taken out of the Historie of R. WEN-DOVER, * and MAT. PARIS: with certayne Epiftles of the fame subject.

Nno 1239. the Tartars, inhumane Nations, which had made great flaughters, and had with hostile forces inuaded the borders of Christendome, in the greater Honcarie were vanquished and most of them slaine, beeing encountred by five Kings, Christians and Saracens, herein confederate. After which the King of Dacia and the King of Hungarie caused the Confines (before by the Tartars brought in manner to a Wildernesse) to bee inhabited by Christians, which they fent thither. Of

which out of Dacia, alone went more then fortie ships. marke. The Dacia of Anno 1240. the deteltable people of Satan, to wit, an infinite number of Tartars brake

forth from their Mountayne-compassed, and Rocke-defended Region, like Deuik loosed out of comprehen-ded Transilus-Hell (that they may well be called Tartarians, as Tartareans) and like Grashoppers courting the face of the Earth, fooyling the Easterne Confines with fire and Sword, ruining Cities, cutting vp Woods, rooting vp Vineyards, killing the people both of Citie and Countrey. And if they pared any, they yied them in the fore-front of their battels to fight against their Allies, that if they were therein faint or fayned, themselves at their backes might kill them: if otherwise it was without reward. They are rather Monsters then men, thirsting and drinking bloud, tearing and deuouring the flesh of Dogges and Men; clothed with Oxe-hides, armed with Iron A Caluifs con- Plates; in stature thicke and short, well set, strong in bodie; in Warre innincible, in labour in- 40 fatigable, behind vnarmed; drinking the bloud of their beafts for Dainties, &c. Thefe Tartars See Brirgwood of detectable memory are thought to be descended of the ten Tribes which went away (forfaking the Law of Moles) after the golden Calues; whom Alexander the Macedon fought to inclofe in the Cafrian hils; to which labour, exceeding humane power, hee innoked the affiltance of the God of Israel, and the tops of the hils joyned together, and the place became inaccessible and impaffible. And though it be doubtfull, because they vie not the Hebrew Tongue, nor Law of Mofes, nor are gouerned by any Lawes; yet is it credible, that as their hearts then in Mofes go-

uernment were rebellious, Reprobately-fenfuall and Idolatrous, so now more prodigiously their heart and Language is confounded, and their life immane and beaftly inhumane. They are called Tartars of a certayne River called Tartar, running along their hils. Anno 1241. that inhumame and brutish, lawlesse, barbarous and sauage Nation of Tartars,

horribly foovling the North and North-east parts of the Christians, caused great feare and horrour ouer all Christendome. For they had now brought in manner to a Willernesse, Frista, Gothia, Polonia, Bobemia, and both Hungarias, the most part of the Princes, Prelates and people beeing fled or flaine : as by this Letter appeareth.

O the Beloued and alway worthy to be beloued Lord, our Father in Law, the Illustrious Privice the Duke of Brahant, H. by the grace of God Earle of Loraine, Palatine of the Saxons, bis humbleft fernice. The perills foretold in holy Scripture, now breake forth becamfe of our finnes. For a certaine oth tenues. Lee permit securatio was sections; security and possible the Confines next bordering to Cottle and mannerable people, Juage and lamble; insudates and possible the Confines next bordering to Cottle and new come to Poland, many other Lands being passed and peoples destroyed, where of a sixelly our owne Messengers, as by our beloued Consin the King of Bolicmia, we are fully certified and are inwited speedily to succour and defend the faithfull. For we know for certagne that about the Octives of Easter, the Tartanan Nation will innade cruelly and forcibly the Lands of the Bohemians, and if not

presented, will there perpetrate unheard-of slaughter. And because our next neighbours house is now on fire, and the next Countrey ieth open to waste, and some are alreadie wasted, we earnestly and pitifully entreat the arde and counsell of God and of our neighbour-brethren for the universall Church. And because deiay is full of danger, with all our hearts we beseech you, that you make all possible speed to arme as well for your as our delinerance, making strong preparations of store of Sculdiers; ailigently excitent the noble, mightie and couragious, with the people subject to them, that yee may have them in readinesse, when we shall next direct our Messengers to you. And we, by the ministerie of our Prelates, Preachers, and Minors, cause the Crosse (became the businesse belongs to him which was crucified) to be generally prea - Cr. sais ached, fast: and prayers to be appointed, and our Lands in common to be called to the warre of lesis Christ. Sinft the 10 Hereto wee adde that a great part of that detestable Nation, with an other Armie adjoyned to them was tars.

fleth Hungaria with unbeard-of tyrannie, insomuch that the King is faid to have retayned but a small part to himselfe. And to speake much in few words, the Church and People of the North is so oppressed and brought to such Straits, as it never was so scourged since the World began. Dated the yeere of orace 1241. on the day on which is fung Lætare Ierusalem: And this was the Letters fent to the Bishop of Paris by the Duke of Brabant. The like was

written by the Arch-bishop of Cullen to the King of England. Therefore for this grieuous tribulation, and for the difcord betwixt the Pope and the Emperour, so hurtfull to the Church, there are appointed fafts and prayers, with larger Almes in divers Regions, that our Lord being pacified with his people, who as a magnificent triumpher is as itrong in a few as in many, may 20 deltroy the pride of the Tartars. The French Kings mother, Queene Blanch, with deepe fighs and A desoure

plentifull teares spake hereof to her sonne. What shall we doe my dearest sonne about this lamentable event, the terrible rumour whereof is comne to our Confines generall destruction of mentable event, the terrible rumous which is a summer to be imperious invation of the Tartars. The vs all and of holy Church hangs over our times by the imperious invation of the Tartars. The Divine specific and an invariant to the tartars of the King with mournfull voice, not without the Spirit of God, answered : The heavenly comfort, Mother, exalt vs; and if they come on vs, either we shall fend againe those Tartarians to their thegme. Tartarean places whence they came; or they shall exalt vs to Heauen.

THe Emperourcertified hereof, wrote to the Princes, and especially to the King of England Emperous 1 in this forme. Frederike Emperour &c. to the King of England greeting. Wee cannot conceale, Fr.2. this I 30 though it sommhat lately came to our eares, but give you notice of a thing which concernesh the Roman Heriz. Empire (su prepared to the preaching of the Gospell) & all zealosse Christian Kingdoms in the World, threatning generall destruction to all Christendom. A barbarosse Nation hath lately come from the Southreatung general definition to all Configuration. A conversal Action nationates come from the Sou-therne. Region, which had long jame had somet the torrid Zone, and after toward the North by face. An error poffiffing Regions lung remaining is multiplied as the Canker worms, called Tarcass mee know not of Vailaby lieu to the Configuration of what place or originall; not without the fore-seene indgement of God is reserved to these last times, to und same

the correction and chastisement of his people, God grant not losse of all Christendom. A publike destruction like the for bath therefore followed, the common defolation of Kingdomes, and spoile of the fertile Land, which that of included hath therefore followed, the common defoution of Anogument, and grove of the following to extinguish the rest of levels. An wickedpeople hath passed by the rest of levels. An deed the 1 manhma, whiles it alone goeth about to domineers and reigne enery where by their immense and incom-tarian were 40 parable power and number. Now all things which they have beene able to set eye on being put to death base and it and foyle, leaving univerfall defolation behind them, thefe Tartarians (yea Tartareans) when they mote, that had come to the well peopled Colonie of the Cumani (prodigall of their lines, having Bowes their most they like had come to the well peopled (otome of the Cumain (prougon of the times, country were toen may) furnitiar Armes, with Darts and Arrowes which they continually ofe and are stronger in the armes then the land, other men) they veterly oueribrew them, and with bloudy sword killed all which escaped not by slight. were vi-Whose neighbourhood scarcely warned the Rutheni not farre distant to take heed to themselnes. For knowne, y they suddenly flie thither, to prey and spoile as the wrath of God and lightning hurles it selfe, and by their thin also; sudden assault and barbarous imassion take Cleva the chiefe Citie of the Kingdome; and all that noble sudden the Kingdome was wasted to desclation, the Inhabitants being slayne. Which yet the neighbouring Kingdome original! of the Hungatians who loudd have taken warning, neglected: whole staggeth King too secure, being dings in required by the Tattats messengers and letters, that if he desired that he and his should hue, he should have tenour, wh

required by the Tattas messengers and letters that if he desired that he and hu sponia time, he sponiated which they few their famous by yeelding himselfe and his Kingdom yet was no hereby terrified and taught to sportly which they have been been sometimed to be the sponiate of the second of the sponiate of the sponi against their irruptions: but they ignorant or insolent contemners of their enemies, secure in their enemies and within approach, trusting in the native fortification of the place, vnexpectedly compassed and oppressed at vn- at ichicat awares by them entring like a mbirlewind, opposed their Tents against them. And when the Tartars Tents Word as were fine miles from the Hungarian, the Tartarian fore-runners in the dawning of the morning, rushed Latters will Suddenly and compassed the Hungarians, and first flaying the Prelates and chiefe men, killed an infinite number, with such unbeard of slaughter as scarcely is recorded ever to have hapned in one battell. The King hardly escaped by flight on a swift Horse, which fled with a small companie to the brotherly portion of the Hyllinian Kingdome, there to be protected; the Enemie possessing the Tents and spoyless And now wasting the nobler and greater part of Hungarie beyond Danubius, consuming all with fire and

60 Sword, they threaten to confound the rest, as by the venerable Bishop Vatientis the Anbassadour of the Said Hungarian King, not ce is given to our Court first as he passed, being destined to the Roman Court. Wee are also bereof fully certified by the Letters of our deare sonne Contacte, elect King of Romans almay Augustus, and heire of the Kingdome of Ierusalem; and of the King of Bohemia, the Dakes of

Austria and Bauaria; by the Messengers words also instructed experimentally of the Enemies neerenelle. Nor could wee learne thefe things without great griefe. Truly, as the report goeth, their under termined damnable Armie, by our Lords Sufferance, bath proceeded divided purposely in three parts. For one being fent by the Pructeni, and entring Poland, the Prince and Duke of that Land were slayne by them, and after that all the Region spoyled. The second hath entred the bounds of Bohemia, and being entred bath made stay, the King manly opposing himselfe. The third hath rushe thorow Hungaria, bounded by Austria. Whence the feare and trembling having beginning from surie, dee excite and insite

all: necessitie wronth to withstand them, the danger being neare; the generall destruction of the world, and as, necessitie orgenie whospitally freedite bettee and success. For this People is brutish, and without law, ienorant of humanitie yet followers, and bath a Lord whom it obediently observeth and worships, and 10 calls. The God of the earth. The men are of short stature, but square and well set, rough and couracious. at the becke of their Leader rushing on any difficulties: have broad faces, from ning lookes, borrible cries agreeing to their hearts. They weare raw Hides of Oxes, Assert Horses, with Iron places sewed on for

The Emperours Letter for ande to the King of England. LIB. I.

defentine Armes hitherto; but now, with griefe we fleake it, out of the floides of conquered Christians , they are more decently armed, that in Gods anger wee may be the more dishonourably stayne by our owne wea-

pons. They are also furnished with better Horses, sed with daintier fare, adorned with fairer ranment. The Tartars are incomparable Archers; carrie fewed skins artificially made, by which they paffe Riners and waters without loffe. When food fayles, their Horfes are fayd to be content with barkes and leaves of Trees, and roots of Herbs : whom yet they finde fusft and hardy. And we fore-feeing all those things. often by Letters and Meffengers are mindfull to request your excellence, as also other Christian Princes. 20

earnestly folliciting and warning, that peace and lone may flourish amongst kulers, and discord being appeafed which often endamage Christendome) agreeing together to set slay to them which baue lately showed themsclues; foresmuch as fore-warned are fore-armed, and that the common enemies may not resorce, that to prepare their wayes, fo great diffentions breake forth amongst Christian Princes. Ob God how much and how often would wee have humbled our selves, doing the vimost that the Roman

gainft the Em-Bishop might have surceased from the scandall of diffention against us which is gone thorow the World; perous, expo-feth Christian and would more temperately have revoked his passions from impersous rashnesse, that wee might becable Princes to mu- to quiet our subjects by right, and rule them more peaceably ; nor that be would protelt those Rebels, the to querous function by right, and the telephone to have been fitted, and the Rebels amed against whom we have mafted much treasure and labour, our power might bee advanced against the common Ene- 30 tuall quarrels, which he shole haue opposed mies. But Will being to him for a Law, not ruling the supperserunning of his tongue, and disdanning to the Tartars, memerican manifold diffention which be hath attempted; by his Legats and Messengers hee hath commanded the Croffe to be published against mee the Arme and Aduocate of the Church, which hee

till be had ruiought to have exercifed against the tyrannie of the Tartars or Saracens, innading and possessing the Holy ned that Familie and the Land whiles our Rebels infult and confult grienoully against our honour and fame. And now that our oreatest care is to free our felues from domestike and familiar Enemies, how hall wee also repell Barba-Tarier Spics. rians. Ceeing that they by their fries which every where they have fent before, they (howfeener directed without Dinine Law, yet well trayned in Martial fratagems) know the publike discord, and the unfortified and weaker parts of the Lands : and hearing of the heart-burning of Kings, and the firife of King. domes, are more encouraged and animated, O how much doth triumphing courage adds to frength? Wee 40

will therefore by Gods providence converted, apply our strength and industrie to both, that wee may drive away the foundall domesticall and barbarous on this fide and on that, from the Church. And we have expresself fent our deare some Contade, and other Princes of our Empire, that they may powerfully withfand the affanles of our barbarous Enemies, and represse their entrie. And heartily wee adjure your Maiestie in behalfe of the Common necessite, by our Lord lesu Christ, that taking heed to your seife, and to your Kingdome (which God keepe in prosperitie) with instant care and prosident deliberation, you dili-gently prepare speedy ayds of strong Knights, and other armed then and Armes: this we require in the This Emperor Prinkling of the bloud of Christ, and the league of affinitie in which wee are soyned And foles them be Fred, to matri- ready with us manfully and providently to fight for the deliverance of Ci ristendome, that against the Ene-

ed Habel Sifter mies now proposing to enter the confines of Germanie, as the Gue of Christendome, by waited forces vi- 50

Empire.

Ctorie to the praise of the Lord of Hosts may be obtayned. Neither let it like you to passe oner these things with diffimulation, or to suspend them by deferring. For if (which God forbid) they inuade the Ger nane confines without obstacle, let others looke for the lightnings of a sudden tempest at the doores ; which we beleene to have hapned by Dinine Indgement, the world being dinerly infelted, the lone of many waxing cold (by whom faith ought to b: preached and conferued) and their pernicious example flagning the world with V (uries, and dimers other kinds of Simoine and Ambition. Let your Excellency therefore provide : and whiles the common enemies are outragious in the neighbour Regions, wifely confult to relist them: because they have comme out of their Lands with this intent , not regarding the perils of life, that they might subdue to them (which God auert) all the West, and may permert and subuert the Faith and Name of Christ. And in respect of unexpetted victorie, which hitherto by Gods permiffion bath fol- 60 lowed them, they are growne to that exceeding madneffe that now they thinke they have gotten the King. doms of the World, and to tame and subject Kings and Princes to their vile services. But nec hope in our Lord lefus Christ, under whole Standard wee have hitherto triumphed, being delivered from our Enemies, that thefe alfo which have broke forth of their Tartarcan feats, their pride being abased by oppo-

sed forces of the West, these Tartars shall be thrust downe to their Tartara (or Hell) Nor shall they horst to have passed so many Lands, overcome so many peoples, perpetrated so many mischiefes unavenged, when their unwarse Destinie, yea Sathan, shall have drawne them to the conquering Eagles of puisfant Imperial Europe to their deaths. Where Germanie voluntarily raging and prone to Armes. France the mother and nurse of Soulderie, warlike and daring Spaine, fertile England potent in men and a furnished Nanie, Almaine full of impetuous Warriours, Strip-strong Denmarke, untamed 1:1lie. Burgundie ignorant of Peace, unquier Apulia; with the Pyraticall and muincible Iles of the Greeke, Adriaticke and Tyrrhene Seas, Creet, Cyprus, Sicil, with the Sea neighbouring Hands and Regions, blondie Ireland, with nimble Wales, marifine Scotland, Icie Norway, and eners Noble and 10 famous Region in the West, will cheerfully fend their choife Soulderie under the Colours of the quickning Crosse, which and not onely rebellious men but adnerse Denils dread. Dated in our returne after the geelding and depopulation of Fauentia, the third of Iuly.

Some (Papalines) ful pected that the Emperour had hatched this Tartar-peftilence like Lu- Maliceman cifer or Anichrist, to get the Monarchie of the world and to Subsert Christiany, and that the ferret Countels and wayleffe wayes of the Tartars were fraught with Imperiall Counfels. For they conceale their Language, varie their Armes, and if one be taken, knowledge of them or their purpole can by no tortures be extorted from him. And where (fay they) should they lurke, in which of the Climats till this time ? whence their to fecret and fraudulent Confpiracie! They are Hireans and Scythians, lauage bloud-fuckers, who with the confederate Cumani, through the 20 Emperours deuile, have overthrowne the King of Hungarie, to make him feeke shelter under the

Imperiall wings, and doe him homage, &c.

Needs must they goe whom the Deuill drives: or how elfe but by mad malice, and furious Sellih Sec. 6 faction or an Antichriftian mift, could fuch impossibilities have been conceived ? Of their driuing the Turkes and the Cheerofmines out of Perfia is elfe-where looken. Of the Popes entertainment of the Tartafian Meilengers, Anno 1248. close Conferences with them and gifts to them, with divers other discourses in the faid author or Authors, I omit, Onely this Epistle following, as containing both the strange adventures of an Englishman, and his relations of the Tartars from better experience, I could not but adde heere, making fo much to the Readers purpole and ours. It was written by one Two of Narbone a Clergie man, which being accused of 30 Herefie to Robert de Curzun the Popes Legat, fled, and lived one while with the Pararines, another with the Beggines, and at last writ this Letter containing a discourse of his travels, amonest them in Italie and G.rmanie. He begins Giraldo Dei gratia Burdegalensi Archiepiscopo, Tuo dictus Narbonensis suorum olimnouissimu Clericorum, falutem, Jrc. and after some premistes of the Patarines, and Beguines (too long for this place) hee proceeds ; Hoc igitur & multis aligs peccatis inter nos Christianos emergentibu sratus Dominus, &c. In English, Our Lord therefore being angry with

Part of an Epistle written by one Y v o of Narbona vnto the Archbishop of Burdeaux, containing the confession of an Englishman, as touching the barbarous demeanour of the Tartars, which had lived long among them, and was drawne along perforce with them in their expedition against Hungarie: Recorded by Matthew Paris in the yeare our Lord 1243.

this and other sinnes falling out among I vs Christians, is become as st were a destroying enemie.

THe Lord therefore being prouoked to indignation, by reason of this and other sinnes committed among vs Christians, is become, asit were, a destroying enemy, and a dreadfull avenger. This I may iustly affirme to bee true, because an huge Nation, and a barbarous and inhumane people, whose Law is lawleffe, whose wrath is farious, even the rod of Gods anger, overrunneth, and vicerly wasteth infinite 50 Countries, cruelly abelifting all things where they come, with fire and sword. And this present Summer, the forefaid Nation, being called Taxars, departing out of Hungarie, which they had (urprifed by trea-Son, layd siege unto the very same Towne, wherein I my felfe abode, with many thousands of Souldiers : neither were there in the faid Towne on our part aboue Fifty men of warre, whom, together with twenty Corse-bowes, the Captaine had left in Garrison. All these, out of certaine high places, beholding the enemies vafte Armie, and abborring the beaftly cruelty of Antichrift his complices, fignified forthwith unto their Governour, the hideous lamentations of his (briftian subjects, who suddenly being surprised in all the Province adiopning, without any difference or reflect of condition, Fortune, lexe, or age, were by manifold cructies, all of them destroyed: with whose carbesses, the Tartarian chieftaines, and their brutish co and Sauage followers, glutting themselves, as With delicious cates, left nothing for ruliures but the bare bones. And a strange thing it is to consider, that the greedy and rauenous vultures disclaimed to pray upon any of the reliques, which remained. Old and deformed Women they gaue, as it were for dayle fu-

stenance, unto their Canibals : the beautifull denoured they not, but smothered them, lamenting and feritebing with forced and unnaturall rauftments. Like barbarous mifereants, they quelled Vagins

unto death, and cutting off their tender paps to present for dainties unto their Magistrates, they encorged them (elues with their Bodies.

Howbeit, their spials in the meane time discrying from the top of an high mountaine the Duke of Auitria, the King of Bohemia, the Patriarch of Aquileia, the Dake of Carinchia, and (as some report) the Earle of Baden, with a mighty power, and in battell array, appraching towards them, that accur sed rew immediatly vanished, and all those Tarcarian Vagabonds retired themselnes into the distressed and many selfon. ed land of Hungarie; who as they came suddenly, so they departed also on the sudden: which their celeritie caused all men to stand in horrour and astonishment of them. But of the said sugitives, the Prince of Dalmatia tooke esoht : one of which number the Duke of Austria knew to bee an Englishman, who was perpetually banished out of the Realme of England, in regard of certaine notorious crimes by him comm t- 10 ted. This fellow on the behalfe of the most tyrannical King of the Tartars, had beene twife, as a messenger and Interpreter, with the King of Hungaric, menacing and planely foretelling those michiese which afterward happened, wnlesse he would submit himselse and his Kingdome unto the Tartars yoke. Well, being allured by our Princes to confesse the truth, he made such oathes, and protestations as (I thinke) the Dea mill bimfelfe would have beene trusted for. First therefore hee reported of himfelfe, that prefently after the time of his banishment, namely, about the thirtieth yeare of his age, having lost all that he had in the Citie of Acon at Dice, even in the midft of Winter, being compelled by ignominious hunger, wearing nothing about him but a shirt of facke, a paire of shooes, and a haire cap onely. being shauen like a soole, and vttering an vncoth noyse as if hee had beene dumbe, he tooke his iourney, and so travelling many Countries, and finding in divers places friendly entertaine 20 ment, he prolonged his life in this manner for a feafon, albeit every day by rashnes of speech, and inconstancy of heart, hee endangered himselfe to the Devill. At length, by reason of extreame trauaile, and continuall change of ayre and of meates in Caldea, hee fell into a grieuous sicknesse. infomuch that he was weary of his life. Not being able therefore to goe forward or backward. and staying therea while to refresh himselfe, hee began (being somewhat learned) to commend to writing those wordes which he heard spoken, and within a short space, so aptly to pronounce and to veter them himfelfe, that he was reputed for a native member of that Countrie : and by the same dexteritie he attained to manie Languages. This man, the Tartars having intelligence of by their spies, drew him perforce into their societie; and being admonished by an oracle or vision, to challenge dominion over the whole earth, they allured him by many rewards to their faithfull service, by reason that they wanted Interpreters. But concerning their manners and fuperstitions, of the disposition and stature of their bodies, of their Countrie and manner of fighting, &c.he protested the particulars following tobe true:namely, that they were about all men. couetous, hastie, deceitfull, and mercilesse: notwithstanding, by reason of the rigour and extremitie of punishments to be inflicted upon them by their superiours, they are restrained from brawlings, and from mutuall strife and contention. The ancient founders and fathers of their tribes. they call by the name of Gods, and at certaine fet times they doe celebrate folemne Feafts vnto them, many of them being particular, and but foure onely generall. They thinke that all things are created for themselves alone. They esteeme it none offence to exercise cruelty against rebels. They be hardy and strong in the breast, leane and pale-faced, rough and huste-shouldred, having 40 flat and short noses, long and sharpe chinnes, their vpper jawes are low and declining, their teeth long and thin, their eye-browes extending from their fore-heads downe to their nofes. their eves inconftant and blacke, their countenances writhen and terrible, their extreame joynts strong with bones and sinewes, having thicke and great thighes, and short legs, and yet being equall vnto vs in stature : for that length which is wanting in their legs, is supplyed in the vpper partes of their bodies. Their Countrey in old time was a land veterly defert and wafte, fituated farre beyond Chaldea, from whence they have expelled Lyons, Beares, and fuch like vntamed beafts, with their bowes, and other engines. Of the hides of beaftes being tanned, they vie to shape for themselues light, but yet impenetrable armour. They ride fast bound vnto their Horses, which are not very great in stature, but exceedingly strong, and maintained with little 50 prouender. They vie to fight constantly and valiantly with Iauelins, maces, battle-axes, and fwords. But especially they are excellent Archers, and cunning warriers with their bowes. Their backs are fleightly armed, that they may not flee. They withdraw not themselves from the combate, till they fee the chiefe Standerd of their Generall give backe. Vanquished, they aske no fauour, and vanquishing, they shew no compassion. They all persist in their purpose of fubduing the whole world vnder their owne subjection, as if they were but one man, and yet they are moe then millions in number. They have 60000. Courners, who being fent before vpon light Horses to prepare a place for the Armie to incampe in, will in the space of one night gallop three dayes journey. And fuddenly diffusing themselves over an whole Province and surpriling all the people thereof vnarmed, vnprouided, difperfed, they make such horrible slaugh- 60 ters, that the King or Prince of the land inuaded, cannot finde people sufficient to wage battell against them, and to withstand them. They delude all people and Princes of regions in time of peace, pretending that for a cause, which indeed is no cause. Sometimes they fay that they will make a voyage to Collen, to fetch home the three wife Kings into their owne Countrey; fome-

times to punish the auarice and pride of the Romans, who oppressed them in times past ; sometimes to conquer barbarous and Northern nations; fometimes to moderate the furie of the German with their owne meeke mildneffe; fometimes to learne warlike feates and ftratagems of the French; former mes for the finding out of fertile ground to fuffice their huge multitudes: fometimes againe in derision they fay, that they intend to goe on Pilgrimage to Saint lames of Galicia. In regard of which fleights and collusions certaine undiscreet Gouernours concluding a league with them, have granted them free passage thorow their Territories, which leagues notwithstanding being violated, were an occasion of ruyne and destruction vnto the foresaid Gouernours,&c.

To the Reader.

Tround this Booke translated by Master Hakluyt out of the Latine. But where the blind leade the I blind both fall: au bere the corrupt Latine could not but yeeld a corruption of truth in English. Ramusio, Secretarie to the Decemviri in Venice, found a better Copie and published the same, whence you have the worke in manner new : so renewed, that I have found the Pronerbe true, that it is better to pull downe an old bouse and to build it anew, then to repaire it; as I also should have done, had I knowne that which in the enent I found. The Latine is Latten, compared to Ramusios Gold. And bee which 20 bath the Latine bath but Marco Polos Carkaffe, or not fo much, but a few bones, yea, sometime stones rather then bones; things diners, anerse, aduerse, peruerted in manner, dissoynted in manner, beyond beliefe. I have some some Authors maymed, but never any so mangled and so mingled, so present and Co ablent, as this vulgar Latine of Marco Polo; not folike himfelfe, as the three Polos were at their returne to Venice, where none knew them, at in the Discourse yee shall find. Much are wee beholden to Ramusio, for restoring this Pole and Load-starre of Asia, out of that mirie poole or puddle in which be lay drowned. And, O that it were possible to doe as much for our Countriman Mandeuill. who next thu (if next) was the greatest Asian Traveller that over the World had, or having falne among it theenes, neither Priest, nor Lenne can know him, neither have we hope of a Samaritan to releeve him. In this I have indenoured to give (in what I give) the truth, but have abridged some things to prevent prolixitie t omer macrowress type; (m wom, five;) our 'unit, on common and 'unit of the protein protein in 30 and testologie in this for volumenous at 8 m/kg, leaving out nothing of fulfillents, but what elferbore is to be found, in this Work; and facking rather the finfe them a firster verball following our Authors; word, and furture. After the Chapters I find them dustry by dissers expedid, and therefore base followed our owne method.

CHAP. IIII.

The first Booke of MARCYS PAVLYS VENETUS, or of Master MAR co Polo, a Gentleman of Venice, bis Vovaces.

The Voyages of Master M. NICOLO and M. MAIFIO from Constantinople to the Great CAN, and their comming home to Venice: their second Voyage with the Authour and

N the time of Baldwin Emperour of Constantinople, * where vivally remay ned a * Of Bald Magistrate of Venice, called Meffer lo Dofe, in the yeare of our Lord 1250. conquirin Mafter Nicolo Polo, Father of Mafter Marco , and M. Maffio his Brother, No- Conficatione ble, Honorable and Wiemen of Venice, beeing at Constantople with flore of pire of the Merchandize, kept many Accounts together. At last they determined to goe interest to the constant of the into the Great (or Euxine) Sea, to fee if they could increase their stocke, and musichath buying many faire and rich Iewels. They departed from Constantinople and fayled by the faid uen a long buying many faire and rich Iewels. They departed from Lonstantinople and 12400 of course : le Sea to a Port called Soldadia: * from whence they trauelled after by Land to the Court of the Knowley. 60 great Lord of the Tartars, called Barcha, who resided in the Cities of Bolgara and Asara, and be the shiften was reputed one of the most liberal and courteous Princes that ever had beene amongst the Tar- (pp.10m.). was reputed one of the most liberal and courteous Princes that cuer has been among a the way.

The was very well pleafed with their comming, and did them great honour. They hauge "Called made shew of their lewels, and seeing they pleafed him, freely bestowed them on him. He, lots before the results of the

placed in Chirmia (not Armenia) on the North-fide of the Eurine Sca. Frier Bacon before cals it Soldaia in Cafferia.

G 3 to

Bresta, or Bor-

or which fee

M. Ienkinfon.

to be receded in liberalitie, caused twice the value to bee given them, and besides great and rich gifts. Hauing flayed one yeare in the Countrey of the faid Prince, whiles they thought to returne to Venice, there haddenly arole Warre betwixt the faid Barcha and another named Alan. Lord of the Easterne Tartars. These Armies fighting together, Alan had the Victorie, and the Armie of Barcha received a great overthrow. By reason whereof, the wayes beeing not secure. they were not able to returne that way which they came. And having confulted how to returne to Conflantinople, they were aduised to goe so farre to the East, that they might compasse the Realme of Barcha by virknowne waves : and fo they came to a Citie called Ouchacha, which is in the Confines of the Kingdome of this Lord of the Tartars on the Welf, and paffing further. they went over Tieris (one of the foure Rivers of Paradile) and after that a Defart of feuen- 10 teene dayes Journey, without Citie, Caftle, or Fort, finding only Tartars, which like in the

fields in certayne Tents, with their bealts. Beeing past the Defart they came to agood Citie called Rocard. (the name also of the Prouince) in the Region of Persia, which was subject to a King called Barach: in which place they flayed three yeares before they could goe forward or backward, by realon of great warres betwixt the Tartars. At that time a certayne Wileman was fent Ambassador from the faid Prince Alex to the Great Can, who is the greatest King of all the Tartars, residing in the Confines of the Earth. betwixt the North-east and the East, called Cublai Can: who being comne to Bocara , and finding there the faid two brethren which had now well learned the Tartarian Language, he rejoyced about measure, and perswadeth these Westerne men or Latines to goe with him , to the pre- 26 fence of the Great Emperour of the Tartars; knowing that hee should gratifie him in this, and the men not with standing should be entertayned with great honour, and rewarded with large

gifts; especially, seeing through the manifold conference had with them; he now perceived their pleating behaviour. Those men therefore considering, that they could not easily returne home without danger, confulting together, joyne with the faid Ambassadour, and journey with him to the Emperour of the Tartars, having certayne other Christians in their Company . whom they brought with them from Venice, and departing towards the North-saft and the North, were a whole yeare in going to the Court of the faid chiefe King of the Tarrars. The cause of their long time in this Journey, was the Snowes and River Waters much increased, so that they were forced in their travell to flay the waiting of the Snow, and decreasing of the flouds. Being therefore brought before the prefence of the Great Can, they were most courteously

the Great Can, receited of him. He questioned them concerning many things as of the Countries of the West, the Romane Emperour, and other Kings and Princes, how they carried themselves in Gouernment, and in Warlike affaires, how Peace, Iustice, and Concord continued among them; also what manner of life, and customes were observed with the Latines; and especially of the Pope of the Christians, of the things of the Church and the Religion of the Christian Faith. And M. Nico-lo and M. Musses, as Wisemen told him the truth, alway speaking well to him, and orderly in the Tartarian Tongue. Infomuch that hee often commanded they should bee brought to his prefence, and they were very acceptable in his fight. Hauing well understood the Affaires of the Latines, and resting satisfied with their answers, 40 the Great Can intending to fend them his Ambailadours to the Pope, first, consulted with his

Barons, and then calling to him the two Brethren, defired them for his love to goe to the Pope of the Romans, with one of his Barons called Choquatall, to pray him to fend an hundred Wife-They are fent men, and learned in the Christian Religion vnto him, who might shew his Wisemen, that the Ambassadours Faith of the Christians, was to bee preferred before all other Sects, and was the only way of faluation; and that the Gods of the Tartars were Deuils, and that they and others the people of the East were deceived in the worship of their Gods. Hee gave them also in charge to bring in their returne from Ierusalem, of the Oyle of the Lampe which burneth before the Sepulchre of

therefore yeelding due reuerence to the Great Can, promife that they will faithfully execute 40

the charge committed vnto them, and prefent the Letters which they received from him, writ-

our Lord Iefus Chrift, to whom hee had great deuotion, and held him to bee true God. They

ten in the Tartarian, to be deliuered to the Billiop of Rome. He (according to the custome of his Kingdome) commanded a Golden Tablet to bee given

the broad

Golden tablet them ingraven and figned with the Kings marke; carrying the which with them throughout his whole Empire; in stead of a Passe-port, they might bee enery-where safely conneyed through dangerous places, by the Gouernours of Prouinces and Cities, and receive expenses from them; and lastly, how long focuer they would stay in any place, what focuer they needed to them or theirs, should be ministred vnto them. Taking their leave therefore of the Emperour, they take their Journey, carrying the Letters and Golden Tablet with them. And when they had rid twentie dayes Journey, the Baron aforesaid affociated vinto them began to fall grienously ticke. 60 Whereupon confulting and leaving him there, they profecute their intended Icurney, beeing euery-where courteoufly received by reason of the Emperours Tablet. Yet in very many places they were compelled to flay, by occasion of the ouer-flowing of Rivers, to that they ipent three yeares, before they came vnto the Port of the Citie of the Armenians, named Giazza. From

Guezza they goe to Acre, to wie, in the yeere of our Lord 1269, in the moneth of Aprill. Acres Acres But having entred into the Citie of Acre, they heard, that Pope Clement the fourth was late- then in possi-

by dead, and that no other was substituted in his place; for the which they were not a little grie- fion of the ly dead, and that no other was libitituted in his place to the wind day wellow a more given ned. At that time, there was a certaine Legate of the Apollolicall Sea at Acre, to wit, Mafter bifore la.c. Tibalio de Vesconti di Piacenza, to whom they declared all they had in commission, from the Pope Clomes Great Can: and he aduited them, to expect the Creation of a new Pope. In the meanic space the fourth. therefore departing to Venice to vifit their Friends, (purpoling to remayne there; witill ano. "Another of

ther Pope were created.) Mafter Nuclo found that his wife was dead, whom (at his departure) pic hath 25. hee had left great with child, but had left a fonne, named Marco, who was now * mineteene Booke was yeeres of age. This is that Marco which ordayned * this Booke, who will manifelt thesein written by s all those things which he hath seene. Moreouer, the Election of the Pope of Rome was defer- Geneleman

They (fearing the discontentment, and disquieting of the Emperour of the Tartars, who mouth and They (fearing the discontentment, and displayed of the Emperon of the funds, who therefore this they knew) expected their returne) goe backe agains to Acre to the Legate, carrying with in Rescale

them Marco aforefaid, and (having gone to lerufalem, and fetched of the Oyle) with the Le-Merco is mer gats Letters, tellifying their fidelitie to the Great Chan, and that a Pope was not yet cholen, tioned in the they went againe towards Giazza. In the meane time whiles they were going, Meffengers third per or they were against our state of the legate, declaring various into the various groups, miningers and a of interaction and a contraction of the legate, declaring various into the called bimiletic 4 Gregorie. Hearing this prefently fending Meffengers, he calleth backet the much of the large various than 100 to 1 Wenetians, and admonished them not to depart, preparing other Letters for them, which they so written thould prefent vnto the Great Chan of the Tartars; with whom he also loyned two Preaching the wholep mount peters where their honest convertation and learning, whereof the one was called Friad Island by be Priars, men famous for their honest convertation and learning, whereof the one was called Friad Island Wicolo Danicenza; the other, Friar Guielmo da Tripoli. To these hee gave Letters, and Printaname.

with his Benediction. They came to Giazza, a Port of the Sea in Armenia. And because Ben- ars fent vn tiochdare the Saltan of Babylon leuying a great Armie had then inuaded the Armenians, the two the Tariar. Friars mentioned, began to bee afraid of themselves, and delivering the Letters and Presents to Matter Nicolo, and Maffio, and Marco, defiring to avoide the danger of the wayes, and perill of warres, remay ned with the Mailer of the Temple, and returned with him. But the three Venetians exposing themselves to all danger, with many labours, and much difficultie trauelled many dayes, alwaies towards the North-east and North, till they after three

yeeres and a halfe came vnto the Emperour of the Tartars, vnto the Citie called Clemenfu: for The Citie in the Winter time their journey had often and long hinderantes, by reason of the snow and mensu. excreme cold, and mundations of waters. Moreover, King Cublai hearing that they were comming, who were yet very farre off, fent Messengers fortie dayes journey to meet them, who should conduct them, and minister all necessaries for the journey. Going therefore to the Kings Court, and being brought to his presence, they fell downe be. The adora fore him on their faces, yeelding the accustomed reverence. Of whom being curteously recei- of the Tar

ued, they are willed to arife, and he commandeth them to declare, how they passed the divers dangers of the wayes, and what they had treated with the Bishop of Rome. Then they orderly declare all things, and give the Emperour the Popes Letters and Prefents which they brought.

Whereat the Chan wonderfull resoycing, commended their faithfull cares. The Oyle alfo Marcus P brought from the Lampe of the Lords Sepulcher, and offered vnto him, hee reuerently received the Chart of them, and commanded it should bee honourably preserved. And asking of Marco, who hee Clerkes. was, Mafter Nicolo answered, that he was his Majetties fernant and his sonne. Hee enterrayned a Courties him with a friendly countenance, and caufed him to write amongst other his honourable Cour- Marces Le tiers: Whereupon he was much efteemed of all the Court, and in a little spacelearned the cuflomes of the Tartars, and foure divers Languages, being able to write and reade them all.

to be performed in a Citic called Carabas, not the which he could fearedly at syne in fixe momeths face. But he, carrying himfelfe wifely mall things, discharged what hee had in comitfion, not without the commendation and fauour of the Prince. And knowing the Emperour
knowled to was delighted with nouelties in the Countries which he passed thorow, he diligently fearched time in w the customes and manners of men, and the con litions of the Countries; making a memoriall this booke of all which he knew and faw, to pleafure the Great Chan. And in fixe and twentie * yeeres written, fr which he continued one of his Court, he was to acceptable to him, that he was continually fent 1272-to 11 thorowall his Realmes and Signiories, for the affaires of the Great Chan, and cometimes for lation app his owne, but by the Chans order. And this is the true reason that the faid Matter Marco lear-resh The

60 ned and faw fo many no selties of the East, which follow in order diligently writters. But thele Venetizins having stayd in that Court many yeeres, and growne very rich in Iewels 2/ ye is his begant of great value, were inflamed with defire to visit their Countries, fearing that if the Chan (new a Countries) old) should die, they should not bee able to returne. One day Master Nicolo feeing the Chan They del merrie, craued licence to depart in the name of all three. Whereat hee was moved, and asked rete. c.

ledges, and authoritie to order Priefts and Bithops, and of all absolution as it himselfe were pre- Letters, and fent, with Prefents also of great value, and Cryitall veilels to prefent the great Chan, together Preaching

The great Chan to make his wifedome more apparent, committed an Embassage vinto him to a farte

tion of India. And this King gouerned the fame. The will of Queene Bolgana. Cogatin.

why they would put themselves on so dangerous a journey; and if they wanted riches, he would give them twice as much as they had: and in great love would not permit their departure. Yet Argon, a King in the meane space it happened, that a King of the Indians, named Argon, sent three wise men unto the Court of Great (ublai, whole names were Vlasai, Apufca, Coza, to treat with him. Argon is a Na- that he wold deliner him a wife; for his wife named Bolgana, being lately dead, begged this grace of the King at the point of death, and left in her Wil, that he should not marrie a wrife of another Familie then her owne, which was of Catay, King Cublai therefore yeelding to his request. caufed to be fought out for them a faire young Mayden of feuenteene yeeres of age, named Cegatin, descended of the said Queenes Rocke, and to be the wife of Argon,

King Argon. Nicolo, Maffio, Marco, and others, Embassadors. LIB. I

These Embassadors departing, rode eight moneths the same way they came, but found so hot 10 warres betwixt the Tartars, that they were constrayned to returne: and acquainted the Chan with their proceedings. Meane-whiles, Master Marco had returned from the parts of India. where he had beene employed with certaine ships, and declared to the Chan the nouelties of the places, and the fecuritie of those Seas: which words having passed him, the Embassadours conferred with the Vinetiess, and agreed that they with the Queene should goe to the Great Chen, and desire leave to returne by Sea, and to have the three Latines, men skilfull in Sea affaires, with them to the Countrey of King Argon. The Great Chan was much displeased with their request, vet vpon their petition granted it: and caused Nicolo, Massio and Marco to come to his presence, and after much demonstration of his love, would have them premise to returne to him, after they had spent some time in Christendome, and at their owne house. And he cau- 20 fed to give them a Tablet of Gold, in which was written his commandement, for their libertie and securitie thorow all his Dominions, and that expenses should bee given them and theirs. and a Guide or conuoy for fafe passage; ordayning also that they should be his Embassadours to the Pope, the Kings of France, of Spanne, and to other Christian Kings. Hee caused fourteene thips to be prepared, each having foure Masts and able to beare nine Sayles in fayling, the forme of which is too long here to relate. Foure of them, or fine, had from two hundred and fiftue to two hundred and fixtie Mariners each of them. In these ships the Embassadours, the Queene. and Nicolo. Maffio, and Marco, fet fayle, having first taken leave of the Great Chan, who gave them many Rubies and other precious gems, and expenses for two yeeres.

After three moneths they came vnto a certaine Iland, named land, and from thence fayling 30 through the Indian Sea; after eighteene moneths, they come vnto the Countrey of King Aron, fixe hundred men of the Mariners and others, and but one of the Women and Damfels died in the journey, and onely Coza of the three Embassadours was living. When they came to the Countrey of King Argon, they found that hee was dead, and that one Chiacato governed the Kingdome, for his fonne being young. They fent to acquaint him with their businesse; who anfwered, that they should give her to Cafan the Kings sonne, then in the parts of Arbor secco, in the Confines of Persia with fixtie thousand persons for the guard of certaine passages against the enemie. Hauing done fo, Nicolo, Moffio, and Marco returned to Chiacato, and flayed there nine moneths. After this, taking leaue, Chiacato gaue them foure Tables of Gold, each a cupit long, fire fingers broad, of the weight of three or foure Markes: in which was written, that in 40 the power of the eternall God, the name of the Great Chan should bee honoured and praised many yeeres; and every one which should not obey, should be put to death, and his goods confiscate. It was further contayned, that these three Embassadours should be honoured, and service done them in all Lands and Countries, as to his owne person : and that Horses, Conuoves . expenses and necessaries should be given them. All which was duly put in execution, that sometimes they had two hundred Horses for their sateguard. In this their travell they heard that the Great Chan was dead, which tooke from them all hope of returning thicher. They rode till they came to Trabesonde, and from thence to Constantinople, and after to Negroponte, and at last came with great riches fafe to Venice, Anno 1295. And thus much may ferue for a Preface to the following worke, whereby might appeare, how Marco Polo could come to the knowledge of the 50 things therein contayned.

To supply a little more, delinered by Tradition and recorded by Ramusio: he sayth that these three being comne to Venice, like Vly sies in Ithaca, none knew them; all esteeming them long since dead. Befides, sheir voyage bad fo altered them, that they feemed rather Tartarians then Venetians, hauing in manner forgotten their natine Language; their babite also was of thicke Cloth, like Tartars. They went to their house in Saint Iohn Chrylostomes Street, and is there still to be seene, then a faire Palace, and now called, The Court of millions: which name it had by reason of Marcos relations of so many millions in this worke, and in his d scourses of the Great Chans incredible wealth. They found there inhabiting some of their kindred, nor knew how to make themselnes knowne. Therefore, as I have often heard of Magnifico Meffer Gasparo Malipiero, a very old Gentleman of singular integritie, from 60 the report of his Father and Grandfather, &c. they agreed to inuite many of their kindred to a feast, prepared in honourable manner with much Magnificence: in which at first all three came forth in Crim-Son Sattin Sutes , and after the Guests were set, stripped themselues, and gaue them to the Sernitors. comming forth in Crimson Damaske; and at the next seruice in Crimson Veluct, and after in the common habit, gining still the former to the servitors. Dinner ended and the Servitors put foorth, Marco brought forth their three habits of thicke (losth in which they had comne home, and thence tooks and let on the Table an incredible quantitie of lewels artificially sewed therein, which was no lesse maruell to the beholders, then enidence of their being of the Polo family as they pretended. Massio was made a Magifrate in Venice, Marco was daily frequented with the youth; and all wanne great reputation. In few moneths after, Lampa Doria Generall of a fleet of Genois beingcome to the Île Curzola with seauentie Gilleres, Andrea Dandolo was sent against them, and in that Fleet Marcowas made Captaine of a Galler, which by disaduenture of Warre was taken, and he carryed prisoner to Genoa. Where his strange travels being made knowne, a certaine Gentleman daily resorting to bim (as did the whole Citie in admiration) caused and beloed him to write this storie, bassing sent to Venice for his Notes. The booke was first written in Latine, and thence translated into Italian. One of which Latine Copies very ancient and baply copied out of Marcos originall, I have seene and compared with this which I heere Publish, lent me by a Gentleman of this Citie of the bouse of the Chisimy speciall friend, which holds it in specialleseeme. No price might ransome him, insomuch that his Father wanting an heyre to his wealth married againe, and had by his wife three Children. Marcos worthinesse obtained that which no moneys worth could doe, and being at libertie hee returned and marryed, and bad two Dangbters (but no sonne) Mo-

retta and Fautina, orc. That Gentleman of Genoa made a Preface to the Booke, and Francisco Pipino a Frier Preacher which translated the same, Anno 1320. out of the Vulgar (the Latine being rare, as well it might before Printing and perhaps neuer seene of him) into Latine. Both those Prefaces are in Ramusio : the latter commends M. Polo for a denout and honest man, and faith his Father confirmed the truth of this Booke. and his oncle Maffio on his Death-bed to his Confesor. Pipino abbremated the Booke and perhaps vaue occasion to that corruption which was after increased by others.

ð. II.

Olfernations of M. Pozo, of Armenia, Turkie, Zorzania, Baldach, Persia, Chirmain, Cobniam, Ormus, Knaue-fooles Paradile, and other Easterne parts in Alia, and Armenia the leffe.

Here are two Armenia's, the greater and the leffe. In the leffe the King abides in a Citie called Sebaffoz, which in all his Countrey observeth Justice and good Gouernment.

The Kingdome it selfe hath many Cities, Fortresses and Castles : the soyle also is fertile, and the Countrey lacketh no necessary thing, nor doth it want game of Beasts and fowle : the ayre is not very good. The Gentlemen of Armenia in times past were stout The mana

warriours, but become now effeminate and nice, give themselves to drunkennes and ryot. There of the Inha is a certaine Citie in this Kingdome feated neere the Sea, named Giazza, having an excellent tants. Hauen whither many Merchants refort from divers Countries, even from Venice and Genna, by Giarge. reason of the divers marchandises brought thither, especially Spices of fundry forts . and certaine other precious riches brought thither out of the East Countries for trading : for this place

is as it were a certaine part of all the East Countries. In Turchomania are three forts of Nations; to wit, the Turchomans or Turke-men, which ob- Turchoman ferue the law of Mahamet. They are men vnlearned, rude, and wilde, inhabiting the Moun- Turtie. taines and inacce lible places, where they know are pastures; for they live onely of their beasts. There are good Horses, called Turke-men. (or Turkie horses) Mules, of great estimation. The other

Nations are Grecians and Armenians, who possesse the Cities and Townes, and bestow their labour on Marchandne and Artes. They make the best Carpets in the world. And they have many Cities, the chiefe whereof are Cogno, or Iconium, Ca farea, and Sebafte, where Saint Bafil fuffered Martyrdome for Christ, and they acknowledge one of the Kings of the Tartars for their Lord. Armenia the greater, being a very large Province, tributary to the Tartars, hath many Cities and Townes. The chiefe Citie thereof is called Arzuigg, and the best Bukram is made there-Most wholsome hot waters also spring there, for the washing and curing of mens bodies. And the other more famous Cities next to the Metropolis, are Argiron and Darziz. In the Sum-

mer time, very many Tartars refort thither with their Flockes and heards, allored through the fatnes of the pasture : and againe in the Winter depart for a certaine time by reason of the abifidance of Snow. The Arke of Noah remained in the Mountaines of this Armenia. This Countrey Of the Ge hath the Province of Mofull and Meridin, bordering on the East. But on the North is Zorza. ant nia*, in the confines of which a Fountaine is found, from which liquor-like oyle floweth, yet is it 60 vnprofitable for the seasoning of meat, but very fit for the making and maintaining of Lampes, and to anoint other things enough to lade Camels.

In Zorzania is a King called alway Danid Melicz, or King Danid : One part of the Pro- Georgia uince is subject to him, the other payeth tribute to the King of the Tartars. The Woods there are of Boxe-tree. The Countrey abutteth on the two Seas, Mar-maggiore, and that of Abaccu.

(or the Capian) which containeth in Circuit twentie eight hundred Miles, and is like a Lake. not mingled with other Seas. In it are many Hands, Cities and Caitles, fome of which are inhabited by those which fled from the Tartars out of Persia. The people of Zorzania are Christia ans, observing the rites of the Christians. They keepe their hayre short, like the Westerne Clergie. The Inhabitants have many Cities and Castles, and abound with Silke, of the which they make very faire Cleathes.

Moxul.

Moxul is a Province in which dwell people of many fortes, one called Arabi which are Mabumetans, other are Christians, some Nestorians, others Lacobites, and others Armenians: and they haue a Patriarch called lacelit, which ordaineth Archbishops, Bishops, and Abbots, and fends them thorow all parts of India, and to Cairo and Baldach, and all parts where Christians dwell, as doth Io the Pope of Rome. And all the cloathes of Gold and of Silke called Mosfulines are wrought in Moxul. But in the Mountaines of this Kingdome dwell the people called Cords, whereof fome are Nestorians, other Iacobines, and some followers of Mahamet. They are wicked men and rob Merchants. Neare to them is another Province, called Mus and Meridin, wherein growes infi-

nite flore of Cotton or Bombast, whereof they make Buckrams and other workes. They are all under the Tartars.

Baldasb. Balfara.

Baldach is a great Citie, in which was the Chalifa that is the Pope of all the Sarcens. A River runnes thorow it, from whence to the Sea is ordinarily feauenteene dayes journey. They fayle by a Citie called Chif: but before they come thither is Balfara, about which grow the best Dates in the world. In Baldach are many cloathes of Gold and Silke : there are wrought Da- 20 maskes and Veluets with divers figures of creatures. All the pearles (in manner) in Coriftendome come thence. In that Citie is studyed the law of Mahomet, Negromancie, Phylicke, Altro-

V'44 A'42.0r

nomie, Geomancie, and Phisnomie : It is the chiefe Citie in those parts. When the Tartars began to raigne, there were foure Brethren, the eldeft of which, Monguraigned in Sedia. These purpofing to lublue the world, went one to the East, another to the North, to the South a third, which was Vlan, and the other to the West. In the years from the Incarnation of our Lord 1250. Vlas having a great Army of one hundred thousand Horse, besides Foot, yet vied policie, and hauing hid a great part of his men brought by fained flight, the Calipha into his ambush, and tooke him, and the Citie : in which he found infinite store of treasure, infomuch that he wondsred.

He sent for the Califa, and reproued him that in that warre hee had not therewith prouided 20 himselfe of Souldiers for defence : and commanded that hee should be inclosed in that Tower, where his Treasure was, without other sustenance. This seemed a sust sudgement from our Lord Iefus Christ on him. For he in the yeare 1225, feeking to conuert the Christians to Mahumet: And taking advantage on that place of the Goipell, that bee which hath Faith afmuch as a graine of Mustard-seed should be able to remove mountaines, he Converted all the Christians, Nestorians, and Lacobites, and propounded to them in ten dayes to remoue certaine Mountaines, or turne Mabumerane, or be flaine, as not having one man amongst them which had the least faith. They therefore continued eight dayes in Prayer : after which a certaine Shoomaker by reuelation to a Bish p, was designed to performe it. This Shoomaker once tempted to lust by fight of a young Wo nan in putting on her Shooe, zealoully had fulfilled that of the Gofpell, and literally had put 40 out his right eye : He now on the day appointed with other Christians following the Croffe and

lifting his hands to Heauen, prayed to God to haue mercy on his people, and then with a loude

Tauris is a great Citie in the Province of Hirace. It is a most populous Citie. They live

of Arts and Merchandife. They make Cloathes of gold and filke. For anne Merchants make there

Persacontaineth eight Kingdomes: whereof the first is called Casibin, the second Curdiflan,

the third Lor, the fourth Suoliftan, the fift Spaan, the fixt Siras, the fearenth Soncara, the eight

voyce commanded the Mountaine in the name of the Father, Sonne, and holy Ghoft to remove, which presently with great terrour to the Califa and all his people was effected. And that day is fince kept holy, with fasting also on the euen.

great gaine, but the Inhabitants are generally poore : a mixed people of Nestorians, Armenians, lacobites, Georgians, and Persians, and Mahametans. These last are persidious and treacherous. thinking all well gotten which they steale from men of other Religions. And this wickednesse so of the Saracens hath converted many Tartars thereto. If the Christians kill them in their robbe-Deuils Martyrs rie, they are reputed Martyrs. From Tauris to Persia are twelve dayes sourney. In the confines of Tauris is the Monafterie of Saint Barfam, the Monkes whereof are like Carmelites; they alway make girdles which they lay on the Altar, and give to their friends, which demoutly e-

The eight Kingdome of Perfes. Hories. Affes.

fleeme of them.

The Inhabi-

Timochaim, which is neere Arboresecco towards the North. Faire and great Horses are there, whence they are fold into India. There are also very goodly and excellent Affes fold dearer then the Horses, for that they eat little, carrie much and farre. They have Camels but not so swift. 60 These are necessary in those Countries, which sometime in a long way yeeld no grasse. The people in those Countries are very wicked, contentious, Theeues, and Murtherers, profetting the faith of Mahumet. Merchants are every where flaine by those Theeves, vnleffe they travell in troupes. Yet are there excellent Artificers in the Cities, who make wonderfull things in gold,

filke, and Embroyderie. They abound with Silke-wormes, Wheat, Barley, Milium, and other unas, and Law forbid wine, Fine diffinest kindes of Corne: and have also plenty of Wine and fruits. And though their Law forbid wine, Fine diffinest kindes of Corner and hade and parties or corrupt the text, that if they boyle it, then it changeth the on, as in a Poolih fafts. taile, and therefore the name also of Wine. Inch and the confines of Persia, where much Trading is exercised. It hath also race

cunning Artificers who labour in Silke.

Chierman is a Kingdome in the confines of Perfus to the East, subject to the Tartars. In the weines of the Mountaines the stones are found, commonly called Turchiffes; veines also of Aza aio and Andanico. There are also made all Armes and munition for warre, and by the Women IO excellent needle-workes in Silkes, with the portraitures of all forts of Creatures verie admirable. There are the best Falcons in the world, verie swift of flight, red brested, and under the trayne, leffe then those of other Countries, Proceeding further, you goe through a great Plaine, and hauing ended eight dayes iourney, you come vnto a certaine descent. In the Plaine many Par-

tridges are found, and also Castles and Townes. But in that steepe descent are many trees and thole fruitfull, but no habitation is there but of Shepheards. This Countrey in the winter time After this you come vnto a certaine great Plaine, where a certaine Citie is feated, named Ca- Cimandu. mandu, which in times past was great, but is now destroyed by the Tartars, and the Countrey is

called Reobarle. There grow Pomgranats, Quinces, Adami-apples, and divers others fruits, 20 which grow not in our cold Countries. It hath also very great Oxen, and all white, thin hayred with thicke blunt fhort hornes, with a Camels bunch on the backe, accustomed to beare great Oxen with a with thicke blunt fhort hornes, with a Camels builth off the backe, accurdence to be Camels, bunch on the barthens. And when the packe-faddles are fet vpon the bunch, they bow the knee like Camels, backe. and having received the burthen rife againe, being fo taught by men. The Sheepe of that Coun-Sheepe of the trey are no leffer then Affes, bearing to long and broad a tayle, that they weigh thirty pound bigaes of Affe weight. They are very faire and fat, and good meat. Moreouer, in the plaine of this Countrey

are many Cities and Townes, with high walls of Mud to defend them from the Caranna, that is Mestizes, or mingled people of Indian women and Tarrars, ten thousand of which bee conducted by one Nugodar, the nephew of Zagathas who ruled in the greater Turkie. This Nugodar hearing of the Malabars subject to Soldan Asidm, without his Vncles knowledge went and 30 tooke Dely with other Cities, and erected a new Seignorie, and mixing with the Indian women procreated these Carannas, which goe vp and downs to rob and spoyle in Reobarle and other Countries. There they learned magicall and diabolicall Arts, by which the ayre is so darkned in Their Inchar

Countries. I nere they tearned magnetar and account of the day time for a long space, that none may see them or preuent them. CM. Marco one time the thorow such darknessed additional fall into their hands, but made shift to escape to a Castle called danger. Consalmi : but many of his company were taken or flaine. That Plaine whereof I now speake, is fine daies sourney extended towards the South. But at the

end therof, the way beginneth by litle and litle to descend for twenty miles together, & the way it (elfe is very bad, and not without danger by reason of Theeues. At length you come to very goodly Plaines, which extend themselues two dayes journey in length, and the place it selfe is 40 called Ormsu. That Countrey aboundeth with Rivers of water and Palme trees. There is also

plenty of diners Fowles, especially of Poppin-jayes, which are not like to ours. From hence you come vino the Ocean, where on an Iland is leated, a Citic called Ormus, whereto many Mer-Parras. chants refort, bringing Spices, Pearles, precious Stones, cleath of Gold and Silkes, and Elephants teeth, and all other precious things from India. That Citie is a great Mart, having Cities and Caftles under it, and is head of the Kingdome Chermain: the King is called Ruchmedin Achomach, who yeelds obedience to the King of Chermain. He makes himselfe heyre, if any Merchant dyes there. In Summer they by reason of the heat betake themselves to their Garden houfes built on waters. And from nine till noone there blowes a winde with fuch extreame hear from the fands, that it swallowes up a mans breath and stifleth him, which makes them lye in 50 the water. The King of Chermain lent an Armie of fixteene hundred Horle, and five thousand Foot, against the Lord of Ormus for not paying his tribute, which were all surprised and shifted with that winde. The Inhabitants of the place eate no Bread made of Corne and flesh, but feed

with yron nayles (by reason that the wood is brittle and would cleaue) but with woodden pins, with certaine threds made of the shels of Indian Nuts. These shels are dressed after the manner of An outward Leather, out of the which, threds are cut, and of the thrids exceeding strong cordes are made, shell which which are able to indure the force and violence of the water, and are not easily corrupted there- groves your by. Those Ships have one Mast, one sayle, one beame, and are covered but with one decke. They are not chalked with Pitch, but with the Trane of Fishes. And when they crosse the Sea thready sub-60 to India, carrying Horses and other fraight with them , they lose many Ships, because that Sca flance. is very tempestuous, and the Ships are not strengthened with yron. The Inhabitants of that Countrey are blacke, and addicted to the Law of Mahumet. It is the custome of this Countrey, when any Master of a family dyeth, that the wife left behind him should mourne for him foure weekes, once a day. They have women which professe the practile of mourning and are thereto

hired to mourne daily for their dead.

vpon Dates, falt Fish, and Onions. They have not very found Ships : for they fasten them not Their Ships

which is Salt. bitter, laxatiue, greene

Going from Chermain in three dayes riding you come to a Defart, which continued till you come to Cobinam, feuen dayes Iourney, which is extended. In the first three dayes you shall have no water, faue a very few, and those salt and bitter, of a greene co lour in shew, as if it were the iuyce of Herbs: and whoso tasteth but a little thereof, cannot escape loosenesse of thebelly. The like also hapneth, if any taste the Salt made of that water. It is therefore needfull, that Trauellers carrie some water with them, if they will not be indangered through thirst. The beasts also which are compelled to drink that water, escape not without scouring. In the fourth day they to find a fresh River under ground: the three last dayes are as the first.

Cobinam. Tutia and Siedio.

Cobinam 15 a great Mahumetan Citie; goodly, and great Locking Glasses of Steele, are made there. Tutia also which cureth the eyes; and Spedio and that, after this manner. That Country hath Mines, out of which they digge Earth, which they boyle casting it into a fierie Fornace. an Iron grate receiving the ascending vapour from aboue, in the which, the conglutinated and clammie vapour becommeth Tutia. But the groffer matter remayning in the fire is called Specie. The Inhabitants of this Countrey, are followers of Mahumet.

A Defart of eight dayes lourney.

Leauing the Citie Cobinam, you meet with another Defart eight dayes Iourney in length, and in it there is great drynesse: it wanteth trees, and fruits, and waters which it hath are very bit. the territory beafts refuse to drinke them except they mixe meale therewith, and Tra-uellers carrie water with them. But having passed ouer this Defart, you came to the Kingdome 20 Timochaim.

Tree of Sun, 2 Ricci.

the state of the s The dry Tree. This tree is very great and thicke, and hath leaves, which on the one fide are white. and on the other fide greene. It produceth a prickly shales like those of a Chesnut, but nothing in them. The wood is folide and itrong, yellow like Boxe. There is no tree within one hundred miles, except on one fide, on which are trees within ten miles. In this place the Inhabitants fav. that Alexander the Great fought with Darius. The Cities are plentifull of good things, but Mahametan, and of temperate Aire. It hath also goodly men, but specially women, the most beautifull in my judgement in the World.

Mu'chet.

Mulehet is in Saracen Language, as much to fay as a place of Heretikes, and of this place they call the men Mulehetici, that is, Heretikes in their Law, as with vs Patarines. Hauing spoken of the Countrey, the old man of the Mountayne shall bee spoken of, of whom Marco heard much from many. His name was Aloadine, and was a Mahumetan. Hee had in a goodly old manof the Valley betwixt two Mountaynes very high, made a goodly Garden, furnished with the best trees and fruits he could find, adorned with divers Palaces and houses of pleasure, beautified with gold Workes, Pictures, and Furnitures of filke. Thereby divers Pipes answering divers parts of those Palaces were seene to runne Wine, Milke, Honey and cleere Water. In them hee had placed goodly Damofels skilfull in Songs and Instruments of Musicke and Dancing, and to make Sports and Delights vnto men what soeuer they could imagine. They were also fairely at- 40 make operes and seeings and were feene to goe continually sporting in the Garden and Palaces, tyred in Gold and Silke, and were feene to goe continually sporting in the Garden and Palaces, He made this Palace, because Mahomet had promifed such a sensuall Paradite to his deuous followers. No man might enter: for at the mouth of the Valley was a strong Castle, and the entrance was by a fecret passage.

Paradife.

* It is likely

that the Affa

fines mentio-

ned in the

Alaodine had certaine Youthes from twelue to twentie yeares of age, such as seemed of a hold and vindoubted disposition, whom hee instructed daily touching Mahomets Paradile, and how hee could bring men thither. And when he thought good, he caused a certaine Drinke to bee gie uen vnto ten or twelue of them, which caft them in a dead fleepe : and then hee caused them to be carryed into divers Chambers of the faid Palaces, where they faw the things aforefaid as foone as they awaked; each of them having those Damosels to minister Meates and excellent en Drinkes, and all varieties of pleasures to them; infomuch that the Fooles thought themselves in Paradiferindeed. When they had enioyed those pleasures foure or fine dayes, they were againe cast in a sleepe, and carryed forth againe. After which, hee caused them to be brought into his presence, and questioned where they had beene, which answered, by your Grace, in Paradise, and recounted before all, all before mentioned. Then the old man answered, This is the commandement of our Prophet, that who focuer defends his Lord, he make him enter Paradife : and if thou wile bee obedient to mee, thou shalt have this grace. And having thus animated them, hee was thought happie whom the old man would command, though it cost him his life: fo that other Lords and his Enemies were flaine by these his Assaires, which exposed themselves to all eight & ninth dangers, and contemned their lives. Hereupon hee was esteemed a Tyrant, feared in all those 60 parts; and had two Vicars one in the parts of Damafeo, and another in Coo diftan: which obserthis flock, Dis ned the same order with young men. Hee vied also to rob all which passed that way. Vlau in ciples of his
Smian Vicarior the yeare 1262 fent and befieged his Cattle, which after three yeares nege they tooke, thue him and ruined his Paradite, not being able for want of victuall to hold out longer.

¿. III.

of Sapurgan, Balac, Thaican, Scaffern, Balaxiam, Bascia, Chesmur. Vochan, Samarchan, Carchan, Peym, the dreadfull De-(art of Lop and Tanguth.



Eparting from the forefaid place, you come vnto a certayne Country pleafant enough, Large pleafa which hath Hils. Plaines, and excellent Pasture, and lastly, fruits in great plentie: Country, for the soyle thereof is very fruitfull. This continues fixe dayes, and then you enter a Defart of fortie or fiftie miles, without water. After this you come to the Citie A Defart,

Sapurgan, where plentie of all victuall is found : especially, Pompions the best in the World, Sapurgan.

fweet like Honey. Paffing from thence, we came vnto a certayne Citie, named Barach, which in times paft was great and famous, having fumptuous Marble Palaces: but now overthrowne by the Taxare. In this Citie they report, that Alexander tooke the Daughter of King Darins to wife. To this Citie (on the East and North-cast) continue the Confines of Persia. But it you goe from hence, and Balach, perha proceed betweene the East, and the North-east, you cannot finde any Habitation for two dayes in Sula, Journey : because the Inhabitans of the place having endured so many grievances by Theeses 20 and Robbers, are compelled to flye vnto the Mountaynes, to wit, places of more fafetie. Many waters are found there, and very much game of wild beafts: Lyons also are there. And because

Trauellers find no food in that lourney, they carrie victuals with them, which may fuffice them for two daves. That two dayes Journey ended, which we mentioned, we met with a certaine Castle, called Thracian-* Thaican; where is great plentie of Corne, and very goodly fields. The Mountaynes also on Salt-mous-

the South are high, some of which are of white and hard Salt, and the Inhabitants thirtie dayes taynes. Iourney about fetch it from thence, being the best World, so hard that they must breake it with Iron Instruments, fo much that the whole World may have sufficient Salt from thence. The other Mountaynes have store of Almonds and Pistaches. Going betweene the East and North-30 east from hence the Country is fruitfull, the Inhabitants Murtherers, Perfidious, Mahametans, Drunkards: Their Wine is boyled and excellent. They goe bare-headed, faue that the men bind up their heads with a certaine string of ten hanfuls long. But they make them clothing of the skinnes of the wilde beafts which they take, as Breeches and Shooes, and yie no other

After three dayes Iourney is the Citie Scaffem feated in a Plaine, and hath many Castle, in the Scaffem Mountaines round about it. A certaine great River a fo floweth through the middle thereof. There are many Porcupines in that Country, which they hunt with Dogges by the Hunters : Porcupines. and they contracting themselves with great furie, cast their prickly Quils against the men and Porci pings the Dogges, and wound them. That Nation bath a particular language: the sheepherds there-40 of abide in the Mountaynes, having made Caues for their Habitation. You goe hence three daies

Iourney without any Habitation at all, to the Prouince Balaxiam.

Balaxiam is a Mahametan Province, and hath a peculiar Language. Their Kings who fuc- Balaxiam ceed one another by hereditarie right, are reported to have derived their discent from Alexander the Great, and from the Daughter of Darius, and are called Zulcarnen, which is to fay, Alexander. There are found the Ballaffer, faire precious stones, and of great value. No man without danger of life, dare either digge fuch stones, or carrie them out of the Countrey, but with the licence and confent of the King : for all those stones are the Kings, and he sendeth them to whom he pleafeth, either for a Present, or payment of Tribute : he exchangeth also many for Gold and Siluer. And this hee doth left the stone whereof there is such plentie should become viler and 50 cheaper. Other Mountaynes also in this Province yeeld stones, whereof the best Azure is made, the like whereof is not found in the World. The Mines also yeeld Siluer great store, and Brasse and Lead. The Countrey it felfe is very cold. It hath many Horles, and those excellent, great, Couragious and fwift, which haue so hard and strong hooses on their feet, that they need no Iron Shooes, although they runne through Rockes. It is faid that not long fince there were Horses of the Race Busethalusof Alexanders Bucephalus, all with his forehead-marke, in the possession only of the Kings Vn- breed, cle, who was flaine for denying the King to have of them : whereupon his Widow in angry

spite destroyed the whole Race. There are also excellent Falcons. The soyle thereof beareth notable Wheate, and Barley without huskes, and Oyle made of Nuts and Sulimane, which is like to flaxe feed, more fauourie then other Oyle. There are strait passages and many stormie 60 places. The men are good Archers and Huntimen, clothed with beafts skinnes. The hils are fteepe and high, large plaines, Rivers alongst the ruptures; and if any have an Ague with abiding two or three dayes on the hils he recouereth , which Maco procued in himselfe after a yeares ficknesse. The women in the skirts of their Garments put sixtie or eightie yards of Cot-

ton, the greatest Bumsie Boncer seeming the goodliest Laste.

ð. III.

Bascia.

The Province Bascia is tendayes Journey toward the South, distant from the Countrey Balaxiam. And the Countrie it felfe is very hot : whereby it commeth to passe, that the people are browne; they are expert Magicians, and continually attend thereto. They have a peculiar Language ; and weare Golden and Siluer Eare-rings with Pearles and stones artificially wrought

chemur.

in them. They eate fi-sh and Rice, and are Idolaters, craftie and cruell. The Province Chefmar is fewen dayes Iourney diffant from Bascia. The Inhabitants thereof haue a peculiar Language, and are Idolaters; beyond all others cunning Inchanters, forcing their Idols to Speake, and darkning the day. They are the chiefest Idolaters, and Idols are descended from them. From thence you may goe to the Indian Sea. The men and women are browne, not wholly blacke, the heate some-what tempered : their food is flesh and Rice, yet are they excee- 10 ding leane. There are many Cities and Townes there. Their King is tributarie to none. There are certaine Heremites in this Prouince, who in Monasteries and Cels worthip Idols, honouring their Gods with great abstinence of meate and drinke, and obserue great Chastitie, are very cautelous not to offend their Idols, and live long. Of these are many Abbeyes, and the people give them great reuerence. The men of this Prouince kill no quicke creatures, and shed no bload: and if they will eate fielh, it is necessary that the Saracens which live amongst them, kill the

creature. Corall is here fold dearer then any where. Wee will leave the way to India now and

Vochan.

returne to Balaxiam and direct our way towards Caray, betwixt the East and North-east. Beyond Balaxiam is a certaine River, whereon stand many Castles and Villages belonging to the Kine of Balaxiams Brother : and after three dayes Iourney is the Province Vockan, having in 20 length and breadth three dayes Iourney. The Inhabitants thereof haue a peculiar Language, and worthip Mahumet. They are good Livers, flout Warriours, and good Hunters : for that Countrey aboundeth with wild beafts. If you depart hence betwixt the North-east and the East, you must ascend for three whole dayes together, vntill you come vnto an exceeding high Mountayne, then the which, there is faid to bee none higher in the World. There also betweene two Mountaynes, a great Lake if found, whence by a Plaine runneth a very goodly River, neere vnto

which are excellent Pastures, so that in them a leane Horse, or an Oxe, may bee fatted inten dayes. There is also plentie of wild beafts : especially, exceeding great wild sheepe, having hornee some of them fixe palmes or spans long, of the which they make divers kinds of vessels. That Plaine contayeth twelue dayes lourney in length, and is called Pamer; nor is there any humane Habitation there, and Trauellers must carry victuals with them. No Bird also appear reth there, by reason of the cold, and (it is reported for a Miracle) if fire be kindled there, it is not fo bright nor fo effectuall to boyle any thing, as in other places. From hence the way leadeth fortie dayes further, betweene the East and the North-east through the Mountaynes, Hils, and Valleyes, in the which many Rivers are found, but no humane habitation, nor any herbe : and the Countrey it felfe is called Beloro. Habitations of men are seene in the top of those high Mountaynes, but fuch as are fauage, wicked, Idolatrous; who line by hunting, and are clothed

After this you come to the Prouince Caschar, which is tributarie to the great Cham and a Ma-

humetan. In it are Vines greene Gardens, fruitfuil trees, Cotton, Flaxe, and Hempe, and a fertile 40

foyle. The Inhabitants have a peculiar Language, and are Merchants, and Artificers, who are

so couetous that they eate that which is bad, and drinke worse. Some Nestorian Christians are found there, who also have their Churches. The Countrey inlargeth it selfe five dayes Iourney. Samarchan is a great and famous Citie in that Gountrey, where are goodly Gardens and a fertile Plaine. It is lubic et to the Nephew of the Great Cham. In it the Christians dwell with the Saracens, whence little agreement is betwixt them. It is reported, that in this manner a Miracle hapned, the brother of Great Cham, named Zagatai, gouerned that Countrey, about one hundred yeares agoe, being perswaded to become a Christian, the Christians through his fauour built a Church, in honour of Saint Iohn Baptist, with fuch cunning that the whole Roofe thereof, was supported by one Pillar in the midit, under which was set a square stone, which by fa- 50 uour of their Lord was taken from a building of the Saracens. Zagathais Sonne succeeded after his death in the Kingdome, but not in the faith : from whom the Saracens obtayned that the Christians should be compelled to restore that stone. And when they offered a sufficient valuable price, the Saracens refused to receive any other composition then the stone. But the Pillar listed Vp it felfe, that the Saracens might take away their stone, and so continueth.

Carchan.

Wennes by the Alpes. Cotam the

Nestorian Christians dwell. They are great Artificers, and have most of them great legges, and a happen also in great Wenne or Bunch in the throat, by reason of the waters which they drinke. The Prouince Cotam tolloweth betweene the East and the North-east. It is subject to the Dominion of the Nephew of Great Cham, and hath many Cities and Townes. The chiefe Citie thereof is called Cotam. The Province is extended eight dayes lourney in length. There is no want therein of any thing, appertaying to the maintenance of life. It hath plencie of Cot-

Departing againe from this Citie, you come into the Prouince Charchan, about fine dayes

Iourney in length. This Prouince hath plentie of all victuals, beeing subject to the Dominion of the Nephew of Great Cham. The Inhabitants worthip Mahumer, yet among them certaint ton, Flaxe, Hempe, Corne, and Wine. But the people are not warlike, yet good Artificers and Merchants. They acknowledge Mahumet.

Proceeding further through the fame Countrey, you meet with the Prouince Peim, extended Prim, five dayes lourney in length. It is subject to Great Can, and hath many Cities and Cattles. The chiefe Citie thereof is called Peim, neere which runneth a River, wherein precious stones are found, to wit, lasper stones and Chalcedonie. The Inhabitants of the Countrey worship Mahumet, and are Artificers and Merchants. There is a custome in this Prouince, that when any marryed man goeth into another place and returneth not home within twentie dayes, it shall Adulterous be lawfull for the Wife to marrie another Husband, and the men also whereforeuer they goe doe custome. 10 the like. All those Prouinces aforefaid, to wit, Caschar, Cotam, Peim, to the Citie of Lop, are in Great Tarkie,

the bounds of Great Turkie. Ciarcian is subject to the Tartars, the name of the Province and chiefe Citie, it hath many Ciarcian.

Cities and Castles. Many precious stones are found there in the Rivers, especially Iaspers and Chalcedonies, which Merchants carrie even to Ouchach to fel, and make great gain. From Peim to this Province, and quite thorow it also, it is al Sand, with many bad waters and few good, When any Armie passeth through this Prouince, all the Inhabitants thereof with their Wiues, Children, Cattel, and all their houshold stuffe, flie two dayes lourny into the fands, where they know

good waters are, and stay there : and carrie their Corne thither also to hide it in the fands after Harvest for like teares. The wind doth so deface their steps in the land, that their Enemies can-20 not find out their way. Departing from this Prouince, you are to travell five dayes Iourney thorow the fand, where no other water almost then that which is bitter is to be found, vntill youcome vnto the Citie named Lop. Lop is a great Citie, from whence is the entrance of a great Defart, called also Lop, seated be- Lop. tweene the East and the North-east. The Inhabitants are Mahumetans, subject to the Great Delartof Lon

Can. In it Merchants who defire to paffe ouer the Defart, cause all necessaries to be prouided for them. And when victuals beginne to faile in the Defart, they kill the Affes and Camels and eate them. They most willingly vie Camels, because they are sustayned with little meate, and beare great burthens. They must provide victuals for a moneth to crosse it ouer-thwart; for to goe thorow the length, would aske a yeares time. They goe thorow the fands and barren Mountaines, 30 and daily find water, yet is it iometimes to little, that it can fearfly fuffice fiftie or one hundred men with their beafts: and in three or foure places the water is falt and bitter : the rest (which arceight and twentie) good. In it are neither beafts nor birds. They lay that there dwell many Illusions of

spirits which cause great and meruailous Illusions to Trauellers to make them perish. For if any Deuils, It is flay behind that he cannot fee his company, he shall be called by name, and to going out of the meth that the way is loft. In the night they heare the noyle as it were of a company, which taking to bee not then four theirs they perish likewise. Other apparances as of their companions, or of enemies have out, which caused some to miscarrie. Consorts of Musicall Instruments are sometimes heard in the Ayre, later times likewise Drummes, and noyses of Armes. They goe therefore neere together, hang Bels on their farts as ind

beafts neckes, and let markes if any flay. 40 Having passed over the Defart, you come vnto the Citie Sachion, betwixt the East and North- Sachion east, subject to the Great Can, in the Province of Tanguth , where among the Worthippers of Tanguth. Mahumet, a few Nestorian Christians are found. Many Idelaters are also there, who have their proper Language. The Inhabitants of this Citie, live not of Merchandize, but the fruits of the Earth. This Citie hath many Monasteries, confecrated to divers Idols, in the which many Sa-

crifices are offered, and great renerence. And when a Sonne is borne vnto a man, hee prefently commendeth him to some Idoll, and in bonour thereof, nourisheth a sheepe that yeere in his house, which he presenteth before it together with his Sonne, the next Festivall Day of that The Sacrific Idoll, with many Ceremonies and great reuerence. Afterward the flesh of the sheepe is boyled, or the Birth and left to long before the Idell, while their Prayers are finished, which they make for the con-50 feruation of their Sonne, and the Idoll hath fucked out the fauour of the meate, after which their fancie all his kindred being gathered together, eate that flesh at home with great deuotion and joy : but orderly keepe the bones in certayne veffels. The Prietts have the feete, head, inwards, skinne, and some part of the fiesh for their spare. In celebrating the Funerals of such as Funerall. were of effeeme, the dead bodies are burned after this manner. The kindred fend for the Aftro- Aftrojoger

logers, and tell them what yeare, moneth, day, and houre, hee who dyed was borne: who per-

not, they referue the dead bodie fometimes feuen dayes, and fometimes like monethes, preparing a Cheft for it at home, and ioyning the fides together with fuch cunning Art, that no stinke can issue forth. They also imbalme the bodie it selfe with Spices, and couer the Chest fairely pain-60 ted with a costly cloth: and enery day that the dead corps is kept at home, at the houre of Dinner, a Table is prepared neere the Cheft, fetting wine and meate thereon for the space while one might well eate a mealef-meat, supposing that the soule of the dead, feedeth of the sauour thereof. The Aftrologers sometime forbid to carrie it forth at the chiefe gate, pretending some dilaftrous ftarres thereto, and cause them to carrie it out another way, and sometimes breake the

ceiuing the constellation, declare the day when hee is to be burned : fo that when the Planet fits

wall which is opposite to that place which the Planet makes more luckie; for otherwise the foints departed would bee offended and hurt those of the house. And if any such eaill happen. they afcribe it to the dead thus wronged. When the bodie is carryed through the Citie to be burned without, woodden Cottages are erected in the way, with a porch couered with Silkes. in which they fet the bodie, and fet before it Bread, Wine, and Fleth, and Delicate Cates, fuppoling the spirit to be refreshed therewith, which must bee presently present at the burning of

And when they come vnto the place of burning, they write and paint vpon Papers made of the barkes of Trees, the Images of Men and Women, Hories, Camels, Money, and Garments. (All the Instruments of the Citie meane-while refounding) all which are burned together with 10 the dead bodie. For they fay, that that dead man shall have so many Men-servants, and Mayd-seruants, Cattell, and Money, in another life, as refemblances, and Pictures were burned together with him, and shall perpetually live in that honour and riches,

The Province Chamul lyeth in the great Province Tanguth, subject to the Great Can, having many Cities and Townes: the chiefe Citie is called Chamal. The Land butteth vpon two Defarts, to wit, the great Defart, whereof wee haue spoken before, and a certaine other, thatis leffe, of three dayes Iourney. It aboundeth with fuch things, which a man needeth for the fuftentation of life. The Inhabitants are Idolaters, haue a peculiar Language, and feeme to bee borne for none other purpose, but to apply themselues to sporting, singing, dancing, writing and reading after their fashion, playing on Instruments, and to give themselves delight. When any Traueller passing by, turneth into any mans house for entertaynment, the Master of the Family 20 receiueth him with great ioy, and commandeth his Wife and all the Family, that they as long as he will abide with them, obey him in all things. In the meane space, he departeth not to returne folong as the Guest remayneth in his house. And meane-while hee lyeth with the Wife. Daughter, and the rest, as with his owne Wines. The women of that Country are beautifull. and readie to obey all those Commandements of their Husbands, who are so beforted with this folly, that they thinke it a glorious thing for them, and acceptable to their Idols, for which they prosper with plentie of all things. Mangu Can having heard of this folly, commanded them to oblerue this deteltable custome no longer; which they did about three yeares, and then seeing not their wonted fertilitie, and troubled with some Domesticall crosses, sent Ambassadours to 30 the Can, and instantly entreated, that he would reuoke so grieuous an Ediot, and not abolish that Tradition which they had received from theif Elders. The Can answered, seeing you defire your

reproch and shame, let it be granted you. Goe and doe herein after your wont. The Messegra

returning with this Antwer, brought great toy to all the people: this cultome is observed by that

After the Province of Camul, followeth the Province of Chinchintalas, which on the North boundeth vpon the Defart, and is fixteene dayes Journey in length, subject to the Dominion of Great Cham, It hath Cities and many Castles. The people thereof are divided into three Sects. is not in Rama.

Some few acknowledge Chrift, and thefe are Noftwians: others worthin Mahumet, the third. adore Idols. In this Prouince there is a Mountaine where are Mines of Steele and Andanicum, 40 and also Salamanders, of the which cloth is made, which, if it bee cast into the fire, cannot bee 1559) yet isit and an observation of the Earth in this manner (as one of my companions, a Turke named sureifar, a man indued with singular industrie, informed me) who had the charge of the the Prouinces Minerals in that Prouince. A certaine Minerall of Earth is found in that Mountayne, which weeldeth threeds, not valike to Wooll, which being dryed in the Sunne, are bruifed in a brazen And I have not Morter, and afterward washed, and whatsoever earthy substance cleaveth vnto them, is taken And I mue not a little trauel. away: laftly, those threeds so purged and made small, are spunne like other Wooll, and wouen led in Trauel. into cloth. And when they will whiten those clothes, they cast them into the fire for an houre, and then they are taken out of the flaming fire vnhurt, whiter then Snow. After the like manner they clenie them, when they have taken any spots : for no other washing is added to them, 52 befides the fire. But touching the Salamander, the Serpent, which is reported to line in the fire, I could fearth out nothing in the East Countries. They fay, there is a certay ne Napkin at Rome, wife to my wouen of the Salamander, wherein the Handkerchiefe of the Lord is kept wrapped vp, which throwes, which a certayne King of the Tartars fent unto the Bishop of Rome.

After you are past this Prouince, you go betwixt the East and North-east ten dayes Journey. in which few Habitations or things remarkable are found; and then you come to the Prouince Succuir, which hath many Habitations and Townes. The chiefe Citie thereof is called Succuir. Rhubarbe. Of In this Prouince, among many Idolaters, a few Christians are found: they are subject to the Great Can. They apply not themselves to Merchandize, but live of the fruits of the Earth. hath guen a large di course. The best Raubarbe is found in great quantitie in this Prouince, which is carryed thence by Mer- 60 trom the Rela- chants, to divers parts of the World, Strangers dare not go to the Mountaynes where it growes, tion of Chaggi by reason of venemous herbs, which if their beasts should eate them would lose their hooses; but ateraty which those of that Country know and anoyd them. The generall name of this Province, and of the two following is Tanguth.

Bawdes to their owne Wines.

Kind Cuck-

haue (printed

this Salamander, but haue little;no Midthat conceir.

Campion is a great Citie, the principall in the Countrey of Tanguth. In it are Christians Comic-(which have there three great and faire Churches, Mahametans, and Idolaters. The Idolaters Christian haue many Monasteries, where they worship their Idols. Moreoner, those Idols are made ei- Councides. ther of flone, wood, or clay, some ouer-layed with gold, and very artificially wrought. Among Idoitrous thefe, fome are fo great, that they contayne ten paces in length, faitned to the earth, as if they Monafernes, lay veright, neere vinto the which, little Idols are placed, which feeme to give reverence to the kinds.

greater, and both are much reverenced. The Religious men feeme to live more honefully then other Idolaters, abstayning from certaine things, as Lecherie, and other things; alchough Lecherie feemes no grieuous finne : for they fay, if a woman feekes for loue to a man, he may vie her 10 without finne, but not, if he feekes first to her. They reckon the whole circuit of the yeere by The vecre of Moones. In these Moones, they observe five, or foure, or three dayes, wherein they kill no Beath, the Moone, or Bird, nor eat Flesh (as is the vie with vson Friday, Saturday, and Vigils.) The Lay-men Their many marrie twentie or thirtie wives, as they are able to maintayne : yet the first is accounted the wives. more worthie, and more legitimate. The husband receiueth no downe from the wife, but hee himselfe assigneth convenient dowrie, in Cattell, servants, or money, according to his abilitie. If the wife become hatefull to the husband, it is lawfull for him to divorce her from him, as he pleafeth. They take for wines their Kinf-women or Mothers in law. Marco, together with his Father, and Vncle, remayned a yeeres space in this Citie, for the dispatch of certaine affaires.

From the Citie Campion, you goe twelue dayes journey to the Citie Ezina, bordering vpon a Egina. 20 Sandy Desart towards the North, contayned in the Province of Tanguth. Many Camels are there, and many other beafts; and Hawkes of divers kinds. The Inhabitants are Idolaters, living of the fruits of the Earth, forbearing merchandife.

8. IIII.

of Carchoran, the Original, proceedings and exploits of the Tartars; of Priest IOHN and his discendants. Customes of the Tartars. Of Bargu, Erginul, Xandu the Cans Citie and Palace; of Muske: of Strange Sorcerers, and austere Monkes.

LI the Prouinces and Cities aforefaid, Sachion, Chemul, Chiuchitalas, Succein, Campion, and Ezina, pertayne to Tanguib. Having palled over the foresaid Desart, you come vnto the Citie Carcheram, which is in circuit three miles, ftrongly rampierd with Carcheran, vid. earth, for they want stone. Neere it is a great Castle, and in it the Gouernors faire corum-Palace. This was the first place neere which in old times the Tartars affembled themselves. And The original now we will declare how they began to raigne. They dwelt in the North parts, to wit, in Cior- of the Domi-24 and Baren, where are many and great Playnes without Cities and Townes, but goodly Pa- nion of the theres, Rivers and waters. They had not a Prince of their Nation, but payed tribute to a certayne Tailars. great King, named as I have heard, in their language Vmcan, which in some mens opinion in our 40 tongue fignifieth, Prefbyter (or Prieft) lobn. To him the Tartars gaue yeerely the tenths of all their bealts. In processe of time, the Tartars so encreased in multitudes, that V mean was afraid of them, and thought to disperse them into severall parts of the world. And therefore when any rebelled he fent three or foure of an hundred of the Tarrars into those parts, so diminishing their power; and the like he did in his other occasions, deputing some of their principals to that purpose. They seeing their ruine intended and loth to be separated one from another, went from

might befafe, and denyed to Vmcan their wonted Tribute. It hapned that about An. 1162. the Tartars having continued some time in those parts, chose a King among themselues, a wife and valiant man, named Cingis Can. He began to reigne with 50 fuch justice, that he was beloued and feared of all as a God rather then a Prince, infomuch that his fame brought all the Tartars in all parts to his subjection. And hee seeing himselfe Lord of so valiant men would needs leave those Desarts, and commanding them to provide Bowes and other weapons, began to subdue Cities and Prouinces, in which Conquetts hee placed such suit Governours, that the people were not offended. The chiefe of them hee carried alongst with him with great prouitions and gifts. Seeing therefore that he was advanced to fo great glorie, and The fruit of a power, he fent Embassadors politikly to Umcan to intreate, that he would bestow his daughter wilde gouernvpon him to be his wife, Which he taking, in very euill part, answered with indignation, and reiecting the Embassadors of Cingis, said, doth my servant demand my daughter? Get ye out of my fight and tell your Master, if he euer make such demand againe, I will make him die a miserable cingis goeth

the places where they dwelt to the Defart towards the North, where by remotenesse they

60 death. But King Cinges, leuving a great Armie, went forth with an hottile minde, and incamped forth against in a certaine great Plaine, named Tandac, lending vnto the King, and fignifying vnto him, that he Umcan. fhould defend himfelfe. But he, comming with a mightie Armie, deteended to the Playnes, and pitched his Tents within ten miles of the Campe of the Tartars. Then Cingis commanded his with the Ma-Aftrologers to flew him, what event and fucceffe the battell should have. They cutting a Reed gicians.

Hee vanquithat the Encmie by warre.

H - dieth with the flor of an ALCOM. Chais an. Cwi Can. Estina Can. Era Con. Swan " Cin. Cabla: Can. All tithe Se-Kings of the Tartars. Their cruell cultome of The marria-

ges of the

Their ub-

The Tartars

lengthwife in two parts, fet the pieces themselves into the ground, and wrote vpon the one. Cineis ; and on the other, Vmc.m; and faid vnto the King : In the meane space, while we reade the Conjurations, it shall come to paffe by the Idols power, that these two parts of the Reed thall fight together: And whose part shall ascend upon the other, that King shall obtaine victorie in the battell. The multitude therefore running together to behold that spectacle, the Aftrologers beganne to mumble their prayers, and reade their inchantments, when prefently the parts of the Reed being moued, fought together, vntill at length the part of Circle alcended vpon the part of Umcan. Which being feene, the Tartars affured of the fittere victorie, were encouraged to the battell, and Umcan being flavne, the Victorie, and Ringdome, and Tomesane daughter remayned to Cingis. Cingis raigned fixe yeeres after this, in the which hee got many to Prouinces : and lattly, when he endeuoured to winne a certaine Cattle, called Thaigin, and came fomewhat neere, being fhot in the knee with an Arrow, he died, and was buried in the Moun-

The first King of the Tartars, was called Cingis; the fecond, (yn (an; the third, Bathyn Can; the fourth, Elu Can; the fifth, Mangu Can; the fixth Cublai Can, whose power is greater then all his Predeceffors, having inherited theirs, and adding by Conquest in manner the rest of the World. For he lived neere fixtie yeeres in his Government. The name Car fignifieth Emperor. All the great Cans, and Princes of that bloud of Cingis, are carried to the Mountaine of Aliai to be buried, whereforeur they die, although one hundred dayes journey from it. And they which pulcher of the carrie the Corpfe to the buriall, kill all those that they meet in the way, saying : goe, and serue 20 our Lord the King in another life. They kill also the better Horses. When the bodie of great Cham Mongu, the Predecessor of Cham Cublai, was brought vinto the Mountaine Altai to bee buried, the Souldiers accompanying the funerall, are reported to have flayne aboue ten thousand men, youn the forelaid occation.

The Tartarean women are most faithfull to their husbands. Adulterie is a great shame with them : yet it is accounted lawfull, and honest, that every one may marrie as many wives as he is able to maintavne although the first be judged to be more principall and honorable then the rest. Womens con- Their live together in the same house without one ill word, in admirable concord, make their merchandifes, buy, and fell, and chaffer all things necessarie to their husbands and housholds, the men medling with nothing but their hunting, hawking, and things pertayning to Armes. They 30 haue the best Falcons in the World, and so they have of Dogs. They live onely of Flesh and Milke, and what they take in hunting. They eat Horses, Camels, Dogs, if fat; and drinke Mares milke , called Chemurs, fo vied , that it is like white " Wine. If the father dies, the forme may have all his wives except his owne mother and fifters. So, the brother being dead, it is lawfull for the brother who remayneth aline, to marrie the widdow of the brother. The husbands receive no dowrie from the wives, but they themselves affigne dowry to the wives, and their mothers. Through the multitude of wives , the Tartars have many children. Nor is the multitude of Wives very burdenfome vnto the Tartars, feeing they gaine much through their labours. Befides, they are very carefull for the gouernement of the familie, and preparation of food: and with no leffe care, execute the other duties of the house. But the men apply them- 40 felies wholly to hunting, fowling, and exercise of Armes. The Tartars nourish many herds of Oxen, flocks of Sheepe, and other Beafts, and Cattell, and abide with them in places of Paflure, in the Summer time, in the Mountaines, and colder places, where they finde Pathure and Wood: but in the Winter, they remove vnto the hotter Countreyes, where they finde Paffure for their Cattell : and goe forth-on two or three moneths together. Their houses are covered with flickes and felts, ordinarily round, which they carrie with them on Carts or Waggons of foure wheeles, whitherfocuer they goe. For they can fold and extend them, fet them yo, and take them downe : and they turne the doore of them alwaies to the South. They have also neat Carts of two wheeles (couered with Felt fo well that rayne cannot pierce them) drawne by Oxen, and Camels, wherein they carrie their wives, children, and necessarie houshold-stuffe 50 with them, and defend them from the injurie of foule weather, and rayne.

The Tartars, if they be rich, are clothed with Sables, Ermins, and Cloth of gold, and all their furniture is coftly. Their Armes are Bowes, Swords, Polaxes, and some Lances, but they can best vie their Bowes, whereto they are vied from their childhood. They are hardie, valorous, cruell, will continue two dayes and nights on horse-backe armed; exceeding patient of difficul-

ties, and exceeding obedient to their Lords. Their Cattell also are hardie. The Law and Faith of the Tartars is this. They fay, that there is a great God, high and heauenly, of whom with daily incenfe they defire good understanding and health. They have another, which they call Natigay, which is like an Image couered with Felt, or some other thing, which every one hath in his house. To this God they make a wife and children, placing the 60 wises Image at the left hand, and the representations of children before his face. This they call, The God of earthly things, which keepeth their Children, and their Beafts, and Corne ; and give it great reverence. Before they eat themselves, they amoint the mouthes of the Images with the fat of the fodden Flesh, and they cast the broth out of doores, in honour of other

Spirits, faying, that their God with his familie haue had their part; and after they eate and drinke at pleafure.

If the forme of any Tartar die, who hath not yet beene married, and also the daughter of another die vinarried, the parents of both the deceated parties meet together, and make a mar- Painted Marriage betweene the dead: and making a draughter in writing, of that contract, they paint men riages. and women for feruants, Horses and other creatures, with clothes of all forts and moneyes, in paper, and burne them together with the writing of contract; by the fumes whereof, they fav

that all these things are carried to their children in another world, where they are married, and the fathers and mothers thinke they are lowned together through fuch a bond of affinitie, as if thole marriages had beene celebrated, while the married couple yet lined.

When the Tartars goe to warre, their Prince conducteth about one hundred thousand Horse, Their war-fare appointing Heads ouer tens, hundreds, thoulands, ten thoulands, by which orderly subordination, commands are easily effected. Euery hundred is called a Tuc; ten, a Toman. When they fer forthithey fend our men every way, as Scouts that no Enemie may affault them vinpromitted. Of Horse and Mares, there are for every man about eighteene. They carrie also their like Felt houses under the which they shelter themselves in the time of rayer. When there falls out 20 fome important employment, they will ride ten dayes together without victuals boyled, and live of the bloud of their Horfes, cutting a veyne and fucking it. They have Milke dryed like Patte, which they make, boyling the Milke, and taking the Creame which fwims on the top, put it in another vessell, and thereof make Batter: After, they let the Milke in the Sunne and drie it: and when they goe in the Armie carrie ten pounds thereof, and every morning take halfe a pound, and put it into a little Flaske or Bottle of Leather, with as much water as he pleafeth : which while he rides, beats together : and this is his dinner. When they encounter with their Enemies, they ride here and there shooting, and sometimes make shew of slight, shooting as they flee, and finding the Enemies broken, redintegrate their forces, and purfue the victorie: haning their Horses at command, with a signe to turne any way. But now the Tartars are mixed 30 in divers parts, and fo are their fashions.

They punish malefacters after this manner. If any steale a thing of small value, and hath not The muld or deferued to be deprined of life, he is feauen times beaten with a Cudgell, or feauenteene, or fea- Penaltic of uen and twenty, or thirty feauen, or forty and feauen, guing the strokes according to the meafure and qualitie of the offence, and that wnto an hundred; fome doe often times dye, through the heards of these strokes. But if any haue stollen an Horse, or another thing, for the which hee deserueth to Castella dye, he is cut afunder with a Sword in the middle : but if hee will redeeme his life, he shall reffore the theft nine fold. Such as have Horses, Oxessor Camels, brand them with their markes. and fend them to the pattures without a keeper.

Leauing the Citie of Carachoran, and the Mountaine Altai, you come vnto the champaine Baren, 40 Countrey of Bargu, which extendeth it felfe Northwards about fixtie dayes journey in length, The Inhabitants of those places are Meriti, and they are fubicet to great Chan, whing the manners of the Tartars. They are wilde men, and eate the flesh of Beafts which they take by hunting, especially of Stagges, whereof they have great plentie, and they make them so tame, that Strange Falthey may ride them. They want Corne and Wine. In the Summer they exercise great hun-cons ting and taking of wilde Beasts and Fowle, with the flesh whereof they may live in the winter: This is either a For in Winter, as well fowle as other living creatures flie from thence, by reason of the exceeding and vntolerable cold of that Countrey. After the end of fortie dayes iourney, you come hardly credivnto the Ocean, neere which is a Mountaine where After, and strange Falcons breed, which are ble. carryed thence vnto the Court of great Chan,

50 Heere we mult returne vnto the Citie Campion. If therefore you proceed further fine dayes Ni tht walking iourney from the Citie Campion towards the East, (in the places lying in the middle, horrible E-grade voyces of Deuts are heard in the night time) you come to the Kingdome Erginal, in the Prouince of Tangut, fubicetto the great Cham. In this Kingdome are many other Kingdomes which are Idolators. There are some Nestorian Christians, and Turkes. There are many Cities and Ca-Bles, of which Erginal is chiefe. From hence, if you proceed further to the Southeast, you may Cathal, goe to the parts of Cathai, going Southeast towards Cathai, there is a certaine famous Citie vamed Cingur, (the name also of the Province) tributarie vnto great Chan : contained in Tangut : the people are some Christians, some Mahumetans, others Idolators. Their are also found wilde Oxen, neere as great as Elephants, very faire, having white and blacke havre, thort in

60 other parts, and on the shoulders three palmes long, fine and white beyond silke : of which Other parts, and on the inconcers since painted song, and and and of the leaves brought fome to Venice as a rare thing. Many also of these Oxen are tamed, and made to of the bigness. engender with tame Kine, and the breed of them are fitter for bufineffe then any other creatures, of the bane, beare great burthens are yoaked to the plow, and doe twife as much as others. The best Muske in the world is found in this Prouince, and is of a goodly beast of the bignesse of a Goat, haung Maske. groffe hayre like a Stagge, feet and tayle like a Gazella but without hornes; it hath foure teetin, two aboue, and two beneath, of the length of three fingers, fubtle, and white as luorie, and is a faire beaft to fee to, when the Moone is at full, neare the naull under the belly there growes

80

to this beaft an impostume or bladder full of blood, and at the full then they goe to hunt the faid beafts and take away that swelling, which is dryed in the Sunne, and is the best Muske : the fieth alio is good to eate. Mafter Marco brought to Venice the head and feet of this beaft dryed The men hue of Merchandise and Arts, and have aboundance of Corne : they are Idolaters, of a fat body and a little Noie, blacke hayred, having no beard but foure hayres on their chin Require prefer. The women are faire and white. And when the mendefire to marry wives, they rather feeke redbe ore No- the beautifull, then the noble or rich. Whereby it commeth often to palle, that a great and Noble man marryeth a poore wife, but beautifull, affigning dowrie to her mother there. This Prouince extendeth it felfe fiue and twentie dayes journey in length, and is very fertile. In it are exceeding great Feafants, having traynes eight or ten handfuls long. Many other kindes of 10 Birds are also found there, which have very goodly feathers, diffinguished with divers and ev-

Egrezaia.

Proceeding further towards the East, after eight dayes journey, you meet with the Propince Egrigaia, in the which are many Cities and Castles, all still in Tangush. The principall Citie is called Calacia. The Inhabitants thereof are Idolaters, there are three Churches of Nefferian Christians, and are subiect to the great Chan. In the Citie Calacia, Chamlets are made, wouen of white wooll and the hayre of Camels, then the which, there are scarce any fairer found

Going to the East from the Province Egrigaia, the way leadeth vnto the Province Tenduch. in the which are many Cities and Cafiles : where also Presbyter lobannes vieth to abide, who 20 now payeth tribute to great Chan. This King of that progenie of Priest Iohn is named George. and is a Priest and a Christian, and most of the people are Christians. All the Great Chans, after his death who was slaine in battell by Cingus, gaue their Daughters to those Kings to wife. This King George holds not all that Priest John before held, and is the fourth of that progenie. There is a Nation there called Argon, more goodly men and fitter for Merchandife then the rest, descended of Idolaters and Mahumetans. There are also two Regions where they raigne. Gog and Magog which in those parts are called Og and Magog, but they which dwell there call them Vng and Mongul: in Ung are Gog, and in Mongul the Tartars. Riding East feauen dayes towards Catar.

Idifa. Cianganor. Fiue forts of

are many Cities peopled with Idolaters, Mahumetans, and Nestorians. There is one Citie called Sindicin, where very faire and excellent Armes are made of divers forts, fit for Armies. In the 30 mountaines of this Prouince are great Mines of filter, and manifold game of wilde beafts, and the Countrey of the mountaines is called Idfa. Three dayes journey diffant from the forefaid Citie. flandeth another Citie langamur, that is White Lake, wherein is a Palace, in which the great Chan most willingly remaineth, because there are many Lakes and rivers, many Swannes, and in the plaines, Cranes, Feafants, and Partridges, and store of other fowle. There are fine forts of Cranes there : some haue blacke wings like Crowes, others are white and bright, hauing their feathers full of eves like Peacocks, but of a golden colour, the necke blacke and white very beautifull; a third fort of bigneffe not valike ours; a fourth, little and very faire, intermingled with red and blew colours; the fifth, of a grizell or gray colour, having red and blacke heads, and thefe are very great. And neere vnto this Citie lyeth a certaine valley where many Cottages are, in the which 40 an exceeding number of Partridges is maintained, which are kept for the King, comming to lodge there for a time. This Citie is three dayes iourney Northeastward to the Citie Xandu, which the great Chan

Cublay now raigning built; erecting thereing a maruellous and artificiall Palace of Marble and o-

Munting with

A goodly house of plea-

ther stones, which abutteth on the wall on one side, and the midst of the Citie on the other. He included fixteene miles within the circuit of the wall on that fide where the Palace abutteth on the Citie wall, into which none can enter but by the Palace. In this inclosure or Parke are goodly meadowes, fprings, rivers, red and fallow Deere, Fawnes carryed thither for the Hawkes, (of which are there mewed aboue two hundred Gerfalcons which he goeth once a weeke to fee) and he often vieth one Leopard or more, fitting on Horses, which hee ie: teth vpon the Stagges 50 and Deere, & having taken the beaft, giveth it to the Gerfalcons, and in beholding this spectacle he taketh wonderfull delight. In the middest in a faire Wood hee hath built a royall House on pillars gilded and vernished, on every of which is a Dragon all gilt, which winderh his tayle about the pillar, with his head bearing up the loft, as also with his wings displayed on both sides: the couer also is of Reeds gilt and varnished, so that the rayne can doe it no iniurie, the reeds being three handfuls thicke and ten yards long, fplit from knot to knot. The house it selfe also may be fundred, and taken downe like a Tent and erected againe. For it is fullained, when it is fet vp, with two hundred filken cords. Great Chan vieth to dwell there three moneths in the yeare, to wit, in Iune, Iuly, and August. On the eight and twentieth day of August, he departeth to make a folemne facrifice. He hath an herd of white Horses, and white Mares, about ten thou- 60 fund of the milke whereof none may drinke except hee be of the progenie of Cingis Can, except one family called Boriat, priviledged hereto by Cingis for their valour. And these beatts as they goe vp and downe feeding are much renerenced, nor dare any goe before them or hinder their way. The Aftrologers or Sorcerers tell Chan that on the twentie eight of the Moone of August,

he should disperse that milke heere and there, for the honour of all spirits and his Idols, that they might be carefull preferiers of all those things which he possesses.

There are two forts of Idolaters, Sorcerers called Thebeth and Chefmir, which in the midft of The Kines formes ascend the Palace and fuffer no rayne to fall thereon; which they make the people be- Magiciansleene comes to palle by their fanctitie : and therefore they goe flouenly and regardleffe of their persons, neuer washing nor combing themselves. They also have a horrible custome to dresse and eare fuch as are comdemned to death, but not those which dve naturally. They are called also Bachfi, which is the name of their Order, as Friers Predicants or Minors with vs. They feeme by Magicke to doe what they lift, when the great Can in his Hall fits at his Table, which is 10 eight yards high : and in the midft of the hall a good distance from the table is a great Cupboard

of plate furnished: They cause that the peeces full of Wine or Milke or other viands of themfelues, fill the goblets without any hand touching them, and goe ten paces in the ayre into the great Cans hand; and when he hath drunke, returne to their place. This they doe in the prefence of any man, when their Lord commands. These Bachfi also when they will make feaths to their Idols, goe to the Can and fay; Sir know that if our Idols be not honoured with Sacrifices, they will bring plagues to Corne and Bealts. And therefore wee pray you to give the fielh of fo many Sheepe with blacke heads, and fo many pounds of Incense and Lignum aloes, that we may make them due facrifice and honour. This they spake not to him themselves, but by certaine Lords deputed to that Office, who speake to the Can and obtaine it. On the feath day they o facrifice the faid beafts, and fprinkle the broath before the Idels,

They have great Monatteries some of the big nesse of a Citie, in some of which are about two thousand Monkes which serve Idols, sequestred from the Laitie in their shaving and garments. Shavings For they thaue their heads and beards, and were a religious garment. These in the folemnities of their Idols fing with folemne fongs and lights, some of them may marry. There are some of great abitinence called Sensim, leading an auftere life, for they eate nothing but Meale mingled with water till all the Flower be gone, and eate the branne without any fauour. These worthin the Fire; and the men of other rules fay that these which are so austere, are Heretikes against their Law, because they worthip not Idols as they doe; and there are great differences betwixt them : and these marry not in any case. They shaue their Head and Beard : they weare blacke 20 hempen garments, and bright yellow. They fleepe in thicke Mats, and line the feuerest life

ò. V.

Of CVBLAICAN, his Raigne and Acts, Magnificent feasts and Huntines. Court and Counfell. His Citie Cambalu and glorious

Nthis Booke I purpose to write of all the great and maruellous Acts, of the present Heère begins Can called Cublai Can, which is in our Tongue Lord of Lords, the greatest Prince the second in peoples, Cities and Treatures, that euer was in the world. Hee being discended Booke of Marfrom the Progenie of Chingis, the first Prince of the Tartars, is the fixth Emperour which I thought of that Countrey, beginning to raigne in the yeare of our Lord 1256. being twentie leaven good to adueryeares old, and ruling the people with great wifedome and grautie. He is a valiant man, exer- use the Res-

cifed in Armes, ftrong of bodie, and of a prompt minde for the performance of matters, before der as for the he attained to the dignitie of the Empire (which by his wissome he did against the will of his Laire and Re-Brethren) he often shewed himselfe a valiant Souldier in the warres, and carryed himselfe like mule so differ, a wifer and bolder Captaine, then euer the Tartars had. But fince he swayed the Kingdome, he that I have lets went but once into the Field, but fends his Sonnes, and other Captaines in expeditions.

In the yeare of our Lord 1286, his Vnclenamed Naiam, being thirtie yeares of age, and hauing the command of many people, and Countries, fo that hee was able easily to bring together Company China fourehundred thousand Horse. Being puffed vp through youthfull vanitie, would now no lon- ga can. ger be lubic ct, but would needs take away the Kingdome from his Lord Cubas, and fent to ano. Naiamit chelther great Lord named Cardus, Lord of the parts towards great Turkie, who was nephew of the lion Emperour Cublai, yet hated him, who yeelding confent to Rebellion, promited to come in proper person with an hundred thousand Horse,

Both of them began to gather Forces, which could not bee done fo fecretly but Cublai heard of it, and presently tooke order to set guard to the wayes that no intelligence might passe that way: and then affembled all the Forces within ten dayes journey of Cambala with great speed. 60 fo that in twentie dayes, were gathered together three hundred & fixtie thousand Horse, and one hundred thousand Foot, a great part of them Falconiers and men of his Houshold. With these hee made all hafte day and night towards Naiams Country, where at the end of twentie fine dayes he arrived, altogether vilooked for : and refted his men two dayes. Then hee called his

Aftrologers, and caused them before all the Armie to divine who should have victorie (a thing they alway vie to incourage their men) and they promifed it to Cublai. One morning whiles Main was fleeping negligently in his Tent, having not fo much as fent out any fcouts to efpie. Cublas made hew of his Armie vpon a hill to Naiams. Hee himselfe sate in a certaine Cattle of wood, full of Archers and Croffe-bow men, borne by foure Elephants; on the top whereof was the Royall Standard with the Images of the Sunne and Moone. Hee deuided his Armie into three wings, of which he lent that on the righthand and the other on the left against Naiams Armie: To every ten thousand Horse were affigued five hundred Foot with Lances, taught to leape up behind the horse-men if any occasion of flight happened, and suddenly on advantage to light and flay the enemies horses with their lances. Caids was not yet come. The battels joy- 10 ned and made a cruell fight, which continued from morning till noone: and then was Naiam taken and brought before Cublai, who commanded that he should be sewed betwixt two Carpets, which should be tossed up and downe till the breath were out of his bodie, that so the Imperial blood might not be expected to the Sunne and the ayre. The remainder of his people iware O. bedience to Cublai, which were foure Nations, Ciorza, Carli, Barfeol, and Sitingui

Nature was fecretly baptifed, and by profession a Christian, but 110 follower of the workes of Faith, and figned his principall Enfigne with the figne of the Croffe, having with him infinite

ftore of Christians which were all flaine.

The Icmes and Saracens, that were in the Armie of Cublai, began to vpbraid the Christians with this difafter of the Croffe, who thereupon complained to Cublai. Hee then sharply repro- 29 uing the Iewes and Saracens, turning to the Christians faith; Surely, your God and his Croffe. would not give any ayde to Naiam. but be not you therefore ashamed, because God beeing good and just, oughtonot at all to defend Injustice and Injustice. Najam was a Traytour to his Lord, and contrary to all equitie raifed rebellion, and fought the helpe of your God in his mischieucus purpose. But he as a good and vpright God, would not fauour his Defignes. He returned after this with great triumph to Cambalu, and stayed there till Easter. On that day he called the Christians before him, and kiffed their Gospels, and made his Barons doe the same. The like hee doth in the great Featts of Saracens, lewes, and Ethnikes, that Sogomamber Can the God of the Idols. Mahumet, Meles, or who foeuer is greatest in heaven might helpe him. Yet he made best shew of liking to the Christian Faith but pretended the ignorance of the Professors, and the mightie acts 30 of the Sorcerers, to his not professing it.

Now for rewarding his Souldiers, he hath twelue Barons or wife Counfellours, which give him notice of each Captaynes merit, who raifeth them command of one hundred to a thousand, and from one thousand to ten thousand, and so forward, giving them Vessels of Plate and Tablets. The Captayne of one hundred hath a Tablet of filter, and the Captayne of one thousand of Gold, or filuer gilded; the Captayne of ten thousand hath a Tablet of Gold with a Lions head on it: the weight of the Tablets differ also according to the worth and weight of the dignitie. On the laid Tablet is written a command in this manner. By the firenoth and power of the great God, and by the Grace which he hath given to our Empire, the name of Can be bleffed, and let them all dre and be destroyed which will not obey him. All they which have these Tablets have 40 priviledges in writing, of all things which they are to doe or demand. And the Generals when they ride in publike, they have a cloth borne over their heads; and when they fit, fit on a Chaire of filter. Their Tablet is of three hundred Saggi (fittie ounces of Gold) with the Images of the Sunne and Moone. They whose Tablet haue a Gerfalcon, may take with them for their guard the whole Armie of a great Commander.

Eublais person

he lendeth Ambaffadors to puruey the fair oft Lasses for him of great oft esteeme for beautie, which bring him foure or flue hundred more or leffe, as they fee caufe. There are Praylers or Examiners appointed, which take view of all their beauties, examining Eyes, Nofe, Mouth, &c. apart; and fet price on them at fixteene, feuenteene, eighteene, nineteene, twentie or more Carrats. And they bring those of that rate which their Commission appoints. These hee causeth to bee reviewed by other Examiners, and of to many chuleth perhaps thirtie for his Chambet of the chiefe; which he puts to some of his Barons Wines, to see if they snore not in their sleepe, if in 60 fmell or behaviour they be not offensive. Those which are approoued are by fives divided, each fifth part wayting three dayes and nights in his Chamber by course, the other in the next Lodgings preparing whatfocuer thele command them. The leffe prized are put to Cookerie, and other noble Officers. And fometimes the Can bestowes them on Gentlemen with great portions.

His Wives and in the Kingdome. And every one of these is called Empresse, and holdeth a peculiar Court, and that Princely in a proper Palace, having about three hundred chofen Hand-mayds, and Mayd- 50 feruant, and many Eunuch feruants, and at least ten thousand persons in their Family. The King hath alto many Concubines. There is a certaine Nation of faire people, Tartars, called Ungut, whether every second yeare

Cublai is a comeley and faire man of a meane stature, of a red and white face, blacke and good-

ly eyes, well fashioned note, and all the lineaments of his bodie consisting of a due proportion. He hath foure wives which he accounteth lawfull, and the first-borne of them succeedeth him

The men of that Countrey effeeme it a grace and credit to have Daughters worthy his liking:

and thinke themselves borne under an ill Planet, if they have not for his turne. Cublai hach two and twentie Sonnes by his foure legitimate Wiues, and the first-borne of his. His children first Wife was called Cingis, who should have succeeded him in the Empire, if hee had not dved before his Father. He lete a Sonne named Temur, a valiant man, wife, and exercifed in Armes, Temur who is to fucceed his Grand-father in the Empire, in stead of his deceased Father. But by his Hand-mayds and Mayd-fernants, he hath fine and twentie Sonnes, all which are daily exercifed

in feats of Armes, and are great Lords. Seven of his Sonnes by his Wives are Kings of great Prouinces, and maintayne their states with great reputation.

Three moneths of the yeere, to wit, December, Ianuarie, and Februarie, Cublai remayneth ordinarily in Cambala which is at the North-east border of Cataio, and there on the South part by the new Citie is seated a great Palace. First, there is a square Wall, each square being eight miles, with a deep Ditch enuironing, and a Gate in the middle of each; after which is the space of a mile in circuit where Souldiers stand. After this is another circuit of fixe mile square, with three Gites on the South square, and three on the North: that which is in the midst being in both the greater, and kept thut, except when the Can paffeth that way; the other alway open to others. In each corner of this Wall and in the middt is a faire Palace, eight in all, very large, in which are kept the Cans munitions and furnitures of all forts, for Horles in one, in another Bowes and shooting Artillerie, in a third Costlets, Curasses and leather Armours, and so in the 20 reft. Within this circuit is another wall-circuit, very thicke, and ten paces high, all the battlements white; the wall square, each square a mile in length, with fixe gates as the former, and eight Palaces also very great, wherein are the Cans prouision. Betwixt these two last walls are many faire trees and medowes, in which are Deere, Muske beatts, with other game, and store of graffe, the paths being heightned two cubits to spare it, no durt, nor plashes of water being therein. Within this last wall is the Palace of the great Can, the greatest that hath beene seene, abutting with the wall on the North and South and open spaced where the Barons and Souldiers palle. It hath no feeling, but a very high roofe : the foundation of the pauement ten palms high, with a wall of marble round about it, two paces wide, as it were a walke. In the end of the wall without, is a faire Turret with Pillars. In the walls of the Halls and Chambers are carued Dragons, Souldiers, Birds, Beafts, of diuers kinds, histories of Warres, gilded. The roofe is to made, that nothing is seene but Gold and Imagery. In cuery square of the Palace is a great Hall of marble, capable of great multitudes. The Chambers are disposed the best that may be deuised: the roofe is red, greene, azure, and of all coloures. Behind the Palace are great Roomes, and private store-houses for his treasures and Iewels, for his women , and other secret employments: Ouer against the faid Palace of the Can, is another for Cingis his sonne, whole Court, was in all things like his Fathers. Neere this Palace towards the North is a Mount made by hand, a mile in compasse, one hundred paces high; beset with trees that are alwaies greene. Vnto this mountaine, the king commandeth all the best trees, to be brought from remote parts, lading Elephants with them, for they are taken up with the roots, and are transplanted in this Mountaine. And because this Mountaine is alwaies greene it is called, The greene Mountaine. The ercens And where the earth of that Mount was taken away, are two Lakes answeringeach other, with Mountaine. a pretie River alling them, stored with fish, and so grated that the fish cannot get forth.

The Citie of Cambaln in the Province of Cathai, seated on a great River, was famous, and cembaln. regall, from antiquitie. And this name Cambalu tignifieth, The Citie of the Lord, or Prince. This Citie the great Canremoued vnto the other fide of the Riner where the Palaces are: for This Citie the great Cas remoued wnto the other fide of the Kner where the Palaces are: for the waderflood by the Altrologers, that it should rebell against the Empire . This new built in Cities is alled Tadas: and he made all the Casyson; to goe out of the old Citie into the new is defined to believe the contract of which contayneth in compasse four and twentie miles, every side of the square contayning fixe mixed. miles. It hath walls of earth ten paces thicke at the bottome, and at the top but three, by little Taidu. and little afcending thinner: the batlements are white. Euery square of the wall hath three principall Gates, which are twelue in all, having fumptuous Palaces built ouer each of them.

There are also excellent Palaces in the angles of the walls, where the Armes of the Carrifon Palaces. (which are one thousand at each Gate) are kept. The buildings are squared out, & the streets laid The conslitis very straight by line, throughout this Citie, so that from one Gate a free prospect openeth tho- of the streets, row the Citie, to the opposite Gate, having very goodly houses built on both sides, like Palaces with Gardens and Courts, divided to the Heads of Families. In the middle of the Citie, a certaine sumptuous house is built, wherein hangeth a very great Bell, after the third knolling whereof in the night no man may goe out of his house, vitill the beginning of the day following, except it be for speciall cause, as for a woman in travell, &c. And they are compelled to 60 carrie a light with them.

Without the Cirie of Cambalu are twelve great Suburbs, three or foure miles long, loyning Suburbs large vpon each of the twelue Gates, more inhabiting the Suburbs then the Citie : heere Marchants and Strangers keepe, each Nation having a feuerall Store-house or Burle in which they lodge. No dead corps of any man is buryed within this Citic, but the bodies of Idelaters are

burned without the Suburbs, where the dead bodies of other feets are buryed. And because an Burial without huge multitude of Sorcerers converse alwayes there, they have about twentie fine thousand Harlots in the Suburbs and in the Citie, and these have a Captaine appointed over every hundreth, and thousand ; and one Generall ; whose office is, that when Embalsadours come, or such as have businesse with the Can whose charges he findeth, this Captaine giveth every Embassadour and every man of his family, change of women nightly at free coil : for this is the Queanes tria Harlose of the bute. The Guards every night cast those in prison which they finde walking late : and if they be found guiltie they are beaten with Cudgels : for the Bachfi tell them that it is not good to shed mans blood. But many dye of those beatings.

The number of The Guard.

The great Can hath in his Court twelve thouland Horse-men, which they call Castian, faith- 10 the horse men full Souldiers of their Lord, who guard his person more for state then searc. And source Captaines haue the charge of these, whereof every one commandeth three thousand. When one Captaine with three thousand Souldiers within the Palace, hath guarded the King for three dayes and nights, another Captaine with his Souldiers againe succeedeth : and so throughout the whole

Solemn feafts.

The order of them that fit downe.

Threshold threshing. The Nobles difhes,couer Muficke.

The birth day

New Moone teaft. The prefents of the men of Dignitie, fub-The like Cu-

The twelue

The white colour accounted eminous. New-yeares gifts,

See Sir T. Ree

yeeare, this course of watching by course is observed. When through occasion of any feastinall day hee keepeth a solemne Court, his Table being higher then the rest of the Tables, is set at the North part of the Hall, and his face is to the South, having the greatest Queene on his left hand, to wit, his principall wife, and his Sonnes. and nephews, and they of the blood royall on his right. Yet their table is in a lower place, so that they scarce touch the Kings feet with their heads; the seat of the eldest being higher then the 20 rest. The Barons and Princes, sit in a lower place then that. Their wives also keepe the like order. first the Cans sonnes wives and his kinsmens, sits lower on the left hand, and after, those of the Lords and of eurry Captaine, and Noble-man, each in her degree and order. And the Emperour himselse, while he sitteth at his table, may cast his eyes upon all that feast with him in that Hall. There are not Tables for all to fit, but the greatest part of the Souldiers and Barons eate on Carpers. At all the doores stand two grantly fellowes with Cudgels, to see that none touch the Threshold, which if hee doe they take his garments away; which he must redeeme with so many blowes as shall be appointed, or else loie them. They which serue the King sitting at the table, all of them couer their mouthes with Silke, leaft their breathing should by any meanes touch the Kings meat or drinke. And when he hath minde to drinke, the Damofell which gives 30 King drinketh, it, goeth back three paces and kneeles downe, and then the Barons and all the people kneele, and the Musicians found their Instruments. There is no cause why I should write any thing concerning the meats which are brought to the Table, how daintie and delicate they are, and with what magnificence and pompe they are ferued in. All the Tarters observe this custome, to celebrate the Birth day of their Lord most honourably. The Festivall birth day of Cublai, is kept the twentie eight of September, and this day hee accounteth more folemne, then any of the whole yeare, except the first of February, wherein they begin their yeare. The King therefore in his Birth day is cloathed with a most precious garment of Gold, and about two thousand Barons and Souldiers, are cloathed of the same colour of gold (though of Silke stuffe) and a girdle wrought with gold and filter, which is given them with a payre of shooes: some weare Pearles and Gemmes of great price, namely, the Quiecitarie, which are next to the Can: and these garflome is fully-ments are not worne but on their thir eene folemne Feafts according to the thirreene Moones fedby the Mo- of the yeare; all then cloathed like Kings. This custome is also observed with the Tartars, that on the birth day of great Cham, all the Kings, Princes, and Nobles, which are subject to his Dominion, should fend presents vnto him, as to their Emperour. And they who defire to obtaine any place of Dignitie or office of him, offer their requests vnto twelue Barons appointed for this purpole, and what they decree, is all one, as if the Emperour himselfe had answered them. The prayers of All people also, of what Faith or sect soeuer, whether Christians, or sewes, Saracens, or Tartars, and other Pagans are bound, felemnly to call vpon their Gods, for the life, fafetie, and profpe-

On the day of the Kalends of February, which is the beginning of the Tartars yeare, great Can and all the Tartars, wherefocuer they are, celebrate a very great and folemne Feath, and all aswell men as women, desire to bee cloathed in white Garments. For they beleeue, that the white garment is a token of good lucke: Therefore that fortune might fauour them all the yeare, they weare white in the beginning of the yeare. Moreouer the Rulers of Cities, and Gouernours of Prouinces, mindfull of their dutie, fend vnto their Emperour on this day prefents of Gold and Silver, Pearles and Precious stones, many white Cloathes, and other white things, and many Horses of a white colour : the rest of the Tartars at the beginning of the yeare, fend white prefents one to another. It is the custome of those which bring presents, if they can, of each to present nine times nine; as if they fend Horles, to present nine nines, that is e ghtie one, and so of 60 Gold, of Clouths, & other things, that fomtimes he hath by this reckoning one hundred thouland Horses. Also at this good lucke, all the Elephants which the Emperour hath (fine thousand in number) are brought vnto the Court, couered with Tapistrie, wherein the similatudes of clivers Beatls and Fowles are portrayed, carrying upon their shoulders two Chests full of golden and

Silver veffell. Many Camels also are brought, covered with faire Silken clothes, which bring other things, necessarie for the Court. And this day in the morning, all the Kings. Capraines, Barons, Souldiers, Phylicians, Aftrologers, Falconers, and the Gouernours of Proninces. and Armies, and other Officers of the Emperour, affemble in the great Hall before the King. and they who happen to have no place there, for the multitude of men, fland in another place where he may fee them. All being placed in their or ler, and degree, one arifeth as it were lome Prelate, and crieth out with a loude voyce, Bow downe, and adore. And prelently all doe reperence, bending downe their forcheads to the earth. Then he fayth, God preferue our Lord with long life and way, and all answere, God grant. Then he sayth, God encrease and advance his Empire. 10 and preserve his Subjects in peace, good will, and prosperitie; and all answers, God grant. And this they doe toute times. The aderation finished, the laid Prelate goeth to an Altar richly adorned, on which is a red Table, wherein is written the name of the Can, and taking a Cenfer, and putting odoriterous Spices therein, they perfume the Table and the Altar with great reuerence, in honour of great Can, and to returne to their places. After which, are offered the gifts whereof we have spoken; and then the Tables are prepared, and a most tolemne Dinner held, cating and The Reast. drinking with great my with their wines, in manner before described. And lattly, a domesticall Lion is brought vinto the King, which lying at his feet, like a gentle Whelpe, acknow-

line i f

ATCOM

ledgeth his Lord.

In those three moneths, in which as we faid before, the Emperour remayneth in the Citie of The office of 20 Cambalu, to wit, in December, Ianuarie, and Februarie, all the Hunters, which the Emperour the Prosincial hath in all Provinces, round about the Province of Cashai, apply themselves to hunting, and offer Hunters, all the oreater wilde-bealts, to wit, Stags, Beares, Roe-buckes, wille Boares, Deere, and fuch like, voto their Gouernours : who (if they be diffant from the Emperours Court, lose then thirtie dayes Iourney) fend fuch heafts taken, by Waynes, and Ships vinto the Emperour, hauing first bowelled them. But such as are fortie dayes iourney distant from his Court, fend one. ly the skinnes, which are necellarie for the making of Armour. Hee hath many Leopards, and Tame Leo-Wolves for hunting, and many Lions also, greater then those which are in Babylon, in the haire Pards, and whereof certaine little beames appeare of divers colours, to wir, white black; and red, and they Lions, are accommodated to catch Boares, Beares, Stags, Roe-buckes, wilde Ailes, and wikle Oxen .

30 and it is maruellous to fee the Lions herceneffe and dexteritie in the act. Two Lions vie to bee carried in one Wagon, when they goe to hunt, and with them a Dog, with which they are ramed; and they carrie them on this fashion, because of their furie and vnrulinede; and they must carrie them contrary to the wind; for elfe the beaits would fent them, and flee. Hee hath many Eagles. tame Eagles, which are fo fierce, that they take Hares, Roe-buckes, Decre, and Foxes; among which some of them feare not with great violence to telze vpon Wolles, and vexe them to fore. that without labour and danger, they may be taken by men,

The great Can hath in his Court two which are brethren, one called Bayan, the other Mingan. The Mafters called in the Tartar language, Cinci, that is, Matters of the Game, where of either hath the charge of the Game. of ten thouland men: they which are vinder one or them, are clothed in red; the other in skie-

40 colour, alway when they hunt. There keepe divers forts of Dogs, to the number of true thous. fand Mattines and other. In hunting they goe with their people, one on the right, and the other on the left hand of the King : and they take up to great a length of the Playne, that from one end to the other is a dayes journey, to that no beattean escape them ; and it is great pleature when the Can goes in the milft, to fee the Dogs follow Harts, Beares, and other kinds. And these Brethren are bound by coue ant, from the beginning of October to the end of March, to bring to the Court, one thouland heads of pealts and birds, befides Quailes, and filles the beit they can, in great proportion.

The moneth of March comming in, great Can departed from the Citie of Cambala, and pro- Hawking. ceedeth North-eastward towards the Ocean distant thence two dayes journeyes, bringing with;

50 him about ten thouland Falyoners, who long Falcons, Hawkes, Gerfalcons, and other kinds off 1000, Falcos Fowles of prey fit for hawking. These Falconers disperte themselves by an hundred or two ners. hundred in a Companie; and the birds that are taken, for the molt part, are brought vinto the King, who by reason of his Gour, fitteth in a woodden house, which awo Elephanescarrie, co- The Kings uered with the skins of Lions, and within hanged with cloth of Gold, having with him for his Horfe luter, recreation, twelve choice Hawkes, and twelve favoured Courtiers: many Noblemen and Souldiers ride by, who guard the Kings person. Who, when they see Phesants, or Cranes, or other birds flying in the aire, declare it to the l'alconers which are neere unto the King: and they, fignifying the same vnto the King vncouer the Kings House, and let their Falcons and Hawkes flie, and the King fitting on his Bed, beholdeth the paffine of the birds. Other ten thousand 60 men alfogoe with the King, who in that hawking, runne hither and thirther, by two and two.

and marle whither the Falcons and Hawkes flie, that are call from the fift, that (if need bee) they may helpe them. And thele, in the Tartari Language, are called Tofeaol, that is to fev. Tofash Watch-men or Markes-men, being skilfull in a certaine kind of whittle, wherewith they call in the Hawkes that are flowen. Nor is it needfull, that the Falconer who let the Hawkes flie,

voon it is that there are fuch ftore.

The number and order of the Paullons.

The huge lines and Sables.

Hunting for-

Barke or Pa-

Cambala, the Mint of mo-

should follow her, seeing they, of whom I now speake, are busily imployed in taking up the Hawkes, and are carefull that by no meanes they bee hurt or loft. And every flying Hawke car-The markes of right a little table of filter on her foot, figned with the marke of her Mafter or Falconer, that if the Hawkes. Shee bee loft, shee may bee restored to her owner. But if the marke cannot be knowne, the Hawke is deliuered to a certaine Baron, who for this cause is called Bulangazi, to whom are brought all loft things (otherwise the Finder would be counted a Thiefe) and to him Losers refort to inquire of things loft. He hath a most eminent place, noted by his Ensigne, that in so great an affembly of people he may be knowned

Whiles they are thus busied in sporting and hawking, they come vnto a certaine great Plaine. called Caczarmedin, where the Tents of the King and all the Courtiers are prepared, about to ten thousand in number. The first and chiefe is the Cans Paullion, under which ten thousand Souldiers fland, befides Barons and Noble-men, with the doore to the South; fuftayned with three Pillars, wrought with divers curious and excellent carved workes, and couered with the skinnes of Lions (and strakes of divers colours) which keepe out rayne. But price of Arme- within, the walls of the Paulions are coursed with most costly skinnes of Armelines and Sables. although in those Countries these skinnes are accounted most precious, that sometimes skinnes worth two thousand Sultanines of gold are scarce f. ficient for one paire of Velts. The Tartare call the Sable, the Queene of Furres. The Cordes, wherewith these Paulions are supported, are of filke. There are also other Paulions erected, wherein the Wines, Sonnes, and Hand-maides of the King remaine. Further also, the Falcons, Hawkes, Owles, Garfalcons, and other Birds, 20 which ferue for Hawking, have their Tents wherein they are contayned. For, there is fo great a multitude of Tents, that to them that come thither, a farre off it feemeth that a famous Citie is built there. The King remayneth all March in that Plaine, and taketh innumerable Beafts and infinite multitudes of Fowle. For no man may else hunt in all the Provinces of that Kingdome, at the least within five dayes journey one way, ten another, and fifteene a third way of the Cans Court : nor keepe an hunting Dogge, or an Hawke : and specially, from the beginning of March vntill the moneth of October, no man is permitted to vie any deuice or engine whatfoeuer, to take Stagges, Deere, Roe-bucks, Hares, left he should hinder their breede ; and here-

> It is incredible what multitudes of People, Merchants, and merchandises of all forts are seene 10 in Cambalu. The Money of the Great Can is not made of gold or filter, or other metall. But they take the middle barke from the Mulberrie Tree, and this they make firme, and cut it into divers and round pieces, great and little, and imprint the Kings marke thereon. Of this matter therefore, the Emperour causeth an huge masse of money to bee made in the Citie of Cambala. which sufficeth for the whole Empire : and no man vnder paine of death may lawfully coine any other, or spend any other money, or refuse it in all his Kingdomes and Countries. Nor any comming from another Kingdome, dare spend any other money in the Empire of Great Can. Whereby it commeth to passe, that Merchants often comming from farre remote Countries and Regions vnto the Citie of Cambalu, bring with them gold, filter, pearle, and precious stones, and receiue the Kings money for them. And because this money is not receiued in their Countries, 40 they change it agains in the Empire of Great Can for merchandife, which they carried way with them. He also payeth stipends to his Officers and Armies of the mentioned money; and lastly, whatsoeuer thing he needeth in his Court he buyeth with this money. Wherefore, there is not a King to be found in the World, who exceedeth him in Treasure, not expended on the

> The Great Can hath twelue Barons, as is faid before, which are his Counfell of Warre, and dispose of martiall affaires, and the exalting or disgracing of Captaines and Souldiers. Their office is called Thai, that is, The high Court, because they have none about them but the Can. Other twelue Barons are appointed Counsellors for the foure and thirtie Prouinces, which have a faire Palace in Cambala, in which is for every Province a Judge & many Notaries. These have power to to choose Gouernours of the faid Provinces, and present their names to the Can which confirmes them. These also have the charge of the Treature to exact and dispense the same. Their office is called Singh, that is, The fecond Cours, subject to none but the Can, yet reputed leffe noble then the former, that being a martiall State.

> > 0. VI. 60

CHAP.A. S.6. Provisions for Posts; their swiftnesse. Dearth prevented.

ð. VI.

The Cans provisions for Embassadors and for Posts; against Dearth; for High-waves . for the Poore in Cambalu, for Aftrologers; Tartars Wine, Fuell, Religion, Opinions, Behausour, Court-neatneffe: Polos proceeding from Cambelu Wellward. of Pulisangan, Gouza, Tainfu, Pianfu, Thaigin, Cacianfu, Quenzanfu, Sindinfu, Thebeth, Caindu, Carajan, Carachan, Cardandan and Vociam.

Ithout the Citie of Cambala, many publike wayes conduct to the neighbouring Prouinces, and in enery one of them alway at the end of fine and twentie or thirtie miles, are Lodgings or Innes built, called Land, that is, Post borfes, with great and Posts and

faire Palaces, Chambers furnished with Beds and other Prouitions, meete to enter- Innes. taine great Men , yea to lodge a King; the prouisions laid in from the next adjoyning places: The Roman where about four hundred Horfes are in readinesse for Messengers and Embassadors, which there all o had public Stables at leaue their ridden Horses and take fresh. And in mountaynous places, where are no Villages, he appeares by fends People to inhabite, ten thousand at a place where these Lamb are built, which till the constantine, ground for their prouisions; and this continueth vnto the furtheil limits of the Empire : fo that Zof. 1.2. and 20 in the publique wayes, throughout the whole Empire, about ten thousand of the Kings Innes Palladius who are to bee found. And the number of the Horses, appointed for the service of the Messengers in would ride those Innes, are more then two hundreth thousand, a thing almost incredible to tell: to that in a from the Conlittle while with change of Men and Horie, intelligence might flie to the Court. And if any finesofithe wonder how fo many men and beafts should be prouided for, hee must consider that the Moores Empire to conand Genteles have many women, and flore of children, fome having thirtie fonnes which follow flantmople, Soci them armed; and for victuall they fow three feeds, Rice, Panike and Mill, which yeeld an hun- 47. 6.19. dred fold : they make not bread, but boile thefe with Milke or Fleth. Wheat will not fo encreate with them : nor fuffer they any ground, which will beare, to lye vntilled. And their Cattell alway increase, that each of them carries with him fix, eight, or more Horses into the field for his owne person. These Horses also take turnes, that of the foure hundred aforesaid two hundred are in the stables readie, the other two hundred at graffe by monethly courses. Their Cities adioyning to Rivers or Lakes, are appointed also to have ferry Boats in readinesse for the Posts, And Cities adioyning to Defarts, are feffed at Hories and prouisions thorow those Defarts, but have contribution from the Can. In cases of great import, the Poste tides with a Gerfalcon Table, and

bellies and heads girded runne as fast as the horse can: and those which are able to endure this exceffiue riding are of great reputation. There are also betweene the said Innes other habitations, three or foure miles distant one from another, where there are a few houses wherein Foot-posts dwell, having all girdels full of shrill founding bells. These are alwayes readie, and as often as the Kings Letters are sent unto them, Foote-postes, convey them speedily to the next habitation : who hearing the found of the Foot-post comming Die Fost boden. afarre off, expect him, and receiving his Letters, prefently carrie them to the next watch: and fo the Letters passing through divers hands, are conveyed without any delay, vinto that place whither they ought to come. And it commeth often to pase, that the King vinderstandeth newes, or receiveth new fruits from a place, ten dayes journey diffant, in two dayes : as fruits growing at Cambalu in the morning, the next day at night at Xandu. But all the mentioned Poltes are Their Prixifree from all exaction of Tribute, and receive a good recompence of their labours from the Kings ledges. 80 Rent gatherers befides. Some also are appointed to examine these Posts monethly and to punish

is truffed fo that he will ride two hundred miles in a day, or two hundred and fiftie, fometimes

also they ride the night, Foot-posts running by with lights, if the Moone shine not. They winde a

Horne that the fielh Horses may be brought forth for them to mount presently, and having their

their faults.

He fends yeerly vnto divers Provinces, subject to his Empire, to inquire whether any harme Provisions 2be done to the Corne, by Tempests, Locusts, Wormes, or any other plague. And when he hath gainst dearth. notice given him, that any Province or Citie, hath fulfained any damage, he remitteth Tributes to that people for that yeere, and sendeth Graine for victuall and for Seede, one of his owne Garners. For, in the time of great plentie, the King buyeth abundant flore of Corne, and keepeth Fatherly Royit with great care of Officers, three or foure yeeres in Garners, that when there shall be scarcitie alice. of Corne in one Countrey, that detect may bee supplied out of the Kings Store-houses. Hee selleth his graine for the fourth part of other mens price, and alway proudeth that his store-houses 60 bestored. Likewise, when any murren lighteth among Cattell, heesends them other Cattell which he hath for Tenths in other Provinces. And if a thunder-holt hath stricken any beast of

any Herd or Flock, he will have no Tribute thereof for three yeeres, be the Herd never fo great : nor custome of a Thunder-stricken ship, thinking God is afigrie with them which are so stricken. Likewife, that Trauellers may find the way in all places capable to beare Trees, He hath caused

Hence perhaps the walk trom Laborto Agra was occalioned. Their Rice-Wine.

Coales taken out of mines, lian, but common with vs. called Sea-cole. because they are brought by Sea from Newsaftle &c. Eneas Sy'uius and the China Icfuires bauc sold wonders of thefe black flones, a wonto this Land. and specially to this Citie. Cans charitie to the Poore.

The Tenths paid to the Weekly labour Angell of light. Aftrologers.

putation of

Their Religi-

Shattendo i

Their Cu-

Court reue.

Trees to be planted, a little diffance one from another, neare vnto the principall wayes; and in Sandie and defart places, he hash caufed to fet Stones and Pillars for that purpofe : and Officers are appointed to looke to these things. Hee plants Trees the rather because his Astrologers tell him, that planting Trees lengthens the life.

They make excellent drinke, in the Province of Cathai, of Rice and divers Spices, which in the tafte thereof excelleth the tweetnetie even of Wine. And they who drinke more greedily therof then reason judgeth to be fit, or the nature of the drinker requireth, sooner become drunke then if they had drunke Wine.

Throughout the whole Prouince of Caibai, certaine blacke stones are digged out of the Mountaines, which put into the fire burne like wood, and being kindled preferue fire a long time, as if Ich a thing ftrange they be kindled in the Euening, they keepe quicke fire all the night. And many vie those ftones. because that though they have store of wood, yet is there such frequent vse of Stoues and Bathes (thrife enery weeke) that the wood would not ferue.

It is not amifie also, having spoken of his Provisions abroad, to mention his care for the poore of Cambalu. When he heares of any honourable Familie decayed by difaduentures, or of any which cannot worke, and have no meanes : he causeth to give to such Families the whole yeares expenses; each of such Families going to the Officers for that purpose, and shewing their Bill of allowance, receive provisions accordingly. There is a Palace deputed for those Officers. They are provided also of garments for Winter, and for Summer; the Can having the Tenths of all Wool, and Silke, and Hempe, which he causeth to bee made into Clothes in a house thereto appointed : 20 for all Trades are bound one day in the weeke to worke for him. He prouides also apparell for his Armies, and in every Citie caufeth Cloth to be made of his tithe wooll. You must vinderstand defull divine that the Tartars ancient customes knew no almes, but rather vpbraided such as were in necessitie. bounty indeed as liated of God. But the Idolaters, especially these Bachs, have propounded it as a good worke acceptable to God, and have taught him to be thus bountifull, fo that in his Court bread is never denyed to any which aske : and there is no day in which is not given away twentie thousand Crownes in Rice, Millet and Panike, whereby he is esteemed as a God.

There are alio in Cambalu of Christians, Saracens, and Catayans, about five thousand Astrologers and Diumers, which the Great Can prouideth yeerly of foode and rayment, as those poore about laid. These have an Astrolabe in which are marked the signes of the Planets, the houres and 30 points of all the yeare. Herein all these Astrologers, each Religion apart, view the course of the yeere, according to enery Moone, observing the disposition of the weather, referring alway to The Denill an God to doe more or leffe after his owne pleasure. They write also vpon certaine squares (they call them Tacuini) the things which are to come that yeere , which they fell to those that will buy them, and fuch as speake most truth are most honored. If any intend any great worke, or to goe a farre journey, and will know the event before-hand, he makes recourse to these Astrologers. to fee it with their eyes in the Heauens, which they doe, comparing the prefent Constellation with that of his Birth (which they demand of him) so foretelling him the good or euill.

The Tartars reckon the computation of their yeeres by twelves, the first figurified by a Lion. the second by an Oxe, the third by a Dragon, the fourth by a Dogge, and so thorow the whole 40 twelve: fo that if a man be demanded when he was borne; he will answer, such a point of such an houre, of fuch a day in the yeere Lion (this their fathers exactly let downe in a booke) and when the twelae is complete, they goe ouer the same againe.

Of their Religion we have faid that they are Idolaters, and for their Gods have a Table fet aloft in the wall of their Chamber , on which is written, a Name representing the High God of Heasen; and there every day, with a Cenfer of incenfe, they adore it in this manner. They lift up their hands aloft, and ftrike their teeth thrice, praying it to give them a good understanding and health; and defire thereof nothing elfe. Befides, on the ground they have another statue, called Nationi. The God of earthly things, with his Wife and Children (as before is faid) whom likewite they worthip with incense, striking or gnashing the teeth, and lifting up the hands; 50 and defire thereof temperature of the aire, fruits of the earth, children, and the like. They hold the Soule to be immortal, and that when a man dies, it enters into another bodie better or worle, according to the merits in the former life, as of a poore man to become a Gentleman, and after of a Prince or Lord, and so higher till it be assumpted in God:or if it hath ill deserved to be a pooret man, after a Dogge, alway descending to the lowest ranke of basenesse. They have a comely sprech, salute cheerfully and honestly, haue a gracefull carriage, and feed cleanly. They beare great reuerence to their Parents, and if any be vindutifull, or helplesse to their necessitie, there is a publike Office defigned to this particular, to punish vngratefull or disobedient children. Prisoners are released at three yeeres end, and marked in the cheeke, to be knowne Malefactors.

The Barons and People which goe to the Grand Can, obserue thele Rites. First, within halfe 60 a mile of the place where the Can is , all is husht and quiet without noyse or cryes , or any loud speech; and every Baron carries continually a little faire vestill to spit in, after which hee covers it, none daring to ipit on the Hall. They have Furre buskins of white leather, which they put on when they enter the Hall , putting off the former and giving them to the fervants , left they should foule the faire artificiall Carpets.

CHAR.A. S. 6. Faire bridge, Dor with his Damfels and penance Mangalus palace. 80

En miles off Cambalu, is a certayne great River, named Palisangan, emptying it selfe into the Ocean, by which many thips with much merchandile atcend. And in that place, there is a very faire Bridge, all of Serpentine flone curioufly wrought, contaying three hundred pa- An admirable ces in length, and eight in breadth, that ten men may ride abreft. On each tide it is fairely moun- Bidee. ted with a wall of marble, and Pillars fet on a rew : and in the height of the afcent is a great and Ramafio hath high Pillar, at the foote whereof is a great Lion, and on the top another. And so quite thorow given a pithe Bridge one pace and halfe distant are Pillars with Lions on the top, and a faire well-wrought more. marble worke betwixt, to keepe men from falling.

Hauing passed over the River and Bridge, proceeding thirtie miles westward (in which Palato ces are continually seene with Vineyards and fertile Fields) you come to the Citie Gonza, both The Citie faire and great, having many Monatteries of Idols. Cloth of gold and filkes are made there, and Gouza, the pureft and finest Cambricks or Launes, and many common Innes for Strangers and Trauailers are found in that Citie: The Citizens are Artificers and Merchants. A mile without this Citie the way parteth, one leading West, the other South-east : that to the West leadeth through the Parting of the Prounce of Cathay, but the other towards the Countrey of Maugi. From the Citie of Gouza way. to the Kingdome of Tainfu, you ride ten dayes thorow Cataso, alway finding many faire Cities and Caffles, well traded with Vineyards and tilled Fields, from whence Wine is carried to Cataio, where it wants. There are many Mulberrie trees for Silke-workes : the People civill and Cities very frequent.

20 Tainfu is the name of the Kingdome, and of the chiefe Citie which is great and faire, hath Tainfu. much trading with flore of munition, fit for the Cans Armies. The Wine about this Citie fer- Armes, ueth the whole Prounce. Seven dayes further westward is a goodly Countrey, beautified with many Castles and Cities, in which also great trade of merchandise is vied. After which . you come to a Citie very great, named Pianfu, in which there is great abundance of Silke and Trading.

Westward from Pianfu standeth a very goodly Castle, named Thaigin, anciently built by a King called Dor. In it is a fractious Palace, wherein is a faire Hall, in which are painted all the famous Kings which have reigned there; a faire spectacle. Of this King Dor they say that he Dor and his was potent, and was attended onely by young Damfels, whereof his Court had great flore. Damfel court, 30 They also when hee lifted to take his pleasure, carried him in a small light Chariot thorow the The King of Catile, which is so fortified by Are and Nature, that the Gouernour thereof feared none, no not Merol, doe Vmcan his Lord, against whom hee rebelled. But seuen men professing fidelitie and service to likewise in Dor, tooke him at advantage in hunting, and brought him captive to Presbyter John or Vincan, pare, who put him in vile clothes, and appointed him to keepe his Cattell, and fet on him aftrong guard till two yeeres were ended : after which , hee commanded him to bee brought before him. and actived him in Princely apparell, and giving him his pardon after sharpe admonition, fent

him fo well actended to the repostession of his Kingdome. About twentie miles beyond the Callle Thaigin, is the River Caramoran, which by reason of caramoran, the exceeding bredth and depth thereof, hath no Bridge : and floweth to the Ocean. On the 40 shoare thereof are many Cities and Castles built; wherein much trading is exercised. This Countrey abounder with Ginger, Silke, and Fowle, especially Feasants, that three of them are bought for a great of Venice. There grow Reeds infinite flore, fo great that fome are a foot, some are a foot and halre in compaffe, profitable to many vies. Pailing this River, after two dayes journey is the famous Citie called Carranfu, where many clothes of Gold and Silke are made: heere carranfu, growes Ginger, Galingale, Spike, and many Spices. The people are Idolaters. Proceeding feuen dayes iourney Westward, many Cities, and Townes, goodly Fields and Gardens are found; and every where Mulberies for Silke-wormes. And they are Idolaters . but there are also Chriflians, Turkes, Nefforians, and fome Saracens. There is much both of wilde Beatts and Fowle. If you proceed feuen dayes journey further, you shall come to a certaine great Citic, named

50 Quenzanfu, which is the chiefe Citie of the Kingdome, in which have raigned many famous Quenzanfu, Kings: and at this day, the fonne of great Can, called Mangals, hath the command thereof. That Countrey yeeldeth great plentie of Silke, Cloth of Gold, and all other things necessarie for furnishing of an Armie, and for preservation of the life of Man. The Inhabitants worship Idols, and there are some Christians, and Turkes, and Saracens. Fine miles without the Cirie Handeth the Palace of Mangalu, leated in a Playne, where are many Springs , Riverets, and places of King Mongalu, Game. There is a high wall encompassing fine miles, where are all wilde Beatis and Fowles, in the midit is an excellent Palace, having many Halls and Chambers great and faire, all painted with Gold and Az ire, and infinite Marbles adorning. The King with his Courtiers applieth himfelfe to hunting of wilde Beafts, and taking of Fowle, and followeth his tathers fteps in 60 Justice and Equitie, much beloued of his people.

Going three dayes Journey Westward from the faid Palace, through a certaine goodly Plaine, where many Cities and Caffles are (and abundance of Silke, Merchandife, and Arts) is a mountainous Countrie, where, in the Mountaines and Valleyes are frequent Habitations, and flore of Lodgings, of the Province of Cunchin. The Inhabitants are Idolaters, and Husbandmen. Alfo. combin.

Achbaluch

in that Countrie they hunt Lions, Beares, Stags, Roe-buckes, Deere, Wolues. That Plaine is two dayes journey, and the Countrey is twentie dayes Westward all inhabited, having Mountaines, and Valleyes, and many Woods.

After that, twentie day es towards the West, is a Prouince, named Achbaluch Manei, that is The white Citie of the borders of Mangi, which is wel peopled. This Province for two dates journey hath a Piaine, with infinite habitations. After which follow Mountaines, Valleyes, and Woods. all inhabited twencie dayes journey Weltward. It hath flore of wild beafts, and of those creatures which yeeld Muske. In this Province Ginger groweth in great plentie, as also Corne and Rice.

After twentie dayes journey thorow those Hills, is a Playne, and a Province in the Confines of Manei, named Sindinfu. The chiefe Citie hath the same name, great and exceeding rich, be- to ing twentie miles circuit about. It hath had many rich and mightie Kings, but the old King dying, left three sonnes Successors of the Kingdome, which divided the Citie into three parts. compating enery part with their proper walls, all which notwithitanding were contained within the former wall. But great Can fibiected that Citie and Kingdome to his Dominion. Thorow this Citie runne many Riuers, in many places, and round about, some halfe a mile ouer. fome two hundred paces, very deepe, and on them are many Bridges of stone, very faire, eight paces broad, fet on both lides with marble Pillars, which beare vp a timber Frame that course the Bridge; each Bridge having ftreets and thops all along it. When these Rivers are past the Citie. they becom one great riner, called Quian, which runneth one hundred dayes journey hence to the Ocean. Neere thefe Rivers are many Cities and Caftles, and ships for Merchandile. Proceeding five dayes journey archer, through a certaine Playne, many Cities, Castles, and Villages are 10 found, in which fine Lawnes are in great aboundance. Many wilde Beafts also are there. After the Playne whereof wee now speake, is the Prouince of Tebeth, which great Can van-

of the Pro-uince of Tebeth, which great Cass van-uince of Tebeth quilhed, and wasted: for in it are many Cities destroyed, and Castles ouerthrowne by the space of twentie dayes journey. And because it is become a Wildernesse, wanting Inhabitants, wilde Beafts , and Lions are there encreased abundantly: and it is needfull that Traueliers carrie victuals with them. Very great Canes grow in this Countrey ten paces in length. The subtill de- and three palmes in thicknesse, and as much from knot to knot. When Travellers therefore the labilities will reft by night fecure from Bealts, they take great bundles of the greener Reeds, and putting fire vnder, kindle them. Which make fisch a cracking, and so great a noyse, that it may bee 10 heard two miles off. Which terrible found the wilde Beafts hearing, flee away. Moreouer, Horses, and other Beasts which Merchants vie for their journey, hearing this noyse and cracking, are very much afraid, and many betaking themselves to flight, have escaped from their Mafters: but the wifer Trauellers binding their feet together with Fetters, detayne them Twentie dayes lourney ended, having passed over the Province of Tebeth, wee meet with

Cities, and very many Villages, in which, through the blindnesse of Idolatrie, a wicked custome

18-bookemen- is vied: for, no manthere marrieth a wife that is a Virgin. Whereupon, when Trauellers and chapter 1.

is in their

Eight King-

Strangers comming from other parts, passe shrough this Countrey, and pitch their Paulions, the like of the cy. Women of that place having marriageable daughters, bring them vnto Strangers, desiring 49 them to take them, and enjoy their companie as long as they remayne there. Thus the pretier the 4- booke, are chosen, and the rest returne home forrowfull. And when they will depart, they are not suffered to carrie any away with them, but faithfully restore them to their Parents. The Mayden also requireth some toy or small Present of him who hath defloured her, which shee may shew as an argument and proofe of her deflouring. And shee that hath beene loued, and abused of most men, and shall have many such favours and toyes to shew to her Wooers, is accounted more noble, and may more eatily and honourably be married. And when thee will goe honourably attired, shee hangeth all her Louers fauours about her necke, and the more acceptable shee was to many, of so much the more honour is shee adjudged worthie. But when they are once married to husbands, they are now no more fuffered to be coupled with Prange men. And the 50 men of this Countrie are very wary, that they offend not one another in this matter. They are Idolaters, and cruell men, thinking it no finne if they rob, and exercise theft. They live by hunting, and the fruits of the earth. Many beafts also are found with them, yeelding Muske called by them, Gudderi. They have a proper Language, and have no money, not the Paper Coralimoney, money of Can, but spend Corals for money, and are clothed with the skins of beafts, or course Hempe. This Countrey appertaymeth to the Province of Tebeth: for Tebeth is a very large Prouince and hath beene fometime duided into eight Kingdomes, having many Ciries, and Townes, with many Mountaynes, Lakes, and Rivers, where Gold is found. The women weare Corall about their neckes, and hang it about the neckes of their Idols, as a precious thing. In this Countrey there are very great Dogs, as big as Aifes, which take wilde Beafts, specially wilde 60 Oxen, called Beyamini. They are exceeding Necromancers, cauting tempefts, lightnings, thunderbolts, and many other wonders. There are many fores of Spices never brought into thele parts. This Thebeth is (as all the former Provinces) Jubicet to the Can. On the Welt of the Prouince of Tebeth, bordereth the Prouince of Cainda, fometimes gover-

ned by her owne Kings, now by the Gouernours of the Can. By the West you must not underthand that the Countries are in the West, but that wee departing from those parts which are berwint the East and North-east come hither Westward: and therefore reckon them Westward. The people are Idolaters, haue many Cities, the chiefe called by the name of the Prouince, Cainde built in the ertry of the Prouince. There is a greatfalt Lake, in which is store of Pearles, white not round, so abundant, that the price of them would become little worth, if they were fuffered to be carried away at mens pleatures. Whereupon, it is prouided vpon payne of death, that none flould prefume to fish for Pearle in this Lake, without the licence of great Con. There is also a Mountaine in which is found a Minerall of Turkesse Rones, confined to the like To licence. Many Gadderi are also in this Prouince, which yeeld Muske. That Lake also which Gadderis ingendreth Pearle in such plentie, aboundeth with Fishes: and the whole Countrey is full of wilde Beaits, that is to fay, of Lions , Beares , Stags . Deere, Ounces, Roe-buckes ; and divers kinds of Birds. Cloues are found there in great plentie, which are gathered from small Trees, Cloues. which have boughs and leaves like the Bay-tree, but somewhat longer and straighter, white Howers and little, as are the Cloues, and when they are ripe they are blacke and duskie. Gin-Ginger, Cinager, Curamon, and divers other Spices grow there in great plentie, which are not brought vnto mon. our Countries. Wine groweth not in it , but in flead thereof they make excellent Drinke of Corne, Rice, and divers other Spices. The Inhabitants of this Countrey worship Idols, by which The Inhabithey are so besorted, that they thinke they deserve their favour, if they prostitute their wives, tants are idea 20 filters, and daughters to be abused by Trauellers. For, when any Stranger commeth amongst laters and them, every housholder feeketh to give him entertainment, and goe their way, leaving the femals and house to the Strangers will, and returne not vntill they depart. And the women presently hane vo tome tigne till he be gone, that when the Matter of the familie returneth, he may know he is there (bill, and goe away againe, flaying without till he be departed: which hee doth for the glorie of his Icols, hoping they will be more gracious voto him. Certaine twigs of Gold are their money, ving weights, and according to the weight of the twig is the value of the money. And this money is the greater money without flampe. They have also a leffer, which they make after this manner. They boyle Salt in a Caldron an houres space, of which being congea. Money of Sala led, they make little lumps like two-pennie loaues, which being made folid, is figned with the 30 Princes Stampe, and make great profit thereof in lauage places, remote from Cities which haue ftore of Muske and Gold, and want Chapmen. These bartar their Gold for Salt to vie in their

Paiola (wathed in vellels to feuer it from the fands and earth.) On the bankes thereof Cinamon Gold. groweth in great abundance. This River runneth to the Ocean. Having pasted over the River Briss, they come westward to the Province Caraian, which The seven contayneth leuen Kingdomes. It is subiect to the Great Con, whole sonne, named Sentemer, Kingdomes of contayneth reven any donnes. It is to the state of the st ters. You ride fine dayes and finde it all well peopled. They line of their Beatts and Fruits. The Countrey bre-deth excellent Horses: and it hath a peculiar and difficult language. At the end of those five dayes is the chiefe Citie, called Iaci, and it is great and famous, hath in it many Mer. The Citie Iaci. chants and Artificers, and many forts of People, Idolasers, Christians, Nestorians, and Saracens; but the most Idolaters. It hath Corne, and much Rice, although they eate no bread of Corne. because it is not whollome, but they make bread of Rice. They make drinke also of it, and divers Spices very pleasant. They vie white Porcelanes in flead of money, and for ornaments which Money of are found at the Sea. Much Salt is made in this Citie of the water of falt Wells, whereof the Stones.

King hath great profit. The men of this Countrey care not if any man come to their Wives, fo they give their content. There is also a Lake there very full of Fish, contayning an hundreth 50 miles in compaffe. Those men eate raw flesh of Hennes, Beefe, Mutton and Buffals, but prepa- Raw flesh. red after this manner. They first breake it into small pieces, and after season it with excellent Spices; but the poorer fort fired it and lay it in Garlicke fawce, and eate it as wee doe boy-

Departing from the Citie of Iaci, having travailed ten dayes journey westward, yee come to the Prounce named, as is the chiefe Citie, Carazan, which Cogatin, fonne of Cublai, gouerneth. Carazan, The Rivers there yeeld very much gold di paiola, and also that which is more folid, and the Rivers yeel-Mountaines gold of the veine, and they give one stone of gold for fix of filter. They fpend Porce-ding gold di Innes for money, brought thither from India. The Inhabitants are Idolaters: very great Serpents with diagram are bred in this Countrey, whereof fome contayne ten paces in length, and in thickneffe ten jels from the 60 (pannes. They have two little feet before nigh the head, with three talons or clawes like Lions, fand & earth. and the eyes bigger then a Groat loafe, very finning. They have their mouthes and jawes to Great Drawide, that they are able to Iwallow a man; great and tharpe teeth: nor is there any man, or other huing Creature, which may behold those Serpents without terror : there are found lesse, of

meats. Leauing this Province, they proceed fifteene dayes journey further, and in the meane space meet with Castles, and many Villages, whose Inhabitants have the same customes, that the Province of Cainda hath, and at length they come vnto a River, called Briss, where the Pro- The River uince of Cainda is bounded. In this River Gold is found in great plentie, which they call, Di Brius yeelding

Caiuda.

cight, fixe, or fine paces long, which are taken after this manner. In the day time they vie to lie hid, by reason of the heat, in holes, out of the which they goe by night to seeke their prey, and denoure what focuer they get, Lions, Wolues, or others : and then goe to feeke water, leauing fuch a tract with their weight in the fands, as if some piece of timber had beene drawne there. Whereupon the Hunters fasten under the sands sharpe Iron prickes in their usual tracts. whereon they are wounded and flayne. The Crowes prefen ly ring his knell, and by their craing cries inuite the Hunters, which come and flay him, taking forth his gall, profitable for diuers Medecines (amonest other things, for the biting of mad Dogs , a penie weight given in Wine; and far women in trauell for carbuncles and puthes) and they fell the fl. th deare as being exceeding delicate. There are bred great Horles in this Prounce, which by Merchanes are carried into India. They vie to take one bone out of the tayle, left l.e should bend his tayle hither and thither, and effeeme it more comely that it hang downe right. They yie long Stirrups as the Frenchmen; which the Tartars and other Nations for their shooting vie short, because when they shoot, they rise up. They vie Targets and Armour in the Warres, made of the hides of Buffals: they have Lances and Croffe-bowes, and poylon all their Arrowes. Some of them * Peyon and which are ill minded, are faid to carrie ' poyton about them cor to ually, that if they be taken, they may fuddenly fwallow it and death together, to preuent to reure. For which cause the great Lords haue Dogs dung ready, which they force them to iwallow, and that forceth them to vomit the poylon. Before the great Can subtected them, they yied, that when any Stranger which feemed of good prefence and parts lodged with them, they flue him by night, supposing that those good parts of that man might abide afterwards in that house; and this was the death

Cardandan

A wicked cu-

The rareneffe rings for the

the fame to be fome places. porteth the like cuftome,

Going from the Prouince Carazan, after fine dayes journey Westward, is the Prouince Caradandan, which also is subject to great Can. The chiefe Citie thereof is called Vociom. The Inhabitants thereof vie Porcelanes and weighed pieces of Gold in thead of money: for in that Countrey, and many other lying round about, Siluer mines are not found, and they give one ounce of Gold for five ounces of Silver, and great gayne is made by the change. The men and women of that Countrey couer their teeth with thinne plates of Gold , which they fo fit vinto Golden coues them, that the teeth themselues seeme (as it were) to be set in the plates. The men about their armes and legs make lifts, pricking the places with Needles, and putting thereon a blacke indelible tincture. And these lists or markes are esteemed with them a great galantrie. They give their minds to nothing but riding, hunting, hawking, and exercises of Armes, leaving the houfhold cares to the women, who are he ped therein by flaues which they buy or take in Warre, When a woman is brought to bed flee iorfakes the bed, washeth the shild and dreffeth it, and * Strato in his then the husband * lieth downe and keepes the child with him fortie dayes, not fuffering it to depart : is vilited meane while of friends an neighbours, to cheare and comfort him. The woman lookes to the house, carrie the husband his brothis to his bed, and gives fucke to the child by done with the him. Their Wine is made of Rice and Spice, their meat Rice, and raw flesh dressed, as is before Spaniards in mentioned. In this Province there are no other Idols, take that every familie adoreth the oldeft man in the honfe, of whom they fay come themselves and all they have. They dwell for the most part, in wilde and mountainous places. But Forrainers come not to those Mountaines, because the ayre would kill them, being in Summer very corrupt. They aue no letters, but make their with the Tiba. Contracts and Obligations by tallies of wood, the halfe whereof the one keepeth, and the owith the 1001.
rei, Le us f ther, the other: which being afterward payd, the talliers rendred. There are no Phylicians in the Brisslans. this Province, nor in Cands, Vociam and Carasan: but when any is ficke, they call the Magi-Tallies of con- cians, or Idoll Priefts together, and he ficke partie declareth his direafe vinto them : then the The decentual Magicians dance, and found certaine instruments, and bellow forth fongs in honour of their Gods, while at length the Deuill entreth into one of them skipping and playing in the dance. the Magicians. Then leaving the dance, they confilt with him that is poll flor, for what cause that disease hapned vnto him, and what is to be done for his reconerie. The Deuill answereth by him, because he hath done this or that, or because he hath offended this or that God : therefore, he fell into this difease. Then the Magicians intreat that God to pardon him that offence, promising, that if the ficke partie recouer, he shall offer a Sacrifice of his owne bloud. But if the Deuill thinke the weake partie to be ticke of fuch a difeate that he cannot be freed from the fame, he yeeh to answere: This man hath so grieuously offended that God, that he cannot by any facrifices bee appealed. But if he thinke he shall recouer, he commandeth to offer so many Rammes having blacke heads, and to prepare fo many Magicians with their wines, by them to offer Sacrifices, and that God may then bee appealed towards him. Which being heard, his kinfmen quickly cause those things to be done which the Denill commanded: they kill Rammes, and sprinckle their bloud in the ayre, and the Magicians affembled with their Witches, light great Candles, 60 and perfume the whole house with incense, making fume of Lignum Aloes, and sprinckle the broth of the flesh in the ayre, together with the potion made of spices : all which being duely performed, they skip about againe in a dance in honour of that Idoll, which is supposed to have beene favourable to the ficke, finging, and making an horrible novie with their voyces. Thefe

CHAP.4.S.7. Deuill-cures. Tartars firatagem against Elephants.

things being done, they aske the possessed agains, whether by these things the Idol be appealed. Ifhe answer, No, they presently prepare themselues to fulfill another command of his. But if he answer, that he is satisfied, they fit downe at the Table, and eate the fielh offered to the Idoll with great ioy, and drinke the confections. And dinner being ended, and the Magicians payed, every one returneth to his owne home. And when the ficke hath thus escaped the disease. through the prouidence of God, and hath beene restored to health, they attribute it to the Idoll whom they facrificed. But if he die, then they fay, the Idoll was defrauded, and that forme of the Sacrificers tasted thereof first. This is not done to all but to the Richer, the Deuill deluding their blindnesse.

d. VII.

Of the Province of Mich and Bengala, how they were conquered to the Can: Of Cangigu, Amu, Tholoman, Cintigui, and some other parts of Cataio. And of the Conquest of Mangi.

No Dom. 1272: the Great Can fent an Armie into the Kingdome of Vociam, and Carazan to guard it, to the number of twelve thousand expert warriors, vnder the conduct of Neftardin a wife Captaine. As foone as the King of Mien, and the King of Bengala heard of their comming, affembling their forces, they iny ned Horseand Foot together, about three core thousand, and about a thousand Elephants bearing Castles, and in every Callle twelve or fixteene armed men were placed. With this Armie the King of Mien This by relaspeedily marched towards the Citie Vociam, where the Armie of the Tarrars refted. Neffardin tion; for they comming forth with a manly courage to fight against the Enemie, encamped against a certaine vie not to cagreat Wood , knowing that the Elephants with those Towres were not able to enter into the Wood. Then the King of Mien marcheth forth to meete them. But the Tartarian Horses per- His stratagem, ceiuing the Elephants to be present, which were placed in the first front of the battaile, were terrified with fo great feare, that they could not by any violence or policy be pronoked against 30 the Elephants. The Tartars therefore were compelled to alight from their Horses, and tying Fight & flight them to the Trees of the Wood, they come to fight on foot against the Elephants. In the front of Elephants.

of the battaile, all the Tartars purposely shot a multitude of Arrowes against the Elephants, which not able to indure the ftrokes of the Arrowes, speedily betooke themselues to flight, and with swift course went all vnto the next Wood, and brake their Caffles, and ouer-threw the armed men fitting in them, which the Tartars feeing , runne vnto their Horses , and getting vp vpon them, furiously fall vpon the Kings Armie with great violence : and many of either Armie fell, at length the King of Mien being put to flight, left the victorie to the Tartars, who haften to the Wood, and taking many Captiues, vied their helpe to take two hundred of thefe Elephants, And euer fince Great Can hath vied Elephants in his Armies which before hee had 40 not accustomed. Hereupon also he vanquished the Countries of the King of Mien and Bengala, and tubiected them to his Empire.

Departing from the Prouince of Cardandan, is a great descent, which continueth two dayes and a halfe, nor is there any habitation there, but a very large Playne, in the which, three dayes Market in a In the weeke many men meete together for Trading. Many descend from the great Mountaines dishabited of that Countrey, bringing gold with them to change for filter, to wit, giving one ounce of gold Playne. for fine ounces of filuer: whereupon, many Merchants from forraine Nations come thither, who bringing filuer carrie away gold, and bring thither merchandifes to fell to those people. For to uer. those high Mountaines, in which, they who gather gold in that Countrey, dwell, no flranger can come, feeing the way is vnpaffable and intricate. When you are past that Playne, going to-50 ward the South, Mien bordereth vpon India, and the way lyeth fifteene dayes journey in pla-

ces not inhabited and wooddy, in which innumerable Elephants, Vnicornes, and other wild Vnicornes or beafts wander.

After that fifteene dayes is found Mien, a great and noble Citie, the head of the Kingdome, Mien, and subject to Great Can. The Inhabitants thereof haue a peculiar language, and are Idolaters. In this Citie there was a King, who being readie to die, commanded that neere to his Sepulchre, there should be made two Towres in Pyramide fashion, one at the head, the other at the feete, both of Marble, of the heigth of ten fathom. On the top was a round Ball. He caused one to bee covered all over with gold a finger thicke, and the other with filter. And vpon the top round about the Balls, many little golden and filuer Bells were hanged, which at the blowing of the 60 winde gaue a certaine found. The Moniment or Sepulchre was also couered with Plates, partly of gold, partly of filter. He commanded this to be made in honor of his Soule, and that his memorie should never decay among men. And when Great (an minded to subdue this Citie , hee fent a valiant Captaine, and the greatest part of his Armie were Iesters, of which his Court is alway furnished. These winning the Citie, would not violate that Moniment without the Cans

The Prouince Bengala bordereth upon India toward the South, which Great Can fubdued when Marco Polo lived in his Court. The Countrey hath a proper King, and peculiar language. The Inhabitants thereof are all Idolaters: they have Maiters which keepe Schooles and teach Idolatries and Inchantments; a thing common to all the great Men of that Country, They eate Fiesh, Rice and Milke : they have Cotton in great plentie, and by reason thereof, much and great trading is exercised there: they abound also with Spike, Galang:l, Ginger, Sugar, and diuerso-

Osen as bigge ther Spices. Huge Oxen alio are there, comparable with Elephants in height but not in thickas Elephants. neffe. Many Eunuches are made in this Prouince, which are afterwards fold vnto Merchants. This Province continueth thirtie dayes journey, in the end whereof going Eastward is the Pro-Cangigue hach his proper King and peculiar language. The Inhabitants thereof worship Idols.

Cangiga. Cangiga hath his proper King and pecur aringuage. Lie Himaniana which Much gold is The Kingsmin and are Tributaries to Great Can. Their King hath about three hundredt Wises. Much gold is the Canada of found in this Prouince, and many Spices, but they cannot easily be transported, seeing that countrev is farre distant from the Sea. There are also many Elephants in it, and much game of many wild Beafts. The Inhabitants thereof line with Flesh, Milke and Rice. They want Wine, but they make good drinke of Rice and Spices. Aswell the Men as the Women vie to embroider their 20 Faces, Necks, Hands, Bellies and Legs, making the Images of Lions, Dragons and Birds, and fo firmely imprint them that they cannot easily bee put out : and the more such Images any one hath, by so much is hee esteemed themore gallant. And there be Professors of this foolish Art of flesh embroiderie, which vse no other Trade but this Needle-worke, and dying of Fooles-skinnes.

Amu is an Eafterly Prouince subject to Great Can, whose Inhabitants worship Idols, and haue a peculiar language. They abound with Herds of Cattell, and haue plentie of Victuals, and many Horses and those excellent, which Merchants bring into India. They have also many Buffes and Oxen, because there are delicate Pastures there. As well Men as Women, weare bracelets of gold and filuer of great value on their armes, also the like on their legs : but those of the Women are of most value. From Amu to Cangiguare fine and twentie dayes journey.

The Prouince Tholoman is eight dayes journey diffant to the East from Amu, subject vnto 30 Great Can, having a peculiar language, and worshipping Idols. The Men and Women thereof are tall and goodly, of a browne colour. The Countrey is very well inhabited, having many and firong Castles and Cities. The men are exercised in Armes and accustomed to warre. They burne the bodies of their dead, and inclosing the Reliques of their bones in a Cheft, hide them in the Caues of the Mountaines, that they cannot bee touched either of man or beaft. Gold is in great plentie there, and in itead of money they vie Porcelanes brought from India, as also in Cangina

From the Prouince Tholoman, the way leadeth towards the East on a River, by which are many Cities and Cailles, and at the end of twelue dayes you come to the great Citie Cintigui. The 40 Countrey is subject to Great Can, and the Inhabitants thereof are addicted to Idolatrie. Excel-Cloth made of lent Clothes are made in this Countrey of the barkes of Trees, wherewith they are clothed in the Summer. Very many Lions are there, so that for feare of them, none dare sleepe without doores by night. The ships which goe vp and downe the River, for feare of the Lions, are not fashed to the banke. There are great Dogs in the same Countrey, so hardie and strong, that they seare not to adventure on the Lion: And it often hapneth, that two Dogs and one Archer kill a Lion: for the Dogs fet on by the man give the onfet, and the Lions nature is presently to seeke shelter from some Tree, that the Dogs may not come behind him : neither yet will his great heart suffer him to runne from the Dogs, left he should seeme afraid; but he holds his stately pace, the man meanwhile shooting, and the Dogs fastning on his hinder parts, but with such quicknesse, that when 10 the Lion turnes on them they are gone. And then doth this magnanimous Beaft hold on his way againe to feeke fuch Tree fuccour, that with Bitings and Arrowes he fometimes comes fhort, and with expense of bloud dyeth by the way. This Countrey aboundeth with Silke, which by Merchants is carried to divers Provinces by the River. They live on Merchandife, their money is Paper. They are valiant in Armes. At the end of ten dayes is the Citie Sidinfu, and twentie dayes from thence is Gingui, and foure dayes thence is Pazanfu towards the South, and is in Cataio returning by the other fide of the Province. The people are Idolaters and burne their dead. There are also certaine Christians which have a Church : all vnder the Can and vie Paper money. They make Clothes of Gold, and Silke, and Launes very fine. By this Citie (which hath many Cities vnder it) goes a great River which carries store of merchandise to Cambalu, made by many Chan-60 nels to paffe thither. But wee will paffe hence, and proceeding three dayes journey, speake of

> Ciangla is a great Citie toward the South of the Province of Cataio, I biest to the Can, the Inhabitants are Idolaters, and burne their dead. Their money is the (Mulberie) Paper coine of the

CHAP.4.57. Salt made of earth, Nauie Royall, Fanfur K. of Mangi, Argus. 05

Can. In this Citie and the Territories they make store of Salt, for that Earth is very falt, and The Salt of out of it they get Salt, after this manner. They heape vp Earth in manner of an Hill, and powre Canglu. water vpon it, which drawes the faltnesse of the Earth vnto it, and then runnes into certaine Conduits, and is boyled in Pannes till it be congealed to Salt faire and white, to the Cans and their great gaine, being carried into other Countries to fell. There are great Peaches very good, which weigh two pounds a piece. Fine dayes journey beyond the Citie Ciangla, in Cataio South- Great Peathes ward flandeth another Citie, named Ciengli (in which way are many Cities and Caffles, all lub- cianeli. iect to the Can) through the middeft whereof runneth a great River, very convenient for ship-

ping laden with merchandiles. Six dayes iourney thence to the South (all which way hath great Cities and Caffles of Idolaters) is the noble Kingdome and great Citie Tudinfu, which had his proper King, before it was Tudinfu Subdued to Great Can, Anno 1272. and hath eleven Royall Cities, famous for traffick, subiect to the jurifdiction thereof. It is very delectable for Gardens and Fruits, rich in Silkes. The Can fent to the government hereof one of his Barons, named Lucanfor, with eightie thousand Horse: who rebelled against his Lord, but was shine by a power of one hundred thousand under two other Barons fent against him, and the Countrey reduced to obedience. Seuen dayes off (riding by many Cities and Castles of Idolaters, plentifull of all things) towards the South is the famous Citie, named Singuimatu, vnto the which on the South, a certaine great River runneth, which be- Singui matic ing divided by the Inhabitants of the place into two Rivers, floweth partly to the East towards Caraio, and partly to the West towards Mangi. By these Rivers, innumerable Vessels for muleitude, and incredible for their greatnesse and wealth, bring necessaries to both Provinces. If you goe fixteene dayes journey towards the South from Singuimatu, you still meet with Cities

After that fixteene dayes, you come vnto a great River, named Carameran, which is faid to carameran. flow out of the Kingdome of Vmean or Presbyter John, of the North. It is very deepe, and carrieth Ships of great burthen; it is also flored with Fish, Within one dayes journey of the Sea there are in this River fifteene thousand Saile, each of which carrieth fifteene Horses and twentie Men, befides Victualls and the Mariners. This is the Con: Fleet kept there in readingfie , to 20 carrie an Armie to any of the Ilands in the Sea, if they should rebell; or to any remote Region Neere the banke of the River where these Ships are kept, is Congenza, and over against it Quanza, one a great Citie, the other small. After you are past that River, you enter into the noble Kingdome of Mange. And doe not thinke that wee have handled in order the whole Province of Cataio; yea, I have not spoken of the twentieth part. For, M. Polo passing by the faid Pro-

and Townes where much trading is exercifed. The Inhabitants of these Countries are Idolaters,

nince hath onely described the Cities in his way, leauing those on both hands, and those betwixt thele, to present tediousnesse. The Province of Mangi is the most rich and famous that is found in the East: and An. 1269. had a certaine King, named Faufur, richer and mightier then any which had reigned there in an Faufur King of

hundred veeres, but a man peaceable and full of almefdeeds, to beloued of his fubiects, that there- Mangi, which 40 by, and by the strength of the Countrie, he seemed inuincible. Whereby it came to passe, that is now called the King as well as the People, loft the vie and exercise of Warre and Armes. All the Cities were compassed with Ditches, a Bow shoot broad, full of Water. Hee held in pay no Horses, because he feared none. And hence it came to passe, that the King giving himselfe to pleasure more then was meete, enjoyed continuall delights. He maintayned about a thousand goodly Laffes, with which he passed his time in pleasure. He nourished Justice, and preserved Peace. No man durst offend his Neighbour, and diffurbe the Peace, for feare of feuere vnpartiall punishment. So that Artificers would often leave their Shops full of Wares open by night, and yet none would prefume to enter into them. Tranailers and strangers most fafely walked day and night, throughout that whole Kingdom, fearing no man. The King himfelte also was pitifull and mercifull towards the Poore, and forfooke not them that were oppressed with necessitie, or pinched with penurie. 50 Besides, euery yeere hee tooke vp twentie thousand young Infants, cast off by their Mothers, which through pouertie were notable to keepe them, which he brought vp, and fet them when they were growne to some Trade, or married the young Men with the Maids which hee had in like fort educated

Cublai Can was of a differing disposition to Fanfur, and delighted onely in Warres and Conquests, and to make himselfe Great; he sent a great Armie leuied of Horse and Foot, and made one, named Chinfan Baian (that is, one hundred eyes) Generall thereof. Hee, therefore comming Chinfan Baian with his Armie and a Fleet to the Prouince of Mangi, first summoned the citie Conganzan to yeeld another Argun obedience to his Emperour .: Who refusing the same, hee departed without any assault given to in the signifithe Citie and required the fame of the fecond Citie; which likewife setiting, he marched forward name. 60 to the third, and fourth, and received the like answere of them all. But he assaulted the next with great courage, and vanquished the same by force, and flue every mothers child therein; which so affrighted and terrified the reft, that they all presently yeelded. Moreover, Great Can sent ano-

ther great Armie after the former, with both which Armies hee marched against the chiefe Citie

Fmbroidred Gallants.

Cintleni.

are now vied Thardie Dogs.

Cianely.

The flight of King Fanfur. • This name Mangi and China, are fo

diuers Rogi. Reader is to objerue, that China is a

battell, fled with his wealth and treasures in ships which he had prepared to certaine impregnable Hands in the Ocean (where he after died) committing the cuttodie of the Citie of June fai to his wife, bidding her to defend it as well as shee could; for being a woman shee need nor feare death, it shee were taken. It is to be observed, that King Fanfar had beene told by his Diuiners, that his Kingdome should never be taken from him, but by one which had at hundred eyes: which the Queene knew, and therefore was still in hope not to lofe the Citie, how focuer fireightned; thinking it impossible for one man to have an hundred eyes. But one day she heard differentiat that the Commander of the Tartars was called Baian Chinfan, that is to fav, An hundred eyes. differentiate that the Commander of the Wherefore, calling for the Commander of the Tanara Armie, thinking him to bee the man which the Aftrologers spake of, shee delivereth the Citie vnto him. Which being heard, the Citizens, and Inhabitants of the whole Prounce, revolted to the obedience of great Can. The Queene was fent vnto the Court of great Can, and was most honourably received by him, and maintayned like a Queene. And now wee will speake of the Cities name to the of Manei.

knowne, and that Kingdome hath appellations diverfly diverfixed a either from the Familie reigning (which now is called City and the Kingdome Min and Min Cin, are not farre from Mangi) and by the Tartars, when they togged, it was called Han and before, the Aingdoine man, and man and being and being without any great diffonance from Mangi: Or else by generall appellations common to all ages, &c. See our following relations of Ricci and Triganism.

d. VIII.

of the Cities of Mangi (now called China) and the rarities thereof: the many wonders of Quinfai, the Palaces, Pleasures, Rites and Gouernment. observed by the Natives, and the Tartars.

Coiganza,

The Sale of

* Terraglio,

Caine

Phofanes.

Tingui.

Salt pits. Cintra

M. Pole Gouernou: of Nanghin.

Organzu is a faire and rich Citie, lituate towards the South-east, and East in the end tiance of the Province of Mangi, (from Cataio, whence the Ambour paffed) where are alway great flore of thips , being leated on the River Caramoran. Great flore of 20 Merchandife is carried thicher. Salt is also made there in great abundance.

Going from Coiganzu, you ride towards the South-east one dayes journey on a stone * Caufie; on both fides whereof are great Fennes with deepe waters, whereon they may palle with thins : neither is there any entrance into Mangi but by thipping (as the Captaine of the Con did) but by this Caufie. At the end of that dayes journey is a Citie called Punghin great and faire. The people make clothes of Gold and of Silke, are Merchants and Idolaters. The Paper money of great Can is received throughout that whole Countrey. It is plentifull of all necesfaries of lite.

To the Citie Caim, is from Panghin one dayes journey South-east, and this is also a famous Citie, abounding with fish, and game, of beasts, and fowle: especially Phesants are found an there, in exceeding great plentie, as great as Peacocks, of which you may have three for one Venetian groat.

Proceeding further hence one dayes journey, you come thorow a well manured and peopled Countrey to the Citie Tingui, which although it be not great, yet hath it exceeding great plentie of victuals. They are Merchants, and very many thips are also there: plentie of beafts and fowles : It is feated to the South-east, and on the left hand towards the East three dayes iourney off is the Ocean: and in the space betweene, are very many Salt pits; and they make great store of Salt. After this, is Gingui a great Citie, whence the Countrey is furnished with Salt, whereof the Can makes great profit, beyond beliefe. They are Idolaters, and have Paper mo-Iangui, Head ney. From Cingui riding towards the South-east, you meet with the noble Citie langui, vinder 50 of 27. Cities, the government whereof are other Cities; feven and twentie in number. And in that Citie refideth one of the twelue Barons which are Governours of Provinces chosen by the great Can. They are Idolaters, and live of Merchandise. They make Armes and Harnalle for warre. And Malter Marco had the fole government thereof by commission of the great Can, three yeeres together in stead of one of those Barons.

Nanghin is a Picuince to the West, one of the greatest and noblest of Mangi, a place of great Merchandise. They are Idolaters, ipend Paper money, have store of beasts and fowle, wille and tame. They make clothes of Gold and Silke, and are rich Merchants, and the Countrey is very commodious to the Can, specially by Customes of Merchandite. There is great plentie of Corne. Stanfu is a noble and great Citie in the Province of Mangi, and hath twelve rich and 60 great Cuties subiect vnto her juridiction. They make great stere of Silkes and cloth of Gold, have plentie of game and fowle, and of all things pertayning to a Citie of note : to firong, that it was three yeeres befieged, and could not be vanquified by the Armie of the Turtars, when the Prouince of Mangi was fublued. For it is compafied on every fiele with Lakes, that there

was no way vn:o it, but on the North: fo that thips came and went continually, bringing plentie of victuals: which not a little afflicted great Can. The two brethren Matter Nicolo, and Matter Maffio, then in his Court, hearing hereof, went to him, and offered their feruice to demis certaine Engines after the manner of the Welt, able to thoot a ftone of three hundred weight, thereby to kill men, and ruine houles. The Can appointed them the best Carpenters which were Neftorian Christians, who made three (Mangani) of thole Engines in a floor space, kind of fine which were proued and approued before him, and by thips tent vnto his Armie. Planting them gines. It heretherefore against the Citie Sianfu; they began to cast great stones into the Citie; and the hist by appeares falling upon a certaine house, brake it for the most part, with the violence thereof. Which the sharthey had To belieged Inhabitants feeing, were very much aftonished, and yeelded themselves, and became not the vicos fulvicet to the obedience of great Can, on the same conditions with the rest of Mangi; to the the Cannon.

great repute of the two Venction brethren.

From the Citie Stanfu, to a certaine Citie, named Singui, are numbred fifteene miles South- singui. eaftward, which although it be not great, yet hath it an exceeding multitude of Ships , being teatre woon the greatest River in the world, called Quian, the bredth of which in certaine pla- Quian. ces, con ayneth ten miles, in other eight, and in some fixe. But the length thereof extendeth it illfe aboue an hundred dayes journey from the head to the Sea. Innumerable other Rivers flow into it, which tunne therow divers Regions, and are navigable, and make it fo great; incredible flore of Merchandife is brought by this River. There are also very many other Cities, in 20 number about two hundred, which participate of this River: it floweth through the bounds of fixteene Provinces. The greatest commoditie is Salt, wherewith all the Cities which communicate in these waters are stored. Mafter Marco faw at one time at Singui fine thousand ships. and yet other Civies on that River have more. All those ships are covered, and have but one mail, and one favle, and viually carrie foure thousand, and so vowards, some of them twelve thouland Venetian Cantari. Neither vie cordage of Hempe, except for the mait and layle, but have Canes fifteence paces long, which they rive into thinne parts from one end to the other, and binding the cut pieces together, and wreathing them , make very long ropes, to that fome of them contaying three hundred fathom in length. And those lines are as strong as Hempen. and ferue for halfes and cables to draw their ships up and downe the River, each thip having ten 30 or twelue Hories for that purpole. On that River in many places are rockie hillockes, on which are built Monafteries to their Idols: and all the way are Villages and places inhabited.

Cameni is a little Citie, vpon the forefaid River South-eastward, where every yeere is brought Cameni. ftore of Corne and Rite, carried the most part to Cambalu. For they may passe thither by Lakes Hand-made and Rivers, and by one deepe large hand-made River, which the Can caused to be made for pas- River. fage from one River to another, and from Mangi to Cambala without going to Sea. Which worke is goodly and wonderfull for the fite and length, and more for the profit thereby to the Cities. Hee hath made also great Causies to goe on land by those waters commodiously. In the mids of the laid River is an Iland of a Rocke, on which is erected a great Temple and Monafterie, in which are two hundred Idolatrous Monkes. This is the Mother-temple and Monafte-40 rie of many others.

Cinghianfu is a Citie of Mangi, rich in Merchandise, plentifull of game, of wilde beatls cinebiantu. and fowle, and of victuall. In it are two Churches of Nefforian Christians, built Anno 1274. when the great Can fent Gouernour thither, Marfachis a Nestorian, which built them. From the Citie Cinghianfu, in three dayes journey South-eastward, you find many Cities and

Castles all Idolaters, and at last come to the Citie Tingnigui, a great and faire Citie, abounding Tinguigui. with all kinde of victuals. When Chinfam Baian, Generall of the Armie of the Tartars conquered the Province of Mangi, he fent many Christians (called Alani) against this Citie, which was double walled; into the inner they retired; into the other the Alans entred, and found there abundance of Wine, whereofafter a bad journey, they began to drinke fo largely, that they were all drunke: and the Citizens in their fleepe fuddenly falling upon them, flue them all, 50 none escaping. But Baian hearing this, sent another great Armie against those Citizens, which shortly vanquishing the Citie, in reuenge, put them all to the sword, leaving none alive.

The great and excellent Citie Singui, contay neth in circuit twentie miles. Great multitudes Singui. of people are in it: it hath many rich Merchants, and cunning Artificers, and it hath allo very many Phylicians, and Magicians and Wilemen or Philosophers. In the Mountaines of this Citie, Phylicians and Rhubarb and Ginger grow in great plenty. This Citie hath fixteen Cities under the jurification Philosopher. thereof, where much trading is vied, and very many carious Ares are exercised. Very many Silkes are made there. The word Singui, in their language, fignifieth, The Citie of the Earth, as allo they have another Citie, which they call Quinfar, that is to fay, The Citie of Heaven. From Singui one dayes iourney is Vagiu, where is also abundance of Silke, and cunning Artificers with 60 many Merchants.

Oing from Vagin three dayes, continually you find Cities, Caliles, and Villages, well peo-Apled and rich. The People are Idolaters, under the Can: at the end of those dayes you

98

come to Quinfai, which for the excellency hath that name (interpreted Citie of Heaven) for in the World there is not the like, in which are found to many pleafures, that a man would thinke of Heann, O he were in Paradife. In this Citie Mafter Marco Polo hath often beene, and confidered the fame with great diligence, observing the whole state thereof, setting downe the same in his memorials, as here shall be declared briefly. This Citie by common opinion, is an hundred miles in cirneauenty citie on Earth in cuit; for the threets and channels thereof are very wide. There are Market places exceeding grice, & more large. On the one fide a cleere Lake of fresh water, on the other a great River which enters in then meft in- many places, and carries away all the filth of the Citie, and to runneth into that Lake, thence continuing his courie to the Ocean: which caufeth a good ayre, and commodious paffage that heavenly both by land, and by thele channels. There may goe both Carts and Barkes to carrie necessanen in glorie? ries : and the report is , that there are twelve thousand Bridges great and small , and those on the chiefe channels are to high that a ship without her Malt may passe vinder, and about. The fituation. Charjots and Horles. On the other fide the Citie is a Ditch, about fortie miles long, which encloses hit on that fides

large and full of water from the River, made by the antient Kings of that Province, both to re-

ceine the overflowings of the water, and to fortifie the Citie: the earth which was taken out

the other, with many Bridges trauerling it. And every foure miles is found fuch a Market- 20

place, two miles, as is faid, in compaffe. There is also one large channell, which runnes against

the faid threet, behind the Market-places, on the next banke whereof are erected great Store-

houses of thone, where the Merchants from India, and other parts lay up their Merchandise.

Ten Market being layd within as a banke or hill encompassing. There are ten chiefe Market-places (belides inplaces. finite others along the streets) which are square, halte a mile in each square. And from the forepart of them is a principall threet fortie paces wide, running right from one end of the Citie to

The high ftree: The mayne

The Markets.

at hand, and commodious to the Market-places. In each of these Market-places is a concourse three dayes in the weeke of perfons betwixt force and fiftie thouland, which bring thither all things that can be defired for mans life, of all beafts of game, and fowles: that Lake veelding fuch commediousnesse to bring them vp, that for a Venetian groat you may have two Geese, and four Duckes for as much. Then follow the Butcher-rowes of Veale, Beefe, Kid, and Lambe, which the great and rich men eat; for the poore eat vncleane meats without respect. There are all forts of herbs and fruits continually, and amongst the rest buge Peares, weighing ten pounds a piece, white within like paste, and very fragrant: Peaches yellow and white very delicate: Grapes grow not there, but are brought from other places dried very good, and Wine alfo, but not to effeemed in those parts, that of Rice and Spices contenting them. Every day from the Ocean is brought up the Riner (which is the space of fine and twentie miles) great quantitie of fish, besides that of the Lake, so much as a man would thinke would never be bought, and yet in a few houres is gone. All those Market-places are encompassed with high houses, and underneath are shops of Artificers, and all fort of Merchandises, Spiceries, Iewels, Pearles, and in some onely Rice-wine. Many ffreets answere one another in the faid Market-places. In some of them are many Baths of cold waters accommodated with attendants of both fexes, a thing which from children they vie themselves vnto. There are chambers also in the faid Baths with 40 hot waters for thrangers which are not accustomed to the cold waters. They wash enery day; neither doe they eat before they have washed. In other streets are mercenarie Profitutes in such number, that I dare not report it : and not

Trades of di-

onely neare the Market-places, where they have their places appointed, but thorow all the Citie they stand very pompoutly with great odours, many feruants, and their houses adorned. There are very practike in making iports, and daliances, and fweetest pleasures rauishing (fooles) forth of themselves. In other streets are the Physicians, the Astrologers, they which teach to reade and write, and infinite other Trades, At each end of enery Market-place is a Palace, where Lords and Governours are appointed by the King to determine difficulties which happen betwixt Merchants or others, as also to looke to the Guards on the Bridges, punishing the negli- 10 gent. Alongst the principall Street (whereof wee spake) on both tides are great Palaces with Gardens: and neere them houses of Artificers, and such multitudes of people continually going to and fro, that a man would wonder whence such multitudes should bee prouided of victuals. A faucy Citie. And Mafter Marco learned of an officer of the Cuftome-house in Quinfai, that by reckonings a ppeared the daily expence of Pepper in Quinfai, to be three and fortie Some, and enery Soma is two hundred twentie three pounds. Hence may be ghessed the quantitie of Victuals, Fleili, Wine, Spiceries, were there ipent.

The Inhabitants are Idolaters, fpend Paper money, are white and faire complexion, apparelled for the most part in Silke, which growes in all that Territorie abundantly, besides that which is brought from other places. There are twelve principall mysteries, each of which have 60 one thousand shops; and in each shop or standing, are ten men, fifteene, or twentie at worke, and in some fortie under one Master. The rich Masters doe no worke with their hands, but stand civilly adorned, or rather pompoully, especially their wives, with Iewels invaluable. And although the antient Kings ordayned, that the child should bee of the fathers Trade; yet the

rich are permitted not to worke, but to keepe shop, and men working in the same Trade. Their Houses are well ordered, and wrought richly, adorned with Pictures and other stupendious costs. The Natives are peaceable, know not to manage Armes, nor keepe them in their Houses : nor is there ifrife and debate among it them. They make their workes with great finceritie. They loue in fuch amitie, that one Street feemes as one House, without jealousies of their Wives, which they hold in great respect, and it would be reputed great disgrace to speake a dishonest word to a married Woman. They entertayne Merchant-strangers kindly, both in their houses, and with best Great neighadvice for their affaires. But they are loth to fee Souldiers and the Guards of the Grand Can, as bourbood

CHAP.4.S.8. Quinfay pleasures, Funerals, Hospitals, Mangi Garrisons,

by whom they are bereft of their naturall Lords and Kings.

About the Lake are built faire Buildings and great Palaces of the chiefe men : and Temples of their Idols with Monasteries of many Monkes. In the midit of the Lake are two Ilands, vpon each of which is a Palace with incredible numbers of Roomes; whither they refort vpon occasions of Marriages or other Featts; where Prouisions of Vessels. Naperie, and other things are maintayned in common for such purposes, one hundred sometime accommodated at once in seusrall Roomes. In the Lake alfoare Boates and Barges for pleafure, adorned with faire Seates and Pleafures. Tables, and other prouisions for Bankets, coursed about and plaine, vpon which men if and with Poles to make the Boat goe, the Lake being but shallow, Within they are painted; without, are windowes to open and thut at pleature. Nor can any thing in the World feeme more pleafant then in this Lake to have fuch an object, the Citie fo fully prefenting it felfe to the eye, with so many Temples, Monasteries, Palaces, Gardens with high Trees on the Waters, Barges, People: for their cuitome is to worke one part of the day, and to differ to fome part to this fo-

lace with their Friends, or with Women in the Lake; or elfe by Chariots riding thorow the Citie, which is also another of the Quinfay pleasures. For all the streets are paued with stone; Stone wayes as also are all the high Wayes in the Province of Mangi, onely for the Postes is left on the side, a space vnpaued. The principall street of Quinsay is paued ten paces on each hand, and in the midft it is full of Gravell with paffages for the Water, which keepe it alway cleane. On this street are alway innumerable long close Chariots, accommodated with Clothes and Cushions of filke, for fix persons; which solace themselues in the street, or goe to Gardens, and there passe the time in places made by the Gardeners for that purpose, and returne at night in the Gid

When one is borne, the Father fets downethe print of Time, and with that note goes to the Aftrologer to confult of his future fortunes. Of these Aftrologers are a great number in every Aftrologers Market place. They will not celebrate a marriage without such consultation. When one dies that is of note, his Kindred clothe themselues in Canuale, and so both Men and Women accom- Funerals. manie him to the burning place, playing on Instruments, and finging all the way prayers to their Idols : and being comne to the place, cast into the fire many Papers of Cotton, whereon are painted Slaues, Horses, Camels, Clothes of gold and like, Monies, which they thinke hee shall really possesse in another World; and make such minstrellie, in conceit of the loy wherewith the Idole there receive his Soule, where hee beginneth (they fay) to live anew. In every street are 40 Towres of stone, whither in danger of fire they vie to carrie their goods, their timber houses being much subject to such casualtie.

The Can hath ordayned that on the most part of the Bridges, day and night, there stand under Warders. a couert ten Guardians, fiue by day and fine by night; and in every Guard is a Tabernacle of Wood with a great Bason, whereby they know the houres of the day and night, which at every Clocks. houres end the Warders frike to notifie what houre, one, two, &c. beginning at the Sunne rifing, and then agains at the beginning of the night. They walke vp and downe, and if any haue a light or fire after the deputed time, they cause him to answer it before the lustices or Gouernors aforesaid; or if any walkelater. If any be not able to worke, they carrie him to Hospitals, of Hospitals. which are exceeding many founded by the Kings of old, with great reuenues, thorow the Citie. When they are well againe, they are compelled to worke. If a fire happen; their from divers places come to quench it, and to carrie the goods into Boats, or the llands, or those Towres : for in the night the Citizens dare not come our, but those who are in danger. The Can alway keepeth here store of his best and faithfullest Souldierie, as being the best and richest place in the World. Within a mile of each other are builded Rampiers of wood, where a found is made to be Larums. heard further off, for like purpofes.

When the Can had reduced all Mangi to his obedience, hee divided it (being before but one Nine Vice-Kingdome) into nine parts, and fet a King ouer each, which there administers inflice. Euery royce in Minyeare they give account to the Cans Officers of the revenues, and other accidents: and every third gi. yeere are charged, as all other Officers are. One of these Deputie-Kings is resident at Quinfay, who is Gouernour of aboue one hundred and fortie Cities, all rich and great. Nor may this be a 60 wonder, seeing in Mangi there are twelve thousand Cities, all inhabited with rich and indu- 12000. Cities,

strious people. In every of which the Can maintayneth a Garrison, proportionable to the great- and their gerneffe and occasions, one thousand, ten or twentie thousand; net all Tartars, but Catagars; for mions. the Tartars are Horle-men, and keepe where they may exercise their Horses. Into Cathar he sends

those of Mangi, and Cathayans hither such as are fit for Armes, of which he makes choise every third veere : and fends for foure or fine yeeres together into places twentie dayes journey from their Countrey, and then fuffers them to returne home, others succeeding. And most part of the Cans Receits are this way expended : and if any Citie rebell, he fuddenly from the next Garrifons rayleth an Armie to reduce or destroy them. This Citie of Quinfai hath in continual Garrison thirtie thousand Souldiers; and that which hath least, hath one thousand in Horse

To speake now of the Palace of King Fanfar; his Predecessors caused to enclose a place of ten

Feifti.

miles circuit with high walls, and divided it into three parts. That in the midft was entred by one Gate; on the one fide and the other were great and large Galleries, the Roofe full ayned by to Pillars painted, and wrought with gold and fine azure: there were smaller at the entrie, and the further the greater; the fairest at the end, the Roofe fairely adorned with gold, and on all the Walls were painted the flories of the former Kings artificially. There every yeere on certaine Idoll holy-dayes, Fanfur kept his Court and featled his principall Lords, the great Matters, and rich Artificers of Quinfai, ten thousand at a time vnder those Terraces. This dured ten or twelve dayes with incredible magnificence, every guest independing to prefent himselfe in greatest pompe. Behinde this middle-most building was a wall, and going out which divided the Palaces in which was, as it were, a Cloyfter with Pillars, fuftayning the Porch or Terrace round about the Cloytter: wherein were Chambers for the King and Queene curioully wrought. From this Cloyfler was entrance into a Gallerie fix paces wide, in length extending to the Lake, all coue- 20 red. On each fide of this Gallerie were ten Courts, answering one another fashioned like Clov-1000 Women fters, each Court having fiftie Chambers with their Gardens, and in them one thou fand Laffes in 1000.cham. abode, which the King kept for his feruice, who fometimes with the Queene, fometimes with

them, went in his Barge on the Lake for folace, or to visit his Idoll Temples.

The other two parts of the Serraile were divided into Groues, Lakes, Gardens planted with Great Parke. Trees; in which were inclosed all forts of beafts, Roes, Bucks, Stags, Hares, Conies: and there the King folaced himfelfe with his Damfels in Charets or on Horfe-backe, no man entring there. There did he cause These to bunt with his Dogs, wearie whereof they went into those Groves. which answered one another ouer the Lakes, and there leaving their garments came forth naked. and fet themselues a swimming in the Kings presence. Sometimes hee would take his repast in 30 those Groues being serued by those Damsels, without once thinking of Armes, which saves meat cost him the soure save yee have heard. All this was told mee by a rich old Merchant of Quinfas, whiles I was there, one which had beene an inward familiar of King Fanfar, and knew all his life, and had feene that Palace flourishing, into which he would needs bring me. The Viceroy now refides there; and the first Galleries remayne as they were wont, but the Damsells Chambers are ruined; the wall also which encompassed the Woods and Gardens is fallen to the ground, the Beafts and Trees being gone. Twentie fiue miles from Quinfai is the Ocean betwixt the East and North-east, neere to

The Sea Gam- which is a Citie, called Gampa, a goodly Port, where arrive the Indian thips of merchandife. Whiles M. Marco was in Quinfai, account being given to the Grand Can of the Revenues, and 40 the number of the Inhabitants, he hath feene that there have beene enrolled one hundred and fixtie Toman of fires, reckoning for a fire, the Familie dwelling in one house: euery Toman con-1600000 houf- tayneth ten thousand, which makes fixteene hundred thousand Families : of all which there is holds in Quin- but one Church of Christians, and those Nestorians. Every house-holder is bound to have written ouer his doore, the names of the whole house-hold, Males and Females; also the number of Horfes: the names added or blotted out as the Familie increaseth or decreaseth. And this is obserued in Mangi and Catay.

Those also that keepe Innes, write in a Booke the names of their Guests, and the day and houre of their departure, which Booke they fend daily to the Lords or Magistrates, which relide at the Market-places. In Mangi the poore which are not able to bring vp their children, fell them 50 The Revenues which accrew to the Can from Quinfai, and the others pertayning thereto, be-

Reuenucs of Millions of Duckats.and 200800.

Cuftomes.

of gold and eight hundred thousand.

Quinfai, & the ing the ninth part of the Kingdome of Mangi, are first, of Salt every yeer eightie Toman of gold (euery Toman is eightie thousand Sazzi of gold, and euery Sazzo is more then one Florin of 20ld) which will amount to fix Millions and foure hundred thousand Duckats. The cause is, that that Prouince being nigh the Sea, there are many Lakes where the water in Summer is coagulated into Salt, where with fine other Kingdomes of that Province are ferued. There is flore of Sugar growing, which payeth as all other Spices doe, three parts and a third in the hundred. The like of Rice-wine. Alto those twelue mysteries (which we said had twelue thousand shops) and the Merchants which bring goods hither, or carrie any hence by Sea, pay the same price. They 60 which come from tarre Countries and Regions, as from the Indies, pay ten per cento. Likewife, all things there breeding, as Beafts, and growing out of the Earth, and Silke, pay tithe to the King. And the computation being made in the prefence of M. Marco, befides Salt before mentioned, yeerely amounts to two hundred and ten Toman, which will bee fixteene millions

CHAP.4. \$8. Concha a Kingdom, Zaitum a famous Port es Mart of Mangi. 101

FRom Oninfai one dayes iourney to the South-east are all the way Houses, Villages, faire Gar-Idens, plentitull of Victuals, at the end whereof is Tapinza, a taire and great Citic, in the juriddiction of Quinfal. Three dayes thence South-east is Vgain, and two dayes forther may your de Ve me that way, all the way finding Caitles, Cities, and cultivated Places, in such Neighbour-hood, that they feeme to Trauellers all one Citie; all in the fame jurifdiction of Quinfai. There are oreat Canes fifteene paces long and foure palmes thicke. Two dayes journey further is the Citie General, faire and great, and travelling further South-east are inhabited places, full of People and Gireal Trades. And in this part of Mange are no Muttons, but Beenes, Buffals, Goates, and Swine in creat plentie. At the end of foure dayes journey is found the Citie Zengtan, built on a Hill in Zincien. the midit of a River, which with her parted Armes embraceth and encompatieth it, and then runne one to the South-east, the other to the North-west. They are in the articliction of Quinfai, are Merchants, Idolaters, have store of Game. Three dayes sourney thence, thorow a goodly Countrey exceedingly inhabited, flands Gieza, a great Citie, the last of Quinfas Kingdome, Gieza. after which you enter into another Kingdome of Mangi, called Concha. (The principali Citie Conche, thereof is Fugin) by the which you travell, fix dayes journey South-cast, thorow Hills and Fugin. Dales, alway finding places inhabited and store of Game of Beails and Fowle. They are idolaters, Merchants, fabiect to the Can. There are fout Lions; there growes Ginger and Galangale plentie, with other forts of Spices, eightie pounds of Ginger for a Venetian groat. There is an herbe, whose truic hath the effect and gives the colour and imell of Saffron, but is not Salton, v-20 fed in their meates. They voluntarily eate mans flesh, if they die not of sicknesse, as daintier then others. When they goe to Warres, they shaue to the eares and paint their faces with azure; they are all Foot faue the Captaine which rideth, and vie Swords and Launces : are very craell.

and when they kill an Enemie, prefently drinke his bloud, and after eate his flesh. After those fix dayes travell is Quelinfu, a great Citie with three Bridges, each eight paces Quelinfu. broad and about one hundred long; the Women faire, delicate; and they have flore of Silke and Cotton, are great Merchants, haue flore of Ginger and Galingale. I was told, but faw them not. that they have Hennes without feathers, hayrie like Cats, which yet lay Egges and are good to Hayrie Hens. eate. Store of Lions make the way dangerous. After three dayes, in a populous Countrey which are Idolaters, and haue store of Silke, is the Citie Unguem, where is great plentie of Sugar, tent Vnguem. thence to Cambalu, which they knew not to make good till they became subject to the Can; in Sugu, 30 whose Court were Bab ylonians, which taught them to refine it with ashes of certayne Trees; they

before onely boyling it into a blacke patte. Fifteene miles further is Cangiu, still in the Realme Canrin. of Concha: and here the Can keepeth an Armie in realineffe for guard of the Countrey. Thorow this Citie paffeth a River a mile broad, fairely built on both fides, and stored with Ships of Sugar and other lading. This River difembokes from hence five dayes journey South-east, at Zanum. a Sea Port, from whence the rich Ships of India come to this pleatant and fertile Citie, as is the way betwixt, in which are Trees or Shrubs of Camfire. Zaitum is a famous Port, where many Ships arrive with merchandife, thence differfed tho- Zaitum.

row all India. There is fuch ftore of Pepper, that the quantitie which comes to Alexandria to the Welt, is little to it, and as it were one of a hundreth : the concourse of Merchants is incredible, it being one of the most commodious Ports of the World, exceeding profitable to the Can, which Cultometh ten of the hundreth of all merchandife. They pay fo much for hire of thips also that there is not about one halfe of their merchandise remayning entire to themselves, and yet is that moitie very gainfull to them. The Citie is Idolatrous, given to pleafure; in it is much embroiderie and Arras worke. The River is great, very wide and fwift, and one ar ne of it south to Quinfai, at the parting of which is Tingui lituate, where Porcelane dufhes are made (as I was Tingui, whose told) of a certaine Earth which they cast vp in great Hills, and so let lie to all weathers for thir- Por lanc is tie or fortie yeeres without flirring : after which refining by time, they make Difhes, paint them made. and then put them in the Furnace. You may there have eight Dilhes for one Venetian Groat, In this Kingdome of Concha the Can hath as great Revenue almost as of the Kingdome of Quina fai. In their two M. Marco was, and in none of the other nine Kingdomes of Mange (in all which is one speech vied, with varietie of Dialect , and one fort of writing) and therefore will speake no more of them; but in the next Booke discourse of India the Greater, the Middle, and

the Leffe, in which hee was both in the feruice of the Can, and also in his returne with the

Queene to Argon,

ð. IX.

The Ships of India described, the 1le of Zipangu, the Sea Chin, and World of Ilands, the two lauas, Zeilan and other Ilands, with the rarities therein.

Here begins the third book Ships of India,

E will now enter into India and begin with their Ships, which are made of Firre and the Zapino Tree, with one deck, on which are twentie Cabbins (or leife, as the Ships are in quantitie) each for one Merchant. They have a good Roother, and foure Masts with foure Sailes, and some two Masts, which they erect or take downeat to pleature. Some greater Ships have thirteene Colis, or divitions, on the infide made with boards inchased, that if by blow of a Whale or touch on a Rocke water gets in , it can goe no further then that division a which being found is soone mended. They are all double, that is, have two course of boards one within the other, and are well calked with Ocam, and navled with Iron. but not pitched (for they have no Pitch) but anointed with the Oile of a certayne Tree mixed with Lime and Hemo beaten small, faster then Pitch or Lime, The greater ships have three hundred Mariners, others two hundred, one hundred and fittle, as they are in higheffe, and from five to fix thousand bags of Pepper. And they were wont to be greater then now they are: the Sea having broken into Ports and Ilands, that the defect of water, in some places, causeth them to build leffe. They vie also Oares in these Ships, foure mente an Oare; and the greater Ships 20 haue with them two or three ships lesse, able to carry a thousand bags of Pepper, having sixtie or more Mariners, which leffe thips ferue fometimes to tow the greater. They have also with them ten small Boats for fishing and other services, fastned to the sides of the greater ships, and let downe when they please to vie them. Also they fleath their ships after a yeares viage, so that then they have three course of boards; yea proceed on in this manner fometimes till there bee fix courses, after which they breake them vp. Hauing spoken of the ships, we will speake of India, and first of certayne Ilands.

Zijangu.

iera : golden fibles; and make diffe. rence betwist his owne Relations and tho c which he had at the

> froms Cap. taines: and in man things you finall fee Sir T.Ree and lations :gree with thele of Polo the Moral

Zipanen is an lland in the East. one thousand and five hundred miles distant from the shoares of Mangi, very great, the people white and faire, of gentle behaviour, in Religion Idolaters, and haue a King of their owne. They haue gold in great itore, for f. w Merchants come thither, and 30 the King permits no exportation of it. And they which have had commerce there tell of the Kings house couered with Gold, as Churches here with Lead, gilded Windowes, Floores of gold: there are many Pearles. Once; the fame of these riches made Cublai Can to fend to conquer it, two Barons, with a great fleet of ships, one named Abbaccatan, the other Vonfancin, which going from Zaitum and Quinfai arrived there; but falling out betwixt themfelues, could take but one Citie, and there beheaded all they tooke faue eight persons, which by an inchanted precious stone inclosed in the right arme betwixt the skinne and stesh, could not bee wounded with Iron: whereupon, with woodden Clubs, at the command of the two Barons they were flaine. It happed one day that a Northerne winde made great danger to the ships there riding, true of such to that fome were loft, some returned further into Sea, and others with the two Leaders and o- 40 gilding in Edos ther Principals returned home. Out of many broken thips fome escaped by boards, and swim-[4]. 46.1.63. ming on an Iland not inhabited foure miles off Zipangu, and were about thirtie thousand, without provisions of victuals or Armes, against whom the Zip inquanders, after the Tempeli was calmed, fet out a fleet of thios and an Armie. There comming on Land to feeke the wracked Tartars without order, gaue occasion to the Tartars to wheele about, the Hand (being high in the midft) and to get vnfeene to their ships, which were left vnmanned with the Streamers displaid: and with them they went to the chiefe Citie of Zipangu , where they were admitted without suspicion, and found few others but Women. The King of Zipangu belieged them fix moneths, and they having no reliefe yeelded themselves, their lives saved : this happened An. 1264. The men the Me- Can for this diforder of his two Commanders, cut off the head of one, and fent the other to a 10 gel vied to Cor faluage Hand, called Zorza, where hee cauteth Offenders to die, by fewing them, their hands bound, in a new-flayed hide of a B. ffall, which drying fhrinketh fo as it puts them in a little-eate to a milerable death. The Idols in this and the adiopning Ilands are made with heads of Kine, Swine, Dogs, and other failtions more monitrous, as with faces on their shoulders, with foure, ter, or an hundred hands (some, and to these they ascribe most power and doe most reverence) out M gol Re- and fav, that fo they learned of their Progenitors. They fometimes eate the Enemies which they take, with great joy, and for great dainties.

The Sea in which this Iland standeth, is called the Sea of (in or Chin, that is the Sea against being of Tailar Mangi: and in the language of that Iland, Mangi is called Chin: which Sea is fo large, that the Mariners and expert Pilots which frequent it, fay, that there are feuen thousand foure hundred 60 Note for China and fortie Ilands therein, the most part inhabited, and that there growes no Tree which yeelds not a good smell, and that there growes many Spices of divers kindes, especially Lignum Aloes, and Popper blacke and white. The ships of Zaitum are a yeere in their voyage, for they goe in The Monfons. Winter and returne in Summer, having Windes of two forts, which keepe their feafons. And

rius Countrey is farre from India. But I will leave them (for I never was there, nor are they jubic of to the Can) and returne to Zaitum. From hence fayling South-westward one thousand nue hundred miles, passing a Gulfe, called Cheinan (which continues two moneths fayling to the Northward, full confining on the South-east of Mangi, and eliewhere with Ama, and Toloman, and other Prouinces before named) within it are infinite Ilands, all in manner inhabited. In them is found store of Gold, and they trade one with the other. This Gulie feemes ano-

After one thousand and fine hundred miles sayling overthwart this Gulfe, is the Countrev Zi- Zianba. ambs, rich and great, hauing a King and Language proper, Idolaters, and paying tribute to the 10 Grand Can, of twentie Elephants, and Lionum Aloes in great quantitie yeerely. Anno 1268. the Can hearing of the riches of this Hand fent thicher Sagatu with an Armie, to inuade it. Accambale the King thereof was old, and made this composition of tribute. There are many Woods

of blacke Ebonie. Sayling thence betwirt the South and South-east one thousand & fine hundred miles, is Jana, Jana major, 1 Saying themes, the greatest Hand in the World, about three thousand miles in circuit, suppose this is supposed by Mariners, the greatest Hand in the World, about three thousand miles in circuit, rupported, said which payeth tribute to none, the Can not offering to subject it for the length and language that danger of the voyage. The Merchants of Zaitum and Mangi fetch thence flore of Gold and Spi- which fell is ces. South and South-westward fixe hundred miles from Lana are two llands, one Sondar, which called lana. is the greater; the other Condur, leffe, both detolate. Fifty miles South-east from them is a Pro-20 unce of firme land, very rich and great, named Lochae, the people Idolaters, having a Language and King peculiar. There growes Brafill-wood in great quantitie, flore of Gold, Elephants, wilde beaits, and fowle, a fruit called Berci, as great as Limons, very good. The place is mountainous and fauage, and the King permits not many to come thich, Lift they should know his

fecrets. There is ftore of Porcelane fhells for money transp r.ed : o other places. Fine hundred miles Southward from Lochae is the He Pentan, a lange place, which produ- Lochae, ceth in all the Woods fweet Trees: fixtie miles of the way the Sea is in many places but four A South Conceth in all the Woods tweet trees: fixthe miles of the way the sea is in many places and tking, tinent, if nuc. fathoms: after which being layled to the Nouth-eart, thirtie miles further is the Iland and King. P. ntan. dome of Maleur, which bath a peculiar King and Lang rage to it felfe; and here is much Mer- Maleur. chandile of Spices. From Pentan one hundred miles South-east is land the leffe, encompating lanaminor in 30 about two thousand miles, and hath in it eight Kingdomes, and as many Languages. They are which are Idolaters, have ftore of Treature, Spices, Eton: Bratill, and are fo farre to the South, that the eight King-

Idolaters, hane store of Treature, Spices, Eoon. Bratin, and are for arrect the south state the domes. The North Starre cannot there be serve. Ma 'er Marco was in fixe of those Kingdomes, of which Mahometans by shall here be spoken, leaving the other rivo, which he saw ot. One of tholeeight King lomes is, Felech: here the Id laters by frequent Trade of Saracens first, and after

are converted to the Law of Mabinet, in the Civies, the Mountainers being beaftly, eating by conquestion mans flesh and all impute food; and wor hip all day what they first fee in the morning. Next religion have mans fleth and all impure 100d; and wit in pair day what they had then in the inclination fleth here altered to that is Basma, which hath a Language by it selfe; they have without Law, like beasts, and all things, both fometimes lend Hawkes to the Can (w to challengeth all the Iland) for Presents. They have Names, Prowilde Elephants, and Vnicornes much leffe then Elephants, like the Bufals in haire. Their feet ples and Rices; 40 are like Elephants feet. They have one horne in the midit of the fore head and hurt no bodie that hardly are like Elephants feet. They have one norme in the mount of the following and in the body of the rewich; but with the tongue and knee. For on their tongue are certaine long prickles and they can now be defigned. theree, and when they burt any, they trample on him, and preffe him downe with their knee, and reco cilca and then wound him with their tongue. The head is like to a wilde Boares, which hee carries to liter names. downwards to the ground; an they bue to fland in the mire, and are filthie beafts, and not Vincornis, fuch as they (Vnicornes) are faid to be in our parts, which fuffer themselues to be taken of Mai- or rather tome dens, but quite contrarie. They have many Apes and of divers fashions. They have Gofhawkes all blacke as Rauens, great, and good for prey. There are certaine small Apes faced like pigmens now men, which they put in Boxes, and preferue with Spices, and fell them to Merchants, who car-made.

rie them thorow the World for Pigmers, or little men. 50 Samara is the next King lome where Matter Marco stayed fine moneths against his will, for- Samara ced by ill weather. There none of the Starres of Charles mane are seene. Hee descended once on land with two thousand people, and there for time for that fine moneths, for feare of those brutish man-eaters, and traded meane while with them for victuals. They have excellent 11th, Wine of the Date-tree , verv medicinall for Pititicke, Dropie, difeafes of the Spleene ; fone See of this white, fome red; and Indian Nuts as big as a mans head, the middle whereof is full of a pleasant Wine (Tado) liquor, better then Wine: they eat all fi-fb w thout any difference.

Dragotan is another of those Kingdomes, claymed by the Can, having a proper King and Lan-Coco nuts. guage. I was told of an abominable cutto ne, that when one is ficke, they fend to enquire of Dragaian. the Sorcerers whether hee that fcape ; if the Deuls answere, No; the kindred fend for some

60 whose office it is, to firangie the fiex, partie, after which they cut him in pieces, and the kindred eathim with great follow, even to the marrow of the bones, For (tay they) if any tubflance of him thould ram you, wormes would breed thereof, which would want food, and to die, to the great torture of the foule of the decealed. The bones they after take and carrie into fome Caue in the hils, that no beatt may touch them. If they take any stranger they also eat lam.

101 Tayled men. Meale of trees. Zeilan-Rubie, Malabar Pearle-fishing, LIB.L

Lambri is a fifth Kingdome of Iana in which is store of Brasill, of the seeds whereof Master

eMirco brought to Venice, and fowed them, but in vayne, the foyle being too cold. Some men

(the most) in this Kingdome have tayles more then a palme long, like Dogs, but not hairy; and

thefe dwell in the Mountaines out of Cities. They have Vnicornes in great plentie, and chafe

Langer. F. Dr. ke, and

of beatts and fowles.

Lizzh-i.

Fasfur, the fixth Kingdome hath the best Camfire, which is fold weight for weight with Saga, fee in Sir Gold. In that Province they take meale out of great and long trees, as great as two men can fathome, whence taking the thinne barke and wood about three fingers thicke, the pith within is meale, which they put in water, and flirre well, the lightest drosse swimming, and the purest fetling to the bottome; and then the water being cast away, they make thereof paste, of which to He:uic Wood. Master Marco brought to Venice, tasting like Barley bread. The wood of this tree throwne into the water linkes like Iron, whereof they make Lances, but short, for the long would be too

heavie to beare : these they sharpen, and burne at the tops, which so prepared will pierce an Armour somer then if they were made of Iron. About one Lundred and fiftie miles from Lambri, fayling Northwards, are two Ilands, one called Nocueran, in which they live like beafts, goe all naked, men and women, and worship Idols, haue excellent Trees, Cloues, Sanders white and red, Indian Nuts, Brafill, and other Spi-

Nocueren. Ancamus. Zeilen.

ces; the other, Angaman, suage as the former, and I was told, they had Dogs heads and teeth, Savling hence one thousand miles to the West, and a little to the North-west, is Zeilan, two thouland and foure hundred miles in circuit, and of old encompaffed three thouland and fixe 20 hundred miles, as is feene in the Maps of the Mariners of those parts, but the North winds have made a great part of it Sea. It is the best lland of the World. The King is named Sender-

A glorious

miz. The men and women are Idolaters, goe naked (faue that they couer their prinities with a cloth) haue no Corne, but Rice, and Oyle of Sefamino, Milke, Flesh, Wine of trees, abundance of Bratill, the best Rubies in the World, Saphires, Topazes, Amathist, and other Gems. The King is said to have the best Rubie in the World, one palme long, and as big as a mansarme, without spot, shining like a fire, not to be bought for money. Lublat Can sent and offered the value of a Citie for it, but the King answered, he would not give it for the treasure of the world, nor part with it, having beene his Ancestours. The men are vnsit for warres, and hire others when they have occation.

ð. X. Of the firme Land of the Greater India.

Malabar,

Rom Zeilan sayling fixtie miles to the West is the great Prouince of Malabar, which is not an Iland, but firme Continent, called India the greater, the richest Propince in the World. There are in it foure Kings, the chiefe of which is Senderbandi, in whose Kingdome they fish for Pearles, to wit, betwixt Malabar and Zeilan, in a Bay 40 where the Sea is not aboue ten or twelue fathome, in which divers descend, and in bags or nets

See my Pile.

Bread-dcus-

tyed to their bodies bring up the Oysters in which they are. And because there are great fishes which kill the Fishermen, they hire certaine Bramines to charme them (being skilfull to charme all forts of beafts also and birds) and these have the twentieth, the King the tenth. These Oyfters are found all Aprill, and till the midst of May, and not else: in September they finde them in a place about three hundred miles off, and till the midft of October. The King goeth as naked as the rest, saue that he weareth some honorable Ensignes, as a Coller of precious siones about his necke, and a threed of Silke to his breaft with one hundred and four faire Pearles (as Beads) to number his Prayers, of which he must daily say so many to his Idols: like Bracelets he weareth on three places of his armes, and likewife on his legs; and on his fingers also and toes. The so prayers which he fayth are Pacauca, pacauca, pacauca, one hundred and foure times. This King hath one thousand women, and if any please his sense he takes her; as one he did from his brother, whence warres had followed, but the mother threatning to cut off her breafts which had nourished them, if they proceeded, flayed the broyle. He hath many Horiemen for his Guard which alway accompanie him, who when the King dies, throw themfelues voluntarily into Moft of thefe the fire wherein he is burned to doe him feruice in the next World. This and his brethren the following cu. Kings of Malabar buy their Horses from Ormen, and other parts. The Countrey breeds none, and if it happens fometimes, yet are they there bred ill-fauoured and naught. Condemned per-Limschoten, and sons will offer themselves to die in honour of such an Idoll, which is performed with two lie in my Pilgits. Kniues, and twelve wounds in divers parts of the bodie, at every blow, faving, I kill my feife in 60 honour of that Idol, and the last he thrusts in his heart; and then is burned by his kindred. The wives also cast themselves into the fire with their husbands; they being diffreputed which re-

They worthing Idols, and most of them Beeues, and would not eat of so holy flesh as Beete,

CHAP.4. S. 10, Gaui. Dettors Circle, Superstitions of Malabars and Bramines. 105

for all the World. There are some called Gani, which eate those Beeues which dye alone, may not kill them, and dawbe ouer their houses with Oxe dung. These Gani are of the Posteritie of those which flue Saint Thomse, and cannot enter the place where his bodie is, if ten men should carrie them. They fit on Carpets on the ground in this Kingdome, they have no Corne but Rice. are no Warriours, kill no beafts, but when they will eat any get the Saracens to doe it, or other people; wash twice a day, morning and evening both men and women, and will not otherwise eate, which they which observe not, are accounted Heretikes. They touch not their meat with the left hand, but vie that hand only to wice, and other vncleane offices. They drinke each in his owne por, and will not touch another mans pot, nor fuffer their owne to touch their mouth. to but hold it ouer and powre it in. To ftrangers which have no pot they powre drinke into his Descircle.

hands to drinke with them. Inflice is feuerely executed for Crimes, and Creditors may encompaffe their Debtors with a Circle, which he dares not paffe till hee hath paid or given fecuritie : if he doth, he is to be put to death : and M. Marco once faw the King himselfe on Horse-backe thus encircled by a Merchant whom he had long delayed and frustrated, neither would the King one out of the Circle which the Merchant had drawne till he had fatisfied him, the people applanding the Kings Inflice. They are very forupulous in drinking Wine of the Grape; and they which doe it are not ad-

mitted to be Witneffe : a thing denyed also to him which sayles by Sea, for they say such men are desperate. They thinke Leachery no sinne. It is very hote, and they have no raine but in 20 June, July, and August, without which refreshing of the Ayre they could not line. They have many Phyliognomers and Sooth-fayers, which observe beafts and Birds, and have an valuckie Boyes put to houre every day of the weeke, called Choiach, as on Munday betwixt two and three, on Tuefday, the third houre, on Wednelday the ninth, &c. thorow all the yeare fet downe in their Bookes. They curiously observe Nativities: at thirteene yeares old they put the Boyes to get their owne liuings, which runne vp and down to buy and fell, having a little stocke given them to begin; and in Pearle-feafon they buy a few Pearles, and fell them agains to the Merchants, which cannot well endure the Sunne for little gaine. What they get they bring to their Mothers

to dreffe for them, but may not eate at their Fathers coft. They have Idols Males and Females, to which they offer their Daughters, which when the Their Idols & 30 Monkes (or Priefts) appoint, fing and dance to cheere the Idols; and divers times fet victuals be- Vocaties, fore them faying, that they eat, leaving it the space of a meale, singing the while, and then they fall to eating in deed, after which they returne home. The cause of these solaces is the household quarrels betwixt the God and his Goddeffe, which if they should not thus appeale, they thould lote their bleffing.

The great men haue Litters of large Canes, which they can fasten artificially to some voper place, to preuent Tarantulas byting and Fleas, and other Vermine; and for tresh Aire. The place of Saint Thomas his Sepulchre, is a small Citie, smally frequented by Merchants, infinitely by Malaber is by Christians and Saracens for devotion. The Saracens hold him a great Prophet, and call him Ang- this Author miss, that is a holy man. The Christians take of the Earth where he was slaine, which is red, and extended to 40 carry it with them with great reverence, and give it mixed with water to the ficke.

Anno 1288. A great Prince having more Rice then roome to lay it in, made bold with Saint Thomas his Church in the roome where Pilgrimes were received, but by a Vision of Saint Thomes in the night was so terrified that he quickly freed the place. The Inhabitants are black, not so borne, but often anount themselves with Seffamine Oyle to obtayne that beautie: they paint the Denill white, and their Idols blacke. The Beeue-worthippers carry with them to battell fome of the haire of a wild Oxe as a prefernative against dangers; and therefore such haires are deare-Murphili or Monful is Northward from Malabar fine hundred miles, they are Idolaters. Murchin.

They have Diamonds in their hils, which they fearch for after great raines. West-wards from 50 Saint Thomas is Lac, whence the Bramines have originall, which are the trueff Merchants in the World, and will not lye for any thing, and truftily keepe any thing committed to their cu- Bramines, flodie, or fell, or barter Merchandice for others. They are knowne by a Cotton threed which they weare over the sholder tyed vnder the arme croiling the brest. They have but one Wite, are great Dininers, of great abstinence and long life: observe their owne shadow in the Sunne when they are to buy, and thence coniecture according to their Discipline. They vie to chew a cer- Brite, or Believ tayne Herbe which makes their teeth good and helpes digeftion. There are fome Religious of steet called them called Tingui, which goe altogether naked, line aufterely, worthippe the Beene, whereof Town at and

they have a little braffe Image on their forehead, and of the Oxe bones alles make an Ointment. Alexa.

wherewith they anount their bodies in divers places with great reverence. They nor kill nor 60 eate any quicke creature, nor herbe greene, or Root before it is dryed, effeeming all things to have a foule. They vie no Diffies but lay their V ands on dry leaves of Ap; les of Paradize. They doe their Excrements in the Sands, and then disperse it hither and thither, left it should breed Wormes which must presently dye for want of food. Some of them have to one hundred and fiftie yeares, and their bodies after death are burned.

Cae'.

Cumari or

Pirates, ftill

* Hereby appeares the Vnicorne hee mentions, is for India hath no other.

on of others, are of leffe weight: yea, therefore I haue omitted the greatest parc. I had trouble e-&c. let them feeke elfe-

Abaleia, or In-

where.

In Zeslan I had forgot to tell of a high Mountayne, which none can afcend but by Iron chaines, as I was told, in the top whereof the Saracens fay is Adams Sepulchre, the Idolater fay it is the body of Socomonbarchan the first Idol-founder, fonne to a King of that Hand, which gaue himselfe to a solitarie life on the top of this hill, whence no pleasures nor perswassons could draw him. His Father made an Image after his death to represent him, all of Gold adorned with Gemmes, and commanded all the Handers to worthip it, and hence began Idolatry. Hither they come from farre places in Pilgrimage; and there his haire, teeth, and a dish of his are referred and folemnly shewed. The Saracens say they are of Adam, which report caused the Can, Anno 1281. to fend Ambassadors thither, who obtayned two teeth, and a dish, and some of his haires by grant of the King of Zeilan; which he caused to be received by the whole people of Cambals, without the Citie, and brought to his presence with great honour.

Cael is a great Citie gouerned by Altar, one of the foure Brethren, very rich and a good vier of Merchants : he hath three hundred women. All the people haue a custome to carrie in their mouthes chawing, a leafe called Tembul, with Spices and Lime. Coulam is fine hundred miles North-west from Malabar, they are Idolaters; there are also Christians and lewes which have fpeech by themselues. They have Pepper, Brafill, Indico, Lions all blacke, Parrets of divers forts, all white as Snow, others Azure, others Red, and fome very little: Peacockes and Peac hens much differing from ours, and greater, as are their fruits. They are leacherous, and marrie their fifters and kindred. There are many Aftrologers and Phyficians. In Comare are Anes for great that they feeme men : and here we had fight of the North starre. Dely hath a proper Kine to and Language : the people Idolatrous and have flore of Spices. The shippes of Manes come

Malabar is a Kingdome in the West, in which and in Guzzeras are many Pirats, which come to Sea with aboue one hundred Sails, and rob Merchants. They bring with them their wines and children, and there abide all Summer. In Guzzerat is flore of Cotton the Trees fix fathoms (or paces) high, and dure twentie yeeres; the Cotton of the old Trees is not good to spin, after they are past twelue yeeres old, but for Quiles. There are many " Vnicornes : they have artificiall embroideries. In Canam is store of Frankincense; it is a great Citie, where is great trade for Horles. In Cambaia is much Indico, Buckram, and Cotton. Sermenath is a Kingdome of a pecuthe Rhinocerus: liar language, Idolaters, Merchants, a good people. Chefmacoran is a great Kingdome of Idola- 10 ters and Saracens, the last Province of the greater India towards the Northwest (understand the Author according to his sourney, from China or Mangi by Sea) five hundred miles from which, are faid to be two flands, one of Men, the other of Women, those comming to these and there stave ing March. Aprill, and May. The Women keepe their Sonnes till twelue yeeres, and then fend ons which fol- them to their Fathers. It feemes the Ayre admits no other course. They are Christians and have low by relati- their Bishop, subiect to the Bishop of Soccotera; they are good Fishers and haue store of Ambar. Soccotera hath an Archbishop, not subject to the Pope, but to one Zatolia which resides in Baldach, who chooseth him. The Soccoteriors are Inchanters and great Witches, as any in the world (howfoeuer excommunicated therefore by their Prelate) and raife Windes to bring backe fuch thips as have wronged them, in despite of all contrarie working.

A thousand miles thence Southward is Magastar, one of the greatest and richest Iles of the World, three thousand miles in circuit, inhabited by Saracens, gouerned by foure old men. The nough to finde People live of merchandife, and fell great store of Elephants teeth. The Currents in these parts and translate are of exceeding force. They tell of Fowles, called Ruch, like an Eagle, but of incomparable greatnesse, able to carrie an Elephant (but I am not able to carrie it.) Zenzibar also is said to bee of great length, &c. there are Elephants, Giraffas, sheepe vnlike to ours: the Men and Women fay fables, as are very deformed. I have heard Mariners and great Pilots of those parts report, and have seene that of Ruch, in their writings, which have compassed the Sea of India, that there are in it twelve thousand and seuen hundred Hands, inhabited or defart. In Indiamaior, which is from Malabar to Chefmacoran are thirteene Kingdomes. India minor is from Ziambi to Murfili, in which are eight 50 11700. Ilands. Kingdomes, besides Ilands many. The second or middle India, is called Abascia. The chiefe King is a Christian; there are fix other Kings, three Christians, and three Saracens, subject to media and mi- him : there are also lewes. Saint Thomas having preached in Nubia, came to Abascia, and there did the like, and after to Malabar. They are great Warriors, alway in Armes against the Soldan of Adem, and the people of Nubia. I heard that An. 1288, the great Abiffine would have visited Ierusalem, but being disswaded by reason of Saracen Kingdomes in the way, he sent a Bithop of holy life to doe his devotions, who in his returne was taken by the Soldan of Adem. and circumcifed by force : whereupon the Abiffine rayled a power, discomfitted the Soldan with two other Mahumetan Kings, tooke and spoyled Adem. Abascia is rich in gold. Ester is subject to Frankincenfe. Adem fortie miles diffant South-east: where is store of white Frankincense very good, which do drops from small Trees by incision of the barke; a rich merchandise, &c. Some in that Countrey for want of Corne make Bisket of Fish, whereof they have great plentie. They also feede their beafts with fifthes. They take them in March, April, and May, &c.

Hauing spoken of the Provinces on the Coast, I will now returne to some Provinces more to

CHAP.4. S.10. Northern Tartars. Furs. Region of Darkneffe. Polo and Haiton. 107

the North, where many Tartars dwell, which have a King called Caidu, of the Race of Cingis Caidu and his Can, but subject to none. These observe the customes of their old Progenitors, dwell not in Ci- Northerne ties. Caffles, or Fortreffes, but abide with their King in the Fields, Playnes, Valleyes, and Fo- Tartars. reils, and are effeemed true Tartars. They have no fort of Corne, but live of Flesh and Milke in great peace. They have flore of Horses, Kine, Sheepe, and other beafts. There are found oreat white Brares, twentie palmes long, black Foxes very great, wilde Affes, and little heafts called Rondes which beare the Sable Furres, and Vari arcolini, and those which are called Pharaos rats. which the Tartars are cunning to take. The great Lakes which are frozen except in a few moneths of the yeare, cause that the Summer is scarse to bee travelled for myre. And therefore the Merchants to buy their Furres, for fourteene dayes journey thorow the Delart, haue fet vp for each day a house of Wood, where they abide and barter : and in Winter they vie Sleds without Tragule. wheeles, and plaine in the bottome, rifing with a femi-circle at the top or end, drawne eafily on the Ice by beafts like great Dogs " fix yoked by couples, the Sledman only with his Merchant " Perhaps and Furres fitting therein.

In the end of the Region of these Tartars, is a Countrey reaching to the furthest North, called Region of Darbnelle, because the most part of the Winter moneths the Sunne appeares not, and the Ayre is Darbnelle. thicke and darkish, as betimes in the morning with vs. The men there are pale and great, haue no Prince, and line like beafts. The Tartars oft rob them of their Cattell in those darke moneths. and left they should lose their way, they ride on Mares which have Colts sucking, which they 20 leave with a Guard at the entrance of that Countrey, where the Light beginneth to faile . and when they have taken their prey give reynes to the Mares, which haften to their Colts. In their long continued day of Summer they take many the finest Furres (one occasion of the Tartars going to rob them) of which I have heard some are brought into Russia. Russia is a great Country Russia in that Northerne Darkneffe : the people are Greeke Christians, the Men and Women faire . and pay Tribute to the King of the Tartars of the West, on whom they border on the East. There is flore of Furres, Waxe, and Minerals of filuer. It reacheth, as I was told, to the Ocean Sea : in which are flore of Gerialcons and Falcons.

To the Reader.

N this admirable Voyage of Polo, I confesse, Inopem me copia fecit; the Translation which I had of Master Hakluyts from the corrupted Latine, being leffe then nothing (nimirum damno auctus fui) did me no fleed but lofe, whiles I would compare it with the Latine, and thought to amend it by the Italian; and was forced at last to reiest both Latine and English, and after much vexation to present thee this , as it is , out of Ramulio. I have not given thee word for word as an exact Translator, but the sense in all things substantiall, with longer Relations then I have admitted in others. because many which have read M. Paulus, never saw M. Polo, nor know the worth of the worthiest Voyage, that perhaps any one man hath written; a man credible in that which hee faw himfelfe, in fome things received by Relation, rather telling what he heard, then that which I dare believe and frecially toward the end of his third Booke, which I have therefore more abridged. Pitie it is that time bath fo gnawne and eaten some-where, and some-where denoured otterly many his names and Trasts, which new Lords and new (Lawes, the Saracenicall Conquests, especially ener since his time) in those parts have caused. And farre caster by the Cans greatnesse then, and his employments under him, might bee know the World in those times; then in the combustions long since begunne and still continued, in diversified and quarrelling States is possible : the Saracens quarrelling with Ethnikes, Christians, and other Saracens the Tartars divided and sub-divided into so many quarrelsome Serpentine heads, whereby that bugenesse is broken in pieces; the Chinois and others prohibiting ingresse of strangers, egresse of their ownes, that I mention not Ethnike and Moorish Dissifions amongst themselves. In the same time with Polo, 50 lined this following Armenian, of whom Ramusio relateth, and this Discourse intimateth that the Ho- See Town 1.18. ly Land being quite loft, Pope Clement the Fift minding to reconer it, was given to understand of c.4.5.3. belpes which might be gotten from the Tartars, and withall of this Haiton or Antonie a Kinsman of the King of Armenia, then living a Monke or Frier of the Order Premonstratens in Episcopia in Cyprus; who in his young time had beene exercised in the Warres betwirt the Tartars and Egyptian Soldans, by whom he might receive the best Intelligence of Tartarian Affaires. He therefore (as hee first remoued the Court from Rome to France, where it abode seuentie yeares) caused the said Hayton to be brought from Cyprus to France with all bis Memorials and Writings of that subject, and being comne

to Poitiers, caufed one Nicolo di Falcon a Frenchman to write in French, which the other dictated in Armenian, which was done Anno 1307. A Copie of this Storie written aboue two hundred yeares since 60 came to Ramusines hand (whereto I here, that I say not you, are beholden) whence hee tooke that which concerned the Taxars, omitting the rest, or remitting rather his Reader to M. Polo. Betwixt which two some difference may seeme, but so little, that Wisemen need no advertisement thereof. One thing is remarkable, that the Author and the next, who in many Geographicall Notes agrees with

bim, disside Alia into two parts, one called profound or deepe, the other the greater, and dissided in the

Heisen and Mandrails a-

faub.
Diony, Alex. repreyers vid. & Euftaen. com.

midit by the Caspian Sea , and Caucasus, which our Armenian cals Cocas, which Alexander pasted not, nor was ener well knowne to the Ancients, who called all beyond that Hill Scythia, as wee now call the most of it by a generall name Tartaria. Strabo * bath made like dissifton of Asia into the inner and things.
The reason of veter, Taurus being the Vmpire; which Hill (with diners Appellations) beginning at Pamphylia runner our method in Eastwards thorow the midst of Asia to the Indies , that part to the North beeing called Asia within thus ordering (Tautus) and that to the South Alia without. Some anoient Geographers as Dionyfius mentions. our Pilgrimes. extended Europe to the Calpian Sea, which most of the Ancients thought to concurre with the Ocean, Strabilit.ad as the Mediterranean, Arabian, and Perfian doe. Dionyfius bis Verfes are worth observation.

> Miara * yeulu miene Acine opes augeflignung, A'sEdustor rains Hausunides avergai Is der. &C.

They called it Taurus, as there followes of the Bull-forme, &c.

Officea Taucocares rexu cEundelmer of des.

Hereof we are the more curious, to give to the more curious a reason of our method in this Worke, who in our former Tome have first encompassed the sheares of Alia from the West to the East: and then in the In-land parts have in the eight and ninth Bookes principally (as Voyages gave leave) viewed Asia without Taurus, and to the South of the Caspian; but this Profound or inner, more unknowne part, we Guruan here where we handle the Voyages and Discourries of those parts of the World, which the Ancients 20 knew very little or not at all. And indeed, how little was Mangi, Cataio, or Tartaria knowne till the Tartars obtruded upon the World, a terrible knowledge of them selues, in manner as Rubruquius and the former Friers, with the fe Gentlemen, Polo and Haiton describe? Tea, how were they by ignorance of following times buried againe, till Portugall, English, and other moderne Voyages banerenined them. as it were in a resurrection? and that often in new names, as if they had suffered that warmili yours, so often here rebearfed, and so much credited in many Religions of those Easterne Asians, whence st comes that they are bardly knowne to be the same. The Reader must pardon me (or go to the Author himselfe) if I have here omitted some pieces of Haiton, which you have bad in Polo and others before, Becially not so pertinent to our present Tartarian subject. The figures note the Chapters, after the Latine, from which Ramufios Dissifton is much dissided, and we therefore from both.

CHAP. V.

The Historie of AYTON, or ANTHONIE the Armenian, of Asia, and specially touching the

ð. I.

of the Kingdome of Cathay, and diversother Provinces of Asia, and of the first habitation of the Tattars: and of CANGIVS, or CINGIS his beginnings.

The largenesse He Kingdome of Cathay, is the greatest that is to be found in the World, and is reof the Kingdome of Ca-Ilande.

plenified with people and infinite riches; beeing fituated on the shoare of the Ocean Sea; In the which there are so many Ilanie Ocean Sea ; In the which there are fo many Ilands, that their number can no 19 wayes be knowne. For neuer was there any man that could fay he had feene all those Ilands; But those of them which have beene frequented, are found to a-

bound with innumerable wealth and treasures; and that which is there moste-Oile of oliues, freemed, and deereft fould, is Oyle of Oliues, which the Kings and Commanders there cause to be kept with great diligence, as a Souereigne Medicinable thing; And moreouer, in the Kingdome of Cathar, are many maruellous and monstrous things, which I forbeare to mention. The Inhabitants of those parts are exceeding wife and subtill, replenished with all kind of skill and cunning, infomuch, that they diffaine the endeauours of all other Nations, in all kind of Arts, and Sciences : faving, that they only fee with two Eyes, the Latines but with one eye, and that all other Nations are blind. And albeit they are exceeding sharpe-fighted in the exercise of all 60 bodily workes and labours; yet is there not among it them any knowledge of ipirituali things; the men of that Countrey are not bold, or couragious, but more fearefull of death then befirteth fuch as beare Armes; yet are they very ingenious, and haue oftner had victorie of their enemies

by Sea, then by Land: the money yield in those parts, is of square preces of Paper, signed with

Their arrogant pre umpfearfulneffe,

CHAP.S. S.I. Tarfa, Sym. Turquestan, Corasmians; Cumania extremes, 100

the Kings figne, according to which figne or marke; the pieces are of greater or smaller value: and if they begin by age to be wasted, or worne out, hee that bringeth them to the Kines Court thall have new for them; of Gold and other Metals, they make Veffels, and other ornaments. Of this Kingdome of Cathay it is faid, that it is in the beginning of the World, because the head See Sir lota thereof is in the East, and there is not knowne any other Nation to inhabit more Easterly there. Mandenits traabouts; on the West it confineth on the Kingdome of Tarfa, on the North with the Defert of wels, Belgian. And on the South-fide are the Hands of the Ocean, afore mentioned.

2. In the Kingdom of Tarfa are three Prounces, whose Rulers are also called Kings, the men of Of the Kings

that Countrie are called logour, they have alwayes worshipped Idols, and yet doe except the dome of Tola. To ten Kindreds of those Kings, who by the guiding of a Starre came to worthin the Nativitie in Bethleem Inda. And there are yet found many great and noble among the Tartarians of that Race, which hold firmely the Faith of Christ. But the rest which are Idolaters in those parts are of no estimation in matter of Armes, yet are they of a piercing wit for the learning of all Arts Wit and incliand Sciences. They have peculiar Letters or Characters of their owne. And almost all the Inhabitants of those parts abitayne from eating of flesh and drinking of Wine, neither would they by any meanes bee brought to kill ought that hath life. Their Cities are very pleasant and they Rices. haue great Temples in which they worship their Idols. Corne groweth there abundantly, and all good kind of Graine. But they are without Wine, and hold it a finne to drinke it, as doe alto the Agarens. This Kingdome of Tarfa on the East-fide confineth with the Kingdome of Ca-

20 shar, 25 atorelaidion the West it bordereth on the Kingdome of Turquestan, on the North on 2 cercayne Defert, and on the South-fide it adjoyneth to a very rich Prounce called Sym, which is Sym. fituate betweene the Kingdome of India and Cathaia, and it that Province are found Diamonds. 3. The Kingdome of Turquestan on the East fide is confined with the Kingdome of Tarfa, on the West fide with the Kingdome of the Persians, on the North side with the Kingdome of the Of the King-Corasmians, and on the South it reacheth out to the Defart of India. In this Kingdome are but dome of Turi few 200d Cities, but there are large Plaines and good feeding for their flockes, therefore the In- The Inhabi-

habitants for the most part are Shepherds, dwelling in Tents, and houses that may easily beeremoued from place to place. The greatest Citie of that Kingdome is called Ocerra, there grow. herds, eth but little Barley or Wheate: no Wine at all. Their Drinke is Curfus, and other made Drinks, Octiva. 30 and Milke, they eate Rice and Millet, and flesh, and are called Turkes. And almost all of them Curfue. are of the Sect of wicked Mahomet, yet there are some amongst them of no Faith nor Religion. Turker. They have no peculiar Characters of their owne, but doe vie the Arabike Letters in their Cities or Campes.

4. The Kingdome of the Corasmians, is well stored with good Cities and Townes, and there are many Inhabitants, because the Land is fruitfull and pleasant, and wheate, and other graine, Of the King. is there in great quantitie; but they have little Wine. This Kingdome is confined with a dome of the Wildernesse of one hundred dayes Iourney, in length on the West-side, it reacheth out to the Caspian Sea. On the North it bordereth on the Kingdome of Cumania, and on the South it hath the Kingdome of Turquestan. The chiefe Citie of that Kingdome is called 40 Corasme, and the people are called Corasmians, being Pagans, which have neither Learning, nor Religion. But those wich are called Soldini, are very fierce in Armes, and have their Language Consine, and Letters, and Ceremonies of the Greekes, and make the bodie of Christ after the Greeke Soldini.

manner, and are obedient to the Patriarkes of Antioch. e. The Kingdome of Cumunia is very great : yet by reason of the diftemperature of the Ayr., Of the Kingit is ill inhabited : for in the Winter season, the cold is so great in some places, that neither dome of Coman nor beaft can any way live therein. And againe in some places, the heate of Summer This extramiis fo great, that none can endure the same, nor the slyes which abound there. This King-tie comes by dome of Cumania, is in a manner all plaine, and there are no Trees, nor any Wood to bee found the long pretherein, vnlesse it be about some Cities, which have certayne Orchards. The people inhabit in sence in Sum-

50 Fields, and in Tents burning the dung of beafts in fleed of Wood : This Kingdome of Cumania mer, and abon the East-side, hath the Kingdome of Corasmia, and a certayne Desert or Wilderness; on the West-side is the oreat Sea called Pontus Survivus, and the Sea of Tarrico on New New Sunne by West-fide is the great Sea called Pontus Euxinus, and the Sea of Tanau: on the North-fide it Winter. confineth on the Kingdome of Cassia, and on the South-fide, it reacheth out to a certayne great River called Etil, which every yeare is frozen, and sometimes remayneth all the yeare so hardly frozen, that men and beafts goe thereon as on Land, on the bankes of that River, are found certayne imall Trees. But beyond and on the other fide of that River, are divers and fundry Nations inhabiting, which are not accounted of the Kingdome of Cumania, and yet are obedient to the King thereof : And some there are which inhabit about the Mountayne Cocas, Cocas or Cast-

which is exceeding great and high. The Afteres and other ravenous Birds, breeding safes. 60 in that Mountayne, are all white, and that Mountayne is scated betweene two Seas; for on the Welt is the great Enxine Sea , and the Caspian Sea on the East, which Caspian Sea hath no entrance into the Ocean, but is as a Lake which only for his greatnesse hath the name of a Sea, for it is the greatest Lake that is to bee found in the World, reaching from the faid See after Mountayne Caucajus, euen to the head of the Kingdome of Perfis, and divideth all Afia into Chapter 47.

6. The Kingdome of India is very long, and fituated on the Ocean Sea, which in those parte

is called the Indian Sea. This Kingdome beginneth from the Confines of Persia, and extendeth Note that of by East vinto a Prouince called Balaris, in which are found the precious stones which wee call great, the Sa-Fables, neuer heard of in

Alexander the Balayes. On the North-fide is that long and great Defart of India, where the Emperour Alexander the ander is faid to have found fo many Serpents, and such diversitie of Beafts inhabiting. In that Kingdome it is that Saint Thomas preached the Faith of Christ, and converted many people and gass have many provinces. But because they are so farre distant and remote from other places and parts of Christendome, the Christian Religion is there much diminished, for there is but one Citie that is in- to habited with Chrritians, the rest having wholy forsaken the profession of Christianitie. On but their Inhabitans be all blacke, going altogether naked for heat, and worthip Idols like fooles. In those Ilands are found precious itones, Pearles, and Gold, and fundry Spices, and medicinable drugs helpfull vnto men. There is also a certayne Iland called Celan or Zeilan, knowne in ancient time by the name of Taprobana, in which are found Rubies and Saphires, and the King of that Iland hath the greatest and best Rubie that is any where to be found, which when hee is to be crowned King, he holdeth in his hand riding round about the Citie, and is afterwards obeyed

these parts; as the South-fide of this Kingdome is a very long reach of the Ocean, in the which are many Hands. here of Orlan. do, Artbur, O. gerus, and See in Pa'o. Pérsia and Media are 0mitted.

Armenia.

Georgia.

Persia, and reacheth out West-ward even to the Kingdome of Turkie. The breadth of Armenia Miralis, or the begins at the Citie Miralis, called the Iron Gate, and extendeth even to the Kingdome of Me-Iron gate, now dia. In Armenia there are many great and very rich Cities, of which Tawie is the chiefe: they haue both Characters of their owne, called the Armenian Letters , and others also which they call Haloen. In Armenia is the highest Hill or Mountayne that is in the World, which is commonly called Arath, or Ararat, and on the top of that Mountayne, the Arke of Noah rested first after the Deluge. And albeit for the abundance of Snow which is alwayes on that Mountayne, both Winter and Summer none is able to goe vp the same, yet is there alwayes seene in the top thereof a certaine blacke thing, which men affirme to be the Arke. 10. The Kingdome of Georgia on the East-side, beginneth from a certayne great Mountayne. called Alboris, or Albfor. There doe inhabit many Nations, and thereof that Prouince is called

9. In the Land of Armenia there are foure Kingdomes: yet haue they alwayes beene fub-

iect to one King only. The length of the Kingdome of Armenia beginneth at the Confines of

Alania, or Albania, from whence the Kingdome of Georgia reacheth West-ward on the Northfide to some Lands of the Kingdome of Turkie; the whole length of this Kingdome of Georgia lying youn the great Sea, and on the South-fide it is confined with Armenia the Great. This Kingdome of Georgia is divided into two Kingdomes, one of which is called by the name of Georgia, and the other knowne by the name of Albeas, or Albease : and they have beene alwaies gouerned by two feuerall Kings. The one of which is subject to the Emperour of Asa: namely, the King of Georgia, But the Kingdome of Albem being mightie in people, and strongly situated and fortified, could never yet either by the Emperours of Afia, or by the Tartarians bee 40 fubdued. In this, Kingdome of Georgia is a maruellous strange Wonder or Miracle, which I durst not have reported or beleeved, if I had not feene it with my eyes. But because I have personally beene there, and beene made the eye witnesse thereof, I say, that in those parts there is a Province or Countrey called Hamfem, being in circuit about three dayes journey, whose whole extent is all covered over with fuch thicke and palpable darknesse, that none can fee any thing therein, neither doe any dare to goe into that Land, because they know not the way out againe. Those that inhabit neere about it, affirme, that they have often heard the found of mens voices crying, of Cockes crowing, and the neighing of Horses in the Wood, and by the course of a Riuer that runneth out from that place, there appeare certaine fignes that there are people inhabiting therein.

TI. The Kingdome of the Chaldeans beginneth on the East-fide from the Mountaynes of Chaldea. Media, and reacheth out vnto Ninine. The Inhabitants of Chaldan are called Nestorians, because they are followers of the Errour of Nestorius, and they have their peculiar Chaldean Characters, others there are amongst them that wie the Arabian Letters, and are of the Sect of the feducer Mahomet.

Euphrates.

12. The Kingdome of Mesopotamia on the East-side, beginneth at the great Citie Mosel, (called of the Ancients Seleucia) which is feated neere the River Tigris, and stretcheth out vnto the River Emphrates, and the Citie of Robais (or Edeffa.)

King in such fort that he which now holdern that Land, is called Emperour of Trapezond. The

13. When the Turkes had invaded the Kingdome of Turkie, and possessed themselves thereof, they could not preuayle against the Citie of Trapezond, nor the Territorie thereof, because 60 of their firong Castles and other Fortifications, by reason whereof it remayned full under the government of the Emperour of Constantinople, who vied yearely to fend thither a Ruler or Gouernour as his Deputie there, vntill at length one of them rebelling against him, made himself:

CHAP. S. I. Tarrarians: beginnings of Changius their Romulus & Numa. 111

Inhabitants are Greekes. In the Kingdome of Turkie are foure Nations inhabiting; namely, the Nations of Greekes, Armenians, and Iacobines, (Oc. Iacobines, which are Christians, litting on merchandise Turkit. and manuring the Earth:) and the Turker, which are Saracons, that have invaded that Land, and gotten the Government from the Greeks. Some of them. live on merchandife, and labouring of

the ground inhabiting in Cities and Towness others keeping in the Woods and Fields, both

Winter and Summer being Shepherds, and very good Bow-men. 14. Cilicia at this day is called Armenia, by reason that after the enemies of the Christian faith Cilicia, how is had gotten that Countrey, and held it a long time from the Greekes, the Armenians endeauoured came to bee themicines fo well that they wome it agains from the Pagans. In fo much that the King of Ar_ called Armenia To menia, by the grace of God ruleth ouer Chicia at this day : In the Kingdome of Syria are divers Cap. 15. Of the Nations inhabiting, namely, Greekes, Armenians, Iacobites, Neftorians, and Saracens. There are Saracen Em-

alio other Christian Nations, namely the Sprians and Mironines (or Maronites.) 16. The Country in which the Tartarians first inhabited, lieth beyond the great Mountaine of the Country. Beisian mentioned in the Histories of Alexander, And therethey lived like brutish People trey where the without learning or Religion, feeding herds of Bealts, and going from place to place to feeke pa- Tariariani for-

to al. Of thele in ancient time there were many Nations which by a common name were called. ted * Mogle, who vpon their encrease were after divided into seven principall forts esteemed more as the Servers noble then the reft. The first of these Nations was called Tatar, from the name of that Pro- and Afine and Alians and Minns and M Talair : The fifth, Sonich : The fixth, Monghi: And the feuenth, Tebeth. And whiles these fe- der whom they uen Nations lived voder the subjection of their Neighbours, as is above faid, it happened that a cal Biomis &c. poore old man, being a Smith, faw a Vision in his sleepe; namely, a man armed all in white Armour, and mounted on a white Horse, which calling him by his name, taid voto him, Changing, changing or It is the will and pleasure of the immercall God, that then be Lord and Ruler over these Nations of the Cingis. Mogli, and that by thee they bee delinered from the Dominion of their Neighbours, under which they hane long remarned: and they shall rule oner their Neighbours, and receive Tribute of them to whom they formerly paid Tribute. Changing hearing this Word of God, was replenished with exceeding ioy, and made publikely knowne the Vition which he had feene. But the Rulers and Comman-30 ders would not give credite to the Vision , but rather despised and mocked the old man. But

the night following, they themselves saw the same Vision of the Horse-man armed in white, who commanded them from the Immortall God, that they should be obedient to Changing, and canfe all to obey his command. Whereupon, all the faid Chieftaines and Governours of the feuen Nations of the Tartarians, calling the people together made them to yeeld obedience and reuerence to Changins. Then atterwards placing a Chaire for him in the midft of them, and spreading a blacke Felt Carpet on the ground, they fet him thereon, and then the feuen chiefe Rulers lifting him vp, did place him in the Throne, or Chaire of State, with great triumph and acclamation, calling him Can their first Emperour, and doing him solemne reuerence, with bowing their knees as to their Lord and Gouernour.

Now, at this folemnitie of the Tartarians, and at the simplicitie of their blacke Cloth, vied in the creating of their first Emperour, none ought much to wonder, either because hardy they were not then furnished with any fairer (loth of S ate, or elle were fo rule and ignorant at that time, that they knew no better or fairer fashion of State. But at this men might rather maruell, See God to that the Tartarians having fince that, co. quered many Kingdomes, and gotten infinite riches, (and namely, commanding ouer the Dominions and wealth of Afra, even to the winfines of Hungaria) they will not yet leave their ancient and accustomed manner: but at the confirmation of euery Emperour obserue the like order in euery point, whereof I can well be awitnesse, having beene personally prefent at the ceremonic vied at the Confirmation of one of their Em- Hailon, an eyeperours. But to returne to our purpole, Changing Can being thus made Emperour by common wireefteof the confent of all the Tartarius, determined ere he attempted any thing , to make triall, whether Tart. Corona-

to be obterued of all.

The first was, That all the Tartarians hould beleene and obey the Immortali God, by whose will hee was promoted to the Imperial Dignitie: which Commandement they objected and from thenceforth vntill this day have ever continued to call on the Immortall God in all their occasions. Secondly, Hee willed that all the men that were able to beare Armes should be numbred, and that ouer euery ten should be one appointed, and ouer euery ten thousand a great Commander, and that also ouer every thousand should bee a Colonell or Conducter of a Regiment. and he called an Armie of ten thousand Souldiers, a Regiment, He commanded also the seven Rulers over the Nations of the Tartarians, that they should forthwith dismisse themselves of their 50 former dignities: which they relinquished immediativ. But another of his Ordinances was very flrange and admirable, in which he commanded those feuen chiefe Rulers to bring every of them his eldeft fonne, and each with his owne hand to cut off his head. Which Commandement appearing to bee most crueil and valuel, yet was there none that would any way gainfay

flure. And being not exercised in armes they were despised of other Nations, and payed tribute merly inhabi-

conferred all the Tartarium, determined tre he attempted any thing, to make trian, whether the would all performe faithfull obedience to him, to which end he made certaine Ordinances Changing ordai-

He e capeth

erippe the.

The Allocoo

honouted.

it, because they knew him to be set over them by Gods providence, and therefore they present. ly fulfilled it. When Changin Can had feene that they were readie to obey him, euen vnto death. he appointed them all a certaine day in which they should be readie to fight. And then they rode Premayleth in against them which bordered next vnto them, and foldued them. Whereby, they which had beene Lords ouer them, were brought into subication under them. After, hee inuaded divers bis borderers. other Nations, which hee conquered with great celeritie: For hee did all his exploits with a imall troupe of men, and was successefull in his enterprises,

Yet, one day it tell out, that being accompanied with a small number he was encountred with a great troupe of his Enemies, in such fort, that the fight being begun betweene them, whiles he valiantly defended himselfe, his Horse wasslaine under him. And the Tartarians seeing their To Lord ouerthrowne, betooke themselves to flight; so that the Enemies being all busied in purfaing of those that fled, and having no knowledge of the Emperour, whom they had unhorsed and ouerthrowne; he runne and hid himfelfe among certaine shrubs for safety of his life. Whither when the Enemies were returned, with purpose to spoile the dead Carkasses, and to seeke out such as were hidden, it happened that an Owle . came and fate you those little trees or thrubs which he had chosen for his couert, which when they perceived, they fought no further in that place, supposing that the faid Bird would not have fate there, if any man had beene hidden Booke chap. vnderneath. By which meanes in the dead time of the night he found meanes to estape thence. reciteth a like and came by divers volvequented wayes voto his owne people, and discoursed voto them what had befallen him. For which the Tariarians rendred thankes unto the Immortall God. And 20 that Bird which under God was held to be the meanes of his escape, hath euer since beene held in fuch reuerence among them, that happie is he that can get but a Feather of an Owle, which un coto weello they weare in their heads with great reuerence. Which I thought fit to fet downe in this Booke. chimaso Alas- that the cause might be knowne for which the Tartarians vie commonly to weare Feathers on their heads.

But their Emperour Changius Can having given great thankes to God: for his deliverance out of fo great a danger gathered his Armie together, and fiercely affaulted his former Enemies a-A new Victory. gaine and brought them all under fubication, and fo became Emperor of all the Countries lying on that fide of the Mountaine Belgian, and poff-ffed them quietly without disturbance, vntill it happened him to haue another Vition as shall after be declared. Neither is it any manual that exceleth him- in these Histories I have not set downe the certaine time, because albeit I have sought of many to know the certaintie thereof, yet could I neuer finde any to inftruct me fully therein: the reafon thereof-I take to be, because the Tartarians at the first were ignorant of all Learning, and knew no letters, and so passed ouer the times and memorable accidents without any Record or Register thereof kept, whereby they came afterwards to be forgotten.

ð. I I.

of CHANGIVS Can his fecond Vision and Conquests. Of Hoccot A and his three Sonnes expeditions; of GINO Can; of MANGY Can, who was visited by the King of Armenia, and baptised; of the expedition of his Brother HALOON.

The fecond lefe bus mentions a vision Of Alexander one like the 1 cm: fb high Priest impofi gorhin his

Fter that Changing (an had fubdued all the Kingdomes and Countries on that fide of the Mountaine Belgian, he faw another Vition in the night. For the felfe-fame Horfman armed in white Armour appeared vnto him againe, faying, Changius Can, is u the pleasure of the Immortall God, that thow passe over the Mountaine Belgian, and direst thy comfe Westwards, where shou shalt possesse Kingdomes and Countries, and subdue many Nations. And that thou mayest be affured that the words which I feake unto thee are from the Immortall God: 50 Arife and goe with thy people to the Mountaine Belgian, to that part thereof which syneth to the Sea, there thou stalt alight from thy Horse, and kneeling downe nine times towards the East; thou shalt worship nine times the immo tall God, and be which is Almightie will shew thee the way by which thou mayest easily passe ouer the Mountaine. At this Vision Changing reloyced exceedingly, and arose without farther doubt or delay : because the trueth which he had found in the first Vision gaue gaue him way, him affurance of the other: in such fort that he forthwith speedily affembled his people, and commanded them to follow him with their wives and children, and all that they had. And fo they went forwards untill they came to the place where the great and deepe Sea did beate a-The fatallexgainst the Mountaine, so that there appeared no way nor passage for them.

There prefently Changing Can as had beene commanded him by God, alighted from his Horse, 60 and all his followers in like manner, worthipping nine times on their bended knees towards the East, they befreched the Almightie and euerliuing God, that of his infinite mercy and grace he would vouchfafe to thew them the way and paffage thence where they continued in prayer all that night. And in the morning ariling, they faw that the Sea was departed from the MounCHAP.S. S.2. Embleme of Concord. Tartarian Nine. Hoccotas three fons acts. 112

taine, and had left them a way of nine feet in bredth to passe. Wherear they being all aftonithe exceedingly, and rendring thankes to the Immortall God most denoutly, they passed on lous way. the way which they faw before them, and directed their steps towards the Weft. But as the Hiltories of the Tartarians doe mention, after they had passed over those Mountaines, the dured some hunger and thirst for certaine dayes, because the land was Defart, and the waters were bitter and falt, which they could not by any meanes drinke, vitill at length they come where they had all necessaries aboundantly. In which place they abode many dayes. And there it happened by the will of God, that Changins Can grew dangeroully ficke, in flight fort that The ficknesse the Phylicians despaired of his recouerie.

10 By reason whereof he called before him his twelve sonnes, and perswaded them to vnitie and concord by an Example. For, he commanded each of them to bring with him an Arrow, Hisallegarical which when he had received, and bound them altogether he willed the eldeft to breake them if exhoring of he could, which when he had tried, but could not performe, he delivered them to the fecond, and his fonnes to then to the third, and then to all the reft, but none of them could breake them as they were. Then The like Hihe commanded his youngest sonne to take the Arrowes severally and breake them, which hee flour bath Stoeasily accomplished. Then faid Changing Can to his tonnes: In like manner will it be with you; beins ferm 82. of for, as long as you remayne in concord and vnitie, your Empire shall continue; but as foone as Scilerus fee lerthere commeth diution amongst you, your power is easily overthrowne. Many other good the fonness of examples were given by him, and gathered by the Tartarians, which in their Language they Attila dila-20 call, lafach, or Infruitions of Changin Can, And afterwards hee caused the wifest and best of greeing.

his sonnes called Heccota Can, to be received as his Successour in his Empire, before he died; and then refted in peace. And his fonne, called Hocour Can, was placed in his Seat. But before wee end this Historie we must show how the number of Nine came to be of reue- His death.

rence and facred estimation among the Tartarians: for of a memoriall of the nine kneelings which they made in the Mountaine Belgian, when they worshipped the immortall God, according to the direction of him that appeared in white Armour, and their way of the bredth of nine feet, through which they passed, they hold that number Nine in very high estimation. The number Insomuch, that if any will offer a Present to the Tartaries Emperour, it must bee presented in of Nine, effecforme of nine fenerall things, if hee will have it graciously accepted; and so that the number and among Torme or mine reverant unings, it now with a service of Nine be offered the gift is reputed happie, which Cuftome is yet observed at this day among the Tataram 30 of Nine be offered the gift is reputed happie, which Cuftome is yet observed at this day among the Tataram

18. Hoccota Can, who succeeded in the Empire, was a man of much valour and wisedome, gull. sup. pay. 556 which made him very well beloued of the Tartarians, who were alwaies faithfull and obedient Of Hocesta Can vnto him. Hee therefore bethought himselfe in what manner be might best subdue all Afe, and the second thought good to make triall first of the mightiest Prince therein before he attemped it himfelfe in person. On that enterprise therefore he sent forth ten thousand Horse-men under the conduct of a wife and valiant Leader, called Gebefabada, and commanded him to feeke out divers Kingdomes and States, and when hee met with an Aduersarie too mightie for him, to returne. Hee marched on, and tooke divers Castles and Townes, and cruelly vied those which hee vanquished

40 in battell, for terrour to others, putting out their eyes, and taking away their Horfes and Vichuls; dealing kindly with the weaker. Thus hee proceeded to the Iron Gate which Alexender built at the foot of Cochas, and razed it, left it might hinder his returne. Twentes the Prince of Georgia came out against him, and in a Plaine, called Mogram, they fought, but the Tarters ouercame; and proceeded to Arfeor a Citie of the Solden of Turke, who was fo well prouided to entertayne him, that Gebelabada feeing his forces decayed, returned to Hoccota Can, then in Gebelabada. Cambals. Hee defiring to subdue all Asia, called three of his sonnes, giving to each a great Armie, lochi the eldeft he fent Westward to Tigris ; Baydo, to the North ; Chagoday, to the South: and so divided Asia among his three sonnes. Hoccoia Can made choise of another skilfull and valiant Captaine, called Baydo, to whom he gave thirtie thouland Tartarian Souldiers, termed

50 Tamachs, or Conquerours, and commanded them to fet forward the very same way that the other ten thousand went before, and not to make flay in any place till they came to the Kingdome of Turkie, and to trie whether they could withftand the Solder of Turkie, which was held the mightieft of all the Princes in Asia. And if haply they found him so strong that they were not able to encounter him, they should then forbeare to fight with him, and make choise of fome place where they might reft themselves till they had received supplie of further aide from some of his sonnes which should bee neerest vinto them, and that afterwards they might with more fafety fet vpon him. Baydo accordingly with his thirtie thouland Tartarians came to the Kingdome of Turkie; and there hee underflood that the Solden which had discomfitted the first Tartarians was dead, and that his fonne Guiatadin succeeded him. And this man hearing of the

60 Tartarians comming, was very much afraid, anitgot all the Mercenaries that he could to his fuccour both Barbarians and Latines, and among st others hee had to his aide two thousand Latines under his two Captaines, the one called, John de Liminado, who came from the lle of Cyprus, and the other Bonifacius de Molin, who was borne at Genua. The Soldan also lent to his Neighbours, promiting many fauours and benefits to fuch as would affift him , by which meaner having

the Tartariaus.

Of Ging Can the chird Em-The former Friere mencion Pleno Carpini was with the : former, and Rubrug, with Mangu. Manyo Can

loss the great ouer Turque-

The fucceffe of as may feeme of the Caffle

Cangadays en-

Emperour.

affembled a great number of men, bee went towards the place where the Tartarians made their The Turke o- abode, whom they found nothing altonished at his approach; for they manfully gaue him battraile at a place called Confederack, where they overthrew the Armie of the Turker, and so the Tatarians wonne the Kingdome of Tarkie, in the yeere 1244.

19. And after a little time Hocora Can dyed , and a sonne of his succeeded in the Empire, called Gino Can, whose life was but short and after him succeeded a Kinsman of his called Mange Can, who was of very great power and felbased many Prouinces, and at length with a great purst he went into the Caibayan Sea to take a certaine Iland, which whiles he held befreeed, the thesewo, 1. de Inhabitants of those parts being very fubtile and ingenious, sent certaine Diners secretly under water, who continued fo long under the Ship, in which bee was, until they had made many to holes therein, fo chatche water came into it (no man obseruing nor stopping the leake) vntill the Ship funke, and Mango Can was drowned therein. Whereupon the refidue of the Tarrarians returned home and chose his brother, called Cobile Can, for their Emperour, who raigned ouer them two and fortie yeeres, became a Christian, and founded a certaine Citie, called Ions, in the Kingdome of Cathan, which is reported to be greater then Rome; and in that Citie he dwel-Cabila, or Cubia led untill his dying day. But leaving him, let us speake of the three sonnes of Hoccasa Can, and of Haoleon, and of his Heires.

20. Iochi, the eldest sonne of Hoccota Can, rede toward the West with all that people Citie.

Locki raigneth which his Father had given him, and there finding fruitfull and pleafant Countries, abounding in all kinde of riches, he fixed his Tents, and ruled ouer the Kingdome of Twoquestan, and the lefter 20 Perfis, even to the River Philos, where his people inhabiting ever fince, are exceedingly multiplied in persons and riches, and the Heires of Jachi haue succeeded one the other in those Dominions to this present, and those Countries are at this day ruled by two Brothers, the one called See 47. Chapt. Chapt., the other Dody, who have divided those Countries betweene them, and doe possesse them peaceably.

21. Bando, the second sonne of Hoccota Can, with the Tartarians which his Father gaue him, rode towards the North, untill he came to the Kingdome of Cumunia, where the Cumuns. ans having many armed men , opposed themselves, and defended their Land against them. But His victorie o- being at length ouer-come, they fied to the Kingdome of Hungaria, where are yet many Cumauerthe Comamians, inhabiting. Baydo having bearen the Camanians out of their Countrie, went to the King10 dome of Ruffia and conquered it, and possessed the Land of Gazaria (which is in the Northerne part of Taurica) and the Kingdome of Bulgaria, and by the way which the Cumanians had fled. he came to the Kingdome of Hangaria. Afterwards the Tartarians went towards the parts of tioned by Plus Germanie . till they came to a certaine River that runneth through the Dukedome of Auftria: where they thought to have passed over a Bridge which they found there. But Frederick the Now Musicouis. Duke of Austria, and others, that bordered neere it, had fortified the Bridge to that the Tartaria ans were denyed passage. Baydo thereupon, incensed with furie, commanded that all should paffe through the water, and himfelfe was the first that entred, exposing thereby himfelfe and His drowning all his followers to apparant danger of death: for fuch was the breadth of the River and the violence of the streame, that their Horses were wearied before they could come to the farther banke 40 of the River. Which the refidue feeing which were not yet entred into the water, they were confounded with griefe, and returned to Ruffia and Cumania which they formerly had conquered, as hath beene declared; and never fince that have the Tartarians attempted against Germa-His posteritie. nie. But the posteritie of Bayde hath ever fince successarely held those Lands which he subdued, a Othimsfeer And he which now raigneth there, is called a Toches, and ruleth peaceably and quietly.

22. (angadar (or Chagedar) with those Tartars which his Father gaue him , rode towards the South, even to the parts of India the leffer. There he found many Defarts, Mountaines, and drie Lands not inhabited, fo that hee could not passe that way : but having lost many of his People, Horses, and other Beasts, he turned him towards the West, and after much labour came to his brother lochi, to whom he related what had befalne him : who taking compassion on his 50 b Orrather of brother, gaue him and his people a good part of those Countries which hee had : and ever after, Bagoda for the those two brethren dwelled together and their Progenie, vntill this day inhabite in those parts, Successors of yet in such fort, that those which descended of the younger brother, doe bearea kinde of reuelach, were na- rence to the posteritie of the Elder, and so being content with their Portions, they live peacemed in the toably and quietly together: and that Succeffor of b locks that now lineth, is called Borach.

23. In the yeere of our Lord 1253. Haython, the King of Armenia, feeing that the Tartarians had in a manner subdued all the Kingdomes, Countries, and Lands, even to the Kingdome of Tarkie, taking Counsell of the wife, he resolved to goe in person to the Emperour of the Tartarians, the better to infinuate himfelfe into his fauour, and to make league with him. But first he fent his brother, Lord Simbald, Constable of the Kingdome of Armenia, to obtayne lafe con- 69 duct for him : who carrying with him many Presents , and going attended with a goodly companie, dispatched in good order the businesse for which he was fent, yet stayed hee by the space of foure dayes before he came backe to Ameria: but at his returne, he related to the King what he had seene and done: who without delay departed in secret manner disguised, because it might

CHAP, S.S. 2. The Armenian King Difiteth the Can. His Demands of answer, 115

be dangerous for him to be knowne in the Kingdome of Timbie, through which hee must needes Hairm King of make his journey: and as God would, at his comming thither, he found that the Soldan of Turkie was ouerthrowne by a Tartarian Captaine, whom hee met with there and made himselse journey, knowne vnto him, who when he vnderstood him to be the King of Armenia, and that hee was going toward the Emperour, entertayned him very honorably, and caused him to bee conducted to the Kingdome of Camania, and beyond the Iron gate;

And afterwards, other Tartarian Captaines caused him to bee conducted over all other Countries and Places, vntill he came to . Almalech (or Cambala) where Mango Can their Empe- c It feemes rour resided; who resoyced much at the comming of the King of Armenia, and the rather of Caracaum

In that from the comming of Changua Can ouer the Mountaine Belgian, no other great Prince had which then come to meet him, and therefore hee received and entertayned him with much honour and love, the Kings Ciand gause ynto him fome of the greatest persons about him to attend, and associate him at his pleatie, or Combain fure, and did him many other fauouts; But the King of Armenia having refled certaine dayes, as Ramufio intreated the Emperour to vouchfafe him Audience in those affaires, for which hee was come, hith it. and to sine him licence to returne. The Emperour very graciously and wered him; that he would most willingly accomplish all his defires, and that it was very acceptable voto him that he came

of his owne accord. The King with good deliberation made feuen Petitions. First, He defired that the Empe. The King of rour and all his people would be baptized in the Christian Faith, leaving all other Sects. Se. dimenia his condly, That there might be a perpetuall peace and friendship established betweene the Christi. Demands.

ans and the Tartarians. Thirdly, That in all Countries which the Tartarians either had conquered or should conquer, the Churches and Churchmen, whether secular or religious, might be free and exempted from all fernitude and payments. Fourthly, That he would deliver and free the holy Land, and the holy Sepulcher of our Lord, out of the hands of the Saracens, and reffore them to the Christians. Fiftly, That he would endeuour the destruction of the Calibb of Bala dach, who was the head and chiefe Doctor of the Sect of Mahametisme. Sixtly, Hee required that a speciall Charter might be granted him, that of whatsoever Tartarians especially such as should be nearest to the Kingdome of Armenia hee should bee occasioned to demand aide, they should forthwith be readie to affift him. Seventhly, He craved that all the Lands of the jurif-20 diction of the Kingdome of Armenia, which the Suracens had inuaded, and were or should han-

pen to be recoursed by the Tartarians, might be restored to the King of Armenia, and that fuch as he should get from the Saracon, shee might peaceably and quietly enioy. Mange Can having The answere considered the Petitions of the King of Armenia, calling before him all his chiefe Captaines and of the Tata. Counfellers in their presence, made him answere after this manner. Because that the King of rian. Armenia of his owne accord, and not of compulsion, is come vato vs from remote parts ; it befeemeth the Imperiall Maiestie to yeeld him all his demands that are lawfull and honest Therefore to you, O King of Armenia, Wee returne this answere, That wee will accept of all your Requests made, and will cause them all (God-willing) to bee duely accomplished : first, I my felte being Emperour and Lord of the Tartarians, will bee baptifed in that Faith which the 40 Christians hold at this day; withing and admining all my Subjects to doe the like; yet not en-

tending to force any thereunto. To your second, We will and agree that there be a perpetual! peace betweene the Totarion and Christians, yet with this caution, that your felie bee a chiefe Pledge and Suretie that the Christians observe on their behalfe the like peace and amitie towards vs , as wee for our part intend inviolably to keepe towards them. Wee grant alfo, That all the Churches of Christians and their Clergie-men whatfoeuer, either Secular or Religious, shall eniov their Priuledge and Immunitie of Libertie and Exemption throughout the Dominions of our Empire, and that none shall molest them any kinde of wayes. Touching the matter of the holy Land, we fay, That if we could conveniently we would willingly goe thicher in person, for the reuerence we beare to our Lord Ielus Christ. But because we have many occasions of imporso tance to ftay vs in these parts, wee will take order with our Brother Halom for the due accomplishment of that setuice in all points as it behooueth, for the freeing of the Citie of Hieralalom and all the holy Land, out of the hands of the Pagans, and restoring it to the Christians.

Concerning the Caliph of Baldach, We will give order to Baydo, our Captaine of the Tartarians, which are in the Kingdome of Turkie, and the rest thereabouts, that they bee all obedient See the 18, to our Brother, whom wee will have to deftroy the Calipb as our capitall and deadly Enemie, and a4 Chap-The Charter which the King of Armenia defireth for affiliance from the Tartarians, Wee wish it ties. to bee drawne according to his defire, and wee are readie in all things to confirme it. Laftly, whereas the King Armenia requireth , That the Lands of his Kingdome, which the Saracens had taken from, and haue fince beene recoursed by the Tatarians, may be reflored write him, we Pole calls this 60 freely and frankly accord it, willing our Brother Haloon to fee fuch restitution made without Haloon, Vian.

24. After that Mango Can had thus liberally accorded the Requests of the King of Arme- Mante Com mia, and confirmed them by Charters, he would forthwith receive the Sacrament of Baptisme, and with his people was accordingly baptifed by the hands of a certaine Bishop, who was Chancellor of the King of is baptifed.

3.

116 Haloons conquest of Persia and Bagdet, Chaliphs rich-poore diet. LIB. I.

Armenia, and all that were of his houshold with many other great Personages of both Sexes, And then he made choice of such as were to accompany his Brother Haloon, about the enterprize of the Holy Land. After Haloon and the King of Armenia departed, and rode both together vantil

The Veyage of Haloso with they palled ouer the great River Philoso, then Haloson with his mightie Armie invaded the Countreyes and Lands enery where, and in leffe then fix moneths hee fubdued eafily the whole King-Profit possessed dome of Persia, because it was without a Ruler, or Gouernour, and tooke in all the Countreyes withous refiftance, euen till he came to the Land of certayne Infidels, which are called Afailini.

* Senex de

hauing neither Law nor Religion, but living as their Prince and Lord , commonly called " Sexsome a mainty neutral Law not rengton, out noing as then Fine and Lord, commonly cauca sex-monte, fee Pas monte, influence them at whose pleasure and commandement they willingly and readily ex-reads before post themselves to death. Their had a certayne impregnable Castle, called Togodo, which was 19 fo well furnished with all kind of necessary prouision, and so strongly built and seated, that they feared no affault. Halom therefore commanded one of his Captaynes to take with him tenne thousand of those Tartarians, which hee had left in Persia, and in no wife to depart from the fiege of that Castle vntill hee had taken it, so that they remayned at the siege thereof, by the In the Latine space of seuen yeares both Winner and Summer, which at last was yeelded up by the Affalfai, it is 17. Rammf only for want of clothes, but not for any penury of victuals, or fearfitie of any other thing, whites Palohath but 3. Haloon employed himselfe in ordering of the Kingdome of Persia, and besieging the Castle of the Assassime, the King of Armenia tooke leave of him to returne, because hee had beene long out of his Kingdome: Haloson therefore licenced him to depart, and giuing him many great gifts, directed his Precept to Boyds, refiding in the Kingdome of Tarkes, which he had liabled of that he 20 should conduct him safely to the entrance of his owne Kingdome, which in all things he fulfilled, so that after three yeares and a halfe of absence, the King of Armenia, through the mercie of Ielus Christ, came joyfully home into his owne Countrey.

Ha'osa fojour-Calipb taken.

25. Halson having ordered the Kingdome of Persia in convenient manner, went into a cernethin Sorles, tayne Prouince neere to Armenia, called Sorles, where he reposed and recreated himselfe all the Sommer, and at the beginning of Winter he befreged Balked, in which the Calipb relied, who was the chiefe Mafter and Doctor of the Irreligious Sect of Mahamerifans, for which Enterprize Haoloon re-enforced his Army with thirtie thousand Tarrarians, that were in the Kingdome of Turkie . and assaulting the Citie by the shoare, hee tooke the same without any great difficultie, or delay. The Calipb was brought aline into the prefence of Halom, and there was found in 30 Baldach, fo much Treasure and Riches as would scarcely bee beleeved to bee in all the World befides; This Citie of Baldach was taken in the yeer a 2 58.

The Partimo.

26. When Haoloon had disposed of the Citie of Baldach, he caused the Calipb to be brought vnto him, and all his Treasure to be laid before him, Then he demanded of him whether he had beene Lord of all that Treasure, who affirming, it was asked againe why hee had not made vie thereof in procuring the ayde of his Neighbours, and leuyed mercenarie Souldiers to defend him and his Countrey from the power of the Tartarians, who fe answere was that hee thought his owne people had been fufficient. Then faid Halon to the Calipb, thou art faid to be the chiefe Doctor & Teacher of all that beleeue the deceining Doctrine of Mahomet, & receinest rewards and Gifts of them all; therefore fisch and fo precious a Master must be fed with no other meate 40 but with these precious things, which thou hast loued and kept so carefully, all which wee give thee for thy fustenance : and so commanded that the Calipb should bee shut into a Chamber, and that his Pearle and Gold should bee set before him, that hee might eate as much as hee would thereof, but that no other meate nor drinke should be given him; by which meanes the miserable wretch ended his life after a miferable manner. And there was no other Calob in Baldach after

His death amongst his Treasure.

27. After that Haoloon had subdued Baldach and all the Countrey round about, hee distributed the Provinces among this Captaines and Rulers as he thought good, giving charge that the The fauour of Christians should everie where he louingly vied, and be preferred to the government of Castles and Cities, and the Saracens held under streight subiection. Haloon had also a Wife called Don. 50 wards Chriflians. Nis Wife. cofcaro discended of those Kings that came from the East being guided by the Starre of the Natiuitie of our Lord, which Ladie being a most deuout Christian, was a great meanes of destroying the Temples of the Saracens, and prohibiting the Solemnities and Ceremonies of Mabomet, and finally rafed their Temples to the ground, and brought the Saracens in such subjection that they durft not shew their heads.

28. After that Haoloon had rested a yeare, he sent to the King of Armenia, to meete him at 30. After the resource has tende a year, he can to the ming to determine, to meete this at the Citiz Robery, in the Kingdome of Milopotania, because he entended to go towards the Holy Land, that hee might reflore it to the Christians, whereupon, the King Haylow of timous memorie tooke his Iourney, accompanied with a great Armie both of Horsemen and Footmen, for at that time the Kingdome of Armenia, was in fo good estate, that it could raise a power of 60 t welue thouland Horse, and threescore thousand Footmen, whereof beeing an Eye witnesse my felfe, I can will gine testimonie thereof, when the King of Armenia was come according to this appointment of Haplan, and had conference with him touching the Enterprize of the Holy Land, he adusted him that because the Soldan of Halappi, ruled over all the Kingdome of Sy-

CHAP.S.S.3. Halappi won by the Tartars, Civil wars, Scandall from Christians. 117

ria, in which the Citie of Ierufalem was feated, the way to get the Holy Land, was first to befiege the Citie of Halappi, being the chiefe Citie of Syria, which when he had wonne, it would not be difficult for him to subdue all the rest of that Country : which adule Haloon liked well. and befieged the Citie of Halappi (or Aleppo) which he found to be of great firength being well Balifire. walled and inhabited : therefore with Mines vider ground, with Slings and other Engines, hee begirt it fo ftraightly, and affaulted it fo manfully on every fide that albeit it feemed impresnable, yet in the space of nine dayes he obtayned it. In this Citie they found such incredible store Hallon taken. of wealth as would hardly be beleeved, yet there was a Caitle in the midft of the Citie, that held out eleuen dayes after the Citie was taken, which at length was wonne by undermining. So the 10 Citie Halappi, and afterwards the King lome of Syria, was taken by Haolono in the yeare of our

29. But when the Soldan of Halappi name! Melechnafer being then in the Citie of Damafons, both Latine & understood that the Citie of Halappi, with his Wife and Children in it, was taken, being utterly Itabas have destitute of Countell hee came and cast himselfe at the feet of Halon, hoping thereby that his 1240. Wife and Children with some part of his Dominions would bee restored him, But the Soldan found himselte therein deceiued, for Halom fent him with his Wife and Children into Persia, that thereby he might enion the Kingdome of Syria, the more fecurely. These things thus disposed, Halom ga le to the King of Armenia a great part of the spoile of Halappi, and of the Lands which he had inuaded, whereby the King of Armenia was firengthened with many Ca-20 files bordering on his Kingdome, which he fortified as he thought good; and after that Haoloon had ferled the affaires of those Cities and Countries which he had wonne, intending to goe to Ierusalem to free the Holy Land from Pagans, and to restore it to the Christians, There came to him a Messenger the third day, who brought newes that the Tarrarian Empire was vacant by the death of his Brother Mango Can, and that his comming was earnefly expected to bee his Successor therein, which report made him very forrowfull. In regard whereof hee could now proceed no further in person, but left ten thousand Tartars to keepe the Kingdome of Stria, vnder the command of a Captay necalled Guiboga, to whom he gaue order that hee should conquer the Holy Land, and reftore it to the Christians. And so leaning his Sonne at Tauris, hee hastened Eastward himselfe by great lourneyes.

III.

of Cobil A CAN the fift Emperour, of the Tartarians : Of the Warre with BARCHA, and Tartarian quarrell with the Christians , HAO-LAUNS death. Acts of the Soldan of Egypt. Of
ABAYA and other Sonnes and Succeffors of HALDON.

Ve before he could come to the Kingdom of Persia, he heard that the Nobles & Princes

had placed his Brother Cobia Case in the Imperial Seat of the Totals, which he heard
was between

while he was at Tamis: where he widerflood that Beautiful Bernell Just a marking had placed his Brother Cobila Car in the Imperial Seat of the Tartars, which he heard war between whilft he was at Tamis : where he vnderstood that Barcat (or Barcha) was marching Haston and while the was a Labora while the second that Details of Second was maximing and the will a great Armie, purposing to make himselfe Emperor. Hasbase therefore Berate Second affembled his people and met with his Enterines, on a certayne River which was frozen, where beganne a very great Battaile. But the Ice being broken by the great multitude of Horfes and Guissgaoi the Men, there was drowned on the one fide and on the other thirtie thousand Tartars; Infomuch, Kindredot the that the Armies on each fide returned. But Guiboga whom Haoloon had left in the Kingdome of three Kings

Spria, and the Prouince of Palestina held those Countreyes peaceably, and Ioued the Christians that came to well, for he was of the Progenie of the three Kings which went to worthip the Nativitie of our Nativitie of Lord. But when he had laboured earneilly to reduce the Holy Land againe under the power of Christ. the Christians, the D-uill sowed the seed of scandall, and discord betwixt him and the Christians of those parts, which hapned on this manner. In the Land of Belforte, which is of the Ter- Belfortes ritory of the Citie of Sidon, there were fundry Townes and Villages inhabited by Saracens, which paid certayne Tribute to the Tartars, on whom some of Sidon and Belforte made divers rodes and spoyles killing fundry of the Saracens, and carrying others away Captine with a great drone of Cattle. A Nephew of Guiboga remayning neere thereabouts, followed speedily after those Christians that had committed those out-rages to tell them on the behalfe of his Vncle, that they should dismisse their bootie. But some of them vinwilling to large their prey they had

60 taken, ranne vpon him, and flue him, with divers other Tartarians that accompanyed him. Gui. He deftroyeth boga hearing that the Christians had slaine his Nephew, rode presently and tooke the Citie of the Citie of Sidon, difmanteled the walls thereof, and flue some few Christians, the rest fauing themselves Sidon. in an Iland, And neuer after would the Tarrars trust the Christians of Syria, neither durst they put confidence in the Tartari, who were afterwards driven out of the Kingdome of Spria by the Saracens, as shall be declared.

The Soldans

31. Whiles Haoloon was butie in the warre with Barcat, as hath beene faid, the Soldan of Egypt affembling his Armie came to the Province of Paleftina, and in a place called Hamalech ginft Guiboga, he soyned battaile with Guiboga and his Tartars, where Guiboga was flaine, and his Armie defeated. The Tartare which escaped went into Armenia, and by this meanes the Kingdome of Saria was wholly libdued by the Saracens, fauing certayne Cities of the Christians, which were feated neere the Sea. When Halson vn.derthood how the Soldan of Egypt had inuaded Stria. Hastone press. Hand driven thence his people, he gathered his Armie and fent to the King of Armenia, and to the ring to conew King of Georgia, and the other Christians of the East to prepare themselves against the Soldan of the wirt, licith. Egype and the Saracens, and when his Armie was in readinesse a sicknesse seized him, of which he languished the space of a fortnight, and then dyed, by whose death the enterprize of the Holy Land had an end. Abaga his Sonne held the Dominion of his Father, who intreated the Em-Abaga his Son perour Cobila Can being his Vnele, to confirme him therein, to which he willingly accorded, So he was called Abaga Can, and began to reigne in the yeare of our Lord 1364.

32. Abaga was wife and gouerned prosperously in all things, two only excepted, one that he would not be a Christian, as his Father had beene, but worshipped Idols, beleeuing the Idolatrous Priests. The other, that he was alwayes in warres with his Neighbours, by reason wherof the Soldan was long in quiet, and the power of the Saracens much increased. Those Tartars (or rather Turks) which could escape from out the Dominion of the Tartars, fled vnto the Soldan, feeking to avoid the heavie burthens which the Tartars imposed on them. And the Soldan dealt politikely, for he fent Messengers by Sea to the Tartars, in the Kingdomes of Camania, and 20 Ruffia, and made composition and agreement with them, that when seeuer Abaga should moone warre against the Land of Egypt, then they should inuade his Countrey, for which he promised them great gifts, by meanes whereof Abaga could not well inuade the Land of Egypt, but the Soldan could eatily without reliftance inuade the Christians in the parts of Syria, infomuch, that the Christians lost the Citie of Antioch, and divers other places of strength, which they held in 33. Moreover, Bendecar the Soldan of Egypt was fo fortunate that he much abased the King-

Bendecar Soldan of Ezyot menia Ramulia

dome of Armenia. For it hapned that the King of Armenia with many of his men was gone to the Tartars, which the Soldan hearing, fent a Coptayne of his to imuade the Kingdome of Arcals him Bus. The Sonnes of the King of Armenia, gathering together all that could beare Armes, en- 30 countred the Egyptians in the Confines of their Kingdome, and refifted them couragiously; but the Armie of the Armenians being ouerthrowne, one of the Kings Sonnes was taken, and the other was flaine in battaile. So that the Saracens thereby wasted and spoyled all the Kingdome of Armenia, and carryed infinite riches thence to the great damage of the Christians, whereby the Enemies power was much encreased, and the Kingdome of Armenia wondrously weakned. The King whose endeauour was wholly bent about the destruction of the Insidels, having heard this most valiappie newes of his owne Countrey, busied his thoughts night and day how to afflict the Saracens, and oft-times very earneftly dealt with Abaga , and his Tartars to attempt He concludes the overthrow of faithleffe Mahomet, and the reliefe of the Christians. But Abage excelled himselfe by reason of the warres, in which he was daily entangled with his Neighbours. The 40 King of Armenia leeing that hee could not have any present ayde of the Tartarians, fent and made truce by his Meffengers with the Solder of Egypt, that he might redeeme his Sonne which was Prifoner. The Soldan also promised him that if he restored him a friend of his called Angoldscar whom the Tartars held captine, and yeelded up the Cattle Tempfach , and some holds of the Citie of Halappi, which he had gotten in the time of Haoloon, hee would let his Sonne at libertie. Whereupon the Soldan, having received his friend, and the Castle of Templacke beeing Grate Monkes yeelded, and two other Cassles throwne downe at his appointment, delivered his Sonne out of changed their Prison, and restored him accordingly. Then afterwards King Hayshon of famous memorie, hanames, appea- using reigned fortie fine yeares, and done much good to the Christians, yeelded up his Kingdome rethby theex- and Dominion to his Sonne Linen, whom he had delivered out of captivitie, and renouncing this 50 ample of Alex- Kingdom of the World became professed in Religion, and was called Macharius, changing his name (according to the custome * of the Armenians) when they enter into Religion, and in fhort time after dyed in peace in the yeare of our Lord 1270.

in Nicet. p.48,6. and of Andrenicus the Emperour in Gre-

garas, lib. 9 p.47

and of Canta-

cuzenus the

the Soldan.

34. This King of Armenia Linone was wife, and gouerned his Kingdom providently, and being much beloued by his owne People, and by the Tartars, he laboured earnestly to destroy the Saracens, lo that in his time Abaga made peace with al his neighbors, who of long time had been his enemics. Then the Soldan of Egypt entred the Kingdome of Twkie, and flue many of the Tartars, and draue them out of many Townes. For a Saracen, called Parnana, being Captaine Calcardilas lib.z. ouer the Turtars that were in Turkie, rebelled against Abaga, and fought the destruction of the Abaga entred Tartarians. Abaga hearing thereof, posted thather so speedily, that in fifteenedayes hee rode 50 the Kingdome fortie dayes journey. The Soldan hearing of his comming departed fuddenly, not daring to make any longer abode. Yet could not fo speedily withdraw himselfe, but that the Tartars tollowing fwiftly, ouertooke the rereward of his Armie in the entrie of the Kingdome of Egipt, in a place called Pafblanke. There the Tartarians tulking on them, tooke two thouland Honeman of

the Saracens, befide much riches, and fine thousand of the Cordines which lived in that Countrie. Abaga being come to the Confines of Egypt, was perswaded to goe no farther for heat : for that Land is very hote, and his Tartars, and their beafts having come speedily from farre, could hardly have indured it, by reason whereof hee returned into Turkie, and spoiled and wasted all the Countries that had rebelled, and yeelded to the Soldan. But he caused the Traytor Parnana with his partakers to be cut afunder in the midth, after the Tartarian manner, and part of his flesh to caten. be ferued in all his meats, whereof he and his Captaines did eat. Such was the reuenge of King Abaga on the Traitor Paruana.

Abasa having effected his defires in Turkie, and enriched his Tartars with the spoyles In of the rebellious Saracens, he called to him the King of Armenia, and offered him the kingdome King Liumore. of the repetitions said that his father and hee had been euer faithfull to the Tartarians. But the futeth the offer of the King-

King of Armenia being discreet and wife, rendred great thankes to Abaga for so great a Present, dome of The but excused himselfe from the accepting thereof, as vnable to gouerne two Kingdomes. For the &c.

Soldan of Egypt was in his full strength, and earnestly bent against the Kingdome of Armenia: to that hee had enough to doe to prouide for the defence thereof. Yet adulted him to fettle and dispose the Kingdome of Turkie in such fort ere his departure, that there might bee no feare of Rebellion afterwards: and in any case to permit no Saracen to command there. Which aduice Abage accepted of, and neuer after fuffered any Saracen to beare rule in that Countrey. The Heavegeth the Abaga accepted of, and neuer arter functed any Suraces to beare fine in that Country. In delivering of kine of Armenia then defined him to thinke of delivering the Holy Land out of the hands of lenglalm itom the Pagans: wherein he promifed all his best endeauour: and wished the King to fend mellen- Pagans.

gers to the Pope, and to other Princes of Christendams for their assistance. So Abaga having ordered the affaires of Turkie, returned to the Kingdome of Corazen, where hee had left his familie. Coracon. Bendecar the Soldan of Egypt, after he had received fuch damage by the Tartars, was poisoned. died in Damafeu : whereof the Christians of those parts were very glad. And the Saracens The death of very fortowfull : for they had not his like after, as they themselves commonly reported. For his the Soldan, fonne, called Melechabic, succeeded him, who was soone driven out of his Dominion by one Melechabic his called Elfi, who violently viurping, made himfelfe Soldan. 36. The time appointed being come, when Abaga was to begin his warre against the Sol- ceffor.

tell against him: or otherwise to take in the Castles and Holds of the Country, and deliver

dome of Stria, and went spoyling and forraging, tilbehey came to the Citie Aman, now called

Camella, which is feated in the midft of Syria. Betore this Citie lieth a faire great Playne, where

led Turara. When they thought the Soldans Power vtterly ouerthrowne, Mangodanier who

never had feene the conflicts of warre before, being afraid without any reasonable cause of cer-

taine Saracens, called Beduins, withdrew himselfe out of the field , having the better, forsaking

the King of Armenia, and his Captaine which had preuayled against his enemies. When the

Soldan, which thought he had loft all, faw the field cleere, and all abandoned, he got vpon a little

hill, with foure armed men, and stood there. The King of Armenia returning from the pursuit, and miffing Mangodanior in the field, was much aftonied, and imagining which way hee should

30 thirtie thouland men, being Tartars, and couragiously to overcome the Soldan, if he came in bat-

dan of Egypt, hee appointed his brother Mangedanier to goe to the Kingdome of Syria with

them to the Christians, if the Soldan should shun the fight. When Mangodanior with his Armie Mangodanion fetting forward, was come neere the Confines of Armenia, het sent for the King of Armenia, nerall by his who came prefently vnto him with a goodly companie of Horse: so that they entred the KingBrother.

the Seldan of Egypt had affembled his Power, intending to fight with the Tartarians. And there He comments the Saracen on the one fide, with the Christians and Tartars on the other fide, fought a great to battell abattell. The King of Armenia with the Christians ruled and commanded the right wing of the Soldan.

An Armie which inuaded the Soldans left wing manfully, and put them to flight, and purfued them three dayes journey, even to the Citie Aman. Another part of the Soldans Armie was also rou- Turara. ted by Amalech a Tartarian Captaine, who pursued them also three dayes journey, to a Citie cal-

50 be gone, followed after him. But Amalech returning from the enemies whom he had purfued, abode two dayes expecting Almah. his Lord, supposing that he had followed after him, as he ought, for the further subduing of his enemies, and the Countrey which they had our come: till at last, having heard of his retrait, leaving his victorie, hee made speed after him; whom hee found on the banke of the River Esphrates staying for him. And then the Tartars returned to their owne Pronince. But the King of The King of Armenia fulfained much loffe, and hard adventure in his returne : for the Horles of the Christians Amous, his of the Kingdome of Armenia, were to wearied and ipent with the length of the way, and want his returne. of Fodder, that they were not able to travell, so that the Christiani going scatteringly by vnyfuall wayes, were often found out, and flayne without mercy by the Saracens inhabiting those 60 parts: Infomuch that the greatest part of the Armie was lott, and in a manner all the Nobility.

And this miladuenture of Mangodanior happened in the yeere of our Lord 1282. When Abaga understood the fuccesse hereof, he assembled all his people, and when hee was abaga prepareadie to fet forward with all his power against the Saracens, a certaine Saracen, the sonne of reth arenenge the Deuill, came to the Kingdome of Persia, and prevayled by gitting great gifts to f me that

destroyed Parsana.

Tanzodor the brother and Succ.for of

Of a Christian rurne: h Sara-

37. After the death of Abaga Can the Tartars affembled themselves, and ordayned over them a brother of his, called Tangodor, who had overgone the rest of his brethren. In his youth he had received the Sacrament of Baptisme, and was baptised by the name of Nicholas. But being come to riper yeeres, and keeping companie with Saracens, whom hee loued, hee became a wicked Saracen, and renouncing Christian Religion, would be called Mahomet Can, and laboured by all meanes to turne all the Tartarians to that irreligious Sect of Mahomes the some In of Iniquitie; in fuch fort, that those that hee could not compell by violence, hee a lured by preferments and rewards: infomuch that in his time many of the Tartarians became proteffed Saracens, as at this day appeareth. This Child of perdition commanded the Churches of the Christians to be destroyed, and forbade them to vse any of their religious Rites or Ceremonies. Hee caused the doctrine of Mahomes to bee publikely preached, the Christians to bee banished, and their Churches in the Citie of Tauris veterly to bee destroyed. Hee fent Messengers also to the Solden of Egypt, and concluded a Peace and a League with him, promiting that all the Chris fians within his Dominion should become Saracens, or elfe lose their heads, which gave the Saracens cause of much reloycing, and made the Christians very sad. races cause or much retuyeing and made the corrigions very and.

Hee sent moreoure to the King of Annuals in Georgia, and to the other Christian Princes of 18
those parts to come vato him without delay. But they resolved rather to die in battell then to

Hee feeketh to betray the Kings of Armenia and

God (which neuer refuseth them that put their truft in him) sent consolation to them all. For a Brother of this Mahomet, with a Nephew of his also, called Argon, opposing themselves, Hee is accused and rebelling against him for his euill deeds did signifie to Cobila Cass the great Emperour of the to Chille Can. Tartarians, how he had forlaken the fleps of his Ancestors, and was become a wicked Saracen: labouring with all his might to bring the reit of Tartars to be Saracon alfo. Which when Cobila Can vnderstood he was much displeased thereat : infomuch that he sent and required Mahomes to reforme his euill wayes, for otherwise he would proceed against him. Which message 30 replenished him with wrath and indignation, informed that he being perfewated there was none that durft gainfay his proceedings but his Brother and his Nephew **Agos, he caused his Brother to be flayne: and intending the like to his Nephew, he went against him with a mightie Armie. Argon being not of firength to withfland his forces, betooke himselfe to a firong Hold among

obey his commandement, for other remedie they could finde none, And the Christians being

now in such anguish and bitternesse of heart, that they rather desired to die then to live, even

the Mountaines; which that Sonne of Iniquitie belieged with his deuillish Armie, Argon finally yeelded himselfe, with condition that he might still enjoy his Dignitie and Dominion. But Mahomet deliuered him to the Constable and others of the Nobilitie, to bee kept in Prison. And departing towards the Citie of Tauris, where he left his wives and children, he gaue direction that his Armie should come softly after him : but appointed the Constable, and such as he trusted most, to put his Nephew to death secretly, and to bring him his head. These 40 things thus hastily ordered and directed, there was amongst those that had received the command of that bloudy execution, a man of some Place and Authoritie, brought vp vnder Abaga the Father of Argen, who having compassion of his distresse, tooke Armes, and in the night time sue the Constable of Mahemet and all his followers, and delivering Argon, made him Lord and Ruler of all: forme for feare, and others for love being obedient to his will and commandement. Argon being thus established, accompanied with his faithfull followers, pursued presently after Mahomet, whom he ouertooke and seized on before he came to Tauris, and caused him after their manner, to be cut asunder in the midit. And such was the end of that cursed Caitiffe Mahomer, before he had fate two yeeres in his feat.

Argon of a

His revenge

Of ARGON the Some of ABAGA, and REGALTO his Brother; of BAIDO, and of the exploits of CASAN against the Soldan of Egypt, and others.

N the yeere of our Lord 1285, after the death of Mahames, Argon the sonne of Abaga Can, would not take on him the title of Can, vntill he had received commandement from the great Can Soueraigne Lord and Emperour, to whom he dispatched Messen- 69

Arge is con- ced much of his faceoffe against Mahomes and fent fome of his great Officers, ocnolime Arge is gon in his Dominion, who was thenceforth called Can, and much respected of all. For he was of a goodly aspect and presence, couragious and wife in his proceedings, much regarding and

CHAP.S. S.4. Argon, Regaito, Baido, Casan, Tartar Kings Acts.

honouring the Christians. The Churches over-throwne by Mahomet he repayred. The Kings of Armenia and Georgia, with the other Christian Princes of the East, came vnto him, defiring his best countaile, and helpe that the holy Land might be freed from the Pagans. Argen very gracoully answered, That he would gladly doe any thing that might tend to the honour of God, and the advancement of Christian Religion, and that he intended to make peace with his Neighbours, that hee might the more freely and fecurely follow that enterprise. But Aron. before the execution of these good designments, dyed in the fourth yeare of his raigne. And a Brother He dyeth. of his, called Regasto, succeeded him, who was a man of small valour, as shall be after declared.

29. In the yeere of our Lord 1289. after the death of Argon Can , his brother Regains was Ic his Succeffor, being a man of no Religion : in Armes he was of no valour, but was altogether giuen ouer to beaftly Loxurie, and fatiating his infatiable appetite with superfluous meates and drinkes : and did nothing elfe by the space of fix yeeres which he raigned, infomuch that being hared of his fubicets and contemned of frangers, he was finally frangled by his Peeres. After

whole death Ado, a Kiniman of his fucceeded him, who was vpright and conftant in Religi- Baydo fuccee. on, and did many favours to the Christians, but he foone ended his dayes, as shall be declared. deth him. 40. In the yeere of our Lord 1295, after the death of Regaits, his Kinfman Baydo ruled over the Tartars. He being a good Christian builded the Christian Churches, and commanded that none (hould Preach or publish the Doctrine of Mahomet amongst the Tartarians. But because

those of the Sect of Mahomet were many, they could hardly be induced to bee obedient to that 20 commandement of Bayde, and therefore fent Messengers secretly to Casus the sonne of Argono, promifing to give him the Dominion which Baydo held, and to make him their Lord and Ruler. if he would renounce the Christian Religion. Casan caring little for Religion, but greatly affe-Ging Dominion promifed to doe whatfocuer they would, and fo began an open rebellion, whereypon Bardo affembled his people, thinking to have taken Cafan, not knowing of the Treaton which his people had wrought against him. But when they came to the Field, all the Mabometilis leaving Bardo, fled voto Cafan, to that Bardo being forfaken, thought to have escaped by The death of flight, yet was ourfued and flaine by his Enemies.

41. After the death of Baydo; Cafan being made Ruler over the Tartars, at the beginning Cafan fucces. of his raigne, durft not gainfay what hee had promifed the Mahometiffs that had promoted him deth.

30 thereto, and therefore thewed himfelfe for a while very auftere to the Christians. But when hee found himfelfe well and firmely fettled in his Dominion, hee began to honour and cherish the Christians, doing them many favours as shall be declared. First, therefore hee destroyed many great Ones, who had beene perfwaders with him to become a Saracen, and to perfecute the Chrifians. Then hee commanded all the Tartars within his Dominion, to bee readie with their Armour and all necessarie furniture, to attend him for a Conquest of the Kingdome of Egypt, and ouer-throw of the Soldan, and fent to the King of Armenia, and the King of Georgia, and other Christian Princes of the East in that behalfe. At the beginning of the Spring Cafan gathered his forces, and first fet forward towards Baldach: and at length turned towards the Land of Egppt. The Soldan, called Melechnafer, who had long before some intelligence of the comming Melechnafer

40 of the Tartars, affembled all his power, and came before the Citie of Aman, which is feated in the Soldan, the middelt of the Kingdome of Syria. Calan understanding that the Soldan meant to give him battaile, forbore to befrege any Citie or Caille, but hasted speedily to the place where the Soldan was, and pitched his Tents but one dayes journey from him in certaine Meadowes, where was plentie of forrage and feeding, where he rested his Followers and their Horses which were wearied with their trauell. Amongst whom was a Saracen, called Calphack (or Capchick) who had calphacks douferued the Soldan, and was fled from him to Cafan, for feare of imprisonment and punishments ble dealing. for his miffe-demerits. This Calphack had received fundrie favours and rewards of Casan, who reposed great confidence in him : yet, like a wicked Traytor, he disclosed the counsaile and purpole of Cafan to the Soldan and Saracens, acquainting them by Letters how Cafan meant to

50 abide in those Meadowes, vntill they had sufficiently rested their Horses which were wondrously wearied, and therefore counfailed the Soldan to fet upon him before his Horfes were refreshed, whereby he might eafily ouer-come the Tartarians.

The Soldan who thought to have expected the Tartars at the Citie of Aman, did hereupon The Soldans change his resolution, and with a chosen companie hasted with all speede to assaile Casan at vn- sudden on-set, awares. But his Espials and Scouts giving him notice of their approach. Cofan commanded his men prefently to be let in order and mantully to relift them. He himfelfe more bold then a Lion with such companie as hee had about him, rode to meete the Saracens, who had approached fo neere that they could not avoid the battaile. Cafan feeing that the relidue of his companie were fored so farre abroad in the Countrie for the feeding of their Horses, that they could not sudden. He dealth po-60 ly come to him, he commanded those that were with him to dismount from their Horses, and linkely.

placing them in a Circle, made as it were a Wall of them, and with their Bowes and Arrowes cauted his men to expect their Enemies, and not to shoote vittill they were fure to reach them, by which meanes the Tartars shooting altogether, wherein they are very skilfull and readie, wounded the foremost Horses of their Enemies in such fort that they fell before the rest, where-

Can: to.

Gazara.

Ayton pre ent at the fe and

the other Ex-

puditions,

trom Halam

by the rest following on with great furie, and finding the former overthrowne, fell themselves head-long over them : infomuch, that of all the Saracons there escaped few, which were not either ouerthrowne or elfe wounded to death, with the Arrowes of the Tartars.

The Soldan himselfe being in the Armie, fled as fast as hee could, which Cafin perceiuing, made his men get vp on their Horfes, and manfully to fet on their Enemies, being himfelfe the forem of among ft them that entred the Armie of the Soldan, who with fome small companie remayning fo long, fuftayned the brunt, vntill the Tartars came in Troupes well ordered to fight. and the 1 came the whole Armie on both fides to battaile, which endured from the Sunne riling He outs-com- till the Ninth houre. But in the end, the Soldan with his Saracens fled, being not able to with-

stand the courage of Calan, who did wonders with his owne hand, and pursued them with his 10 people, killing on every fide vntill it was darke night, and made fo great flaughter of the Saracens, that the Earth was couered every where with their dead carkaffes. That night Cafar refled at a place, called Caneto, rejoycing exceedingly at that great victorie which God had given him against the Saracens. This fell out in the yeare of our Lord 1301. on the Wedneday before the Feast of the Natiuitie. 42. Then Cafan fent the King of Armenia, and a Leader of the Tartars, called Molar, with

fortie thouland Horfe, to pursue the Soldan as farreas the Delart of Egypt, being twelve dayes iourney diffant from the place where the battaile was fought, and willed them to expect him or fome Messenger from him at the Citie Gazara. And they departed speedily before the Sunne rifing, to follow after the S Idan. But some three dayes after, Casan sent for the King of Arme- 20 nia to returne, because he purposed to besiege the Citie of Damascus, and willed Molay with the fortie thousand Tartars to pursue with speede after the Saracens, and to put what hee could take to the fivord. Yet the Soldan himselfe flying very swittly, and riding on Dromedaries both night Beduines are and day, in the conduct and companie of certaine Bedains, escaped into the Citie of Babylon very strangely. But others of the Saracem fled severall wayes, as they thought they could best save themselues, and a great number of them going by the way of Tripolis, were slaine by the Chriflians, which inhabited the Mountayne of Libanus. The King of Armenia returning to Cafan, found that the Citie of Aman had yeelded vnto him, so that the whole treasure of the Soldan, and his Armie was brought into his presence: which was so great that every one marvailed, why the Soldan carried fo much treasure with him when he went to fight. Casan, when he had gathered together all the riches and spoiles which they had gotten, bestowed them bountifully a- 30 mongit the Tartars, and the Christians his followers, whereby they were all made rich.

And I Friar Haython, the Compiler of this Hiftorie, who was present in all Expeditions and

Battailes, which the Tartars had with the Soldan, from the time of Haloon to this day, yet did I neuer see nor heare that any of the Tartarian Lords accomplished more in two dayes then did Casan. For the first day, with a small companie of his owne, he ouer-came a great Armie of his Enemies, and did fuch exploits in his Perfon, that he wanne fame and commendations about all the rest. On the second day, such was his largesse, and so great this liberalitie of his heart, that of all the infinite wealth and treasure which hee got, hee kept nothing for himselfe, but a Sword and a Purse, in which was contayned certaine writings concerning the Land of Egypt, and the number of the Soldens Armie. And this was most maruailous about all the rest, how in so little Calans dwarfish a body, and of so bad presence (for he seemed like a Monster) there could be so much vertue and flature and ill- rigour contayned : for among neere two hundred thousand Souldiers, there could hardly one of fauoured tea- lesse flature, or of worse aspect be found. Therefore, because this Casan lived in our time, it is fitting wee made the more ample narration of his Acts. And in regard that the Soldan who was ouerthrowne by Casan, is yet living at the writing of this Historie, they which intend to destroy, or any wayes to endamage the Saracens, may receive many advertisements out of these

> After some few dayes rest, Casan directed his course towards the Citie of Damascus: where the Citizens hearing of his approch, and fearing left if hee tooke them by force, they should die without mercy, by the aduice of the wifest amongst them, fent with one consent their Messengers vnto him with offer of their Citie, which hee willingly accepted, and after a while rode towards the River of Damascus, on whose Bankes hee pitched his Tents, forbidding any damage to bee done to the Citie. Then the Citizens fent him divers gifts, and plentie of victuals for his Armie. There Cafan made his abode fine and fortie dayes with all his Followers, except those fortie thousand Tartars which were fent with Molay, who stayed his comming at the Citie of Gaccara.

> 43 While Cafan reposed himselfe neere Damasco, there came newes vnto him, how a Kinsman of his called Baydo, had entred into the Kingdome of Perfia, and committed great spoile there in his absence : and thereupon hee resolued to returne to his owne. Leauing therefore his 60 chiefe Captaine Cotolufa, with part of his Armie for the cultodie of the Kingdome of Syria (whom hee willed Molay and the rest of the Tartars to be obedient vnto as to his Lieutenant) he fet Rulers and Gouernours over all the Cities , and committed the government of Damalcus to the Traytor Calfach, being not yet acquainted with his tray erous disposition. Then calling

to him the King of Armenia, and acquainting him with his purpole, hee told him that hee would willingly have delivered the Lands which hee had conquered into the Christians hands, if they had come to him, and that if they came hee would give order to Cotolnia to reflore them the Lands which they had formerly helden; and to yeeld them convenient supply for the repayring of their Castles and Fortresses. These things thus ordered, Casan tooke his iourney towards Mesopotamia, but when hee came to the River Emphrates, hee fent word to Cotolusa, that leaving twentie thousand Tastars under the command of Molay, hee should come speedily to him with the rest of the Armie. Cotolusa did as was commanded him, fo that Molay remayned Lieutenant in Syria for Cafan, who eft-soones by perswasion of the cassassis wes-

To Traytor Calfach, remooued towards the parts about lerufalem, to a place called Gaur, to finde fon. good feeding and prouision for his Horses. But in the Sommer time , Caffach (who had formerly hatched Treason in his heart against Cafan, fent word fecretly to the Soldan, that hee would reftore him Damafens with the other Townes which Cafar had taken. The Soldan liked hereof, and couenanted to give him Danufco in perpetuall keeping, and part of his treasure with his sister to wite. Infomuch, that shortly after, Calfach became Rebell, and caused all the strong places to rebell against the Tartars, bearing themselues bold on the heate of Sommer, in which they knew the Tartare could not

ride nor yeeld any aide vnto their frie ds. When Molay perceined that they rebelled every where, hee durit not stay any longer with so small a companie, but tooke the shorter way 20 towards the Kingdome of Mesopotamia, and signified thence to Casan all that had hapned in the Kingdome of Syria. Who feeing hee could not any way redreffe it at that feafon, by reafon of heate, yet when the Winter approached, hee made very great preparation on the bankes of the River Euphrates, and fent over Cotolufa before with thirtie thousand Tartarian Horse-men, directing him that when hee came to the parts of Antiochia, hee should call vnto him the King of Armenia, and the other Christians of the East, and of Cyprus, and with that ftrength should enter into the Kingdome of Syria, whiles hee prepared to come after with the strength of his Armie. Cotolufa did as hee was commanded, and with his thirtie thou-

fand Tartars went forwards till hee came to Antioch, and then fent to the King of Armenia,

who came vnto him with his Armie. The Christians also in the Kingdome of Ciprus having 30 heard of the comming of Cololufa, came speedily with their Gallies and other Vessels to the Ile called Anternda, among whom was the Lord Tyron brother to the King of Cyprus, Mafter Tyron. of the Holpitall of the Temple, with their Brethren of their Societie. And thele being all readie to vnder-goe the seruice of Christ, there came a sumour that Casan was dangerously sicke, that men dispayred of his recourrie. Whereupon Cotolusa with his Tartars returning towards Casan; the King of Armenia returned also into his Countrey; and the Christians at the Ile of Anterada to the Kingdome of Coprus, by which meanes the businesse of the Holy Land was vt-

terly abandoned, which happened in the yeere of our Lord 1301. Againe, in the yeare of our Lord 1303. Cafan affembling a mightie Armie, came with great cafan renew. Against in the Riner Emphaster, intending to enter into the Kingdome of Syria, and there either water to defire the whole Section C Achonses, and to reflore the Holy Land to the Christians. But of Syria. the Saracens fearing the comming of Casan, and doubting that they should not be able to withstand him when they had reaped and gathered their Corne and other fruits of the Earth, and had

housed their cattell in strong holds, they set fire on the rest, that the Tartars when they came The Saracen might not find victuals for themselues, nor for forrage for their beasts. When Casan understood burne and what the Agarens had done, and how they had waited all the Land, confidering that his hor- waste their fes could not there be fed nor fuftayned, he refolued to remayne that Winter you the bankes of trey. the River Empirates, and to beginne his Journey at the beginning of the Spring, when the graffe began to sproute. For the Tartars are ever more carefull of their Horses then of themselves, being contented with the smallest pittance of any kind of nourshment for thems: lues,

Then Casan sent for the King of Armenia, who came to him without delay, and lodged 50 himselfe on the River. Cafan extended three dayes Tourney in length even from a certayne Cafile called Cacabe, to another Caffle called Bir, which Caffles appertayned to the Saracens , yet Cictabe, yeelded without any affault vnto Cafan. But while Cafan abode there, expecting the conue- sir. nient feafon for effecting his desire on the Saracens, and to deliver the Holy Land out of their hands, the Deuil caft a new Obstacle in his way, for he had newes againe that Baydo ha lentred, Bydorch: and made more spoyles on his Land then before; so that it was necessary for him to returne to agains, his owne, whereat being much grieued, in respect that he was constrayned so long to de'ay the businesse of the Holy Land, he commanded his Captayne Cotolusa with fortie thousand Tartars Cotolus de to enter into the Kingdome of Syria, and to take Damafee, and kill all the Saracens; and that the man the King of Armenia should in one his people with Cotolufa. Cafan then returned into Perfia, L. mennix

60 Cotolofa and the King belieged the Citie Amar: and having certaine Intelligence that the 9 3 14 Solder was at the Citie Gazers, and would not firre from thence, they tooke it by affult priting all the Saracens one with another to the fword. There they found great flore of wealth

Thence

Thence they went to the Citie of Damafens to befiege it, but the Citizens fent their Meffengers, defiring a Truce for three daves which was granted them. The Scouts of the Tartartheing almost a dayes Journey beyond Damascus, tooke certayne Saracens whom they fent to Cotuloff that he might examine them. Cotuloff being advertized by thefe that there were about twelve thousand Saracens Horsemen, with in two dayes lourney from thence, which expected uaily the comming of the Soldan. He rode prefently with all speed, hoping to take them at vnawares : But it was almost night before Cotnlossa and the King of Armenia could reach thither, and they had Intelligence that the Soldan was come newly before them. Therefore being deceiued of their expectation to affaile those twelve thousand alone, some aduited them for the best to repose themselves that night being now somewhat late, and to set vponthe Enemie in the The obstinatie morning. But Cosulossa despiting the Soldan, and his people would not hearken to any aduice, but commanded his Armie to bee forthwith put in order : which the Saracens perceiuing, kept

their standing, being on the one side fenced with a Lake, and with a Mountayne on another side. and knowing that the Tartars could not come to affault them without danger, they would not goe forth to fight, but remayned in the place where they were, and when the Tartars thought wary Warrior, without any impediment to have assailed their Enemies; they found a small River betweene them, which in tome places had no passage ouer: by meanes whereof much time was spent before they could paffe ouer the River; but after they had paffed the greatest part over the River.

Cataloffa his

they let manfully on their Enemies. Yet the Soldan stood still and would not remove from the place he was in, betwixt the Lake and the Mountayne; which Cotnlossa perceiuing, because the darke night approched, he withdrew his company for that night and lodged them neere the Monntayne: only about a thousand Tartars, which could not passe the River, were not with him that night. The day comming, the Tartars againe couragiously fet vpon the Soldan, but as before, he would by no meanes come forth to fight, but defended himselse in that place of advantage, So the Tartars continuing their affault from the morning vntill the ninth house, beeing thirftie and ouer-wearie for lacke of water they retyred themselves in good order, leaving the Solden and came to the Plaine of Damaseus, where they had plentie of pasture and water at will. where they determined to abide vntill they had fufficiently reposed themselves and their But the Inhabitants knowing, that the Armie of the Tariars was spread abroad in that Plaine, opened the Sluces of the River in the night time, whereby the waters role so high in 30

dangered by

eight houres ouer all the Plaine, that the Tartars were conftrayned on the fudden to arise and depart, to that the night being darke, and the Ditches all filled with water, and no waves nor pathes to be feene, they were all amazed in fuch fort that many Horfes perifhed, and much Are mour was loft, infomuch, that the King of Armenia endured much loffe, yet the day commine The Torterin. through the goodnesse of God, they escaped the waters, but the Bowes and Arrowes of the Tartars being their chiefe weapons which they vie, and the rest of their Armour being all wet and veterly unferuiceable, they were so associed therewith, that if their Enemies had then purfue d them, they might have beene taken or flaine. Afterwards, the Tartars by reason that many had loft their Horses, returned softly by small lournies to the bankes of the River Euphrates, 42 yet none of their Enemies durft follow or purfue them, but the River beeing rifen and fwolne through the abundance of raine that fell, many of the Armenians, as also of Georgians, perished therein, more then of the Tartars, whole Horses knew better to swimme: fo returned they into Persia ruined and difgraced, not by the power of the Enemie, but by accident partly, partly by suill aduice. A great cause whereof was the obitinacie of Cotolusa, who would not regard any aduice that was given, for if he would have harkened to the countell of the wife, he might early have prevented those dangers.

And I Frier Hapthon the Compiler of this Historie, was present at all these proceedings : and He aydeth him if happily I treate more largely thereof then shall be thought convenient. I crave pardon in regard that I doe it to this end, that on like occasions happening these courses may bee called to minde. For these actions that are ordered by counsell, haue commonly good and commendable events, but the rash and improvident Enterprizes, doe vsually faile of their wished successes. After that the King of Armenia had paffed the River Euphrates with some loffe, he refolged to goe to Cafan before he returned to his Kigdome of Armenia, and therefore hee went fireight to the Citie of Ninine in which Cafan then refided. He entertayned the King with much honour. kindneffe, and magnificence, and being compationate of his loffes to make him fome recompence of especiall fauour vnto him, he granted him a thousand Tartarians, continually in pay at his charge for the defence of his Kingdome, and also granted him out of the Kingdome of Turbie, a yeerely pension, for the maintenance of another thousand Armenian Horsemen veerely at his pleasure, the King thus recompenced, having taken his leane, returned to the Kingdome of Ar. 60 menia, which Cafan had enjoyned him to watch warily ouer, vntill God pleafed to enable him personally to goe to the reliefe of the Holy Land.

CASAN dyeth, CARBAND & Succeedeth; his Apostasie. The Authors entranceinto a Religious Habit. Of TAMOR Can the fixth Emperour, and of CHAPAR, HOCHTAI, and CAR. BANDA, three other Tartarian

CHAP. S.S. S. Carbandas Apostasie. Haitons Souldiory, Monkery, &c.

He King of Armenia returned fafely to his Kingdome, but after hee came thither hee found little rest there, for after it so pleased God, that Casar was surprized with a grieuous infirmitie, and hauing gouerned wifely in his life, hee was no leffe willing that his wildome should bee commended in his death. Therefore hee made his last Will and Testament, appointing his Brother Carbanda (or Carbaganda) his Heire and Successor and having ordered all things concerning the Affaires of his Kingdome and his House in prudent manner, he made many good Ordinances and Lawes which for a memoriall he left behind him. being at this day inuicably observed by the Turtarians. Then dyed Casan, and his Brother Corbanda fucceeded in his Kingdome.

20 This Carbanda was the Sonne of a Ladie of famous memorie, called Erockcaton, who was very denout and religious in Christianitie, while she lived, and had every day Divine Service celebrated before her, keeping a Priest and Chappell of her owne, so that this Carbanda was baptized and named Nicholas in his Baptisme, and continued a professed Christian as long as his Mother lived. But after his Mothers death, delighting in the focietie of Saracens, he forlooke the Chrithan Religion to become a Wahometist. The King of Armenia vnderstanding of the death of Cafun, was much troubled therewith, and his Enemies began to lift up their Crefts very high.

wasted the Kingdome of Armenia, and did more damage and ipoyle on the plaine Countrey 30 then they had ever fullayned before in any mans memorie. But the Almightie and most merci- The Sellan full God who neuer for laketh altogether those that put their trust in him, had compassion on makethroades the poore afflicted Christians: for it fell out that in the moneth of July, feuen thousand Saracons into Atmenia.

of the best Families under the Soldan, made a reade into the Kingdome of Armenia, wasting and Spoyling all as farre as the Citie of Tharfus, in which the bleffed Apostle Saint Paul was borne. and when they had committed many spoyles in that Prouince, and were vpon their returne, the King of Armenia, having gathered his people together, encountred and fet vpon them neere the Citie of Giazza, where more by Gods goodnesie then our worth, they were veterly over- The King of throwne in such fort, that of seuen thousand Saraceus there escaped not three hundred, but amenia outwere either taken or flaine, albeit they thought in their Pride, they could have ouer-runne the throweth his 40 whole Kingdome of Armenia, and denoure all the Christians thereat a morfell. This was performed on the Lords Day, being the eighteenth of July, after which conflict, the Saracens durit The Victorie no more enter into the Kingdome of Armenia. But the Soldan fent to the King of Armenia to bringspeace. make truce with him, which was agreed betweene them.

For the Soldan of Babylon thereupon fought by all meanes to endamage him and his people.

fending all the yeare almost every moneth great troupes of armed Souldiers, which foraged and

46. I Frier Haython, having beene prefent at all the faid proceedings, had purposed long be- The Author of fore to haue taken a Regular Habit vpon me, and to haue entred into Religion. But by reason himselic.

with my honour forfake my friends and kindred in fuch extremities. But feeing that Gods goodnesse had beene so gracious visto me, as to leade the Kingdome of Armenia, and the Chriflian people there after my manitold labours and trauels in queet, and peaceable effate, I then so tookethe time to performe that Vow which before I had vowed. Therefore having taken my leave of my Lord the King, and of the reit or my kindred and friends, even in that field where God gaue the Christians V. ctorie ouer their Enemies, I beganne my Iourney, and comming to Coprus in the Monasterie of Episcopia, tooke a Regular Habit of the Order Premonstratechs, to the end that having ferued the World as a Souldier in my youth, I might spend the rest of my He taketh the life in the Seruice of God, forfaking the pompe of this World, which was in the yeere of our Habitota Pre-Lord 1305. Therefore I render thankes vnto God, that the Kingdome of Armenia, is at this Man Deat 1305. day in a good and peacerble effate, and well reformed by the Moderne King Linene, Sonne to King Haython, who is a Looking-glade or patterne to all other Kings in all kinde of eminent

of many impediments and difficulties in the Affaires of the Kingdome of Armenia, I could not

60 Moreover, the Compiler of this Worke affirmeth, that he hath come three manner of wayes Theoretic of to the knowledge of those things which hee diclareth and writeth in this Booke. For from the this Historiebeginning of Changine Can, who was the fift Emperour of the Tartas virill Mango Can, who was their fourth Emperour, I faithfully deliner what I gathered out of the Hiftories of the Tattavians. But from Mango Can to the death of Haloon, I write, that which I received of an

Vertue

Vincle of mine, who writ the same by the commandement of Haiton King of Armenia, and was present then at all the forelaid occurrences, and with great diligence did often discourse & make rehearfall of them to his Sonnes and Nephewes, that they might remayne the better to Pontritie, and from the beginning of Abaga Can to the end of this third part of this Booke, the Author relateth those things which hee knew of himselfe, as having beene present at them al. whereby he is enabled to give testimonie of the truth. Now albeit we have hitherto treated of the Histories and Deeds of the Tartarians, there remayneth yet somewhat to be faid concerning their Power and Dominion, especially of those that are now living, that it may the better bee

Tamar Can.

long, or lons,

47. The great Emperor of the Tartars which now holdeth the Empire, is called Tamor Can, 10 being their fixt Emperour, who keepeth his Residence in the Kingdome of Cathay, in a very great City called Iong, which his Father caused to be built, as is about declared, his power is very great. For this Emperour alone is able to doe more then all the Tartarian Princes together, and the Nations under his government are reputed more noble and rich, and better flored of all neceffaries, because that in the Kingdome of Cathay, in which they now live, there is great abun-

Kings of the

Chapar.

Heclai.

Chapar,

Carbanda.

Besides this great Emperour, there are three other great Kings or Princes of the Totare. which rule each of them ouer many Nations, yet are they all subject to the Emperour, and acounty knowledge him their naturall and Leige Lord. And the differences which happen betweene them are decided in the Emperours Court, and determined by his Judgement. The first of these 20 Kings is called Chapar, another Hochtay, and the third Carbanda. This Chapar hath his Dominion in the Kingdome of Turquestan, being the neerest to the Emperour. It is thought that he is able to bring into the field foure hundred thousand Horsemen, and these are bold and good Warriours, but not fo well furnished of Horse and Armour as were expedient. The Emperours subiects doe many times make warre vponthem, and they on the other fide doe often invade the people of Carbanda. The Dominion of this Chapar was in ancient time subject for the greatest

Heller of who came the Zagatay Tartars, and Tamer lane * That is rue Hum of whom the Hungarians had originall. Carbanda

Hochtay keepeth his Seat of Residence in the Kingdome of Cumania, in a Citie called Alaro. (or Sara) and it is faid, that he is able to bring fix hundred thousand Horsemen to the fight, yet are they not so much commended in Feats of Armes, as the men of Chapar, albeit they have bet- 30 ter Horses. These make warre sometimes on the Subiects of Carbanda, sometimes against the Hungarians, and fometimes amongst themselues. But Hochtay who ruleth at this present holdeth his Dominion peaceably and quietly.

Carbanda hath his Dominion in the Kingdome of Afia the Great, and maketh his chiefe abode in the Citie of Tauris, beeing able to bring three hundred thousand Horsemen to the field. But these are gathered out of divers parts being rich and well furnished with necessaries. Chan par and Hochtar doe sometimes make warre upon Carbanda , but hee neuer medleth first with them: neither moueth warres against any but that he sometimes invadeth the Soldan of Egypt: against whom his Predecessors have fought many Battailes. Chapar and Hochtay would willing. ly take from Carbanda his Dominion, if they were able to effect it.

The Citie called the fron

The reason whereof is this, Asia is divided into two parts, the one part whereof being called The division of the Lower or Deepe Afia, is inhabited by the Emperour, and those two Kings called Change and Hoshtay. The other part being the higher, is called Afathe Greater, in which Carbanda inhabiteth and hath Dominion. Now there are only three wayes by which men may passe out of the Deeper or Lower Afia, vnto the high Countrey called Afia Maior, The one is out of the Kingdome of Turqueftan, to the Kingdome of the Persians; another way there is called Derbent, which lyeth neere the Sea where Alexander built the Citie called the Iron Gate, as in the Hiftories of Cumania appeares; the other way is to goe over the Sea, called Mare maius, which way lyeth through the Kingdome of Barca,. By the first way the subjects of Chapar cannot passe to the Territories of Carbanda, without great danger and difficultie, because they should find no so feeding for their Horses in many dayes trauailes, the Land being so dry and barren, that before they could come to any fruitfull inhabited Countrey, their Horses would be started, or at least fo faint and wearied that they might be eafily ourcome, and therefore that way they will not take. By the way of Derbent the people of Hochtay may palle into the Countrey of Carbanda. only fixe moneths in the yeare, which is in the Winter time. But that way Abaga hath caufed great Trenches and Fortifications to bee made in a place called Ciba: and is alwayes kept and especially in the Winter with a Garrison of armed men to defend the passage. The people of Hochtay have affayed many times to paffe that way by itealth and fecretly : but they never could, neither can by any meanes doe: for in a Plaine called Monga, there are alwayes in the Winter time certaine Birds about the bignesse of Phelants having very faire feathers to behold, 60 The Birds cal- and these Birds (which are called Seyferach) when any people come into that Plaine, straight flye away ouer those Watchmen and their Trenches, whereby the Souldiers there are eft-soones affored of the comming of their Enemies, and preuent the furprize; and by the way of the Sea called Mare main, they neuer attempted, because that way goeth through the Kingdome of

Barca, which is so mightie in people and so strongly situated, that they are without hope to Barca in the prevayle there, and by meanes hereof hath Carbanda and his Predeceffors beene fecured from Latine Copie the power of so potent Neighbours. Now we will briefly say somewhat of the manners and is colled Abeat. fashions of the Tartars.

48. The Cataians do so much differ from other Nations in their fashions and manner of living, The Religion that it were tedious to treat of the minifold discritic and strange varietie found among it them; of the Catalans They acknowledge and confesse one Immortall God, and they call upon his Name: yet they nei- or Tariarians ther fait nor pray, nor any wayes affict nor humble themselves, for seare or reverence of him, of those parts. nor doe any good workes. The killing of men they hold to bee no finne; but if they happen to Manflaughter. 10 leave their Bridle in their horse-mouth when hee should feed , they thinke therein they offend

God mortally. Pornication and Lecherie is held by them as no finne. They marrie many wines, Polygamie. and the custome is, that the Sonne must marrie his Step-mother after the death of his Father : and the Brother is married to his Brothers Wife after his deceale. In matter of Armes they are very good, and more obedient to their Superiour then other Nations are : and doe eatily know by certaine fignes in Battaile the will of their Commander : whereby the Armie of Tartarians Warfare, is easily ruled and commanded. Their Lord bestoweth not any stipend on them, but they live on hunting and fuch prey as they can get : and their Lord may take from them when hee lift whattoeuer they have.

When the Tarrars ride upon any enterprize, they take with them great flore of Horse dring 20 king their Milke, and feeding on their fielh which they reckon very good food. The Tartars are Eating of very readie and excellent Archers on horie-backe, but on foot they are but flow, they are dex- Horie-fleft. terous and ingenious in taking of Cities and Castles, and are for the most part victorious over their Enemies, yet will they not forbeare to turne their backes in the skirmish if it be for their advantage. And this advantage they have in the field that they will fight with the Enemies when they lift themselues, and yet they cannot be compelled to fight but at their pleasure. Their manner of fight is very dangerous, to that in one conflict or skirmish of the Tarters there are more flaine and wounded then in any great Battaile of other Nations, which hapneth by reason of their Arrowes, which they shoot strongly, and surely out of their Bowes; beeing indeed so skilfull in the arte of shooting, that they commonly pierce all kind of Armour, and if they

30 happen to be routed, yet they flye in troupes and bands fo well ordered, that it is very dangerous to follow or puritie them, because they shoot their Arrowes backwards in their flight, wounding and killing oft-times both men and horses that pursue them. The Armie of the Tartars maketh no great shew, because they goe trooping close together, fo

that an Armie of one thousand Tartars will scarle feeme fine hundred. The Tartarians doe cour- Their Hospiteously entertayne strangers, giving them part of their Viands, and expect the like offers to bee taliste. made them, for otherwise they will take it by violence. They are much more skilfull in conquering of Countries then in keeping of them. When they are weake they are humble and gentle; flout and proud when they are growne the stronger. They cannot endure lying in other men, yet themselues are much given to lying, valesse it be in two especiall things. The one Delight in 40 being in matter of Armes, in which none dareth affirme, that he did any exploit which was not lying.

done by him, or denie any faire Act which hee hath committed : The other is, That who foeuer hath done any offence, though it deferueth death, he confesseth it presently to his Lord if he be examined thereon. This may fuffice at this time, concerning the manners of the Tartars, because it were long to rehearse all the different customes and kinds of behaviour.

The other Chapters which follow, pertayning rather to aduice fitting those Times, and the boly Land . affaires, then the Tartarian Historie, I have omitted. And in the next place will present some Extracts of our Countriman, that famous Traueller Sir Iohn Mandevile, whose Geographie Ortelius commendeth, how socuer be acknowledgeth his Worke stuffed with Fables. For my part, I cannot but deplore the losse of such a Treasure, but know not bow to recover or repayre it (at Ramusio bath done for Polo) and

50 here have beene forced to deale with him, as Historians doe with our famous Arthur, daring to say little, because others have dared so much and such increasabilities. For his merit, and for his Nation I have given a touch of him, these few Latine Extracts; referring him that hath a minde to reade him, to Master Hakluits first Edition of his Voyages, where bis storie in Latine is to be seene at large. I suspect that Some later Fabler ont of the Tales of Ogerus the Dane hath Stuffed this Storie; Some of which, for Ogerus Done, a taste, I have here left remayning; not that I take pleasure in iyes, but that thou maift see, from what of whom they Foundant I fine of the control of th Huskes poore Christian Prodigals (prodigall to beleeve fuch lyes) were fed with in stead of Bread; not onely in the Church by Legends, but in their private studies, by Arthurs, Orlandos, Beuiles, Guyes, 60 Robin Hoods, Palmerins , and I know not what monstrous changeling-births of Historie. Such was

this Ogerus: and in great part such was Odericus a Friar and Traueller, in whom perhaps some Friar Odericus in M. bath travelled, with him at least in this Author (whose age was before him, and therefore could not cite Hat publish d. ought out of him.) Neither is it for nothing (though for worse then nothing , a lie is both) that Friars are in this storie so often mentioned and prayfed: I smell a Friars (Lyars) hand in this businesse. Our

Mandevile transled from Ierufalem beyond lerico, from Christendome to remotest Ethnikes, and bath fallen among Theenes : The Friarly Priest and Leuite not onely neglected bim, but I am afraid placed the Theenes thus to rob and wound him; mayming the two former parts, and ningling in the third, which I have therefore chopped off; not daring in the former but with the Nilus Dogge to take and away, for feare of a false Crocodule. Here you may finde lyes by retaile effecta, afficta, affixa, to. this Mandevile : who there, is made a maunde vile full of fuch pedierie, unworthy the fight.

CHAP. VI.

Briefe Collections of the Trauels and Obsernations of Sir Ionn Man-DEVILE; written by Mafter BALE, Cent. 6.



Ohn Mandevile, Knight, borne in the Towne of Saint Albons, was so well given to the studie of Learning from his childhood, that he seemed to plant a good part to the fludie of Learning from his childhood, that he feemed to plant a good part of his felicitie in the fame; for he fipposed that the honor, of his birth would not thing qualie him, except hee could render the fame more honorable by his knowledge in good Letters. Hauing therefore well grounded himselfe in Religion by reading the Scriptures, he applyed his studies to the Art of Physick, a Profession

worthy a noble wit: but among it other things, hee was rauished with a might te desire to see the greater parts of the World, as Asia and Africa. Having therefore provided all things necessaries for his journey, hee departed from his Countrey in the yeere of Christ 1332. and as another Olyffes returned home, after the space of foure and thirtie yeeres, and was then knowne to a very tew. In the time of his trauaile he was in Soythia, the greater and leffe Armenia, Egypt, both Lybias, Arabia, Syria, Media, Mesopotamia, Persia, Chaldea, Greece, Illyrium, Tartarie, and diners other Kingdomes of the World; and having gotten by this meanes the knowledge of the Languages, let fo many and great varieties, and things miraculous, whereof himfelfe had beene an eye wit effe, should perish in oblinion, hee committed his whole Trauell of three and thirtie an eye wit sene, mount perint in contain, years to writing in three divers Tongues , English, French, and Latine. Being arrived agains in 30 England, and having feene the wicked neffe of that Age, hee gave out this speech : In our time (faid hee) it may bee spoken more truly then of old, that Vertue is gone, the Church is vnder foot, the Clergie is in error, the Deuill raigneth, and Simonie beareth the sway, &c. Hee dyed at Leege, in the yeere 1372. the 17. day of November, being there buried in the Abbey of the Order of the Guiltelmites.

The Tombe and Epitaph of Sir Iohn Mandevile, in the Citie of Leege, spoken of by Ortelius, in his Booke called Itinorarium Belgia, in this fort.

M Agna & populofa Leodi; fuborbia, ad collum radices, in quorum sugis multa furt, & pulcher-ruma Monastersa, inter que magnificum illud, ae nobile D. Laurentio decasum, ab Raginardo Episcopo. Est in hac quoq, Regione, vel suburbis Leodij, Guilielmitarum Canobium, in quo Epitaphum boc Icannis à Mandeville, excepimus,

Epitaphium.

Hic jacet vir nobilis, D. Ioannes de Mandeville, aliter dictus ad Barbam, Miles, Dominus de Campdi, natus de Anglia, Medicinæ Professor, deuotissimus, crator, & bonorum largissimus pa peribus erogator, qui toto quafi orbe luffrato, Leody diem vitæ fuæ clausit extremum. Anno Dom. 1371. Mentis Nouembris, die 17.

Hec in lapide: in quo calata viri armati imago, Leonem calcantis, ba ba bifurcata, ad caput manus 50 benedicens, & vernacula bac verba: Vos qui pafeis for mi, pour l'amour deix preus por mi. Cliреш erat vacum, in quo olim fuisse dicebari laminam aream, & eius in ea titidim calata irsignia. Leonem videlicet argenteum, cui ad pectus lunula rubea in campo caruleo, quem Limbus ambiret denticulatiu ex auro. Eius nobis ostendebant, & cultros, ephipiag, , & calcaria quibus osum fuisse asserebant, in peraprando toto fere terrarum orbe, ot clarius testatur esus Itinerarium, quod topis citam excussim passim habetur.

DRincipi Excellentissimo, præ cunctis mortalibus præcipue venerando, Domino Edwardo Pejas nominis Tertio, diuina prouidentia, Francorum & Anglorum Regi Serenifimo, Hibernie Domino, Aquitarie Duci, mari ac eius Infulis Occidentalibus dominanti, Christianorum 69 encomio & ornatui vniueriorumq; arma gerentium Tutori, ac Probitatis & strenunatis exemplo Principi quoq inuicto, mirabilis Alexa dri Sequaci, ac vinuerfo Orbi tremendo, cum reuerentia non qua decet, cum ad talem, & tantam reuerentiam minus sufficientes extiterint, sed qua paruitas, & possibilitas mittentis ac offerentis se extendunt, contenta tradantur.

Vm terra Hierofolymitana, terra promissionis filiorum Dei, dignior cunctis mundi terris sit ha- Pats prima. Lends multis ex causis, & pracipue illa qued Deus conditor cali & mundi ipsam tanti dienatus fuit continens cabendamulis ex campis, or pracipue inaquoa Demo conquien ven o manus spjam tanis aignains jitt pita 23.

astimure, ve in eo proprium filium Saluatorem mundi Christum exhibueris generi humano per incarCap. r. nationem ex sutemerata Virgme, & per eisu conuersationem humillimam in eadem, ac per dolorosam Commendatio mortis sua consummationem widem, at q, inde per eine admirandam Resurrectionem, ac Ascensionem in breuis retre calum, & postremo quia creditur illic in fine saculi reuer surm, & omnia indicaturus : certum est, quod Hierosolymiab omnibus qui Christiano nomine à Christo dicuntur, sit tanquam à suis propris baredibus diligenda. & pro cuiusq, potestate ac modulo bonoranda. Verum quia iam nostris temporibus verius quam olim dici poteft, Virtus, Ecclefia, Clerus, Demon, Simonia, Ceffat, calcatur, errat, regnat, dominatur. Ic ecce susto Des indicio, credita est terra tam melyta, & Sacrofantia impiorum manibus Saracenorum. quod non est ab/q, dolore pijs mentibus audiendum, & recolendum. Ego Icannes Mandeuil militarie ordinis (altem gerens nomen, natus & educatus in terra Anglia, in Villa Sancti Albani, ducebar in Adolescentiamea tali inspiratione, ve quamuis non per potentiam, nec per vires proprias possem prafatam terram suis beredibus recuperare, irem tamen per aliquod temporis spacium peregrinari ibidem, & salutarem aliquantulum de propinquo. Unde in Anno ab Incarnatione Domini 1322. impositi me naui- io uniu Mande. eations Martilientis maris & vfa, in boc temporis, Anni 1355, Selicet, per 23. annos in transmarinis villi percetipartibus manss, pereorinatus sum, ambulaus, & circuius multas, ac dunersas Patrias, Regiones, Provin& tiginta ancias, & Insulas, Turciam, Armeniam maiorem & minorem, Ægyptum, Lybiam bassam & altam, nos continus-Svriam, Arabiam, Perliam, Chaldwam, Ethiopiz partem magnam, Tartariam, Amazoniam, In- ti. 20 diam minorem, & mediam, ac partem magnam de maiors, & in ifis, & circum sflas Regiones, multas Insulas, Cuntates, Vrbes, Castra, Villas, & loca, whi habitant varia gentes, aspectuum, morum legum

acrituum diucr orum : Attamen quia summo desiderio in terra promissionis eram , ipsam diliventius. per loca vestigiorum fili, Dei perlustrare curaui, & diutius in illa steti. Quapropter & m bac prima parte buins operis iter tam peregrinandi, quam nauigandi, a partibus Angliz ad ipfam deferibo, & loca

in itinere quamin pronentione valeat hec descriptio in aliquo deseruire. timere quamm pronentione valent one me proposition and Gallia iter arripit ad partes Hierofolymitanas Cap. 1.

Qui de Hibernia, Anglia, Scotia, Noruegia, ant Gallia iter arripit ad partes Hierofolymitanas (Let ab Auglia potest saltem vsg, ad Imperialem Greciz Cinitatem Constantinopolim eligere sibi modum prosess- tim per tetras cends, sine per Terras, sine per Aquas. Et si peregrinando eligit transsegere viam, tendat per Coloniam qu'un per se compose per acrea, june per capusa. an presentant de Montulant Constateur, federa Regari Hungaria, quast que in 61 Agrippinamo, fo fee per Almaniam in Hungariam ad Montulant Constateur, federa Regari Hungaria, quast que in 61 est Rew Hungaria multum potens silis temporibus. Namteus: 6 Sclauoniam, 6 magnum partems Constateur, for the constant of t Regni Comannorum, & Hungariam, & partem Regni Ruffix. Oportes ve peregrinus in finibus polim. Regis Hunga-Hungariæ transeat magnum Danubij sumen, & vadat in Belgradum; Hoc sumen oritur inter Montana Almania, & currens versus Orientem, recipa in se 40. flumina antequam finiatur in mare, De tentia. Belgrade intratur terra Bulgaria, & transitur per Pontem petrinum finnis Matroy, & per terram Beigrade entrains terra Dungaire, o traupar per voice de la commentation de la commentati versus Constantinopolim nauigare, accipiat sibi portum, prout voluerit, propinguum siue remotum, Martiliz, Pifi, Ianuz, Venetijs, Romz, Neapoli, vel alibi: fica transeat Tufciam, Campaniam, 40 Italiam, Corficam, Sardiniam, vsque in Siciliam, qua diniditur ab Italia per brachium maris non

notabiliter fantta, qua intra candem funt breuiter commemoro & diligenter, quaienus peregrinis tam

magnum. In Sicilia est Mons Etna ingiter ardens, qui ibidem appellatur Mons Gibelle, & prater Mons Etna. illum babentur ibi loca Golthan vbs funt septem leuca quasi semper ignem spirantes : secundum diversitatem colorum barum slammarum estimant Incola annum fertilem fore, vel sterilem, siccum vel humi- Eolides Indum, calidum, vel frigidum: hec loca vocant caminos Infernales, & a finibus Italiz v/g, ad ista loca sulz, funt 25. miliaria. Sunt autem in Sicilia aliqua Pomeria in quibus inveniuntur frondes, flores, & fru-Temperies Elus per totem annum, etiam in profunda hjeme. Regnum Siciliz est bona, & grandis Insula babens in Siciliz Insula. circuitu fere leucas 300. Et ne quis erret, vel de facili reprehendat quoties scribo leucam, intellio endum est de leuca Lombardica, que aliquanto maior est Geometrica; & quoties pono numerum, sub intelli- Leuca Lomgatur fere, vel circiter, fine citra , & dietam intendo ponere , de 10. Lombardicis leucis : Geometrica bardica 50 emem leuca describitur, ve notum est, per hos versus.

Quinque pedes paffum faciunt, passus quoque centum Viginti quinque stadium, si millia des que Octo facis stadia, duplicatum dat tibi leuca.

Constantinopolis pulchra est Ciuitae, & nobilis, triangularis in forma, firmiterá, murata, caius Cap. :. dua partes includuntur mari Hellesponto, quod plurimi modo appellant brachium Sancti Georgij, & ali- De vibe Conqui Buke, Troia vetus. Versus locum vbi hoc brachium exit de mori est lata verra planties, in que an-stantinopoli, requirus stetu Troia Cinitas de qua apud Poetas mira leguntur, sed nune valde modica apparent vesti- de reliquis ibigia Ciuitatis. In Constantinopoli habentur multa mirabilia, ac insuper multa Santeorum vener anda reliquia, ac super omnia, preciosissima (rux Christi, seu maior pars illius, 🕁 tunica unconsutilis, cum 60 spongia & arundine, & vno clauorum, & dimidia parte Corone spinea, cuius altera medictas seruatur in Capella Regis Franciæ, Pattifijs. Nam & ego indignus diligenter pluribus vicibus respexi partem vtramų, idabatur queg, mibi deila Parilijs vuica spina, quam vig, nune preciose conservo, & est spia spina non lynea sed velut de inucis marinis regida, & pungriina. Ecclesa Constantinopolitana in bonorem Sancta Sophix, id est, inessabilis Dei sapientia dedicata dicitur, & nobilissima universarum Eccles San-

CHAP.6.

mundi E-clesarum, tam in schemate artificiosi operis, quam in seruatis ibi Sacrosanclis Relliquiss : nom Regina Helma & continet corpus Sante Annæ Matris nofire Domine translatum illuc per Keginam Helenam ab Hierofolymis: & corpus Sansta Luca Enangelista translatum de Bethama Iudea; Et corpus Beati Icannis Chryloftomi ipfius Cimitatis Epifcopi, cum multis aligs Reliquis preciofis; quoniam ett ibi vas grande cum huiusmodi reliquis velut marmoreum de Petra Enhydros; quod ingiter de seipso desudant aquana, semel in anno inucuitur suo sudore repletum. Ante banc Ecclesiam, super columnam marmoream habetur de are aurato opere susorio, magna Imago Iustiniani quondam Imperatoris super Equain sedentis. De pradicta terra Thraciz fun Philosophus Arittoteles oriundus in Cinitate Stage. Acibicia tum. tes, O est ibi in loco rumba eius velut altare, vbi o singuliu annis certo die celebraiur à populo festim tes, & ep we move impose to the composition of the reputantes sibs per inspirationem immutti consilium optimum de agendis. Item ad divisionem Thracize is Micedoniz sunt duo marabiliter alti Monies, vinus Olympus, alter Athos, cuius vitimi vimbra Oriente sole apparet ad 76. miliaria, v sa in Infulam Lemnon. In borum cacumine montium ventus non currit, nec aer monetur, &c.

Cap. 10. De conductu

Priù: dictum est de reuerentia Soldani, quando ad apsum intratur exhibenda. Sciendum ergo, cum Seldani, & via ab eo petitur securus conductus, nemini denegare consuent, sed datur petentibus communiter sigillum v que in Sinoi. ems, in appenditione absque literis : hoc sigillum, pro vexillo in virga aut hasta dum peregrini serunt. omnes Straceni videntes illud flexis genibus in terrans se renerenter inclinant, & portanibus omnem exhibent bumanitatem. Verumtamen satis maior sit renerentia literia Soldani sigillatis, quod & Admirabiles, & quicuna, ali Domini, quando eis monstrantur, antequam recipiant, se multum inclinant: 20 Deinde ambabus manibus eas capiertes ponunt super propria capita, postea esculantur, & tandem legunt inclinate cum magna veneratione, quibus semel aut bis persettis, offerunt se promptos ad explendum quicquid ibi iubetur, ac insuper exhibent deserenti, quicquid possint commodi, vel bonoris : sed talem conductum per literas Soldani vix quifquam perigrinorum accipit, qui non in Curia illius stetit, vel notitiam apud illum habuerit. Ego autem habui in receffu mec, in quibus etiam continebatur ad omnes fibi fubicctos speciale mandatum, vt me permitterent intrare, & respicere fingula loca. pro mex placito voluntatis, & mihi exponerent quorumcunq; locorum mysteria distincte & absque vllo velamine veritatis, ac me cum omni iodalitate mea benigne reciperent, & in cun etis rationalibus audirent , requifiti autem fi necesse foret de ciuirate conducerent in ciuitatem. Habito nad, peregrinis conductu, ad Montem Sinay, &c. Mons Sinay appellatur ibi desertum Syn: quasi in radice Montis istius habetur Cænobium Mo-

Literæ Solda. conceffæ,

Cap. II. De Monafterio Sinay, & reliquiis beata Catherina. Omittuntur feq j.v.d.fur. 1.8. 6.13.

Stendere solent & caput ipsius Catherinz cum involumento sanguinolento, & multas perterea santtas, & venerabiles reliquias, que omnia minitus sum deligenter & Sape, oculis indignis, &c. Ierusalem cum tota terra Promissionis, est quasi una de quing, Pronincies vel pluribus, quibus Regnum Syrix distinguitur. Iungitur amem Iudaa ad Orientem Regno Arabia, ad meridiem Egypto. ad Occidentem mari magno, & ad Aquilonem Regno Syriz. Iudea terraper diner sa tempora a dinergloriosi Sepul- se possessa fuit Nationibus, Cananzorum, Iudzorum, Affyriorum, Persarum, Medorum, Macedochri Domini num, Græcorum, Romanorum, Christianorum, Saracenorum, Barbarorum, Turcorum, & Tar- 40 tarorum. Cuius rei causa merito potest astimari, quod non sustinuit Deus magnos peccatores longo tempore permanere in terra sibi tam placita, & tam sancta.

nachorum pergrande, cuius clausura in circuitu est sirmata muris altis, & portis ferreis, prometube-

Siarum deserti. Hi Monachi sunt Arabes, & Graci, & in magno conuentu, multum Deo deuoti. O-

in vrbe Icrufalem.

Isaque peregrinus veniens in Ierusalem primo expleat suam peregrinationem, ad reuerendum & Sa-Templum Se. crofanctum Domini nostri Iesu Christi Sepulchrum: cuius Ecclesia est in vitima cinitatis extremitate, ad partem Aquilonarem, cum proprio sui ambitus muro ipsi cinitats adunteto. Ipsa vero Ecclesia est pnichra & rotunda forma cooperta de super cum teculis plumbeis, habens in Occidente turrim altam & firmam, in pauimenti Ecclesia medio ad siguram dinidy compassi babetur nobili opere Latonico adisicatum paruum Tabernaculum quasi 15. pedum tam longitudinis quam latitudinis, & altitudinis miro artificio intus extrag, compositum, ac multum deligenter diuersis coloribus ornatum. Hoc stag, in Tabernaculo seu Capella, ad latus dextrum, continetur incomparabilis thesaurus gloriosissimi Sepulchri, haben-50 tis octo pedes longitudinis, & quinque latitudinis. Et quoniam in toto habitaculo nulla est apertura prater paruum oftium, illustratur accedentibus peregrinis pluribus lampadibus, (quarum ad miniu vna coram sepulchro iugiter ardere folet) ingressius.

Sciendum, quod ante breue tempus solebat sepulchrum esse ingressis peregrinis accessibile, ad tangendum & osculandum: sed quia multi vel effringebant, vel conabantur sibi effringere aliquid de petra se-Meles Mandy pulchri, iste Soldanus Melech Mandybron fecit illud confabricari, ve nec ofculari valeat , nec adiri, bree Soldanus, sed tantummodo intueri. Et ob illam cansam in sinistro paviete in alitudine quinque pedum immurari effraituram petra sepulchri ad quantitatem capitis humani, quod tanquam pro sepulchro ibi ab omnibus veneratur, tangitur, & ofculatur.

Dicitur ibi quoq, communiter prafatam lampadem coram sepulchro singuiss annis in die Santta Pa- 60 Mandevillus de raschemes, bora nona extinqui, & in media nocte Pascha sine humano studio reaccendis. Qued si ita est hoc dubitat. euidens dinini benefici, miraculum est. Et quamuis id plurimi Christiani simpliciter in magno pietatis vid, sup. 13.4.2. mersto credant, plerifi, tamen est in suspicione. Forte talia Saraceni custodes sepulchri singentes divulgauerunt, pro angendo emolumenta tributi, quod inde resultaret, seu oblationum. que dantur.

Stroulis autem annis in die Cone Domini in Parascheue, & in vigilia Pasche, tribus his diebus manet l'abernaculum hoc apertum continue, & patet omnibus Christianis gentibus accessus, alias vero fridi de Bollien. non per annum sine redditione tributi. Intra Ecclesiam, prope parietem dextrum, est Caluaria locus. vos crucifixus pependit Christus Dominus. Per gradus ascenditur in bunc locum, & est rupis welne albi coloris, cim aliqua rubedine per loca commixta, babens scissuram, quam dicunt Golgotha, in ana maior vars preciosi (anguinis Christi dicitur influxisse : vbi & habetur Altare constructum, ante quod consistunt tumbe Godefridi de Bullion, &c.

Ultrà duo stadia ab Ecclesia ad Meridiem sancti Sepulchri habetur magnum Isospitale sancti Ioan-Copis. nis Hierofolymitani, qui caput & fundamentum effe dignoscitur ordinis Hospitaliorum modo tenen. De tribu: aliis tium Rhodum Insulam : in quo recipi possunt omnes Christians peregrini cuiuscunque fint conditionis. Ecclesis, & seu status, vel dignitatis. Nam Saraceni pro leni cura anxij rumoris, prohibent ne apud quenquain, specialitet de (worum Christianum pernostet. Ad sustentationem adissis huius bospitalis, habentur in co 124.00 mini. lumna marmorea, & in parietibus distincti 54. pilary. Satis prope hunc locum in Orientem, est Ecclesia que d'estur de Domina nostra magna: & inde non remote alia, que dicitur nostra Domina Latinorum, adificata super locum, vbi Maria Magdalene, & Maria Cleopha cum alijs pluribus, dum Christus cruci affigebatur, flebant & dolores lamentabiles exercebant.

Isem ab Ecclesia sancts Sepulchri in Orsentem ad stadium cum dimidio habetur adisscium mirabile. ac pulcbrum valde, quod Templum Domini nominatur, quod constructum est in forma rotunda, cuissi circumferencie Diameter habet 64. cubitos, & altitudo eius 126. Sintrinsecus pro sustentatione edificit. 20 multi pilarij. In medio autem Templi est locus altior 14. gradibus, qui & ipse columnis vadid, est sispatius : & secundum quatuor mundi plagas habet Templum quatuor introitus per portas Cypressinas artiticiose compositas, nobiliterá, sculptas, & excisas. Et ante portam Aquilonarem intra Templum sons est aque munde, qui quamuis olim exundabat, tamen nunc minime fluit. In toto circuitu edifici extrinsecus est valde pro atrio latumspacium loci, stratum pertotum pauimentum marmoribus. Hoc Templum non ducitur stare in codem loco whi Tenplum Dei stetit in tempore Christi, quo post Resurrectionem a Romanis destructo, istud longo post tempore Adrianus Imperator extruxit, sed non ad formam Temple prioris : pradictum tamen excelsum in medio Templi locum vocant Iudzi Santtum Santtorum.

Sciatis itaá, quòd Saraceni magnam exhibent huic Templo renerentiam, & honorem, sapine illud discalceati intrantes, & positis genibus deuote Deum Omnipotentem exorantes, nulla enim ibidem habetur 30 imago, sed multe lampades relucentes. Neminem Christianorum seu Iudworum ingredi suunt hoc mago, jearmene europuue. Templum, reputantes eos indignos adhoc, & nimium inumundos, unde nifi virtute laterarum quas habui tradite Mandi à Soldano, nec ego fuissem ingressus. Ingrediens autem cum meis sodalibus deposumus calciamenta, uilo, a Solitano, nec ego juijuno ng cyjno. Luge ware a mag in difact pathere, quam mere auryanuma caicamena, veconiantes cum mulica conta denotione, nos magui id fact pathere, quam meredulo i Strucenos. Porrò in eo loco vio flatuera i idem Rex ante Templum Aliare bolocaufi, vidalicat extra portama

Templi Occidentalem, babetur & nunc Altare, sed non ad instar, nec ad vsum primi : Nam Saraceni, quasi nibil curantes, traxerunt in eo lineas tanquam in Astrolabio figentes in linearum centro batellum, ad cuius umbram per lineas discernuntur diei bora.

Viaturo ad dextram satis de propinguo habetur & alia Ecclesia,qua nunc appllatur schola Salomonis: rwfula ad Meridiem est & alind Templum sine Ecclesia, que vocatur Templum Salomonis, quod Deplutivulo-40 elim fuit caput, & fundamentum tetius ordinis Templariorum, &c.

Dominus Soldanus quodam die in Castro, expussis omnibus de camera sua, me solium retinuit secum vibem. tanquam pro secreto habendo colloquio. Consuetum enim est ijs eigere omnes tempore secretorum: qui diligenter à me interrozanit qualis esset gubernatio vita in terra nostra, bremiter respondebam, bona, per Colloquium Dei gratiam, qui recepto boc verbo dixit ita non esfe. Sacerdotes (inquit) vestri, qui seipsos exhi- Sodani cum bere deberent alijs in exemplum, in malis iacent actibus, parum curant de Templi feruitio : ha- Mandeuillo. bitu & fludijs se conformant mundo: se inebriant vino, continentiam infringentes, cum fraude Reprehensio negotiantes, ac prana principibus consilia ingerentes. Communis appearance, cum fraude Sacredoum. negotiantes, ac praua principibus consilia ingerentes. Communis quoque populus, dum festis diebus intendere deberent deuotioni in Templo, currit in hortis, in ipectaculis, in Tabernis víque Repichento ad crapulam, & ebrietatem,& pinguia manducans & bibens, ac in bestiarum morem, luxuriam vulgiius sima 50 prauam exercens. In vsura, dolo, rapina, furto, detractione, mendatio & periurio viuunt plures eorum euidenter, ac si qui talia non agant, vt fatui reputantur, & pro nimia cordis superbia nesciunt

ad libitum excogitare, qualiter fe velint habere, mutando fibi indumenta, nunc longa, nunc curta Vestimentonimis, quandoque ampla, quandoque structa vitra modum, vt in his singulis appareant derisi po- 1 um varietas tius quam vestiti : pyleos quoque, calceos, calligus, corrigias sibi fabricant exquisitas, cum etiam reprehensa è contra deberent secundum Christi sui doctrinam simplices, Deo deuoti, humiles, veraces, inuicem diligentes, inuicem concordantes, & insuriam de facili remittentes. Scimus etiam eos propter peccata sua perdidisse hanc terram optimam quam tenemus, nec timemus eam amittere, quamdiu se taliter gubernant. Attamen non dubitamus, quin in futurum per meliorem vitæ conuerfationem merebuntur de nostris eam manibus recuperare.

Adhoc ego vitra confusus Simpefactas, nequiui inuenine responsum; verebar enim oblogni veritati, quamuis ab Infidelis ore prolate, & vultu pre rubore demisso percunctatus sum, Domine, salua renerentia, qualiter posestis ita plene hoc noscere? De hominibus (ait) meis interdum mitto ad medum Mercatorum per terras & Regiones Christianorum, cum Balfano, Gemmis, Sericis, ac Aromatibus,

CHAP. 6.

ac per illos singula exploro, tam de statu Imperatoris, ac Pontificum Principum, ac Sacerdotum, quam. Pralatorum, nec non Aguora, Provincias, ac distinctiones earum.

leitur peracta collocusione nostra satis producta, egressos Principes in cameram renocanit ex quibus quatuor de maioribus iuxta nos aduocans, fecit eos expresse ac debite, per singulas divissiones in luqua Gal. licana destinguere per partes, & singularum nomina partium, omnem Regionem terra Anglia, ac alias Christianorum terrras multas, acsi inter nostros fuissent nati, vel multo tempore connersati, Nam et ipsum Soldanum audius cum ys bene & directe loquentem idioma Francorum. Itaque in omnibus his mente consternatus obmutui, conitans, & dolens de peccatis singulis, rem talster se habere, &c.

Secunda pars. Cap. 26. De Æthtopia, & Diamanti bus, & de infima India. India triplex. Cap. 18.

De Ecclefia &

corpore lanctæ

Thoma Apo-

vel Malaber.

Calami , vel

Apolioli erc.

Calumè.

Idolum in

122

Ethiopia consistit à terra Chaldworum in Austrum, qua distinguitur in Orientalem Æthiopiam, 10 A Ethiopia confissi à terra Chaldworum so Austrum, qua austinguiur so Orientaiem Aistioipiam, S Meridionalem, quarum prima in illis partibus vocasur Culh, propier homisusum nigredinems, De Ethiopia intratur in Indiam mediam, nam triplex est, videlicet Insima, que in quibusdam.

suis partibus est nimis frigida ad inhabitandum: Media qua satis temperata est, & Superior, qua nimis

Hinin Meridiem pluribus exactis Insulis per viam decem dietarum venitur in Regnum Mabron. Illie in ciuitate Calamix, seruatur in magno Templo corpus beatissime Thoma Apostolis Domini noster Iesu Christi in capsa bonorificata. In quo loco & martirizatus fuit, licet dicunt quidam, quodin E. dilla ciuitate. Ifte populus non est multum tempus transactum, quin fuit totus in sidei religione, sed nunc Regio Mabron eft ad peffimes Gentilium ritus peruerfus.

Per certas historias habetur Ducem Danorum Ogerum conquissuisse has terras, & in exaltatione (anttarum Apostoli rell'quiarum fecisse sieri prafatam spectactilem Ecclesiam, etc.

In hac ipla beats Thomx Ecclesia statuerunt multa mira magnitudinis simulachra, ex quibus onum quòd maius est multo aliss, apparet sedens homo in alto solio adoperto aureis sericis, & lapidibus pratiosis, Templo fancti haben (a. ad collum suspensa pro ornatu multa cinctoria pretiose gemmis, & auro contexta. Ad bocautem Idolum adorandum confluunt peregrini à remotis partibus, & propinquis, in satis maiori copia, & valde feruentiori deuotione quam Christiani, ad fanctuum Iacobum in Galizia, quia multi corum. per totum peregrinationis iter, non audent erigere palpebras oculorum, ne forte propter hoc deuotio in-

Ali, de propè venientes superaddunt labori itinerandi, vt ad tertium vel ad quartum passum semper 30 cadant in genibus. Nonnulls quoque Demoniaca infriratione semetipsos per viam peregrinationis lanceolis, & cultellu nunc minoribus, nunc maioribus faucians vulneribus per fingula corporis loca, & dam ante Idolum perueniums, excifum frustum de carne propria proyciums ad Idolum pro offerenda, ac plagis durioribus se castigant, & quandoque spontanee pentus se occident : in solemnitatibus verò , ficut in dedicatione, & ficut in thronizatione simulachrorum fit connentus populi, quasi totius Regni. Et ducitur cum processione maius Idolum per circuitum cinitatis, in curru preciosissimo, modis omnibus perornate. & pracedunt in numero magno puelle cantantes bine, & bine ordinatissime; succedit g, plur alitas Musicorum cum instrmentis varijs simphonizantes, quos continue subsequitur currus cuius lateribus coniungit se peregrinorum exercitus, qui & venerunt de remotis.

Ibique cernitur miserabilis actus vitrà modum. Nam aliqui victi vitrà modum diabolica denotione so projetiunt se sub rotis currus pracedentis, ut franquntur sibi crura, brachia, latera, dorsa, nec non et colla in reuerentiam Dei sui (ve dicunt) à quo remunerationem sperant, venire ad Paradisum.

Et post processionem postquam statuerunt Idolum in Templo suo loco, multiplicatur corans simula-Occidunt le in chris numerus sepè plangentium, & Occidentium ultrà quam credi sit facile. Ita quod quandoq in illa honorem Idoli unica solemnitate inueniuntur ducenta corpora,vel plura occisorum. Etassistentes propinqui amici talism Diabols martyrum, cum magna musicorum melodia decantantes in sua lingua offerun Idolis corpora, ac demum accenso rovo omnia corpora comburunt in bonorem I dolorum , assumentes sibi singuli aliquid de offibas aut cineribus pro reliquis , quas putant sibi valituras contra qualibet infortunia, & tempestates. Et babetur ante Templum, aqua lacus, velut seruatorium piscium, in quo project populus largissime 50 suas oblationes, Argentum, Aurum, Gemmas, Cyphos, & similia, quibus ministri certis temperibus exhibentes prousdent Ecclesia, ac simulachro, ac sibi ipsis abundanter.

Cap. 20. De Ima, & lijs meridiona. libus Infulis.

Inde viterius procedendo in Austrum per multas & mirabiles terras quinquaginta duarum distarum spacio, habetur magna Insula Lamori. Illic omnes nudi incedunt, & ferè omnia sunt singulis communia; nec vituntur prinatis clauibus sine seris, imo & omnes mulieres sunt communes omnibus & singulis viru, dummodo violentia non inferatur : sed & petor est ijs consuetudo, quod libenter comedunt teneras carnes humanas; unde & negotiatores adferunt ess crassos infantes venales : quod si non satis pingues afferuntur cos saginant sicut nos Vitulum, sine Porcum.

Mandeuilius v-Iaua Intula,

Hic apparet in bona altitudine Polus Antaréticus & ineipit modò apperere in alta Lybia, ita quod in alta Æ: hiopa, elenatur octodecem gradibus, pront ipse probani Astrolabio.

gendie. Et est valde grandis Regio Iaua, babens in encutu monum ieuwi ina unurum minimit.
Milia Aroma- est valde potens, & imperans septem Is selarum vicinarum Region, Terrassinass populosa, valde & estcunt in ea Species, & abundantia Gingiberia, Canella, Gariofols, Nuces Muscata, & Mastix, cum-

Aromatibus multie. Sed & quod ibi nascatur vinum, non habent : Aurum & Argentum eft ibi in copia immensa, quod patet in Regis laux palatio, cuius palatiy nobilitas non est facile scribenda.

Cuniti eradus ascendentes ad palaty anlas, & anlarum cameras, & ad thalamos camerarum sunt Colids de argento vel auro, sed & omnie statura pauimentorum in alijs babetur ad similitudinem seacaris. emam quadratam argenti, alteram auri, laminis valde crassis, & in ipsis pauimentis, sunt ex sculpta vefia, & historia diuersa. In prucipali verò aula, est plenarie expressa Dani Ducu Ogeri historia à naiuitate ipsiu, quossque in Franciam fautastice dicater renersu, cum tempore Caroli Magni Regu Francia, inse Ogerus armata manu conquistait Christianitati serè omnes partes transmarinas à letofolymis veque ad arbores Solis & Lune, ac prope Paradisum terrestrem.

Pro bac Regione laua, (que tangit fines Imperiy Tartariæ) fibi fubiuganda, Imperator Grand Can multories puenanit, sed nunquam valuit expugnare. Hinc per mare venitur ad regnum * Thalamas- * VelTholomutotics pugnant, jeu nangaming magnes numerus bonarum ciuitatum. Intra hanc Insu-mass. [2, quod & Pachon dicitur, in quo habetur magnes numerus bonarum ciuitatum. Intra hanc Insu-wel Paten. lam, quatuor funt genera arborum, de quarum una accipitur farina ad panem, de secunda mel, de ter-

tia vinum, & de quarta pessimum venenum. Extrabitur autem farina de suis arberibus isto modo. Certo tempore anni percutitur stipes arboris undique prope terram cum securi, & cortex in locis plu- bote. ribus vulnet at ur, de quibus recipitur liquor fpiffus, qui desiccatus ad solis astum & contritus reddit fari-

nam albam, ac si de frumento esset confectus, attamen his panu non est triticei saporie, sed alterius valde boni. Simili modo de suis arboribus mel elicitur, & vinum * liquitur: excepto quod illa non sicut gra- " Tedeic. mina prima desiccantur. Fertur quoque ibidem extractionem huius farina, mellis, & vini, per Angelum 20 primitus fuffe oftensam pradicto Danosum Duci, ill c fame cum suo exercitu laboranti. Contra vene-

num quod de quarto arboris genere stillat, solum est intoxicato remedium, ve de proprio simo per puram

In littore maris Calanoch miraculose veniunt semel in anno, per tres continuos dies, quasi de omni ge. Calanoch nere pissum marinorum, in maxima abuadantia: & prabent se omnibus libere capiendos ad manum. Nam & ego ipse cepi quamplures. Unde notandum, quod codem tempore anni quo super dicta extrahitur farina, mel, & vinum, conneniunt in boc ists pisces: que ambo mirabilia fecit uno tempore Deus olumpro Duce suo Ogero, que & in memoria illius, vsque nunc, singulis annis innouantur.

Et sunt in bac territorio testudines terribilis quantitatis, sitá de maioribus Regi ac Nobilibus delica. Testitudines tus ac preciosus cibus : mentior, si non quasdam ibidem viderim testudinum conchas, in quarum una grandissima. 30 fe tres bomines occultarent, funtq omnes multum albi coloris. Si bic ver vxoratus moritur, fepelstur &

vxor una cum co, quatenus, sicut ibi credunt, habeant eam statim sociam in seculo altero. In illis autem meridionalibus partibus apparebat mibi eleuatso poli Antarctici 33. gradum, cum Australis lati-16. minutie. Et sciendum quod in Bohemia, similiter & in Anglia eleuatur polus Articus 52. gra- tudo 33-grad. 10. minute. El imparibus magu (eptentrionalibus, ubi (ant Scott 62. gradibus cum 4. minutes. Ex quo pate respiciendo ad latitudinem colt, que est de polo ad polum, itinerario mea fuis per quartum

Horizontis phera terra, & vitra per 5. gradus, cum 20. minutis. Cum ergo secundum Astrologos, totus terra circuitus sit 21 500. milliarium, octo stadijs pro milliario computatio, & septinginta stadia Hzc etat Etarespondeant ad unum gradum, quod patet ad latitudinem terra, perambulani 66733. stadia cum uno tosshenis come tertio, que faciunt 4170, leucas Geometricas cum dimidia vel prope.

Cum igitur tot & ilata in ssi insulis vidimus monstra (qua si explicarem scribendo vix à legenti-bus omnia crederentur) noncuranimus viterius procedere sub polo Anstrali, ne in maiora pericula inci-De bona Rebus omnia crederentur I non com ammini o ucrimi processione potentia, nobilitatis, & gloria Imperatoris gione Manderemus: sed propier andstams & insus samo shouse sorte Tartarorum, vertebam faciem cum socijs nanigare magis versus Orientem. Cumq per multas dietas Minei.) sussimus fustinuissemus multa pericula maris, peruenimus in Regnum Manchus, quod est in consinibus superioris Indi z, & iungitur ab una parte Tartaria. Hec Regio Manchus pro sua quantitate reputatur melior, delettabilior, & omnium bonorum abundantior de cunttis ibi prope Regionibus. Nam & homines, befia, & volucres maiores & corpulentiores funt alijs, & pra vbertate vix inuenirentur in una ciuitate decemmendici. Formosi sunt viri, sed famina formosiores. Sed viri loco barba, habent perpancos pilos, rigidos, & longos ab utraque oris parte, quemadmodum nostros videmus cattos babere.

50 Prima quam ingrediamur ciuitai est Lachoti, distans una dieta à mari, & mirabamur, & gauis fumus nos muerisse integram cinitatem Christiane sides. Nam & maior par Regnicredit in Christian. Christians, Ibi habetur in less precio copia verum omnium, & pracipue victualium : vnum genus est ibi serpentum in abundantia quod manducant ad omne consissium, & nisi pro sinali ferculo ministrarctur de illis sirpentibus, conniuum quam modicum diceretur.

Suntá, per hoc regnum pleraque ciuitates & Ecclesia, & religiones quas inflituit Dux Ogerus, quia boc est unum de quindecim regnis que quessur, sicut infra dicetur. Illic sunt elegantes alba gallina, qua non vestiuntur plumis et nostra, sed optima lana. Canes aquatici, quos nos lutras nominamus, sunt Sunthuiusmoibi multi edomiti, quod quoties mittuntur in flumen, exportant domino pifcem.

Ab hoc locoper aliquas dietas, venitur ad huius regionis maximam orbem Canfay, hoc est dicere, in India occi-6c Ciuicatem Coli, imo de uniuer so orbe terrarum putatur hac maxima ciunatum; nam eius circuitus dentali telle 50. leucis est mensus, nec est facile dicere, quam compresse à quamplurimes popules inhabitatur. Hac Petro Marine, sedet m lacumaris, quemadmodum, & Venetiz: & babentur in ea plures quam mille ducenti pon- in Uccadibus.
Canfar.vel tes, & in qualibet turres miramagnitudinis, as fortitudinis, munita peruigils custodia & pro orbe tuen-Quintay, & da contra Imperatorem Grand Can. Multi sunt ibi Christiani , multa Religiones Christianorum, cius descriptio

sed & de ordinibus Minorum, & Pradicatorum, qui tamen ibi non mendicant; est magna pluralitat er diuersis Nationibus Mercatorum. Per Regionem nascitur vinum valde bonum, quod appellatur Bi-2011. Et ad leuram extra Ciustatem , Abbatta magna eft, non de Religione Christiana sed Pagana; 🕝 in ea forrestum, sue horsus magnus undiá circu nelusus, consusu arboribus. 🗗 arbustus in cuisu etiam medio mons altru simul & latru, habens horrum vbi solum inhabitant hestiole mirabiles, sicut Simie. marmota, Lanbon, papiones, foreti & buiu modi ad varia & multa genera, & ad numerum infinitum

Infula Pygm.zorum non est protensa, sed forte 12. Civitatum. Quarum una est grandis & bene murita, & quam Grand Can facit cum fortibus armaturis curiose feruari, contra Regem Mangi.

tameban.

* Cum 17.

die oftenras a Siuc Lanteb Vel Care.

Vel Camba-

De Palatio Imperatoris Grand Can.

Mandeuillus fuis pedibus menturauit aulum Imporatoris.

Omni autem die post refestionem connentus Abbatia, qui est valde Monachosus, deseruntur reliquie ciborum cum magno additamento, in vasis auro lucentibiu ad bunc bortum: o ad senitum Campane argentea, quam Elcemos narius manu gestat descendentes, & occurrentes de bestiolis duo millia aut plures sels component residere ad sirculum more pauperum mendicorum, & traditur singulis per seruos, als- 10 quid de bis cibaris, ac denno audita campana segregando recurrunt : Cumque nos tanquam redarenentes, diceremus, cur bac non darentur egenis, responderuns, illic pauperes non babentur, quod si inneniren. tur, potisu tamen deri deberent bestiolis. Habet enim corum persidia, & Paganismus, animat nobilium bominum post mortem ingredi corpora nobilium bestiarum, & animas ignobilium corpora bestiarum ignobilium & vilium ad luenda videlicet crimina, donec peracta ponitentia transcant in Paradisum: idee. que nutriunt, prout dicunt, has nobiliores bestias, sine bestiolas, qued à quibusdam nobilibue sundabaenr in principio hac Abbatia. Multa funt alia mira in hac Ciuitate, de quibiu sciatie, qued non om-

Hinc proceduur per Imperium Grand Can, ad multas Cinitates, & Villas morum mirabiliter dinerforum, vfa, in Regnum Iamcham, quod est vonum de 12. Provincys maximis, quibus distinguisur totum Imperium Tartarorum, Nobilior Civitas buius Regni seu Prosincia dicitur Iamchan, abundans mercimoniis, & dusitis infinitis, & multa prastans proprio Regi tributa, quoniam sicut illi de Ciuitate Attentur, valet annue Resi quinquagints milis " Cuman Florenorum auri. Nota. In Iamchan Gi-nitate ell Conuentus fratrum Minorum: in bac funt tres Ecclefia Monafteriorum: reditus fiund afcendit ad 12. Cuman. Odericus. Vnus Cuman est decem millium. Summa tributi annui, quinquaginta millia millium Florenorum. In illis namá, partibus magnas numerorum summas estimant per Cu-Ciuitas Meke, man numerum 10 millium qui & in Flamingo dicitur latte. Adquinque leucas ab bac Ciuitate eff man, momerum 10. municu qui con alluffimi genere ligni Nanes maxima cum Aulis & Thalamis, 10. ac multis adeficies, tanquam Palatium tellure funditum.

Inde per idem Regnum ad viam olto dietarum per aquam dulcem, multas per Civitates, & bonas Villas, venimus . Laucherim, (Odericus appellat Leuvim) urbem formofam opumq, magnarum,fitam super flumen magnum b Cacameran. Hoc flumen transis per medium Cathay, cui aqua infert damnum, quando nimis inundat, sicus Padus in Ferraria, Mogus in Herbipoli: & illud sequentes inmoron. autonum, quanao nimis suunaas, jieus radus in retratia, Mogus in Herbipoli: & illud sequentes in-Cathay Calay, transmus principalem Proninciam Impory Tartariz, dictam Cathay Calay: & ista Pronincia est multum distenta, ac plena Cinitatibus, & Oppidis bonis, & magnis omnibus q, reserta mercimonis, maxime Sericolis operibus, & Aromaticis fi iebus.

Nauigando per dictum flumen versus Orientem, & itimerando per banc Cathay Provinciamad multas dietas per plurimas Vrbes & Villas, venitur in Civitatem . Sugarmago, abundantiorem omnibus in mercenomy; antedilissquando fericum est bie vilissimum quadraginte libra babeniur ibi pro de-cem Florenis. Ab bac Cinitate, multis Cinitatibus peragratis versus Orientem, veni ad Cinitatem Cambalu, que est antiqua in Pronincia Cathay : Hanc postquam Tartari ceperunt, ad dimidium miliare fecerunt unam Civitatem nomine Cay do, & habet diedecim portas, & a porta in portam duo funt groffa miliaria Lombardica, facium inter medium istarum Cinitatum habitatoribus plenum est & cirenitus cuiussbet istarum ambit 60. miliaria Lombardica, que faciunt ofto Teutonica. In bac Ciustate Cambalu residet Imperator Magnus Can , Rex Regum terrestrium, & Dominus Dominorum terrestrium. At g, inde viterius in Orientem intratur vetus vrbs Caydo, vbi communiter tenet suam sedem Imperialem Grand Can in suo Palitio. Ambitus autem vrbis Caydo, est viginti ferè leucarum, duodecim habens portas à se distantes amplius quam stadia 24.

Palatium Imperatoris Grand Can, quod est in Caydo Civitate, continet in circuitu propris muralis vltrà duas leucas 🕁 sunt in eo aula quam plures, in forma nobiles, 🕁 in materia nobiliores. Aula autem sedis, qua est maxima caterarum, babet intrinsecus pro sui sustentatione 24 areas columnas fastas opere fulorio , de auro puro, & omnes parietes ab intus opertas pellibus quorundam animalium, qua vocantur Pantheres : ha (anguinei sunt coloris, & staremicantes, vt Sole desuper relucente, vix oculus valeat bumanus sufferre plendorem, tanta g, fragrantia vt illi approximare non posset aer infettiu, unde & ista opertura parietum appreciatur super tegmen aurearum laminarum, &c.

Istim autem oftia aula dum in ea residet, aut deambulat Imperator, multi Barones ingressum servant mtente & ne limen tangatur, quod boc haberent pro augurio. & bene verberaresur, quia imperatore prasente, nemo nist adductus in quacunque camera, vel habitatione intromittitur, donec interrogatus inserit 60 Imperator. Latitudinem buius Basilica astimo ad spacium de meis pedibus centum & longitudinem vltrà quatuor centum.

Praterea, inxta Palati, ambitum, habetur grandis parci spaciamentum, dinersi generis arboribin repletum, fruitus ferentibus varios, & nobis inus os, & in parte media, aula super excelsum collem de tam mira & pulchrastructura, vi eisu nobilitas de facili ad prasens non possit describi. Et undia. Der collis orrum aqua fossum profundum, & latum, vitrà quod pons unicu ducit ad collem. At q.ex duobus montis lateribus, stagnum cum dinersorum copia Piscium, & volucrum indomitarum, vi ancarum. annatum, cignorum, ciconiarum, ardearum, & collectorum in magna pluralitate: nec non & per parcum. muita siluestres bestiu. E bestiola quatenus per aula fenestras possis Dominus pro solatio respicere volucrum ancupationes, bestiarum venationes, & piscium captiones.

Prater palatism hoc in Caydo, habet Imperator similaer tria: vnum in ciuitate Sadus, versus Septentrionem, vbi competens est frigue, ibs moratur in astate. Camivalu, vbi competens calor, ibi moratur breme. Tertium in cuatate longh, in quo & in isto Cay lo, ve sapius sernat sedem, eo quod in istu est Haitoniu me-

10 aer maçis temperatus, quamuis semper calidsu videtur Nostratibus.

Sciatis quod ego, meig, sodales, pro sama magnificentia huius Imperatoris, tradidimus nos stipen-Sciatu quod ego, meig, fodales, profama magnificentie buius imperatoru, trausamus nos jupen.

29,35.
diarios effe in guerrus contra Regem Mangi prenominatum. Et faimus apud ipliam 15, menfibus, & Gequation certè insenimum multo maiorem partem hominum, in mediam partem nobus non finific relatam: hominum bus quas Mag.

50. (excepti custodibiu bestiurum & volucrum) qui intra palatium certa gerunt ministeria est numeriu nuccun celedecem cuman.

Nota. Traxi moram in Cambalu tribus annis : frattes nostri locum habent in Curia sua specialiter, & festis diebus statutis dant benedictionem. Odericus. Et quoniam Imperator bubet satis plures Vixit in Camquam decem mille Elephantes edomitos, & velut vitrà numerum alias bestias (quarum quadam tenen-balu tribus tur in caneis, stabulis mirabilibus, vel catenis) nec non & aues rapaces, & Accipitres, Falcones, Offro- annis.

nes, Gryfandos gentiles, Lauetoys, & Satyros. fed & Auiculas loquentes, & Papingos, & similes . 4has q, cantantes : requiatur numerus hommum de titu curam & laborem gerentium, vitra sex cuman, Sex cuman (s. & pratereà sugiter ad Curiam equises cum plenarys armaturis, quing, cuman, & de peditibus cum pra- mulosum. tiandi armaturis, cuman decem. Sed & omnes de natione quacung, mundi venientes, qui petunt de-Quinque Cuscribi pro Curia, recipiuntur. Sic enim iussit Imperator. Habet & medicos Paganos viginti, & totidem manequitum. scribi pro Cieria, recipiantier. See cum suijus imperatur. . stance o mentus s'agunoi viginis, o sosmem. Decem Cu-Phylicos, atque sine his Medicos Christianes ducentos, & totidem l'hysicos, quoman sife Grand Can man pedium, maiorem gerit confidentiam in Medicis (hristianis, quam in sua propria nationis medicis,

Hoc ergo firmiter scias, quod de Curia Regis accipiunt necessaria sua ingiter ultra triginta cuman stiani, 200 in hominum, prater expensu animalium & volucrum, cum tamen in festu maioribus sint bemines propè in aula Grand Cari. duolo tanti. Nec valet hic Dominiu defectum vilum pati pecunia, eo quod in terra sua non currit moneta. Vinus Cuman 30 de argento, vel auro, alione metallo, sed tantimo de corio vel papyro: borum enim forma denariorum continct de-cem milia, ve figno Imperatoris impressorum preciatur minoris aut maioris valoris , secundâm discristatem impressor in cip.33. nu, qui per visitationem, detrità vel rupti, cum ad Regie thesaurarios deseruntur, protinus dantur pro Moncea de co.

CHAP. 6.

Quater in anno celebrat Imperator sestimitates solennes. Pri nam de die propria Natinitatio. Se- Quatuos sesta cundam, de die sua prima prasentationu in corum Templo, quod appellant Moleach, vbi & sit is, nesen quod gensu circumcissonis. Tertiam, in throniz is ne sus Idoli in Templo. Quartam, de die quo Citcumcisso Idolum capit dare responsum, seu facere diabolica mira. Plures enim in anno non tenet seleunitates, niss que dam. si quando nuptias filiy aut filia celebrat. Itag, in istis solemitatibus est populi multitudo absq. numero, coc.

40 Celebrato post boc prandio satis morose, quia nunquam est vitrà semel edendum in die, de quo & eins administratione nunc longum est scribere, adjunt gesticulatores, mira visu, suamag, auditu pedibus, ma. De ludis & minus, fractions, humaris, capsibus, & toto corpore, ac ad fingulos gostus, correspondentes debito vocis so. prastigijs in me Fe Cumper successivamentalistamentalistame subsecutivamentalistamental mo. Es semper sinem horum mirabilium cantilena subsequitur musicorum. Ex hoc toculatores presso suo contatu. sunt, & Magi, qui suis incant :tronibus prastant prastigia multa.

Certum est illu bomines esse subtiles ad quastam huma: su artes, & ingenioses ad fraudes super om-comecunt. nes, qui noni munds partes, vinde & inter se dicunt pronerbium, se soles videre duobus oculis, & Chri. Magi intignes. stianes une, cateros autem bomines cacos: sed mentitur iniquitus sibi, queniam ipsi vident sole oculo terfranci von casevi monton commente de la compania del compania de la compania de la compania del compania de la compania del la compania del la compania de la compania de la compania de la compania de la compania del la fit enim Naas, id est, humani generii hostis cum illu feediu, vet erneret omnibiu oculos dextros, scili- 1.5am.11.2.

50 cet forituales.

Post annos Christi 1100. prima Tartaria fust nimis oppressa servitute sub Regibus circumiacentium sibi nationum. Quando autem Deo placuit, maiores illus Tartariæ eleuauerum de sensis sibs Regem Que de causa fibs nationum. Quanda autem Des placent, maiores suus 1 arcatic cienamerinsi ae jespis per orgeni ditum Giis Can, cus & promiferunt fubicilifismum obedansiam. Idem cium effet prudens & firenuse dictuu Grand can. 12 viriles babens filios, debellanis cum 15 & populo suo, & vient, ae subiecis cunstos in circuitu Reges, Vera ratio huquibus terra indebite din subsacuerat. Quin etia n apparente sibi in visione A gelo Dei velut milite mius nominis albo equo, & candidus armis, & hortante se, ut transiret Alpes, per montem Beliam, & per brachium Can. maris, ad terram Cathay, & ad alias illic plurimas regiones transsut, & copit cum filys suis aliquas Guic can apparuit, qui etiam ante passum praditi maris nouem orationes Deo facere sussit, ideo successores os que & nouenzius 60 bodie diligunt equos albos, & nouenarium numerum babent pra cateris in gratia. Dung, Guis Can numerus Izrmorti pri senio appropinguaret, conuocatos ante se filios hortabatur, o mouebat exemplo 12. telorum in tatis fine in

fimul colligatorum, que à nullo filiorum pariter françi potuerant, sed disjoluta unumquodo, per se facile Pictio. frangebatur: fic filij (inquit) dilectiffimi, fi per concordiam ves innicem dilexeritis, & enxeritis fenior; frairs obedientes, confido in Deo iuxta promifionem milis ab Angelo factars, quod omnem latifirmam

Grand Can.

O insta Can. free Can. Mancy Can.

Cobile Cars.

Echiant Can. Imperator Tartarorum tempore Man denilli.

Yroga, Deus Naturæ.

Sero.ban TXOI

Grand Can.

Cap. 38. ribus Tartaro-12. Prouinciæ Ching. Cathay, Afia triplex. Vestirus Tartarorum.

Porcus & pa-

maxouij, 1, in plauff:is vi-Nouilunium in precio. Ceremoniz Tartarorum. & peccara.

ısı an terram, & optimam illi us imperio subiycietis, quod & post patris discessium strenuissinie, ac sidelisfine (Deo fibi profperante) perfecerunt. Et quia cum propris nominibus habebant cognomen Can, priningenitus pro differentia obisnuit nomen Grand Can, id est, Magnus Can, videlicet supra cateros fratres, qui fibi in omnibus obediebant.

itug, iste secundus Imperator vecabatur Ochoto Can. Post quem filius eius regnaut diitus Gui Can. Quartus autem, qui Mango Can baptizabatur, permanfitq, fidelis Christianus, qui ettam millo magno exercitu cum fratre sno Hallaon in partes Arabix & Egypti mandanit destrui in toto Mihome a superstitionem, & terram poni in manibus Christianorum. Et fratre tum procedente, accepit rumores de frairis sui Imperatoris morte inopinata quapropter & redit negotio imperfecto. Quintus Cobile Can, qui ctiam fuit Christianus, & regnauit 42. annis, & adificauit magnam ciun atem Iong, 10 maiorem latis vrbe Roma, in qua & continetur valde nobile palatium Imperiale. Hine v[a, bodie omnes successores Paganismo foedantnr.

I empore autem meo erat nomen Imperatoris Echiant Can, & primogenitus eius Colue Can, preter quem & alios filies habun 12, de querum nominibus conscribendis non est cure presentis.

Prama vxorum suorum vocabatur Serochan, que & est filia Presbyteri Ioannis , scilicet Imperatoris India. Secunda Verouchan, Tertia Caranth Can.

Istis duobus Imperatoribus non creditur inuentri maior Dominus sub firmamento Cali. In literis qua buins Imperatoris Tartaria feribantur nomine ponitur femper ifte Titulus. Can filius Dei excelis, omnium viniuersam terram colentium summus Imperator, & Dominus dominantium omnium. Circumferentia magni fut sigille, continet boc scriptum. Deus in Colo, Can super terram, eius for- 20 titudo. Omnium hominum Imperatoris tigilium. Sciendum quoq, quod quamuis populi ibi dicuntur, & funt Pagani, tamen & Rex & omnes credunt in Deum immortalem, & Omnipotentem, & inrant per insum appellantes, Y 10g2, id est, Deum Natura. Sed nihilominus colunt & adorant Idola, & simulachra aurea, & argentea, lapidea, lignea, filtria, lanea, & linea.

Totum Imperium Imperatoris Grand Can distinctum est in 12. magnas Provincias juxta numerum De Territorio duodecim filiorum primi Genitoris Can. Harum Proninciarum maior, & nobilior dicitur Cathay, qua consistit in Asia profunda. Tres enim funt Alix, scilicet que profunda dicitur, & Asia dicta maior que nobis est sais propinquior & tertia minor intra quam est Ephelus beati Icannis Euangelista sepultura, de qua babes in pracedentibus.

Omnes cam viri quam femina similibus in forma vestibus inducuntur, videlicet valde latis & breni- 10 bus v(g, ad genua cum apertura in lateribus quam firmant (dum volunt) ansis quibusdam, nam vterá. sexus est brachius seu semoralibus plene tectus. Nunquam viuntur toga aut collobio, sed nec caputio, unde nec per aftelt um indumentorum potest haberi differentia inter virum & mulurem innuptam. Sed nupta gestat per aliquod tegumentum in capite formam pedis viri. Nubit illic vir quotquot placet mulieribus, ve nonnulli habeant decem vel duodecem vxores aut plures. Nam quifg, maritus iungstur licenter euclibet mulieri, exceptis matre, & amita, forore, & filia. Sicut viri equitant, tendunt, & currunt per patriam pro negotis fic & mulures, quoniam & ipfe operantur omnia ferè artificia mechanica ficut pannos o quicquid efficitur de panne, corio, sericog, minanto, carrucas, o vebicula, sed viri fabricant de ferro & de omni metallo lapidibus at q, ligno, nec vir nec mulier nobilis aut degener comedit vitra semel in die communiter. Mulia nutriunt pecora sed nullos porcos, parum comeditur ibi de pane exceptis ma- 40 gnatibus & diutibus, sed carnes edunt pecorum, bestiarum, & bestiolarum vipote Boum, Onium, Caprarum, Equorum, Asinorum, Canum, Cattorum, Murium, & Rattorum, ini carnium forbentes. 67 omnis generis lac bibentes.

Nobiles autem bibunt las Equarum, seu immentorum, pro nobil: simo potu & pauperes aquam bullitam cum modico mellis, quia nec vinum ibi habetur, nec ceruifia conficitur: & multi ac climimi fontes Formz domo- consulunt in sua siti, per villas, & rura. Domus, & habitacula rotunda sunt forme, composite & contexte parmis lignis, & flexilibus virgulis, ad modum caucarum quas nos facimus pro aniculis , babentes rotundam in culmine aperturam prastantem duo benesicia habitationi, quoniam & ignis quem in medio domus constituent sumum emittit, & pro officiendo lumen immutat. Intrinsecus sunt parietes undig, de filtro, fed & teclum filtrum est : has downs , dum locum habitands mutare volunt , vel dom in distina so expeditione procedunt, ducunt fecum in plansh is quali tentoria.

Multas supernachas observant ceremonias, quia respicient in vanitates & insanias falsis: solem & lunam pracipue adorant, et fá, frequenter genna curnant, & ad novilunium, quicquid est magni estimant inchoandum. Nullus omnino vittur calcaribus in equitando, sed cogunt equini flagello scorpione, reputantes peccatum non leue, fi quis ad hoc flagellum appodiat, aut immentum percuteret suo frano: pleraque similia, que parum aut nivil nocent , ponderant ut grania , sicut imponere cultellum in igne , os offe confringere , lac feu alind potabile in terram effundere , nec non & buinfmodi multa. Sed inper bac, tenent pro graniori admisso mingere intra domum qua inhabitatur, & qui de tanto crimine proclamaretur affrietus, mitteretur ad mortem. Et de singulis necesse est vt consiteatur peccator Flamini sua legis, & Soluat summam pecuniarum delicti. Et si peccatum deturpationis habitaculi venerit in publicum, o- 60 portebit reconciliars dominio per Sacerdotem, prinfquam villus andebit intrare. Insuper & peccatorem necesse erit pertransire ignem, semel, bis, aut ter iuxta iudicium Flaminis , quatenus per ignis acrimoniam pur octur à tanti inquinatione peccati.

Neminem hommum probibent inter se habitare, sed indifferenter receptant, Indxos, Christianes,

Saracenos, & homines cuiuscuing, nationis, vel legis, dicentes se sais putare suum ritum non ita securim ad falutem, nist quandog, traberentur ad ritum magis salutarem, quem tamen determinate nunc ignorant, imo multi de nobilibiu sunt iam in Christianitate baptizati.

Porro Tartari in pracinito expeditionis habent finguli duos arcus , cum magna pluralitate telorum : Atma Tarta Nam omnes sunt sagutaris ad manum & cum rigida & longa lancea. Nobiles autem in equis preciose torum, phaleratio ferunt, eladios, vel fratas breues & latas, scindentes pro uno latere, & in capitibus galeas de pomer ante je ann, sur les fed ad capitis formam depressas. Quicung, de suis fugerit de pralio, splo facto conscriptius est, ut siquando inuentius fuerit occidatur. Si castrum vel ciuitat obsessa se illis reddere vo- Tattori rette luerit, nullan acceptant conditionem niss cum morte omnium inimicorum, vel si quis homo singularis se sagittantes.

10 dederit viltum nibilominus absa, vila miseratione occidunt, detruncantes illi protinus aures, quas postea coquentes, & in aceto (dum habuerint) ponentes mittunt innicem ad conninia pro extremo ferculo: dumque ipsi in bellis arte fugam simulant, periculosum est eos insequi, quoniam iaciunt sagittas à tergo, quibus eauss of homines occidere norunt. Et quando su prima acie comparant ad bellandum, mirabiliter fele constringunt, ve media pars numeri corum vix credatur.

Generaliser noueritie, omnes Tattaros habere parnos oculos, & modicam vel raram barbam : In pro- Tattari hibent priss locis raro inter se litigant, contendant, aus pugnant, timentes legum pergraues emendas. Et inue. parcos oculos pris locu varo inter le titiguat contomicida, iniurians, adulter, aut fornicarius, quia tales criminatores bam. inuestigatione sollicita requiruntur, & sine redemptione aliqua perimuntur. Dum quie decumbit instr- Mos sepultumus figitur lancea iuxta illum in terra , & cum appropinquauerit morti , nullus remanet iuxta ipsum. 12. 20 cum verò mortuus effe scitur, confestim in campis, & cum lancea sepelitur.

Imperator Grand Can possquam eius cognita fuerit defunctio, defertur mox à paucis viris in parco Cap. 39. palati, ad prauisum locum voi debeat sepeliris. Et nudato prius toto illo loco à graminibus cum cespite De sepuliura figitur shi tentorium, in quo velut in solio regali de ligno corpus desuncti residens collocatur, paraturgs Grand Can. & mensa plena coram eo cibarijs preciosis, & potu de lacte iumentorum. Instabulatur ibi & equa cum suo creatione lucpullo, sed & ipse albus, nobiliter phaleratus, & onustitus certo pondere auri & argenti. Et est totum cestoric. Tentoris pasimentum de mundo stramine stratum.

Tunca, effodiunt in circuitu fossam latam valde,& profundam vt totum tentorium cum omnibus contentis descendat in illam. Eog, facto ita equaliter terram planificantes adoperiunt graminibus, vt in omni tempore locus sepultura non valeat apparere. Et quoniam ignorantia nubilo turpiter excacati pu-30 sant m alio (aculo homines delectationibus frui, dicunt quod tentorium erit es pro bospitio, cibi ad edendum, lac ad potandum, equus ad equitandum, aurum & argentum ad respiciendum, sed & equa lac semper prastabit, & pullos equinos successius venerabit.

Post has itag, Imperatoris defuncti miseras exequias, nullus omnino audebit de ipso loqui coram vxoribus & filius, & propinquis, sed nec nominare, quia per hoc putarent derogari paci, & quieti illius, qua ron dubitant eum dominari, in maiori fatis gioria Paradisi quam hic stetit.

Breuiter & nunc intendo cursum describere aliquarum magnarum Regionum & Insularum Imperij De multis re-Tartaria. Et primo illas que descendant à provincia Cathay per septentrionalem plagam, vsq. ad fines gionibus Im-Christianitatis Pruffiz, & Ruffiz.

Ergo provincia Cathay descendens in sui Oriente à regno Tharlis iungitur ab Occidente regno Tur-40 quelcen, in quo & sunt plurima ciuitates, quarum formosor dicitur Octopar. Ipsum autem Turquest Octopar. cen reonum iungitur ad Occidentem sui regno seu Imperio Persix, or ad Septentrionem regno Coralina, Coraline. quod faciosum est valde, habens versus Orientem sui vitra centum diatas deserti : boc regnum est mul. Regnum Comtu bonis abundans, & appellatur eins melior ciuitat etiam Corafine.

Isti quod, regno iungitur in Occidente versus partes nostras regnum Commanorum, quod & similiter longum est, & latum, sed in paucis sui locis inhabitatum : Nam in quibusdam est frigus nimium, in Samaikand. aliys nimius calor, & in nonnullis nimia mu[carum multitudo.

Sunt autem in Perfia due regiones : una alte Perfix, que à regno Turquescen descendens, jungitur & Spahan ad Occidentem sui fluuio Pyson. In ista babentur renominata ciuitates , quarum meliores dua dicuntur Sarmasanc. Bocura & Sconargant, quam aliqui appellant Samarkand : Et altera Regio Balla Perlix, descendens Cap. 41. 50 à flumme Pylon, qui ad sui Occidentem iungitur regno Medix, & terra minoris Armenix, & ad A. Demaenic quilonem mari Calpio, & ad Austrum terra minoris India. In hac bassa Persia tres principaliores centia Impera. cinitates funt Ælfaber, Saphaon, Sarmaiaule, &cc.

A finibus regni Bacharix supradists vbi contiguatur Imperio Indix , eundo per multas diatas in- Pralatis. tratur in regnum Pentoxyrix quod est magna latitudinis, & abundantia in multis bonis: busus nomi- S:u Pentoxonatior ciuitas, dicitur Nyle, 🖰 in ca habet Imperator palatium Imperiale in quo residet dum sibi placet. 🖽 Imperator iste semper vocitatus est Presbyter Ioannes, cuius nominis causam audieram quandog, non Civitas Nyse veram : sed in ills partibus accep rationem indubitatam , quam breuter bic enarro. Circa annum ab Fabula de re-Incarnatione Domini Octive este ffinum, Dux Ogerus de Danemarchia, eum quindecim cognation is ri Ducis Dasue Baronibus, o armatis viginti milibus transiuit mare Grecia, o fauente sibi Deo conquisinit Chri- niz, quales

60 fianitati per multa pralia pene omnes Terras, Regiones, & Infulas, quas effe de potestate Grand Can de Ortende Guipradixi, nec non & omnes, que funt de potesiate Imperi buius Imperatoris Indix. Erat g, inter Barones done Leni &c. unus denominatus Ioannes filius Goudebuch, Regis Frisonum : qui dictus Ioannes Des denotus fuit, Vode Preligie & dum lieust Eccles crum limina initit, unde & Berones et dabant quast per tocum Presbyter Ioannes & Bus. vocabulum. Dum ergo O cerus dictas regiones expugnatas d uideret in his quindecim fuis cognatis,

& quemlibet corum in suo loco constitueret Regem, quaterus Christiana religio in illa Orbis superficie Semper flabilis permaneret, tradidit ist. Presbytero Ioanni Superiorem Indiam, cum 4000. Insulis, Requonibus, & splum prafecie Imperatorem super reliquos cognatos, ve ei certa tributa impenderent, et in omnibus obedirent, atg, ex runc omnes successores Indiz sunt vocati Presbyter Ioannes, & vsa, in bodiernum tempus boni manserunt Christiani, & Religionis amulatores, &c.

CHAP. VII.

The Voyage of NICOLO di CONTI a Venetian, to the Indies, Mangi, Cambalu and Quinfai , with some Observations

This is taken out of Ramufor discourse of this voyage.



Icolo di Conti a Venetian, haning trauelled quite thorow India, after fine and twentie yeeres returned home; and because to saue his life he had made denyall of his Faith, bee went to the Pope (then Eugenius the Fourth, An. 1444.) being at Florence to obtaine absolution; who ensoyned him in way of penance, truly to make Narration of his Voyage, and whole Peregrination to his Secretarie Poggius, who writ it in the Latine tongue. 20 Ramusio sought for it in Venice and other Cities of Italie in vame, and at last beard

that it was translated into Portugall by the care of King Emanuel, An. 1500. a Copy whereof he procured from Lisbon, but so corrupt, that he doubted to publish it, which get for mant of better he did; and we out of him thele Observations.

Nicolo di Conti a Venetian being a young man, then at Damasco, and having learned the A. rabike Language, went with his merchandise in a Carauan of fix hundred Merchants, with whom he travelled into Arabia Petraa, and thence into Chaldea, till he came to Eufrates. In the Desart deuills. Desarts of Arabia, once about midnight they heard a great noyse, which they thought were the wilde Arabs comming to rob them, but faw a great multitude passe by neere their Tents without hurting them, which some of the Merchants said were Deuils which hanted these Desarts. 30

From Baldae is eight dayes sourney to Balfera, and thence foure dayes to the Persan Gulfe, Ba'dac. Otmus. Calatia.

where the Sea ebbeth and flowerh. After fine dayes fayling therein, he came to Calcum, and after to Ormaz; thence to Calatia a Port of Perfia of great traffick, where he remayned to learne the Persian tongue. Afterwards clothed in the habit of the Countrey (which hee vied to doe in all his journey) he went with certaine Moores and Persians, having sworne to be faithfull to each other, and fayled to Cambaia, and after to Pacamuria and Dely, where flore of Ginger growes. Thence they went farre into Sea, and came to Bisinagar fixtie miles about, at the foot of a high Mountayne; in which are one hundred thousand men fit for armes; they marry as many wives as they will, which are burned with them when they die. The King is the mightieft King in India, and hath twelue thousand Women, foure thousand of which attend him on foot whither 40 focuer he goeth, and are busied in the service of his Kitchin; foure thousand others ride on Horfes, or are carried in Litters; two thouland are to burne with him, which is holden a great honor. Pelagonga is subiect to him, eight dayes lourney thence and ten miles in circuit : from whence in twentie dayes by Land hee came to Pudiferania (leaving in the way Odeschiria, and Cenderghista, where red Sanders grow) and thence went to Malepur where Saint Thomas is buried in a great and faire Church. The Inhabitants are Nestorians, which are Christians dispersed

fred thorow thorow all India, as Ienes amongst vs. And all this Province is called Malabar, At the end of that Country is Zeilam a famous Iland, two thouland miles about, where are Rubies, Saphires, Cats-eye flones; and store of good Cinamon; the Tree like a Willow but thicker, the boughs growing more in breadth then height, the leaves like those of the Bay Tree, so but greater : the Barke of the boughs is best, that of the Trunke is not good : the fruit like Bayberries of which they make good Oile to anoint them. There is a Lake in which is a Citie of three miles circuit, gouerned by Bramines, which frend their lives in the studies of Philosophie,

and are much given to Aftrologie. After that is a great lland called Sumatra, which the Ancients called Taprobana, where her stayed a yeere. There growes the best Pepper, the Tree like to Liy. In a part of the Iland, called Batech, they eate mans flesh. Thence he sayled to Ternassari and thence to the mouth of Ganges, and up the streame (which is very great) to Cernouen, and to Magrazia; whence crosfing ouer Land he came to Racha, and thence in feuenteene dayes to Ana fifteene miles about, where they are much given to spend the Time in drinking and fellowship both Men and Wo- 60 men. There are certaine old women which get their living by felling Bels of gold, filuer, braffe, of the bigneffe of Nuts, which they put in mens yards betwixt the skin and flesh, when they are of age to vie Women, and in thort time cure the place; and the men much please themselves to heare the found of them as they goe. Here the Copy is defettine.

Pelazonga.

Nestorians di-

India.

Malabar.

Cinamon.

This Bell or

Marci

Mangi is fill of Elephants of which the King nourished ten thousand: they ferue him in Either this sothe warre, and carrie Caffles in which standeght, ten, or twelve men with Lances, Bowes and ry is not rue. Slings. They take them with a tame female Elephant, yied to feed in a place encompassed with orthis Margi 2 wall with two gates to goe in and out; into which in the coupling featon the male enters is not China at one gate, and thee flees out at the other, many men attending with devices to take him, both but Polos Micr. gates being shut; and with fasting, and accustoming other tame Elephants to him, tame him or some other

The men of this Countrey have but one wife, and all both men and women paint or embroider their skinnes with Iron pennes, putting indelible tinctures thereunto. They worthip Idols, to yet when they rife in the morning, they turne to the East, and with hands iowned, fay, God in Trimtie keepe vs in his Law. This Countrey produceth Serpents as groffe as a man, fixe cubits long, without feet, which they eate for great dainties; as they doe also certaine red Ants. There is a beaft headed like a Swine, tayled like an Oxe, with a horne in the forehead like an Vnicorne a cubit long, of the colour and stature of an Elephant; with whom hee continually fighteth. The horne is much esteemed against poylon. In the furthest parts of this Countrey towards Cataio, are white and blacke Kine, some haired and tayled like Horses, some with haires like feathers of which they make Fannes.

Beyond Mangi is the greatest Province in the World, called Cataio, the Lord whereof is called the great Can which fignifieth Emperour: and the chiefe Citie is called Cambalu, which is 20 foure square and hath eight and twenty miles in circuit. In the midst thereof is a Fortresse, and in it a Palace for the King; and at every of those foure corners is a Cattle, each foure miles about, in which are Armouries of divers forts, and Engines for battery. From the Palace is a way on the wall to all those Castles, that if the people rebell he might betake himselfe thither. Beyond Note, this Citie fifteene dayes journey is Quinfai another great Citie, which within this little while hath beene new made by this King. It hath thirty miles compaffe, and is more peopled then the former. In these two Cities it was told him that the Houses and Palaces are after the manner of Italie, and the men richer and wifer then in other places.

After he was gone from Ana, alongst the River to the Sea in seventeene dayes he arrived at Zaiton, a great Port, where he tooke Sea, and in ten dayes came to a great and populous Citie, Zaiton. 30 called Pauconia, which is of twelue miles compasse where he stayed foure moneths. There are Pauconia pera few Vines, which runne vpon Trees, and they make no Wine of them. There grow Abre- haps P. anin. cockes, white Sanders, and Camphire, &c.

tam lost to structure into India with bis. Author, whose defelts and corruptions besse made him so little serviceable, together with the changed names of places since his time. It is remarkable that her No compasses, Sayth that the Indian Mariners Sayled by the Starres Antartike, and not by the compasse; ving certaine which yet in measures and rules in that Starre-observation. Hee also relatesh the buge greatuesse and treble sheat the next age thing of their Ships. But of India, whereof all his Relations are, wee have already given you better, vic. that is more punitual, methodicall, and credible Authors. Tet before we leave him, let us observe what Aneas Sylvius, or Pope Pius Secundus harb, cited out of him. Hee fayth, that hee fayled the Indian Anisylde 2. 40 Sea amoneth beyond Ganges, and then came to the River Ratha, which being sayled in sixe dayes, bee Asia sails cite. found a Citie called by the same name. And thence after seventeene dayes passing desart Hills be came into champaine Countries; which having passed in a fortnight with great labour, hee found a River greater then Ganges, called Dana: and having sayled therein a moneth, came to a famous Citic fif-

teene miles in circuit, named Dua, where the women are exceedingly libidinous, the men contented with one wife, The Prounce is called Macin, full of Elephanis, ten thousand of which the King keepes for Macinum heree one wis. The resumes a case or activity has a separation recommend which is the market and the simplest carried on a white Elephan, mearing a golden Change diffinguished with by appeared genuine, and have no to be feet. The mea and women rafe themselves, or (a height) has of the Kime, about Sum of the contract of th getomas, some imaging is two jets. 1 on men men women up, sommy incompanies, or 1 me egipts, journey som extent, about Sam oc to faith, that the fame Kime home base tayles long and bairy to the feet, the haires faithel like Feathers, of Peys, &c. much esseems, and wied on the tops of Lances as Ensignes. These things hash thu Nicholas (sarth Sist. 4 And vectors 50 uius) of Macin, noting without doubt, the Region Serica. For our age placeth the Easterne Scythians many things in Cathay. That of Dua greater then Ganges, and that of ten thousand Elephants nonrified by a more incredi-King not knowne by fame, are hard to be beleeved: but longingaitie cannot easily be confuted.

TO THE READER.

Relate, I here present thee a piece of a Hissorie, so much as abuse on Tatteria, and China. Alhacen, a searned Mahumetan was the Authour; whether an exall Hissorian, curry where storaily to be understood; or whether in some part he be parabolicall, and presents a Tameslane like Xenophons 60 Cyrus, (in some things rather what be should have beene, and what the Authour could say, then what be was) I undertake not to determine. The Abbat of Mortimer takes it for a sust Storie, and so doth Master Knolls in his Turkish Historie. If it be an Historie partly parabolical, yet doth the accorum exact of the Authour a verisimilitude every where of addions and places (sufficient to procure our pardra, if not thanker) the veritie of a great part being enident in other Stories. It is true that fonce things

learne fulfe for want of truth in our intelligence, rather then in themselves. And so bath it fared with attibe subject of this Booke) Tartarian and Chinesian affaires: of which we had as little knowledge as of Tameilan, further then terrors of Tartarian Armes and some mens special occasions and tranels baue given vs light. Even the Sunne rifeth in those parts whiles it is not day-breake with vs. and beth attayned almost his Noon-point before we see him : and worthy wee are still to abide in a blacke might of ignorance, if we welcome not what light we can get (if we cannot get what wee would) from 6 remote an East. Once; Tattarian affaires (as it happens in Conquests) were changeable, and their New Moone was quickly at the full; divers chances and changes succeeding after Poles dayes to these: such wealth whetting the Tartars to get and bold, and no leffe the Chinois to recover, the China State being unquiet so long as the Tartar greatnesse continued, and freed (for the most part) with their dimini- to forme, and division into divers Estates. As for these times of Tameslan (if this Story be exact) it is libe the Can held the North parts of China from Quinfay forward, with Cataio; and the King of China the rest; then Nanquin being the Seat Royall, as fince the expulsion of the Tartars Paquin. Or perbaps the Quinlay heere mentioned, is that which Conti bath in the fermer Page told vs. was lately built by the Can : and not that which Polo speakes of; in Catay and not in China : which clearest this doubt of the Cans residence and rule in China. To reconcile all coubts is for mee too hard a taske, because Cataio and China are even still bemysted, and leave their surveyers perplexed, bounding the fearch of the most curious in fearching their sust bounds, bow farre they are the fame or differing; wherein our lesuites will more amuse and amaze vs (where wee will cleare our selues as well as we can) when wee come to them. I have premifed Conti, though Tamerlane be a little Elder for his Religions fake, & and to recreate with a little Relation , before this longer Storie.

CHAP. VIII.

Extracts of ALHACEN bis Arabike Historie of TAMERLAN, touching his Martiall Trauels, done into French by IEAN Dy Bec, Abbat of Mortimer.

TAMERLANS Birth and Person, his Expedition against the Muscouite: his Marriage with the Cans daughter; his ouerthroming of CALIX.

The Hiftory of Tamerlan famous amongft the Turkes and

160

Albacen.

The Franke Tongue a mongst the

Nodry Histories doe attribute, as a great want vnto the happie fortune of Tamer lan, not to haue a Writer in his dayes, which might haue left in writing his Hi- 40 storie vnto posteritie. But without any cause did they moane him, infomuch as his Historie is very famous amongst the Turkes, and Arabians; his Conquests very largely discoursed, and many of his worthy and notable sayings collected.

with an infinite number of Noble deeds left vnto the memoriall of posteritie. Very true it, is, that he had not an Homer, but a great and worthie person, learned as well in naturall Philosophie, as in Astrologie, who was in the time of this Prince, a companion and familiar of his Conquests , named Alhacen, an Arabian by birth , and of Mahomets Religion. This Authour then being fallen into my hands, in my Voyage into the East Countrey, Icaused the same to be interpreted vnto mee by an Arabian, who did speake Frank (as they terme it) that is to fay, Italian, and some time I spent, in affociating my selfe so with this man, who com- so mended greatly vnto me the elequence and granitie of this Authour, wondering at his digreffi-Yeeoftenhaue ons, and entring againe into his matter fo well to the purpose. It grieved mee much that I had not the perfection of this Language, to be a helpe vnto the richer of this Historie, for to deliframe in the uer it vnto my Nation with some grace : but I tooke thereof as much as I could in his Language, the franker ta- which was corrupted, as is the Franke Tongue (so they terme it) which is a kinde of Italian, the France to the France mingled with Slavon, Greeke, and Spanifo Tongues very common at Constantinople, with the Ahigh figures all the rabian and Turkifb Tongues: so as I could not gather but onely the trueth thereof, and not the W. ft of Europe drifts and grauitie of the Declaration, wherein the Authour had collected it for posteritie (and as he faid) by the commandement of the Prince, who was a louer of learning, and excellent The Tartarient in the knowledge of Astrologie and Divinitie, as the custome of those Nations is to some them frange kinde ordinarily together, studying vpon the vertue of names, and of the turning of letters, euen in 60 of Aftrologie, their placing, writing them underneath Starres, whereof they make fentences, by meanes whereof they wrought miraculously in the things of Nature. This is that Zoroastrien and Bastreen Science, that of Balaam, and fome others in my opinion, which hath fucceeded vinto to many

CHAP. 8. S. I. Fables of Tamerlan. His Birth, Person, disposition: first Warre. 141

Arabian Astrologians. Now then, this Prince was endued with such knowledge, as made him admired of the people where he commanded, who are for the most part great wonderers, infomuch as this cauled him to be accounted a Prince accompanied with the Divine vertue, confidering the juffice he yfed in all his actions. This hath proceeded even fo farre that fome Italians have written foolish things thereof, as of certaine kinds of Tents which he caused to be pitched, when he befieged any Citie; one white, fignifying peace, it yeelding vnto his mercy; another red, fignifying cruelty to follow; and the third blacke, fignifying mourning to enfue. But I finde not

this in our Author, and I beleeve them to be fables.

I will now declare vnto you with my Arabian, who this great Prince Tamerlan was. Hee The off fpring I will now declare vnto you with my Arabian, who this great rince lamerian was. The and flocke of the was then of the bloud of the Tartarian Emperours, and his tather Og had for his portion the and flocke of Tartarian. Countrey of Sachetar, whereof hee was Lord. This Countrey lying betweene the North and the East, is the antient Countrey of Paribia, voon the Coast of the Zogdians, and the chiefest the East, is the antient Countrey of Partina, violities the Country, and the chiefest The flockes of Citie of his estate was Samereand intuated violities of his estate was Samereand violities of his estate was same violi phers would need have him to be the sonne of a shepheard; but this have they said, not know- Kings are their ing at all the cultome of their Countrey, where the principall revenue of the Kings and No- flockes and bles confifteth in Cattell, delpifing Gold and Silver, but making great reckoning of such riches, the Tarters wherein they abound in all forts: this is the occasion wherefore tome call them Shepheards, and beafts are fav also that this Prince descended from them. So his Father Og was Prince of * Achetay, wealth, abounding in fuch kinde of wealth. And being come vnto the age of fifteene yeeres, his father . This name 20 being already old, deliuered up vato him the government of his Kingdome, with the comman- feems deriued

dement oper all his Men of warre. His father Og being guen vnto peace, withdrew bimfelfe trom Sochtai, vnto a folitary life, for to ferue God, and end the rest of his dayes in quiet. Hee gaue vnto his forcin Heiten: fonne Tamerlan (which fignifieth Heavenly grace in their Tongue) two fufficient personages of whom these for to guide and affift him in the government of his Estate: the one was called Odmar, and the Tattars are full other Alz, persons in great dignitie and credit with his father. Now this Prince was well in- called Zagetai, ftructed in the Arabian learning, and exercised himselfe much therein, and at such time as they Tamerland thought him to be either in the Bathes, wherein they are very curious in that Countrey being make it to fig. their chiefest delicacies, he was in the contemplation and studie of heauenly things. This Prince nife Lame leg had within his eyes fuch Diuine beautie, being full of fuch maiettie, that one could hardly in- by reason of 30 dure the light of them without cloting of their eyes, and they which talked with him, and did that accident,

often behold him, became dumbe, infomuch as he abstayned with a certaine modestie and com, his Hosse. linesse, to looke vpon him that discoursed vnto him. All the rest of his visage was curteous and Stickey, well proportioned: he had but little naire on histchinne; hee did weare his haire long and cur- Tamerlan his led, contrary to the custome of his Countrey, who are shaued on their heads, having the same studies and alwaies couered, but he contrariwife was alwaies in a manner bare-headed, and faid, his mother learning. came of the race of Samfon, for a marke whereof thee adulted me to honour long haire. This was eyes. The like the cause that made him respected of his men of Armes, and the most part of them did beleeve is reported of there was some vertue in those haires, or rather some fatall destinie, the which many did believe Augustus. to be so; and verily they were of a dusky colour drawing toward a violet, the most beautifuli The custome

40 that any eye could behold. His flature was of the middle fort, somewhat narrow in his shoul- of the Taraders, he had a faire leg and strong, the strength of his body was such as no body did surpasse, and Tanthan wore often on the felliuall dayes he made triall of his strength with the most strong: and this he did long haire and with fuch grace and humanitie, that he whom he ouercame held himselfe therein most happie, why. although it bee a difgrace among it the Tartarians to bee throwne to the ground in wraftling. The descrip-Now, as he was Martiall, and defirous of glorie: the first warre that hee attempted was against tion of Tamerthe Moscouite, who came and spoyled a Citie which had put it selfe into his protection, and Our Authors had entred allo into his Countrey, and being retired, proclaymed open warre against him, gaue tell vs hewas him battell neere to the River Maseha, although the Musconite had a great Armie, which hee lame, and that had gathered together long before On the other fide, the Prince determining to refift him, al- he was there-

50 fembled all his forces, and those of his allyes. Now the Musconite had very great forces, and force called men well trayned up in the warres, having had alwaies warres with his neighbours, the King of first warre a-Polonia, with whom hee had then friendship, and the ayde of ten thousand very good Horse. gainst the Mos-There were also with him many Hungarian Gentlemen, led by Vdecelaus a Hungarian Gentle- counte. man, who had brought with him more then eight thouland Horfe; the opinion was, that hee had in his Armie four core thousand Horie, and a hundred thousand fout-men. Our Prince Ta- the Armie of merlan had in his Armie about fix-score thousand Horse, and a hundred and fifty thousand men Tamerlan. on foot, but not fo skilfull in points of warre as those of the Mosconite : for our Estate had long enioyed peace, and our Souldiers were indeed trayned up in discipline of warres, but not in the practice thereof. The order of Tamerlan was this; that is, he caused all his Armie to bee ditti- The order of

60 ded into fquadrons, each conflitting of fixe thousand Horse, except his owne, which was of ten Tamerians thousand, to as he made eighteene squadrons, his owne being reckoned which made nineteene. The Auant-guard was conducted by Odmar, who led nine fquadrons, flanked with fortie thoufand men on foot, divided both on the right and left fides, who should shoot an infinite number of Arrowes. The Battell was conducted by Tamerlan, who led ten fquadrons, his owne being

therein closed, and fiftie thousand Foot-men, the best and choicest Souldiers of his whole Armie. Prince Thanau, a kinf man vnto the Prince, led the Arere-ward, with fortie thousand Foot-men, and fixe fquadrons: hee had fome three thouland Horse aduenturers, whom they call Oliaques, in their Tongue, the fame which wee tearme, The forlorne bope.

The Mojeomite did not observe that order, but did fight by double Rankes with Lances, and there was a space to helpe themselues therein, and to breake them, notwithstanding those Nations doe not breake them at all, and they feemed to bee a greater number then wee, making a great noyle. At the length multitude and skill ouercame the force and valour of the Moscountes. the victory bending to the Parthians fide, the which they did pursue hotly. Tamerlan was but the victory benoing to the Farenast line, the Vinder they be personal faint which in the fight to on the fore-head upon the fide of the left eye, and had two Horfes flaint under him in the fight to Tamerlan employed himselfe in giuing God thankes for this victory, after hee had pursued the enemy three leagues; the next day he reviewed his Armie, and found that he had lost of his fide for his part betweene feuen and eight thousand Horse-men, and betweene three and source thoufand Footmen. The Moscounte lost some seven and twenty thousand Foot-men, and betweene fifteene and fixteene thousand Horse-men. This same day was Odmar the safegard of his Prince; but he loft Hally, who was slaine by the blow of an Arrow. The Prince did slacke no time after fo great a victory : He set forward, and came into the borders of the Moscouite. whom he enforced to capitulations, that they should become Tributaries of a hundred thousand Duckets, and should pay all the charges of the War, amounting vnto the summe of three hundred thouland Duckets, he then would lend backe againe all the Prifoners, and withdraw his Armie; 30 that for recuritie hereof they should give him pledges, which should be changed every yeare; ynto all which they agreed. So was this Warre ended to his contentment, returning with glorie vnto the Prince his Father.

Now Tamerlan was received into all his Countries with much honour and triumph. The great Cham of Tartaria, Brother vnto his Father, sent Presents to gratifie him, making offer vnto him of his Daughter in Marriage, and that in marrying of her, hee would cause him to bee acknowledged as Emperour throughout all his Kingdomes, as his next heire, himfelfe being now old, and out of all hope to haue any more Children. Hereupon hee presently tooke his Journey towards him, being in the City of Quanicay, where he was received with all kind of Triumph and Magnificence; there did he shew himselve brave in all manner of gallant Showes and Com- 30 bats, as well in jeft as in earnest. And as these Nations are full of vanitie, and desirous to make hew of their strength and agilitie, Tamerlan carryed away the Prize therein, whether it were in shooting neere with his Bow, or in changing Hories in the middelt of the courses, or in breaking an Iron in running at the Quintaine; he made enery one wonder at his dexteritie, and was crowned the fixt day after his comming thither with the joyfull confent of all the Subjects of the Emperour his Vncle, and of all the Court. After that, he married the Emperours Daughter, de-Marriage with firing first to bee crowned before the Marriage, to the intent that none should thinke that the the great char Crowne came voto him by meanes of her, but by succession, the Daughters not at all succeeding into Empires. It was also to assure his estate, and having remayned in that place by the space of two moneths, hee returned from thence with his Wite to Samercand, in which Citie hee de-40 lighted greatly to remayne, because the situation thereof was very faire; and for that the Citie is accompanied with a faire River, which caufeth great Traffque, and maketh it richer then any Citie within that Countrey. Odmar alone was called by him, at fuch time as the great Cham his Vncle did impart vnto him his Affaires : and among ft other matters, he propounded vnto him the Enterprize of China, promifing him affiftance and ayde, and giuing him to vnderstand how

This may bee

of the Citte of

The Tartarian

Tanerlas his

necessarie it was to undertake this Warre for the better assuring of his estate, seeing the King of China had much gone beyond his ancient bounds. He hal in his Court a Christian whom he loued much, and every one greatly respected, named Axalla, a Gennoic by birth, brought vp from his youth about his person. This man principally did stirre him vp vnto great Enterprizes, and not withstanding his Religion, hee trusted 30 him. Now he had all Religion in reuerence, so as it did worship one onely God, Creator of all things. He often said, that the greatnesse of Divinitie consisted in the sundry kindes of people which are under the Cope of Heauen, who ferued the same diversly, nourshing it selfe with diverfitie, as the nature was divers where it had printed his Image, God remayning, notwithftanding, one in his Essence, not receiving therein any diversitie. This was the reason that mooned which is of all him to permit and grant the vse of all Religions within the Countreyes of his obedience, alwhich not all mines provided (as I faid before) that they worshipped one onely God. He determined to make Warre with the King of China (who is called the Lord of the World, and Childe of the Sunne) Boile. Warre with the Aing of Come (Which Sealed the World begin the Jame, hee fent who the faid moueable populations of King of China, for to demand right for fome Countreyes (which they call Hordas) abiding places, which this Prince of China had vsurped long before, and even the passages of a River 69 A will builded called Tachy, which is beyond his limits, which are Walls which are betweene the Kingdomes of brehe Kingoi the great Cham, and of our Tamerlan, builded of purpole by this King of China, to defend him from the Roades of the Tartarians, and forces of our Prince, to as this was begun with the aduice of the

great Cham, and for his benefit as well as for the Princes. Therefore to accomplish his Enterprize. in the meane-time that he attended for the returne of his Embaffadors, he caused his forces to come forwards from all parts, appointing vnto them for the place of meeting his owneat port built be the Hords of Baschir, where all his Armie assembled and other ayding troupes of the great tote, and per-Cham in the Deferts of Ereimal, at a certayne day, in which place he should joyne with all his hapsnow by Army. The Army of the great Cham consisted of two hundred thousand fighting men, wherein (which may were all the braue men of his Court, who were accustomed vnto the Wars, the Emperour which he a c-use Pole then rais ned, and was old, having greatly increased his limits, and conquered a great Connerey, menuous to as these men were well trayned up in the Wars, and accustomed unto travell and paines. Now them not) and Ic then the Embaffadors which were fent, returne and informe the Prince of the will of file wond by this King Kine of the World) this King of China (who was named fo) who puffed up with waine glorie, repayred 100, was afton fined how any durit denounce Warre against him, making this proud Answere; That Polestime In Tamerian (hould content himfelfe that hee had left him that which hee might have taken from which (pace Tamerian should content humbite that nee mad tert min the winds the might have also the choice, him, and that his Armes and Forces were of another fort, then those of whom he published the also the choice, it this streve it this streve. victorie, to bring thereby terrour vpon his Neighbours.

This Answere being heard, our Prince marched directly vnto the Army, and gaue order for une dpart of the consevance of victuals from all parts, fent to haften forward his Confederates, emparted the their Empire Answere vnto the Emperour by Embassadours dispatched from him, caused the boldnesse of the conquired be-King of China to be published, to make manifest vinto all the World the just heffe of his cause; fore by Cublai, 20 Before his departure he went to take leaue of his Father, who endued with a fingular and Fabet seems the

therly affection, faid he should neuer fee him againe, and that he hastened vnto his last reft, and Father and having made folemne Prayers over the Prince his Sonne for his profestitie, kiffing him a thought he Sonne. fand times, drew off his Imperiall Ring, and gaue it vnto him, not asking whether his Journey tended : and calling Odmar, he bade him farewell, recommending his faithfulnefle vitto his Sone Then he departed and drew towards Samarcand, where the Empresse his Wife remayned: whom he carryed with him as is the custome of that Nation, and after he had (being Religious) wifited the Tombe of his Servant Hally, hee caused his soule three dayes to bee prayed for, according to the Rites of his Law : whereupon he presently departed , having taken order for the well go. Sames made uerning of his Kingdome in his abience, committing the charge thereof vnto Samera man well Gouernour of 3C practited in Affaires, and he who had the charge of our Prince in his youth. So then lie marched Sachetay in Taforward in the middeft of his Army, which confifted but of fiftie thousand Horse, and one hundred thousand men on foot, relying principally on the Forces of the great Cham his Vncle; Who Tamerlan his about all defired this War : he did not forget to give in charge, that the rest of his Forces should Armie marbe readie vpon the first Commandement, as soone as he should be joyned with the forces of the thing against great Cham, and marching forwards he had stayed by the way by reason of some difference retire the King. which had surprized him through changing of the Ayre, as the Physicians affirmed. But yet, notwithstanding the forces which Catiles, Captayne of the Army of the great Chair conducted. went daily forwards. Now the newes was spred into an infinite number of places of his distemperature, yet did he not neglect to fend vnto the great Cham, and often aduertize him of

40 the estate of his health, to the end the same should not cause any alteration, the which hee did fore-fee by reason of his preferment vnto this Empire, by the great Cham his Vncle: and hee was in doubt of a certayne Lord named Calix, who was discontented therewith, and had not as yet neither gratified nor acknowledged him as all the other fubiects had done. Now concerning his delay, it was by fundry diverfly interpreted; some said that hee had hin

aduertized of some vproare to be attempted, when he should be farre seuered from thence, and had passed ouer the Mountaynes of Pasanfu, and that Calix stayed upon nothing else, infomuch as the Companies of the great (bam were gone forwards, even beyond the Mountaynes, having passed the River of Mean, and were encamped at Boupron, the which Calix understanding, The confortathought he should have the meanes to worke his enterprize. Thereupon having affembled great cit of Calixa-

50 store of his most faithfull followers, he tooke counsell with them, that this was the meanes to let in his abouerthrow the purposes of Zachetay, who would reigne ouer, and bring them under his Empire: sence, & that feeing their Prince had bin so badly minded as to do the same of his own mind without calling of them which had interest in that election, that now was the time to assure their libertie, which was in doubt to be loft, & caufed also a rumor to be spred of the ficknes of this Prince. that the great Cham was old, the greatest part of his forces, far separated from him , forthwith dispatching a Messenger vnto the great Cham their Prince, to assure him that they bent not their forces against him, but were his faithful and obedient s. biects: but they armed themselus, because they would not be gouerned by the Parthians, their ancient enemies. Thus Calix thought greatly to trouble him, when he rose in Armes against him, and did thinke that he had already affaulted 60 the Wall which the King of China had made against the Tartarism. As soone then as the Prince was adjustized of the pretences of Calax thus discouered, hee marched one dayes Iourney for-

ward, to the end he might approach vnto Calibes, and impart the same vnto him, what face so-

euer Caliber fet on the matter, he harkened what would become of Calix, that hee might likewife make some commotion; there was left with him to command ouer the Parthians, the

prayled in a Pagan and Infidell, but not in a Chrift n

145

Prince of Thanais, without whom he could not doe any thing, for that heeled the Auanteard. Thus was the Army deuided in two parts; the King of China remayning long before he was adnertized of all this, and thought he had all the forces both of the Tartarians and Parthians you Good direction his Armes, to as this was of no small importance to favour our Affaires: for Tamerlan had eigecially given commandement, that the passages which are easily gotten, might as diligently bee kept, to the end that the King of China should not be advertized of the tumult. Then Tamerlan fer forward his Auantgard vider the leading of Odmar: hee promifed with himfelfe fhortly a happie fuccesse in his Affaires, and aduertized the Emperour of all: but it came vnto him when he was ficke. And furely it was high time for Tamerlan to march forward, or elicali had beene revolted, fo leaving his Footmen, he made great lournies. Now during the time that he had bin 10 aduertized, and made his abode to confult, which was the space of two monet is: Calix having presented himselfe with a hundred thousand fighting men before Cambalu, a very great Citie. and chiefe of the Prouince of Catago, the Inhabitants thereof came out to meete him, and did also receive him with all the joy that might be.

Now whilst our Army marched towards Cainda, and from thence vnto Calatia, whether our Army went eafily, looking for the Forces of his Natine Countrey of Zachetay, to come and joyne with him : he did not yet forget to fend forward daily of our Souldiers towards Cambain. so as they supposed all our Forces to be on the necke of them already, which gaue great terrour to as they supposed an our roccessor or on the necker or them arready, which gain great terrour write the people. Cather perceitaing that the people did repent, here thought beft to withfliam himselfe out of Cambalas, determining to oppose himselfe against Tamerlus, and fent for his 20 power from all places, putting all vpon the event and hazard of a battell. He drew out of Combala full fiftie thousand men, as well Burgesses, as Souldiers which were there in Garrison, hauing wonne all the Captaynes which the old Emperour had placed there in Garrison, amounting to the number of thirty thousand men, and him that commanded ouer them, who had conferted vnto the revolt of this great Citie. To make it short, having affembled all his Forces, he had fourescore thousand Horse, and a hundred thousand Footmen, the which hee had gathered together from all parts. Our Army then marched with all diligence, in fuch fort as certaine Scouts which were two thousand Horse, had newes of the Armie of Calix, the which came forwards directly towards vs, whereof they caused the Emperour to be certified speedily, who sent this ther two thousand Horses more, to the end they should keepe the passage of a River called Brore, 30 by the which our victuals were conveyed vnto the Armie, and allo for to winne alwayes time, the Prince knowing right well that the motions of Ciuil Warres bee furious at the beginning. and that it is the best to result them slowly, drawing them alwayes out at length if it be possible. For the people in the end acknowledging their faults, their meanes and money fayling them, and oftentimes victuals also. On the contrary side in a Royall Army none of all this doth happen, where all things are fauourable, and the Souldiers well disciplined, obedience and order beeing wisely observed. Then had the Emperour the guiding of his owne purposes, for he had received commandement from the Emperour his Vncle, to hazard therein all for all, deliuering vp into his hands the lafegard of his life and estate, that he might thereby end his dayes in peace, willing him likewise to punish this arrogant fellow and his partakers. By this meanes came forces from 40 all parts vnto Tamerlas; but on the contrary part, the Enemies Army was then in his chiefest force, and began to feele the want of victuals.

Calix was of the age of fortie, he was a Captayne renowmed with the great Cham, hee was one of the chiefest in dignitic and place, and they had alwayes respected him within Tartare as a perion most worthy of the Empire, if the glory of Tamerlan, and his reputation had not so far excelled. The Armies began to be viewed the one of the other about eight of the clock in the morning, where there were very many skirmishes before they came vnto the mayne Battayle (according to the fights of these Nations) it was a great Plaine wherein they met at that time, with like aduantage on eyther part; Odmar led the Auantgard, wherein there was fortie thoufand Horse, and threescore thousand Foot-men; he made three Squadrons, whereof hee set for-50 ward one before him that began the Battayle. Tamerlan marched in the same order, but his Squadrons were much stronger, the Foot-men both of the Auantgard and of the Battayle were on the right and left wings. Tamerlan had drawne out fixe thousand Parthian Horse, and two thousand Tartarian for the Arier-ward, and had committed the charge thereof vnto a faithfull Seruant of his called Axalla (a Gennois borne) a man of great judgement, his vnderstanding being good and quicke, and a Captayne in great estimation amongst the Souldiers, although hee worshipped God in another manner then weedid, and was a Christian. And hee had many of them with him, whom he caused to come from the Georgians, and from Pont Euxin, who fought with great agilitie; this day did heeshew his great sidelitie and courage vnto his Prince. (alix on the other-fide, who was a well spoken man, was encouraging his Souldiers to fauour his fortune, and the libertie of his Nation : he had divided his troupes into three mayne Battayles 69 onely, his Foot-men upon the right hand, his owne person was in the middelt of the mayne Barrayle, with many Foot-men which compaffed him round about (according as wee vie to

Many Chri-

CHAP. 8.S. 2. Calix taken prisoner and beheaded. Tarnerlan welcommed.

In the end, valiantly fighting, he fell into Axallas hands, which with one voyce he proclaymed through all his Campe, which ouerthrew the courage of all his Souldiers. Hee was kept vntill cally taken the next day, and was judged by all the Couniell worthy of punishment; whereupon Tamerlan prisonerby cauled his head to bee smitten off, the which hee sent to bee presented who the Inhabitants of Cambalu: he caused the like to be done vnto all the chiefe Leaders, not for crueltie, but for necefficie, knowing very well, that the meanes to cut off the Foot of civil warres, is to punish the Heads of the same, for they be Hydras which grow vp too fast.

Cataio, Cambalu ; TAMERLANS expedition into China, entring the Wall,

conquering the King, and disposing of the Countrey, and returne to Cataio.

Fter this the Armie marched into the Kingdome of Cataio, a Countrey rich in graffe, and in all kinds of pastures, abounding with great quantitie of Beasts, and People, which knew not what warre meant. The Prince gaue commandement that these people should not be accounted as Enemies, but his good Subjects, that hee would vie all the Cities well, as Cangi, Sochgi, Gonza, Tagni, Togara, Congu, which had revolted, and were come to sue for pardon at his hands, in humbling themselves before him; the which he granted 20 vnto them, enjoyning them onely to prouide fufficient victuals for his Armie: which was of no small importance for the appealing of others, who had put all their hope in extremitie, which is in loging their owne lives to make others doe the like and efpecially the Inhabitants of fambals had taken this resolution : but being informed of the Emperours clemency, changed their opinions. In the meane while our Armie daily approched, and at fuch time as we came neerest, the more did the feare of all the Citie increase, infomuch as the Prince was advertifed daily from those which favoured his fide, of all things within the Citie, and he was affured that every one determined to obey the Conqueror, and to doe what foeuer he commanded. The which being knowne vnto the Prince, he left all his Armie at Gonfa, and himselfe went directly vnto the Citie of Cambalu, where all things were made quiet, by the meanes of thirtie thousand Soul- Theordinarie 30 diers, being the ordinarie Garrison, whom hee caused to enter thereinto before him, and two Garrison as

houres after entred into the same himselfe, being received with great magnificence not yeelding Cambalu of as yet to pronounce the word of pardon, referring all vnto the Emperour, and to the ordinarie course of Iustice. He stayed for the returne of one of his Fauourites, whom he had sent vnto the Emperour, to carry him newes of the victorie, and of the death of Calix, and that the chiefe of this Faction remayned prisoners with him; also to know what Justice the Emperour would appoint to bee inflicted on those Citizens, which were the first beginners of the regult of this Citie: for the Prince being defirous to be efteemed mercifull, and to win love within this great Citie, would not execute justice of himselfe, nor in his owne name, but by the Emperour his Vncle, whom hee did gratifie herein, leaving the authoritie wholly vnto himselfe, and by this

40 meanes hee was not efteemed cruell. Thus the Prince after hee had remayned here eight dayes. departed. He was not many dayes journey from the Citie before he received tydings, how the great Cham his Vncle, willed that justice should bee executed on them which were the first Moouers of this revolt; the which was executed accordingly in the name of the Emperour, and by his speciall ministers; in such fort, that as the people accused the crueltie of the Emperour, they commended the mercy of Tamerlan. Thus was this warre brought vnto an end, to the great honour and reputation of Tamerlan.

As soone as our Prince was returned vnto his Army where hee found Odmar, who there attended his comming, hee was received of his Souldiers, and with a loud voyce called by all his Captaines and Souldiers; Most great Emperour and most victorious, as they are accustomed to Tamerlan wel-50 doe amongst the Tartarians. The Princeafter he had long discoursed with his Captaines both of commed vato

the beautie and greatnesse of the Citie of Cambalu, hee arrived at his Tent, where after hee had his Armie, declared vnto Odmar in what fort all things had passed at Cambalu: he asked his aduice, whe strange acclather nee should goe and visit the Emperour his Vicle. Odmar well perceived that the Prince defired it, and called vnto his remembrance the honour which hee had received when hee was at Quinzai, and that hee would have beene very willing to spend the Winter with the Empresse, staying for the Spring for to returne vnto the enterprise of China, with a long speech distwaded him. The Emperour answered him, that he had ever knowne his fillelitie and love, and that the came of his fadnesse was, for that hee did not find in himselfe abilitie to recompence the same : and that when he thought to give himselfe some ease, then was the time hee must in stead of the

6: delicacies and pleafures of Quinzay, make the Defarts of Cipribit the refting place from the trauailes of his new victorie: that it was ended, and his purposes determined: I have also heard the Prince fay, that Odmar did not speake vnto him like an earthly but divine man, and that he verily beleeved that God by his meanes did call him back from some misse-hap which would have light upon him, to make his glorie increase the more. Now, the rumour was alreadie

Tamerlan bie

fpread ouerall, that the Princes determination was to goe and wift the Emperour his Vncle. the which tickled enery man with defire to returne into his Countrey, hoping to miny the Iweetnesse of his natine soyle. When as commandement was given for a generall review of the whole Armie: where the Emperour fpake vnto his Soukliers in this manner: Wee bane bee nine (my fauthfull Souldiers) an enterprise to goe and assault the King of China, who harb of late repulfed even bezond the Mountagnes the Tattatian name; but wee were hindered to our great griefe by Apon his going the foolish rashnesses of (alix, and were driven to turne the bridle for to punish him, whereun you have all affifted mee. It greeneth mee that I cannot as well bragge of the fresh sportes of a stranger, as I may Rango, thins. value (by the meanes of your weapons) of those our onfaithfull Citizens; and in times pass with your owne selves making tryall of my first Armes against the boldwesse of the fierce Molcounce, al- 10 though for this last cuil victorie I am further indebted unto you, for your greater endeuour, and the haz arai g of your tersons being much greater, so were they our owne people, who would not acknow. ledge vs , whereof I cannot freake without fredding of teares , defiring rather to burie such a vittorie, what glorie and honour seener wee bane gotten thereby. Neither doe I recount these things unto you, but for to manifest that I forget not your fathfulnesse, and the great trausale you have endured with mee. Wee must not therefore becmearie, but must turne our meapons against those which thinke that wee are greatly troubled, whereas wee are victorious. Wee have left our Companions, who have temportized to beare the event and successe of our affaires, all our munitions bee there; wee must in temportees to orate to e enem and pressile by the adjunct, we are management to exect, we may in that place (my Sculders and frondly Followers) palls over the roll of Winter, our Companions looks for vs. The Enemie is scure and looks that of or vs. as this scale on the year; if we be reviewed 30 that our Armie which is there is not sufficient for offence, but onely for defence. Tou ball receive donble pay, the better to furnish you against the inturie of cold : and as wee shall bee clothed with double garments, I hope wee shall bee also apparelled with double olorie. Let us march on merrily, I my selfe will goe with you, and bee companion of your glorie. After hee had thus spoken vnto his The crieofthe Souldiers, they all cryed; One God in Heauen, and one Emperour on the Earth : and bowing Souldiers vp- downe all their heads in token of humilitie, they shewed how agreeable they were to obey that on the Empe- which he commanded.

China fortie

Perhaps this

ancient wall,

of which the

but fome o-

ther berwise

tho c parts of

Cathan and

Chinois write.

Was not the

Thus enery one returned into his Tent, where they abode yet eight dayes more. The Prince fent back againe Zamai vinto Sachetar with fome fine and twentie thouland Horfe, and fiftie thouland Foot-men, for the safetie of his estate in those parts. Thus after prayers were said, 30 all the Armie being affembled together in the presence of the Prince (according to the custome of our Emperours) cur Armie began to march forward. Hee forgat not likewile to dispatch one vnto the Emperour his Vncle, to give him understanding of all this resolution, the which hee very well liked of. The Prince by the same Messenger did beseech him, to fend voto him in the Spring of the yeare some fiftie thousand men to repayre his Armie, and certayne money by the King of also for the payment of his men of Warre, which hee granted him. Moreover, the condulenguis ling. Eting of good flore of warlike munition, and plentie of victuals for to renew ours : for this warre was principally enterprifed for the profit and greatnesse of the Tariarians, and for the importance which the loffe of the Lordships of Paguin and Quifu was vnto them, whereby the King of China had greatly strengthened and affured his estate, in fo much as hee might at his 40 pleature enter upon the Tartarians, and the Tartarians could not enterprile against him without great forces, for that hee had caused a wall to bee made betweene the spaces of the Mountagnes, which was fortie leagues long, so as they were defended hereby from the ordinarie incursions. the which continually did greatly enrich them, because they brought much Cattell through the Maner, which fame, wherein the Countrey of China doth greatly abound, by reason it is fittated in a tempethe Taster has rate ayre, being neither too hot nor cold. This was the cause that made the Emperour his Vicle mag gotten to delire this warre; whom our Prince, according to his dutie, would to the vttermost of his in Polas dayes, power gratifie, as also his new Subjects.

So wee began to march, and in thirtie eight dayes wee arrived at Cipribit, the Armie having the Change re- found great discommodities: there had wee newes of Calibes, who was very glad to understand cour; the Tar- how the affaires had passed : hee came to visit the Prince, who shewed vnto him a very good tarismilii hol- countenance, and gaue him particular underthanding of his determination, and underthood at ding Quinta large of Calibes, all that had pailed within the Kingdome of China. The next day the Prince ex tome other parise of Many mounted on horse-back, and came vnto Pazanfou, where the forces commanded by Calibes were or china, as at that prefent, the which had often fought with and tryed the forces of the Chinais: but found this floric (if shem much interiour vnto their owne. The Emperour caused a generall review to bee made of all the forces which were vinder Caliber, and after he beheld the countenances of these Souldiers at the forces which were value powers, and to receive money, every one crying, throughout all their rankes, he cauted them to muiter, and to receive money, every one crying, every port.

The Prince of God fame the victoriom and invincible Emperour, according to their cultome.

The Prince of Thursis (who commanded the Armie in Cauber abience, going to meet a sorten-netial ortio [180] with great diligence had marked the Wall, and the places by the which hee might enter by 62 the Mountains force, and fent many Spyes into the Country of China, by certayne little wayes that were withperor feruice, in the Mountaynes, who aduertifed him of all. Hee had also gayned through his courtesse a Lord of the same Mountaynes (called the Lord of Vauchefu) who ruled a great Countrey, with

whom he had fo well profited, that he made him defirous of a new Master, and to submit hims telfe vnto the Emperour, receiuing daily great discommoditie by the warres which the Tortarians and Chinois made : to as he comming to visit the Prince of Thanais , hee assured him of his defire to doe the Prince feruice, and to helpe him in the warre against the Chinois, the which the Prince of Thanais had wifely concealed from Calibes. But as foone as the Prince was arrived. he imparted the same vnto him, the which made Tamerlan desirous to have some speech with him, to that as foone as the Prince had received commandement from the Emperour, hee fent vnto Vauchefu to advertile him of the Princes arrivall, and of the commandement which hee had received: whereof the other was very glad, and having appointed a day, the Prince tooke Ic his journey (without flirring of the Armie) into the campe of the Prince of Thanais, which was neere vnto the River of Languenne, whither hee had caufed this forefaid Lord to come,

Then the Prince after he had heaped upon him gifts of faire Horses, rich Furres, and other rare things, he willed him to vtter that which he had to fay vnto him. This Lord fpake then in this manner : Know my Lord , that it is but leffe of time to thinke , that with your Armes you should The speech of bee able to force the Wall, which the Chinois have built against the incursions of your subjects, the De- the Mountaine fendants have too much advantage therein. I doubt not of your Souldiers stoutnesse and of their con. Lord vato Te. rage . I know you have conquered many Nations with them , and that what soener you command mertan. them, they will die or doe the same. I know you have great and wife Captaines with you, that

20 your Person is onely of all the World worthy to command them : but all this will bee but in vaine apainst the Wall of the Chinois, where I assure you there are fiftie thousand men to keepe it, and you cannot stay there so short a time, but there will come thither siftie thousand more, led by the Xianxi who bath such a commandement. The King of China will bimselse march forward also. who will gine youbattell with two hundred thousand Horse and as many Footmen. After you have fought, I believe that the fortune and valour of your men may obtayne the viltorie, the which will cost you deare: but for to shew unto you how much the reputation and mildnesse of your men hath baund mee onto them, I will show you a meanes by the which you may cause siftie thousand men to onter into the Kingdome of China, whom I my selfe will condust; and they shall bee on them which keepe the Wall, in a manner as soone as they shall perceive it. In the meane time you shall cause your 30 men to goe unto a place that I will tell you, which will bee very discommodious unto the Chinois. by reason of a Mountaine oner against them, which you must cause them to winne : for I assure my selfe, that when they shall perceine your Souldiers to bee passed, they will lose their courage, and you may casily winne the passage for to fauour those men of yours which shall bee passed oner with mee. And for to hew unto you the affection and fidelitie of that I peake, I will deliner into your hands an onely Sonne I have, and two little Daughters with my Wife : I have also one Brother, who I am affured will follow mee to doe you feruice. The Prince having heard this Lord speake, received great ioy thereof, hoping that his affaires thould happily succeede, and this hee kept very secret, for even the Prince of Thanais knew not the meanes that this Lord had, feeing there was onely present the Prince and an Interpreter, and the Prince after hee had thus spoken vn-40 to him, gratifying him with all hee could poffibly, this Lord retyred himfelfe, accompanyed with the Prince of Thanais, who conducted him backe againe with all the honour that might bee. So the Emperour returned from thence into his quarter, and the next day after hee had imparted the whole vnto Odmar, and heard Calibes concerning that which hee had learned of the departing of the King of China, and of his preparation, which was great. This enterprise seeming hard vnto him, after due reuerence yeelded vnto the Prince, hee spake vnto him in this manner : Know my Lord, that I am your Slaue for to obey you : but feeing calibes Orariyou require mee to give you an account of all that I know of the estate of the Kingdome of onvato Prince China, for that I have remayned these fix moneths upon the borders by your commandement, Tomerlan, to hinder them from passing the same, whereby they might hurt your enterprises, I can af-

50 firme vnto you, that the King of China, who raigneth at this present, is of great reputation, and hath increased the limits of his Kingdome more then any of his Predecessors. His strength consisteth in this Wall opposed against vs, the which hee hath caused to bee made by reason of the ordinarie roades of our Nation. I am of opinion, that there bee betweene fiftie and threescore thousand men at the guard of that Wall, men for the most part trayned up in the Garrifons of the King of China, and his best Souldiers, and I know no good meanes to force this Wall without great hazard and much losse of your men. I have understood, that towards the Lake Hogeen you may finde more calle entrance into the Kingdome : after every one had decla- The Lake re i his opinion, hee faid; that hee hoped the great God (the Vnitie, of whom hee would Hogen. maintayne against such Idolaters) and his suft right should answere the reasons which doe con-60 tradict his purpole, and the valiant arme of his Souldiers shall quite overthrow what severe opposeth it selte against the same; and concealed from his Souldiers that which hee held as affored to execute it, to the end, the honour of a happy conducting might be afcribed vnto him onely.

Now, our Prince having fat sfied every one of the Kings and Lords that did accompany him, bee appointed the meeting place for his Armie to bee at a certayne place, where hee meant to

men fent into Chinabya fe-

A fectet way found into Chiduct of the mountaine

Axalla ouerthrew the Chi nois that kept the wall of partition.

The cuftome

of the Chinaia in religion.

wals of China.

A good aduer.

choose fiftie thousand fighting men, and deliver them vnto the commandement of the Prince of Thanais, vinto whom he joyned the Lord Axalla 2 Genuois (for that hee knew him to bee difcreete) for to accompanie him, commanding him to give credite vnto him, for his experience and ridelitie. The day appointed being come, the Lord with his brother came to the Emperor. having viewed the place againe, and found it to bee forceable and fit to passe, assuring the Prince once againe of the happy fuccesse of their enterprise, and the Prince beeing assembled with them to conferre together, resolved in the end, that his person with all the army should approach vnto the walles directly ouer against Quaguifon, in which meane space the Fiftiethousand fittle thousand men should march forwards vnto the place appointed, and where they were affured to passe, conducted by the Chinois Lord, vinder the charge of the Prince of Thanais and Io Axalla. The Emperour hauing not failed to deliuer vnto them the best fouldiers of his armie. and having fet downe the order by them to bee observed, hee willed that the Lord Axella should leadetwentie thousand of them, and should march the first, the rest led by the Prince Prince of That of Thanais, and that every one should have one of those Lords to guide them, that by their nais and Axalla meanes the enterprise might bee more safely directed. So having marched ten leagues, they arrived at the passage, the which was won, not finding any man there to resist them : and having taken a light repalt, they beganne to march forward other ten leagues which yet remained, where the Chinois were, who suspected no such thing, having onely an eye vnto them na, by the con- which marched for to force their walles, affuring themselves to have the mastry, considering their advantage.

But it fell out much otherwise, for even at the very same time the Chinois did perceive the Princes armie to approach vnto their wall, as foone did they discry Axalla with twenty thousand men, who advanced forward being followed by the Prince of Theraise with thirtie thousand fouldiers chosen out of the whole army, who without any communication fet vpon the Chinois, which came prefently vnto them, having left a certaine number of their Campe for the guard of the wall : but they were prefently won by the footmen led this day by Odmar, who passed ouer so as the Chinois were cut off betweene our Armies. When Axalla began the battaile, he ouerthrew them in a manner all, the Prince of Thenais not hazarding himfelf therein:there was great riches gotten this day, the King of China his Coulin (whom he called King) was taken priloner: There was a great quantity of gold amongst 30 them, as well on their armes as on their horse and furniture: they shewed no great stoutnesses.

The newes heereof being come vnto the King of China, who at that present time was at Quanton, brought wnto him great aftonishment, for that hee judged it a thing that could not possibly come to passe, you might have seene every one filled with fright, teares and cries, bewailing the lofte of their friends. The King gathering together fouldiers from all parts (as the custome is of these people) caused all the Priestes and such as had the charge of holy things to come vnto him, and after exhortations vsed, he(as their head) commanded them to offer facrifice vnto their Gods, of whom the Sunne is the principall commanding in heaven (whom they hold opinion to bee the chiefest caufe of their being, accounting it immertall and impassible, moung it felfe ones, for the benefit of liming creatures) this did hee command to bee 43 observed through out all his Cities; and the second thing was, that every one able to beare armes should mount on horsebacke, and come vnto the King at Paguinfon, whither hee doubted that we would go, because it was one of the neerest townes upon the borders.

I have forgotten to declare that this Lord who had the charge to conduct fiftie thousand men vnto the frontiers, at fuch time as they which were there had need thereof, was foone in a The Emperous readinesse, and came to oppose himselfe against the Princes Armie which entred, and being skilfull in the wayes of the countrey, troubled much the Armie : for a great number of his men were on horsebacke. The Prince determined to beate downe all the wals, the better to affure his returne, as also all the fortresses which were there vpon all the passages, all of them having The mountain yeelded themselues after his victorie, the wing himselfe very courteous vnto the people of these 50 Lord rewarded mountaines, he gaue vnto this Lord a small portion of land, wherein there be seuen or eight good townes, Archy, Ymuly, Faliquien, Fuly, Cohensen, Qualy, Puly Quianlu, who came and delivered vp their keyes vnto him, being neighbours vnto this Lord, and gaue him the gouernment of the frontier prouince of Xianxy, shewing himselfe to be a Prince of his word, and acknowledging the notable services the which this Lord had done him. He referred the honouring of his brother untill he had meanes to doe the same : the Prince had received newes how that the King of China allembled his forces & marched forwards, and that he was there in his owne perion, & that he strengthened also his Cities which are sufficiently fortified, and vpon these doub's hee thought good to have the advice of his Captaines, and after fundry opinions, his refolution was, to leave nothing behind him, and to assault some famous Citie, and take it, by meanes where- 60 of he may nourish his Armie, and secondarily call the enemie vnto battell. The which the conqueror should alwaies seeke, & the defender the latest he can hazard the same. For that it is a very doubtfull thing to commit themselves vnto a battell, his dutie being rather to delay, vndermining the conqueror by lengt hand by wearinesse, and light skirmishes, then to fight in open field.

CH AP. 8. S. 2. Tamerlans march in China. Description and siege of Paguinfu. 140

It was concluded, and the aduice of enery one was, to conquer the Countrey by little and lierle fo as their enterprise was to draw directly vnto Paguinfou, which as it was a great Citie. and one of the chiefest, so is it also frongly fortified, and well replenished with people

Then he dispatched Odmar with fourteene thousand Horse, to advance forward and summon the same, as for to hinder victuals from being convayed thereinto out of the champaine Countrev: to the end that the Cattell remayning in the fields, should be a meanes to maintayne and nourish his Armie. I had forgotten to tell you, that for the acknowledging of the Lord Avalla Avalla made his feruices, the Prince had made him Captaine generall of all his Foot-men, which was one Captaine ge of the principall honours of the Armie. Hee caused the said Lord Aralla to march after Odmar, neval of all to with all the Foot-men, which was very neere a hundred and fifty thousand men, well travned the foot-men;

up in the warres, and good expert fighters. He marched himfelfe immediatly after with all his Horsemen, Artilleries, Engines, and other munitions belonging vnto warre, directly vnto Pa. Paguinfou bequinfon. Odmar did ride twentie French leagues this day, fo as he arrived there contrary to their beged expectation, looking rather for the King then for the Enemie, and having taken much Cattell: wherewith the Countrey greatly aboundeth, he pitched his Tents, leauing the Citie betweene him and vs , and stayed for his footmen, who marched forwards in the meane space, sending continually vnto the warre, for to wearie the Enemie. This endured three or foure dayes, vntill our footmen led by this braue Christian Gennois, shewed themselves in the Playne of Paouinfon. Then the Citie was summoned to yeeld obedience vnto the Emperour, or else they 20 should receive the Law of the Conquerour. They made answere, that they were determined to line and die in the feruice of their Prince.

Now you must understand that it was fortie yeeres, or thereabouts, fince the Father of the Note these King which raigneth at this present ouer the Chinois, had conquered it from the Empire of the changes of Tartarians, and having driven out all the Inhabitants, they had planted therein new Colonies, the Tartarians the Tartarians Tartarians, and nature out as the first remembrance, but only they of the flat Counthe Tart
for thorowly, that there were but few of the first remembrance, but only they of the flat Counthere is the tart
the Tartarians, and nature out as the tart remembrance, but only they of the flat Counthere is the tart remembrance, but only they of the flat Counthere is the tart remembrance, but only they of the flat Counthere is the tart remembrance, but only they of the flat Counthere is the tart remembrance, but only they of the flat Counthere is the tart remembrance, but only they of the flat Counthere is the tart remembrance, but only they of the flat Counthere is the tart remembrance, but only they of the flat Counthere is the tart remembrance, but only they of the flat Counthere is the tart remembrance of the tart reme trev. and imall walled Townes, who came from all parts and brought their Reyes, most willingly submitting themselues vnto the obedience of the Prince : so as there was great abundance of victuals within our Armie: and if wee had beene within our owne Countrey, there could not haue come greater store; a thing which made our Prince hope for a happie successe, there 20 being no other difficulty which for the most part can ouerthrow a great Armie asours was, and withdraw them from their enterprise. And thus the Citie of Paguinfon is belieged, and our footmen camped round about within an Arrowes shot of the walls. They within the Citie did vie great endeuour for their defence, and our Prince omitted nothing for their offence.

Axalla having viewed a great and strong Suburbe, which was in length almost halfe a league. Supposed that those of the Citie kept no watch there: that this must needs bee, for that they would not make him obstinate; he had a determination to winne it in the night, and having imparted it vnto the Prince, vpon the first watch all his men were ready, all of them having made prouision of Ladders, and of such things as are necessary for winning thereof with handblowes, and having affaulted it on fundry parts, after the fight had continued two houres. 40 Axalla remay ned the Conquerour, and cut in pieces eight thousand men at the least which were A great Subwithin the same: the spoyle was great, there were many of Axalla his men slayne of one side, urbe wonne by

which was that by the which they doubted to be affaulted. But on the other fide, by the which Axalla in the it was taken, there was scarce any one slayne. The taking of this Suburbe did greatly assonish night

those of the Citie, who had marked the lustinesse of our men, and beganne to enter into doubt of their fafety, which vnto this day they accounted as most affured. Now you must vnderstand The figuation

of their ratery, which was of hard accesse, being seated upon a Playne, the which was of the chit the situation of the Citie was of hard accesse, being seated upon a Playne, the which was Pagains enuironed round about with Mountaines, one of them onely approaching the Citie, which ouerlooked it on front vpon the North fide, where was a Valley by the which they possed, and there did runne a Riuser: on this fide wee the Suburbe fituated which had been taken, foa as the means to fuccour the Citie was flopped, our Souldiers keeping the paffages of these Mountaines, the 50 which were in the old time the borders of the Kingdome : for Pagninfon was once gouerned by the Tartarians, which kept it for a defence against the Chinois, but had loft the same, and these Mountaines were the limits of China against the aforesaid Tartarians, who governed Paguinfor at that time, fo as these Mountaines were of hard accesse, and there remayned no other way but on the fide of the Suburbe, the which a River compaffeth about, running all along the fide of a bordering Mountaine, upon the which wee caused many bridges to be built, for to haue thereby a way for to forcour our Souldiers, which kept the pallages of the Mountaines on the enemies tide.

In this meane time the King of Chinaes Armie approached which was very great, as they brought vs word daily, the Prince determining to goe in person and meet with the Enemie, ac-60 companied with his principall Horf-men, and to leave the greatest part of his Foot-men at the siege, whereunto he had a great desire, omitting nothing that might wearie the belieged, who defended themselues couragiously. So the Prince beganne to batter, causing his Engines to ap- The sege of proach; as Rammes, and other munitions: infomuch as the Citie was affaulted en two fides ve- l'aguirfon.

ry couragiously. In the end through the valour of Axalla, who gave an affault with twenty thous

fand of his best Souldiers, he wonne the wall, and lodged there, the Prince having so comman-

ded him to doe, to ftop the heat of the Souldiers from going any further. Now the Princes pur-

pole was to compound for the Citie, and not to force it, for two reasons. The first was, for the

he feared, the Citie being great and rich, that when the Souldiers flould facke it, the Enemie

who wasbut thirty leagues from thence, should come vpon them, and by this meanes his Armie

should be found in diforder, also rich Souldiers neuer serue well: The other was, for that hee

would draw out of that Citie which was rich and wealthy, those commodities which were ne-

ceffary for the fure accomplishing of his enterprise, seeing it was necessary to have such a Citie for to make a Store-house of necessary things for the Armie. Thus although the wall was won, In

the Enemies wanted not courage yet to defend themselves valiantly, looking for ayde according

to the newes they had received, that the Kings Armie marched forward. Whileft thefe things

were in doing, one of our Engines shooting a bullet, flue the Gouernour, whereupon they did

refolue for to yeeld themselues vnto the Princes mercy, sauing their lines, and the Souldiers en-

ioying their horse and weapons. The conditions were agreed upon, and there came out of the

Citie eighteene thouland Souldiers, the Inhabitants remayning in a manner all : there were

therein thirtie thousand Souldiers at the beginning: the siege continued two moneths. The

honour of taking the Citie and the happy successe therein was attributed vnto Axalla to whom

It was concluded, and the aduice of enery one was, to conquer the Countrey by little and little. fo as their enterprise was to draw directly vnto Pagumfon, which as it was a great Citie. and one of the chiefelt, so is it also strongly fortified, and well replenished with people.

Then he diffratched Odmar with fourteene thousand Horse, to advance forward and summon the same, as for to hinder victuals from being convayed thereinto out of the champaine Countrey: to the end that the Cattell remayning in the fields, should be a meanes to maintaine and nourish his Armie. I had forgotten to tell you, that for the acknowledging of the Lord Axalla Malla made nounth has Armie. I had torgottent to ten you, take the state of all his Foot-men, which was one Captaine see of the principal honours of the Armie. He caused the fail Lord dradt to march after Odmen, retail of all of the principal honours of the Armie. He caused the fail Lord dradt to march after Odmen, retail of all of the principal honours of the Armie. He caused the fail Lord dradt to march after Odmen, retail of all the foot-men. with all the Foot-men, which was very neere a hundred and fifty thousand men, well travned up in the warres, and good expert fighters. He marched himselfe immediatly after with all his

Horsemen, Artilleries, Engines, and other munitions belonging vnto warre, directly vnto Pa. Pagninfou beguinfou. Odmar did ride twentie French leagues this day, so as he arrived there contrary to their fieged. expectation, looking rather for the King then for the Enemie, and having taken much Cattell. wherewith the Countrey greatly aboundeth, he pitched his Tents, leaving the Citiebetweene him and vs. and stayed for his footmen, who marched for wards in the meane space, sending continually voto the warre, for to wearie the Enemie. This endured three or foure dayes, votill our footmen led by this braue Christian Gennois, thewed themselves in the Playne of Page

ountou. Then the Citie was fummoned to yeeld obedience vnto the Emperour, or elfe they 20 should receive the Law of the Conquerour. They made answere, that they were determined to

live and die in the feruice of their Prince.

Now you must understand that it was fortie yeeres, or thereabouts, since the Father of the Note these King which raigneth at this prefent ouer the Chinois, had conquered it from the Empire of the changes of Tartarians, and having driven out all the Inhabitants, they had planted therein new Colonies, the Tatters and to thorowly, that there were but few of the first remembrance, but only they of the flat Countrey, and small walled Townes, who came from all parts and brought their Keyes, most willingly submitting themselves vnto the obedience of the Prince : so as there was great abundance of victuals within our Armie: and if wee had beene within our owne Countrey, there could not have come greater store; a thing which made our Prince hope for a happie successe, there 30 being no other difficulty which for the most part can ouerthrow a great Armie as ours was, and withdraw them from their enterprise. And thus the Citie of Paguinfon is belieged, and our foot-

men camped round about within an Arrowes shot of the walls. They within the Citie did vie great endeuour for their defence, and our Prince omitted nothing for their offence. Axalla having viewed a great and ftrong Suburbe, which was in length almost halfe a league. supposed that those of the Citie kept no watch there: that this must needs bee, for that they would not make him obstinate; he had a determination to winne it in the night, and having imparted it vnto the Prince, vpon the first watch all his men were ready, all of them having made prouision of Ladders, and of such things as are necessary for winning thereof with handblowes, and having affaulted it on fundry parts, after the fight had continued two houres.

40 Axalla remayned the Conquerour, and cut in pieces eight thouland men at the least which were A great Subwithin the same: the spoyle was great, there were many of Axalla his men slayne of one side, urbe wonne by which was that by the which they doubted to be affaulted. But on the other fide, by the which Axalla in the it was taken, there was scarce any one slayne. The taking of this Suburbe did greatly astonish nightthose of the Citie, who had marked the luftinesse of our men, and beganne to enter into doubt of their fafety, which vnto this day they accounted as most affured. Now you must vnderstand Thesimation that the fituation of the Citie was of hard accesse, being seated upon a Playne, the which was required enuironed round about with Mountaines, one of them one was provided in the Citie of enuironed round about with Mountaines, one of them one was provided in the Citie of enuironed round about with Mountaines. enuironed round about with Mountaines, one of them onely approaching the Citie, which ouerlooked it on front upon the North fide, where was a Valley by the which they poffed, and there did runne a River: on this fide was the Suburbe fituated which had been taken, fo as the meanes to fuccour the Citie was stopped, our Souldiers keeping the passings of these Mountaines, the

50 which were in the old time the borders of the Kingdome : for Pagninfon was once governed by the Tartarians, which kept it for a defence against the Chinois, but had lost the same, and these Mountaines were the limits of China against the aforesaid Tartarians, who governed Pagainfou at that time, fo as these Mountaines were of hard accelle, and there remayned no other way but on the fide of the Suburbe, the which a River compaffeth about, running all along the fide of a bordering Mountaine, vpon the which wee caused many bridges to be built, for to have thereby a way for to fuccour our Souldiers, which kept the pallages of the Mountaines on the enemies tide.

In this meane time the King of Chinaes Armie approached which was very great, as they brought vs word daily, the Prince determining to goe in perion and meet with the Enemie, ac-60 companied with his principall Horf-men, and to leave the greatest part of his Foot-men at the fiege, whereanto he had a great defire, omitting nothing that might wearie the belieged, who defended themiclues couragiously. So the Prince beganne to batter, causing his Engines to ap- The siege of proach; as Rammes, and other munitions: infomuch as the Citie was affaulted en two fides ve- Paguiofon.

The Citie of Passinfouveelded vnto Tamerlan yoon. the death of their Gouerdxallis choife.

was given the government of the Citie with the Countrey already conquered. But hee befeeched the Prince that it would please him to bestow it vpon some other, and for himselfe heere- 20 ferued the hope of his Master, wherein hee should have part. This answere did greatly content the Prince, for hee greatly defired the fernice of Axalla. Vpon his refufall this charge was beflowed vpon the Prince of Thanais, with the Title of Vice-roy. Now, as I have already told you, our Prince after hee had given such order as was necessary, and advertised his friends in all parts, and aboue all the Emperour, he marched forward, having contented his Souldiers, and made a generall muster of his Armie, as well of the horse as footmen, the which hee found to be diminished of ten thousand men onely. Now, our Prince after he had folemnely called your kind of godli- the Immortall, Inuincible, and Incomprehensible God, and spent one whole day in prayer, wee enterprised to goe on forward, and to goe directly vnto the Enemie, who was at Sintebu, with all his owne forces, and of all his Allies. As foone as he received newes that our Armie was pal- 10 fed ouer the River of Chalifu, the King of China marched directly vnto vs with great magnifichina his mag. cence: there was nothing to bee feene but gold and precious stones in his Armie: hee himselfe was commonly in a Chariot, wherein there was fuch a quantitie of gold and rich ftones, that enery part was full of Diamonds, Rubies, and Pearles.

The King of China was of the age of three and thirtie yeeres, who for the most part had beene

brought up in pleasures, and not in militarie exercises, nor under the bloudie ensigne of Marie

loden with Iron, boyfterous and furious, not with gold, precious flones, and with fuch kinde

of riches: to as he was very infolent in threatnings, brauadoes, and in defying vnto the battaile;

He often faid that we had surprised him, and had not warned him to prepare himselfe, and that

parts, to doe in this manner. Hee had two or three Kings also with him, his Neighbours and

Allies, who marched with the same preparation. The rumour of these riches gaue great courage

to the Souldiers, for they were couetous of iust gayne, as is that gotten by a battaile. So both

our Armies went forward each to approch the other, and there was a Citie yeelded vnto the

Prince called Tunichenoy, the which helped our Armie greatly. The next day, to the end wee

might give occasion vnto the Enemie for to approch neerer, we sent to summon, and at the same

time to take possession of the Citie of Pamiba, the which in advancing forward wee left a little

behinde vs. The King of China had put many men thereinto, and it was a Citie sufficiently well

fortified : from Tianchenoy to Pagninubu there were ten leagues. He aduanced his Armie within

ment of the Enemies comming. The Prince commanded his Armie to take the place for the

battaile, which he had chosen in his indgement with most advantage, and having set downe vn-

to Odmar the order he would have to be observed, he defired to see the comming of this Armie:

a league of the Citie Tianchenoy, about noone the next day they had more certaine aduertife- 50

we had strucken him without speaking any word : for this is the custome of the people in those 40

The King of

neffe.

The custome

Tunicheum.

Pannibu.

so sending before him five or fix thousand Horse as Scouts, hee advanced forward, and Caliber with him. After he had feene this great confused Armie which continually came forward, hee commanded Calibes to retyre himfelfe as foone as they drew neere vnto him, and bring vnto him this great cloud, the which hee hoped soone to disperse. So the Prince returned backe vnto his men for to affure them of the battaile: hee caused all his footmen to bee placed all along by a great Mountayne, so as they had but one head for to doubt. And hee planted great store of Artillerie for the guard of his footmen. I am of opinion, that the Prince had about fix- 60 score thousand footmen, whereof many were armed after the Christian manner, and all they were commanded by fundrie Captaines; but all obeyed Axalla, who commanded them as Generall. Our Horse-men were in battaile array in a great levell Playne, having the Footmen on the

The Citie of Pazuinfou veelded vnto Tamerlen voon the death of their Gouer.

fand of his best Souldiers, he wonne the wall, and lodged there, the Prince having to commanded him to doe, to ftop the heat of the Souldiers from going any further. Now the Princes purpole was to compound for the Citie, and not to force it, for two reasons. The first was, for that he feared, the Citie being great and rich, that when the Souldiers fhould facke it, the Enemie who was but thirty leagues from thence, should come vpon them, and by this meanes his Armie should be found in disorder, also rich Souldiers neuer serue well : The other was, for that hee would draw out of that Citie which was rich and wealthy, those commodities which were neceffary for the fure accomplishing of his enterprise, seeing it was necessary to have such a Citie for to make a Store-houle of necessary things for the Armie. Thus although the wall was won, to the Enemies wanted not courage yet to defend themselves valiantly, looking for ayde according to the newes they had received, that the Kings Armic marched forward. Whileft thefe things were in doing, one of our Engines shooting a bullet, slue the Gouernour, whereupon they did refolue for to yeeld themfelues vnto the Princes mercy, fauing their lines, and the Souldiers enicying their horse and weapons. The conditions were agreed upon, and there came out of the Citie eighteene thousand Souldiers, the Inhabitants remayning in a manner all : there were therein thirtie thousand Souldiers at the beginning: the siege continued two moneths. The honour of taking the Citie and the happy successe therein was attributed vnto Axalla, to whom was given the government of the Citie with the Countrey already conquered. But hee befeeched the Prince that it would please him to bestow it vpon some other, and for himselfe heere- 20 ferued the hope of his Malter, wherein hee should have part. This answere did greatly content the Prince , for hee greatly defired the feruice of Axalla. Vpon his refufall this charge was bestowed upon the Prince of Thanais, with the Title of Vice-roy. Now, as I have already told you, our Prince after hee had given such order as was necessary, and advertised his friends in all parts, and about all the Emperour, he marched forward, having contented his Souldiers, and made a generall mufter of his Armie, as well of the horse as footmen , the which hee found to be diminished of ten thousand men onely. Now, our Prince after he had solemnely called voon the Immortall, Inuincible, and Incomprehensible God, and spent one whole day in prayer, wee enterprised to goe on forward, and to goe directly vnto the Enemie, who was at Sintelin, with all his owne forces, and of all his Allies. As foone as he received newes that our Armie was pal- 30 fed ouer the River of Chalifu, the King of China marched directly vnto vs with great magnifi-China his mag. cence: there was nothing to bee feene but gold and precious stones in his Armie: hee himselfe was commonly in a Chariot, wherein there was such a quantitie of gold and rich stones, that euery part was full of Diamonds, Rubies, and Pearles. The King of China was of the age of three and thirtie yeeres, who for the most part had beene

The custome of the Chinais.

Pannibu.

parts, to doe in this manner. Hee had two or three Kings also with him, his Neighbours and Allies, who marched with the same preparation. The rumour of these riches gaue great courage to the Souldiers, for they were couetous of iust gayne, as is that gotten by a battaile. So both our Armies went forward each to approch the other, and there was a Citie yeelded vnto the Prince called Tunichenoy, the which helped our Armie greatly. The next day, to the end wee might give occasion vnto the Enemie for to approch neerer, we fent to summon, and at the same time to take pollession of the Citie of Panniba, the which in advancing forward wee left a little behinde vs. The King of China had put many men thereinto, and it was a Citie sufficiently well fortified : from Transhenor to Pagninubu there were ten leagues. He advanced his Armie within a league of the Citie Tianchenoy, about noone the next day they had more certaine aduertife. 50 ment of the Enemies comming. The Prince commanded his Armie to take the place for the battaile, which he had chosen in his judgement with most advantage, and having fet downe vnto Odmar the order he would have to be observed, he defired to see the comming of this Armie: fo fending before him fine or fix thousand Horse as Scouts, hee advanced forward, and Calibes with him. After he had leene this great confused Armie which continually came forward, hee commanded Calibes to retyre himielfe as foone as they drew neere vnto him, and bring vnto him this great cloud, the which hee hoped soone to disperse. So the Prince returned backe vnto his men for to assure them of the battaile: hee caused all his footmen to bee placed all along by a great Mountayne, so as they had but one head for to doubt. And hee planted great store of Artillerie for the guard of his footmen. I am of opinion, that the Prince had about fix- 60 The order of fcore thouland footmen, whereof many were armed after the Christian manner, and all they were commanded by fundrie Captaines; but all obeyed Axalla, who commanded them as Generall,

brought up in pleasures, and not in militarie exercises, nor under the bloudic ensigne of Marie

loden with Iron, boysterous and furious, not with gold, precious stones, and with such kinde

of riches: so as he was very insolent in threatnings, brauadoes, and in defying vnto the battaile.

He often faid that we had surprised him, and had not warned him to prepare himselfe, and that

we had strucken him without speaking any word : for this is the custome of the people in those 40

the Princes battaile againft the

Our Horle-men were in battaile array in a great levell Playne, having the Footmen on the

left hand, and on the right was the comming of the Enemie, fo as your the least disfanour that might happen, hee would retyre to bee affitted by his footmen. Wee had foure foore thousand horle: Calibes with the Scythians were in the Auantguard, and had the commandement of thirtie thousand horse, who should receive him at such time as he did draw on the Enemie, as he was commanded. It was divided into three troupes, each one confifting of ten thousand. Odmer had also thirtie thousand horse who should affist him. The Prince remayned in the Arier-ward at the one of the wings of his footmen, which held one of his principall forces : his purpote was to fuffer the threefcore and fix thouland horfe to maintayne the fight against the Barbarians. being led by two good Captaines, and if any of them remayned, the Emperor hoped after of to them to have a good market, by cauling his footmen to march forward, and himselfe with whom

there abode twentie thousand of the best horse, which were sufficient without hazarding his Person for to give a new battaile, if so be that any disfavour should happen vnto them : for hee had understood that this was the custome of the Kings of China, to enclose themselves within the middest of their Chariots with their footmen, and not to hazard themselves but voon the extremitie. So the Enemie fayled nothing at all to march directly vnto Calibes, and all the Atmie marched after following of him and letting voon him, and hee euen as the Seythians are al-wayes accustomed to doe, with his six thousand horse in retyring gaue many charges, killing fome of them, and they likewife killing fome of his men. It was a beautifull light to fee this great Armie march, for it seemed to bee twife as great as ours, therein being an infinite number

20 of armed Chariots, wherein he puthis principall trust against the furie of our Souldiers; fo many gildings of gold and filuer as well in the trappings of their Horfes, as on their Armour, that it elittered, and was of vs all much admired. The Prince who with a troupe of horse did see the The beautie Armie march after Calibes, commended greatly the manner of cafting their men out of the andrichnesse rankes, for to compell this troupe vnto fight, and did fee this Armie come in good order, and he of the King of tryed with his eye to note the place where the Kings Person was, having neere him the Chinais Chinas Armie, Lord to instruct him, who knew well their manner of fighting. Now, they had neither Auantguard nor battaile, but onely an Arier-ward commanded by the King, and inclosed (as I haue faid) with his Chariots : the which being shewed vnto him by this Lord, the Prince turned himfelfe vnto vs, and in our language faid : Tet must wee this day differse this cloud here so gilded, Tamerlan his 30 and the King of China and my selfe must make a partition thereof.

Now, having feene the Enemie sufficiently advanced, and sudging that he had had seene them march a good league, he thought it not convenient to fuffer them for to take breath, nor for to put themselues againe into their order; he sent vnto Calibes for to will him to set forward the fight, and that if those whom he had led with him should be weary, they should come vnto him; but it was not in Calibes power to have this commandement ouef them. For as some as they heard this word of fighting vttered, they required the first charge, with a young Lord, who commanded ouer them, called Zioctabanes, who made appeare vnto the Chinois to what end their flight was, charging very stiffely upon the foremost of the Enemies, the which was an occafion to begin the first fight. And I affure you, there could not be seene a more furious thing, nor 40 any for to fight with more defire to manifest the valour of his Nation, and for to procure honour vnto his Prince. Now, this endured a long houre before the Chinois had ouerthrowne Calibes.

The Prince did see all patiently, saying alwayes, that the great multitude how consused seems The battaile it were, would carry it away from the order and valour of his Souldiers : you could not yet per- betweene the ceiue any alteration in the Princes countenance, Aduerfitie and Prosperitie were so indifferent King of China vnto him. His thirty thousand Horse were all Soythians, who observe not the same order the and Tamerian. Parthians doe. Now, before the Prince retyred with his men, hee did fee the first charge given, Calibes being wounded, retyred himselfe neere vnto the Prince, having with him two thousand horse ioyned together againe, and many more ioyning themselues together necre vnto the Prince, who commanded that they should cure Calibes, viewing the place of his wound, hee

50 caused him to bee conducted behind his footmen, and the other which were hurt with him also. Now, Calibes was not able to pierce through this Armie, being beaten back; but Odmar with almost all the Parthian horse-men, did handle them more roughly, for hee ranne cleane thorow them, and returned by one of the right wings of the Armie, where hee fought most valiantly, and having beaten them back even within the Kings Chariots, he thought that he should not doe wifely to goe about to breake fuch forces.

The King of China comming forward, and the horse-men which had beene broken by Odmar, joyning themselves together for his ayde, Odmar onely remayning in the battaile sent vnto the Prince for the footmen, and for to let forward the Artillerie, and that hee should assure himselfe of the victorie. The Prince, who had already set forward, kept aloose off, and sent 60 vato him fiftie thousand footmen, with a part of the Artillery, guing charge thereof vato Axalla, who forthwith fet forward, having commandement to fet vpon the Chariots, and to make an entrance : he fet forward the Artillery before him, the which did greatly aftonish the enemies : for the Gouernours of the horses, belonging to the Kings Chariots, could not hold them; it made also a great spoyle. As soone as he perceived this disorder, hee set forward, and

Tamerians vi.

came to hand-blowes, there were a hundred and fiftie thousand men, as yet about the Kings person. Axalla full of courage fought so valiantly, that they neuer beheld any doe more braue-Iv. Odnar during this fight charged agains the Horsemen, who were retyred vnto the Kings ayde, whom he put to flight. Then the Prince advanced forward with the rest of his Foot-men. gaue ayde vnto Axalla, and came even vnto the person of the King of China, who was as yet encloted within a fecond ranke of Chariots with thirty or forty thousand men: and after hee The King of had fought two or three houres, the Horse-men affitting the Foot-men, and they principally The King of man tong in two the Prince had referred, the King remayned wounded within the power of the Prince. and taken Pris the battaile being wonne, and all the Enemies Campe forced; the fight endured eight houres, and it was even night, which faued the lines of many of the Enemies. There were flaine two 10 Kings the Allyes of the King of China, and one taken Prisoner: there was inestimable riches King of China, gotten, as well in golden Vessellas precious stones, and the most rich and faire Charlots that could be feene.

The Prince would not see the captimed King untill the next day, beeing mounted on Horse. backe, and paffing through the Campe of the Battayle for to ftay the flaughter, and to ioyne together againe his men, to the end the accustomed watch might bee kept, whereof hee gaue the charge vnto Axalla; to whom he gaue likewise commandement to keepe the King of China within the middett of his Souldiers, having bin already dreffed of a wound he had received in his right arme. It was a strange thing to behold the Enemies Weapons, and the diversitie of streamers wherewith they were decked, the which seemed vnto vs afar off as beautifull, as the diversity of 20 colours plentifull. But to say the truth, the multitude was great which this King had, not withflanding there was much difference betweene their valour and ours : and it is reported, that hee had ranged in Battayle this very day three hundred and fifty thousand men, whereof there were an hundred and fiftie thousand Horse-men, the rest on foot: the greatest part of them were rude and barbarous people, which suffered themselves to bee slaine one vpon another, not marking their aduantage, nor hauing any Warlike knowledge, as our men haue: there were flaine of the Enemies some threescore thousand. Now the next day after the buriall of the dead, the Prince having given thankes vnto God for his victorie, cauted the wounded to bee cured, and amoneft the others Calibes, who by reason of the vntemperatenesse of the Ayre, rather then by the blow of the wound he had received, found himselfe very ill, yet would he not omit his dutie, to com- 30 mand alwayes his Auant-gard, the which was a great pleafure vnto the Prince, for he alone had Commandement ouer the Emperours Forces, beeing a Scythian, and greatly beloued of his

Tam. dranke

The Prince dispatched away thirty thousand Horse in the pursuit of one of the King of Chimas Brothers, who was fled away, having joyned together againe some twelve or fifteene thoufand Horfe. The Prince fent to fummon Panniha, the which did yeeld it felfe vnto him: wherevpon our Army approached neere vnto it, for to aduance our selues the further into the Countrey. Now I forget to declare how the Prince having the next day caused his Tents to bee pitched most stately, and his Guards ordered according to his great nesse, the principall of his Army being also neere his person: for all the night hee had remayned continually on Horse-backe, 40 vntill about two of the clocke, when as they brought him a Tart and his water, for hee neuer dranke Wine; and lay downe on a Carpet where hee passed the rest of the night, I was neere vnto him and neuer left him : but I neuer heard any vaunting or boalting to proceed out of his mouth. Then hee fent a commandement vnto Axalla to bring vnto him The comming of the imprisoned King: who beeing come, the Emperour issued out of his Tents, and went China priloner to receive him. This King of China came with a very proud and haughtie countenance, and like vato the Em- a couragious man, approaching neere vnto the Emperour, hee demanded of Azalla by an Interperour Tamer preter, which was the Emperour, and being shewed him, hee spake fiercely vnto him after this manner: The Gods whom I worship, being prouoked against my Nation and people, and confoired against my good fortune, have made mee at this day thy Prisoner: but forasmuch, as it is 10 reported ouer all the World, that Tamerlan maketh warre for the honour of his Nation : thou shouldest be contented that thou hast wonne it this glory, that the Lord of the World, the Child of the Sunne, is in thy power, to receive fuch Law as it shall please thee to prescribe him. This hee faid in abraue manner, and without any other humbling of himselfe. The Emperour on the other-fide having faluted him very courteoufly, led him into his Tent,

200. Cities. A description

He is furely a great Prince, and which hath had two hundred famous Cities within his Kingdome. There be many Mynes of Gold and Silver, much Muske, and also of an Herbe which the Christians call Rhubarbe. There bee in like manner within the Kingdome of China fifteene very large Prounces, the which have Gouernours. It is reported that hee hath threefcore and tenne Kings wearing Crownes, Tributaries vnto him. We call this Region China, the which they in 60 Tame, or Tamin their Language name Tame, and the people Tangis, the which we call Chinois. This Kingdome and Tamegus. doth abound in fish, and in great numbers of wild-fewle, by reason of the great abundance of running waters which doe ouerflow the Countrey, the which is reasonable temperate: they aabound greatly in Silkes, and the meanest are apparelled therewith, having small quantitie of

left hand, and on the right was the comming of the Enemie, fo as vpon the least disfauour that might happen, hee would retyre to bee affitted by his footmen. Wee had foure foore thousand horle: Calibes with the Scythians were in the Auantguard, and had the commandement of thirtie thouland horse, who should receive him at such time as he did draw on the Enemie, as he was commanded. It was divided into three troupes, each one confifting of ten thousand. Odner had also thirtie thousand horse who should affist him. The Prince remayned in the Arier-ward at the one of the wings of his footmen, which held one of his principall forces : his purpose was to fuffer the threefcore and fix thouland horfe to maintayne the fight against the Barbarians. being led by two good Captaines, and if any of them remayned, the Emperor hoped after of

10 them to have a good market, by causing his footmen to march forward and himselfe with whom there abode twentie thousand of the best horse, which were sufficient without hazarding his Person for to give a new battaile, if so be that any disfavour should happen vnto them : for hee had understood that this was the custome of the Kings of China, to enclose themselves within the middest of their Chariots with their footmen, and not to hazard themselves but youn the extremitie. So the Enemie fayled nothing at all to march directly vnto Calibes, and all the Armie marched after following of him and fetting vpon him, and hee euen as the Soythians are alwayes accustomed to doe, with his fix thousand horse in retyring gaue many charges, killing some of them, and they likewise killing some of his men. It was a beautifull light to see this great Armie march, for it feemed to bee twife as great as ours, therein being an infinite number 20 of armed Chariots, wherein he put his principall trust against the furie of our Souldiers; fo many gildings of gold and fluer as well in the trappings of their Horfes, as on their Armour, that

it glittered, and was of vs all much admired. The Prince who with a troupe of horse did see the The beautie Armie march after Calibes, commended greatly the manner of casting their men out of the andrichnesse rankes, for to compell this troupe vnto fight, and did fee this Armie come in good order, and he of the King of tryed with his eye to note the place where the Kings Person was, having neere him the Chinas Chinas Atmie, Lord to instruct him, who knew well their manner of fighting. Now, they had neither Auantguard nor battaile, but onely an Arier-ward commanded by the King, and inclosed (as I haue faid) with his Chariots : the which being shewed vnto him by this Lord, the Prince turned himselfe vnto vs, and in our language said: Tet must wee this day differ se this cloud here so gilded, Tamerlan his

30 and the King of China and my selfe must make a partition thereof.

Now, having feene the Enemie fufficiently advanced, and judging that he had had feene them King of Chinas march a good league, he thought it not convenient to fuffer them for to take breath, nor for to put themselues againe into their order; he sent vnto Calibes for to will him to set forward the fight, and that if those whom he had led with him should be weary, they should come vnto him; but it was not in Caibbes power to have this commandement over them. For as soone as they heard this word of fighting vetered, they required the first charge, with a young Lord, who commanded ouer them, called Zioctabanes, who made appeare vnto the Chinose to what end their flight was, charging very stiffely vpon the foremost of the Enemies, the which was an occafion to begin the first fight. And I affure you, there could not be seene a more furious thing, nor 40 any for to fight with more defire to manifest the valour of his Nation, and for to procure honour vnto his Prince. Now, this endured a long houre before the Chinois had ouerthrowne Caliber.

The Prince did fee all patiently, faying alwayes, that the great multitude how confused source. The battaile it were, would carry it away from the order and valour of his Souldiers : you could not yet per- betweene the ceiue any alteration in the Princes countenance, Aduersitie and Prosperitie were so indifferent King of China voto him. His thirty thousand Horse were all Seythians, who observe not the same order the and Tamerian, Parthians doe. Now, before the Prince retyred with his men, hee did fee the first charge giuen, Calibes being wounded, retyred himselfe neere vnto the Prince, having with him two thousand horse ioyned together againe, and many more ioyning themselues together neere vnto the Prince, who commanded that they should cure Calibes, viewing the place of his wound, hee 30 caused him to bee conducted behind his footmen, and the other which were hurt with him also. Now, Calibes was not able to pierce through this Armie, being beaten back; but Odmar with almost all the Parthian horse-men, did handle them more roughly, for hee ranne cleane thorow

then, and returned by one of the right wings of the Armie, where hee fought most valiantly, and having beaten them back even within the Kings Chariots, he thought that he should not doe wifely to goe about to breake fuch forces. The King of China comming forward, and the horse-men which had beene broken by Odmar, ioyning themselves together for his ayde, Odmar onely remayning in the battaile sent vn-

to the Prince for the footmen, and for to fet forward the Artillerie, and that hee should assure himselfe of the victorie. The Prince, who had already set forward, kept aloose off, and fent 60 unto him fiftie thousand footmen, with a part of the Artillery, giving charge thereof unto Axalla, who forthwith let forward, having commandement to fee vpon the Chariots, and to make an entrance : he let forward the Artillery before him, the which did greatly aftonish the enemies : for the Gouernours of the herfes, belonging to the Kings Charlots, could not hold them; it made allo a great ipoyle. As foone as he perceived this diforder, hee fet forward, and

fory over the

came to hand-blowes, there were a hundred and fiftie thousand men, as yet about the Kings perion. Axalla full of courage fought to valiantly, that they neuer beheld any doe more brauely. Odmar during this fight charged agains the Horsemen, who were retyred vnto the Kines ayde, whom he put to flight. Then the Prince advanced forward with the rest of his Foot-men. gaue ayde vnto Axalla, and came even vnto the person of the King of China, who was as yet encloted within a fecond ranke of Chariots with thirty or forty thousand men and after hee The King of had fought two or three houres, the Horse-men affetting the Foot-men, and they principally The King of the King of the Wing remayned wounded within the power of the Prince, and taken Prist the battaile being wonne, and all the Enemies Campe forced; the fight endured eight houres. and it was even night, which faued the lives of many of the Enemies. There were flaine two to Kings the Allyes of the King of China, and one taken Prisoner: there was inestimable riches King of chima, gotten, as well in golden Vessell as precious stones, and the most rich and faire Chariots that

The Prince would not fee the captized King vntill the next day, beeing mounted on Horfebacke, and passing through the Campe of the Battayle for to stay the slaughter, and to joyne together againe his men, to the end the accustomed watch might bee kept, whereof hee gaue the charge vito Axalla; to whom he gaue likewise commandement to keepe the King of China within the middeft of his Souldiers, having bin already dreffed of a wound he had received in his right arme. It was a strange thing to behold the Enemies Weapons, and the diversitie of streamers wherewith they were decked, the which feemed vnto vs afar off as beautifull, as the diuerfity of 20 colours plentifull. But to fay the truth, the multitude was great which this King had, not withftanding there was much difference betweene their valour and ours : and it is reported, that hee had ranged in Battayle this very day three hundred and fifty thousand men, whereof there were an hundred and fiftie thousand Horse-men, the rest on foot: the greatest part of them were rude and barbarous people, which suffered themselves to bee flaine one vpon another, not marking their aduantage, nor having any Warlike knowledge, as our men haue: there were flaine of the Enemies some threescore thousand. Now the next day after the buriall of the dead, the Prince having given thankes vnto God for his victorie, caused the wounded to bee cured, and amongst the others Calibes, who by reason of the vntemperatenesse of the Ayre, rather then by the blow of the wound he had received, found himselfe very ill, yet would he not omit his dutie, to com- 30 mand alwayes his Auant-gard, the which was a great pleasure vnto the Prince, for he alone had Commandement ouer the Emperours Forces, beeing a Scythian, and greatly beloued of his Nation.

The Prince dispatched away thirty thousand Horse in the pursuit of one of the King of Chinas Brothers, who was fled away, having joyned together againe some twelve or fifteene thoufand Horse. The Prince sent to Summon Panniba, the which did yeeld it selfe vnto him : where, vpon our Army approached neere vnto it, for to aduance our felues the further into the Countrey. Now I forget to declare how the Prince having the next day caused his Tents to bee pitched most stately, and his Guards ordered according to his greatnesse, the principall of his Army being also neere his person: for all the night hee had remayned continually on Horse-backe, 49 vntill about two of the clocke, when as they brought him a Tart and his water, for hee neuer dranke Wine; and lay downe on a Carpet where hee paffed the rest of the night, I was neere vnto him and neuer left him : but I neuer heard any vaunting or boatting to proceed out of his mouth. Then hee fent a commandement vnto Axalla to bring vnto him the imprisoned King : who beeing come, the Emperour issued out of his Tents, and went China priloner to receive him. This King of China came with a very proud and haughtie countenance, and like vato the Em- a couragious man, approaching neere vato the Emperour, hee demanded of Axalla by an Interperour Tamer- preter, which was the Emperour, and being shewed him, hee spake fiercely vnto him after this manner: The Gods whom I worship, being prouoked against my Nation and people, and confoired against my good fortune, have made mee at this day thy Prisoner : but for a sit is 50 reported ouer all the World, that Tamerlan maketh warre for the honour of his Nation : thou shouldest be contented that thou hast wonne it this glory that the Lord of the World, the Child of the Sunne, is in thy power, to receive fuch Law as it shall please thee to prescribe him. This bee faid in a braue manner, and without any other humbling of himfelfe. The Emperour on the other-fide having faluted him very courteoutly, led him into his Tent.

no Wine. The comming of the King of

Tam. dranke

:00. Cities.

He is furely a great Prince, and which hath had two hundred famous Cities within his King-Adeleription dome. There be many Mynes of Gold and Siluer, much Muske, and also of an Herbe which the Christians call Rhubarbe. There bee in like manner within the Kingdome of China fifteene very large Prouinces, the which have Gouernours. It is reported that hee hath threefcore and tenne Kings wearing Crownes, Tributaries vnto him. We call this Region China, the which they in 60 Tame, or Tamin their Language name Tame, and the people Tangis, the which we call Chinois. This Kingdome and Tamegius. doth abound in fish, and in great numbers of wild-fowle, by reason of the great abundance of running waters which doe ouerflow the Countrey, the which is reasonable temperate: they aabound greatly in Silkes, and the meanest are apparelled therewith, having small quantitie of

Wooll, and not ving the same : they have much Cotton and Linnen in stead thereof. The men doe weare their haire long, the women combe them : they have as many Wives as they are able to maintayne, Next vnto the King, there is a Gouernour Generall whom they call Tuten, the which was the Brother vnto the imprisoned King. The Prince having affembled his council to to the end he might be aduited how he should vie his Priloners and the rest of the Victory : hee to the end ne might be admired how the thouse Brother was arrived at Quanton, the which hee Quanton had fortified, and that great flore of forces did ioyne themselves vnto him. This was the cause that the Prince having somewhat rested his forces, commanded two thousand Parthian Horse to convey the Prisoners vnto Paguinfou, and from thence after they had made abode there, to passe

To Ouer the Mountaynes, and to remayne at Burda (a Citie of olde time faithfull vnto the Empe- Burda. rours of Schrie) and there to keepe them faithfully. The purpose and resolution of the Prince was, that it behocued to affault Quantou, and to faut vp, it it were possible, the Kings Brother within the fame, being one of the principall feates belonging vnto the King of China, and a Citie greatly peopled and strong : it was forty leagues from the place where the battavle was fought. But Odmar being advanced thither, would not retyre before he had expresse Commandement from the Prince, who having fent thither, pitched his Tents round about the faid Cities having fummoned many small Cities, the which yeelded themselves wholly vnto the Princes mercy, making great lamentation for their King taken. Notwithstanding, the gentlenesse vied by the Conquerour made them to take all their losses with patience: and because it was also re-20 Ported, that he had vied the King moit friendly, and all the Prifoners : the Kings Brother had tent Embaffadours to obtayne leave for to know of the Kings health, and for to fee him, the which the Prince did willingly fuffer, to the end this other should not declare himselfe King.

who would have brought him more trouble then the other. He attended for the event of Quanton, and had his eye vpon the fuccesse of this siege. Now the Kings Brother having received newes of the Affaires of the belieged, he determined eyther to succourit, or to fight a Battle. and came straight vnto Porchio, and made a bridge of Boats, whereof there be great store in these Perchia.

Now being enformed when the halfe part were passed, which was fiftie thousand men good, Odmar finding them in very ill order, and nothing at all advertised of the Enemies nearnesse. 20 gaue the charge, and veterly ouerthrew them: there remay ned dead vpon the ground forme freter on the sum of the charge, and veterly ouerthrew them; there remay ned dead vpon the ground forme freter on the sum of the a great Marish wherein they were encamped. Notwithstanding our Foot-men having wonne passing of a Ris the banke of the River, beganne also to winne the Boats, and to sever them by the meanes of a uer, and sue great Boat, the which we with diligence caused to runne downe beeing full of artificiall fire, fo fifty thousand as at the fame very time that they which were within the Boate did draw neere , they retyred of his men. out of the same, having first kindled the fire within the Boate, the which with a great force rushed against the Bridge of Boats and overthrew it, and where it was resisted did burne. This did greatly aftonish them that were passed, to see their returne cut off. The Kings Brother was

not yet passed vnto the other-side of the water, and he which first had gone ouer was the King 40 of Cauchina, who was flayneat the first charge, fighting very valiantly, in the fere-front. The Kings Brother did fee his men flayne and drowned, and could not remedie the fame. This fecond ouerthrow was of no small importance, although it was but the third part of the Kings Brothers Army, and that there remayned vnto him as yet a hundred thousand fighting menibut there was no great hope that he durft present himselfe before our Army. The newes hereof being reported at Quantionfon, they defired to make tryall of the Emperours elemency. Axalla dispatched one of his faithfull friends of his Countrey vnto the Prince, to carry vnto him these good newes : which was more welcome vinto the Prince, then the overthrow he had given vinto the Enemy, and agreed vnto all that Axalla demanded, referring all vnto his fufficiencie and fidelitie. The Kings Brother having fent to demand fafety for to treate, the Prince granted to much vnto them, for fuch as would come vnto him.

50 In this meane-time Quantoufon yeelded it selfe into the hands of Axalla, who caused the Garrison to come out of the same, received the Inhabitants into the Princes protection, and they which would might remayne therein vnarmed : and he entred thereinto with the joy of all the Inhabitants, who did determine to receive the Emperour into the same with all the magnificence that might be. He cauled thirty thousand men of War to enter thereinto; vnto whom was money deliuered for to maintayne them there, vntill fuch time as all the Foot-men should receive pay for three monethes due voro them, whereof the Inhabitants of Quantoufon did furnish the Prince, to the summe of eight hundred thousand Tentins, the which do amount vnto foure hundred and fifty thousand crownes or therabout. The Prince at this present sent me vnto Axalla, whom I found feathing of his Captaines and fouldiers, flaying for the commandement that I 60 brought vnto him, the which was to remaine within Quantoufon, and to cause all his footmen to fet forward directly vnto him, the which was done by the Prince, to the end it should strike a greater terror into the minds of the enemies, who feeing all his footmen arrived, he supposed

they wold nothing doubt (Quantoufon being taken) but that he would march forward, infomuch

ued them with all humanitie, causing his greatnesse to appeare vnto them; and therewithall the

agilitie of his Horsemen , to make them see with their eyes, that it would be the destruction of

An Embaffage the Chinois name, if he proceeded any further. So having faluted the Emperour with all reuefrom the King rence, they vetered their Embassage vinto him, which was that the Kings Brother had fent them vnto him to treat for two causes: the one, was for the liberty of their King, the other, for prefernation of their Country. The Prince having heard them, answered them, that they had reafor peace, and fon to trust vnto his mildnesse, and seeing at this present, they desired it, he would yeeld therethe Kings de- unto. Thereupon the Prince role vp, and caused to be said vnto them, that they should deliner their offers in writing, and that present answere should bee made thereunto. Thus went they out of the Princes presence with great joy, and as it were affured of Peace, and to recour their former prosperities. The conditions which they offered, were to leave Paguinfon, and all the Countrey beyond it, with all the Fortreffes of the Mountaynes; that they would pay all the charges of his Army, fince the day of answere made vnto his Embassadors; that they would Conditions a- give two Millions of Gold, for their King. This being prefented vnto the Lord, hee made anfivere thereunto, which was; that he would keepe that which hee had conquered within the betweene Tamorlan and the Countrey, which was his owne justly, seeing his armes had given it vnto him; that hee would to haue the River where he was now encamped to be his Frontier, fretched vnto Hochion, Tahancezug, Cauchio, Lulun, euen vnto Poschio bordering vpon the Sea; that the King of China should pay vnto him yearely three hundred thousand Crownes, the which should bee deliuered at Pa. guirfow, for acknowledgement of submission vnto the Empire, as well for his Successors as himfelfe: that they should pay five hundred thousand Crownes in ready money for the charge of the Army; that the King of China should be delivered, and all the Chinois Prisoners should pay ransom vnto particular men that took them, except those which carryed the name of Kings, who should pay one hundred thousand Crownes for peace with his Armes : that no Chinois should bee kept as slaue, nor sold for such hereafter, beeing vn ier the Princes obedience, that Traffique and Entercourse of Merchants should be free betweene both the Nations; that the King of China should deliver his Brother as Prisoner, and two Kings named, with twelve prin- 30 cipall men of the Countrey for affurance of the peace. They accepted of fuch conditions of peace as pleafed the Conquerour, hoping that time would bring againe vnto them their ancient liberty, and that for a time it behooved them to beare with patience the yoke of their bondage. Now the Prince had fent two thousand Horse, to setch the King of China, to the end that being at liberty, he might sweare to the peace solemnly, the which he having performed at Quantonfou, whither the Prince caused him for to come, he brought with him vnto Paguin, all the pledges, and among it the rest, the Kings eldest Sonne, and his Brother. The King beeing departed for to performe his promise, according to the Treaty by him confirmed, he was received, and as

In the meane-time the Emperour, after hee had prouided for the affurance of his new conquest, he left Odmar there to gouerne them, and gaue vnto him an estate of thirty thousand Horse and fifty thousand Foot-men, to furnish all the Fortresses and strong places, the Prince having led with him many of the new conquered people, defiring to have them for to dwell within his Country, and to fend other Colonies in their places, to affure himfelte the better of the lightnesse of this people, having noted them to bee inclined vnto Nouelties. Hee gave in charge vnto Odmar to make his principall abode at Quantoufou, and to fortifie well the paffage; and also commanded a Fortrelle to be made at Dermio, the better to streng then his Borders; and after he had left him all things necessary, he recommended vnto him the feruices of that Lord, who had manifested vnto him his great affection. The Emperour having well tryed his faith- 10 fulnesse in his Affaires as they fell out, he carryed with him a Brother of his, vnto whom he gaue great gifts within Sachetay.

it were worthipped within his Countrey, with all the joy that might be.

Then we turned our faces straight vnto Cambalu, having advertized the Great Cham of the happy fuccesse of our Affaires. The Prince remayned in deed King of China, holding in his posfellion, two of the fairest and greatest Cities of all the whole Country, having an hundred good leagues thereof vnto himfelfe, and many leffer Cities, having extended his Borders vnto a River, by which he might goe vnto the Enemy, but they could not come vnto him without paffing cuer the same : having good meanes to keepe it and with advantage. Now the Prince defired aboue all that the Idols which were within his Conquest, should be beaten downe, and commanded the worship of one God, establishing the same after the forme of his owne Countrey for he 60 made account that in short time all would bee reduced vnto our customes. Our Army wherein was much ficknesse, began to march, and on the third day having newes of forces which came towards vs, the Prince lent them a Commandement not to come any further forward, and that

CHAP. S. S.3. Tamerlans message to Baiazet. Baiazets proud answer.

his Vnele, who had fet forward towards that place to have the good hap for to fee him, being determined to receive him at Cambalu with magnificence and triumphs, as hee well deferued. Now I will declare by the way, how Odmar being seuered from vs, all the Princes fauour was Tomerlan turturned vnto Axalla, vnto whom hee committed the whole charge of his Armie, infomuch as ned his funnt Axalla although he was alwaies in great reputation, notwithstanding the same was much en- vnto Axalla. creased by the Prince at Quantoufou, where the Prince did trust him with the Armie, in to weighty an enterprise as that was, and the which he forgloriously atchieued : likewise the manner of entring into the Kingdome of China, the intelligences hee had: fo as the report of his valour did flie throughout all the Empire. Calibes led the Auant-guard, and Axalla was in the

to hattell neere vnto the Emperour, who gave him the chiefest place, bestowing vpon him two hundred thousand crownes yeerely, for to maintayne his ordinary expences. After certaine 200000.crowne daves journey, wee received newes of the Emperours arrivall at Cambalu, the Prince having of yeerley tent Left his Armie in a faire Countrey for to winter, where he dismissing many of our Souldiers, given vno Awes arrived within foure leagues of Cambala, whither all the Princes of the Emperours Court, len. came for to receive him, together with all the principall Inhabitants, for to gratifie our Prince for his happie Voyage. The Prince having received every one, according to his wonted curtefie, retayning notwithstanding convenient Maiestie, hee was beheld to the great contentment of all his Subjects. Hee had with him the Empresse his wife, who had not left him in his Voyage. The next day the Emperour did him fo much honour, as to come and meet him, The meeting 20 with all the magnificence that might bee. Hee gaue a present vnto the Emperour his Vncle, betweenethe

of all the richest Chariots, and fairest Horses hee had wome. The Emperour was very defi- great Cam and rous to be his daughter: he cauted her Chariot to bee women. The Emperour was very denhis: but the Prince remayned on Horf-backe, whom the eyes of all the people could not be fa- balk in Cartho. tisfied with admiring. The Prince presented Calibes unto the Emperour, and making a recitall of his faithfulnelle, and the endeauour of enery one, hee caused the Emperour to give vnto him an lumified thousand crownes of encrease vnto his pension. Axalla was also presented vnto the Axalla rewar-Emperour, who being informed of his valour, hee was received with all the best favours that ded by the might be, and he gaue vnto him of the reuenues belonging vnto the Empire, an hundred thou- great Cam for might be said in gade vince in an art of gold in a Principalitie, that he might the better declare vinto him how much bis good fer-uice and faith-30 he effeemed of his fidelitie.

fulncile.

ð. 111.

The differences betwirt TAMERLAN and BAIAZET the Turke; his returne to Samercand, and expedition against BAIAZET; the battell, and victorie, his caging of BAIAZET, and making him his Foot-Stoole.

His ioy and pleafare continued with vs all the Winter, where the Prince having receiued aduertisement how Baiaves Emperour of the Tarkes, had enterprised to joyne the Empire of Greece vnto his owne, and fully determined to beliege Constantinople: the which he understanding, and succour being required of him by the Greeke Empe-

rour, he dispatched one towards Baiazet, for to declare vnto him his pleasure herein, and war- Amessagesen ned him on his behalfe, not to trouble the Empercur Paleologue who was his confederate. Now by Tamerian this motion came from Prince Axalla, who had wrought this league, being of kinne vnto Pa-vnto Baires. leologue, and alto thrust forward with desire to maintayne his Religion in Greece, where he was borne of the Genuois race. Whereunto being answered very proudly, by Baiazet vinto our Emperour, asking what he had to doe therewith, and that he should content himselfe, with enjoying The proudan-30 lawes vnto his Subjects, and not vnto others, feeing he was not borne his Subject. This answer for of Baixets being made, Axalla procured to be very ill accepted of the Emperour, and in fuch fort, that he determined to hinder this enterprite of the Ottomans.

Now the Prince had obtayned of the Emperour his Vncle an hundred thousand Foot-men, and fourescore thousand Horse, hoping to haue as many from Sacheray, besides the Lords who would accompanie him for to winne glorie, from whom he made account also of fifty thousand men more that they would bring vnto him, befides the other forces. Hee supposed that he had abilitie to deliuer the Empire of Greece from the bondage of the Ottomans. Thus the Prince departed, leauing the Empresse with the Emperour her father, for to serue him as a comfort of this age: it was not without a hard farewell of the Emperous pare towards his Nephew; but Heavyparding: 6c more grienous on the Princes part towards his wife, who had never left him fince the time they were married; but nothing with-held our Prince, where there was either glorie, or meanes to encrease his reputation, and profit the Common-wealth: saying often, that he was borne to this A notable sayend, and that he must take in these exercises his principall delights: for every other thing where - ing of I ware in he did exercise himfelte was but borrowed, being appointed and called of God to purify the lan.

they should march straight vnto Cambala, where the Prince did suppose to finde the Emperour

1.:merlan his

pride of Tyrants. Neither will I here omit a dreame, which our Prince had the night before hee departed from Cambalu, which was, that he did fee as hee thought, a great multitude of reuerent men, who put forth their hands vnto him, requiring his fuccour against the violence of certaine Tyrants, who did afflict them with fundry kinds of torments: he faid, that he did neuer fee more reverent countenances, & that some of them were apparelled in white, and others in cloth of gold, lome having as it were Crowns of gold vpon their heads, and it feemed vnto the Prince. that he gaue them his hand, and lift them very high. This dreame he recited vs the next morning. but no body was able to give him the interpretation thereof, & himfelfe thought no more of it. The Prince was accompanied also with Calibes, & he commanded the Prince of Tanais, to take

nev against the Turke.

Tarerlen re-

turneth from

of China voto

vpon him the state of Colonell of the footmen, which Axalla had left : vnto whom he gaue the In charge of Lieutenant generall within his Armie, with commandement to leade his Auant-guard. and Calibes the Arere-ward, being accompanied with farre greater forces then ever he had in any of his Armies : for they came vnto him from all parts. The Chinois Lord was licenced by Odmer to goe with 20000. men of the fubiects newly conquered, being defirous to flew himfelfe ynto the Emperour, as also for to learne our manners and fashions. The Prince tooke his Voyage die rectly vnto Samercand, the place of his birth, three yeeres being past since hee had beene there. Zamay came to meet him, and I verily beleeue, a million of men, bleffing and prayfing him in all manner of fongs. All the Princes of the Countrey also ranne to visite him; he abode there a moneth. Axalla in this meane time was already at the meeting place at Ocera, who prepared

Confultation ·he Armie Chouldrakero

Tamerlan his

Bachu.

Printer marched vnto the fiege of Con-

ftantimople. The gouern-

flice amongst

all things, looking for the Princes commandement for to goe voto him, advertifing him often of 20 the doings of Baiazet. We departed from Samercand, for to goe vnto Ozara, where was the meeting place for all the about the way Princes troupes : and having in that place taken advice for his journey, that is to fay, for to know whether should be most expedient and fauorable, either to goe by the coasts of Mosconie directly vnto Capha, or rather on the other fide of the Sea Bachu to paffe by the skirts of Perfis. It was refolued in the end, after fundry opinions, although the way were the longer, to paffe vnto Capba for to come vnto Trebisonde, and to the Georgians, and from thence to enter into the limits of the Ottomans. Then our Armie after the accustomed ceremonies & prayers made vnto God, wherein our Emperor hoped to finde his principall fuccours, we drew straight vnto Maranis, where the Armie abode three dayes, looking for the forces which Odmer did fend, whereof they received 30 newes. There did the Emperour cause all his Armie to be payd, and a generall muster was made. He had newes also there of the forces that the Mosconite did send voto him : he likewise caused an infinite quantitie of victuals, and the most part of his furniture to be conneved by the Sea of Bache, there being tome twentie leagues where was want of water and victuals, through the which our Armie must needs passe, causing all things necessary to be carried by water, the which was a great commoditie vnto vs; and there was a commandement given at all the shoares of the Sea, that they should bring all the vessels for to carrie the munition of the Armie; so as this fore-Tamerian hun- fight did greatly ease our Armie. The Prince went continually coasting the Sea-shoare, passing ted by the way away his time in hunting, and his Armie came not neere him by ten leagues, except fuch as came to feeke necessaries for the Armie, the which did extend it selfe some twenty leavies, it was fo 40 great. The Prince abode at Sarafich during the time his Army paffed the River of Edel at Mechet, and at two or three other Bridges, the which they had caused to bee made; there had hee ceataine newes how Baiazet marched vnto the fiege of Constantineple, having reduced vnto his obedience all Bribinia, and Burfia a very noble Citie, the which hee caused to bee fortified, and divers other Cities, vfing all the cruelties that might be, infomuch as all the adjoyning Prouisces yeelded themselves his tributaries; amongst the rest the noble Citie of Cabba; the Citie was by the Prince given vnto Axalla for to dispose of the same: which hee did, going thither to fee his kinf-folke, and to take fuch order there, as he thought was for the prefernation of the Citie, as one not vngratefull vnto his Countrey : he rather placed his hope in this little shoare of Mar Maiore, then in the limits of Scythas and China, and for to succeed after his Master vnto 50 all his great conquelts, for that he had all the Souldiers at his commandement, and great credit amongit all the people over whom his Prince commanded, Baiazet having a very great and mightie Armie, neither beleeued, nor once thought that wee would come vpon him, to exceeding barbarous was he, that he would not indure any man fo much as to speake onely vnto him of our Armie, as despiting it, he was to proud : and there he caused all the bordering people publikely to bee forbidden, to make any vowes and prayers for our prosperitie. Inflice raigned to among ft vs. infomuch as if a Souldier had taken but an Apple, he was put to death, and this was feuerely observed over all, a thing vivall, and especially in this Journey, the which was the onely cause of ouerthrowing the tyrannie of the Ottomans, and of this proud Baiaxet. So we arrived at Bachichiche, where the Armie refreshed it selfe for the space of eight dayes. Vntothis 60 place came the Embassadours of Guines, vinto the Emperour, whom the Prince did greatly reusrence for his holinesse. The Emperor after he had caused generall prayers to be published, Tamerlans Armie departed from Bachichiche, and they reckoned that there was in our Armie, three hunared thousand Horse-men, and tiue hundred thousand Foot-men, of all kinds of Nations. Our

Armie came vnto Garga, where it passed the River Emphrates, the Avant-guard at Chinferie; and the generall meeting of the Armie was appointed to bee at Gianich, the which did veeld it felfe: and there had we newes that Baiazet his Armie was necre vnto vs, within fome thirty leagues, which caused s to march more close. All the Cities yeelded, the Emperour receiving them graciously, and those which retused obedience, were cruelly punished, especially such Inhabitants as were Turkes, but the Christians fet in full libertie, under the name of the Greeke Emperour Emanuel, whom the Emperour would wholly gratifie, Axalla having received this commandement from the Prince: fo hee caused them to sweare fidelitie vnto Emanuel. The The causes of great Armie of Baiavet thought to have furprifed our men within Sennas (which they had ta. Tamellans to ken) but as foone as they drew neere, our men fet it on fire, and the greatest part retyring, there

remayned some hundred Horse to performe the same, who retyred themselues in very great diforder. Now, the Prince of Ciarcan had divided his men into two troupes, and given comman- A flratagem. dement vnto the first troupe, that as soone as they perceived the Enemies to pursue the hundred Horse, they should receive them, and retyre iountly together. Now, hee had the rest of his power in a valley necre vnto a Wood, and having fuffered fome two thousand of the Enemies Horle. Turkes Auant-currers to passe by him, he charged them behind, and fought with them. they not fighting but fleeing as foone as they did fee themfelues proffed : many were flayne, and many were taken priloners. This was the first time wee fought, and carried away the victorie : all the priloners were fent vnto the Prince, amongst the rest the Bassa of Natolia, who led this 20 troupe. The next day Baiazet his Armie drew neere vnto the fight of ours, the which marched How Templant

two leagues : and wee encamped within a league the one of the other. All the night long you Armie paffed might have heard such noyle of Horses, as it seemed the heavens were full of voyces, the aire did the night befor clound, and every one was defirous to have the night pasted, for to come each one who the fought against triall of his valour. Vinto the Seythian Nation, the which is defirous of goods, they propounded the Turk the great riches they should get by the victorie ouer the Ottomans. Vinto the Parthian Nation ambitious of rule, the honour and glorie of the Nation, being Conquerours of them, who onely were able to take from them the Empire of Asia. The Christians who made the fourth part thereof, affured themselves to conquer their greatest Enemie. Behold, now every one spake during the night time, according to his humour. The Prince this night went through his Campe hearing 30 all this, and was very glad to fee the hope that every one of his Souldiers did conceine already of

the victorie; and I being necre him, he did me the honour to tell me, that at the time he fought the battll against the Mosconite, he did heare all themight long all kindes of songs, the which refounded in his Campe, feeing in a manner no bodie fleepe: I hoped then (faid hee) to have fome good hap, and I trust to receive the like now. Now after the second watch the Princereturned vinto his lodging, and casting lumselse vpora Carpet thee meant to sleepe: but the defire of day would not fuffer him; he then commanded me to give him a booke, wherein he did reade: therein was contayned the lines of his Father and Grandfather, and of other valiant Knights, the which he did ordinarily reade: he called me, having light vpon (in reading) the discourse of a battell that his Grandfather had loft against the Persians, the which he had thought to have 40 gotten (very vndifereetly) having affailted his Enemie, many advantages being propounded vn-

to him, whereof he might have made good vie, all which he neglected, truling vnto his owne valour and that of his Souldiers And having ended his speech, he commanded mee to reade the fame before him, and faid vnto me, I alwaies reade this before I beginne a battell, to the end I Tamelas his should not so much trust vnto the Lions skin, wherein I wrap my arme, that I should not serue custome bemy selse with the Foxes, to wrap therewith my head: for thus (said he) my Grandfather was foreabattell in a place of advantage, and he went out of it to feeke his Enemie, who was lodged ftrongly, and what souer his men said to him, liee went on headling, shutting his eares against all the counfell and aduite of his feruants.

Seeing the Twkilb Foot-men march, whom they doe call Innizaries, the which were placed Themanner 50 in the middelt, and vpon the two fronts, two great squadrons of Horse-men, the which see- or the march med to be thirty thousand Horse, and another which advanced and covered the battalion of the of the Tartifo Innivaries: Hee thought this order to be very good, and hard to breake, and turning himfelfe Footmen. voto Axalla, who was neere voto him, he faid, I had thought to have fought on foot, but it behoouethme this day to fight on horiebacke, for to give courage vnto my Souldiers to open the great batalion: and my will is, that they come forward unto mee as foone as they may: for The order of I will advance forward an hundred thousand Foot-men, fifty thousand vpon each of my two Tamelan his wings, and in the middeft of them forty thouland of my best Horse. My pleasure is, that after battell, they have tryed the forceof those men, that they come voto my Auant guard, of whom I will dispose (and fifty thousand Horse more) in three bodies, whom thou shalt command, the which

60 I will affift with fourescore thousand Horse, wherein shall be mine owne person, having an hundred thousand Foot-men behind me, who shall march in two troupes; and for my Arere-ward forty thousand Horse, and fifty thousand Foot-men, who shall not march but voto my ayde. I will make choise of ten thousand of the best Horse, whom I will fend into every part where I shall thinke needfull within my Armie, for to impart my commandements. Ouer the first forty

What the Turks laniza-

wiferome the cause of the victorie, and

thousand the Prince Ciarcian commanded : ouer the foremost footmen was the Lord Synopes, a Genuois, kinfman vnto Axalla, and he which was his Lieutenant ouer the footmen, a Captaine of great estimation. That over which the Prince Avalla commanded, confisted of five squadrons of horsemen. Baiazet his Armie seemed faire and great, which was advanced continually forward towards vs. who stirred not one whit from the place of the battaile. There were many light horsemen, as well Scribians, Parthians, as Moscouites, who left their rankes, and shot Arrowes and brake Lances betweene the two Armies. There was a Spie who brought word that Baiaret was on toot in the middeft of his lanix aries, where he meant to fight, that hee did not forget to mount on horse-back, giving order over all for the wants of his Armie: but purposed to fight in the middest of those lanizaries, who are a number of trusty men, brought vp in exercises from to their youth to all manner of warfare, and chosen out of al Nations, the fairest and strongest men. to as they are inuincible. By this bringing up the which they have had together, they doe fight with a great force and courage for their Prince and Lord, who being in the middeft of them, they are as in a halfe circle within the Armie. Now, they were thirty thousand men in this order. wherein Baiazet pur his principall hope: he had many other footmen, but gathered together of all forts. His battaile of horse was very faire, amounting vnto the number of an hundred and fortie thousand horse, well exercised in all manner of fights. The Soldar of Egypt having avded him with thirty thousand Mammolues, very good horse-men, and with thirty thousand footmen. Their Armie in that order feemed almost as great as ours: for they were not so knit together as we were, our forces being directly one after the other, and theirs all in a front. So the Enemies Armie advanced forward continually with an infinite number of cryes, and ours was in great filence. After that common prayer was ended, the Emperour himfelfe aduan-

ced continually forward, beholding the first charge given, and caused Axalla to set forward after he returned into his order, continually exhorting his men before hee left them. There could not be seene a more furious charge giuen, then was performed by the Ottomans ypon the Prince of Ciarcian, who had commandement not to fight before they came vnto him : there could not haue beene chosen a fairer Playne, and where the skilfull choise of the place was of leffe aduantage for the one then for the other, but that wee had the River on our left hand, the which was some advantage for the Emperour, having given commandement, that in any case they should not lole the same, and that the Enemies , whatfoeuer came thereof , should not win it ; this hee 30 did for to haue the advantage of the hand in fight. The Emperour, who aboue all Maximes of principall ma- warre, did vie to deale in such manner, that the Enemie might bee the first Affaulter; hee had xime of warre. Straightly commanded them which were appointed for the first charge, to suffer the Enemie for to give the on-fet. Now (as I have already declared) this young Prince of Ciarcian with his for-The battaile ty thousand horse was almost wholly ouerthrowne, having fought as much as hee could, but hee betweene Ta- entred even into the middeft of the lanizaries, where the person of Baiazes was, putting them merlan and Ba- in diforder, where he was flaine. About this time Axalla fet vpon them with the Auantguard, where as he was not in any fuch danger; for having furprifed one of the enemies wings, hee cut it all in pieces, and his footmen comming to ioyne with him, as they had beene commanded, hee faced the Battalion of the lanizaries.

The Prince seeing the charge Axalla had vpon his arme, sent ten thousand horse from his battaile for to fuccour him, and knit together the mayne battaile of Axalla, and to give once againe a charge vpon another Battalion of footmen, the which did shew it felfe, and came to joyne with and strengthen that of the lanizaries, who behaved themselves valuantly for the safetie of their Prince. This fight continued one houre, and yet you could not have feene any feattered. fighting resolutely the one against the other. You might have seene the Mountaynes of horses rull one against another, the men die, crie, lament, and threaten at one very time. The Prince had patience to fee this fight ended, and when hee did perceive that his men did give place. hee fent ten thousand of his Horse to joyne againe with the ten thousand appointed for the Arierward, and commanded them to affift him, at fuch time as hee should have need thereof. At 50 this very time the Emperour chargeth, and made them give him roome, causing the footmen to affault, ouer whom the Prince of Thanais commanded; who gave a furious on-let vpon the Battalion of the Ianizaries, wherein was yet the person of Baiazes, who had sustayned a great burthen. But the multitude, and not valour, did preuaile; for as much as might bee done in fight, was by the lanizaries performed, for to preserve the person of their Prince. But in the end the Horse-men, wherein was the Emperours person, gaue a new charge, and his Aagainst Bringer uantquard was wholly knit againe vnto him, hee renewed another forcing, and was fully victorious. Baiazet having retyred on horse-back out of the troupe of Ianizaries wounded, fell aliue into the hands of Axalla, vnto whom hee yeelded himselfe, supposing it had beene Tamerlan: then Axalla feeing him fo followed (being for a time not knowne but for fome great 60 Lord of the Ottomans) twentie thousand horse did not fight at all, but onely in pursuing the vi-Etorie, and they made a great flaughter. The Prince had his horse tlaine under him with the blow of a Lance, but he was soone remounted againe on horse-back. This day the wisdome of the Emperor gaue the victorie vnto his Souldiers: for the judgment which he had in tyring of the firong

forces of the Ottomans, was the fafeguard of his. For if all had gone vnto the battaile in one front, farely the multitude had put it felte into a confusion; but this manner of aiding his men made cuerie one profitable. The Emperour judging (like a great Captaine) of the need that every one of his fouldiers had, fo that this manner of proceeding was the getting of the victory. They accounted threefcore theusand men flaine of the Ottomans, and twentie thousand of ours. The Prince of Tirzis was flaine, as I have faid : the head of the Georgians flaine, Calibes was verie forrie hee had so easie a reckoning in his Arier-ward, being very couragious, and a gentle Knight : the Despote of Servia was taken prisoner, who did accompanie Barates, and was a Christian : they gaue him this day of battaile much reputation. The Emperour gaue vnto

10 him very good entertainment, reproouing him, for that hee did accompany Baiazet against him. who did come in fauour of his Emperour. Hee antwered him, that it was not according to his dutie, but the prosperitie of Baiazer, vitto whom it seemed, that all the world did bend for to subict it selfe vnto him, and that his safetie had caused him to set forward. The Emperour prefently thereupon gaue him leaue to depart at his pleasure. Hee tooke care to get into his hands Baiazet his children : hee gaue commandement that Baiazet should bee cured, and after brought before him : who at such time as hee was there never made any thew of humilitie. The Emperour faying vnto him, that it lay in him to caule Baiaget him to lofe his life, he answered: Doit, that loffe shall be my happinesse. And demanding brought before of him what made him for all, for to enterprife to bring into subjection so noble a Prince his pride,

20 as was the Emperour of the Greekes. Hee answered him, the defire of glorie and rule, Wherefore doest thou (faid the Emperour vnto him) vie fo great crueltie towards men, fo farre foorth that neither thou nor thine doe pardon either fex or age! This doe I (answered hee) to give the greater terrour to my enemies. Then faid the Emperour, io shalt thou receive the like reward; and causing him to bee conveyed againe out of his presence, hee turned vnto his followers, and faid, behold a proud and fierce countenance, hee deserueth to be punished with cruelcie, and it is neceffirie that hee bee made an exemplarie punishment to all the cruell of the world of the inft wrath of God against them. I acknowledge that God hath this day delivered into my hands a great enemy, wee must give thankes vinto God for the same: the which was performed, being yet day : for the battaile was wonne at foure of the clocke, and there 30 was as yet fine houres of day-light. The children of Baiazet were brought before him : hee

cauled them to bee vied curteoully, and as the children of an Emperour. The next day hee commanded the dead to bee buried: they found the Prince of Tirzis dead in the middeft of the Janizaries, where he remained enclosed. The Emperour did greatly lament this young Prince, who was his kiniman, and would have beene one day worthie for to doe him great feruice. Tamerian his In that battaile there died manie Captaines, & almost the chiefe Ottomans. This was a great Bat- saying of 84taile, the which was fought from leuen vnto foure of the clocke, in such fort that they knew issee. not vnto whom the victorie did incline. Our Armie stayed vntill the next day, every one caufing his friends to bee buried. The Prince of Tirzis was emblamed, and conveyed with two

thousand horse vnto Samarcand vntill the Emperour returned. All the other dead bodies were 40 buried at Sanas with all the honour that might be. Axalla was much grieued for his kinfman, because hee was verie well beloued of the Prince: his charge was given vnto one of his brethren who was verie famous; in fighting this fame day, we might judge the events of the matters of the world, Behold this Emperour Baiazet, who was, as hee thought, superiour to fortune, which in an instant found himselte and his estate by one battaile onely ouerthrowne euen vnto the lowelt place, and at fuch time as hee thought least thereof. Hee vied to fay, that hee was justly punished, for despiting the multitude we had, for the assurance that hee had in the The despite valour of his horimen, and especially of his Ianizaries. Hee was three dayes (as they report) be-of Ranger affor the could be pacified, as a desperate man, seeking after death, and calling for it. The Empeter he was taour did not vie him at all curteoully, but caused small account to bee made of him: and for to kenpresener.

50 manifest that he knew how to panish the proud; vpon festivall dayes, when as hee mounted on horseback, they brought this proud man vnto him, and he served him in stead of a foot-stoole: Briage: Tamarhorfeback, they brought this proud man vnto him, and he ferued him in flead of a foot-floole; this did he for to manifelt the folly and arrogancie of men, and how judly. God had humbled on money of the folly and arrogancie of men, and how judly for him the folly and arrogancie of men, and how judly for him the folly and arrogancie of men, and how judly for him the folly and arrogancie of men, and how judly for him the folly and arrogancies of the folly arrogancies of the folly and arrogancies of the folly and arrogancies of the folly and arrogancies of the folly arrogancies of the following the f him. The next day the Prince marched directly towardes Barfia, whither all the remainder horeback, of Baiaxet his Armie was retired, with the Bassa Mustapha. All the countrie yeelded vnto vs, and the Prince caused all the holdes and fortresses to bee ouerthrowne and destroyed, and punished all those which were so enill adused as to stay untill they were besieged. I had forgotten to declare, how hee caused the Prince of Tire is bodie to bee accompanied with had forgotten to declare, how nec cauted the Prince or 11761 noute to be declared, the which duers prifoners chained and tied together, whom hee did find voto Samareand, the which duers prifoners chained and tied together, whom hee did find voto Samareand. Fine 6, Tamarian his the Prince had determined to make great, for a perpetuall memorie of his greatnesse. Euen so

60 had hee greatly peopled with people of China, which had beene taken in the Battailes, concretchis and of those likewise which were taken out of the two great Cities, Faguinfon, and Quan. Citie Sometoufou. Now this batta le did bring great aftonishment vinto all the countries possessed by cond. Baiazet, and nobodie retifted vs, cuen vnto Barfia, whither this Armie was fled, and therein were also two sonnes of Banacet verie young. Axilla being alwaies a luanced forward before

Greete.

Prefents fent

our Armie, with fortie thousand Horse, and an hundred thousand Foot-men without any carriages, who hindred the Enemies from joyning themselves againe together : and hee made a cruell Warre vpon the Ottomans, deliuering the Gracians from the tyrannie of Baiazet, Hee Availed could approached neere vinto Burlia, where the Ottomans did not flay the comming of Axallet again the O: Armie, but only they which could not runne remayned behind. Baiazet his two Sonnes were tomass for the fent vnto the Greek & Emperour for to bring them vp, and to have mercie vpon them; the rest went vnto Gallipoli, for to goe vnto Andrinopoli, the which they held, having conquered it from the Grecians. Now the Prince (for to returne vnto my purpole)dispatched towards the Emperour his Vncle, and vnto the Empresse his Wife, one of his Familiars, called Lieban, Captavne of his Chamber, for to carrie him newes of this Victorie, and to joyne it alfo vnto all the rest. He fent unto him Baiazet his Sword and Bow, and the Caparitons of his Horfe, the which was efleemed to be worth aboue two hundred thousand Duckets. You may easily thinke that Prince Lieban was well entertayned of the old Emperour, and of the young Princefie, bringing word vnto them, that all the World did bend it felte to make our Prince victorious, who farely receiued thefe Victories from God without infolencie, and at fuch time as hee fent him most glory, then did his men note him to be least puffed vp. He was never bold, but in the day of battaile, and on the Eeue for to command seuerely, and with greater Majesty. To tell you what he was in advertitie, I did never fee him in that effate: but it is to be thought, that they which bee not infelent in prosperitie, are not faint-hearted in aduersitie. So our victorious Prince marched directly unto Burfia, loaden with Spoyles and Trophees which hee daily got, departing from the 20 Cities which did come and yeeld themselues vnto him; therein obseruing the same manner of proceeding, the which we did in the Conquest of (hina; they which did veeld vnto him without fighting, were well vied, and the obstinate well punished, the Prince knowing that reward and punishment are the Moderators of Common-wealthes, the one to bee vied towards the good, and the other towards the euill. In the end we received newes by Axalla, that he had receited Bursia in the Emperours name, and how the Inhabitants thereof had punished the Garritions of Baiazet, having driven them away, and flaine many.

But I dare not follow our Author any further from Tastatia, for whose sake I have entertained him. Leaving therefore his agreement with the Greeke Emperour, and secret visiting Constantinople; his comming to lerulalem, and Expedition against the Soldan, With his Exploits in Egypt, Syria, Perlia, we will returne with him to Samarcand.

d. IIII.

Encrease of Samarcand; Affaires of China: Funerals of the Can; comming to Quinza, and description thereof. His disposition of his estate and death.

keeping as well of Syria, as of the Soldans Empire, leaving continually men there, and drawing out Colonies, the better to fettle his Affaires in those places. So the Emperour leaving the Prince of Thanais, with his Army to attend his pleafure, he marched with therest of his forces into his owne Countrey with all the loves and Triumphes that might be possible, the chiefest Prisoners marching before the Emperour, amongst the which was Bainzer Emperour of the Turkes all chayned, and was a Spectacle vnto all the World of Forumes inconfrancy : hee continued notwithstanding in the same siercenesse wis woont to be in him. So wherefoeuer the Emperour paffed, the people affembled themselves by thousands, praying and finging his Victories. We arrived at the last at Samarcand with all our 10 fpoyles, in very great magnificence: where after we had been the fpace of one moneth or two in Featlings and Manificences, the Emperour with his accustomed Denotion, having in great tolemnitie vowed a Church and Hofpitall vnto his God, the most magnificent that might bec deuised. Whereupon to performe the same, he began to search out all sorts of Handicrasts men for to honour this Citie, the which hee had a defire to make one of the stateliest Cities in the World. And in one of the corners thereof he began, and did build there his Temple and Holpitall, making an account to increase yet this Citie, as large againe as it was, and to people the fame, with to many feuerall kinds of people and Nations as hee had brought with him, giving libertie vnto them all to frame and build their Houses, causing money to be distributed to do the fame, and giving all kinds of Priviledges and Freedomes vnto the Priloners, for to give them a 60 greater defire to build and fettle themfelues there : and having caused the threets and places to be plotted, and having appointed a place for every one to build upon, hee tooke no other place fure, neither had he any other care then the preferring the good will of his most famous Soildiers, whose name hee having caused to bee written in a generall Muster-booke, the which have

commanded to be made, from day to day, they (not thinking thereof) received honours. and good turnes of the Prince, in recompence of their fo great feruices. Now he declared the death of the Emperour his Vncle vnto his Councell (of which he before had received Intelligence, but kept it close) and forgot no Ceremony due vnto the honour of the faid Emperour outwardly, shewing the griefe he conceived for his death; where after hee had rested some eight daves, hee determined to goe unto Quinzai for to fee the Empresse, and having left Baiazes in the cultodie of the Gouernour of Zacheray, the Emperour fet forward with his ordinary Court which was of forty thousand Horse, and threescore thousand Foot-men.

The Emperour being come vnto Cambala, received newes of the Battell Odmar, had wonne Articles of a To against the King of Chinas, Captayne Generall, and how he pursued his Victory, having taken new agreement three or foure great and rich Cities, the which did yeeld themselves vnto him, and that againe betweene Tathe Chimsi did defire peace. The Emperour fent the Articles he required, which were that be-mirina and the fore all other things the King of Chima thould pay the Arrerages of the Tribute, the which hee King of Chima. had agreed with the Emperour, First, he should come in person to doe homage vnto his Majesty, and acknowledge himselfe as Vassall vnto his Empire. That the Army should withdraw it selfe during his Voyage, and he should deliuer up vnto him all his Cities, saving three such as the Emperour should nominate; and that the things should be restored vnto the same estate they were in before the Warre, when the Emperour made the first peace; that hee should pay the Army for fixe moneths, and should also satisfie all the expences of the War, seeing he had begunne it, and was Author of the breach of peace. Then the Emperour gratified Odmar, fending vnto him for Wife one of his Sifters with all magnificence that might be, for to make him the more affectioned vnto him. I will declare how the Emperour was received at Cambala by his Subjects, with all the magnificence polible, the Emperour for to gratifie them having reflored their Priviled-ges, the which he had taken from them, for the Rebellion they had committed with Calix: 10 as the Emperour went ouer all gratifying his Subjects for this new Succession that was lately fallen vnto him, all the Companies comming vnto him : for in these Countreves they have no certayne dwellings, they are alwayes wandring in troupes whereforeer they goe: thither the Empresse (hauing left Prince Axalla to gouerne at Quinzai) came vnto him. The Prince remayned there almost two moneths, having in this place given order for all the Affaires he had. Com-20 bala was also neere vnto mount Althay, where they vie to bury the Scythian Emperours, whom we doe call the great Cham.

The Emperor caused the body of the Emperour his Vncle to be brought thither, and himselfe would conduct it with all pompe, honouring not only his body, but also all that her had loued in the World, and although it was not the custome to cause women for to affist the Funerals, yet The magnifiwould he affoord this honour vato the Emprelle, that the should assist the bringing of the body, going neere vato the same. This he did, the more to make appeare how much he honoured the fewer tribeness. memory of the late Emperour in his Wife, being his Daughter, and also to the end that if God tarie. did take him away, his children being small, shee should have the greater authority, and bee the better acknowledged worthy to gouerne in the minoritie of his Children; and also for that thee 40 had beene brought up alwayes in authority; even fince shee was marryed. The Prince desiring thereby the more to acknowledge the honour the Emperour his Vncle had done him, by adopting him as his Sonne, and in having left him so great and large an Empire, as that was, whereof he left vnto him the pollession. Now the Emperour loued her onely, having no other affection in fuch pleasure, but only the happinesse of a faire Off-spring, the which he hoped for. Now the body of the late Emperour being come vnto Cambalu, he determined to conduct it vnto the buriall according vnto the accustomed Ceremony, and to put the body with the Kings and Em- Tamerlan his perours his Anceftors. After he had from point to point performed the laft Will and Telfament this less want of the late Emperour, he returned from these c vnto Campbala, where he fpent all Winter in Tilt and Turnyin a coine a hunting, making his shole there. Recause have the sound to bis good and Turnyin a coine a hunting making his shole there. and Turnying, going a hunting, making his abode there, feecause he was in a place neerest vnto Wife, the Kingdome of China, to know how matters passed there, having now brought cluther his last 50 Affaires, purpoling to goe thither in person the next Winter, if Odmar did not make an end of The young the Warsalreadie begunne, and if the King of China did not fubmit himselfe wholly under his Prince made chedience having departing do to depart from Combally most like Course of Course of obedience, having determined not to depart from Cambalu, vntill this Countrey were pacified, Quienci and the marke he shot at, being only to keepe that which his valour was able to conquer through his outrallibe

good fortune, being desirous to spend the rest of his life in enjoying the fruits of histraucis, and Countrey; for to publish his prayles vnto his people, and with Millions to maintayne them in peace. He which feemed had also a purpose to bring vnto an end that which hee had determined to doe at Samarcand. Now Axalla was at Quinzai, as well vnto the contentment of all the men of Warre, as the china, and per-Inhabitants, who defired much to fee their Prince, and having caused Prince Axalla in their be- haps in their halfe to beleech it, that it would please the Emperour to cause his Sonne to bee brought up a- times, Nan-

60 mongit them there, the which he did grant vnto them in fauour of the faid Prince Axella, elta- out was the blishing him for to command in the ablence of the Prince his Sonne, whom hee made Gouernour of Quinzat, from Cambalu even vnto the Sea. This Countrey was replenished with fome Quinzatof the three hundred Cities, and was in largenesse more then foure hundred leagues, besides an finite Totale (4).

162

authorifed on uer all the Kingdomes of Tamerlan, as Goucmour The King of

The meane ap. parellofTaomitted, asis alfo the most part of the

with the wonderfull fituation thereof. Tamerlanreceiued with great magnificence into Quinfay, with rich and rare prefents. The order hee tooke for his

Booke,

Tamerlan his notable faying of fuccession

Paribia.

Tamerlan his recreations, and notable faying thereof.

The admiration and excceding lone the people of Quinzay did

number of Villages. To make short, it was that the Emperour his Vncle gouerned, where this Avalla appoin- Prince Avalla was his Lieutenant generall, under the authoritie of the young Prince his fonne. ted the young vnto whom he deliuered him in charge for to be his Gouernour, authorifing him vnto the gouernement generall of all his Kingdomes: for the great wisedome that was in this Knight. made him beloued in all the Countreys under the Emperours obedience: the feruices also and great victories the which he had caused the Emperour to obtayne by his stout courage, and good conduct, who for these occasions put his principall trust in him, and after himselfe hee thought him onely worthie to preserue for his children his Kingdome and Empresse.

The King of China came to visit him at his Court, according vnto the couenants offered vnto him, the which he accepted: he did sweare once againe obedience vnto the Emperour, who China come vn. caused him to see all his greatest Cities, for to make himselfe the more to be feared of this Bee. to the Empe- barian, who kept no more promise then pleased himselfe. Hee was assonished to behold so marour Tamerlans ny Souldiers, and the Countrey fo well replenished with people; and aboue all, that they yied did iwearc vn. fo little curiofitie of riches in their apparell and garments, wondring that the Emperour was to him once a apparelled in meane Cloth of one colour, without any other fashion : but to countervale that gaine obedi. he had about him men which seemed to bee Kings. At the same time when the King of China was at the Coure, the Emperour received newes of the * victorie against the Soldan, for the which the Emperour rejoyced, making feasts and turneys in his Court in token of mirth, and this reioveing continued for the space of eight dayes. After the Emperour had given order for * This battell. the double paying of his Armie that came into Persia, under the conduct of the great Chamber- 20 laine, and Synopes Colonell generall in the Imperiall Armie, the Emperour went vnto Quinfa

for to fee his fonne, and wifit the people of this Countrey.

The Emperour arriving neere vnto Quinfay, Prince Axalla comming to meet him two dayes iourney off, with all the chiefe Lords of the Countrey, together with the principall Citizens, who were preparing for the Emperour the most magnificent receiving that might bee, as well The descripti- by water as by land. As this Citie is one of the richest in the world, so is it one of the greatest, on of the Citie and of the most wonderfull situation, being all wholly divided and overthwarted with channels, vpon the which are framed wonderfull and flately buildings, accompanied with an infinite number of Bridges, vpon the which they passe ouer channels: this Citie aboundeth with all kinde of spices, and in great quantitie, likewise with all manner of merchandises. The Emperour as foone as he was arrived, received presents of the Citizens, the which were esteemed to be worth about two millions of Gold, with a wonderfull variety of all rare and fingular things, the which they presented wnto him, for to testifie the love and obedience they did owe wnto him. The Emperour was defirous to fee his sonne, whom they brought vp with the accustomed greatnesse of Princes: and having caused the child to be brought before him, being of the age of feuen yeeres: he forbad from hence forward they should fuffer him to weare any thing vpon his head, and himfelfe did hang a Bowe about his necke, faying aloud, that they which fonnes educa- from their birth were called vnto foueraignties, should bee vied both vnto cold and heate, and should bee exercised in Armes betimes, and not brought vp delicately and easily, reprehending them which had the bringing of him vp, demanding of them, if they meant to make a woman 40 of him? And they answering, that he was tender. If he be not borne (faid he) for to be ftrong in Armes, he will not be worthy to succeed mee: for he must not be an effeminate Prince that shall preserve the Parthian Empire. Now he had sent the Empresse vnto Samarcand to be delinered, where shee was honourably received, having never beene there since shee was married. The Empresse Hee received newes that shee was there delivered of another goodly sonne, a thing which hee delinered of an caused to be published ouer all, and himselfe in token of ioy, made feasts sisteene dayes, with all other some at kindes of magnificent turneys: this he did for to shew his agilitie vnto this people, to the end, that as he excelled all his Court in vertues, that they should also judge him worthie to governe them aboue all other men. After he continued there a moneth, and having visited all the Seatownes neere vnto Quinfay, hunting all kindes of chafes, neglecting nothing notwithstanding 50 which belonged to his charge, faying often, that the recreations hee did take, were helpes for to ease him in the paines of his publike affaires whereunto God had called him. Hauing vpon his returne called together all the people, he published his lawes, which were all reuerenced of this people, as though they had proceeded from the Dininitie, so much admiration had enery one of the greatnesse of this Prince. The which I will truely declare vnto you, that so long as the Emperour was there, this people did almost nothing , being for the most part busied in beholding of him, not finding any greater contentation then that. Some of his Courtiers, and amongit the reft, Prince Axalla faid one day vntohim, that this was a Citie fit for his abode. O their Emperor, my friend, it is not fo: if they should see mee daily, they would make no more account of mee, The nature of It is a maxime, that the Lord of this great Citie must not goe thither but once in ten yeeres, and when he is there, it behooueth him to temper his actions, as if he were vpon a Scaffold rea-63 die for to play some Comedie, where granitie and good grace is necessary for to content the beholders: for the people doe easily receive an euill impression of their Prince, as they also doe a good, if you performe it well vnto them.

Now I has forgotten to tell you how the Emperour fent Prince Avalla in his name from Prince Avalla Quinfay is O bina, and his Imperiall Maiestie did not depart out of the Prouince before he re- sent moch at turned he went thither with great diligence for to establish peace there. Prince Axalla went for to establish formed towards Paguin, where he was received of the Governour with all possible honour: 2 peacethere. Are having affembled all the Emperours forces, hee let forward towards the borders of China. have an enterview at Pochio, where the meeting place was agreed upon. He paffed by Onenton went forward vnto Pochio, whither the King came also to meet with him; and hee entred full fiftie leagues into the Countrey newly conquered. It feemed vnto him a thing too much derogating from the greatnesse of the Emperour, the maiestie of whose person hee represented, if to he went any further to fee this barbarous King, being more fit that he should come torward into the Countrey conquered lately from him by Odmar, after he had obtayned the victory, then to goe into his Countreys although he had subjected them vnto the Emperour, and did pay a very great tribute. So the King of China arrived within a league of Pochio with all his Court: hee The meeting let forward vnto a Plaine, where he and Prince Axalla did fee each other, who was much bet. of Prince A. ter accompanied, from whom the King did as much differ as from the Emperours owne person. King of Chine They met three fenerall times together: the King defired to bee admitted into a Citie, which at Pechin, the Emperour had granted vnto him by the treatie. Prince Odmar declared that it was of great importance, therefore Prince Axalla was by the Emperour appointed for to bee Judge of this controuersie. In the end they required another further within the Countrey, the which the 26 King accepted : fo hee was put into possession of that Citie, the situation whereof was very pleafant, being compassed about with a Lake. Axalla having discovered that this barbarous

King, did earnestly defire it onely for his pleasure, and not for any other cuill intent, the Citie which hee deliuered being feated upon a Riuer further within his Countrey, and that other within our Countrey compafied about with our fortreffes: but Odmar did not allow of that. and supposed it to bee for an euill purpose, as for to contrine some new practifes. Odmar being an olde man, who knew the Kings vnfaithfulneffe, although hee had made him know it well enough vnto his fmart, having (as I have faid) wonne twenty or thirty Cities from him: and about fourescore leagues of Countrey, at such time as hee obtayined the last Battell, during the time that the Emperour was in his last Voyage against the Persians.

So the enterniew continued yet betweene Prince Analla and the King of China on the Plaine, a Tent being pitched, whither Prince Axalla did come vnto him, whom hee continually honoured as much as the Emperours owne perion, where after they had long time treated by Interpreters, it was in the end agreed, that the King of China should enter againe into Quinanci, not suffering him to put any Garrison into it, nor to fortifie the same : but even as a Priloner and Subject vnto the Emperour, hee should enjoy it, and it should bee his owne. enioving all the reuenue thereof, neither should hee carrie any kingly Enfignes, without the expresse leave of the Gouernour for the Emperour: hee should notwithstanding have a Theresolution guard of three hundred men for his person; and should give knowledge vnto the said Governour between A. of his iourney, before he entred into the Emperours Countries, the which hee must passe for to xalla and King 40 goe thither. Now the Citie was fituated in the middeft of a very great Lake, in the which were of chine. many Hands, wherein there were an infinite number of houses of pleasure, and it had beene alwaies a very delicate place, where the Kings of China were wont to recreate themselves in all kindes of pleasures that were there to be found: in so much as this barbarous King did not respect the conditions propounded vnto him, so as he might make his abode there, as it were in an Hermitage. Having left vnto his brother the government of his whole Kingdome, through King of China the displeasure he had of his bondage whereunto he was brought; a courage certainly magna. brother sucnimous, and worthie a Nation made civill with the best learning, and vnworthie the name of a ceeds.

Barbarian wherewith we called him. Three times in the weeke at Samercand, Tamerlan ministred open justice vnto the meanest, The inflice of 50 in his Imperiall Maiestie, a thing which made him beloued of the people ouer whom hee commanded. In the other dayes hee gaue secret audience for the affaires of his Estate, and tooke aduice for matters of importance, which were decided daily in his presence. He had such seueritie litte. in his counfell, that they must needs deale truely before him, and without all passion in discourfing : not withflanding he alwaies shewed himfelfe courteous in his conversation, and made himtelfe both beloued and feared of his people; hee neuer changed his feruants, except they committed great faults against him: of all the servants of the late Emperour his Vincle he did not change one of them, but hee did withall encrease their effates, making them in this change to feele his liberalitie, which he made strangers for to taste also, vnto whom he was accustomed to give, to binde them vnto him. He drew great store of money yeerely for tribute of the Mofeo-60 mite: but he distributed it within the same countrey for to maintayne his authoritie there, win-

ning those for his which might have hurt him, by meanes of giving voto them. Hee had great Tamerlin his care of his revenues, and he had fuch a readinesse, that he did see his estate from three moneths circuit his unto three moneths within one houre, both the ordinarie and extraordinarie expences, they remenue prefented it fo well digefted vnto him.

The death of the Emperour Tamerlan. Prince Sautofoatches.

Prince Saute-

But our halte of other voyages permits not our flay bere. Onely we will adde, that after A things or But our vaple of other commercial process of the great Conquerour; and this Transler transler to elect the way of all field into another world. Presently after his death they rame to call his some, ho as 100ne as he was come shut his eyes, powring out teares, as also did all his servants. The lines Samochio his eldeft fonne, within two houres after was proclaymed Emperour throughout. the whole Armie, and dispatches were made from all parts to advertise the Governours of Pro uinces thereof, the Letters being figned with the hand of the new Emperour, who having al and figured di. sembled all the Armie together, hee made an Oration vnto the Captaines and Souldiers, and caused them to make a generall muster, gratifying all the ancient Servants of the Emperour his Father: he would not dispose of any thing before he had seene Prince Axalla, and was inyned to with the Imperial Armic. This young Prince, when he came vnto this Empire was nineteene Prince Seutethis nineteene yeeres old, hee was faire, and had much of the Emperor his Fathers naturall disposition. They hoped that hee would wifely (through the good counsell that was about him) maintayne this great Empire : but they feared greatly the young Prince Letrochio his brother (whom his me ther loued) would cause divisions, as it happened in the times of their great grand-father betweene two brethren, who had beene occasion of the destruction of their estate, the which was releeved and lifted vp againe vnto his height by the valour of Tamerlan.

CHAP. IX.

or Gilan

Reports of GHAGGI MEMET & Persian of Tabas in the Province of * Chilan, touching bis Travels and Observations in the Country of the Great Can. unto M. G. BAPTISTA RAMVSIO.

This Citie of Succin is great and populous, with faire houses of hewen stones after our man

mer: and hath many great Temples with their Idols of ftone. It is fituate in a Playne where

Campion mentioned by M.



Ambaffadour to the great Can.

E faid that he had beene at Succeir and Campion, Cities of the Province of Tour guib, in the entrance of the State of Grand Can, who (faid he) was called Daimie Can, and fent his Officers to the government of the faid Cities, which are the first toward the Muslemans, and are Idolaters. He went thither with a Care si uan, which went with merchandifes out of Perfia, and from the places adiov. ning to the Calpian Sea, for the Regions of Cataio; which Caravan they permit No poffing in. not to pierce further then Succesir and Campion, nor any other Merchant therein, except here

Succuir descri-

Rhubarbe de-

runne infinite Rivolets; is abundant in victuals of all forts, and yeelds filke there made of the black Mulberies in great quantitie: hath no Wine growing, but they make a drinke with Hopy as it were Ale. Of fruits, by reason the Countrey is cold, there grow none but Peares, Apples, Apricocks, Peaches, Melons and Cucumers. Hee faid that Rhubard (of this commeditie Memet 4 had brought great flore at that time to Vonice) growes all over the Countrey; but the beft, in certaine high flony Hills neere adjoyning, where are many Springs and Woods of divers forts of high Trees, and the Land is of a red colour, and by reason of many Raynes and Springs almost alway myrie. He shewed out of his bosome a picture of the Plant, brought out of the Country (which Ramusio in his Preface to M. Polo hathalfo presented with this discourse) the description of which is this. The leaves, he faid, are ordinarily two spans long, more or leffe as the Plantis in bigneffe; narrow below and broad aboue, downy with (as it were) small hayres in their circumference; the stalke or trunke is greene foure fingers high, and sometimes a span from the ground : the greene leaves with age grow yellow and spread on the ground. In the midst of the trunke growes a thin branch with flowres fastned within, like the Mamole violets in forme, but 10 of the colour of Milke and Azure, and greater then those violets, of a noysome sent. The roote within ground is a span or two long, of a tawny colour in the barke, some as bigge as a mans The Root and thigh or legge, out of which grow little Roots or Sprigs, which spread in the ground, and are Inyce and pro- cut away from the great Roote; which within is yellow with many veynes of faire red, full of red and yellow juyce, cleaning to the fingers and making the hand yellow: and being cut in peeces the viscous juyce iffueth out and the roote becomes light; they lay them therefore on boords turning them vp and downe divers times a day, that the juyce should incorporate therein, lest it lose the goodnesse; after foure or fix dayes hanging them to drie in the winde, where the Sunne may not come at them, being in two moneths drie and perfect. They ordinarily take

A cold climate, it out of the ground in the Winter, the vertue being then most vnited in the Roote (the Spring 40

Six Saggi eunce.

there beginning at the end of May) which at other times is differfed into the leaves and flowers, that juyce also being gone and the roote light and hollow. They fell one of their Cart lodes of Roots with leaves for fixteene filuer Saggi (not much vnlike ours) for they have no Coynes, but make their gold and filuer in small thin rods, and thence

cut preces of a Saggio weight, which in filter is twentie Soldi Venetian, and in gold a Ducket and halfe. He faid that they would not eather it, if forren Merchants should not come to trade for it, themselves making no reckoning thereof : and that the Merchants of China and India carry away the greatest part; who if they should cut and dresse it as before is expressed, after it is brought in Caris, in foure or tix dayes it would corrupt; and feuen burdens greene (hee faid) would not yeeld about one drie. When it is greene it is intolerably bitter; and in Cataio they vie it not for medicine, but beate and mixe it with other odoriferous compositions for perfumes to their Idols. In some places there is such store that they burne it dryed in stead of wood; othere give it their crafed horses, so little doe they esteeme it in Cataio. But there they much Ic Prize another small Roote, which growes in the Mountaines of Succesir, where the Rabard prowes, and call it Mambroni cini, very deare, yfed for difeafes, those specially of the eyes; nor Mambroni citi did he thinke any of it was brought into these parts. He faid also, that in all Cataio they much vie the leaves of another herb, which they call Chiai Catai, which growes in a place of Catai, called Cacianfu. They boyle it, whether new or drie, and taking off a Beaker or two of that decoction fasting (as hot as can be borne) takes away the Feauer, payne of the Head or Stomack. Back, Toynes, and other difeafes, especially the Gowt, and it is good for digestion. They vie to carry it with them in their Voyages, and will give a fack of Rubarb for an ounce of Chiai Catas. And the Cataians fay, that if our Merchants, Perfians and Frankes, knew the goodnesse thereof,

they would buy no Rauend Cini, so they call Rubard. I asked him of his Voyage from thence to Conftantinople, and hee answered mee by Mambre our Interpreter, that hee returned not that way he went with the Carauan, by reason that the Greene-head Tartars called lescilbas, sent an Embassador at that time when hee was to come away, with a great company, by the way of Tartaria Deferta, about the Caspian Sea to the great Turke at Constantinople, to make a league against the Persian their common enemie. Whereupon The way of he thought good to come with them, and so did to Caffa. I asked of the way he went. He faid the Carauan he should have returned from Campion to Gauta in fix dayes (eight Farlencs, each of which is betweet Taura three Italian miles, are a dayes journey, but on the Hils and Defarts they goe not halfe fo much) in Card from Gauta to Succeir in five dayes, from Succeir to Camul in fifteene, here the Musulmans for Mahumetans) begin : from (annel to Turfon is thirteene. From Turfon they paffe three Cities. Chialis ten dayes journey thence, after that Cuchia other ten, and after that Acfu in twentie. From Acfa to Cafear are other twentie dayes all rough Defart, all the former way being

thorow places inhabited. From Cafcar to Samarcand are fine and twentie dayes. From Samarcand to Bochara in Corassam, five; from Bochara to Eri, twentie; from thence to Veremi in fitteene; from Veremi to Calbin in fix; thence to Soltania in foure, and thence to Tauris in

Now for some particulars of those places, he related that Campion is subject to Daimir Can, Campion degreat Emperor of the Tartars ; the Citie placed in a fertile Playne all cultivated and abundant in icribed. prousions. They are apparelled in black Cotton cloth, furred in Winter with skins of Wolues Apparell. and Sheepe if they be poore; the richer with Sables and Marterns of great price. They weare 40 black Bonets sharpe like a Sugar-loafe; the men rather small then great, wearing beards as we Bea ded men doe, specially a certayne time of the yeere. Their houses are of stone like ours, with two or Houses, three lofts, flope-roofed, and dinerfly painted, and they have one ffreet onely of painters. The great men for magnificence make a great Loft or Pageant, and thereon erect two Tents of filke Pageans. embroydered with gold, filter, pearles, and jewels, and therestand with their friends. This they cause to bee carried by fortie or fiftie Slaues, and so goe thorow the Citie in solace. The Gentlemen are carried on a limple Pageant, by foure or fix men without other furniture. There Temples are made like our Churches, fo great that they may contayne foure or fine thousand Temples and persons; and have in them two Statues, of a Man and a Woman, each fortie foot long, all of one 1dols. peece, firetched on the ground, and all gilded. They have excellent flone cutters. They bring

50 quarry stones two or three moneths journey on shod Carts of fortie wheeles very high, drawne Huge cartiby fine or fix hundred Horfes and Mules. There are also small Images with fix or fenen heads ages. and ten hands, all holding divers things, one a Serpent, another a Bird, a third a Flower, &c. There are some Monasteries in which live men of holy life, immured within their houses that Anchorate. they cannot goe out whiles they line, and have victuals every day brought them. There are innumerable, like our Friars, which goe up and downe the Citie. They have a cuftome, when Friars. one of their kindred dyes, to clothe themselves in white many dayes made or Cotton; their gar. White more ments are made long to the ground with wide fleeues. They vie Printing of their Books, which he thought fomewhat like those I shewed him at M. Thomas Guntos printing house. Their Ci- Printing. tie is fortified with a thick wall, within filled with earth, able to carry feure Carts abreft, with I orthogonore

60 Towers and Artillary as thick as those of the great Turke. The Ditch is wide and drie, but they can make it runne with water at their pleafure. They have a kind of very great Oxen with the and over long, thin and with hayre. The Cattions and Idolaters are forbidden to goe out of their Coursellion for tries, to goe on merchandife thorow the World.

Beyond the Delist about Corassan to Samarcand, and till the Idolatrons Cities, the Ieledia

Limia.

luggling knaues.

The telethes or rule, which are Tartars, Mululmans, wearing greene sharpe Turbants of felt, so making a difference Green-head rence betwixt them and the Persians, which weare them red: and betwixt them two for diverfitie of opinions in Religion are continual warres, and difagreement about their Confines, Booms and Samarcand are two Cities of these Green-heads, each a Signorie of it selfe. They have chimia, Simia, three particular sciences, Chimia (in the same sense as here) Limia, to make and cause loue, and Simia, to make men see that which is not. The moneys which they have are not Coyned, but euery Gentleman and Merchant makes thin rods of gold and filuer, as is before faid of Camping Prating moun- and Succesir. In the market place of Campion are every day many Mountebankes which have that science of Simia, which compassed with a great multitude present strange sights, asto cause a man to cut off his arme, or thrust himselfe thorow with a sword, and seeme to be all to bloudy, with other like.

CHAP. X.

A Treatife of China and the adjoining Regions, written by GASPAR DA CRVZ a Dominican Frier, and dedicated to SEBAS-TIAN King of Portugall : here abbreviated.

· of Camboia and the Bramenes there; the cause of his going to China : of China and the neighbouring Regions.



Being in Malaca building an house of my Order, and preaching, was informed that in the Kingdome of Camboia (which is subject to the King of Siam, and lyeth toward the parts of China, and doth confine with Champa, whence commeth to the most precious Calambach) was great oportunitie to preach the Gospell, and to reape some fruit. Having leave of my Prelate, I tooke the journey in hand. And after the passing many troubles and hunger in the journey, with dangers and sicknesses, I

came a land, and after I had reasonably informed my selfe by a third person, conversing with the People and with the Fathers, even before I knew it I found all to the contrary of that which they had told, and that all were deceits of the simple Laytie, which of light matters were mooued to prefume of the people that which was not in them. And besides this, I found many hin-King of cam- derances for the obtayning of my defires and intent; for first, the King is a Bramene, and the bia a Bramenes. Bramenes are his principall men and his fauourites, and most familiar, because they are Witches, for they are much given to bee pleased with witchcrafts, and they doe nothing without confulting the Witches and Bramenes that are in the Kingdome (for by this meanes they thrine) by the Deuill. And to the first thing that the King asked me, was if I were a Witch.

Probar miffur. Pralocustur.

The Bramenes doe worthin among others one God, which they call Probar miffur (which they faid made the Heauens and the Earth; and another God, which they call Pralocussar, this allo having obtayned power of another which they call Praisfur, for to give this licence to Probat misser) and I shewed them, that not onely he had not made the Heaven and the Earth, but that hee had beene a very wicked man and a great finner : wherefore these Priests faid, that they would worship him no more, having worshipped him thitherto with their God Praput prasar metri : whereupon the hatred of the Bramenes increased towards me, and from thence forward I had disfauours of the King, which was mooued for the zeale of his God, and the God of his Bra 10 menes. There met about these matters, the Priests of the Idols, and all of their troupe, which goe for Priefts, and hold themfelues for religious men, and in their conversation and life they are separated from all other people, which to my thinking is the third part of the people of the Land; the King thereof fetting an hundred thousand men in the field. This religious people, or that holds it felfe for fuch, are exceedingly proud and vaine, and aline they are worthipped for gods, in fort that the interiour among them doe worship the superiour like gods, praying vnto them and proftrating themselues before them: and so the common people haue a great confidence in them, with a great reuerence and worship: in fort that there is no person that dare contradict them in any thing, and their wordes among them are held for fo facred, that in no wife they will endure to be gainfayed. Infomuch that it hapned fometimes whiles I was preaching, 60 many round about me hearing me very well, and fatisfying themselues of that which I faid vnto them; if there came any of these Priests, and said this is good, but ours is better, they would all depart and leave me alone. Further, they being very ignorant prefumed to be very wife, and the common people did hold them for tuch, all their knowledge being ignorances and Heathenin

They make seuen and twenty Heauers, some where there is meate and drinke and faire wo- Twenty seuen men whether they fay all living things doe goe, even the Flea and the Lowfe, for they fay, that Heavens as they have foules, that they must have in the other World. And to these, they say, all doe goe that are not R. ligious men as they are. They place others higher, whether they fay, their holy Prietts doe goe that live in the Wildernesses, and all the felicitie they give them there, is to sit refreshing themselves with the wind. They place others yet higher, the gods of the which, they fay, have round bodies like Bowles, those which goe to these Heavens, and the honour w. ich they give them is, to give them round bodies as the Gods themfelues have. And even as they Thirteene make many Heanens, to they doe many Hels, for they make thirteene, to the which they goe Hels.

to according to the grieuouinefle of the finnes of every one, eyther higher or lower.

They have a duilion of their religious men, for some they call Massacraches, which are as Massacraches fupreame, which fit about the King : others they call Nascendeches, which are as our Bishoppes Nassendeches, here. Thefe fit equall with the King. Others they call Mitires, which are in the common de- Mitires. gree of Priests, which do fit vinder the King : vinder the which there are yet two degrees, which they call Charnizes and Sazes. And all these they ascend in degree, so they doe in vanitie and pride, and are more reuerenced. Besides all this, there is another very great inconuenience, that except the Priests and all those that holds themselves for Religious men, all the rest are slaves of the King, and when the owner of the House dyeth, all that is in it returneth to the King, and let the Wite and Children hide what they can, and begin to fecke a new life; the people of the 20 Countrey is of such a nature, that nothing is done that the King knoweth not : and any bodie be he never to simple may speake with the King; wherefore every one feeketh newes to carry vnto him, to have an occasion for to speake with him : whereby without the Kings good will nothing

can be done, and wee haue already shewed before, that hee is vnwilling to the matter of Chri-Rianitie. To these things was joyned some disorders of the Portugals, so that by all meanes I found croffes and inconveniences for to obtayine my defires and my pretence; wherefore I having beene in the Countrey about a yeare, and feeing I could make no fruit befide the paffing of grienous ficknesses, I determined to leave this Countrey, and because they told mee many things of China, and the people of it to have a disposition to Christianitie, and that they loved reason. I determined, seeing in this Countrey I did no goo 1, nor baptized more then one Gentile, which I 20 left in the Caue, to goe to China in a ship, of China which was then in the Countrey: in which

they carryed me with a very good will, giuing me the best roome in the hip, not taking any interest of me; yea, they dealt very charitably with me. This name (blue is not the proper name of the people of this Countrey, nor of the Countrey it felfe, neither is there commonly in the Countrey notice of such a name, onely among all the people of India, and among those which dwell in the South parts, as in Malaca, Stam, Iaoa, this denomination of Chinas goeth currant, and also among those Chinas which doe traffique among vs. The proper name of the Countrey is Tame, the e. not well pronounced, but almost drowning it: and the name of As this word the people of the Countrey is Tamgin, whence this name China doth come, which is currant a- Tame in English

mong the strangers we know not, but it may be conjectured, that the people which in old time 40 did layle to those parts, because they passed by the Coast of a Kingdome, which they call Canchin-china, and traffique in it, and victuall, and take refreshings there for the Journey of the Countrey that lyeth forward, which is that of China, in the which Kingdome they live after the manner of the Chinas, and is subject to the Chinas, it femeth, that omitting Cauchin, from the denomination of this other Kingdome, they called all the Countrey that lyeth along

China is a great part of Scythia; for as Herodotiu faith, Scythia extendeth it felfe vnto India, which may be vinderstood, because the Chinas did possesse many parts of India, and did conquet them of old time, whereof at this day there are some Monuments, as in the Coast of Choremandell, which is towards the Coast of the Kingdo ne of Narsinga, on that side which we call Saint Thome, because there is a House built by the Apostle, and the Relikes of his bodie. There 50 is at this day a great Temple of Idols, which is a marke for the Natigators to know the Coast which is very low, the which as the men of the Countrey affirme, was made by the Chinas, of whom there remayned among them a perpetuall memory, and therefore they call it Pagode, of the Chinas, which is to fay, Temple of the Chinas. And in the Kingdome of Callecut, which is the head of M lanar, there be very ancient truit-trees which the men of the Countrey fay The Tertarrawere planted by the Chinas, and on the shoales of Chilae, which doe runne from the Iland of ther let forth Ceplan, toward the Coaft of Cheromandel, is affirmed, by the men of the Countrey, a great Ar- na to these Exmy of the Chinas to be call away which came for India, which was loft, because the Chinas were ploits as in Pobut young in that Nauigation. And so the men of the Countrey say the Chinas were Lords of lo you reade. all I and, and of I autana, which is the Kingdome of Malaca, Siam, and of Chapaa, as it is com-

60 monly affirmed in those parts: wherefore some doe affirme, many of this people to beelike the Chinas, that is, having small eyes, flat noses, and long faces, for the great commixture that the Chinas had with all of them, especially with them of laon, which commonly are more Chinalike. But the King of China seeing that his Kingdome went to decay, and was in danger by

their feeking to conquer other strange Countreyes, he with-drew himselfe with his men tohis owne Kingdome, making a publike Edict under paine of death that none of the Countrey should fayle out of the Kindome of China: the which lafteth to this day. The Liquos are not continued with mayne Land, but it is an Iland which standeth in the Sea

of China, little more or leffe then thirtie leagues from China it felte. In this Hand line these people, which is a well disposed people, more to the white then browne. It is a cleanly and well attyred people; they drelle their haire like women; and tye it on the fide of their head, fastened with a filter bodkin; their grounds are plentifull of many and good waters; it is a people that fayle very feldome being in the middeft of the Sea. They weare good shore Swords, they were tayle very tenome occur in one minor to the whom they had great convertation, therefore are very to like the Chinas. Now this Iland remayning to the Sea from China, as we have faid, the Coaffor China runneth, winding from the Prounce of Cantano, and from her Coast vnto the Coast of the Promince of Nanguin, whether to the Portugals have fayled, the Coast making neuera point as the Maps doe make, the which may be seene well pointed in the Sea-cards and in the

tarians, a Wall of an hundred leagues in length. And some will affirme to bee more then a hundred leagues : the first Kingdome that doth confine withit on the Sea-side of India, is one that

is called Cauchin-china, which hath about an hundred leagues little more or leffe a long the Sea. 30

coast, the Sea maketha great entrance betweene it and the lle Daman, which is of fiftie leagues

in length, and is already of the Chinas: and in the end of this entrance this Kingdome abutteth with the Kingdome of China, and is subject to the King of China. The people of this Kingdome

Syam, and with the rich Kingdome of Pegu, with all the which Kingdomes it hath Traffique; ?

in fort that there remay eth to this Kingdome towards the Sea of India, all the Coaft of Press.

vato the ends of the Kingdome of Champaa, which doth confine with Cauchin-china. And fo

there remayne to thele Lass toward the side of the Indian Sea, the great Kingdome of Pesuthe

Maps made among the Portugals. The Tartars are reckoned among the Scythians, and runne fo far along China, with the which it hat h continuall Warre, that commonly they affirme to have betweene the Chinas and the To-

Daman an

Lass or Siones

in their Habit, Policie, and Gouernment, doe vie them selues like the people of China. The Countrey is much inhabited and of much people, it is also a very plentifull Countrey. They haue the same Writing that the China haue, although their speech be divers. Beyond this Kingdome of the Cauchin-chinas, lyeth another very great Kingdome, which runneth within the Land along China, which some doe call Laos, and others Stones, Maons: this by the otherside towards India, doth confine with the Kingdome of Cambon, and with the great Kingdome of

Kingdome of Tanagarin, and that of Quedas, and that of Malaca, and the Kingdomes of Pas, of Patane, of Syam, of Camboia, and of Champaa which abutteth vpon the Cauchin-shinas. This Kingdome of the Lass, or Sions Maons, was funded by the Bramas (of the which we will speake presently) in the yeere of fiftie fixe, and among some which they brought captine to Pega ther brought some (binas which the Lass held Captines, as one George Mello affirmed vinto met, which went for Captayne of the Voyage to Pegu. And though commonly there be no Warres betweene these Lass and the Chinas, because of the great Mountaynes that are betweene them, 40 on the which the Chinas have good forces on that tide in the Province of Camfi, which doth confine with these and with the Bramas: and in the forces they have continually men in Garrifon for the defence of those parts: there bee notwithstanding, continually assults on the one fide and of the other : whereby the Lass might have fome Chinas captive. Before that thefe Lass were subdued by the Bramas, they carryed to Sion, to Camboia, and to Pegu some very good Muske and Gold, whereof is affirmed to be great flore in that Countrey, and these people having Muske, makes a conjecture the great store of Muske which the Chinas have, they get it from the many healts that are in the Confines of this Kingdome in the Province of Comf, from whence they bring it.

Muske what

The Muske is the flesh and bloud of certayne beasts, which they say, to be as bigge as Foxes, 50 the which beaten with flrokes and killed, they tye the skinne with the flesh together in lumps, the which they cut after the flesh is rotten, and so they sell it, which the Portuguls do call Muske Cods. And when it commeth fresh, presently it appeareth to be rotten flesh and bloud: the rest they fell loofe, holding these Cods for the finer Muske. Returning to the Lass, whereof we were speaking, these be the Wares which they brought to the aboue-said Kingdomes, carrying in returne Cotton-clothes and other things they had need of. This people is not very browne, they weare their haireall cut round viderneath, and all the rest aboue ruffled, raying it many times vpward with their hands, that it remayneth to them like a Cap, and serueth in Head of one, for they weare nothing on their heads; they goenaked from the middle vpward, and from the hips downward, they weare certayne Cotton-clothes girt about them all white: the women goe couered from the brefts to the halfe legge: they have their faces some-what like the Chinas, they 62 have the same Heathenish Ceremonies that the Pegus and Siones, and the Camboias: The Priests of their Idols doe weare yellow clothes girt about as the rest of the people, and a certayne manner of yellow Copes, with certayne folds and feames in which they hold their Superflitions.

Or this people I faw many in Camboia, which remayned there the yeere before by the way of Traffique, and that yeare that I was there, they came not because of the Warres, wherein(as I faid) they faid they were subdued by the Bramas.

Thele Lass came to Camboia, downe a River many daies Iournie, which they fay, to have his beginning in China, as many others which runne into the Sea of India : it hath eight, fifteene, and twentie fathome water, as my felfe faw by experience in agreat part of it; it paffeth through many vnknowne and defart Countries of great Woods and Forrests, where there are innumerable Elephants, and many Buffes, of which I law many wild in that Countrie, and Me- River of the rus, which is like a good Mule, and certayne beafts which in that Countrie they call Bades: of Last Io the which the Male have a pointleffe and blunt Horne in their fore-head, and fome of the Menu are Hornes are footted with fingular colours, and others all blacke, others of a waxe colour, but they kind of wild haue no vertue, but only for the Hemorroides, or Piles: and after the Elephant there is no other Redu are the greater beaft; the haire of it is browne and footed like an Elephant, the head like a Cow, and it Rhinocerotes hath a great lumpe of flesh that falleth vpon his head, whereof I did eate travelling in those by the forepares. There are also many other wilde Beaftes. There bee some Thorny Trees, like Limons head underand Oranges, and many wilde Grapes through the Woodes. When these Lass doe re- flandshe faces turne to their Councrie, going against the streame, they goe in three moneths. This River caufeth a wonder in the Land of Camboia, worthy of reciting. Comming neere to a place which the fore-head. they call Chudurmuch, which is twelve leagues from the principall Citie of Camboia, it maketh Coudurmuch. 20 a passage to another River which commeth from a great Lake, that is in the vetermost parts of Camboia, and hath Sians, on the other fide : in the middelt of the which his bigneffe being great, Larth yee can fee no Land on neither-fide, and this River paffeth by Locob, which is the principall Citie of Cambona, vnto Chudurmuch: the waters of this River, which is also verie great, the most of them doe paffe to the River that commeth from the Lass, neere to (budurinuch, and the reft doe run downe the River directly to the Sea, when the great Winter floudes doe come, which happen when it raines not in the Countries of Camboia. The many waters which doe come by Siller. the River that commeth from the Laos, which there they call Sifter, doe make a paffage right against Chadarmach, to the River that passeth through Lock, with so great furie, that where the waters of Leech did run downward, by multitude of the other that entreth into it, they are fresh Ruser ac turned backe and run vpward with a great current : in fort that it overfloweth all the Countrie running vp of Cambois, whereby all the Countrie is not travelled in the time of these flouds, but in Boates, without Sesand they make their Houses all with high lofts, and underneath they are all overflowne, and force. fometimes these flouds are so high, that they are forced to make higher Roomes with Canes to keepe their houshold-stuffe in, and to lodge themselues. This River runneth vpward from July

to September, and with the passing from the River that commeth from the Lass, (or from the River Siftor, which is his proper name) of fo many waters to the River of Loech, it doth not leave his running to the Sea, making below verie great armes, and goeth verie high over-flowing many Countries downward, but not so much as aboue. The Portugals did shew mee in Loech a field, a great hill of Earth, over the which they affirmed that in the time of the flouds a great 40 ship that was made in the Countrie did passe without touching, which ship might well have sayled from India to Portugall.

Beyond these Lass, tollow the Brames, which is a great people, and very rich of Goldand Precious stones, chiefly of Rubies. It is a proud Nation and valiant, these are now Lords of Pegu, which subdued it by force of Armes some yeares before they subdued the Lass, they are men of good complexion, and well made, they are browne. They have Pegu and part of Bengala toward the Sea of India. It is a Countrey very scarce of victuals, they apparell themselves as we faid of the Lass, but that their clothes are fine, and many do weare them painted or wrought: they are also somewhat like the Chinas in the faces, they have very rich and gallant shippings garnished with Gold, in the which they sayle in the Rivers: they vse Veffels of Gold and of 50 Siluer, their Houses are of Timber very well wrought, the Kingdome is very great, they have not commonly warre with the Chinas, because of the great Mountaynes that are between the one and the other, and because the Chinas are well fortified on that fide: notwithstanding this, fometimes there are Robbers on the one side, and the other that doe make affaults, whereby the Chinas haue some Bramas Captiues, as some Portugals which were Captiues in those parts, which faw them did affirme, and did speake with them in the great Citie of Cams: and these flames told them, that from thence it was not very farre to Brama, and that in Pegu, they had

There followeth along the China beyond the Bramas, the Kingdome of the Paranes, which The Paranes. now are Lords of Bengala, and after them the Mogores. Beyond these Mogores there runneth along the Chima, the Tartarians, which doe extend themselves from Mogor to the Lake Meetis and the River Thanais, which is a very great Kingdome and of much and innumerable people. This people are commonly red and not white, they goe naked from the waite vpward, they eateraw fielh, and anoint themselves with the bloud of it: whereby commonly they are flinking and have an ill fent.

Mountaynes,

It was affirmed to the Portugals which were Captines, and in Prifon in their Dungeons, in the yeare 1 < 0. that some yeares there is Truce betweene the Chinas and the Tartarians : and in the Tattarian rodes fame yeare the Tartarians made a great entry in China, in the which they tooke a very prine cipall Citie from them : but a great number of people of the Chinas comming and belieging the Citie, and not being able to enter it by force of Armes, by the Councell of a man of low degree, they had a meanes whereby they killed them and their Horses, and remayned Lords againe of the Citie. The same Portugals which afterward were set at libertie, affirmed, that all the Prisoners made great Feasts, and made a great stirre when the Tartarians made this m entry, with the hope of being fet at libertie by the meanes of the Tartarians, if they did pol-

See Pinto. * Here fol-

In the Citie of Cantan I faw many Tartarians Captines, which have no other captinitie then to serue for men at Armes in other places farre from Tartarie, and they weare for a difference red Caps, in all the reft they are like the Chinas with whom they line : they have for their maintenance a certayne stipend of the King, which they have paid them without faile. The China lowed the diui- call them Tatos, for they cannot pronounce the Letter r. Aboue the Lake where Thanais hath his beginning, they doe confront with the skirts of high Almayne, although on the fide of Europe, Country into and betweene them and Almayne are Hils that doe divide them: and of these people of the forces or King - skirts of the Mountaines, the Chinas fay that the King of Chinas hath many men of Warre in 30 pay, that doe keepe the weake paffages and the Wals on the fide of the Tartarians: and fay, &c. which wee they are great men with great Beards, and weare cut Hole, and Caps, and blunt Swords, and referre to later a Portugall that was carryed captine the Land inward, told me that he heard the Chinas fay, that they called their . Alimenes.

Cantan described; the publike and private buildings and Government. The Shipping and Husbandry of China; their contempt of the idle, and provision for impotent

ExEing to intreate of the Citie of Cantan, I give first a warning to the Readers , thatamong many Noble Cities, Cantan is one leffe Noble then many of China; and farte inferiour in building then many other: although it be more populous then many; this is faid by all them that faw it, and travelled within the Land, where they faw many

other. This aduice prefupposed, it is to be noted, that Cantan in his compasse, is of very strong Wals, very well made, and of a good height, and to the light they feeme almost new, beeing eighteene hundred yeares since they were made, as the Chinas did affirme : they are very cleane 50 without any cleft, hole, or rift, or any thing threatning ruine. They are of free flone about 2 mans height, and from thence vpward of brickes made of a clay like vnto that of the Porceline Dishes, whence it causeth them to bee so strong, that I building a Chappell in Malaca, one of thele (which was brought from China) could (carfly bee broken with a good Pick-axe. Jointly with this there is in this Citie and in all the reft an Officer of the King which onely hath care to ouer-fee the Wals, for the which he hath a good stipend. And enery yeare when the Gouernour of the Borders commeth to visit the Prouince, hee doth visit this as well as the other Offcers, to know if he doth well his Office, and finding him in any fault, or negligence, hee is put from his Office, and punished. And if he standeth in need of any expence for the mending of the Walls, the Over-feer of the Rents is bound to give him that which is necessarie, ander paine, 60 that if the mending remayneth vindone, he shall bee well punished. For this cause the Wals of all the Cities are continually kept found and in good reparation. These Walles are within the Citie little more then the walke of the same Citie in their height, which is the cause of beeing much more cooler. The Wals have in compaffe 12:50, paces, and it hath eighty three Bulwarks.

CHAP. 10, S.2. Large description of Cantan a Citie of China.

This Citie (and so all therest) hath on the one side the River, along the which, as well this as the reit are built almost in a Valley; and on the other fide they have a Ditch full of water of a Town duch. good breadth, betweene the which and the wall remayneth a good diffance where there may runne together a good troupe of people, and the Earth that was taken out of the Ditch, was call betweene it and the wall, whereby the foot of the wall remayneth a great deale higher then the other ground. Besides the dirch, notwith standing, this wall hath a great blemish, for it hath on the contrariofide to the River without the wals, and the ditch a little, Hillocke that difcouereth all the Citie within the wals.

(Elis wall both feuen gates : the entries of the which are sumptions and high , strong and The Gates. To well made, wattle Pinacles aboue, not square but made like steps. The other places of the wals have no Pinacles: the wall at the entring of the gates is twelve paces thicke : the gates ate all oner plated with Iron, and all of them have their draw-bridges very strong, which are alwayes Draw-bridges. vp, and are never let downe, but are ready against they be needfull: all the gates at the entrings haue Courts, and the Courts that are toward the fide of the Suburbs, which lyethalong the Ri- Gate courts. uer haue eucry, one three gates, one in the front and two on the fides, which remayne for the fervice of the te that Ive along the wall, the wals of the Courts are almost of the height of them within the gate which is in the front in the Court, is like voto that of the wals within ; it hath allog straw bridge; the gates which are in the fide of the Courts are small. The Courts that are on the other-fide of the field where no Suburbe is , have no more but one gate , and this not

20 right against that of the walls, but stand on the one side: the freets of the Citie are all drawne by a Line very straight without any manner of making a nooke or winding: all the croffe wayes are as flraight, as the flregts : in fort that there is neyther ffreet nor traverie that maleth any tur. Strait freets ning. All the dreets and traueries are very well paued, the pauements going along the Honies, and paued. and lower in the middeft for the course of water; the principall freetes have triumphant Atches which doe croffe them, high and very well made, which make the ffreets very beautifull. and enoble the Citie: the principall streets have along the Houses close Portals, in the which and vader the Arches many things are fold.

The Houses of them which rule the Countrey, are at the entrings very semptuous, with high Houses of Mar Portals, great and well wrought of Masons worker they have in the fore-front very great gates giftrates. 30 like the gates of a Civic; with two Giants painted with Clubs in their hands : I faw foure in one Pagode, (which is a Temple of Idols) drawnenaturally from fome, which they fay, the King hath to keepe his weaked passages from Tartaria. They are of great members, of about twelge or thirteene spans high, On the street side it hath right against the principall Porch a receite not very great. It hash built along the street a good wall of a good height right against the Court.

gate, that when the gate is open they that are within may not be gazed on by them that goe by the firet; this gate ferneth not, neither is it opened but for dispatching of matters of luffice. and the principal of the House goe in and out at them; and others that are as honourable or more then they : at the one fide of this principall gate is another very great gate, but not fo big as the principall, which is for the feruice of the House, and of the Prifoners when the principall 40 gate is shut : and when this principall gate is shut , they set a glued Paper crosse over both the leaues, on which is written the name or firme of the principall of the House, and for to open it againe, an Officer of the House bringeth the same firme or marke on a playstered board to the Porter; that hee may open it, without the which token hee may not open it ynder a great punishment.

Entring by this gate, there is a great Court and almost square, which is almost a Horse-race. and it hatha Gallery little leffe then the length of the gate, which leadeth straight from the gate to a very great Table that stands at the end of the Court, the which is all paued with square flones with leanings as high as a mans waste, and it is high in the entry of the gate, and there Sandrie of remayneth onely one step in the end of it to the Table, and the course in the sides of the Galle-50 ty is low, that they goe downe to it by steps: this Gallery of the middest is of such respect a- high Magimong them, that in no wife it is lawfull for any one to palle through it, but onely some of the fleater. chiefest of the House, or others as great or greater then they; and those that goe to nego late with the Officer of the Houle when they enter in at the gate, they must goe presently to one fide, going downe to the Court which hath very great Trees for shaddow, and they goe vp againe by steps vnto the Table about faid, which is at the end of the Court, which is very great. In the end of this Table in all his length there is a step, and within the step a very great walke, all paued with square stones as the Table without it, and very high and all wrought with Mafons worke : in the middeft of it leaning to the wall of the front are two Chaires, with two Tables before them, a little distant the one from the other, one of them, which stands on the

60 left hand, serueth for the Gouernour of that house, and that of the right hand is void, for if there should come another of a higher dignitie then hee, to sit him downe. To every one of the sides there are two spaces which runne behind this Gouernour, and are of a good breadth, having placed along the fides of these two spaces in every one five Chaires with five Tables before them, and as the distance from them to the principall Governour is good, they remayne though behind,

Officers of the House, which are many, as we will shew in their place. On every fide of the Court are very great Prifors and great Lodgings, as well for the law. lours (which allo are of great authoritie) as for the Watches that watch by night and by day, but neither these Prisons nor the Chambers of the Ministers of them, nor the Lodgines of the chiefe of the House are seene outward, for they are serued of all things, the doores that and bene continually their Porters. There are in Comen toure of these Houses for foure principall Off. continuary their reacts. An the Citie, that is, the Head of the Promisee there are success there are Houses: in Cantan there are but foure; for as the Governour of Cantan is also Governour of Cantan he is not refident in Cantan, but in a Citie that is in the Borders of one of the Provinces, that the recourse in the Affaires of both the Proninces may be the easier. Besides, these principall Houfes of the chiefe Gouernours, there are many other in Cantan, the which though they bee not of fo great Maieflie as they, they are notwithflanding very great, of other inferiour Officers, and chiefly those of the chiefe laylour which are very great. There is on the wals of Cantan, on the contrary fide of the River a high Towre all close behind, that they which are in it may not be feene, nor gazed on from the Hillocke or Mount aforefaid, that was without the wals, and it in built in length along the wall, to that it is longer then broad, and it is all made in Galleries very fumpenous, from whence they discouer all the Cicie, and the Marshes and Fields beyond the River, which ferueth for the recreation of them that rule. In the other Cities are fuch butdings which terue for recreation, many and very fumptuous, and of fingular building.

The Houses of the common people in the outward flow, are not commonly very faire, but Primare houses, within are much to be admired; for commonly they are white as Milke, that they feeme like fleeked Paper, they are paued with fquere itones : along the ground; of a spanne little more or leffe, they are dyed with Vermilion, or almost blacke; the Timber is all very smooth and even. and finely wrought and placed, that it feemeth to be all polished, or dyed, or in white, and fome there is in white to faire and pleasant to the fight, waterd Damaske-like, as it were Gold, and so bright that they should doe it injurie in painting it. I confesse, in truth, that I never faw fo fine Timber as that. It hath after the Houle that is at the entrie , a Court with folices of finall to Trees; and Bowers with a faire little Fountayne : and then at the entring of the House where the women doe with-draw themselves, it hath a certaine manner of a Gallery open before towards the Court, where they have verie great Cubboards finely wrought , which takes the one square of the House, in the which they have their Oratories, and Gods made of Wood, or of Clay: these Oratories are more or lesse curious according to the abilitie of everie one; all the Houses are tiled with very good Tiles, better, and of more continuance then ours : for besides. they being well made, they are of verie good Clay: those which receive the water are broad and short, and the uppermost that close, the other are narrower, and at the ends toward the street fide, they are garnished with fine Workes made of Lime : for many yeares they have no need to be tiled againe, for as the Clay is very good, they are not fo mouldring as ours, or fo rough, but 40 they are very smooth and warme, and beeing so well set they breed no filthinesse. There bee many Houses faire within, and very few with Lofts, the most are low Houses,

They have in the middest of the Cities Temple of Idols with high Towres, the wals of the

which we will speake of hereafter : they have their Melquit with Alegran very high with his

Pinacle on the top. The Suburbes without are very great and of many Houses, in such fort that

fome Portugals would have compared them in bigneffe with them of Lifton, but to mee and to

others they feemed leffe, though they bee bigger and of more Houses then the Citie within the

wals. It is very populous, and the people is so much, that at the entring of the gates on the Ri-

uer fide yee can scarce get through. Commonly the people that goeth out and in . doe cry and

manding to enquire what victuals were spent every day, it was found to spend only fine or fixe

thousand Porkes, and ten or eleven thousand Duckes; besides which, they eate great store of

Beeues and Buffes, and many Hens, and an infinitedeale of fish, whereof the Markets and streets

are full, and many Frogs and Shel-fish, great store of Fruits and all other Pulse. Hereby little

more or lesse may be seene what people are in Cantan, and whether it may bee compared with

make a great noyle to give place to them that carrie burthens. And the Rulers of the Citie com- 50

Temple and Melquit. Suburbes,

Store of peo-

Victuals,

Suburbes.

Lifton. The Houses of the Suburbes are like those of the wals within; the streetes are so well and leuelled by Line as those within, and all for the most part paued also, and some of them are verie broad, and have triumphant Arches, but very few. Some fireets, as well without as within the wals, on the one fide and the other along the Houses, have Trees for to make tha lowes. In all the Suburb-gates. Atreets of the Suburbs at the ends of them are gates with Special Porters, whose Office is to 62 locke them every night winder paine of fore pumishment, and every street hath a Constable and a Tayle. He stands bound, either to veeld the Malefactor which by night doth any harme in the ilrect, are to pay for it; wherefore all the streets have every night a watch, the Neighbours diCHAP. 10. S.2. China Cities, high-wayes, Rivers, timbers, Ships, trade, riches, 172

uiding themselves in quarters: and they make every night fixe quarters or watches, and for a Warcher. figne that they are awake, in every ffreet they found a Drumme, where they have all the night a Lanthorne with a light. The gazes of the Citie are thut as foone as it is night, and on the two leaues is fet a paper, with the chiefe Captaines marke on every one of them, and they are opened with the Sunne, with a token from the fane Captaine to them all, with his marke written Here followed on a white boord. Euery gate hath a Captaine, a very honelt man, and euery one hath certaine much of other Souldiers, which continually doe watch every one of the Gates by day and by night.

In fome Ciries the water runnerth almost thorow every street, and on the one sue and the same one other of the fireter are Tables made of stone, for the common service of the people; and thought of the same of no row all the fireets are very good and well wrought Bridges to paffe from one fide to another : not, but receiand thorow the middest of the streets is great trafficke by water that goe from one place to an- genec from Pe other. In those places whereby the water entreth into the Citie, they have made in the walls rea, I referre very good gates, which have very strong Iron grates for to shut by night : and the most of the youtohim, ffreets to the land inward are very well pured with ftone, and (where is no ftone) with small Other China tyle. In all the Mountaines and Hills where there are wayes, they are very well made, cut with High-wayes. the Pick-aze, and paued where they are needfull. This is one of the good works of China, and it is very generall in enery place of it. Many Hills on the fide of the Brams, and of the Lass, are cut in fleps, very well made; and in the height of the Hill is made a low place, very well cut;

in the which is a very high Towre, which aboue doth equall with the highest of the Mountain. 20 which is very strong, the wall of one of the Towres was measured at the entring of the gates, and it was fixe fathome thicke and an halfe. There are on this fide many of these workes, and fo there may be in other places. I heard of a Gentleman of credit, called Galiote Perera, Bro. Galiote Perera ther to the chiefe Inflice of Arrayolos, which abode in Canfi, being Captine, that (with the houses of these kinsmen of the King, being so many and so great) the Citie was so bigge that hoofes of thefe kindmen of the King, being to many another state show in it: and so she had it it feemed they occupied very little of it, and make a very little show in it: and so she had it is feemed they occupied very little of it, and make a very little show in it: and so she had it written in a Rudder of his, whence I tooke a great deale * of that which is heere spoken of: wheten in a Adduct of the, whether a better the first hide in it felfe the multitude and greatnesse of the Civie did hide in it felfe the multitude and greatnesse of omitted their houses,

As in the Countrey there is great store of Timber and very cheape, and much Iron and cheap, 30 and it is very good, there are infinite number of thips and thippings; for through the Country Store of thips are infinite Groues of Firre trees, and other trees, whereby it is easie for any one though of a ping. little fubitance, to make a ship and have shippings, and this causeth the great profit and gayne that is of them with the necessitie the Countrey hath of them : for it hath not onely a great number of Ilands along ft the coast, but also a very great coast where they Naugate: and besides this, all China within is nauigated, and runne through Rivers which doe cut and water it all, which are many and very great. So that yee may fayle to the ends of the Land, and goe in thippings. Any Capraine along the coast may in a little sp ce icyne two hundred, three hundred, even to a thouland ships, if hee stand in need for to fight. And there is no small Townsalong

the River that is not plentifull in small and great ships. Along the Citie of Cantan, more then 40 halre a league off the River, is so great a multitule of thipping, that it is a wonderfull thing to fee them, and that which is most to wonder, is that, that this multitude never decreaseth nor fayleth almost all the yeere: for if thirty, forty, or an hundred goe forth one day, as many doe come in againe the next: Ifay, the multitude never to diminish nor fayle, for though sometime there be more, some lesse, alwaies there remaynesh a maruellous multitude: and that which is more, all those that goe forth, goe laden; and all that come in, come laden; carrying goods, and bringing goods: and that which sheweth much the noblenesse of the Countrey, the plentie and riches thereof is, that all there thips bringing great flore of merchandile of Clothes, Silkes, prouifions and other goods, some doe goe into the Land, others come from within the Land, and nothing commeth form without China, neither goeth out of it: and that which the Por- Riches of Chi-

50 tugals doe carrie, and some that they of Syam doe carrie, is so little in comparison of the great na initialite. trafficke of the Countrey, that it almost remayneth as nothing, and vnperceived; feeing that out of China there goeth no more but that which the Portugals, and they of Syam doe carrie; which is as much as though they brought nothing out or China, fine or fixe flups comming laden with Silke and Porcelane: the great plentie and riches of the Countrey doth this, that it can sustayne it selfe alone: Pepper and luone which is the principall that the Portugals doe carrie, a man may well line without it, and the trafficke of merchandise that is in this Countrie, is in all the Cities within the Land, which as we have faid, are almost all built along the Rivers. The Chinas have a common speech for to shew the noblenesse of their Kingdome, that the King Prouerb. of China can make a Bridge of ships from China vnto Malaca, which are neere fine hundred

60 leagues, the which though it feemeth it cannot be, yet by Metaphor it fignifieth the greatnetic or China, and the multitude of thips that of it felfe it can make.

The great ships they call lunks; besides which there are ships for warre, made like great ships, lunkes for war to the which they make great Fore-catiles and high, and likewife abafte, to fight from them. Ship-fights, insuch manner that they ouer-master their adversaries, and because they vie no Ordnance, all NoOrdnance.

their vie is to come many together, and compassing the adversaries ship, they boord it : and at

Sudibufvepra-

They vie

the first on-let they cast a great deale of Lime to blinde the aductaries, and as well from the Caitles as from the tops they cast many sharpe pikes burned at the end, which serve for Tondarts, of a very stiffe wood; they wie also great store of stone, and the chiefest they labour for. is to breake with their thips the dead workes of their adverfaries, that they may be mafters on uer chem, having them under them, and being destitute of any thing to shelter them; and as foone as they can enter, they come to the Pike or handy-blowes, for the which they have long Pikes, and broad-pointed Swords hanging at their fides. There bee other Iunkes for lading of goods, but they are not so high as those of warre, though there bee some very great. All these thips as well of warre as of burthen vie two Oares ashead: they are very great, and toure or fine 10 men doe rowe every one of them , laying them along the ship they move them with such a fleight, that they make the ship goe forward, and they helpe very much for to goe out and in at a barre, and fetting upon the enemies for to board them : they call thefe Oares, Liollies : in all manner of their shippings they vie the Lioslios, neither doe they vie any other manner of Oares in any kinde of thipping. There be other leffer thippings then Linkes, fomewhat long, called Bancones, they beare three O ares on a fide, and rowe very well, and loade a great deale of goods: there be other leffe, called Lanteau, which have fixe or feuen oares on a fide, which doe rowe very Iwift, and bears a good burthen also: and these two forts of sh ps, viz. Bancones and Lanteas, because they are switt, the threeues doe commonly vie. The rowing of these Oares is standing, two men at enery Oare, enery one of his side, setting one foot forward, another backward. In 10 the lunkes goe foure, fiue, or fixe men at an Oare.

They vie also certaine shippings very long , like vnto Gallies, without Oares or beake-head,

A kinde of

which doe lade great store of goods: and they make them so long, because lading bringing a great burden they may tayle the better by the Rivers, which fometimes are not rough. They have many other shippings of burther, which is superfluous to tell of every one. There be many imall boats of poore people, in which are husband and wife, and children, and they have no other dwelling but in their boat in a middle decke, for defence of the Sunne, and of the raine: as also have the Bancones, and Lanteas, and others which wee faid were like Gallies, and these deckes are in such fort, that vinder them are very good lodgings and chambers in the great ships, in these of the poore, they are much inferiour: there they breed their Pigs, their Hennes, and there they have also their poore little Garden, and there they have all their poore state and harbouring. The men goe to freke worke about the Citie to helpe to maintayne their little house; the women goe in the boats, and with a long cane that reacheth well to the bottome of the River (at the end of the which is a little basket made of rods, wherewith they get shellfi.h) with their industrie, and passing of people from one side to another, they helpe to sustaine their hou'hold. These poore people not withit anding doe not line so poorely and beggarly in their apparell, as those which line poorely in Portugal. There are other great shippings, wherein is the stocke of them both ", which have great lodgings where they may bestow a great deale of stuffe : these have a great stocke; they have certaine Cages made all the length of the

thip with canes, in which they keepe two or three thousand Duckes, more or leffe as the veffell 40

After it is broad day, they give them a little fodden Rice not till they have enough, when

is: some of these belong to Lordships, and their scruants goe in them: they feed these Duckes,

they have given it them, they open a doore to the River where is a Bridge made of canes, and

Dwelling in

" The busch nitte, and the wines buf-

the notile they make at their going forth is wonderfull to fee them goe tumbling one ouer another, for the great abundance or mem, and the time they take in going out; they feed all the Duck weeders day untill night among the fields of Rice, those which are owners of the shipping doe receive a fee of them that owe the fields, for letting them feed in them, for they doe cleanfe them, eating the graffe that groweth among them. When night commeth they call with a little Taber; and though they be in fundry Barkes, every one knowes their owne by the found of the Ta- 10 ber, and goe vnto it; and because alwaies in time some remayne without that come not in, there are enery where many flockes of wilde Duckes , and likewise of Geese. When I saw such a multitude of Duckes in every one of these Barkes, and all of one bignesse, and thinking they could not be hatched by Duckes or Hens, for if it were fo, fome would have beene bigger then fome, feeing fo many could not be hatched in one, two, or fifteene dayes, I was willing to know how they hatched them; and they told mee, it was in one of two forts. In Summer, laying two or three thousand Egs in the dung, and with the heate of the weather and the dung, the Egsare hatched. In the Winter, they make a Hurdle of canes very great, upon the which they lay this great number of Egges, under the which they make a flacke fire, continuing it of one fort a few dayes till the Egges be hatched. And because they are hatched in this fort, there are fo many of one bigneffe, and all along the River are many of these Barkes, whereby the Coun-

Artificial

Se an exam-

tries are well prouided of this food. ple in Partois. o this mag.

There are fome ships wherein the Rulers doe sayle, which have very high lodgings, and within houses very well made, gilt, rich, and very sumptions: and on the one side, and the other

they have great windowes with their Nets woven of Silke, and very fine fmall rods fet before them, that they within feeing all them without, may not bee feene of them. Toward the fide of the Lass and the Bramaes, are continually watches and wards in the Rivers in many thips . euen a whole moneths lourney in length vnto the Citie of Canfi: these ships are in the places Ships for where the Rivers make any armes, because of the many theeues which commonly are in these guard. parts, being the vttermost of the Kingdome : and because the Rivers have many armes, many thips are placed in those parts: in every place where these shippings are, there bee two small in ps, which continually doe goe night and day from one watch to another, because they are vety iwift, and those of the great ships doe divide themselves into watches at their quarters, for to to watch as well in the small as in the great ones. The ships of passage goe alwaies a great num- Fleet.

ber together, that they may defend themselves, one another, while the ships of warre, and the watches do come to them, and at the watch where they make night, there they flay til the morning, and by the small boats they are delivered safe to the next watch forward, and so from watch to watch they are accompanied of the small vessels till they bee set in fafetie. From the Citic of Donches, that is, where the Governour of Confi and Canan is refident, voto the bounds of the Province of Canfi, which are places more dangerous, are continually Armadas of fortic or fiftie hips. All thefe watches are paid of the common Rents of the Kingdome. China is almost all a well husbanded Country : for as the Country is well inhabited, and Industry engle

people in abundance, and the men ipenders, and vling themselves very deliciously in eating and of plentie, 20 drinking, and apparell, and in the other feruices of their houses, especially that they are great eaters, every one laboureth to get a living, and every one feeketh wayes to earne their food, and how to maintayne their great expences. A great helpe to this is the idle people to bee much Idleneffe haabhorred in this Countrey, and are very odious vnto the rest, and that laboureth not shall not ted. eate, for commonly there is none that doe give almes to the Poore; wherefore, if any poore did aske almes of a Portugal and he did give it him, the Chinas did laugh at them, and in mockage Almes detis. faid: why sineft thou almes to thi, which is a Knaue, let him goe and earne it : onely fome le- dec iters have some reward, going to some high placegather the people, and telleth them some fables to get fomething. The Fathers and Prietts of their Idols are commonly abhorred and not effecmed, because they hold them for idle people, and the Rulers for any light fault doe not foare

30 them, but giue them many ftripes. Wherefore, a Ruler whipping once before a Portmed a Prieft Idle Hollof theirs; and he asking him wherefore he did vie their Priests foill, and held them in folittle Priests punishefterme, antiwered him thele are idle and wretched Knaues. One day, I, and certaine Portugal; ed with visual entring into the house of the Quer-feer of the goods. about the deliurite of certaine Portugal; influe of proentring into the house of the Ouer-feer of the goods, about the deliverie of certayne Portngal, fane buile Ruthat were in prison, because the matter belonged to him, for the great profit that came thereof lers, which to the King, much people came in with vs to fee vs, among the which there was a Prieft : af- made their foone as the Ruler faid, Set them downe, all of them ran away in great hafte, the Priest running foules the least as all the reft, for feare of the whip.

Every one laboureth to feeke a living; for that which hee earneth hee enjoyeth freely, and of themselves fpends it as he will, and that which is left him at his death remaynes to his children and grand- their goods. 40 children, paying onely duries Royall, aswell of the fruits that they gather, as of the goods they deale in, which are not heavie. The greatest Tribute they have, is every married man, or that hath houle by himfelfe, payoth for every person in his house two Mazes, which are fixtie Reys. that is ad-From Champaa, which as we aid, doth confine with Cauchinchina vnto India, are many vnpro- Tyrannie fitable grounds, and made Wilderneffes and Woods, and the men are generally little curious to growes poore get or gather togeth r, for they neuer gayne or get to much but it is tyrannized from them, that which they have is onely theirs as long as the King lifteth, and no more. In fuch fort that as foone as the King knoweth that any of their officers hath much money, hee commandeth him to bee pas in prison, and they vie him so hardly, that they make him cast all that hee hath gotten: wherefore there are many in those parts, that if they get any thing or money one day or one 50 weeke, they will not lab our till they confirme all that they have earned in eating and drinking, and they doe it because if any tyrannie should chance to come, they may finde nothing to take from them. From hence it commeth, as I fay, that they have in India many grounds in divers

places vnprofitable; which is not fo in China, for every one enjoyeth the fruits of his labour. Hence it commeth that all the ground that in China can yeeld any kinde of fruit receiving bandrie, feede, is husbanded. The high places which are not to good for Corne, have very faire Grones of Pine Trees, fowing also betweene them some Pulse where it may be : in the drie Lands and stiffe they fow Wheate and Pulie: in the Marshes which are overflowed, which are many and very long, they fow Rice : and some of these Marshes doe yeeld two or three Crops a yeere. Onely the Mountaynes that are high and beaten with the weather, and are not fit to plant any thing, 60 remayne vnprofitable. There is nothing loft in the Countrey bee it never for the bones, as well of Dogs as of other Beafts, they doe vie, making toyes, and with workes in flead of Iu > Nothing loft, rie, they fet them in Tables, Beds, and other faire things : they lofe not a Ragge of any qualitie, for as well of the fine as of the course, that are not of Wooli, they make fine and course Paper, Paperofduers and they make Paper of barkes of Trees, and of Canes, and of filken Ragges, and in the Paper matters.

made of filke they write: the rest serueth for to roll betweene the pieces of filke: even the dung or men veelds profit, and is bought for mony or in change of herbs, and they carry it from the houses : in fort that they give money or money worth, to suffer them to cleanle their houses of office , though it smelleth eurli through the Citie : when they carry it on their backs , they carry it in Tubs very cleane without, and although they goe vincourted, not wit altanding it fleweth the cleanlinesse of the Countrey and Cities. In some Cities these Tubs vie to goe courted

They wie in all things more flight then force, whereby they plow with one Oxe, making the Plough in such tashion that it cutteth well the Earth, though the surrowes are not so bigges among vs. A thip be it neuer to bigge, and haue it neuer to great a leake, the Pomps are made by to fuch a flight, that one man alone fitting mouing his feet as one that goeth vp a paire of flayres. in a very little space he pomps it out : these pomps are of many pieces as a water wheele, laid a long the fide of the ship betweene rib and rib, every piece having a piece of wood of halfe a yard little more or lesse, one quarter well wrought; in the middest of this piece of wood is a square little boord, almost of a hand breadth, and they joyne one piece into another in such manner as it may double well, the joynts which are all very close, whereby this manner of pompe doth run. is within of the breadth of the little boardes of enery one of the pieces, for they are all equall; and this manner of pompe bringeth io much water as may contayne betweene the two little Pupper player. boardes. The Chinas vie also Puppers, with the which they make representations. They bring vp Nighting des in Cages which fing all the yeere, and are vied to Puppet representa- 20 tions alto.

the fe things

It is a thing worth the noting, that the blinde haue a labour appointed them for to get their impotent per- food, which is to ferue in a Horie-Mill like Hories grinding Corne; and commonly where is a horse-mill there are two, because two going together, they may recreate themselves in talking one with another, as I faw them going about with Fannes in their hands cooling themselves. and talking very friendly. The blinde Women are the common Women, and they have Nurces that doe dreffe them and paint them with Vermillion and Cerufe, and receive the wages of their enill vie. The lame and the creeple which either haue no kindred within a certayne degree, or if they have them and they doe not prouide for them that which is necessarie, or are not able to helpe them, they make their Petition to the Ouer-feer of the goods of the King, and his kindred 10 being examined by his Officers, if among them are any that can maintayne them, they doe binde the neerest to take them to them to their charge and maintayne them , and if their kindred bee not able to maintayne them, or if they have no kindred in the Countrey, the Ouer-feer of the goodscommandeth they be received into the Kings Hospitall: for the King hath in all the Cities great Hospitals which have many lodgings within a great inclosure. And the Officen of the Hospitall are bound to administer to those that are bedied all things necessarie, for the which there are sufficient Rents appointed out of the Kings Exchequer. The lame that keepe not their bed, have every moneth a certayne quantitie of Rice, with the which, and with some Hens or a Pigge, which they bring up in the Hospitall, they have fufficient to maintayne themselves, and all these things are very well paid without faile: and because commonly those which are recei-40 ued into these Hospitals are incurable, they receive them for life : and all those which are receiued by commandement of the Ouer-feer, are enrolled, and enery yeere the Officers of the Hospitall doe yeeld account of the expenses, and of the promison of the poorelicke, and if any fault or negligence bee found in them of that which they are bound to doe, without remission they are well punished for it.

ð. III.

Of their mechanicall Trades, Merchandises and Moneyes: their provisions of Flesh and Fish; the persons and attyre of Men and Women: their Feasts.

Here are in this Countrey many workmen of all Trades, and great abundance of all things necessarie for the common vie, and so it is requisite, for the people is infinite. And because shopes are the thing that most is spent, there are more workmen of Shoo-makers then of any other Trade. In Cantan are two particular freets of Shoomakers very long, one where they fell rich shooes, and of tilke, another where they fell common shoots of leather : and besides these two streets, there are many workmen scattered about 60 the Citie. The rich Bootes and Shooes, are covered with coloured tilke, embroydered over with twist, of very fine workes, and there be Bootes from ten Crownes, to one Crowne price, and shooes of two Crownes and thence downward, and in some places are shooes of three pence. So that the rich and the very poore may weare shooes : and the rich as they list; the shooes of

three mence, or of a Riell pare of thraw, and I fay of three pence, for there is money chat antwerethour three pence. There bee many sich husbandomen , that let men by the waves with many pichale Grawen thoses for chargeons: Franklers Wind it is no wonder to hatte this charrie Almes not among their lufidele ,) for in the parts of the Judie are many rich Genetite which hatte very great almes the fruit among sweet superment of the state of the months and the state of the notice, white-interpretation community materiality gramma roots to at the poors or want quaticies focust, that will come thinhort robust rand by the wayer they had be mire flet by gird drinker to the poors I concllers.). Therefor also many Cappeners, and very good working of all manner of works. They have continually many Sores made of them forts, there exhibited with a very faine tamith, orbits painted, orbits byned with feether, and likewife of orbits. They In have containedly a great number of Charges made, forthe of very fairle white wood, and other

fairely gilt and flumred bery finely wrodels.

They have also Cluston wherem the Rulers are carried on mens backs through the Citic, Chaires which are very rich, of a great price and wery faire : they have another manner of Chaires, which are high, very rich and pleafant all close, with a little window on tach fide very faire with a net made of luorie, or of Bone, or of Wood, through the which they that goe within doe fee on the one fide, and on the other of the freet withour being feene; thefe ferue for to carry the Women about the Citie when they got abroad. The feate is of the height of one of our Chaires. where they goe litting with their lege at longth. There be many of these Chaires very rich, and of a great price ; and there are tome plante, and have Piriacles on the tops very faire ; there are also many bed-steads very pleasant and very rich, all close found about, of wood finely wrought.

I being in Cantan there was a rich one made wtought with hickie; and of a fweet wood. A being to Commo retries was a tent one mane writing with come and a rest whom which they call Cayologue, and of Sandaluse, that was prized at four hundred Crownies, and of little Boxes gite, and Manndes, and Beakers, Deske, and Tables, all as well git as writh Silier is without mimber: Gold-fmiths, Silver-fmitles, Copper-finiths, Iron-lmiths, and of all other Trades there he many and perfect Workmen, and great abundance of things of every Trade, and very perfect. They vie inhnite Vessels of Latten: and from China they furnish all lade and Siam. with their Veffels, which in India they call Bategirin, and they are in every kind very perfect. They vie Skillets, and Channg-diffres, and other Velkels of cast Iron, and not only they doe cast their Veilels of Iron, hut after they are broken they bey them against or to re-call them. There 30 are many Merchants of pieces and Chathes of Salke, because they ipend many in the lame Countrie, and in Siam, and there are pieces of Damaske and Taffata among thinfillines for nich . that

they bring them not to ve because they give them not for them what they are worth within the Land : they fell alfo great flore of time and comfe Berge of fundry cofours. There are many Silkes. Merchants of white and dyed Linnen cloth; for it is that which is most feet in the Countrie. They gave men piece of Linnen clock of about ten cubits, which was valued at tentie Crownes.

there is both fine and courfe as every one will have it.

And howfoener the Porcelane which is vied in all the Countrie of China, and in all India is Porcelane. of common Clay; notwithflanding, there it very much course Percelane, and other very fine and there is some that is lawfull to be fold commonly, for the Rulers onely vie it because it is red and 40 greene, and gilt, and yellow : tome of this is fold but very little, and that feeretly. And because there are many opinions among the Portugals which Trate not beene in China, about where this Porcelane is made, and touching the substance whereof it is made, some faying, that of Oysters finels, others of dung rotten of a long time, because they were not enformed of the truth. I thought it convenient to tell here the subfrance whereof it is made, according to the truth of Fables of it. them that faw it. The substance of the Porcelane is a white and foft Rone, and some is redde. which is not fo fine, or in better speaking, it is a hard clay, the which after well beating and grinding it and laying in Cifternes of water (which they have very well made of free-flone, and Howitismade some playstered, and they are very cleane) and after it is stirred in the water, of the Creame that remay neth on the top they make the very fine Porcelane : and fo the lower the couffer, and 50 of the dregs they make the coursest and base, which the poore people of China doe fie. They

make them first as the potters doe any other vessell; after they are made, they drie them in the Sunne; and then paint them as they lift with Azure, which is fo fine as we fee : after these Pi-Aures are drie, they lay on the Glaffe, and then harden them. The principall freets of the Merchants, are the most principall freets , which have coverts

on the one fide and on the other: notwithstanding, the chiefest sale of the Porcelane is in the Gates of the Cities, and enery Merchant hath at his doore written in a Table all that is fold Merchants within his shop: those which sell simples for medicines, haue at their doores tyed and hang. Tables, ing in a firing, a piece of every thing. There is in China great flore of Ruberbe, but it is not Kings Cubrought to Cantan, but fodden, there is none found raw. As the goods of China are very great flores, 60 and many, fo the rents which the King of China hath in every part of his Kingdome are very x Or Quarters.

great. Some China Merchanes did affirme that Cantan did yeeld enery yeere to the King three y Whi h is thousand Picos of Silver, and every three Picos make one Baar, every Baar harh foure Kintals, mountet to euery Kintall hath foure * Arrobas : fo that one Baar is fixteene Quarters, and three thousand weight of Su-Picos, making one thousand Baars, by consequence, one thousand Baars make y lixteene thouser,

Which is 40000, pound weight of Sil-

fand Quarters; and weedpeake of weight, for in Chine is no money of Gold or Silver, but one. ly of Braile, the Gold and Silver goeth by weight. But theseas they are popular people, thous occupied in the trafficke of the Countrie, it fremes they know not well the truth of this, and that the fumme is greater which is collected of the sents Royall, for the Countrie is very great. and the merchandite many and very substantiall, I was informed by meaner of the Rulers, which is a more certaine information, because the rents doe pase thorow their hands, that ithe rent of the Salt in Cantan did yeeld alone to the King 300. Paron of Silver, which doe make 100; Barr. Which are 400. Kintals, that are 1600. quarters of Silver. Every one bath a paire of scales and weights in his house, which all are exceedingly per-

fect. The weights that they commonly have, are from pert trownes to one, and from ten Tan-10 gas to one, one Tanga is nine pence. By the name of their Countrie 1 the leffer great weight is of one Tael, one Tael is fixe Mazes, one Maez is the Americat a Tanger: of the imall weights. the smallest is one Conderin, ten Conderins make one Tanga, or one Macz: one Conderin helb ten Caxos; and because the common that goeth in stead of money is Silver by weight, every one hath weights of his owne, as aboutfaid; for one laboureth by allthe meanes hee can to de ceine the other, none doe truft the scales and weights of the other, and every one that goth to buy in the Market, carrieth a weight and balance, and, broken Silver, and the balance is a little beame of Juorie with a weight hanging at the one end with a ftring yand on the other end a little scale, and the ftring of the weight runneth along by the beames; which hath his markes from one Conderin to ten, or of one Mazzynto ten. These scales serue for to buy by retale, for as to buy by groffe they have perfect scales very curious and fine, with very perfect weights. They carrie the Silver commonly full of mixture, and because they encrease it with the mixture, from hence it commeth that he which will make good markets in the Countrie of China, and that it may be cheape, carrieth Silver rather then goods, for hy the encrease which the Chinas make of the Silues with the mixture, they give the merchandise good and cheape for the Siluer. The Merchants are commonly falle and lyars.

Very Merchants.

There is great abundance of Rice in all the Countrie, for there are many marifhes, which yeeld two or three crops enery yeere. There is also much and very good Wheat, whereof they make very good Bread, which they learned to make of the Portugals; their vie before were Cakes of the same Wheat. There be many French Beanes, and other Pulse: there is great flore w of Beafe, and Buffes fielh, which is like Beefe : there are many Hens, Geefe, and innumerable

Frogs.

Duckes; there are infinite Swine, which is the fielh they most lout : they make of the Hogs many fingular flitches, whereof the Portugals carrie an infinite number to the India, when they goe thither by way of trafficke. The Chinas doe esteeme the Porke fo much, that they give it to the ficke. They eate Frogs alfo, which are fold in great Tubs full of water at the gates, and they that fell them are bound to flay them. All floth is fold by weight alive, except Beefe, and Buffes fielh, and Porke, which commonly is fold by the pound, except if they doe buy it whole. for then they are to weigh it whole : and that it may weigh the more, they fill it first with meat and drinke: the Hens to make them weigh the more, they fill them likewife with water, and their crops full of fand and other things. The pound of the Hen, Goofe, Ducke, and Frogs, is 4 all at one price; the Porke, Beefe, and Buffes fielh is worth leffe, and all at one price. The fifth is exceeding much, and all very good, and it neuer wanteth in the markets: there be many Crabs, and Oysters, and other shell-hish, and all is very good: and of all these things the markets are full. The Markets are commonly at the gates of the Cities, and under the triumphant Arches which are in the large and principall streets, as we faid before, and along the Portals of the same ftreets : but not to fell here flesh or fish, for there be particular ftreets, excepting quicke flesh, which is fold every where.

Markets. Herbs.

Fruits.

There are many Garden-herbes, fc. Turneps, Radish, Cabage, and all smelling Herbs, Garleeke, Onions, and other herbes in great abundance. There are also many fruits, fed. Peaches, Damfons, and another manner of Plummes which wee have not, with long, round, and sharpe so stones at both ends, and of these they make Prunes: There are many Nuts, and very good, and many Chefnuts both small and great. There is a kinde of Apples that in the colour and rinde are like gray Peares, but in smell and taste better then they. There is a fruit whereof there are many Orchards, it groweth on great and large boughed trees, it is a fruit as bigge as a Plumme round and a little bigger, they cast the huske, and it is very singular and rare fruit, none can have his fill of it, for alwaies it leaueth a defire of more, though they eate neuer fo much, and doth no hurt. Of this fruit there is another kinde smaller , but the biggest is the best, they are called Lechias. There are Oranges, Figs, and many other fruits, which were to long to recite. And though there be particular streets of Victualling houses, yet there is through all the Citie almost in every ftreet of these houses. In these Victualling houses is great store of meate dressed. Ma- 60 ny Geele, Hennes, and Duckes roafted and fod, and store of other stells and fifth dreffed : I faw at one doore hanging, a whole Hog roafted, and let one aske where he will, for all is very cleanly dreffed : the showe of all the meate that is dressed is at the doore, almost inciting them that paffe. At the doore is a vessell full of Rice, well coloured and dressed, and because the matters

Lechias. Victualling

houfes:

of Inflice are commonly almost from ten of the clocke forward, and many have their houses farre because the Citie is very great, or because they which come from out of Towne with busineffer, as well Inhabitants as Strangers doe eate in thefe houles. When any man meeteth any acquaintance of his that commeth from abroad, or that he hath not feene him a long time, faluting one another, he asketh him prefently if he hath dined, and if he answereth no, he carrieth him to one of these houses, and there they eate and drinke priusly, for there is great store of Wine, and better then in any place of India, which they make of confections: if he answereth that he hath dined alreadie, he carrieth him where they have onely Wine and Shell-fish, wherewith they drinke, of which houses there are also many, and there he doth feast him.

There is also in Cantan along the wall on the outside, a street of Victualling houses, in the which they fell Dogs cut in quarters, roafted, boiled, and raw, with the heads pulled, and their Does flethe eares: for they feald them all like Pigs, it is a meate which the base people doe eate, and they fell them aline about the Citie in Cages : through every street they fell flelh, fish , herbes, fruit, and all things necessarie, crying that which they fell. In the end of Februarie, in March, and part of Aprill, when the great flowings are, there commeth great flore of fish from the Sea to ipawne, in the mouthes of the Rivers along the Sea, whereby there breedeth infinite small fish of many forts in the pooles of the Rivers. Of thele spawnes in these times all the Fishers along the Sea coast doe meet in their boats, and there meet so many that they couer the Sea, and lie neere the pooles. And theie Fishers doe take great quantitie of this small fish, and cast it in Ci-

20 Hernes which they have made with stakes, and a very thicke Net made of wyer, where they doe feed them, to the end of the fifting time ; and at this time there are wont to come a great number of Barkes from all places of China within the Land (for I faidalreadie that all China is failed by Rivers, for it is all cut and watered with great Rivers) and these Barkes doe bring a great many baskets within and without, which are all lined with oyled paper, that it may hold water, and enery one of these Barkes doe buy the fish they have need of. Then they carrie this fish in these baskets through all the Countrie inward, changing every day the water, and all men of any possibilitie, within their grounds and inclosures have great store of fish in ponds, for the which they buy the baskets they have need, they feed this fifth in the ponds in a very thore time with Cow dung and Buffes dung, wherewith it groweth very fast. In all the ditches of the Ci-30 ties likewise they breed great flore of fish in the same fort, of which the Rulers are ferued. In

all the Cities which I faid alreadie, are built along the Rivers. The King hath many Sea Crowes in Coopes, in which they breed , with the which they make Royall affinings many times : all the Barkes that are bound to goe a fishing with these Cormorants, doe meet and set round in the Fishing with Riner, those that have charge of the birds, doe tye them about the crops, that they cannot swal- Commerants, low them, and they cast them to fish in the River. They fish till they fill their crops of middle fish, and if it be great, they bring it in the beake, and come to the Barke, where they cast all the fish they have fished, forcing them to cast it : and in this manner they fish the quantitie they wilk. till they have to their contentment: after they have fifted for the Barke they vntye them, and let them goe fish for themselues : after they be full, they come to the Boats, and are put in the 40 Coops: these birds doe fish very much. The King doth give for a favour to the Rulers one or

two of these Barkes, according as the person is of qualitie for the maintayning of his house

Though that the Chinas commonly are ill-fauoured, having their faces and nofes flat, and are Their persons. beardlesse, with some few haires in the points of the chinne : some notwithstanding there are which have very good faces, and well proportioned, with great eyes, their heards well fet, and their nofes well shapen; but these are few, and it may be they are of other Nations. They weare long Coats commonly with plaites after our good ancient vie: with a flappe ouer the breast to The Attire of tye on the fide, and all in generall have very long fleeues to their coats, they weare commonly the men. blacke Coats of Linnen, or of very fine Serge or course of divers colours, some weare them of Silk, many doe vie them on the Feast dayes of Silke: the Rulers weare commonly fine Serge, and on

50 their Feafts they vie very fine Silkes, chiefly crimfon, which none in the Countrie may weare but they : the poore people weare commonly Coats of white Linnen, because it costs but little : on their head they weare a high Cap made of very fine twigs, and it is round interwouen with blacke Silke, and very well made, they vie their Stockins whole footed, which are very well made and fliched, and they weare Boots or Shooes, as the curiofitie or abilitie of every one is, either of Silke or of Leather : in Winter they weare Stockins of Felt , either fine or courle, but the cloth is made of Felt : they vie also in Winter their garments lined with Martines, chiefly about the necke: they vie quilted lackets, and some doe vie them of Felt in Winter under their Coats.

They wie long haire like women, which they weare finely combed, and they combe it many Long haire, 60 times a day, they weare it tyed on the crowne of the head, and through the knot thrust through with a long small Silver pin: those which are not married, to wit, the yong Bachelors doe weare for a deuise a fillet or ribband dresse very well made, their Cap remayning aboue it, that it may be seene : they have a superstition in their haire, therefore they weare it so long, holding that

by it they shall be carried to Heauen. The common Priests doe keepe their haire, but are sharen. for they fay they neede no helpe to carrie them to Heauen. Yet among them are some Priests of the Temple of the Idols, which among the Chinas are more reverenced then the rest; these doe weare haire on the top of the head faitned with a flick, very curiously wrought like a close hand, varnished with a very fine varnish, which they call Acharan: and these Priests doe weare black coates, the other wearing a white coate.

Courtefie.

The Chinaes are very curteous men; the common curtesie is, the left hand close, they inclose it within the right hand, and they bring them very oft to their breft, shewing they have one another inclosed in their heart; and to this motion of the hands, they joyne wordes of curtefie, though the wordes of the common fort is to fay one to another, Chifan me fan, which is to fay, Haue yee eaten or no, for all their good in this world is refolued in eating. The particular curtefies betweene men of fort which have not feene one another a long while, are the armes bowed and the fingers clasped one within another, they steope and speake with wordes of great curtefie, every one labouring to give the hand to the other to make him rife : and the more honorable they are the longer they stand in these curtesies. The honorable and noble People doe vie also many curtefies at the Table, the one giving drinke to the other, and every one laboureth to give the hand to the other in their drinking, for at the table there is no other feruice but that of drinking. If there come any Ghest newly to his triends house, or his kinsman, if the Master of the house be not apparelled in holy day clothes, when the Ghest commeth in, he maketh no account of him nor any mention, till he commandeth to bring his feftivall apparell, and after he is 20 fo apparelled hee goeth to the Gheft, and receiveth him with many complements and curtefies. For they hold it not convenient, that a new-come Gheft and of reverence bee received with common apparell, but clothed in feast-like apparell, for in this he sheweth him that his entring into his house is a feaft day to him.

Whatfo wer person or persons come to any mans house of qualitie, hee hath a custome to offer him in a fine basket one Porcelane, or as many as the perfons are, with a kinde of drinke which they call Cha, which is somewhat bitter, red, and medicinall, which they are wont to make of a certaine concoction of herbes somewhat bitter: with this they welcome commonly all manner of perfons that they doe respect, be they strangers or be they not; to me they offered it many times. The Chinaes are great eaters, and they vie many dainties, they eate at one table Fish and Flesh, and the base people dresse it sometime all together. The dainties which are to bee eaten at one table, are fet all together on the board, that every one may eate where hee liketh beft.

It is a cleanly and neat people. The common people hath some groffe things.

Certayne noble Portugals went to shew me on a day in Cantan a banquet, which a rich Merchant made, which was worth the fight. The house where it was made, was with a loft, and very faire, with many faire windowes and casements, and all of it was a mirror : the Tables were fet in three places of the house, for every Gheft enuited a Table and a Chaire very faire and gilt, or with filter, and enery Table had before it a cloth of Damaske downe to the ground. On the Tables was neither cloth nor napkins, as well because the Tables were very fine, as because they eate fo cleanly that they need none of their things; the fruit was fet along the edges of e-40 uery Table, all set in order, which was, rosted Chesnuts and peeled, and Nuts cracked and shaled, and fugar Canes cleane and cut in flices, and the fruit we spake of before, called Lichias, great and small, but they were dried. All the fruit was set in small heapes like Turrets very well made, croffed betweene with certayne small slicks very neat : whereby all the Tables round about with these little Turrets were very fairly adorned. Presently after the stuit, were all the feruices placed in fine Porcelan difhes, all very well drefted and neatly carued, and every thing fet in good order, and although the diffies were fet one over another, all were fo finely fet, in fuch fort that he which fate at the Table might eate what he would, without any need of flirring or remouing any of them : and presently there were two small sticks very fine and gilt for to eate with, holding them betweene the fingers : they vie them in flead of a paire of Pincers, fo that 10 they touch nothing of that which is on the board with their hand; yea, though they eate a dish of Rice, they doe it with those sticks, without any graine of the Rice falling : and because they eate so cleanly, not touching with the hand their meate, they have no need of cloth or napkins: all comes carried and well ordered to the Table. They have also a very small Porcelan cup gilt, which holdeth a mouth full of wine, and onely for this there is a Waighter at the Table : they drinke so little that at every bit they must have the cup, and therefore it is so small. There are some Chinaes that weare very long nailes, of halfe a quarter, and a quarter long, which they keepe very cleane, and these nailes doe serue them in stead of the sticks for to eate

The Chinaes doe vie on their birth dayes to make great feaths, continuing yet in them the cu- 60 stome of the old Gentiles. In these Feasts are wont to meet all the Kinsmen and Friends, and all doe helpe him to beare the charges of the Feafts, with fending him Prefents, that when they doe celebrate their birth dayes they may pay them in the fame fort; and because they have their helpes , they make great expence and folemnitie. The feast lasteth all night long , for all the

Gentiles as they walke in darknesse living without the knowledge of God, so all their feasts e rough all places of India and in China, are made by night. In thele feafts is great abun- Night feafts dance of meate and great store of wine, all the night they spend in eating and drinking. and musicke playing on diners instruments. Their Priests offer their facrifices to their Gods apparelled very richly. They apparell themselves in divers forts of garments, and the Priests doe fing their fongs in a very tunable voice : among these sacrifices, playing and singing, the Tables are alwayes furnished with fundrie meates, every one taking what hee liketh heft. The Priefts when they have fung as all the reft, doe make at their doore triumphant Arches very well made of Paper, and Scaffolds with divers representations of Figures and to Statues, and certayne high Trees and hanging on the broken Boughes, very well wrought and painted, many lightes, and in every place many Lanthornes very faire and well made all

with lights.

In the generall Feasts of all the Townsand People, chiefly on the first day of the yeers, all New vector the fireets and doores are very richly drefied, and chiefly they doe indeanour and labour to deck day. the triumphall Arches, couering them with many clothes of Damaske and of other filke, with many Lanthotnes. There is much playing of fundrie Instruments, and singing, and soyntly with this great flore of meate of sundrie kindes, and great abundance of Wine. They vie many times representations by Actors, which doe represent very well and to the life, the A- Comedicactors having very good apparell and well ordered, and fitting as is requilite for the person hee

20 representeth; and they that represent a Womans part, besides the apparell that is requisite for the part hee representeth, they are painted with Stibium and Ceruse. Those which vnderflanis them not what they represent, are sometimes wearied, but they that understand them doe delight very much to heare them : and one whole night, and two, and some time three. they are continually bussed in representations one after another. While these representations doe laft, there mult been Table fet with great flore of meate and drinke. They have in these Actions two great inconveniences or blemishes, the one is, that if one be to represent two parts, and is to change hisattyre, he doth it before all the Beholders: the other is, that the Reprefenter as well as hee that speaketh alone, doe speake in a wery high voyce almost finging. Sometime they got to the ships to play, that the Portugals may give them money. The Instruments they wie for to play on, are centagine Bandoraes like ours, though not fo Instruments

well made, with their Pinnes to tune them, and there bee some like Gitternes which are fmaller, and other like a Viall de gamba, which are deffe : they vie also Dulcimeres and Rebeckes, and of a certayne kinde of Hoboyse, resembling our vie. They vie a certayne manner of Instrument that hath many wyer strings; they play on them with their nayles, which for that purpose they weare; they have a great sound and make a good harmonie : they play many Instruments together sometimes, conforted in source voyces which make a very good confonancy. It hapned one night by Moone-shine, that I and certaine Portugals sitting at the doore of our lodging, a few young men passing the time came along the River, playing on diuers Inferements; and wee being glad to heare the musick, fent for them to come neere where 40 wee were, and that wee would inuite them, they as gallant youthes came neere with the Boate and beganne to tune their Instruments, in fuch fort that wee were glad to fee them fit themselues that they might make no discord; and beginning to sound, they began not altogether, but the one tarried for to enter with the other, making many divisions in the processe of

the musick', some staying, others playing : and the most times they played all together in source parts. The parts were two small Bandoraes for the Tenor, a great one for counter-Tenor, and an Instrument called Cramo followed the rest, and sometime a Rebecke, sometime a Dulcimere for a Treble. And they vied a good policy, that wee might remayne the more delirous, they played but two fraines.

It is not lawfull for any man in all the Countrey to carry any manner of weapon, no not a Armes and knife, therefore when one quarrels with another they goe to buffets and pulling by the haire: quarrels. 50 onely the Souldiers and Ministers of the Captaines of warre doe weare swords on their hangers.

When any man dyeth that hath House, Kindred, and Children, after hee hath given vonthe Funerall riverghost, they wash the Coarse and put on his best apparell, and his Cap on his head, and set him on a Chaire, and then commeth his Wife and kneeleth downe before him, and with many teares and lamentable wordes shee taketh her leaue of him: and after the Wife comes the Children in their order doing the like, and after the Children therest of the Kindred, and all the rest of the House, and his Friends. The ceremonies ended, they put him in a Cossin made for him of Camfiere wood, which is preservative for dead bodies, and smelleth well, they close it and pitch it well that no smell may come out of it; they set it vpon two little formes. and cast ouer it a cloath to couer the Coffin downe to the ground, whereon the picture of the

60 man deceased is pictured. They make a little house before the Coffin of white raw cloath, with a Portall right against the Coarse, where a Table is set with candle-sticks and candles lighted, and let thereon bread and all the fruits of the Countrey. And all this they doe of superflition for a ceremonie, and there they keepe the Coarse eight or fifteene dayes, in the

Mourning.

which their Priests of their Gods come continually by night to offer their Sacrifices, and to pray their Heathornish inventions. There they bring many Pictures of men and women, and burne them with many ceremonies. Finally they hang some Pictures of men and women in paper hanging on coards, and with great praying and mooning these pictures by the coards, with great crying and showting, they say, to send the dead man to Heauen. All day and all night while they are in these ceremonies, there is a Table set with great store of meate and drinke. These ceremonies ended, they take the Cossin and set it in a Field where the dead are, and there it confumes with time. Their mourning which they vie is the sharpest that ener I faw. for they weare Coats after the common fort, of verie course wooll next the fiesh, and girt with great coards, and on their head a Cappe of the fame cloath, made like the Caps that are to vied in the Countrey, faulng that thefe haue certaine flappes that fall ouer their eyes. Norwithstanding, that as they are nearest in kindred so they weare the rougher mourning weed. The rest weare raw cloath, and not so course. For Father or Mother, they mourne three yeares: and if he bee Louthia, as soone as hee heareth the newes presently he leaueth the office he seruch, and goeth to mourne to his owne house for three yeeres, which being ended he goeth to the Court to demand his office. The Women commonly, excepting those of the Sea coast, and the Mountayners, are very

white and fine women, fome having their nofes and eyes well proportioned. From their

child-hood they wrap their feete in cloathes, that they may remayne small, and they doeit

yet among the noble people, and not-among the basest. They weare their hayre very well

combed, close and tyed to the crowne of the head, and bound from the rootes to the toppes

with a long lace very well placed. And the lace is garnished with Iewels and peeces of Gold

are cloathed in white Linnen-cloath. They make curtefies as our women doe, but they make

three together and very hastely. They we painting their faces with Vermilion and white Ce-

rule very well fet. They commonly keepe themselues close, so that through all the Citte of Cantan there appeareth not a woman, but some light huswives, and base women. And when 30

they goe abroad they are not seene, for they goe in close Chayres, (whereof wee soake

before) neither when any bodie commeth into the house doth bee fee them, except for cu-

riofitie they chance vader the doore-cloath, to looke on them that come in when they are

for the China's doe holde them for finer women that have small Noses and Feete. This is vied 24

China womens cuttomesand cloathes. I have many Chine Piduree which reprefent the wowrapped vp.or round about. They vie long Coats like the Portugall women, which have the waste in the elfevery small; same manner that they have. They weare vpper-bodies with long sleenes, they spend comtheir eyes alo monly more Silke in their garments then their husbands : but in their common apparell they and notes little,&c. o' the reit, as in the

Womens retiredneffe.

Marriage.

Adulteric. Wiraldrie.

Harlots.

Commonly the men haue one Wife, which they buy for their money more or leffe, according as they are, of their Fathers and Mothers. Yet may every one have as many wives as hee is able to maintaine : but one is the principal with whom they live, and the other he lodgerh in fundry houses And if hee hath dealings in divers Countries hee hath in every one a wife and house with entertainement. If the wife committeth adulterie, and the husband accuseth her and the adulterer, both suffer death. And if the husband doe suffer the wife to play the adulte- 40 refle, hee is grieuously punished. I being in Cantan, faw a Marchant of China goe from Iustice to Iustice, verie sharpely handled for suffering his wife to play the adulteresse. The common women are in no wile permitted to dwell within the walls. And in the Suburbes without they have their proper streets where they dwell, out of the which they may not live : All the common women are flaues, they bring them vp for that purpose from their child-hood, they buy them of their mothers, and teach them to play on an Instrument of musique, and to fing. And those that can best doe this, because they gaine most, are worth more. And those which cannot doe that, are worth leffe. The mafters either carrie them vnto the men, or fell them to them : and when they are to be et in the freet of the common women, they are written by an Officer of the King in a Booke, and the Master is bound to come eueric yeere with a certaine fee to this 50 Officer, they are bound to answer their Master to much euerie moneth. When they are old, with Paynting they make them feeme young. And after they are not for that trade, they are altogether free, without any obligation either to Mafter or any bodie, and then they feed vpon that which they have gottten.

I spake so particularly of this matter, for to come to say that in this Countrey of China is no greater captimitie then this of these Wenches. And let no man fay, or affirme any other thing, for about the examining of it I laboured somewhat in Cantan, because some Portugals would affirme it otherwise. The captinitie in this Countrey is in manner following. If any woman by the death of her husband remayneth a widdow, and hath nothing to maintayne her felfe with, neither the children that are left her are fuch as are able to get their hung, neither hath shee any 60 thingto gine her children; this Woman in this necessitie, commeth to a rich man, and agreeth with him for fix or feuen Crownes, for a Sonne or a Daughter, and the price received thee deliuereth it; if it be a Daughter, shee serueth as abouesai! for a common Woman, and is broug typ for that purpole: if it be a Sonne, hee ferueth his Mafter some time. And when hee is of age to

marrie, the Mafter giveth him a Wife, and all the Children that are borne to him remayne free. and without any Ooligation: notwithstanding, this Seruant is bound to give his Master so much by the yeere, having a house by himselfe: for when he marrieth they give him a house and he laboureth, either at some Trade, or by his industrie for to earne his liuing. And no man may fell any of these Slaues to the Portugals, having great penalties for it. The Women, as by being common, they looke for great profit of them, in no wife they will fell them, befides the running into great penalties also. And all those which commonly are fold to the Portugals are stollen. they carry them deceived, and fecretly to the Portugals, and fo they fell them : and if they were perceived or taken in these stealths, they would bee condemned in the vemost punishment. The To Lawes of China give authoritie to the Women for to fell their Children, and not to the Men. for as the Men are bound to get a living for himfelfe and for his Children, if hee want the remedie, they hold that hee is in the fault of that. And that Man may the better labour for their liuing and their Childrens. So farre is China from having Slaves that altogether should bee captiues, that neither those which they take in warre are slaues; onely they are bound to the King, and are placed for Souldiers in places farre from their Countries where they were taken, eating of the wages they have of the King. These doe weare for a device a red cap, as I saw the Tartarians weare in Cantan, which had beene taken in the warres.

d. IIII.

Of their Louthias, Mandarines or Magistrates, their creation, priviledges, maintenance; Of Prisons and Tortures; of the King and of Embassadors.

PVcry one that in China hath any office, command or dignitie by the King, is called Over yone that in Commant any omne; command to unplace of the ang, a lating of the ang, of Court, by whom are ordayned all matters of the Kingdome, and to whom come all the waightie matters of all the Realme. And because they are to dispatch with the King; and converse with Lauthies of the him within doores, and it is not lawfull for other to converse with them, neither doe other see Court Euthem, and they have entrance where the Wives of the King are, which are many, they are com. suchs. monly Eunuchs. In every Province are five, which among the rest are most principall, which haue a very great authoritie and majestie in their persons, and are greatly reuerenced and hono-

red, not onely of the common people, but also of all the other Lothyas.

The principall of the fine is the Gouernour, which in their language is called Tutom, to this The Tutom; come all matters both great and small of all the Province, and for the authoritie and majestie of Lieutenant, 40 his perfole he is not refident where the other *Lorbyas*, that hee may not bee frequented of them, Depute or and so he may be more efteened and feared. To these come all the Rents of the Frontines except Vice roy. the ordinarie expences, and by him as well the businesses as the Rents that are gathered, and all that hapneth in the Prouinces are referred and fent to the Court. The second dignitic of the Provinces, is the Over-leers of the goods, which in their language is called Ponchaffi: this hath The Pozchaffi the care to fend to recouer through all the Province the Rents thereof, for the which hee hath or Tressurer. many Lothyau vnder his iurifdiction, which are particular Officers for the bulineffes and recoueries of the goods. This prouideth all the ordinarie charges of the Prouince, and with that which remayneth he reforteth to the Tistom, that he may fend it to the Court, this may enter-meddle in graue matters of the other Officers inferiour, and hath authoritie ouer them. Likewife, all the 50 matters and affaires of the Province refort vnto him, to bee referred by him to the Totom. Another chiefe dignitie under this is the chiefe Iustice, which in their language is called Anchas, The Anthas or and though there be many other Officers of Justice, this is about all, and by him are the dispata chiefe Justice. ches distributed to the rest, and all matters of Justice resort vnto him, as one that hath authoritie of the other inferiour. Another dignitie vnder this is the chiefe Captaire, who in their tongue is called Astao. To this Astao pertayneth to command to prepare the men of warre, and The Astao or all that is necessarie of shipping, and victuals, and all other prouision against Enemies and against chiefe Cap-Theeues: to this belong allo the businesses of strangers in cases which belong not to the goods, tame. The fift and last of the great dignities, is of the chiefe Captaine which puttech in execution the matters of warre, and is relident in the Armies which the Astao, being a land, doth ordayne: 60 when it is necessarie befides the putting matters in execution and order, if the matter require his presence, he goeth in person: and so important may the matter be that the Airao will goe. This His Lieute-

is called in the Countrie language Intelfi. In the house of every one of these, except the Lathiffi. philip. which is the inferiour of the flue, are other ten which are as Alfifants, and are alfo of great au- Each haue ten thoritie, fine of these doe fit at the right hand of the Principal in fine chaires, recited before when Affilians.

and the Affiftants.

we spake of the buildings, and five doe sit on the left hand: these in matters of importance are as the dispatching with the principall of the house, and the Principall dying or by any other meanes wanting, one of these according to his antiquitie remayneth in his stead : and if it beneceffary to goe through the Province about some matter of importance, that appertuneth to the disnitie in whole houle they affift, one of these doe goe with all the authoritie of the Principall Engages of The five that first on the right hand, have a greater degree and dignitic then the five on the left dignite, golde hand. And as the dignite confiftent in their Girdles and Canopies, those of the right hand we Girdles of gold and Canopies of yellow, and those of the left hand weare Girdles of filter and Canopies of blew, or of changeable colour. The Girdles are little leffe then three fingers broad. and an inch thick, and all about of gold or of filter very well wrought made of peeces. The Ca- 10

nonies are very large and faire, which an Officer doth beare vpon a staffe a fathom long, of a Cloue tree very faire, and they are lined with filke.

The Taiffu or Sheriffe

Besides these Assistants and the fine Principall, there is among the inferiour one of greater dignitie, which is the chiefe laylor, whom they call Taiffe, which have very great houses of great receipts, where they have great prifons, but neither this nor any that are under may weare girdle of gold nor filuer, nor a yellow Canopie, except hee bee an Officer or Captaine of men of warre. that for fauour of a Gentleman may haue a yellow Canopie : the rest weare girdles of Tartaruga, or of other matter made like them of gold or filuer, and their Canopies are of changeable flufe or blew, and all these Inferiour doe speake to the Superiour, when they are before them on their knees, and doe kneele as long as they are with them, except the Tailla, who when he com- 20 meth in kneeleth and rifeth vp presently, and is alwayes standing. Every one of the great ones haue many inferiour Officers under his jurisdiction, for the matters and businesses necessary to the Office of enery one, all which as they are the Kings officers have the Title of Lothias and their badges or fignes. The five Principall with their Affiftants doe weare for a Badge the Kings Armes on their brefts, and on their backs, which are certagne Serpents would with gold thred. Euery yeere there is one fent to euery Prouince at a Iustice, which is called Chaen, which

The Chara or Iudge of the Circuit, or

commeth to take account of all the Loibias, great and fmall, and examineth all the Students and chooseth Louthias, and visiteth the Prisons, and all that is necessary to be seene and prouided for in all the Prouince. He vieth all meanes to spie out their briberie and injustice, and hath power 10 to displace or preferre. When this entreth newly into this Citie, it is not lawfull for any to worke, they hut their doores and no body walketh through the ffreet, and to preferue his worthip and authoritie they will not boldly communicate in fight of the people, and many Officers with Banners displayed of crimson like, and all the Louthias both great and small are bound to goe and meet him. The same entertainment is vied to enery one of the fine, when hee commeth newly to the Prouince where hee is to administer his office. There bee other dignities about all The Duinebais, thefe, which are called Quinebais, which is to fay, a Plate or Seale of gold: which are not fent but about very serious matters and of great importance, for the Kingdome, or the King. Euery Lothia of what qualitie soeuer hee bee, high or low, hath for a signe or badge, besides the aboutfaid, a high Cap and round with certayne eares a-croffe, made of small twigges wouen 40 with twift.

dinarie.

All the Offices are given from three to three yeeres, and none is given for longer time, and all given to men that are not borne in that part of the Land, because they may not be mooved by affection in matters of Iustice that belong to their offices, and also because they may not become mightie, thereby to preuent infurrections. The offices are distributed by the King with the counfell of the Eunuchs. And because the Eunuchs are those with whose counsell the offices are d fiributed, they are many times mightily bribed.

The third yecres Vi-

The Chaens which the King doth fend every three yeeres, commonly are found men, and bring commonly more authoritie then the reft. And these (besides the yearly Chaen) are fent the third yeere, when every Officer endeth his office. After that the Chaens have taken the ac- 50 counts of the Lothyas, they visit the Prisons and give audience to the Prisoners. After this hee with the other principall Lothias doe visit the Schollers, and all those that hee findeth to have studied well, he fauoureth and giveth them good hopes, and those which have not studied well, if hee see they have abilitie for it, he commandeth them to bee whipped. And if already they haue beene whipped and haue not amended, he commands them to bee put some dayes in prison, besides the whipping of them, that with these punishments from thence forward they may have a better care. If hee findeth that they neither learne, nor haue abilitie, hee thrufts them out of the Schooles.

This doe onely the Louthias which come enery three yeeres, after they have diffratched the bufineffes of the Prouince, hee bufieth himfelfe in making Louthias : which hee maketh in forme following. Hecommandeth to come to the principall Citie of the Province, all the Students 63 that have well studied, from all the Cities of the Province, and from all the great Townes, where the King hath Schoole-mafters of free Schooles, maintayned at his charge (for the Students aid learne the Lawes of the Realme, maintayned at their fathers charge.) And all the principall

Louibias of the Province affembled with Chaen, there examine very well every one of the Students, demanding of him many things concerning their Lawes : and if he answereth to all well: they command him to be put apart, and if he be not yet well infructed, eyther they fend him to learne more, and if it be through his default, eyther they whip him, or being whipped they fend him to Prison, as the Portugals faw many in Prison for that fault, where they were in Prison fend him to Prifon, as the Parturals law many in Prison for citic tasts, where citic mark with great for allow. After the Examination ended, the Characteristic by p., and all the Lambias with great commence and the commence of the price of for allo. After the examination entering, they grue the degree to enery one of them they Commence Ceremonies, Feaths, Mulickes, and Playings, they grue the degree to enery one of them they mentor Adfound sufficient, which is to give him the Title of Lauthie. And after the palling many dayes in Of this see Feafts, and Banquets, they fend them to the Court to receive the Badget of Loubias, which are more in the Caps with eares, broad Girdles and Canopies, and there they stay the distribution of Offices, So following Rethat in this manner they make the Lauthies , which in the Countrey are to administer, luftice, lations of the The Louibias for war are made by Chinalries and famous Deede which they did in war, So that Ichina in these Countries men are much honoured by their Learning, or by their Chimbrie, and yet more for their Learning, because of the Learned doe commonly come the five principal! Learning

Notwithstanding, there are many Louthias, which are made for simple faucture, either for do-Other forus of ing some particular service to the King, or to the Realme, or in some Towne, or having some par-

ticular fauour or qualitie. As they did to a young wan of Chora, because the Portugals beeing in Prison, he served for an Interpreter, whereby the Louthur gave him the title and badges of Lou-20 this, because he could speake Portugall. But these and such other doe not commonly, when Offices of the King, but enjoy onely the Liberties of Louisies as the Gentlemen Portugal base their Liberties which some enjoy by fauour of the King, And their Louds have great Liberties in the Countrey : for none can doe him any injurie without punishment , neither can they bee imprifoned but for hainous faults, and they may imprifon any that doe wiring them, and many o- Their Printther Liberties. And though there were some Perjugals that reported without any certaintie ledges. that the Chinaes did studie naturall Philosophie, the cruth is that there is no other Studies nor Vinuerfities in it nor particular, but onely the Schooles Royall of the Lawes of the Kingdome. The truth is that some are sound that have knowledge of the courses of Heaven, whereby they know the Eclyples of the Sunne and of the Moone, But thefe if they know it by any Writings that are found among them, they teach it to some person, or persons in particular, but of this there are no Schooles.

The Chinas have no certaine Letterain their Writing, for all that they write is by Chara-Gers. Their lines are not ouerthwart as in the Wistingand all other Nations, but are written vp

When the Loudius are dispatched at the Court with Offices for the Prouinces, where they Publike Offigoe to governe, they depart carrying nothing of their owne more then the Apparell they are to cers wholly weare, and some few Seruants to serue him, even when they have no Offices, neither need they maintayned of carry any promition for the lourney, nor carriage or hipping as their owne charge: ferthrough the public, all the wayes where he goeth are promitions, alwell of hipping as of needflare carriage, and needflare to the state of t ties and great Townes, the King hath many good and Noble Houles for the Louisies both great Officers. and small to lodge in, and all those which by any meaners are the Kings, have sufficient Renes for the maintenance of every person that shall dwell in the House according to his degree. And that which is to be given to every one for his Expences is alreadie limited. Wherefore he that may

lodge there being come, the Officer of the House commeth to him, and asketh him if hee will haue his ordinary in money, or in things necessarie for promison, and that which hee doth demand, as farre as the money doth extend, hee is to give him, very well and cleanly dreft, either Fleth, Fifh, Duckes, or Hennes, or what he will. And any Louisia that doth lodge there, may command the Hoast of the House to be whipped, if he serve him not to his will. And if any Low-50 this will goe to lodge at the House of any acquaintance of his, hee taketh the Money, which the inferiour Louibiss doe alio fometimes, either to foare fome Money, or to bee merry at their wils more freely. And in the promisons of these Houses there is no want any wayes, for the Postbafic have the charge to give them sufficient provision that it doe not want. And at the

yeares end account is taken of the Officers of the House of the Expenses he made. By the wayes at enery League, and at enery two leagues are Houles which onely have Beds, Publike Inner. and Chaires for the Trauellers to rest and ease themselves. And some of those that have care of these Houses, have provision for to give Wine to the guests : others give nothing but Chas. After the Louthias come to the Citie where they are to be resident and execute his Office, they find the Houses, where they are tolodge according to the Offices they have great or small, greater

or finalter. In the fe House they find all the Senants necessary, Scriueners, Porters, and all o- Inferiour Offither Ministers necessary for their Offices. For these are continually in the hooses, for to minister cenas all times all the Offices of the Houses where they sense. And every Officer according to his to an emission meeting and performance of the provision necessary for his meate, drinke, and his apparell (limited for that it sufficeth him well) which is payed to him without faile, every moneth.

Reft in age

lodged in their owne Countries or where they will, and the King alloweth them every moneth to much according to their qualitie for their maintenance till they dye. And because the Ordinaries of the Lourbias are commonly fufficient, and with fome abundance, they may always fedre forne thing to leane their Wives and Children. Before the inferiour Ministers thefe Officers doe all things of their Offices and matters of luftice, for they are prefent at all things to prevent Bribes and partialitie. Whiles the Boulia is litting in the chaire to heare the parties and difinatchinie of matters, the Porters, Sermeners, Sergeants and other Ministers are at the doorer and when any person commeth with any matter, one of the Porters with a high voice that hee may be heard where the Lambias litteth (for it is farre off) telleth who and wherefore he com- 10 meth. And none speakether the Louthias but vpon both their knees on the ground, and commons ly they freake a prettie space distant from him. And from thence with a high voyce well you derftood, he propoundeth his case, or sheweth him his Petition written in Paper, and lifting vp the hand delireth him to receive it, and to flew him Iustice, to whom a Minister runneth, the Louthis making a figne to him, and presenteth it vnto him. After the Louthis readeth it, he eyther dispatcheth him of that which he asketh, writing at the foote of the Petition with redde Inke, or remitteth the party to an inferiour Officer to be dispatched. So I saw it done to a Petition which a woman prefented to the Ponchafi.

The promptnesse and readinesse wherewith the Louthias are ferued, and how feared they are, cannot be written with the Pen, nor expressed with the Tongue, but it must be seene with the 20 eye for to know what it is. All doe their messages running and with great speed, not onely the Scriveners and Sergeants, and other Ministers , but also the Inferiour Louthing to the Superiour. And if any fayleth never fo little of his diligence and accustomed speed, or committeeth the leffe negligence in the World before the Loubia, hee hath not any remission, but immediately they put a tittle flagge in his hand, and he must hold it in his hand kneeling vntill the parties be difpatched; and then the Loubis commandeth to give him the stripes that he thinke good; and the thripes are fuch as hereafter we will tpeake of. Whereby all the Ministers in the Houses of the Lauthia are play fored or marked with the ftripes, fo that already among themselves they hold Mimis feurites it a difference not to be marked with the ftripes, because it is a thing generally common among parit contentum. them. And when the Louchia waxeth angry or is moued at any thing, it is a woulder to feethe 30 trouble and feare that is in all the standers by.

I being in the House of the Panchast with certayne Portugals, intreating for the deliverance of certaine Portugals that were Captines, and imprisoned in the layle, for the which wee carried him eight Ounces of Ambar (which at that time was much efteemed of them and now by carrying fo much it is not fo much eltermed) we not being willing to give him the Ambar, without giving vs both the Portugals, he tooke an occasion for to terrifie vs, to waxe angry against the youth, fernant of a Portugall which was in our company and was our Interpretour. Wherefore he role out of the Chaire and became red as bloud, and his eyes were inflamed, and let one foote forward putting his thumbes under his Girdle, looking to the standers by with a terrible countenance thepping forward, lift up his foot and stampt on the ground with it, and faid with a 40 terrible voyce, Tas, which is to lay, Whippe. It was a wonderfull thing to fee in how little fpace they tooke the youth, twed his hands behind with a Cord, and laid him on his belly with his thighes bare, and two Beadles placed them felues on each fide one, with one foote forward, and their Whip readie for to give him the stripes that they should bee commanded to give him. Certainly it was all done in a moment. The Merchants that came in our fauour were troubled, and stood aside shaking with feare. At this time one of the Priloners said, Sirs, be not afraid, for he cannot whip that youth. And in truth we knew it was fo, for according to their Lawes there was no fault, whereby he might command him to be whipped, and there was a penaltie if hee did it. The Louibia hearing the voyce of the Priloner, commanded to carry him with speed to the layle againe. And the Louthis did this for nothing elfe but to make vs afraid, that wee 50 should give him the Ambar for one of the Prisoners, for he could not give vs the other because he was alreadie adjudged to due, and the fentence confirmed by the King, which was irrenocable, and he was willing to have the Ambar, for he hoped to have of the King a greater Reward then to be Ponchali for the Ambar. For he did eate it for to fullayne life; and many dayes were patt fince they had demanded it of the Portugals, but as they knew not the name we vied for it, they never understood one another till that the yeare after they had for the Airas of Cantan a little for the delinery of a Portugal! whereby he was advanced to Ponchali, And this would also have for the same effect the Ambar at our hands for to be advanced.

Notwithstanding, we seeing our selves tyed and without an Interpretour by whom to speake, and the youth in disposition of whipping, we gave him the Ambar. There came presently a Cha- 60 ring-dish forto proue it, and the Priloner cast a little in the fire, and feeing the smooke ascend right up, he was contented, and scattering the smoake hee set his Nose over it and said, Haoa, which is to fay, it is very good. And commanded prefently to deliver vs the Prifoner free. It was wonderfull to fee with what speed it was weighed, and the pieces told and put in a Paper,

and noted by the Scrivener before them all the number of the pieces, and the waight that was there. And after that Paper another, all glued prefently. And after that another. And in the Manner of third, the Panchasi let his Marke with Red Letters, and what was contayined within. And at their pompe in the fame instant came a little Boxe, and being put in it was prefently stopped, and voon the co-the street, ner a Paper elued, and voon it the Marke of the Ponchaft: and prefently came an inferiour Lonthis Captayne of the Army with his Souldiers, and all afarre off kneeled downe, and faid at cpery word Quos, which is to fay, Yes, enclining their heads and hands to the ground. And receiuing his mellage, prefently as he came running, to he returned running with the Boxe to take thipping for to carrie the Ambar to the Tutaen, to bee fent from him to the King. All this that I To have (poken was done in a trice before wee flirred from the place where wee were. This was allo defirous to have the Ambar of vs before the Louthia of that feate did come, which was looked for enery day to come a new : for this was onely a Lieutenant.

When any Lombia that is not of the fine, neither the Chaen, neither very inferiour, but as they jay of the meaner fort, goeth abroad into the Citie, he hath before him a good frace two Ministers with two Maces that seeme to be of filuer, voon long states, made almost after our fashion, and the one goeth on the one fide the street, the other on the other-fide. After these a little diffant, goe other two, each with a ftraight Cane, or Pole in his hand. After these goe other two in the fame distance with two Canes trayling along the Pauements, which are the Infruments of Iuftice wherewith they doe whip. After these goe other two with two Tables 20 like two Targets bowed and playstered, whereon is written the Title of the Officer that passeth. The formost tignifie in their Maces, that he which passeth is in his Office in the Kings place. And the two straight Rods, the right of Iustice which he ought to doe. Those which carrie the Instruments of whipping, doe carrie for a figne certayne long Red Laces, with two great round Teffels at the ends. And all doe carrie very gallant Plumes very well made of the points of a Peacocks tayle. And those that goe before doe now and then say with a loud voyce Hamph, which is to say. Gine place, or beware. While these doe passe it is not lawfull in any wife for any one to crosse, or goe in the middle of the street, under paine of being whipped without any remission.

It chanced two Portugals went through the middeft of a street in Cantan walking, and behind them came an inferiour Loutbia, which had but foure Ministers, which came crying according to 30 their cultomethey should give place. The Portugals either gave no heed or made no regard of those that came: wherefore a Minister comming, gaue a great thrust to the one of them, and the Portnoall answered him with a boxe on the eare; and being bound with his hands behind him, was to goe to Prison. It was necessary for the Porengall to come to the Louthia, and pacific him with faire words, and he made an end of pacifying him with fourteene Crownes that hee gaue him. After the Ministers commeth the Louibia in a rich Chaire gilt and very faire, on foure mens backes. These Chaires are great and sumptuous, and the Louthia goeth compassed with all the Scriveners and other his Ministers. And all of them while hee goeth by the fireet, goe alwayes running. And the Louthia weareth a long blacke Coate of fine Searge with long fleeues, which is the common wearing: he carrieth the armes a croffe like a Frier, and his eyes low with-40 out looking to any fide : for even with their eyes they will not communicate with the common

people, for to preserve their authoritie the more with them, that may be more feared. When any of the foure Lourbias goeth abroad, except the Tutan, or the yearely Chaen, they goe accompanied with many Ministers, and fixe Officers doe carrie them on their backes, and they leade a spare Horse with a faire Saddle, and a cloth of Silke ouer it; the Chaire iwherein they goe is more sumptuous and richer, they carrie before foure, fine, or fixe Maces, and two or three Instruments and more Ministers.

When the Chaen that commeth every three yeeres commeth into the Citie, or for forme im- Pompe of the portant affaires goeth abroad, or fome Quinchay, they shut vp all the doores in the streets where he passeth, and none doth worke, nor is any seene in the street when hee passeth. The shops are 30 that vp, and enery thing of fale is out of light. The Officers with coards along the street, doe make three lanes, where the triumphing Arches are made in three Arches: and through the middest passeth the Louthia onely, and the Officers on the two sides. And it is not lawfull for Charmand any to passe through the middle: they are accompanied of many inferiour Louthias that goe on Quimbage foot. And on the one fide of the street, and the other are many armed men and others with Ban- iplendour. ners of red Silke aduanced, all standing in good order. In the Court of the house where he is to goe in, are many Kettle-drummes fet vpon high stakes to be well played vpon, which are couered downe to the ground with clothes of Silke quartered. After these are many placed in order,

with Flags of Silke on high. After these in the same order, are many with Trumpets, and all are in great filence. As foone as the Lombia appeareth they all found their Instruments in order: Noyle and se 60 the found of the Instruments ended, they remayne all in sogreat a silence, as if there were no lence. bodie in the Court, being a great multitude of people. The people as they come in, doe place themselues on the sides, the middest betweene the Instruments remayning voide, whereby the Loubis passeth. Before these Loubias goe commonly many inferiour Loubias, of those that carrie Maces when they goe abroad. There are also in this Court many men at Armes with

long gilt Lances, and with very faire Armours. This is all in the first Court. In the second, along the Gallerie (whereof wee spake aboue, when wee treated of the houses of the great men, that onely the Loubias paffe through them) on the one fide and the other are many inferiour Louthias with Head-pieces on their heads, fome gilt, fome with Silver, and with Swords hapging at their belts, and with Coats and Callocks made in fashion of Frockes with study of Gold and Silver, that it feemeth fet vpon plates , but it is a very fine worke made vpon very finele Silke, which serueth onely for brauerie and ornament. Some vie on their heads white Headpieces garnished with Gold, but are of a very fine leafe and thinne, that seeming an Armour, are not, In this manner also are the Louthies inferiours, which doe environ the superiour Louthies. The Chaires where these doe goe are very rich and of great price, and very sumptions. The Tables whereon is written the titles of dignitie of these Great men are written with letters of Silver. And when any of these doth enter newly in any Citie with these feasts and enternaynments, all the Louibias, great and small, receive him at a house (where hee landeth very rich and noble) and from thence they accompanie him vnto his lodging, and being lodged, all doe take their leave with many curtelies. In these receivings they vie no sumptuous apparell. The great men (when most) weare Coats of red Silke, In their owne feasts in their houses, and secretly one with another, and in banquets they vie crimfon Silke, and all the brauerie in their apparell.

Manner of inquifition.

Whenfoener by way of inquirie or examination any Witnesses are demanded, the Louibias doe it in publicke before the Officers and ministers of his Office, and before all the rest that by 10 any meanes chance to be there present, and this because no falshood may be vied, nor any sleight in the manner of inquiring: and by consequence in writing. And first they examine the Witneffes feuerally, and if they doe agree, they ioyne them, and examine the one before the other, till they bring them to altercations and quarrelling by words, that by the words the one speaketh to the other they may come to the knowledge of the truth. And if by this meanes they doe not comprehend the truth, they give them many stripes and tortures that by one meanes or other they may know the truth of the matter they enquire or examine : they vie no Oath, for they efferme nothing of their Gods. They have notwithflanding a respect in the witnesling the persons of qualitie, and of whom is presumed that they will not easily lye. When they examine any matter of great weight, or a graue person, then they write themselues, the preceffe of the examination. It chanceth sometimes that some of the Loubius for a great bribe. or for great friendship let some Prisoner loose, and put another in his place, for there neuer wanteth one naughtipacke that will put himselfe in danger of stripes, or death for interest, or they bring him in by deceit, deceiuing him with words, and making the matter light vnto him, and giving him some interest, they name him as the Prisoner they will let loose, that the faulte and punishments of the guiltie may fall vpon the innocent. And when sometime in this sort they cannot let the guiltie person loose, they labour to bribe all the Officers to give him for dead among those that die in the prisons. But these inventions are not vied but where the bribes are great, or the adherents very great and mightie. And for to eschew the inconveniences which great, or the adherents very great and mugnors, and to the transfer of the Prifonershaue great of ometime fall out, when any are imprifoned for weightie matters, or the Prifonershaue great 40 of Prifons and aduerfaries, they fet downe all the markes of the Prifoners, and cause them to be fet at the foot

Canc-whip. Huge Reeds.

of the writing, that so they may not vseany of the malices abouelaid. With how much pietie and leafure they kill, with so much crueltie and speed they whip, for in this case they forgive none. The stripes are such that with reason it might be a sufficient punishment for to amend, for the canes wherewith they who pare plaited below about foure fingers broad, and goe straightning vpward vnto the end, where the Beatles hold them: and they are almost a finger thicke (for in those parts are canes as big as a mans leg. And because in Portugall are many witnesses of knowledge of the same, I dare simply affirme it, and they are of eighty or ninety spans long.) And their whips are made of these canes of the height of a middle statured man to the breatls. They give the stripes on the hammes of the mans legs, being layd on his breast, and his legs layd along, and his hands tyed behind. And the Beadles butchering, as they are commanded, the Louthias are altogether voide of compassion, talking one with another, eating and drinking, and picking their teeth. The ctueltie is fuch, that the Court is full of bloud: and when they have made an end of whipping them, they carrie them not, but like Butchen Miscroble ena- with much crueltie they draw them by one leg to the Prison. And when the Beadles are whipping, they tell with a loude voyce the stripes. If the miserable Prisoners which are in the Prion for grieuous faults at the time that this correction is to bee done can get a piece of a coard, wherewich they may hang themselves, they goe to buffets who shall hang himselfe first, that that the butcherie of the stripes be not executed on them. And the Portugals affirmed, which were in Prison, that in one day fortie Prisoners did hang themselues in the Prison where they 60 were, to escape the stripes they were rather willing to lose their lines. And they affirmed, that the coard was very short, that icarfely there was so much as to come about the necke to tye it, and on a flicke which they flucke in the wall, and because the flicke was very lowe, they pulled one another till they were choaked, going to buffers who should hang himselfe first. When any

sioth kill himfelfe, or dieth in the Prifon, it is the order in China to cast him in the house of office, and there to be three dayes, where the Rats doe eate him up. And fometimes the Chinaer Pritoners doe eate of them with hunger.

Every Citie that is the Head of the Province, hath thirteene Dungeons, and in fixe of them Store of freeare the men condemned to death: there are in Cantan vpward of fifteene thousand Prisoners, people, and There are in every Dungeon onely for the condemned to death, one hundred and twenty men therefore flore There are in euery Dungson onely for the consemned to death, one number and ewency men of bond, by ab-that ferue for watches, and have a Louthia over them as their Captaine, or Gentleman of the ufed libertie round. There be two forts of tortures, one for the hands, another for the feet, which are nip- and flore. ped by certaine Hickes to the bruifing or breaking of the fingers or toes with cruell paines.

The King hath as many wives as he lifteth: and within doores all the feruice is almost of The King his women; whereof he hath a great multitude: and likewife great store of Eunuches, and there is wines, chilno other people within the house. The first fon that is borne vinto him of any of his wives succeedeth in the Kingdome. The rest he marrieth, and at such time as he marrieth them they are lodged in some of the Cities that he best liketh; where they are well provided of all things neceffarie for their maintenance, as fonnes to the King. But they neuer fee the Kings face any more after they are married.

All the Embaffadours that come to Ching, with Embaffages from Kings or Princes, receive of the King great rewards and fauours, and they give him Cap and fignes of Lothia, whereby he hath great priviledges in the Countrey. They may whip and punish the Chinaes themselves. Emtaffadoure fo that they touch not any Louthia small or great : for to meddle with these would breed great priviledges,

20 inconveniences. This was the cause that Fernando * Perez of Adrade going for Embassadour to * Lopo Sourez China, that the Chinaes did rife against him , and hee escaped with his hands on his head losing was fent Vicefome thips: because having done vnaccustomed Inflice in China, and vpon the Chinaes, and they and feut this forbearing him, he would ftretch his hand to the Louthias. The goods of the Embaffadour, and Peret with a of his is tree from customes, and to him and to his they give lodgings to dwell in, and all things fleet to thing. necessarie while they are in the Countrie. No man, no not a Louibia may disturbe him in any and therein thing, nor any thing of his. One Lathia would have whipped one of Siam, for having carried Thomas Perez a message to the Prison to certaine Portugals that were in Prison. One of the Officers said vnto him that was present, that he was of Sam of the Embassage, wherefore being satisfied there-enterrayaed with he let him goe in peace, defiring him he would not doe to againe.

With the Chinaes being fo great as at the beginning we faid and declared, the King hath fuch tome Portugals

meanes and industrie in the government thereof, that every moneth he knoweth all that passeth viurping Ta. through all the Realme, and he knoweth it in this manner. All matters of Justice and of Warre, Hand, and exand all annuities with all that is worth the knowing in every one of the Prounces is referred by ercifing all the Loubias, and by other persons to the Ponchass, and the Ponchass maketh a relation of all by ourrages, cauwriting to the Tutan. The Tutan is bound to fend a Post every moneth to the Court, which fed T. Perez afcarrieth the information in writing to the King of all things that passed in that moneth. They travell from count their moneths by the Moones, and they are to be dispatched in such fort, that at the be- Cantan to the ginning of every Moone the Posts from all the Provinces are to bee at the Court , that the first Court to bee an day of the Moone it may be presented to the King, as relations of all things happened in enery taken for a Prouince. And although some Prouinces are farre distant from the Court, that the Posts cannot Spie, and sent come within a moneth to the Court: notwithstanding in such manner they agree that every ton, where hee Moone the King is to have the relation of every Province, though the one be of more time then died in Prilon another, because of the one Prouince being farre and the other neere.

The manner of the Polts is as among vs, they carrie a Horne which they winde when they factors. See come neere to any Towne, that they may have a Horse ready in every Towne within a certaine who seemeth distance. They are bound when they heare the Horne to haue a Horse ready for him, which is to disagree: or done with fuch diligence as all the other feruices of the Officers. And where hee is to passe a else his rec-Foord, as soone as he windeth his Horne with great speed they carrie him a Boat, as I saw once Plesact was going to the Citie of Cantan, in a Towne that was in the way, called Caman. Sometimes it him, For hee

hapneth by the malice of some Lonthias, when they have any interest in it, to keepe some things had left 6, thips concealed that the King knoweth not: but woe to them if the King come to know it, for they there, when he are grieuously punished, as wee shall see in a case hereafter following. Being in India, and also went to Canon. in Chma, I was enformed that fometimes the King of China doth fend fome men of gr. at confidence disguised through divers parts of China, that they might fee how his Officers did ferue Disguised Inhim. And if there were any nouelties or changes whereof they made him not prime, or some relligencers, things that were necessarie to prouide.

ð. V.

of the Portugall commerce with the Chinois; of the seuere Instice executed upon certaine Magistrates, for wrongs done to the Portugals.

190

Equile we spake many times before of Portugals, captines in China, it will bee a connenient thing that the caules of their Captimitie be knowne, where many notable things will be shewed. Yee are to know, that from the yeere 1554. hitherto, the businesses

in China are done very quietly and without danger : and fince that time till this day, there hath not one ship beene lost but by some mischance: having lost in times past many. Be-10 cause as the Portugals and the Chinaes were almost at warres, when the Armies came vpon them, they weighed anchor and put for the Sea, and lay in places vnsheltered from tempests, whereby the formes comming, many were loft vpon the coaft, or vpon some shelues. But from the yetre 1554. hitherto, Lionell of Sofa, borne in Algarue, being chiefe Captaine, and married in Chault made a couenant with the Chinaes that they would pay their duties, and that they should fuffer them to doe their bufineffes in their Ports. And fince that time they doe them in Contage. which is the first part of China: and thither the Chinaes doe resort with their Silkes and Muske. which are the principall goods the Portugals doe buy in China. There they have fure Hauens. where they are quiet without danger, or any one disquieting them, and so the Chinaes doe now make their merchandife well: and now both great and small are glad with the trafficke of the Portugals, and the fame of them runneth through all China. Whereby some of the principal of the Court came to Cantan onely to fee them having heard the fame of them. Before the time aforesaid, and after the riling which Fernando Perez of Andrade did cause, the businesses were done with great trouble, they suffered not a Portugall in the Countrey, and for great hatred and loathing called them Facui, that is to fay, Men of the Denill. Now they held not commerce with them under the name of Portugali, neither went this

Portugals called Farcui, and name to the Court when they agreed to pay customes : but vnder the name of Fangin, which Name-policy, is to fay, People of another Coast. Note allo, that the law in China is that no man of China doe fayle out of the Realme in paine of death. Onely it is lawfull for him to fayle along the coaft

Couetife law-

of the same China. And yet along the coast, nor from one place to another in China it selse it is Lawfull to goe without a certificate of the Louthias of the Countrey whence they depart: in 3 which is fit downe, whither they goe, and wherefore, and the markes of his person, and his age. If he carrieth not this certificate he is banished to the Frontiers. The Merchant that carrieth goods carrieth a certificate of the goods hee carrieth, and how hee payed duties for them. In every Custome-house that is in every Province hee payeth certaine duties, and not paying them he loseth the goods, and is banished to the frontier parts. Notwithstanding the abouesaid lawes some Chinaes doe not leave going out of China to trafficke, but these never returne againe to China. Of these some line in Mallaca, others in Siam, others in Patane, and so in divers places of the South some of these that goe out without licence are scattered. Whereby some of these which line already out of China doe return againe in their ships vnto China, vnder the pro-40 tection of some Portugall: and when they are to dispatch the duties of their ships they take fome Portugall their friend to whom they give fome bribe, that he may dispatch it in his name and pay the duties. Some Chinaes desiring to get their liuing, doe goe very secretly in these flips of the Chinaes to trafficke abroad, and returne very secretly, that it bee not knowne, no not to his kindred, that it bee not spread abroad, and they incurre the penalty that the like doe incurre. This law was made because the King of China found that the much communication of the strangers might be the cause of some risings. And because many Chinaes with an excuse of fayling abroad became theeues and robbed the Countries along the Sea coast, and yet for all this diligence there are many Chinaes robbers along the Sea coait.

China Pitats.

These Chinaes that live out of China, and doe goe thither with the Poringals, fince the offence 10 of Fernando Perez of Andrada did direct the Portugals to begin to goe to traffick to Liampo; for in those parts are no walled Cities nor Villages, but many and great Townes along the coast, of poore people, which were very glad of the Portugals, and fold them their prouision whereof they made their gayne. In these Townes were these Merchants of China which came with the Portugals, and because they were acquainted, for their sake the Portugals were better entertayned. And as these Chinaes which were among the Portugals and the Countrey Merchants in their buyings and fellings, they reaped a great profit thereby. The inferiour Louthias of the Sea coast received also great profit of this trafficke, for they received great bribes of the one and of the other, to give them leave to trafficke, to carrie and recarrie their goods. So that this trafficke was among them a long while concealed from the King, and from the superi- 60 our Lonibias of the Province. After these matters had for some space beene done secretly in Liampoo, the Portugals went by little and little forward, and began to goe and make their merchandife to Chincheo, and to the Hands of Cantan. And other Louthus permitted them already in enery place for the bribes sake, whereby some Portugals came to trailicke beyond Namqui,

Chinches. Namqui, or Nangue.

which is very farre from Cantan, without the King being witting, or having knowledge of this trafficke. The matters fell out in fuch fort, that the Portugals wintered in the Ilands of Liampoo. Some Chinaes that were among the Portugals, and some Portugals with them, came to oilor. Disorders of der themselves in such manner that they made great stealths and robberies and killed some of the ourragious

CHAP. 10. S.5. Outragious Chinois, in folent Portugals. Briberie.

people. These euils encreased so much that the clamour of the injured was so great, that it came Chinosis, and innot onely to the superiour Londons of the Province, but also to the King. Who commanded presently to make a very great Armada in the Prouince of Fuquen, to drive the theeues from all the coast, especially those that were about Liampoo, and all the Merchants as well Portugals as Chinaes were reputed in this number of theeues. Being ready they went forth along the coaft

10 of the Sea. And because the windes served them not for to goe for Liampes, they went to the coast of Chinches, where finding some shall of Portugals, they began to fight with them, and in no wife did they permit any wares to come to the Portugals; who stayed many dayes there (fighting fometimes) to fee if they could have any remedie for to dispatch their bufinesles. But feeing they had no remedy, they determined to goe without it. The Captaynes of the Armie knowing this, lent a mellage to them very fecretly by night, that if they would that any goods knowing criss, ten a menage to those to the found from them formething. The Portugals very glad with this Biberie. message, prepared a great and sumptuous present, and sent it them by night because they were fo admied. From thence-forward came many goods vinto them, the Louthias making as though they tooke no heed thereof, diffembling with the Merchants. And so were the businesses ended 20 that yeere, which was the yeere 1 548.

The years following, which was 1549, there was a straighter watch upon the Coast by the Captaynes of the Armada, and greater vigilancie in the Ports and entrances of China, in fuch fort that neyther goods nor victuals came to the Portugals : but for all the vigilancie and watching there was, (as the Ilands along the Coast are many, for they all runne in a rew along the China) the Armies could not have so much vigilancie, that some wares were not brought secretly to the Portugals. But they were not so many that they could make vp the ships ladings, and the vetering those goods which they had brought to China. Wherefore leaving the goods which they had not vttered in two ships of China, of such Chinaes as were alreadie difmen. bred from China, and Traffique abroad under the shadow of the Portugals, (in the which they

30 left thirtie Portugals in charge with the ships and with the goods) that they might defend the thips, and in some Port of China where best they could they should fell the goods that remayned in change for some Wares of China, and having ordayned this they departed for India. As the people of the Armie of the Chinaes faw the two ships remayne alone, the other ships being gone, they came vpon them, being induced by fome Merchants of the Country, which

discoursed to them the great store of goods that remayned in those Vessels, and the few Ports. gali that remayned to keepe them. Then they layd an ambush for them, dreffing some Chinaes ashoare, which being in armes made as though they would set vpon the ships to fight with them, because they were close to the Land, that the Portugals being prouoked, should come out of the thips to fight with them, & fo the thips might remaine without defence to them of the Armada. 40 which lay watching in an ambush, & did accordingly fet vpon the two Vessels with great furie & celeritie, and flaying some Portugals that were in the ships, and wounding others they tooke the ships. The chiefe Captayn which is the Lutbiss, remayned so glorious, that hewsed great crueltie on some Chinaes that hee tooke with the Portugals, Hee laboured to perswade source Portugals Mountayne which had more apparance in their persons then the rest, that they should say, they were Kings of Mouse birth Malaca, he perswaded them in the end, because hee promised to vie them better then the rest, and therewith he prouoked them. And finding among the cloathes that hee tooke a Gowne and a Cap, and asking of one of those Chinass, that were taken with the Portugals what habit that was, they put in his head, that it was the habit of the Kings of Malaca, wherefore he com-

manded prefently to make three Gownes by that patterne, and three Caps, and so he apparelled mili rifus te 30 them all toure in one fort, to make his fayning true, and his victory more glorious. To this was joyned the couctousnesse of the Lutbissi to see if hee could detayne the many goods that hee had

And to doe this more fafely, not to be taken in a lye, he did great executions upon the Chinaes which he tooke with the Portugals, and killing some of them determined to kill the reft. These things comming to the cares of the Airas, which was his superior, he disliked greatly that which hee had done, and fent to him presently that hee should kill no more of those which remayned, but that he should come to him presently bringing with him all the prize as well of the men that were yet aliue, as of the goods. The Lutbiffi ordering his Journey for to goe to the Aitao, as he was commanded, he commanded foure Chaires to be given to them, to whom hee had

60 guen title of Kings, to be carried in them with more honour. And the other Portugals were carried in Coopes with their heads out fast by the neckes betweene the boards that they could Pillory Coops not pull them in, but having some wounds in their heads, they went bare headed to the Sunne and to the Dew, and were carried on mens shoulders. The Luthiss went with this Prize through the Countrey with great Majethe, he carried before him foure Banners displayed, on the which

were written the names of the foure Kings of Malaca. And when he entred into the Townes he entred with great noyfe and Majestie, with found of Trumpets, and with Cryers which went crying the great victorie, the Luthis (naming him) had gotten of the foure great Kings of Malaca. And all the great men of the Townes went to receive him with great Feaths and Ho. nours, all the Townes running to fee the new Victorie.

When the Lubifi came with all his pompe and glory where the Aitao was, after the giuino him particular account of all things passed and of his victory, he manifested to him his pretence and agreed with him to divide the goods betweene them both, and that he should continue the favning of the Kings of Malaca, that both might receive of the King Honours and Rewards. This being fet downe they both agreed that to keepe this in fecret, the Luthif should go forward to Damna'le vain that which he had begun, to wit, he should say all the Chimas, that came there capting. And presently they commanded presently to put it in effect, and so they slue minetic and odde Chie. nas, among whom were some young youths staine. They left notwithstanding three or four vouthes and one man, that by them (bringing them to their owne hand) they might certifie the King all that they would, that was to make of the Portugals Theeues, and conceale the goods which they tooke: certifying also by these that those foure were Kings of Malaca. And the Portugals not having the Language of the Countrey, neither had any person to intreate for or fauour them would perish : and they being mightie would make their owne Tale good, following the end by them intended. And for this cause they slue not the Portugals, but left them a-

> ·These Lethias could not doe this so secretly, but many of those which they slue had kindred in the Countrey, which did grieue at the death of theirs. Whereby, as well by thefe, as by some Lonthias that were zealous of Iustice, and would not give confent in to great eails and fraudulent dealings, this matter came to the Kings eares, and hee was informed how the Portugals were Merchants which came to traffique with their Merchandize to China, and they were no theeues. and how they had fallly given the Title of Kings to foure of them, to the end the King should thew great fauours, and doe them great honours; and how they had viurped great store of goods: and that for to conceale these euils, they killed men and children without fault.

live, for the greater triumph of the victorie.

The Kings

102

As foone as the King was informed of all aboue faid, hee dispatched present from the Court a Quinchay, (of whom we spake before, that is to say place of Gold) And with him he sent other 10 two men of great authoritie alio, of the which the one had beene Panchaft, the other Auchaft, these two as Inquisitors and Examiners of this matter: Commanding and commending to the Chaen which that yeare went to visit the Prouince of Fuguen, and to the Panehasi and Anchasi. of the same Province, their ayde and assistance to the Quenchay, and the two Inquisitors in all things necessary for them in these businesses. The two that came with the Quinchay, as Inquifitors, went prefently to certayne great Houses which had in the middeft a great Court, and on the one fide of the Court were certayne great and faire Lodgings, and on the other fide others in the same fort. Each of the Inquisitors entred in one of these Houses aforesaid. The Prisoners were presently brought, and were presented to the one of them, who for courtese remitted them to the other, that he should examine them first, with many words of courtesie. The other fent as them againe with great thankfulnesse. So they were fundry times carried from one to another, each of them willing to give the hand to the other of beginning first, till that one of them yeelded and began. And as the matter was of great import and much commended to them, all that the guiltie and the accusers did speake these Officers did write with their owne hands. The Poringals had for a great Enemy a China man and Pilot of one of the shippes that were taken, and a China vouth which was a Christian, which from a childe was brought vp among the Portugals: for they were both made of the part of the contrarie Louthias , mooned by gifts and promites: the Louthias being alreadie depoted of their Offices, and held for guiltie, for the which they were accused before the King.

But though they were thus handled, they were so mightie and so fauoured, that they could 50 take from the Portugals a China youth that ferued them for an Interpreter, which voon their Manner of ex- Petition was againe delinered them. They examined them in this order, the accused were first brought and examined by one of these Officers, and they carried them to the other to bee examined againe. And while the other was re-examining the accused, the accusers were brought to him that examined first. And as well the accused as the Accusers were all examined by both the Officers, that afterward they both feeing the confessions of the one and the other, they might fee if they did agree. And first they examined every one by himselfe. Afterward they examined them altogeter, for to fee if the one did contrary the other, or did contend and reprehend one another, that fo by little and little they might gather the truth of the case. In these Examinations the two were contrary, to wit, the Pilot, and the Christian China youth, and had many 60 firipes, because they agreed in somethings. The Louthias did alwayes shew themselves glad to heare the Portugals in their defence, who alleadged in their defence, that if they would know who they were, and how they were Merchants and not Theenes, they should tend to enquire of them along the Coast of Chinches, that there they should know the truth, which they might

know of the Merchants of the Country, with whom a great many yeares agoe they had dealt. and that they might know that they were no Kings, for Kings do not abase themselves so much as to come with to few men to play the Marchants, and if before they faid the contrary, it was by the deceit of the Lutbifi, and to receive better viage of him in their persons.

Hauing this information of the Portugals, prefently with the opinion of the Quineber and the other Officers, they went to Chinches both of them, to enquire of the trueth of that which the Portugals had told them; and discouring there the truth of the Portugals matter, and the lies of the Lubiff, and of the Anas, they dispatched presently a Post; wherein they commanded to put the Latbiffi and the Aitao in Prifon, and in good fafeguard. Wherefore from thence forward 10 all men began to fauour them very much. If notwithstanding this examination had bin made in Liampoo, as it was in (bincheo, the Portugals could not have chosen but have past it ill, according to the greatnesse of the euils they had done there. After the Louibias returned from Chinches, they commanded to bring the Portugals before them, and comforted them very much, shewing them ereat good-will, and faying to them, that they knew already they were no theeues, but were great good-will, and 137 ing to them, that they as their aduerfaries, to fee if they contra-honeft men: and they examined againe as well they as their aduerfaries, to fee if they contrahonest men: and they satisfied of that which before they had fooken. In these later re-examina-fallouttions the Pilot of China, which before had shewed himselfe against the Partugals, and had beene on the Louthias fide, feeing that the Louthias were already in Prison, and that now they could doe them no good, and that the Portugals were already favoured, and that the trueth was already

20 knowne, he gainfaid himfelfe of all that he had faid, and faid that it was true that the Portugals were no theeues nor Kings, but Merchants, and very good men, and discouered the goods which the Lunbifft had taken when he surprised the Portugals. And that till then he had faid to the contrary, was for the great promises which the Louthias promised him, and for the great threats they vsed to him if he did it not. But seeing they were already in Prison, and he knew they could doe him no hurt, he would now speake the truth. They then commanded to torment him, and whip him very fore, to fee if he would gainfay himfelfe, but he ftill continued in the fame confession,

All the examinations and diligences necessarie in this businesse ended, the Quinchay willing The Quinchage to depart for the Court with his companie, would first fee the Poringals, and give a fight of him- oftention,

felfe to the Citie. The fight was of great Maiestie in the manner hee went abroad in the Citie. 30 for he went accompanied with all the great men of it, and with many men in Armes and many Ancients displayed and very faire, and with many Trumpets and Kettle- drummes, and manv other things which in fuch pompes are vied. And accompanied in this manner, hee went to certaine noble and gallant houses. And all the great men taking their leaue of him, hee commanded the Portugals to come neere him, and after a few words he dismissed them : for this was not but onely to see them. Before these Louibias departed they commanded the Louibias of the Countrey, and the Iaylors, that all of them should fauour the Portugals, and give them good entertaynment, and should command to give them all things necessarie for their persons. And commanded euery one to fet his name in a piece of Paper, because that while they were at the Court, and their matters were dispatching, they should not craftily make some missing. And 40 they commanded to keepe the Luthoffi in good lafety, and the Aitas, and that they should not

let them communicate with any person. Being gone from the Citie, they lodged in a small Towne, where they fet in order all the Papers, and ingroffing onely that which was necessarie. And because the Papers were many, and were much to write, they helped themselues with three men. And having ingroffed all that they were to carrie to the Court, they burned all the reft. And because these three men which they tooke for helpers should not spread abroad any thing Cautelousine of that which they had feene, or heard, or written , they left them shut up with great vigilan dustrice cie, that none should speake with them, commanding to give them all things necessarily very abundantly vntill the King, Sentence came from Court, and were declared. The Papers being abundancity vinus the aning sentence constitution of the Softence of the Softe

50 in * manner and forme following.

Pimpu by commandement of the King. Because Chaipuu, Huchin Tutan without my commande - The Kings FUID OF Commonweaveness of the Long. Scientific visibles, find the state of the Rings of the Rin chei, who taking with him the Louthias which I fent to examine the trueth of the Portugals, and also of the Aitao and Luth fii, which had informed mee, that the Portugals were thecues, and that they came to all the coast of my Dominion to robbe and to murther. And the trueth of all being knowne, they are come from doing that which I commanded them. And the Papers being scene by my Fimpu, and by the great Louthias of my Court, and well examined by them, they came to give mee account of

all. And likewife I commanded them to be perufed by Ahimpu, and Altu Chaen, and by Athayluti 60 Chuquin, whom I commanded to onerfee those Papers very well, because the matters were of great weight; wherein I would prouide with Inflice. Which thus being scene and perused by them all, it was manifest that the Portugals came many yeares before to the coast of Chincheo to doe their affaires, which was not convenient they should doe in the manner they did it, but in my Markets, as was alwaies the custome in all my Ports. These men of whom hisberto I knew not : I know now that the people of

* Pentoos are

Senfu and o-

thers rewar.

Chincheo went to their ships about their affaires, whereby I know already that they are Merchants and not theenes, as they had written to me they were.

A. a I doe not blame Merchants to belpe Merchants, but I put great fault in my Louthias of Chincheo : because that when any shop came to my Ports, they should have knowne if they were Merchants. and if they would pay their duties, and if they would pay them, to write presently unto mee. If they had done (o : so much estill kad not beene done. Or when they were taken, if they had let mee know it. I had commanded to set them at libertie. And although it bee a custome in my Ports the ships that come anto * In chins and them to be measured * by cubits for to pay their duties : these being very farre off, it was not necessaries Size they pay but to let them doe their businesses, and goe for their Countries. Beside, the my l'ontoos " which been Custane by measuring the these men to be Merchants did not tell it mee, but concealed is from mee, whereby they were the easis of this to n poop many people being taken and slame. And these that remayined aline as they could not speake, did looks 10 to provide toward Heanen, and demanded from their hearts instice of Heanen (they know no other God inmany cubits it preme out the Heauen.) Besides these things I know that the Actao, and the Luthissi did so much enill for conetousnesses of the many goods which they rooke from the Portugals, haning no regard whether those which they tooke, and tooke the goods from, were good or earl men. Likewise the Louthias along the Sca coast knew these mento be Merchants, and certified mee not. And all of them, as distrall were the cause of so much enill. I knew more by my Quinchey, that the Aitao, and the Luthisi bad Letters, by the which they knew that the Portugals were no theenes but Merchants, and knowing this But heriy in tented with befing of the men, but hery wrote many her vnto mee, and were not confolence.

But heriy in tented with befing of the men, but killed boildere also, cutting off the fret of some, of others the band, and at last the bends of them als: writing vnto mee they had taken and sayne Kings of Mallaca. Which 10. case I beleeuing to be true, grieue in my heart.

And because hitherto so many cruelties have beene vsed without my commandement, from hence forward I command they be not done. Besides this the Portugals resisted my Armie, being better to have let themselves beene taken, then to kill my people. Moreover, it is long since they came to the coast of our Dominion about their affaires in manner of theenes, and not as Merchants: wherefore if they had beene naturall as they are strangers they had incurred paine of death & losse of goods, wherfore they are not with-* Said in his out fault. The Turan by whose commandement those men were sla ne, said * that by this deed I should make him greater; and the people that he commanded to be flagne after they had no heads, their bearts, (that is their foules and their bland) required instice of Heanen. I seeing so great enils to be done, my eyes could not indure the fight of the Papers without teares, and great griefe of my beart. I know 30 not , my Louthias feeing they tooke this people , wherefore they let u not goe, that I might not come to know fo many cruelties and fo great. Wherefore feeing all thefe things, I doe create Senfuu chiefe Louthia, because hee did his dusie in his charge, and told mee trueth, I create also chiefe Louthia Quinchio, because hee wrote the trueth to mee of the Pontoos which went to doe their merobandise in (ecret with the Portugals to the Sea. Those which are enill I will make them baser then they which

Likewise because Pachou did trafficke with the Portugals, and for bribes did permit the Merchants of the Country to trafficke with the Portugals, and yet doing these things, wrote unto mee that the Portugals were thecues and that they came to my Dominions onely to seale. And the same bee said also to my Louthias (which presents) answered, that he tyed, for they knew already the contrains, And therefore such a one, and such a one, (he nameth ten Louthias .) It is nothing that all you be banished to red Caps z, to the which I condemne you: but you deserve to be made baser as I doe make you. Chaen are the entigne for taking these men thou sayedit thou shouldest be greater, and being in the doing of so much enil thou (arealf soon didft not feare mee: fuch a one, and fuch a one (he nameth nine) for the taking of thefe i u the King men yee fay, I would make you great, and without any feare of mee yee all lied, such a one, and such a in instrontiers one (he nameth many.) I know also yee tooke bribes. But because you did so, Imake you base, (he deagainst the E- priveth them of the dignitie of Lothias.)

Such a one, and fach a one (he nameth many. If the Aitao and the Luthiffi would kill fo many people, wherefire did you suffer it? But seeing that in consenting you were accessarie with them in their to death, all are in the same fault. Chifun, and Chanchitun, were also agreeing to the will of the Aitao and the Luthilli, and were with them in the flaughter, as well those that were as those that were not in fault. Wherefore I condemne you all to red Caps. Lupuu let him baue a good heart, because the Tutan being willing to bell this people, he faid that he should let mee first know it. To him I will doe no harme, but good, as he deferueth, and I command that he remanne Louthia. Sanchi I make my Anchaffi of the Citie of Canti. The Antexio I command to be deposed of his honour. Assam feeing hee can freake with the Portugals, let him have honour and ordinarie, and he shall be carried to Chaquean, where hee was borne. (This is the youth with whom the Portugals did defend themselves, serving them for Interpreter, they gave him title of Louthia, and mayntenance,) Chinque Head of the Merchants that went to the Sea to trafficke with the Portugals, and deceined them, bringing great store of 60 goods a land, it shall be demanded of him, and set in good safeguard for the mayntenance and expenses of the Portugals, and I condemne him and his foure Companions to red Caps, and they shall bee banified whither my Louthias shall thinke good.

To the rost guilty and impresoned for this matter, I command my Louthias to gue to every one the

punishment be descrueth. I command the Chaen to bring me buther the Tutan that his faults being perused by the great men of my Court, I may command to doe instice on him as I shall thinke good. (This The Tutenby Tutan was also a consenter in the wickednesse of the Anao and the Laubissi: for the Laubissi, hanging himand the Aitao made him partaker, and gaue him part of the booties which they tooke from the Portugals, that as the head he should hold for good that which they did : for in truth they durit the Hangman, not have done that which they did if he had not given confent, and agreed with their opinion. Hangman ra-This hearing what was judged against him, hung himselfe, saying, that seeing the Heauen had ther. made him whole, that no man should take away his head. The Poutoos which yet are in Prison. hall be examined againe, and shall presently be dispatched. Chuichum shall presently be deprined from 10 being a Louthia, without being heard any more. Chibee, head of fixe and twenty, I command that hee and his be all (et at libertie, for I find but little fault in them. Those which owe any money it shall bee

CHAP. 10. S.6. Kings sentence, bis Iuftice, Mercie, and respect.

recovered of them presently. Famichin , and Tomicher shall dye , if my Louthias doethinke it expedient: if not let them doe as they thinke best. Alfonso of Panua, and Peter of Cea (these were Portugals) Antonie and Francisco (these were slaves) finding them to be guilty of killing some men of my Armie, Shall with the Luthilli and Aitao be put in Prison, where according to the custome of my Kingdome, they all shall dre at leisure. The other Portugals that are aline with all their Sernants which are in all fiftie one, I command them to be carried to my (tite of Cansi, where I command they be well intreated, seeing my heart is so good towards them that for their sake I punish in this sort the people of my Countrey, and deale so well with them; for it is my custome to doe lustice to all men. The Louthias of the 20 Armada, finding they are in little fault, I command they bee fet free (I deale in this fort with all men, that my Louthias may fee that all that which I doe, I doe it with a good zeale.) All these things I command to be done with speed. Hitherto the sentence of the King.

The Portugals that were freed by the fentence, when they carried them whither the King Whatbecame commanded, found by the way all things necessary in great abundance, in the Houses about of the Portsfaid, that the King had in every Towne for the Louisias when they travell. They carried galt. them in seates of Chaires made of Canes on mens backes, and they were in charge of inferiour Louthias, which caused them to have all things necessarie through all places where they came, till they were delivered to the Lourbias of the Citie of Cansi. From that time they had no more of the King euery moneth but one Foon of Rice (which is a measure as much as a man 30 can beare on his backe) the rest they had need of, every one did seeke by his owne industry. Afterward they dispersed them againe by two and two, and three and three through diners places, to preuent that in time they should not become mightie joyning themselues with others,

Those that were condemned to death, were presently put in Prison of the condemned. And Alfonso of Pains had a meanes to gue the Portugals to understand that were free, that for his welcome they had given him prefently fortie ftripes and intreated him very euill, thewing himfelfe comforted in the Lord. Those which were at libertie, now some and then some, came to the ships of the Portugals, by the industrie of some Chinas, which brought them very secretly for the great gifts they received of the Merchants of Portugall, which made their Merchandize

V I. Of the Religion in China; difficultie of bringing in Christianitie. Terrible Earth-quakes and Tempests in

N the Citie of Cantan in the middest of the River which is of fresh water and very broad, is a little Ile, in the which is a manner of a Monasterie of their Priests; and within this Monasterie I saw an Oratorie high from the ground very well made, with certayne gilt steps before it, made of carued worke; in which was a woman very well made with a childe about her necke, and ichad a Lampe barring before it. I suspecting thatto bee some shew of Christianitie, demanded of some Lay-men, and some of the Idoll Priefts which were there, what that woman fignified, and none could tell it mee, nor give mee any reason of it. It might well be the Image of our Ladie, made by the ancient Christians, that Saint Thomas left there, or by their occasion made, but the conclusion is , that all is forgotten: it imght also be some Gentsles Image. The greatest God they have is the Heaven, the letter that figniheth it, is the principall and the first of all the Letters. They worship the Sun, the Moone, inginiers it, is the principal anothe first or an one besters, a new woman to the form of and the Starres, and all the I mages they make without any respect. They have, not withflanding. Heaten 5.61 and the states, small me images they make without any respect they make the states, and an end of the states of London, which they worthip for having been famous in fome one thing or other both God and And likewise Statues and Images of some Priests, of the Idols, and some of other men for some Character,

respects particular to them. And not only worship they these Images, but what sower stone they

* A Perfume

They call commonly these Gods Omittoffois, they offer them Incense, Bonjamin, Ciuet, and Omittoffor and another Wood which they call Cayo, * Laque, and other smelling things. They offer them likewife Ocha, whereof is mention made afore. Euery one hath a place to pray, and at the entries behind the doores of the Houses, in the which they have their carved Idols : to the which eurry day in the Morning and at Euening they offer Incente and other perfumes. They have in many places (as well in the Townes as out of them) Temples of Juols. In all the thips they fayle in , they make prefently a place for to worship in, where they carrie their idols.

Lott.

In all things they are to enterprize either Iournies by Sea or by land, they vie Lots & cast them before their Gods. The Lots are two sticks made like halfe a Nut-shell, flat on the one side, and round on the other : and as bigge againe as an halfe Nut, and joyned with a string. And when to they will cast Lots, they speak first with their God, perswading him with words, and promising him some Offring if he give him a good Lot, & in it shew him his good Voyage or good success. of his hulines. And aftermany words they call the Lots. And if both the flats fides fal voward on one up another downe, they hold it for an euill Lot, and turne them toward their Gods very melancholy, they call them Dogs, with many other reproaches. After they are wearie of rating them, they foothe them againe with faire milde words, and aske pardon, faying, that the Melancholy of not giving them a good Lot, cauled them to doe them injurie, and speake injurious words vnto him : but that they will pardon them and give them a good Lot; and they promife to offer him more such a thing (because the promises are the better for them that promise them. they make many and great promifes and offerings) and fo they cast Lots so many times till 20 they fall both on the flat fides which they hold for a good Lot, then remayning well contented

Cruell mento they offer to their Gols that which they promifed. It happeneth many times when they cast their foolish Loes about any weighty matter, if the Lot fall not out good, or launching a ship to the Sea it goeth not well, and some euill came to it, they runne to their Gods and caft them in the water, and put them in the flame of the fire sometimes, and let them scorch a little, and spurning them often, and tread them under foot, and give them rayling words, till their businesse be ended. and then they carrie them with playing and feafts, and give them their Offerings,

Offerings.

They hold for a great Offering a Hogges head boyled: they offer Hennes, Grefe, Duckes and Rice all dreft, and a great pot of Wine. After they present it all to the Gods, they fet his portion apart, which is, to put in a Difh, the small points of the Hogs care, the bils, and the points 30 of the clawes of the Hennes, Geefe, and Duckes, a few cornes of Rice very few, and put in with great heed, three or foure drops of Wine very heedfully, that there fall not many drops from the Pot. Thefe things fo fet in a Bason that they fet them on the Altar to their Gods for to eate, and they fet themselves there before the Gods to eate all that which they bring.

The Deuill

They worthip the Deuill also, which they paint after our fashion: and say that they worthip him because he maketh those which are good, Deuils; and the euill, he maketh Buffes, or Kine, or other beafts. And they fay that the Deuill hath a Mafter that teacheth him his Knaueries: thefe things fay the base people: the better fort fay they worship him because hee shall doe them no

When they will launch any new ship to the Sea, their Priests being called by them come into the ships to doe their Sacrifices with long side Garments of Silke. They fee about the shippe many flags of Silke, they paint in the prow of the flup the Deaill, to the which they make many reuerences and Offerings, and fay they doe it becaute the Deuill shall doe no hure to the ship. They offer to the Gods Papers with divers Images painted, and other of fundry kinde of cuttings, and they burne them all before the Idols with certayne Ceremonies and well tuned Songs, and while their finging doth laft, they ring cercayne small Bels, and among all they yie

Paper Offe-

In this Countrey are two manner of Priests, the one that have their head all shauen, these weare on their heads certayne course Caps like vnto Canopie cloth, they are high, and flat be-

gre.t store of eating and drinking.

Two forts of Monkes. Seculars.

hind (higher before then behind a hand breadth) made like a Mitre with Pinacles : their wea- 50 ring is white Coates after the Lay-mens fathion. Thefe line in Monasteries, they have dining places, and Cels, and many pleatures within their wals. There be others whom commonly the people doe vie for their Burials and Sacrifices, their weare their haire, and blacke filke Coates, or of Searge or Linnen, and long like the Lay-men, having for a token their haire made fall in the Crowne of the head with a flicke very well made like a closed hand, varnished blacke. None of these Priests have Wines, but they line wickedly and filthily.

Feafts.

Traditionall

The first day of the yeare, which is in the new Moone of March, they make through all the Land great Feafts, they visit one another, the chiefe principally doe make great Banquets. How much these people are curious in the rule and government of the Countrey, and in their common Traffique, so much they are beaftly in their Gentilities, in the viage of their Gods and Idola-60 tries. For befides that which is faid, they have many Gentilicall Lyes, of men that were turned into Dogges, and afterward into men, and of Snakes that were converted into men, and many

I entred one day into a Temple and came to an Altar; where were certaine stones set vp

which they worthipped, and trusting in the little estimation they held their Gods in and in beine men that would be fatisfied with reason, I threw the flones downe to the ground, whereat fome ranne very fiercely at me and angry, asking me wherefore I had done that, I went milly to them, and fmiling, faid to them, because they were so inconsiderate that they worshipped those fromes. They asked me wherefore should they not adore them? and I shewed them how they were better then they, seeing they had the vie of reason, feete, hands, and eyes, wherewith they did divers things that the stones could not doe, and that seeing they were better they should not abase and esteeme so little of themselves as to worship things so vile they being so noble. They answered me that I had reason, and went out with me in company, leaving the stones TO on the ground : fo that there is likelihood and shew of their becomming Christians. And it mas kethallo much to this purpose, their not making any difference of meate, as all the people of India doth. And feeing that among all the meates they effeeme the Porke moft, it is almost impossible for them to become Turkes.

Notwithstanding, there are two verie great inconveniences to make any Christians in this Countrey. The one is, that in no wife they will permit any noueltie in the Countrey, as in fome fort it may bee seene in the matter of the Moores. So that whatsoever noveltie that is in No novelie, the Countrey, the Loubias take order prefently how to represent; and it goeth no further, Whence it happened in Cantan, because they faw a Portugall measure the entries of the Gates, they fet presently Watches that none should come in without licence, nor goe voon the Walls. 20 The lesond is, that no strange person may enter into China without leave of the Louthids, nor be

in Cantan, which doe give him a certaine time to bee in Cantan. The time of the licence ended, Provisions a.

presently they labour to have them depart. Wherefore because I and those which were with gainst stay of me were one moneth longer in Cantan, they fet vp written bords that none should keepe nor Strangers. harbour vs in their houses, under payne of so much, till wee held it our best cheape to goe to the Saips. To the about faid is joyned the common people to bee greatly in feare of the Louthias. wherefore none of them durst become a Christian without their licence, or at the least many would not doeit. Therefore as a man cannot be feeled in the Country, hee cannot continue Preaching, and by confequence he cannot freetifie and preferre the fruit. There was not withstanding one way how to Preach freely, and fruit might be made in the Country, without any to dogge barking at the Preacher, nor any Louchia doe him hurt any way : which is, if hee hair a licence for it of the King : And it might bee obtayned if a folemne Embassage were sent with a for Notes

Hether totted the Amily s extens a major was versioned by a justime tomographing mere join tring a justime to demon prefers to the King of China; in the name of the King of Portugal, retigions men going with the Ambaffadour to obtaine the licence to goe about the Centures, thereing them letters to the might with. out Armes. And how our Law is no presudice to his Dominion and Cournement, but a great helpe that all might obey him and keepe his Lawes. This onely remedie there is in China, to yeape any fruit, toda au mago vor una au cepe un terre de vision toda i i impefible for any Religious men to and not any store (flexing immanales). I dad not this vimedic, habbay the abinfaid incommenicate, I came ana) from China, and therefore neither I, nor they of the bompany of IE's v s which enterprised alreadie this bufine fe fundry emies, could fructifie in China.

This people hath betides the ignorances above faith, that fifthy about mation, that they tefraine chinois Sode no sexeamong them. Notwithstanding, Preaching sometimes, as well publike as prinately mires. against this vice, they were glad to heare mee, faying, chat I had reaforr in that which I sayd, but but that they never had had any that told them that was a finite, hor any thing tuilf done. It feemeth that because this sinne is common among them, God was willing to fend them a grieuous punishment in some places of the earth, the which was common iff all China. Theing in the Plagues hap-Citie of Cantan, and being willing to know of a rich China Marchant the evils that hid horpe- ning in this ned in the Country, and free not able to tell it me by word of mouth, gaue me a Letter which they had written vnto him of what had happened + faying to me; that I should translate it and give it him againe : but not trulting me hee translated it presently, and remayning with the 50 copie gaue me the principall, which I translated into Portugall with the helpe of one that

could speake our linguage and theirs, the tenour of the Letter is this.

The principall Londing of Sanxi and of Santon, wrote vnto the King, faying, that in those Prounces the earth did flake terribly; and the dayes waxed darke like night (hee Japh not how long) a South-faver told them all that should happen. In the yeere before in the moneth of September, the earth opened in many places, and under it were heard great noyles like the found of Bells, there followed a great winde with much rayne, and the winde ranne about all the Compatie. This winde is called in China, Tufaune, and many yeeres it bloweth but once a yeere, Tufon a terriand it is foraging, that it driveth a Ship under fayle on the Landa great space, and the men can-ble tempes. not keepe their feete, not leaving and holding one by another, and it doth things worthie admi-

60 ration and incredible. In the yeere that I was in Chona, in the part where the Portugals were, they shewed the Boat of a Ship of a good bignesse, and the place where it was a land (that this winde carrayed it, might bee a great stones cast from the water) and many did affirme it to mee, that the winde had such force, that it carryed it tumbling till it blew it into the Sea. And all the houses the Portugals had made of timber, and couered with strawe, which were many and

the last fell also, and onely one that was sheltered with a high place escaped that it fell not. To blow downe these houses was nothing, for it doth many other things incredible. This winde is

almost euerie yeere in China, the which within twentie foure houres that it raigneth, it run-

neth about all the points of the Compaffe. With this winde, and the Lands being finken

CHAP. XI.

The relation of GALEOTTO PERERA, a Gentleman of good credit. that lay Prifoner in China.

His Land of China is parted into thirteene ' Shires, which sometimes were each 'You shall have one a Kingdome by it felfe, but these many yeeres they have beene all subject amore sull devnto one King.

The King maketh alwayes his abode in the great Citie Pachin, as much to fay ter Authors: in our language (as by the name thereof I am advertised,) the " Towne of the who yet could Kmgdome. This Kingdome is so large, that vnder fine moneths you are not a- not so well as ble to trauell from the Townes by the Sea lide, to the Court and backe againe, no not under three this, tell their ble to trauent from the Lownes by the seating, the Post-hories in this Countrey are little of bodie, indiciall proceedings, feetbut swift of foote. Many doe trauell the greater part of this journey by water in certaine light rise, priors,

Barkes, for the multitude of Rivers, commodious for passage from one Citie to another. The King, notwithstanding the hugenesse of his Kingdome, buth such a care thereof, that eue. &c. these 13. The King, notwithstanding the hugenesse of his Kingdome, buth such a care thereor, that querie Moone (by the Moones they reckon their moneths) he is advertised fully of what court things are be winderstood to the such as t happeneth therein. Before that wee doe come to Cinese, we have to passe through many places, fides the two 20 and some of great importance. For this Country is so well inhabited neere the Sea side, that royall Proun-

you cannot goe one myle bu you shall see some Towne, Borough, or Hostrie, the which are so a ces. bundantly provided of all things, that in the Cities and Townes they live civilly. Nevertheleffe, Pachin Pochang, bundantly prouided of all things, that in the Cities and Townes they liue cuilly. Neuerthelette, of the multitude of them euery where fo great, that out Prayin, or of a Tree you shall see many times swarme a number of Children, where a man would not have fumbula see. thought to have found any one at all.

From these places in number infinite, you shall come vnto two Cities very populous, and be- same, and so ing compared with Cincee, not possibly to bee discerned which is the greater of them. These the despetical this Gine. Cities are as well walled as any Cities in all the world. As you come into either of them, flan-Pofte Horfer. deth fo great and mightie a Bridge, that the like thereof I have never feene in Portugall, nor else Their months 30 where. I heard one of my fellowes say, that he told in one Bridge fortie Arches. The occasion Excellent wale wherefore these Bridges are made so great, is for that the Country is toward the Sea very plaine and an admiand low, and ouerwhelmedeuer as the Sea-water encreafeth. The breadth of the Bridges, although it be well proportioned vnto the length thereof, yet are they equally built, no higher in the middle than at either end, in fuch wife that you may directly fee from the one end to the other, the fides are wonderfully well engraved after the manner of Rome Workes. But that wee Magnificent

did most maruell at, was therewithall the hugenesse of the stones, the like wheref, as we came in- stones, to the City, we did see many set up in places dishabited by the way, to no small charges of theirs. howbeit to little purpole, wheras no body feeth them but fuch as do come by. The Arches are not made after our fashion, vaulted with sundry stones set together: but paued, as it were, whole stones 40 reaching from one Pillar to another, in fuch wife that they lie both for the Arches heads, & gallantly ferue also for the high-way. I have been astonied to behold the hugenesse of these aforesaid

stones, some of them are twelue paces long and vpward, the least eleuen good paces long, and an tiones, tome or treatment of the state of th want of Stone they vie to lay Bricke: in this voyage we travelled ouer certaine Hills, where the bricked, or wayes were pitched, and in many places no worfe paued than in the plaine ground.

The Countrey is so well inhabited, that no one foot of ground is left vntilled : small store of Culture and cattell haue we feene this way, we faw onely certaine Oxen wherewithall the countrey-men busbander. doe plough their ground. One Oxe draweth the Plough alone, not onely in this Shire, but in other places also, wherein is greater store of cattell. These countrey-men by art doe that in til-

to lage, which we are constrained to doe by force. Here be fold the voydings of Close-stooles, although there wanteth not the dung of beafts : and the excrements of man are good marchandise throughout all China. The Dung-fermers seeke in enery street by exchange to buy their durtie ware for Hearbs and Wood. The custome is very good for keeping the Citie cleane. There is great abundance of Hennes, Geese, Duckes, Swine, and Goates, Wethers have they none: the Hennes are fold by weight, and so are all other things. Two pound of Hennes flesh, Goose, or Ducke, is worth two Foi of their money, that is, three halfe pence. Swines flesh is fold at a peny the pound. Beefe beareth the same price, for the scarcitie thereof, howbeit Northward from Fuquies, and further from the Sea coast, there is Beefe more plentie, and fold better cheape, Beefe onely excepted, great aboundance of all these Viands wee have had in all the Cities wee passed

60 through. And if this Countrey were like vnto India, the Inhabitants whereof eate neither Hen, Beefe, nor Porke, but keepe that onely for the Portugals and Moores, they would bee fold here for nothing. But it fo falling out that the Chineans are the greatest eaters in all the world, they doe feed vpon all things, specially vpon Porke, the fatter that is vnto them, the leffe lothiome. The highest price of these things aforesaid, I have set downe, better cheape shall you sometimes

with the Earthquakes, many Cities tell and were made desolate, in the which dyed innume-Vinyanfa, (wai-

Puchia.

rable people. In a Citie called Vinyanfus, in this day was a great Earthquake. And on the west side a great Fire burft out, that swallowed up all the Citie, in the which, innumerable people perished, efca- 10 ping in one place two, in another three, and so some of the Mogares escaped. In another Citie neere to this, there happened the same, but in this none escaped. In a Citie called Lenchimon the River increased in such sort, that it ouer-flowed the Citie, where infinite people were drowned. In a Citie called Hien, was an Earthquake, with the which many hou les fell, which flew neere eight thousand soules. In Puckers, the house of the Kings kinsman fell and flew all that were in the house, except a Childe of seuen or eight yeeres old his sonne. (which was carryed to the King) and day and night was a noyle heard vnder the earth, like

Couchue.

Enchineen. Inchumen.

In a Countrey called Cochne, with fire from Heauen and with many waters of a Floud. many perified, and the land remayned vnable to bee cultivated againe. In a Countrey called 20 Enchmoen, at midnight the houses fell, and the Citie remayned desolate and ruined, where perished neere one hundred thousand soules. In a Citie called Inchangen, in one day and a night, the Riner did flow and ebbe ten times, and with the great floud many people perished. Hitherto the translation of the Letter: that which followeth, was heard by word of mouth of the Portugals that were in the Port of Causan in the moneth of May, and I received the Letter in September.

Sanxi

In a Citie called Sanzi, from midnight till fine of the clocke in the morning, the earth shooke three times, the eighteenth of lanuarie, 1556. and the next day after, from midnight till noone, three times the eight extensive and the state of the fayd month, the earth flooke mightily after midnight with great Thunder and Lightnings, and all the Prounce was burn, 30 and all the people thereof, and all the Suburbes, Townes, and Cities: they fay it is from bound to bound, fiftie or fixtie leagues, that there was not one faued but a Childe, fonne to a kinfman of the King, which was carried to the King. And the third of Februarie in the same yeere, in the Citie of Panquin where the King is, fell a shower of rayne like bloud. These newes brought one of China that came to Cantan, from a Citie neere to Sanki, to give newes to a Louthis that hee should resort to his owne house, and said, that the Citie where he was a dweller was ouerflowne, and that he knew not whether it would perifh with the reft. That which ought to bee held for truth, is, that in three Prounces which commonly are fayd to be deflroyed, there was no more destruction then of those places whereof the Letter maketh mention, or little more, The agreeing in the Childe, sheweth that the Towne whereof the Letter maketh mention with 40 the childe, was in the Prouince of Sanxi. This hath more apparance of truth, because the Letter was written from the Court, then to fay that all the three Prouinces perifhed.

After the happening of the things about aid : the same yeere in the Province of Contana Woman which went to the Panchasi, told him that the Province of Cansi would bee destroyed with power from Heaven, the which after shee was well whipt, was imprisoned : but in the moneth of May of the same yeere, there fell great store of rayne verie hot, with the which the earth seemed to burne, and many people perished with the great heate : but the Prouince perished not altogether: wherefore this woman was carried to the King, which was in prison in the

place where the Portugals were, which told this.

Reader, for a smuch as this Anthor bath often mentioned, and related also the storie of certains Por- 50 tugals, Prisoners in China (one of which bee nameth Galotte Perera) from whom hee received great part of the China meditione: I have thought good to adde bither Peccastelation; translated long force out of Icalian, and published by R. Willes; busing abbreniated some things in the Fiver, that you might rather have them at the first hand from this Gentleman which (aw them : but abbreviated to present tedioufneffe.

CHAP. 60

made of Hennes, and are good meat amongst them, as also Dogs, Cats, Rats, Snakes, and all other

The Cities be very gallant, specially neere vnto the Gates, the which are maruellously great,

and couered with Iron. The Gate-houses built on high with Towers, the lower part thereof is made of Bricke and Stone, proportionally with the walls, from the walls vpward, the building

is of Timber, and many stories in it one about the other. The strength of their Townes is in the

of the Cities wee haue feene are very faire, fo large and fo straight that it is wonderfull to be-

with Stone, in each fide of the fireets are painteles, Continuall Porches for the Marchants to

walke under : the breadth of the fireet is neverthelesse such, that in them fifteene men may ride

commodiously fide by fide. As they ride they must needes passe vader many high Arches of tri-

umph, that crosse ouer the streets made of Timber, and carved diversly, covered with Tile of fine

Clay : vnder these arches the Mercers do vtter their smaller wares, and such as list to stand there

Ishall have occasion to speake of a certaine order of Gentlemen, that are called Louten, I will

Sir, and when any of them calleth his name, he answereth, Sir. The manner how Gentlemen

first therefore expound what this word signifieth. Lomea, is as much to say in our languageas

are defenced from raine, and the heat of the Sunne. The greater Gentlemen haue these Arches

at their doores : although some of them be not so mightily built as the rest.

hold. Their houses are built with Timber, the foundations onely excepted, the which are laid in

Bui'ding of the Cities.

No Artillerie. mightie Wallsand Dirches; Artillery haue they none. The streets in Cinceo, and in all the rest

Archers.

Legiea

Ponchiafsi.

Anchiali al.Hexafi. Tuzi. Taiff4.

Prifons and **fentencing** offender s

are created Loneas, & do come to that honour and title, is by giving a broad Girdle not like to the reft, and a Cap, at the commandement of the King. The name Louses is more generall and common vnto moe, than equalitie of honour thereby fignified, agreeth withall. Such Lonces that doe setue their Prince in weightie matters for inflice, are created after triall made of their learning : but the other which serue in smaller affaires, as Capitaines, Constables, Sergeants by Land and Sea, Receivers, and such like, whereof there be meuery Citie, as also in this, very many are made for fauour : the chiefe Loutess are ferued kneeling. The whole Province China is divided, as I have faid, into thirteene Shires, in every Shire at the cours al, chaen. leaft is one Gouernour, called there Tutan, in fome Shires there be two. Chiefe in office next vnto them be certaine other named Chians, that is, high Commissioners, as you would say, or Visiters, with full authoritie in fuch wife, that they doe call vnto an account the Tutores themselves. 30 but their authoritie lasteth not in any Shire longer than one yeere. Neuerthelesse, in euery Shire, being at the least seuen Cities, yea, in some of them fifteene or sixteene, besides other Boroughs and Townes, not well to be numbred, these Visiters where they come, are so honoured and feared, as though they were fome great Princes. At the yeeres end their circuit done, they come wnto that City which is chiefe of others in the Shire, to doe Iuffice there : finally, bufying themfelues in the fearthing out of fuch as are to receive the order of Lonedist hereof more shall be faid in another place.

Ouer and belides these officers in the chiefe Citie of each one of these aforesaid thirteene Prouinces, is resident one Ponchiassi, Captaine thereof, and Treasurer of all the Kings repenues. This Magistrate maketh his abode in one of the foure greatest houses that be in all their head Cities. In the second great house dwelleth another Magustrate, called Anchiassi, a great officer also, for he hath dealings in all matters of luftice. Twzi, another officer fo called, lieth in the third house, a Magistrate of importance, specially in things belonging vnto warfare, for thereof hath hee charge. There is resident in the fourth house a fourth Officer, bearing name Tail. In this house is the principall prison of all the Citie. Each one of these Magistrates aforesaid may both lay euill doers in prilon, and deliuer them out againe, except the tact bee heynous and of importance : in fuch a cale they can doe nothing, except they doe meet altogether. And if the deed deserve death, all they together cannot determine thereof, without recourse made voto the Chian wheresoeuer he be, or to the Tutan: and eftloones it falleth out, that the case be referred vnto higher power.

In all Cities, not onely chiefe in each Shire, but in the rest also are meanes found to make mencement or Loutens. Many of them doe studie at the Prince his charges, wherefore at the yeeresend they resort vnto the head Cities, whither the Chians doe come, as it hath beene earst said, as well to giue these degrees, as to sit in judgement ouer the prisoners.

The Chians goe in circuit every yeere, but fuch as are to be chosen to the greatest off ces, meet not but from three yeeres to three yeeres, and that in certain large halls appointed for them to be examined in. Many things are asked them, whereunto if they doe answere accordingly, and be found fufficient to take their degree, the Chian by and by granteth it them : but the Cap and Girdle whereby they are knowne to be Lonteas, they weare not before that they bee confirmed by the King. Their examination done, and triall made of them, fuch as have taken their degree 60 wont to be given them with all Ceremonies, vie to banquet and feast many daies together (as the Chineans failion is to end all their pleatures with eating and drinking) and for maine chofen to doe the King feruice in matters of learning. The other examinates found infufficient to proceed, are fent backe to their studie againe. Whose ignorance is perceived to come of negliCHAP. 11. Louteas Maieftie. Manner of eating, Respect of Deuills.

gence and default, such a one is whipped, and fometimes fent to prison, where wee lying that weere when this kinde of Act was, wee found many thus punished, and demanding the capte thereof, they faid it was for that they knew not how to answere vnto certaine things asked It is a world to fee how these Louissa are served and seared, in such wise, that in publike al-femblies at one shrike they gue, all the services belonging onto Justice, tremble thereat. At

their being in thele places, when they lift to move, be it but even to the gate, thefe Servitors doe take them vp, and carry them in feats of beaten Gold. After this fort are they borne when they ege in the Citie, either for their owne bufineffe abroad, or to fee each other at home, For the dig-To nitie they have, and office they doe beare, they be all accompanied : the very meanest of them all that goeth in these seats is wihered by two men at the least, that cry vnto the people to give place, howbeit they need it not, for that reuerence the common people hath vnto them. They have also in their company certaine Sergeants , with their Maces, either silvered, or altogether Silver, some two, some foure, other fix, other eight, conveniently for each one his degree. The more principall and chiefe Louteas have going orderly before these Sergeants, many other with Scaues, and a great many Catch-poles with Rods of Indian Canes dragged to the ground, fo that

of the cryers. Thefe fellowes ferue alfo to apprehend others, and the better to be knowne, they weare liverie-red Girdles, and in their Caps Pecocks Feathers. Behinde thefe Loutess come 20 fuch as doe beare certaine Tables hanged at Haues ends, wherein is written in Siluer letters the name, degree, and office of that Louisa, whom they follow. In like manner they have borne after them Hats agreeable vnto their titles : if the Loutes bee meane, then hath he brought after him but one Hat, and that may not be yellow : but if hee be of better fort, then may hee have two, three, or foure : the principall and chiefe Louiess , may have all their Hats yellow , the which among them is accounted great honour. The Lones for warres, although hee bee but meane, may notwithstanding have yellow Hats. The Tutanes and Chians, when they soe abroad , have befides all this before them led three or foure Horfes , with their Guard in

the streets being paued, you may here a farre off, as well the noise of the Rods, as the voyce

Furthermore, the Louteas, yea, and all the people in China, are wont to eat their meat fit- Manner of 30 ting on Stooles at high Tables as wee doe, and that very cleanly, although they vie neither Ta- eating. ble-clothes nor Napkins. Whatfoeuer is fet downe vpon the boord is first carued, before that it be brought in: they feed with two Sticks refraining from touching their meat with their hands. even as we do with Forkes, for the which sespect, they lesse doesneed any Table-clothes. Neither We, that is, the is the Nation onely civill at meat, but also in conversation and in courtesie they seeme to exceed Italian; and all other. Likewile in their dealings, after their manner they are lo readie, that they farre paffe Spaniards, all other Gentiles and Moores: the greater States are so vaine, that they line their clothes with the best filke that may be found. The Louisarare an idle generation, without all manner of exercises and pastimes, except it be eating and drinking. Sometimes they walke abroad in the fields, to make the Souldiers shoot at Prioks with their Bowes, but their eating passeth : they 40 will fland eating even when the other doe draw to shoot. The Pricke is a great Blanket spread Shooting. on certaine long Poles, he that striketh it; hath of the best man there standing a piece of Crimson

Taffata, the which is knit about his head : in this fort the winner is honoured, and the Louteas with their bellies full, returne home againe.

The Inhabitants of China, bee very Idolaters, all generally doe worship the heavens: and as Idolater we are wont to lay, Godknowethit: to fay they at enery word, Tien Tautee, that is to fay, The Heavens doe know it. Some doe worship the Sunne, and some the Moone, as they thinke good, for none are bound more to one then to another. In their Temples, the which they doe call Meani, they have a great Altar in the same place as we have, true it is, that one may goe round about it. There fet they up the Image of a certaine Laures of that Countrey, whom they have in great reverence for certaine notable things he did. At the right hand flandeth the Deuill, much 50 more vely painted then we doe vie to det him out, whereunto great homage is done by fuch as come into the Temple to aske counsell, or to draw lots: this opinion they have of him, that he is

malicious and able to doceuill. If you aske them what they doe thinke of the foules departed, they will answer, that they be immortall, and that as soone as any one departeth out of this life, he becommeth a deuil, if he have lived well in this world, if otherwise, that the same deuil changeth him into a Bufle, Oxe, or Dog. Wherefore to this Deuill doe they much honour, to him do they facrifice, praying him that he will make them like vnto himselfe, and not like other beafts. They have moreover another fort of Temples, wherein both vpon the Altars, and also on the walls doe fland many Idols well proportioned, but bare headed : Their beare name Omishofon, accounted of them spirits, but such as in heaven doe neither good nor euill, thought to bee such

60 men and women, as have chaftely lived in this world in abitinence from Fish and Flesh, fed on- Dendimes ly with Rice and Salates. Of that Devill they make some account, for these spirits they care lite respected. tle or nothing at all. Againe, they hold opinion, that if a man doe well in this life, the heavens will give him many temporall bleffings, but if he doe euill, then shall he have infirmities, diseases,

201

troubles, and penurie, and all this without any knowledge of God. Finally, this people knoweth no other thing then to live and die, yet because they be reasonable creatures, all seemed good vnto them we spake in our language, though it were not very sufficient. Our manner of praying so well liked them, that in prison importunately they befought vs to

and making great banquets, for to that end, as I have faid, doe tend all their pastimes and spen-18

ding their daies in pleasure. They are wont also to solemnize each one his birth day, whereunto

their kindred and friends doe refort of custome, with presents of Iewells or Money, receiving

againe for their reward good cheere. They keepe in like manner a generall Feaft, with great

Banquets that day their King was borne. But their most principall and greatest Feat of

all, and best cheare, is the first day of their new yeere, namely, the first day of the New Moone of Februarie, so that their first moneth is March, and they reckon the times ac-

cordingly, respect being had vnto the reigne of their Princes : as when any deed is written.

they date it thus; Made such a day of such a Moone, and such a yeere of the raigne of such

So did the Ro. Write for them famewhat as concerning heaven, the which we did to their contentation, with man Auguries, fuch reasons as we knew, howbeit not very cunningly. As they doe their Idolatry they laugh Sodomie fre- at themielues. The greatest fault we doe finde in them is Sodomie, a vice very common in the meaner fort, and nothing strange amongst the best. Furthermore the Louteas, withall the people New and full of China, are wont to solemnize the daies of the new and full Moones in visiting one each other.

Birth-dayes.

New yeares

Iusti: c.

a King. Now will I speake of the manner the which the Chinems doe observe in doing Justice. Be-29 cause the Chinish King maketh his abode continually in the City Pachin, his Kingdome so great, the shires to many, as before it hath beene said : in it therefore the Gouernours and Rulers. much like vnto our Sheriffes be so appointed suddenly, and speedily discharged againe, that they haue no time to grow nought. Furthermore, to keepe the State in more fecuritie, the Longe that governe one shire, are chosen out of some other shire distant farre off, where they must leave their Wives, Children, and Goods, carrying nothing with them but themselves. True it is, that at their comming thither they doe find in a readinesse all things necessarie, their House, Furniture, Seruants, and all other things in such perfection and plentie, that they want nothing, Thus King is well ferued without all feare of Treason.

In the principall Cities of the shires be fourechiese Louiess, before whom are brought all 30 matters of the inferiour Townes, throughout the whole Realme. Divers other Loness have the managing of Iuftice, and receiving of Rents, bound to yeeld an account thereof vnto the greater Officers. Other doe fee that there be no euill rule kept in the Citie : each one as it behough him. Generally all these doe imprison Malesactors, cause them to be whipped and racked hovfing them vo and downe by the armes with a cord, a thing very viuall there, and accounted no shame. These Louteas doe vie great diligence in the apprehending of the Theeues, so that it is a wonder to fee a Thiefe escape away in any Towne, Citie, or Village. Vpon the Sea neere vn-

The Italians Beating with Canes.

to the shoare many are taken, and looke even as they are taken, so be they first whipped, and af-HardPrisons. terward laid in Prison, where shortly after they all dye for hunger and cold. At that time, when we were in Prison, there dyed of them aboue threescore and ten. Their whips be certaine pie-40 ces of Canes, clett in the middle, in fuch fort that they feeme rather plaine then sharpe. He that is to bee whipped lyeth groueling on the ground. Vpon his thighes the Hangman layeth on blowes mightily with these Canes, that the standers by tremble at their crueltie. Tenne stripes draw a great deale of bloud, twentie or thirtie spoyle the fiesh altogether, fiftie or threescore will require long time to be healed, and if they come to the number of one hundred, then are they incurable. The Louteas observe moreover this: when any man is brought before them to bee examined,

Examinations.

they aske him openly in the hearing of as many as be prefent, be the offence neuer fo great. Thus did they also behave themselus with vs. For this cause amongst them can there be no false witnes as daily amongst vs it falleth out. This good commeth thereof that many being alwayes about 50 the Judge to heare the Euidence, and beare witnesse, the Processe cannot be fallissed, as it hapnets Iometimes with vs. The Moores, Gentiles, and Ienes, have all their fundry Oathes, the Moores doe sweare by their Moffafos, the Brachmans by their Fili, the rest likewise by thethings they doe worship. The Chineans, though they be wont to sweare by Heauen, by the Moone, by the Sunne, and by all their Idols, in judgement neuerthelesse they sweare not at all. If for some offence an Oath be vied of any one, by and by with the least enidence hee is tormented; fo be the Witnesses he bringeth, if they tell not the truth, or doe in any point disagree, except they bee men of worthip and credit, who are beleeved without any farther matter: the rest are made to

Patient hea-

fo low, that they dare not once flirre. Againe, thele Lonteas as great as they bee, not with standing the multitude of Noraries they have, not trusting any others, doe write all great Processes and matters of importance themselves. Moreover, one vertue they have worthy of great praise, and that is, being men io well regarded and accounted of as though they were Princes, they bee

confesse the truth by force of Torments and Whips. Besides this order observed of them in Ex-

aminations, they doe feare so much their King, and he where he maketh his abode keepeth them 60

nations about measure in giving audience. Wee poore strangers brought before them might say what we would, as all to be Lyes and Falaces that they did write, nor did we fland before them with the vivall Ceremonies of that Country, yet did they beare with vs fo patiently that they caused vs to wonder, knowing specially how little any Aduocate or Judge is wont in our Countrey to beare with vs. For wherefocuer in any Towne of Christendome should bee accused ynknowne men as we were, I know not what end the very Innocents cause would have that wee in a Heathen Countrey, having our great Enemies two of the chiefest men in a whole Towne, Senere Inflicewanting an Interpreter, ignorant of that Countrey Language, did in the end fee our great Ad-

perfaries cast into Prison for our take, and deprived of their Offices and Honour for not doing Inflice; yea, not to escape death, for as the rumour goeth, they shall bee beheaded. Somewhat is now to be faid of the Lawes that I have beene able to know in this Countrey, Lawes, and first, no Theft or Murther, is at any time pardoned; Adulterers are put in Prison . and the fact once proued, condemned to dye, the woman's Husband must accuse them; this order is kept with men and women found in that fault, but Theeues and Murtherers are imprisoned as I have faid, where they shortly dye for hunger and cold. If any one haply escape by bribing the lavlor to give him meate, his Processe goeth farther, and commeth to the Court where hee is con-

demned to dye. Sentence being given, the Priloner is brought in publike with a terrible band of A Pillorie men that lay him in Irons hand and foot, with a board at his necke one handfull broad, in length board.

reaching downe to his knees, cleft in two parts, and with a hole one handfull downe-ward in 20 the Table fit for his necke, the which they enclote up therein, nayling the board fast together. one handfull of the board standeth vp behind in the necke; the sentence and cause wherefore the fellon was condemned to dye, is written in that part of the Table that standeth before. This Ceremonie ended, he is laid in a great Prison in the company of some other condemned persons. the which are found by the King as long as they doe lue. The board aforefaid fo made tormenteth the Prifoners very much, keeping them both from the rest, and eke letting them to eate commodiously, their hands being manicled in Irons under that board, fo that in fine there is no remedie but death. In the chiefe Cities of euery shire, as we have beforefaid, there be foure principall Houses, in each of them a Prisoner: but in one of them where the Tails maketh his abode. there a greater and a more principall Prison then in any of the rest : and although in every Citie there be many, neuerthelesse in three of them remayne onely such as bee condemned to dye. Their death is much prolonged, for that ordinarily there is no execution done but once a yeere, though many dye for hunger and cold, as we have frene in this Prifon. Execution is done in this Execution

manner The Chian, to wit the high Commissioner or Lord Chiefe Iuitice, at the yeares end goeth to the head Citie, where hee heareth againe the causes of such as bee condemned. Many times he deliuereth some of them, declaring that board to have beene wrongfully put about their neckes : the visitation ended, he chooseth out seuen or eight, not many more or lesse, of the greatest Malefactors, the which, to feare and keepe in awe the people, are brought into a great Market place, where all the great Louiess meete together, and after many Ceremonies and Superstitions, as the vie of the Countrey is, are beheaded. This is done once a yeare; who so escapeth that day, may be sure that he shall not be put to death all that yeare following, and so remayneth at the Kings charges in the greater Prison. In that Prison where wee lay were alwayes one hundred and moe of these condemned persons, besides them that lay in other Prisons. These Pritons wherein the condemned captines doe remayne are so strong, that it hath not strength of beene beard, that any Prisoner in all China bath escaped out of Prison, for indeed, it is a thing the Prisons

impossible. The Prisons are thus builded. First, all the place is mightily walled about, the wals be very frong and high, the gate of no lefte force : within it three other gates, before you come where the Prisoners doe lye, there many great Lodgings are to be seene of the Louteas, Notaries, Parthions, that is, fuch as doe there keepe watch and ward day and night, the Court large and paued, on the one fide whereof flandeth a Prison, with two mighty gates, wherein are kept 50 fuch Prisoners as haue committed enormious offences. This Prison is so great, that in it are fireets and Market places wherein all things necessary are fold. Yea, some Prisoners line by that kind of Trade, buying and felling, and letting out beds to hire: some are daily fent to Prison, some daily delivered, wherefore this place is never voyd of feven or eight hundred men that goe at Store of Prifolibertie. Into one other Prison of condemned persons shall you goe at three Iron gates, the Court pa-

ued and vaulted round about, and open aboue as it were a Cloyfter. In this Cloyfter bee eight Roomes with Iron Doores, and in each of them a large Gallerie, wherein enery night the Priioners doe lye at length, their feet in the stockes, their bodies hampered in huge woodden grates that keepe them from litting fo that they lye as it were in a Cage, fleepe if they can : in the mor-60 ning they are looted againe that they may goe into the Court. Notwithstanding the strength of this Prison, it is kept with a Garrison of men, part whereof watch within the House, part of them in the Court, some keepe about the Prison with Lanthornes, and Watch-bels, answering one another flue times every night, and giving warning to lowde, that the Loutea relling in a Chamber not neere thereunto may heare them. In these Prilons of condemned persons remay ne

CHAP.II.

fome fifteene, other twentie yeares imprisoned, not executed, for the love of their honourable Friends that feeke to prolong their lines. Many of these Prisoners bee Shoomakers, and have from the King a certayne allowance of Rice : fome of them worke for the Keeper, who fuffee reth them to goe at libertie without fetters and boards, the better to worke. Howbeit when the Loutes calleth his Checke Roll, and with the Keeper vieweth them, they all weare their Lineries, that is, boards at their neckes, Ironed hand and foote. When any of these Prisoners dveth, he is to bee seene of the Lonten and Notaries, brought out at a gate so narrow, that there can but one be drawne out there at once. The Prisoner beeing brought forth, one of the afore. faid Parthians, ftriketh him thrice on the head with an Iron fledge, that done, hee is delivered unto his friends, if hee haue any, otherwise the King hireth men to carrie him to his buriall in to the fields.

Courfe for

204

Thus Adulterers and Theeues are vied, Such as be imprisoned for Debt once knowne, lye there untill it be paid. The Taiffu or Louisa calleth them many times before him by the vertue of his Office, who understanding the cause wherefore they doe not pay their Debts, appointeth them a certaine time to doe it, within the compasse whereof if they discharge not their Debts beeing Debters indeed, then they be whipped and condemned to perpetual! Imprisonment : if the Cre-Depters indeed, then they do wanted before another, they doe, contrary to our manner, pay ditors be many, and one is to be paid before another, they doe, contrary to our manner, pay him first, of whom they last borrowed, and so ordinarily the rest, in such fort that the first Len der be the last Receiver. The same order is kept in paying Legacies: the last named, received

When I faid that fuch as be committed to Prison for Theft, and Murther, were judged by the Court, I meant not them that were apprehended in the deed doing, for they need no tryall, but are brought immediately before the Tutan, who out of hand giveth sentence. Other not taken so openly, and doe need tryall, are the Malefactors put to execution once a yeare in the chiefe Cities, to keepe in awe the people : or condemned, doe remayne in Prison, looking for their day. Theeues being taken, are carried to Prison from one place to another in a Chest vpon mens shoulders, hired therefore by the King, the Cheft is fixe handfuls high, the Prisoner sitteth therein vpon a bench, the couer of the Chest is two boards; amidst them both a Pillory-like hole, for the Prisoner his necke, there sitteth he with his head without the Chest, and the rest of his bodie within, not able to moue or turne his head this way or that way, nor to plucke it in: the necess. ties of nature he voideth at a hole in the bottome of the Cheft, the meate he eateth is put into his mouth by others. There abideth he day and night during his whole Iourney: if happily his Porters stumble, or the Chest doe jogge, or be set downe carelesly, it turneth to his great paints that fitteth therein, all fuch motions being vnto him hanging as it were. Thus were our companions carried from Cinces, seuen dayes journey, neuer taking any rest as afterward they told vs. and their greatest griefe was to stay by the way : as soone as they came beeing taken out of the Chefts, they were not able to stand on their feet, and two of them dyed shortly after.

When we lay in prison at Fuquico, we came many times abroad, and were brought to the Palaces of Noble men, to be seene of them and their wives, for that they had never seene any Portugall before. Many things they asked vs of our Country, and our fashions, and did 40 write every thing, for they be curious in novelties aboue measure. The Gentlemen shew great curtesie vnto strangers, and so did we finde at their hands, and because that many times we were brought abroad into the Citie, formwhat will I fay of fuch things as I did fee therein, being a gallant Citie, and chiefe in one of the thirteene shires afore-said. The Citie Fnquieo, is very great and mightly walled with square stone both within and without, and as it may seeme by the breadth thereof, filled vp in the middle with Earth, laid ouer with Bricke, and couered with Tyle, and after the manner of Porches or Galleries, that one might dwell therein. The flayres they vie, are so easily made, that one may goe them vp and downe a Horse-backe, as eftsoones they doe : the streets are paued, as alreadie it hath beene faid : there bee a great number of Merchants, every one hath written in a great Table at his doore fuch things as hee hath to fell. In 30 like manner every Artizan painteth out his craft: the Market places be large, great abundance of all things there be to be fold. The Citie standeth vpon water, many streames runne through it, the bankes pitched, and so broad that they ferue for ffreets to the Cities vie. Querthe Breames are fundry Bridges both of Timber and Stone, that being made levell with the streets, hinder not the passage of the Barges to and fro, the Chanels are so deepe. Where the streames come in and goe out of the Citie, be certayne Arches in the Wall, there goe in and out their Parai, that is a kind of Barges they have, and this onely in the day time : at night these Arches are closed up with gates, fo doe they that up all the gates of the Citie. These streames and Barges doe embellish much the Citie, and make it as it were to seeme another Venice. The buildings are euen, well made, high not lofted, except it be some wherein Merchandize is lail. It is a World 60 to fee how great these Cities are, and the cause is, for that the houses are built even, as I have said, and doe take a great deale of roome. One thing we faw in this Citie that made vs all to wonder, and is worthy to be noted : Namely, ouer a Porch at the comming into one of the afore faid foure Houses, the which the King hath in every shire for his Governours as I have before faid,

Parai. Another frandeth a Towre built vpon fortie Pillars, each one whereof is but one stone, each one fortie Tower files handfuls or spans long: in breadth or compasse twelve, as many of vs did measure them. Besides dingonierie this, their greatnesse such in one piece, that it might seeme impossible to worke them : they bee Pilkrs each of moreouer couered, and in colour, length, and breath so like, that the one nothing differeth one from.

Wee are wont to call this Countrey China, and the people Chineans, but as long as wee were Name of China Prisoners, not hearing amongst them at any time that name, I determined to learne how they were called : and asked fometimes by them thereof, for that they vnderstood vs not when wee called them Chineans, I answered them, that all the Inhabitants of India named them Chineans. To wherefore I prayed them that they would tell me, for what occasion they are so called, whither peraduenture any Citie of theirs bare that name. Hereunto they alwayes answered me, to have no fuch name, nor ever to have had. Then did I aske them what name the whole Countrey beareth, and what they would answer being asked of other Nations what Countrey-men they were! It was told me, that of ancient time in this Countrey had beene many Kings, and though prefently it were all under one, each Kingdome neuertheleffe enjoyed that name it first had. thef-Kingdomes are the Prouinces I spake of before. In conclusion, they sayd, that the whole Tamen the pro-Countrey is called Tamen, and the Inhabitants Tamegines, fo that this name China or Chineans, pername of is not heard of in that Countrey. I doe thinke that the neareneffe of another Province therea. China Taliga

bout called Cochinchina, and the inhabitants thereof Cochineffes, first discourred before that Chi-20 #4 Was, lying not farre from Malacca, did give occasion both to the one Nation and to the one recre Poles ther of that name Chineans, as also the whole Countrey to bee named China. But their proper name of Manname is that aforefaid. I have heard moreover, that in the Citie Nanguim, remayneth a Table of gold, and in it writ- gines.

ten a Kings name, as a memorie of that residence the Kings were wont to keepe there. This ta- Tables reueble standeth in a great Palace, couered alwayes, except it bee in some of their festivall dayes, at renced. what time they are wont to let it bee feene : couered neuertheleffe as it is, all the Nobilitie of the Citie south of dutie to doe it every day reverence. The like is done in the head Cities of all the other Shires, in the Palaces of the Ponchiassini, wherein these aforesaid tables doe fland with the Kings name written in them, although no reverence bee done thereunto but in 30 folemne Featts.

I have likewise vnderstood that the Citie Pachin, where the King maketh his abode, is so great, that to goe from one fide to the other, befides the Suburbs, (which are greater then the Citie it felfe) it requireth one whole day a horfebacke, going hackney pace. In the Suburbs bee many wealthy Merchants of all forts. They told me furthermore, that it was Moted about, and in the Motes great store of Fish, whereof the King maketh great gaynes. It was also told mee Their enemies that the King of China had no King to wage battell withall, belides the Tartars, with whom hee had concluded a peace more then fourefcore veeres agoe.

There bee Hospitals in all their Cities, alwayes full of people, wee neuer faw any poore bodie beg. We therefore asked the cause of this : answered it was, that in every Citie there is a great 40 circuit, wherein bee many houses for poore people, for Blinde, Lame, Old folke, not able to tra-

uell for age, nor having any other meanes to live. These folke have in the aforesaid houses, ever plentie of Rice during their lives, but nothing elfe. Such as bee received into these houses, come in after this manner. When one is sicke, blinde, or lame, hee maketh a supplication to the Ponchiassi, and prouing that to bee true he writeth, hee remaineth in the aforesaid great lodging as long as he lineth : befides this, they keepe in thefe places Swine and Hennes, whereby the poore bee releeved without going a begging.

I say I before that China was full of Rivers, but now I minde to confirme the same anew : for the farther wee went into the Country, the greater we found the rivers. Sometimes we were Store of rivers so farre off from the Sea, that where wee came no Sea-fish had beene seene, and Salt was there

50 very deare, of fresh-water Fish yet was there great abundance, and that fish very good : they keepe it good after this manner. Where the Rivers doe meete, and so passe into the Sea, there lyeth great flore of Boates, specially where no falt-water commeth, and that in March and Aprill. These Boates are so many that it seemeth wonderfull, neither serue they for other then to take small fish. By the rivers sides they make leyres of fine and strong Nets, that lye three Plentic of fish; handfuls under water, and one aboue, to keepe and nourish their Fish in, untill such time as o- and their keether fifters doe come with Boates, bringing for that purpose certaine great Chests lyned with ping of them. paper, able to hold water, wherein they carrie their fish vp and downe the riner, enery day renewing the cheft with fresh-water, and selling their fish in every Citie, Towne, and Village,

where they passe, vnto the people as they need it : most of them have Net-leyres to keepe Fish 60 in alwayes for their prouision. Where the greater Boates cannot passe any farther forward, they take leffer, and because the whole Countrey is very well watred, there is so great plentie of diuers forts of Fish, that it is wonderfull to see : assuredly, wee were amazed to behold the manner of their prouision. Their Fish is chiefly nourished with the dung of Busles and Oxen, that greatly fatteth it. Although I fayd their fishing to bee in March and April,

at what time wee faw them doe it, neverthelesse they told vs that they fished at all times for that viually they doe feed on Fish, wherefore it behooueth them to make their project

206

He seeketh of When wee had pasted Fuquien, we went into Quicen-shire, where the sine Clay vestellis He speaketh or made, as I sayd before : and we came to a Citie, the one side whereof is built vpon the sore Quanti where of a hill, whereby passet a River navigable: there we tooke Boate, and went by water toward the Sea: on each fide of the River we found many Cities, Townes, and Villages, wherein we faw great store of Merchandise, but specially of fine clay : there did we land by the way to buy vi-Etuals and other necessaries. Going downe this river Southward, wee were glad that we drew neere vnto 2 warmer Countrey, from whence we had beene farre diffant : this Countrey were to passed through in eight dayes, for our journey lay downe the streame. Before that I doe say any thing of that Shire wee came into, I will first speake of the great Citie of Quicin, wherein al. wayes remayneth a Tutan, that is a Gouernour, as you have feene, though fome Tutan doe gouerne two or three Shires. That Tutan that was condemned for our cause, of whom I spake before, was borne in this

Alus Cheuchi. and flore of Boarer

Countrey, but hee gouerned Fuquien-Shire : nothing it auayled him to bee io great an Officer. This Countrey is fo great, that in many places where wee went, there had beene as yet no talke of his death, although he were executed a whole yeere before. At the Cirie Quanche whither wee came, the river was fo great that it feemed a fea, though it were fo little where we tooke water, that wee needed small Boates. One day about nine of the clocke, beginning to to row neare the walls with the streame, wee came at noone to a bridge made of many Barges, ouer-linked all together with two mightie chaynes. There stayed we vntill it was late, but wee faw not one goe either up thereon or downe, except two Louibia's that about the going downe of the Sunne came and fet them downe there, the one in one fide, the other on the other fide, Then was the bridge opened in many places, and Barges both great and small to the number of fixe hundred began to passe : those that went vp the streame, at one place, such as came downe, at another. When all had thus shot the Bridge, then was it shut up againe. Wee heard fav that enery day they take this order in all principall places of Merchandile, for paying of the custome wnto the King, specially for Salt, whereof the greatest reuenues are made that the King hath in this Countrey. The passages of the bridge where it is opened, bee so neere the shore, that no- 10 thing can passe without touching the same. To flay the Barges at their pleasure, that they goe Bridge #1114 no farther forward are vied certaine yron instruments. The Bridge consisteth of one hundred and twelve Barges, there stayed we vntill the Eevening that they were opened, lothfomly oppressed by the multitude of people that came to fee vs, fo many in number, that we were enforced to goe aside from the banke vntill such time as the bridge was opened : howbeit, wee were neuerthelesse thronged about with many Boates full of people. And though in other Cities and places where we went, the people came so importunate vpon vs, that it was needfull to withdrawour felues: yet were wee heere much more molested for the number of people, and this bridge, the principall way out of the Citie vnto another place fo well inhabited, that were it walled about, it might bee compared to the Citie. When we had fhot the bridge, we kept along the Citie vn-40 till that it was night, then met wee with another river that loyned with this, we rowed up that 3000.Barges. by the walls, untill we came to another bridge gallantly made of Barges, but leffer a great deale then that other bridge over the greater streame : heerestayed we that night, and other two dayes with more quiet, being out of the prease of the people. These rivers doe meete without at one corner-point of the Citie. In either of them were so many Barges great and small, that wee all thought them at the least to bee aboue three thousand : the greater number thereof was in the lesser river, where we were. Amongst the rest, heere lay certaine greater vessels, called in their language Parai, that serue for the Tutan, when hee taketh his voyage by other rivers that ioyne with this, towards Pachin, where the King maketh his abode. Denrous to fee those Parai we got into some of them, where we found some chambers set foorth with gilded Beds very richly, 50 other furnished with tables and seates, and all other things so neate and in perfection, that

with faire

Quiacim-Shire, as farre as I can perceiue, lyeth upon the South. On that fide we kept at our first entrie thereinto, travelling not farre from the high mountaines we saw there. Asking what people dwelleth beyond those mountaines, it was told me that they bee Theeues, and men of a strange language. And because that vnto sundry places neere this River, the mountaines doe approach, whence the people issuing downe, doe many times great harme, this order is taken at the entrie into Quacim-Shire. To guard this River whereon continually goe to and fro Parai great and small fraught with Salt, Fish powdered with pepper, and other necessaries for that Countrey : they doe lay in divers places certaine Parai, and great Barges armed, wherein 60 watch and ward is kept day and night in both fides of the River, for the safetie of the passage, and securitie of such Parai as doe remayne there, though the travellers never goe but many in company. In every rode there bee at the least thirtie, in some two hundred men, as the passage requireth.

CHAP. II. Moorish feet and observation. Mogores, Bremes.

This guard is kept viually, vntill you come to the Citie Onebio, where continually the Tutan of this Shire, and eke of Cantan, maketh his abode. From that Citie vpward, where the river waxeth more narrow, and the paffage more dangerous, there be alwayes armed one hundred and fiftie Parai, to accompany other veilels fraught with merchandife, and all this at the Kings charges. This feemed vinto me one of the ilrangest things I did see in this Countrey,

When wee lay at Fuguien, we did fee certaine Moores, who knew to little of their feet, that Moores they could say nothing else, but that Wahomet was a Moore, my father was a Moore, and I am a Moore, with some other words of their Alcoran, wherewithall, in abilinence from Swines flesh, they live vntill the Deuill take them all. This when I faw, and being fure, that in many

to Chinish Cities the reliques of Mahomer are kept, as toone as wee came to the Citie where these fellowes bee, I informed my felfe of them, and learned the truth. These Moores, as they told me. in times past came in great Ships fraught with merchandise from Pachin ward, to a Port granted vnto them by the King, as hee is wont to all them that trafficke into this Countrey. where they being arrived at a little Towne standing in the hauens mouth, in time converted unto their Sect the greatest Louisa there. When that Louisa with all his family was become Moorilb, the reft began likewise to doe the same. In this part of China the people bee at libertie, euery one to worship and follow what him liketh best. Wherefore no bodie tooke heed thereto, vntill fuch time as the Moores perceiving that many followed them in superstition. and that the Louten fauoured them, they began to forbid wholly the eating of Swines-flesh But all this Countrey men and women, choosing rather to forlake Father and Mother, then

to leave off eating of Porke, by no meanes would yeeld to that proclamation. For besides the great defire they all have to eate that kind of meate, many of them doe lue thereby : and therefore the people complained vnto the Magistrates, acculing the Moores of a conspiracie pretended betwixt them and the Loutes, against their King. In this Countrey, as no suspition. no not one trayterous word is long borne withall : to was the King fpeedily aduertifed thereof, who gave commandement out of hand that the aforetaid Louten should bee put to death, and with him the Moores of most importance : the other to be layd first in Prison, and afterward to bee fent abroad into certaine Cities, where they remayned perpetual flaues vnto the King. To this Citie came by hap men and women threefcore and odde, who at this day are brought

20 to fine men and toure women, for it is now twentie yeeres agoe this happened. Their offipring passeth the number of two hundred, and they in this Citie, as the reit in other Cities. whither they were fent, have their Moscheas, whereunto they all refort enery Friday to keepe That is their their Holiday. But, as I thinke, that will no longer endure, then whiles they doe line, that Temples came from thence, for their posteritie is so consuled, that they have nothing of a Moore in them, but abstinence from Swines-fleih, and yet many of them doe eate thereof privily. They tell me that their natiue Countrey hath name Camarian, a firme land, wherein bee many Kings, and the Indish Countrey well knowne vnto them. It may to be: for as soone as they did fee our feruants (our feruants were Prenzaretes) they judged them to bee Indians : many of their

words founded upon the Perficke tongue, but none of vs could understand them. I asked them. 40 whither they converted any of the Chinish Nation vnto their Scet : they answered me, that with much adoe, they concerted the women with whom they doe marrie, yeelding me no o. ther cause thereof, but the difficultie they finde in them to bee brought from eating Swinesflesh, and drinking of Wine. I have learned mor over, that the Sea whereby their Moores It seemeth that came to China were wont to travell, is a very great gulfe, that falleth into this Country they came up cut from Tartaria and Persia, leaung on the other side all the Countrey of China, and land thermer from of the Mogornes, drawing alwayes toward the South : and of all likelyhood it is even fo, the Caffin lea because that these Moores, the which wee have seene, bee rather browne then white, whereby they shew themselves to come from some warmer Countrey then China is, neere to Pachin, where the Rivers are frozen in the winter for cold, and many of them so vehemently, that Carts may paile o er them.

50 Wee did he in this Citie many Tartars, Mogorites, Bremes, and Laoynes, both men and Tarians. women. The Tartars are men very white, good librie-men, and Archers, confining with China on that fide where Pachin standeth, separated from thence by great Mountaines that are betwixt thele Kingdomes. Ouer them bee certaine wayes to paile, and for both fides, Ca- Monte Ular. files continually k pt with Souldiers : in time past, the Tariars were went alwayes to have w. rres with the Chineans, but these fourescore yeeres past they were quet, vintill the second yeere of our Imprisonment.

The Mogores bee in like manner white, and Heathen wee are aduertifed that of one fide they border upon these Tartars, and confine with the Perficke Tartares on the other fide, whereof wee faw in them fome tokens, as their manner of cloathes, and that kinde of Hat the Sa-

60 racens dee weare. The Moores firmed, that where the Kinglyeth, therebee many Tartars and Mogorites, hat brought int. China cerraine Blewes of great value. As ich the Bremes, was have feene in this Citie Chenchi certaine men and women, amongst Erimen. whom, there was one that came not long time, having as yet her havre tyed up after the Pe-

CHAP. II.

Southward from Chenchi to the Sea. Ausins. Chenchi.

208

ques fashion : this woman, and other moe with whom a blacke Moore damosell in our company had conference, and did vnderstand them well enough, had dwelt in Peebs. This new come woman, imagining that wee meant to make our abode in that Citie, bid vs to bee of good comfort, for that her Countrey was not distant from thence aboue fine dayes journey, and that out of her Countrey, there lay a high way for vs home into cur owne. Being asked the way, shee answered that the first three dayes the way lyeth ouer certaine great mountaines and wildernesse, afterward people to bee met withall againe. Thence two dayes journey more to the Bremes Countrey. Wherefore I doe conclude, that Chenchi is one of the confines of this Kingdome, separated by certaine huge Mountaines, as it hath beene already fayd, that lye out towards the South. In the residue of these mountaines standeth the Prouince Sian, the Lasyns to Countrey, Cambaia, Chinapa, and Cochinchina.

This Citie, chiefe of other fixteene, is fituated in a pleasant Playne, abounding in things necessarie. Sea-fish onely excepted, for it standeth farre from the Sea : of fresh Fish so much store. that the Market-places are neuer emptie. The walls of this Citie arevery strong and high: one day did I fee the Lomeas thereof goe vpon the walls, to take the view thereof, borne in their scates I spake of before, accompanied with a troupe of Horse-men, that went two and two: It was told me they might have gone three and three. Wee have feene moreover, that within this aforefaid Citie the King hath more than a thousand of his kindred lodged in great Palaces, in divers parts of the Citie : their gates bee red, and the entrie into their houses, that they may be knowne, for that is the Kings colour. Thefe Gentlemen, according to their nearenesse in bloud vnto the King, as soone as they bee married, receive their place in Honour: this place neither encreaseth nor diminisheth in any respect, as long as the King liueth, the King appointeth them their Wines and Familie, allowing them by the monethall things neceffarie abundantly, as hee doth to his Governours of Shires and Cities, howbeit, not one of these hath as long as hee lineth, any charge or government at all. They give themselves to eating and drinking, and bee for the most part burley men of bodie, insomnch that espying any one of them, whom wee had not feene before, wee might know him to bee the Kings Corfin. They bee neuertheleffe very pleafant, courteous, and fayre conditioned : neither did wee finde, all the time we were in that Citie, so much honour and good entertainment any where, as at their hands. They bid vs to their houses, to eate and drinke, and when they found vs not, or wee were not willing to goe with them, they bid our fernants, and slaues, causing them to fit downe with the first. Notwithstanding the good lodging these Gentlemen have fo commodious that they want nothing, yet are they in this bondage, that during life they neuer goe abroad. The cause, as I did vnderstand, wherefore the King so vseth his Coufins, is that none of them at any time may rebell against him : and thus bee shutteth them vp in three or foure other Cities. Most of them can play on the Lute : and to make that kinde of pastime peculiar vnto them onely, all other in the Cities where they doe line, bee forbidden that Instrument, the Curtizans and blinde folke onely excepted, who bee Musicians,

No Lordsbut

This King furthermore, for the greater securitie of his Realme, and the anoyding of tumults, 40 letteth not one in all his Countrey to bee called Lord, except hee be of his bloud. Many great Estates and Gouernours there be, that during their office are lodged Lord-like, and doe beare the port of mightie Princes : but they bee so many times displaced, and other placed anew, the put of migneter transcis. Does may be commany amount process and the they have not the while to become corput. True it is, that during their Office they be well prouided for, as afterward, also lodged at the Kings charges, and in penfon as long as they line, payed them monethly in the Cities where they dwell, by certaine officers appoint ted for that purpose. The King then is a Lord onely, not one besides him as you have seene, except it bee such as be of his bloud. A Nephew likewise of the King, the Kings Sisters sonne, lyeth continu-lly within the walls of the Citie, in a strong Palace built Castle-wise, euen as his others Coufins doe, temayning alwayes within doores, ferued by Eunuches, neuer dealing with 50 any matters. Their festivall dayes, new Moones, and full Moones, the Magistrates make great banquets, and so doe such as bee of the Kings bloud. The King his Nephew, hath name Vanfull, his Palace is walled about, the wall is not high, but four square, and in circuit nothing in-feriour to the walls of Goa, the out-side is painted red, in every square a Gate, and our each gate a Tower, made of timber excellently well wrought : before the principall Gate of the foure, that openeth into the high-street, no Louten, bee he neuer so great, may passe on horsebacke, or carried in his feate. Amidst this quadrangle, standeth the Palace where that Gentleman lyeth, doubtleffe, worth the fight, although wee came not in to fee it. By report the roofes of the towers and house, are glased greene, the greater part of the Quadrangle set with fauage Trees, as Oakes, Chefnuts, Cypreffe, Pine-apples, Cedars, and other fuch like that wee doe want, after the manner of a Wood, wherein are kept Stagges, Oxen, and other beafts, for that Lord his recreation neuer going abroad, as I have faid.

One preheminence this Citie hath aboue the rest where wee haue beene, and it of right as we doe thinke, that befides the multitude of Market-places, wherein all things are to bee

fold, through every threete continually are cryed all things necessarie, as Flesh of all forts, fresh-Fish, Hearbes, Oyle, Vineger, Meale, Rice, In famma, all things to plentifully, that many houses need no feruants, euerie thing being brought to their doores. Most part of the Merchants remayne in the Suburbs, for that the Cities are that vp every night, as I have favil The Merchants therefore, the better to attend their bufinelle, doe choose rather to make their abode without in the Suburbs, then within the Citie. I have feene in this River a pretie kinde Fifthing with abode without in the Suburbs, then within the Citic. A faue teene in this court a precie angue of Fishing, not to be comitted in my opinion, and therefore will I fee it down. The King Comments, the bred are the day of the three days they bred are the day of they they then hath in many rivers good flore of Barges full of Sea-crowes, that breed, are fed, and doe dye hath in many there good store of parges that of Sca-crowes, that breed, are sed, and doe dye georges, that therein, in certaine Cages, allowed monethly a certaine promition of Rice. These Barges the they wallow To Kine bestoweth upon his greatest Magistrates, giving to some two, to some three of them, not their prer. as hee thinketh good, to Fish therewithall after this manner. At the houre appointed to Fish, One hath praas hee thinketingoos, to Pant the twister and the River is shallow, and the Crowes diddth all the Barges are brought together in a circle, where the River is shallow, and the Crowes bondon, tyed together vnder the wings, are let leape downe into the water, fome vnder, fome 2-

boue, worth the looking vpon : each one as hee hath filled his bagge, goeth to his owne

Barge and emptieth it, which done, hee returneth to fish againe. Thus having

taken good store of Fish, they fet the Crowes at libertie, and doe fuffer

them to fish for their owne pleasure. There were in that

Citie, where I was, twentie Barges at the leaft, of these aforesaid Crowes. I went almost euery day to fee them. yet could I neuer bee throughly fatisfied to fee fo strange a kinde of Fishing. (..)

T 3



PEREGRINATIONS. VOYAGES, DISCOVERIES,

OF CHINA, TARTARIA, RVSSIA,

AND OTHER THE NORTH AND EAST PARTS OF THE WORLD, By Englishmen, and others.

THE SECOND BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

The beginning of English Discourries towards the North, and North-east, by Sir Hveh WILLOVGHBY, RICHARD CHANCEL-LOR, and others; of the Muscouie Trade, as also Voyages by Russia, ouer the Caspian Sea, and thorow diners Regions of Tartaria.

The first Voyage for Discouerie with three ships, set forth under the charge of Sir HVGH WILLOVGHBY Knight, in which he died; and Moscouia was discourred by Captaine

CHANCELLOR.



30

N the yeere of our Lord 1553. the feuenth of the Raigne of King Edward the fixth of famous memorie, Schaftian Cabota Seb. Cabota. was Genernour of the Mysterie and Companie of the Merchants Aduenturers for the discouerie of Regions, Dominions, Ilands, and places unknowne. Certaine inftr. ctions were agreed See the partion by him and the laid Companie, fubferibed by Matter Calcular in Maria, the ninth of May; the Kings Letters alloprocured wire first leithing remote Princes in diuers languages, and a fleet of three Ships princed Voyafet forthat that time vnder the command of Sir Hugh Wil- ges, Tom. 1. loughby Knight, Captaine generall, which went in the Bona Efferanza Admirall, a ship of an hundred and twenty tunnes,

having with her a Pinnace and a Boat : William Geffer fon was Maffer of the faid flip. The Edward Bonauentere was of an hundred and fixty tunnes, and had with her a Pinnace and a Boat, in which went Riebard Chan-

cellor, Captaine and Pilot Maior of the fleet, and Siephen Burrough Matter. The Bona Confidentia of ninevy tunnes, had with her a Pinnace and a Boat, of which Cornelius Durfoorth was Maffer.

The first Vay-This difcourfe was

The Captaines and Mafters were fwome to doe their true intent, and the ships prouided of necoffaries let forth on the tenth of May, 1553, for the discourie of Cathay, and discuss other Regious, Dominions, Ilands, and places vnknowne. The fourteenth of July they discovered Land Eastward, and went on shoare with their Pinnace, and found thirty little houses, the Initabifound written tants field. The Land was full of little llands, called as they after learned, Egeland and Hal. in the springer geland, in 66, degrees. The diffance betweene Orfordnesse and Ageland two hundred and fifty leagues. Then we fayled from thence twelue leagues North-west, and found many other lands red a Arter, 1 segues 1 the control of the nineteenth day, and manned our Pinnace, and went on shoare to the Ilands, and found people mowing and making of Hay, which came to the shoare and welwere froz. no commed vs. In which place were an innumerable forc of llands, which were called the llesof In Rost, being under the Dominion of the King of Denmarke: which place was in latitude 66, de. grees and 30, minutes. The winde being contrarie, we remayined there three dayes, and there was an innumerable fort of Fowles of divers kindes, of which we tooke very many.

The two and twentieth day, the winde comming faire, wee departed from Rost, fayling North North-east, keeping the Sea vntill the feuen and twentieth day, and then we drew neer which the Land, which was fill Eaft off vs: then went forth our Pinnace to lecke harbour, and found many good barbours, of the which we entred into one with our flips, which was called Stanfin, and the Land being Ilands, were called , Lemfoot, or Lofoot, which were plentifully inhabited, and very gentle people, being allownder the King of Demmarke: but wee could not learne how farre it was from the mayne Land; and we remay ned there virtill the thirtieth day, 20 being in latitude 68, degrees, and from the foresaid Ross about thirtie leagues North North east

August.

Stanfer har-

bour,

Lofoot.

Seriam in 70. degrees.

Tine Edward

the c two loft:

and the Ed.

ward found

The thirtieth day of July about noone, wee weighed our anchors, and went into the Seas, and fayled along these Ilands North North-east, keeping the Landstill in fight virtill the second of Avoust: then hailing in close abourd the Land, to the intent to know what Land it was, there came a Skiffe of the Hand aboord of vs, of whom wee asked many questions, who shewed vntovs, that the Hand was called Segnam, which is the latitude of seuenty degrees, and from Stanfew thirty leagues, being also under the King of Denmark, & that there was no merchandife there, but only dried fish, and Trane-oile. Then we being purposed to goe vinto Finnarke, enquired of him, if we might have a Pilot to bring vs to Finmarke, and he faid, that if we could be are in, we should have a good Harbour, and on the next day a Pilot to bring vs to Finmarke, vnto the Ward- 30 house, which is the strongest Hold in Finmark, & most reforted to by report. But when he would have entred into an Harbour, the Land being very high on every fide, there came fuch flawes of wind and terrible whirle-winds, that we were not able to beare in, but by violence were conftrained to take the fea againe, our Pinnace being vnshipt: we failed North and by East, the wind encreasing so fore, that we were not able to beare any fayle, but tooke them in, and lay adrift. to the end to let the florme ouer-passe. And that night by violence of winde, and thicknesses mills, we were not able to keepe together within light, and then about midnight wee loft our Pinnace, which was a difcomfort vnto vs. As soone as it was day, and the fogge over-past, we looked about, and at the last wee descried one of our ships to lee-ward off vs: then wee spred an hullocke of our fore-fayle, and bare roome with her, which was the Confidence, but the Ed. 40 ward we could not fee. Then the flaw fomething abating, wee and the Confidence hoyfed up our and entred the fayles the fourth day, fayling North-east and by North, to the end to fall with the Ward-house, as we did confult to doe before, in case we should part companie. Thus running North-east and by North, and North-east fifty leagues, then wee founded, and had one hundred and fixty fathoms, whereby we thought to be farre from Land, and perceived that the Land lay not as the Globe made mention. Wherefore we changed our courfe the fixth day, and fayled South-east and by South, eight and forty leagues, thinking thereby to finde the Ward-house.

The eighth day much winde rising at the West North-west, we not knowing how the coult lay, firooke our fayles, and lay adritt, where founded and found one hundred and fixty fathoms as before. The ninth day, the winde bearing to the South South-east, we sayled North-east fiee 50 and twenty leagues. The tenth day we founded, and could gee no ground, neither yet could fee any Land, whereat we wondered : then the winde comming at the North-east, we ran Southeast about eight and forty leagues. The elementh day the winde being at South, wee sounded and found torty fathoms, and faire fand. The twelfth day, the winds being at South analy East, we lay with our sayle East, and East and by North thirty leagues.

The fourteenth day early in the morning wee deferred Land, which Land wee bare within, hoyling out our Boat to discouer what land it might be : but the Boat could not come to Land, the water was so sha'low, where was very much Icealso, but there was no similitude of habitation, and this Land lieth from Seynam East and by North, one hundred and fixty leagues, being in latitude 72. degrees. Then we plyed to the Northward, the fitteenth, fixteenth, and feuen-

The eighteenth day, the winde comming at the North-east, and the Confidence being troubled with bilge water, and flocked, wee thought it good to seek harbour for her redresses then wee bare roome the eighteenth day South South-east, about truinty leagues. The one

and twentieth day wee founded, and found ten fathoms, after that wee founded againe, and found but feuen fathoms, to shallower and shallower water, and yet could fee no Land, whereat we maruelled greatly: to avoide this danger, we bare toomer into the Sea all that night Northwest and by West.

The next day we founded, and had twenty fathoms, then shaped our course, and ranne West South-west vntill the three and twentieth day : then we descried lowe Land, vnto which wee bare as nigh as we could, and it appeared vnto vs vnhabitable. Then we plyed Westward along by that Land, which lieth West South-west, and East North east, and much winde blowing at the West, we haled into the Sea North and by East thirtie leagues. Then the winde comming to about at the North-east, wee sayled West North-west: after that, the winde bearing to the North-well, wee lay with our fayles Well South-well, about fourteene leagues, and then deferied Land, and bare in with it, being the eight and twentieth day, finding shallow water. and bare in till we came to three fathom, then perceiting it to be shallow water, and also seeing drie fands, we haled out againe North-east along that Land, vntill we came to the point thereof. That Land turning to the Westward, we ranne along fixteene leagues North-west: then comming into a faire Bay, we went on Land with our Boat, which place was vninhabited, but yet it appeared vnto vs that the people had beene there, by croffes, and other fignes: from thence we went all along the coast Westward.

The fourth day of September we loft fight of Land , by reason of contrarie windes, and the September. 20 eighth day we descried Land againe. Within two dayes after we loft the fight of it : then running West and by South about thirtie leagues, we gat the fight of Land againe, and bare in with it vntill night: then perceiuing it to bee a lee shoare, we gat vs into the Sea, to the end to have Sea roome. The twelfth of September wee haled to shoare-ward againe, having then indifferent winde and weather: then being neere vnto the shoare, and the tide almost spent, wee came to an anchor in thirtie fathoms water. The thirteenth day we came along the coast, which lay North-weit and by Weit, and South-east and by East. The fourteenth day we came to an anchor within two leagues off the shoare, having fixtie fathoms. There wee went ashoare with our Boat, and found two or three good Harbours, the Land being rocky, and high, but as for people could we see none. The fitteenth day we ran still along the coast untill the seuenteenth 30 day: then the winde being contrarie vnto vs, we thought it best to returne vnto the Harbour which we had found before, and so we have roomer with the same, howbeit wee could not accomplish our defire that day. The next day being the eighteenth, we entred into the Hauen, and there came to an anchor at fix fathoms. This Hauen runneth into the Mayne, about two leagues, In this Hauen and is in bredth halfe a league, wherein were very many Seale-fishes, and other great fishes, and they died. vpon the Mayne wee faw Beares, great Deere, Foxes, and diuers strange beafts, as * Guloines, *Or, Ellons. and such other which were to vs vnknowne, and also wonderfull. Thus remayning in this Hamen the space of a weeke, seeing the yeere farre spent, and also very euil weather, as Frost. Snow, and Hayle, as though it had beene the deepe of Winter, wee thought best to winter there. Wherefore we fent out three men South South-west, to search if they could finde peo-40 ple, who went three dayes journey, but could finde none : after that, we fent other three Westward foure dayes journey, which also returned without finding any people. Then sent we three Herreendeth men South-east three dayes journey, who in like fort returned without finding of people, or any Sir Hugh Wil-fimilitude of habitation.

The River or Hauen wherein Sir Hugh Willoughby with the companie of his two ships perio was written shed for cold, is called Arzina in Lapland, necrevnto Kegor. But it appeareth by a Will found with his owne in a ship that Sir Hueb Willoughby, and most of the companie were aliue in Ianuary, 1554.

note, which

A Letter of RICHARD CHANCELLOR, written to his Vncle Master CHRISTOPHER FROTHING AM, touching his discouerie of Mossouia.

Porasomech as it is meet and necessarie for all those that minde to take in hand the travell into strange Countries, to endeasome themselves not onely to understand the orders, commodities, and finisfuncing thereof, but also to apply them to the setting forth of the same, whereby it may incourage others to the thereig, on ago to apply stem to the first part of the fame, watery it may incoming that my tra-like trankel, therefore haute I may thought good to make a briefe thearfall of the orders of thu my tra-nell in Rulla, and Mutcoula, and other Countries thereunte adopting t, because it was my chance to fall with the North parts of Russia, before I came towards Moscouia, I will partly declare my knowledge therein. Rusha is very plentiful both of Land and People, and also wealthie for such commodities as they 60 bane. They be very great fishers for Salmons and small Cods: they have much Oyle which wee call Trane Oyle, the most whereof is made by a River called Duins. They make it in other places, but not Duina, so much as there. They have also a great trade in seething of salt water. To the North part of that Countrey are the places where they have their Furres as Sables, Marterns, greeffe Beuers, Foxes white, blacke, and red, Minkes, Ermines, Miniuer, and Harts. There are also a fishes teeth, which fish is

W. Houghby his Land, in 72. degrees.

Pologda.

Irelane.

Mojce.

cilled a Morsse. The takers thereof dwell in a place called Postesora, which bring them upon Hatts to Lampas to fell, and from Lampas carrie them to a place called Colmogro, where the high Market is holden on Saint Nicolas day. To the West of Colmogro there is a place called Gracanoue, in our Linguage Nouogorode, where much fine Flaxe and Hempe groweth, and also much Waxe and Honie. The Dutch Merchants baue a Staple-bouse there. There is also great store of Hides, and at a place called Plesco: and thereabout is great flore of Flaxe, Hempe, Waxe, Honie; and that Towne is from

Colmogro one hundred and twentie miles,

There is a place called Vologda; the commodities whereof are Tallow, Waxe, and Flaxe: but no fo great plentie as is in Gratanoue. From Vologda to Colmogro there runneth a Ruer called Duina. lo great pentic as 13 to a landau of the Sea. Colmogro fernesb Gracanoue, Vologda, and the Moko, with 10 all the Country thereabout with Salt and falt Fish. From Vologila to Iereslaue is two hundred miles which Towne is very great. The commodules thereof are Hides, and Tallow, and Corne in great plen.

tie. and some Waxe, but not so plentifull as in other places.

The Molco is from letallane two hundred miles. The Country between them is very well replusifired with frame Unique, whose they over the littled with people, that it is wonder to fee them: the ground is will flored with from the first it is wonder to fee them: the ground is will flored with Corne, which they carrie to the Citie of Molco in such abundance that it is wonder to Cott. Tou half meet in a morning senen or eight hundred Sleds comming or going thirber, that carrie Corne, and some carrie sist. You shall have some that carrie Corne to the Moteo, and some that setch Corne from thence, that at the least dwell a thousand miles off: and all their carriage is on Sleds. Those which come so farre dwell in the North parts of the Dukes Dominions, where the cold will suffer to no Corne to grow, it is so extreme. They bring thither Fishes, Furres, and Beasts shinnes. Inthose parts they have but (mill store of Cattell.

The Mosco is selse is great: I take the whole Towne to be greater then London with the Suburbes but it is very rude, and standeth without all order. Then houses are all of timber very dangerous for fire. There is a faire Castle, the walls whereof are of bricke, and very high: they say they are eighteene foot thicke, but I doe not beleeve it, it doth not fo feeme; notwithstanding, I doe not certainly know it for no stranger may come to view it. The one side is disched, and on the other side runneth a Riner, called Moli ua , which runneth into Tartarie, and fo into the Sea, called Mare Calpium : and on the North side there is a base Towne, the which hath also a Bricke wall about it, and so it in neth with the Castle wall. The Emperour lieth in the Castle, wherein are nine faire Churches, and therein are Reli-30 guos men. Also there is a Metropolisan with diners Bispon, I will not sand in description of their buildings, nor of the strength thereof, because we have bester in all points in England. They be well furnished with Ordnance of all forts.

The Emperours or Dukes house neither in building nor in the outward shew, nor yet within the house is so sumptuous as I have seene. It is very lowe built in eight square, much like the old building of Ene-

land, with (mall windowes, and fo in other points.

Now to declare my comming before his Maiestie: After I had remayned twelve dayes, the Secreturie which hath the hearing of strangers did send for mee, advertising me that the Dukes pleasure was to have me to come before his Maiestie, with the King my Masters Letters: whereof I was right glad, Hee commeth and fo I gauc mine attendance. And when the Duke was in his place appointed, the Interpreter came to for mee into the outer Chamber, where sate one hundred or moe Gentlemen, all in cloth of Gold very Sumplusion, and from thence I came into the Counfell-chamber, where face the Duke himselfe, with his Nobles, which were a faire companie: they fate round about the Chamber on high, yet so that he himselfe sate much higher then any of his Nobles, in a Chaire gilt, and in a long garment of beaten Gold, with an ! mper sall (rowne upon his bead, and a Staffe of (riffall and Gold in his right hand, and his other hard halfe le ning on his Chaire. The Chancellour flood up with the Secretarie before the Duke. After my distie done, and my Letter delivered, he bade me welcome, and enquired of mee the health of the King my Master, and I answered, that he was in good health at my departure from his Court, and that my trust was, that he was now in the same. Upon the which he bade me to dinner. The Chancellor pre-Sented my Present unto his Grace bare-headed (for before they were all couered) and when his Grace 50 bid received my Letter, I was required to depart: for I had charge not to speake to the Duke, but when be stake to mee. So I departed unto the Secretaries Chamber, where I remayned two hours, and then I was sent for againe unto another Palace, which is called, The golden Palace, but I saw no cause why it should be so called; for I have seene many fairer then it in all points: and so I came into the Hall, which was small and not great as is the Kings Maiestees of England, and the Table was conered with a Table-cloth; and the Marshall sate at the end of the Table with a little white rod in his hand, which Board was full of vessell of Gold: and on the other side of the Hall did stand a faire Cupboord of Plate.

Dinerh with the Duke.

before the

From thence I came into the during Chamber, where the Duke himselfe sate at his Table without Cloth of estate, in a Gowne of Silver, with a Crowne Imperiall upon his head, he fate in a Chaire some - 60 what high: there fate none neere him by a great way. There were long tables fet round about the chamber, which were full fet with such as the Duke had at dinner: they were all in white. Also the places where the tables stood were higher by two steps then the rest of the house. In the middlest of the chimber stood a Table or Cupboord to set Plate on; which stoodfull of Cups of Gold: and among tall the

CHAP.I.S.I. Order of Service, His forces, Armour and attre. Hardine Se.

rest there stood source maruellons great Pots or Crudences as they call them, of Gold and Silver: I thinke they were a good yard and abalfe high. By the Cupboard flood two Gentlemen with Naphins on their shoulders, and in their hands each of them had a Cup of Gold fet with Pearles and Precious Golden Vell-1. Stones, which were the Dukes owne drinking Cups: when hee was disposed, hee drunke them off at a draught. And for his fernice at meate it came in without order, yet it was very rich fernice; for all were fermed in Gold; not onely be him felfe, but also all the rest of us, and it was very massic: the super also were of Gold and very massie. The number that dined there that day was two bundred persons and all were fermed in Golden Veffell. The Gentlemen that wayted were all in Cloth of Gold, and then ferned him with their Caps on their heads. Before the fernice came in , the Duke fent to every man a

10 great skiner of Bread, and the Bearer called the party so sent to by his name alonde, and said, lohn Basiliuich Emperour of Russia, and great Duke of Mosconia, doth reward thee with Bread: then mult all men stand up, and doe at all times when those words are spoken. And then last of all bee gineth the Mar[ball Bread, whereof he eateth before the Dukes Grace, and fo doth renerence and departeth. Then commets the Dukes service of the Swans all in pieces, and every one in a severall dish: the which the Duke senderb as be did the Bread, and she Bearer sails the same words as bee said before. And as I said before, the service of his meate is in no order, but commeth in Dish by Dish: and then af-Ana. a. 1 paa sejver, no serwer oj voo meate is in no oraer, om commettoro Dijo ez Dijo : ana toen aj-ter that the Duke sendeth drinke, with the like sajing as before is told. Also before Dinner he changed Cronne chail-his Crowne, and in Dinner time two Crownes; so that I saw three severall Crownes upon his brad in ged.

one day. And thus when his service was all come in, hee gave to every one of his Gentlemen Wayters 20 meate with his owne hand, and so likewise drinke. His intent thereby is, as I have beard, that every man shall know perfectly his sernants. Thus when Dinner is done bee calleth his Nobles before him name by name, that it is wonder to bear to bow be could name them, heating formany at bee bath. This when Din-ner was done I departed to my Lodging, which was an house within night.

I will leave this, and Speake no more of him nor his Housbold: but I will somewhat declare of his Land and people, with their nature and power in the Warres. This Duke is Lord and Emperour of ma- Dukes forces. ny Countries, and bu power is marnelloss great. For bee is able to bring into the field two or three bundred thou fand men : he neuer goeth into the field him felfe with under two hundred thou fand men : And when hee goeth himselfe, hee furnisheth his Border; all with men of Warre, which are no small number. He leasest on the Borders of Liestand forthe thou fand men, and upon the borders of Letto, fixthe thom-

30 fand men, and toward the Nagay an Tartars fix the thousand, which is wonder to heare of . yet doth hee neuer take to his Warres neither Husbandman nor Merchant. All his men are Horfe-men: bee efeth no Foot-men, but such as goe with the Ordnance and Labourers, which are there theusand. The Aimcur and Horse-men are all Archets, with such Bowes as the Turkes have, and they ride stort as doet he Turkes. rich atyce. Their Armour is a Coate of Plate, with a skullow their heads. Some of their Coates are concred with Veluet or Cloth of God: their desire is to be sumptuous in the sield, and especially the Nobles and Gentlemen: as I have heard their trimming is very costly, and partly I have seene it, or elfe I would scarcely have believed it : but the Duke himself is richly attyred about all measure : hie Paulion is covered eyther with Cloth of Gold or Silner, and fo fet with stones that it is wonderfull to fee it. I have seen the

Kings Maiesties of England and the French Kings Paulions, which are faire, yet not like unto his. 40 And when they be fent into farre or strange Countries, or that strangers come to them, they be very gergeom. Elfe the Duke himselfe goeth but meanly in apparell: and when bee goeth betweet one place and another bee is but reasonably apparelled oner other times. In the while that I was in Mosco, the Duke sent two Ambassadours to the King of Peleland, which had at the lest five hundred Horses; their sumptuousnesse was about measure, not onely in themselves, but also in their Horses, as Veluet, Cloth of Jampinsungange was acone mediure, not one; missenseines, one my travels, and each of solver fee with Pearles, and not feast. What field I further fay? I never beard of Extremes. nor faw men so sumptnow : but it is no daily guize, for when they bame not occasion, as I saidbefore, all the just means. And now to the effect of their Warres: They are men without all order in the Vadiciplined their away to our mount. As a now we was you we want to a sure you are not a sure of the s

that which they do, they do it all by stealth. But I believe they be such men for hard living at arenot under tom won to very way, we man a many premium, core on commentary as you can a comment man a comment of the Sunne : for no cold will burst them. Fea, and though they from the field two moneths, at fach time as Hirdinetic. is shall freeze more then a yard thicke, the common Souldier hath neither Tent nor any thing else over his bead : the most defence they have reams the weather is a Felt, which is set against the wind and meather, and when Snow commeth be doth cast it off, and maketh him a fire, and lageth him downe thereby. Thus doe the most of all his men except they be Gentlemen which have other proussion of their owne. Then lying in the field is not so strange is is their hardnesse: for every man must carrie and make provision for himfelfe, and his Horse for a moneth or two, which is very wonderfull. For hee himselfe shall twe voon water and Oate-meale mingled together cold, and drinke water thereto: his Horse Pall cate greene wood, and such like baggage, and shall stand open in the cold field without conert and

yes will bee labeur and ferue him right well. I pray you amongst all our boufting Warrours bow many yet with the known and serve men reget week. I pray you amongst an one company.

60 Sheated we find to endure the field with them but one moneth. I know no such Region about or that becatres that same for man and beast. Now what mught bee made of these men if they were trayred and broken to order and knowledge of Civill Warres: if this Prince had within bu Countries such man as could make them to understand the things aforefaid. I doe beleeve that two of the best or greatst Princes in Christendome were not well able to match with him, considering the greatnesse of his power and the

hardnesse of his people, and straight listing both of people and Horse, and the small charges which his War; stand him in: for he giveth no wages, except to strangers. They have a yearely stipend and not much. As for bu swee Countreymen, enery one serueth of his owne proper costs and charges, faxing that hee gineth to bis Harquebusiers certaine allowance for Powder and Shot : or else no man in all bis Countres Knights Fee. bath one penie wages. But if any man hath done very good seruice, he giucth him a Ferme, or a piece of Land; for the which be ss bound at all times to be readie with so many men as the Duke shall appoint? who considereth in his minde, what that Land or Ferme is well able to find: and so many shall be be bound to furnilh at all and enery such time as Warres are holden in any of the Dukes Dominions. For thereis no man of liming, but be is bound likewife, whether the Duke call for eyther Souldier or Labourer, to furnish them with all such necessaries as to them belong.

Duke heire Generalla

Also, if any Gentleman or man of living doe dye without I fue Male, immediately after his death the Duke entreth bis Land, notwithstanding be baue neuer so many Daughters, and peraduenture ginesh it forth with to another man, except a small portion that he spareth to marry the Daughters withall, Alla if there be a Rich man, a Fermour, or man of Liuing, which is stricken in age or by chance is marmed and be not able to doe the Duke service, some other Gentleman that is not able to line and more able to doe service, will come to the Duke and complaine, saying, your Grace hath such an one, which is the meete to doe feruice to your Highnesse, who hash great abundance of wealth, and likewise your Grace hath many Gentlemen which are poore and lacke liming, and me that lacke are well able to doe good feruice, your Grace might doe well to looke upon him, and make him to beloe those that want. Immediate. Is the Duke sender to forth to inquire of his wealth: and if it be so proved, hee shall be called before the the Duke and it shall bee faid onto him, Friend , you have too much lining, and are unserviceable to your Prince, lesse will serve you, and the rest will serve other men that are more able to serve. Whereupon immediately his living shall be taken away from him, saving a lutle to find himselfe and his Wife on and be may not once repine thereat : but for answere bee will say, that bee bath nothing, but it is Gods and the Dakes Graces, and cannot fay, as wee the common people in England fay, if wee bane any thing: that it is Gods and our owns. Men may fay, that thefe men are in wonderfull great awe, and obedience. that thus one must give and grant his goods which be hath beene scraping and scratching for all his life to be at his Princes pleasure and commandement. Ob, that our sturde Rebels were had in the like subtection to know their dutie toward their Princes. They may not fay as some Snudges in England fay, I would find the Queene a man to serve in my place, or make his Friends tarrie as home if many base the W upper hand, No, no it is not fo in this Country: for be shall make bumble fute to ferne the Duke, And whom be lenderh most to the Warres hee thinketh he se most in his favour : and yet as I before have faid, be givethno wages. If they knew their strength, no man were able to make match with them: for the that dwell neere them fould have any rest of them. But I thinke it is not Gods will : For I may compare them to a young Horse that knoweth not his strength, whom a little (bild ruleth and guideth with abridle, for all bis great strength : for if b: did, neither Child nor man could rule bim. Then Warres are holden against the Crimme Tartarians, and the Nagayans.

No wages.

Centlemen. der. But I will in part declare their Lawes, and Tunishments, and the execution of Inflice. And first

I will begin with the Commons of the Country, which the Gentlemen nauerule on : And that is, that 40 enery Gentleman bath Rule and lustice upon his owne Tenants. And if it fo fall out that two Gentlemens Seruants or Tenants doe disagree, the two Gentlemen examine the matter, and bane the parties Suits & tryals. before them, and fo give the Sentence. And yet cannot they make the end between them of the Controuerfie, but e ther of the Gentlemen must bring his Sernant or Tenant before the high Indee or Infine of that Country, and there present them, and declare the matter and case. The Plaintiffe Saith, Irequire the Law; which is granted : then commeth an Officer and arrest eth the partie Defendant, and vfeth him contrary to the Lawes of England. For when they attach any man, they beate him about the legs, untill such time as he finderh Sureties to answere the matter : And if not his hands and necke are bound together, and bee is led about the Towne, and beaten about the legs, with other extreme pumb. ments till be come to his Answere: And the luftice demandeth if it bee for Debt, and sayth: Owest 50 thou this man any such Debi? He will, perhaps, say nay. Then faith the Indge: Art thou able to dem

I will fland no longer in the rehearfall of their power and Warres. For it were to tediom to the Rea-

No Lawyer,

further tryall be had.

Their order in one point is commendable. They have no man of Law to plead their Causes in any Court : but enery man pleadeth his owne Cause, and giveth Bill and A fivere in writing : contrary to the order in England. The Complaint is in manner of a Supplication , and made to the Dukes Grace, and delinered him into his owne hand, requiring to have Instice as in his Complaint is alleaged. The Duke gineth sentence himselfe upon all matters in the Law. Which is very commendable, that such a Prince will take paines to fee ministration of Instice. Yet notwithstanding it is wonderfully abused : and thereby the Duke is much deceived. But if it fall out that the Officers be espied in cloking the truth ship bis Oath upon the Crucifive, whether he be in the right or no. Then is demanded, if the Plaintiffe bet Combat-triall. any thing able further to make proofe: if he be not; then sometimes he will say, I am able to proue it by my body and hands, or by my Champions body, so requiring the Campe. After the other hash his Oath,

it? Let us beare bow? By Oath, faith the Defendant. Then he commandeth to leave beating him till

have most condigne punishment. And if the Plaintiffe can nothing prove, then the Defendant must take 60

it is granted as well to the one as to the other. So when they goe to the field, they sweare upon the Ctucifixe, that they bee both in the right, and that the one Shall make the other to confesse the truth before they depart foorth of the field : and fo they goe both to the bassell armed with fuch weapons as they wife in that Countrey : they fight all on foot, and seldome the parties themselves doe fight, except they bee Gentlemen, for they stand much upon their reputation, for they will not fight, but with such as are come of as good an house as themselves. So that if either partie require the combate, it is granted vinto them, and no Champion is to serue in their roome; wherein is no deceit; but otherwise by champions there is. For although they take great outher upon them to doe the battell truely, yet is the contrary often seene : because the common Champions have no other lining. And afforne as the one partie bath gotten the victorie, hee To demandeth the debt, and the other is carried to Prifon, and there is hamefully a fed till bee take order.

There is also another order in the Law, that the plaintiffe may sweare in some causes of debt. And if the partie defendant bee poore, bee Shall be fet under the Crucifixe, and the partie plaintiffe must sweare ouer his bead, and when hee bath taken his oath, the Duke taketh the partie defendant home to his house, and veet bim as his bond-man, and patteth bim to labour, or letteth bim for bire to any Bondage. such anneede him, untill such time as bis friends make provision for his redemption : or else hee seemanneth in bondage all the dayes of his life. Againe, there are many that will sell themselves to Punishments Gentlemen or Merchants, to bee their bond men, to have during their life, meate, drinke and cloath, for Crimete and at their comming to base a piece of money; yea, and some will sell their wines and children to be bawds and drudges to the buyer. Also they have a Law for Fellons and pickers contrary to the Lawes of Eng-20 land. For by their Law they can bang no man for his first offence ; but may keepe him long in Prifon. and oftentimes be ate him with whips and other punishment : and there bee shall remaine untill his filends bee able to bayle him. If hee be a picker or a cut-purse, as there bee very many, the second time he is taken, hee bath a piece of his Nose cut off, and is burned in the fore-head, and kept in prison till be finde sureties for bu good behauiour. And if bee be taken the third time, be to hanged. And at the first time bee is extreamely punished and not released, except be have very good friends, or that some Gentleman require to have him to the warres : And in fo doing, hee shall enter into great bonds for him : by which meanes the Countrey is brought into good quietnesse. But they bee naturally ginen to great de-Beating. ceit, except extreame beating did bridle them. They bee naturally given to bard living as well in fare as in lodging. I beard a Russan fay, that it was a great deale merrier liuing in Prison then foorth,

but for the great beating. For they have meate and drinke without any labour, and get the charitie of well disposed people: But being at libertie they get nothing. The poore is very innumerable, and line most miserably : for I have seene them eate the pickle of Herring and other flinking Fish : nor the Fish cannot bee fo flinking nor rotten, but they will eate it and praise it to bee more whole some then other fill or fresh meate. In mine opinion there bee no such people under the Sunne for their hardnesse of liming, Well, I will leave them in this point, and will in part declare their Religion.

They doe observe the Law of the Circekes with such excesse of superstition, at the like hath not beene Superstition. beard of. They have no graven Images in their Churches, but all painted, to the intent they will not breake the Commandement : but to their painted Images they vife such Idolatrie, that whe like was never Images and heard of in England. They will neither worship nor bonour any Image that is made foorth of their owne Pictures. 60 Countrey. For their owne Images (fay they) bane Pictures to declare what they bee, and how they be of God, and 6 be not ones: I for for, look bow to be Painter or Graver bath made them, 60 weed even for just be them, and they working none before they bee Christened. They fay wee be but halfs Christians: because we observe not part of the old Law with the Turkes. Therefore they call themselves more boly then us. They have none other learning but their mother tongue, nor will suffer no other in their Coun- Mother tongue trey among them. All their service in Churches is in their mother tonene. They have the old and new Testament, which are daily read among them : and yet their superstition is no lesse. For when the Setuice. Priests doe reade, they have such trickes in their reading, that no man can understand them, nor no man givetheare to them. For all the while the Priest readeth, the people fit downe and one talke with another. But when the Priest is at service no man sitteth, but gaggle and dueke like so many Geese. And as 50 for their prayers they have but little skill, but ofe to fay, As bods pomele : As much to fay, Lord have Prayers. mercie vpon me. For the tenth man within the Land cannot fay the Pater nofter. And as for the

Creed, no man may bee so bold as to meddle therewith but in the Church: for they say it should not be spo. Ctccd. ken of, but in the Churches. Speake to them of the Commandements, and they will say they were given Commande. so Moses in the Law, which Christ bath now abrogated by his precious Death and Passion : there- ments, fore, (say they) wee observe little or none thereof. And I doe beleeve them. For if they were examined of their Law and Commandements together, they foculd agree but in free points. They have the Sacra-ment of the Lords Supper in both kindes, and more ceremonies then we base. They prefess them in a diffe on both kinds together, and carrie them round about the Church upon the Priests head, and so doe minister at all such times as any shall require. They bee great offerers of Candles, and Somatimes of money, which Candles,

60 wee call in England, Soule pence, with more ceremonies then I am able to declare. They base four Cents in the yeare, whereof our Lent is the greatest. Looke as wee doe begin on the Four Lenu-Wednesday, so they doe on the Munday before : And the weeke before that they call the Butter-weeke: And in that weeke they cate nothing but Butter and Milke. Howbeit I beleeve there bee in no other Countrey the like people for Drunkennesse. The next Lent is called Saint Peters Lent, and begin-

Vices.

Abbies,

218

neth alwayer the Munday next after Triving Sunday, and endeth on Saint Peters Eenen. If they usto aimages to commany ness sques a sinuse invoke, non come un basis sectors even. If they found breake that Fast, their beliefe is, that they food a me come in at Heamen gates. And when any of them day, they have at of smarrial with shown in the Coffin, that when the feele comment to Heaving. gates it may deliner the same to Saint Peter, which declareth that the partie is a true and bot Ruffin. gass it was success to seem a fact the later Lady day, and ender on our Lady Zenen. The fourth Lent beginneth on Saint Martins day, and endeth on Christmas Ecten : which Lent is Chiefe Saint, fuffed for Saint Philip, Saint Peter, Saint Nicholas, and Saint Clement. Per they foure bet the fasted for Saint Philip, Saint Peter, Saint Micholas, and Saint Ciement. For they foure be the principal and greatest Saint in that Construct. In these Long they are neither Butter, Egget, Man, 100 (Seefe; i but they are very straightly less with Fish, Cabbagus, and Revier. And of the Louis, they observe rues; the Wednesse and Foodors: throughout the years; and on the Sangah they does not full. Farthermore, they have a great number of Reviews men: which are black Alonkes, and toy are so Elash throughout the years, but Fish, Addie and Butter. By their adars they Monkey, and they eate us Bidis torquegouse the years, tour Fifts, Mauke and Butter. By their order the founds afte no fresh Fift, and us there tents they ade eaching has Colomorts, Cabbages, Sale Cucumbert, with other resets, at Radia and shock their Their desides is the own penis also, and us saled Quest. The plane Service daily in their Chusches; and off to got to fernice to make hourse shows of the do, on their is each by dessign. At since of the clacke they are a Masse: hour ended, to Dimon: and offer that to free use a question and then to Support. You final understand that at consist dimons and support they have the consistent of the Cabbas that the support of the consistent of the Cabbas that the support of the consistent of the Cabbas that the support of the consistent of the Cabbas that the consistent sice agains: and them to Supper. Two field underfland that as assuite dismer and fupper they have a cleared the exposition of the Gisful than day: but have they week and now the Stripiure and that to gether, by report it is wonderful. As far these above and the normal method to the termination that the striper is the supper that the

Some additions for better knowledge of this Voyage, taken by Chenent Adams, Schoole-maßer to the Queens Henhamen, from the month of Captaine Chanceho

Thaue this booke of Cle-Latine, Write ten in a very elegant hand Stile to King Philip; (as I

SERICHARD Chargelar with his Ship and companie being thus left alone, and become very pensiue, hearie, and fortowfull, by this dispersion of the Fleet, hee (according to the order before taken.) shapeth his course for ward boufe in Normay, there to expect and ahide the arruell of the saibof the Shipe, And being come thither, and having flave ed there the inace of leaven dayes, and looked in vaine for their comming, hee determined at length to proceed alone in the purpoled towage. And as hee was preparing himselfe to depart, it happened that hee fell in companie and speech with certaine Seatiff men : who having yo- 40 derstanding of his intention, and wishing well to his actions, began earneftly to diffwade him from the further profesurion of the discourrie, by amplifying the dangers which hee was to fall into, and emitted no reason that might sense to that purpose. But he holding nothing so ignominious and reproachfull, as inconfrancie and leurite of minde, and perswading himtelfe that a man of valour could not commit a more dishonourable part, then for feare of danger to anoyd and flungreat attempts, was nothing at all changed or discouraged with the speeches and words of the Seer, remayning fledfall and immutable in his first resolution : determining either to bring that to paffe which was intended, or elfe to dye the death.

that to parte which was austiner, we have corporate the state of the state of diffeomfort by the losse of their companie (whom the forestaid tempest had sprarated 19 from them, and were not a little troubled with cogitations and perturbations of minde, in respect of their doubtfull course ; yet notwithstanding, they were of such consent and agreement of minde with Master Chanceler, that they were refolute, and prepared wnder his direction and government, to make proofe and tryall of all adventures, without all feare or mistrust of future dangers. Which constancie of minde in all the companie did exceedingly increase their Captaines carefulnesse; for hee being swallowed up with like good will and loue towards them, feared left through any errous of his, the fafetie of the companie should bee indangered. To con-clude, when they law theindefire and hope of the articall of the rest of the Ships to be every day more and more frustrated, they prouded to Sea againe, and Master Chanceler held on his courie towards that vulknowne part of the world, and fayled fo farre, that hee came at last to the 60 place where hee found no night at all, but a continuall light and brightnesse of the Sunne shi-They make in the Bay of ming deceptly upon the lung and mightic Sea. And haung the benefite of this perpetual light Saint Niebolar.

Saint Niebolar. the Bay of for certaine dayes, at the length it pleated trod to oring them mess a certaine gazara, and former than his of one hundreth miles or there about ouer. Whereinto they entred, and former hand the within

within it cast anchor, and looking every way about them, it happed that they espeed a farre off a certaine Fisher-boate, which Master Chancelor, accompanied with a few of his men, went towards to common with the Fishermen that were in it, and to know of them what Country in was, and what people, and of what manner of living they were : but they being amazed with the flrange greatnesse of his ship, (for in those parts before that time, they had never seene the like) began prefently to apoyd and to flee : but hee still following them, at last opertooke them. and being come to them, they (being in great feare, as men halfe dead) proftrated themselves before him, offering to kiffe his feete: but hee (according to his great and fingular courtefie,) looked pleafantly upon them, comforting them by fignes and gettures, refuting those duties and To reverences of theirs, and taking them up in all louing fort from the ground. And it is ftrange to confider how much fauour afterwards in that place, this humanitie of his did purchase to himselfe. For they being dismissed, spread by and by a report abroad of the arrivall of a Grange Nation, of a fingular gentlenesse and courtesie : whereupon the common people came together, offering to these new-come ghests victuals freely, and not refusing to, traffigue with them. excent they had beene bound by a certaine religious vie and cuttome, not to buy any fortaine commodities, without the knowledge and confent of the King.

CHAP. I.S.I. Difcouerie of Russia by Englishmen, their Entertainment.

By this time our men had learned, that this Countrey was called Ruffia, or Mufcouie, and The Diffense that Inan Vasilimich (which was at that time their Kings name) ruled and governed farre and ricof Ruffi, wide in those places. And the barbarous Russes asked likewise of our men whence they were, and what they came for : wheretunto answer was made, that they were Englishmen sent into

those coasts, from the most excellent King Edward the fixt, having from him in commandement certaine things to deliuer to their King, and feeking nothing elle but his amitie and friendthip, and traffique with his people, whereby they doubted not, but that great commoditie and profit would grow to the subjects of both Kingdomes,

The Barbarians heard these things very gladly, and promised their ayde and furtherance to acquaint their King out of hand, with so henest and a reasonable a request. In the meane time Mailer Chanceler intreated victuals for his money, of the Gouernour of that place (who together with others came abourd him) and required hostages of them likewise, for the more affurance of faferie to himfelfe and his companie. To whom the Governours answered, that they 20 knew not in that case the will of their King, but yet were willing in fach things as they might lawfully doe, to pleasure him : which was as then to affoord him the benefit of victuals.

Now, while these things were a doing, they secretly sent a messenger vnto the Emperour, to Messengersea certifie him of the arrivall of a strange Nation, and withall to know his pleasure concerning to the Empethem. Which message was very welcome vnto him, infomuch that voluntarily he inuited them rour. to come to his Court. But if by reason of the tediousnesse of so long a journey, they thought it not best so to doe, then hee granted libertie to his Subiects to bargaine, and to traffique with them : and further promifed, that if it would pleafe them to come to him, hee himfelfe would beare the whole charges of poste Horses. In the meane time the Gouernours of the place, differred the matter from day to day, pretending divers excuses, and saying one while, that the consent of all 40 the Gouernours, and another while, that the great and weightie affaires of the Kindome compelled them to differ their answer: and this they did of purpose, so long to protract the time, vntill the messenger (sent before to the King) did returne with relation of his will and pleasure.

But Master Chancelor, (seeing himselfe held in this suspense with long and vaine expectation, and thinking that of intention to delude him, they posted the matter off so often,) was very infant with them to performe their promise : Which if they would not doe, hee told them that be would depart and proceed in his voyage. So that the Musconies (although as yet they knew not the minde of their King) yet fearing the departure indeed of our men, who had such wares and commodities as they greatly defired, they at last resoluted to furnish our people with all things necessarie, and to conduct them by land to the presence of their King. And so Master Sc Chancelor began his journey, which was very long and most troublesome, wherein he had the vie of certaine fleds, which in that Countrey are very common, for they are carried themselves vpon fleds, and all their carriages are in the same fort, the people almost not knowing any other manner of carriage, the cause whereof is, the exceeding hardnesse of the ground congested in the Winter time by the force of the cold, which in those places is very extreame and horrible,

whereof hereafter wee will fay fomething. But now they having passed the greater part of their journey, met at last with the Sled-man (of whom I spake before) fent to the King secretly from the luitices or Governours, who by some ill hap had lost his way, and had gone to the Sea-side, which is neere to the Countrey of the Tarrars, thinking there to have found our ship. But having long erred and wandered out of

& his way, at the Jast in his direct returne, hee met (as he was comming) our Captaine on the way. To whom hee by and by deliuered the Emperours letters, which were written to him with all courtefie and in the most louing manner that could bee : wherein expresse commande- The Emperore ment was given, that post Hories should be gotten for him and the rest of his company without ters to Master any money. Which thing was of all the Ruffer, in the rest of their iourney so willingly done, thenciar,

that they began to quarrell, yea, and to fight also in firming and contending which of them should put their poste horses to the Sled : so that after much adoe, and great paines taken in this long and wearie journey, (for they had trauelled very neere fifteene hundred miles) Mafter Chancelor came at last to Mose, the chiefe Citie of the Kingdome, and the feate of the King.

Hondivs bis Map of Ruffia.



Ripbean hils.

Touching the Ropean Mountainer, whereupon the Snow lyeth continually, and where hence in times past it was thought that Tanais the river did spring, and that the rest of the wonders of nature, which the Grecians fained and invented of old, were there to bee feene : our men which lately came from thence, neither faw them, nor yet haue brought home any perfect relation of them, although they remay ned there for the space of three moneths, and had gotten in that time fome intelligence of the language of Mosconie. The whole Countrey is plaine and champion, so and few hils in it : and towards the North, it hath very large and spacious Woods, wherein is great store of Firre trees, a wood very necessarie, and fit for the building of houses: there are also wilde beafts bred in thole woods, as Buffes, Beares, and blacke Wohles, and another kinde of beaft vnknowen to vs, but called by them Roffomakka: and the nature of the fame is very rare and wonderfull : for when it is great with young, and ready to bring foorth, it feeketh out some narrow place betweene two stakes, and so going through them, pressent it selfe, and by that meanes is eased of her burthen, which otherwise could not bee done. They hunt their Buffes for the most part a horse-backe, but their Beares a foot, with woodden forkes. The North parts of the Countrey are reported to bee to cold, that the very Ice or water which distilleth out of the moyil wood which they lay vpon the fire, is prefently congealed and frozen: the diversitie 60 growing fodainly to bee to great, that in one and the felfe-fame fire-brand, a man shall fee both he and ice. When the winter doth once begin there, it doth fill more and more increase by a perpetuite of cold: neither doth that cold flake, until the force of the Sunne beames doth difference of the Sunne bea folue the cold, and make glad the earth, returning to it againe. Our Mariners which wee left in

V₃

ð. 11.

CHAP.I.S.I. Duke of Muscouic bis Letters, to King Edward the fixt. the ship in the meane time to keepe it, in their going vp onely from their cabbins to the hatches, "The rest of had their breath oftentimes fo fuddenly taken away, that they eft-soones fell downe as men ve- M-Adam conhad their breath oftentimes to luddenly taken away, that they ert-nomes ren downe as men very ry neere dead, to great is the sharpenesse of that cold Climate: but for the South parts of the synings de-signous of the

Country, &c.is bere omitted.

The Copie of the Duke of Moscouie and Emperour of Russia his Letters, fent to King EDWARD the Sixth, by the hands of RICHARD CHANCELOVE.

The Almightic power of God, and the incomprehensible boly Trimitie, rightfull Christian Beliefe, luan Vashinich, by the Grace of God great Lord and Emperour of all Rus. His tic stay, The great Duke of Volodemer, Moleo, and Nouograd, King of Kazan, King of Altracan, Lord of Bellium, ha frest Duke of Volucinici, audico, and volucifica, acing of Antacan, acing of Antacan, acing of Plesko, and great Duke of Smolensko, of Twerria, Joughoria, Permia, Vadska, Bulghoria, and others, Lord and great Duke of Novograd in the Low Country, of Chernigo, Rezan, Polotskoy, Roftoue, Yaruslaueley, Bealozera, Liefland, Oudoria, Obdoria, and Conden-Rezan, Polotskoy, Kontoue, 1 arunauciev, Deatoceta, Lichanu, Oudoria, Oudoria, and Conden-fa, Commander of all Siberia, and of the North parts, and Lord of many other Committee, greeting, Before all, right, great and worthy of bonour Edward King of England, Ge. according to our most heartic and good zeale, with good intent and friendly defire, and according to our boly Christian Faith, and great Gouernance, and being in the light of great understanding, our Answere by this our Honouand great voucerance, and cring in 100 topol of great vouces panding, our Anjwere of the our Honou-rable Writing votes your Kingly Concernance, at the request of your faciliful Scream: Richard Chance-lout, with his company, as they shall let you wisely know as this. In the strength of the twentieth years of our Governance, be it knowne, that at our Sea-coasts arrived a stip, with one Richard, and his company, and faid, that he was desiron to come into our Dominions, and according to his request, bath seeme our Maiestie, and a our eyes : and bath declared onto vs your Maiesties desire, as that wee should d That is, grant onto your Subelis, to goe and come, and in our Dominions, and among our Subielts, to frequent come into our free Marts, with all forts of Merchandizes, and upon the same to have warres for their returns. And presence. they have also delinered vs your Letters which declare the same request. And hereupon wer have gi-

30 nen order, that where some your fauthfull Sermant Hugh Willoughbie, land or touch is our Dominions, to be well entertayned, who as yet is not arrived as your Seruant Richard can declare.

and we was Christian beliefe and faithfulnesse, and according to your Honourable request, and my Honour able commandement will not lease it undone: and are furthermore willing that you fend unto us your thips and Vessels, when and as often as they may have passage, with good assurance on our part to see them harmleffe. And if you fend one of your Maisfires comfell to treate with vs whereby your Courtrey Merchants may with all kindes of Wares , and where they will make their Market in our Domitrey Merchants may with all timest of trates, and where they will make their Market in our Domi-usous, they field have their free Mart with all free Liberties through my whole Dominions, with usest, they load base toers free seast who as free Laverties through my whole Dominions, with discharge Wares, to come and goe at their pleasure, without any let, damage, or impedament, accor-ding to this our Letter, our Word and our Scale which we have commanded to be under scaled. Pritten in and to this our Letter, our roots and our Palace in the Caffle of Molco, in the years 7060, the second

This Letter was written in the Mosconian Tongue, in Letters much like to the Greeke Letthis Letter was written in Paper, with a broad Seale hanging at the fame, fealed in Paper you Waxe. This Seale was much like the Broad Seale of England, having on the one fide the Image of a man on Horle-backe in complete Harneffe fighting with a Dragon. Vnder this Letter was another Paper written in the Duch Tongue, which was the Interpretation of the other written in the Mofconian Letters. These Letters were sent the next yeare after the date of King

umaras secuces, 1554. After this, entercourfe of Letters and Emballages palled betwirt King Philip and Queene Marie, and the Molcounterand the Molcoune Company was inflituted and received Printedges both from their and the MOLCOURE and the MOLCOUR Supposed from May 1555, and Maffer George onne and that Fortame Prince, a freend Voyage been fat forthin May, 1555, and Maffer George bone may coast cortains a made their first Agent; the particulars whereof are found at large in Master Authory fift Tome of Voyages, as also abor things touching that Trade then foiled: which beere I emit, and come to Master lenkinlons Voyages to Molco, and thence to Tartaria. * Hee made three others afrer, one as Embaffidour from Oucene Elizabeth to the Muscouite.

The first * Voyage made by Master Anthonie Ienkinson. from the Citie of London, toward the Land of Russia, begunne the twelfth of May, in the yeare

Irft, by the grace of God, the day and yeare aboue mentioned, I departed from the fail ditie, and the fame day at Grameford, embarked my fifte in a good flip, named the first of the first grant of the first grant gra the Primrofe, being appointed, although vnworthy, chiefe Captaine of the fame, and alfo of the other three good ships, to fay, the Iohn Enargelist, the Anne, and the 10

Trinitie, having also the conduct of the Emperour of Ruffia, his Ambaffadeur named Ofen Nepea Gregorimsch, who passed with his company in the said Primrofe. And thus our foure tall ships being well appointed, af well for men, as victuals, as other necessary furniture, the said twelfth day of the moneth of May, we weighed our Anchors, and departed from the faid Grauefend, in the after-noone, and plying downe the Thames, the wind being Easterly, and faire weather the thirteenth day we came a ground with the Primrofe, vpon a fand called the blacke tayle, where wee fate fast vitill the fourteenth day in the morning, and then God bee prayfed, shee came off : and that day we plyed downe as farre as our Ladie of Holland, and there came to an Anchor, the winde being Eafterly, and there remayned vntill the twentieth day : then wee weved and went out at Goldmore gate, and from thence in at Balfey flade, and fo into Orwell wands, where 20 we came to an Anchor : but as we came out at the faid Goldemore gate, the Trinitie came on ground on certayne Rockes, that lye to the North-ward of the faid gate, and was like to be bilged and loft. But by the ayde of God, at the last she came off againe, being very leake; and the one and twentieth day the Primrofe remaining at an Anchor in the wands, the other three ships bare into Orwell Hauen, where I caufed the faid Trinitie to be grounded, fearched, and repayred. So we remayned in the faid Hauen, vntill the eight and twentieth day : and then the wind being Westerly, the three ships that were in the Hauen, weighed and came forth, and in comming forth the Iohn Euangelist came on ground upon a Sand, called the Andros, where the remayned one tyde, and the next full Sea the came off againe without any great hurt, God be prayfed.

The nine and twentieth day in the morning all foure thips weighed in the Wands, and that to tyde went as farre as Orfordnesse, where we came to an Anchor, because the wind was Northerly : And about fixe of the clocke at night, the wind vered to the South-west , and we weighed Anchor, and bare cleere of the Neffe, and then fet our courie North-east and by North vntill mid-night, being then cleare of Tarmouth fands. Then wee winded North and by Weft, and North North-west, vntill the first of June at noone, then it waxed calme, and continued so vntill the second day at noone: then the wind came at North-west, with a tempest, and much raine, and we lay close by, and caped North North-east, and North-east and by North, as the wind shifted, and so continued vntill the third day at noone : then the winde vered Westerly againe, and we went North our right course, and so continued our way vntill the fourth day at three of the clocke in the after-noone, at which time the winde vered to the North-west 40 againe and blew a fresh gale, and so continued vntill the seventh day in the morning, wee lying with all our thips close by, and caping to the Northwards: and then the winde vering more Northerly, we were forced to put roomer with the Coast of England againe, and fell overthwart New-castle, but went not into the Hauen, and so plyed vpon the Coast the eight day

The tenth day the wind came to the North North-west, and wee were forced to beare roomer with Flamborow head, where we came to an Anchor, and there remayned vntill the feuenteenth day. Then the wind came faire, and we weighed, & fet our courfe North and by East, time and to continued the fame with a merry wind vntill the one and twentieth at noone, at which we took the Sunne, and had the latitude in fixtie degrees. Then we shifted our course, and went 10 North North-east, & North-east and by North, vntill the five and swentieth day. Then we dis-Hellick Hands couered certain Hands, called Hellick Hands, lying from vs Northeaft, being in the latitude of fixty fixe degrees, fortie minutes. Then we went North and by West, because we would not come too nigh the Land, and running that course foure houres, we discovered, and had fight of Rost Ilands, joyning to the mayne Land of Finmarke. Thus continuing our course along the Coast of Normay and Firmarke, the feuen and twentieth day we tooke the Sunne, being as farre flot as Lofoot, and had the latitude in fixtie nine degrees. And the same day in the atternoone appeared ouer

40. minutes.

our heads a Rain-bow, like a Semicircle, with both ends vpward. Note, that there is betweene the faid Roft Hands and Lofoot, a Whirle-poole called Malestrand, which from halfeebbe until strange whirle halte floud, maketh such a terrible noyse, that it shaketh the Rings in the doores of the Inhabi-60 tants Houses of the faid Ilands ten miles off. Also it there commeth any Whale within the current of the fame, they make a pittifull cry. Moreover, if great Trees be carryed into it by force of ffreames, and after with the ebbe be cast out againe, the ends and boughes of them have beene to beaten, that they are like the stalkes of Hempe that is bruized. Note, that all the Coast of

Finnarke is high Mountaynes and Hils, being couered all the yeare with Snow. And hard aboard the shoare of this Coast, there is one hundred, or one hundred and fiftie fathomes of water in depth. Thus proceeding and fayling forward, we fell with an Iland called Zenam, being in the Zenam Iland. latitude of feuentie degrees. About this Iland wee faw many Whales, very monfrous, about out flips, fome by estimation of fixtue foote long; and being the ingendring time they roared and cryed terribly. From thence we fell with an Hand, called Kettlewicke.

This Coast from Roft vnto Lofoot lyeth North and South, and from Lofoot to Zenam Northeast and South-west, and from Zenam to Kettelwicke, East North-east and West South-west. From the faid Kettelwicke we fayled East and by North ten leagues, and fell with a Land called

To Inger found, where we filled, being becaimed, and tooke great plentie of Cods. Thus plying a. Inger found. long the Coast, we fell with a Cape, called the North Cape, which is the Northermost Land The North that we palle in our Voyage to Saint Niebolas , and is in the latitude of feuencie one degrees Cape. and ten minutes, and is from Inger found East, and to the North-wards fifteene leagues. And being at this North Cape the fecond day of July, wee had the Sunne at North foure degrees abeing at this North Cape the record day of house the Horizon. The third day we came to Wardbouse, having such mists that we could not ward house. fee the Land. This Wardhouse is a Castle standing in an Iland two miles from the mayne of Finland, lubject to the King of Denmarke, and the Eattermost Land that he hath. There are two other llands nevre adjoying vnto that, whereon the Caffle of Wardboufe standeth. The Inhabitants of those three llands liue onely by fifting, and make much Stock-fifth, which they dry

them from other places. They have small store of Cattle, which are also fed with fish. From Cattellied W. ordbonfe we sayled South South-east ten leagues, and fell with a Cape of Land called Kegor, with tift. the Northermoit part of the Land of Lappia. And betweene Wardhouse, and the faid Cape is a great Bay, called Dommes haff, in the South part whereof is a Monaltery of Monkes of the The Monafter Ruffes Religion, called Pechinchon. Thus proceeding forward and fayling along the Coaft of rie of Pechinthe faid Land of Lappia, winding South-east, the fourth day through great mists and darknesse chow. we lost the company of the other three ships, and met not with them againe, vntill the seuenth day, when we fell with a Cape or head-land called Smetings, which is the entring into the Bay of Saint Nieholas. At this Cape lyeth a great fione, to the which the Barkes that paffed there-

30 by, were wont to make Offerings of Butter, Meale, and other Victuals, thinking that vnleffe they did so, their Barkes or Vessels should there perish, a sit hath beene oftentimes seene: and there it is very darke and mystie. Note, that the fixt day wee passed by the place where Sir Hugh Willoughby with all his company perished, which is called Araina reca, that is to fay, the River where

The Land of Lappin is an high Land, having from lying on it commonly all the yeere. The loughly was people of the Countrey are halfe Gentiles: they live in the Summer time neere the Sea fide, frozenand vie to take fift, of the which they make bread, and in the Winter they remove up into the Countrey into the Woods, where they vie hunting, and kill Deere, Beares, Wolues, Foxes, and other bealts, with whose flesh they be nourished, and with their skins apparelled in such strange

40 falhion, that there is nothing feene of them bare but their eyes. They have none other habita- The Lapping tion, but only in Tents, remouing from place to place, according to the feafon of the yeere. They covered all faknow no arte nor facultie, but onely flooting, which they exercise daily, as well men as woo ung their cies, men, and kill fuch beafts as ferue them for their food. Thus proceeding along the coast from Swetinoz aforesaid, the ninth day of July wee came to Cape Grace, being in the latitude of 66. degrees and 45. minutes, and is at the entring in of the Bay of Saint Nicolas. Aboard this Land there is twentie or thirtie fathoms water, and fundry grounds good to anchor in. The current at this Cape runneth South-west and North-east. From this Cape wee proceeded along The corrent at untill we came to Croffe Hand, which is feuen leagues from the faid Cape South-west : and from Cape Grace. this Iland, wee fet ouer to the other fide of the Bay, and went South-well, and fell with an

Head-land, called Foxenofe, which is from the faid Iland flue and twentie leagues. The entring The entring 50 of this Bay from Croffe Hand to the neerest Land on the other fide is feuen leagues ouer. From or the Bay of Foxense proceeding forward the twelfth day of the faid moneth of fully, all our four thipsarri, and had faited at the Road of Saint Nicolas; in the Land of Ruffles, where we anchored, and had found found for the fail of th fayled from London unto the faid Road seuen hundred and fiftie leagues. The Russian Ambasta-least. dour and his companie with great joy got to shoare, and our ships heere forthwith discharged themselves : and being laden againe, and having a faire winde, departed toward England the hrit of August. The third of the faid moneth I with other of my companie came vnto the Citie of August. Colmogro, being an hundred verifes from the Bay of Saint Nicolas, and in the latitude of 64. degrees 25. minutes. I tarried at the faid Colmogro vntill the fifteenth day : and then I departed

in a little Boat up the Ricer of Duina, which runneth very swiftly, and the selfe same day passed 60 by the mouth of a Riner called Pinego, leaving it on our left hand fitteene verites from Colmogro. Pinego Riner-On both fides of the mouth of this River Pinego is high Land, great Rockes of Alabafter, great Woods, and Fine-apple trees lying along within the ground, which by report have lyen there fince Noes thook, And thus proceeding forward the nineteenth day in the morning . I came in

The Towne of

to a Towne called Temps, an hundred verites from Colmogre. All this way along they make much Tarre, Pitch, and ashes of Aspen trees. From thence I came to a place called Offing, an ancient Citie, the lait day of August. At this Citie meet two Rivers: the one called Iug, and the other Sucana. both which fall into the aforefaid River of Duna. The River Ing hath his spring in the Land of the Tartars, called Cheremizzi, joyning to the Countrey of Permia: and Sucana hath his head from a Lake not farre from the Citie of Volegda. Thus departing from Ufling, and passing by the River Sucana, we came to a Towne called Totma. About this place the water is very thallow, and fronie, and troublesome for Barkes and Boats of that Countrey, which they call Nassades, and Dosneckes, to passe that way: wherein merchandise are transported from the

The description of their Naffades.

call Nasjades, and Deprecess, to parte that way: whether the scaled Nassades, are very long builded, to aforefand Colmogro to the Citie of Volegda. These vessels called Nassades, are very long builded, to broad made, and close aboue, flat bottomed, and draw not aboue foure foot water, and will carrie two hundred tunnes: they have no Iron appertayning to them but all of Timber, and when the winde serueth, they are made to sayle. Otherwise they have many men, some to hale and draw by the neckes with long small ropes made fast to the said Boats, and some set with long poles. There are many of these Barkes vpon the River of Duina: And the most part of them belongeth vnto the Citie of Vologda: for there dwell many Merchants, and they occupie the faid Boats with carrying of Salt from the Sea fide vnto the faid Vologda. The twentieth of September I came vnto Vologda, which is a great Citie, and the River paffeth through the midft of the same. The houses are builded with wood of Firre trees, joyned one with another, and of the lame. The modes are four fquare without any Iron or flone worke, courted with round without: the houles are four fquare without any Iron or flone worke, courted with 10 Birch barkes, and wood ouer the fame: Their Churches are all of wood, two for every Parith. one to be heated for Winter, and the other for Summer. On the tops of their houses they lay much earth, for feare of burning: for they are fore plagued with fire. This Volegda is in 50. degrees 11. minutes, and is from Colmogro, one thousand verstes.

December.

All the way I neuer came in house, but lodged in the Wildernesse, by the Rivers side, and care for Travellers, ried provision for the way. And he that will travell those wayes, must carrie with him an Harchet , a Tinder boxe, and a Kettle , to make fire and feethe meat, when he hath it : for there is small succour in those parts, vnlesse it be in Townes.

The first day of December, I departed from Vologda in poste in a Sled, as the manner is in Winter. And the way to Moscua is as followeth. From Vologda to Commelie, seuen and twentie verstes; fo to Olmer fine and twentie verstes, fo to Telepske twentie verstes, fo to Vrethir. 30 tie verstes, so to Volbanske thirtie verstes, then to Teraslane thirtie verstes, which standeth vpon the great River Volga, fo to Rollome fiftie verftes, then to Rogarin thirtie verftes, fo to Pera-Same ten verstes, which is a great Towne, standing hard by a faire Lake, From thence to Doub. nay thirtie verstes, so to Godoroke thirtie verstes, so to Onebay thirtie verstes, and last to the Mosco sine and twentie verstes, where I arrived the sixt day of December.

Emperour of

There are fourteene Posts called Tannes, betweene Vologda and Mosco, which are accounted fiue hundred verftes af under.

The tenth day of December, I was fent for to the Emperours Caftle by the faid Emperour. and deliuered my Letters vato the Secretarie, who talked with mee of diuers matters, by the 40 commandement of the Emperour. And after that my Letters were translated, I was answered that I was welcome, and that the Emperour would give mee that I defired.

The fine and twentieth day, being the day of the Natinitie, I came into the Emperours pre fence, and kiffed his hand, who fate aloft in a goodly Chaire of estate, having on his head Crowne most richly decked, and a staffe of Gold in his hand, all apparelled with Gold, and gar nished with Precious stones. There sate distant from him about two yards his Brother, and next vnto him a Boy of twelue yeeres of age, who was Inheritor to the Emperour of Cafan, conquered by this Emperour eight yeeres paff. Then fate his Nobilitie round about him, richly apparelled with Gold and stone. And after I had done obeyfance to the Emperour, he with his owne mouth calling me by my name, bade me to dinner, and fo I departed to my lodging till dinner time, which at fixe of the clocke, by Candle light.

Multipude of

The Emperour dined in a faire great Hall, in the midft whereof was a Pillar foure square, very artificially made, about which were divers Tables set, and at the uppermost part of the Hall fate the Emperour himfelfe, and at his Table fate his Brother, his Vncles fonne, the Metropolitan, the young Emperour of Casan, and divers of his Noblemen, all of one side. There were divers Embassadours, and other thrangers, as well Christians as Heathens, diversly apparelled, to the number of fixe hundred men, which dined in the faid Hall, befides two thousand Tartars, men of warre, which were newly come to render themselues to the Emperour, and were appointed to ferue him in his warres against the Lief-landers, but they dined in other Halls. I was set at a little Table, having no stranger with mee, directly before the Emperours face. Being 60 thus fet and placed, the Emperour fent mee divers bowles of Wine, and Meade, and many dishes of Meate from his owne hand, which were brought mee by a Duke, and my Table ferued all in Gold and Silver, and so likewise on other Tables, there were set bowles of Gold, set with Stone, worth by estimation 400. pounds sterling one cup, besides the Plate which served the tables.

There was also a Cupboord of Plate, most sumptuous and rich, which was not vied: among Rich femice. the which, was a piece of Gold of two yards long, wrought in the top with Towers, and Dragons beads, also divers barrels of Gold and Silver, with Cattles on the bungs, richly and artificially made. The Emperour, and all the Hall throughout was ferued with Dukes: and when dinner was ended, the Emperour called mee by name, and gaue me drinke with his owne hand. and fo I departed to my lodging. Note, that when the Emperour drinketh, all the companie fland vp, and at every time he drinketh, or tafteth of a dish of meate he blesseth himselfe. Many other things I faw that day, not here noted.

The fourth of Januarie, which was Twelf-tide with them, the Emperour, with his brother Twelfstide. 10 and all his Nobles, all most richly apparelled with Gold, Pearles, Precious stones, and coully Furres, with a Crowne vpon his head, of the Tartarian tashion, went to the Church in Procesfion, with the Metropolitan, and divers Bishops and Priests. That day I was before the Emperour againe in Russe apparell, and the Emperour asked if that were not I, and his Chancellour aniwered, yea. Then he bad me to dinner: then came hee out of the Church, and went with the Proceilion upon the River, being all frozen, and there standing bare-headed, with all his Nobles, there was a hole made in the Ice, and the Metropolitan hallowed the water with great Moles Rives folemnitie and feruice, and did cast of the faid water voon the Emperours sonne, and the Nobi- ballowed, litie. That done, the people with great thronging filled pots of the faid water to carrie home to their houses, and divers children were throwne in, and sicke people, and plucked out quickly a-

20 gaine, and divers Tarrars christned: all which the Emperour beheld. Also there were brought the Emperours best Horses, to drinke at the said hallowed water. All this being ended, hee re-Riner of holy turned to his Palace againe, and went to dinner by Candle light, and fate in a woodden house, water for horse very fairely gilt. There dined in the place, aboue three hundred frangers, and I fate alone as I and man, did before, directly before the Emperour, and had my Mear, Bread, and Drinke fent mee from

LIB. II.

The Citie of Mosco is great, the houses for the most part of wood, and some of stone, with Citie of Mosco. windowes of Iron, which serue for Summer time. There are many faire Churches of stone, but more of wood, which are made hot in the Winter time. The Emperours lodging is in a faire and large Castle, walled foure square of Bricke, high, and thicke, situated vpon an Hill, two 30 miles about, and the River on the South-west file of it, and it hath sixteene gates in the walls, and as many Bulwarkes. His Palace is separated from the rest of the Cassle, by a long wall going North and South, to the River fide. In his Palace are Churches, some of stone, and some of wood, with round Towres fairely gilded. In the Church doores, and within the Churches are Images of Gold : the chiefe Markets for all things are, within the faid Castle, and for fundry things fundry Markets, and enery science by in take. And in the Winter there is a great Market without the Callle, voon the River being frozen, and there is fold Corne, earthen Pots, Tubs, Sleda, &c. The Caltle is in circuit two thousand and nine hundred paces.

The Countrey is full of marish ground, and Playne, in Woods and Rivers abundant, but it The Countrie, bringeth forth good plentie of Corne. This Emperour is of great power : for he hath conquered 40 much, as well of the Lieflanders, Poles, Lettoes, and Smethers, as also of the Tarears, and Gensiles, called Samoeds, having thereby much inlarged his Dominions. Hee keepeth his people in great subjection : all matters passe his judgement, bee they never so small. The Law is sharpe for all

The Metropolitan dealeth in matters of Religion, as himselfo listeth, whom the Emperour The Metropogreatly honoureth. They wie the Ceremonies and Orders of the Greeke Church. They worship litan. many Images painted on Tables, and specially the Image of Saint Nicholas. Their Priests bee married, but their wives being dead, they may not marry the second time, and so become Monks, whereof there are a great number in the Land. They have foure Lents in the yeere,

and the weeke before Shrouetide, they call the Butter weeke, &c. 50 They have many forts of meats and drinks, when they banket and delight in eating of groffe Means and meates, and flinking fish. Before they drinke they vie to blow in the Cup : their greatest friend-drinker. ship is in drinking: they are great Talkers and Lyars, without any faith or trust in their words, Flatterers and Dislemblers. The Women be there very obedient to their Husbands, and are kept straightly from going abroad, but at some seasons.

At my being there, I heard men and women that drunke away their children, and all their Drunkennesse, goods at the Emperours Tauerne, and not being able to pay, having impawned himselfe, the Tauerner bringeth him out to the high way, and beats him wpon the legs : then they that paffe by, knowing the caule, and having peraduenture compassion upon him, give the money, and so hee is ransomed. In enery good Towne there is a drunken Tauerne, called a Cursemay, which the 60 Emperour sometime letteth out to farme, and sometimes bestoweth for a yeare or two on some Duke or Gentleman, in recompense of his service : and for that time hee is Lord of all the Towne, robbing and spoyling, and doing what pleaseth him: and then hee being growne rich, is taken by the Emperour, and fent to the warres againe: where hee shall spend all that which he hath gotten by ill meanes: so that the Emperour in his warres is lette charged, but all the

Saddlers.

burden lyeth upon the poore people. They vie faddles made of wood and finewes, with the tree gilded with damaske worke, and the feat couered with cloth, fometimes of gold, and the reft Saphian leather, well stitched. They vse little drummes at their saddle bowes, by the found whereof their hories vie to runne more iwiftly.

The Ruffe is apparelled in this manner : his vpper garment is of cloth of gold, filke, creloth. long, downe to the foot, and buttoned with great buttons of filuer, or elfe laces of filke, fet on with Brooches, the sleeues thereof very long, which he weareth on his arme, ruffed vp. Vnder that he hath another long garment, buttoned with filke buttons, with a high coller flanding vp of fome colour, and that garment is made straight. Then his shirt is very fine, and wrought with red filke, or forme gold, with a coller of pearle. Vnder his shirt lie hath linnen breeches, vpon his to legs, a paire of hole without feet, and his bootes of red or yellow leather. On his head hee weareth a white Colepeck, with buttons or filuer, gold, pearle, or stone, and voder it a black Fore cap, turned vp very broad. When he rideth on horse-back to the warres, or any journey, he hath a fword of the Tweish fashion, and his Bowe and Arrowes of the same manner. In the Towne he weareth no weapon, but onely two or three paire of kniues, having the hafts of the tooth of a Fith, called the Morfe.

In the Winter time, the people trauell with Sleds, in Towns and Country, the way being hard, and smooth with snow; the waters and Rivers are all frozen, and one horse with a Sled. will draw a man upon it four hundred miles in three dayes : but in the Summer time, the way is deepe with myre, and trauelling is very ill.

The Ruffe, if he be a man of any abilitie, neuer goeth out of his house in the winter, but your his Sled, and in fummer vpon his Horse: and in his Sled hesits vpon a Carpet, or a white Beares skin : the Sled is drawne with a Horse well decked, with many Foxes and Woolues tailes at his necke, and is conducted by a little boy vpon his backe : his ferunts stand vpon the taile of the Sled, &c.

ð. III.

Notes taken out of another mans Relation of the same Voyage, touching the Ruffian Rites.

N Christmasse day we were all willed to dine with the Emperors Maiessie, where for bread, meate, and drinke, we were ferued as at other times before : but for goodly and rich Plate, we never faw the like or to much before. There dined that day in the Emperors prefence aboue fine hundred strangers, and two hundred Ruffes, and all they were ferued in veffels of Gold, and that as much as could fland one by another vpon the Tables. Belides this, there were foure Cup-boards garnished with goodly Plate both of gold and filuer. Among the which there were twelve barrels of filuer, contaying about twelve gallons a piece, and at each end of every Barrell were fix hoopes of fine gold : this dinner conti-40

nued about fix houres. Euery yeere voon the twelfth day, they vie to bleffe or fanctifie the River Mojone, which of the River of runneth through the Citie of Mofco, after this manner. First, they make a square hole in the Ice about three farhoms large enery way, which is trimmed about the fides and edges with white boords. Then about nine of the clocke they come out of the Church with procession towards the

> First and foremost there goe certaine young men with waxe Tapers burning, and one carrying a creat Lanthorne : then follow certaine Banners, then the Croffe, then the Images of our Lady, of Saint Nicholas, and of other Saints, which Images men carry vpon their shoulders: after the Images follow certaine Priefts to the number of one hundred or more : after them the Metropo- 50 litan who is led betweene two Priefts, and after the Metropolitan came the Emperour with his Crowne voon his head, and after his Maiestie all his Noble men orderly. Thus they followed the Procession vnto the water, and when they came vnto the hole that was made, the Priests fet themselves in order round about it. And at one side of the same Poole there was a Scaffold of boords made, vpon which stood a faire Chaire in which the Metropolitan was fet . but the Empercurs Maiestie stood voon the Ice.

> After this the Priests began to fing, to blesse and to sense, and did their service, and so by that time that they had done, the water was holy, which being fanctified, the Metropolitan tooke a little thereof in his hands, and cast it on the Emperour, likewise vpon certaine of the Dukes, and then they returned agains to the Church with the Priests that fate about the water : but that prease that there was about the water when the Emperour was gone, was wonderfull to behold, 69 for there came about five thousand Pots to be filled of that water : for that Mosconite which hath no part of that water, thinks himselfe vnhappy. And very many went naked into the water, both Men and Women and Children : after the prease was a little gone, the Emperours Iennets

and Horses were brought to drinke of the same water, and likewise many other men brought their Horfes thither to drinke, and by that meanes they make their Horfes as holy as themselves. All these ceremonies being ended, we went to the Emperour to dinner, where we were served in veffels of filger, and in all other points as we had beene beforetime.

The Ruffer begin their Lent alwayes eight weeks before Eafter: the first weeks they cate Egs, The Ruffer Milke, Cheefe and Butter, and make great cheare with Pan-cakes, and fuch other things, one Lent. friend vifiting another, and from the fame Sunday watill our Shroue-funday, there are but few Rulles fober , but they are drunke day by day , and it is accounted for no reproach or fhame among them.

The next weeke being our first weeke in Lent, or our cleanling weeke, beginning our Shrousfunday, they make and keepe a great Fast. It is reported, and the people doe verily beleeue that the Metropolitan neither eateth nor drinketh any manner of thing for the space of feuen daves and they fay that there are many Religious men which doe the like. The Emperous Maiefise eateth but one morfell of bread, and drinketh but one draught of drinke once in the day during that weeke and all men that are of any reputation come not out of their houses during that time, so that the streets are almost voide of companie, saving a few poore folkes which wander to and fro. The other fixe weekes they keepe as we doe ours, but not one of them will cate either Butter, Cheefe, Egs, or Milke.

On Palme-funday they have a very folemne Procession, in this manner following. First, they Palme-funday haue a Tree of a good bigneffe which is made fast vpon two Sleds, as though it were growing Procession, there, and it is hanged with Apples, Raifins, Rigs, and Dates, and with many other fruits abundantly. In the midft of the same Tree stand sue Boyes in white vestures, which sing in the Tree, hefore the Procession : after this there followed certaine young men with Wax Tapers in their hands burning, and a great Lanthorne that all the light should not goe out: after them followed two with long Banners, and fixe with round plates fet vpon long states: the plates were of

Copper very full of holes, and thinne: then followed fixe, carrying painted images upon their fhoulders, after the Images followed certaine Priests, to the number of one hundred of more, with goodly vestures, whereof ten or twelue are of white Damaske, set and embroidered sound about with faire and orient Pearles, as greates Peafe, and among them certains Saphires and other 20 Rones. After them followed the one halfe of the Emperours Noblemen: then commeth the Em-

perours Maiestie and the Metropolitan, after this manner,

First, there is a Horse coursed with white linnen cloth downe to the ground, his eares being The Emperor made long wish the same cloth, like to an Affes eares. Voon this Horse the Metropolican fits lead the made long wises the same teach, same to the same tears. The teach the same teach field long like a woman; in his lappe hich a faire Booke, with a Crucifike of Gold-fmith the same worke upon the cour; which he holdesh faft with his left hand, and in his right hand he hath a critical teach the same teach teach the same teach teach teach the same teach teach teach the same teach Crosse of Gold, with which Crosse he ceaseth not to blesse the people as hee rideth. There are to the number of thirtie men which fpread abroad their garments before the Horfe; and as foone as the Horse is past ouer any of them, they take them vp againe and runne before, and faread them againe, fo that the Horse doch alway goe on some of them. They which spread 40 the garments are all Priests sonnes, and for their labours the Emperour giveth visto them

new garments.

20

One of the Emperours Noblemen leadeth the Horfe by the head, but the Emperour himfelfe going on foot , leadeth the Horfe by the end of the reyne of his Bridle with one of his hands, and in the other of his hands hee had a branch of a Palme tree : after this followed the reft of the Emperours Noblemen and Gentlemen, with a great number of other people. In this order they went from one Church to another within the Caftle, about the distance of two flight shot: and so returned againe to the Emperours Church , where they made an end of their service. Which being done, the Emperours Maiestie, and certaine of his Noblemen went to the Metropolitan his house to dinner, where of delicate fishes and good drinkes there was no lacke. The rest of shis weeke vntill Easter day they kept very solemnely, continuing in their houses for the 50 most part, and upon Munday or Thursday the Emperour doth alwaies vie to receive the Sacra-

Vpon Good-friday they continue all the day in contemplation and prayers, and they wie eucry yeere on Good-friday to let loofe a Prisoner in the flead of Barrabas. The night following they goe to the Church, where they sleepe vntill the next morning, and at Easter they have the Refurrection, and after enery of the Lents they eate flesh the next weeke following, Friday, Sa-

They have an order at Easter, which they alwaies observe, and that is this : every yeere against Easter to dye or colour red with Brazell a great number of Egges, of which every man and woman giveth one vnto the Priest of their Parish vpon Easter day in the morning. And 60 moreouer, the common people vie to carrie in their hands one of their red Egges, not onely vpon Easter day, but also three or foure dayes after, and Gentlemen and Gentlewomen have Egges gilded which they carrie in like manner. They vie it, as they fay, for a great loue, and in token of the Refurrection, whereof they reloyce. For when two friends meet during the Eafter holy

Church.

daves, they come and take one another by the hand : the one of them faith, the Lord or Christie rifen, the other answereth, it is fo of a truth, and then they kiffe and exchange their Egges both munand women, continuing in kiffing foure dayes together,

His Maiestie heareth all Complaints himselfe, and with his owne mouth giveth sentence and judgement of all matters, and that with expedition but Religious matters hee medleth no: withall, but referreth them wholly vnto the Metropolitane. His Majestie retayneth and well rewardeth all strangers that come to serue him, and especially men of Warre. He delighteth noe greatly in Hawking, Hunting, or any other pastime, nor in hearing Instruments or Musicke, her fetteth all his whole delight vpon two things: First, to serue God, as vndoubtedly hee is very deuout in his Religion, and the fecond, how to fubdue and conquer his enemies.

He hath abundance of Gold and Siluer in his owne hands or Treasurie: but the most part of his know not a Crowne from a Counter, nor Goldfrom Copper, they are fo much cumbred therewithall, and he that is worth two, three, or foure Grotes, is a rich man,

Mon1steries and Monker

Images.

They have both Monkes, Friers, and Nunnes, with a great number of great and rich Monasteries : they keepe great Hospitalitie, and doe releeve much poore people day by day. I have bin in one of the Monasteries called Troietes, which is walled about with Bricke very strongly like Castle, and much Ordnance of Brasse vpon the walls of the same. They told mee themselves that there are seuen hundred Brethren of them which belong vnto that House. The most part of the Lands, Townes, and Villages which are within fortie miles of it, belong vinto the fame. They shewed me the Church, wherein were as many Images as could hang about, or wpon the wals of the Church round about, and even the Roofe of the Church was painted full of Images.

The chiefe Image was of our Ladie, which was garnished with Gold, Rubies, Saphirs, and o. ther rich Stones abundantly. In the midft of the Church flood twelve Waxe Tapers of two vards long, and a fathome about in bignesse, and there stands a Kettle full of Waxe with about one hundred weight, wherein there is alwayes the wicke of a Candle burning, as it werea Lampe which goeth not out day nor night.

Mitacles.

They shewed mea Coffin coursed with Cloth of Gold, which stood voon one side within their Church, in which they told me lay a holy man, who never eate or dranke, and yet that he liueth. And they told me (luppoling that I had beleeved them) that he healeth many Difeafes. and giveth the blind their fight, with many other Miracles, but I was hard of beliefe, because I faw him worke no miracle whilft I was there: After this they brought me into their Sellers, and made me tafte of divers kinds of Drinkes,

Drinkes and

both Wine and Beere. Meade and Quaffie, of fundry colours and kinds. Such abundance of Drinke as they have in their Sellers. I doe suppose few Princes have more, or so much at once. Their Barrels or Veffels are of an vnmeasurable bignesse and size: some of them are three yards lone and more, and two yards and more broad in their heads: they contayne fixe or feuen tuns apiece: they have none in their Sellers of their owne making that are leffe then a tunne. They have nine or ten great vaultes which are full of those Barrels which are seldome removued : for they haue trunkes which come downe through the Roofe of the vaults in fundry places, through which they powredrinke downe, having the Caske right under it to receive the same, for it to should be a great trouble to bring it all downe the staires.

The Hospitali-

They give Bread, Meate, and Drinke vnto all men that come to them, not onely while they are at their Abbey, but also when they depart, to serue them by the way. There are a great number of fuch Monasteries in the Realme, and the Emperours Majette rideth oftentimes from one to another of them, and lyeth at them three or foure dayes together.

Monke Merchants.

The same Monkes are as great Merchants as any in the Land of Russia, and doe occupie buying and felling as much as any other men, and have Boates which palle to and fro in the Rivers with Merchandize from place to place where any of their Countrey doe traffique.

Dyerand Ap-

They eate no flesh during their liues as it is reported : but vpon Sunday, Munday, Tuesday, Thursday, and Saturday, it is lawfull for them to cate Egges, Butter, Cheefe, and Milke, and at 10 all times to eate fish, and after this fort they lead their lines. They weare all blacke Garments. and so doe none other in all the Land, but at that Abbey onely.

They have no Preachers, no not one in all the Land to instruct the people, so that there are Want of Press many, and the most part of the poore in the Countrey, who if one aske them how many Gods there be, they will fay a great many, meaning that every Image which they have is a God : for rance and Ido all the Countrey and the Emperours Majestie himselfe will blesse and bow, and Rnocke their heads before their Images, infomuch that they will cry earneftly vnto their Images to helpe them to the things which they need. Al men are bound by their Law to have those Images in their Houses, and ouer every gate in all their Townes and Cities are Images set up, unto which the people bow and bend, and knocke their heads against the ground before them: as often as they come by any Church or Croffe they doe in like manner. And when they come to any House, they bleffe themselues three or foure times before they will salute any man in the

They reckon and hold it for great finne to touch or handle any of their Images within the

CHAP. I. S 3. Priests, Sacraments, Baptisme, God-fathers and God-mothers. Circle of the board where the painting is, but they keepe them very daintily, and rich men deck

then ouer and about with Gold, Silver, and Stones, and hang them ouer and about with Gloth perfitition.

The Priests are marryed as other men are, and weare all their Garments as other men doe, Priests. except their Night-caps, which is cloth of tome fad colour, being round and reacheth vnto the eares; their crownes are shauen, but the rest of their haire they let grow, as long as Nature will permit, fo that it hangeth beneath their eares voon their shoulders : their Beards they never shaue; if his Wife happen to dye, it is not lawfull for him to marry againe during his life.

They minister the Communion with Bread and Wine after our order, but hee breaketh the Sacraments. 10 Bread and putterhit into the Cup vnto the Wine, and commonly some are partakers with them: and they take the Bread out againe with a Spoone together with part of the Wine, and so take it themselves, and give it to others that receive with them after the same manner. They will not permit any Nation but the Greekes to be buried in their facred Burials, or Church-yards, All their Churches are full of Images, vinto the which the people when they affemble, doe bow and knocke their heads, as I have before faid, that fome will have knoos you their fore-heads with knocking, as great as Egges. All their feruice is in the Ruffie Tongie, and they and the com- All their fermon people have no other Prayers but this, Ghospods lefus Christos efine voxe ponuloi nafbe. That wice is in their is to lay, O Lord Ielus Chrift, Sonot God have mercie vpon vs : and this is their Prayer, fo that Mother the mort part of the volearned know neither Pater Noffer, nor the Beliefe, nor Ten Comman-tongue. 20 dements, nor (carcely understand the one halfe of their Seruice which is read in their Churches.

When any child is borne, it is not baptized votill the next Sunday, and if it chance that it be not baptized then, it must tarry vntill the second Sunday after the birth, and it is lawfull for them to take as many God-fathers and God-mothers as they will, the more the better.

When they goe to the Church, the Mid-wife goeth foremost, carrying the Childe, and the Bantifine God-fathers and God-mothers follow into the midft of the Church, where there is a small Table readie let, and on it an Earthen Pot full of warme water, about the which the God-fathers and God-mothers, with the Childe, fertle themfelues : then the Clerke giveth vnto every of them a small Waxe Candle burning, then commets the Priest, and beginnets to say certaine words, which the God-tathers and God-mothers must answere word for word, among which

30 one is, that the Child shall forfake the Devill, and as that name is pronounced they must all ship at the word as often as it is repeated. Then he bleffeth the water which is in the Pot, and doth breathe ouer it : then he taketh all the Candles which the Goffips have, and holding them all in one hand letteth part of them drop into the water, and then giveth every one his Candle againe, and when the water is fanctified, he taketh the Child and holdeth it in a small Tub, and one of the God-fathers taketh the Pot with warme water, and powreth it all vpon the Childes head. After this he hath many more Ceremonies, as anounting Eares and Eyes with Spittle, and making certayne Croffes with Oyle vpon the backe, head, and breit of the Childe : then taking the Childe in his armes, carryeth it to the Images of Saint Nicholas, and our Ladie, &c. and fpea-

keth vnto the Images, defiring them to take charge of the Childe, that he may line, and believe 40 as a Christian man or woman ought to doe, with many other words. Then comming backe from the Images, he taketh a paire of sheares and clippeth the young and tender haires of the Childes head, in three or foure places, and then delivereth the Childe, whereunto every of the God-fathers and God-mothers lay a hand: then the Prieft chargeth them, that the Childe bee brought up in the faith and feare of God or Chrift, and that it be instructed to clinege, and bow to the Images, and to they make an end : then one of the God-fathers must hing a Crosse about the necke of the Childe, which hee must alwayes weare, for that Rolle which hath not a Crosse about his necke they efterme as no Christian man, and thereupon they fay that wee are no Christians, because we doe not weare Crosses as they doe.

Their Matrimonie is nothing folemnized, but rather in most points abominable, and as neere Of their 160so as I can learne, in this wife following.

First, when there is loue betweene the parties, the man sendeth voto the woman a small Cheft or Boxe, wherein is a Whip, Needles, Threed, Silke, Linnen Cloth, Sheares, and fuch necestaries as the shall occupie when the is a Wife, and perhaps sendeth therewithell Raisins, Figs, or fome such things, giving her to vinderstand, that if the doe offend, she must be beaten with the Whip, and by the Needles, Threed, Cloth, &c. that the should apply her selfe diligently to few, and doe such things as she could best doe, and by the Raisins or Fruits he meaneth if she doe well, no good thing shall bee with-drawne from her, nor bee too deare for her : and shee sendeth vnto him a Shirt, Hand-kerchers, and some such things of her owne making. And now to the effect. When they are agreed, and the day of Marriage appointed, when they shall goe towards the

60 Church, the Bride will in no wife confent to goe out of the House, but relifieth and ftriueth with them that would have her out, and fayneth her felfe to weepe, yet in the end, two women get her out, and lead her towards the Church, her face being couered close, because of her diffimulation, that it should not be openly perceived for shee maketh a great noyle, as though she were folding and weeping, untill fhe come at the Church, and then her face is voccouered. The

man commeth after among other of his friends, and they carrie with them to Church a great Pot of Wine or Meade: then the Priest coupleth them together much after our order, one promiling to loue and ferue the other during their lines together, &c. which being done, they be ginnne to drinke, and first the woman drinketh to the man, and when he hath drunke he letteth the cup fall to the ground, hafting immediately to tread upon it, and so doth she, and whether of the cap tail to the ground, must have the victorie and be Matter at all times after, which commonly happeneth to the man, for he is readiest to set his foot on it, because he letteth it fall himselfe. then they goe home againe, the womans face being vncouered. The Boyes in the streets cry out, and make a noyfe in the meane time, with very dishonest words.

When they come home, the Wife is fet at the vpper end of the Table, and the Husbandnext to which her: they fall then to drinking till they be all drunke, they perchance have a Minstell or two, and two naked men, which led her from the Church, dance naked a long time before all the company. When they are wearie of drinking, the Bride and the Bridegroome get them to Beel, for it is in the Euening alwayes when any of them are marryed: and when they are going to Bed, the Bridegroome putteth certayne Money, both Gold and Siluer, if he haue it, into one of his Boots, and then fitteth downe in the Chamber, croffing his legges, then the Bride muft pluck off one of his Boots, which she will, and if she happen on the Boot wherein the Money is, shee hath not onely the Money for her labour, but is also at such choice, as she need not ever from that day forth to pull off his Boots, but if thee miffe the Boot wherein the Money is, the doth not onely lole the Money, but is also bound from that day forwards to pull off his Boots 10

Then they continue in drinking and making good cheere three dayes following, being accompanied with certayne of their friends, and during the same three dayes, he is called a Duke. and the a Dutches, although they be very poore persons, and this is as much as I have learned of their Matrimony : but one common rule is amongst them, if the woman be not beaten with the Whip once 2 Weeke, she will not be good, and therefore they looke for it orderly, and the wemen fay, that if their Husbands did not beate them, they should not love them,

They vie to marry there very young, their Sonnes at fixteeene and eighteene yeares old, and the Daughters at twelue or thirteene yeares or younger: they vie to keepe their Wives very closely. I meane those that be of any reputation, so that a man shall not see one of them but at 30 a chance, when shee goeth to Church at Christmasse or at Easter, or else going to visit some of

The most part of the women vse to ride a-stride in Saddles with stirrops, as men doe, and some of them on Sleds, which in Summer is not commendable. The Husband is bound to find of Raffia paint the Wife colours to paint her with all, for they vie ordinarily to paint themselves: it is fucha common practice among them, that it is counted for no shame: they grease their faces with such colours, that a man may discerne them hanging on their faces almost a flight shoot off: I cannot so well liken them as to a Millers Wife, for they lookeas though they were beaten about the face with a bagge of Meale, but their Eye-browes they colour as blacke as leat. The best propertie that the women haue, is that they can fewe well, and imbroider with Silke and Gold 40

Of their Bu-

When any man or woman dyeth, they firetch him out, and put a new paire of shooes on his feet, because he hath a great Journey to goe : then doe they wind him in a sheet, as wee doe, but they forget not to put a testimonie in his right hand, which the Priest giueth him, to testifie vnto Saint Nieholas that he dyed a Christian man or woman. And they put the Corse alwayes in a Coffin of Wood, although the partie be very poore : and when they goe towards the Church, the Friends and Kinfmen of the partie departed carrie in their hands small Waxe Candles, and they weepe, and howle, and make much lamentation. They that bee hanged or beheaded, or such like, have no testimonie with them : how they are recived into Heaven, it is a wonder,

There are a great number of poore people among them which dye daily for lacke of sustenance, which is a pitifull case to behold : for there hath bin buried in a small time, within these two yeares, about eightie persons youg and old, which have dyed onely for lacke of suffenance. for if they had had straw and water enough, they would make shift to line : for a great many are forced in the Winter to dry straw and stampe it, and to make bread thereof, or at the least they Bread made of eate it in stead of bread. In the Summer they make good shift with grasse, herbes, and roots: barkes of Trees are good meat with them at all times. There is no people in the World, as I suppole, that live to miterably as doe the povertie in those parts: and the most part of them that have sufficient for themselves, and also to relieve others that need, are so vinmercifull that they care not how many they see dye of famine or hunger in the streets.

It is a Countrey full of Discases, divers, and evill, and the best remedie is for any of them, as they hold opinion, to goe often vnto the Hot-houses, as in a manner every man hath one of his owne, which he heateth commonly twice every weeke, and all the houshold tweat, and wash

The first and principall Meade is made of the juyce or liquor taken from a Berrie, called in I nearly and principals as a maruellous (weet tatte, and of a Carmolant colour, which Berrie I Divers for of Rolling, Malieno, which is of a maruellous (weet tatte, and of a Carmolant colour, which Berrie I of Rolling haue teene in Paris. The fecond Meade is called Vifnona, because it is made of a Berrie so called, Dinkes reand is like a blacke Gooseberrie; but it is like in colour and taste to the red Wine of France. The ported by The third Meade is called Amarodina or Smorodina, short, of a small Betrie much like to the small mas Bullo. Railin, and groweth in great plentie in Russia. The fourth Meade is called Cherennikma, which as made of the wild blacke Cherrie. The fift Meade is made of Honey and Water, with other mixtures. There is allo a delicate Drinke drawne from the Root of the Birch Tree, called in the Rulle Tongue Berozewites, which drinke the Noblemen and others vie in Aprill, May, and 10 June, which are the three moneths of the Spring-time : for after those moneths , the sap of the Tree dryeth, and then they cannot have it.

I have by me a Letter of Master Christopher Hoddesdon, written the seventeenth of November 1557, wherein he writes, that it feemes, there is no great puni hment for breaking their Region, fome of them aduenturing to eate Milke with him on a Faiting day, which yet others refused, Tarollally (so he cala the Towne where he writ) is fairer then Volga, the Riueralmost a mile broad : he was asked feuen Alines for a Sturgeon, he had given at Danike nine Mark-forace for a worfer : neither had he feene fuch abundance of Ling in England, as there of Sturgeons, there being in that dayes Market, about three thousand,

d. IIII.

The Voyage of Master ANTHONIE IENEINSON, made from the Citie of Mosco in Russia, to the Citie of Boghar in Bactria, in the yeare 1558. written by himselfe to the Merchants of London, of the Moscouie Company.

Hethree and twentieth day of Aprill, in the years 1558. (haning obtayined the Em Moleon 55.de" perour of Russia his Letters, directed vnto fundry Kings and Princes, by whose Domimont I thould raffed denarted from Massay was because with most of the denarted from Massay was because with most of the denarted from Massay was because with most of the denarted from Massay was because with most of the denarted from Massay was because with most of the denarted from Massay was because with most of the denarted from Massay was because with most of the denarted from Massay was been denoted by the denarted by the denoted by the mons I should passe) departed from Mose by water, having with mee two of your nutes. Smonts mount panely reparted from a growth was maning who me two or your Smonts transley. Rechard lobolity, and Rebart blooking, and a Tarrar Tolmach, with diuers parcels of Wares, as by the Inuentoric appeareth: and the eight and twentieth day wee came to a Towne, called Collow, diffant from the Mafcotwentie leagues, and paffing one league beyond the faid Collom, we came voto a River, called Occa, into the which the River Mosco falleth, and loseth his name: and passing downe the said River Ocea eight leagues, wee came vnto a Castle called Terrenettuke, which we lest vpon our right hand, and proceeding forward, the second day of May, wee came vinto another Castle, called Perollane, distant eight leagues, leaving it also on our right hand. The third day we came vnto the place where old Rp. Reg. n. 40 zanwas fituate, being now moit of it ruined and ouer-growne, and diffant from the faid Perg-

State, fixe leagues: the fourth day we pasted by a Castle, called Terreconia, from Rezan twelve leagues, and the fixt day we came to another Caftle, called Caffim, under the government of a caffin, Tartar Prince, named Utzar Zegoline, sometime Emperour of the worthy Citie of Cazan, and now subject vnto the Emperour of Russia. But leaving Cassim on our left hand, the eight day Moron. we came vnto a faire Towne, called Morom, from Coffin twentie leagues, where wee tooke the Sunne, and found the latitude fiftie fixe degrees: and proceeding forward the elementh day, wee came voto another faire Towne and Cattle, called Nofe Nonegrod, fituated at the falling of the Not Novegred. foresaid River Occa, into the worthy River of Volga, distant from the said Moron five and twentie leagues, in the latitude of fiftie fixe degrees eighteene minutes. From Rezan to this Nyfe 50 Nonegrod, on both files the faid River of Ocea, is ray fed the greatest store of Waxe and Honey Honey and

Exemption out in the time that the forefail $N_{f} \in \mathcal{N}$ more a virial the nunction flower in all the Land of R_{m} . We tarryed at the forefail $N_{f} \in \mathcal{N}$ more advantil the nunctionth day, was, for the comming of a Captaine which was fent by the Emperour to rule at Afracan, who being arrived, and having the number of five hundred great Boates under his conduct, someladen with Victuals, Souldiers, and Munition: and other some with Merchandize, departed altogether the fail nineteenth day from the faid Nyfe Nonogrod, and the two and twentieth wee came vnto a Cattle, called Vasiliagorod, dittant fine and twentie leagues, which wee left vpon our right hand. This Towne or Castle had his name of this Emperours Father, who was called Pasting, and Gored in the Russe Tongue is as much to lay, as a Castle, so that Pasting-vasting gered is to fay , Vafilm Callle : and it was the furthest place that the faid Emperour 6c conquered from the Tartars. But this present Emperour his Sonne, called Inan Vasilio wich, hath had great good fucceffe in his Warres, both against the Christians, and also the Mabomeiists, and Gentiles, but especially against the Tartars, inlarging his Empire even to the Cupian Sea, having conquered the famous River of Volga, with all the Countreyes thereabout

adjacent. Thus proceeding on our journey, the fine and twentieth day of May afore-fail,

The vnmercifulneffe of the Rulles toward the poore. Stoues or Baths visall with the Mof-

leasues from the River Cama, where is great fifthing for Sturgeon, to continuing our way vintill the two and twentieth day, and pailing by another great River called Samar, which falleth out The River of the aforesaid Countrey, and runneth through Nagay, and entreth into the faid River of Voles, or Samor. The eight and twentieth day we came vnto a great Hill, where was in times past a Castle made by the Crimmes, but now it is ruined, being the just mid-way betweene the fand Cazan and Afrachan, which is two hundred leagues or thereabout, in the latitude of one and fiftie degrees. frachus, which is two nundredleagues or thereacons, and the sacross of summer Root runnerth fortie feuen minutes. Vpon all this shoare groweth abundance of Licoris, whose Root runnerth Licoris in

Thus going forward, the fixt day of July we came to a place called Perouolog, fo named be- Perouolog. 10 cause in times past the Tartars carried their Boats from Volga, voto the River Tanais, otherwise Dus or Tanais. called Don, by Land, when they would rob fuch as passed downe the said Volga to Astracan, and also such as rassed downe by the River Tanais, to Afon, Casfa, or any other Towne situated vpon Mare Euxinum, into which Sea Tanais falleth, who lith his Springs in the Countrey ot the Rezen, out of a plaine ground. It is at this threight of Perouolog from the one River to the other, two leagues by Land, and is a dangerous place for Theeues and Robbers, but now it is not so euill as it hath beene by reason of the Emperour of Russia his Conquests.

Departing from Perouolog, hauing the Wildernesse on both sides, wee fawa great Heard of Nagarans pasturing, as is abouesaid, by estimation aboue a thousand Camels drawing of Cares with Houses upon them like Tents, of a strange fashion, seeming to bee afarre off a Towne:

20 that Herd was belonging to a great Murfe, cailed Smille, the greatest Prince in ail Nagay, who hath flaine and driven away all the rest, not sparing his owne Brechen and Children, and hauing peace with this Emperour of Ruffia, hee hath what hee needeth, and ruleth alone : to that now the Russes live in peace with the Nagayans, who were wont to have mortall Warres

The fourteenth day of July passing by an old Castle, which was Old Astracan, and leaving it vpon our right hand, we arrived at New Afracan, which this Emperour of Rollin conquered fixe yeares paft, in the yeare 1552. It is from the Moseo votto Afracan fixe hundred leagues, or Afracan thereabout. The Towne of Astracan is fituated in an Iland vpon a Hill fide, hauing a Castle

within the fame, walled about with Earth and Timber, neither faire nor firong: The Towne is 30 also walled about with Earth: the Buildings and Houses (except it be the Captaines Lodging, and certaine other Gentlemens) most base & simple. The Ilanu is most destitute and barren of wood and pailure, and the ground will beare no Corne : the A re is there most insected, by reason (as I Store of Store fuppose) of much fish, and specially Sturgeon, by which onely the Inhabitants live, having geons, & Byess great scarlitie of slesh and bread. They hang up their fish in their streets and Houses to dry for their prouision, which causeth such abundance of flyes to increase there, as the like was never feene in any Land, to their great Plague. And at my beeing at the faid Afracan, there was a great Famine and Plague among the people, and specially among the Tartars, called Nagarans. who the same time came thither in great numbers to render themselves to the Ruffer their Enc-

mies, and to feeke succour at their hands, their Countrey being destroyed, as I said before : but 40 they were but ill entertayned or releeued, for there dyed a great number of them for hunger, which lay all the Hand through in heapesdead, and like to beafts viburied, very pittifull to behold : many of them were also sold by the Ruffer, and the rest were banished from the Iland. At that time it had beene an easie thing to have converted that wicked Nation to the Christian Fith, if the Ruffes themiclaes had been good Christians: but how should they shew compassion vnto other Nations, when they are not mercifull vnto their owner At my being there I could haue bought many goodly Tartars Children, if I would have had a thousand, of their owne Fahaue bought many goosty tartars continues, it was a loafe of bread worth fixe pence in England, there and Mothers, to fay, a Boy or a Wench for a Loafe of bread worth fixe pence in England, Miresible Fabut we had more need of victuals at that time then of any such Merchandize. This Afracan is the furthest h.ld that this Emperour of Russia hath conquered of the Tartars towards the Ca-

56 frien Sea, which he keepeth very strong, sending thither energy years promision of men, and vi-There is a certayne Trade of Merchandize there yied, but as yet fo finall and beggeily, that it is not worth the making mention, and yet there come Merchants thather from divers places. The chiefest Commodities that the Russes bring thither are red Hides, red sheeps skinnes, woo iden Vessels, Bridles, and Saddles, Knives, and other Trifles, with Corne, Bacon, and other Vi-Stuals. The Tartars bring thither divers kinds of Wares made of Cotton Wooll, with divers kinds of wrought Silkes and they that come out of Perfia, namely, from Shamsely, doe bring fewing Silke, which is the courseft that they vie in Ruffeland, Craft, divers kinds of pide Silkes for Girdles, Shirts of Male, Bowes, Swords, and fuch like thing: and some yeares Corne, and

6c Wal-nuts, but all fuch things in fuch small quantitie, the Merchants being to begge. Iv and proce that bring the same, that it is not worth the writing, neither is there any hope of Trade in all

This forestard stand of Astracan is in length twelste leagues, and in breadth three, and ly the East and West in the latitude of fortie some degrees, nine minutes; we tarred there would the

we came to another Cattle called Sabonfbare, which wee left on our right hand, diffant from Valiliagorod, fixteene leagues. The Countrey hereabout is called Mordonits, and the Habitante did protesse the Law of the Gentiles: but now beeing conquered by this Emperour of Russia most of them are christened, but lye in the Woods and Wildernesse, without Towner Ha

Surgarho. Caran ftinds in

The feuen and twentieth day we passed by another Castle, called Smyasko, distant from Shabon. Bare aforelaid, twentie fiue leagues : we left it on our right hand, and the nine and twentierh Extantination (came vinto an Iland one league from the Citie of Cazan, from which falleth downe a River called Cazankareca, and entreth into the forefaid Volga. Cazan is a faire Towne after the Ruffe or Tartar fashion, with a strong Castle situated upon a high Hill, and was walled round about with 10 Timber and Earth, but now the Emperour of Ruffia hath given order to pluckedowne the olde wals, and to build them againe of free stone. It hath beene a Citie of great Wealth and Riches. and being in the hands of the Tariars, it was a Kingdome of it felfe, and did more vexe the Ruc. les in their Warres, then any other Nation : but nine yeares past, this Emperour of Rallia conquered it, and tooke the King caprine, who being but young is now baptized, and brought voin his Court with two other Princes, which were also Kings of the said Cazan, and being each of them in time of their Raignes in danger of their Subiects through civill discord, came and rendred themselues at severall times vnto the said Emperour, so that at this present there are three Princes in the Court of Russia, which hadbeene Emperours of the faid Cazar, whom the Emperour vieth with great honour.

We remayned at Cazan till the thirteenth day of June, and then departed from thence : and

the same day pailed by an Iland called the Iland of Merchants, because it was wont to be a place

where all Merchants, as well Ruffes and Cazanites, as Nagayans and Crimmes, and diversother Nations did refort to keepe Mart for buying and felling, but now it is forfaken, and standeth

without any fuch refort thither, or at Canan, or at any place about it, from Mofce vnto Mare Thus proceeding forward, the fourteenth day we paffed by a goodly river called Cama, which The River of we left on our left hand. This River falleth out of the Countrey of Permis into the River of

Vachen.

The lland of

Volga, and is from Cazan fifteene leagues: and the Countrey lying betwixt the faid Cazan, and the faid River Cama on the lett hand of Volga is called Vachen, and the Inhabitants bee Gentiles, 10 and live in the Wilderneffe without House or Habitation: and the Countrey on the other fide of Volga, ouer against the faid River Cama, is called the Land of Cheremizes, halfe Gentiles, halfe Taxars, and all the Land on the left hand of the faid Volga, from the faid River vnto Aitraca, and so following the North and North-east side of the Caspian Sea, to a Land of the Tarters

Hords.

Mangat or Na. called Turkemen, is called the Countrey of Mangat or Nagar, whole Inhabitants are of the Law of Mahomet, and were all destroyed in the yeare 15,8. at my beeing at Astracan, through Ciuill Warres among them, accompanied with Famine, Pettilence, and such Plagues, in such fort that in the faid yeare there were confumed of the people, in one fortand another, aboue one hundred thousand : the like Plague was never seene in those parts, so that the said Countrey of Nagay, being a Countrey of great Paffure, remayneth now vnreplenished to the great conten- an tation of the Ruffes, who have had cruell Warres a long time together.

The Nagayaus when they flourished, lived in this manner: they were divided into divers

companies called Hords, and every Hord had a Ruler, whom they obeyed as their King, and was called a Murfe. Towne or Houfe they had none, but lived in the open fields, every Murfe or King having his Hords or people about him, with their Wives, Children, and Cattell, who having confumed the Pasture in one place, remoued onto another; and when they remooue they have Houses like Tents set upon Waggons or Carts, which are drawne from place to place with Camels, and therein their Wines, Children, and all their Riches, which is very little, is carried about, and every man hath at the leaft foure or five Wives belides Concubines. Vie of money they have none, but doe barter their Cattell for apparell and other necessaries. They delight in 10 no Art nor Science, except the Warres, wherein they are expert, but for the most part they bee pasturing people, and have great store of Cattell, which is all their Riches. They eate much fielh. and especially the Horse, and they drinke Mares Milke, wherewith they be oftentimes drunke: they are feditious and inclined to Theft and Murther. Corne they fow not, neither doe eate any Bread, mocking the Christians for the same, and disabling our strengths, saying, wee line by eating the top of a Weed, and drinke a Drinke made of the fame, allowing their great denouring of flelh, and drinking of Milke to be the increase of their strength. But now to proceed forward

The Crinme

All the Countrey upon our right hand the River Volga, from over against the River Cama unto the Towne of Astracan, is the Land of Crimme, whose Inhabitants bee also of the Law of 60 Mahomet, and live for the most part according to the fashions of the Nagares, having continual Warres with the Emperour of Ruffia, and are valuant in the field, having countenance, and support from the great Turke.

The fixteenth day of June we passed by certayne Fishermens Houses, called Peronse, twentie

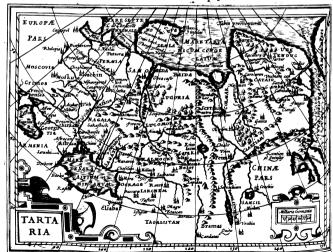
fixt day of August, and having bought and provided a Boate in company with certaine Tartars and Perfians, wee laded our goods and imbarked our felues, and the fame day depart Theventerin. ted I, with the faid two lohnfons, having the whole charge of the Navigation downe the to the Cashian faid River Volga, beeing very crooked, and full of flats toward the mouth thereof. Wee entred into the Caspian Sea the tenth day of August at the Easterly side of the said River, being twentie leagues from Astracan aforelaid, in the latitude of fortie fixe degrees, twentie

Volga.

Volsa hath feuentie mouthes or fals into the Sea: and we having a large wind, kept the Northeast shoare, and the eleventh day we sayled seven leagues East North-east, and came vnto an Hand having an high Hill therein, called Accurgar, a good Marke in the Sca. From thence to East ten leagues, we fell with another Iland, called Bambieta, much higher then the other. Within thefe two Ilands to the Northwards, is a great Bay called the Blue Sea. From thence wee fayled East and by North ten leagues, and having a contrary wind, wee came to an Anchorina fathome water, and fo rid vntill the fifteenth day, having a great fforme at South-east, being a most contrary wind, which we rid out. Then the wind came to the North, and wee weighed, and fet our course South-east, and that day fayled eight leagues.

Thus proceding forwards, the feuenteenth day we loft light of Land, and the fame day fayled thirtie leagues, and the eighteenth day twentie leagues winding East, and fell with a Land Brugblesta be- called Bangbleata, being senentie four eleagues from the mouth of the said Volga, in the latitude ing 74. eagues of fortie fixe degrees fiftie foure minutes, the Coast lying neerest East and by South, and West 20 and by North. At the point of this lland lyeth buried a holy Prophet, as the Tartars call him, of their Law, where great denotion is vied of all fuch Mahometiffs as doe paffe that way.

HONDIVS bis Map of Tartaria.



CHAP.I.S.4. River laic. Azi an holy Tartar. Manguflaue Port.

The nineteenth day the winde being West, and wee winding East South-east, we sayled ten leagues, and passed by a great River called Iaic, which hath his spring in the Land of Siberia, Iaic River. nigh vnto the forefaid River Cama, and runneth through the Land of Nagar, falling into this Mare Caspinen. And up this River one dayes journey is a Towne called Serachicke, libitect Setachicke to the forelaid Tartar Prince , called Murfe Smille , which is now in friendship with the Emperour of Russia. Heere is no trade of merchandife vied, for that the people have no vie of money, and are all Men of warre, and Pallurers of cattell, and given much to theft and murcher. Thus being at an anchor against this River laie, and all our men being on Land, saving I, who lay fore ficke, and fine Tarrars, whereof one was reputed a holy man, because hee came from

10 Mecca, there came vnto vs a Boat with thirtie men well armed and appointed, who boorded vs. and began to enter into our Barke, and our holy Tartar, called Azy, perceiving that, asked them what they would have, and withall made a prayer: with that these Rouers stayed, declaring that they were Gentlemen, banished from their Countrey, and out of living, and came to iee if there were any Ruffes, or other Christians (which they call Caphars) in our Barke: To whom this Asi most stoutly answered, that there were none, anowing the same by great oaths of their Law, (which lightly they will not breake) whom the Rouers beleeved, and youn his words departed. And so through the fidelitie of that Tartar, I with all my companie and goods were faued, and our men being come on boord, and the wind faire, we departed from that place, and winding East and South-east, that day being the twentieth of August failed fixteene leagues.

The one and twentieth day we passed ouer a Bay of sixe leagues broad, and fell with a Cape of Land, having two Hands at the South-east part thereof, being a good marke in the Sea : and doubling the Cape the Land trended North-east, and maketh another Bay, into which falleth the greater River Tem, springing out of the Land of Colmack. The two and twentieth, three and twentieth, and foure and twentieth dayes, we were at anchor. The five and twentieth, the winde came faire, and we fayled that day twentie leagues, and paffed by an lland of loweland, and thereabout are many flats and fands: and to the Northward of this Iland there goeth in a great Bay, but we fet off from this Iland, and winded South to come into deepe water, being much troubled with shoalds and flats, and ranne that course ten leagues, then East South-east. twentie leagues, and fell with the maine Land, being full of copped Hills, and passing along the

30 coast twentie leagues, the further we sayled, the higher was the Land.

The feuen and twentieth day we croffed ouer a Bay, the South shoare being the higher Land, and tell with a high point of Land: and being ouerthwart the Cape, there role such a storme at the East, that we thought verily we should have perished: this storme continued three dayes. From this Cape we passed to a Port called Manguslaue. The place where we should have arriued at the Southermost part of the Cafpian Sea , is twelve leagues within a Bay : but we being Mangullane. fore tormented and toffed with this forefaid ftorme, were driven vnto another Land on the other fide the Bay, ouerthwart the faid Mangustuse being very lowe Land, and a place as well for the ill commoditie of the Hauen, as of those brute field people, where neuer Barke nor Boat had before arrived, not liked of vs.

40 But yet there we sent certaine of our men to Land to talke with the Gouernour and People. as well for our good viage at their hands, as also for prouision of Camels to carrie our goods from the faid Sea fide to a place called Sellyzare, being from the place of our landing fine and twentie dayes journey. Our Mellengers returned with comfortable words and faire promifes

Wherefore the third day of September 1558, we discharged our Barke, and I with my companie were gently entertayned of the Prince, and of his people. But before our departure from land thence, we found them to bee a very bad and brutish people, for they ceased not daily to molest vs, either by fighting, flealing or begging, rayling the price of Horle, and Camels, and Victuals, double that it was wont there to be, and forced vo to buy the water that we drinke : which 50 caused ws to hasten away, and to conclude with them as well for the hire of Camels, as for the

price of such as wee bought, with other proussion, according to their owne demand: So that for every Camels lading, being but foure hundred weight of ours, we agreed to give three Hides of Raffia, and foure wooden dithes, and to the Prince or Gouernour of the faid people one ninth, and two feuenths: namely, nine feuerall things, and twice feuen feuerall things: for money they vie none.

And thus being ready, the fourteenth of September we departed from that place, being a Carauan of a thousand Camels. And having travelled five dayes journey, wee came to another Princes Dominion, and vpon the way there came vnto vs certaine Tartars on horiebacke, being wellarmed, and feruants vnto the faid Prince called Timor Sultan, Governour of the faid Coun-60 trey of Mangustase, where were meant to have arrived and discharged our Barke, if the great florme aforetaid had not disappointed. Their foods of the great of Mangustase or Mangustase. forme aforefaid had not disappointed. These aforesaid Tartars stayed our Caranan in the name it stands in of their Prince, and opened our Wares, and tooke fich things as they thought best for their 45. faid Prince without money, but for such things as they tooke from mee, which was a ninth (after much diffention) I rode vnto the same Prince, and presented my selte before him , requesting

his fanour, and Pasport to trauell thorow his Countrey, and not to be rollbed or spoyled of his people: Which request he granted me, and entertayned me very gently, commanding me to be well feasted with flesh and Mares milke: for Bread they vie none, nor other drinks except was ter: but money he had none to give me for fuch things as he tooke of me, which might be of value in Russe money, fifteene Rubbles, but hee gaue mee his Letter, and a Horse worth seuen Rubbles. And fo I departed from him being glad that I was gone: for he was reported to bee a very tyrant, and if I had not gone vnto him, I vnderstood his commandement was, that I should haue beene robbed and deftroved.

This Sultan lived in the fields without Castle or Towne, and sate, at my being with him, in a little round house made of reeds covered without with Felt, and within with Carpets. There was with him the great Metropolitan of that wilde Country, effeemed of the people, as the Bishop of Rome is in most parts of Europe, with divers other of his chiefe men. The Sultan with this Metropolitan demanded of mee many questions, as well touching our Kingdomes, Lawes, and Religion, as also the cause of my comming into those parcs, with my further pretence. To whom I answered concerning all things, as ynto me seemed best, which they tooke in good part. So having leave I departed, and overtooke our Caravan, and proceeding on our Twentie dayes in good part of nature to the transfer of the without feeing Town to the See fide without feeing Town or habitation, carrying provision of victuals with vs for the same time, and were drinen by necefficie to ease one of my Camels and a Horse for our part, as other did the like: and during the faid twentie dayes we found no water, but fuch as we drew our of old deepe Wells, being very on brackish and salt, and yet somtimes passed two or three dayes without the same. And the fire day Another Guire of October enfuing, we came vnto a Gulfe of the Calpian Sea againe, where we found the water very fresh and tweet: at this Gulte the Customers of the King of Turkeman met vs. who tooke cultome of enery fine and twentie one, and fenen ninths for the faid King and his brethren,

which being received they departed, and we remayned there a day after to refresh our selves. Note, that in times past there did fall into this Gulfe the great River Oxin, which hath his fprings in the Mountaines of Paraponifus in India, and now commeth not fo fa-re, but falleth in-Will de Rubricis to another River, called Ardock, which runneth toward the North, and confimeth himselfe in de cribeth this the ground, patting under the ground aboue fine hundred miles, and then issueth out agains and Riu: t of Ardok, falleth into the Lake of Kuhay.

w::h fearlitie

o: water.

We having refreshed our felues at the foresaid Gulse, departed thence the fourth day of Octo-Sellique, or ber, and the feuenth day arrived at a Cattle, called Sellizure, where the King, called Azim Can. remayined with three other of his brethren, and the ninth day I was commanded to come before his presence, to whom I delivered the Emperours Letters of Russia: and I also gave him a Prefent of a ninth, who entertayned me very well, and caused me to cate in his presence as his brethren did, feaffing me with fiesh of a wilde Horse, and Mares milke without Bread. And the next day he fent for me againe, and asked of me divers questions, as well touching the affaires of the Emperour of Ruffia, as of our Countrey and Lawis, to which I answered as I thought Letters of fafe good: fo that at my departure he gaue mee his Letters of fafe conduct.

This Calle of Sellizure is ituated upon an high H Il, where the King called the Can lieth, 40 whose Palace is built of earth very basely, and not strong: the people are but poore, and have little trade of merchandise among them. The South part of this Ca'lle is low land, but very fruitfull, where growe many good fruits, among which there is one called a Dynie, of a great bigneffe. and full of morfture, which the people doe eate after meate in stead of drinke. Also there growes another fruit, called a Carbufe, of the bignesse of a great Cucumber, yellow, and fiveet as Sugar: alio a certaine Corne, called legar, whole stalke is much like a Sugar cane, and as high, and the Grane like Rice, which groweth at the top of the cane like a cluster of Grapes; the water that ferueth all that Country is drawne by disches out of the River Oxus, vnto the great deftruction of the faid River, for which cause it falleth not into the Caspian Sea, as it hath done in times part, and in short time all that Land is like to be destroyed, and to become a Wildernesse 50 for want of water, when the River of Oxus shall faile.

The fourteenth day of the moneth wee departed from this Castle of Sellizure, and the fix-Vigence, in 42. teenth of the same wee arrived it a Citie called Orgence, where we payed Custome as well for deg. 18. min. our owne heads, as for our Camels and Hories. And having there forourned one moneth, attending the time of our further travel!, the King of that Countrev calle! Aly Sultan, brother to the fore-named Azym Can, returned from a Towne called Corafan, within the borders of Persia, which he lately had co. quered from the Persians, with whom hee and the rest of the Kines of Terraria have continuall warres. Before this King alfo I was commanded to come, to whom I likewise presented the Emperours Letters of Russia and he entertayeed me well and demanded of me divers questions, and at my departure gave me his Letters of fafe conduct.

This Citie or Towne of Vrgence standeth in a plaine ground, with walls of the earth, by esti- 60 mation foure miles about it. The buildings within it are also of earth, but ruined a dout of good order: it hath one long street that is covered above, which is the place of their Market, It hath beene wonne and loft foure times within fenen yeeres by civil warres, by meanes whereof there

are but few Merchants in it, and they very poore, and in all that Towne I could not fell about foure Kerfeys. The chiefest commodities there fold are fuch wares as come from Booker, and cut of Persia, but in most small quantitie not worth the writing. All the Land from the Castian Sea to this Citic of Orgence, is called the Land of Turkeman, and is subject to the faid Azim The Country Can, and his brethren which bee fiue in number, and one of them hath the name of the chiefe of Tattemen. King called (an, but he is little obeyed fauing in his owne Dominion, and where hee dwellethe for enery one will be King of his owne portion, and one brother feeketh alwaies to destroy another, having no naturall love among them, by reason that they are begotten of divers women. and commonly they are the children of flaues, either Christians or Gentiles, which the father to doth keepe as Concubines, and every Can or Sultan hath at the least foure or five wives besides young maidens and boyes, living most viciously: and when there are warres betwixt these bre-

CHAP.I.S.4. Vigence. Viciow living. Huge Sheepe, Rovers and theeves.

thren, (as they are feldome without) he that is ouercome if hee be not flaine, fleeth to the field with such companie of men as will follow him, and there liueth in the Wilderneffe, reforting to watering places, and so robbeth and spoyleth as many Carauans of Merchants and others, as they be able to our rome, continuing in this fort his wicked life, vneill fuch time as he may get power and aide to inuade some of his brethren againe. From the Caspian Sea vnto the Castle of Sellizare aforelaid, and all the Countries about the faid Sea, the people line without Towne or habitation in the wilde fields, remoouing from one place to another in great companies with their Cattell, whereof they have great store, as Camels, Horses, and Sheepe both tame and 20 wilde. Their sheepe are of great stature with great buttockes, weighing sixtie or eightie pound in weight. There are many wilde Horses which the Tartars doe many times kill with their Hawkes, and that in this order. The Hawkes are lured to feize upon the beafts neckes or heads, which with chafing of them-

felues, and fore beating of the Hawkes are tyred: then the Hunterr following his game doth flay the Horse with his Arrow or Sword. In all this Land there groweth no graffe, but a certaine brush or heath, whereon the Cattell feeding become very fat.

The Tartars neuer ride without their Bowe, Arrowes, and Sword, although it bee on hawking, or at any other pleafure, and they are good Archers both on horse-backe, and on foot also. There people haue not vie of Gold, Siluer, or any other coyne, but when they lacke apparell or other necessaries, they barter their Cattell for the same. Bread they have none, for they nei-30 ther till nor fowe: they be great denourers of fielh, which they cut in small pieces, and eate it by handfuls most greedily, and especially the Horse flesh. Their chiefest drinke is Mares milke fowred, as I have faid before of the Nagayans, and they will bee drunke with the fame. They haue no Riuers nor places of water in this Countrey, vntill you come to the foresaid Gulfe, distant from the place of our landing twentie dayes journey, except it bee in Wells, the water whereof is laltish, and yet distant the one from the other two dayes journey and more. They eate their meate voon the ground, fitting with their legs double vider them, and so also when they pray. Arte or Science they have none, but live most idlely, sitting round in great companies in the fields, deuising, and talking most vainely.

They fixe and twentieth day of Nouember, wee departed from the Towne of Vrgence, and The River of hauing trauelled by the Riuer Oxus one hundred miles, wee passed ouer another great Riuer, Ardocefalleth called Ardocke, where wee payed a certaine petie custome. This River Ardocke is great, and into the Lake very fwift, falling out of the forelaid Oxus, and paffing about one thousand mile to the North- of Kitag. ward, it then consume that selfe in the ground, and passing vinder the same about five hundred miles, issueth out againe, and falleth into the Lake of Kitay, as I have before declared.

The feuenth of December following, we arrived at a Castle called Kair, Subject to a Sulian The Castle of called Saramet Sultan, who meant to have robbed all the Christians in the Caravan, had it not Kest. beene for feare of his brother the King of Vrgence, as we were informed by one of his chiefeft Counsellours, who willed vs to make him a present, which he tooke, and deliuered : besides, so wee payed at the faid Caille for Custome, of every Camell one red hide of Russia, besides petie gifts to his Officers.

Thus proceeding in our journey, the tenth day at night being at rest, and our watch set, there came vnto vs foure Horlemen, which we tooke as Spies, from whom we tooke their weapons, and bound them, and having well examined them, they confessed that they had seene the tract of many Horsemen, and no footing of Camels, and gaue vs to vnderstand, that there were Rouers and theeues abroad: for there trauell few people that are true and peaceable in that Countrey, but in companie of Carauan, where there be many Camels: and Horse-feeting new without Camels were to be doubted. Whereupon we consulted and determined amongst our schoes, and fent a Poste to the said Sulsan of Kaite, who immediatly came himselfe with three hundred

60 men, and met these source suspected men which wee sent vnto him, and examined them so straightly, and threatned them in such fort, that they confessed, there was a banished Prince with fortie men three dayes journey forward, who lay in wait to destroy vs, if hee could, and that they themselves were of his companie.

The Sultan therefore vinderstanding, that the Theenes were not many, appointed vs eightie

men well armed with a Captaine to goe with vs, and conduct vs in our way. And the Sultan himselfe returned backe again, taking the foure theenes with him. Thefe fouldiers trauelled with vs two dayes, confuming much of our victuals. And the third day in the morning very early they let out before our Carauan, and having ranged the wildernesse for the space of four hours. they met vs, comming towards vs as fast as their horse could runne, and declared that they had round the tract of hories not farre from vs, perceiving well that wee should meete with enemies. and therefore willed vs to appoint our felues for them, and asked vs what wee would give them to conduct vs further, or elle they would returne. To whom wee offered as we thought good. but they refused our offer, and would have more, and so wee not agreeing they departed from but they refuted our offer, and would make more, and to wee and egreening may departed from ves, and went backe to their Sultan, who (as wee confectured) was printe to the confeptitation, and went backet to their Sultan, who is a supersimple selled body went described by the sultandard by the sultan But they being gone, certaine Tartars of our companie called holy men, (because they had been at Mecca) cauled the whole Carauan to flay, and would make their prayers, and divine how we should prosper in our journey, and whether wee should meet with any ill companie or no: To which, our whole Carauan did agree. And they tooke certaine sheepe and killed them and

tooke the blade bones of the same, and first sod them, and then burnt them, and tooke of the

bloud of the field sheepe, and mingled it with the powder of the said bones, and wrote certaine

Characters with the faid bload, vfing many other ceremonics and words, and by the famedia

uined and found, that wee should meere with enemies and theenes (to our great trouble) but

fhould ouercome them, to which forcerie, I and my companie gaue no credit, but wee found it

day of December, in the morning, wee escryed farre off divers horsemen which made towards

true : for within three houres after that the fouldiers departed from vs, which was the fifteenth 10

Fight with

vs, and we (perceiving them to bee rouers) gathered our felues together, being fortie of vs well appointed, and able to fight, and wee made our prayers together every one after his Law, profeiling to live and dye one with another, and to prepared our felues. When the theeues were nigh vnto vs, wee perceiued them to be in number thirtie feuen men well armed, and appointed with bowes, arrowes, and swords, and the Captaine a Prince banished from his Country. They willed vs to yeeld our feines, or elfe to bee flaine, but wee defied them, wherewith they shot at vs all at once, and we at them very hotly, and so continued our fight from morning vntill two houres within night, divers men, horfes and camels being wounded and flaine on both parts: Hand-gunsve- and had it not beene for foure hand-guns, which I and my companie had and vfed, wee had 30 ryprofitable. beene ouercome and deltroyed : for the theeues were better armed, and were also better Archers

then wee; But after we had flaine divers of their men and hor es with our Guns, they durft not approach so nigh, which caused them to come to a truce with vs vntill the next morning, which wee accepted, and encamped our felues vpon a hill, and made the fashion of a Cassle, walling it about with packes of wares, and layd our Horses and Camels within the same, to saue them from the shot of arrowes : and the theeues also incamped within an arrow shot of vs, but they were betwixt ye and the water, which was to our great discomfort, because neither wee nor our Camels had drunke in two dayes before.

Thus keeping good watch, when halfe the night was spent, the Prince of the Theeues sent a meslenger halfe way vnto vs, requiring to talke with our Captaine, in their tongue, the Cara-40 uan Balha, who answered the messenger, I will not depart from my companie to goe into the halfe way to talke with thee : but if that thy Prince with all his companie will sweare by our Law to keepe the truce, then will I fend a man to talke with thee, or elfe not. Which the Prince understanding as well himselfe as his company, swore so loude that wee might all heare. And then we fent one of our companie (reputed a holy man) to talke with the same messenger. The meliage was pronounced aloude in this order. Our Prince demandeth of the Carauan Basha, and of all you that bee Buffarmans, (that is to fay, Circumcifed) not desiring your blonds, that you deliner into

A holy man. Ba Tarmous or Liuft mans Ca-

his hands as many Caphars, that is, unbelieners (meaning vs the Christians) as are arrong you with their goods, and in so doing, bee will suffer you to depart with your goods in quietnesse, and on the contrarie, you hall bee handled with no leffe cruelty then the Caphars, if hee ouercome you, as hee doubteth not, 50 To the which our Caranan Bafta answered, that hee had no Christians in his companie, nor other flrangers, but two Turker which were of their Law; and although hee had, hee would rather dye then deliuer them, and that wee were not afraid of his threatnings, and that fhould hee know when day appeared. And so palling in talke, the Thecues (contrary to their eath) carried our hely man away to their Prince, crying with a loude voyce in token of victorie, Ollo, ollo. Fidelitieofan Wherewith wee were much discomforted, fearing that that holy man would betray vs : but he being cruelly handled and much examined, would not to death confesse any thing which was to vs prejudiciall, neither touching vs, nor yet what men they had flaine and wounded of ours the day before. When the night was ipene, in the morning wee prepared our felies to battell againe : which the theeues perceiving, required to fall to agreement, and asked much of vs : And to bee briefe, the most part of our company being loach to goe to battell againe, and having lit- 60 tle to lose, and fafe conduct to palle, wee were compelled to agree, and to give the theenes twentie ninths (that is to fay) twentie times nine scuerall things, and a Camell to carrie away the same, which being received, the theeres departed into the Willerneffe to their olde

habitation, and wee went on our way forward. And that night came to the River Ox 100, The river of where wee refreshed our selues, having beene three dayes without water and drinke, and tarrio 0.484 ed there all the next day, making merrie with our flaine Horles and Camels, and then departed from that place, and for feare of meeting with the faid theeues againe, or fuch like, wee left the from that place, and to read to meaning and passed through a wildernesse of fand, and trangh way which were stored to the same before wee came to water: and then came to a Well, the water of sind. being very brackish, and we then as before were in need of water, and of other victuals, being

forced to kill our Horses and Camels to eate.

In this wildernesse also, wee had almost fallen into the hands of Theenes: for one night been ing at rest, there came certaine scouts, and carried away certaine of our men which lay a little separated from the Carauan wherewith there was a great shoute and crie, and we immediatly laded our Camels, and departed being about midnight, and very darke, and droue fore till we came to the river Oxm againe, and then wee feared nothing being walled with the faid river : and whether it was for that wee had gotten the water, or for that the same threues were farre from vs when the fourts discourred vs, we know not, but weefcaped that danger.

So you the three & twentieth day of December, we arrived at the Citie of Bogbar in the land Bogbar a Citie of Baltria. This Bogbar is fituated in the lowest part of all the Land, walled about with a high of Baltria in wall of earth, with divers Gates into the fame: it is divided into three partitions, whereof two parts are the Kings, and the third part is for Merchants & Markets, and enery Science hath their 20 dwelling and market by themselves. The Citie is very great, and the houses for the most part

of Earth, but there are also many Houses, Temples, and Monuments of stone sumptuously builded, and gilt, and specially Bath-stones so artificially built, that the like thereof is not in the world : the manner whereof is too long to rehearle. There is a little river running through the Aftrange midft of the faid Citie, but the water thereof is most vnwhole some, for it breedeth sometimes in Wome in men that drinke thereof, and especially in them that bee not there borne, a Worme of an ell mens lege. long, which lyeth commonly in the leg, betwire the fleth and the skin, and is pluckt out about the Ancle with great art and cunning, the Surgeons being much practifed therein, and if shee

breake in plucking out, the partie dyeth, and every day the commeth out about an inch, which is rolled up, and so workerh till the bee all out. And yet it is there forbidden to drinke any o-20 ther thing then water, and Mares milke, and who locuer is found to breake that Law, is whipped and beaten most cruelly through the open markets, and there are Officers appointed for the tame. who have authoritie to goe into any mans houle, to fearch if hee have either Aquanta, Wine, or Brag, and finding the same, doe breake the vessels, spoyle the drinke, and punish the

matters of the house most cruelly ; yea, and many times if they perceive but by the breath of a man that hee hath drunke, without further exa mination he shall not escape their hands, There is a Metropolitane in this Boghar, who caufeth this law to be fo ftraightly kept : and he is more obeyed then the King, and will depose the King, and place another at his will and pleafare, as hee did by this King that raigned at our being there, and his predeceffour, by the meanes of the faid Metropolitan : for hee betrayed him, and in the night flew him in his chamber, who

40 was a Prince that loued all Christians well.

This Countrey of Boghar was somtime subject to the Perstans, and doe now speake the Per- Thesare of fian tongue, but yet now it is a Kingdome of it felfe, and hath most crueli warres continually the testion with the faid Persians about their Religion, although they bee all Mahametists. One occasion of Tarians.

their warres is, for that the Persan, will not cut the hayre of their upper lips, as the Bogbarians and all other Tartars doe, which they account great finne, and call them Caphars, that is, ynbeleeuers, as they doe the Christians. The King of Bogbar hath no great power or riches, his revenues are but small, and hee is most maintained by the Citie: for he taketh the tenth penie of all things that are there fold, as well by the Craftimen as by the Merchants, to the great impouerishment of the people, whom hee

keepeth in great subjection, and when hee lacketh money, he sendeth his officers to the Shops 50 of the faid Merchants, to take their wares to pay his debts, and will have credit of force, as the like hee did to pay me certaine money that he owed me for nineteene pieces of Kerley. Their money is filter and copper, for gold their is none currant: they have but one piece of filter, and The Coyne of that is worth twelue-pence English, and the copper money are called Pooles, and one hundred Bother ... and twentie of them goeth to the value of the faid twelue-pence, and is more common payment then the filter, which the King caufeth to rife and fall to his most advantage every other moneth, and somtimes twife a moneth, not caring to oppresse his people, for that he looketh not to raigne about two of three yeeres, before he bee either Illine or driven away, to the great destruction of

The twentie fixth day of the moneth, I was commanded to goe before the faid King, to whom 60 I presented the Emperour of Russia his letters, who entertained vs most gently, and caused vs to eate in his prefence, and duers times heefent for me, and denifed with me familiarly in his fecret chamber, as well of the power of the Emperour, and the great Turke, as also of our Countries, Lawes, and Religion, and cauted vs to shoote in hand-guns betere him, and did himilie

practife the vie thereof. But after all this great entertainment, before my departure her thewed Avery Tart r. himfelfe a very Tartar: for he went to the warres owing me money, and faw me not paved before his departure. And although indeed hee gaue order for the fame, yet was I very ill fatisfied. and forced to rebate part, and to take wares as payment for the reft contrary to my expectation on : but of a begger better payment I could not haue, & glad I was fo to be payd and dispatched.

But yet I must needs praise and commend this barbarous King, who immediately after myorriuall at Boebar, hauing understood our trouble with the Theeues, fent one | undred men well armed, and gaue them great charge not to returne before they had either flaine or taken the favd theeues. Who according to their commission ranged the wildernesse in such fort, that they met The Kings inwith the faid companie of Theeues, and flew part, and part fled, and foure they tooke and to brought vinto the King, and two of them were fore wounded in our skirmilh with our Gune. And after the King had fent for me to come to fee them, hee caused them all foure to bee hanged at his Palace gate, because they were Gentlemen, to the example of others. And of fuch goods as were gotten againe, I had part reftored me; and this good Iuffice I found at his hands.

There is veerely great refort of Merchants to this Citie of Boghar, which travell in great Ca. ravans from the Countries thereabout adioyning, as India, Persia, Balgh, Russia, with diversothers, and in times past from Cathay, when there was passage: but thele Merchants are so besgerly and poore, and bring to little quantitie of wares, lying two or three yeeres to fell the fame. that there is no hope of any good trade there to be had worthy the following. The chiefe commodifies that are brought thither out of their forefaid Countries, are thefe following.

The Indians doe bring fine Whites, which the Tartars doe all roll about their heads and all other kindes of Whites, which ferue for apparell made of Cotton-wooll and Crafca, but Gold, Silver, precious Stones, and Spices they bring none. I enquired and perceived that all fuch trade passeth to the Ocean sea, and the veynes where all such things are gottenare in the fubiection of the Portugals. The Indians carrie from Bogbar againe wrought Silkes, red Hides, Slaves, and Horses, with such like, but of Kerseis and other cloath, they make littleaccount. I offered to bartar with Merchants of those Countries, which came from the furthest parts of India, even from the Countrey of Bengala, and the river Ganges, to give them Kerfeisfor their commodities, but they would not barter for such commoditie as Cloath.

Merchandife of Perfia.

Merchandife

Merchandife of Cathay. Wares.

Taskent and

The Persians doe bring thither Craska, Woollen-cloath, Linnen-cloath, divers kindes of 30 wrought pide Silkes, Argomacks, with fuch like, and doe carrie from thence red hydes with other Ruffe wares, and Slaues, which are of divers Countries, but cloath they will buy none, for that they bring thither themselves, and is brought vnto them as I have inquired from Alone in Spria, and the parts of Turkie. The Ruffes doe carrie vnto Bogbar, red hydes, there skinnes. woollen cloath of divers forts, woodden veffels, brydles, fadules, with fuch like, and doe carne away from thence divers kindes of wares made of cotten-wooll, divers kindes of filkes, Crafes, with other things, but there is but finall vicerance. From the Countries of Cathar are brought thither in time of peace, and when the way is open, Muske, Rubarbe, Satten, Damaske, with divers others things. At my being at Bogbar, there came Caravans out of all thele forefaid Courtries, except from Cathar; and the caule why there came none from thence, was the great # warres that had dured three yeeres before my comming thither, and yet dured betwixt two great Countries and Cities of Tartars, that are directly in the way betwixt the faid Boohar and the faid Cathar, and certaine barbarous field people, as well Gentiles as Mahometiffs bordering to the faid Cities. The Cities are called Taskers and Caskar, and the people that warre against Taskent are called Coffacks of the law of Mahomet : and they which warre with the faid Countrey of Cashar are called Kings, Gentiles and Idolaters. These two barbarous Nations are of great force, living in the fields without House or Towne, and have almost subdued the foresaid Cities, and to ftopped up the way, that it is impossible for any Carauan to passe unspoyled : fo that three yeeres before our being there, no Carauan had gone, or vied trade betwint the Countries of Cathar and Boghar, and when the way is cleare, it is nine moneths journey. To speake of the faid Country of Cathay, and of such newes as I have heard thereof, I have

thought it best to referue it to our meeting. I having made my solace at Bogbar, in the winter time, and having learned by much inquitition, the trade thereof, as also of all the other Countries thereto adjoyning, and the time of the yeere being come, for all Caranans to depart, and alfo the King being gone to the warres, and newes come that hee was fled, and I advertised by the Metropolitan himielfe, that I thould depart, because the Towne was like to bee beseged: I thought it good and meete, to take my journey fome way, and determined to have gone from thence into Persia, and to have seene the trade of that Countrey, although I had informed my felfe fufficiently therof, a, well at Aftracan, as at Boghar: and perceived well the trades not to be much vnlike the trades of Tartaria : but when I should have taken my journey that way, it was 60 let by divers occasions: the one was, the great warres that did newly begin betwint the Sophie, and the Kings of Tartaria, whereby the wayes were destroyed : and there was a Carauan deitroyed with rouers and theeues, which came out of India and Perfia, by fafe conduct : and about ten dayes journey from Bogbar, they were robbed, and a great part flame. Also the Metropoli-

ton of Boobar, who is greater then the King, tooke the Emperours letters of Ruffia from me, without which I should have beene taken Slave in every place : also all such wares as I had recritied in barrer for Cloath, and as I tooke perforce of the King, and other his Nobles, in payment of money due vnto me, were not vendible in Perfia: for which causes, and divers others. I was constrained to come backe againe to Mare Calpium, the same way I went : so that the He returned the short Agrant to of the faid Citie of Boghar, being a Caravan of fixe hunthe eight of March, 1559, wee departed out of the faid Citie of Boghar, being a Caravan of fixe hunthe eight of dred Camels: and if wee had not departed when we did, I and my companie had beene in dan- March, 1550. ger to haue lost life and goods. For ten dayes after our departure, the King of Samarcand came with an armie, and belieged the faid Citie of Boghar, the King being ablent, and gone to the Samarcand.

to warres against another Prince his kinsman, as the like chanceth in those Countries once in two or three yeeres. For it is maruell, if a King raigne there about three or foure yeeres, to the great de-Araction of the Countrey and Merchants.

The fine and twentieth of March, we came to the foresaid Towne of Urgence, and escaped the Vrence. danger of foure hundred rouers, which lay in wayte for vs backe againe, being the most of them of kindred to that companie of theeues, which wee met with going foorth, as we perceived by foure fpyes, which were taken. There were in my companie, and committed to my charge, two Ambaffadors, the one from the King of Boghar, the other from the King of Balke, and were fent The King of vnto the Emperour of Ruffia. And after having tarried at Vrgence, and the Caffle of Selly fore, eight Bally, or Bulgh dayes for the affembling, and making ready our Carauan, the second of Aprill wee departed from 20 thence, having foure moe Ambassadours in our companie, fent from the King of Urgence, and o-

ther Sultans, his brethren, vnto the Emperour of Ruffia, with answer of such Letters as I brought them : and the same Ambassidours were also committed vnto my charge by the said Kings and Princes : to whom I promised most faithfully, and swore by our Law, that they should bee well vied in Rulland, and fuffered to depart from thence againe in fafetie, according as the Emperour had written also in his letters : for they somewhat doubted, because there had none gone out of Tartaria into Russia, of long time before.

The three and twentieth of Aprill, wee arrived at the Mare Caspinan againe, where we The Caspina found our Barke which wee came in, but neither Anchor, Cable, Cocke, nor Sayle : neuerthe- fea. leffe we brought Hempe with vs, and fpun a Cable our felues, with the reft of our tackling, and 30 made vs a fayle of cloath of Cotton-wooll, and rigged our Barke as well as wee could, but hoate or anchor we had none. In the meane time being denifing to make an anchor of wood of a Cartwheele, there arrived a Barke, which came from Astracan, with Tartars and Russes, which had Woodden and two Anchors, with whom I agreed for the one : and thus being in a readinesse, wee set sayle and chor. departed, I, and the two Johnsons, being Master and Mariners our selues, having in our Barke the faid fixe Ambassadours, and twentie five Russes, which had beene Slaves a long time in Tartaria. nor euer had before my comming, libertie, or meanes to get home, and these Slaues served to row when need was. Thus fayling iometimes along the coaft, and iometimes out of fight of land. The thirteenth day of May, having a contrary winde, we came to an anchor, being three leagues from the shoare, and there arose a fore storme, which continued fortie foure houres, and our ca-40 blebeing of our owne spinning, brake, and lost our anchor, and being off a lee shoare, and having Dangerous no boate to helpe vs, wee hoyled our layle, and bare roomer with the faid shoare, looking for pre- tempess, and fent death: but as God prouided for vs.we ranne into a creeke full of Oze, and fo faued our felues vie of the with our Barke and lived in great diffeomfort for a time. For although were floud by the Godd by Compaffer with our Barke, and lived in great discomfort for a time. For although wee should have escaped with our lives the danger of the fea, yet if our barke had perished, we knew we should have been either destroyed, or taken slaues by the people of that Countrey, who line wildly in the field, like beafts, without house or habitation. Thus when the storme was seafed, wee went out of the creeke againe : and having let the land with our Compasse, and taken certayn markes of the same, during the time of the tempest, whilest we rid at our anchor, wee went directly to the place

where we rid, with our Barke againe, and found our anchor which we loft : whereat the Tartars 50 much maruelled, how we did it. While wee were in the creeke, we made an anchor of wood of Cart wheeles, which we had in our Barke, which we threw away, when we had found our Iron anchor againe. Within two dayes after, there arose another great storme, at the North-east, and we lay a trie, being driven farre into the fea, and had much adoe to keepe our Barke from finking, the billow was fo great : but at the last, having faire weather, wee tooke the Sunne, and knowing how the Land lay from vs, we fell with the River Taik, according to our defire, whereof the Taik. Tartars were very glad, fearing that wee should have beene driven to the coast of Persia, whose people were vnto them great enemies.

Note, that during the time of our Navigation, we fet up the red Croffe of Saint George in our The English flagges, for honour of the Christians, which I supposed was neuer seene in the Caspian sea before. flag in the Cas 60 Wee paffed in this voyage divers fortunes: notwith flanding, the eight and twentieth of May we fam. Commy there arrived in lafetie at Afracan, and there remayned till the centh of fone following, as well to which a dog

prepare vs small Boates, to goe vp against the streame of Volga, with our goods, as also for the companie of the Amballadours of Tararie, committed vinto me, to be brought to the prefence of the Emperour of Ruffia.

Carauan de-

This Castian sea (to say something of it) is in length about two hundred leagues, and in breadth one hundred and fittie, without any iffue to other Seas : to the East part wheref, joyneth the great delart Countrey of the Tartars, called Turkemen: to the West, the Countries of the Chreafles, the Mountaines of Caucafus, and the Mare Euxinum, which is from the faid Cafe. Anothe de Copyriges, in Manuferd leagues. To the North is the river Volga, and the land of Nagas, and to the terprion of an oca, a minute tragger of the Countries of Media and Person. This Sea is fresh water in many places, and in other places as falt as our great Ocean: It hath many goodly Rivers falling into it, and it anovdeth not is selfe except it bee vnder ground. The notable Rivers that fall into it, are first the great River of Volga, called in the Tartar tongue Edell, which springeth out of a lake in a marrish or plaine ground, not farre from the Citie of Nouogrode in Ruffia, and it is from the spring to 10 the Sea, about two thousand English miles. It hath divers other goodly Rivers falling into it, as out of Siber in, Taic, and Tem: Allo out of the mountaines of Cancasus, the Rivers of Crue and Aralb, and divers others.

As touching the trade of Shamakie in Media and Tebris, with other Townes in Persia, I have enquired, and doe well understand, that it is even like to the trades of Tartaria, that is little vt. terance, and small profite: and I have been advertised that the chiefe trade of Persia is into Stria, and so transported into the Leuant sea. The few ships upon the Cassian Seas, the want of Mart and port Townes, the pouertie of the people, and the Ice, maketh that trade naught.

At Astracan there were Merchants of Shamake, with whom I offered to barter, and to give deg.9-minuts, them Kerfies for their wares, but they would not, faying, they had them as good cheape in their to Countrev. as I offered them, which was fixe rubbles for a Kerfie, that I asked: and while I was at Bozhar, there were brought thither out of Persia, Cloath, and divers commodities of our Countries, which was fold as good cheape, as I might fell ours.

The tenth day of Iune, wee departed from Astracan towards the Mosco, having an hundred gunners in our companie at the Emperours charges, for the fafe conduct of the Tarrar Ambasiadours and me. And the eight and twentieth day of July following, we arrived at the Citie of Cazan, having been upon the way from Afracan thither, fixe weekes and more, without any refreihing of victuals : for in all that way there is no habitation.

The feuenth of August following, wee departed from Cazan, and transported our goods by Carmis in ss. water, as farre as the Citie of Morum, and then by land : fo that the second of September, wee deg.33.min. His arriuall ar arrived at the Citie of the Molco, and the fourth day I came before the Emperours Maieslie, kiffed his hand, and prefented him a white Cowes tayle of Cather, and a Drum of Tartaria, which hee well accepted. Also I brought before him all the Ambassadours that were committed to my charge, with all the Ruffe flaues : and that day I dined in his Maiesties presence, and at dinner, his Grace fent me meate by a Duke, and asked mediuers questions touching the Lands and Countries where I had beene. And thus I remay ned at the Mosco about your affaires, vntill the seventeenth day of Februarie that your wares were sent downe : and then having licence of the Emperours Maiestie to depart, the one and twentieth day I came to your house to Vologhdr, and there remay ned vntill the breaking vp of the yeere : and then having feene all your goods laden into your Boates, I departed with the jame, and arrived withall in fafetie at Colmogro, the minth of May 1560. And heere I ceale for this time, intreating you to beare with this my large

I have certaine notes which seeme to have beene written at Boghat by some of Master lenkinsons companie: which containe intelligences there received touching Cathay and the wayes thither, Bul I bove thereof in that which followes to give better intelligence. It is there faid that the people of Comoron are very beautifull, and that they vie Kniues and Forkes of gold and filuer to eate their meate, not tonching it with their hands : that the Musk-beast is as big as a Hound. In Teray they worthing the taintic in Goes. Fre, which is thirtie foure dayes sourney from Cathay, At Cascar is resident the Can. From Cascar to Cocheke is foure weekes ; it is the first Land of the Emperour of Cathay : and then to Camche 10 fine dayes by land, and to Catalo eight weekes. In this last sourney is plentic of all things : both Horse to bee had, and Women at too easie rate, or c. which as newes to shem I have heere touched,

discourse, which by reason of the varietie of matter, I could make no shorter, and I beseech God

Memoriallof.

to profper all your attempts.

rather then related. I have also by me, the last Will of Gabriel Willoughbie, kinsman to that honourable Martyr of English Northerne Discoueries Sir Hugh Willoughbie, mentioned in the beginning of this Chapter, and subscribed with his Name, the worth whereof hath caused heere also this subscription. It was found in the Ship where they were frozen.

Aduertisements and reports of the sixth * Voyage into the parts of Persia and Media. eathered out of fundry Letters written by CHRISTOPHER BVR-ROVGH; and more especially a voyage over the Caspian Sea. and their shipwracke and mileries there endu-

red by the Ice. In the isto bee vinderstood, that the ships for the voyage to Saint Nicholas in Russia, in which the Factors and merchandise for the Pools which the Factors and merchandise for the Pools with the Saint Nicholas in Russia.

Tariaria and the Cafbian Sea brought hi-Saint Nichelse.

voyages are in

Mafter Haklay

this I have for

narted from Graue (end the nineteenth of June, 1 : 79. which arrived at Saint Nicholas in Russia, the two and twentieth of July, where the Factors and Merchants landed, and the merchandise discharged and laden into Doshnikes, that is, barkes of the Countrey, to hecarried from thence vp by Riuer vnto Vologda. And the fine and twentieth day of the faid July, the Doshnikes departed from Rose Hand by Saint Nicholas vp the river Dwing Peremene, that is to fav in poste, by continual fayling, rowing, setting with poles, or drawing of men, which

came to Colmogro the feuen and twentieth day, and departed thence the nine and twentieth of Colmogra Tulv vo the faid river Dwina, and came to Vftyoug (which is at the head of the river Dwina, and mouth of Sughano) the minth of August, where they flayed but a small time, promiding some vi Flying.

20 Etuals, and shutting certaine of their Cossacks or Barkmen, and so departed thence the same day vp the Sugbano, and came to Torma (which is counted somewhat more then halfe the way from Vityous) the fifteenth day, where they shirted some of their Coffacks, and departed thence the

fame day, and came to the Citie Vologda the nineteenth of August, where they landed their goods, and flayed at that place till the thirtieth of the fame. Having provided at Vologda Telegas or Waggons, whereupon they laded their goods, they departed thence with the fame by land towards Terastane, the faid thirtieth of August at eight of the clocke in the morning, and came to the East side of the river Volga, over against Terastane, with five and twentie Telegas laden Yarastane, with the faid goods, the feuenth of September at fine of the clocke afternoone. Then the three ftroogs or barkes, prouided to transport the faid goods to Aftracan, (where they should meete the

30 ship that should carrie the same from thence into Persia) came ouer from Teraslame vnto the same fide of the river Volga, & there tooke in the faid goods. And having prepared the faid Barks ready with all necessarie turniture, they departed with them from Teraslane down the river of Volga, on the fourteenth day of September at nine of the clocke in the morning, and they arrived at Niz-Niznaustral. nowoered the feuenceenth day at three of the clocke afternoone, where they shewed the Emperours letters to passe free without paying any custome, and tarried there about three houres to prouide necessaries, and then departing, arrived at Cazan (or neere the same Towne) on the two Cazan. and twentieth of September at fine of the clocke afternoone, where (through contrary windes. and for prouiding new Coffacks in the places of fome that there went from them) they remay-

ned till the fixe and twentieth day, at what time they departed thence about two of the clocke 40 after noone, and arrived at Tetulbagorod, which is on the Crim fide of Volga, and in latitude 55. degrees 22.minutes, the eight and twentieth day at ten in the forenoone, where they anchored, and remained about three houres, and departing thence came to Oneak, which is on the Crime fide (on the Westerne fide of Volga) the lift of October about five of the clocke in the morning. This place is accounted halfe the way betweene Cazan and Astracan: and heere there growth Into place is accounted many the topyle is very traitfull: they found there Apple-trees, and Cherrie-great flore of Liquoris: the foyle is very traitfull: they found there Apple-trees, and Cherrie-Lquoris. trees. The latitude of Oneak is 51 degrees 30 minuts. At this place had beene a very faire stone Castle called by the name Oneak, and adjoyning to the same was a Towne called by the Russes, Cattle cattle of years and part of the Cattle (by report of the Ruffer) was faval one of the years of the Cattle (by report of the Ruffer) was favallowed into the sodem earth by the inflict of God, for the wicked nells of the people that inhabited the fame. There re- Strange independent

30 mayneth at this day to be seene a part of the ruines of the Castle, and certaine Tombes, wherein ment. as it feemeth haue beene layd noble perfonages: for vpon a tombe stone might be perceived the forme of a Horse and a man sitting on it with a Bow in his hand, and Arrowes girt to his side; there was a piece of a Scutchion also vpon one of the stones, which had characters graven on it, whereof some part had been consumed with the weather, and the rest left unperfect : but by the forme of them that remained, we judged them to be characters of Armenia: and other characters were grauen also vpon another tombestone. Now they departed from Oneak the said fift of October at fine of the clocke after noone, and came to Peranolok the tenth day about elemen or Peranolok. twelue of the clocke that night, making no abode at that place, but passed alongst by it. This

60 waters, and it is fo called by them, because from the river Volga, at that place, to the river Don or Tanais, is counted thirtie verits, or as much as a man may well trauell on foot in one day. And feuen verits beneath, vpon an Iland called Tfaritfna, the Emperour of Ruffia hath fittle Gunners all Tfirifne. Summertime to keepe watch, called by the Tartar name Caravool. Betweenethis place and A-Bracan are five other Caramools or watches.

word Perauolok in the Ruffe tongue doth fignifie a narrow straight or necke of land between two

The First is named Kameni Caranool, and is distant from Peranelok one hundred and twentie verstes. The second named Stupino Caronool, distant from the first fiftie verstes. The third called Polony Caronool, is one hundred and twentie verftes diffant from the fecond The fourth named Keezeyur Caramool, is fiftie verstes distant from the third. The fift named lebkebre, is thirtie verites diftant from the fourth , and from lebkebre to Afracan is thirtie verffes.

Lee at Afracan

244

The fixteenth of October they arrived at Afracan. The ninteenth of November the winde being northerly, there was a great frost, and much Ice in the River: the next day being the twentieth of Nouember, the Iceftood in the Riuer, and to continued vntill Eafter day.

The fixth of Ianuarie being Twelfe day (which they call Chrofhenia) the Ruffes of Afracan to brakea hole in the Ice vpon the River Volga, and hallowed the water with great folemnitie, according to the manner of their Countrey, at which time all the Souldiers of the Towne flot of their small Peeces vpon the Ice, and likewise to gratifie the Captaine of the Calle, being a Duke, whose name is Pheodor Michalouich Troiceouria, who stood hard by the ship, beholding them as they were on the River, was shot off all the Ordnance of our ship being fifteene Peeces, viz. two Faulcons, two Faulconets, foure Fowlers, foure Fowlers Chambers, and three oother small Peeces made for the Stroogs to shoot Haile-stones, and afterwards the great Ordnance of the Castle was shot off.

An Eclipic.

On the one and thirtieth of Ianuarie there happened a great Eclipse of the Moone, which began about twelue of the clocke at night, and continued before thee was cleere an houre and an 20 halfe by estimation, which ended the first of Februarie about halfe an houre past one in the morning : fhee was wholly darkned by the space of halfe an houre.

The variation piffe in Aftra-

The feuenteenth of Aprill, the variation of the Compasse observed in Astracan, was 13. degrees 40, minutes from North to West. This Spring there came newes to Afracan, that the Queene of Persa (the King being blind) had beene with a great Armie against the Turkes that can, was 13 de were left to possesse Media, and had given them a great overthrow: yet notwithstanding Dergrees 40. min. bent, and the greatest part of Media were still possessed and kept by the Turkes. The Factors of the Companie consulting upon their affaires, determined to leave at Afracan the one halfe of their goods with Arthur Edwards, and with the other halfe, the other three Factors would proceed in the ship on their purposed Voyage to the coast of Media, to see what might bee done 10 there: where, if they could not finde fafe trafficke, they determined to proceed to the coast of Gilan, which is a Prouince neere the Caspian Sea bordering vpon Persia: and thereupon appointed the faid goods to be laden aboord the ship, and tooke into her also some merchandise of Title or Persian Merchants.

of the River as they went downe, which is called Mahomet Agatch, or Mahomet: Tree, and a-

Gilen.

The second of May they weighed, and plyed downe the River Volga, toward the Cashian Sea. The feuenth of May in the morning, they paffed by a Tree that flandeth on the left hand

Pobocz.

Fizes.

bout three verstes further , that is to say, to the Southwards of the said Tree, is a place called Vchoog , that is to fay, The Ruffe Weare: (but Ochoog is the name of a Weare in the Tartar tong ie) where are certaine Corages, and the Emperour hath lying at that place certaine Gun- 40 ners to guard his Fisher-men that keepe the Weare. This Vchoog is counted from Aftracan fixty verifes: they proceeded downe the faid River without flaying at the Veboog. The ninth and Shallow water, tenth dayes they met with shallow water, and were forced to lighten their ship by the Pauor: The eleuenth day they lent backe to the Vcboog for an other Panos: This day by mischance the thip was bilged on the grapnell of the Panos, whereby the companie had fuftayned great loffes, if the chiefest part of their goods had not beene layd into the Pauss: for notwithstanding their pumping with three Pumps, heaving out water with Buckers, and all the best shifts they could make, the ship was halfe full of water ere the leake could be found and stopt. The twelfth day the Panos came to them from the Vehoog, whereby they lighted the thip of all the goods. The thirteenth day in the morning there came to them a fmall Boat, fent by the Captaine of Afra- 50 can, to learne whether the ship were at Sea cleare off the flats. The fifteenth day by great industrie and trauell they got their ship cleare off the shoales and flats, wherewith they had beene troubled from the ninth day vntill then: they were forced to passe their ship in three foot wa-Chetera Bougori, ter or leffe. The fixteenth day they came to the Chetera Bougori, or Iland of foure Hillockes, The capies which are counted fortie verites from Vchoog, and are the furthest Land towards the Sea. The feuenteenth day they have off into the Sea, and being about twelve verstes from the Foure hillockes, riding in fine foot and a halfe water about elenen of the clocke in the fore-moone, they tooke their goods out of the Panofes into the ship, and filled their ship with all things necessarie. The eighteenth day in the morning about feuen of the clocke, the Panofes being discharged deparced away towards Aftracan, the winde then at South-east, they rode still with the ship, and 60 45-deg. 20.mi- observing the elevation of the Pole at that place, found it to be 45. degrees 20. minutes. The nineteenth day, the winde South-east, they rode still. The twentieth day, the winde at North-The fifth older-must be first the week, they feet fayle about one of the clocke in the morning, and fleered thence South by Welt, and South South-west, about three leagues, and then anchored in fixe foot and a halfe water, a-

bout nine of the clocke before noone, at which time it fell calme: the eleuation of the Pole at that place 45, degrees 13, minutes. The one and twentieth, having the winde at North-west. they fet fayle, and fteered thence South by West, and South vntill eleven of the clocke, and had then nine foote water: and at noone they observed the latitude, and found it to bee 44. degrees 47. minutes: then had they three fathoms and a halfe water, being cleare off the flats. It is counted from the Foure hillockes to the Sea about fiftie verifes. From the faid noone-tide vntill foure of the clocke, they fayled South by East fine leagues and a halfe : then had they fine fathoms and a halfe, and brackish water: from that till twelue at night they sayled South by Brackish water Baft halfe a league, East ten leagues : then had they eleven fathoms, and the water falter. From farre within

To that till the two and twentieth day three of the clocke in the morning, they fayled three and fiftie leagues, then had they fixteene fathoms water: from thence they fayled untill noone South and by West seuen leagues and a halfe, the latitude then observed 43. degrees 1c. mi- 43 degrees nutes, the depth then eight and twentie fathoms, and shallow ground : from that vntill eight 15. minutes, of the clocke at night, they fayled South by East fine leagues and a halfe, then had they three and fortie fathoms shallow ground. From thence till the three and twentieth at foure of the clocke in the morning, they fayled South South-west three leagues and a halfe : then could they get no ground in two and fittle fathoms deepe. From thence vntill noone they fayled South nine leagues, then the latitude observed, was 42, degrees 20, minutes. From that till the foure and twentieth day at noone, they fayled South by West seuenteene leagues and a halfe, then the lati-

20 tude observed, was one and fortis degrees two and thirtie minutes. From noone till seven of the 41 degrees clocke at night, they fayled South South-well four leagues, then had they perfect fight of high 32, minutes. Land or Hills, which were almost couered with Snow, and the midst of them were West from the ship, being then about twelue leagues from the neerest Land : they sounded but could finde no ground in two hundred fathoms. From thence they fayled South-west vntill mid-night: about three leagues from thence till the fine and twentieth day, foure of the clocke in the morning, they fayled West three leagues, being then little winde, and neere the Land, they tooke in their fayles, and lay hulling: at noone the latitude observed, was 40. degrees 54. minutes: 40. degrees they founded but could get no ground in two hundred fathoms. At foure of the clocke in the after-noone, the winde North-west, they set their sayles: and from thence till the sixe and 30 twentieth day at noone, they fayled East South-east foure leagues. From thence they fayled till

eight of the clocke at night South-west three leagues, the winde then at North. From thence they fayled vntill the feuen and twentieth day two of the clocke in the morning, West Southwest eight leagues, the winde blowing at North very much. From the faid two till foure of the clocke, they fayled South by West one league: then being day light, they saw the Land plaine, which was not past three leagues from them, being very high ragged Land. There were certaine Rockes that lay farre off into the Sea, about five leagues from the fame Land, (which are called Barmake Talb) they layled betweene those Rockes and the Land, and about five of the clocke they passed by the Port Bilbill, where they should have put in but could not : and bearing long it the shoare about two of the clocke after noone, they came to Bildib in the Countrey of Media Bilbill.

40 or Sherum, against which place they anchored in time foot water. Presently after they were at anchor, there came aboord of them a Boat , wherein were feuen or eight persons , two Turkes, the rest Persians, the Turkes vassals, which bade them welcome, and seemed to be glad of their arrivall, who told the Factors that the Turke had conquered all Media, or the Countrey Sheruan, and how that the Turkes Balha remayned in Derbent with a Garrison of Turkes, and that Shamaky was wholly spoyled, and had few or no Inhabitants left in it. The Factors then being defirous to come to the speech of the Basha, sent one of the Tiskes (or Merchants that went over with them from Astracan, passingers) and one of the Companies servants Robert Golding, with those Souldiers, to the Captaine of Bachu, which place standeth hard by the Sea, to certifie him Bathu Port, of their arrivall, and what commodities they had brought, and to defire friendship to have quiet

50 and fafe trafficke for the fame. Bache is from Bildih, the place where they rode, about a dayes iourney, on foot eafily to be trauelled, which may be fixe leagues the next way over Land: it is a walled Towne, and strongly fortified. When the faid Messenger came to the Captaine of Bachu, the faid Captaine gane him very friendly entertaynement.

In the morning very early, hee fent Horle for the rest of the companie which should goe to Derbent, sending by them that went, ten Sheepe for the ship. Whilest they were at breakfast, Mafter Turnbull, Mafter Tailboyes, and Thomas Hudfon the Mafter of the fhip, came thither , and when they had all broken their faits, they went to Bachu. And from Bachu they proceeded towards Derbent, as it was by the Captaine promifed, being accompanied on their way for their fafe conduct, with a Gentleman, and certaine Souldiers, which had the Captaine of Bachs his

60 Letters to the Balba of Derbent, very friendly written in their behalfe. In their journey to Derbent they for fooke the ordinarie wayes, being very dangerous, and travelled thorow Woods till they came almost to the Towne of Derbent : and then the Gentleman rode before with the Captaines Letters to the Basha, to certifie him of the English Merchants comming, who receiving the Letters, and understanding the matter, was very glad of the newes, and sent forth to re-

The receiving of the English

The laritude

of Bildib 40.

deg.25 min.

of the Com-

paffe to.deg.

ceiue them certeine Souldiers Gunners, who met them about two miles out of the Towne, faluting them with great reuerence, and afterwards rode before them : then againe met them other of the Engling
Souldiers, formewhat neerer the Cattle, which likewife having done their falutations rode bea fore them, and then came forth Noblemen, Captaines, and Gentlemen, to receive them into the Castle and Towne. As they entred the Castle, there was a shot of twentie Peeces of great Ordnance, and the Basha sent Master Turnbull a very faire Horse with furniture to mount on, esteemed to be worth an hundred Markes, and so they were contayed to his presence: who after he had talked with them, fent for a Coat of cloth of Gold, and caufed it to be put on Ma. fter Turnbuls backe, and then willed them all to depart, and take their eafe, for that they were fter Turnbult backe, and then willed them an to depart, and take further with them. The next day 10 wearie of their journey, and on the morrow he would talke further with them. The next day 10 wearie of their journey, and on the morrow he would talke further with them. when the Factors came againe to the presence of the Basta, according to his appointment, they requested him that he would grant them his priniledge, whereby they might trafficke safely in any part and place of his Countrey, offering him, that if it pleafed his Maiestie to have any of the commodities that they had brought, and to write his minde thereof to the Captaine of Be. chu, it should be delivered him accordingly. The Bashaes answere was, that he would willingly giue them his priviledge: yet for that he regarded their fafety, having come so farre, and knowing the state of his Countrey to be troublesome, he would have them to bring their commoditie thither, and there to make fale of it, promifing he would prouide fuch commodities as they needed, and that he would be a defence vnto them, so that they should not be injured by any; wherequen the recommendation of the state of the Bildib by divers observations is 40.deg. 25.m. the variation of the Compas 10.deg. 40.min.from North to West. They arrived at anchor against Derbent East and by South from the said Castle in foure fathom & a halfe water, the two and twentieth of Iune at ten of the clock in the morning; then they tooke up their Ordnance, which before they had stowed in hold for easing the ship in her rolling. In the afternoone the Balba came down to the water fide against the ship, and having the faid Ordnance placed, and charged, it was all shot off to gratise him: and presently as ter his departure backe, he permitted the Factors to come abourd the ship. The nine and twentieth day their goods were valaden, and carried to the Balbaes Garden, where hee made choice of fuch things as he liked, taking for custome of euery fine and twentie Kersies, or whatsouer, one, or after the rate of foure for the hundred. The Factors after his choice made, determined to fend a part of the rest of the goods to Bachu, for the speedier making sale thereof. They departed from Derbent with the faid Barke the nineteenth of July, and arrived at Bildib the fue and twentieth day. Robert Golding defirous to understand what might bee done at Shamaky, which is a dayes journey from Bachn, went thither, from whence returning, he was fet on by theeues, and was shot into the knee with an Arrow, who had very hardly escaped with his life and goods, but that by good hap he killed one of the theeues Horfes with a Caliuer, and shot a Turke thorow both cheekes with a Dag. On the fixt day of August, the Factors being aduertiled at Derbene that their ship was so rotten and weake, that it was doubtfull shee would not

Zere Uind.

The English

carrie them backe to Astracan, did thereupon agree and bargaine at that place with an Armenian, whose name was lacab, for a Barke called a Buffe, being of burden about fine and thirtie do tunnes, which came that yeere from Astracan, and was at that instant riding at an Iland called Zere, about three or foure leagues beyond, or to the Eastward of Bildib, which Barke for their more fafety, they meant to have with them in their returne to Afracan, and thereupon wrote vnto Wincoll and the rest at Bachu, that they should receive the same Busse, and lade in her their goods at Bildin, to be returned to Derbent, and to discharge their first Boat, which was observed by them accordingly. When all their goods were laden aboord the faid Buffe at Bildib, and being readie to have departed thence for Derbent, there arose a great storme with the winde out of the Sea, by force whereof the Cables and Halfers were broken, and their Veffell put ashoare, and broken to pieces against the Rockes : euery of them that were in her faued their lives, and part of the goods. But there was a Carobia or Chift, wherein were Dollers, and Gold, which they 10 had receised for the commodities of the Companie, which they fold at Bachs, which at the taking out of the Busse, fell by the Barkes side into the water amongst the Rockes, and so was loft. The packes of Cloth which they could not well take out of the Buffe were alfo loft; other things that were more profitable they faued. The third day of October all things were brought from the shoare aboord the ship: and that

day the Factors went to the Balha to take their leave of him, vntowhom they recommended those the Companies servants, &c. which they had sent to Bachs, making account to leave them behind in the Countrey : who caused their names to be written, and promised they should want nothing, nor be injured of any. After this leave taken, the Factors went aboord, purpoling prefently to haue fet fayle and departed towards Afracan, the winde fetuing well for that pur- 60 pose at South South-east : And as they were readie to set sayle, there came against the ship a man, who weued: whereupon the Boat was fent ashoare to him, who was an Armenian fent from William Wincoll, with his writing tables , wherein the faid Wincoll had written briefly, the mil-hap of the loffe of the Buffe, and that they were comming from Bildib towards Derbent,

they, and such things as they saued with a small Boat, forced to put ashoare in a place by the they, and then timing as they are the second the factors caused the ship to stay, hoping Tue armenian Sea not called the Manager than the Manager that with the Southerly winde that then blew, they would come from the place they were at Village. to the ship, but if they could not come with that winde, they meant to sayle with the ship, with the next wind that would ferue them, against the place where they were, and take them in, if they could: which stay and losse of those Southerly winds, was a cause of great troubles. that they afterwards sustayned through Ice, &c. entring the Volga as shall be declared.

The latitude of Derbent (by divers Observations exactly there made, is fortie one degrees fif. The latitude the ratification of the Compaffe at that place about eleuen degrees from North degrees sami-IO to West. From Derbent to Bildib by Land fortie fixe leagues. From Derbent to Shamaki by nure. Land, fortie fine leagues. From Shamak y to Bachu, about ten leagues, which may bee thirtie The variation miles. From Bachu to Bildih fine or fixe leagues by Land, but by water about twelve leagues, of the Com-From the Caitle Derbens East-wards, there reach two stone wals to the border of the Cashian Passe. Sea. which is diffant one English mile. Those wals are nine foot thicke, and eight and twentie or thirtie foot high, and the space betweene them is one hundred and sixtie Geometricall paces. that is, eight hundred foot. There are yet to bee perceived of the ruine of those wals, which doe now extend into the Sea about halfe a mile: also from the Castle West-ward into the Land. they did perceive the ruines of a stone wall to extend, which wal, as it is reported, did passe from thence to Pontus Euxinus, & was built by Alexand. the great, when the castle Derbent was made.

The fift of October about noone, the winde North North-east they weighed Anchor, and fet favle from Derbent, being along it the Coaft to the South-wards to feeke their men; but as they had failed about foure leagues the winde scanted Easterly, so that they were forced to Anchor in three fathome water.

The fewenth day about fouen of the clocke in the morning, they fet fayle, the wind Southwest. They considered the time of the yeare was farre ipent, the ship weake, leake, and rotten, and therefore determining not to tarry any longer for Wincoll and his fellowes, but to leave them behind, bent themselves directly towards Afracan: and fayling North North-east untill midnight about fixteene leagues, the wind then came to the North North-west, and blew much, a very storme, which caused them to take in all their Sayles, saving the fore Corse, with which they were forced to steere before the Sea, South by West, and South South-west. And on the eight day about two of the clocke in the morning, their great Boat sunkeat the ships sterne, which they were forced to cut from the ship to their great griefe and discomfort; for in her they hoped to faue their lines if the ship should have miscarried. About ten of the clocke before noones they had fight of the Land about fine leagues to the South of Derbent, and bare alongst the Coaft to the South-eaft-wards vnto Nexauso, where they came at Anchor in three fathomes, Nexauso, and blacke Ozie, good Anchor hold, whereof they were glad, as also that the winde was shifted to the North-west, and but a meane gale. Wincell and the rest of his fellowes being in the Armeman Village, which is about eighteene Verits to the West-wards of Nexano, the place where against they rode at Anchor, faw the ship as she passed by that place, and sent a man in the night 40 following alongit the Coast after her, who came against the ship where shee rode, and with a fire-brand in the top of a Tree made fignes, which was perceived by them in the ship, wherevpon they hoyfed out their Skiffe, and fent her ashoare to learne what was meant by the fire: which returned a Letter from Wincoll, wherein he wrote that they were with fuch goods as they had at the Armenian Village, and prayed that there they might with the same goods bee taken into the ships.

The tenth day they sent their Skiffe to the Armenian Village to setch those men and the Theparticugoods they had, with order that if the winde ferued, that they could not returne to fetch the larsof their flip, they of the ship promised to come for them, against the said Village, But in their want God returne are of them two Course of Partridges, that came from the shore and their want God mitted. fent them two Couies of Partridges, that came from the shoare, and lighted in and about their Aftrange ac-50 thips, whereby they were comforted, and one that lay ficke, of whose life was small hope, re-cident of pro-

Pausses were sent from Astracan, in which they laded the ships goods, leaving her at Anchor their relative with Ruffes to keepe her.

The thirteenth of Nouember they departed also in those Lighters, with the goods towards the Chetera Bongori, leauing the ship at Anchor, and in her two Ruffer, which with three more that went in the Pauofes to provide victuals for themselves and the rest, and therewith promised to returne backe to the ship with all speed, had offered to undertake for twentie Rubbles in Money, to carrie the ship into some Harbour, where shee might fafely winter, or else to keepe her where the rode all Winter, which was promifed to bee given them if they did it : and the same 60 day when with those Lighters they had gotten fight of the foure Hands, being about eight Verftes South-west from them, the wind then at North-east, did freele the Sea so as they could not row, guide, stirre, erremoue the faid Lighters, but as the wind and Ice did force them. And so they continued driving with the Ice, South-east into the Sea by the space of fortie houres, and then being the fixseenth day, the Ice flood. Whiles they droue with the Ice, the dangers which

they incurred were great : for oftentimes, when the Ice with force of wind and Sea did breaker pieces of it were toffed and driven one vpon another with greatforce, terrible to behold, and the same happened at sometimes so neere vnto the Lighters, that they expected it would have ouer-whelmed them to their veter destruction ; but God who had preserved them from many perils before, did also faue and deliver them then.

Within three or foure dayes after the first standing of the Ice, when it was firme and strong they tooke out all their goods, being fortie and eight Bales or Packes of Raw Silke, &c. laid it on the Ice, and couered the same with such proussions as they had. Then for want of victuals. &c. they agreed to leave all the goods there vpon the Ice, and to goe to the shoare : and there-Trauell you vpon brake vp their Chefts and Corobias, wherewith, and with fuch other things as they could to get, they made Sleds for every of them to draw vpon the Ice, whereon they layed their clothes to keepe them warme, and fuch victuals as they had, and fuch other things as they might conveniently carrie, and so they departed from the said goods and Panofes very early, about one of the clocke in the morning, and trauelling on the Ice, directed their way North, as necess

they could judge, and the fame day about two of the clocke in the after-noone, they had fight of Chetera Babbas the Chetera Babbas (foure Hillocks of Hands fo called) vnto the fame they directed themselves. and there remayned that night. The goods and Panofes which they left on the Ice, they indeed to be from those Chetera Babbas, about twentie Versts. And the next morning departed thence East-wards, and came to the Chetera Bongories (or foure Ilands before spoken of) before none (the diffance betweene those places is about fifteene Versts) where they remained all that night, 20 departing thence towards Aftracan: the next morning very early they loft their way through the perswasion of the Russes which were with them, taking to much towards the left hand(contrary to the opinion of Master Hudson) whereby wandering vponthe Ice source or five dayes, not knowing whether they were entred into the Crimme Tartars Land or not, at length it fortuned they met with a way that had beene trauelled, which croft back-wards towards the Sea: that way they tooke, and following the same, within two dayes trauell it brought them to a place, called the Crasnopare (that is to say, in the English Tongue) Red (liffe, which divers of the

There they remay ned that night, having nothing to eate but one Loafe of Bread, which they happened to find with the two Roffer that were left in the ship, to keepe her all the Winter (as 30 is aforefaid) whom they chanced to meet going towards Aftracan, about five miles before they came to the faid Crasnoyare, who certified them that the ship was cut in pieces with the Ice and thip cut in pie. that they had hard icaping with their lines.

In the morning they departed early from Grafneyare towards the Ouchooge, and about nine of the clocke before noone, being within ten Verits of the Pchooge, they met Amos Riall, with the Carpenter, which he found at Ouchooge, and a Gunner newly come out of England, and also fixtie fine Horses with so many Cassacks to guide them, and fiftie Gunners for guard, which brought prouision of victuals, &c. and were sent by the Duke to fetch the goods to Astracan. The meeting of that company was much joy vnto them.

The Factors fent backe with Amos Riall, and the faid company to fetch the goods, Thomas to Hudfon the Master, Tobias Paris his Mate, and so they the said Factors and their company marched on to the Uchooge, where they refreshed themselves that day, and the night following, And from thence proceeded on towards Astracan, where they arrived the last day of November. These that went for the goods after their departure from the Factors, travelled the same day untill they came within ten Versts of the Chetera Babbas, where they rested that night. The next morning by the breake of the day they departed thence, and before noone were at the Chetera Babbas, where they stayed all night; but presently departed thence Thomas Hudson with the Carpenter and Gunner to feeeke where the goods lay : who found the fame, and the next day they returned backe to their company at the Chetera Babbas , and declared vnto them in what fort they had found the faid goods. The third day early in the morning, they departed all from the foure Babbas towards the faid

Affaulted by

goods, and the same day did lade all the goods they could finde upon the said sleds, and withall convenient speed returned backe towards Afracan. And when they came to the Chetera Bougori, where they rested the night, in the morning very early before the breake of day, they were affaulted by a great company of the Nagars Tartars Horse-men, which came shouting and hallowing with a great noyle, but our people were so inuironed with the sleds, that they durst not enter voon them, but ranne by, and shot their Arrowes amongst them, and hurt but one man in the head, who was a Ruffe, and so departed presently. Yet when it was day, they shewed themselues a good distance off from our men, being a very great troope of them, but did not asfault them any more. The same day our men with those carriages, departed from thence to- 60 wards Afracan, where they arrived in fafetie the fourth of December, about three of the clock in the after-noone, where our people greatly rejoyced of their great good hap to have elcaped so many hard events, troubles and miseries, as they did in that Voyage, and had great cause therefore to prayle the Almightie, who had to mercifully preserved and delivered them.

CHAP.I. S.5. A Letter of Master Lanes to bis friend in England.

They remay ned the Winter at Aftracan, where they found great fauour and friendship of the Duke, Captaine, and other chiefe Officers of that place : but that Winter there hapned no great matter, worth the noting.

In the Spring of the yeere 1581, about the midit of March, the Ice was broken vp, and cleare The breaking gone before Aftracan.

vp of the Ice.

A Letter of Mafter HENRIE LANE to the worshipfull Master WILLIAM SANDERSON, containing a briefe discourse of that which passed in the North-east discouerie, for the space of three and shirtie veeres.

- After Sanderson, as you lately requested me, so have I sought, and shough I cannot finde Some things that heretofore I kept in writing, and lent out to others, yet perusing at London copies of mine old Letters to content one that meaneth to pleasure many, I have briefly and as truely as I may, drawne out as followeth: The rough bewing may bee planed at your leafure, or as pleaseth him that shall take the paines.

First the honourable attempt to discouer by Sea North-east and North-west named for Cathay being chiefly procured by, primiledge from King Edward the fixt, and other his Nobilitie, by and at the coff and fuse of Master Sebastian Cabota, then Gouernour for Descoueries, with Ser Andrew ludde, Ser George Barnes, Sir William Garrard, Master Anthony Hustie, and a companie of Merchants, was Anno 1552. in the last yeere of his Maiesties raigne, 1553. The generall charge whereof was committed to one Sir Master William on the lay year of the authors ration 1.55.

High Willowshie Kangha, a goods Gentleman, accompanied with sufficient number of pilots, Ma. Euroush was firs, Machanis, and Marriners, hasing three Ships well furnished, to wit, The Bona Sperança, the thin young, and withhis and withhis many the control of the Edward Bonauenture, and the Confidentia. The Edward Bonauenture, Richard Chancelor be- brother in this ing Pilot, and Steuen Burrough Master, basing descenced Ward-house upon the Coast of Finmark, from the rost, found the Bay of Saint Nicholas, now the chiefe Pert of Rul-Nemacis lia, therewinered in safetie, and bad ayde of the people at a Village called Newnox.

The other two ships attempting further Northwards (as appeared by Pamphlets found after written by Westwards). Sir Hugh Willoughbie) were in September encountred with such extreame cold, that they put backe to miles. series a wistring place: and missing the said Bay fell upon a desart Coast in Lappia, entring into a Riner immediately frozen up, since discoursed, named Arzina Reca, distant East from a Russian Monasterie. of Monkes called Pechingho, from whence they never returned, but all to the number of seventie persons perished, which was for want of experience to have made Canes and Stones. These were found with the Ships the next Summer, Anno 1554. by Ruffe-fishermen : and in Anno 1555. the place fent unto by English Merchants, as bereafter appeareth.

Anno 1554. the faid ship Edward Bonauenture (although robbed homewards by Flemings) retur- 40021554. ned with her companie to London, shewing and setting foorth their entertainments and discoverie of the

40 Countries, even to the Citie of Mosco, from whence they brought a priviledge written in Ruffe with the Kings or great Dukes feale, the other two fosps looked for and unknowne to them where they were. Anno 1555, the faid companie of Merchants for a discouerie upon a new supply, sent thather against with two Ships, to wit, the Edward Bonauenture, and another bearing the name of the King and Annossis.

Queene, Philip and Marie, whose Maississ by their Letters to the said Mulcousie, recommended the Royalet.

fundry their subjects then passing, whereof certains, to mit, Richard Chancelor, George Killingworth, Henrie Lane, and Arthur Edwards, after their arrivall at the Bay, and paffing up Dwina to Nologda, went first up to Mosco, where, upon knowledge of the faid Letters, they with their trayne had speciallentertainment, with houses and dyet appointed, and shortly permitted to the Princes presence, they were with Gentlemen brought through the Citie of Mosco, to the Castle and Palace, replenished with numbers of people, and some gunners. They entred sundry roomes, furnished in shew with ancient 50 grave personages, all in long garments of sundry colours, Gold, Tissue, Baldekin, and Violet, as our Vestments and Copes have beene in England, Sut able with Caps, Iewels, and Chaines. These were found to bee no Courtiers, but ancient Mulcouites, Inhabitants, and other their Merchants of credit, as the

Then entring into the Presence, being a large roome floored with Carpets, were men of more estate, Entertionand richer shew, in number aboue one hundred set square : who after the said English-men came in, do- mentby the ing reservence, they all flood up, the Prince onely litting, and yet riling at any occasion, when our King and Duke. Queenes names were read or poken. Then after peeches by interpretation, our men killing his band, and bidden to dinner, were flayed in another roome, and at dinner brought through, where might bee feene

manner is, furnished thus from the Wardrobe and Treasurie, waiting and wearing this apparell for the

60 massie silver and gelt Piate, some like and as bigge as Kilderkins, and Wast howles, and entring the Dining place, being the greater roome, the Prince was fet bare-headed, his Crowne and rich Cap ftanding upon a pinacle by. Not farre distan fate his Metropolitan, with ainers other of his kindred, and chiefe Tartarian Captaines : none fate oner against him, or any, at other Tables, their backes tomards him:

Note.

and adventures this way (as divers doe now adayes other wayes) as werthic Gentlemen fent from Princes, to doc their Countrey good, I put them in your memorse, with my heartie farewell. From Saint Marcarers neere Dartforth in Kent.

CHAP. I. S. S. Numbers mistaken. Cards deceiving. Authors triall.

To the Reader.

Haue had much trouble to give thee this Authour, both for his Language, being Portugall (which for this, and some other parts of this worke, I was forced to get as I could) and for the raritie of his IC Kelations, seeming both in themselves so stupendrous, and not seconded in many things, that I far not contravied, by other Authours. Besides his booke came not out, till himselfe was gone out of the world. I answere, that Ricius the Ieluite his Relations came not to vs, till himselfe was likewise gone; and that that might rather plead not onely for the Matteritie, but the sinceritie, by that Call an rule, Cui bono: for whom should a dead man flatter, or for what should hee lye? Tea, hee little spares his owne companie and Nation, but often and easerly layeth open their vices: and which is more, I finde in him little hoafling, except of other Nations; none at all of himselfe, but as if he intended to expresse Gods glorie, and mans meru of nothing but miserse. And how somer it seemes incredible to remember such infinite farticulars as this Booke is full of, yet an easie memorie holdeth strong impressions of good or bad. Scribunt in marmore lati, is faid of one; and of the other, Omnia que curant fenes meminerunt. Nei-20 ther is it likely but that the Authour wrote Notes, which in his manifold disaduentures were lost otherwife, but by that writing written the firmer in his memorie, especially new whetted, filed, forbulbed with so many companions of miserie, whom in that state, Hac olim meministe junabat; their beit mulicke in their chaines and wandrings being the mutuall recountings of things leene, done, suffered. More

marnell it is, if a lyar, that he should not forget himselfe, and contradict his owne Relations; which somtimes he may seeme to doe in the numbers of the yeere of the Lord; yea, and other numbers : but his leaves times on may seem, we were now immers of the seems of the experience halb often found figures mistaken from my hand, which being by the Compositor set at large, bets (if great have runne at large by ten times fo much; and girt in otherwhiles as narrow with the tenth place dimini- carchee not hine runne at large by ten times for much; and got in other wines at narrow min the semio place cumous-fied, or one figure fat for another. And now out the Authors, or he which frames the fabrief, can ea. had him we had now for the father of the semi-

30 fils amend that fault, being fo great by fo small and easie a lapse. The graduations of places I doe con- by, bow danfeste otherwise then in the letuites, and as I suppose not so truely as theirs: for I thinke that he neither taken. had Arte or Instrument to calculate the same, but contented himselfe in the writing of this Booke to Soit seemes lede into the common Maps of China, and to follow them in setting downe the degrees, and so the bland by those words hed the blind into errour; no printed Map that I have seene being true. And perhaps the Chronicler to Of his, sol, 122. hat he kina mo err m; no prime a via pious to ause seeme even time. And percaps to e coronicter to most an about to be about the percaps and to a whom the paper were brought unfulled might out of toole Maps doe it, eving atther of ignorance, or Andayse contains the most and the second of the sec (which we have often feen in Cards of remote places East and West) purposely, to conceale from others falls a milhor, that which they have found sweet and gainfull, the Mariner and Merchant not looking with the gene- que be laber or row eyes of the ingenious, ingenuous Scholer.

For his repute at home; it was dedicated to King Philip the Third of Spaine, which impudence day a enten-40 would not have obvinded (if altogether a tale) on such Maiestie; licenced by the Holy Office, and prin. dir o clims to a line of a Line of the Holy Office, and prin. Altura dis ted at Lisbon; translated into the Spanish by the Licentiate, Francisco de Herrera Maldonado, Canon grass 66. of the Church Riall of Athas, and dedicated to a Clergie-man Severin de Faria, Printed 1620. at Falle gradua-Madrid (and small credit is had beene to the House of the Parias, that one of them should publish in tions acom-Portugall, and in Caltile to another should be dedicated, a frivolous tale and dewifed foolerie.) I adde monthing in also the Authors stile sovelscione, and his often protestations: his credit, as Herreta reporteth with and Wester-King Philip the Second, who frent much time in discourse with him about these things. I might adde die. the Spanish Translators Apologie at large, and out of him Fr. Andrada the Portugall Chroni-

If this move thee not to believe, yet believe thus much, that I have no minde to deceive thee, but give 50 thee what I found, onely much contracted, and not going all the way with our Authour, whose original Booke is about one bundred and fiftie sheets of paper in tolio, but contented with his China and Tartaria Relation: : that also too much, if not true. And yet I would not have an Author reveited for fit seeches framed by the Writer, in which many Historians have taken libertie; no, if sometimes he doth menciacia dicere, fo as he doth not mentiri; that is, if he be fo credulous to beleeve, or fo improvident to proffer to others fauth, probable fallhoods related by others (as I will not sweare but of himselfe hee might missike, and by others be missed, the Chinois here might in relating these rarties to him enlarge, and de magnis maiora lequi) so as be still be religious in a init and true delinerie of what himselfe bath seene, and bely e not his owne eyes: the former is rashmesse and distassfull, the later is dishonest and detestable. Once, the Sunne Rising hath found many worshapers, but the Westerne Sunne is neerer night:

60 and neerer objentitie and meannesse are our Westerne affaires then those China Raies of the East; and wee were Backes and Owles not to beleene a greater light then our felues fee and vife. All China Au- Veligionus toours how dinersified somer in their lines, jet concurre in a centre of Admiranda Sinatum, which great tolute if others have not so largely related as this, they may thanke God they payed not so deare a price to see wtoscabooke them; and for mee, I will rather beleene (where reason emets not an electione firms) then feete to fer with that title

which tables all surnished with ghests set, there was for the English-men, named by the Rustes, Ghosi Carabelski, to mit, Strangers or Merchants by ship, a table in the midst of the roome, where they were let direct against the Prince: and then began the service, brought in by a number of his young Lords and Gentlemen, in such rich attire, as is about specified: and still from the Princes table (notwithstanding their owne furniture) they had his whole melles fet oner all in maffie fine Gold, delinered encry time from him by name to them, by their seuer all Christian names, as they sate, viz. Richard, George, Henrie, Ar. thur. Likewife Bread and fundry drinkes of purified Mead, made of fine white and clarified Honey. At their rifing, the Prince called them to his table, to receive each one a Cup from his hand to drinke, and Mafter Killing. tooke into his hand Mafter George Killing worths beard, which reacheth oner the table, and plea ant. tooke min one manus ramps . Ar indeed at m. faid in Refle, Thu : Gods geft. As madeed at m. that time it was not onely thicke, broad, and yellow coloured, but in length fine foote and two inches of all size. Then taking leave, being night, they were accompanied and followed with a number, carrying pets of drinke, and dishes of meate dreffed, to our lodging.

This reere the two Ships, with the dead bodyes of Sir Hugh Willoughbie, and his people, were few unto by Master Killingworth, (which remayned there in Mosco Agent almost two yeeres) and much of the goods and victuals were recovered and laned.

Annog 556, the

of a muucl-

lous length.

Anno 1556. The Companie Sent two Ships for Russia, with extraordinarie Masters and Saversia distitious voy- bring borne the two ships, which were frozen in Lappia, in the riner of Atzina aforesaid. The maship fent this yeere from England sayling from Lapland to the Bay of Saint Nicholas, tooke in lading with paffengers, to wit, a Russe Ambassadour, named loseph Napea, and forme of his men Shipped with Riven chard Chancelor in the Edward. But so it fell out that the two which came from Lappia, with all there new Master and Marriners, neuer were beard of, but in foule weather, and wrong bt Seas, after their two yeeres wintring in Lapland, became, as is supposed, unstanch, and sunke, wherein were drowned also diners Russes Merchants, and servants of the Ambassadour. A third soin the Edward aforesaid, fallow on the North part of Scotland, upon a rocke was also lost, and Master Chancelor with divers other, drowned. The faid Russe Ambassadour hardly escaping with other his men, Marriners, and some goods Saued, were Sent for into Scotland, from the King, Queene, and Merchants, (the messenger being Mafer Doctor Laurence Hustie, and others:) And then, as in the Chronicles appeareth, bonorably ontertayned and received at London.

Serchthrift.

This yeere also the company furnished and sent out a Pinnesse, named the Serchthrift, to discourt the 2 Harborowes in the North coast from Norway to Wardhoule, and so to the Bay of Saint Nicholas. Suppor Borough There was in ber Mafter and Pilot, Stephen Borough, with his brother William, and eight other. Their disconerse was beyond the Bay, toward the Samoeds, people dwelling neere the River of Ob, and found a found or fea with an Island called Vaigats, first by them put into the Card or Map. In the place they threw Snow out of their faid Pinnesse, with shouels in August, by which extremitie, and lacke of time, they came backe to Russia, and wintred at Golmogro.

Anno 1557. The companie with foure good Ships, fent backe the faid Ruffe Ambaffadour, and in companie with him, sent as an Agent, for further discouerie, Master Antonie Ienkinion, who after ward Anno 1558. with great favour of the Prince of Muscouta, and his letters, passed the river Volea to Cazan, and meaning to seeke Cathay by Land, was by many troupes and companies of uncivil Tarta-40 rians encountred, and in danger : but keeping companie with Merchants of Bactria, or Bogbar, and Vr-Musconie trade geme, travelling with Camels, he with his companie, went to Boghar, and no further: whose entertain-Mulconie trade ment of the King is to be had of Master Ienkinson, which returned Anno 1559. to Mulcouie. And is Anno 1560. hee, with Henrie Lane, came home into England : which yeere was the first fafe returns, without loss or shipwracke, or dead fraight, and burnings. And at this time was the first trafficke to the The first trade Natue in Liuonia, which confines with Lituania, and all the Dominions of Russia : and the Markets, Faires, Commodities, great Townes and Riners, were fent with by diners fernants: he reports were taken by Henrie Lane, Agent, and delinered to the companie, 1561. The trade to Rie, and Revel, of old time hath beene long since frequented by our English Nation, but this trade to the Narue was bitherto concealed from vs by the Danskers and Lubeckers.

1560.

Anno 1 561, the faid Master Antonie Ienkinson went Agent into Russia, who the next yeere after, passing all the river of Volga to Astracan, and over the Calpian sea, arrived in Persia, and opened the

Alcock Saine in Banifler dyed Edwards dyed at Afracan.

Also betweene the yeeres of 1568. and 1573. Sundry Voyages after Master Ienkinsons, were made by Thomas Alcock, Arthur Edwards, Master Thomas Banitter, and Master Geffrey Ducket, whose returne (if spoyle neere Volga had not presented by rouing Theenes) had altogether salued and recovered the Companies (called the old Companies) great loffe, charges, and damages: But the strue, By vnitie small things grow great, and by contention great things become small. This may be conderstood best by the Companie. The fromardnesse of some few, and enill doing of some uniust Factors, was cause of much of the enill successe.

Arthur Edwards was sent againe 1579, and dyed in the voyage at Astracan. About which 60 matters, are to bee remembred the Voyages of Master Thomas Randolph Esquire, Ambastadour Anno 1567. And late of Sir Icrome Bowes, Anno 1583. both tending and treating for further Discoueries, Freedomes, and Priviledges, wherewith I meddle not. But in conclusion, for their paines

They went to Arquico (then) in the Countrey of Preste Iohn; to deliner a letter to Aurique Barbola, the Factor of Antonio Sylveira, fent three yeeres before by Nuno de Cunha, who with fortie others escaped from the rebellion Xael, in which Dom Manoel de Meneses, with one hundred and fixtie Portugals were taken, foure hundred thousand Duckets, and fixe Portugal Ships. which were those that Solyman Bassa A. 1538. brought with prouision for his Armada to the fiege of Din ; the King of Xael having fent them with fixtie Portugals for a Cairo prefent; the Xael or Inclinreit hee bestowed as almes on Mahomets house at Mecca. I with three others, were sent some surredion.

dayes journeys into the Countrey to Barbefa, then in the Fort of Gelegtor in guard of the Queene. mother of the Prefte lobn, who welcommed them, as the nightly dew to the flowerie Garden, and as Helena to Ierufalem fo were they (faid fhe) to ber eyes.

But (to leave those things) he went thence to Ormus, and then to Goa; there offered his feruice to Pero de Farsa Captaine of Malaca, which entertained him. The occurrences of Bata. Achem. Aaru in Samaira, Queda in the continent, and his imployments in those parts, as also of Siaca, Paon, Patane, I omit.

He faith that hee was wracked at Sea comming from Aarn; of eight and twentie, fine onely escaping, two of which the Crocodiles denoured. Hee was taken and fold to a Moore, which carried him to Malaca. Thence Pero de Faria fent him to Patane in trade : from thence againe. imployed by Antonio de Faria to Lugor, Coia Acem a Guzarate Pirate fet vpon them, tooke, and killed all, Burall and Pinto only escaping, which leaping into the Sea were referred by a Barke, and fent to Patane, Faria afraid to return to Malaca, where he was io indebted for those goods, vowed to be reuenged of the Pirat. And by helpe of his friends armed a lunke with fine & fifty Souldiers. of which I and Borall (extreamely both indebted and wounded) were. From Patano we fet forth of Winds and Down (Land, When Called Bradapifson, some fixe leagues off the firme Land, where we Bradapian, found a lunke of the Lequisos, bound for Stam with an Embassadour of Namaquinn de Lindan, Prince of the Ile of Tofa fituate in fix & thirty degrees, which feeing vs come, hafted away with Tofa Spen Lella. all speed. Faia sent a Chinese Pilot to them with faire offers of loue and courtesie, who returned 30 with a present, a rich Sword, and sixe and twentie Pearles in a Boxe of Gold, with this answer. That the time would come, when they should communicate with vs in the Law of the true God of infinite A strange are

meroy, who by his death had given life to all men, with a perpetuall inheritance in the boule of the good: (were, and hee heleeved that this should bee after the halfe of the boule of time were pass. Neither could Antonie de Faria returne any thing in recompence, they being gotten farre into the Sea. Heere wee watered, and after coafted to fearch the River of Pulo Cambim, which divides the Pallo Cambim Kingdome of Champas, from the Seniorie of Cambois in the height of nine degrees. Thither we came in the end of May, and the Pilot went vp the River three leagues, to a great Towne called

Catimparis, where we stayed to take in prouision twelue dayes. Faris being curious, defired to Catimers. know whence that River came, the originall thereof (they told him) was a Lake called Progress. 40 Eastward from that Sea, two hundred and fixtie leagues in the Kingdome of Quitirvan; which Lake Pinates.

Lake was compassed with high Hills, at the bottome of which, along it the waters side, were eight Quitiruan. and thirtie Townes, thirteene great, the rest small. One of these Great ones was named Xin-Xintalea.

which in our money amounteth by the yeere to two and twentie millions of Gold. Foure 22. Millions Lords are sharers, and arestill at warres for a singular proprietie. They said that one of these called Duckers. Raiabitan, in the Court of his house in jarres, had set up to the necke in earth fix hundred Bars of Gold mines, & Gold in poulder, as good as that of Menancabo in Samatra; and that if three hundred of our men

were feut thither, with one hundred Caliners, they would without doubt become mafters thereof. They faid also that in Busquirim, another of those Townes, was a Rocke of Diamonds, better Rocke of Diamonds, then those of Laur and of Taniamoura in the He of Laur

Proceeding along the Coast of Champaa, from Pullo Cambim, we came to a shelfe called Saleyiacus, and the next day to the River Toobafoy, in the mouth whereof a Junke passed by, to which Similar a Piwe offered the courtefie of the Sea, and they in fcorne made flew of a Negroes Buttockes, with rate taken. many trumpets and other iollitie. Hence grew displeasure: in the night three Barks came to affaile vs, which we tooke, with the Captain, two Acheners, a Turke, & the Negro, This Negro confelfed himfelfe a Christian, slave to Gasper de Mello a Portugall, whom that dogge (he pointed to the bound Captaine) flew two yeerestince in Liampoo, with fixe and twentie Portugals besides with him in the Ship. What faid Faria, is this Similan? Yea, faid he, and he had thought in to small a Barke, there had not beene aboue fixe or feuen, and hee would have bound your hands and feet, and impaled you as hee ferued my master. Faria having served him and his with the same 60 fauce, tooke the Junke, in which was thirtie fix thousand Taess of Japon Silver, which make fif-

then those of Laue, and of Taniampura in the Ile of laug.

calen, where was a great Gold Mine, whence every day was taken a Barre and a halfe of Gold,

tie foure thousand Cruzados or Duckets, besides much good merchandize. Faria proceeded along the Coaft of Champan, and came to the River Timesorn, by our men Timesorn, or called Varella: into which enter the Ships of Siam and the Malaya Coast, which goe for China, Tam'achim,or and Truck for Gold, Calamba and Juory, whereof that Kingdome hath flore. Many Paraos or

at the Authors rate; and if he hath robbed the Altars of Truth, as he did those of the Calempho Idols, yet in Pequin equity we will not cut off the thu mbs (according to Nanquin rigons) upon bare for mise without any enidence against him, However, cheaper I am sure he is by farre to thee then to me. n ho would have beene loth to be fo true a labourer in a lying Authour, willingly or commonly (in my conceit) fallifying his owne fight, though perhaps not seldome deceined in things taken up on China men crust, or entredinto their China Bookes, such as be here often citeth. Men refuse not Silver for the trus, or entreannto tour Anna avorces, suco as or ore system chans, even sympton onner for the Oare; gutber the Refe namishflanding the pricklet; neglect not Harnest mixed with weeds, then with the chaffe, Frust for the fields, and hate not Home for the Beet flug; two will leither in probabilities of fasts believe all, or be so pensurous as to rest the most of that which here I present. Us then the freedome, and him at the pleasure (I say not mee) and if thou wilt not pardon such a briefe to collection, thou wouldst hardly give Castilian entertainement to all, and more then all, often yelding brauadoes and enlarging flourishes of stile, beyond a translation, as if his Authour had not saidenous The variety, if it had beene meerly deuised, presents I know not how many entercourses as interludes of Comicke and Tragicke escents, more worthis the reading then most in this kinde, and as fit to recreate: how much more, where veritie is (as I (uppose) the ground and substance, though perhaps inlared with other phantafies among. That the lefutes in some things differ, is their authoritie against his who as more learned and indicious, and longer experienced, might finde out some truths better then bee; which various fortunes, and that time, might let him see many particularities which they could not, writing fixtie seeres after. In many things they both agree : and Gaspar de Cruz hath many the same thing and that his strange Relation of the Crosse in China and the Hungarian of the Mount Sinai, is deli 10

CHAP. II. Observations of China, Tartaria, and other Easterne parts of the World, taken out of FERNAM MENDEZ PINTO bis Peregrination.

uered by Lucena, perhaps learned by some of His companie: and these exceptions by mee mentioned, are

rather praoccupations of censorious indging my indgement, then my indiciall sentence, which the indi-

cione will supend, and leane to better experience. Indicent posteri; veritas Temporis filia.

MENDEZ his many miserable adventures, his strange expedition with ANTONIO DE FARIA; divers coafts visited, Pirats tamed, miseries suffered, elorie recovered.



Ernam Mendez. Pinto, borne at old Montemor in the Kingdome of Portugall, was placed in feruice at ten or twelue yeeres of age in Liston, the thirteenth of December, An. 1521. on the day of breaking the Scatchions, or publike mourning for King Emanuel. A yeere and halfe after he fled vpon occasion of a fuddenaccident, and got aboord a Caruile which was taken by a French Pirat, which

would have made fale of them at Larache to the Moores. But a fortnight after taking another Portugall ship comming from Saint Thome worth 40000, Duckets , they returned for France, carrying some with them for Sea seruice, the rest they set on shoare by night on the shoare of Melides, naked; which came to Santiago de Cacem, where they were relieved in Thence he went to Setunal, and served Francisco de Faria a Gentleman belonging to the Matter of Santiago, and after that was Page to the Mafter himfelfe. But his meanes being short hee * See of Gama left his feruice.

An. 1537. he went for India in a Fleet of fine thips; the Admirall was Don Pedro de Sylus, lonne of Vasco * da Gama (first Discouerer of the Indies, whose bones he carried with him in the ship at his returne, which were received by King Johns appointment in greater Funerall pompe, then had beene feene done to a Subiect.) They arrived at Din the fifth of September. Thence after seventeene dayes he went with two Foists for the Straight of Mecca, and came in tora before the fight of Curia Muria, and Abedalcuria, almost wracked with foule weather, and comming to Sacotora, watered neere the Fortreffe which Francisco d'Almeida first Vice-roy of India, had 60 built, 1507. Having received some refreshing of the Christians there, they departed, and in the Mahomet. Mar- heighth of Masua tooke a ship, but fine men being therein left of eightie; one of which was trem nos pana the Captaine, a Renegado of Malorquy, who for love of a Mooryh woman had denyed his Faith, and refuling to returne to Christiantie, notwithlianding all perfivations, wee bound him hand

tom.1.pag.26. Straight of Mecca or the Portugall For-A Martyr of

fmall for gold.

Constitutes OF

finall Barkes came abourd vs, and wondred to fee white men with beards. They told him that if he would goe up the River to the Citie Pilausacem, where the King refides, hee might in five dayes fell his goods: for great Merchants reforted thither from the Lauhos, and Pagnaus, and Gue. or. That River they fand came from the Hill Moncalor, eightie leagues from that place, and he-Dird.wonder. vond that Hill it is much larger, but shallower, in some places making shallow fields, where bred infinite flore of Fowles which couer the ground, in such innumerable numbers, that two and fortie vecres before they cauled the Kingdome of Chintaleuhos, (which is eight dayes journey) to be dispeopled. Beyond that Country of Birds, is another wilde and mountainous, where abide many creatures much worse then those Birds, Elephants, Rhinocerotes, Lions, Wilde-swine Buffals, and Wilde-kine. In the midft of that Land or Kingdome (fo it had beene in old time) to is a great Lake, which the Natiues call Cunebetee, others Chiammay, from which proceeds this river, with other three ingreat quantitie washing that land. That lake, as some write, containeth in circuit fixtie Iaons (each of which is three leagues) alongft which are Mines of Silver, Copper. Tinne, and Lead, carried thence by Merchants in Cafilus, with Elephants and Badas (Rhinoce. rotes) to the Kingdomes of Sornan, or Siam, Passiloco, Sanady, Tangu, Prom, Calaminhan, and other Kingdomes. Being asked of the weapons of those Countries, they answered, That they have none but Poles burned, and short Crifes of two spannes. They might not go vp the River in less then two months, or two and a halfe, by reason of the force of the water, which way downe, they might dispatch in eight or ten daves. Faria going from thence, came to Pullo Champeiloo, an Iland not inhabited in fourteene degrees 20

and twentie minutes, at the entrie of the Bay of Cauchin-China : and thence having fitted his

Ordnance to Amam, to feeke Coia Acem : and being come to Pullo Capas, a Fleet of fortie great

Iunkes, of two or three Deckes a piece was feene in the River by Boralho, whom Faria had fent

to discouer, and after that another seeming two thousand saile great and small, and a walled

Pallo Champei-

* Ganias.

Thomas Ma-

Towne of some ten thousand houses. At his returne hee saw also one lunke in the Barre of the Quian Tolam, a River at anchor, which feemed of another Coaft. Faria supposed this last was of that Pyrat Cois Acem, which therefore hee affailed and tooke. One of the company was a Christian of Mount Sinai, named Tome Mostangue a Merchant, whose Barke Solyman Bassa had taken A. 1538 in the flangue his ad- Port of Indaa, with feuen others to be victuallers for his Armada of fixtie gallies, wherewith he was fent by the Great Turke, to restore Sulian Baadur to his Kingdome of Cambaya, whereof the 10 Mogor had then dispossessed him, and to drive the Portugalls out of India. And when he demanded of the Turkes his freight, which they had promifed, they tooke his wife and his daughter, and openly rauished them before his eyes; his sonne, which cried at that spectacle, they threw into the Sea bound hand and foot : and laid himfelfe in yrons, tooke away his goods, worth aboue fixe thousand Duckets. His wife and daughter died, and hee as desperate leaped one night into the Sea, at the Bar of Diu, with a sonne which there her had and got to Surat, and came thrice to Malacca in a Ship of Garcia de Saa; whence by Stephen Gama he was fent for China, with Chriflowan Sardinba, Factor of Malneo; whom riding at anchor in Cincapura Quiay Taylam, Captaine of this lunke flew with fix and twentie Portugals, and faued him alue because he was a Gunner. Faria cried out that he had heard of this Quiay Tajiam, that he had killed aboue one hundred Por- 10 tugals, and spoiled them of one hundred thouland Cruzados, and that since he killed Sardinha, he caused himselfe to bee called by his name. Hee asked this Armenian where he was, hee shewed where he with fixe or feuen others were hidden in the Iunke. Faria went and opened the skuttle, and Taiam with his company began a new fight, killed two Portugals and feuen boyes, and wounded twentie ; but in the end were flaine. Faria hafted away for feare of the Lunkes in the River, and came to the Coast of Cauchin-China where he risted this Junke, and found in her Spices and other goods, to the value of fixtie thousand Crozados, belides Artillery, which the Pirate

Pearle-fishers. Guamboy, and Citiesof China, Sonne of the

the King of

Aynam or Hai. IlandS, from

had taken out of the Ships of Sardinha, Olineyra, and Matos. The next day hee fet faile agains for Ainam, and by the way lighted on Boates fishing for Pearles, to whom they offered contract, who told them that Guamboy, a Port somewhat before, 50 (as in Cantan, Chinch:o, Laman, Comhay, Sumbor, and Liampoo, and other Coast Cities) was a place of trade for strangers, and counselled him to goe thither : for there they had nothing but Pearles, which they fished for the treasure of the Sonne of the Sunne, by the command of the Tu-Sunne, title of tan of Combay, supreme Gouernor of all Cauchin-China. And that the law was, that if any Barke besides the appointed entred, it should bee burnt with all the people therein. And because hee was a stranger, it was best for him to faile away before Buhaquirim the Mand irin, which was but feuen leagues thence came; who had fortie great Iunkes, with two thousand Mariners, and five thousand Souldiers; and did abide there the fixe moneths of fishing, from March to August both included. They much maruelled at the Portagall fashion, having neuer feene any fuch men, and suspected them theeues (they professing themselves Merchants of Siam) with gifts and 60 courtetie they wonne good estimation of these Fishers. One of these being asked touching Ajnam, answered, That it was once an absolute Kingdome gouerned by Prechau Gamu, who dying without an heire there arole such contentions, that in foure yeares and a halfe there dved fixteen Lacafass of men, which are fo many hundred thousands, whereby the Land was so dispeopled,

that the Cauchin King made himfelfe mafter thereof, with feuen thousand Mogores, which the Tartar lent him from Tuymican, then the chiefe Citie of his Empire. Hee fet over the fame Horba Paquard, who rebelled and made himfelfe tributarie to the King of China, paying fixe hundred thousand Duckets, or foure hundred thousand Taeis yearely and dying without heire, two bundred thirtie fine yeares fince, hee declared the King of China his Successour; and fo is hath continued. He countelled him not to goe to Aynam; because they were Diffemblers, nor would the Monsion suffer him to go to Liampoo; but to go to the good river Tananquir, stil sounding as he Tananquir, went for the shoalds; there he should have fure Anchorage, and in little space hee might sell all his goods; wherever it was not fafe by reason of reasonlessemen to adventure his goods on Land,

CHAP. 2. S. I. Faria tamer of Pirates. Psraticall villanies remarded

To that River we went, and in the mouth thereof nor able to stemme the Current, two lunks assayled vs, and their first Language was fixe and ewentie Peeces of Ordnance : the Issue was, Faris tooke them both, most of their men being drowned or flaine, and found therein seuenteene Christiane Prisoners, by whom hee learned that the Captayne was a Rouer which bare two names, one of a Christian, Francisco de Saa, the other of a Genile, Necoda Xicanlem. Fine yeares Xiciulem anos he had beene a Christian at Malaca; Garcia de Saa Captayne of the Fortresse, in his Baptisme ther Pyrate. imparting his owne name to him, who married him to a Gentlewoman of Portugal. But hee going, Anna 1 , 24. for (bincheo in a China lanke with twentie Portugals and his Wife, flue both her and them at Pulo Catan and the next yeare took another Portugall lunke at Chinches, which came from Sunda, and flue ten Portugals in her, and thence-forth practifed Pyracie on Chine- A Renegado 20 fes, (es hee thought vs to bee) and Portugals. The goods of the two lunkes amounted to fortie Chiza Robber, thousand Taeis, and senenteene Brasse Peeces. The Captayne of this place was in league with

him, and shared a third of his Pyracies. Faria therefore went to another Port fortieleagues Eathward, called Musipinan, wherein were many Merchants which came in Cafilas from the Land of the Laubes, and Pafuans, and Gnees with great flore of filuer. The current ferting flrong against vs at the Rock of Tilauinera. Wee came to Mutipinan, and learned that the River was Multipinan deepe, the best in that Bay; the people peaceable, that Merchants had come nine dayes before from the Kingdome of Benan in two Cafilas, each of fine hundred Oxen, with store of Silver, Benen, Iuory, Waxe, Benioyn, Camfire, Gold in poulder, to buy Pepper, Drugs, and pearles of Aynam; that they had not any Armada of great ships because the Wars which the Prechau (King) of the

Canchins made wereby land, that he abode at Quangepaaru, a Citie twelue dayes journy thence; that his Mynes yeelded him fitteene thousand Pites of Silver, halfe of which by Divine Law Quengepears. blonged to the people, which had remitted it to him on condition to pay no other tributes, where to the ancient Prechaus had sworne to keepe it, as long as the Sun should give light to the Earth. Therefreefold a great part of his goods till newes of the Tananquir Rouer made them afraid to come aboard : fo that he was forced to fet faile. Thus after many dayes spent in this Bay of Cauchm-china; because (oia Acem and the Py-

rates which robbed Christians were in league with the Mandarines , and fold that which they had gotten in Ainan, he purfued that purpose againe, and came to Anchorin Madela Hauen in that Iland where he encountred with Himmilau, a Chinese Rouer which had become lately a Moore, and bitter enemy of Christians, of which Religion hee had also beene. Fine Portugal Einnivas an Captine Boyes, which were aboard him, cryed out for mercy, whereby Faria mooned, fent to fine Moore know what they were, which answering with stones on their heads that came in the Boat, Pyrace. a cruell fight followed, in which Faria remayned Vilter, and feifed of the Captaine with fifteene others left aliue. He demanded for the Portugall Boyes, who told them they were in the Prow under Hatches; whereupon fending to fee, they found them lying on a heape with their heads off, a woman with her two children being also so served. Faria asked why hee dealt so with the small Innocents? He answered, it was sufficient that they were children of Portugals. Being asked why he had forfaken the Christian Religion: he faid, because the Portugals had respected him being a Gentale, with Cap in hand saluting him Quiay Nicoda, but after hee was Christian, made little account of him; whereupon he became a Moore in Bottam, and the King

of lastan vied him with much honour, his Officers called him Brother, and hee fware on a Booke to become an Enemy to the Portugall and Christian Name as long as he lived, the King and Priest applauding and promising all happinesse to his soule. Seuen yeares he had beene in execution of that Oath, and had taken a lunke of Luys de Pausia in the Ruer of Liampoo, with foure hundred Bares of Pepper, flue eighteene Poringals, besides slaues: and after that had taken at times foure ships, in which he had slaine neere three hundred persons, seuentie of them Portugali, and taken lifteene or fixteen hundred Bares of Pepper and other Commodities, of which the King of Pan had halfe, to secure him and let him have tale: in the River Choaboque on the Coast of China, he had killed Ruy Lobo, his old acquaintance, with feuenteene Portugals, escaping a 60 wracke, and taken into his lunke on condition to pay him two tchouland Cruzados, to let him on shoare at Patane; which notwithstanding, hee slue him and the rest by the Moores counsell

one night as they were alleepe. Faria would heare no further, but caused him to bee staine and cast into the Sea. In Silke and other goods he found in the Iunke to the value of fortie thousand Tacis: the Iunke he burned, having none to man her.

The other Necodas or Captaynes of the lunkes, feeing what Faria had done, confulted toes. ther, and feeing he might also doe as much to them, fent two chiefe men to him, defiring him as King of the Sea, to give them securitie to passe, in dispatch of their businesses before the Monton were ended, and that as his Tributaries, they would give him twentie thousand Taeisof Silver: to which he fware, and that no Thiefe should rob them; and with a Prefent received the Mo. ney brought him within anhoure after. A Boy which writ their Paffes, gayned in thirteene daves aboue fourethousand Tacis (besides gifts for dispatch) each lunke guing fine Tacis and the leffe Barkes two. The Vice-Roy also of Aimer fent him a rich Prefent, with a Letter to in-

treat him to ferue the Sonne of the Sunne as Admirall from Laman to Liampeo, at ten thousand Taeis annuall wages, befides (after three yeares end) further advancement : wheretohe excufed to his voworthineffe, and departed to Quangipara, a Citie of fifteene thousand Housholds, and for coasted all alongst the Hand of Ainan feuen monethes space, till the Souldiers were wearie and required their shares as had beene agreed; which was quieted with promise to winter at Some and having there made Money of all to give each man his part.

Tiba dos Isdro-

MiGrable wracks, and nights mife-

With this agreement they came to an Hand, called Theores Hand, because standing out of the Bay, it is their place to take the first of the Monson. Here at the new Moone in October wee were encountred with a cru ll Tempest in the night, by which the foure Vessels were broken in pieces, fine hundred eightie fixe persons drowned, of which eight and twentie Portugals; three and fiftie of vs by Gods mercie faued, Faria being one, and one and twentie other Portugals. the rest Slaves and Mariners. They spent two dayes and a halfe in Buriall of their dead, and mass get some of their prouision, which yet having taken Salt-water, would not last about five days of the fifteene they flayed there. Faria comforted them faying, that God would not permit for much suil but for a greater good; nor would have taken from thems fine insudred thousand formades; but to give them fixe hundred thousand: God doth not punishwith both hands, his mercie curing the wounds which his Instice maketh. Thus we walked naked, and bare-foot on the Strand & in the Wildernes, fuffering hunger and

cold, many of our companions dying, not so much for want of food, as the stinke and putrified

vnholfomnesse thereof. In this disconsolate plight, a Sea-kite came flying from behind the South

Reliefe almost missculous 2dilhane. Wonderfull prouifion.

Admirable

Cane of the Iland, and let fall from his Talons a Mullet a span long; which he taking vp with great prayle to God, and Prayer to Lefus Chrift, not to confider their merits, but bis merits for 10 them, hee canfed it to bee rotted and given to the ficke. Looking to the place whence the Fowle came, they faw more of them flying up and downe, and going thitherwards, discoursed a Valley with divers Fruit-trees, and before they came at it, they found a Deere which a Twee had newly killed, and with their generall cry was scarred from it, having begun to eate it. Wee feefled with it, and with many Mullets which those Sea-kites got, and (scarred with our cries) let fall. This fifting they continued from Munday till Saturday, and then feeing a faile they hid themselves in the Woods. It was a Lantes or Barke with Oares, which came thither with thir tie persons to wood and water; and whiles they were disporting themselves, and had left their Barke vnmanned, Farra apprehended the occasion, and having instructed them, at the name of lefus they all ranne vpon it, entred without gain-faying, and looking the Prow put to Sea. The to Chinois feeing their Langestaken, hasted to the shoare, but scarred with a little Iron-piece out of their Lantes, they fled to the Thickets. We presently fell to eate, what an old man was dreffing for the Chinose, and after fearched and found Silkes, Damaskes, Muske, and other goods worth foure thousand Cruzados, besides Rice, Sugar, Hennes, which we most esteemed for recourie of the ficke. There was a Boy of twelue or thirteene yeares old, whom Faria asked, whenceand whose the Lantes was : hee answered, it was his Fathers, from whom they had unhappily takenis lesse then an boure, all hee had gotten in aboue thirtie yeares : bee came from a place, called Quoaman, where in bartar for Silner be had gotten those goods, which he was going to sell to the Innkes of Siam in the Port of Comhay : and now bee going to supply his want of water , you have taken away his goods without feare of the Instice of Heasen. Faria promising to vie him as his Sonne; then, faid hee, 50 fet me on houre in that miserable Land where my true Father is, with whom I had rather die then line with fo bad people. Much reasoning passed, and he said, they could speake well of God, but little vied his Law : neither would he eate in three dayes space.

We determined to goe for Liampoo, two hundred and fixtie leagues Northwards from thence, and to get if we could, a better Barke, this being little, and scarsly able to brooke those New Moone-stormes on the Coast of China. At Sun-let wee set fayle, and next morning going East North-east, came to an Ile called Guiness, where we tooke a fisher-barke with store of fresh fish, whence we tooke what we thought fit, with eight men of her, twelve to ferue for the Lantes, our men being weake. They told vs that eighteene leagues thence was a good River, called Xinguan, within which was a poore fisher-village, called Xamoy, and three leagues higher vp, a Citie 60 of good Trade. The next day in the evening we came to Xamoy, where a Junke rode fitter for Farsas purpose, which in the night he tooke, the men being afleepe; whom he bound, threatning to kill them all if they made any cry; and fayled prefently with her to the lle Pullo Quirim, nine leagues off, and in three dayes after to an Hand called Luxitar, where for the recourty of the

New Moone. Tempests in

ficke hee flayed fifteene dayes. In the lunke hee found no Merchandize but Rice, the most of which he cast into the Sea to lighten her, and fit her for our Voyage. Thence wee put forth for Liampoo, where we heard were many Portugals from Malaca, Zunda, Siam, and Patane, which vied there to winter.

In the way we encountred, after two dayes fayling, with a Junke of Patane, which belonged an a China Pyrate, called Quiay Panian, a great friend of the Portugals, of whom he had thirtie in Quiay Panian s his company entertayned in his pay. They not knowing vs, began with a terrible falutation of china Pyrate. fifteene Peeces of Artillery, but by Croffes in their Banner, we knew them and made fignes, by which both congratulated each other with heartieft greetings, and Quiay Panian and he joyned

to in league to pursue their Fortunes together. They now purposed to goe to Chincheo, and there Chincheo. found fine fayle of Porugals, which told them of a great Pleet of foure hundred lunkes, with one hundred thousand men gone to the Iles of Goto, in succour of Sucar of Pontir, who had volun- Goto, tarily subjected himselfe to the King of China, in one hundred thousand Taeis Tribute yearely. We tooke out of those fine ships thirtie fine Souldiers more, and proceeded on our way for Liamooo. In the way we encountred a fmall Paraoo with eight Portugals forely wounded, whereof Antonio Anriquez, and Mem Taborda were, rich men of great efteeme.

These recounted to him that a Guzerate Rouer, Coia Acem, with three lunks and soure Lanteas Newes of Coia (in which were fine hundred men, one hundred and fiftie of them Moores) fet vpon them (ha- deem, uing parted seuenteene dayes agoe from Liampoo, for Malaca, purposing to goe for India, if the 20 Monson had permitted) before the Ile Gumbor, and after some houres fight tooke them; eightie

two persons (eighteene of them Portugals) were slaine, and as many others captitled, with one hundred thouland Taeis value in their Junke : one of the Pyrats Junks was fired and burnt to the water. Thefe few in the furie of the entry escaped in the little Boat which hung at flerne; they being busied in the spoyle, and the Sunne tnen set, could not follow, but went into the River with much triumph.

Faria and Quiay Panian who had kindted at La loo, provided themselves there of Powder, Lailoe, Lead, Victuals, and other necessaries for Money, by Jeaue of the Mandarine, (no Countrey in the World being like China for all kind of provisions) and there get two greater lunkes in truck of the other, and two Lantess, and one hundred and fixtie Marinets, so that they were in all five 20 hundred persons, of which ninetie fine were Portugals. They had one hundred & fixty Harquebuf-

fes, forty Braffe Peeces, & fixty Quintals of Powder, nine hundred pots of Powder, foure thousand Darts headed with Iron, Arrowes, and many Fire-workes, with other Weapons. Thus prouided, they fet forth in pursuit of Coia Acem, and by a Fisher-boat learned that he was in the Riner Tinlan, there to turnish and fit the lunke lately taken from the Portugals, to goe with it and two others for Siam (where he was borne) about ten dayes thence. Faria lent Vicente Morofa in the Fisher-boat, with some of his company to informe himselfe more fully, which making a thew of fifting with the reft, he early did, and brought word aboard of the eafineffe of the attempt. In the night they anchored, and went vp the River in the morning, the enemy knowing nothing till they came in fight, and Faria crying out, Ho, my Masters, in the Name of Chrift,

40 to them, to them, Santiago, off went the Ordnance, the small shot succeeded, that none now in the Iunkes durft appeare. His small Veslels (Lorche) comming from the shoare with succour were fo entertayned with great shot that they could not helpe themselues, and by our small Vesfels were fired with the fire-pois; in three of them two hundred persons were flaine, Out of the fourth they leaped into the water, and were most slaine by Panians men.

Coia Acem which before was not knowne, feeing his Moores ready to try the waters courtese to escape those fiery enemies, armed in Buffe, with Places fringed with Gold, cryed out aloud that he might be heard, La !lah ill .llah Muhamed rocolalah : what shall you Muslemans and inst men of the Law of Mahemet, suffer your selucs to be conquered of so feeble a Nation as are these Dogges, which have no more heart then white Hens, and hearded woment to them, to them, the Booke of Flowres bath given promise from our Prophet to you and me, to batheour selves in the bloud of these Cafres with-

50 one Law. With these curied words, the Deuill to animated them, that it was fearefull to see how they ranne on our Swords. Faria on the other fide heartned his in the name of Christ crucified, they ranne on our swortes. I was a low statem, uch a blow with a two hand Sword on his opine flower, uch a blow with a two hand Sword on his opine flower. Head-pieceof Maile, that he funke to the ground, and with another blow cut off his legges, con dem Whereupon his men with fuch furre all yled Faria, not caring for thirtie Portrgals which flood flame. about him, that they gaue him two wounds, which put fuch spirit into our men, that in little space, eight and fortie of the Enemies lay dead upon Coin Acem, and therest they she all but fue, whom they tooke and bound, the Boyes cutting the others in quarters, and throwing them into the water with Coia Acem, and the King of Bintans chiefe Cacia, or Priest, the fredder and The Cacia hathe drinker of Portugall blond, as he stiled himselfe in the beginning of his Writings, for which need of Chris

60 hee was of that curied Scot much honoured.

Of the Enemies were slaine three nundred and eightie, of ours fortie two (eight of which were Portugals, Fasia fearched the Hand, and found a Village therein of fortie or fiftie houses, which Cosa Acem had facked, flaying some of the Inhabitants. Not faire off was a great house

feeming a Temple full of ficke and wounded men, ninetie fixe in number, which the Pyrathed there in cure, whom he burned, fetting the house on fire in diners places, those that sought to escape being received on Pikes and Launces. The Lunke which they had taken from the Portugals fixe and wentie dayes before, Faria gaue to Mem Taborda, and Antonio Anriquez in Almes for remillion of his finnes, taking their Oath to take no more but their owne. He tooke speciall care of the wounded, and caused the slaues to be set free. After all this, there remayned of deep gaines, one hundred and thirtie thousand Taeis in Siluet, of Impar and other goods, which there Pyrat had taken along that Coast from Sumber to Fucheo.

ANTONIO FARIA bis taking of Nouda a Citie in China, triumph at Liampoo ; strange Voyage to Calempluy , mi-Serable Shipwracke.

Faria wracked

Aria hauing recourted his ficke men, fee fayle for Liampso, and beeing comneto the point of Micuy in fixe and twentie degrees, by a from the was driven young Rock in the darke night, and was forced to cast out all the goods, and cut all their Masts an ouer-board; and with much adoe we escaped with their helpe (two and twentie drowned by ouer-hastinesse) to the Iunke of Mem Taborda. The second day after came two

Neuday.

Portugals from Quiay Panians Iunke, and plained to vs their almost like misfortune (one gust hauing taken away three men, and cast them a stones cast into the Sea) and the losse of the small Junke with fiftie persons, most of which were Christians, and seuen Portugals. One of the Lanteas came and told of their difaduenture, the other Lantea loft, only thirteene men escaping, which the Countrey people carryed Captines to Nonday: fo that two Iunkes and a Lantea with aboue one hundred perfons were loft, and in Munition and other goods, aboue two hundred thoufand Cruzados, the Captayne and Souldiers having nothing left but that on their backes. The China perillous Coaft of China is subiect to these strokes more then other Countries, so that none can sayle 2 thereon one yeare without disafters, except at the fall and change, they betake them to their Ports, which are many and good, without barred entries, except Laman and Sambor,

Faria went and anchored before Nouday and fent fome to found, and to take some of the people to enquire of his men, who brought a Barke with eight men and two women, one of whom (having first sworne by the Sea, that it below, and the winds above sould pursue bim if her brake bis Faith, and the beautie of the starres whose eyes beheld all wrong, as the Chinese requested) told him that he taking them to be Sea Rouers and Robbers, had taken them and cast them in Irons. Faria writ to the Mandarin by two of those Chinois, with a Present worth two hundred Duckets to returne his men, which returned the next day with an Answere written that himfelfe should come and demand Justice at his feet, and he would doe as hee faw cause. Hee wrote so againe, offering two thouland Taeis for their Redemption, fignifying that hee was a Perineal Merchant, which came to trade at Liampoo, and payd Customes without any Robbery; and that the King of Portugall his Lord was in true amitie with his Brother the King of China, and in Malaca his subjects vied the Chinois juilly. This calling the King of Portugall the King of Chinas Brother, he tooke fo hainoully, that he caused the China Messengers to be whipped, and their eares cut, and fent them backe with a railing Answere written to Faria, which had so proudly blasphemed, calling his King the Brother of the Sonne of the Sunne, the Lion crowned untbincrea dible power in the Throne of the Vniuerse, under whose feet all Crownes of all that governe the Earth, are placed with all their Seniories, as all Writers affirme in their Histories. For this Herefie he burned his Writing with his Picture, as he would doe to himselfe, charging him presently to set sayle so and be gone. Faria enraged, refolued to affault the Towne, having three hundred men (feuentie of them Porsugals) with the company of Quiay Pansan, for that feat.

Hauing therefore taken foure Barkes, the next morning betimes with them, three Iunkes and a Lorcha or Lantea, he went up the River, and had fixe fathomes water and an halfe anchoring by the wals. And striking layle without falutation of Artillery, we put off our Flagge of contract, after the China custome, to fulfill all complements of peace, fending new offers of love and further fatisfaction for the Prisoners. But the Mandarine full of indignation, hardly vied the Messengers on the wall in fight of the Armada; whereupon, Faria desperate of doing any good that way leaving order with the lunkes continually to shoot at the Enemie where they were thickest, he with his company landed without contradiction, and marched to the Towne. When we were comne within little more then a Calieuer shot of the Ditch without the wall, 69 there islued by two gates one thousand, or twelve hundred; about one hundred of them Horsemen, or Hackneymen rather (for they rode on leane Iades) which began to skirmish in such disordered fort, encountring one with another, and many of them falling to the ground, that they

framed to be of fome neighbour Villages, which came more of force then with force or heart to the balineffe. Faria expected them, encouraging his men, and making a figne to the lunkes. The Horsemen distinct themselves, and wheeled about, as if that would have scarred vs.

which feeing, without effect they joyned in one bodie or heape rather; whereat the Cantagone commanded all the Caleguers to shoot off at once, with furth successe, that the former halfers the Horsemen fell to ground. And then wee which till that time had stood still gaue the affanle. crying on the name of Jefus, infomuch that they fled fo confusedly, that they fell one wooh another, and when they came to the Bridge over the Ditch, they thronged themselves fo that none could goe forward. In this case we came on them, and slue about three hundred, none of them In fearly drawing Sword to defend themfelies. Wee profecuted the victory to the gate. In which was the Mandarine with fixe hundred mentairely mounted, armed with a Corflet of Crimfon Veluet gilded, which we knew after to have belonged to Tome Perez, which King Emismel of Thomas Perez, plorious memorie had fent Embaffadour to China. Hee and his began a fight with vs in the entric of the gate, more valorous then the former, till a Boy of ours difmounted the Mandarine The Mandarine from his Horse with a Harquebusse shot thorow the breast, which caused the rest disorderly to saine. flee, and we with them into the Towne. They calling downe their weapons range out at another gate toward the Countrey, none remayning. Antonio Faria gathering his companie together, marched orderly to the Chifanga, the Priton where our men were, brake up the sates and grates, and freed his men. Then did he appoint halfe an houre to his people for spoile, himselfe Prisoners los-

grates, and freed his mines house, and had \$000. Taeis of Silver there, & five great boxes of Muske: fed.

The Towns the rest he game to the Boyes, which was much Silke twifted, and vnwrought, Damaske, Sate facked. tin, Porcelane; the lacke was to rich, that foure Barkes or Veffels in which they came went four times laden therewith to the lunkes, that there was neither Boy nor Mariner which had not a Chiff or Chiffs of pieces, belides what they had fecretly. Having frent an houre and halfe. he feeing night now come on, fet fire in ten or twelve parts of the Citie, which being built of Pine timber fuddenly arofe into fuch a flame, that it feemed a Hell. And without impediment. he embarked his company with much riches, and many faire Girles eyed by foures and fines with Match, they crying, ourstriumphing.

It was now late, yet had Faria care of the wounded, which were fiftie of them, eight Portion 30 gals, and to burie the dead, which were nine only one Portugall; and keeping good watch that night, as foone as it was day, he went to a Village on the other fide of the water, and found not one person in it, the houses still farnished with goods and prouisions, with which he laded the lunkes: and departed for a defart Hand fitteene leagues from Liampoo, called Pullo Hinbor, where was good water and anchorage. After wee had fayled five dayes betwire the Iles Comolem and Comolem the continent, Premata Gandel a Rouer which had done much damage to the Portugals in Pa- llands. tane, Sunda, Siam, taking vs for Chinefes, fet vpon vs with two great lunkes, in which were two hundred fighting men befides Mariners, and grapling with the lunke of Mem Taborda, fiad almost taken it, when Quiay Panian came to her succour with such a stroke on her quarter, that both lanke; the three Lorche which Faria brought from Nonday comming in, faued molt of our

40 men, the enemies being all drowned , and Mem Taborda freed. Meane while, Premaid Gundel Another feahad with two hookes and Iron chaines fastned himfelfe to Farias Iunke, both in the poope and fight. prow, tuch a cruell battell following, that in leffe then an houre most of Farias then and him- and another felfe were wounded, and twice in danger of taking, when the three Lorche, and it lively limbe funke, which Pero Sylna had taken at Nouday, came in to his fuccour, fo that eightie fixe Mooret which Faits vidoite. had entred Farias Iunke were flaine, who had cooped our men before in the poop-roome; and thence entring the Pirats Iunke, put all therein to the fword.

This victorie coft feuenteene of ours their lines, fine of them of the best Portugal Souldiers, belides three and fortie wounded. The prize was valued at eightie thousand Taers, the most of 120000 Cruit lapan Silver, which the Pirate had taken in three lunkes, come from Firande bound for Chin- 23dos. so cheo. In the other funken lunkes was faid to be as much. With this prize Farin went to a little Iland, called Buncalon, foure leagues off, and stayed there eighteene dayes, making Cottages for Bunation,

the wounded, which there recoursed health. Thence they departed, Quiay Panian going in that lunke of the Pirate, with 20000. Taeis ouer and aboue for his part : in fixe dayes we came to the Ports of Liampoo, which are two lles, in which the Portugals made at that time their Liampoo, a Porcontractation, and was a Towne of one thousand houses, and sixe or seven Churches built by sugal Towne them, with Sherifs, an Auditor, Alcaides, and other Officers; the Notaries ving to write, China, feuen I, N. public Notarie for the King our Lord, in this Citie of Liampoo, &c. as if it had beene featevented between ted between tand Lifton: and fuch was their forwardness, that some houses cost Liampo three or foure thouland Cruzados, all which were razed afterwards by the Chinois; fo vncer-6c tains are the things of China (which in these parts are so esteemed) so subject to disastres and

When Faria was come to Portas de Liampoo, he fent Mem Taborda, and Anriques first to acquaint the Townel-men what had passed, who sent leronymo do Rego with two Lameas, to thanke him for the bountie shewed in the case of Cois Acem, and with refreshings; and for the

bufineffe at Noudsy, he need not be afraid there to winter, the King of China being as they faid, Gioill warres lately dead, and cuill warres succeeding, thirteene competitors being in Armes to enforce their Gioff wares later) wead, and cuttin waites to ceduring, that each compension companies or emote other in this. Fabus precended right: and that the Tutan No, which was next person to the King in all the Go. uernment, with meere and mixt Empire of Maiestie Regall, was belieged in the Citie of Queans), by Preebau Muan Emperour of Cauchinas; in whole favour it is holden for certaine, that the King of Tartaria is comming with an Armie of nine hundred thousand men: and that in this troubled estate Nonday would not be thought of, which was in comparison of many other Cities in China, leffe then Oeiras compared with Lisbon. He was fixe dayes after with great tri-

umph and glorious shewes, made of his owne Fleet, and of the many Boars, Barkes, and Citia umph and giornous inewes, made on the very state of the feet of the state of the st Gold Chaines, and gilded Swords, till he came into the Port, in which rode in a rew, twentie ix Ships, and eightie Iunks, besides a greater number of smaller vessels, fattned one before another in two wings, making a street betwixt them, adorned with Lurell, and other greene boughes, and fweet herbs, the Ordnance thundring on both fides a congretulation. The Chineis wondred and asked if he were Brother or neere Kinfman to their King, they received him in fuch honour; Nay, faid a conceited Portugall, but his father shooed the Kings Horles, and therefore is he wor. this of this honour. Hereat they were more then amazed, and faid, There were great Kings in the World, of which their Authours had made no menuon, and the King of Portugal teemes one of them, and much to exceed the Cauchim, or the Tartar, and it were no finne to lay he may hold compare with the Sonne of the Sanne, the Lion crowned in the Throne of the World, 20 Others confirmed the same, alledging the great riches which the bearded men generally posses fed. A glorious Lantea was purpotely adorned for his person in which hee went, with many Musical Instruments of the Chinas , Malayor, Champass, Siamites , Borneos, Lequios, and other Nations which there secured themselves vader the Portugals, for feare of Rouers which filled I sould wearie you to let you see the rest of this pompous spectacle, and more to beare their Orations

preserring bim besore Alexander, Scipio, Annibal, Ponipey, Czlar : Neither will Religion let me goe with him to their Masse: nor doe I ener dine worse then at solemne Feasts; and others will grudge me arcome as Comedies: all which pempes I will leave to our Author, enlarged by the Spanish translator, Canon of the Church of Arbas, as dedicated to Manuel Seuerin de Faria. There hee stayed five 30 moneths, spending the time in Hawking, Hunting, Fishing, Feasing. Quicy Panian in this time dyed. After the made ready to goe to the Mines of @margoru. Others diffusated him by read for of warres in those parts, and a famous Pyrat called Similar, cold him of an Illand called Calmpluy, in which seuenteene Kings of China were buried with much treasures, in Vests, and Idols of Gold, and other incredible riches; which hee on no other testimonie embraced, (without confulting with his friends, who not a little blamed him therefore) and went with Similar in feafth of this Hand, fetting out May the fourteenth, 1542.

Currents in in the Bay of

He fet foorth with two Panonras, which are as it were Frigots, but somewhat higher: Iunkes he yied not, both for secrecie, and because of the Currents which set out of the Bay of Nanquin, which great thips cannot flemme, by realon of the ouer-flowings from Tartaria and Nixibus 40 Flaon, in those moneths of May, June, and July. He had with him fixe and fiftie Portugals, with a Priest, and fortie eight Mariners of Patane, and fortie two Slaues : more our Pilot Similar would not admit, fearing suspition in trauerfing the Bay of Nanquin, and entry of many Rivers Angitur.

Nanganfu.

much is habited. That day and night wee cleared the lles of Anguar, and followed our voyage thorow a Sea before neuer layled by Portugals. The hrit fine dayes, we fayled with good winde, in fight of land to the entrie of the Bay of Nanquins islings, and passed a gulfe of fortie leagues, and had fight of a high Hill called Nangafu, along it which we ranne to the North fine dayes; at the end whereof, Similar put into a small River, the people whereof were white, of good stature, with small eyes like the Chinois but differing in speech and behausour. After three dayes the tempest ceasing, we set sayle East North east seven ayes together in fight of land, and cros- 50 fing another gulfe, there was a straight open to the East, called Silenpaquim, ten leagues in the mouth, within which we sayled fine dayes in fight of many Townes and Cities very faire; and this River or ftraight was frequented with innumerable shipping; insomuch that Faria was a-

fraid to bee discourred, and would needs against Smilaus minde turne some other way. Thus out of the Bay of Nanquin (Smilan : elling them of a moneths workeoffayling by the Riuer Sumbepaden, one hundred and feuentie leagues distant thence to the North) wee sayled five dayes, at the end whereof wee faw a very high Hill called Faniss, and comming neere it, entred a goodly rode, where one thouland ships might ride at anchor. Wee sayled thence thirteene dayes along the coast, and came to the Bay of Buxipalem in 49. degrees, where wee found it somwhat cold and Isw Fishes of strange shapes, some like Thornbacks, aboue source braces or fa-60 thoms compaffe, flat nofed like an Oxe; some like great Lizards, speckled blacke and greene, with three rewes of prickles on the lacke, like briffles, three spannes long, very sharpe, the rell of the body full, but of shorter ; these Fishes will contract themselves like Hedge-hogs, and looke fearefully; they have a sharpe blacke snout with tuskes, after the manner of a Bore, two spanies

long. Other deformities and diversities of Fishes we law. Fifteene leagues further, we came to an another fairer Bay called Calnidar, fixe leagues in compale fet round with Hills, diperfified Calnidar, with Woods and Rivers, foure very great.

Similar favd that the filch of dead Carcaffes of creatures, proceeding from the operflowings. specially in November, December, and Januarie, at the full of the Moone, caused the generation of fuch diperfitie of Fishes and Serpents in that Bay, and the former, which were not leene in other parts off that Coathe Farinasken him whence those Rivers came, and hee faid that he knew

not but if it were true which warweitsen, two of them same from a great lake called Molcum. Molcumbia. his and the other two from a Prouince of great Mountaines, which all the yeers were conered to with from called Alimania, and in Summer when great part of the frow was melted, they be- Alimania. came le impatuous, as wee now faw : and for that River in the mouth whereof we were entred,

called Pastehenam, wee were now in the name of the Lord of heaven to turne the Prow to the Pastehenam Faft, and East Southwest * to fearth agains the Bay of Nanquim, which we had left behind two * Aleste a hundred and fixtie leagues, all which way we had made higher then Calemplay. The fecond day leffufe. we came to a high Maussaine called Basmafan, flored with divers kindes of wilde beafts, which continued neere fiftie leagues and fixe-dayes fayling; and after came to another Hill as wilde as the former called Ganginanon, and all the way forward was mountainous, and fo thicke of trees Gantitanas. that the Sunne could not pierce. Smillan layd, that in ninetic leagues foace there was no habi-

tation, and in the skirts thereof lined a deformed fanage people onely by their Hunting, and 20 some Rice which they got in China by exchange of wilde beatts skinnes, which hee sayd came to aboue a million yeerely. Of these Giganbos, wee law a beardlesse youth with fixe or feuen Kine before him, to whom Similar made a figue, and hee flayed till we came to the Bankes fide. and shewing him a piece of greene Taffata (which hee fayd they much esteemed) with a hardle voyce he layd, Quites paran fanfan, words which none vnderstood, Farin commanded to give Giants.

him three or foure Conados of the taffata, and oxe Porcelanes, which he received with much ioy, faying, Par param porby pilaca bunanque doren, ugning with his hand to the place whence hee came, and feating his Kine, he ranne thither. He was cloathed with a Tygers skin, the havre outward, his armes, head and logges bare, with a rude pole in his hand; well shaped, seeming ten palmes or spans long, his hayre hanging on his shoulders. Within a quarter of an houre hee reto turned with a line Deere on his backe, and thitteene persons with him, eight men and fine wo-

men, with three Kine tyed in coards dancing at the found of a Drum, giving now and then five dance. ftrokes on it, and other fine with their hands, crying aloude, Cur our himan falens. Antonio de Faris. capfed to flew them five or fixe pieces and many Porcelanes. All of them were cloathed in like manner, only the women had on their wrifts groffe bracelets of Tin, their hayre longer then the men, and full of Flowers, and on their necker a great neck-lace with coloured Shels, as big as Ovster-shels. The men had great poles in their hands, furred halfe way with such Pelts as they wore ; they were strong fet, with thicke lippes, flat moses, great open nostrils, bigge faces. Faris caused to meature them, and none of them were higher then ten spannes and a halfe, one old man nigh eleven, the women not ten : but I suppose the most sauage

40 that ener vet were discouered. Fariagene them three corges of Porcelane, a piece of greene Thatata, and a basket of Pepper; and they fell on the ground, and lifting up their hands with A Corgeis so, their fifts shut, sayd, Unanguabilen oponguapan lapan, lapan, lapan, Inpan, and the Deere, and after many words, in three houres conference returned with like dance as they came.

Wee followed our way fine dayes more up the Riner, about fortie leagues, in which we had fight of that people, and fixteene dayes more without fight of any, at the end of which we came to the Bay of Nanquim, hoping in fine or fixe dayes to effect our delires. Similar Willed Faria not to let his Portugal; be feene. And having fayled fixe dayes East and East North-east, we had fight of a great Citie called Sileupamor, and entred into the Port two hours within night, being Sileuparte.

50 a faire Bay almost two leagues in circuit, where abundance of shipping rode at anchor, seeming about three thouland : which made vs fo afraid, that our againe we went, and croffing the Riuer (which may bee about fixe or feuen leagues ouer) wee ranne alongst a great Champaine the rest of the day with purpose to get some refreshing, having passed thirteene hungry dayes. We Tanamadel. came to an old building called Tanamadel, and got prouision to our mindes. This place, the Chiwork which wee found there, told vs. belonged to an Holpitall two leagnes thence for entertainment of the Pilgrims, which vilited the Kings Sepulcher. Wee continued our voyage feuen dayes more, having spent two moneths and a halfe tince wee came from Liampos, and now Faria could no longer conceale his discontent, that hee had thus followed Similars projectly and recei-

uing of him answer little to the purpose, had stabbed him with his Dagger if others had not in-60 terpoled Similar, the night following as wee rode at anchor neere the land, I warn a shoare, the watch not perceining, which Faria hearing was fo impatient, that going on shoare to feeke him, hee returned frustrate, and found of his fixe and fortie Chinais, two and thirtie fled. Full now of con uffon, it was by counfell resolved to seeke Calempluy, which could not be farre off: and the next night entired a Barke riding at anchor, and tooke fine men steeping therein; of whom hee

learned that Calemplay was ten leagues off, and with their helpe found it, eightie three flaves at. ter he had fet out on that enterprise.

This lland was feated in the midst of the River, and feemed to bee a league in Compate. His ther came Fatia with trouble and feare, three houres within night, anchoring about a chamber the from it. In the morning it was agreed, first to goe about it to see what entrances it had and what impediments might befall their defigner. The Iland was all environed with analogue of what impediments in the control was a few and the control was a supplied the west Marbles fire and twentier frameshigh, fo well cut and fer together, that all she will feemed but one piece, the like whereof wee had neuer feene in fada, or elfewhere; from the but tome of the water to the brim, it contayned other fixe and ewentic spannes. In the top ware border of the same worke round ingirting it, like a Friers girdle, of the bignesse of a made to of twelue gallons, on which were fer grates of Latten turned, every fixe fathoms faftened into holes of the same Latten; in each of which was the Idollos a woman, with a roundball inher hands, none knowing what it fignified. Within thefe grates, was a rew of many Monfere of cast Iron, which in manner of a dance hand in hand, compassed the He round. Further inwards from those monstrous Idols, in the same ranke, was another of Arches of rich works pleasant to behold. And all from hence inward, was a groue of dwarfe Orange-trees thicke fet; in the midft whereof were builded three hundred and fixtie Hermitages, dedicated to the Gods of the yeere, whereof those Paynims have many fabulous praises. A quarter of a league higher, on a hill to the East, were seene buildings with seven fronts of houses like Churches, all from the top to the bottome wrought with gold, with high Towers feeming Bell-steeples; 10 and without, two streets with Arches which eacompassed these buildings, of the same works with the fronts; and all from the highest top of the steeple pinacles to the bottom wrought with

gold; whereby we judged it fome fumptuous and rich Temple.

After this view taken, Faria resolved (though it were late) to goe on shoare, to see if he could speake with any in those Hermitages; and so (leaving sufficient guard in the Barkes) with fortie Souldiers, twentie Slaues, and foure Chinois; (which knew the place, and had beene fometimes there, and might serue vs for Interpreters) he committed the two Barkes to Father Diego Lobeto, and entred at one of the eight Entrances; walking thorow the Orangetto-groue to an Hermitage, two Caliuer shors from our landing place, with the greatest silence that might bee, and Iefusmade a with the name of left in our heart and seputh. Having yet feene no person, he felt at the doore of the Hermitage with his Halberd, and perceined it locked on the infide : hee bade one of the Chinois knocke, which having done twice he heard an answer within answering, Praised bee the Creator which gilded the beautious Heastons, see about and I will know thy bufineffe. The Chinois Went about and entring the backe coore, opened that where Faria flood, who with his companie going in, found one man feeming aboue one hundred yeeresold, in a long Ruffet Damaske

patron of

He enters an

Hermitage.

thecues.

Statues.

garment, by his presence seeming Noble (as after wee learned he was) who seeing such a troupe fell downe, trembling hand and toot. A good while it was before hee could speake, and then afked what wee were, and what we fought. The Interpreter answered by Farias command, that hee was the Captaine of these strangers of Siam, who bound for the Port of Liampoo in trade of and an Hermit Merchandile was wracked at Sea; hee and these escaping miraculously, and therefore vowing 40 to come to that Holy land on Pilgrimage, to praise God for deliuerance from so great a dan-Absam vowes ger, and was now come to fulfill it; and withall to demand somewhat in almesto relieue him for his returne, protesting after three yeeres to restore it double whatsoeuer hee now tooke. Hiticon (that was his name) answered, I have well beard what thou hast faid, and that damnable designe whereto thy blindnesse (as the Pilot of Hell) hath drawne thee and thine associates to the bostome of the lake of night. For in stead of thankes for so great a henefit, then commess torb: and what I pray thee will the Dinine inflice repay thee at thy last breath ! change thousby suil purpose, and (beleeue me.) God will change thy punishment. Faria prayed him, hee would not bee angry, faying, hee had no other remedie of life : whereat the Hermite lifting his hands and eyes to Heauen, sayd, weeping. Bliffed bee thou Lord, which sufferest on earth men, 10 which take for remedic of life thine offences, and for certaintie of glorie will not serve thee one day. And then turning his eyes to the companie which were rifling the Hangings and Chefts, taking the filuer from amongst the bones of the deceased therein, hee fell twice from his seate with griefe; and pensuely put Faria in minde of his last breath, of restitution, of penance perpetuall to his flesh, and liberall and discreet communicating to the poore, that the leruant of night should have nothing to accuse him in the day of account : praying him also to command his companie, to gather up the bones of the Saints, that they should not lye contemp-Compleathy. tible on the ground. Faria gave him many good words and complements, professing himselfe (which hee whispered neerer) forrie of what had passed, but it hee should not doe it, his companie had threatened to kill him. If it bee fo, faid the Hermit, then feell the paine bee 60 leffe then these ministers of night, whom as hungry Dogs, it seemes all the silver of the world would

> Thus with many good words hee tooke leaue of the Hermit (having taken all they could get) Who told him bis knowledge might make bis sinne more penall. Nuno Coetho praying him not to be

CHAP.2. S.3. The Foxe preacheth, prayeth, preyeth, payeth for all at last.

so angry for so small a marter, hee replyed, More small is the feare which thou hast of death, when having spent thy life in foule facts, thy soule shall stand as soule at the passage of this dung-bill of thy fielb. And if thou feekest more Silver to fill thy infernall appetite, thou masst finde in the houses adionning enough to make it split, as well in danger of Hell for this already, saue that more burthened thou Thali descend swifter to the bottome. Pray, fayd Coeibo, take all in patience, for to God hath commanded in his holy Law : the Hermit shaking oft his head, fayd, I now see that which I never thought to have heard, Inbred wickednesse and vertue famed, the same man stealing and preaching : and turning to Faria, prayed him that hee would not fuffer them to fpet on the Altar, being liefer to due a thousand times then to see it, which he promifed. Hee then demanded of Hitt-

to con, what persons lived in all those houses; who aniwered, three hundred and fixtie Talagrepos onely, and fortie Menigrepos which ferued them without, for their prouision, and the care ges Hermire of the Sicke. Hee asked if the Kings vied to come thither : no fayd he, The King being some of & autondance the Sunne, can absolue all and none may condemne him. Asked of their Armes, hee fayd, To goe as Lag breto Heasen, there needed not armes to offend, but patience to fuffer. For the mixture of that Silver thren. with dead bones in the chefts, hee answered, that it was the Almes which the deceased carried Papellpower with them, to provide them of necessities in the beauen of the Moone. Asked of women with them. hee land, that the Bee stings those which eate the honer, and pleasures of the field needed not to the life of the Soule. And thus parted hee from the Hermit with embraces, with purpole to returne the next day (it being now night) to the other houses, and not taking aboard with him this 20 Hermit, as hee was admifed, faying, his gowtie legges could carrie no tydings of vs : which yet

hee did, creeping to the next and bidding him goe call the Bonzil.

guish, till not long after his heate was cooled.

For an houre after midnight, wee law fires in a rew, which our Chinois told vs, were fignes They are difof our discouerie, and therefore aduised vs to haste away. Faria was awakened, and would needs concred a shoare with fixe men, and ranne like a mad-man from one place to another : his companie requested him to haste away, and he answered, for his honour hee would first see the danger, and intreated them to stay one halfe houre, and swearing hereto, away hee goeth, and followes the found of a Bell to an Hermitage, in which were two men in religious habits; the place was richer then the former wee had beene in. They tooke thence an Idoll of Silver from the Altar with a myter of Gold on his head, and a wheele in his hand, and three Candlefticks of filter 30 with long chaynes; and taking the two Hermits with them, returned aboard the Barkes with great halfe. Of one of thele, they learned that Pilan Angiroo had come to the house of the Sepulchers of the Kings, and cryed out to them to awaken out of their fleepe, telling them of their oath to the Goddesse Amida, of Strangers with long beards and Iron bodies, which had robbed the Saints, and would kill them all, whence followed the fires, and fending to give notice to the Cities Corpilem, and Fumbana for ayde, their Religion prohibiting them to handle any thing which might draw bloud. Farea now having gone downe the River a great way, was much enraged for omitting such oportunitie, plucking his beard, and beating himselfe with an-

ð. III.

Their Shipwracke in which Faria and most of them were drowned; the miserable wandrines of the rest to Nanquin: their Imprisonment, sentence and appeale to Pequin ; rarities observed in those places and wayes ; of the beginnings of the China Kingdome, and of their admirable Wall.

Euen dayes wee fayled thorow the Bay of Nanquim, the force of the current carrying ys more speedily, and came all discontent to a Village called Sujoquerim, and there prouided our selues of victuall and instruction, and entred into a straight called Xalim-Xalingou. gas, in which wee ranne in nine dayes one hundred and fortie leagues, and turning to enter the same Bay of Nanquim, which was there ten or twelve leagues wide, wee sayled with Westerly windes thirteene dayes: and being in the fight of the Mines of Conxinacan in 41. degrees and two thirds, there a Tufan or tempelt from the South, tooke vs with windes and raines feeming more then naturall, and the winde chopped into the North North-weil, the Sea going so high that (except our prouisions and Chests of plate) we threw all into the Sea, cut both our masts ouer-board, and about midnight heard a great cry in the Panura of Anionia de Faria, Faria decre-Mercy Lord God, whereby wee imagined flee was caff away; we feconded the fame cry, but ned, and ook heard no answer. Our Barke also the next day, split on a Rocke, and of fine and twentie Porta- the Barkes 60 galt, cleuen were drowned, besides eighteene Christian boyes, and seuen China Mariners. This weeked

hapned the fitch of August, 1542. Wee fourteene which eleaped, the next day trauelled into the Land, along it a Hill, and diffeuered a Lake, without the wof Land, which made vs returne backe, where wee found our men

Foure other

cast on shoare, to the renewing of our forrow, and the next day buried them, that the Tigret (of which there are many) should not eate them. In this, having nothing but our hands to doe it, and they thirtie fixe now stinking, wee spent the most part of the day. Thence were went Northward thorow the Woods three dayes, till weecame at a straight, without fight of any person. In swimming ouer three men and a boy were drowned, being faint, the current strong, and the water somewhat spacious: the men were two brethren Belebior and Gaspar Barbola. and Francisco Barges Cayciro, all of Ponte de Lima, and of good account. Wee which remayned celeuen men and three boyes) passing that obscure nights winds, raines, and cold, imitated by our disconsolate sighs, teares, and feares, saw before day a fire Eastward, and went right towards it, commending our felues to God our only hope. And trauelling along the River, wee came in 10 the euening where fiue men were making Coles, and casting our selues at their feet, desired them to take pitie on vs, and helpe vs to some place where wee might finde reliefe. They gaue vs a little Rice and warme water, and shewed vs the way to a Village where was an Hospitall, to which wee came an houre within night, and found there foure men appointed to that charge, which vsed vs charitably.

An Hofpitall.

* Malera is faid to frand in the Kingdome of ding fabie-

Sileyiacau.

The next day they asked what wee were, and whence: and wee told them, strangers of Stam , which came from the Port of Liampos to the fifthing at Nanyum, where by tempetic we loft all but our battered fielh. They asked what wee intended to doe, and wee aniwered, to goe to Nanquim, to get passage to Cantan, or Comhay, where our Countrey-men have tradely licence of the Airao of Paquim, under the shadow of The Sonne of the Sunne, the Lion crowned in 19 the Throne of the World; for whose fake we defired them to let vs flay there till we had recovered strength to travell, and to give vs some clothing to cover vs. They carried vs about the Village, and begged some old clothes and viotuals, and two Tacis in money for our reliefe, and game vs two Tacis of the House; and with words of much comfort to trust in God, they gaue vsa Letter of commendation to the Hospitall of Siley iacau, which was in a great Towne three leagues thence, and had better maintenance. Thither we went, and shewed our Letter from the Ouerfeers of Bustendoo, in the faid Village of Catiboran to the Officers of this house, which fate then at Table in confultation, and the Scribe reading the Letter, they accommodated ys in a neat roome with fourteene Beds, a Table, and many Stooles, and Meate; and next morning examined vs, wee answering as before. They gaue charge to a Physician to cure vs, and wrote p our names in a Booke, to which we subscribed. In eighteene dayes wee all recoured, and went thence to a place called Sufoangance, fine leagues off, and fate downe wearie at a Well, where one came to vs with a handful of Wheat eares, which he wetted in the water, and adjured vs holding the same in our hands, by these substances of bread and water, which the high Creator had made for the sustenance of man to tell the truth what we were, &c. which we did, answering as before; and he gaue leaue to his neighbours to relieue vs. They layde vs in a Church Porch, and gaue vs victuals, and the next day we begged from doore to doore foure Taeis, which well helped our wants.

X'angulee hard

Thence we went two leagues to Xiangules, with intent to goe to Nanguim, one hundred and fortie leagues distant. Comming thither late, three boyes which were feeding Cattell, ranne 40 into the Towne with an out-crie of Theenes; the people running out, and so welcomming vs. that one of the boyes died with the blowes. They kept vs two dayes in a Cifferne of water up to the waste, full of Horf-leaches, without victuals, and our hands bound; whence by a man of Suzanganee, wee were freed, reporting better things of vs. Thence wee went to Finemilan (in the way finding good reliefe at a Gentlemans house) still anoyding Cities and Townes of note, for feare of stricter inflice, two moneths holding on our way, sometime in, sometimes out, from Village to Village, one of which was Chautir, where a woman was then buried which had made the Idoll her Heire, and we were inuited as poore men to eate at her Graue, and had fixe Taeis given vs to pray for her foule. At Tayper an Officer charged vs to be Rogues, begging against the Law, and therefore layed vs in Prison, where we continued fixe and twentie dayes, 50 in which Rodrigues Brano, one of our companie died. Thence wee were fent to Nanquin, and there continued fixe weekes in a miserable Prison (in which was said to be soure thousand Prifoners) where two of our companie and a boy died of the whipping, and the rest hardly escaped; being besides sentenced also to have our thumbs cut off as theeyes.

Taypor.

Chautir.

After this bloudy whipping, they brought vs to a house within the Prison where wee were cured, being as it were an Hospitali for the ficke, where in eleuen dayes wee were pretily well recourred, but lamenting the cutting off our thumbes according to the rigour of the Sentence which had beene given, one morning came in two honourable persons which were Procurers of the poore. These questioned vs of our case, and hearing the same, made a Petition to the Chaem on our behalfe, and the eight Conchacis, which areas it were Criminall Judges; and being there delayed, they made another Petition to another Table, called Xinfan nicor pitan, where are foure 62 and twentie Talagrepos affiftants, austere Religious men , as Capuchines amongst vs, which retiew the cases of the poore, which prohibited the Chaem to proceed, and granted an appeale to the Aitan of Aitans in Pegnins to moderate the Sentence, which the two Procurers brought vs.

Wee and thirtie others were embarked , chained with long chaines, the two Procurers procuring vs some clothing, and Rice, and commending vs to Chifu, the Officer or Captaine appointed to carrie vs, with a Certificate in our behalfe to procure vs almes. The Rivers being then hish fwollen hindred our journey. Three dayes wee stayed at a Village called Minga steem high two ten moured out to the feats where wee were tyed to the feats where wee The telegrater of the feats where week the feats where week the feats where week the feats where week the feats where we were tyed to the feats where week the feats where we were the feats where we will be the feats where we will be the fea where Long awets, and emourace me with an emourage tree were system concerns writte wee rowed, and could not have perfect fight or the Cities, yet thus much wee obtrued. Nangurin place this Cities is in 39 degrees and a third, washed by the Ruer Batampina, which signified The spore of split uses 33.36 feet. which River, as I was then told and after faw, comes from Tartaria, out of the Lake Fanofir, in other places nineleagues from the Citie Lançame, where Tamerlane King of the Tartars refided. This Lake they likewise In is eight and twentie leagues long, and twelue broad, very deepe, and yeelds fine Riners; first, their calculthis of Batampina, running thorow the midfl of China three hundred and fixtie leggues, and ention. The reatring the Bay of Nanquin in 36. degrees. The fecond Leebune which goeth along ft the Hills of fon Improve Pancruum, & dividing the Land of Cauchim, and Catebenan, which within the Countrey confine is, that P. 210 with the Kingdome of Champas in 16. degrees. The third is Tanquiday, that is, The mother of neuer observations with the Kingdome of Neglect (a land when the mother of neuer observations). whether any west North-west by the Kingdome of Nacatass (a Land whence China was by left uners, peopled) and falls into the Sea in the Kingdome of Sornau, or Siam, by the Barre of Cuy an hun-not perhips dred and thirtie leagues beneath Patane. The fourth River is Batobafor, which passing by the hid skill there-

Prounce of Sansiam (which was drowned An. 1556.) goeth into the Sea by the Barre of Cof. by this he con-Prounce of Supplies (William Vasanta) is the fifth, runner Eastward to the Archipelagus (effich, co) to man in the Kingdome of Pegis. Lessacotay is the fifth, runner Eastward to the Archipelagus 20 (as the Chimous Lay) of Xinxingon, which confineth the Mofcounter, entring into a Sea innaui- followed the gable, as being in 70, degrees of latitude. The Chinois affirme, that in Nangain are eight hundred Maps which thouland housholds, foure and twentie thousand houses of Mandarines, sixtie two great market at his returne thou and housholds, toure and twentie thouland nouies of nanaarmes, name two great market places; one hundred and thirtie shambles, each hauing eightie blockes; eight thouland streets, he law, bied hundred and thirtie shambles, each hauing eightie blockes; eight thouland streets, he law, bied hundred and thirtie shambles, and have been a shamble shamble shambles and the shambles are sharped to the shambles and the shambles are sharped to the sha places (one honorcus and principall haue grates of Latten on both fides all alongst; two thoufand three hundred Pagodes or Temples, one thousand of which are Monasteries of Religious perfons, richly built, with Towres of fixtie or feuentic Bells of Metall and Iron, which make a failily, as I connoise horrible to heare; thirtie Prisons great and strong, each having two or three thousand Pri- ceine to keepe note normate to near a uniteration great anathrough each nating two of titree mountains in others from others, and an Hofpitall. The houses of the Mandariness are of earth, encompiled with Walls others from the nucleon. and Dirches, with faire Bridges, and rich Arches. The principall Magistrates have high Towers legged these

30 with gilled pinacles, where are their Armories and Treatures. The Street-arches with their pairs; a thing night that Gates, their new and full Moone feafts, incredible fifthings, their ten thousand Silke- visual in the loomes, one hundred and thirtie Gates in the strong wall, with as many Bridges oner the ditch old Mans of (a Porter, and two Halbardiers in each to fee what goeth in or out) twelve Fortreffes with Bul- Wiftparts of Wiftparts of warkes and Towers, but without Artillerie, the value to the King three thousand Cruzados a the World: day, or two thouland Taeis, I can but touch. The rarities of China, compared with the things and fometimes feene at home, feeme doubtfull or incredible,

ene at home, seeme doubtfull or incredible.

In the first two dayes wee saw in our journey by the River no notable Citie or Towne, but duste place faistly of ignor of Villages a great quantitie which feemed to be of Fisher-men and Labourers, and within rance, Land as farre as we faw, appeared woods of Pines and other trees, Orange groues, fields of Nanauadeleti-40 Wheat, Rice, Millet, Panike, Barley, Rie, Pulse, Flaxe, Cotton, and Gardens with houses for bed. See of it the Grandes. Cattell appeared along if the Ruer as much as in Prese lobus Countrey. On the in Passioia. the Oranger. Caucin appeared among the course of the state of the stat we came to a good Citic called Poeaffer, twice as big as Cantan, well walled with Townes and Nanjum to Fe-Bulwarkes, in manner like ours, with a Hauen before the wall of two Falcon short long, faitned quie with Iron grates in two rewes, with Gates for the entrance and valading of thips, which come This golding thirder from all parts. In the end of the Towns on a Mount flood a Caffle with three Bul. Pathops is between the Towns in one of which the Chimit told we that the Endured this kind of each warkes and fine Towers, in one of which the Chinois told vs, that the Father of this king held which the Chinois Prifoner nine yeeres a King of Tartaria, poisoned at last by his owne vastals, vnwilling to give main us, too fo much to redeeme him as was demanded. In this Citie, Chifu gaue leaue to three of ws nine, to bind his golds 50 goe (with foure Halbardiers to guard vs) and begge Almes, which in fixe or feuen freets gat the Pochfire

goe (with four enabarulers to gusta vs) and ongs, beliefs, field, Rice, Fruits, and Meale; halfe Prioner. of which our Guard had according to the cuftome. They carried vs to a Temple where was great concurfe of people that day, being solemne to that Sect of Taubinarel (one of their 32. Gentile Sects.) That House they said had beene the Kings, and that this Kings Grand-father was borne there, his Mother dying in child-birth, in honour of whose death and buriall in the same chamber he had dedicated this Temple in that Palace. All the Building with the Offices, Gar. Apenfile Padens, and all the appurtenances are founded in the aire on three hundred and fixtie Pillars (each lace of one flone) feuer and twentie spannes high, bearing the names of the three hundred and tixtie dayes of the yeere; and in each of them is a feath with much almost bloody Sacrification in \$50. Editors to dayes of the yeere; and in each of them is a feath with much almes, bloody Sacrifices, and of theyere.

6c dances to the Idoll of that day and Pillar, which stands therein richly enshrined, with a Silver Lampe before him. Beneath goe eight fireers or wayes encloted on both fides with Latten Queens films. grates, with doores for the people which come to those feafts.

Ouer the house where the Queene was buried was a round Chappell all lined with Siluer, fee- the netes and Our tile noure waste til to ten was tened was a foliar Throne of fifteene fleps, round Image that on

to t'e top encompassed with fixe rewes of filuer grates with the tops gilded. On the highest of them was a great Globe, and thereon a Lion of filter, bearing vp a chift of Gold three fpans fquare, in which they faid were her bones, by the blind people worshipped as great Relikes. There hung on foure fluer tyres which croffed the House, fortie three filuer Lampes (fo many yeares she lived) and seven of Gold in memory of her seven Sonnes. Without at the entry were two hundred fiftie three filuer Lampes great and rich, which the Chaens and great mens Wives presented in her honour. Without the doores were in fixe rewes round about Statues of Giants fifteene spans high, well proportioned of Brasse, with Halberds and Maces in their hands, which the Chinois faid were twelue hundred. Amongst them were foure and twentie Serpents of Braffe very great, each having a woman fitting thereon with a Sword in her hand of to the same metall, and a silver Crowne on the head : so many had sacrificed themselves at her death to doe her feruice in the next World. Another compasse environed that of the Giants, all oftrium. phant Arches gilded, with a great quantitie of filuer Bels hanging on filuer chaines, which by the motion of the Aire continually yeelded a strange found. Without those Arches in the same proportion stand two rankes of Latten grates encircling the whole worke, set in spaces with Pillars of the same, and thereon Lions set on balls, which are the Army of the Kings of China.

The Ichits fav

At the foure corners were placed foure Monsters of Brasse, one (which the Chinois call the his armes are Denouring Serpent of the deepe Cauc of the House of smoke) in the figure of a dreadfull Serpent. Denoming Serpens of new general mental profit ported with greene and blacke with many 20 prickles more then a span long, quite thorow the bodie like Hedge-hogges, each having in his mouth a woman ouerthwart, with difficuelled haires, looking deadly. The old or great Serpent holds in his mouth a Lizard halfe out, of aboue thirty fpans in length, as bigge as a Pipe, with note and lips full of bloud, and in his hands he holds a great Elephant fo forcibly, that his entrailes feeme to come out of his mouth; all to naturally reprefented, that it is most dreadful to behold. The folds of his tayle were about twentie fathome long, enfolding therein another Monfler, the fecond of the foure, called Tarcamparoo, which they fay was the Some of that Serpent, which flands with both his hands in his mouth, which is as bigge as a gate, the teeth fet in or. der, and the blacke tongue hanging out aboue two fathomes. Of the two other, one was the Figure of a woman, named Nadelgan, Euenteene fathomes long, and fixe about, from whose waste 10 iffued a beake or face aboue two fathomes, which cast smoake out of the nosthrils, and slames of fire out of the mouth, which they make therein continually, faying, shee is the Queene of the Fierie Spheare, and shall berne the Earth at the end of the World. The fourth is like a man, fet cowring with cheekes puffed like thips fayles, fo monftrous that a man could not endure the fight. The Chinois call him Uzanguenaboo , and fay , that it is hee which makes Tempelts in the Sea, and throwes downe Housesby Land, to which the people give much Almes not to hurt

Zinfieau.

God of Sea

The second day we went from Pocasser, and came to another Citie called Xinligan, very great. well built, walled with Tyles, ditched about; with two Castles at the end, having their Towres, Bul-warkes, and Draw-bridges : in the midft of each Castle was a Towre of fine 40 Lofts with many workes painted, in which the Chinois faid, were fifteene thousand Picos of filuer, of the Rents gathered in that Archipelago, which this Kings Grand-father there lavd vp in memory of his Sonne Lenguinan, which fignifieth the toy of all, holden for a Saint, because he dyed a Religious man, and lyes there buried in the Temple of Quiay Varatel, the God of all the Fishes in the Sea, of whom they have large Legends. In that Citie and another five leagues Silke-loomes. from it is made the great of the Silke of that Kingdome, the waters there giving quicker colours (they fay) then in other parts. The Weauers Loomes of these Silkes, which they Huge passures, affirme thirreene thousand, pay yearely to the King three hundred thousand Tacis. Going further up the River, wee came the next day Evening to a great Champaigne, continuing ten or twelue leagues, in which were many Kine, Hories, and Mares, pailured for the shambles 50 as well as other flesh, and kept by many men on Horle-backe. These Champaignes past, wee came to a Towne . called Innquilen , walled with Tyles , but without Towresor Bul-warkes. Here wee faw a stone Monument with an Inscription , Heere beth Trannocem Mudeliar, Vn-Sectional, libra, ele to the King of Malaca, who died before hee was revenged of Captaine Alboquerque, the Lion of Sea Robberies. We enquiring hereof, an old Chinele faid, that about forthe yeares agoe, the man there interred had come Embaffadour from a King of Malaca, to live to the Somne of the Sume, for succour against a Nation of a Land without name, which had comne from the end The Spails of the World, and taken Malaca, with other uncreding particularities principle hathite Pally, which hee made thereof. Hauing spent three years in this Suite, and brought it to some made thereof. Hauing spent three years in this Suite, and brought it to some made thereof. akind of Palite turrie, hee fickned of the Aire one night at Supper, dyed in nine dayes, and left this 60

P4g.31.

gotten by ftroke or bla, fting of the

Wee proceeded on our way the River growing leffe, but the Countrey more peopled, fearfly a stones cast free of some House, eyther of a Pagede, or Labourer. And two leagues higher on a Hill compassed with Iron grates were two Brasse Statues standing on their feete, one of a

man, the other of a woman, both feuentie foure spans long with their hands in their mouthes. and puffed cheekes; fastned to Cast-Iron Pillars, seuen factiomes high. The Male was named from statura Quiay Xingatalor, the woman Apancapatur. The Chinois told vs that the man was Fire-blower and their dein Hell to torment fuch as in this life gaue them no Almes : the woman was the Hell-Porter, usions. which suffered the Almes-givers to five by a River of cold water, called Ochilenday, and hid them their from the Deuils hurting them. One of our company laughed at this Tale, whereat a Bonzo was fo offended, that hee fet Chifu in rage with vs, who bound vs hand and foot, and gaue vs one hundred stripes a-piece. Twelue Priests were incensing these Monfters when wee were there with Silver-cenfours full of fweet Odours, Saying, as wee ferne 10 thee, helpe thou vs: another company of Priests answering: So I promise thee as a good Lord. And thus went they on Procession about the Hill an houres space founding certayne Bels cau-

ting a dreadfull novie.

Hence wee passed up the River eleven dayes, all peopled with Cities, Townes, Villages, Frequencie of Castles, in many places, scarsty a Calieuer shot distant one from another: and all the Land in China people, compasse of our fight had store of great Houses, and Temples with gilded Steeples, which amazed vs with the fight. Thus wee came to the Citie Sampitay, where wee flayed fine dayes Sampitag. by reason of the sicknesse of Chifus Wite. There by his leave ween thorow the streets, a begging, the people wondering at vs, and giving vs largely. One woman amongst others which bufily questioned with vs, shewed vs a Crosse branded on her left arme, asking if we knew 20 that figne, and wee denoutly answering, yes. shee lifted up her hands to Heauen, and fayd, Our Father which art in Heauen, hallowed be thy Name, in Portugues, and could speake no more, See Mass. but proceeded in China speech, and procured leave to lodge vs at her House those five dayes: tel- these Perincal ling vs she was named Inez de Leiria, and was the Daughter of Thomas Perez, which came Rebels had Embassadour to China, and by reason of a Rebellious Portugall Captayne, hee was taken as a possessed Ta-

Spe with twellu others to be acted that the special country and the special co to this Towne, and there marryed with her Mother having somewhat to mayntaine her, and followed that by him made a Christian. They lived together many yeares like good Catholikes, and conver- out rage to Peued many to the Faith of Christ, in that Citie three hundred assembled on Sundayes to her house ret after foure to their holies. She shewed vs an Oratorie in which was a Crosse of wood gilded, with a Candlessicke and silver Lamne. Wee asked her what they did when they can be a shew of the cannoneth strauellirom Candlefficke and filuer Lampe. Wee asked her what they did, when they came there, and shee faid, to to the nothing but kneele before that Croffe, with their hands and eyes lifted to Heauen, and fay, Lord Court, Lopez, Iestu Christ, as it is true that thou art the true Sonne of God, conceined by the Holy Ghost in the wombe Soarez which lefue Christ, us it is true that those are not true some of 100a, conceined by toe cross 0000s in the momoe of the Hely Virgin Mary, for the faluation of Somers, for andron our first, that were may obtain so feet by fent brings to the Hely Virgin Mary, for the faluation of Somers, for and our first, that were may obtain so feet by fent brings to the Hely Virgin Mary, for the faluation of the Hely Virgin Mary, for the Hely Virgin Mary, f of the Early rugue activity to the fitteff at the right hand of the Highest. Our Father which Come, we are face in the glory of the Kingdome, where them sitted at the right hand of the Highest. Our Father which Come, we are the father which Come, we are the father which Come, we have a site of the father which Come, which come is the father which Come, we have a site of the father which Come, we have a site of the father which Come, which come is the father which Come, which come is the father which Come, which come is the father which art in Heauen, hallowed be thy Name. In the Name of the Father, and of the Sonne, and of the Holy 1515. Ghest, Amen. And so kissing the Crosse, hey embraced one another and went home; alway li. China Christi-

uing friendly with each other. Her Father (the faid) had left other Prayers written, which the ans and Chris Chrose had ftolne away, so that now they could say no more. Whereupon we promised to lease financial ler other Prayers, and taught the Christians seuen times there, and Christopher Borrall with in China Letters the Lords Prayer, Ane Mary, Creed, Salue Regina, Tenne Commandements, and other good Prayers. Shee had given a Present to Chifus Wife to deale with her Husband to gue vs this leaue, and to vie vs kindly, and the Christians there gaue vs fiftie Taeis of Siluer, and Inez de Leiria other fiftie closely, de ring vs to remember her in our Prayers.

We continued our journey up the Batampina, to a place called Legaimpan, of tenne crtwelue Legains 1.0. thousand Houses. Necre to the wall stood a long house with thirtie Furnaces for the punifying Mynes of Taxof filter which was taken out of a Hill five leagues distant, called Tuxenguins; in which Mines of the Chinair coll we there continually becomes one thousand man and their world lead the second of the continual was a the Chinas toll vs, there continually laboured one thouland men, and that it yeeled to the King is a Million of yearely fine thousand * Piles of filter. We departed thence in the Eneming, and the n-xt Ene- Taeis.

30 ning anchored betwixt two small Cities standing over against one another, one named Pacam, the Pacam and Neother Nacau, both well walled and builded. These two Cities occasion mee to recite what I cau. haue heard often heard read in the thirteenth Chapter of the first Chronicle of the four-score which they have of the Kings of China; that fixe hundred thirtie nine yeares after the Floud, there was a Land, called Guanticocau, in which lived a pettie Prince, called Turban, which had by his Concubine Nascaa, three Sonnes, refufing to marry, and entring into Religion of the idoll China Chroni-Gizom (fill much efteemed in Iapon, China, Canchin-china, Camboia, Siam, of which I have eles and Le feene many Temples) appointing his cldest Sonne by the faid Nancaa his heire. His Mother then lining was against this, and marryed herfelie with Silan a Priest, and flue Traban, where-

vpon Nancas and her children fled downe the Riuer fenentie leagues, and fortified a place which 60 the called Pilannera, that is, the refuge of the poore. Five y ares after Silan prepared a Fleet of thirtie Barkes to destroy her and all iter faction, thinking that her Sons comming of age might dispossesses having Intelligence, having of men, women, and children, not about one disposed him. But the having interigence, nating or men, women, and the three himself and three hundred perfons, and but three or four: Bosts nor fufficient to contain the hundred perfons, and but three or four: Bosts nor fufficient to contain the hundred perfons, and but three or lower bosts nor fufficient to contain the hundred performance of the hundred performance o thole few, by common confent and adulte appointed a three dayes Faft thereinto begge flux common confent and adulte appointed a three dayes Faft thereinto begge flux common confent and adulte appointed a three dayes Faft thereinto begge flux common confent and adulte appointed a three dayes Faft thereinto begge flux common confent and adulte appointed a three dayes Faft thereinto begge flux common confent and adulted appointed a three dayes Faft thereinto begge flux common confent and adulted appointed a three dayes Faft thereinto begge flux common confent and adulted appointed a three dayes Faft thereinto begge flux common confent and adulted appointed a three dayes Faft thereinto begge flux common confent and adulted appointed a three dayes Faft thereinto begge flux common confent and adulted appointed a three dayes Faft thereinto begge flux common confent and adulted appointed a three dayes Faft thereinto begge flux common confent and adulted appointed a three dayes Faft thereinto begge flux common confent and adulted appointed a three dayes Faft thereinto begge flux common confent and adulted appointed a three dayes flux common confent and adulted appointed a three dayes flux common confent and adulted appointed a three dayes flux common confent and adulted appointed a three dayes flux common conference and adulted appointed and adulted appointed and adulted appointed and adulted appointed adulted appointed adulted appointed adulted adulted adulted appointed adulted a

of God, in all which time none might eate aboue once, in paine of death. This Fast ended they caft Lots and the Lot fell on a Boy of feuen yeares old, which was also named Silan, whom after all Ceremonies ended) they bid lift up his hands to Heauen, and tell them fome remedie to the dangers. Who prophefied Victory to her ouer the Tyrant Silan, commanding her to embarke hers in her Enemies Barkes, and at the found of the waters to runne along the Land, till God shewed where shee should found a habitation of great name, which through all times should fend out his mercy with voyces and bloud of strange Nations: after which words the Boy fell

Legend of Pe-

The thirty Barkes came (faith the Storie) fine dayes after without any people therein : for at a place called Catebasy, a blacke Cloud arose ouer them, which rayned on them scalding drops, 10 which deftroved them all. Nancaa with teares and thankes embarked her three Sonnes and the reft, and went downe the River conducted by the found fortie feuen dayes, and then came to the place where Pequim now itands. Fine dayes after they came aland, was the first stone lavd thereof by Peguim, eldeit Sonne of Nancaa, and the Citie called by his owne name. And a filter shield hangeth on the Arch of the chiefe gate Pomonicstay, and hath this inscribed, in which are fortie Warders, and in the rest ordinarily but foure. The day also of the foundation (beeing the third of August) is kept with great Solemnitie, and thereon the King vieth to shew himselfe to the people. The later Kings also have made a Law that no Strangers, except Embaffadours and Slaues should enter the Kingdome. The two other Brethren founded these two Cities, called by their owne names Pacan and Nacan, and their Mother founded Nanquin, which tooke the 20

No ftranger

The wall of

mos de largo.

Vion todas chinfradas ao

Fine Rivers

Wall-fores.

Thus in Spaine, Oran,Penon.enc Huge Prison. Chains of the

IN the fift Booke of the chiefe places of that Empire, is written, that King Crifnogol (which reigned as we may accord our computation with theirs) about the yeare of our Lord 28. builded the wall, the people contributing ten thousand Pikes of filter (which are fifteene Millions of Cruzados) and two hundred and fiftie thousand men (thirtie thousand Officers and the rest Labourers) which was continued feuen and twentie yeares, and then finished, being, faith that Booke the length of feuentie Iaons (every Iaon is foure leagues and an halfe) which make three hundred and fifteene leagnes. The Priests and Iles are faid to contribue as many, and the King and Officers another third, fo that feuen hundred and fittie thousand men laboured therein. This 10 wall I have feeneand measured, being generally fixe fathomes high , and fortie spannes thicke; and foure fathomes runneth a kind of Rampire, twice as thicke as the wall strengthened with a Bituminous substance on the out-side like Potters worke; and in stead of Bulwarkes it hath houfes of two lofts with beames of blacke wood, called Cambefy, that is, Iron-wood, feeming stronger then if they were of stone-worke. This wall or Chanfacan (so they call it, that is, firong refifrance) runneth with an equal course till it encounters with Hils, which are all Chanfred and made to that it is stronger then the wall it selfe, the wall being only in the spaces twixt Hill and Hill, the Hils themselves making vo the rest.

In all that way are but fine entrances, caused by the Tartarian Rivers, which with imperious force cut the Countrey about fine hundred leagues entring the Sea of China, and Canchin-china; An And one of them more forcible then the others enters the Kingdome of Sornan (commonly called Siam) by the Barre of Cuy. At every of those five entrances the King of China hath one Fort and the Tartar another : in every of the China Forts there are feven thousand men fix thous fand foot, and one thousand Horse, in continual pay; most of them Strangers. Mogors, Champaas, Pancrus, Coracones, and Gizares of Persia, the Chinois being but meane Souldiers. In all the frace of this wall are three hundred and twentie Regiments, each of fine hundred men (in all one hundred & fixty thousand) besides Ministers, Commanders, and their retinue which the Chinois faid, made in all two hundred thousand men, allowed by the King only sustenance, all or most of them being condemned to that service, and therefore receiving no pay. And in Peauim is a great and admirable Priton-house, in which are Prisoners continually for the Fabricke so of this wall of three hundred thousand men and vpwards, most of them from eighteene to fine and fortie yeares old: whereof some are men of good qualitie, which for their ill behausours and enormities are hither fentenced, expecting to be removed hence to the fervice of the wall: whence they may have returne according to the Statutes thereof made, and appropried by the Chaens, which therin dispense the Regall power with meere and mixt Empire. There are twelse of them which may pay to the King a Million of Gold for Rent.

d. IIII.

ð. IIII.

Mindo Salt-pits: Mines of Coretumbaga, Copper-workes; Idolatry and Chri-Stianitie; China Trades, and River Faires; their comming to Pequin, tryall and fentence. Rarities of Pequin.

O returne to our Voyage, from Pacan and Nacan, wee passed up the River to China Mindel.

doe, a greater Gitie then either of the former, which on the Land side had a great

Lake of Salt-water, with great store of Salt-pits therein, which the Chinan kind,
did ebbe and slow like the Sea, from which it is about two hundred leagues sistant: and that this Citie Rents to the King yearely one hundred thouland Taeis, of the thirds of the Sale, and as much more of the Silkes, Sugars, Porcelane, Camfire, Vermillion, Quick-filter, 300000. Cruwhich are there in great quantitie. Two leagues about this Citie were twelue long Houses, in zados. which many men were founding and purifying Copper, making fuch a noyfe with the Hammers that this place (if any on Earth) may refemble Hell. In each House were fortie Furnaces. twentie on a fide, with fortie great Anuiles, on each whereof eight men were hammerine round. with fuch quicknes as fearce permitted the eyes observance; so that in eachhouse there were three 2840. Hamhundred and twentie continual Labourers, befides Workmen of other kinds. Wee asked how mer men. much Copper they might make yearely, and they answered, betwixt one hundred and ten, and A Picois 1000. one hundred and twentie thousand Pikes, of which the King had two parts, because the Mynes Taeis. were his; the Hill where the Mine was, is called Coretumbaga, that is, River of Copper, which in two hundred yeares (to long was fince the Discouery) was not emptied.

About thefe Houses one league neere the River, wee faw on a Hill encompassed with three rewes of Iron Grates, thirtie Houles in fine rankes , very long , with great Towres of Bels of Metall. and Cast-Iron, with gilded Pillars and carned workes, and artificiall Frontifpieces of stone. Here we went on Land by Chifin leave, because hee had so vowed to that Page. de, which is called Bigaspotim, that is, the God of one hundred and ten thou fand Gods, Corchoo, Fun. Bigspotim. gane, ginate ginaca, ftrong & great (lay they) about all the reft: For they hold every thing hath a particular God which made it and preferues it in its nature, & that this Bigappotim brought forth all of them at his arme-pits, and that of him they all hold their being, as of a father by filiall wnion, which they call Bipaperentefas. In Pegu where I have beene sometimes, there is a Pagode like this (there called Ginocoginana, the God of all greatnesse) whose Temple was built by chineruled on the Chinois when they ruled in India, Which was after their Computation accorded with ours uer India. from Anno Dom. 1013. till 1072. conquered by Oxinagan, whose Successor feeing how much bloud was payd for so little good, voluntarily relinquished it. In those thirtie Houses stood a great quantitie of Idols of gilded wood, and as many more of Tinne, Copper, Latten, Iron, Porcelane, so many that I dare not mention the number. Wee had not gone thence fixe or seuen

leagues, when we faw a great Citie nained with the houses and wals on the ground, seening a league in citcuit. The store said, that it had beene called Cobilouzaa, that is, Flowre of the field, Cobilouzaa. fometimes profperous; and that one hundred fortie two yeares fince, as is written in a Booke.name Toxefalem, there came in company of Merchants from the Port of Tanacarim, a man which wrought Miracles, in a moneths space raising vp fine dead persons, the Bonzos saying, he was a Witch, and because they could not hold dispute with him, prouoking the people against him, faying, that if they did not kill him, God would punish them with fire from Heauen. The in- A Christian raged multitude killed one Iohn a Weauer, where he fojourned, and his two Sonnes in Law, and martyred. raged multitude kuited one 2000 a water, which fought to defend him, and when they liad gone about to burne him, in vaine, his Sonne; which fought to defend him, and when they liad gone about to burne him, in vaine, this force, the fire being extinct, the Bonzos floned him, preaching Christ vnto them, which had come 50 from Heauen to dye for Sinners, and to give life to all which professed his Law with Faith and

Works. They fay, that the bodie was call into the River, which for the space of five dayes would not runne lower, and thereby many were moued to professe that Religion : and as wee doubled a point of Land, we faw a Crosse of stone on a little Hill enuironed with Trees. Chifus Wife fal- A Crosse. ling into travell (of which she dyed) we stayed there nine dayes, and did our Deuotions thereto, proftrate on the Earth. The people of the Village (called Xifongu) maruelling, came running to the place and falling on their knees, kiffed the Croffe often, faying, Christo lefu, lefu Christo, Maria Micau, late impone Mondel, that is , was a Virgin in his Conception, Birth, and after it. They asked if they were Christians, and we affirming it, had vs to their Houses and vsed vs

kindly, being all of that Weauers Posteritie and Christians. They also confirmed that which 60 the Chinois had told vs, and shewed vs the Booke printed of his Miracles, which they faid was named Matthew Escandel, an Hungarian by Nation, an Heremite of Mount Sinar, borne at Bu. Mat. Escandel da. That Booke tels that mine dayes after his death, the Citie Cobilonza shooke so, that the people ranne out into the fields, and abode in Tents; to whom the Bonzos came and bid them feare Earthquake. nothing, for they would bekeech Quiay Tiguarens, The God of the night, to command the Earth Plate.

to doe fo no more, otherwife they would give him no Almes. Thus went the Prieffs alone in Procedion to that Idols House, and making their night-Sacrifices and Perfumes, the Earth quaked about eleuen of the clocke at night, and ouer hrew the whole Citie (one only of about four thousand Bonzos remayning aline) into a Lake more then one hundred fathomes deepe, called after this Fiunganorfee, that is, punished from Heanen.

Iunquil nau.

nem alzemas.

Hence we came to a great Citie, called Innquilinan, very rich, with many Junkes and Barkes. where we flaved fine dayes, Chifu there celebrating his Wines Exequies, and gining vs food and rayment for her foule, freeing vs from the Oare, and giving vs leave to goe on Lan' when we would, without our . Collers, which was very great eafe to vs. Thence we went up the River. fill feeing on both fides many and faire Cities and Towness, and other very great populations, to firmely walled, and Fortrelles along it the water with Towres and rich Houles of their Sects. with innumerable cattell in the fields, and shipping in the River, in some places sue hundred fix How such infi- hundred, yea, one thousand sayle, in which were fold all things could be named. Many Chinas

affirmed, that there were as many lived in that Empire on the water, as in Cities and Townes:

fo many in both, that were it not for the good government of their Trades, they would eate one

an other. As in Duckes, one trades in buying and hatching the Egges, and felling the young: another in breeding them for fale when they are great, others in the Feathers, others in the heads, and in wares, others in the Egges, &c. none interloping the others Trade vnder paine of thirtie stripes. In Hogs, one trades in selling them together aliue, others kill them, and sell them by weight, others in Bacon, others in Pigges, others in Soufe. So in fish, hee which fels fresh at may not fell falt, some fell them alive, &c. and so in Fruits and other things. And none may change his Trade without license. They have also along this River of Batampina, in which wee from and flore went from Nanquin to Pequin, (the diffrance of one hundred and eightie leagues) fuch a number of Ingenios for Sugar, and Preffes for Wines, and Oylesimade of divers forts of Pulfe and Fruits. that there are streets of them on both sides of the River, of two or three leagues in length. In other parts are many huge store-houses of infinite prouisions of all forts of slesh, in which are salted and smoked Beese, tame and wilde Hogs, Ducks, Geese, Cranes, Bustards, Emes, Deere, Bustals, Ants, Horse, Tygres, Dogs, and all flesh which the Earth brings forth, which amuzed and amezed vs exceedingly, it feeming impossible that there should bee people in the World to eate the same. Wee saw also great store of Barkes senced at Poupe and Prow, with Reedes of Canes full to of Ducks to fell, in divers lofts over one another, which goe out at foure strokes of a Drumme, fixe or feuen thousand together to feed, where they fet them, at the found of the Drumme returning againe, with like exceeding crie. In the like fort they let them out to lay on the graffe. They that hatch them have long houses with twentie Furnaces full of dung, with some hundreds of Egges concred therein, and hatched by that heate, the mouth stopped till they thinke fit time, then putting in a Capon halfe plucked and wounded on the breft, they that it agains, and after two dayes, the Capon hath drawne them all forth, and they put them into holes prouided for them. We faw along the River in some places store of Swine wild and tame kept by men on Horse-

Paftures of

backe, in other places tame Deere kept by Footmen, all maymed in the right foreleg, that they 40 should not runne away, which they doe when they are young. Wee faw Pennes full of little Dogsfor meat, Dogges to fell, Barkes full of Pigges, others of Lizards, Frogs, Snakes, Snailes, all being meate with them. In these (being of small price) they may fell many kinds. Yea, the dung of men is there fold, and not the worse Merchandize, that stinke yeelding sweet wealth to some, who goe tabouring up and downe the streets to signific what they would buy. Two or three hundred fayle are seene sometimes fraighted with this lading in some Port of the Sea; whence the fatned foyle yeelds three Harnetts in a yeare.

ties on the

Wee came to a Faire of China where on the water 2000. Barkes, befides small Boats which Moueable Ci. goe vp and downe and small Barkes were assembled in one place, and made a Citie with streets in the water aboue a league long, and a third part of a league broad. Thele Faires are principally 10 on the Holy day of some Pagode, whose Temple is by the waters side. In this Water-citie, by the order of the Aitao of Bitampina (who is chiefe Prefident of the thirtie two Admirals of the thirtie two Kingdomes of this Monarchie) are fixtie Captaynes appointed; thirtie for the gouernment and ordering of the same in matters of Justice, and other thirtie to guard the Merchants in comming fafely secured from Theenes. Ouer all these is a Chaem, which hath Mere and mixt Rule in Causes Civill and Criminall without Appeale. These Faires last from the new Moon to the ful, in which it is a goodly thing to fee two thousand streets or ranks strait, enclosed with Barkes, most of them flourishing with Streamers and Banners, and railes painted, whereon are fold all things that can be defired, in others Mechanike Trades, & in the midit Boats going vp and downe with people to trade without any confusion or tumult. As soone as it is night, the 60 ftreets are enclosed with Cables. In every ffreet is ten Lanthornes lighted on the Masts (which yeelds a fairer luftre then the former fight by day) to fee who goeth by and what is his businesse. In each of these streets is a Watch-bell, and when that of the Chaems sounds, all the rest answer with as strange an Object to the Eare as the former to the Eve. In every of these Vowes are

Oratories built on Barkes with gilded Tents, where the Idoll and Priests receive the Devotions and Offerings of the people. Amongst other remarkable things we saw one rew, or street of aboue one hundred Barkes la-

den with Idols of gilded wood of divers fort, which are fold to be offered in the Pagedes; and besides, feet, legs, armes, and heads, which sicke folkes offered for Denotion, Other Barkes there are with Tents of Silke, in which Comedies and pattimes are represented. In others are fold Letters of Exchange, the Prietts giving them Bils to receive in Heaven what their folly lay downe there, with great increase (Our Scringwers would fearly grow rich bere with that Trade) others are laden with skelt of dead men, they dreaming that alithe Almes of those men, whose skuls these 10 have beene shall belong to their foules, and that the Porter of Heaven feeing them come with thus many attending, will open to him as an honourable perion Others have Cages of Birds, and call to men to fet free those Captines, which are the creatures of God, with their Almes which they which doe, let loofe the Bird and bid him tell God what he hath done in his Service : others do the like with living fibes, offering their freedome to the charitable Redeemers (which themselves will not give them; wuch like the fale of Indulgences) (aying, they are Innocents which never finned, which freed by Almes are let goe in the River with commendations of this their Redecmers Service to the Creator. Other Barkes carry Fiders and Muficians to offer their Service : Others (the Priefts) fell Harnes of factificad Beafts, with promite of I know not what Featis in Heaven: others had Tents of forrow, Tombes and all Funerall appurtenances with Women-mount

20 ners, to be let out for Burials: others laden with Books of all forts of Historie, and their also have Scriveners and Proctors; others have such as offer their fartice to fight in defence of their honours others have Mid-wines, others Nurses; others carry grave men and women to comfort those that haue loft Husbands, Wives, Children, and the like disconsolate persons others Boyes and Girles for fernice; others offer Counfellors in Cales of Law or Learning; others Phylicians : and to conclude, nothing is to bee fought on the Land which is not here to be found in this Water-citie.

Once, the cause of the greatnesse of this Kingdome of China, is this easie concourse of all parts by water and Rivers: fome of which in narrow places have bridges of stone like ours, and fome made of one only stone laid over, sometimes of eightie, ninetie, or one hundred spannes, long, and fifteene or twentie broad. All the High-wayes have large Cauties made of good frone, Bridges, and

Iong, and prefere or twengte troops and mental property of the Founders names and prayies in gold high-wayes as with Pullers and Arches fairely wrought inferibed with the Founders names and prayies in gold simirable. den Letters. In many places they have Wels to refresh the Trauellers. And in more barren and leffe inhabited places are fingle women which give free entertainment to fuch as have no monie, Filiby charity. which abuse and abomination, they call a worke of Mercie, and is prouided by the deceased for good of their foules, with Rents and mayntenance. Others have also bequeathed in the like places, houses with Lights to see the way, and fires for Trauellers, water and Lodging. I have in one and twentie yeares unfortunate travels feene a great part of Afis , and the riches of Esrope, but if my testimonie be worthy credit, all together is not comparable to China alone: such are the endowments of nature in a wholfome Ayre, Soyle, Rimers, and Seas , with their Policie,

Iustice , Riches and State, that they obicure all the luftres of other paris. Yet such is their 40 bestiall and Deutlish Idolatry, and filthy Sadomitry publikly permitted, committed, taught by their Priefts as a vertue, that I cannot but griege as their vngratitude.

Departing from this admirable Citie, we failed up the River, till on the ninth of October, on opinion Tuefday we came to the great Citie of Pequim, whither wee were fent by Appeale. Wee went Pequim. three and three as Prisoners, and were put in a Prison called Gefania serca, where for an entrance they gaue each of vs thirtie stripes. Chifu which brought vs presented to the Aitao our Proceffe figned with twelve feales from Manquis. The twelve Conchalis which are Criminall Indges, sent one of their company with two Notaries, and fixe or seuen Officers to the Prison

where wee were, and examined vs, to whom we answered as before, and hee appointed vs to make petition to the Tauigares, of the holy Office by our Proctors, and gaue vs a Taell for 50 almes, with a causat to heware of the Prisoners that they robbed vs not; and then went into another great Roome, where he heard many Priloners Caules, three houres together, and then caufed execution to be done on feuen and twentie men, sentenced two dayes before, which all dyed with the blowes to our great terrour.

And the next day wee were collared and manicled, being much afraid that our Calemples; bu-vige, finesse would come to light. After seven dayes the Fangeres of the Hospitall of that Prison came in, to whom we with pitifuli lamentation gaue the Certificate which wee brought from Nanquin. By their meanes the Conchalis petitioned the Chaem to renoke the Sentence of cutting off our humbs, feeing there was no testimonic of theft by vs committed, but only our pouer- Their Cause

tie, we more needed pitie then rogour. He heard the pleading for and against vs for disers daies, heard. 60 the Prometor or Fiscall laying hard against vs that wee were theeues; but being able to proue The Fifcall (see the Frontier a fine and again again again and again and a second and a which was brough: vs. And at last we were brought into a great Hall painted with divers re- ludge which presentations of execution of Inflice for severall crimes there written, very fearcfull to behold : had semenced and at the end a fairer gilded roome croffed the fame, where was a Tribunall with feuer fleps, them? panished.

The Authors

Tribunal and pompe.

compassed with three rewes of grates, Iron, Latten, and blacke Wood; inlayed with Mother of pearle, having a Canopie of Damaske fringed with Gold and greene Silke, and vinderneath a Chaire of Silver for the Chair, and a little Table before him, with three Boyes attending on their knees richly attired, with chaines of gold on their neckes; the middlemost to give him his Penne, the other two to receive Petitions and to prefent them on the Table; two other Boyes flanding at his fide in exceeding rich aray, the one representing Inflice, the other on the right hand Merer, without which conjoyned, the Judge (they fay) becomes a Tyrant. (The rest of the flate and ceremonic I omit) wee kneeling on our knees, with our hands lifted vp, and our eyes cast downe to the ground, heard gladly our Sentence of absolution. Only we were for one yeere banished to the workes of Quanfy, and eight moneths of that yeere ended to have free paper to goe home, or whither we would. After the Sentence pronounced, one of the Couchy's food 10 vp, and fine times demanded aloud if any could take exception against the Sentence: and all being filent, the two Boyes reprefenting Iustice, and Mercy, touched each others Enfigues which

The Kings

they had in their hands, and faid aloud, let them be free according to the Sentence, and prefently two Chumbuns tooke off our Collars and Manicles, and all our bonds. The foure moneths (the Tanigores told vs) were taken off the yeere, as the Kings almes in regard of our pouertie: for had wee beene rich, wee must have ferued the whole yeere. They gave vs foure Tacis of almes and went to the Captaine which was to goe for Quantito commend vs to his charitie, which vied vs accordingly,

Description of the Chinois call it Pequim. Aquesendoo 2 of Pequin. for Deputies.

DEquin may be called the Mother Citie of the Worlds Monarchie for the wealth, gouernment, greatnesse, inflice, prouisions. It stands in the height of 41. degrees to the North; it

24000. Barge-

14000. Pur-Curtefan Arcet.

tococo, Lan-1300 . Monafferies.

* By letting other men.

260. Gates

contayneth in circuit, as the Chinois (and as I after heard read in a little Booke written of the greatnesse thereof, called Aquesendoo, which I brought with mee into this Kingdome) thirtie Booke written leagues, ten in length, and five in bredth, all which space is environed with two Walls, and innumerable Towers and Bulwarkes. Without is a larger space, which they say, was anciently peopled, which now hath but Hamlets, and scattered Houses, and Garden-houses (of which fixteene hundred are of principall note, in which are the fixteene hundred Proctors for the fixteene hundred Cities and Townes of note, of the two and thirtie Kingdomes of this Monarchie, which refide there three yeeres for the faid Townes. Without this circuit or wall, there 20 are in the space of three leagues broad, and seuen long, soure and twentie thousand Sepulchres of Mandarmes, with their little gilded Chappels, encompassed with grates of Iron and Latten, with rich Arches at their entries. Neere to them are Gardens, Groues, Tankes, Fountaines: the walls lined within with fine Porcelane, adorned also with Lions and Pinacles of divers pain-Hospitals 500, tings. There are in that space fine hundred Lodgings, called Houses of the Sonne of the Sunne, for entertainment of Souldiers maimed in the Kings warres (besides many others for the old and ficke) every of which receive their monethly allowance, and have in them as they faid two hundred men, in all one hundred thousand. Wee saw another street very long, where lived foure and twentie thousand Rowers for the Kings shipping: and another about a league long, where lived fourteene thousand Tauernets for provision for the Court; and another where were 40 infinite Curtesans freed from tribute (which those of the Citie pay) for seruice of the Court, many running from their husbands, and here protected by the Tutan of the Court, which is fupreme in cases of the Kings house. In that compasse also line the Landerers of the Citie, which were as they told vs. aboue one hundred thousand, there being many Tankes or Ponds compassed with stone and Rivers. There are therein, as that Booke fayth, thirteene hundred Noble houses of Religious men and women, which professe the foure chiefe Sects of the two and thirtie which are in that Kingdome: some of which, they fay, have aboue one thousand persons within them besides seruitors. There are other houses store with great walls in which are Gardens, and Groues with game for hunting; and are as it were the Halls of Companies where many refort to fee Playes, and the great men 50 make their feasts there with incredible costs. Some of these houses cost aboue a million, maintayned by Companies of rich Merchants, which are faid to gaine a much thereby. And when any will make a feelt, he goeth to the Xipatom of the house, who sheweth him a Booke wherein is contayned the order of feafts and feruices (which Booke I have feene and heard read) of all forts, and of what prices they are, whether Sacred to their Idols, or Secular, (of which our Authour hath a large Chapter, here omitted.)

Now for Pegum, it hath three hundred and fixtie Gates, each having a Casslet with two Towers, and a Draw-bridge, a Notarie, and foure Warders, to take notice of those which goe in and out, and an Idoll proper according to the dayes of the yeere, every of which is felficuall in one of them. The Chinois reported that there are therein three thouland eight hundred Temples or Pagodes, in which are continually facrificed birds and wilde heafts, which they fay, are more 69 acceptable then tame: those especially very faire which are of the Menigrepos, and Conquisis, and Talagrepos, the Priefts of the foure chiefe Sects, of Xaca, Amida, Gizon, and Canon. The streets are long and large, the houses faire, of one or two lofes, encompassed with Iron and Lat-

ten grates, and at the fireets end are triumphall arches, closed at night; in the chiefe are Watchbells. Eury street hath a Captaine and foure Quarter-masters or Corporals, which every ten dayes acquaint the Lonchacys or Chaems with occurrents. That Booke reports of one hundred and twentie water-paffages, fixe fathome deepe of water, and twelue wide, with many stone 120, Ruserets. bridges, which are faid to be eighteene hundred rich and faire, with arches, pillars, and chaines: 1800. Bridges it tels also of one hundred and twentie Market-places, each of which haue their monethly 120, Market-Faires, (which make some foure faires a day thorow the yeere) of which we saw ten or twelue places. in our two moneths free abode, very full of horfe-men and foot-men with all commodities to be fold. Thereare one hundred and fixtie Shambles, each hauing one hundred blockes for Flesh of 160. Shambles to all forts, the price fet downe on enery blocke, and besides the shop-weights, are weights at enery Gate to examine the weight againe. And besides those generall shambles, enery street hath fine or fixe shops which fell all kinde of Flesh : houses also for Poultrie, and for Bacon. and hanged Beefe.

è. V.

Foure Buildings incredibly admirable in Pequin, and diners of their superstitions: their Hospitals and provisions for the Poore. The Kings revenues and Court ; their Sects.

Vt nothing feemed to me more admirable, then the Prison, called Xmanguibalen, that is, Prisonof the the Prison of the exiled, whose compasse contayneth about two leagues square, as well exiled, to the in length as breadth, walled high and ditched deepe, with draw-bridges hanged on Tertarian wall, Iron cast pillars very great. It hath a high arch with two towers, whereon are fix great watch- almost eight Bels, at the found whereof the rest within answer, which are sayd to bee one hundred. In this leagues com-Prison are continually three hundred thousand men from * fixteene to fiftie yeers of age, all con- *Or 18. to 45.

demned to banishment, for the fabrike of the wall betwixt Tartaria and China; whom the King 30 findes maintainance onely, without other pay. After they have ferued fixe yeares they may goe Multitudes of out freely, the King freely remitting their fentence in fatisfaction of their labour. And it in Prisoners and the meane time, they kill an enemie, or haue beene thrice wounded in fallies, or performe any in the wall. worthy exploit, he is also freed. There are " two hundred & ten thousand employed in that fer- Before hee uice, of which yeerly in those that dye, are maimed or freed, one third part is set off, and supplyed fayd 200000. from that Prilon, which was builded by Goxiler the fucceffor of Crifnagel, the founder of the wall. brought thither from all parts of the Realme, and tent to the Chaem of the wall at his appointment. These prisoners are sent from other prisons, being loose, saue that they weare at their necke, a board of a spanne long and foure fingers broad, inscribed with their name, and sentence of exile, fuch a time. In this Prison are two Faires yeerely, one of which wee faw, kept in Iuly Huge Faires.

40 and Ianuarie, franke and free without payment of tolls; to which are thought to affemble three millions of perions : the Prisoners being meane-while shut vp. The Prison hath three Townes. as it were, with fireets and Officers, belides the Chaems lodgings, fit to entertaine a King. There are also all necessaries fold. Their are groues, and tankes of water for washing, Hospitals alfo and twelve Monasteries, with rich houses, wanting nothing that a rich and noble Citie should have : the Prisoners having their Wives and Children with them, the King allowing a competent house for them.

Another building about as great as that, was the Muxiparan, or treasure of the Dead, compass Another adfed with a strong wall and ditch, with many stone Towers and painted pinacles : the wall on mirable Fathe top in itead of battlements, was compassed with Iron grates, close to which were set great brike. flore of Idols of different figures, of Men, Serpents, Hories, Oxen, Elephants, Fishes, Snakes, 50 monstrous formes of Wormes, and creatures neuer seene; all of Brasse and cast Iron, and some of Tinne, and Copper; a fight more admirable to the view, then can be imagined. Paffing by a bridge ouer the ditch, wee came to a great Hill, " at the first entrie all enuironed with thicke grates of fo after, Latten, floored with stones white and blacke, so shining that a man might see himselfe therein,

as in a glasse. In the midst of that Hillstood a marble pillar of fixe and thirtie spannes high, all feeming to bee but one from; on the top whereof frood an Idoll of filter with a womans face. with both hands griping a Serpent sported with blacke and white. And further, before the gate (which flood betwix: two high towers, borne vpon foure and twentie bigge flone pillars) flood two figures of men with Iron maces or battle Axes, in their hands, as guarding the paffage, one hundred and fortie ipannes high, with dreadfull countenances, called Xixipitan Xalican, that is,

60 the Blowers of the House of Smoake. At the entrie of the gate, flood twelve Halberdiers, and two Fire blowers Notaries at a table, which writ downe all that en red. After wee were entred, we came into a of Helllarge ftreet fet on both fides with rich Arches, with infinite bells of Latten hanging thereon, by latten chaynes, by the mooning of the ayre yeelding a great found. The firet was almost halfe

* Terrepro, and

a league

all from the bottome to the roote full of Sculls of dead men. Behind those houses was a hill of Bones, reaching to the roofes of the houses, of the fame length of halfe a league and very broad. Wee asked the Chinois, if any account were kept thereof, and they answered, that the Talagrapos which had the government of those houses, had registers for them all, and that energy house chins Charnel yeelded two chouland Taeis rent, left thereto by the deceafed for their fooles difthar estin King

The Deails banner tryumphant in ftupendious Serpents : then which neither figure nor

n.ke vanitie. The third ftrange Adi. fice of Nacapia rau the lung of 140.Monafte-

which heere feemes inten-

ded with Eth-

Tartarian cru-

The Parters of

Liciter or God of Rayne.

* Encoflado à bumbordie.

a league long, and within those arches were two rankes of houses, like as it were great Churches groot Huses with gilked pinacles, and painted inventions, in number as the Chinosis affirmed three thousand having therof the fourth part, and the Talagreps the reft for expences of the Fabrike; the Kings fourth port was ipent on the exiled Priloners of Xmamquibalen,

Wee walked thorow the fireet, and in the midit for a great hill round encompafied, with two rewes of Latten grates; in the midft whereof was a brazen Serpent, aboue thirtie fathoms in her circles, well proportioned, notwithstanding that incredible massinesse. This monstrous Snoke which the Chinois call the Serpent denourer of the House of smoote, had set in his head, a Ball or Bullet of cast Iron of two and firite spannes circumference. About twentie paces surther, was recurred the figure of a Man in braffe, of Giantly limbes and proportion, who fuffained with both is been more a hands another bullet, which (eying the Serpent with an angry vilage) made as though he threw bared to figure.

Bared another touries, which teying the output and gilded Idols on their knees, with hands lifted from a color. If at him. Round about that figure, were many final gilded Idols on their knees, with hands lifted vp to him as in admiration: and in foure wyres of Iron enuironing, were one hundred and fixtie Fying octuar his conquest, two filter Candlestickes, each having fixe, feuen, and ten nolles. This Idoll gaue name to the hisconquest. Evo filter Candlestickes, each nating tixe, reuen, and ten notes. I me auon gaue mane to the Ges. 3, though whole Fabrike, and was called Muchiparon, who was, sayth the Chosei, the Tresport of all 10 a fronger then the bones of the dead, and that Serpent comming to rob them, hee threw that bullet in his hands, he represented and made her flee to the darke bottome of the houle of smoake, where God had east her for her Scrpent, 166.3. badnesse: And that three thousand yeeres before hee made the former throw, and that three hath taken the thousand yeeres after, he shall make another, and so each three thousand yeeres another, till the old serious and fifth which shall kill her: after which all these bones shall returne to their bodyes, to remayne alway in the house of the Moone. This their Bonzos preach, and that those soules shall be hapespens, and briketieser, pie, whose bones are thither brought, so that no day passeth in which two thousand bones are not brought thither. And they which are too farre distant to have their bones brought, fend a Tooth or two, which with their almes will doe as much good as the whole : fo that I suppose there are teeth enough in those houses to lade many ships. A third building wee faw without the walls, sumptuous and rich, named Nacaprass, which 30

figuifieth, The Queene of Heauen; which they meane not of the Virgin Marie, but thinke that as temporall Kings are married, to alto is the Heauenly, and that the Children which hee get, teth of Nacapiran, are the Starres; and when the starres seeme to shoute or fall in the ayre, that then one of those Children dye, all his brethern weeping so many teares, that the Clouds are then one of those Children dye, all his brethern weeping so many teares, that the Clouds are therewith filled, and water the earth, and make it fruitfull, as being the almes which God gives for the foule of the deceafed. Wee faw heere one hundred and fortie Monasteries, of their wickedly Religious men and women; in every of which, were fayd to bee foure hundred perfors. which come to fixe and fiftie thousand; besides servitours, which have not yet vowed the profellion, as those within, who goe in facred habite of red with greene stoles, their beards and heads do shauen, with beades about their neckes, for their prayers, but aske no almes, having suftenance of their owne proper. In this Edifice of Nacapiran, the Tartarian King lodged, Anno 1544 when hee layd siege to this Citie, as shall after bee delinered; wherein for a discellish and bloudie Sacri-Numes ficred five, he commanded 30000, persons to be slaine: fifteen thousand of which were Women, or girles to diners Gods rather, the Daughters of the chiefe men of the Kingdome, and Religious, professed of the Sects of Quiay Figrau, Gol of the Motes of the Sunne, and of Quiay Ninandel, God of the Battelli, and of Sailay Figras, Go to the review of the Sailay Figras on Sailay Figras, Go to the Datest, and of Compounts, and of four others, Daisay Martin, Quay Colompon, Quiay Multick, and Multic Lacasas, whose flue Seets, are the chiefe of the Sailay with thirty. Within this building wee fix divers memorable things. One was a Wall against the other, almost a league compasse, borne vp with stone arches, and in stead of battlements, arounded with Latten grates, and at every fixe 10 fathoms, Iron workes on pillers of Braile fastened one to another, whereon by chaynes hung innumerable bells, making a continuall itrange noyfe, with the motion of the ayre,

At the great Gate of this second wall, in terrible shapes, stood the two Porters of Hell (as they call them) Bacharom and Quaifan, with Iron Maces in their hands, terrible to looke on Paffing under an Iron chayne, fattened to the brefts of these Diuels, wee came into a faire street long and wide, compassed with painted arches, on the top whereof were two rankes of Ilolsall that length, in which were aboue fine thousand Images, week new not of what matter, being all gilded, with Myters on their heads of divers inventions. At the end of this fireet, was a great square Hill set with blacke and white shining stones, the whole square compassed with source rewes of Giants of mettall, each of fifteene spannes, with Halberds in their hands, and gilded 60 beards. At the end of all stood Quiay Huiaon, God of the Raine, set vp against a batton or border, seuentie spannes long, and his head so high, that it reached to the buttlements of the tower, (which were about twelve fathoms) by his mouth, eyes, notirils, and brefts, casting our water, which the people below gathered as a great relique. This water came from the top of the tower

CHAP.2. S. S. Whole-lie holies. Q. of heaven and her Chamberlions, Idols. &c.

by secret pipes. Wee passed under his legges, which stood as a great portall, and came to a large house like a Church, with three Iles on marble pillars, and on the walls on both fides, many Idols great and small of divers figures, all gilded, fet on their bases in good order. At the end of this house on a round of fifteene steps, stood an Altar made in fashion of a Throne, and thereon Golden status the Image of Nacapiran, like a goodly woman, with her hayre loofe, and her hands lifted to hea- of Nacapiran nen, all of gold to burnished, that it dazeled the eyes. About that tribunali in the foure first steps, food twelve Kings of China crowned in filuer. And beneath, were three rewes of gilded Idols on their knees, with their hands lifted up, many filuer Candle-flicks hanging about them. Going thence, wee came to another street of arches like the former; and from thence by two oto there of rich buildings, to a great hill, in which were eightie two Bells of metiall very great, hanging by chaynes from Iron beames fustained with Iron Columnes. Thence wee went to a frong Gate 'twixt foure towers, in which flood a Chifie with thirtie Halberdiers, and two Notaries, which tooke the names of all paffengers, to whom wee gaue thirtie Reis

The fourth remarkable and famous building, was in the River of Batampina, in an Hand about The fourth a league in compasse, walled round with stone eight and thirtie spannes aboue water, within til- glorious Ediled with earth, round encompassed with two rewes of Latten grates; the vttermost fixe spannes hee. high for people to leane on, the inner of nine, holding filuer Lions with balls, the Armes of the China Kings. Within these grates in good order, were placed one hundred and thirteene Chap- 113. Chappels, 20 pels, in manner of round Bulwarkes; in each of them, was an alabaster Sepulcher seated on the and their comheads of two filuer Serpents, with faces of women and three hornes on their heads. In every of tents them were thirteen Candlesticks of filter, with seuen lights in each burning. In the midst of a spa- flickes. cious place compassed with three rewes of grates, with two rankes of Idols, stood a high Tower with fine steeples of divers paintings, and on their tops, Lions of silver; in which tower the Chinois sayd, were the bones of the one hundred and thirteene Kings, worshipped by them for great reliques. These bones say they, every New Moone, feast one with another, whereupon the vulgar at those times, offer to them infinite store of Fowles of all fores, Rice, Kine. Hogges, Sugar, Honey, and other prouision; which the Priests receive, and deceive them in recompence, with as it were lubilees, of plenarie Indulgences, and remission of sinnes as they Indulgences

In this Tower wee faw a rich house all lined with filter plates, from the top to the bottome. Rich filter in which stood those one hundred and thirteene Kings statues, and the bones of each King in his Temple. owne flatue; and they fay, that by night thele Kings communicate and paffe the time together, which none may fee but the Cabizondos, (a higher degree of Bonzos, as that of Cardinals with vs) which fables they beleeve for very certaintie. In this great c reuit wee told three hundred and fortie Bells of mettall and cast Iron, in seuenteene places, by twentie in a place, which all found on those New-moone fealts abouelayd, Neere to that tower, in a rich Chappell built on feuen and thirtie columnes of stone, stood the Image of Amida made of filuer, with the hayres Lady Amidailof gold, on a Throne of foureteene steps, all wrought with gold, the hands elevated to Heaven: mage,

40 beneath her shoulders, hung (like lines of beades) many little Idols, as big as the middle finger: and the fecret parts were coursed with two great Oyffer-pearles, garnished with gold : They being demanded the meaning of this mysterie, sayd, that after the generall Floud in which all mankinde was drowned, God lent Amida from the Heauen of the Moone, (being great Chambert, incio Nuberlaine to Nacapiran his wife) to restore the destroyed world; who setting heere fecte in Ca- capiran, as ith lemplur before mentioned, being lately freed of the waters, thee turned it into gold, and there to tune: a tile flanding on her feet with her face in heaven, a great quantitie of Creatures issued from downe perhaps d uiher arme; downe her right hand Males, and Females downe the left; having no other place in Raine box coher bodie whence to bring them foorth, as other women of the world, whom for finne God uenant, Grage. hath subjected to filthinesse of corruption, to shew how filthy sinne is. After shee had finished 15, as that 10 this travell or child-birth of 33333. Creatures, (as they number) one third part Males, and two which follow-

parts Females; shee remayned so weake, having no bodie to provide her any thing, that with eth from Gen. dizzinesse shee fell to the ground dead without recoursie. Whereat the Moone in condoling her 3.16. death couered her felfe with forrow, which are those shadowes wee fee from the earth; which fay they, shall remaine so many yeers as the produced Creatures (33333) & then the Moone shall put off her maske of forrow, and the night shall bee after as cleere as the day. Such and other like mad stuffe did they tell, which might make one wonder, and more to weepe, that the Deuill should gull them with such manifest lyes, being otherwise so understanding a people.

From this Hill we went to another Temple of Nuns, sumptuous and rich, in which they told A Nunnerie. vs was the Mother of this King, Nhay Camifama, but would not let vs enter being frangers. 60 Thence by a street of Arches, wee went to a hauen called Hicharioo Topilen, where was itore of strange shipping of divers Kingdomes, which come continually to that Temple for a plenarie Iubilee, which the King with many priviledges hath granted them, and dyet on free cost. To speake of other Temples and matters of China, which wee faw in our two moneths libertie

Tlv:

The King of China most resident at Pequin, for so he sweareth at his Coronarion. There are In Changot Communications at 1 spans, that certain fitteets featered in this Citie by themselves, wherein are houses, called Leg nampus, that certaine itreets leated in this other by the interest which know no father are taught to write and is, The Schoole of the poore, in which Orphans which know no father are taught to write and 18, the convoice of the poors, in which of phalics and of the fe Houles they have about two him. reade, and mechanise trains to cause their number.

Or their reads are supported in the first state of their reads and a many more of poore Numes which give fucke to Chikiren, expoted or call foorth by their Parents (which are punished if they bee knowne) and after they are weaned, are committheir farents (which are punities it easy to tall defect are viable to learne a Trade, they apply ted to the former houses. And if any by naturall defect are viable to learne a Trade, they apply him to that whereto he is able, as those that are blind to Mills, two to grind, and one to fif; and How the poor from to that winereto ne is sure, as those that are summed and a sure of the to in other cates. Debies, no trade-maning accepting many accepting but with imposing on them some of these poorer. The Miller is to give meate and drinke to get the categories of the categori each of those blinde persons, and clothes, and fifteene shillings yeerely, which when hee dieth Trades, each of those during periods, and notice, and article manage, years, and the fourth precept of * Ani.

*Sper. Amints. he may give for his foole, that no poore should perish, according to the fourth precept of * Ani. Prouif ns for da. For Creeples which cannot goe, they place them with makers of Frailes, Baskets, and o ther handiworkes: and those which cannot vie their hands have great Hampers given them, and Baskets to ferue for Porters to carrie what men buy, from the Markets to their houfe; figh as have neither hands nor feet to vie, are placed in great houses like Monasteries, where are many mercenary women which pray for the dead, halfe of the Offerings remayning to them, the other halfe to the Priests. If they be dumbe, they place them in a house like an Hospitall, where they are sustayned with the Fines imposed on Regraters and scolding women. For common

uicted Adultereiles are bestowed on the Holpitals of female Orphans, that honestie may gains by dishonesties losse. Other honest poore men are maintayned in other streets, at the charges of Provision a-

Sollicitors and Lawyers which maintayne vniust Suits, and of partiall bribed ludges. For the provision of the poore I have further heard read out of their Chronicles that Change Prominen as For the prominen or the proof a land a further invalid trad out of their chromates that compared from the fundament of the King now reigning, defining to doe God fertice (being blinde after a ficknesse which he had) ordayned that in every Citie there should be store-houls of Wheat and Rice, that if any dearth should happen, there might be a yeeres prouision, and the poore should not perish: and to this purpose he applyed the tenth part of the Kings Customes. They say, that God recompensed this his charitie with restitution of his sight, which continued fourteene yeeres after till his death. This is still observed, and the number of those Storehoules is faid to be fourteene thouland. At Haruest the old is divided to the Inhabitants as they haue need, which after two moneths are to lay in as much new, and fixe in the hundred more, that the store be not diminished. But if the yeere proue barren, it is divided to them without gaine: and that which is given to the poore which have not to fatisfie, is paid out of the Kings Rents of that place, as the Kings Almes. And all the rest of the Royall revenues are divided muchow disponinto three parts; one for maintenance of the Kings estate, and for the government of the Kingfed.

The tefaiteral-dome; the second for the defence of the Country, for Ports, Fleets, and the like; the third is put up in the Tressurie at Pequin, with which the King by ordinary power may not meddle, being deputed for defence of the Kingdome against the Tantars, and other warres with confi. 40 king cannot appealare di-ning Kings; this part of the treasure is called Chidampur, that is, The wall of the Kingdome. For they fay, that if such occasions happen, the King shall not lay tribute whiles that lasteth, nor shall the people be vexed, as in other Countries, where such providence is not vsed.

women which are difeafed they have other houses, where they are cured and provided for, at the 20

costs of other common women, each paying a monethly fee. The Downies or loynters of con-

King cannot

Kings Palace: the number of Eunuches

perhaps is mistaken by the Printer: 200co. and in the Palace were 160co. Eunuchs.

Indeed I feare to particularize all that we law in this Citie, left the Reader should doubt or Notro com-pare China with mutter at the raritie, measuring things by that little they have seen, and judging by their owne curtailed conceits the troth of those things which mine eyes have feene. But high capacities, haughtie spirits, and large understandings, that measure not other states by the miteries and meannesse before their eyes, will perhaps be willing to heare things so rare; which I hold the more pardonable in others to doubt of, for almuch as I verily conteffe, that I my felfe which beheld them with mine eyes, am often amazed, when with my selfe I recount the greatnesses of 50 Pequins, in the admirable estate of that Gentile King, in the iplendor of the Chaess of Iultice, and of the Anchacy; of government, in the terror and dread caused in all by their Officers, in the fumptuousnelle of the Houses and Temples of their Idols; and of all the rest therein. For only in the Citie Minapass which stands within the wall of the Kings Palace are 100000. Eunuchs, the span, hash and 30000, women, 12000, men for his Guard, and 12. Thirdes, which is the greatest dignitic, noocone ci and commonly called the Sun-beames, as the Kmg is called, the Sonne of the Sunne, whole perthere is the fon they represent. Beneath these 12. are 40. Cheen as Vice-royer, besides the inferiour dignities, as Anchacys, Agraos, Ponchacys, Laureaus, and Chumbins, all which in the Court are about when hee wit, 500, and none of them haue leffe then 200, men depending, the greater part of which are (Mogores, Persians, Coraçons, Moens, Calaminhans, Tartars, Cauchins, and some Bramaus; the 60 Naturals being little efteemed as effeminate, and wanting valour, how wittie Leuer in Arts a.d husbandrie. The women are white, chafte, more given to labour then the men.

The earth is fertile, which their ingratitude rather afribes to the merit of their King, then the providence of God, Some Priefts also barrer with them woon Bills of exchange to bee reCHAP. 2. S. 6. China Sects. Goatswooll-quarrell. Peacebreake-paritie. Caluo. 277

payed an hundred for one in Heauen, which Letters they call Cuchiminoss. Other Priests are of Secis in Class another Sech, called Nauflolins, which denye the Soules immortalitie, and therefore teach to Cachiminos. take their pleasures in this life. Another Sect is called Trimecan, which holds, that a manihall Naustolius. folong lie in his Graue as hee hath lived above ground; after which, by the prayers of their Them. chare Priefts, the Soule shall returne into another creature seuen dayes, and then seeke for the old bodie left in the Graue, to carrie it to the Heauen of the Moone, where it shall sleepe many veeres. till it be converted into a Starre, and there remayne fixed for ever. Another beaftly Sect, called Gizem, holds that Bealts onely shall enjoy Heauen, in recompense of their penance and tra- Gizem uels here fuftayned, and not Men which follow their lufts, except they leave to Priefts at their death, to pray for them.

δ. V I.

Their remove to Quanty, quarrels, miseries; Tartarian huge Armie, and losse at the siege of Pequim, reported. Quanty taken, and Nixianco: MENDEZ his exploit. Their entertaynment by the Tartar King, and going to Cauchinchina with his Embassadours, with many Tartarian obseruations.

Fter we had two moneths and a halfe gone up and downe in the Citie of Pequim, on Saturday the thirteenth of Ianuary, 1544, they carried vs to Quanfy to faitill our Quanfy Sentence, where we were brought before the Chaem, who made vs of his Guard of eightie Halbarders allowed him by the King, which made vs thankfull to God, being

a place of little labour and more maintenance and liberty. But after a moneth, the Devill fowed ilrife betwixt two of our companie, which in reasoning about the Families of the Madureyras, relland the Fonfecas, whether were more eminent, grew to heate, thence to brauing words, and after to blowes and wounds, not onely of those two, but by part takings of fine of the reft. The Chaem and Anchaeys fentenced vs to thirtie blowes a man, which made vs more bloudy then our wounds. Then they carried vs to a prison, where we lay in Irons fixe and forty dayes. After which we were brought to the Barre, and received other thirty ftripes, and removed to ano- Paritie a ther priton, where we stayed two moneths, then removed to certaine Iron-works five moneths, peace-breaker. much pinched in backe and belly, and being difeafed with a contagious ficknesse, they fent vs forth to begge, which wee did foure moneths. In this miferie wee fware to each other to line Christianly and louingly, and that each moneth one should bee chiefe, whom all the rest should obey, whereby wer after lived in peace.

Christonan Borralbo the chiefe for that moneth, distributed vs by couples to take their turnes

weekely to begge, two to fetch water, and make ready what we got, two to get wood. I and Gaft ar de Meyrelez went one morning to the Wood, and Meyrelez being Musicall played on his Viall, and fung; a thing pleasing to that people, which spend much time in pastime and banquets, and profitable to vs in procuring almes. As wee went, wee met with a Funerall pompe Mulickfor the with Muficke in the midft: one of which Muficians knowing Meyrelez, prayed him to play and comfort of the fing as loud as he could, that this dead man wee now carrie to buriall may heare thee, to comfort him in leaving his wife and children, whereto he was much affected. Hee modeftly refufing, the other angerly answered, and others intreated, and almost forced him to goe with them to the burning Buriall after their cultome. I thus left alone, went and got my bundle of wood on my backe. In the way homeward I met in the way an old man, clothed in blacke Damaske furred with white Lambe, who having thewed mee a filter Croffe, told me, that he was a poore 3c Portugall, Vafco Calus, which fenen and twentie yeeres fince was captized with Tome Pirez, Valle Ca'ao. whom Lope Source had fent Emballadour to China, which had a milerable fuccesse by reason of a Section of a Portugall Captaine. Hee brought me to his house, and told me the storie of his and his fellowes note \$.3. aduentures, and I ours to him: and at his request I fetched the rest of our companie to his poore house. Hee brought vs to another roome, where his wife was, with her two little formes, and two small daughters. Shee entertayned vs louingly, and shewed vs her Closet with an Altar, and a Crosse thereon, secretly kept; shee also and her children said a Portugall Prayer, with the Pater nofter, Creed, and Aue Maria, to our great ioy.

Eight moneths being spent in this our miserie and beggerie, on Wednelday the thirteenth Rewes of the of July, a great tumult and crie arose amongst the people, by reason or newes of the Tartarian Tarter as Ar-60 King his comming to Pequin, with a greater power then euer any King had in the World; that the strength his Army 180000 and which was Hortz men which had a transfer of Pequin. there were in his Armie 1800000. men, 600000, of which were Horle-men, which had comme by Land from Lar game, and Famfer, and Mecuy, with 8000. Badas to carrie their prountion, Language. Twelue hundred thousand Foot-men had comne in fixteene thousand Laulees and Iangas downe "Kinno erosa the Batampina. And because the King of China durit not retift fo great a power, bee waseen

to Nanguim. Moreouer it was faid that in the Pinall of Manicataron, a league and halfe off was Nautier com- lodged one Nanticor, a Tanarian Captaine with 70000. Herfe, who within few houres would bee at that Citie. This newes much terrified vs, and the next morning the Enemie appeared with Colours quartered greene and white in feuen battels, neere to a Pagode called Petitan Na. meioo, a little from the walls. From that Pagode they came with found of Instruments of warre in one große Squadron like a halfe Moone, and encircled the Citie: and being within Ca. liver shot, they made a shout as if Heauen and Earth would have gone together, and scaling it with two thousand Ladders which they brought with them, affaulted it in all places they could very refolutily, and at last brake into the gates by certaine deuices of great Iron Presses, and very recourtery, and as an arrangement, putting the Citie to the fword, facke, and fire; killing, 10 as was thought, 60000. persons, and after stay of seven dayes there, went for Редили, where

Wixiamco 2 China Callle offaulred.

Two dayes after they were gone, they came to a Castle called Nixiamcoo, which he besieged Nauticor called the feuentie Captaines to confultation, and agreed to male ready fine hundred Ladders that night for the next dayes affault. The next day their Palinguindoens (fo they call their Martiall Instruments) founded, and fourteene battalions marched, and gaue affault wich great cries, scaling the walls, and fighting furioully; the beneged also defending themselves cou-The Tartars

The Caffle

Lautimo.

Mendez his

ragiously, and in two houres killing three thousand Tartars, the rest seeing many wounded with poiloned Arrowes, whereof they died. A Countill of Warre was hereupon called, one of them being the man which had vs in custodie; who returning with two Captains of his acquaintance to to supper, in their discourse of that misfortune they calt eyes upon vs there prisoners, and questioned of what Nation we were, and whether our Kings vsed to warre, and whether any or vs knew any Stratagem to get that Castle, promiting our freedome if we could effect it. To what we answered accordingly, and George Mendez undertooke the deligne against our likings fearing his difabilitie, and our turther danger. One of these Captaines told the Mitagner (Namicor) hereof, who lent to Tileymay the Captaine which had charge of vs, to bring vs to him. He gate vs a grave welcome (being now in counfell with the fenenty Coronels, two houres after midnight, and first made vs to eate, having taken off part of our Irons; and then made large promifes to George Mendez if he could doe as he had faid; to which he answered, that hee could anfwere nothing till he saw it, and then he would tell him the way to take it. Wee were remo- 30 ued to a Tent adioyning, and there guarded, full of feare left this undertaking would coft our lines with a People to cruell. The next day George Mendez and two others of our companie were carried with a band of Horte-men about the Caffle to view it, and then brought to the Mitaguer, to whom he professeth great facilitie of effecting his purpose: which so contented him, that he sware by the Rice he eate to present vs to the King, and to fulfill his promises, prefently taking off the remainder of our Irons. Hee made vs to eate neere him, and did vs other honour. After which, George Mendez as Camp-matter appointed flore of Chifts , Boxes, and matterials to fill up the ditch, and three hundred large scaling Ladders able to hold each three Souldiers, against the next morning to be made ready two hours before day. All this was happily effected, the ditch filled, and Mendez wi h two others of vs fir & scaled the wall, and fet up the 49 Tartar: Colours; fine thouland Tartars gallantly seconding, to that with a hote skirmish the befieged were all flaine, and the Cattle taken; the gates opened to the Muaquer, who with great ceremonies tooke thereof possession. He caused George Menden and the rest of vs to eate neere him, razed the Caltle, and taking Mendez with him on horse-backe returned to his Tent, giuing him 1000. Taeis, and each of vs 100. the cause of much emulation in some of our companie, who by his meanes had obtayned libertie. Thence the Mitaguer marched by places deiolate, to a good Towne by the Rivers fide, called Lautimes, the people whereof were fled; the Towne these barbarians fired, as they did other places where they came. The next day they burned Bunxay, a fowne field of aboue fixe leagues circuit, most Wheat; and came to the Hill Pommitay, and the next day to the River Palemzitau, within two leagues of the Kings Campe. 50 Guian Paran sonne of the King of Persia, at the Castle of Lamir, by the Kings appointment flayed for him; to whom Mitaquer on his knees deliuered his Scimitar, having first kissed the ground fine times. Hee welcomed him with honourable termes, and after that, slepping backe two or three paces with a new ceremonie, and with a voyce high and feuere (as he which reprefented the Kings person) laid, He, whose rich border of his garment my mouth continually kiffeth, whose great power ruleth oner others by Land, and on the Iles of the Sea, sends to tell thee by mee his Slaue, that thy honour able comming is as welcome to his presence as the sweet Summer morning, wherein the bathing of cold water most delights the flesh; and that without delay thou hastenest to heare bis voice, mounted on this Horserichly surnished out of his Treasurie with mee, that thou mayest be equal in bonour with the principall of his Court, and they which fee thee thus bonoured may know that thou are 60

a strong member, whose valour deserves this reward. Thus with great state and pompe they went to the King: and fifteene dayes after he brought vs to the Tents of the King well horied, then in the sumptuous House of Nacapiran, When be came to the Trenches, hee descended from his Litter (wee from our Horses) and asked leave of

Name of

Nautaran to enter, which granted, he agains went to his Litter, and we followed on foot: at State of the the next raffage he descended, and went in leaving vs to expect him. An houre after he returned with foure faire Boyes gallantly arayed in greene and white, with their golden Xorcas on Campe and their feet, to whom all the people rose vp, and drawing their Scimitars laid them on the ground. TentRevalls faving three times. A bundred thousand yeeres line the Lord of our heads. Wee lying proftrare with our faces on the ground, one of the Boyes faid to vs with a loude voice, Resorce ree men of the Worlds end, for the houre of your defire is comne, in which the libertie which the Mitaquer promifed you in the Cafile of Nixianco, shall bee granted you. Lift up your heads from the ground, and your hands to Heaven, giving thankes to the Lord which made the Stars. Wee autwered as wee were to taught. Let it bee our fortune that his foot tread on our beads: the Boy answered, The Lord grant

Their foure Boyes with Mitaguer suided vs on thorow a Gallerie flanding on fixe and twentie Pillars of Braffe, from which wee entred a great Hall of timber, in which stood Mogores, Persians, Berdios, Calaminhans, and Bramas : thence wee came to another Hall, called Tigibipan, where were great ftore of armed men in fine files quite thorow the Hall, their Swords garnished with Gold. There Mitaguer performed fome ceremonies, I wearing on the Maces which the foure Boyes carried, kneeling and killing the ground three times. Then we passed another gate, and came to a fquare great Hall like the Clotter of a Monasterie, in which stood foure files of brazen Images like Sauages with Maces and Crownes, feu. n and twentie spannes high, and fixe 30 broad, which the Tartars faid were the three hundred and fixty Gods which made the dayes of

the yeere; which the Tartar King had taken out of a Temple, called Angicamor, in the Citie Xipatom, in a Chappell of the Sepulchres of the Kings of China, to carrie home in triumph. In Xipatom. this Hill was a Garden of firange herbs and flowers, and therein a Tent vpon twelve turned posts of Camphire wood, in which was a Throne all garnished with much curiofitie of Gold Curious and Silver workes, representing very lively the Sunne, Moone, Starres, Cloudes. In the midft of the Throne stood a filuer great Statue, called Abicannilancor, that is, God of the bealth of Kings. (raken alfo from Angicamoy) about which flood foure and thirt. e Idolsas big as children about fixe yeeres old, in two rankes let on their knees and hands lifted up as in veneration. At the entrie of the Tent were foure Boyes gorgeoutly arayed which went about it with Cenfers, and

20 at the found of a Bell proftrated themselves on the ground, and centing, faid. Let our crie come unto thee as a sweet sauour that thou mayest beare us. That Tent was guarded by fixtie Halbarders. standing a pretie distance from it round about. Beyond that Hill wee entred another place. where were foure rich roomes, in which were many great persons.

Thence we followed Mitaquer and the Boyes vnto a great Hall like a Church , where flood fixe Porters with Maces, which with new ceremonie let vs in. Here was the King of Tartars, The Tartar accompanied with his Grandes, among which were the Kings of Pafua, Mecuy, Capimper, Rasa His State. Benam, and the Anchefacotay, and other Kings to the number of fourteene, all in rich attire, placed at the foot of the Throne, two or three paces diffant; and a little further off flood two and thirtie faire women, playing on divers Inffruments. The King face on the Throne, encom-

40 paffed with twelue Boyes on their knees, with small Scepters of gold on their shoulders; amonest which was a faire Damsell which ever and anone fanned the King. This was the fifter of Mitaquer, who by her meanes enjoyed that grace and respect in the Armie. The King was His person. about forcie yeeres old, tall, not flefty, well fet; his beard flort with Mostachos like the Turks, his eyes somewhat small, his countenance seuere; clothed in a shining reddish vesture set with Pearles; on his feet certaine Shippers greene wrought with Gold and Pearles; and on his head a kind of Sallet with a border of Diamonds and Rubies. Before we came at him by ten or twelue paces, we made our courtelle, three times kiffing the ground, with other ceremonies which wee were taught. The King commanded the Musike to cease, and bid Mitaquer aske this Nation of the end of the world, it they have a King, and how their Land is called, and how farre it is from

50 China. One of vs answered for the rest, that our Land was called Portugall, our King was great and mightie, and from thence to Pequin was about three yeeres Voyage; whereat he much maruelled, as not thinking the World to great; and tirrking on his thigh faid aloud with eyes to Heauen, O (reator of all things, which of vs poore Ps/mires on the Earth may be able to comprehend the maruels of the greatnesse? And tigning with his hand he made vs come never to the tieps of the Throne where the fourteene Kings were placed, and demanded vs againe, how faire? and when we faid, three yeeres; he asked, why we camerather by Seathen by Land? wee answered, that the discritic of States and Kings in the way hindred. He asked, What doe you feeke with 10 farre trauels and great troubles? wee gane as good reason as we could; whereat he sha-

king his head, faid to the King of Benan, an old man, thet it feemed that our Countrey had much 6c Couetouineffe, and little laftice; io, faid the other, it appeares; for those men which flie on the top of all waters, by wit and industrie to get that which God hath not given them, either pouerty forceth to forfake their Countrey, or vanitie and blindnesse caused by coueto-sfnesse, makes them forget God and their Fathers. After this, the women began againe to play and the King retired himfelie into a house alone with his women which played, and the Damfell

280 Tartars for sake Pequin, Incredible losse, Eastern Princes Ambassages. LI B. II

that fanned. One of the twelue Scepter-boyes told Mitaquer from his Sifter, that the Kine commanded hee should not goe away, which he tooke for a great grace, and wee returned to

Torrers Liff. Confultation,

Since of Per

axim breakes

The Kingsre-

Fortie and three d. yes after we came to the Campe Royall (in which space were many fights betwirt the befiegers and befieged, two affaults by icaling with the Tartars loffe) the Tartarian called a Councell, where were affembled feuen and twentie Kings, and many great men and Captaines, which agreed that feeing Winter was now comming, and the waters of both Rivers had rifen and filled the Trenches, and many were ficke (foure or fine thousand dying daily) that it washelf to ray fe the fiege. The King therefore embarked the Foot-men with the munitions fired the Tents, and went away with 300000. Horse by land, and 20000. Badas, 450000. men 10 being found by accounts, to haue dyed in this expedition, most of sicknesse, 300000. Horses and 60000. Badas, for want of prouisions the two last moneths and a halfe of this Siege (which endured fixe moneths and a halte.) Besides, 300000. had runne to the Chinois, wonne by their great pay. Hee lodged the first night of his departure at a River called Quaytragum; the next day he came to Guijampee, which hee found wholly for laken; thence to Liamper, and after feuenteene dayes (eight leagues a day) he came to Guanxitms, and forced it, committing therein cruell flaughters, to prouide his Armie of necessaries by the spoyle thereof. The next day hee creating magnets, to produce me anime or necessaries by the propresence. The next cay nee came to Carrido, which he medded not with being great and frong, having therein 70000 men, of which 10000 were Mogeres, Cauchums, and Champaus, better Souldiers then the China, Thence hee passed to the walls of Singrachiron, and the next day to Xipator, and then sent away 20 most of his Souldiers, spending seuen dayes in the pay, and execution of Iustice on Prisoners. Thence discontent, hee went to Langame by water, (with onely one hundred and twentie Laulees, in which were some ten or twelue thousand men) where sixe dayes after hee arrived in the night without any pompe. There he flayed fixe and twentie dayes, till all his companie were come both of horse and foot.

after which hee went to a greater Citie called Turmican, where he was personally visited by

confining Princes and Ambassadours from remoter Kings, Xatamas of Persia, Siammom Emperour

of the Guess, which within the Countrey confine with Brama of Tangu, the Calaminhan Lord

of the brute force of Elephants, the Sornau of Odiaa, (intituled King of Siam) whose Segniorie

teen Kingdomes; the King of the Mogores whose Kingdome lyes within land, betwixe Corasas

orie confineth within the Mountaines of Goncalidan, with a Nation which the Naturals call

Molcobr. of whom wee faw fome in this Citie, ruddie, of bigge stature, with shooes, and furred

cloathes, having some latine words, but seeming rather for ought wee observed Idolates then

Christians, and much given to vnnaturall lust. To the Ambassadour of that Prince Caran, better

entertainment was given then to all the reft. Hee brought with him one hundred and twentie

men of his guard, with Arrowes and gilded quiners, all cloathed in Shamois skinnes murrie and

greene; and twelue Porters on horsebacke with Maces of Siluer, leading twelue Horses in

and Giant-like flature, cloathed Sauage-like in Tygers skinnes, leading great Grey-hounds in

chaynes and collers of Siluer, muzled. Then came twelue Boyes, faire and well proportioned of

equall stature in gallant array, & next them Leixigan the Ambassador himselfe, in a Chariot (they

call it a Pirange) with three wheeles on a fide, garnished with Siluer and a Chayre of the same,

attended with fortie Foot-men in marrie and greene, yeelding a goodly fight, all things mani-

festing the greatnesse of his Lord. Wee were one day in his lodging with Mitaguer, who was

fent to visit him, where amongst other strange things, we saw sine roomes hanged with Tape-

ftrie of Frogges very rich, like that vied amongst vs, as if they had come from one place; the

Canopies, Siluer-tables, Futniture and State, all rich. This Ambassadour came not only to wel-

their right hands with rich embroidered Furnitures. After whom followed twelue men of high 40

comprehendeth feuen hundred leagues of coaft, from Tanaugarim to Champaa, containing feuen- 10

Lancame.

tered, & fince neere Persia, and the Kingdome of Dely and Chitor, and an Emperour called Carar, whose Septiof India.

Caran.

A Marriage treated on he and Tarter.

They depart

Uzanguee.

Guns of wood.

come home the Tartar, but to treate also of a Marriage for his Lord, with one of the Tartars Si- 50 treated on be-twist the Caren Hers, named Meica Undin, a woman of thirtie yeeres, very charitable to the poore, whom wee haue often feene in their Festivall dayes. Mitaquer at our request mentioned vs to the King, who sayd, he would fend vs with his Ambaffador shortly to Cauchenchina; and caused vs to be brought againe to his presence with great ceremonie of State and Maiestie as before at Pequim, where hee questioned vs, if we would serve him, which we excused saying, we had Wives and Children in our owne Countrey; and asking George Mendez, hee accepted. Eight of vs were commended to the Amballadour which was to goe to Vz. anguee in Cauchenehma & we went in the same Barke, We set forth from Tuymican the ninth of May, and came to a Schoole or Universitie called Guatipamor, where wee lodged in a Temple (or Monasterie) called Narpatim. Next morning wee followed our voyage downe the 60 River, and two houres within night came to Puxanguim, a small Citie, well toroified with Towers and Bulwarks after our fashion, with store of Artillerie of wood, like the Pumps of ships, the stocks where the Barrels were fastned being plated with Iron, and carrying a builet as bigge as a Falcon: which invention they fay, they received of a people called Alimanis, of a land

CH AP. 2. S. 6. Tartars Pope, Monks, Nuns, Refurrettion, Idols, Huge Lake 281

named Musicoo, which by a great and deepelake of falt water, came thither with nine Batkes of names any some sy a great and says which was tayd to be exiled out of her Countrey by a King of oares, in companie of a Lauy, came to Linvan, and fine dayes after we continuing our course Linvan. downe the River, came to Singusfatur, a huge Temple, more then a league in compafie; in which Singusfatur foace were built one hundred and fixtue foure large and long houses full of Skuls, the other bones Templeand lying without in great piles. On a Hill compassed with nine grates of Iron, was standing against superstinions. a strong stone wall, a monstrous statue of Iron thirtie braces high, and fix broad, in both his hands holding a bullet fixe and thirtie spannes about, of cast Iron also. (This to wound the Sement which came to robbe them) himfelfe being hee which should one day restore the siesh to their owne bones, if they gave Almes, otherwise to the most vnable and putrid : his name Pachinaran Dubeculem Pinanfaque, who 74000. yeeres agoe, was borne of a Tortoffe named Minania. and of a Sea-borse one hundred and thirtie braces long, named Tibremoucan. The Ambassadours told vs. that of his Confraternities, there arose to him of annuall rents about 200000. Taeis, and as much more of the Sepulchers of the Nobles, which were by themselues; that there belonged to him twelue thouland Priests preying on him, and praying for the dead, who might not without their Superiours licence depart out of that Circuit. These Priests once a yeare may defile Monkes and themselves in fornication within that Circuit; without, as oft as they will, without sinne, the Nuos, ch. ste Chifangues permitting egreffe. There are many women also enclosed, who by their Libangus or name Prioreffes leaue, permit themselues to those Priests.

The second day after, wee came to a great Citie on the River side called Quanginan, where the Onantinan. Ambaffadours flayed three dayes for prouision, and by reason of a Feast at the entrance of Ta'apicor of Lechune, who is there as a Pope : who had priviledged these inhabitants to be all Privit., A Genille Pope authorifed to Sacrifice and give Bills of exchange for money to bee repayed in Heaven. He gave the Ambassadour grace to legitimate in his Countrey for money, and to give tycles of Honour: which hee recompenced, giving to the Priests all that he could make, and two thousand Taeis the King had given vs. for which he gave vs fifteene in the hundred. Foure dayes wee paffed Lechune. downe the River to Lechune, the mother Citie of that falle Religion of Gentilitie, as Rome is with vs. wherein is a fumptuous Temple, in which are feuen and twentie Tartar Emperours buried in rich Chappels lyned with Silver, having abundance of filver Idols. On the North-fide a little Idols from the Temple, was a notable strong great wall, within which were built two hundred and eightie Monafteries, of men and women; in which were fayd to bee two and fortie thoufand re- Monafteries ligious professed, besides feruitours, In those Houses are many Brazen pillars with Idols of their

Saints thereon, to much more gilded as efteemed. In one of them was the Kings Sifter a widow. which had beene wife of Raia Benan, Prince of Pafua, after whose death shee entred Religion with five thousand women. The Ambassadour visited her, and kissed her foot as a Saint. Departing thence downe the River five dayes, wee came to a great Citie called Rendacalem. Rendacalem. in the confines of Tartaria. And thence forwards began the Segniorie of Xinaley grau, thorow Xinaley eraus. which wee trauelled foure dayes, and then came to a Towne called Voulem, where the Ambai-

fadours were well received, and provided of Pylots for those Rivers; which wee descended feuen dayes without feeing any thing of note, and then came to aftraight called Quatanque, into which the Pylots entred to escape a Pyrat, which had spoyled the most part of the Country. Singapumer Thus wee came to the Lake Sing apamor, called by the Naturals Cunebetee, and fayd to contayne Lake of Cunefixe and thirtie leagues in Circuit. Foure Rivers runne thence, Ventram Eastward thorow Siam, bette. entring the Sea by the barre of Chiatabu, in twentie fixe degrees; Iangumaa Southwards by the Ventice. Lass and Guess, and part of Dabambu enter the Sea at Martanan, in the Kingdome of Pegu; (biabata. Pumfileu runnes thorow all Capimper and Sacotay, and all the Empire of Monginoco, with part pumfileu. of Meleytay and Sonady, and to to the barre of Colmins, neere Arracan. Of the fourth River the Ambaffadours could give vs no instructions, but some thought it to bee Ganges. In housen dayes more, wee came to a place called Caleppute, where they threw itones at vs, and would not fuffer

so vs to land. Thence we sayled by another larger River nine dayes, and came to Tarem a good cale pute. Towne, subject to the Cauchim, where we were well received: and in seven dayes more came to Tarem. a good Citie called Xolor. There were Silver mines, in which one thousand men were at worke, Xolor. whence they fayd was yeerely taken fixe thousand Pikes, which makes eight thousand Quintals of ours. Thence wee went other fine dayes by that great River, the Country being well peopled, and came to the Citie Manaquileu at the foot of the Hills Combay in the borders of China, combay, and Cauchim; thence to Tinamquaxy. Thence they fent their foure Barkes to Huzamquee, the Huzamquee chiefe Citie of Cauchim, and went by Land to Fanaugrem, where the King was.

Their entertainment there and journey thence to Iapan, I omit, with their following long Pilgrimage in that Easterne world; wherein I am afraid to mander in places and affaires so uncouth. Wearic al-60 readie of things fostrange, and therefore uncertaine, I will passe to other Authors : and first to the Philippina's and Spanish Commerce of China. The Voyage of Legaspi, is taken out of a Latine Manufcript, the rest out of Mendoza, bis Spanish discourse of China, and certagne Friars which went this ther; the two Letters except, borrowed of an Italian Author.

ВЬз

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

Spanish plantation of the Philippinas, and what entercourse bath thence banned between them and the Chinois.

First discouerie of the Philippinas : written by Frier IV AN GONZALES DE MENDOSA

ftraights.



Agalianes, was the first that discourred these Ilands, having passed the straight (which vnto this day beareth the tytle of his name) and came vnto the Ilandof Zubu, whereas they did Baptise certaine of the Inhabitants, and afterwards in a banquet, the same llanders did kill him, and other fortie of his companions, which was the occasion that Sebastian de Guetaria, a natural Biskin borne, for to

to

which afterwards was named the Valurie) and in her, and with a few people that helpedhin, with the rausur of God hee came vnto Simil, having compaffed the whole world, from the 0-10 rient unto the Ponent, a thing which caused unto all men great admiration, but in particular vnto the Emperour Charles the fift of famous memorie, who after he had given many gifts and fauours vnto the fayd Sebassian de Gnetaria, he gaue order that a new Armie should bee made readie, and to returne againe in demand of the fayd Hands, and to discouer that new world.

The fecond

Villa Lobos.

So when all things were in a readinesse, for to depart on their Voyage (the which was done with great breuitie) they ordayned for Generall of all that fleete, one Villa Lobor, commanding him to goe by the Nuona Espania, The Villa Lobes, arrived at the Hands of Malacas, and at those of Terrenate, and at other Hands joyning vnto them, the which Hands were layd to gage by the aforefayd Emperour vnto the Crowne of Poringall. In these Ilands they had great warres by meanes of the Portugals, and feeing themselves with little helpe and small resistance, forto 30 goe forwards with their conquest, they left it off, and went to the most part of them with the aforelayd Portugals, vnto the India of Portugal, from whence afterwards, they fent themas prisoners vnto the fayd King of Portugall, as offenders, that had entred his Ilands withouthis licence : who did not onely leaue to doe them any harme, but did intreate them very well, and tent them vnto their owne Countrey of Spaine, and gaue them all things necessarie for their journey, and that in abundance.

Then certaine yeeres after, Don Philip King of Spaine, being very willing that the discourring should goe forwards, which the Emperour his father had so earnestly procured, sene and commanded Don Luys de Velasco, who was his Vice-soy of the Nuona Espania, that hee would ordayne an armie, and people for to returne and discouer the sayd Ilands, and to send in the sayd 40 fleete for Gouernour, of all that should bee discourred. Miguel Lopez de Legassi, who did accompilsh all that his Maiestie had commanded, and made the discourse thereof as followeth;

When the Spaniards came vnto them, they were without Lord or head, or any other to whom they should shew dutie, but hee which had most powerand people, did most command : so that this (and that there were so many of equall power) was the occasion that civil watres continued, without any respect of nature, kindred, or any other dutie, but like vnto brute Beasts, killing, spoyling, and captiumg one another, the which was a great helpe vnto the Spaniard, for to fubicetx hat Country with 10 great ease voto the King, and called them the llands Philippinas, in respect of his name. They did vie amongst them, to make Captines and Slaves, such as they did 50 take in value full warres, and for trifling matters, the which God did remedie, by the going thither of the Spaniards: for you should have a man with fortie or fiftie friends in his companie, or feruants, that vpon a fodaine, would goe and fet vpon a small Village of poore people and vnprouided, and take and binde them all, and carrie them away for Slaves, without any occasion or reason, and make them to serue them all the dayes of their life, or else sell them to other llands. And if it so chanced, that one did lend vnto another, a basket or two of Rice (the which might bee worth a Ryall of plate) with condition, to returne it agains within ten dayes: if the debtor did not pay it the same day, the next day following hee should pay it double, and afterward to double it cury day, so long as he did keepe it, which in conclusion, would grow to bee so great, that to pay the fame, hee is forced to yeeld himselfe for Captius and Slaue.

But vnto all such as were captized in this order, or in such like, the King of Spaine hath commanded to give libertie, yet this just commandement is not in every point fulfilled and accomplished, because such as should execute the same, have interest therein. All these llands were Geniles and Idolaters, but now there is among it them many thousands Baptiled, anto whom the

CHAP. 3. S. I. Ancient Rites of the Philippinas. Their batred to the Spaniards. 282

King hath shewed great mercie, in sending vnto them the remedie for their soules in so good time: for if the Spaniards had stayed any more yeares, they had beene all Moores at this day. for that there were come vnto the Iland of Burnes, lome of that Sect that did teach them, and lacked little, for to worship that false Prophet Mahomet, whose false, percerse and corrupt memory, was with the Golpel of Christ early rooted out.

In all thefe Ilands they did worship the Sunne and Moone, and other second causes, figures of men and women, which are called in their Language Maganitos, at whole Feasts (which they doe make very sumptuous, with great Ceremonies and Superstition) they doe call Magaduras. But amone it them all, they have in most veneration an Idoll, whom they called Batala, the to which reuerence they had for a Tradition, yet can they not fay what should be the occasion that he should deserve more then any of the rest, to be had in so great estimation. In certaine llands not farre off, called the Illocos, they did worship the Deuill, and made vnto him many Sacrifices, The Deuil was in recompence of a great quantitie of Gold he had given vnto them, but now by the goodnesse

of God, and the great diligence put and done by the Fathers of the Order of Saint Auftin (who were the first that passed into those parts, and lived worthily) and also by the Friers of Saint Francis, which went thither ten yeares after, all these Ilands or the most part of them are baptized. and vnder the Enfigne of Ielus Christ: and the rest which doe remayne and are not, is more for lacke of Ministers and Preachers, then for any obstinacie of their parts. There is now some thither certayne Fathers of the Order called Iesuits, who will be a helpe vnto them with their 20 accustomed zeale and labour. And now goeth thither many other Religious men, very well learned and Apottolike, of the Order of Saint Dominicke, who will doe their endeuour to convert them vnto Christ, as it behooveth Christians to doe.

They of these Ilands were accustomed to celerate their Feasts aforesaid, and to make Sacrifices vnto their Idols, by the order of certayne women which were Witches, whom they doe Witches. cal in their Language Holgoi, that were had in as great estimation among it them, as be the Priests among it Christians. These did talke ordinarily with the Deuill, and many times in publike, and doe Deuillish Witch-crafts both in wordes and deedes : into whom it is to bee beleeved that

that the Deuill did enter, for that straight-wayes they did answere vnto all things that were demanded of them, although for the most part they would tell a Lye, or else fuch words that 30 might be given divers interpretations of, and of divers vnderstandings. They did also vie to cast Lots . they were great Agorifmers, or observers of times : in so much that if they beginne any Journey, and at the beginning they meete with a Cayman or Lizard, or any other fauage Worme, they know it to be a figne of euill fortune, whereupon they would straight-wayes leave off their Journey, although it did import them very much, and returne vnto their Houses, saying, that the Heauen will not that they should goe forwarde on that Journey : but all these lyes and fallenesse haue beene taught them, and they perswaded to by the Deuili, are ouerthrowne and taken away by the Law of the Gospel (as aforesaid) and haue now amongst them many Monafteries full of Religious men, of the Order of Saint Austine, Saint Francis, and of Iefuits. According vnto the common opinion, at this day there is converted and baptized more then foure

40 hundred thousand soules, which is a great number : yet in respect of the quantitie that are not as vet conuerted, there are but a few. It is left vndone (as aforelaid) for want of Ministers, for that, although his Majestie doth ordinarily fend thither, without any respect of the great charge in doing the same, yet by reason that there are so many Iland, and every day they doe discover more and more, and being so farre off, they cannot come vnto them all, as necessitie requireth. Such as are baptized doe receive the faith with great firmenesse, and are good Christians, and would be better, if that they were holpen with good ensamples : as those which have beene Spaniards haved there folong time are bound to doe: that the lacke thereof doth cause some of the Inhabitants nat so much to abhorre them, that they would not see them once painted upon a wall. For proofe whereof (and for to mooue fuch as have power and authoritie to put remedie in the fame, I will declare vnto you here a strange case, the which royally did passe of a truth in one of these Ilands, 50 and is very well known e among it them: that is, there chanced to dye an Hander, a principall man among ft them : a few dayes after that he was baptized, beeing very contrite for his finnes,

the which he had done against God before he was baptized, and after hee dyed. So after by the Spanish report

Dinine permission of God he appeared vnto many of that lland whom hee did perswade forth- of a Vision. with to receive the Baptisme, with reasons of great efficacie, and declared vnto them (as one that had experienced the fame) the reward of that good deed which without all doubt should be given vnto them, if they would receive the same, and live after conformable, and according unto the Commandements of Christ, for the which he told them, and faid, that forth-with is

foone as he was dead, he was carried by the Angels into glory, there whereas all things were of delight, pleature, and content, and did communicate onely in the fight of God, and that there 60 was none that entred therein, neither could enter, except he were baptized, according vnto the preaching of the Spaniards, of whom and of others that were like vnto them, there was an infinite number. Therefore, if 10 be that they would goe and enjoy of thole benefits and delights, it is necessary that first they should be baptized, and afterwards to observe and keepe the Com-

Godreietted for malice to men. Commodities there. Theeues Ilands. LIB. II

The Indians would not goe into Hearten

Ciuit.

mandements that be preached vnto them by the Fathers, that are amongst the Castillas, and therewith he vanished away, and they remayned treating amongst themselves, concerning that which they had heard, and was the occasion that some of them forth-with received the Baninto Heauer tilme, and that others did delay it, faying, that because there were Spaniard Souldiers in glorie, they would not goe thither, because they would not be in their company. All this hurt is done by one peruerfe or impious man, and with one euill ensample, the which amongst many good, as you have in those parts: but especiall amongst them in particular, it ought to be reprehended and punished feuerely with rigour.

These Ilands at the first discouery of them, had the same to be Mal Sanos, or vnwholesome. but fince experience hath shewed and proued it to the contrary : It is a Countrey maruellous fertill. and veeldeth very much Rice, Wheate, Goates, Hennes, Deere, Buffes, Kine, and great flore of Hogges, whose flesh is so saucurie as the Mutton they have in Spaine: there be also many Cate that yeeld Ciuet, great flore of fruits which be very good and fauourie: great abundance of Ho ney, and Fish, and all fold at so small a price, that almost it is fold for nothing. Also there is great flore of Cinamom, but no Oyle of Oliues, but that which is carried thither out of the Numer Espania: they have much Oyle of Assensals, and of Flaxe-seed, the which they doe spendordinarily in that Countrey, so that the Oyle of Olives is not missed with them.

There is great store of Cloues, Sassron, Pepper, Nutmegs, and many other Drugges: great fore of Cotton and Silke of all colours, the which is brought vnto them by Merchants of China. every years a great quantitie, from whence commeth more then twentie ships laden with pieces to of Silkes of all colours, and with Earthen Veffell, Powder, Salt-peter, Iron, Steele, and much Quick-filuer, Braffe, Copper, Wheate, Flowre, Walnuts, Bisket, Dates, Linnen Cloth, Counting Chefts very gallantly wrought, Calls of Net-worke, Buratos, Espumillas, Basons and Ewres, made of Tinne, Parchment Lace, Silke Fringe, and allo of Gold, the which is fpunne and twifled after a fashion neuer seene in all Christendome, and many other things of great curiositie. and all this aforesaid is fold very good cheape. Likewise such things as the Ilands doe yeeld, are fold very good cheape, for you shall have foure Roues of Wine, which commeth of the Palmetree for foure Rials of Plate (the which for lacke of that made of Grapes is very good) twelve Haneges of Rice for eight Rials of Plate, three Hens for one Riall, a whole Hogge for eighteene Rials, a whole Buffe for foure Rials, a Deere for two Rials, and yet it must bee both great and in good, foure Roues of Sugar for fixe Rials, and the like.

First Plantation of the Philippinas, by MICHAEL LOPEZ DE LEGASPI.

* This I trans-lated out of a twentieth of Nouember, Anno Dom. 1565, let forth of the Hauen of Natinitie in 40 Mounthin. found with M.



Manufeript
Latine which I New Spaine, and fayled betwire the South and the West, and after West-ward, till
Latine which I and a few spaine, and fayled betwire the Bands factor of the Ban he came in nine degrees ; in that height feeking the Ilands de los Reyes , thence to make for the Philippinas. After eight dayes, the ship called Saint Luke was missing, the Cap-Natiuity Port, tayne whereof was Alfonfus de Arellano, suspected to have maliciously with drawne himselfe. the Rejes The Fleet continuing their course in nine and ten degrees, after fiftie dayes had fight of an Hand of Fishermen and many other small Ilands not inhabited, which they passed by. It was agreed that they should heighthen their course to thirteene degrees, in which way they came on Monday the feuenteenth of Ianuary, 1,66. to one of the Hands of Theeues, called Goean, and fayling toward it, fixe miles off, fiftie or fixtie Paraos fwift fayling Barkes with eight or ten men quite naked met them and inuited them to their Habitations, where at night they anchored. The next morning, fixe hundred of their Parass came about them with victuals to fell, Rice, Honey, Sugar-canes, Plantans, Fruits of divers kinds, and Ginger whereof there groweth great store naturally. Their principall defire in barter was Iron Nailes , giuing a large sacke of Rice for a Naile; their fackes deceitfully filled with gravell and chaffe, with Rice in the top. Their people are well proportioned and strong. They fought with the Spaniards which were watering, and in the time of fight would be trucking with the ships, as senslesse of their danger. A Mariner which stayd behind was slaine, whose death they reuenged with many of the Sauages slaine in the night, one of them being taken and fent into New Spaine. Their name fits their Theeuish

The Philippinas disposition. called also the

Eleuen dayes after the fleet renewed their Voyage, and course in thirteene degrees eleuen Hands of the dayes longer, and then had fight of the Philippinas, having failed from the Port of Nativitie, eight thouland miles. They anchored in a faire Bay called Baia de Sibabas, and there rode feuen Bairde Sibabas, dayes; whiles two Boats went to discouer, one to the North, the other Southward...

CHAP. 3. S. 2. Bloudy leagues. Vicious, Sufficious, Portugal fitte to Spaniards. 285

A Gentleman of one of them was flaine by an Indian, rashly leaping on shoare. These Indians have Iron Launces, with a head or tongue a handfull and halfe long. They have also shields, Bowes and Arrowes. In making peace each man takes two or three drops of bloud of his arme or breft and mixe both in some Vessell together, which is drunke with Wine and Water. Many Paraos came to the Spaniards with a white flag in the Prow, in token of peace, and the Admiral erected the like in her Poope to fignifie their leave to enter. Thele Indians are clothed but baretoot. The Spaniards demanded prouision, which the other promised, but gaue only to the Captayne a fucking Pigge and an Egge. These people are very timorous, perfidious, and therefore sulpicious. The Ilands beare Hogges, Goats, Hennes, Rice, Millet, Potatoes, Pome-citrons. to Frifoles, Cocos, Plantans, and many forts of Fruits. They weare Bracelets, and Earings, and Gold Chaines, and whitherfoeuer the Fleet went, was shew of Gold in the Land, whereof Gold

they diese but for necessary vies : the Land is their Money bagge. The Fleer departed hence, and two dayes after came to the Port of the Ile Tandoia, where a Tandoia fmall River enters; vp which they went in Boats, and came to a Towne called Camungo, There Canarase they were well entertayned, and had victualls fet them : which whiles they were eating an Indian Trake fome Spanish words, and asked for Anionie Baptista Villalobos, and Captaine Cabeca de Vaca: for which the Lord of the place was angrie with him, and hee appeared no more. The next day the Spaniards returning found them armed, threatning them if they came on shoare. They minding not to deale cruelly. Martin de Govie was lent to discouer some convenient har-

20 bour, who faw the Citie Tandaya, and other Townes of other neere Hands, and having gone fix- Tandaya, tie miles found the great Bay where was Cabalia a Towne well inhabited. Thirlier went the Fleet, and the Inhabitants fled. Onely Camainan the fonne of Malatague a blind man, chiefe of that place, came to them, whom they detayned thinking thereby to get fome prouision; but in vaine. He fent forth Souldiers which brought him five and fortie Hoes, leaving in lieu form what for exchange, and dismissing Camatuan, who had taught the Captaine the names of the neighbouring Iles and of their Gouernours. Hee brought them to Mefagua two and thirtie miles off, Mafagua, and then was fent away apparelled and joyfull. The Iland Masagua hath beene frequent, but then had but twentie Inhabitants, which would not fee the Spaniards. They went to another Iland where the people were fled with their goods. Then went they to Butwan which is fibiect 30 to the He Vindena or the Hands Corrientes. The winde draue them to Bobol, where they ancho- Bobol

red. The next day they iaw a lunke and fent a Boat to it, which wounded fome of their men. They had Arrowes and Lances and a Bale, and two braffe Peeces. They cryed to the Spaniards abordo, abordo. The Spaniards ient out another Boat better fitted, which tooke eight, the rest were flaine or fled, having fought valiantly. In the lunke they found white sheets painted, Silke. Almayzarez, Callicos, Iron, Tin, Braffe, and some Gold. The Iunke was of Borneo, and so were these Moores. All was restored (their intent being to get friends , and the Burneois fatisfied.

The Captaine fent the Saint Iohn to discouer the Coast of Butuan, and learne where the Cinamon was gathered, and to find some good Port in he place to build. The Burneois told the Wicked poli-40 Captaine the cause of the Indians flight, that about two yeeres before some Portugals bearing themselves for Spanuards, had comme thicher from the Molucas, and having made peace with pellence them, set on them and slue aboue a thousand Indians, the cause of that depopulation. This the which since Portugals did to make the Spaniards odious, that if they came thither, they might not be admit - hath infected ted. The Captaine fent a well furnished ship to fearch the Coast, which came to a place where others the Borneo Gouernour faid he had friends, and leaping on shoare hee was slaine of the Indians. The Saint John returned from Buibuan, which faid, they had feene the King, and two Iunkes of Moores in the River at anker, and that the lland was great and rich, and exchanged with them fine Gold for Testons, one for fix in equall weight. They bought Wax of the Moores but had Moores to be Earth inclosed in the Cakes; they also incensed the Indians against the Castilians, which would nage, 50 haue made purchase of them, but were forbidden by the King. They faid, they had there seene Wax, Cinamon, Gold, and other precious things.

On Easter Euen the other ship returned to their great ioy, which had thought her lost, having flaid twentie dayes longer then her limited time. They had failed about the Hand Igla the space Igla. of fix hundred miles : and in their returne came to Subo a well peopled Hand, and plentifull of Subo. all things. The Captaine determined to goe thither to buy prouision, or else to force them. For Magelane had beene there; and the King, and most of the Inhabitants were baptiled, and acknowledged the Catholike King; Magelane alfodying in their detence, and thirtie other Soul- Section 1.1.2 diers in Matan. They also had broken league and flaine some of Magelane Souldiers. On Fri- c. 2. day April twentie feuen, the Fleet arrived at the Port of Subo, and one came from King Tupas

60 to them, faying, that Hee with ten chiefe men would come to them. The Captaine expected them a whole day and the next, in which space the Handers hid their goods in the Woods. The third day the Captaine fent his brother Andrew and the Camp-mafter; to admonish the King in the Malayan tongue, to receive them, as Vaffals of the Spanib King. Which not succeeding, hee refolued to vie force. The Indians out of other Hands had allembled together to the number of



two thousand, which prouoked our men, but at the report of the Ordnance ran away, and the Spaniards wan the Towne. Many fignes of Gold and Gemmes appeared in the Iland. And being fituate to neere to the richell Regions, the Governour hopeth accesse thereby to the increase and

glorie of the Spanish Crowne, it Spanish Colonies be there planted. The Captaine from the Citie

head. The Vice-row incontinent did gather together people necessary, and in great hafte to fol-

The which being knowne vnto Limaton the Rouer, who faw, that with the people hee had. he was not able to make renflance against so great a number as they were, and the eminene danger that was therein, hee called together his Companies, and went from thence vnto a Port of the Sea, that was a few leagues from that place : and did it fo quickly and in fuch fecret, that before the people that dwell therein, could make any defence (for that they were not accustomed to any fuch affaults, but lived in great quietnelle) they were Lords of the Port, and of all fuch thips as were there; into the which they imbarked themselnes straight-wayes, weighed Anchor to and departed to the Sea, whereas they thought to be in more fecuritie then on the Land (as it was true.) Then he feeing himfelfe Lord of all those Seas, beganne to rob and spoyle all thips that hee could take, as well strangers as of the naturall people: by which meanes in a small time he was prouided of Mariners, and other things which before hee lacked, requifite for that new Occupation. He facked, robbed and spoyled all the Townes that were your the Coast, and did very much harme. So hee finding himselfe very strong with fortie ships well armed, of those he had out of the Port, and other that hee had taken at the Sea, with much people fuch as were without flame, their hands imbrued with Robberies and killing of men, he imagined with himfelfe to attempt greater matters, and did put it in execution : he affaulted great Townes, and did a thousand cruelties. So he following this trade and exercise, he chanced to meete with another Vintequian a Rouer as himselfe, called Vintoguian, like wife naturally borne in China, who was in a Port void by this Rouerof any care or mistrust, whereas Limaton finding opportunitie, with greater courage did highe

Souldiers therein, he did ouercome them, and tooke fine and fiftie of their ships, fo that Vintoquian elcaped with fine ships. Then Limaton feeing himselfe with a fleet of minetie fine ships well armed, and with many fout people in them, knowing that if they were taken, they should be all executed to death, feeting all feare apart, gaue themselves to attempt new inventions of euill, not onely in robbing of great Cities, but also in destroying of them. For the which, commandement was given straight-wayes vnto the Vice-roy of that Prouince (whereas he vied to execute his euill) that with great expedition he might be taken, who 20 in few dayes did fet forth to Sea, one hundred and thirtie great ships well appointed, with forty thouland men in them, and one made Generall ouer them all, a Gentleman called Omoneon, for One hundred

with the ships of the other : that alchough they were threefcore ships great and small, and good

to goe feeke and follow this Rouer with expresse commandement to apprehend or kill him. Of and thirtie

all this prouision, Limabon had aduertifement by some secret friends, who seeing that his Enemies were many, and he not able to countervaile them, neither in shippes nor men, determined forty thousand not to abide their comming, but to retyre and depart from that Coattio in flying he came vnto

an Iland in fecret, called Tonznacaotican, which was fortie leagues from the firme Land, and is in Omnion the right way of Nauigation to the Hands Philippinas. From this Iland they did goe forth with fome of their ships robbing and spoyling all such as they met with Merchandize, and other things that they carried from one Iland to another, and 40 from the Iland vnto the firme, and comming from thence among st them all, they caused to take two ships of China which came from Manilla, and were bound to their owne Countrey. And hauing them in their power, they fearched them under hatches, and found that they had rich things of Gold, and Spanish Rials, which they had in trucke of their Merchandize, the which they carried to the Hands. They informed themselues in all points of the State, and fertilitie of that Countrey, but in particular of the Spaniards, and how many there were of them in the Citie of Manilla, who were not at that prefent aboue feuentie persons, for that the rest were separated in the discourring and populing of other Hands newly found, and understanding that these few did line without any suspition of Enemies, and had neuer a Fort nor Bulwarke, and the Ordnance which they had (although it was very good) yet was it not in order to defend themnor offend their Enemies , hee determined to goe thither with all his fleete and people,

50 for to destroy and kill them , and to make himselfe Lord of the said Iland of Manilla, and other adjacent there nigh the same. So with this determination hee departed from those Hands whereas hee was retyred, and went to Sea, and fayling towards the Hands Philippinas, they pissed in fight of the Ilands of the Illocos , which had a Towne called Fernandina, 1llocos. which was new founded by the Captayne lobn de Salzedo, who at that instant was in the same for Lieutenant to the Governour : Foure leagues from the same they met with a small Galley, which the faid Iohn de Salzedo had fent for victor Is. He cast about towards her, and with great eale did take her, and did burne and kill all that was in her, and pardoned one of them. This

being done, hee did profecute his Voyage according vnto his determination, and paffed along ft, but not in fuch fecret but that he was discouered by the Dwellers of the Towne of Fernandina, Fernandina, 60 who gave notice thereof vnto the Lieutenant of the Governour aforesaid, as a wonder to see so many thips together, and a thing neuer feene before at those Hands. Likewise it caused admiration vnto him, and made him to thinke and to imagine with great care what it might be, he faw

of Subo lent the Admirall ship with his brother Andrew de Vrdanera, to certifie the L. Lowe de Velasco, the forme of the Vice-roy, what had beene done, Mignel Lopez de Legaspi, Generall of the Fleet, and Governour of the Countrey which they This water follows: should discour, dyed in the faid Hands with the Title of Adelantado, hauing first peopled some henour of Fra of them to the vie of His Maieltic, especially that of Manilla, which is fine hundred leagues in of them to thevie or FIS Maketts, especially stated also Manille) as the Metropolican of all to the Hand, where the Gouernours haue feeled their residence euer since the first discourse. They Spanjo Kulari-on oi China, & haue there founded a Cathedrell Church, and Friar Dom. Domingo de Salachar was confectated on of Chang, & interest in Madrid, 1579. At this present there be three Monasteries of Religi. ous men in that lland, the one of the Order of Saint Austine, and were the first that by the Commandement of his Majestie did enter into this Ilands, preaching the Law of the Gofpell. which was great profit viito their foules, yet great travell viito them, & coft many of them their lives in doing it the other Monalterie is of barefoot Friersof the Order of S. Francis of the Prouince of S. loseph, who have bin great Examples, with great profit visto them of those Paris, The third are of the Order of S. Dominicke, or Preachers, who have done their dutie in all things fo well as the other. These three Orders were alone in those Hands for certayne yeares, till now of 20 late time have gone thither lefuits, which have bin a great ayde and helpe vnto their Religion.

When thele Spaniards were come unto their Hands, they had ftraight-wayes notice of the mightie Kingdome of China, as well by the relation of them of the llands (who told vnto them the maruels thereof) as allo within a few dayes after, they did fee and understand, by ships that came into those Ports with Merchants, that brought Merchandize and other things of great curiosit ie from that Kingdome, and did particularly declare the mightinesse and riches thereos, This being knowne vnto the Religious people of Saint Anitim, who at that time were alone in those llands : but in especiall vnto the Provinciall, Frier Martin de Herrada, seeing the great capacitie or towardnesse which the Chinois had more then those of the Ilands in all things, but in especial: in their gallantnesse, discretion and wit: hee straight-wayes had a great desire to goe thither with his fellow to preach the Gospell vnto those people, of so good a capacitie to receiue the lame: who with a pretended purpose to put it in vre and effect, he began with great care and studie to learne that Language, the which he learned in few dayes: and did make thereof a D. Ctionarie. Then alterwards they did give great entertaynment and Prefents vnto the Merchants that came from China for to procure them to carrie them thither, and many other things, the which did shew their holy zeale : yea, they did offer themselues to bee slaves vnto the Merchants, thinking by that meanes to enter in to preach: but yet none of these diligences did take effect, till fuch time as the Divine Majestie did discover a better way, as shall bee declared vnto you in this Chapter following.

ø. III.

Of LIMAHON a China Robber and Rouer, by whose occasion the Spaniards fent into China.

Limabes a Chi-

#He Spaniards did enjoy their neere habitation of Manilla in great quietneffe & in obedience vnto the Christian King Don Philip, and in continual! Traffick with the Chinois. But being in this fecuritie and quietneffe, vnlooked for, they were befet with a migh- 50 tie and great Armada or Fleet of thips, by the Rouer Limaton, of whose vocation

na Rouer,

there are continually on the Coast, the one by reason that the Countrey is full of people, whereas of necessitie must be many idle persons : and the other and principall occasion, by reason of Whete Lima. the great tyrannie that the Gouernours doe vie vnto the Subjects. This Limabon came vpon them bus was borne. With intent to doe them harme as you shall understand. This Rouer was borne in the Citie of Trucheo, in the Prouince of Cuytan, which the Portugals doe call Catim. He was of meane Parentage, and brought up in his youth in libertie and vice, he was by nature Warlike and euill inclined. He would learne no Occupation, but was ginen to rob in the high-wayes, and became so expert that many came unto him and followed that Trade. Hee made himselfe Captaineouer them which were more then two thouland, and were foltrong that they were feared in all 63 that Province where as they were. This being knowne vnto the King and to his Councell, they did straight way command the Vice-roy of the Province whereas the Rouer was, that with all the hafte possible he should gather together all the Garrisons of his Frontiers, to apprehend and take him, and if it were possible to carry him aline vnto the Citie of Taybin, if not his

that they did beare with the Citie of Manilla, and thought with himselfe, that to great a fleet

as that was, could not goe to the place which they have in with, for any goodnesse towards the dwelters therein, who were voice of all care, and a small number of people, as aforesaid. Whereworth the determined with himslife with to great speed as it was possible, to so your cost-ther such Spannards as were there, which were to the number of fittie foure, and to depart a product to get the fore-hand of them, to advertise them of Man, Ma, and to aide and helpe them to put their Artillerie in order, and all other things necessaries for their defence.

This Lumbon was well prounded of prouision, and all other things necisiarie, and having the wind faire, hee was alwayes in the fore-front, and came in the sight of Manilla vpon Saint Andrewes Eue, in the yeere 1574, whereas hee came to an anchor that night with all his

For all the contradiction of the winde this fame night the foure hundred Chinosi did put the michigan strain a lague of the Citie, vpon Saint Andrews day at eight of the clocke in the morning, whereas they let their Boats and went on land, and in great halfe began to march torwards in battel aray duinded in two parts, with two hundred Harquebuffes afore, and immedially after them other two hundred Placement and by reason that they were many, and the Countrey very planns, they were flraight waites discovered by some of the Citie, who entred in with a great noile, crying, Arme, Arme, arme, the Enemisteens. The which advice did little profit, for that there was none that would belieue them: but releved that it was some falle alarme done by the people of the Countrey for to mocke them. But in conclusion, the Enemies were come to the Citie that two and the contradictions of the Citie that way which the Enemies came. And before that the Spaniard to and Soulders that were within the Towne could be fully periwaded the rumour to be true, the Enemies bad fer fire vopon his hoofe, and luch him and all that were within.

At this time, by the order of his Maiestie was elected for Governour of these Ilands Philonia

nas, Guido de Labacates, after the death of Miguel Lopez de Legasps, who understanding the great

Guidede Labacates Gouernour-

field and power of Lymabon the Rouer, and the final resistance and defence that was in the Citie of Manilla, with as much speed as was possible he did call together all their Capaines and dwellers therein: and with a general consist they spared no person of what qualitie and degree source he was, but that his hand was to helpe all that was possible, the which endured two days: and two nights, for slong the Rouer kepe his ships and came not abroad. In which time of their continual labour, they made a Fort with Pipes and Boards filled with sind and other in necessariation of the strengther the strength of the strengt

Ind fixe hundred Souldiers, who at that inffant did fet vpon the Citie, the which at their plea-

fure they did tacke and burne. They did affault the Fort with great cruelty, as men fleshed with

leeue, for having continued in the fight almost all the day, with the losse of two hundred men,

the last flaughter, thinking that their reliftance was but small. But it fell not out as they did be-

Citic barnt,

that were flaine in the affault, and many other hurt, he fraightwaies departed from thence, and returned the fame way that he came, till they arrived in a mightie River, fortile leagues from the Citic of *CManilla*, that is called *Pangafina*, the which place or foyle did like him very well, and where he though the might be fure from them, who by the commandement of the King went for to feek him. There he determined to remayne, and to make himfelfe Lord our all that Countrey, the which he did with Intel trauell, and built himfelfe a Fort one league within the River, whereas he remayned certaine dayes, receiving tribute of the Inhabitants thereabouts, as though he were their true and naturall Lord; and at times went forth with his flips robbing

Pintados.

"Iohn de Saltede who uccreded Gaysi, and was Nepnew to Michael Legaffi.

and ipoyling all that he met vpon the coalt. And ipred abread, that he had taken to himfelfe go the Ilands Philippinas, and how that all the Spaniard that were in them, were either layne or field away. With this confideration they entred into countell, and did determine to ioyne together all the people they could, and being in good order, to follow and feeke the Roser. Then the Gouernous commanded to be called together all the people bordering thereaboust, and to come wro the Citie whereas hee was. Likewife at that time hee did gine advice vito fish as were Lords and Gouernous of the Ilands, called Pmadads, commanding them to come thich; with fach fhips as they could ipare, as well Spaniard as the naturall people of the Country. The General! of the field with the people aforefial, did depart from Manilla the three and tensile when clays in the morning next following, without being informered on the first ghtwaies at that inflant the General did put a land all his people and four. Peeces of Artilletis, leaung the mouth of the Rurer flux vp with his finipping, in claying the content of the Rurer flux vp with his finipping, in claying the content of the read when the first plant in the fort, that none could enter in neither yet goe forth to gine any aduce van the Rouer of his arrivall: he commanded fone to goe and discourt the fleet of the Ememit, and the plant

place whereas he was fortified, and charged them very much to doe it in fuch fecret fort, that they were notefpied: for therein confifted all their whole worke. Hee commanded the Captrine Gabriel de Ribera, that straightwaies he should depart by Land, and that vpon a sudden he should strike alarme vpon the Enemie, with the greatest tumult that was possible. Likewife he commanded the Captaines Pedro de Canes and Lorenfo Chacon, that either of them with forty Souldiers should goe up the River in small ships and light, and to measure the time in such forc. that as well thole that went by land, as those that went by water, should at one instant come upon the Fort, and to give alarme both together, the better to goe thorow with their pretence: and he himselfe did remayne with all the rest of the people, to watch occasion and time for to 10 aide and succour them if need be required. This their purpose came so well to passe, that both the one and the other came to good effect : for those that went by water, did fet fire on all the fleet of the Enemie : and those that went by land at that instant had taken and set fire on a Trench made of timber, that Limaton had caused to bee made for the defence of his people and the Fort : and with that furie they the more then one hundred Chines, and tooke priloners lenenty women which they found in the same Trench, but when that Limaton understood the rumour, hee tooke himselfe straightwaies to his Fort which hee had made for to defend himfelte from the Kings Nauie, if they should happen to finde him out.

The next day following, the Generall of the field did bring his Souldiers into a square battell, and begains to march towards the Fort, with courage to assault it is if occasion did ferue thereuntor. Intel did pitch his Campe within two hundred paces of the Fort, and found that the Entenire did all that night fortise himselfe very well, and in such fort, that it was perillous to assault him, for that he had placed youn his Fort there Peces of Artillerie, and many Basics, betides other Engines of fire-worke. Seeing this, and that his Peces of Artillerie that hee brought were very finall for to batter, and little store of munition, for that they had spen all at the assault which the Rouer did give them at Manilla, the Generall of the field, and the Captaines concluded amongh themselves, that seeing the Enemie had no ships to escape by water, neither had he any great store of victuals for that all was burne in the ships, it was the best and most surfers way to besige the Fort, and to remayne there in q six until that hunger did constraine them either to yeeld or come to some conclusion: which rather they will then to

This determination was liked well of them all, although it fell out cleane contrarie vnto Limaher after their expectation; for that in the space of three moneths that slege endured, this Limahors three moneths did so much that within the Forthe made certaine shall barkes, and trimmed them in the best size of the manner he could, wherewith in one night he and all his people escaped.

It happened vpon a day, that there came to the Campe a ship of Miguell de Loarcha, wherein was Friar Martin de Herrada Provinciall of the Angustine Friars. Scuen leagues after they were out of the mouth of Pagafinan, they met with a linp of Sangleyes, who made for the Port, and thinking them to bee Enemies, they bare with them (having another ship that followed them for their defence) and had no more in them but the faid Prouinciall and five Spaniards, be-40 fides the Mariners. This ship of Sangley seeing that hee did beare with them, would have fled, but the winde would not permit him, for that it was to him contrary, which was the occasion that the two ships wherein the Spaniards were, for that they did both sayle and rowe, in a finall time came within Cannon shot. In one of the ships there was a Chino, called Sinfay. This Sm(ay went straightwaies into the fore-ships, and demanded what they were, and from whence they came: and being well enformed, hee understood that hee was one of the ships of warre that was fent out by the King of China, to feeke the Rouer Limabon, who leaving the reft of the fleet behind, came forth to feeke in those Ilands to fee it hee could discouer him to bee in any of them: and the better to bee enformed thereof, they were bound into the Port of Buliano, from whence they came with their two thips: from whom they would have fled, thin-50 king they had beene some of the Rouers ships. Being fully perswalled the one of the other,

50 king they had beene some of the Rouers ships. Being fally persualed the one of the other, they joyned together with great peace and firmedship: the Spanarad straightwaies entred into their Boat, and went vinto the ship of the Chines; and carried with them the adroscial Sm-fas, for to be their Interpreter; and to speake vinto the Chines. In the said ship came a man of great authoritie, who was called Omneone, who bosophe a Commission from their King, and shewed it vinto the Spaniards, and vinto the Eather Provincial?: in the which the King and his Counselful dipardon all those Soudiers that were with Limabon, if that forthwich they would leave him and returne vinto the Kings part; and likewise did promise gerate girst and raucur vinto to him that did either take or kill the aforefaid Rouer. Then did Smsfar declire with him of the comming of the Rouer with the short shall all that largened in the siege of the Citic, as a confidence of the short with the short shall be shall all that largened in the siege of the Citic, as a confidence of this motorities.

The Captaine Omonous reioyeed very much of the fenewes, and made many figness of great content, and did embrace the Spaniards many times, and gaue other tokens whereby hee did manifed the great pheafure her received, and would therewith straightwaies depart which the

rest of the sleet. And for that they looked enery day for the death or imprisonment of the Rouer, the better to enforme himselfe : hee determined (for that it was fough hand) to goe and ice the Generall of the field in Pagansinan, and carrie with him Sinsay, one that was known both of the one and the other: by whole meanes they might treate of such things that hell accomplished the confirmation of the peace and friendship betwixt the Chinois and the Soa. niurds, as also of the death or imprisonment of Limahon. With this resolution, the one departed vnto Pagansinan, whereas they arrived the same day, and the others vnto Manilla, whither they went for victuals.

Omoncon remayned there certaine dayes, after the which he feeing that the fiege did long endure, and that his staying might cause suspicion of his death; and againe, that the whole steet in did tarrie his comming to his intelligence of the Rouer, being fully perswaded and certaine, the he could not escape the Spaniards hand : they had him in such a straight, and that they would without all doubt, fend him vnto the King aliue or dead (as they promifed him) hee was determined to returne vnto China, with the good newes that hee had understood, with a determinate intent, to return again and carrie the Rouer, after that they had him prifoner. With this resolution in the end of certaine dayes hee went vnto the Gouernour, certifying him of his pretence, whereby hee might giue him licence to put it in execution. The Gouernour did like well of his pretence, and did promise him the same, the which the Generall of the field did offer vnto him: and which was, fo foone as the Rouer should be taken prisoner, or slayne, to fend him vnto the King without any delay, or elfe, to put him whereas he should be forth-comming, 20 and to give them advertisement to send for him, or come himselfe : and did offer him more. that for his voyage he should bee prouided forthwith of all things necessarie, without lacking of any thing. Omoncon did give him great thankes for the same, and in recompence thereof did promife vnto the Gouernour, for that he vnderstood, and had intelligence of the Fathers. of Saint Augustine, that his Hopour, and his Antecessor, and the Adelantado, Miguel Lopez de Legafri, had delired many times to fend vnto the Kingdome of China fome Religious men, to treate of the preaching of the Gospell, and to see the wonders of that Kingdome, and how that they neuer could put this their defire in execution, for that those Chinose which came this ther, although they ald offer them what soener they would demand, fearing the punishment that should be executed on them according vnto the Lawes of the Kingdome : hee did promise 30 him, that he would carrie them with him vnto China, fuch Religious men as his Honour would mit throcar- command, and fome Souldiers, fuch as would goe with them: hoping with the good newes that hee carried, to runne in no danger of the Law, neither the Vice-roy of Aucheo to thinke euill thereof, and for a more securitie that they should not bee euill entreated, hee would leave with him pledges to their content.

The Gouernour being very joyfull of these newes, did therewith send for the Provincialist

the Augustine Friers, who was elected but few dayes past: his name was Frier Alonso de Al-

uarado, vnto whom hee declared the offer that the Captaine Omoncon had made vnto him,

A good prerence.

names that

A token that efteemed.

whereat he reioyced. They determined that there should goe but two Religious men, by refon that at that time there was but a few of them, and two Souldiers in their companie. The 40 Religious men should be , Frier Martin de Herrada of Pamplona, who left off the dignitie of Provinciall: and in companie with him should goe, Frier Hieronimo Martin, who also was vewent to Ch.na. ry well learned, and of the Citie of Mexico: the Souldiers that were appointed to beare them companie were called , Pedro Sarmiento, chiefe Sergeant of the Citie of Manilla of Vilorado, and Miguel de Loarcha, both principall men, and good Christians, as was convenient for that which they tooke in hand. Their Fathers did carrie them for this purpose, that if they did remaine there with the King, preaching of the Gospell, then they should returne with the news thereof, to give the Governour to vinderstand of all that they had seene, and happened vinto them: and likewife vnto the King of Spayne, if need did fo require. And the Gouernour in token of gratitude, did give vnto the Captaine Omoneon in the presence of themall, a gallant 19 Chaine of Gold, and a rich Robe of crimfon in graine: a thing that hee esteemed very much, and much more efteemed in China, for that it is a thing that they have not there. Besides this, Spaushbounty, they did ordayne a reasonable Present for to send vnto the Gouernour of Chincheo, hee that disparched Omoneon by the commandement of the King, to goe and feeke the Rouer: also another Present for the Vice-roy of the Prouince of Ochian, who was at that present in the Citie of Aucheo. And for that Sufar should not finde himselfe agreeued (who was a Merchant well knowne amongst them, and perhaps might bee the occasion of some euill and disturbance of their pretence) they gaue vnto him also another Chaine of Gold, as well for this, as also for that hee was euer a fure and perfect friend vnto the Spaniards. Then ftraightwaies by the commandement of the Gouernour there were brought together all fuch Chineis as were 60 captine and taken from Limahon out of the Fort aforefaid, at Pagansinan, and gave them vnto Omencon, to carrie them free with him: and gaue likewife commandement that the Gnerall of the field, and all such Captaines and Souldiers that were at the siege of the Fort, should give vnto him all such as did there remaine: binding himsete to pay vnto the

CHAP.2. S.3. China Compasses, insufficiency of Mariners. Idolatrous worthing, 201

Souldiers, to whom they did appertaine, all whatfoeuer they should bee valued to bee worth. Vision a funday at the break of day, being the fine and twentieth of lune, after they had prayed

vnto God to direct their voyage, they let layle with a prosperous wind : there were with the Friars. Souldiers and men of feruice, twentie persons, besides the Chines that were captimes, and They departed the neople of the Captaine Omoncon. They were not to foone off from the coaft, but the wind towards diego.

abated, and they remayned becalmed certaine dayes: but afterwards they had a luftic gale, that carried them forwards. The Chines doe gouerne their thips by a compaffe divided into this Comtwelue parts, and doe vie no Sea Cards, but a briefe description or Ruter, wherewith they fayle: pails, divided and commonly for the most part they never goe out of the fight of Land. They maruelled very chinosis mane

In much when that it was told them, that comming from Mexico vinto Philippinas, they were Macinists. three moneths at the Sea and neuer faw Land. Vpon the Sunday following, we had fight of the Land of China: fo that wee found all our Voyage from the Port of Bulsano, from whence wee had last departed, vnto the firme Land to bee one hundred and fortie leagues; and twentie leasues before they came in the fight thereof, they had founding at threefcore and ten and foure-

fcore fathom, and to waxed leffe and leffe untill they came to the Land : which is the best and furest token they have to bee nigh the Land. In all the time of their Voyage the Captaine Omoncon with his Companie shewed such great courteste and friendship to our men, as though they had beene the owners of the faid ship; and at such time as they did embarke themselves. hee gaue his owne Cabine that was in the sterne to the Friers, and vnto Pedro Sarmiente, and 20 to Misuel de Loarcha, hee gaue another Cabine that was very good, and commanded his com-

panie in the ship that they should respect them more then himselfe : the which was in such fort, that on a day at the beginning of their Voyage, the Fathers found them making of Sacrifice vnto their Idols, and told them, that all which they did was a kinde of mockage, and that they should worship out onely one God: and willed them to doe so no more. Who onely in respect of them did leaue it oil, and not vie it after in all the Voyage: whereas before they did vie it euery day many times. Besides this, they would worship the Images that the Friets They leane

did carrie with them, and kneele vpon their knees with great flew of deuotion: who now the weithing. hauing fight of the firme Land, in so short time, and passed that small Gulfe so quietly, which biglico were was wont to bee very perillous and full of flormes: they did attribute it vnto the Prayers of this and the control of the prayers of of the pray 30 the Friers, their companions and Souldiers. As they drew neerer the Land, they might disconerfrom the Sea, a very gallant and well towred Citie, that was called Timbul, whereas the Timbul in the King hath continually in Garrison ten thousand Souldiers, and is under the government of Province of the Pronince of Chinches. The next day wee came vnto a Watch-towre, which was fitua- Chinches. ted voon a Rocke at the entrie into a Bay, who had discouered our ship, and knew the Standard or Flagge to bee the Kings: and made a figne vnto feuen ships which were on the other

fide of the Point, which was part of a companie ordayned for to keepe and defend the coaft. which were more then foure hundred. Straightwayes the Captaine of the feuen ships came forth to know what wee were. Hee iffued forth from behind the Point, with three flips that did rowe with Oares very fwift: and when he came nigh vnto them, he shot at them to make 40 them to amaine: the which Omoncon would not doe, for that he supposed (as afterwards hee did confesse) that he should be some man of little estimation, and not the Generall of the coast. But as he drew nigher vnto him, he did know him by the Flagge hee bare on the sterne, in the Foift wherein he was himselfe with his Souldiers, and straightwaies caused to amaine his tayles. and tarried for him. The Generall did the like, and stayed behind, sending a Boat for to bring the Captaine vnto him, and to declare what hee was, and from whence hee came. Omoneon did forthwith embarke himfelfe into his Boat without any refistance, but rather with teare that he should be punished for that hee did slee from him. The Generall gaue him good entertainment.

This Generall was a goodly man of person, and was very well apparelled, and did sit in a Chaire in the sterne of his ship, the which was all couered to keepe away the Sunne: he comse manded the Captaine Omoneon to fit downe by him upon the hatches, without Chaire or any other thing, who did obey him, although first he did refuse it with great modestie, as not worthie to haue that honour, which was not efteemed a little. After that he was fet, hee gaue him to viderstand in effect of all his voyage and succeile, and in what extremitie liee left Limaton, and also how that he carried with him the Friars and other Spaniards, which went to carrie the newes, and to treat of peace with the Vice-roy of Aucheo: vnto whom, and vnto the Gouernour of Chincheo, he carried presents, sent from the Gouernour and Generall of the field of the llands Philippinas. When the Generall had heard this relation, he commanded the Boat to teturne and to bring them before him, that he might fee what manner of men they were of perfon, and the vie of the apparell : and likewife to latisfie himlelfe of other delires that came in-60 to his mind by that which Omoncon had faid of them. The Fathers and their companions did obey the commandement, and did embarke themselves in the Boat, and came vinto the ship

whereas the Generall received them with great courteile after his fashion.

C 2 .

CHAP. 2. S.4. Sea-Captaynes State in Difiting. Chayres to carrie men.

ò. IIII. Friar MARTIN DE HERRADA, and other Spaniards entertaynment in China, and their returne to the Philippinas.

Tanfuju, ot

Ithin a little while after , Omoncon and his companie arrived at the Port of Tanfus hard by, vpon Wednelday in the evening, being the fift day of Iuly. This Tanfulo is a gallant and fresh Towne of foure thousand Housholders, and hath continually a

thoutand Souldiers in Garrison, and compassed about with a great and strong wall, to and the gates fortified with plates of Iron, the foundations of all the houses are of Lime and Stone, and the walls of Lime and Earth, and some of Bricke: their houses within very fairly wrought, with great Courts, their streets faire and broad all paued. Before that Omneon die come vnto an anchor, they faw all the Souldiers and the people of the Towne were gathered together upon the Rockes that were ioyning unto the Port, all armed ready unto the battell. amongft whom there was a principall Captaine, and three more of his companions, that were fent him by the Gouernour of Chinches, whom they doe call in their language, Infuente, who had understanding of the comming of Omoncon, when the ship entred into the Port, Omoncon did falute the Towne with certaine Peeces of Artillerie, and discharged all his Harquebussessixe times about, and therewithall tooke in her fayle, and let anchor fall. Then flraightwaies the 20 Captaine whom the Infuanto had fent, came aboord the ship, who had expresse commission not to leave the companie of our people after that they were difembarked, till fuch time as they came whereas he was, but to beare them companie, and to prouide them of all things necessaries the which he did accomplish.

Enfignes to

All these Captaines and Ministers of the King doe weare certaine ensignes for to be knowne from the common people, to wit, broad Wastes or Girdles embossed after divers manners : some of Gold and Siluer, some of the Tortois shell, and of a sweet wood, and other some of Juorie, the higher estates hath them embroidered with Pearles and precious stones, and their Bonnets with two long eares, and their Buskins made of Sattin, and vnihorne Veluet.

Bond-licence.

Then after, fo foone as they were come to an anchor in the Port, the Iustice did fend them 30 a Licence in writing for to come forth of the ship, as a thing necessarie, for that without it the Waiters or Guards of the water fide, will not fuffer them to put foot on land. This Licence was written vpon a boord whited, and firmed by the Iuffice, whose charge it is to give the Licence. Then when they came ashoare, there were the Souldiers that were appointed by the Influence ding of the in a readinesse to beare them companie, and diddirect and leade them vnto the Kings houses of the faid Citie: the like hath every Citie almost throughout all the Kingdome, and there they bid lodge them. These houses are very great and very well wrought, and gallant, with faire Courts below, and Galleries aboue: they had in them Stanges or Ponds of water full of fifth The people of the Citie did preffe very much to see these strangers, so that with the preffe. 45 40

also with the great heate, they were maruellously afflicted: which being perceived by the Iuflice, he gaue order that they might bee eased of that trouble, and caused Sergeants to keepe the doore, and their Yeomen to make reliftance against the people. When night was come, the Iuflice of the Citie did make a Banquet according to the fashion of the Countrey : and it was in their banquets the fashion following. They were carried into a Hall that was very curiously wrought, wherein were many Torches and waxe Candles light, and in the midft thereof was fet for every one of the Guefts a Table by himselfe, as is the vie and fashion of that Countrey; enery Table had his couering of Damaske or Sattin very well made, the Tables were gallantly painted, without any Table-clothes, neither doe they vie any, for they have no need of them, for that they doe eate all their victuals with two little flickes made of Gold and Siluer, and of a maruellous 50 odoriferous wood, and of the length of little Forkes, as they doe vie in Italie, with the which they do feed themselues so cleanly, that although their victuals be neuer so small, yet doe they let nothing fall, neither foule their hands nor faces. They were fet downe at these Tables in very good order, and in gallant Chaires, in such fort, that although they were every one at his Table by himselfe, yet they might see and talke one with another, they were served with diuers forts of cates, and very well dreffed, both of flesh and fish, as gamons of Bacon, Capons, Geese, whole Hens, and pieces of Beese, and at the last, many little baskets full of sweet meats made of Sugar, and Marchpanes all wrought very curioufly. They gaue them Wine of an indifferent colour and tafte, made of the Palm-tree. All the time that the fupper lafted, there was in the Hall great store of Musicke of divers Instruments, whereon they played with great con- 60 fort, some one time and some another. The Instruments which they commonly doe vie, are Hoybuckes, Cornets. Trumpets, Lutes, fuch as be vied in Spaine, although in the fashion there is some difference. There was at this Banquet (which endured a great while) the Captains that was ordayned for their Guard, and the Captaine Omoncon, and Smfay. When Supper was

done, they were carryed into very faire Chambers, whereas were faire Beds, where they flest and eated themselues.

The next day in the morning, was brought vnto them their ordinarie victuals, and that in a hundance, as well of Flesh as of Fish, Fruits and Wine, to be dressed vnto their owne content, and according vato their manner : they would take nothing for the fame, for fo they were commanded by the Infuantes. This was brought vnto them every day, folongas they were there, & in the way when as they went vnto Chincheo. The same day arrived a Captayne of fortie Ships in the same Captains of Port, and so some as hee was ashoare, he went straight-wayes vnto the Palace for to see the form Shipsi ftrangers : who being aduertifed of his comming, came foorth and received him at the Palace

10 gate, whereas, was vied betwixt them great courtefie. The Captayne came with great Maiestie. with his guard of Souldiers and Mace-bearers before him, with great mulicke of Hoy-buckes. Trumpets and Drums, and two Whiffelers, or Typ-staues, that made roome, putting the reople afide : also there came with him two executors of Justice, having each of them in their hands a Streets. Set made of canes, which is an instrument wherewith they doth whip and punish offenders. When this Captayne came vinto the Palace gate, whereas the father Friars and their companions did receive him, he was brought on the shoulders of eight men very richly apparelled, in a chayte wrought of Iuorie and Gold, who stayed not till they came into the inner Chamber, whereas he did alight from the chayre, and went straight under a Cloath of estate, that was there ordinarily for the same purpose, and a Table before him : there hee sate downe, and straight-wayes arose vp.

and standing he did receive the strange ghests, who did courtese vnto him according vnto their fashion, which is to joyne their hands together, and to stoope with them and their heads downe to the ground : hee gratified them againe, with bowing his head a little, and that with great granitie. These speeches being finished, there was brought foorth certaine pieces of blacke Silke of twelue vares long a piece. And his Officers did put on the Friars shoulders each of them two. which was for either shoulder one, and was brought about their bodies and girt therewith : the like was done in order vnto the Spanish Souldiers, and vnto Omoncon, and Sinfay, and to their Interpreter. But vnto Omoncon, and Sinfay, was given vnto either of them a branch or Nofegay made of Siluer, which was fet vpon their heads, which is accustomable honour, that is done vnto fuch as have done some great enterprise, or such like. After that this ceremonie was done, they

20 played vpon the Instruments aforesayd, which came with the Captayne. In the meane time of their mulicke, there was brought foorth great store of Conserues, March-panes, and things made of Sugar, and excellent good Wine : and to being on foote standing, hee caused them to eate, and hee himselfe from the Chayre whereas he sate, did give them to drinke every one in order, with out rifing vp., which is a ceremonie and token of great fauour, and of loue.

This being done, hee arose from the chayre vnder the Cloath of state, and went and sate downe in that which was brought on mens backes, and with declyning of his head a little, hee departed out of the Hall and out of the house, and went vato his owne house, whereas by the counsell of Omoncess, and Sinfay, within an houre after they should goe and visite him, the which they did: hee received them maruelloully well and with great courtefie: who maruelled at his 40 great Maiestie and authoritie, for that Omoncon and Sinsay, when they did talke with him were

vpon their kness, and so did all the rest. Hee gaue them againe in his owne house a gallant banquet, of divers forts of Conserves and Fruits, and excellent Wine of the Palme-tree, and did talke and reason with them in good fort, and was more familiar than at his first visitation.

After that the Fathers with their companions had remained two dayes in the Port of Tanfulo. the thridday they departed in the morning towards Chinches. At their going forth of the Town, they were accompanied with a great number of Soldiers, both Harquebusses & Pikes, and before them a great noyle of Trumpets, Drums, and Hoy-bucks, till fuch time as they came vinto the Riuers fide, whereas was a Brygandine prouided and made readie in all points, to carrie them up the River : all the streets alongst whereas they went, there followed them so much people that it so was innumerable, and all to fee them. All alongit the Rivers whereas they went, was feated with Villages very gallant and fresh, both on the one side and on the other.

At the end of the two leagues, they came vnto a great Bay, where was at an Anchor a fleete of more then one hundred and fiftie Ships men of warre, whose Generall was this Captaine, whom wee haue spoken of. At such time as the fleete did discouer them, they began to salute them, as well with great pieces of Artillerie, as with Harquebulles, and other kinde of pastimes, which commonly they doe vie at fuch times.

Our Spaniards did travell up the Riner more than three leagues, having continually both on the one fide and on the other, very many and faire Townes, and full of people. In the end of the the one fide and on the other, very many and take a lowner, and take of Parges, whereas firight-three leagues, they went aland halfe a league from the Towne of Targes, whereas firight-6c wayes all fuch things as they carryed with them, were taken upon mens backes, and carryed un-

to the Towne before them, whereas they were tarrying their comming, for to give them great entertaynment. At their going ashoare, they found prepared for the two Religious men, little Chayres to carrie them vpon mens backes, and for the Souldiers and the rest of their companions horse. The Fathers did refuse to bee carryed, and would have gone a foot, but Omoncon, and the

China courtefie, Women, Banquetting houses, Bridges, Husbandrie. LIB. II other Captayne would not confent thereunto. The Fathers obeyed their reasons, and entred into the Chayres, and were carryed with eight men a piece, and the other their companions with foure men a piece, according vnto the order given by the Governour. Those that carried the Chayres, c., it with fo good a will, that there was striuing who should first lay hands to them. This Fowne of Tangon, hath three thousand Souldiers, and is called in their language Coan: at the entring in, it hath many Gardens and Orchards and a freet where through they carryed the Spaniards vnto their lodging, they affrmed to bee halfe a league long, and all the fireet whereas they went, was full of boards and stalles whereon was layd all kinde of Merchandise very curious, and things to bee eaten, as fresh Fish and falt Fish of divers forts, and great abone dance of Fowle, and Flesh of all forts, Fruits and greene Herbes in such quantitie, that it was to fufficient to ferue fuch a Citie as Similis. They were brought vato the Kings house, which was very great, marueiloufly well wrought with ftone and bricke, and many Halls, Parlours, and Chambers, but none aboue, but all below. So foone as they were a foote, there was brought from the Captayneor Iustice of the Towne, whom they doe call Ticoan, a message, bidding them welcome, and therewith a present, which was great store of Capons, Hennes, Teales, Duckes. Geele, Flesh of foure or fiue forts, fresh Fish, Wine, and fruits of divers forts, and of so great quantitie, that it was sufficient for two hundreth men. All the which they would have given for a little coole ayre, by reason that it was then very hot weather; and againe, the great number of people that came thither to fee them did augment it the more. In the Euening the two Spa-Souldiers went foorth into the streets to walke abroad, and left the two Friars within their 20 lodging, vnto whom afterwards they did give intelligence of all things that they had feene.

which did cause great admiration: the wall of the Towne was very broad, and wrought with china Women. lyme and stone, full of loope-holes and watch-towers. And as they passed through the streets there came foorth of a houle avery honest man, as it seemed, who was very well apparelled and stayed them, for that in the same house, there were certayne Dames principall personages, that did see them a farre off, and not content therewith, they did request them with great curtesse for to enter into the house, that they might the better fee them : the which they did straightwayes accomplish, and entring in, they were brought into a court, whereas was set Chavres for them to fit downe, and the Ladies were there a little from them, beholding them with great honeftie and granitie. Then a little after, they fet them a banquet with March-panes and fweet 10 meats made of Sugar, which they did eate without any curiofitie, and drunke after the same. The banquet being done, they made fignes and tokens vnto them, that they received great content with their fight, and that they might depart when that their pleafure was, the which they did. after that they had made great curtefies with thankes, for their friendship received of both parts. House of pleas. So after they had taken their leave, they went to fee a House of pleasure, that was hard by the Towne-wall, wrought vpon the water, with very faire galleries and open lodges to banquet in.

stone, and the least of them was of eight spannes long : and round about them were brookes of running water, that gaue a pleafant found in the meane time they were banquetting, and nigh 40 thereunto many Gardens full of all forts of Flowers. And a little from that Pace they faw a S:one-bridge. Bridge all of Masons worke, and the stones very well wrought and of a mightie bignesse, they measured some of them, that were twentie and two and twentie soote long, and five foot broad, and seemed vnto them, that it was a thing impossible to bee layd there by mans hands. Of this bigneffe, yea and bigger they did fee layd vpon many other Bridges, in the discourse of their vovage, going to Chincheo and Aucheo. The next day in the morning when they were vp and readie, they found in the house all things in a readinesse and in very good order, for their departure, as well their little Chayres, and Horse, as for men to carrie their stuffe and apparell, which did not a litle make them to maruell, how that every one of them with a wafter vpon their shoulders, did divide their burthen in two parts, fixe roues before and fixe roues behinde, and did trauell 50 with the same with so great ease and swiftnesse, that the Horse could not indure with them. They went vnto the Tiedan his house. They found him with great Maiestie, but yet gaue them great and good entertaynment. Hee did likewise put vpon each of them, two pieces of Silke, in

made of Masons worke, and therein many Tables finely painted, and round about it Cisterns of water, wherin was store of Fish, and joyning onto them Tables of very faire Alabaster, all of one

From this Towne of Tangoa vnto Chincheo, is thirteene leagues, and so playne way that it Thriftie tillage giveth great content to travell it : in all the way they could not fee one spanne of ground but was tilled and occupied. The like they doe fay, is of all the ground that is in the whole Kingdome : it is full of people, and the Townes one to neere to another, that almost you can not judge them to bee many Townes but one, for that there was but a quarter of a league diffant, one Towne from another, and it was told vnto them that in all the Provinces of the Kingdome, it is 60 peopled in the same order. All their ground they till is watred, which is the cecasion of the fruitfulneffe therof, fo that they doe gather fruit all the yeere long, and our Spaniards did fee in all pla-Plowing with ces whereas they came, that they were gathering of Rice, some new spring vp, some with eares, and some ripe. They doe plough and till their ground with Kine, Bufalos, and Bulls, which are

the same order as the Gouernour of Tanfuso did.

very tame, and although they bee very great, yet be their hornes but of a fpaune long and turning backwards to the tayle, in such fort that they cannot doe any hurt or harme with them; they doe governe them with a coard that is made fast to a ring that is in their note, and in like fort doe they governe the Bufalos. They doe feed them commonly in the fields of Rice, for that Pullering they have no other graings, and all the time that they are feeding, a Boy doth ride on every one of them to disturbe them, that they doe no harme therein. But to cate the weedes and graffe that doe grow in the Rice.

All the high-wayes are couered with the shadow of very faire Orchards, which doe garnish it very much, and they are planted in very good order; and among it them there are Shops, whereto as is fold all manner of Fruits, to the comfort of all fuch as doe travell by the way, which is an infinite number, some on foote, some on horse-backe, and others in little chayres. Their waters by the high-wayes, are very good and light. The fame day when they had trauelled halfe way. they faw a tarre off comming marching towards them in very good order, a foundron of Souldiers, which at the first caused them to maruell, and to bee afrayd, till fuch time as they drew nigher, it was told vito them, that it was the Captayne of the guard vito the Infuanto, or Gouernour of Chinches, who came by his order to receive them with four hundred Souldiers, very well armed with Pikes and Harquebusses, and well apparelled. So soone as the Captayne came vnto them, hee was mounted on a bay Horie, but of small flature, as they for the most part bee in all that Prounce, hee alighted and came vnto the Fathers, and his companions (who likewite

The Captayne came very well apparelled with a Chayne of gold about his necke, a man of a good audacitie and understanding. Hard unto his stirrop hee had a Page that went with him, and carryed a great Tira fol, made of Silke, that did shadow him all ouer. Hee had before him Athing to great mulicke of Trumpets and Hoybuckes, whereon they played in great concord. This Cap- keepenway tayne with his foure hundreth Souldiers, did continually guard them for pompe, not necessitie; the Sunne; for the people may not weare weapons but the Souldiers. In this high-way continually there went and came many packe-Horses, laden with Merchandise and other things, but the most part of them were Mules. The high-wayes are very broad, that twentie men may ride together High wayes on a ranke, and one not hinder another, and are all paued with great itones.

20 did alight from their little Chayres) and did falute the one the other with great courtefie.

Pon a Saturday being the eleventh of July, came our Spaniards unto the Citie of Chincheo, Chincheo hash foure houres before it was night. This Citie is of the common fort in that Kingdome, and feuentie thoumay have feuencie thousand housholds. It is of great trafficke and well provided of all things, for sand houshold: that the Sea is but two leagues from it : it hath a mightie River running along it by it downe man to the Sea, by which is brought by water and carryed downe all kinde of merchandile. There is Faire Bridge a Bridge ouer the fayd River, which is supposed to bee the fairest that is in all the world : it hath a draw bridge to ferue in time of warres, or for any other necessitie : the Bridge is eight hundred paces long, and all wrought with flones of two and twentie foote long, and flue foote broad, a thing greatly to bee maruelled at : at the entrie thereof, there were many armed Souldiers rea-40 die to hight, who when they came within Harquebuffe fhot did falute them in very good order,

There was nigh vato the fayd bridge in the Ruer riding at anchor, more then a thousand Ships A thousand of all forts, and to great a number of Boates and Barkes, that all the River was coursed, and eue-thips in one ry one full of people that had entred into them for to fee the Castillas, for fo they did call the Spa- River. miards in that Countrey, for the ftreets in the Suburbes, nor in the Citie could not hold them, the number was fo great, yet their streets are as broad as our ordinary streets in any Crtie in all Spaine, This Citie is compassed with a strong Wall made of stone, and is seven fathom high, and source fa-

thom broad, & vpon the Gates many towers, wherein is placed their Artillerie, which is all their They have no ftrength, for that they doe not wie in their Kingdome strong Castles, as they doe in Europe. The vicos Castles houses of the Citie are all built after one fore and falhion, but faire, & not very high, by reason of Harthon because 50 the Earthquakes which are ordinarily in that Country. All the Greets (but especially that wherin they passed at their comming thirther) have on the one side and on the other, Sheds, under the Rich Merwhich are shops, full of rich Merchandise and of great value, and very curious. They have in e-chandise. quall diffance the one from the other, many triumphant Arches which doe fet out the fireets Triumphant very much, and is vied in every principall ffreet throughout all the Kingdome, in the which Arches. they have excellent Market-places, whereas is to bee bought all things that you will defire to be eaten, as well of Fish, as of Flesh, Fruits, Hearbs, Comfits, Conserues, and all things fo good

The Infusion or Governour of the Citie, did fend that forthwith they should goe vinto his The Influsion House, for that hee had great delire to fee them. In the midft of the streete, where was no lesse 60 number of people then in the other, whereby they entred into the Citie, they met with a Logtia, that came to entertaine them with great Maiestie, and had carryed before him many Banners, Mace-bearers, and Tipstaues, and others which carryed Sets or Whips, which they did trayle after them, made fait unto long flickes, which were the Executioners, the which doe goe alwayes making of way, parting the people before the Logias, as you have heard. The maintie

cheape, that it is almost bought for nothing.

An Affiffant. Serpents knotted the Kings

and company wherewith he came was to great, that they verily did beleeue him to be the Infinante: but being certified, they understood that it was one of his Counsellors that came from the Gouernours home to his owne house, which was in the same street whereas hee met with them. This Counsellor was carried in a Chaire of Juorie, garnished with Gold and with Curtaines of Cloth of Gold, and on them the Kings Armes, which are certayne Serpents knotted togother (as hath beene told you.) But when he came right against the Spaniard, without any staying he made a figne with his head, and commanded that they should returne backe againe vino his house, which was hard by : the Captaines did straight-wayes obey his commandement, and returned with them. The Counsellor entred into his house, which was very faire, hee had in i returned with them. a me and a Garden. After him entred the Spaniards all 10 alone, the reft remayned without in the fireet at the Lopius commandement, hee entertayned them with very good words of semblance, and commanded a Banquet to be brought forth, and Wine to drinke, he began first both to cate and drinke. Then he commanded to call in the Captaine, vnto whom was given the charge to beare them companie, and didchide with him very fharpely and seuerely, because he did carrie them on foot (they could not understand whether it were done for a policie, or of a truth, although the effects wherewith hee did chide feemed of a truth) hee straight-wayes commanded two rich Chaires to bee brought forth to carry the Fathers, and to give vnto their companions Horses: the which beeing done, hee willed them to goe and visit the Gouernour, who did tarrietheir comming: and that another time at more lei-

The Palace.

They followed their way all along it the street, which seemed vnto them to bee more fairer then the other wherein they entred, and of more fairer houses and triumphant Arches: and allo the shops that were on the one side and on the other, to bee better furnished with richer things then the others, in so ample fort, that what therewith, as also the great number of people which they saw, they were so amazed, that they were as people from themselves, thinking it to bee a Dreame. To conclude, after they had gone a good while in that street, delighting their eyes with new things neuer feene of them before : they came into a great place, whereas were many Souldiers in good order with their Harquebusses, Pikes and other Armour in a readinesse, apparelled all in a Livery of Silke, with their Ancients dilplayed. At the end of this place, was there a very faire and sumptuous Palace, the gate was wrought of Masons worke of stone, very 30 great and full of figures or Personages, and abone it a great window with an Iron grate all gile: they were carried within the gates, the Soulders and the people which were without number, remayned without and could not be auoyded but with great difficultie. When they were within the first Court, there came forth a man very well apparelled and of authoritie, and made signes with his hand vnto them that brought the Spaniards, that they should carrie them into a Hall that was upon the right hand, the which was straight-wayes done. The Hall was very great and faire, and at the end thereof there was an Altar, whereon were many Idols, and all did differ the one from the other in their fashion : the Altar was rich and very curiously trimmed with

burning Lampes: the Altar-cloth was of cloth of Gold: and the fruntlet of the same. After awhile that they had beene there whereas the Idols were, there came a Seruant 40 State-ceremo- from the Gouernour and faid vnto them in his behalfe, that they should fend vnto him the Interpreter; they straight-wayes commanded him to goe. And the Governour faid vnto him that he should aduise the Fathers and the rest of his companions, that if they would talke and treate of fuch businesse as they came for, that it must be done with the same ceremonie and respect, as the Nobles of that Province doe, vie to talke with him, which is vpon their knees (as afterwards they did fee many times vsed) if not that they should depart vnto the House whereas they were lodged , and there to tarrie the order that should be sent from the Vice-roy of Auchee.

The Spaniards were of divers judgements, striving amongst themselves a good while, but yet in conclusion, the Religious Fathers, whom the Gouernour of the Ilands had ordayned and fent as principals in this matter, and whose judgement they thould follow, said, that they ought to 50 accept the condition, feeing that by no other meanes they could not come vnto that they pretended; and not to leave it off for matters of small importance, for that therein they make no offence vnto God, and it may be a meane vnto the converting of that mightie Kingdome.

When that the Infuanto vn.lerstood that the Spaniards would enter with the reuerence accustomed, and in such order as was declared vnto them, hee straight-wayes commanded that they should come into the Hall whereas hee was, they entred into another Hall as bigge as the first : whereas were many Souldiers with their weapons in their hands in very good order, and richly apparelled, and next vnto them were many Tipstaues and Sergeants, with different Ensignes or bages, all spartled with long Robes of like garded and embroydered with Gold, and eury one of them had a Helme on his head, some of silver and other some of Tinnegile ourr, which 60 was a gallant thing to fee: all had long haire and died yellow, which hung downe behind their eares vpon their backes : they were placed in very good order, and made a lane that the Spaniards might puffe thorough: then they came into a Gallerie, which was joyning vnto the Chamber where the Gouernour was, and there they heard fuch a noyfe of Instruments of divers forts,

which endured a good while, and was of so great melodie, that it seemed wnto them that they neuer before heard the like : which caused vnto them great admiration to see so great Maiestre among it Gentiles. When the Musicke was ended, they entred into the Hall aforefaid, and had Great Mais fig. not gone many fleps, when as they met with the Counfailer that met with them in the fireet afore-faid, and with him other two of his companions all on foot and bare-headed before the Gouernour, and their Entignes of Majestie left off: which is generally vied in all the Kingdome, the inferiour to make any thew when that he is before his Superiour. Then they made fignes vnto The Influentes them for to kneele downe, for that the Insuanto was nigh at hand in a rich Towre, under a Ca- person and en. nopie of great Riches, and did represent so great Majestie as the King himselfe : hee did enter- terraynment. to tayne them with tokens of great loue, and humanitie, and told them by their Interpreter, that

they were very well welcome, and that hee did greatly rejoyce to fee them, with many other words of great fauour. This Gouernour was a man of goodly person, well fauoured, and of a merry countenance, more then any that they had seene in all that Countrey. Hee caused to bee put youn the shoulders of the Fathers and of the Souldiers that were with him, every one of them two pieces of filke, which was croffed about them like Skarfes, and likewise to either of them a branch of filuer: the like courtesie he did vnto the Captaine Omoncon, and vnto Sinsay. and commanded to give voto all their Servants every one of them a Mantle of Cotton painted. This being done, the Fathers did give vnto him the Letters which they carried from the Governour and Generall of the field, and a note of the Prefent that was fent him : crauing pardon for on that it was fo small, but time and oportunitie would not serue as then to fend vnto him a thing

of greater price and valour : certifying him, that if the friendship which they pretended did goe forwards, and come to be established, that then all things should be amended and amplified. Hee answered vnto their proffers with words of great fauour, and made signes vnto them to arile. and to goe and take their rests there, whereas they were lodged: the which they did, and found all things in very good order and well furnished, as well of Beds as of all other necessaries, which was done by the commandement of the Gouernour. Before they departed out of the Palace the Captaine of the guard did carrie them vnto his Lodging, which was within the Court, and there he made them a Banquet with Conferues, and Fruits in abundance: the which being done, hee and other Gentlemen of the Palace did beare them company vntil they came to their Lodgings, 20 which they greatly defired, for that they were wearie of their Iourney, and also with the trou-

ble of the great presse of people that pressed on them in the streets, & otherwise for to see them: the which Captaine of the guard did appoint a Company of Souldiers for to guard them both night and day, the which was done more for Maiestie then for necessitie or securitie of their perfons. They had a Steward appointed to prouide them and all their company of all things neceffary, and that in abundance, and not to take of them any thing, which was given by particular commandement by the Gouernour.

The next day, many of the Gentlemen of the Citie did goe unto the Spaniards to wifit them. and fuch as could not goe themselues did send their Seruants, bidding them welcome. The Spaniards did make answere, and gratified them all, in the which visitation they spent all the whole 40 day, having great admiration to see the good behaviour, nurture, and gallant demeanour of those Gentlemen, and the great discretion they had in the demanding of any thing they would know as also in their Answeres made to our requests. The next day the Insuanto sent a commandement wherein he willed the two Fathers to remayne in their Lodgings and take their eafe : but the two Souldiers Pedro Sarmiento, and Miguel de Loarcha, should come and speake with him, and that they should bring with them their Interpreter, for that hee had one there with him (who was a Chino, and understood the Language of the Philippines, but so badly, that they could not by his Interpretation talke of any matter of importance. So when they came thit her, they were brought whereas he was, but with leffe ceremonie, he requested them to declare vnto him the whole circumstance of the comming of Limaton the Rouer, vnto the Ilands, and how the Spaniards dealt with him: that although he had beene informed particularly in all things, by the 50 Captaine Omoncon and Sinfay, yet he was in a lealousie that they told him not the truth. Hee

was nothing deceived in that he suspected,) for after that our Souldiers had made a true Relation of the comming of the Rouer vnto Manilla, and of all the rest, hee found that they differed very Vainc glory. much, the one from the other, for that they did attribute it wholly vnto themselves to get honourand benefit: but the Infaanto like a wife man straight-wayes vnderstood their pretence, But when that he perceived that Limaton was neither dead nor Prisoner, but onely beinged, he offered vnto them that if they would return e againe vnto Pagansinan vpon him whereas he was, he would give vnto them five hundred ships of warre, with people sufficient to serve both by Sea and Land, and more if they would request. They answered him, that all such cost and labour were but in vaine, for that the Generall of the field who hath him in siege, with the people and 60 ships that he hath are sufficient to end that Enterprize, and to fend him hither aline or dead, and

that long before that their fleet should come thither. And besides this, their Hands were poore Booting. of victuals, and could not suffaine so great an Armie many dayes. Beeing satisfied with there reasons, he gaue place that the Interpreter which they brought should come in where as they

Marrified

Table rite.

were, for he remayned at the doore without, for that hee would bee fully certified to avoid the furbitious doubt he had before he come in prefence, yet he did helpe them very much. So when their Interpreter was come in, the Spaniards feeing good occasion and oportunitie for todeclare that which passed the day before, betwixt them and the Fathers, touching the speaking voto him on their knees; and feeing, as it feemed vinto them, that he was at that time in a good mind for to heare them, they did vtter vnto him all the whole contention (after that they had declared miny reasons of great consideration, to give them to understand that it was not convenient to doe it, but especially to religious men, who were there as principals ouer the rest, vnto whom the King of Spaine (their Lord) himselfe doth stand on foot, when as they doe intreate of any matter, although it be but of small importance : for that they are Priests and Ministers of God, 10 whom he doth worthip and reuerence.

The Instanto with a merry countenance did answere them, that who that time hee vnderflood no more of them, then in that he was informed by the Captaine Omoncon, and did not acknowledge them to bee any other but Caffillas : without knowing wherefore they came, nor from whom, for lacke of the Letters fent from their Gouernour, and Generall of the field, the first time that hee spake with them : neither had hee any knowledge of the custome of their Countrey : yet notwithstanding, that which hath passed heere, without any exception of perfon, if they would take it in good part, in that which is to come shall be amended; and from that day forwards, at all times when seuer it were their pleasure to come of themselues, or at such day forwards at a trings of the talke with him as they doe vie in Castilla or Spaine, vinto fuch 10 of their dignitie and vocation, the which hee granted with a very good will: although hee not grant vitto any that pre-eminence, no not vitto a Vice-roy, except he were an Ambaliador fene from fome King.

The next day, the Gouernour called a Gentleman of his House voto him, and commanded him to go and visit the Spaniards, and to informe himselse of them if that they lacked any thing. And also that he should in his name inuite them for the next day following to dine with him in his House. This Gentleman went vnto them and accomplished his message : and the Spaniards answered, kissing his hand for the great care he had of them : they were carryed into a Hall that was below in the second Court, whereas were many Chaires of Veluet and Tables that were painted with their frontals before. In the first Chaires they caused the Friers to fit downe, euery one at a Table by himselfe, and each of them other fixe Tables, placed in order, compassing round like a Circle : then were the Spanish Souldiers fet in the same manner, and each of them had fine Tables, and next vnto them the Captaine of the guard belonging vnto the Gouernour, and two other Captaines : and every one of them had three Tables. For that it is the cuffome A Comedy & of that Countrey to make a difference in the qualitie of the gueffs, by the number of the Tables. other ports. All these were placed in circle or compasse (as aforesaid) that they might see one another. In the midst betwixt them there was a round compasse, whereas was represented a Comedie with much pastime, and indured all the Dinner time, and a good while after. There was also great ftore of very good and excellent Musicke, accompanied with gallant voyces, also lesters with The Viands. Puppets, and other things of great passime, to drive the time away. On the first Table was set to every one of the guests, little Baskets wrought with Gold and Silver wyre, full of sweet meates made of Sugar, as March-panes, Caftles, Pitchers, Pots, Dilhes, Dogges, Buls, Elephants, and other things very curious, and all gilt : befides this there were many Difhes full of fleffi, as Capons, Hennes, Geefe, Tcales, Gamons of Bacon, pieces of Beefe, and other forts of fiesh where with all the Tables were replenished, faining that whereat they did fit to dine, which was replenished with victuals that was dreffed (for all the other was raw) and was of so great abundance, that there was at times more then fiftie diffies, and they were ferued with great curiofitie. They had Wine of divers forts, and of that which they doe make in that Countrey of the Palme-tree, but of so great excellencie, that they found no lacke of that which was made of Grapes. The Dinner endured foure houres, in fo good order that it might have beene given vnto

any Prince in the World. Their Servants and Slaves that they brought with them at the fame time, did dine in another Hall nigh vnto the fame, with fo great abundance as their Mafters. When Dinner was done, the Gouernour commanded the people to come vnto him, with whom hee did talke and common with great friendship, and good conversation, and would not confent that they should kneele downe, neither to be bare headed. So after that he had made vnto them tokens of friendship, and detayned them a while, in demanding of many things, laftly, he told them that there was an order come from the Vice-roy of Aucher, that they should goe thither with great speed. So hee tooke his leaue of vs with great friendship and courtefie. At their going forth out of the Hall, they found the Captaine that did dine with them, and with him many other Gentlemen that 60 tarried their comming for to be are them company vnto their Lodging; going before them many Seruants, that did carrie the raw meate, that was upon the other Tables over and above that which they did eate on, the which was done for great Maiestie, and a Ceremonie very much vied in that Kingdome, so many times as they doe make any Banquet.

When

When they came vnto their Lodging they found that the Influence had fent them a very good Present, in the which was for every one of them foure pieces of filke, and counting chills with other things, and certayne painted Mantles for the Servants and Slaves. After they had taken their leave of the Captaines and Gentlemen that did beare them company home, they beganne with great joy to put all things in order for their Journey the next day following.

He next day in the morning, before that the Spaniards were flirring, there was within the House all things necessary for their Journey, as well of Litter chaires, as of Horses and Men for to carrie them, and their stuffe, the which they did with fo good a will (as aforefaid) that they did fall out and frine amongst themselves, who should be the first that should receive their

10 burthen. So all things beeing in good order, they departed, having in their company the same Captaine and Souldiers, that vnto that time had beene their guard, vntill they came vnto the Citie of Aucheo, whereas the Vice-roy was. This day by realon they understood that they should depart, the prease and multitude of the people was so great, that although they had ducker. Tip-staues before them, to beate the people away and to make roome, yet was it almost night before they could get out of the Citie: fo that they were conftrained to remaine in a Towne there hard by all that night, whereas by the commandement of the Gouernour they were very well lodged, and their Supper made readie in very good order, as it was in feuen dayes together, till fuch time as they came vnto Aucheo, without taking for the fame, or for any other thing neceffarie for their fultentaion, any price or value. There went continually before them a Post

20 with a prouision from the Gouernour, written in a great board wherein was declared who they were, and from whence they came, and commanding that there should be prouided for them all things necessarie in abundance, vpon the Kings coft, which was the occasion that so much people came for to fee them, that in the high-waies they were many times disturbed with great trouble, the third day they came vnto a Citie which was called Megon, which was formetimes Megon a great the head gouernment, the which was of forty thousand housholds, but a great part thereof was Gite spoyled dispeopled : the occasion thereof they told vs (and was) that about thirtie yeares past, the lape- by lapanders. nes, who brought for their Guides three Chinois, came vpon that Citie (to revenge themselves of Surar gem an injurie that was done vnto them) che which they put in execution with fo great fecrecie and

policie, that they made themselues Lords of the Citie without any danger or hurt voto them-30 selues : for that fiftie Iapones, men fit for that purpose, did apparell themselues in Chinois apparell without being knowne, and came vnto a Gate of the Citie, whereas the Souldiers that had the charge thereof were void of all suspition. And within a little while after that, followed two thousand that did dis-imbarke themselves in a secret and vnknowne place, and came in very fecret order, because they would not be discourred, and did befet that gate of the Citie, whereas their companions were, which they fent before : who fo foone as they faw them nigh at hand, drew out their weapons, the which they carried hid under their apparell, & fet upon the Soldiers (that were void of feare and vnarmed) with so great furie and force, that they being amazed wert easily slain, so that they were Lords of the Gate, whereas they left very good guard, and followed 40 their victorie, and made themselues Lords of the Citie, without any danger vnto their persons,

and did possesse the same certaine daies, and did sacke the same in spite of them all, with great harmeand lose vnto the Inhabitants thereof, vntill fuch time as the Vice-roy of Ancheo did leuie an Armie together of threefcore and ten thusand men, but they seeing that they could not defend themselues against so many, in one night they left the Citie and went vnto their ships. whereas they had left them in very good order, and carried with them the spoile of the Cibe. leauing it beaten downe.

So some as they came thither, the Friers remayned in their Lodgings, but Pedro Sarmients and Miguel de Loarcha went to visit the Gouernour, vsing the Spanish courtesie with him ; and he received them with great joy and courtefie. After they had taken their leave and returned vitto their Lodgings, the Gouernour fent to visit them El Tju, who is the ancientest of his Coun-

50 cell. At their departure from this Citie, trauelling towards Ancheo, they passed ouera mightie Admirable great River, by a Bridge all made of itone : the goodlieft and greatest that ever they had feene, whose greatnessed did cause wonderfull admiration, so that they stayed and did measure it from one end to another, that it migt be put among ft the wonders of that Countrey, which they tooke a note of. They found that it was one thousand and three hundred foot long, and that the least stone wherewith it was built, was of seventeene foot, and many of two and twentie foot long, and eight foote broad, and feemed vnto them a thing impossible to bee brought thither by mans art, for that all round about fo farre as they could fee, was plaine ground without any Mountaines : by which they judged them to be brought from farre. When they were passed that Bridge, they travelled all the rest of the day till night vpon a Cawsie that was very broad and 60 plaine, and on both fides many Victualling Houses, and the fields sowed with Rice, wheate, and

other Seeds : and fo full of people as in the streets of a good Towne or Citie After they had trauelled more then halfe a league in the Suburbs of the Citie of Auchee, they met with a Post that came from the Vice-roy: who brought order that they should re-



Subur's of Aud ex

mayne in a house that was appointed for them in the fayd Suburbes. So soone as they were alighted, there came a Gentleman to visite them, sent from the Vice-roy to bid them welcome. and to know how they did with their journey, and also to see that they were well provided for that night, of all things necessarie, and that in abundance. After this Gentleman, came other Captaynes to visite them, and brought with them great store of Conserues, Wine and Fruit: which is a common custome among st them, when that they goe in the like visitation, and it is carryed by their feruants in little Baskets very curioufly wrought, or elie in Barrels made of earth all gilt. Within two houres after their comming thither, there came another meffenger from the Vice-toy, with many men laden with Capons, Hennes, Geele, Teales, gamons of Bacon, and Conserues of divers forts, and of great abundance, sufficient for one hundred men to to suppe that night, and for their dinner the next day. The next day in the morning very early. there came much people vnto their lodging, fent by the Vice-roy, and brought with them two rich Chayres, for to carrie the Fathers in, and the Curtaines tyed vp, that they might the better bee feene, and for their companions very good Horfes, fadled after the fallion which they doe vie. They foorthwith made haste for to depart, and alchough they made great speed, yet were they a good houre and a halfe, before they could come vnto the gates of the Citie, and feemed wnto them that they had trauelled two leagues in the Suburbes: well peopled, faire houses, and many shops full of Merchandise. Before they came vnto the Gates, they passed a mightic River three times over Bridges, that

were great and very faire, and the River fo deepe, that great Ships came up the fame, but their 20

mastes stooping downe, to passe vnder the bridges. This Citie is the head Citie of all the Pro-

uinge, verie rich and fertile, and many Townes belonging vnto it, and but eight leagues from the Sea. They had no leasure to tell the Souldiers, but they faw that from the Gate untill they came vnto the Vice-royes Palace on both tides, which was a good way, to bee full of them, and all richly apparelled and of one colour. The people that were at the windowes and in the ffreet, betwixt the houses and the Souldiers were so great a number, that it seemed to be doomes day, and that all the people in the world were there loyned together in that fireet. When they

came unto the Palace which was two houres after day, the Gentlemen that were their guides. did cause the Spaniards to enter into a roome which was hard by, till such time as the Gate was open, for that it is open but once a day, and so continue no longer time then the audience endu- 30 reth, which is done by the Vice-roy once every day, and that is but a small time. But fifthe-

forc he doth enter into audience, there is shot off foure peeces of Artillerie, with a great novie of Trumpets, Drums and Waytes. And there is no day that paffeth without audience, as our people did see by experience so long as they were there, and were likewise informed of others. The houre being come, and the ceremonie done as aforelayd, the Gates were opened, and there was in the Court many Souldiers, apparelled in the fame liverie that those were of in the fireet, From the midst amongst them came foorth a Gentleman, who was as it was told them, the Captayne of the guard of the Vice-roy, who came with great grauitie and authoritie, towards the place whereas our people were, and after they had faluted the one the other, hee made fignes vnto them, that they should goe towards the gates of the Palace. When they were with- 40 in the first Court, which was great and wrought with mightie pillars, there was a great number

of Souldiers, and many Sergeants, that entred into another great court, and mounted up a payre of stayres that was on the one side, whereas all the people were with great silence, saving the Captayne of the guard, who went with our people till they came to the gates of the Hall, where was the Vice-roy, at which gate hee flayed with his head difference, and made fignes vinto ours that they should doe the like.

Ceremonie.

once a day.

Stite.

Then straight-wayes came foorth of the Hall a man apparelled in a long Robe, of good perfonage, and asked of the Spaniards, if they would speake with the Vice-roy, and they answered, yea : then asked hee againe from whom they came, and by whom they were fent, they aniwered, that they were fent by the Gouernour of Philippinas, who was teruant vnto the mightieft 30 King in all Christendome. When he had this answer, he returned agains into the Hall, and within a little while after he came foorth, and bad them come in, but gaue them to understand, that in entring into the hall whereas the Vice-roy was, that they should kneele downe, and talke with him in that order, till hee commanded to the contrarie, if they would vie this Ceremonie, that then they should come in, if not, that they should returne backe againe. They sayd, that they would observe the order given vnto them. Therewith hee went in, who seemed to bee the Mafter of ceremonies, making a figne that they should follow after him, and doe that which hee willed them to doe. At the entring in at the doore, they flayed a little, and then kneeled downe right ouer against there whereas the Vice-roy sate, in a Chayre very high like vnto a Throne, with a Table before him, and was in fo darke a place that almost they could not see his sace very 60 well. On the one fide of him, there were fome like vnto Heralds of Armes, with Scepters in their hands, and on the other fide, two men of a gallant comlinesse armed with Corslets, made of scales of Gold downe to the calfe of their legges, with Bowes in their hands of gold, and Quiuers at their backs of the same. Both the one and the other were vpon their knees. There was

CH AP.3. S.4. Span, and Chinois disagree, Reports of great China Cities, 301

vpon the Table before him, paper and all things necessaries to write: which is an ordinarie vse Lions he amone it them at all times, when there is any publike audience, and on the one fide of the board Armenet that among it them at all times, which trace is any per they vinderstood) the Armes of that Province. Province, per So firaight-wayes hee made fignes vnto them to draw neere, which they did, and kneeled hapsthisden downe a little from the Table which was whereas the Mafter of Ceremonies did will them. In ceiued Pinte, this fort they began to talke with him by their Interpreter, and told them the occasion of their who mistooke this fort they began to talke with him by their interpreter, and told them they were lent, but them (feeing comming into that Citie and Kingdome, and from whom and vnto whom they were lent. But them common the common the common that Citie and Kingdome, and from whom and vnto whom they were lent. hee made fignes vnto them that they should arise, the which they did with a very good will, on pillars, &c. and did perfeuer in their intent. But the Vice-roy did cut them off before they could make an to be the Kings To end, and asked if they had brought any Letter from their King, vinto the King his Lord, whom Armer, which

they would goe to fee and talke with ; but when they answered no, hee ftraight-wayes tooke Were but of his leave of them, faying, that they were welcome, and that they should depart vnto their lode ings and to take their eale, for that afterwards they should have occasion to declare their mindes vnto him, and hee would give them their answer, for that the King was farre off, and it requireth along time to come whereas hee is, but he would write vnto him, and according vnto his commandement, he would make them answer. And therewith hee tooke the Letter, and the memoriall of the prefent, and commanded in his prefence, to put about the neckes of the Friare in manner of a scarfe, to either of them fixe pieces of Silke, and vnto the Soldiers their companions, and vnto Omoncon, and Sinfay, each of them foure pieces, and to every one of their fernants 20 two a piece, and to give voto the two Friars and the Souldiers, Omoncon, and Sinfay, every one of them two branches of Siluer.

With the Silke about their neckes, and with the branches in their hands, they returned out of the Hall and downe the flayres the way they came, and fo through the court into the ftreets. from whence they law them that the Court gate with fo great a noyle, as when they did open it. From thence at the request of Omoneon, and Sinfay, they went vnto the house of Totoc, who Totoc. is the Captayne generall of all the men of Warre, and vnto the house of Cagnitoe, who is the chiefe Standard-bearer: their boufes were nigh the one the other, very faire and great. They found them with as great Maiestie as the Vice-roy, and in the same order, with a Table before them, and had on each tide of them armed Souldiers, kneeling on their knees. Yet did they not

20 vieour men with the courtefie that the Vice-toy vied, to caule them to stand vp, which was the occasion, that firaight-wayes they made a flow that they would depart and bee gone, complaining of Omoneon, and Smfay, for that they did carrie them tinther, and told them with anger, that the Gouernour of Manilla, did intreat them in a different fort, who was there refident for the mightiest Prince in all the world, and they but easie Merchants, neither was their going thither to bee equalled, vnto the benefite that they came thither for. This discontent the which they received, was the occasion that they would not goe to make any more visitations, although the fayd Omoncon, and Sinfay, for their owne interest, would have carryed them to the houses of other Officers, and Gentlemen of the Court.

At their comming thither, they found all their stuffe in good order, and their dinner marvei-Olous well prouided, and the whole house hanged and trimmed, as though it had beene for the Kings owne person, with many wayting men and Souldiers, those which did guard them both day and night, and hanging at the doore two tables or boards (commanded by the Vice-roy) whereon was written who they were, that were there lodged, and from whence they came, and wherefore, and that none wholoeuer, should bee so hardie as to offer them any wrong or diflurbance, vpon payne to bee for the same offence sewerely punished. In this house they were more in quiet, then in any other place, whereas they had beene, neither did the people give Reports of Pethem so much trouble, by reason of the great care which the Iudges had in putting order for the quin, called fame, by the commandement of the Vice-roy, yet was it the greatest Towne and most populed, of all that Province (although in other Provinces there bee that be much bigger) and is affirmed Suntiem.

that the Citie of Taybin, or Suntiem, (there whereas the King and his Court is refident) hath Nanchin, or To three hundred thouland housholds, and yet there is a bigger Citie in the Kingdome cal- Nanquin. See

This Citie of Muches, hath a very faire and strong Wall made of stone, which is five fathon Auches descrihigh, and foure fathom broad, the which was measured many times by our people, for that bed, they had a gate out of their lodging that did open to the fame. This wall is all conered oner with tyles to defend the rayne-water for hurting of it, which could not to the contrarie but receine damage, for that there is no lyme vied in the whole wall. They have not one Cattle in all this Citie, neither is there any vied in all that Kingdome, for all their force and strength is in their Gates, the which bee made very firing, with a double wall, within very broad, betwixt the which are continually many Souldiers, luch as doe keepe watch and ward both day and 60 night. Vpon these gates they have much Ordnance, but very ill wrought. The whole wall is Ordnance bad

full of battlements, and thereon written the names of fuch Souldrers as are bound to repayre this ther in the time of necessitie. At every hundred paces they have lodgings, the which are very buge and great : there whereas in the time of necessitie doe remayne and dwell their Captaynes,

Tarbin allo and

to long as their troubles doe indure, all the wall is fortified with two great mores or ditches, the d use nated one within and the other without, the which they doe fill at all times when they pleale, by fluces which they have from the River for the same purpose, and dee serge of water almost all the houles in the Citie, whereas they have their flanges for the most part full of Fish. This mightie Citie is fi uated in a great playne, and compaffed round about with mightie Rockes and Mountaines, which is the occasion that it is not so healthfull, and the Inhibitants say, that it is Immostions

by reason of the Mountaines, and many times it is ouer-flowen in the winter, by spring-tydes from the River. And in that yeere that this doth happen, it doth defirey and runnate agreat part of the Citie, as it was at that time when our people did fee it, for that in the winter before they were troubled with these great tydes, which did them much harme.

China Feast begun with Sunne-superstition. Tumblers. Play. LIB. II.

Vice-royes Feaft.

The next day after that our people came into the Citie, the Vice-roy did fend to invite them todinner to his owne house, whereas he made them a great hanquet in the forme following. At their comming vnto the Palace there came forth a great number of Gentlemen, feruants vnto the Vice-roy, to bid them welcome, with great flore of muficke and tokens of mirth. Being sptred into the first Court, they brought them into a mightie Hall that was maruellously well trimmed, wherein was a great number of Tables fet in fuch order, as they were in the banquet that was made them by the Gouernour of Chuncheo, (as hath beene told you) although the number and formiture did farre excell the other. But before they did fit downe, there came vnto them two Captaynes principall men, vnto whom the Vice-roy had committed the charge of the banquet, to doe all things in his name, for that it is a custome in that Kingdome, that Noble men an must not be present in their banquits they make. So the charge was given vnto them, to make them be merrie, & to bid his gheits welcome. When they came vinto them they vied great courtefie, and passed away the time in gallant discourses, till it was time to go to dinner, and that they began to bring in their victuals. Then before they did fit downe, the Captaynes did take each of them a cup in his hand, in manner of a Sorlue, as they doe vie, and being full of Wine, they went together whereas they might discouer the Heauen and offered it vnto the Sunne, and vnto the Saints of heaven, adding thereunto many words of prayers : but principally they did requelt that the comming of their new ghests might be profitable visto them all, and that the friendship which they did pretend to establish, might be for good both vnto the one and to the other. This their prayer being done, they did spill out the Wine making a great courtesse, then were they to straight-wayes filled againe, and making reference vnto their ghests enery one by himselfe, they let the Cups downe upon the Tables whereas the Fathers should dine, whereas they were fet & uerie one by himselie. This being done, the first service was set vpon the boards, and the Captaynes were fet at other Tables. The time which the banquet indured (which was very late) there was great store of mulicke of diners Instruments, as of Vials, Gitterns, and Rebuckes, and with them many lefters did make them merrie at their dinner. The which being done, the fayd Captayris did beare their ghests companie out of the Palace, whereas they did anew invite them to dinner for the next day, in the same Hall : they obeying their request did come, whereas was made unto them a banquet more notable than the first. This day at the banquet was present the Totoc. In this second barquet they had as the day before, very much mulicke, and a Comedic to that indured long, with many prettie and merrie iests : there was also a Tumbler, who did his feates very artificially, as well in vauting in the ayre, as vpon a staffe that two men did hold on

their shoulders. Before the Comedie did begin, by their Interpreter the lignification thereof was

ple to understand that in opening the prefent, there was a note thereof taken before a No. arie,

and thraight-wayes put in againe where it was taken out, before the fayd Notarie and other wit-

neiles, the which being done, hee fested it vp, and fent it vnto the Citie of Taybin, vnto the King

without licence of the King or of his Counfell. This is conformal le vnto that, which the Go-

a Harquebulle and a Flaske: for that hee would cause others to bee made by them, the which

they did fend, and afterwards underflood, that they had counterfeited the same, although not

fuch as have any office of Gouernment, to receive any present of what qualitie foeuer it bee, 10

The next day following, the Vice-roy did lend to visite them, and to aske of them a Sword,

The next day they fent the prefent, and those who carryed it in, did afterward give our peo-

told them, that the better they might content themselves in the conceiving.

Idelatrous rice to the Same.

Comedies. Tomblers.

Tablinor Pacalled, ether and his Counfell, for that they have a rigorous Law in that Kingdome, that doth prohibiteall

by reason of ges or heavile they give ap-Pcila.iue names (as the uernour of Chin, hee did in the prefence of our people. Tarians call the Cambain, that Citi) thereto, in fo perfect manner,

All things good cheape.

Then after a time our people feeing, that their being in that Citie feemed to be long and like to be longer, they did procure to drive away the time in the best manner they could, and went abroad into the Citie, and did by either of them that which they thought best. Whereof they found great abundance, and of to small price, that they bought it almost for nothing. They bought 60 many Bookes that did intreat of divers matters, which they brought with them to the Ilanis. The next day they went to fee the Gates of the Citie, and all such curious things as were to bee feene, fofarre as they could learne or understand, which were many. But amongst them all, they oneChappell. Law a jumptuous Temple of their Idols, in whose chiefe Chappell they counted, one hundred

and cleuen Idols, besides a great number more that were in other particular Chappels, all were of and elected toots because a green manner and gilded; but in especiall three of them that were planinger, ced in the midft of all the rest, the one had three heads proceeding out of one bodie, the one loo- A woman with king on the other in full face, the second was the forme of a Woman with a Child in her armes, childe, the third of a Man apparelled after the forme and fashion, that the Christians doe paynt the Apofiles. Of all the reft some had foure armes, and some had fixe, and other eight, and other some maruellous deformed monsters. Before them they had burning Lamps, and many sweet per-

fumes and finels, but in especiall, before the three about specified.

But when that the Vice-roy did understand, that our people did goe viewing the Citie gates Vice royes and Temples (and perceiveth that they that gave him the notice did suspect it, that it was to icalouse. fome ill intent) therewith hee straight-wayes commanded, that they should not goe forth of their lodging, without his licence : and likewife commanded the Captayne that was their guard not to confent thereunto, as he had done, and likewife that none should carrie them any thing for to fell for he that did it should be punished with whipping. Yet notwishflanding, they had euery day very fufficient necoffaries for their personages in such ample wise, that there did always remayne, and not lacke. In this closenesse and keeping in, they suffered many dayes with much fadnesse, and oppressed with melancholicke humours, to see that their purpose wherefore they went thither feemed to be long, and enery day was worfe and worfe. Yet notwithstanding they did paffe it ouer in the best wife they could, in committing it with heartie zeale vnto God, for whose honour and glory they did attempt that voyage, and prayed vnto him for to moone their

hearts to consent, that the religious Fathers might remayne in that Countrey, for to learne the language (as they had begun many dayes before) by which meanes their foules might be faued, and clearely deliuered from the tyrannie of the Deul, who of truth had them in possession. So after many dayes, that they had remayned in that close estate, as aforesayd, they determined for to goe and talke with the Vice-roy, and to bee fully refolued, either to tarrie or returns from

whence they came, but were not permitted.

In this order they remayned in the Citie certayne dayes, and for to conclude, either to flay there, or depart the Kingdome, they were resolute, and determined to write a Letter vnto the the Vice-roy. They could finde none that would write this letter for them, although they would

20 haue payed them very well for their paines. Till in the end, by great request and prayings, the naue payer them very write it for them, and straight-wayes departed vnto the Citie of Ampin, Ampin, Ampin, that was not farre off, to put away the suspition they might conceiue, that hee did write the letthat was not rarreous, or put away to the same and the same and the same and the same are the sa found great difficultie in fending the fame, for that there was none that would carrie it, neither subjection would they consent, that our men should enter into the Palace to deliver it. But in conclusion, what with requests and gifts, they perswaded their Captayne of their guard to carrie it, who did deliuer the same vnto the Vice-roy, in name of the Castilles, saying, that he tooke it of them to bring it vnto him, for that they did certifie him, that it was a thing that did import very

much. Hauing read the letter, he answered that he would give the King to vinderstand thereof, An ashee faid at the first time. And in that, touching the Friars remaining in that Countrey to preach, at that time he could make them no antiwer, for that in such matters, it was first requisite to haue the good-will of the Royall Countell. Yet would hee make answer viito the Letter they brought from the Gouernour of Manilla, and that they might depart, and returne againe at such time as they brought Limation prisoner or dead, the which being done, then shall the friendship be concluded which they doe pretend, and to remayne and preach at their will. With this anfwer they remayned without all hope to remaine there, and did incontinent prepare themselies for to depart from Manilla, and bought many bookes to carrie with them, wherein was comprehended all the secrets of that Kingdome. By reason whereof, they might give large notice vinto the royall Maiestie of King Philip. The which being understood by the Vice-roy, who had let

30 spyes to watch their doings, he did fend them word that they should not trouble themselves in the buying of bookes, for that he would give them freely, all fuch bookes as they would define to haue : the which afterwards hee did not accomplish.

In the meane time that they stayed in this Citie, amongst all other things that they understood, to drive away the time was one, it was given them to understand that in one of the Prifons, there was a Portugall prisoner, who was taken in a ship of the Iapones, with others of his Nation, who were all dead in the Prison, and none left alive but hee alone. Our people being very definous for to fee him, and to learne of him some secrets of that Country, for that hee had A Paragas pribeene there a great while, they did procure to talke with him, asking licence of the suprezime soner. ludge and Lieutement vinto the Vice-roy, who did not onely refuie to grant it them, but

6c did make diligent inquirie who they were, that did give them to understand thereof, for to Vpon a fodaine there came newes vnto the Citie, that the Rouet Limabon, was vpon the coast of Chinebee, vining his old accustomed cruelties, and how that he had spoyled and robbed a Towne . You the fea coalt. This newes was throughout all the Citie, and appeared to bee true, touching

Suspition of

304

Taoca) another the effect of the deed : yet falle touching the person, for that the Rouer was called Taoca, an Pirat, (aken to enemie, and contrarie vato Limahon : but a friend vato Vintoquian, of whom wee have spoken of. But thereupon the Vice-roy, and all of the Citie, were comformable in the fulpition that they had received, which was that our people were come into that Kingdome vpon fome euill pretence, and to fee the fecrets thereof, to some euill end, which was the occasion that from that time forwards, they shewed them not so good countenance as they did before. These newes was not so soone come, but straight-wayes the Vice-roy did send for Omoncon, (who was then returned from his vifiting) and Sinfay, vnto whom he had done courtefie, and given them the tytle of Logias and Captaynes, and hee did reprehend them very sharpely for that they had brought ouer people thither, and fayd, that they had told him alve, in faying that Limaton was belieged, 10 in fuch fort that hee could not escape, neither had the Castillos burnt his Ships, and that all was but a made matter amongst themselues, and how that the Captines which they brought, and fayd that they had taken from Limabon, they had robbed from other places, and fayd that the Spaniards, were spyes that came to discouer the secrets, and strength of the Kingdome, and that they had brought them thither, by force of gifts that they had given them. They answered him with great humilitie, in faying, that in all that which they had fayd they did speake the truth, and that it should appeare at such time, as the newes of the Rouer should bee better knowne, the which if it shall appeare to be contrarie, they were there readie for to suffer whatfoeuer punishment that should bee given them. The Vice-roy being somewhat satisfied with this their iushification, bad them to depart, remitting all things vnto time for the true declarati-20 on thereof. Then Omoneon, and Sinfay, came thraight-wayes to give the Spaniards to understand of all that had passed with the Vice-roy, and what they understood of him, which caused in them so great teare, that for the time which it indured (which was till such time as they vnderflood the truth as aforefayd) they payed very well for their feafts and banquets the which they had made them. All this happened in the time that Omoncon, and Sinfay, were at variance, and spake many iniurious words the one of the other, discouering their intents and deuises, whereby it plainely appeared, that in all that which they had told vnto the Vice-roy, they lyed, but in especiall Omoncon. Sinsay did diffemble, for hee sayd and told vnto all people, that by his order and industrie, our people did fire the Ships of Limabon, and befieged him, with other speeches in the like fort, yet twentie dayes before his comming thither, all was ended and done 30 as appeared. The occasion of their enmitte and falling out, was for that the Vice-roy had given vnto Omoncon, a tytle and charge of more honour, then vnto Sinfay, having made betwixt them a confort, that the reward or dignitie should bee equally divided betwixt them, and that the one should speake of the other the best they could, because the Vice-roy should doe them friendship. This condition and confort (as appeareth) was cuill performed by Omoncon, being addicted vnto felfe-loue, and feemed vnto him that Sinfay, did not deferue fo much as hee did, for that he was a bale man, and of the Sea, and hee of the more nobilitie, and had the office of a Captavne.

Ith this griefe and care remayned the Spaniards certaine dayes kept close in their lod- 40 gings, and were not visited so often as they were when they first came thither, which did augment very much their feare, till fuch time as they vnderstood, that the Vice-roy either of his owne good-will, or elfe by fome particular order from the King and his Counfell, had called together all the Gouernours of that Prouince of Aucheo, to intreat of matters touching Limahon, as also in particular, why and wherefore the Spaniards came thither, and to resolue themfelues wholly in all things require for the fame. So when that they were all come together, Generall con- which was in a short time, and amongst them the Gouernour of Chincheo, who by another name was called Infuanto, they had particular meetings together with the Vice-roy, in the which they were all agreed to have a generall meeting, whereunto should bee called the Castillos, and to demand of them in publike audience, the cause of their comming and being heard, to give 50 them their answer according as they had determined: for the which vpon a day appointed they met all together (but not the Vice-roy) in the house of the Cagontoc, and commanded to come before the Castillos, who did accomplish their request with a great good-will, for that they vnderstood that they were called to entreat of their matter, either to tarrie or depart. So when they came thither, they were commanded to enter into a mightie Hall, whereas they were all fet in verie rich Chayres with great grauitie and maiestie. The Insuanto seemed to bee the chiefest among ft them, but whether it was for that hee was the principallest next viro the Vice-roy (or as it was told them) for that it was hee that fent Omoncon, in the chase of the Roser Limabon, they knew not, but so soone as they were entred into the Hall, they were commanded to draw nigh, there, whereas they were all placed, without bidding them to fit downe, neither did 60 they vie any particular circumstances or courtelie. The Infuanto tooke vpon him the charge, and demanded of the Spaniards (by meanes of the Interpreters) what was the occasion of their comming into that Countrey. The Spaniards answered as they thought : and supposed, that at that time it could not bee, but that Limahon was either taken prisoner or flaine. Then did the Infuanto

conclude his speech, in faying vnto them that they should returne vnto their owne Countrey to the Hands, and at fuch time as they did bring Limaton, they would conclude all things touching the friendship they requested, and also for the Preaching of the Gospell.

So from that day forwards, they did procure with all hafte for to depart, and gaue the Viceroy to vinderstand thereof, who answered them and fayd, that they should comfort themselves and receive joy and pleasure, and that hee would dispatch them, so soone as the Visitor of that Province was come to Aucheo, which would bee within ten dayes, for that hee had written vnto him. that he should not dispatch them vntill his comming, for that he would see them. From that day forwards, he commanded that fometimes they should let them goe foorth abroad New moone.

to recreate themselues, and that they should shew vnto them some particular pleasure or friend. Musters. thip. So one of them was carryed to fee the Multering of their men of warre, which they have in a common cuftome throughout all she Kingdome, to doe it the first day of the Newsmoone. and is fure a thing to bee feene : and they doe it in the field which is joyning vnto the walls of the Citie, in this manner following. There were joyned together little more or leffe then twen- Their activities tie thousand Souldiers, Pike-men and Harquebusse shot, who were so expert, that at the sound their Pices, & of the Drum or Trumpet, they straight-wayes put themselues in battle aray, and at another to be paught to be paught found in a fquadron, and at another the fhot doe divide themselves from the rest, and discharge their Pieces with very gallant and good order, and with a trice put themselves againe into their places or flandings : this being done, the Pike-men came foorth and gaue the affault all together, with fo good order and confort, that it feemed vnto the Spaniards, that they did exceed all

ther, with 10 good order and country the world : and if it were 10, that their stomacks and hardinesse were equall vnto their dexteritie, and number of people, it were an easie thing for them to conquer the dominion of all the world. If it so chance, that any Souldier should lacke in his Office, Souldiers are and not repayre to his place appointed, hee is straight-wayes punished very cruelly, which is the punished, occasion, that every one of them hath a care vnto his charge. This their Muster indured foure houres, and it was certified vnto the Spaniards, that the same day and houre it is dorfe in all Cities and Townes, throughout the whole Kingdome, although they are without suspection

of enemies.

Fine and twentie dayes after that the Infuanto had given the resolute answer vnto the Spanto 30 ands, came the Visitor thither: and the whole Citie went foorth to receive him, who entred in with fo great Maiestie, that if they had not knowne who hee was, they could not have beene perfuvaded, but that he had beene the King. The next day following, the Spaniards went to vi-lite him, for duties sake, as also for that hee had a desire to see them. They tound him in his lodging, where he began to make visitation of the Citie. In their Courts were an infinite number Manner of his of people, which came thither with Petitions and complayats, but in the Halls within, there Courts. was none but his Seruants and Sergeants. When that any came for to prefent his Petition, the Porter that was at the entrie made a great noyle, in manner of an O. est, for that it was a good way from the place whereas the Visitor did fit, then commeth foorth straight-wayes one of his Pages, and taketh the Petition, and carryeth it vnto him. At this time it was told him how 40 that the Castillas were there : hee commanded that they should enter, and talked with them a

few words, but with great courtefie, and all was touching the Imprisonment of Limaton, without making any mention of their departure or tarrying. So after a while that hee had beheld them and their apparell, he tooke his leave of them, faying that by reason of the great businesses hee had in that visitation, he could not shew them any courtese, neither to vinderstand of them what their request and defire was, but gaue them great thankes for their courtefie inewed, in that they would come to vilite him.

Three dayes after the Visitor was come thither, the Infuanto departed for his owne house, with order that with all speed possible, hee should ordayne Ships wherein the Castillas should returne vnto the Philippinas. Likewise the same day, all those that were there assembled by the 30 order of the Vice-roy, departed vnto their owne houses. And the Spaniards were commanded for to flay vntill the full of the Moone, which should bee the twentieth of August, and that day they should take their leave of them: for on that day amongst them, it is holden for good to begin any thing what soeuer. Wherein they doe wie great superfittion, and doe make many ban- Superfittion.

quets, as voon New-yeeres day.

The day before the departure of the Spaniards, there came some in behalfe of the Vice-roy to Parting cominuite them, and made them banquet in the order and fashion as at the first : alchough this (for plement, that it was at their departure) was more sumpruous, wherein was represented a Comedie, which was very excellent and good, whose argument was first declared vnto them. All the which they

did represent so naturally, and with so good apparell and personages, that it seemed a thing to 6c passe in Act. There was not in this banquet the Vice-roy, but those Captaynes which were there the first time : and another Captayne, vnto whom was given the charge to bring the Spaniar de vnto Manilla, who was called Chantalay, a principall Captayne of that Prounce. When the banquet was ended, they were carryed with great companie from the Hall whereas the banquet was made, vnto the house of the Cogontoc, who was the Kings Treaturer, & dwelt there hard by Treature.

Prefents

of whom they were maruelloufly well received with louing words and great courtefie: in faring that he hoped very shortly to see them againe, at such timeas they shall returne with Limabon, and that as then their friendship should be fully concluded, and would intreat with them in particular of other matters. This being done, he gaue vnto them a Prefent for to carrie vnto the Gouernour of Manilla in recompence of that which was fent vnto the Vice-roy: the Prefent was forty pieces of Silke and twentie pieces of Burate, a Litter Chaire and gilt, and two Qui. tassles of Silke, and a Horse. Likewise hee sent the like Present unto the Generall of the field, and to either of them a Letter in particular; these things were put in Chists which were very faire and gilt. Besides this he gaue other forty pieces of Silke of all colours for to bee parted a mongst the Captaines and other Officers that were at the siege of Limabon, with three hundred blacke Mantles and as many Quitafoles to be parted among ft the Souldiers. Besides all these, he gaue vnto the Friers each of them eight pieces of Silke, and vnto the Souldiers their compani-

way the Sun.

ons four pieces of each of them, and to every one his Horse and a Quita sol of Silke; their Horse fes were very good to trauell by the way. This being done the Cogorroe tooke his leave of them, and willed them to goe and take leave and licence of the Vice-roy and the Viftor, that they might depart, for that all things were in a readineffe for their Voyage: the which commandement they did straight-wayes accomplish, being very well content and satisfied of the great sauours and courtefies, the which they received both of the one and the other: Likewise of the Torce. is Captaine Generall, whom they also did visit and tooke their leave.

Captains General, whom they also one vim and cooke that a tracking the three and The Spaniards departed from the Citie of Machoe, vpona Tuelday, beeing the three and 10 twentieth of August in the fight of all the people of the Citie, who came forth to see them with so great presse and throng, as they did when they first came thither into the Country: they were all carried in Litter Chaires, yea, their very flaues, for that it was fo commanded by the Vice-roy : the Friers were carried by eight men a piece, and the Souldiers by foure men a piece, and all their Seruants and Slaues were carried by two men a piece. Looke so many men as was to carrie them, there went fo many more to helpe them when they waxed wearie, befides foure and twentie that carried their Stuffe. There went alwayes before them a Harbinger for to prouide their Lodgings, and with him went a Pay-master, whose charge was to ordaine and proude men for to carrie their Litter Chaires , and to give them for their trauell that which

is accustomed, and to pay all costs and charges spent by the Spaniard.

After that they departed from Anches, they made of two dayes lourney one, which was the 30 occasion that they came to Chinches in foure dayes. At their entring into the Citie they found a Seruant of the Infuanto, with order and commandement, that they should proceed followerds on their Journey, and not to flay in the Citie, but to goe vnto the Port of Tanjujo, whither he will come the next day following. They obeyed his commandement, and made so much haste that in two dayes they came vnto the Village of Tangon, whereas they had beene before, and particular mention made thereof. In the same Village they were lodged, well entertayned and had great good cheere : from thence they went in one day to Tanfufo, which was the first Port wheras they did dif-imbarke chemiclus, when as they came from the Ilands vnto that firme Land: the Iuitice of the Towne did lodge them in the same House whereas they were first lodged, and 40 did prouide for them of all things necessary and needfull, and that in abundance, till the comming of the Infuanto, which was within foure dayes after, for that hee could not come any fooner (although his defire was) for that it was very foule weather.

The third of September, the Infuanto fent and commanded the Spaniards that they should imbark themselues, for that it was that day the conjunction of the Moone (although at that time the thips were not fully in a readineffe.) They obeyed his commandement, and the Infuanto himfelfe went to the water fide, in whose presence came thither certaine Religious men of their manner, and after their fashion they made Sacrifice with certaine Prayers, in the which they craued of the Heauens to give good and faire weather, and a fure Voyage and favourable Seas vnto all those that faile in those ships. This Ceremony being done (which is a thing very much vsed in that Countrey) the Spaniards went vnto the Infuanto, who was there with great company and Maiestie: he entertayned them very friendly and with cheerefull words making an outward shew that he bare them great loue, and that their departure was vnto him a great griefe. Then he requested them to give him a remembrance of such things as was necessary and needfull for their

Luckie day.

prouifiou for the Sea, for that he would give order for the prouiding of the same, the which hee did, and was with fo great abundance that they had for the Voyage, and remayned a great deale to spare. He then commanded to be brought thither Cates to eate and drinke, and gaue it them with his owne hands, as well the one as the other : he himfelfe did eate and drinke with them, which is the greatest fauour that can be shewed amongst them. The Banket being ended, he commanded them in his prefence to goe aboard their fhips, because that was a buckle day, and allo to 60 accomplish that which the Vice-roy had comanded, which was that heshould not depart from thence, vntill they had first seene them imbarked. The Spaniards obeyed the commandement, and tooke their leane of the Infuance, with great courtefie and reperence, and with outward shewes that they remained indebted for the great courteste & good will that they had received:

and therwith they departed to the waters fide, towards the Boat which was tarrying for them. As they passed by the Religious men (that before we spake of) they saw a great Table let and voon it a whole Oxe with his throat cut, and hard by the fame a Hogge and a Goate, and other things to be eaten: the which they had ordained for to make Sacrifice, which they doe vie in the

They being imbarked in the Boate, they were carried aboard the Admirall, which was the thip appointed for them to goe in : then presently they beganne to ftirre the thip, from one place vnto another with certaine Boats and Cables which they had there readie for the same purpose. The ship did not so soone begin to mooue, but the Religious men ashoare did beginne their Sato crifice, the which did indure vntill night, ending their Feafts and Triumphs in putting forth of the Citie, and upon their Gates many Cresses and Lights. The Souldiers shot off all their Harquabuffes, and the shippes that were in the Port shot off all their Artillerie, and on the shoare

a great novie of Drummes and Bels : all the which being ended and done, the Spaniardi went ashoare againe unto their Lodging but first the Infuanto was departed unto his owne House, with all the company that he brought with him. The next day the faid Infuente did inuite them vnto a Banket, which was as famous as any Infuentes fare-

which had beene made them unto that time. He was at the Banket himselfe, and the Captaine well Feast. Generall of all that Prouince. There was abundance of meates and many pretie deuises to passe away the time, which made the Banket to indure more then foure houres: the which being done. 20 there was brought forth the Present which the Infuanto did fend vnto the Governour of Manil-

la in returne of that which was fent to him. The Prefent was fourteene pieces of fike for the Gouernour of Manilla, and ten pieces for the Generall of the field : he also commanded to be given vnto the Friers each of them foure pieces, and vnto the Souldiers each of them two pieces, and unto their Seruants and Slaves certaine painted Mantels, and therewith hee tooke his leave of them very friendly, and gaue vnto them Letters, the which he had wrote vnto the Gouernout. and vnto the Generall of the field, answere vnto those, the which they had wrote vnto him. and faid that all things necessary for their departure was in a readinesse, with victuals for tenne Tenmoneths

moneths put aboard their ships, so that when as wind and weather did serue they might depart. proussos. Also that if in their Voyage it should so fall out, that any of the Chinose that went in their ships, an should doe vnto them any cuill; either abroad or at the llands : that the Gouernour thereof should punish them at his pleasure, and how that the Vice-roy will thinke well thereof : In conclusion, he said vnto them, that he hoped to see them there againe very shortly, and to returne

againe with Limaton, and shen he would supply the wants which now they lacked. The Spamiards did kiffe his hands, and faid; that they had received in courtefie more then they deferued, and that in all things, there did abound and not lack, that they remained greatly indebted vnto him for their friendship, and would give their King notice thereof, that whensoever occasion should be offered, to repay them with the like : and therewith the Infranto departed to his owne House, leaving in the company of the Spaniards five Captains, those which should go with them in their company to Sea, and also Omoncon and Sinfay who were that day in the Banket, with 40 the Habit and Enfigne of Loyting, for that the day before it was given vnto them by the Infinante.

Vpon Wednesday which was the fourteenth of September, the wind came faire, wherewith they hoyfed up their Sayles and went to Sea : at their departure there was at the waters fide the Influence and the Inflice of Chinches to fee them fayle, they fayled forwards directing their course towards a small Iland that was not farre off, with determination there to take water for their ships, for that it had in it many Rivers of very sweet water. Within a small space they arrived there, and it had a very faire and fure Port, wherein might ride in securitie a great Nauy of ships. All Thursday they were there recreating and sporting themselues, for that it was a pleasant Hand, and full of fresh Rivers. Vpon Friday being the sixteenth of September, the day

being somewhat spent, they made saile and tooke Port source leagues from that place in another 50 Iland called Laule, for to put themselves in a new course, different and contrary vnto that which Laule. they tooke when they came vnto that Kingdome, for that the Chinoic had by experience proued, that in those monethes the winds were more favourable then in other monethes, and for Monsons. the most part North and North-east winds: all that night they remained in that Iland, and the next day following they fayled unto another Hand which was called Chantubo, not farre diffant chantubo. from that of Laulo. This Iland was full of little Townes, one of them was called Gantin, which Gantin. had fine Forts of Towers made of Lime and stone, very thicke and strongly wrought: they were all four f quare, and fixe fathome high, and were made of purpose for to receive into them all the people of those little Townes, to detend themselves from Rovers and Theeves that daily

come on that Coast. They very much noted, that although this lland were rockie and fandie, yet was it tilled and fowed full of Rice, Wheate, and other Seeds and Graine. There was in it great store of Kine Kine and fowed full of Rice, Wheate, and other Seeds and Graine. There was in it great note or Aine Horie, and Horie, and they viderifood that they were gouerned, not by one particular man, to whom Common-Common the Common Commo they were subiect, neither by any other amongst themselues, nor of China, but in common:yet wealth. notwithstanding they lived in great peace and quietnesse, for that every one did content himselfe

Corcha.

not perfeuer in their Lots and Inuocations, and beganne to conjure the Deuils, which was the occation that they would not answere vnto the Inuocation of the Chinois, who did eall them after guinft conjuduers manners, yet they heard a Deuill fay, that they should not blame them because they did ring. not answere that their demand, for they could not doe it for that they were disturbed by the

conjuration of those Spanish Fathers, which they carried with them in their ship. So presently when the night was come, God was so pleased that the storme ceased, and became in few houres very calme, although it endured but a while, for as they began to fet favle to nauigate towards the Port, and almost at the point to enter into the same, a new storme feized on them, and with fogreat force, that they were constrayned to returne vnto the Sea , for In feare to bee broken in pieces upon the shoare. The Chinos began anew to innocate the Deuils Innocation by

by writing, which is a way that they neuer let but doe answere them, as they did at this in- writing, flant, and were not diffurbed by the conjurations of the Fathers, yet notwithflanding they lyed in their answer, for that they faid, that within three dayes they should be within the Citie of Manilla, and after it was more then foure dayes.

In conclusion, having by the fauour of almightie God overcome all their travels by the Sea. and the necessitie of the lacke of water and victuals, they arrived at the defired Port the second day of February, Anno 1580. whereas they were received by the Governour, and of all the rest with great iov. &c.

Two Letters taken out of BARTOLOME LEONARDO DE ARGENSOLA his Treatife, called Conquista de las Islas Malucas, Printed at Madrid, 1609. pagg. 336.

337. mentioning the comming of two English ships to China: which seeme to bee two thips of the fleet of * BENIAMIN WOOD: The former written by the Visitor of Chinches in China,

vnto the Gouernor of the Philippinas, Don PEDRO DE ACVINA.

30 To the grand Captaine of Luzon. Becanse wee bane understood, that the Chineses, which went I sound this to trade and trafficke into the Kingdome of Luzon, have beene staine by the Spaniards, wee have translat with

* See [#p. 1.3.

made inquisition of the cause of these samplests, and have belongh the King to doe suffice of him, that Master II, but beene the cause of so great myshiefe, to procure a remedie for the time to come, and that the Merchange may live in peace and (afety. In the reeres past, before I came bother to be Visitour, a certaine Sangley, called Tioneg, with three Mandarines or ludges having the Kings Paffe, came to Cabit in Tioneg. Luzon, to feeke Gold and Silver: which was all lyes: because he found neither Gold nor Silver. And therefore I befought the King, that he would punish this decemer Tioneg, that the good instice that is vied in China might be knowne. In the time of the former Vice-roy, and Capado, Tiones and his companion Yanlion delinered this untruth. I afterward befought the King , that hee would cause all 40 the Papers of the cause of Tiones to be coppied out, and that be would send for the said Tiones with his processes before himselfe: And I my selfe saw the said Papers, and caused it to appeare that all was but lyes which the faid Tioneg had faid. I wrote unto the King , faying , That by reason of the lyes which Tioneg had made, the Castillians suspected that wee fought to make warre upon them: and that therefore they had flayne aboue thirtie thousand Chineses in Luzon, The King did that which 30000. Chineses I befought him. And so be chastised the faid Yanlion, commanding him to bee put to death. And fine in the hee commanded Tiones head to be cut off, and to be put in a Cage. The people of Chim which were

English ships to these coasts of Chincheo; a thing very dangerous for China: That the King might coast of china consider what was to bee done in these two matters of so great importance. Likewise were wrote vato theo i China. 50 the King, that be would command the two Sangleys to be punified, which shewed the Hanen to the Eng- 1: alouse of lithmen. And after wee had written thefe things aforefaid to the King, he as fivered us that wee should Strangers. learne, wherefore the English Sops came unto China? whether they came to robbe or no? That they should dispatch from thence a Meffenger immediatly to Luzon : and that they should figurate to them of Luzon, that they should not give credite to the base and lying people of China : And thus forthwith they Should put to death those two Sangleyes, which shewed the Hauen to the Englishmen. And touching Danger of the rest that wee wrote onto him, wee fould doe as wee thought best. After wee had received this or beinging thips der, the Vice-voy, the Capado, and I fent this meffage to the Governour of Luzon : That his Lordfoip wen.

flayne in Luzon, were in no fault. And I with others negotiated this businesse with the King , that I might know his pleasure in this affaire: and in another matter, which was this: That there came two Two English

might know the greatnesse of the King of China. Seeing bee is so mightie, that bee governeth all that China ambithe Moone and Sunne doe fine upon. And also that the Governour of Luzon may know the great tion. 60 wisedome wherewith this mighty Kingdome is governed. Which Kingdome this long while none durst 12, mian atattempt to offend. And albeit the laponians have pretended to difquiet Corea, which is under the Go-Corea, worder wernment of China: yet they could not obtayne their purpose : but they were driven out of it : And China, Corea hash remajned in great peace and fafety, as at this day they of Luzon doe well underfland.

with his owne. Vpon Sunday in the afternoone they departed from this Iland, and fayled their course all that night, at the next morning they arrived at another Iland, called Corchu. which was twentie leagues from the Port of Tanfuso, from whence they departed. The Spaniards feeing what leiture they tooke in this their Voyage, they requested the Captaines to command the Mariners that they should not enter into so many Ports or Harbours. The Captaines anfwered and requested them to have patience, for that in making their Iournies as they did they doe accomplish and follow the order set downe by the Vice-roy and Insuanto, the Chingie are very fearefull of the Sea, and men that are not accustomed to ingulfe themselves too farre.

neither to passe any stormes. Acces.

vither to patte any stormes.

Neere vnto this Iland there was another formewhat bigger, which is called Anem, wholly to dispeopled and without any dwellers, yet a better Countrey and more profitable for to few and reape then that of Corchu. The Spaniards being at an Anchor there, vnderstood by the Chinese that in times past it was very well inhabited, vnto the which arrived a great Fleet belonging to the King of China, and by a great florme were all cast away vpon the same: the which lose and the Aing of Commy anderstood by another Generall that had the Guard of that Coast, suspecting that the dwellers thereof had done that flaughter, hee came to the shoare and flue many of the Inhabitants, and carried all the rest in their ships vnto the sirme Land, who afterwards would neuer returne thither againe, although they gave them licence after that they vinderstood the truth of that successe: so that vnto that time it remained dispeopled, and full of wilde Swine. of the brood that remained there at fuch time as they were slaine and carried away as you have 20

A ftraight.

This lland and the rest adjoyning thereunto (which are very many) haue very excellent and fure Ports and Hauens, with great store of fish. These Ilands endured vntill they came vnto a little Gulfe, which is fine and fortie leagues ouer, and is fayled in one day, and at the end thereof is the Port of Cabite, which is neere vnto Manilla. So when that winde and weather ferued their turne, they departed from the lland of Ancon, and failed till they came vnto another lland called Plon, where they vinderstood by a ship that was there a fishing, how that the Rouer Limabon was escaped in certaine Barkes, which he caused to bee made very secretly within his Fort. of fuch Timber and Boards as remained of his ships that were burnt, the which was brought in by night by his Souldiers, on that fide of the Fort which was next vnto the River, and were 20 not discourred by the Castilla, which were put there with all care and diligence to keepe the mouth that come in to helpe them. And towards the Land there whereas he might escape, they were without all suspection (they were so strong) and did not mistrust that any such thing should be put in vre, as afterwards did fail out, the which was executed with fo great policie and craft. that when they came to viderstand it, the Rouer was cleane gone, and in safeguard, calking his Barkes at the Iland of Tocaotican, the better for to escape and saue himselfe, and they said, that it was but eight dayes past that he fled. With this newes they all received great alteration, but in especiall Omoncon and Sinfay. After they had remained three weeks in that Harbour detayned with a mighty North-wind,

that neuer calmed night nor day in all that time. The eleventh day of October two hours before 40 day, they fet tayle and went to Sea. Sixteene leagues from the Port, failing towards the South. they discourred a mightie Iland very high Land, which was called Tangarruan, and was of three fcore leagues about, all inhabited with people like vnto those of the Ilands Philippinas, Vpon Sunday in the morning being the feuenteenth day of October, they discouered the Iland of Ma-From the Phi. mila, of them greatly defired, they fayled towards the Hand that they follong defired to fee, and ippinas to the came thither the twentie eight day of October, as aforefaid. So that from the Port of Tanfofo, which is the first Port of Chima, till they came vnto the lland of Manilla, they were fine and fortie dayes, and is not in all tul two hundred leagues, which may be made with reasonable wea-

ther in ten dayes at the most.

I could have here added two other Voyages of Franciscans, to China, the one by Peter de Alfaro, 10 and other three of his Order, 1579. the other 1582. by Ignatio, &c. both written at large by Mendo-Za. But I haften to our Iesuites exacter Relations. Only I will conclude thu Storie with Alfaros returne from China to the Philippinas; and his Relation of their Wich-crafts vied in a Tempeft then happening : after that two Letters mentioning English Ships on that Coast.

But it so fell out, as they were going alongst the Coast of the lland for to enter into the Port of Manilla, and being within fine leagues of the entry thereof, vpon a sudden there arose the North-wind with so great furie, and caused so great a Sea, that they found themselues in a great deale more danger then in the other storme past, in such fort that they sponed before the winde with their fore fayle halte Mast high, shaking it selfe all to pieces, and in every minute of an houre readie to be drowned. The Chinos for that they are Superfittious and Witches, beganne 69 to innocate and call upon the Deuill, for to bring them out of that trouble (which is a thing commonly vied among it them, at all times when they find themselues in the like perplexitie) also they doe request of him to thew them what they should do to bring themselves out of trouble. But when the Spaniards understood their dealings, they did disturbe them that they should

The Answer of Don PEDRO DE ACYNNA, Governour of the Philippina, to the Visitour of Chincheo in China.

"He Couernom answered these Letters by the same Messengers that brought them: vsing terms full of controller and authoritie. Her rebearfed the rebellion of the Sangleyes, from the beginning. A jau of courtefic and automatic. Live the pumponent that was executed open the Offenders. Hee faid, that no common-wealth can be gonerned without chaffifing the bad, nor without remaining size faita, tost no common-reasist was a general misson conjugação and an universe terratang the good. And therefore that he did not repent hims of that execution: because it was done for reprothe good. And therefore tout near most eyen come; one caceman. Counge it was come or reperfore for of them that thought to defire out. That the Fiftens floud deer hade, what her would doe of the 10 Jing of 100m 1014 100mgon to wayney or a warner of providing on the state of the cafe flowed happen in China. That the griefe that he had was, that he could not fane certaine Sangleyes Merchants Annayes, which died among the offenders: But that this was unpossible to be remedied; because the furie of warre doth not give leave to kill some, and to save others, especially being not area; pecanje noe jurie y marie mun nor gine mane no kan june, anna u june vinest, ejpersiuj veng nor knowne of the Souldiers in the heate of batted. That ofing mercy to those that remayied aline, condem. ned them to rowe in the Galleges: which is the samissment, which is order ned among the Castillians for those that have descrued death. Tet if it seeme in China that it ought to be moderated, hee would gran them libertie. But let u be considered, faid Don Pedro, that this may be a cause, that in not chassitfing fo great an effence, they may bereafter fall egame into the same. A thing that wend fint egall accesses omo fanour. That the coods of the Chinetes that were stage are in safe custodic. And that it accije vanoj ammi. 2001 tra governo z 1000 maje teken that of inflice, I will fourth fend them to be deli-20 may vegerat, tous now over agree non moments more rora come of impress, a may course gene to the acce-sered to the right. Herres, or with fuch perfore as of right they belong with. Note other riflet mouth mee to any of these things, but that of reason. Whereas you tell mee, That if I will not set at therite shofe profoners, licence will be granted in China to the kinsfolke of those which died in the Rebillion, to come with an Armie to Manila, it breedeth no feare in mee. For I hold the Chinetes to be fo sufe, that they will not be moved to such things upon so weake a ground: especially none occasion thereof being given them on our part. And in case they should be of another minde, wee Spaniards are a People which know very wellhow to defend our Right, Religion , and Territories. And let not the Chineles thinks, that Chinapride re- they are Lords of all the World, as they would have vs thinks. For wee Castillians, which have meafured the World with spannes, know perfectly the Countrejes of China. Wherefore they shall doe well to take knowledge, that the King of Spaine bath continual warres with as mighty Kings as theirs is, 30 and doth suppresse them, and putteth them to great troubles. And it is no new case, that when our one mies thinke that they have vanquished vs, they finde as marching and destroying the Consines of their Land, and not to cease, untill wee have east them out of their Thrones, and taken their Scepters from them. I would be much grieved with the change of the commerce: But I believe also that the Chineses would not willingly lose it , since that thereby they obtayne so great profit, carrying to their Kingdome our Siluer, which neuer faileth in trucke of their merchandife, which are flight things, and

The flips of the Englishmen, which arrived on the coast of China, it was determined not to receive: * The English because they be no Spaniards, but rather * their enemies, and Pirats. Wherefore if they come to Mathips spoken of nila, they shall be pumified. Finally, b. caus. wee Spaniards doe alwaies institue our causes, and doe boait 40 our selues, that it cannot bee said in the world, that wee v supe other mens possessions, nor innade our according to friends, that shall be fulfilled which is here promised. And from hence forward let them know in China, that weeneuer doe any thing for feare, nor for threats of our enemies. Don Pedro concludeth, offering non we conser not any turns you jews, my journess of one continuance of amittee by new bonds of peace with the Kingdomes of China: and that he will let at the bertie in due time the Prisoners which he held in the Gallyte: albeit he thought to vie them, as he did, in the voyage of Maluco; which be put in execution with freed. And all this he precifely performed.

CHAP. IIII.

The report of a Mahometan Merchant which had beene in Cambalu: and the troublesome trauell of BENEDICTY's GOES, 4 Portugall Icfuite , from Lahor to China by land , thorow the Tartars Countreyes.

Epift. Eman.

carried to

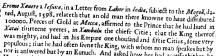
the mucuall

hostilitie of

those times.

310

Xatai and Xam balu, for Catai and camba'u.



Caygar.

Xatai thirteene yeeres, in Xambalu the chiefe Citie; that the King thereof 69 was mighty, and had in his Empire one thousand and fiftie Cities, some very populous; that he had often feene the King, with whom no man speakes but by a Supplication, nor is answered but by an Eunuch. And asked how hee had accesse thither, he faid, he being a Merchant initayned also the person of the Embassadour of the King of Cargar.

and being detained in the first Citie by the Magistrate, he shewed his Commission, and Poste was prefently fent to the King, who returned in a moneth, riding ninety or an hundred courtes a A Courte or day, with change of Hories; bringing him Letters of admission. Hee faid that they punish Co'eisa mile theenes fenerely: that these Xaitaians are white, long bearded, personable, and comely, therein and halfe, and to be preferred before the Rumes or Turkes; in Religion Ifamies, (Christians, lo called of Isfus) | semetime two tiome Mulauites or lewes, and many Mahumetans, infomuch that they hoped to bring the Chrifian King to that Sect. They had (he faid to the lefaite in another conference) many Temples, and Images painted and grauen, and Crucifixes which they with great denotion worshipped: many Priests, much reuerenced, each hauing his owne Church; to whom they offer their gifts. built and repaired; they ware blacke clothes, and on holidayes red; with Caps like the lessites;

10 they lived fingle and kept Schooles; one supereminent: at the Kings Charge were the Churches but greater: many Monasteries of both Sexes, and some in their owne houses, observing a fingle life; the Countrey rich, having many filter Mines; and that the King had four bundred Flephants, which they faid were brought from Malaca, and that Merchants referred thither; the Vovage fixe moneths. Xauerius addeth, that in Caximir he heard of many Christians in Rebat, a Kingdome adioyning to Catai, with Churches, Priefts, and Bishops. These reports Clayth Trigantius) the Saracens made, either of purpose to deceive, after their wont; or were deceived by like show of Holies in Images, Lamps, Altars, Priests vestments, Processions, Singings, and the like, which the Deuill hath imitated among the Chinois like to our (Romillo) Rites.

Thele reports caused the lefuites in India to thinke of fending one of their Society into those parts. Pimenta the Father Vilitour fent notice thereof to the Pope, and to the King of Spaine. who tooke Order with the Vice-roy to be aduifed herein by Pimenta. Benedictus Goez 2 brother of that Society and Coadjutor to Xauerins, was thought hit for that deligne, having the Persian tongue. And having come from Echebar (father of the present Mogol) who had lately taken De christ.expe. tongue. And fauning come from Leavens (states of the present praction) who had latery taken disaps, which his Legat, to Gos; hee was fent backe to Labor, to accompanie the Merchants; disaps, Smalls which every fifth yeere, as that Saraeen related, with title of Legats of the King of Perfia, and Innutreline. other Easterne Kings (not otherwise admitted) went thither. In the yeere therefore 1602, he Ind. 1.36.24. went to Agra, where Echebar applauded his purpose, and gaue him foure hundred Crownes for his iourney, besides a thousand Rupias hee had already spent. He changed his habite, and dis-

30 guised himselfe like an Armenian Merchant, and so went to Labor, calling himselfe Branda Abe. dula, whither he came on the eight of December. He went to the house of Iohn Galisco a Venetian, and there provided himselfe of necessaries, wearing his haire and beard long, and Leo Grimone a Greeke, well skilled in Turkish and Persian, undertaking to be his companion, with Demetrius another Greeke, and Isaac an Armenian. Furnished with divers writings and a Catalogue ot moueable Feasts till An. 1610. he set forth An. 1603, the fixth of Ianuarie from his Superiour, and in Lent after from Labor, with the companie of Metchants which got from the Mbools to Cafcar, almost fine hundred men, with many Camels and carriages,

In a moneths journey they came to a Citie called Ather; in the Province of Lahor; and after Ather. fitteene dayes, passed a River a slight shot broad, where they slayed sine dayes, being told of 40 theeues in great number at hand. Two moneths after they came to another Citie called Pallann, Pallann, where they rested twentie dayes. Thence they going to another small Towne, met with a certaine Anchorite a stranger, by whom they understood that thirtie dayes off was a Citie named Capherstam, into which the Saracens are not permitted entrance, and if they enter are put to Carberstam. death. But Ethnike Merchants are admitted their Citie, yet not their Temples. Hee faid, that the Inhabitants of that Region goe to Church all of them in blacke; their Countrey fertile, and plentifull of Grapes. Hereby Goes supposed that they were Christians. In the place where they found this stranger, they stayed other twentie dayes. And because the way was infested with Theeues they received of the Lord of the place a Conuoy of foure hundred Souldiers. In five and twentie dayes they came from hence to a place called Ghideli, all which way their carriages Ghideli, 50 went at the foot of a Hill. The Merchants with Armes on the tops of the Hill made fearth

for Theeues, which vie to throw itones from thence on the Paffengers, except thus preuented. In this place the Merchants pay Tribute. Being affaulted by Theeues many were wounded, and they had much adoe to faue their lives and goods. Benedict escaped by flight into the Woods. At night they came againe together, and anoyded the Theenes. Atter other twentie dayes iourney they came to Cabul, a Citic and Mart frequent, not yet having paffed the Morels Do- Cabul, minions. Here they stayed eight dayes : for some of the Merchants would goe no further, and others durft not, being fo few. In this Mart the Sifter of the King of Cafcar, by whose Domimon they were to palle to Catay, happened on the Carauan. The Kings name was Maffamet Can; this his Sifter was Mother to the King of Cotan , and called Agehanem (Age is a title gi-60 uen by the Suraceus to those which have beene on Pilgrimage at Mecca, whence she now returned.) Being destitute of prouision for her journey, shee demanded aide of the Merchants, pro-

mifing to reffore all faithfully with encrease when they were comne to her Kingdome. Goes thought it ant occasion to procure the friendship of another King, his Mogoll Patents now wearing out. Hee lent her therefore on fale of fome goods fixe hundred Crownes, refuing

Ciaracar.

any contract of interest, which shee bountifully repayed in pieces of Marble much esteemed in China, the best merchandise for such as goe to Catay. Leo Grimane the Priest, wearied with the Mirole much visua disconfined of the lourney, went no further, and Demetrius stayed in this Citie on merchandia. fing affaires. Goes held on with Ifaac the Armenian , in the companie of other Merchants, which gaus likelihood of better fecuritie. The first Citie they came at was called Ciaracar, in which place is great flore of Iron. Here Goes was not a little troubled, the Mogels Seale in these his borders being neglected, which all this way hitherto had freed him from payment Paramethe ex- of Cultomes. Ten dayes after they came to a small Towne, called Param, the vemost of the

of the Mogoll.

A'nebaran. Calcia. Gialalabath.

Chemm. Samarcand.

togoil connnes. After fine dayes flay, they had twentie dayes ioutney oner high Mountaines into a Region 10 named Ainebaran. In fifteene dayes more they came to Calcia. The people of this Region hath vellow haite on head and beard like the Low-Country-men, and dwell in divers Villages. Ten daves after, they came to a place called Gialalabath, where the Bramanes exact Customes granted them by the King Bruarate. After other fifteene dayes they came to Talban, where Civil broiles detayned them a moneth; the Calcians rebelling and endangering the wayes. Hence they passed to Cheman. Vnder Abdulaban King of Samarban, Burgania, and Bacharate, and of other neighbouring Kingdomes, is a small Towne, the Captaine whereof sent to the Merchante to containe themselues within the walls, the Calcians insessing all without. They answered that they would pay their Cultomes, and pursue their iourney by night. But hee forbad them. faying, that the Rebels had no Hories as yet, which if they could take from the Carauan, they 26 would proue more mischieuous: much better it were, if they would ioyne with him to repell them. Scarcely were they comne to the walls, when the rumour came of the Calcians comming: at which newes the Captaine and his ranne away. The Merchants erected a sudden fortification of their packes, and carried into the same great store of stones to serue their turnes if Arrowes failed. The Calcians perceiuing that, fent a meffage to the Merchants, that they should feare nothing, for they would accompanie and defend them. They durft not trust them. but resolued to flee to the next Wood, the Theenes taking out of the packes what they pleafed, and then calling them forth, and permitting them with their emptied packes to enter the emptie walls. Benedict loft nothing but a Horse, for which also hee after received Cotton clothes. They lived within the walls in great feare. But at that time a great Captaine, named to Olobet Ebadascan, fent his Brother out of the Bucharate Region to the Rebels, which caused them to permit the Merchants to goe freely: in all which journey the Rere was vexed with Pilferers. Foure of them fet vpon Goes, to escape whom hee threw amongst them his Person Turbant, whereof they making a foot-ball, hee meane while fet spurres to his Horse and ouertooke his companie. Eight dayes after with a tedious passage they came to Badascian, called Tengi, which signi-

fieth A troublesome way : for there is space but for one to passe, and that on the high banke of a

great River. The Inhabitants with a companie of Souldiers set vpon the Merchants, and tooke

from Goes three Horses, which he after redeemed with gifts. Here they stayed ten dayes, and

open field, and were besides affaulted by Theeues. Ten dayes after they arrived at Serpanil, a

place quite forfaken. They climbed into a high Hill, called Sacrobma, whither the ftrongest

Horses were only able to passe, the rest going about. Two of Goes his Horses halted, and had

much adoe to ourtake their fellowes. In twentie dayes journey comming to the Province

Sarcil, they there found many neighbouring Villages. After two dayes flay for refreshing, they

in two dayes more came to the foot of a Hill, termed Ciccialith, which they alcended, thicke co-

uered with Snow, wherewith many were frozen, and Goes was in great danger. For the Snow

held them fixe dayes; after which they came to Tangetar, which belongs to the Kingdome of

Cascar. There Isaac the Armenian fell from the banke of a great River into the water , and

fuch an ill way that Goez loft fixe Horses with the travell. In five dayes he got (halting before

the companie) to the chiefe Citie named Hiarchan, whence hee prouided his companions of ne-

ceffaties, who foone after arrived there in November, 1603.

was eight houres space halfe dead. In fifteene dayes more they attayned the Towne laconich, 50

thence in one day came to Ciarcinnar, where they were hin dayes detayned with raines in the 40

TengiBadascian.

Charciunar. Serpanil.

Sarcil. Snowie way,

Tangbetar. Iaconich.

Hiarchan.

Hiarchan the Seat Royall of the Kingdome of Cafcar, hath great refort of Merchants, and is also well flored with variety of merchandise. The Carauan of Cabul here ends their Voyage: Catay-Carauan and from thence to Catay is a new one furnished, the Captainship whereof the King sellethat a great price, and conferreth on the Captaine Regall power over the Merchants thorow all that way. It was a yeeres space before they could all bee ready to so long and dangerous a journey, which required many persons. Neither is it performed enery yeere, but by them onely which know they shall be admitted into Catay. There is no better merchandise (as before is faid) then 60 a certaine shining Marble, which wee are wont to call Iasper, for want of a fitter word; which the King of Catay buyeth at a great price; and what hee leaueth they may fell to others at exceeding rates. Of it they make divers ornaments for Veffels, Garments, Girdles, with leaves and flowers artificially engrauen. The Chinois call it Tufee; and of it are two kinds, one more

Precious

precious which is taken out of the River Cotan, not farre from the Citie Royall, in manner as the Diners fish for Pearles, and is brought out like thicke flints; the other meaner is digged out of Hils, and is fawed into broad stones aboue two Ells wide, after fitted to the Voyage. This Hill is twentie dayes Iourney from that Citie Royall, and is stiled Cansangui Cascio, that is, The stonie Mountayne. They are thence taken with incredible labour, both for the desertnesse of the place, and the inexorable hardnesse of the Marble, which they say is forced with fire made thereon to yeeld: the license also to take it, is deere fold by the King to some one Merchant, who purchafeth the Monopoly; and when they goe thither they carrie a yeares prouision for the Labourers, which in that foace returne not.

Goez visited the King, whose name is Mahamethin, and presented him with a Watch, a Glasse Mahamet Con and other European Commodities, which made him very welcome. Hee would not at first tell King of Cascare him of going to Catay, but only spake of the Kingdome of Cialis East-ward from thence, and Cialis, procured his grant thereto, affitted by the Sonne of his Sifter the Pilgrime Queene before metitioned. Sixe moneths pailed, and Demetrin one of his old Societie which stand at Cabul, came thither. At that time by the Kings License one of the Merchants was stilled Emperour as in ieft, to whom the other Merchants after the cultome gaue Presents, which Demetrita refusing; was in danger to be imprisoned and beaten (for so large is his power) had not Benedict interceded and by a gift compounded the businesse. Theenes also brake into the House and setting a Sword to the Armenians breit terrified him from crying; but our Brother Demetrius hearing, 20 cried out and fearred them away. Benedict was gone to the King of Quotans Mother for payment of his Debt : his Residence was ten dayes Journey thence, so that he spent a moneth therein before his returne. In this space the Saracens raised a report that he was dead, slaine by their Priefts for refuling their holies. Now because he dyed intestate, they sought to seize on his goods, which was very troublesome to Isaac and Demetrius, both for defence of the goods, and loffe of their Friend, which redoubled their joy at his returne with plentie of that Marble, and hee in thankfulneffe gaue much Almes.

On a day as he was eating with other Saracens, one came in armed, and fetting his Sword to his breft, charged him to muoke * Mahomet. He answered, that in his Law there was no such * Toyle (22)? name innoked, and therefore refused: and by the company that mad fellow was extruded. The seemes) those 30 like zeale oft endangered him on like termes of Mahammetan profession, On another day he was ideled by the King of Cascar in the presence of his Castar the Design to the control of the castar the Design to the castar the day ideled, Methacalled by the King of Cafear in the prefence of his Cacifes, the Priefts, & the Mullar or learned mod refallation, men, and asked what Law he professed, whether that of Moses, of Danie, or Mahumet, and the Characte. which way he turned himselse in praying. Hee answered, that hee professed the Law of Iesus, riskal note of whom they call /f.s. and turned any way when he prayed, beleeuing that God was enery where: Mahumeten about which role amongst them great controuerile, they wing to turne to the * West : yet they * To Message and the state of the state o

concluded that our Law also might seeme good.

Meane-whiles one Agrafi of that Countrey was named Captaine of the future Carauan, who inuited our Brother to his House (having heard well of him) to a Feast, wherein they had Muficke after their manner. At the end, hee defired his company to Cate, which lie much defired, 60 but had learned by experience how to deale with the Saracens, and would be intreated, that he might seeme to doe, rather then receiue, a Fauour. The Captaine vseth the Kings mediation, who defired him to accompany the Carasan Baffa, which he accepted vpon condition of his Carasan Baffa, Letters Patents for all that way. His Cabul companions were herewith offended, as loth to lofe. See before in his company, and much diffiwaled him; but hee made flew as though hee were loth herein to the like lourdisplease the King, and for his sake had promised the Caranan Bassa, which now hee might not negand the seuoke. They faid that thele people were perfidious, and would denoure him and his: nor was fameplaces, their feare caussesse, for many of the Natiues had told them, that those three Armenians (lo they called all these three Christians) as soone as they were out of the walles would be flaine. This terrified Demetrins from going further, who also diffwaled Goee but in vaine, saying, he

30 would not disappoint the hopes of so many, the Archbishop of Goa, and the Vice-roy to lose his expences, but would adventure his life in the Defigne.

Hee prouided ten Horles for his Carriages, and for his fellow, having another at home. The Baffa was gone to his houle five dayes lourney thence to make all readie, and thence fent to

Anno 1604 about the midft of November, they came to a place called Iolci, where they Voyage to Cavic to pay Cuttomes, and their Commissions are examined. Hence they went to Hancials 10 from Hirr-Alcegber, to Hagabateth, to Egriar, to Meseteles, to Theles, to Horma, to Theantae, to Min-then. Alexander, to Insignmenters, to Legents, to Angletics, to Ionics, to Esomos, to Ionics, to Place greats, to Capitalical Zalan, to Sare Guebedal, to Cambafei, to Aconferfee, to Cincer, to May 1934.

Acfu: in this way they ipent fine and twentie dayes, the way troubleiome, both with store 60 of stones or Rockes, and with Sands. Asfa is a Towne of the Kingdome of Cafear, the Goserious whereof was Nephew to the King, then twelve yeares old. Hee would needs fee Gozz, who went and gaue him childish Piefents, Sugarand the like, and was gently entertayned of who went and gaue nimentation reterrors, sugarant the like, and tree gauth, cancers into the him. There being then a folerane dancing before him, he requested our Brother to dance, which Gorgdesceth.

He writed also his Mother and shewed her his Patent, which was with great reverence admitted: to her he gaue a Chrystall glasse, a Calico cloth of India, and the like. The Childs Go. uernour alfo, or Protector, which swayd the publike Affaires, sent for him. In this way one of Goez his Horfes fell into a swift River, and escaped to the other side; and came againe of him. felfe, the Name of Jefus being innoked.

Caracathai, the first place of the Tartars Conquest. F. Bacon, Rub

In this way the Defert is passed called Caracathai, that is, The blacke Land of the Cathayan; in which they fay the Catayans stayed long. In this Towne they stayed fifteene dayes for other Merchants, and then departing went to Oitograch Gazo, to Cafciani, to Dellai, to Saregabedall to Voan, and after to Cucia, a small Towne where they stayed a whole moneth to retresh their bealts, which by the irkiomnesse of the wayes, and weight of the Marble, and want of Barley 10 were almost spent. Here the Priests demanded of Goez, why in their Solemne Fast (Lent) he fasted not, and almost forced him in hope of some Largeste or Fine. After they were gone hence in fine and twentie dayes they came to the Citie Cialie, which was little, but well fortified. This Countrey was gouerned by a bale Sonne of the King of Cafeer, who hearing that Goez professed Country was gouerned by a one-some or the Anigot Coper, who nearing that Orec proteins another Religious, began to terrifie him, faying, it was a bold part for a man of another profel, from the profel from the profession of the read his Letters Patents he was pacified, and with a Present was made also a friend. One night disputing about their Law, with the Priests and Learned men, he sent for Benedict into the Palace (whereupon suspition arose of some ill intent being at so vnseasonable a time) hee went and being commanded to dispute, with force of Argumeurs silenced the Aduersaries. The Vice-roy 20 alway protected him, approuing his Sayings, and concluding that the Christians were the true Misermans, saying, that his Progenitors had professed the same Law. After the Disputation hee made him a Banquet, and caused him to lye that night in the Palace, so that Isaac was weeping at his returne, and almost in despaire to see him. In this Citie they stayed three moneths. For the Caranan Baffa would not depart without a great company (it being so much more gaine to him) nor fuffer any man to goe before. Goez wearied with this tedious stay and chargeable expence, with a Gift obtayned leaue of the Viceroy, the Carauan and Captaine being against it. He then intended to proceed from Cialis, when the Merchants of the former Caravan returned from Casp. Thele faining an Emballage (after their wont) had pierced into the Royall 30 Seat of Casp, and hauing converted in the same Palace of Strangers with our (Isluites) repor-

ted strange and certaine newes of Father Matthew and the Companie, to Goez, who wondred

that Catar was become China, Thefe Saracens were the fame hereafter reported of, which lived

three moneths with ours, and told him that the Fathers had prefented to the King, Watches,

Pictures and other European Prefents, and were much respected in the Palace, of the greatest.

and (adding some lies) said that they had often spoken with the King. They reasonable well

painted their faces, but knew not their names : by reason that after the China manner they

had taken other names. And for further Argument they thewed a Paper written in Portugall. which they had taken out of the duft, when the Seruant (wept the Chamber, to shew in their

owne Countrey. This cheared Goez hearing that Cates was Chana, and that Pequin the Royall 40

The Vice-roy gaue him his Letters for fecuritie, and demanding whether he would be inferibed a Christian, he answered yea; for all this way he had comne, called by the Name of Isa, and

fo would hold out to the end. An old Saracen Prieft hearing this, cast his Cap on the ground, ap-

plauding his resolute Zeale, saying, that theirs are reported to diffemble and alter their Religion

with the Region. Goez went on with his companion, and a few others, and in twentie dayes

came to Pucian a Towne of the same Kingdome, where the Gouernour vsed him kindly and

amply provided him out of his owne House. Thence they proceeded to Turphan, and staid a

whole moneth in that fortified Citie. Thence they passed to Aramoth, and after to Cannil, a for-

the Kingdome of Cialis, which ends at this Towne. From Camel in nine dayes they came to

the Northerne wals of China, to a place called Chinicuon, where they flaid five and twentie

tified place where they refreshed themselues another moneth, because they were well vied in all 50

Newes of F M. Riche and the lefuirs. In Pantois

that is right

Names chan-

Citie was Cambalu.

Cambalu.

The wals of Chiaicuon.

Borderers thecuish.

dayes for the Answere of the Vice-roy of that Province. After this they were admitted entrance within the walles, and in one day came to Societa Citie, where they heard much of Pequin, and other names knowne; fo that now hee was out of all doubt that Catay and China differed only in name. All the way from Cialis to the borders of China, is infamous with incurfions of the Tartars: and therefore Merchants paffe these places with great feare, fearthing by day from the Neighbour Hils whether there bee any out-rode of Tariars, and if they judge the wayes secure they travell by night with silence. In the way they found many Saracens milerably flaine, having adventured to goe alone : although the 60 Tarters seldome kill the Natiues, saying, they are their Slaues and Herdsmen, from whom they take away their flocks of Sheepe, and Herds of Bullocks. They eate no Wheate, Barley, nor Pulle, faying, it is food for beafts, not men. They feed only on flesh, not sparing Horses, Mules, Camels, and yet are faid to live one hundred yeares.

CH AP.4. Wall and Garrifons against Tartars. 72. falle Legats. Dery Merchants, 215

The Saracen Nations bordering on these parts of China, might easily by the Chinais bee subdued, as being not warlike men, if the Chinois cared to enlarge their Dominions. In this way one night Benedict fell from his Horfe, his company going on and not milling him till they came to their Lodging, and then I face went backe to feeke him and found him by the found of the Name lefus, almost despairing to see his company any more.

These walls were built on the West of China, as it trends North-wards, about the space of two hundred 'miles, where the Tartaian out-roads are now lefte dangerous. Against them are two hundred 'miles, where the Tartaian out-roads are now lefte dangerous. Against them are This 200, is builded two fortified Cities with choife Garrifons. They have a peculiar Vice-roy and other to be vnder-Magistrates ouer them, which are commanded only from Pequin. In one of these (Cancen in the stood of the

10 Prouince of Scensi) the Vice-roy resideth with other chiefe Magistrates. Theother (named So- Westernepare cen) hath a speciall Gouernour, and is distributed into two parts; in one of which the Chinois or perhapsall cas hath a special Governour, and is distributed into two parts; in one of which the Comest but so muchis (whom the Saracens here call Cangous) in the other the Saracens, hure their Habitation, which internal so come from [afear, and the like Westerne Kingdomes for Merchandizing Affaires. Some of rockes or hilethem, as the Paringals at Amacao, in the Province of Canton, lettle their abodes and have wives or Triganina and children, accounted as Natine subicets. But those Portugali line according to their owne Dutchman Lawes, and have Magistrates of their owne, whereas these Saracens are governed by the Ges might meane and energy night are share you by them within their name of the included with the Ges Datebunies. nois, and every night are flut up by them within their owne Citie, inclosed with peculiar walls. The Map ex-The Law is, that he which hath flayed there nine yeares, may not returne to his Country. The preficth about Merchants come viually from the West to this Citie, which with fayned Embassage, by an- 1000 miles, 20 cient leagues of feuen or eight Kingdomes with that of China, have obtayned, that every fixth That reports yeare feuentie two in name of Legats should pay Tribute to the King, that shining Marble, pre-ces of Diamonds, blue colour and other rhings; thence they are the Comment of the Comment o ces of Diamonds, blue colour and other things; thence they goe to the Court at publike charge, for who could and likewife returne. Their Tribute is rather by way of honour or homage then any way profine fee it all ? and

table; for no man payes dearer for this Marble then the King himselie, who esteemes it a dishor what good table to no man payee and to this manner that ring minitare, who entermes it a dinner mour to take any thing of Strangers for nothing. And they are for enterrayned at the Kings code, that all things reckoned, they get every day about their, needfarischarges a Ducket a man, which hose Hence are many ambitious of this Embuliage and purchase it of the Caranan Baffa (who hath men in few the nomination) at great price : at that time counterfeiting their Kings Letters, acknowledging dayes might the nomination) are great patter at the statement of the Chinosis admit from duers Kingdomes, pattern visibilities to the King of China. The like Embalages the Chinosis admit from duers Kingdomes, pattern kingdomes, patter Valuinge to the Anigon Come. In the Landson of the Torter Kingdomes, not without in Journ Embel. 36 from Casechus, Stand, Lendon, Orona, and Some of the Torter Kingdomes, not without in Journ Embel. from Cascon-come, same, same, same with the chinese are not ignorane, but flac-freed ter with their King, as if all the World paid Tribute vnto, him, when as rather the Chinesi in.

this manner pay Tributes to them.

At the end of the yeere 1605. Our Benedilt came to Secen, growne wealthy by his long Iourney; having thirteene Horles, fine hired Servants, two Boyes which hee bought, and thre most precious Marble of the rest, all valued at 2500. Duckets. Hee also and face were well in health. In this Citie he lighted vpon other Saracens returned from Pequin, which confirmed Reportrof 114health. In this tatte ne angines you could be the former Reports of the Fathets, with other things beyond all mealare of Fath, that the King weighed. of China paid them money daily by a certaine meatire and not by weight. Hee writ presently

40 to Father Matthew to Pequin, to acquaint him with his comming, and gaue the Letters to certaine Chinais: but because he knew not the China name wherewith Ours were called, and the Region where they reided, and writin European Chatacters, thole Chinois could not deliver them. The next yeare at Easter, he sent againe by a Saracen Fugitive (for they may neither goe in nor out without the Magistrates leque) and writ to them of his Voyage and state, defining them to take some course to tree him from that Prilon, that he might returne by Sea into Indut. . the Portugall way. The Kather had long before learned by Letters from India, of this intended Journey, and yeerely expected him, and made much enquirie of those counterfeit Embashadors, but could not till now heare of him. They were now therefore much joyed to read his Letters, which in November following came to their hands, and one was prefently fent, to bring him by Novem 1606

50 fome meanes to Pequin, not one of the Societie left one stranger should hinder another, but a Papill which lately admitted, had not yet entred his probation, named Iohn Fernandus a wife young man, with a companion, a new Conuert, skilled in those parts. And if hee could not bring him thence by the Magistrates leave or by other $oldsymbol{A}$ rts, he should stay there with him, and write to the Company, who by their friends would procure him passage.

This fourney was vnreasonable in the hardest of Winter, being almost four emoneths Journey from Pequin. Yet would not Father Matthew deferre any longer, which if he had done, Goez would have beene dead before his comming. Hee and two others of the Societie writ to him. Meane-while Goes fuffers more wrongs of the Saracens in this place then hee had done in the

way and was faine to fell his Marble halfe where the price for promitions, whence he made v 200. 6c Duckets and paid his Debts, and furfained his Family a yeere. Means-while, the Caraula came Casuan cortwith their Captaine, and he with entertainments was againe forced to borrow, and because he men, was chosen into the number of the security two, he prouded him of some Marble pieces, with out which had been no going to Pequin. Hee hid one hundred pounds in the ground that the Saucens should not know thereof. Ferdinandus went from Pequin the eleventh of December,

Tie

Sineban.

and his Servant ranne from him at Singhan, the Mother Citie of the Province of Scianficarrying away halfe their prouision. At the end of March, 1607, he yet made shift to get to Socen, and found Goez lying on his Death-bed, who had dreamed that one of our company would come thither the next day, and fent I face into the Market who brought Ferdmandes to him. Having re-

ceiued the Letters, he brak into a Nune dimittis, as seeming to have ended his Pilgrimage. Eleuen daves after Goez dyeth, not without inspition of Poylon from the Saracens. They had perpetual Spies to watch and catch what he left, which they did most barbarously execute, and amongst the rest his Journall was lost which he had written in very small Letters. They sought for it to preuent payment of Debts there entred. They would have buried him like a Saracen, but Have and Ferdinand excluded them and butied him, with a recitall of the Rofarie, in defect of other to Bookes. Thus died Benedict Goez, a man of great parts, which had after his admission done great fernice to the Societie (howfoeuer he was not a Prieft) much esteamed by the Great Mosell whom he auerted from the Warre of India. He diffwaded before his death that Ours should not trust the Saracens, nor adventure this way, as vnprofitable and dangerous. And although hee

dved without Confession in so many yeeres, yet he was cheerefull in the mercie of God, and

professed that his confeience did not accuse him of matters of any moment. By a Tartarian custome they divide the goods of the deceased among st them all, and therefore bound Isaac threatning to kill him if he turned not Mahametan; but Ferdinand put vp a Supplication to the Vice-roy at Cancen, who subscribed that the Gouernour of Sosen should examine the businesse. He first was fauourable, but corrupted by bribes threatned to whip him, and held a him in Prison three dayes. But he fold his Garments for want of Money, and continued the Suit fine moneths, not being able at first to conferre with I face for want of Language, I face only vttered a few Portugall words , and the Indge had thought they had spoken in the Canton Tongue. At last, Ferdinand learned to speake Persian, and was able to conferre with him. The Saracens pleaded that Ferdinand was a Chinese by his countenance, the other a Saracen . hee apfwered that his Mother was a Chinese, whom he resembled. But nothing moued the Judge more Tweeter that his armeter was a committee, and then that he was an enemy to their Religion, and pulling a piece of Porke out of his fleeue, they both did eate it; whereupon with laughter of the Astembly, the Saracess abhomina ted both,

spitting at the Armenian, and leaving the Suit, faying, that the Armenian was deluded by the Massieurney. China-coozener. For in all the way to prevent offence, Benedict and Iface had abstayned from 20 Porke. And thus all was by the Indges sentence restored to Ferdinand which had beene Bene-dett: but nothing was found, save Marble pieces which had beene hidden in the ground, which was fold, and yeelded to pay their Debts and prouision for their Journey to Pegnin, whither both of them came. They brought a faire gilded Croffe-Picture and the Charters of three Kines. Cascar, Quotas and Cialis, which are referred at Pequin for a memoriall. Isaac related all this Storie to Father Matthew youn credit of his memorie, and having flayed a moneth, was fent the wonted way to Amacae; where being well entertayned, hee in layling thence to India, was taken by Hollanders, and loft both goods and libertie. But the Portugals of Malaca redeemed him, and he held on his course to India, and hearing of his Wiues death, went not to the Mogols Countrey, but flaid at Chant, and is now at the writing hereof aline.

Chaul.

CHAP. V.

A Generall Collection and Historicall representation of the Lefaites entrance into lapon and China, pntill their admission in the Royall Citie of Nanquin.

OF FRANCIS XAVIER, MELCHIOR NUNNES, VALIGNANYS, RUGGERIVS and PASIUS.



Orafmuch as we have failed so lately from the Philippinas to China, and backeagaine with our Friers, and have given you a lefuits Land Iourney, we thought it worthy our labour alfo to launch into the deepe of their Nauigations, and to honour the Iefuits, (to whom in the following parts of this Hiltorie we are so in-63 debted) with observing their Observations of Iapon, and the intercourse thereof with China; and from it (as the greatest and most glorious Easterne Jesuiticall

Conquest) to ship our selues in their Barge to China. How Francis Xanier (new Sainted at Rome, together with Ignatime Loiela, first Founder of that Order) laboured the Conversions of

CHAP.S.S.I. Ichuites glorying of Connerfions : their Profelices examined.

Gentiles and Pagans to Christianitie, as in other parts of the Indies, so heere in I apan I willingly acknowledge; yea, to farre am I from enuying either him or his Order, or any other Order the led Religious, their Trophees of Conversions, that I could wish the Pope seated in Misco. and all the Ieinits, & Friers, yea, all his Ieinited Clergie fully possessed of the Bonzian Colledges & Temples in lapon; whence a double good might iffue; to the Ethnikes fome light in flead of a totall darkneffe, a diseased life being better then death; and to Europe, to be lightned of their butthen where protesting themselues Lights, they prove Lightnings, and raise so manifold combustions. And most especially could I wish this honour to my Countrey-men the English Iesuites, and Priests, Populi Emissaries of whatloeuer Order, that they were there ordered, or (which firs To their ambition better) ordering that Eatterne World, rather then here difordered and diforde-

ring , playing the Lords of Mif-rule in the West. The very Name of Christ is sweet to mee. euen in lapan, vea, from a lefuites mouth, or a lefuites Conuert; and would God they taught them Iesus more, and lesse Iesuitish tancies of exchanged worship of Creatures, howsoever gilded with Christian Names, that the Iaponians might learne to acknowledge Iefus and Maria truly, and not with Names and Images of they know not what, to worthip Venus and her Sonne Cupid, Thishappened and not with Names and Images of they know not wout, to wonnip renu and ner sounce comme, in Read of the Bieffed Virgin, and that incurnate Bleffedneffe her bleffed Sonne, who is God oner in Captain his flushese to.

One told Cortes the Mexican Conqueror then speaking great words, that there is much difference in conquering Neighbours at home, and naked Americans; I adde, that a man may be Chri-20 stened, and yet farre short of Christianiue, (euen by Jesuices * testimonies) and that somewhat * See sup 1.96.

more is required to a Christian then Christian Names, given in Baptisme to hundreds at once, as 12 \$5.5 and the fome have done without further instruction. Denotion is rather to be prized by weight and last Chapter of worth, then by tale and numbers, as happens in their Beades here, and too often in their Con-my Pulgrimage gersions there: which were they indeed so much to be magnified and gloried in, would aswell pressile in men of capacitie to overthrow firms bolds and high imaginations, as here to worke on 2.60.104. our filly women laden with finnes, hoping for their Confession-cure; and there, with fillinesse it felfe, or such as Reason turnes Corifficus because they will not runne madde with their owne See Sir T. Ree to fuch Monsters as their Bonzs teach them. Themselues confesse, that it is not much, they can and M.Terry, pretaile with Mahametans any where or here in China: and Ours have found them to say more [49,3-1482, and

then they had done in that little,

I should much rejoyce that their Reports were true, and that as an Orator of theirs hath so fiems s that lemnized the Canonization of Loisla, their Patriarke, and Xanier the Indian Apossle (so hee stie with Megals & leth them) this Saint Francis had concerted three hundred thouland Soules, of innumerable Changing its Nations; yea, all Heretikes in neere fixteene hundred yeeres, had not converted fo many, nay, are best Con-Nations; yea, all Heretikes in neere takteene nundred yeeres, nad not converted to many, nay, uerts, had not peruerted io many not Christians, to all their Herefes together, as he alone adjoyned to *Adultibul. Christin eleuen yeeres, I am glad to heare it, and that which hee addeth, that all Heretickes tours tours. whatfoeuer had not infect of fo many Languages and peoples, as those of which hee had illustra. 16222 1878.16. ted many with Christian Truth and Pietse. Doth this man consider how much of the World hath beene Christian, and how much after that Hereticall? how many more Nations the Nesses 40 rian Hereie hath infected then Xanier faw, leavening, in manner, all Afia trom Constantinople

where it began, vnto Tartaria? Cathey, or China, and the Inder, and hath not the Incohie He. See before in refie prevailed over Africa? and before that the Arrises, over all the World, which as Saint Hie. Pole, cont. ov. some latth, groned and wondred to lee it felife growne Arrian But thefe perhaps rather persected the desirable of the initiates then now was consecred Estables Vac the arrian But thefe perhaps rather persected the countries of the state of Christians then any way converted Estrikes! Yet the great Nations of the Gosbes and Fandales were of Ethnikes made Arreans, the great Nations of the Lithuanians, Mufcoustes, Ruffes, &c. have not many hundred yeeres fince of Elbnikes beene converted to the Greeke Church, which they hold not Catholike (that I mention not the Armenians, Georgians, and others) one of which

And that one Impietie of Mahamee hath more Followers many, then all whatfoeuer professional 50 ons of Christiania in all Languages, Nations, Rites whatforur (I greeue to tell ir) and that from peruerie Ethnikes and peruerted Christians. And although Lusber and Calain went not out non Germanie and France (which he objects) yet their found, the Gospell which they preached bails gone over all the Earth, (as these our Relations shew in the Voyages of English, Dusch, French, yea, the Apostles themselues) and they have shaken the Townes of Babylon in Europe, where they were ftrongest (where Antichnit hathhis Throne, a Conquest more then Indian or I appnian) and when the Prophesie of Babylons veter ruine is sulfilled, the same wordshall conquer (I hope) both lewes and Gentiles, yea, these lesuites and their Preachings, may by Dunine Dif. peniation become Harbengers to the Gospell hereafter, as the Iemih Dispersions in the Translations of the Scripture and profession of the true God, were fore-runners of the Apostles prea-

tions outness tripture and protein of the time toot, we return the time to mach oner our Flockes, left fuch grienous Wolnes enter, and make vs to leave the Pharifes glorie of compagine Sea and Landtowinne Pro-Allisto. felicer to these their Heires and Successors in this, as in many other things. But I will leave them glorying of their Conversions, grieving that they are not herein better then their reports. I will gorying of their Connections, groung that they are no habits fallow them to these parts of China, and here for Chinas sake to Japon , and with that Rule of the Milital

1.1.4.c.1 . p.367.

Caffin

mized by Greg.

Cassim (Curbono) observe them, in things not gainefull to their Religion, approve and appland their in Justrie, yea, accept and thankfully acknowledge their authoritie. In their Conversions to the Faith, I suspend my faith in the qualitie, if I admit their quantitie. For how could one man well instruct so many in so little time, except hee could have given the Holy Ghost, as the Apostles in their conversions did.

How little in

Francis Xauier, in the yeere 1541. Sayled from Lisbon, wintred at Mosambique, whence her palled into India, after that to Malaca, and to Iaponia, & Cunitas oras (fayth the former Au. thor) quas Oceanus ab Indico mari vsque ad extremos Sinas, id est totius Orbis dimidimo, circum. companion tuny space oceans a language of implemit, (Japon was first discourred and knowne to the Tousling to It. Portugals by Mota, carryed out of his courie to China thither by temper, 1542.) Heedyed, 10 Anno 1 eq 2. the flue and fiftieth of his Age, of his Indian peregrination the eleventh, in the Ile Sancian, on the Coast of Chma. This was the Indian Standard-bearer to all of that Societie (be. ginning his trauell to Lisbon the first yeere of their Confirmation 1540.) and now dessed or Canonized, and inuoked by Doctor Schulchenius, Chancellor of Collen his Orator, Ignatic Free cifce veitris succearite precibus, co. A Letter of his written from lapon, in November, 1440.

Letter of Xani-

Wee came by Gods grace in August to Iapon, on the Feast day of the Assumption of the Virgin Matie. hauing let forth from Malaca on Midsommer day, The Master of the Ship was a Chinese, which had Baung set porto from reasona or requirements, and creative of the whole a contice, motioned vaderation that office to the Capaque of Malaca, and layled professorship till the Mafter altered by minde (at those Batharians are vsauly inconstant) and layered one amongst the Ilands in the may, 20 This troubled vs in two respects principally, but for the last of the season which God offered, and which Deuillno. being pass, were were compelled to winter on the Coasit of China; and againe, because in the same this procedy the was carried an idoll of the Denill, to which the Martners in sight and spine for safety the same carried an idoll of the Denill, to which the Martners in sight and spine for safety the same carried an idoll of the Denill, to which the Martners in sight and spine for safety the same carried an idoll of the Denill, to which the Martners in sight and spine for safety the same carried an idoll of the Denill, to which the Martners in sight and spine for safety the same carried an idoll of the Denill, to which the Martners in sight and spine safety the same carried an idoll of the same carried and the same carried and the same carried and same manner of their Countrey. They also by lots demanded answers thereof, touching their Voyage; which (as they fard and beleened) were sometimes good, sometimes bad. A hundred leagues from Malaca, holding our course to China, wee stayed at an Iland, where after many Ceremonies the Deuill was consulted what fortune wee should have, who answered, very prosperous: Whereupon with great alacritic wee set [ayle: they worsbrpped the Idoll placed in the poope, with Candles burning and incense of sweet Wood; wee trusted in God the Creator of Heauen and Earth, and in his Sonne our Lord Ielus Christ, desiring to carrie his Religion into those parts. When wee were under sayle, they demanded of the Deuill, whether 30 this Ship Should returne from lapon to Malaca : the answer was made by the lot-casters, that it Should goe to lapon, but not returne to Malaca; which made them alter their mindes, thinking it better to winter in China, and to deferre the voyage to Iapon till the next yeere. You may well thinke bow it griened vs, that the Denill must bee consulted touching our course. After this we came to Cauchinchina, where two aduer le things bappened, Emanuel Sina our companion, by the rolling of the Ship in the troubled Sea fell into the fine, almost dead with the bruise and water, but in few dayes reconcred : which before it was ended, the Masslers Daughter with the tile rolling of the Ship fell into the Sea, and in all our sights was drowned, and much lamentation followed. The Barbarians presently sugar to pacific the Denill, and without rest all the day and night, tooke paines to kill Birds to the Idoll, and to fet diffices (of meate before it,) and by lots consulted to know the cause of that missortune. The answer was, that if Emanuel 40 which first fell in, had dyed, the Girle had not fallen into the Sea. Ton fee in what danger the Denill hereby badcast us, if our Lord bad not restrained his race, orc.

Canton.

they purposed to Winter, notwithstanding all our intreaties and exposmulations : but I know not how on a sudden they would goe to Chincheo, on the fine Coast. And when wee were almost there, the Master Lapon Paul had was certified by some which sayled by, that there was flore of Pirats at Chincheo; whereupon the winde beene in India, being faire for Iapon, and croffe for Canton, they brought ws to Cangoxuma, the Country of our and was Baptis friend Paul, whose friends wied we winkindly. There wee frent fortee dayes in learning the Elements of the Iaponian tongue with great labour, and began to publish the Decalogue, and other beads of Christian learning, which Paul bad accurately connerted into bis owne Language; and wee purposed peedily to 50 Print them, whereby the knowledge of Christ is further and more easily founded, oc. The occasion of his journey thither, heesheweth in another Letter, that some Portugals being lodged in a House possessed by Deuils, compassed the sayd bouse with Crosses, and that there was great hope of good to bee done in those parts: whereupon, notwithstanding those Seas are very tempestnow, and much insested with Pirats, hee resolved to one shither.

The tempest being asswaged, wee came in few dayes to the Port of Canton in China. And there

ous and Pira-

Ricius and Trigantius, adde that the Iaponian Priests alledged in defence of their Idolatries, the Chinois wisedome against him, whereupon hee returned to India, to aduite with the Vice-roy to fend an Ambassage into China, without which there was no entrance, and obtayned that Iames Pereira was named Legate, with whom he had before conferred about the businesse at Sancian, where the Portugals at that time vied to trade with the Chinois, (Amacao not yet chablished) 60 but Aluarn: Taiding the Captayne of Malaca opposed. Xinier loath herein to bee crossed, vied the Popes Bull, which constituted him Apostolicall Runcio, and grieuously Cursed all that should hinder his proceedings in promoting Religion. And when Alwarns would not otherwise relent, hee interdicted him and his followers. Soone after Aluarus was polleffed with a Lepro-

CHAP.S. S. I. Xauiers zeale, Portugals trade with Chinois, Amacao, Nunez, 210

fie, and further contemning the Vice-roy, was taken and cast in Irons, and dyed miserably, Xauier burning with zeale of his China expedition, fought to get fome Chinois by fauour or re- Xauier zeale, ward, to convergh him by itealth into China, and to expose him some-where on the Continent. although hee knew that imprisonment attended such strangers, as came into China without licence. Being admonished to take leave of the Captayne, What, sayd hee, Bould I goe to salute an Excommunicate person ? I shall never see him, nor bee me, inthis life, nor after, but when in the Vale of Iofaphat I shall accuse him before the Indge, Christ. And praying for him, after with a counter- Sourism thirtie nance full of Maiestie, hee put off his shoots, and shooke off the dust, according to the Evangelical leagues from precept. Thus he came to Sancian a Defart Hand, where the Portugals vied to make outhes of the (bina

10 boughes or ftraw, (for the time of their Trading with the (binois) with whom hee confulted a- shoare. bout some way to effect his desires, though with losse of libertie or life. At last he agreeth with a China Merchant, for as much Pepper (given him of the Portugall Merchants in almes) as was a Lina Merchant, for as much reppet (green min and his Interpreter on floare secrety. He was worth about two hundred Duckets, to set him and his Interpreter on floare secrety. Xunited with dertooke it, but either fecretly terrified by other Portugals, or with his owne danger, his Inter-Sec Fita Xaue nreter for sooke him : and after that, the Merchant alio vanished. He stayed yet wayting for THE F. Pinto. him, till a Feuer tooke him out of the world, in December, 1552. His corps was after tran- & Enan. Acoffa

flated to India.

The Portugals of those times, were very desirous of Trade with the Chinois, who on the other ", oc. fide were very suspitious of them, both by that which they saw of their Ships and Ordnance,

20 and by that which the Moores at Canton reported of these Franks, (so the Mahametans * call Europeans) that they were warlike and victorious, as appeared in Malace and all India, where the Westerne fide were very suspitious of them, both by that which they saw of their Ships and Ordnance, colour of Merchandife subjected to the Portugals. The Chinois at Canton call them still Falants : Christians (the for they want the R, and pronounce not two conforants without a vowell interpoled. By the chiefe of fame name they call allo the Portugals Ordnance. Yet deire of gaine preuayled, that they were which were admitted to fuch a trade as we have heard to ache Mars ended they must assume the heard of Franks) to the Tame many transfer my data trade as ye haue heard, so as the Mart ended, they must away with their goods Franks) to me conquestors. to India. That course continued divers yeeres, till the Chinois growing lesse fearesu's, granted resolutes, them in the greater lland a little Peninsula to dwell in. In that place was an Idoll, which still remayneth to bee seene, called Ama, whence the Peninsula was called Amacao, that is, Amac APeninsulan Bay. This Rocke indeed rather then Peninsula, began to bee inhabited not onely of Portugals, compasted

30 but of the confluence of all neighbouring Nations, in regard of the commerce of Commodities of with water as-Europe, India, and the Moluccas, brought in Portugals Ships, and especially love of the Silver Coynes, brought the Chinose thither to dwell. In continuance of time, a Citie began by degrees Beginnings of to bee built, and the Portugals made not onely contracts of Merchandile, but of Marriage, with America. the Chinois, and so the Pannifula was filled with private houses, and out of a barren Rocke arose a noble Mart. And as gayne brought Merchants thither, so the care to keepe and to get soules, brought thither Priests and Religious men, and the Portugall Kings priviledged the place with the tytle of a Citie, and made it a Bishops See. There the lesistes fixed a residence, and first ere-Red a Church to our Ladie, and after that divers others. For it seemed convenient to their defignes, the world of China lying to the North, the Molaceas to the South, Iapon, and the Philip-

40 pinas to the East, to the West Cochinchina, Camboia, Stam, and others. From hence, many intended the China imployment without successe, those fields not then white to the haruest. Meichior Nunnes, (Anno 1555.) from Canton, writes of his accidentall Melchur Nun. going a shoare on China, in his voyage to lapan, occasioned by a terrible tempest whereto those Seas are much subiect. They came in July to Sancian an Iland, thirtie leagues from Canton, being much indangered by the Rockes in the way, and there hee fayd Maffe ouer the place where Xauier had beene buryed; and easily obtayined admission into Canton. This is reported to bee the contented least of all the Mother Cities of the Proninces, yet seeming to exceed Lisbone, in frequencie. The buil- Mettopolitan dings are good, the walls strong: a thousand Arches with inscriptions are seene therein, which the Ma- Citic. gistrates of wally leave as Memorials at their departures. The people are given to their belles, and to live but a limit and as the or the contract of the con

50 pleasure. The Government is admirable. The Chiefe Influes they call Hexais, the Treasurer Pontions could chali, the Admirall and Governour of Strangers, Aitan. The Chaens Enfignes, are a Hand and an you have to Eye; his office is to fee the Execution of the Kings Sentences, to order or deprine Magifrates. The much before Tutan is Once-roy, confliction by his Cap and his Garments, wrought with a gilded Lion, which " is dies, or Tutan is Vice-vey, conflictions by his Cap and his Garments, wronghe with a gilded Lion, which is things.

the Kings Armes: in State bee excelled European Kings, The Portugall Captaines and weeffeake. So pinted 6, not to him, but alcofe on our kneet. If any will feake with him, at enery Gate of his fampinous Palace, butthis the bee must aloud otter his businesse, before the Porter admits him. Hee halb many for his Guard. And Provinces one hundred thou fand men are sayd to be emaint ayned at the Kings cost, for the keeping of this Province. As the Kings cost, for the keeping of this Province. Kings on Kings of Kings His Officers goe two and two and make was with great erges. Their Cane-whippings are terrible, the Kings.

Canes burned at the end, a cubite long, foure fingers broad Sc. The Chinois are write and indicone, of in matters of the world; but have interest of the foule, ignorant of its "momortaliste, of one God, and mmatter of toe worth von came interest of toe joine, ignorant of 113

feternall revards and purishments. Their Priests base a kinde of Africe on the head, ere shauen some seds ord and beard, otherwise contempible. I could not with great difference finde any that could frew mee sk oul dec their Ceremonies, and the lawes of their Holies. The Inhabitants all hane Idols, which they incenfe; more others and dinine by less, beating the Idols if the Lots prone unluckie. I was twice at Canton, and from two Pile.

moneths there to redeeme Portugall presoners. The Chinois kill or captinate the Portugals, which are wracked on that Coast, which yet they cease to dee, since they pay their Customes. I went thence in May to Iapan.

mi Simenfis exsone with the

Alexander Ualignaniu, was fent by the Iesuiticall Generall into India as Visitor, and hauino visited other parts, came to Amacao, in his way to lapon, forced to stay there ten moneths with the lesuites. There hee more fully informed himselve of the state of China, and raised the embers Admiranda ree- of the almost extinguished zeale of that expedition. Hee is thought to bee the Author of that treatile called Admiranda Regni Smensis, contayning a summarie of the wonders in China, wor. thy heere to have beene inferted, but that wee rather ayme at things feene then heard, as having better certaintie. Oculatus testis unus prestat auritis decems. Vpon the consideration of their wits, Peace, Policie, studies of Learning, hee conceived that if any were skilfull of their Language and Letters, he might doe some good for their Conversion. Hereupon hee resolved to imploy some that way, although many others of the companie which had experience of the Chima affayres, held it labour in vayne. Yet hee went on and because of the paucitie of oursat Amacao, and none fo fit for that defigne, hee fent into India to the Prouinciall, to fend thither at least one Priest for that purpose. And he going to Japon, left order what hee which was fent fhould doe.

Mich.Ruggeri-

Michael Ruegerius, an Italian of the Kingdome of Naples, was sent, and came to Amacao, in Iuly, Anno 1579, and applyed himselfe to learne the language which the Courtiers in China vie. and is common thorow all China, (the Provinces having otherwise peculiar languages) also to learne to reade and write their Characters, which are as many as words. That language was verie hard both in it felfe, and for the want of teachers. For thole Christian Chinois which lived at Amacao, in habit of Europeans, & those which came thither in Merchandise, were almost as ignorant of the Court tongue, as of the Portugall : and though they vnderstood it, yet they could not well pronounce it. And for the Characters, they know those which belonged to their Merchandifing and common vie. Labor improbus omnia vincit. With pictures his teacher was often for-Portugall trade ced to supply characters. And whereas the Portugals twice a yeere in the Mart feafon have acceffe to Canton, about I anuarie and I une, he went with them thither. For in time they obtained day, and extru- this libertie, that not in a defart Hand, as first, nor in the Amacao Hauen, but in the Metropolitan Citie two dayes up the River, they might have trading by day, but lye aboard at night, with to many eyes and watches on them, as it is manifest they are not altogether free of 30 their former feares.

These Marts continue two moneths each of them, or longer, and have beene the onely meane Rugg,firft enof admitting the lefastes into China, by the industrie and pietie of other Peringals. Ruggerius therefore with his merchandile also adventured with them, and found an impediment at firft. Another lesiste which before had gone thither had converted a youth, Disciple to a Priest, and closely conu yed him to Amacao. His Master made complaint and procured the Magistrate to fetch him backe by force, to the great trouble of Ours, and feeming difcredit as if by ill arts they had feduced Children from their Parents, which is a thing at Canton, both vivall and Capi-Ruggerium freed tall. Ruggerium enterposed himselse with great care and discretion, and appeased the Admirall or 40 by the Hai-tao which hath the command of Strangers, who hereby had an opinion of his vertue, and delighted to fee him studious of the China pookes. He therefore permitted him to stand at his side

when others kneeled, and freed him also from the going aboard at night, and allowed him a

bringing their present or tribute (such as you have heard in Goez) to the King. There hee studied

night and day the China bookes, and on Sundayes and Holy-dayes, the Portugals came thither

to him to Masse and to receive the Sacraments. This continued whiles they continued, for when

the Mart ended hee was commanded to returne with them. The Father procured acquaintance

place in the Palace, where the Ambassadours of the King of Siam were visually entercayned, Ambaffage of

Zumpim or

also with the chiese Captayne of the Souldiers of that Prouince (the Chinois call him Zumpin) to whom hee gaue a watch. By this meanes many of those which came to Amacao, began to 40 shake off their Ethnike darknesse, and the deuout Portugals erected a House for the Catechumen (new Converts to bee instructed in Christian mysteries before Baptisme) where hee instructed them, and more freely followed his China studies, by helpe of Interpreters. One businesse himdred another, and his Marts absence (which tooke vp neere halfe the yeere) this Catechifine, and a tongue is hardly learned by fludie without vie; and therefore the Vifitor fent for Mat-

Mat Ricius.

Anno 1 82. Valignamus the Visitor, carryed certayne Iaponian Princes fent to Rome to yeeld fubication to the Pope, in the name of those Kings which fent them, as you shall heare. He stay- 60 ing for the Monfon at the Colledge of Amacao, tooke great paines to advance the China bulineffe. And to that purpose hee instituted the Fraternitte or fellowship of lesus in our House, with lawes fitting to New Converts; forbidding any Portugals to bee therein admitted, but onely

then Ricius out of India, (which had come out of Europe with Ruggerius, and now had finished

his Divinitie course at Goa) to bee his yoake fellow, one to whom the China expedition is most

Chinois, and Imponians, and those which were newly converted of other Nations : alway to be

CHAP. S. S. I. Gifts Wher the Lefuites to China. Ruggerius and Palius. gouerned by one of those Fathers which should bee assigned to the China Expedition, called. The Father of the new Connerts, taking care not onely of their faluation, but their other affaires

The Vice-roy of Canton Province is one of the chiefe Vice-royes, because his Province is farre Vice-roy of from Pequin, and coasting on the Sea; infested therefore with often Piracies, especially Iaponian, Conton Hereupon the Canton Vice-roy exercifeth iurifdiction also in the adioyning Province Quantifi, Quantifi if occasion require to leuie more Souldiers, although Quamfi hath also a Vice-roy of her owne. For this cause the Canton Vice-roy resident not at Canton, but at Scianquin, a Citie bordering Scianaile. on both Prounces. At this time Cinfui borne in the Prounce of Fuquien, was Vice-roy, a co-

10 uetous man, who to get money of the Amachons fent thither his Writ for the Bishop and Captaine to come to his Gourt, vaderstanding that they commanded all there. They thought it not agreeing to the Portugall honour to goe, nor to their fafety to neglect his fummons, and therefore by Valignanus his aduife, Ruggerius was fent in the name of the Bishop, to see if hee could get a perpetuall Station in that Kingdome, and Penella the Auditor, in place of the Captaine. And to obtaine his fauour, that he should not disturbe their merchandising, a Present was feet him at publike charge, of fuch things as the Chinois most regard, as waved garments of filke Dat maske (which the Chinois then knew not how to make) Crystall Glaffes, and other things valued at 1000. Duckets. The Vice-roy received them in great pompe, more to terrifie then henour them; but at the fight of the Presents (the scope of his purpose) hee became gentle and

courteous, and decreed that shey might love in his Port in manner as hitherto they had done, obeying courteous, and occess that Magistrates: which words seeme formall, the Portugals living there after their owne Lawes ; and other Nations, yea the Chinois themselues which are Christians in habite and religion, being fubiect to them. The other Chmois are fubiect to common Officers fent thither from Canton. The Vice-roy would have nothing, but hee would pay for it, which heedid because bribes and gifts are there sewerely punished : but privily hee sent to them , that Bribe wickes.

money was given them to procure him as many other like.

Ruggeriss desired that which he came for, saying, he learned the China Tongue and read their Bookes, which he seemed much to like, and gave him hopes at his next returne to obtayine it. And having given them weight of Silver; with provision, great attendance of Magistrates and Souldiers, much Musicke of Hoybuckes and other Instruments, hee sent them pompously thorow the publike streets of the Citie to their hipping. So weighty is hope of gaine. In August had comne (as they vie) Portugall thips to Amacas, in them of our Society not a few, and an mongst others, Father Matthew Ricins, woo brought with him an artificiall Watch from the Mat. Ricins, Provinciall for the advancing this China businesse. About that time the Captaine of Amacao having made readie thole things which the Vice-roy prescribed, sent backe the Auditor to Seiauguin, but Ruggerius vnfeafonably (or feafonably rather as the event manifested) fell ficke; yet fent word to the Vice-roy that he could not come to him as he had promifed : and withall, that he had a Clocke-watch which did without any striker found the houres, a thing euen still of Clocke-watch much wonder to the Chinois. Hearing of his sicknesse, hee seemed forrowfull , but this Watch

40 awaked him, and caused him to make his Secretarie presently write a Licence for the Father to come to him with that admirable worke, as foone as he should bee able. When this Chatter was read at Amacao, it contayned more; for the Fathers were musted by publike Authoritie to erect a publike and private house in that Citie, which caused great 10y. But the Visitor was afraid as vet to fend Ruggerius, as not furnished fully for that deligne; the beginning of a thing being the greatest part. The other lesuites perswaded, and Father Francis Passus bound for lagen, a man well qualified for gouerning was fent, and Ruggerim adioyning his Colleague. Ricim was made Governour of the Colledge of the Catechament, and appointed to follow the other two, if occafion ferued. And if the bulinesse proceeded not, Passas was to proceed to Iapon, and the other two to attend better opportunitie in their China bulineffe.

Those two lesuites went to Sciauquin, and offered their Watch with a triangle Glasse pre- lesuites siste Thole two legities went to occasions, and offered their voteth with a triangle chain piece distillation, fenting variety of colours, a thing admired of the Chinais as a precious lewell: both which thing comments of the com were exceeding welcome to the Vice-roy, who affigned them a contenient flation in a Suburbian Temple, called Thien-min-zn, whither he often fent them divers viands, and often admitted them in Vifitation to his Palace. There they abode foure or fine moneths, often visited in that Temple by principall men and Magistrates of the Citie, and were in hope of their perpetuall continuance, hauing obtayned licence of the Secretarie also for Ricins to come, who was preparing for the Voyage, when all was diffurbed on a fudden, the Vice-roy being I know not for what fault, deprined of his place. He fearing least in the chiefe Citie the presence of Stran-

gers might furcher hurt him, dismissed the lesnies fo, as hee permitted etem to stay at Canton, 6c commanding the Magistrate there to provide them a house and ground. The Chinois call that Citie Quam-chen which the Portugals (by the name of the Prounce deluded) call Camen. They Quam-chen the well knew that his commission was of no force, yet they went, and the Haitan, to whom the true name of Charter was directed was absent, and no regard being had thereof, they were not permitted to Cantas. aftend the bankes, and therefore with griefe returned to Amacao. Pafina prefently fayled ac-

ð. I I.

Iaponian Embassage to the Pope; Of Nabunanga and Quabacondono their gouernment; Corai inuaded, Embassagefrom China, TAICOSAMAS Temple, and OGOSHOSAMAS succession.

Iapmian Embaffage to the Ed dit Hen.

Auing mentioned that Embaffage of Isponian Kings fent to the Pope by procurement of the lesuies, out of their writings I have heere added for further illustration, the acts of the publike Confistorie in this forme of words.

Pope Gregorie the thirteenth, fitting in the Halldefigned for entertaynment of Kings, and their Embaffages on the three and twencieth of March, 1,88, in the morning, in a most ample Session of the Cardinals of the Holy Romane Church, and in a great assembly of Princes and Prelates with greatest industry, and most frequent attendance of all Orders: Man- 10 tim and Michael (who was also of the Prince of Omar) two Legates of Iaponian Kings, were brought in, and one of the two laponian companions of the same Embassage, of principall Nobilitie, to wit, Martine, for Iulian the other of them was withholden by licknesse.) After folemne adoration of the Pope, and the kisses of his blessed feet, received of him with great demonstration of beneuolence and charitie, they went aside into a place appointed them with great modeffie. Afterwards, the Letters of the Kings which they had brought are publikely read, being translated out of the Iaponian Tongue into the Italian, and thence into the Latine, First, that King of Bunges of Francis King of Bunge, who therein professeth the Disine bountie in Sending the lesisites foure and therite perset person into the parts, who see seed had taken some rooting in his breast, which hee a scribes to the Popes prayers and merits. And had it not beene for his age, warres, and sicknesse, bee would have visited those body places, and have his body bet, and set them on his bead, and recitied. his bleffing, bis breast croffed by his most boly hand : but fo detayned, had thought to baue fent his lifters Sonne, the Lord I erome, Sonne of the King of Flunga his Embassadour, whose Cousin-german Mantius in his absence he now sent; thankes him for the Relikes sent him, &c. lan. 11. 1582. Inscribed, To the great and most boly Pope to be adved, and bolding on Earth the place of the King of Heauen. Subscribed, Francis King of Bungo, prostrate at your Blessedmesse most boly feet. Not much vulike was the tenour of the second Letter, sent from Protasius King of Arima, who detayned by diuers lets, had fent his Cousin-german in his roome, to his Holineffe, which with sincere and humble

After this, filence was commanded; and in the name of the faid Kings and Legates, Gafter Gonfaluas a Portugall Issuite made an Oration vnto the Pope, comparing and preferring this Embassage with that of certaine Indians to Augustus, and the conversion of Britaine by the first * But that Hor. Gregorie with this of Japon, and other Ilands by the Thirteenth, succeeding * and exceeding that, now fallen from the Pope; applying Efays Prophecies of the Churches encrease to this Iesuitcall Haruest, and magnifying the great glories of that Pope, founder of Seminaries, and magnified extra anni Solifa, vias. Antonio Buccapadulto answered in the name of the Pope, That Francis King of Bungo, Protatius King of the Arimans, and Bartholmew bis Uncle, Prince of Omur, 10 Pope, See sup. bath sent you their kinsmen to burn from the remote laponian Ilands to the veneration of that power in in a.c.6.66. presence, which by Gods bounty he holdeth, they have done godly and wisely. For there is one Faith, one Catholike Church, one made Gouernour over the faid Church, and Pastor of Christs Flocke, that is, of all Catholikes thorow the World, in the succession of Peter, the Roman Bishop. That they acknowledge and professe this, together with the mysteries of the orthodoxe Faith, our most holy Lord reinjecth, and giveth immort all thankes to the Dinine bounty, and sudges this to be the most true toy which proceedeth from the studie of Gods glorie, and the saluation of Soules. Therefore most willingly, together with thefe his venerable Brethren, Cardinals of the Roman Church, hee embraceth the tellification of their Fauth, Obedsence, Denotion. He wishesh and prayeth that by their example other Kings and Princes also of those Iles, and of the whole World, rejecting the worldsp and orrow of Idols, m.y know the 60

great God. Subfcribed in substance as the first.

This done, the Contiforie was difmiffed. The Legates when they had attended the Pope, after the custome, into the inner roomes, were first entertayned of the Popes brothers some, the Cardinall of Saint Sixtin, with a Banket; after that admitted to the Popes presace and &-

CHAP. S. S. 2. Romith boafts: Papall favors. Nabunanga. Quabacondono. miliar conference, they discoursed by Interpreters with him of many things, touching the Jour-

nev and Religion : then went to Saint Peters Church, and the holy Thresholds of the Apostles

Church, then the Deuill hath feduced in the North.

pioufly faluted, at night were honourably brought to their lodging. oully saured, at high were nonomany clouds:

This was prepared and furnished in the lesures Colledge by the Popes appointment at their Extrall clitters. fift comming to Rome, the two and twentieth of March, who also fent two troops of Horse to Rome million guard them. They went from their Charet to the Temple, and whiles they praifed God and worshipped at the greatest Altar, the Students of the German Colledge in a double Quire sang, Te Deum landemus. The Legates next day had audience as yee have heard; their Vestment was narti-coloured and embroidered, a short Sword on the left hand, an Arab Dagger on the right. to the other part of their habite laponian. The pompe of all forts, and the Ordnance attended them to the Vatinan, & there the Italian Garrison, and Heluctian Guard with their Peeces and military Musicke received them. Then were they lead into the Hall, and after all things there finished. the Legates carried the Popes traine at his departure. And on the five and twentieth day, festimall for the Annuntiation, the Pope going on folemne Procession, these Legates rode in the last place. What should I say more! (sayth our Authour) it cannot be told, how all magnific the Scethelast

These Imponian Lords returned into India, 1586. as Valignamus writeth, and were much endangered by a tempest. Their returne into lapor is fignified by the Letters of Michael to the Archbithop of Ebora, testifying their arrivall the one and twentieth of July, 1,50, at Nanoalach with the faid Valignanus; and by the Letter of Don Sancius, Sonne and Successour to Barthe lines Prince of Onsur to Pope Xiftus the fifth, with thankes for the wood of the Croffe, and Popes prefents the Sword fent his Father which should be kept among it his principal! Iewels. Protaline also the King of Arima wrote to the Great and most boly Pope Kiftus or Sixtus in this manner,

mercy of God which brings farre more at this time from the East and West to the Catholike chip of my

On the fixteenth of the fixth Moone, which was the one and twentieth of Inly, 1690. heere arrived the Father Vifitour of the Societie of Ielius, with Cingina Don Michael my kinf men, Don Mancius, and other companions which I had fent to Rome to put their heads under your Holungle feet, Whole comming did as much resorce me, as if a thousand Autumnes had comme to me, and ten thousand recres had beene added to not life. Don Michael related with what honour and fanour bee was entertained of 20 your Holmesse, of King Philip, and other Catholike Princes, for which I rander those thankes which Pen and Paper cannot express. He delinered me Letters also which your Holinesse vouch fafed mee, faten an a spec came capty.

near this recommendation of the charitian Kings. Hee brought me also part of the hely Wood of Papall fauous, the true (rose, a Har, and a Sword, which your Holmesses we wont to fend to Christian Kings and Prin. with indeced. ces. Which favour and findies are such, and so esteemed of mee, that I have determined to consecrate buying much them to esternal moment, and to place them among it my chiefe Treasures, and the Ornaments and Mo. cheme, numerats of my posservice. And this homour conferred on more is such, that greater cannot be in this lift, and it redounds unto a future good life. I had determined (according to the order prescribed of your H. Pompe prein his Listers, and as the fanour, and so great benefits bestowed on mee descrued) to have received the scribed. faid Profess with all the celebraire and pempe that might be in my Kingdome. Our the Father Piftour 40 flowed mee that respect was to be had of the syramme and great harred wherewith Quibacondone the Special use the rights was so room of two systems. The special was been seen to get be, and this fast to the special composition of the special specia to Quabacondono, erc. The nineb yeare of the Era called Tenscio, the tenth of the eighth Moone, which is the two and twentieth of September, An. 1 590.

At your Highnesie feet.

Arimano, Sciurino, Daibu Don Protalins.

This Quahacondeno (as L. Froes writeth) was now growne the greatest Monarch that ever See of these Lapon had, having ascended thereunto from a base efface, which was (as hee hath divers times saporties Kings 50 with his owne mouth confessed) to cut wood, and to carrie it to the Market to sell for his daily and Rices my food. Nobusanga his Predecessor had growne to great height, such as many ages had not there Nationanga. feene. In Frenciama eight hundred yeeres before, a King of Lapon had builded 3800. Temples, with houses adjoyined for the Bonzie, which employed themselves in the studie of the Lawes and Secas: for whose quietnesse he removed the Husbandmen, and builded them two streets, allowing to their maintenance about the third part of the Cultomes (or Rents) of the Vomen Kingdome, Thus became it a fountaine of their superstitions. In time those Temples disperfed in fixteene Vallies were leffened to 800, and the Boszien discipline, and studies melted into pleasures, hardned into Armes, and ranged into robberies, so that they fired Mesco with great slaughter, and opposed Nobunanga: who having destroyed the Militarie Bonzi (called Icoxos) to and taken away their Cattles, intraded Fremoiama, professing he feared not their Gods. On the Fremoiama. top of a Hill was the Temple of Quanton, to whom prayers and pilgrimages were made for health, wealth, and long life; and yeerely folemnities and Playes with huge pompe and coft Were made in his honour (to which the Gibon feaft at Menco succeeded) with frequency of men,

An ha was more worth then both Ixdies to the

This the most acceptable mysterie of Papall Faith.

minde hee adoreth. Inscribed, To the great and boly Lord whom I adore, holding the roome of God. minde hee adoreth. Inicriped, 2018 years may be printed by Brothers Sonne with a Letter of like import, 40

intcribed. With lifted up hands adoring I offer thefe to the most holy Lord the Pope, Vicar of the

true God, and whom he hath fent Ielus Christ; for this is life eternall.

The Bearing Christi Playes Shau lings,

deuices of work-men, and such order, that it may appeare that Satan there imitates the anni-uersary solemnitie of Corpus Christi amongst vs. Thither the Zonza had gotten, but it, and they, and their streets were destroyed, and foure hundred Temples with their furniture burned. At Facusanem allowere a thousand houses of the Bonzi by themselves, besides Monasteries, thery selates which he destroyed. Xingues the King of Casnochun had forced his Father to exile, and immifoned his elder Brother, and then seized on the Kingdome: after which he shaued his beard and haire, and became a Bonzo, and would needs repaire Frenoisma, and stiling himselfe, Chiefe in the house of the Kings and of Religious, gathered an Armie. Nabananga wrote to him, cailing himselte, Tamer of Denils, and enemie of Sells. Hee proceeded first against the Bonzs with their terrours; and after would needs himfelfe be worshipped, but eighteene dayes after in a conspi- to racy of his owneagainst him, he was slaine, and his dispersed. Quadacondono succeeded, and in greatnesse of attempts and ambition exceeded.

Faxiba made Duebacondera Duabacu fienihes, the Chift of treasure.

This Quabacondono is a title which Faxiba assumed, and is as much, as Treasurer. These titles are given by the Vo, or Dairi, descended of the ancient Kings, and now enjoying a strange Emof treature.

Coff Turrisms. pire, which is to give titles of honour, (for which all great men have their Factors with him) and is esteemed as a God, not suffered to tread on the ground (that were deposition) nor often feene, and gets much trealure out of those Tules, which he so often changeth, that the King of Bungo was by the Islantes observed foure and thirty times to have altered his appellations. There The 3. chiefe is a high Priest, who with Papall power authorizeth Sects, confirmeth and confecrateth the men in lapon. Tunds or Bilhops which are nominated by the Kings, and enjoyeth Royall renenues. The 2010-10 gue is the third perion, and hath power ouer Iudgements and Warres. But the Lords of Tenfa, that is, such as have power to get into their hands Meace, and the Region adiopning, are really Quantum.

A erestee then chiefe Lords, and command the State, though in seeming ceremonie (as the Twikes to their Mufti, and more manifeilly the Soldans of Egypt to their (alifus) they yeeld a feeming fibiection ; the Dairi not daring to croffe them.

Quinque. Meacathe chiefe Citie of lapon. Corai.

Organtinus

Duis tulerit

Gracebos etc.

The Dairs,

the titular

Prieft and

Faxiba Cicugendono obtayned that title of Quabacondono (Dono is a generall title of honour)

the next to the Dairs, and having subjected lapon, minded to conquer China, by the way of Corai. The King of Corai fent his Embassadour to him with three hundred attendants in vaine.

he minding to lend and place in those new Conquests all the suspected Princes of lapan, and to eternize his owne name, being exceeding vain-glorious. He tookefrom the Bonzi their Lands: 30 and after that, making ditches round about Meace, hee forced them all to dwell together neere the faid dirches: which reducing their difcrepant Sects to an unformed Chaos together, made many of them for lake their protession. Hee enjoyed every foot of Land in lapon, gaue, or removed. or deprined Kings at pleafure, tooke away all Armes from the Ruftikes; forbad all contentions and fights upon paine of death, if any guilty hereof fled, punishing the kindred, or feruants, or neighbours, cruafying them. He administred instice very seuerely without partiality, or pardoning any man : and had almost put to death the Meacon Bonzi for their Concubines if the Gouernour of Meaco had not interposed and undertaken their amendment. Hee neuersuffered the Souldiers to be idle, but vied them in warres or buildings. The Vice-roy fent him an Em-

baffage and Presents; the foure Iavonian Lords which had beene in Europe attending Valigna. 40

nus the Embassadour. Quabacondono would needs heare these Iaponians play European Musicke, which they had there learned : and made great shewes of kindnesse to them all, and fent this

Letter with Presents to the Vice-roy.

Sir, I have received Letters which your Lordship from so remote Regions sent mee, in opening and reading whereof I feemed to fee the length of the leagues by land and fea. This Kingdome of lapon as

you wrote, contagneth abone fixtie States or Inrisalitions, in which before have beene great disorders and warres, no peace nor quiet. For many wicked men, Traitors to their Country confired to denge obidience to their . King, a thing which from my youth hath vixed me. And long fince I bethought me

of a course to subject this People, and to pacifie the ubole Kingdome: and layed for a foundation three vertues, towit, Gentlenesse and affabilitie of speech in conucrsing withmen; Prudence in considerate 50 sudging of things, and egregious fortitude and courage of minde : by the aide whereof I have (ubdued thaging 9 temps, see the second of the Kingdomes into this forms of one Empire, wicked men being extinit, and morke-men which labour in the fields promoted. And I have 6 referred peace and quietestimit, and worke-men which labour in the fields promoted. And I have 6 referred peace and quietestimit, and worke-men which labour in the fields promoted. nesse to these Kingdomes, and in few yeeres have so settled and stabished the Monarchie of Iapon, that et is now like a great Rocke which cannot be removed. Whence it is come to paffe that in all foure parts of the Kingdome they have a King eminent in much wisedome; and the King likewise bath all of them obedient. And in this order I have declared and exercised the power of a good Captaine, to whom these Kingdomes are subject; by taking away the wicked, and rooting out all Robbers by sea and land. So the china inuation. people, families, and all places of the Kingdome entoy maruellous quiet. I have also determined to invade the Kingdome of China, and in few dayes I will take ship and doubt not of victorie. When I shall 60

possesses, your Lordship may more easily communicate with mee in all things.

Now concerning the Fathers, " Iapon is the Kingdome of Chamis, whom wee hold to be the fame with Scin, which is the beginning of all things. This Scin is the jubstance and the very being of al The lessits. things; and all things are one and the same with Scin, and into Scin averesolved. Who in Scina is

called Iutto, and in Tescincu Buppo. Further, in the observation of the Lawes of this Chamis confifleth all the Politicall government of lapon, which being neglected, there is no difference betweet Lords and Subjects: if it be kept, the union and concerd is perfected which ought so bee twist the Father and Sonne, the Husband and wife. Therefore the whole, both internall and externall government of Men and Kinedomes is placed in the confernation of this unson and policie. Now the Fathers formerly have en_ Christian Relitred these Kingdomes to preach another Law for the saving of men: but because wee are instructed gion always by and fettled in the Lawes of Charmis, we defire no other Law: for the discriptions of Lawes and opining the Denill and ons are burtfull and preiudiciall to the Kingdome. Wherefore I commanded the Fathers to depart out a State-differof lapon, and have forbidden them to preach their Law, nor will I that becreafter they preach any ber. new Law in this Kingdome. Although these things be so, yet I greatly desire that a stable communi. Issuites banication may remayne betwixt vs: for so this Kingdome shall bee free from Theenes, by Land and Sea. thed.

And I guesses to all Merchants which bring merchandie, to fell them all without let. I defire your Lord/hip to approve the same. I received all the gifts which you sens out of those Southerne parts, as it is written in your Letters. I likewise fend some others out of these Kingdomes, with a memoriall of the gifts, and the names of them which have given. The Legate will declare the rest, wherefore I will bee no longer. Dated 20. yeare of Tenfci, 25. of the fewenth Moone. In the end was the Scale and Subscription. It was written in a leafe eight palmes long,

foure broad, painted with golden Flowers, and put in a red filke bagge wrought with Gold and filter; and that inclofed after the lapon manner in a Boxe, which for the price and workman20 flup was to admirable, that the subtilitie and excellence of the worke might amaze all Euro. Input more. peans. Within it was coursed and without, with Vrosci (made of Gold beaten into pow. minship.

der) diftinguished with Flowers of Gold and Siluer, so inserted in the Vrosci that none could different the conjunction, but he which knew the making of the Boxe. It had also Roses, and sold Chaines to tye the Boxe; which Boxe was put into another Bag, and that into another Boxe very artificiall. The gifts were Armours, Armes, and other things very precious.

He affembled his Lords about this China Warre, which durft not expresse any other opinion, Preparation hee having protested, that hee would not heare his Sonne distinade him, if he were alive againe, for invasion of and if any should hinder him, it should cost him his life. Thus for some moneths space nothing Corai. might be feene elfe, but prouision for Ships, Armes, Munitions, and necessaries for the Warre,

Hee made a Catalogue of all his Lords, exempting none from the expedition, and fetting every one his number of followers. To Augustine a Christian Lord hee gaue the fauour of first impression into Corai, other Lords staying still at Suscima eighteene lagues distant. Corai is ad- Corai descrisoyning to the Continent of China at one end, divided by a great River from China, and tribu. bed: fee my tarie to the King of China; it is in length about an hundred leagues, and fixtie broad: the people China Mip. while the Chinois in language and bodily strength, but following their lawes, customes, and gouernement. They are better Archers then at any other weapons: and not comparable to the I aponians, except in hipping, wherein they and the Chinois exceed. Yet at this time they were destitute of that defence, and Augustine gaue them a great ouerthrow. Before Quabacondono would goe, he made his Brothers Sonne by the Dairi to be entituled Quabacondono, as in Heire

and Successour, concenting himselfe with the title of Taicofama, that is, Great Lord. All the Japonian Princes were commanded to be present at the translation, to give him obedience; to whom the Dani gaue the Fortrest of Meaco, and the Palaces of Quabacondono, making him Lord of Tenfa. But his Vncle held the iway of all in his owne hands, and after having a * Sonne * This is that of his own, caused this his Nephew with some others to crosse himselfe (that is, to cut his breast Fresama of

acroffe, his bowels falling out, and some one of those which died with him, cutting off his head, whom you reade in Cape. Angustine with a Fleet of eight hundred sayles entred Corai, and tooke two Fortresses, the Saris, and Ma-Coraians being druen from the walls by the laponders Gunnes, viknowne to the other, and fue nerceste, dethousand of them slayne. This wanne him great credite with Taicosama, who promited him prived by Ogemuch, yet performed little. Hee defeated also an Armie of twenty thouland, and after another 100/2004.

10 of fourescore thousand, and the King fleeing into China tooke the Meace, or Royall Citie of Consi, Taicefame fent him a Horse, and a Sword, the honour that Nahunanga was wont after any great Victorie to doe to him. The Coraians feeing their King with his troops in fafety, fled with their prouitions into Woods and Hills , and would not thence bee brought by any promifes. The Japonian possessed of the Fortresses wanted men to till the ground, and therefore must needes want necessaries: the wayes also were by the Ceraians upon all occasions assaulted. There are two hundred thousand laponians at this present in Corai, and Augustine is in the extreme borders adioyning to China, separated notwithstanding by a River three leagues Wide River broad, abounding in thips, and the shores fortified with multitudes of men, so that the suc- betwies china

60 Froer in his Epifile, 1595, writeth that there were then an hundred and ninety lefuites in Ia- 190, ichite. pon and China: that Taicofama not succeeding in his Coraian expedition, returned to Meaco, and quarrelled the new Quabacondono out of his life, who with time others at Tateos command executed themselues after the Iaponian manner. Augustine meane while endeauoured on Embaffage to bee fent from the King of China, who thinking himfelfe Land of the World, tent to

without his

Iapenian Theo-

tainment of the Chinois,

Taicofama, that it was an vineet thing that He, whose industrie and valour had subdued threefore and fixe Kingdomes of lapon to his Empire, should permit the Dairi a private man, and Subject to the King of lapon to hold his former place of dignitie. And if hee would deprine Chint Emba . him thereof, hee promifed to fend him a Crowne, and the title of King, and by the same Legates to treate further about the Iaponians forfaking Coras. Two Embassadours were fent from Pegam to Augustine to Corai: who presently sent word to Taico, the Embassadours abiding with him, because of the solemne entertaynment which Taice intended for the renowne of his name to all posteritie. The Nobles exhaust in the former expedition were yet now enforced to new braueries and expences. Hee caused at Ozaca a Hall to bee crecked, with a thoufand Tatami (very elegant Mats) the timber coftly, and gilding incredible. Yet by flore of to raynes a great part thereof fell downe, which hee intended some to repaire, having an hundred thousand men at worke there both night and day in great miserie, standing with their feet in the water. If any runne away they are killed. Before this Hall hee erected a Theatrefor Comedies, exceeding stately and costly with artificiall paintings of Vrusci. Hee repaired the Tower of Ozaca seuen stories high. The gilded Plates or Tiles, the Bridge called, The Bridge of Paradife, the new Citie of Fuscimo which he builded, and other his immane expenses (the Offerings to his Idoll of Fame,) I cmit. Hee caused his little Sonne to goe with great State to Sandai to the Dairi, that is, to bow his head thrice before him downe to the Mats, who entertayned him with a folemne feast, with great lubilee in alteration of names and titles of Taico had settled peace thorow all Iapon from Warres, from Robbers by land, and from

Rouers by fea, which before continually infested all with Piracies (one of which Noximan-

forced a great part of the Coast to yeerely tribute vnto him, to bee freed from his Robberies)

onely the Dairi had higher title: and a Crowne and Scepter feemed wanting to his realitie of

Novimanano a laponian Pirat, dono is mentioned by the lessistes in this time to have had a great Fleet of ships, and to have

Prodigious

feldome fuffered to vifite their King-China Prefents

Regalitie and Soueraigntie already possessed. And now whiles hee intended to exceed himselfe in his entercaynment of the Embassadours, one of them hating this long detention or impriforment in Corai, fled; which newes Augustine sent to both Courts. From China the Legacy was renewed, the Delinquents kindred punished. Meane while the two and twentieth of July 1 (96, at Meaco it rayned ashes, wherewith the houses, hills, and trees were coursed as with 30 fnow, and a great myft accompanied it. At the same time at Ozaca and Sacaia it rayned sands. At Meaco after the showre of ashes came another of haires, long and white like the heary haires of an old womans head but fofter, and not fo fmelling when cast into the fire. In the Northerne Kingdomes of lechn, Ichingo , Scimano , and Nora, the land and houses were coured with them. A Comet appeared in August: on the thirtieth whereof followed an Earthquake as a warning to a greater on the fourth of September, which threw downe Taices magniheent Hall with a thouland Tatames, in which hee had purposed to entertayne the China Legates; and the Tower of feuen lofts, and another Tower, and almost all the buildings of the Fortresle, and the Store-houses, which were very large, and stored with Corne, and halfe the houses of Ozaca, all in halfe an houre, fixe hundred people being buried in the ruines. It made 40 a noise like Thunder, and like the waves beating on the shoare. The Earth opened in many places. A great new Temple and a Monastery fell downe, and the same day in which the Iessie had heard a Bonzs in the same Temple inuiting to call upon Amida, and much depredicating his mercies. The next day at Meace was a noise greater then of the greatest Cannons that ever were heard, dreadfull to man and heast, and wee faid the Letanies on our knees, but scarfely could keepe on our knees for the Earth-quake. Others forsooke their houses, lamented their dead (fine hundred being onerwhelmed; and fifteene or twenty Temples) called on their Amida: * laponies poli- and some ranne to Fuscimo (Taicos new Citie for him and his Nobles) whereof the best part was cyto keepe all ruined, and much harme happened in many other places. Taicos Palace at Fuscimo fell downe, bout the Court and oppressed seventy women, himselfe escaped into the Kitchin vntouched : and the relations 10 of that Earth-quake would yeeld a booke alone. Taico yet would seeme to dominere ouer Nature, and leuell a very huge Hill with the Valley, to erect new Palaces. And because hee could not entertayne at Fuscimo the China Embassadours, he received them at Ozaca. The solemne state and pompe I omit. They had audience the twentieth of October.

The Kings Letter was written in a plate of Gold very great and ponderous, inclosed in a golden Coffer, wherein also was the Vest, and royall Crowne for Tuico, and in another was a Crown for Mandocorasama his Wife with title of Queene. Hee sent also twenty Vests of Quingui with title and dignity of China for twenty Lords (the first of which was Augustine) by him named, and as many for those whom Taco should name. In the Epitle of the King were these words, chia an heth Futatabi cioscen vocasu cotonacure, that is, Thou shalt not returne againe into Corai, and if then re-60 turnest, thy dignitie hall no longer advantage thee, words importing their vasfallage to the Chinois. The Embaliadour and Taico were equal in fitting on the Tatamis; the chiefe Lords of Japon ments in Iapon were present; and after the taste of their * Chia, Taico received the Epittle or golden plate, and layd it on his head, and the Vests, going in to put them on. At his returne the Chinois adored

him, and a feast followed with pompous plenty: which was continued other dayes. But when the Legates moved him to pull downe his Forts in Corat, and to pardon the Coratans, hee brake into exceeding furie, and commanded them backe to Corai, and extruded them in great nafte out of the Countrey with inhumane viage.

About this time Peter Martines first Bishop of Iapon came thither. Taico died Sept. 16, 1598, Bish, of Iapon. haung taken politike order for the State, and as foolish for himselfe to be made a God, prescribing the forme of his Temple : One was crucified for speaking of his death. Word was sent by the Gouernours which Taico had appointed as protectors for his Sonne, to the Iaponian Lords in Corai, to returne, and so after seuen yeeres that warre had end. What events to lowed after in the P. Shee. Coras, to returne, and lo atter leuen yeeres that warre had end. What euents Followed atter in the Foundation of the Phylimsec, and fonewhat allo before in Captagne Sarva, and Matter that was the Cocky relations: This consistency polarities rooted out, and Ogasha Sama feezing the Souteriginite to P. Phis 18.7. himselfe. So much harder is it to be a Man then a God, and easier to be queath a Temple and ty- 61-66.

tle of Camu, and divine worthip as to a new Faciman or Mars (all which his Executors perfor- Second his med and cauled to be effected; his body not burned after the wont, but as he had preferreed, put death 100m. I. in a Cheft and translated to that fumptions Temple, where he is worth pped as the principal of Time of all the Camis) with an Image crecked to him, (leene by Cap. Saria) then to be queatti long life to scalarimen, himselfe accomplishment to his Caraian delignes, or fure fuccession to his posteritie, in all which Cap. Saria hee fayled. But we will with our perfecuted lefuites leave lapon, and thip our felues for China, told mee hee

RVGGERIVS enters againe into China with RICIVS, and is forced backeto Amacao; thence fent for againe by the Vice-roy. Sande and Almeida are fent to them, and enter the Countrey as farre as Cequion, and returne to Sciauchin.

RT is a cultome in China, that of all Charters granted by the Magistrates a copie is kept in the Regultrie, and the execution, or what hath therein beene done, subscribed at the end. The faceceding Vice-roy finding the copie of that Charter granted to the Islant at their departure, without fach fubfeription (because nothing had beene done therein) wrote to Canton, to the Aitao; he (which then was absent) to the Ansam or Hiem-xan, the Gouernour of the Citie, and he being ignorant thereof, to the Port-gouernours at Amacao. They went to the Bishop, and by him were sent to our Colledge where they were shewed the sealed Went to the Donney being then Melebior Carners: Patriarch of Ethiopia (which expedition was Sup. 1.7, in fine) diffolued) Capralis, Gomez , Pafins, and other principall Isfutes, it was thought fit , that it should not be delivered to the Souldiers, but carried by two lefunes to the Airao: and Ruggerins with Recins were therein employed, the China Captaines also consenting that they should

goe to Anfan, thence by the Ci-bien or Governour, to be fent to Canton. This Ci-bien when they Ci-bien a Go-40 came thither would have fent it and not them, which they refused, whereupon he grew angry, we nour of a cast it on the ground, and commanded them to returne backe; saying, that a deposed Vice. Hieror Citic, roves grant could no way benefit them. They went to their Inne, and there confulted to goe without his leave, deceiuing a Ship-master with fight of the said Charter, who tooke them into his thip; but terrified by others, cast them out againe with their goods. At this time came a meffage to the (i-bien of his Fathers death , whereupon (according to the China Custome) he loft his office and returned home during his three yeere mourning. They by this occasion, and a weightier cause, (money given to the Successour) and the Notaries subtiltie in a feeming service to the Common-wealth, were fent in manner as prisoners to Canton, as strangers found there.

The Asse notwithstanding gaue them kinde entertayment. They petitioned, shewing that Visites supplies to the state of the their dayes: and defired nothing but a small piece of ground to raise thereon a little house to the Lord of Heauen, and they would be further burthen some to none, but procure linelihood of their owne mens beneuslence. They mentioned nothing of Christian Religion, less it might cause suspection, and bee a let to them; the Chinois thinking too well of themselves, that strangers should teach them any thing, which they have not already more complete in their owne Bookes. Rebellions have alio begunne under colour of new Sects. The Airao or high Admirall commended their defires, but faid, it belonged to higher Magistrates, and could onely bee granted by the Ciai-yuen (the Ciai-yuen or Vifitour of the Province) or the Vice-roy. They defired that hee would at least let them itay Chain, Province there in the Palace of the King of Siams Legates, till the Portugals Mart came, and in meane ciall Visitour.

60 time they would trye what they could doe with the Visitour or Vice-toy. This hee granted, but the same day repeated, professing that he feared the Visitor (if out of Mart-time he should finde ft angers there) whose censure is dreadfull to every Magnifrate. He therefore commanded them presently to packe for Amacao. They were comne backe to Anfan, and found things in worse case then before. For at the gates of the Citie they found an Ediet set up by Co the

328 Temple and Statue eretted to Gouernours. Ichines house and Images. LI B. II.

new Vice-roy, blaming the China Interpreters which had put into the heads of Stranger-priefle Money brings to learne the China language and Characters, and to defire fome place for to credt a facred and private house, threatning those interpreters if they persisted. In this dispayre of proceeding, the cidation primate noute, threatning those interpreters it they pennited. In this suppayre or proceeding, they had not beene a weeke gone, when from Scisagain, the feate of the Vice-roy, one of his guard came to Imacao and brought the Ci-fu, (to they call the Gouernour of that Province) his Letters Patents by the Vice-royes authoritie, inuiting the Fathers to Scianguin, there to receive a piece of ground for a Church and dwelling house. The cause hereof was an offer made by the Fathers (when they were fent away from Sciauchin, by the deposed Vice-roy to Canton) of a fumme of money to any which should procure of the New Vice-roy license for their returne, One of the meaneth Souldiers in name of Interpreter to the Societie had put vpa Petition to the 10 Vice-roy, who fent it to the Gouernour of the Region called Guam-puon, of Cequion Province) to bee dispatched, who gaue the former Letters Patents to the Souldier, which brought them himselie to Macao. They with great ioy, as seeing the Diuine hand herein, made ready for the iourney, which the former expenses and late Ship-wrackes (especially of the Iapen Ship in the Pingai bountie. Ile Leuquiceo, which alone hath most of the wealth of the Citie in it) made difficult; but Gaspar Viegas charitably bestowed the expense, seconded also by others. Thus full of hope they fet fayle, and in Canton, both now and when before they were difmif-

fed from Scianguin, they found Spaniards. Then, a Ship which from the Philippinas was bound

were kept in durance : And now, seuen or eight Franciscan Friats, which had gone from the same 10

Philippinas tor Cauchinehina, hearing the King was become a Christian, and in their returne were

wracked on the lie Hainan, and taken and spoyled, and presented to the Magistrates for Pirats,

whose libertie these Iesuites procured, promising all recompence at Amacao. Hence they had fee

foorth in the beginning of September, 1583, and in the same moneth came to Scianquin, in that

Souldiers companie, by whom they were conueyed to the Gouernours Palace, and kneeling before him made request as in the Souldiers mentioned Petition had beene contayned, and were

kindly answered, that they should goe about the Citie and spye out some convenient place for

Friars in Coma, for New Spaine, was wracked at the Ile Man-tau, on the Canton coast; the men which escaped

Anno 1583.

Temple and flame to Go-

uernours.

Ignete Dee.

Jesuites build a house.at first

meane, after

their purpole, which hee doubted not to procure of the Vice-roy for them. At the same time at Sciauquin, they were creding by the common charge of the Eleven Cities of that Iurisdiction, a Tower (whereof one floore was now rayled, to which they intended 10. to adde nine others aboue it) in a pleasant place by the Riuers side, a myle and more from the Citie, the Suburbes continuing further then it. In the same place they set foorth a Temple, and therein erected a Statue to the Gouernour, whose sixe yeeres gouernment had well deserved of the learned, and of the vulgar. A piece of that field in which the flourilbing Tower (so they called it) was building, they defired, which hee liked well, and promifed to further them with the Vice-roy. The lesuies at their former departure, had left an Altar with one Cin Nice, who had placed the same in a convenient place, for want of Images inscribing above, it Thien Chu in Cubicall letters, that is, To the Lord of Heauen. Hee made also thereunto divers Incenses, and at fet times yeelded divine honors before it; which much reioyced the Fathers, feeing that there was one found which inuoked the true God. And this mangage them entertaynment, till they had 40 receited the Vice-royes aniwer, approxing their request; and the next day the Gouernour set foorth a plot of ground for them with straight caution to observe the Lawes of China, and to admit no Strangers companions to dwell with them; which they promifed. Much was the concourse and admiration of people, much the wonder at their triangle Glaffe, the Image of our Ladie, a wrought Handkerchiffe, with which they prefented the Governour; but hee returned all afterward, fearefull of Bribe-imputation. Much trouble arose about that place, and another was affigned them, where they began to build and were forced to pawne their precious triangle Glaffe, to fit it for their vie; they obtayned also an ample Charter from the Vice-roy, and two Patents from the Gouernour which protected them from wrongs. In these beginnings they made little mention of the Gospell, but imployed their spare time so

in learning the Language and Characters, by a Holy life feeking to infinuate themselves into the peoples good liking. Their habite was like the modeftest of the Chinois, a long Gowne with large sleeues: Their house had two Cells, and betwixt them a Hall with an Altar in the midst. D. wanting to on which they fet the Image of the Bleffed Virgin, carrying her Sonne. They called their God, Thien-cui, Lord of Heauen; for the Chinois want the D. which caused that they could not give any name more fit: and this name continueth to this day, although they vie others also, as Highest Ruler of all, First beginning of all, and the like. The blessed Virgin is called the Great Mother of God. This Image on the Altar, all which visited them both Magistrates, Students, Priests, and common people, did religiously worship, kneeling and (after their rite) knocking lightly the ground with their fore-heads. They admired the excellencie of the Picture and colours 60 without ceasing. But when it began to bee rumoured, that they worshipped a Woman for God, they tooke away that Picture and substituted the Image of Christ. After this, they painted the ten Commandements in the China language, which many approued. Some brought them Incense for holy vies, and some bestowed their Almes; others also Oyle for the Lampe which bur-

CHAP. S.S. 3. Their Honor, iealousie, calumnie, Mathematicks. China ignorance. 329

ned before the Altar; and the Fathers commended their Law, as agreeing to the light of Nature. ned before the Alica; and the Fathers Commented that are controlled the first which was Baptised, was a poore diseased man cast foorth by his parents, whom they First Baptisme Intructed, and a little before his death baptifed. The reliefe which they befowed on him before, caused a rumour amongst the vulgar, that those Strangers knew by the mans complexion, Fancies of the that hee had a precious stone in his head, the cause of all that benificence. The Chinois much ad, vulgar, mired the Bookes, of which the Fathers had flore, the artificiall binding, gilding, coft, goodlinesse of the Print, and their studiousnesse in the China bookes; and received with great applicuse a Booke of Christian learning which they printed. Yea, the Gouernour after the China rite would needs doe them publike honour, which is done by fending a goodly Table with Cubitall Tables of ho-

Ic letters in praise of them, with the Magistrates name, and the date inscribed in lesse letters. Two nour, of these with great pompehee sent vnto them, the one to bee set ouer the entrance with inscription, The boule of the flowre of Dinine men; the other to bee placed in the Hall, inferibed The boly Nation of the West : which wanne them great reputation, this Magistrate being much reputed for learning and vertue.

Our wants caused Ruggeriss to intreat leave to goe to Amecao for supply, which hee obtavned with a faire Ship and thirtie Rowers. The Gouernour requefted allo, that a Clocke might bee made for him. But the pouertie of the Amacaons, their Ship not being come from lapon, and the Colledge enjoying no Rents, caused him to send the workman to Scianquin, to make it there: which hee tooke in good part. Now the Chinois are a people suspicious of Strangers, especially 20 those ruder parts of the Pronince of Canton, and much muttered at the Portugals Commerce, fay- Chinesin Heeing, they made all things dearer, and the profit came but to few. They gaue an odious appella-pitall.

ing they made at time and the portion of the property of the p their famous Tower was the worke of Strangers, (which had no ground but that their house was building at the same time) and the Flurishing Tower, was stilled the Strangers Tower. They there-Tenderda ficebuilding at the same time; and the company I were, we make the consequent flower. I mey there I come fore in Regereim aboface of freed great abules by throwing flones, being angie that they keep ple, their houle thut, which they would have had made an Idoll Temple, alway open to all. One boy in throwing stones, was taken by the semant and brought in, but at others request soone dismissed. Hereupon two neighbours conspired, to set a fellow on worke to accuse these strangers for feducing Children, as they had done this youth his brother, (so they agreed) and kept Conspiracies 30 him three dayes, with intent to fell him for a Slave at Amacao. The two neighbours offered to bee witnesses hereof. The acculation was put vp in pittifull manner, and the Gouernour much moued, the Father fetched into Court by an Officer, before hee could have leafure to write his

aniwer. The Interpreter had filled his seeues with stones, which hee powred out in Court as witnesses of their abuses. The Judge smelt the businesse, and by examination of the Tower work. False accuses man which had feene it, found out the knauerie, and rewarded it with terrible whipping; and truely rewar-

Reim his skill in the Mathematickes which hee had learned, being an Auditor of Clasins at Mathematicks Rome, was no small helpe to them. They had a Cosmographical Map in European Characters, and Mapos Kome, was no man neither than the learned beheld with great pleasure, much defiring to see it in the world in-40 China characters, little knowing, as little having to doe with the reft of the world. They had troduction to Maps pretending a Description of the world, but prefented onely their fifteene Provinces, with the Sea and a few Ilands, and the names of fuch Kingdomes as they had heard of, all which Kingdomes scarcely equalled one Province of China. They now wondred much to fee themselves Chinas ignothraightned in an Easterne corner of the world, and Recise at the Governours request, published range the it in Chinacharacters: and inferted, as hee faw cause, the rites of the world and the Christian world. holies. They have a conceit, that the Heavens are round, the Earth square, and their Empire to Richards Map. bee feated in the midft thereof; hee therefore so projected his Description, that he presented China in the midft. They that before thought baiely of all other men, as if elfe-where were no The world v.

Commun. 1 ney unt octore thought patery of an other men, as it enc-where were no the whole King, nor Republike, nor Bookes, began to be better conceited of Europeans, and to bee bet. Sherika kifuit 50 ter prepared for the feed of the Golpell: and might hereby also less tear European forces

Gospell. foremote from them. This worke hee often reuised and corrected, till it came at last both to the two Royall Cities, and to the Kings house. The workeman at the same time finished the Clocke, and both were together presented to the Gouernour, who at his owne cost published the Map, and soone after restored the Clocke, because hee had none which knew how

The Ship comming from I apon, Ruggerius well relected returned, whereby the house was fi- Ruggers outen nished, their debts payed, and the building with stories, the disposition of the windowes, furniture, faire situation on the River with goodly prospect, and European ravities, brought many, e-

nen great Magistrates, to behold it. Rienus proceeded to make Spheares of Brasse and Iron thee Printed also Globes, and made Sunne-dyals, which hee gaue to the Magistrates. And by his le-Aures on these subjects, he got reputation of the best Astrologer in the world, they esteeming others by themselves. The Governour was about this time advanced to a higher Dignitie, called Lingues Ruler Language and the rule of two or three Regions and all the Townes therein, not remouning of two or three from Scianguage: and as the Chinese are superficious observer of Augusts. Sometimes to Chinese are superficious observers of Augusts. Lan, 1-1-244, having the rule of two or three regions and an including success, the conceiled that he Dimborson from Sciences and as the Chinese are superflictions observers of Auguries, he conceiled that he Handreds.

fun 1 2.6 1. Gaine fenarates the iub. quartell (wixt the English and Indies. And firmments of Edw. Menele. who!e Booke you have in the 9. booke. tom.I.

Almeidas Let-Rector at X44cbin,contra-

Moilin.

The Linft aus

In the Philippinas the newes of the lefuites successe caused the Gouernour to fend the Treasurer Iobn Bapista Romanus to Amacao, with Father Alfonso Sancius a Spanish lesuite, with a Watch and other presents and letters to the lesuites, to procure an Ambassage from the King of Spaine to China. The lesuites had with petitioning brought the bulinesse to good forwardnesse, when ictiofone Crowner, with they received contrary mandates from Amacao, it being likely to prooue the destruction of the out feraration Citie, if the Spaniards with their plentic of Silver from Perm and New Spaine, should have trade office. Apply in China; neither did this belong to the Spaniards, but to the Portugals, according to the Compolition betwire the two Kings made by Alexander the fixth: and although they are both fubiect now to one Crowne, yet their priniledges remayne diffinct without confusion. Thus both the Magistrate aduited, and their superiour the Rector prohibited them to proceed. Yet the former working was not cealed by Silence, till the Amacaon Magistrates laboured with divers hereby you fee reasons to disert the Ambassage. Caprais the Rector was desirous to see their house, and they procured the Linstians leave, so that hee came thither, viewed all, and Baptifed both the youngframents of fecular affaires man before mentioned which kept the Altar, and a learned man which read the China Bookee to the Fathers, this called Paul, the other Iohn, the first China Converts. Valignams made Prouinciall of India, hearing of this successe, sent thither Father Edward Sande, and Father Antonie Almeida: and obtained of the Vice-roy Edward Menefe, an annual Ripend for this miffion. They came to Amacao in Iuly, 1585. At the fame time it featonably hapned, that Linfitan was commanded from the Court, to pro-

cure of the Strangers at Amacao, certaine goodly feathers for the King. He furnished a faire (hip F.Edw: Sande. and fent Ruggeriss thither, and brought with him Father Edward Sande, who went to falure Linstian, and gaue him no meane gift of our Commodities to procure abode, whereof nothing so pleased him as a triangle Glasse. Hee gives him leane to stay, on condition that they admit me other companion. In Linstians place had succeeded another of Cequion Province, a great friend of the Fathers, who being to goe to Pequin about some affayres of his Office every third yeere, was featled at our house (where the Magistrates were often solemnly entertayned) and then of fered to carrie one of ours with him in his journey, at least as farre as Ceguion his owne Coun-Antonie Almei- trey. They willing to erect some new seate, least some disaster might in a moment strip them 20 de, License for easily of one and all, agreed that Ruggerine and Sande should goe, and received license for entring the Prouinces of Cegusar and Huquan, and places adiopning. This was the Mart time whither Ruggerius went, and found Almeida come thither with the Portugals. Thither also a Brother of Lulitau was gone with much Merchandile of Silke, (the most whereof is made in the Ceanian Prouince) which the Portugals bought at his price by the Fathers intreatie, who therefore tooke the Fathers, his brothers friends, to his Citie in Cequian, called Scianbin, (a name fomewhat neere the other, but in China a little difference producth great) the native place of both the Gouernours.

The Chinois haue a custome to be called by many names, and no man calls them by their proper name, (but themselves in naming or writing themselves, or somtimes their superiours) with- 40 lessites change out injurie: they taking a greater name, which others give them for more honour. Now the Fatheir names. there had yet affumed no other name, but their feruants called them by their proper name, a thing among ft the Chinois reputed barbarous. They therfore (to become all things to all to winne all to Christ) then followed that fashion, and euer fince at their first entrance assume a new Name. Their lourney is thus written by Almeida.

On the eleventh of the Kalends of December, 1585, wee departed from Canton. The third day the ter to Ed. Sarde. Ship happened to bee on fire, some imputing that unluckinesse to us: but without much harme it was quenched. Whiles wee sayled through the Canton Prounce, wee seldome came in sight and nener went out of the Ship till wee came to Moylimpor. I can therefore relate nothing of that Province, but that there were very many Cities, and Townes very frequent, and steepe high Mountaines, betwixt which that \$0 River Sideth to divers trasts of the Province stored with waters, Wares and Shipping. Every where we beheld sumptuous Edisces dedicated to the worship of Deuils, and of Ships almost infinite multitude, and of water-Fowle innumerable store, and berds of Goats feeding by the Woods, to the seuenth of the Ides of December. Then wee arrived at Moilim a Citie, neere which is the beginning of that River, whose course being swift, wee were drawne by ropes and romed with Oares against it. Into this sitiewee Should hardly have found admission, the passage being by a Bridge with two Iron chaynes, opened onely and Inst at the will of the Gonernour. But our Conductor basing acquaintance with the Liniteiu, wee had present cutrance, hardly able to passe for the multitude of Shipt, there wayting. Wee were there well entertayned, and on Sunday and Munday Sayd Masse. On Tuesday wee went to a Citic eight miles distant, there regaining the commoditie of another Riner. All that way was paned with flones; in which we paffe 63 a Mountaine, on the top whereof was an arch with an inscription of his name, who had facilitated that way, otherwise difficult. The weather was unseasonable, rainie and cold perhaps because the whole was in manner was Mountainous. I doe not remember that ever I faw way fo frequented, not then when Merand populous. chants refort to publike Faires : for all the Merchandise from Nanquin, and the places adverting are

brought hither. Alfo the Merchants which inhabit the remotest Cities in that way, on both sides had Partners for the conveying of their Wares, very fully; for our Conductor bad nothing to doe but to deliver one hundred and liftie Packes of Wares with other prossitions for the way, to his Hoalf, which all hee finald Seats and Porhundred and fifthe ranges of traces with some of provide Horses for the Sermants and Seats ters in the find in his Inne in the next Towne. These Partners also provide Horses for the Sermants and Seats high-wayes, for the Mafters to be carried in by two Porters defended from the Raine by Sumbretos, or Shadowes which they carrie in their bands. When hee had paffed halfe the way, wee changed our Seats and Porters and had others to the Inne; to these nothing is due but some small gratuitie, the Hoast beeing paid for all: and a Seat is at as easie a rate bere, as a Horse in our Countrey, with great commoditie and frequencie of Times. In the Evening we came to the Towne Faquen, and flaid there two dayes, such concourse Faquen.

In of Citizens comming to fee vs, that we were almost oner-whelmed, and were glad to get a ship-board on Fridar. On Saturdar we failed downe the streame, fifteene dayes continuing our course, in which wee hired three Barkes, in one of which we only were carried. On both Bankes many and faire Townes walled about present themselves to the view of Paffengers, seeming as bigge as Canton, which made mee me- Great Cities ditate of the facilitie of conneying the Gofpell in thefe parts, we making all this way with as great tran- thicke, quilitie of bodie and minde, that wee might in the flip pray or fludie and doe other things as commo-

On the lixteenth of the Kalends of January, we came to a most frequent Citie far greater then Canton, where the Tutan or Vice-roy of the Province Chianfi resideth. It is buch walled divided into three Metropolitan parts, a River flowing thorow with a Bridge of Barkes, toyning two parts of the Citie. On this Bridge and customes are paid, but our Condust being the Lancitau. Brother passed without search. And although me feared to be examined by the Magistrate, yet no man troubled us, they being not so inquisitine in a

ther parts as in Canton Pronince, about frangers: yea, they entertayne them more honourably energwhere then your Worship at Xuchin. About halfe amile from this Bridge another River toyneth with this, which runneth by the other fide of the Citie, and makes the third part of the Citie. I wished the Fathers a Colledge in this place both for the fertilisie of the soyle and holsamnesse of the Aire. Having provided necessaries for the rest of our lourney in this (tite, wee went about and in the space of fixe or seuen daves going downe the streame, we beheld on both sides very goodly Woods, and many Peles of wood on the Bankes necessary for those cold Regions, and holding on our course passed by seuen Cities, or more. famons for greatnesse and Merchandise : and on Christmas Euen came to the greatest Citie of all 30 Chianli, where wee staid that night for that Solemnitie. But bee which then was borne exercised our patience with a grienous North-wind, whereby the River water (otherwise cleere) was so troubled that on Christmas day wee could not drinke it. For the Rivers course is North-ward, which therefore by a Allthis way is North-wind is fo moued.

North-wands to mouse. The which by the fight we indeed greaters then Lisbone, in one dayes paffige further, we came to the way which leads to Nanquin, where duters Ruers to young together make a New Ruer. kind of Crosse with great commoditie for Trade and passage. For a Barke well defended against wind and weather, consenient for two Gentlemen with their Servants and baggage, may here be bired for twentie or thirtie dares, at an easterrate then aman shall pay for Herses from Coimbra to Li bone. For from Canton to Moilin fifteene dayes tourney, for a Ship which carried two bundred Packet of Meran chandize of diners kinds, we paid but nine lacs, and senen for those three which wee bired for twentie Nine Tacis, dayes more. After that, leaving the Northerne way which goeth to Nanquin or Lanquin, wee turned

West ward against the streame, yet with benefit of the wind favoring vs, we went sisteens and sometimes ementie * miles aday: in which space sailing by very large sields we arrived at a Citie where saire Por- * These miles celane is made, thence carried into India and Europe. Wee paffed by many Woods also and some Cities, sceme to bee The cold meane-while was so great, that one day all was concred with Snow. The Riner decreased and intended spaon the third of the Nones of lanuarie, they unlided the Merchandise into ten lesse Boates, and failed Cold Resion. two dayes, wee came to a large Citie, to which wee had entry by a Bridge borne up with fiftie painted Barkes.

On the Nones of Ianuary wee came to Gouli, a Citie at the end of our Nauigation by that River. 10 Here in celebrating Maffe wee were thronged by the multitude. And a Priest of the Iduls insuted us, Papifts and which shen performed to his Idols Ceremonies at his Honse, Altars there erected & Priests innited, & P.nims Cere-Hymnes vied, where he and those Bonzi vied vs kindly. Here wee observed that the Deuill counterfeis monies alike, ted the Ceremonies of the Catholike Church. We went thence by the foot way carried in portable feath as before fixe or feuen miles : and then entred the Prosince of Ciquion, at the Sun-fet entring the Citie Ciarion. Cuixion. On the Ides of Ianuarie we againe went a stip-board bolding our course by another River Carrion. which in that Citie first beginneth to be Nauigable, the slow streame lingring with vi three dayes, in which yet we saw eight Cities, about which we found unmeasurable quantitie of Oranges, very high Hils abounding with Trees and under-woods, betwint which that pleasant River sweetly slides receiving from New River. enery place new Tributes of waters that it prooneth now as large as that of Canton Pronince. And

60 although China baue name of fertilitie, yet here appeared some prints of Iaponian sterilitie. For in fine dayes space we could get nothing but Rapes and Rice, and a little filb. On the eleuenth of the Kalends of February, we passed by a large Citie twice as great as Canton, as those which knew the Region Scollines affirmed : for we by reason of Snowes and Mists could see nothing but some high Towers. At Sunne going downe wee came to a Towne, against which a Bow-shot distant on the other side of the Riner, wee

33 E

were forced to take a new flop, and causing our ship to be drawne (a light banged ont at the Mass) the next marning we came to the Catie Ciquion, the end of our townsy. In this Catie, which as Father Rogers for Ruggerius) is mont to say, is a type and representation of Venice. Odd bash promided viring good House, on one said basing the Citie, on the other the Ruser for prospell, with consenient Research and a Gardin, and a six there for a Chappell. On both sides of or that deliations Prints, which yet and a yerrain, ann a ju pume jo in comprose of the decembers in great multitudes, that we cannot yet of our kindly, and daily come to heare our Dolvine, as doe others in great multitudes, that we cannot yet oje vi cinal, ana anij vome v came v camen je vi. To the chiefe of them we hened our Aliar credid about to the Immeriall God, which they beheld with great renerence, worfripping the Image of our Sation. And the greatest Magistrates were so affected with our Christian Ceremonies, that they faid they would ereater ranks then the Governour of the Citic, who then mourned for his Mother, and muited ve by his greater songe severall Solemnitie; whom we answered that our Prayers anasted not but to the wor. Steparatoper emeran overmonie; women we answere usons our exercise angues not one to the wor-forgors of the true God. He of ed the Father with very great reflect, giving him the higher place at ta-ble, and accompanying him at the parting to the otmost gate of his Palace, seeming much delighted with ble and accompanying unman set purious a voice views. Law y one a muce, seeming muce acquired mile the Mysteries of our Faith. Three others greater then the Common have comme to visit vs. and about come to frequent that it is trouble some. The Prinsts also give vs good lookes, what sever they thinks, The Edifices both publice and prinate, the firees and Lanes of the Citic are larger and fairer than us The Cities of Canton. The Citizens also in grantite of manners, and civiline of Habit, differ not a last from the line that the cities of Canton. The Citizens also in grantite of manners, and civiline of Habit, differ not a last from the Inhabit not of Canton and Sciauchin. There is no Citie in Portugall, Lisbone except, that is any way for greatnesse comparable, The singularities I shall write at another time. Ciquion the 10

Pronincials Letter.Fortie red to 40000. Iapmian Conmerte.

The Provinciall of India writ to the Generall that at their returne to Xanchin they found fortie Christians added to the Church, which number in those beginnings in the ample and barbarous Kingdome of China, may be equalled to fortie thousand Christians in the Laboritan Prouinces: from Goa 14. Kal. Ian. 1 ,87.

ð. IIII.

False Brethren and others accusations detected, they are expelled Sciauchin : erect a 30 Seat at Xauceum. Monasterie of Nanhoa and other things of note in those parts. They alter their habit ; Voyage to Nanquin ; the Lake. Riners, Idols and other Rarities.

雷蒙 leius cals that Citie where they refided Sciaubin, and faith, it is a principall Citie, though not the Metropolitan of the Prouince, noble in commerce, in scituation (in the midft of a fresh water Lake) in wits and learned men. They baptized there Linguist Father of a fresh water Lake) in wits and learned men. and two or three Infants, which then dying they thrust into Heauen at vnwares. Sixtus the Pope granted a great Indulgence to the Societie, to further the Iaponian and Chinese businesse: 40 and Agnaviva the Generall fent them three Watches and an artificiall Clock, which was great. yet mooued by wheeles without waights, and strucke also the quarters to the great admiration of the Chinois. Others sent Pictures, one the worke of Gafpar Coelius who first taught the Isponians and Chinois the European Painting to the great good of both Churches, But the Kinimen of Linftan feeing fuch flocking to the Fathers grew sufpicious of danger, and caused them to bee recalled, and Linfiran also to be estranged from them. Also one Tansao-hu a great acquaintance of Linftian, with purpole to get somewhat from the Fathers, questioned Ruggerius why heelad not feene Mount Vu-tan in the Province of Hu-quam, a famous refort of Pilgrimes; who answe-Vates a hely not seen a Mount value in the Frounce of Fraquese, a tamous refort of Pilgrimes; who answered that hee durft not without the Magistrates sease: I will procure it suits hee, and did so. In by Pilgrimes. the way Ruggeriss went to the Mother Citie of Quam-fi, where hee visited one of the Royall 30 bloud, not knowing that fuch have nothing to doe with the State, and was not admitted, but bidden first to goe to the Vice-roy, to whom he went and had no injury, nor yet wonted humanitie, but was bidden to profecute his Pilgrimage and not to flay there. Limitan hearing of this, fought to shift his hands of them, and with much adoe they obtayned that two might bee permitted to flay in their house.

New Conuert,

Another danger happened by one Martin 2 new Conuert which had made two other Conafalle Knaue. uerts beleeue that the Fathers could by a certaine herbe turne Quick-filuer into filuer, and by that meanes maintayned themselues. Now the Chinois being exceedingly affected to that Alchymisticall vanitie, these gaue money to buy a Wife, and other costs to that false brother who vndetrook to learne of Father Reggerius and other costs to that falle brother who vn-detrook to learne of Father Reggerius and to teach the other two that Science. And having got-ten what he could of them, he also borrowed the Triangle Glasse of the Fathers with which hee ranne away. The Gouernour one day defiring to fee it, they told him who had ftolne it, and he fent an Officer which found him out and brought him bound. Hee , to bee reuenged of the Fathers, accused one of them of Adultery; and the Husband of the pretended Adulteresse (partner

CH AP. 5. S.4. Dieth of whipping. Strange Honours, Iesuites service.

in the Conspiracie) put wp a Petition against Ruggerius, who wpon inquisition was found at the time named to have beene in Quam-fi, two moneths journey thence. The Accuser hoped to get some-what, being poore, to stop his mouth, which they refused veterly, and hee for feare fled. together with his Wife. The Father was indicially cleered, and Martin in his presence received Martin white. ewentie cruell ftripes, and condemned to the Gallies, was fent to Linfitate who had first com-ped to death. mitted him to confirme the fentence; who added fixtie ftripes more, and being beggered and caft inbonds he was forfaken of all his Friends, and (the Fathers meane-while releeuing him) dyed within few dayes of the wounds. He which had gotten the Gliffe from Martin, another Con-uert. came and restored it to them, left it might breed him danger being found with him.

re, came and renores to the transfer of the Province of Hu-quam. To him the Citie Manner of her 10 had crected a Temple, and on the Altar had let his Statue; before the Altar a great Harth for nouring good burning incense: Candlestickes were also magnificently placed; and at his departure the whole Magistrate. Citie there visited him, and after their rite , palled off his old Boots (Bootes are the ensignes of Magistracy) and put on new, putting the old in a Chist, and locking them up to bee reserved for a monument of his worth. Ruggerius went to Amacao, and Matthew got leane for Father Edward the Superiour to returne to Scianguin. The new Converts which had loft their moneys by Martins death, deuiled new tumults against the Fathers; the River (which is a mile broad) ouerflowing, damnified the houles of the Citie, whence grew occasions of new abuses to Ours. The Vilitour endeauoured to procure Legation from the Pope to China, and Ruggerius was fent

to Europe on that bufineffe, which tooke little effect by the death of divers Popers hee fpending & gorthing 20 the rest of his life at Salerne in the Kingdome of Naples.

Ricins was alone a good while, till Almeida came to him. His Clocke, by the Diall to the eyes, and by selfe-striking to the eares, caused no little wonder. But a new calumnie much endangered them made to the Ciai-yuen. For certaine old men of Canton, which are honoured for that in their whole lives they never have accused any, nor beene accused of any, enjoying therefore a Priviledged veerely feast out of the publike treasure, a peculiar Vest, and divers other immunities, put vp a oldmen. Petition, admonishing of the danger of the Amecaous, and especially those Spies which had Their elegant builded houses of divers stories, and every day proceed with new arts, giving money toward Pcivion is the building of Scianquin Tower to get entrance into that Citie, fayling to and fro without im- whole in Ricing pediment, dangerous to the State. This is that which our Bookes fore-tell, Tee base fowen thornes this place.

on an attle as a gentle flyte, pe hane brought in Seppents and D ragons into pun books. That of Ama-wao is lice a fore on the bands or feet eafly cared as leafure, but this of Sciauquin, an view fixing on the breait and bear timels to be remadeed, &c. The Visitour reputed a feuere man committed it to the Haitu, and at last it came to the Gouernour of Sciauchin, who then being at Pequin to performe the customary trienniall vistation to the King, Phan his colleague (our friend, then Lieutenant) affifted vs with his Counsell, and they gave their Glasse to the new Linsitan, who ended the quarrell with the Vifitour, as being a falle calumnie.

The two Marts prouided them of exhibitions and European Presents from Canton, and their Clocke, Mathematike Instruments, Geographicall Maps, Pictures, and Bookes, with Musicall 40 Instruments, had procured them much visitation, and much estimation of Estrope, and some fruit thereof in Conucriions. Neither was this Station unprofitable to Amacao, helping their af- Iestites metic faires with the Magistrates, in businesses with the Vice-roy, in cases of shipwrackes, in redu-their cabibieing fugitive slaves. It happened at that time the Vice-roy dying, his Successour would not tion by service through superstition enter his Palace till hee had pulled it quite downe and built it anew at to the state. the Kings charge. Meanewhile spending his time in Canton Province, he was made against vs and banished vs. But the Magistrates being our friends, and order comne then from Pequin to Issuite banibuy Scarlets of the Portugals, F. Mat. Ricius was employed, and got their good liking, but not find. leaue by any meanes of the Vice-roy to stay at Sciauchin. Yea, hee forced upon the Governour the execution of his Mandate to packe them away, offering money for the house, which they refused to take, saying, a house built for Gods service might not be sold, and it were ill merchan-50 dife to take fixtie pieces of Gold for fixe hundred which it had coft them.

When they came at Canton the Admirall was absent, and whiles they waited for him the collegeopieces ice-roy sent a Barke for them to return an leben and whiles they waited for him the collegeopieces Vice-roy fent a Barke for them to returne, and then permitted them to chuse any other place of in changing residence. Ricius chose Nanbium in the Prouince of Quiauss (or Quamss, or Chianss) which hee great tumine, refuled not, but wished them first to trye at Nanhoa, or at Xauceum, commending them to the Nanhum. Affiliant of the Gouernour thereof, then present, and gaue Ricius a bundle of bookes of his Xinctum. owne acts in token of good will, who thanked him with his fore-head to the ground, after their fashion. They departed from Scianchin on the Assumption day, 1589. They came to the place called Sanceui, or Three-waters, where the Rivers of Xauceum from the North falls into a great River : there they wie to change ships, to have others fitted in other fashion to sayle against the

60 streame. In eight dayes sayling to the North, they came to the place where the Gouetnours feruant flayed for them to bring them to the Temple or Monasterie of Nanbon, part of which Nanbon Monaster of Which Nanbon Monaster of Which Nanbon Monaster of Nanbon, part of which Nanbon Monaster of Nanbon Monast the Vice-toy had given them if they liked it. This Monasterie they found in a goodly Plane, stone of 1000. enuironed with pleasant Hills , enriched with hand-fet fruit hearing trees, watered with a Markon

Bully extraite profiteth little. 1.T:m.4.8.

Pilgrimage.

china hypocriffe.

Monftreus Idolatry. Bels.

Lufus Shrine.

pleasing.

Apply to Images. Originall of Idols. Conteffe and behanged. Xauceum deicribed.

Icfairs new

Nanbium,

Chintaise (the sonne of one of the second ranke of Magistrates called Scianscin, a man fa-Countails Scho-mous, as being the first named of the three hundred Doctors made enery third years, and Author of Learned Workes) had spent his Patrimony after his Fathers death with Prodigalitie and experiments of Alchymie : and now was forced to shift, with his Wife and Seruants wandering thorow the Kingdome to his Fathers Friends, and becomming a Sollicitor for other men to the 60 Magistrates of his acquaintance. Hee having obtayned of the Vice-roy a Roome in that Monasterie became Neighbour to the Fathers; and one day with set Pompe (after the China custome) and precious Gifts came to Father Matthew, and chose him for his Mafter. It was not safe for

Riveret in the midft; the goodlieft Hill, graced with a plentifull Fountaine, was the Seat of the Temple, a great pile; nigh which was the Monasterie wherein a thousand Priests (by the impions piety of the Ancestrie, Lords of that ground) had their abode.

The originall thereof was a man which lived about eight hundred yeeres fince, called Lufe. who is reported to have flourished in great reputation of holinesse. by reason of his austere come of life : with a chaine girded to his bare flesh, wonted to lift Rice, and to beate it lightly after their manner, as much as served for the daily food of a thouland Monasteries. With that chaine

his flesh patrified, so that wormes bred therein : of which if any happened to fall to the ground. he placed it there againe, faying, Haif thou nothing to cate? why doest thou runne away? There is his carkaffe preferred and that famous Templebuilt to his worship, to which is concourse of 10 Pilgrimes out of all the Kingdome, euery-where he and all his being much reputed. These Minifters of the Deuill are divided into twelve Stations, each having his Superiours, and overall an Abbot. When the Father came thither fent by the Vice-roy, they supposed hee had come to be their Abbot and to reforme their abuses; for they not only had their Concubines and Bastards. but robbed by the high-wayes. Now all the Idoll Priefts are as subject to the Magistrates as on ther men; perhaps because their Learned esteeme not Hols, nor account these their Priests. Yet

with China diffirmulation they gaue the Fathers faire entertainment with much pretended joy, and officiously offered all at their Seruice, making them alio a Solemne Feast, and then shewing them the chiefe places of their Monastery. They were full of great Idols of Brasse and other Metals, and of wood gilded. In one Station were told fine hundred. There were also many 20 Steeples and Bels of Metall caft, one such as they had never seene in Europe to their remem-

The bodie also of their Saint, Lufu, was shewed, all thining with that their China bituminum Vernish (so vulgarly thought, and preserved with incredible veneration, though many deny it to be his bodie:) In the midit of the Temple is an eminent place to which they afcend by neate steps, in which hang about fifty Lampes, but not all burning except on let dayes. The Chinais maruelled at the Fathers doing no worthip, a thing vivally performed by those Chinois, which

otherwise repose no confidence in those Idols. They both agreed; the Chinois Monkes to bee rid of their feare, and the Fathers to goe to the Citie. At their departure, Father Almeida went by water, and F. Matthew by Land with the Go- 20

uernours Servant, the Abbot bearing him companie. He there told the Magistrate that he liked not of the Temple, because the men had an ill report as vinate Neighbours, and hee worthipped one God, and not Idols. This amazed the Gouernour, perswaded before, that there was in the World no other Law nor Characters then theirs, till Father Matthew pulled forth his Prayerbooke. The Abbot also restified that hee had worshipped none of the Islols, no not Lusen icke. At last, the Governour was perswaded by him, that that of Idol-worship was a later Sectamongit them; yea, the Abbot affirmed, that they deferued no worship, but that former Magiitraces had observed that without Idols the vulgar would not keepe Religion, and therefore set up thefe to be worshipped. They visited all the Citie Magistra'es which wied them with more courtesse then those of Scianebin. They went also to another Temple or Monasterie called 40 Quambias, on the other Westerne side of the River, and carried their goods thither till they were prouided of a House.

The Citie Xangenm is feated betwixt two Nauigable Rivers which here met: the one which palleth by Nanhium on the East, the other running out of the Prounce of Vquam on the West. But the Citie wals and Houses are builded in the midit of the field, but they are forced by the ftraitnesse to build also on the other-side the River, joyned with a Bridge on Barkes. It contayneth five thousand Housholds is fertile but vnholsome, the third or fourth part of the Inhabitants being sicke of a Tertian from October to December, which takes away many, and leaves a pale Impression on the rest. Strangers also are no lesse arretted by it, when they come thither on businesse. And the lesuites had almost lost themselves in this new purchase, where being re- 50 couered they had a Charter from the Vice-roy to build their House in ground belonging to the Monasterie. Thither the Visitor sent them Sebastian Fernandus and Francis Martinez which had beene trayned up in the Schoole of Amacao, the first Probationers in China. They to auxid expense, built this House of one Storie after the China manner : and sooneliked better of this then their former Residence.

the Father to refuse (though he required his gifts, lest he should seeme to have beene brought this

ther by conetouinesse) and first taught him Arithmeticke. For that which the Chinois haue is with a Linnen Instrument whereon Beads are put by wires, and shifted hither and thirher to china Arithe reckon their numbers : certayne, but subiect to Error, and vnprofitable to high Sciences, He read meticke. to him also the Sphere of Clauins, and the first Booke of Enclides Elements, and taught him to make Sun-dials of many forts, and Geometricall Rules to measure Altitudes. He being of subtile wir. committed these things to writing in elegant title, and shewed them to Magistrates of his Acquaintance, fo procuring great opinion and admiration to the lefuits. His wit and exceeding industry brought him to great skill, that hee made Spheres, Astrolabes, Quadrants, Compasses, Dials and other like, very artificially, and some of filter : withall so fetting forth his Mafter 10 and the European Learning, that it proued of no small consequence. By his meanes the Fathers had acquaintance with Pimpithan a Military Commander, with the Gouernours of the Citie and divers other Magistrates. Almeida fell sicke and was sent to Macao, to see if Physicke

might recourt him, and there dyed. Recius fet forth a goodly Image hitherto vnseene, on the Altar adorned with Waxe Lights, An Image fens which brought fach concourse to see it, that their enuious Neighbours stoned the House and Ser- from New uants by night: whereat Chiutaife offended acquainted the Gouernour, which had before fet his Spaine, Decree ouer their doore prohibiting all wrongs. He called the Street Gouernours (as Conftables with vs) and was likely there to have foourged them, pretending their ignorance, and putting chaines about their neckes after the fashion, sent them to seeke out the wrong doers, and Scuere Iuffice. ting tradies about the tribunall. They fearing to anger their Parents, durft not name them, till he Fron. de Petrir commanded to whip the one and fend the other to Prison, whereupon they named two, whose punshment with much intreatie of the Father was pardoned. Father Francis de Petris, was lent Vice-roy de-(by the Magistrates License obtayned) to succeed in Almeidas place. The Vice-roy was then printed preferred by his Friends procurement and Bribes to a higher place, but the Prouinciall Vision had fo complained of his wrongs, that by the way hee was acquainted that hee was depriued of all Office, and fined at forty thousand pieces of Gold to the King. Befides, a filthy Vicer brake out of him, and soone after he miserably dyed. Thus did God panish his pride, which to cress a Temple to himselfe at Sciauchin, had deprined the Iesuits of their Houle. The fame at Sciauchin was that the Isluits were expelled for refusing to teach the Vice-roy the Arte of Al-30 chymie.

One Cosunboa a Merchant of the Citie Taicho in Chiansi, abode in Nanhium, and had some for- Taiche. tie persons in his Family, a very Superstitious Idol-worshipper, in whose service hee macerated his whole life in that China abstinence from Flesh, Fish, Egges, and Milke, living only of Pulse, china abstin Rice, Herbs, and certaine Cakes, industrious for his faluation in another life, but not fatisfied neace, with any of the China Sects. He had learned by Chinaifo of the Isluits, and came to Xancenn and acquainting Father Ricius with his purpose, he was instructed and baptized loseph. He stayed with them a moneth, and after Ricius went to Nanhium to him, and preached and baptized ten Nanhium, when the manufacture and the state of the st

40 manner is to adde excessively) and he put them to torture; and forced them to confesse one whose Their sentence Hat or head couering falling off had bewrayed him, he condemned in Capital sentence; the other to be fent to the Gallies, or amongst the Kings Slaues : which sentence was to passe to Superiour Gouernours, and fo to Scianchin, and Father Ricins must goe thither about it, which happened well for the new Conuerts which had for the most part growne wild. From thence he went to Amacao to speake with the Victor, and returned to Sciauchin, where the Parents of the theeues procured him their Aduocate which should have beene the Plaintiffe. Amongst the China Magistrates is one which hath his name of Pardoning punisments: Hee is sent in the Name of the Queene Mother, into each Prouince one. Their Office is to vilit Prilons, to exempt the smaller Queenes par-

offenders and to mitigate Sentences; for which the Magistrates hold them in great esteem. But doner. so hee would not succour these men, though the Father intreated. The Proxincial Visitor only remayned, who alone doth last of all reuse the Sentences, and they despaired that hee would reuoke the judgement of seuen or eight Magistrates. Hereupon they conspired fiftie of them conjoyning in an implous Sacrifice in a certayne Temple to expell ours from Xauceum. But none of the Magistrates of the Citie subscribing (except one, who did it, to offend the Fathers greatell friend) they better bethought themselves, and intreated Ricius to be their Intercessor; whereby the Visitor was perswaded to pronounce them Dicers and not Theeues, and to exchange their Rivers. fentence into twentie stripes apiece. For the name of Theeues would have beene an ignominious Thefe ignoral. brand to them and to their Kindred for euer. Yet would they have renewed their acculation to nious.

the Vilitor, but he would not heare them. About that time the President of the Court of Rites at Pequin President 60 Pequin, passed that way towards Hamam his Natiue Countrie, who hearing of Ours (which he dent. did not to the Visiters) visited them with gifts, and spent a whole day with them, promising at his returne to carry Father Matthew to Pequin with him to correct their Kalendars.

In Nouember 1594. Father Francis de Petris dyed, and Father Lazarus Cataneus succeeded, Ricing bethought him of another course: for how locuer they had shaken off the name of Bonzi.

Iefuites alter

336

vet because they shaued their beards like the Portugall Priests, and cut their hayre, and lined single, had their Temple and fet prayers, they could not free themselues of that infamous tirle which made them vnfit for greater Defignes. Hee aduited the Vifitor, that by this meanes they Ethnike priefts
like in thouing were accounted as the Idoll Priefts, and that it were fitter to let their hayre and beards grow. and to weare the habite of the Learned men, each of them having a garment of Silke to wift the Mazistrates, without which they might on equall tearmes amongst the Chinois, conferre with them: also that it was fit to remoue their residence from this vnwholsome ayre of Xaucens, or to divide it. To all these the Visitor yeelded, undertaking to acquaint the Generall of the Order and the Pope. For how soeuer for vertue and learning (wanting to their Bonzi) the Magistrates and the Pope. For nowneces to vices and the wilgar held them in that vulgar respect; neither might the Magistrates breake their custome, to give them equall entertaynment. Nor did

Sciles.

they now beare themselves for Learned men of Chima, but for European Learned, imitating the habite of that Countrey. The next yeere, 1595, the Chiefe Iudge of the Connell of Warre, by the Chinoic celled Scilai. which is farre about the dignitie of Vice-roy, (who before had after divers Dignities betaken himselfe to a private life) vpon occasion of the invasion of Corai, was by the King of China

(which fent in defence thereof an Armie of eightie thousand) called backe to the Royall Citie. Hee had a Sonne of twentie yeeres old, who for griefe that he had loft the first degree of their Students, loft his wits. Hee lent a Captayne for the Fathers, thinking they could recourt his Sonne which he had with him, and gaue them fuch entertaynment, that the Magistrates were 10 Mount Muslim amazed. He caufed a Charter to bee given to Rieiss for going to Nangan, chiefe Citie in Chian or Moilin: Sac where hee hoped to doe good on his Sonne. He passed Mount Moilin, which lyeth betwixt the two Prouinces and the two Rivers, a dayes journey, and the most notable thorow-fare in the whole Kingdome. For at the foot thereof to the South, the River of Nanchina becomes nauira. ble, which runneth into Canton and the South Sea. On the other fide of the Hill at the Citie Naugan, arifeth another great River, which visiteth the Provinces of Chianf and Nanquin, and many Cities before hee enters the Sea Eastward. Thus what comes from forraine Kingdomes to Canton, is this way conveyed to the in-land Kingdomes, as also from those hither: Horses and feates, or Chayres for carriage on mens shoulders, Beafts for carriage and Porters, being almost innumerable euery day, yet all in good order. The Mountayne is common to both Provinces, which are diffinguished by a Gate erected among the stonie precipices. All the way is set 30 with Trees, paued with stones, frequenc with Hostries, as secure by night as by day, bothby the guards of Souldiers, and frequencie of Trauellers : neither are their ouer-flowings by raynes. On the Hill top is a neate Temple, and therein a Garrison, both Provinces thence offered to the view. Naughan tignifieth the Southerne Inne. Hee went in one of the Presidents Ships, till hee came to the Citte Cancen; by the way often entring into his owne Ship and discoursing with him of European affayres, Sciences, and Religion. But so many visitations for Magistrates hindred all dealing with his Sonne in this journey, so that by his Father it In this Citie Cancen, refideth a Vice-roy greater then the Vice-roy of that Province, they to

call him the Vice-roy of foure Prounces, Chianfi, Fuchien, Canton and Vauam: not that all thole

Prouinces are subject to him, but because hee governeth two adjoyning Regions, or leffe Prouin-

ces out of each of them. The cause of appointing this Vice-roy extraordinarie was, the multi-

Stately enter-

tude of Theeues in those parts, which bordering on so many Prounces, could not easily by ordinarie course of Iustice bee apprehended; whence two Regions out of each were committed to one, who by Militarie forces repressed those infolences. And because the militarie Magistrates are fubiect to that Councell of Warre at Pequin, the Prefident was heere received with greater State : aboue three thousand men were sent to meete him a league off, with their Captaynes, Colours and Armes, many with Hand-gunnes mixed, shooting off as he passed, making a faire show on both fides the River, which there is not very large. When hee was come into the Citie, the 10 Vice-roy with other Magistrates visited him with Gifts, Prouisions, Banquets; and some com-

It feemes to

day for Ships passage which have payd their customes. After they were past this Citie, another River addes it selfe to this, whence they come into a place called Sciepathan, about thirtie miles long, in which are many Rockes differfed, on which the impetuous force of the water caufeth many ship-wrackes goods lost, and men drowned; and requireth expert Ship-men; a strange thing to see a River full of shelves and sharpe rockes, in the Lying vanities midit of the continent. In the entrance of this dangerous passage is an Idoll Temple, wherein the paffengers deuoutly commend the fafetie of their fortunes to thele vanities, which Scalan al- 60 so heere did in vaine : for although with multitude and industrie of Saylers his Ship anoyded the Rockes, yet was that broken in which his Wife and Children were carryed, though they escaped drowning, by reason of her high building, every one getting vp into the highest decke, which lifted vp it felfe aboue those shallower waters. They cryed pittifully, and Father Mat-

panies were fet to guard the Ships : which was also done every where, such is the China venera-

tion of such Magistrates by their inferiours. Heere was a Bridge of Boates, opened but once a

CHAP. S. 4. Nancian and Nan quin. Huiunfins Tale and Temple.

thew having then gotten a Boate for himfelfe came first and received them, going himfelfe into another leffe, which went before to conduct the way. Scilan fent for another Ship prefently to Cancen. Father Matthew was taken into another Ship of burthen, which was in a guit ouerthrowne, John Barradas his boy was drowned, and hee hardly recoursed : the Commodities by dving were gotten againe, though much hurt by the water. They came to a noble and populous Citie called Chiengan, where the winde by night was fo violent, that it difperfed all the

Fleet, which hardly elcaped wracke. Scilan terrified with this disastrous passige by water, purposed to goe by land to Pequin, which Kings Posses

is done at the Kings coft; in certayn places there being Horles, Lighters, Porters, proutions ready Ic provided. Now thinking to fend backe Ricius to Xanceum, least some might accuse him in a time of warre for bringing Strangers to the Court ; hee shewed some the wonders of his triangle Glaffe . which hee was willing to give the President if hee knew he should hold on with The Glassee . him in the lourney. They acquainted their Lord, and hee gaue him license to goe to Nan- fleemed a quin, and to enter those two Prouinces of Cequion or Cechien, and Nanchin or Nanquin. Hee great levell was carried thither with two of Seilans feruants, still having Souldiers from all places to guard Nation Me. him, they thinking that fome of his Sonnes were there carryed. When hee came to that tropolises Mother Citie (for before hee feldome went foorth, to preuent all lets) which is in twen tie chianfi. nine degrees, to the Northermost part of the Prouince, hee made shew of himselfe as one of Scilon: houshold feruants: and not knowing whither to goe to deliuer his Letters, hee first 20 went into a Temple of note, which beares name of the Iron Pillar. For they fable that one This seemess

Huminfin, had some hundreds of yeeres agoe, brought perfect Silver out of Quick-filler, and had agreewith delinered this Citie from a huge Dragon, whom hee ouer-whelmed in the ground, and ty- Pintes Muchied to that Iron Pillar, and then flew with his whole house, Mice and all, into Heauen. The Parent fur page building of this Temple is worthy the view, against which are perpetuall Faires, in which nothing is lacking to bee fold. The Priefts are those which they call Thansa, which let their havre and beards grow. When hee entred that Temple, much concourse of people came about him to fee a Stranger, a strange fight there, yea, reputed holy, for they had thought that the fame of that Idoll, had brought him thither from farre Countries. But when hee did no worship thereto, hee was admonished to doe that which the greatest Magistrates refused not a then threatned, after they would force him, till one of the Ship fayd, hee worshipped no Idols. But feeing the multitude fill flocking about him, he returned to the Ship, and fignified that hee came with the President, whom every man knew. The servants visited their Masters friends and

received gifts of fome, especially of the Vice-royes Physician.

Scarcely had they sayled out of the chiefe Citie, when they meete with a Lake admirable Admirable for the greatnesse and other things : on all the bankes as farre as a man can see, are innume- Labersee the rable Townes, Caffles, Villages, great Houses; thence they may passe into Fuchion, and thence new Map. to the Sea Eastward. Amongst other Townes there is one Citie called Nancan, at the foot of to the bea Eartward. Amongst come to the season in his owne Cell, macerating a Hill called Liss, in which Hill are divers Anchorites, each in his owne Cell, macerating Mount List. a hill called List, in which rain are under a many, as are dayes in the himselfe with afflicking his bodie. Those Houses are sayd to bee as many, as are dayes in the himselfe with afflicking his bodie. Those Houses are sayd to be as many, as are dayes in the himself with a hi 40 yeere : and they tell as a miracle, that the Sunne shining electeround about, that Hill is al- that cale way courred with Clouds and myfts; fo that that Hill (fo neere) cannot bee seene out of the in Passa da. or Lake. The course of the River is to Nanguin, but in that breadth the streame hath small force, somelike place and eafily may with the winde bee fayled any way. After you are out of the Lake, a great Riuerout of Vquam Prouince, runneth thither and therein lofeth his name and waters. For the greatnesse, it is thence-forward called Tamfu, which fignisseth, the Son of the Sea, being in many places two or three myles broad, dangerous also for tempelts like his Father, and they say River Familia or the waters are fo whirled therein, that swimming can little profit those which fall thereinto. The Chinois fayle it with great feare, and are there often wracked. Great Ships fayle yond the Lake, therein, and happely our Ships (not the greatest of all) and our Galleyes might sayle hitherto to from the Sea. Many orher Rivers pay their tributes to it. They fayle it not by night, but

betake themselues to some Pore, which they may readily doe also in a storme. To this Lake the Spring-tydes at Change and Full come, at other times not observable : at Nanquin enery day, but it is fresh water. When hee was come to Nanquin the Presidents seruants

Gg

ð. V.

Nanquin described; RICIVS expelled thence, hee setleth at Nancian, thence goeth to Nanquin againe, and to Pequin ; description of it, the way thither, the Kings Palace, and of Suceu. and Hamceu.

(which Fola calls Quin(ay) desembed. It was then greater, as being ther have diminished it : perhaps allo that Lake decaying and diving vp.; or ter the Tarters expelled

awelue Gates. Third Wall.

Garrison

Milerable

Anquin or Nanchim by the Portugals is called Lanchin : for they heard of it by the In-10 habitants of the Province Fuchian or Fuquian, which wie L for N. It is called also Intienfu, because the Gouernour of the Region there refideth. This is that Citie, which in the Chinois opinion excelleth all Civies of the world, both in greatheffe and goodli-

neffe : neither may many be compared to it. For it is full of very great Palacis, Temples, Towers, ter, at being Bridges, which all yet are exceeded by those of the same kinde in Europe. It excellent alloin the north temperature of the ayre, fertilenesse of the soyle, goodnesse of wits, gentlenesse a manners, elegance of speech, multitude of inhabitants of every ranke, of People, and Learnew, and Magistrates: gance or precommentation or innaments of early standards a copie and Deather, and International the fall of holding equal ranke with those of Peguin, in number and dignitie, however by the abfence of the King, that equalitie is made vn-equall. And so in all the Kingdome of China, and the bordering Kingdomes, it is commonly (all things confidered) judged the fift or chiefe Citie, 20 It is compassed with three Walls; the first, that of the Kings Palace exceeding stately. That is alfo compassed with a three-fold wall, in manner of a Tower, with ditches filled with water, It hath foure or fine Italian myles in circuit. And I dare boldly fay, that no King any where hath a more excellent Palace (not if you weigh particulars together, but) comparing all things. The fecond wall encompassed the Palace, and the principall part of the Citie, opened with twelue Gates, which are fortified with Iron plates, and Ordnance planted ouer against them within the Citie. This second Wall comprehendeth eighteene Italian myles compasse. The third Wall and ettermost is not enery where continued, but where need is, Art hath added sup-

The circuit thereof can hardly bee knowne. The Inhabitants say, that two Horse-men in a 30 dayes journey whole dayes tiding, having gone out of the same Gate, met together at night: whence the prodigious quantitie may bee observed, especially the forme of the Citie being Circular, and therefore most capable. Although within the walls are great spaces of Mountaynes, Lakes, Groves, Gardens, yet the greatest part is very frequently inhabited. Thegarrison Souldiers (which one would not beleeue, had not eye-witnesses confirmed it) which keepe the Citie alone, are 1032.org.1.de fortie thousand. The Pole is eleuated 32. degrees, and so it is seated in manner in the midfi of the Kingdome, from North to South. The River runneth by it at the Weit, exceedingly both enriching and beautifying it. Nor doth it onely passe by, but is in many places brought into the Citie by Channels (whereby greater veffels may enter the Citie) being enlarged by Art. In times past it was called the chiefe Citie of the Kingdome, and may feeme to have beene anci-40 ently more giorious.

Reins went a-land in the Suburbe, which is without the three Walls, and is so large and frequently inhabited, that it may feeme another great Citie. There a Physician of the Vice-toy of Schiauchin knew him, and hee vilited the Vice-royes sonne, and by his meanes grew acquainted with others. When he went into the Citie, hee vied to bee carryed in a close Chayre, to preuent noueltie, and for more authoritie, and because the length of the way to friends houses often required it. There hee thinking to fixe a residence, learned of one Sciutagia a Magistrate of his former acquaintance, to whom hee had before giuen a Globe and an Houre-glast, receiting promifes of much kindnesse. To him he went full of hope and not emptie handed: but hee being both miferably couctous, and ambitiously hunting after new places, was offen-50 ded with his presence (hee pretending that he came to see him) sent for his Hoast, and threatned him terribly, causing him to ship away his new Ghest; having also agreed with the Notarie of his Court to give enidence against him, as a troublesome and Jangerous man former-Iv expelled from Scianchin. Thus against the streame both of his affection and the River, is Rieiss forced (loath to displease Magistrates) to returne to Chiansi Province. In the way fall of thoughts, hee had a vision (as the Storie fayth) in which God appeared to him, and promise to bee propitious in both the Cities Royall to him.

In Nancian the chiefe Citie of Chiansi hee abode. This is as great in circuit, but not in Mirchandife as Canton, and though none of those portentuous great Cities, yet is it famous for the number of Learned men, which thence are advanced to divers parts: the people are thriftie and Fast from flesh, contented with little, and many of them observe that first aforesayd. Of the Learned men there fift, egges, and is also a Societie, in which on set dayes the more learned doe Lecture or discourse conclude vertues in very modest manner. The Physician aforesayd, famous for his Art and well respected by

CHAP.S.S.S. Ricius his Booke of Friendship. Princes of the Blond Royall.

the Vice-roy, was vitited by him. Hee now vied his Silken veil and Cap vied by the Learned. formewhat like but higher, then that which Priests in Spaine weare, (for he had learned to keepe flate and not to deject himselfe too much) and carryed two servants with him in long garments made of Callico, and his gestatorie Chayre: without which pompe a man cannot bee taken for a Learned man, the pooreit Students ving them, and otherwise contemned. The Physician entertayned him kindly, and after inuited him to a Feast, where were many Students, and some of the Royall bloud Royall bloud (of which that Citie hath very great store) which were glad of his acquaintance; at Nancian. and when he had once mentioned his flaving there, the Phylician was 10 eager in defire thereof that he feyned that the President Scilar had written to him, to procure him residence there, be- chine lying is

to cause in the former abode he had not his health. The Chinous esteeme such lyes to bee wisedome, prudence Hee soone got credit among st them by Mathematicall lectures and instruments, and by his artificiall memorie especially. For the Chinos about all others commit whole bookes to memorie Ricinghis artis with vnwearyed paynes, and in the first yeeres of their studies doe nothing else. He repeated the ficial memorie most confused and independent Characters in order, yea, backwards as well as forward. Many defired to learne it, and tome hee entertayned. Physicians being of no great authoritie, he fought to infinuate into fauour of the Magistrates ; but a certayne Student had counselled him to neglest their license, and thereupon enquirie being made by the Vice-roy, this his friend and landlord very friend-like, would needs throw him fuddenly out of doores, and hee was forced by Forumefriend force to defend himselfe. But the Vice-roy having received a Libell from him, tellifying who he 20 was, greatly reioyced (hauing heard of him) and when hee came to his Court, arose from the Tribunall to meete him, would not suffer him to kneele, and gaue him good viage and magnifi-

cent Titles, inuiting him also to reside there. Whose affections were after kindled into a greater

flame by his Physicians, magnifying his Mathematickes, Memorative, Bookes, three square Glasse and other nouelties. The Vice-roy would have him make him a Dyall, and teach his Sonnes, but for that admirable Glaffe, hee would by no kindle force accept the gift. And whereas time out of minde many of the Royall bloud are there, two of them having the chiengen and tytle of Kings, Chiengan, and Longan, fent their principall Servants or Courtiers, to invite Fa- Longen, Kings ther Marthew to the Palace, which is fitting to Royali Maiestie, both for Greatnesse, magnifi- titular,

cence of Building, pleasure of Garlens, and other furniture of houshold and attendance. Chees-30 gan first inuited and entertayned him, attyred with a Royall vesture and Diadem: Father Matthen gaue him a Dyall with the Signes of the Zodiacke, and a Globe with China characters, and other European commodities; which hee recompenced with Silkes, weight of Siluer, and divers viands. Nothing gaue him such content as two Bookes of Japon paper, smooth and hard bound in European manner : one contayning Maps and other Mathematicall representations, with an explication in their Language; the other was a tractate of Friendship, wherein Dialogue-wife Ricius his China (as Cicero in his Letins) hee bringeth in the King, questioning what the men of Europe thought books of Friendship, and set downe the sentences of Philosophers, Doctors, and other Authors; a friendship. worke to this day read there with great applause and admiration, Printed in divers Provinces. Chiengan continued his friendship and left it as a legacie to his Sonne, who yied when the Father

40 visited him, to pay the Porters, and to give money to his servants, a token with them of great Token of welwelcome. The Societie also of Learned men grew acquainted with him, and the chiefe of them, come. hearing him complayne of multirule of visitors, wished him to command his Seruants to say hee was not at home: which efficious lye he affirming to bee by our Law vnlawfull, bred in him and the rest much wonder. In the meane while at Xanceo they fuflayned abufes, and Sebaffian Fernandus was vied igno- Caulis.

miniously by the calumnies of their quarrelsome neighbours, and sentence of a partiall Judge,

which caused two Servants to bee whipped vnheard, and Fernandus to stand as in a Pillorie, with Pillorie board, his head in a board an ell and halfe square, therein a hole fitted for the necke, to bee opened and shut; so that a man cannot put his hand to his mouth: and this for footh for beating the Bachellors. 50 This was written as the cause of his punishment. Hee afterwards sought the lesjuites fauour, 2shamed of his fact, inuited them, and set up an Edict for their safetie. Fernandus was sent herevpon to Riem, and Catanem continued alone without any Father, till the yeere 1597, and tell ficke : then going to Amaeao (Father lobn Aroccia was fent in his place) hee returned with Fa- Aroccia and ther Nicholas Longobard a Sucilian. Father Matthew was appointed superiour of the China million by the Vittor Valignanus, without subjection to the Rector of Amacao. To him precious

Father Matthew minding to trie all meanes to peerce to the Court, assayed Chiengan in vaine, who feared to raile any fuspicion of himselfe. Hearing therefore that Guan (which had as you 60 heard) visited the house of Xaucee, in his way to Hainan, was thence called by the King to Nanheard) vilted the house of Xaucce, in his way to Hainan, was thence called by the King to Nan-quin to bee President of the first Connects, called Li Pa, that is, the Connects of Magnifestes: in his the Connects of the first Connects of the f way at Nancian they wilted him with a prefent, (in which nothing 10 pleased him as the trigone Glasse) and tooke opportunitie to signifie to him, their desire of presenting the King with Maichaut. some European rarities. Hee approued thereof and sayd, they should not onely goe with him to

watches were fent, and Images with other things, which might further their China proceedings,

the Portugals of Amacao continuing their liberalitie herein.

Calomant Converse names in Bap-A480 1 508.

340

Vice-roy of Nanquin, aloucr of Geographie.

Honour to an

Chappell.

Chian or Duian Sec Polo Jup.90 River of Nanaxia: one cur from it for Pe-Yellow River fee the Map.

"Such coniectures as this Pinto of this

crifice to the

Nanauin.but to Peanin also; whither within one moneth of his comming hee was to goe. Ricius with Cataness attend him (leaving two of the company at Nancian) with two brethrense the company, Seb. Fernandus, and Emanuel Pererius, of China parentage in Amacao: who of their God-fathers take vivally both Christian name and Sir-name, ving also their Ching name in dealing with Chinos. They fet foorth from Nancies on Midfummer day, 1598. and when they were come to Nanguin they found all full of feare, by reason of the Iaponian wave in Ca. rai, to that none durit give vs encertaynment, grieuous Proclamations having lately forbidden to receiue men any way suspicious, by occasion of Ispenian Spyes taken. Euen the President himfelfe, feared to bee author in fo troublefome time of bringing Strangers: and Ricius when he visited him, vied his Gestatorie seate. They gaue eight pieces of Gold to a cunning Clerketo in China brings write their Petition (fo deare doe Learned men there prize their labour) which when they game the Chancellour (which fends Petitions from Nanquin to the King) hee would not meddle with it, but put it off to the President, that heeshould carrie them with him to Pequin. He being to bee there to gratulate the King at his Birth day, in name of the fixe Tribunals or Counfels, fent his goods by water and the lefuites with them, but went himfelte by land, When this President came to Nanguin, other Magistrates visited him with presents after the

manner, and one the Vice-roy of that Prouince with a Map of Richa his invention, concealing the name of the Author in a new impression; which hee shewed to Ricius, who soone knew and challenged his owne. This the President intimated, that the Author was going with him to Peauin. Hee presently fends the Captayne of the Souldiers, to desire the President that he might to haue fight of a man whom hee fo mich admired; fending withall a Chayre, and Porters with Horses also. For the Vice-roy of Nanquin resideth not in Nanquin, because in that High Court are higher Magistrates, which would seeme to eclipse his Greatnesse. So Catanem went with the Ship, Ricius to the Vice-roy, whom hee falted with European gifts. He flaved with him ten dayes, fo great defire he had to conferre with him. And when hee shewed him the Image of Christ, he would not take view of it there, but would first ascend to a neate Chappell which he had on the top of his House, therein after the rites of their Learned, to worship Heauen; with three doores to it, from the South, East, and West : about it round was a Gallerie diffinguished and cancelled. There he caused an Altar to bee erected, and thereon Wax-lights and Incense to be fired; and then the Image being fet thereon, hee came in his most sumptuous attire and did worship foure times, after their accustomed rites : after which hee would not stand before it but besides it, to take view, which see did a good space. After him, his familie did likewise : and euery day they reiterated the fame, one also being appointed to keepe perpetual Odours burning before it. Hee brought other Magistrates also to fee the same : and when he might not detayne the Father longer, he fent him away with great weight of Siluer, which came fitting to their necessitie. Hee gaue aduise also touching their designe, and told them of that frustrate successe which followed. He went with him to the River, and fent one with him till he had overtaken his companion. The Chinon call that River langu-chian, Chian fignifying the greatest River : Qther Rivers they call Cho.

That River of Nanquin which I called (Yamfu or) I anfu, the some of the Sea, goeth Northward to Nanguin, and then returning fomewhat Southward, runneth into the Sea with great force : fortie myles from which it palleth by Nanquin. And that from hence to Peanin there might bee passage by Rivers, the Kings of China have derived a large Channell from this to another River, called the Tellow River, fuch being the colour of that troubled water. This is the other famous River of that Kingdome, in greatnesse and note, which ariseth without the Kingdome to the West, out of the Hill Cunlun, conjectured * to bee the same whence Ganges ariseth, or one neere to it. Where it first breakes foorth, it maketh a Lake which they call of the Con-Stellations : thence it pierceth into the borders of China in Sciens, the most Westerly Prouince, Lake feeme ill and goeth out againe out of the Northerne walls into the Tartars Countries; after which it returneth to the South, and that Prouince whence it had come, and washeth another Prouince na- 10 Lake of Conflet. med Sciansi, and another named Honan: then turneth into the East and entreth the Easterne Ocean, not farre from the Sonne of the Sea. This River against their lawes for Strangers, entreth China from Barbarous Regions, and as in reuenge of their malice to Strangers, often ouer-floweth great part of the Kingdome, and shifteth his Channell being full of Sands which it mooneth. . Certayne Off cers or Magistrates defigned doe sacrifice thereto, or to the Spirit of it (for they set Spirits ouer divers things) with many rites : and they fayne that it cleeres the troubled waters, but once in one thousand yeeres; whence it is properbiall of a fild-feene thing, When the yellow Riuer Shall bee cleered. They that sayle therein, must therefore keepe the water many dayes till it fetleth, the third pare prouing myre and fand. Before the ingrelle and egreffe of this River, are Channels which give passage to Ships that carry provision to Pequin. Those Ships are layd to 10000. Ships of bee ten thouland, fent onely out of five Provinces, Chanfe, Ceshian, Nanchin, Vanam, and Scianthe Kingstor tum. For these Prouinces pay their yeerly tribute in Rice and Corne, the other ten in Silver-Sue Provinces Belides thefe, there paffe innumerable Ships of Magifrates and of private Merchanis : but priuate men are forbidden to goe out of the Heanfu into those lette Rivers (those onely passe which

dwell within such Rivers to the North) left the multitude of Ships should hinder the passage, or bee able to doe harme to Pequin. Yet is there such store of Ships notwithstanding, that they are forced to flay sometimes divers dayes, one hindring another, especially at some seasons when water is learce, for remedie whereof, they have tockes and flood-gates, which opened make water from one to another of them, with great labour and tedious language. The croftoneffe of winder and labours of drawing with ropes, I need not mention. Some thips are our whelmed at the o- Cranes to pening of those lockes. They have woodden Engines on the bankes to draw the ships of Manie draw thins. strates, at the Kings cost, against the streame all the way. And in fitting this River to Naniga, Tempessions trates, at the names took against the feare of the Sea and Pyrats; have made them take this courfe rate on the In rather then that by Sea.

In all this way, many Cities most worthy note appeare, of the Protinces Naugnin, Scian- Pine, tum. Pequin, and besides the Cities there are so many Townes, Villages, Houses on the bankes that all the way may be fayd to bee inhabited; fo that the Saylers no where want to furnish themselues with Corne, Rice, Fish, Flesh, Fruits, Hearbs, Wine and the like, at a very cheape rate. By the same River, Wood, Timber, Boards, Pillars (for the Chinos make reckoning Timbers for onely of those of wood) are carryed for the Kings workes : especially, then when the Kings the Kings builonely of thole of wood) are carryed for the samps worked a specialty, their which the samps dings.

Palace had beene on fire, which confirmed two parts of three thereof. In all the Iourney, ours Two thirds of found great rankes of Timber-trees tyed together, and of other wood, which many thous the Kings fands of men drew with huge toyle, and fearcely could get forwards fine or fixe myles in a day, house burnt by 20 and from the Prouince Sufeum, which is furthest from the Court, such Timber-trees were in Lightning. going vp, two or sometimes three yeers space : whence every pillar made of them prodigiously arose each to three thousand pieces of Gold : and of those Timber-rankes they encountred one. feeming longer then the rest, which was esteemed to reach two myles in length. The Bricks alfo (which the Chinese preferre before Stone) for the Kings Palace, were carryed this way fifteen Bricks prefers hundred myles, and many Ships had no other vie, so many as might feeme sufficient, not for a red to fione. Palace but a great Citie. Out of the Southerne Provinces, are yearely fent those things which in the more barren Prouinces of Peguin are wanting ; as Fruits, Fish, Rice, Silkes, Cloather and other things : and a day is fet them, at which if they bee not there, they incurre grieuous penalties. Of the Ships called Horfer, the Kings Eunuches haue command. By this River Swiffer thips 30 they lay le almost onely when the Rivers swell ones their bankes, peraduenture by the melting called He fer. of the Snowes from the Hills whence they spring. By the heate in that lourney of a moneth, Heat and colds and fometimes two moneths, the viands which they carrie, are often corrupted before they

come to Pequin, for which cause they coole them with Ice, and in all those wayes much Ice is preserved for that purpose, and distributed to the passengers, and so all things are carried fresh

The Eunuches of those Ships, sell emptie roomes to the Passengers for their gayne : for the Chinois thinke it aglory to fend that which goeth to the King in many thips, & not to give them their full lading, which is also profitable for that sterilitie of Peguin, Merchants by these conuenient fraights making nothing to want there where nothing growes. Ours hared a roome in 40 like manner for their eafe. By reason of the great hear they all fell ticke, yet by Gods helpe recouered. When they were to passe out of the River, in the Province of Sciantum, they met with a hand-made River, which runnes out neere Pegain, to the Tower Tienfin. Another River Hand-made River, which runnes out neere Pegain, to the Tower Tienfin. from Pequin or rather from Tarteria, meetes it, and runnes together with it into the Sea, or into that Bay, betwix: Corai and China, after they have runne together one day. In this Tower there was a new Vice-roy extraordinary, by reason of that invasion of Coras from Japon. Hee They come to prouided a huge Fleet for defence of Coras, by which meanes that whole River was full of Ships Projuin. of warre and militarie tumult. Ours went thorow the thickest of them without let, and at length came to the Port or Banke rather of Pequin, which banke is a dayes journey from the walls of Pequin. And although by Artthey have made a huge Channell to the walls, yet left it 50 should bee filled with multitude of Ships, they suffer none but the Kings burthens to goe that way, the others being carryed by Carts, Beatls, and Porters. They came to Pegnin on a festivali day, the Eeuen of the Virgins Nativitie.

The chiefe Mart Townes in this way were lameben in Nanquin Pronince, in thirtie two loweled Hoofe. degrees thirtie minutes. Hosingen in thirtie foure not all io much; Sincen in thirtie foure degon, Sincen Hosingen, Sincen grees thirtie minutes. In Sciantum Prouince Zinim in thirtie flue degrees fortie minutes. Lincin Zinim livin, in thirtie feuen degrees fortie minutes. In Pequin Province Tiencin in thirtie nine degrees thirtie minutes. Pequin in fortie large. They are deceived which elevate it to fiftie. Now from Canton (which is two dayes from Amação) are of China furlongs (fine of which make a mile, and fifteene a league) by River to Nanbium, one thousand one hundred and seventie. Thence to Nan- Length of the 6C cian eleuen hundred and twentie. From that to Nanquin, one thousand foure hundred and fortie, way. And thence to Pequin three thousand three hundred thirtie fine, in all seven thousand fixtie fine:

which makes of miles, one thousand foure hundred and thirteene.

bed,compared The walls.

Watshand Palice.

Streets.

All coe and ride veiled.

Commoditie

Booke of Pe-

Sec Pala fat. 88.

China, Cathay.

cambalu the great Tartar of the North.

Coozening Merchant.

China Lan-

The gain is fituated in the Northerne border about one hundred miles from the wall against the Tartars. Nanquin exceeds it in greatnelle, composition of the Streets, hugeneffe of Bull. ned, compared with Nanquin. dungs, and Munitions: but Paquin exceedeth it in multitude of Inhabitants, and of Maguirates. To the South it is compassed with two walls high and strong, so broad that twelve Hories may eafily runne abreft oin the breadth without hindering one the other. They are made of Bricket fane that on the foot it stands all on huge stones, the midle of the wall is filled with Earth the height farre xceeds thole in Europe. To the North is but one wall. On these walls by niche is kept as vigilant watch as if it were time of warre: in the day Eunuches guard the gates in rather exact Tributes, which is not done in other Cities.

The Kings Palace rifeth within the inner Southerne wall, neere the City gates and extends to 10 the Northerne walls, feeming to take vp the whole Citie: the rest of the Citie running forthern both fides: It is forme-what narrower then the Palace of Nanquin, but more goodly and glorious that feeming by the Kings absence, as a carkaffe without soule. Few of the Streets are panel with Bricke or Stone, so that in Winter dirt, and dust in Summer, are very offensive; and because it raineth there seldome, the ground is all crumbled into dust, and if any windblow, itenters every Roome. To prevent which they have brought in accordance, that no man of whatfor euer ranke goeth on foot or rideth without a Veile or Bonnet hanging to his breft, of that fubtiltie that he may see, and yet the dust not annoy him: which also hath another commoditie that he may goe any whither vnfeene, fo freed from innumerable redious falorations, and also be foaresattendance and cost. For to ride is not magnificent enough with the Chinois, and to bee 10 carried in their Seats is coffly, with Attendants especially; and in that time of Warre it fixted with ours to paffe vnknowne, being Strangers,

Muletters flood at the Palace, and City gates, and in every Street to let Mules, themfelues alforattending the Hirers whether they would in the City; which leading the beafts by the bridle, in that frequencie made way, being also skilfull of the wayes, knowing most of the great mens Houses: all at a reasonable rate. There is a Booke also which truly relateth all the Streets, Lanes, Regions of the City: Porters alfo with Seats to carrie Men, and Horfes are every-where found, but dearer then at Nanquin, or other places.

All things are to bee had in abundance, but brought thither and therefore dearer. Wood is scarce, but supplied with Mine-coles (we call them Sea-cole) necessary to that Region, cold be- 10 yond what the Climate viually exacteth : their Beds are fo made with Brick-workes, that they by a new kind of Stones admit the heate of those Coles : a thing vivall in all those Northerne Regions. These Northerne Chinese are some-what more dull, but better Souldiers then theother. Here they learned that this Kingdome is Cataio, and the King of China the great Can, and Peaun Cambalu.

For the nine Kingdomes (of Mangi) are those Southerly Provinces which are under the great River lansuchian, and fixe vpon it make vp the fifteene, so great that some one of them is as great as all Italy. Anno 1608, whiles we write, it is fortie yeares fince two Turkes or Moores out of Arabia brought to China a Lion (a beaft feldome here feene) by Land, which had an Office given by the King to them and theirs, to keepe the Lion, and that they should carry no 49 Tales thence: They in conference called this Kingdome great Catan, and this City Cambalu the like we heard of others which had comne from Persia. The Chinois also have heard of that name, and still call the Tartars Lu, and the North parts Pa and Pe: to which Can the Tartarian Title added eafily makes Canpalu or Cambalu with others; for the Chinois seldome vse B. and Marco Polo comming in with the Tartars called it by their name. And at this time without the walls of China is found no Catay. The Portugals called it China, borrowing the name as may be supposed from the Stamites, and hence Cosmographers made them two Kingdomes. But Goez his lourney by Land to Catay flath taken away all scruple.

To returne to ours now come to Pequin, the Prefident gaue them entertainment, and procured an Eunuch to undertake the bufineffe for the Presents, which were a Clocke, two Pictures, two 50 Trigone-glasses and a Bell : all pleased the Eunuch, but his minde ranne more on making Silver of Quick-filter, which he had heard they could doe, and which would bee more gratefull to the King. And when he faw that would not be undertaken, neither would he undertake to acquaint the King, in this time of Corayan Wartes; and ours also were taken for laponians, or necre vnto them, they not knowing how by true names to distinguish Nations. The President also began to be fearefull and purposed to carry them backe with him to Nanquin. Yet they staid a moneth after him (he being at a certaine day by Law to depart) and when they had tryed all wayes in vaine, nonedaring to acknowledge Strangers, they returned to Nanquin. They had a Bill of Exchange from Amacao to take vp money at Pequin, but the Merchant had plaid the Merchant and Chinese too, none such there to be found. They hired a ship at an easie rate for their returne 60 (because they governoty) but not easie in this respect that the Owners pouertie made the lourney tedious for what of helpes. This benefit they made of this lourney to learne the Language guage and Ac- better, making a Dictionary, observing their Accents with Points deuted; (that speech constfting wholly of Monofyllables, the want of skill in those Accents had caused that they neither

CHAP. S. S. 6. Frozen Rivers, Succu wonders, One wheeled Coach.

did nor were vinleritood) Cataneus skill in Mulicke helping to diftinguish those founds. What courte Ricius and he inflitted, that the Company still observe in their Writing.

All the Rivers in China vie to be frozen in the beginning of Winter, that thips cannot palie Rivers frozen. by water, and Carts by Land are fafer. They agreed that Father Matthew should goe by Land Rice goeth by with two Seruants, to try if he could fettle at Nanquin, the rest and the burthens to stay till the Land. River were thawed. He purposed also to goe to Succe whither Chimaifu had often inuited him. being his Countrey. Pailing thorow Scianum, he villed Sincen and Tameen famous Marts, and Sincen and paffing the River Tameen, at Chinchiamfu, the chiefe City of that Province hee entred into a Tameen. hand made River, by which is failed to Suces and to the chiefe Citie of Cectian Hances. This to River being Southerly and neere frozen over, is to narrow that multitudes of thippes cloy it fo fomtimes that they cannot palle forward or backward. He was forced therefore to go by another way, which is a Coach or Wagon of one wheele, to builded that one fitting in the midft, and Coach of one two on the fides, the Coach-man behind with woodden Leauers or Barres drives it forwards wheele. both furely and twiftly; that in flort time he came to Sween,

This Noble Mart is one of them whereof is the Prouerbe, That which is in Heauen the Seat of Sucus describe the Bleffed, that in Earth is named Suceu, and Hamceu: in iplendour, wealth, frequencie remarkable. It is built in a calme fresh-water River, and quite thorow one may goe, as in Venice, by Another Ve-Land or Water, but herein it excelleth Venice that the water is fresh. The streets and buildings nice. stand upon piles of Timber, the Wares from Amacae and other parts are most fold here. It hath 20 one gave to the Land, the other are water-wayes. The Bridges are innumerable, & Magnificents Ancient, but of one Arch in those narrow Chanels. Butter and White-meates are plentie, Rice, and the best Wine, which thence is carryed to Pequin and other parts. It is scarlly two dayes from the Sea. It is well fortified, the chiefe City of the Region, which hach eight Cities. One Huge Tribute. of the Princes held this, when the Tartars were expelled, against this Royall Race; whereupon it still payeth a great Tribute, to wit, the halfe of . Il things growing, (fo that some two whole Provinces pay leffe then this one Region to the King against whom it had stood out) it is full alfo awed with a frequent Garrison. Chintaife was then absent at Tanian a Neighbour City, Tonian, who received him with great humanitie. He abode in a Monasterie, and resigned his bed to his Mafter, who tired by trauell fell ficke, and was likely there to have dyed. Recovered by his care, 20 he gaue him a Triangle Glasse, which he put in a Silver case with Gold Chaines at the ends, and adorned it further with a Writing that it was a fragment of that matter whereof the Heavens confift. Glaffe glazed; One was faid to offer him fine hundred pieces of Gold loone after for it, which till Father Matthew had presented his to the King hee would not fell : after that hee fet a higher price

At the beginning of the China yeare, all are busied in sending Presents to their friends, feasts New years and falutations. They went to Cinchian to the p. blike Solemnitie where Chiutaifo was well day. knowne, and by his speech Father Matthew and from thence they went to Nanguin, in February , 1499. Before wee come thither wee will looke backe to our Canton lefuits.

ð. V Í.

Letters from Father Longobard and Taiso. Ricivs his entertaynment at Nanquin and Residence there. The Chinois unlearned Lear-

Ather Nicolas Longobard wrote vnto Claudius Aquaviros the Isfuiticall Generall, the Laurerof F.

or "arth of October, 15 9 8. that in the Kingdome of China there were then le-Niclambad:
un letuits difficulted into two Redistances and one Mulion: at Noucian, Father
Iobu Soerius and Iobumnes à Roccas; himselte and Francis Martines a Chineje as Secus. ceum in Canton Province, Ricci and Cataneus, and Sebastian Fernandez a Chinese, were then gone to Pequin: that China condition and conditions agreed to well with him, that hee feemed to bee in the midft of Italy : that much respect had accrewed to them in concert of the Chinois together, with that Habit of their Learned, which they had taken, the Bonzi and their Habit effecmed base alike. He also much commends Thasso or Taiso, (Chustaiso before mentioned) who china Learmuch euery-where commended the Iciuits and their Learning, as much exceeding what euer ning.

This comparihadbeene taught in China. And truly, faith he, the Chinois Learning exceedeth not the Science in with that of the Romanes in the time of Cicero.

60 They are much exercised in a kind of writing and speaking briefe and pithic Sentences: their manes seemen Bookes express well Ethickes and Politickes, but are rude in Natural Philosophie. When I had path paner she belt, there being the best of Heathen Reme; Varto, and Chero, and Virgit, as the Romane Trium viti for Learning, believe, SALS.

at Nanguin.

thought the whole world.

CH AP S. S. G. Long Sabbaths. China Precepts. Fire-workes. Learning.

first Table, the Chinois, especially the learned are Atheists, little regarding Idols, whereof their

Houses and Temples are full; little minding the re wards or punishments of the life to come, or

the China splendor and politic. He writes for Labourers, Bookes, Images, and Pictures, for con-

Corai and Quabacondono was dead, which had so terrified that vowarlike Nation. He heard that

they had heard of his going to Pequin, and that the Corai warre was the frustrating of his de-

fignes in that vnfcasonable time. The Prefident was verie glad of his comming, and exhorted

him to buy a house there, and sends two of his followers to looke out for one. Scarlly had he

that which without wonder cannot be beholden, the Nanquiners herein exceeding as may be

When it was reported that the Prefident had vifited him, all the Maiestic of Magistrates did

the like, yes some whom he had not visited. The President of the Court of Criminall Canses, and

and their number; the fixed poliure of the Starres, the Planets wandrings, the eleuation and

daies, without the Tropikes Geographicall Maps in plano, and Globes, Meridians, Parallels,

Degrees, the Line, Tropikes, Poles, Zones, Spheres, Sun-dialls, they had not at all vinderstood,

with other points of European learning. A Doctor of theirs confessed himselfe ashamed; For,

laid hee, you may thinke of me as wee doe of the Tattars and barbarous out-lawes; for you begin where

mee end (which hee spake of the studie of eloquence, which takes up our childhood, their

whole life.) They numbred flue Elements, Metall, Wood, Fire, Water, Earlb, one of which they

whole me.) any number and entertains, overall, recon, e new mer, for one, because they see

and Chiutaifo gotten home to their lodging, when the Prefident followeth to vifit them, which

the foules immortalitie, which yet are easily found in their bookes touching the punishments

at least of Holy Pao (so they call God) in Hell. Of rewards of bleffednesse there is not such euidence, as Thus o affirmed. And although many difficulties happened to ours in the Bonzian habite, yet is it now fare otherwise. As for Canton Province, the Mandarines which come this Cantoning way, aske vs why we stay amongst these Mangines, that is, Rusticks and Barbarians: We must, Mangines, fav they, leave the Barke and pierce to the pith and marrow of the Kingdome, if we would fee

folation of new Connects: the Ethnicks worship that of the Virgin, and call her Sein mm nian Bleffed Virgin nian, that is, holy Mother, and Queene of Queenes: and ends with imploring the patronage honoured,

and intercession of all the heavenly Quire, specially of the blessed Virgin, the Apostles, the An-20 gels guardians of China, to obtaine of the holy Trinitie happy successet to their endeuours. &c. But wee will return to our best acquainted in China, Ricius, whom we left newly arrived

The case was now altered at Nanquin, they went on soot without impediment to their lodg- Hanquin. ing, which was in a huge Monastery, called Cingbenfu, in which is great refort of guests which Cingos a there hire lodgings, being built in the centre of the Citie. The Inponians were now beaten from Breat Abbie.

hee did with the folemnest Rites. And when they were fet in the Hall, the Abbot came to offer The President

hee did with the folement Rues. And when they were teen the crain, the Abbot came to but a the atoms them the worted potion, kneeling to all three (to the Prefident hee was bound as fupreme go. (apreme go urmour of Temples) and the Prefident invited the Father to fpend two or three dates in his urmour of Temples). house, to see the Fire-workes, which that full Moone, the first of the yeere would be to bee Full Moone feene, which strange deuces of lights that and the following nights; which he did and beheld freeworkes.

the Prefident of the Treasury (which is the second Tribunall) came with rices & gifts, as also did others ; yea hee which a little after was the High Colao at Pequin, which all viged him to buy a house; and he now went thorow all Streets and Palaces without gainefaying (which he knew from a vision hee before had had thereof) and procured a house which the President helped to furnish. So much admiration and respect had the opinion of European science acquired to him, these being to the China wits baits for the Gospels fishing. Now first did they he are that the Earth was round (for they conceited the Heauen round and the Earth square) that the Centre drew all heavie things to it, that the Vniverse was inhabited round, that there were Antipodes, that the Earths interpolition caused the Moones eclipse (some saying that the Moon Mathemaukes Antipotes, that the Europe and azeled or amazed; others that there was a hole in the Sunne, againft bins to the Sunne was dazeled or amazed; others that there was a hole in the Sunne, againft Cop. II. so which the Moone opposed loft her light) that the Sunne was greater then the Earth; and that the Starres alfo, this was out of measure paradoxicall: the like was the foliditie of the Orbes,

depression of the Pole according to the various Climates; and likewise the inequalitie of the

it not, placing awacuum or emptinesse where wee place the sire : as incredible it was that the first, practing and the highest, and that Comers and Exhalations were therewith fired. Father Harrin Col-Matthew writ a booke of the Elements in their language much applauded, and often by ledge in them reprinted. Divers became his Schollars; one sent from his Master in Hanlin Colledge in Legin.

I tely runne thorow two of their Bookes, which they efteene as their Metaphyfikes, or fifth Legyranne chorow (wo of their books, which may proficence; whenas I found therein no more difficulty then in Tully, or Titus Lining. They lay, none but the Chinois can understand them, Father Ricci vieth to adde none better then the Europeans. A Letter of Taifs to Revi them, rather neer viern to adde tome better the bush fand at the " fide to learne, de fid. · Thaifes Lethee audent thus interioed. I dated Jounger Drouge method in our place to interior, ase fub-mus my bead to the ground, and exhibite bonour and restrence to the clair Brother, Mafter and Father mit my useas is the ground, and a course something of the most chaif flowers of the groat Law, and caster Matthew Ricci, a famous Peere, and Master of the most chaif flowers of the groat Law, and cast

topersours and downe my selfe at the feet of his Seat and Chaire. The Letter followeth. wite not in After our departing (it being foure yeeres fince fight of each other) there hash not beene a derin After our departing (it being four e peeres junes pipes of cases over sever severe a any m which I have not fet before unine eyes the excellent vertue of your Worship. I game two sever fince to to but the name Sciauchin, my (ountreyman, a Merchant, Letter: to your Worthp, thereby to learne where and whee it for the pro-SCHROTTIN, my construence of the control of the control to your magnificent hands, Go. Prime I west noune (I). " This (as to fit This (at 16 ft on your Worldon) faid it must goe into the North parts, if it would behald the filendour and magniatthe feat with freeze of this Kingdome, that my Country bad nothing fingular, that Nanquin Court was transfer the level lig. I seeme of two any more than this Promine was it may for dwelling, because there were leaned men in it of excellent vertue, and of a true and folid spirit to receive the Law gathering together those things which your Worship taught mee, I made a Booke, and exhibited it to the their firring or Society of learned men, of which there was none which did not admire and subscribe, saying, your time the fide in Lefor ma Scingm, that is, a Saint of these times. Those things which I have added happ may be errore. jup was Scingus, tons us, a source of surfer sounder and higher learning: and therefore have fent my feruen 20 ons, and I fewe left they court addit its founder and higher learning: and therefore have fent my feruen 20 Secto. Out, and 1 per cuts very sources of the section of the sect to blot out the falle, to illustrate the observe, writing all in another Booke, and sending it by the same fernant in few dayes , because I would presently commit it to the Press, that your Worston searning greateft title ferson in fam agres, seemye i woma presents; commit a to the Freye, that your writing tearning might be known thought be World. In these places are of greatest recomming the Books of Hothu, Co-scut, Pequa, Queuscieu, Thaiquitu, and other like, which have written of a Point, Line, Extremite, of honour aand Thicknesse. All these learned make of a Line a Circle : but according to your Worthips teaching, of a

ting a noty birth, greatest Line is made the termination of a Circle, and a Circle confifts therein. From which principles the conbirth, greatest clusions brought of Thaiquu, that is, of God, doe farre exceed the Commentaries of all our learned teaming uses the men. And they are enough to illustrate a thousand observation of antiquatio, which hitherto have not beaue pierced. This one thing affeilts mee, that my writing and file is meane and abielt, and most onfit to to illustrace and cularge the most excellent concests of its mind. Means while I much long, and as it

is the continue of the fourth Moone, and the fourt and to the special of the fourth Moone, and the fourth of the fourth Moone, and the fourth and the continue of the fourth Moone, and the fourth and the fourth of the fourth Moone, and the fourth and the special of the Raigne of Vanlia. Subscribed; Thailo on the continue of the fourth of the fourth of the Raigne of Vanlia. Subscribed; Thailo on the continue of the fourth of the fourt

Lombard proceedeth in his Letter, and sheweth the commodiousnesse of one King which releth all, of one Mandarine Tongue, of the common industrie and cheapnesse of provisions (not as in the pouertie of Ispon, where the worke-mens maintenance must come from other parts)

all fitting to bring in the Gospell. There are, sayth he, almost infinite houses of Bonzi maintayned by the King, besides gifts which they receive of others which yet repose no great confidence in Idols: what would these doe if they beleeved to receive a hundred for one, and eternall life? 40 Their composition of bodie, complexion, condition, rites; no vse of weapons, not so much as a Knife carried (but by Souldiers in Garrison, not in the way or at home) their habite long, and anciently vied, with their hands alway hidden in their long fleeurs. except in vie of their fanne, which all, even the meanest carrie with them; their quarrels, if any happen in the vulgar, ended in a few boxes or brawles; their feemely behausour equall to the European; yea, in some Valuerfities in things to the Religious there; their studious nesses of learning the onely foundation of dignitie Vanuermees in and greatnesse, as many Athens there as great Cities, each having a Schoole or Vniversitie with-Professors and out mixture of other Regions) their politike and morall Rules and Lawes; all these might be furtherances to the Gospell. Their tenacitie also of their owne customes and jelousie of Strangers, might better secure them from Heresies. Hee commends also their worker of Piety, and 50 Charity, Almes, Hospitals for poore, voluntary chastisements of the bodie to subdue the affe-Ctions, as fastings (in which they abstaine from Flesh , Fish , Milke , and Egges , but eate other things as oft and as much as they will) liberties and gifts by Magistrates to Widowes which mansprinate fludies, and the contaying themselves from second marriages; triall of a mans selfe in all his actions com-Cities publike mended in their Bookes, especially of those things which other men cannot know; and herevpon the liking of a folicary and contemplatine life in the Country, and refforing themselves to the first state, as they say, wherein the Heauen created them; for which purpose are congregations of learned men, together in Villages addicted to contemplation, and fleeing publike Offices (as the ancient Fathers had their conferences in woody and mountainous places) in which also their women are as forward as the men, many of them liuing in Nunneries, governed 69 by an Abbesse: and all China women line so enclosed, as if their owne houses were Cloisters:

These he commends in them, as also that of all vertues they give the first place to Obedience to

Parents as in which confifts a mans perfection. And that no man may be ignorant of his duty, if they cannot reade (of which there are but few) they have a short Summe (or Catechisme)

for the Gospel China Mona. feries.

was their Can-

now Ricins. Probabilities

rer. Forheir

are not in Chima: bu: for taking degrees as in our Vnimansprinate haue fomerefemblance. Many things in which the leswites and

Bonzi-dreames. Bad Mathematicians. Quocum Nobles. LIB. II 346 Pequin (the chiefe place for China learning, to be admitted into, which is a great dignitie,) Hee was very wittie, and without any Mafter attained the first booke of Euclide, and exacted of Witofa Father Matthew Geometricall demonstrations. And when hee added some things of Christian Chief. nitie, you need not laith he, confute that Idolatrous Sect, it is enough to teach the Mathema. Bonzis datages tikes. For these Bonzis would also be Philosophers and Mathematicians. They faid the Sunne hid himselfe by night behinde a Hill called Siumi, rooted in the Sea foure and twentie miles deere. And for the eclipses, they faid that the God Holochan caused that of the Sun courting Eclipies. it with his right hand, and that of the Moone with his left, Not at Pegain alone, but at Nanguin also is a Colledge of China Mathematicians of hetter Colledge of building then Aftrologicall Science. They do nothing but bring their Almanacks to the rules to of the ancients, when they mif-reckoned, they afcribed it to irregularitie of nature, not theirs. deuising some prodigious euent to follow. These at first were afraide that Father Matthew would have deprined them of their dignitie; and freed of that feare, they visited him friendly, and he them, where hee faw a strange fight. There is an high Mountaine, on the top whereof is an open Plaine or Floore fit to contemplate the Starres. In this open space one enery night is appointed to watch, and obserue if any Comets or other alterations be in the skie, thereof to Mathematicall give the King notice, and what it portends. In this place, of cast mettallarc Mathematicall Intiruments, admirable for their greatnesse and neatnesse, the like whereof wee have not feenein huge Instruments. Europe. They have continued there in all chance and change of weather necret wo hundred and A Globe. fiftie yeeres without demage. Of them were foure greater, the one a huge Globe diffinguished 20 by degrees with Meridians and Parallels, as great as three men can fadome; it flood on a huge Cube of braffe likewise, vpon his Axel-tree : in the Cube was a little doore, sufficient for it to paffe when need was. On the vtter superficies was nothing grauen, neither Stars, nor Regions, whereby it appeares that it was either unfinished, or purposely so left that it might serue both for a Celestiall and a Terrestriall Globe. The second was a huge Sphere, the Diameter where-A Sphere. of was a fadome; with Horizon and Poles, and in stead of Circles, certaine double chaines, the space betwirt them representing the Circles in our Spheres : all these were divided into three hundred and fixtie degrees, and a few minutes. In the middeft was a Globe of the Earth, but a certaine pipe hollowed like the barrell of a Peece, which might bee turned any way, and fet in A Diall any degree and cleuation for triall of the Starres very ar ificially. The third was a Diall two 30 fadoms high in a huge &long Marble fet to the North, with a channell about the table to hold water, whereby to trie if it flood plaine or no: the flile placed perpendicular, both it and the stone distributed into degrees : it seemes, for exact trials of the shadowes of Solstices and Equinoctialls. The fourth and greatest was an engine or instrument of three or foure huge Aftrolabes set one by another, each containing a Geometricall pace in a Diameter, with their Fiduciall line, or Halbilada, and Dioptra: one of them represented the aguator inclined to the South. another (which made a croffe with the former) to the North; another flood erected to the South perhaps for knowledge of the Verticall Circle, but turned about to flew any Verticall; all had the degrees marked with iron knots flanding forth, that they might bee knowne by feeling in the night. This Worke of Astrolabes was fet in a plaine floore of Marble alfo, with channels # The Chinais about. In cuery of these Instruments was expressed in China Characters what every thing figninumber 24. conficilations fied; the foure and twentie Constellations of the Zodiake, answering in the number doubled to our twelue Signes. There was in them this one errour, that they were fet in the fixe and thirtieth degree of the Pole elevated, whereas Nanguin Stands without all doubt in two and thirtie Thelike Inftruand a quarter of a degree. They seeme to have beene made to be placed somewhere else, and ments at Peplaced here by fome voskilfull Mathematician. Afterwards Father Matthew faw the like, or This time 2the fame Inftruments rather at Pequin, cast with the fame hand, at that time when the * Tartars ruled ouer the Chinois, by some expert of our sciences. The greatest Magistrate defired Father Matthew to reuise the Vniuerfall Map, which he had made in Canton Province, and make larger Commentaries, and hee would print it at publike 10 rity to Albacons cost, which he did, and with an elegant Proeme commended the Author of the worke. This

greeth with the time of Tamerlane; which giueth au boformer flory of him : belides the Chinois call the laft Tartar which ruled them Temor. Quecum, the Nobilitie of

mentarie in a booke, adorning the Authoralio with his praifes. Befides, the Prefidents of the fixe Tribunalls (equal except for the Kings prefence, in the government of their Province, to thefe of Pequin) hee had three other friends, yet vomentioned. There is a certaine hereditarie dignitie derived to the eldeft fonnes, from those Captaines which expelled the Tatters: they are called Quocum ; their posteritie are honoured by the King , most of all the eldest, which in processe of time haue growne into a numerous Family; and although they beare no publike office, except some militarie commands, yet haue they great dignitie and wealth and these onely doe truely relemble the Nobilitie of Europe. One head of this Family is at Nanquin, liuing in great pompe, with Palace, Furniture, Gardens, all I ke a King. He one day inuited Fa-Artificial rock, ther Matthem, and entertained him in the beit Garden in the Citie : in which , befides other pleasing rarities, he saw an artificiall Mount or Rocke of divers repolished Marbles, hollowed

was published and carried into all parts, and in other places reprinted. The Vice-Roy of

Cnicen Province printed it with another methode, making to every Kingdome a proper Com-

into Caues; it contained Chambers, Halls, Staires, Fish-ponds, Trees, and other things. Are wantoniling with Nature to engender pleasure; of pecially in time of heate to coole themselves in their studies or feasts with this Caue-retiring; which although it comprehended no great space of ground, yet would it aske the space of two or three houres time to wift all the parts, the egreffe being by another gate. This Nobleman was yong, and defired to fee fome things of Europe.

Another which became familiar with Father Matthew, was the Commander of all the Non- Captaine of quin Souldiers, which had also another great Office, salled Hen, who often vitted him, and be-the Cine Garcame his great friend, whole friendship gaue vs tecurity, to whom the watch and ward, and fecurity of the Citie belongeth. Befides, I will name the chiefe Eunuch, which hath great au- Chiefe Eu-

currity of the Little Betongetti. Denues, I will man the Chips and thoulands, who is Roler our much. To thority ouer the Nanquin Ednucks, whereof are numbred forms thoulands, who is Roler our much. thority ouer the military Mufters Anothendse the Kings Palace, and lath command of all the Citie gates, and oner the military Mufters Enunched together with the former Captaine, with other parts of authority, and expressent the same Nanagan. with great pompe. He was almost decrepit, and after the Eunichs fashion there, not so gender and when Ricins came to him, his Courtiers commanded him to give him a title which and wereth to Highneffe with vs. I explane it thus; when they i peake to the King, they wish to him ten Van, ven, file, thousand thousand yeeres of life in these three syllables, Van van sin, which is all one with the title 35 to the Ea.

to Mainfrie: to others in the Palace, the Queenes, or Children of the King, they with inferiour by ones Moof reasigne: coolings many and the Eunuchs are fo arrogant that they expect this then fand ever Danillo veres with, and to bee faluted on the knee. Father Matthew could not doe this fafely, left hee 20 should doe more to him then to the chiefe Magistrates; but hee had learned not to neglect in China their rites; and he being deafe, one that hollowed in his eare made up what the Father wanted. Hee gaue him a great gift, which he refuied, and denyed him the trigone Glaffe: yes this caused the other Eunuchs to honour him.

At that time lived in Nanguin one which had obtayned the first place in the declaration of A principal Doctors (which is a very great dignity) who lived here in this Country private, but an area Doctor, a efteeme of all. He had degenerated to become a Preacher of the three Chua Sects, and properly fed great knowledge of them, Hee had at his house a famous Votarie, or Boszi-Monke, who A Mandarine renouncing the publike Offices which he had borne, had flaured his head, and (which is rice, v. becomes a fuall in China) of a Learned Man, had become a Minister of the Idols, And because heavy as Bonni.

30 both learned in the China Sciences, and growne feasibly yeares old, he had acquired much farmed and many Disciples, professor of that new Sect which he dentied. These vinted Father Marthen, to the wonder of all ; that Literate-apostata confessed, the fruth of our Law, and preferated the Father with a Fanne with two elegant Epigrams therein. Two other vilited hims, was Epigrams, of which counterfeited himfelfe to have fixed three hundred yeares, whom the China Cristisles much followed, as doting on the studie of long life, the precepts whereof he read to his Scholers, Hee also boasted of Geomancy. The other was a Physician, and companion to the other reach blazing the others Science : and whiles both preferred the Father, some suspected that hee had lived some Ages (which they ye to affirme of Strangers, differing in countenance from them) and would not let it be knowne.

40 The Chinois have one day tolemne to Confusion the Prince of the Learned, in which they make confusion his a kind of Sacrifice to him, not as to their God, but their Master. They call it a Sacrifice, hoiday. but in larger extent of the word. Mulike was prepared against that day, at the triall whereof Father Result was present. The Priefts of the Learned salled Tanfus ordered the Mulike and Mulke of in the Kings Hall (or Temple rather) dedicated to the Lord of Heaven, this triall was made, China. The Priests came forth in precious vestures, as if they would facrifice, who after their wonted rites to the Prefilent, fell to their Musike; in which were small brasse Bells, Basons, other as it were Tabors, others of stone, stringed Instruments, Papes ; Organs blowed with the mouth, not with Bellowes; others refembled Beafts out of the hollow bellie yeclaing a found all thefe founded together with fuch discording discord as you may imagine; the Chinois themselves con-50 felling the concord and harmoniacall confent to bee lost; onely the Inftruments remayning from

That Temple was great and magnificent , built neere the Citie in a Pine-groue, companied Templeroyail, with walls twelue miles about. The wall of the Temple was of bricke, the other parts of time and magnin. ber: it is disided into fine Iles; the Pillars were round of huge timbers as great as two men could fathome, the height proportionable to that thicknesse; the roofe is excellently carried, and all gilded: and although it be two hundred yeerestince it was built, and the King relides not at Nanquin, nor facrificeth there, yet is is little decayed from the first iplendour. In the midst of the Temple is a more eminent place of most precious marble, in which is a double Throne,

both of marble; the one for the King when he fitteth to facrifice, the other is left for him to be 60 by, to whom the factifice is made. The Clouters without are beautified with most elegant windings, and left the Birds should defile all, the windowes are all netted with Iron wyers (which is vitiall thorow all the Palace :) all the gazes of the Temple are covered with Praile plates gilded, and wrought with neat Vilages of the same metall. Without the Temple were many Altars of red marble, which represented the Summe , Moone, Stattes , and Hills of Cines.

Lakes and Seas, intimating that that God which is there worshipped made the rest, which are placed without, left they might be worshipped for Deities. It is prohibited by grieuous penale ties, to cut the trees of that Groue, or any bough thereof, whence they are great and old. In the circuit of the Temple are many Cells, which are faid to have beene Baths for the Kings to wash in when they were to facrifice.

Iefuite habit.

The Father vied the Habit of the Learned (as is faid) of those especially which profess them. felues Preachers of the Law; the Habit modest, and the Cap not wnlike ours in Crosse fashional. fo. He confuted both the Sects of Idolaters, and commended that of the Learned, praying Confatius, which was rather filent, then would deutle any thing touching the next life, and taught good Rules for the Life, Family, and Republike. A great man flourished at Nangmin then (which in had some thousands of Disciples) in opinion of Vertue and Learning, and had set dayes in which to heare and to be heard enery moneth. Chintaife brought the Father, and this Father together, and in some reasoning Ricins wrung from him that some corruptions were in the Idoll Sects, which he followed not, holding that only (he fayd) which was good. It being a fathion that Learned men met in their Societies to conferre of Morall Vertues, in one of those meetings this man learnedly confuted Confuius, which another Magistrate tooke haynously, and creed out, it was intolerable that the Sect of Idols brought out of other Countreyes should bee preferred before Confining, whom the Learned Ricins also admireth, refelling the Idol-follies. Heap-

fwered, he had fooken with the man, but he was not yet well acquainted with China bufineffe. and he would instruct him better. Soone after he inuited him to a Feast (for the Chinois vivally 10 Conference or in fuel meetings determine Controuersies) and there hee met Sanboia famous Idol-Prieft. Learned Philosopher, Orator, Poet, and well skilled in others Sects also. When they were fet this Priest and the Father together, the Priest began shewing his desire to conferre of Religion, Ricins first asked what he thought of the first beginning of Heaven and Earth, and the Creatour of things whom we call the Lord of Heanen. Ideny not, fayd he, that there is fach an one be he hath no Majesty nor Deity, but I am equall to him, and so are all others. Canst thou (faith Ricins) make those things which he hath dones he granted. Make then such a Chaffing dish some flood before him) this, fayd the other, was an vinworthy demand. Thou (fayth he) art an Aftronomer, and makeft new Sunnes in thy minde when thou reasonest thereof. That, fayth Ricing, is but an Image or likenesse which the minde from things seene conceineth, as in resexion of a m Glaffe whereon the Sunne shineth, yet doth not the Glaffe created Sunne. The Hoast for feare of further quarrell parted them. At Dinner the Chinois disputed of a Question of bumanens ture, how it came bad (they want Logicke and cannot well diffinguish betwixe morall and neturall good, and neuer heard of originall finne) they discourfed thereof a whole houre : after which Ricius repeating what had beene fayd, entred into diffoute with Samboi, who laughed at his and their Reasons and answered all with a Fale of I know not what Floud, according to his Sect but he straitned him with Arguments, so that he and this Disputation grew famous. They conceine that God and the Creatures are all of one fubftance, and that God is as a great Soule of the Vniuerle; which opinion from the Idol-fects hath infected the Learned, Ricins writ a fummary of that point, which gaue men good fatisfaction, and his Law feemed not fo batharous as & they imagined.

Oppreffien. ftopped by anbe opened to preuent rob-

The Kings Treasure was exhault by the Corayan Warre, whereupon contrary to the Lawes Mines of Gold he caused the ancient Mines which were sayd to be stopped, to bee sought, and opened, and imposed new Tributes, that in all Provinces, Merchandizes should pay two of a hundreth: which had beene tolerable if gathered by Magnifrates; but his Eunuches, fent to every Province, without shame or mercie exacted on the people, and rayled a worse combustion then that of Coray. So many Impostors, Counterfeits, Theenes were enery-where : if a man dwelt in a good Houle, they would digge it up to fearch for a Myne, to force composition from the owner. Some whole Cities and Prouinces compounded with these Caterpillers to free themselves from their vexations; the money to gotten they gaue the King as taken out of their Mynes. This caused Dearth, 50 and in some, Commotion. The Magistrates petitioned the King against these abuses, but sweetnesse of gaine had not only stopped that eare, but procured grieuous penalties to those which withstood his Catch-poll-Eunuches, which by those punishments grew more insolent. Ours which wintered at Linein, happily escaped these Harpy-clutches, who with their Presents arriuing at Nanquin rejoyced to fee a Residence so prepared there. These Presents intended for the King, bred fuch an amazement in the beholders that others were ready to offer force to fee them. They still minding to present the King, (the weather now more cleare and peaceable) Cataneus went to Amacao; where was much rejoycing for these hopes, but soone quenched with forrow for loffe of their fhip which tradeth to Iapon, men and goods loft, on which ship all their Commerce dependeth. They found themselves therefore vnable to maintayne three Refs. 60 dences : the Iesuites Rector scraped all hee could for that purpose, and added a Watch and Image of the bleffed Virgin, and Trigone Glaffes; Houre-g affes and other Rarities to their

Father Diego Pantoia a Spanish Priestalso accompanyed Catanene to Nanguin, and thence

went with Ricius to Peguin, with Sebastian and Emanuell. Father John was called from Nancian to relide with Cataness at Nanquin. They went with an Bunuch then going to Pequin with fix Zinin. thips, who flewed them much kindnesse. In Zmin a City of the Prounce of Sciantum is a Viceroy which is at High Admirall ouer all the thips, whether they carry prouision or other things. toy wongstage, ring rammanage an normally, water tay, carry promote or other tinings, which gave kind entertay morn to Reigns, telling him at parting, Subai (that was Reigns his China name) Tallo defire to goe to Paradil; intimating that all his Heaten was not in earthly honours, but that the middled allo which the chine reached. Prefently with great pompe and ftate hee followed him en his thip and there viveed him with vivall Rites of Vrbanity and a rate net contowed mental up any investigate the contour and a first of violating and a Prefent, and won-fred made at the fight coft folder (effects they carryed for the King He feet as I go Officer allo to make him a readier way? Office Lees had made way to this Vice-toyes friendflip, who foone after killed himselse, hearing that voon some complaint of his Books, the King had Liciwkilleth commanded him to bee imprisoned and his Books to bee burned; preventing fo the study of his himselfe. Adversaries to put him to some shamefull death,

Amongst those Eunuches which the King had sent to oppresse the people, was one Mathan, Mathana great which dwelt at Linein, whale exactions had rayled the people and Souldiers into mutiny, which and bale Euburnthis Palace and killed his Servants, himfelte efcaping difguifed, but the Captine and Slave nuch of Conetouinesse no lesse then before. Our Eunuch addressed himselfe to him, but could not till Treacherie, the third time be admitted, because his Gitts were not answerable to the others appetite. Hee to make way for himselfe betrayed Ours to this Harpy, they not knowing it, faying, that in

20 one of his thips were thrangers with precious Gifts for the King, which he thewed closely to his Officers with their he might get the Kings fauour. The Gouernour which in that and the Neighbour Cities had great command was his great friend, of whom Ricins asked counfell ; he told him that now the Ennuches reigned, and they almost only were the Kings Counsellors, nor could the greate() Mag ifrates withfland their injuries. Yet the countenance of this Mag ifrate was a great helpe to him, this being the man whom of all the Gouernours he most feared; a man fowell deserving that his Cirizens erected to him a Temple, Image, and Inscription; who now al to both countenanced Ricins what he might, and game him the best aduice how to carry himfelie to this Eunuch, and perhaps but for him they had loft all and themfelies to. This Capon had Green and

felleto this municipal and perhaps our toginal tree man our alkana themisures to a une capon may creat and erected Palaces and Temples, and had built a dugs ship in which the King himselfe might have glorious ship, 30 styled; so many were the Cels, Chambers, Hals, and other commodious Buildings thereof; the Bytes; to many we to be carry, where keeping wood carryed with many Meanders, all filming with Vernish and gittering with Gold. In this ship was hee carryed to ours, where keeping meet him. He viewed and liked all, and downe on his knees to the Virgins Picture, promifed to procure her a place in the Balace. Ricins modefully refusing his feruice for them to the King, faying, fanny Magistraces of best ranke had violertaken that kindnesse; he smiled, faying, none of them could doe to much as he with the King : the King answeres my Petitions the same day, to them or late, or nothing. The Eunucla which brought ours was fent away, and all the Prefents put a board his thip, Hee carryed the letites with him to the Towre of Thienfin; whither hee went to fend Thienfin, thence the fix moneths Tribute to the King : he feafted them, Comedies, Rope-runners, Tum-

40 blers, Vaulters, and Mimicke Ape-men attending the cheare with such disports as they had nener seene in Europe. One cast three great Knines into the Ayre one after another, and catched china Players. them agains in their sheather: another lay on the ground, raysing his feete over his shoulders, and Feat worwith which hee toffed up and tumbled too and fro an Earthen Pitcher in such fort, as hardly kers. could bee done with the hands; the like hee did with a Drumme on a Table. A Comedie was acted only with gestures, of disguised Gyants in glorious habits; one from the Theatre pronouncing all their parts, A Boy danced admirably, and then as it were falling, layd his hands on the ground, and another Boy of Clay came forth, which ving his hands for feete, imitated all the prankes of the other, and fell to wreitle with the living Boy, as if both had beene alue.

prantees on the units, and the conviction with the thing thoy, as it does not need occur and over the while the will leave you special or steep, and now bring you for to another Alter, which basing to little while so transluted much, and tearned more of his Fellowers, feddenly fent into Europe thefe Relations not onworthy your view: which I base therefore examined with the Original Spanish, and the Latine Translation, and cut off some superstanties to give you more sull content and to prevent Repetitions, the rather because bee descenderb to many particularities which Ricius looking higher and knowing more, hath omitted.

Hh

CHAP.

349

Didacus or IA. cobus Pantoia.

CHAP. VI.

haue both in Spenifb printed lencia : and in Latine at Mentz 1607.

*This Booke I A Letter of Father DIEGO DE PANTOIA, * one of the Company of IESVS, to Father LVYS DE GVZMAN, Pronincial in the Prouince of Toledo; written in Paquin, which is the Court of the King of China, the ninth of March. the yeare 1602.

ð. IIII. "

Difficulties of entring China, their dwelling as Nanquin, going from thence to Paquin, with Presents for the King, troubles in the way by an Ennuch.



Ight Reserved Father in Christ, the peace of Christ bee with you. I thinke I doe not fatisfie the dutie which I owe vnto your Worship, for the love which you have 30 alway shewed vnto mee, and the Obligation wherein I am bound to so many most dearely beloued Fathers and Brethren of this Prouince, if being as I amin this great Kingdome of China, procuring the good of these Pagans, (whereumo it pleased our Lord to choose mee) I should not give you some briefe Relation of the things that concerne this our new Mission, and of some things also concerning the greatnesse of this Kindome, the Customes, Government and Policy thereof.

Colledge of

Being come, as heretofore I wrote to your Worthip, to Macao a City of the Portugals, adiovning to the firme Land of China, where there is a Colledge of our Company ; and there attending till the Perfecution, Tumults, and Warres of lapen, would permit ten or twelve Fathers of vs to passe thither, which stayed expecting sit oportunitie : when we were readie to de- 10 part, within few monether, it pleased our God to change my Lot, and Enterprize which I had before myne eyes, and to fend mee to enter into China, whereinto I entred in the end of the yeare of our Lord 1 coo. There were in this Miffion at this time, only five Fathers divided into three Houses. For though it be twentie yeeres since they first began to enter, yet the entrance of Strangers is so hard and so ftraitly forbidden, and their flate and persenterance is so difficult, that in all this time there never passed aboue five or fixe Fathers, and those which succeeded fince. though by little and little, did discouer the Country; But their entrance was by Realth and fecretly. Confidering that all passages were shut up, and that in all forme there was no man that could or durst presume to gue licence to preach the Gospell; we alwayes sought to get some ac-Meanes fought ceffe vato the King, either by way of Embaffage, or by way of Present, and Gifes, and to seeke so to carer thing, to obtay ne this in part, or in the whole, to this end and purpose.

Entrance into

Embaffage.

The Fathers alwayes fought to obtayne some Ambasage of the Pope, or of the Catholike King. But perceiuing they could not obtayne this, they procured it by way of gining a Prefent, not so much of precious things, for they had none of that kind, as of ftrange things never sene before in China. And having procured this for many yeares space, without having any means to obtayne it; the Diuine Prouidence ordayned one in the yeare of our Lord 1590. which was this : The Fathers being in Xauebeo, (a Residencie of the Prouince of Canton) there passed that way a great Mandarin, called by the King, to give him an Office in the Court, which among vis like vnto a President of one of the chiefest Councels, which had known the Fathers long time; and now feeing themselves with him, and signifying vnto him the desire which they had to got 50 to Paguin, to give a Prefent to the King, and that if hee would doe them the courtefie to carrie them along with him under his shadow and protection, they would alwayes remaune thankefull, and exceedingly bound to ferue him. After this and other motives which they prefented vnto him, did that follow which wrought most effect, which was a good Prefent, with hope of other things afterward, whereupon he shewed himselfe very tractable to grant their request, and to take them with him to Pagnin.

Being glad of this refolution, they prepared themselues for the Voyage, and tooke the things which they defined to give the King, which thereafter I will mention. It pleased God to bring them to Paquin, in the company of fo great a Mandarin, without the hinderance of any bodie. Being come to Pagnin they began fecretly to negotiate their bufineffe : because they durft not, 60 neither was the Mandarin that brought them willing that they should shew themselves abroad. But though they attempted all possible meanes, neither with gifts, nor any thing elfe, there was not any man that would meddle with this businesse, because it was a matter that concerned Strangers , confidering what might hereof happen vnto them. After they had spent certayne

CH AP. 6. S. I. Hage Garrison. Mandarins Houses. Deuils disturbe not Tesuis. 351

moneths, and faw they profited nothing, and fearing fome innovation, they determined to returne to their Relidencies from whence they came,

Having returned three hundred leagues, they came to the great Citie of Nanquin, which was the ancient Seat and Court of the Kings of China: and now (though the King reside not there) vet is it the most noble, great, strong, and beautifull of all this whole Kingdome, and retayneth her being the Royall Court, with all the same Offices which the Citie hath where the King refileth. They defired greatly to get an entrance into this City, because, as I haue faid, it is a fa-100000, Gare mous place, and hath fuch store of graue persons in it, thereby to make themselves knowne, and rison souldiers here to procure with more facilitie an entrance or accesse vnto the King. But it seemed a thing in Manquin. 10 impossible, because it is a City straitly guarded, especially for Strangers, for whose guard and Ritius Suth Watch it hath ordinarily aboue one hundred thouland Souldiers. And if they went about to the other get licence, it seemed impossible to obtayne the same of so many great Mandarins, as governed 60000 are so the same. But our Lord (to whom enery thing is abke possible) vouchsafed to comfort the Father Country thers for their travell and small fruit which they had reaped of their journey to Paquin: and by adiovning, or ther sor their traces and man rate was a superior the counfell of fome friends which they had there, and with the protection of the Manie and Sea guide the comments.

And carryed them to Paquin, which at that scason came vinto this City, they dwelt in Nanquin, and occupants or kinus might without the contradiction of any Mandarin, although all of them knew thereof: howbeit, as speak of the a very great mansaid, which afterward became our great friend, hee was readie to send to ap. or hary ato-

20 time abode in China.

a very great manners, which had long preliment the Fathers, which had long temperature preliment the Fathers, which had long temperature in the present the fathers. After they were purposed to remayne there, there was another difficulty to get leave to dwell some time and have an Hou'e within the wals. But the Divine Providence gave them a very sweet and while the Iseasse meane for all this, as here I will declare. The Mandarins line in this City in houses which Position warre are not their owns, but belonging to the Offices which they beare : and when one hath ended Continued. his Office, hee that succeedeth him, succeedeth him in his Hosses, which are all builded at the bouse are his Office, nee that inaccreacin man more contention in its course; within a set an number at the bouter are Kings coft. At this time a great Mandarus had builded one of these, wherein by his Office hee public, was to dwell! But when he had finished it, it pleased God, that he enjoyed it not: and hee sent House position. many Deuils to enter into it, as they did in deed, which with fearefull shapes did terrific those fessed. which dwelt in it, especially by night: and this continued so long a time, that all men left it, and none would dwell in it. As Father Matthew Riccio (who was the party which negotiated

this businesse, as the Procurator of all this Mission) went about to seeke to buy an House, by way of jest they asked him, whether he would buy an house fill of Deuils. The Father answered, that hee tooke it not for a jeft, but that if the house liked him, hee would not vary for that, for he ferued a God whom the Deuils feared and dreaded, and that trufting in his helpe he was nothing at all afraid of them, but that they did rather much feare him, because he was the Servant of fuch a Lord. They went to see the House, which presently liked him: and as they fold or men a Lord. They went to recture frome, which presently fixed minitand as they some if good cheepe becarle of the bad report that is had, in two words they agreed together; and the Mandaris that fold it was foglad, that he gave vs Patents to possesse the perpetually in China; testing Patent. a thing which in no place could be obtay ned of any other Manderin. Forth-with they went to forthese habi-

t, and at their comming in they bleffed it according to the Rite of the Holy Mother Charch; tation. and by the grace of God there was neuer dreame of any euill thing that troubled the same. All men looked what would become of this, and what successe they should have with the Deuils. And when they faw the great quietnesse, without any shew of Spirits, they were greatly alto-And when they say the great questions, without any niew or opines, they were greatly auto-nied, faying, that without doubt this was a great God, and that hee fought to dwell in that Fame of Ie-Houle, and that therefore he had commanded the Deuils to dwell there, and not to fuffer others function.

to enter therein; and that when he came they went their way. To this fo good beginning the progrelle from thence forward was answerable; for the grave Fame of their Mandarius valerifanding, together with the fame that they were Learned men, that they had Learning many Bookes, that they were men of a good life, and that they had fome things of their Countrey, which were neuer feene in China (as certayne Clocks with Wheeles, and Images in Oyle, Warches adand other prette things) all of them fetting feare apart, and other respects, came to wint the Faand outer precie times) and tourn recomb state apart, and outer respects, came to vincin a there in great efface, because they were the greatest Mandarines of all China, but with much have manitie, respect and courtess, with Presents of things to eate, and Banquets as they viewith

their equals. They were fo well pleafed with all that they faw and heard, that all of them became their great Friends and Patrones: and gaue fo good report of them, that all men fought to doe the like: and for continuance of their amity they came oftentimes to vific them, and oftentimes inuited them to their Palaces: and with this fame and honour of the grazell fort of people, times induced them to their Palaces; and with the rame and nonour of the grades of the part of the inferiour and bafer fort yield them with much reuerence, no man daring to doe; good vig.

This was the flate of things when it pleafed God to choose me for this Miffion, and when I annual true had three Refidences, one in the Province of Caston, another in the Province of Quasci, which is somewhat more within the Land, another in the Citie of Nangain, which is in the midit of the Kingdome, and three hundred leagues from Macco. I entred fectetly, as all is at the inner of the Angelong and a Licence of any Mandarm.) But my fectione continued

There letters.

but a while, as hereafter I will declare. I came at the first, without staying in any other House to Nanquin, where three Farhers of vs were foure moneths; Father Matthew Riccio our Superiour, Father Lazarus Catanio, and my felfe, and a Brother a Chinoss, one of the two which are received into this Mission, and every thing goeth well. But as in matter of strangers the Chinar

neaue for P4-quin granted. whom by right this matter appertayned, who frankly and freely offered vs Patents, Difpatches.

The particulars of the Gilded Drafor the fre-

Armes of Canten Prouince. which might be mistaken for the Kings Armes. They began

their journey

pathway of thipping.

Lincin.

are exceeding ferupulous, more then your Worship can beleeve, so there were many which frake of our abiding in Nanquin, confidering that now wee had three Houses in China. Wee beganne with much more earnestnesse to procure another better foundation, and to returne to Pagein more openly, and seeke accesse vnto the King. And because in Nangum there bee Mandaines to whom this belongeth, and some of them were our Friends, wee beganne to speake of this But it was not needfull to spend many words; for straight way we met with a Mandarin, to and whatfoeuer was needfull to accomplish this bufinesse. The promises of this Mandarin were not vaine : for when the time came that the River was vnfrozen, (which all the Winter is frozen ouer) and Barkes began to goe for Paquin, he performed his word faithfully, giving vs Patents and Paffe-ports needfull for the money; and befides,

Nanquin ouer- hee sent vs a Barke of the Kings to carry our Present and our owne things. Beeing glad of these good newes and dispatch, we consulted how we shoul I deale in certaine things which offered themselves in this businesse, and who should goe: There was no question but Father Marthen Riccio should be one, but who should be his companion : for whom they choose me, and the 20 Brother. We set our things in order, particularly those which were of the Kings Present, Which lars or me Kings Present, were two Clockes with Wheeles, one great one of Iron, in a very great Case made faire with a thousand mere used works, fall of child Dragons, which are the Armes and Signes of this King, as the Eagle is the Empercars: another little Clocks very faire, aboue an handful high, all of golden Metall, of the best Worke which is made in our Countrey, which our Father Generall had sent us for this purpose; colsthem) the which was fet in a gilded Case, as the other was : and in both of them in stead of our Letters were graum Pinto faith a the Letters of China, and an hand that came forth did point at them. Besides these there were three l-Lion, perhaps mages in Oyle, two great ones of an Ellbigh, and one little one. The greatest was the figures and pertrature of Our Lady of the Poplar, of Saint Lucar : The second was of our Lady with the Babe lefus, and Saint Iohn : the third, was a Picture of Christ, which was the least; all of them were of excel 30 Serpents fince, fairely bound, with an inscription, That that was the Doctrine of the True God, whole Images ther the Royall En- did present him mithall. A very faire Monocord, because it is an Instrument whereat the Chimit figne Besides a doe wonder much, and other pretie things of lesse importance.

All which things beeing fet in order, and imbarqued, we tooke our leave of the Christians of Nanquin, (which at our departure came to our House with a Banquet with great joy) and and perhaps of of the Mandarins our friends, which with great forrow, and shewes of loue tooke their lea-40 ues of vs , and ient vs Presents for our Journey , and many Letters of fauour to the great Mandarins of Pagnin.

We departed with this good dispatch from Nanquin in the yeare 1600, the twentieth day of May, And knowing not how the King, and the Mandarins of Paquin, and those of the Kings Court, would take this our Iourney, because wee were Strangers, wee sought to prepare our selues for that which might fall out : in great hope that we should find ayde eyther in all or in from Nanquin part to obtay neour defire, which we had for the establishment of our Company in this King-1600-the 20.0f dome, and to procure the opening of an entrance thereunto for the preaching of the holy Gofpell.

We began to fayle vpa very great Riuer, whereof hereafter I will speake somewhat; and 30 when we had fayled certayne leagues, wee entred into another small River made by hand about two hundred leagues, only to carry in Barges the Tribute which the Prouinces of the parts of Nanguin pay vnto the King, and other things which these Countries yeeld (which are the belt, and most plentifull of all things which are in China) because it seemeth impossible to carry it by 300 leagues as Land with Millions of people, being in Rice, Wheate, Silner, and a thousand other things very great : And the Veffels which are employed about this businesse are so many, that without doubt it is no Hyperbole to fay that from Nanquin to Paquin, which is three hundred leagues, all the Summer time it seemeth to be a path way of the Kings Barges. We were all aswell Mandarins as particular men very well intreated all the way, whither many Mandarins came out of the Villages and Cities, defiring to fee the Present which wee carried, and our selues; bringing vs 60 many Presents for our Journey. Having travelled two hundred and thirty leagues in forty dayes, wee came to a very famous place and Mare Towne in China, which is in the Prouince of Xantun, which is next vnto the Territories of Paquin, called Lincin. Where, because of the great Trafficke of Vessels and Merchants, which goe and come from the Court, who

pay to the King a very great tribute, he hath placed one of his chiefest Eunuchs , which serueth pay to the Aning a very great which lived there in great efface, and much attendance. Whenfo- Mathew the togaries v pins candon de la alwaies carried in a Charre, vpon eight mens shoulders, which is a Kings Eunuch, very great honour in China, with great store of Horsemen before and behind, with certaine Ba- his sompe. fons of Copper, which make a great found when they bee playd vpon, to fignifie to the people that he commeth that way, that all may goe out of the way; as the custome is with all the great Mandarines in the Cities of their iuridiction. Which Eunuch understanding of vs, and of the things which wee brought for the King, and of many other things which they put in his head that wee brought, to wit, precious flones, and others of that kind : hee fent vs word, that hee knew what we had brought for the King, and that he defired much to fee it, and that the fame day or the next he would come, praying vs that we would make it ready.

He came at the appointed time, and having seene the things which wee brought for the King. and making account of them to be precious, and that the King would greatly delight in them, he fought meanes to cause them to be presented to the King by all meanes, as things that he had dealt with vs to bring, to please him, and thereby to obtayne some sute for himselfe: and befides this, with defire and hopethat wee would give him some precious stones (whereof the Chinou are very greedy) he determined wholly to meddle in this businesse. Hee sent vs a Prefent of things to eate, and a very courteous message, that wee should passe in one of his Barges, that shortly he would fend vs to Paquin, with Souldiers of his house, a Petition made with his 20 owne hand to the king; that we should consult together, and bethinke our selues what we defired to obtaying of the King, whether it were to be Mandarines, or to have lands or houses, or all together, because there should be no difficulty in any thing. The message came with all this courtefie. And we made an wer with the like, returning him a Present for his answer with generall words. For though hee came with fo great offers, yet wee knew that these Eunuchs, for the most part, are base and couctous people.

It happened at this time that the chiefest Mandarine of this Citie, which was our great friend was come from Nanquin, from whence they had fetched him for that Office. Wee determined that Father Matthew Riccio should visite him with a small Present, according to the vie of the Countrey, to relate vnto him this businesse, and to aske his counsell what wee were best to doe. Hee received the Father with much courtefie and loue, and kept him two dayes in his houfe: which, after he had heard the whole matter, answered, that he was very forrie that we had met with this Eunuch, because we could looke for no goodnesse of his basenesse, conetousnesse, and bad meanes of proceeding; and that he could performe nothing that he had promifed, and that his intent was nothing but couetoulnesse; that hee would adulte vs to take as little as we could of him : but for all this, that wee should not refuse that which hee offered, but rather to make a vertue of necessicie, and to thanke him with a very good continuance for that which hee promifed, because we were in his power, and he might and would hinder our passage, if wee did not fo, and take away our Prelent from vs, and give it himselfe with his owne hand to the King. Norfabled to without making any account of vs, without controlment of any man, because he was not subject ordinary Man to any Mandarine

This feemed vnto vs to be very found counfell, and a forcible enducement to follow it. So we followed the Jame, and applied our felues vnto him in euery thing, answering the Eunuch according to his defire, and paffed in a Barke of his. He defired much forthwith to carrie the Kings Prefent to his houle, laying, that he would trimme them to give them to the King, and this we courteoully denyed him, taying, that we durft not depart with them till we had delinered them to the King, neither that it feemed reasonable, that when wee did give them, another should trimme them; especially, that these pieces were not such as had need of more trimming, since in themselues they were so precious : with which answer hee seemed to remayne satisfied. At the first he made vs great banquets, sport, and cheere: but as in very deed his purpose was nothing but to doe himlesse, and to looke for his owne profit, and not for our, shee beganne guickly to discouer himselfe: for hee stayed certaine dayes, looking that wee should gue him Conceices fome precious stones, which some body had told him that we had brought with vsto please him, Semmes, for some things that they looked for at his hands; and when he saw the dayes were passed, within which he thought we would have given him them, he began to be out of hope, and to grow coll in our entertaynment : yet for all this, he came to vilite vs with great pompe at our embarking; and after fifteene dayes he dispatched vs for our iourney to Paquin with men of his He difinification owne houle, and with a Pecition to the King, fignifying vnto him how hee had met vs on, the

way, and what our intent was, and what things we brought. We were very honourably entertayned in his journey, and in all the Townes and Cities of 6c his lurisliction whereby we pailed, he commanded them to give vs without delay refreshing of Floh-meate, Fish, much Fruit, and Wine. Wee tracelled eight dayes and came to the last place of his Juriduction: which is three dayes journey from the Court of the King. We flayed there with company that did waite spon vs, watching day and right about the Barke with their Centinels and Bells, as they are wont to doe with the great Mandarines, and especially because

there were there things belonging to the King, and the rest of the servants of the Eunuch went to Pagun, to deliner the Petition to the King, and to know his pleasure. They delinered the Pe tition, and we looked for an answer thereof within three or four dayes, as he had told vs. Bue God had disposed otherwise for the exercise of our patience and hope in him: and that was, that the King made no answer as we looked for : whereupon he was somewhat ashamed of the great brags that he had made to vs without performance of any thing: and hee and wee were all in suspense, when we saw the King returned no answer, which is wont to bee a token than he liketh not the Petition that is made vnto him.

354

Glorious Var. Abundance of all colours in Lanen and China.

Painted Fi-

Very great excellentyle of them. Mulike.

Manner of petitioning the King.

Ennuch a granged.

They ftayed

Fifteene daves after wee arrived in this place, the Bunuch came thither; to fend from thence to the King a third part of the tribute which he had gathered. He came accompanied with great to ftore of Veffels, and that wherein he was, was fuch, as affuredly your Worthip hath not feene Eunuchs pom- the like in all your life. The forme is very much different from ours : for it is like vnto an high House, wholly divided into chambers and halls very high, full of carued workes round about. with hangings of Silke, of many figures, and round about full of galleries to walke vp and downe without being driven to enter in. And on the outfide it was all covered over with a kind of Oyle like Varnith, which runneth out of certaine trees, which they make with tempering of all forts of colours, (whereof in lapon and here there is great abundance) and the Portugals call it Charan; it is a very faire, shining, and durable thing : and the things that are coloured with it. doe shine like Classes, if it be of the finest: and besides, though it be not cofly, yet it is as faire and fairer, because it is more naturall, and very neate and fine, wherewith they paint divers f. ** gures, trees, and flowers; and if it be of the right, it doth not decay, and lofeth no whit of his luftre. Herewith was the Barge trimmed without, with divers figures painted on the hull of the Barge: from the hull vpward the windowes and the walls of the Halls and Chambers was full of carued workes, knots, and carued flowers, some gilded, others of divers colours, agreeablem their natures, which made a very pleafant shew : within it was of the same worke with more excellency, and the most part was gilded, and the floore of boords was painted with very shiming Charan or Oyle. It was as long as a good Gallie, little more or leffe, and somewhat brosder, but farre higher , and in fuch fore, that when wind fayleth they vie very great Oares after the manner of China, which ferue, and are managed as Fishes vse their tayle to swimme. And because they bee of this fashion they wie them with much facilitie in every Vessell how high for 10 euer it be. This was the fashion of the Vesseil wherein the Ennuch came with much Mulike of Trumpets, Drummes, and Fifes, and other Instruments which I omit for breuities fake.

When he was come to this place, feeing the King fent no answere to his first petition, he fent another to put him in remembrance, and to folicite an answere to the first : wherein hee answered nothing to this point, although he answered to other things. And though it bee true, that fometimes the King maketh no answer, through forgetfulneffe and confusion, because the petitions be infinite which are daily given him from all the Kingdome : yet most ordinarily when he giveth no answer it serueth for an answer, either that hee will not doe, or liketh not of that fut that is made vnto him. And therefore because there came no answer, the Euruch was much grieued that he had meddled in this matter, out of which he could not withdraw his hand be- 4 caule he had given a Petition to the King, vntill he had feene fome answer of his, fearing some damage, or displeasure of the King, that hereof might ensue: and hereupon hee beganne to estrange himselfe from vs, and sought not to see vs, nor to have to doe with vs, and sent sixe men alwaies to stay in our Barge, vnder colour to serue vs , but in very truth to watch vs day

In this suspence wee continued three moneths in the extreme heate in a Barge, not knowing what would become of vs. At the end thereof newes was brought vs, that the King had fent to the Eunuch, that he should see what things they were (for vntill then he had not written to him but in generall) and fignifie it vnto him, and if he thought them worthie, he should fend him a Petition touching that matter. Wee were somwhat more joyfull with this message, which 50 was fo indeed. And Father Matthew Riccio went to the Eunuchs lodging to receive the Kings answer, with such ceremonies and reverences as they are wont to receive the messages that come from the King. And to put this commandement in execution, he came to our Barge accompanied with many inferiour Mandarines, as witnesses, and in the Kings name hee tooke all these things into his hands: which he fent vnto his house. There he fell to reason with vs, perswading vs that wee should conceale none of the precious things that wee had brought (whereof his minde did fo greatly runne) because the King would be greatly displeased, if hee knew that wee had any good things and would not give them him. Wee told him plainely the truth, putting him in plaine words out of that imagination which we knew he had conceived. And after many complements on both parts he returned to his lodging.

He wrote to the King what things they were which we had brought, looking that he would straight haue sent for them. But it fell out as it did at the first, that he returned no answer, and the cause thereof seemed to be, that they were things that he made none account of. Wee were now the second time in like case as wee were at the first, not being able to goe backe nor forward: for they would not fuffer vs to goe to Paquin, nor to returne backe. The Eunuch being readie to returne to the Citie of Linein, where we first met him, having need of the Barge where- Linein. in wee were, commanded vs to bee remoued vnto an houle in the Citie, there to flay vntill fome meffage came from the King, either good or bad. We removed with great pleafure, for the defire that we had to say Masse, whereof wee were deprived many moneths. After we were come on This was the

thore, we fet vp our Altar whereon we faid Maffe euery day, preparing our felues for that which thirecenthof October. This Eunuch could not bee diffwaded from that which couetousnesse had perswaded him, to Couetousnesse

wit, that we had brought some precious thing with vs. And seeing it seemed vnto him that he iniurious, so could not get vs by another way, to give that which hee defired, and wee had not; hee became shamelesse, and two dayes before his departure, he came with a great companie to our house, as though it had beene to vilite vs in friendship, we thinking nothing of any such thing : and when he was come in he began to speake vnto vs, and put vs in great feare, asking vs, how wee durst come so farre into the Kingdome without leave of the King and that other Eunuchs had adpertiled him from the Court, that wee had many other things, and that wee would not flew them, nor give them to the King. While he was thus talking and dealing, hee commanded his men to fesze voon all our stuffe, which we had in foure or fine Hampers, and to lay them all out vpon a banke, which with great celeritie aboue an hundred Officers which came with him performed, and in two words, they undid and opened all, and with his owne hands he opened as many papers as he found, to feeke that which he defired : and feeing he could finde nothing that Images.

hee looked for, he tooke that which hee found, which was an Image of our Ladie . being one of the two small ones which wee had referred, that which hee left was better without comparifon, and very excellent, on which also hee had cast his eye : hee tooke also certaine Glasses, and other small things, of small importance, because there were no better : but that which grieved A Crosse and vs much was, that he tooke from vs a Croffe of very good and great Reliques, and a Cafe of Re- Reliques. liques likewife, and the Chalice wherein we faid Maste, which because it was of Silver and gilt A Chalice (which that yeere they had fent vs of Almes from Maaco) did pleafe him; and when we praved him not to touch it, because it was a thing consecrated to God, which the Kings of our Countrey durst not presume to touch, hee made a lest of it; and the more it was told him that hee

20 should not touch it, hee handled it the more with scorne, saying, that though wee told him he might not touch it, yet we faw he held it in his hands without any difficulty or danger. By the intercession of a Mandarine that favoured vs, he gave vs the Chalice againe; but wee . could neuer get the Reliques againe out of his fingers, as wee defired, for of all things elle hee

would depart with none. As he and those that ayded him so willingly were fearthing with much curiofitie, and energy

one catched what he could, because all things lay tumbled on the ground: at last they met with a Case wherein was a carued Crucifixe, which was mine. He began to looke voon our Lord Ie- A Crucifixe, fin Christ being bloudy and wounded, being a very faire and plealant fight to our eyes and heart.

but very strange, foule and offensive to his right. He vsed certaine gestures not saying any word, 40 vntill he was assonished, and turned his head, and asked what it was? Wee told him, that that was the true God which made Heauen and Earth, whom all the World ought to worship, who died for our finnes, and to give vs life, and afterward rose againe by his owne power, and ascended into Heaven. He would not heare many reasons; for it seemed vnto him that we were deceited in worshipping a God that in his eyes was dead : againe, he looked wistly vpon it; and the finall conclusion that hee made was, that that which hee suspected was true, that wee were suspicions very lewde fellowes, because wee had the shape of a man misused with so great inhumanitie , nayled on a Crosse, and all besprinkled with blood, as that was , and that it was nothing elle but some wrecherafe to kill the King; And though in this second point hee was deceived; yet in the first he had great reason, though hee knew not wherefore, since our sinnes and cuill deeds made Christ to be vied on that fort.

50 That which the Eunuch said in our house, he vttered also abroad: in so much that certaine grave Mandarines which favoured vs, retired themtelues from vs , and fent vs word , that from henceforth wee should leave that crucifixed man, and that seeing now wee remayned in China, we should wholly conforme our selues vnto them, for as long as we kept it they durst not speake in fauour of vs, because the report went that it was a deuce to kill the King. But our China Boy which was a Christian before he brought ws the message, answered before the Mandarine, faying, That this was the true God: wherefore not onely wee, but himfelfe that was a Chinois would rather die then denye him one jot: whereat the Mandaine was amazed, feeing him Dring dreadspeake resolutely of dying; a thing so much abhorred of the Chinois, even to speake of it : and soll

so he sent vs a moderate message, bidding vs to hide that Figure, that no bodie should see it, for 60 the report that went of it. The Eunuch gaue out many threatnings against vs , faying , that whether the King received the Present, or not , the least dipleasure that hee would doe vs was. to thrust vs out of the Kingdome, as wicked fellowes, writing a Petition to the King against vs. Befiles this we remay ned thrust into an exceeding bad and naughty house in the greatest force



The force of Winter. This was till

1601.

of the Winter, alwaies with many Souldiers within and without doores, the gates being flut with hanging Lockes, without fuffering our Boy to goe forth to buy any thing, without two Souldiers to goe with him. In which kinde of living (though still with some remission of the This was ring the biginning rigour that we were kept in at the first) were continued about two moneths and an halfe with. out any kinde of comfort or reft at any time of the day to fay Maffe.

At the end of which time, the Eunuch returned to the same place. Wee verily thought that our comming out of that place should not be such as it was, at the least we thought we should be thruft into a perpetuall Trunke or Prison, or in some worse place, as the same went, and the

ð. I I.

The King fends for them, is delighted with their Clockes and Pictures; they are four up, after take a house, are admired for learning; Christianitie of China.

ARCAS the cause of our trouble was the Kings not dispatching of our businesse, and our conceiuing that hee misliked of our comming, to all was ended by his remembring by chance to aske where the strangers were, which certains moneths past they had told 18 him had brought him certaine Images, and certaine small Bells which strike of themfelius (for fo they call Clocks) and wherefore they brought him not those things, and that they fends for them should fetch them quickly; and he game the charge of dispatching our bulinesse to a great Man-

> Wee were lodged all the way in the Palaces of the Mandarins very honourably. Hauing travelled fouredayes, we came to the walls of Paquin, and they lodged vs in an house without the

walls. And because the King had referred the businesse to the Mandarin, which I spoke of the

Eunuch feared that hee should lose the thankes, which he thought to receive of the King for that

prefent, if another Mandarin should meddle with it. That day hee caused all things to be made

readie of the Petition and remembrance, which therewithall he was to give vnto the King, and

earely in the morning with other things and much Silver of the revenues which he prefented,

being all guarded with many Horse-men and Foot-men, hee carryed it to the Kings Palaces.

of thing those Clockes were, and what thing was needfull, for to have them to goe well. Wee

answered to the point. And from the place where we were on horsebacke, by poste on two Hor-

fes which we mounted, and with the like speed we came to the Court. At the same of our com-

ming, and for to see vs an infinite multitude of people assembled, (because Strangers are no

ordinarie thing in China:) and when wee came to the Court, those which had the charge of

vs. were enforced to make roome with staues. When we were come to a certayne place, a

vs what the King commanded him, and to fee how wee did handle those Clockes : They

faw how we yied them; but wee answered to the question, that it was needfull to ap-

great Eunuch accompanied with about two hundred small ones, came downe to demand of 10

darin of Paquin, to whom it belongeth to deale with Strangers.

These newes were brought to the Eunuch and vs, who for the executing of the Kings commandement (whose Letter they obey without reply) sent vs word that wee must goe to Paque, because the King sent for vs, and sent vs eft-soones all the Pieces which hee had in his possession and the most part of those things which he had taken from vs, that wee our selues should not them in order that they should receive no hurt by the way, and gave vs many men to carrie all

Their journey our stuffe on their shoulders, and Horses for all our companie, and a Mandarin to accompanie vs.

Paqnin, in 4. dayes trauell.

The present is Who having the memoriall de livered vnto him, commanded his men to receive all things. They received the fame: and when hee had feene all those strange things, the like whereof, or of so questions and great excellencie, he had neuer seene before; they say that he rejoyced greatly, considering and the King. viewing all things a very long while, with great shew of admiration, especially of the Pictures

Clockes and Pictures admia and Clockes. Hee commanded them to bring vs to his Palaces, and to enquire of vs what kinde

They are fent for to the Court.

Eunuches are raught to vic

The Pictures.

point some bodie of good capacitie to learne, which in two or three dayes would learne how When they had returned the answer, the King appointed foure Eunuches of his principall Mathematicians, to learne it, and command them to receive vs in the meane while in his house with n his owne Palace. They received vs with much respect and good entertaynment. A great multitude of Eunuches came to see vs, and euery one to enquire what came in his minde. But the King, which all those dayes was occupied in rejoycing for those new things, commanded the Images to bee placed in a principall Hall, whether, as the Euruches told vs, the chiefe Queene 60 went to doe them reuerence : and they told vs of the King, that hee durft not keepe them neere him, being afrayd, because they seemed vinto him to bee alive. Often times he fent Eunuches vnto vs, to enquire divers things concerning our Countrey, whether it had any King, what manner of Apparell he wore, and what kinde of Hat? (for in China they make great difference of

CHAP.6.S. 2. Pictures, Chinois ill Picturers, Kings closenelle, Icluites requell. 257

the apparell of the King, from the foot to the head, and of other men) and if wee had any Pichire of him that we should shew it. We had a picture wherein was the Pope with his triple Crowne, and the Emperour, and the King with their Enfignes, kneeling beforethe name of God, and we gave them it for a show, declaring that those were three kinde of Kings, and that all of them did worthip the true God, which made Heauen and Earth, whose Image we had giuen him. They carryed it vnto him, and because it seemed to bee small, he commanded them to ot Kings, draw another greater, in colours by it.

Afterward hee sent another to demand questions of the things of our Country, particularly

of the Kings Houses. Wee had a Map of the Escurial, newly cut in Copper, and a picture of the The Escurial 10 Place of Saint Marke in Venice, both which wee gave them. Though we suspect that they delivered but the second, saying, that they durst not give the other, because straight in haste hee would command them to paint them great, and there was none that durft take it vpon him, though wee know not whither they delivered it afterward. Hee willed them further to enquire; after what manner wee buryed our Kings: because in the matter of Burials and Sepul- Sepulchers, chers, the Chinois are great South-sayers, and put a great part of their felicitie in a good manner and place of their Burials. At that time wee receined a Map of the Death of his Majeftie, (who Death of King liueth with God in glorie) and of the manner of his Funerall, and fo we answered him, as it was Philipthes. in the Map, to wit, that they made him a Coffin within of Lead (which continueth long) and without of excellent Wood, and put these coffins in a Sepulcher of itone, and for this purpose,

20 there was a Church builded of purpose. They enquired many things of vs of this kinde these few dayes, where vnto wee answered, advancing the things that belonged to the service of our Lord God, as much as we might, and concerned our Europe, as farre as the truth would permit vs, because that we deemed it to bee convenient for the service of our Lord. They told the King fo many things, that it feemed hee greatly defired to feevs : But on the other part, he thought The King ne. it would bee too great a courtesse, and much beyond his custome, who never suffereth himselfe to ver suffereth be seene of his owne people, but of his Eunuchs, and Wines that serue him, and somtime very seldome of some one of the greatest Mandarins: yet, though he would not suffer himselfe altogether common peoto bee ouercome of this temptation, yet he suffered himselfe in part, and hee sent to take our Pipele. to becourt out in the Carlot of them by themselues as well as they could. Yet in truth Bad Pictures: which two Painters did, each of them by themselues as well as they could.

30 I neither knew my felfe nor my companion in that picture, but as it was they carryed it away, drawers. It was not after such figure and manner, as your Worship hath knowne mee, but with a Beard an handfull long, and a garment of a Learned honourable Chineis, though downe to the foote. and very modelt: but from the head to the footfarre differing from our fashion.

After the Eunuches had beene instructed three dayes, the King in haste sent for the Clockes, Eunuches prewhich they carryed, and fet in order before him ; whereat hee tooke fuch pleafure, that he in-ferred, creased their Dignitie, aduancing those foure which had learned this skill, to a greater place of their Order. The King asked them many questions of vs, what wee did eate, and how much, and many other trifles. Whereunto the Eunuches answered (as they told vs afterward) as wee could defire.

They game vs all the welcomes of humanitie which the King did shew vs, appointing vs all Infaites offered to bee Mandarins (which is the reward and felicitie of the Chinois) which wee alwayes refue to be Manda fed, faying, that we came not for that purpole, but onely to dilate the Law of God, neither rins. could wee take that office vpon vs: But we were so neere to bee made Mandarins, that they told vs the King would bellow Dignitie vpon vs, that wee were enforced to befeech the Eunuches, that when occasion was offered, that his Majestie did aske them any thing, they would tell him plainely that we fought no kinde of Dignitie, nor could become Mandarins: who told him fo much ; whereby our Lord God delinered vs out of much trouble, which wee should have endured in refusing the same, if the King had bestowed it upon vs. Wee continued in these demands, questions and answers, goings and commings to the Kings Court: for now we had lived a whole

50 moneth abroad: in which time every day I at leaft was there, when wee could not goe both, because Father Masthew Riccio was occupied with other Ghests and visitations. They enquired and asked vs, what we would demand of the King : Wee told them, that we fought no A Monethprofit at all; but if the King would give vs under his hand, some certayne place and a House to dwell in, we would bee very glad; because wee had none other intent, but to slay in some certayne place, and to seeke to dilate the Law of God. For though it bee true, that our purpose did ftretch it selfe further (as I haue sayd in the beginnning) yet wee found things in so different a disposition from that which we imagined, that it seemed an exceeding great errour, to make any motion to give an entrance for more companie and Fathers : for it was certayne that we

should doe no good, nor should finde any, which by any meanes durst presume to moone it to the 60 King, and affuredly should lose all that we had done, and at last should cast our selues wholly out of the Kingdome : and therefore it was not convenient that we should bee knowne, that we had any companions. And many of our friends gaue vs counfell, that wee should not seeme to feeke to dwell heere ; for in that very point, they would have vs in sufpition. Yet neuertheleffe, we went as farre as we could, and as we thought might bee brought to paffe, which

358

was, that we might have the Kings license, that no Mandain might (if hee would) cast vs out. The Mandarin, to whom the King at the first had referred our businesse, seeing the Euroch had wholly medled in the fame without him, being much offended therewith, did frowne alto-Mand:rivof. gether vpon vs, and made a warrant out, to take vs wherefoeuer they found vs, vttering certaine grieuous words against vs, because that being Strangers, and remayning in the Court, wee preiented not our felues vnto him, to whom of right belonged all the businesse of Strangers. They were at the lodging where wee lay, and they that vp our Boyes; for they neuer durit offer any discourtefie to Father Matthew Ricero, (which at that time was there.) At that time I was an the Kings Court, whither they fought to fend me word to speake with the Eunuches, and the they, if they could, should aduertife the King thereof, that they had apprehended vs. But they to hindred with exceeding great care and diligence the going foorth of any bodie, and they flaved for me till I came home, (which came home thinking no harme at all) and when I was come in. they flut the doore without. Wee rode the next day very honourably on Horsebacke to the audience of the Mandarin, and

They are shut

fignified vnto him, that in that we did not prefent our selues, was not our fault; hee vied vs w.ll, and honourably; but they put vs in an house with a Guard, where wee continued some three moneths, yet fo that certayne Mandarins came to fee vs. This Mandarin gaue the King 2 Manainms Pe- remembrance that hee held vs there : But that as our purpose was good to serve him with that prefent, it was reason to give vs some reward, setting downe that it would doe well to give vs the Ensience of the Mandarins, and to pay vs for that which wee had given him Royally; but that it was fit to feed to us away freedily into our Countrey, or to Canton (where untill then wee had dwelt:) for it feemed not well, that Strangers should dwell and that in the Kings Court, entring into the Palice of the King euerie day, being a thing fo unufuall. And in very deed hee had reason : for to suffer vs to enter into the Palace, or to flay and lye there, they did vs fuch a fauour, that of long time the King of Chema hath neuer done to any Stranger. Wee feared some trouble by this Petition. But our Lord which had given ve this bitter morfell, afterwards made it fweet to ve againe, because the King made none account of it. And albeit divers times afterward, the faid Mandarin delivered foure Petitions concerning this point, hee made as small account of the last as of the first. And divers times the Euruches told vs, that the Kings meaning was of all likelihood, that wee should stay heere, For feare lest wee Bould returne into our Country, to give newes and knowledge of hie Kingdome; as they delt with a Turke, which hath beene heere aboue fortie yeeres. True it is, that he answered as little, in performing nothing that was in the Petition : But wee tooke it for good fatisfaction, that hee did not yeeld to that, that we might not lofe the other thing, which was the principall.

When three moneths almost were spent, seeing the businesse would bee prolonged if wee attended the Kings answer, and being that vp we could doe nothing, nor negotiate any thing that we intended, nor deale in Gods matters, as we defired; wee fought to get out of this place, and They byer an to get a license to take a House, and there to stay wayting till the King would give some order: and wee handled the matter fo well, by meanes of certaine Mandarins which favoured vs, and principally by the grace of our Lord, that wee obtained our whole defire : And we tooke an 40 house in the chiefe situation of this Citie : all that which they gave vs at the Kings coft in that place, which was fufficient for our fustentation, after wee were gotten out they gave vs the same allowance in like manner.

Visited by

China igno-

rance of the

Vic of Maps.

Many Mandarins of this Court, heard great fame of vs and of our things : and vnderstanding that we were come out of that place, b. gan to come in great numbers and concourse with much honour and respect, courteste and presents to visite vs, and to enquire divers things which they defired to know. For the same that went of vs, that wee knew all Countries, and the things and customes of the World, and the materiall and spirituall things of Heaven, was great : and theretore every one came to enquire that which hee defired. And though our knowledge be but little, in comparison of the knowledge which is in our Countrey : yet being compared with 50 theirs of China, which knoweth nothing of the world, faue their owne Kingdome, which by a common name thy call, The World : of God, and of the things of Heaven nothing, and of other things little, it was somewhat, and was sufficient to fend them home amazed, and alwayes with

Ill Colmogra-

gance.

They faw a very faire and great Map of the world which wee brought with vs. and we showed them how bigge the world was, which they thought to bee fo little, that they imagined that there was not to much more in all the fame, as their Kingdome : And they looked one your another, and fayd, wee are not fogreat as we imagined, feeing heere they shew vs, that our Kingdome, compared with the world, is like a grayne of Rice, in comparison of a great heape. They also thought, that there was no other Writing, nor no other Bookes in the world but them: and when they faw ours, which at the leaft they faw in outward appearance, to bee much better then their owne, they were attonied, and put out of their errour, doing vs alwayes more and more honour : and chiefly they were aftonied, when wee shewed vnto them certaine things in Mathematicks the Mathematickes which they knew not, gitting Clockes to certayne perfons, which for this

end we made of purpose ; and by these and other meanes, and principally by discourring with them of Morall vertues, (whereof they write, speake; and have many Bookes) and of Gods matters, there ranne lo great a fame, that the greateft Mandarins of all this Kingdome fwhich are the greatest persons never ahe King) sought to converse with vs, and to treke our friendship; and to many fent vs prelimits, and others came to visite vs, with great numbers of people ; others with much courtefie insited ve to their houses : so that in foure moneths space, were had gotten Foure months the greatest Mandarine of Pegnin to be our friends, and readie to fauour vs in all things : And he which at this time particularly doth favour and honour vs, is the President of that Andrewer. which hath the charge of vs, and at the first approound vs : fo that wer remayne Inhabitors of to this Citie, with all libertie that wee can defire, to deale with all fuch as are willing so heare the things that belong to our holy Law, and their faluation. And by this good fuccesse, our Lord hath made ye forget all that is past. And though it bee true, that hitherto wee have gotten no dispatch, nor resolution of the King, yet were content our felues in that hee letters wafter heere. although he neuer grant vs more. For albeit by this our Journey, we have not obtavired all that wee delived, yet we hope that this our firme abode heere, shall tend greatly to the feruice of our

Lord, and the good of this Miffion. and and the good or that numbers.

They bee commonly of good understandings, so that easily they fall into reason, and are capa-Hopes of ble : they have not in the government of this Kingdome, any thing that forbiddeth them to tol- Christianite. low what Law they lift, nor any Law nor Obligation, which is contrarie to our holy Law,

20 They have none which effectually and with authoritie doth exhort them vnto other Lawes and with-draw them from the truth. For the Bones (which are dedicated for this purpose to Idols) The basenesse are in the common concert of all men, the most base, contemptible, and worst people in all Chi. of the Benti. ms, whole leaft care is, to exhort them to any thing more then no give them fomewhite i and thus they doe not onely not exhort them to follow adole; but also with their bad manner of liuing, peri wade them (as wee haue often heard of men of good sudgement) that it is not good to ferue them, fince their Ministers bee such. And so in this matter of worshipping of Idols, though there be many that worthin them, and have many of them, and wie their Ministers for their Funerals, and other things, yet with very small affection, and denotion thereunto, we eafily make them fay that they are naught, and that it is mot fit to worthip them.

30 Yet, though these things and others which I conseque helpe them with case to follow the Law of Go.', the counterpois is great, and commonly it weighted downe the ballance on that fide. For first because the matter of Strangers is soddiens in China, and the dealing with them so fuspicious, one fort because they disdayne it, as the Princes, who albeit they now conceine better of vs, yet to learne of Strangers, and to receive a Law which is not of their owne meanes, they hardly perswade themicines : others for feare, as the base people,

ey hardly personne encurements a constant a second difficultie, and perhaps the greaters, is a natural lobition, that all this Nation Indenotion hath of another life, and of immortalitie, and of faltation or condemnation of the Soule : and not onely an oblinion, har also an auerfion from all these things, wherein wee have likewife

found them to differ from all other Nations. And it is a thing to be noted, that fince it is a thing 40 so naturall to Man to reuerence some God, either false or true, and to feare or loue him, and to conceine or imagine what shall follow after this life : Thole Chinese, (which on the other side are of so good capacities in humane things, and so wittie therein) bee as though they were deprinted thereof is for they are almost all estability, not knowing not worthipping neither falle nor true God, nor neuerthinking what shall follow after this lite: And those which a man would thinke are most bound bereunto, which are the Learned men, acethey, which have least knowledge hereof : yea, rather one of the chiefest things that they commend, is, not to believe any thing that concerneth another life, Hell, nor Paradile, which they wholly place in this life. The Bookes of Phi-Bookes which they studie from their Child-hood, doe them much hurt, which are of certayne losophers, a-Philosophers about two thousand yeeres old, whom they efteeme little leffe, then if they avere bout 2000. their God, to whom curry yeers they offer Sacrifices: of whom they hold fo great an appairing, yeers old.

50 that they thinke not that any thing more may be knowne, then They knew. And offenciates they have asked vs, whether wee had not thefe Bookes in our Countrey ? What other Bookes might we have, that might compare with them ? And as these Philosophers, as Gentiles, spake nothing of the other life, but onely of good Gouernment, and Morall vertues, they thought they might attayne so faree, without beleeuing that there could bee another life. By reason hereof, and of the common vices which Paganifme draweth with it, which in this Countrey increase exceedingly, by reason of the fatnesse, abundance, and fruitfullnesse thereof, they feele great difficulties to vndergoe the yoke of Christ, (though it be so sweet) so contrarie to their appetite, which taketh from them the libertie which they have, in keeping as many Wives as they are able, and in a thousand other things.

These later yeeres in the residencies of Canton, Nanquin, and heere in Paquin, were made some Some Christians true Christians, which ouercame all these difficulties, and goe on forward with great integritic, made there. constancie and feruour. In the Prouince of Canton, in a residencie which were haue in Xaucheo, a principall Citie, have beene Baptifed within this two yeeres, about three hundred perions, which

zeale. And sine Mandarin; and grauer fort of people, mooued by the good example which they

gue, doesauour them much: and especially, our Lord hath shewed many tokens of his favour,

in having thewest great plagues upon such men, as perfecuted them for becomming Christian

And about all, God hatt frewed his ayde vpon the Women: who, befides the men; are very

hard to bee wonne to receine our holy. Law, which is, the great privatenesse which they vie, be.

caule it is not lawfull to fee them, no not for their kinsfolkes. But as I fay, herein the grace of our Lord God shewed in selfe very mightie, seeing it ouercame this difficultie, and forward of

heare. If our Lord dee helpe them, and fhed his bloud vpon thefe Chinos, (as hee light done in Apper, and in other places) there will bee fetled one of the most famous and learned foundations of Christiania, that is in all the world. For the greatnesse of this Kingdome, their Lawes and

Forthe Readers better satisfaltion I base here presented him Hondius his Map of China, not to them it, but the erroneomo-conceits which all European Geographers have bad of it: A more complete Map of China I Shall present after, as by comparison will appeare.



it hath in it ielfe, it standeth very neere vnto India, and other Kingdomes, from whence com-50 meth with great facilitie that which it defireth and wanterh. And before I palle any further, because I have spoken of the situation and heigth of China, I will note for their takes which would bee glad to learne, and also it may setue to mend two notable errours, which our neweft Maps haue. The one is, That they make China a third part bigger then it is, placing this new fl Maps, Citie of Pagum in fifty degrees, being in very deed but in forty onely, as we faw, which twice Paguin in 40, tooke the heigth thereof with a very good Astrolabe: And the limits and end of this King-degrees. dome, which are three dayes iourney or leffe diffant from this City of Paquin, are at the most but The Kingdom two degrees more: And so those great walls so famous in our Europe are in two and forty de- of china goth

diners parts by the way of Magor, which gaue out many things, and great matters of Catago, Cambala and

commonly call Tartars, with whom they have alwayes had Warre, and once they wanne all the Kingdome from the Chineis.

HONDIVS his Map of China.

This Kingdome standeth in an excellent climate and situation; for besides the things which grees; and this is the greatest heigth of the Kingdome of China.

The second errour is, that our Maps make a Kingdome aboue China, which they call Catago, grees Northwhereas indeed it is none other but this selfe same Kingdome of China: and the Citie of Cam- ward. bala, which they put for the head thereof, is this Citic of Paquin wherein wee are. Wee finde they are all this here to be true very plainely by occasion of certaine newes which lately were spred ouer one. which feemed to be so peculiar and proper to this Kingdome of China, that they made vadoubt Bagun need

Some relations of Gonucriions are

them were Baptifed, after they had beene very well Carechifed by the Fathers. On Sundayes them were Deptried, after they man opens very went with the Men, yet at least in this beauting, and Holy-dayes, because they cannot come to Mase with the Men, yet at least in this beauting, to shey meete in places appointed for that purpofe, and there they Pray; and reason; and interest of Diume matters. The men for the exhortations that they make vato therm, have dayes appoinnerisons are heereforbree ted of chemicilies, and with their owne confent, to conferre and repeats that which they have heereforber. Ice or cognizing, and write their owners of the Wiles and Daughte's.

Little online.

Enery day some bee Connected in Nanging. I grate and learned men doe enter. Heeren't gain while wee haus been heere, we have Baptied some, and some great Mandernit come to

> Government conformable roweafon, their being fo studious as they are, and given to Learning, as and to know to much as they know of Morall vertues, and their good capacities gentle, dorile, and ingenious, and the great peace and quietneffe which they enjoy, without hading any bodie to trouble them with warre, promife much and give great hope, that the vantage which they have our other Nations fately discovered, in the gifts of Nature (being affilted by the grace of God) will helpe them in Gods matters. And I affare your Worthip, that if the doore were opened to Preachfreely and to Baptile? say not there the Fathers and Brethren of our Companie which might bee spared, but without By amplification; at all, halferthe Religious men of all Emope, were needful to attend fo many by amplifications and places; and forming mumbers of people as therefore; about when Christians, and places; and forming mumbers of people as therefore; about when Christians Circles, a towner and praces; and to minimental monetor or people as there are: a most when compa-mining is conce begun indeed, where is such abundance of grane people and of much effimation, that and many of them might bee made Priefles Preachers; and Bishops, without feeling any want of

Multitude of

and helpe.

entically a orbanic constant

Marke this

die to burst to see them so destitute, and to have so few meanes to obtayne necessarie remedie

those of Europe since as now they be Gentales, and their stope goeth no further then to this life, there be many very great Mandermaisti hofe chiefe delight is to discourse of things content ming Vertue, and oftentimes they meete together as it weere in Fraternities to treate thereof; And the grauer fort doe make Orations, and Conferences together, perswading one another, and delicering the means to governe well; and to fellow vertue. And without doubt, the more wee see of this, and the more zeale in these Christians, so much the more our heart is rea-

The descripsion of the Kingdome of China : of Catay and Musk , the diaision into Provinces's Crites and Townes described, Rivers, Shipping, Commodities, Diet, and feeding.

寒 Ow by the helpe of our Lord I will fay fomewhat that I remember, touching the Ca ftomes, Policie, and Gouernment of this Kingdome, but not in fuch order as were re- 50 quifite, because I haue no leasure, and therefore I will onely write as things come vnto my minde, though things bee not lincked well together, because I cannot first write one Copie, and afterward dispose it in order, with such distinction as were needfull; referring

China foure fquare. The Description. that (as I fayd in the beginning) vntill our Lord grant me a better opportunitie. This great Kingdome of China, is almost foure square, as the Chinais themselves describe the Tame : it runneth North and South from the Province of Canton, which is the most Southerly part of it, beginning feuenteene or eighteene degrees under the burnt Zone, unto fotrie two degrees, which is the most Northerly part of it is contayneth from Canton by water, about fixe hundred leagues: but in a right line it is four hundred and fiftie, on the Eath it confined with Corea, which isyneth with the fame, and with Iapon, and with the Ocean Sea, by which they 69 come from Pern, and Nucua Espana, to Manilla: On the West with certayne small Kingdomes, which lye betweene Bengala, the Lands of Mogor and Persian; On the South, with the Iles called Philippinas, and the Malucae, and others, and more South-westerly, it hath Sion, Pegu, and other Kingdomes. On the North part, it hath those people which in our Countries wee

26£

262

that it was not a feuerall Kingdome. After wee were come to this Citie of Paguin Weemen with two Cafilas or Carauans, one of Moores of certaine small Kingdomes bordering voon Chima, another of Turker with their Turbanes of the Countries of Moger, and of the great //. mael Sophi, (for with this very name they call him) and of other parts , which had knowledge by fame of Spaine, Italie, Venice, India, and Persugall.

Very Mer-

ofeat mer-

handife.

These Turkes and Moores are wont to come hither every five yeeres by Land, in the name of their King, to acknowledge and pay Tribute to the King of China: for which purpose they counterfeit certaine Letters, wherewith they easily deceme the Chinois, which thinke and hold that all the Kings of the World doe acknowledge obedience vnto theirs. But the trueth is, that they come to vie their trafficke and merchandile, and therefore the Chineis admit them to willingly: howbeit many now doe know, that their paying of Tribute is a fayned thing: In It is so in Mese which their trafficke they speed very well. For the King doth maintayne them very plentiful. Which their tramese ency local very veril.

If from the time that they come into his Kingdome, writh their departure; and they code all their Chilts of them, whereof this yeere they brought a thousand. The King tooke of them at an easie price a great part of the merchandise which they brought, and afterward hee gave them rewards. The thing of greatest bulke of merchandise are a kindt of stones, which themfelues call lasper stones; which is white, yet somewhat duskish, so that it enclined to grey (which seemeth to bee that lasper which so often times in the holy Scriptures is called Prelafper flone a cious flone.) It commeth in pieces vnhewen, but whole like peeble flones; which stone for many ornaments the Chinois efteeme much; especially the King: and they buy every pound 20 of the best at eightie Duckets: and of that which is worse, at fiftie or sixtie Duckets, whereby they gaine greatly. I have feene thefe flones of other colours in our Countrey, but not of this which the Chinois esteeme.

When these men come to this Citie of Paguin, they put them into a great house, which there is for this purpose; (wherein wee were two moneths) and suffer them not to come forth. Wee asked these men certaine questions: and one was this of Catayo, enquiring of them. How they called this Kingdome of China in their Countrey ! They answered , Catago, and that in all the Countries of Mogor, Persia, and other parts, it had none other name, and that they knew none other Kingdome that was called fo. Wee asked them how they called this Citie of Paquin? They faid Cambala, which, as I have faid, is that which our men fet downe for the 30 head Citie of Catayo. Whereby it appeareth, that there can no doubt bee made, but that wee are heere resident in the Countrey which must bee Catago, if there were no fault in the Maps; and wee know that there is no fuch Countrey, nor Cities, but a few contemptible Mores

though not of this Kingdome. I had read when I departed out of Spaine, a Booke which is

printed of the things of China, which writeth of this Ciuet, and of other things, which I haue teene with mine eyes : it reporteth many errours by halfe informations, which hee which 40

wrote it should have beene better informed in , although in many things hee tell the trueth.

the fields are full. These men say, That there is a Sea of sand (which our Maps doe place in

Arabia) neere vnto China, which divideth it from Mogor, and other Kingdomes: And this

should seeme to bee the cause, why these Kings, which heare great same of this Kingdome, of

the greatnesse thereof, and of the weakenesse of the people, doe not feeke to inuade the same,

being not very farre off; because it would beevery difficult to passe ouer the same sandie Sea,

and Gentilee. Wee understood also of their . Ciuet or Muske, whereof they brought some, which is, as

with a great Armie.

Span the Lain it 7 were the maw (or ftomacke) of a Beaft fomewhat bigger then a Cat, which they kill to cut away this maw. They breed wilde in the field, and in a Countrey very neere to China, v Como buche Som, Latin Sto-

Rhubarb, See They brought also great store of very good Rhubarbe, which heere wee bought of them of the before inxobeg choice, at ten Marauedis the pound : it is a wilde root like vnto Nauewes, whereof, they say,

Diminon.

Chorographi-

The Chinois divide this Kingdome into thirteene Provinces, and two Courts, which are, as 50 it were, two Prouinces. Every one of them have their Metropolitane Citie; and every Citie her division of so many Townes. It is knowne very particularly by Chinish Bookes which are written of this argument, how many Cities, Townes, and places there are in all the Kingdome, how many houses every one hath, and commonly what numbers of people, what every Countrey seuerally yeeldeth, and how much Tribute it payeth to the King, and many other things: but I doe not fet it downe here : because I could not get those Bookes these few dayes past, to take a view thereof: At some other time, God granting mee life, I will doe it more at large. Chine populous Onely I fay in generall, that all the way which wee trauelled, wee met with fo many Cities, Townes, and Villages, that to beleeue their greatnesse, it was necessarie to see them. For your Worship will hardly beleeve, that wee spent two or three houres in sayling still by the walls 60 of one Citie. After which there still followed many Townes and Villages, one within fight of another. And after this manner all this way continueth, even to Paguin. Yea, the Villages are very great, and full of recople, and of much trafficke. For though wee give them this name (which among vs tignifieth some small matter) The Chmois doe not distinguish

them by great or small, and so their Villages are bigger then others which wee call Townes. All the Cities and Townes are very well enclosed with high walls. And because, as I faid. I deferre this vntill another time, I will only speake of Nanguin, whereof I had some fight,

This Citie standeth in two and thirtie degrees and an halfe, eight or ten leagues from the Walls. Sea, vnto which it hath a mouth, and a mightie Riuer. It hath three walls of Bricke very high Nanquin in 32. and faire, with very great and beautifull gates, which they shut vp very timely before night, degrees and and faire, with very great and deautiful gates, which they must be habitation of the Kings of China; an halfe.

This Citie, of old time, two hundred yeeres part, was the habitation of the Kings of China; an halfe.

There walls, and so it continueth in very good condition: The streets are very broad, and all paued with very great square stones, or set with brickes. It hath exceeding long streets of two leagues, Streets long, and two leagues and an halfe, and in the middeft of the Citie are the Kings Palaces, which are Palaces, very great.

The Chinois declare the circuit of this Citie, that two Horsemen going in the morning both Circuit. out of the same gate, and one going on the one side, and the other on the other, going all the day they meet at night in the gate opposite to that which they went out at. The very truth is, that it is at least elemen or twelve leagues in circuit, and seemeth to have above two hundred thoufand housesof people. It seemed to all of vs that were there, that Nanquin and this Citie of 200000.houses Paguin, each of them have as many people or more, then foure of the most famous and populous Cities of all our Europe, as Rome, Lifton, and others of the greater fort. For whereas these two whereof I speake are in themselves so great Cities, not one nor two streets, but the grea-

20 ter part of the Citie every day doth swarme with people,

There are about this Citie many others within one or two dayes journey, and very famous Hanches and for greatnesse and trafficke; among which there are two, one named Hancheo, the other Sucheo; Sucheo. and this is very great and like to Venice, whose streets are halfe water and halfe land. The Chinois call these Cities * Paradise, to expresse the goodnesse, abundance, and cheapnesse of all Quintay, cinithings that are in this Kingdome, and come from other places. And Sucheo is fo full of people, Install merchandile, and trafficke, that a Booke which is printed (wherein all things are fet downe which the Prouinces and Cities pay to the King) faith, that this only payeth one yeere with Reuenus, another in Siluer, Gold, Rice, and Silke, and other things, wherewith it doth greatly abound, twelue millions : so that there be whole Prouinces that amount not to so much by a great deale: 30 which though it seeme an incredible thing, yet they write it for a certaintie; and hee which knoweth what these Cities are, will beleeue it.

Yet for all this, these Cities have no notable things, neither sumptuous Temples nor buil- Building nor dings, which are wont to be those things which doe beautifie a Citie: for the houses are not beautifull beautifull outwardly; nor they vie no great Porches, as they doe in our Countrey. And he that compared with hath feene the things of our Countrey, and is skilffull in architecture (helf said in And he that European. hath seene the things of our Countrey, and is skilfull in architecture, shal find it here very little. For the houses are low, and without galleries, lofts, windowes, or fight into the firet; yet they haue faire yards, and are very neate within , and painted with divers colours, with that Charan, or liquid Gumme, whereof I made mention before. And that which I speake of Naugum touching the abundance of people, trafficke, and manner of houses, is after the same manner in the 40 other Cities which we law. For the Chinois are fo like, and fo vniforme in all naturall and arti-

ficiall things, that he that hath feene one of the principall Cities, findeth no new thing to bee Vinformitie in feene in the others. And albeit that other Cities are not comparable to these in bignesse, yet in multitude of people proportionally there is little difference.

This Kingdome is commonly very fertile of all things that are necessarie for the vse of man : Fertilitie. and a great cause of the fertilitie and abundance thereof proceedeth of the great number of exceeding great Rivers which it hath; which befides the profit that the Rivers yeeld by the fi- Commodious fhing, and besides the profit in watering of the grounds, wherein they stand the Chinosi in great Rivers. stead, they are occasion of great trafficke and communication of one Province with another with great case by water, which is an enriching to them that vie it, and of great plentie in Infooleagues 50 every Citie of all things that are in the Kingdome. From our departure from Macao, till with-butone day by

in a little of Paquin, which is, as I faid, fixe hundred leagues, wee trauelled not past one day lind. by Land (because wee would not fetch too great a compasse about by water) wee trauelled. This is more a great part of this way not Nanquin by the greatest Ruler that ever I saw in my life.

South motion from parts is about three leagues broad, and vary deeper, which the Chinois, for the

a more exact

a more exact

a more exact greatnesse thereof doe call, The little Sea; and that with good reason. For though it were and maure an hundred leagues from the Sea where I entred into it; yet there is great abundance of fish observer of a!! of those kindes which breed in the Sea; as Porposies, sishes with sharpe beakes, and others things, sea 8.5.

I faw in this River peere the bankes thereof men fills with certaine Fowless slige as small prints 2nan prints 2nan 60 Geefe, like vnto Rauens, with a long beake, and bending downeward like a crooked hooke, mentioned by which the Chinese teach to fish: They have a very long necke, which they binde in such fort Phothat the fifthes cannot goe downe into their fromacke, but they fill their throat with them, if I do not with a they be small filtes, and when they come out of the water, they make them call tilen out; sindeo Ra and if the fifth be great, hee sight thin and barrier him with being and barrier him with being and barrier him with the side of the s and if the fifth bee great, hee fighteeth with him, and heateth him with pecking affaulting him more to

with his bill, vntill hee drine him up that the Fisher may see him; which commeth quickly with a small Net like a Wheele vpon a staffe, and hee taketh him under the water. And after this fort wee faw this Fowle take Fishes sometimes of a pound, and a pound and halfe weight: and they fay they take bigger. And because this fishing is so gainfull and so certaine, they pay a certaine Tribute to the King for enery one of these Rauens (or Cormorants.)

Muddy River. Alume vied in

clarifying of water.

Wee met with another River as great as this , which feemed to bee rather of mudde then water, because the water was alwaies mingled with earth, which whence it should come for fo many yeeres, I wot not. They cannot drinke the water without they clarifie it, which they doe with Alume. Befides these two Rivers all the reft is made by hand for veffels to passe The Vettels which we faw in all the Cities which we paffed, is one of the greatest things that

Shipping. . 5h p-houses.

belong to this Kingdome. For in every Citie there are two forts of them, one fort of vellels for burden, and another fort for houses. Some of them are very faire, and as fit to dwell in a shoules themselues : and many of them also serue for houses for poore people, wherein they have their whole houshold, and bring up Hens and Hogs, and gayne their living in them. I remember that the fame morning that wee entred into Nanquin there went 500. Veffels or more before our Barke, to enter at the same houre, with their sayles vp most pleasantly to behold; many of them being laden with divers things, all for the provision of that great Citie : and on this manner. they continued all day long in going and comming. The Barges of the Mandarines (which are all made at the Kings coft) are the most costly, and

Multitude of

are most for the fight, and very great. They would much reioyce in our Europe to see them; be-The excellent cause it seemeth that there is nothing comparable to these in beauty. Most commonly these beauty of the haue Trumpets, and Drummes, which they play vpon when they paffe by the Citie, and when Mandarines they meet with others, that all may give them place. They are commonly as long as Gallies, Barges. and as broad or more, but very high, to that to get vp into one of them is aboue a fathome high

Tributes in money and in

And because I spake before of those which carrie the Kings Tribute, I will here speake more particularly. Many Prouinces from whence they cannot carrie Rice and other like things with eafe to Paquin; because they are farre off, pay their Tribute in Silver : but those Provinces from whence they may passe by water, pay a great part in Rice. For which occasion all the Cities have great and strong Vessels made of purpose for this service. And when the time of their departure is come, euery Cafila or Companie departeth from their Citie with a Mandarine that hath the charge of them.

from the water, and therefore they carrie a great burthen.

10000. Veffels at Nanquin for Tribute of Victuals, and 1000 for other I know not certainly how many they be; but this onely I know, that all this way from News Tributes : and others many Path-way of hips.

hike Sluces, where with it keepeth in all the current uncoor route of a substitution of the Sluces, where with it keepeth in all the current uncoor route of substitution of the Sluces, where with it keepeth in all the current uncoor route of substitution of the Sluces, where with it keepeth in all the current uncoor route of substitution of the Sluces, where with it keepeth in all the current uncoor route of substitution of the Sluces, where with it keepeth in all the current uncoor route of substitution of the Sluces, where with it keepeth in all the current uncoor route of substitution of the Sluces, where with it keepeth in all the current uncoor route of substitution of the Sluces of Sl

Besides these Vessels of victuals, they carrie to the King every yeere many others, which bring him particular things, and dainties, whereof this Countrey of Nangain yeeldeth great ftore, and allo for the leruice of the Kings houle. Some Cafilas or Caravans of these are of pieces of Silke for the Kings house, which may be some dozen of Vessels; others carrie many things to eate : and with one of these Canlas we passed. They were nine great and faire Vessels, which Silkes and per- carried pieces of Silke, and other things which they are wont to burne in the Sacrifices which they make vinto the dead, and before their Idols. They fay, that these Vessels for particu- 50 far things are a thousand : and as soone as they come within the Kings house, the Eunuches take the charge of them. From Nanquin vnto the middeft of the Kings Palaces, Veffels may paffe by this River: to come to the place which they goe voto, they paffe thorow the middelt of the Palaces. In all these Rivers, when they want winde, the Mariners draw the · Barkes with great facilitie, and fixe or feuen are fufficient eatily and merrily to draw one of the

And they fay that those Vessels which goe from this part of Nauquin, in all amount to

ten thousand, though they goe not all enery yeere : yet they have alwaies more for yeeres

of greater plenty; and because many cannot returne in time, to goe backe agains the next veere.

quin to Paquin, seemed to be a path-way of these Vessels, whereby wee passed : for they went

all along , and because they went so deeply loden , oftentimes they wanted water. To helpe

like Sluces, wherewith it keepeth in all the current three or foure or fixe houres : then opening

this want of water (for because it is no naturall River it never overfloweth) it hath floud-gates

7 effels for

Wee met likewise upon this way a very great number of Vessels which came from farre, hden with Brickes for the Kings workes, and greater store this yeere to build a great piece of an house which fire from Heaven had burned : for this purpose they carried great store of timber for beames, and boords, and other leffer timber which are carried from the parts of Nanquin vn- 60 to Paguin, some an hundred and two hundred paces long, and one log fastened eport another, so that thefe rafts grow high and great : they carrie upon them frames of dwelling houses ready made, wherewich there goeth an inferiour Mandarine, which hath the care of it, and sometimes the Marmers goe with all their houshold, and breed of Hogs, Hens and Duckes : for fometimes

CHAP.6. \$.3. China merchandise, cheape food, buee Plaines, spare diet. they flay about a Summer in going to Paquin. These seuen or eight yeeres this prouision of timber, Brickes, and lime, and other things bath continued.

The fertilitie of this Kingdome is great, of all things that feeme to be needfull for the vie of mans life, And if there bee any other Nation which liveth commodiously without needing trafficke with forraine Kingdomes, they are the Chinou. And though it bee true that some things come vnto them from forraine Countries, yet are they not the necessary things for the life, and which all men vie. The most that commeth out of forraine parts, and they deare, is Siluer: Silveringree. And that which all men carrie from thence is very much, and very good merchandife: as Silke, teft request in

Gold, Muske, Porcelanes, pieces of wrought Silke, raw Silke, cloth of Cotton wooll, all kinde China to of works in Copper, Iron, and Latten, Quickfilter, Sugar, Honey, Waxe, Cinnamon, works the greatifier made of fine wood, and gilded, as Bedfeads, Ink-horns, Cabinets, and an infinite number of other of metchan. thines, whereof there is so great abundance, that although they send out many ships laden for dise in china. Lapon, India, Manila, and other parts : yet without doubt they might prouide ten times more: and if more would come to buy, they would alwaies have the more to fell. All things are very Chespness. cheape, without all comparison cheaper then in our Countrey. A pound of Sugar is worth eight or ten Marauedis, and sometimes fixe: and if they buy any quantitie at once, an hundred pounds weight are worth nine or ten Rials of Plate: And here at the Court (where all things are dearest) a pound is worth twenty, or sourceand twenty Marauedis. There is great store of Waxe and that very good, which wee buy heere in Paquin for the feruice of our Altar, a pound for a 20 Riall and a Quartill: and the pounds here are greater then ours; for every one of them weigh fixteene Duckets of Silver weight. Honey likewise is very good cheape. Of Copper and Latten thete is exceeding great abundance: and Latten made and wrought into any worke that

a man would have, with the fashion and all is worth a Riall and a Quartill the pound. Needles an hundred a quarto, and if they buy many together, better cheape. And I have fet downe for example their small things to know the particular price, and of other things (though they bee not so cheape) after the same proportion. Howbeit those which come from forraine Countries Acaution for to trafficke with them, had need to be very heedfull: for the Chinois lose not opportunities to frange Merraife the price of them, when they may.

The abundance of things for food is likewife great, to wit of Oxen, Weathers, Sheepe, Vidual flore 20 Goats, and more then of all others of Hogs, because they are the common food that they line and sheape. of, Deere, Hares, which they catch with Hawkes, whereof here and in other parts there are many. And when they are dearest here, one of them is worth foure or fixe Quartos: they be as great as they bee in our Countrey, and they are found at all times. Hens, Geele, Duckes, and fundry forts of wilde Fowles, and all other fielh is exceeding good cheape. Wee came to a very great Citie, where Beefe, Mutton, Hennes, all was of one price a pound, which was foure Marauedis. And in Nanquin (though the Court be there) a pound of Hens fielh was fold for three halfpence. Fishes after the same manner, or better cheape, because it stands vpon the River. And I faw a Fish of ten pound weight sold for a Riall of Plate, and we bought great Trouts at Size pence. three Marauedis a pound weight. Egges ten, twelue, fixteene, eighteene for one Conduren. One halfpeny,

40 which in our Countrey is a penie halfpenie farthing. Fruits are of the like cheapnesse. In our iourney, which was when Abricockes beganne to bee ripe, which are here very good, they gaue vs two hundred for ten Marauedis. They are very much giuen to eate fresh Herbs and Sa-Herbs. lads, and Pulse. At every banquet and good feast, there is alwaies Fleth or Fish. There are many Nuts, Chestnuts, Filberds, and Pine-nuts though but few, Figs, though not of our kinde, and yet as good or better, and many. And although they have all these things, yet euery Province and Countrey doth not yeeld them all : but that which one wanteth another supplyeth.

Their common food in stead of Bread is Rice solden only in water, whereof wee all did feed, although at the first wee had much adoe with it. Commonly they have every yeere two Har- Two and three 50 uefts, and in some places three. And the Land hath great Plaines with Rivers to water the Harvestin grounds: for the fields of Rice doe much defire to be covered with water.

From our entrance into Canton vnto this Citie of Paquin, wee met with few Hills, and efpe- Plaine Councially from Nanguin hither very few. Wee passed by a Plane aboue an hundred leagues, farther trey, then wee could kenne. I faw likewise much Wheat, whereof they make rolls without leaven, Plaine of folden in the reeke or vapour of feething water, and fo without crust, good for old folkes that 100. leagues. want their teeth. Although that it bee true that the fruitfulnesse or this Countrey is very great, yet without doubt other things, faue Rice would not be fufficient, if the Chinois were as Spare feeding, great feeders as our people, and did not feed fo sparingly as they doe. They all eate commonly thrice a day; once, betimes in the morning; the second time, at two in the afternoone; the third time, very moderatly at night. And befides, the rich Mandarines, few others which are of good abilitie, doe commonly eate either Flesh or Fish, but Pulse, Salads, and Herbs which cost Herb-caters,

almost nothing, and their chiefest food is Rice, or Millet, and hereof they fill their bellies. They have many Hories, Mares, and Mules, whose fielh they eare, though I have not heard Horserseen report that the greater fort doe feed voon them. They have much Wine of divers forts; all Winerdivers.

. C

266

made of Rice: but herein they may not compare with the Wine of our Countrey: Whatfoe ner they drinke, be it Wine or Water they drinke it alwaies hot. They are neate in feeding, for they touch none of their meate with their hands, therefore they vie neither Table Napkins, nor Table-clothes. All their meat is ferued to the Table finely minced. They vie to feed with two fmall flickes of Juorie, Eborne Wood, or fuch like, wherewith they take vp all their meate verie hansomely. And herein, I confesse, they have a great advantage of vs. because this manner of feeding is very commodious, and such as euerie man that hath triall thereof will much delight in it : and therefore our Fathers and Brethren in Lapon and Macas vie it. Their alwaies drinking Benefit of bot their drinke hot, and eating little fruit (for they are not so greedie of to as our men are) doth their drinke nor, and caring interesting the state of the no Oliues, yet haue they abundance of Oile. The best is of a kind of Herbe, which they call in Oilemade of Spaine, Aleoria, which fignifieth Ioy or Mirth. I fay not that it is as good as ours, but Nav. I find no fault in it. nor I doe not defire it, nor much leffe the Chinese, which can eate nor finell no kind an herbe. of Oile, because the smell thereof pleaseth them not, as sometimes were prooued by a little of ours which we had : and they call their flinking Oile odoriferous, fo great a force eliere is in cuftome. As the Chinois are diverse in divers Provinces, fo are their Fruits; and those which grow in the Province of Canton, are not in all these colder Provinces. There are the best sweete O. ranges which hitherto we have knowne, which are eaten with the skinne.

Cold Prouin-

Their Moneyes, Apparell, Persons, Trades, Wealth, Learning, Marriages, Superstitions, Rites, and Opinions.

beboughtin

Timber plenty

Here is in this Kingdome great flore of Timber; for proofe whereof wee netd no more but to be the shallistude of Barges laden therewith fo good cheape as it is. And therewith Good cheape as it is. And therewith Good to the shall be fore I thinke a man may build a thip with all things necessary thereunto, three parts of 10 foure better cheape then in our Countrey. They vie not Gold, though therebe much to be bought; but all is Silver, which they doe not coyne in Money, but cast it in Barres, and when they would buy any thing, they cut it and weigh it in certayne fine Weights like the Romane Weights in our Countrey : and therefore every body that will buy or fell, carryeth one of thole Weights with them. Great store of Silver commeth out of forreine Countreyes, But the chiefe Maffe of it is out of the Mynes of the Kingdome it selfe, as also the Gold. When they buy or fell, they try the Siluer of how many Kiliates it is : and one is worth more; another leffe. according to the goodnesse thereof. It was very necessary for the Chinois to weigh and try their

Silver, and not to coyne it into money : for otherwife there would have beene a thousand deceits, wherein the Chinois are very cunning. They vie Braffe Money, wherein also they try that 40 which is true or falle : for in all forts there is deceit and mixture. They have the best Porcelane that hitherto hath beene found, which is exceeding good cheape, and in fuch plentie, that befides

they will.

For their Apparell, though they have great abundance and cheapnesse, yet in goodnesse they may not compare with our Countrey. There is much Silke and that very good, but they know not how to dreffe it. They make good Damaskes, razed Veluets, Taffataes, and other forts ; but the colours, though at the first tight they seeme reasonable, are quickly lost and fade away. The ordinary apparell of the common people is of blacke cloth made of Cotton, or of certains shags of Silke, which are very great, farre greater then a flocke, which only serue for this pur- so pole, and are very warme. Persons of Honour weare commonly an outward Garment of Silke which they vie in Vilitations, and other like Actions: And there are many which alwayes goe abroad apparelled in Silke, but not in fuch great number as that Booke fetteth downe, whereof I made mention before. All men, even to the very Souldiers, weare their apparell long downe to the in-step of the foot, with very broad sleeues, open before, and fastened to the sides beneath the arme. They be so well contented and pleased with their manner of apparell, that they think there is none in the World comparable to theirs. And in very truth they bee graue and modelt, and especially those of the Mandarins, which differeth from all others, saving the Bonzi, which shaue their Beards and Heads. All the men and women let their Hayre grow long, and the men truffe it vp, and wind it on a knot on the top of their crowne. They weare certayne Netson 60 their heads like Coyffes, made very cunningly of Horse-hayre : and in the Summer time many weare Caps and Hats of the same. There are many forts of Caps or Hats (for I know not what their feuerall names are) according to the state of euery one. The bafest fort which the common people wie ordinarily is round. Their shooes, are of the same stuffe that their Garments are

all the Kingdome of China doth turnish it selfe thereof, they fend forthas many ships ladines as

CHAP.6.S.4. The Persons, Trades, Riches, Nobitie, Marriage, Heires.

of, very commonly of Silke made with many faire borders and knots. It is a discouragife for a man to be seene (especially before any man of Worship) without a Cap on his head. They greatly effective for the most part things of our Countrey, and they are very deare. And some pieces of Silke which the Portugal Merchants brings, especially Veluets of three Piles, are far more dearer then their owne. All woollen cloth is much effeetned and very deare, likewise Chamblers, and fine Linnen-cloth, which they bring from India are very deare. Looking-glaffes, and all things made of Glaffe, and many other things, which in our Countrey are very good cheape. are here deare, and in great estimation.

The Chineses hause commonly little Beards, small Eyes, and Noses, and all of them have black To Eves, so that they much maruelled at the colour of mine, which are of Gray or Iron colour - Sarca let. (which they never faw) and they find matty fecrets in them, and very commonly they fay, that foruming, thefe eves of mine know where stones and precious things are, with a thousand other Myste. ries, so that they thinke they have Letters in them. To paint an cuil-favoured man, they paint him in short apparell, with a great Beard, Eyes, and Nole. They are commonly all white, yet not fo white as those of Europe: and cherefore to them we feeme very white. The Learned men are very graue, of very good capacitie, and appeare outwardly very modest and graue.

There are Arificers of all Arts that are in our Countrey, and very many with the felfe-same Trades. manner forme of Instruments. Every man is free to follow what Trade he will, without being bound to follow his Fathers Trades, 4s divers times I have heard it spoken when I was in Europe : and those which will may study, fortake, or change that course of life. They worke vorte ood cheape : but in cunning and excellencie ours most commonly excell them much, though in some things they be very skilfull.

The service of young men and maydes is easie and good cheape, because there is great store of people, so that a yeares wages is not aboue two Duckets, and meate and drinke, without appar people, to that a yeares wages is not about two orderes, and interest and Daughters, it is avery ordischape, rell. As there are many poore people that have many Sonnes and Daughters, it is avery ordischape, rell. As there are many poore people that have many Sonnes and Daughters, it is avery ordischape. nary thing to fell them, and this the cheapest thing in China. For a youth of twelve or fifteene dien vic. veares without any naturall blemish will cost not past twelve or fifteene Rials of Plate, and in time of Dearth much leffe, and it is a common thing to buy them for service; though they vie them well, and marry them at their time.

Although the abun lance and riches of this Kingdome be very great, as the people alfris: yet Nonevery there is no body that is very rich, newther in any state of people may they compare in this point rich. with our Countrey, Youfhall not find in China, which is able to fread twenty thoufand Duokets of Rent how neere of Kinne focuer he be to the King, and very few, and those case to be numbred that can found ten thouland Duckers, and the ordinary is no more which they poffesses then that which their Lands and Offices yeeld them, which is not great. But though it bee true Yet astich as that those of our Countries pollelle much more Silvery considering the cheapnelle of things in ours very tich their Countrey, all commeth to one account.

There are very few of the poore people idle, because all of them commonly cake paties, and Fewidle. earne their living. Though the multitude of the Nation be fo many, and the Kingdome fo great, Surnames, 40 yet the lurnames of all the Kingdome are not aboue three hundred, and all of one fyllable.

There are fome, though very few, which may be called Knights, which for feruice-to the Knights. Kings in some necessities have given them Offices in succession: but the common vie is not to haue any Nobilitie by Descent in China; neyther can any man say, I am of a better Nouse then Nobilitie on you. But the honour and Nobilitie dependeth wholly vpon Learning, and to obtayine degrees ly in Learning. and Offices of Mandarins. And therefore an House which now is in Office, and his Father bee one, if he haue a Sonne a Doctor, which is made a Mandarin, he is honourable, and the honour No Lordbut continueth as long as the Learned men and Mandarins doe line. There is no man, neyther Kiniman nor not Kiniman of the King which hath ever a Village of his owne that payeth him Tribute : but all men pay it to the King; and hee gineth stipends and wages to the Mandarins, 50 fo that they receive nothing of particular men by right, though they extort much continually Extortion.

Commonly the Chinois doe marry from fifteene to eighteene and twentie yeares, and all of them doe marrie one Wife that is chiefe; and this is their lawfull Marriage. On the day of their Marriage, when the Bride doth passe to the House of her Husband, shee carrieth openly before her through the ffreets all the things which she bringeth with her, and all her house-hold stuffe: But besides her they may marrie (I say they may keepe and doe keepe as many as they areable) as many Wiues as they will, which for the most part they buy : and afterward when they will, fell them away againe. They may not only not marrie with any Kinfwomen of their Wines, but with none of that furname, though they have no shew of Alliance. The sonnes of the Concu-

With none of that turning, though they have no mew of Annance. The following to be the Inheritance:

60 bines doe likewife inherit, and there is little or no difference in their flate and honour, to be the Inheritance. Sonne of the lawfull Wife or of the other, neyther make they any question of it. The thing wherein the Chinois are most observant, Ceremonious and Superstitious is in their Functals and

Burials, Funerals, and Mournings: for herein they shew their obedience and loue to their Pa-mournings. rents, whereof their bookes are full. It is a very ordinary thing to have great respect to their F1-

ther and Mother, and the disobedient are grieuously punished, Many graue men and Manda. rins begge leane of the King to leave their Offices which they have, and to goehome to keepe their Father and Mother company, yeelding for a reason that they be old, and that they would goe to ferue them. And it is a Petition in the fight of all men fo just, that they grant it very ve fuelly. When the Father or the Mother dieth, all the Sonnes and Daughters (from the King to white Linnen, the meaneft Pealant) doe mourne for three yeares. The mourning colour, which among vsis blacke Baves, among them is white Linnen, whereof they make all their apparell euen to the Cap. The first monethes they weare a very rough Sack-cloth, girded with a Coard, like the bare-footed Friers. And though he be neuer fo great a Mandarm, withoutany exception (fane only the Mandarins of the Warre) affoone as hee heareth newes of the death of any of his Pa- 10 rents, he is to leaue his Office and Dignitie, and all other Employment what focuer of Gonemment and Examinations of obtayning his degree, and is to goe home for three yeares to burie

his Father or Mother(and to mourne and bewaile them. The graue men which haue an house for this purpose, doe not straitway burie their dead, but keepe them two or three yeares in the house, in a Chamber which they keepe for this Office, and it is not the worst in the house : and very viually or enery day they go thither to make them a thouland Ceremonies and Renerences. and to burne Incense, and other sweet sauours, and to set ouer the place where they be laid, meate to eate; and at severall times, many of those Bonza doe meet, and with great Ceremonies begin their Seruice and Prayers, and their Sonnes, Kinsefolkes and Wives make lamentation. The Mandanus do not only leave their Offices, and change their Weeds, but also all the things which 20 they did vie. Many fit not in Chaires, but vpon low Stooles : they visit, or fuffer themselves to be feene very seldome: they change euen the very Paper wherein they write, wherein they haue a piece of another colour, in token of mourning : when they name themselues in their

Letters, they vie not the name which they did at other times, but others proper to the partie, as

when he nameth himfelte, hee calleth himfelfe disbedient, fignifying, that by his disobedience

They wie no kind of Mulikce, and many change their ordinarie Diet into courier food. You

the Funerall day they prouide great company : many Kinsfolkes and Friends meete together all

clad in white, with many Bonzs, (according to every mans abilitie) which fing with dolefull In-

into a very great Coffin. This Nation holdeth a great part of their felicitie, for them and their

Succeffours to confift in these things of their Funerals, especially in two, the Coffin or Chiff

to his Parents he did not preferue them aliue.

Other Fone.

ffruments. And by their apparell which they weare, and their time in finging, hee that knew 10 them not, would take them for Clerkes reuested, singing plaine Song; for they much resemble them. They make many Beeres with men, of Paper or of white Silke, many Banners and other Ensignes. The place whither the Corps goeth is adorned with many figures: the Corps is put

Coffin.

wherein the Corps is to be layed, and the place of their buriall. The stuffe to make the Coffin of, wherein themselues are to bee buried, and the making of the Coffin, they leave not to others to doe after their deathes, neither then may the body looke for much cost to make one of these Coffins, neither in this (as a thing of great importance) will they truft, no not their owne Sons: but they themselues at leisure seeke some kind of Wood that is least corruptible, and Plankes 40 which are commonly foure, fixe, or eight fingers thicke : which because they bee so thicke, and the Chifts or Coffins very closely thut they can keepe their Corps in their Houses without any euill smell. Some spend in making their Coffin seuenty, eighty, and an hundred Duckets. They hold it for a felicity to be able to get one of these that is good; on the contrary for a great disgrace, not to haue a Coffin to burie himselfe in , and they are very few which faile in that one

Vnluckie ro buric in the Cirie.

The Sepulchre and place thereof is the thing for chooling whereof they vie great Sorcerie or casting of Lots, and doe it with great heedfulnesse, and with the helpe of some that are skilfull in this Art. For they hold opinion, that in making a good choice of the place dependeth agreat part of their owne good fortune and of their Posteritie. And oftentimes they are a yeare in re- 50 foluing whether it shall looke toward the North, or to any other part. And therefore the greatest and most contentious Sutes which are in China, are about places of Burials. These places of Burials are alwayes without the wals in the fields, or Mountaynes wherein they build Vaults very well made and strong of Bricke, stone, or other matter, wherein they lay the Coffin, and then close it vp very furely : And afterward now and then they come thither to performe certain Ceremonies, & to bring things to eat. They hold it very valuckie to burie a dead man in the Citie: and if they know it, though he were the greatest man that is in China, they will not fufhim to bewaile his dead Friends much, especially those which are women. There are many which believe the paffing of the foules from one bodie into another; and therefore after the death of their Father and Mother, they will neuer kill any living beaft, yeelding for a reason 60 why they will not doe fo , left fome of them should be their Mother or Father, or some other other person. And likewise many of them fast, because, that whereas some of them bee poore; they defire afterward to be borne againe in a rich and honourable Family.

Although it bee true that the most part of them believe not in Idols, and it offendeth them

CHAP. 6. S. S. Hell portraied. Lots, Dininations ; Long life, Alchimie.

not to speake euill of them, yet commonly all of them at a certaine time of the yeare doe them fome reverence, because it is the custome, though in no fort they worship them as Gods; and those Idolarie. which put most confidence in them, burne Paper, Incense, and sweet smels vnto them, and kill beaits before them. Their Bookes of these Idols speake of Hell, and in many places, or in a manner in all the Cities there is fet vp a portraiture of Hell made with bodily shapes, and many Denils, as velie as wee paint them. It is very well fet foorth, but badly beleeued : for it ferueth only there for a bugbeare. And if any beleeue that which the Idols fay of Hell, that it is a place Of Hell. of torments, they fay, that after fo many yeeres be paffed, all men come out againe, and are trans-Seein Pinte. formed into some beatt. Those which beleeue in the Idols, come before them to cast lots to know Lots. what things shall come to passe: howbeit I have not heard in all China, that there was any anfwer of a Diuell in an Idoll, as is in other parts, in regard of the small beliefe that they have in them, and the lewdnesse of the Bonza that serue them. Their houses wherein they set them, Wicked Benzi.

whereof as yet I neuer faw any good one, are commonly verie filthy and stinking, And besides this consulting of Idols, the Chinois are much given to Divinations to know things Diviners and to come, and whether they shall have good or bad fortune; whether they shall have that which disinations. they defire or no : and there bee an infinite number of these South-sayers, and all of them pratlers, mumblers, and coofeners, whereby they deceive many. And though the Chinois be of good understanding, and know that these fellowes know nothing, and every foot doe take them in lves : yet for all this, there are verie few that when any occasion is offered, doe not confult with 20 them. And though they seeme to bee but few, yet some of them are in league with the Deuill.

as oftentimes wee gather by certaine things.

Many of these grave men of China, have commonly two follies, wherein they doe erre more then in other things. The first is, that they perswade themselves that they can much prolong Studies to pretheir Lines ; and for this purpose they vie a thousand inventions, and take many medicines, which long life. indeed rather doe shorten their dayes. There are many Masters and Bookes of this follie, which wfuallie are graue and rich men. There are many that make themselues very old folks, whom the people follow like Saints to learne tome rule of life of them, wherein they put all their felicitie. Many doe not beleeue that we are so old, as we say we be, and that we doe dissemble : but that in deed we bee an hundred yeeres old, and that we know this rule to live for ever, and that we doe 30 not Marrie because wee would line long. The other follie is, that they perswade themselves that they are able, and goe about to make Silver, whereof likewife there are many Bookes. They vie Rooker of Ale for this purpose many Hearbs, and Quick-siluer, wherein they spend that little Siluer which chimie, they have, and remaine beggers, but not perswaded but that it is feeible, but that it was not their good lucke, and good fortune : and to obtains this, many of them fast many yeeres.

Their bad Souldierie and Artillerie; Degrees, Priviledges, Honours and promotions of Learning. Their Authors and Bookes, and Printing, The Mandarins commended.

Here are many Souldiers in many Prouinces of this Kingdome: and though they have Souldiers man had Peace these many yeeres, yet they still entertaine them : but because they bee lo- ny and iew. uers of peace and quietnesse, the most contemptible state, except the state of the Bonzs, is the Souldier. And indeed it is a most base people, which hath no valour nor

worthinesse, much lesse any fortitude in them. Many of them are Porters, which beare on their thoulders, the Chaires wherein the Mandarins and honourable persons are carried. And at the 50 time of Musters, which are made from time to time, they repaire thither, to obtaine wages, and thus they have no worth, nor jot of honour in them. The punishment wherewith their Captaines punish them, is the same wherewith they punish all other people : they whip them Basenesse. as wee doe Children in Schooles. According to the worthineffe and valour of the Souldiers, the Armour and beautie of their Armour, offensiue and defensiue is answerable, which is sitter to bee laughed at, Armes, then to be reported. They have no Harquebusses that are worth any thing; and all those which Thebarrels of I faw (and I faw many Souldiers with them) had their barrels but a pannel long: fo that it fee-but a foan long meth that they beare it and the rest of their Armour for fashions take. And I maruell not : for by reason of the exceeding great Peace which they have so long enjoyed, they have none occa. The cartesof fion to become valiant: but they are able men when occasion serueth, and it seemeth they will bad Souldies, 60 eafilie become val:ant.

The Mandarms of Souldiers, is also a thing of small estimation, and they are nothing compaction of choice from rable with those which they call the Mandarns of Learning, which are those, which take De theronomy grees. The Mandarius or Captaines of Souldiers, obtaine not the same for Heroicall arts or proweffe, but they make a Discourse or an Oration, upon some matter concerning warre, and they

make choife of certaine of those which had done it best. Likewise they shoote two or three Ar. Exercifes Mirowes, to fee if they bee skilfull in shooting. They have no vie of great Ordnance. Albeit I fam litarie.
No Ordannee in the Gates of some Cities, certaine small short Pieces, as broad at the mouth as at the nether end, which I know not whether they shot off sometimes or no : I saw about fixe or eight of them woon the Walls. The defence of their Walls is their height, without any other Artillerie The greatest force and number of Souldiers, resideth in the confines of the Tartage

Terration com-Feare of Tar-

Mahometons.

No weapons

in houses.

It is foure hundred yeeres fince a King of the Tartars wonne all China, (whereof Paulu, Ve. netus writeth, which was in that Countrey) and they did also possesse it two hundred years at the end whereof, a Bonzo a very prudent and valiant man rebelled, and cast the Tarray out, and at the end whereof, a Dorse's very product and the day. They always keepe great Watch and the semanned King, whole islue continueth whill this day. They always keepe great Watch and the semanned with the semann ward upon this frontier. Many youthes of these Tartars remayned in China, and namely in these parts of Paquin, there are many which keepe and maintayne their Law of Mahomet, and haue Mezquitas or Turkill Temples, and are much different in shapes and countenances from the Chinois. Except the Souldiers, there is none that keepe Weapons in their houses : not become it is forbidden, but because there is no need of them: but rather the Learned and grate people, count it a dishonest thing to keeps Armour : there is no vie of them but in the time of warre. For you shall never see them fight with weapons one with another as wee doe. But their figh.

Not bloudie.

ting is to buffet one another, to pull them by the hayre of the head, and to draw them by the coller, and in two words to become friends againe. Our men make no great matter of giving buffets and fuch like, for they kill one another. Studious. The Chinois are greatly given to Learning and studie; for all their honour and riches depen-

Many Chara.

deth thereupon. They have aboue fortie thousand fundry Letters : though many of them bee made one of another. They have no A,B,C, nor any thing like thereunto, as among vs. But to fignific euerie thing they have one Letter, and all diverse. Their words are of one syllable, and no Monofyllable more, though their Letters bee so many. Those which are commonly vsed every day, are eight or ten thousand. They begin to learne to write and reade commonly, when they be seuen yestes old : they write with Penfils. They have many little Bookes which encourage Children to ftu-Penfil-writing. die, exhorting them to take paines, with the reward that they shall grow to bee Mandarius. Rhetorike fole such thing, but onely Rhetoricke : for all the substance of their knowledge and fame of Learned

grees which is Trigantius, and from it. therefore here omitted. Glory of Do.

They know not, nor studie any Science, neither Mathematickes, nor Philosophie, nor any men, confisteth in nothing elfe, but to know how to make a very elegant Difcourse and Oration 3 vpona theame, like as in our Europe the Oratours vied anciently. And as the Chinese have good wits, and by hope of reward are verie appliable hereunto, they doe it with great excellenmore exact in cie, and occupie themselues with nothing elfe, and haue no other knowledge to distract them Euery Doctor (after hee hath obtained his degree) setteth up in his Countrey before the doores of his House a Title of verie great letters, which faith : Thu is the House of a Doller:

which all men haue in regard. And before the doore, they fet vp many high Poles like mafts, which euerie Mandarm of that Citie where hee dwelleth fendeth him, with a Banner hanged vp, and alwaies they remaine there. They make a verie excellent Arch triumphall, to him that hath the first degree, at the gate of his House. The Chinois esteeme more then we doe, the skill to bee able to write well, and Print euerie yeere a great number of Bookes, whereof there is no floreof bookes examination nor choife, and euerie man Printeth what hee lift, good or bad, and so they make booke of nothing. The best which come foorth are of no Science; for as I have faid, they know none: but they are onely of Morall sentences, to the advancement of good Customes and Gouernment. Their manner of Printing is not like ours : for they joyne not their Letters, but for euerie leafe they make a table which hath letters on both fides, it would feeme to beevery hard, Easte Printing. but with the custome which they have gotten, they doe it with great ease, speed and cheapenesse. I will fend you some Booke well printed, that your Worship may see it. They also print Letters in white, I say white letters, and the ground blacke. And though in the former they 10 come not neare vs, yet in this they goe far beyond vs. They vsually print these letters in Stones, and the letters stand not in the Stone voward to touch the Paper directly, but in the paper and Printing white the stone they stand all one way : and this is the order whereby they doe this : They werthe Paper, and laying it vpon the toppe of the Stone, they gently beate it with some veriegentle thing, wherby the Paper which lyeth vpon the Stone finketh into the hollownesse of the Letter, and resteth lower then the other, then with a kind of Inke which they have for this purpose, they finely lay it ouer, whereby the Letters remaine white, because they bee deeper, and the rest remaineth blacke. I fend you with this Letter certaine papers thereof, that your Worship may rejoyce in beholding the excellencie wherewith it is done. One of our Bookes of equall volume Most can write with one of theirs, containeth much more : for our letter is leffer then theirs. Though in China it 60 be harder to learne to reade and write, then in our Country, yet there be few but know ordinarie

and reade.

Poetrie.

Letters to deale betweene man and man. Likewise they make great account of Poetrie, and also the graver fort give themselves much vnto it. It is verie ordinarie with them to fend vs fome Poche in praise of vs, when wee enter

into friendship with any. Also they make much account of Paintings, and playing upon Instru- Painting and ments. And albeit they know but little in the first, because they have no Art, nor paint the Musicke. things with shadowes, and know not how to paint in Oile : yet in the second they are verie readie on their Instruments, and play gravely and leafurely. I heard certaine forts of Musicke. especially in the Palace of the King : to welcome me, the Eunuches his Musicians played vnto me awaile, and they pleafed me : although in this, little it feemeth vnto me they may compare with our Countrey, yet it is certaine, that they thinke they doe farre excell vs. They have not aboue one kinde of Instrument, which the graver fore vse and make much account of, which is like vnto our Harpe, although the fashion and manner of playing voon it differeth from ours and to from all our other Instruments.

As in China there is no fort of people more honourable then the Learned men, and Doctors: Noble Spirit fo there is no people of better condition, and of more Honourable and more Noble manner of of the Mandaproceeding. And albeit before they were Doctors and Mandarins, they were verie poore and vint. base people, and many of their Fathers officers of vile Offices, (as it is verie ordinarie) neuentheleffe, after they have obtayned the Degrees, they put upon themselves a more honourable spirit. And therefore albeit in China, wee indured much trouble at the base peoples hand, yet the Mandowns did alwaies wie vs honourably and with much respect : especially now, for which cause now no man dare trouble vs. And if there bee any, which in title are like our Lords, Knights, and Courtiers, they are thele. There are among them, men of much excellencie and finceritie in their 20 Office, which doe feeke the common good : And without doubt they make vs wonder, that fee- Sinceritie of

ing they bee but Gentiles, which doe nothing for the zeale of Gods honour, nor for his fake, they fome. be of fuch finceritie, which they shewed of late more then at other times, in having to doe with this wicked, vicious, and couetous King, which they now have : who though hee be so absolute The present a Lord, that with the same libertie, and in a manner with the same facilitie, liee doth what he Kings dispose lift with the greatest Mandarins of his Kingdome, as well as with the basest people thereof. Yet for all this, of late yeeres there were many, who with great libertie and courage reprehended his faults by writing (which is the manner of speaking most publikely with him) that all men might read it. And though they might feare some grieuous punishment (besides the losing of their Offices, for that was certayn) neuertheleffe, there were many men of courage which wroce 30 vnto him: among whom there was one very renowned : The letter which he wrote to the King. began thus. That although bee were affered, that he were so be hanged, and that the Fire were kindled

to burne him, yet bee would reprehend his vices and lemduesses, and the enil example that bee gave to all Hetoike zeale. bis Kingdome : And so hee did, and spake verie freely, and put him in great feare. And it seemeth that for his finceritie and courage, the King had fome regard of him, and though hee punithed him, yet it was verie moderately.

There fell out another accident in this kinde within these few yeeres, which because it is notable I will heere fet it downe. This King hath many women besides his lawfull wife, which among themselues keepe the order of first and second. Hee hath no Sonnes by his lawfull Wife, but he hath one which is the eldeft of the third or fourth, and others youger of the fecond. The 40 Eldest by the custome or lawes of the Kingdome, is the lawfull infleritour, although he bee of the fourth wife : but hee bare more affection to the other and to her Sonne, and defired, by her Outling of perswasion, to aduance him to bee Prince, and would not have aduanced the lawfull Heire. The the Successor time being passed to performe the same, many Mandarus lost their Offices, for reprehending him of this diforder, and for feeking to make him advance the Eldeft. But the principall Mandaries of the Court perceiuing that hee proceeded on, and would not doe that which they requested, and which was reason, consulted together, and published a Proclamation, which commanded all the Mandarius which are in the Court (which are aboue some thoulands) that vn. Thousands of der paine of losing their Office, they should all meete at such a day, and such an houre, in such a Court Manda. place of the Kings Palaces. When they were all affembled at the day appointed, with their

to Enlignes of Mandarins, they put vp a Petition vnto the King, faying, That fince fo often they Enlignes of Creanarins, they put by a rection rule the Airy, styling, a the pine popier tory bad admirld him of a bing of a list, and that her made some account of them, not feeling to admare the true Prince, that her floudd feele those that would ferue him, that all of them would there give oner their Ensignes of Mandarins, and would no longer serne. It seemeth the King was afraid of to great a resolution of the chiefest men of his Kingdome : And so hee commanded an Eunuch to goe foorth vnto them, and answer them, that they should returne their Offices in Gods name, and that hee would fulfill their request. Finally, they did effect so much, that they caused him to doe that which was reason; and so this yeere 1602. hee advanced the true Prince, of whom hereafter I will speake somewhat.

of the Gouernment of China: Of the Mandarins; the China Complements and manifold nicities.

Ow I have touched the flate of the Mandarins, it offereth it felfe to speake of the manner of Gouernment in particular; But I confesse vnto-your Worlhip, that the multitude of Offices which they have is so great a frame, that I was not able to ynderstand it, to reduce it into order. Onely I will say in generall, that they have many good things belonging vnto Gouetnment, but not the execution: finally, it is a Gouttnment of to

Gouernment good if well executed. Lawes lawleffe

Bubes. Dance in a

good trings occurring you continuent or Generals, with a thouland faults. There are no great flore of Lawes, but commonly they decide Controuersies of their owne heads, and make Lawes in their Iurishietton after their pleasarc, eucry one dinerie. And heere your Worthip may imagine, that the Gouernment in the practic cannot bee very suft, fince every one that can tell how to make a good theame or exercise, are not sufficient to bee Law-makers: And it is very ordinarie among them to direct all things to their owne profit, whereby of necessitie, they commit many absurdities and wrongs, and take all that they can get: Bribes are vitall, and men vie these more then any thing else: And though one of them know this fault in another, they all diffemble as being in the fame fault, that others may winke at them. And though they feeke to hide it one from another, yet it is like the fe-

Court Manda

Net naked.

Chiefe Mandarin, or of Heauen. See or thefe afrer in the di . courfe of Riccius and Triguntius. The (econd.

The third Sec.

Counfellof State, or the Colai.

Their wealth meane.

Whipping.

State and

The Mandarius are many in all Cities, but very extraordinarie in the Courts of Nanquin, and Pagnin. For in this Citie of Pagnin, befiles the Mandarins of Armes, whereof no great account is made, and are more in number then the rest; and besides those which alwayes repaire thinther, vpon the business. or all the Provinces: Those that properly belong to this Citie and Court, ate about two thousand and five hundred: who all, or the most part heare Causes ordinarily twice a day; so that wee cannot imagine what businesses occupie so many Mandains, nor what is the luritdiction of euericone. The most principall which are in all the Kingdome and heere, are fixe, Prefixents of fixe Councels, being the chiefeft of the Kingdome. There is one, which is the greatest, to whom belongeth the government of all the Mandarins of the Kingdome, to advance them to higher Offices that doe deferue it, and as much as they deferue, to chastife and to de- 30 grade those which badly performe their Office: which because it is a place so great and honourable, the Chinois call him, The Mandarm of Heauen : who proposeth all these things to the King, as to promote, to advance, to difgrade the Mandarins, and the King confirmeth them: So that all the Mandarins how small societ they bee; that are in all the Kingdome, are appointed by the King. The second hath the charge of all things belonging vnto Ceremonies, as well humane of Courtefies, and ceremonies in all royall Acts, as in making the King, the Prince, and in marrying of them, &c. And all that which belongeth to the worship of the Sacrifices of the Dead, and others which the Kings offer to Heaven and Earth. There is another chiefe of the Councell of Warre : another of the Kings Treasure, which taketh the account of the Kings rents: another Councell is of the Workes, as of the Kings houses, prouision for all things needfarie, for the Walls of the Cities, &c. There is another of Chastisement, whereunto causes criminall and sentences of Death doe belong. About these (fixe) there is onely one Degree, which are absolutely the greatest, before whom whatsouer the King doth in any thing is consulted of. Although it bee true, that these be rich and opulent in the conceit of the Chinois, yet none of them in any thing may compare with any of the meanest Lord of title, of our Countrey. The wages which they have of the King is small: the attendance which they have, is of base people, and of small countenance, yet they are much respected and obeyed : And the common people kneeleth vnto them, as to the Manuarins. The common chastisement which all the Mandarins doe give, is to whip them with peeces of Canes, of foure or fixe fingers broad and thicke, wherewith oftentimes they dye, when it is layd on foundly. Whipping is as common as it is to 50 whip Children in the Schoole : And sometimes for nothing they give a dozen stripes, as well to the Plaintiffe as to the Defendant, and therewith they end the Suites, and they stay to give none other fentence, but fay : Gine him twentie stripes.

Vivally when the Mandarms of any State goe through the fireets, men goe before them crying, or making a noise with Infiruments, for the people to give place. And in particular Cities, when a great Mandarin palieth through the streets, all men hide themselves and goe into houses, and the Handicrafts-men cease from their worke, and that in such fort, that I saw once in a Citie in a street of great trafficke, a Mandarin appeare, and in a moment enery bodie got away, even the very Dogges, with exceeding great filence : so greatly they bee reuerenced of all men. And many carrie Chaines trayling them before them, and other Instruments. But in the Courts 60 (though the Mandarins bee greater) the people runne not away, they doe no more but give way that thy may passe. In the Courts many Mandarins, though they be great, ride on Horibacke, and others in Chaires: but besides them, all goe in Chaires carried on mens shoulders, which according to their Offices are two, or foure, or eight.

CHAP.6.S.7. Vifitors, punishments, Apish humanitie, or tedious salutations. Euery Prouince hath a Visitor, which publikely visiteth the same energy yeere, and taketh in-Visitors. formation of the Man darines. There are fecret and prime Visitors. Sometime one is fent : But

it is no viuall thing, and as I have heard, it is long fince it was left off. I speake this, because I alwaies heard when I was in Spaine, that the Chinois vied this manner of Vilitation.

The Visitor onely may give sentence of death. They be not cruell in punishments by death. Punishment by Onely the King vieth iome cruell execution: and namely this King that now raigneth, which deathrare. is a very wicked man. One of them is that which lately hee caused here to bee executed voon eight men, by the great frofts of Winter, for no great offence for fo cruell a punishment, and as The great they fay, fallely imputed : And this it was : Hee cauted their neckes to be put through a thicke from of Win-

10 planke, which taketh a great part of the head, and they fet the plankes to stand voon Formes. tet in Paquine to that the man standeth upon his feet day and night in the middest of the street, with men to watch him. Hee condemned them to this punishment for three moneths : but they died before fifteene dayes, with their legs all rotted, and burit with standing alwaies on foot : I my selfe faw them stand on this fashion, which pitied me extremely. I neuer faw nor heard of any other cruell punishments; though, as I have faid, often times the Mandarines kill them with whinping, which is a very cruell thing.

The Chinois are very curious in writing of newes, which viually they fet out in Print, and Booker of in a very thort space disperse them through all the Provinces. There are alwaies Bookes where- news. in all the Mandarines of the Kingdome are written, as well their names as their Countries : 20 And because they be changed every foot from one place to another, they blot out and put in the

names as foone as they know them, with great facilitie.

One thing among the reft is (wherein they bee very dutifull and prolixe) in their manifold courtefies, which are of many forts, according to the estate of him with whom they have to Complements doe. The vitall fashion is when they visite one another, the stranger is set on the most honourable hand (which in some places is the right hand, and in the Northerne Proxinces the left) and ment. That putting one hand in the sleeue of the contrarie arme, which is very long and wide, they lift vp which is in a their hands fo fastned together, then bending their (bead and) body downe to the ground, fay- little letter is ing, Zin zin, which is of no signification but an interiection of vrbanitie, their bowing veneration they added out of ing Zin zin, which is of no figurification but an interaction of ordering interaction continuous and interaction in the seal Zove is they change function to the will and the continuous co

Guest hath, and each of them setteth them in their due place, which is the strangers Chaire in the street, they highest place, distant from the wall, and the Chaire of the Master of the house is set in the midst turne to the of the lowest place, one ouer against another. After this (when they have ended their salurations) Bdc: at home they straightway cause a drinke to be brought, which they call Cha, which is water boyled with to the head of a certaine herbe, which they much esteeme, for this is a want of civilitie and courtesie: and at the thebouse, least they must drinke of it twice or thrice. He bringeth forth some Fruit or Sweet-meat, and a which is a-Spoone to take it vp. It the Gueft stay any time, straight without faile they will bring out some gainst the thing to eate, but with some preparation, answerable to the occasion and person: whereon they ward also their eate very little, vnleffe it be at the ordinary houres of feeding, and then they cate somwhat more. Temples and

When they visite one another (vnlesse they be very great friends and familiars) a Boy goeth Halls for enalway before, which carrieth a Libell or Booke of visitation, which they call Paytre, which is as terraynment much as, A Paper of visitation: And this name neuer faileth, for alwaies they vie it: wherein being made much as, a raper of visionance continues of the desired of the second of the quality is with the doors to the South. of them that visite, and those that are visited; so is the manner most different whereafter they Che or Chie a write the fame : to wit, with more humility, either as our better, or as an equall, or as an infe-dinke made riour, as a scholer, or as a master: for as the relations are many and particular, so the fashions and with a certaine manners which they yie are divers. Of thele things, and of all that hereafter I shall say touching here, this point. I will send you the examples in their owners are any wiscolar with the payment with the payme this point, I will fend you the examples in their owne parers of visitations, which great Man-tingpaper. davins, and ordinary men brought vnto vs, fetting down in our tongue vpon euery letter the de- Thefe Libels

50 claration thereof. And I doubt not but your Worthip, our most deare Fathers, and Brethren, and confist of 12. as many others as shall see the same will rejoyce thereat. And when that Paper is brought, they Pages of white as many others as shall fee the fame w.ll retoyce thereat. And when that Paper is brought, they reper a palme carrie newes into the house to him that is wifited, which prepareth himselfe to receive his Guest, Paper a palme that is not become the carrie newes into the house to him that is wifited, which prepareth himselfe to receive his Guest, Paper a palme to the carrier of the paper as a support of the p which commeth within a wirile after. When they be not people which they fee euery day, they &c. fee Ric. vie not ordinary appareil in their vilitations, but they have garment, proper for this purpole, of pages. a farre different fashion. And if by chance one come so apparelled, and another be not, he sayth, Salutation or that he durst not salute him, nor receive him before he had put on his apparell, so he getteth him visitationaway in great hafte to put on his apparell, and then they begin to performe their complements.

When the Guest departeth, hee alwaies goeth before, and at their going out of the doores they wie falutations, and offers of courtefie; according to the qualitie of the Guelt, and the Ma- Taking leave. 60 fter of the house, so he bringeth him more or leffe way, or vnto the street : or it he goe so farie, he stayeth till he take his Chaire, or his Hotle, and then lifting up their armes and ilceues unto their heads they take their leaves and depart one from the other. When they are departed, the Visitor and hee that is visited, each of them send a Boy to give one another thankes, one for his visitation, the other for his good entertaynment and friendly viage. If hee that is visited be not

Head place of

at home, they leave the Paytre at his house, which is a token that hee came to visite him. Hee that is vilited is bound to requite his vilitation prefently, or the next day, if he bee a man of Worthip, or if they be e equals, within three or foure dayes: which payment is performed after the felte fame manner; and it hee finde him not at home, it suffices to leaue the Payne there. If hee that requiteth the vilitation bee a farre greater person then the first which visited him, saif he be some great Mandarin) hee which first visited him, returneth the next day in person with he be tome great Namany nee who a far the came to his house: and if they see one another, he gueth him thankes that he came to his house: and if they see one another, he gueth him thankes by word of mouth. When the man which visiteth is of great Worthin hee fendeth word a good space before with a Pagire : and the Master of the house commeth forth hee fendeth word a good space perior with 1879.

to receive him, and to bring him into the house. All their Houses and Lodgings, have alwayse 10 an head and more honourable place (which is the highest part) where alwayes they place the Gueft. Likewise in their writing they wse a great difference, according to the estates, Dignitie and Age : and in their Letter, the greater the Mandarm is, they vie the greater Letter : those that are equall, or inferiour vie a very small letter : likewise they observe the same order in speaking to energy one according to his qualitie. When they meet in the streets, the ordinary courtese. is, to put their hands into their fleeues, & closing them together to hold them vp, & to vie a com-First acquain. mon speech, which they have for this purpose. When a couple enter into new acquaintance, they doe yet more, and that is, they kneele downe, and touch the ground with their head io often, and

Sending Pre-

with so great ceremonies, that I dare not speake of them, left I should neuer make an end. When they fend Presents, they write downe all things which they fend in a paper, as they 20 doe their speeches, with words of Honour : whereof I send likewise examples to see, of very grave persons which sent vs Presents. And whether the partie receive the Present or not, or only a part, he alwayes fendeth backe another paper with certaine red lines (as herewith is to bee frene) with a Letter which fayth: I shanke you much : And when he receiveth the Present, hee alwayes gineth fome money to the youths that bring it : and hereby he remayneth bound to anfwer him, with another Presentas great at the least: And herein they be very precise, especially persons that are not of the greatest account. A thing which I finde very strange, and which doth put vs to much trouble, to be driven equally to answer those Presents which the greater Mande. rins doe fend vs, for they alwayes defire some thing of our Countrey, and here we are very poore,

They lend vs fomtimes from Macao some Clockes of fand, or Houre-glasses, some Kniues, some 30 cases of tooles for Surgeans, and other things: for they much esteeme all things that come from our parts : and with these things, which in our Countries are little or nothing worth, heere wee procure friends, which stand vs in exceeding great stead to conferre with them of our holy Faith. and of the faluation of our Soules.

Inuitations.

Besides their Presents and visitations, they have Gossippings and Banquets, whereunto very vitally they inuite one another. When there be very folerane, they fet every Gueff two tables for himselfe one of Flesh and Fish, &c. another of Fruits and sweet Meats. When they be not so so lemne.one table for every man, or two at every Table; they provide for these Guests great diverfitie of meates well dressed and seasoned, which they bring foft and fayre one after another, that they may be hot. When they inuite one to a Banquet, they fend fixe or feuen dayes before a pa-40 per, wherein they isuite him against such a day. If hee cannot come, he sendeth another paper, wherein he faith, l'excuse my selfe: If he excuse not himselfe, he is resolued to come. This paperis fent with many words of courtefie, & with much honour. On the day appointed in the morning, hee sendeth another to inuite him againe for the selfe same day : and at the appointed houre, hee fendeth another to pray him to come : and then hee goeth : If any of these messages should fayle hee would not goe. When he is gone to the Banquer, they vie many other ceremonies: But the most adoe is, about their places, so that it is long before you can place them, and allot out the roomes how they shall fit, because they ever feeke, or at least make shew that they feeke to give the chiefest roome to others. They feed not as men vie to doe in our Countrey : neither feemeth it that the Feaft is made to feed, but onely they taile of some small thing for fashion sake; and 50 they drinke very sippingly in small Cups of Porcelane, each of which will contayne fine or fixe Thimbels-full of Wine; and heerein and in deuiting, they spend five or sixe houres at a Banquet, and goe home an hungred. And thus it happeneth vnto vs ; although wee feeke to excuse our selves from them as much as we can, because wee lose much time, vnlesse it bee some great Mandarin, who we feare would take it cuill, if wee should deny his request. When the Banquet is ended, the next day enery one of the Guefts fends his Boy with a paper, wherein hee thanketh his Hoaft for his good cheare.

Chineis Com-

Complement, New-yeere.

Heere your Worship may see, wherein the Chinois spend the one halfe of their life. For the greatest businesse they have, and that wasteth most of their time, is in Visitations, Banquets, and fending of Presents. And the time wherein they most of all vie the same, is their New-yeere, 69 which lasteth fifteene dayes: their Birth day, which all of them keepe with great iolemnitie: or when they goe foorth, or come home on a Journey. And to end the whole yeere, I fend you fome Papers of vilitation of all these things (whereof they have sent many vinto vs) that your Worthip may fee (though you understand not the outward Letter) the manner and fashion of

this people, how farre different Salutations, manners and fashions, we fend you from the plaineneffer of our Europe, and especially of our Companie, But for the prefent, wee all thinks it necesfarie to eate after this fathion, and to vie their customes, to obtayine more free accesse vinto them. and to winne them to Christ.

CHAP.6. S.7. Papacie applauded : hypocriticall Excuses : China Women.

There is a Turke heere, a dweller in this Citie, which aboue fortie yeeres agoe, brought one or A Turke differen two Lions to the Father of this King : who, partly because hee knoweth no Learning nor Sci- spected. ences, and partly because hee fought not to apply himselfe to the habite, customes, and manner of China, there is none that will deale with him, nor come neere his house : And through the grace which God hath given vs, and because they see vs apply our selves to their Apparell. Fa-10 shion, and Courtefies, all the grauest Mandarius come home to our house to visite vs. and doe vs the fauour, to hold vs publikely for their Friends : which they vie not to doe, to their owne

Countrey-men, of our qualitie and condition : prayfed bee our Lord alwayes, Amen. I will not omit to declare the great pleafure, wherewith thefe learned Chinos heare the great confent of the things and ceremonies, of our holy Faith in Europe, and that wee have Bishops, and as we call them heere, Mandarins, and superiours in Spirituall things: and about all, they The Historichy rejoyce exceedingly to heare of our Pope, that being fo great a personage they preferre a Lear-applauded by ned and Holy man by way of Election, and not by Succession, and likewise the obedience and chineu. fubiection which other Kings doe yeeld vnto him; and that there have beene many (as wee told them) who being chosen Popes, refute it in good earnest, and by no meanes will accept the 20 same : and that we have all things which concerne the Law of God and good manners, let downe in writing, with all other Bookes concerning him, or his Ministers.

And although that which I have spoken hitherto of our high Priest, is a thing very apparent and true, and wee delivered it for fuch, and they fo vinderstand it : yet oftentimes they have giuen vs occasions of laughter. The first was, That when wee told them, that some refused so great an Office : ftraight-way they aske, where you lay that they refuse it, is it not euident that their excuse will not bee accepted : As who should say, of they would accept of it, who is there that would make an excuse? And thus they say, because they doe so themselves : for when great Of- Ridiculous nis fices are bestowed voon them, eftsoone they offer up a Petition, making a thousand excuses to cette. the King not to receive them: and they define nothing leffer, neither can any thing happen so grieuous vnto them, as to accept their excule. But viually they be not admitted: though some-

times they bee, to their great griefe of heart, as I my telfe have feene : But to excuse themselves, or to refule with some danger, is the vie to common, that they will not fayle to doe so : for if they should not doe so, it were more certayne that they should goe without the Office. The fecond thing that made vs more to laugh, is, that many of them tell vs, that if wee would returne into our Conntrey, without doubt they would make vs Popes: The reason (though not openly) which they yeeld, is, that wee haue a great advantage aboue other men of our Countrey, to wit, that wee haue seene, and studied, and understand their Bookes; because that they onely, in their opinion, can make a man perfect, and generally seene in all things. Such is the high conceit and 40 reputation which they hold of their Bookes.

ð. VII.

Of their Women: Of the Tartars Conquest, Acts and Expalsion. The greatnesse of the King, and neighbouring States. Of the Queenes Eunuches.

Will conclude this Letter with two points : the one concerning the Women, whereof I haue little to fay : and the last is of the King, and of his Palaces and Seruices.

Euery man (as I faid before) may keepe as many Wiues as lee will, and so they doe: which is the cause of many tumults, quarrels, and disorders in their houses as Polygamie limong their wines, and among the Sonnes of diners Mothers: and therefore when weetell them, rigious, 50 that in our Countrey no man marryeth but one Wife, they neuer are fatisfied in praifing it in words, though nevertheleffe they doe not follow it, nor put it in practife. And the difcontentment which the Women haue among themselues, and with their Husbands for this occasion, is like to prooue a great encouragement vnto them, to make them defirous to receive our holy Faith, and to perswade their Husbands to embrace the same, seeing that it doth not permit any more but one lawfull Wife onely.

Of their other Conversation, Customes, and other things, weeknow nothing, neither is any Closenesse of thing to bee learned : for they keepe house all their life time, and goe out of doores exceeding Women. seldome to visite either their Mother or Sisters, or nearest kinswomen, for they goe not to any 60 clie, no not in thought: And therefore as they have no convertation, (but alwayes to keepe home) I can speake nothing of their behaviour. Their Apparell seemeth wroto mee honest and comely : (for sometimes I have seene the Wives of Officers, and of the poore people, for many of Apparell. them doe goe abroad.) In some parts of the Countrey wee haue met many women upon the high way, in short garments, like to the men of our Countrey, without any difference, san on



Smallfcer.

their heads, and their feete : for all the rest is all one kinde of Apparell ; but these are the common people onely : One of the greatest ornaments that the Women haue, is, to have verie little non people out; . One of the great state goe verie badly, and alway they feeme to goe as though they would fall. I could not know the cause, nor the Chinois themselves know not the original occasion, why chis is counted for a beautie: albeit some say, it began not for a comelinesse, but onely with a purpose to cut off all occasion from them of going abroad.

Histories of tha Kings. Knowledgeof the Flood.

The Chinose haue beene very carefull in their Histories, and therefore they have histories of their Kings of aboue foure thousand yeeres. And if credit bee to be given to that which their Bookes report, touching those times, and is gathered by divers of their Histories; There are ma-Bookes report, couning those times, and is generated by also have form knowledge in their ny more yeeres from the Flood to our dayes (whereof they also have form knowledge in their 10 Bookes) then the most followed and allowed Calculation among vs, which trate of that matter, doc allow of : for they fay, it is fixe thousand yeeres at the least. They fay that they have continued Histories. But I leave this, because I have not well conferred the truth and foundation of the Chinish histories. At the least it is certaine, that they have knowledge of their matters, and certaine Kings within a little after the Flood, whenfoeuer it was. They had many ancient Kings, which were verie good men, which it may bee were faued in the law of Nature. because the heroicall workes of Vertue, which they report of them were great, and there is no record that they worshipped Idols, but some, that they worshipped the Lord of Heauen and darine contrary Earth. There were some that sought not to leave their lawfull Sonnes to bee their Heires, because they thought them not fit for Gouernment, but choose the wifest and best man, that they could finde, and left the Kingdome vnto him.

made a King, and Name midea Man. ble Scripture,

Moralirie

This Kingdome in old time was divided into many small Kingdomes, untill by little and little it was vnited. It is some soure hundred yeeres (25 I faid before) since a Tariar King posfessed it whollie, and two hundred, since a Bonzo or Religious man of China recoursed it. This Mahametan Tartar King, left some tokens of himselse in things that he did. Hee left in Non-Mathematicall quin, certaine Mathematicall inftruments of Copper, the like whereof for goodnesse peraduenture are not in all Europe, at least not better.

The China vin-

The Chinese Bonzo which expelled him out of the Kingdome, was a very valiant and wife man, and there bee many Histories of his wisedome, and sentencious sayings, and judgement in man, and unercose many sintenses of its witesome, and retrieval on any property of the hard matters: and the manner and forme of Gouernment, which hee ordayined in this King-jo-dome, which continueth inuicibile, doth greatly declare the fame. Hee make new Offices and New Lords, gaue new Names to all of them: An viual thing when one house beginneth to Raigne, to change all, euen the name of the King, as also of all Offices, and also of many Cities. I omit the diuffion of the Gouernment into so many heads, and so good distribution, that it seemeth (and so the Chmois (ay) it is like to continue thousands of yeeres, so that no man of the same Kingdome is

able, nor hath any power to make any Rebellion of importance. For those which in former time revolted, were the Vice-royes of the Provinces, and other great Mandarins, in whole Rebellion pre- power were the Gouernment, the Souldiers, and the treasure. But hee divided it in such fort. uented by the that those which had power ouer the Souldiers, should have no money at all, neither should the pay of the Souldiers depend upon them : and thole which keepe the Treasure mult have no superintendencie and dominion ouer the Souldiers. Others which were mightie and rich, hee impouerished and divided their Authoritie and Revenues among many; and so there is no man that can call himselse Great. I remember that I had read in a Booke, set out in the Spanish tongue, of the great power of certayne Captaynes, and because the King did not trust them, hee fent one of his house to will them to come voto him.

All which relation, with many other things which hee reporteth of the prouidence of the King, how hee divideth his Authoritie among divers Princes, is not so in truth, neitherin truth, neither is there any apparence thereof, neither haue the Captaynes much authoritie, neither are they very rich : for though they have many people, yet the government of them is divided into divers heads, so that they can hardly affemble to raile any Robellion, especially, be- 30 cause they remaine alwayes in the Kingdome, and neere about the King.

Reuenue,

The Reuenue of this King, without doubt, is exceeding great, and vntill wee have gotten it out of their Bookes (wherein every thing is fet downe very particularly) I will not prefume to publish the same, not as though I knew not that it is so, since whilest a man knoweth more of thus Kinedome, he doubteth leffe: Yet because I feare for all this that it will bee hard to make one beleeue the same, which knoweth it not of a certainty; making the Accounts not very large, his 200. Millions Reuennes are one yeare with another an hundred Millions in Silver, Gold, Rice, and an infinite others fay 150. number of other things; although the greatest part is Silver. And he that confidereth the greatnesse of the Kingdome, and that every man payeth Tribute to the King of their Persons, Lands, Trees, and other things (without carrying any Tribate out of the same) that which I speake wil 60 not feeme excessive. But as his Revenue is very great, so his Expenses are many. For those which in this Kingdome doe line at the Kings charge are many, to wit, all the Mandarins to whom the King giueth Wages, all the Souldiers, all the Kinstolkes of the King, his Euroches, and an infinite number of people, whereby his charges are exceeding great, although alwayes there re-

Expences.

mayneth a good deale for him to lay up; and there is no doubt but hee hath it in flore in exceeding great quantitie.

Many small Kingdomes round about acknowledge the King of China, and pay him Tribute. N ighbour as Corea, and others, whole names I know not, on this Northerne part; and on the fiele of Ma- Kingdomes. laca and Macao, many others. And sometimes on these Northerne parts they trouble him Corca or Corais somewhat, in robbing and killing of people. It may be that your Worlhip, or some bodie elie may demand, why the King of China being to great, subdueth not these small Kingdomes that lye about him to deliner himfelfe of trouble? I answere, that he wantch no abilitie: but I will A Paradoxe. Jye about him to deliner himselte et troubte: 1 answere, that he wanteen no author the Chinois, fay one fure thing, a Paradoxe to the people of our Earney, which is, That neither the Chinois, the content of the conte nor their King doe feeke, nor dreame of dilating their Empire more then it is. And this their

refolution is fuch, that although they would give them all thefe Kingdomes, they would not take them, & much leffe if they were farther off. For they hold it for one of the greatest mileries (especially the Mandarins & grave fort of people) to go out of their Kingdome to any other part. There is one of the best Examples hereof that may be given: which fell out of late, and that was, that as by the danger which might grow to his Kingdome, if the people of lapon should near of Chrac.

winne the Kingdome of Corea, which is joyned to China by the mayne Land, as they began to doe; the Chinois ayded the Coreans with many men : and the people of lapon by the death of their King called Quabacondono, did wholly aband n it. The Kingdome remayned in the power of the Chinois, and is continued two or three yeares. After which they whol-20 ly gaue it ouer, without any other greater respect, then that there were none that were willing to goe thither to gouerne it, nor that the King had any need to annexe it vnto his Estate. And without doubt, it seemeth that he would doe the like with any other, although they would put it into his hands, And touching those Kingdomes which pay him Tribute, there

is no great account made, whether they come or no : and their continuall comming, is more for

the profit of those which come, then that the King doth desire it. And therefore the Philippine Ilands which in former times paid Tribute to the Kings of China, were made none account of

when they ceased to pay it. This King hath one lawfull Wife (as other men haue) in choice whereof they haue regard to nothing elfe but to her good qualities and externall beautie, for there is no Nobilitie to be 20 fought for. Besides her hee hath a great number of Concubines chosen after the same manner. whose Sonnes (if the lawfull Wines Children faile) inherit the Kingdome, which commonly Ogenes fallethour, and fuch is he which now is King, and he which is to fucceed him. When any of their cloientife, women be once entred into the Kings Palace to bee his Wife, there is no name which may bee compared vnto her in being kept close; for they may not only not goe abroad, no nor bee seene of their Father, Mother, or Brethren. They have little or none authoritie, but such as they obtaine of the King. Also the feruice of the King, of the Queene, and of his Concubines, is all by Eunuches, a service doubtlesse vnworthy of a King. All these Eunuches (without any excepti- Eunuches. on) are of the most base people which are in all the Kingdome, whose Fathers (because they cannot keepethem when they were young) doe make them Eunuches, in hope that one day they

40 shall get into the Court to serue the King : the manner is farre different from some which are in Europe : for these bee like those which the Twies vie, Because their Fathers doe this for po- The yard and uertie, it followeth that they have no excellencie, for they have no meanes to learne it, and they all cut away. are little or nothing Learned.

They elect and choose these Eunuches from time to time to supply such as die, and this first yeare that I was here, they chose aboue three thousand, for which purpose there assembled aboue twentie thousaind (as they say) out of which number they made their choice. The Ele- Their numbers Ctors were a verie great Mandarin (to whom, as I faid before, the Kings private bufineffe belongs) and above. and another Eunush of the eldest and most private. The Examination and Election consistent in two things, which are a good Countenance and a good Tongue : for proofe whereof, they

50 make them pronounce two words, wherein those that have not a readie Tongue doe flemble. When they are chosen, and gone to the Court, they divide them in divers Offices: yet at their Service, first comming, they are appointed to waite vpon the old Eunuches as Boyes, which make good triall of their patience, and obedience : and he that after certaine yeares sheweth himselfe towardly, they begin to employ in greater matters.

Of these Eunuches, the King hath his Musicians and Mathematicians, who, to be e briefe, I Ignorance. fay, have no found understanding in these things at all, but only for complement or superficially: yet some of them are bound to watch all night, and to looke whether any Comet doe appeare, or any fuch like thing in the Skie, to enforme the King thereof : and to performe other like Offices. They are visually versecouetous, and as they are base, if they rise to bee private with the Courtourse.

60 King, some of them be proud and vincourteous. They serue the King as slaves, obeying his will which way toeuer he inclineth. The King chastifeth them verie sharp; y for every light offence: especially the King that now is, which is a very wicked man. He hash caused many tobe whipped to death, for some small matter wherein they have offended him. Yet there are some of them good and difer et, which the King wieth for dispatching of his businesse, and other matters

CHAP.6.S.7. King a home Prisoner. His Children of little esteeme.

of weight. Though the ordinarie wages which they have of the King bee small, yet it servesh them well to liue of, and therefore they goe verie well apparelled in many Robes of Silke verie finely wrought of divers colours, and the manner of their Capand Apparell differeth from alloeher peoples. There are of them in number, as they fay, aboue fixteene thousand of them in the Kings palaces, Hereby your Worship may see what Examples and Education the King of China observeth, which spendeth all his time with these and with women,

The common people neuer fee nor focake with the King. Law of Nations contem-

Emb-affager,

Although it be the custome of these Kings, to shew themselves from time to time to certain of the greatest Mandarins : yet they never luffer the rest of the people to see them, nor to speake with them; and when he speaketh with any bodie, they enter not into the place where hee is but the King commeth forth to a certaine place. If there be any Nation among whom the Law to of Nations hath no place in many things it is this: for as they have no commerce with other Nations, fo they have not the Law which is common to all men. And therefore they admit no Ambassadour in China, volesse it be by the way of giuing some Present, the King not acknow. ledging anymeither doe they thinke that there is any in the World, which is able to deale with their King by way of an Embassadour. And if they bring any Message (as the Iapons brought within thefe few yeares, who came to intreate of certaine agreements , by no meanes they are admitted to the fight of the King, neither doth he give them audience : but some Mandarin doth accompany them : and the entertaynment which they give them, and honour which they frew to all strangers which come vnto them is verie small. But as for the most part they have no great conceit of strangers, so their entertaynment is like to their conceit. Whosoever he be that 20 commeth into their Countrey, they shut him vp in a verie homely house, not suffering him to

The Kings Palaces are verie great; and albeit in the excellencie of Architecture they bee not comparable to thole of our Europe, yet they much exceed in the hugenesse of Building. They have three wals foure square, the circuit of the first may be as bigge as the wall of a good Citie, Betweene the first and the second wall, there is a wall which enuironeth the greatest part of the House, and here are many Houses of the Eunuches of the lowest fort, which exercise Mechanicall Arts, or the like, as Porters, &c.

Betweene the second and the third wall there are many pieces of the Kings House, which is not joyned altogether, but in divers parts there be divers Roomes, built for divers purposes, one 30 answering to another. These parcels of Buildings which are here (which are enerie one aslong as the Careere of an Horse, and very high) have no under Roome, but a great Building raised up with foundations of great Brickes, as broad and long as all the Building, wherein there are Gates of Marble itone very wel wrought to palle from one place to another. This house or Foundation is about eight fathomes high little more or leffe. Aboue these are guilded Galleries, Taraffes, Hals, and Chambers, which on the out-fide flew verie gallant (which is as much as can be feene; for no man can get in to fee them.) The greatest part of them is of Timber, with many gilded Embossements, and many other pleasant Pictures. The Roofes are verie well made. The Tiles are of a farre better fashion, in mine opinion, then ours, and so even joyned together that that they seeme to be all one piece : they are all anneled with yellow, which is the Kings Co-40 lour. To conclude, I say, that it seemed wnto me in multitude of Houses and greatnessea stately thing. Also betweene these wals the River runneth which I spake of: and to passe from one to another there are many faire Bridges of Marble made of very great stones: betweene these wals was one of the two fourth parts of the House, on which the fire from Heauen fell downe within these few yeares, and contumed it : and with the blowes of the stones which fell downe many verie great Houses were broken downe to the ground (as sometimes I beheld my selfe) and they remayned with many fignes of fire on them. They fay, that when this fire fell from Heauen, the King commanded his Sonne to kneele downe, and beseech The Heasen to be mercifull vato him, for he himselse was too wicked, and that the Heanen would not beare him. Within these wals are many Lodgings of the grauest Eunuches, who like Fellowes of Colledges line many in one 50 House, exerie one having his private Chamber. Heere betweene these wals are Mounts and Groues and other recreations whither the King repaireth to recreate himselfe. And the space of these wals is very great, for when I went to the Palace to teach the Eunuches which were in that place to trimme the Clocke, I passed before I came to their Lodging eight great Palaces, and on the other fide there were many more. The Lodgings of the Eunuches viually are low and bad, for the Kings Seruants, yet very necessarie.

Third parti- -

River and

Bridges.

Fire from

No seace to the

Mounts and

Heanen.

wicked.

Next after this followeth the third wal, where the King dwelleth, with his Wiues and Children, and those which where his neerest feruants, whereinto no man entreth but they. And therfore albeit I have heard that it is a very beautiful thing & very muchworth the feeing, as in very deed it sheweth to be : yet I cannot give any Relation of any thing concerning the same in par- 60 ticular. Only this I fay, that when I was in the House of the Eunuches that were the Mathematicians, I went fometimes vp into a Towre, from whence I might fee the tops of the Houses, the Groues, and Orchards, and me thought that I never in my life saw so great a frame of Building, although I have feene many in mine owne Countrie. And therefore there are alwaies

a great number of Officers of all Offices, some making new Buildings, and others repayring the old. The King neuer goeth abroad, especially this King, and his Ancestors some one time and King a home no more, vnto 2 Temple which they have builded to The Heaven, and the Earth, where everie Priloner, yeare they offer Sacrifics. And therefore I know not with what pompe hee goeth abroad: But Temple of these in his femice he hash no men of qualities it cannot hee fish as on Wines with its different Heasen and like as in his feruice he hath no men of qualitie, it cannot bee fuch as our Kings vie in their going Earth. to Church:

There is a barbarous custome among the Kings, that when the Prince is aduanced to the Kings. dome, within a short time after, all the rest of the old Kings Sonnes are to depart out of the

Houle to certaine places appointed for them, which vnto the third Generation are ferued like Barbarous v. To Kings, but they neuer come more in the presence of their Father, Mother, nor elder Brother; and fige of the therefore there is great lamentations of their Mothers at their departure. The Posteritie of these Kings Childoe alwaies remayne as Kinsmen, and with the name of the Kings Kinsmen. To all these (which dreng are very many) the King giveth fufficient mayntenance, which is no great matter. They never beare Office ; and deale with other people, and marrie with them , without doing themselues much good or none at all in being the Kings Kinfmen, nor purchase any speciall authoritie thereby. Other Kinsfolkes of the King, married with the Sifters, Daughters, or Coulins of the King, or Queene, although they have fufficient to live vpon, yet have they exceeding small authoritie, and haughtineffe. And herein, nor in any thing may they compare with the Mandarins.

Here came to visit vs one married with the Sister of this King that is now, in a Chaire with

20 three or foure Boyes to wait on him. Another came oftentimes married with the Sifter of the Wife of the Prince that is to inherit, on Horse-backe with one Boy only attending on him; and hee entreth into the Examinations that hee may proceed Doctor and become a Mandarin : So litle is the benefit that groweth vnto them by the Confanguinity or Affinity of the King which are joyned vnto him thereby.

Here the time faileth me, though neither matter, nor defire to give contentment to your King Afficie Worship, and the rest of my most deare Fathers and Brethren, neither doth nor shall euer faile and Confer me. And therefore if I shall understand, that they take this in good worth, I will give Relati- guinitie, little on of that which shall fall out here by the helpe and grace of our Lord , to whom I humbly befeech all of them to commend mee.

I fend here withall two Maps of this Kingdome of China, which came to my hand after I Maps of China. had written this Letter, and Relation. I fought to translate all that which is contayned in the China Letters; which is all the Rent which every one of these Provinces payeth to the King of China; and to make a description of all the Houses which enerie Prouince hath, and how many people, and many things elfe: But your Worthip may believe that by no meanes I had leyfure s and therefore I lend you only the figure, and another yeare (if it please our Lord God) I will fend you the same with the declaration thereof.

All the rundles and squares which are therein are Cities, or Fortresses of many Inhabitants, both of them walled about. There is no Towne here fee downe that it is not walled : the others

The Rivers are well diffinguished. The great lines are the limits of the Provinces : the other small lines, and of little circuit are the Iuridisdictions of some one principall Citie.

We print here another Map of all the World of our manner with Conif Letters, which bepuse wee want time to declare the Letters, I send not till the next yeare, which then we will fend if our Lord grant vs life.

I fend you many other Papers, that your Worthips may fee the fa hion of the Letters of these people of Chime, and what Characters wee committed to memorie. From Paquin, beeing the Court and Royall Citie of the King of China, the ninth of March, 1602.

50	•	

CHAP

280

CHAP. VII.

A Discourse of the Kingdome of China, taken out of RICIVS and TRIGAVTIVS. contayning the Countrey, People, Government. Religion, Rites, Setts, Charatters, Studies, Arts, Atts: and a Map of China added, drawne out of one. there made with Annotations for the understanding thereof.

Of the Name, Scite, and Greatnesse; the Tributaries, Commoditie, Arts , Printing , Seales , Inke , Pencill-pennes and Fanner

cap. 2. the nrft being a place; The duers names of this Kingdome.

Hier in the au. His vtmost Empire in the East, hath beene made knowne to Europe by divers appellations, as that of Ptolemer, Sina; that later of CMarcin Panism the Pensism, Cathay; and that most visual received from the Portugals, which call it China. I doubt not allo that this is the Region of the Hippophag, o.Horf-saters, a meat there as common as Beefe here: a salfo that this is the Region Series or Sides; foral-much as there is no Kingdome of the East where Silke is found in that quantitie:

and the Portugals ship it thence for I apon, and all India; the Spaniards also of the Philippina I. lands, fraight their ships therewith for all the American World. Moreover, I find in the Chima Chronicles that this Silke-worke was there two thousand fix hundred thirtie iix yeares before the Birth of Chrift: whence it paided to the reft of Affa, to our Europe and to Africa. But in on this varietie nothing feemes so firing to me, as that all these names are softmage to them, not knowne or once heard of, although the change of names be not strange to that Countrey, For as often as the Empire passeth from one Family to another, according to the vicifitude of humane Affaires : He which attayneth the Throne, imposeth a name at his pleasure. So hath it beene The thirty is a superior at the principle of the principl Sing names & Oc. And fince this Family, called Cin, which now holdeth the Sourreigntie, hath reigned, it is yestini name called Min, which intimateth Splendour, and by vivall addition of one lyllable Tamin, that is, the Kingdome of Great Splendowr, Brightnesse or Glory. Yet doe few of their Neighbour Nations observe these changes of Names, whereby each of them almost, stile it by severall appella-40 tions. Those of Cocin, Cauchin-china, and the Stamites call it Cin; the lapanders Than; the Tartars, Han; the Westerne Saracens, Catas. Also amongst the Chinois themselves, besides that arbi rary name fo imposed by their Kings, it hath some common to all Ages. Such are Counge, Conceitof the that is, the Kingdome; and Chiumboa, which fignifieth a Garden, a name arifing from their Geo-Earthsforme. graphy, beleeuing indeed the roundnesse of the Heauen, but a squarenesse of the Earth, and their Kingdome in the midft thereof, a conceit growne out of conceit now, by better instru-Ction of the Icfaits.

The Kings

Calling, VIII

knowne:0

Their King is called Lord of the World, and they supposed accordingly that their Kingdome contained the principall part thereof; not deeming the Neighbour Kingdomes worthy to bee called Kingdomes, which yet before their Commerce with Europeans were all they knew. And 50 not vinworthily is the name Great prefixed to their Kingdomes appellation, beeing the greatest Kingdome in the World, which at this day carrieth One Name, or hath done in former times. For Southward it beginneth in the nineteenth degree, at the lle which they call Hainam, that is, the South-Sea; and runneth into the North to the two & foreieth, even to those wals which dithe Kingdome unde the Chinois from the Tartary. The longitude beginnesh from the one hundred and twelfth (reckoning from the Canaries) in the Province Tunan, and extends East-ward to the Sea in one hundred thirtie two. These Dimensions wee have observed in divers places of the Kingdome where we have passed, by Astrolabes and other Mathematicall Instruments; adding also the obfernation of Eclipfes in their Almanacks, where the Moones Change and Full are justly deferibed, and specially by authoritie of Cosmographicall Plaines. Year others which shall come of 69 ter vs shall more exactly observe the longitude (which I dare say will be no great matter) I shall not viwillingly yeeld. Hence may be observed that this ample Kingdome is for the most part The temperate Within the temperate Zone; neither doth it extend fo farre North-ward as some Maps mand deferibed by many degrees. And left any should thinke that some great parts of to large a Domi-

CHAP.7. S. I. Prosinces, Regions, Cheu, Hien, numbers, Souldiers &c.

nion be detert, I will here translate out of a China booke entituled, The Description of that King. done, there printed, 1579. that which followeth.

In the Kingdome (of China) there are two Prouinces Royall, Nanquin the Southerne Court, and Pequin the Northerne, and thirteene others. In these fifteene Prounces (you might call them King. domes) by another durision are numbred one hundred fiftie eight Regions or lesse Provinces, called by them Fu; the most of which be the twelve or sisteene Cities of reasonable quartitie, besides Villages, Hamlets, Castles and Townes. In these Prouinces we two bundred sortie seven greater Cities, called Chew bowbeit sometimes distinguished from other Cities rather in dientite then largenesse) of vulgar Cities, which they call Hien, 1152. Of men growne to ripe age, which pay tribute or poll money to the King, were then fiftie and eight millions, fine hundred fiftie thou fand, 801. In all which the female fexe is not reckoned. and of the Masculine are omitted, Boyes, Youth's, Eunuchs, Souldiers, the Royallkindred, Magistrates, Students, and very many others. And of the Souldiers, although there be a Supine Deace (except fome Tattatian affault (ometimes) there are maintained in the Kings pay, and in perpenual Armes, aboue ten "hundred thousand. For the three Northern Proninces are almost halfe in pay. In that booke are num- "Somelay mabred Kingdomes adiopning to that of China and tributarie; to the East three, to the West siftie three, to my more tee the South liftie five, to the North three. Tet I observe that nothing so many doe in these dayes pay tribute, the Map and and thole which doe, carry more from China, then they bring thather: and therefore the Chinois care not neces. much whether they continue loyall or no.

To the worth of this Kingdome, may bee added, the fortification by Nature or Art round about it. To the South and East, the Sea washethir, and so many Ilands guard it, thet hardly can a Fleet of Ships approach the Continent. To the North, fleepe presipiees are joyned together, with a continued Tract of 405, leagues, and exclude the Tartars affaults. To the Northwest is a sandy desert of many dayes iourney, which prohibite passage of an Armie, or minace their burialis. The South-west hath great Mountaines and little Kingdomes to preuent sear on

From this largenesse of Territories proceeds such diversified varietie of things growing in that Kingdome, some in the tortid, others in the colder or in the temperate Zones: whatsoeuer The commois required to the necessitie or delicacie of food or raiment being there naturall; nothing being dises of china. here in Europe but either is there, or a better supply : Wheat, Barley, Panike, and other Corne; nere in zarroge out entire, is court, on a percent improve ventire and Apples of the beft(Nuts Fruitsofall and Almonds excepted) Figs and others viknowne in our world, as the Liegar and the Longa- forts, mas in Canton Province onely ; the Sucufina or China Figge, or Apple to called, because they may dre it as they do Figs, & liker to a Peach red, without hoarinesse or stone : in Oranges, Citrons, Limons they exceed all places. So doe they in goodnesse and varietie of Gardens, Herbs, as being there much vied, some for religion, others for pouertie eating nothing else. Flowers have there taken vp their bowers , admirably varied, more respected for fight then sent ; the Art of diffuling fweet-waters being there vuheard of. In the foure Southerne Provinces grow Betre or Betele leafe, and the tree Arequa or Arequeira, so much vied in India, and chewed all day long for their flomacke and teeth. Sefame Oile is both odoriferous and plentifull. Wine is not there fo good as in Europe (the Grape being neither plefant nor frequent) made of Rice and o-

ter unitys. Hogs-fieth is common food : they have Buffails, Muttons, Goats-fieth; Hennes, Duckes, Fieth for food-Geefe, innumerable: Horfes alfo, Affes, Mules, and Dogs-fleth are food, and fhamble commodities. In some places superstition abstaineth from Beefe and Buffalls, Venison, especially red Decre, Harc, and divers domestick creatures are common; all cheape. Their Horses and Beasts of labour are not lo goodly as in Europe, but more in number, and therefore in cheapneffe. The whole Kingdome is very commodious for passage by Ruters both naturall and hand-made: Passages by whence the number and kindes of shipping is incredible; infomuch that a moderne Writer water

hath sucreed, that there are as many which keepe on the waters as on the land; an Hyperbole, 50 yet not fo exceeding the truth to fuch as faile their Rivers, as may bee feene to others. I am of opinion, that there are as many Ships in this Kingdome, a sare in all the world befide in freshing and ware opinion, trust treet areas many any a min removance, as a cent an me wond bettue in near waters : for their Sea-fhipping is fewer and not comparable with ours. But to returne to their dwellers. Hories, the Chinos know not how to manage and breake them but by gelding ; fo that their Horses for service are innumerable, but so viscourceable, that they will not induce the neighing Horses. of the Tartarian Hotle without flight. They snoot them not with Iron, so that in rockie and

Befides the Seas plentie of Fish and Rivers, they are stored also in Lakes, seeming for their Fish. depths and largeneife perie Seas. They have more flore of Fish-ponds also, then in these parts, whence the Market is daily furnished. Their Woods have no Lious, but store of Tigers, Beares, Wildeberts. 66 Woolues, Foxes. Elephants there are not, but for pompe some kept at the Court in Pequin, Woolacs, Foxes. Elephants there are not, but for pomperoine applied with abundance of Cotton, brought from other places. Flaxe they have not, but are implied with abundance of Cotton. the feed whereof was brought thither foure hundred yeares fince, and hath fo liked the foyle, that the whole world, as may feeme thence might have fufficient. Of Silke-workes weefly Sile efcloth. no more. Of Henpe, and of fome other Herbs, they make many clothes, especially for Summer

Iq

this Table they lightly glue on a whole leafe written, and then cunningly shaue the drie paper. this rate they make very little transparence; after which they cut the wood, that onely the prints or lineaments of the Characters are eminent: which done, with great facilitie and coleritie they print off leaues at pleafure, one Printer often 1500, in one day; fo ready also in cutting, that to mee Ours feeme to spend as much time in composing and correcting. This course is more accommodated to their great Characters then to ours, whose little letters are not easily out in woodden Tables. They have this commoditie also, that keeping these Tables by them, they may with little labour adde or take away words or fentences: and need not at once print off any more Copies then present vse or sale requireth. Wee doe this with Bookes of our Religion

In or European Sciences, printing them at home by our China feruants. They have another way of Another way. printing Characters or Pictures printed before in Marble or Wood, laying on a leafe of Paper moift, and on that a woollen Cloth, whereon they beate with a Hammer till the Paper infinuates it selfe into the voide spaces and lineaments of the Characters or Picture : after which they lightly colour that leafe with Inke or other colour, those delineations onely remayning white, and retayning the Prototype-figure. But this is for groffer Pourtraitures,

They are much addicted to pictures, but nothing so cunning in painting, founding, grauing, Painting, graas Europeans. They make magnificent Arches with figures of men and beafts, and adorne their uing tounding,

Temples with Idols and Bells, but their Genius otherwife generous and ingenious enough, for want of commerce with other Nations, is herein rudely artificiall. Shadowes and Oyle in picturies are to them vaknowne, and their Pictures therefore have no more life of Art then Nature. In Statues, themselves seeme Statues for all rules of Symmetry any further then by the eve, and yet will be doing in huge (indeed) Monsters of this kinde, in Earth, Brasse, and Marble. Their Bells haue all woodden Hammers, which yeeld a woodden found, not comparable Bells.

to ours, nor feeming capable of those of Iron. They have variety and plenty of Musicall In- Musicall In-Aruments, yet want Organs and all that haue Keyes. Their Strings are made of raw Silke, and Aruments, know not that any can be made of Guts. The Symmetrie of their Instruments is answerable to ours. All their Musike is simple and single-toned, veterly ignorant of consort in discord-concord: yet much applaud they themselues in their owne Harmonie, howsoeuer dissonant to our eares. But this pride feemes to grow (as vitally it doth) from ignorance, and it is likely they would 30 preferre ours if they knew it.

They have scarcely any Instruments for measuring of (that which measures all things) Time; Want of House fuch as they have, mediate by water or fire, but very imperfeedly, as its allot their Sun-diall, which they know not to fit to differing places. They are much addicted to Comedia and them, and Dislin. they know not to fit to differing places. They are much addicted to Comedies, and therein exceed ours; some practising the same in principall Townes, others trauelling thorow the Kingdome (or roguing, if you will) being the dregs of the Kingdome, buying Boyes whom they frame to this faigning facultie. Their Commedies are commonly antient, whether Histories or Comedies. deuces, and few new written. They are vsed in publike and in private Solemnities; as also in Feaths, whereto being called, they offer to the Inniter a Booke, in which to take his choise, the Guests looking, eating, drinking together; and sometimes after ten houres feasting, they will

40 fpend as much succeeding time in a succession of Interludes one after another. Their pronuncia- Scales. tion is with finging accent, and not with the yulgar tone. Seales are of great vie with them, not onely for Letters, but for their Poems also, Pictures, Bookes, and many other things. These contayne the name, fur-name, dignitie, and degree : neither content they themselves with one, but have many, inscribing sometimes the beginning and end of their workes; not imprinting them in Waxe, or such like substance, but onely colour them red. The chiefe men haue on the Table a Box efull of Seales , which contains their divers names (for every Chinese hath many names) and those of Wood, Marble, Juorie, Brasie, Crystall, Corall, and better stones. There Various subnames and workers of that Scale occupation, their Characters differing from the vulgar, and flunce effective many workers of the vulgar, and flunce effective from the vulgar and flunce effective f

During of Antoquate and State of making Inke for all writing, made into little Cakes or Inke-stating. There is another are not vinine, on meaning line tot all virining, made into more cases of Balls of the fmoke of Oyle. For their effirmation of exact writing makes the making of Inhe also to be holden an Art not illiberall. They vse it on a Marble smooth stone; with a tew drops of water rubbing those Balls, and colouring the stone, thence taking it with a Penfill of Heres Penfils in

Fannes also are in much vse by both Sexes for the causing of winde to coole them in Summer. Fannes. No man may goe abroad without a Fanne, although the weather be cold, and the winde already bee importunate: the vse being rather for ornament then necessitie. They are made of Reeds, Wood, Juorie, Ebonie, together with Paper or Silke, and a certaine odoriterous Straw, in round, ouall, or square forme. The chiefe men wse them of Paper gilded with plaits to be let in or out,

60 and therein inf. ribe some pithie sentence or Poeme. These are the most common gifts or prefents (as Gloues in Europe) and we have a Chift full of them fent vs by our friends. In other things the Chmois are liker ours, vling Tables, Stooles, and Beds (which the adioyning Nations dee not, but fit on Carpets on the floore) to eate or fleepe.

vie. They milke not their Sheepe; they sheare them, yet make no cloth of the Wooll (notwith-Randing, woollen-clothes brought thither by Merchants is well fold; but light Summer clothes for blankets and other fleight vies. The North parts, though neerer the Sunne then some Re. gions in Europe, are colder, the great rivers and lakes frozen ouer, of which we can give no reafon, but the neighbouring Mountaines of Tartaria: against which they are furnished with choice Furres.

All forts of metalls are there found. They make befides Braffe and Copper, another shining like Siluer, as cheape as the yellow Braffe. Of molten Iron they make Kettles. Caldrons Relie Mortars, Ordnance, and other things. Their Gold is cheaper then with vs. Silucr they yee for money, diffinguished not by stampe but weight, in all bargaining ving the ballance, which is to made the more incommodious for the differing goodnesse of the Silver, and frequent alley and fraud. In some places are Braffe farthings. Place and Gold vessells are vied by the greater, but nothing so much as in these parts. The women spend much Gold and Siluer in heir head-tires. The vulgar vie earthen dishes, called, I now not why, porcellane; the best whereof is made in the Kiamfin Province of a yellow carth. It endureth without riving hot meates, yea as woodden diffes here with a wyre, they fowe the rifts and make them hold liquor. They make Glaffe, bur therein are short of the Europeans.

Their houles are of Timber commonly, even the Kings Palaces, the walls which ferue for parritions of roomes being sometimes of Bricke, but the roofe sustained by Timbers : which together wish their shipping argues their plentie of trees. Oakes are rare, but supplied with a hard 20 and eur talking wood with them yied for coffins, in which their curiofitie will fometimes frend a thousand Duckers. There is also store of a kinde of reed, which the Portugalls call Bambu, of almo! Iron harmeffe, the roundnesse scarcely compassed with both hands, and serves for smaller posts; the lesser of them for Launces and other vies, For fire they vie Wood, Coles, Reede. Straw, and a bituminous substance called Mai (a kinde of Mine-cole or Sea-cole) which is

most and best in the North, digged out of the earth.

Of medicinable herbs they have divers, specially Rhubarbe, sold for tenne halfe pence the pound : China Wood, or holy Wood growing in defatts naturally, and thence taken for no other price but the labour : Muske : Salt both made of Sea-waters, and of others cafily in the Continent; Sugar more common there then Hony, though both plentifull : Waxe both of Bees, and 30 another whiter and burning better made by certaine wormes, which therefore are nourished in trees; another also made of a certaine fruit: Their paper is not so during as ours, nor can endure the proffe on both fides.

I omit their parti-coloured Marbles, their gems, colours for paintings, odoriferous Woods, &c. I cannot paffe by fome rarities; as their thrub whence they make their drinke (id. They Cha, Chia, or Cia. gather the leaves in the Spring, and dry them in the shadow, and keepe it for daily decocition, ving it at meates, and as often as any guest comes to their house, yea twice or thrice, if hee make any tarrying. They sup it hot, bitterish to the palate, but wholesome : not of ancient vie, for they have no ancient Character in their bookes for it. The lapanders pay deare for it, ten or twelue Duckets a pound for the beit, and vieit otherwife, putting the poulder of the leafe 40 to hor water, as much as two or three spoonefulls : the Chinois put the leaves themselves into the hot water, which they drinke, leaving the leaves behinde. They have also a bituminous subflance like milke, thrained out of the barke of a tree, of pitchy cleaning, whence they make Sandaracha, a varnish for their houses and houshold, ships, and other things : veelding a smooth touch to the hand and glaffie splendour to the eye with long continuance. Thus can they more then counterfeit the colours of any wood, and hereby are prouided against prouisions of Napery, this feruing for Table linnen; they recourring any greafie contagion with a little rinfing of water. They have an Oyle also pressed from an apple not valike it in vie, but not fore-

> They have Cinamon and Ginger growing, Pepper and other Spices are brought from other 50 parts. They have flore of Gun-powder, not fo much for Artillerie (which they can vie but meantly) as for Fire-works in pompous spectacles, thereby representing, Trees, Fruits, Battels, and other things with great Art and coft. We faw at Nanquin, in the first moneth of the vere, as much this way fpent as would have ferued a continued fight two yeares.

> For Mechanicall Arts, they are not comparable to our mens Architecture, whether recregard the beautie or continuance of their buildings, they not fo much as conceiuing or crediting the stately magnificence or long durance of some in these parts. They either make no foundation, or verie ficight, and thinke a mans age to be age enough for a house, and that scarcely without reparations: their houses being also of Timber, and where the walls are Stone, they have Time bers to beare up the roofe, that the wall may eafily be repaired or renewed without meddling 60 with the supporters.

Printing is ancienter there then here; fomethinke before the Incarnation, and most certaine Antiquitie and about five hundred yeares old: much differing from ours because of the multitude of their Chamanner of it. racters. They graue or cut their Characters in a table of Peare-tree, Apple-tree or Zizaphus, In

Porcellane.

Metalls.

Glaffe,

Buildings.

Hard Timber

Sea-cole. Rhubarb. China, Muske,

Salt, Sugar, Home-waxe.

Paper.

Sandaracha, s zich Varnish.

Spices:

Chap. 4. Of their Arts in China. This is not to be understood ot Temples, &c. 25 may appeare by Nanquin Temple, Penting.

ð. I I.

Ow, for their more liberall Arts, and Literate-degrees, this Kingdome differs from all

others: in which their Learned beare principall fway. The China words are Money

ned into one Diphthone, to speake after our manner; for they have not Confenents

fyllables, not one otherwise, howsoener two or three Vowels sometimes are conjug. To

Of their Characters and writing downward: their studies, Ethikes, Astrologie. Phylike, Authentike Authors, Degrees how taken both Philosophicall and Militarie.

is a feuerall word. And although the number of things and Characters feeme the fame, yet doe

they fo compound them together, that they exceed not feuenty or eighty thousand; and hee

which knoweth ten thousand of them, hath the most necessary: to know all is in manner for

any one man impossible. Of these Characters the found is often the same, the figure and signi-

fication differing : 10 that no Language is fo equiuocall; nor can any Speech bee written from

their eares cannot. Yea, in speaking accuratly, the Hearer often understands not without repe-

tition and writing either with Inke, or water on the Table, or forming the Characters in the

aire; and this most happens in the most elegant and polite discourses (the stile of Bookes and

tion and paucity of founds is in some fort exfed be Accents, which are five, and not easie to di-

ftinguish; by which of one Syllable (as wee account it) they make it with differing tones five fold in differing fignification; and there is no Word which is not pronounced with one of these

Accents. Hence is the Language fo difficult as none elfe in the World for Strangers to learne to speake and understand; which importunate labour of ours hath yet attayned. The reason I con- 10

ceine to be that they alway have laboured to adorne their writing more then their speech, their

eloquence ftill confifting in writing and not in pronunciation, as I forater is commended as

dity, the commerce with divers Nations of different Linguages by community of writing; la-

pon, Corai, Cauchinchina, the Leubices, vnderstanding and reading the Characters, each into his

owne Language, which the other understand nothing at all. Each Province also hath its owne.

and all haue one common Tongue besides, which they call Quonboa, or the Court Language (the

Magistrates being all forrainers, and none bearing Office in his Countrey Prouince) vied in their

learneder in conference, except priua ly by Countrey-men: yea, children and women learne

this Court-speech. I heare that the Iaponians have an Alphabet also of Letters after our fa-

shion, besides these Characters; but in China they have none, so that from their Cradle to the

extremest age they are learning their Characters, as many as professe Learning: which how-

foeuer it takes up time from better Sciences, it doth it also from idle youthfull vanities. Hence

also riseth a kinde of writing with them, in few Characters expressing that which would

Of all the noblest Sciences they are best skilled in morall Philosophie (naturall, they have ra-

ther obscured) and being ignorant of Logicke, they deliver those Ethicke precepts in confused 59

fentences and discourses without order by meere naturall wit. Their greatest Philosopher is

called Confutius, whom I finde to have beene borne \$51, yeeres before the comming of Christ,

and to have lived above 70. yeeres, by example as well as precept exciting to vertue, accounted

a very holy man. And if wee marke his fayings and doings, wee must contesse few of our Eth-

nike Philosophers before him , and many behinde. But with the Chinois, his word is authori-

tie, and no speech of his is called in question; the Learned, year the Kings also, ever since wor-

shipping him, not as a God, but as a Man; and his posteritie are much esteemed, the head

of that familie inheriting by grant of Kings a title of great honour, with immunities and re-

Courts, and by the Learned: this onely did ours learne, nor is the other yied by the civiller or \$

This multitude of Characters, as it is burthenfome to the memory, so it hath this commo-

Inkhorne-dialect of their learned, wholly differing from the vulgar ldiome.) This equipoca-

the Speakers mouth by the Hearer, nor can a Booke bee read to the Hearers vnderflanding, ex. 20

Cap.5. Monofyllable Language, as also our prope most wholly.

nor Vowels, but divers Characters for fo many things, and as many of them, as there are Words. fo that a Word, Syllable, Letter, are the same; and when we joyne divers Syllables to make one Word, it is after our fashion, because they fignifie the same thing; with them each Syllable Toppo-Chara-

Equinocations cept they have the Booke before them , by their eyes to diftinguish the equinocations which

Fine Accents.

Hardneffe of

Elequentia fine

mongit the Greekes.

ours contrary from the left and fide-wayes.

Many Nations and Languages baue the iame Chara-Court Language.

Their writings coft vs long discourses. Their course of writing is from the right hand, the line downward,

Morall Philofophie.

Confutius. His beroike

They have some knowledge also of Astrologie, and the Mathematikes: In Arithmetike and 60 Geometry antiently more excellent, but in learning and teaching confused. They reckon foure hundred Starres more then our Aftrologers have mentioned, numbring certaine smaller which doe not alway appeare. Of the heavenly Apparances they have no rules : they are much builed about foretelling Eclipses, and the courses of Planets, but therein very erroneous; and all their

CHAP. 7. S. 2. Astrologie, Eclipses, Physicians; Confutius and bis three degrees. 285

skill of Starres is in manner that which wee call Indiciall Aftrology, imagining these things helow to depend on the Starres. Somewhat they have received of the Westerne Saracens, but they confirme nothing by Demonstration, only haue left to them Tables, by which they reckon the Eclipses and Motions:

The first of this Royall Family forbad any to learne this Iudiciall Astrologie, but those which by Hereditary right are thereto deligned, to preuent Innouations. But he which now reigneth mayntayneth divers Mathematicians, both Eunyches within the Palace, and Magistrates without, of which there are in Pegnin two Tribunals, one of Chinois, which follow their owne Authors, another of Saracens which reforme the fame by their Rules, and by conference together. 10 Both haue in a small Hill a Plaine for Contemplation where are the huge Mathematicall Instruments of Braffebefore mentioned: One of the Colledge nightly watcheth thereon as is before observed. That of Nanquin exceeds this of Pequin, as being then the Seat Royall. When the Pequin Astrologers foretell Eclipses, the Magistrates and Idoll Ministers are commanded to asfemble in their Officiary Habits to helpe the labouring Planets, which they think they do with beating brazen Bels, and often kneelinge, all the time that they thinke the Eclipse lafteth, left Eclipses,

they should then bee denoured (as I have heard) by I know not what Serpent Their Physicke Rules differ much from ours; they examine the Pulse alike, They succeed Physicians well in their Prescriptions, which viually are Simples, Herbs, Rootes, and the like. They have for it no publike Schoole, but each learnes it of his owne Mafter, yet in the two Royall Cities so Degrees of this Art are given after Examination, but curforily and without any respect acquired by his Degree, because all may practise which will. Neyther doth any study Mathematickes or Physicke, which is in any hope of the Ethikeglory, but such as want of wit or meanes hath deterred from studies more sublime. Contrariwise, that Ethike Science is the Ladder of China felicity. Confutius brought into order the Bookes of foure former Philosophers, and wrote a fift confutius his himselfe, which five Bookes hee called Dollrines: in which are contayned Morall and Politike five Bookes, Rules, Examples of the Ancients, Rites and Sacrifices, divers Poems also and the like. Besides Tetrabiblions these fine Volumes, out of Confusion and his Disciples are brought into one Volume, divers Precepts without order, Similes, Sentences Ethike, Oeconomike, Politike: this Booke for the foure parts is called the Foure Booker. These nine are the ancientest China Bookes, whence the 30 others most what are taken, and contayne most of their Characters. And the ancient Kings en-

acted that they which professe Learning , should take the foundations of their Learning from those Bookes, not only to learne the proper sense of the Text, but to bee able on the sudden to write fitly of any sentence, for which cause that Tetrabiblion is learned without Booke, Neyther is there any Vinnerstie or publike Schoole (as some of ours have affirmed, the Masters or Profesfors whereof haue undertaken to read and expound those Bookes; but every one gets a Master at home at his owne choice and coft (of which there is a huge multitude.) In this Science are three Degrees bestowed on them which offer themselues to be examined and are judged meete. That Degrees, Examination is almost wholly in Writing. The first Degree is conferred in every City in that Tibiothe Proplace which is called the Schoole, by some learned man defigned to that Office by the King, who poler.

40 is by that place called Tibis; the Degree is termed Siencai. A threefold Examination is premited. Siencai a Bi-

First, at his comming to any City of his Province, all that stand for that degree in that City, and chelors dethe confining limits thereof refort thither and are examined by those Masters which are set ouer steep of Art the Bachelours till they have attayned further Degree, mayntayned by the Kings stipend. In with vathis Examination every one is admitted, perhaps foure or 5000. affembled to that purpole. The fecond is by the foure Gouernours of the City (for none are admitted to Gouernment but the Learned) which present our of all that number 200. of the better Writers to the Tibio, and he in a third Examination chuseth 20.or 30.of the beft, which he entituleth Bachelors: their Enfignes are

a long Gowne, a Cap, and Boots, which none else may weare, & in all places they are much respected Ornsments. as in a ranke aboue the vulgar Citizens, and enjoy also divers Priviledges, being in manner subject Their Privi-50 only to the Masters aforelaid and the Tibio, other Magistrates scarsly medling with them. This ledges.

made before to re-examine them ; and these according to their writing hee divideth into five rankes; the first he rewardeth with some publike Office in the City, the second with some inferiour honour, the third he neyther rewards nor punisheth, the fourth he causeth to be publikely whipped, the last he degradeth and maketh againe Plebeians. The second Degree is called Kingin, and may be compared with our Licentiates, and is conferred but once in three yeares, and that in the Metropolitane City about the eight Moone with greater Majesty. And the degree is not Thesecond conferred to all, but to a certayne number of the worthieft, according to the dignity of each Pro- degree, Kinuince : Pequin and Nanquin haue each 150. Cequian, Quamfi, and Faquian 95. others fewer. Only \$10, 25 Licen-Bachelors, but not all are admitted to this Examination, the Tabia fending out of each City or thates or Ba-Schoole 30. or at most 40. of the best, which number yet ariseth in some Province to 4000. of unnite, if we those Examinates or Probationers for this second degree. A little before the eighth Moon (which compare them

Tibio not only hath authority ouer these new created Bachelors, but cuer those which were

often fals in September, the Pequin Magistrates present to the King 100. of the most esteemed withours. Philosophers in the Kingdome, who thence pricketh or nameth thirty, for each Prouince two, to Examin. 154

Palace of ex-

take charge of the Examination of these Candidates. One of these two must bee of the Hanks Colledge, the Collegians whereof are most famous thorow the Kingdome. The King doth not name them till that nicke of time when they must presently packe to their Province, dilgently guarded alfo that they fpeake with none of that Province till the Aff or Commencement be path. In the fame Prouince allo are cholen the best Philosophers to affift these two Examiners. In tuery Mother City is a huge Palace built for this purpose, compassed with high wals, with many sign tions for the Examiners separate from noyse; and foure thousand Cels or Studies besides in the midft of the Palace, wherein is a stoole and table for one man, that none may see or confer with

y others. When the Examiners sent by the King, and those of the Province are come thither, they are 10 presently shut up in their stations before they can speake with other men, or with each other. during all the Examination time. Night and day, meane-whiles the Magifrates and Souldiers guard the Palace from Colloquies. Three dayes (the same thorow the Kingdome) the ninth, twelfth and fifteenth of the eighth Moone, from morning to night are appointed for their winting, the doores being shur. A light refection prouided the day before is given to the Writersat publike cost. When the Bachelors come to the Palace, they are thorowly searched whether they haue any Booke or Writing with them, and are admitted only with the Penfils which they vie in writing, their Plate, Paper and Inke; these also and their Garments searched to preuent all fraud, which found caufeth the twofold punishment both of losse and sence. When they are admitted, the doores shut and sealed, the two Royall Examiners out of the Tetrabiblium propound to three Sentences for fo many Theames to every of them; and foure out of the five Bookes of De-Seaco writings drives for so many other Theames. These seven Writings must bee made for elegance of words and weight of Septences according to the Precepts of China Rhetoricke; neyther must any Writing contayne aboue 500. Characters. Two dayes being passed for the Examinationn of

Theames si-

thele; the next day out of the Chronicles, or other three Cales of Politic are propounded, wherein each which three Theames or Writing express their minde, or Libel-wise admonth the King what were fittest to be done. The third day three Law Cases, such as happen in the Maguitrates, Offices are propounded, for each thereof to expresse his Sentence. These in great filence, each in his appointed Cell, having written their Theames, subscribed with their owne, their Fathers, Grand-fathers and great Grand-fathers names, and sealed so that none but men appointed may reade them, offer them to certayne Officers, which before the Examiners fee them ; cause them to bee transcribed by certayne thereto appointed : which Copies to be distinguished from the Originals are written in Red Inke, without the Authors names the Originals laid vp (afely) that none might by the hand or name know the Authour. In this Examination the Assistants first roiest the worst & present vnto the two Examiners twice so many as are to be chosen Licentiates; as if one hundred and fifty are to bee chosen, three hundred are tendered to paffe their last scrutinie: who first lay by the best, so many as are to bee elected (and thence take the first, second, and third, and set them accurately in order, and then conferre them with the Originals, thence taking the names which they cause to bee written in great Cubitall Letters, in a luge Table, which they expose about the end of the eighth Moone in great 40 Detects, in a mage Laure, winten mey captor about the time of the communication of magnitates, and appliant of the new Blefts Friends and Kindred. The Printledges and Ornaments of this Degree are more then of the former, and it they intend to printledges and Ornaments of this Degree are more then of the former, and it they intend to printledges.

Third degree

Theames were best liked. The Bachelors of other Prouinces may not here be admitted slome only except of the Kings Schoole in Pequin and Nanquin. The third Degree is like our Doctorship, called Cin. su, which is conferred enery third yeare also, but onely at Pequin, and alway is the next year after that Commencement of Licentiates. Only three hundred chosen ou of the whole Kingdome obtayne it, although the Li- 10 centiates of enery Prouince are admitted to the Examination.

ceed no further, they are hereby capable of very good Magistracies. After the Act, the Kings Examines publish a Book of their proceedings, the names of the Graduates and their principal Writings, especially his which is as the Elder Brother (they call him Quagan) and whole

Co'as

This Act is in the second Moone on the same dayes that the former and in like forme, saving that the diligence is greater, as for a greater degree, and the Colai, the chiefe Magistrates of the that the unigence a greater, as to, a poster segre, and the same Palace, where the Li-kingdome are Examiners. The Dockors being pronounced in the fame Palace, where the Li-centiates whe to bee; all of them in the Kings Palace, before the chiefe Magistrates of the Court (yea anciently the King was wont to bee present) make a Theame, according to the judgement whereof, the order of the Magistracies which they are to beare, is declared, being distributed in three Rankes.

Hee that in Examination of Doctors had the first place, hath in this second Examination the third place without question : but hee which hath the first or second enjoyeth a great dignitie 60 during his life, besides the greatest Offices in the Common-wealth; and might (compared with ours) bee as a Duke or Marqueffe, if it were Hereditary. These Doctours presently haue their peculiar Vest, Cap, Bootes, and other Enfignes of Magistrates, and are preferred to the best Offices, fuch as the Licentiates may not attayne, and are as the prime men of

Those Licentiates which are rejected from the Doctorship, if they meane to proceed no fur- Ambition will ther, are preferred to Magistracie, but if they list still to stand for that degree they betake them be highest or felius home to their Bookes atresh, till the third-yeare-examination returnes, fo that fome stand nothing. ten times, continuing follong private to become more publike. A Booke is also published of them and of their fuccesse. Another is yearely set forth contayining the Names, Countrey, Parents, O fices of all the Dostors; and where they governe, whereby a man may know how any hath rilen or descended all his life, as is there vivall after their merits. It is remarkable also how the Licentiates and Doctors of the same yeare respect one the other as Brethren euer after, and

loue the Friends also of their Colleagues, and honour their Examiners as Fathers. They vie to grant at the fame times and places the fame Titles (in the Moone following) to give, Military Professors, but with lesse pompe, because Souldierie is of no such reckoning with them. and few fland for them. This Military tryall is three-fold, in the first they shoot nine Arrowes on Horse-backe running; in the second they shoot as many at the same marke standing and hee which hath hit the Marke with foure on Horke-backe and two Arrowes on foot, is admitted to Threefold

the third tryall wherein they have fome Theame of Military matters propounded, and the tryall

Indges examining this Triple tryall out of the whole number pronounce about fifty Licentiates in enery Pronince, And when the Doctorall Act is at Pequin, one hundred of the choice of these after a Triple Examination are made Military Doctors. These Doctors are more easily admitted to Military Prefectures (but scarcely without Bribes) then the Licen-20 tiates. Both the Philosophicall and Military, ouer their doores, set vp in great Letters this their new attayned dignity. All the Examiners, whether of Mathematicall, or Military, or Philotophicall degrees, are of those Pulosophers, without affiftance or any Captaine, Mathematician, or Physician, as if thereby they were inabled to all things.

. d. III.

Of the Tartarian Conquest; Of H v m v v the Establisher of the present Gouernment. The Revenues. Magistrates in the Courts Royall, Proninces , Cities, Orders, Exaltations, Vifitations, Deprivations.

30

He Gouernment of China is Monarchicall. In times past, there have beene Lords of Chep 5. Title, as are Dukes, Marqueffes, and Earles in Europe, but taken away eighteene hun-Pelo hath relathis, so are Dukes, water areas, and bester in the stopp, but taken away eighteen nunqueft. The lefuires. Innke that that Conquerous was Tamber lawer, for the Chinoic all
him Timor, and fay that he had before flabdued Prifix and Tartaria. Hee (whofoeuer hee was) whose lackers,
whose lackers are the stopped of the Chinoic all
whose lackers. conquered all the Chinois and left them to his Pefterity till the yeare 1368. At that time the (and perfeder Tartenary growing weater, diener Saptynes arole in dieres parts of the Kingdome which haply of that the checke off that woke. Amonest tiernall the most tamous was of the Family Cie. whom after, Conquest) was Tartarians growing weaker, quality experience of the Family Ciss, whom after. Conquen) was from the Family Ciss, whom after. Conquen) was from or Isthooke off that yoke. Among the can are the more range of the following the company of the compa wards in the proper caucal samples, a sample and a specific property of the first property of the property of Rebels thorow all the Kingdome, and possessed that Sourceigntie which still continueth in his searce before Line. For the Crowne there goeth by Inheritance; only two or three of the Ancient King Timelas, re-haue commended it to others - their owne Sonner feeming wowarshes and the small that the statements by have commended it to others, their owne Sonnes feeming vinworthy; and the people have by were not fully Rebellion fornetimes rayled a new Family, divers yet loing their lines rather then acknow fabet (for ledging that Faction, this being Procerbiall in their Philosophie, An boneff Woman bath but one Mandente ler-

Information a journment continue could be seen that Founder of any Royall family makes new Lawes, of Ectuary There are no ancient Lawes, but the first Founder of any Royall family makes new Lawes, of Ectuary Contactions There are no ancient Lawes, our after the model of any acoyan family makes new Lawes, caragainst which his Posterities are to easily permitted to transgresses. So the present Lawes of China ate Many (ap.135) no ancienter then Hamou, who either made new, or confirmed the old. Out of ignorance of a cill lamming. no ancienter tuen 12100000, who cannot make here, or committee the one. Out or ignorance or or the there are no of the world, they thinke their King Lordofthe World, and call him Thenen, the Some of whom let ther parts of the world, they thinke their King Lord of the World, and call him Thiencus, the January and of Hessien, or (which is all one in their Theologic) of God. His vitall title yet is Hoams, that is, [49,154]. Butto of resumes, or written a store in the property of one and store into resume, write a store into fappeame C. Manach: whereas they file other Kings Garm, an inferiour title. To present Re. Tamerine, and perference of the Royall bloud should intermeddle to end the International antermeddle to end the International state of the Royall bloud should intermeddle to end the International State of the International S with Gouernment. Those Captaynes which had ayded him in expellion of the Tartars, her im Reignear

gaue militarie Commands with reuenues and titles, to defeend to their Heires. The Royal race 1368-378000 hee gaue the triles of Outm, as pettic Kings, with large reuenues to be yearly payed out of the Exchequer, and commanded all Magifirsts to reuerous them. They Debetted he before the based in Hillington the Exchequer, and commanded all Magifirsts to reuerous them. nee gase the critical commanded all Magistrates to rescrence them. Their Posteritie hee hosoured Tattington.re with interiour Honours and revenues, fo much leffe as further from the originall, and after cer-lose dendendeng taine generations to have no more then might well maintayne them without labour. The like buyoengifo in Marriages and Titles were produced for the Royall Daughters. Those affifting Captaynes he fooneborn. In Marringes and a location in the a Charger, in which are engaged those their exploits for decurr), has

First and second place gloriou.

288 Humvus Lawes, Kings Revenues, Six Courts and Colai, Choli, Zauli. LIB, II.

liuerance of the Kingdome; which being shewne to the King, is priniledged with pardon of any penaltie, though mortall, three times, except for Treason which forfeiteth presently all Priniledges. Euery time it obtaynes any pardon, it is engrauen in the Plate. The Sonnes in Law. and Fathers in Law of the King, and some which have extraordinarily merited of the State, enjoy like Honours and Reuenues with the fame diminution of time, as before,

Magiffrates. Dumfu and

Lau Ye or Lau Mandarin 2 Pertugal name.

Healfo ordained that all Magistracie and Gouernment should belong to those Licentiates and Doctors, whereto neyther the fauour of the King or other Magistrates are necessary, but their owne merits, except where corruption frustrates Law. All Magistrates are called Quonfu, and for honours fake they are stiled Lan je or Lan sie, that is , Lord , or Father. The Poringale call for honours take they are trued Law je or Lawy, and Arillocraite, in that Gouernment: for 10 them Mandarias. These have some representation of Arillocraite, in that Gouernment: for 10 though they doe nothing but first peritioning the King, hee also determines nothing without their follicitation. And if a private man petitions (which is feldome, because Officers areappointed to examine Petitions before the King fees them) the King, if hee will grant it, fends it to the Tribunall proper for that businesse, to aduise him what is fit to bee done. I have found for certaine, that the King cannot giue Money or Magistracie to any, except hee bee folicited by fome Magistrate : I meane this of publike Reuenues; which doubtlesse doe exceed one hundred and fiftie Millions yearely, & are not brought into the Palace Treasurie, nor may the King frend them at his pleasure : but all whether Money or Rice and other things in kinde, are layed vo in

the publike Treasuries and Store-houses, in all the Kingdome. Thence the expenses of the King his Wiues, Children, Eunuches, Family, and of all his Kindred are in Royall fort disburfed, but 18 How dispensed according to the ancient Lawes, neither more nor leffe. Thence the Stipends of Magistrates and Souldiers and all Officers thorow the Kingdome are paid: the publike Buildings, the Kings Palace, Cities, Walls, Towres, Fortresseand all prouision of War are thence sustained, which cause new Tributes sometimes to be imposed, this huge Revenue notwithstanding.

Bookes of

Of Magistrates are two forts, one of the Court which rule there, and thence rule the Kingdome; and other Provinciall, which gouerne particular Cities or Provinces. Of both forts are fine or fix Bookes to be fold enery where, printed twice each moneth at Pequin, as by their course of printing (you have seene) is easie; contaying nothing else but the name, Countrey, and degree of the Magistrates; and therefore printed so often because of the exaltings, shiftings, fetting lower, death of Parents (which suspends three yeares to mourning in private) their owne : deaths or deprivations.

I. Li pa, or Court of Magiftrates.

Of the Court Tribunals are reckoned fixe; the first, Lips (Ps is a smuch as Tribunal) or Court. and Li, as (Magistrates) to which it belongeth to name the chiefe Magistrates of the Kine. dome, bringing vp from the lower to the higher according to the Lawes prescribed, or if they deserue it, abasing or quite deprining them. For those Licentiates and Doctors continually afcend, except their owne faults deject them, wherein a deprination makes for euer vncapable. The fecond is called Ho-ps, that is, the Exchequer Court, or that of the Treasury; which exacts and disburfeth the Kings Revenues. The third is the Li-pu, or Court of Rites, which ordereth the publike Sacrifices, Temples, Priests, Kings, Marriages, Schooles, Examinations, Festiuall Dayes, common Gratulations to the King, Titles given to the wel-deferring, Physicians, 48 Colledges of Mathematicians, entertayning and fending Embassages, with their Rites, Presents, Letters; the King holding it abasing to his Majesty to write to any. The fourth, is the Pimpu, or Military Court, which rewards the meriting, and takes from the fluggish Souldier; ordereth their Multers and giues Military degrees. The fifth is Campa, which hath care of the publike Buildings, Palaces for the King or his Kindred, and the Magistrates; Shippes for publike burthens or Armadas, Bridges, Walls of Cities and all like prouitions. The fixth Court is Himpu, which inquireth into Criminall Causes and sentenceth them; also all the publike Prisonsare

4. Pimpu. c. Cumon.

2. Ho-gu.

6, Him;u.

The Prefident

or Clam Ciu.

All the affaires of the Kingdom depend on these Courts, which therefore have Magistrates and Notaries in euery City and Province, to admonish them faithully of all things, the multitude and so order facilitating this so weighty a Designe. For first, in every Court is a Lord Chiefe Insticeor Prefident called Ciam Ciu, who hath two Affiftants, one fitting at his right hand, the other at his left, called Cilam : their dignity in the Royall Cities is accounted principall. After thefeeuery Tribunall hath diuers Offices, each of which hath diuers Colleagues, besides Notaries, Courtiers, Apparitors, and other Servants. Besides these Tribunals there is another the greatest colsi, or Coun. in the Court and Kingdome; they call them Colsos, which are three or foure, fometimes fixe fell of State. which have no peculiar businesses, but take care of the whole Re-publike, and are the Kings Priny-Counfell in all Affaires. These are daily admitted into the Kings Palace, and there abide whole dayes, and answere as they see cause to the Petitions which are put up to the King (who was wont to define matters with these Colas in publike) and shewing their answere to the King, 60 hee alters or approoueth the same, and sets his hand thereto for the execution.

Choli and Zauli Befides thefe Orders of Magistrates and others not mentioned (as like to our owne) there are Magistrates two forts not vsuall with vs, the one Chois, the other called Zauli. In each of these Orders are extraordinary. aboue fixty choice Philosophers, men approved for their wissome and courage before experien-

CHAP. 7. S. 2. Hanlin College, Yunlo remoues the Court, Symmetry of Magistrates, 280

ced. These two Rankes are vied by the King in Court or Province businesses of greater weight, with great and Royall power, which caufeth to them great respect and veneration. These by Libell admonish the King if any thing be done contrary to the Lawes in any parts of the King. dome, not sparing any of the Magistrates, nor the Kings Houle, nor the King himselfe; to the wonder of other Nations. And although the King sometimes bee touched to the quicke, and toucheth them to the quicke againe, yet ceafe they not still to rip the fore till it be cured. Other Magistrates may doe it, yea any private man, but these mens Libels or Petitions are of most worth, as proceeding from their peculiar Office. The Copies of them and of the Kings answers are printed by many, fo that the Court and State Affaires flye thorow the Kingdome, and are by Io some written in Bookes, and those of most moment transcribed into the Annals of the Kingdome. Of late when the King would for love of a fecond Sonne have excluded the eldeft, fo many by Libels reprehended the King, that he in anger depaided or abased one hundred of the Magistrates. They yet ceased not but one day went together into the Kings Palace, and offered vp their Magistracies if he persisted to breake the Law. Lately also when the chiefe of the Colss did not observe the Law, in two moneths space about one hundred Libels were put vp, notwithstanding they knew him a great Fauourite; and hee dyed within a while after, as was thought, of griefe.

There are also besides Magistrates, not a few Colledges instituted for divers purposes, but the Colledge. most eminent is that called Han lin Tuen, into which none are chosen but choice Doctors after Han in Tuen. 20 due Examinations. They which line in that Royall Colledge, meddle not with Gouernment, yet are of higher dignitie then the Gouernours. Their Office is to order the Kings Writing, to make Annals of the Kingdome, to write Lawes and Statutes. Of these are chosen the Malters of the Kings and Princes. They wholly addict themselues to their studies, and in the Colledge haue their degrees of honours, which they actayne by writing. Thence they are preferred to great dignities but not out of the Court. Neither is any chosen to bee a Colao , but out of this Colledge. They gaine much also by Writings for their Friends, Epitaphs, Inscriptions and the like; which all leeke to have of them, their name giving credit and reputation of Elegance. Thefe are the chiefe for Examinations of Licentiates and Doctors, who hold them for Maffers and fend them Presents.

All thele Pequin Magistrates are found also at Nanquin, but obscured by the Kings absence. Cause of the Hum on had fixed his Seat at Nanquin, but after his death Tun lo one of his Nephewes, who in remouin the Northerne Prounces defended with an Armie thole Borders against the Tarkers, perceining Sear Royal Humanus Sonne but weake, thought to denrine him of the Kingdome, which has established from Nesquin Hum-vas Sonne but weake, thought to deprine him of the Kingdome , which her effected by helpe of the Mortherne Prounces, and with force, fraud and largeffe obtayned his Vncles Throne. And because he was strongest in the North parts, and most seare was from the Tartars there, he there fixed his Refidence, where the Tartar Kings had swonted to abide and called that Citie Pequin, that is, the Northerne Court, as Nanquin fignifieth the Somberne, leaving to this the former Offices and Immunities.

The Government of the other thirteene Provinces depends on two Magistrates, the one Pn- Provincial 40 cinfu, the other Naganzafu: the former judging Civill Caufes, the later Criminall; both refiding Gournment with great Pompe in the Mother Citie of the Province. In both Courts are divers Colleagues Pucin-fu. and they also chiefe Magistrates called Tauli, which governing other Cities often reside in them. Hagangele-The Prouinces are all distributed into diners Regions, which they call Fu, each of which hach a Dinifion of peculiar Gouernour called Cifin. These Regions are subdivided into Cen, and Hien, that is the Provinces. greater or more eminent Townes, and those which are more vulgar, which are not lesse then our Regions or Cities, if you except our greatest. These have their special Governours called Cices and Cibies. Shires. The Gouernours of Cities and Regions have their foure Affiltants and Colleagues as Auditors, and Iudges to helpe them. As for the opinion of some that thinke those only to bee Cities, Title sumitswhich are called Fu, and Cen, and Hien to bee Townes; it is an errour: for the City wherein the ken

50 Gouernour of the Region resides, is also called Hien, and hath its peculiar Gouernour called Cabien, Cifu, Cibien and and Affiliants; and the Cifu hath no more power there then in other places of his Luridiction; Cicu. which is the first Appeale to him as Superiour from the Cibien or Cicen. The second Appeale is to the Pucumfu and Naganzosu and their Colleagues in the Metropolitane Cities, which Cities likewise have their Cibien and Cifu, aswell as the Subordinate; all in incrediale

And because the whole Prouinciall Gouernment hath reference to Pequin, therefore in energy Prouince besides these, are other two superiour to them sent from the Royall Citie, the one fixing his Refidence in the Province, called Tutam, which may be compared to our Vice-197, ha- Tutam.

uing command ouer other Magistrates, and in Martiall affaires: the other is yearely sent farom Cis jumor 60 the Court, and is called Cea-juen, as a Commissioner or Visitor, which reviewes all the Causes of the Province, the Cities alloand Caffles, inquireth of the Magistrates, and punished fome of the meaner fort, acquainting the King touching the reft, how every one demeaneth himfelfe; and he onely executeth Capitall punishments. Besides these, are many others in Cities, Townes and Villages : and befole them, many which have command of Souldiers, especially in the Con-

Magistraces

fines and on the Coasts in supinest Peace, watching and warding in Ports, Walls, Bridges, Co. Militrie com- files, as in the hottest Warres, with Musters and Martrall exercites. All the Magistrates of the Kingdome, are reduced to nine Orders, whether you respect the Philosophicall or Militarie Se. nate: to all which out of the Treatury is proportionably distributed monethly pay, Money or Rice : vet little answerable to that their Magnificence (the highest Order not having one thousand Duckets yeerely) and equall to all of the same ranke, the supresme in matters of Warre hauing as much as the supreame in the literate Order, if you looke to that which the Lawale Rebes and Or. loweth. But much more accrueth extraordinarie then this fee or flipend, besides what any mane industrie, couetife, fortune, bribing addeth, by which they oft attayne to great wealth.

aultrie, courtile, fortune, or a mag Caps, both Mercuriall and Martiall, of blacke Cloath with 18 two Eares or wings, of Quall figure, which may eafily fall off, which being a difference, cauferh the more modestie and steadinesse in carriage of their heads. They all weare like Vest, and like blacke leather Bootes of peculiar fashion ; also a Girdle wider then the body, about foure fingers broad, adorned with circular and square Figures : On the breast and backe, they weare two Ignare Clouber Embroidered : in which and the Girdles is great varietie, according to their diuers Degrees; by which the skilfull know their ranke and place. The cloathes intimate it by the figures of Flowers, Fowles, Beafts; the girdles by the matter, of Wood, Horne, Sweet wood Gold or Silver; and the bett of all of that lafter before mentioned, called Tree, brought from Cafear. Their shadowes or Sumbreros, by their Colours and numbers intimate like difference. They have other Ornaments, Banners, Chapnes, Cenfors, Guards with Cryes to make way, to that in most frequent streetes no man appeareth, more or lesse, according to the Magistrates

See in Gees. Cap. 4. V mbelle. Consentednes

Philosophers

No Office a. boue 3.yerres.

Seuere Iuflice 4000, ludges iudeci.

z. Couctous.

2. Cruell. 3. Remiffe. a. Rafh.

Careto preuentrebellions, factions and bribes.

Strangers.

The Chinois having plentie of all things, care not for fubduing the neighbour-Nations, better keeping their owne, leffe caring for others Countries, then our Enropeans : their Chronicles of foure thousand yeeres not mentioning any care of enlarging their Empire. And if any China imprefions or foot-prints bee, it is from men voluntarily going to other Countries, not from the Kings ambition fending them. It is also remarkeable that Philosopers beare all the sway, the Souldiers and Captaynes being subject to them, and sometimes beaten of them as Schoole-boyes by their Master : euen in Militarie matters, the King more vsing the adulfe of Philosoppersthen Captaynes; whereupon euery haughtie fpirit rather affects meane places in the Literate Order, 10 then great in the Martiall. Yea these Literate are more magnanimous, and more contemne their Beautie of Or- lives in zeale of the publike then the Souldierie, No leffe admirable 1s the Symmetrie and Order of Magistrates in their subordinate Orders, in Obedience, Reuerence, Vilitations and Presents; the Inferiour giving honourable Titles to the Superiour and kneeling to them. None beares any Office about three yeeres, except the King confirme it. And the chiefe Magistrates of Prouincces. Cities and Regions, every third yeere must appeare at Pequin, and doe their Rites to the King, at which time feuere inquirie is made of the Magistrates, and they thereupon rewarded or punished. I have also observed, that the King dares not alter any of those things, which in this publike Disquisition are ordered by the Judges. Armo 1607. we reade foure thousand Magistrates condemned, that being the Search-yeere, and a Booke published thereof.

These Condemned are of fine forts ; First, Couetous which have taken Bribes to perpert Inflice, or have viurped the publike or private mens fortunes : thefe are wholly deprived of all Offices for euer. The fecond are the Cruell, which have too feuerely punished, which are also deprived of their Places and Enfignes : The third are the Old and fickly, and the Remiffe and neeligent; these are deprived, but permitted the Immunities and Enfignes. The fourth fort, are the rash, headdie, and vnaduised, which are put in lower Offices, or sent to more easie places of Go-5. Vngouerned uernment. The last are luch, as have not governed themselves or theirs, worthy of that place of Gouernment; thele are wholly depriued. The like Inquifition is made euery fifth yeere of the Court Magistrates, and the same time also, of Militarie Commanders.

None may beare Office in his native Province, except Militarie. The Sonnes also or Dome- 50 flike feruants of Magistrates, may not goe out of the house left they should bec Factors for bribes but all feruices without doores is done by Officers, defigned to his place : and when hee goeth out of his House hee fealeth the doores, whether private or publike, that none of his Servants may goe out vnwitting to him.

They permit no Stranger to line with them that mindes to returne to his Countrey, or is knowne to have Commerce with forraigne Nations : and no Stranger although of a friendly Nation and Tributarie, may have accesse to the inward parts of the Kingdome, a thing whereof I haue feene no Law, but Custome : neither haue I euer feene any of Core in China, except some Slaues which a Captayne brought thence, although a tributarie Nation which vieth in manner the China Lawes. And if a Stranger steale into the Countrey, they punish him not with Death 60 nor Slaverie, but permit him not to returne. They most severely punish those, which without the Kingsleaue haue commerce with Strangers : and hardly can any bee perfwaded to be fent abroad with Mandates; and fuch are rewarded with some Dignitie at their returne, None beare Weapon in Cities, not the Souldiers or Captaynes, but in their Traynings; nor haue any men

weapons in their Houles, except some rustic blade which they vie when they trauell for feare Weapons. of Theenes. Their greatest Brawles goe no further, then scratching or pulling by the hayre; hee of Theenes. I neir greatest blawies goe no totalets, the state of the larger, the layer, the which flees or abstaines from wrong is esteemed both Wise and Valiant. When the King dy-Succession and eth, none of his Sonnes are permitted to remayne in the Royall Citie, but the Heyre; and it is royall kindred, Capitall for them, being dispersed in divers Cities to stirre thence. Some principall amonest them, compounds their firifes and rules them; in Cases with others, they are subject to the Magistrates.

ð. IIII.

Their manifold rites in Salutations, Entertaynments, and other Civilitie: to the King and Magistates : Of Buryals and Marriages, Birthdayes; their Men, Women, Names and Games, Habites,

Ourtesse or Civilitie, is reckoned one of their fine Cardinall vertues, much commeded in Courtesse in their Books, (Their common Rues pee base bad largely in Pannia,) When greater to fpect is vied, as after long absence, or on a Solemne day, after the common bowing, both fall on their knees with the forehead to the ground, and then rife and downe a completible.

gaine in like fort three or foure times. When they doe this reuerence to a Superiour, hee flands hautour to oat the head of the Hall, or fits, and at all those prostations ioyning his hands, bowes a little and sometime for greater modestie hee goeth to the side of the Hall, whose head is Northwards as the doore is Southwards. The same rites they performe to their Idols; and sometimes as the Sido teue-Scruants to their Mafter, or the meanest of the people to honourable persons, which is presently rence, to kneele and knock the ground thrice with their forehead; they stand at his side when their Mafter speakes, and kneele at euery answer. When one speakes to another, they wie not the second Respect of perperson, nor the first person when they mention themselves, except to their inferiour, and have sons. as many formes of depressing themselves, as of exalting others, the lowliest of which is to call a SeeThange Emans selfe by his proper name, in stead of (I,) When they speake any thing of another mans, piste, up. 344 they vie a more honourable forme; Of their owne, or theirs, a more modest: which a man must

learne both for manners fake, and to vnderstand their meaning.

The Vilitors fend their Libels or papers of vilitation, fo many that the Porter is faine to keepe Viling one anote of their names, and where they dwell, left wee should forget; and if the partie to be will-another, ted be not at home or at leasure, that libell is left with the Porter for a testimonie. The more honourable the Vilitor, the larger hee writes his name. In fending Presents they vie like libelling; fetting downe also each gitt in a line by it selfe, part of which may bee sent backe without offence, which is done with a like libell of thankes. They often fend money or pieces of Gold for 40 presents. They have Garments proper for visitations. The chiefe place in both Royall Courts. is ginen to Strangers, most remote especially, which made vs commonly to bee preferred. The fernant, when they are fet, brings as many little Cups of Cis as are Guefts. When they part, Tedious cour-Tenants, which are a case of the second seco Seruant is fent after in his Mafters name, to falute them, and they fend their feruants like-

Their Banquets are not so much commessations as Composations; for although their Cups be as China banques. little as Nut-shels, yet they drinke often. Their Civill and Religious affayres are therein han-ing. dled, befides the demonstration of kindnesse. In eating they have neither Forkes, nor Spoones, 50 nor Kniues; but vie small smooth stickes, a palme and a halfe long, wherewith they put all meats Feeding. to their mouthes, without touching them with their fingers. They bring all things to the Table cut in little pieces, except it bee of lofter condition, as Egges, Fifth, and fuch things as their ftickes will diuide. They vie to drinke hot, euen in hottest weather, whether their Cia-decoction, or Wine, or Water : which it feemeth is profitable to the Stomacke ; for they line long, and are strong at seventie or eightie yeeres : Neither is any of them troubled with the Stone, The Stone vawhich I suppose is occasioned by our cold drinke. When any is Inuited, a Libell is sent a day or knowne in the more dayes (if it beeto a solemne Banquet) before, fignifying, that the Inuiter bath prepared a me, which so more cayes (it it neers a losemine Danquet) before, inguitying, that the Inuiter bato prepared a manager barous of night) bee may beare and learne somewhat of him : At the day they send another like Libell (on in the Kidney, 60 the out-fide of thefe Libels, there is a red paper added with the more honourable Name of the in Vreter, Blad-

uited, which the Chinois vie besides their proper name) in the morning to each Guest, and der inhalast my honorable Patron and befi friend, B. King, Anno 1611. and Anno 1613. Mafter Bifeld my neighbour, the paineful Minister at Toi-Blownis dyed of a Stone, which I weighed, and found (a miracle in Nature) much about 31 Ouncer, whiles these our client of Junos are in the Preffe; therefore here mentioned. My felic slio basing flour paffions, am therefore not flouis in compaffion.

third at the houre. Their furniture is not Hangings (whereof they have no vie) but Pictures. Flowers, Vessels; to each Guest his Table, and sometimes two to one, the one before the other. These Tables are some Cubits long and broad, but more in length, and couered with a cloath as our Altars. The Seats shine with their Varnish, adorned also with Pictures and Gold. The fift entertainment is with Cia in the Hall: and thence they goe to the Feafting-roome, Before they fit downe, the Inuiter falutes the principall Gueft with a low courtefie, and holding a cup of Wine: then goeth to the doore or porch, and first making a low courtesse, turning his face to the South, powres out that cup on the ground, offering it to the Lord of Heaven, and bowing downe againe, returneth, and filling another cup goeth to that principall Guest, and bowing falutes him in the place in which the rites of falutation are vied: and then they goe together to 10 the Table where the chiefe Guest must fit. The midst of it is the chiefe place; there with both his hands he fets a dish with great veneration, and taking the two stickes (which visually are of Ebonie, or Iuorie tipped with Gold or Siluer, where they touch the meate) layer them by, and taking a feat, brusheth it with his sleenes lightly, and sets it in the middest; after which both goe backe and bow themselues in the middest of the Roome. Thus hee doth to every one. placing the second on the left hand, the third on the right, Lastly, hee which shall have the chiefe roome receiueth of his feruant the Inuiters Dish and Cup, and bids Wine to be filled, and together with the other Guests and the Inuiter, boweth downe and placeth the Dish on his Ta-

The Guefts courtefie to the Hoft.

Sipping oft, one draught.

ble (which is placed in the lower part of the Hall, with his backe to the South, and face to the chiefe Table) with the flickes and feat, as he had done before to him; and then all goe agains to 20 their place, with great ceremonie, to fit them better with both hands, he to whome the rice is done, standing by the fide of the doer with his hands in his sleeues, and modestly bowing with thanks. They wash neither before nor after. After all this, they performe the last rite of inclina. tion to the Inuiter together, and then each to other, and then fit downe. When they drinke the Inuiter with both hands takes the Cup in the Dish, and lightly lifting it vp, and then letting it down inuites them to drinke, all turning to him at the same time, and beginning to drinke, or to fip rather, foure or fine times fetting it to his mouth, not as we vie with one continued draught, After the first Cup the Dishes are brought in, of which the Inuiter beginning, all with their flickes apply a bit or two to their mouthes, diligently observing, not to lay downe their flickes before the principall Gueft hath layd downe his : and then the feruants fill his , and after every 30 mans Cup, with hot Wine: and the same rite is againe and againe repeated, but more sipping then eating. Mean-while some discourse, or Comedie, or Musike continue. The grace of their Feaft is variety, a little of each, Flesh also and Fish mixed, taking off nothing, but setting one Dift on another like Castles and Towers. Bread, and Rice (which there supplyes our Bread) comes not in solemne Banquets. They have games also, in which the loser is fined to drinke, with others disport. None is compelled to drinke about his strength. Their drinke is tiple boyled like our Beere. Their folemne Banquets last all night, the remainders given to the Guess feruants. Neere the end of the Feast they change Cups. In eating they are more moderate.

The King is observed with more Rites then any other in the World. None speakes to him

but his Euruches, and those which line in his Palace, Sonnes and daughters. None of the Magi-40

firates without the Palace (the Eunuches alio haue their degrees) speake to the Ring butby

Petition, and those with so many formes of veneration that none can make them, which is not

well exercifed, though he be learned. Euery new yeere which beginnes with that New Moone

which next precedeth or followeth the Nones of February, out of enery Prouince a Legate is

fent to vilite the King , which is done more folemnely every third yeere. Alfo in every Citie

on euery Change day, all the Magistrates assemble to one place in their Citie, where the Kings

Throne and Dragon-enfignes are carved and gilded, often bowing and kneeling before it with

peculiar composition of the body to veneration, and wish ten theusand yeers of life to the King.

the Kings kindred make their appearance there and presents. All also which are named to any 50

The like is done on his Birth-day yeerely, the Pequin Magistrates and Provincial! Legates, and

Office by the King goe to give thankes to the Throne (for the King is not there) with rites pre-

King obserued.

scribed with habite peculiar to that purpose, with an Juorie Table couering their mouth as of as they speake before the King: the King was wont to come forth to a window, with such a Table in his hand, and another on his head, ouer his Crowne hanged, about with threads of gemmes, his face hidden in presence from the beholders. The Kings colour is yellow (forbidden to others) of which his garment is wrought with many golden Dragons, which are carued or painted in all the Palace, and Veffell, and furniture; in the roofe also, whence some have thought the Tiles to be of Gold or Braffe, being of a yellow Earth, each nayled to the Timber: with Nayles gilded on the heads, that all may appeare yel-

Kings colour yellow, Sun-Dragons.

The Palace

all linage.

The Palace gates are foure, to the foure corners of the World. They which passeby, descend from their Horses or Seats, and goe on foot till they be pass, the greatest soonest alight, and that at Nanguin alto, where no King hath of long time refided. The gates to the South both inner

low. It were treason for another to arrogate that colour or Armes, except he bee of the Roy- 60

and our ward are three, the King only going in and out at the middle (which otherwise is that) Kings gate. others at the other gates on the right and left hand. Their computation of time is onely by the Time. Kings Raigne. Sometimes the King bestoweth a Title on the Parents of the principall Magi- Inlefrates by a certaine writing, made by the Kings Philosophers in the Kings name; effeemed wonderfully, acquired with any coft, and kept in the familie as a thing facred. The like opinion

CH AP.7. S.4. Titles, Honours for vertue. Rites for the dead. Marriages.

is of other Titles given to Widowes, expressed in two or three Characters, given to Widowes. Widowes. which to their old age have refused second marriages; or to old Men which have lived an hun- Old more dred yeeres, and in like cates. They fet thefe Titles over their doores. Magistrates also doe the like to their friends. To good Magistrates Arches are erected at publike coft of Marble : by Arches. to Citizens also to some of their Citizens which have attayned any notable dignitie. The most precious Artifices thorow all the Kingdome are yeerely fent to the King to Pequin with great Pequin.

cofts. The Magistrates of the Kings Citie goe abroad with leffe pompe, on horsebackes and few of the principall in Seats, and those carried but by foure Porters; all in reverence of the King. Foure times in the yeere, once a quarter, all the Court Magistrates assemble at the Sepulchres of the antient Kings and Queenes, and make there their offerings: giuing the princi- Funerals of pall honour to Humvu. They prepare to this folemnitie certaine dayes falting at home and fur- Kings:

ceaning of faits.

Next to the King they honour their Magistrates, both in formes of words and visitations, to Honour of which none aspire but Magistrates; and they which have beene deprised lose not all horiour in Magistrates. this kind, but sometimes come forth in their habits, and are respected by their Citie Magistrates. If one bee preferred to another dignity, which hath well executed his Office, they honour him with publike gitts, and referue his Boots in a publike Chift, with Verses in his praise. To fome they erect Temples also, and Altars with Images, and some are deputed to keepe lights there burning, and odours, at publike Rent charge perpetually, with huge Centers of Bell-metall, as they doe to their Idols. Yet doe they diffinguish betwixt this and Diuine worship, of their Gods asking many things, whereas these Rites are onely memorials, though many of of their Gous assing many causes, which the suggest of fuch Temples, by friends often ere. As in the day the vulgar confound them together. Cities are full of such Temples, by friends often ere. As in the day in the suggest of the the vinger contours the source of the state of the vinworthing and bowing Saints worthing the state of the vinworthing saints worthing the state of the vinworthing saints worthing the state of the vinworthing saints worthing the vinworthing saints worthing the vinworthing saints with the vinworthing saints wi Rites, and offer Meats. Their Bookes are full of precepts for objetting Parents with due honour, and that of 20 and in outward fliew no Nation performes to much. They will not fit ouer against them but God

on the fide, speake to them with great reverence, they suffaine their poorer Parents with their Honour of palabour in best manner they are able, and in nothing are more curious then their funerals.

The mourning colour is white, and all their habite from the Shooes to the Cap of a ftrange Seein Pantaia and miserable fathion. The cause of three yeeres mourning for Parents, is because so long they of Funeralls carried them in armes with fo much labour of education : for others as they please, a yeere, or and mourthree moneths, as they are in neereneffe : For the King they mourne three yeeres thorowall the nings. Kingdome, and for the Lawfull Queene. Their funerall Rites are written in a Booke which they consult on that occasion, all the parcels of the habite there pictured. When a man of ranke is Mourningby dead, the Sonne or next Kiniman fends Libels to the friends within three or foure dayes: all the books.

40 Roome is white, with an Altar in the midit, on which they place the Coffin and Image of the dead. Thither all the friends come in mourning one after another, & offer Odors and two Waxcandles on the Altar; whiles they burne, making foure bendings and kneelings, having first cented against the Image. The Sonnes stand at the lide, and the women behinde, coursed with a Curtaine, mourning the while: the Priests also borne Papers and Silkes, with certaine rites to minister Clothes to the deceasted. They abstayne from wonted Beds (sleeping on Straw-beds on the ground neere the Corps) from flesh and other daintier food, Wine, Bathes, companie with their Wines, Bankets, not going out for certaine moneths, remitting by degrees as the three yeeres expire. On the funerall day the friends are by another Libell inuited, to which Burisll. they goe in Procession forme, in mourning; many Statues of Men, Women, Elephants, Tigres, Lions, of Paper all going before, diversified in colour and gilding, which are all burnt before the

50 Graue: a long ranke of Idoll Priests, Prayers, and Players on diners Instruments obseruing diuers rites in the way; huge Bell-cenfers also carried on mens shoulders; after which followes the Herse under a huge caraed Canopie adorned with Silkes, carried with forty or fifty men. Next the children on foot with staues, and then the women enclosed within a white gestatory Curtaine, that they may not be seene: followed by women of the kindred in mourning Seats. The Graues are all in the Suburbs. If the Sonnes bee absent, the Funerall pompe is deferred till their comming. They bring (if it may bee) the deceaffed in another Countrey to lie by his friends. The Graues are adorned with Epitaphs in Marble magnificently. Thither on certaine dayes yeerely the kindred refort to cense and offer, and make a funerall banquet.

Their Marriages and Spoulals are with many rites, done in their youth; the Contracts com- Marriages. Their Marriages and Spoulais are with many rices, once in their young.

pounded by the Parents without their confent; they obferts equalitie in yeeres and degree in pounded by the Parents without their confents they observe the power allo but their the lawfull Wife. In their Concubines, luit, beauty, price beare Iway. The poorer also buy their Wiues, and when they lift fell them. The King and his kindred respect onely beauty, Magistrates appointed to make the choife. One is his lawfull Wife; the King and his Heire having

Sec-names tew. In Eug-DODG, See

Birth.day.

Virilia sileua. Candlemas.

Women.

Haire.

Rines.

Apparell.

Name-cere-Women haue

Grest name.

Religious

nine other Wiues a little inferiour, and after them fixe and thirty, which are also called Wiues. his Concubines are more. Thole which bring forth Sonnes are more gracious, especially the his Concurrence more, a more which using notes connect an more granted, experiency the Mother of the eldeft. This is also familiar to other families therow the Kingdome. Their first Mother of the electr. I mis is ano faminiar to be not a familie of are a stand-mails, and may not fit.

Wifeits at Table; others (except in the Royall families) are a stand-mails, and may not fit. but fland in prefence of either of them: their Children also calling that lawfull Wifether Mother, and for her (though not the true Parent) objetue triennial mourning. In Mariages tew. In Eq., they are curious not to take any of the fame fur-name, of which fur-names there are not a thoufaed in all that vaft Kingdome. Nor may any man frame a new fur-name, but must have one antient of the Fathers fide, except he be adopted into another familie. They respect no affinity none, See
antient of the Fathers noe, except ne or adopted into another the Mothers kindred almost in any to
the Remainst, or confanguinity in a differing fur-name, and to marrie with the Mothers kindred almost in any to or comangumity ma unitering in any degree. The Wife brings no portion, and although when thee first goeth to her Husbands house degree. The wincomes no potential and a standard by his cofts which fends money fome the street-full of hoofhold attends her, yet is all promided by his cofts which fends money fome

on-ting periors as a gut to hear to that purpose. Euery mans Birth-day is fethually celebrated with Preferrs, Banquets and iollity: effecially after the fiftieth yeare explice (at which time they are reckoned among it old men) and then euery tenth yeere. The Children then procure Emblemes of their friends, and Epigrams, and fome write Bookes. That day is also fefficiall in which they are of age to take the Montap. which is about twenty yeeres, till that time wearing their haire loofe. But the first New and water is about eventy yeers, in that the vertically each man then having ingemoully desifed Lights or Lamps made of Paper, Glasse, or other matter, the house terming by the discribed 20 Lights to bee on a light fire. They runne vp and downe allo with great stirres in the night with Fire workes. Drigon-famioned Lights, and make great thewes of Powder-fire-workes.

The Chinois are white (but nearer the South more browne) with thinne beards (fome hacomes persons using none) with staring haires, and late growing; their haire wholly blacke; eyes narrow, of Egge forme, blacke and standing out: the nose very little, and scarcely standing forth; eares meane: in some Proninces they are square faced. Many of Canton and Quams Proninces on their little toes haue two nailes, as they have generally in Cachin-china. Their women are all low, and account great beauty in little feet, for which cause from their infancy they bind them firaight with clothes, that one would sudge them sump-sooted: this, as is thought, desided to make them house-wives. The men and women both alike let their haire grow without cutting: 30 but Boyes and Gitles till they are fifteene yeere old, are cut round, leauing a locke onely on the crowne: after which they let it graw loofe over their shoulders till twenty. The most of the Priests shaue head and beard every eighth day. When they are men they binde up their hire in a Cap or Coife made of horse or mans haire, or in a filken Cawle; and in Winter of woollen: on the top it hath a hole, where the haire comes forth, and is tyed in a neate knot. The women weare not this Cap, but binde up their haire in a knot, and make it up with a dreffe of Gokl, Siluer, Stones, and Flowers. They weare Rings on their cares, but not on their fingers.

The men and women weare long garments. The men double them on their breaft, and raften them under both the arme-holes; the women on the midst of the breast. They weare wide long secues; but the womens wider, the mans straighter, at the wrists. Their Caps are artificially 40 wrought. Their Shooes are much differing from ours; the men weare them of Silke with diuers workes and flowers, exceeding the elegance of our Matrons. Shooes of Leather none but the meaner fort weare; and scarcely admit they Leather soles, but of Cloth. The Caps of their Learned are square, of others, round. Euery one spends halfe an houre at least in combing and trimming his haire. They winde also long clouts about their feet and legs, and therefore weare their Breeches loofe. They weare no Shirts, but a white Coat next the skinne, and wash often. They have a feruant to carrie a Shadow or great Sumbrero over their heads against the raine and Sunne; the poore carrie one for themselues.

For Names, befides the fur-name of which is spoken, the Father gives one to the Sonne (for females have no name but the Fathers sur-name, and called as they are borne, first, second, third, 50 in order of the Sisters:) by this name they are called by the Father and Elders; others call Fathers name: them like wife from that order amongst the Brethren, as is faid of Sisters. They in their writings call themselues by that which their Father gaue them ; but if others either equall or superiour should so call them, it were both vacinill and injurious. When a Boy goeth to Schoole his Schoolename. Mafter giveth him another name, which is called his Schoole-name, whereby onely his Mafter and Schoole-fellowes may still him. When he hath his Mans cap put on, and marrieth a Wife, fome more honourable person giue h him a more honourable name, which they call, the Letter: by this any man may call him, but those which are subject to him. And when he is now at the full growth, he receiveth of some grave person his most honourable name, which they call Great, whereby any may call him present or absence but his Parents and Elders still vie the Letter-62 name. If any professe a new Sect, his Instructer calls him by a new name, which they call, of Religion. And when one vilites another, he will aske what is his Honourable name, to shie him thereby : and we were therefore fayne to take a Greater name then that which we received in chriftian nome. Baptilme, for them to call vs by.

They are studious of Antiquities: much value old Triuets of Bell metall, Pictures in blacke and white Characters and writings, feeled with the Authors feele (for there are many Counterfeiters.) The Officers have all a Seale proper to their place given by Humpu, which they vicon- Seales of Ma. ly fealing with red colour : and if they lole the Seale they lofe the Office, and are befides feuerely gifteates. punished; and therefore they carry it with them, in a sealed and locked Boxe, and neuer leave it out of fight, at night keeping it under their Pillow. Graue men goe not on foote thorow the Areets, but are carryed in a leate closed, except they list to open the fore-part, whereas Magiftrates feates are enery way open. Matrons feates are altogether closed, but easily knowne from Seats in which mens by the fashion. The Law forbids Coaches and Litters. Some Cities are in the midst of Ri- they are carryto uers and Lake, in which they have very neate Boares to palle the firets. And because they go doolners ners and Lancs, in which they had been shipping is more convenient and elegant. But the Boates kinipa Magistrates, built by publike cost are as commodious as Houses, with divers Lodgings, a Hall, Kitchin, Cells, so neate as seeming Great mens houses, rather then Ships; and therefore they make their folemne Banquets a Ship-board, passing along the Rivers and Lakes for further pleafure. All within shines with Clarane or shining Vernish in divers colours, and the Carued workers gilded in places, with combined (weeters to the Eyes and Nofe. They honour their Masters more then with vs. fo that if a man have beene anothers Scholler but one day in a medicate of the second sec ny Art, hee calls him Master euer after, and neuer sits in any meeting but at his side, and doth

Dice-play and Cards are common with them: Cheffe also with the graver persons, not alto- Game, gether valike ours: but their King neuer remoues but to the foure next roomes, and the Bishops Cheffe. haue their Queenes. They have also which they call Poulder pannes, which goe before the Knights and follow the Paunes. They have a grave Game in a table of three hundred roomes with two hundred men white and blacke, in which Magistrates spend much time, and the cunning skill whereof gets much credit to a man, although hee can doe nothing else; and some ning same whereon goes much actors to a many chule fuch their Mafters with wonted rites. Theft is not punished with Death : the fecond fault Theft punishtherein, is branded with an hot Iron and Inke in the Arme, with two Characters, the third time menin the Face, after with their terrible W hipping or condemning to the Gallies, for a time limitted for hat there are abundance of Theeues. Euery night in Cities, many Watchmen at cer-30 tayne times beate Balons as they walke the iltreets, the fireets also enclosed and shut, yet many thefts are committed, the Foxe being the Goofeherd, and the Watch partners with the Theefe. The Cities in greatest Peace in the midst of the Kingdome, are shut every Night, and the Keyes

Of their Superstitions, Cruelties, feares of Magistrates, of the Kings kindred, of Strangers and Souldiers. Their Deities and three Sects: Priests, Nunnes, Monasteries, Legends, Lyes.

(C) Of the operation is for generall in the Kingdome, as the observation of luckie and valuekie chaps. Dayer and Hower, for which purpose yeerely is Printed a two-fold Table of dayes by Obscruzion the Kings Aftrologers, in fach plentie that every house is full of them. In them is of times. written on enerty day, what may bee done or not, or to what houre yee must forbeare businesse, which may in that yeer lappen. There are others more dangerous Masters, which building which may in that yeer mappen. A neer are others more unngrous matters, which make a lining by this Wizarally profession of felling lyes, or prescribing fit houres; wherby many different beginning of building or Journeying till their appointed day or houre come: & then Impoflors how whitting focuse that products with croffe weather, they fee on neuertheleffe, though it be now viniting joint that products with the workernight thence appears to take beginning. The like superfitious observation they have of the moment of the Natioitie, which they precisely set downer. divers professing by Astrologie, or by superstitious numbers, or by Physiognomic, or Palmessine, Divinations or Dreames, or words in Speech, or politure of the body & by innumerable other wayes to force and elling of tell future Fortunes, many Griffe-juglings vied to fuch impostures, as by a stalking Knaue which Fortunes, shall professe his Fortunes exactly told him by the professor, or by learning out of printed Bookes that protein in Fortunes exactly total min by the proteins, or by teathing out of principles which describe energy Citie, Street and Familie, what hath happing as an argument of the truth orthat which they fay shall happen. Yea, their credulitie breeds such strong imagination, that Strengthof 60 Same being foretold of a Sickneffe such a day, will then fall sicke of conceit.

Many also consult with Deuils and familiar Spirits, and receive Oracles from the mouth of Deuils consul-Infants, or of Bealts, not without fraud. They are superstitious in chasing a plot of ground, toe-ted. rect a dwelling Houle, or Sepulcher, conferring ir with the head, tayle and feete of disers Dras Dreamer of gess, which like (forlooth) valer our earth, whence depends all good or bad Fortune. Dixers Dragon.

71:3

Learned men busie their wits in this abstruse Science, and are consulted when any publike Buil. dings are rayled. And as Aftrologers by the Starres, fo thefe Geologers by inspection of Rivers Fields, Mountaines and feite of Regions, foretell Destinies ; dreaming by fetting a Doore or Window this or that way, conceying the rayne to the right or left hand, by a higher or lower roofe, honour and wealth shall accrue to the House. Of these Impostors the Streets, Cities. Courts, Shops, Markets are full, which fell that which themselves want, good Fortune to all Foole-fortunate buyers : yea, Women and blinde folkes professe it, and some find such Chapmen of the Learned Noble, King and all, that they grow to great riches by others little wits. Alldif. afters publike or private are attributed to Fate, and ill scite of some Citie, House or Palace. The

noile of Burds, the first meeting in the Morning, Shadowes caused by the Sunne in the house, are 16 Auguric.

Cruell vices

For other vices, some will make themselves Servants to rich men, to have one of the handand vanaturall maydes become his Wife, so multiplying iffue to bondage. Others buy a Wife, but finding their family become too numerous fell their Sonnes and Daughters as Beafts, for two or three pieces of Gold (although no dearth prouoke him) to everlafting separation and bondage, some to the Portugals. Hence is the Kingdome full of Slaves, not captived in warre, but of their owne free-Child-felling. borne. Yet is seruice there more tollerable then else-where ; for euery man may redeeme himfelfe at the price payd for him, when hee is able ; and there are many poore which with hard Child-killing, labour fuftayne themselves. A worse euill in some Provinces is theirs, which finding themselves Pittileffe pitie. poore, smother their new-borne Babes, specially Females, by an impious pietie and pittileffe pitie 20 preventing that fale to Slauerie, by taking away that life which even now they had given. They pretend hereunto also their Mesempfichofis, dreaming that the Soule of that Infant shall the foo ner paffe into some more fortunate body : and are not therefore ashamed to doe this in others prefence, yea not the meanest of the communaltie. Many more inhumanely kill themselves ei-Selfe flavers. ther wearse of a miferable life, or willing after death to bee reuenged of fome enemy, whiles to the Enemy of mankind many thousands yeerely Sacrifice themselues, by Halter, Drowning and Povson. Another immanitie in the Northerne Provinces is vsed vpon Male Infants, whomfor hope of Palace preferments their Parents make Eunuches; of which in the Kings house are ten

thousand, a dull and blockith kinde of vnkind vnmanly men. Their Whippings also take away moreliues, then the executions of fentences to Death ; their Reedes flit two ells long, a fin- 30 ger thicke and foure broad, at the first blow breaking the skinne and flesh on the hinder part of the thighes : to preuent which many bribe the Magistrates, of whose domineering fulnesse of power they live in perpetual feare, where calumnies and lyes are so rife : which Chi-84 perfidiousnesse made the Kings come so guarded abroad and vnknowne, and now not to come

The Kings kindred are now growne to fixtie thousand, and daily increasing become a but-

then to the publike, and daily increase in idlenesse, impotence, numbers, the King being very jetalous of them, and setting Guards, besides their perpetuall exile from Pagnin and Nanguin. No Strangers con- maruell if Strangers be no better trufted in China, where the Natiues and Bloud are suspected: out of whose Bookes they scorne to learne, and repute them little better then Beafts: and the 40 Characters whereby they expresse them are taken from Beasts. How Legats are held as prisoners in publike houses is else-where delivered. Commanders of Souldiers, which guard places are guarded and watched, and not trufted with the pay of their Companies : neither is there any more bale then the Souldiery, most Slaves or condemned persons, for their owne or their Aucestors cuils : and when they are free from exercises of warre, they become Muletters, Porters, and of other base Offices. The Captaynes onely have some authoritie. Their armes are worthleffe for offence or defence, and onely make a shew, the Captaynes being also subject to the Magiffrates whippings. Their Alchimifticall vanitie, and study of long Life, with precepts and huge bookes of both, I omit. The founders for footh of these Sciences have gone body and soule to Heauen. The making of Siluer hath made many spend their siluer, wits and credit, cheated 50 by professing Artists; and the great Magistrates (few in Pegnin free) are taken up with the ther Study; fome shortning their life to make it longer. They write of one of their Kings which had procured fuch a potion of immortalitie, whom a friend of his was not able to diffwade from that conceit, enraged, by his fudden fratching & drinking his prepared potion; which he feeking

Studies of Al-

and if I may, then have I freed thee of this errour. Touching the China Sects, I read in their Bookes, that the Chinois from the beginning worshipped one God, which they call the King of Heanen, or by another Name Heanen and Earth. What pitte is it Beneath this Deitie, they worshipped divers tutelare Spirits of Mountaynes, Rivers, and of the that Intherans four parts of the world. In all actions they held Reason to bee obeyed, which light of Reason 60 and Caluarifs, they confessed they had from Heauen. Of that supreame Deitie and his administring Spirits, my not swell they neuer had such monstrous conceits as the Romans, Greekes, Agyptians, whence the lesures be faued with hope that many of them in the law of Nature were faued. Their Seets are reckoned three: The out the Pope, nope that many of them in the law of Matthe were laured. I neit be desire received the safe feeled by all as these Idola- first of the Learned, the second of Seiequia, the third Laure. One of these is professed by all ters without God and Christ and worshipping that, which by Nature is not God?

by death to reuenge, the other answered, how can I be killed, if this draught cause immortalitie?

CHAP.7.S.. 5. Confutian Temples, Opinions, Rites. Sicquia Sect from India. 397

which wie their Characters. That of the Learned, is most proper to China and most account and all their Learned learne it in the course of their studies. Confusion is the Prince therof. This Sect hath no Idols, worships one God, beleeuing all things to bee conserued by his prouidence. They worhip in inferiour fort the Spirits. The best of them teach nothing of the Creation : rewards and input interiors for contract spaces. I more controlling to the controlling of the control of Hell they make no mention. The later Learned deny both, with the foules immortalitie : yet fome fay, that the foules of good men are corroborated with vertue and made able to hold out, others dying with the body.

thers dying with the poets.

The principall opinion feemeth borrowed of the Idoll Sect, fine hundred yeeres agoe; which Godfuppo ed. The principal option recine and toward at the control of the Creatures are as forming the foliation that this whole Vinierie conflits of one matter, and that the Creatures are as forming the found the members of this huge body, fo that every one may attayne to the similitude of God being one world members of this nuge poor; to trace every one may accept to the minimum the Literate asknow with him; which we confute out of their owne ancient Authors. Though the Literate asknow Pefin had no ledge one supreame Deitie, yet they erect no Temple to him, nor any other place proper to his Temples, Worthip, nor any Priests, persons or rites peculiar, nor haue precepts thereof, nor any which preferibeth, or punisheth detect of Holies; nor any which privately or publikely recite or ing ought to him. Yea they affirme, that the Office of Sacrificing to the King of Heauen and his worship belongs to the King: and if any should take on him that Office, hee should vsurpe the

Kings, and be thereby a Traytor. For this purpose, the King hath two stately Temples in both Two Temples 20 Royall Cities, one dedicated to the Heasen, the other to the Earth sin which formerime hee vied King high Koyait Cities, one dedicated to the Island, the College have forceded, which there factified ma King high to Sacrifie, but now in his place certayne Mag illrates have forceded, which there factified ma Pried Migs ny Oxen and Sheepe, with many Rites. To the Spirits of Mountaynes, Rivers, and of the foure first sinfar-Regions of the world, onely the chiefe Magistrates Sacrifice, nor are the people admitted our. thereto. The precepts of this Law are contayned in the Tetrabiblion and fine Bookes of Dollrines; nor are any other Bookes allowed, but onely some Commentaries thereon. Nothing in this Obite, Sect is more of note then their yeerely Obits, or parentations to their deceased Parents, common to all from the King to the meanest, observing their dead Ancestre as if they were living. Neither yet doe they suppose that they eate of the meate which is set them, or need it, but they haue no better meane to expresse their loue.

The Literate have a coffly Temple to Confusion in every Citie, by Law appointed, in that Confusion Temp place where the Schoole is, and adjoyning to the Magistrates Palace, which is let ouer the Ba- ple and Rites chelors or Graduates of the first degree. In a principall place of that Temple his Image is erected, or elle his Name in golden Cubitall letters, written in a curious Table. Hither the Magistrates assemble enery New-moone, and Full, also the Bachelors, with wonted kneelings, Odours and Wax-lights, to acknowledge their Master. On his Birth-day and on other see times, they offer feitiuall Diffies, thankefully confessing his learned workes, whence they have attayned their Degrees and Offices, but pray not to him nor looke for ought from him ; but as is observed of their dead Parents. Other Temples also are seene of the same Sect to the Tute. Temple of tu-

House under the trace of the state of each Tribunall, wherein they foleranly telea Sprites for each Citie, and to the Magiltacie of each Tribunall, wherein they foleranly telea Sprites, binder homelows by folerance Carloss, to oblive a low and todays when the Carloss in the Magiltacie of the Carloss in th 40 binde themielues by folemne Oathes, to observe Law and Institute, when they first enter into their Temple Office, In these they ofer Dishes and Odours, but in differing Worship: for in these they acknowledge, there is a Dinine power to punnih the perjurious, and reward the good. The kope fleater. of this Laterate Sect, is the peace and good of the Commonwealth, and of Families, and of each persons; their precepts agreeing with Nature and Christianitie. Fine Relations or Societies are Fine combinations. persons the present and present and the person of the pers Wife, of Matter and Servant, of elder and younger Brethren, of Fellowes and Equals. They condemne Single life, permit Polygamie, and in their Bookes largely explaine that precept of Charitie, to doe to another as a man would be done to. They deny this to be a Sect, but a certayne Acadamie instruted for the gouernment of the Common-wealth; and because it prescribes not, nor

30 prohibiteth any thing touching the Life to come, many adjoyne the other two Scels to this. The second Sect is called Sequia or Omittele, and by the Important, Sciacea and Amilabu. Second Sect Both have the same Characters, and the same Totagus or Law. It came to the Chinos from the begun AD.65. Weft, brought from the Kingdome of Thienfeis or Scints, now called Indofan, betwixe India and Ganger, about the yeere of Christ 65. It is written that the King of China, warned in a Dreame, fent Legars thither, which brought Bookes and Interpreters from thence, the Authors of them being dead. And therefore I fee not how truely the Japonians affirme that Seisece and Amidaba pierced thirber, and were Natine of Saam. The Authors of this Sect, have taken tome things out Dimentium of our Philosophers. For they hold foure Elements, and manifold Worlds and transmigration of System ass.

Soules, and other things. Somewhat it teemes to acknowledge the Trimue fabling of three 60 Gods becoming one at acknowledgeth suff rewards to the good in Hessen, to the bad in Hell. Reactols Single life, so as it may seeme to reject Mariage. They leave house and friends and Librardies. trauell into duery places Begging. The Retes of this prophane Sect, haue great affinitie with our (Asma) Eccleiafficall: the Singings of men faviors that Green was the machine and address and disease. Ramijh Ecclessificall: the Singings of men faying their fernice may leave mothing to differ every non-from our Gregorian; they have Images also in their Churches; their Presty Garments are also—non-negative.



gether like ours, which with an Ecclefiasticall terme wee call, Piumalia. In their Service they often recite the name Tolome, which themselves confesse to be ignorant of. But they denie eternitie in their Heaven and Hell, afcribing a new birth after I know not what revolutions of time. in some other of their conceited Worlds, then and there to be penitentially purged; with other fooleties. They prohibite to eate of living creatures, but few impose on themselves this abilinence, and they finde easie absolution from this and other sinnes, it they give to the Priests who professe to deliver from Hell by their Prayers or Recitations, whom they will.

This Sect came in at first with great applause, as clearely professing the Soules immortalitie; but nothing more disgraced it, then that that King and these Princes which first embraced it (which the Literate often object) died miferably with violent death, and publike loffe and miffortune followed. By writing of many Bookes they have entangled it in inextricable Labyrinths. The notes of Antiquity appeare in the multitude of their Temples, and most of them fumptions : in which have Monfters of Idols of Braffe, Marble, Wood, and Earth are feene; with ples Steeples, Steeples adjoyned of Stone or Bricke, and in them huge Bells, and other ornaments of great price.

Many and coilly Tem-Bells, Images. Their Priefts many and mi-

The Priefts of this Sect are called Ofciami, they shaue their head and beard, against the fashion of the Countrey: fome trauell, as is faid, some leade a very austere life in Mountaines and Caues. but the greatest part which amount to two or three millions, line in Monasteries, sustayined with their antiently-giuen Reuenues, and Almes, and also by their owne industry. These Priests are accounted and justly, the most vile and vicious in the whole Kingdome, frrung of the basest plebeians, fold in their childhood to the elder Ofciami, and of Slaues made Difciples, fucceed their Masters in Office and Benefice, a course which they have found for their propagation. For, sew are found which voluntarily by defire of fanctitie doe adjoyne themfelues to those Monkes, Isnorance also and illiberall education makes them liker their Masters, sew of them learning Letters or civill rites; and daily growing worfe. And although they have no wives, they are much addicted to women, and cannot but by grieuous penalties be kept from them. The Colledges of the Ofciami are divided into divers Stations, in every of which is one per-

petuall Administrator, to whom his feruants or as many as he brings up, succeed. They acknowledge no Superior in those Cells, but every one in his owne Station builds as many Lodgingsas he can (most of all places, in the Court) which after they let to strangers, so that they are rather Innes then Monasteries, as full of tumults as empty of deuotion. Although they bee of base e-steeme, yet are they employed to Funerals and other Rites, by which wilde beasts, and sowles, of wide erea. and fishes are set at liberty, by the professors of this Sect with opinion of great merit. In this tures, See P.m. Our age this Sect hath much remined, and many Temples are built and repaired, by Eunuches, As River faire. Women, and the rude vulgar, and especially by the Ciaicum, or Fasters, which all their lives abflayne from Flesh, Fish, (Egges, and Milke) and worship a multitude of Idols with fet prayers at home, and are by hire to be called to any other mans. Nunnes also observe the same Monasti-Nice, or Nuns, call rules, being fingle and fhaued; they call them Nunnes, nothing fo many as the Monkes.

Monafteries,

Lyc of Lauzu,

Way to fooles

The third Sect is called, Lanza, derived from a Philosopher which lived at the same time with Confutius, whom they fable to have beene carried 80. yeeres in his parents wom be before he was borne, and therefore called, Laures, that is, the Old Philosopher. He left no Bookes of his Opinion, nor feemes to have intended any new Sect, but certaine Sectaries, called Taula, made him the lead of their Scot after his death, and wrote divers elegant Bookes gathered out of divers Sects. Thef alfoliue fingle in their Monasteries, and buy disciples, base and wicked as the former. They weare their haire as the Lay-men, differing herein, that where they weare their haire tyed on a knot, these haue a Cap on the crowne of Wood. Some also are married, and say our their Holies in their owne houses. They fay, that with other Idols they worship also the Lord of Heasen, whom yet they imagine Corporeall, and to have suffered many things. They tell, that the King of Heauen which now raigneth, is called Ciam, and he which before ruled was named Len. This Len came one day to the Earth riding on a white Dragon, and Ciam a Wizard entertayned him with a Feast, where whiles Len was eating, Ciam gat up on the white Dragon, and 10 Lim Hill, noter was carried to Heaven, and excluded Leu from that fourraignty; only he obtayned of this new the great Lake. King, that he might rule ouer a certaine Mountaine in his Kingdome, where they fay he fill lineth: thus confesting (as the Greeker of lone) themselves to worship an Vsurper and Traitor. Befides this Deity of Heaven, they acknowledge three others, one of which they fay, Laurn is, having some dreame also, as the former of the Trinicie.

They also speake of places of rewards and punishments, but differing from the former: for they promise a Paradise for scule and body together, and have Images of some in their Temples which have fo gone thither. To obtayne this, they prescribe certaine exercises of fitting in diuers poltures, fer Prayers, Medicines by which the life is lengthned, if not made immortall. Their Priests exorcise Deuils, and drive them out of houses, by painting herrible shapes of them 60 in yellow Paper on the walls, and making horrible cryes as it themselves were become Devils. They arrogate also to bring downe or to stay Rames, and other publike and private fortunes, most impudent importors, either Lyars or Magicians. They affift the Kings facrifices in thole Temples of Heaven and Earth (thereby acquiring much authority) being Matters of the Mutike therein:

CH AP.7. S.6. Sects multiplied, omnified, nullified. Strangenesse to strangers. 399

and are called to Funerals, to which they goe in precious veftments with divers musicall Inftruments, making a pompous-procession showe thorow the fireets. The like pompes they wie at the streets ends on cercaine times, hired by the dwellers,

They have a Prelate called Ciam; which dignity he transmitted to his posterity 1000, yeeres ciam Prelate. fince by hereditary fuccessions, and seemeth to have taken beginning from a Magician which laued in a Caue of Quiamsi Prouince, where his posterity still continueth. Their Prelate liueth most commonly at Pequin, observed by the King, and admitted into the inmost Palace to confecrate and hallow the Roomes suspected to bee hanted by ill spirits. Hee is carried in an open Chaire, and with other pompe competent to the chiefe Magistrates, and is allowed by the King

to a great Renenue. But I have learned of a Convert that their Prelates now are fo ignorant that they know not their owne Charmes and Rites. Hee hath no power ouer the people, but the Tanfiu (Priests) and their Monasteries, many of which are also Alchimists. These three Sects Multiplication haue divertified themselves into 300 in seeming, daily encreasing and growing worse and worse, of Sects. Humun ordayned that these three Lawes should be kept for the good of the Kingdome, onely the Literate to rule; whence it comes that they feeke not to ruine each other. The Kings make vie of them all for their purposes, often repairing the old, and building new Temples. The Kings wives are more prone to the Idoll Sect, and maintayne whole Monasteries without the Palace, and buy their Prayers with Almes. The Idols are not onely in Temples in this Kingdome, but in primate houses in peculiar places, in streets, ships, Palaces, they are the first things you see, and 20 yet put they little confidence in them. Their wifeft men feeke to mixe all three Sees together. and to whiles they embrace all, are of none, and proue Atheifts.

ð. V I.

Of Strangers, and forraine Religions in China.

Ow inhospitall the Chinow are to S:rangers, we have in part heard, neither permitting egreffe to the Natiues, not ingreffe to Alten accept in three refpects. The first flow as come to pay their annual Tributes. The fecond, fich as percenting honour and tribute.come (as wee haue heard) from the West with seeming tribute, a colour to their gaine by merchandise. The third, such as in admiration of the Chinicar vertues and learning, come thither (as the Queene of Sheba to Salomon) to learne the same, which is the lesantes pretence : but these must here fixe their habitation , nor may be suffered to returne ; such is their realousie, of discouering their mysteries to others. And this made the lessites, after so long stay, free from feare of expulsion, which yet fince complaine of perfecution. But it may not be known, that they have any intelligence or commerce with stranger .: & therfore the lessues, which have obtayined two fo great priviledges, the Eurisches Palace for their refidence, and the imployment in correcting the China Kalender, both by Royall approbation; yet could not obtayne leave to 40 goe into the Prounce of Conton, though with Mathematicall pretexts for that Kalender-busines, to observe longitudes and latitudes of places, because they were laid to be Countrymen to those of Macao. Yea, a Colas, or Counfellor of State, was deprived, for fending a mellage to a bordering King; a tempest of libelling complaints thundring and showring against him therefore. In the bordering Promuces they fet narrow watch at Cuitom-houses, Bridges, and in the very Rivers, by thips of warre thereto appointed. But if they be once gotten into the inner parts of the Kingdome, there are no such Officers, nor fearches. Neither may any stranger pass out of the Kingdome, after once entring, without the Kings licence. The lesates fteale their ingreffe and egreffe by meanes of the Portugals, which had the Towne of Macas affigned them by the Chunes, for trafficke. The from evially twice a yeare to the chiefe Citie of the Prouince of Canton, which is not called Quantum, or Canten, (the name of the Province) but Quantum. All the day time Thin allo te-Is not carried entering, or thereon, the mains of the product of the most lie on flipboord at night. Affiddly May, In the midft of the Ruser there is a little Hand, and therein a Temple, in which they are allowed & Marjan.

their Catholike denotions. There by Boat did they prounde to fleale in or out of the Country. The Mahumetans that come in by land, if they flay time yeeres (as is observed) may never return Many Mehrahome againe. Of these there are now many thousand Families in China, dispersed into the most measure than of the Prouinces and chiefe Cities. They have there their Temples very fumptuous, and their Circumcifion. But as farre as I could euer loarne, they neither teach, nor care to teach, others their

denotions, but are vnskilfull of the Saraceus Tenents, and are contemned of the Chinois. It feems, that their comming in was in the time that the Tartars reigned here, which fince have increased,

their former superstition, retayning nothing thereof, but abstinence from Swines field, which Мm 2

60 and after fo long continuance, are not held in suspicion, as other strangers. Some say, after the

rather by Nature, then for Religion, they abhorre.

fourth generation they are reputed as Natives: yea, they are admitted to the studies of Learning,

Degrees, and Magistracy, as well as the Chinose. But most of these, thus dignisted, relinquish

Chriffians,

Sec fup. in

Pinto.261.

Touching Christians in China, there is not fo great certainty. Certaine Mogores told Ricing of some in the Xensian Prouince, in the North parts of China, at a place called Xucheo, which were white, bearded, vied Bells, worshipped Ifa, that is, Iefus, and Marie, and honoured the Crucifixe ; their Priefts married , which cured difeafes without medicines. A lew at Pegnin gape more full intelligence, that at Caifumfu, and at Linem, in the Province of Sciantum, and in the Prounce of Scianfi, there lived certaine Strangers, whose Ancestours had come out of forraine parts, which worshipped the Crosse which the Chinois expresse by the Character of Ten) and made the figne thereof with the finger on their meate and drinke. They also made the fame figne with Inke on the foreheads of their children, to preferue them from misfortunes. A lefinte alfo faw. in the hands of an Antiquarie, a Bell, with a Church and Crosse thereon grauen, circum-jo fcribed with Greeke letters. The Iew also reported that those Croffe-worshippers had the same doarine in their prayers which the lewes held: this the lesmites interpreted of the Plater common to them both. Hee affirmed that there were many of them in the Northerne Provinces. which to Hourished in Letters and Armes, that they grew fuspicious to the Chinais, which hee thought was caused by the Saracens some fixty yeeres before. The Magistrates were so incenfed hereby, that they for teare were dispersed, some turning lewes; some Saracens; others Ide. laters: and their Temples were also converted into Idolatrous Temples, one of which he menfioned in his Countrey. Euer fince they hade their profession, and when the lesaites fent one of their Converts to make enquirie, he could learne of none : which they thought proceeded from

their feare, taking him for a Spie fent from the Magistrates.

All these Sects the Chinois call, Hoei, the Iewes distinguished by their refusing to eate the finew or leg; the Saracens, Swines fielh; the Christians, by retuling to feed on round-hoofed beafts. Affes, Horles, Mules which all both Chinois, Saracens, and lewes doe there feed on. The Sara cens called the Christians also Isai, as before; and Terzai, which is a name given in Persia to the Armenian Christians (as an Armenian affirmed to Ricius) whence hee coniectured , that these Christians came out of Armenia. And by the report of Haston the Armenian, which fayth, their Scefuppagatts King came to the Great Can of Cathay (which wee have before observed, at haft the best rarts thereof, to be the North parts of China) to perswade him and his to become Christians; which in great part also hee affected , besides other Christians there reported to bee , by Pauliu; and those of Sarnan, subject to the Great Can, mentioned by Vertomannus, which seeme to be neere 30 these in China. The Malabar Christians have Chaldes memorials of China, converted by Saint Thomas ; and their Metropolitan hath his ftyle of all India and China.

A certaine lew at Pequin hearing of the lesuites there, came to them to fee and conferre with

chafamfu. Iew at Pequin

Sian.

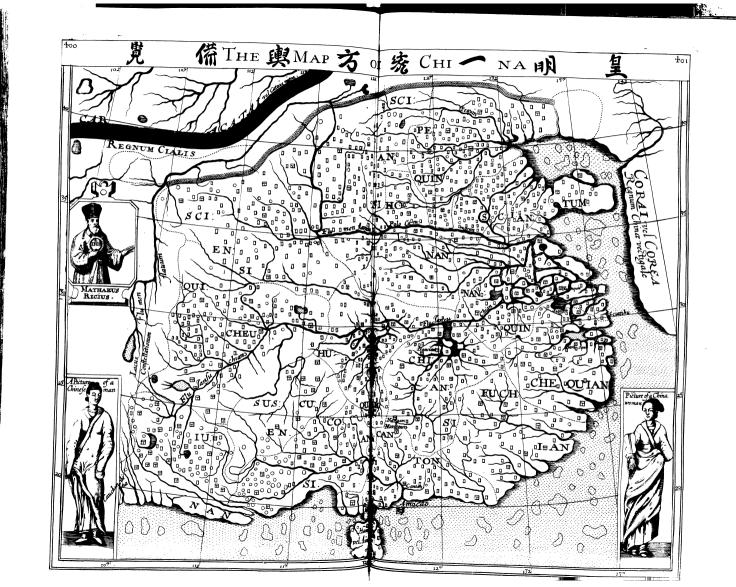
them, imagining them to be Ienes. This Ien was borne at Charfamfa, the Mother-citie of the Prouince Honan, his name was Ngai, his countenance not refembling the Chinois; hee neels-Eting Indaifme, had addicted himtelte to the China fludies, and now came to Pequin to theexamination, in hope of proceeding Doctor. There did hee enter the lesates House, professing that he was of their Law and Religion. Rices leads him into the Chappell, where on the Altar flood the Image of the Virgin, lefus, and Iohn Baptist, kneeling; which he taking to be the Images of Rebecca and her Twins, did worthip vnto them, contrary (he faid) to their custome. The Ima- 40 ges of the Euangelists he supposed to be so many of lacobs sonnes. But youn further question ming, the leswite perceived that he was a professor of the Law of Moses: he confessed himselfe an Ifrachte, and knew not the name of Iem; fo that it feemed, the dispersion of the ten Tribes had pierced thus farre. Seeing the Hebrew Bible, hee knew the Letters, but could not reade them. He told them that in Chaifamfu were ten or twelve Families of Israelites, and a faire Synagogue, which had lately cost them ten thousand Crownes; therein the Pentateuch in Rolls, Which had bin with great veneration preserved five or fix hundred yeers. In Hamchen the chiefe Citie of Chequian, hee affirmed, were many more Families with their Synagegue; many also in other places but without Synagogues, and by degrees wearing out: his pronunciation of Hebren names differed from ours, as Herusoloim, Moscia; for Messia, Ierusalem. His Brother, hee faid, 50 was skilfull in the Hebrew; which he in affection to the China preferment had neglected; and therefore was hardly centured by the Ruler of the Synagogue.

lewes at Han-

Ifraelites di-

To this Citie did Ricci fend one of his to enquire, who found those reports true, which also cobied the beginnings and endings of their Bookes, which they compared, and found to agree with their owne Pentatench, fauing that they wanted prickes or points. He wrote also in Chie Want of pricks no Characters to the Ruler of their Synagogue, that hee had the rest of the Bookes of the Old Testament, and other Bookes of the New, which contayned the acts of the Messia, being already come. The Ruler doubted, faying, that he would not come till ten thousand yeeres were expired. Hee also promised, that because hee had heard much good of him, if hee would come thither, and abitaine from Swines flesh, they would make him Ruler of their Synagogue. Af- 60

ter this, three Iewes came from thence to Pequin, and were almost perswaded to become Chriflians. These complayned, that through ignorance of the Hebrew, their Religion decayed, and that they were likely all of them in a short time to become Saracens or Ethnikes. The old Arshifynagogue, was now dead, his fonne a young man succeeded in place, but ignorant of their



Law. And that their lewish Religion was indeed languishing, appeared by this, that they both worshipped the Popish Images, and complayned that in their Synagogue and private houses they had none. They were offended that they were forbidden the eating of any creature, which themselues had not killed, which had they observed in this Journey had cost them their lives. Their wines and neighbours esteemed Circumcision of their Infants on the eighth day a cruell thing, which they could be willing to alter, with acceptation of the Christian Law, nor would much standabout Swines flesh.

As for the Christian Religion thither carried by the Iesuites, you have heard the whole subflance of their owne large Histories; I meane not of Miracles, and other like stuffe and stuffings, to but the meanes of conuaying the Gospel to the Chinois, which are merchandile, money, & gifts, Mathematiks, Memorative-art, Morality, which to Chisa Couetousnes and Curiosity with their conforming to Confutius Ethikes , and China Literature , Habite , Names and officious Rites, were good Orators, and made way with much adoe to that little which is done; a mutuall exchange in many things, of Romifo for Chinois Beades , Shauing , Vefts, Songs , Murasimus , Ta. pers, Cenfers , Images , Legends, Monkes, Nunnes, Processions, Pilgrimages , Monasteries , Al. tars, hee and shee Saints, and other things innumerable pertayning rather to bodily exercise which 1.Tim.4.2.

tars, hee and thee saints, and other things inhumerable percaying faints to volve men to world profite hitle, then to Godlinesse, or God-likenesse, who being a Sprit, requires men to world plants; the men so world profit and truth; and by fools in significant fair than that before, not by wisedowe of the teat. words, in elegant writings, and those more of Arts then Christianty. The great Doctor of the 20 Gentiles tooke another course, not with excellency of words, sayth he, or wisedome; yea, bee eftermed to know nothing among the learned Corinthians but Iefus Christ and him crucified: neither flood 1.Co. 11.111 his word in the entifing speech of mans wisedome, but in playme enidence of the Spirit; not the wisedome of the World, but the wifedome of God in a mysterie, &c. Which I speake not as denying the

feruice of Arts to Diginity, but of Diginity in manner to Arts, where the profession is not as of a Tent-maker to live that he may preach, but as of an European Philosopher, where Hager domineereth, and Sara at some times whispers a little, and except in Images and Shewes scarcely thewes her felfe, as more fully appeareth in the fore-going Hittory. But would God any Arts Haiton, c. 1. or any Preachers may occasion the opening of their eyes, which were wont to bragge of two eyes, and fay Europeans had but one, when as they have but this one naturall eye, and in spiri-20 tuall things are blinde: and would God the Chinois might as generally acknowledge themfelues thankfull to Iesuicall labours in professing the Gospell, as I doe here my selfe for this Historicall light of China.

≬. VII.

The Map of China, taken out of a China Map, printed with China Charatters; illustrated with Notes, for the understanding thereof.

Some (whole industrie and acts have both here and contracted), was by Captaine Some (whole industrie and acts have both here and elsewhere enriched this worke) Town, Lie. E. gotten at Bantam of a Chinese, in taking a diffress for debts owing to the English 63.63. Merchants; who seeing him carefull to conuay away a Boxe, was the more carefull to apprehend it, and therein found this Map, which another Chinese lodged at his house, lately

come from China, had brought with him. The greatnesse of the danger at home (if knowne) The China made him earnestly begge for that which was on the other side as earnestly defired and kept, jestous of Maller Hakluge procured it of the Captaine, professing his intent to give it to Prince Henry of Strangers. glorious memory, who being juddenly aduanced to a higher view in Heauen, and Master Haklast following, this Map came to my hand, who fought to expresse my loue to the publike in any tottowing, this peap same comy mand, who toggie to expend my more to the passaccion communicating what I could thereof. For it being in China Characters (which I thinke none in England, if any in Europe, vn.lerstands) I could not wholly give it, when I give it; no man being able to receive, what he can no way conceive.

And as in greatest things our little understandings easier apprehend negations then affirma-

tions, and can better tell what they are not, then what they are; so this Map easily tells at first, Benesit of this euen wishout Commencaries, the comments and conceits of our Geographers, Ortelms, Mar. Map us only cator, Hondits, and whatfocuer other our Authors of Maps, and Globes, who all haue heerein tingothers. fayled, gining nothing leffe then China in their China; whether wee regard the generall figure and shape thereof, or the particular Rivers, Hills, Provinces, Wall, Latitude, and if wee beleeve the lefuter) Longitude alfo. They prefent it in forme fomewhat like a Harpe, whereas it is al. most foure square; they make Hills, Rivers, Lakes, Hands, (Coray also for one, which is part of Coray no lland,

the Continent) Cities, Prouinces, every thing out of due place. Whose industry I commend; but industry guided by ransie, and without light, is but the blind leading the blind, or like a seeled vamanaged Horse, the more spurred, the more ready to carrie his Rider into precipices, or out of the way at least. Our Geographers haue indeed payd the Chinois in their owne Coine:

for they, as before yee have read, knew nothing in manner of the other parts of the World, and expressed them as fanfifully in their Maps; and wee likewise knowing nothing of them, have entertayined, and beene entertayined with Fansi-maps, in stead of those of China. As therefore by Sir Thomas Roes honourable industry wee have given you Indus and India before, which no Geographer before had done (they all bringing Indus thorow Cambaia, and some seeking for Ganger at Canton in China) fo here we give you a true China, the Chinois themselves being our Guides, and the Jesuites their both Examiners and Interpreters.

The Originall is about four foot one way, and almost fine foot the other, whereof a ward and some foure inches square is the Map it selfe; the rest are China Discourses touching the say Map in their Characters and Lines (running downward, and beginning at the right hand to bee read, after their manner) which are heere omitted, as not vinderstood. Yet haue wee some vinderstanding (as where wee see a man farre off, whom we know to bee a man, and can observe his habit, gefture, motion, though wee fee not the proper complexion of his face) by that which Pantons hath told vs before; namely, that those China Characters contayine all the Tributes of each Prouince, yea the number of Houses and perions in the same. And in the Map (of which wee have given an extract) hee fayth the Rounds and Squares are Cities and Townes of princip pall note all walled; adding that the Rivers are diffirefly delineated; and the great Lines are boundaries of Prounces, (wee haue heere ex pressed them after our manner in little prickes,) the leffer expresse the chiefe Cities Iurisdiction. Ours hath no such leffe Lines, but those mentioned Rounds and Squares, which perhaps hee meaneth; for therein are many others in Character, 20 without fuch lines round or square, and therefore as I suppose without Juridiction; and in this extract wee haue left them out, because we exactly knew not their meaning, and perhaps some. times are Cities, sometimes Castles or Townes, or Hills, or some other thing : and filence see med better, then labour to expresse an vnknowne Character, or boldnesse to expresse our owne folly or to occasion others, deceiuing and being deceiued. These Rounds and Squares also have their Characters in them, and those greater Squares with Crosses, haue, some three others force

Besides Pastogia, another hath helped further to the particular understanding, namely our famous Countryman Malter Candifb, who in his voyage about the Globe, brought home certaine references taken out of the Map of China, neere which hee fayled, and it feemes by fome skilful 20 of the Languages both of China and Portugall, had the fame interpreted to him. That the Prouinces beare other names then in our Map or discourse is no wonder; for both the Chineis themfelues in divers Provinces speake divers languages, and in all have the Court language besides the peculiar : and the China Characters are the same to many Nations, each of which reades them into his owne language, dialect and appellation. Thus what one Prouince calleth Language (wanting the N.) by divertitie of Dial Ct, is elfe-where called Nanquin ; Pequin, Paquin, and Puching yea, by other language Taybin, and Cambalu, and Suntien, or Citie of Heauen. I durft not interpret all, thu fing rather to give an vincertayine truth, then to hazard a certayine errour. Mafter Candiller

" Perhaps this is Scienfi. nThefe leagues feeme doubt-Pequin.

o This note of falle,if the Iefuirsbe true: and I thinke rather the guefic of the Pertugail Interpreter, then that there was any fuch note in the Map. good Cofmographers to obserue de grees. D Scientum.

1 He Province of Canfas * hath 4. great Cities, and 20. fmall Cities, and 77. Townes and Caftles : it contayeth in length 45. leagues a it hath 262000. Houses of great men that pay Tribute and 12900, men of Warre, and hath 47000. Horses which are the Kines.

2 The great City of Paquin where the King doth lye, hath belonging to it 8. great Cities, and 18. small Cities, with 118. Townes and Castles, it hath 418789. Houses of great men which pay Tribute : it hath Horsemen for the War, 258100 this City is in the latitude of ogo. degrees to the North-wards, being there as cold as it is vivally in Flanders.

The Province of Sorebin hath 7. great Cities, and 16. imall, with 12. Townes and Caffles, and one great Citie, to which many repayre to fight against the Tartars; it hath () leagues in 50 length, and hath 164118, great Houses which pay Tribute, and 96000 men of War. The Province of Santo P hath 6. great Cities, and 14. small, with 90. Townes and Caltles; it is 82. leagues long, and hath 77555, great Houles which pay Tribute: 62808, horie-

men, and 21000, footmen of War.

The Prouince of Oyman 9 hath 7. great Cities, and 14. small, with 90. Townes and Callles; being 470. leagues long, and 132958. great Houses that pay Tribute, 82800. men of For the Chiness Warre. Out of this Prouince commeth Copper, Quick-illuer, and Black-lead.

6 The Province of . Cutchen hath 8. great Cities, and 12. fmall; and 82. Townes which make Armour to fight with the lewes which do inhabit beyond Cauchin-ching; it is 100.leagues broad, and hath 32920. Horsemen and Footmen with 405670. great Houses which pay Tribute 63 whereof the men of War are paved.

7 The Pronince of Languyn hath 14. great Cities, and 17. fmall, and 95. Townes and Ca-Or Quichen, files: it is 1 20. leagues over, and hath 962818. great Houl s which pay Tribute : it hath in it 208900. men of Warre. Whereof there are 52500. Tartar Horlemen that take wages.

R The Prouince of Vquam hath 14. great Cities and 19. fmail, 150. Townes and Caffles, and

is 210, leagues broad; and 53161. Houses that pay Tribute: and 71600. men of Warre. o. The Prouince of Som hath 7. great Cities, and 11. small, and 105. Townes and Castles: and is 200. leagues broad : and hath Houses that pay Tribute 139567. and men of Warre 345632.

10 The Prouince of Essiram hath 12. great Cities, and 75. small, and 80. Townes and Cafles, and is 440. leagues broad, and hath great Houses that doe pay Tribute 1242135. and 339000. men of Warre.

11 This Lake lyeth behind Siam, and before Champa, and doth joyne with the Lappians, and In a small specific the state of the state o the Chinians doe report this Lake to be the whole World, and so they paint the Sea, the Moone times

12 The Province of Lanfay, hath 13. Cities and a chiefe Citie, and 73. Townes and Cassles. and is 260. leagues broad, and hath great Houses that pay Tribute 1393629. and 12700. men

12 The Prouince Chanfa hath 12. great Cities, 45. small, and 51. Townes and Castles, it is 260. leagues broad, and hath great Houles that pay Tribute 1306390. and men of Warre, both Horsemen and Footmen 100100.

14 The Province of Vanams hath 14 great Cities, and 36. small, and 24. Townes and Ca-20 files, and is 88. leagues broad, and hath great Houses that pay Tribute, 589296. and 15100.

16 The Province of Fuguien hath eight great Cities, and one principall Citie, and 64. Towns and Caffles, and two great Gities of Garrison to keepe watch vpon the Ispans, and is 200 leagues broad, and hath 5009532. great Houses that pay Tribute, and 4003225. men of the Kings

16 The Province of Canton hath 40. great Cities, and feuen small, and 77. Townes and Cafles; and a Citie that putteth forth hundreds of flips for the keeping of Cauchin-china, and is 280. leagues in breadth, and hath 483383. great Houses which pay Tribute, and 39400. men

30 17 The Prouince of Enem hath seuen great Cities and 13. Small, and 90. Townes and Cafiles: and is \$8. leagues broad, and hath 589296. great Houles that pay Tribute, and 15100.

The Spanilo Friers of the Philippinas, as Mendoza recordeth, thus out of the China Bookes relate the names of the Proninces, Paguia, Foquiens, Olam, Siufay, Sifuan, Tolanchia, Canfay, Oquians, Aucheo, Honan, Xanton, Quicheu, Chequian, Susuam and Saxy; tenne of which are seated on the Sea-coaft. He also addes that Pagnia or Pequin hath forty feuen Cities (filled Fu) and one hundred and fiftie others termed Chen. Canton hath thirtie leven of the one, and one hundred and ninetic of the other, and so proceedeth with somewhat differing account, reckoning in all five hundred ninety one Cities entituled Fs, and 1593.0f the Chen Cities, which he makes Townes: 40 whereas the Iesuits have taught vs that Fu is the Title of a Region or Shire, in each Province,

which are sub-divided into Cen and Hien, those the more, these the lesse principall, but yet e-Againe, in a Dialogue printed at Macao, in the Confines of China, 1590. by the Portugals,

Againe, in a Distague painteu at Aranea, in the Committee of Conne, 1500, by the Proringat, thefe Prounces are thus reckoned, Sixe vpon the Sea. Continue, Poquien, Chequium, Ranquin, Kantinu, Paquin; the other time In-land Prouinces, Quinnss, Huquam, Henam, Xienss, Xansi, Suchun, Queichen, Innan, Coansi. Perera teckons them thus, Fuquien in which Cinces is the best knowne City; Cantan, Chequeam, Xutiamfu, Chelm, Quianci, Quicin, Quanet, Confu, Vrnan, Stchina, &c. all which diverfity proceedeth partly from ignorance, partly from different Language and Dialect in the expounding these Characters. And it must needs be so, the Chinois wanting

30 vie of, and Characters to expresse b. d. r. and all their Characters being of things not Letters; in proper names is very great difficulty to express ours in their Characters, or theirs in our Letters; insomuch that one lesuite doth not perfectly agree with another, nay, often diffents from himfelfe, as in lanfen, Tameen, Hiancen, for their great River which Polocals Quian; and Chi, and Ci, and Qin I find often confounded in their fyllables, as alfo x and fei, as X auchin, Scianchin, and the like. Yea, fuch is the difficulty, that the lefuits can scarlly desire to express in China Characters, the forme of Baptime, to put the Latine words thereof, into China Chara-Gers, that Baptisme might vnisormely bee administred after the Romish Rice, as themselves

Touching their Souldiers, I thought good, to adde this note for their Peeces whose Barels Note of Soul-60 Pannia layth, are but a fpan long, that Captayne Sarab beeing asked told mee, hee faw many of direct percent them, and they were as long as Piffols, but the Cocke fuch as makes them of little feruice,

I have added these Pictures of Manand Woman of China, not by ghesse, but out of certain the Printers in China Pictures made also in China in very good Colours, but with Arte meane enough, fault. face cloth inferted in flrong Indian Paper; of which Captayne Saris communicated many to me. Picares.

Their little Eyes and Nofes, long Hayre bound vp in knots, womens feete wrapped vp, long wide-fleeued Garments, Farmes, &c. I haue (taking divers parts out of divers) prefented to ther. A tafte of the China Characters thou haft in the Title. That of Riving I have added from Provinces and the Icluits, in thankes for his great paines, and to shew the habit of the head. &c.

to the South. Degrees.

The names of the Provinces I have hunted out of the Iesuites Iourneyes and other Relations. In the most I am fure I am right, in the other 'you have my coniecture; for neyther know we their Characters, nor haueany giuen vs a particular Geography or Chorography, but only the names of the Prouinces. I have added names also to some Cities and Rivers of principall note. As for the truth of the Map I finde well to agree with the Iefuites Journeyes; but it hath not European Art, it being neyther graduated, nor Hils, nor Woods, or other differing places pre- 10 fented to the view; only having Characters, Lines, Lakes, and Rivers. I have addentured to adde Degrees to helpe such Readers as cannot doe it better themselves, following the lefuits prescripts in generall, although I cannot but maruell at that longitude, so farre differing from the generall opinion, and could almost doubt, that herein these Portugals are minding that diuision agreed on betwixt the Spaniards and them, which hath anciently caused such contentions, and wherein you have read tome Offices of the Iefuits in thefe China Difcourfes. But I will not contend, where them felues speake faintly,

Now for Quian which Polo hath mentioned, as the greatest River in the world (it is here called Quim. Now for Yusan which Poso nath mentioned, as the greatest Kiner in the world (it is here called *Mandeille & Ianfu, or Harrfu, or Tamfu, that is, the Sonne of the Sea, and Ianfuchian) and another called Cao hers speake ramoran (Cara signifieth blacke, and this great Northerne River is alway thicke and troubled) of the irregula and their Marriage by Art, is here viewed; and more then two hundred Cities (one of Poles Wonders) communicating their Merchandizes by that Quian, or Chian, as they now termeit Iansachian, chian signifying the chiefe Riner. For the name Cathar to bee given by the Tartars to China, Goez his Iourney hath made it out of doubt; also that Pequin is Cambalu, that is, the Citie of the King. I doe conceive that Polos Mangi was the nine Southerne Provinces of China; the Northerly before conquered was knowne by the name of Cathay; a name by the Tanarigia uen to divers Countreyes, as Cara Catay and Catay Calay and Great Catay. This Great Catay is

Polo and other Authors speake of Cathar and Mangi as two; perhaps the Tartars so accounting them ; the one, to wit, the North parts being formerly subject to them, and called by their 18 ancient name, the other called Mange in contempt; as the Romanes called the fubiect Britaines of this Iland by their former name, and the others Piets and Barbarians; and as our Ancestors called those Bricons which withstood them Walfbor Welch in a kind of disgrace. Nay still the Mortherne Chinois call the Southerne Mangines , that is , rude or barbarous , as the Lefuites have taught vs. But neither Caibay, nor Manyi, was then the name which they affurmed, but was given them by the Tartars, as China is a name vnknowne to them now. If any will find noother Cambalu, nor Cathar but Pequin and China, I will not contend, though my Reasons elsewhere given out of Polo, and Chaggi Memet, and others, with the former Relations of Pinto and Albacen, make me scrupulous, and still to beleeue some greater Prince or Can with his Cambals or Court in the more Northerly parts of Afia, then the Issuits could learne of; which the 40 China icalouse, admitting no entercouse of Strangers, and the many quarrelling. Tartar Princes in the way have concealed from vs hitherto.

The great blacke space on the North-west hath in the Originall certayne Characters in it which expecifie it : whether it intendeth Mountayns which their Art could no better expresse, and the Rivers thence running may import, or that fandy Deferton the North-west, I cannot fo well determine. The Iefuits fay, that ab occasu qui Aquiloni vicinior est, conterminu visiturarena stuentis ager, qui multorum dictum penuria aduenarum exercitus ab Sinarum Regno ant deseret, aut fepelst. I rather thinke that it is Cara Catay or Blacke Catay, before often mentioned, both Mountaynous, and Defert, and perhaps coloured blackish, as the name intimates, by black fands, or as health grounds with vs: it was the first Tartarian Conquest, and beginning of the greatest 50 greatnesse which this World hath yeelded; the Country before of Prestyrer loannes Asaticu.

The wall is in this forme in the original, not in the Picture made up of Mountaynes, wherein I thinke they had not art to imitate Nature ; the Art in the whole Map much refembling our old Maps, of wooden prints, faue shat I fee not one Mountaine presented in swelling fashion to the Eye. The Ilands are very many with their Characters, but poorely delineated, their names here omitted for their vncertaynties : so little (and yet how much more then any other !) doe wee give you of China, till Time give vs more. The degrees are not so perfectly accommodated to the Map, by reason that we must at once follow the Chinian Map which had no degrees (nor could their Art without degrees give every place his inft longitude or latitude) and the Iefuits Rules : 60 yet we haue comne somewhat neere, as may be seene. Other things appeare in the Hiftery.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

A continuation of the Jeluits Acts and Observations in China Will River ve his death and some yeares after. Of Hanceu or Quintay. An Extract of MONFARTS



Hus having with Pantogias eyes taken fome view of the Kings Palage and with Riem of their whole Gouernment, I hold it fit not to leave the China Apolite Rie Broediti-(fo Ricing is called) till wee have seene some fruits of his labourg ynul, and after on least his death. He tels vs that three days after they had beene shut yo in the Palace of Strangers as yee haue read, they were brought forth into the Kings Palace and performe the wonted Rites to the Kings Throne, This is done in a large and strium.

glorious Court or Porch, where 20000. men might be contay ned; at the end whereof is a high Chamber, under which by fine great doores is a passage to the Kings Lodgings ; in that Champ ber is the Kings Throne, where anciently he fate to heare and diffratch butinelles and Embaffages. and to receive the Rites of Magistrates, rendring thankes for their Preferments. But in the pres Kings Throne fent folitarinesse of the King, those Rites are done to the Empty Throne, many there gratula. reucrenced 20 ting the King every day. In this Court, environed with stately Workes, 3000, Souldiers watch every night, befides others watching in Towres without, a ftones caft from one another. In each of the fine Gates is an Elephant, which with the Souldiers goe forth when it is day; and those Elephants. are admitted which come to gratulate the King. These come in a peculiar Habittof Red, with an Iuory Table in their hand to couer * their mouth, and exhibit their kneelings and bow. *See the like ings to the Throne, as they are taught by Officers of Rites or Mafters of Ceremonies : pne cry+ fap.23. ing out to that purpole at the performance of each gelture. The Gouernour of Strangers having Throne. thut them up, first petitioned the King tharply against Mathan the Eunuch and them, but feeing no answere, he petitioned more gently but would have them sent from Pequin; which the King liked not, yet without Petition from the Magistrates would not detayne them. The Euniches

30 also laboured their stay for feare the Clockes should miscarry beyond their skill, The Kings Mo- Kings politic ther hearing of a felfe-striking bell fent for it, and the King sent it, but to preuent her afking it, caused the Wheeles to be loosed, so that not seeing the vie, she fent it againe. When the Rituall Magistrates could get no answere to their Petitions, for not touching their

flay at Pequin; the Prefett fent to Ricius that he would make a Peringon to give him leave to flan there in precence of Sicknesse and Physicke, which beedid, and the other presently answered, giuing him libertie to hyre a House; continuing also his former allowance, with source servants to bring it enery fifth day, (Flein, Salt, Rice, Wine, Hearlys, Wood,) and another fernant in continual attendance: fo that now they recoursed libertie, and credit. The Eunuches also told Their libertie them of the Kings approbation of their flay; and they had out of the Treasurie sight Crownesa and allowance 40 moneth, which their goeth much further then heere : and the Captayne of Strangers by open Sentence gaue them full libertie. One of the Colai, and then the onely, became their great friend, with his Sonne, after some European Presents, which hee bountifully rewarded : likewise the supreame President of the Court of Magistrates, and other of the Grands, besides the Eunuches of the Palace, and some of the Queenes and Royall family, Amongst others was Fumochan a great Fumochan. man, who for withftanding the Eunuches capacitie in Vquess Prouince, was deprived, whipped, and three yeeres Impriloned; but by others honored with Temples, Odours, Images, and Bookes in prayle of him, as a Saint, and the King wearyed by multitude of Petitions for him, granted him againe his libertie. Also Lingoson a great Magistrate and Mathematician as they accounted, became Rieins his Scholler, and was baptifed Leo, borne at Hancen, the chiefe Citie of Cechian,

so of which afterward. Yet had Recine a great enemy of a great Learned man of Hanlin Colledge, who in zeale of the One of Hanlin Idol-feet had put away his Wife, and professed himselse one of their Votaries or Shauelings, neth Idoldrew many Disciples after him, and writ many Bookes against the Literate Sell; and writ also Priest. against Recise his bookes. One of the Kings Admonibers accused him to the King by Petition, and the King referibing seuerely, hee slue him falfe : yea, the King ordayned, that if the Magifirates would become Apostata shauelings, they should leaue their Robes and get them to the Deferts; many accordingly chufing rather to leave their Offices, then their Idols. One Thacon Thecon 2 fewas so famous, that the chiefe Queene daily worshipped his habit, (nauing no other meane of en. mous infatercourfe) and to proud that hee fent to Rioiss to come and visite him, with the rices of kneeling, mous Prieft. 60 But on occasion of fearch for a Libell against the King, hee was found guiltie of writing ill of the King, for not professing Idols, and of ill viage to the Kings Mother, for which he was Whipped io, that before they could adde bonds, hee dyed. One which by torments confessed himselfe author of the Libell, had 1600 gobbers plucked from his flesh and then beheaded, a Death most (for

the division of the body) abominable to the Chinois.

Xauceum refidence. Новориля в Monfter.

Portugall cu-

Seueritie.

The Icluite

Traitors.

Scianbai in

Idoll Hoaquan, made with three Eyes, one in his forehead (for though the Chinois have no Idols representing any formes but humane, yet they admit Monsters) as their God of Eye-fight for whom they intended to build him a Temple, and carryed him from house to house a begging to that purpole; the lesistes refusing to grue them. Rumours also of Mashans detayning the Prefents were soone apprehended; as likewise certayne Stage-players which comming from Amacao, fet forth in Pictures those things which the Chinois hated in the Portugals, as their short Gatments (feeming to them ridiculous) praying on Beads by men in Temples, with Swords girded to them, kneeling on one knee, their quarrels one with another and combats, Women grided to them, ancening on one are a the parties and accurded the Infairer to the Tauli, 10 who spate for them and visited them. It happened also that by occasion of a great Drought, Processions and Fasts were commanded, and the Shambles shut vp, the Gouernour and people in differs places appointed thereto, begging rayne with their bowings; and when this pressyled see, they beought an idoll out of the Suburbes, called Levi, which was carryed about, adored, I sem valuell offered too, with no better forceffe. Hereupon they confulted a Witch, which fayd the Quantum or Goddeffe was angry, that her backe was daily korched (fpoken of the Converts burning their Idols) which caused some conspiracie, quenched with the Tantis sauour and the rayne following, At Nanquin one borne at Sciannai, and heft pronounced Licentiat in the examination 1597. was Baptifed by the name of Paulus, who connerted his whole Family. Anno 1604. hee was made Doctor, amongst three hundred and eight, of which number foure and twentie were cho- 20 fen of Hantin Colledge, after the Come course of best Writing, of which hee was the fourth : this Choise of foure and twentie is but for probationers, for at the most after long tryals by the Colai, but twelve or fifteene are let in possession, in which examinations hee was

I rhought to adde this by the way, that Ligotfun a learned friend of the lefuites, had beene put from his great place into I know not what petrie Office, for too light demeanour and too fre-Hollanderstake quene Cheffe-play, which continued three yeeres. The Hollanders much impouerished the Pera Partingall this sugals by taking the lapan Ship of Amacas, the fewell of the lesites beneficence. At Nancias they Converted three of the Blood royall, Baptifed by the names of Melchior, Gafrar, Balthathey conserved times of the book of the state of the book of the state them a Charter, called the Drectorie of Hell, which the Shaueling Impostors had fold her, written to the Infernall King, to give her good entertaynment, and remit her punishment. The le suites exchanged their Images for her Idols, and their Eeclessafticall Falt for that Pegas.

At Nanquin, Chine also was baptifed by the name of Ignatius, firiking the ground foure times first with his forehead, and fecting the profession of his Faith, which hee delinered in writing to the Fathers; the contents of which and of Paulis, are expressed in our Author. The Hollanders fought entrance into China, to bee admitted Trade in Fuquien Province, but were denyed notwithstanding both promises and threats. Feare of them made the Poringals at Amacao begin to build a Tower and to fortifie. Bit a quarrell falling betwixt a Regular, and a Secular Prieft, one fleeing to the lesure Rector for refuge, there grew such a combustion that the Chineis fled to 40 their Countrey, perswaded that Catameus then there intended to get the Kingdome, whereof hee had fuch expense; at Canson was such terrour, that aboue one thausand Houses without the walls were polled downe, the Gates toward Amacae filled up with Lime and Stones, all commerce with Amacaons prohibited, great Watch kept ; Francis Martinez betrayed by a falle brother a atariner whip-Connert, as a Spie, was twice fo Whipped that hee dyed some after the stripes, as hee was entring the Prison. At Nanquin three thousand were found, Anno 1606, to have conspired the Death of the Magistrates, and to inuade the ancient Treasuries. Those which were taken were put in those Pillorie boards, which force them to fland till their Legges rot, some of them holding out a Fortnight, as was thought by bribing the Executioners : the suspition hereof was by some cast on the lesuites. Two Guides or Fraternities were erected of (bina Conuerts.

Ziu Paulus the learned Convert, being to leave his place for three yeeres, to mourne for his Nanquin Pro- Father at Scianbai his natine Towne, he obtayned Catamens to bee sent thither with him, where heestayed two yeeres. This is one of the meanest forts of Cities which they call Hien, one hundred fortie and foure Italian myles from Nanquin, and in that Prouince, in twentie nine Degrees, ouer against Coras and the Laponian Hands, within a little of the Easterne Sea. The name Sciantia, lignifieth on the Sea; and it is fortified with Garrisons and a Fleet against the laponians, being a passage with a good winde of foure and twentie houres sayle. The walls are two myles compatie, the Suburbes contayne as many Houses as the Citie; fo that there are numbred fortie thouland Housholds (by this you may measure the frequencie of great Cities,) the Territoris is an euen Playne, and so cultinated that they seeme a Citie of Gardons, full also of Villages, 60 Hamlets, Towers, contayning twentie thousand Families in this Townes jurisdiction, there being in that Circuit 300000. men. This Iurifdiction alone, payeth to the King the yeerely value of 1,50000. Golden Crownes, in the weight of Silver, and afmuch in Rice, in all 300000 (whence the incredible renennes of this Crowne appears also credible) the Ground being fertile of

CHAP.8. Riccis death. Pantoias Petition to the King. Ticams Chappell.

Corton, whereof there are reckoned 200000. Weaters, Pequin and other parts being hence fer- 200000. Westned with Cloathes. There are many good wits and Students, a good Ayre, and they line long, uers. eightie, ninetie, and a bundred yeeres.

Wee are now come to the Death of Father Ricine (the Author of our Infuitical Discourse of China hitherto; occasioned by multitude of businesse that yeere, fine thousand Magistrates comming to visite the King, and five thousand others standing for their Doctorship, of which about three hundred onely are chosen. Wearyed with his Ecclesiafficall Fasts also and labour of building a Church, hee fell ficke and dyed, May 11, 1610. having much propagated the Goipell by his writings, and furthered it by his Mathematickes. For all Sects haue beene there more en-To creased by Writing then Preaching. Hee dyed leauing much forrow to his friends and care also in that China scrupulofitie, how and where to interre him. It was the counfell of their friends, to put vp a Petition to the King, whereupon they resolved, and Pantogia by Doctor Less helpe, thus Petitioned in behalfe of Ricius his Corps. I lames Pantogia, Subject of the Kingdomes of the great West. Offer a Supplication in behalfe of another Forrainer now deceased. I humbly beseech your great Clemencie for a place of Buriall, that your Royall beneficence may extend to all, even Strangers of remotest Regions, I lames Pantogia am a Stranger of a most remote Kingdome, but mooned with the vertue and fame of your most Noble Kingdome, have in three yeeres fayle, with much trouble, paffed bither about fixe thou and leagues. In the eight and twentieth peere of Vanlie, (for fo, as wee, they account their yeeres by the Kings raigne) in the twelfib Moone, I, with Matthew Ricius, came into 20 Jour Court; where wee presented some gifts, and have since beene sustained at the Kings charge. The nine and twentieth yeere of Vanlic, in the sirst Moone, we Petitioned your Maiestie for a place of resdence, and have many yeeres entoyed the Royall bountie. In the eight and thirtieth yeere of Vanlie, the eighteenth day of the third Moone, Ricius dyed. I, a Client of the Kingdome of the great West, remaine a fit subject of pitie. The returne into our Countrey is long, &c. And I now, after so many yeares stay, suppose that wee may bee numbred to the people which solloweth your Royall Chariot, that your Clemencie, like that of Yao, may not contagne it felfe in the Kingdome of China alone, ore. So proceeds he He was a King to let foorth the good parts of Ricing, and with a long supplication to begge a place of Burvall, of old, accom Some Field, or part of a Temple; and bee, with his fellowes, should observe their wonted Pravers to the Lord of Heanen, for thou fands of yeeres to bim and his Mother. This Libell was written with peculiar forme, Characters, Seales; many Rites herein necessarily observed. Before any bee offered to the King, it must be eviewed of some Magistrate; and they got this to bee allowed by one which is Mafter of Requests, which sent it presently to the King. They must also have many Copies thereof, to flew to those Magistrates, to whom it appertaines; which they did : one of them affirming, That Rieins deserved a Temple also, with his Image to bee there set up. This message hee tent them by another : for when they fauour a cause, they shew great strange-

in that case, and concludes the Petition to bee agreeing to Iustice, and earnestly pleades and sues for confirmation. The King fends this answers to the Colao, which subscribed his approbation; which being fent agains to the King, hee subscribed with his owne hand Xi, that is Fist, or bee st done, which the third day after was delivered them. The lefuiter having so speedie and prosperous successe, bethought of gratifying their friends, which had furthered this defigne with Dyals, especially to the Colas, which vsed Pantogia very kindly and writ to the Gouernour of Pequin to looke out a place fitting. Three or foure were offered to their choyse, one of which much pleased them.

nesse. The King commonly answers the third day (except hee mislike, for then he suppres-

feth) and fends it to the Magistrate that had presented it, who shewes which of the sixe is the

peculiar Court, which judgeth of their things : This being fent to the Ritual Tribunal, Their

answer is sent to the King within a Moneth (which there is a short space) and repeating the

Petition verbatim, and the Kings command to the peculiar Office, answers what the Law fauth

It was aboue a quarter of a myle from one of the Citie gates, built by an Eunuch, who now so was condemned for some crime; and left his Palace which hee had heere builded, with Place affigned the expence of aboue foureteene thousand Duckats (which in China is a great summe, in that to the Islands cheapnesse of all things, farre beyond European computation) should fall into the hands of spoylers (the goods of Eunuches in this Kingdome, viully becomming his which first can catch them) hee confecrated his Palace, and made it a Temple, maintayning therein one Priest. Such Speylers spoy-Palaces many of the Magistrates have neere to the Cities, as retyring places and Tufculanes for led. their Muses. The portraiture of this whole House, with the Garden, and other appurtenances, Trigautius hath fet foorth in Picture; being after the China building, with the doore Southwards, and fo running a great length into the North, with foure great Halls one beyond another; in the middle parts, and on each fide, Chambers and other Roomes; beyond all the Gar-60 den, the pillars of Timber bearing up the roofe; the walls and pauement of Bricke. The outmost of these Halls was converted into a Temple or Idoll-Chappell, in which was a great Altar of Stone and Bricke cunningly fretted, paynted red (a colour forbidden to private Houses) and vp-

on the middest thereof fate a huge Monster of Earth, gilded from top to toe, of massie quantitie. Teamshe far-The Chinois call it Ti cam, the God (as they fable) of the Earth & Treasures, as Plate in the Poets. na Plate.

His Image or

Denils & Hell. M.Paris, Oc. Srix. Elifan fields.

In his hand was a Scepter, on his head a Crowne, not volike those vsed by our Kings. On each fide flood foure minifers of the same matter : on both fides of the Roometwo great Tables, and on each of them fine Kings, or great Officers of Hell. On both the wals were painted the fame Officers, or ludges, fitting on their feuerall Tribunals, giving fentence on wicked men, every one according to the condition of his Court. Before them flood many Deuils, more terribly formed Minny, Status, Rhadamanthus then with vs. The paines of Hell also were so deciphered, that could not but firske terrour to Rhadamanthis then with 15. A me plants of the state of the beholders; some rosted in year Beds, some fryed in scalding Oyle, some cut in pieces, or herehouse the demonsters; tome rotten in your loos, to me to the middle or torne of Dogges, or otherwise tortured. The first of those ludges examples of the first of those ludges examples. other annuals and the minute or torns of Dogges, and a certayne Classe. Those which here found guilte, Bullancesifier were fant to the other ludges, according to the qualitie of the crimes. One of these was ludge in 10 thole in diuces the state of Transfining ration, which fent the foules of cruell men into Tygres; of vincleane perions, into Swine, and the like : or if their crimes were smaller, into the poorer fort. There was a great Ballance; in one of the Scales, a man laden with finnes; in the other, one of their Hypocritical Prayer-bookes, which counterpoyled the other Scale, and freed the Sinner. There rame through Prayer-nookes, with to contemporary of the midft of Hell a discoloured River, which carried away many. For our it were two Briges, one of Gold, the other of Silver; by which, those passed over, which had beene denout Idola. ters, carrying in their hands Enfignes of the same : these were guided by the Priests, which led ters, carrying in their manus sangues of the same and pleasant Groces and Gardens. In another part were parated the Dungeons of Hell, with horrible Serpents, Flames, Deuils. To the Brazen Gates thereof there comes an Idolatrous Priest, which in despight of all the Deuils deliuers his Mother 4 from those slames. There was no infernall punishment painted, but had such an Inscription: He from those names, I nere was no macroan punniment panner, but has not man need a new an interprior. He which shall gray to such an Idoll a thousand times, shall bee free from this panisment. The Idolites beat the Earthen Idols to dust, and burnt those of wood, wherein the Chinese Connects were the forwarder, because the Countrey custome is to fill the hollow bellies of these Images with denoted Money or Iewels. They demolished the Altar and playstred ouer the Pictures, and in place thereof erected the Image of Christ. No private man may erect a Temple by Law, which

* The lefuites A little before this exchange of Idols into Images (after their distinction, and a * filly one it is) some tooke their last leave of Ticam: one kneeling and bidding it fare-well; another chaffing, chinais mayne tayne their I faid; Thom maffe of Dang and Earth, if thom haif no power to maintagne thy Temple and thy felfs, 10 tayne theft 1., what helps may looke for at thy hand? Neither art thou worthy of any homour at mine. Others faid, ing they wort that this had sometime borne the name of some other Idoll, and therefore was auenged for that thip not the Idell, but God

Ricius, having thus taken possession of China by his dead bodie, and living name, wee shall thereby reprebriefly out of the Iesuits Epistles adde some later accidents, and so leave our China Discourles, which if they have feemed tedious and troubleforne, remember that China is both exceffirely tituall, and also inhospitall to Strangers; and I have but imitated my subject, in long and wearifome entertaynment. These tell vs of the Kings vnkindnesse to his Heire, proclaymed, as yet haue seene against his will, scarsly allowing him necessary sustenance, nor permitting his Mother Prince and his at her death to be mourned for with wonred Rites, He is indeaout, his Mother egregiously Su-40 at ner ueuen to be mounted to min monted etter, 12 cs mounted in manuale energous perfitious, mayntayning many Priess, erecling or repayring Temples, that it is a Prouerbe, In the Court the Provinces are Magifrates observed. In that their studie of long life One had beene so mad, that he being a Licentiate, bought children whom secretly he killed, of their bloud making compositions for that purpose; which comming to light by one of his Concubines, he was put to a deferued death, three thousand pieces of flesh first cut from him.

Dry winters. In their Winter is greatest scarity of water in the Rivers, and many shelves then cause many shipwrackes. As they want b. d. r. so they end no word in any other Consonant but m. and w. The China Connerts are very zealous in selfe-whipping penance, and fasting, altered from their forme to the Ecclesiasticall, which is hard to them accustomed to eate thrice a day. Their Priests vse Beads, mumbling thereby their Deuotions and many things alike. They built a 50

Chequian fometimes the Imperiall Pro-

fpected.

The Province of Chequian yeelds only to the two Royall, Nanguin and Pequin, beeing more excellent then any of the reft. Neither hath it loft other Provinciall Ornaments how source it hath loft the feat of the Chma Empire, but is still the best of thirteene. On the East it is washed with the Sea, which the winds favouring admit passage to I apas in four eand twentie hours: on the West it confineth with the Provinces of Nangum and Kiams (or Chians) on the South with Fagnian: to the North is Xanto (or Sciantum.) It hath twelve Cities of principall note, which are the heads of fixtie three leffe; befides innumerable Townes, Caftles, Villages. The foile is the most sertile of the Kingdome pleasantly interlaced with Riuers, many of them produced by Art in imitation of Nature, in commodiousnesse no whit inferiour, yeelding a spectacle of amaze- 60 ment to the amused Posteritic, how humane force could effect such wonders. These Rivers for further commoditie are towred with innumerable Bridges of huge massie stones arising into diuers Arches, like to the European workmanship. You have alreadic Almeidas Epistle of his and Rogers going into this Prouince, to Xao Him, whence foone after they returned. The Chinois have

CHAP.8. Hamceu, faire ftreet, triumphall Arches, Rivers, Ponds,

a Proutibe of Hamcen the Metropolis, and of Sucen, thien xam, thien tham, ti xam Su ham, that which in Heauen is the Hall of Heauen (lattea via, as he elle-where interprets it) that on Earth Suces and Hamces. The Countrey so aboundeth with Mulbery-trees and Silke-wormes, that China, Iapon and India are thence turnished. Ten Vests of Silke are there cheaper, then in our Countrey one of cloth. Hamcen stands from Nanquin South-eastward nine dayes Journey, almost in thirtie degrees eleuation : about three dayes lourney from Scientisi, where Catanesis was, who with Trigantins our Author were fent thither by Lees procurement. They went from Nasquis by the Ruer las fu fift, and then into hand-made Rivers, Cities, Townes, Villages, fo frequent in the way, that nothing feemes in the whole Kingdome more populous. Mid-way, where To Nanquis and Chequian Prouinces joyne is that famous Suces, feated in the Continent, and fee. Sec/19.143ming yet the Daughter of the Sea, like another Venice, but more happie with her fresh waters: ming yet the Language of the Only into another Server, our more inspire with the treat waters the Ports for frequent, and ships so many as if the whole shipping of the Kingdome were thicker comme to some Faires, which yet are in succession perpetuals. When the Fathers were comme hither, the Chinois by I know not what rumour were conceited that their Foe or Gods were

comne thither in Visitation. And a Magistrate sent to Lee about it, to know if, and how, he But to leave their Fooleries, let vs take view of their Citic. Hancen is the chiefe Citie of this Hancen Han-Prounce 19ea, in all this Kingdome; leffe perhaps somewhat in compasse of walles then consolinates. Nangain , but better peopled : 90 place in the Citie emptie , nor occupied with Gardens, but

20 all builded, and all the Buildings almost with divers Stories, which in other Cities of China is not viuall. The Inhabitants are fo many, and the Tribute fo much, that the Iesuites durit not relate that which hereofthey had heard by graue testimonie, for the incredibilitie: the description would aske a whole Volume. The chiefe street is almost halfe a dayes Journey in length, and cannot be leffe then admirable. For whereas the Chinois vie to erect triumphall Arches , as Monuments, to wel-deferring Magistrates, and Ornaments to their Cities; this one street hath at least three hundred such (besides very many others in other parts of the Citie) of massic stones ar tear turer unusure user teamers with many senses in our parts of the Cutte, or many senses, and exceeding curious Workmanship, that if the Houses on both sides yeelded the like splendor, the World could not show such a spectacle. But they occupie is all with shops, and build the

most magnificence of their Houles inwards, and yet those not like the European Palaces. There is alfoa Lake clofe to the Citie, which the eye can fearfly meature, which sliding in- The Lake. There is an a second and in the diverse Hillocks, hath given occasion to Are to flew her See the Map. to a variety casompaning, consequence with Houses, Gardens, vermote in the automing the same, possibly no action of passible business with grounds, carriers, Groues; a very Labyrinth to the bewitched eyes, not knowing whereat most in this Maze to Crouss; a very Lawyrinanto the bowning eyes, the anowing whereat most in this maze to bee most amazed, wherein most to delight. And in delights doe they frend their dayes, filling the Lake with Vessels, furnished with Feasts, Spectacles and Playes on the water. There is a the Lake water venes, attended to the Citie, whereon is a faire Towre or Steeple, where they meajure their houres by a strange deuice. Out of huge Vessels water droppeth from one to another, the lowest being very large, in the middle whereof is perpendicularly rayled a Rule, diffinguithed with houre-spaces, which by the ascent or descent of the water, dunde the rising and de-decining day, and declare the houre severy halfe houre some men appointed by Tables with Cutiming usys assessment of the time to all men. From this Hill is a prospect over all the oreat Lecters, to gue notice on the time to at men.

Citic. All the fireets being fet with Trees, make thew of pleafant Gardens. It is so full of Ri-

uers, Lakes, Rils, Ponds, both in the Citic and Soburbs, as if a man would frame a Platonical ters, saars, sais, sound, sound the said of temples are many and stately, which Idolatry where it is wanting in China, hath a worfe Succeffor, Atheisme. is wanting in Learne, hatti a worse successor, sametime.

Let vs stay a while and gaze (for where have you such an Object!) Is not Dainly (whi- Dainly states Iome the Royall Seat of the Kings of Mangi, as Veneus recordeth, Supposed by our Moderne can Geographers to be fivallowed by with fome Earth-quake, or in Billond's all-confuming belly) See it defends Georgia of the Carlos C tere ray ret up from the state. and have must on the one must, (to ramen reports of b Hade vine to Quinfar) the Name Quinfar figurifying the Citie of Heaven, and this called a Heavenly Paradic bundara legs, Sample) the classor sampy nightly nigh

dericas calls it Canafia, and Has or Changes, not so difagreeing in found, as different Dialects c That which is before said are wont: the excellence being chiefe Citie in the Kingdom, and this Province Ionetimes Royal, is before faid as Pequin now and Naniquin are: the fination. South-east from Cinesianta c fine and twentie almost a dileter to the south case of the south twenty as the so are wont: the excessioner of the fination, South-east from Cinexians, c five and twentie industry is as Peguin now and Noniquin are: the fination, South-east from Cinexians, c five and twentie industry is to as responsible and resoftence are the promotion, south-cart from consecuting, the state of the second manual from the Seas the big Honger, and Shops underneath: the exceeding Trade, Renemue, Paber understood filmes by water, multitudes, fairenede, and length of the streets; all so conspiring to prooue this of the change of the change of the streets. names of water, municipate, statement, and rengino in entretes; an in comprising to product this to an extended the second of the Conference of the Conferen as Penetus 12111, one numerou mines about. Due the energing of that empire allowing the flow pallage, reigning, the diuerting of the Court to Cambalu by the Tartart, and after to Nanquin by Hums. sometime but

oc 2%, and neuer returning hither, might lessen the same. And might not warres, in that long sege 6 myleraday. by the Tartars, in the recourty thereof by the Chinas, easily circumcife her superfluitie? Besides, by the Latter, in the troubles placed by the contrast, carry traction and appearance who knoweth whether all this hoge Lake might be contayred in that account of Pander, fall compaffed about with Buildings: Or before those Warres, the Lake it felfe might (as Suca now is) be builded on; which Time and Warre hath confumed; nor fince the remouse of the Court

But that Quinfay of Conti and Abacen, is perhaps Thienfin, being (as they lav it) neerer Com-Thienshi se. But that Quinsay of Comi and Abacen, is perhaps Thiensin, being (as they lay it) neerer Come.

314. Third is bals. I confesse, much may bee sayd for Nanquin to finde Quinsay there, and I have given such a macth Heauth. noce * vpon it, to incite industrious search, because it was the Ancient royall Chamber : Nei-"See pag. 338. ther could I finde any other Royall Citie but Pequin, in Ricins or other Writers, till Triganius later Epiftles intimated, that the Chequian Pronince hath beene fometimes Imperiall; which I conceive to bee that time of Farfur mentioned by Polo, and Hancen his Quinfar,

Anno 1618. Trioantine writes of Perfecution in China, raifed by an Idolotrous Magistrate in 10 Nanquin, and effected by bribes, which hath caused the Issuites to bee sent thence : but because our intelligence is little, wee will leave them heere (as much as lyeth in our power) and vifite some of the other Northerne people; having first given you a briefe view of a French-mans trauell. Monsieur de Monfart, who having travelled thorow the Indies, saluted Canton in China, and Cauchinchina; whole knowledge therefore could not bee fo folid, as the Iesnites.nor vet is to contemptible that it should veterly bee forgotten. Wee will therefore present his Service as a French Page, and one attending the Lesnues Gravitie, and thus as it were bearing

Maran

TRom Malaca I went to Macao, (neere a moneths travell) which is a Citie scituate on the 20 I Sea coast, at the foote of a great Mountayne, where in times past the Portugals had a great Fort, and to this day, there bee yet many that dwell there. This is the entrance into Chine. but the place is of no great importance; they are Gentiles, and there the Inhabitants begin to bee faire complexioned.

Canchinebina. Christians.

Calamba for

Beades.

Thence I trauelled two moneths to the Cochinchines, finding nothing by the way worthy of note : no not so much as necessaries, so that wee were fayne to carrie our Victuals with vs. the greatest part of the way. They are Subjects to the King of China, but sometimes they rebell and make Warre against him ; And there is great number of Christians among them. Their Kings treasure consisteth in a certayne kinde of Wood, called Calamba : for which the Pertugals pay one hundred Crownes a pound, to make Pater-nesters with. It is of a mixt colour, with blacke and yellow veynes; the better fort of it is moyft, fo that being cut it expelleth a kinde of fat oylie liquour. It groweth out of a certayne Tree, which they fell and let it lye a while a putrifying : then they bruife it, and within the same, they finde this kinde of Wood, like many hard knots. They are a very white people, because there it begins to be cold, low of Stature, stat Nosed, and little Eyed, with a very few hayres on their Chins, and Muflachoes : none at all on their Cheekes, the hayre of the Head they weare long like Women. tved vp with a blacke filke hayre-lace, and weare a flat Cap vpon them. They weare Cloath breeches made very levell, and a short Robe above them, like a Matter of the cham-

Huge Serpents red me that travelling in that Countrey, together with fixteene other men, through a Fennie-

selues : but no sooner were they fate, but that which they tooke for a Tree, fiercely rowsed it felfe from under them, and lete them all to picke ftrawes on the ground, for indeed this was one of those Sements. Their cultome is (as they fay) to put themselves in ambush among the boughes of a Tree, and when they espie their prey to draw neere, bee it Man or Beast, they fall voon him with open mouth and denoure it. There are also store of Lions, Leopards, and Tigers : and there the Fruits begin to resemble those of these parts : but the Fruit, which about all others aboundeth there, 10

There are found a kinde of Serpents that will swallow up a whole Stappe : two Friers affir-

marsh, about the dawning of the day, they met to their seeming, a great Tree lying along the ground, the boughes being lopped off, vpon which they all began to fit downe and reft them-

Wild Beafts: threat Lions as doubtfull.

is the Mirabolan.

Thence I fent forwards to Canton, the principall Citie of all China, (fome three Moneths tra-Contain China. This is northe well distant) beyond which there is no passage, say any body what hee will to the contrary; for principall Cineuer any man proceeded further, except (as they fay) fixe lefunes, who dwelled twentie tie, except, of yeeres at Canton, as well to learne the Language perfectly, as to let their havre to grow long, afand for trauel, ter the Countrey manner, of whom there was neuer fince heard any newes, nor is their hope ling further, he suer to fee their returne. That people is very white, and apparelled as is aboue fayd; they are likewise Gentiles, and worship the same Image with three heads. Their Women of the better of ordinarie fort, and qualitie which are able to line of their owne without working, neuer goe out of their couries, but or sources boures they are carryed in a Chayre. And to that effect, from their Intancie, they put and the Art Li. their feete into certayne woodden Slippers, to make them flump-footed and impotent, in fo

Fathers have found admittance, as in the former Relations is seene. This testimenie touching lefutes is worth the noting For fome of Ours which voon great offers could not finde meanes to enter China, have Beld that nene have beene there.

CHAP. 8. Merchandises, Cloath of Gold, Cabinets, Vessels, Massie Gold, Silkes.

much as they are not able to goe: the reason they alleadge for it, is, that Women were made to

The Christians are not permitted to lye within the Citie, but as soone as Night approaches they must retire themselues to their Ships, being lawfull for them to Traff que wheresouer they please by Day-light. And for their traffique, what rarities focuer there bee throughout all Chipresent of the state of the sta cloath of Gold and Silke, Cabinets, wrought Veilels, Venus shells, Maffine gold, and many other things. They will exchange or barter Gold for twice as much waight in Siluer; for they have no coyned money, for when they would buy any thing, they carrie with them a piece of 10 Gold, and will cut off as much as they intend to bestow on what they take, They make car-

used Images of Silver, which they erect heere and there through the Streets, and no body dates The Cirie is gouerned by foure Rulers, and each one hath his Gouernment, or Circuit apart,

feeluded from each other: those of one quarter Jare not goe and labour in another, and those which caufe themfelues to bee carryed, from one part to another, must change their Bearers when they come to the Gate of the next circuit; choic Gates are opened eury morning, and that when they once to the date of the made of fome mildemeanour, committed within earry migns, vinces there we any companion made of none innocure anony, committee within the Circuit; for then they that them indidenly, or if they bee thus, they open them not, till the offender be found. The King bestowes these commands on those who are best Learned. This is our mate or round. I me aning restortes more commands on spore who are one securiou. I may a command a most faire Citie, and well built, very neare as bigge as Park, but there the House are arched, a mortaire Chie, and wendons, voly measurings as a way, our chees the admits at acciding and nothing neare fo high. There is fo much Sugar in that Country, that it is by them very lieand nothing nearest ongo. There is no more agent abundance, but withall more course them outs, by rea. Silke women tre set up, yet is since in raise more great abundance, one water more course then out, by rea-fon of their flore, being fo great as they are confirmed to make it abroad in the Fields, on the ion or their rove, being to great as they are country free to this activation in the events, on the very Trees, in this wife; when the Wormes are hatched, (whereof the Egges are faire greater very rices in this wife a wife the roomer and the roomer and the will bee able to feede, then

then ours.) They obtaine what quantities of worlders call after whitese and to teed they have for many on it, leading them there without any more adoe, except it bee to gather the cods, when they are ready to bee fpunne, which is done as they gather Apricocks: the time coust, when they are ready to occupance, which is one as they gather apricocks: for indeed a farre off they appeare to bee fo, and is a very fine fight to behold: they we a frange thinde of Fishing with Cormorants. They tie their neckes a little aboue their stomackes, less See Pale, Pare they floud denour the Fish they take : then comming to their Master, hee pulleth it a-they floud denour the Fish they take : then comming to their Master, hee pulleth it a-line, out of their throates : Likewise for water Fowle, they make vie of great Bottles with two holes, which they leave floating vp and downe the water a good

while, to acquaint the Powles therewith : then some fellowes will wade vp to the necke in the water, thrusting their heads into those Bottles, and having a bagge underneath, come as necre the Fowle as they will, taking them with their hands, without the rest being atraid

 N_{n_2}

e of the electric

airmāts

1 " Mi 2 ...

Rufsico

YAGES AND COVERIES OF THE NORTH

PARTS OF THE WORLD, BY LAND

AND SEA, IN ASIA, EKROPE, THE PO CARE REGIONS, AND TWO Locality of the THE NORTH-WEST OF THE POST OF THE PROPERTY OF THE POST OF THE PO

A MARI CAR HOLD CONTO AND CONTO AND

er concerning the Propose was to ser turner ficht a meaning THE THIRD BOOKE, which is the first control of the control of the

a metha thousand verifi, well a gli beyond and by a mean a stronger A Treatie of Ruisia and the adopting Regions, written by Dector 10-1-2 " Inguisted FIFTCHER Lord Amballador from the law Onese Basson in Complete Control of the Con

patidathbe norts, a very repetitive of the particular to properly and all heads of properly suitagements and all heads of properly suitagements. the which the substitution and the controller of the substitution and the substituti



He Commercy of Raffic was formed and the Commercial Inches and Commercial Supposed for the Commercial Supposed for nor being subject the 90s th the other. Hor Region that congue was such as to Part of Divide. The Angle report to the house of the Country Lines of the Coun

neater his owne Name Of this partition it was called gaple, and Name of the year from Chiuk 860, As for the conjecture which the shree I finds in Jone Comographers, that the keep Nation horrow. I finds in home Colmographets, that the Reft Nation horrowed the name of the people alled Restlerie, and were the very lame. Nation with them, it is
without allegoed probabilities, both, in respect of the Exymptograph of the word cynicity are
tarrefectely, and appeally for the fact and exclude got that people, which was between the Strabbin his re
two Rings of Tomas, and Strifteness, as Astaba reported in our employer, which was from the Course
books of Gogs.

trey of Ruffia.

When it bare the name of Samatia, it, was dissipled into two chiefe parts; the trein and the constitution of the same of Samatia, was all that particular lysels towards the Morsh, and on the side of the tree same of the same of t Blacks. The Woste Sarmaria, was all that patternative an towards the Chorsts, and on the one of Legland; as the Proninces now called Disma, Pagha, Pist, Volgeda Carganoia, Nonogradus, from the Metropolite, orchitet Citic. Black Carmaria was the Metropolite, orchitet Citic. Black Carmaria was all the Country that lyeth Southward, towards the Earn or Black Gar as the Dukedone of Colombia; County that yeurs and the state of the state the polteritie of Sem. But this feemeth to bee nothing but a conjecture taken our of the likeness. 1000 between the likeness.

The borders

414

of the name Afarmathes. For the dwelling of all Intrans posteritie is described by Moses, to have beene betwirk Meschoor Masim, (an Hill bridge Amenier) and Sophace, neare to the River Emphrates: Which maketh at very unlikely, that Astronathes should plant any Colonies so lare off, int the North and North-weft Countries. It is bounded Northward by the Lapper, and the North Ocean. On the South-fide by the Tarrers, called Chrims. Eaftward they have the Marraian Tartar, that pollefieth all the Countrey on the East fide of Volgba, towards the Calbian Sea. On the West and South-west border, lie Litmania, Linonia and Polonia.

The whole Countrey being now reduced under the Government of one, contained thefe chiefe Prounces of Shires. Voledemer (which beareth the first place in the Emperours fille, bechiefe Prountes or antes.

cartie their House carrie of the Dukes of that Countrey, Merke, Nifetungred, Pleske, Smolenf- 10. ho, Nonogrod velica (or Nenogrod of the low Countrey) Rostone, Tarnflane, Bealongs, Beren Dayna; Cofe capita, Me (Bora, Varba, Vingba, Ghaletja. Thefe are the natural things permy-ning to Raffia, but farre greater and larger then the Shires of England, though not fo well people. The other Countries or Provinces, which the Ruffe Emperours have gotten perferce added of The Provinces late to their other Dominion, are thefe which follow, Twerra, Tongbona, PermiafVallille, Book ghoria, Chernigo, Oudoria, Obdoria, Condora, with a great part of Siberia : where the people though they bee not matural Ruffer, yet obey the Emperout of Ruffic and are ruled by the Lawer of his Countrey, paying customes and taxes, as his owne people doe. Besides these hee hath vn. der him the King Jomes of Caran and Affracan, gotten by Conquest not long finer. As for all his possessions in Litmania (to the number of thirtie great Townes and more,) with Narme and Dorpin Limonia, they are quite gone, being surprised of late yeeres by the Kings of Poland and Sweden. These Shires and Prounces are reduced all into foure Invisitions, which they call Cheffred (that is) Tetrarchies, or Fourth parts. Whereof wee are to fpeake in the Title or Chapter, concerning the Prouinces, and their manner of Gouernment.

The whole Country is of great length and breadth. Erom the North to the South (if you measure from Cola to Alfridge which bendich four what Eastward) it reachest in length as the Countrey. bout foure thousand two hundred and sixtie verit, or myles. Notwithstanding, the Emperour of Ruffis hath more territorie Northward, farre beyond Cols vnto the River of Tromfebus, that runneth a thousand verst, well nigh beyond Pechinga, neere to Wardhouse, but not intire nor clearely limitted, by reason of the Kings of Sweden and Dennerte, that have divers Townes there clearely imitted, by reason or the ange of sween and the state clears I owner there as well as the Rule, plotted together the one with the pietre : every one of them claying the swhole bishood Northernan his countright. The breakth (if you got from the pietre his Terricoin that it is the parts of sheerin liftward on the Northern Rule, to the parts of sheerin liftward where the Emperour litth his Carriston's is four thought and and four hundred week, or thereboots. A Verit (by chelr reckding) is the thought dock, yet leffely bire quarter than an Enmino tifb myle. If the whole dominise at the the Emperous weet all habitable, and peopled in all places, as it is in some, hee would either hardly hold it all within one Regiment, or becour mightie for all his neighbour Princes,

and subscribed

or so herê sirîn

THE Soyle of the Continery for the middle part is of a Meight Implement, yet way much diff to the continery has been a contined to the fairt. The Country Northwines, towards the pints of Saint Whether & Cola 16 Northwines, towards the pints of Saint Whether & Cola 16 Northwines, make a support of the Colar of the Country Northwines, towards the pints of Saint Whether & Colar of Elements and expensions of the cold in Wincer time. Soil Revorted along the Right Verbal, between the Cognities of Country and the wincer time. Soil Revorted along the Victor furthfully it is importable at Jaims due to the Country of the Country that will sain for the pints of the Country that will sain the pints of the country in the Country that will sain the pints of the country in the Country that will sain the pints of the country that will be said the country that will be said the country that the country that will be said the country that the country that the country that will be said that the country that and without the country that the country to dwell there, filling a wilde and vigiant life) nor foffer the lange chair if farrest with he flowingth of this Columney) to people those parts. From Cologdal (which lyesh almost one those and said fand feuen hundred verit from the Port of Saint Nicholas) downet wards Alenda, and fo to 10 wards the South part that Bordereth upon the Chrim, (which contayneth the like space of one thousand lepten hundred verift, or thereabouts) is a very fruitfull and pleasant Countrey, yeelding Patture, and Corne, with Woods and water in very great plentie. The like is betwixt Recan (that lyeth South-east from Moske) to Nonograd and Pobsko, that teach farthest towards the North-well, So betwixt Mosko, and Smolensko (that lyeth South-west towards Linguis) is a very fruitfull and pleafant foyle. The whole Countrey differeth very much from it leffe; by reafor of the vecte: to that a man would marualle to fee the great afteration and difference betwixt the Winter and the Summer in Ruffia. The whole Countrey in the Winter lyeth under Soow, which falkeli continually, and is sometime of a yard or two thicke, but greater triwards the North. The Rivers and other waters are all frozen vp, a yard or more thicke, how fwift or 60 broad focuer they bee: and this continueth commonly fine Moneths, viz. from the beginning of November; till rowards the end of March, what time the Snow beginneth to melt. So that it Would breed a frost in a man to looke abroad at that time, and fee the winter face of that Countrey. The flur penefie of the ayre you may judge of by this : for that water dropped downe or

CHAP.I. Cold and beat extreame; Rivers of Russia; Fruits.

cast vo into the ayre, congealeth into Ice before it come to the ground. In the extremitie of Winter, if you hold a Pewter dith or pot in your hand, or any other metall (except in tome of the or pot in your hand, or any other metall (except in tome of the or pot in your hand, or any other metall (except in tome of the or pot in your hand, or any other metall (except in tome of the or pot in your hand, or any other metall (except in tome of the or pot in your hand, or any other metall (except in tome of the or pot in your hand, or any other metall (except in tome of the or pot in your hand, or any other metall (except in tome of the or pot in your hand, or any other metall (except in tome of the or pot in your hand, or any other metall (except in tome of the or pot in your hand, or any other metall (except in tome of the or pot in your hand, or any other metall (except in tome of the or pot in your hand, or any other metall (except in tome of the or pot in your hand, or any other metall (except in tome of the or pot in your hand, or any other metall (except in tome of the or pot in your hand, or any other metall (except in tome of the or pot in your hand, or any other metall (except in tome of the or pot in your hand, or any other metall (except in tome of the or pot in your hand, or any other metall (except in your hand, or any other metall except in your hand, or any other hand, or any other hand, or any other hand, or Winter, it you now a rewer unn or pour myou many out any out mean (except in tone chamber wheretheir warme Stoues bee) your fingers will freeze fait vato it, and draw of the rome Emes channes when you palle out of a warme roome into a cold, you shall fensibly feele told me of a skinne at the parting with the cold, as you draw it in and out. Ditters licked field the cold, as you draw it in and out. Ditters licked field the cold is a sound that the your orean to was, carace, and cour meaning with the cond, as you can be a supported by the travell abroad, but in the very Markets, and firects of their Townes, are mortally now, which as pinched and killed withalf 16 that you half life many drop downe in the Streets, many Travel. It is a support of the condition of the condit pinched and gained witchins the track you make seeming a log titled. Divers lofe their Nofes, the faces face for the faces face faces for the faces faces faces for the faces tippes of their Eares, and the balls of their Cheekes, their Toes, Feete, &c. Many times when from his Ma-To (the winter is very hard and extreame) the Beares and Wolues iffue by troupes out of the woods fire Table in (the wines 1976) man and an extremely the accuration of our wines and by thought our of the woods and a page in driven by honger, and enter the Villages, tearing and rauening all they can finde: fo that the In-thenetroom, habitants are faine to fise for fafegard of their lines. And yet in the Summer time you shall fee head the side and the side of the state of the st Birch) forfeth and fo sweet, the Partures and Meadowes fo greene and well growne, (and that for that feeth ypon the fusiden), fach varietie of Flowers, fuch noyfe of Birds, (specially of Nightingales, that roll: a force ppin inclusion), rain various or growers, and moye or areas, (specially or reightingates, that facenet to be more found and of a more variable note then in other Countries) that a man shall not facet offers the facet of the fa

And olight fries and speakers country.

And olight fries and speakers growth of the Spring there, seemeth to proceed from the benefit of red, the Snow; which all the Winter time being spred ouer the whole Country as a white robe. Effect of sinon, and keeping it warms from the rigour of the Frost, in the Spring time (when the Sunne waxeth warme, and diffolueth is into water) doth to throughly drench and toake the ground, that is forms what of a fleight and fandie mold, and then shineth so hotly upon it againe, that it drawoth the Hearbs and Planes forth in great plen ie and varietie, in a very short time. As the Win-

ter exceedeth in cold, to the Summer inclineth to ouermuch heate, specially in the moneths of Lune, July, and August, being much warmer then the summer ayre in England,

The Country throughout, is very well watted with Springs, Risers, and Ozeraes or Lakes. Englawell was Wherein the proudence of God is to bee noted, for that much of the Countrey being fo farre inland, so that fone pare lyetha thousand myles and more every way from any Sea, yet it is ferned with faire Riners, and that in very great number, that emptying themsclues one into another, runne all into the Sea. Their Lakes are many and large, some of fixtie, eightie, a hundred, and two hundred myles long, with breadth proportionate.

The shiefe Rivers are thefe, 1. Valghe, that hath his head or fpring at the roote of an Alder. The chiefe Riv tree, about two hundred veril about Tarnflass, and groweth fobigge by the increase of other Ris uses of Anglas uers by that time it commeth thither, that it is broad an English myle and more, and so runneth into the Cofficer Sea, about two thousand and eight hundred verifior myles of length.

The pext is Berifibenes (pow called Neper) that divideth the Country from Lituaris, and falleth into the Enter Sea.

The third Tanas or Dan, (the ancient bounder betwixt Europe and Afie) that taketh his head out of Recan Ozera, and so naming through the Country of the Christ Tertar, falleth into the 40 great Sea lake, or meart, (called Manie) by the Citie of A.o.s. By this River (as the Refereporteth) you may palle from their Citie Manh to Conflammople, and so into all those parts of the world by water, drawing your Boate (as their manner is) ouer a little shows or narrow dippe of land, a few verds ouerthware. Which was prooued not long fince by an Ambaffadour fent to Configuines/e, who paffed the Riner of Montag, and fo into another called Ocks, whence he drew his Boare over into Taneir, and thence passed the whole way by water.

The fourth is called Duyna, many hundred myles long, that falleth Northward into the Bay of Saint Nicholm, and hath great Alabafter rockes on the bankes towards the Sea fide.

The fifth Dava, that emptyethinto the Baleick Sea by the Towne Rige. The fixt Owegs, that fallerh into the Bay at Solone sten ninety Veril from the Port of S. Niebs. to the training sense that the control of the property of the River Volet, that falleth into the Finland Sea by the Townse Found. So that from the Port of S. Niebolas into the Finland Sea, and to into the Sound, you may halfe all by water, as hath been eryed by the Ruffer.

The feuenth Suchana, that floweth into Dayna, and fo into the North-fea. The nightsh Only, that Seecheth The Head from the Borders of the Chrism, and streameth

The ninch Market, that rumneth thorow the Citie Mosto, and giveth it the name. There is Wirbida allo a wery large and long Riser that rifeth out of Permia, and falleth into Pagest All thefe are Ruers of very large fireames, the leaft to bee compared to the Thomes in bigoelle and in length farmore, befieles diners orber. The Pole at Morke, is fiftie fine degrees ten 60 manutes, At the Port of Saint Nieholas downards the North fixty three degrees and fifty rajuntes,

Cor kinds of traits, they have Apples, Peaces, Planmes, Cheries, Red and Blacke, (but the Black wild) a Deene like a Muske Milian, but more sweet & pleasant, Cucumbers and Goords The Nation (which they call Arbense) Raipes, Strawberries, and Harrilberries, with many other Berries in Commodules

great trey.

417

great quantitie in enery Wood and Hedge. Their kinds of Graine are Wheate, Rie, Barley, Oates, Peafe, Buckway, Pinytha, that in tafte is somewhat like to Rice. Of all these Graines the Countrey yeeldeth very sufficient with an ouer-plus quantitie, so that Wheaters sold fometime for two Alteens or tenne pence sterling the Cherfird which maketh almost three Energy Their Rye is fowed before the Winter, all their other Graine in the Spring-time, and for the

Rye.

The chiefe

of the Coun.

trey.

most part in May. The Permians and some other that dwell farre North, and in Desart places, are ferued from the parts that lye more South-ward, and are forced to make Bread forcetimes of a kind of Roote called Vagbnoy) and of the middlerine of the Firre-tree. If there became of akind of Roote called Faginney Jano on the motion in the or the Roote and Rye being at thirteen Alrens, amo 1 88. Wheat and Rye being at thirteen Alrens, and the facility is explored the property of the state of the property of the pro or fine fhillings fine pence sterling the Cherfird) the fault is rather in the practice of their Nobia litie that vie to engroffe it, then in the Countrey it felfe. The Native Commodities of the Country trey (wherewith they ferue both their owne turnes, and fend much abroad to the greit enriching of the Emperour, and his people) are many and fubflantiall. First, Furres of all forts, Where in the providence of God is to bee noted, that provide ha naturall remedy for them, to helpe the naturall incongenience of their Countrey by the cold of the Climate. Their chiefe Finn are thefe, Blacke Fox, Sables, Lufernes, Dunne Fox, Martrones, Gurneffalles or Aimins, Lafets or Miniuer, Beuer, Wuluerins, the Skin of a great Water Rat that Imelleth naturally like Minke. Calaber or Gray Squirrell, Red Squirrell, Red and White Foxe. Besides the great quantitie front within the Countrey (the people being clad all in Furs the whole Winter) there are tranfoorted out of the Countrey some yeares by the Merchants of Turkie, Persia, Bougharia, Georgia, Armenia, and some other of Christendome to the value of foure or five hundred thousand Rub. bels, as I have heard of the Merchants. The best Sable Furre groweth in the Country of Pecha ra. Momeoforskor and Obdorskor, the worler fort in Siberia, Perm, and other places. The Blacke Fox and Red come out of Siberia, White and Dunne from Pecbera, whence also come the white Wolfe, and white Beare Skin. The best Wuluerin also, thence and from Perm. The best Marrons are from Siberia, Cadam, Morum, Perm, and Cazan. Lyferns, Mineuer, and Armins, the best are out of Gallets, and Ouglites, many from Nonogrod, and Porm. The Beautr of the beft fort breedeth in Murmonskey by Cola. Other common Furres, and most of these kinds grow in many, and some in all parts of the Countrey.

3. Waxe.

The fecond Commoditie is of Waxe, whereof hath beene shipped in forraine Countreyes (as I have heard it reported by those that best know it) the fumme of fiftie thousand Pood yeardy, every Pood contayning fortie pound, but now about tenne thousand Poods

2. Honey.

The third is their Honey, whereof besides an exceeding great quantitie spene in their ordinary Drinkes (which is Mead of all forts) and their other vies, some good quantitie is carried out of the Country. The chiefe increase of Honey is in Mordua and Calem neere to the Courtmiffin Tartar : much out of Senerskey, Bezan, Merum, Cazan, Dorogobofe, and Valmin.

4 Tallow.

Pourthly, of Tallow they afoord a great weight for transportation : not only for that their Countrey hath very much good ground apt for Pasturage of cartell, but also by realth of their 40 many Lents and other Faits : and partly; because their greater men wie much Waxe for their Lights, the poorer and meaner fort Birch dryed in their Scoues, and custate long friters, which they call Luchiness. Of Tallow there hath beene shipped out of the Realme a few yeares since about one hundred thousand Pood yeerely, now not past thirty thousand or theresbours. The best yeeld of Tallow is in the parts and Territories of Smalenske, Tarafficus, Onglas; Nonograf, and Vologda, Offer, and Gorodetskey.

c. Hide.

Another principall Commoditie is their Loft and Cowillide. Their Loft or Buffe hide is very faire and large. Their Bull and Cow-hide (for O Lenthey make none, neither yet Weather) is of a small lize. There hath beene transported by Merchants strangers some yeares; onehundred thousand Hides. Now it is decreased to thirty thousand or theresbodes. Besides great flore 10 of Goats Skins, whereof great numbers are shipped out of the Countrely. The largest kind of Losh or Buffe breedeth about Rossone; Wichida, Nongrad, &Marum; and Ferm. The lefter for within the Kingdome of Cazan.

An other very great and principall Commoditie is their Trans-oyle; drawne or the Seal-The manner fish. Where it will not be impertinent to shew the manner of their hunting the Seale, which of hunting the they make this Oyle of : which is in this fort. Towards the end of Stringer y before the Frost beginne) they goe downe with their Boats into the Bay of Saint Nicholas, to a Capetalled Cufconesse or Foxnose, where they leave their Boats till the next Spring tivde. When the Summe waxeth warme toward the Spring, and yet the Ice not melted within the Bay; they returne thither againe. Then drawing their Boats over the Sea Ice, they vie them for Houles to reft and 69 lodgein. There are commonly about seventeene or eighteene Fleete of them, of great large

Boats, which divide themselves into divers companies, five or fixe Boats in a confort. They that first find the haunt, fire a Beacon, which they carrie with them for the none. Which being espied by the other companies, by hich among them as are appointed of purpose,

they come all together and compasse the Seales round about in a Ring, that Iye Sunning themfelies together vpon the Ice, commonly foure or fine thousand in a shoale, and so they inuade them every man with his Club in his hand. If they hit them on the Nofe, they are foone killed. If on the fides or backe they beare out the blow, and many times so catch and hold downe the Club with their Teeth by mayne force, that the partie is forced to call for helpe to his

The manner of the Seales is, when they fee themselves beset, to gather all close together in a throng or plumbe, to sway downe the Ice, and to breake it (if they can) which so bendeth the Ice, that many times it taketh the Sea-water vpon it, and maketh the Hunters to wade a foot or to more deepe. After the flaughter, when they have killed what they can they fall to sharing euery Boat his part in equall portions: and so they flay them, taking from the body the Skin, and the Lard or Fat with all that cleaueth to the Skin. This they take with them, leaving the bodies behind, and so goe to shoare. Where they digge Pits in the ground of a fathome and an halfe deepe, or there about, and so taking the Fat or Lard off from the Skin, they throw it into the Pit, and cast in among it hot burning stones to melt it withall. The vppermost and purest is fold and vied to oyle Wooll for Cloth, the groffer (that is of a red colour) they fell to make Sope.

Likewile Ickary or Cauery, a great quantity is made voon the River of Volgba, out of the fift 7. Ickary. Erice Visit State of State State State of State State of State of

CHAP.I.

The next is of Flaxe and Hempe, whereof there hath beene shipped (as I haue heard Mer. 8. Hempe and chants (ay) at the Port of Name a great part of one hundred ships small and great yearely. Now flaxe, not past fine. The reason of this abating and decrease of this and other Commodities, that were wont to bee transported in a greater quantitie, is the shutting vp of the Port of the Narue towards the Finland Sea, which now is in the hands and possession of the Sweaten. Likewise the ftopping of the passage ouer-land by the way of Smolenske, and Plotske, by reason of their Warres with the Polonian, which cauleth the people to bee leffe prouident m mayntayning and gathering these and the like Commodities, for that they lacke Sales. Partly also for that the Merchants and Moulicks (for so they call the common fort of people) are very much discouraged by many 20 heavy and intollerable exactions, that of late time have beene imposed vpon them; no man accounting that which he hath to be fure his owne. And therefore regard not to lay vp any thing, or to haue it before hand, for that it causeth them many times to be sleeced and spoyled, not only of their goods, but also of their lines. For the growth of Flaxe the Province of Volike, and the Countrey about is the chiefe and only place. For Hempe Smolenkeke, Dorogobose and

The Countrey befides maketh great store of Salt. Their best Salt is made at Storerouse in ve- 2. Salt. ry great quantitie, where they have great store of Salt-wels, about two hundred and fiftie verst from the Sea. At Affracan Salt is made naturally by the Sea-water, that cafteth it vp into great Hils, and so it is digged downe, and carryed away by the Merchants and other that will fetch 40 it from thence. They pay to the Emperour for acknowledgement or custome three pence. Ruffe vpon euery hundred weight. Besides these two, they make Salt in many other places of the Realme, as in Perm, Wichida, Toma, Kenitsma, Solonetike, Ocona, Bombaso, and Nonocks all out of Salt-pits, faue at Solonetskey, which lyeth neere to the Sea.

Likewile of Tarre they make a great quantitie out of their Fiere-trees in the Countrey of 10. Tarre. Duyna and Smolenico, whereof much is fent abroad. Besides these (which are all good and fub- 11. Ribezubt. ffantiall Commodities) they have divers other of smaller account, that are naturall and proper to that Countrey : as the fift tooth (which they call Ribacuba which is vied both among themfelues and the Perstans and Boughardens, that fercht it from thence for Beads, Knines, and Swordhafts of Noblemen, and Gentlemen, and for divers other vies. Some vie the powder of it against poyson, as the Vnicornes Horne. The fish that weareth it is called a Morie, and is caught about Pechara. These fish teeth some of them, are almost two foot of length, and weigh eleuen

or twelue pound a-piece.

In the Prouince of Corelia, and about the River Dayna towards the North Sea, there grow- 12. Slude. eth a foft Rocke which they call Stude. This they cut into pieces, and so teare it into thin flakes, which naturall it is apt for and so vie it for Glasse-lanthomesand such like. It giveth both inwards and surwards a cleerer light then Glaffe, and for this respect is better then eyther Glaffe or Horne: for that it neyther breaketh like Glasse, nor yet will burne like the Lanthorne. Salt- 13 Salt peeter peeter they make in many places, as at Onglices, Tarullane and VIIng, and some small store of and Brimstone Brimstone vpon the River Voleba, but want skill to refine it.

Their Iron is somewhat brittle, but a great weight of it is made in Corelia, Cargapoli, and 14-Iron. Vfing Thelefus. Other Myne they have none growing within the Realme.

Their beatls of strange kinds are the Losh, the Ollen, the wilde Horse, the Beare, the Wolue- The strange ring or wood Dogge, the Lyserne, the Beauer, the Sable, the Matron, the blacke and dunne beattsfifth, Foxe, the white Beare towards the Sea coast of Pechora, the Gurnstale, the Laset, or Minener. forthe &c.thm.

They breed in Ruffia

of haire, much like vnto feathers, with a far broader tayle then haue any other Squirrels, which they moue and shake as they leape from tree to tree, much like vnto a wing. They skife a large foace, and feeme for to flie withall, and therefore they call them Letach Vechle, that is , the flying Squirrels. Their Hares and Squirrels in Summer are of the same colour with ours, in Winter the Hare changeth her coate into milke white, the Squirrell into gray, whereof commend the Calabar.

Deare Horfes;

Sheepe, I have land breed the Ram beek foure hornes,

They have fallow Deere, the Roe Bucke, and Goats very great store. Their Horses are bue fmall, but very swift and hard, they trauell them vnshod both Winter and Summer, without all regard of pace. Their Sheepe are but small, and beare course and harsh wooll. Of Fowle, they 10 haue divers of the principall kinds : First , great store of Hawkes ; the Eagle , the Gerstulenn the Slightfaulcon, the Gof-hawke, the Taffell, the Sparhawke, &c. But the principall Hawke swice a yeere : that breedeth in the Countrey, is counted the Gerfaulcon.

Of other Fowles their principall kinds are the Swanne tame and wilde, (whereof they have great flore) the Storke, the Crane, the Tedder, of the colour of a Fealant, but farre bigger and lueth in the Firre woods. Of Fealant and Partridge they have very great plenty. An Owle there is of a very great bigneffe, more vgly to behold then the Owles of this Countrey, with a broad face, and eares much like vnto a man.

For fresh water Fish, besides the common forts (as Carpe, Pike, Pearch, Tench, Roach, &c.) they have divers kinds very good and delicate : as the Bellouga, or Bellougina of foure or five 24 elnes long, the Ofitrina or Sturgeon, the Seueriga, and Sterledy fomewhat in fashion and taffe like to the Sturgeon, but not fo thicke or long. These foure kinds of fish breed in the Voleba, and are catched in great plenty, and ferued thence into the whole Realme for a great food. Of and are catened in great premy, and relief theme into the whole Acaime for a great rood. Or the Roos of thefe fourse kinds they make very great flore of Leary or Causary, as was faid before! They have besides these that breed in the Folgha, a fish called the Ribards, or white Salmon, which they account more delicate then they doe the red Salmon, whereof also they have exceed ding great plenty in the Rivers Northward, as in Duyna the River of Cola, &c. In the Ozara or Lake neere a Towne called Peristane, not farre from the Moske, they have a small fish which they call the fresh Herring, of the fashion, and somewhat of the taste of a Sea-herring. Their chiefe Townes for fish are, Tarusame, Bealouera, Nonogrod, Astracan, and Cazan: which all 10 yeeld a large Custome to the Emperour every yeere for their trades of fishing, which they pra-Etife in Summer, but fend it frozen in the Winter time into all parts of the Realme.

cies of Ruffia,

beareth his

He chiefe Cities of Ruffia are, Mosko, Nonogxad, Roftone, Volodomer, Plefco, Smolenke, larustane, Peristane, Nisnonograd, Vologda, Ustinck, Golmigroe, Cazan, Astracan, Carendia,

The Citie of Moske is supposed to bee of great antiquitie, though the first Founder bee vid knowne to the Ruffe. It feemeth to have taken the name from the River that runneth on the one fide of the Towne. Berofus the Chaldran in his fifth Booke telleth that Nimrod (whom ofected author, ther profane Stories call Saturne) fent Affyrius, Medus, Moseus, and Magog into Asia to plant 40 Colonies there, and that Mofess planted both in Afia and Europe. Which may make some probality, that the Citie, or rather the River whereon it is built; tooke the denomination from this Moscow: the rather because of the climate or lituation which is in the very farthest part and lift of Europe, bordering vpon Afia. The Citie was much enlarged by one Enan or John, fonne to Daniel, that first changed his title of Duke into King: though that honour continued not to his posteritie: the rather because he was invested into it by the Popes Legate, who at that time was Innocentian the fourth, about the yeere 1246 which was very much milliked by the Rufe people, being then a part of the Eastern or Greeke Church, Since that time the name of this Citie hath growne more famous, and better knowne to the World: infomuch that not only the Prouince, but the whole Countrey of Ruffis is termed by some by the name of Mosconis the Me- 50 tropolite Citie. The forme of this Citie is in a manner round, with three strong walls, circuling the one within the other, and fireets lying betweene, whereof the inmost wall, and the buildings closed within it (lying fafeit as the heart within the bodie, fenced and watted with the River Moskua, that runneth close by it) is all accounted the Emperours Cassle. The number of houses (as I have heard) through the whole Citie (being reckoned by the Emperour a little before it was fired by the Chrim) was 41500. in all. Since the Tarter befieged and fired the Towne (which was in the yeere 1571.) there lieth waste of it a great bredth of ground, which before was well fet and planted with buildings, specially that part on the South fide of Moskua, built not long before by Basilius the Emperour for his Garrilon of Souldiers, to whom he gan printledge to drinke Mede, and Beere at the drie or prohibited times, when other Rufes 60 may drinke nothing but water, and for that cause called this new Citie by the name of Naloi, that is , Skinke or powre in. So that now the Citie of Morke is not much higger then the Citie of London. The next in greatnesse, and in a manner as large, is the Citie Nonograde: where was committed (as the Ruffe layth) the memorable warre to much ipoken of in Stories of the Sog-

Treacherie of bondflaues, Iaruflaue, Ruffe building. CHAP.I.

thian feruants, that tooke Armes against their masters: which they report in this fort; vz. That the Boiarens or Gentlemen of Nonograde and the Territorie about (which onely are Souldiers after the discipline of those Countries) had warre with the Tartars. Which being well performed and ended by them, they returned homewards. Where they understood by the way, Pleasant His that their Choloper or Bondilaues whom they left at home, had in their abience politified their florie. Townes, Lands, Houses, Wines, and alle At which newes being somewhat amazed, and yet difdayning the villanie of their feruants, they made the more speed home : and so not farre from Nonograde met them in warlike manner marching against them. Whereupon adulting what was beft to be done, they agreed all to fet your them with no other flew of weapon but with

to their Horse whips (which as their manner is , every man rideth withall) to put them in remembrance of their feruile condition, thereby to terrifie them, and abate their courage. And Likelips, like fo marching on, and lathing altogether with their whips in their hands they gave the onfet, lettice. Which feemed fo terrible in the ares of their villaines, and stroke such a fense into them of the fmart of the whip which they had felt before, that they fled altogether like Sheepe before the Drivers. In memory of this victory the Nonogradians ever tince have stamped their Coine (which they call a dinger Nonogredskey, currant thorowall Ruffie) with the figure of a Horse-man shaking a whip aloft in his hand. These two Cities exceed the rest in oreatnesse. For firength their chiefe Townes are Vobiko , Smoleniko , Cazan and Afracan, as lying upon the borders. But for tituation laruflane farre exceedeth the reft. For belides laruflane 20 the commodities that the foyle yeeldeth of Pasture and Corne, it lieth vpon the famous River

Volga, and looketh over it from a high banke very faire and stately to behold : whereof the Towne taketh the name. For laruflane in that Tongue fignifieth as much as a faire or famous Banke. In this Towne (as may be gheffed by the name) dwelt the Ruffe King Vlademir, furnamed landlane, that married the daughter of Harald King of England, by mediation of Sucre the Dane, as is noted in the Danish Storie about the yeere 1067.

The other Townes have nothing that is greatly memorable, faue many ruines within their walls. Which sheweth the decrease of the Russe People, under this government. The streets of their Cities and Townes in stead of pauing, are planked with Firre trees, plained and layd uen close the one to the other. Their houles are of wood without any lime or stone, built very The mannet 30 close and warme with Firre trees plained and piled one vpon another. They are faitned toge- of Ruffe builther with dents or notches at every corner, and so clasped fast together. Betwixt the trees or ding. timber they thrust in mosse (whereof they gather plehey in their Woods , to keepe out the aire,

Every house hath a paire of staires that lead up into the chambers out of the yard or street after the Scottil manner. This building feemeth farre better for their Countrey, then that of Rone and bricke : as being colder and more dampish then their woodden houses, specially of Fitte. that is a dry and warme wood. Whereof the providence of God hath given them such store, as that you may build a faire house for twentie or thirtie Rubbels, or httle more, where wood is most scant. The greatest inconvenience of their woodden building is the aptnesse for firing, which happeneth very oft, and in very fearefull fort, by reason of the drinesse and fat-40 neffe of the Firre, that being once fired, burneth like a Torch, and is hardly quenched till all bee

The fur-hame of the Imperial house of Ruffia, is called Beada; It tooke the original (as is the furposed) from the Kings of Hangarie. Which may feeme the more probable, for that the Of the house Hungarian Kings many yeeres agoe have borne that name: as appeareth by Bonfinius and other or stocke of Stories written of that Countrey. For about the yeere 1059, mention is made of one Beela the Ruffe Emthat succeeded his brother Andreas, who reduced the Hungarians to the Christian Faith from perour. whence they were fallen by Abbifuse and Turkifu perfusion before. The fecond of that name was called Besis the blind, after whom fucceeded divers of the famename.

That their Ancestry came not of the Russe Nation, Inan vasilowich father to this Emperour, In not naturally 50 would many times boaft, disdayning (as should feeme) to have his progenie derived from the Roff. See 100. Ruffe bloud. As namely to an Englishman his Gold-smith, that had received Bullion of him to 56 where the make certaine Plate: whom the Emperour commanded to looke well to his weight. For my Tarins de-Ruffes (faid he) are theeues all. Whereat the Workeman looking vpon the Emperour, began to ftroyed these fmile. The Emperour being of quicke conceit, charged him to tell him what hee smiled at. If Countreyes then called your Maiestie will pardon mee (quoth the Gold-Imith) I will sell you. Your Highnesse said, that the Bulga in maior. Russes were all sheenes, and forgat in the meane while that your felfe was a Russe. I thought to (quoth many sed into the Emperour) but thou art deceiued. For I am no Ruffe, my Ancestors were Germanes (for lo Hungerie: and they account of the Hungarians to bee part of the Germane Nation, though indeed they come after Bathus 60 of the Hunners. That inuaded thole Countries , and refted in those parts of Pannoning , now called Hungarue.

thus Bullaria

meanearo recouer themselves, and perhaps either by Hungarian affinitie with their Princes, or taking a Prince from Hungarie them affifted with Germans, they began to recours of that Tattain dileale, whereof ftill some Symtomes remayne.

How

The alivence. hou'e of Beals.

How they aspired to the Dukedome of Volodemer (which was their first degree, and ingrafting into Ruffia) and whether it were by Conquest, or by Matriage, or by what other meanes. I could not learne any certainty among them. That from these beginnings of a small Dukedome (that bare notwithflanding an absolute government with it, as at that time did allothe other Shires or Prouinces of Ruffia) this houle of Beala spred it selfe forth, and aspred by degrees to the Monarchie of the whole Countrey, is a thing well knowne, and of very late memorie. The chiefe of that House that advanced the Stocke, and enlarged their Dominions, were the three last that raigned before this Emperour, to wit , Inan Basilem, and Inan father to the other than raigneth at this time. Whereof the first that tooke vnto bim the name and title of Emperour. was Bafilem father to Ime, and grandfather to this man. For before that time they were con- 10 tented to be called great Dukes of Mosks. What hath beene done by either of these three, and how much they have added to their first estate by Conquest or otherwise, may bee seene in the Chapter of their Colonies, or Purchases perforce. For the continuance of the race, this House of Beals at this prefent ' is in like case as are many of the greatest Houses of Christendome, va. the whole Stocke and Race concluded in one, two, or some few of the Bloud. For besides the Em Since the Seepresents been perour that now is, who hath no child (neither is like ever to have, for ought that may be consectured by the conflitution of his body, and the barrennesse of his wife after so many years milies, with manifold commarriage) there is but one more, vz. a child of fixe or feuen yeeres old . in whom refireth all the hope of the succession , and the posteritie of that House. As for the other brother that was eldeft of the three, and of the best towardnesse, he died of a blow given ium by his father vpon 20 the head in his furie with his walking staffe, or (as some say) or a thrust with the prong of it driven deepe into his head. That he meant him no such mortall harme when hee gave him the blow, may appeare by his mourning and passion after his sonnes death, which neuer left him till it brought him to the grave. Wherein may be marked the justice of God, that punished his delight in fledding of bloud with this murder of his sonne by his owne hand, and so ended his dayes and tyrannie together, with the murdring of himselfe by extreme griefe, for this his yahappie and vonaturall fact.

bustions. The Emperor killed his fon-

* Va. A. D.

We have fince had two which haue affumed to be this De metrius, and

The Emperous younger byother of fixe or feuen yeeres old (as was faid before) is kept in a remore place from the Marks, vader the tuition of his mother and her kindred, of the Houfe of the Nagaies: yet not fafe (as I have heard) from attempts of making away by practice of some 10 that aspire to the succession, if this Emperour die without any issue. The Nurse that tasted behue obtained fore him of certaine meat (as I have heard) died prefently. That hee is naturall forne to less Vafilowich, the Ruffe People warrant it , by the fathers qualitie that beginneth to appeare althereof and of ready in his tender yeeres. Hee is delighted (they fay) to see Sheepe and other cattell killed. and to looke on their throats while they are bleeding (which commonly children are afraid t behold) and to beate Geese and Hennes with a staffe till he see them lie dead. Besidesthese of the male kind, there is a Widow, that hath right in the fuccession, Sister to the old Emperour, and Aunt to this man, sometime Wife to Magnus Duke of Holft, Brother to the King of Desmarke, by whom she had one daughter. This woman since the death of her Husband hath beene allured againe into Ruffia, by fome that love the succession better then her selfe, which appeareth 40 by the sequele. For her selfe with her daughter, so soone as they were returned into Russia, were thrust into a Numerie, where her daughter died this last yeere while I was in the Countrey, of thrust Numerie, where (as I have heard) life in the Numerie, where (as I have heard) the bewayleth her felfe, and curfeth the time when the returned into Ruffia, enteed with the hope of marriage, and other faire promifes in the Emperours name. Thus it standeth with the Imperiall Stocke of Ruffia, of the House of Beals, which is like to determine in those that now are, and to make a conversion of the Ruffe estate. If it be into a government of some better temper, and milder constitution, it will be happie for the poore people that are now oppreffed with intolerable feruitude.

Chap 6. Of the man-DCT of crowning or inau-Rufe Empe-

He folemnities vsed at the Russe Emperours Coronation, are on this manner. In the great Church of Precbefte (or our Ladie) within the Emperours Caitle is erected a Stage, whereon standeth a Scrine that beareth vpon it the Imperiall Cap and Robe of very rich stuffe. When guration of the the day of the Inauguration is come, there refort thither, first the Patriarch with the Metropolitans, Arch-bishops, Bishops, Abbots, and Priors, all richly clad in their Pontificalibus. Then enter the Deacons with the Quier of Singers, Who so soone as the Emperour setteth foot into the Church, beginne to fing : Many yeares may line noble Theodore Inanomich, &c. Whereunto the Patriarch and Metropolite with the rest of the Clergie, answere with a certaine Hymne, in forme of a Prayer, finging it all together with a great noise. The Hymne being ended, the Patriarch with the Emperour mount vp the Stage, where flandeth a Seat ready for the Emperour. 60 Whereupon the Partrarch willeth him to fit downe, and then placing himfelfe by him you another Seate prouided for that purpole, boweth downe his head towards the ground, and layed this Prayer : Ob Lord God King of Kings, Lord of Lords, which by thy Prophet Samuel didft shoofe thy fermant Dauid, and anount him for King over thy People Israel, have now our Prayers, and looke

from thy Santhuarie upon this thy Sernant Theodore, whom thou haft chosen and exalted for King oner thefe thy boly Nations, anoint him with the oyle of gladnesse, protect him by thy power, but upon his head a Crowne of Gold and precious Stones, give him length of dayes, place him in the Seat of Inflice. frenethen his arms, make subject unto him all the barbarous Nations. Let thy feare been his whole heart, turne bim from all errour, and shew him the saluation of thy boly and universall Church, that bee may indge thy people with Instice, and protect the children of the poore, and finally attapne enerlasting life. This Prayer he speaketh with a lowe voyce, and then pronounceth a lowd : All prayer and power to Godibe Faiber, the Sonne, and the Holy Ghoft. The Prayer being ended, he commanderh certayne Abbots toreach the Imperiall Robe and Cap: which is done very decently, and with

10 great Solemnitie, the Patriarch withall pronouncing alowde : Peace be unto all. And so he beginneth another Prayer to this effect: Bow your selues together with vis, and pray to him that reigneth ouer all. Preserve him (ob Lord) under thy holy protestion, keeps him that bee may doe good and holy things, let lustice shine forth in his dayes, that we may line quietly without strife and malice. This is pronounced somewhat softly by the Patriarch, whereto hee addeth againe alowd : Thou are the King of the whole World, and the Saniour of our foules, to thee the Father, Sonne, and Holy Ghost, bee all prayle for ener and ener, Amen. Then putting on the Robe and the Cap, hee bleffeth the Emperous with the figure of the Croffe : Saying withall, in the Name of the Father, the Sonne, and the Holy Ghost.

The like is done by the Metropolites, Archbishops, and Bishops: who all in their order come 20 to the Chaire, and one after another bleffe the Emperor with their two fore-fingers. Then is faid by the Patriarch another Praier, that beginneth Omost boly Vargin Mother of God, &c. After which a Deacon pronounceth with an high lowd voyce : Many yeeres to Noble Theodore, good, bonourable, beloved of God, great Diete of Volodemer of Mosko, Emperour, and Monarch of all Ruffia, Je. Whereto the other Priests and Deacons that stand somewhat farre of by the Altar or Table, anfwere finging, Many yeeres, many yeeres, to the Noble Theodore. The fame Note is taken yp by the Priests and Deacons, that are placed at the right and left fide of the Church, and then altogether, they channe and thunder out; inging: Many serves to the Noble Theodore, good, bonourable; beloud of God, great Duke of Votedemer, Mosko, Emperour of all Russa, &c. These Solemnities being ended, first commette the Patriarch with the Metropolites, Arch-30 bishoppes, and Bishops, then the Nobilitie, and the whole Companie in their order, to doe homage to the Emperour, bending downe their heads, and knocking them at his feet to

The Stile wherewith hee is inuefted at his Coronation , runneth after this manner. Theodore laanowich, by the grace of God, great Lord and Emperous of all Ruffa, great Duke of Volodemer, Mosko, and Noungrad, King of Cazan, King of Altracan, Lord of Plesko, and great Duke of Smolensko, of Twerria, Ioughoria, Permia, Vadska, Bulghoria, and others, Lord and great Duke of Nouograd, of the Low Country, of Chemigo, Rezan, Polotskoy, Rostone, Yarusaueley, Bealozera, Leifland, Oudoria, Obdoria, and Condensa, Commander of all Siberia, and of the North parts, and Lord of many other Countreyes, &c.

40 This stile contayneth in it all the Emperours Provinces , and setteth forth his greatnesse. And therefore they have a great delight and pride in it , forcing not onely there owne people but also Strangers (that have any matter to deliver to the Emperour by Speech or writing) to repeat the whole forme from the beginning to the end. Which breedeth much casill, and sometimes quartell between them and the Tartar, and Poland Ambafadours: who refuse to call him Czar, that is Emperour, and to repeat the other parts of his long Stile. My selfe, when I had audience of the Empercur, thought good to salute him onely with thus much, viz. Emperour of all Russia, great Duke of Volodemer, Mosko, and Nouograd, King of Cazan, King of Aftracan. The rest I omitted of purpose, because I knew they gloried, to have their Stile appeare to be of a larger Volume then the Queenes of England, But this was taken in

50 fo ill part, that the Chancellor (who then attended the Emperour, with the rest of the Nobilitie) with a lowd chafing voyce called still upon me to say out the rest. Whereto I answered, that the Emperours Stile was very long and could not so well be remembred by Strangers, that I had repeated fo much of it, as might shew that I gaue honour to the rest, &c. But all would not serue till I commanded my Interpreter to say it all out.

Hemanner of their Gouernment is much after the Turkilb fashion : which they seeme to __Chap.7. I imitate as necre as the Countrey, and reach of their capacities in Politike Affaires will give The Sizecor them leave to doe.

The State and forme of their Government feemeth to apply all to the behoofe of the Prince, The Ruffe Go-60 and that after a most open manner: as may appeare by the Sophismata, or secrets of their Governa unment to ment afterwards fet downe, aswell for the keeping of the Nobilitie and Commons in an vn- rametall. der proportion, and farre vneuen ballance in their severall degrees, as also in their Impositions and Exactions, without any regard of Nobilitie or People: farther then it giveth the Nobilitie a kind of libertie, to exact vpon the Commons and baser fort of People in all parts

forme of their



Guill-kind eiuc-all kind Lenute. Abfolute So-

of the Realme whereforeuer they come , specially in the place where their Lands lye, or where of the Keatine wherehouse they come , specially in the place white they are appointed by the Emperour to gouerne vinder him: Alfo to the Commons fome finall they are appointed by the Emperous to gone the Lands by differnt of Inheritance to whether Some contentment, in that they palle ouer their Lands by differnt of Inheritance to whether Some contentment, in that they pane out then Lands by the stands of their seeds by gift they will; which commonly they doe after our Gamil kind, and dispose of their seeds by gift

Concerning the principall points and matters of State, wherein the Sourreignetic confident Concerning the principal points and marking of Magifirates, power to make Harre or (as the making and annuling of public Lawes, the making of Magifirates, power to make Harre or (as the maning and announcy of purine Laures, we unaging to long them, pures to mane events or Langue with any Eurosiae State, to execute or to pardon life, with the right of Appeale in all matter, buth Lasgue with any correse court, we wholy and abfolutely pertayne to the Emperour, and his Court Civill and Criminally they doe to wnoty and appropriately percayne to the appealon, and his Counfell wnder him, as that he may be faid to be both the Sourreigne Commander, and the Execution 10 ner of all thefe. For as couching any Law or publike Order of the Realme, it is cuer determined ner of all times. For as cooking any new or publish of the foreign any publike Affembly or Parliament be fummoned. Where befodes his Council, hee of before any publish entermory of parameters as are concluded before hand, but onely a nach none order to commun. With this was adulating of the peoples Superflittions, cuen against themselues, which thinke al. to be holy and just, that passeth with consent of their Bishops and Clergie men, whatfoeuer it be. For which purpose the Empercurs are content to make much of the corrupt flate of the Church, as now it is among them, and to neursh the same by extraordithe corrupt mate of the Change, as 1950 to a sound of the State of the nary randours, and ammunities to the Limber dead, about 7 to and a total 2 and to be a special meanes to vp-tion and false Religion best to agree with a Tyrannicall State, and to be a special meanes to vp-

Magistracies.

Secondly, as touching the publike Offices and Magisfracies of the Realme, there is none hereditarie, neyther any so great nor so little in that Countrey, but the bestowing of it is done immediately by the Emperour himselfe, Insomuch that the very Diacks, or Clerkes in enery head Towne, are for the most part assigned by himselfe. Notwithstanding, the Emperourthat now is (the better to entend his Deuotions) referreth all fuch matters pertayning to the State, wholly to the ordering of his Wives Brother, the Lord Borris Feder wich Godonoe.

Hesucceeded Iuridiction.

Thirdly, the like is to be faid of the Iurifdiction concerning matters Iudiciall, specially such as concerne life and death. Wherein there is none that hath any authoritie or publike Iurifiidion that goeth by Difcent, or is held by Charter, but all at the appointment and pleasure of the Emperour, and the same practifed by the Indges with such awe and restraint, as that they dare not 30 productions and the same presentably are stages with referre the fame wholly, vp to the Marketo the Emperours Councell. To flew his Sourceigntic ouer the lines of his Subjects, the late Emperours Inter Pathemics

Emperours Counceil. To thew his source; give over the mice of mis-stepless, the same emperous four fam Vafidowich in his walkes or progretics, if he had misliked the face or perion of any min whom he met by the way, or that looked you him, would command his head to be ftrookeoff.

Which was prefently done, and the head call before him.

Which was prefently done, and the head call before him.

Fourthly, for the Sourreigne Appeale, and giuing of Pardons in Criminall Matters to such as are connected, it is wholly at the pleasure and grace of the Emperour. Wherein also the Emprese are commerce, it is writing a cure presume and great of the ampeton we arrem and the amprese that now is, being a woman of great Clemencie, and withall delighting to deale in publike Affaires of the Realme, (the rather to supply the defect of her Husband) doth behaue her less after an absolute manner, giuing out pardon (specially on her birth day and other solemne times) in 40 her owne name, by open Proclamation, without any mention at all of the Emperour. Some there have beene of late of the ancient Nobilitie, that have held divers Provinces by right of Inheritance, with an absolute Authoritie and Iurisdiction over them, to order and determine all matters within their owne Precinct without all Appeale; or controllment of the Emperour. But this was all annulled and wrung cleane from them by Inas Valionich Father to this

Their highest Court of publishe consultation for matter of State, is called the Zabore, that is, the Publishe Assembly, The states and degrees of persons, that are present at their Pasila-

of twenty being all of his Councell. 3. Certayne of the Clergie men, &c. about the same

number. As for Burghers or other to represent the Comminaltie, they have no place there: the

people beeing of no better account with them then as servants or bond-slaves that are to obey,

not to make Lawes, nor to know any thing of publike matters before they are concluded.

The Court of Parliament (called Zabere) is held in this manner. The Emperour caute the

ments, are these in order, 1. The Emperour himselse. 2. Some of his Nobilitie about the number 50

Chap. 8. of holding the Parlia. ments. The States of Parliament,

The order of the furmons to be furmoned fuch of his Nobilitie as himfelfe thinketh meete, being (as was faid) all of his or affembling. Councell : together with the Patriarch, who calleth his Clergie, to wit, the two Metropolites,

the two Archbishops, with such Bishops, Abbots, and Friers as are of best account and reputation among them. When they are all affembled at the Emperours Court, the day is intima-Friday respect. of that day. ted when the Selfion shill beginne. Which commonly is vpon some Friday, for the Religion 69 When the day is come, the Clergie-men assemble before at the time and place appointed,

which is called the Stollie. And when the Emperour commeth attended by his Nobilitie, they arife all, and meete him in an out-roome, following their Patriarch, who I leffeth the Emperour

with his two fore-fingers, laying them on his fore-head, and the fides of his face, and then kiffeth him on the right fide of his breft. So they passe on into their Parliament House, where they fit in this order. The Emperour is enthronized on the one fide of the Chamber, In the next place not farre from him at a small square Table (that giveth roome to twelve persons or thereabouts) fitteth the Patriarch with the Metropolites and Bishops, and certaine of the principall Nobilitie of the Engerours Councell, together with two Diacks or Secretaries (called Danmor diakes) that enact that which passeth. The rest place themselves on benches round a bout the Roome, euery man in his ranke after his degree. Then is there propounded by one of the Secretaries (who representeth the Speaker) the cause of their Assembly, and the principall matto ters that they are to confider of. For to propound Bils what every man thinketh good for the publike benefit (as the manner is in England) the Ruffe Parliament alloweth no such custome. nor liberty to subjects.

The points being opened, the Patriarch with his Clergie-men haue the Prerogatiue to be first Their discourse asked their vote, or opinion, what they thinke of the points propounded by the Secretarie, at Parliament. Whereto they answere in order, according to their degrees, but all in one forme without any Discourse: as having learned their Leffon before, that servet in their turnes at all Parliaments alike, whatfoeuer is propounded. Commonly it is to this effect. That the Emperour and his Conneell are of creat wildome and experience, touching the Policies and publike Affaires of the Realme, and firre better able to indge what is profitable for the Common-wealth, then they are, which attend upon the 20 Service of God only, and matters of Religion. And therefore it may please them to proceed. That inflead of their admise, they will ande them with their Prayers, as their duties and vocations doe require, ore. To this or like effect having made their Answeres every man in his course, vp standeth some Abbot or Frier more bold then the rest (yet appointed before-hand as a matter of forme) and desireth the Emperour it would please his Maj-stie to command to be deliuered wnto them what his Majesties own judgement, and determinate pleasure is, as touching those matters propounded by his Desake.

Whereto is replyed by the faid Secretarie in the Emperours name. That his Highnesse with thole of his Noble Councell, upon good and found advice have found the matters proposed to be very good and necessary for the Common-wealth of his Realme. Notwithstanding, for assmuch as they are Religious em antiquary for toe temmon-treasis of the Actions, two temporations, prosported they are Resignous on meet, and know what is right him Matifice requires their good Opinions, pea, and their Cenfores too, for the approxime or correcting of the faid Propositions. And therfore defireth them again to fleath their minds freely. And if they shall like to give their consents, that then the matters may passe to a full conclusion. Hereunto when the Clergie-men haue giuen their consents (which they vie to doe without any great pauling) they take their leaves with bleffing of the Enperour : who bringeth the Patriarch on his way to faire as the next Roome, and fo returneth to his Seat, till all be made ready for his returne homeward. The Acts that thus are passed by the Zabore or Parliament, the Deisekers or Secretaries draw into a forme of Proclamation, which they fend abroad into enery Prouince, and head Towne of the Realme, to be published there by the Dukes and Diakeis, or Secretaries of those places. The Session of Parliament being fully ended, the Emperour muiteth the Clergiemen to a folemne Dinner. And fo they depart euery man to his home.

The degrees of persons or Estates of Russia (besides the Sourreigne State or Emperour him- Change).

Changes, the Robbits of four forts. Whereof the chiefe of the Robbits and by the Robbits of the Robb for Birth, Authority, and Reuenne are called the Valency Knazer, that is, The exempt or printeged what money Dukes. Thefe held sometime a seuerall lurissischon, and absolute Authoritie within their Pre- it is kept in an cincis, much like vnto the States or Nubles of Germany. But afterwards (referring their Rights under proporvpon composition) shey yeelded themiclues to this Houle of Beala, when it beganne to waxe tion agreeable mightie, and to enlarge it felfe by ouer-marching their Neighbours. Onely they were bound to this State. mignice, that to entangers are so you transcring the Paragraph of Horfe. But the late Emperour I- The Paragraphic SC Man Validomich Father to this Prince, being a man of high (pirit, and fub ill in his kind meaning of the Nobto reduce his Government into a more first to time, began by degrees to clip off their greatnesse, bute and to bring it downe to a lesser proportion: till in the end he made them not onely his Vassals, but his K. lopber, that is, his very Villaines or Bond-flaues. For so they terme and write themfelues in any publike Instrument or private Petition which they make to the Empirour. So that now they hold their Authorities, Lands, Liues, and all at the Émperours pleafure as the rest do.

The meanes and practice whereby hee wrought this to effect against those, and other of the Nobility (lowell as I could note out of the report of his doings) were these, and such like. First, he cash private emulations among them about prerogative of their Titles and Dignities. Wherein hee yied to let on the inferioris, to prefer or equall themselves to those that were accounted to 6c be of the Nobler Houses. Where hee made his advantage of their malice and contentions, the one against the other, by receiving devised matter, and accusations of secret practice and Conspiracies to bee intended against his Person and State. And so having singled out the greatest of them, and cut them off with the good liking of the reft, hee fell at last to open practice, by forcing of the other to yeeld their Rights vnto him.

The faction of

2. Hee divided his subjects into two parts or factions by a generall Schisme. The one part he The laction of Called the Oppression of Selectmen. These were such of the Nobility and Gentry as he took to his owne part, to protect and maintayne green as his faithfull fubice. The other he called Zemsky, or the Commune. The Zemsky contayned the base and vulgar fort, with such Noblemen and Gentlemen as he meant to cut off, as suspected to missike his Government, and to have a meaning to practife against him. Wherein he prouised that the Oppression number and qualitie of Valure, Money, Armour, &c. farre exceeded the other of the Zempskey fide, whom heputtas it were from under his protection: so that if any of them were spoyled or killed by those of the Oppression, (which he accounted of his owne part) there was no amends to bee sought for by way of publike luftice, or by complaint to the Emperour.

The whole number of both parts was orderly registred and kept in a Booke : so that every man knew who was a Zempther man, and who of the Opprefini. And this libertie of the one part to spoile and kill the other without any helpe of Magistrate, or Law (that continued feven yeeres) enriched that fide, and the Emperours Treasury, and wrought that withall which bee intended by this practile, viz. to take out of the way such of the Nobilitie, as himselfe mishked. whereof were flame within one weeke to the number of three hundred within the Citie of

This mischieuous practice of making a generall Schisme, and publike division among the subjects of his whole Realme, proceedeed (as should seeme) from an extreame doube, and defperate feare, which he had conceived of most of his Nobilitie, and Gentlemen of his Realme, 20 in his Wars with the Poloman and Chrime Tartar. What time he grew into a vehement suspition (conceined of the ill successe of his Affaires) that they practised Treason with the Polonian and Chrim. Whereupon he executed fome, and deuised this way to be rid of the reft.

a. Hauing thus pulled them and seased all their Inheritance, Lands, Priviledges, &c. Sue some very small part which hee left to their name, hee gaue them other Landsof the tenour of Pomestnoy (as they call it) that are held at the Emperour's pleasure, lying far of in another Countrey, and to remoued them into other of his Provinces, where they might have neyther favour, nor authority, not being Natiue nor well knowne there. So that now thefe of the chiefe Nobility (called Vdeiney Knazey) are equalled with the reft : faue that in the opinion and favour of the people they are of more account, and keepe still the Prerogative of their place in all their to

Their practice to keepe downe these Houses from rifing againe and recourring their dignities are these, and such like. First, many of their Heires are kept vnmarried perforce, that the stocke may dye with them. Some are fent into Siberia, Cazan and Afracan, vnder pretence of fervice, and there either made away, or elfe fast clapped vp. Some are put into Abbeves, and sheare themselues Friers by pretence of a Vow to be made voluntary, and of their owne accord, but indeed forced vnto it by feare, vpon some pretenced crime objected against them. Where they are so guarded by some of speciall trust, and the Couent it selfe (vpon whose head it standeth that they make no escape) as that they have no hope but to end their lives there. Of this kind there are many of very great Nobilitie. These and such like wayes begunne by the Emperour Inan Va- 40 filomet are full practifed by the Godonoes, who being advanced by the Marriage of the Empresse their Kinswoman, rule both the Emperour, and his Realme (specially Borrss Federowich Godones, Brother to the Empresse) and endeauour by all meanes to cut off, or keepe downe all of the best and ancientest Nobilitie. Whereof divers already they have taken away, whom they thought likeliest to make head against them and to hinder their purpose, as Knez. Andreas Guraken Bulgatkowe, a man of great birth and authoritie in the Countrey. The like they have done with Peter Gollauni (whom they put into a Dungeon where hee ended his life) with Knez Vafilee Vrywich Golleoben, with Andrien Inanowich Suskey accounted among them for a man of a great wiledome. So this last yeere was killed in a Monastery (whither they had thrust him) one Knez Inan Petrowich Surkey a man of great valour, and feruice in that Countrey : who about five or fixe yeeres 10 fince, bare out the liege of the Citie Vobsko, made by Stephan Batore King of Polonia, with one hundred thousand men, and repulsed him very valiantly, with great honour to himselfe, and his Countrey, and difgrace to the Polonian. Also Micheta Romanowich Vncle to the Emperour by the Mothers fide, was supposed to hauedyed of Poylon, or some like practice.

Names of the

The Names of these families of greatest Nobilitie are these in their order. The first is of Knez les of the Ruffe Volodemer, which restethat this time in one Daughter a widow, and without Children (mentioned before) sometime wife to Hartock Magnus Brother to the King of Denmarke, now closed within a Nunnerie. The second Knez Methelosker, thrust into a Frierie, and his onely Sonne kept from marriage, to decay the houle. The third Glimsley. But one left of his houle, and hee owithout children faue one Daughter. The fourth Suckey, whereof there are foure Brethren young men, and vnmarryedall. The fifth Hubetskey. Of this House are four e living. The fixth Bulgaby, now called Guletcher house, whereof are fine lining, but youths all. The seventh Vorallins. key. Two left of that flocke. The eighth Odgoskey, two. The ninth Tellerskey, one. The tenth Taytone, three. Thefe are the Names of the chiefe Families, called Vdetney Knazy: that in effect

have loft all now, faue the very name it felfe, and favour of the people, which is like one day to restore them againe, if any be left.

The second degree of Nobilitie is of the Boiarens. These are such as the Emperous honoureth. The second (befides their Nobilitie) with the title of Counfellers. The revenue of thefe two force of their degree of No-Nobles that rifeth out of their Land affigned them by the Emperour, and held at his pleafing billing. (for of their owne Inheritance there is little left them, as was fayd before) is about a thousand Marcks a yeere : befides Pension which they receive of the Emperour for their fertice in his Warres, to the fumme of feuen hundred Rubbels a yeere, and none about that fumme.

But in this number the Lord Borris Federowich Godenoe is not to bee reckoned, that is like a Lord Borris af-Transcendent, and in no fach predicament with the rest, being the Emperours Brother in law, his ter this Empe Protector for direction, for Command and authoritie Emperour of Ruffig, His yeersty, revenue rout. in Land and Pension, amounteth to the summe of 93700. Rubbels and more, as appeareth by the particulars. Hee hath of inheritance (which himfelte hath augmented in Vafma Dorogobofe, fixe thousand Rubbels a yeere. For his office of Connick, or Master of the Horse twelve thousand Rubbels or Marcks, raised out of the Conastine Sloboday, or the liberties pertayning to that Office. which are certayne Lands and Townes neere about the Mosco. Besides, all the meadow and pasture ground on both sides the banke of the River Moske, thirtie verit vp the streams, and fore tie verif downwards. For his pension of the Emperour (besides the other for his Office) Efteene thousand Rubbels. Out of the Province or Shire of Wagha, there is given him for a negaliar exempted out of the Chesfird of Pofolskey, two and thirtie thouland Rubbels, belies a rent of

20 Furres. Out of Rezen and Sener, (another peculiar) thirtie thousand Rubbels. Out of Operand Turiock another exempt place eight thousand Rubbels. For rent of Barh-fromes and Bathinghouses without the walk of Make, fifteene hundred Rubbels. Befides his Powell, or Lands, which hee holdeth at the Emperours pleature, which farre exceedeth the proportion of land al-

lotted to the rest of the Nobilitie.

One other there is of the house of Glinker, that dispendeth in Land and Pension about fortie thousand Rubbels veerely. Which hee is suffered to enjoy, because he hath marryed Borris his wives Sifter, being himfelse very simple and almost a naturall. The ordering of him and his Lands are committed to Borris.

In the third ranke are the Voyaudey, or fich Nobles assire, or have beene Generals in the Em- The third for perours warres. Which deliver the honour of their Tiele to their posterities also : who take their of Nobilitie, place about the other Dukes and Nobles, that are not of the two former forts, viz., of the Vdel-

mey knazer, nor of the Boiarens.

These three degrees of their Nobilitie, (to wit) the Vollag knaces, the Boiarens, and the Voisnader, have the addition of Vicb, put vnto their inname, as Apris Federowill. &c. which is a Title Vich. note of Honour that the rest may not vierpe. And in sais it bee not added in the paming of them, they may fue the Bestebest or penaltie of dispanous voon them, that otherwise shall tearme them.

The fourth and lowest degree of Nebilitie with them, is of such as beare the name of Kassey. or Dukes, but come of the younger Brothers of those chiefe Houses, through many discents, and haue no inheritance of their owne, faue the bare name agtitle of Duke onely. For their order is to deliner their names and titles of their Dignities over to all their Children alike, whatforuer else they leave them. So that the Sonnes of a Voisnodey or Generall in the field, are called Vois moder, though they never faw the field, and the Sonnes of a Knee or Duke, are called Kneed, though they have not one groat of inheritance or lawly hood to maintayne themselves wiehalf. Of this fort there are fo many, that the plentie maketh them cheape . In that you hall fee Dukes glad to ferue a meane man for fine or fixe Rubbels or Marcks a yeare, and marchey will fland highly upon their Beficheft or reputation of their Honours. And their are their fenerall den grees of Nobilitie.

rees of Nobilitie.

The fecond degree of persons, is of their Sina Beiarskey, or the sonnes of Gentlemen Medicall- The second o are preferred, and hold that Name by their fermice in the Emperous warres by the Send degree of perdiers by their very stocke and birth. To which order are referred their Dyacks or Sauttaries, fons. that leme the Emperour in every head Towne, being joyned in Committee with the Dukes of that place.

at place. The last are their Commons, whom they call Monsteet. In which gumber they notion their Thatbindee. Merchants, and their common Artificers, The very lowest and basett fort of this kinde (which green are held in no degree) are their Countrey people, whom they call Christianeis. Of the Sina Boiarskey (which are all Souldiers) were are to fee in the description of their Forces, and Militaric prouifions. Concerning their Marfiche, what their compittion and behaviour is, in the Title or 60 Chapter Of the Common people. Harry that the land a story of the figure new

THe whole Countrey of Raffie (as was fayd before) is divided into fours parts, which they Orthe Go-1 call Chetfirds, or Tetrarchies. Euery Chetfird contaymeth divers Shires, and is ampeked to a vernment of feuerall Office, whereof it takes the name. The first Chefferd or Tetraschie, beareth the name of their Proun-

Possey Cheffed, or the Invisibilities of the effice of Ambussages, and at this time is wider the chiefe Secretarie and officer of the Ambussages, called Andrew Schuleslone. The standing see or stipend that hee receiveth yeerely of the Emperour for this service, is one hundred Rubbels or Marcks.

nat nee receivern yeeren yer use simperous or on the Research of the Research or high The recond is cased the agreement warping, account to Bufflie Shalealene, Brother to Contable. At this time is petusymously returned on Citics to Language Commanders, percenter to the Chaircellour, but it is executed by one Zapon Abramone. His pension is an hundred Rub-

ils yeerery. The third is the Cheeferd of Pomestines, as pertayning to that Office. This keepeth a Register of The third is the Company of company, as pressying the many Gentlemen and others, gracthout all Lands given by the Emperour for fertiles to his Noblemen, Gentlemen and others, gracthout all Lands guen by the Emperous for statute of the Professor at this time is called Eleanor Wellington, His 10

pend is the number of the party as yours.

The fourth is called Coffanker Dworess, as being appropriate to the Office that hath the inrif-The fourth is cauca a spanney awarer, as only appropriate to the other Townes lying you the Pal-diction of the Kingdomes of Casan and Afracan, with the other Townes lying you the Pal-gas, now ordered by one Drachine Pentelessa, a man of very speciall account among them, for his wisedome and promptnesse in matters of policie. His pension is one hundred and fitte Rub.

bets a yeare.

From these Chefinds or Tetrarchies is exempted the Emperours inheritance or Voction (as they call it) for that it perrayned from ancient time to the House of Beals, which is the Graame of the Imperiall bloud. This flandeth of fixe and thirtie Townes with their bounds or Territories, Imperiant Buons. Ann James of Learning and Annual Medical Residence divers peculiar Iuridictions, which are likewife deducted out of those Cheffrid, as the 20 Benots during pecunian manufactions, which are marked bedoners) and fuch like.

These are the chiefe Governours or Officers of the Provinces, not resident at their charges.

broad, but attending the Emperour whither focuer hee goeth, and carrying their Offices about with them; which for the most part they hold at Merke, as the Emperous chiefe feate.

The parts and practice of these foure Offices, is to receive all Complaints and Actions whatfocuer, that are brought out of their feuerall Cheffred and Quarters, and to informe them to the Emperours Councell. Likewise to send direction agains to those that are under them, in their Gayd Prouinces, for all matters given in charge by the Emperour and his Councell, to bee done or put in execution within their Precincts.

For the ordering of every particular Province of thefe four (beffred, there is appointed one 10 of the Dukes, which were reckoned before in the lowest degree of their Nobilitie, which are resident in the head Townes of the sayd Prouinces. Whereof every one bath joyned with him in Commission a Drack or Secretarie to assist him or rather to direct him. For in the executing of their Commission, the Direct doth all.

The Commif-The parts of their Commission are thele in effect. First, to heare and determine in all civil and pure of their Precine. To which purpose they have vider them certayne Officers, as Galony Scares or Coroners, who besides the cryal of felle Murders; are to attach Fellons and Dukes or Prethe Sondie or vnder Iustices, who themselves also may heare and determine in all matters of the fame nature, among the Countrey people of their owne Wards or Bayliwickes : but to that in remerators, among one commers people on their owner which or anythwickes : our to maxim cale either partie difficut, they may appeale, and goe further to the Doke and Dome that refide 40 within the head Towne. From whom all o they may remoone the mixter to the higher Court at Mostly of the Emperous Council, where I ye all appeales. They have under them allo

Seenally in all criminal matters, as Theft, Murder, Treafon, &c. they have authoritie to apprehend, to examine and to imprison the materiate factor, and to having received perfect evidence and imformation of the cause, they are to fend it ready drawne and orderly digested up to the Mosto, to the Officer of the Cheffird, whereunto that Province is annexed ; by whom it is referred and propounded to the Emperous Councell. But to determine in any matter criminall, or to doe execution upon the partie offending, is more then their Commission will allow T them todoe.

Things, if there bee any publike service to be done within that Province, (as the publishing of any haw, or common order, by way of Proclamation, collecting of taxes and impositions for the Emperor, mustering of Souldiers, and feeding them forth at the day, and to the place assigned by the Emperour or his Councell) all these and such like pertayne to their charge.

Thefe Dukes and Dyacks are appointed to their place by the Emperour himselfe, and are changed ordinarily at enery yeeres end, except upon some special liking or sute, the time bee them valued opposite of the proposition of the medical proposition of the m people where they governe, being neither borne, nor brought vp among them, nor yet having inheritance of their owne there, or elfe where. Onely of the Emperour they have for that fernice an hundred Marcks a yeere, hee that hath most, some fiftie, some bue thirtie. Which ma- 60 keth them more fulpected and odious to the people, because being so bare, and comming fresh and hungry eyour being so bare, and comming fresh and hungry eyour bein lightly energy years, they racke and spoyle them without due regard of Inflice or Conficience. Which is eafily tollerated by the chiefe Officers of the Cheffirds, to the end they may spoyle them againe, and haue a better bootie when they call them to account:

which commonly they doe at the end of their feruice, making an advantage of their injustice and oppression ouer the poore people. There are few of them but they come to the Padker or Whip when their time is ended, which themselves for the most part doe make account of. And therefore they furnish themselves with all the spoyle they can for the time of their Government, that they may have for both turnes, as well for the Emperour and Lord of the Chetfird, as to referue some good part for themselues.

They that are appointed to gouerne abroad, are men of this qualitie: faue that in the foure border Townes that are of greatest importance, are set men of more speciall valour and trust two in euery Towne. Whereof one is euer of the Emperours privile Counfell. These foure border 10 Townes are, Smolensko, Vobsko, Nonogrod, and Cazan, whereof three lie towards the Polonian and Sweden, one bordereth farre off voon the Chrim Tartar. These have larger commission then the other Dukes of the Prouinces that I spake of before, and may doe execution in criminall matters. Which is thought behoofful for the Common-wealth : for incident occasions that may happen voon the borders that are farre off, and may not flay for direction, about every occurrent and particular matter from the Emperour and his Counfell. They are changed every yeere (except as before) and have for their (tipend 700. Rubbels a yeere he that hath most : some have but 400. Many of these places that are of greatest importance, and almost the whole Countrey is managed at this time, by the Godonoes and their Clients.

The Citie of Moske (that is the Emperours Seat) is governed altogether by the Emperours 20 Counsell. All matters there both civill and criminall, are heard and determined in the severall Courts, held by some of the faid Counsell, that reside there all the yeere long,

Onely for their ordinary matters (as Buildings, Reparations, keeping of their Streets decent The governand cleane, Collections, leaving of Taxes, Impositions and such like) are appointed, two Gen- ment of Mesics. tlemen, and two Dyacks or Secretaries, who hold a Court together for the ordering of fuch matters. This is called the Zempskey house. If any Townes-man suspect his servant of these or like matter, hither he may bring him to have him examined vpon the Padker, or other torture. Befides these two Gentlemen, and Secretaries that order the whole Citie . there are Starusts or Aldermen for every severall Companie. The Alderman hath his Society or Constable, and the Constable hath certaine Decetskess or Decurions under him, which have the overlight of 30 ten housholds a piece, whereby every diforder is sooner spyed, and the common service hath the quicker dispatch. The whole number of Citizens poore and rich are reduced into Companies. The chiefe Officers (as the Dyacks and Gentlemen) are appointed by the Emperour himfelfe, the Starait by the Gentlemen and Dyacks, the Saskey by the Starait or Alderman, and the Decetskoyes by the Constables.

This manner of government of their Provinces and Townes, if it were as well fee for the giuing of iuftice indifferently to all fores, as it is to preuent innovations, by keeping of the Nobility within order, and the Commons in fubication, it might feeme in that kind to be no bad nor vnpolitike way, for the contayning of to large a Common-wealth, of that breadth and length as the Kingdome of Ruffae. But the opprefices and flauery is seepen, and so great, that length as the Kingdome of Ruffae. But the opprefices and flauery is seepen, and so great, that 40 a man would maruell, how the Nobilitie and People should suffer themselves to be brought wnder it, while they had any meanes to avoide and repulse it : or being so strengthned as it is at this present, how the Emperours themselves can be content to practise the same, with so open multice and oppretion of their Subiedla, being themselves of a Christian profession: By this Anhardmatic appeareth how hard a matter it were to alter the state of the 2016 Government, as now terto alter the state of the 2016 Government, as now terto alter the state of the 2016 Government, as now terto alter the state of the 2016 Government, as now terto alter the state of the 2016 Government, as now terto alter the state of the 2016 Government, as now terto alter the state of the 2016 Government.

He Emperours of Ruffia give the name of Counfellour to divers of their chiefe Nobilitie, (hap. 11. rather for honours take, then for any vie they make of them about their matters of State. Of the Empa-Thefe are called Boiarene, without any addition, and may be called , Compelloure at large. For rours Countel. The are care to a more several control any analysis and may be control or a few problems of the problems of th ning to the State) have the addition of Dummer, and are named Dummer beiaren, or Lords of the Counfell, their Office or Sitting Boarfine damma.

Their names at this prefent are these in their order. First , Knez Freder leanowich Methisof- The aumber key. 2. Knez luan Michailsmich Glunkey. 3. Knez Vafilie luanomich Sunkey Scopin. (These and nithering three are accounted to be of greater birth then wifedome, taken in (as may feeme) for that end, the Connectrather to furnish the place with their honours and presence, then with their advice or counsell.) 4. Knez Vafilie Inanowich Sauley, thought to be more wife then the other of his name. 5. Knez Feeder Michailewich. 6. Knez Michaia Romanowich Trombetiker. 7. Knez Timophey Roma-

60 nowich Trombetskoj. 8. Kneg. Andriew Gregoriwich Curahine. 9. Knez. Demetrie Iuanovich Forestime. 10. Knez Feoder Inanovich Ferestine. 11. Bodan Juanovich Sabarone. 12. Knez Inan Vasilowich. 13. Knez Feoder Demetrimich Shestinone. 14. Knez Feoder Michailowich Troyconione. 15. Inan Buterlyney. 16. Demetrie luanowich Godonoe. 17. Borrise Federowich Godonoe, brother to the Empresse. 18. Stephen Vasilowich Godonoe. 19 Gregorie Vasilowich Godonoe. 20. luan

fion of the

fidents of



Vafilowich Gadenot. 21. Feader Sheremitous. 22. Andrew Petrowich Cleftenina. 23. Ignam Valionich Castonet. 21. Comer Specemiene. 22. Common Personich Taylone. 24. Romain Mebailonich Pena. 25. Demenfoy Juanomich Chremifen. Tetronico I atticue, 24. Acmain mandanon o como 33. Vafite Shalealme, 25. Eta. 26. Remain Vafitenich Alferione, 27. Andriew Shalealme, 28. Eta. zar Wellufgin. 30. Drezbeen Penteleoue. 31. Zapon Abramoue.

Foure Secre-

The foure laft of these are called Dunmay detakey or Lord-Secretaries. These are all of the Em-The route last of these are taken to minory managers as considerables. I melecate all or the Emperours privile Counfell, though but few of them are called to any confultation, for thet all mateperious printe counters, rinoign over the perious following Godone brother to the Emprelle, ters are acuticu and determined your pleaseth him to call. If they come, they are rather to with some nue or size more whom is present themselves. The matters occurrent which are heare, then to giuc countell, and one to centering the interface and the form are of State done within the Realme, are informed them at their fittings by the Lords of the foure to or state done within the exemite, are married in the Chapter concerning the Gourra-Chestfirds, or Tetrarchies. Whereof mention is made in the Chapter concerning the Gourra-Coefficial of 1 etracules. Who bring in all fuch Letters as they recine from the Dukes Dukes, ment or their Frounces, who using in an age of the Citie and Caliles pertayning to their feuerall Quittie or Chetfird, with other advertisements, and informe the Counsell of them.

The like is done by the chiefe Officer of euery feuerall Office of Record : who may come into the Counfell-chambet, and informe them, as occasion incident to his Office doth require. Beto the Commence and informed by the way of fupplilades matters of state, they comment on many product they enterrayne and determine, as the Caule or cation in very great numbers. we need to the Offices whereto they pertayne by common meanes can procure fauour. Some they tend to the Offices whereto they pertayne by common meanes can procure raugur. Source they are a source are Mondayes, Wedneldayes, and Fri. 20 dayes. Their time of meeting is commonly feuen of the clocke in the morning. If there bee cayes, men time of menting a distribution on fome other day, they have warning by the Clerke of of the Counfell, called Dwofey Bullew, who receiveth order from the Rofered, or High Constable of the Realme, to call them together at the time appointed.

The Sreward Receiver of

the Crowne-

land Rents.

Chap. 11.

Of the receiving of Customes, and other Rents belonging to the Crowne, there are appoint ted divers Vnder-officers, which deliver over the same into the head I reasure. The tartis, rors Cuttoms the Office of Dwoerisms or Steward of the boulfold. The second is, the Office of the Chessista. which I comprehend under one, though it be divided into foure severall parts, as was faid be-The Offices of fore. The third is called, Bulba Prechode; or the great Income.

As touching the first, which is the Office of the Steward, it receiveth all the Rents of the Emperours Inheritance, or Crowne-land, which they call, Vockin. The Voction or Crown-land contayneth in it fixe and thirtie Townes with the Territories or Hundreds belonging with them, Whereof the chiefe that yeeld the greatest Rents are these: Alexandrisea, Corelika, Osfer, Sieboday, Danielska, Moifalskoy, Chara, Samerska, Stravarouse, Bransone, &c. The Inhabitants or Tenants of these and the other Townes, pay some Rent money, some other Rent duties (called Obrites) as certaine Chesfirds or measures of Graine, Wilest, Rye, Barley, Oats, &c. or of other victuall, as Oxen, Sheepe, Swannes, Geefe, Hares, Hennes, wilde Fowle, Fish, Hay, Wood, Honey, &c. Some are bound to lowe for the Emperours prouifion certaine acres of ground, and to make the Corne ready for his vie: having for it an allowance of certaine acres of ground for 40

This prouision for the houshold, specially of Graine served in by the Tenants, is a great deale more then is fpent in his boule, or in other allowance ferued out in livery, or for the Emperous honour, called Schalonaney. for which wie there is bestowed very much, both in Graine and other Victuall. This furplus of prominion is fold by the Steward to the best hand, and runneth

In the time of Inam Validanich, father to this Emperour (who kept a more Princely and bountifull house then the Emperour now doth) this overplus of Graine, and other incomes into the Stewards Office, yeelded to his Treasurie not past 60000. Rubbels yeerely, but rifeth now by good husbanding of the Steward Gregory Vasilowich Godbinos, to 230000. Rubbels a yeere. And 50 this by the meanes of the Empresse, and her kindred, specially (Borrie Federarich Godenoe) that account it all their owne that runneth into the Empereirs Treature. Much of this furplulage that rifeth out of the Rent prouision, is employed to the payment of the wages of his houshold Officers, which are very many attending at home, and purueying abroad.

The fecond Office of Receit, is called the Cheffred; (being druided into foure feuerall parts, as before was faid) hath-foure head Officers: which besides the ordering and government of the Shires contayned within their feuerall Cheffed, have this alfo as a part of their Office, to receine the Taple and Podes belonging to the Emperour, that rifeth out of the foure Cheffed or Quarters. The Tagla is a yeerly Rent or Imposition raised upon every wife or measure of Graine, that groweth within the Land, gathered by fworre men, and brought into the Office. The 60 Was contayneth fixtie Chefferds. Every Chefferd is three Bushels English, or little less. The Pode is an ordinary Rent of money imposed vpon every Soake, or Hundred within the whole

This Tagle and Podes bring in yeerely to the Offices of the Cherfirds agreat fumme of money:

as may appeare by the particulars heere fet downe. The Towne and Proninge of Voliko pay veerely for Tagla and Podat about 18000. Rubbels. Nousgrod 3,000. Rubbels. Teripocke and Offer 8000, Rubbels. Razan 30000. Rubbels. Morum 12000. Rubbels. Colmigroe and Durna 8000. Rubbels. Vologda 12000. Rubbels. Cazan 18000. Rubbels. Wilma 20000. Rubbles. Rostone 50000. Rubbels. The Citie of Maske 40000. Rubbels. Sibierskey 20000. Rubbels. Caffrome 12000. Rubbels. The totall amounteth to 400000. Rubbels, or Markes 2 years, which

is brought in yeerely the first of September, that is reckoned by them the first day of the yeere. Yeere be ins The third (that is called the Bullba Prechod, or great Income) receiveth all the Customes that her. are gathered out of all the principall Townes and Cities within the whole Realme. Befides the 1 he Office of

to fees and other duries which rife out of divers smaller Offices, which are all brought into this Builba Presbod Office of Bullha Preched. The Townes of most trade, that doe yeeld greatest Custome, are or great Inthese here set downe. Mosko, Smolensko, Vobska, Nonogrod Velica, Steararonse, Tarfbooke, Ot. come. fer, Taufane, Caftrome, Nefna Nonogred, Cazan, Vologda, This Custome out of the areas Townes is therefore more certaine, and easie to bee reckoned, because it is set and rated precise-Iv what they shall pay for the Custome of the yeere. Which needs must bee payd into the faid Office, though they receive not fo much. If it fall out to be more, it runneth all into the Emmerours advantage.

The Cultome at Mosko for every yeere, is 1 2000. Rubbels. The Cultome of Smolensko 8000. The Emperors Volike 12000. Rubbels. Nouograd velica 6000. Rubbels. Strararanse by Salt and other commo-20 dities 18000. Rubbels. Torflock 800. Rubbels. Osfer 700. Rubbels. Tarnflane 1200. Rubbels. Castrome 1800. Rubbels. Nesna Newsored 7000. Rubbels. Cazas 11000. Rubbels. Vologda 2000. Rubbels. The Custome of the rest that are Townes of trade, is sometimes more, fometimes leffe, as their trafficke and dealings with commodities to and fro , falleth out for

This may bee faid for certaine, that the three Tables of Receits belonging to this Office of The whole re-Bullha Prechod, when they receive leaft, account for thus much , we. The first table , 16000. ceitef the Bul-Rubbels. The second table , 90000. Rubbels. The third 70000. Rubbels. So that there com- fra Preceder meth into the Office of Bullha Prechod, at the least reckoning (as appeareth by their Bookes of great Income, Customes) out of these and other Townes, and maketh the summe of 340000. Rubbles a yeere. 20 Befides this Custome out of the Townes of trade, there is received by this Office of Bullba Pre-

chod, the yeerely Rent of the common Bath-floues, and Cabacks or drinking houses, which pertavne to the Emperour. Which (though it be vncertaine for the inft fumme, yet because it is certaine, and an ordinary matter, that the Ruffe will bathe himselfe as well within as withour) yeeldeth a large Rent to the Emperours Treaturie.

There is belides , a certaine Mulct or Penaltie that groweth to the Emperour out of every Rengon of Indgement or Sentence, that paffeth in any of his Courts of Record in all Civill matters. This the Indiciall Penaltie or Mulci is twentie Dingor or Pence vpon every Rubbel or Marke, and fo ten in the Office. hundred. Which is payd by the parcie that is conuict by Law. He hath besides for every name contayned in the Writs that paffe out of thele Courts, fine Alteens. An Alteens is fine pence 40 feeling, or thereabouts. This is made good out of the Office, whence the Writ is taken forth.

Thence it goeth to the Office that keepeth the leffer Seale, where it payeth as much more to the Emperours vie. This rifeth commonly to three thousand Rubbels a yeere, or thereabouts. Farther also out of the Office of Roilbonia, where all felonies are tryed, is received for the Emperour the halfe part of Felons goods, the other halfe goeth the one part to the Informer, the other to the Officers. All this is brought into the Office of Bullha Preched, or Great insome. Besides the overplus

or remainder that is faued out of the Land-rents allotted to divers other Offices: as namely, to the Office called Roferade, which hath Lands and Rents affigned vnto it to pay the yeerely falaries of the Souldiers, or Horsemen, that are kept still in pay. Which in time of peace, when they reft at home not employed in any feruice, is commonly cut off and payd them by halfes, 50 fometimes nor the halfe: fo that the remainder out of the Roferade Office that is layd into the Emperours treasurie, commeth for the most part enery yeere to 250000. Rubbels.

In like fort (though not fo much) is brought in the furplus out of the Strelletskoy Offices which hath proper Lands for the payment of the Strelfey men or Gunners, as well those at Moske, that are of the Emperors Guard (12000, in ordinary) as on the borders, and other garrifon Towns and Castles, Likewise out of the Office of Prechase, Shistuey Newsbey, which hath set allowance of Lands to maintayne the forraine mercenary Souldiers, as. Foles, Sweadens, Dutches, Scots, &c. So out of the Office of Pulbarskey, (which hath Lands and Rents allowed for the prouition of munition, great Ordnance, Powder, Shot, Saltpeter, Brimstone, Lead, and such like) there is 60 left somewhat at the yeeres end, that runneth into the Treaturie. All these bring into the Office of Bullha Preched that which remayneth in their hand at the yeeres end. Whence it is delivered into the Emperours Treasurie. So that the whole summe that groweth to this Office of Bullha Prechod, or the great Income (as appeareth by the Bookes of the laid Office) amounteth to

800000. Rubbels a yeere, or thereabouts.

All

recainre house file of Mosto.

All these Offices, to wit, the Office of the Steward, the foure Chesfirds, and the Bullea Prechad deliuer in their receipts to the head treasurie, that lyeth within the Emperours house or Caffle within his Ca. at the Moske. Where lye all his Moneys, Iewels, Crownes, Scepters, Plate, and fuch like, the Chefts, Hutches, and Bags being figured by the Emperours themselues with their ownessele. Though at this time the L. Borris Federowich Godonoe, his feale and ouer-fight supplieth for the Emperour, as in all other things. The under Officer at this time is one Stepan Vafilonich Godone. Coufin germane to the faid Borris, who hath two Clerkes allowed to ferue vocethimin the Office.

The fum of the Emperors rent money.

The furn that 1. Out of the Stewards Office about the expence of his Sum 1430000. Ruh. groweth to the bouse 23000. Rubbels.
Emperors Trea2. Out of the foure Chetsirds for Soake and Head charges for his house to fury in money \ money, 400000. Rubbels. and ordinary falleries oncly, for energy 3, Out of the Builha Piccod Office, or great Income of his Souldiers other yeere. for Cuitome and other Rents, 800000, Rubbels. wife discharged.

But besides this reuenue that is paid all in money to the Emperors treasurie, he receiveth yeerely in Furres, and other duties to a great value out of Siberia, Pechora, Permia, and other places, which are fold or bartred away for other forraine commodities to the Turkilo, Perfian. Armenian, Georgian and Bougharian Merchants, that trade with n his Countries, besides others of Christendome, What it maketh in the whole (though the value cannot bee fet downe precifely, as being a thing cafuall as the commoditie may be got) it may be gheffed by that which an was gathered the laft yeere out of Siberia for the Emperours Custome, vz. 466. Timber of Sables, fiue Timber of Martrones, 180. blacke Foxes, befides other commedities.

To these may be added their seazures, and confiscations ypon such as are in displeasure, which rifeth to a great furmine, besides other their extaordinary Impositions, and exactions done vpon their Officers, Monafteries, &c.not for any apparant neceffitie, or vie of the Prince, or Common. wealth, but of will and custome : yet with some pretence of policie. To this purpose this byword was vied by the late Emperout Inan Vafilowich : That his people were like to his beard. The oftner fhanen, the thicker it would grow. Or like fheepe, that must needs bee fhorne once a yeere at the leaft : to keepe them from being over-laden with their wooll,

Vnderftand. thefe politike courses of the times when the Agrhor writ. fro t among

MEanes feruing to which purpose were to preuent no extortions, exactions, or briberies whatfoeuer, done upon the Commons by their Dukes, Diacks, or other Officers in their Provinces : but to fuffer them to goe on till their time be expired, and to fucke themselves full. Then to call them to the Pranculo (or whip) for their behaulour, and to beat out of them all, Gods chaffile- or the most part of the bootie, (as the Hony from the Bee) which they have wrung from the ment hath fince Commons, and to turne it into the Emperours Treasurie, but neuer any thing backe againeto the right owners, how great or euident soeuer the injurie be. To this end the needle Dukes, and Diacks, that are fent into their Provinces, ferue the turne very well, being changed fo often/to wit) once a yeere : where in respect of their owne, and the qualitie of the people (as before was faid) they might be continued for some longertime, without all feare of innovation. For com- 40 ming fill fresh woon the Commons, they sucke more eagerly: like Tiberius the Emperours Flies, that came new fill voon an old fore. To whom he was wont to compare his Prators, and other Prouinciall Officers.

- 2. Yetthey did make of these Officers (that have robbed their people) sometimes a publike example, if any be more notorious then the reft : the Emperour thus feeming to millike the oppressions done to his people, and transferring the fault to his ill Officers. As among divers other, was done by the late Emperor Inan Vafilowich to a Diacke in one of his Provinces : that (befides many other extortions and briberies) had taken a goole readic dreft full of mony. The man was brought to the Market-place in Mosko. The Emperour himselfe present made an Oration. Thefe, good people, are they that would eate you up like bread, or . Then asked he his Po- 50 lachies or Executioners, who could cut vp a Goole, and commanded one of them first to cut off his legs about the midft of the shin, then the armes about his elbowes (asking him still if Gooftflesh were good meat) in the end to chop off his head : that hee might have the right fashion of a Goofe readie dreffed.
- 3. They make an open shew of want, when any great Taxe or Imposition is towards. As was done by this Emperour Theodore Inanomich, by the aduice of some about him at the beginning of his raigne : when being left very rich (as was thought) by his father, he fold most of his Plate, and framped some into Coyne: that he might seeme to want money. Whereupon presently out came a Taxation.
- 4. They fuffer their subiects to give freely to the Monasteries (which for their superfittion 60 very many doe, specially in their last Wills) and to lay vp their money and substance in them, to keepe it more fafe. Which all is permitted them without any restraint or prouiso, as was and is in some Countries of Christendome. Whereby their Monafteries grow to exceeding great wealth. This they doe to have the money of the Realme better flored together, and more rea-

die for their hand, when they lift to take it. Which many times is done without any noyfe the Friers being content rather to part from somewhat (as the increase groweth) then to lose all at once. Which they were made to doubt of in the other Emperours dayes.

To this end Inan Vafilowich late Emperor vied a very Brange practife, that few Princes would A ftrange prachave done in their greatest extremities. Heerefigned his Kingdome to one Velica Knez Simeon, tice to get methe Emperours sonne of Cazan; as though hee meant to draw himselfe from all publike doings ney. to a quiet private life. To wards the end of the veere, he caused this new King to call in all Charters granted to Bishoprickes, and Monasteries, which they had enjoyed many hundred yeeres before. Which were all cancelled. This done (as in diffike of the fact & of the mif-government

of the new King) hee refumed his Scepter, and so was content (as in faugur to the Church and Religious men) that they should renew their Charters, and take them of himselfe : reserving and annexing to the Crowne fo much of their lands, as himfelfe thought good.

By this practice he wrung from the Bishoprickes and Monasteries (pesides the lands which he annexed to the Crowne) an huge maffe of money. From some fortie, from some fiftie, from some an hundred thousand Rubbels. And this as well for the increase of his Treasury, as to shate the ill opinion of his hard gouernment, by a shew of worse in another man. Wherein his ftrange spirit is to be noted : that being hated of his subjects (as himselfe knew well enough) ver should venture such a practice to set another in his saddle, that might have rid away with his horse, while himselfe walked by on foot.

5. They fend their Meffengers into the Prouinces or Shires, where the special commodities of their Countrey grow, as Furres, Wax, Hony, &c. There to foreffall and ingroffe formetime one whole commoditie, fometime two or more, taking them at finall prices what themselves lift, and felling them againe at an excessive rate to their owne Merchants, and to Merchants itrangers. If they refuse to buy them, then to force them voto it. The like is done when any commoditie either natiue or forraine (as Cloth of Gold, Broad-cloth, &c.) thus engroffed by the Emperour, and received into his treatury happeneth to decay, or marre by long lying, or fome other cafualtie. Which is forced vpon the Merchants to be bought by them at the Emperours price, whether they will or no. This last yeere of 1589. was engroffed all the Wax of the Countrey : fo that none might deale with that commoditie, but the Emperour onely,

30 6. To take up and engroffe in like fort sometime forraine commodities (as Silkes, Cloth. Lead. Pearle, &c. brought into his Realme by Turkifb Merchants, Armenians, Bongbarians, Poles. English, and other. And then to force his Merchants to buy them of his Officers at his owne price.

7. They make a Monopoly for the time of such commodities as are paid him for Rent, or Custome, and to inhance the price of them, as Furres, Corne, Wood, &c. What sime none must fell of the same kinde of commoditie, till the Emperours be all fold. By this meanes he maketh of his Rent, Corne, and other prouision of victuall (as before was faid) about 200000. Rubbels or Markes a yeere. Of his Rent, Wood, Hay, &c. 30000. Rubbels, or thereabouts.

- 8. In enery great Towne of his Realme hee hath a Caback or other drinking house, where 40 is fold Aqua-vita (which they call Ruffe Wine) Mead, Beere, &c. Out of these hee receiveth Rent that amounteth to a great fumme of money. Some yeeld 800. fome 900. fome a 1000. some 2000, or 3000. Rubbels a yeere. Wherein besides the base and dishonourable meanes to encrease his treasury, many foule faults are committed. The poore Labouring man, and Artificer, many times spendeth all from his wife and children. Some vie to lay in twentie, thirtie.fortic Rubbels, or more into the Caback, and vow themselves to the pot, till all that be spent. And this (as he will fay) for the honour of Hoffodare, or the Emperour. You shall have many there that have drunke all away to the very skin, and so walke naked (whom they call Naga.) While they are in the Caback, none may call them forth whatfoeuer cause there be, because he hindereth the Emperours reuenue.
- 50 9. Some of his Boiarens, or Nobles of his Court, (whom he vieth vpon truft) that have houfes in the Mosks, faine themselucs robbed : Then they fend for the Zemskey men, or Aldermen of the Citie, and command them to finde out the robbery : In default of not finding it, prane or cease the Citie for their misgouernment in 8000. 9000. or 10000. Rubbels at a time. This is many times practifed.

10. In these exactions to shew their Soueraigntie, sometime they have beene vied very plaine, and yet strange cauillations. As was that of luan Vafilowich , father to this Emperour, after this fort. He fent into Perma for certaine loads of Cedar wood, wherof he knew that none grew in that Countrey. The inhabitants returned answer they could finde none there. Whereupon hee seazed their Countrey in 12000. Rubbels, 25 if they concealed the commoditie of

60 purpole. Againe, he sent to the Citie of Morko to provide for him a Colpack, or measure full of line Fleas for a medicine. They returned answere that the thing was impossible. And if they could get them, yet they could not measure them, for leaping out. Whereupon hee praued, or beat out of their thins 7000, Rubbels for a Mulet. By like cavillation hee extored for his Nobilitic 30000. Rubbels, because he missed of his game, when hee went a hunting for the Hare:



the manner is) Praned prefently againe vpon the Monficks, or common people of the Country.

Chap. 13. Of the flate of people in the Countrey of Ruffia. and miterable

eftate of the

Ruffe people.

Mifrie of

manners and

THe condition of the Commons and vulgar fort of people, may partly bee understood by that which already hath beene fayd concerning the manner of their Gouernment, and the flare of the Nobilitie, with the ordering of their Prouinces, and chiefe Townes of the Land. And patie, or valle and the first touching their libertie how it standeth with them, it may appeare by this : that they are reckoned in no degree at all, nor have any fuffrage nor place in their Zabore, or high Court of Parliament, where their Lawes and publike Orders are concluded upon. Againe into what feruile condition their libertie is brought, not onely to the Prince, but to the Nobles, and Gentle- 10 men of the Countrey (who themselues also are but seruile, specially of late yeeres) it may fire ther appeare by their owne acknowledgments in their supplications, and other writings to anv of the Nobles or chiefe Officers of the Emperours. Wherein they name and fubicribe themfelues Kolophey, that is, their Villaines, or Bond-flaues: as they of the Nobilitie doe vnto the Emperour. This may truely bee fayd of them, that there is no fervant nor bond-slave more awed by his Master, nor kept downe in a more seruile subjection, then the poore people are, and that vniuerfally, not onely by the Emperour, but by his Nobilitie chiefe Officers and Souldiers. So that when a poore Moufick meeteth with any of them voon the high way, hee must turne himfelfe about, as not daring to looke him on the face, and fail downe with knocking of his head to the very ground, as he doth vnto his Idoll,

Secondly, concerning the Lands, goods, and other possessions of the Commons, they answer the Name and lye Common indeed, without any fence against the rapine and spoyle, not onely of the highest, but of his Nobilitie, Officers, and Souldiers. Besides the Taxes, Customes, Seazures, and other publike exactions done vpon them by the Emperour, they are fo racked and pulled by the Nobles, Officers, and Meffengers, fent abroad by the Emperour in his publike affayres, specially in the Tammes (as they call them) and thorow faire Townes, that you shall have many Villages and Townes of halfe a mile, and a mile long, stand all vnhabited : the people being fled all into other places, by reason of the extreame viage, and exactions done upon them. So that in the way towards Moske, betwixt Vologda and Taruflaueley (which is two nineties after their reckoning, little more then an hundred miles English,) there are in fight fiftie Dariesnes or Villa- 30 ges at the least, some halfe a mile, some a mile long (that stand vacant) and desolate without any inhabitant. The like is in all other places of the Realme, as is fayd by those that have better trauelled the Countrey then my selfe had time, or occasion to doe.

The great oppression ouer the poore Commons, made them to have no courage in following their Trades: for the more they have, the more danger they are in, not onely of their goods, but of their liues also. And if they have any thing, they conceale it all they can, sometimes conueying it into Monasteries, sometimes hiding it vnder the ground, and in Woods, as men are wont to doe where they are in feare of forraigne invasion. Infomuch that many times you shall fee them afraid to bee knowne to any Boise on Gentleman, of fuch commodities as they have to fell. I have seene them sometimes when they have layd open their Commodities for a liking 40 (as their principall Furres and such like) to looke still behinde them, and towards every doore: as men in some feare, that looked to bee set vpon, and surprised by some Enemie. Whereof afking the caufe, I found it to bee this, that they have doubted leaft fome Nobleman or Sinaboiarfker of the Emperour had beene in company, and to layed a trayne for them to pray you their Commodities perforce.

This made the people (though otherwise hardened to beare any toyle) to give themselves much to Idlenesse and Drinking : as passing for no more, then from hand to mouth. And hereof it commeth that the Commodities of Russia (as was sayd before) as Waxe, Tallow, Hides, Flax, Hempe, &c. grow and goe abroad in farre leffe plentie then they were wont to doe: because the people being oppressed and spoyled of their gettings, ore discouraged from their labours. Yet this 10 one thing is much to bee noted, that in all this oppression there were three brethien Merchants, of late that traded together with one Stocke in common, that were found to bee worth 300000-Rubbels in money, besides Lands, Cattels, and other Commodities. Which may partly be imputed to their dwellings farre off from the eye of the Court, viz. in Wichida, one thousand miles from Mosko and more. The same are sayd by those that knew them, to have set on worke all the yeere long ten thousand men in making of Salt, carriages by Cart, and Boat, hewing of Wood and such like : besides siue thousand Bond-slaues at the least, to inhabite and till their Land. They had also their Physitians, Surgeons, Apothecaries, and all manner of Artificers of Doutches and others, belonging vnto them. They are fayd to have payed to the Emperour for Cuftome to the summe of three and twentie thousand Rubbels a yeere, (for which cause they were 60 suffered to enion their Trade) besides the maintayning of certaine Garrisons on the borders of Siberia, which were neare vnto them. Wherein the Emperour was content to vie their purie, till fuch time as they had got ground in Siberia, and made it habitable, by burning and cutting downe Woods, from Wiebida to Perm, aboue one thousand verst, and then tooke it all away from

them perforce. But this in the end being enoyed and dislayned, as a matter not standing with eheir policie, to haue any to great, specially a Monfick, the Emperour began first to pull from them by pieces, sometimes twenter thousand Rubbels at a time, sometime more : till in the end their Sonnes that now are are well saied of their Stocke, and have but I mall part of their Fathers fubflance : the reft being drawne all into the Emperours treaturie. Their names were facone.

Gregorie, and Simon, the Sonnes of Ornice.

For the qualitie of their people otherwise, though there segment to bee in them some prenesse to receive any Art (as appeareth by the natural) wits in the men, and very children.) yes they excell in no kinde of common Art, much leffe in any learning of literall kinde of knowto ledge: which they are kept from of purpole, as they are allo from all military practice; that they may bee fitter for the female condition, wherein now they are's and have neither reafon, nor valour to attempt us out ion. For this purpole also they are kept from travelling, that Raffin at perthey may learne nothing, nor fee the fashions of other Countries abroad. You shall seldome muced to the fee a Ruffe a traueller, except hee bet with forme Emballadour, or that hee make an eligible pub of his Countrey. Which hardly he can doe, by reason of the borders that are watched so nare rowly, and the punishment for any such attempt, which is death, if her bee taken, and all his goods confileate. Onely they learns to write, and to read, and that very few of them. Neid ther doe they fuffer any stranger willingly to come more their Realmetons of any civill Countries. for the same cause, farther then necessitie of vetering cheir commodities; and taking in of forreine doth enforce them to doe.

And therefore this yeare 1189, they consulted about the removing of all Merchants strange The isologies gers to the border Townes; to abide and haue their refidencie there, and to bee more wary in of the Empe. admitting other strangers heereaster into the Inland parts of the Realme. For the same pur, rour conce pose also they are kept within the bounds of their degree by the Lawes of their Countrey; ning his state fo that the sonne of a Monsiek, Artificer, or Husbandman, is euer a Monsiek, Artificer, &c. and hath no meanes to afpire any higher: except, having, learned to write and reade, hee attayne to the preferment of a Priest, or Dyack. Their Language is all one with the Slavonies. which is thought to have beene dernied from the Rufe Tongue, rather then the Rufe from the Slaumian. For the People called Selam, are knowne to have had their beginning out of Selaumia and 30 Sarmatia, and to have tearmed them (claus of their Conquest Sciances, (that is) Eamous or the Language.

Glorious, of the word Sclaus, which in the Rolle and Slauonian Tongue lignifieth as much as Glorie, or Fame. Though afterwards being fulcined and trod vpon by divers Nations, the Belians, the Neighbours, has turned the word to a contrary fignification, and terme every Semant or Pealant by the name of Science, as did the Remover by the Case and Systems, for the same reason. The Russe Character or Letter, 15,00 other then the Greeks , somewhat

difference.

Concerning their Trades, Diet, apparell, and fuch like, it is to be noted in a feuerall Chapter
of their private behauseur. This order that bindeth every man to keepe his ranke, and severall degree, wherein his fore-fathers lived before him, is more meet to keepe the Subieds in a lengle 40 subjection, and so apt for this and like Commonwealths, then to advance any vertue; or to breed any rare or excellent qualitie in Nobilitie or Commons: as having no further reward nor preferment, whereunto they may bend their endeauours, and employ themselves to advance their, effate, but rather procuring more danger to themselves, the more they excels in any noble of

Heir Courts of Civill Inflice for matters of Contract, and other of like fort, are of three. Chep. 14. kinds, the one being subject vnto the other by way of appeale. The lowest Court (that Of their pubfeemeth to be appointed for some ease to the Subices) is the Office of the Gubney Sterner, that like little and feement to or appointment and of the States Starnif, or Bayliffe of the Soake or Hundred, whereproceeding in ngument an accountant, which proceeding of the Prouinces. Thele may end matters among their neigh. Chill, and 50 bours within their Soake, or feuerall Hundred, where they are appointed vnder the Dukes and Criminall bours within their Soake, or leuerall Hundred, where they are appointed under the Direct and Direct of the Prouinces, to whom the parties may remove their matter, if they cannot be agreed matter.

Court of Cal

The second is kept in the head Townes of every Province or Shire , by the faid Dukes and three, Djacks, that are Deputies to the foure Lords of the Cheffeds (as before was faid.). From these The Dokes Courts they may appeale, and remoue their Suits to the chiefe Court, that is kept at the Moske, and Dracts. Course they may appears and the foure Cheffred. These are the chiefe Inflices of Indiges. Course, where are resident the Officers of the foure Cheffred. These fact in their feueral Cheffed or Quarter, and The high court of them in all Civill matters that grow within their several Cheffed or Quarter, and Court of may be either commenced originally before them, or profecuted out of the interious Courts of Marie. 60 the Shires by way of appeale.

Their commencing, and proceeding in Civill actions is on this manner. Fire, the Plaintife putteth up his Supplication, wherein he declareth the effect of his Caule, or wrong done wire. Their minner puttern up his supplied and the supplied of proceeding him. Whereupon is granted with him a Mopie, or Warrant, which he delinerest to this Brofiles. of proceeding him. Whereupon is granted with a Could mitor Sergeant, to doe the arrest vpon the partie whom hee meaneth to implead. Who vpon the cert.

Rich Ruffian Merchanes.

arreft, is to pur in Swettes to answere the day appointed, or elfe flandeth at the Serguants deno-tion; to be kept fafe by such meanes as he thinketh good.

The Seguents are many, and excelf for their hard and cruell dealing towards their prisoners: commonly they clap Irons upon them, as many as they can beare, to wring out of them some larger feet. Though it be but for fixe pence, you shall fee them goe with Chaines on their less armes, and necke. When they come before the Judge, the Plaintiffe beginneth to declare his matterafter the contents of his Supplication. As for Attorneys, Counfellors, Procurators and Aduocates to plead their Caufe for them, they have no fuch order; but every man is to tell his owne tale, and plead for himselfe as well as he can.

Ending of controuerfies

If they have any witnesse or other evidence, they produce it before the Judge. If they have none, or if the trueth of the Caufe cannot fo well bee differried by the plea, or enidence on both parte: then the fudge asketh either partie (which hee thinkern good, Plaintiffe or Defendant) whether hee will kife the Croffe, vpon that which hee anoncheth, or denyeth, Hee that taketh the Croffe (being fo offered by the Indge) is accounted cleare, and carrieth away the matter. This Ceremonie is not done within the Court , or Office, but the partie is carried to the Church by an Officer, and there the Ceremonie is done: the money in the meane while hanging whon a maile, or elfe lying at the fdols feet, ready to be delinered to the partie, as foone as he wash kiffed the Croffe before the faid Idoll,

Indgement

This killing of the Croffe (called Crenfina chelonania) is as their corporall Oath, and accounted with them a very holy thing, which no man will dare to violate, or prophane to with a false allegation. If both parties offer to kiffe the Croffe in a contradictorie matter, then they draw Lots. The better Lot is supposed to have the right, and beareth away the matter. So the partie connicted is adjudged to pay the debe or penaltie whatforuer, and withall to pay the Emperours fees, which is twentie pence voon enery Marke, as before hath When the matter is thus ended, the partie connicted is delivered to the Sergeant, who bath a

Writ for his warrant out of the Office, to carrie him to the Prancy or Righter of Luftice, if prefemily he pay not the money, or content of the partie. This Transent or Rightor, is a place more to the Office: where fuch as have fentence passed against them, and reture to pay that which is adjudeed, are beaten with great cudgels on the finimies, and calues of their legs. E- 10

very fore-noone from eight to elenen, they are fet on the Praisesh, and beate in this fort till the money bee payd. The after-moone and night time, they are kept in chaines by the Sergeant: except they put in fufficient Sureties for their appearance at the Prancing at the houre appointed. You shall fee fortie or fiftie fland together on the Prancelo all on a rew, and their hinnes thus becudgelled, and behafted every morning with a pireous crye. If after a veeres standing on the Pranens, the partie will not, or lacke wherewithall to satisfie his creditor, it is lawfull for him to fell his wife, and children, either outright, or for a certaine terme of yeeres. And if the price of them doe not amount to the full payment, the Creditor may take them to be his bond-flaues, for yeeres, or for euer, according as the value of the debt requireth.

Such kind of Suite as lacke direct enidence, or fland vpon coniectures and circumftances to be 40 weighted by the Indge, draw of great length, and yeteld great advantage to the Judge, and Officers. If the Suit beyon a Bond, or Biff, they have for the most pare good and speedy inflice. The forme of Their Bonils or Bills are drawne in a very plaine fort, after this tenour. I luan Vafileo base borrowed of Alphonasse Dementio, the summe of one hundred Rubbels of going money of Mosko , from the Kreshenea (or hallowing of the water) until the Saburney Voscreshenea (or Counfell Suriday) mithout interest. And if this money rest impaged after that day, then bee shall gine tell dunday y menom uncerst. Denn y von money rete ongegie diet iden nay, voes och punke-interest open the fail money, after the common state, at it gent de money the people, vz. for every fine the five Rubbell. Ypon this there are Witnesses, Alebeira Sydrounkey, &c. Schicined, This Bill hame I wraten Gabriel Iacouelefini, in the yeere 7096. The Witneffes , and Debter (if hee can write) endorse their names on the backefide of the Bill. Other figning, or fealing have

Proceeding in

When any is taken for a matter of Crime (as Treason, Murder, Theft, and such like) he is first brought to the Duke and Diack, that are for the Prouince where the partie is attached, by whom hee is enamined. The manner of examination in such cases, is all by torture, as scourging with Pudies whips made of finowes, or whitleather (called the Pudies) as big as a mans finger, which giueth a lore lash, and entreth into the fielh; or by tying to a Spit and rolling at the fire; sometimes by Breaking and wrefting one of their ribs with a paire of hot Tongs, or cutting their fielh winder the dayles, and fuch like,

The examination thus taken with all the proofes, and evidences that can bee alleaged against the partie, it is fent up to the Morke, to the Lord of the Chefferd or Fourth part, vader whom the Prouince is; and by him is presented to the Councill table, to be read and sentenced there, where onely hidgement is given in matter of life and death, and that by evidence vpon informetion, though they never law nor heard the partie who is kepe full in prison where the fact was committeed, and never fent up to the place where hee is tryed. If they finde the partie

guilty, they give Sentence of death according to the qualitie of the fact : which is fent downe by the Lord of the Chefferd, to the Duke and Disch to bee put in execution. The Prifoner is carried to the place of execution with his hands bound, and a Waxe candle burning held be-

Their Capitall punishments are hanging, heading, knocking on the head, drowning, put- Executions. ting vnder the Ice, fetting on a stake, and such like. But for the most part, the Prilippers that are condemned in Summer, are kept for the Winter, to be knockt in the head, and put vnder the Ice. This is to bee vinderstood of common persons. For theft, and murder, If they bee committed voon a poore Mousick by one of Nobilitie are not lightly punished, nor yet is hee To called to any account for it. Their reason is because they are accounted their Kolopher, or Bond-slaues. If by some Sinaboiarskey, or Gentleman Souldier, a murder or theft bee committed peraduenture hee shall bee imprisoned at the Emperours pleasure. If the manner of the

tach be very notorious, hee is whipped perchance, and this is commonly all the punishment that is inflicted upon them.

If a man kill his owne feruant, little or nothing is faid vnto him, for the fame reason: because hee is accounted to be his Kolopher, or Bond-slaue, and so to haue right ouer his very head. The most is some small mulet to the Emperour, if the partie bee rich: and so the quarrell is made rather against the purse, then against the injustice. They have no written Law, faue Rivall (not onely a small Booke that contayneth the time and manner of their fitting, order in proceeding, right-all) and such other Iudiciall formes and circumstances, but nothing to direct them to give Sentence woon right or wrong. Their onely Law is their Speaking Law, that is, the pleasure of the Prince, and of his Maciltrates and Officers.

He Souldiers of Ruffia are called Sinzboiarsker, or the Sonnes of Gentlemen: because they Chapter are all of that degree, by vertue of their military profession. For every Souldier in Russia They fotces is a Gentleman, and none are Gentlemen but onely the Souldiers , that take it by difcent from for the warter, their Ancestors: lo that the sonne of a Gentleman (which is borne a Souldier) is cust a Gentle-Officers and man, and a Souldier withall, and profeseth nothing else but military matters. When they are filaries, of veeres able to beare Armes, they come to the Office of Roferade, or Great [onfiable, and there The onely present themselves: who entreth their names, and allotteth them certaine Lands to maintaine Gendemen. their charges, for the most part of the same that their fathers emioyed. For the Lands affigued birth and inheto maintage, the Armie, are ener certaine, annexed to this Office without improving, or detra-nizance. Ains one foot. But that if the Emperour haue lufficient in wages, the roomes being full so farre as the Land doeth extend already, they are many times deferred, and have nothing allowed them, except some one portion of the Land be divided into two. Which is a cause of great disorder within that Countrey: When a Souldier that hath many children, shall have formetimes but one entertayned in the Emperours pay. So that the rest hauing nothing, are forced to line by vaiuft and wicked faitts, that tend to the hurt and oppression of the Monsieke, or common fort of people. This inconvenience groweth by maintayning his forces in a continual fucceffion. The whole number of his Souldiers in continuall pay, is this: First, he hathof his Dporang, that is, Penfonent, or Guard of his perfon, to the number of 15000. Horfemen, with their Guard.

Captaines and other Officers, that are alwaying in a readineff.

Of these fifteene thousand Horsemen, there are three sorts or degrees, which differ as well Degrees of in estimation, as in wages, one degree from another. The first fort of them is called, Dworane, Hersemen.

Bullery, or the companie of head Pensoners, that have, some 100. some 80. Rubbels a yeers, such as attended none under 70. The second for recorded and none under 70. The second for recorded to the second s and none vnder 70. The second fort are called, Seredney Dworeney, or the middle ranke of Pen- the Emperors froners: these have 60. or 50. Rubbels by the yeere, none under 40. The third and lowest fort petion, 15000 are, the Dyta Botarikey, that is, the lowe Pensioners : their salarie is 30. Rubbels a yeere, for him that hath most; some haue but 25. some 20, none under 12. Whereof the halfe part is 50 payd them at the Morte, the other halfe in the field by the General, when they have any warres, and are employed in feruice. When they receive their whole pay, it amounteth to 55000. Rubb.

And this is their wages, besides lands allotted to every one of them, both to the greater and the leffe, according to their degrees. Whereof he that hath leaft, hath to yeeld him 20. Rubbels or Markes by the yeere. Besides these 15000. Horsemen, that are of better choise (as being the Emperours owne Guard when himf-life goeth to the warres, not wnlike the Roman Souldiers called Pretoriani) ste 110. men of speciall account for their Nobilitie, and truft, which are chofen by the Emperour, and haue their names regilfred, that find among them for the Emperours Twoother warres, to the number of 65000. Horsemen , with all necessaries meet for the warres of the troupes to the 60 Ruffe manner.

To this end they have yeerely allowance made by the Emperour for themselves, and their Companies, to the fumme of 40000. Rubbels. And these 65000, are to repaire to the field euery yeere on the borders towards the Chrim Tartar, (except they bee appointed for forme other feruice) whether there bee warres with the Tariars, or not. This might feeme peraduenture

somewhat dangerous for some State, to have so great forces under the command of Noblemen. to affemble every yeere to one certaine place. But the matter is so vsed, as that no danger can grow to the Emperour, or his State by this meanes. First, Because these Noblemen are many. to wit, 110. in all, and changed by the Emperour fo oft as hee thinketh good. Secondly, Because they have their livings of the Emperour, being otherwise but of very small Revenue, and receive this yeerely pay of 40000. Rubbels, when it is presently to be paid forth agains to the Souldiers that are vinder them. Thirdly, Because for the most part they are about the Emperors person, being of his Counsell, either speciall, or at large. Fourthly, They are rather as Pay-mafters, then Captaines to their Companies, themselves not going forth ordinarily to the warres. faue when some of them are appointed by speciall order from the Emperour himselfe. So the to whole number of Horièmen that are euer in a readinesse, and in continual pay, are 80000. a few more or leffe.

continual pay

If he haue need of a greater number (which seldome falleth out) then hee entertayneth of those Sinaboiarskey, that are out of pay, so many as he needeth : and if yet he want of his number, hee gineth charge to his Noblemen, that hold Lands of him, to bring into the field every man a proportionable number of his feruants (called Kolopher, fuch as till his Lands) with their furniture, according to the iust number that hee intendeth to make. Which, the service being done, presently lay in their weapons, and returne to their seruile occupations againe.

Footmen in continuall pay

Strangers

mercenaries

in pay 4300.

Of Footmen that are in continuall pay, he hath to the number of 12000. all Gunners, called Streller. Whereof 5000, are to attend about the Citie of Moske, or any other place where the m Emperour shall abide, and 2000. (which are called Stremaney, Strelley, or Gunners at the Stirrop) about his owne person at the very Court or house where himselfe lodgeth. The rest are placed in his garrison Townes, till there be occasion to have them in the field, and receive for their salarie or itipend euery man seuen Rubbelsa yeere, besides twelue measures, a piece of Rye, and Oats. Of mercenary Souldiers, that are ftrangers (whom they call Nimfeoy) they have at this time 4:00. of Polonians: of Chirchaffes (that are vader the Polonians) about 4000, whereof 2500. are abroad in his Garrilons: of Dutches and Scots, about 150: of Greekes, Turkes, Danes. and Sweadens, all in one band, 100, or thereabouts. But these they vie only voon the Tartar fide. and against the Siberians: as they doe the Tartar Souldiers (whom they hire sometimes, but onely for the present) on the other fide against the Polonian and Sweaden: thinking it best po- 30 licy fo to vie their fernice youn the contrary border.

The chiefe Captaines or or Generall.

The chiefe Captaines or Leaders of these forces, according to their names and degrees, are these which follow. First, the Voyanodey Bulfbaia, that is, the Great Captaine, or Lieutenant Leaders.

1. The Valued generall under the Emperour. This commonly is one of the foure houses of the chiefe Nobilitie of the Land : but so chosen otherwise, as that he is of small valour or practice in Martiall matters, being thought to serue that turne so much the better, if he bring no other parts with him faue the countenance of his Nobilitie, to bee liked of by the Souldiers for that, and nothing elfe. For in this point they are very warie, that thefe two, to wit, Nobilitie and Power, meet not both in one, specially if they see wile lome withall, or aptnesse for policie. Their great Voianod or Generall at this present in their warres, is commonly one of these de

2.Lieutenant generall,

Tranbetskor, all of great Nobilitie, but of very simple qualitie otherwise: though in Glinskor (as they fay) there is somewhat more then in the reft. To make up this defect in the Voicend or Generall, there is some other joyned with him as Lieutenant generall, of farre leffe Nobilitie, but of more valour and experience in the warres then he, who ordereth all things that the other countenanceth. At this time their principall man, and most vsed in their warres, is one Knez. Demetrie Inanomich Forestme, an antient and expert Captaine, and one that hath done great seruice (as they fay) against the Tartar, and Polonian. Next under the Voianed and his Lieutenant the field, foure. generall, are foure other, that have the marihalling of the whole Armie divided among them, and may be called the Marshals of the field.

foure, Knez Feoder Inanowich Methislostey, Knez Inan Michailowich Glinskoy, Cherechaskoy, and

Euery man hath his quarter, or fourth part vnder him : whereof the first is called, the Prans Polskey, or Right wing. The fecond is , the Leney Polskey, or Lett wing. The third is, Rufney Polskoy, or The broken band, because out of this there are chosen to send abroad upon any sudden exploit, or to make a refcue or supply, as occasion doth require. The fourth, Storesbonor Polskor, or The warding band. Every one of these foure Marshals have two other under them (eight in all) that twice every weeke at the least must muster and traine their severall wings or bands, and hold and give inflice for all faults and diforders committed in the Campe.

4.Marthale Deputies 8.

5. Coronels

Vnder-cap-

raines.

And thefe eight are commonly chosen out of the hundred and ten (which I spake of before) that receive and deliver the pay to the Souldiers. Vnder thele eight are divers other Captaines, as the Gul anoy, Captaines of thousands, five hundreds, and hundreds. The Petrde Seiskey, or 60 Captaines of fifties; and the Decetskies, or Captaines of tennes. 6. Mailers of

Besides the Voianeda, or Generall of the Armie, (ipoken of before) they have two other that the Artillerie. beare the name of Voianoda: whereof one is the Master of the great Ordnance (called Naradna Voianoda) who hath divers Vnder-officers, necessary for that service. The other is called, the

Voiameda Gulamor, or the Walking Captayne, that hath allowed him 1000, good Horiemen of The walking principall choice, to range and ipye abroad, and hath the charge of the running Caffle, which Captayne, we are to speake of in the Chapter following. All these Captaynes, and men of charge must once every day refort to the Bullba Voianoda, or Generall of the Armie, to know his pleasure, and to informe him if there be any requifite matter pertayning to their Office.

WHen Wars are towards (which they faile not of lightly enery yeere with the Tartar, Chap. 16. and many times with the Polonian and Sweden, (the foure Lords of the Cheffirds fend Of their muforth their Summons in the Emperours name, to all the Dukes and Dyacks of the Provinces, to flering, and le-10 be proclaymed in the head Townes of enery Shire: that all the Sinabeiarskey, or Sonnes of Gen- uying of fortlemen make their repayre to fuch a border where the Service is to be done, at fuch a place, and Armour, and by fuch a day, and there prefent themselves to such and such Captaynes. When they come to provide the place affigned them in the Summons or Proclamation , their names are taken by certayne victualifor the Officers that have Commiffion for that purpole from the Roferade, or High Conflable as Clerkes Warres of the Bands.

for muftering.

If any make default and faile at the day, he is muleted, and punished very severely. As for the Generall and other chiefe Captaines, they are fent thither from the Emperours owne hand, with fuch Commission and charge as he thinketh behoofefull for the present service. When the Souldiers are affembled, they are reduced into their Bands, and Companies, vinder their feuerall 20 Captaynes of tens, fifties, hundreds, thousands, &c. and these Bands into source Politicis or Legions (but of farre greater numbers then the Romane Legions were) under their foure great Leaders, which also have the authoritie of Marshals of the field (as was said before.) Concerning their Armour they are but flightly appointed. The common Horse-man hath The Horse-

nothing else but his Bow in his Casewnder his right arme, and his Quiver and Sword hanging on mans Funi-

the left fide: except some few that beare a Case of Dagges, or a lauding, or short Staffe along ture. their Horse fide. The vnder Captaynes will have commonly some piece of Armour besides, as a shirt of Male, or such like. The Generall with the other chiefe Captaynes and men of Nobilizy, will have their Horse very richly furnished, their Saddles of Cloth of Gold, their Bridles The bottle of the rest of the property of the yet couered commonly with Clothot Gold, and edged round about with Armine Furre, his Steele Helmeton his head of a very great price, his Sword, Bow, and Arrowes at his fide, his Speare in his hand, with another Helmet, and his Sheffa pera, or Horfe-mans Scepter carried before him. Their Swords, Bowes, and Arrowes are of the Turkille falhion. They practite like the Tartar to shoot forwards and backwards, as they flye and retyre.

Shooting for

The Strelfey or Footman hath nothing but his Peece in his hand, his firiking Hatchet at his ward and backe, and his Sword by his fide. The Hocke of his Peece is not made Caleeuer wife, but with backward a plaine and strait stocke (some-what like a Fowling-peece) the Barrell is rudely and vnartis- Furniture, cially made, very heavie, yet shooteth but a very small Bullet. As for their proussion of victu- Promison of 40 all, the Emperour alloweth none, either for Captayne, or Souldier, neyther prouideth any for victuall. them except peraduenture some Corne for their Money. Euery man is to bring inflicient for himselfe to serue his turne for foure moneths, and if need require to give order for more to bee Provisions,

brought vnto him to the Campe from his Tenant that tilleth his Land, or some other place. One great helpe they have, that for Lodging and Dyet every Ruffe is prepared to bee a Souldier before-hand. Though the cheife Captaynes and others of account carry Tents with them after the fashion of ours with some better prouision of victuall then the rest. They bring with them commonly into the Campe for victuall a kind of dryed Bread (which they call Sucharie) with fome store of Meale, which they temper with water, and so make it into a Ball, or small sumpe of dowe, called Tollactno. And this they eate raw in stead of Bread. Their Meate is Bacon, or of convertinated a consequent that the control of the Ruffe Souldier were as hardie to execute an Enterprize, as he is hard to be are out to yle and travell, or were otherwise as apt and well trayned for the Warres, as he is indifferent for his Lodging and Dyet, hee would farre exceed the Souldiers of our parts. Whereas now he is faire meaner of courage and execution in any Warlike service. Which commeth partly of his servile condition, that will not soffer any Homes alit etters

hath no great hope of whatfoeuer feruice or execution he doe. THe Ruffe trufteth rather to his number, then to the valour of his Souldiers, or good orde- Chap. 17. I ring of his Forces. Their marching or leading is without all order, fane that the fore Poff. Of their more 60 kg or Legions, (whereinto their Armie is diuided) keepe themselues severall vinder their Enfignes, and so thruit all on together in a hurrie, as they are directed by their Generall. Their Endarroll Directed by their Generall. Their Endarroll Directed by their Generall. figne is the Image of Saint George. The Bullha Dworaney or chiefe Horfe-men, haw every man a cipline. small Drumme of Brasse at his Saddle-bow, which hee striketh when heegineth the charge, George-consuce

great courage or valour to grow in him. Partly for lacke of due honour and reward, which hee

Drummes.

They

charging.

They have Drummes besides of a huge bignesse, which they carrie with them vpon a board Theoremans lavd on foure Horfes, that are sparred together with Chaines, every Drumme having eight stria kers, or Drummers, besides Trumpets and Shawmes, which they sound after a wild manner. much different from ours. When they give any charge or make any invafion, they make a great hallow or shoute altogether, as loude as they can, which with the found of their Trumpets. Shawmes, and Drummes, maketh a confused and horrible noyse. So they set on first discharging their Arrowes, then dealing with their Swords, which they vie in a brauery to shake, and brandish over their heads, before they come to strokes. Their Footmen (because otherise they want order in leading) are commonly placed in some

The footmans

ambush or place of advantage, where they may most annoy the enemy, with least burt to themfelines. If it be a fet battell, or if any great inuasion be made vpon the Rasse borders by the Tor-The walking tar, they are let with in the running or moning Castle (called Beza, or Gulay gorod) which is care ried about with them by the Voianoda gulanoy (or the malking Generall) whom I spake of before This walking or mouing Caftle is fo framed, that it may be fet up in length fas occasion doth require) the space of one, two, three, source, fine, sixc, or seven miles : for so long it will reach. It is nothing eliebut a double wall of wood to defend them on both fides behind and before, with a space of three yards or thereabouts betwire the two sides : so that they may stand within it. and have roome enough to charge and discharge their pieces, and to vie their other weapons. It is closed at both ends, and made with loope-holes on either side, to lay out the nose of their Peece, or to pulh forth any other weapon. It is carryed with the Armie wherefoeuer it goeth. 20 being taken into pieces, and so layed on Carts sparred together, and drawne by Horse that are not feene, by reason that they are coursed with their carriage as with a shelfe or pent-house. When it is brought to the place where it is to bee vied (which is deuised and chosen out before by the the walking Voianod) it is planted so much as the present vie requireth, sometime a mile lone. fometimes two, fometimes three, or more : which is foone done without the helpe of any Carpenter, or Instrument : because the Timber is so framed to claspe together one piece within an other : as is eafily vnderstood by those that know the manner of the Raffe building

In this Castle standeth their shot well senced for advantage, specially against the Tarter, that bringeth no Ordnance, nor other weapon into the field with him, faue his Sword, and Bow and Arrowes. They have also within it divers field Peeces, which they vie as occasion doth require, 30 Of Pecces for the field they carrie no great ftore, when they warre against the Tartar but when they deale with the Polonian (of whole forces they make more account) they goebetter furnished with all kind of Munition, and other necessarie prouisions. It is thought that no Prince of Christendome hath better store of Munition, then the Ruffe Emperour. And it may partly appeare by the Artillerie Houle at Moske, where are of all forts of great Ordnance, all

Braffe Peeces, very faire, to an exceeding great number.

The Ruffe Souldier is thought to be better at his defence within some Caffle, or Towne, then he is abroad at a fet pitched field. Which is ever noted in the practice of his Wars, and namely, as the fiege of Vobike, about eight yeares fince : where he repulled the Polonian King Stepan Batore, with his whole Armie of 100000. men, and forced him in the end to give over his fiege, with 40 the lose of many of his best Captaynes and Souldiers. But in a fet field the Russeis noted to haue ouer the worfe of the Poloman, and Sweden.

Reward for

Store of Mu-

If any behave himselfe more valiantly then the rest, or doe any speciall piece of service, the Emperour fendeth him a piece of Gold, stamped with the Image of Saint George on Horseback. Which they hang on their sleeues, and set in their Caps. And this is accounted the greatest honour they can receive, for any feruice they doe.

valour.

or purchales

by force.

He Ruffe Emperours of late yeeres have very much enlarged their Dominions and Territories. Their first Conquest after the Dukedome of Moske, (for before that time they were but Dukes of Volodomer, as before was faid) was the Citie, and Dukedome of Nonograd on the 50 their conquests West, and North-west side : which was no small enlargement of their Dominion, and strengthning to them for the winning of the rest. This was done by Inan great Grand-father to Thesdore now Emperour, about the yeere 1480. The same began like wife to encroach upon the Countreyes of Lituania, and Liumia, but the Conquest onely intended, and attempted by him vpon fome part of those Countreyes, was pursued and performed by his Sonne Bafiless, who first wan the Citie and Dukedome of Pleske, afterwards the Citie and Dukedome of Smolenske, and many other faire Townes, with a large Territory belonging vnto them, about the yeere 1514. These Victories against the Lettoes or Lituarians in the time of Alexander their Duke, hee atchieued rather by aduantage of civill Diffentions and Treasons among themselves, then by any great policie, or force of his owne. But all this was loft againe by his Sonne Inan Vafilowich, about eight 60 or nine yeeres paft, voon composition with the Polonian King Stepan Basore: whereunto he was forced by the aduantages which the Pole had then of him, by reason of the soyle hee had given him before, and the disquietnesse of his owne State at home. Onely the Russe Emperour, at this time hath left him on that fide his Countrey, the Cities of Smolensko, Vitobsko, Cheringo, and Beala gered in Lituaria. In Linenia, not a Towne, nor one foot of ground.

When Bafiless first conquered those Countreyes, he suffered the Natives to keepe their Poffessions, and to inhabit all their Townes, onely paying him a Tribute, under the Gouernment Litamia, of his Ruffe Captaynes. But by their Conspiracies and Attempts not long after, hee was taught to deale more furely with them. And fo comming upon them the fecond time, hee killed and carryed away with him, three parts of foure, which hee gaue or fold to the Tartars that ferned him in those Wars, and in flead of them placed there his Ruffes, fo many as might ouer-match the rest, with certayne Garrisons of strength besides , wherein notwithstanding this ouer-fight was committed, for that (taking away with him the Vp-land, or Countrey people that should haue tilled the ground, and might easily haue beene kept in order without any danger, by other 10 good policies) he was driven afterwards many yeeres together to victual the Countrey (efpecial-

letthe great Towne) out of his owne Conntrey of Ruffis, the foyle lying there in the meanewhile waste, and vitilled.

The like fell out at the Port of Name in Liefland, where his Sonne Inan Vafilowich denifed Name. to build a Towne, and a Castle on the other fide the River (called Inangorod) to keepe the Towne and Countrey in subjection. The Castle hee caused to bee so built, and fortified, that it was thought to be inuincible. And when it was finished, for reward to the Architect (that was a The Deuillie Poloman) he put out both his eyes, to make him vnable to build the like againe. But having left was. the Natines all within their owne Countrey, without abating their number or strength, the Towns and Castle not long after was betrayed, and surrendred agains to the King of Sweden.

On the South-east fide they have got the Kingdomes of Cazan and Astracan. These were wonnefrom the Tartar, by the late Emperour Inan Valilowich, Father to the Emperour that now is : the one about thirty five, the other about thirty three yeeres agoe. North-ward out of the Countrey of Siberia, he hath layed vnto his Realme a great breadth and length of ground, from Wiebida to the River of Obba, about 1000, miles space ; so that he is bold to write himselfe now. The great Commander of Siberia.

The Countreyes I kewise of Permis, and Pechora, are a divers People and Language from the Permis and Pe-Rulle, ouercome not long fince, and that rather by threatning, and thaking of the Sword, then there by any actuall force : as being a weake and naked people, without meanes to relift,

30 Their Neighbours with whom they have greateft dealings and intercourse, both in Peace Chap.ig.

Of the Tattaria and Warre, are fifth the Tarrar: Secondly, the Polonian whom the Raffe calleth Lasher, and other bore and other bore. noting the first Author or Founder of the Nation, who was called Lasbes or Leebes, whereunto deres to the is added Po, which fignifieth People, and io is made Polaches; that is, the People or Posteritie of country of Laches , which the Lacines after their manner of writing call Polanos. The third are the Swe- Ruffia, with dens. The Polonians and Swedens are better knowne to these parts of Europe, then are the Tar whom they sars that are farther off from vs (as being of Asia) and divided into many Tribes, different both doe in was and in name, and government one from another. The greatest and mightiest of them is the Chrim prace. Tartar, (whom some call the Great Chars) that lyeth South, and South-east-ward from Russa, Th. Polonian and doth most annoy the Countrey by often Inuations, commonly once every yeere; sometimes called Laches 40 entring very farre within the In-land parts.

In the yeere 1571, he came as farre as the Citie of Mosko, with an Armie of 200000. men, Testa. without any battell, or refistance at all, for that the Russe Emperour (then Issan Vasilowsch) lea- The bring of ding forth his Armie to encounter with him, marched a wrong way : but as it was thought of Marterly the very purpose, as not daring to aduenture the field, by reason that he doubted his Nobilitie, and Crim Tariar,

chiefe Captaynes, of a meaning to betray him to the Tartar. The Citie he tooke not, but fired the Suburbs, which by reason of the buildings (which is all of Wood without any Stone, Bricke, or Lime, faue certayne out Roomes) kindled so quickly, and went on with such rage, as that it consumed the greatest part of the Crite almost within the frace of foure houres, being of thirty miles or more of compasse. Then might you have seene 50 a lamentable Spectacle: befides the huge and mightie flame of the Citie all on light fire, the people burning in their houses and ftreets, but most of all of such as laboured to passe out of the Gates farthest from the Enemie, where meeting together in a mighty throng, and so pressing everie man to preuent another, wedged them lelues to fast within the Gate, and fireets neere vnto it, as that three Rankes walked one vpon the others head, the vppermost treading downe those that were lower: fo that there perished at that time (as was faid) by the fire and the press, the number of 80000. people, or more.

The Chrim thus having fired the Citie, and fed his eyes with the fight of it all of a light flame, returned with his Armie, and fent to the Ruffe Emperour a Knife (as was fayd) to sticke himfelfe withall : obrayding this loffe, and his desperate case, as not daring either to meete his Ene-60 mie in the field, nor to truit his Friends or Subjects at home. The principall cause of this continual quarrell, betwixt the Ruffe and the Chrus, is for the right of certayne border parts claimed by the Tartar, but possessed by the Ruffe. The Tartar alleadgeth, that besides Astracan and Ca-Zan, (that are the ancient possession of the East Tarter) the whole Countrey from his bounds North and Westward, so farre as the Citie of Moske, and Moske it selfe, pertayneth to his right.

the Chrim Tat-Tartars Con-

Homigedone Which feemeth to have beene true by the report of the Ruffes themselves, that tell of a certayne by the suffero homage that was done by the Ruffe Emperour enery yeare, to the great Chrim or Cham, the Ruffe Emperour standing on foote and feeding the Christs Horse, (himselfe sitting on his backe) with Oates out of his owne Cap, in stead of a Boll or Manger, and that within the Castle of Mosko. And this homage (they lay) was done till the time of Bafileus Grandiather to this man. booke of 84.

they and of the Who surprising the Chriss Emperour by a stratagem, done by one of his Nobilitie (called Mass. Demetrowich Belicher) was content with this Ransome, viz. with the changing of this homase into a Tribute of Furres : which afterwards also was denyed to bee payed by this Em-

Hereupon they continue the quartell, the Ruffe defending his Countrey, and that which hee 10 hath wonne, the Chrim Tarter invading him once or twice every yeere, sometime about White. fontide, but oftner in Haruest What time if the Great Cham or Chrim come in his owne perfon, hee bringeth with him a great Armie of 100000. or 200000. men. Otherwise they make fhort and fudden roades into the Countrey with leffer numbers, running about the lift of the border as wilde Geese slie, inuading and retiring where they see advantage.

fight, and Ar-

Apparell.

Mirchson

Their common practice (being very populous) is to make divers Armies, and so drawing the Rulle to one, or two places of the frontiers, to inuade at some other place, that is left without defence. Their manner of Fight, or ordering of their forces, is much after the Ruffe manner. (ipoken of before) faue that they are all Horse-men, and carrie nothing elie but a Bow, a sheafe of Arrowes, & a falcon Sword after the Tarkifb fash on, They are very expert horse-men, and vie 20 to shoote as readily backward as forward. Some will have a horf-mans staffe like to a bore Speare. besides their other weapons. The common Souldier, hath no other Armour then his ordinary Apparell, viz., a blacke Sheepes skinne with the wooll-fide outward in the day time, and inward in the night time, with a Cap of the fame. But their Marfey or Noblemen imitate the Tarke, both in Apparell and Armour. When they are to passe ouer a River with their Armie. They receive or four thorse together, and taking long poles or pieces of wood, binde them faft to the tay les of their Horfe: 6 fitting on the Poles they drue their Horfe ouer. At handie firokes (when they come to joyne battell) they are accounted farre better men then the Ruffe people, fierce by nature, but more hardie and bloudie, by continuall practice of Warre : as men knowing no Arts of Peace, nor any civill practice.

The fubribie

Yet their subtiltie is more then may seeme to agree with their barbarous condition. By reaof the Tatter. fon they are practifed to inuade continually, and to rob their neighbours that border about them. they are very pregnant, and ready witted to deuise Stratagems vpon the fudden, for their better advantage. As in their warre against Beals the fourth King of Hangarie, whom they invaded with fine hundred thousand men, and obtayined against him a great v ctorie. Where among other, having flaine his Chancellor, called Nicholas Schinick, they found about him the Kings priuie Seale. Whereupon they deuised presently to countefeit Letters in the Kings name, to the Cities and Townes next about the place, where the Field was fought : with charge that in no case they should conuay themselves, and their goods out of their dwellings, where they might abide fafely without all feare of danger, and not leave the Countrey defolate to the pofferfion of 40 fo vile and barbarous an Enemie, as was the Tartar Nation, tearming themselves in all reproachfull manner. For not with tanding he had loft his carriages, with fome few stragers that had mar-ched disorderly, yet he doubted not but to recour that loss, with the accessor a notable victory, if the faunge Totar durst abide him in the field. To this purpose having written their Letters in the Polish Character, by certayne young men whom they tooke in the Field, and figned them with the Kings Seale, they dispatched them foorth to all the Quarters of Hangarie, that lay neere about the place. Whereupon the Ungarians, that were now fiying away with their goods, Wives, and Children, vpon the rumour of the Kings overthrow, taking comfort of these counterfeit Letters, stayed at home. And so were made a prey, being surprised on the sudden by this huge number of these Tartars, that had compassed them about before they were awares

When they beliege a Towne or Fort, they offer much Parley, and fend many flattering meffages to perswade a surrendrie : promising all things that the Inhabitants will require ; but being once possessed of the place, they we all manner of hostilitie and crueltie. This they doe vpon a rule they have, viz. That luftice is to bee practifed but towards their owne. They encounter not lightly, but they have some ambush, whereunto (having once shewed them selves, and made fome shor: conflict) they retire, as repulsed for feare, and so draw the Enemie into it if they can-But the Ruffe being well acquainted with their practife, is more warie of them. When they come a Rouing with some small number, they set on Horsebacke counterfeit shapes of men, that their number may seeme greater.

When they make any onset, their manner is to make a great showte, crying all out together, Olla Billa, Olla Billa, God belpe vs, God belpe vs. They contemne death fo much, as that they

choole rather to dye, then to yeeld to their Enemie, and are feene when they are flaine to bite the very weapon, when they are pair striking, or helping of themselues. Wherein appeareth show different the Tarter is in his desperate courage from the Ruffe and Turke. For the Ruffe CHAP.I. Miferable Captiuitie, Tartar Religion, Idols, Sorcerie, Marriage.

Souldier if hee begin once to retire putteth all his safetie in his speedie flight. And if once he he taken by his enemie, hee neither defendeth himselfe, nor intreateth for his life, as reckoning flraight to dye. The Turk- commonly when hee is past hope of escaping, falleth to intreatie. and casteth away his weapon, offereth both his hands, and holdeth them vp, as it were to bee tved : hoping to faue his life, by offering himfelfe Bond-flaue.

The chiefe bootie the Tartars seeke for in all their warres, is to get store of Captines, speci- Captines ally young Boyes and Girles, whom they fell to the Turkes, or other their neighbours. To this purpose they take with them great Baskets made like Bakers panniers, to carrie them tenderly, and it any of them happen to tyre, or to bee ficke on the way, they dash him against the ground. or fome Tree, and so leave him dead : The Souldiers are not troubled with keeping the Captiues and other bootie, for hindering the execution of their warres, but they have certayne bands that intend nothing elfe, appointed of purpose to receive and keepe the Captives and the other prev.

The Raffe borders(being vied to their invasions, lightly every yeere in the Summer) keepe few The Total other Cattell on the border parts, faue Swine onely, which the Tartar will not touch, nor drive a- Religion. way with him: for that he is of the Turkilb Religion, & will eate no Swines-flesh. Of Christour Saujour they confesses much as doth the Twike in his Alcaron, viz. That he came of the Angell Gabriel, and the Virgin Marie, that hee was a great Prophet, and shall bee the Judge of the world at the last day. In other matters likewise, they are much ordered after the manner and 20 direction of the Turke : having felt the Turkib forces when hee wonne from them Azon and Caffa, with some other Townes about the Euxine, or Blacke Sea, that were before tributaries to the Chrims Tartar. So that now the Emperour of the Chrims for the molt part is chofen some one of the Nobilitie whom the Turke doth commend : whereby it is brought now to that paffe, that the Chrim Tartar giveth to the Turke the tenth part of the Spoyle, which hee getteth in his warres against the Christians.

Herein they differ from the Turkifo Religion, for that they have certayne Idoll puppets made Idols, of Silke or like stuffe, of the fashion of a man, which they fasten to the doore of their walking houses, to bee as lanusses, or keepers of their house. And these Idols are made not by all. but by certayne Religious women, which they have among them for that and like vice. They haue befides, the Image of their King or great Cham of an huge bigneffe, which they erect at eue-

30 rie flage, when the Armie marcheth: and this every one mult bend or bow vnto 28 hee paffeth by it, bee he Tartar, or Stranger. They are much given to Witchcraft and ominous conjectures, Soretrie.

In making of Marriages, they have no regard of alliance or confariguinitie. Only with his Mo-Marriage, ther, Sifter, and Daughter, a man may not marrie, and though he take the woman into his house and accompanie with her, yet he accounteth her not for his Wife, till hee haue a Child by her, Then he beginneth to take a downe of her friends of Horse, Sheepe, Kine, &c. If shee be barren, after a certayne time hee turneth her home againe.

Vnder the Emperour they have certayne Dukes, whom they call Morfeis or Dysomorfeis! The York that rule ouer a certayne number of 10000. 20000. or 40000. a piece, which they call Hoords. Nobilitie, When the Emperour hath any vieo: them to lerue in his warres, they are bound to come, and to bring with them their Souldiers to a certayne number, euery man with his two Horse at the least, the one to ride on, the other to kill, when it commeth to his turne to have his Horse cate. For their chiefe victuall is Horfe-flesh, which they cate without Bread, or any other thing with The Tarte it. So that if a Tarter bee taken by a Ruffe, hee shall be sure lightly to finde a Horse-legge, or dye. fome other part of him at his faddle bow.

This last yeere when I was at the Moske, came in one Kiriach Morfer, nephew to the Emperour of the Chrims that now is (whole Father was Emperour before) accompanied with three hundred Tartars, and his two Wives, whereof one was his Brothers widow. Where being en-50 tertayned in very good fort after the Roffe manner, hee had fene vnto his lodging for his welcome, to bee made ready for his Supper and his companies, two very large and far Horses, ready flayed in a Sled. They preferre it before other flesh, because the meace is stronger (as they say) then Beefe, Mutton, and fuch like. And yet (which is maruell) though they ferue all as Horsemen in the warte, and eate all of Horse-field, there are brought yearely to the Macke to bee exchanged for other Commodities, thirtie or fortie thouland Tartar Horse, which they call Cones. They keepe also great herds of Kine, and flocks of blacks Sheepe, rather for the Skinnes and Milke (which they carry with them ingreat bottles) then for the vie of the flesh, though sometimes they eate of it. Some vie they have of Rice, Figges, and other fruits. They drinke Milke or warme Bloud, and for the most part card them both together. They wse sometimes as they tra-60 uell by the way, to let their Horse bloud in a veyne, and to drinke it warme, as it commeth

Townes they plant none, nor other standing buildings, but have walking Houses which the The Total Latines call Very, built vpon wheeles like a Shepherds Cottage. Thele they draw with them whis dwelling. thersoener they goe, driving their Cattell with them. And when they come to their Stage or

Moneable Cirie and Court.

standing place, they plant their Cart-houses very orderly in a ranke: and so make the former ffreets, and of a large Towne. And this is the manner of the Emperour himselfe, who hath no other seate of his Empire but an Agora, or Towne of wood, that mooneth with him whitherfoeuer hee goeth. As for the fixed and standing building vied in other Countries, they say they are vnwholfome and vnpleafant.

They begin to moone their Houses and Cattell in the Spring time, from the South part of their Countrey towards the North parts. And so driving on till they have grased all up to the furtheft part Northward, they returne backe againe towards their South Countrey (where they continue all the Winter) by ten or twelue miles a stage : in the meane while the graffe being continue au the Winter Joy ten or weeps much a tage for the Benefit of the Salas to 10 forms y pagaine, to ferue for their Cattell as they returne. From the border of the Salas to 10 wards the Caspian Sea, to the Russe frontiers, they have a goodly Countrey, specially on the South and South-east parts, but lost for lacke of tillage.

Of money they have no vie at all, and therefore preferre Braffe and Steele before other metals, specially Bullate, which they vie for Swords, Kniues, and other necessaries. As for Gold and Siluer they neglect it of very purpose, (as they doe all tillage of their ground) to be more free for their wandring kinde of life, and to keepe their Countrey leffe fubject to innafions. Which gineth them great aduantage against all their neighbours, euer invading, and never being invaded.

Speach.

Shooting.

Diners kindes

For Perion and Complexion, they have broad and flat visages, of a tanned colour yellow and Considerabee. blacke, fierce and cruell lookes, thinne hayred vpon the vpper Lip, and a pit on the Chin, light and nimble Bodied, with short Legges, as if they were made naturally for Horse-men: whereto 10 they practife themselues from their Child hood, seldome going a soot about any businesse. Their Speach is very sudden and loude, speaking as it were out of a deepe hollow throat. When they Sing you would thinke a Cow lowed, or some great Bandogge howled. Their greatest exercife is Shooting, wherein they trayne up their Children from their very infancie, not fuffering them to eate, till they have shot neere the marke within a certain e scantling.

of Tartate. The Nagay Tartar the couelleft. The Chircaice the civillest Tertars. The Cheremiffen Tertar.

There are divers other Tartars that border vpon Ruffia, as the Nagaies, the Cheremiffens, the Mordwites, the Chircasses, and the Shalcans, which all differ in Name more then in Regiment, or other condition, from the Chrimo Tartar, except the Chircasses, that border South-well towards Litmonia, and are farre more civill then the rest of the Tariars, of a comely person, and of a stately behaulour, as applying themselves to the fashion of the Toloman. Some of them have subjected to themselues to the Kings of Poland, and professe Christianitie. The Nagay lyeth Eastward, and is reckoned for the best man of warre among all the Tartars, but very sauage and cruell above all the rest. The Cheremisin Tartar, that lyeth betwixt the Russe and the Nagar, are of two forts, the Luganor (that is of the valley) and the Nagornay, or of the hilly Countrey. These have much troubled the Emperours of Ruffia. And therefore they are content now to buy Peace of them, vnder pretence of giving a yeerely pension of Russe Commodities, to their Morles or Die noymor feis, that are chiefe of their Tribes. For which also they are bound to serue them in their warres, under certayne conditions. They are fayd to bee just and true in their dealings ; and for that cause they hate the Ruffe people, whom they account to bee double, and false in all their dealing. And therefore the common fort are very vnwilling to keepe agreement with them, but that they are kept in by their Morfess, or Dukes for their penfions fake.

The Mordwit Tarter the moft barbarous of the

The most rude and barbarous is counted the Mordante Tartar, that hath many selfe fashions, and frange kindes of behauiour, differing from the reft. For his Religion, though hee acknowledge one God, yet his manner is to worship for God, that living thing, that hee first meeteth in the morning, and to sweareby it all that whole day, whether it bee Horse, Dog, Cat, or whatfoeuer else it bee. When his friend dyeth, hee killeth his best Horse, and hauing flayed off the skinne, he carryeth it on high vpon a long pole, before the Corps to the place of Buriall. This he doth (as the Rafe fayth) that his friend may have a good horse to carrie him to Heaven: but it is likelier to declare his love towards his dead friend, in that hee will have to dye with him the

Next to the Kingdome of Astracan, that is the furthest part South-eastward of the Russe Dominion, lyeth the Shalcan, and the Countrey of Media : Whither the Ruffe Merchants trade for raw Silkes, Syndon, Saphyon, Skinnes, and other commodities. The chiefe Townes of Media where the Ruffe tradeth, are Derbent (built by Alexander the great, as the Inhabitants fay) and Zamachie, where the staple is kept for raw Silkes. Their manner is, in the Spring time to reuine the Silke-wormes (that lye dead all the Winter) by laying them in the warme Sunne, and (to haften their quickning, that they may fooner goe to worke) to put them into bagges, and fo to hang them under their Childrens armes. As for the Worme called Chrimfin (as wee call it Chrimfon) that maketh coloured Silke, it is bred not in Media, but in Affiria. This trade to Derbent and Samachie for raw Silkes, and other commodities of that Countrey, as allo in Perfia, 60 and Bongbaria, downe the River Volgba, and through the Caspian Sea, is permitted as well to the English, as to the Ruffe Merchants, by the Emperours last Grant at my being there. Which hee accounteth for a very speciall favour, and might prove indeed very beneficiall to our English Merchants, if the Trade were well and orderly vied.

The whole Nation of the Tatters are veterly voide of all Learning, and without written Law. Yet certayne rules they have which they hold by tradition, common to all the Hoerds for the practice of their life. Which are of this fort. First, To obey their Emperons and other Ma Torton sens. pifrates, what former they command shout the publice Service. Secondly, Except for the publice behavior, tall Rules. gytraki, proj. jumi. vog symproma gran, vog propies, etter proj. stemmen je prosper je toe projence eccopies, enery man so hes free and aut of Cantrolomport. Thirds, No private man se posselle gry Lends, hus the whole Camputer to be a se a Crommon. Emership, V o neglett gill destrinesse and vergette of Adaptes, and so content them solves with that which composeth next to hond, for more hardnesse, and to the executing of their Affaires. Fifily, To mears any bale Ating, and to patch their Clouthes, whether there bes my need or not : that when there so made in he we hoppy to maner a partiet Coate. Simily, Rotate or 10 feel from any Stranger whosferous dry feet get, so being Enquire to all most, four to fact, a will fail. nell themislant to them. Somenthly, Tomande their same Hourd and Nation, to bee true in mand and deed. Eightly, To suffer we Stranger to compensation the Realme, if any dee, the fame to hee Bond Laye to him that first taketh him, except fuck Merchants and other, at have the Tattat Bull or Pattore

He Permians and Samoitrahat Ive from Ruffia, North and North east, are thought likewife to hene taken their beginning from the Tarter kinde. And it may partly be gheffed by the Of the Permi. fallion of their Countenance; as having all broad and flat faces, as the Tartars have, except the aus, Samoits. Chircaffee. The Permia ne are accounted for a very ancient people. They are now subject to the and Laper. 20 Rufe. They live by Horsing and trading with their Furres, as dothalfo the Sameyt, that dwel- The Permins.

lath mone towards the North Sea. The Samers hath his name (as the Ruffe faith) of Esting bornbimfelfe sas if in times past, they lived as the Cannibals, eating one another. Which they make more probable, because at this time they eate all kinde of raw flesh, whatsoeuer it bee, even the very Carrion that lyeth in the ditch. But as the Sameits themselves will say, they were called Samoie, that is, of themselves, as though they were indigina, or people bred vpon that very soyle, that never changed their feate from one place to another, as most Nations have done, They are

Subject at this time to the Emperour of Rullia.

I talked with certains of them, and finds that they acknowledge one God : but represent him The Sandas by fuch things as they have most vie and good by. And therefore they worthin the Sunne, the Religion, 30 Ollen, the Loft, and fuch like. As for the Storie of Slate Babe, or the Golden bagge, (which I Slate Babe) haue read in some Mans, and descriptions of these Countries, to bee an Idoll after the forme of Hag. an old Woman) that being demanded by the Priest, gueth them certaine Oracles, concerning the successe and event of things, I found it to bee but a very fable. Onely in the Province of Obdaria upon the Sea lide, neere to the mouth of the great River Obba, there is a Rocke, which naturally (being somewhat helped by imagination) may seeme to beare the shape of a ragged Woman with a Child in her armes (as the Rocke by the North capeane shape of a Frier) where the Obdorian Samons vie much to refort, by region of the gommoditie of the place for Fishing : and there fametime (as their manner is) conceine, and practice their Sorceries, and ominous conje-Cturings about the good, or bad speed of their Journeyes, Fishings, Huntings, and such like.

They are clad in Scale-skinnes, with the havrie, fice outwards downe as low as the knees, The Seminary with their Breezhes and Netherstocks of the same, both men and women. They are all Blacke histic and behayred, naturally beardleffe. And therefore the Men are hardly differred from the Women by haulour. their lookes: faue that the Women weare a locke of hayre downe along both their cares. They line in a manner a wilde and a farage life, rouing still from one place of the Countrey to another, without any propertie of House or Land more to one then to another. Their leader or directer in euery Companie, is their Pape or Prieft.

On the Northide of Ruffie next to Corelia, lyeth the Countrey of Loppie, which reacheth in The Lapres.

length from the furthest point Northward, (towards the North cape) to the furthest part Southeast (which the Rufe calleth Sweemeffe or Holy nois, the English men Cape-grace) about three hundred and fortie fine verft or miles, From Swatteffe to Cantelox, by the way of Verfega 50 (which measure the breadth of that Country) is innetic miles or thereabouts. The whole Countrey in a manner is either Lakes or Mountaines, which towards the Sea fide are called Tondro, because they are all of hard and graggie Rooke, but the inland parts are well furnished with Woods, that grow on the hills fides, the lakes lying betweene. Their dyet is very bars and fimple. Bread they have none, but feed onely vpon Fishand Fowle. They are subject to the Em- No Bread. percur of Raffia, and the two Kings of Sandan and Demmarke : which all exact Tribute and Cuftome of them (as was layd before) but the Emperour of Ruffis beareth the greatest hand ouer them, and exact of them farre more then the reft. The opinion is that they were first tearmed Lappes, of their briefe and thort speach. The Raffe dindeth the whole Nation of the Lappes into two forts. The one they call Nouremenskey Lapary, that is, the Normegian Lappes : because they bee of the Danis Religion. For the Danes and Noruegians, they account for one people.

The other that have no Religion at all, but line as bruite and Heathernth people, without God Wilde Land, in the world, they call Dikey Lopery, or the wilde Lappes. The whole Nation is veterly vulcarned, having not so much as the vie of any Alphabet, or

Cola.

Wirches

Letter among them. For practice of Witch-craft and Sorcerie, they passe all Nations in the the World. Though for the inchanting of thips that fayle along their Coaft (as I have heard it reported) and their giving of winds good to their friends, and contrary to other, whom they meane to hurt by tying of certayne knots vpon a Rope (formewhat hie to the Tale of exchin his meane to man to cynig of the same of the s ming neere their Coaft. Their Wespons are the Long-bow, and Hand-gunne, wherein they excell, alwell for quickneffe to charge and discharge, as for neernesse arche Marke, by reason of excest, a west for quicasses. Consider their continual practice (whereto they are forced) of shooting at wild fowle. Their manner is in Summer time to come downe in great companies to the Sea-fiele, to Warding fe, Code, Kogo, in Summer time to come unwise in great companies and the Bay of Vedagobis, and there to fifth for Cod, Salmon, and But-fifth, which they fill to the 10 Ruffer, Davie, and Norwegians, and now of lare to the English men that trade thirther with Cloth, which they exchange with the Loper and Corelisor, for their Fifth, Oyle, and Furres, whereof allo they have some store. They hold their Mart at Cala, on Saint Peters day, white time the Captayne of Wardhusse (that is Resiant there for the King of Denmarke) must be prefent, or at least send his Deputie to set prices vpon their Stock-fish, Tranc-oyle, Furres, andother Commodities : as also the Ruffe Emperours Customer, or Tribute taker, to receive his Cufrome, which is ever payed before any thing can be bought; or fold. When their fishing is done, their manner is to draw their Carbaffes, or Boats on flioare, and there to leave them with the Keele turned vpwards, till the next Spring-tyde. Their trauell too and fro is vpon Sleds, drawne by the Olen Deere: which they vie to turne a grazing all the Summertime, in an Hand called 30 Wilden (of a very good Soyle compared with other parts of that Country) and towards the Winter time, when the Snow beginneth to fall, they fetch them home againe, for the ve

Sleds drawne with Deere.

Chap. 21. ckfiafticall flate, with Offices,

Oncerning the Gouernment of their Church, it is framed altogether after the manner of the Greeke: as being a part of that Church, and neuer acknowledging the Iurifdicton of the Latine Church, vsurped by the Pope. That I may keepe a better measure in describing their Ceremonies, then they in the ving them (wherein they are infinite) I will note briefly Fuff, what Ecclefacticall Degrees, or Offices they have with the Iurifdiction, and practice of them. Secondly, what Doctrine they hold in matter of Religion. Thirdly, what Lyturgie, or forme \$0 of Seruice they wie in their Churches , with the manner of their administring the Sacriments. Fourthly, what other strange Ceremonies, and Superstitious Denotions are vsed among

The Church Officers.

Their Offices, or Degrees of Church-men, are as many in number, and the fame in a manner both in name and degree, that were in the Westerne Churches. First, they have their Patriarts. then their Metropolites, their Archbifbops, their Oladker, or Bifbops, their Protopopes or Arch triefts, their Deacons, Friers, Monkes, Nunnes, and Eremites.

The Patriarch.

Patriarch of Sio, or Chio.

Their Patriarch, or chiefe Directer in matter of Religion untill this laft veere, was of the Citie of Confiantinople (whom they called the Parriarch of Sio) because being drinen by the Turke out of Constantinople (the Scate of his Empire) he removed to the He Sis, sometimes called Chis, 40 and there placed his Patriarchiall Sea. So that the Emperous, and Clergie of Russia, were wont veerely to fend Gifts thicher, and to acknowledge a Spirituall kind of homage, and subjection due to him, and to that Church. Which custome they have held (as resemeth) ever fince they professed the Christian Religion. Which how long it hatfi bn I could not wel learne, for that they haue no Story or Monument of Antiquitie (that I could heare of) to shew what hath been done in times pall within their Countrey, concerning ofther Church, or Common-wealth matters. Onely I heare a report among them, that about three hundred yeers fince, there was a Mariage betwirt the Emperour of Constantinople, and the Kings Daughter of that Country: who at the first denyed to joynehis Daughter in Mariage with the Greeks Emperour, because he was of the Christian Religion. Which agreeth well with that I find in the Story of Launieu Chal. 50 cacendylas concerning Turkish Affaires in his fourth Booke : where hee speaketh of such a Mariage betwixt lobn the Greeks Emperour, and the Kings Daughter of Sarmatis. And this argueth out of their owne report, that at that time they had not received the Christian Religion: as alfo that they were converted to the Faith, and withall perverted at the very fame time, receiving the Doctrine of the Gospell, corrupted with Superflitions even at the first when they tooke it from the Greeke Church, which it felfe then was degenerate, and corrupted with many Superflitions, and foule Errours, both in Doctrine and Discipline: as may appeare by the Story of Nicophorus Gregorus, in his eighth and ninth Bookes. But as touching the time of their Conuersion to the Christian Faith, I sppose rather that it is mistaken by the Russe, for that which I find in the Polonian Story, the second Booke the third Chapter: where is faid that about the 60 yeere 990. Vladomirus Duke of Ruffia, married one Anne Sifter to Bafilius, and Conftantinus Brothers, and Emperours of Constantinople. Whereupon the Raffe received the Faith and Profesion of Christ. Which though it be somewhat more ancient then the time noted before out of the Ruffe Report, yet it falleth out all to one reckoning, touching this point, viz. in what truth and

finceritie of Doctrine the Ruffe received the first stampe of Religion : for as much as the Greeke Church at that time also was many wayes infected with errour and superstition.

At my being there, the yeere 1,88. came unto the Mosko the Patriarch of Constantinople, or on of the Pa-Sio (called Hieronimo being banished as some sayd) by the Turke, as some other reported by the triarchicallica Greeke Clergie deprived. The Emperour being given altogether to superstitious devotions, gave from Confiantihim great entertaynment Before his comming to Morke, hee had beene in Italy with nople or Sio, to the Pope, as was reported there by some of his company. His arrand was to consult with the Mosto. Emperour concerning these points, First, about a League to passe betwixt him and the King of Spaine, as the meeteft Prince to joyne with him in opposition against the Tirke. To which pur-

10 pole also Ambassages had passed betwire the Russe and the Persian. Likewise from the Georgians to the Emperour of Rullia, to joyne league together, for the inuading of the Turke on all fides of his Dominion : taking the advantage of the simple qualitie of the Turke that now is. This treatie was helped forward by the Emperours Ambassadour of Almayne, sent at the same time to solicite an inuation upon the parts of Polonia, that lye towards Rustand, and to borrow money of the Ruffe Emperour, to pursue the warre for his Brother Maximilian, against the Swedens sonne. now King of Poland. But this confultation concerning a league between the Ruffe and the Spaniard. (which was in some forwardnesse at my comming to Moske, and already one appointed for Ambassage into Spaine) was marred by meanes of the overthrow given to the Spanish King by her Majeitic, the Queene of England, this last yeere. Which made the Russe Emperour and his 20 Councell, to give a fadder countenance to the English Ambassadour at that time : for that they were disappointed of so good a policie, as was this conjunction supposed to bee betwixt them

His fecond purpose (whereto the first served as an introduction) was in revenge of the Turke and the Greeke Clergie, that had thrust him from his seate, to treate with them about the reducing of the Ruffe Church under the Pope of Rome. Wherein it may feeme that comming lately from Rome, hee was fet on by the Pope, who hath attempted the fame many times before. though all invaine : and namely the time of the late Emperour Inan Vafilowich, by one Anthony his Legate. But thought this belike a farre better meane to obtayne his purpose by treatie and mediation of their owne Patriarch. But this not succeeding, the Patriarch fell to a third point 30 of reatie, concerning the relignation of his Patriarchihip, and translation of the Sea from Conflantinople or Scio, to the Citie of Moske. Which was fo well liked, and entertayned by the Emperour (as a matter of high Religion and policie) that no other treatie (specially of forraigne Ambaffages) could bee heard or regarded, till that matter was concluded

The reason wherewith the Patriarch perswaded the translating of his Sea to the Citie of Mosko, were thele in effect. First, for that the Seaps the Patriarch was vnder the Turke, that is enemie to the Faith. And therefore to bee remooued into some other Countrey of Christian profession. Secondly, because the Russe Church was the onely naturall daughter of the Greeke at this time, and holdeth the same Doctrine and Ceremonies with it : the rest being all subject to the Turke, and fallen away from the right profession. Wherein the subtill Greeke to make the bet-

40 ter market of his broken ware, aduanced the honour that would grow to the Emperour, and his Countrey : to have the Patriarchs Seat translated into the chiefe Citie, and seate of his Empire. As for the right of translating the Sea, and appointing his Successour, hee made no doubt of it, but that it pertayned wholly to himfelfe.

So the Emperour and his Councell, with the principall of his Clergie, being affembled at the The Patriarch-Morke, it was determined that the Metropolite of Morke, should become Patriarch of the whole simplerrandles Greeke Church, and have the tamefull Authoritie and Iunifdiction that pertayned before to the tred to Mosfee Patriarch of Constantinople, or Sio. And that it might bee done with more order and solemnitie, the fine and twentieth of Ianuarie, 1 588. the Greeke Patriarch accompanied with the Ruffe Clergie, went to the great Church of Prechefle, or our Ladie, within the Emperours Castle (having

50 first wandred thorow the whole Citie in manner of a Procession, and bleshing the people with his two fingers) where hee made an Oration, and delivered his refignation in an Instrument of writing, and so layed downe his Patriarchicall staffe. Which was presently received by the Metropolite of Moske, and divers other ceremonies vied about the Inauguration of this new

The day was holden very folemne by the people of the Citie, who were commanded to forbeare their workes, and to attend this solemnitie. The great Patriarch that day was honoured with rich Presents sent him from the Emperour and Emptesse, of Plate, cloath of Gold, Furres, &c. carryed with great pompe thorow the streets of Moiks, and at his departing received many gifts more, both from the Emperour, Nobilitie, and Clergie. Thus the Patriarchilhip of Conflan-60 timple, or Sis, (which hath continued fince the Councell of Nice) is now translated to Meske, or they made beleeve that they have a Patriarch with the same right and Authoritie that the other had. Wherein the fubtill Greeke hath made good advantage of their Superitition, and is now gone away with a rich bootie into Poland, whither their Patriarchihip be currant or not.

The matter is not valike to make some Schisme betwirt the Greeke and Roffe Church, if the

Russ- hold his Patriarchship that hee hath so well payed for, and the Greekes Elect another withall, as ' likely they will, whether this man were banished by the Tarke, or deprined by *As they doe and ener fince order of his owne Clergie. Which might happen to give advantage to the Pope, and to bring on uer the Ruffe Church to the Sea of Rome, (to which end peraduenture hee deutsed this Stratagem, and catt in this matter of Schisme among them) but that the Emperours of Russia know well enough, by the example of other Christian Princes, what inconvenience would grow to their State and Countrey, by Subjecting themselves to the Roms & Sea. To which end the late Emperour Inan Valilomeb, was very inquilitiue of the Popes authoritie ouer the Princes of Chris flendome, and fent one of very purpose to Rome, to behold the order and behausour of his Court.

With this Patriarch Hieronymo, was driven out at the same time by the great Turke, one De- 10 metrio Archbishop of Lariffa : who is now in England, and pretendeth the same cause of their banishment by the Turke, (to wit) their not admitting of the Popes new Kalender, for the alteration of the yeere. Which how vnlikely it is, may appeare by these Circumstances. First, becaule there is no such affection, nor friendly respect betwirt the Pope and the Tinke, as that hee fhould banish a Subject for not obeying the Popes ordinance, specially in a matter of some sequel for the alteration of Times within his owne Countries. Secondly, for that hee maketh no such fcruple in deducting of times, and keeping of a just and precise account from the Incarnation of Christ: whom hee doth not acknowledge otherwise then I noted before. Thirdly, for that the favd Patriarch is now at Neples in Italy, where it may be gheffed he would not have gone within the Popes reach, and so neere to his nose, if hee had beene banished for opposing himselfe a- 20 gainst the Popes Decree.

The Parrie archs Iurifdi-

This office of Patriarchship now translated to Mosko, beareth a superiour Authoritie over all the Churches, not onely of Russia, and other the Emperours Dominions, but thorow out all the Churches of Christendome, that were before vinder the Patriarch of Constantinople, or Sio : or at least the Russe Patriarch imagineth himselfe to have the same authoritie. Hee hath under him as his proper Dioceffe the Prouince of Moske, befides other peculiars. His Court or Office is kept at the Mesko.

Two Metropo.

Before the creation of this new Patriarch, they had but one Metropolite, that was called the Metropolite of Moske. Now for more flate to their Church, and new Patriarch, they have two Metropolites, the one of Nonogrod velica, the other of Roftone. Their office is to receive of the 20 Patriarch fuch Ecclefiasticall orders, as hee thinketh good, and to deliner the charge of them ouer to the Archbishops : besides the ordering of their owne Diocesse.

bishiops.

Their Archbishops are foure : of Smolenso, Cazon, Vobsko, and Vologda. The parts of their office is all one with the Metropolites : faue that they have an under lutifdiction, as Suffraganes to the Metropolites, & Superiors to the Bishops. The next are the Vladskeis or Bishops, that are but fixe in all : of Crutitska, of Rezan, of Orfer and Torshock , of Collomenska, of Volodemer, of Susdalla, These have every one a very large Diocesse : as dividing the rest of the whole Countrey among

Ecclefiafficall Iunfdiction.

Their Gentles

The matters pertayning to the Ecclesiasticall jurisdiction of the Metropolites, Archbishops, and Bishops, are the same in a manner that are vied by the Clergie in other parts of Christendome. 40 For besides their authoritie ouer the Clergie, and ordering such matters as are meere Ecclesiasticall, their jurisdiction extendeth to all Testamentarie causes, matters of Marriage, and Dinorcements, some Pleas of iniuries, &c. To which purpose also they have their Officials, or Commisfaries (which they call Boiaren Vladitikey) that are Lay-men of the degree of Dukes, or Gentlemen, that keepe their Courts and execute their Iurisdiction. Which besides their other oppressions ouer the common people, raigne ouer the Priests: as the Dukes and Dracks doe ouer the poore people, within their Precincts. As for the Archbishop or Bishop himselfe, hee beareth no fway in deciding those causes, that are brought into his Court. But if hee would moderate any matter, he must doe it by intreatie with his Gentleman Officiall. The reason is, because these Boiarskey, or Gentlemen officials, are not appointed by the Bulhops, but by the Emperour him- 50 felfe, or his Councell, and are to give account of their doings to none but to them. If the Bishop can intreat at his admission to have the choice of his owne Officiall, it is accounted for a speciall great fauour. But to speake it as it is, the Clergie of Ruffia, as well concerning their Lands and reuenues, as their Authoritie and Iurischion, are altogether ordered and ouer-ruled by the Emperour and his Councell, and have so much, and no more of both as their pleasure doth permit them. They have also there Affistants or severall Counsels (as they call them) of certayne Priests that are of that Diocesse, retiding within their Cathedrall Cities, to the number of foure and twentie a piece. These aduise with them, about the speciall and necessarie matters belonging to their

The Church

Concerning their Rents and Reuenues to maintayne their dignities, it is somewhat large. The 60 Patriarchs yeerely rents out of his Lands (besides other fees) is about 3000. Rubbels or Marcks. The Metropolites and Archbishops, about 2500. The Bishops, some 1000. some 800. some 500.8cc. They have had some of them (as I have heard say) tenor twelvethousand Rubbels2 yeere : as had the Metropolite of Nenograd.

Their

Their Habit or Apparell (when they shew themselves in their Pontificalibus after their folemnell manner is a Mitre on their heads after the Popish fashion, set with Pearle and Precious Stone, a Coape on their backes, commonly of Cloth of Gold, embroydered with Pearle, and a Crossers Staffe in their hands, layed ouer all with Plate of Siluer double gilt, with a Crosse or Sheepherds Crooke at the upperend of it. Their ordinary habit otherwise when they ride or goe abroad, is a Hood on their heads of blacke colour, that hangeth downe their backes, and standeth out like a Bon-grace before. Their vpper Garment (which they call Reis) is a Gowne or Mantell of blacke Damaske, with many Lifts or Gards of white Sattin layed voon it, enery Gard about two fingers broad, and their Crofiers staffe carried before them, To Themselves follow after, bleffing the people with their two fore-fingers, with a marvel-

The Election, and appointing of the Bishops and the rest, pertayneth wholy to the Empe- The Election rour himselfe. They are chosen euer out of the Monasteries : fo that there is no Bishop, Arch. of Bishops, bishop, nor Metropolite, but hath beene a Monke, or Frier before. And by that reason they are. and must all bee vnmarried men, for their Vow of Chastitie when they were first shorne. When the Emperour hath appointed whom he thinketh good, hee is inuefted in the Cathedrall Church of his Diocesse, with many Ceremonies, much after the manner of the Popish Inaugura-

tion. They have also their Deanes, and their Arch-deacons.

As for preaching the Word of God, or any teaching, or exhorting such as are under them, The learning they neither vie it, nor haue any skill of it: the whole Clergiebeing veterly valearned both for and exercise they neither vie is, nor naurany same is the manuscript of the far the first of September (which is the first day of their yeere) and on Saint John Baptists day, to make an ordinary speech to the people, enery Metropolite, Arch-bishop, and Bishop, in his Catherall Church, to this or like effect: That if any bee in malice towards his Neighbour. hee shall leaue off his malice : if any have thought of Treason or Rebellion against his Prince, hee beware of such practice: if hee haue not kept his Falts, and Vowes, nor done his other Duties to the holy Church, hee shall amend that fault, &c. And this is a matter of forme with them, vttered in as many words, and no more, in a manner, then I have heere set downe. Yet the matter is done with that Grace and Solemnitie, in a Polpit of

20 purpole fet vp for this one Act, as if hee were to discourse at large of the whole substance of Distinctie. At the Moste the Emperour himselfe is ever present at this Solemne Ex-

As themselves are void of all manner of Learning, so are they wary to keepe out all meanes that might bring any in : as fearing to have their ignorance and vngodlineffe discouered. To that purpose they have perswaded the Emperors, that it would breed Innovation, and sow danger to their State, to have any nouelty of Learning come within the Realme. Wherein they fay but truth, for that a man of spirit and understanding, belped by Learning and liberall Education, can hardly indure a tyrannicall Gouernment. Some yeeres past in the other Emperours time, there came a Presse and Letters out of Polonia, to the Citie of Merito, where a Printing House was 40 fet vp, with great liking and allowance of the Emperour him elie. Bu: not long after, the house was let on fire in the night time, and the Press and Letters quite burnt up, as was thought by the procurement of the Clergie-men.

Their Priests (whom they call Paper) are made by the Bishops, without any great tryall for Priests. worthinesse of gifts, before they admit them, or Ceremonies in their admission : laue that their heads are shorne (not shauen , for that they like not) about an hand breadth or more in the crowne, and that place anointed with Oyle by the Bishop: who in his admission puttern upon the Priest, fift his Surplesse, and then fetteth a white Crosse on his brest of Silke, or some other matter, which he is to weare eight dayes, and no more : and fogueth him authoritie to say and fing in the Church, and to administer the Sacraments.

They are men vtterly vnlearned, which is no maruell, for as much as their Makers, the Bi-They are men veterity vincarneo, winten a no manufan, or as manufan to manufan so monthly of the standard of t any kind of Learning, no not of the Scriptures themselves, saue to reade and to sing them. Their ordinary charge and function is to lay the Lyturgie, to administer the Sacraments after their manner, to keepe and decke their Idols, and to doe the other Ceremonies vivall in their Churches. Their number is great because their Townes are parted into many small Parishes, without any diferetion for dividing them into competent numbers of Housholds, and people for a just Congregation : as the manner in all places where the meanes is neglected, for increasing of knowledge, and inftruction towards God. Which cannot well be had, where by meanes of an vnequall partition of the people, and Parishes, there followeth a want and vnequalitie of 6c flipend for a fufficient Ministery.

pena tor a tuttoctor manufery.

For their Priefts, it is lawfull to marry for the first time. But if the first Wife dye, a second The Rolls. he cannot take, but he must lose his Priest-hood, and his living withall. The reason they make Priests can out of that place of Saint Paul to Timothy 1.3, 2, not well voterflood, thinking that to bee fpo. marry but ken of diners Wines successinely, that the Apostle speaketh of at one and the same time. If hee once

will needs marrie againe after his first wife is dead, he is no longer called Papa, but Rospapa, or Priest quondam. This maketh the Priests to make much of their Wines, who are accounted as the Matrones, and of best reputation among the women of the Parish.

For the stipend of the Priest, their manner is not to pay him any tenths of Corne, or or the elfe : but he must stand at the deuotion of the people of his Parish, and make vp the Incommes elle: our ne must raun ar trae urusurus or trae peppe or mas a mana ar trae urusurus or tra Seruice within their Churches, their manner is for euery private man to have a Prayer laid for him by the Prieft, vpon any occasion of businesse whatsocuer, whether he ride, goe, faile, plough. or what foeuer elfe he doth. Which is not framed according to the occasion of his businesse, but to at randome, being some of their ordinary and vsuall Church-prayers. And this is thought to be more holy, and effectuall, if it be repeated by the Priests mouth, rather then by his owne. They haue a custome besides to folemnize the Saints day, that is, Patrone to their Church once every yeere. What time all their Neighbours of their Countrey and Parishes about, come in to have Prayers faid to that Saint for themselues, and their friends : and so make an Offering to the Priest for his paines. This Offering may yeeld them some ten pounds a yeere, more or lesse, as the Patrone or Saint of that Church is of credit and estimation among them: The manner is on this day (which they keepe Anniuersary for the Priest, to hire divers of his Neighbour Priests to helpe him : as having more Dishes to dresse for the Saint, then he can well turne his hand ynto. They vie besides to visit their Parishioners houses, with Holy Water, and Perfume, com- 20 monly once a quarter: and so hauing sprinkled, and becensed the goodman and his Wife, with the rest of their houshold, and houshold-stuffe, they receive some Deutotion or less, as the man is of abilitie. This and the rest layd altogether, may make vp for the Priest towards his mayntenance, about thirty or forty Rubbels a yeere : whereof he payeth the tenth part to the Bilhop of the Diocesse.

The Pricas maintenance.

Their Priefts

The Papa or Prieft is knowne by his long Tufts of Haire, hanging downe by his Eares, his Gowne with a broad Cape, and a walking staffe in his hand, For the rest of his Habit, heeis apparelled like the common fort. When he fayth the Lyturgie or Seruice, within the Church, hee hath on him his Surpleffe, and sometimes his Coape, if the day bee more Solemne. They have besides their Papars or Priests, their Churmapapars (as they call them) that is, Black Priess: 30 that may keepe their Benesices, though they be admitted Friers withall within some Monasterie. They seeme to be the very same that were called Regular Priests in the Popish Church Ynder the Priest, is a Deacon in euery Church, that doth nothing but the Office of a Parilli Clerke. As for their Protopapaes, or Arch-priefts, and their Arch-deacons (that are next in election to be their Protopopas) they ferue onely in the Cathedrall Churches.

Friers.

Of Friers they have an infinite rabble farre greater then in any other Countrey, where Popery is professed. Buery Citie, and good part of the Countrey, iwarmeth full of them. For they have wrought (as the Popish Friers did by their Supersition and Hypocrise) that if any part of the Realme be better and sweeter then other, there standeth a Friery or a Monastery dedicated to some Saint.

The number of them is so much the greater, not onely for that it is augmented by the Superfittion of the Countrey, but because the Friers life is the fafest from the Oppressions, and Exactions, that fall vpon the Commons. Which caufeth many to put on the Friers Weed, as the best Armour to beare off such blowes. Besides such as are voluntary, there are divers that are forced to shire themselues Friers, vpon some displeasure. These are for the most part of the chiefe Nobility. Diners take the Monafteries as a place of Sanctuary, and there become Friers, toauoyde some punishment, that they had deserued by the Lawes of the Realme. For if hee geta Monaftery ouer his head, and there put on a Coole before hee bee attached, it is a protection to him for euer against any Law, for what crime soeuer : except it be for Treason. But this Promise goeth withall, that no mancommeth there, (except fuch as are commanded by the Emperour to 50 be received) but he giveth them Lands, or bringeth his stocke with him, and putteth it into the common Treasury. Some bring 2000. Rubbels, and some more. None is admitted under three or foure hundred.

The manner of their Admission is after this fort. First, the Abbot strippeth him of all his Secular or ordinary Apparell. Then he putteth vpon him next to his skinne, a white flamell shirt, with a long Garment ouer it downe to the ground, girded vnto him with a broad Leather Belt. His vpper-most Garment is a Weed of Garras, or Say, for colour and fashion, much like to the vpper Weed of a Chimney-sweeper. Then is his crowne shorne a hand breadth, or more close to the very skinne, and thefe, or like words pronounced by the Abbot, whiles hee clippeth his haire : As these haires are clipped of, and taken from thy head; so now we take thee, and separate thee 60 cleane from the World, and worldly things, &c. This done, hee anointeth his crowne with Oyle, and putteth on his Coole : and so taketh him in among the Fraternitie. They vow perpetual Chastitie, and Abstinence from fiesh.

Befides , their Lands (that are very great) they are the greiteft Merchants in the whole

Countrey, and deale for all manner of Commodities. Some of their Monasteries dispend in Lands, one thousand, or two thousand Rubbels a yeere. There is one Abbey called Troits, that hath in Lands and Fees, the summe of 100000. Rubbels, or Markes a yeere. It is built in manner of a Castle, walled round about, with great Ordnance planted on the wall, and contavneth within it a large breadth of ground, and great varietie of building. There are of Friers within it, (besides their Officers, and other Seruants) about seuen hundred. The Empresse that now is, hath many Vowes to Saint Sergins, that is Patrone there: to intreate him to make her fruitfull, as having no children by the Emperour her Husband. Lightly every yeere shee goeth on Pilgrimage to him from the Mosko, on foot, about eighty English miles, with five or fixe thousand women attending upon her, all in blue Liveries, and foure thousand Souldiers for her Guard. But Saint Sergins hath not yet heard her Prayers, though (they lay) hee hath a speciall gift and facultie that way.

What Learning there is among their Friers, may be knowne by their Bishops, that are the What Learning enter is among user triefs, may be amorned by their Disposal Where The Friest choice men out of all their Monatteries I talked with one of them at the Citie of Flooreds, where The Friest Choice and Company of the Comp (to try his skill) I offered him a Ruffe Testament, and turned him to the first Chapter of Saint Matthews Gotpell. Where hee beganne to reade in very good order. I asked him first what part of Scripture it was, that he had read? he answered, that he could not well tell. How many Euangelifts there were in the New Testament? He faid he knew not. How many Apostles there were! He thought there were twelve. How he should be faved! Whereunto he answered me with a piece of Ruffe Doctrine, that he knew not whether he should be faued, or no:but if God would Poshallowate him, or gravise him so much, as to saue him, so it was . he would bee glad of it: if not, what remedy. I asked him, why hee shoare himselfe a Frier? Hee answered, because he would eate his Bread with peace. This is the Learning of the Friers of Russia, which though it be not to be measured by one, yet partly it may bee ghessed by the ignorance of this man, what is in the reft.

They have also many Nunneries, whereof some may admit none but Noblemens Widowes. Nunneries and Daughters, when the Emperour meaneth to keepe them vnmarryed, from continuing the bloud or stocke, which if he would have extinguished. To speake of the life of their Friers, and Nunnes, it needs not, to those that know the hypocrisie, and vncleannesse of that Cloy-3c fter-brood. The Ruffe himselfe (though otherwise addicted to all Superstition) speaketh so found

ly of it, that it must needs gaine silence of any modest man.

Besides these, they have certayne Eremites, (whom they call Holymen) that are like to those Fremites. Granolophilis, for their life and behauiour : though farre valike for their Knowledge . and Learning. They vie to goe starke naked, saue a clout about their middle, with their haire hanging long, and wildly about their shoulders, and many of them with an Iron coller, or chaine about their neckes, or midst, euen in the very extremitie of Winter. These they take as Prophets, and Strange hards them seeds of mining countries of contents of the seed fort foeuer, they answere nothing, but that it is Po gracum, that is, for their finnes. And if 40 any of them take some piece of sale ware from any mans shop, as he passeth by, to give where he lift, hee thinketh himselfe much beloued or God, and much beholding to the holy Man, for ta-

Of this kind there are not many, because it is a very hard and cold Profeshon, to goe naked in Ruffia, specially in Winter. Among other at this time, they have one at Moske, that walketh naked about the streets, and inueigheth commonly against the State, and Gouernment, especially against the Godonoes, that are thought at this time to be great Oppressors of that Commonb) against the control of the state of the s would take upon him to reproue the old Emperour, for all his crueltie, and oppressions, done to miss. wards his people. His body they have translated of late into a sumptious Church, neere the Em-SC perours Houle in Maste, and have canonized him for a Saint, Many Miracles he doth there (for to the Friers make the people to beleeue) and many Offerings are made vnto him, not only by the people, but by the chiefe Nobilitie, and the Emperour, and Empresse themselves, which vihe that Church with great Denotion. But this last yeere, at my being at Moske, this Saint had il lucke in working his Miracles. For a lame man that had his limmes reflored (as it was pre- Lame Miracles tended by him) was charged by a woman that was familiar with him (beeing then fallen out) that he halted but in the day time, and could leape metrily when hee came home at night. And that he had intended this matter fixe yeeres before. Now hee is put into a Monastery, and there rayleth vpon the Friers, that hired him to have this counterfeit Miricle practifed vpon him. Besides this disgrace, a little before my comming from thence, there were eight slaine with in 60 his Church by hire in a Thunder. Which caused his Bels (that were tingling before all day and night long as in triumph of the Miracles wrought by Bajileo their Saint) to ring somewhat softhigh and hath wrought no little differedit to this Miracle-worker. There was another of great Nichbit the account at Pleike, (called Niebola of Pleike) that did much good, when this Emperours Father Etemier

came to facke the Towne, vpon sufpition of their revolting and Rebellion against him. The Em-

perour, after he had faluted the Eremite, at his lodging, fent him a reward. And the Holy man to requite the Emperour, sent him a piece of raw Fiesh, being then their Lent time. Which the Emperour feeing, bid one to tell him, that he maruelled that the Holy man would offer him flesh to cate in the Lent, when it was forbidden by order of holy Church. And doth Euste (which is as much to fay, as Iacke) thinke (quoth Nicola) that it is vnlawfull to cate a piece of bertle fleih in Lent and not to eate vp fo much mans fleih, as he hath done already. So threatning the Emperour with a prophecy of fome hard aduenture to come vpon him, except he lett murdring of his people, and departed the Towne: he faued a great many mens lives at that time.

This maketh the people to like very well of them, because they are as Pasquils, to note their great mens faults, that no man elfe dare speake of. Yet it falleth out semetime, that for this 10 rude libertie, which they take vpon them, after a counterfeit manner, by imi-ation of Prophets. they are made away in fecret: as was one or two of them, in the last Emperours time, for be-

ing ouer-bold in speaking against his government.

Cb40. 22. Of their Lyturgie, or form of Churchfernice, and their manner of admini ftring the Sacrameats. Their morning Seruice.

Heir morning Seruice they call, Zautrano, that is, Mattint. It is done in this order. The Priest entreth into the Church with his Descon following him. And when he is come to the middle of the Church, he beginneth to fay with a loude voyce : Blastaner Uladika (that 15) Bleffe vs heavenly Paftor: meaning of Christ. Then hee addeth, In the name of the Father, and of the Sonne, and of the hely Ghost, one very God in Trinitie: and Aspedy pomelui, or, Lord have merty vpon vs , Lord have mercy vpon vs , Lord have mercy vpon vs : repeated three times. This done, 18 he marcheth on towards the Chancell, or Santium Santiorum, (as they vieto call it) and io entreth into the Scharfuey Dwere, or the Heavenly Doore: which no man may enter into , but the Priest onely. Where standing at the Altar, or Table (set neere to the upper wall of the Chancell) he fayeth the Lords Prayer, and then againe Afrody pomelus, Ct, Lord have merey upon vi, Lord have mercy upon vs, &c. pronounced twelve times. Then praifed be the Trimitie, the Father, the Sonne, and boly Ghost, for euer and euer. Whereto the Deacons, and People fay, Amen. Next after, the Priest addeth the Pfalmes for that day, and beginneth with, O come let us worship, and fall downe before the Lord, &c, and therewithall himselfe, with the Deacons, and People, all turne themselues towards their Idols, or Images, that hang on the wall, and eressing themselues, bon downe three times, knocking their heads to the very ground. After this, he readeth the Ten Com-30 maridements, and Athanassis Creed, out of the Service Books. This being done, the Deacon that flandeth without the Heavenly Doore, or Chancell, readeth

Legend.

a piece of a Legend, out of a written Booke, (for they have it not in Print) of some Saints life, miracles, &c. This is divided into many parts, for every day in the yeere, and is read by them with a plaine finging note, not value to the Popish tune, when they fung their Gospels. After all this (which reacheth to an houre and an haife, or two houres of length) he addeth certaine set Collects, or Prayers upon that which he hath read out of the Legend before: and so enderh his Seruice. All this while stand burning before their Idols, a great many of Waxe candles, (whereof iome are of the bigneffe of a mans waste) vowed, or enioyned by penance, vpon the people of the Parish.

Candles. Compline.

About nine of the clocke in the morning, they have another Service, called Obeidna, (or Compline) much after the order of the Popush Service, that bare that name. If it be some High or Festival day, they furnish their Service beside, with Bleffed bee the Lord God of Ifrael, &c.

Their euening Seruice, is called Vecherna, where the Prieft beginneth with Blallang Ulabba, as he did in the morning, and with the Pfalmes appointed for the Vecberna. Which being read, he fingeth, My foule doeth magnifie the Lord, &c. And then the Prieft, Deacons, and People, all with one voice, fing, Aspedy pomelui, or Lord have merry upon vs, thirty times together. Whereunto the Boyes that are in the Church , answere all with one voice , rolling it vp so fast, as their lips can goe : Very, Very, Very, Very, or, Praife, Praife, Praife, &c. thirty timestogether, 40 with a very strange noise. Then is read by the Prieft, and vpon the Holidayes sung, the first Pfalme : Bleffed is the man, &c. And in the end of it , is added , Alleluia, repeated ten times. The next in order is some part of the Gosp-Il read by the Priest, which hee endeth with Alleluia repeated three times. And so having said a Collect in remembrance of the Saint of that day, hee endeth his evening Service. All this while the Priess standard above at the Altar, or high Table, within the Chancell, or Santium Santiorum, whence hee never moveth all the Seruice time. The Deacon, or Deacons (which are many in their Cathedrall Churches) it and without the Chancell by the Scharfuey Dware, or Heanenly Doore: for within they may not be seene all the Service time, though other wife their Office is to sweepe and keepe it, and to set up the Waxe candles before their Idols. The people stand together the whole Seruice time in the body of the Church, and some in the Church Porch, for Piew, or Seat they have none within their

The manner Baptilme.

The Sacrament of Baptisme they administer after this manner. The child is brought vnto the Church (and this is done within eight dayes after it is borne) if it bee the child of some

Nobleman, it is brought with great pompe in a rich Sled or Wagon, with Chaires and Cushions of cloth of Gold, and fuch like fumptuous flew of their best furniture. When they are come to the Church, the Priest standeth ready to receive the child within the Church Porch, with his Tub of water by him. And then beginneth to declare vnto them, that they have brought a little Infidell to be made a Christian, &c. This ended, he teacheth the Witnesses (that are two or three) in a certaine fet forme out of his Booke, what their dutie is in bringing up the child after he is baptifed. vz. That he must be taught to know God, and Christ the Saujour. And because God is of great majestie, and wee must not presume to come vnto him without Mediators (as the manner is when we make any funt to an Emperour, or great Prince) therefore they must to teach him what Saints are the best, and chiefe Mediators, &c. This done, he commandeth the Deuill in the name of God after a conjuring manner, to come out of the water; and so after certaine Prayers he plungeth the child thrife ouer head and eares. For this they hold to bee a point necessary, that no part of the child be vndipped in the water.

The words that beare with them the forme of Baptilme vttered by the Prieft, when he dippeth in the child, are the very same that are prescribed in the Gospell, and yied by vs. 12. In the name of the Father, and of the Sonne, and of the boly Ghoff. For that they thould alter the forme of the words, and fay, by the holy Ghost, (as I have heard that they did) following certains Heretikes of the Greeke Church, I tound to be vntrue, as well by report of them that have beene often at their Baptismes, as by their Booke of Lyimrete it felte, wherein the order of Baptisme

20 is precifely fet downe.

When the childe is baptifed, the Priest layeth Oyle and Salt tempered together upon the Oyle and Salt forehead, and both ides of his face, and then you his mouth, drawing it along with his finger ouer the childs lips (as did the Popith Prietts) faving withall certaine Privers to this effect: that God will make him a good Christian, &c. all this is done in the Church Porch. Then is the child (as being now made a Christian, and meet to be received within the Church Doore) carried into the Church, the Priest going before, and there he is presented to the chiefe Idoll of Presented. the Church, being layd on a Cushion before the feet of the Image, by it (as by the Mediator) to be commended vnto God. If the child be ticke, or weake (specially in the Winter) they vie to make the water luke warme. After Baptisme the manner is to cut off the haire from the childs Cutting off 30 head, and having wrapped it within a piece of Waxe to lay it vp as a Relique or Monument in haire.

a fecret place of the Church. This is the manner of their Baptisme, which they account to be the best and perfectest forme. As they doe all other parts of their Religion, received (as they by), by tradition from the beft Church, meaning the Greeke. And therefore they will take great paines to make a Profelyte, or Profelyte Conuert, either of an Infidell, or of a forreine Christian, by rebapting him after the Ruffe manner. When they take any Tartar prisoner , commonly they will offer him life , with condition to be baptifed. And yet they perswade very few of them to redeeme their life so : because of the naturall hatred the Tartar beareth to the Ruffe, and the opinion he hath of his fashood, and iniuffice. The yeere after Mosko was fired by the Chrim Tartar, there was taken a Discommerfey, 40 one of the chiefe in that exploit with three hundred Tartars more : who had all their lives of - Tartars choose

fered them if they would be baptifed after the Ruffe manner. Which they refuled all to doe, to die rather with many reproches against those that perswaded them. And so being carried to the River then turne Mosko (that runneth through the Citie) they were all baptifed after a violent manner : being thrust downe with a knock on the head into the water, through an hole made in the Ice for that purpose. Of Lieflanders that are captines, there are many that take on them this second Ruffe Rebaptifings Baptisme to get more libertie, and somewhat belides towards their living, which the Empe-

rour ordinarily vieth to give them.

Of Englishmen fince they frequented the Countrey there was never any found, that fo much forgot God, his Faith, and Countrey, as that he would be content to be baptifed Ruffe, for any respect of feare, preferment, or other meanes whatsoeuer: faue onely Richard Relph, that fol-To lowing before an vngodly trade, by keeping a Caback (against the order of the Country) and being put off from that trade, and spoiled by the Emperours Officers of that which he had, entred himselfe this last yeere into the Russe Profession : and to was rebaptised, living now asmuch an Idolater, as before he was a Rioter, and unthrifty person.

Such as thus receiue the Ruffe Bap:isme , are first carried into some Monasterie to bee instru-Eted there in the doctrine and ceremonies of the Church. Where they vie these ceremonies. First, they put him into a new and fresh sute of apparell, made after the Rasse fashion, and set a Coronet, or (in Summer) a Garland vpon his head. Then they anoint his head with Oyle, and put a Waxe candle light into his hand: and so pray over him foure times a day, the space 60 of feuen dayes. All this while he is to abstaine from fielh, and white meats. The feuen dayes being ended, he is parified and washed in a Bath-stoue, and so the eight day hee is brought into the Church, where he is taught by the Friers how to behaue himselfe in presence of their Idols, by ducking downe, knocking of the head, croffing himselfe, and such like gestures, which are the greatest part of the Ruffe Religion.

The admini-Bring of the

The Sacrament of the Lords Supper they receive but once a yeere, in their great Lent time, a littlebefore Eafter. Three at the most are admitted at one time, and neuer aboue. The manner firing of the Lords Supper, of their communicating, is thus. First, they confesse themselves of all their sinnes to the Priest (whom they call) their ghoftly Father. Then they come to the Church, and are called vo to the Communion Table, that flandeth like an Altar, a little remoued from the vpper end of the Church, after the Dutch manner. Heere first they are asked of the Priest, whether they he the country, area the same of the country area of the country area. fiver, No, they are taken to the Table. Where the Priest beginneth with certayne vivall Prayers, the Communicants standing in the meane while with their armes folded one within ano. ers, the Communication of Mourners. When these prayers are ended, the Priest taketh a Spoone 10 and filleth it full of claret Wine. Then hee putteth into it a small piece of Bread, and tempereth them both together: and so delivereth them in the spoone to the Communicants, that stand in order, speaking the vsuall words of the Sacrament. Estethis, G. Drinkethis, G. both at one time without any paule.

Communion

After that hee deliuereth them againe Bread by it selfe, and then Wine carded together with alittle warme water, to represent Bloud more rightly (as they thinke) and the water withall. that flowed out of the fide of Christ. Whiles this is in doing the Communicants vnfold their armes. And then folding them againe, follow the Priest thrice round about the Communion table, and so returne to their places againe. Where having sayd certayne other prayers, hee difmiffeth the Communicants, with charge to bee merrie, and to cheere vp themselves for the seun 20 dayes next following. Which being ended, hee enjoyneth them to fait for it as long time after. Which they vie to observe with very great denotion, eating nothing else but Bread and Salt, except a little Cabbage, and some other Herbe or Root, with water or quasse Mead for

This is their manner of administring the Sacraments. Wherein what they differ from the institution of Christ, and what Geremonies they have added of their owne, or rather borrowed of the Greeker, may eafily bee noted. Heir chiefest errours in matter of Faith I finde to bee these. First, concerning the Word of

Chap. 23. Of the Do-Etrine of the Ruffe Church, & what errors it noldeth. 1. Their difallowing of certaine parts of the Canonical

God it selfe they will not read publikely certayne Bookes of the Canonicall Scripture, as 10 the bookes of Moles : specially the foure last, Exodus, Leutieus, Numeri, and Denteronomie. which they say are all made disauthentique, and put out of vie by the comming of Christ: as not able to difference the difference betwixt the Morall and the Ceremonial Law. The bookes of the Prophets they allow of, but reade them not publikely in their Churches, for the fame reason : because they were but directers vnto Christ, and proper (as they say) to the Nation of the Iems. Onely the Booke of Pfalmes they have in great estimation, and fing and say them daily in their Churches. Of the New Testament they allow and reade all, except the Renelation: which therefore they reade not (though they allow it) because they understand it not, neither have the like occasion, to know the fulfilling of the Prophecies contayned within it, concerning especially the Apostacie of the Antichristian Church, as have the Westerne Churches. Notwithstanding, 40 they have had their Autobrifts of the Greeke Church, and may finde their ownefalling off, and the punishments for it by the Turkish invasion in the Prophecies of that Booke. Secondly, (which is the fountagine of the rest of all their corruptions both in Doctrine and

2. Traditions equallto the holy Scripture.

Church, and fo vnto them.

3. The Church to have foueraigne authoritie in inter. preting the Scriptures. 4. The holy Ghoft to proceed from the Father onely. .Christ not fole Mediator Saint Niceles

Images.

firming that they have the true and right Traditions, delivered by the Apostles to the Greeke Thirdly, that the Church (meaning the Greeke, and specially the Patriarch and his Synod, as the head of the reft) having a soueraigne Authoritie to interpret the Scriptures, and that all are bound to hold that Interpretation, as found and authentique. Fourthly, concerning the Divine nature and the three Persons, in the one substance of God,

Ceremonies) they hold with the Papists, that their Church Traditions are of equal authoritie

with the written Word of God. Wherein they preferre themselues before other Churches : af-

that the holy Ghoil proceedeth from the Father onely, and not from the Sonne.

Fiftly, about the office of Christ, they hold many foule errours, and the same almost as doth the Popish Church : namely, that hee is the sole Mediatour of redemption, but not of intercession. Their chiefe reason (if they bee talked withall) for defence of this errour, is that vnapt and foolish comparison, betwixt God, and a Monarch or Prince of this world, that must bee sued vnto by Mediatours about him : wherein they give speciall preferment to some aboue others, as to the bleffed Virgin whom they call Prochefte, or vindefiled, and Saint Nicolas, whom they call Scora his 300 Angels pomefaick, or the Speedy beiper, and fay, that hee hath three hundred Angels of the chiefelt appointed by God to attend vpon him. This hath brought them to an horrible excesse of Idolatrie, af- 60 ter the groffest and prophanest manner, giving vnto their Images all religious worthip of Prayer, Thankelgiuing, Offerings and Adoration, with proftrating and knocking their heads to the ground before them, as to God himfelfe. Which because they doe to the Picture, not to the portraiture of the Saint, they fay they worship not an Idoll, but the Saint in his Image, and so ofCHAP. I. Ruffe opinions of Saluation and Damnation. Abstinence, Marriage, 453

fend not God : forgetting the Commandement of God, that forbiddeth to make the Image or likenesse of any thing, for any Religious worship, or vie whatsoeuer. Their Church walls are verie full of them, richly hanged and fet foorth with Pearle and Stone, vpon the smooth Table, Though some also they have embossed, that slicke from the board almost an inch outwards. They call them Chudonodites, or their Miracle workers : and when they prouide them to fet up in their Churches, in no cale they may fay, that they have bought the Image, but Exchanged money for it.

Sixtly, for the meanes of Iudification, they agree with the Papifts, that it is not by Faith one. 6. Iudification ly apprehending Christ, but by their Workes also. And that Open operations, or the worke for the by workes.

10 worke fake, must needs please God. And therefore they are all in their numbers of Prayers. Fafts, Vowes, and Offerings to Saints, Almes deeds, Croffings and fuch like, and carrie their numbring Beads about with them continually, as well the Emperour and his Nobilitie, as the common people, not onely in the Church, but in all other publike places, specially at any set or solemne meeting, as in their Fasts, law Courts, common Consultations, entertaynment of Ambalfadours, and fuch like.

Secrethly, they say with the Papifts, that no man can be affured of his saluation, till the sen- 7. Saluation tence be passed at the day of Judgement.

Eightly, they vie auricular Confession, and thinke they are purged by the very action from 6 8. Auricular many finnes, as they confesse by name, and in particular to the Priest.

Ninthly, they hold three Sacraments, of Baptifme, the Lords Supper, and the last Anothing or 9. Three Sa-Unction. Yet concerning their Sacrament of extreame Vnction, they hold it not so necessarie craments, to faluation as they doe Baptisme, but thinke it a great curse and punishment of God, if any dye

Tenthly, they thinke there is a necessitie of Baptisme, and that all are condemned that dye that die wish without it.

Eleventh, they rebaptife as many Christians (not being of the Greeke Church) as they convert 11. Anabapto their Ruffe profession : because they are divided from the true Church, which is the Greeke, time.

Twelfth, they make a difference of Meates and Drinkes, accounting the vie of one to be more 12, Difference 30 holy then of another. And therefore in their fet Fasts they forbeare to cate flesh, and white of meates. meates (as wee call them) after the manner of the Popilh superstition : which they observe so firicily, and with such blinde denotion, as that they will rather die, then eate one bit of Flesh.

Egges or fuch like, for the health of their bodies in their extreame ficknesse. Thirteenth, they hold Marriage to bee vulawfull for all the Clergie men, except the Priests 13. Marriago onely, and for them also after the first Wife, as was sayd before. Neither doe they well allow of for some perit in Lay-men after the second marriage. Which is a pretence now vied against the Emperours sons valantall onely Brother, a childe of fixe yeeres old : who therefore is not Prayed for in their Churches, (as their manner is otherwise for the Princes bloud) because hee was borne of the fixt marriage, and fo not legitimate. This charge was given to the Priests by the Emperour himselfe, by procure-

40 ment of the Godones : who make him beleeve, that it is a good policie to turne away the liking of the people from the next successour.

Many other falle opinions they have in matter of Religion. But these are the chiefe, which they hold, partly by meanes of their traditions (which they have received from the Greeke Church) but specially by ignorance of the holy Scriptures. Which notwithstanding they have in the Polonian tongue, (that is all one with theirs fome few words excepted) yet few of them reade them with that godly care which they ought to doe : neither have they (if they would) Bookes sufficient of the old and new Testament for the common people, but of their Lyturgic onely, or Booke of common service, whereof there are great numbers. Which notwithflanding it is not to bee doubted, but that having the Word of God in some fort (though without the or-50 dinarie meanes to attaine to a true fenfe and vnderstanding of it) God hath also his number among

them. As may partly appeare by that which a Ruffe at Moske fayd in fecret to one of my Seruants, speaking against their Images and other superstitions : That God had given vnto England light to day, and might give it to morrow (if hee pleased) to them. As for any Inquintion or proceeding against men for matter of Religion, I could heare of Inquisition.

none : faue a few yeeres fince against one man and his wife, who were kept in a close Prison the space of eight and twentie yeeres, till they were over-growne into a deformed fashion, for their hayre, nayles, colour of count mance, and such like, and in the end were burned at Mosko, in a small House set on fire. The cause was kept secret, but like it was for some part of truth in matter of Religion : though the people were made to beleeue by the Priests and Friers, that they 60 held fome great and damnable Herefie.

He manner of making and folemnizing their Marriages, is different from the manner of o- Otthe manner ther Countries. The man (though hee neuer faw the woman before) is not permitted to of tolemnihaue any fight of her all the time of his wooing: which hee doth not by him felfe, but by his Marriages.

Mother

Mother or some other ancient woman of his kinne or acquaintance. When the liking is taken (as well by the Parents as by the parties themselves, for without the knowledge and consentor the Parents, the contract is not lawfull) the Fathers on both fides, or fuch as are to them in flead of Fathers, with their other chiefe friends, haue a meeting and conference about the dowrie, or rathers, with the commonly very large after the abilitie of the parents; so that you shall have a Market man (as they call them) give a thousand Rubbels, or more with his Daughter.

The manner

454

As for the man it is neuer required of him, nor standeth with their custome to make any joyn-The manner of indowment ter in recompence of the dowrie. But in case hee haue a Child by his Wife, shee enjoyeth a third deale after his deceale. If he have two Children by her or more, the is to have a courtefe more, at deale after his accesse. If he made two commencery net of mode, in the base where the difference of the husband. If the husband depart without life by his wife, here is returned 10 home to her friends without any thing at all, saue onely her dowrie: if the husband leave fo much behind him in goods. When the agreement is made concerning the downie, they figue Bonds one to the other, as well for the payment of the dowrie, as the performing of the Marie age by a certayne day. If the woman were neuer married before, her Father and friends are bound besides to assure her a Maiden. Which breedeth many brabbles and quarrels at Law, if the man take any conceit concerning the behaulour and honeftie of his wife,

Thus the contract being made, the parties begin to fend tokens the one to the other, the Woman first, then afterwards the Man, but yet see not one another till the Marriage bee solemnized. On the Eue before the marriage day, the Bride is carryed in a Collimage, or Coach, or in a Sled (if it bee winter) to the Bridegroomes house, with her marriage Apparell and Bed-ftead so with her, which they are to lye in. For this is ever provided by the Bride, and is commonly vorie faire, with much cost bestowed vpon it. Heere she is accompanied all that night by her Mother and other women : but not welcommed, nor once feene by the Bridegroome himfelfe.

Ceremonies in Marriages.

Ring.

Loafe.

When the time is come to have the marriage folemnized, the Bride hath put vpon hera kinde of Hood, made of fine Knit-worke or Lawne, that couereth her head, and all her body downe to the middle. And so accompanied with her friends, and the Bridegroome with his, they goe to Church all on Horsebacke, though the Church be neare hand, and themselues but of very meane degree. The words of contract and other ceremonies in folemnizing the Marriage, are much after the order, and with the same words that are vsed with vs : with a Ring also given to the Bride. Which being put on, and the words of contract pronounced: the Brides hand is delivered 30 into the hand of the Bridegroome, which standeth all this while on the one side of the Altarot Table, and the Bride on the other. So the marriage knot being knit by the Prieft, the Bride commeth to the Bridegroome (Randing at the end of the altar or table) and falleth downe at his feet, knocking her Head voon his Shooe, in token of her subjection and obedience. And the Bridegroome againe, casteth the lappe of his Gowne or vpper garment ouer the Bride, in token of his dutie to protect and cherish her ...

Then the Bridegroome and Bride, standing both together at the Tables end, commeth first the Father and the other friends of the Bride, and bow themselves downe low to the Bridegroome : and so likewise his friends bow themselves to the Bride, in token of affinitie and love euer after betwixt the two kindreds. And withall, the Father of the Bridegroome offereth to 40 the Priest a loafe of Bread, who delivereth it straight againe to the Father and other friends of the Bride, with attestation before God and their Idols, that hee deliner the downe wholly and truely at the day appointed, and hold loue euer after, one kindred with another. Whereupon they breake the Loafe into pieces, and eate of it, to testifie their true and fincere meanings, for performing of that charge, and thenceforth to become as graines of one Loafe, or menof

These ceremonies being ended, the Bridegroome taketh the Bride by the hand, and so they goe on together with their friends after them towards the Church porch. Where meet them certaine with pots and cups in their hands, with Mead and Ruffe Wine. Whereof the Bridegroome taketh first a Charke, or little cup full in his hand, and drinketh to the Bride : who opening her 50 Hood or Vale below, and putting the Cup to her mouth underneath it (for being leene of the Bridegroome) pledgeth him againe. Thus returning all together from the Church, the Bridegroome goeth not home to his owne, but to his Fathers house, and shee likewise to hers, where either entertayne their friends apart. At the entring into the Houle, they vie to fling Corne out of the windowes vpon the Bridegroome and Bride, in token of plentie and fruitfulnesse to bee

Silence:

When the Eucuing is come, the Bride is brought to the Bridegroomes Fathers house, and there lodgeth that night, with her Vayle or couer still ouer her head. All that night she may not speake one word (for that charge shee receiveth by tradition from her Mother, and other Matrons her friends) that the Bridegroome must neither heare, nor see her, till the day after the 60 marriage. Neither three dayes after, may she bee heard to speake, saue certaine few words at the Table in a fet forme, with great manners and recerence to the Bridegroome: If sheebehaue herfelfe otherwife, it is a great prejudice to her credit and life euer after: and will highly bee diffiked of the Bridegroome himfelte.

After the third day, they depart to their owne, and make a Feaft to both their friends together. The marriage day, and the whole time of their festivall, the Bridegroome hath the honour to be called Moloday Knez, or young Duke, and the Bride Moloday Knezar, or young Dutcheffe,

In living with their wives, they shew themselves to be but of a barbarous condition : vsing them as feruants, rather then wines. Except the Noble-women, which are, or feeme to bee of more estimation with their hushands, then the rest of meaner fort. They have this foule abuse, contrary to good order, and the Word of God it selfe, that vpon dislike of his wife, or other cause whatsoeuer, the man may goe into a Monasterie and shire himselfe a Frier, by pretence of deuotion : and so leave his wife to shift for her selfe so well as shee can-

"He other Ceremonies of their Church, are many in number : especially, the abuse about the figne of the Croffe, which they fet vp in their high wayes, in the tops of their Churches, Of the other and in enery doore of their houses, figuing themselves continually with it on their forcheads & Ceremonics breafts with great deuotion, as they will leeme by their out ward geiture. Which were leffe of or the Raffe fence, if they gaue not withall that religious reuerence and worthip which is due to Church.

The figne of God onely, and vsed the dumbe show, and signing of it instead of thanksgiving, and of all the Gossichow other duties which they owe vato God. When they rise in the morning, they goe commonly a consider our in the fight of some steeple that hath a Crosse on the top; and so bowing themselves towards other desocithe Croffe, figne themselues withall on their foreheads and breafts. And this is their thankigi- ons. uing to God for their nights reft, without any word speaking, except peraduenture they say, Affody Pomelny, ot Lord have mercie upon vi. When they fit downe to meat, and rife againe from it, the thankiguing to God, is the croffing of their foreheads and brefts. Except it be some few that adde peraduenture a word or two of some ordinary prayer, impertinent to that purpose. When they are to giue an oath for the deciding of any controuerfie at Law, they dee it by (wearing by the Croffe, and kiffing the feet of it, making it as God, whose name onely is to bee vied in fuch triall of Iustice. When they enter into any house (where ever there is an Idoll hanging on the wall) they figne themselues with the Croffe, and bow themselues to it. When they begin any worke, bee it little or much, they arme themselues first with the figne of the Croffe. 30 And this commonly is all their prayer to God for good speed of their businesse. And thus they ferue God with croffes, after a croffe and vaine manner: not with franding what the Croffe of

Turkes in comparison of themselues (and so they will say) because they bow not themselues when they meet with the Croffe, nor figne themselves with it, as the Ruffe manner is, They have Holy-water in like vie and estimation, as the Popish Church hath, But heerein Holy-water, they exceed them, in that they doe not onely hollow their Holy-water (tockes, and tubsfull of water, but all the Rivers of the Countrey once every yeere. At Marke it is done with great Hallowing of water, but an inclinate with Country once easily yette. At Onesign it is none with great Hallowi pompe and folemnitie: the Emperour himselfe being present at it with all his Nobilitie, mar-Ricers, ching through the streets towards the Riuer of Monkey, in manner of Procession, in this order

Christis, nor the power of it. And yet they thinke all strangers Christians, to be no better then

40 as followeth. First goe two Deacons, with banners in their hands, the one of Precheffe (or our Lady) the other of Saint Michael fighting with his Dragon. Then follow after the rest of the Deacons, and the Prices of Merko, two and two in a ranke, with Coaps on their backes, and their Idols at their brefts, carried with girdles or flings, made fast about their necks, Next the Priests come their Bishops in their Pontificalibus : then the Friers, Monkes, and Abbots : and after the Patriarches in very tich attire, with a Ball or Sphere on the top of his Myter, to fignific his voluerfalitie ouer that Church. Last commeth the Emperour with all his Nobilitie. The whole traine is of a mile long, or more. When they are come to the Riuer, a great hole is made in the Ice, where the Market is kept of a road and a halfe broad, with a stage round about it to keepe off the presse. Then beginneth the Patriarch to say certaine prayers, and conjureth to the Deuill to come out of the water; and so casting in Sak, and centing it with Frankincenie, maketh the whole River to become Holy-water. The morning before, all the people of Make

vic to make croffes of chaulke ouer cuery doore and window of their houses; least the Deuill being conjured out of the water, should flye into their houses.

When the Ceremonies are ended you shalse the black Guard of the Emperors house, & then the rest of the Towne, with their pailes and buckers to take off the hallowed water for drinke, and other vies. You shall also see the women dip in their children over head and cares, and many men and women leape into it, fome naked, fome with their clothes on, when fome man would thinke his finger would freeze off, if he should but dip it into the water. When the men have done, they bring their horfe to the River to drinke of the fanctified water, and so make 60 them as holy as a horse. Their set day for the solemne action of hallowing their Rivers, is that we call Twelftb-day. The like is done by other Bishops in all parts of the Realme.

Their manner is allo to give it to their ficke in their greatest extremitie: thinking that it will Inter manner is anoto guest to their to God. Whereby they kill many, through their vnreaeither recouer them, or fanctifie them to God. Whereby they kill many, through their vnreafonable superstittion, as did the Lord Borris his onely some, at my being at the Aleke: whom his water

Gruell blind-

he killed (as was faid by the Phylitians) by powring into him cold Holy-water, and prefer-Gruellblind-neife of uper- ting him naked into the Church, to their Saint Bafiles, in the cold of Winter in an extremitie of fickeneffe.

They have an Image of Christ, which they call Normehi, (which fignifieth as much as Made without hands) for so their Priests, and superstition withall perswadeth them it was. This in their Proceffions they carry about with them on high vpon a pole, enclosed within a Pixe, made like a Lanthorne, and doe reuerence to it as to a great myflerie.

Brewing with

At every brewing their manner is likewife to bring a dish of their woort to the Priest within the Church; which being hollowed by him, is powred into the brewing, and so gueth it fush a vertue, as when they drinke of it they are feldome fober. The like they doe with the first fruits of their Corne in Harueft.

Palm-funday.

They have another Ceremony on Palm-funday, of ancient tradition : what time the Patriarch rideth through the Mosks, the Emperour himselfe holding his horse bridle, and the people crying Hofama, and spreading their vpper garments under his horse feet. The Emperour hath of the Patriarch for his good service of that day two hundred Rubbels of standing penfion. Another pageant they have much like to this, the weeke before the Natinitie of Christ. when euery Bishop in his Cathedrall Church, setteth forth a shew of the three children in the When earry mine is a season of the control of the c der, by the Chaldeans (as they call them) that run about the Towne all the twelue dayes, dif- 10 guifed in their players coats, and make much good foort for the honor of the Bifhops pageant. At the Moske, the Emperour himselfe, and the Empresse neuer faile to be at it, though it be bat the same matter plaid enery yeere, without any new invention at all.

Fafts.

Befides their fafts on Wednesdayes, and Fridayes throughout the whole yeere, (the one because they say Christ was fold on the Wednesday, the other because he suffered on the Friday) they have foure great Fasts or Lents every yeere. The first, (which they call their great Lent) is at the same time with ours. The second, about Mid-summer. The third, in Haruest time, The fourth, about Hallontide : which they keepe not of pollicie, but of meere superstition, Intietr great Lent, for the first weeke, they eat nothing but bread and falt, and drinke nothing but water, neither meddle with any matter of their vocation, but intend their firining and falling on 10 ly. They have also three Vigils, or Wakes in their great Lent, which they call Stoiania and the last Friday their great Vigil, as they call it. What time the whole Parish must be present in the Church, and watch from nine a clocke in the Euening, till fixe in the morning, all the while standing, saue when they fall downe and knocke their heads to their Idols, which must bee an hundred and seucntie times just through the whole night.

Vigils. Burialls.

About their burialls alfo, they have many superstitious and prophane Ceremonies : as putting within the finger of the corps, a letter to Saint Nicolas : whom they make their chiefe mediatour, and as it were the porter of heaven gates, as the Papiffs doe their Pater.

In Winter time, when all is conered with snow, and the ground so hard frozen, as that no spade nor pick-axe can enter their manner is not to bury their dead, but to keepe the bodies (fo ma- 40 ny as die all the Winter time) in an house, in the suburbs, or out-parts of the Towne, which they call Bobsedom, that is, Gods house: where the dead bodies are pyled up together, like billets on a woodftacke, ashard with the frost as a verie stone, till the Spring-tide come, and resolueth the frost : what time eueric man taketh his dead friend, and committeth him to the ground,

Monehs minds

They have befides their yeeres and moneths mindes for their friends departed. What time they have prayers faid ouer the grave by the Prieft : who hath a peny ordinary for his paines. When any dieth, they have ordinary women mourners, that come to lament for the dead partie : and frand howling ouer the body after a prophane and heathenish manner (sometimes in the house, sometimes bringing the body into the back-fide, asking him what he wanted, and 50 what he meant to die. They bury their dead, as the party vied to goe, with coat, hofe, bootts, hat, and the rest of his apparell.

Many other vaine and superstitious Ceremonies they have, which were long and tedious to report. By these it may appeare how farre they are fallen from the true knowledge, and practice of Christian Religion, having exchanged the Word of God for their vaine Traditions, and brought all to externall and ridiculous Ceremonics, without any regard of Spirit and Truth, which God requireth in his true worship.

Chap. 26. Of the Empe. rours domeflicke, or pri-

The Emperours private behaviour, so much as may be, or is meet to bee knowne, is after this manner. Hee riseth commonly about source a clock in the morning. After his appar- so relling and washing, in commeth his ghoftly Father, or Priest of his chamber, which is named in their tongue, Otetz Duhouna, with his Crosse in his hand, where with he blesseth him, laying it first on his forchead, then voon his cheekes, or fides of his face and then offereth him the end of it to kiffe. This done, the Clerke of the Croffe (called Chreib) Deyack Profery) bringeth

into his Chamber, a painted Image, representing the Saint for that day; for enery day with into his Champer, a painted image, representing an admit of that day; This hee placeth among the His private them hath his femeral! Saint, as it were the Patrone for that day. This hee placeth among the His private rest of his Image Gods, wherewithall his Chamber is decked, as thicke almost as the wall can Prayer. beare . with Lampes and Waxe-candles burning before them. They are very coftly and gorgeously decked with Pearle and Precious Stone. This Image being placed before him, the Emperour beginneth to croffe himselfe after the Ruffe manner, hrst, on the fore-head, then on both tides of his brest, with Aspody Powelny, Powelny mena bospody, facroy mena grasnick Sybodestina: which is as much to say, as, Helpe me, O Lord my God, Lord comfort me, defend and keepe me a Sinner from doing enil, To. This he directeth towards the Image, or Saint for that day, whom hee Io nameth in his Prayer, together with our Lady (whom they call Procheste) Saint Nicholas, or fome other, to whom he beareth most denotion, bowing himselfe prostrate water them, with knocking his head to the very ground. Thus he continueth the space of a quarter of an houre of

Then commeth againe the Ghostly Father or Chamber Priest, with a Silver Bowle full of Holy-water, which they call in Ruffe, Sweta Voda, and a sprinkle of Basill (as they call it) in his hand : and fo all to befprinkleth first the Image Gods, and then the Emperour. This Holy-water is brought fresh euery day from the Monasteries, farre and neere sent to the Emperour from the Abbot or Prior, in the name of the Saint, that is Patrone of that Monastery, as a speciall token of good will from him.

These Denotions being ended, he sendeth into the Empresse, to aske whether she hath rested in health, &c., And after a little pawfes goeth himfelfe to falute her in a middle Roome betwixt both their chambers. The Emprefielyeth a-part from him, and keepeth not one chamber, nor Table with the Emperour ordinarily, faue vpon the Eue of their Lents, or common Fafts: what time she is his ordinary Ghest at Bed and Boord. After their meeting in the morning, they goe together to their private Church or Chappell, where is faid or fung a morning Service (called Zautrana) of an houre long or thereabouts. From the Church hee returneth home, and fitteth The Emperour him downe in a great chamber, to be seene and saluted by his Nobilitie, such as are in fauour a- giuethprebout the Court. It he have to fay to any of them, or they to him, then is the time. And this is lence every ordinary, except his health, or some other occasion alter the custome.

30 About nine in the morning, he goeth to another Church within his Caftle : where is fung by Priests, and Choristers, the high Service (called Obeadna, or Complin) which commonly lasteth two houres: the Emperour in the meane-time talking commonly with some of his Councell, Nobilitie, or Captaynes, which haue to fay to him, or he to them. And the Councell likewife conferre together among themselves, as if they were in their Councel-house. This ended, he returneth home, and recreateth himselfe vntill it be Dinner time.

taffed by the Cooke, in the presence of the high Sceward, or his Deputie. And so is received by Serule athis

He is ferued at his Table on this manner. First, enery Dish (as it is delinered at the Dresser) is The Emperor the Gentlemen-wayters (called Shifter) and by them carryed up to the Emperours Table, the Table.

high Steward or his Deputie going before. There it is received by the Sewer (called Eraffrey) 40 who gueth a tafte of enery Dish to the Tafter, and so placeth it before the Emperour. The number of his Dilhes for his ordinary Service, is about feventy: dreffed fomewhat grofly, with much Garlike, and Salt, much after the Duich manner. When hee exceedeth vpon some occasion of the day, orentertainment of some Ambassadour, hee hath many more Dislies. The Service is fent up by two Dishes at a time, or three at the most, that he may eate it warme, first the baked, then the Roass meats, and last the Broths. In his dining chamber is another Table : where sit the chiefe of his Nobility that are about his Court, and his Ghoffly Father, or Chapleine. On the one fide of the chamber flandeth a Cubboord, or Table of Plate, very faire and rich, with a great Cifterne of Copper by it, full of Ice and Snow, wherein fland the Pots that ferue for that meale. The Tafter holdeth the cup that he drinketh in all Dinner time, and delivereth it voto him with

a fay, when he calleth for it. The manner is to make many Diffnes out of the Service after it is let on the Table, and to fend them to fich Noblemen and Officers as the Emperour liketh best.

After dinner he layeth him down to rest, where commonly he taketh three houres sleep, except he employ one of the houres to bathing, or boxing. And this cultome for fleeping after Dinner, is an ordinary matter with him, as withall the Ruffer. After his fleep, he goeth to Even-long (called Vectorias) and thence returning, for the most part recreatesh himselfe with the Empresse till Supper time, with Iesters and Dwarfes, men and women, that tumble before him, and sing many Songs after the Ruffe manner. This is his common recreation betwixt meales that he most delights in. One other speciall recreation, is the fight with wild Beares, which are caught in Pits Bearebying.

60 or Nets, and are kept in barred Cages for that purpole, against the Emperour bee disposed to see the pastime. The fight with the Beare is on this fort. The man is turned into a Circle walled round about, where hee is to quite himfelfe fo well as hee can: for there is no way to flye out. When the Beare is turned loole, he commeth vpon him with open mouth ; if at the first push he miffe his ayme, to that the Beare come within him, hee is in great danger. But the wilde Beare

being very scarce, hath this quality, that gineth advantage to the Hunter. His manner is, when he affayleth a man, to rife vp right on his two hinder-legs, and fo to come roaring with open. mouth vpon him. And if the Hunter then can puffi right into the very breft of him betwixt his fore-legs (as commonly he will not miffe) refting the other end of their Boare-! peare at the fide of his foot, and so keeping the Pike still towards the face of the Beare, hee speedeth him commonly at one blow. But many times thefe Hunters come short, and are either slaine, or milerably torne with the Teeth and Talents of the fierce Beaft. If the partie quite himselfe well in this fight with the Beare, he is carried to drinke at the Emperours Seller doore: where he drinketh himselfe drunke for the honour of Hespodare. And this is his Reward for aduenturing his life, for the Emperours pleasure. To maintay ne this passime, the Emperour hath certayne Huntimen that are appointed for that purpose to take the wild Beare. This is his recreation commonly on the holy dayes. Sometimes hee spendeth his time in looking vpon his Gold-smithes and Iewellers, Taylors, Embroyderers, Painters, and such like, and so goeth to his Supper. When in draweth towards Bed-time, his Priest saith certayne Prayers : and then the Emperour blesseth and croffeth hunfelte, as in the morning for a quarter of an houre or thereabouts, and so goeth to

Emperour Theodore deferibed.

The Emperour that now is (called Theodore Inanowich) is for his person of a meane stature. fome-what low and groffe, of a fallow complexion, and inclining to the Dropfie, Hawke-noted uniteady in his pafe, by reason of some weaknesse of his limmes, heavy and vnactive, yet commonly smiling almost to a laughter. For qualitie otherwise, simple and slow witted, but very 20 gentle, and of an easienature, quiet, mercitull, of no martiall disposition, nor greatly apt to matter of Policie, very Superstitious, and infinite that way. Besides his private Devotions at home, he goeth euery weeke commonly on Pilgrimage, to some Monasterie or other that is neerest hand. He is of whirtie foure yeeres old, or thereabouts, and hath reigned almost the space of fix yeeres.

houthold Of-

Horic.

Pilgrimage.

He chiefe Officers of the Emperours houshold, are these which follow. The first, is the Office of the Boiaren Coneshona, or Master of the Horse. Which contayneth no more then is rors private, or expressed by the name, that is, to be Over-feer of the Horse , and not Magister Equitum, or Malter of the Horsemen. For he appointeth other for that Service, as occasion doth require (as 20 before was faid.) He that beareth that Office at this time, is Borris Federowich Godonoe, Brother Mafter of the to the Empresse. Of Horse for Service in his Warres (besides other for his ordinary vies) he hath to the number of 10000, which are kept about Mosko.

The Lord Steward. The Lord Treasurer. Comptroller. Harbengers.

The next is the Lord Steward of his houshold at this time, one Gregorie Vasilowich Godonoe. The third, is his Treasurer, that keepeth all his Moneyes, Iewels, Plate, &c. now called Stepas Vasilowich Godonoe. The fourth, his Comptroller, now Andreas Petrowich Clesinine. The fift, his Chamberlaine. He that attendeth that Office at this time, is called Eftoma Bifabroza Paffeinif-Chamberlaine char. The fixt, his Tafters, now Theodore Alexandrousch, and Inan Vafilowich Godonoe. The feuenth, his Harbengers, which are three Noblemen, and divers other Gentlemen that do the Office vnder them. These are his ordinary Officers, and Offices of the chiefest account.

Of Gentlemen, beside that wait about his Chamber, and Person (called Shilfer Strapfer) there the Chamber. are two hundred, all Noblemens Sonnes. His ordinary Guard is two thousand Hagbutters, ready with their Peeces charged, and their Match lighted, with other necessary Furniture, continually day and night: which come not within the house, but waite without in the Court or Yard where the Emperour is abiding. In night time there lodgeth next to his Bed-chamber, the chiefe Chamberlaine, with one or two more of best trust about him. A second chamber off, there lodge fix other of like account, for their trust and faithfulnesse. In the third chamber lye certayne young Gentlemen, of these two hundred, called Shilfer Strapfer, that take their turne by forties enery night. There are Groomes besides that watch in their course, and lye at enery gate and doore of the Court, called Estopnick.

Groomes.

The Hag-butters or Gunners, whereof there are two thousand (as was said before) watch about the Emperours Lodging, or Bed-chamber, by courfe two hundred and fiftie enery night, and two hundred and fiftie more in the Court-yard, and about the Treasure-house. His Court or house at the Mosko, is made Castle-wise, walled about with great store of faire Ordnance planted vpon the wall, and contayneth a great breadth of ground within it, with many dwelling houses. Which are appointed for such as are knowne to be sure, and trustic to the Emperour.

Chep. 28.
Or the private behaviour and qualitie of the Ruffe people, may partly be understood by that which hath beene sayd, concerning the publike State and viage of the Country. As touwhich hath beene hayd, concerning the publice State and viage of the Country, as two-qualines of the fing the natural lable of their bodies, they are for the most part of a large fize, and very of leftly bodies accounting it a grace to be formewhat große and burley, and therefore they non-Conflimion rith and spread their Beards, to have them long and broad. But for the most part they are very of their bodies vinweldy, and vinactive withall. Which may bee thought to come partly of the Climate, and the numbneffe which they get by the cold in Winter, and partly of their Dyet that flandeth

CHAP. I. Russian drinking, bathing, extremes; womens painting; Attire.

most of Roots, Onions, Garlike, Cabbage, and such like things that breed grosse humours, which they vie to eate alone, and with their other meates.

Their Dyet is rather much, then curious. At their Meales they beginne commonly with a Their Dyet. Chark . or imall cup of Aqua-vita (which they call Ruffe Wine) and then drinke not till towards the end of their Meales, taking it in largely, and all together with kiffing one another at Drinking and euery pledge. And therefore after Dinner there is no talking with them, but euery man goeth kiffing. to his bench to take his after-noones fleepe, which is as ordinary with them as their nights reft. Sleeping. When they exceed, and have varietie of Difhes, the first are their baked meates (for roast meats they vie little) and then their Broaths or Pottage. To drinke drunke, is an ordinary matter

10 with them euery day in the Weeke. Their common Drinke is Mesd, the poorerfort vie water, and a thin Drinke called Qualle, which is nothing elfe (as wee fay) but water turned out of bis wits, with a little Bran meathed with it.

This Dyet would breed in them many Difeafes, but that they wie Bath-floues, or Hot-hou- Bath floues, fes in stead of all Physicke, commonly twice or thrice enery Weeke. All the Winter time, and almost the whole Summer, they heate their Peaches, which are made like the Germane Bathfloues, and their Poilsds like Quens, that so warme the House, that a stranger at the first shall hardly like of it. These two extremities, specially in the Winter of heate within their Houses, and of extreame cold without, together with their Dyet, maketh them of a darke and fallow complexion, their skinnes being tanned and parched both with cold and with heat: specially 20 the women, that for the greater part are of farre worfe complexions then the men. Whereof the

cause I take to be their keeping within the Hot-houses, and busying themselues about the heating, and ving of their Bath-floves and Peaches.

The Ruffe because that he is vied to both these extremities of heate and of cold, can beare them both a great deale more patiently then strangers can doe. You shall see them sometimes (to Extremises, feafon their bodies) come out of their Bath-floues all on a froth, and fuming as hote almost as a Pigge at a Spit, and prefently to leape into the River starke naked, or to powre cold water all ouer their bodies, and that in the coldeft of all the Winter time. The women to mend the bad hue of their skinnes, v'e to paint their faces with white and redde colours, so visibly that every Women daw. man may perceive it. Which is made no matter, because it is common, and liked well by their bers.

30 Hisbands: who make their Wives and Daughters an ordinary allowance to buy them colours to paint their faces with all, and delighe the melues much to fee them of foule women to become such faire Images. This parcheth the skinne, and helpeth to deforme them when their pain-

They apparell themselues after the Greeke manner. The Noblemans attyre is on this fashion. First, a Tassis, or little night cap on his head, that concreth little more then his crowne, commonsly very rich, wrought of Silke and Gold Thread, and let with Pearle and Precious Stone. His The Noblehead he keepeth hauen close to the very skin, except hebe in fome diffleasure with the Emper-mans anyte, our. Then he suffereth his haire to grow and hang downe vpon his shoulders, couering his face as

vgly and deformedly as he can. Ouer the Taffia he weareth a wide Cap of blacke Foxe (which 40 they account for the best Furre) with a Trara, or long Bonnet put within it, standing up like a Persian or Babyloman Hat, About his necke (which is seene all bare) is a Coller set with Pearle and Precious Stone, about three or foure-fingers broad. Next ouer his shirt (which is curiously wrought, because hee strippeth himselfe into it in the Sommer-time, while hee is within the house) is a Shepon, or light Garment of Sill e made downe to the knees, buttoned before; and then a Cafran or a ciole Coat buttoned, and girt to him with a Perfan Girdle, whereat he hangs his Kniues and Spoone. This commonly is of Cloth of Gold, and hangeth downe as low as his ankles. O ser that he weateth a loofe Garment of some rich Silke, furred and faced about with some Gold Lace, called a Ferrie. Another over that of Chamblet, or like Stuffe called an Alkeben, seewed and hanging low, and the Cape commonly brooched, and set all with Pearle. When so he goeth abroad, he catteth ouer all thefe (which are but flerght, though they feeme to be many)

another Garment called an Honoraikes, like to the Alkaben, lave that it is made without a Coller for the necke. And this is commonly of fine Cloth, or Camels haire. His Buskins (which hee weareth in itead of Hole, with Linnen Folles under them in itead of Boot-hole) are made of a Terstan Leather called Saphian, Embroydered with Pearle. His viper flocks commonly are of Cloth of Gold. When he goeth abroad, hee mounteth on Horfe-backe, though it bee but to the next doore; which is the manner also of the Boiarsker, or Gentlemen.

ext doore; which is the mainter and of the barne fallion, but different in Stuffe; and yet. The Gentlehe will bane his (after or Violet coat fometimes of Cloth of Gold, the reft of Cloth or Silke.

Vhe Noble woman (called Chyna Baisessea) weareth on her head, fifth a Caull of some for The Noble. 60 Silke (which is commonly called Red) and ouer it a Fruntlet, called Obrofa, of white colour, woman ar-Quer that her Cap (made after the Coife-fashion of Cloth of Gold) called Shaple Zemphie, tie. edged with some rich Furre, and set with Pearle and Stone. Though they have of late begun to diffaine Embroydering with Pearle about their Caps, because the Diacks, and some Merchants Wines have taken up the fashion. In their cares they weare Earenings (which they call

To the Reader.

Thought good here to give an account of my course. Having spent much time in that other World. To listle known to This (Tartatia and China) that the parts least known might be made best known: I have comme neerer home, to Ru'lia, and her neighbours, the neerer, or Chrim Tartars, the Samoveds, and others; whereof Doctor Fletchers Story being fo elaborate (where, though the centre bee Ruffia, yet his circumference is more generall) and by men indicious which have in those parts enioyedmost bonourable employment, and exactest intelligence, commended; I have given him the first

nace. And if some terme bee mollified, or some few things omitted, it is not to defraud Thee of the Historie (which for substance is whole, as by perusalt is found) but not to destand our industrious Coun-Historic worth our propance to wood, on of you again to ground the see feeke accasion of undermi-trymen in their merchandizing mysterie, wherein some perhaps would hence seeke accasion of undermiming. For like cause I have given the next place to Captaine Edge , (the one our gowned Generall by Land , the other in his generall Historic also by Sea) as described by his ten receas Voyages , and his other Merits. As for the question of Willoughbies Land, I list not to dispute it but I stinke, nekher Hollander (as is also confessed by the French Booke , called, The Historie of Spitsberghe a on the 2 H. G. A. ... Dutch behalfe) nor any other haue found any fuch Lands as bis Stern describes, but forme part of those communication which now with a generall name wee call, Greenland (how focuer the makers of Maps and Globes may ferden on the create Lands and Ilands at pleasure, especially in whomme places) and the first setted, ordinary, and or leager, sayd.

20 derly Voyages for the Whale-killing, and the most for discoverie in those parts have been made by the Hesting way English, their gaynes awakening the Hollander to that enterprise, and that also (as elsewhere in the que mustante World) by English guides. That which I most grieve at in this contention, is the detention of further niers Nontiroudiscoursy to the Pole and beyond (where it is not likely to be colder then here, and at the Artine circle: 72 degree out as in the Red Sea, Ormus, and the Countrey about Ballara on this side the Tropike, is found greater can Eris. beat then under the Line it felfe) the defire of gayne enery where can jung debate, and confequently losse 72 in Sir Hugh of the best gaine both in Earth and Heanen. Merchants might get the World, and gine ve the World Willoughbirs better, if Charitie were their Needle; Grace, their Compas, Heanen their Hauen, and if they would Booke penhaps the their beiche he also wise the Sunan of Richard and their beiche he also wise the Sunan of Richard and their beiches better, if Chattle wareteen Account of Righteoulnelle in the Scripture-aftrolabe, and foun- for 17-their fidong their depth by a Leading Faith, and not by a Leadden bottomleffe Couetoulneffe : that is, if gure of 7, and

they would feeke the Kingdome of Heaven brit, all things should bee added; they should finds that of a literature they would feeke the Kingdome of Heaven first, all things should be added; they found sinds were and they found arrive at better knowledge of old writing, when we and they found arrive at better knowledge of old writing, being very like World enough in the management of the state berghe) I would be glad to fee agreement betwint the English and Durch, both because I bonour that that the last r. Nation, as but appeared in the whole worke of Voyages, in which and of which she Durch are so great with a little Nation, at that appeared in this wood worke of v onese, in winco and of winco the Ducch are for great with a mile a part; and decause in Regions, Relation, Original Nation, ingenious and ingenious disposition, and touch of the (that which here brings both on our Stage) the glory of Nanigation, they are for never us, and worther to might appear, the stage of the stage to the Hollanders, in their Martiall feats at home, and Neptunian exploits abroad, (that I mention lamiure, is cf not their permitted wealthie filling on the English shoare) whem had they followed with as true and due the old tashion

not their permitted weathus from go a ine Engluin poere) whom heat her jouwed with at the and due the colo its little reflect, as with happie sheeffer, guarreti had not so districted and differed hot so fides. I appeale to of their ineas of the color of the state o for suppression to the state of bred at teatr in England, was enter recovery amount Drake, Candith, Mellis, Dauis, Adams, &c. Some Engl of correction analyse control was a state of the state of therne coast of America were discoursed by Sebastian Cabora, and other Englishmen. I adde their in that his be New Straights Southwards from those of Magelane were discovered before by Drake, as in the Map mherenone in New struggers ormanical from long of magnetic were apposers any one Dirace, as in the Map mission of Sir Francis Dirace Voque preferred to Queen Elizabeth, fill Banging in Ha Marghier Gellere, and the Durace which Hall mere the Princi Chamber, and by that Man above in Charge Dirace Voque Sir Marghier Charge Charge Dirace Voque Sir Marghier Sir M 50 at White Hall, mere the Praise Chamber, and by that Map wherein is Caboras Politare, the frift and (abich they great Columbus for the Northerne World) may be seene. In which Map, the South of the Magelane tay are eight in

Straits is not a Continent, but many llands, and the very same which they have street in their Straits, 73.) have Barneuels Hands had long before been named by the most aufpecute of Earthly Names, (and let them hands nech Barneuels slands had long before beene named by the most anspicate of Earthly Names, (and let them. hood: perhaps felues be ludges, with which the other is as little worthie to be mentioned, as a kind Mother, and an on-hood: perhaps hit Hugh sight. feinet se trages, with women to wage in an international control of the Name Elizabeth & se expressed in golden Letters, with a golden Crowne, Garter, laughte right and Armes affixed: The words of cribed observation are the fe, Cum omnes for chane partern A iftra-mirrecken, by lem Continentem effe patent, procerto sciant Insulas esfe Naugantibus peruias, carumq; au-nec knowing ftraliffmam ELIZABETHAM à D. Francisco Draco Inventore dictam effe. The same bright the variation of \$7, degrees, and South-eighth finations from the Magelan Welferse Month guite. The fame bright the variation of \$7, degrees, and South-eighth finations from the Magelan Welferse Month guite further endones, of the Compact And my learned friend Malter Brippes told methat he had been this observed from the Parker.

oc And my learned friend Mafter Brigges told mesthat he bath feene this plot of Drakes Veyage cut in which take to and H.G.A. confession also. b Schuline Cabusa the English Columbus, Sonne of Lobra 2 Venetius, Dred heere, and Discovere for Heary the Sewenth, of America; and first Courtnour of the Moscouic Companie. Sir F. Drafe first finder of the S. Sreichts cal-Heary me Seconds, or america; and mixes outcomer or the anytone Companie.

Med Maires, c In the fill Map is Queene Elegabeth Picture, with Neptune yeelding his Tridene, and Triton founding her lawe, with these Verles, Te Deus aquorem donas Regina Tridense, Es Trison laudes efflat visique ture.

Sargee) of two Inches or more compasse, the matter of Gold fet with Rubies , or Saphires, or fome like Precious Stone. In Sommer they goe often with Kerchiefs of fine white Lawne, or Cambricke, fastned under the chinne, with two long Tassels pendent. The Kerchiefe sported and fet thicke with rich Pearle. When they ride or goe abroad in raynie' weather, they were white Hats with coloured bands (called Stapa Zempskey.) About their neckes they weare Collers of three or foure-fingers broad, fet with rich Pearle and Precious Stone. Their vpper Garment is a loofe Gowine called Opolhen, commonly of Scarlet, with wide loofe fleeues, hanging downe to the ground buttened before with great Gold Buttons, or at least Siluer and gilt, nigh downe to the ground buttened octors with great Gong anatoms, or a transfer and greet, mgn as bigge as a Wal-nut. Which hath hanging out it faffined voder the Cap, a large broad Cape of some rich Furre, that hangeth downe almost to the middle of their backes. Next wader the 10 transfer shows the statement of the Opoiken or vpper Garment, they weare another called a Leanich that is made chose before with great wide fleques, the cuffe or halfe fleque vp to the elbowes, commonly of Cloth of Gold: and under that a Ferris Zemskey, which hangeth loofe buttoned throughout to the very foot, On the hand wrests they weare very faire Bracelets, about two fingers broad of Pearle and Precious Stone. They goe all in Buskins of White, Yellow, Blue, or some other coloured Leather, em-

broydered with Pearle. This is the attyre of the Noble-woman of Ruffie, when shee maketh

the best shew of herselfe. The Gentlewomans apparell may differ in the Stuffe. but is all one for the making or fashion. The Moulichs

As for the poore Monfiek and his Wife they goe poorely clad. The man with his Odnorates, or loofe Gowne to the Imall of the legge, tyed together with a Lace before, of course white a or blue cloth, with some Shabe or long Wast-coat of Furre, or of Sheep-skinne vnder it, and his firred Cap, and Buskins. The poorer fort of them haue their Odnoratkey, or upper Garment, made of Cowes haire. This is their Winter Habit. In the Sommer time, commonly they weare nothing but their shirts on their backes, and Buskins on their legs. The woman goeth in a med or blue Gowne, when she maketh the best shew, and with some warme Shube of Furre vnder it in the Winter time. But in the Sommer, nothing but two shirts (for so they call them) oneouer the other, whether they be within doores, or without. On their heads, they weare Cans of some coloured Stuffe, many of Veluet, or of Cloth of Gold : but for the most part Kerchiefes. Without Earings of Siluer or some other Metall, and her Crosse about her neck, you shall see no Russe woman, be shee Wife, or Maide.

As touching their behaulour, and qualitie, otherwise, they are of reasonable capacities, if 30 they had those meanes that some other Nations have to trayne up their wits in good Nurture. and Learning. Which they might borrow of the Polonians, and other their Neighbours, but that they refuse it of a very selfe-pride, as accounting their owne fashions to be farre the best. Partly alfo (as I faid before) for that their manner of bringing vp (void of all good Learning, and Civille behaulour) is thought by their Gouernours most agreeable to that State, and their manner of Gouernment. This causeth the Emperours to bee very wary for excluding of all Peregninitie, that might alter their fashions. Which were lesse to bee disliked, if it set not a print into the very minds of his people. For as themselves are very hardly and cruelly dealt with all by their chiefe Magistrates, and other Superiours, so are they as cruell one against another, specially over 40 their inferiours, and fuch as are vinder them. So that the baseft and wretchedelt (bristianoe (as they call him) that stoopeth and croucheth like a Dogge to the Gentleman, and licketh up the Cruelicofthe dust that lyeth at his feet, is an intollerable Tyrant, where hee hath the aduantage. By this Ruffe people. meanes the whole Countrey is filled with Rapine, and Murder. They make no account of the life of a man. You shall have a man robbed sometime in the very streets of their Townes, if he goe late in the Euening; and yet no man to come forth out of his doores to refue him, though he heare him cry out. I will not speake of the strangenesse of the Murders, and other cuelities committed among them, that would fearfly be believed to be done among men, specially such as professe themselves Christians.

The number of their vagrant and begging poore is almost infinite: that are so pinched with 50 Famine and extreame need, as that they begge after a violent and desperate manner, with Gine me and cut me, Gine me and kill me; and such like Phrases. And yet it may be doubted whether is the greater, the Crueltie or Intemperancie that is yied in that Countrey. I will not speake of Intemperancy. it, because it is so foule and not to be named. The whole Countrey overfloweth with all sinne of that kind. And no maruell, as having no Law to restraine Whoredomes, Adulteries, and like vncleannesse of life.

As for the truth of his word, as some say, the Ruffe neither beleeveth any thing that another man speaketh, nor speaketh any thing himselfe worthy to bee beleeved. These qualities make them very odious to all their Neighbours, specially to the Tartars, that account themselves to be honest and just, in comparison of the Russe. It is supposed by some that doe well consider of 69 the State of both Countries, that the offence they take at the Ruffe Gouernment, and their manner of behaulour, hath beene a great cause to keepe the Tartar still Heathenish, and to milike as he doth of the Christian profession.

Silver by a Dutchman (Michael Mercator, Nephew to Gerardus) many yeeres before Scouten or Maire intended that Voyage. As for Nova Zemla by Stephen Burrough, and others, long before disconered, they also have given new names, which I envie not: onely I feare a væ soli, and hate intratitude both ours and theirs. But too much of this. Next to this more generall Discourse shall follow the Dutch Northerne Voyages, and the English North-easterne: after which wee will take a more complementall leave of that Continent, and from thence visite the Northerly and North-westerne Discour. ries ; at once hunting for a New World and a New passage to This.

CHAP. II.

A briefe Discouerie of the Northerne Discoueries of Seas, Coasts, and Conntries, delinered in order as they were hopefully begunne, and have ever fince happily beene consinued by the fingular industrie and charge of the Wor-Thipfull Society of Mulcouia Merchants of London, with the ten severall Voyages of Captaine THOMAS EDGE the Authour

Greenland first discoursed by Sir HVGH WILLOVGHEIL: the Voyages of FROBISH'ER, PET and IACKMAN, DAVIS, the Dutch; First Morfe and Whale-killing, with further Disconeries.

W.Gemeticensis

He Northerne parts of the World haue euer beene held to be Officina Continue of velut Vacina Nationim, Natures Shop and Store-house of Men, better furnished then any other part of the Earth, and from whence those notable Inundations came first of the Cymbrians and Tensons, in the time of the antient Roman; and secondly of the Gothes and Vandals under Assila, to the confusion of things both Diuine and Humane in all the Southerne parts of Europe, as farre as Barba-

rifme could preuaile against Civilitie and Religion. For remedie whereof the Townes alongst the Baltick Sea entred into a confederacy under the names of the Hars Townes, and undertooke the keeping of those Northerne people, and the securing of these Southerne Kingdomes from any the like ouerflowings, vpon such Priniledges and Immunities as were granted and agreed vnto them by all the Southerne Princes, and according to such Lawes as were made and prouided for the maintenance and strength of the faid Hans Townes , amongst which the supreme and fundamentall Lawe was that none of these Nations so secured should have trade or commerce in any parts beyond the Baltike Seas, to the end the barbarous people might not bee enabled thereby to practife or moue against the Hans Townes: which was the cause together also with the extremitie of cold, that those Northerne Seas were neuer looked vnto vntill the yeere 1553. At which time the trade of this Kingdome waxing cold and in decay, and the Merchants incited with the fame of the great masse of riches which the Portugals and Spaniards brought home yeerely from both the Indies, entred into a resolution, not with standing the prohibition of the Hans Law to discouer the Northerne Seas, which so long had beene frozen and Cathay. See La. that vp; and to fee whether they could not affoord a passage to Cathay and the East Indies, and 40, 1. of this accordingly prouided three ships, and fent them forth under the command of Sir Hagh Willowsh whole Voyage. bie, Knight, who embarqued him selfe in a ship called, the Bona Esperança, Admirall of that Voyage, with Richard Chancellor Captaine of the Edward Bonanemure, together with a third ship, called the Bona Confidentia. These three ships falling downe from Rateliffe, the tenth of May in the foresaid yeere went on their Voyage, and proceeding as farre as the Cape of Norway, they were seuered by a tempest. Chancellor after he had stayed at Ward-house seuen dayes, expe-Sting the Admirall and the other ships, according to a former appointment upon any such cafualtie, and hearing nothing of them, went on, and discouered the Bay of Saint Nicolas, and

fetled a trade there, which hath continued to these times. tude, the Land Rands in 77.

Sir Hugh Willomebbie was driven to the height of 72. * where heefell upon an Iland, now knowne by the name of Willowgbbie Land, and lieth from Sinam (vpon the Continent of Nor- 60 way East and by North an hundred and fixtie leagues or thereabouts, from thence he went North and North-west, and within eight dayes after he tell upon a Land which lay West South-west, and East North-east, betweene 74. and 75. degrees of latitude, and plying Westward along by

CHAP.2. S.I. Greenland discouered by Sir H. Willoughbie. Borough, &c. 462

the Land, he was driven by the wind to put to Sea againe, vntill the wind came about. Then they made towards the Land againe, and bare with it, but finding that place vnfit for landing, they haled out againe, running along the Land fixteene leagues North-west, where they found a faire Bay, went on Land and found the place inhabited. From thence they put to Sea againe. runne alongst the coast for fortie leagues together, till at length they came to an ancior within two leagues of the shoare, where they landed, and found two or three good Harbours.

Afterwards they entred into the Hauen which ranne vp into the Maine a- Greenland discouered by Sir Hueb bout two leagues, where they remained for the space of a weeke vpon the willaughbie. This Voyage was writmaine Land. They found Beares, great Deere, Foxes, and other beafts. They tenby Sir H. will, and found in his To fent out three men three dayes journey to the South-west, and three others also thip. In lanuarie after he was aliue, lent out three men three dayes sourney to the sourn-wert, and three others also
appeares by a Will of Gab. Will.
full Weft, all which returned after diuers dayes trauelling, and found no people
his kinfinan, lab/cribed by Sir Hug. nor any likelihood of habitation. And this is that Land which now is called 19/floughbie which Will I now have. Greenland, or King lames his New-land, and is knowne to the Hollanders by the and keepe as a Relike of that worname of Spafbergen. Sir Hugh Willoughbie returned into Lapland, where he and this discourser and first finder of his companie were trozen to death, in the Happen called drying near New Ling Lanes his New Land. his companie were trozen to death, in the Hauen called Arzina, neere Kegor,

The Mulconia Merchants having thus fetled a trade in Russia, and being incorporated by the name of, The Merchants of England, for the discouerie of new trades, pursued their first reso. lutions for finding a way to Cathar by the North-east, and in the yeere 1556. fent out Stephen Burrough, for discouerie of the River Obb, who proceeding forwards in that Voyage discouered 20 the River Pechora, the Streights of Vargats and Nonazembla "; went on shoare vpon the Iland " See Hath. V of Vaigats, and upon the North Continent of Ruffia; met with the Samoeds, observed their tom. 1. pug. 274.

manner of life, their Religion, their Sacrifices to their rude and ill staped Idols; and the veere being ipent, returned into Ruffia.

The Companie having fought for the North-east passage, and finding such difficulties as are mentioned in their particular Journals, refolued to make triall, if the North-west part could not affoord a passage to the Indies, which was the first and maine scope of their Northerne Discoueries. And in the yeare 1 976, they fent forth Sir Martin Frebifber with two Barkes, who comming into the height of 62, or thereabouts, found a great Inlet, now knowne by the name of Sir M. Frebilber Frobibers Streights, into which he put himselfe, and sayled sixtie leagues with a mayne Land on Hatt. tom, 3.294 20 each tide, and to for that yeere returned.

The next yeere following he made a second Voyage to that place, purposely to lade himselfe with a kind of Oare, which the yeere before he had found there, and gaue hope by the colour to yeeld Gold, and being laden with some quantitie, returned.

The yeere following, being 1,78, having made tryall here of that Oare, and finding it not to fall out according to his expectation, hee was furnished out to proceed in the further discouerie of those Streights, and entring into the same, made way so farre as hee thought fit, and then returned backe, having first taken possession thereof in the name of Queene Elizabeth of famous memorie, who called the place Metaincognita: he brought home some of the Natives, and left tome of his men there.

In the yeere 1580, the Companie sent out a second Voyage for the discouerie of the River 1580. Obb, and thence to goe on to Cathay; furnishing forth two ships under the command of Arthur Pet and lack-Pet, and Charles luckman, who following their instructions, arrived at Vaigats, passed those man, Haliton, Streights with a particular observation of those Ilands and places therein, plyed along the East f.445. part of Nonazembla, and the North of Russia, and the Samoeds Country, so farre as the Ice would give them leave, and finding no possibilitie of passage by reason of the Ice, returned backe in the latter end of the yeere. By this time the Voyage of Saint Nicolas was knowne, and become a beaten trade. And the Companie sent out yeerely thither ten or twelue ships, which returned fraighted with the commodities of that Countrey.

In the yeere 1583. by the leave and admittance of the Mosconia Companie, Sir Humfrey 50 Gilbert went out for the discouerie of the North part of Terra Florida, came into the great Ri- Sir H. Gilbers uer called, Saint Laurence in Canada, tooke possession of the Country, fetled the government of Haleta, P. 1432 the filhing there which is fo well knowne in these times.

In the yeere 1585. Master Iohn Danis was furnished out at Dartmouth with two Barkes, for the discouerie of the North-west, came into the height of 66. plyed along the coast, observed Master Daniel the probabilitie of a passage, and in the end of the yeere returned.

In the yeere following, being 1,86. hee went on againe in the further discouerie thereof, & feq. found a great Inlet betweene 55. and 56. of latitude, which gaue him great hope of a paffage, traded with the people there, and so returned.

In the yeare 1587, hee made a third Voyage to those places, followed his course to the North 60 and North-west, to the Latitude of 67. degrees, having the Continent (which hee called America) on the West fide and Groineland, which hee named Desolation on the East, and going on the height of 86.degrees, the passage enlarged so that hee could not see the Westerne shoare. Thus he continued in the Latitude of 73. degrees in a great Sea free from Ice, of an vnmeasurable depth, but by the occasion of the departure of two Ships which were in company with him,

Hak.to.3. p. 93.

which hee left Fishing at a place, he returned home. This passage continueth the Name and me-Fretum Danis. morie of the first Discouerer, and is called Fretum Danis. And thus the Discouerie of the Nor. thern Seas proceeded on from time to time, by the endeavour and charge of the Musiconia Companie, until they had particularly discouered the Lands, Coasts, llands, Straights, Hauens, Bayes, Rivers and other places therein, and measured every part thereof, by their often tracing to and fro: Together allo with the observation of the Commodities and Advantages, arising from curry part of the fame, continuing even vnto thefe times to haunt and frequent the parts which they had formerly found out; As by their yeerely Reportaries and Journals may appeare, and thateither without emulation or competition of any other Nation, that ever came into those parts or ther without emutation or compensation and only the transfer and the earliest and into more parts or enterprifed any Difficueries there will followeth.

When Richard Chancelor had fetled a trade with Jehn Pafitonech then Emperous of Ruffle, and

Hak. Tom. t.

his Ambassadours had beene heere in England, to accomplish matters requisite for maintenance of the Amitie and Entercourse made and agreed vpon betweene these two Crownes; King Philip, Queene Marie, Dukes also at that time of Burgundie, and Soueraignes of all the Netherland. made a grant of Priviledge vnto the Musconia Merchants for the fole Trade of those Seas, prohibiting all others to haunt and frequent the fame, without speciall Licence and consent of the favd Companie: which grant of Priviledge was accordingly enjoyed without diffurbance or interloping of the Hollanders, who out of obedience either to the Prohibition made by their Soneraigne, or for that they durft not adventure into these Seas, did not any way attempt to be feene or appeare there, either for Discouerie or trade of Merchandize, for the space of five and to twentie yeeres, after the Port of Saint Nicholas was first Discourred and found out by the Es. glib. For the Company having as is about mentioned, made their first Discourie in the yeere 1552, there was never heard of any Netherlander that frequented those Seas, vntill the yeere 1678. At which time they first began to come to Cola, and within a yeere or two after, one John de Whale a Netherlander, came to the Bay of Saint Nicholas, being drawne thither by the perswassion of some English for their better meane of Interloping, which was the first man of that Nation that euer was seene there. And this as is formerly noted was fine and twentie yeeres after it was Discouered by the Musconia Merchants.

25. 1494. follow.

Afterwards the Hollanders crept in more and more, and in the yeere 1594. they made out Theie Voiages foure Ships for Discouerie of the North-east passage to China, the Master Pylot whereof was 10 William Barrents, these came upon the Coast of Nonazembla to the Latitude of 77.degrees, drew backe againe towards the Straights of Vaigats, and then returned giving Names vnto iome places and Promontories upon that Land.

1595.

hotter argu-

ments then I

am willing to

answer.

Whale Bay.

Hackluits

In the yeere 1595. They sent out a second Voyage, tracing the way through the Straightsof Vasgats in the fame steps, as Pet and lackman had formerly passed, and so returned, In the yeere 1 596. They fet out a third Voyage with two Ships, the one of which shaped her

1596. which writeth against this English allegation, &c. but

course from the Cape of Norway, to an Iland in the Latitude of 74. degrees, which wee call Cherie Iland, and they call Beare Iland, and from thence to Greenland, where Sir Hugh Willoughbie had beene two and fortie yeeres before, for fo long time there is betweene the half Discourse published 1613 thereof and the yeere 1596. And from thence to the North-east part of Nouazembla, in the 40 Latitude of 76. degrees, where they Wintred and loft their Ship, and came home with much In the yeere 1603. Stephen Bennet was imployed by the Companie, in a Ship called the Grace,

to those parts Northwards of the Cape, and was at Cherie Hand and killed some Sea-horses, and brought home Lead Oare from thence.

In the yeere 1608, the faid fellowship fet foorth a Ship called the Hope-well, whereof William Hudson was Master, to discouer to the Pole, where it appeareth by his Journall, that hee came to William Hudfon the height of 81 idegrees, where he gave Names to certayne places, vpon the Continent of Greenland formerly discouered, which continue to this day, namely, Whale Bay, and Hackluit Headto 81.Degrees. land, and being hindred with Ice , returned home without any further vie made of the Coun- 50 trey, and in ranging homewards, hee discourred an Hand lying in 71. degrees, which hee named

Hudfons Tout-

Heere it is to bee understood, that the Companie having by often refort and imployment to those parts , observed the great number of Sea-horses at Cherie Iland , and likewise the multitude of Whales, that shewed themselves upon the coast of Greenland; They first applyed themfelues to the killing of the Morces, which they continued from yeere to yeere with a Ship or two yeardy in which Ships the Companie appointed Thomas Widen Commander, and in the yeare 1609, the Companie imployed one Thomas Edge their Apprentice, for their Northeren Voyage, and joyned him in Commission with the foresayd Welden. Now the often vsing of Cherie Hand, did make the Sea-horse grow scarse and decay, which made the Companie looke out 60 for further Discoueries.

1610. I mas Poole first

Thomas Welden,

I bomas Edge

the Author,

In the yeere 1610. the Companie fer out two Ships, viz. the Lioneffe for Cherie Iland, Thomas Edge Commander ; and the Amitie, for a Northerne Discouerie, the Master of which Ship was longs Poole: who in the moneth of May fell with a Land, and called it Greenland, this is the

Land that was difcourred by Sir Hugh Willoughby long before, which Ship Amitie continued up. * See Baffins on the coast of Greenland, discouring the Harbours and killing of Morces, vitil the moneth of North-west on the coaft of Greenland, discovering the Hardours and Kining of Maches, when the moneth of August, and so returned for England, having gotten about some twelve Tunnes of goods, and an Vnicorne, a Vnicornes * horne.

In the yeere 1611, the Companie set foorth two Ships for Greenland, the Marie Margaret Horne. Admirall, burthen one hundred and fixtie tunnes, Thomas Edge Commander; and the Elizabeth. burthen fixtie tunnes, Ionas Poole Matter, well manned and furnished with all necessarie Prouisions, they departed from Blackwall the twentieth of Aprill, and arrived at the Foreland in Green-

land in the Latitude of 70, degrees, the twentieth of May following, the Admirall had in her 10 fix Biskayners expert men for the killing of the Whale; this was the first yeers the Companie set First whale out for the killing of Whales in Greenland, and about the twelfth of June the Biskayners killeda killing. fmall Whale, which yeelded twelue Tunnes of Oyle, being the first Oyle that euer was made in Bicayners v-Greenland. The Companies two Shalops looking about the Harbour for Whales, about the five and twentieth of Iune rowing into Sir Thomas Smith his Bay, on the East fide of the Sound faw on the shoare great store of Sea-horses; after they had found the Morses they presently rowed vnto the Ship, being in croffe Road feuen leagues off, and acquainted the Captayne what they had found. The Captayne understanding of it, gaue order to the Master, Stephen Bennet, that he should take into his Ship fiftie tunnes of emptie Caske, and set sayle with the Ship to goe into Foule Sound. The Captayne went prefently away in one Shallop with fixe men vnto the Sea-

20 morfe, and tooke with him Lances, and comming to them they fet on them and killed fine hundred Morfes, and kept one thousand Morfes living on shoare, because it is not profitable to kill them all at one time. The next day the Ship being gone vnto the place & well mored where the Morfe were killed, all the men belonging to the Ship went on shoare, to worke and make Oyle of the Morfes; and when they had wrought two or three dayes, it fortuned that a small quantitle of Ice came out of Foule Sound, and put the Ship from her Moring. The Master and ten men Shipwracke being a board of the Ship, let fall their Sheat anchor which brought the Ship vp to ride; the Ice by Ice. comming vpon her againe, brought her Anchor home and ranne the Ship alhoare, where shee by the Masters weake Indgement was cast away, and all their Bread spoyled not set to cate. The

Ship being cast away without hope of recouerie, the Commander Thomas Edge gaue order, that 30 all the Morfe living on shoare should be let goe into the Sea, and so gave over making of Oyle, and presently haled vp ashoare all his Shallops and Boates, being fine, setting the Carpenter to trim them, the Saylers to make Sayles and Wastcloathes for the Boates, fit to serue them at Sea. Hauing fitted their Boates as well as they could with the small prouision they had, being in number foure small Shallops and the ships Boate, they divided their men into them equally with what provisions of victuals they could well carrie, and after they had fayd Prayers all together on Land; being fiftie men they departed from the place where they loft their Ship, on the fifteenth of July with the winde Southerly, and rowed thirtie or fortie leagues to the Southward. and then they loft companie of one Shallop and their thips Boate of Horne Sound, which two

Boates met with a Hall Ship, and acquainted him with the loffe of the London Ship, and that flee 40 had left on land goods woorth fifteene hundred pounds : So our men carryed the Hall Ship into Hall Ship. Foule Sound, to take in the Companies goods and to kill some Sea-horses for her selfe at that place. The Captayne and two other Shallops put from the Coast of Greenland in the height of 77. . Degrees, and set their course for Cherie Iland, which lyeth in 74. Degrees (-) sometimes Sayling and sometimes Rowing, and made Cherie Iland the nine and twentieth of July, having Cherie Iland. beene in their Shallops at Sea fourteene dayes, and comming into the Iland with a great florme

at North-west, with much difficultie they landed on the South side of the Iland.

Being on shoare, the Captayne sent three of his Saylers ouer land vnto the North roade, being three miles distant from that place, to see if the Elizabeth was there, and they saw a Ship riding in the North roade, and being ouer-joyed they returned backe vato the Captayne to ac-50 quaint him, without staying to speake with any of the Ships companie, and by good hap the Master of the Elizabeth espyed men on the Shoare, being at that time weighing Anchor to set fayle for England, voon which hee stayed and sent the Boate ashoare to see what men they were, and when the men of the Elizabeth came ashoare, they found them to bee men of the Mary Margaret, and so went aboard vnto the Master to acquaint him; whereupon the Master caused Anchor to bee weighed and went to the South fide of the Iland, and there tooke in the Captayne, and hee being aboard understanding what a poore Voyage the Elizabeth had made, gaue order to the Master to goe for Greenland, there to take in such Goods as the sayd Edge had left in Foule Sound. They departed from Cherie Hand the first of August, and arrived at Foule Sound the

Fourteenth Dicto: where they found two Boates which they had loft companie of before, and 6c all their men being come thither with a Hall Ship which they met with, and brought to that place; which Ship had spent all the yeere in Horne Sound, and got little goods. The Elizabeth being mored, the Captayne gaue order vnto the Matter to deliver out of his Ship, all the goods hee had got at Cherie Iland, which was Sea-horse hydes and Blubber, being of little woorth; And to take in the Oyle and Whale-finnes, which were gotten by the Marie Margarets com-

panie, the Master in valading of his Ship brought her fo light, that varior tunatly hee our riether, Danie, the Matter in vintaining or in a simp or organ near our grantes amortunary nec outer-technic. Ship outer feet. having goods in her worth leuen hundred pounds. This ill chance happening vinto the two Less. paining goods in net worth seven numered pounds. I mis in chance inspecting vito the two London Ships, the Capcayne of them agreed with Thomas Marmaduse Master or the Hull Ship, to don Slups, the Captayne or tnem agreed when I purmed that memore elected in the could ship, to take in the goods which was faued, at the rate of fine pounds the Tun e, which was great rate take in tinggoods within was about a time for the population and the hundred pounds for the (notwithiltanding they had beene a meanes to get him goods worth fine hundred pounds for the (notwittentaining trey man and twentieth of August, 1611, they departed from Greatastin the Hope-well, being ninetie nine men in all, and arrived at Hall the fixth of September, where the layd Edge tooke out the Companies goods, and Shipped them for London by order from the the laye Lage took of the fact and the Shallops, discoursed all the Harbours on the West

II.

Dutch, Spanish, Danish disturbance; also by Hull men, and by a new Patens, with the succeeding Successe and further Discourses till this present.

N the yeere 1612, the Companie fer forth two Ships, viz. The Whale, burthen one hundred and fixtie Tunnes, and the Seaborfe, burthen one hundred and eightie tunnes, 20 under the Command of John Ruffell, and Thomas Edge, for discovering and killing of the Whale. They discourred that yeere nothing worth writing of, by reason of some fall

Hollmdere.

ling out betwist Ruffell and Edge; yet they killed that yeere fewenterne Whales, and some Seahories, of which they made one hundred and eightie Tunnes of Oyle with much difficultie; a not being experimented in the businesse. This yeere the Hellanders ('Okcepe their wont in fellowing of the English teps) came to Greenland with one Ship, being brought thither by an Enghis man, and not out of any knowledge of their owne Discoueries, but by the direction of one Allen Sallowes, a man imployed by the Muscenia Companie in the Northerne Seas forthe space of twentie yeeres before; who leauing his Country for Debt, was entertayned by the Hollanders, and imployed by them to bring them to Greenland for their Pylot. At which time 10

Spanift Ship.

being met withall by the Companies Ships, they were commanded to depart, and forbidden to haunt or frequent those parts any more by mee Thomas Edge. There was also a Spanish Ship brought thither, by one Nucholas Woodcocke this yeere, a man formerly imployed by the fayd Woodcocke Im. Companie; which Spanyb Ship made a full Voyage in Green-harbonr. But Woodcocke at his returne into England, being con plained of by the Companie, was Impilioned in the Gateboofe and Tower, fixteene Moneths, for carrying the Spanish Ship thither.

In the yeere 1613, the Companie fet out for Greenland feuen fayle of Ships, under the Com-Bestamm Heferb mand of Bent smin lofeph, and Thomas Edge, the Slips departed from Graneford the fix and twentieth of Aprill, and arrued in Greenland the fourteenth of May. This yeere the English had the Kings Patent under the broad Seals of England, to foo bid all Strangers and others, but the Musics 40

Mea Companie to vie the Coast of Greenland. The English met with titteene layle of great Ships, two of them were Dutch Ships, the rest were French, Spanish, and of the Archdukes, besides foure English Intellopers. The Companies Ships forced them all from the Coast of Greenland, not suffering any of them to make a Voyage; they tooke from the two Dateb Ships certaine goods, bu in g ing to take it, they neglected their owne voyage, which was damnified thereby to the value of three or foure chouland pounds. For their Ships came home dead Fraight two or three hundred Tunnes by that meanes. This yeere was Hope Hand and other Hands discoursed, to the

Hope Hand.

Dateb fhips.

In the yeere following, which was 1614, the Companie fet out for Greenland, thirteene great Thirteen sher Ships and two Pionaffes, vinder the Command of Beniamin Infept, and Thomas Edge, all which 50 Ships were well appointed with all manner of Artillerie for defence, and other necessaries for the making of their Voyage and for Discourrie. This yeare the Hollanders fet out for Greenland eighteene great Ships, whereof foure of them were of the States men of Warre, Ships with thirtie pieces of Ordnance a piece. This yeere the Dutch stayed and fished for the Whale perforce, they were farre stronger then the English, which was a cause that the English Ships came home halfe laden, and the Dutch with a poore Voyage. This yeere the Companie Discourred vnto the Northwards of Greenland, as farre as 80. Degrees odde Minuts, in the Ship Thomazen, as by herdaily lournall doth appeare at large; in which Ship was imployed Thomas Sherwin, and Walliam Baffin, being the second Voyage they were imployed into those parts. And some llands to the Eastwards of Greenland, were Discourred by soure Ships imployed in that service, as by their 60 Iournall more at large appeareth.

80. Degrees Sherwin and 1615.

In the yeere 1615, the Companie set out for Greenland, two sayle of great Ships and two Pinnaffes, vnder the Command of Beniamint ofepb, and Thomas Edge, who following their Instructions, arrived upon the Coast of Greenland the fixth of lune, which they found to bee much

pettered with Ice, and being foggie weather, they runne into the Ice, fo farre, that they were Fast in Ice, fait in it fourteene dayes before they could cleare themselues of it. This yeere also the Hollan- in lune fourteene ders fet out fourteene fayle of thips, whereof three of them were States Men of warre of great treene dayes. force: they killed Whales in Horn-found, Bel-found, and Faire-hauen, and flayed youn the coaff of Greenland perforce, as they did the former yeere; whereby the English came home halfe la- King of Denden. This yeere allo the King of Denmarke lent vnto Greenland three of his ships, Men of warre, marke demands to demand a toll of the English; but they had none payd them: for they fell with the Foreland in 79. degrees, where Captaine Edge was, and he denyed payment of any toll, all dging Vn English that the Countrey of Greenland belonged to the King of England. These were the first Danis English to terre thips that ever came to Greenland, who had for their Pilot one lames Vaden, an Englishman to Dutch, Spenish. To bring them thither.

In the yeere 1616, the Company fer out for Greenland eight Sayle of great thips, and two their owne. Pinnaffes under the command of Thomas Edge, who following his course arrived in Greenland a. bout the fourth of June, having formerly appointed all his thips for their feuerall Harbours, for their making of their Voyage vpon the Whale; and having in every Harbour a sufficient numher of expert men, and all promitions fitting for such a Voyage. This yeare it placed God to bleffe them by their labours, that they full laded all their ships with Oyle, and left an over-plus in the Countrey, which their ships could not take in. They imployed this yeere a small Pinnasse unto the East-ward, which discouered the East-ward part of Greenland, Namely, the lland cal-

led now Edges Hand, and other Hands lying to the North-wards as farre as fewentie eight de- Edges Hand. grees, this Pinnasse was some twentie tunnes, and had twelue men in her, who killed one thoufand Sea-horses on Edges Iland, and brought all their Teeth home for London. This was the first yeere that ever the Company full laded all their ships tent to Greenland, and this yeere they made twelu- or thirteene hundred tunnes of Oyle in Greenland by the fourteenth of August All the thins arrived in fafety in the River of Thames, in the moneth of September. The Hollanders had this veere in Greenland foure thips, and those kept together in odde places, not easily to bee

found, and made a poore Voyage.

In the yeare 1617, the Company fet out for Greenland fourteene Sayle of hips, and their two Pinnaffes turnished and manned with a fufficient number of men, and all other provisions fitting 20 for that Voyage, under the command of Thomas Edge. They departed from Grane fend about the foure and twentieth of Aprill, and arrived vpon the Coast of Greenland, the eight and twentieth

of May all in fafety.

At our first comming upon the Coast this yeere, I met with a Dateb shippe of two hundred tunnes, which I commanded aboard, the Captaynes name was Coske, who told mee there were ten Sayle of Dutch vpon the Coaft, and two men of Warre, and that he came to make a Vove age voon the Whale. I shewed him the Kings Commission; and commanded him by vertue thereof to depart from the Coast, willing him to acquaint the rest of his Countrey-men with it. And further, I told him that if I met with him or any Dutch thips heereafter, I would take from them what they had gotten, and thus having entertayned him aboord with me courteout-40 ly, I let him goe without taking any prouitions from him. At his departure from mee, hee promifed hee would but stay to meet with two of his Conforts, which hee had lost company with the day before, and then hee would directly goe for Flufting, and acquaint his Merchants, that the English Captayne would not fuffer him to Hay vpon the Coast of Greenland; but it feemeth at his meeting with his Conforts, they agreed altogether to goe into Horne-found, and there they killed fome few Whales which they faued in Blubber. I vnderstanding of it, gaue order to my Vice-admirall when he was laden, that he should goe into Horne-found, and put the Flemmings from thence, and take what they had gotten, which he did accordingly : but the goods he tooke from the Dutch thips, were not worth to the English twentie pounds, for it was but Blubber and Finne's, which they had no need of, in regard they had killed as many Whales as would lade their ships, and more then they could carry or iaue. This yeere the English made nineteene hun-

dred tunnes of Oyle in Greenland, and all their ships arrived at home in the moneths of August and September in fafetie. They also employed a ship of fixtie tunnes, with twenty men in her, who discouered to the Eastward of Greenland, as faire to the North-wards as seventie nine degrees, and an Iland which he named Witches Iland, and divers other Ilands as by the Map appea- withbes Iland. reth, and killed ftore of Sea-horfes there, and then came into Bel-found : where hee found his lading of Oyle, left by the Captayne which he tooke in. This yeere the Hall men let a small thip Hall men. or two to the East-wards of Greenland, for the Hull men still followed the steps of the Londoners, and in a yeere or two called it their Difcouery, which is falle and victue, as by Oath in the Admiraltie doth appeare. The Dutch likewife practife the same course.

60 In the yeare 1618, some difference having pasted betweene the English and some Zelanders. the yeere before, in King lames his Newland, alias Greenland (which Zelanders were neuer in those Zelanders. parts before, and vpon promife of the prefent departure) were permitted to passe elie-where with their prouitions which they had, and comming to Cherrie Iland, and meeting with one English Interloper of Hall; namely Marmaduke, he animated the faid Zelanders to returne back Marmaduke.

for Greenland, alleaging vnto them, that the Companies ships were in each seuerall Harbourba. for Greename, aucaging vine units, the tone would flure from his Harbours to moleft them, and that feel about their voyage, and that the state of the state they being enter impose of the state of the and there make a voyage product and the state of the stat duers Snattops, nature united to the state of the Land Flore, having nought. Whereupon Captayue Thomas Edge, chiefe Commander of the English Fleet, having laden those ships that were in Harbour with him, and presently sent for William Flest, his Vice-Jacen those injecture were in training and proteinly remain range, his Vice-admirall, giving him order (who was not then full laden, but in good forwardnesse) for the ship he was in, and goe to Horne-found afore-said, and put the said Zelanders from thence: which the he was in, and goe to Horne-Junou active-inity, and put the land active and active which the faid Holy prefently put in execution. But before his comming thicker, the Zelander ind notice 10 faid Heep pretently put in careful and depart, the English Vice-admiral would come prefentby an Engage Surgeon thanks. Whereupon the Zelanders laded all the goods they had in two ly and rorce used from away before the comming of the English Vice-admirall, leaning one hip thips, and tent them away version the comming of the Cargine vice-admirant, seating one inip behind, with certaine caske of Blubber, and two Whales and an halfe vicut vp, in a brauedo to trye if the English would meddle with them or not, which faid ship and goods there left, were trye is the saying would make the same the same the same thing and goods there lett, were furnized by the said English Vice-admirall; the goods detayned to the Companies wie; and the dispractory in the Delander; which flip having in herten caft Peeces, and fixtie men, and having intelligence of one of the Companies ships, at that time laden in the Country and nature members to the companies amps, at that time much in the country with one hundred and eightie tunnes of Oyle, the Zelender gaue out he would lie in waite and with one minoreu and eighter counts of Cyre, the Leasuner gaue one me would me in waite and take that fhip of the Companies and her lading, and carrie her to Zeland. For preuention where take that fhip of the Companies were take that hip of the Cadminal tooke fixe Peeces of Ordnance, and some Powder from the ship of the Cadminal tooke fixe Peeces of Ordnance, and some Powder from the ship of the Cadminal tooke fixe Peeces of Ordnance, and some Powder from the ship of the Cadminal tooke fixe Peeces of Ordnance, and some Powder from the ship of the Cadminal tooke fixe Peeces of Ordnance, and some Powder from the ship of the Cadminal tooke fixe Peeces of Ordnance, and some Powder from the ship of the Cadminal tooke fixe Peeces of Ordnance, and some Powder from the ship of the Cadminal tooke fixe Peeces of Ordnance, and some Powder from the ship of the Cadminal tooke fixe Peeces of Ordnance, and some Powder from the ship of the Cadminal tooke fixe Peeces of Ordnance, and some Powder from the ship of the Cadminal tooke fixe Peeces of Ordnance, and some Powder from the ship of the Cadminal tooke fixe Peeces of Ordnance, and some Powder from the ship of the Cadminal tooke fixe Peeces of Ordnance, and some Powder from the ship of the Cadminal tooke fixe Peeces of Ordnance, and some Powder from the ship of the Cadminal tooke fixe Peeces of Ordnance, and some Powder from the ship of the Cadminal tooke fixe Peeces of Ordnance, and some Peeces of Ordnance, and Zeland, which were in England restored to the owners.

In which faid yeere 1618, the Zelanders lending over for reflitution of the goods taken from them. A new Company commixt of English, Sentish and Zelanders, through the meanes of oce Sir Iohn Comingbann Knight, procured a grant for fetting forth of shipping to those parts, which might veterly haus oserthrowne and spoiled the trade of the first discournes thereof and to that end divers of the chiefe men were hired by the new Company that had been fervants to the fifth discouerie, and much shipping and prouisons agreed for. Whereupon there was an agreement, East India Ad. that the East India Adventurers should some stocke with the Mifemia Adventurers, and se one ioynt Companie for that trade of King Jamas his Newland. The Scottifb Companies Patent thereupon diffolued, to the Mojesnia Companies great trouble and cost, in taking of all the preuisions they had bespoken, and paying ready money for the same, having no viethereof, but great part spoyled, and came to little good, and in joyning unfortunately with the East ladie Companie, in which yeere, and the next yeere after, their Voyages proued very ill, and they were lofers, and much vexed and croffed in their proceedings, to the great diffeathing and detriment of the Mosemia Companie: yet that yeere 1618 they set forth thirteene ships and two Pinnasses, vnder the command of the said Captaine Thomas Edge, who arriving vpon the coast of King lames his Newland, in the beginning of June separated themselves to severall Harbours for accomplishing of their Voyages, the most part being ships of no force. Presently after in all Harbours where the English were, arrived great store of ships of Zeland, in warlike 40 manner, being thips of great force, who continued in the same Harbours amongst the English, fetting two boats to the English one, with Biskainers, with a full purpose to drive the English from their Harbours, and to reuenge the iniurie (as they termed it) done them the yeere before: and for that the Scottife Patent was diffolued; wherein many Flemmings were to be intereffed. And to that purpose towards the latter end of July, ten Saile of the said Zelanders, being at a Harbour called the Foreland, where the faid William Heley, Vice-admirall of the English Fleet that yeere, was in the thip Pleafure, Matter Robert Salmon, with one English thip and a Pinnaffe there of no force, fet vpon the faid English Vice-admirall, threatning, if hee would not yeeld prefently, to dispoyle him of ship and goods, not permitting to take his men aboord. And with two of their chiefest ships layd the English Vice-admirall aboord, there being but seuen English abourd the ship, which they detay ned for foure and twentie houres, the Zelenders not danng to enter, making many brauadoes and attempts, thinking to make the English to yeeld; and stand to their mercy, which was refuled. And thereupon fine of those Zelenders ships; namely, the Forume of Campbine, burthen foure hundred tunnes, with eighteene caft Peeces, befides braffe Bales and Murtherers, Captaine Habreght Cornelifon, the Saint Peter of Flufting, burthen three hundred tunnes , with eighteene caft Peeces, Captaine Cornelius Cooke; the Salamander of Flufoing, two hundred tunnes, fourteene cast Peeces, Captaine Adrian Peeterson; the Cat of Debb Hauen, with fixteene cast Peeces, Abraham Leuerstuck being Captaine and Generall of the Zelanders, and William I obn for of Millworth, in a thip with fourteene cast Pecces: all which, after much conference passed betwixt the faid Zelanders and William Hely: which faid Zelanders gaue out many vnciuill speeches against the Kings Marettie, not esteeming his Commission; alledging that there was good law in Flanders for what they did. And on Sunday the nineteenth of Iuly, 1618, did forcibly fet you the faid English Vice-admiral , fue together plying cheir great Ordnance, small Shot, and Murderers, seeking what in them lay to kill and spoile all the

the Englifb.

Enolab that were aboord: who refifted their force, and in spite of all their opposers set sayle, faluting them with their Ordnance, and maintayning fight against them till their Sayles were thot downe, some of their chiefe men flaine, others hart, and their ship forced either to anchor. or run ashoare. The Zelanders vied the English very vakindly, tifling their ship of all their goods. and taking away all their munition and artillery, not leaving any goods ashoare, but burning vp the Caske, not permitting the English to take in fielh water, but shot their Boat thorow in going ashoare, and minding, as they protested and swore vnto the faid William Hely, that they would take and ransacke all the English ships in the Countrey, and carrie the English Captaine to Zeland: having as they faid, that yeere in those parts 23. sayle of well appointed ships, onely to 10 ouerthrow all the English, all which were to meet in Scotland outward bound. After the furpriling of the faid English Vice-admirall, all the reft of the English thips being dispersed farre afunder, could not joyne together, being in all places hindred by the Flemmings: and by that meanes the English Voyage veterly overthrowne, to the extraordinary great losse and charge of

the Companie, the most part of their ships returning home without any goods.

The next veere 1619, the faid Mosconia and East India Companies let out nine ships, and two Pinnasses , under the command of the faid Captaine Edge , in which yeere, divers Hollanders being in the Northermost Harbour in the Countrey, employing great quantitie of Boats in chafing the Whale there, off into the Sea, put them by their vivall course, so that the Companies ships being fine of the nine, in the two Northermost Harbours, were disappointed of their 20 Voyage in those Harbours; and thinking to better it in the other Harbours; the foresaid walliam Heley fending a Shallop with ten men in her, with Letters to the faid Captaine Edge, of their ill successe to the Northwards, the said Shallop was cast away, and all the men lost: and the faid Captaine being laden, fent a Pinnasse to the said Heley in August, advertising him of his departure, thinking all the ships to the Northward had been laden, wishing them to haste home. By meanes of which Shallops casting away, the Voyage was greatly hindred to the Companies exceeding great loffe; in that the Hollanders did as then bring ouer great quantitie of Whale-oyle, and fold it at under rates, so that the Companie was forced to keepe theirs on their hands twelue moneths, and fell it afterwards at a very small price, and lost one ship in her returne homewards neere Tarmourb : which did fo much dishearten the faid Companie, that

30 they diffolued againe, and thought verily to have adventured no more thither (their fuccesse those two yeeres past, in which the East India Companie ioyned with them was so bad, that any that would buy their probition might enjoy the benefit of the Trade there.) At which time, the worthie and famous Merchants Aduenturers; namely, Ralph Freeman, Beniamin Deicrope, George Strond , with Captaine Thomas Edge, all brethren of the Moscowia Companie , pitying the down-fall of so worthie a Trafficke, in which yeerely so many poore Land-men received great comfort, and breeding of Mariners, at their owne charge compounded with the faid Companies, and tooke that Trade into their hands. In which yeere 1620, they fet out feuen fayle of ships, vnder the command of William Goodlad, and the faid William Heley; in which faid yeere, by reason of great store of Flemmings and Danes in the foresaid Northermost Harbours, their 40 ships had ill successe to the Northwards, and were forced to passe from Harbour to Harbour to seeke to make a Voyage, but could not, and so returned home halfe laden, with seuen hundred

tunnes of Oyle. The next yeere 1621. the foresaid Aduenturers hired, and set forth eight ships, seuen for the Whale Voyage, and one to the South-eastwards vpon Discouerie, under the command aforesaid, which yeere in one of their chiefest Harbours their Voyage was ouerthrowne, by reason of the foresaid Flemmings and Danes, being to the Northward, as aforesaid, putting the Whale by her course, and in all places in the Countrey generally disheartned, and out of hope to have made any Voyage that yeere, whereby to have earned their bread. Yet it pleased God afterwards in some Harbours, Whales hitting in, a Voyage was performed, and 1100. tunnes of Oyle brought home, to the great encouragement of the faid Aduenturers: otherwise that Trade had beene 50 vtterly ouerthrowne.

The yeere following 1622, the faid Aduenturers at their owne charge fet forth nine ships, vnder the command aforesaid, and therein employed divers Land-men; many of which afterwards proue good Sea-men, and are fit for any Sea feruice. Eight of which ships were appointed to make their Voyage vpon the Whale, and one to goe on discouerie to the South-eastwards. But ill successe happening, one of their greatest ships of burthen, whereof lohn Masson was Master, haung in her two hundred tuns of Caske, Coppers, and divers provisions, was unfortunatly cast Shipwricke, away against a piece of Ice, upon the coast of King James Newland, four eleagues from the shoare, in which thip perished nine and twentie men, and the remainder being three and twenty, were 60 by the providence of the Almightie miraculoully faued in a Shallop, coaffing thirtie leagues afterwards to meet with some other ships to find some succour, having neither bread nor drinke,

nor any meanes whereby to get any food: and fo remayned three dayes in extreme cold weather, being in a small Boat ready to bee swallowed up of enery wane, but that God prouided better for them. Many of which prople their hands and feet rotted off, being frozen, and they

1621.

died in the Countrey. The rest of the ships returned home laden, bringing in them 1300, time of Oyle, yet the foresaid chiefe Harbour could not performe their full lading there, by reason of the Flemmings and Danes being to the Northwards, as aforefaid, which doth yearely hinder the Companies ships from making a Voyage.

The Description of the scueral sorts of Whales, with the manner of killing them: Whereto is added the Description of Greenland.

* The ordinaric growne Whale. Finnes.

Small eyes,

Some kinds

haue greater.

one taken on

Tenet theare,

the eve of which was a

Cart-loade.

a man mioh

ftand in the

hole voright:

The like wee

Nature being

He Whale is a Fish or Sea-beast of a huge bignesse, about fixtie fine * foot long, and thirtie fine foot thicke, his head is a third part of all his bodies quantitie, his spacious mouth contayning a very great tongue, and all his finnes, which we call Whale finnes,

These finnes are fastned or rooted in his upper shap, and spread oner his tengue on both fides his mouth, being in number about two hundred and fiftie on one fide, and as many on the other fide. The longest finnes are placed in the midst of his mouth, and the rest doe shorten by their proportionable degrees, backward and forwards, from ten or eleven foot long to foure inches in length, his eyes are not much bigger then an Oxes eyes, his body is in fashion almost ao round forwards, growing on still narrower towards his tayle from his bellie, his tayle is about ewentie foot broad, and of a tough folid substance, which we vie for blockes to chop the Blubber Stow mentions on (which yeelds Oyle) and of like nature are his two swimming finnes (and they grow for-

This creature commeth oftentimes aboue water, spouting eight or nine times before he goeth downe againe, whereby he may be descried two or three leagues off. Then our Whale-killers presently rowe forth from the place where they stand to watch for him, making what halle they can to meet him : but commonly before they come neere him, he will be gone downe againe, and continue a good while before he rifeth; so that sometimes they rowe past him. Yes are they very circums pect, euer looking round where they may espie him risen, or discerne his 10 may sheffe of way under water, which they call his Walke. When he is up and the Shallops neere him, they the throat &c. rowe towards him very resolutely, as if they would force the Shallop vpon him, if hee went downe under water : but the Harponyre, who flandeth up in the head of the Boat, darteth his herein luxuriant, and diver- Harping-iron at the Whale with both his hands, to foone as he commeth within his reachingherwith the Whale being ftrucken, prefently descendeth to the bottome, and therefore doe they reare out a rope of two hundred fathome, which is fastned to the Harping-iron, and lieth coyled in the Boat : And they let him have as much of the rope as reacheth to the bottome, and when they perceive him rifing they hale in the rope to get neere him, and when the Whale commeth wp about water, then do the men lance him with their lances, either out of one Shallon or the other; for most commonly there bee two Shallops about the killing of one Whale. In 40 lancing him they strike neere to the finnes he fwimmeth withall, and as lowe under water neere his bellie as conveniently they can: but when he is lanced, he friskes and strikes with his tayle fo forcibly, that many times when hee hitteth a Shallop hee iplitteth her in pieces; fo that the men are relieued and taken in by another Shallop; and sometimes he striketh so fully vpon them, that some of the men are either maymed, or killed with his stroke. Therefore they who vndertake this businesse which is the principall thing in the Voyage, must not onely bee bold and reso-Captaine Edge lute, but also discreet and wary; otherwise their rash forwardnesse may preuent them of their expected conquest; confidering they have no shield to withstand the offended beast their enemy, but onely by a heedfull warmeffe to avoide the receiving of his dangerous stroke. Swimming is also requisite for a Whale-killer to be expert in, for it may be a meanes to faue his life, when 50 he hath loft his Boat, and another is not neere presently to helpe him.

The Whale having received his deadly wound, then he spouteth bloud (whereas formerly he cast forth water) and his strength beginneth to fayle him; but before he dieth, hee will sometimes draw the Shallop three or foure miles from the place where he was first stricken: and as he is a dying, he turneth his bellie vpwards, which lieth vppermost being dead. Then they faften a rope to his tayle, and with the Shallops, one made fait to another, they towe him towards the ship with his tayle foremost. Then doe they lay him croffe the sterne of the ship, where he is cut vp in this manner; two or three men in a Boat or Shallop come close to the side of the Whale, and hold the Boat fast there with a Boat-hooke; and another standing either in the Boat, or most commonly upon the Whale, cutteth the fat (which we call Blubber) in square pieces with 60 A cutting Knife, three or foure foot long. Then to race it from the flesh, there is a Crane or Capthen placed purposely vpon the poope of the ship, from whence there descendeth a rope with a booke in it; this hooke is made to take hold on a piece of Blubber: and as the men winde the Capsten, to the cutter with his long knife loofeth the fat from the flesh, even as if the lard of a

Swine were to be cut off from the leane. When a piece is in order cut off, then let they lower the Crane, and let downe the Blubber to flote vpon the water, and make a hole in some part of ir. putting a rope thorowit; and so they proceed to cut off more, faithing ten or twentie pieces together to bee towed a shoare at one time, being made fast to the sterne of a Boat or Shallon. These pieces being thus brought vnto the shoare side, they are drawne by one and one vpon the floare with an high Crane, or carried vp by two men on a Barrow vnto a Stage, there to be cut into small pieces about a foot long, but thin : then it is carried vnto the choppers by two boyes. with two little hand-hookes, taking in each hand a piece, and so they put it into half-tubs which fland behind the choppers, out of which the choppers take it vp; who stand at the side of a boat which is raifed of an equall height fit for the furnace. And the boat being fitted with all

Io things necessarie for the choppers, they place the chopping blockes, which they make of the Whales tayle, and the Blubber is layd ready for them, as they vie it, in small pieces vpon the boord whereon they stand. Then the choppers take it vp with hand-hookes, and lay it on their blockes, and chop it in thin pieces (the thinner he cutsit, the better it is) and when it is chopped, they put it off the blocke downe into the Shallep, with a short Paddle made like a Coleped, they put it out in the state and the state of the state of the boat, and on the or take: and this doe fixe or eight men fland chopping on the one fide of the boat about two or three yards diffant are the Furnaces and Coppers placed and heated. Then betweene the chopping boat and the Coppers, is layd a broad thicke planke, on which standeth a hogshead, which contayneth as much as is put into the Copper, at one time for one boyling, and the tub being emptied, is made to flide vnto the chopping boat againe, be-

20 ing there filled with a copper ladle againe, and put into another Copper. When it is boyled enough, the small pieces of Blubber, which wee call Fritters, will looke browne as if they were fried. Then are they taken out with copper ladles, and some of the Oyle also with them, and put into a Barrow made close to dreyne the Oyle, which standeth ouer another Shallop, that is fet on the back-side of the Furnace to receive the Oyle in, and as soone as the Fritters are taken cleane out of the Copper, then prelently is the tub of small Blubber emptied into the Copper againe to be also boyled.

The Boat into which the hot Oyle is put out of the Coppers, is ever kept halfe full of water, which doth not onely coole the Oyle before it runne into the Caske, but also is a cleanser of it from drolle, which descendeth to the bottome of the Boat. Out of the Oyle-boat doth the Oyle runne thirtie or fortie yands in Troughs or Gutters, and fo into Buts or Hogheads, which being filled, is rolled off to coole, and another Caske layd to fill, and when there is any quantitie of Oyle made, it is carried aboord the ship in rafts. In this manner is the Oyle faued and

epared. Now concerning the Whale Finnes, the Whaleshead being cut off from the body (as hee Whale Finnes) floteth at the sterne of the ship where hee is cut up) is towed by a Boat as necre the shoare as it will come: but it is aground in twelue or thirteene foot water, then by crabes which are placed on land it is drawne on land, at feuerall times when the water is at highest, so neere the dry shoare, that men at a lowe water with their Boats on, cut off the Blubber and Finnes, which by 40 the crabes are drawne on shoare, and the Finnes are with Axes, one seuered from another, and being made cleane, are packed up by fiftie in a bundle, and fo shipped.

ting manuturaties are personal portrained and differing the one from the other in goodnesse, Eight tinds of quantitie and qualitie.

The fift fort of Whale is called the Grand bay, taking his name from Grand bay in New 1. Grand by foundland, as having there beene first killed : he is blacke of colour, with a smooth skinne, and While. white underneath the chaps. This Whale is the best for Oyle and Finnes of all the rest (and doth yeeld most the elder it growes.) This fort of Whale doth yeeld about an hundred hogsheads

The second fort of Whale is called Sarda, of the same colour as the former, but somewhat 2. Sarda. leffer, and the Finnes likewite leffer, and yeelds in Oyle according to his bigneffe, fometimes feuentie hogheads, or eightie hogheads. This Whale hath naturally growing vpon his backe,

The third fort of Whale is called Trumps, being as long as the first, but thicker forwards, of 3. Trumps. colour more gray then the former, having but one spoute in his head, and the rest have all two; he hath in his mouth teeth about a fpan long, and as thicke as a mans wrift, but no finnes; his he natural mis mount recture about a pair tong, and as three as a mails write, our not many, mis head is bigger then the two former, and in proportion farrebigger then his bodie. In the head of this Whale is the Permefitie, which lieth there in a hole like a Well. This is the Whale that Spermanter. is supposed to yeeld the Ambergreese; There taken about fortie hogsheads of Oyle besides the

The fourth fort of Whale is called Otta Sotta, and is of the fame colour of the Trampa, having 4.0tta Sotta. finnes in his mouth all white, but not aboue halfea yard long , being thicker then the Trampa, but not fo long : he yeelds the best Oyle, but not aboue thirtie hogsheads.

The fitt fort of Whale is called Gibara, of colour blacke like the two first, fauing that it & Gibarta, hath standing upon the top of his backe, a finne halfea yard long. This Whale is as bigge

You may fee this Story of the Whale-killing prefented liuely in the Map, which bath liberally added to this

as the first; his fins little or nothing worth, being not about halfe a ward long: and hee weeldeth about twelue hogsheads of Oyle, all which his backe yeelds; as for his bellie it yeelde

The fixt fort is called Sedena, being of a whitly colour, and bigger then any of the former. 6. Sedeua. the finnes not aboue one foot long, and he yeelds little or no Oyle.

The feuenth is called Sedena Negro, of colour blacke, with a bumpe on his backe; this Whale yeelds neither Oyle, finnes, nor teeth, and yet he is of a great bigneffe.

The eight fort is called Sewria, of colour as white as snow, of the bignesse of a Wherrie, be yeelds notaboue one hoghead or two of Oyle, nor any finnes, and is good meate to becaten.

The description of Greenland.

Antiphraffical this defeription of Greenland,

8. Semiia.

474

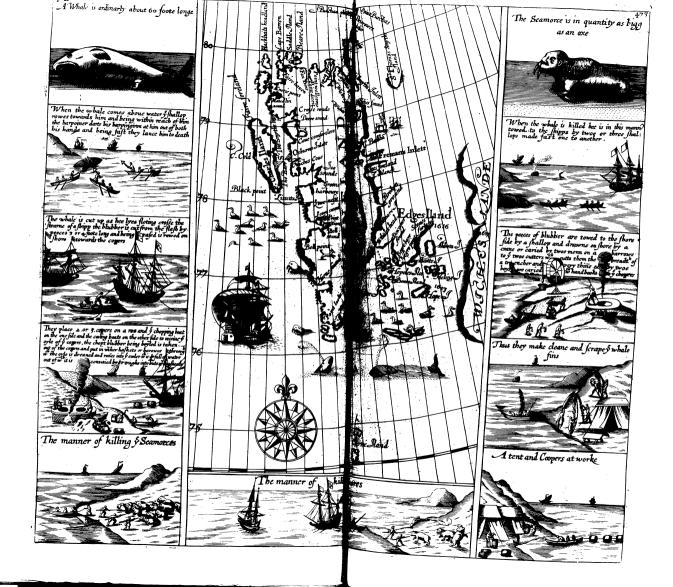
Reculand is a place in Nature nothing like vnto the Name: for certainly there is no place In the World, yet knowne and discouered that is lesse greene then it. It is couered with fnow, both the Mountaines and the lower Lands , till about the beginning of June , being very Mountamous, and beareth neither graffe nor tree, faue onely fuch as grow vpon the Moores and heathie grounds, in the North parts of England, which we call Heath, or Ling. This groweth notes, written when the snow melteth, and when the ground beginneth to be vincouered. And on this doe the by Ra. Fasherin. Deere feed in the Summer time, and become very fat therewithall in a moneths space, but how to they live in the Winter time it is not eafily to be imagined. For seeing at the end of May wee find the ground all couered with fnow, it is very like, that in the time of Winter there is no part bare, where any thing can grow; especially during the time that the Sunne is altogether depressed under the horizon, which in the latitude of 77. degrees, continueth from the eighteenth of October till the fourth of Februarie. This Countrey by all probabilities hath neuer been inhabited by any people; notwithflanding, I thinke men might live there, carrying thither good flore of prouition of victuals, and other things necessary against the cold, which perhaps will be vehement in the Winter time, by the former reasons; namely, because the Sunne remayneth so

Neuertlieleffe, there will not be any continuance of darknesse, because the Sunne in his greatest declination will be but 10.degrees vnder the Horizon, at this time of his being in the South of the Meridian in the former latitude of 77, degrees, which is once in foure and twentie homes: and therefore the time of their Noone will bee much lighter then our Night here in England, when the dayes are at the longest; for then is the Sunne I c. degrees under the Horizon at midnight, and yet the greatest darkmesse is but like twi-light. And although it bee a generall saying, and a common received opinion, that the further North the greater cold, yet experience teacheth, that it is not alwaies true. For at Mofco, and thereabouts in the Winter time, there is extreme frosts and cold weather, informuch that oftentimes men are brought homedead, being flarued with cold; and many have their nofes and cares caufed to fall off, through the extremity of the piercing aire : yet at Edenborrow, which is more Northerly by one degree and an halfe, 40 and in all places neere vnto it the aire is temperate, and the cold tolerable, the fnow nener sying any long time on the ground after it is fallen. Notwithstanding, wee have snow remayning all the yeere long in divers places of England, but the reason of this is, because the aire is ever warmest neere vnto the Sea shoare, (as Edenborron standeth) and contrariwise the cold is most veeuen neere the hement in places which are fartheft remote from the Sea, as Mofco is fituated.

All the Creatures that appeare vato vs vpon the Land, are Deere, Beares, and Foxes, and fundrie forts of wilde Fowle, as Cuthbert Duckes, Willockes, Stints , Sea-pigeons , Sea-parrets, 30. and 40, the Gulls, Noddies, &c. The Author addes a discourse of sending condemned men to inhabite there, with diners projects for their sernice there, for the further discourse how best to bee effected, for such things as are most need ary for this employment of Whale-killing, &c. but because experience halb gi- 50 nen best instructions already, and destructions must otherwise be presented, I have serborne to decame the Reader in those (otherwise indicious) speculations.

The Southermost part of Greenland stands in 76. degrees 30. minutes, which wee call , Point Looke our, and we have discourred all the West side of the Land as farre vnto the Northwards as 80 degrees odde minutes: in which compasse were have already experience of fixe or eight good Harbours for the killing of the whale; and on the East side we have discovered as farre as 78. degrees, finding divers Ilands, great and small, yeelding good Harbours, and store of Whales, and Sex-horfes; and for a further discouery on the East fide, I am perswaded it had beene farre greater, if the Dutch had not so disturbed vs in our proceedings, as also the Hull-men, who ever practifed to follow our steps, after the discouerie within one yeere or two: as by our Masters Journall more at large may appeare. The best actions have their hindrances and crosses, and 6 60 hath this had; for, the Dutch have beene a bane to this Trade and Discourie: The Hull-min have done some bad service in this Action , for they were the first that carried the Dutch to the Tutches, as by Winandens Oath and Journalt appeares, they were also a cause of that bad Voyage,

Yet in China Sea, and farre neerer the Sun, betwixt extreme. R. Foth.



to vs in 1618, in that they animated the Flemmings to come backe to Greenland againe, as appeareth in this Journall, in the yeere 1617, they have done fome other ill feruices against vs as well as the Dutch, but in regard they are our Countrey-men, I will omit and wish their amendment, and pray to God to fend a good and further Discouery to bee made in their Northerne

Eader, I present thee here three admirable Voyages of Discourry made by the Dutch, no whit en-Ruying their due prayle, but bonouring their worthy Alts and Arts. They have formerly beene published in Dutch, and translated by W. Philip. I have beere abbreniated them, as my vie is with others. 10 to anoid prolinite. The Durch themselmes * write that after the English Rustian Trade, one Oliver * Prolesumena. to assed profixetie. The Durch teemjeases: write tons agree one Engine assessing and the Company of the Burell mount on the Speed of Section where the English, and these of Bu. the distinction of the English, and these of Bu. the Seidens per Company of the English, and these of Bu. the Seidens per Company of the English and these of Bu. the Seidens per Company of the English and these of Bu. the Seidens per Company of the English and these of Bu. the Seidens per Company of the English and these of Bu. the Seidens per Company of the English and the Seidens per Company of the Eng nell, and the bopes of China and Cathay, coused the States Gentral to send forthe two shippes under the 114.60ml. command of Hugo Linschoten, so the Strong bits of Wey-gates, and two others under William Ber. 161. nards, by the personalism of P. Plancius to governebs Northwards from Nous Zemla. Linschot wont fiftic miles beyond the Streights, the Northerly winds, and late scass from bucke. Bernards Journall bere followeth, of that and his two later Voyages, the two later written by one employed therein.

CHAP. III.

The first Nauigation of WILLIAM BARENTS, alias BEA-NARDS into the North Seas ; Written by GI-RAT de VEER.



T is a most certayneand an assured Affertion, that nothing doth more benefit and further the Common-wealth (specially these Countryes) then the art and knowledge of Nauigation, in regard that such Countreyes and Nations as are strong and mightie at Sea, have the meaner and ready way to draw, fetch, and bring vnto them for their mayntenance, all the principallest commodities and fruits

In these Natigations we must not be difmayed if some missike, or if we cannot perfect a Difcourry in the first, fecond, or third Voyage. Alexande Chapma (after he had wonne all Greeis, A thing not and from thence entred into little and great Ale; and comming to the fartheft parts of India, continued, there found fome difficultie to paffe) [aid.] If wee had not gothe forward, and periffed in our inthere found some discusse to paste) had . It wee had not gone torward, and persated in our intent, which other men effermed and held to be impossible, we had full remayned and stayed in the Allthings are entry of Cicilia, where as now we have over-runne and past through all those large and spacious effected in countreyes: for nothing is found and effected all at one time, neyther is any thing that is put in convenient practice, prefently brought to an end. To the which end, Cierra wifely faith; God hath given vs time. some things, and not all things, that our Successors also might have some-what to doe. Therefore we must not leave off, nor flay our pretence in the middle of our proceedings, as long as there is any commoditie to be hoped, and in time to bee obtayned : for that the greatest and richeft Treasures are hardlieft to be found. I thought good to set downe, in regard that I have vndertaken to describe the three Voyages made into the North Seas, in three yeeres, one after the other; behind Norway, and along and about Muscousia, towards the Kingdome of Cashaia, and China: whereof, the two laft, I my felfe holpe to effect; and yet brought them not to the defired end that we well hoped.

First, to shew our diligent, and most toylesome labour and paines taken, to find out the right The first sin-50 courfe; which we could not bring to paffe, as wee well hoped, wished, and defired, and possible dingis hard, might haue found it, by croffing the Seas, if we had taken the right courle; if the Ice & the fhortneffe of time, and had crosses had not hindered vs. We have affuredly found, that the onely and enfur. most hinderance to our Voyage, was the Ice that we found about Nona Zembla, vnder 73-74-75. and 76. degrees, and not so much voon the Seabetweene both the Lands : whereby it appeareth, that not the neerenesse of the North-pole, but the Ice that commeth in and out from the Tartarian Sea, about Nona Zembla, caused vs to feele the greatest cold. Therefore in regard that the neerenesse of the Pole was not the cause of the great cold that wee felt, if wee had had the meanes to have held our appointed and intended courfe into the North-east, we had peraduchture found some entrance : which course wee could not hold from Nous Zembla, because that 60 there we entred amongst great store of Ice; and how it was about Nona Zembla, we could not tel, before we had fought it; and when we had fought it, we could not then alter our course, at though also it is vnoertayn, what we should have done, if we had continued in our North-east course, because it is not yet found out. But it is true, that in the Countrey lying under 80. degrees, (which we esteeme to be Greenland) there is both Leaues and Grasse to be seene : Wherein, such Beats

of the heate voder the line with the cold North Pole.

The refoluse liam Barants.

lune s.

The particu-

lars beeing

as feed of Leaues and Graffe (as Harts, Hinds, and fuch like heafts line, whereas to the contrary in Mona Zambia, there groweth neyther Leaues nor Graffe, and there are no beafts therein ry in Acus Carmeta, itte grows and Foxes, &c. Although Now Zemila lyeth 45, and 6. de. but manuar eace men, as some season a very the policy and a season and a season a season a season and a season grees more southersy from the Fourth of the Sunne on both fides, betweene both the Iron on the South and North-fide of the Line of the Sunne on both fides, betweene both the Iron on the South and Morthshale of the South as the South as it is right under the Line. What worship picks, under 23, degrees and an halfe, yet it is as hor, as it is right under the Line. What worship is the south and the south as the south der then should it be, that about the North-pole also, and as many degrees on both fides, it should not be colder then right under the Pole ! It was not the Sea, nor the necreases unto the Pole, but the Ice about the Land, that let and hindered vs (as I faid before) for that affoom as we made but the Ice about the Land, and put more into the Sea, although it was much further Northward, preferrly 10 from the Land, and pur more and the opinion our Pilot William Earents dyed, who not wishifunding the searcful and intolerable cold that he indured, yet he was not discouraged, but offered to by wagers with divers of vs., that by Gods helpe, hee would bring that pretended Voyage to an wagers wing a nerror va, water or va, and the North Cape, But I will leave that, and thew you end, if he held his courie North-east from the North Cape, But I will leave that, and thew you of the three Voyages aforesaid, begunne and set forth by the permission and surberance of the Generall States of the voited Proninces, and of Prince Marrice, as Admirall of the Sea, and the

First, you must vinderstand, that in Anno 1594, there was four eships set forth out of theynited Prouinces, whereof two were of Amsterdam; one of Zelands, and one of Enchonsien, that were appointed to Tayle into the North Seas, to discouer the Kingdomes of Cathaia, and Chine; 20 Northward from Norway, Masconia, and about Tarteria, whereof William Barents, a notable skilfull and wife Pilot, was Commander over the ships of Amsterdam, and with them you Whit-funday, departed from Amfterdam, and went to the Texell,

Vpon the fifth of Iume they fayled out of the Texel, and having a good wind and faire weather, vpon the three and twentieth of Iune, they arrived at Rildnin in Musconia, which for that it is a place well knowne and a common Voyage, I will make no further description thereof. The nine and twentieth of June, at foure of the clocke in the after-moone, they fet fayle out

knowne to many of our Mariners, I The fourth of July they faw None Zembla, lying South-east and by East fix or feven miles

from them, where they had blacke durtie ground at one hundred and fine fathome. William Ba- 30 rents tooke the height of the Sunne with his Croffe-ftaffe, when it was at the loweft , that is betweene North North-eaft, and Eaft and by North, and found it to be eleuated about the Hon-ZOB fix degrees and 1. part, his declination being 12. degrees and 55. minutes, from whence fibfiracting the aforefard height, there reflech fixtnenth degrees and 35. minutes, which being fibstracted from 90. degrees, there refteth 73. degrees and 25. minutes. Then they wound Eastward and fayled fine miles, East and by South, and East South-east, and past by a long point of Land that lay out into the Sea, which they named Langenes, and hard by that point East-ward. there was a great Bay, where they went a Land with their Boat, but found no people. From Langenes to Cape Bapo, East North-east it is foure miles. From Cape Bape to the West point of Lombfbay North-east and by North are fine miles, and betweene them both there are two 40 Creeks. Lombibay is a great wide Bay, on the West-side thereof having a faire Haven, fix, seven, or eight fathome deepe, blacke fand, there they went on floare with their Boat, and voon the shoare placed a Beacon, made of an old Mast which they found there; calling the Bay Lombitan, because of a certayne kind of Beares so called, which they found there in great abundance. The

Lombsbay.

East point of Lombibay, is a long narrow point, and by it there lyeth an lland, and from that long point to Sea-ward in, there is a great Creeke. This Lambfe at lyeth under 74. degrees and f. part. Admirals Hand From Louis bay to the point of the Admirals Hand, they fayled fix or feven miles, North-east and by North. The Admirals Iland is not very faire on the East-fide, but a farre off very flat, so that you must shunne it long before you come at it, it is also very vneuen, for at one casting of the Lead they had ten fathome deepe, and presently at another casting of the Lead they had but 50 fix fathome, and presently after that againe ten, eleuen, and twelve fathome, the streame runnine hard against the Flats.

From the East-end of the Admirals Iland, to Cape Negro, that is the Blacke point, they sayled about five or fix miles, East North-east, and a mile without the Blacke point it is Ceventy fathome deepe, the ground flimy, as vpon Pamphiss, right East-ward of the Blacks point, there are two sharpe pointed Hils in the Creeke, that are easie to be knowne. The fixt of July, the Sunne being North, they come right before the Blacks point with faire weather, this Blacks point lyeth under 75. degrees and 20. minutes. From the Blacks point to Williams Iland, they fayled feuenoreight

miles, East North-east, and betweene them both about halfe a mile, there lay a small lland. The fewenth of July they fayled from Williams Illand, and then Williams Barents tooke the 60 height of the Sunne, with his Croffe-staffe, and found it to be elegated about the Horizon in the South-west and by South 53: degrees and 6. minutes, his declination being 22. degrees and 49. minutes, which being added to \$3. degrees and 6. minutes, make 75. degrees and 55. minutes. This is the right height of the Pole of the faid lland. In this Iland they found great store of

Driftmood, and many Sea-horses being a kind of fish that keepeth in the Sea, having very great Sea-horses, of teeth, which at this day are vied in fread of Juory or Elephants Teeth, there allo is a good Road Mories. for thips, at twelve and thirreene fathome deepe against all winds, except it bee West Southwest, and West-winds, and there they found a piece of a Rassia ship, and that day they had the wind East North-east, miffie weather.

The ninth of July they entred into Beeren-fart, vpon the Road under Williams Iland, and there Beeren-fart they found a white Beare, which they perceiuing, presently entred into their Boat, and shot her white Beare, into the bodie with a Musket, but the Beare shewed most wonderfull strength, which almost is terrible. not to be found in any beatt, for no man euer heard the like to bee done by any Lion or cruell beaft what locuer : for not withfranding that the was that into the bodie, yet the leapt vp. and fwamme in the water, the men that were in the Boat rowing after her, caft a Rope about her necke, and by that meanes drew her at the sterne of the Boat, for that not having feene the like Beare before, they thought to have carryed her aliue in the ship, and to have shewed her for a strange wonder in Holland; but she vied such force, that they were glad that they were rid of her, and contented themselves with her skinne only, for shee made such a noyse, and stroug in fuch fort, that it was admirable, wherewith they let her reft and gaue her more scope, with the Rone that they held her by, and so drew her in that fort after them, by that meanes to wearie her : meane-time, William Barents made neerer to ber, but the Beare iwamme to the Boat, and with her fore-feet got hold of the sterne thereof, which William Barents perceining, faid, she will 20 there reft her felte, but she had another meaning, for she vsed such force, that at last the had gotten halfe her body into the Boat, wherewith the men were fo abashed, that they ranne into the further end of the Boat, and thought verily to have beene spoyled by her, but by a strange meanes they were delinered from her, for that the Rope that was about her necke, caught hold woon the hooke of the Ruther, whereby the Beare could get no further, but fo was held backe, and hanging in that manner, one of the men boldly stept forth from the end of the Scute , and thrust her into the bodie with a halfe-pike; and therewith thee fell downe into the water, and fo they rowed forward with her to the shippe, drawing her after them, till shee was in a manner dead, wherewith they killed her out-right, and hauing flayed her, brought the skin to Amilerdam.

The twentieth of July, they sayled out of Becreen-fores from trillams; Illand, and the same day Illand of Croffet

in the morning got to the Iland of Creffer, and there went on Land with their Pinnafe, and found the Hand to be barren, and full of Cliffes and Rocks, in it there was a small Hauen, whereinto they rowed with their Boat. This Iland is about halfe a mile long, and reacheth East and West, on the West end in hath a banke, about a third part of a mile long, and at the East end also another banke, vpon this Hand there flandeth two great Croffes, the Hand lyeth about two long miles from the firme Land, and under the East-and thereof there is a good Road, at fixe and twentie fathome loft ground; and formewhat closer to the Hand on the Strand at nine fathome fandie ground.

From the Iland of Croffes to the point of Cape Naffam, they fayled Eaft, and Eaft and by Cape Naffam. North about eight miles; it is a long flat point which you must be carefull to shunne, for thereabouts at feuen fathome there were flats or shooles, very farre from the Land; it lyeth almost vnder 76. degress and a halfe. From the West end of Williams Hand, to the Hand with the Crosses is three miles , the course North. From Nasaw point they sayled Eaft and by South , and East South-east fine miles, and then they thought that they faw Land in Nor th-east , and by East, and fayled towards it fine miles North-salt to descrie it, thinking it to bee another Land, that lay Northward from Nous Zemble, but it began to blow so hard out of the Well, that they were forced to take in their Marfaile, and yet the wind role in fuch manner , that they were forced to take in all their Sayles, and the Seawent fo hollow, that they were conftrayned to drine fixteene houres together, without fayle, eight or nine miles East North-east.

The elementh of July their Boat was by a great want of the Sea funke to the ground, and by that meanes they loft it, and after that they draue without fayles fine miles , East and by South; at laft the Sunne being almost South-east, the wind came about to the North-west, and then the weather began somewhat to cleere up, but yet it was very miltie. Then they hoyfed up their fayles againe and fayled foure miles till night, that the Sunne was North and by East, and there they had fixtie fathome deepe, muddie ground, and then they faw certayne flakes of Ice, at which time voon the twelfth of July they woond West, and held North-west, and fayled about a mile with miftie weather, and a North-west wind, and sayled up and downe West Southwest three or foure miles, to see if they sould find their Boat againe: after that they wound againe with the wind, and layled foure miles South-east, till the Sunne was South-west, and then they were close by the Land of Nous Zemble , that lay East and by North , and West and by 60 South, from thence they wound over againe till noone, and sayled three miles, North and by West, and then till the Sunne was North-west, they held North-west and by North three miles,

then they wound East-ward and sayled foure or fine miles North-east and by East. The thirteenth of July at night, they found great flore of Ice, as much as they could defery out of the top, that lay as if it had beene a plaine field of Ice, then they wound Westward over from

Cape Truft.

Gold Stones.

The seventeenth of July, William Barents tooke the height of the Sunne with his Affroisfine reductive way and a first and a first first and a first and perceived the firme Land, lying South from them. Then they fayled till the nineteenth of and percentage the mane Land, 1712 of the manual services and manual services and miffle fully in the morning, Well South-well fixe or feven miles, with a North-well winde, and miffle weather, and after that South-west and South-west and by West seven miles, the Sunne being 77. degrees 5. minutes leffe. Then they fayled two miles South-west, and were close by the land of Nona Zembla, about Cape Nassaw.

The flue and recent ieth of July, they were so inclosed about with flakes of Ice, that out of the top they could not diferene any thing beyond it, and fought to get through the Ice, but they top trey could not unterme any similar top tooke the height of the Sunne, when it was at the 10 lowest betweene North and North-east, and North-east and by North, it being eleuated above the Horizon 6, degrees, and 4, his Declination being 19, degrees 50, minutes, now take 6, degrees 1. from 19. degrees and 50. minutes, and there refleth 13. degrees 5. minutes, which fib.

itracted from 90. there refteth 77. degrees leffe s. minutes.

The fixe and twentieth of July in the morning, they fayled fixe miles South South-eaft, till the Sunne was South-west, and then South-east fixe miles, and were within a mile of the land of Noua Zembla, and came againe to Cape Trust.

The eight and twentieth of Iuly, the height of the Sun being taken at noone with the Afrelabium, it was found to be eleuated aboue the Horizon 57 degrees and 6 minutes, her Declination being 19. degrees and 18. minutes, which in all is 76. degrees and 24. minutes, they being then 2-20 bout four miles from the land of Nona Zembla, that lay all couered ouer with Snow, the wea-

The nine and twentieth of July, the height of the Sun being taken with the Croffe-flaffe, A. Brolabium & Quadrant, they found it to be elevated above the Horizon 32. degrees, her declination on being 19, degrees, which substracted from 32, there resteth 13. degrees of the Equator, which being substracted from 90, there rested 77, degrees, and then the nearest North point of Nose Zembla, called the Ice point, lay right East from them. There they found certaine Stones that gliftered like gold, which for that cause they named Gold-stones, and there also they had a faire Bay

V pon the same day they woond Southward againe, and sayled South-east two miles be- 30 tweene the Land and the Ice, and after that from the Ise poin t Eaft, and to the Southwardfixe Orange Illands miles to the Ilands of Orange; and there they laboured forward betweene the Land and the Ice, with faire full weather, and vpon the one and thirtieth of July got to the Ilands of Orange. And there went to one of those Ilands, where they found about two hundred Walrushen, or Sea-horfer, lying vpon the shoare to bast themselves in the Sunne. This Sea-horse is a wonderfull strong Monster of the Sea, much bigger then an Oxe, which keepes continually in the Seas, haning a skin like a Sea-calfe or Seale, with very short hayre, mouthed like a Lion, and many times they lye vpon the Ice; they are hardly killed vnlesse you strike them just vpon the forehead, it hath foure Feet, but no Eares, and commonly it hath one or two young ones at a time. And when the Fither-men chance to finde them vpon a flake of Ice with their young ones, thee caffeth her 40 young ones before her into the water, and then takes them in her Armes and fo plungeth vp and downe with them, and when shee will revenge her-felse vpon the Boates, or make resistance against them, then she casts her young ones from her againe, and with all her force goeth towards the Boate (whereby our men were once in no small danger, for that the Sea-horse had almost stricken her teeth into the sterne of their Boate) thinking to ouer-throw it, but by meanes of the great crie that the men made, the was afraid, and fwomme away againe, and tooke her young ones againe in her armes. They have two teeth flicking out of their mouthes, on each fide one, each being about halfe an Ell long, and are efteemed to bee as good as any luorie or Elephants teeth, specially in Musiconia, Tartaria, and thereabouts where they are knowne, for they are as

The Sea-horses that lay bathing themselues upon the Land, our men supposing that they could not defend themselves being out of the water, went on shoare to assaile them, and fought with them, to get their Teeth that are so rich, but they brake all their Hatchets, Cuttle-axes, and Pikes in pieces, and could not kill one of them, but ftrucke some of their Teeth out of their mouthes, which they tooke with them : and when they could get nothing against them by fighting, they agreed to goe aboord the Ship, to fetch some of their great Ordnance, to shoot at them therewith; but it began to blow so hard, that it rent the Ice into great pieces, so that they were forced not to doe it, and therewith they found a great white Beare that flept, which they shot into the bodie, but shee ranne away, and entred into the water; the men following her with their Boate, and killed her out-right, and then drew her vpon the Ice, and so sticking a halft-pike 60 vpright, bound her fast vnto it, thinking to fetch her when they came back againe, to shoot at the Sca-horfes with their Ordnance, but for that it began more and more to blow, and the Ice therewith brake in peeces, they did nothing at all.

After that, William B arous finding that hee could hardly get through, to accomplish and end

CHAP. 3. Naugations into the North-Seas, by William Barents.

his pretended Voyage, his men also beginning to bee wearie, and would sayle no further, they all together agreed to returne backe againe, to meet with the other Ships that had taken their course Thererentee to the Wer-gates, or the Straights of Maffam, to know what Difconeries they had made there. The backe again. first of August they turned their course to sayle backe againe from the Ilands of Orange: There William Berents tooke the height of the Sunne, it being vnder 71. degrees and a. and there they

found a great Creeke, which William Barents judged to bee the place where Oliner Brunel had heene before, called Coffine farch. From the Blacke Hand they fayled South, and South and by Blacke Hand.

East to another small point three miles, on which point there stood a Croffe, and therefore they called it the Croffe-power, there also was a flat Bay and low water, five, fix, or seven fadome deepe Croffe-point.

To fost ground. From Crafe-paint they fayled along by the land South South-east source miles, and then came to another (mail point, which behind it had a great Creeke, that reached Eastward: This point they called the fifth point, or Saint Laurence point. From the fifth point they favled to the Seemer point three miles, South South-east, and there lay a long blacke Rocke clote by the land, whereon there flood a Croffe; then they entred into the Ice againe, and put inward to the Sea because of the Ice. Their intent was to sayle along the coast of Nona Zembla to the Wey-gates, but by reason that the Ice met them, they woond Westward, and from the ninth of August in the Equening, till the tenth of August in the Morning, sayled West and by North eleuen miles, and after that foure miles West North-west, and North-west and by West, the winde being North; in the Morning they woond Eastward againe, and fayled vntill Ecuening ten miles East. and 20 East and by South; after that East, and East and by North foure miles, and there they faw land. and were against a great Creeke, where with their Boate they went on land, and there found a faire Hauen fine fathome deepe, fandie ground. This Creeke on the North fide bath three blacke points, and about the three points lyeth the road, but you must keepe somewhat from the third point, for it is itonie, and betweene the fecond and third point there is another faire Bay, for Saint Laurens North-west, North, and North-east windes, blacke fandie ground. This Bay they called Saint Bay.

Laurence Bay, and there they tooke the height of the Sunne, which was 70, degrees and 1. From Saint Laurence Bay, South South-east two miles to Sewer point, there lay along blacke Sconce point. Rocke close by the land, whereon there flood a Croffe, there they went on Land with their Boat and perceived that some men had beene there, and that they were fled to save themselves.

30 for there they found fixe Sackes with Rye-meale buried in the ground, and a heape of stones by the Croffe, and a Bullet for a great Piece, and thereabouts also there flood another Croffe, with three Houses made of wood, after the North Countrey manner : and in the houses they found many barrels of Pike-staues, whereby they conjectured, that there they yied to take Salmons. and by them flood fine or fix Coffins, by Granes, with dead mensiones, the Coffins flanding voon the ground all filled vp with fromes ; there also lay a broken Ruffis thip, the Keele thereof being fortie foure foot long, but they could fee no man on the Land ; it is a faire Hauen for all winder, which they called the Meale-haues, because of the Meale that they found there. From the blacke Rocke or Cliffe with the Croffe, two miles South South-east, there lay a low Hand a little into the Sea ; from whence they fayled nine or ten miles South South-east, there the height 40 of the Sunne was 76.degrees and 50. minutes, when it was South South-weft. From that Iland they fayled along by the Land foure miles South-east and by South, there they came to two Ilands, whereof the vetermost lay a mile from the Land : those Ilands they called Saint Clara.

Then they entred into the Ice againe, and woond inward to the Sea in the wind, and fayled from the Hand vntill Ecuening, West South-west foure miles, the wind being North-west; that Ecuening it was very miftie, and then they had eightic fathome deepe.

Then againe they fayled South-west and by West, and West South-west three miles, there they had feuentie fathome deepe, and so sayled till the thirteenth of August in the morning, South-west and by West foure miles, two houres before they had ground at fiftie fixe fathome, and in the morning at fortie fine fathome, foft muddie ground. Then they woond from the land and fayled North, and North and by East foure miles, from thence they wound to land againe, and fayled till the fourteene of August, fine or fixe miles South-west, fayling close by the land, colones.

which (as they ghelle) was the Hand of Colgogon. August the fifteenth, the Sun being South-west, William Barents tooke the height thereof, and found it to bee elevated above the Horizon 35 degrees, his Declination being 14 degrees and 1. 10 that as there wanted 55 degrees of 90. which 55. and 14. degrees 1. being both added together, made 69. Degrees 15. Minutes, which was the height of the Pole in that place, the wind being North-west, then they sayled two miles more Eastward, and came to the Ilands called Matfine Matfine Matfine and Delgoy, and there in the morning they met with the other Ships of their companie, being of Delgoy. Zelands and Enck-hayfen, that came out of Weg-gates the fame day, there they shewed each other with their with their 60 where they had beene, and how farre each of them had fayled and discourred.

The Ship of Enck-buy few had past the Straights of Wey-gates, and faid, that at the end of Weygates hee had found a large Sea, and that they had fayled fiftie or fixtie miles further Eastward. and were of opinion that they had beene about the River Obi, that commeth out of Tartaria, and that the Land of Tartaria reacheth North-eastward agains from thence, whereby they thought

that they were not farre from Cape Tabin, which is the point of Tararia, that reacheth towards that they were the state of Cathai, North-east and then Southward, and so thinking that they had Disco. the August for that time, and that it was too late in the yeere to fayle any further, as allo that pered enough for that time, and that it was not have in the year to easily having, at another their Commission was to discour the scituation, and to come home agains before Winter, they turned againe towards the Wry-gates, and came to an Iland about fine miles great, lying Southturned agains our sus the Tension fide, and called it the State Iland, there they found many Stones that were of Christall Mountayne, being a kind of Diamond.

Ones that were or Comman and the state of th When they were meeting, the other Ships thinking that William Barout had layled round their Ordnance, and were merrie, the other output output their Ordnance, and were merrie, the other output dayled round about Nona Zombia, and had come backe againe through the Wey-gate: and after they had to about None Company, and made of the state of newed each outer wind they make they are the fixteenth of August they went vader course to turne backs againe for Holland, and upon the fixteenth of August they went vader the Hands of Mailes and Dalger, and put into the road, because the wind was North-well, and lay till the eighteenth of August. Then they set sayle, and came to the Texes the fixteenth

CHAP. IIII.

A briefe Declaration of BARENTS his second Nanigation, made in Anno 1595. behinde Norway, Muscouia, and Tartaria, written by GERAT DE VEER.

He foure Ships aforefaid, being returned home about Haruest-time, in Anne 1594. they were in good hope that the Voyage aforefaid would bee done, by paring along the Straights of way-gates, and specially by the report made by the two Ships of Zelands, and Euch-bussen, wherein lobu Horgben of Linschoten was Committee, who declared the manner of their travell in fuch fort, that the General

States and Prince Maurice resolued, in the beginning of the next yeere to pre- 30 pare certayne Ships, not onely (as they went before) to discour the passage, but to lend certayn Wares and Merchandizes thither, wherein the Merchants might lade what Wares they woold, with certaine Factors to fell the faid Wares, in fuch places as they should arrive, neither paying Fraight nor Cuftome. Peter Plantine a learned Cofmographer, being a great furtherer and setter forward of this Voyage, and was their chiefe Instructer therein, setting downe the scinuation of the Coasts of Tartaria, Carbaia, & China; but how they lye it is not yet sufficiently Discovered, for that the courses and rules by him set downe, were not fully effected, by meanes of some inconveniences that fell out, which by reason of the shortnesse of time could not bee holpen,

In Anno 1 595, the Generall States of the vnited Prouinces, and Prince Maurice, caused seven Ships to be prepared to fayle through the Weg-gates, or the Straights of Naffan, to the King-40 dome of Cathaia and (bina: two out of Amberdam, two out of Zelands, two out of Ench-baylen, and one out of Rotterdom: fixe of them laden with diners kindes of Water, Merchandizes, and with Money and Factors, to fell the faid Wares; the fouenth being a Pinnaffe, that had Commission, when the other Ships were past about the Cape de Tabin (which is the furthest point of Tartaria) Or fo farre, that they might fayle forth Southward, without any let or hinderance of the Ice, to turne backe againe, and to bring newes thereof : and I being in William Barent: Ship that was our chiefe Pilot, and lames Hemf kerke chiefe Fastor, thought good to write downe that was out the farme in order, as it is hereafter declared, as I did the first Voyage, according to the course and firetching of the Land as it lyeth.

First, after we had beene mustered at Amsterdam, and every man taken an Oath, that was then 50 purposely ministred vnto vs; vpon the eighteene of June wee sayled to the Texes, from thence

parpoint to Sea, with other Ships that were appointed to meet va at a certayine day; and so to begin our Yoyage in the name of God. The second of July wee set sayle out of the Texes. The sirth of August, the North Cape lay about two miles East from vs, and when the Sunne was Northwest, the Mosher and ber Daughters lay Southward from vs foure miles.

The seuenteenth, wee saw great store of Ice, all along the Coast of Nona Zembla, and cashing out the Lead, had 75. fathom foft ground, After that we held divers couries because of the lee, and fayled South-east and by East, & South South-east, for the space of eighteene miles, till the eighteenth of August, when the Sunne was East, and then we cast out the lead againe, and found 30. fathome foft ground, and within two houres after that, fathome, red fand, with small shelles: 69 three Glasses after that we had ground at twentie fathome, red sand, with blacke shels, as before: then wee faw two Ilands, which they of Euck-bussen gave the names of Prince Maurice, and his Brother, which lay from ve South-east three miles, being low Land, and then wee fayled eight miles, till the Sun was South. Then we fayled East, and of tentimes cashing out the lead, we found

twentie, nineteene, eighteene, and seuenteene fathome deep, good ground mixed with black shels. and faw the Wey-gates (the Sunne being West) which Lay East North-east from vs about five miles, and after that we fayled about eight miles.

Then we fayled under 70. degrees, until we came to the Wey gates, most part through broken Ice, and when we got to Weg-gates, we cast out our Lead, and for a long time found thirteene and fourteene fathome, foft ground, mixed with blacke thels, not long after that we cast out the Lead and found ten fathome deepe, the windbeing North, and we forced to hold flifly aloofe.in regard of the great quantitie of Ice, till about mid-night, then were forced to wind Northward. because of certaine Rocks that lay on the Southfide of Weg-gates, right before vs, about a mile and

a halfe, having ten fathome deepe : then we changed our courfe, and fayled West North-west for the space of foure Glasses, after that we wound about againe East, and East and by South, and fo entred into VVey-gates, and as wee went in, wee cast out the Lead, and found seven fathome deepe, little more or leffe, till the nineteenth of August, and then the Sunne being South-east, we nerred into the VVey-gates, in the Road, the wind being North. The right Channell betweene Image point, the Image point and the Samuters Land was full of Ice, so that it was not well to bee past tho. Samuel land. row, and so we went into the Road (which we called the Traen Bay, because we found store of Train Bay. Traen-oyle there, this is a good Bay for the course of the Ice, and good almost for all winds, and we may fayle so farre into it as we will, at foure, fine, and three fathome, good Anchor-ground, on the East side it is deepe water.

The twentieth of August, the height of the Sunne being taken with the Crosse-staffe, wee found that it was eleuated aboue the Horizon 69. degrees 21. minutes, when it was South-west and by South, being at the highest, or before it beganne to descend. The one and twentieth of August, we went on Land within the VVog-gates with foureand fiftie men, to see the situation They goe of of the Country, and being two miles within the Land we found many Vel-werek, Traen, and Land fuch like Wares, and divers foot-steps of men, and Deere; whereby wee perceived that fome men dwelt there abouts, or else vied to come thither. And to affure vs the more thereof, wee might perceive it by the great number of Images, which we found there vpon the Image or Beetthooke, Images. (so called by vs) in great abundance, whereof ten dayes after wee were better informed by the Samuters and the Ruffians, when wer spake with them. And when wee entred further into the Land, we vied all the meanes we could, to fee if we could find any houses or men, by whom we might be informed of the figuation of the Sea there abouts, whereof afterward we had better in-

telligence by the Samuters; that told vs, that there are certayne men dwelling on the VVeygates, and vpon Nona Zembla, but we could neither find mehanouses, nor any other things, so that to have better information, wee went with some of our men further South-east into the Land; towards the Sea-side, and as we went, we found a path-way made with mens feet in the Mosse or Marth-ground, about halfe knee deepe; for that going so deepe we felt hard ground ynderour feet, which at the deepest was no higher then our shooes, and as we went forward to the Sea-coast, we were exceeding glad, thinking that we had feene a passage open, where we might get through, because we saw so little Ice there : and in the Euening entring into our ship againe, we shewed them that newes. Meane-time, our Master had fent out a Boat to fee if the Tieres. rian Seawas open, but it could not get into the Sea because of the Ice, yet they rowed to the Croffe-point, and there let the Boat lye, and went over the Land to the West point, and there

perceived that the Ice in the Tartarian Sea, lay full upon the Ruffian Coafts, and in the mouth of VVey-gates. The three and twentieth of August we found a Ladgie, or Boat of Pitzere, which was sewed together with Baft or Ropes, that had beene Northward to feeke for some Sea-horses Teeth, Traen, and Geese, which they fetcht with their Boat, to lade in certaine shippes that were to come out of Russia through Wey-gates. Which ships they said (when they spake with vs) were to fayle into the Tartarian Sea, by the River of Oby, to a place called Ugolita in Tartaria, there 50 to flay all Winter, as they vied to doe euery yeere : and told vs that it would yet bee nine or ten

Weekes ere it began to freeze in that place, and that when it once beganne to freeze, it would freeze so hard, that as then men might go ouer the Sea into Tartaria (along vpon the Ice) which

The foure and twentieth of August in the morning betimes, we went on board of the Lodgie, to have further information and intiruction of the Sea, on the Eastfide of PVer-gates, and they gaue vs good instruction, such as you have heard.

The fine and twentieth of August we went agains to the Lodgie, and in friendly manner spake with them, we for our parts offering them friendship; and then they gaue vs eight fat Geefe, that lay in the bottome of their Boat : we defired that one or two of them would goe with vs a-6c board our ship, and they willingly went with vs to the number of seuen; and being in our ship, they wondred much at the greatnesse and furniture of our ship: and after they had seene and looked into it in every place, we fet Fish, Butter and Cheese before them to eate, but they refused it; faying, that that day was a Fasting day with them, but at last when they faw some of our Pickled Herrings, they eate them both heads, tayles, skinnes, and guts, and having eaten thereof,

Iames Hemfherke famous

we gaue them a small Firkin of Herrings, for the which they gaue vs great thankes, knowing not what friendship they should doe vs to require our courtese, and wee brought them with our Pinnaffe into the Trace Bay. About Noone we hoyfed up our Anchors with a West North-west winds the course or freeching of VV9-gate, is East to Grau point, and then North-east to the Twiff point, and somewhat more Easterly: From thence the Land of W9-gate, reacheth North North-east, and North and by East, and then North, and somewhat Westerly, wee syled North-east and East ward two miles, by the Twift point, but then we were compelled to faile backe againe, because of the great store of Ice, and tooke our course to our Road aforesaid; and fayling backe againe we found a good place by the Croffe point, to anchor in that night. The fix and twentieth of August in the morning we hoysed Anchor, and put out our fork-laile, and so 10 failed to our old Road, and there to stay for a more convenient time.

The eight and twentie, nine and twentie, and thirtieth of August till the one and thirtieth. They focks I ne cight and twenter min and twenter, and William Barents our Captaine failed to the with Sangeds, the wind for the most part was South-west, and William Barents our Captaine failed to the South-side of VVey-gates, and there went on Land, where we found certaine Wildmen (called Samuers) and yet not altogether wilde, for they being twentie in number, staid and spake with our men, being but nine together, about a mile within the Land, our men not thinking to find any men there (for that we had at other times beene on Land in the VVeg-gates, and faw none) at last, it being missie weather, they perceiued men, fine and fine in a company, and weewere hard by them before we knew it : then our Interpretour went alone towards them to speake with them; which they perceiving, fent one towards vs, who comming almost to our men, tooke ta an Arrow out of his Quiuer, offering to shoot at him; wherewith our Interpretor, being with out Armes, was afraid, and cryed vuto him, faying (in Ruffian speech;) Shoote not, we are friends: which the other hearing, cast his Bow and Arrowes to the ground, therewith giving him to vnderstand that he was well content to speake with our man: which done, our man called to him once againe, and faid: We are friends: whereunto he made answere and faid; then you are welcome : and fainting one the other, bended both their heads downe towards the ground, after the Russian manner: this done, our Interpretor questioned with him, about the situation and streeching of the Sea East-ward through the Streights of Weg-gater; whereof he gaue vs good infin-Ction, faying that when they should have past a point of land about five daies sailing from thence, shewing North-eastward; that after that, there is a great Sea (shewing towards the South-east to vpward,) faying, that he knew it very well, for that one had beene there that was fent thither by their King with certaine Souldiers, whereof he had beene Captaine.

The manner of their Apparell is, like as we vie to paint Wildmen, but they are not wilderfor they are of reasonable judgement: they are apparelled in Harts skinnes from the head to the feet, vnleffe it be the principalleft of them, which are apparelled, whether they be men or women, like vnto the rest, as atoresaid, vnlesse it be on their heads, which they couer with certains coloured Cloth lined with Furre : the rest weare Caps of Harts or Bucks skinnes, the rough fide Haire, perion, outwards, which fland clofe to their heads, and are very fir. They weare long Haire, which they outwards, which fland clofe to their heads, and are very fir. They weare long Haire, which they have pleate and fold, and let it hang downe vpontheir backes. They are (for the moft part all) thore and low of flature, with broad flat faces, small eyes, thore legs, their knees flanding outwards 40 and are very quicke to goe and leape. They trust not Strangers; for although that wee shewed them all the courtesse and friendship that wee could, yet they trusted vs not much : which wee perceived hereby, that as upon the first of September wee went againe on Land to them, and that one of our men desired to see one of their Bowes : they refused it, making a signe that they would not doe it. Hee that they called their King, had Centinels standing abroad, to see what was done in the Countrey, and what was bought and fold : At last, one of our men went neerer to one of the Centinels, to speake with him, and offered him great friendship, according to their accustomed manner, withall giving him a Bisket; which he with great thankes tooke, and presently eate it; and while hee eate it, hee still lookt diligently about him on all sides what

Their Sleds.

Their Sleds stood alwayes readie with one or two Harts in them, that runne so swiftly with one or two men in them, that our Horses are not able to follow them. One of our men shota Musket towards the Sea, wherewith they were in fo great feare, that they ranne and leapt like mad men : yet at last, they satisfied themselves, when they perceived that it was not maliciously done to hurt them : and we told them by our Interpretor, that we vied our Peeces in flead of Bowes; whereat they wondered, because of the great blow and noyse that it gaue and made; and to shew them what wee could doe therewith, one of our men tooke a flat stone about halfe a handfull broad, and let it vpon a Hill a good way off from him: which they perceiving, and thinking that we meant some-what thereby, fiftie or fixtie of them gathered round about vs; and yet some-what farre off, wherewith hee that had the Peece, shot it off, and with the Bullet

fmote the stone in sunder: whereat they wondred much more then before. Departure. After that, wee tooke our leaues one of the other, with great friendship on both fides; and when we were in our Pinnasse, wee all put off our Hats, and bowed our heads vinto them, sounding our Trumpet: They (in their manner) faluting vs alto, and then went to their Sleds again.

And after they were gone from vs, and were tomewhat within the Land, one of them came riding to the shoare, to fetch a rough-hewed Image, that our men had taken off the shoare, and Image, carryed into their Boate : and when hee was in our Boate, and perceived the Image, he made's a figne that wee had not done well to take away that Image: Which we beholding, gate it to him againe : Which when hee had receiued, he placed it vpon a Hill right by the Sea fide. and tooke it not with him, but fent a Sled to fetch it from thence : and as farte as wee could perceive, they esteemed that Image to be their God; for that right over against that place in the perceine, they entermed that image to be then does not be supported by the first part of the carried Images, all Hundreds of roughabout the Heads, being somewhat round, and in the middle, hatting a little hill in itead of illuspen tensor to a Nofe; and about the Nofe two cuts, in place of Eyes; and vnder the Nofe; accus in place of a ges.

CHAP.4. Beelt-hooke, fo called of certaine Images there found.

Mouth. Before the Images, wee found great flore of Alhes, and bones of Harts : whereby it is to bee supposed, that there they offered votothem.

The fecond of September, a little before Sunne riling, wee put forth an Anthor to get out, for that the winde as then blew South South-west; at being good weather to get out, and if weather to lye still: for wee lay under a low Banke. The Admirall and Vice-admirall seeing vs making out, began also to hoyse their Anchors, and to set sayle. When wee put out our Focke-fayle, the Sunne was Eaft and by South : and then wee fayled to the Croffe-point, and there wee cast Anchor to stay for the Vice-admirals Pinnasse; which with much labour and paines, in time got out of the Ice, by often cafting out of their Anchor : and in the Ecuening 20 thee got to vs : in the Morning about two hours before Sunne ring we fet fayle, and by Sunne

rling, wee got within a mile Eastward of the Twitt-point, and fayled Northward fixe miles, till the Sunne was South. Then wee, were forced to wind about, because of the great quantitie of Ice, and the Myst that then fell, at which time the winde blew so vincertayne, that we could hold no courfe, but were forced continually to winds and turns about, by reason of the Ice, and the vnconfrantnesse of the winde, together with myst, so that our course was vncettayne, and wee supposed that we had sayled Southward up towards the Samuters. Country, and then held our courie South-well, till the watchers were North-well from vs ; then we came to the point

of the States Hand lying Eastward about a Musker shot from the land, having 1 3 fathom deepe. The fourth of September, wee hoyfed Anchor because of the Ice, and sayled betweene the firme Land and the States Iland, where we lay close by the States Iland at foure and five fathori States Iland

30 deepe, and made our Ship full with a Cable call on the shoare, and there were were fafe from the course of the Ice, and diners times went on land to get Hares, whereof there were many in that lland. The fixth of September, some of our men went on shoare spon the firme land to seeke for Stones, which are a kinde of Diamond, whereof there are many also in the States Iland : and while they were feeking the Stones, two of our men lying together in one place, a great leane white Beare came suddenly stealing out, and caught one of them fast by the necke, who not white Deare came requestly iterating one and large of the state of the Allowing what is was that cook into by the most fare from him; lifted up his head to fee two men. who it was, and perceiuing it to bee a monftrous Beare, cryed out and Gyd, Oh Mate! it is a

40 Beare, and thetewith profendly role vp and ranne away;

The Beare at the first falling you the man, but his/head in fineler, and fuckt out his blood, wherewith the reft of the men that were on the Land, being about twentie in number, ranne wherewith the reit or the men that were in the sealing young about a white in humber, and have presently thither, either to faue the man, or else to drive the Beare from the dead body : and had been from the dead body in the flourises. uing charged their Pieces and bent their Pikes, fet vpon her, that still was denouring the man; but perceiuing them to come towards her, heroely and cruelly ranne at them, and got another of them out from the Companie which shee tore in pieces, wherwith all the rest ranne away.

We perceining out of our Ship and Pinnaffe, that our men ranne to the Sea-fide to faue themfelues, with all speed entred into our Boates, and rowed as fast wee could to the shoare to relieue our men. Where being on Land, we beheld the cruell spectacle of our two dead men; that had beene fo cruelly killed and torne in pieces by the Beare, wee feeing that, incouraged our men to goe backe againe with vs. and with Pieces, Curtolaxes, and Halfe-piker, to fet vpon the Beare, goe to the against with a same of the same of them faying, our men are already letd, and we but they would not all agree thereunto; fome of them faying, our men are already letd, and we final get the Bear well enough, though we oppose not our selves into so open larger, if wee might fane our fellowes lives, then wee would make halfe, but now we need not make fch fpeed, but take her at an advantage, with most fecuritie for our felues, for we have to doe with a eruell, serce, and ranchous Beast. Whereupon three of our men went forward, the Beare still des wouring her prey, not once fearing the number of our men, and yet they were thirtie at the least : the three that went forward in that fort, were Corneling taceb for, Mafter of William Barents fhip, William Cifen, Pylot of the Pinnasse, and Hans wan Nossen, William Barents, Purser : and after 60 that the fayd Master and Pylor had thot three times and mist, the Purser steepping somewhat further forward, and feeing the Beare to be within the length of a floe, prefently leuclied his Piece, and discharging it at the Beare, shor her into the head betweene both the eyes, and yet she held the man still fast by the necke, and lifted up her head with the man in her mouth, but thee Begm fomwhat to flagger, wherewith the Purfer and a Seerift-man drew out their Curtehexes;

They kill he

and strooke at her so hard, that their Curtelaxes burst, and yet she would not leave the man, at last and into see few went to them, and with all his might strooke the Beare vpon the snout with his Piece, at which time the Beare fell to the ground, making a great moyle, and William Gersen leaping vpon her cut her throat. The feuenth of September, wee buried the dead bodies of our men in the States Hand, and having flayed the Beare, carryed her Skin to Amberdam.

The minth of September, we fet fayle from the States Iland, but the Ice came in fo thicke and with such force, that we could not get through, so that at Eenening we came backe agains to the States Iland, the winde being Wefterly. There the Admirall and the Pinnaffe of Restrates fell on around by certayne Rockes, but got off againe without any hurt.

Il on ground by certayue working a game from the States Iland towards the 1979-gates, and 10 fent two Boates into the Sea, to certifie vs what flore of Ice was abroad : and that Ecuening wee came all together into Weg-gates, and Anchored by the Twiff-point. The eleventh of September in the Morning, we fayled againe into the Tartarian Sea, but we fell into great store of Ice, so that we sayled backe againe to the Weg-gates, and Auchored by the Croffs-point, and about midnight we faw a Ruffian Lodgie, that fayled from the Beets-point towards the Sammers Land. The thisteenth of September, the Sunne being South, there began a great storme to blow out of the South South-welt, the weather being miftie, melancholy, and snowie, and the storme increasing more and more, we draue through,

The fourteenth of September, the weather began to bee somewhat clearer, the winde being North-west, and the storme blowing sliffe out of the Tarjarian Sea, but at Ecuening it was faire an weather, and then the wind blew North-east, the same day our men went on the other side of Wes-sates, on the firme land, to take the depth of the Channell, and entred into the Bough behind the Hands, where there flood a little House made of wood, and a great fall of water int the land. The fame Morning we hoyfed vp our Anchor, thinking once againe to try whateve could doe to further our Voyage, but our Admirall being of another minde, lay full till thefeteenth of September. The same day in the Morning, the winde draue in from the East-end of the Weg-gates, whereby we were forced prefently to hoyse Anchors, and the sameday sayled out from the West-end of the West-gates, with all our Fleet, and made homewards againe, and that day paft by the Hands called Marfoe and Delgey, and that night we fayled twelve miles, Northwest and by West, till Saturday in the morning, and then the winde fell North-east, and it be- 30 gan to Snow. We saw the point of Candynaes, lying South-east from vs, and then wee had seven and twentie fathom deepe, red fand with blacke thele.

The nine and twentieth of September, in the Eeuening entred into Ward-boule, and there we flayed till the tenth of October. And that day we fet fayle out of Ward-honfe, and voon the eighteenth of November, we arrived in the Mass.

CHAP. V. The third Voyage Northward to the Kingdomes of Cathaia, and China, in Anno 1596. Written by GERAT DE VEER

What happened to them at Sea, before they came to build their House.



Free that the seuen Ships (as I said before) were returned backe againe from their North Voyage, with leffe benefit then was expected, the Generall States of 50 the Vnited Provinces consulted together, to send certayne Ships thither againe, a third time, to fee if they might bring the faid Voyage to a good end, if it were possible to bee done : but after much Consultation had, they could not agree thereon; yet they were content to cause a Proclamation to be made, that if

any, either Townes, or Merchants, were disposed to venture to make further search that way, at their owne charges, if the Voyage were accomplished, and that thereby it might be made apparant, that the layd paffage was to be fayled, they were content togine them a good reward, in the Countries behalfe, naming a certayne fumme of money. Whereupon in the beginning of this yeere, there was two Ships rigged and fet forth by the Towne of Amsterdam, to tayle that Voyage, the men therein being taken vp vpon two Conditions : viz. What they should have if 69 the Voyage were not accomplished, and what they should have if they got through, and brought the Voyage to an end, promiting them a good reward if they could effect it, thereby to encourage the men, taking up as many vnmarried men as they could, that they might not bee diffwaded by meanes of their Wines and Children to leane off the Voyage. Vpon these Conditions, those

two Ships were ready to fee fayle in the beginning of May. In the one, lacob Heemskerke Hendrickson, was Master and Factor for the Wares and Merchandizes; and William Barents chiefe Pylot. In the other, loba Cornelison Rup, was both Master and Factor for the goods that the Merchants had laden inher.

The fifth of May, all the men in both the Ships were Mustered, and vpon the tenth of May. they fayled from Amfterdam, and the thirteenth of May got to the Ule. The thirtieth of May we had a good winde, and fayled North-east, and wee tooke the height of the Sunne with our Croffe-staffe, and found that it was elevated about the Horizon 47. degrees and 42. minutes, his Declination was 21, degrees and 42 minutes, fo that the height of the Pole was 69, degrees

The first of Iune we had no night, and the second of Iune we had the winde contrarie, but yoon the fourth of June we had a good winde, out of the West North-west, and sayled North-east. Three Sunnes on the fourth of lune we had a good winde, out or the west inorth-west, and layied inorth-east, and when the Sunne was about South South-east, wee faw a strange fight in the Element: for Rain-bowes. on each fide of the Sunne there was another Sunne, and two Raine-bowes, that past cleane thorow the three Sunnes, and then two Raine-bowes more, the one compassing round about the beene seene in Sunnes, and the other crosse thorow the great rundle; the great rundle standing with the vtter- England about Sunnes, and the other croite thorow the great runnie; the great runnie manning with the vttermost point, eleuated about the Horizon 28.degrees: at noone the Sunne being at the higheff, the therine this
most point, eleuated about the Horizon 28.degrees: at noone the Sunne being at the higheff, the therine this
most control to the state of t height thereof was measured, and wee found by the Aftrolabium, that it was eleuated about the the Preffe. Horizon 48 degrees and 43 minutes, his Declination was 22 degrees and 17 minutes, the which 20 being added to 48. degrees 43. minutes, it was found that wee were vnder 71. degrees of the height of the Pole.

John Cornelis ship held aloofe from vs, and would not keepe with vs, and would hold no course but North North-east, for they alledged, that if wee went any more Easterly, that then we should enter into the Weg-gates, but wee being not able to perswade them, altered our course one point of the Compasse, to meet them, and sayled North-east and by North, and should otherwise haue fayled North-east, and somewhat more East.

The fifth, wee faw the first Ice, which we wondered at, at the first, thinking that it had beene The fifth, wee law the fifth at your with the Fore-decke, on a finder began to cry out with white Swannes, for one of our men walking in the Fore-decke, on a finder began to cry out with white Swannes, for one of our men walking in the Fore-decke, on a finder began to cry out with the walking in the Fore-decke, on a finder began to cry out with the walking in the Fore-decke, on a finder began to cry out with the walking in the Fore-decke, on a finder began to cry out with the same and the first began to cry out with the first began to c a loud vovce; and faid; that hee faw white Swannes: which wee that were under Hatches hea-

20 ring, presently came up, and perceived that it was Ice that came driving from the great heape, showing like Swannes, it being then about Eenening, at midnight we sayled through it, and the Sunne was about a degree eleuated about the Horizon in the North.

The fixth, about foure of the clocke in the after-noone, were entred againe into the Ice, which was softrong that we could not passe through it, and sayled South-west and by West, till eight Glaffes were runne out, after that we kept on our course North, North-east, and fayled along by the Ice.

The feuenth, we tooke the height of the Sunne, and found that it was elevated about the Horizon 28 degrees and 28 minutes, his Declination being 22. degrees 38 minutes; which being taken from 38. degrees 38. minutes, wee found the Pole to bee 74. degrees : there we found to 40 great flore of Ice, that it was admirable: and we sayled along through it, as if we had past betweenetwo Lands. The water being as greene as Grasse, and we supposed that we were not Greene water. farre from Greenland, and the longer we fayled, the more and thicker Ice we found. The eight

of lune, we came to fo great a heape of Ice, that we could not fayle through it, The ninth of lune, we found the Iland that lay under 74. degrees and 30. minutes, and as we Beste, or Chegheft, it was about fine miles long. The tenth, we put out our Boate, and therewith eight of our tie-lland. men went on Land, and as we palt by Iohn Cornelisms thip, eight of his men also came into our Boat, whereof one was the Pilot. Then William Barents asked him, whether we were not too much Westward, but hee would not acknowledge it : whereupon there passed many words betweene them, for William Barents fayd, he would proue it to bee so, as in truth it was. The ele-

50 uenth, going on Land, we found great flore of Sea-Mewes Egges vpon the shoare, and in that Ihand we were in great danger of our liues: for that going vp a great Hill of Snow, when wee should come downe againe, we thought we should all haue broken our neckes, it was so slipperie, but we fate upon the Snow and flid downe, which was very dangerous for vs, to breake both our armes and legges; for that at the foot of the Hill there was many Rockes, which we were likely to haue fallen vpon, yet by Gods helpe we got fafely downe againe. Meane time William Variation of Barents fate in the Boate, and faw vs slide downe, and was in greater feare then we, to behold vs. the Compasse. in that danger. In the faid lland, we found the varying of our Compasse, which was 13. degrees, to that it differed a whole point at the least : after that wee rowed aboord lobn Cornelisons thip, and there we eate our Egges.

The twelfth in the morning, we faw a white Beare, which wee rowed after with our Boate, durst not doe it, but rowed backe againe to our Ship to fetch more men and our Armes, and to made to her againe with Muskets, Harquebusses, Halberts, and Hatchets. Ichn Carnelssons men comming also with their Boate to helpe vs : and so being well furnished of men and weapons.

we rowed with both our Boates vnto the Beare, and fought with her while foure Glaffes were runne out, for our Weapons could doe her little hurt; and amongst the rest of the blowes that we gaus her, one of our men ftrooke her into the backe with an Axe, which flucke faft in her backe, and vet shee swamme away with it; but we rowed after her, and at last we cut her head in funder with an Axe, wherewith the dyed : and then wee brought her into John Cornellons Bearesskin 12. Ship, where we flayed her, and found her Skinne to bee twelue foot leng: which done, we cate fome of her flesh; but wee brookt it not well. This Iland we called the Beare-Iland.

The thirteenth we left the Iland, and fayled North, and somewhat Easterly, the winde being West, and South-west, and made good way : so that when the Sunne was North, weeghest that

we had fayled fixteene miles Northward from that Iland.

The fourteenth, when the Sunne was North, we cast out our Lead one hundred and thirteene fathomedeepe, but found no ground, and fo fayled forward till the fifteenth of Iune, when the Sunne was South-east, with missie and drilling weather, and sayled North, and North and by East: about Eeuening it cleared up, and then we faw a great thing driving in the Sea, which we thought had beenea Ship : but passing along by it, we perceived it to bee a dead Whale, that funke monstroully; and on it there face a great number of Sea-mewes : At that time, wee had

Dead Whale.

The fixteenth, with the like speed we sayled North and by East, with mistie weather; and as we fayled, we heard the Ice before we faw it ; but after, when it cleared vp, we faw it, and then woond off from it, when as we ghest we had fayled thirtie miles. The fenenteenth and eigh- 20 teenth, we saw great store of Ice, and sayled along by it, vntill we came to the point, which we could not reach, for that the wind was South-east, which was right against vs. & the point of Ice lay Southward from vs : yet wee lauered a great while to get beyond it, but we could not doe it, The nineteenth, we faw Land againe, then we tooke the height of the Sun, and found that it was eleuated aboue the Horizon 33. degrees and 37. minutes : her Declination being 22.degrees and 26, minutes : which taken from the fayd 33, degrees and 37. minutes, wee found that we were and 11 minuts, vnder 80.degrees and 11.minutes: which was the height of the Pole there. This Land was verv ereat, and we fayled Westward along by it, till we were vnder 79. degrees and a halfe, where we found a good road, and could not get neare to the Land, because the winde blew North-east, which was right off from the Land : the Bay reacheth right North and South into the Sea.

Another fight Beare.

So.Degrees

The twentie one, we cast out our Anchor, at eighteene fathome before the Land; and then we and lobn Cornelisons men, rowed on the West-fide of the Land, and there fetched Balaft; and when we got on boord againe with our Balaft, we faw a white Beare that swamme towardsour thip; whereupon we left off our worke, and entering into the Boate with Iohn Cornelisons men, rowed after her, and croffing her in the way, droue her from the Land, wherewith the fwamme further into the Sea, and we followed her; and for that our Boate could not make good way after her, we manned our Scute also, the better to follow her: but shee swam a mile into the Sea: vet we followed her with the most part of all our men of both Ships in three Boats, and strooks oftentimes at her, cutting and hewing her, fo that all our Armes were most broken in pieces. During our fight with her, thee strooke her Clawes fo hard in our Boate, that the figues thereof 40 were seene in it; but as hap was, it was in the fore-head of our Boate : for if it had beene in the middle thereof, she had (peraduenture) ouer-throwne it, they have such force in their Clawes: At last, after we had fought long with her, and made her wearie with our three Boates that kept about her, we ouercame her and killed her : which done, we brought her into our ship, and flayed her : her Skinne being thirteene foot long. After that, we rowed with our Scute, about a mile inward to the Land, where there was a good Hauen, and good Anchor ground, on the East-fide being sandie, there wee cast out our Lead, and found sixteene fathom deepe, and after that, ten, and twelve fathome, and rowing further, we found that on the East-side there was two llands, that reached Eastward into the Sea : on the West-side also there was a great Creeke or River, which shewed also like an Iland. Then we rowed to the Iland that lay in the middle, and there 50 we found many Red Geefe-egges, which we faw fitting vpon their Neits, and droue them from them, and they flying away, cryed red, red, red : and as they fate we killed one Goose dead with a stone, which we drest and eate, and at least sixtie Egges, that wee tooke with vs aboord the ship, and vpon the two and twentieth of lune, we went aboord our ship againe.

Beares skin 13 foot long.

Red Geefe Egges,

Red Geefe breed their young Geefe, Vnder 80 Degrees in Green Fable of Bar-

rie yeere are there taken in abundance, but till this time it was neuer knowne where they hatcht their Egges, so that some men haue taken upon them to write, that they sit upon Trees in Scotland, that hang ouer the Water, and fuch Egges as fall from them downe into the Water become young Geele, and swim there out of the water; but those that fall vpon the Land burst in sunder, and are lost; but this is now found to bee contrary, and it is not to be wondred at, that no man 60 could tell where they breed their Egges, for that no man that euer wee knew, had euer beene vnder 80. Degrees : nor that Land vnder 80. degrees, was neuer iet downe in any Card, much leffe the red Geefe that breed therein.

Those Geese were of a perfit Red colour, such as come into Holland about Weiringen, and eue-

No:e.

It is heere also to bee noted, that although that in this land which we esteeme to be Green-

land lying under 80. Degrees, and more, there groweth Leaues and Graffe, and that there are fuch Beafts therein as eate graffe, as Harts, Buckes, and fuch like beafts as live thereon, yet in Noua Zembla vnder 76. Degrees, there groweth neither Leaues nor Graffe, nor any Beafts that eare graffe or leaves live therein, but such Beasts as eate Flesh, as Beares and Foxes: and yet this Land Iveth full 4. Degrees from the North Pole, further then Greenland aforefayd doth.

The three and twentieth, wee hoysted Anchor againe, and sayled North-westward into the Sea: but could get no further, by reason of the Ice; and so we came to the same place againe where we had layne, and cast Anchor at eighteene fathome : and at Eeuening being at Anchor. the Sunne being North-east, and somewhat more Eastward, wee tooke the height thereof, and To found it to be elevated about the Horizon 13. degrees and 10. minutes, his Declination being 22. degrees and 28.minutes : which substracted from the height aforesaid resteth 10. degrees and 18. minutes, which being fubstracted from 90, degrees, then the height of the Pole there was 70

degrees and 42. minutes.

After that, we hoysted Anchor againe, and sayled along by the West side of the Land, and then our men went on Land, to fee how much the Needle of the Compaffe varyed : Meane time Bareaffanie there came a great white Beare swimming towards the Ship, and would have climbed up into them. it, if we had not made a noyfe; and with that wee shot at her with a Piece, but she left the ship, and swam to the Land, where our men were : which we perceiuing, sayled with our ship towards the Land, and gaue a great shout; wherewith our men thought that wee had fallen on a Rocke with our Ship, which made them much abashed; and therewith the Beare also being a-

fraid, swamme off againe from the Land, and left our men, which made vs glad : for our men had Variation of no Weapons about them. Touching the varying of the Compasse, for the which cause our men the Compasse

went on Land, to trie the certaintie thereof : it was found to differ 16. Degrees,

The fine and twentieth of Iune, we hoyfted Anchor againe, and fayled along by the Land, and went South, and South South-weft, with a North North-eaft winde, vnder 79. degrees. There we found a great Creeke or River, whereinto we fayled ten miles at the leaft, holding our courfe Southward; but we perceived that there we could not get through: there we cast out our Lead. and for the most part found 10.fathom deepe, but we were constrained to lauere out again, for the winde was Northerly, and almost full North, and we perceived that it reached to the firme land. 30 which we supposed to bee Low-land, for that wee could not fee it any thing farre, and therefore we fayled fo neere vnto it, till that we might fee it, and then we were forced to lauere, and vpon the feuen and twentieth of June we got out againe.

The eight and twentieth, we got beyond the point that Ly on the West side, where there was fo great a number of Birds, that they flew against our Sayles, and wee sayled ten miles South. Store of Birds; ward, and after that West, to shun the Ice. The nine and twentieth, wee fayled South-east and fomewhat more Easterly, along by the Land, till we were under 76. degrees and 50.minutes, for we were forced to out off from the Land, because of the Ice. The thirtieth of June, wee fayled South, and somewhat East, and then we tooke the height of the Sunne, and found that it was eleuated aboue the Horizon 38. degrees and 20.minutes, his Declination was 23. degrees and 20.

40 minuts, which being taken from the former height, it was found that we were vnder 75. degrees. The first of July wee faw the Beare-Iland againe, and then Iohn Cornelison and his Officers July. came aboord our fhip, to speake with vs about altering our course, but wee being of a contrary o. Chris. Hards pinion, it was agreed that we should follow on our course, and hee his : which was, that he (according to his defire) should sayle vnto \$0. Degrees againe : for he was of opinion, that there he should finde a passage through, on the East side of the Land that lay under 80. Degrees. And up. They pare on that agreement we left each other, they fayling Northward, and wee Southward, because of companies the Ice, the winde being East South-east,

The fecond, we fayled Eastward, and were vnder 74.degrees, having the wind North Northwest, and then wee woond ouer another Bough, with an East North-east winde, and sayled so Northward. In the Eeuening the Sunne being about North-west and by North, we woond about againe (because of the Ice) with an East winde, and sayled South South-east, and about East South-east, and then we woond about againe (because of the see) and the Sunne being South South-west, we wound about againe, and sayled North-east. The third, we were under 74 degrees, having a South-east and by East winde, and sayled North-east and by North : after that wee woond about againe with a South winde, and fayled East South-east, till the Sume was North-west, then the winde began to be somewhat larger.

The eight, wee had a good North-west winde, and sayled East and by North, with an indifferent cold gale of wind, and got vinder 72. degrees and 15. minutes. The ninth of July, we went East and by North, the wind being West. The tenth of July, the Sunne being South South-west, 60 we cast out our Lead, and had ground at one hundred and fixtie fathome, the wind being Northeast and by North, and we fayled East and by South, under 72. degrees. The eleuenth, we found 70.fathome deepe, and faw no Ice, then weeghelt that we were right South and North from Dandinaes, that is the East-point of the White-sea, that lay Southward from vs, and had sandie ground, and the banke firetched Northward into the Sea, fo that we were out of doubt that we

W:Clourhbies

Land concei-

were upon the banke of the White Sea, for wee had found no fandie go and all the Coast along, but onely that banke. Then the wind being East and by South, we failed South, and South and by East, under 72. degrees, and after that, we had a South South-east Wind, and sayled Northeast to get ouer the Banke.

The thirteenth of July, we sayled East with a North North-east wind: then wee tooke the height of the Sunne, and found it to be eleuated aboue the Horizon 54. degrees and 38. minutes. his declination was 21. degrees and 54. minutes, which taken from the height aforefaid, the height of the Pole was found to bee 73. degrees, and then againe wee found Ice, but not very much, and we were of opinion, that we were by Willoughbies Land. The fourteenth, we layled Morth-eaft, the wind being North North-weft, and in that fort fayled about a dinner time, 10 ted from (ome along through the Ice, and in the middle thereof we cast out our Lead, and had ninety sathome deepe, in the next quarter wee cast out our Lead againe, and had an hundred fathome deepe, and we fayled to farre into the Ice, that wee could goe no further: for wee could fee no place where it opened, but were forced (with great labour and paine) to lauere out of it agains, the wind blowing West, and we were then under 74. degrees and 10. minutes:

had an hundred fathome deepe, at which time the wind being East, wee sayled West. The fixteenth, we got out of the Ice, and faw a great Beare lying vpon it, that leaped into the water when shee law vs : Wee made towards her with our ship, which shee perceiving got vp vpen the Iceagaine, wherewith wee shot once at her. Then wee sayled East South-east, and saw no as Ice, ghelling that we were not farre from Nona Zembla, because we saw the Beare there you the Ice, at which time we cast out our Lead, and found an hundred fathome deepe.

The feuenteenth, we tooke the height of the Sunne, and it was eleuated about the Horizon 37. degrees and 55. minutes , his declination was 21. degrees and 15. minutes , which taken from the height aforesaid, the height of the Pole was 74. degrees and 40. minutes: and when the Sunne was in the South, we faw the Land of Noua Zembla, which was about Lembar: I was the first that espied it. Then we altered our course, and sayled North-east and by North, and hoyfed vp all our fayles, except the Fore-fayle and the Lefien. The eighteenth, wee faw the Land againe, being vider 75, degrees, and fayled North-east and by North, with a North-Admirabiliand, west wind, and we gate aboue the point of the Admirals Hand, and sayled East North-east, 30 with a West Wind, the Land reaching North-east and by North. The nineteenth, wee came to the Croffe Iland, and could get no further , by reason of the Ice , for there the Ice lay still close 76. degrees 200 vpon the Land, at which time the wind was Weft, and blew right vpon the Land, and it lay vnder 76. degrees and 20. minutes. There stood two Crosses vpon the Land, whereof it had the Name.

The twentieth, we anchored vnder the Iland, for we could get no further for the Ice. There we put out our Boat, and with eight men rowed on Land, and went to one of the Croffes, where we rested vs a while to goe to the next Crosse, but being in the way wee saw two Beares by the other Croffe, at which time we had no weapons at all about vs. The Bearestofe vp vpon their hinder feet to fee vs (for they smell further then they fee) and for that they smelt vs: therefore 40 they rose voright, and came towards vs, wherewith we were not a little abashed, in such fort that we had little lust to laugh, and in all haste went to our Boat againe, still looking behind vs, to see if they followed vs, thinking to get into the Boat, and so put off from the Land : but the Master stayed vs, faying, hee that first beginnes to runne away, I will thrust this Hake staffe (which he then held in his hand) into his ribs ; for it is better for vs (faid hee) to flay all together, and fee if we can make them afraid with whooping and hollowing; and fo we went foftly towards the Boat, and got away, glad that we had escaped their clawes, and that we had the leafure to tell our fellowes thereof.

The one and twentieth we tooke the height of the Sunne, and found that it was eleuated aboue the Horizon 35. degrees and 15. minutes, his declination was 21. degrees, which being ta-50 ken from the height aforefaid, there refted 14. degrees, which substracted from 90. degrees, then the height of the Pole was found to be 76, degrees and 15, minutes, then we found the variation of the Compasse to bee 26. degrees. The same day two of our men went againe to the Crosse, and found no Beares to trouble vs, and wee followed them with our Armes, fearing least wee might meet any by chance, and when we came to the second Crosse, we found the foot-steps of two Beares, and faw how long they had followed vs, which was one hundred foot-steps at the least, that way that we had beene the day before. The two and twentieth being Munday, wee fet vp another Croffe, and made our Marke thereon : and lay there before the Croffe Iland, till the fourth of August, meane time we washt and whited our Linnen on the shoare.

The thirtieth, the Sunne being North, there came a Beare fo neere to our ship, that we might 60 hit her with a stone, and we shot her into the foot with a Piece, wherewith shee ranne halting away. The one and thirtieth of July, the Sunne being East North-east, seuen of our men killed a Beare, and flayed her, and caft her bodie into the Sea. The same day at noons (by our Infrument) we found the variation of the Needle of the Compafe to be 17. degrees.

The fifteenth, we draue through the middle of the Ice with a calme, and casting out our Lead,

Noua Zembla,

Two Beares.

Variation 36.

The first of August we saw a white Beare, but she ran away from vs. The fourth, we got out of August. the lee, to the other the of the Hand, and anchored there : where, with great labour and much name, wefetched a Boat full of stones from the Land. The fifth, wee set sayle against towards Ice point, with an East Wind, and sayled South South-east, and then North North-east, and faw no Ice by the Land, by the which we lauered. The fixth, we gate about the point of Nas- Point Nassaw.

faw, and fayled for ward Eaft, and Eaft and by South, along by the Land. The feuenth, we had a West South-west Wind, and sayled along by the Land, South-east, and South-east and by East, and saw but a little Ice, and then past by the Trust-point, which we had Trust-point. much longed for : at Ecuening we had an East Wind, with mistic Weather, so that we were forced to make our ship fast to a piece of Ice, that was at least thirtie fixe fathome deepe wider the

water, and more then fixteene fathome about the water: which in all was two and fifty fathome thick, for it lay fast v pon ground, the which was thirtie sixe fathome deepe. The eight in the lee 52-fathom morning we had an East Wind, with mistie Weather.

The ninth lying still fast to the great piece of Ice, it snowed hard, and it was mistic weather. Snow, and when the Sunne was South, we went vpon the Hatches(for we alwayes held watch) where as the Mafter walked along the ship, he heard a beaft souffe with his nose, and looking over-boord, he faw a great Beare hard by the flip, where hee cryed out, a Beare, a Beare; and with that all Beares affaulte our men came vp from vnder Hatches, and faw a great Beare hard by our Boat, feeking to get into it. but we giving a great shout, she was afraid, and swamme away, but presently came backe againe, and went behind a great piece of Ice, whereunto we had made our fhip fast, and climbed vpon it, and boldly came towards our ship to enter into it: but we had torne our Scute Sayle in the fhip, and lay with foure Peeces before at the Boot-sprit, and shot her in the bodie : and with that, thee ranne away; but it snowed so fast that wee could not see whither shee went : but wee

gheft that shee lay behind a high Hoouell; whereof there were many vpon the piece of Ice.

The tenth, being Saturday, the Ice began mightily to breake, and then wee first perceived that the great piece of Ice whereunto we had made our ship fast, lay on the ground; for the rest of the Ice draue along by it, wherewith wee were in great feare that wee should bee compassed about with the Ice, and therefore we vied all the diligence and meanes that we could to get from thence, for we were in great doubt : and being under fayle, wee fayled upon the Ice, because it was all broken under us, and got to another piece of Ice; whereunto we made our thip fast agains with our Sheate Anchor, which we made fast vpon it; and there we lay till Eenening: and when Iciethander. we had supped, in the first quarter, the said piece of Ice began on a sudden to burst and rend in pieces, fo fearefully that it was admirable; for with one great cracke it burst into foure hundred pieces at the least : we lying fast to it, weighed our Cable, and got off from it, under the water it was ten fathome deepe, and lay voon the ground, and two fathome about the Water; and it made a fearefull noyfe both under and aboue the Water when it burft, and spread it selfe abroad on all fides. And being with great feare, gotten from that piece of Ice, wee came to another piece, that was fix fathome deepe vnder the Water: to which wee made a Rope fast on both fides. Then wee law another great piece of Ice, not farre from vs, lying fast in the Sea, that 40 was as sharpe aboue, as it had beene a Tower; whereunto wee rowed : and cashing out our Lead, we found that it lay twentie fathome deepe, fast on the ground vider the Water, and twelve fathome aboue the Water.

The eleuenth being Sunday, we rowed to another piece of Ice, and caft out our Lead, and found that it lay eighteene fathome deepe fast to the ground under the Water, and ten fathome aboue the water. The twelfth, wee fayled neere vnder the Land, the better to shunne the Ice, for the great flakes that draue in the Sea, were many fathome deepe under the Water, and we were better defended from them being at foure and fine fathome Water, and there ranne a great current of water from the Hill. There we made our ship fast againe to a piece of Ice, and called that point, The small Ice point.

The thirteenth in the morning, there came a Beare from the East point of the Land, close to Beare hilleds our ship, and one of our men with a Peece shot at her, and brake one of her legs, but she crept vp the Hill with her three feet, and we following her, killed her, and having flaved her, brought the skinne aboord the ship. From thence weelet sayle, with a little gale of Winde, and were forced to lauere, but after, that it began to blow more out of the South, and South South-east.

The fifteenth, we came to the lland of Orange, where we were inclosed with the Ice, hard Orange llands by a great piece of Ice where we were in great danger to lose our ship, but with great labour and much paine, we got to the Iland, the Wind being South-east, whereby we were constrayned to turne our ship, and while we were busied thereabouts, and made such noyse, a Beare that lay there and flept, awaked, and came towards vs to the flip, io that wee were forced to leave our 60 Worke about turning of the ship, and to defend our selues against the Beare, and shot her into the bodie, wherewith the ranne away to the other fide of the Hand, and swamme into the water, and got vp vpon a piece of Ice, where the lay still, but we comming after her to the piece of Ice where the lay, when the faw vs, the leapt into the water, and fwamme to the Land : but we got betweene her and the Land, and strooke her on the head with a Hatchet, but as often as wee

Point Defre.

strooke at her with the Hatchet, she duckt vider the water, whereby wee had much to doe befrom we could kill her: after the was dead we flayed her on the Land, and tooke the skinne aboord with vs, and after that, turned our shippe to a great piece of Ice, and made it fast

The fixteenth, ten of our men entring into one Boat, rowed to the filme Land of Nowa Zembla. and drew the Boat vp vpon the Ice, which done, we went vp a high Hill, to feethe fination of and orew the Boat vp vpour the control of the Land, and found that it reached South-eath, and found that it reached South-eath, and found that it reached South-eath, and south South-eath, and then againe South. the Land, and found that I have been southward; but when wee faw open water Southwhich wee diffixed, for that it lay so much Southward; but when wee faw open water South which were unliked to this result comforted again, thinking that we had wome our Voyeaft, and East South-eaft, we were much comforced agains, sinnang that we have wome our voyage and knew not how we should get soone enough aboord, to certific William Barents thereof. 10

The eighteenth, we made preparation to fee layle, but it was all in vaine : for wee had almost In engineering, which may be a summer loft our Sheat Anchor, and two new Ropes, and with much loft labour got to the place against from whence wee came: for the streame ranne with a mightie current, and the Ice drawvery from whether we can be called a long by the ship, so that we were in search that wee should lose all the Cable that was without the ship, which was two hundred fatherne at the least, but God prouded well for vs, fo that in the end, we got to the place again from whence we put out.

The nineteenthit was indifferent good weather, the Windblowing South-weft, the Ice fill The Intercental A was made an indifferent gale of Wind, and paft by the point of Define, whereby we were once againe in good hope, and when we had gotten about the point we failed Whereby we were one again, in good nopy, and then again we entred into more Ice, whereby 30 wee were constrayned to turne backe againe, and fayled North-west vntill we came to the Land againe, which reacheth from the point of Defice, to the head point, South and by Weff fix miles: from the head point to Flubingers head, it reacheth South-weft, which are three miles one from the other: from the Flushingers head, it reacheth into the Sea, East South-east, and from Finishingers head to the point of the Hand, it reacheth South-week, and by South, and South-west three miles : and from the Hand point, to the point of the Ice Hauen, the Land rechethWest South-west foure miles: from the Ice Hauens point to the fal of Water, or the stream Bay, and the low Land, it reacheth West and by South, and East and by North seuen miles: from thence the Land reacheth East and West.

The one and twentieth, we fayled a great way into the Ice Hauen, and that night anchored 30 therein: next day the streame going exreame hard Eastward, wee haled out agains from thence, and sayled againe to the Hand point, but for that it was misty Weather, comming to a piece of Ice, wee made the ship fast thereunto, because the Wind beganne to blow hard South-west and Earthon the South South-west. There we went up upon the Ice, and wondred much thereat, it was such manner of Ice: For on the top it was full of Earth, and there wee found aboue fortie Egges, and it was not like other Ice, for it was of a perfect Azure colour like to the Skies, whereby there grew great contention in words amongst our men, some saying that it was Ice, others that it was frozen Land: for it lay vnreasonable high aboue the Water, it was at least eighteene fathom vnder the water close to the ground, and ten fathome aboue the water : there wee stayed all that fforme, the Wind being South-west and by West. The three and twentieth , wee sayled 40 againe from the Ice, South-eastward into the Sea, but entred prefently into it againe, and woond about to the Ice Hauen. The next day it blew hard North North-west, and the Ice came mightily driving in, whereby we were in a manner compassed about therewith, and withall the Wind beganne more and more to rife, and the Ice still draue harder and harder, so that the pinne of the Rother, and the Rother were shorne in pieces, and our Boat was shorne in pieces betweene the ship and the Ice, we expecting nothing else, but that the ship also would be prest

The fine and twentieth, the Weather began to be better, and we tooke great paines, and bestowed much labour to get the Ice, wherewith we were so inclosed, to goe from vs, but what meanes soeuer we vied it was all in vaine, but when the Sunne was South-west, the Ice began 50 to drive out againe with the streame, and we thought to faile Southward about Nona Zembla, to the Streights of Mergates, feeing we could there find no passage. Wee having past Nona Zembla, were of opinion that our labour was all in vaine, and that we could not get through, and fo agreed to goe that way home againe, but comming to the Streame Bay, wee were forced to goe backe againe, because of the Ice which lay so fast thereabouts, and the same night also it froze, that wee could hardly get through there, with the little wind that we had, the Wind then be-

The fix and twentieth, there blew a reasonable gale of Wind, at which time wee determined to fayle backe to the point of Defire, and so home againe, seeing that wee could not get through the Wergats, although we vied all the meanes and industry wee could to get forward, but when 69 we had past by the Ice Hanen, the Ice began to drive with such force, that wee were inclosed round about therewith, and yet we fought all the meanes we could to get out, but it was all in vaine : and at that time we had like to have lost three men that were vpon the Ice to make way for the ship, if the Ice had held the course it went, but as we draue backe againe, and that the

Boat broken

CHAP.S. S.I. Dangerous frosts. Strange escape. Ice Hauen. Icy Hills.

Ice also whereon our men flood, in like fort draue, they being nimble, as the ship draue by them. one of them caught hold of the beak head, another vpon the shrouds, and the third vpon the great brase that hung out behind, and so by great aduenture by the hold that they tooke, they got safe into the thip againe, for which they thanked God with all their hearts : for it was much likelier Escape of three that they should rather have beene carried away with the Ice, but God, by the numblenesse of men. their hands, deliuered them out of that danger which was a pitifull thing to behold, although it fellout for the best, for if they had not beene nimble, they had surely dyed for it. The fame day in the evening, wee got to the West-fide of the Ice Hanen, where wee were forced in great cold, pouertie, milerie, and griefe, to stay all that Winter, the winde then beeing East

10 North-eaft. The feuen and twentieth, the Ice draue round about the ship, and yet it was good weather, at which time we went on Land, and being there it began to blow South-east, with a reasonable gale, and then the Ice came with great force before the bough, and draue the thip vp foure foot high before, and behind it feemed as if the keele lay on the ground, to that it feemed that the thip would be overthrowne in the place, whereupon they that were in the thip, put out the Ship lifted vp. Boar, there with to faue their lives, and withall put out a flagge to make a figne to vs. to come and befet with aboard: which we perceiving, and beholding the ship to be lifted up in that fort, made all the Ice. hafte we could to get abourd, thinking that the ship was burst in pieces, but comming vnto it,

we found it to be in better case then we thought it had beene. The eight and twentieth, we got some of the Ice from it, and the ship beganne to sit vpright againe, but before it was fully vpright, as William Barents and the other Pilot went forward to the bough to fee how the thip lay, and how much it was rifen; and while they were buffe vpon their knees and elbowes to measure how much it was, the ship burst out of the Ice with such a noise, and so great a cracke, that they thought verily that they were all cast away, knowing not Anotherdanhow to faue themfelues.

The nine and twentieth, the ship lying voright againe, weevsed all the meanes wee could with Iron hookes and other inftruments, to breake the flakes of Ice that lay one heaped youn the other, but all in vaine; so that we determined to commit our selues to the mercy of God. and to attend aide from him, for that the Ice draue not away in any fuch fort that it could helpe 30 vs. The thirtieth, the Ice began to drive together one woon the other with greater force then before, and bare against the ship with a boystrous South-west winde, and a great snow, so that all the whole thin was borne up and enclosed, whereby all that was both about it and in it . began to cracke, so that it seemed to burst in an hundred pieces, which was most fearefull both to fee and heare, and made all the haire of our heads to rife vpright with feare; and after that, the ship (by the Ice on both sides that joyned and got vnder the same) was driven so vpright, in such fort, as if it had beene lifted vp with a Wrench or Vice.

The one and thirtieth of August, by force of the Ice, the ship was driven up foure or five foot high at the beake head, and the hinder part thereof lay in a clift of Ice , whereby wee thought that the Rother would bee freed from the force of the flakes of Ice, but notwithflanding, it Rother broken 40 brake in pieces staffe and all: and if that the hinder part of the ship had beene in the Ice that draue, as well as the fore part was, then all the ship would have beene driven wholly youn the Ice. or possibly have runne on ground, and for that cause were in great feare, and set our Scutes and our Boat out voon the Ice, if need were, to faue our felues, but within foure houres after, the Ice draue away of it felfe, wherewith wee were exceeding glad, as if wee had faued our lives, for that the ship was then on flote againe, and vpon that wemade a new Rother and a Staffe, and hung the Rother out voon the hookes, that if we chanced to bee borne voon the Ice againe, as we had beene, it migh: fo be freed from it.

The first of September being Sunday, while we were at prayer, the Ice began to gather toge- September. ther againe, so that the ship was I fred vp two foot at the least, but the Ice brake not. The same 50 evening the Ice continued in that fort still driving and gathering together, so that we made preparation to draw our Scute and the Boat ouer the Ice vpon the Land, the wind then blowing South-east. The second, it snowed hard with a North-east wind, and the ship began to rise vp higher voon the Ice, at which time the Ice burft and crackt with great force, fo that wee were of opinion to carrie our Scute on Land in that foule weather, with thirteene barrels of Bread, and two hogsheads of Wine, to sustaine our selves if need were.

The third, it blew hard but snowed not so much, the wind being North North-east, at which time we began to be loofe from the Ice, whereunto wee lay fast, to that the Scheck broke from the Steuen, but the plankes wherewith the ship was lined, held the Scheck fast, and made it hang on, but the Boutloofe and a new Cable (if we had falled upon the Ice) brake by forcible 60 prelling of the Ice, but held fast againe in the Ice, and yet the ship was staunch; which was wonder, in regard that the Ice draue so hard, and in great heapes, as big as the Salt-hils that are in Spaine, and within a Harquebuffe shot of the ship, betweene the which wee lay in great feare

The fourth, the weather began to cleare vp, and we faw the Sunne, but it was very cold, the

CHAP.S.S.I. Violent and incredible freezing, Ground not to be thaved.

wind being North-east we being forced to lie still. The fift, it was faire Sun-shine weather, and wint deing storted at we will all the former and store compaffed about vagaine, and wee very canne, and at the thing beginning to lie vpon the one fide, and leaked fore, but were nare encoured therewith, see any engineers are you the one one, and reaced tore, but by Gods grace it became flaunch agains, wherewith we were wholly in feare to lofe the flip, it by Good grace a Decame Admics against the work confell together, and carried our old locke was in fo great danger: at which time wee tooke counfell together, and carried our old locke was into great danger; at within the was tooke country together, and carried our old tocke Sayle, with Powder, Lead, Peeces, Muskers, and other furniture on Land, to make a Tent a-Sayle, with Powder, Leau, access, manness, and other minimum on Land, which a tent a bout our Scute that we had drawne upon the Land, and at that time we carried fome Bread, and Wine on Land alfo, with fome Timber, therewith to mend our Boat, that it might fence vs in

me of need.

The fixe, it was indifferent faire Sea-weather, and Sun-fhine, the wind being Weft, whereby the fixe, it was indifferent faire Sea-weather, and Sun-fhine, the wind being Weft, whereby the fixe supply and that were might are 10. The fixt, it was monitored, hoping that the Ice would drive away, and that wee night get we were somewhat communities, around a man away, and man were might get from thence againe. The feuenth, it was indifferent weather againe, but we perceived no opefrom stence againe, are reaction, it was mountain wearing againe, one we perceived no ope-ning of the water, but to the contrary, it lay hard enclosed with Ice, and no water at all about the ship, no not so much as a bucket full. The same day, sue of our men went on Land, but two of them came backe againe, the other three went forward about two miles into the Land, and or them came oache againe, the board where allothey found great flore of Wood that had beene

good, touching the carrying away of the Ice, to that we were full fafter in the Ice, which put was wholly enclosed with Ice, for the wind draue the Ice hard against it, so that we lay three or

The elementh, it was calme weather, and eight of vs went on Land, enery man armed, to be if that were true as our other three companions had faid, that there lay Wood about the Riser, for that feeing we had so long woond and turned about, sometime in the see, and then againe got out, and thereby were compelled to alter our courfe, and at last two that we could not get our of 30 the Ice, but rather became failer, and could not loose our ship, as at other times we had done, as also that it began to be Winter, we tooke counfell together what we were best to doe, according to the time, that we might winter there, and attend such adsenture as God would send ys; and after we had debated vpon the matter (to keepe and defend our felues both from the cold, and wilde beafts) we determined to build a houle vpon the Land, to keepe vs therein as well as wee could, and so to commit our selves vnto the tuition of God, and to that end we went further into the Land, to find out the convenientest place in our opinions, to raife our house vpon, and yet we had not much stuffe to make it withall, in regard that there grew no trees, nor any other we had not much naute to make the value, in the state of as our men went abroad to view the Countrey, and to fee what good fortune might happen vaas our men went around to view the comfort in our need, which was, that we found certaine to vs, at laft we found an vnexpected comfort in our need, which was, that we found certaine need, when we trees roots and all, (as our three companions had faid before) which had beene driven vpon the wereforced to tree rous and any tasks and three companions has been been been a grown vpon the healthe Win. Though the from Tartaria, Malcoula, or elle where; for there was none growing vpon that feelil the Win-ter you the Land, wherewith (a if God had purpofely fent them vntovs) we were much comforted, being Lind, fent vs. in good hope that God would shew vs some surther suour; for that Wood served vs not onely Wood to make to build out houfe, but allo to burne, and ferue vs all the Winter long, otherwise without all

The twelfth, it was calme weather, and then our men went anto the other side of the Land, to fee if they could find any Wood neerer vnto vs, but there was none. The thirteenth, it was calme but very mifty weather, so that we could doe nothing, because it was dangerous for vs to goe into the Land, in regard that we could not fee the wilde Beares, and yet they could finell vs, for they smell better then they see. The fourteenth, it was cleare Sun-shine weather, but very cold, and then we went into the Land, and layed the Wood in heapes one vpon the other, that it might not bee covered over with the Snow, and from thence meant to carrie it to the place

The fifteenth in the morning, as one of our men held watch, we faw three Beares, whereof the one lay still behind a piece of Ice, the other two came close to the ship; which wee perceiuing, made our Peeces ready to shoot at them, at which time there stood a Tub full of Beefe vpon the Ice, which lay in the water to be feationed, for that close by the ship there was no water: one of the Beares went vnto it, and put in his head to take out a piece of the Beefe, but she fa- 60 red therewith as the Dog did with the Pudding, for as she was snatching at the Beefe, shee was shot into the head, wherewith she fell downe dead, and neuer stirred: the other Beare stood still, and looked upon her fellow, and when shee had stood a good while, shee smelt her fellow,

River of fresh driven thither, and there they found the footfleps of Harts and Hinds, as they thought, for they were closen footed, tome greater footed then others, which made them indge them to be fo. The eight, it blew hard East North-east, which was a right contrary wind to doe vs any good, cooling are sarying array or the lew North-eaft, with a little fnow, whereby our hip 26

four foot deepe in the Ica, and our Sheck in the after Steuen, brake in pieces, and the fhip began tobe somewhat loofe before, but yet it was not much hurt. In the night time, two Beates came close to our ship side, but we sounded our Trumper, and shot at them, but hit them not, because it was darke, and they ranne away. The teath, the weather was somewhat better, because the wind blew not so hard, and yet all one wind.

Ship faitned

They deter-

burne in the cold Winter. 49I

and perceiuing that the was dead, thee ran away, but wee tooke Halberis and other Armes with vs. and followed her, and at last she came againe towards vs, and we prepared our selves to withfrand her, wherewith the role vp vpon her hinder feet, thinking to rampe at vs. but while thee reared her felfe vp, one of our men shot her into the bellie, and with that she fell vpon her forefeet againe, and roaring as loud as she could, ran away. Then we tooke the dead Bears, and rine her bellie open; and taking out her guts, we fet her vpon her fore-feet, that so she might freeze as thee flood, intending to carrie her with vs into Holland, if wee might get our thin loofe and when we had fet the Beare vpon her foure feet, we began to make a Sled, thereon to draw the Wood to the place where we went to build our house, at that time it froze two fingers thicke in It freezenhin to the falt water, and it was exceeding cold, the wind blowing North-east.

The fixteenth, the Sunne shone, but towards the evening it was misty, the wind being Easter-thicke in a ly, at which time we went to fetch Wood with our Sleds, and then wee drew foure beames about night. a mile youn the Ice and the Snow, that night agains it froze about two fingers thicke. The feuenteenth, thirteene of vs went where the Wood lay with our Sleds, and so drew fine and fine in a Sled, and the other three helped to lift the Wood behind, to make vs draw the better, and with more ease, and in that manner we drew Wood twice a day, and laid it on a heape by the place where we meant to build our house.

The three and twentieth, wee fetcht more Wood to build our house, which wee did twice a day, but it grew to be mifty and ftill weather againe, the wind blowing East, and East North-20 east, that day our Carpenter being of Purmernet died, as wee came abourd about evening. The foure and twentieth, we buried him vnder the fedges, in the clift of a hill, hard by the water. for we could not dig vp the earth, by reason of the great frost and cold , and that day wee went twice with our Sleds to fetch Wood.

The fige and twentieth, it was darke wether, the wind blowing West, & West South-west, and House builded. South-west, and the Ice began somwhat to open, and drive away; but it continued not long, for that having driven about the length of the shot of a great Peece, it lay three fathoms deepe vpon the ground: and where we lay the Ice draue not, for we lay in the middle of the Ice; but it we had layne in the mayne Sea, we would have hoyfed fayle, although it was then late in the veere. The same day we ray sed up the principles of our house, and began to worke hard thereon, but 30 if the ship had been eloose, we would have left our building, and have made our after Steven of our fhip, that we might have beene ready to fayle away if it had beene possible.

The fixe and twentieth, wee had a West wind and an open Sea, but our ship lay fast, wherewith we were not a little grieued, but it was Gods will, which we most patiently bare, and wee began to make vp our house, part of our men fetched Wood to burne, the rest played the Carpenters: and were bufie about the house, as then we were fixteene men in all, for our Carpenter was dead, and of our fixteene men there was still one or other ficke. The seuen and twentieth, it blew hard North-east, and it froze so hard, that as we put a nayle into our mouthes (as when men worke Carpenters worke they vie to doe) there would Ice hang thereon when we tooke it Hard and vioout againe, and make the bloud follow: the fame day there came an old Beare and a young one lent froft.

40 towards vs, as we were going to our house, being all together (for we durft not goe alone) which we thought to shoot at, but she ran away, at which time the Ice came forcibly driving in, and it was faire Sun-shine weather, but so extreme cold, that we could hardly worke, but extremity

The eight and twentieth, it was faire weather, and the Sunne shone, the Wind being West and very calme, the Sea as then being open, but our ship lay fast in the Ice and stirred not; the fame day there came a Beare to the fhip, but when she espyed vs, she ranne away, and we made asmuch hafte as wee could to build our House. The nine and swentieth in the morning , the Wind was West, and after-noone it blew Northerly, and then wee faw three Beares between vs and the House, an old one and two young; but we notwithstanding drew our goods from the so ship to the House, and so got before the Beares , and yet they followed vs : neuerthelesse, we would not flun the way for them, but hollowed out as loud as we could thinking that they wold baue gone away, but they would not once goe out of their foot-path, but got before vs, wherewith we and they that were at the house, made a great noyse, which made the Bezres run away, and we were not a little glad thereof. The thirtieth the Wind was East, and East South-east, and all that night and the next day it snowed so fast, that our men could fetch no Wood, it lay so close and high one voon the other: then wee made a great fire without the House, therewith to thaw the ground, that fo we might lay it about the House, that it might bee the closer; but it Ground not was all lost labour, for the Earth was so hard, and frozen so deepe into the ground, that wee to be thawed. could not thaw it, and it would have coft vs too much Wood, and therefore wee were forced to 60 leave off that labour.

♦. II.

ð. II.

Their cold, comfortlesse, darke and dreadfull Winter : the Sunnes absence, Moones light, Sunnes vnexpetted returne with miraculous Speed. Of Beares, Foxes, and many mamy Wonders.

He first of October, the Wind blew stiffe North-east, and after-noone it blew North, sentitor Deteoes, the value of Snow, whereby wee could hardly goe in the Wind, 10 with a great norms and draw his breath, the Snow draw fo hard in our faces at which and a man could not fee two fhips length from vs. The fecond before noone, the Sunne there, and after noone it was cloudie againe, and it finew, but the vecather was fiill, the Wind

May-pole of

being North, and then South, and wee fet vp our Houfe, and vpon it wee placed a May-pole The third before noone, it was calme Sun-shine vveather, but so cold, that it was hard to bee indured, and after-noone it blew hard out of the West, with so great extreme cold, that if it had continued, we should have been eforced to leave our worke. The fourth, the Wind was Well, and after-noone North, with great flore of Snow, whereby we could not worke; at that time and anter-mount realth, with given the Lee to lys the fafter, when wee lay but an Arrow thot from 20

The fifth, it blevv hard North-west, and the Sea was very open and vvithout Ice, as farress vve could discerne, but vve lay still frozen as vve did before, and our ship lay two or three foot were containering out we as it in rozen as the did ceroit; and on mip as two a cities too and then it was three fathome and a halfe deepe. The same day we brake vp the lower det of the fore-part of our ship, and with those Deales we courred our Houses, and made it slope o. uer head, that the Water might runne off, at which time it was very cold. The fixth, it blew hard West South-west, but towards Eeuening, West North-west, with a great Snow, that we could hardly thrust our heads out of the doore, by reason of the great cold. The seventh, it was indifferent good weather, but yet very cold, and wee calk't our House, and brake the 30

Hence it may

is from the

North.

Extreme Snow ground about it at the foot thereof : that day the Wind went round about the Compasse, The eight, all the night before it blew so hard, and the same day also, and snowed sofas, that we should have smothered, if we had gone out into the Ayre; and to speake truth, it had not beene pessible for any man to haue gone one ships length, though his life had layen thereon for it was not possible for vs to goe out of the House or ship. The ninth, the Wind still continued North, and blew, and snowed hard, all that day the Wind as then blowing from the Land, so that feeme, that the all that day we were forced to flay in the ship, the weather was so foule,

The tenth, the weather was somewhat fairer, and the Wind calmer, and blew South-west, Tides and Sea and West, and South-west, and that time the Water slowed two soote higher then ordinary, which we gheft to proceede from the first North-wind, which as then had blowne. The fame 40 day the weather began to be somewhat better, so that we began to go out of our ship againe : and as one of our men went out, he chanced to meet a Beare, and was almost at him before hee knew it, but prefently he ranne backe againe towards the ship, and the Beare after him, but the Beare comming to the place where before we had killed another Beare, and let her vpright, and there let her freeze (which was couered ouer with Ice, and yet one of her pawes reached about it) shee stood still, whereby our man got before her, and climbed up into the ship, in great feare, crying, A Beare, a Beare; which we hearing, came abone Harches to looke on her, and to shoot at her, but we could not fee her, by meanes of the exceeding great smoke, that had so fore tormented vs(while we lay under Hatches) in the fouls weather which we would not have indured for any money, but by reason of the cold and snow ie weather, wee were constrayned to doe it, if wee 50 would faue our lives, for aloft in the ship we must vindoubtedly have died! the Beare stayed not long there, but ranne away, the Wind then being North-east. The same day about Eeuening, it was faire weather, and we went out of our ship to the House, and carried the greatest part of

The eleuenth, it was calme weather, the Wind being South, and somewhat warme, and then we carried our Wine and other Victuals on Land : and as we were hoyfing the Wine ouer-boord, there came a Beare towards our ship, that had layen behind a piece of Ice, and it seemed that we had waked her with the noyle we made: for wee had feene her lye there, but wee thought her to be a piece of Ice; but as the came neere vs, we thot at her, and the ranne away, to we proceeded in our worke. The twelfth, it blew North, and somewhat Westerly, and then halfe of 60 our men kept in the House, and that was the first time that we lay in it, but wee indured great cold, because our Cabins were not made; and besides that wee had not Clothes enough, and we could keepe no fire because our Chimney was not made, whereby it smoked exceedingly.

The thirteenth, the Wind was North and North-west, and it began agains to blow hard, and

then three of vs went aboord the ship, and laded a Sled with Beere, but when wee had laden it; thinking to goe to our House with it, suddenly there rose such a Wind, and so great a storme and cold, that wee were forced to goe into the ship againe, because wee were not able to slay without, and wee could not get the Beere into the ship againe, but were forced to let it stand without vpon the Sled : being in the ship, wee indured extreame cold, because wee had but a few

The fourteenth, as wee came out of the ship, wee found the Barrell of Beere standing upon the Sled, but it was fall frozen at the heads, yet by reason of the great cold, the Beere that purged out, froze as hard vpon the fide of the Barrell as if it had bene glued thereon, and in purges one, truce as annu you can me us are on the purges on and dranke it first vp, but wee lette meked." were forced to melt the Beere, for there was feant any unfrozen Beere in the Barrell, bot in that thicke Yeaft that was unfrozen lay the strength of the Beere, so that it was too strong to drinke alone, and that which was frozen tafted like water, and being melted we mixt one with the other, and so dranke it, but it had neither strength nor taste.

The fifteenth, the Wind blew North and East, and East South-east, that day we made place to fet up our doore, and shoueled the Snow away. The eighteenth, the Wind blew hard East South-eaft, and then we fetched our Bread out of the Scute which wee had drawne up upon the Land, and the Wine also which as then was not much frozen, and yet it had layne fixe Weekes therein, and not withflanding that it had oftentimes frozen very hard. The fame day wee faw Sea concred 20 another Beare, and then the Sea was so couered ouer with Ice, that wee could fee no with Ice

The ninercenth, the Wind blew North-east, and then there was but two men and a Boy in the ship, at which time there came a Beare that fought forcibly to get into the ship, although Beate shall be a beate shall b the linp, at which time there came a near constanting a total and yet the ventured vpon them, whereby they the thip. were in an extreame feare, each of them feeking to faue themselues, the two men leape into the Ballaft, and the Boy climbed into the foot Mark top, to faue their lines, meane time, some of our men thot at her with a Musket, and then thee range away. The twentieth, it was calme Sunne-shine weather, and then againe wee faw the Sea open, at which time wee went Barrels and I. on boord to fetch the relt of our Beere out of the fhip, where wee found fome of the Bar- ron boor 30 rels frozen in pieces, and the Iron hoopes that were vpon the Iolam Barrels were also fro-broken with

The two and twentieth, the Winde blew coldly, and very stiffe North-east, with so great a Snow, that wee could not get out of our doores. The three and twentieth, it was calme weather, and the Winde blew North-east, then wee went aboord our ship, to see if the reft of our men would come home to the Houle; but wee feared that it would blow hard againe, and therefore durst not stirre with the ficke man, but let him lye still that day, for hee

The foure and twentieth, the rest of our men beeing eight persons, came to the House, Allcometer and drew the ficke man vpon a Sled, and then with great labour and paine, wee drew our the Houfe. 40 Boat home to our House, and turned the bottome thereof vpwards, that when time ferned vs (if God faued our lines in the Winter time) wee might vseit and after that, perceining that the thip lay fait, and that there was nothing left to be expedted then the opening of the water, wee put our Anchor into the ship againe, because it should not be covered over and lost in the Snow, that in the Spring time wee might vie it: for we alwayes trufted in God that hee would deliner vs from thence towards Summer time, cyther one way or other. The Sunne, when we might fee it best and highest, began to be very low, and we vied all the speed we could to feeth all things with Sleds out of our hip into our Houle, not onely meate and drinke, but all

The fine and twentieth, wee fetche all things that were necessary for the furnishing of our 30 Soure and our Boate : and when we had laden the last Sled, and stood readie to draw it to the House, our Master looked about him and saw three Beares behind the ship that were comming towards vs, whereupon hee cryed out aloud to feare them away, and wee prefently leaped forth to defend our felues as well as we could ; and, as good fortune was, there lay two fide berds vpon the Sled, whereof the Master tooke one, and I the other, and made resistance against them as well as we could; but the reft of our men ranne to faue themselves in the ship, and as they ranne, one of them fell into a Clift of Icc, which grieued vs much s for we thought verily that the Beares would have ranne yato him, to deuoure him, but God defended him; for the Beares fill made towardes the ship after the men that ranne thicher to saue themselues. Meane time, wee and the man that fell into the Clift of Ice, tooke our advantage, and 60 got into the ship on the other side, which the Beares perceiuing, they came servely to-Fight with

wards vs, that had no other Armes to defend vs withall, but onely the two Halberds, Bearen which wee doubting would not bee fufficient, wee fill gaue them worke to doe by throwing Billets and other things at them, and cuery time we threw, they ranne after them as a Dogge vieth to doe at a Stone that is cast at him. Meane time, wee fent a man

downe under Harches to strike Fire, and another to fetch Pikes, but wee could get no Fire, and so were had no meanes to shoote: at the last, as the Beares came siercely voon vs. wee strooke one of them with a Halberd vpon the Snowt, wherewith shee game backe. when flore felt her felfe burt, and went away, which the other two that were not fo great as shee. perceiving, ranne away : and wee thanked God that wee were so well deliuered from them, and so drew our Sled quietly to our House, and there shewed our men when had happened water us.

rent faire weather; then wee faw open Water hard by the Land, but wee perceiped the Ice to draue in the Sea, fill towards the ship. The seuen and twentieth, the Wind blew Northeast, and it snowed so fast, that wee could not worke without the doore. That day our men killed a White Foxe . which they flead ; and after they had rofted it, ate thereof, which taffed White Foxe. like Conies slesh : the fame day we fet vp our Dyall, and made the Clocke strike, and wee hang Beares fat for

> The nine and twentieth, the Wind still blew North-east, and then wee fetched Segges from the Sea-fide, and layd them vpon the Sayle that was spread vpon our House, that it might bee fo much the closer and warmer : for the Deales were not driven close together, and the foule weather would not permit vs to doe it. The thirtieth , the Winde yet continued North-caft. Winde still blew North-east, with great store of Snow, whereby wee durst not looke out

> The first of November, the Wind still continued North-east, and then wee faw the Moone rife in the East when it beganne to bee darke, and the Sunne was no higher aboue the Horizon great Snow that fell, and it was extreame cold, so that we could not goe out of the House,

The second, the Wind blew West, and somewhat South, but in the Ecuening it blew North. with calme weather, and that day we faw the Sunne rife South South-eaft, and it went downe South South-west, but it was not full aboue the Earth, but passed in the Horizon along by the Earth : and the fame day one of our men killed a Fox with a Hatchet, which was flayed, reafted 20 and eaten. Before the Sunne began to decline, wee faw no Foxes, and then the Beares yed to goe from vs.

The third, the Wind blew North-west with calme weather, and the Sunne rose South and by East, and somewhat more Southerly, and went downe South and by West, and somewhat more Southerly; and then we could fee nothing but the vpper part of the Sunne about the Horizon, and yet the Land where wee wereg: was as high as the Mast of our ship, then wee tooke the height of the Sunne, it being in the eleventh degree, and fortie eight minutes of Scorpie, his Declination being fifteene degrees and twentie foure minutes, on the South-fide of the E-

The fourth, it was calme weather, but then wee faw the Sunne no more, for it was no 40 Sun no more longer about the Horizon, then our Chirurgion made a Bath (to bathe vs in) of a Wineafter the third pipe, wherein wee entred one after the other, and it did vs much good; and was a great of November, meanes of our health. The same day wee tooke a White Foxe, that oftentimes came abroad, not as they vied at other times: for that when the Beares left vs at the fetting of the Sunne, and came not againe before it rose, the Foxe to the contrarie came abroad when they were gone.

The fifth, the Winde was North, and somewhat West, and then wee saw open water vpon the Sea, but our shippe lay still fast in the Ice, and when the Sunne had left vs, wee saw mually seenein the Moone continuall both day and night, and neuer went downe when it was in the the Sunnes ab- highest degree. The fixt, the Winde was North-west, still weather, and then our men 50 fetcht a Sled full of Fire-wood, but by reason that the Sunne was not seene, it was very darke weather.

The seventh , it was darke weather , and very ftill , the Winde West , at which time wee could hardly differne the Day from the Night, specially because at that time our Clocke stood still, and by that meanes weeknew not when it was day, although it was day, and our men rose not out of their Cabins all that day, but onely to make water, and therefore they knew not whether the light they faw, was the light of the day or of the Moone; whereupon, they were of seuerall opinions, some saying, it was the light of the day, the others of the night: but as wee tooke good regard thereunto, wee found it to bee the light of the day about twelve of the clocke at noone.

The eight, it was still weather, the Winde blowing South, and South-west. The fame day our men fetcht another Sled of Fire-wood, and then also wee tooke a White Bread shared Foxe, and saw open water in the Sea. The same day wee shared our Bread amongst vs, each man having foure pound and tenne ounces, for his allowance in eight dayes, fo that thea

- The fixe and twentieth, the Wind was North, and North North-west, with indiffe-VD a Lampe to burne in the night time, wherein we vied the fat of the Beare which wee melt. and burnt in the Lampe.

and the Sunne was full about the Earth, a little about the Horizon. Theone and thirtieth, the 20

Nouember. Sun & Moone, then we could well fee it, and yet that day we faw it not , because of the close weather, and the

Sun rifeth South South. east, and goeth South-weft. not full about the Earth. Foxes succeed Beares.

They feethe

Dackneffe,

we were eight dayes eating a Barrell of Bread, whereas before wee ate it up in fine or fix dayes; we were eight cayes caring a partial of a second more flore thereof; but our drinke failed vs. Retreftrength and therefore we were forced to share that also: but our best Beere was for the most part who-less with stosle Iv without any strength, so that it had no fauour at all : and besides all this, there was a great deale of it full. The ninth, the Wind blew North-east, and somewhat more Northerly, and then we had not much day light, but it was altogether darke. The tenth, it was calme weather, the Wind North-welt, and then our men went into the thip to fee how it lay, and wee Ship ballaft faw that there was a great deale of water in it, fo that the ballaft was couered ouer with water, couered with but that it was frozen, and so might not bee pumpt out. The eleventh, it was indifferent wear water. ther, the Wind North-west. The same day we made around thing of Cable yarne, and like to a Net, to catch Foxes withall, that wee might get them into the House, and it was made like a Foxure.

Trap, which fell vpon the Foxes as they came under it, and that day we caught one.

The tweltth, the Wind blew East, with a little light: that day wee began to share our Wine, Wine mared. euery man had two Glasses a day, but commonly our Drinke was water, which we melted out Drinke water, of Snow, which we gathered without the House. The thirteenth, it was foule weather, with great Snow, the Wind East. The fourteenth, it was faire cleere weather, with a cleere Skie full of Starres, and an East-wind. The fitteenth, it was darke weather, the Wind North-east, with a vading light. The fixteenth, it was weather with a temperate Ayre, and an East-wind. The feuenteenth, it was darke weather, and a close Ayre, the Wind East. The eighteenth, it was 20 foule weather, the wind South-east : then the Master cut vp a packe of course Clothes, and dinided it among to our men that needed it, therewith to defend vs better from the cold. The nineteenth, it was foule weather, with an East-wind, and then the Chilt with Linnen was opened, and divided amongst the men for shift, for they had need of them, for then our onely care was to find all the meanes we could to defend our bodie from the cold. The twentieth, it was faire ftill weather, the Wind Easterly, then wee washt our sheets, but it was so cold, that when wee had washt and wrung them, they presently frozeso stiffe, that although wee layed them by a great fire, the fide that lay next the fire thawed, but the other fide was hard frozen, so that wee should sooner haue torne them in sunder then haue opened them, whereby wee were forced to put them into the feething water agains to thaw them, it was so exceeding cold. The one and twentieth, it was indifferent weather with a North-east wind, then we agreed that every man 30 (flould take his turne to cleaue Wood, thereby to eafe our Cooke, that had more then workeenough to doe twice a day to dreffe meate, and to melt Snow for our Drinke, but our Master and

the Pilot were exempted from that Worke. The two and twentieth, the Wind was South-east, it was faire weather, then wee had but feuenteene Cheefes, whereof one we are amongst vs, and the rest were divided to every man one for his portion, which they might eate when he lift. The three and twentieth, it was indifferene good weather, the Wind South-east, and as we perceived that the Fox vsed to come oftner, and more then they were wont, to take them the better, wee made certaine Trappes of thicke Planckes, whereon wee laid flones, and round about them placed pieces of thards fast in the 40 ground, that they might not digge under them, and fo got fome of the Foxes. The foure and Bathing and twentieth, it was foule weather, and the Wind North-esft, and then wee prepared our felues to Purging. goe into the Bath, for some of vs were not very well at ease, and so source of vs went into it, and when we came out, our Surgeon gaue vs a Purgation, which did vs much good, and that day we tooke foure Foxes. The fine and twentieth, it was faire cleere weather, the Wind West; and

that day we tooke two Foxes with Springs that we had purposely fet vp. The fix and twentieth, it was foule weather, and a great storme with a South-west Wind, and great flore of Snow, whereby wee were so closed up in the House, that wee could not goe out, but were forced to ease our selues within the House. The seven and twentieth, it was faire cleere weather, the Wind South-west, and then we made more Spinges to get Foxes, for it stood 50 vs vpon to doe it, because they served vs for meate, as if God had sent them purposely forvs, for we had not much meate. The eight and twentieth of November, it was foule flormic weather, and the Winde blew hard out of the North, and it frew hard, whereby wee were shut vp againe in our House, the Snowlay so closed before the doores.

The nine and twentieth, it was faire cleere weather, and a good Ayre: the Wind Northerly, and we found meanes to open our doore by shoueling away the Snow, whereby wee got one of our doores open, and going out, wee found all our Traps and Springes cleane couered ouer with Store of Snow. Snow, which wee made cleane, and fet them vp againe to take Foxes : and that day wee tooke one, which as then ferued vs not onely for meate, but of the skinnes wee made Caps to weare Fox-ikin-caps. vpon our heads, wherewith to keepe them warms from the extreame cold. The thirtieth, it 60 was faire clere weather, the Wind Well, and fix of vs went to the ship, all well prouided of Armes to fee how it lay : and when wee went vnder the fore Decke, wee tooke a Foxe aliue

The fift of December, it was foule weather with a South-west Wind, and great store of December. Snow, whereby we were once againe flopt up in the House, and by that meanes there was so

Sone heated Coldand Smoake.

Ice in the

great a smoake in the House, that we could hardly make fre, and so were forced to lye all day in Lyefillin Ca- our Cabins, but the Cooke was forced to make fire to dreft our meate. The second, it was full our Carins, our the Cook was occurred to keepe full in the House, and yet wee could hardly it by the fire, because of the imoake, and therefore flayed fillin our Cabins, and then we heated from s, which we put in our Cabins to warme our feet, for that both the cold and the smoake were

The third, we had the like weather, at which time as we lay in our Cabins, wee might heare the Ice cracke in the Sea, and yet it was at the leaft halfe a mile from vs, which made a huse Le cracking noyfe, and we were of opinion, that as then the great Hils of Ice which wee had feen in the Sea, in Summer time, brake one from the other, and for that during those two or three dayes, be. cause of the extreame smoake, we made not so much fire as we commonly vsed to doe, it froze so fore within the House, that the Wals and the Roofe thereof were frozen two fingers thick with Ice, and also in our Cabins where we lay all those three dayes, while wee could not goe out the reason of the foule weather, we set up the Glasse of twelve houres, and when it was runne out, wee fet it vp againe, fill watching it left wee should misse our time. For the cold was so Clock frozen, great, that our Clocke was frozen, and might not goe, although we hung more weight on it then before.

The fourth, it was faire cleere weather, the Wind North-east, and then we began every man Deore digged by turne to digge open our doores that were closed up with Snow, for we saw that it would be often to doe, and therefore we agreed to worke by turnes, no man excepted but the Mafter 20 and the Pilot. The fifth, it was faire weather with an East-wind, and then we made our Springes cleane againe to take Foxes. The fixt, it was foule weather againe, with an Eafterly Wind. and extreame cold, almost not to bee indured, whereupon wee looks pittifully one vpon the other, being in great feare, that if the extreamitie of the cold grew to bee more and more, wee should all dye there with cold, for that what fire soener we made, it would not warme vs , yez, Cold stronger and our Sacke which is so hot, was frozen very hard, so that when wee were euery man to have his part, we were forced to melt it in the fire, which wee shared every second day about halfea pint for a man, wherewith we were forced to fuftayne our felues, and at other times wee dranke water, which agreed not well with the cold, and we needed not to coole it with Snow or Ice. but we were forced to melt it out of the Snow.

Sacke.

The feuenth, it was still foule weather, and we had a great storme with a North-east Wind. which brought an extreame cold with it, at which time weeknew not wist to doe, and while we fate confulting together, what were best for vs to doe, one of our companions gaue vs coun-Sea-coale fire, fell to burne some of the Sea-coales that we had brought out of the ship, which would cast a great heate and continue long, and so at Eeuening we made a great fire thereof, which cast a great heat: at which time wee were very carefull to keepe it in : for that the heate beeing fo great a comfort viito vs, we tooke care how to make it continue long : whereupon wee agreed to flop vp all the doores and the Chimney, thereby to keepe in the heate, and io went into our Cabinsto fleepe, well comforted with the heate, and fo lay a great while talking together; but at last we were ta-Swounding & ken with a great swounding and dazeling in our heads, yet some more then other some, which 40 fuffing by the we first perceived by a ficke man, and therefore the leffe able to beare it, and found our felues to Cole vapour be very ill at ease, so that some of vs that were strongest, start out of their Cabins, and first opened the Chimney, and then the doores, but he that opened the doore fell downe in a fwound vpon the Snow, which I hearing, as lying in my Cabin next to the doore, flart vp, and casting Vinegar in his face, recouered him againe, and to he rose vp : and when the doores were open, we all recouered our healths againe, by reason of the cold Ayre, and so the cold which before had beene to great an Enemy vnto vs, was then the onely reliefe that wee had, otherwife without doubt, we had dyed in a fudden fwound, after that the Master, when we were come to our schee againe, gaue every one of vs a little Wine to comfort our hearts.

The eight, it was foule weather, the winde Northerly, very sharpe and cold, but we durit lay no more coales on, as wee did the day before, for that our misfortune had taught vs, that to shunne one danger we should not runne into another. The ninth, it was faire cleare weather, the skie full of Starres, then we fet our doore wide open, which before was fast closed up with Snow, and made our Springes ready to take Foxes. The tenth, it was still faire Star-light weather, the winde North-east: then wee tooke two Foxes, which were good meate for vs, for as then our victuals began to bee scant, and the cold full increased, whereunto their Skinnes serued Shooes on fect vs for a good defence. The eleuenth, it was faire weather, and a cleere ayre but very old, which frozen within. hee that felt not would not beleeue, for our Shooes froze as hard as hornes upon our feete, and They weare no within they were white frozen, fo that we could not weare our shooes, but were forced to make great Pattents, the upper part being Sheepe-skinnes, which we put on ouer three or foure payre of Sockes, and so went in them to keepe our feet warme.

The twelfth, it was faire cleere weather with a North-west winde, but extreame cold, so that our House walls and Cabbins were frozen a finger thicke; yea, and the Cloathes spon our backes were white ouer with Frost, and although some of vs were of opinion, that wee should

Clotheson

CHAP.S. S.2. Cold blifters. Sunnes comfort. Foxes daintie at Venison.

lay more coles upon the fire to warme vs, and that we should let the chimney stand or en, yet we durit not doe it, fearing the like danger we had escaped. The thirteenth, it was faire cleere weather, with an East winde : then we tooke another Foxe, and tooke great paines about preparing and dreffing of our Springes, with no small trouble, for that if wee flayed too long without the Cold bliffers doores, there arose blisters upon our Faces and our Eares. The fourteenth, it was laire weather: the winde North-east, and the skie full of starres, then we tooke the height of the right shoulder of the Rens, when it was South South-west, and somewhat more Westerly (and then it was at the highest in our Compasse) and it was elevated about the Horizon 20. degrees and 28. minutes. his Declination being 6. degrees and 18. minutes, on the North-fide of the line, which Declina-10 tion being taken out of the height aforefayd, there rested 14. degrees, which being taken out of 90. degrees, then the height of the Pole was 76. degrees.

The fifteenth, it was still faire weather, the winde East: that day wee tooke two Foxes, and faw the Moone rife East South-east, when it was fixe and twentie dayes old, in the figne of Scorpio. The fixteenth, it was faire cleere weather, the winde East : at that time wee had no more Wood in the house, but had burnt it all : but round about our house there lay some courred ouer with Snow, which with great paine and labour we were forced to digge out, and fo shoull away with Snow, which wrea great panie and tabout the bode, which wee did by turnes, two and two together; the Snow, and fo brought it into the house, which wee did by turnes, two and two together; thereame and wherein we were forced to vie great speed, for wee could not long endure without the Houle, trinble free. because of the extreame cold, although we wore the Foxes skinnes about our heads, and double zing, 20 apparell vpon our backes.

The feuenteenth, the winde still held North-east, with faire weather and so great Frosts, that wee were of opinion, that if there stood a Barrell full of water without the doore, it would in one night freeze from the top to the bottome. The eighteenth, the winde fill held North-eaft, with faire weather : then feuen of vs went out vnto the Ship to fee how it lay, and being vnder the decke, thinking to finde a Foxe there, we fought all the holes but we found none; but when we entred into the Cabbin and had itricken fire to fee in what cafe the ship was, and whether the water role higher in it, there wee found a Foxe, which we tooke and carryed it home, and eate it, and then we found that in eighteene dayes absence (for it was so long since we had beene there) the water was rifen about a finger high, but yet it was all Ice, for it froze as fast as it 30 came in, and the veffels which wee had brought with vs full of fresh water out of Holland, were frozen to the ground.

The nineteenth, it was faire weather, the winde being South : then we put each other in good comfort, that the Sunne was then almost halfe over, and ready to come to vs againe, which wee Sunnes comfore longed for, it being a weary time for vs to bee without the Sunne, and to want the greatest fort. comfort that God lendeth vnto man heere vpon the earth, and that which rejoyceth euery liuing thing. The twentieth, before notine it was faire elecre weather, and then we had taken a Foxe, but towards Equening, there role such a storme in the South-west, with so great a frow, that all the house was inclosed therewith. The one and twentieth, it was faire cleere weather, with a North-east winde, then we made our doore cleane againe, and made a way to goe out, and fed with from 40 clenfed our Traps for the Foxes, which did vs great pleasure when we tooke them; for they seemed as daintie as Venison vnto vs. The two and ewentieth, it was foole weather, with great ftore of fnow, the winde South, welt, which flopt vp our doore againe, and wee were forced to digge it open againe, which was almost enery day to doe. The three and twentieth, it was foule weather, the wind South-well, with great store of snow, but wee were in good comfort that the Sunne would come agains to vs, for as we gheft, that day hee was in Tropics Capricorni, Sun in Tropics which is the furthest Signe that the Sunne passeth on the South-side of the line, and from thence Capitarni. 14. it turneth Northward againe. The foure and twentieth, being Christmasse Eeuen, it was faite Decem suite weather, then wee opened our doore againe, and saw much open water in the Sea : for we had heard the Ice cracke and drine : although it was not day, yet we could fee to farte. Towards

So Equaning it blew hard out of the North-east, with great flore of Snow, so that all the passage Cold Christ-Ecuching renew man on or the renewater, who great tops or other, to the the that wee had made open before, was flopt up againe. The fire and twentieth, being Christmaffe miffe, day, it was foule weather, with a North-west winde, and yet though it was foule weather, we heard the Foxes runne ouer our Houle, wherewith some of our men sayd, it was an ill signe; and Ill signe inwhile we fate disputing why it should bee an ill signe, some of our men made answer, that it was deed. an ill figne because wee could not take them, to put them into the Pot or roast them, for that had

The fixe and twentieth, it was foule weather, the winde North-west, and it was focold that we could not warme vs, although wee yied all the meanes we could with great fires, good itote Coldinaines of cloathes, and with hot stones and billets, layd vpon our feete and spon our bodies, as we lay, ble. 60 in our Cabbins; but notwithflanding all this, in the morning our Cabbins were frozen, which made vs behold one the other with fad countenance, but yet wee comforted our felues agains as well as we could, that the Sunne was then as low as it could goe, and that it now began to come to vs againe, and we found it to bee true : for that the Dayes beginning to lengthen, the Cold began to firengiben, but hope put vs in good comfort, and eafed our paine. The feuen and twentieth, it

was still foule weather, with a North-west wind, so that as then wee had not beene out in three was firm touc events out in three dayes together, nor durft not thrulf our heads out of doores, and within the house it was foexdayes rogerner, no want age to the state of Burne before, treame cous, tink as we see the second state of the Country men vie to bee, when they come in at the Country men vie to bee, when they come in at the gates of the Towne in Holland with their Sleds, and haue gone all night. regates of the about in 1200001 that still foule weather with a West wind, but about Ecuening it.

I neergns and weetness, at which time one of our men made a hole open at one of our doores, and began to creere vp, as writed that the description of the found it fo hard weather that hee flayed not long, and went out to fee wint news a wind, that the Snow lay higher then our house, and that if he had told vs that it had inowed to much make the state of the tayes our songer, me cases where any re, the wind being Southward : that day, he, whole turns it was calme weather, and a pleafant ayre, the wind being Southward : that day, he, whole turns it was carnet weather; and a geed a hole through the Snow, where we went out of the houfe it was, opened the moute of a Celler, at leaft feuen or eight steps high, each steps afoote vpon neps, as a transfer we made cleane our Springes for the Foxes, whereof for certaine days from the other, and the well as we made them cleane, one of our men found a dead Foxe in one of them, that was frozen as hard as a stone, which he brought into the house, and thawed it before the fire, and after flaying it, some of our meneate it. The thirtieth, it was foule weather agains, with a fforme out of the West, and great store of Snow, so that all the labour and paine that we had taken the day before to make steps to goe out of our house, and to clense our Springes, was all had taken one day october of many needs to be of our mone, and to term our optinger, was all in vaine, for it was all coursed our with Snow againe, higher then it was before. The one and 20 thirrieth, it was fill foule weather, with a fforme out of the North-weft, whereby we were fo faft flut vp into the house, as if wee had beene priloners, and it was so extreame cold, that the fire almost cast no heate : for as we put our feet to the fire, we burnt our hose before we could feelethe heate, fo that we had worke enough to doe to patch our hofe : and which is more, if we had not fooner finelt, then felt them, we should have burnt them ere we had knowne it.

Fire conque-

After that with great cold, danger, and difease, wee had brought this yeere vito an end, we An Dam. 1597. entred into the yeare of our Lord God 1597, the beginning whereof, was in the same manner as the end of Jamo 1596. had beene, for the weather continued as cold, foule, and Snowie, as it was before, so that vpon the first of January wee were inclosed in the House, the winde then being West : at the same time wee agreed to share our Wine every mana 30 small measure full, and that but once in two dayes : and as we were in great care and feare that it would bee long before we should get out from thence, (and we having but small hope therein) fome of vs spared to drinke wine as long as we could, that if we should stay long there, we might drinke it at our need. The second, it blew hard with a West wind, and a great storme with both Snow and Frost, so that in foure or fine dayes, we durst not put our heads out of the doores, and as then by reason of the great cold, we had almost burne all our Wood; notwithstanding, we dust not goe out to fetch more wood, because it froze so hard, and there was no being without the doore, but feeking about we found fome peeces of wood that lay ouer the doore, which we close, and withall cloue the blocker whereon we wied to beate our Stock-fift, and so holpe our seluce so well as we could. The third, it was all one weather, and we had little wood to burne. The 40 fourth, it was still foule stormie weather, with much Snow and great cold, the winde Southwest, and we were spreed to keepe in the house : and to know where the wind blew, we thrust a halfe-pike out at the Chimney with a little cloath or feather upon it, but as soone as wee thrust it out, it was presently frozen as hard as a peece of wood, and could not goe about nor ftirre with the wind.

Vene.

The fifth, it was somewhat still and calme weather: then wee digged our doore open again, that we might goe out, and carrie out all the fath that had beene made, during the time of our being flut in the house; and made every thing handsome, and fetched in Wood which we cleft, and it was all our dayes worke to further our felues as much as we could, fearing least we should be thus vp againe : and as there were three doores in our portall, and for that our house by coured ouer in Snow, wee tooke the middle doore thereof away, and digged a great hole in the show, that lay without the house, like to a side of a vault, wherein we might goe to ease our felues, and caft other filth into it : and when we had taken paines all day, we remembred our selves that it was Twelfth Eeuen, and then we prayed our Master that we might be merris that night, and fayd, that we were content to spend some of the Wine that night which we had spared, and which was our share every second day, and whereof for certayne dayes wee had not drunke, and so that night we made merrie, and drunke to the three Kings, and therewith we had two pound of Meale, whereof wee made pan-cakes with Oyle, and every man a white Bisket, which we fopt in Wine and so supposing that we were in our owne Country, and amongst our friends, it comforted vs as well as if we had made a great banquet in our owne house; and we al- 60 so made tickets, and our Gunner was King of Nova Zembia, which is at least two hundred miles

Three Kings

long, and lyeth betweene two Seas. The first, it was faire weather, the wind North-east, then wee went out and cleansed our Traps to take Foxes, which were our Venison, and we digged a hole in the Snow, where our fire-

wood lay, and left it clo fe aboue like a vault; and from thence fetched out our Wood as we needed it. The feuenth, it was foule weather againe, with a North-west wind, and some Snow. and very cold, which put vs in great feare to be shut vp in the house againe. The eight it was faire weather againe, the wind North: then wee made our Springes ready to get more Venifon: which wee longed for , and then wee might fee and marke day-light, which then began Day-light to encreale, that the Sunne as then began to come towards vs againe, which put vs in no little espeed.

CHAP. S.S. 2. Day-light efficd. Beares in the Ship. The Sunne appeareth.

The ninth, it was foule weather, with a North-west wind, but not so hard weather as it had beene before, so that we might goe out of the doore to make cleane our Springes. The tenth it was faire weather with a North wind : then seuen of vs went to our ship well armed, which Io we found in the same state wee lest it in, and in it wee saw many footsteps of Beares , both great Beares in the and small, whereby it seemed that there had beene more then one or two Beares therein; and ship, as we went under hatches, we ftrooke fire, and lighted a Candle, and found that the water was rifen a foot higher in the ship. The eleventh, it was faire weather, the wind North-east, and the cold began to be fomewhat leffe, fo that as then we were bold to goe out of the doores, and went about a quarter of a mile to a Hill, from thence we fetched certaine ftones, which we lave in the fire, therewith to warme vs in our Cabins.

The twelfth, it was cleare weather, the wind North-west: that evening it was very cleare. and the skie full of Starres, then wee tooke the height of Oculus Tauri, which is a bright and Oculus Tauri, well knowne Starre, and we found it to be eleuated about the Horizon 29. degrees and 54. mi-20 nutes, her declination being 14. degrees 54. minutes on the North fide of the Line. This declination being subtracted from the height aforesaid, then there rested 14. degrees, which subtra-Red from 90. degrees , then the height of the Pole was 76, degrees , and io by measuring the height of that Starre, and some others, wee gheffed that the Sunne was in the like height, and that we were there vnder 76. degrees, and rather higher then lower.

The thirteenth, it was faire still weather, the wind Westerly, and then wee perceined that day-light began more and more to encrease, and we went out and cast Bullets at the bale of the Flag-staffe, which before we could not see when it turned about. The fourteenth, it was faire weather and a cleare light, the wind Westerly, and that day we tooke a Foxe. The fifteenth, ao it was faire cleere weather, with a West wind, and axe of vs went abourd the ship, where wee found the Bolck-vanger (which the last time that we were in the ship, wee stucke in a hole in the fore decke, to take Foxes) pulled out of the hole and lay in the middle of the ship, and all torne in pieces by the Beares, as we perceived by their footsteps.

The fixteenth, it was faire weather, the wind Northerly, and then we went now and then out of the house to stretch out our joynts and our limbs with going and running, that we might not become lame, and about noone time we faw a cerraine redueffe in the shie, as a shew or mel- during blushed senger of the Sunne that began to come towards vs. The senenteenth, it was cleare weather to lie so long with a North wind, and then still more and more wee perceived that the Sunne began to come in bed. neerer vnto vs, for the day was somewhat warmer, so that when we had a good fire, there fell 40 great pieces of Ice downe from the walls of our house, and the Ice melted in our Cabins, and the Cold releases water dropped downe, which was not so before, how great soeuer our fire was; but that night it was cold againe.

The eighteenth, it was faire cleare weather, with a South-east wind, then our Wood began to confume, and fo we agreed to burne fome of our Sea-coles, and not to ftop vp the Chimney, and then we should not need to feare any hurt, which we did, and found no disease thereby, but we thought it better for vato keepe the Coles, and to burne our Wood more sparingly, for that the Coles would ferue vs better when we should fayle home in our open Scute.

The one and twentieth, it was faire weather, with a West wind: at that time taking of Foxes began to fayle vs, which was a figne that the Beares would come againe, as not long after we found it to be true, for as long as the Beares stay away, the Foxes came abroad, and not

much before the Beares come abroad, the Foxes were but little seene.

The two and twentieth, it was faire weather with a West wind : then we went out againe to cast the Bullet, and perceived that day-light began to appeare, whereby some of vs said, that the Sunne would foone appeare vnto vs, but William Barents to the contrary faid, that it was yet two weekes too soone. The three and twentieth, it was faire calme weather, with a Southwest wind : then foure of vs went to the ship, and comforted each other , giving God thankes that the hardest time of the Winter was past, being in good hope that we should live to talke of those things at home in our owne Countrey : and when we were in the ship, we found that the water role higher and higher in it, and so each of vs taking a Bisket or two with vs, wee went

The foure and twentieth, it was faire cleare weather, with a West wind : then I, and I acob Heemikerke, and another with vs went to the Sea-fide, on the South fide of None Zembla, where contrary to our expectation, I first faw the edge of the Sunne, wherewith wee went speedily Sunne appeahome againe, to tell William Barents, and the rest of our companions that toyfull newes : but

William Barents being a wife and well experienced Pilot, would not believe it, efterming it to be about fourteene dayes to foone for the Sunne to finne in that part of the World; but we exnessly affirmed the contrarie, and said, that we had seene the Sunne.

ftrange, and contriry to all learned mens

Opinions.

The flue and twentieth, and fixe and twentieth, it was mifty, and close weather, so that wee And not see any thing: then they that layed the contrary wag-r with vs. thought that they had won: but vpon the feuen and twentieth day it was cleare weather, and then wee faw the Sunne in his full roundnesse about the Horizon, whereby it manitefly appeared that wee had feene it upon the foure and twentieth day of Ianuary. And as we were of divers opinions toching the same, and that wee said, it was cleane contrary to the opinions of all old and new which they ching the fame, and that wee taid, it was cleare conducty of the openious of an out and new had loft the 4. Writers; yea, and contrary to the nature and roundnesses both of Heaten and Earth; fome of vs 10 Writers; yea, and contrary to the manufacture of day, that it is light be that we had curiflept our of southware 1210, that terming in tong time there are a second to day, that the property of the second the second that the second the second that the second them againe these, where we will referre that to his almightic power, and leanest vinto others to you the 14 of userius in an ins worker, we will all thinks we to be in doubt thereof, if wee thould let this pate dipute of our for that no man man and the we will make fome declaration thereof, whereby we may without diffourfing upon it, therefore we will make fome declaration thereof, whereby we may affure our felues that we kept good reckoning.

You must vinderstand, that when we first saw the Sun, it was in the fit degr. and 25. min, of Aquarius, and it should have staid according to our first ghesting, till it had entred into the 16.deg. and 27. min. of Aquarius, before he should have shewed there vnto vs, in the height of 76.deg. Which we ftriuing and contending about it amongft our felies, could not be fatisfied, bit won. 20 dred thereat, and some amongst vs were of opinion, that we had mistaken our selues, which neuer held fie we could not be perfuaded vnto, for that every day without fayle, wee noted what had pait, and also had vied our Clocke continually, and when that was frozen, wee vied our Houre-glasse of twelue houres long, whereupon wee argued with our felues, in divers wise, to know how we should finde out that difference, and leaue the trueth of the time, which to trie, know now we ment more out that under the fall of the f yeeres of our Lord 1 589 till A. 1600, and we found therein, that vpon the foure and twentieth day of Ianuary, (when the Sun first appeared vnto vs) that at Venice the Clocke being one in the night time, the Moone and Ispiter were in conjunction, whereupon we fought to know when the same conjunction should be ouer or about the house where wee then were, and at last wee 30 found that the foure and twentieth day of January was the same day whereon the commodion Difference of aforesaid happened in Venice, at one of the clocke in the night, and with vs in the morning, when the Sunne was in the East: for we faw manifestly that the two Planets aforesaid approached neere vnto each other, vntill such time as the Moone and Impuer flood one unit ouer the other, both in the figne of Tourse, and that was at fixe of the clocke in the morning, at which time the Moone and Impiter were found by our Compasse, to be in conjunction over our house, in the North and by East point, and the South part of the Compasse was South South-west, and there we had it right South, the Moone being eight dayes old, whereby it appeareth, that the

tring place.

Sunne and the Moone were eight points different, and this was about fixe of the clockein the morning: this place differeth from Venice fine houres in longitude, whereby we may gheffe how 40 much we were neerer East then the Citie of Venice, which was five houres, each houre being 15. degrees, which is in all 75. degrees, that we were more Easterly then Venice, by all which it is manifefly to be seene, that wee had not sayled in our account, and that also wee had found our right longitude, by the two Planets aforefaid, for the Towne of Venice lieth under 37. degrees and 25. minutes in longitude, and her declination is 46. degrees and 5. minutes, whereby it followeth that our place of Nona Zembla, lieth under 112. degrees and 25. minutes in longitude, and the height of the Pole 76 degrees, and so you have the right longitude and latitude but from the vetermost point of Nona Zembla to the point of Cape de Tahm, the vetermost point of Tartaria, where it windeth Southward, the longitude differeth 60. degrees; but you must vis-Note for deg derstand, that the degrees are not so great as they are vinder the Equinoctiall Line, for right vin- 50 der the Line a degree is fifteene mikes, but when you lease the Line, either Northward or Southward, then the degrees in longitude doe leffen, so that the neerer that a man is to the North or South Pole, so much the degrees are lesse: so that under the 75. degrees Northward, where we wintred, the degrees are but three miles and two third pares; whereby it is to be marked, that we had but 60. degrees to faile to the faid Cape de Tabin, which is, 220. miles, so the said Cape lieth in 172, degrees in long tude as it is thought; and being aboue it, it feemeth that we should be in the Streight of Anian, where we may fayle boldly into the South, as the Land reacheth. Now what further instructions are to be had to know, where wee lost the Sunne under the said 76. degrees upon the fourth of November, and faw it againe upon the foure and twentieth of January: I leaue that to be described, by such as make profession thereos, it sufficeth vs to have 60 shewed, that it failed vs not to appeare at the ordinary time.

The fine and twentieth of Ianuary, it was darke cloudy weather, the wind Westerly, so that Beatersetums the feeing of the Sunne the day before, was againe doubted of, and then many wagers were with the Sun. layd, and we fill looked out to fee if the Sunne appeared, the fame day we faw a Beare, (which as long as the Sunne appeared not vnto vs we faw not) comming out of the South-west towards our house, but when we shouted at her she came no neerer, but went away again. The six & twen rieth, it was faire cleare weather, but in the Hor zon there hung a white or darke cloude, whereby we could not see the Sunne, vvhereupon the rest of our companions, thought that we had mistaken our selues vpon the source and twentieth day, and that the Sunne appeared not vnto vs. and mocked vs, but vve were resolute in our former affirmation, that vve had seene the Sunne, but not in the full roundnesse: That Ecuening the Sicke man that was amongst vs, was very Sicke man vyeake, and felt himfelfe to bee extreame ficke, for he had layne long time, and vve comforted decidhim as well as vve might, and gaue him the best admonition that vve could, but hee dyed not

to long after midnight. The twentie feuen it was faire cleare weather, with a South-west wind, then in the morning we digged a hole in the snow hard by the house, but it was still so extreame cold, that we could not flay long at worke, and so wee digged by turnes, every man a little while, and then went to the fire, and another went and supplied his place, till at last wee digged seven foot depth where wee went to burie the dead man, after that when we had read certaine Chapters, and fung some Pfalmes, wee all went out and buried the man, which done we went in and brake our fafts, and while we were at meate, and discoursed amongst our selues, touching the great quantitie of snow that continually fell in that place, wee faid that if it fell out, that our house should bee closed vo againe with fnow, wee would finde the meanes to climbe out at the chimney, whereupon our 20 Maiter went to trie if hee could climbe vp through the chimney, and fo get out, and while hee

was climbing one of our men went forth of the doore, to fee if the Mafter were out or not, who The Summete ftanding upon the fnow, faw the Sunne, and called vs all out, wherewith we all went forth, and faw the Sun in his full roundnesse, a little aboue the Horizon, and then it was without all doubt. that wee had seene the Sunne vpon the foure and twentieth of Ianuary, which made vs all glad, and we gaue God heartie thankes, for his grace shewed vnto vs, that that glorious light appeared

vnto vs againe.

The eight and twentieth, it was faire weather, with a West wind, then we went out many times to exercise our relues, by going, running, casting of the ball, (for then we might see a good way from vs) and to refresh our joynes, for wee had long time fitten dull, whereby many of vs 20 were very loofe. The mine and twentieth, it was foule weather, with great flore of fnow, the wind North-west, whereby the house was closed up againe with snow. The thirtieth, it was darke weather, with an East wind; and we made a hole through the doore, but wee shouled not the snow very farre from the portall, for that as soone as we saw what weather it was, wee had no defire to goe abroad. The one and thirtieth, it was faire calme weather, with an East wind, then we made the doore cleane, and shoulled away the snow, and threw it voon the house, and went out, and wee faw the Sunne shine cleere, which comforted vs, meane time we faw a Beare, Beare, that came towards our house, but wee went foftly in, and watched for her till shee came neerer, and as soone as she was hard by we shot at her, but she ran away againe.

The first of February, being Candlemasse Eeue, it was boisterous weather, with a great storme, February, 40 and good store of snow, whereby the house was closed vp againe with snow, and we were constrained to stay within doors, the wind then being north-west. The second it was foule weather, and as then the Sunne had not rid vs of all the foule weather, whereby wee were somewhat difcomforted, for that being in good hope of better weather wee had not made so great prouision of wood as we did before. The third, it was faire weather, with an East wind, but very mystie, whereby wee could not fee the Sunne, which made vs tomewhat melancholy, to fee fo great a myst, and rather more then we had had in the Winter time, and then we digged our doore open againe, and fetched the wood that lay without about the doore into the house, which we were forced with great paine and labour to dig out of the snow. The fourth, it was foule weather, with great flore of fnow, the wind being South-weft, and then wee were close vp againe with fnow, but then wee tooke not fo much paines as we did before, to dig open the doore, but when we had 50 occasion to goe out we climbed out at the chimney, and eased our selues, and went in againe the

The fifth, it was still foule weather, the wind being East, with great store of snow, whereby They go would wee were flut vp againe into the house, and had no other way to get out but by the chimney, at the chimand those that could not climbe out, were faine to helpe themselves within as well as they could. ney. The fixth, it was still foule stormy weather, with store of show, and we still went out at the chimney, (and troubled not our felues with the doore,) for some of vs made it an easie matter to climbe out at the chimney. The feuenth, it was still toule weather, with much snow, and a South-west wind, and we thereby forced to keep the house, which grieued vs more then when the Sun shined not, for that having feene it, and felt the heate thereof, yet wee were forced not to imov it. The eight, it began to be fairer weather the wind being South-west, then wee law the Sun rife South, South-east, and went downe South South-west, by the Compasse that we had made of Lead, and placed according to the Meridian of that place, but by our common Compaffe it differed two points. The ninth, it was faire cleere weather, the wind South, west, but as then wee could not

Heat of the Sunne

fee the Sunne, because it was close weather in the South , where the Sunne should goe downe, fee the sunne, occasion is was tione was in a most of the sunne, occasion and the sunner occasion is a sunner occasion. The tenth, it was faire cleare weather, so that wee could not tell where the wind blew, and then The tenth, it was saire cleare weather, to that the Ecurning it began to blow femewhat cold out we began to feele fome heat of the Sun, but in the Ecurning it began to blow femewhat cold out

The eleuenth, it was faire weather, the wind South, that day about noone, there came a Beare towards our house, and wee watched her with our Muskets, but shee came not so necreas wee could reach her, the same night wee heard some Foxes stirring, which since the Beares began to come abroad againe we had not much feene. The twelfth, it was cleere weather and very calme, the winde South-west, then we made our Traps cleane againe, meane-time there came a great the winde South-weit, men we made out it agoe in, and wee leuelled at her with our Muskets, 10 and as thee came right before our doore, we shot her into the brest, cleane through the heart, the bullet passing through her body, and went out againe at her tayle, and was as flatte as a Counter, the Beare feeling the blow, leapt backwards, and ranne twentie or thirtie foot from the house, and there lay downe, wherewith wee leapt all out of the house, and ranne to her, and found her fill aliue, and when the faw vs, thee rear'd vp her head, as if the would gladly have done vs fome mifchiefe, but we trufted her not, for that we had tryed their firength suffciently before, and therefore wee flot her twice into the body againe, and therewith fiee dyed ? Then we ript up her belly, and taking out her guttes, drew her home to the House where we flayed her, and tooke at terragen out belly, and taking out ner guttes, unevent and make the state of the st Greafe did vs great good feruice, for by that meanes we fill kept a Lampe burning all night 10 long, which before wee could not doe, for want of Greate, and enery man had meanes to burnea Lampe in his Cabbin, for such necessaries as hee had to doe. The Beares skinne vvas nine foe long, and feuen foot broad.

The thirteenth, it was faire cleere weather with a hard West winde, at whith time we had more light in our house by burning of Lampes, whereby we had meanes to passe the time away, by reading and other exercites, which before (when we could not diffinguish Day from Night, by reason of the darkenesse, and had not Lamps continually burning) were could not doe. The foureteenth, it was faire cleere weather, with a hard West wind before noone, but after noone, it was still weather, then fue of vs went to the Ship to see how it lay, and found the waterto increase in it, but not much. The fifteenth, it was foule weather, with a great storme out of the 30 South-west, with great store of Snow, whereby the House was closed up againe, that Night the Foxes came to denoure the dead body of the Beare, whereby we were in great feare, that all the Beares thereabouts would come thither, and therefore wee agreed, as foone as we could toget out of the honfe to burie the dead Beare deepe vnder the Snow.

The fixteenth of February, it was foule weather, with great store of Snow and a South-west wind, that day was Shroue-tuelday, then wee made our felues somewhat metric in our great griefe and trouble, and every one of vs dranke a draught of Wine.

The nineteenth, it was faire cleere v veather, with a South-west winde, then we tooke the height of the Sunne, which in long time before wee could not doe, because the Horizon was not cleere; as also for that it mounted not to high, nor gaue not so much shadow, as we were to 40 haue in our Astrolabinen, and therefore we made an Instrument that was halfe round, at the one end having 90. degrees marked thereon, vyhereon we hung a thread vyith a Plumet of Lead, as the water Compasses have, and therewith we tooke the height of the Sunne, when it was at the highest, and found that it was 3. degrees elevated about the Horizon, his Declination 11. degrees and 16. minutes, which being added to the height aforefayd, made 14. degrees and 16. minutes, which substracted from 90. degrees, there refted 75. degrees and 44. minutes for the height of the Pole, but the aforesayd 3 degrees of height, being taken at the lowest fide of the Sunne, the 16. minutes might well be added to the height of the Pole, and fo it was just 76. degrees, as we had measured it before. The twentieth, it was foule weather, with great store of Snow, the wind South-west, whereby we were shut wp againe in the house.

The two and twentieth, it was cleere faire vveather, with a South-west wind, then we made ready a Sled to fetch more Wood, for need compelled vs thereunto; for as they fay, hunger driveth the Wolfe out of his denne, and eleven of vs went together, all well appointed with our Armes, but comming to the place where we should have the Wood, we could not come by it, by reason it lay so deepe vnder the Snow, whereby of necessitie we were compelled to goe further, where with great labour and trouble we got some : but as vve returned backe againe therewith, it was fo fore labour vnto vs, that we were almost out of comfort, for that by reason of the long cold and trouble that we had indured, vve vvere become so vveake and feeble, that vve had little strength, and we began to bee in doubt, that we should not recour our strengths againe, and should not beable to fetch any more Wood, and so we should have dyed with cold, but the pre- 60 fent necessitie and the hope wee had of better weather, increased our forces, and made vs doe more then our ftrengths afforded, and when we came neere to our house, we saw much open vvater in the Sea, which in long time we had not feene, which also put vs in good comfort, that things would bee better.

CHAP. S.S. 2. Tartarian Sea. Shooes of Felt and Ruoge. Shooes fozen.

The fine and twentieth, it was foule weather againe, and much Snow, with a North winde. whereby we were closed vp with Snow againe, and could not get out of our House.

The eight and twentieth of February, it was still weather, with a South-west wind, then ten of vs went and fetched another Sled full of Wood, with no leffe paine and labour then wee did before, for one of our companions could not helpe vs, because that the first joyne of one of his great Toes was frozen off, and so her could doe nothing.

The first of March, it was faire still weather, the wind West but very cold, and we were forced March. to fore our Wood, because it was so great labour for ws to fetch it, so that when it was day, we exercifed our felues as much as we might, with running, going, and leaping, and to them that To lay in their Cabins, wee gaue hot stones to warme them, and towards night we made a good fire, which we were forced to endure. The second, it was cold cleere weather, with a West wind, the same day we tooke the height of the Sunne, and found that it was cleusted about the Horizon 6. degrees and 48. minutes, and his Declination was 7. degrees and 12. minutes, which Substracted from 90. degrees, refteth 76. degrees for the height of the Pole. The third, it was faire weather with a West wind, at which time our Sicke men were fornewhat better, and sate voright in their Cabins, to doe some thing to passe the time away, but after they found that they were too ready to flirre before their times. The fourth, it was faire weather, with a West wind. the same day there came a Bears to our House, whom we watcht with our Pieces, as wee did before and hot at her, and hit her, but thee runne away, at that time fine of vs went to our Ship, 20 where we found that the Beares had made worke, and had opened our Cookes cupbord, that was conered over with frow, thinking to finde fome thing in it, and had drawne it out of the Ship

The seventh, it was still soule weather and as great a winde, so that wee were that vp in our Note. House, and they that would goe out, must climbe up through the Chimney, which was a common thing with vs, and still we saw more open water in the Sea, and about the Land, whereby wee were in doubt that the Ship in that foule weather, and driving of the Ice, would be look (for as then the Ice draue) while we were flut vp in our Houfe, and wee fhould have no meanes to helpe it. The eight, it was still foule vveather, with a South-west storme, and great store of Snow, whereby we could fee no Ice in the North-eaft, nor round about in the Sea, whereby we 30 were of opinion, that North-east from vs there was a great Sea. The minth, it was foule vveather, but not fo forle as the day before, and leffe fnow, and then we could fee further from vs.and perceiue that the vvater vvas open in the North-east, but not from vs towards Tariaria, for there we could fill fee Ice in the Tartarian Sea, otherwise called the Ice Sea, so that we were of opinion, that there it was not very wide, for when it was cleere weather, we thought many times that wee faw the Land and thewed it to our companions, South and South-east from our house, like a hilly Land, as land commonly showeth it selfe, when we see it.

The eleventh, it was cold, but faire Sun-thine vventher, the wind North-east, then we tooks the height of the Sunne with our Aftrolabium, and found it to bee elevated about the Harizon 10. degrees and 19. minutes, his Declination was 3 degrees and 41. minutes, which being added 40 to the height aforelayd, made I 4. degrees, which substracted from 90. degrees, there resteth 76. degrees for the height of the Pole. Then twelve of vs went to the place where wee vied to goe. to fetch a Sled of Wood, but still we had more prine and labour therewith, because we were vveaker, and when we came home with it, and were very vvearie, we prayed the Mafter to give each of vs a draught of Wine, which hee did, vvherewith we were somewhat releeued and comforted, and after that were the willinger to labour, which was vnfupportable for vs. if meere extremitie had not compelled vs thereunto, faving oftentimes one vnto the other. That if the Wood yvere to be bought for Money, we would give all our Earnings or Wages for it.

The twelfth, it was foule weather, the Winde North-east, then the Ice came mightily denine in, which the South-west Wind had beene driven out, and it was then as cold, as it so had bin before in the coldeft time of Winter.

The fifteenth, it was faire weather, the Wind North, that day wee opened our doore to goe out, but the cold rather increased then diminished, and was bitterer then before it

The fixteenth, it was faire cleere weather, but extreame cold with a North Wind, which put vs to great extreamitie, for that vve had almost taken our leaves of the cold, and then it bee gan to come againe. his continued till the one and twentieth.

The one and twentieth, it was faire weather, but ftill very cold, the Wind North, the fame day the Sunne entred into Ares in the Equinoctiall Line, and at noone were tooke the beight of the Sunne, and found it to be eleuated 14. degrees about the Horizon, but for that the Sunne Salin dries. 60 was in the middle Line, and of the like distance from both the Tropickes, there was no declination, neither on the South nor North fide, and fo the 14. degrees aforefayd being fubftracted Shoots of Felt from 90, degrees, there refted 76, degrees for the height of the Pole. The fame day, we made and Rugge, shooes of Felt or Rugge, which we drew voon our feete, for vve could not goe in our shooes, by reason of the great cold, for the shooes on our feet were as hard as hornes, and then we fetcht a

Sled full of Wood home to our house, with fore and extreame labour, and with extremitien Sted that or wood nome to our name, which one and conference and which we indured, as if March means to bid vs farewell, for our hope and comfort was, cold writen we moured, as it means means to one was a length the firength thereof would that the cold could not fall continue in that force, but that at length the firength thereof would

ze Droken. The three and twentieth, it was very foule weather, with infernall bitter cold, the wind North-east, so that we were forced to make more fire, as we had beene at other times, forther North-eart, to that we were roced to make more rate, as we had seen at vener times, for then it was as cold as ener it had beene, and it froze very hard in the floore and voon the walls of our it was as cold as ever it had beene, and it stock very man a second and a Post size want of our house. The foure and twentieth, it was alike cold, with great flore of fnow, and a North wind, whereby we were once againe that up into the houfe, and then the Coles ferned us well, which whereby we were once against interpretable to them, we difficed of. The fixe and twentieth, it was fair to perore by reason of our pan vinig or chem, we digd our feliuss out of the house again, and went out, and cleare weather, and very calme, then we digd our feliuss out of the house again, and went out, and cleare weather, and very canne, then we are cold had made vs burne vp all that we had,

The eight and twentieth, it was faire weather, the wind South-west, whereby the Icedrave I ne eight and twentiering it was raife weekers, the writer Southin-well, while toy the Icedrane away very fail. The same day, fixe of vs went abound the ship to see how it lay, and found it away very rait. I ne same usy, the usy very specific account the map to see now it say, and tout fall in one fort; but we perceived that the Beares had kept an cuill fanoured house therein.

The fecond of Aprill, it was faire weather, the wind North-east and very calme, then we tooke the height of the Sunne, and found it to be eleuated about the Horizon 18. degrees and tooke the neighbor as the Sunney and Found to the Sunning and Foundation being 4. degrees and 40. minutes, which being fubfiracted from the 40. minutes, in accumation being 4. acgress and 40. minutes, which reing industracted from the height aforefaid, there refled 14. degrees, which taken from 90. degrees, the height of the Pole

Beare affaule

Aprill.

The fixt, it was still soule weather, with a sliffe North-west wind, that night there came a Beare to our house, and we did the best we could to shoot at her, but because it was mois we-Deare to our moute, and we do not we could not give fire, wherewith the Bearecame holdly to tuer, and the county, one and would not give me, where when the polar came bounty to ward the houle, and came downe the flaires dole to the doore, feeking to breake into the houle, but our Master held the doore fast to, and being in great haste and searc, could not barre it with the piece of Wood that wee vied thereunto; but the Beare feeing that the doore was flut, file went backe againe, and within two hourse after shee came againe, and went round about and when the top of the house, and made such a roaring, that it was fearfull to heare, and at last you the copy of the nouse, and made such works there, that wee thought she would have broken it downe, and tore the sayle that was made saft about it in many pieces, with a great and fearfull so noise, but for that it was night, we made no resistance against her, because wee could not see her, at laft the went away and left vs.

The fourteenth, it was faire cleare weather, with a West wind, then we saw greater hills of Ice round about the thip, then ever we had leene before, which was a fearefull thing to beheld, and much to be wondred at, that the ship was not smitten in pieces. The fifteenth, it was sure calme weather with a North wind, then feuen of vs went aboord the ship, to fee in what cale it was, and found it to be all in one fort, and as wee came backe againe, there came a great Bere toward vs. against whom we began to make defence, but she perceiving that, made away from vs. and we went to the place from whence shee came to see her Den, where we found a great hole made in the Ice, about a mans length in depth, the entrie the reof being very narrow, and with 40 in wide, there we thrust in our Pikes to feele if there was any thing within it, but perceiving it was empty, one of our men crept into it, but not too farre, for it was fearefull to behold, after that we went along by the Sea-fide, and there we faw, that in the end of March, and the beginning of Aprill, the Ice was in fuch wonderful manner rifen and piled up one upon the other, that it was wonderfull, in such manner as if there had beene whole Townes made of Ice, with Towres and Bulwarkes round about them.

The faxteenth, it was foule weather, the wind North-west, whereby the Ice began somewhat to breake. The lauenteenth, it was faire cleare weather, with a South-weft wind, and then feuen of vs went to the ship, and there we saw open water in the Sea, and then we went ouer the Ice-hills as well as we could, to the water, for in fixe or fever moneths we had not gone 50 fo neere vnto it, and when we got to the water, there we saw a little bird swimming therein, but as foone as it espied vs. it dired wider the water, which we tooke for a figne, that there was more open water in the Sea then there had beene before, and that the time approached that the

The eighteenth of Aprill, it was faire weather, the wind South-west, then wee tooke the height of the Sunne, and it was elevated above the Horizon 25. degrees and 10. minutes, his declination 11. degrees and 12. minutes, which being taken from the height aforefaid, there refled 13. degrees and 58. minutes, which fubitracted from 90. degrees, the height of the Pole was found to be 75, degrees \$8, minutes; then eleven of vs went with a Sled to ferchmore Wood, and brought it to the house, in the night there came another Beare upon our house, which so we hearing, went all out with our Armes, but the Beare ran away.

The eight and twentieth, it was faire weather, with a North wind, then we took the height of the Sume againe, and found it to bee eleuateed 28. degrees and 8. minutes, his declination 14. degrees and 8. minutes, which substracted from 90. degrees, there refled 76. degrees for the

CHAP.S.S.2. Their many dangers by Beares, Ice, Famine, Scorbute.

height of the Pole. The nine and twentieth, it was faire weather, with a South-west wind. then we played at Colfe, both to the ship, and from thence agains homewards, to exercise our felues. The thirtieth, it was faire weather, the wind South-welt, then in the night wee could fee the Sunne in the North (when it was in the highest) iust about the Horizon, so that from that time wee faw the Sunne both night and day.

ð. ÍII.

Their preparation to goe from thence : they depart in a Boat and Scute both open. and come to Cola, 1143. miles. Their many dangers by Beares, Ice, Famine, Scorbute, in the way.

He first of May, it was faire weather with a West wind, then wee sod our last flesh, May, which for a long time we had spared, and it was still very good, and the last morfell tafted as well as the first, and we found no fault therein , but onely that it would last no longer. The second, it was foule weather, with a storme out of the South-west. whereby the Sea was almost cleare of Ice, and then wee beganne to speake about getting from thence, for we had kept house long enough there. The third, it was still foule weather, with a 20 South-west wind, whereby the Ice began wholly to drive away, but it lay fast about the ship, and when our best meate, as fielh, and other things beganne to faile vs, which was our greatest full enance, and that it behooved vs to be somewhat strong, to sustaine the labour that wee were to vindergoe, when we went from thence, the Master shared the rest of the Bacon amongst vs. which was a small Barrell with salt Bacon in pickle, whereof every one of vs had two ounces a day, which continued for the space of three weekes, and then it was eaten yo.

The fourth, it was indifferent faire weather, the wind South-west, that day five of vs went to the ship, and found it lying still as fast in the Ice as it did before, for about the middle of March it was but feuenty fine paces from the open water, and then it was fine hundred paces from the water, and enclosed round about with high hills of Ice, which put vs in no small feare, 20 how wee should bring our Scute and our Boat through or ouer that way into the water, when wee went to leave that place. That night there came a Beare to our house, but as soone as shee heard vs make a novie, the ranne away againe, one of our men that climbed vp in the Chimney, faw when shee ranne away, so that it seemed that as then they were afraid of vs, and durst not bee so bold to set vpon vs, as they were at the first. The fift, it was faire weather, with fome fnow, the wind East, that Ecuening, and at night wee faw the Sunne when it was at the lowest , a good way about the Earth. The fixt, it was faire cleare weather, with a great Southwest wind, whereby we saw the Sea open both in the East and in the West, which made our men exceeding glad, longing fore to be gone from thence. The feuenth, it was foule weather, and fnew hard, with a North wind, whereby we were closed up againe in our house.

40 The tenth, it was faire weather with a North-west wind, that night the Sunne by our common Compaffe being North North-east, and at the lowest, we tooke the height thereof, and it was elevated 3. degrees and 45. minutes, his declination was 17. degrees and 45. minutes, from whence taking the height aforefaid, there refted 14. degrees, which fubitracted from 90. degrees, there rested 76. degrees for the height of the Pole.

The fourteenth, wee fetcht our last Sled with fire-wood, and still ware our shooes made of Rugge on our feet.

The fine and twentieth, it was faire weather, with an East wind, then at noone time wee tooke the height of the Sunne, that was eleuated about the Horizon 34. degrees and 46. minutes, his declination 20. degrees and 46. minutes, which taken from the height aforefaid, there refted 14. degrees, which taken from 90. degrees, refted 76. degrees for the height of the Pole. 50 The fixe and twentieth, it was faire weather, with a great North-east wind, whereby the Ice

came in againe. The feuen and twentieth, it was foule weather, with a great North-east wind, which draue the Ice mightily in againe, whereupon the Master, at the motion of the companie, willed vs to make preparation to be gone.

The nine and twentieth in the morning, it was reasonable faire weather, with a West wind, then ten of vs went vnto the Scute to bring it to the house to dresse it, and make it ready to fayle, but wee found it deepe hidden under the fnow, and were fayne with great payne and labour to digge it out, but when wee had gotten it out of the snow, and thought to draw it to the house, wee could not doe it; because wee were too weake, wherewith wee became wholgo ly out of heart, doubting that wee should not bee able to goe forward with our labour, but the Master encouraging vs , bade vs strine to doe more then wee were able ; saying , that both our lines and our well-fare confifted therein: and that if wee could not get the Scute from thence, and make it ready, then heefaid wee must dwell there as Burgers of Nona Zembla, and Burgers of No. make our Graues in that place: but there wanted no good-will in vs but onely strength, ua Zembla.

Bucke.

Beares Liner

venomous.

Inne.

which made vs for that time to leaue off worke and let the Scute lie ftill, which was no small griefe vnto vs, and trouble to thinke what were best for vs to doe; but after noone being thus comfortlesse come home, wee tooke hearts againe, and determined to turne the Boat that lav by the house with her keele vowards, and to amend it, that it might bee the fitter to carrie ve ouer the Sea, for wee made full account that we had a long troublesome Voyage in hand, where in wee might have many croffes, and wherein wee should not bee sufficiently provided for all things necessarie, although wee tooke neuer so much care, and while wee were busie about our worke, there came a great Beare vnto vs, wherewith wee went into our house, and flood to watch her in our three doores, with Harquebusses, and one stood in the Chimney with a Musket, this Beare came boldlier vnto vs then euer any had done before, for shee came to the nea- 10 ther ften that went to one of our doores, and the man that ftood in the doore faw her not because hee looked towards the other doore, but they that stood within saw her, and in great feare called to him, wherewith he turned about, and although he was in a maze, he shot ather and the Bullet past cleane through her body, whereupon she ranne away. Yet it was a feartful thing to fee, for the Beare was almost vpon him before hee saw her, so that if the Peece had fayled to give fire (as oftentimes they doe) it had coft him his life, and it may bee, that the Beare would have gotten into the house: the Beare being gone somewhat from the house lay downe, wherewith wee went all armed and killed her out right, and when wee had ript open her bellie: we found a piece of a Bucke therein, with haire, skinne and all, which not long before thee had torne and deuoured.

The one and thirtieth of May, it was faire weather, but somewhat colder then before, the wind being South-west, whereby the Ice draue away, and we wrought hard about our Boat, but when wee were in the chiefest part of worke, there came another Beare, as if they had finely that wee would be gone, and that therefore they defired to talte a piece of some of vs, for that was the third day, one after the other, that they fet so fiercely voon vs, so that wee were forced to leave our worke, and goe into the house, and shee followed vs, but we stood with our Peeces to watch her, and shot three Peeces at her, two from our doores, and one out of the Chimney. which all three hit her : but her death did vs more hurt then her life, for after we ript her belly, we dreft her Liner and eate it, which in the tafte liked vs well, but it made vs all ficke, specially three that were exceeding ficke, and wee verily thought that wee should have lost them, for all 30 their skins came off, from the foot to the head, but yet they recourred againe.

The third of Iune, in the morning it was faire cleare weather the wind West, and then wee were somewhat better, and tooke great paines with the Boat, that at last we got it ready, after we had wrought fixe dayes upon it : about evening it began to blow hard , and therewith the water was very open, which put vs in good comfort that our deliuerance would foone follow, and that we should once get out of that desolate and fearefull place.

The fourth, it was faire cleare weather, and indifferent warme, and about the South-east Sunne, eleuen of vs went to our Scute where it then lay, and drew it to the ship, at which time the labour feemed lighter unto vs then it did before, when wee tooke it in hand and were forced to leave it off againe. The reason thereof was, the opinion that wee had that the snow as 40 then lay harder upon the ground, and so was become stronger; and it may be that our courages were better, to fee that the time gane vs open water, and that our hope was that wee should get from thence; and fo three of our men stayed by the Scute to build her to our minds: and for that it was a Herring Scute, which are made narrow behind, therefore they fawed it off behind, and made it a broad stearne: and better to brooke the Seas, they built it also somewhat higher, and drest it vp as well as they could, the rest of our men were busie in the house to make all other things ready for our Voyage, and that day drew two Sleds with victuals and other goods vnto the ship, that lay about halfe way betweene the house and the open water, that after they might have fo much the shorter way, to carrie the goods unto the water side, when wee should goe away: at which time all the labour and paines that wee tooke seemed 50 light and easie vnto vs, because of the hope that wee had to get out of that wilde Desart, inkefome, fearefull, and cold Countrey.

The fift, it was foule weather, with great store of haile and snow, the wind West, which made an open water, but as then we could doe nothing without the house, but within we made all things ready, as Sayles, Oares, Masts, Sprit, Rother, Swerd, and all other necessarie things. The fixt, in the morning it was faire weather, the wind North-east, then wee went with our Carpenters to the ship, to build vp our Scute, and carried two sleds full of goods into the ship, both victuals and Merchandise, with other things, which wee meant to take with vs; after that there rofe very foule weather in the South-west, with snow, haile, and raine, which wee in long time had not had, whereby the Carpenters were forced to leave their worke, and goe home 60 to the house with vs, whereby also we could not be drie, because wee had taken of the Deales, therewith to amend our Boat and our Scute, there lay but a fayle ouer it, which would not hold out the water, and the way that lay full of fnow began to be foft, so that wee left off our shoots made of Rugge and Felt, and put on our Leather shooes.

The eight, it was faire weather, and wee drew the wares to the ship, which wee had packed and made ready, and the Carpenters made ready the Scure, so that the same evening it was almost done, the same day all our men went to draw our Boat to the ship, and made ropes to draw withall, fuch as wee vie to draw with in Scutes, which wee cast ouer our shoulders, and held fast with all our hands, and so drew both with our hands and our shoulders, which gave vs more force, and specially the desire and great pleasure wee tooke to worke at that time made vs ftronger.

The tenth, wee carried foure Sleds of goods into the ship, the wind then being variable, and at evening it was Northerly, and wee were busie in the house to make all things ready, the 10 Wine that was left we put into little veffels, that fo wee might divide it into both our veffels. and that as wee were enclosed by the Ice, (which wee well knew would happen vnto vs) wee might eafilier cast the goods upon the Ice, both out and into the Scutes, as time and place ferued vs. The eleuenth, it was foule weather, and it blew hard North North-west, so that all that day we could doe nothing, and we were in great feare left the storme would carrie the Ice and the ship both away together, (which might well have come to passe) then wee should have beene in greater milerie then euer wee were , for that our goods both victuals and others, were then all in the ship, but God prouided so well for vs. that it fell not out so vnfortunatly. The twelfth, it was indifferent faire weather, then we went with Hatchets, Halberds, Shouels, and other instruments, to make the way plaine, where we should draw the Scute and the Boat to 20 the water lide, along the way that lay full of knobs and hills of Ice, where wee wrought fore with our Hatchets and other instruments, and while we were in the chiefest of our worke, there came a great Jeane Beare out of the Sea vpon the Ice towards vs, which we judged to come out of Tartaria: for we had seene of them twenty or thirty miles within the Sea, and for that wee had no Muskets, but onely one, which our Surgeon carried, I ranne in great hafte towards the ship to fetch one or two, which the Beare perceiting ranne after mee, and was very likely to haue ouer taken me, but our companie seeing that , left their worke and ranne after her, which made the Beare turne towards them, and left me, but when the ran towards them, the was thor into the body by the Surgeon, and ranne away; but because the Ice was so vneuen and hilly, she eculi not goe farre, but being by vs ouertaken, we killed her out right, and smote her teeth out Beare styre; 30 of her head, while the was yet living.

The thirteenth, it was faire weather, then the Master and the Carpenters went to the ship. and there made the Scute and the Boat ready, fo that there refted nothing as then, but onely to bring it downe to the water fide, the Mafter and those that were with him , seeing that it was open water, and a good West wind, came backe to the house againe, and there hee spake vnto William Barents (that had been elong ficke) and shewed him, that he thought it good, (seeing it They depairs Was a fit time) to goe from thence, and so willed the companie to drive the Boat and the Scute downe to the water fide, and in the name of God to beginne our Voyage, to fayle from None Zembla: then William Barents wrote a Letter, which he put in a Muskets charge, and hanged

it up in the Chimney, shewing how he came out of Holland, to sayle to the Kingdome of China, 40 and what had happened vnto vs being there on Land, with all our croffes, that if any man chanced to come thither, they might know what had happened vnto vs, and how we had beene forced in our extremitie to make that house, and had dwelt ten moneths therein, and for that wee were put to Sea in two small open Boats, and to vndertake a dangerous and aduenturous Voyage in hand, the Master wrote two Letters, which most of vs subscribed vnto, signifying how wee had flayed there vpon the Land in great trouble and miserie, in hope that our ship would bee freed from the Ice, and that we should sayle away with it againe, and how it fell out to the contrary, and that the ship lay fast in the Ice, so that in the end the time passing away, and our vi-Stuals beginning to faile vs, we were forced for the fauing of our owne lines, to leave the ship, and to fayle away in our open Boats, and so to commit our selues into the hands of God. Which 50 done, he put into each of our Scutes a Letter, that if wee chanced to lofe one another, or that

by fformes or any other misaduenture we happened to be cast away, that then by the Scute that escaped, men might know how we left each other, and so having finished all things as we determined, we drew the Boat to the water fide, and left a man in it, and went and fetcht the Scute, and after that eleuen Sleds with goods, as Victuals, with some Wine that yet remayned, and the Merchants goods, which we preferred as well as we could, vz. fixe packes with fine woollen Cloth, a Cheft of Linnen, two packets with Veluet, two small Chests with Money, two Dri-fats with mens Clothes and other things, thirteene Barrels of Bread, a Barrell of Cheefe, a flitch of Bacon, two Runlets of Oyle, fixe small Runlets of Wine, two Runlets of Vineger, with other packes belonging to the Saylers, fo that when they lay all together upon a heape, a 60 man would have judged that they would not have gone into the Scutes, which being all put into them, we went to the house, and first drew William Barens vpon a Sled to the place where our Scutes lay, and after that we fetcht Claes Adrian fon, both of them having beene long ficke, and so we entred into the Scutes, and divided our selves into each of them alike, and put into either of thema licke man, then the Mafter caufed both the Soutes to lie close one by the other,

The

The Letter is omitted. It

limfon, Peter liam Barents. Gerrat de Verr Leonard Hendrickfon, lacob Iohn(en Scheadam,lacob lohn-

and there we subscribed to the Letters which he had written, and so committing our selnes to and there we among the best of the wild, and an indifferent open water, we was subscribed fet fayle and put to Sea.

The fourteenth of June in the morning, the Sunne Easterly, wee put off from the Land of by 1000 1001.

Note Zembla, and the fast Ice thereunto adjoyning, with our Boat and our Scute, having a West. wind , and fayled East North-east all that day to the Ilands point , which was five miles, bet our first beginning was not very good, for we entred fast into the Ice agrine, which there lay very hard and falt, which put vs into no small feare and trouble, and being there, foure of vs went Canalylon, 10'm on Land, to know the fituation thereof, and there we tooke many Birds, which wee kild with

The fixteenth, we let sayle againe, and got to the Iland of Orange, with a South wind which 10 is eight miles distant from the Point of Defire, there we went on Land with two small Barrels. and a Kettle, to melt snow, and to put the water into the Barrels, as also to seeke for Birds and Egges, to make meate for our ficke men. We put to the Sea againe with a South-east wind and drowlie miseling weather, whereby we were all dankish and wet, for wee had no shelter in our open Scutes, and fayled West, and West and by South, to the Ice-point, and wee made our Scutes fast to a great piece of Ice, and there eate somewhat, but the weather was still souler and souler. to that we were once againe enclosed with Ice, and forced to flay there.

The seventeenth in the morning, when we had broken our fasts, the Ice came so fast vpon vs that it made our haires stare vpright vpon our heads, it was so fearefull to behold: by which 20 meanes we could not make fast our Scutes, so that we thought verily that it was a fore-shewing of our last end, for wee draue away so hard with the Ice, and were so fore prest betweene a flake of Ice, that we thought verily the Scutes would burft in a hundred pieces, at laft, being in this discomfort, and extreme necessitie, the Master said, if we could take hold with a rope vpon the fast Ice, we might therewith draw the Scute vp, and so get it out of the great drift of Ice, but as this counsell was good, yet it was so full of danger, that it was the hazard of his life that should take voon him to doe it, and without doing it, was it most certaine, that it would cost vs all our lives: this counfell as I faid was good, but no man (like to the tale of the Mice) durft hang the Bell about the Cats necke, fearing to bee drowned, yet necessitie required to have it done, and the most danger made vs choose the least, so that being in that perplexitie, I being 30 Dangerous at- the lightest of all our companie, tooke on me to fasten a rope vpon the fast ice, and so creeping from one piece of driving Ice to another, by Gods helpe got to the fast Ice, where I made a tope fast to a high howell, and they that were in the Scute, drew it thereby vnto the faid fast Ice, and then one man alone could draw more then all of them could have done before, and when we had gotten thither, in all hafte wee tooke our ficke men out, and layed them voon the Ice, laying clothes and other things under them, and then tookeall our goods out of the Scutes, and fo drew them upon the Ice, whereby for that time we were delinered from that great danger, amaking account that we had escaped out of deaths clawes, as it was most true.

The eighteenth, we repaired and amended our Scutes againe, being much bruifed and crushed with the racking of the Ice, and were forced to drive all the nayles fast againe and to piece ma-40 ny things about them. God fending vs Wood, wherewith we molt our Pitch, and did all other things that belonged thereunto, that done, some of vs went vpon the Land to seeke for Egges, which the ficke men longed for, but we could finde none, but we found foure Birds, not without great danger of our lines, betweene the Ice and the firme Land, wherein wee often fell, and were in no small danger.

The nineteenth, it was indifferent weather, the wind North-west, and West South-west, but we wereftill shut up in the Ice, and saw no opening, which made us thinke that there would be our last abode, and that we should neuer get from thence.

The twentieth, Claes Adrianson and William Barents died, the death of William Barents put vs in no small discomfort, as being the chiefe Guide, and onely Pilot on whom wee reposed our 50

The two and twentieth in the morning, it blew a good gale out of the South-eaft, and then the Sea was reasonable open, but we were forced to draw our Scutes ouer the Ice to get vnto it, which was great paine and labour vnto vs; for, first we were forced to draw our Scutes ouer a piece of Ice of fifty paces long, and there put them into the water, and then againe to draw them Vp vpon other Ice, and after drew them at the least an hundred paces more over the Ice, before we could bring them to a good place where we might easily get out, and being gotten vnto the open water we committed our selues to God, and set sayle the Sun being about East North-east, with an indifferent gale of wind out of the South, and South South-east, and sayled West, and Eficioled again West and by South, till the Sunne was South, and then we were round about enclosed with Ice 69 againe, and could not get out, but were forced to lie still, but not long after the Ice opened againe like to a fluce, and we past through it and set sayle againe, and so sayled along by the Land, but were presently encloted with Ice, but being in hope of opening againe, meane time weecate Somewhat, for the Ice went not away as it did before : after that wee vied all the meanes wee

W. Barents

could to breake it, but all in vayne, and yet a good while after, the Ice opened againe, and we got out, and fayled along by the Land, West and by South, with a South wind.

The three and twentieth, wee fayled still forward West and by South, till the Sunne was South-east, and got to the Trust-point, which is distant from the les-point five and twentie miles, Trust-point, and then could goe no furtheer, because the Ice lay so hard and so close together, and yet it was faire weather : the same day we tooke the height of the Sunne with the Astrolabium, and also with our Astronomicall Ring, and found his height to be 37.degrees, and his Declination 23.degrees and 30 minutes, which taken from the height aforefayd; there refted 13. degrees and 20. minutes, which substracted out of 90, degrees, the height of the Pole was 76, degrees and 20, min nutes, and it was faire Sun-thine weather, and yet it was not fo ftrong as to melt the Snow than we might have water to drinke, fo that wee fet all our Tinne platters and other things full of Extreame cold Snow to melt, and so molt it, and put snow in our mouthes, to mele it downe into our throates, but all was not enough, to that we were compelled to endure great thirly

TRom the Low-land, to the Streame Bay, the course East and West, fouremiles. From the Streame The streeting Bay, to the Ice-hauen point, the course East and by North, soure miles. From the Ice-hauen point, of the Land to the llands point, the course East North-east, fine miles. From the llands point, to the Flishingers itomich house pount, the course North-east and by Fast shows miles. From the Blothingers to the Flishingers where we winpoint, the course North-east and by East, three miles. From the Flushingers point, to the Head point, tred, sloughy the course North east, foure miles. From the Head point, to the point of Delite, the course South and the North ide North, fixemiles. From the point of Defite, to the Hand of Orange, North-well, eight miles. From of Note Zemthe llands of Orange, to the Ice point, the courfe Well, and Well and by South, fine miles. From the Ice bia, to the point, to the point of Truit, the course West and by South, fine and truentic miles. From the paint of West and true to Naslawes noint the course west and west and hand to the name of West and the Name to the same of West and the Name to the same of West and the Name to the name of the same of West and the Name to the name of the same of th point, to the point of I ture, not considering and on some, now much must, error too yang of My-gate, where Truit, to Naslawes point, the considering, and well and by North, iten mides! From the Naslaw point, we past out to tothe East end of the Crostic land, the considering and by North, sight miles. From the East end of the the Coasto. Croffe Iland, to Williams Iland, the course West and by South, three miles. From Williams Iland, to Ruffe, and ones the Blacke point, the course West South-west, fixe miles. From the Blacke point; to the East and of the the entire Sea Admirable Hand, the courfe West South west, fenew miles. From the East to the West point of the Ad- to Cola, accormirable Iland, the course West South-west, fine miles. From the West point of the Admirable Iland, ding to the to Cape Planto, the cour se South-weit and by West, ten miles. From Cape de Planto, to Lombi-bay, Card hereine to the confe felling, occum je Sunt owners some yet et a sun man a compared in mino, se Lomos-cuty, the state confe fell South ones, jepts miles. From Lomb Labbyye but States point, the comfe well South limits well, ten miles. From the States point, to Langehelle, the confe South well and by South fourteen miles. From Langeneffe, to Cape de Cant, the county South-west and by South, fixe miles. From Cape de Cant, to the point with the Blacke thifus, the comile South and by West, foure miles. From the point with the Blacke clifts, to the Blacke Hand, the course South South east, three miles, From the Blacke Iland, to Conflint-farke, the course East and West, two miles : From Conflint-farke, to the Croffe

point, the course South South-east, fine miles, From Croffe point, to Saint Laurence Bay, the course South South-east, fixe miles. From Saint Lautence Bay, to Mel-haven; the courfe South-east, fixe miles. From Mel-hauen to the swo Hands, the courfe South South coff, fixe miles. From the two I. lands, where we croft over to the Ruffia Couft, to the Ilands of Marfice with Delgov. the courfe South-40 west, thirtie miles. From Matthoc and Delgoy, to the Greeke where we fayled the compasser round about. and came to the same place againe, two and twentie miles. From that Creeke to Colgoy, the course west North-west, eighteenemiles. From Colgoy, to the East point of Camdenas, the course West Northwest, twentie miles. From the East point of Camdenas, to the West file of the White Sea, the course Well North-west, fortie miles. From the West point of the White Sea, to the fenen Hands, the course North-west foureteene miles. From the senen Hands, to the VVest und of Kilduin, the course Northwest, swentie miles. From the V Vest end of Kilduin, to the place where John Cornelis came unto us, the course North west and by VVest Seuen miles. From themee to Cola, the course VVest Southers,

So that wee sayled in the two open Scutes, sometimes in the Ice, then oner the Ice, and through the 50 Sea, three hundred and cightie one miles Flemith, which is one thou fand one hundred fortje and three

The foure and twentieth of Iune, the Sunne being Easterly, we rowed heere and there in the Ice, to fee where we might best goe out, but wee saw no opening, but when the Sunne was South, we got into the Sea, for the which we thanked God most heartily, that hee had sent vs an vnexpected opening, and then we fayled with an East winde, and went luftily forward, fo that we made our account to get about the point of Nassauss close by the land, and wee could easily see the point of Nassawes, and made our account to bee about three miles from it.

The fixe and twentieth, it still blew hard out of the South, and broke the Ice whereunto we were fast in pieces, and we thereby draue into the Sea, and could get no more to the fast Ice, 60 whereby we were in a thousand dangers to bee all cast away, and driving in that fort in the Sea, wee rowed as much as we could, but we could not get neere vnto the Land, therefore we hovfed vp our Focke, and so made vp with our sayle, but our Fock-mast brake twice in peeces, and then it was worfe for vs then before, and not with flanding that there blew a great gale of Wind, yet we were forced to hoyfe vp our great Sayle, but the winde blew fo hard into it, that if wee

SII

had not prefently taken it in againe, we had funke in the Sea, or elfe our Boate would have been filled with water, for the water began to leape ouer-boord, and wee were a good way in the Sea, at which time the wauer went fo hollow, that it was most fearefull, and wee thereby faw nothing but death beforeoureyes, and every twinckling of an eye looked when wee should inke-But God that had delinered we cut of fo many dangers of Death, holpe we once againe, and contrary to our expectations, tent vs a North-west wind, and so with great danger wee got to the fast Ice againe, when we were deliuered out of that danger, and knew not where our other Sure was, wee fayled one mile along by the fast Ice, but found it not, whereby we were wholly our of heart, and in great feare that they were drowned, at which time it was mystic weather, and fo fayling along, and hearing no newes of our other Scure, we shot off a Musket, which they hesring shot off another, but yet we could not see each other, meane time approching necess to each other, and the weather waxing somewhat cleerer, as wee and they shot once againe, we say the smoake of their Piece, and at last we met together againe, and saw them lye fast, betweene drining and fast Ice, and when we got neere vnto them, we went ouer the Ice, and holpe them to wnlade the goods out of their Scute, and drew it ouer the Ice, and with much paine and trouble brought it into the open water againe, and while they were fast in the Ice, wee found fome Wood voon the Land by the Sea fide, and when we lay by each other, we fod some Bread and Water together, and eat it vp warme, which did vs much good.

The eight and twentieth, when the Sunne was in the East, wee layd all our goods vpon the Ice, and then drew the Scutes vpon the Ice also, because we were so hardly prest on all sides, with an the Ice, and the wind came out of the Sea vpon the Land, and therefore were were in feare to be wholly inclosed with the Ice, and should not be able to get out thereof againe, and being you the Ice, we layd fayles ouer our Scutes, and lay downe to rest, appointing one of our men to keepe watch, and when the Sunne was North, there came three Beares towards our Scutes, where-Three Beares, with hee that kept the Watch cryed, three Beares, three Beares, at which novie wee leapt out of our Boates with our Muskets, that were laden with hayle-shot to shoote at Birds, and had no time to discharge them, and therefore shot at them therewith, and although that kinde of shot could not hart them much, yet they ranne away, and in the meane time they gave vs leafore to lade our Muskets with bullets, and by that meanes wee that one of the three dead. which the other two perceiuing ranne away, but within two houres after they came againe, but when they 30 were almost at vs and heard vs.make a noyse, they ranne away, at which time the winds was Well, and Well and by North, which made the leaf three with great force into the East.

The nine and twentieth of Iune, the Sunne being South South well, the two Beares cameagaine to the place where the deal Beare lay, where one of them tooke the dead Beare in his

One Beare

mouth, and went a great way with it oues the nigged Ice, and then began to eate it, which we mouth and ear perceiuing fhot a Musket at her, but she hearing the neyfe thereof ranne away, and let the dead Beare lye, then foure of vs went thither, and faw that in so hort time the had eaten almost the halie of her, we tooke the dead Beare and layd it upon a high heape of Ice, that we might fee it out of our Scute, that if the Beare came againe we might shoot at her, at which time we try-Strong Beare. ed the great Arength of the Beare, that carryed the dead Beare as lightly in her mouth, as if 40 it had beene nothing, whereas wee foure had enough to doe to carry away the halfe dead Beare

The first of July, it was indifferent faire vveather, with a West North-west wind, and in the Morning the Sunne being East, there came a Beare from the driving Ice towards vs, and fwam ouer the water to the fast Ice whereon we by, but when she heard ve, she came no neerer but rm away, and when the Sunne was South-east, the Ice came so fast in towards vs. that all the Ice whereon we lay with our Scutes and our goods, brake and ran one peece voon another, whereby we were in no small feare, for at that time most of our goods fell into the water, but wee with great diligence drew our Scutes further vpon the Ice towards the Land, where we thought to be better defended from the driving of the Ice, and as we went to tetch our goods, we fell into the greatest trouble that ever we had before, for that wee endured so great danger in the saving thereof, that as we layd hold vpon one peece thereof, the reft funke downe with the Ice, and many times the Ice brake vader our owne feete, vyhereby we were wholly difcomforted, and in a manner cleane out of all hope, expecting no iffue thereof, in such fort that our trouble at that time firmounted all our former cares and impeachments, and when wee thought to draw vp our Boates upon the Ice, the Ice brake under vs, and we were carryed away with the Scute, and all by the driving Ice, and when we thought to faue the goods, the Ice brake under our feet, and with that the Scute brake in many places, especially that which wee had mended, as the Malt, the mast planke, and almost all the Scute, wherein one of our men that vvas ficke, and a Cheft of money lay, which we with great danger of our lives got out from it for as we were doing it, the 60 Ice that was under our feet draue from vs, and flid vpon other Ice, vvhereby we were indanger to built both our armes and our legges, at which time, thinking that wee had beene cleane quit of our Scute, we beheld each other in pittifull manner, knowing not what we should doe, our lines depending thereon, but God made so good pronision for vs, that the peeces of Ice draws from

each other, wherewith we ranne in great hafte vnto the Scute, and draw it to vs againe in such case as it was, and laid it woon the fait Ice by the Boate, where it was in more fecuritie, which put vs vnto an exceeding and great and dangerous labour, from the time that the Sumne was South-east, vntill it was West South-west, and in all that time wee rested not, which made vs extreame wearie, and wholy out of comfort, for that it troubled ve fore, and it was much more fearefull wnto ve, then at that time when William Barents dyed, for there we were almost drown ned, and that day we lott (which was funke in the Sea) two Barrels of Bread, a Chift with Linnen-Cloth, a Dry Fat with the Saylors Clothes, our Aftronomical Ring, a packe of Scarler Cloth, 2 Rundlet of Oyle, and some Cheetes, and a Rundlet of Wine, which bouged with the To ke fo that there was not any thing thereof faued.

The fourth, it was fo faire cleere weather, that from the time we were first in None Zemble. we had not the like. The fifth, it was faire weather, the Wind West, South-west, the same day

dyed lobe Branfon of Harlem.

The fewenth, it was faire weather with some Raine, the Winde West, South-west, and at Etiening VVeft, and by North, then we went to the open water, and there killed thirteene Birds. which we tooke vpon a piece of driving Ice, and laid them vpon the fast Ice.

The minth, in the morning, the Ice began to drive, whereby we got open water on the Land fide, and then also the fast Ice whereon we lay, beganne to drive whereupon the Master and the men went to fetch the Packe and the Chift, that flood wpon the Ice; to put them into the Scute, 20 and then drew the Scutes to the water, at least three hundred and fortie paces, which was hard for vs to doe, in regard that the labour was great, and we very weake, and when the Sunne was South South-east we fet fayle with an East-wind, but when the Sunne was West, we were forced to make towards the fast Ice againe, because thereabouts it was not yet gone, the Winde being South, and came right from the Land, whereby wee were in good hope that it would drive away, and that we should proceed in our Voyage. The tenth, from the time that the Sunne was East North-east, till it was East, westooke great paines and labour to get through the Ice, and at last we got through, and rowed forth, untill we happened to fall betweene two great flakes of Ice that closed one with the other, so that we could not get through, but were forced to draw the Scutes voon them, and to valede the goods, and then to draw them ouer to the open water

30 on the other lide, and then we must goe fetch the goods also to the same place, being at least one hundred paces long, and when we were in open water againe, we rowed forward as well as we could, but we had not rowed long, before wee fell betweene two great flakes of Ice, that came driving one against the other, but by Gods helpe, and our speedy rowing, we got from betweene them, before they closed up, and being through we had a hard West Winde, right in our Teeth, so that of force we were confirmed to make towards the fast Ice that lay by the shoare.

The eleventh, in the morning as we fate fast upon the Ice, the Sunnebeing North-east, there came a great Beare out of the water running towards vs, but we watcht for her with three Mul- Huge Beare. kets, and when she came within thirtie paces of vs, wee shot all the three Muskets at her, and killed her out-right, fo that the stirred not a foot, and we might see the fat runne out at the holes

40 of her skinne, that was shot in with the Muskets, swimme vpon the water like Oyle, and so draing dead voon the water, we went voon a flake of Ice to her, and putting a Rope about her necke, drew her vp vpon the Ice, and imit out her Teeth, at which time we measured her bodie. and found it to be eight foot thicke, then we had a West Wind with close weather, but when the Sunne was South it began to cleere vp, then three of our men went to the Iland that lay before vs, and being there, they faw the Croffe Iland, lying West-ward from them, and went this ther to fee if that Summer there had beene any Ruffier there, and went thither vpon the fall Ice, that lay betweene the two Ilands, and being in the Iland, they could not perceive that any man had beene in it fince were were there, there they got feuentie Egges, but when they had them, they knew not wherein to carrie them, at last one of them put off his Breeches, and tying them fast below, they carried them betweene two of them, and the third bare the Musket and fo

50 came to vs againe, after they had beene twelue houres out, which put vs no small feare to thinke what was become of them, they told vs that they had many times gone vp to the knees in water, vpon the Ice betweene both the Ilands : and it was at least fixe mile to and fro, that they had gone, which made vs wonder how they could indure it, feeing we were all fo weake. With the Egges that they had brought, wee were all well comforted, and fared like Lords, to that we found some reliefe in our great miserie, and then wee shared our last Wine amongst vs, whereof euery one had three Glaffes.

The twelfth, in the morning, when the Sunne was East, the Wind began to blow East, and East North-east, with mystic weather, and at Equening fixe of our men went into the Land, to feeke certayne stones, and found some, but none of the best fort, and comming backe againe, eyfeeke certayne tiones, and round some, our none or the best total, and any, then seum of our men there of them brought some Wood. The thirteenth, it was a faire day, then seum of our men went to the firme Land to feeke for more stones, and found tome, at which time the VV ind was South-east. The fourteenth, it was faire vveather, with a good South VVind, and then the Ice began to drive from the Land, whereby were were in good hope to have an open water, but the



Wind turning Westerly againe, it lay still, when the Sunne was South-west, three of our men event to the next lland that lay before ve, and there that a Bercheyner, which they brought to the Scute, and gaue it among ft vs, for all our goods were common.

The fixteenth, there came a Beare from the firme Land, that came very neere vntows, by reafon that it was as white as Snow, whereby at first we could not diferre it tobe a Bear, because it shewed so like the snow, but by her stirring at last we perceived her, and as she came neere wnto vs, we shot at her and hit her, but shee ranne away : that morning the Wind was VVell. and after that againe, East North-east with cloic weather. The seuenteenth, about the South South-east Sunne, fine of our men went agains to the necessit Iland, to fee if there appeared any open water, for our long staying there was no small griefe vnto vs, perceium nochow wee 10 thould get from thence, who being halfe way thither, they found a Beare lying behind a piece of Ice, which the day before had beene shot by vs, but shee hearing vs swent away, but one of our men following her with a Boat-hooke, thrust her into the skinne, wherewith the Bearerole up woon her hinder feet, and as the man thrust at her againe, she strocke the Iron of the Boat-hooke in pieces, wherewith the man fell downe vpon his buttockes, which our other two men feeing, two of them shot the Beare into the bodie, and with that she ranne away, but the other man went after her with his broken staffe, and strooke the Beare vpon the backe, wherewith the Beare turned about against the man three times one after the other, and then the other two came to her and shot her into the bodie againe, wherewith shee fat downe vpon her buttockes, and could feart rinne any further, and then they shot once againe, wherewith shee fell downe, 20 and they smote her Teeth out of her head : all that day the Winde was North-cast, and East North-caft.

The eighteenth, about the East Sun, three of our men went vp vpon the highest part of the land to fee if there was any open water in the Sea, at which time they law much open water, but it was so far from the land, that they were almost out of comfort, because it lay so far from the land, and the fast Ice, being of opinion that we should not be able to draw the Scutes and the goods so farre thither, because our strengthes still beganne to decrease : and the fore labour and paine that we were forced to indure more and more increased, and comming to our Scutes, they brought vs that newes, but we being compelled thereunto by necessitie abandoned all wearinesse and faintheartednesse, and determined with our selves to bring the Boats and the goods to the water side, 30 and throw vitto that Ice, where wee must passe over so get to the open water, and when wee got toit . wee valaded our Scutes, and drew them fift ouer the Ice to the open water, and after that the goods ; it beeing at the least one khouland paces, then wee let layle, till the Summe was West and by South; and presently fell amongst the Ice againe, where wee were forced to draw up the Scutes agains upon the Ice, and beeing uponit, weecould fee the Croffe Hand, which wee gheft to bee about a mile from vs, the Wind then being East, and East North-east.

The nineteenth, lying in that manner voon the Ice, about the East Sunne, seuen of our men went to the Groffe Hand, and being there they faw great store of open water in the West, wherewith they much reioyced, and made as great halfe as they could to get to the Scutes againe, but 40 before they came away they got 100. Egges, and brought them away with them, and comming to the Scates, they shewed vs that they had seene as much open water in the Sea as they could discerne, being in good hope, that that would be the last time that they should draw the Scutes ouer the Ice, and that it should bee no more measured by vs, and in that fort put vs in good comfort, whereupon we made speed to dresse our Egges, and shared them amongst vs, and presently the Sunne being South South-west we fell to worke, to make all things ready to bring the Scutes to the water, which were to be drawne at least two hundred paces oner the Ice, which wee did with a good courage, because we were in good hope that it would be the last time, and getting anothe water, wa put to Sea with Gods helpe, with an East, and East North-east Wind, and a good gale, fo that with the West Sunne, we past by the Croffe Hand, which is distant from Cape 50 de Nassauer ten miles, and presently after that the Ice left vs, and wee got cleere out of it, yet wee faw some in the Sea, but it troubled vs not, and so wee held our course West and by South, with a good gale of Wind out of the East, and East North-east, so that wee ghest that betweene euery meale-tyde we fayled eighteene miles. .

The twentieth, having still a good gale about the South east Sunne, wee past along by the Blacke Point, which is twelve miles distant from the Croffe Iland , and fayled West South-west, and about the Eeuening with the West Sunne, we saw the Admirals Hand, and about the North Sunne past along by it, which is distant from the Blacke Point eight miles, and passing along by it, we law about two hundred Sea-horses, lying vpon a flake of Ice, and wee layled clote by them, and draue them from thence, which had almost cost vs deere, for they beeing mightie 60 firing filhes, and of great force, fwamme towards vs. (as if they would be reuenged on vs for the despight that we had done them (round about our Scutes) with a great noyse, as if they would have denoured vs, but we escaped from them, by reason that we had a good gale of Wind, yet it was not wifely done of vs to wake ileeping Wolues. The one and twentieth, we past by Cape

Plancie, about the East North-east Sunne, which lyeth West South-west eight miles from the Cape Plancie Admirals Iland, and with the good gale that we had about the South-weft Sonne, we fayled by Langenes, nine miles from Cape Plancio: there the Land reacheth meft South-west, and we had Langeness a good North-east wind.

The two and twentieth, we having fo good a gale of wind when wee came to Cape de Cant. Cape Cant. there we went on land to feeke for some Birds and Egges, but we found none, so we tayled forwards, but after that about the South Sunne we faw a Clift that was full of Birds , thither wee fayled and casting stones at them, we killed two and twentie Birds, and got fifteene Egges. which one of our men fetcht from the Clift, and if we would have stayed there any longer wee To might have taken alrundred or two hundred Birds at leaft, but because the Master was somewhat further into Sea-ward then we, and flayed for vs , and for that wee would not loofe that faire fore-wind, we tayled forwards along by the Land, and about the South-west Sunne, wee came Strange Birds to another point, where wee got a hundred twentie and fine Birds, which wee tooke with our breeding in hands out of their Nefts, and some wee killed with stones, and made them fall downe into the strong cold, water, for it is a thing certayne that those Birds never vied to fee men, and that no man had ever fought or vied to take them, for else they would have flowne away, and that they feared no hadie, but the Foxes and other wild beasts, that could not climbe up the high Chites, and that therefore they had made their Ness thereon, where they were out of feare of any beasts comming vato them, for we were in no small danger of breaking of our legges and armes, especially

as we came downe againe, because the Clift was so high and so steepe, those Birds had enery one but one Egge in their Neits, and that lay voon the bate Clife without any fraw or other thing which is to be wondred at, to thinke how they could breed their young ones in fo great cold, but it is to be thought and believed, that they therefore fit but woon one Egge, that fo the heate which they give in breeding fo many, may be wholly given vinto one Egge.

The foure and twentieth, it was faire weather, but the winde fill Northerly, whereby wee were forced to lye fill, and about noone we tooke the height of the Sunne with our Astrolabium, and found it to be elevated about the Horizon 37. degrees and 20. minutes, his declination 20. degrees and 10. minutes which fubftracted from the height aforefaid refted 17. degrees and 10. minutes, which taken from 90. degrees, the height of the Pole was 72. degrees and 10. mi-30 nutes, and for that we lay ftill there, some of our men went oftentimes on Land to feeke ftones, and found some that were as good as ever any that we found.

The feuen and twentieth, were had layled from Cape de Cont, along by Constinfarke, to the Croffe Point, twentie miles, our course South South-east, the Wind North-west.

The right and twentieth, it was faire weather with a North-east wind, then we fayled along Two Ruffler by the Land, and with the South-west Sunne, got before Saint Laurence Bay, or Sconce Point, Ledies or Ledand fayled South South-east fix miles, and being there, wee found two Ruffians Lodgies, or ships gies. beyond the Point, wherewith we were not a little comforted, to thinke that we were come to the place where we found men, but were in some doubt of them, because they were so many, for at that time we faw at least thirtie men, and knew not what they were, there with much paine 40 and labour we got to Land, which they perceiuing, left off their worke, and came towards vs. but without any Armes, and we also went on shoare, as many as were well, for divers of vs were very ill at ease, and weake by reason of a great scouring in their bodies, and when wee met together, wee faluted each other in friendly wife, they after theirs, and wee after our manner, and when we were met, both they and wee lookt each other stedfastly in the face, for that some of them knew vs, and wee them, to bee the fame men which the yeere before, when wee past through the Wer-gates had beene in our ship : at which time wee perceived that they were abasht and wondred at vs, to remember that at that time wee were so well furnished with a great thin, that was exceedingly prouided of all things necessary, and then to fee vs to leane and bare. with fo small Scutes in that Countrey : and amongst them there were two, that in friendly so manner clapt the Master and me vpon the shoulder, as knowing vs fince that Voyage: for there was none of all our men that was as then in that Voyage, but we two only, and asked vs for our Crable, meaning our thip, and we thewed them by tignes as well as we could (for we had no Interpreter) that we had loft our ship in the Ice, wherewith they faid, Crable propal (which wee understood to bee, Haue you lost your ship?) and we made antiwere, Crable pro pal, which was as

had now, wherewith one of our men went into the Scute and drew some water, and let them 6c take thereof, but they shak't their heads, and said, No dobbre (that is, It is not good) then our Mafter went neerer vnto them, and shewed them his mouth, to give them to vnderstand that we were troubled with a loofenesse in our bellies, and to know if they could give vs any counsell to helpe it, but they thought wee made shew that wee had great hunger wherewith one of them went vnto their Lodging, and fetcht a round Rie Loafe, weighing about eight pounds, with

much as to fay, That we had loft our thip, and many more words we could not yfe, because we

understood not each other, then they made flew to be forrie for our loffe, and to be grieved that

we the yeere before had beene there with fo many ships, and then to see vs in so simple manner,

and made vs fignes that then they had drunke Wine in our fhip, and asked vs what drinke wee

CHAP.5. \$.2.

fome fmored Fowles which we accepted thankfully, and gaue them in exchange halfe a doozen fome incore a covies which we accepted challenging, and good men in exchange naire a dozzen of Mulchuye, then our Mafter led two of the chiefe of them with him into his Scate, and gate or Municipy, then our manter two ends of the Gallon, for it was so neere out and while them some of the Wine that we had, being almost a Gallon, for it was so neere out and while them some or the write that we man, being amont a Calon, not at wes so here out : and write we flayed there, we were very familiar with them, and went to the place where they lay, and we rayed there, we were very samular when them, and went to the place where they key, and fod fome of our Mischayt with water by their fire, that we might earlome warmething downe into our bodies, and wee were much comforted to fee the Ruffiness for that in thirteene moneths into our nonressant were were more consistent to the control of th

The nine and twentieth, it was reasonable faire weather, and that morning the Russians be-A ne name and eventuetts, it was resonant to fee fayle; at which time they digged certayne 10 Barrels with Trayne Cyle out of the fieges which they had buried there, and put it into

their flips.

The thirtieth lying at Anchor, the Wind fill blew North-west, with great store of Raine, and a fore florme, so that although we had covered our Scutes with our Sayles, yet we could not Lyedry, which was an vnaccultomed thing vntovs : for wee had had no Raine in long time before, and yet we were forced to flay there all that day.

The one and thirtieth, in the morning, about the North-east Sunne, wee rowed from that Hand to another Hand, whereon there flood two Croffes, wee thought that fome men had layne hand to apprie usua, whiteou had not root to the Ruffiers that wee faw before had done, but wee found no man there, the Wind as then beeing North-weft , whereby the Ice drawe full towards 30 Scumy graffe, the 1975 gates 2 there to our great good wee went on Land, for in that Iland wee found great care flore of Leple Isanes, which ferued we exceeding well, and it feemed that God had purpolely leaser cure their forwing feart s thirther; for as then wee had many ficke men, and most of vs were fo troubled with a mad Scarbani foouring in our bodies, and were thereby become fo weake, that wee could hardly row, but by and Scorous. Additionally in the appropriate the second se prefently cafed and healed, whereat wee could not choose but wonder, and therefore wee gaue God great thankes for that, and for many other his mercies she wed vnto vs, by his great and vnexpected aide lent ys, in that our dangerous Voyage : and fo as I faid before, wee cate them by

whole handfuls together, because in Holland we had heard much spoken of their great force, and as then found it to be much more then we expected.

The first of August, the Wind blew hard North-west, and the Ice that for a while had driven towards the entry of the Wey-gates, stayed and draue no more, but the Sea went very hollow, whereby we were forced to remoue our Scutes on the other fide of the Hand, to defend them from the wanes of the Sea, and lying there wee went on Land agains to fetch more Leple leanes, whereby we had beene to well hotpen, and still more and more recourred our healths, and in fo thort time, that we could not choof but wonder thereat, fo that as then some of vs could eate Bisket againe, which not long before they could not doe. The second, it was darke mistic weather, the Winde still blowing stiffe North-west, at which time our victuals beganne to decrafe, for as then wee had nothing but a little Bread and Water, and fome of vs a little

The third, about the North Sunne, the weather being somewhat better, wee agreed amongst our felues to leave Nous Zembla and to crosse over to Russia, and so committing our selves to God, we fet fayle with a North-west Wind, and sayled South South-west till the Sunne was East, and then we entred into Ice againe, which put vs in great feare, and about the South-west Sunne got eleere thereof, and entred into the large Sea, where we saw Ice, and then what with sayling and rowing we had made twentie miles, and so failing forwards wee thought to approch neere vnto the Ruffien Coaft; but about the North-west Sunne we entred into Ice againe, and then it

The fourth, about the South-east Sunne, being gotten out of the Ice, we sayled forward with a North-weft Wind, and held our course Southerly, and when the Sunne was South, at noone 50 time we faw the Coaft of Raffia lying before vs, whereat we were exceeding glad, and going neerer vato it, we ftrooke our fayles and rowed on Land, and found it to be very low Land, like a bare Strand that might be flowed ouer with the water, there we lay till the Sunne was Southweft, but perceining that there wee could not much further our felices, having as then fayled from the Point of Nosa Zembla (from whence we put off) thither full thirtie miles, wee fayled forward along by the Coast of Russia, with an indifferent gale of Winde, and when the Sunne was North, we saw another Rassian lake or ship, which we sayled unto to speake with them, and being hard by them, they came all aboue Hatches, and wee cryed unto them Candinaes Candimass (whereby we asked if we were about Candinaes) but they cryed againe and faid, Prizora, Pizzora, (to shew vs that wee were there abouts) and for that wee sayled along by the Coast, 60 where it was very dry, supposing that we held our course West and by North, that so we might get beyond the Point of Candinaes, we were wholy deceited by our Compaffe, that flood vpon Chift bound with Iron bands which made vs vary at least two Points, whereby we were much more Southerly then wee thought our course had beene, and also farre more Easterly, for wee

thought verily that we had not beene farre from Candinaes, and wee were three dayes fayling from it as after we perceived, and for that we found our felues to bee fo much out of our way, we flaved there all night till day appeared.

The twelfth of August, it was faire weather, at which time the Sunne being Raft. wee faw a Ruffia Lodgie come towards vs, with all his fayles vp, wherewith we were not a little comforted, which we perceiuing from the Strand, where we lay with our Scutes, we defired the Malter that we might goe voto him, to speake with him, and to get some victuals of them and to that end we made as much hafte as we could, to launch out our Scutes and fayled toward them, and when we got to them, the Master went into the Lodgie, to aske them how farre wee had to Cardinaes, which we could not well learne of them, because wee vnderstood them not, they held up their fine Fingers vnto vs, but we knew not what they meant thereby, but after we perceived, that thereby they would shew vs, that there stood five Crosses vpon it, and they brought their Compasse out and shewed vs that it lay North-west from vs, which our Compasse Russian Comalso shewed vs, which reckoning also we had made : but when we saw we could have no better pas intelligence from them, the Malter went further into their Ship, and pointed to a barrell of Fifth that he faw therein, making fignes to know, whether they would fell it vnto vs, shewing them a peece of eight Rials, which they understanding gane vs one hundred and two Fishes, with fale Cakes which they had made of Meale, when they fodde their Fish, and about the South Sunne wee left them.

The fixteenth of August in the Morning, sayling forward North-west, we perceived that we were in a Creeke, and so made towards the Ruffian Lodgie, which we had seene on our starreboord, which at last with great labour and much paine wee got vnto, and comming to them about the South-east Sunne, with a hard winde, we asked them how farre we were from Sembla de Cool or Kilduin, but they shooke their heads, and shewed vs that wee were on the East-side of Zembla de Candinaes.

The seventeenth lying at Anchor, in the Morning at breake of day, wee saw a Roffian Lodgie that came fayling out of the white Sea, to vvhom we rowed, that vve might have some instruction from him, and when we boorded him, vvithout asking or speaking vnto him, he gaue vsa loafe of Bread, and by fignes shewed vs as well as he could, that hee had seene our Companions, and that there was feuen men in the Boate, but wee not knowing well what they fayd, noins, and that there ver beleeuing them, they made other fignes vnto vs, and held vp their feuen Fingers, and pointed to our Scute, thereby shewing that there was so many men in the Boate, and that they had fold them Bread, Flesh, Fish and other victuals : and while wee stayed in their Lodgie, vve faw a small Compasse therin, which we knew that they had bought of our chiefe Boatson, which they likewise acknowledged. About mid-night wee found a fall of fresh Water, and then we went on Land to fetch some, and there also wee got some Leple-leaues, and as wee thought to row forward, we were forced to fayle, because the flood was past, and still we lookt earnestly out for the point of Cardinaes, and the fine Croffes, whereof we had beene instructed by the Rullians, but we could not fee it.

The Eighteenth, in the Morning the Sunne being East, we puld vp our Stone, (which we vsed in fleed of an Anchor) and rowed along by the Land, till the Sunne was South, and then we faw a point of Land reaching into the Sea, and on it certayne fignes of Croffes, which as vve went neerer vnto we law perfectly, and when the Sunne was West, we perceived that the Land reached West and South-west, so that thereby we knew it certainely to bee the point of Candinaes, lying at the mouth of the white Sea which we were to croffe, and had long defired to fee it. This Point is eafily to bee knowne, having fine Crosses standing vpon it, which are perfectly to be discerned, and having a good North-east vvind (which was not for vs to slacke) we let forward in the Name of God, and when the Sunne was North-west we past the Point, and all that night and the next day sayled with a good Wind, and all that time rowed but while three Glasses were 50 runne out, and the next Night after enfuing, having still a good wind, in the Morning about the East North-east Sunne, we saw Land on the West-side of the white Sea, which we found by the rushing of the Sea vpon the Land before we saw it, and perceining it to bee full of Clifts, and not low fandie ground with some Hills, as it is on the East-side of the white See, wee affured our felues that we were on the West-fide of the white Sea, vpon the Coast of Lapland, for the which Lapland. we thanked God, that he had helped vs to fayle ouer the white Sea in thirtie houres, it being for-

tie Dutch miles at the leaft, our course being West with a North-east winde. The twentieth, we espied certayne Crosses, with Warders vpon them, whereby we vnderflood that it was a good way, and so put into it, and being entred a little way within it, we saw a great Ruffan Lodgie lying at Anchor, whereunto we rowed as fast as we could, and there also 60 we saw certayne Houses wherein men dwelt, and when wee got to the Lodgie, we made our selves falt vnto it and cast our tent over the Scute, for as then it began to rayne, then we went on land into the Houses that stood upon the shoare, where they showed vs great friendship, leading vs into their Stones and there dryed our wet Cloathes, and then feething some Fish, bade vs fit downe and eate somewhat with them. In those little houles wee found thirteene Russians, Russan House

August.

Action.

316

who every morning event out to Fish in the Sea, whereof two of them had charge over the rest, who every meaning the continuity eate nothing but Fifth and Bread; at Ecuening when we they niced very positivy and to make your property of the Mafter and me to flay which them prepared our reuses to goe to our outstanding them for, would not doe, but I stayed with them all In their acousts, values the state of the st with a Child, that lived very poorely of the overpluffe which the Ruffers gave them, as a peece with a china, that includes pooling to the Roffiens threw away, and they with great thankfulon a funi, and rouns and the in respect of their poperties, we hought our felices to bee well furni-

thed; and yet we had little enough, but as it feemed their or dinary living was in that manner, and we were forced to stay there, for that the vv and being North-west, it was against vs. The one and twentieth, wee met our other Companie wherewith we rejoyced, and shewed each other of our proceedings, and how wee had sayled too and fro in great necessitie and hunger, and yet they had beene in greater necessistic and danger then we, and gaue God thanker that bee had preserved vs aline, and brought vs together againe, and then we eate something toge-

ther and dranke of the cleere Water, fisch as runneth along by Collen through the Rhone, and then we agreed that they should come vnto vs, that we might fayle together.

The two and twentieth, the rest of our men with the Boate came unto vs, about the East South-east Sunne, whereat wee much rejoyced, and then we prayed the Ruffians Cooke to bake southern summer whereas we make it Bread, paying him for it, which hee did, and in the meane time, when the Rither-men came with their Rith one of the Sea, our Mafter bought foure Cods 20 of them, which we fodde and eate, and while we were at meate, the chiefe of the Raffiers came vario vs, and perceining that we had not much Bread, hee fetched a Loafe and gaue it vs, and although we defined them to fit downe and eate some meate with vs, yet we could by no meanes get them to grant thereunto, because it was their Fafting day, and for that we had powred But-Source afaft ter and fat into our Fish: nor wee could not get them once to drinke with vs, because our Cup was somewhat greasie, they were so superflitious touching their Rasting and Religion, neither would they lend vs any of their Cups to drinke in, leaft they (hould likewife bee greated, at that

The foure and twentieth, the wind blew East, and then the Sunne being East, we got to the feuen Hands, where we found many Fither-men, of whom we enquired after Cool and Kildnin, 30 and they made fignes that they lay West from vs. (which we likewise ghest to bee so) and withall they shewed vs great friendship, and cast a Codde into our Scute, but for that wee had a good gale of wind, we could not stay to pay them for it, but game them great thankes, much wondering at their great courtesie, and so with a good gale of wind we arrived before the senen Hands, ring at their great countering, and to with a good gate of value we arrive before the federal inlands, when the Sunne was South-week, and past betweene them and the Land, and there found certayne Fifner-men that rowed to vs., and asked vs. where our Crable (meaning our Ship) was, whereunto we made answer, with as much Ruffian language as wee had learned; and sayd, Crable pro Pal, (that is, our Ship is loft) which they understanding, sayd unto us, Cool Brabonse (rable, whereby we understood, that at Cool there was certayne Netberland Ships, but wee made no great account thereof, became our intent was to fayle to Ware-boufe, fearing leaft the Ruffler: 40

or great Prince of the Countrey would flay vs there. The fine and twentieth, fayling along by the Land with a South-east wind, about the South Sunne, we had a fight of Kildsin, at which time we held our course West North-west, and sayling in that manner betweene Kildmin and the firme Land, about the South South-west Sunne, we got to the West end of Kildnin, and being there looked if we could see any Houses or people therein, and at last we saw certayne Russian Lodgies that lay vpon the Strand, and there finding a conuenient place for vs to Anchot with our Scutes, while wee went to know if any people were to bee found, our Master put in with the Land, and there found fine or sixe small Houles, wherein the Laplanders dwelt, of whom we asked if that were Kildsin, whereunto they made watering the control of the control bles or Ships, whereof two were that day to let layle : wee found a small House vpon the shoare, wherein there was three Men and a great Dogge, which received vs very friendly, asking vs of our affaires, and how we got thither, whereunto we made answer, and shewed them that we had loft our Ship, and that wee were come thither to fee if we could get a Ship that would bring vs into Holland: whereunto they made vs answer as the other Russians, had done, that there was three Ships at Coola, whereof two vvere to let fayle from thence that day, then wee asked them if they would goe with one of our men by Land to Cools, to looke for a Ship, wherewith wee might get into Holland, and layd we would reward them well for their paines, but they excused themselues, and sayd, that they could not goe from thence, but they sayd they would bring vs ouer the Hill, where we should finde certayne Laplanders whom they thought would goe with vs, as they did: for the Master and one of our men going with them ouer the Hill, found certaine Laplanders there, whereof they got one to goe with our man, promising him two Ryals of eight for his paines, and so the Laplander going with him, tooke a Piece on his necke, and our man a Boat-hooke, and about Ecuening they let forward, the vvinde as then being East, and East

The fixe and twentieth, it was faire weather, the wind South-east, at which time we drew vo both our Scutes vpon the Land, and tookeall the goods out of them, to make them the lighter: which done, we went to the Ruffians and wvarmed vs, and there dreffed fuch meates as wee had, and then againe we began to make two meales a day, when we perceived that we should enery day finde more people, and vvedranke of their drinke which they call Qualle, which was made of broken peeces of Bread, and it tasted well : for in long time wee had drunke nothing elle but Water. Some of our men went further into the Land, and there found blew Berries and bramble Berries, which they plucked and eate, and they did vs much good, for we found that they healed vs of our loofenesse, the wind still blew South-east.

CHAP.S. S. 2. Quaste drinke. Friends meeting together cause of great Ioy.

The eight and twentieth, it was indifferent good weather, and then we drew the Scutes vpon the Land againe, that we might take the reft of the goods out of them, because the wind still blew hard North, and North North-west, and having drawne the Scutes vp, wespred our sayles voon them, to shelter vs vnder them, for it was still mystie and raynie weather, much defiring

to heare some newes of our man, that was gone to Cools with the Laplander.

The nine and twentieth, wee fpyed the Laplander comming alone without our man, whereat we wondred, and were somewhat in doubt, but when hee came vnto vs; he shewed vs a Letter that was writen vnto our Master, which he opened before vs, the Contents thereof being, that hee that had written the Letter wondred much at our arrivall in that place, and that long fince hee verily thought that we had beene all cast away, being exceeding glad of our happie fortune, and how that he would prefently come vnto vs with victuals, and all other necessaries to fuccour vs withall, we being in no small admiration who it might bee, that shewed vs so great fanour and friendship, could not imagine what he was, for it appeared by the Letter that he knew vs well : and although the Letter was subscribed, by me lobn Cornelson Rip, yet wee could not bee perswaded that it was the same lohn Cornelison, who the yeere before had beene set out in the other hip with vs, & left vs about the Beare Hand : for those good newes we payd the Laplander his hyer; and besides that, gaue him Hose, Breeches, and other furniture, so that hee was apparelled like a Hollander: for as then wee thought our felues to bee wholly out of danger, and fo being of good comfort, we layd vs downe to reit. Heere I cannot chuse but shew you how faft the Laplander went : for when he went to Coola, as our Companion told vs, they were two Daves and two Nights on the way, and yet went apace, and when he came backe againe he was but a Day and a Night comming to vs, which was wonderfull, it being but halfe the time, fo that we fayd, and verily thought that hee was halfe a Conjurer, and he brought vs a Partridge, which hee had killed by the way as he went.

The thirtieth, wee faw a Ruffian Ioll come rowing with Iohn Cornelifon, and our Companion that we had fent to Coola, who being landed, wee received and welcommed each other, with great joy and exceeding gladnesse, as if either of vs on both sides had seene each other rise from death to life againe : for we esteemed him, and hee vs to bee dead long fince : hee brought vs a Barrell of Refwicke Beere, Wine, Aqua vice, Bread, Flesh, Bacon, Salmon, Suger, and other things. which comforted and relieued vs much, and we rejoyced together for our fo vnexpected meeting:

at that time giving God great thankes, for his Mercie shewed vnto vs.

The first of September, in the Morning with the East Sun, we got to the West-side of the Ri- September. uer of Cools, and entred into it, where we rowed till the Flood was pail, and then wee cast the Stones that ferued vs for Anchors vpon the ground, at a point of Land till the Flood came in againe : and when the Sunne was South, wee fer fayle againe with the Flood, and fo fayled and rowed till mid-night, and then wee cast Anchor againe till morning. The second, in the Mor- Trees arare ning, we rowed up the River, and as we past along wee faw some Trees on the River side, which fight, comforted vs, and made vs glad as if we had then come into a new world, for in all the time that wee had beene out, we had not feene any Trees, and when we were by the Salt Kettles, which is about three miles from Cools, we stayed there a while, and made merrie, and then went forward Cools. 30 againe, and with the West North-west Sunne, got to lobn Cornelsons Ship, wherein we entred and drunke: there wee began to make merrie againe, with the Saylers that were therein, and that had beene in the Voyage with Iobn Cornelison the yeere before, and bad each other welcome: then we rowed forward, and late in the Eeuening got to Coola, where some of vs went on Land, and some stayed in the Scutes to looke to the goods: to whom we fent Milke and other things to comfort and refresh them, and we were all exceeding glad that God of his mercie had delivered vs out of so many dangers and troubles, and had brought vs thither in safetie.

The third, wee valaded all our goods, and there refreshed our selnes after our toylesome and wearie Iourney, and the great hunger wee had endured, thereby to recouer our healths and strengths againe.

The eleventh, by leave and confent of the Bayart, Governour of the great Prince of Makes and Box layd mia, we brought our Scute and our Boate into the Merchants House, and there let them Rand for vp for a Monu a remembrance of our long, farre (and never before fayled way) and that wee had fayled in those ment bow open Scutes, almost foure hundred Dutch miles, chrough, and along by the Sea Coasts to the muchmore Towne of Cools.

the old worlds

The feuenteenth of September, John Cornelison and our Master being come aboord, the next day about the East Sunne, we fet fayle out of the River Coola, and with Gods grace put to Sea, to fayle homewards, and being out of the River, wee fayled along by the Land North-weft and by North, the winde being South.

Vpon the nine and twentieth of October, wee arrived in the Maje, with an East North-east wind, and the next morning got to Mafeland Sluce, and there going on Land, from thence rowed to Delfe, and then to the Hage, and from thence to Harlem. And vpon the first of November about Noone, got to Amfterdam, in the fame Clothes that wee wore in Nona Zembla, with our Caps furr'd with white Foxes skinnes. The newes thereof being spred abroad in the Towne, it Caps for a with white Poxes schools. In the West stretch being spice and the Towner in the Hoge, at which time the Lord Chancellour of Des. 10 marks, Ambassadour for the sayd King, was then at Dinner with Prince Manrice : for the which cause we were presently fetcht thither by the Scout, and two of the Burgers of the Towne, and there in the presence of those Ambassadours, and the Burger-masters, wee made rehearfall of our Iourney both forwards and backwards.

I stought good to adde bitber for Barents or Barentsons sake, certaine Notes which I baue found (the one Translated, the other Written by him) among st Master Hakhuyts Paper.

This was Written by William Barentson in a loose Paper, which was lent mee by the Renerend Peter Planting in Amsterdam, March the feuen and twentieth, 1600.

Intelligence from Samojeds. 1494. Barkes going from Pechora to Gielbfidi : Wintering Gielblidi won from the Tar*tars* 1592.

15920 No Ebbe nor

"He foure and twentieth of August, Stilo nouo 1505, wee space with the Samoieds, and asked shem how the Land and Sea did lye to the East of Way-gates. They fayd after fine dayer ioning A tree now to Lana and trea units to toe Lana y tray fects. Less joyn aper jun anger towing going North-Carl, me flould come to a great See, going South-east. This Sea to the Left of Way-getts, they fought accelled Marmoria, that is to foy, A calmo See. And they of Ward-love base talk us the Jame. I asked them, if at any time of the yeere it was frozen ouer? They Jaya it was. And that sometimes they palled it with Sleds. And the first of September 1595. Stilo nouo, the Russes of the Lodie or Barke affirmed the fame ; saying that the Sea is sometimes so Frozen, that the Lodies or Barkes going Sometimes to Gielhfidi from Pechora, are forced there to Winter : which Gielhfidi was wonnefrom 20 the Tartars, three yeeres past.

For the Ebbe and Flood there I can finde nome; but with the Winde so runneth the Greame. The third of September, Stilo 11000, the winde was South-west, and then I found the water higher, then with the there were a Fland and Ebbe, the nimb of September, Stilo nouo, I went on Sheare on the South end of the States I land, where the Croffe flandeth, and layd a Stone on the brinke of the Water, to prome when ther there were a Tide, and went round about the Iland to Spoote at a Have, and returning, I found the Stone as I left it, and the Water neither higher nor lower : which product has afore, that there is no Flood nor Ebbe.

CHAP. VI.

A Treatise of IVER BOTY a Gronlander, translated out of the North Language into High Dutch, in the yeere 1560. And after out of High Dutch into Low Dutch, by WILLIAM BARENTSON of Amsterdam, who was chiefe Pilot aforesaid. The fame Copie in High Dutch, is in the hands of I o Docvs Hondivs, which I bauescene. And this was trauslated out of Low Dutch, by Master WILLIAM STERE, Marchant, in the yeere 1608. for the vice of me HENRIE HYDSON. WILLIAM BARENTSONS Booke is in the

hands of Master PETER PLANTIVS, who lent the fame unto me



Norma, it is reported by men of Wisedome and Vnderstanding borne in Growland, That from Stad in Norway to the East part of Island, called Horn-ness, is feuen dayes fayling right West.

Item, men shall know, that betweene Island and Gronland, lyoth a Riffe called Gombornse-skare. There were they wont to have there passage for Gronland. But 69 as they report there is Ice vpon the same Riffe, come out of the long North Bot-

tome, so that we cannot vie the same old Passage as they thinke. Item, from Long-nesse on the East tide of Island to the aboutlaid Horn-nesse, is two dayes sayle to the Brimftone Mount.

CHAP.6. Fishing for Whales. Hunting of white Beares. Hot waters.

Item, if you goe from Bergen in Norway, the course is right West, till you bee South of Rokeselle in Ifland : and diftant from it thirteene miles, or leagues. And with this course you shall come under that high Land that lyeth in the East part of Groneland, and is called Swafiler. A Swafiter. day before you come there, you shall have fight of a high Mount, called Huit-farke : and betweene Whitfarke and Groneland, lyeth a Head-land called Hernoldus Hooke; and thereby Whitfarke. leeth an Hauen, where the Norman Merchants Ships were wont to come : and it is called

Item, it a man will sayle from Island to Granland, hee shall set his course to Snofnesse, which is in Grandand. by Welt Rokeneffe thirteene miles, or leagues right West, one day and nights fayling, and after South-west to thun the Ice, that lyeth on Gombornse-skare; and after that one day and melit

10 North-west. So shall hee with this course fall right with the abouelayd Smafiter, which is high Land, under which lyeth the aforefayd Head-land, called Hornoldus Hooke, and the Sound

lauen.

Item. the Easter Dorpe of Groneland lyeth East from Hernoldus booke, but neere it, and is calSkaten Ford. led Skagen Ford, and is a great Village .-

Item, from Skagen Ford East, lyeth a Hauen called Beare Ford : it is not dwelt in . In the Beare Ford. mouth thereof lyeth a Riffe, fo that great Ships cannot harbour in it. Item, there is great abundance of Whales: and there is a great Fathing for the killing of them A great fifting

there : but not without the Bilhops confent, which keepeth the fame for the benefit of the Ca- for Whales. thedrall Church. In the Hauen is a great Smalth ; and when the Fide doch runne out, all the A great Smalth 20 Whales doe runne into the fay! Swalib.

Item. East of Beare Ford, lyeth another Hauen called Allabong Sound : and it is at the mouth Allabong Sound narrow, but farther in, very wide : The length whereof is fuch, that the end thereof is not yet knowne. There rumeth no Streame, to lyeth full of lettle Iles. Fawle and Oxen are there com- Store of Oxen.

mon ; and it is playne Land on both fides, growne ouer with greene Graffe. Item, East from the Icie Mountayne, lyste an Hauen called Fendehorber; fo named, because in The Icie Saint Olafes time there was a Ship caft away, as the fpeach hath beene in Groneland; In which Mountayne. Ship was drowned one of Saint Olafes men, with others : and those that were faued did The Hauen of burie those that were drowned, and on their Granes did fer great stone Crosses, which wee see No.e.

at thisday and an arrange and on their Granes d term, form what more East toward the Live Mountayne, lyeth a high Land, called Corfe Hought. Crife Hought vport which they Hunt white Bears, but not we hour the Beshops leave, for it belongeth to the white Bears, Cathedrall Church. And from thence more Easterly, men fee nothing but the and Snow; both More Easterly

by land and water.

Now wice shall return against to Hernoldus Hooks, where we first began to come to the first. The Towner Towner har tyech on the East fide of Hernoldus Hooke, called Stager Ford; and to we will write from Hernolde the Names of all that I we en the Wort-fide or the Ford or Sound.

Item, West from Hernoldus Hooke, lyeth a Dorpe called Kodosfurd, and it is well built : and as ward. you fayle into the Sound, you shall see on the right hand a great Sea and a Marsh : and into this The Towne of 40 Sea runneth a great streame : and by the March and Sea standeth a great Church, on which the Godayford , Sea runneth a great itreame: and by the Marin and Sea Handshin great chunch, on which the Agreat Holy Croste is drawne, of colour white: it is belongeth to Employer de Hokefong, and the Land Church with a to Peters Wike. 1 a say of meers of brook it and by hours.

Item, by Peters Wike, lyeth a great Dorpe called Wart falle, by which lyeth a water or Sea of on it. ewelne miles or leagues ouer : in which is much Fifal : And to Peters wife Church belongeth Wattdell. Wart dale Boy or Towne, and the Villages. the to start to

Item, neere this Boy or Towne, lyeth a Cloy for or Abbey in which are Canous Regular, it is tongue fignifi-Dedicated to Saint Olafes, and Saine Augustines parie. And to it belongeth all the Land to the eifa Towne, Sea fide, and toward the other fide of the Cloyther. in agr. Geralia an Interheur 🗥 🗀

Item, next Godorford, lyeth a Ford called Rompnes Ford : And these lyeth a Clouder of Nuns Anunerica of Saint Benedits Order. helde Hills Minari Armae which

50 Item, this Cloyfter to the bottome of the Sea and to Wegen Kerkelwas Dediensed to Saint Q- Het waters in Lafe the King. In this Ford lye mady fmall lies. Andro this Cloyster belong the falte the Ford Grandand. and the Church. In this Sound are many, warne Wastess. In the Minter they fac, intollerable. A place called horz but in the Summer more moderate; and many Bathing, in them are cured of many distalts. They better they face the state of the

Item, betweene Rampus and the next Sound, lyeth a great Garden called Hofe, belonging to King, the King. There is alto a coffly Church dedicated to Saine Nicolas. This Church had tite King Saint Nicolas before this. Neere it lyeth a Sea of Fresh water, called in which is great abundance Chuich. of Fish, without number. And when there falleth much Rayne, that the Waters doe rile therewith, and after fall againe, there romayneth ypon the Land much Fifh drie.

Item, when you sayle out of Emestines Ford, there lyeth an Inlet, called South-woders Wike : Bloming. 60 and forewhat higher in the fame Sound, and on the fame fide, lyether little Cape salled Bloming: Grannicke and beyond that lyeth another Inwike called Grannike, and about that lyeth a Garden called Daleth Garden, Daletb, which belongeth to the Cathedrall Church. And on the right hand as you tayle one of Agreet Wood the firm Sound liveth access Wood over King. the same Sound, lyeth a great Wood, which persayneth to the Church, where they Bede all and Horses

their Cattell, as Oxen, Kine, and Horses: And to the Church pertayneth the Sound of Emelimes Ford. The high Land lying by Emessines Ford, is called The Ramos banb : So called, because that on those Hills doe runne many Roe Deere, or Reyne Deere, which they vie to Hunt, but not without the Bishops leaue. And on this high Land is the best Stone in all Groneland. Stone, that fire They make thereof Pots, because fire cannot hurt it. And they make of the same stone Fattes or Cifternes, that will hold ten or twelue Tunnes of water.

Eight great Orchardsbe. led Cathedrall Swalfter Ford,

Item. West from this lyeth another high Land, called The long bigh Land: and by another calwhereon are eight great Orchards, all belonging to the Cathedrall Church, longing to the But the Tenths thereof they give to Warfedall Church. Item, next to this Sound lyeth another Sound called Swalfter Ford, wherin Randeth a Church to called Swalfer. This Church belongeth to all this Sound, and to Romfe Ford, lying next it. In

Ericks Hought.

chieu omagier. Ints countencerongen out an inspound and counter counter out, ying near it. In this Sound is a great Garden belonging to the King, called Saint Houleflass. Item, next to that lyeth Ericky Ford, and entring therein lyeth an high Land called Ericky Hought; which pertayneth the one halfe to Deuers Kerke, and is the first Parish Church on Groneland, and lyeth on the left hand as you fayle into Ericks Ford : and Deners Kerke belonget fall to Meydon Ford, which lyeth North-west from Ericks Ford.

Skogel Kerke.

Item, farther out then Erseks Ford, standeth a Church called Skegel Kerke, which belongeth to all Medford : And farther in the Sound standeth a Church called Leader Korke. To this Church belongeth all thereabout to the Sea; and also on the other side as farre as Boulets. There lyeth alfo a great Orchard called Grose Lead, in which the Gufman (that is a chiefe or Bayliffe ones the 20

Folfa Sound.

And farther out then Ericks Ford, lyeth a Ford or Sound called Foffa, which belongeth to the Cathedrall Church : and the fayd Foffa Sound lyeth as mentayle out towards Ericks Ford ; and to the North of it lye two Villages, the one called Ener-boy, and the other Forther-boy, because Item, from thence farelier North lyeth Brede Ford, and after that Lormont Ford from that

Breda Ford. Larmut Ford. Ice Dorpe. The Sherles-

West, and from Larmone Ford to the West is Ice Dorpe. All these are places built, and in them Item, from the Easter builded Land to the Wester Dorpe, is twelve miles or leagues ; and the rest is all waste land. In the Dorpe in the West standeth a Church, which in times past belonged 30 to the Cathedrall Church, and the Bilhop did dwell there. But now the Sketlenger rhaue all the West Lands and Dorps. And there are now many Horses, Oxen, and Kine, but no people neis-

gers. Many Horics. Oxen, and Kine.

they Chriftian nor Hemben; butthey were all carryed away by the Enemie, the Skerlengers. All this before Written was done by one Iner Boty borne in Gronland, a principall man in the Iner Boty the Bishops Court : who dwelt there many yeeres, and faw and knew all these places. He was chofer by the whole Land for Captayne, to goe with Ships to the West land, to drive away their Enemies the Speringers. But the commission there, found no people neither Christian nor Hea-then, but found there many Sheepe running being wilde, of which Sheepe they cooks with them as many as they could carrie, and with them returned to there Houses. This before named Indo Bory was himselfe with them.

A great Wil. derneffe called Hemel Hat felt. to the North of the West

To the North of the West Land, Iyeth a great Wildernesse with Chies or Rockes, called Hemel Hatsfelt. Farther can no man fayle, because there lye many Swalgen or Whirle-pooles" and also for the Water and the See. Item, in Groneland are many Silver Hills, and many white Beares with red patches on their

Mines of Silner, white Beares, whire Hawkes, all fores of Fifh.

heads; and also white Hawkes, and all forts of Fish, as in other Countries. item, there is Marole stone of all colours, also Zeuell stone or the Load stone, which the Fire cannot hurt, whereof they make many veffels, as Pots, and other great veffels. Items, in Groneland runneth great streames, and there is much Snow and Ice : But it is not fo

cold, as it is its flood or Norman. land or Nerway.

Item, there grow on the high Hills, Nuts and Acornes, which are as great as Apples, and good 50 coeate. There groweth alfo the best Wheate, that can grow in the whole Land.

Fruits.

Grentland not

fo cold as Ife-

This Sea Card was found in the lles of Fore or farre, lying betweene Shot-last and Iffiend, in an old reckoning Booke, wraten aboue one hundred yeeres agoo : out of which this was all taken. Page and Page I tems, Page and Pother fe, have inhabited I fland certainty yeeres, and formetimes have gone to Sea, and hatte had their trade in Groneland. Alio Pumnis did give the I flanders their Lawes, and caufed them to bee written. Which Lawes doe continue to this day in Hand, and are called by name Punna Laves. Labered

The Course from Island to Groneland.

F men bee South from the Hauen of Bred Ford in Island, they shall fayle West, tall they see Whiffarke spon Groneland; and then fayle fomewhat South-west till Whiffarke bee North off you, and to you need not feare Ice, but may boldly fayle to Whitfarke, and from thence to Ericks Hagen

CHAP.6. Gronland Commodities. Counsell for Gronland Travellers.

If men be North the Hauen of Bredford in Island, then sayle South-west, till Whit sarke beare North: then tayle to it, and to come to Ericks Hauen. If you see Ice, that commeth out of Tralebothon, you shall got more Southerly, but not too Tralebothon

farre South for feare of Freefland, for there runneth an hard streame. And it is fifteene miles or leagues from Freefland.

Isem, Freefland Iveth South, and Island East from Grenland.

Item. From the Ice that hangeth on the Hilles in Gronland, commeth's great Fosse, Fiold and Cold. And fuch a Fogge commeth out of the Ice of Trolebothon: and it is a great Wil- Trolebothon. There are Sables, Marternes, Hermelins, or Ermins, White Beares, and White Hawkes, neffe.

The Commo-Seales, White and Gray, Gold and Silver Hills, alto Fish dryed and salted, and thousands dities of Greeof Salmons: also store of Losh Hides and other Hides. There are Hares, Foxes, Wolues, Ot- land ters, and Veltfraien. Now if it please God they come to Gronland, then shall they set but two men on shoare; Good counseli who shall take with them divers kindes of Marchandize : and let them deale with good for travelling

order, and let them bee such as can make good Report, what they there doe see or finder to Gronland.

and let them obserue whether men may there Land or no, with the loue of the Inhabitants. And I counfaile and charge those that shall Trade for Gronland, that they set no more folke on Land, but they keepe men enough to man the Ship. And looke well to the courfe you hold to Grendand, that if those that bee set on shore bee taken, they may come home againe with Gods helpe. For if shipping returne, they may come home or bee relecued in a yeere and a day. And in your living there fo demeane your selves to them, that in time

you may winne the Countrey and the people. Remember my Scholler and Clearke, which shall bee there appointed as Commander, that you fend those on Land, that will shew themselves diligent Writers, and that they carrie themselves so, that they may learne thereby the State of the Countrey. They shall take with them two Boars and eight Oares, and take Tynder-boxes for fire if there be no Habitation. Also Tynder-boxes fet vp Croffes of Wood or Stone, if need be.

This Note following was found in an old Booke of Accompts, in the Teere I 506.

[Normis, From Gtad in Normay, standing neere the Latitude of fixtie three Degrees, you Courfes for I shall hold your course due West: and that course will bring you von Swartnesse in Gron- Gronland. land. And in this course is the least streame and least perill of Swalesn or Indrastis. There is leffe perill this way, then is on the North-side; you shall keepe ? of the Sea on Freefand side, and one third on Island fide. And if it bee cleere weather, and you have kept your course right A florme in Welt, you shall see the Mount of Snewel John in the South-well part of Jland. And if you have the North a storme in the North, you must shunne it as you can, till sibilarly be North of you. Then while the

40 shall you sayle right with it, and seeke the Land ; and you shall finde a good Hauen, called Ericks Ford: Ericks Ford.

Item, If you bee betweene Gronland and Island , you may see Snenels lokul on Island, and Whitfarke on Gronland, if it be cleere weather. Therefore men of experience doe affirme, that it is but thirtie leagues betweene both.

Alfo if you have a storme betweene Gronland and Island, you must have care you bee not laid on Freefland with the streame and Winde; for the streame or Current doth fun strong vpon Freefland, out of the North.

Also if you have a storme out of the South, you shall not sayle out of your course, but A storme in keepe it as neere as you can possibly, till Whit farke in Gronland beare North off you: then the South 30 fayle toward it, and you shall come into Ericks Ford, as it is afore-faid in the first Article.

Yy 3

CHAP. VII.

A Defeription of the Countries of Siberia, Samoicda, and Tingoesia.

Together with the lourneyes leading who the same Countries toward the East and North-east, so they are daily frequented by the Moscouites.

The first and fecond Paragraph: were rublithed in Latine by Hellell Gener. dus An.: 611. here a little contracted : the laft I found in M. Hakligts Pipers. Wichida. Woite Sea :0 the North of Ruffia. Samoieds. for the Sa-The first Vovace warm the.

Discouerie of Siberia, and the subjecting of the same

Here is in Mosconie, a Kindred called the Sonnes of Oneeko, of a rusticke or base

descent, and first sprung from one Oneeke a Husband-man. He being very rich in

Lands, dwelt vpon a certaine River called Wichida, or Winfogda, falling into the

Riner Duma, which about one hundred leagues heratth, neere vato the calle 2 called S. Michael the Archangel, which falleth into the White Sca. This Oneckobeing rich (as is faid) had also many Children, God having largely bleffed and prounded him with plentic of all things. Yet neuertheleile, hee had an earnest delire and affection. Arra or Onteks to know what Countreyes were possessed and inhabited by those people, which yeerely came into Russia to trassicke, bringing with them costly Furres, and divers other Merchandizes, much diffring in Language, Apparel, Religion, and Behauiour, calling themselves Samoieds, and by other vnknowne names. These people came enery yeare downe the Riner Wichida, and exchanged their Commodities with the Ruffes and Mosconites, in the Townes of Ofel and Vstrug, on the River Offel and Villag Duina; which at that time were the Receits and chiefe Mart Townes of all kind of Marchandizes, but especially of costly Furres. Onecke therefore (as hath beene faid) was most desirous to 30 know, from whence these people came, or what Countreyes they did inhabit, easily conjecturing, That great wealth was there to be gotten; fince the Furres yeerely brought them amounted to a great fumme of Money. Wherefore secretly hee got acquaintance and conforted him-Samuel coun-felfe with divers of them, and fent in their company about tenne or twelve of his owne people into those parts; enjoyning them, that through what Countreyes so ever they should travell they should make diligent fearch of enery particular thing therein, and fully observe the Manners, Rices, Dwellings, and whole course of life of those Nations; that are their returns they might bring from thence perfect knowledge thereof. Which they having at length performed, he enbring from theme period another street and flewed them all fanour, but with especiall 40 charge to keepe filence. Hee likewife kept all thefe things close to himfelfe, not reuealing them

The fecond Voyage.

and diuers great Riuers. River Obi. Great wealth the prople. No Bread Shooting, Apparell.

Houtes. Now when as Oneeko understood by their report, that which he so much longed to know, he together with certayne others of his Friends, continued his Trafficke into those Countreyes for 60 diuers yeares together : by meanes whereof the Oneekos grew very mightie, and bought great continuance of Poffestions in all parts. Those that dwelled neere vnto them beeing ignorant from whence all this Voyage. this wealth arofe, greatly wonded at it. For the Oncelor builded Churches in some of their

to any man. And the next yeere following, he fent thither a greater number of his people, joyning with them certaine of his Kindred and Alliance. These carried with them divers base Marchandize; as small Bels, and other like Dutch small Wares; and tooke diligent notice of every thing in those pares; and after they had palled many Deferts, and divers great Rivers, they came to the River Obi; Many Deferts where making Acquaintance and Friendship with the Samoieds, they found that Furres were to be had for a small price, and that great wealth was there easily to be gotten; and further, that this people had not any Cities, but fixed together in Companies, and peaceably, and governed by tome of the ancientest among them; that they were lothsome in their feeding, and lived on the fieth of fuch beafts as they tooke : that they had no knowledge of Corne or Bread, were cunby the Tr de ning and skilfull Archers, making their Bowes of a gentle and flexible kind of Wood, and that to the Ruser of their Arrowes were headed with sharpened stones or fish bones; with those they killed wilde Conditions of heafts, which are exceeding plentifull in those places: that they sowed also with bones of fishes. feruing them for Needles; their thred being made of the finewes of certaine small beasts, and so Gournment. they tew together the Furres, wherewith they cloath themselves : the Furrie side in Summer turned outward, and in Winter inward. That they couered their Houses with the Skins of Elkes and such like beaits, little esteemed among them. Finally, these Messengers of Oneeko, searched curiously into every matter, and returned home flored with coffly Farres.

CHAP.7. S.I. Osoil. Imperial Priviledge, River Wichida, Oneekos.

Villages. Yea, afterward they erected in the Towne or Ofoil upon the Wichida, where at that time they dwelt, an exceeding faire Church, which was rayled from the very roundations or newen flone. Finally, they knew no end of their goods.

Now among the Ruffes it goeth for a common Proverbe, that Hee which bath no friends in Court, is fearce to be accounted in the number of the living. For most commonly it happeneth, that they that excell others in any thing, are prefently enuyed and falily accused in the Princes Court, where if they have not a friend to fuccour them, they are forth-with without hearing the cause, oppressed; yea, and veterly ruined. For which cause the Oneekos beeing growne to L. Eoris, that * much wealth, as is faid, got into the fauour of one of the greatest in the Court, which was Bo- These date Em-

to risodanoua, Brother to the Wife of the Emperour Pheodor Enanousch then reigning; to whom perous. The TROMANONA, District to the White Miles promatter : who first presenting him with gifts after the custome of the Countrey , prayed him to sh. grant them hearing in a matter, which they had to deliuer for the benefit of the whole Empire. Boris prefently liftning to this Petition, received them with extraordinary kindnesse : and after they had declared vnto him the fituation of the Countreyes of Samoiedia, and Siberia, then what they had seene and observed therein, and how great Riches might thence arise vnto the Empire of Molcouia. Boris presently grew into an ardent delire to fet forward this businesse, entertayning them as his Children, and gracing them to the vttermost of his power, procuring them from the Emperour a most ample Printledge, by which it was ordayned, That they should for e- Imperiall-ri-20 uerenjoy the Lands which they possessed, and might dispose of them vnto their Herres at their sideden

plealure. And farther, it it happened they were abiding in the Citie of Molena, he tooke them into his owne Sled : which among the Mosconites is the greatest kind of honour, especially being offered by principall Noblemen, such as then was Boris, a man of the greatest power, and in whom the chiefe authoritie of the Empire refted. Boris pondering these things attentiuely, signified the whole matter to the Emperour, to whom it was very pleasing; And not sleeping about the matter, employed therein certayne Captaynes, and Gentlemen of small abilitie of his owne followers: commanding them to prepare themselues to goe to that Iourney, in company of fuch as the Oneekas should appoint vnto them, and that they should apparell themselves gallantly, and like voto Ambastadors, adding further certayne Souldiers, and Presents of small value to 30 be distributed among the people, to which they should come : enjoyning them further to note diligently all Paffages, Rivers, High-wayes, Woods, and what elfe they should meete with in

their travell; as also to commit to memorie the names of them; that at their returne they might make a faithfull and true report thereof : adding further that they should intreat the people with all courtelle, and that they should feeke out some convenient place for building of Caltles and Fortreffes, and that in any case (if it were possible) they should bring backe with them into Molconia, some of the Inhabitants of those Countryes.

These Messengers being sufficiently furnished with all things necessary for the Journey, name - The first Voyly, Apparell, Weapons, Money, and Prelents, departing from the Molena, not long after came age fet out by to the River Wichida, and to the Omekos: who also fent some of their owne people with them. Baris Gudsnows.

40 Alloone as they were arrived into those parts, they began to performe what was given them in charge, shewing freely all tokens of courteile vnto the barbarous people, and carefully obseruing who were of greatest authoritie among them, to whom they vied reuerence and gaue gifts, such as were of small and almost no value to themselves, but which seemed so precious vnto the other, that when the Moscouites were comming a farre off towards them, they would stay for them with great dancings and clapping of their hands, and cast themselves downe at the feet of the Givers, being so gallantly attyred, accounting them altogether as Gods. The Mosconites vfing the Samoieds for their Interpretors, which had continued certayne yeeres in the Villages of Moscoma, to learne their Language, began to discourse with the Barbarians concerning their Emperour of Moscouie, whom they wonderfully extolled, and made him little leffe then an Earthly God, enterlacing other things with all, whereby those people were stirred up to wish

50 that they might behold thesethings with their eyes. These their desires were pleasing to the Molcoustes, who fignified that they were likewife well contented therewithall : Adding, that they would leave certayne pledges among them, which during the Samoieds abode in Mosconia, might learne their Language: And by this meanes they drew vnto their purpose the good will of many of the people on the Well-fide of Obs, who of their owne accord fibjected themselves to the authoritie of the Moscourtes, and suffered them to lay a Taxation upon them, promiting They fel mit yeerely of enery head (not excepting the Boyes that were but yet learning to handle the Bow) themselves of two skinnes of Sables; which to themselves were of no value, but esteemed of the Moscounes the Moscounes as precious as Iewels. These they promised to deliuer to such a Treasurer as the Emperour should ordavne. Neither did they faile to performe the fame.

After this the Mellengers pailed over the River Obi, and travelled beyond it almost two hundred leagues toward the East and North-east, having seene by the way many wild beasts of Travil be-Arong thapes, moit cleare Countaynes, extraordinary Plants and Trees, pleatant Woods, and Sa- youd Out. moved or divers forts, whereof fome did ride on Elkes or Loftes, other were drawne in Sleds by Elkes or L free

Ruine Deere.

Raine Decre, and others also were drawne by Dogges, which are equall to Harts for swiftnesse, Raine Dette, and others and west cleaving by Dogges, which are equal to traits for invittedite, Finally, many other chings in their whole lourney they met with, not before seene, and thereremains many or metamogram that whose country and truly noted downer, that they might more certainly fore to be margement at a winten orderly and thus noted now me, that only might more certainly report the fame at their returne. And fo at length taking with them some voluntarie Sameieds, report the anneal countries of their owne people to learne their Language, they returned backe into and returns there due to their owne people to rearise then hangoogs, they returned backe into Moleonia; where at their first conveniencie they made knowne to Boru, and by him vato the

Samoieds thoo.

Imperior the whole fuccine of their voyage.

They maruelled at the Samoieds which were brought vinto them, commanding them to make I ney matteriet at the samoutest without west enought who chem, commanding them to make form of their cunning in flootings which they did so perfectly, that almost it fremed to fome shew of their cunning in shooting; which they use to perfectly, that amount accements any man incredible. For taking a piece of Coynelesse then our * Pennie, and fashing it to the our standard standard to the country of the co any man increasion. For taking a piece of Coyne sene then one from the fame, as they could very lardly differe it, they did enery time that they did froot fo affuredly hit the fame, that they did not one mife it. Where at many of the beholders did aboue measure wonder.

And on the other fide, the Samoieds as greatly wondred both at the Moscountes manner of liuing and fashions, as also at the statelinesse of the Citie: neither did they without a certayne ung and rannons, as and actue naterinene of the order, mention one deep without a certayne terrour behold the Emperour himselfe, so richy attired and mounted either on Horse-backe, or in terrour period one Emperour imments, to many active and insulated that of many Nobles most gallantly adorned. Then with admiration they beheld the Guards furnified with their Caluers of acorned. Anen with samination may nonemaking control to minimed with their canners, or whom about foure hundred waited on the Emperour at his going abroad. So of allo as they whom about foure hundred waited on the Emperous at many among the Mosesnites, and saw to many 20 feare the ranging or the series, which are very many among the Component, are naw to many faire shops, and the reft of the Cities beautie, they were altogether aftensshed, and thought themselves to bee in some Mansion of the Gods; wishing withall, that they were a while among their Countrey-men to tell them of all things. Yes, they reported themselues to be hapning their country-mento tect their of an enings. As, any reported mentions to be map-pie, that they had the fortune to ferue fo glorious an Emperour, whom they altogether accounted as a Diuine power. The Meates which the Mosconites did set before them, they did greethe same have a sum measured that the same were more pleasant to their tase, then the raw flesh, or fish dried in the winde, wherewith they feed themselves at home. Finally, the raw nem, or mn orice in the winner, where with they recall the miniments at home. Finally, they promifed to receine the Emperour for their Lord; and to perfivade their Countrey-men, they promise to receive the superiors to the state of the property of the Emperous to vouchinhabiting farreand whole to doe the same. They manusty and prayed the Emperous to volunt. After them the favour, to fend them certaine Governours to rule over them, and to whom they might pay the aforefaid Tribute. Concerning their Idolatrie, there was no speech made thereof, but they were left to their owne customes. Notwithstanding, I thinke that the Christian Faith would easilyhe spred among them, if they had sufficient and godly Teachers. Neither doubt I but the Mofemies would have taken order therein, if they had not beene hindred by their moft

These things so done as is declared, the Oncekes were raised to great Honours, and endowed And the trings to come as in Supreme Authoritic over many places, adjoyning vinco their with great Priviledges, as allowith Supreme Authoritic over many places, adjoyning vinco their Lands, enjoying Postessions lying one hundred miles a funder upon the Rivers of Dinna Whebida, and Suchana: fo that they are very mighty and rich, and increase daily in greater Honours.

It was further orday ned by the Mofemiter, that there should bee places chosen by the River 40 Ob, and in the fields addoping vnto it, fortified by the natural lituation for the building of Catiles thereon, and furnishing them with Garrisons, and that there should be sent thither a chiefe Gouernour, principally for further discourring the Countrey, and bringing it under subiection. These things so ordayned, did likewise take effect. And first or all, there were builded certaine Cailles enclosed with certaine strong beames, cut out of the Woods thereby, and fastned one in another in double rewes, filled betweene with earth, and fortified with Carrifons; And so great a multitude of men is duely sent thither, that in some places there are Cities affembled, confilling of Poles, Tatas, Ruffes, and other Nations mingled together. For, into these parts are sent all that are banished, Murtherers, Traitors, Theeues, and the scumme of fuch as deferue death: fome of which are for a time kept in prilon, others enforced to continue 50 there for certaine yeers, enery one according to the rate of his offence: whereby there are very populous affemblies of people growne together, who with the Cattles already builded, doe alpopulation and the state of the meane fort, daily flocking thither, the rather most make a pretie Kingdome: Many men of the meane fort, daily flocking thither, the rather

Siberia and

Caftles buil.

for that they enjoy great priuledges, neither pay any thing for the Lands which they posterie.

The whole Countrey is called Siberia, the Citie builded therein Siber. And in deed at the first, the Offenders among the Mosconies, did no less tremble at the name of Siberia, then doe Then Male coill perfons in Landon, when they are threatned with New-gate: for they were forth-with after not as event persons an ememory were easy as consistent and the end of the consistency of the position of the form of th fields at the Prince difference of the Contempt, But Noblemen and great Perfonges, if at any time they incurre the Prince diff. pleasure, doe as yet very much loath the name of Siberia. For many times both them- 60 felues, with their Wiues and Families are fent away into those parts : where some Office is committed unto them, till the Emperours anger bee asswaged, and they called home into

I will now shew the way by which they travell out of Mosconia into those parts, and that

in the best manner that I could get notice thereof. Which whatsoeuer it shall feeme to bee, I This Tournall have not attayned vinto it, without great paines and ready furtherance of some friends, which to the North-I found in the Court, while I continued in Ruffia: who though they were ready to pleafure me. east was harde and that I had been every instant with them about it, yet with much adoe were brought to com- ly obrayned by municate this particular lournall vnto me. For if at any time after, when the land should bee at lome frends quiet, it should any way come to light, doubtlesse it would cost them all their lives. For such is The great danthe disposition of the Russes, that they will not indure to have the secrets of their State to bee ger for impar-

≱. II.

A briefe Description of the wayes and Rivers, leading out of Moscouia toward the East and North-east into Siberia, Samoiedia, and Tingoesia, as they are daily frequented by the Ruffes : with further Discoueries sowards Tartaria and China.

Rom the Citie Ofoil vpon the River Wiehide, where the Oneekos dwell, they goe a- Ofoil. gainst the fireame, untill they come to laninis, 2 little Towne built by the Ruffes, laninis in daice and it is diftant from Ofoil almost seventeene dayes journey. Whither before they journey diffant and it is diffant from Ujot almost seuenteene way to sound;

come, they paffe many Rivers and Woods. The River Wiebida springeth out of the trom Ojot, accome, they paffe many Rivers and Woods. The grant from the trom Ojot, accome, they paffe many Rivers and form the trom Ojot, accome to the trom Mountaines of Ingeria, which to the South ioyne vpon Tartarie, and from thence runne Northwards to the Ocean Sea. Out of the same Mountaines issueth the River Perfora, which falleth Interia. into the Ocean Sea on this fide the Streight of Waygats. From laumis, after three weekes jour- River Petora. nev, they come to Neem; a River so named of the gentle gliding of her streames through the Neem River 3. Woods. For Neem in English fignifieth Still or Dumbe. On this River they proceed about weekes jourfine dayes space with their Boats; and then, for that the Neem taketh his course another way, nie for shortning their journey, they must of force cause their stuffe to be carried by Land, the space of aleague: And so they come to the Wifers, a River isluing out of certaine Rockes adiopning From Neem to of a league. And to they come to the ways and the Males call Camenas. From hence they are journey. carried downe the River Wifers, for the full space of nine dayes, vntill they come to Soil Cam- From Wifes to Goy, a small Towne builded by the Moscouites, for refreshing of Trauellers for a short space, Soil Camson which hence forward are to proceed on their lourney by Land. As for the Wifers, it keeping 9- dayes. on his course somewhat farther, at length falleth into the Cam, which passing by Viateann, a Volga by the Towns of Mofcours, falleth into the great River Ross, commonly called Volgs, which entreth Tatter called with feuenty branches into the Cafrian Sea, as I have received from eye witnesses.

The Towne of Soil Campeon is reasonably inhabited, having many Villages round about it. The Soil compley. Inhabitants, for the most part are Russes or Tartars. Here is great store of Cattell, and chiefly of Horses. Transellers having here some what refreshed themselves, doe lade their carriages on Horses. 40 and travell for the most part through Mountaines full of Firres, Pines, and other trees of strange forts. Betweene these Mountaines they passe ouer the Rivers Soibs, and from thence over Cof. The River

na, both running toward the North-east. Now these Mountaines are divided into three parts; whereof the two first are passed over costs. each of them in two dayes, and the third in foure dayes. The first part is called Coofining Ca- Mountaines in men: The fecond Gir sin for Camen: The third Podain for Camen. And doubtleffe all their mounthere parts. tainous Countries are much different from the other Countries out of which they enter into Comingon Cathem. For the Woods upon them, are fairer and thicker growne with trees, bearing enery where Circuiter Care diners forts of Plants. These three Defarts are frequented by none in a manner but Tartars, and and Samoieds, who onely hunt after those coffly Furres, which are to pay their tribute to the Podminson Ca-50 Emperour of Mofconia. The Mountaines of Podninfoy Camen are higher then the reft, and for mon. the most part covered with Snow and Cloudes, and therefore difficult for Travellers to passe ouer: but by little and little they have a gentle descent. From thence they come to Vergateria, Vergateria.

not farre from thence, is all the rest of the yeere very shallow. But the Spring approaching, when the Snow melts from the hoary Hills, and the Land waters arife, it is paffed ouer with Skiffes and small Boats, Vergateria is the first Towne of the Vergateria the Countrey of Siberia, and was begun to be builded with some other Townes within these one first Towne of and twenty yeeres. It is reasonably full of buildings, and the lands about it are tilled as in Molconia. Heere there is retident for the Emperour of Molconia 2 Gouernour, which yeerely Ruffian Gouer. 60 at the beginning of the Spring, by way of the Rivers doth distribute great store of Corne, and nour. Victuals among the Caftles with Garrisons throughout all Siberia: furnishing also in like manner the Moscowites, which remayne beyond the River Oby. For in those places the ground is not yet tilled; and the Samoieds, as before is faid, for the most part feed on the flesh of

wilde beafts.

Downe

in which Towne they must abide vntill the Spring, by reason of the River Toers, which arising Toers River.

Fine dives iourney to lasbanis.

by fled.

of Siberia.

Downe the River Toers, in fine dayes they come to Isphanis, a Towne builded and inhabited within their two yeeres. Thence againe they paffe downe the Teers, and having proceeded two dayes thereon, they are enforced by reason of the often windings and turnings of the Ritwo dayes districting that a contract of the way. In their places there now dwell uer, to cut ouer it in certaine places, for shortning of the way. In their places there now dwell

here and there, Tartars and Samoieds, living for the most part upon Cattell and Fishing. At length leaving Toers, they come to the mighty River Tabab, diftant from Vergateria about Tabab a mich-Actengent reasons and the state of the state ty River 200 leagues from builded by those about mentioned. But many trauell alio from Isphanis to Times, by Sleas in the Winter time, in the space of twelve dayes. And here is vied much buying and selling of From Iashania the whiten time, at the pace of cross cayes, and Samoieds, And this is a very comment 16 to Times va dayes iourney place, for such as determine to stay in the Countrey not aboue sixe moneths. But many doe fearch the further parts, and trauell farre beyond the Oby, toward the East and South, Many travell farre beyond

From Times they come to Tobalfon, the chiefe of all the Townes of Siberia: wherein is the farre beyond Of toward the feat of the chiefe Governour of Siberia, and of the Moscowies that are in the same. To this Cortomard the East & South. place yearely are brought from the other Townes of the whole Countrey, as well on this fale, as beyond Oby the tributes, which being brought together, and guarded with Souldiers, are after carried into Moscomis to the Emperour. Here also the Law is most seuerely administred: and all the other Gouernours in Samoiedsa, and Stheria, are bound to obey him onely. In this Citie befides is the chiefe Market of commodities brought out of Mofeonia; the Tartar: out of the South parts, and almost farthest parts of Tartare, and men of other Nations repairing thither: 20 who, the farther that the report of these Countries reacheth, doe in so much the greater number affemble thither: whereby there arifeth great profit to the Mofcounter. Furthermore, in diuers places there are Churches and Chappels crected, wherein the Greeke Religion is exercifed, which among the Ruffer, and other Northerne People is most vsed, although corrupted with divers Superfittions. But how soeuer, no man is forced against his will to their Religion: but certaine gentle meanes are vied by the Ruffer, by which these people are perswaded and

Taffe River.

Pohemy a

Tris River. Olicorerod

River Oby.

Caftle 200

They travell

The Citie Tobolfes is situated on the River Tris, which with a most forcible streame, and as it were another Danubius, rifing from the South, taketh his course toward the Oby, through which it feemeth to runne with the fame courfe. On the other fide is the Riner Tolor, of which the Citie taketh her name. Into this falleth the Ruer 72/4, which feemeth to fpring from the North-eaft, and from certaine Mountaines there vpon the Coaft. On the fide of this River the Moleonites have of late builded a Towne, called Pobers, inhabited with dwellers drawne out of Siberia, for no other cause, but that it is enurroned with an exceeding fertile soyle, as also with very pleafant Woods, wherein dauers forts of wilde beafts doe breed, as Panthers, Ounces, Foxes, Sables, and Marterns. Nowe Poberty is diffant from Tobalfes, about two weekes Journey toward the North-east. Tris with almost the diffance from Tobelfea, falleth into the Obj. And at the mouth of it was builded a Towne calle: Oljeogorod, but afterward razed downe by commandement of the Gouernour of Siberia . The cause whereof was not then knowne: which notwithilanding I gueffe to have been either the excremity of the cold or that the Towne flood 40 rer vnto the Seathen they thought fit, and feared left tome inconvenience might grow thereby. for which cause about fitte leagues about that razed Towns, they builded another upon an Iland Zergolia a town of the River Oty, called Zergolia. From hence fayling up the River, they vie small layles, either because winds blow faintly, or for the highnesse of the shoare : fo that, though the Obybee almost every where very broad; notwithstanding, they drew their Boats in it with ropes, altogether after the same fort that they trauell vp the Rivers of Mosconia.

Two hundred leagues aboue Zergolia, they came to Normfooi, a Cafile builded thirteene yeers agoe, at which time the Gouernour fent certaine men thither out of Suberia, to feeke tus Counleagues aboue tries profitable for mankind, and fie to build Townes in. Wherefore at that time they builded this Caftle, and furnished it with a certaine Garrison, in a very pleasant, wholsome, warme, and fertile foyle, and wherein were great store of Beasts and Fowles of rare kinds. The very Castle being situated toward the South-east, by little and little grew to be a Citie. The Inhabitants whereof were enjoyned to proceed by degrees into further and more temperate Countries, and to trafficke truely in every place, and courteoully and kindly to entreat all people that they met withall: whereby at length they might more largely extend the Dominion, and ipread abroad the Rassian Name. Wherefore flocking thither in great numbers, and piercing into the Inland foure hundred leagues, they found goodly Countries, but not inhabited. And whereas ten yeeres past, having fayled two hundred leagues up the River Oby, they lighted upon a Countrey very fruitfull and pleasant, which was very temperate, and free from all discommodities, and the Winters very short, and in a manner none at all. They tooke occasion thereupon to returne into The Reigne of Siberia, & to find word of these things into Moscouns. Born Godonous was then Emperor there, 60 Pera Codemost. who having received fuch good tidings, forthwith commanded the Governour of Secreta, that with all speed hee should cause a Citie to bee builded there. The Governour obeyed, and there was a Caille builded upon his commandement, with certaine houses adjoyned; so that now it

is a large Citie. The name thereof is Tooma, because they understood, that a great multitude of Tartars in times patt were feated there, of whom this Citie tooke that name for the pleafant. The Cide nesse of the fituation thereof. And is is reported that their Tartars had at that time a King. whose name was Alias: Whereby it came to passe, that the Citie which was first builded, held Tarrer King. out many affaults of fundry people that dwelt in those Champion Countreyes. And now this Citie is fo mightie, that in procede of time, some reasonable great Kingdome is likely to grow

Furthermore, betweene this Castle of Noxinscoi, and the Citie Tooma, and Siberia, the Mosconites daily doe difcouer many people dwelling in the In-land parts, fome of whom call themto felues Offachies, and now are growne into one bodie with the Tartars, Samoleds, and Ruffes, li- Offachies a uing friendly together; they have many Kings among them, almost like vinto the Indians (I Pcople. speake of the pettie Kings, not of the greater Kings of India.) And to bee briefe, the Molcounter have proceeded to farre into that mayne Land, that we have just cause to marriell thereat. Mores ouer, there are many Castles and Townes betweene the Riners of Obsand Tris, builded almost at the same time when Tobolfes was, and are now proper Townes: whose Inhabitants are Mof. conites, Tartars, and Samoieds of their kind, which we call, The tame Samoieds, in scipe of of those which are altogether wild.

And the first of the Townesis Tara : from which place it is neere ten dayes sourney between Inguerum. Objand Trijs. Then forgoetum, builded about fifteene yeares past. Befobia, and Mangarofoifeoi. Befobia. 20 gorod, both of them builded about lorgoetum toward the South. The Inhabitants that dwell on Manganfaifeir the west fide of the River Obi, seeke daily to discover more and more. On this side of Obiare Nationand feated the Civies Tobolfea, Siberia, Berefaia, and certaine others, builded voon certaine Rivers : Toma bevond and more are builded dayy. Beyond Obs are Naring, Tooms, and divers other Cities, the Inhabia, Obs. tants whereof infreed of Horfes vf. Reyne Deere, or exceeding fwift Dogs, which they fatten Reyne Deere tants whereof infleed of Hories vi. Reyne Deere, or exceeding with Dogs, which ency factor and exceeding with diners kinds of fifthes, and especially with Thomebacks; because they thinke they be made in fifth Dogs. the stronger with that kinde of food. lorgoetam, whereof I spake before, is builded in an Hand vied infleed of of the River Obi.

Alfo about Narim as men travaile toward the East, they meete withthe River Teles: on the fed with banke whereof they have builded a Castle, named Composition The gartison Souldiers of which Fisher in 30 Caitle, together with the Inhabitants of Narm, about fearn yeeres paft, were commanded by the Fallban the Gouernoor of Siberia to travell East, and diligently to learch what voknowne Nations youd Obidwelt in those parts. Therefore travelling through certaine wast Deferts, for the space of tenne Comsof lies weekes or there abouts, passing in the way through many faite Countreys, many Woods, and Castle Rivers, at length they espied certaine Cottages set up in the fields, and certaine Hords or travell Each Companies of people. But because they had Samoreds and Tarters for their guides, which were ward from Obe. acquainted with those places, they were not afraid. The people came vnto them reuerently, wherein the and with humble behaviour, and fignified by the Samoieds and Tartars, that they were called Tingoefes were Tingoefi, and that their dwelling was vpon the banke of the great River Iemfee, which they faid first discouedid ipring from the South South-east, but that they knew not the head thereof. These people Tinggessea peop 40 were deformed with swellings under their throats, and in their speech they thratled like ple dweiling Turkie-cocks. Their language feemed not much to differ from the Samoieds, which also vinder- in Companies flood many of their words.

Jenifee being a River farre bigger then Obi, hath high mountaines on the East, among which The Timesies are some that cast out nice and brimstone. The Countrey is plaine to the West, and exceeding deformed fertile, flored with plants, flowers, and trees of divers kinds. Also many strange fruits do grow with swellings therein, and there is great abundance of rare Fowles. Ienifee in the ipring overfloweth the vader their fields about feuentic leagues, in like manner as they report vinto vs. as Nilus doth Egipt. Whereste attending with the Tingoes being well acquainted, doe keepe beyond the River, and in the mountaines, drinkers of untill it decrease, and then returne, and bring downe their heards of Cattell into the plaines.

50 The Togoef being a very gentle people, by the perswasion of the Sommeds, without delay Mountaines fubmitted themselves to the tame Governours which they obeyed, whom they reverenced as a on the East kind of Gods. But what God they worship, or with what rites, it is vincertaine, neither as yet cashing out fire can bee knowne, the Moscowites being negligent fearchers into fuch things.

Neither hereaf er will I maruell, though the Streight of Wangars bee ftopped up to the The ouerflow-North-east, with such huge Mountaines of Ice, since the Rivers Obs and lenifee, and very many ing of lenifee more, whose names are not yet knowne, powre out so huge a quantitie thereof, that in a man. in the springs ner it is incredible. For it commeth to palle in the beginning of the fpring, that in places neere from melted vnto the Sea, the Ice through the excessive thicknesse and multitude thereof, doth carriedowne Snow whole woods before it. And without doubt this is the cause, that about the shoares of Reason why. 60 the Streight of Wayfats, fo great abundance of floting wood is every where feene. And where- "agasts is flopas in that Streight neere vnto Noua Zembla, it is extreame cold, it is no maruell, if in regard of pid with Ice. the narrownesse of the Streight, so huge heapes of Ice are gathered and frozen together, that in justions the the end they grow to fixtie, or at least to fiftie fathoms thicknesse, as this present yeere (1612) in the Streight

Tara a Towner

they measured the same, which at the cost of Isaac Lamer went thither in a small Barke, in of Waygots.

sheeter cash

Yestifip rit:

إدلان

Other

ber many

Geta K. . .

eren named

neilire a Tie-

ealer in Geta

to the River

whose companie the said Isaac Lamer would have fent mee, but I would not. For I am readie to proue, that this is no passible way, and that they will still lose their labour, who seems shall attempt the same , vnlesse they take another course in the businesse. But let vs returne to our

The fire your age Eastward beyond th Riuer lenifee. dwe:l toward the South which are in warre one with Tarters, as before in Goes is feene. The fecond voyage? Eaftbeyond the River Ienifie.

The description of the peo. ple dwelling vpon the Ru are the people of the East both Tartare and Chinois. The third voyage beyond

Gertaine pe

pie taken.

The River

Belis.

The sowling ofbrazen Bells:of which they baue in China, and perhaps in the North parts aboue it. Hories in Pil. with fquare fayles. They came BOI home rill Autumne. neffe of this

Countrey in

Aprilland

rurti-ermore, those whom I mentioned before, vindertooke a long Journey beyond the Riner Lenifee Esitward, and were somewhat afraid to turne to the South, taking with them certaine Tingoestes, by whom they were informed, that many Nations dwelt toward the South which differed much from them, whose Kings were most commonly in warre one with another, But having travelled certaine dayes to no great purpose, at length they returned home; Yet be-But naming transmitted to the Timpoffer, to learch those Countreys more thorowly; 10 who promife that they would doe fo : And they renewed the league which formerly they had warre one with make with the Mofemites. The Mofemites at their departure, left diners of their people in are the Zagatay those parts, and also certaine Samojeds and Tartars their confederates, after they had beflowed fome small gifts among the Tingoefies,

The yeers following, the Tingoesies sent diners of their owne people Eastward : who trauelling somewhat farther then they had done before, at length found another mightie River. fomewhat leffer then lenifee, but as fwift as it : And following the course thereof some few dayes, they lighted upon certaine people whom they tooke, being switter a foot then they: Burthey could not understand their language, fauing that by certaine figures and words of the Saluages, which often repeated om om, they coniectured that on the other fide of the Riner, they 20 heard it often thunder. They added also, that they had often heard the noyse of men in those parts: And pointing to the River with their fingers, they often repeated the word Pifids: whereby the Tingaesses gathered, that that should bee the name of the River; but by the voyces om om, the Moscowites did afterward gather, that they were knollings of Bells. The Tingogfierat their returns from thence, carried with them divers of the people of that Country, which died all by the way, either for feare, or through change of ayre. The Tingoe fies were verie sorrie for their deaths. For at their returne they : firmed, that they were men of good vnderstanding, well fet, with small eyes; flat faced, browne colour, and enclining to tawnic.

When the Moscouitat wnderstood these things by the Samoiest, which returned into Siberia out of the Country, of the Imgosfee, efticones they were flirred vp with a great defire to learch 30 out the farther parts of that Countrey, wherefore they became futors to the Gouernour, that they might bee fene thither with some others soyned with them. Hee presently yeelded to their request, granting vnto them a certaine companie of Souldiers, and enioyned them curiously to fearch out all things, and to take with them Tinguefies, Samoieds, and Tartars. So beeing about senen hundred men, they passed the Riner Obi, and came to the Riner Ienifes, through the countreys of the Samoieds and Tingoefiers: And paffing the River, they marched forth Eaftward, hauing the Tingeefes for their guides : which did not onely ferue them as guides, but also plentifully prouided all the company with victuals, taking with wonderfull dexteritie, Fowles, Goats, Reyne Deere, and such like wilde beasts: as also no small quantitie of fish out of the Rivers which they met in the way. Having travailed as farre as the River Pofids, they pitched their 40 Tents on the banks thereof; with purpose to stay there till it were passable, the Ice being short-Penson the same tiers of with purpose of any tiers of the write paints, the new being morn-ly to breake vp. because the forms waste hand, at which time they came hither, yet they durft not paffe our the Riner Photos, having now plainly heard the found, whereof they were adurtified before: which they certainly judged to bee nothing elfe but the towling of Brazen Bells; and when the wind blew from the farther fide of Pifide, they fometimes heard the noyle of men and horses. Moreouer they saw certayne sayles, though but a few; whereby they conicctured that they were veffels, which fayled downe the streame. They fayd further, that the fayles were square, like the Indian sayles, as wee suppose. But seeing no people at all on that fide of the Riner where they remained, after they had stated there a certaine space, and had perceited that in the spring time the River did greatly swell (which neverthelesse they can hardly 50 affirme for a certaintie, fince the shoare is high on both sides:) At length by very great iourneys, and yet not before Autumne they returned home to Siberia; reporting, and that vpon their Weffels fayling oathes, That in the moneths of Aprill and May, they were very much delighted with the exceeding faire shew of that Countrey; And that they had seene therein many rare Plants, Flowers, Fruits, Trees, Fowles, and wild Beafts. But the Mojeounes are nothing curious in fuch things, as men that feeke after nothing but gaine, in all things else very negligent and rude,

These newes being brought to the Court of Moscoma, the Emperour Boris , and the Noblemen that were with him, much wondering thereat, and inflamed with a great defire to fearch out exactly all particulars, refolued the yeere next enfuing, to fend Ambaffadours thither, which should carrie presents with them, and should take Tartars, Samoieds, and Tingoesies in their com- 60 panie. And they were enjoyned to fearch out the further fide of the River Pifida, and to make a league of friendship with the Kings if they foundary, and set downe in writing all things that they could observe by the way, and should make report of them most exactly. But these things did not take effect, because of the breaking out of the civill warres, among the Mosconites in the

I am of opinion, that in this countrey is the beginning, and the bounds of the Kingdome of Theoring of Cataia, which bordereth vpon China. Yet I feare the Moscouites will lose their labour, if they the Author of

Catala, which borderecth your China. Yet I feare the Majorantes will lofe their labour, if they it handbord euer returns thicher. But time will declare the august hereoff.

Yet for all this, by the commandement of the Governours, even in the time of this warre. The fourth there was a voyage made into those parts, many lahabitants of Subria being employed in the Voyage to the firm, who patting over the River longs, travelled further or roots, there or Whom titled by the Ruser 1966, wary, being not accurbance to handless! These allo found many things agreeable to the relationships. on of the former. And sherrlingewife did oftentime sheare size towningsnot brazen Bells. But Brazen Bells. on of the former. And dery in the wife and patie the River : But they stayed awhile in cashing out the Mountains, out of which they faw oftentimes flames of fire alcend; & they brought thence flames of fire. fome finally operative of brumftone; and of touch thome; fother found neh dishes foother to the life Vor those bullet Moreous shit Governous of Siberia canled certaine confidentiates to be made and ageby Obistant commanded them to Whierdowne by the Choard of the Ruier. Ohir in the first beginning of the foring and to coaff the fame continually sill they came to the Reuc Of lenifes; wherein the famild afterward faile certaine dayes; discharging is felfe (as hee shoughe) into she set. He ferte others likewife to travell over Land : graing commandement to both of them before they went? Tu the Land-men, than they thould fury by the Rivers fide vntill the Bostes arrabed; and that if they did not arrive there then after one yeere they should returne.) To them that were in the Boated, over whom he made one Lucas Captayne, he game in charge, diligently to discover the Lucas Captain

And the Marmers arriving at the mouth of the River deniler, met with certay ne of them which urrichy Search trauelled ouer Land, which were fent before in Boats and Skiffelt downe the Raier. . . . W :sour -c. Inchain journey, they found all things in a manner to fall out as the Governmential foresteld; But Lakes being dead by chief way, and some others, they shought is the best coleres; for both of the Communics to retrime theilante way that they came : And when they came home into Sides inst they ilectared very the Conormon the whole stickelle of stick journey a which cannot the Carbo to be lent visto she Emperour And this Relation is layed y pramong the Treatines of Mol come would she for Warten bee ended; and then, as it is thought, it shell her examined. But wee feare that by this time it is perilbed, which if it belo, cruly it is much co be lemented. in resimb 20 that they have found to many care and fundry. Hands, Rivers, Fowlers, and wild hearts, and shall and he reported, that he was traus : thorn singuele in Gern a Santentrans and beneved orrer

Chaff and what focuer the con was worthy to bee observed. They did as they we meniguned. of the Difo.

Morenzer, the Rules Tars falleth into the River of Obi, foring the asiat fremeth, into of places Tari River fall mered who the Raues legisfer, and out of a great Wood in those parts, out of the back Wood great left file of the the River former half to be under Sometayne not investion the River former deather into the Thirty for the River former former former for the River for th River of Ienilee. So that even from Obi they travell by water along the Coast of the Samoieds, into lenilee and canno only two leagues over Lands, they meet with the River Torgatie; downe which An Quer hall with the streame they fall into the River lenifee. And this is a very easie way, and lately found of two leagues out by the Samoieds, and the Tingosfies. V A A F

Doubtleffe (it is to be lamented) that the Hollanders have not had good successe in passing the 40 Streight of Way-gat; but furely they know not the righe way to attempt the fame. For if they attempt it by shippes, though it were an hundred times, it would hardly once take effect. But if they would throughly discouer these Countreyes, then they should stay two or three The right way yeares about Petfora and Way-gats, where they should not want good Hauens, nor Victue North-cast yearts about return and way-gars, where they mound not were good reasons, but your North alls: and from theirie they should lend out some with small Brance to district the first parts; by the very example of the Refigs, whose Friendship is they would prough whom North themselves, they should easily hard Guides and Piloss: and to set length all third Couft would throughly bee discourred. oli dasworaki sitratia 🔭 😘 🦠 2010 2 1 1 1 1

Doubtleffe goodly Countreyes would bee found out, and not only Hands at birthe Mark Land alfo. Yet there is just cause to doubt, whether America about China joyne not with so fome of the three parts of the old World : As wee fee Africa joyned was Ala with a name row necke of Land roon the Reide Sea, And doubtleffe, this former's likely to bee true. For who can affirme, that they bee separated ! Sauing that they have found some things and the Writings of prophane Authors; whereby it may be procued, and bring many Arguments from thence. And though thele parts bee not joyned together, yet they must methode divided - foresto or in the plant, and district of T with some small Streight. Acts a week add to be a compared to the compared with the compared to the comp

and the second of the second o

Section 1 and the second section is a second section of the second section is a second second

d. 111.

A Note of the Travels of the Ruffes oner Land, and by Water from Mezen, neere the Bay of Saint NICHOLAS to Pechora, to Obi, to Yenille, and to the River Geta, enem unto the Frontiers of Catala; brought into England by Mafter loral and an interior in Mericke, the English Agent for Mosco. config. man be about the man of the state fraction of the state of the

Obi Riuer. Taes Riner and Tenify the greater and leffe. Imbabi Geta River. Summers tranellfrom Tim-

More would be the second of th into the emit some a misuard veril. Chat of : Mourneis Reca, or The troubled Riser, patting this Over-hall, they enter into Briens Ris 84, or the Greene Ruser. From Zelens Rece, or the Greene Ruser to Obs, is three Weeks row. 192, funning downe wich the Current ; but with a faire wind it is no more but three dayes and three nights learney. From Obs to Taet Caffle, is a Weekes rowing. From Taes Caffle to the Rater Temiffer vpon long Woodden Pattens through the Snow, is three Weekes travaile. Bir Tingsofe Rilier: through the deepe Channell in the aforesfaid Veffels; called Coaches, is foure: Weekes 30 Transfertions transple. Actobrangeth them to a place , called Torran-hande Gomenia , that is , The The Basis Sister. Wintering place of one called Torrasban, Haung transled to this Townshauke Zeimenia, this common to the cauch of the called, The River of Transof abeing a floure of Rocky Bustr, which falleth into the River Transof, that the place line the Transof abeing a floure of Rocky Bustr, which falleth into the River Transof, In that place line the Transof and prophe of the africe faid hand of Transof. Beyond them five a people called The Bandafter: And beyond the Smaller and hander appears negrons used have a people cancer. I no nonspire: And beyond the Bandalpen inhibitorith people for Sealater. Their people report concerning Tenify the Great and Their for the Laffer? That beyond this fore-fail Tenify inhabit the prople should, and the Office. which are a kind of Tartare. Also beyond the Ingester is a Rinercalled Geta, which was tratailed by the Ruffer of Pathon, and Ruffer of Pechera. These men by report lived in the parts of Code, fine passes. After which one of the Ruffe of Vafien,named Wafe , returned into Siberie; 30 and he reported, that he was transiling from Tingoofie to Geta a Summer: Likewife, this faid greuter werne Warfing protest, that a Samoied told him, that in Traifer, the greater were Veffels of a great burthe stripe of the stripe of th necessarious this . y and even raising to death of the Sameleds, into and To An Ouer half

wery en in agy, and levely could of the trees CHAP. VIII.

A Kojege made to Pechora 1611. Written by WILLIAM The sales of Governon of Hull, appointed chiefe Pilet, for Diferente to Obyera. Silver to the transfer of the transfer of

Lucis, not Vide N His decemba of Aprill we weighed Anchor as Blacks well in the River of Themer, in a thin called the America whereon leave Hodes was Mafter, and fayling anising the Confine of England Scaland, Norwey, and Formwerk, on the decembre of the next moneth of May, wee found our felues in the latitude of 71. degrees 40.

The twelfth, wee ranne fortie eight leagues North North-east, the wind being at South South-east, and found our felices in the latitude of 73, degrees 42, minutes, and at 70 night wee had shouldings of Cherie Hand for wee were entoyined by our Commission to touch

there, alchough it were there degrees to the North out of our way.

The thirtoenth, being Whit-funday it cleared up, and then we did fee. Chew Hand fix leagues

The fourteenth, being faire weather, we flood to the Northwards, thinking to have gone on shoare, but we could not for Ice, and labouring to Land on the South side of the Iland, wee met With Ionas Poole about Ecuening in the Elizabeth , who came as then to the Iland , and was fet forth by the Right Worthipfull Company of our Rufficon Merchants, to difcouer further Northward, from eightie degrees toward the North Pole. Then we flood to the Eastward, where wee found great store of Ice.

The fifteenth, we frent on the South-fide of the Iland, in hope of the arrivall of the Marie Margant, which being a ship of nine score Tunnes , was set forth very chargeably by the aforefaid Ruffian Company, and had in her fixe Barker, being excellent Whale-killers of Saint low de Laz, for the killing of the Whale on the Coaft of Greenland, in a Road called Croffe Road,

standing exceeding farre to the North, even in the latitude of 79. degrees and better. The same day at night, feeing that there we could doe no good, we determined to proceed on our Voyage for the River of Pechora: and Letters being given one to the other for Teltimoniall of our meeting in that place, we left Ionae Pooley, and directed our course to the Eastward.

The two and twentieth of May, we came to a small Iland, called Bigs Hole by Tapani Harbour. Bigs Hole? The three and twentieth, we arrived at the Ile of Kildin in Lappia.

The foure and twentieth, loftas Logan, which was appointed Factor for Pechora, and my felfe Olena, with two more, went to Olena, and stayed there all the fine and twentieth, being Saturday, where wee found a flip of Tarmouth, whereof James Wright of Hull was Master, of whom we learned to the proceeding of the Hollanders.

The feuenth of Iune, in the morning we had fight of the Coast of Lappia, a little short of Cape Iune. Comfort, and met with a thip of Amfterdam, by which we fent Letters to Matter John Mericke Cape Comfort our English Agent, then Refident in Colmogro; and we had two Hogsheads of Beere of them. The eight, we plyed to Cape Comfort, the wind at South-east.

The ninth being Sunday, in the morning wee put off from the Coast of Lappia, to crosse over the White Sea, to the Cape of Callinos corruptly, and commonly called Candines. At noone we passed through some Ice, the weather being thicke and foggie.

The eleventh, we plyed to the Cape of Callinos, passing through much Ice, the wind at North North-east. And therefore wee thought it better to goe to the Southward againe; and in the 20 Feuening we came to an Anchor in ten fathomes. This night wee had a fore fforme; the winde at North-eaft.

The twelfth, in the morning we weighed, and in weighing brake our Anchor: and then wee flood to the Southward, and came to an Anchor; and at night wee went on shoare for Wood, shoare, and Water, where was good flore of Drift Wood: And within a ledge of Rockes on the West- Ten Ledias of tide of Callines there lay ten Lodias or Ruffe small shippes, some fourteene or fifteene Tunnes the Pinega bound biggeft (of a Towne called Pinega) all which were bound for Nona Zembla , to kill the Morfle : for Nona Zembla with the men of which Fleete wee had some conference, and did see their Prouisions : which bla, were Launces of their fashion, and Harping Irons; their Victuals were Salt-fish, Butter, Bacon, Meale, their Drinke Quaffe.

The fixteenth, in the morning wee weighed and flood our course for the He of Colgoiene, the wind being at South South-weit, and did find the Ice that was close to the shoare to bee open: but at night finding that we could not layle our course for the Ice, we thought it better to stay. and so came to an Anchor.

The seventeenth, wee weighed in the morning, and stood along the shoare, which did lye South-east by East, and North-west by West. And in the after-moone, wee went on shoare with our shallop, and came to a River, which we called Hableyes River, where wee did see certayne Samoieds, with their Deere: but when they perceived vs, they fled into the Land, carrying with them fuch things as in halte they could get together : but left most of their necessaries, as Bowes, Arrowes, long Speares, wanting Iron heads burnt at the epd, Harping Irons, Wimbles, 40 and Morsse-skinnes, lying hid, some in one place, some in another; which were caused our men to vuccuer, and would not suffer them to take anything away; only I tooke the Pizzell of a Morfie which they had lately killed; and Iofias Logan left a Knife, that they might not shunne

vs hereafter. The same Ecuening we anchored and stayed all night. The eighteenth, wee weighed, and at noone wee came to an Harbour; which, as wee thinke, A good Harwas the very fame where Master Stephen Barrow was in his Discouerie of Unigatz, and None b Zembla, 1556, where there is twelue, or thirteene foot at high water voon the Barre, and Suppen Burrent within fix or feuen fathomes. Also in this place were three Lodias of Pinega, which when they Three Lodias faw vs come in, rowed out, and at night returned, and some of their men came abourd of vs, and of Pinesa. told withat they could not paffe for Ice; and faid, that they were bound for Sharshai Gooba, or Sharkai Gooba, 50 Shar Bay to fish for certayne fishes; which they call Omilie, which are somewhat like a Shad, and which is the

The twentieth, Iostan 2nd my selfe went ouer to the Mayne, which was distant two leagues, and came to a great River in 67. degrees and 40. minutes, where there had beene people : and there we faw foure or fine great white fifnes swimming, which are foure or fine yards They land the long, and called by the Ruffer Belluga, whereof they make Oyle, whereof afterward we found A exeat River. at Pechora, great store to be spoyled.

The one and twentieth, we fent our men for Wood, for there was good frore of Flore-wood Flore-wood. as we had found all the Coast along ; but none growing.

The two and twentieth, in the morning we came ouer the Barre, the winde at South South-60 east, directing our course for the lie of Colgiene; and at noone wee passed through much Ice, which lay so thicke that wee could not sayle, but tooke in our sayles, and made fast our ship to

The three and twentieth, in the morning wee fet (ayle, and plyed to the Wind-ward, the wind at South-east, with raine : and at night wee mored to a Cake of Ice.

The foure and twentieth, in the morning we fet fayle, and pyled to wind-ward, the wind at The route and twentieth, in the monanty we objected and found our felues to be in 67. South-well to get cleere of the Ice; and at noone we objected and found our felues to be in 67. South-west to get steele on the seep and as moone we had fight of the Land agains, being four legues 12 minutes, and in the after-noone we had fight of the Land agains, being four legues Aforenyde vs. to the Southwards of the aforefaul Harbour; and finding the Tyde to fet very fore vpon the Afterendery. Court continuation to the automatic particles, and anomaly through the Ice, and attwelle at

The fine and twentieth, we loosed and fayled to the Eastward, till we found the Ice so thick, that we could not paffe further: then we made faff to a piece of Ice: the wind at North North. east, thicke fogge, and fome raine. The fix and twentieth, we fet our fore top-fayle, the wind eart, tricke rogge, and some rause. The state and tricke fogge are flood fometimes one way, fometimes 10 another, as we could find the Ice open; and at noone we had fight of the shoare, being source fine leagues off, and the Ice lying fo thicke, that we could make no meanes to get farther from the shoare; wherefore weemade fast to a great Cake of Ice. The feuen and twentieth, wee lay still, the Ice lying very close, with thicke foggie weather: the wind at North North-west,

The eight and twentieth, in the morning it was cleere, and the Land did beare North by West seuen leagues off, and then we fet sayle, passing to the Eastward till noone: then we made fast to a piece of Ice, it being very foggie: the wind at West North-west. And the same day at eight in the after-noone wee loofed from the Ice, it being cleere, the wind at North-west. And at mid-night we got cleere of the Ice, keeping our course East North-east.

Cape Swelings.

fhorre.

Croffes.

Two Ruffe

A deepe Big

An house of

Land the fixth

Muskitos.

mouth of Pe-

the River of

They paffe o-

Pechar:

chora.

time.

The nine and twentieth, at eight in the morning, we had light of Cape Swetinos, the winde 20 at North North-west, with thicke foggie weather: At noone, finding the Ice to lye close to the William Courshoare, we cast about to the Westward. And at eight in the Ecuening, wee came to an Anchorin tenne fathomes; and then I went on shoare, where there were two Rassian Crosses: the Land was I mooth, and full of fresh Ponds, being a kind of white Chalke Cliffes. At our commings. boord, we weighed and flood neerer to the shoare because of the Ice.

The chirtieth, in the morning the Ice came so extreamely upon vs, that we could not weigh; for our men being cast from the Capstan, our Cable brake, and so wee lost an Anchor. Then feeing wee could not passe to the Eastward, wee stood to the Westward of Cape Surviva, Weimirage into the afore-faid deepe Bay in seuen fathomes; the wind at East Northeast, cleere weather.

The first of July, we went on shoare to see if there were any thing to take notice of : but wee 30 Land agrine found nothing worth the going. For only we faw a wild Deere, and an House of Wood after the Roffe fathion, where people had beene. The fecond, likewife we rode still, and going againe on finare we did see the Ice all gone to the Eastward; and so came aboord. The third, at fixe in the morning we weighed, theiwind at East North-east, and plyed through some Ice : and at foure in the after-noone we gov cleere of it : and at eight of the clocke wee came to an Anchor, it being calme and cleere weather: then I went on shoare, where we were first and came about because of the great abundance of Muskitos or Gnats. At our comming having the windeat South-west, we set sayle and stood along the snoare.

A undince of The fourth, we fayled along the shoare with faire weather, having the windevariable. The fifth, wee plyed to the Eastward, wind at North-east by East faire weather. The fixth, wee 40 plyed along the shoare, the wind at North by East. And in the after-noone wee passed through much Ice. The fruenth, we plyed through the Ice to the Eastward, the winde at East Northeast, thicke and foggie. The eight, with cleere weather, the winde at North North-east, we plyed to the Eastward; and at noone observed the Sanne having 69. degrees 40. minutes: At Equening we had fight of the Land to the Eastward of the River of Pechora; and thinking to

get into the shoare we could not for the shoald water.

The ninth, in the morning we flood backe to find the Barre or entrance of the River of Pe-Croffes found chora. And in the after-noone, seeing the Sand over the Ice, which was not broken off from the and cer ayne shoare, I went thither with my shallop, and going on shoare, we espeed three Crosses, and certayne Ruffes walking upon the Sand; who told vs, that that was the place that we defired : and 50 one of them came abcord our ship to bring vs ouer the Barre. But comming to should water, The depth of wee durst not trust his skill, but stood backe againe, and came to an Anchor in four fathomes.

The teach, in the morning I went to found the Barre; where we had eleuen and tenne, and in one place but nine foot water. And comming aboord wee fet fayle to come in. And in going ouer the Barre we were on ground; but, God be thanked, wee got well ouer, and came to an An-

uerth. Baire, chor in fix fathomes,

The eleuenth, the Ice brake off from the shoare, and came so fast vpon vs, that we could not shift fathons water from it, but were put on ground vpon a Sand; vet God be thanked without any harme. The fame day leaving our ship lying to, Iosias Logan our Factor, my selfe William Parfelque, being rowed in our Skiffe by fix of our Mariners, tooke our way toward the Towne ouer a sheald Sea, which the 60 Ruffes cal, The Dry Sea: which may very well be fo called. For on the starboord or West side going Diggi is freen up is a low dry Sand, and on the Larboord or East fide is all shoald water, as two, three, or source foote water. And feuen leagues within to the South-west is an Iland called Dolgoi, that is to lay, from the Barre The long lland, which you must keep on the Larboard or East fide, & then steer away South South

west, neere voon twentie leagues, all in shoald water; and then you shall come to the sight of an high Land called The Bolnan; which in the Ruffe Tongue tignifieth, a Blocke: which you must The Bolnan, or leaue on the Larboord, or East fide. And be fure to keepe the channell, which doth trend South- East bead land west, and South-west by West. By report of the Inhabitants the River hath two and seven-

The twelfth, we passed ouer the Drie Sea, (which the Russes call in their Language, Suchoi trenocth Morie,) to the mouth of the River Pecbora: where we found many small Hands, some a mile, South west. fome two miles in length, and to should water, that wee could not get to the shoare with our Shallon, but lay in her all night at an anchor, being vincertaine which way to take: and feeing To fo many entrances before vs, we could hit right at none. The thirteenth, in the morning wee An Hand neere

fo many entrances before vs, we could hit right at none. The time tent the mouth of the mouth of the Riuer, where wee flayed all the day, having much the Riuer. wind and forge. The fourteenth, being Sunday, we fet fayle from the Hand, the Sea going very They find one high: and at noone we came by Gods direction, into one of the chiefest entrances of the River of the chiefest high: and at noone we came by Gods direction, into one of their families, who made with entrances of the Ruser. best entertaynment that they could, and gaue vs directions how to goe to the Towne.

The fifteenth, we came to a Sari or Ferme house of one of the principall men of the Towne: They come to who bid vskindly welcome: and as the place and feafon affoorded, hee made vs good cheere. a Ferme house of a principall He lay there at this time, to take Duckes, Swannes, Geefe, and other Fowles: for then was man of the the time of the yeere. Their feathers they fell, and their bodies they falt for winter promison. Towne.

He also gaue vs a man to bring vs to the Towne.

The fixteenth, we came to the Towne of Pullotera, which standeth young Lake. There was The Towne is no Gentleman or Gouernour in the Towne at our arrivall ! for he had deftroyed the Caffle, and called Puffefled away the last Winter. For certaine dayes wee could have no answer, whether wee might flay or no, all the chiefe men being abroad for their Winters prouision. But the chiefe Customer Marphe, sending men to know their mindes, the three and twentieth day of the same moneth of July, we were embraced of them, and defired to stay, and they appointed vs an house to dwell in. Furthermore, they told vs that the River Pechora was more convenient for vs, then the River of Duyna: and that a great part of the goods, which come to Colmogro vpon Dwina: doe passe in one place or other by the River Pechera, which, they say, runneth through Siberia; and how much farther they themselves know not. The five and twentieth, in the morning, ha-

30 and now intentare they themienes anow not. The nue and twentiern, in the morning, naneth through
ning one of their Boats full with feathers, weedeparted from the Towne, taking our leaues of Sibria and fat-Iofias Logan, who staved behind.

The fixe and twentieth, we came downe to the Boluan, where wee went abourd of two Co- Two Coches ches of some fifteene tunnes a piece , bound for Mongunzea. Here I went on shoare, and bought or Lodias, an airie of Slight-falcons, being very young. The feuen and twentieth, in the Eeuening wee Movement came aboord our ship, and the same night tooke in the Feathers, and laded their Boat againe Hebuyeth two with Meale, fending her vp to the Towne by the Ruffes that brought her downe.

The eight and twentieth, we got out our goods, which were appointed to be left at Pechora, The flocke of winder the charge of Mafter Logan, and made ready our flip. The nine and twentieth, wee goods left in 40 weighed anchor, and fell lower downe, the wind North North-east. The thirtieth, wee rode fill, and in the after-noone two Lodias that were fifthing for Omulais, went out to Sea, the wind at North-weft by Weft. The one and thirtieth, the wind being at Weft North-weft, there 24. Lodias or Coches, all bound for Maginacas, but the yeere being fare forest they are given their Younger, and went to the Townson Beautiful State of the Company of the Com being farre ipent they gave over their Voyage, and went to the Towne of Puffozera, to winter. isto the East-Out of one of the which Lodias we hired a man belonging to the Towne, to flay with William ward of Ob. Purfglone and Marmadake Wilson, by our goods, till the Lodia came, which we had hired. Which two were to winter with Malter Logan in the Countrey. The aforefaid foure and twentie Lodias were of Colmogro, Pinega, Mezen, and Puftozera.

The first of August, the wind at West, we weighed, and, God bee thanked, came safely over They safely the Barre of Pechora. From thence wee directed our course for Noua Zembla: and at noone passethe Birre 50 we came to Ice: where having fayled many points of our Compafe, at mid-night wee tooke in of Pethna, our sayles, and made fait to a piece of Ice; the weather being very thicke and foggie. The second being very cleere, and feeing no way to paffe to the Northward for Ice, we determined to return; and because the yeere was so farre spent to go for Cherie Hand, to see if it pleased God to giue vs there any good successe, for the bearing of the charges of this Voyage. So wee loosed, and at eight in the Eevening wee got cleere off the Ice, keeping our course by the edge of it, which did lie East by North, and East North-east. The third, at noone we had fight of Colgoiene Hand, Colgoiene Hand and tooke the latitude, being on the North fide of the Iland which was 69, degrees 20. minutes: and at night I went on shoare to see the Land, which was high clay ground: and I came where there was an airie of Slight-falcons: but they did flie all away faue one, which I tooke vp, and Falcons 60 brought aboord. This Ile of Colgoiene is but thirtie leagues from the Barre of Pechora.

The fourth, we passed through some Ice, and at noone wee got cleere off it, and stood to the Northward, Colgoiene bearing South-weft fixe leagues, the wind at East North-east. The fire. we had faire weather, the wind at East South-east, wee sayled two and thirtie leagues North

and ride in fix the Rust of Pichara, ouer Th: Day Sea.

70 degrees 40. minues 72. degrees 24

North-weff, we observed, and found our selves in 70, degrees and 40 minutes. The fixt, the North-weit, we conclude, and tourne out return to Joseph and Administration and use, the wind being at South South-well, we fleered North North-well fortic leagues, and were in 72. degrees 34. minutes. The feuenth, the wind was variable, the weather faire: we steered North by Welt, eight and thirtie leagues, and at noone had the latitude of 74 degrees 30. minutes. 74. digrees 30. And at eight in the Eeuening we founded, and had eightie fathomes greene Oze, The eight, the wind at West, we sayled North twenty leagues: in the morning we sounded, and had seventy fathoms Oze: and at three in the afternoone, the wind comming North, wee cast about to the

The ninth, faire weather, we sayled thirteene leagues West, the wind at North. At noone we founded, and had an hundred and twentie fathomes, greene slime. The tenth, the wind ya- 10 riable, with fogge and raine: wee fleered West North-west flue and twentie leagues: and at 74. degrees 57. noone we observed, and had the latitude of 74. degrees 57. minutes. The eleventh, was thicke foggie weather; wee layled foure and twentie leagues West: and at eight in the Ecuening wee founded, and had ninety fathomes, foft Oze. The thirteenth, at noone wee had fight of Chris Cherie Iland. Hand, being within a mile of it, before we did see it : and the same Bevening wee got into the Cone, and mored our ship. Here we stayed twelue dayes, taking what it pleased God to send,

The fixe and twentieth of August, we left the Iland, because the time of the yeere was fare spent, and returned for England, where (blessed be God) we safely arrived in Saint Cathering Poole, in the River of Thames, on Saturday being Saint Masshews day, and the one and twee- 20

There were in the Hauen of the River Pechora, at our being there, about thirtie Lodias, or fmall Raffe thips , having ten, twelve, fourteene , and fixteene men in each of them : which purposed to haue gone, some to Nona Zembla, some to Taffe gorodoe, and some to other places in Mongamifey, to the East of the River Ob. Their Louis for the most part, were of Ufing, Cal.

Co. Cavucks or

to. Lodiar.

Alio, we that went up to the Towne, found about fiftie Cayucks, or Boats of foure, five, fix, filling Boats, and feuen tunnes a piece, filling in the River of Pechera for Salmons, and other kinds of fill; most of which Cayucks come from the great Towne of Viting, and the Townes thereunto adioyning, by the River Ing, through the Land into the River Pecbora, and at the Bolman, at the Riv 30 uers mouth they tooke most part of their Salmon.

CHAP. IX.

A Letter of RICHARD FINCH to the Right Worshipfull Sir THOMAS SMITH, Governour; and to the rest of the Worshipfull Companie of English Merchants, trading into Ruffia : touching the former Voyage, and other observations.



Sa Ight Worshipfull, my dutie remembred vnto you, with prayer to God for the preservation of your healths and prosperous successe in all your worthie affaires. My last Letters vnto you were from Typani in Lapland, by Thomas Hare-castle of Hall, dated the foure and twentieth of May, 1611. The other, the nine and twentieth of May from Kyldin neere Camen, by a thip of Hamburg : which forefaid Letters were directed to our Gouernour, the right Worthipfull Sir Thomas

Two Croffes flanding on the land. Pinega.

Smith, Knight. May it now please you further to understand, That the ninth day of July, wee They arriue in came to the mouth of the River of Pechora, which the Ruffes call Pechorstoi Zanores with our 50 the Fortor Pe. Ship. And being entred into the aforesaid Harbour, it was full of Ice, and hard to finde : for we found no mayne Land, faue a small Sound behind the Ice. And labouring to and fro along the fame, we fent William Gourdon in our Shallop manned to the shoare : who, as soone as they were landed, espied two Crosses standing on the sand : and presently our men espied three men comming toward them. These men belonged to three Boats of Pinega, which Boats had beene in our companie not long before, at a place called by them, Promora, by vs, Observe, but by other Writers , Morfoomiz. One of thele Ruffes came on board of our ship, and told vs, that wee could go en of arther with our flip, then the place, that their Velfels, called fonctor, rid in; and that to the Towne we must goe in small Velfels; giuing vs directions to slayle by, for the better finding of the Towne. After our getting ouer the Barre of the Pecborskei Zamoret, and that we 60 were come to an anchor, we rode in great danger by the abundance of Ice, and the strong tide Ship endange were come to an anchor, we rode in great ganger by the abundance of ite, and the chief red by ic.

both of the ebbe and floud, which droue the fame to forcibly againft our fhip. For, the elementh of July, lying in foure fathomes water, a piece of an Iland of Ice, fet with Juch a power against our ship, that it droue vs out of our riding into eight foot and an halfe, and nine foot water.

The eleventh of July, Master Iofias Logan , William Gourdon , and William Purseloue, with our Shallop went vp to the Towne of Pechera, taking directions of the Ruffes for the finding of the same. Neuerthelesse, two dayes after their departure from our ship, they had mistaken their way, if by chance they had not met with a small Russe Boat, in which were Russes that directed them. Being about thirty Verits from the Towne, they came to the house of one Valili Deadonlose, who that this present is one of the chiefest Customers : by which Customers the Towne of Pechora is now gouerned, fince there was no Gentleman fent from the Mofco. This man gaue them good entertaynment, and fent up with them a man of his owne, fearing that the people would bee amazed at our mens fudden and vnexpected comming. Yet as foone as they Our men ar-10 espied our people, they were all exceedingly afraid. Divers of them with their women fied in- rive at Towne to the Woods, vntill that one of the chiefest Customers had sent for them other Customers, who of Pectors. at that time were all out of Towne. But being met together, Master Logan shewed them the of the English. Priviledges, of feuerall of their Emperours granted to your Worships. After the peruling of which, with the good report given of Matter Mericke, your Agent, and our Nation by one of Colmogro, with whom Mafter Logan was acquainted ; the Townel-men were well fatisfied: and appointed our people an House. And many of them sent Bread, Pies, Ducks, Fish, and such like

tinual admiration how they found the Towne. Touching the Inhabitants, there is no doubt, but that they will be glad of our trading thi-20 ther. Neuerthelesse, by that which I have heard and perceived, it is very likely, that the same will be distassfull to the Merchants of the Countrey, and others that travell thirther in the Winter time, out of many parts of Rullia: and also, to them that trade in the Summer time, by Sea to Mongofey, and through the River of Peoza in Cayucks to Perm, Ouft-zilme, and Pechora.

vnto them, entertayning them very well, according to the fashion of the Countrey, with con-

The seuen and twentieth of July, our Shallop with a small Ruffe Boat , returned to our ship from Pechara Towne, departing from the fame the Thursday before, being the fine and twentieth of Iuly, in our foresaid Shallop, and Rasse Boat, were sent downe by Jossa Logan, fine and fortie bags of white Partridges feathers, and an hundred and seventie white Foxe skinnes. These White Par-Feathers and Foxe skinnes, are bought of a Colsmogro man, to be payd for the lame in Russia by Fraxes. Mafter Mericke; and, as I vnderstand, not so cheape as others dee buy there of the Fowlers 30 themselves. But if two men were left, one at Pecbora, another at Ouft-zilme, and Perm, with

ready money and a little commodities, much good might be done in the Winter time by buying of Sables, Beuers, Beuers wombs, Squerrils, Foxe skinnes white and dunne, Losh hides, and Deere skinnes. And for the transportation of your goods to Peebers, or bringing of your goods from Pechera; the fame may be done from Archanged upon the Dunna to Mezen, and from Mezen to Pechera, Ouff-zilme, and Perm, both by Winter ouer Land, and in Summer through fresh water Riuers, or alongst the shoare with speed, and with a little charge : as by the manner of their ordinary travell appeareth, as it hath beene of a trueth delivered mee, from the mouthes of men of long experience.

The last of August, came into Pechorikoi Zameret, or the Hauen of Pechora, fixe and twentie The Fleet of 40 Lodias or Boats, which was the Fleet let out from Ouffing, Colmogre, Pinega, and Mex.en: all of Mongofers but having been croffed with contrary winds, & the time of the Occupant plant pl yeere being spent, they gaue ouer their intended Voyage; purposing with the next faire wind, to sayle to the Towne of Pecbora, there to lay up their Lodias and commodities till the next Spring, and themselves with their small Boats or Wherries to goe home, passing from thence up the River of Peoza, which they told me they could easily doe in a moneths time. As soone From Peopara as this Fleet of Lodias was come to an anchor, many of them came aboord of our thip, wondring to colmegrois to fee a ship there. They demanded of me, how wee came thither, and what the intent of our moneth comming was : and whither we purposed to sayle from thence. Among these were some which by Ruuer.

feemed to be Merchants, who asked to buy Lifts, remnants of Cloth, Cap-clothes, Aqua vita, 50 especially, they asked for small Pewter D shes, which I understand to be a commoditie fold by SmallPewter them to the Samoyeds, at a great rate. I answered them, that the goods which wee had brought, Diffee, a great were part already at Pechora, and the rest was to be transported thither, as soone as the Vessell came that was hired to carrie the same up : so that, if any of them were minded to buy of our commodities, they might have it of one of our Countrey-men there. After which, two or three of them demanded of me, whether I would buy any Sables, or Squerrils: which was but a brag. At this time many of them being on boord together, some of them were in private talke, which was my chance to ouer-heare, and was as followeth : If these Neamchines, or Strangers refort to these places, it will be an occasion in short time to make vs to be without Bread. The like speeches I heard a little before, of two men of Pinega; and of an old man remayning in

60 Pechora, that came downe to our ship with the Feathers. Touching the goods left with William Pursglone, Marmaduke Willon, and the Ruffe, in regard the same lay in no good place, we were desirous to have hired one of their Russe Boats, to have carried the same to the Towne at a reasonable rate; the rather because it was on their way, and their Boats were not overladen: which they with two Boats might have done with ease; yet

they would not, valeffe wee would give them thirtie or fine and twentie Rubbels at the leaft,

August 1.

Huge Ice.

They land on Geele Two Hawkes

Cherie Hand.

Sec fup.c.2.

Morfes feare.

August 26.

Rechora.

Ousting.

A Poud is 37. weight. An Alteen is fine

and that with Condition, that they might diffribute into each Boate formewhat thereof. Therefore vinderstanding their vireasonable demand, having a Boate already hyred, wee viterly refused to talke with them any further thereof : especially when they were minded to diuide the goods into all the fixe and twentie Lodias or Boates : which had beene a tricketo

The first of August, leaving Master Iosas Logan, William Pursaloue, and Marmadake Walson, at Pechora, wee sayled ouer the Barre of Pechorabie Zaurous, directing our course for Nona Zaurous. bla, till that wee had runne fo farre, and were fo inclosed in huge Ice, that in a Day and a Night on, the true wee had tunne to latte, and well to inclose in large tee, that he Day and a raight we could goe neither backward nor forward: And finding no meanes to proceed on our intended Voyage for Nona Zembia, wee cleared our felues out of that place. Truth it is, that this hath beene an hard Summer to all the Rufer, both to them which were bound for Mangazen, and Omeli Fishing: those that went to kill Morses, and fishing of a certayne Fish called Omeli. From the forelayd place wee fet our course for Cherie Hand, intending to meete with the He of Colgoione, and wil-

loughbies Land. With Colgoiene wee met, but we miffed of the other. The feuenth of August, Villiam Gourdon and I with our Shallop went on shoare. This Colgoiene, is a very long and broad Iland with many Vallies in it. On the same are many Geese, which the Russes vie to take with Nets in the time of the yeere, before they becouer fledge. In this Iland feemeth to bee flore of Hawkes. Heere William Gowrdon and our Cooper, caught two Hawkes, whereof one was spoyled in the taking, the other remayneth aline. The thirteenth of August, wee arrived at Cherie Hand, standing in 74. degrees and odde mia 20

nutes, and Anchored in the South Coue, finding the same very cleare of Ice. And presently after our Ship was at an Anchor, lames Vadin the Mafter, Willian Gondon, and I, went on shoare on the Coue to looke for Morfes. Here we found a certayne Note, which was left thereby Thomas Edge: the effect of which was: That he arrived there with three Shalops from Greenland, and that there he had found the Ship called the Elizabeth, and that hee was gone in her to Greenland the foure and twentieth of July, hoping to finde the goods which hee had left there : and that hee did purpose to returne againe to Cherie Iland with as much speed as could be made. Subscribed:

At our comming to the Hand, wee had three or foure dayes together very fine weather : in which time came in reasonable ftore of Morses, both at the South Coue and at the North-fide: 30 and wee were in good hope we should have made a fauing Voyage. Neuerthelesse, though there were store of Beasts, yet by no meanes would they goe on those beaches and places, that formerly they have beene killed on. But fortie or fiftie of them together, went into little holes within the Rocke, which were so little, steepe and slipperie, that as soone as wee did approach towards them, they would tumble all into the Sea. The like whereof by the Masters and William Gourdons report, was neuer done. For lying as they did, and being so shey as they were, it was not possible to doe any good voon them. Moreover, to get them off these foresaid Rockes to make them come on shoare vpon their accustomed places, the Master and our men on both sides of the Hand went to drive them away, yet they would not. But by often driving of them out of their 40 holes, we killed as many as wee could. In the end the weather growing stormie and cold, there were few or none of them left. Wherefore seeing all hope of good to be done of them to be paft, wee departed from thence the fixe and twenneth of August, 1611. for England. We did not perceiue any Ship of Hull to haue beene there this Summer.

Hauing touched the chiefest points of our Voyage, I thinke it meete to set downe somewhat of the State, Commodities, and Trade of Pechora, Oust Zilma, and Parmia.

The Towne of Pechora is imall, having three Churches in it : and the most part of the people are poore. In the Spring and a great part of the Summer, they live by catching of Partridges, Geefe, Duckes, and Swannes, of which they every Summer take a great number. The Helh of these Fowles they salt, and line of them the most part of the Winter. But the feathers of the said Fowle they gather together, and fell to the men of Colmogro, Oufing, and others, that come e- 50 uerie yeere ont of Ruffia to buy the same : Some of them give a little money before hand to the Fowlers. Which must be done with great care as the times are now. One Meafed a mans sonne of Pechora, whose Father is a man of great dealings, told mee, That they fold white Partridge feathers to men of Colmogro for readie money, at fine Altines the Poul, and Duckes feathers (among which was Downe) they fold now for feuen or eight Altines the Poud. Likewise hee told me that in former times the Ruffes that vied to trade thicker, before the people of the Countrey knew what Commodities were worth, had commonly a Poud of Partridge feathers for oftheir Pence, two pence of their money, and a peece of cake Sope worth at Colmogro ten pence of their money. So that the chiefest Commoditie and best cheape is Feathers, being bought at Pecbera with reache Ruffe money of the Fowlers themselues, and not of the Ligers there, that vie to sell them 60 A great filhing to vs at Archangel on the River of Duyna.

Moreover one hundred English miles on this side of the Towne of Pechora, is a place called by furifof August, them the Boluano, where they take great store of Salmons. But it is alwayes the first of August before they begin to cast out their Nets. And oftentimes toward the later part of the Summer. they have such store, that they are sold ordinarily for foure-pencea Fish, and sometimes for a penie a Fish of their money. Yea, in a plentifull yeere, I haue beene told, one may buy whole draughts of Salmons for a very small summe of money. The Salmons heere are fat: three Fishes weighing commonly a Powd and no more. The best fort of the people of Pechora, vie to preserve a great quantitie of their Salmon with a little falt. For they falt eightie, or one hundred Fishes with a Powd of Salt and many times in plentiful yeres, much Fish is cast away for want of falt:

CHAP.O. Trauelling Deere. Ruffe Merchants. Commodities, Provisions.

which they are loath to bestow when Salt is deare. This Salmon is carryed by the Pechora men to Mozen in Sleds, drawne with Reyne Deere. Ic But if they be minded to carrie the faid Fish from Mezen to Colmogro, then they carrie the same from thence with Sleds drawne with Horses.

Also many men of Colmogro, Pinega, and Mezen, buy Salmons at Pechora, and carrie it in the Winter time to Mezen, to which place they pay from Pechora for the hyer of a Sled and a Reyne Deere, ordinarily ten Altines, being twelue dayes journey : and from Mezen to Colmogro, being fixe dayes journey, they pay foure-pence a Powd at the most. The Deere that travell from Pechors to Mezen, will not draw about feuen Powd weight. This way is trauelled every Winter twice. The first is fixe or eight weekes before Christmaile. And the second time is two or three weekes before Shrouetide: which bee the times that they very diligently observe to sell the Salmon in. Most part of the men of Pechora, have every one his owne Deere to travell with. And 20 Some particular men of the better fort haue twentie or thirtie Deere, which they let out to hver Travelling in the Winter time; and in the Summer time they put them foorth to the Samoyeds to keepe. Deere, Also when the Winter way is set and beaten, many Merchants and others come out of Rullis to buy Sables, Beuers, Beuers wombes, Squirrels, blacke, white and dunne Foxes, of which in the Winter time is flore, brought thither by the Samoieds round about those parts : which Trading

is in the Winter time and not elfe. The chiefest Ruffe Merchants or Furriers that vie thele parts, I have beene told, are the Obleazones, the Shepeikins, and the Yeadomskoies. The Commodities carryed by them, are red, and yellow Cloathes; but chiefly Ruffe money, with which they buy Commodities there of the Russes, as well as that which they buy of the Samoieds

The Commodities carryed from Volochda, Onfling, Colmogro, Pinega, and Mezen, to Pechora and Mongozei, are Meale, Bacon, Butter, Ote-meale, Tolockno, and Salt, with some small quan-

titie of Yeafts and tanned Leather, with some Cloath, and other of our Commodities. These Commodities at Mongozei are fold at great rates. But at Pechora. Commodities are fold sometimes deare and sometimes cheape, in respect of profit. For if the Fleet, being at least thirtie Boates that fet out every Summer for Mongozey, laden with thele Provisions and Commodities aforesaid, bee croffed with contrarie windes; and that by the latenesse of the yeere they cannot reach to Mongozes, but are constrayned to leave the same and come for Pechora, (as this yeere 1611, they were:) Then commonly Meale, Bacon, and fuch like Commodities with them are not deare. For by report a little quantitie of Meale doth serue all those parts. For the greater Fishin stead part of them live of fresh Fish fod and dryed in stead of Bread, of which Fish they have plentie. of Bread. Likewise, there vieth not to goe from Colmogro with these Prouisions, aboue two Boates in a Summer directly to the Towne of Pechora: especially fince the Towne was burnt, and that there was no Gouernour in the same.

Allo by the Mongozey men it did appeare, that there was no likelihood for them to veter that quantitie of Commodities at Pechora, at any rate. For it there had, there would not have resolved to lay vp their goods in Ware-houses till the next Spring, and then to proceed for Mongazer.

Further from the Towne of Pechora, is a place called by the Ruffes, Ouft Zuma. This is, by Ouf Zuma. the description given vnto me in distance from Pechara, as Oussing is from Colmogro; and is likewife to bee trauelled by water against the streame: And in Winter time it is to bee trauelled in 50 Sleds drawne with Reyne Deere. In this place of Onft Zilma, is great store of Squirrels, Beuers, and Beuers wombes, Foxe skinnes white and dunne, and other Furres, but chiefly Squirrels, of which is great flore by all mens report, that I have talked withall. So that having a man in the Winter time at this place, a good quantitie of Squirrels and other Furres, may bee prouided at a reasonable rate. Moreouer, heere are to be bought Losh-hydes, and Deere-skinnes, which in the Winter time are brought to this Towne of Ouf Zilma from Perm, which is not farre from thence. But to buy Losh-hydes and Deere-skinnes, the best course it to goe from Oust Zilma to Perm, and to buy them there, where one should bee fure to have Chorse, and at a farre better Perm, rate. Also those that wie to come out of Ruffia in the Winter time to Perm, to buy these foresaid Hydes stoward the later part of Winter carrie all these Hydes by Sleds, some two or three dayes 60 Journey from Perm to the fide of a certayne River, neere vnto which is a small Towne or Village; where as foone as the Ice is gone, they have small Dorshenicks and Floates, on which they

lade their Hydes, and being out of this River, they enter into Disyna, and transport them to Colmogro and Archangell. Likewise being at Pechora, Oust Zilma, or any of those parts, there is in the Winter time to



way.

Ι.

bee had among the Samoyeds, Elephants teeth, which they fell in pieces according as they get teeth, whence, it, and not by weight. And I have beene told, they fell the same at a very small rate. It is called in Ruffe, Mamanta Kaoft. Thus much may suffice at this time to bee spoken of Pechera, Ouf-

Now I will fet downe as I have beene enformed by divers Ruffes, the Names of the chiefest places which they vie to fayle vnto from Slobodca, an Hauen fo called in the Prouince of Mezen, to the Pechorikoie Zamorot, or the Hauen of the River of Pechora, and the Diffances to each place : with a Direction how to fayle from Pechorskoie Zauoros up to the Towne of Pechors,

I will also set downe the Russes layling from the forelayd Pechorskoic Zanorot, to the Tomborskoie-share. And from thence to the River of Ob: and thence to Mongozer,

I will likewise set downe a true Direction, to goe by water in their Boates called Capoks, through the River of Peoza, and other Rivers, till they come from Mezen to Ouft Zilma,

Likewise I meane to write of the Samoieds, travelling from Vargats to the parts of Mongozes, in the Winter time, and from thence backe agains to the forelayd Towns of Mezen,

Lastly. I will intreate of such Commodities as are to bee had at Mezen, with the speedie pass fage from thence to Colmogro by Sea, or by Land in the Sommer time. And it is as followeth,

The things aboue mentioned, that I have not seene my selfe, I have not sleightly set downe from the mouthes of one or two, but from the mouthes of many ancient men, well experienced 20 in the Trauels and Trades of all these parts, which Master I ames V adam the Master of our Ship can likewise witnesse. Therefore if the same may bee any way beneficiall voto the Company, and that thereby I have discharged my dutie vnto your Worships, I shall bee heartily glad thereof, Thus fearing I have beene ouer tedious by my rude Letter, I reft, with my heartie prayer vato Almightie God, for the happie preferuations of your felues, and all yours. Written on Shipboord, the last of August, 1611.

> Your Worships bumble Sernant to command, RICHARD FINCE.

The Names of the principall places, which the Russes sayle by from Mezen to the Pechorskoie Zauorot, or the Hauen of Pechora, 1611.

Rom Mezen to Candinos, with a faire wind and stiffe gale, is thirtie houres sayle: They say-Fling commonly almost 40. leagues in foure and twentie houres, according to which it is 50. leagues. From Candinos to the Ile of Colgoie, is as before thirtie houres fayling, and after 40. leagues in foure and twentie houres, is 50. leagues. From Candinos to Promoja or Obsene, is twentie houres fayling, or 35. leagues. From the Ile of Colgoie to Colocol cona, is fifteene houres 40 fayling, and reckoned as about appeareth, is 25. leagues. Along the shoare of this place are heapes of Sand, in the forme of Bells. Therefore the Ruffes call this place Colocol-com, being derived from Colocol, which in English fignifieth a Bell. From Colocol coma to the Peasaneetsa, is three houres fayle, or 5. leagues. This place is onely a small Brooke which they vie for a Sea-marke, more then for any benefit is to bee reaped at the same. From Peafancetsa to the Peeborskoie Zamoret, is fixe houres fayle, or 10. leagues. So that from Colgoie lland to this forefayd Pechorskeie Zaworot, is not aboue 40. leagues at the most.

A direction to sayle from the Pechorskoie Zauorot, where wee rode with our Ship in August 1611. to the Towne of Pechora,

Rom this Pechorskoie Zauoros, they fayle into the Sooboie Mora, or Drie Sea, and not before: firring away from hence South-west and by South, and in a faire gale of Winde, in source Dolgoi-Handin A firring away from nence South-west and by South, and in a laste gate of vender, the Social Ma. houres they come to an Hand called Dolgoir. This Hand is reported to bee three of purk soft the Social Ma. Versts long, having on it in some time of the yeere many Geele, which the men of Pechora take before they bee able to flie. From this Dolgoie, they flire away South South-west; and sayling this course with a faire gale of wind, in eight or nine houres sayle they come in sight of the maine Land, being an indifferent high Land. This Land is called the Bolnanon; and this is 20 leagues at the most. This Boluanou they have on their Larboord side. Neere this place are divers that inhabite in Ruffe Houses: where in the Summer time they lye a Fowling, and fishing of a certayne Fish called Omeli, which are like our Maccarels. If need bee, heere a man may have a guide or

CHAP.O. Greene Hands, Thicke or troubled River, Greene Lake.

good infructions to conduct him to Pechora Towne. Hard by this Bolnanon, is the Ouflia or barre of the entring of Pecbora River. For as soone as you are over this barre, you come into the Rivers mouth, which leadeth to Pechora To wne. If if bee thicke foggie weather, then one of them continually foundeth the depth of the Channell, keeping as neere as they can in the deepeft water : and in fostoing, they feldome mistake their way, so that they stirre away West from the Belian men to the Rivers mouth, keeping the Land on there Starboard fide. And by all mens report. from the Balasson to Parbers Towne, is with a faire winde and fliffe gale, not about twentie houses layle: which according to their layling, is about three and thirtie leagues. And it is not about fiftieleagues from the Pecharibie Zanarot, where our Ship lay, to Pechara Towne.

The names of the places that the Rulles fayle by, from Pecherskoie Zaugrot, to Mongozey : with the manner of their Tranell, and Distance betweene each place, or time of Sayling, Halling, and Rowing Unto the Came.

Rom Pecter their Zampot to Marpheyone Offrens, or Hand, is with a faire wind and fiffe gale, Mulpheyone G. Tat the most thirtie houres sayle, which being rackoned as before; after fortic leagues in four from and twentie houres is fiftie leagues to which they furre away Eaft From Marphyone Offrone to Tanharibeit the Yoularskoie-hare, is nine hourestayle or fitteene leagues. When they are come to this Iland, Share, they fir away rom thongs East to the faid Touborshois fhore. Also in cleere weather from Mai. The Meedous beyong Offices, they can be the maint Laul, with the Mendonetichoit Zamers: where the two the Zamers: where the two the Zamers is the Laul with the Mendonetichoit Zamers: where the two the Zamers is the Laul with the Mendonetichoit Zamers: where the way that the Laul with the Laul take a kinde of Fishes, called Omels, which are like Maccarels : of which heere are flore. This The owo Imaine Landthey have on their right hand or S arboard ide, lying South from Marpheyone O. lands called Grone. Alio to the Southward of the Marpheyone Offrene, is another Hand which the Ruffes call Zelentfee, or Dalgore, that is, the long land, So that there are two Dolgore : the one, within the Pecbershoe the Greene I-Zaugrot, entring into the Saskey Mora, or Dru Sen : The other is this, which is betwire the Datese Officere. Marpherone Offrene, and the Tongarkere-bare; lying as before was layd, South from the fayd or the Lord. 30 Marberone Offrone. From which fland in a cleere day they can feet he Land of Vajgats, which land. lyeth on the Larboord fide, being very high Land. So that flurring out-right, in the middle betweene the Mondantshow Land on their Starboord, and the Land of Vagents on their Larboord fide, they fayle directly into the Tonger heis bare. Likewife there is not much of this Tonger fees bare. We or they fay, that being at one end, they tan fee the Ses at the other end thereof, Alfo, whom the Land of Kayans are neither Flats not Stoalds. Projecthe Tongorshon Share to the Karteis Goods Caricois Gala, is twelve boures fayle, or twentielesques. In this Bay or Goods, is the Meaf. Healing O. may Offrone, or Meaftury Hand. Further it is to bee immembred, that as foone as they enter this nor Hand. Carriese Goods or B y, they layle up a Ruer, leaving this Bay on their Starboard : which Riuer Any Hand. A Mostney a Rees, which figuation the thicke or troubled Riuer. From Mostney Rees, Dringert them made the transparents are as a final figuration the transparent and the transparents of the transparents are transpar zereb. And being over the Mostneya Reca, which they are eight dayes and eight nights in halling along the shoare by the Rope or Beachana, they come into two Lakes, which two Lakes from one end to the other they commonly row over in one Day or two Tides : the fame not being about ten or twelue leagues. Having gotten to the end of those two Lakes, they come to a The Newlise. place called the Nanolog, which fignifieth an Ouer-hall. And it is almost two hundred fathous, or Ouer-hall. or foure hundred paces in length: And having emptyed their Veffels, called Cosches, laying poles under them, with the Companies or men of foure or fine Boates, having twelne or thurteene men in a Boate, they hall their Veffels over, launching them into a third Lake, which they call the Zelesey Ofers, that is, the Greene Lake. These Querahalls constraine them to confort Lake. themselves into Companies : otherwayes they could not get this way to Mongozey. At the and of this Zelenoy Ofera, or Greene Lake, they come into the Zelenaya Reca, or Greene River, in- Zelenoya Reca, to which they runne with the fireame, being often compelled to emptie their great Boates with or The Green their Lodias, or Wherries, laying their Goods vpon the shoare : which being done they row into 06. their great Lodias ouer the shoalds emptie; and having got over the shoalds, they bring their 20 ods on boord againe, And thus they doe in divers places of this Zelenora Reca. or Greene River:

by reason whereof they are commonly ten dayes from the Ouer-hall, before they can get through this forelayd River, which is all with the streame; but the Distance hereof cannot yet 60 bee perfectly learned. Being come to the end of this Zeleneya Reca, they enter into the River of The River Ob. Ob; and having rowed a little way up the same, they come to a place which they likewise call Zanorot: which fignifieth a turning, winding, or entring into a place. From this Zanorot, they The Zanorot in turne into the Tamze Reca, flirring away South to Tamze River; but it is foure and twentie houres fayle, or fortie leagues from the River of Ob, before they come into any part of the Tanze Tanze Reco.

Reca.

Reca. In the River of Ob, are neither Woods nor Inhabitants, till they layle for are up the hone

Ter.

Mongoley.

in the Winter to Mongo fey. We may learn of the e Samey eds, the trade of Mongoles at Mexen more

When they are entred intesthis Tanze River, they have foure dayes and foure nights having Tan. When they are entred successing a server trues, they have compare on the might styling true; Gooda, to Tanza Calife, with a faire wind and a fiffe gale: Burif they becompress to row could fine.

to lance yattic, with a lane with and a joint got a survivery we injective to return some Gorospe of Came, time-tany are events as years and events as government, as uning calme weather. This Tanze Gorospo, or Tanze little Caffle, with the Villages, Dwaes, and ung came weather 11113 same to be longing, 18 by all the Roffer generally called Morgaly At this place att other places trees to being given by antitie on foste hundred Giunners, and Institution are two Sentlemen or Gouernaurs, with three or foste hundred Giunners, and Institution in are ewo entitioned or Outsetson of the form of Moreoust, the men of Meson, from whom I had feuerall places of their parts or Criongolds, resources, the men from Siberia to Massoff, to all their Notes, rold me; That in the Winter time there went men from Siberia to Massoff, to a all their Notes, told me; that in the values once their weak men from overing to comply to buy Sables; delivering vato mee, that the Sables taken by the Samoyad about Manager, all The Samples out Sales: occurring visto mee, that the Sales sales by the Samples about Groungely, are on the Mayne, richer in Furresthen those that come from Salesta, Alio they told me, that the Samples inhae, richer in Furres, then those that come iron sources. Also they told me, that the same with their Reys, all other parts of the mayor and our again of source time with their Reys, and other parts of many sources to their furre from thence to Mezen, to fell there at 2 place called by the Ruffer, Scholder, to which they did from thence to message, to the land of the commonly refort about Surface rate, harying not there rong, but as nother as they had made had of their Furres, they departed home againe. Further, thele men of Mezen told me, that in the Winter time with them was to be fold flore of Squerris, Beauers, Beauers woulds; and the Viller man vern tuem was to too note to opening account yours; more sales. And that all those that travelled in the Winter time from any part of Manyoly, then Meyer a Lown the Furres, on the Samends that caught them; they must be force come to their Towne to Meyers as a lown the Furres, on the Samends that caught them; they must of force come to their Towne to Me. toe currenge are constructed by the construction of the constructi sea, to hure thoses to carrie them to Lampers. Dy worch means they rote me, their Town was well spepenshed with all mannets of Furers, especially of Squerils. Also they infusion me, that disert of Colongre, and other parts of Raffice intended ve Fure, for the most part bought, the fame of Spiem, lying therein the Winter take for this purpose. Therefore, said they grade any of constant parts they would be glad thereof, and that they may constant the said that they may be constant to the said that they may constant the said that they may be constant to the said that they may be said that they are said that they may be said that they are said that they may be said that they are said that the Any to the state of all forts of Burres, and sea farre better hate their hitherto we have had then a And that were could upon any occasion be quickly at Comogre in the Winter time by Sicioria any part of the Spring of Summer time by Boats, and very finall charge. Laffly, that mile sayy garpen, we opening a sould be a parcell of Trans-cyle, and Decres skinnes which cary Summer they transported to Archaniel to fell. eliment n. t. com Jan Therman Spring

A true direction of the Rulles tranging from Mezen, with Copools or final Bosts, the arction of the Kunes transport from these spaces of man to appear or jume to through the Kuner Pears, and from these to appear called by them Pears and Nanolock, on The Sandy Ouer-hall, passing from themsettrough other Rivers, till they come to Outr-school and the the Towne of Pechora! And is the description Long Labor. 1

as followerb.

Having embarqued themselves at Moden, in these small Cayooks or Boats, covered with the Latties of trees, they sayle to a River called Pages Rees. From themse they sayle, or draw The Appears of the states and a state to the residence of the states of Veffels over at times with Horfes, that come from Meson of purpole; lying there the most part of the Summer, to that intent: and they pay fixe pence Raff, for drawing outran empty Boat. Being ouer this Ouer-hall, they drite with the freame in three dayes to the Towned Only-fames: and with the fireame in four dayes they drive to a place called Pullsares; and from Politeres against the fireame in four dayes they drive to a place called Pullsares; and Townson's Debug Alle Services against the fireame they come to the Bolissons, and from the Bolissons to the Towne of Peebers. Also, many of these Boats very often in their returne home with their fore-Gid Cayooks, carrie Furres to Uffing, and divers other places into the Countrey of Ruffia. All

Снар. 60

Soll ship was a second

CH AP. 10. Iland of Toxar. Ducke bunting, Sables, Beauers, white Foxes.

CHAP. X.

The Voyage of Master Iost As Loo AN to Pechora, and bu wintering there, with Master WILLIAM PVRSGLOVE, and
MARMADVRE WILSON. Anno 1611.



He first of July, William Gardon, Richard Fach, and William Pursglone, went on The former shoare at Snatinole, where two Crosses stand. The second, wee weighed anchor part of the againe, and stood into the Bay because of the Ice: and that night wee went on Voyage is spaine, and tood into the day because of the feet and flood it about Statings. The omitted, to avoide tedious fift, we stood to the Eastwards fine leagues more, and about twelve of the clocke reperition. at night, wee were thwart of the lland of Toxar. The tenth, at eight of the Toxar.

clocke at night, we weighed, and went ouer a Barre, at two fathomes, and came into Harbour. where wee anchored at ten of the clocke in the morning in fine fathoms, having fands round ahout vs being land-locked. The eleventh, my felte, William Gurdon, and William Purfoloue. with fixe of our men more, departed from the ship with our Shallop, to goe up to the Towne The fourteenth, wee arrived at the fifthing house of one Enan Vasition sone Somban, where the Puffores.

people were afraid of vs, and were ready to runne away: but we spake to them, and gaue them

some Biscuit and Aqua vita, and they fod vs some fish, and shewed vs our way to another Fishery : but they ran away from vs, so we departed on our way. The fifteenth day, at soure of the clocke in the afternoone wee met with a Rufe, that was borne at Ufting, who gave vs Milke, and such things as he had, and we gave him some Biscuit, and some Aqua visa, and hee directed vs vnto another Fishery, about some fine miles from that place where wee arrived, about sixe of the clocke the same night. But comming alabare, we found not any, same one man, who after fome conference had with vs, and giving him some Bread, and some of our Aqua vite, hee told vs. that the Mafter of the house, with three of his sonnes were hunting of Ducker, and that 30 their wines were afraid, and were runne into the Woods to hide themselves, leaving a young childe behind them for hafte. So he brought vs into the house, where by that time that we had flaved an houre (because there were so many Muschines, which are like vnto a Midge, and fling most horribly, so that we were not able to fray without) the Master of the house, and his somnes came thither, who at the first were afraid, thinking we came to rob them. And they were about to shoot our men in the Boat; but one of our men holding vp a Biscuit cake, they then came to them, and spake voto them; but our men not voderstanding them, made them signes to the house, where my felfe, William Gurdon, and William Purfelone were: who, when they came into the house, being yet afraid, they came in one after another. Now, when we had faluted them after the Ruffe manner, they asked vs of whence we were, and for what cause we came thither: 40 whereunto I made answere, that wee were English-men, who because of the troubles in Russia, came thicker to feeke a Trade, having heard divers times of the fame of those parts. Then hee replied, that in times past those places had beene good for trading : but now, by reason of a bad Gouernour, in those troublesome times, vpon a spleene he had fired the Towne, and burned above an hundred houses: and so by that meanes they were fallen into pouerty, and trading decayed, by reason of his great exactions. Yet hee faid, that they have great store of Salmon, and that the last yeere they got about 15000. Salmons, and in the Winter is their chiefest Mart, For then the Samojeds come thither from divers places, and bring Sables , and Beavers , white Foxes, Rofamackes, Feathers, and some Squerrils. So having supped with him, we gave him a

gallon of our Aqua vita, and some fortie cakes of our white Biscuit; and three or foure pound of Raisins: for we heard, that he was one of the principallest men in the Towne. Then desiring 50 his fauour, he holpe vs to a man to goe with vs vp to the Towne, because of the fearefulnesse of the people, which they conceive through the Warres of the Poles: and fo wee departed from thence that night to the Towne.

The fixteenth, in the afternoone we arrived at the Towne of Puffozera, where wee found not many people, confidering the number of houses there, which are bet wixt fourescore and an hundred, being of wood, built after the Ruffian manner, and they are subject voto the Ruffe, obseruing all their Rites as doe the Ruffer. The people were all abroad (tome, in getting of Morfes Oyle, and Belougaes Oyle, and some fishing of a fish called Ometta, which is a very sweet fish, and some hunting Duckes) saving the Customers, and three or soure more, who were likewise afraid of vs, although we had one of their owne people with vs, and were ready to flee away. 60 So we feeing their fearefulnesse, caused their man to goe first on shoare with vs three about mentioned, not permitting the rest of our men to come on Land as yet : then hee calling to them, they stayed, still perping from behind the corners of their houses, vntill at the last there was a Ruffe, one of Colmogro, that had wintred with them, who knew me, and had seene me some two

veeres before at Cola in Lappia, at his Vncles house. And so he encouraged them, speaking greatly in our commendation, thewing them, that I was a Merchant, and came to trade with them, and not with any intene of harme: for hee knew mee very well, and told them, that I was at Cola foure or fine yeeres together, and lay at his Vncles house. So he came to me, and tooke me by the hand, asking me how I did, and told me his name, and how hee had seene mee with his Vincle at Cola. Then I called to mind, that I had feene him there, and fo we grew acquainted and he went with vs to the Custome-house, where staying an houre, at length the Customer came; and after many questions had concerning our comming thicher, I craued licence, that some of ws might winter with them: which they denyed, alledging that they durst not without the Emperour of Roffis his licence. Whereupon I answered, that the Emperours Maiestie, when he was 10 raigning, was very gracious vnto our Nation, aboue all other strangers; and shewed what great raigning, was very grantous visio on tweeton, about an object strangers, and newed what great priniledges hee had befrowed on our people: and how by the English-mens meanes at the fift, what a trade is now at Arkania, and what profit came, not onely into his Maieflier Treasure, but also into all parts of his Dominions, which in time might be brought hither: and withall shewed the Emperours printledge. Wherefore then they began to put away feare, and willed vs to flay fine or fixe dayes, vntill he had fent for the chiefest men of the Townes-men, who were abroad and then they would give vs an answer. Then I desired, that we might have an house to be in, and not to ftay without doores. So he gaue libertie to any that would, to entertayne vs, where to there was one Calless that made answer, that he would: whereupon wee went with him, and were in an Ambar of his, vntill wee received answer from them. In the meane time wee 20 made much of them, and feasted them with our Aqua vite, Biscuit, and Figs, that we might the

The foure and twentieth, the Customers came to give vs our answere, and told vs, that they had concluded that we might stay if wee would : but they must write up to the Marke of our being here. So we thanked them, and gaue them such entertaynment as we could, and sent prefents to fixe of them of the chiefest, which they tooke very thankfully, and promised what fauour they could. So this night I made ready my Letters to fend for England.

Molgomfey.

The fourth of August, fine and twentie Lodyas arrived at the Towne laden with Meale, and others which were bound for Molgomfey: but by reason of contrary winds, they were forced into Pechora, and came up to the Towne of Puffexer, and vnladed to make fale,

The fixe and twentieth, we removed from the house where we were at the first, vnto a Poles house, who is christened Ruffe, where we are to remayne all the Winter.

Pele baptized Froft in Au-

The nine and twentieth, the frost was so strong, that the Ozers was frozen ouer, and the Ice drining in the River to and againe, brake all the nets, so that they got no Salmon, no not so much as for their owne victuals. The second of September, the frost brake vp againe, and it was open weather. The eight of September, there was a Soyma, which the Towns-men bought, that went downs the River to have gone for Ingoria, and had a faire wind: but they neglecting two dayes fayling, that would have carried them forth of the River to the Sea, the wind came contrary, fo that they were wind-bound, and could not get any further: and on the nineteenth, gaue ouer their Voyage, and came up to the Towne.

The thirteenth of October, the frost was so extreme, that the Ozers stood in one night, that men did walke on it the next day, and so continued all the Winter after.

The twelfth of November, there went two men of Penega to Uf-zilma, to buy Squerrils, and Beauers, and other commodities. The thirteenth, the Sunne arole at South and by East by the Compasse, and set at South-west and by West,

The foure and twentieth, there went divers men, with at the least, three or fourescore Sleds Slobeden Mart. drawne with Deere, to a place called Slobeden, where they hold a Mart, from the beginning of December to the middle thereof : and they carried fresh-water fish thither, with whom William Purs glone went into Russia. The fixe and twentieth, the Sunne arose at South and by West by the Compasse, and fet at South-west and by West.

The first of December, the Sunne arose at South and by West Westerly by the Compasse, and fet South-west and by West Southerly. The fourth, the Towns-men of Pecbers went over land into Ingoria, to trade with the Inhabitants there, and the Samojeds.

The eleventh, Marmaduke Wilfon faid that he faw the Sunne, but it was but the way of the Sunnes beames. The thirteenth, I faw the Sunnes beames my felfe, but I could not fee the Sun it felfe, although I watched it very strictly. The fourteenth, it was snowie, and stormic weather, and continued so vntill the foure and twentieth day, which was close weather also. Sunne retur-

The flue and twentieth, being Christmas day, I saw the Sunne, and it rose at South and by West, and set at South-west and by South, it having the neathermost part of it all the way init with the Horizon. The fixe and twentieth, it was flormy and fnowy weather, and fo conti- 60 nued vntill the end of the moneth.

The second of Ianuarie, the Sunne arose at South somewhat Westerly, and set South-west

The fift, William Pursalone returned from Colmogro. The eleventh, the Sunne arose at South by East by the Compasse, and fet at South-west and by West.

The twelfth, there came a command from the Patriarch, that there should bee a generall Fast, Generall Fast both for young and old, not exempting the fucking babes; which began the thirteenth, continu- for three days ing three dayes space, they neither eating nor drinking, so much as water, neither admitted they very fria. their fucking Babes, faue those that fainted, to whom they gaue a few Figs and a little water.

The nineteenth, the Inhabitants of Pultozer that went into Ingeria, returned from thence. baning had but an hard Voyage, by reason of the Warres which the Samoyeds had amone it themselves : so that they durit not goe into Molgomsey, where they catch the most part of the Sables which come into Rullia.

The three and twentieth, came the Carratchey, which is the chiefe of the Samoreds, but they In had no commodities to speake of, by reason of the Warres: so that they neither durst trade with the Samoreds of Moleomier, neither hunt for the Sables themselves, which at other times they were wont to doe. The thirtieth, I had the chiefe Carratcher, his fonne, his fonnes fonne, and his brothers sonne at Dinner, and had some conference with him, who told mee. that they had feene ships in the Vaggats, two yeeres one after another : but they durft not bee feene of them, but fled from them : for the Ruffes told them, that they would kill them, or carrie them Ruffes frend. away prisoners. Yet they seemed to be glad of our comming, when they saw our behaulour, and the entertay mene that they had of vs: Neuertheleffe, they are very timerous, and vnreafonable couetous, as by more acquaintance I perceived by them.

The fecond of February, the most part of the Samojeds went to Slobodes with their commo- February 20 dities, because in the Summer they had beene together by the eares with the Samoyeds of Calle-Samoyeds nofe, and had flayne one or two of them: wherefore they went to agree with them, and to quiriell.

pay ranfome for fome of their men that were taken afterwards. The fifteenth, the Sunne arofe at South-cast, a little Southerly, and fet at West and by South Westerly. The fixteenth, the Sunne arose at South-east, and set at West due by the Compasse as I could fet it, the variation being two points Westerly : for, at a South South-west, the Sunne Veriation

commeth to the Meridian.

The twentieth, I had conference with a Rufe, concerning their trade of Molgomfer, who had The reportof beene there twice, and he was the first that euer attempted it, and none hath beene farther then a Ruffe, a great he to the Eastwards. And he told me, that their course from Medenskey Zanorot, at the mouth Traveller of the way from 30 of Pechora to the Eastward, to the two Ilands called Zyelenfa, is two dayes and three nights diflance, fayling with a faire wind. From thence to Breit-vinnese, three dayes and three nights Medemster Zefailing with a faire wind, which is within the Streight of Vaygats. And from thence by an Iland, worst. or rather a Rocke, called Socolia Londia, leaving it on the Starboord fide for feare of Rockes, Zylenja two fill keeping your coarse North-east, vntill you come to a long Point on the Starboard side, Breit-vimase. with a fand lying off into the Sea three miles, some five or fixe dayes fayling. Which when you Social India. have gotten about, you must hold your course somewhat more enclining to the South, five or fix A long Point. dayes more : and then you shall come to the Riner of Ob; against the mouth whereof lieth an From Medemdayes more: and then you mail come to the more of or, seemit to most which Mayne, 140 Zaumetto
Hand: but you must keepe the Sea-boord of it, by reason it is should betwit it and the Mayne, 140 Zaumetto The Land all along ft the shoare is a fine lowe Land, and the going into the River, is on the East 40 fide of the Hand. The River is reported to be a Summer dayes fayling ouer in bredth, and is full Antland.

of Ilands: whereby they report it to be should. Yet, in my opinion, so great a River cannot be Obisfullof I. without a mayne channell; which as yet they have not fought for : and therefore they judge it lands, broad innauigable. Also they report it to bee very plentifull of Fish of divers forts: but the people and should. here, and the Ruffes are vinwilling that wee should goe thither. Moreover, hee told mee, that from the River Ob to the Eastwards, the Land stretcheth East, some fixe or eight dayes fayling The people of more. To the Eastward of the River Ob lieth another great River as large as Ob, and is very Pethora, and the Ruffe are deepe water, and runneth from the South, how farre as yet it is worknowne. Although that hee vowilling that affirmed, that he himselfe had sayled at the least three weekes up the River: and all along as we should goe they went , they met with fundry forts of People, differing in Language one from another, to 06.

50 which they call Sameyeds. Yea, and the People there did cervifie them, that vp more to- The River wards the South, there are Tarters inhabiting, who ride vpon Horses. And hee affirmed, that Samonds. they found pieces of Ploughes that had beene driven downe the River by the flouds, caused Hories. by the Snow melting from the Mountaines. This River is very high Land, and deepe water on Ploughes, both fides. Into this River, on the East fide falleth another River, called Tinguffer, and the In- The River of habitants thereof are fo called : whereby I coniecture, that it is not faire from the Citie the Tinguffen. Taneut in Carbay. These Tinguffes report, that there is another huge River, that trendeth to Tangut mentithe Southwards, which the necke of a Land parteth from the River of Tinguifey, wherein and by Fide, a there are great flips, not valike vnto the Rufes flips, that fayle in it, having many Mafts and land which when they are those of make all the next flut, with the next course which all the same flut, with the next course which all the same flut, with the next course which all the next flut, with the next course which all the next flut, with the next course which all the next flut with the next course which was the next course which are the next course which was the next course which are the next course which was the next course which Gunnes, which when they are shot off, make all the earth shake with the noyse: which should from Cather or

6C feeme to be the Chinians, that trade thither in the Summer, and returne backe againe ere the ching. Winter doth come. The like also affirmeth another, being a Ruffe, who hath beene in the River The River of Tinguffey, where the people make this report.

The first of March, the Ruffes tooke their Tourney from hence, from Puffozer into Ruffia, with March, fuch commodities as they bought.

a little Southerly, it mounting a pretie height aboue the Horizon.

Aaa 2

The

yeeres before at Cola in Lappia, at his Vncles house. And so he encouraged them, speaking greatly in our commendation, thewing them, that I was a Merchant, and came to trade with them. and not with any intend of harme: for hee knew mee very well, and told them, that I was at Cola foure or fine yeeres together, and lay at his Vncles house. So he came to me, and tooke me by the hand, asking me how I did, and told me his name, and how hee had feene mee with his Vincle at Cola. Then I called to mind, that I had feene him there, and fo we grew acquainted; and he went with vs to the Custome-house, where staying an houre, at length the Customer came: and after many questions had concerning our comming thither, I craued licence, that foure of vs might winter with them: which they denyed, alledging that they durft not without the Emperour of Ruffia his licence. Whereupon I answered, that the Emperours Maiestie, when he was 10 raigning, was very gracious vnto our Nation, aboue all other strangers; and shewed what great priviledges hee had bestowed on our people : and how by the English-mens meanes at the first: what a trade is now at Arkania, and what profit came, not onely into his Maieflies Treasurie but also into all parts of his Dominions, which in time might be brought hither: and withall shewed the Emperours priviledge. Wherefore then they began to put away feare, and willed vs to stay fine or fixe dayes, vntill he had fent for the chiefest men of the Townes-men, who were abroad and then they would give vs an answer. Then I defired, that we might have an house to be in. and not to flay without doores. So he gaue libertie to any that would, to entertayne vs, whereto there was one Callers that made answer, that he would: whereupon wee went with him. and were in an Ambar of his, vntill wee received answer from them. In the meane time wee 20 made much of them, and feasted them with our Aqua vite, Biscuit, and Figs, that we might the better obtavne their loue.

The foure and twentieth, the Customers came to give vs our answere, and told vs, that they had concluded that we might flay if wee would : but they must write up to the Muske of our being here. So we thanked them, and gaue them such entertaynment as we could, and sent prefents to fixe of them of the chiefest, which they tooke very thankfully, and promised what fauour they could. So this night I made ready my Letters to fend for England.

Moltomicy.

Froft in Au-

The fourth of August, five and twentie Lodyas arrived at the Towne laden with Meale, and others which were bound for Molgomfey : but by reason of contrary winds, they were forced into Pechera, and came up to the Towne of Puffezer; and unladed to make fale. The fixe and twentieth, we removed from the house where we were at the first, vnto a Poles Pele baprized

house, who is christened Russe, where we are to remayne all the Winter.

The nine and twentieth, the frost was so strong, that the Ozers was frozen ouer, and the Ice driving in the River to and againe, brake all the nets, fo that they got no Salmon, no not fo much as for their owne victuals. The second of September, the frost brake vp againe, and it was open weather. The eight of September, there was a Soyma, which the Towns-men bought, that went downs the River to have gone for Ingoria, and had a faire wind: but they neglecting two dayes fayling, that would have carried them forth of the River to the Sea, the wind came contrary, fo that they were wind-bound, and could not get any further: and on the nineteenth, gaue ouer their Voyage, and came vo to the Towne.

The thirteenth of October, the frost was so extreme, that the Ozers flood in one night, that men did walke on it the next day, and so continued all the Winter after.

The twelfth of Nouember, there went two men of Penega to Uft-zilma, to buy Squerrils. and Beauers, and other commodities. The thirteenth, the Sunne arole at South and by East by the Compasse, and set at South-west and by West.

The foure and twentieth, there went divers men, with at the least, three or fourescore Sleds Slobodes Mart. drawne with Deere, to a place called Slobodes, where they hold a Mart, from the beginning of December to the middle thereof : and they carried fresh-water fish thither, with whom William Purigione went into Ruffis. The fixe and twentieth, the Sunne arose at South and by West by the Compasse, and set at South-west and by West.

The first of December, the Sunne arose at South and by West Westerly by the Compasse, and fet South-west and by West Southerly. The fourth, the Towns-men of Pechera went over land into Ingeria, to trade with the Inhabitants there, and the Samoreds.

The eleventh, Marmaduke Wilfon faid that he faw the Sunne, but it was but the way of the Sunnes beames. The thirteenth, I faw the Sunnes beames my felfe, but I could not fee the Sun it selfe, although I watched it very strictly. The fourteenth, it was snowie, and stormie weather, and continued so vntill the foure and twentieth day, which was close weather also.

Lugoria,

The fine and twentieth, being Christmas day, I saw the Sunne, and it rose at South and by West, and set at South-west and by South, it having the neathermost part of it all the way inst with the Horizon. The fixe and twentieth, it was flormy and fnowy weather, and fo conti- 60 nued vntill the end of the moneth.

The second of Ianuarie, the Sunne arose at South somewhat Westerly, and set South-west a little Southerly, it mounting a pretie height about the Horizon.

The fift, William Purfglone returned from Colmogro. The eleventh, the Sunne arofe at South by East by the Compasse, and fet at South-west and by West.

The twelfth, there came a command from the Patriarch, that there should bee a generall Fast, Generall Fast both for young and old, not exempting the fucking babes; which began the thirteenth, continu- for three dayes ing three dayes space, they neither eating nor drinking, so much as water, neither admitted they very frist. their fucking Babes, faue those that fainted, to whom they gaue a few Figs and a little water.

The nineteenth, the Inhabitants of Puftozer that went into Ingeria, returned from thence, hauing had but an hard Voyage, by reason of the Warres which the Samoyeds had amonest themselues; so that they durft not goe into Molgomsey, where they catch the most part of the

Sables which come into Ruffia.

The three and twentieth, came the Carratcher, which is the chiefe of the Samoreds, but they Io had no commodities to speake of, by reason of the Warres: so that they neither durit trade with the Samojeds of Moleomfer, neither hunt for the Sables themselves, which at other times they were wont to doe. The thirtieth, I had the chiefe Carratches, his fonne, his fonnes fonne, and his brothers fonne at Dinner, and had fome conference with him, who told mee, that they had feene ships in the Vaygats, two yeeres one after another: but they durst not bee feene of them, but fled from them : for the Ruffes told them, that they would kill them, or carrie them Ruffes fraud. away prisoners. Yet they seemed to be glad of our comming, when they saw our behaulour, and the entertay ment that they had of vs: Neuerthelesse, they are very timerous, and vnreasonable couetous, as by more acquaintance I perceived by them.

The fecond of February, the most part of the Samojeds went to Slobodes with their commo- February. 20 dities, because in the Summer they had beene together by the eares with the Samojeds of Calle- Samojeds note, and had flavne one or two of them; wherefore they went to agree with them, and to quiriell pay ransome for some of their men that were taken afterwards.

The fifteenth, the Sunne arole at South-east, a little Southerly, and fet at West and by South Westerly. The fixteenth, the Sunne arose at South-east, and set at West due by the Compasse as I could fet it, the variation being two points Westerly : for, at a South South-west, the Sunne Variation.

commeth to the Meridian.

The twentieth, I had conference with a Ruffe, concerning their trade of Molgomfer, who had The report of beene there twice, and he was the first that euer attempted it, and none hath beene farther then 2 Ruffe, 2 great he to the Eastwards. And he told me, that their courie from Medenskey Zamoro, at the mouth Traueller of the way from 30 of Pechera to the Eastward, to the two Ilands called Zyelenfa, is two dayes and three nights diflance. fayling with a faire wind. From thence to Broin-vinnofe, three dayes and three nights Medenthen Zefailing with a faire wind, which is within the Streight of Vaggats. And from thence by an Iland, worst. or rather a Rocke, called Social Landia, leaving it on the Starboord fide for feare of Rockes, Zyelenja two of lattice a courte North-east, vntill you come to a long Point on the Starboard side, Breit-vinnose, with a fand lying off into the Sea three miles, some sine or sixe dayes sayling. Which when you have gotten about, you must hold your course somewhat more enclining to the South, fine or fix A long Point. daves more : and then you shall come to the Riner of Ob; against the mouth whereof lieth an From Medem-Hand: but you must keepe the Sea-boord of it, by reason it is should betwixt it and the Mayne. And the Land all along it the shoure is a fine lowe Land, and the going into the River, is on the East of the stockages. 40 fide of the Iland. The River is reported to be a Summer dayes fayling over in bredth, and is full An Iland. of Ilands: whereby they report it to be should. Yet, in my opinion, so great a River cannot be Obis fullof 1.

without a mayne channell; which as yet they have not fought for : and therefore they judge it lands, broad innauigable. Also they report it to bee very plentifull of Fish of duers forts: but the people here, and the Ruffer are vinwilling that wee should goe thither. Moreouer, hee told mee, that here, and the Engire are vinwilling that wee mount goe tritioner, anoteours, nee took mee, this from the River OB to the Endiwards, the Land fretcheth Endi, flome fix or eight dayes faying. The people of more. To the Endtward of the River OB lieth another great River as large as Ob, and is very Pethons, and the Company of the Company of the Engire as deepe water, and runneth from the South, how farre as yet it is vnknowne. Although that hee the augus are affirmed, that he himselfe had sayled at the least three weekes up the River: and all along as we should got they went , they met with fundry forts of People, differing in Language one from another, to 06,

50 which they call Sampeds. Yea, and the People there did cerrifie them, that vp more to. The Riner wards the South, there are Tariary inhabiting, who ride vpon Horles. And hee affirmed, that Yample, the Manufacture of Elevaber by the them. they found pieces of Ploughes that had beene driven downe the River by the flouds, caused Hories. by the Snow melting from the Mountaines. This River is very high Land, and deepe water on Ploughes. both fides. Into this River, on the East fide falleth another River, called Tinguffer, and the In- The River of habitants thereof are so called: whereby I coniecture, that it is not faire from the Citie the Tinguffers. Tangut in Cathay. These Tinguifes report, that there is another hage River, that trendeth to Tangut mentithe Southwards, which the necke of a Land parteth from the River of Tinguffey: wherein oned by Polo, a the Southwards, which the necke of a Land parteen from the Ruler of Impanyer, which the large Kingdom there are great thins, not valide who the Ruler thips, that tayle in it, having many Malts and Northward Northward Gunnes, which when they are shot off, make all the earth shake with the noyle: which should from Cashes, or 60 feeme to be the Chinians, that trade thither in the Summer, and returne backe againe ere the China.

Winter doth come. The like also affirmeth another, being a Ruffe, who hath beene in the River The River of Tinguffey, where the people make this report.

The first of March, the Ruffes tooke their Tourney from hence, from Puffozer into Ruffia, with March fuch commodities as they bought.

The twelfth, the Sunnes altitude by the Que irant was 67. degrees and 40. minutes; and the P. Morrain 69, declination, no degrees 52. minutes, which being added, maketh 68. degrees and 30. minutes. degrees 30, or being the true heigth of Puffezer.

544

Aprilla

yond it the

due Eafte

tonga.

breakes up.

Foure dayes iourney be-

ger and Ouft-

faire Barley

part for Mot-

Tem combu-

and Ric.

gomfey. Iuly.

ftion.

The thirteenth, the Sun arose at East and by South a little Southerly, and set at West Northwest. This day the Sunnes altitude by the Quadrant was 67, degrees 20. minutes; and the declination, 1. degree 14. minutes : which added together, maketh 68. degrees 35. minutes : fo that I conclude, that Puffoxer standeth in about 68, degrees 30, minutes. The eight and twentieth, the Sunne arose at East and by North, and set at North-west and by West.

The eleuenth of Aprill, the Inhabitants of this Towne returned from Slobedca, bringing with

them Rie, Rie-meale, and other provisions.

The one and twentieth, having conference with a Permack, concerning what commodities were to be had at the Towne of Uft-zilma, he told me, that there were Losh hides, Squerrils, Sa-The report of bles, white Foxes, and Rosomackes. Moreouer, he told me, that beyond the River of Teniles, the Land trendeth due East, and then there is a River called Peaseda, and beyond that another. called (aurga, which runneth into Cathay: whole King, thele Parmete and Rufes call Truthe sfar. The Ruser lieth North and South as they of Tenffey fay, but they cannot tell how farre: land trendeth for, there hath not any beene up the River, by reason they are afraid of their shot. And this Pelida Riner. Permach told me, that on the Sea coaft betwixt thefe two Rivers , Peafeda and Catonga, they Catonga Riuer tunneth out of found certaine stones like vnto Gold, and some like Siluer, being about the halfe way betwixe Gold and Sil-

The two and twentieth, we had newes brought that the Ice was broken, in the Pechora all uer in the mid- along it by the fides.

way betweene The ninth of May, the Sunne arose at North-east somwhat Easterly, and set at North som-Pilide and Cawhat Westerly, it being iust foure houres by the Houre-glasse under the Horizon.

The three and twentieth, the Sun did not goe under the Horizon, for it was a pretie height aboue the Horizon, at a North North-east point of the Compasse: it then being at the lowest. The foure and twentieth, we had newes that the Pechora brake vp, vpon the twentieth day of The River Ice this instant moneth. The fixe and twentieth, at foure of the clocke in the after-noone, I departed from Pufozer, to goe to Uf-zeilma, where I arrived the thirtieth day inflant. And the Ri-uer of Pechora lieth most part North North-east, and South South-west, and sometimes North 30 and South. Uft-zilma, is a Village of some thirtie or fortie houses , and flandeth in the height of 66, degrees and 30, minutes. They have Corne growing there, both Barley and Rie; and zilma. Ouft-zilma is in their Barley is passing faire and white almost as Rice.

The ninth of Iune, I departed from Vft-zilma backe againe to Puflozer, where I arrived the 66. degrees eleventh of June. The one and twentieth, seventeene Sommas departed from hence to see to 30. minutes, Molgomfey : some belonging to this place, some to Vft-zilma, and some to Mezen, and Penega. & there grow The two and twentieth, divers Boats went from hence to the Sea, to fish for Omelyes and Bealowgaes Oyle, The foure and twentieth, I fent downe William Puriglone to the Sea fide, to 17. Somas de- buy the Oyle which God shall fend them.

The third of Iuly, I received a Letter forth of England, by the way of Colmogro.

The fift, we had newes that the Gotternour and Souldiers of Tom have burnt the Towne. and fled from thence, by reason they wanted victuals, and their pay : and about three hundred of them intended to come to Uft-zalma, to rob the Inhabitants thereof. This day I was told, that from Pullozer vp Pecbora with a faire wind, to the River of Oufe, is three weekes travell: and then vp the River of Onfe, to Podcamen , ten dayes , and from thence to Ob, eight dayes. drawne by Deere: and from thence to Berefona, fixteene dayes, which is a Towne of trading, This mine Host told me, that he was a prisoner at Berejons, and at Tabelfee: and hee affirmeth, that Tobelfee is a Citie of great trade, and that the Toferty, Bowhars, and Tarter, comercially to trade, who bring Silkes, Veluets, Grogran, Sendames, and Kindackes, and that great store of Cloth, Pewter, and Copper may be vented there. Also there is great store of Furres, as Sables, Squerrils, Foxes, Blacke, Rosamackes, and Beauers. He sayth, that from Pullouir to Vade in Ingoria, which is on this fide Ob, with carriage vpon Deere, it is a moneths Lourney, and Notone is on the other fide of Ob; and it is two weekes and an halfe with light carriage or polt. Moreouer, he told me, that Pechora runneth into Veleka permia, fine weekes journey from Puffozer, and from Veleca permia to Verho touria, nine dayes journey by Horse and Sleds : and from thence to Tamen by River, ten dayes : and from Tomen to Tobolico, fixe dayes by the Riuer Irtifh, and is the chiefe Citie of all Siberia. And from Tobolfeo to Sourgout, is fixe weekes Intelligence of Iourney up the River Ob, from whence come all the rich Furres which come to Arcania. From the Country. Sourgout to Tome, which is among it the Tartars, is three weekes up the River Ob: and vet none knoweth how farre the Ob runneth further, as he fayth, he was carried these wayes to the Muske, in the beginning of Rollries his time.

The fixteenth, I was told by a Permack, having some speech with him concerning the Vargats, that from Medniskey Zamorot to the Vayeats, is one day and a nights layle with a faire wind. And as you goe forth of the Vargats, there lieth an Iland Galled Meafino Offrone, not

being farre from Socolia Londy : and from Vaygats through Tongorskoy four into Ourskey gomba, Scula Londia. (which is a great Bay and deepe) is two dayes and one nights layling into Mountay River, the Youngaries flar. course East, somewhat Southerly. And from Mommey to Sharrappa shar, which is an Inlet, is Mommey a Riv halfe a dayes fayling: and from thence to Tomeonone is halfe a dayes fayling, which is an high uer. Land : and from thence to Naromaia is a dayes fayling. And there are three little Rivers be Sharraspa Shar. twixt them : and there are Morfes all alongst that shoare, and farther he knew not by Sea. But Yourcean he fayth, that the River Ob is a dayes fayling right over. And from Zylena reca to the Taz sauoros, the course is South-east, a dayes layling : and from the Zauoros of Tax to the Rivers Ob mouth, is a day and a nights fayling : and there is an Hand in the mouth thereof, being high land. Zilens River. To And from thence up the River, the course is South-east to the Towne eight dayes journey, to Tax Zaueros. be haled with a rope, there runneth fuch a ftreame. But, ere you come to the Taz River, there Taz River, behaled with a rope, there runners man a remember by the revolutions of the raw files, there is another River on the Starboord fide, called Power, where they get of the beth Sables that come; and you must leave the lland at the Taw on the Larboord fide. And from Taw Towns up the River Volochanco, is fixe dayes journey Easterly against the streame, vntill' you come to a The Towne. Vollocke, about a mile and an halfe long. Marifi ground, and fo into another River, some foure Power River, dayes rowing with the freame, to the River that is called Trowbay, which is a great River, and falleth into Teniffer, fome three dayes journey more with the streame : at the entrance whereof The Biner lieth an illand; called by the fame name; whereon there is a little Towne of the fame name, From Haustern.

CHAP. 10. Mowmoy River. Indiga River ; deepe water, good Harbour.

Kishayskoy Tsarrstua. The fift of August, my selfe, and the Boy, went abourd the Lodia departing from Pullozer. August. The tenth, we arrived at the Glombocke, which are the deepe water, whither William Purfeglone They depart was come with the Oyle, where we melted what we could, before we departed. The twelfth, I observed in the Gloubocke, and had it on the Quadrant co. degrees 20. minutes : and the Declination was 1 2, degrees 42, minutes, fo it standeth in 60, degrees 12, minutes,

thence downe the River Teniffer to the River Hauthe, is twelve daves fayling and it is a great ne houtofce.

The eighteenth, we departed from the Gloubocke, and entred the Dry Sea, and arrived at the Zawret the one and twentieth.

The two and twentieth, we weighed and went out to Sea, the wind at East North-east, but the Giosbette in 60 20. wind comming to the North-weit, we put roomer againe, and came to an Anchor at the Zano- degrees 12. rot againe. The foure and twentieth, I observed at the Zaweret, and had it on the Quadrant 62. minutes. degrees no minutes, and the Declination was 7. degrees 26. minutes, foit flandeth in about 70. degrees 30. minutes.

The fix and twentieth, we departed from the Zanorot about noon, the wind being at East, the land trending betwixt it & Collections Eaft & Welt, being two Voadaes, or fixty Verits distance. Collections. The feuen and twentieth, we came to an Handcalled Mezzon Sharry, being fixtie Verits to Mezzon Sharry, the Eastwards of Snatinofe, and it is about ten Verfts in length, and two Verits broad. At the

East end thereof, Oliner Brunell was carried into Harbour by a Ruffe, where he was Land-locked, Oliner Brunell,

having the lland on the one fide, and the Mayne on the other.

The eight and twentieth, we departed from Mezyon Sharry, the wind at North-cast, a little gale, but before night it fell thicke, and wee steered away North-west, and about mid-night, it came to the North North-east blowing a very fore florme : so that we were not able to beare our fayle abor, and having floud under foot, we were fogged into the Bay, and put alhoure fome two houres before day, voon the long point of the obscure Harbour, about three miles to the Westwards, the wind being at North: where we got all our goods on Land, alwayes looking when the Lodia would have split. But, by Gods Almightie Providence, she beate over that Sand, and lay betwixt it and the beach: fo that when the ty de was fallen, she fate on ground, as if she had beene in a creeke, the Sands all dry round about her. Also on the Welt fide of Swatinofe, in the Bay is a great River, called Indiga, which is, deepe Water, and a good Harbour for a flip, as Indiga, the Ruffes doe report.

The thirtieth, the storme continued all the day long. The one and thirtieth, about noone it blew leffe wind, and at hight we stopped our leakes as well as we could.

The first of September, in the morning weegot our goods againe aboord. The second, in the September, morning, we went roomer with the obscure Harbour, the wind being at the North-west, but at noone, it came to the South-east and East South-east, so we weighed , and flood to the Westwards againe, vntill wee came to the River , where wee came on shoare the last yeere: which is called Zenones, where wee anchored a little to the Eastwards, and ridde the most part of that night.

The third, in the morning we weighed, and stood to the Westwards, but the wind comming 60 to the West South-west blowing hard, and having the tyde against vs, we archored againe about ten of the clocke on Thursday, being the third day : yet within two hours after, we were forced to weigh, and put roomer to a little River or Creeke, that is, called Creeftone where wee ridde untill the ninth day. Then we loofed, thinking to have gone forth to Sea, the wind being Eafterly; but it blowing hard, and there running a great streame of fresh water, that it put vs

20 River, and runneth to the East (as it is thought) into Cathay, which of the Permacks, is called they.

Course of Pe-

CHAP. II. Voyage ouer Land, Mountagnes, Rocks: Marish ground.

on ground againe, wee were in great danger againe of losing all. So wee were forced to get all things on floare againe, and then got her off the elementh day, and wene into the Creakesgaine : and stopping our leakes as well as we could, we got our goods abourd againe.

The fourteenth, the winde comming to the East South-east, wee got forth to Sea with much adoe; and fogue after, the winde came to the East North-east, a faire gale; and wee stood italongst the Land South-east and by South, and North-west, and by North all that after-noone votill mid-night; at what time we were thwart of Callenge. The fifteenth, about three of the clocke in the morning, the winde came to the North-eaft, and blew very hard, so we steered away South South west, and at night weesfell with a shoald, which they faid, is thwart of the Mezen mouth; but I take it, it was Knocke John.

The fixteenth, in the morning about eight or nine of the clocke, haping carried but an hullocke of our fayle all night, we fell with Danielene Stelle on the Coaft of Lappia, the Mind being at South, and blowing hard, so that we went into Harbour at the West of the Hand, there standing flue Crosses on it, it being a Rocke: And there are foure Warlocks on the Mayne, and another on a Rocke to the Westwards : yet it is but for Lodyes, and that a bad one also, beeing full of Rockes round about, where we rid vnfill the fix and twentieth. Then we departed forth of Daniela Stolbe about noone, and at night we came to Sofnouets, where we rid all night, The feuen and twentieth, in the morning we fell with Churus Nofe. The eight and twentieth, wee arrived at Arkania, where wee landed our Oyle. The nine and twentieth, wee arrived at

Churna Note.

Extracts taken out of two Letters of Iofias Logan from Pechora, to Mafter Hakluy: Prebend of Westminster. Here vse to come but ber in the Winter about two thousand Samoteds with their Commodities, which

may be such as we dreamed not on yet. For by chance one came to Vs with a piece of an Elephants This piece of Inis piece of Tooth, which he faid he bought of a Samoied. And heere are men called Tinguifies, whose Committees beyond the Rivers of Obi, and Taes; and bordereth upon the great River Yeniste: which is a good Ri-The Sea Naromzie.

Letter from

Peccera, Au-

guft 16.

wer and a deepe, and falleth into the Sea Naromzie : And it foodd feeme it he not farre from China, 30 Therefore you may conceine what bope there is if this Enterprize, if it please God it may be followed as it ought to be. Thus be feething Almighte God to bleffe you and us, I romanit you to the protestion of bim, who is the giver of all goodneffe, Iul. 24. 1611. In another

Herecome two or three thousand Samoieds bither to trade with their Sables, Beauers, Blacke Forces, Squirrels, Wolfes, Resomacks, Ermines. And here is caught in September, good flore of Salmon, Traine of a certayne great file, called a Bealonga, and Morfies, and Seales Oyle in the Sommer time, and White Foxes and Feathers. I had some conference with a Russe, who told meethat the Samoieds told him, that there lye Minchins, which in their Language is ftrangers , buried in the Sand in Coffins, with their armes agroffe their bretts which they eftimate to be about fixtie yeeres ago: And 40 that they found Writing Tables in one of their pockets, and other final Trifles which they rocke away. The Vaygats is sometimes open and sometimes that : and upon them groweth Christall of the Mount. Chryshil roon The Ruites and Permacks predayered with plane of the Ruites and Permacks program to Christate of the Monte, the Light to the great Exploying on Permacks produced permacks program to the produce to the great Exploying Pechona, called Youngarsky Shaz into which there fall four Ruets; The Eastermost mbereof they call Cara Reca, enthe Blacke River ; beyond which they passe unto another, Sustantia Reca. talled Moetnaja Reca; then shey come to a Voloc, or necke of Land, which continues but three Verfix: The Volce of our which they draw their Boats and goods, and fo come to another River, called Zelena Reca, or The necke of Land. Greene River, which bringeth them into Obi: Into which on the Easter fide, the River Taes falleth. making but one mouth with the Riner Obi, being should, and they report at to bec as broad toward the mouth, as a man can discerne oner, bauing many Ilands therein.

Taes River. Yenifey River. Tinguiffey 2

Zelena Reca.

ObiRiuer.

Moreour, there is another great River, called Yenisley beyond Taes: which they fay, is rather bigger and deeper then Ohi; and it runneth up into the Land no man knoweth bom farre : Although ther bane disconcred some fourteene dayes rowing up therein: neither can they learne of the enhabitants thereof bem farre it firetcheth; whom they call I inguffey under are a proper people of themfelates. And People.

A white Citie. the Samoieds report that they have travelled fo farre, that they came within fight of a White Citie or Greatinging Towns : which floudd ferme to be builded of flone, for they durft not goe to make trial : and they heard great ringing of Bels . Alfo they fay, that they faw beafts, but they were not like their Doeres; for they had a great Mane, along Tatle, no Hornes, and their footing was round, not clouen, as their Deeres Ma . and they wife sortide upon their backs; and not to draw in Sieds as their Deere wife to doe: Thefe I af-People in Ar- Jure my felfe and Horfes. And further they report, that there came people unto them all made of Iron, 60 their heads, armes, bands, and legges: fo that neither Arrows, Swords, nor Speares, could enter; which, They are not 41 I consections, were people in Armour. For they faid, that the bundred of them they thought were farre from Ca- gole to conquer all their Realow. By this year may gather, that they are not fare from Catain and Chitile and thine. 30. Thus have I thewed must you the greatest facest, and the merett to the truth that I know Requesting

you, if you thinke it meet, that the Right Houserable the Earle of Salisburie might base a Conie thereof. Thus wilking you bealth and profestive in this World, and felicitie in the World to come. I cease.

CHAP. XL

A briefe Relation of a Voyage to Pechora, and wintering there, began in the neere 1611. Written by WILLIAM



After Iosias Logan, and William Gourdon, having received directions from the Right Worthipfuli Company of English Merchants, Trading Russia. The eleventh of Aprill, 1611. departed from Blacke well in the River of Thomes, in a good thip, called the Amitie; whereof Iames Vadem of Radriffe was Mafter.

The fixteenth of July, we arrived at Puffeners, being much wondred at by the Inhabitants, a Permae receiued vs into his Houfe, and ler vs haue a Ware- They were fuft

house for our goods. We all continued there vntill the fine and twentieth of July. Then wee received into returned in our Shallop agains to our ship, having a small Ruffe Boate in our company, to carrie Permachi 20 some of the Feathers and Downe, which we brought there, our owne Boat not beeing able to House. carrie all, being pettered with our Prouision, and some Feathers, and White Foxes. Wee came aboord our thin the feuen and twentieth of July, where wee delivered those White Foxes, Feathers, and Downe, and an exceeding rich blacke Foxe skinne, having laded the Ruffe Boate with part of our goods. The reft of our goods they laid upon the Sand to be fent up afterward, leaving mee and Marmaduke Wilfon, and an hired Ruffe with them, where wee attended to heare of Be from the Towne. But Mafter Lagan not hearing of any about a tunne and an haife, could not get any to come downe to vs; because they feared to goe over the dry or should Seain their

little Boates being laden.

The one and thirtieth, our fhip departed over the Barre, purposing to make their Moyage in 30 Nona Zembla, or some Ilands not farre diftant from thence. At their departure there were five and twentie Coaches or Soymer, in that Road of Pecbers , with at least two hundred men in them bound for Moleomfey; but hindered by contrary Windes and Ice, our shippes being over the Barre, they all came on house to vs; fome threatning, others flattering vs , but after I had bestowed two Bottles of Beereamong some of the best of them, they all went up to Pastezera; where most of them that had any goods to fell stayed all Winter, and fold their Commodities in barter with the Inhabitants, and when they could happen fecretly upon any Samoieds, they would be trading with them also : which is contratte to the Printledges granted by the Emperour to the Puffezarits. Their Wintering there was no little hinderance to vs for the fale of our goods.

We arrived at the Towne the feventh of August. In mine absence Master Zogas had hired August. part of an House of one, called Toffon Vrianich, a Polo ian, who was turned Russe.

The three and twentieth of November, I departed from Pullozers to goe for Ruffis, at three November. of the clocke in the afternoone, in the Company of certayne Ruffes, Permacks, and Samoieds, His Voyage of which Samoieds were our Guides over the Mountaynes: and one dayes journey over the Rocks, Stebergs and which they call Camens, which are not Rockie Hills, as in Norway, buthigh Lands, yet in most Cotingre. places smooth, and most marith grounds full of little Hillocks, which being couered with Snow Mountaynes & and frozen, did not much annoy vs. Our Argeshey or Caravan were about two hundred and ten Lament, or Sleds, drawne the most part with two Deere in a Sled. They had also about two hundred spare Rockes. Deere, to ease the wearied. We kept company untill the fourth of December together, having 50 passed two third parts of our way to Slobotca, being the first Towne in the Country of Melen,

that we faw. And then in company of foure Sleds, haning each two choice Buckes, with a Samoied in the fift for our Guide, we left the Argeliey, and rid polt for Sloboten, where were arrived He serioeth at the ninth of December, at ten of the clocke at night. In this Towne I found one Thomas Ligan of December an Englifeman, who had ferued Matter Ruchard Cackes of London, who faluting mee in Englife, maruelled much to meet me there: and carried me from the rest of my company to his Lodging, Thomas Ligan. and gaue me there very kind entertaynment. The next morning I departed thence in his Sled, hauing over night hired an Horse to the next Towne, which was fifteenth Verits off : And to travelling day and night, changing Horfes at every convenient place, I came to Colmogro the twelfth of December : and delivered my Letters from Mafter lofias Logan our Factor in Puffere. He arriveth at

60 ra, to Mafter Fabian Smith, then Agent for the English Company. Having refted my felfe foure Colmogro, the dayes there, and received certayne Money to helpe to put off some of our goods at Pechora, I 12.0f December departed from Colmogro the seventeenth of December, and came to Slobotca the nineteenth day; the height of the Pole being there some fixtie fine degrees. I stayed there till the two and twentieth of the faid moneth, by which time the Permacks and the Inhabitants of Puffoxers,

were readie to returne to Pecbora with their goods, being Rie, Malt, Hops, Salt, Aqua-vite, and forme course Cloth. Moreouer, divers Ruffes having their Sonnes or Kinlmen Leigers there, in Winter doe fend Cloth and Money ouer Land.

Hauing made my prouision for my journey, and taken my leaue of Master Thomas Ligon, wee

fet forward that night, and rid not aboue fine and twentie Verits, to a place where wee found the Argestey which set out from Sloboica the two and twentieth day in the morning by breake of day. We had better passage in our returne, then we had in our journey from Pustozera by rearetatheir Tra. fon of much Snow fallen in the time of our being in Ruffia, and frozen fo hard, that it bare both Deere and Sleds in all places. Wee kept together with the Argeshey, being then two hundred

and fiftie Sleds, till we had passed more then two thirds of our way ouer the Mountaynes : and 10 The fourth of then long before day having cholen Buckes of the best, wee departed the fourth of Ianuarie, being eight Sleds in company, and rid post all that day and night following, beeing Moone-light. faue fornetimes for the space of an houre that wee stayed where, the Samoied our Guide knew Mosse food for there was good store of Mosse, (which is white) to refresh our Deere. The fifth of Lamarie. we came to Puffezera, having in forcie houres travelled three hundred and fittie Versts with our choice Buckes. Our Argelley or Carauan arrived there after vs the twelfthof Ianuarie.

The manner with the Sa-

The Samoieds being the onely Guides in Winter, either from Paffozera to Slobotca, or to any other places Eastward, as Ongoria, Siberia, or Molgemfer; know, by their continuall travell, the way, though it be neuer fo thick weather, as also where most store of white Mossie is growing: and according as they find themselves neere vato some mossie place, be it somthing before night, 20 or within night foure or fine houres before they can come thither : there for that Night they pitch their Tents, being for the most part made of Deere and Elkes skinnes : we had in our companie foute great Tents fet vp, and some twentie under each Tent. This worke of pitching the Tents belongeth vnto the Women. In the meane time the men vnyoakethe Deere, and turne

them loofe to digge through the Snow, bee it neuer so deepe, for their food and suffenace. Then the Samoinds (of every Tent one) out of the next Wood, provide as much Fuell as shall serve in turnes for their abode there. First, they set on Kettles full of Snow water, which being welted, Hard foft lod. they drinke thereof euery one a good draught : then they feeth their Supper, vfing as before Snow water melted for their Drinke. Our lodgings were vpon the Snow within our Tents, round about the Fire, hauing vnder vs for our Beds the skinnes of Deere, conered with our day 30 apparell. For all the time of our journey, the Merchants, whether Stranger, Ruffe, or Permac, according to the number of them, make prouision of Victuals to feed the whole familie in every Poore Samoied: Tent, every man his day about, together with the Samoieds, their Wives and Children; who carrieall their Houshold every where with them ; and out of their Sonnes and Daughters, they appoint a watch ouer their Deere, for feare of the Wolfe and other Beafts, which notwithftan-

Dangerous Wolues, Slobotca.

ding their watch sometimes kill in a night one or two of their Deere, as it fell out two nights in our journey to Slobotca. This Slobotca is a pretie Towne, having in December and Ianuarie, great refort of people repaying thither, as well Rich Ruffes out of many places, with money to buy Furres, as others with proussion of Meale and Malt, and other Commodities, to furnish the Puffozerits, as also to buy Fish, to wit, Salmons, Oyle of Bealugo, Deere skinnes, 40 and Furres of them.

Trade with the

Pufterera.

The tenth of Ianuary, the Inhabitants of Puffozera, returned from Trading with the Sa-Samuels of Ou-moieds of Ougaria, on which Journey they fet forward the five and twentieth of November : and within three dayes after, came betwixt eight or nine hundred Samoieds with a small quantitie of their Commodities, in respect of former yeeres, by reason of Warre betweene the Samoieds of maids come to Ougaria, and Molgamses, who were wont to Trade one with another, and not to warre one against another. So Sables, and other Commodities being scant, the inhabitants fold them very deare : yet notwithstanding, the Ruffer bought vp all, striuing one to have them before another. So that after that little money, which we had was bestowed, wee could not doe any thing in barter. Moreouer, the Ruffer did not onely informe against vs to the Inhabitants to ftirre them The falle fugvp against vs, but also vsed the like meanes to the Samoieds to disting determine with vs, either in their owne Countries, or elfe-where; alleadging that wee would betray them, and not onely carrie them away to make them Slaues, and robbe them, but also would murther and destroy all therest, wherefoeuer wee should come. The Inhabitants also of Passozera, being incenfed by the Ruffer, doubting wee would enter farther into their Trade Eastward, began also to hinder, and forbid the Samoieds to come to vs. Yet by meanes of our Hoast being a Polac borne, we spake with divers of the principall of the Samoieds, hee being our Interpreter, and weeour felues vnderstood certayne Samoieds speaking broken Ruffe, and by these means we found out more at large the despitefulnesse of the Russes, and the enuie of some of the Inhabitants against vs ; as also their feare, least wee or any other Stranger, should enter into further Discouerie of their trafficking toward the East, but especially about the River Ob. Some fayd we were sent as 60 spyes to betray their Land to the Pole or the Swethen, with whom they then had warre. Some gaue counsell to put vs under the Water : others adulfed to fet vs upon the Sand, where wee should have beene without all doubt drowned in short space, others thought best to send vs vp

CHAP.O. Fishing for Bealugos, how taken, Commodious Rivers, Traffique.

to the Nobilitie, and to feaze on all our goods to the vie of the State. But divers of the helf in the Towne, with whom wee kept all friendship that possible we could, withstood those bloudie practifes. The Lord therefore bee bleffed. The fifth of March, the Inhabitants of Pufforer went agains to Slobotca, carrying the Ruffes March.

with their Commodities thither.

They returned home the eleventh of Aprill, 1612. The one and twentieth of Aprill, water Aprill, 1612: Was first seene you the maine River Perhana about the Ice, descending from about Onstanting.

May so, the Ice.

habitants of Puffozer, went by water vnto Ouft-zilma.

The fixe and twentieth, Iofias Logan with our Hoaft the Polonian, hired a Boate and went to ward Oult-zilms, carrying with him certayne Cloath and Copper Kettles, in hope to fell them well there, being intreated in the Summer before by one of their Townesmen to come thither, or to fend one to Winter there : alledging that they got great flore of Loft-hydes, Squirrels, Sables and Beuers, Which some yeeres indeed, as we were credibly informed, falleth out according to his report. But at his arrivall there, divers of the Townelmen came against him, and would not suffer Our men in. him nor any of his Boate to Land for the space of ten houres : but in the end, they let him goe on treated to wind shoare, after, as wee suppose, the Inhabitants of Pustazer had bought most of their Commodities. ter at Ouf. So that hee staying there two dayes, could get but nine Losh-hydes, and halfe a timber of course 31/ma. Sables, in batter for some Cloath and Copper. The principall cause of his going thither, was to 20 meete with some of the Permacks-out of Permia, who some yeeres come downe with Rie, and Rie-meale, and thought to have given notice to thole Permacks of our being at Pufforer, and to

haue willed them to have perswaded their Countrey-men to bring thit her the next Spring following all their Commodities, being Waxe, Honey, Losh-hydes, and Furres, which they might doe for halfe the charge that they are at in bringing them to Archangell, on the River Dning. Ouff-zilms is a pretie Towne of some uxtie Houles : and is three or foure dayes fayling with Ouff-zilms.

a faire wind against the fireame from Pullower, but backe againe they may sayle it in two dayes. The third of Iune, came the first Ruffes in their Cayooks by River out of Ruffes to Puffozer. Iune z.

These Cayooks, be small Boates of two tunnes, having two men in each Boate.

The twentieth of Iune, nine Ruffe Coaches or Soymas, passed by Puspecer from Oust-zisma for Sixteene Ser-Molgomfey. The one and twentieth, fixe Ruffe Soymas more departed from Puffoxer: all the man depart for rest having given over their Voyage, which came thither the Summer before, 1611. The two Melcomies. and twentieth, one Soyma belonging to the Towne of Puffozer, departed for Molgomfey.

The three and twentieth, and four and twentieth, the Inhabitants of Pufforer, went to Fish Fishing for for Bealugos under the Boluan, being the highest Land necre unto the Drie Sea, and two dayes Bealugos under the Bolusa.

fayling from the Towne.

The fine and twentieth, I departed after them, and arrived there the feven and twentieths hoping to have provided good store of Bealingos Oyle. But it fell out contrarie : though there were aboue fiftie Boates, having in every Boate three men, and in many foure, by reason it pleafed God to fend fuch windie and stormie weather, that the Boates could not goe to Sea in many dayes together, during their wonted time of Fishing for those Beatls; being till the twentieth of July. Then every man leaveth that Fishing, and repaire to their owne Fisherie, to hunt Ducks. Greefe, and Swannes, which most yeeres they get in abundance, and make good profit of their Feathers and Downe : as also of their Flesh, which they falt vp in Caske for Winter prouision, feruing them also all the Summer for Flesh dayes. These Bealuges they catch with harping Irons, Manner of kiltyed fast to a long rope of ninetie or an hundred fathoms, with a flasse of the length of two lingthem. yards or somewhat longer, being put loose into the Iron, wherewith when the bealt commeth. The Ruffer up. within the reach of him that ftriketh, he fmiteth him with the Iron, leaving it in the Beaft : then on the Ice vie the rope being layed out cleere to vere out, the man holding his Staffe still in his hand; but the Morfe assister Beaft being wounded hafteneth to the bottome, where having beate himfelfe neare to death, doesheir Resto they hall in their rope by little and little, the Beaft afcending thereby. And if they finde him lugo: but their not neere death, they strike him againe : and being dead they cut off his skinne with the far on rope is longer, it in hany parts, fome the breadth of two hands, some more or leffe. Then comming on shoare, made for the mad they take the Fat from the skinne, and cut it in small peeces to dissolue it to Oyle, casting away one end to the Flesh which isred, to the Fowles of the Sea; except fome poore Samoied come that way, buoyir, who taketh it, though it have lyen putrifying two or three dayes, and dryeth it, and maketh Samueds po-good chare with it with his Familie. This Beaft is as bigge as two good Sturgions. Moreouer, Between middle I was informed by an ancient Traueller, that the Flesh and Fat of that Bealt, being cut as Beefe meate in Italie and falled in Caske, is a great and rich Commoditie in Lette a which the same a the law and the same and sales and the same as the sa and falted in Caske, is a great and rich Commoditie in Italie; which cannot chuse but to bee much better then young Whales, which I have heard that the Biskayners vie to preferue for good 60 meate. With the Fat of some one of these Beafts, they will fill three Barrels, of some lefter two barrels, and some yeeld but one barrell of Blubber, which they call Shilliga. In that Summer

when I was there, by reason of Northerly windes blowing hard, they killed by all their Boates not aboue fortie Beails : with fome Boate they killed two, with other three, with fome foure. But with most not one.

by River to

Puflezera,to

August.

Promei Coshei.

September.

North-weft

Candina,

tech home
Milet Lagar
And the Lagar
and his Com

Pufforers in a Lodia to goe for Ruffin, and Anchored in the Glowbue, which is a deepe place of the pany into Rof. River. Heere wee stayed ten dayes to make vp our Oyle. In the meane time the Lodia got her full lading with Omelies, and Seegies falted in Caske, attending a faire winde.

The minth of August, wee set sayle out of the Glowbue, and entred the Suchei-morie, that is,

The Drie or Sheald Sea, and stirred away next hand North North-east,

The nine and twentieth, a little before day, not thinking wee had beene so neere the Landwe were on the Breches of Promoi Coskoi, or the Sands of Promoi, a bad Harbour so called by the Ruffer, and beate ouer one Sand by Gods prouidence onely, to high, being halfefull of water, that in dispaire of euer getting her off againe, wee villaded most of the goods, as Fish, Oyle, Feathers, Downe, and Losh-hydes, as soone as it began to bee day-light, and that the Russes knew vs to bee vpon the mayne Land. The thirtieth day, being somewhat calme, and the wind Easterly, but thicke weather still, there came three men from Vafilie Beregen his Lodia, who was our Confort, while wee were working to get our Lodia a floate againe, and told vs, that their Lodia was beaten in peeces upon the mayne Land, some seven or eight Versts to the Westward off ws. The one and thirtieth, wee laboured againe, and by Gods affiftance got her a floate, having 20 taken out almost all her goods: and that night laded some part againe.

The first of September, wee got all our goods aboord, and at Night-tide being faire weather, the winde North-west and Moone-light, wee put from that comfortlesse place, and went into the Promoi Harbour, having on the Barre nine or ten foote water; but within foure or five fathoms. A South-west Moone maketh there a full Sea. It is in the great Bay betweene Suetinos and Candinos. The second, the winde at East North-east faire weather, wee set sayle with our leake Lodia, the Pumpe neuer resting.

The third, the winde variable, wee fayled along the the shoare till about Noone : then the wind comming to the West, wee put backe againe for Christona Stanonecha, which is the Crosse Harbour, where wee rode in a fine River, having a bad Barre,

The ninth, in the Morning wee purpoid to put to Sea agains, the winde Easterly: but the Barre was so growne and warped vp with sands, when wee came vpon the entrance of it, that we could not passe ouer, neither with Wind nor Oares, but were forced vpon the mayne : where our Lodia was beaten so high vpon the sand, that all hope of sauing her was past. That day wee got out of her an hundred Barrels of Fish and Oyle, and yet we could not get her off againe.

The tenth, the winde being at North-west, caused high Tides, by which meanes we got her off, and brought her againe into Harbour. The cleuenth wee had so much winde and Snow, that we could not get our goods aboord all that day. The twelfth, we got all aboord, having stopped most of our leakes with Mosse and old Cloutes. Much Snow.

The thirteenth, the wind at East, faire weather, wee put to Sea out of that bad Harbour, lea- 40 uing one of our Boates there, and eight Barrels of Fish to ease our leake Lodia. The fourteenth, about mid-night we were thwart of Candinos, and stirred South-west, and South South-west all the next day : but the Night following being much winde, the Ruffes effeeming themselves to bee on the Westerne shoare, strooke sayle, and by Day-light we saw Land to the Westward of the White Sea, being the fixteenth day : and wee were forced againe into another bad Harbour. called Danilo Stolb, that is, Daniels Piller, on the Coast of Lapland, where we made our Lodia fast among the Rockes : where shee lay drie halfe-tide, and lay there beenept and wind-bound untill the fixe and twentieth day : and then at Tide-time weegot out of that place.

The eight and twentieth, wee entred into the River of Dayna, and landed that night at the Caftle of Archangel in the English House, all our Oyle, Losh-hydes, and other goods; as Fea- 50

The nine and twentieth, about mid-night we came to the English House at Colmogro, and there continued all the Winter.

The three and twentieth of Aprill 1613. the River of Duyna brake vp at Archangel.

Other Observations of the Sayd WILLIAM PVRSGLOVE.

[Rom Medenshoie Zamoros to the Isle of Vargats, is two dayes sayling with a Ruffe Lodia. 60 From Vagges to the River Ob, is foure dayes layling. The River Ob lyeth North and South. Usgus Iland. The course from Vayeass to Tomboi-cofeon, is North-east; and from thence East to the mouth of The Rimer 0.

The Rimer 0.

Ob. Within the Ob iome three dayes tayling, is a Rimer on the Eaff ride called Tachaning as it. were a Barre at the entrance thereof : yet there is alwayes eleuen or twelue foote water upon

CHAP. 11. Molgomicy a great Mart Towne, Affembly of Hunters.

it, but within it is very deepe. Within two dayes fayling within the Tau, the Ruffe hath builded a Towne and a Cattle, being called Molgomfey; where all the Hunters of Beatts affemble, Molgomfeya and bring their Furs with them. Also the Ruffe Soymas or Boats and thole of Puffezera come this great Marc. ther with their Meale and other Merchandizes. And having fold or bartered their Commodities. enery one returneth home, fome to Puftozera, and others to Ruffia. The Hunters also provide against the next Winter for Hunting againe.

There are three Rivers under the high Land of Ougoria and Naramzes, and great flore of Ougoia and Morfles about the point of Naramzei, whither the Inhabitants of Puffozera doe fend a Naramzei. Lodia in the Autumne, with divers Commodities to trade with the Ongersan Samoieds. Also

10 they kill many Morsses, onely taking their Teeth, and trauell among the Samoied all the Win. Store of Morsthey kill many Morites, onely taxing their rectin, and traude among the sext following. Some feat tere to trade with them, and returne ouer Land to Pullocera in Ianuarie next following. Some feat They returns veeres, if the winde doe not ferue them inflantly, they are glad to give over that Voyage by Sea. They returns As for example, in the yeere 1611, when we wintered there, the frost came vpon them before in lanuarie they had wind to ferue them; whereupon they were forced to give ouer that Voyage. And affoone as they could trauell by Sled fome of the richeft of the Sonnes and Servants of the Town men, were fent with certayne Commodities to barter with the Samoieds, against their Fathers or other Friends should come after in the Winter, and to buy vp all the best Furs and other Com-

The Ruffes when they fayle for Molgemfey in their Soymas, goe not about Naramzes point to 20 the mouth of the River Ob, but fayle vp a narrow River, called Moetnaia Reca, that is to fay, the Moetnaia Reca, Muddie River, & at the head therof they hale their Boats over a little neck of land into the River Zelenai, that is, the Green River, & fo fall down into the River Ob: and fo faile Southward up the Zelenai Reca, River Ob till they come to the River Tus. From the Barre of Tus to the Rivers mouth, is about a Ob Reca. daies & a nights failing. There is an Iland in the mouth of Tas, being very high land. From thence Anlland in the the Riner to the Towne, leaving the Hand on the left hand are eight dayes fayling. But ere you mouth of Tai, come to the Tas River, there is a finall River called Power , or Pier; where they get the best Sa. A Towne. bles of all Molgomfey. And up the River Tas to Volochanko, against the streame are fixe dayes A necke of fayling Eastward, till you come to a Voloc, or necke of Land a mile and an halfe ouer, beeing Land. marish ground, over which the Russes and Pustozerits hale their Boats into another River, called 30 Toronham, and rowing downe with the ftreame three dayes, they fall into the mightie River Te- The River Te-

Toronban, and rowing downe with the treatment three days, and you had been remoted and land, having builded them remote.

At the mouth of the River Toronban, there dwell people on an Iland, having builded them The Rivet a little Towns and a Church. And from thence they fayle downs the River to Hawtick, which Hawtick is a great River, and runneth voto the East.

The River of the Tinguffies, is three dayes and three nights fayling within the River Tenifeey. The River of There are no Woods necrevato the mouth of lenifee. But in the River of Tinguffie are great flore the Tinguffies. of Woods. There are two or three Rivers betweene the mouth of Temifee and Tinguifie, but not Two or three fo large as the Tinguistic Riner is; neere vinto which the Russes doe fish: and associate to their ald read of investing the Sallar Bound and Form zeth, they go againe to their old trade of hunting the Sables, Beuers, and Foxes. And having in mouth of Ye two winters folaboured for themselues, those that be good Husbands return rich into Rassia-And nise. 40 except they fall againe into pouertie through fire or other wayes, neuer returne thither againe.

The Tinguffus are a taller people then the Samoieds, and weare their Garments made of skins shorter, and made closer to their bodies then the Samoieds. They be a very gentle people to conuerse withall.

From the mouth of Ob to the great River lenifee, as a Ruffe told mee, is foure dayes and foure nights fayling. Betwixt Ob and Tenifee, is high blacke Land.

Beyond lenifce Eastward is another great River, called Pifda. The Land trendeth due East The River Pife beyond the River Ienifee to Pifida: and to another River, called Catonga, which commeth out of da, Cashay, whose King the Permackes call Tentha Tfar. The River Iyeth North and South, they The River Caknow not how farre. For the Tinguffies, of whom they had intelligence of this River, are afraid towge. 50 of Gun-shot that they doe heare, which they vie on the South part of that Riner, and dare not trauell vp it. In it they faw Veffels with two or three fayles; which in the Spring, fayle downe Ships with two the River Northward, and in the Autumne, returne agains to the South. But they know not or three failes, whether they fish, or goe to gather some Mynes, which are supposed to be in those Countreyes, not daring to goe neere them. It was told me, that betwixe Tifida and Catonga, about the midway vpon the Sea-coaft were found diners Stones, some like vnto Gold in colour, other white and like Silter. Allo the Traggles haug feen people show that great Ruer, called Caterga, the River carding on Horfes: and it is faid, that there is great flore of Corne, Beefes, Horfes, Sheepe, and toward.

The travell from Pechora to Permia, Ougoria, and to the River Ob, and the Townes situated thereupon, oner Land.

Goates in this Countrey.

Rom Puffozera vp the River Pechora, with a faire wind to the River Oufe, is fourteene dayes fayling by River. From Onfe to Podcamen, ten dayes. From Pedcamen to Ob eight dayes by

Berefena.

Deere in Winter time, affoone as the Snow is fallen and frozen. From thence to Berefens fixteene dayes, which is a Towne of Trade, it is from Puffozera to Uade in Ougoria, beeing on the West fide of Ob, a monethes journey or travell by Deere. This Vade is a little Towne, having the The River of Pechora, runneth through great Permia; and the head thereof is fine Weekes

in the Ruffe Tongue, The higher: as Vercho-towria, is Towria The higher. From thence by Ruer is ten dayes journey to Tumen. From Tumen to Tobolfes, fixe dayes downethe River Irifb, To-

ney up the Riuer Ob. From Surgent to the Citie Tom, feated among the Tarters, is three Weeks

up the River Ob. The Roffes know no farther of the River Ob; nor how farre it firetcheth to

the Southward : But they suppose that it runneth much farther to the South, by reason there

come fo many severall Nations downe the said River to trade at Surgent, and Tobolfes: as name-

ly, the people of Boughar, the Tesicks or Persian Merchants, and many forts of Tariars. Abra-

bam Michaelonich was chiefe Customer at Surgout, 1611. And hee told me, that hee received for

is ten usyes journey to amount. From Tobolfea to Surgest, or Sergal, is fixe Weekes jour- 10

trauell from Pullozera From Great Permia, is nine dayes trauell by Horse and Sled to Vercho-towria. Vacho signifieth

Versbio-tororia. Tobolica. Surgout.

Many Nations the River Ob. from the from the Dam PARCOGNOMER WAS CHIEFE CONTOURS a DON'S THE STATE OF THE

Moreouer, he told me, that the people of Cathay doe trade to Surgent, and people from divers The Country other Kingdomes, as from Alteen Tear, or King Alteen, who among other things bring Plates of 20 of King Alteen. Silver and fell them. Another Ruffe named Philat, who had travelled farther among the Tinguf-An Aline is for, then any other Ruffe, and speaketh their Language, told mee he had bought of a Tinguiffe, a nence, a Din.

Plate of Silver weighing in Ruffe Money fortie two Alteens, four Dingoes, for twenties to

Berefous vpon the Ob, before you come neere Tobolfos, is a Towne of Trade for Furres, but especially for Losh-hides; which are bought for tenne Alteenes a piece. I was told by a Permae, that there was a Ruffe which bought foure thousand Elkes, or Losh-hides, there for a fourth part of a Roble or Marke a piece.

To the Eastward of Pechora are store of Hawkes, which I hold to bee as good as the Turkie Hawkes, namely, slight Falcons, Goshawkes, and Ier-falcons, whereof some are as white as 30 Snow, others speckled White and Red, Likewise, there are all kinds of the richest Sables white as from, brought from Molgomfey, and black Foxes. There is also Christall of the Mountayne, If we might haue libertie to trauell those Countreyes, wee might haue these Commodities cheaper there then at Pechora. And within the Ob we might vent our Commodities at a better rate.

> Commodities for Pechora, Siberia, Permia, Ougoria, and among the Tinguffies.

[Irit, at Pechora readie Money, being Raffe Money, is the best and principallest both to put off 40 Tother goods to profit, as also to get credit among the Merchants strangers at our first comming thicher, till Trade be fetled and knowne through Permia, and Stheria. Salt, Rie, Meale, white Danie Nie Kil-dryed for hearing in the flip, Oct-meile and Butter for the Samsdajill forts of course Cloth, fome fine Cloth, Copper, and Brasse Kettles of the middle fize, from two pound to thirtie, or thirtie fiue. But Brasse not aboue sitteene pound with eares of Brasse, all the Kettles and eares of one piece. Also Files to sharpe Arrowes and other things, small Horse-bels, course Canuasse for vpper Gownes. Foure peny, fixe peny, and ten peny Nayles: small Anchors of foure and twentie pound a piece. Frankincense for their Churches and Hontes.

Commodities for the Tinguffies.

Thewter, Pewter Sawcers, Little Platters, Flat Poringers, some grauen, some vngrauen. Nets of Cups, some grauen, others ungrauen, Salt-sellers. Plates, or sheets of Latten being white. Hamberough Lichenaes, Blue, Red, and Tawny. But I think our course Northerne dozens, and course Kersies Northerne dyed into those colours, would vent as well and better then they: they being thicker walked. And the Samoteds delight altogether in thicke Cloth. Grey doozens of an easie price would vent well among the Permicks, which were much grey or mingled coloured course Cloth. And some course doozens died Yellow, or Northerne course Cloth Red and Yellow, would bee no bad Commoditie.

Aquavite of two forts, the best and indifferent for the Sameieds. Glisse Beades, Skie coloured. Needles round and three square. Braffe Basons, Ruffe Linnen Cloth, or Polifb Linnen Cloth. Hops, Mault, Ruffe Sope. All forts of strong Wines, as Sacke and Canarie Wine. Bacon is a good Commoditie in Siberia.

CHAP:

CHAP. XII.

Later Observations of WILLIAM GOVEDON, in bis Wintering at Pustozera, in the yeares 1614. and 1615. with a Description of the Samoveds life.



He twentieth of November, I departed from Puffozera, to goe to Tongorie, at foure November: in the after-noone, and did ride most of the Night, before wee came to the 1614. Choome, going East South-east. The one and twentieth, Mibig returned His louney to the Towne, and we remoued and went our lourney, faire and little wind. The within 30. two and twentieth, little wind North, wee kept on our course East South-east, and necre to having gone from the Towne 50 miles, at night Mibiles came to vs. The three Berfone, and twentieth, little wind, we went on our Lourney, and at Noone passed ouer a little River, cal- The River cor.

led Coy, falling North into Pechora, 14. leagues below the Towne, and at Night came all the falling into Pe-Ruffes from the Towne, having gone 24. miles East South-east. The foure and twentieth, wee removed on our Journey being very cold, and went not a-

boue ten miles East South-east, at Night wee broke one of our Sleds, which went laden with

The fine and twentieth, wee went forward very flowly, at Noone I received a Letter from Mafter Comman by Forma Creticone, this after-noone another had his Sled broken, we went 10. or Maiter Common by come present, this according do nour Journey, and at Eeuen we passed over a 12. miles. The fixe and twentieth, we continued on our Journey, and at Eeuen we passed over a The River River, called Shapkina, falling South into Pechora; halfe way betwixt Puffozer and Ouft-zilma, The River Shapkina, fall a Sled broken and mended out of hand, going East South-east 15, miles. The seuen and twentieth ling into Prebeing Sunday, the wind at South-well, did blow very hard, and Snow all the day, the fnow dri- chora uing that wee could hardly see which way to goe, yet we kept on East South-east 18.miles.

The eight and twentieth, in the Morning, wee paffed ouer Nongorotka River, which falleth The River West South-west into Shapkina River, fixe dayes lourney above Oust-zilma, the wind South- Nougeroika falwest, and Snow all day, wee kept on still East South-east 15. miles. The nine and twentieth, ling mto Shep. 30 the wind South, with Snow all day, being not cold, we went on East South-east 20. miles. The the wind south, with solver and process the street, the wind East South-east, very cold in the after-moone, we passed ouer Habeaga River, falling mo Per which falleth into Pechera, fixe dayes Journey about Ouff-zilma, going 20.miles.

The first of December, the wind East blowing very hard, the Snow did drive so hard, that we could not goe forward, but flood still all day and did not remoue. The second, calme and not so December. cold, wee went on East South-east 10 miles. The third, in the Morning it was very warme, at Noone the wind North, it was extreame cold, the Snow driving very thicke, in the after-noone The River Hawe passed ouer the River Haryena, which falleth into Columy South-east, having gone East South-into Column. east I c.miles.

The fourth day warme, we went East, at Eenen we came to a River called Colur, which fal- The River Col-40 leth South into the River Oufe, where wee flayed all Night, having gone 20. miles. The fift, any falling inin the Morning we went on vpon the River fix or feven miles East and by North, and came where to ONS. it parted in two, the one keeping North-eaft, the other being called Sandanets; from the Southeast wee went betwixt them both East and by South 12 miles, and tooke vp our lodging vpon 2 Playne where no Wood is to bee seene.

The fixt, being Saint Niebolas day, which with the Ruffes is held a principall day, in the morning they caused their Images to bee brought into the Choome, lighting Wax-candles be- Bay, fore them, making their Prayers to them, according to their order; after which, I gave them a bottle of Aqua vita, wherewith the Guides were drunke, that they could not guide their Deeres, but fet me to direct the way by Compasse, which I did all the day, although I had but little skill,

50 we went South-east and by East 20. miles. The seventh, being very faire weather, our Guides lay all the day with Pohmeall, and could not goe forward. The eight, faire and calme, we went forward South-east and by East 10.miles, and A small River tooke vpour lodging by a small River which falleth into Sandauers River. The ninth, very cold, Sandauers that we had much adoe to keepe our felues from freezing, going on foot all the day ouer a playne where no Wood groweth, going South-east 15. miles, and lay by a Wood side all night. The tenth, the Frost was so extreame, that wee lay still and could not proceed. The eleuenth, being Terrible Frost. Sunday, the Frost continued extreame, we remouing, there were few in the Companie that had not some part of their faces frozen, and my selfe, although I was something better provided then any of them, yet I had fomething to doe to keepe my felte from freezing, going on foot most

60 part South-east and by East 15. miles. The twelith, the Frost was so extreame, that there was no looking forth, but lay still all day. The thirteenth, not altogether so cold, wee proceeded on our The River He-Iourney 20. miles South-east & by East, and at night we passed ouer the River Hosada, which fal- seda, falling the leth South-east into the River Azua. The fourteenth, the winde South, with Snow and not fo to Azua. cold, we went thorow Woods 20. miles, East South-east. The fifteenth, the wind South, with

The fixteenth, the wind South, in the Morning we fet forth East South-east, ouer a high ridge to Out.

The Mountain or Mountayne, called Yangoda and you the top of the fame the wind shirling North, with Snow fo thicke, that our Guides did not know well which way to goe, yet fometimes backe and fom-The Ruser reguess temps,
times forward, with much adoe we got ouer, in the Euening piffing ouer the River Reguess,
falling into
Meniba, falling South into Oule, where we flaved all Niehe huire. Meniba, falling South into Oufe, where we stayed all Night, having gone 20, miles.

The feuenteenth, faire and warme, wee passed thorow Woods, where the Snow was very The sequencement, take and wallet, wee pained about without, where the Show was very deepe, and came to a Playne, called Correspon Tundrs, where a Rufe whose name was Correspondent to the control of th deepe, and came to a Frayine, cance to represent a man, such a family of the control of the came was buried, therefore they gaue that place that Name) fome thirtie yeers pall, 10 where we stayed all Night, hauing gone 15 miles South-east and by East. The eighteenth, in the The Ruer Re Morning wee went on thorow Woods, the Snow being very deepe, and at Mid-night we came Morning wee went on thorour viscous, the show being very seeps, and a mineright we came to the Romer Regauss Balba, where the Ruffer had a Gorodocke, and bettering with the Sament, having gone 30. miles East South-east, the River falleth with turnings to the Southward into

The thirtieth of December, I observed with my Astrolobia, and had the Sun 2. degrees above the Horizon, Latitude 65 degrees and 48 minuts, the variation of the Compafe being 20, degrees, The fixth of January, at three in the after-noone, wee departed from the Gorodocke, the wind South South-weft blowing very hard, going North-weft 30 miles, and at mid-night came to the South South-well olowing very have going south-well, blowing very hard, the Snow driving 20 fo thicke, that we could not goe over the Mountayne, called Tangode, but flayed by a Wood fide,

hauing gone West North-west 15. miles. The eight, in the Morning wee passed over the River, naming gone were reasonable to a state of the Tangada, keeping backe our way 30. miles West North-west, hire and warme. The ninth, little wind North but sharpe, we went on North-west. and by West, at Noone we passed ouer Azua River, and in the after-noone came to a Herd of wilde Deere, the Samoits killed three, giving me a haunch ; going in all 30.miles,

The tenth, calme and very cold, we went on 20.miles, Weft North-weft. The eleuenth little The tenen, came and very con, we went on 200 mins, went thought went, the elementarities wind South-eaft; at Noone we paffed ouer Hofoda River, which falleth South-eaft into Acad, we went 30.miles North-west & by West. The twelfth, the wind South and cold, we went West we went 30. must receive the by real and by South, ouer many Creeks & Ponds 25. miles. The thirteenth, this day the wind South and 30 not cold, we went West & by South 30. miles, thorow many woods and plaines. The sourcenth, faire and warme, at Noone we passed ouer Saudaet; River, which falleth South-west into Colory, we went West and by North 30. miles.

The fifteenth, being Sunday, we went West North-west ouer a broad playne, with many great Ponds, at Night we palled ouer Columny River, going South into the River Onfe, which falleth into Pechora, nine dayes journey from Ouft- zitms, we went 30 miles, having most of our Deere tyred, the Snow was so deepe. The fixteenth, little wind, we went on West North-west, at noone we passed ouer Haryens River, which falleth South-east into Colney, going 20. miles. The seuenteenth, the wind South, blowing very hard, the Snow driving, wee went West North-west 25.miles, at Night we tooke vp our lodging vpon the Riuer Habeaga, which falleth into Pecho- 40

The eighteenth, we went on West North-west 10, miles, where the Townesmen over-tooke vs, riding post to the Towne, where making our felues ready, wee followed, the fame Eeuening we passed ouer Nongorotha River, which falleth West South-west into Shapkina River, which falleth South-west into Pechora, halfe way betwixt Pufferer and Onst-zisma, and in the Morning we passed ouer Con River, which falleth into Pecbera 14. leagues Northward from Pussour; and the fame day, being the nineteenth day in the after-noone, wee came to the Towne, having rid about 150. miles without reft. The last of Aprill, 1615. being Sunday, was the first appearing of the water, increasing at Pullozera. The seventh of May, Enan Croticone, had almost saine with a knife his two Vncles, Forma Croticome, and Erasmi Croticome.

The eighteenth, the water was at the highest, being so extreame that many were forced out of their Houses, and we our selves in like manner, having the water a foot deepe in our bed Chamber. The twentieth, the water did a little begin to fall, and so continued falling by degrees.

The minth of Iune, my servant Marmaduke Wilson came from Oust-zilma, haung Wintered . there, to buy and fell goods, bringing with him fuch Commodities as the place doth affoord, as Sables, Rolomacks, Wolues, Ermins, Squirrils, &c.

The fifteenth, we laded three small Lodias with goods, to carrie downe to the Glouboka. The three and twentieth, I departed from Puffozer, and came to the Glouboka the fine and twentieth, Charles is 47. With two small Lodias laden with goods. The eight and twentieth of June, I observed at the Glassda, which I found to lye in the height of 67 degrees 5, minutes, and the Compaffe varyed 60 18 degrees. The laft of lune, I went from the Glassda, to paffe ouer the Drie Sta, the windat South, but the wind comming to the North, I returned backe the next day. The second of July, being Sunday, the wind at South South-east, I departed the second time, to come to the Zamers, but comming neere Dolger, an Ilandlying in the Drie Sea, the Ice lay fo firme, that we could not paffe but returned backe to the Glauboka.

CH AP. 12. Samoyeds apparell, Sleds, Deere, Women, Polygamie, Religion, &c. 555

The fourth of Iuly, Iohn Copman came to the Glouboka, bringing with him all our goods for fayle, having payed all Customes and duties for the same. The fixth of the same, I departed the third time from the Glauboka, the wind at South, but did not continue, but came to the East, and East North-east, so rowing along it the shoare, wee passed to the West side between the shoalds and the shoare, and having passed the Wester Hand, called Lenerstoy, we came to the Zachbara reoueberoge or Coast, which doth lye South-west and North-east, and put into a small River, where we stayed (the seventh) all night, and the next day with Sayle and Oares, wee came to a Bay to the South of Cafners Note, where we flayed all right, the wind East South-east.

The eight, in the Morning we pasted by Cuznerf-Note among it the Ice, having much adoe to To get cleare, the wind at North North-west, and at Night we came to the Zauorot, where were fine and twentie layle of small Lodias, some going for Mangantes, other for Fish, and some going to Pullozer, who told me they had beene aboord our Ship at Sea. The ninth, this day being Sunday, our Ship came ouer the Barre, where I was received, nor looked for. The eleventh, at Night we departed from the thip, and went to get downe our goods from the Glonboke and the Towne.

The fixeeenth, I departed from the Glouboks, with three small Lodias laden with goods, but the wind at East North-east, two of them returned backe, but I kept on and came abourd our Ship the eighteenth in the morning. The twentieth, the other two came with the goods aboord. and the one and twentieth, we returned to the Glomboka with three Boates, and got thither that night. The three and twentieth, I came the second time from the Glouboke, with three Boates with goods, and the next morning came to our Ship, where I remayned, lending vp all the Boats the fixe and twentieth of Inly.

The eight of August, came John Copman with Thomas Dogget, bringing two Boats laden with goods, fitting to fet layle for Holland, but did not depart till the 21. of August. And the three and twentieth of September, (giuing heartie thankes to God) we arrived at Dort in Holland.

Ow for the manner of the Samoist in their Lourney, their vpper Coas is called a Parka, Apparellossai which is for the most part of Deere-skin, and some of white Foxe or Woluerin, which they moreds. wearethe hayre or futre outward, under that they have another Coat, which is called a Mallek, made of young Fawne-skins, or Hare-akins, or Swan-skins, very foft and well dreffed, a Cap of Beuer, double and close to their heads, with two flaps for their Eares, tyed vinder their Chin, a payre of Breeches of Deere-skin with the hayre inwards, vpon their Feete they have fockes or payre of Breecuss of Leger-skin what the nayre invaries, you their neete they have lockes or flockins of Decre-skin, the layer to their skin, your that long Boores which they call Prinjer, made of the legges of Decre-skins, thus apparelled, they fire you their bleed croffe-legged) with Sleds. a Deere-skin under them. Two Deere being yoaked toa Sled, they will runne with fuch fwift- Deere wift. nesse, and so long to continue, as is not to be beleeved, except to those that have seene the same, nesse. For riding post, they will ride without rest or sleepe, two hundred miles in four and twentie houres; but with their Argish or ituste, thirtie miles in twelue houres; their Women vsully doe Women, guide their Argish, which is ten Sleds, and to euery Sled's Bicke, all made fast one airer another, the Men in the way doe prouide Wood for firing, and doe hunt for all manner of Beafts & Fowle, 40 which the women dreffe. It is the Womans labour to fet vp the Choome or Tent, making one Tentand place therein alwayes Holy, which the woman must not set her foot into, neither goe about the Chappell. Tent round; which if they chance to doe, they will prefently remoue all, for feare of the Wolfe Superflitton,

or Beare, which they fay, would denoure them if they did not remoue. Their Tent or Choome, is made in this manner; first, they set vp long Firre-poles, then they haue fixe quarters double of Deere-skin; which being fet vp, they throw Snow round about the edges a yard thicknesse, leauing the top open for to vent smoake, making a Fire in the middle, foreading Deere-skins, vpon which they lye, in which manner, it is altogether as warme as the Stoues in Raffia, they have no Townes, neither any certaine place of abode, but with their

Deere they travell from place to place, where they finde the best Mosse for their Deere. Their Wines they buy for Deere, and will have if hee have abilitie foure or fine Wines, with Marrie Wines, whom he lyeth by turn every night feveral; he is the richeft man that hath most Deere or Daugh bought and ters, selling them to any that will give most for them. In their Marriages having agreed of price, sold. they vie not great Ceremonies; onely they make a Feast to their friends, after which the Wo- Marriages. they vietne great termoures, outer vietness and the lifetons, after windows are maintained and is brought to the Man that hot boght her, there being hung with many Iron Rings and Brazen Bels, all departing out of the Tent faue they two till the next Morning, and then he Bels. departeth; but if he bee one of wealth, they will continue their Feaft feuen dayes. It falleth out many times, that after they have had their Wines halfe a yeere or a yeere, they will turne them backe to their Friends, taking their Detres againe, paying for the charge of the Fealt, which Disorce. is alwayes to bee made at her Fathers charge, and losing the increase of his Deere.

They have not knowledge of the true God, but worthip Blocks and Images of the Deuill, vnto Religion. which, they will strangle tame Deere, rebbing the blond on the Idols, and eating the meate

When a Rich man dyeth, because hee should not travell on foot, his friends will kill three Funerals Deere to draw him in the new World, and they will strangle a Slaue to tend on him. The Deere

talling into Altitude and Ianuarie. Returne.

River increa-

Their vecre bur halfe a

they kill in this manner to ferme the dead man, they make a Stake sharpe, which they thrust into the Beatts fundament, with many howlings and cryings, till they be dead. The Mailet with the Slaue they barie, the Deere they eate as well raw, as boyled or roaft, although they vie all, three If a young Child dye under foureteene of their yeeres, which is feuen of ours, they doe hang It by the nacke on some Tree, faying, it must flie to Heaven.

If any Controuersie bee, which cannot bee decided or the truth knowne, then one of the two betwixt whom the Controuerfie is, must bee fworne, which is in this manner; they will make an Image of a Man of Snow, bringing a Wolves noie, delivering a Sword to him that must fweare, he rehearing by name all his Friends, defiring that they might all bee cut in peeces in fuveare, he reheating by name an in execute, which he himleff, doth out the Imageot Snow 10 that manner, as hee doth out that Image of Snow. Then he himleff, doth out the Imageot Snow 10 all to peaces with the Sword; then after, the Wolues nose being layd before him, he defires that the Wolfe may destroy all his tame Deere, and that hee may neuer more take or kill any wilde Deere after that, if hee speake not the Truth, so cutting the Wolues nose in peeces, there is no more to bee fayd of that Controversie.

Their persons. The Samoir is stout and bold of Spirit, not very tall but broad Brested, broad Faces, with hollow Eyes. Their ordinary infitruments for Warre, are Bowes and Arrowes, very dangerous, they have long Speares, (the heads bee made in Monganes, by another fort of Samoits) and flort Swords, not much vnlike tome that I have feene brought from East India.

Digination.

When they would know any thing to come, they fend for their Priest or Witch to converse When they would know any turns of the Tent, having before his face a peece of an old finite of the the Deuill, fitting in one fide of the Tent, having before his face a peece of an old finite of the tent of the Mayle, hung with Bels and peeces of Braffe, in his right hand a great Tabor made with a Wolucs skinne, bearing vpon the same with a Hares foot, making a very dolefull found, with singing and calling for the Deuill, to answer his demand, which being ended, they strangle a Deere for a Sacrifice, making merrie with the Fleth.

Womens har-

The Women be very hard of Nature; for at their Child-bearing, the Husband must play the Midwife, and being delivered, the Child is washed with cold water or Snow, and the next day the Woman able to conduct her Argish.

The Rulles have a yeerely Trade with the Merchants of Bogbar, at a place called Tomes in Tortarie, whither they of Boghar come with Camels every yeere.

From Tumen in Tobal in Subersa, they come in foureteene dayes, From Tobal, they come to Berefone in nine dayes, all downe the River Ob.

From Berefous, partly by the River Ob, then over a necke of Land of halfe a mile over, into the River Oufe, and downe the River Oufe into the River Pectors, and fo to Puffezers in three weekes. At Puffozera, the Englifb'haue Wintered three yeeres.

CHAP. XIII.

Divers Voyages to Cherie Iland, in the geeres 1604. 1605. 1606. 1608. 1609. Written by IONAS POOLE.

" This was Mafter Bennets fecond Voyage thither. age thither 6. 1602.I have added at the end of this Chapter, after Pooles Relacions: this be-



Ee set sayle * from London the fifteenth of Aprill 1604. in a Ship called the God Speed, of fixtie Tunnes, with thirteene Men and a Boy ; our Merchant was one Mafter Thomas Welden, our Mafter was one Stenen Bennit of Saint Catherins. We arrived at Cols in Lapland, the first of May, where weetarried till the last of the fame Moneth, at which time wee set sayle from Cola, and went to an Harbour called Pechingo, which lyeth betweene Cola and Ward bonfe. In which Harbour of Peshings, we continued untill the thirtieth of June. At which time wee let fayle from thence. of Peshings, we continued virtue are time to the party of the put into Ward-bomfs, where we tooke in and through contrarie winders and foule weather, were put into Ward-bomfs, where we tooke in 30

The fame day, the wind came Southerly, and we fleered away Northwest and by North about ing setbefore I 56. leagues, wee observed the Sunne at twelve of the clocke at Noone, and found our selves to be in 73. degrees 5. minutes of Northerly Latitude. The feuenth of Iuly, it was all day calme, and wee founded, but had no ground in two hundred and fiftie fathoms. The eight day, we had little winde, which was at South-east, and foggie weather; and at eight of the clocke at Night, wee faw great flockes of Sea-fowles, which we call Willockes : fome of these Fowles had each of them a small Fish in their bills, and slew toward the North-west and by North. The other without Fish, some of them slew contrarie to the former, and some sate in the Sea very

About twelue of the clocke at night we founded, and had ground atone hundred and twen- 60 tiefathomes. We steered away North-west and by North, till soure of the clocke the eight day in the morning, then it fell calme : and as the ship lay still, our Master spied a Morsse, which same to our ship and swamme round about it. While we were all gazing at this Monster, I spied

the Hand san leagues off, bearing North North-west halfe a point Westerly, which shewed very high Land, and much Snow vpon it. The wind came to the North-east. The ninth day, wee there Hand came to an Ancher onthe South South east fide, influe and twentie fathomes ftreamie ground, deferibed. We howied out our Boare, and Matter Wolden went toward the Land : but thinking to have landeci he copyld not, because there went a great Sea, and great flore of 'kee all along the thoares fide.
Within one house the Bothe pame aboard; and they first, there were for many Powles, that they Store of conesed the Rockes, and flow in fuch great flockes, that they thewer file a Cloud. While this toules they were talking close by the Boate, rose vous tinge Merite, putting his head about the water. looking assaulty at the Boate, and made with an horrible moyle and foating, that they in the Mornistania

CHARLE.

To Boate thought be would have funke it. The fame day, at eight of the clocke at night, we weighed and flood away South-well and by South about four miles, where wee doubled the Southermost point of the Hand, and found the Land to trend North North-west, and all along the shoare some scattering see. We say led along the shoare, finding seventeene, sight stars, and sometimes twentie fathomes, firming ground with white shels. We held this course till wee faw all the Northermost part of the lland ; and being within three miles of it, and about thirteene miles from the Point, wee came round about it. And some two miles from the Land, we anchored in sixteene fathomes, streamie ground, We had not ridden one houre to arrend, but a great piece of Ice came directly with the tyde voon vs:

and before wee could weigh, it ftrooke the flip, with foch force, that it hilded on the one fide. 20 Affoone as it was paft, we went on thoare, where we found abundance of Sea Fowles, as Wil-locks, Gulles, Noddies, Sea-mewes, a small Fowle like a Willocke, and diners others, as wilde Sea-towles Geefe, Sea-pidgeons, Oxbirds, and fuch like : whereof Matter Thomas Welden killed fo many found on with his Peece, that we almost laded our Beate with them. The same night we shoe three heaps shoare. of fifthing-lines, but when we haled them, wee found neither fifth nos bayte : for the Seales had eaten them all off.

ten them all off.

The ninth day, Mafter Welden and our Matter went on hoare, to see what they could finde, In the internation, make a result of the clocke, and came again about four; in the after-noone very weary, feeing nothing but finall fracts, almost like Dogges in overy idipetifular their finell and their tayles. In the meant some, the Matters Mass, and my. faller observed the 30 Sunne, and found that pare of the Hand to be in 74.degrees and 45. minuter.

The tenth day we weighed, having the wind Southerly, and found the Land to trend away Non. and centurary we regard the state of the fide is about ten miles, good ground. We had not failed part fixe miles, but we faw a fandic Bay againf which we came to an Auchor is most fathorist. We had not furled our Sayles, but we faw many Morfes (winnings by our flips, and heard, with all fo buge a noyie of roaring, as if there had beene an hundred Lions. Immediately were manned our Boate, wherein was Mafter Weden and fixe men more: we handed and flew abundance of Morffes on the shoare, close by the Sea-side; and drawing neare water them, were perceived that they were all of the func company, which we had sense between the formed very strange to we to be fushed a multitude of Monthers of the Sea, lye like Hogges vpan heapes: 1, a the end wiee five at them, not knowing whither they could runne faultly or leaze vpon vaor no. To be briefs, wee had but three Perces, Market Weden a Fowling Perce, buy felts a Hushet, and another a Musket. They said the Perces were spoyled instantly. For Mastler Wedens, was closed, the other man where he mains. had that one by himselfe, thought to knocke him on the head with the fleck but folithis Peece. I shot still, and some when they were wounded in the fieth, would but looke vp and lye downe againe. Some were killed with the first shots and some would goe into the Sea with five or fixe thot : they are of fuch an incredible strength. When all our Powder and show was frent, wee would blow their eyes out with a little Peafe thot, and then come on the bland fide of them, and withour Carpenters Axe cleave their heads. But for all that, we could der, of aboue a thourand we killed buf fifteene. We tooke off their heads, and when we had done, we went drawing we so and downe to fee what we could find. I found the first Took that was carbypose the lind, and going a little farther alone, I found as many Teeth more, as hand three men more confidential

going a that satisfact all which would deliver to Matter of the world being the clean the world being the world fixe more : And afterward wee went up into the Land, and faw nothing but Fowloand Force. I perceived in deed a great print of a Beares foote; and after that many other footings, bus yet faw no Beare or other wild heaft.

The twelfth, wee weighed from thence, and flood to the Eastward: wee had not gone past four miles, but we found the Land to fall away South-east and by South. The length of this fide is about twelue miles. All this fide we went close by the thoate with our Boate, and the Ge (hip fayled along about three miles off. We went oftentimes on shoare, but could see meeting on Abundance of all that side but Fowle, and abundance of Drift Wood, the most part whereof was Firres, which Drift Wood have beene beaten up and downe the Sea. This day being Sunday, about sight of the clocke at night, we anchored within two miles of the place where we arrived at the first. The same right wee went on shoare, and in a Bay under an huge Cliffe of a Rocke, upon the Beach, wee found

74HOSTONES minutes.

The fight

Athousand

Cola.

neere a thousand Morfen; wee killed thattie or thereabouts, and when wee had taken off their Mortes found heads, we went aboord.

The thirteenth, wee went on shoare againe, and with our Pieces fell a killing of the beafts. One of our company named Richard Lang. caffle splitthis Piece, and with all his handibut Master Welden with Salues of his owne, healed it to skillelly, that he hath the vie of it againe. We killed that day fixtic Morfes, all the heads whereof were very principall. When we had done, wee went about a mile to the Eastward, to see what wee could finde : And landing at a Bay where went apour a mue to one garward, so see what were some more around sealing as a day where see went apour a mue to one garward where the yeere before, and found a piece of Lead Vre, wee looked for the Matter Deman nau Decrie une yecte omore, and roman proven fet fayle for Pechinge in Lapland, which found none. The time day returning about , were fet fayle for Pechinge in Lapland, where wee arrived the fine and twentieth of July; and flayed these foure dayes: at which time 10 we feetlayle for Cole, and arrived there the eight of August, where wee continued till the fixteenth day, at which time we departed thence for Hagland, and arrived in the Thomes the fif-

Why the land teenth of October, of the yeere atorefaid 1604. When wee came to Landon, because Sir Francis Cherie Knight and Merchant was at the charges of this Discoucrie, this Iland was called Cherie Illand.

The third Voyage to Cheric Iland, performed by Mafter WELDEN Merchant, and STEPHEN BENNET Mafter, in the yeere 1605.

TN the yeere about hid, wee fet fayle from London, the first of May, with one ship of fixtie turner, and two and twentie men and boyes. The three and twentieth of the faid moneth, we were taken by a fifty of Dunkerke. They tooke from vs two Hogheads of firong Beere, our Muskets, a Fowling Peece of Marker Weldows, which coft three pounds fterling. After the Captayne had misufed was his pleasure, though we were in peace with his Country, he let vs goe.

Assumption. Cherie Hand.

The fight of

Eleven mans of

eayne nac mauned was in pressure, mough we were in pease with gir. Country, ne let w sgot. The eight and twentieth of lune; we put off from Affamption Poor, which is a place not fare from the North Cape; and about 70. degrees in latitude, but by contrare winds wee were put backs agains. Yet the second of July, we came to Cherie Hand, and anchored on the South-east to fide: and haung a Shallbp in pieces to fet ry, we carried it on floare, and went to worke vpon its and the tine day after we had it on flote. The fixth day we entred into a Cone, haung all four men on thouse with thot and jaurings, and the abundance of Morfes. The yeare before we Many Mortes that me to the contract with more and parameter, and the administration of the contract with the likely with the all with those, one thinking eight at pitelling could pierce their skinners which we found not the maliane contrarie, if they be well handled, for otherwise, a man may thrust with all his force and not enters out in education, the final fleyle his Lance you their bones; for they will first with the therefore feet, and bend a Lance round, and breake it, if it bee not all the better plated. They will alfo firike with their Teeth at him that is next them : but because their Teeth grow downward, their strokes are of small force and danger, After we had opened the beasts which we kind flaine, we cooke out the blubber, and carried it a mile into the Bay, where weelet up the 40 shallop. The reason why we carried it thirder, was, because we thought that the fire of our Furnase would feare them away : for wee did boyle all their facto bring it into Oyle. Thus wee followed our businesse till the foureand twentieth of Inly, at which time weehad very foule weather with fogs. Now the ship riding in the same Coue, where we killed our Morfes, had taken in eleuen tunnes of Oile, and the teeth of all the beafts aforesaid. Then we made preparation to be gone home: and I was fent with our shallop, and eight men with me to fetch our Tent, and our boyling Coppers, our mens Clothes and some Teeth. At my returne, when I was almost abound, comming through a place betweene the Hand and a Rocke, which of necessitie we must needs paffe, the tyde being against vs, and a stiffe gale of winde blowing out of the Sea, made the Scales very high woon the Rocker, whereby we had like to have beene funker for our Boat 30 was almost full of water; and if weehad not speedily rowed backe againe, weehad dyed each manof vs. To make fort, we got into a Cone, where the Rockes did keepe the growne Seas from vs, & we lighted our Boat. In this Coue I found a Myne of Lead Vre, and digged vp about this is plunds weight of it, which I brought into England. And calling to mind that wee were in fight of our fhip, when we shipped the water which I spake of before, I misstusted that they thought, as they did indeed, that we were all drowned. Therefore I demanded who would goe with me, to the top of a Cliffe which stood ouer against the ship! And one lobin Tening: faid, that he would goe : he had not gone halfe way, but hee would goe no farther because it was so cold, and the fill flood flooring very freepe toward the Sea; and all the file of it was loofe Earth, which we must need paste. Then I went forward all alone, and found all our men on floore, fauingan old man, and a ficke man. But the Cliffe being fo high and fleep, that they under it could feance understand what I said, nor I what they said, but with much adoe : They demanded, as I tooke it, it all our men were wel: I told them yea, as loud as I could: And then I threw downe a Piece of the lead Vre which I had found, which Marrelden took vp: And when I was going away

CHAP. 13 Extreame cold. Driving Ice. Mount Miferie. Unbolesome fogge. 559

I heard them shout, and looking behind me, I saw them all point coward the Skiffe that lay at anchor hard by the shoare; whereby I perceived that the rope was broken, which made it fast to the fineare, and the Skiffe was gone off to the length of her ropt ifo that they could not go abourd except one of them did I wim to the Skiffe, which was exceeding dangerous, both because it was extreame cold, and allo for frare of being killed by the Moffes; that were in the Sea all about Extreame cold the Boar. Whereupon with all free dopfiled it ame to helpe our men in that diffrelle; and comming to the Shallop, tome where willings; and fome rowilling; But I faid that out I would; and taking nothing aboutd with me but a few treeth, wee got out : and in the place where we had like to have beene funke before, wee had a great hollow See? but our Boat being light, and the tyde IO with vs, was got through: whereat Il Welden, and Stenen Bennet our Mafter, with all the com-

pany were not a little loyfull, and gaue God humble thankes, that had of his great mercy defen-ded ve from a great many of dangers that day. For that day wee faw abundance of yee driving Abundance of toward the Hand, but the winde and tyde fhifting, put it another wiy. Likewife two boyes drining lee. had like to haue beene flaine with the fall of a rockle, which fell close by them, they being but newly flepped out of the place where the rocke fell./

In the time that we were in this diffreffe, I called the Mountaine by the name of Mount min. Mount Mifery ferie, which is fo called at this day. Likewife there is a very high Mountaine on the East Southeast point of this Hand: which, because Master Welden and I got two Foxes neere it . I called it Mount maleperdus, alluding to the name in the merrie booke of Remold the Fox.

The fixe and twentieth of Iulie, wee got out of the Coue with the Ship, having fuch a fogge, A montrous that although wee ridde fo neere the land, that we could heare the fewle that were on shoare, ver wee could not fee the land. This fogge continued vitill the eight and twentieth of July : on which day having cleerer weather, wee got our water and other provision abourd; and fet fayle for England, and passing by the coast of Finmarke and Normay, we arrived at London the foure and twentieth of Anguilt. 1605.

The fourth Popage to Chery Hand, 1606.

VV E fet fayle from London in a Ship and a Pinnoffe; the Ship being of burden fixtie Tuns, August 14, and the fame due I was in the Summer before; Mafter Thomas Welden was Merchant, Pinnoff fer Pinnoff fer the Market Was Merchant, Pinnoff fer the Market Was Merchant Was Mercha and Mafter Bennet Mafter having in all two and ewencie men and boyes. The Pinnalle was of twentie Tunnes, and had eight men in her, and I Jones Pool was Mafter of her : we were fer out by Mafter Ruffell, one of the Mofeonie Company.

The eight and twentieth, wet had fight of land on the coast of Norway, in the latitude of fixtie degrees and a halfe; nine leagues off.

degrees and a mane; nume regression.

The fixeness he of une, we fell with the Assumption, it bearing South and by West eight leagues The Assumption of and we lay bearing betweene the North Cape and it, till the eighteenth of June: At what the control of the co time wee put off, and steered away North North-west about fiftie fine leagues, and found Much Leass. 40 much Ice : wee thought to have gotten through it, but could not : and when wee had fpent lesques from twelue houres in it, and having the wind Northerly, we put backe againe. The two and twen- Cape. tieth, we fell with the North Cape agains; at twelve of the clock at noone. The foure and twentieth, we put off againe, and being flue and fortie leagues from the Cape, wee met with Ice, and lea wahin 45. wpon a piece office we faw a Beare. The Ship being on head of vs, bare close to the Ice and Ma-leagues of the fier welden those the faid Reary dead at the fad hoe. This Bar vs, bare close to the Ice and Ma-North Cape. fler Welden frot the faid Beare dead at the first shot. This Beare was from the neerest land about A Beareon Ice feuen and twentie leagues, and lived of Seales or other fifth that he could prey vpon.

The second of July, we saw Cherie Hand at a North found : the land bearing North and by from any lands West about ten leagues off. The same time we founded and had ground at feuentie sine fathoms, laif at white small shelly ground with small blacke stones,

50 The third of Iuly wee anchored on the West side of the Hand in twentie fathoms, having veries much Ice. I observed the Sunne at the lowest , and found the latitude of that place to bee in 74 degrees, 55. minutes. It followeth where South-west and by South and the floud commeth lisadin 74de

The fifth and fixth dayes, we were troubled with much Ice; but it being broken, we brought misutes, the ends of our Cables to our maine Masta; and having a good tyde, we did sheere, as wee tearme The floud it, cleere off the Ice. We ridde thus in Ice fixe dayes, to wit, vntill the thirteenth day; at what commeth time the Ice began to goe way, and the Morfes came on thoure. For their nature is fuch, that they from the will not come on land as long as any los is house the hand will not come on land as long as any Ice is about the land .

The fourteenth, we went on land; Mafter Welden, and Mafter Bennet, with the Ships company, of July. 60 and I with the company of the Pinnasse. And being altogether on shoare, and seeing of the Thenature of beafts sufficient to make our voyage, wee prepared to goe to killing. Master Welden and Master the Morks. Benner appointed mee to take eleuen men with mee, and to goe beyond the brafts where they lay; that they and wee might meet at the middeft of them, and so inclose them, that none of them should get into the Sea.

The thirteenth

A great white

flayne in fixe A great Froft

As I serched a compalle about, before we were aware, rose a great white Beare within a Pikee length of vs : whereupon we made a fland, and my felfe having both a Musker and a Lance, chought to have shot him : but remembring my selfe, chartele repose of my Peece might make all the Mories goe into the Sea, and in basard our Voyage, I went to him with my Lance. All this while he late forming at the mouth, and would not flure, but gaped and roared as though he would have eaten ysall; but prefently wee prickerhim in the most ; and then with an eafe pace we proceeded on with our bufineffe; and before has hours were ended, we had flay ne about pace Mr. pioperate on with our pumpine; and beaute mg mouse were conce, we not myne about Scuen or eight leuen or eight hundred Benths. And siter that Matter William flue the Beare. Forem dayer pace fourn or eight hundred heatts. And after the changes of the state of t

that the Ice did hang on our Clothes made it has Done or a chity The fixe and twentieth, we had taken in two and twentie tuns of the Oyle of the Morfes,

and three hog heads of their Testbe.

The lenen and twentierh. Mafter Welden, flux another Beare. The eight and twentieth, we tooke in Water and Wood The nine and twentieth, we fet fayle for England The fifteenth of August, 1606, we arrived in the Thomas

The fixth Voyage made to Cheric Hand, the South part mbereef flandeth in 74. degrees and 40, minutes of Northerly latitude, in the yeere 1008.

He fixteenth of Aprill, in the yeere 1608, we fet fay le from Blacke wall, and came to Granef-

Tipany. Iune 13.

The one and twentieth of May, we were within 4. leagues of the North Cape, flanding in And concean evertices of may, we write watering, request of the Frorth Lape, standing in 71, degrees and 3 of North Laitingle. The fours and twenteth, we came to *Mord-bouga*. The fine and twentieth, we weighed, and chine of *Tipasy in Lapland* the fixe and twentieth: where we stayed about our businesse still the thirteepath of lune. we mayed about our companion on the companion of the comp

Chaig Lland. A Beare flaine.

And, the eighteenen, as pour of Angles and at four of the clocke at night wer and trace of the clocke at night wer anchored on the North-weft fide of it: and Maker Weldes went on Land on the North ide, and flues Bears. The nineteenth, we rid flill, and Mafter Wallen went to the North fide againe, and flue another Beare. The fame day we fent two men to the South fide of the land, to fee if there were any Morses on shoare. They came againe the next day, and faid, that there were great flore. The twentieth and one and twentieth dayes it was calme, and the weather cleere, and wee

Great heate

The twentiern and one and symptoms uspends the same, and an element of the yeers. For the Pitch did runne downe the hips fides; and that fide or the Mafts that was to the Same ward, was fo hot, 40 that the Tarre did frye out of it, as though it had boyled. The two and twentieth, at a North-east Sun, we weighed and went to the South fide of the 1000, Mories Hand, and came into a Coup, where the Mories were, and Bue shout poo, or 1000, of them in killed in same leffe then feven houres: and there were plyed our bufinesses will die fevon of fully: at what

time we had taken into our thip 22. tunnes and three hogiheads of Oyle, bours.

In the third of Irly, being Sunday, one Richard Steneus of Harmach came to the faid Cheric Avoyage fet.

Iland, in a ship called the Dragen, being sectout by Master Dappa, a Brewer dwelling in Sant outly laster. Catherises neete the Tower of London; which set out a ship with Master Toppus Wilson the The ninth day, we made our Voyage, and came out of the Coue, having taken in 31. tunnes of 50

Iland, 1607.

Oyle, and one hoghead, one barrell, and one terce of Morles teeth : befries 400, other teeth, The twelfth, we tooke into our thip two young Morfes, male and female, aline: the female died before we came into England: the male lived about ten weekes. When wee had watered, we fet fayle for England about foure of the clocke in the morning. The fourteenth day, we saw the Iland bearing North North-weft, 15. leagues off vs. and four-

I ne routeennus, was an income and a constitution of the state of the nesse, we brought our living young Morse to the Court, where the King and many honourable personages beheld it with admiration for the strangenesse of the same, the like whereof had neuer before beene seene aline in England. Not long after it fell sicke and died. As the beast in 60 shape is very strange, so is it of strange docilitie, and apt to be taught, as by good experience we

The leventh Voyage to Cherie Iland, made in the yeere 1600.

VEe were furnished with two ships, determining to goe to Topany in Lapland, to buy fish of the Lappes and Russes, and afterward to goe to Cherie lland: the one was called the Lionelle, in which I went for Mafter, the other, the Pant, which was there the last yeere. 1608. The one and twentieth day of March, we weighed anchor at Granefend: and the fixe and twentieth . we came to Harwich: where it was concluded, that the Limeffe should goe directly to Cherie Hand. The fifteenth of Aprill, we weighed at Horewich: and the laft of the fame mo-

neth we fell betweene Lofos and Zenam vpon the Coast of Finnark.

Lase.

The second of May, we came to the North Cape; and the same day wee stood for Cheris I. Zenam. land : but meeting with contrary winds and foule weather, we have backe agains for the Cape, May 1. and fell with the Land the fourth day. The fift day in the morning, we put the fecond time from the North Cape; and the eight day wee anchored at Cherie Hand. It did freeze very hard, but They arrive at we found no Ice about the lland, faue that which claue to the Rockes. We went into the Coue Cheric lland with our Shallop, and found eight Morfes on the Ice hard by the shoares side: And we also found the s. of May; all the beafts that were killed the last yeere not washed away with the Sea , couered ouer with Snow and Ice. Wee thought to have gotten abundance of Fowle as wee had done in the yeeres Fowle. before ; but they would not fit; the reason was, because they were but new come to the Iland, 20 and not fetled as then : yet some Fowle we got, and came aboord. And because the wind was Northerly, that we could not conveniently goe to the North fide with the ship, we determined to fend fome men ouer Land, to fee if there were any Morfes on shoare voon that side. The ninth day, I prepared to goe over Land to the North fide, about a North-east Sunne, with three men in my companie. I my felfe had a Musket, and about a quarter of a pound of Powder, and fixe Bullets; an Halfe-pike in mine hand, and an Hatchet at my backe. One of the men had a birding Peece; the other two had each of them a lauelin. Wee went over the Snow and Ice apace outward; but came wearily homeward, by reason we rested not any where. And when we were within a mile of the other fide, one of my companie faid, he faw a Beare : whereupon we looked up, and faw three great ones. Whereupon I made a ftand, and gaue each of my com- Three Beares. 30 panie some Aquavite, and a little Bread, and told them, that wee must not in any cafe seeme Qualitie of fearefull , because the nature of them is such , that who oeuer seemeth fearefull , or offereth to Beares runneaway, they will feize voon him. In this time I made my Musket readie : and the Beares Feare a Trais

feeing vs to come toward them, flood vpon their feet, and two of them went toward the Sea : tor. The third flood still champing and forming, as though hee would have eaten vs. When I was within flot of him, he beganne to follow his fellowes, still looking behind him with his former gesture: In the meane while I got ground of him, the three men following mee with their weapons. In the end the angry deuill turned backe, and came directly toward mee : Het him come within two long Pikes lengths, and gaue him such a welcome, that hee fell downe stone dead. A Beare flahe. 40 The company that were with me were glad as well as I: yet I had beene at the killing of Beares before. After this Beare was flayne, we told feuenteene more, whereof three were young ones. 17. Beares in This done, we went on to the Sea fide, where we found the Shallop which we left the yeere be- fight fore. Wee were no fooner fet to eate a little food, but there came a Beare with two young ones as big as Lambes of a moneth old: they skipped about their dams necke, and played with one Young Bette

another very wantonly. The dame came so neere that I shot at her, and being loth to hurt the whelp young ones, being playing about her fore-parts, I shot her through the top of the shoulder; then the wentaway. Immediatly we faw another Beare comming toward vs, which before he came to vs, flood vpon his hinder feet twice or thrice, vfing the fame countenance that the first did, which I flue. I let him come very neere, and thinking to give him his pasport, the flint of my Musket was broken, which made him come very neere vs. Then the fellow that had the bir-50 ding piece shot him into the foot : whereupon he ran away faster then wee could follow him. Wee feeing fo many Beares, and haning no store of Powder nor Shot, bent our journey toward

our ship againe. Wee had not come a quarter of a mile, but wee faw a huge Beare fast a sleepe on the Snow. I went foftly toward him, and gave him fuch a filip, that he never rose out of the place where helay. His skin when he was flayed was thirteene foot long. A neere neighbour A Beare flaye, of his hearing the report of my Peece came toward me: and him I flue also. Now, having but the skin when one shot left, I thought it not best to bestow it there, although I faw another lie voon the Snow of was 13, foot. hard by. While we fate downe to reft vs in the mid-way, there came toward vs another Beare flavne. with one young one: they came almost within shot, and went backe againe: presently shee

turned againe, and came within hot of me, and flood on her hinder legs directly vpright, and so fo did the young one. I made account they would have come neerer; but they to the contrarie ran away. Wee came being very wearie aboord our ship about a North-west Sunne. Then wee weighed, and flood to the Northward, having the wind at South; and by three of the clocke the next morning, wee came to the North-east Point with the ship. There wee manned our The tenth day.

The

Sixe Beares

Shallop, and Master Thomas Welden and I went on shoare, where hee slue fine Beares, and I one, and I wounded two more very fore. And before a North Sunne, our men had fleyed them flyar. All the Beares all; both them that I flue the day before, and them that wee flue this last time: for they were

The elementh day, we went on Land, and washed some old sleyed Morses skinnes, which had lyen there two yeeres: but they will hardly proue good. The twelfth day, we rid at the West fide, and got some Fowle with shor, and there we rid till the thirteenth.

The thirteenth, wee faw very much Ice to the Southwards and Westwards, wich came driuing fo fast toward the shoarewhere wee rid, that wee were forced to weigh, and stood to the ung to fait toward the incare water week and the see flood to the East fide of the lland : 10 and there wee found both the Hand and our felues encompassed round with Ice. But the winde being Westerly, and a good stiffe gale, it blew the Ice about a mile and an halfe from the Eastern fide: by which meanes wee got betwixt the Ice and the Hand, and flood to the Southward. but faw not any thing in all the Sea faue Ice; fauing close by the Land a little open Sea trending to the South-westward. That way wee stood with our fore top-sayle, and stood one while one way, and another while another way, and could not see open Sea till the fifteenth of the same moneth; at a North-west Sunne wee saw the open Sea: onely a ledge of Ice which began to part infunder, was betwixt vs and it. Toward that place we flood, and intending by Gods helpe to get through, we made provision to defend the ship from the Ice, by hanging Cables ends, and Plankes, and Capitan barres about the bowes of our ship. But for all 20 our fendors, our ship had a great knocke vpon a piece of Ice. About a North Sunne, we got out into the open Sea; with humble thankes to God for our deliuerance.

Snow.

The fixteenth day, the lland did beare North-east and by North, eight leagues from vs: and it did freeze all that day, the wind being at North, which was almost calme. The seuenteenth, at noone the Iland did beare North-east and by North, about nine leagues off, the wind Southerly, snowy weather. The same day we saw a sayle, bearing East North-east off vs about 5. leagues. The eighteenth, the Hand did beare North about 15. leagues off, the wind being at East and by North, Snow and frosty weather. The nineteenth, at twelue of the clocke at noone the lland bare North and by East: and we finding the Ice somewhat scattered, and the wind Southerly, put roome toward the Iland, and vpon one piece of Ice we faw fue Scales: one I killed, and one 30 I tooke aliue, and brought it aboord our flip. But wee could not come neere the Iland by fixe leagues. The wind came to the West with thicke weather and Snow. The twentieth, at twelve at noone the Hand beare North North-west, about twelue leagues off, We sounded, and had 100.

Snow.

Fine Scales.

fathoms, greenish Oze, faire weather, but cold. The one and twentieth, we faw the ship that wee had seene the seventeenth day; wee spake A ship of Hull. With them about 12. at noone. The Master told vs he was of Hull. Wee demanded whether he was bound? He told vs, to Cherie Hand, and that there he would make his Voyage. The Hand at this time did beare North and by East about nine leagues off; and it was faire, but cold frostie Frosty wether. weather. The 22. 23.24. and 25. dayes, we did beate vp and downs in the Ice. The 26. 27. and 28. dayes, likewise wee sayled vp and downe in the Ice; hauing the wind Northerly, and 40 the Iland bearing betweene the North and the North North-east; cold weather. The nine Snow & frost. and twencieth, the Hand beare North nine leagues off, the wind at North-east, snowy weather

26. Scales.

The thirtieth day, we flue 26. Seales, and espied three white Beares: wee went abourd for Shot and Powder, and comming to the Ice againe, we found a shee-Beare and two young ones: A Beare killed Master Thomas Welden shot and killed her: atter shee was slayne, wee got the young ones, and on the Ice. brought them home into England, where they are aline in Paris Garden. The one and thirtieth, we heate up and downe in the Ice, but could not come neere the Land for Ice; the winde was white Beares

Two young brought into

Froft.

The first of Iune, we got within fine or fixe miles of the Iland: but finding very much Ice 50 close by the Land, we flood off againe, the wind being at North-east, cold weather. The second day, we got within three leagues of the Iland: but finding exceeding much Ice round about vs. we stood off againe, the wind at North-east, cold frostie weather. From the second day to the fift, wee fayled first one way, and then another, as the wind and Ice would give vs leave. The wind being at North and by East, and the Iland being betweene the North-west and by North, within fixe leagues and leffe.

The Hall man, the Hand.

The fixth day, we spake with the Hull man, who told vs, that he was put swentie leagues to the North-west of the Iland, being fast in the Ice. We had the wind Northerly, and frosty weather; the Land bearing North North-west The seuenth and eight, we beate vp and downe in the Ice : the Iland did beare North-west eight leagues off. The winde was Northerly, with 60 No fog in a cold and frostie weather.

The ninth, the Land beare North-west off vsabout six leagues off. That day we had the first fogge fince the time of our arrivall, which was the eight of May. Neither loft wee the fight of the Hand about eighteene houres in all this time. This day, about a North-rast Sunne it began to thaw ; and in fixe houres the fnow was melted, which lay vpon the Ice aboue fixe inches The first than thicke; which put vs in good hope that the Ice was almost past.

The tenth, we got within fixe miles of the shoare : where I made an attempt to have got to the land with the Shallop : but comming within three miles of the shoare, I could get no farther. the lee was fo thicke, and fuch foggy weather. I made another attempt the fame day, and got within one mile of the Land: but the Ice was so thicke that I could get no farther. The same day wee faw good ftore of Morfes on the Ice and in the Sea.

The elementh and twelfth, we plyed vp and downe fayre by the lland, to fee if wee could get on Land with our Shallop; but the Ice was so close about the Land, that wee could not by any In meanes, This day the wind was at South-eaft, thicke foggie weather. The thirteenth, we had thicke fogge and calme weather; and when it began to cleere, wee had fight of the Souther Fogges part of the lland, bearing East South-east, about fixe miles off; but it fell thicke suddenly againe. There wee anchored in fortie fathoms, white shelly ground; and rid till ten of the clocke at night : at what time I prepared to goe on shoare, as fast as I could with a Shallop and sixe men. About eleuen of the clocke we put from the Ship, and with great labour got through the Ice to

the Hand, by a North-east Sunne.

The fourteenth day, I landed on the Wester side of the Hand, and determined to goe from The Beares thence to the North fide, where wee flew the Beares. The ninth of May I left three men flaine on the with the Shallop, and tooke three men with me. In my journey I found fuch bad way, that I had North side. no ftomacke to goe through; for where there was no fnow, the ground was fo foft, and without graffe, that we went up to the ancilles in dirt; and where the fnow lay, which was in fome holes, three or foure fathoms thicke, it was fo foft, that we flipt each flep up to the twift; fo that wee were about three houres in going fearce two miles. Whereupon, confidering it would be long before I should get ten miles and backe againe, I returned to our Shallop, and found that the men which I left had killed fome fowle, which wee fod, and when wee had eaten them, I prepared to goe in the Shallop to the North fide. I went close by the shoare; for the Sea was full of Ice. As wee went along by the Cliffes, we got good store of Fowle ; which made vs glad and joyfull, because there was no hope to get aboord the Ship that day, nor the next. About a North-west Sun wee got to the place aboutlaid, and found nine Beares, three of them I flew, the other tooke the 30 Sea. Those three that were flaine we flead, and tooke their flesh and salted it in their skinnes; Three Beares which I stowed in the Shallop for feare of a dearth. I had a terce full of falt there, which wee flaine, powdered, and eaten.

The fifteenth day, when wee had ended our businesse, and eaten some of our Beares siesh, and Possession refet wp an Enfigne in token of our possession of the Iland, wee prepared to be gone : and about an ken of the in Eaft North-east Sunne the wind came Westerly; which made me thinke, as it proued, that the I land for the Ship would be on the South-east fide of the Hand; and when wee were comming, and almost at Mujernie the North-east point, we saw nine men; presently I knew them to bee the men of Hull. Along Company. I came to the East side, where we tooke in drift wood, and a broad stone to make a fire vpon in Drift wood on our Boat. While wee were there, wee espied our ship vnder her Fore-topfayle, and her Milen, the East fide, 40 We made all the hafte we could, and came to the Coue, where wee made our voyage the Summer We made an the nature we controlled controll the Hull mans Boat rowing into the Coue, and a Tent fet vp in the bottom of the Bay. I went thither, and told him we had taken possession there, the eight of May last. He answered, That if the beafts came on shoare, he would kill them if he could; and that there were as good men which ventured in that Ship, as the Company. I told him he durft not answer these words in England, and so departed and got some Fowle. About a South-west Sunne wee stood toward our Ship, having the wind at West South-west, and the Ship bearing from vs South-east about four leagues. I had not failed ten miles, but the Ice was fo close and firme, that I could not get abourd. so nor backe againe; for it closed with such force, that it made the Shallops sides cracke, as though they would have met together. Wee laboured very fore to faue our Boat, because it did concerne our lines, and got her into a place where shee lay betweene two pieces of Ice. After this sort we draue with the Ice till we had loft fight of our Ship, which was about a North fun; and still wee draue, being not able otherwise to moue till we were aboue eight leagues from the Iland,

The fixteenth day, at an East South-east Sun, the Ice began to open. Then, although my Company were in despaire, and faid it was impossible to get out, to worke wee went, and by cutting off Ice, and remouing of it one piece from another, we made way through toward the Land. The neerer to the Land wee got, wee found the more open Sea ; and by a North Sunne wee got on shoare. After wee had given God thankes for our deliverance out of such extreame danger, wee 6c eate some Fowle and Beares flesh, which wee sod under a Cliffe. There wee found nine young They feed on Foxes, and killed the old one. There also we slept upon the cold Sand, which was not past three scares seek inches thicke and underneath less and daied have all a Court, and Courte the forestand. June 18 forest Seek inches thicke and underneath less and daied have all a Courte and Courte the forestand and the courte seek inches and underneath less and daied have all a Courte and Courte the forestand and the courte seek inches and underneath less and the courte seek inches and the courte see

Poxes, and windermeath Ice; and stated here till a South-east Sunne the seutreenth day. Since inches thicke, and vindermeath Ice; and stated here till a South-east Sunne the seutreenth day. The feuenteenth, we went from this place to the Coue, where we found the Hall mans Boat, I made a tilt of the Shallops sayle, and sod some Beares flesh and Fowle; and stayed about the

Three Mynes Good Sea-

palie of Ice.

got in the fe-

cond time.

The Marie

Inly.

Fowle their

in extreamitie.

Another

Snow and

Coue all that day. And vpon an Iland, commonly called Gull-Iland, I found three Mynes of Three Mynos

Flead frund Lead Vre: but having no fit tooles to breake the Rocks, and also because it was in the view of of Lead trums
on Gull-Iland. the Hull mans Tent, I was forced to let it reft, till the Ships could get into the Coue.

The eighteenth day, wee went to the North fide of the Hand, and in our way wee found good Good Sea-coles found on Sea-coales to burne : some wee tooke with vs to try them, and found them good. And on the North fide I flew two Beares. Then wee shated the bread that was left; and wee had but two cakes to a man : for some of my Company while I was asseepe, or killing of the Beares, had broken open the cheft wherein the bread was, and had conveyed fome away. Our betre was fpent before this time, and we were faine to drinke fnow water.

The ninteenth, wee went to the Coue, the wind being Westerly, to see if weecould espy our 10 Ship, but wee could not, neither could fhee come neere the lland for Ice; for all the Sea, as farre as I could fee from the top of an high Hill was couered with Ice, faung that within a quarter of a mile off the shoare, it was cleere round about once in a tyde.

The twentieth day, I went to the North fide againe, and flew a Beare. Thus wee fpent the Another time, fometimes on one fide, fometimes on the other, neuer staying about one day in one place Beare flaine. till the Ship came in ; which was the feuen and twentieth of June, on which day I flew ano-Another ther Beare. I flew seuen in all, vyhose slesh vye eate full sauerly, torgetting the oyly ranknesse Beare flaine. of it; for hunger is a fauourie fawce. Their Ship

The feuen and twentieth, our ship came to an anchor on the North side, where we then were: affeone as vve faw her, we needed no bidding to go aboord. When we were come to the ship side, 20 they bad vs vvelcome : but whereas we thought to have releeved our felues, wee found it farre otherwise; because the Ship had a knocke with a piece of Ice in the Sterne, which brake in the corner of a Planke under the wvater, so that our bread-roome wvas full of wvater, and all our bread Control of a rainer visited by the state of The Matthew. went on shoare, where we found one John Skinner, Masters mate of the Matthew, with eleven men by him. We set vp our Tent, and told him there was no voyage for him to make : but our necessicie vvas such, that vve vvere faine to take foure hundred of bread of them, vpon some condition, which I will not speake of here. The same day were thought to have taken a Copper aboord, which I digged out of the fnow; but by negligence it was let fall into the Sea, yetaf- 30 terward taken vp againe and carried aboord. The fame day, another Ship called the Mary Mar-

garite came into the faid Coue on the South fide. The eighteenth, I went to the Coue with the Shallop and fixe men, where I found the Marie Margarite; there passed no great kindnesse betweene them and me. I slew three Morses there, two vvere loft, the others head I brought aboord. The next day I came aboord our Ship, and we rid on that fide, looking still when any beasts would come on shoare, till the second of Iuly. Then we weighed, and stood to the East side of the Hand; because the wind was at West North-west, and great store of Ice came from those parts. We had not rid one houre to an end, but Logen and Edge, vve faw a Skiffe comming towards vs. In this Skiffe was one lofice Lagen, and Thomas Edge, Factors in the Paul for the vvorshipfull Company. They told vs that the Paul vvas in the Coue, 40 and the ship of Hull. They weent aboord againe, and when the tyde was spent, we weighed and thought to have anchored neere the Coue; but the vvind year fo far Easterly, that we could not: fo vvee vvent to the Wester side, and ridde there till the fourth day, where vve got Fowle; for chiefeft food

in all the time of our being about the Iland, and in the Ice, they were our chiefest food. The fourth, we weighed and went to the North fide; where we were troubled with much Ice: The wind was at West and by North, which brought the Ice whole vpon vs; so that we vvere forced to vveigh againe.

The fixth, vve came into the Coue; vvhere Master Welden slew a Beare. The eight day, he A Beare flaine. flew another Beare; and the same day I vvent to the North side, with the Shallop and victuals for the men which kept on that fide. I flayed there till the fourteenth of July : on which day 50 Beare flaine. wee had the wind Northerly, with fnow and froft, and the Iland enuironed round with Ice, In this time the Ships Company on the South fide did digge some Minerall Lead. And we caught aboue twentie Foxes, which we did eat as fauerly as if they had beene Venifon. Some Minerall The fifteenth day, by a North-east Sunne vve came aboord the Ship, which lay in the Coue,

Aboue twentie vvith our Shallop and all our prouision that vvas on the North side. And the Lionesse prepared Foxes eaten, to goe to Saint Nicolas in Ruffia, as it was appointed before in London,

The fixteenth, the wind being North-east brought such store of Ice to the Iland, that it vvas compassed round close to the shoare; and filled the Coue to full, that by no meanes possible the Ships could get out but ridde ftill that in for fine dayes.

The feventeenth, the Ice began to open at the mouth of the Cove, and some were willing to 60 goe out with their Ships; but couetouinesse had like to have brought vs all to great misery : for each man striuing to ride longest in the Coue, supposing that there the Morses would come first Dragers by the on shoare, they found it cleane contrary; for the wind came Southerly, and blew all the Ice from this fide of the Hand, faue that which was in the Coue: which pressed so fore vpon our

Ships, thatour Anchors could not hold vs. For the Manbew was put from three Anchors. and droue with that imall tyde, that runneth there within her length of a funken Rocke: but a great piece of Ice on ground vpon the Rocke did keepe her from it. And when the floud came againe, the was driven within halfe her length of the Rockes; fo that they were glad to get molt of their victuals out of her vpon the Rockes, looking each minute when the should folit in simder. And though the reit of the thips did not drive as the did , yet they had many a fore ftroke with the Ice. For the Southerly wind caufed a hollow Sea to come in; fo that our ships strooke with fuch force against the Ice, that wee could hardly stand on our feete in them. Then each man layed to his hand to faue his ship, by putting Plancks and old Cables ends, and bundels of To Hoops betweene their ships and the Ice. But they were beaten all to pieces presently. Then we put pieces of Elme Plancke betweene the bowes of the Paul, in which ship I was: Immediately, they also were beaten into small pieces, although they were aboue foure inches thicke. With the stroke that brake the Plancke, the Carpenter faid, the ships side did cracke, and two timbers were broken. Then prefently wee also got out of the ship most of our victuals, and carried it to the shoare. There might you see a forrowfull spectacle. For all the ships, being five in number, were fo fast in the Ice, that all the men that were in them all , which were one hundred eightie two, could not imagine how to laue one. Among the reft, we made account that the Matthew would finke, ere long : because the Ice had broken nine timbers on one fide, and eleuen on the other; fo that the Greene Sea did come into the ship : and her mayne beame was broken at that 20 instant likewise. In this fort we continued till the twentieth day following; when we looked still to bee put on the Cliffes with the force of the Ice, that pressed vpon our ships so fore, that our Anchors could not possibly hold.

Voon the twentieth day, it pleased God to bring the wind Westerly, then the Ice began to open, and to drive out of the Coue by little and little, to our great comforts. But that Ice that did not get cleane out, came backe againe, and ranne round in a Circle: fo that wee had a continual labor to defend the ships from it, Whereupon we made meanes to get out by long 1 Warps, 1 A warpe, is a as weetermethem. Wee were faine to let flip one Cable, and the Lioneffe one. The Matthew Rope (com had but one Cable and Anchor; but they borrowed one of vs. By a North-west Sunne, all feel yield to the ships got out of the Ice to the Coues mouth; where we stayed for the ebbe. When the ebbe warpe a ship, 20 was come, the Lioneffe departed on her Voyage to Saint Nicholas in Ruffia. And prefently the that is, with an Matthew, and the Mary Margarite fet faile and got out. Then wee in the Paul fet fayle, and Anchor bent before our Anchor was vp, it got hold vpon one of Matthewer Cables, that shee lost, when shee and layd out droue out . and brought vs vp toa Bitter, fo that wee were very neere the Rockes:but wee to hale the fhin got off egaine, and ride there till a North-weft Sunne the next day.

The one and twentieth day, we weighed and stood to the East side of the Iland, where wee is done when found the Mary Margarite, which had loft her Boat. Streight way we fayled to the North fide, they want wind to carrie out, where we anchored and rid till a North Sunne.

The two and twentieth day, it cleered up of a fogge, which had continued fince the bour. time of our comming out of the Coue. And wee thought it best to fetch the victuals aboord, m A Bitter, is a 40 which we carried on shoare when the ship was like to be split with Ice.

Then Iofics Logan and I tooke feuen men more with vs, and came to the Coue on the the Bitts, for Southfide : where wee found abundance of Morfes lying on the Ice, that was in the Coue. when they I flue one of them, and tooke off his head; we could not get to the shoare where our victuals lay, come to Anbut we made a fire under a Cliffe in the fame Coue.

The three and twentieth day, wee got to our victuals, and lofias went with it to our shippe: about the Bitts but I tarried at the Coue, hoping that the beafts would come on Land when the Ice was gone; (two mayne as they did afterward. There I tarried till the fine and twentieth of July; at what time Iofias fquarepieces Logan came to mee with the Shallop, and a Skiffe loden with Caske and other prouition; of Timber, and told mee, that they had flaine five or fixe hundred Morfes on the North fide.

Hee tarried with mee till the feuen and twentieth of Iuly : now feeing no beaftes the loofe of 50 did come on Land, because the Ice did hang about the Coue, he went to the North side againe: the ship, to but the same day after he was gone, they began to come on Land.

The next day following, being the eight and twentieth, wee flue about eightie, and tooke Cable vnto) their Blabber and Teeth. Then they began to come on shoare agains the thirtieth day : at what they may time Maiter Bonner was come into the Coue to feeke his Anchors. Then his men came on fhoare, little vere it and we flue about one hundred and fiftie beaft more. But there rofe a fforme at South-eaft, that out at eafe: obrought in such a surge, that it washed aboue sixtie beasts into the Sea; so that most of them therwise, if a were loft.

The next day being the last of Iuly, Master Welden and Master Iones came to the Coue with would runne about twelue men, being all very wearie. For they had left the Shallop in a Coue on the North- out end for 60 west fide of the Iland, and came over Land. Then to worke wee went on all hands, and placed end, that is alour Coppers. And by the fift day of August we had ended our businesse; and the ship came from together; but the North fide into the Coue.

is faid to bee breught to a Bitter. The Bitter end is that end of the Cable within boord at the Bitts,

August.

Note.

The fixt of August, I tooke the Skiffe and seuen men to fetch the Shallop to the Coue, that Included August, a cone the Saint and the weff fide of the Hand, the last of July. When I Matter treases may set, in a course, on the too came to the place, confidering I was never the North fide, where we commonly make our Voycame to the place, connecting a was nected the avoid how to the third was cour voyage, and also defired by Mafter Welden, if I could goe, to doe so, I went thirther, and found about age, and an outrieu by matter resident, it is a good headed beafts for Teeth, as euer I faw. Wee had no more Launes to kill fue and fortice as good headen Dealts for 1 eeth, as even 11 aw. we en use no more Launces to kill the m with all, but two, I tooke one, and a luthe fellow that was our Cooper had the other; we en m with air, but two,1 tooke one, and a mine tenery that was not cooper had the other; we had not killed past ten but his Lance brake. Then I she all the rest in lesse then two houres, had not knied part ten tur in Lance van Ayby a West Sunne wee came aboord the Paul

ith them.

The eight day, wee got the Southermost Point of the Iland: where wee rid all that day. IO In ergnt day, wee got the additional to the state of the I neir Skille from their kong pours terme, and we manned our pour content in er againe; out then rofe fuch a fogge, that we had like to have loft both our Boats and men; but they got to the flip

ame with much acou.

The ninth day, it was calme; but wee had such a fogge, that wee could not see two Cables length from the ship. And about eight of the Clocke at night, wee lost our Skiff-

together.

The tenth day, we had a little Wind at North-west and by West. Then seeing no amend-In eventually, we need about fixe of the flip of Hull behind vs in the lland, and about fixe of the Clocke fet layle for England, and arrued fafely at London the last of August, 1609. Bleffed

A Voyage performed to the Northwards, Anno 1603, in a flip of the burthen of fif-tie tunnes, called the Grace, and fet forth at the cost and charges of the Wor-shipfull Francis Cheris. Written by William GORDEN; being the first Voyage to Cheric Iland; which came to my hands since the former (or rather later Voyages) were in the Prefle.

30 He ship being readie the tenth of Aprill, whereof was Master Siephen Bennet, and for Factor and Ouer-feer William Gorden , our Directions from the faid Merchant, were first to proceed to Cola, and there to make sale of such goods as we had, and to take in fuch other as the Countrey of Lappia did affoord, and then to proceed vpon some Discourie, Wherefore omitting our fourney to Cola, as a matter of small importance, being fo well knowne before, after our Affaires ended, we were readie to proceed forward. But our men not being hired thereunto would have refused, if there had not beene made an agreement by meanes of loss Logan, who was to lye there as Factor for Master Cherie, the Master and my felies partly with promifes, partly with gites, And thus fetting forward the fixt of August, 40 from the River of Cola, being determined to have fayled into 80, degrees of latitude, if nothing did hinder vs;or if we did not light vpon some landsour determination was hindered by meanes of meeting with an Iland, and likewile the yeere being farre fpent, keeping our course from the West end of Kilden, to the Ilands of Ward bonse, which wee passed the tenth of August with little wind; then directing our course North North-west, the wind at South-west easie wind, so that the eleventh day we did reckon our felues to have fayled twentie leagues North-west. The twelfth day, it was most part calme and foggie. The thirteenth day, it was cleere, and the wind at South, and we had sayled twentie two leagues North North-west. The sourteenth day, the at south, and we mad a you treated the form of the firme day being thicke and foggie, we had thought wee had seene Land about foure of the clocke in the after-noone, bearing 50 from vs West North-west, and North-west by West, but sayling towards it three houres, keeping still his forme, and not altering till the wind increasing, caused it to fade away (for it was no other then a banke of fogges) after we had sayled three leagues changing our course, we sayled then fifteene dayes twentie leagues, North-west and by North, still having close weather, that we could not make any observation. The fixteenth day in the morning, at two of the clock, we did see two great high Hils, which did seeme to vs about the Clouds, and did seeme very neere, but we found it otherwise for sayling towards it, we found it further then we did expect, for it was fixe of the clocke at night before wee could come neere vnto the Land, where wee anchored in thirtie fathomes. In which time we could not fayle leffe then eighteene leagues North and by West. That night our Master knowing, better what did belong vinto those Assaires, 69 would not fuffer the Boat to goe aland till the morning: which was the feuenteenth day of Augut, and before our going aland, the Master caused ashanke of Lines to bee shot for, to toy for hih, and then he and my lelfe with foure of our Company went aland. First, vpon a little lland meere adjoyning, where we had much adoe to get to our Boat againe, by reason of the steepnes

of the Rockes : then we went on thouse voon the Mayne, where at our comming on Land, wee did fee two Foxes, one White, the other Blacke. Thus spending most part of the day, wee returned aboord our ship without any profit : only one of our men tooke vp a piece of Lead, and I found a piece of a Morfes Tooth, by which we perceined that the Sea Morfes did vie thither. but the time for that yeere was palt, for we did fee none. After our comming abourd, having haled the Line, we found nothing but one but fish thereon, wherefore prefently weighing Anchor we fayled West to see if we could have any true observation, the next day which wee had and found our felues to bee in 74. degrees 30, minutes, The fame day directing our course for London where we arrived the tenth of September, by Gods helpe, in health and fafetie.

CHAP. XIIIL

Diners Voyages and Northerne Disconeries of that worthy irreconcrable Disconerer Mafter HENRY HVDSON. His Discouerie toward the North Pole, fet forth at the charge of certaine Wor hipfull Merchants of London, in May 1607. Written partly by IOHN PLAYSE one of the Company, and partly by H. Hv D S O N.



Non 1607. Aprill the nineteenth, at Saint Ethelburge in Bilhops Gate ffreet . did communicate with the reft of the Parishioners these persons Seamen, purposing to goe to fea fouredayes after, for to discouera Passage by the North Pole tolds. pan and China. Fuft, Henry Hudfon Mafter. Secondly, William Colines his Mate. Thirdly, lames Young. Fourthly; lohn Colman. Fiftly, lohn Cooke. Sixtly, lames Benbery, Seventhly, James Showston, Eightly, John Pleyce, Ninthly, Thomas Baxter.

Tenthly, Richard Day. Eleventhly, I ames Knight, Twelfthly, John Hadfon a Boy. Tentity, Kebara Day, Lettenkuy, sames Angas, 1 wentiny, som sinajon a Doy.

The first of May 1607, we weyed Anchor at Grangfords and on Tuesday the fixe and twentieth day in the motning, we made the Hes of Shotland, and at noone we were in 60. degrees 12. The Hessef minutes, and fixe leagues to the Eastward of them : the Compasse had no variation. We had fix - Shelland. tie four fathomer at our founding, blacke, ozie, fandir, with some yellow shels. Our ship made No variation, more way then we did suppose. On Saturday the thirdeth of May, by our observation we were minutes in 61. degrees 11. minutes, This day I found the Needle to incline 79. degrees winder the Ho-The inclinity. rizon. For foure dayes space we made very little way by contrary winds.

On Thursday the fourth of June, we were by our observation still in 61. degrees and 14. mi- Needle. nutes, eight and twentie or thirtie leagues from the Norther part of Shotland: the Land bearing by our Accompt East and by North off vs, I found variation in fine degrees Westerly. The seuenth of June, wee were in 63. degrees 25. minutes. The eighth, all the fore-moone 61.degrees 27.

we had a fresh gale Southerly; we steeted away North and by West, and by observation we were minutes. in 64. degrees 27. minutes.

The elementh, wee faw fixe or feuen Whales neere our shippe: wee were in sixtie feuen degrees thirtie minutes. About fine of the clocke, the winde came vp at North-east and by Eaft; wee steered away North North-west with a fresh gale all the night at East. Thetwelfth, the winde was at East North-east, a stiffe gale, wee steered away as afore, and accounted wee had runne by this day noone thirtie leagues. In the after-noone wee steered away North and by West fitteene leagues, all the night prooued a great fogge with much wind.

The thirteenth, betweene one and two in the morning, we saw some Land on head of vs. and fome Ice: and it being a thicke fogge, we fleered away Northerly, and hauing much wind wee 10 flood away South and by East, fixe or eight leagues. Our sayle and shroudes did freeze, At eight in the morning it cleered up, the wind being at North-east and by East, with much wind wee were hardly able to maintayne a fayle. This was a very high Land, most part covered with Snow. The neather part was vncourred. At the top it looked reddish, and vnderneath a blackish Clay, with much Ice lying about it. The part which we saw when wee cast about, trended East and West: And the Norther part which we saw, trended North-east and by North, and Northeast: and the length which wee saw was nine leagues; wee saw much Fowle. Also wee saw a Whaleclose by the shoare. We called the Head-land which we saw, Towngr Cape; and necreit Young Cape. standeth a very high Mount like a round Castle, which wee called, the Mount of Gods Mercie. The Mount of All the after-noone, and all the Ecuening itrained. At eight in the Ecuening we call about, and Gods mosic. 60 feered all night North and by West, and sometimes North North-west.

The fourteenth, being neere the Land we had Snow. At foure in the morning, the wind, vering Northerly, we cast about and stood South-east and by South. This day wee had much wind and raine, we shorted sayle being neere the Land. The sifteenth, in the morning it blowed so much wind at North-east, that wee were not able to maintayne any sayle, wee then strooke a Ccc 2

hull, and let our ship drive, wayting for a fitter wind; this night was very much raine. The fixteenth, was much wind at North-east. The feuenteenth, we fet fayle at noone, we steered away East and by South, and East South-east. The eighteenth, in the afternoone a fine gale Southeast, which toward the Eeuening increased, and we steered North-east three Watches, twelve lesgues. The nineteenth we steered away North North-east fixteene leagues. At nome wee had raine with fogge, From twelue to foute we steered North North-east eight leagues, and did account our selves in seventie degrees neerest hand : purposing to see whether the Land which we made the thirteenth day, were an Illand or part of Graneland. But then the fogge increased very thicke with much wind at South, which made vs alter our courfe, and to shorten our fayle. and we fleered away North-east. Being then as we supposed, in the Meridian of the same land, 10 hauing no observation since the elementh day, and lying a bull from the fifteenth to the sementary haung no onernation innee the execution way, and ying a man from the interest to the telephene the property of the South-well. This day were faw three Whales neere our ship, and hauing steered away North-cast almost one watch shue leagues, the Sea was grownecuery way : we improsed wee were thwart of the North-east part of that Land which we made the threemsh day, and the current fetting to wind-ward. The reason that mooned vs we small the time terms to the time to gale of wind, we steered away North-east vntill the next day at noone, and sayled in that course

mer comt.

tolye theother way.

Land not couered with

The twentieth, all the morning was a thicke fogge with the winde at South : wee steered 20 North-east till noone. Then we changed our courfe, and steered away North North-east, hoping for an open Sea in our course to fall with the bodie of Newland. This day at two in the afternoone it cleered vp. and wee faw the Sunne, which wee had not feene fince the second of this Land on their moneth. Hauing steered North North-east, two watches and an halfe, fifteene or fixteene leagues wee faw Land on our Larboord, about foure leagues off vs, trending as wee could phoffe North-east and South-west. We steered away East North-east, the wind at South a good gale, but reasonable cleere; wee faw many Birds with blacke backes, and white besties in forme much *Toloofe,is to like a Ducke: we saw also many pieces of Ice driving at the Sea. We * loofed for one and went heepeclofeto roomer for another. And this morning about foure, a thicke fogge we faw a head of vs.

The one and twentieth, in the morning we fleered North-eaft, and East North-east two wat- 30 ches, fiue or fixe leagues. Then it grew thicke fogge. And we cast about, and steered North-east and East North-east two watches, fixe leagues, finding wee were embayed. The wind came at * To tacke the East South-east a little gale: we * tacked about and lay South. All this night was a thicke fog thip, is to bring with little wind, East we lay with the stemme.

The two and twentieth, in the morning it elected up, being calme about two or three of the clocke : after we had a prettie gale, and we steered away East and by North three leagues, Our observation was in 72. degrees 38. minutes, and changing our course, we steered North-east, the wind at South-east a prettie gale. This morning when it cleared vp, we saw the Land, trending neere hand East North-east, and West South-west, esteeming our selves from it ewelve leagues. It was a mayne high Land, nothing at all covered with fnow and the North part of that 40 mayne high Land was very high Mountaynes, but we could fee no fnow on them. We accounted by our observation the part of the mayne Land, lay neerest hand in 73. degrees, The many fogs and calmes with contrary winds, and much Ice neere the shoare, held vs from farther Discovery of it. It may bee objected against vs as a fault, for haling so Westerly a course. The chiefecause that moved vs thereunto, was our defire to fee that part of Groneland, which (for ought that we know) was to any Christian vnknowne : and wee thought it might as well have beene open Sea as Land, and by that meanes our passage should have beene the larger to the Pole : and the hope of having a Westerly wind , which would be to vs a landerly wind if wee found Land, And considering wee found Land contrarie to that which our Cards make mention of; we accounted our labour so much the more worth. And for ought that wee could see, it is like to bee a good so Land, and worth the feeing.

On the one and twentieth day, in the morning while we fleered our course North North-east, we thought we had embayed our felues, finding Land on our Larboord, and Ice vpon it, and many great pieces of Drift Ice : we steered away North-east, with diligent looking out every cleare for Land, having a defire to know whether it would leave vs to the East, both to know the bredth of the Sea, and also to shape a more Northerly course. And considering wee knew no name given to this Land , wee thought good to name it, Hold with bope, lying in 73. degrees of latitude.

The Sunne was on the Meridian on the South part of the Compaffe, neerest hand. Heere is The Land of to bee noted that when we made The Mount of Gods Mercie, and Toungs Cape, the Land was 60 Hold with Hope conered with inow for the most part, and extreame cold, when wee approached neere it : But this Land was very temperate to our feeling. And this likewise is to be noted, that being two dayes without observation; notwithstanding, our lying a hull by reason of much contrary wind, yet our observation and dead reckoning were within eight leagues together, our shippe beeing

before vs eight leagues. This night vntill next morning prooued little Winde. The three and swentieth, in the morning we had an hard gale on head of vs. with much ravne that fell in very great drops, much like our Thunder showers in England; wee tacked about and thood East Northerly with a short fayle, to our feeling it was not to cold as before we had it. It

was calme from moone to three of the clocks with fogge. After the winde came vo at East and East South east, we steered away North raft with the fogge and rayne. About seven or eight of the clocke, the winde increased with extreame fogge, wee steered away with short sayle East North-east, and sometimes East and by North. About twelve at mid-night, the wind came vp at South-weft, we steered away North, being reasonable cleere weather.

The four and twentieth, in the morning about two of the clocke, the Mafters mate thought A mayne high he faw Land on the Larboard, trending North North-west Westerly, and the longer we ranne Land North, the more is fell away to the West, and did thinke it to bee a mayne high Land. This day the wind being Westerly, we steered away North, and by observation wee were in 73 degrees nearest hand. At noone we changed our course, and steered away North and by East, and at our last observation, and also at this, we found the Meridian all Leeward on the South and by West,

Westerly part of the Compasse, when we had sayled two Watches eight leagues. The fine and twentieth, the wind feanted and came vp at North North-west, we lav Northeast two Warches & leagues. After the wind became variable betweene the North-east and the North, we fleered away East and by North, and sometimes East, we had thicke forge. About noone three Granpasses played about our thippe. This After-noone the wind vered to the East and South-east, we haled away North and by East. This night was close weather, but small fogge (we vie the word Night for distinction of time, but long before this the Sunne was alway about the Horizon, but as yet we could never fee him you the Meridian North.) This Night being by our accompt in the Latitude of 75 degrees, we saw small flockes of Birds, with blacke Backes and white Bellies, and long speare Tayles. We supposed that Land was not farre Land not farre off, but we could not diferie any, with all the diligence which we could vie, being fo close wea- off. ther, that many times we could not fee fixe or feuen leagues off.

. The fixe and twentieth, in the morning was close weather, we had our wind and held our course agafore. This day, our observation was 76. degrees 28. minutes, and we had Birds of the 76. degrees 28. 30 fame fort as afore, and diversother of that colour, having red Heads; that we faw when we first minutes. made the Mount of Gods Mercy in Greenland, but not fo many. After we fleered away North and by East : two VVatches 10 leagues, with purpose to fall with the Souther part of Newland, accounting our felues 10. or 12. leagues from the Land. Then wee flood away North-east one VVatch fine leagues.

The feuen and twentieth, about one or two of the clocke in the morning we made Newland, Greenland or being cleere weather on the Sea; but the Land was couered with fogge, the Ice lying very thick Newland discoall along the shoare for 15. or 16. leagues which we faw. Having faire wind wer coasted it in a uered. very pleasing smooth sea, and had no ground at an hundred fathoms, foure leagues from the shoare.

This day at noone, wee accounted we were in 78 degrees, and we stood along the shoare. This 78.Degrees, 40 day was so foggie, that we were hardly able to see the Land many time, but by our account we were neare Vosel Hooke. About eight of the clocke this Ecuening, we purposed to shape our votel Hooke. course from thence North-west. Heere is to bee noted, that although we ranne along neere the shoare, we found no great cold, which made vs thinke, that if we had beene on shoare the place is Temperate temperate. Holding this North-west course, about ten of the clocke at night, we saw great store ayre. of Ice on head off vs, bearing Wester off vs; which we could not goe cleere off with the foresavd course. Then we tack about, and stood away betweene the South and the South-east, as much desirous to leave this Land as we were to fee it.

The eight and twentieth, was a hard gale of wind all the fore-noone betweene the South and the South-west. We shaped our course , we did it to bee farther from

so the Ice and Land. It pleased God that about twelve of the clocke this night it cleered vp, and we found that we were betweene the Land and the Ice; Vogel Hooke then bearing nearest hand East off vs. Then we tacked about, and stood in for the shoare, having Sea-roome between the Ice and the Land. The nine and twentieth, at foure in the morning the wind at North-east, a pretie gale, we thought best to shorten our way, so we tacked about and stood North North-west, the wind a little increasing. About twelue at noone, we faw Ice a head off vs; we cast about again, and flood away East South-east with very much wind, so that we shortned our tayles for the space of two Watches. Then about eight this Eeuening, we strucke a Hull, and it proued the hardest florme that we had in this Voyage. The thirtieth, in the morning was flormie; about noone it ceased, at seven in the Ecuening it proved almost calme.

60 The first of July, all the fore-moone the wind was at South-east, we stood North-east for the shoare, hoping to finde an open Sea betweene the shoare and the Ice. About moone wee luly. were embayed with Ice, lying betweene the Land and vs. By our observation we were in 78.degrees 42.minutes, whereby we accounted we were thwart of The great Indraught. And to 78.degrees 42. free our selues of the Ice, we steered betweene the South-east and South, and to the Westward, as minutes.



we could have fea; And about fix, this Ecuening it pleased God to give vs cleere weather; and we we could nature that are into the Inlet, being almost a Bay, and enuironed with very high Mountaynes, with low Land lying betweene them; wee had no ground in this Bay at an hundred fatayine, with now harm young never ever, we fleered away West, the wind at South-call and calme, and found all our Ice on the Norther shoare, and a cleare Sea to the Southward,

The second, it pleased God to give vs the wind at North-east, a faire gale, with cleere wedthe recond, it present also to give ve the want as too trace, where there wester, the fee being to the Northward off ve and the weather short, and an open Sea to the South. there are being to the reactivation of reactive and the source with till swelte of the clocke; having fayled in that course 10.leagues, and finding the Ice to fall from es to the led in that courie 10.leagues, and moung the see to last from to the thankes to God, who marvellously preferred vs from to many dargers, among f to hige a quantitie of Ice and Fogge. We steered away North-west, hoping to be free from Ice, we had ob-73. Degrees 56. femation 78. degrees 56. minutes, we fell with Ice againe, and trended it as it hay betweene the West and South south-east. The third, we had observation 78. degrees 33.minutes. This day Manuer. West and south rough frozen, it was fearching cold, we also trended the Ice, not knowing when

the Inler. 77. degrees 30.

78.degrees. The end of

A Blacke and o

the Sache.

pen Sea.

Much Drift-

Many Scales.

The fourth, was very cold, and our shroudes and sayles frozen, we found we were farre in the and invited in the wind being at North, we beare up and flood South-South-eath, and South and South west by West till ten this night. The fift, was very much wind at North Easterly : at twelve we strooke a Hull, having brought our selves neare the mouth of the Inlet.

The fixth, in the morning the wind was asbefore, and the Sea growne. This morning we 10 came into a very Greene Sea, we had our observation 77.degrees 30 minutes. This after noone the wind and Sea affwaged. About foure of the clocke we fee fayle, and steered North-west and by West, the wind being at North North-east. This day proued the clearest day we had long before. The feuenth, at foure in the morning was very cleare weather, and the fairest Morning rest hand, and out of the Saste. We found we were compassed in with Land and Ice, and were againe entred into a Blacke Sea, which by proofe we found to be an open paffage. Now having againe entree into a biserge oes, which by proofe we sould to be an open panages arow muning the wind at North North-east, we fleered away South & by East, with purpose to fall with the Southermost part of this Land : which we saw, hoping by this meane, either to defray the charge of the Voyage, or elle, if it pleased God in time to gue vs a faire wind to the North-east, to is 10 tisfie expectation. All this day and night afterward proped calme.

The eight, all the fore-noone proued calme, and very thicke fogge. This morning we saw many peeces of Drift-wood drine by vs, we heated out our Boate to ftop a leake, and mended our riggings. This day wee faw many Seales, and two Fishes which we judged to bee Sea-horses, or Morfes. At twelue, this night we had the winde at East and by South, wee stood away

The ninth, all the fore-noone was little wind at South-east, with thicke fogge. This day we were in amongst Ilands of Ice, where we saw many Seales.

The tenth, in the morning was foggie, afterward it proued cleere, we found we were compaffed with Ice enery way about vs; wee tacked about, and flood South and by Weff, and South 40 South-west one Watch fine leagues, hoping to get more Sea-roome, and to stand for the Northeast, we had the wind at North-west.

From hence it feemethitta-

The eleventh, very cleere weather, with the winde at South South-east, we were come out of the Blue Sea into our Greene Sea againe, where we faw Whales. Now having a fresh gale of tenour of area wind at South South eaft, it behooted mee to change my courfe, and to fayle to the North-eaft, by the Souther end of Newland. But being come into a Greene Sea, praying God to direct mee, I Notes.

Range and Greene fleered away North ten leagues. After that, we law Ice on our Larboord, we fleered away Eaft and by North three leagues, and left the Ice behind vs. Then we steered away North till noone. This day wee had the Sunne on the Meridian South and by West, Westerly, his greatest height 79-degrees 17. was 37.degrees 20. minutes. By this observation we were in 79, degrees 17. minutes, we had a 50 fresh gale of wind and a smooth sea, by meanes whereof our ship had out-runne vs. At ten this Ecucaing cleere weather, and then we had the company of our troublefome neighbours Ice with fogge. The wind was at South South-west. Heere we saw plentie of Seales, and we supposed Beares had beene heere, by their footing and dung vpon the Ice. This day, many of my Compa-Sick of Beares nie were ficke with eating of Beares fielh the day before vnfalted.

The twelfth, for the most part was thicke fogge, we steered betweene South and by East, and South South-east 2. . leagues, to cleere vs of the Ice. Then we had the wind at South, we steered till noone North-east fine leagues. This morning we had our shrouds frozen. At noone by our accompt we were in 80, degrees, being little wind at West South-west, almost calme with thicke fogge. This after-noone we steered away North, and sometimes North-east. Then we faw Ice a head off vs, we cast about and stood South-east, with little wind and fogge. Before we 60 call about by meanes of the thicke fogge, we were very neere Ice, being calme, and the Sea fetting on to the Ice, which was very dangerous. It pleased God at the very instant to give vs a small gale, which was the meanes of our deliverance, to him be praife therefore. At twelve this night,

it cleered up, and out of the top William Collins our Boat-Iwaine law the Land, called Newland or by the Hellanders, bearing South South-west twelve leagues from vs.

The thirteenth, in the Morning the wind at South and by East, a good gale, we cast about and which the Hole food North-east and by East, and by observation we were in 80, degrees 22, minutes. This day landers had we faw many Whales. This fore-noone proued cleere weather, and we could not fee any figne of made a little Difcouerie by Ice out of the top. Betweene noone and three of the clocke, we steered away North-east and by Rerents, as be-East five leagues, then we saw Ice on head off vs, we steered East two Glasses one league, and could fore is delivenot be cleare of the Ice with that courfe. Then we freeted away South, east two leagues 1, after red, but neiwe favled East and by North, and East foure leagues; till eight the next morning.

The foureteenth, in the morning was calme with fogge. At nine the wind at East, a small nor to exact, gale with thicke fogge, we steered South-east and by East, and running this course we found not first sabeour Greene Seasgaine, which by proofe we found to be freelt from Ice; and our Azure Blue Sea fore is obserto be our Icie Sea. At this time we had more Birds then we viually found, At noone being a wed of Sir H. thicke forge, we found our felues neere Land, bearing East off vs; and running farther we found Willam a Bay open to the West and by North Northerly, the bottome and sides thereof being to our Discouries fight very high and ragged Land. The Norther fide of this Bayes mouth being high land, is a finding the small Hand, the which we called Collins Cape, by the name of our Boat-swaine, who first saw it. Whale and In this Bay we faw many Whales, and one of our company having a Hooke and Line over-board Morfe Lenenis, to trie for Fish, a Whale came under the Keele of our ship, and made her held, yet by Gods mer- they also ento trie for Fifth, a Whale came vincer the Accre of our imp, and made her neta, yet by Sous met-terloped.

20 cie we had no harme, but the lofte of the hooke and three parts of the line. At a South-well Green Sastie-Sunne from the North-west and by North, a flood set into the Bay. At the mouth of this Bay est of Ice, and we had founding thirtie fathoms, and after fixe and cwentie fathoms, but being farther in, we the Blue Sta had no ground at an hundred fathoms, and therefore judged it rather a Sound then a Bay. Be- Icie. tweene this high ragged, in the swampes and vallies lay much snow. Here wee found it hot. Whale danger!
On the Souther side of this Bay, lye three or four small llands or Rocker.

In the bottome of this Bay, John Colman my Mate, and William Collins my Boat-swaine, with A Sound is a two others of our company went on shoare, and there they found and brought aboord, a payre of greater and Morfes teeth in the jaw, they like wife found Whales bones, and fome dofen or more of Deeres desperin-Hornes, they faw the footings of Beafts of other forts, they also faw Rote-geefe, they faw much draught then a 30 drife Wood on the shoare, and found a streame or two of Fresh water. Here they found it hot on Hearberond

the shoare, and dranke water to coole their thirst, which they also commended. Here we found &o.degreet, the want of a better Ship-boate. As they certified me, they were not on the shoare past halfe an houre, and among other things brought aboord a Stone of the Countriey. When they went from vs it was calme, but prefently after we had a gale of wind at North-east, which came with the Flood with fogge. We plyed too and againe in the Bay waiting their comming; but after they came aboord we had the wind at East and by South a fine gale, we minding our Voyage, and the time to performe it, fleered away North-eaft, and North North-eaft. This inight proued cleere, and we had the Sunne on the Meridian, on the North and by East part of the Compasse, from the vpper edge of the Horizon with the Croffe-staffe, we found his height 10. degrees 40.minutes, grees 40.minutes, green 40

staffe from the Center in the Eye. From a North Sunne to an East Sunne, we sayled betweene mid-night, North and North North-east, eight leagues.

The fifteenth, in the morning was very cleere vveather, the Sunne shining vvarme, but little wyind at East Southerly. By a South-east Sunne we had brought Collins Cape to beare off vs South-east, and we saw the high Land of Newland, that part by vs Discouered on our starboord. eight or ten leagues from vs, trending North-east and by East, and South-west and by West, eighteene or twentie leagues from vs to the North-east, being a very high Mountaynous land, like ragged Rockes with fnow betweene them. By mine account, the Norther pare of this Land which now vve faw, firetched into \$1.degrees. All this day proued cleere vveather, little \$1.degrees. Wind, and reasonable yvarme.

50 The fixteenth, in the morning warme and cleere weather, the wind at North, This morning we faw that vve vvere compassed in with Ice in abundance, lying to the North, to the North-vvest, the East and South-east, and being runne toward the farthest part of the Land by vs disco-Landsstreetuered, which for the most part trendeth nearest hand North-east and South-west, vvce saw inginto 82.demore Land iowning to the fame, trending North in our fight, by meanes of the cleernesse of the grees. vveather, ftretching farre into 82. degrees; and by the bowing or shewing of the skie much farther. Which when I first faw, I hoped to have had a free Sea betweene the Land and the Ice, and meant to have compassed this Land by the North. But now finding by proofe it was vipossible, by means of the abundance of Ice compating vs about by the North, and joyning to the land, and They re untel

fo feeing God did bleffe vs with a faire wind to fayle by the South of this Land to the North-taff, we returned, bearing up the Helme, minding to hold that part of the Land, which the Hollerders had discouered in our fight, and if contrary vyindes should take vs, to Harbour there, and to trie what we could finde to the charge of our Voyage, and to proceed on our Discouerie, as soone as God should bleffe vs with Winde. And this I can affure at this present, that betweene 78. de-

grees and 1. and 82. degrees by this way there is no passage: but I thinke this Land may bee grees and 7, and 62, degrees by this way since a mo panage, out a visite time beam may bee profitable to those that will aduenture it. In this Bay before poken of, and about this coaff, we Abundance of faw more abundance of Seales then we had feen any time before (wimming in the water, At law more annual action of the wind at North, we were thwart of College Cape, standing noone, this day nating a time gate of white a clocke the Cape beare. North-eaft off vs. From thence I fet our course West South-west, with purpose to keepe in the open Sea free from Ice, and layled in that course 16. leagues. At ten this night we steered away South-west, with the wind at North a hard gale, untill eight the next morning 18, leagues.

the wind at North a nare gase, vnon eight are the Aroth; at eight, we altered our course, and The seuenteenth, in the morning a good gale at North; at eight, we altered our course, and steered away South till eight in the Ecuening, and ranne 12, leagues. This day proud reasons 10 feered away south the eight entire morning the wind encreased at South and by be elected and warms. The organization in the monthly proved clofe weather, little fogge, and

The nineteenth, at eight in the morning the wind at South, with thicke fogge, we steered South-eaft 4. leagues till noone: then the wind vered more large; wee fleered South-eaft and by Eaft 4, leagues till foure: then were vered shere, and steered East and by South Easterly, 15. leagues, till eight the next morning. This day after the morning proued reasonable clerre

The twentieth, in the morning little wind: at eight this morning wee faw Land ahead of The experience in the mortaling actor while a second from vs 12. leagues, being parcof New 20 land. It is very high mountainous Land; the highest that we had seene vatill now. As we sayled neere it, we saw a Sound ahead of vs, lying East and west. The Land on the Norther side of this Sounds mouth, trendeth neerest hand West North-west, and East South-east 12. leagues, in our fight being 10, leagues from vs. And the Land on the Souther fide being 8.0r to leagues in our light; at this time trendeth South South-east, and North North-west; trom eight to noone was calme. This day by observation we were in 77. degrees 26. minutes. On the Norther side of the mouth of this Inlet lie three Hands, not farre the one from the other, being very high mountainous Land. The farthest of the three to the North-west, hath source very high Mounts like heapes of Corne. That lland next the Inlets mouth, hath one very high Mount on the like heapes of Corne. And Hand Heat the America mount, man, All this day after the mor- 30 ning, and all night proued calme, enclining rather to heate then cold. This night wee had fome

The one and twentieth, all the fore-noone calme; at foure in the after-noone we had a small gale of wind at South-South-east, with fog; we steered away East to stand in with the Land, and layled 3. leagues vntill mid-night: then the wind came at North-east, we cast about, and fteered South 10. leagues till eight the next morning. The two and twentieth, at eight in the morning much wind at East, and variable, with short sayle wee steered 3. leagues South and by East: then came downe very much wind; wee strooke a hull. All this after-moone and night,

The three and twentieth, all the fore-noone was very much wind at South, with raine and 40 fogge. At foure this after-noone wee faw Land , bearing North-eaft of vs 6. leagues from vs. Then we had the wind at South South-west; wee steered away South-east, and South-east and by East 4. leagues, the Sea being very much growne. We accounted we had hulled North-west by East 4, 1850-29, leagues; and North 3, leagues. Then fearing with much wind to be fee on a lee shoare, we tackt about, and made our way good West and by North, halfe a point Northerly, all this night with much wind.

The foure and twentieth, in the morning much wind as afore, and the Sea growne. This morning wee strooke our mayne Top-mast to eate our ship, and sayled from the last Equening eight to this noone 15. leagues West and by North halfe a point Northerly. From twelue to eight, 6. leagues as afore, with the wind at South and by West: at eight we tackt about with 50 the winde at South South-west, and lay South-east and by East, with much winde, and the

The fine and twentieth, was a cleere morning we fet our mayne Top-mast, we saw Land bearing North of vs, and under our Lee, we fayling South-east and by East. Then the wind scanted: we cast about, and lay South-west and by West a leagues till noone. Then it began to ouer-cast, and the wind to Cantagaine: we cast about, and lay South-east and by South, the wind at Southwest and by West, and sayled in that course 3, leagues till soure in the after-moone. Then the wind feated againe, and we fayled 3. leagues South. Now, feeing how contrarie the winde proued, to doe the good which weedefired this way; I thought to proue our fortunes by the West once againe: and this Eeuening at eight, wee being the latitude of 78. with the better, 60 and from Land 15. leagues, which leagues part whereof beare from the North-east to the East off vs, we steered away West, with the wind at South-east, and cleere weather.

The fixe and twentieth, all this day proued rayne with thicke fog, and an hard gale of wind at East and by North, and East North-east. From the last Eeuening at eight to this noone, wee ranne 24. leagues : from noone till mid-night 19. leagues, the wind at East and by South : from mid-night till two the next morning, 2. leagues West.

The feuen and twentieth, extreme thicke fog, and little wind at East and by South. Then it proued calme, and the Sea very loftie. Wee heard a great rutte or noise with the Ice and Sea. which was the first Ice we heard or faw fince we were at Colling Cape: the Sea heaving vs Westward toward the Ice. Wee heaved out our Boat, and rowed to towe out our ship farther from the danger; which would have beene to finall purpose, by meanes the Sea went so high; but in this extremitie it pleased God to give vs a small gale at North-west and by West, we steered ac way South-eaft 4. leagues till noone. Here we had finished our Discouerie, if the wind had con- Danger clea-10 tinued that brought vs hither , or if it had consinued calme: but it pleased God to make this ped North-west, and by West wind the meane of our deliverance; which wind wee had not found

common in this Yoyage. God give vs thankfull hearts for fo great deliverance. Here we found Whales Bay. the want of a good ship-boat, as once we had done before at Whales Bay : we wanted also halfe a dozen long Oares to rowe in our ship. Achoone, the day cleered vp, and we saw by the skie Ice bearing off vs: from West South-west to the North and North North-east. Then we had a good gale at West, we steered away South vill foure 7. leagues From foure to fix South 4. leagues. and found by the Icy skie and our neereneffe to Groneland, that there is no paffage that way: which if there had beene, I meant to have made my returne by the North of Groneland to Danie his Streights, and fo for England. Here finding we had the benefit of a Westerly wind , which 20 all this Voyage we had found feant, we aftered our courfe, and fleered to the Eastward, and ran South-east foure leagues. From eight this Equening till noone the next day; East South-east 20. leagues. All this day and night proued very cold, by meanes, as I suppose, of the winds comming off fo much Ice.

The eight and twentieth, very cold, the wind at West, not very foggie. At noone this day we fleered away South-east and by East, and by observation we were 76, degrees 36, minutes. From noone to eight to leagues. Then the wind fcanted to South-east and by South, we steered away East and by North 18. leagues, till the next day noone.

The nine and twentieth, all the fore-moone a thicke fog and wet, the wind at South-east and by East, neerest hand, and raw cold. From noone to soure, wee sayled three leagues East and by 30 North, halfe a point Northerly. Then the wind vered more large, we steered East and by South 8. leagues till twelte at night. At this timet to windward we heard the rutte of Land : which I knew to be fo, by the colour of the Sea. It was extreme thicke fog, fo that we could hardly fee a Cables length from our ship. We had ground as fathoms, imall blacke peble stones. Wee founded againe, and had ground at 30. fathomes fmall flories like Beanes, at the next caft no ground at 60. fathomes. I cast about againe, and steered South-west 6. leagues, West and by North two leagues till the next day noone. All this day and night extreme thicke fog,

The thirtieth, all the fore-noone very thicke fog. At noone almost calme : after we had little wind, and fleered North North-west till two: then it cleered vp, so that we could see from vs 2. leagues with the wind at North-west. Then we steered East South-east: after it cleered. At 40 South in the Eeuening, we faw an Iland bearing off vs North-west from vs 5. leagues, and we faw land bearing off vs from vs 7. leagues. We had land likewife bearing off vs from East Southeast, to South-east and by East as wee judged, 10. leagues. Then having the winde at West North-west, we sterred South and by East. It presently proved calme till ten this Eevening: then wee had a little gale at South-west and by West, wee steered away South South-east till twelve this night, and accounted ourselves in 76. from Land 10. leagues: which was the likelieft Land that wee had feene on all the parts of Newland, being playne riggie Land of a meane height, and not ragged as all the reft was that we had feene this Voyage, nor couered with from At twelue this night we faw two Morfes in the Sea neere vs, fwimming to Land. From twelue at night to foure, calme.

50 The one and thirtieth, at foure this morning we had the wind at South-east, we steered South South-west. Then it proued calme, and so continued all the fore-moone. The after-moone wee had the wind at East South-east, we steered South 8. leagues. Then being like to proue much wind, contrarie to our purpole, and finding our fog more thicke and troublesome then before, diuers things necessarie wanting, and our time well nigh spent to doe further good this yeere, I commanded to heare up for our returne for England, and feered away South South-west. And this night proved a hard gale of wind at South-east and by East. Wee were thwart of Cheries Cherielland. Hand the next morning at foure of the clocke, being to windward off vs 5. leagues: knowing we were neere it, we looked out carefully for the same, and it prouing cleere, we saw it, being a very razged Land on the Wester fide, rising like Hey-cockes.

The first of August, a very hard gale of wind at East South-east, 'we shorted sayle, and steered away South South-weft: This night was very foggie, with a hard gale of wind at East and by South, we fleered by our account 27. leagues: and from eight this Equening till the next morning foure, 10. leagues as afore. All this night was very foggie, wet and raw cold.

The fecond, in the morning calme with a thicke fog, cold and flabbie weather. About noone

we had a little gale West and by North, wee steered away as afore. The third, in the morning calme and cleere weather, with a littlegale East and by South, we sayled South South-west: then weehad the wind at South-saft, wee fayled as afore. All this day and night proued close weather, a little fogge at noone, which continued not long. At twelte this night the wind vered to the East and by North, wee held our course South South-west, as afore.

The fifteenth of August, we put into the Iles of Farre, standing in 52. degrees; and the fifteenth of September, I arrived in Tilberie Hope in the Thames,

CHAP. XV.

A second Voyage or Employment of Master Henar Hydson, for finding a passage to the East Indies by the North-east. written by himselfe.

* I haue Robert Inets Lournall alfo for breuitic omitted.

Aprill,

May.

Lewfort.

Heir names employed in this action are as followeth: Henry Hudfon, Master and Pilot; Robert Inst, the Master his Mate; Ludone Arnall; Islan Conte, Boat-Pilot; Robert ' Inst, the Malter his Mate; Leasure Arman; instructions; Philip State, Carpenter; I shin Berns; I ship Branch, Cooke; I shin Aday, I same Straten, Michael Feirer, I benus kilder, Richard Tomfon, Reduction of the Courtes obtained in this bert Rayner, lobs Hudges, and Humfey Gilbs. The couries observed in this 20 Iournall were by a Compasse, that the Needle and the North of the Flye were

directly one on the other.

Anno 1608, the two and twentieth of Aprill, being Friday, we fet fayle at Saint Katherines. and fell downe to Blacke wall.

The twentieth of May, at noone by observation we were in 64. degrees 32.minutes, and at this time and place the Needle declined under the Horizon by the Inclinatory 81, degrees, and wee had a fmooth Sea, by meanes whereof my observation was good.

The one and twentieth, at night thicke fog, wee fayled North North-east, with the wind at Eaft. The zwo and zwentieth, in the fore-noone the winde at South-eaft, wee steered North North-east, as afore: in the after-noone little wind and thicke fog; we accounted vs in 67.de. 30 grees, the Sea smooth, the Needle declined 82. degrees, this night was calme and cleere. The three and twentieth, in the morning the wind was Easterly, we flood North North-East, and North and by East. All the fore-noone was foggie in the after, noone it cleered, and the wind shortned voon vs, we made out way good North all night. The foure and twentieth, the wind at East North-east, and East and by North, we lay as neere as wee could with a full sayle; wee accounted Lowfoot from vs East Northerly, 16, leagues, diffant from vs ; at foure a clocke this after-noone, wee flood all night, as afore.

The fine and twentieth, the wind at East North east, we flood away North as we could lie: all this day was cleere weather, and fearching cold, which cold begunne the one and twentieth day, and then my Carpenter was taken ficke, and to doth yet continue; and three or foure more 40 of our companie were enclining to ticknelle, I suppose by meanes of the cold. All the night it was calme. The fixe and twentieth, cold but cleere weather, the wind betweene Kaft and Eaft North-east, we flood North-easterly till twelpe a clocke at night: then wee had the wind at North-east & North North-east, we stood South-east and East till noone the next day. The seuen and twentieth, cold and drie weather, at noone we had the wind North and North North-west; Wee stood away North-east, and East North-east, as we could, and accounted our selues in 69. degrees 40. minutes, and the Needle enclined, having a smooth Sea, neerest 84. degrees. All night we had wind and weather as afore.

The eight and twentieth, drie cold cleere weather; the wind betweene North North-west Sun s. degrees and North, we made our way good East North-east; wee faw the Sunne on the North Meri- 10 35. minutes at dian about the Horizon c. degrees 35. minutes, All this night we had much wind, as afore, The nine and twentieth, a hard gale at North North-west : by account we ranne from mid-night to noone 21. leagues, East North-east. Wee had the Sunne on the Meridian 5. degrees, the latitude 72. degrees 13. minutes, whereby wee found our ship to have out-runne vs. At mid-night the wind came to South-east: we cast about, and stood East North-east. This day partly clerre weather with some snow. The thirtieth, cold cleere weather, the wind betweene North-east, and East and by North; we went East South-east, and observing, were in 72 degrees 50 minutes. The one and thirtieth, cold and cleere weather: from the last day till this day noone, we flood South-east and by South, in the latitude of 72. degrees 45. minutes.

The first of June, a hard gale at East North-East, with snow: we made our way good South 60 South-east. The second, a hard gale of wind at North-east: towards night, calme with fogge, our course was South-east all day. The third, in the morning we had a fight of the North Cape; Variation west and at a West and by North Sunne, the Cape bore off vs South-west, halfe a point Southerly, being from vs 8. leagues: and observing the variation, I found it to the Westward II. degrees:

and having a smooth Sea, the Needle enclined under the Horizon 84. degrees and a halfe, the Needle inclineerest I could finde. We had the wind at South-west, and wee stood away North-east and by nation & de-Eait. It was cleere weather, and we law Norway Fisher-men at Sea.

The fourth, warme cleere fun-shine, we stood away North-east and by East. Now by Gods halfe. helpe our Carpenter recouered, and made a Mast for our ship-boat, and the companie made a Sayle, we had the Sunne in the light on the North Meridian: his height was s. degrees 40, minutes. Inclination 23. degrees 21. minutes: Poles height 72. degrees 21. minutes. The fift, in the morning calme weather: wee founded, and had 140, fathoms, fand Oze: here wee faw a fwelling Sea fetting North-east and by East, and South-west and by West, with streame-leches: Io and we saw drift wood. After we had wind ; and we sayled and made our way North North-

east: towards night we founded, and found ground at 150. fathoms, fand Oze. This day cleere weather, and not cold. The fixt, wee had cleere weather, the wind being at East North-East, from the last day till this day noone; we shaped our way on divers courses North and by West. in the latitude of 73. degrees 24. minutes. We found that our ship had out-runne vs, founding in 160. fathoms: in the after-noone little wind.

The fewenth, in the morning the wind at South, after at South South-east: from the last day till this day noone, wee accounted our way from divers courses North-east, 15. leagues. This day was close but cleere weather, and we had a good gale of wind at this time. And three dayes before this, our Cooke and one more of our companie were very ficke. In the morning, we had

20 ground at 150, fa: homs, and at night we had no ground at 180. fathoms, which encreated hope. This night we had some show, which continued toure houres: then the wind came at Northeaft and by Eaft with ftorme; and with short fayle we stood North and by West; here the Needle enclined \$6. degrees. I accounted that we were in 74. degrees and a halfe at neerest hand. This 74-degrees night we faw the Sunne on the North Meridian , his height was 7. degrees 40. minutes, which 30. minutes maketh the Poles height 74. degrees 23. mmu es. The eight, from twelve a clocke last night till noone, we accounted our way on divers courfes, North and by East: then our latitude was 74. degrees 28. minutes, and we had no ground at 200. fathoms. In the after-noone the wind came at South-east, and South-east and by East. This day and night wee had cleere weather, and we were here come into a blacke blue Sea.

The minth, cleere weather, the wind came at South-east and by East: from the last day till Sea. this day noone, wee had a good way North-east, in latitude of 75. degrees 29. minutes: then this day notifie, were nite a good way accurately in antibuse to 15. On the 25. In makes; the wee entred into Cee, being the first we faw in this Voyage; courbope was to goe through it, we flood into it, and held our course between North-east, and East North-east, looking for one, and bearing roome for another, till foure in the after-noone : at which time we were so farre in, and the Ice fo thicke and firme ahead, being in it foure or fine leagues, that wee had endangered vs formewhat too farre; wee returned as wee went in , and with a few rubbes of our thip against the Ice ; by eight a clocke this Ecuening wee got free of it. Wee made our way till next day at noone, South-west and by South, 18 leagues: in the middest of this way weehad no ground

at 180. fathoms. The tenth, in the morning hafey weather; but at noone it cleered vp, and 40 then we cast about, and stood away North and by East, the wind being at East South-east, two watches, fine leagues: then we had the wind at East, we cast about, and stood South South-east, and made a South way, fixe leagues. The eleventh, in the morning a hard storme at East, and

The twelfth, in the morning fog, and all day after cleere weather, the wind at South Southwest, we steered East and by North at noone being in the latitude 75 degrees 30.minutes. From noone till foure a clocke, fine leagues East and by North; then we saw Ice ahead of vs, and vnder our Lee trending from the North-west to the North and East of vs: We had founding too, fathorn, greenish Oz: Here we saw divers pieces of drift wood by vs driving, and streame Leeches lying South South-west, and North North-east. We many times saw the like since we saw the 50 North Cape. The thirteenth, cleere weather, the wind at East, we made a South way 6. leagues, two watches: then we caft about, and made a North way one watch 3. leagues 4: At twelve at night, much wind with fog, we strooke shull and layed our ships head to the Southward. The fourteenth, in the fore-noone fog, and our shroudes were frozen: the after-noone was cleere

Sun-shine, and so was all the night. The fifteenth, all day and night cleere fun-shine; the wind at East, the latitude at noone 75. degrees 7. minutes. We held Westward by our account 13, leagues. In the after-noone the Sea was affwaged; and the wind being at East we fee fayle, and stood South and by East, and South South-east as we could. This morning, one of our companie looking ouer boord faw a Mermaid, Mermaide

and calling up some of the companie to see her, one more came up, and by that time shee was seene, and de-6c come cluse to the thips fide, looking earnefly on the men: a little after, a Sea came and ouertur. feribed. ned her: from the Nauill vpward, her backe and breafts were like a womans, (as they say that faw her) her body as big as one of vs; herskin very white; and long haire hanging downe behind, of colour blacke: in her going downe they faw her tayle, which was like the tayle of a Porpose, and speckled like a Macrell. Their names that saw her, were Thomas Hiller and Ro-



The fixteenth, cleere weather, the wind being at East. From the last day till this day noone, we made our way South and by East 9. leagues; and from noon to eight a clocke in the Ecuening, 6. leagues: then we cast about and stood to the Northwards.

The seuenteenth, electe weather, the wind at South-east and by East; from the last day till this day noone, our way was North-east and by East, at noone being in the latitude of 74. degrees 40 minutes. At after-noone we founded, and had ground at \$6.fathom, greene Oze, and our water whitish greene: Here we saw Whales, Porposses, and the Sea full of Fowles: from noone to mid-night North-east and by East we had the Sunne at lowest, on the North and by East. Easterly part of the Compasse : latitude 74. degrees 54. minutes. Sounding we had 92. fathoms

The eighteenth, faire weather, the wind at South-east and by East, from mid-night till this day noone, wee fayled North-east and by East, in the Latitude of 75, degrees 24, minutes, and had ground at ninetie fine fathome Oze, as afore. Heere we had Ice in our fight to the Northward off vs. In the after-noone, having little wind at North-east, we cast about and lay East South-east, and at fixe a clocke, had ground at ninetie fine fathoms and a halfe Oze, as afore, From noone to twelue a clocke at might, our way was South-east, and South-east and by East, and had the Sunne on the Meridian, North and by East halfe a point Eastward. The Sunnes height was eight degrees 40 minutes. Sounding ninetie fathom. All this day, we had Ice on our Larboord trending : and at this time, from the North-west off vs to the East South-east, I have fome reason to thinke there is a Tide or Current setting to the Northwards; the course wee 20 held and the way we made betweene this noone and mid-night Observations, doe make mee

Needles inclination 89.de-

Current.

The nineteenth, faire and warme weather, the sea smooth. Here the Needle inclined under the Horizon 89. degrees and a halfe, being in the Latitude at noone of 75. degrees 22. minutes; Soungrees and a ding wee had ground in an hundred fathom. From twelue a clocke last night till this day at noone, we accounted our way from East and by North to South-east, ten leagues, having Ice alwayes in our fight trending on our Larboord, wee had the winde betweene North, and North North-west. We saw the Sunne at the lowest on the North and by East, halfe a point Easterly, his height was 8. degrees 10. minutes, which maketh the Poles height 74. degrees 56. minutes; Sounding we had ground in one hundred and twentie fixe fathom. From noone to this time, wee accounted our way East and by South, and East South-east, twelve leagues.

The twentieth, faire warme weather, this morning at foure of the clocke, wee had depth one Beares rousing hundred and twentie fine fathom. Heere we heard Beares rouse on the Ice; and we saw upon Store of Seals, the Ice and neare voto it, an incredible number of Seales. We had founding one hundred and fifteen fathom, and after ground at mnetie fine fathomfandie Oze. We had the Sun on the Meridian North and by East, halic a point Easterly; his height was 7. degrees 20. minutes. From twelve a clocke last night, to twelue a clocke this night, our way was made good by our account Southeast and by South, twelve leagues, and South-east, three leagues and a halfe, the Ice alwayes being on our Larboord. The wind this day, betweene North and North-west. The one and twentieth, at foure a clocke in the morning wee founded, and had one hundred 40

and twentie fathome greene Oze, and the Ice bore off vs East, the winde variable; in divers degrees 40,miriation of the Compaffe,

courfes wee made our way good South South-east; our Latitude at noone being 74. degrees 9. minutes, we were haled to the Northward beyond expectation. All this day faire, cleere, and warme weather, and Ice on our Larboord at a North and by East Sunne; being then at lowest. his height was 7. degrees 40. minutes, which made the Poles height 74. degrees 33. minutes. nutes, in 14.

It is neight was yourgees 40 minutes, which made the roles neight /4 uegices 33 minutes.

From the laft day at noone, till twelve a clocke this night, by account of our flips way, we made our way good Eaft North-taft, fixe leagues and a halfe; whereby it doth appears how we were haled to the Northward. Heere wee had ground at one hundred and thirteene fathome,

The two and twentieth, faire cleare weather, the windeat West North-west. At eight a 50 clocke in the Morning, we had ground at one hundred and fifteene fathom, greene Oze. From North to the mid-night to noone, our course was North-east and by East, being in the Letitude of 74. degrees 25-minutes, and we found that our ships way, and our observation were not which had there was carefull heed taken of both. Heere we had Ice a head off vs. trending to the Southdiscely before, east; and all day before Ice on our Larboord. Here we stood South-east fine leagues, then the Ice trended South and by West fixe leagues; we sayled by it, and doubled it by eight a clocke in the Ecuening, and then it bore East off vs. Heere having a smooth sea, the Needle inclined 85, degrees, from eight a clocke to twelue, North and by East Easterly. Then we had the Sunne on the Meridian, North and by East 1. a pount Easterly. The Sunnes height was 7, degrees 45, minutes,

which made the Latitude 74.de rees 43.minutes. The three and twentieth, in the morning thicke fogge, the wind at North North-west. From 60 mid-night till foure a clocke this morning, we fayled North-east fine leagues, and then we were among the Ice; we cast about, and stood two houres South-west, two leagues, and had no ground at one hundred and eightie fathom. Then we cast about againe, and stood East till eight a clocke

two leagues, and then it cleered up, and we had Ice a head off vs. And from North, we flood to South-east, and our shrondes were frozen. Then till noone wee went East and by South, soure leagues, and were neere Ice on our Larboord, in the Latitude of 74. degrees 30. minutes. In the after-moone the wind being at North, wee stood two hourse and a halfe, fine leagues and a halfe; three houres South South-east, fine leagues; one houre South-east and by South, one league and a halfe ; an houre East halfe a league, which brought eight in the Eeuening alwayes Ice on our Larboord. This after-noone, wee had some snow. From eight a clocke to mid-night, South South-well foure leagues, with Ice as afore. We saw the Sunne at the lowest, North Northeaft, his height was 7. degrees 14. minutes, the Poles height 74. degrees 18, minutes.

The foure and twentieth, cleere, but cold and fome fnow, the wind betweene North Northeast, and North-east, from mid-night to foure a clocke, wee stood Southward two leagues, and South-east and by East two leagues. And from some a clocke till noone, South-east Southerly nine leagues, founding we had ground in one hundred and fortie fathome. From noone to three a clocke, we flood South-east and by South three leagues; from three to foure, South-west and by South one league; and had Ice from the North-eaft to the South-eaft off vs. From foure a clocke to eight, we flood South-west two leagues and a halfe, Southward halfe a league, with Ice neere vs vnder our Lead.

The fine and twentieth, eold and cleare, the wind at East South-east; from eight a clocke last night till foure this morning, our way was South and by East, foure leagues and a halfe ; four-20 ding we had ground in eightie fathome, then we had little wind till noone, at East North-east. and the Sunne on the Meridian, on the South-west and by South point of the Compasse, ere it began to fall, wee were in the Latitude of 72. degrees 52.minutes, and had Ice on our Lathoord. and our hope of paffage was gone this way, by meanes of our neareneffe to Nona Zembla, and the abundance of Ice. We had from Noone to eight a clocke in the Ecuening, the wind between North North-east, and North-east, we stood South-east three leagues and a halfe, and had Ice on our Larboord, and thoulding fixtie eight fathome.

The fixe and twentieth, faire Sun-finning weather, and little wind at East North-east. From twelue a clocke at night till foure this morning, we flood Southward two leagues, founding wee had lixtie fixe fathome Oaze, as afore. From foure a clocke to noone, South-east and by South 30 foure leagues, and had the Sunne on the Meridian, on the South-east and by South point of the Compaign in the Latitude of 72. degrees 27 minutes, and had fight of Nona Zembla four or five No passage leagues from vs, and the place called by the Hollanders, Swarz Cliffe, bearing off South-caft. In that way, the after-noone, wee had a fine gale at East North-east, and by eight of the clocke, we had Swar Cliffee brought it to beare off vs East Southerly, and sayled by the shoare a league from it.

The feuen and twestieth, all the fore-noone it was almost calme; wee being two mile from the floare, I fent my Mate Robert Inet, and Iohn Cooke my Boat-fwaine on shoare, with foure o- They goe a thers, to fee what the Land would yeeld that might bee profitable, and to fill two or three theat Caskes with water. They found and brought abourd some Whales Finnes, two Deeres Hornes, and the Dung of Decre, and they told me that they faw Graffe on the shoare of the last yeere, 40 and young Graffe came up amongst it a shaftman long; and it was boggie ground in some places, there are many fireames of Snow water nigh, it was very hot on the shoare, and the snow melted apace, they faw the footings of many great Beares, of Deere, and Foxes. They went from vs at three a clocke in the morning, and came aboord at a South-east Sunne; and at their comming, wee faw two or three companies of Morfes in the fea neere vs swimming, being almost calme. I presently sent my Mate, Ladow the Carpenter, and fixe others a shoare, to a place where I thought the Morfes might come on the shoare, they found the place likely, but found no figne of any that had beene there. There was a Croffe standing on the shoare, much Driftwood and fignes of Fires that had beene made there. They faw the footing of very great Deere and Beares, and much Fowle, and a Foxe; they brought aboord Whale finnes, fome Mosse, Flow-30 ers and certes, and mount rows, and a rowe; they orough another windle minus, none mount, norther formal greene things that did there grow. They brought also two peeces of a Crosse, which they found there. The Summe was on the Mendian on the North North cast, halfe a point Ea-Rerly, before it began to fall. The Sunnes height was 4. degrees 45. minutes, Inclination 22. degrees 22. minutes, which makes the Latitude 72. degrees 22. minutes. There is difagreement betweene this and the last observation ; but by meanes of the cleerenesse of the Sunne, the smoothnesse of the Sea, and the neemesse to Land, wee could not bee deceived, and care was

The eight and twentieth, at four a clocke in the Morning our Boat came aboord, and brought two dozen of Fowle, and some Egges, whereof a few were good, and a Whales sinne; and wee all faw the Sea full of Morfes, yet no fignes of their being on shoare. And in this calme, from 60 eight a clocke last Ecuening, till foure this Morning, we were drawne backe to the Northward, as farre as wee were the last Eeuening at foure a clocke, by a Streame or a Tide; and we chose rather so to drive, then to adventure the losse of an Anchor, and the spoyle of a Cable. Heere our new Ship-boate began to doe vs feruice, and was an incouragement to my Companie, which want I found the last yeere.

which had

578

Riuer and

Iuly.

The nine and twentieth, in the morning calme, being halfe a league from the shoare, the Sea being smooth, the Needle did encline &4. degrees, we had many Morfes in the Sea neere vs. and desiring to find where they came on shoare, wee put to with Sayle and Oares, towing in our Boat, and rowing in our Barke to get about a point of Land, from whence the Land did fall more Easterly, and the Mories did goe that way. VVee had the Sunne on the Meridian on the South and by VVeft point, halie a point to the VVefter part of the Compaffe, in the latitude of 71. degrees 15. minutes. At two a clocke this after-noone we came to anchor in the mouth of a River, where lieth an Iland in the mouth thereof, foure leagues: wee anchored from the Iland in two and thirtie fathomes, blacke fandy ground. There droue much Ice out of it with a in two and there rations so sound, and there were many Morfes fleeping on the Ice, 10 and by it we were put from our Road twice this night; and being calme all this day, it pleafed God at our need to give vs a fine gale, which freed vs out of danger. This day was calme, cleere and hot weather: all the night we rode still.

The thirtjeth, calme, hot, and faire weather, we weighed in the morning, and towed and rowed, and at noone we came to anchor neere the Ile aforefaid in the mouth of the River, and faw very much Ice driving in the Sea, two leagues without vs lying South-east and North-west: and driving to the North-west so fast, that wee could not by twelve a clocke at night fee it out of the top. At the lland where wee rode, lieth a little Rocke, whereon were fortie or fiftie Morfes lying afleepe, being all that it could hold, it being fo full and little. I fent my companie ashoare to them, scauing none aboord but my Boy with mee: and by meanes of their neerenesse alloare to them, reasing more about our my any which they killed, and brought his head abourd; and ere they came abourd they went on the Iland, which is reasonable high and steepe, but sha on the top. They killed and brought with them a great Fowle, whereof there were many, and likewife fome Egges, and in an houre they came aboord. This Ile is two flight-shot ouer in length, and one in breadth. At mid-night our Anchor came home, and wee tayld aground by meanes of the strength of the streame, but by the helpe of Gcd, wee houed her off without hurt. In thort time wee moued our thip, and rode still all night; and in the night wee had little wind at East, and East South-east. VVee had at noone this day an observation, and were in the latitude of 71. degrees 15. minutes.

The first of July, we saw more Ice to Seaward of vs; from the South-east to the North-west, 30 driving to the North-west. At noone it was calme, and we had the Sunne on the Meridian, on the South and by VVest point, halfe a point to the VVesterly part of the Compasse, in the latitude of 71. degrees 24 minutes. This morning I fent my Mate Emeret, and foure of our companie to rowe about the Bay, to fee what Rivers were in the fame and to find where the Morfes did come on land; and to fee a Sound or great River in the bottome of the Bay, which did alwaies fend out a great ftreame to the North wards, against the tide that came from thence : and I found the same in comming in, from the North to this place before this VVhen by the meanes of the great plenty of Ice, the hope of passage betweene Newland and Nona Zembla was taken away; my purpose was by the Vaggats to passe by the mouth of the River Ob, and to double that way the North Cape of Tartaria, or to give reason wherefore it will not be: but being 40 here, and hoping by the plentie of Morfes wee faw here, to defray the charge of our Voyage : and also that this Sound might for some reasons bee a better passage to the East of Noua Zembla, then the Vaggats, if it held according to my hope conceived by the likeneffe it gave : for whereas we had a floud came from the Northwards; yet this Sound or River, did runne fo ftrong, that Brong ream. Ice with the streame of this River was carried away, or any thing elfe against the floud : so that both in floud and ebbe, the ftreame doth hold a ftrong course; and it floweth from the North three houres, and ebbeth nine.

The fecond, the wind being at East South-east, it was reasonable cold, and so was Friday; and the Morfes did not play in our fight as in warme weather. This morning at three of the clocke, my Mate and companie came aboord, and brought a great Derres horne, a white locke of so Deeres haire; foure dozen of Fowle, their Boat halfeladen with drift Wood; and fome Flowers and greene things, that they found growing on the shoars. They faw a berd of white Deere, of ten in a companie on the land; much drift wood lying on the shoare, many good Bayes, and one River faire to fee to on the North shoare, for the Morfes to land on; but they faw no Morfes there, but fignes that they had beene in the Bayes. And the great River or Sound, they certified me, was of breadth two or three leagues, and had no ground at twentie fathoms, and that the water was of the colour of the Sea, and very falt, and that the streame fetteth strongly out of it. At fixe a clocke this morning, came much Ice from the Southward drining upon vs, very fearefull to looke on : but by the mercy of God and his mightie helpe, were being moored with two Anchors ahead with vering out of one Cable, and heaving home the other, and fending off with Beames and Sparres, escaped the danger : which labour continued till fixe a clocke in the Ecuening, and then it was past vs, and we rode still and tooks pursest this night,

The third, the wind at North a hard gale : At three a clocke this morning wee weighed our anchor, and fet fayle, purposing to runne into the River or Sound before ipoken of.

The fourth, in the morning it cleared up with the wind at North-west, we weighed and set fayle, and stood to the Eastwards, and past ouer a Reefe, and found on it fine and a halfe, fixe, fixe and a halfe, and seven fathoms water: then we saw that the Sound wasfull, & a very large River from the North-eastward free from Ice, and a strong streame comming out of it: and wee had founding then, foure and thirtie fathoms water. Wee all conceived hope of this Northerly Ri. The River uer or Sound, and fayling in it, wee found three and twentie fathomes for three leagues, and fearched. after twentie fathomes for five cr fixe leagues, all tough Ozie ground. Then the winde vered more Northerly, and the streame came downe so strong, that wee could doe no good on it: wee came to anchor, and went to supper, and then prelently I fent my Mate Iner, with fue more of our companie in our Boat, with Sayle and Oares to get vp the River, being prouided with Victuall and Weapons for defence, willing them to found as they went; and if it did continue fill deepe, to goe vntill it did trende to the Eastward, or to the Southwards, and wee rode ftill.

CHAP. 15. Cause of the Ice in Noua Zembla. Costing Sarch. Brunell.

The fift, in the morning we had the wind at West: we began to weigh anchor, purposing to fet fayle and to runne vp the Sound after our companie: then the wind vered Northerly vpon vs. and we faued our labour. At noone our companie came abourd vs having had a hard rought a for they had beene vp the River fixe or feven leagues, and founded it from twentie to three and twentie; and after brought it to eight, fixe, and one fathome; and then to foure foot in the best: they then went ashoare, and found good store of wilde Goose quills, a piece of an old Oare, and some Flowers, and greene things which they found growing: they saw many Deere. and fodid we in our after-dayes fayling. They being come aboord, we presently set fayle with the wind at North North-west, and we stood out agains to the South-westwards, with forrow that our labour was in vaine: for , had this Sound held as it did make shew of , for breadth. denth. fafenesse of harbour, and good anchor ground, it might have yeelded an excellent passage to a more Easterly Sea. Generally, all the Land of Nona Zembla that yet wee have seene, is to Nona Zembla a mans eye a pleasant Land; much mayne high Land with no Snow on it, looking in some pleasante the places greene, and Deere feeding thereon: and the Hills are partly concred with Snow, and eye. partly bare. It is no maruell that there is fo much Ice in the Sea toward the Pole, fo many Cause of much Sounds and Rivers being in the Lands of Nona Zembla, and Newland to ingender it; besides Ice in those 30 the coasts of Pechora, Ruffes, and Grownland, with Lappia, as by proofes I finde by my travell makeno nauto the coasts of Februs, any series which feel flopped there will be no naugable paffage this way, gable paffage, This Eeuening weehad the wind at Weft and by South: wee therefore came to anchor work. Deere Point; and it was a storme at Sea, wee rode in twentie fathomes, Ozieground: I fent my Mate, Ladlow, with foure more ashoare to see whether any Morses were on the shoare, and to kill some Fowle, (for we had seene no Morses since Saturday, the second day of this moneth, that wee faw them driving out of the Ice.) They found good landing for them, but no figne that they had beene there: but they found that fire had beene made there, yet not lately. Ac ten of the clocke in the Eeuening, they came aboord, and brought with them neere an hundred Fowles called Wellocks; this night it was wet fogge, and very thicke and cold, the winde at

40 West South-west. The fixt, in the morning wee had the wind stormie and shifting; betweene the West and South-west, against vs for doing any good: we rode still and had much Ice driving by vs to the Eastward of vs. At nine of the clocke, this Ecuening wee had the wind at North North-west : we presently weighed, and set sayle, and stood to the Westward, being out of hope to find pasfage by the North-east: And my purpose was now to see whether willoughbies Land were, as willoughbies is is layd in our Cardes; which if it were, wee might finde Morfes on it; for with the Ice they Land, sconwere all driven from hence. This place vpon Nona Zembla, is another then that which the makers it fee-Hollanders call Costing Sareb, discovered by Oliner Brownell: and William Barent sons observation ming to be no doth witnesse the same, It it layd in plot by the Hollanders out of his true place too farre North: other then to what end I know not, vnleffe to make it hold course with the Compasse, not respecting the Newland or variation. It is as broad and like to yeeld passage as the Vargate, and my hope was, that by the Greenland (as ftrong streame it would have cleered it selfe; but it did not. It is so fall of Ice that you will used again

hardly thinke it. All this day, for the most part, it was fogge and cold. The feuenth, cleere but cold weather : in the morning the wind was at the North; from the Brunell is to last Equening to this morning, we set faile and kept our course West and by South, fifteene leagues, others Nova from morning to eight a clocke in the Eeuening it was calme : then we had the wind againe at Zembla. North, and we fayled till nine a clocke next morning West South-west, eight leagues; then the wind being West and by South, wee went North and by West, three leagues, and wee had the Sunne at the highest South South-west, in the laritude of 71. degrees 2. minutes. The eight, 6c faire weather; at noone we had the wind at East North-east, we stood North three leagues till foureaclocke: then the wind being at west and by North, wee stemmed North and by West one league and a halfe, till fix a clocke in the Equening ; then the wind was at North-eaft a hard gale, and wee flood till next day at noone West and by North, by account three and twentie leagues: we had the Sunne on the Meridian, South and by West, halfe a point neerest West, in



the latitude of 70. degrees 41. minutes. The ninth, cleere weather: from this to the next day at noons, we fayled South-weft and by Weft, twelve lesgues, and Northward three legues; and in their courfes had their Goundings, 41.4.2.4.4.8. and 32.7 fathoms: we had the Sunne South and by Veft, halte a point to the VVeft part of the Compasse. The Sea was lottie: our latitude was 70. degrees 20. minutes.

The tenth, clerre but clofe weather: from this till next day noone, wee had little wind at We'll North-we'll: by account we made our way for leagues North-eaflerly. Wee had the Sun at the higheff on the South and by We'll point, and a terce Weftward, in the latitude of 700 degrees 55,minutes, and I thinke we had a ruftling tide vnder vs; and in this time had foombetweene fortie fine and fortic tathomes, white fand. The eleuenth, cleere weather: from this to the next day at noone, little wind at North North-eafl, and fometimes calme; wee fayled We'll and by North by account fine leagues; and had the Sunne on the Meridian on the South and by We'll point! We'll in the latitude of 700. degrees 26. minutes, and found a ruffling vnder vs. This fore-noone we were come into a greene Sea, of the colour of the mayne Ocean, which we first lot the eight of lune: since which time wee have had a Sea of a blacke blue colour, which (both by the last and this yeers experience) is a Sea soesfered with Ire.

The twelfth, faire weather: from noone to mid-night wee had the wind shifting betweene the North and Welt; our course was betweene VVeit North-west, and South South-west. Then we had the wind at South, we shyled till the next day at noone, West and by North, thirteen leagues: were accounted our way from the last day till this day noone Westward; eighteene leagues. This after-noone wees saw more Porposites then in all our Voyageasore. The thirteenth, cloic weather: in the after-noone hauing much wind at South, with short siyle wee shoot away West and by North; till eight a clocke in the Ecuening: then we had the wind at South, but most times calme till noone the next day: wee flood aways as fore, four leagues, which made in all twelue leagues; we had the Souns cre it began to fall, South and by West, in the latitude of 70, degrees 2 an innites.

The fourteenth, wee flood Weth North-weft till mid-night, feuenteene leagues: then the wind feanted and came at Weft, we flood North North-weft, one league and a halfe; then the wind being more Southerly, wee fayled Weft North-weft, fine leagues. From the laft till this day at noone, our way was our of diners courfes North-weft and by Weft, four and twentie leagues. We had the Sunne beginning to fall at South and by Weft, in the latitude of 70. de. 30 grees 54. minutes,

The fifteenth, faire; but towards night like to be flormie with thunder, the wind betweene South and South South-eaft; from this; till the fixteenth day at noone, our course was West and by North; teven and exemic leagues, and the Soune then began to fall at South, three quarters of a point Westward, in the latitude of 70. degrees 44. minutes. The fixteenth, faire; our way was from this till next day at noone North-west, twelve leagues; out of divers courses: and we had the wind shifting, sometimes at East, at West South-west, and West and West and by North; the latitude by a bad observation, 71. degrees 44. minutes. The seventhe, in the fore-noone faire; the wind being at West and by North. At four a clocke this morning we saw Land beare 40 off vs. West and South South-west, which was about **Ward-bonsse*: this after-noone wee had a forme at West and by North, we layed it to trie till eight a clocke in the Ecuening, and then set tayle with the wind betweene West North-west, and North-west. our course till the next day at noone, was South-westl and by South, swellce leagues: the Cape *Hopewest* bore off vs. South South-westl, and we were fource or the seagues from land.

The eighteenth, gufty, with raine all the fore-noone; then we had the wind (hifting till next day at noone from South South-eaft to Eaft, and South-eaft: our course in generall was North-welf, foure and twentie leagues: then did North Kowe beare off vs Welt halfe a point Southward, being from vs foure leagues; and the North Cape in fight bearing Welf and by North, &c.

The feuen and twentieth, cold with raine and florme; this night we began to burne Candle of in the Betacle, which we had not done fince the injecteenth of May: by reason wee had alwaies of day from thence till now. The thirtieth, we had the Sunne you the Meridan due South, in the latitude of 68, degrees 46. minutes; whereby we found us to bee afore our flip, seen or twelue leagues, and Longfoor bore Eaf of vs., but not in fight.

The feuenth of August, I vied all diligence to arrive at London, and therefore now I gaue my

companie a certificate winder my hand, of my free and willing returne, without perfivation or force of any one or more of them: for at my being at Nous Zembla, the fixt of Iuly, voide of hope of a North-eaft paffage, (except by the Zegest, for which I was not fitted to trie or proue) I therefore refolued to vie all meanes I could to fayle to the North-weft; confidering the time and meanes were had, if the wind thould friend vs, as in the fift part of our Voyage it had done, and to make triall of that place called Lembless India; and the furnous outer-fall by Cap- 60 tayne Dassie, hoping to runne into it an hundred leagues, and to returne as God should enable mee. But now hauing fepent more then halfe the time I had, and gone but the shortest part of the way, by meanes of contrary winds; I thought it my durie to laue Victuall, Wages, and

Снар. 16. Master Hudsons third Voyage to Noua Zembla, Фе.

Tackle, by my speedy returne, and not by foolish rafinesse, the time being wasted, to lay more charge you the action then necessitie should compell, larriued at Granesend the six and twenteth of August.

CHAP. XVI.

The third Voyage of Master Henrie Hydoon toward Nova Zembla, and at his returne, his passing from Farrestands, to New-found Land, and along to to forcis four edegrees and ten minutes, and thence to Cape Cod, and so to thirtie three degrees; and along the Coast to the Northward, to fortie two degrees and an halfe, and up the River necreto fortie three degrees. Written by Robert Iver of Lime-house.

A N Saturday the fine and twentieth of March, 1609, after the old Account, we fet fayle from Amfardam; and by the fenen and twentieth day, we were downed at the Texed: and by twente of the clock we were off the Land, it being Eaff of yet two leagues off. And because it is a journey vitally knowne. I omit to put downe what passed, the we came to the height of The North Cape of Firmants, which we did performe by the fift of May (file none) being Tuelday. On which

day we observed the height of the Pole, and found it to be 71, degrees and 46, minutes; and me found our Compasse to vary fix degrees to the West; and at twelve of the clocke, the North Cape did beare South-west and by South, tenne leagues off, and wee steered away East and by South, and East.

After much trauble with fogges, sometimes, and more dan gerous of Lee. The nineteenth, being Tuetlary, was close fatornic weather, with much wind and snow, and very cold; the wind variable betweenen the North North-weft, and North-eaft. We made our way Weft and by North 100 more. Then we observed the sunne hausing a slake, and found our height to beey o. degrees 30 minutes. And the line had our tourne vs twentic leagues, by reason of the fee of the streame of The White Sac: and we had fight of Workshoofs. Then at two of the clocke were tack to the 25 minutes of the stream of the stre

The two and twentieth, gulling weather with haile and fnow, the Sunne breaking out loins.

And the continued our courie along the Land Weft South-weft. And at tenne of the clocke at night we were thwart of Zemm. The bodie of it did bear East off tweller steel to the leagues: and the courie from the North Cape to Zemminis for the most part Weft and by South, and Weft South-weft, fiftie four leagues.

The three and twentieth, faire Sun-fhining weather; the wind at Eaff and by South, and Eaff South-eaft, were feered along the Land South-weft, and South-weft and by Weff, eight legues a Wasch, for fow we found the Land to lye from Zenam to Lefaste. And the dilthree is fiftile legues from the bodie of Zenam, to the Weftermolf Land of Lefaste. And from the one to the other, the courie is South-weft and by Weff. For the Needle of our Compafe was feet right to the North. As twelne of the clocke at night, the bodie of Lefaste did beare South-eaff, like Lefaste.

The foure and twentieth, faire cleere. Sun-fining weather: the wind variable vpon all 50 points of the Compafe, but most vpon the South-east, and sometimes calme. We continued our course West South-west as before. And at eight of the clocke at night, the South-east em leasues of tv.

The fine and twentieth, much wind at North-eaft, with forme finow and haile. The first watch the wind came to the East a fine gale, and so came to the North-eaft, the second watch at four of the clocks, and firsted in 1. And a teight of the clocks it greaw to a storme, and so continued. At noone we observed, and made the ship to be in 67, degrees 58, minutes. We continued out course South-well, twellow leagues a watch. At nine of the clocks, Leffort did beare East of vy 15, leagues off. And we found the Compasse to large no variation. The wind increased to a storme. No variations

The fix and twentieth, war a great from each to Mark no variation. The wind increased to a flottine.

The fix and twentieth, war a great from eat the North North-eath, and North-eaft, we for fleet earlier and the fixed way South-well after the wind with our fore-course abroad: for wee were able to maintaye no more sayles, it below to whemently, and the Sea went to high, and brake with-all, that it would have during the first me began to case (as four of the clocked feuenty leagues infoure and twentie hourse. The florme began to case (as four of the clocked).

The feuen and twentieth, indifferent faire weather, but a good ftiffe gale of wind at North,

-.

Thunder.

No night in

and North North-east, wee held on our course as before. At moone wee observed and found our height to be 64. degrees 10. minutes. And wee perceised, that the Current had hindred vs in Agreat cur-rent ferting to fortic eight houres to the number of 16, leagues to our best judgement. We set our mayne-sayle, rent tetting to the tetting to the North-east. Sprit-layle, and our mayne-top-layle, and held on our course all night, hasing faire weather.

The eight and twentieth, faire weather and little wind at North-east, we held on our course South-west. At noone wee observed the heigth, and were in 62. degrees and 30, minutes. The after-noone was little wind at North North-west. The second watch it fell calme. At source of the clocke wee had fight of the Iles called Farre, and found them to lye out of their place in the Sea Chart Fourteene leagues to farre Westerly. For in running South-west from Loforte, wee had a good care to our fleerage and observations, and counted our selves thirtie leagues off by our course and observation : and had fight of them fixteene or eighteene leagues off.

The nine and twentreth, faire weather sometimes calme, and sometimes a gale with the wind varying at South-west, and so to the North-east. Wee got to the Hands, but could not get in. So we stood along the Hands. The ebbe being come, we durst not put in,

Streme.

m The Bitta-

ele is a close

fandeth. Buffe Iland.

Their first

Note well.

those which

fayles to en-

large them :

The thirtieth faire weather; the windat South-east and East South-east. In the morning we turned into a Road in Stromo, one of the Ilands of Farre, betweene Stromo and Mugge-neg, and got in by nine of the clocke : for it flowed fo there that day. And affoone as we came in, we went to Romage, and fent our Boat for water, and filled all our emptie Caskes with fresh water, Wee made an end of our Romaging this night by ten of the clocke,

The one and thirtieth, faire Sun-fhining weather, the wind at East South-east. In the fore- 20 noone our Master with most of his Company went on shoare to walke, and at one of the clocke they returned aboord. Then we fet layle.

Inne.

The first of Iune, Bilo nono, taire Sun-shining weather, the wind at East South-east, We continues on our course South-west and by West. At moone wee observed the Sunne, and found our heigth to be 60, degrees \$8, minutes : and fo continued on our course all night with faire westher. This night we lighted Candles in the " Bittacle againe,

The second mystic weather, the wind at North-east. At noone we steered away West Southplace in which welt, to find Buffe Hand, discoursed in the yeste 1 178, by one of the thips of Sir Martin Frethe Compaffe belier, to fee if it lay in her true latitude in the Chart or no : wee continued our course as before all night, with a faire gale of wind : this night we had fight of the first stars, and our water was an changed colour to a white greene. The Compaffe had no variation. Shr of Cars:

The third, faire Sun-shiming, weathersthe wind at North-eaf. We steered on our course Southwest and by West, with a stiffe gale of wind. At noone we observed and found our height to bee 18. degrees 48. minutes. And I was before the faip 16. leagues, by reason of the Current that held vs to ftrong out of the South-west. For it is eight leagues in foure and twentie hours. We Change of was accounted our felues neere Buffe lland : by mid-night we looked out for it, but could not fee it,

The fourth, in the morning was much wind with fogge and raine. Wee fleered away South-A ftrange ourrent out of the west by west all the fore-moone, the wind so increasing, that wee were enforced to take in our top-fayle : the winde continuing so all the after-noone. Wee steered away South-west all the fore-part of the night; and at ten of the clocke at night it was hitle wind; and that was at South, 40

and so came up to the South South-east.

The fit formie weather, and much wind at South, and South by East, so that at foure of the clocke in the morning, we tooke in our fore-fayle, and lay a try with our mayne corfe, and treed away West North-west foure leagues. But at noone it was less wind, and the Sunne flewed forth; and we observed, and found our heigth to be 36.degrees 21.minutes. In the afternoone the wind vered to and fro betweene the South-west and the South-east, with raine and forge, and to continued all night. Wee found that our thip had gone to the Westward of our course. The fixth, thicke hase weather with gusts of wind, and showers of raine. The wind varied betweene East South-East and South-west, wee steered on many courses a West Southwest way. The afternoone watch the wind was at East South-east, a stiffe gate with myst and rame. Wee fleered away South-west, by West eight leagues. At noone the Sunne shone forth, and we found the heigth to bee 56, degrees 8, minutes. The feventh, faire fun-fhining weather all the fore-moone, and calme untill twelve of the clocke. In the after-moone the wind came to the North-west, a stiffegale. We steered South-west by West, and made a South-west way. At are laced and noone we found the height to bee 55, degrees one minute, and it continued all night a hard gale, ecked to the The eight, flormy weather, the wind variable, betweene West and North-west much wind : at eight of the clocke wee tooke off our Bonnets. At noone the Suime shewed forth, and wee obferued, and our height was 54. degrees 30.minutes. The nineh, faire fun-fhining weather, and litmanacourfe, the wind all the fore-part of the day virill eleven of the clocke. Then the wind came to the milien courie, South South-east, and we steered away West South-west. At moone we found our height to bee 60 fore countries

53 degrees and 45 minutes, and we had made our way South by West ten leagues. In the afternoone the wind increased and continued all night at East North-east and East.

The twelfth, faire weather, the wind variable betweene East North-east and South-east, wee fleered on our course as before. At foure of the clock in the afternoon the wind came vp at SouthCHAP. 16. Current to the South, Great forme. Variations of the Compafe.

east. And we held our course as before. At moone wer observed and found our height to be 52. degrees ac. minutes.

The eleventh, in the morning was thicke and foggie, the winde varying betweene South South-weft, and North-weft. At foure of the clocke in the morning, wee tackt about to the Southward: At eleuen of the clocke the winde came to the North-west, and so to the West North-west. This day we had change of water, of a whitish greene, like to the Ice water to the North-west. At moone it cleered vp, and became very faire weather : wee put out our mayne North-west At mounts that the Summe and found our height to be \$1.degrees 24.minutes. We Acurrent from top-rayie tinh we obtained and found our fhip gone to the Southward of our account ten leagues, the North, 10 by reason of a current from the North-ward. The Compasse varied on point to the East.

The twelfth, faire Sun-thining weather, but much wind at the Well : we flood to the South - point Eat. ward all day, the wind shifting betweene the South-west and the West and by North. Wee ward and say, the wind infiling octovers the country and the very those by Aronin. We made our way. South halfe a point Welf, eight and twentile leagues. Our height at noone was 50.degrees 9.minutes. At eight of the clock at night we took off our Bonets, the wind increasing.

The thirteenth, faire Sun-shining weather: the wind variable betweene the West, and North North-west, We made our way South South-west feuer and twentie leagues. At noone we obserued, and found our height to be 48, degrees 44, minutes. But not to be trufted, the Sea went so high. In the after-noone the winde was calmer, and weebrought to our Bonets, and stood to the Southward all night with a stiffe gale.

20 The fourteenth, faire and cleere Sun-shining weather: the winde variable betweene the North-west and South-west by West. At mid-night Toblerued the North starre at a North-west by Welt Guardesa good observation 49, degrees 30. minutes. And at moone wee observed the Latitude 48; Sunne, and our heigth was 48. degrees 6. minutes. And I made account we ranne betweene the degrees 6. ml two observations ewelne leagues. At one of the clocke in the after-noone, wee cast about to the nutes. Westward, and stood so all night: the winde increased to a storme, and was very much winde

The fifteenth, we had a great fforme, and spent o over-board our fore-mast, bearing our fore To spend the corle low fet. The fixteenth, we were forced to trie with our mayne fayle, by reason of the vn- Maft, is roderconflant weather. So wee tried fourt watches South-east and by South eight leagues and an shoul of brea-30 halfe, and two watches fixe leagues! The feventeenth, reasonable faire weather: the wind variable betweene Weft South-weft, and Weft North-weft. And a ftiffe gale of wind, and fo great a swelling Sea out of the West South-west, that wee could doe nothing. So one watch and an halfe wee drone North four-leagues and an halfe, and four-watches and an halfe South and by Baft halfe a point East twelve leagues. The eighteenth, reasonable weather but close and cloudie. and an hard gale of wind, and a great Sea. The winds being at the North-west, wee lay to the Southward, and made our drift South and by Weft, fine leagues. The after-noone prooned little wind, and the night part calme. The nineteenth, in the fore-moone faire weather and calme, In the morning we fet the piece of our fore maft, and fet our fore corfe,

The one and ewentieth, faire Sun-shining weather, but much wind and a great Sea. We split 40 our fore faile at ten of the clocke; then we laid it a trie " with our mayne fayle, and continued " That is, bare foall day. In the night irfell to be little wind. This day our height was 45, degrees 48 minutes. so more layer. The two and twentieth, very faire Sun-filmine weather, and calme all the after none. The two and twentieth, very faire Sun-firlining weather, and calme all the after-noone. At far noone we made a very good observation, and found our height 44, degrees 58, minutes. At eight Variation,

of the clocke at night wee had a small gale of winde at South-east. And wee steered away West for Newfound Land. The true Compaffe varied one point Eaft,

The three and twentieth, thicke weather with much wind and some raine. At eight of the clocke in the morning, the wind came to the Well South-well, and Well to fliffe a gal, that we were forced to take our top-layle, and fleeted away North North-west vitill foure of the clock in the after-moone. Then we tack to the Southward the winde at Well North-well. At eight 50 of the clocke at night wee tooke in our top-fayles, and laid it a trie with our mayne fayle, the

The foure and twentieth, a stiffe gale of wind, varying betweene the West and North North west, we tried till fixe of the clocke; at which time we fet our foresaile, and steered way West and by South by our Compaffeeight leagues in foure watches : and wee tried away South in

The fine and twentieth, faire Sun-shining weather, the wind at North North-west and North, we fleered away West by South by our Compasse till twelve of the clocke: at which time we had light of a layle, and gaue her chase but could not speake with her. She stood to the Raftward; and we flood after her till fixe of the clocke in the after-noone. Then weetact to the 60 Westward againe, and stood on our course it was faire all night, and little wind sometimes.

The fix and twentieth, all the fore-part of the day very faire weather and hoe , but at four of the clocke in the after-noone it grew to bee much winde and raine : the winde was at South South-east. At noone wee observed and found our heigth to bee 44. degrees 33. minutes. At eight of the clocke at night, the wind came to South-weff, and West South-west. Wee steered

Variation one

with reference ™hotoro che tholefayles without their

North-west, one Watch, and at twelve in the night, to the West, and West and by South, very much wind. So we could lye but North North-west.

The feuen and twentieth, very much winde and a foare florme, the wind Westerly. In the morning at foure of the clocke, wee tooke in our fore-corfe, and layd it a trie with our maynecorfe low fet; and so continued all the day and night, two watches to the Northward. At eight of the clocke at night, we tackt to the Southward

The eight and twentieth, faire fun-shining weather, the wind at West and by South; we lav a trie to the Southward till eight of the clocke in the morning. Then wee fet our fore-corfe, and flood to the Southward a stiffe gale of wind, but faire weather and a great Sea, out of the Westerboord, and fo continued all night.

The nine and twentieth, faire fun-shining weather, the wind at West and by South; we stood to the Southward vntill fixe of the clocke at night, and made our way South and by Eaft, foure leagues. Then the winde came to the South-west, and wee cast about to the VVestward, and made our way VVest North-west all night. At noone, I found the height 43. degrees 6. minutes. The variation one point VVeft.

The thirtieth, faire fun-shining weather, the winde at South-west and by VVest, we seered North-west and by VVest. And made our way so, by reason of the variation of the Compasse. At noone, I found the height to bee 43. degrees 18. minutes; wee continued our course all night. and made our way North-west and by VVest, halfe a point VVesterly, fine and twentie leagues.

The first of July, close, mystie and thicke weather, but a faire gale of wind at South-west, and 20 South-west by South. We steered away North-west and by West, Westerly, and made our way fo, by reason of the variation of the Compasse. At eight of the clocke at night, wee sounded for the Banke of New-found Land, but could get no ground.

The second, thicke mystic weather, but little wind, and that at West, and West and by South. New familiand At eight of the clocke in the morning, we cast about to the Southward, and when our ship was on flaves, we founded for the Banke, and had ground in thirtie fathoms, white fand and shells. and presently it cleered : and we had fight of a layle, but spake not with her. In the night we had much Rayne, Thunder and Lightning, and wind thifting.

fingon the

The Banke of

July.

The third, faire Sun-fhining weather, with a faire gale of wind at East North-east, and wee fteered away West South-west by our Compasse, which varyed 17. degrees Westward. This 30 French-men Fis morning we were among a great Fleet of French-pren, which lay Fishing on the Banke; but we spake with none of them. At noone wee found our heighth to bee 43. degrees 41. minutes. And we founded at ten of the clocke, and had thirtie fathoms gray fand. At two of the clocke wee founded, and had fine and thirtie fathoms gray fand. At eight of the clocke at night, we founded againe, and had eight and thirtie fathoms gray fand, as before.

The fourth, at the fore-part of the day cleere, with a faire gale of wind, but variable betweene the East North-east, and South and by East, wee held on our course as before. The after-noone was mystie, the wind shifting betweene the South and the West, till source of the clocke. Then we tooke in our top-layle and sprit-sayle, and sounded and had no ground in seventie fathoms. The winde shifted still entill eight of the clocke, then it came to the North North-east, and 40 North-east and by North, and we figered away West North-west, by our varyed Compasse. which made a West way halfe point North. The Compasse varyed 15. degrees from the North to the West.

The fift, faire fun-shining weather, the wind at North-east and by North, we steered away West North-west, which was West halfe a point North. At noone we found our heighth to be 44. degrees 10. minutes, and founded, and had no ground in one hundred fathoms. The afternoone proued calme fometimes, and fomtimes little wind, vntill nine of the clocke in the night. Then the wind came to the East, and we held on our course. At mid-night I observed and found the height to bee 44 degrees 10. minutes, by the North Starre and the Scorpione heart. The Compaffe varyed 12. degrees.

Variation 13.

The fixth, the fore-part of the day faire weather, and a stiffe gale of wind, betweene South South-east, and South-west, wee steered West and by North, and West North-west, The afterpart of the day from two of the clocke, was all foggie and thicke weather; the wind a hard gale, varying betweene South-west and by South, and West and by North, we made our way Northwest halfe a point Northerly, nineteene leagues, vpon many points foure Watches. At night at eight of the clocke, we founded and had no ground at one hundred fathems.

The fenenth, faire fun-thining weather, the wind varying betweene West and by North, and West and by South. At source of the clocke in the morning, we cast about to the Southward, and flood fo sill one in the after-noons. At noone we found our height to be 44. degrees 26. minutes. At fewen of the clocke, we tackt to the Northward. At eight at night, we tackt to the South- 60 ward, and founded, and had nine and fiftie fathoms, white fand.

The eight, in the fore-noone faire weather, but the morning foggie till feuen of the clocke. At foure of the clocke in the morning we founded, and had fine & fortie fathoms, fine white land, and we had runne fine leagues South and by West. Then wee stood along one Glasse, and went

one league as before. Then we flood one Glasse and founded, and had fixtie fathoms. Then wee takt and stood backe to the Banke, and had fine and twentie fathoms; and tryed for Fish, and it Many great takt and itood backe to the Banke, and then the area to coldes, from eight a clocke till one. Cod taken, fell calme, and we caught one hundred and eighteen great Coddes, from eight a clocke till one. Many great Many great and after Dinner wee tooke twelue, and faw many great Scoales of Herrings. Then wee had a Scoales of Herrings. gale of wind at South, and it shifted to the West North-west, and we stood three Glasses and rings. founded and had fixtie fathomes, and flood two Glasses, and had two and fortie fathoms, red To found is to flones and shells. So wee founded every Glasse and had severall soundings 35-33-30.31.32. trie the depth

The minth, faire calme weather, we lay becalmed all day and caught fome Fish, but not much, &c. to because we had small store of sale. At three of the clocke in the after-noone, wee had a gale at South-east, and South South-east, and we steered away Westerly, our Compasse was West and by South halfe a point South. At foure of the clocke, we founded and had but lifteene, seuenteene. and nineteene fathoms on a fishing Banke; and we founded enery Glasse. Then we could get no ground in fine and twentie fathoms, and had fight of a fayle on head off vs. At noone our height was 44. degrees 37. minutes. We flood to the Westward all night, and spake with a French-man, which lay Fishing on the Banke of Sablen, in thirtie fathoms, and we faw two or three more.

The tenth, very mystic and thicke weather, the wind at South-west, a faire gale. We stood to the South-ward, and made our way South-east and by East. At twelve of the clocke we sounded, and had eight and fortie fathoms: againe at two we founded, and had fiftie fathoms. And at fixe of the clocke we founded: and had eight and fortie fathoms on the end of the Banke. Againe, at eight of the clocke at night wee founded, and had no ground in eightie fathomes, and gaine, at eigness the closest a might be seen that the compasse varyed 17, degrees variation degrees.

The eleuenth, very thicke and myflie weather. At twelve of the clocke at night, we caftabout to the Westward, and stood so all day, and made our way West North-west. We sounded at twelue of the clocke, but had no ground; fo we flood to the Westward all the fore-part of the night, and founded but could get no ground in fiftie or fixtie fathoms till mid-night. Then I founded and had ground at fifteene fathoms, white fand.

unded and had ground at myseus taxonomy, who cause the morning till eleuen of the clocke; at The twelfth, was very foggie, we food our course all the morning till eleuen of the clocke; at Land, being the course of the course o 30 which time we had fight of the Land, which is low white fandie ground, right on head off vs. Land, being low, white and which time we had ught of the Southward, and flood off foure Glaffes: then we tackt low, wh and had ren fathoms. Then we tackt to the Southward, and flood off foure Glaffes: then we tackt findite. to the Land againe, thinking to have rode vnder it, and as we came neere it, the fog was fo thicke that we could not fee; fo wee flood off againe. From mid-night to two of the clocke, we came founding in twelve, thirteene, and foureteene fathoms off the shoare. At foure of the clocke, we had 20 fathoms. At eight of the clocke at night 30 fathoms. At twelve of the clocke 65, fathoms. and but little winde, for it deeped apace, but the necret the shoare the fairer shoalding.

The thirteenth, faire fun-shining weather, from eight of the clocke in the fore-noone all day after, but in the morning it was foggie. Then at eight of the clocke we cast about for the shoare. but could not fee it; the wind being at South by our true Compasse, wee steered VVest and by 4; degrees

40 North. At noone we observed, and found our height to bee 43. degrees 25. minutes; so we stee. 35. minutes, red away VVest and by North all the after-noone. At foure of the clocke in the after-noone. Sight of Land we founded and had fine and thirtie fathoms. And at fixe of the clocke, wee had fight of the Land, and faw two fayles on head off vs. The land by the waters fide is low Land, and white fandie Bankes rifing full of little Hils. Our foundings were 35.33.30.28.32.37.33. & 32.fathoms.

The foureteenth, full of mysts flying and vading, the wind betweene South and South-west, we fteered away West North-west, and North-west and by West. Our foundings were 29. 25. 24. 35. 22. 25. 27. 30. 28. 30. 35. 43. 50. 70. 90. 70.64. 86. 100. fathoms, and no ground. The fifteenth, very mystie, the winde varying betweene South and South-west, wee steered

West and by North, and VVest North-west. In the morning we founded, and had one hundred fathoms, till foure of the clocke in the after-noone. Then we founded againe, and had seventie 50 face fathoms. Then in two Glaffer running, which was not about two English miles, we founded and had fixtie fathoms, and it shoulded a great pace untill we came to twentie fathoms. Then we male account we were neere the Hands that lie off the shoare. So we came to an Anchor, the Sea being very smooth and little wind, at nine of the clocke at night. After supper, we tryed for Fish, and I caught fifteene Cods, some the greatest that I have seene, and so we rode all night.

The fixteenth, in the morning it cleered up, and wee had fight of fine llands lying North, and Fine llands North and by VV eft from vs, two leagues. Then wee made ready to set sayle, but the myst came fo thicke, that we durft not enter in among them.

The seuenteenth, was all mystic, so that wee could not get into the Harbour. At ten of the to clocke two Boates came off to vs, with fixe of the Sanager of the Country, feeming gl.d of our Sixe Salages comming. VVe gaue them trifles, and they eate and dranke with vs ; and told vs, that there come about were Gold, Siluer, and Copper mynes hard by vs; and that the French-men doe Trade with them. them; which is very likely, for one of them spake some words of French. So wee rode still all day and all night, the weather continuing myslie.

Lead,or Pole.

A large River.

The eighteenth, faire weather, wee went into a very good Harbour, and rode hard by the shoare in foure fathoms water. The River runneth vp a great way, but there is but two fathoms hard by vs. VVe went on shoare and cut vs a fore Mass, then at noone we came aboord againe, 44. Degrees 10. and found the height of the place to bee in 44. degrees 1. minute; and the Sunne tofall at 2 South South-west Sunne, VV e mended our sayles, and fell to make our fore-Mast. The Harbour lyeth South and North, a mile in where we rode.

The nineteenth, we had faire fun-shining weather, we rode still. In the after-noone wee went with our Boate to looke for fresh water, and found some; and found a shoald with many Lobsters on it, and caught one and thirtie. The people comming aboord, shewed vs great friend-Lobiters on it, and caught one and annue. The twentieth, faire finne, fining weather, the winde at 10 fin, but we could not truft them. The twentieth, faire finne, fining weather, the winde at 10 South-west. In the morning, our Scute went out to eatch fresh Fish halfe an houre before day, and returned in two houres, bringing feuen and twentie great Coddes, with two hookes and lines. In the after-noone wee went for more Lobsters, and caught fortie, and returned abourd. Then wee espied two French Shallops full of the Countrey people come into the Harbour, but they offered vs no wrong, feeing we flood vpon our guard. They brought many Beauer skinnes, and other fine Furres, which they would have changed for redde Gownes. For the French trade with them for red Cassockes, Kniues, Hatchets, Copper, Kettles, Treuts, Beades, and

The one and twentieth, all mystic, the wind Easterly, wee rode still and did nothing, but about our Mast. The two and twentieth, faire Sun-shining weather, the winde all Northerly, 20 we rode still all the day. In the after-noone our Scute went to catch more Lobsters, and brought with them nine and fiftie. The night was cleere weather.

The three and twentieth, faire fun-shining weather and very hot. At cleuen of the clocke, our fore Mast was finished, and we brought it aboord, and set it into the step, and in the after-noone we rigged it. This night we had some little myst and rayne.

The foure and twentieth, very hot weather, the winde at South out of the fea. The fore-part of the day wee brought to our fayles. In the morning, our Scute went to take Fish, and in two houres they brought with them twentie great Coddes, and a great Holibut, the night was faire also. We kept good watch for feare of being betrayed by the people, and perceived where they

The fine and twentieth, very faire weather and hot. In the morning wee manned our Scute with foure Muskets, and fixe men, and tooke one of their Shallops and brought it aboord. Then we manned our Boat & Scute with twelue men and Muskets, and two stone Pieces or Murderers. and draue the Salnages from their Houses, and tooke the spoyle of them, as they would have done of vs. Then wee fet fayle, and came downe to the Harbours mouth, and rode there all done to so find the winde be wright in, and the night grew myflie with much rayne till main night, because the winde blew right in, and the night grew myflie with much rayne till main night. Then it fell calme, and the wind came off the Land at West North-west, and it began to cleere. The Compasse varyed 10. degrees North-west.

The fixe and twentieth, faire and cleere funne-shining weather. At five of the clocke in the morning, the winde being off the shoare at North North-west, we set sayle and came to sea, and 40 by noone we counted our ship had gone foureteene leagues South-west. In the after-noone, the winde shifted variably betweene West South-west, and North-west. At noone, I found the height to bee 43 degrees cominutes. This Ecuening being very faire weather, wee observed degrees toward the variation of our Companie at the Sunnes going downe, and found it to bee 10. degrees from the North-west the North to the VVestward.

The feuen and twentieth, faire fun-shining weather, the winde shifting betweene the Southwest, and West and by North, a stiffe gale, we stood to the Southward all day, and made our way South and by West, seuen and twentie leagues. At noone, our height was 42 degrees 50 minuts. At foure of the clocke in the after-noone, wee cast about to the Northward. At eight of the clocke, we tooke in our top-sayles and our fore-bonnet, and went with a short sayle all night.

The eight and twentieth, very thicke and mystie, and a stiffe gale of wind, varying betweene South-west, and South-west and by VVest; we made our way North-west and by VVest, feuen and twentieleagues, wee founded many times and could get no ground. At fine of the clocke, we cast about to the Southward, the wind at South-west and by VVest. At which time we founded, and had ground at feuentie fine fathoms. At eight, weehad fixtie fine fathoms. At degrees to the ten, fixtie, At twelve of the clocke at mid-night, fiftie fixe fathoms, gray fand. The Compasse varyed 6. degrees the North point to the VVeil.

Variation 6.

The nine and twentieth, faire weather, we flood to the Southward, and made our way South and by VVest a point South, eighteene leagues. At noone, we found our height to bee 42. degrees 56.minutes, wee founded oft, and had theie 60, 64, 65, 67.65, 65, 70, and 75, fathoms. At 60 Variation 5. & night, wee tryed the variation of our Compasse by the setting of the Sunne, and found that it shalfe degrees, went downe 37. degrees to the North-ward of the VVest, and should have gone downe but 31. degrees. The Compalle varyed 5. 1. degrees.

The thirtieth, very hot, all the fore-part of the day calme, the wind at South South east, wee

fleered away VVest South-west and sounded many times, and could find no ground at one hunfleered away v ven sounds. VVe found a great current and many oues-falls. Our current had A great curdeceived vs. For at noone we found our height to be 41. degrees 34. minutes. And the current rent and mahad heaved vs to the Southward fourteene leagues. At eight of the clocke at night, I founded and ny ouer-lais. had ground in fiftie two fathomes. In the end of the mid-night watch, wee had fiftie three fathomes. This last observation is not to be trusted.

The one and thirtieth, very thicke and mystic all day, vntill tenne of the clocke. At night the wind came to the South, and South-west and South. We made our way West North-well nineteene leagues. Wee founded many times, and had difference of foundings, to fometimes little Rones, and fometimes groffe gray land, fiftie fix, fiftie foure, fortie eight, fortie feuen, fortie foure, fortie fix, fiftie fathomes; and at eight of the clocke at night it fell calme, and we had fiftie fathomes. And at ten of the clocke we heard a great Rut, like the Rut of the shoare. A great Rut, Then I founded and found the former Depths; and miftrufting a current, feeing it so still that the ship made no way, I let the lead lie on the ground, and found a tide set to the South-west, and South-west by West, to fast, that I could hardly vere the Line so fast, and presently came an hur-Acutrente ling current, or tyde with ouer-fals, which cast our ship round; and the Lead was so fast in the the South-well ground, that I feared the Lines breaking, and we had no more but that. At mid-night I foun- and Southded againe, and we had feuentie fine fathomes; and the strong streame had left vs.

The fark of August, all the fore-part of the day was mystie, and at noone it cleered vp. We with over-take and the tour height was at degrees as minutes and we had come interested learner. The first hugust. found that our height was 41. degrees 45. minutes, and we had gone nineteene leagues. The afternoon was reasonable cleare. We found a rustling tide or current, withmany ouer-fals to continue ftill, and our water to change colour, and our fea to bee very deepe, for wee found no ground in one hundred fathomes. The night was cleere, and the winde came to the North, and North North-east, we steered West.

The second, very faire weather and hoe : from the morning till noone we had a gale of wind. but in the after-noone little wind. Atmoone I founded and had one hundred and ten fathomes: and our height was 41. degrees 56. minutes. And wee had runne foure and twentie leagues and an halte. At the Sun-letting we observed the variation of the Compasse, and found that it was come to his true place. At eight of the clocke the gale increased, fo wee ranne fixe leagues that 30 watch, and had a very faire and cleere night.

The third, very hor weather. In the moining, we had fight of the Land, and fleered in with it, thinking to goe to the North-ward of it. So we lent our shallop with fine men, to found in by the shore : and they found it deepe fine fathomes within a Bow-shot of the shoare; and they They goe on by the linger; and they round is very one faction on wathing above sinds of the indirec; and ency went on Land, and found goodly Grapes, and Rofertees, and brought them about with them, Landierer at fine of the clocke in the Equening. We had feuer and eventie fathoms within two miles Capecia. the shoare; and we found a floud come from the South-east, and an ebbe from the North-west. with a very strong streame, and a great hurling and noyses. At eight of the clocke at night, the wind began to blow a fresh gale, and continued all night but variable. Our founding that wee had to the Land, was one hundred, eightie, seuentie foure, fiftie two, fortie fixe, twentie nine, 40 twentie feuen, twentie foure, nineteene, feuenteene, fometimes Oze, and fometimes

The fourth, was very hot: we flood to the North-west two watches; and one South in for the Land, and came to an Anchor at the Norther end of the Headland , and heard the voyce of men call. Then we fent our Boat on shoare, thinking they had beene some Christians left on the Land : but wee found them to bee Sauages, which feemed very glad of our commings So wee brought one aboord with vs, and gaue him meate, and he did eate and drinke with vs. Our Ma-Rer gaue him three or foure glasse Buttons, and sent him on Land with our shallop againe. And at our Boats comming from the shoare he leapt and danced, and held up file stands, and pointed vs to a river on the other fidesfor we had made fignes that we came to fifth there. The bodie of this 10 Headland lyeth in 41 degrees 45 minutes. We let fayle againe after dinner thinking to have got to the Westward of this Headland, but could not; so we beare up to the Southward of it, & made a South-east way; and the Souther point did beare West at eight of the clocke at night. Our foundings about the Easter and Norther part of this Headland, a league from the shoare are these: at the Easterfide thirtie, twentie feuen, twentie feuen, twentie foure, twentie fine, twentie, The North-east point 17. degrees 18. minutes, and so deeper. The North-end of this Headland, hard by the shoare thirtie fathomes : and three leagues off North North-weit, one hundred fathomes. At the South east part a league off, fifteene, fixteene, and seventeene fathomes. The people haue greene Tabacco, and pipes, the boles whereof are made of Earth, and the pipes of

red Copper. The Land is very fweet. 60 The fift, all mystie. At eight of the clocke in the morning, wee tack about to the Wellward and flood in till foure of the clocke in the after-noone; at which time it cleared, and wee had fight of the Head-land againe five leagues from vs. The Souther point of it did beare West off vs : and we founded many times, and had no ground. And at foure of the clocke we cast about. and at our staying wee had seuentie fathomes. Wee steered away South and South by East all

night, and could get no ground at feventie and eightie fathomes. For wee feared a great Riffe. that lyeth off the Land, and steered away South and by East.

The fixth, faire weather, but many times mysling. Wee steered away South South-east, till eight of the clocke in the morning; Then it cleered a little, and wee cast about to the Westward, Then we founded and had thirtie fathomes, groffe fand, and were come to the Riffe. Then we kept our Lead, and had quicke shoalding, from thirtie, twentie nine, twentie stuen, twentie foure, twentie two, twentie and an halfe, twentie, twentie, nineteene, nineteene, nineteene, eighteene, eighteene, seuenteene; and so deeping againe as proportionally as it shoulded. For we steered South and South-east till we came to twentie fixe fathomes. Then we steered Southwest for so the tyde doth set. By and by it being calme we tryed by our Lead; for you shall 10 haue fixteene or leuenteene fathomes, and the next cast but seven or fix fathomes. And farther to the Westward you shall have four and fue foot water, and see Rockes under you; and you shall fee the Land in the top. Vpon this Riffe we had an obsenuation, and found that it lyeth in 40. degrees 10. minutes. And this is that Headland which Captaine Bartholomen Gofnold discourrous Riffe is 1a red in the yeere 1602, and called Cape Cost because of the store of Cod-fish that hee found thereabout. So we steered South-west three leagues, and had twentie, and twentie foure fathomes. Then we steered West two Glasses halfe a league, and came to sifteene fathomes. Then we steered off South-east foure Glasses, but could not get deepe water; for there the tyde of ebbe laid vson; and the streame did hurle so, that it laid vs so neere the breach of ashoald, that wee were forced to Anchor. So at feuen of the clocke at night, wee were at an Anchor in tenne fathomes: 20 And, I give God most heartie thankes, the least water wee had was seven fathomes and an halfe. We rode still all night, and at a still water I founded so farre round about our ship as we could see a light; and had no leffe then eight, nine, ten, and eleven fathomes: The myst continued being

The feuenth, faire weather and hot, but myslie. Wee rode still hoping it would cleere, but on the floud it fell calme and thicke. So we rode still all day and all night. The floud commeth from the South-west, and riseth not about one fathome and an halfe in nepe streames. Toward night it cleered, and I went with our shallop and sounded, and found no lesse water then eight fathomes to the South-east off vs : but we law to the North-west off vs great Breaches.

The eight, faire and cleere weather. In the morning, by fixe of the clocke at flake water wee 30 weighed; the wind at North-east, and set our fore-sayle and mayne top-sayle, and got a mile ouer the Flats. Then the tyde of ebbe came, so we anchored against ill the floud came. Then wee fet fayle againe, and by the great mercie of God, weegot cleere off them by one of the clocke this after-noone. And wee had fight of the Land from the West North-west, to the North North-west. So we steered away South South-east all night; and had ground vintill the middle of the third watch. Then we had fortie fine fathomes, white fand, and little stones. So all our foundings are twentie, twentie, twentie two, twentie fenen, thirtie two, fortie three, fortie three, fortie fine. Then no ground in feuentie fathomes.

The ninth, very faire and hot weather, the wind a very stiffe gale. In the morning, at four of the clocke, our shallop came running up against our sterne, and split in all her stemme; So we 40 were faine to cut her away. Then wee tooke in our mayne fayle, and lay atrie under our forefayle vntill twelue of the clocke at mid-day. Then the wind cented to a faire gale, fo wee flood away South-weft. Then we lay close by, on many courses a South by West way fifteene leagues: and three watches South-east by East, ten leagues. At eight of the clocke at night, wee tooke in our top-fayles, and went with a low fayle; because we were in an vnknewne sea. At noone we observed and found our heigth to be 38. degrees 39. minutes.

The tenth, in the morning some raine and cloudie weather: the windeat South-west, wee made our way South-east by East, ten leagues. At noone, wee observed and found our height to bee 48, degrees 39, minutes. Then wee tackt about to the Westward, the wind being at South and by East, little wind. At foure of the clocke it fell calme, and we had two Dolphines about 10 our thip, and many small fishes. At eight of the clocke at night, wee had a small lingring gale. All night we had a great Sea out of the South-west, and another great Sea out of the North-call.

The eleventh, all the fore-part of the day faire weather, and very hot. VVee flood to the VVeft South-west till noone. Then the wind shorted, and we could be but South-west and by South. At noone, wee found our heigth to bee 29. degrees 11. minutes. And that the current had laid vs to the Northward thirtie two minutes contrary to our expectation. At four of the clocks in the after-noone there came a myst, which endured two houres. But wee had it faire and cleere all night after. The Compasse varied the North point to the V Vest one whole point.

The twelfth, faire weather, the wind variable betweene the South-well and by South, and the North little wind. In the morning we killed an extraordinary fifth, and flood to the West- 60 ward all day and all night. At noone we found our heigth to be 38. degrees 13 minutes. And the observation the day before was not good. This noone, we found the Compasse to vary from the North to the West ten degrees.

The thirteenth, faire weather and hot : the wind at North-east. Wee steered away West and

by our Compafie two and twentie leagues. At noone wee found our height to bee 27, degrees 49. minutes, and that our way from noone to noone war West South-west, halfe a point Southerly. The Compaffe was 7 degrees and a halie variation; from the North point

The fourteenth, faire weather, but cloudie, and a fiffe gale of wind, wariable betweene Northeast and South-weit, wee steered away West by South, a point South all day vntill nine of the clocke at night; then it began to Thunder and Lighten, whereupon we tooke in all our fayles, and layd it a hull, and hulled away North till mid-night, a league and a halfe,

The fifteenth, very faire and hot weather, the winde at North by East. Acforre of the to clocke in the morning we fet fayle, and flood on our course to the Wellward. At noone wee found our height to bee 37. degrees 25. minutes. Theufter-noone proued little wind. At eight 37. Degrees of the clocke at night, the winde came to the North, and wee fleered West by North, and West North-west, and made our way West. The Compasse waryed 7 degrees from the

The fixteenth, faire finning weather, and very hor, the wind variable betweene the North and the West, wea steered away West by North. Atmoone wee found our height to bee 37. 37.Degrees descrees 6, minutes. This morning we sounded and had ground in nirectie fathomes, and in fixe 6, minutes. Glasses running it shoulded to fiftie fathoms, and so to eight and twentie fathoms, at foure of the clocke in the after-noone. Then wee came to an Anchor, and rode till eight of the clocke at 20 night, the wind being at South and Moone-light, we resolved to goe to the Northward to finde deeper water. So we weighed and stood to the Northward, and found the water to Boald and deepe, from eight and twentie to twentie fathomes.

The feuenteenth, faire and cleere Sun-shining weather, the winde at South by West, wee Recred to the Northward till foure of the clocke in the morning, then wee came to eighteene fathomes. So we Anchored vntill the Sunne arole to lookeabroad for Land, for wee judged there could not but be Land neere vs, but we could fee none. Then we weighed and flood to the Westward till noone. And at eleuen of the clocke wee had fight of a low Land, with a white fandie shoare. By twelve of the clocke we were come into fine fathomes, and Anchored; and the Land Alow Land was four cleagues from vs, and wee had fight of it from the West, to the North-west by with a white North Corneight was to distance of minutes. Then the minute of the land foot 30 North. Our height was 27 degrees 26 minutes. Then the wind blew fo ftiffe a gale, and fuch a 37 degrees 56 Sea went, that we could not weigh ; so we rode there all night an hard rode;

The eighteenth, in the morning faire weather, and little winde at North North-east and North-east. At foure of the clocke in the morning, we weighed and stood into the shoare to see the deeping or shoulding of it, and finding is too deepe, we stood in to get a rode; for wee faw as it were three Hands. So wee turned to windward to get into a Bay, as it shewed to vs to the Westward of an Iland. For the three Ilands did beare North off wsi. But toward noone the wind blew Northerly, with guits of wind and rayne. So we stood off into the Sea againe all night; and running off we found a Channell, wherein we had no leffe then eight, nine, ten, eleuen, and twelve fathomes water. For in comming ouer the Barre, wee had fine, and foure fathomes and a 40 halfe, and it lyeth fine leagues from the shoare, and it is the Barre of Virginia. At the North end Barre of Virginia. of it, it is ten leagues broad, and South and North, but deepe water from ninetie fathoms to five, nie and foure and a halfe. The Land weth South and North. This is the entrance into the Kings Kings River. Riner in Virginia, where our English-men are. The North file of it lyeth in 37. degrees 26. minutes, you shall know when you come to should water or sounding; for the water will looke

you come to ten, eleuen, nine, eight, seuen, ten, and nine fathomes, and so to fiue, and source fathomes and a halfe. The nineteenth, faire weather, but an hard gale of winde at the North-east, wee flood off till noone, and made our way South-east by East, two and twentie leagues. At moone wee cast Note. 50 about to the Westward, and stood till fixe of the clocke in the after-noone, and went fine leagues and a halfe North-west by North. Then wee cast about agains to the Eastward, and stood that way till foure the next morning.

Greene or thicke, you shall have ninetie and eightie fathomes, and shoalding a pice till

The twentieth, faire and cleere weather, the winde variable betweene East North-east, and North-east. At foure of the clocke in the morning, weecast about to the Westward, and stood till noone; at which time I founded; and had two and thirtie fathomes. Then we takt to the Eastward againe; wee found our height to bee 37. degrees 22. minutes. We stood to the East- 37. degrees 25. ward all night, and had very much wind. At eight of the clocke at night we tooke off our Bon- minutes nets, and flood with fmall fayle,

The one and twentieth, was a fore storme of winde and rayne all day and all night, wherefore 60 wee flood to the Eastward with a small sayle : till one of the clocke in the after-noone. Then a great Sea brake into our fore-corfe and split it; so we were forced to take it from the yard and mend it ; wee lay a trie with our mayne-corfe all night. This night our Cat ranne crying from one fide of the thip to the other, looking ouer-boord, which made vs to wonder; but we law nothing.

The Place.

minutes, and

from Cape Ced into the

A current fem

Variation 10.

Ecc

The two and twent eth, formy weather, with guits of rayne and wind. In the morning at eight of the clocke we fee our fore-corie, and food to the Eastward vader our fore-layte, maynefayle and onien, and from nonnecto noone, we made our way East South-east, fourteeneleagues, variation 4. degrees West. The night reasonable drie but cloudie, the winde variable all day and night. Our Compasse was

The three and twentieth, very faire weather, but some Thunder in the morning, the winde variable betweene East by North. At moone wee tackt about to the Northward, the winde at East by Noseh. The after-moone very faise, the wind variable, and continued so all night.

Our way we made Bast South-east, till neene the next day,

for way we made hast courn-car, measurement to see any.

The four and twentieth, faire and hoc weather, with the wind variable between the North 10 and the East. The after-moone variable winde. But at fourt of the clocke, the wind time to the East, and South-east; fo wee floered away North by Weft, and in three Warches wee went thirteene leagues. At noone our beight was 35. degrees 41. minutes, being farre off at

The five and twentieth, faire weather and very hot. All the morning was very calme vntill eleuen of the clocke; the wind came to South-east, and South South-east; fo wee steered away North-west by North, two Watches and a halfe, and one Watch North-west by West, and went eighteene leagues. At noone I found our height to bee 36, degrees 20. minutes, being

The fixe and twentieth, faire and hot weather, the winde variable upon all the points of the 20 Compalie. From two of the clocke in the morning vntill noone, were made our way North by East, seuen leagues. In the after-noone the wind came to the North-east, and vering to the East South-east, wee steered away North-west friteene leagues, from noone till ten of the clocke at night. At eight of the clocke at night wee founded, and had eighteene fathomes, and were The Banke of come to the Banke of Virginia, and could not fee the Land. Wee kept founding, and fteered a. way North, and came to eigh: fathomes, and Anchored there ; for the wind was at East Southeast, so that wee could not get off. For the Coast lyeth along South South-west, and North North-east. At noone our height was 37, degrees 15, minutes. And wee found that we were returned to the same place, from whence we were put off at our first seeing Land.

The feuen and twentieth, faire weather and very hot, the winde at East South-east. In the 20 morning as soone as the Sunne was vp, wee looked out and had fight of the Land. Then wee weighed, and flood in North-west two Glasses, and found the Land to bee the place, from whence wee put off first. So wee kept our loofe, and steered along the Land, and had the Banke Ive all along the sheare; and wee had in two leagues off the sheare, five, feven, eight. nine, and ren fathomes. The Coast lyeth South South-west, and is a white Sandie sloare, and theweth full of Bayes and Points. The streame setteth West South-west, and East Northeast. At fixe of the clocke at night, wee were thwart of an Harbour or River, but we saw a Barrelye before it; and all within the Land to the Northward, the water ranne with many Hands in it. At fixe of the clocke we Anchored, and fent our Boate to found to the shoare-ward,

and found no lelle then foure and a halfe, fine, fixe, and feuen fathomes.

The eight and twentieth, faire and hot weather, the winde at South South-west. In the morning at fixe of the clocke wee weighed, and steered away North twelve leagues till noone. and came to the Point of the Land; and being hard by the Land in fine fathomes, on a fudden wee came into three fathomes ; then we beare vp and had but ten foote water, and toyned to the Point. Then as foone as wee were over, wee had five, fixe, fenen, eight, nine, ten. twelve, and thirteene fathomes. Then wee found the Land to trend away North-weft, with a great Bay and Rivers. But the Bay wee found shoald; and in the offing wee had ten fathomes. and had fight of Breaches and drie Sand. Then wee were forced to stand backe againe; so we Rood backe South-east by South, three leagues. And at feuen of the closke wee Anchored in eight fathomes water; and found a Tide fet to the North-west, and North North-west, 50 and it rifeth one fathome, and floweth South South-east. And hee that will throughly Difcouer this great Bay, must have a small Pinnasse, that must draw but source or fine soote water, to found before him. At fine in the morning wee weighed, and steered away to the Eastward on many courses, for the Norther Land is full of shoalds. Wee were among them, and once wee strooke, and wee went away; and steered away to the South-east. So wee had

Land is full of

The nine and twentieth, faire weather, with some Thunder and showers, the winde shifting betweene the South South-west, and the North North-west. In the morning wee weighed at the breake of day, and flood toward the Norther Land, which we found to bee all Ilands to our fight, and great stormes from them, and are should three leagues off. For we comming by them, 69 had but feuen, fixe, fine, force, three, and two fathoms and a halfe, and strooke ground with our Rudder, we steered off South-west, one Glasse, and had fine fathoms. Then wee steered Southeast three Glasses, then wee found seuen fathomes, and steered North-east by East, foure leagues, and came to twelue and thirteene fathoms. At one of the clocke, I went to the top-

two, three, foure, five, and feuen fathomes, and so deeper and deeper.

CHAP. 16. Deceitfull ftreames, Three great Rivers, Salmons, Mullets, Rayes, 501

mast head, and set the Land, and the bodie of the Ilands did beare North-west by North; And at foure of the clocke, wee had gone foure leagues Eaft South-eaft, and North-eaft by East, and found but seven sathoms, and it was calme, so we Anchored. Then I went agains to the top-mast head, to see how farre I could see Land about vs, and could see no more but the Ilands. And the Souther point of them did beare North-west by West, eight leagues off. So weerode till mid-night. Then the winde came to the North North-weft, so wee waighed

The thirtieth, in the morning betweene twelue and one, we weighed, and flood to the Eaffward, the winde at North North-west, wee steered away and made our way East South-east. From our weighing till noone, eleuen leagues. Our foundings were eight, nine, ten, eleuen twelue.and thirteene fathomes till day. Then we came to eighteene, nineteene, twentie, and to fixe and twentie fathoms by noone. Then I observed the Sunne, and found the height to bee 29. degrees 5. minutes, and faw no Land. In the after-noone, the winde came to North Latindese. by Wett; So wee lay close by with our fore-sayle : and our mayne-sayle, and it was little degrees s.miwinde vntill twelue of the clocke at mid-night, then wee had a gale a little while. Then I autes. founded, and all the night our foundings were thirtie, and fixe and thirtie fathomes, and wee went little.

The one and thirtieth, faire weather and little wind. At fixe of the clocke in the morning we cast about to the Northward, the wind being at the North-east, little wind. At moone it fell 20 calme, and I found the height to bee 38 degrees 39 minutes. And the streames had deceived vs. and our founding was eight and thirtie fathoms. In the afternoone I founded againe, and had never hat thirtie fathoms, So we found that we were heaved too and fro with the streames of the Tide, Deceitfull both by our observations and our depths. From noone till foure of the clocke in the after-noone, freames, it was calme. At fixe of the clocke wee had a little gale Southerly, and it continued all night. fometimes calme, and fometimes a gale; wee went eight leagues from noone to noone. North by East.

The first of September, faire weather, the wind variable betweene East and South, we steered September. away North North-west. At noone we found our height to bee 29. degrees 2. minutes. Wee Latitude 39. had foundings thirtie, twentie seuen , twentie foure, and twentie two fathomes . as wee degrees 3, min 3C went to the Northward. At fixe of the clocke wee had one and twentie fathomes, And all the nutes, third watch till twelue of the clocke at mid-night, we had foundings one and twentie, two and twentie, eighteene, two and twentie, one and twentie, eighteene, and two and twentie fathoms. and went fixe leagues neere hand North North-west.

The second, in the morning close weather, the winde at South in the morning; from twelve untill two of the clocke we steered North North-west, and Ind founding one and twentie fathoms, and in running one Glaffe we had but fixteene fathoms, then seuenteene, and so shoulder and shoulder vntill it came to twelve fathoms. We faw a great Fire, but could not fee the Land. then we came to ten fathoms, whereupon we brought our tackes aboord, and stood to the Eastward East South-east, foure Glasses. Then the Sunne arose, and we steered away North agains. 40 and faw the Land from the West by North, to the North-west by North, all like broken llands, and our foundings were eleuen and ten fathoms. Then wee looft in for the shoare, broken llands, and faire by the shoare, we had seuen fathoms. The course along the Land we found to be North-The course a

and rate by the intert, we may return actions, a necount acong the Lama we round to be courts— eaft by North. From the Land which we lad fift fight of, whill we came to a great Lake long the Land of water, as wee could judge it to bee, being drowned Land, which made it to rife like llands, from the which was in length ten leagues. The mouth of that Lake hath many floadds, and the Sea breeze. River, to the keth on them as it is cast out of the mouth of it. And from that Lake or Bay, the Land lyeth mouth of the North by East, and wee had a great streame out of the Bay ; and from thence our sounding Norther Bay was ten fathoms, two leagues from the Land. At fine of the clocke we Anchored, being little or Lake, winde, and rode in eight fathoms water, the night was faire. This night I found the Land to Variation 8. 50 hall the Compasse 8 degrees. For to the Northward off vs we law high Hils. For the day before the Hills. we found not about 2. degrees of Variation. This is a very good Land to fall with, and a plea. 2. degrees va-The third, the morning myslie vntill ten of the clocke, then it cleered, and the wind came to Sea.

The third, the moranic mystic value and flood to the Northward. The Land is very pleafant the South South-eaft, fo were weighed and flood to the Northward. The Land is very pleafant this and a and high, and bold to fall withall. At three of the clocke in the after-noone, wee came to three bold moare, great Rivers. So we flood along to the Northermost, thinking to have gone into it, but we found Three great it to have a very shoald barre before it, for we had but ten foot water. Then wee cast about to Rivers, the Southward, and found two fathoms, three fathoms, and three and a quarter, till we came to The Northerthe Souther fide of them, then we had fine and fixe fathoms, and Anchored. So wee fent in our ment bettered.

Roste to found and they found no leffe water then fours fine for and found follows and an excellent 60 Boate to found, and they found no leffe water then foure, five, fixe, and feuen fathoms, and re- River. turned in an houre and a halfe. So wee weighed and went in, and rode in fine fathoms, Ozie Latitude 40. ground, and faw many Salmons, and Mullets, and Rayes very great. The height is 40. de. digrees 30.min grees 20. minutes.

The fourth, in the morning as foone as the day was light, wee faw that it was good riding

degrect : 5. mi-This agreeth Tyndall

eth South

South-weft.

North weff.

Latirade 37.

and North

The Point of the Land.

A great Bay

A fmall Shallop needfull.

The Norther

A very good Harbour.

ciuill

Dryed Cur.

Mantles of

Red Copper.

Hempe.

farther vp. So we fent our Boate to found, and found that it was a very good Harbour; and foure and fine fathoms, two Cables length from the shoare. Then we weighed and went in with our ship. Then our Boate went on Land with our Net to Fish, and caught ten great Mullets, of a foot and a halfe long a peece, and a Ray as great as foure men could hale into the ship. So wee trimmed our Boate and rode still all day. At night the wind blew hard at the North-west, and our Anchor came home, and wee droue on shoare, but tooke no hurt, thanked bee God, for the The people of ground is foft fand and Oze. This day the people of the Countrey came aboord of vs, seeming ground is not raine and Oze. I mis may the people of the control years and control years are dead.

very glad of our comming, and brought greene Tabacco, and gate vs of it for Knitter and Read.

They goe in Deere skins loofe, well drefted. They have yellow Copper. They define Cleathet, come aboord. they are very and are very civill. They have great flore of Maiz or Indian Wheate, whereof they make good 10

Yellow Cop-Bread. The Countrey is full of great and tall Oakes. Tall Oakesa

The fifth, in the morning as foone as the day was light, the wind ceased and the Flood came. So we heated off our ship againe into fine fathoms water, and sent our Boate to found the Bay, The great Bay and we found that there was three fathoms hard by the Souther shoare. Our men went on Land and 30 minute. there, and law great store of Men, Women and Children, who gave them Tabacco at their comming on Land. So they went up into the Woods, and faw great flore of very goodly Oakes and fome Currants. For one of them came aboord and brought fome dryed, and gaue me fome, which were sweet and good. This day many of the people came aboord, some in Mantles of Feathers, Feathers, Furs, and some in Skinnes of divers forts of good Furres. Some women also came to vs with Hempe. They had red Copper Tabacco pipes, and other things of Copper they did weare 20 about their neckes. At night they went on Land againe, so wee rode very quiet, but durst

not truff them.

to the North-A narrow Riner to the Westward.

The fixth, in the morning was faire weather, and our Master fent lobs Colman, with foure on Another River ther men in our Boate over to the North-fide, to found the other River, being four leagues from vs. They found by the way should water two fathoms; but at the North of the River eighteen. and twentie fathoms, and very good riding for Ships; and a narrow River to the Westward betweene two llands. The Lands they told vs were as pleasant with Grasse and Flowers, and goodly Trees, as euer they had feene, and very fweet smells came from them. So they went in two leagues and faw an open Sea, and returned; and as they came backe, they were fet vpon by two Canoes, the one having twelve, the other fourteene men. The night came on, and it began to rayne, so that their Match went out; and they had one man slaine in the fight, which was an English-man, named Iohn Colman, with an Arrow shot into his throat, and two morehurt. It grew fo darke that they could not find the ship that night, but labored too and fro on their Oares. They had so great a streame, that their grapnell would not hold them.

Colman Slaine,

The feuenth, was faire, and by ten of the clocke they returned aboord the ship, and brought our dead man with them, whom we carryed on Land and buryed, and named the point after his colmans Point. name, Colmans Point. Then we hoyfed in our Boate, and raifed her fide with waste boords for defence of our men. So we rode still all night, having good regard to our Watch.

The eight, was very faire weather, wee rode still very quietly. The people came aboord vs, and brought Tabacco and Indian Wheat, to exchange for Kniues and Beades, and offered vs no 40 violence. So we fitting vp our Boate did marke them, to fee if they would make any shew of the Death of our man; which they did not.

Seuages.

The ninth faire weather. In the morning, two great Canoes came abourd full of men; the one with their Bowes and Arrowes, and the other in thew of buying of Kniues to betray vs; but we perceived their intent. Wee tooke two of them to have kept them, and put red Coates on them, and would not fuffer the other to come neere vs. So they went on Land, and two other came aboord in a Canoe: we tooke the one and let the other goe; but hee which wee had taken, got vp and leapt ouer-boord. Then we weighed and went off into the channell of the Riner, and Anchored there all night.

The tenth, faire weather, we rode (till till twelue of the clocke. Then we weighed and went ouer, and found it (hoald all the middle of the Riuer, for wee could finde but two fathoms and a halfe, and three fathomes for the space of a league ; then wee came to three fathomes, and foure fathomes, and to to seven fathomes, and Anchored, and rode all night in toft Ozie ground. The banke is Sand.

The eleventh, was faire and very hot weather. At one of the clocke in the after-noone, wee weighed and went into the River, the wind at South South-weft, little winde. Our foundings were seuen, fixe, fixe, seuen, eight, nine, ten, twelue, thirteene, and fourteene fathomes. Then it shoalded againe, and came to five fathomes. Then wee Anchored, and saw that it was a Good Harbour very good Harbour for all windes, and rode all night. The people of the Country came about very good riarrount to all willows and gaue vs Tabacco and Indian Wheat, and departed for that night; but we durit not truft them.

The twelfth, very faire and hot. In the after-noone at two of the clocke wee weighed, the winde being variable, betweene the North and the North-west. So we turned into the River two leagues and Anchored. This morning at our first rode in the River, there came eight and

twentie Canoes full of men, women and children to betray vs : but we faw their intent, and fuffered none of them to come aboord of vs. At twelve of the clocke they departed. They of men. brought with them Oysters and Beanes, whereof wee bought some. They have great Tabacco Oysters and pipes of yellow Copper, and Pots of Earth to dreffe their meate in. It floweth South-east by Beanes.

Copper Pipes South within.

The thirteenth, faire weather, the wind Northerly. At feuen of the clocke in the morning, as the floud came we weighed, and turned foure miles into the Riuer. The tide being done wee anchored. Then there came foure Canoes aboord : but we fuffered none of them to come into our ship. They brought great store of very good Oysters aboord, which we bought for trifles. To In the night I fet the variation of the Compaffe, and found it to be 13. degrees. In the after- Variation 23. noone we weighed, and turned in with the floud, two leagues and a halfe further, and anchored degrees.

all night, and had five fathoms foft Ozie ground, and had an high point of Land, which shewed out to vs. bearing North by East five leagues off vs.

The fourteenth, in the morning being very faire weather, the wind South-east, we sayled vo the River twelve leagues, and had five fathoms, and five fathoms and a quarter leffe; and came to a Streight betweene two Points, and had eight, nine, and ten fathoms; and it trended Northeast by North, one league: and wee had twelve, thirteene and fourteene fathomes. The Riuer is a mile broad : there is very high Land on both fides. Then wee went vp North-weft, a The River a league and an halfe deepe water. Then North-east by North fue miles; then North-west milebroad. 20 by North two leagues, and anchored. The Land grew very high and Mountainous. The Very high and River is full of fish.

The fifteenth, in the morning was mifty untill the Sunne arofe; then it cleared. So wee weighed with the wind at South, and ran vp into the River twentie leagues, paffing by high Mountaines. Wee had a very good depth, as fixe, feuen, eight, nine, ten, twelue, and thirteene fathoms, and great store of Salmons in the River. This morning our two Savages got out of a Port and Iwam away. After we were under fayle, they called to vs in fcorne. At night we came to other Mountaines, which lie from the Risers side. There wee found very louing people, and Very louing very old men : where wee were well vied. Our Boat went to fifth, and caught great flore of People. very good fifh.

The fixteenth, faire and very hot weather. In the morning our Boat went agains to fishing. but could catch but few, by reason their Canoes had beene there all night. This morning the people came aboord, and brought vs eares of Indian Corne, and Pompions, and Tabacco: which Maiz, Pomple wee bought for trifles. Wee rode ftill all day, and filled fresh water; at night wee weighed and bacco. went two leagues higher, and had shoald water : so wee anchored till day.

The feuenteenth, faire Sun-shining weather, and very hot. In the morning as soone as the Sun was vp, we fet fayle, and ran vp fixe leagues higher, and found shoulds in the middle of the Shoulds and channell, and small Hands, but seuen fathoms water on both sides. Toward night we borrowed small Hands so neere the shoare, that we grounded : so we layed out our small anchor, and heaved off agains. Then we borrowed on the banke in the channell, and came aground againe; while the floud ran

40 we heaved off againe, and anchored all night.

The eighteenth, in the morning was faire weather, and we rode still. In the after-noone out Masters Mate went on land with an old Sauage, a Gouernour of the Countrey; who carried him to his house, and made him good cheere. The nineteenth, was faire and hot weather: at the foud being neere eleven of the clocke, wee weighed, and ran higher vo two leagues about the Shoalds, and had no leffe water then five fathoms: wee anchored, and rode in eight fathomes. The people of the Countrie came flocking aboord, and brought vs Grapes, and Pompions, which Grapes and wee bought for trifles. And many brought vs Beuers skinnes, and Otters skinnes, which wee Pompions:
Beauers and Handess Course and Handess Course and Alambers Course and Handess Course bought for Beades, Kniues, and Hatchets. So we rode there all night.

Otters skins

The twentieth, in the morning was faire weather. Our Mafters Mate with foure men more so went vp with our Boat to found the River, and found two leagues aboue vs but two fathomes water, and the channell very narrow; and aboue that place seuen or eight fathomes. Toward night they returned: and we rode still all night. The one and twentieth, was faire weather, and the wind all Southerly: we determined yet once more to goe farther vp into the River, to trie what depth and breadth it did beare; but much people reforted aboord, so wee went not this day. Our Carpenter went on land, and made a Fore-yard. And our Master and his Mate determined to trie some of the chiefe men of the Countrey, whether they had any treacherie in them. So they tooke them downe into the Cabbin, and gaue them so much Wine and Aqua vita, that they were . Il merrie: and one of them had his wife with him, which fate To modestly, as any of our Countrey women would doe in a strange place. In the end one of them was 60 drunke, which had beene aboord of our ship all the time that we had beene there; and that was ftrange to them; for they could not tell how to take it. The Canoes and folke went all on shoare: but some of them came againe, and brought stropes of Beades : some had sixe, seuen, eight, nine, ten , and gaue him. So he flept all night quietly.

The two and twentieth, was faire weather: in the morning our Mafters Mate and foure more

Ece 3

of the companie went up with our Boat to found the River higher up. The people of the Counor the companie went system on some command and the same system proposed the country came not about dill noone; but when they came, and faw the Sausges well, they were glad. So at three of the clocke in the after-noone they came aboord, and brought Tabacco, and more Beades, and gaue them to our Mafter, and made an Oration, and shewed him all the Countrey tound about. Then they fent one of their co apanie on land, who prefently returned, and brought a great Platter full of Venilon, dreffed by themselves; and they caused him to eate with them: then they made him reuerence, and departed all faue the old man that lay abound. This night at ten of the clocke, our Boat returned in a flowere of raine from founding of the Riser; End of the Ri. and found it to bee at an end for thipping to goe in. For they had beene vp eight or nine leagues, uers Nouiga.' and found but seuen foot water, and voconstant soundings.

They returne downe the

Riuer.

trees, &c.

Oration.

The three and twentieth, faire weather. At twelve of the clocke wee weighed, and went downe two leagues to a should that had two channels, one on the one side, and another on the other, and had little wind, whereby the tide layed vs vpon it. So, there wee fate on ground the oner, and nature whose whereby the case of all little gale of wind at the Well. So wee got our ship into deepe water, and rode all night very well.

The foure and twentieth was faire weather: the winde at the North-west, wee weighed, and went downe the River feven or eight leagues; and at halfe ebbe wee came on ground on a banke of Oze in the middle of the Ruter, and fate there till the floud. Then wee went on Storeof Cheft. Land, and gathered good flore of Cheft-nuts. At ten of the clocke weecame off into deepe

The fine and twentieth was faire weather, and the wind at South a stiffe gale. We rode still, and went on Land to walke on the Weft fide of the River, and found good ground for Corne, Okes, Wal-nut and other Garden herbs, with great flore of goodly Oakes, and Wal-nut trees, and Cheft-nut meetices, Ewe trees, and trees of fweet wood in great abundance, and great flore of Slate for houses.

The fixe and twentieth was faire weather, and the wind at South a stiffe gale, wee rode still. In the morning our Carpenter went on Land with our Masters Mate, and soure more of our companie to cut wood. This morning, two Canoes came up the River from the place where we first found louing people, and in one of them was the old man that had lyen abound of vesat the other place. He brought another old man with him, which brought more ftropes of Beades, and 30 gaue them to our Master, and shewed him all the Countrey there about, as though it were at his command. So he made the two old men dine with him, and the old mans wife: for they brought two old women, and two young maidens of the age of fixteene or feuenteeneyeeres with them, who behaued themselues very modestly. Our Master gaue one of the old men a Knife, and they gaue him and vs Tabacco. And at one of the clocke they departed downe the River, making fignes that wee should come downe to them ; for wee were within two leagues of the place where they dwelt.

The feuen and twentieth, in the morning was faire weather, but much wind at the North, we weighed and fet our fore top-sayle, and our ship would not stat, but ran on the Ozie banke at halfe ebbe. Wee layed out anchor to heave her off, but could not. So wee fate from halfe 40 ebbe to halfe floud: then wee fet our fore-fayle and mayne top-fayle, and got downe fixe leagues. The old man came aboord, and would have had vs anchor, and goe on Land to eate with him : but the wind being faire, we would not yeeld to his request; So heeleft vs, being very forrowfull for our departure. At fine of the clocke in the after-noone, the wind came to the South South-west. So wee made a boord or two, and anchored in fourteene fathomes water, Then our Boat went on shoare to fish right against the ship. Our Masters Mate and Boat-swaine, and three more of the companie went on land to fifh, but could not finde a good place. They tooke foure or fine and twentie Mullets, Breames, Bafes, and Barbils; and returned in an houre.

The eight and twentieth, being faire weather, as soone as the day was light, wee weighed at 50 halfe ebbe, and turned downe two leagues belowe water; for, the streame doth runne the last quarter ebbe: then we anchored till high water. At three of the clocke in the after-noone we weighed, and turned downe three leagues, vntill it was darke : then wee anchored.

The nine and twentieth was drie close weather: the wind at South, and South and by West, we weighed early in the morning, and turned downe three leagues by a lowe water, and anchored at the lower end of the long Reach; for it is fixe leagues long. Then there came certaine Indians in a Canoe to vs. but would not come aboord. After dinner there came the Canoe with other men , whereof three came aboord vs. They brought Indian Wheat, which wee bought for trifles. At three of the clocke in the after-noone wee weighed, as soone as the ebbe came, and turned downe to the edge of the Mountaines, or the Northermost of the Mountaines, and 69 anchored: because the high Land hath many Points, and a narrow channell, and hath many eddie winds. So we rode quietly all night in seuen fathoms water,

The thirtieth was faire weather, and the wind at South-east a stiffe gale between the Mountaynes. We rode still the after-moone. The people of the Countrey came aboord vs, and brought

fome small skinnes with them, which we bought for Kniues and Trifles. This a very pleasant Small skins. place to build a Towne on. The Road is very neere, and very good for all winds, faue an East Apleasant North-east wind. The Mountaynes looke as if some Metall or Minerall were in them. For the place to build Trees that grow on them were all blafted, and some of them barren with few or no Trees on a Towne on them. The people brought a stone aboord like to Emery (a stone vied by Glassers to cut Glasse) it would cut Iron or Steele: Yet being bruifed small, and water put to it, it made a colour like Likelihood of blacke Lead gliftering; It is also good for Painters Colours. At three of the clocke they depar. Minerals. ted, and we rode still all night.

The first of October, faire weather, the wind variable betweene the West and the North. In Octobers In the morning we weighed at feuen of the clocke with the ebbe, and got downe below the Moun-

taynes, which was feuen leagues. Then it fell calme and the floud was come, and wee anchored at twelve of the clocke. The people of the Mountaynes came abourd vs, wondring at our ship and weapons. We bought fome small skinnes of them for Trifles. This after-noone, one Canoe kept hanging vnder our sterne with one man in it, which we could not keepe from thence, who got vp by our Rudder to the Cabin window, and stole out my Pillow, and two Shirts, and two Bandeleeres. Our Masters Mate shot at him, and strooke him on the brest, and killed him. Whereupon all the rest fled away, some in their Canoes, and so leapt out of them into the watet. We manned our Boat, and got our things againe. Then one of them that swamme got hold of our Boat, thinking to ouerthrow it . But our Cooke tooke a Sword, and cut off one of his hands, and 20 he was drowned. By this time the ebbe was come, and we weighed and got downe two leagues, by that time it was darke. So we anchored in foure fathomes water, and rode well-

The second, faire weather. At breake of day wee weighed, the wind being at North-west, and got downe senen leagues; then the floud was come strong, so we anchored. Then came one and got cownie tender agon, of the Sauges that iwamme away from vast our going vp the Ruser with many other, thinking Treachetle of to betray vs. But wee perceined their intent , and fuffered none of them to enter our fhip, the Sausee. Whereupon two Canoes full of men, with their Bowes and Arrowes shot at vs after our sterne: A skirmish and in recompence whereof we discharged fixe Muskers, and killed two or three of them. Then 2- flaughter of boue an hundred of them came to a point of Land to shoot at vs. There I shot a Falcon at them, the Sauages. and killed two of them: whereupon the rest fled into the Woods. Yet they manned off another

30 Canoe with nine or ten men, which came to meet vs. So I that at it alfo a Falcon, and shot it through, and killed one of them. Then our men with their Muskets, killed three or foure more of them. So they went their way, within a while after, wee got downe two leagues beyond that place, and anchored in a Bay, cleere from all danger of them on the other fide of the River, where we faw a very good piece of ground : and hard by it there was a Cliffe, that looked of the A Myne of colour of a white greene, as though it were either Copper, or Silver Myne : and I thinke it to be Copper or one of them, by the Trees that grow vpon it. For they be all burned, and the other places are Siluer. greene as graffe, it is on that fide of the River that is called Manna-bata. There we faw no people to trouble vs: and rode quietly all night; but had much wind and raine.

The third, was very stormie; the wind at East North-east. In the morning, in a gust of wind 40 and raine our Anchor came home, and we droue on ground, but it was Ozie. Then as we were about to haue out an Anchor, the wind came to the North North-west, and droue vs off agains. Then we shot an Anchor, and let it fall in foure fathomes water, and weighed the other. Wee had much wind and raine, with thicke weather; so we roade still all night,

The fourth, was faire weather, and the wind at North North-west, wee weighed and came out of the River, into which we had runne so farre. Within a while after, wee came out also of The great mouth of the great River, that runneth vp to the North-west, borrowing vpon the Thegreat mouth Norther fide of the same, thinking to have deepe water : for wee had founded a great way with of the great Riour Boat at our first going in, and found seuen, fix, and five fathomes. So we came out that way, "".

but we were deceived, for we had but eight foot & an halfe water; and fo to three, five, three, and 50 two fathomes and an halfe. And then three, foure, fine, fixe, seuen, eight, nine and ten fathomes. And by twelve of the clocke we were cleete of all the Inlet. Then we tooke in our Boat, and fet And by twelte of the clocke we were cleere of all the Inlet. Then we tooke in our Boat, and let our mayne-fayle and sprit-fayle, and our top-fayles, and strered away East South-east, and the Cossit of the Cossit of South-east by East off into the mayne sea : and the Land on the Souther-fide of the Bay or Inlet, did beare at noone West and by South foure leagues from vs.

The fift, was faire weather, and the wind variable betweene the North and the Eaft. Wee held on our course South-east by East. At noone I observed and found our height to bee 39. degrees 30, minutes. Our Compaffe varied fixe degrees to the West,

We continued our course toward England, without seeing any Land by the way, all the rest of this moneth of October : And on the feuenth day of Nouember , file none , being Satur-60 day : by the Grace of God we fafely arrived in the Range of Darmont in Denonfoire, in the

CH AP. 17. Cape Worfenholme. Cape Digs. Loufic Bay. Store of Whales.

An Abstract of the Iournall of Master HENRY HYDSON, for the Discourrie of the North west Passage, begunne the seuenteenth of Aprill, 1610. ended with his end, being treacheroully exposed by some of the Companie.

Aprill 17.

He seventeenth of Aprill, 1610. we brake ground, and went downe from Saint Ke. tharines Poole, and fell downe to Blacke-wall : and fo plyed downe with the IC fhips to Lee, which was the two and twentieth day.

The two and twentieth, I caused Master Coleburne to bee put into a Pinke. bound for London, with my Letter to the Aduenturers, in porting the reason wherefore I fo put him out of the ship, and so plyed forth.

May. The Iles of Oriney.

The second of May, the wind Southerly, at Eeuen we were thwart of Flamberough Head. The fift, we were at the Iles of Orkney, and here I fet the North end of the Needle, and the North of the Flie all one.

Note. Farre Ilands 62 degrees 24. Westmany.

The fixt, wee were in the latitude of 59. degrees 22. minutes, and there perceived that the North end of Scotland, Orney, and Shotland are not to Northerly, as is commonly fet downe. The eight day, wee faw Farre llands, in the latitude of 62. degrees 24. minutes. The eleventh 20 day, we fell with the Easter part of Island, and then plying along the Souther part of the Land. we came to Westmony, being the fifteenth day, and still plyed about the mayne lland, vntill the last of May with contrary winds, and we got some Fowles of divers sorts. The first day of Iune, we put to Sea out of an Harbour, in the Westermost part of Island, and

fo plyed to the Westward in the latitude of 66.degrees 24, minutes, and the second day plyed and found our selves in 65. degrees 57. minutes, with little wind Easterly.

The third day, wee found our selues in 65. degrees 30. minutes, with winde at North-eaft, little before this we fayled neere some Ice.

Graneland.

Iune.

The fourth day, we faw Groneland ouer the Ice perfectly, and this night the Sunne went downe due North, and rofe North North-east. So plying the fift day, we were in 65. degrees, 30 fill encombred with much Ice, which hung vpon the Coaft of Groneland, The ninth day, wee were off Frobibers Streights with the winde Northerly, and plyed vnto

Frobificers Streights.

the South-weltwards untill the fifteenth day. The fifteenth day, we were in fight of the land, in latitude 59. degrees 27. minutes, which was called by Captayne lobn Danis, Defolation, and found the errour of the former laying downe of Defelation. that Land : and then running to the North-westward untill the twentieth day, wee found the fhip in 60. degrees 42. minutes, and faw much Ice, and many Riplings or Ouer-fals, and a firong AcurrentWeft ftreame fetting from East South-east, to West North-west.

The one and twentie, two and twentie, and three and twentie dayes, with the winde variable, we plyed to the North-westward in fight of much Ice, into the height of 62. degrees 40

East entrance into the

The foure and twentie, and fine and twentie dayes, fayling to the West-ward about midnight, wee faw Land North, which was fuddenly loft againe. So wee ranne still to the West-Streights. ward in 62. degrees 17. minutes.

July.

The fift of luly, wee plyed up upon the Souther fide, troubled with much Ice in feeking the shoare vntill the fift day of July, and we observed that day in 59 degrees 16. minntes. Then we plyed off the shoare againe, vntill the eight day, and then found the height of the Pole in 60. degrees no minutes. Here we saw the Land from the North-west by West, halfe Norther-Defreprensets. ly vnto the South-west by West, couered with snow, a Champaigne Land, and called it, De-

growne Sea.

We still plyed up to the Westward, as the Land and Ice would suffer untill the eleventh day; when fearing a storme, we anchored by three Rockie Ilands in vncertayne depth, betweene two and nine fathomes; and found it an Harbour vnfufficient by reason of lunken Rockes, one of which was next morning two fathomes about water. Wee called them the Iles of Gods Mercies. The water floweth here better then foure fathomes. The Floud commeth from the North, flowing eight the change day. The latitude in this place is 62. degrees 9. minutes. Then plying to the South-wellward the fixteenth day, wee were in the latitude of \$8. degrees 50. minutes, but found our felues imbayed with Land, and had much Ice : and we plyed to the North-westward vntill the nineteenth day, and then wee found by observation the height of the Pole in 61. degrees 24. minutes, and faw the Land, which I na- 60 Woldswith Hope, med, Hold with Hope. Hence I plyed to the North-westward still, vntill the one and twentieth day, with the wind variable. Heere I found the Sea more growne, then any wee had since wee left England.

The three and twentieth day, by observation the height of the Pole was 61. degrees 33. mi-

nutes. The fine and twentieth day, we faw the Land; and named it Magna Britannia. The fixe Magna Britan and twentieth day, wee observed and found the latitude in 62. degrees 44. minutes. The eight and twentieth day, we were in the height of 63. degrees 10, minutes, and plyed Southerly of the West. The one and thirtieth day, plying to the Westward, at noone wee found our seluces in 62. degrees 24. minutes.

The first of August, we had fight of the Northerneshoare, from the North by East to the West Angus. by South off vs: the North part twelve leagues, and the Wester part twentie leagues from vs: and we had no ground there at one hundred and eightie fathomes. And I thinke I faw Land on the Sunne fide, but could not make it perfectly, bearing East North-east. Here I found the latie

10 tude 62 degrees co. minutes.

20

fed bee God.

The second day, we had sight of a faire Head-land, on the Norther shoare six leagues off, which I called Salisburies Fore-land : we ranne from them Well South-well, fourteene leagues : In the mid-way of which wee were fuddenly come into a great and whurling Sea, whether caused by fore landmeeting of two streames, or an Ouer-fall, I know not. Thence fayling West and by South fe- A great and uen leagues farther, we were in the mouth of a Streight and founded, and had no ground at one whurling Seas uen leagues farther, we were in the mouth of a streight and iounded, and had no ground at one hundred fathomes: the Streight being there not about wo leagues broad, in the paffage in this A Streight being there not about wo leagues broad, in the paffage in this Michael we which led we Wester part : which from the Easter part of Freimm Danis, is distant two hundred and fiftie into the deep

The third day, we put through the narrow passage, after our men had beene on Land, which great Muries. 20 had well observed there, That the Floud did come from the North, flowing by the shoare five fathomes. The head of this entrance on the South fide, I named Cape Werfenbolme; and the head Cape Werfenon the North-wester shoare, I called Cape Dies. After wee had failed with an Easterly winder below. West and by South ten leagues, the Land fell away to the Southward, and the other Hes and Cape Dig. Land left vs to the Westward. Then I observed and found the ship at noone in 61. degrees 20. minutes, and a Sea to the Westward,

A larger Discourse of the same Voyage, and the successe thereof, written by ABACYKPRICKET.

理E began our Voyage for the North-west passage; the seventeenth of Aprill, 1610. Thwart of Sheper, our Mafter fent Mafter Colbert backe to the Owners with his Letter. The next day we weighed from hence, and stood for Harrich, and came thicker the eight and twentieth of Aprill. From Hawich we fet fayle the first of May, along

the Coast to the North, till we came to the Hes of Orkney, from thence to the Hes of Fare, and Orkney, from thence to Island : on which we fell in a fogge, hearing the Rut of the Sea ashoare, but faw Farrelles. not the Land whereupon our Master came to an Anchor. Heere we were embayed in the South- Island. east part of the Land. Wee weighed and stood along the Coast, on the West side towards the 40 North: but one day being calme, we fell a fishing, and caught good store of fish, as Cod and Ling. and Butte, with some other forts that we knew not. The next day, we had a good gale of wind at South-weft, and rayfed the Iles of Weftmonie, where the King of Denmarke hath a Fortreffe, weftmonie

by which we palled to rayle the Snow Hill foot, a Mountayne to called on the North-west part Hand. of the Land. But in our course we saw that famous Hill, Mount Heele, which cast out much Mount Heele fire, a figne of foule weather to come in short time. Wee leave Ifand a sterne of vs, and met a castethout fire. Mayne of Ice, which did hang on the North part of "flund", and stretched downe to the West, A mayne of which when our Master law, he stood backe for Island to find an Harbour, which we did on the North-west part, called * Derefer, where wee killed good store of Fowle. From hence wee * Or Direferd. put to Sea againe, but (neither wind nor weather feruing) our Mafter stood backe for this Harbour againe, but could not reach it, but fell with another to the South of that, called by our

50 Englifbmen, Loufie Bay : where on the shoare we found an hot Bath, and heere all our Englishmen Loufie Bay. bathed themselues : the water was so hot that it would so ld a Fowle.

From hence the first of lune, we put to Sea for Groneland, but to the West wee law Land as The first of we thought, for which we beare the best part of a day, but it proued but a foggie banke. So wee lune, gaue it ouer, and made for Gronland, which we rayled the fourth of June. V pon the Coast thereof hung good store of Ice, so that our Master could not attayne to the shoare by any meanes. The Land in this part is very Mountaynous, and full of round Hils, like to Sugar-loanes, covered with fnow. We turned the Land on the South fide, as neere as the Ice would fuffer vs. Our course for the most part was betweene the West and North-west, till we rayled the Defolations, Hand of Defofo which is a great Hand in the West part of Groneland. On this Coast we faw store of Whales, lation. and at one time three of them came close by vs, so as wee could hardly shunne them then two Store of Whales, passing very neere, and the third going under our ship, wee received no harme by them, pray-

From the Desolations our Master made his way North-west, the wind being against him, who

elfe would have gone more to the North: but in this course we saw the first great lland or Monntayne of Ice, whereof after we faw store. About the latter end of June, we rayled Land to the North of vs. which our Mafter tooke to bee that Hand which Mafter Danis fetteth downe in his Chart. On the West side of his Streight, our Master would have gone to the North of it. but the wind would not fuffer him : fo we fell to the South of it, into a great Rippling or ouer. fall of current, the which ferteth to the West. Into the current we went, and made our way to the North of the West, till we met with Ice which hung on this Iland. Wherefore our Mafter calling about, cleered himselfe of this Ice, and ftood to the South, and then to the West. through store of sloting Ice, and vpon the Ice store of Seales. We gained a cleere Sea, and conthrough note of nothing acc, and per property of the final results and then with flore of the smaller 10 fort. Betweene them we made our course North-west, till we met with Ice againe. But, in this our going betweene the Ice, we saw one of the great Hands of Ice ouerturne, which was a good warning to vs, not to come nigh them, nor within their reach. Into the Ice weep ut ahead, as Iland of Ice obetweene two Lands. The next day we had a florme, and the wind brought the Ice so fast voon vs, that in the end we were driven to put her into the chiefest of the Ice, and there to let her lie, Some of our men this day fell ficke, I will not fay it was for feare, although I faw small figne of

uerturnerb. Danger by Ice.

The storme ceasing, we stood out of the Ice, where wee faw any cleere Sea to goe to; which was sometime more, and sometime lesse. Our course was as the Ice did lye, sometime to the North, then to the North-west, and then to the West, and to the South-west : but still inclo- 20 fed with Ice. Which when our Mafter faw, he made his course to the South, thinking to cleere himselfe of the Ice that way : but the more he stroue, the worse he was, and the more inclosed. till we could goe no further. Here our Master was in despaire, and (as he told me after) he thought he should neuer haue got out of this Ice, but there haue perished. Therefore hee brought forth his Card, and shewed all the company, that hee was entred aboue an hundred leagues further then euer any English was : and left it to their choice, whether they would proceed any further: yea, or nay. Whereupon, some were of one minde, and some of another, some wishing themany had been. felues at home, and fome not caring where, fo they were out of the Ice : but there were some who then spake words, which were remembred a great while after.

Discontents.

There was one who told the Master, that if he had an hundred pounds, hee would give foure- 30 score and ten to be at home : but the Carpenter made answere, that if hee had an hundred , hee would not give ten vpon any fuch condition, but would thinke it to be as good money as ever he had any, and to bring it as well home, by the leaue of God. After many words to no purpofe, to worke we must on all hands, to get our felues out, and to cleere our ship. After much labour and time front, we gained roome to turne our ship in, and so by little and little, to get clere in the Sea a league or two off, our course being North and North-west.

In the end, we rayfed Land to the South-west, high Land and coursed with Snow. Our Ma-Desire promotes. ster named this Land, Desire promotes. Lying here, wee heard the noyse of a great over-fall of a tyde, that came out of the Land: for now we might fee well, that wee had beene embayed before, and time had made vs know, being fo well acquainted with the Ice, that when night, or 40 foggie, or foule weather tooke vs, we would feeke out the broadest Iland of Ice, and there come to anchor and runne, and sport, and fill water that stood on the Ice in Ponds, both sweete and good. But after we had brought this Land to beare South of vs, we had the tyde and the current to open the Ice, as being carried first one way, and then another : but in Bayes they lye as in a pond without mouing. In this Bay where were thus troubled with Ice, wee faw many of those Mountaynes of Ice aground, in fixe or seven score fathome water. In this our course we faw a Beare vpon a piece of Ice by it felfe, to the which our men gaue chase with their Boat : but before they came nigh her, the tyde had carried the Ice and the Beare on it, and joyned it with the other Ice : fo they loft their labour, and came abourd againe.

Exercises of pleafure and profit on the Difference of Tydes and Lee about 100.

We continued our course to the North-west, and rayled Land to the North of our course, to- 50 ward which we made, and comming nigh it, there hung on the Eastermost point, many Ilands of floting Ice, and a Beare on one of them, which from one to another came towards vs. till she was readie to come aboord. But when the faw vs looke at her, the cast her head betweene her hinder legges, and then dived vnder the Ice : and fo from one piece to another, till she was out of our reach. We flood along by the Land on the Southfide ahead of vs, wee met with Ice that hung on a point of Land that lay to the South , more then this that we came vp by : which when our Master faw, he stood in for the shoate. At the West end of this lland (for so it is) we found an Harbour, and came in (at a full Sea) ouer a Rocke, which had two fathome and an halfe on it, and was so much bare at a low water. But by the great mercie of God, we came to an Anchor cleare of it; and close by it, our Master named them , the Iles of Gods Mercie. This is an Har- 60 bour for need, but there must be care had how they come in. Heere our Master sent me, and others with me, to discouer to the North and North-west : and in going from one place to another, we sprung a Couey of Partridges which were young : at the which Thomas Woodbonse shot, but killed only the old one. This Hand is a most barren place, having nothing on it but

A dangerous

Iles of Gods

Partridges.

plashes of water and riven Rockes, as if it were subject to Earthquakes. To the North there is a great Bay, or Sea (for I know not what it will prove) where I faw a great Hand of Ice aground. betweene the two Lands, which with the Spring-tide was fet affoat, and carried into this Bay or Sea to the North-westward, but came not backe againe, nor within fight. Here wee tooke in tione Drift wood that we found ashoare. From hence westood to the South-west, to double the Land to the West of vs. through much

floting Ice: In the end wee found a cleere Sea, and continued therein, till wee rayfed Land to the North-west. Then our Master made his course more to the South then before ; but it was not long ere we met with Ice which lay shead of vz. Our Mafter would have doubled this Ice to the North, but could not; and in the end put into it downe to the South-west through much Ice, and then to the South, where we were embayed agame. Our Mafter ftrone to get the fhoure. but could not, for the great store of Lee that was on the coast. From out of this Bay, we stood to the North, and were foone out of the Ice : then downe to the South-west, and so to the West. where we were enclosed (to our fight) with Land and Ice. For wee had Land from the South to the North-west on one fide, and from the East to the West on the other; but the Land that was to the North of vs, and lay by East and West, was but an Iland. On we wene till we could goe no further for Ice: fo we made our thip fast to the Ice which the tide brought youn vs . but when the ebbe came, the Ice did open, and made way; fo as in feuen or eight houres we were cleere from the Ice, till we came to weather ; but onely fome of the great Hands, that were carag ried along with vs to the North-west.

Hauing a cleere Sea, our Master stood to the West along by the South shoare, and rayled three Canes or Head-lands, lying one aboue another. The middlemost is an Iland, and maketh a Bay Three Capes, or Harbour, which (I take) will proue a good one. Our Mafter named them Prince Henries Prince Henries Cape, or Fore-land. When we had layd this we railed another, which was the extreme point Cape. of the Land, looking towards the North: woon it are two Hills, but one (about the reft) like an Hay-cock; which our Mafter named, Nig James his Cape, To the North of this, lie cer. King Lames his taine Hands, which our Mafter named, Queene Annes Cape, or Fore-land. Wee followed the Cape.
North floare fill. Beyond the Kings Cape there is a Sound or Bay, that hath form Hands in the Cape of the Cape it : and this is not to be forgotten, if need be. Beyond this, lieth some broken Land, close to

20 the Mayne, but what it is I know not : because we passed by it in the night. Wee flood to the North to double this Land, and after to the Weft againe, till wee fell with Land that firetched from the Mayne, like a shewer from the South to the North , and from the North to the West, and then downe to the South againe. Being short of this Land, a fforme tooke vs, the wind at West, we stood to the North, and raised Land : which when our Master faw, he stood to the South againe; for he was loath at any time that wee should fee the North shoare. The storme continuing, and comming to the South shoare againe, our Master found him. Note. selfe shot to the West, a great way, which made him muse, considering his Leeward way. To the South-west of this Land, on the Mayne, there is an high Hill, which our Master named Mount Charles. To the North and beyond this, lieth an Iland, that to the East hath a faire head, Mount Charles and and beyond it to the West other broken Land, which maketh a Bay within, and a good Road

may be found there for ships. Our Master named the first, Cape Salfbarie. When we had left this to the North-east, we fell into a Rippling or Ouer-fall of a Current, which (at the first we tooke to bee a Shoald: but the Lead being cast, wee had no ground. On we passed fill in fight of the South shoare, till we raised Land lying from the Mayne some two leagues. Our Master tooke this to bee a part of the Mayne of the North Land; but it is an Iland, the North fide firetching out to the West more then the South. This Iland hach a faire Head to the East, and very high Land, which our Master named Deepes Cape: and the Land on Deepes Cape. the South fide, now falling away to the South, makes another Cape or Head-land, which our Worfenberg Master named, Worsenhams Cape. When wee were nigh the North or Iland Cape, our Master Gape. 50 fent the Boat ashoare, with my selfe (who had the charge) and the Carpenter, and divers others.

to discover to the West and North-west, and to the South-west : but we had further to it then we thought; for the Land is very high, and we were over-taken with a storme of Raine, Thunder and Lightning. But to it we came on the North-east fide, and vp we got from one Rocke to another, till we came to the highest of that part. Here we found some plaine ground, and saw fome Deere ; as first, foure or fiue, and after, a dozen or fixteene in an Herd, but could not come Deere, nigh them with a Musket shot.

Thus, going from one place to another, wee faw to the West of vs an high Hill about all the reft, it being nigh vs: but it proued further off then we made account; for, when wee came to it, the Land was so steepe on the East and North-east parts, that wee could not get vnto it. To 6c the South-west we saw that wee might, and towards that part wee went along by the fide of a Store of fortie great Pond of water, which lieth vader the East fide of this Hill: and there runneth out of it and grafe. a streame of water, as much as would drive an over-shot Mill; which falleth downe from an Sorell and

high Cliffe into the Sea on the South fide. In this place great ftore of Fowle breed, and there is Scuruy grafe, the best Graffe that I had seene since we came from England. Here wee found Sorell , and that

which wee call Scurny-graffe, in great abundance. Passing along wee saw some sound Hills of ftone, like to Graffe cockes, which at the first I tooke to be the worke of some Christian. Wee passed by them, till we came to the South side of the Hill; we went voto them, and there found more ; and being nigh them, I turned off the vppermost itone, and found them hollow within, and full of Fowleshanged by their neckes. Then Greene, and I, went to fetch the Boat to the South fide, while Robert Billet and hee got downe a Valley to the Sea tide, where wee

Our Master (in this time) came in betweene the two Lands, and shot off fome Peeces to call we aboord; for it was a fogge. Weecame aboord, and told him what we had feene, and percan ye appoore; for 1. was a togge.

fwaded him to flay a day or two in this place, telling him what refreshing might there bee had: 10 but by no meanes would be flay, who was not pleated with the motion. So we left the Fowle, and loft our way downe to the South-west, before they went in sight of the Land, which now beares to the East from vs , being the same mayne Land that wee had all this while followed. Now, we had loft the fight of it, because it falleth away to the East, after some fine and twenty or thirty leagues. Now we came to the shallow water, whereweith wee were not acquainted fince we came from Island; now we came into broken ground, and Rockes, chrough which we passed downe to the South. In this our course we had a storme, and the water did should apace. Our Matter came to an anchor in fiftrene fathoms water.

Wee weighed and flood to the South-east, because the Land-in this place did lie so, When we came to the point of the West Land (for we now had Land on both fides of ws) we came to 20 an anchor. Our Master sent the Boat ashoare, to see what that Land was, and whether there were any way through. They foone returned, and shewed that beyond the point of Land to the South, there was a large Sea. This Land on the West side, was a very narrow Point. Wee weighed from hence, and stood in for this Sea betweene the two Lands, which (in this place) is not two leagues broad downe to the South, for a great way in light of the East sheare. In the end we loft fight thereof, and faw it not till we came to the bottome of the Bay, into fixe or feuen fathomes water. Hence we flood up to the North by the West shoare, till wee came to an Iland in e2. where we tooke in water and ballaft,

Discord : see Relations fol-

From hence wee passed towards the North : but some two or three dayes after (reasoning concerning our comming into this Bay, and going out) our Mafter tooke occasion to reviewe old 30 matters, and to displace Robert Inet from being his Mace, and the Boat-swaine from his place, for words spoken in the first great Bay of Ice. Then hee made Robert Billet his Mate, and Wile ham Wilfon our Boat-fwaine. Vp to the North wee flood, till we raifed Land . then downe to the South , and up to the North, then downe againe to the South : and on Michaelmaffe day Day, and Bay. came in, and went out of certaine Landst which our Mafter fets downe by the name of Michaelmalle Bay, because we came in and went out on that day. From hence wee flood to the North. and came into shoald water; and the weather being thicke and foule, wee came to an anchor in feuen or eight fathome water, and there lay eight dayes: in all which time wee could not get one houre to weigh our anchor. But the eight day, the wind beginning to cease, our Matter would have the anchor vp, against the mind of all who knew what belonged thereunto. Well, 40 to it we went, and when we had brought it to a peake, a Sea tooke her, and cast vs all off from the Capstone, and hurt divers of vs. Here wee lost our Anchor, and if the Carpenter had not beene, we had loft our Cable too: but he (fearing fuch a matter) was ready with his Axe,

From hence we flood to the South, and to the South-west, through a cleere Sea of divers founding, and came to a Sea of two colours, one blacke, and the other white, fixteene or feuenteene fathome water, betweene which we went foure or fine leagues. But the right comming, we tooke in our Top-sayles, and stood afore the wind with our Maine-sayle and Fore-sayle, and came into fine or fixe fathomes, and faw no Land for it was darke. Then we flood to the East, and had deepe water againe, then to the South and Southwest, and so came to our Westermost 50 Bay of all , and came to an anchor neerest to the North shorae. Out went our Boat to the Land that was next vs, when they came neere it, our Boat could not flote to the shoare it was so shallow: yet ashoare they got. Here our men saw the footing of a man and a Ducke in the snowy Rockes, and Wood good store, whereof they tooke some and returned aboord. Being at anchor in this place, we saw a ledge of Rockes to the South of vs, some league of length; It lay North and South, couered at a full Sea; for a ftrong tide setteth in here. At mid-night wee weighed, and stood to goe out as we came in; and had not gone long, but the Carpen er came and told the Master, that if he kept that course he would be vpon the Rockes : the Master conceiued that he was past them, when presently wee ranne on them, and there stucke fail twelve houres : but (by the mercy of God) we got off valuet, though not vafcarred,

Wee flood wp to the East and rayled three Hills, lying North and South: wee went to the furthermost, and left it to the North of vs , and so into a Bay, where wee came to an anchor. Here our Mafter fent out our Boat, with my felfe and the Carpenter to feeke a place to winter in : and it was time; for the nights were long and cold, and the earth concred with Snow. Ha-

ning from three moneths in a Labyrinth without end, being now the last of October, we went Last of October downe to the East, to the bottome of the Bay: but returned without speeding of that we went ber. for. The next day we went to the South, and the South-west, and found a place, whereunto we brought our ship, and haled her aground : and this was the first of November. By the tenth November the thereof we were frozen in : but now we were in, it behooned vs to have care of what we had; reach frozen for, that we were fure of ; but what we had not, was vncertaine.

Wee were victualled for fixe moneths in good proportion, and of that which was good : if our Mafter would have had more, he might have had it at home and in other places. Here we were now, and therefore it behould vs to to fpend, that wee might have (when time came) to bring vs to the Caper where the Fowle bred, for that was all the hope wee had to bring vs home. IC Wherefore our Mafter tooke order, first for the spending of that wee had, and then to increase it, by propounding a reward to them that killed either Beaft, Fish, or Fowle, as in his Iouruall you have feene. About the middle of this moneth of November , dyed John Williams our Gunner : Tohn Williams God pardon the Matters uncharitable dealing with this man. Now for that I am come to speake dyeth. of him out of whose ashes (as it were) that whappy deed grew which brought a scandall upon all that are returned home, and upon the action it felte, the multitude (like the dog) running after the stone, but not at the caster : therefore, not to wrong the living, nor slander the dead, I will (by

the leave of God) deliver the truth as neere as I can. You shall understand, that our Master kept (in his house at London) a young man named Hen-

rie Greine, borne in Kont, of Worshipfult Parents, but by his lead lite and conversation hee had Henry Greenes

20 loft the rood will of all his frinds, and had spent all that hee had. This man, our Master would bad conditions have to Sea with him, because hee could write well : our Master gave him meate, and drinke. and lodging, and by meanes of one Master Venson, with much adoe got foure pounds of his mother to buy him clothes, wherewith Mafter Venfon would not truft him : but faw it laid out himselfe. This Henrie Greene was not set downe in the owners booke, nor any wages made for him. Hee came first abourd at Gramefond, and at Harwich should have gone into the field, with one Wilkinson, At Island the Surgeon and hee fell out in Dutch, and hee beat him a shoare in English, which set all the company in a rage; so that wee had much adoe to get the Surgeon aboord. I told the Master of it, but hee bade mee let it alone, for (faid hee) the Surgeon had a tongue that would wrong the best friend hee had, But Robert Inet (the 30 Mafters Mate) would needs burne his finger in the embers, and told the Carpenter a long tale (when hee was drunke) that our Mafter shad brought in Greene to cracke his credit that should displease him : which words came to the Matters eares, who when hee understood it, would have gone backe to Ifland, when he was fortie leagues from thence, to have fent home his Mate Robert Ines in a Fisher-man. But, being otherwise perswaded, all was well. So Henry Greene flood vpright, and very inward with the Mafter, and was a feruiceable man every way for manhood: but for Religion he would fay, he was cleane paper whereon he might write what hee would, Now, when our Gunner was dead, and (as the order is in fuch cases) if the company fland in need of any thing that belonged to the man deceased, then is it brought to the Mayne Maft, and there fold to them that will give most for the same : This Gunner had a gray cloth gowne, which Greene prayed the Mafter to friend him to much as to let him haue it, paying for it as another would give : the Mafter faith hee should, and thereupon hee answered some, that fought to have it, that Greene should have it, and none else, and so it refled.

Now out of season and time, the Master calleth the Carpenter to goe in hand with an house Green cenon shoare, which at the beginning our Master would not heare, when it might have beene done, spiracie, The Carpenter told him, that the Snow and Frost were such, as hee neither could, nor would goe in hand with such worke. Which when our Mafter heard, hee ferreted him out of his Cabbin to strike him, calling him by many foule names, and threatning to hang him. The Carpenter told him that hee knew what belonged to his place better then himselfe, and that hee was no

House Carpenter. So this passed, and the house was (after) made with much labour, but to no end. The next day after the Master and the Carpenter fell out, the Carpenter tooke his Peece and Henry Greene with him, for it was an order that none should goe out alone, but one with a Peece, and another with a Pike. This did moue the Master so much the more against Henry Greene, that Robert Billet his Mate must have the gowne, and had it delivered vnto him; which when Henry Greene faw, he challenged the Mafters promite : but the Mafter did so raile on Greene, with so many words of difgrace, telling him, that all his friends would not trust him with twenty shillings, and therefore why should he : As for wages he had none, nor none should haue, if he did not please him well. Yet the Master had promised him to make his wages as good, as any mans in the ship; and to have him one of the Princes guard when we came home. But you

60 finall fee how the deurl out of this fo wrought with Green, that he did the Mafter what mischiefe hee could in feeking to differedit him , and to thrust him and many other honest men out of the Theirhand Ship in the end. To speake of all our trouble in this time of Winter (which was so cold, as it la wintring. med the most of our Company, and my selfe doe yet feele it) would bee too tedious.

But I must not forget to shew, how mercifully God dealt with vs in this time ; for the

Sticke on a

Store of Pate

O:herFowles

space of three moneths wee had such store of Fowle of one kinde (which were Partridges as white as milke) that wee killed aboue an hundred dezen, besides others of sundry sorts: for all was fifth that came to the net. The Spring comming, this Fowle left vs., yet they were with vs all the extreame cold. Then in their places came divers fore of other Fowle, as Swanne, Geefe, Duck, and Teale, but hard to come by. Our Mafter hoped they would have bred in those broken grounds, but they doe not ; but came from the South, and flew to the North, further then we were this Voyage; yet if they be taken short with the wind at North, or North-west, or North-east, then they fall and stay till the winde serue them, and then siye to the North. Now in time their Fowles are gone, and few or none to bee feene. Then wee went into the Woods, Hilles, and Valleyes, for all things that had any shew of subflance 10 in them, how vile focuer: the mosse of the ground, then the which I take the powder of

Milerable diet a post to bee much better, and the Frogge (in his ingendring time as loathlome as a Toade) was not spared. But amongst the divers sorts of buds, it pleased God that The mas Woodboufe brought home a budde of a Tree, full of a Turpentine substance. Of this our Surgeon made a decoction to drinke, and applyed the buddes hot to them that were troubled with ach in any part of their bodies; and for my part, I confesse, I received great and present case

A Sauage.

About this time, when the Ice began to breake out of the Bayes, there came a Sauage to our. Ship, as it were to fee and to bee feene, being the first that we had feene in all this time: whom our Master intreated well, and made much of him, promising vnto himselfe great matters by 20 his meanes, and therefore would have all the Knives and Hatchets (which any man had) to his private vie, but received none but from lohn King the Carpenter, and my felfe. To this Sauage our Master gaue a Knife, a Looking-glasse, and Buttons, who received them thankefully, and made fignes that after hee bad flept hee would come againe, which hee did. When hee came, hee brought with him a Sled, which hee drew after him, and vpon it two Deeres skinnes, and two Beauer skinnes. Hee had a scrip under his arme, out of which hee drew those things which the Master had given him. Hee tooke the Knise and laid it vpon one of the Beauer skinnes, and his Glasses and Buttons vpon the other, and so gaue them to the Maiter, who received them; and the Savage tooke those things which the Mafter them to the Marter, who recently them to the Marter thewed him an Hatchet, 30 had given him, and put them vp into his ferip againe. Then the Marter thewed him an Hatchet, 30 for which hee would have given the Master one of his Deere skinnes, but our Master would haue them both, and so hee had, although not willingly. After many fignes of people to the North, and to the South, and that after so many sleepes he would come againe, he went his way, but neuer came more.

F:fhing.

Turke.

Now the Ice being out of the Sounds, fo that our Boat might go from one place vnto another, a company of men were appointed by the Master to go a fishing with our net; their names were as followeth : William Wilson, Henry Greene, Michael Perce, lohn Thomas, Andrew Moter, Bennet Mathewes, and Arnold Lodlo. These men, the first day they went, caught fine hundred fish, as big as good Herrings, and some Troutes : which put vs all in some hope to have our wants supplied, and our Commons amended : but these were the most that ever they got in one day, for many 40 dayes they got not a quarter fo many. In this time of their fishing, Henry Green and William Wilfon, with some others, plotted to take the net and the shallop, which the Carpenter had now set vp, and so to shift for themselues. But the shallop being readie, our Master would goe in it himfelte to the South and South-west, to see if hee could meete with the people; for, to that end was it fet vp, and (that way) wee might fee the Woods fet on fire by them. So the Mafler tooke the Sayue and the Shallop, and so much victuall as would serue for eight or nine dayes, and to the South hee went. They that remained aboord, were to take in water, wood, and ballast, and to have all things in a readmesse against hee came backe. But hee set no time of his returne; for he was periwaded, if he could meet with the people, hee should have fiesh of them, and that good flore: but hee returned worse then hee went forth. For, hee could by no meanes meete with the people, although they were neere them, yet they would fet the 50 woods on fire in his fight.

Being returned, hee fitted all things for his returne, and first, delivered all the bread out of the bread roome (which came to a pound a piece for euery mans share) and deliuered also a Bill of Returne, willing them to have that to shew, if it pleased God, that they came home: and he wept

when hee gaue it vnto them. But to helpe vs in this poore estate with some reliefe, the Boate and Savue went to worke on Friday morning, and stayed till Sunday noone: at which time they came aboord, and brought fourescore small Fish, a poore reliefe for so many hungry bellies. Then we wayed, and flood out of our wintering place, and came to an Anchor without, in the mouth of the Bay: from whence we wayed and came to an anchor without in the Sea, where our bread Belly fraits. being gone, that flore of cheefe we had was to ftop a gap, whereof there were fine, whereat the company grudged, because they made account of nine. But those that were left, were equally dissipance of the company grudged, because they made account of nine. But those that were left, were equally dissipance of the company grudged, because they made account of nine. But those that were left, were equally dissipance of the company grudged, because they made account of nine. ded by the Mafter, although he had counfell to the contrarie: for there were fome who having it, would make hast to bee iid thereof, because they could not gourne it. I knew when Henrie

Greene gaue halfe his bread, which hee had for fourteene dayes, to one to keepe, and prayed him not to let him haue any vntill the next Munday : but before Wednelday at night, hee neuer left till hee had it againe, having eaten vo his first weekes bread before. So Willen the Boatfwaine hath eaten (in one day) his fortnights bread, and hath beene two or three dayes ficke for his labour. The cause that moved the Matter to deliver all the Cheese, was because they were not all of one goodnesse, and therefore they should see that they had no wrong done them thut every man should have alike the best and the worst together, which was three pounds and a halfe for

The wind feruing, we weighed and stood to the North-west, and on Munday at night (the To eighteenth day of June) wee fell into the Ice, and the next day the wind being at Well, we lay there till Sunday in fight of Land. Now being here, the Mafter told Nicholas Smomes, that there would be a breaking vp of chefts, and a fearch for bread, and willed him (if hee had any) to bring it to him, which hee did, and deliuered to the Mafter thirty cakes in a bagge. This deed of the Mafter (if it bee true) hath made mee maruell, what should bee the reason that hee did not stop the breach in the beginning, but let it grow to that height, as that it ouerthrew himselfe and many other honest men : but there are many denices in the heart of man , yet the counsell of the Lord Shall fland.

Being thus in the Ice on Saturday, the one and twentieth of Iune at night, Wilson the wilson Green, Boatswayne, and Henry Greene came to mee lying (in my Cabbin) lame, and told mee that they their wickedao and the reft of their Affociates, would shift the Company, and turne the Master, and all the sicke nesses. men into the shallop, & let them shift for themselues. For, there was not fourteen daies vi Qual left for all the Company, at that poore allowance they were at, and that there they lay, the Mafter not caring to goe one way or other; and that they had not eaten any thing their three dayes, and therefore were resolute, either to mend or end, and what they had begun they would goe through with it, or dye. When I heard this, I told them I maruelled to heare fo much from them. confidering that they were married men, and had wives and children, and that for their fakes they should not commit so foule a thing in the fight of God and man, as that would bee; for why should they banish themselues from their native Countrie & Henry Greene bad me hold my peace, for he knew the worst, which was, to be hanged when hee came home, and therefore of the two 20 he would rather be hanged at home then flarted abroad : and for the good will they bate me, they

would have mee flay in the Ship. I gave them thankes, and told them that I came into her, not to forfake her, yet not to hurt my felfe and others by any fuch deed. Henry Greene told me then, that I must take my fortune in the Shallop. If there bee no remedie (faid I) the will of Go p

bee done.

Away went Henry Greene in a rage, swearing to cut his throat that went about to disturbe them, and left Wilfon by me, with whom I had some talke, but to no good : for he was so periwaded, that there was no remedie now, but to goe on while it was hor, least their partie should faile them, and the mischiefe they had intended to others, should light on themselves. Henry Greene came againe, and demanded of him what I faid, wilfor answered, He is in his old fong, ft:ll pati-

40 ent. Then I spake to Henry Greene to stay three dayes, in which time I would so deale with the Mafter, that all should be well. So I dealt with him to forbeare but two dayes, nay twelve houres; there is no way then (fay they) but out of hand. Then I told them, that if they would flay till Munday, I would in with them to share all the victuals in the ship, and would justifie it when I came home; but this would not serve their turnes. Wherefore I told them , it was some worse matter they had in hand then they made flew of, and that it was bloud and revenge hee fought, or else he would not at such a time of night vndertake such a deed. Henry Greene (with that)taketh my Bible which lay before me, and sware that hee would doe no man harme, and what hee did was for the good of the voyage, and for nothing elfe; and that all the rest should do the like. The like did Wilfon fweare.

50 Henry Greene went his way, and presently came lust, who because hee was an ancient man, Robert Part San I hoped to haue found some reason in him ; but hee was worse then Henry Greene, for hee sware plainely that he would instifie this deed when he came home. After him came lohn Thomas, and Michel Perce, as birds of one feather : but because they are not living, I will let them goe, as then I did. Then came Moter and Bennet, of whom I demanded, if they were well adusted what they had taken in hand. They answered, they were, and therefore came to take their oath.

Now, because I am much condemned for this oath, as one of them that plotted with them, and that by an oath I should bind them together to performe what they had begun, I thought good heere to fet downe to the view of all, how well their oath and deedes agreed : and thus it was, Ton Shall sweare truth to God, your Prince and Countrie: you shall doe nothing, but to the glory of Oath abused.

60 God, and the good of the action in hand, and harme to no man. This was the oath, without adding or diminishing. I looked for more of these companions (although these were too many) but there came no more. It was darke, and they in a readinesse to put this deed of darknesse in execution. I called to Henry Greene and Wilfon, and prayed them not to goe in hand with it in the darke, but to flay till the morning. Now, euerie man (I hope) would goe to his rest, but wic-Fff'a

kedneff: fleepeth not ; for Henry Greene keepeth the Mafter company ill night (and gaue mee brea i, which his Cabbin-mategaue him) and others are as watchfull as be. Then I asked Henrie Greene, whom he would put out with the Master ! he faid, the Carpenter lohn King, and the licke men. I faid, they should not doe well to part with the Carpenter, what need source they should haue. Why the Carpenter was in no more regard amongst them, was; first, for that he and John King were condemned for wrong done in the victuall. But the chiefest cause was, for that the Matter loued him, and made him his Mate, vpon his returne out of our wintering place, that the marter toda mini, and the state of read. And therefore (faid they) the Mafter and his ignorant Mace would carry the Ship whither read. And therefore (and they) the same and the man to keep account or reckoning, having taken the Matter pleased; the Matter forbidding any man to keep account or reckoning, having taken to Matter pleased of Linguistic Grant and Section 10. from all men whatfoener ferued for that purpofe. Well, I obtained of Henrie Greene and Wifen. that the Carpenter should stay, by whole meanes I hoped (after they had satisfied themselves) that the Mafter, and the poore man might be taken into the Ship againe. Or, I hoped, that some one or other would give fome notice, either to the Carpenter John King, or the Maiter; for foir might have come to paffe by fome of them that were the most forward.

The Carpenter (pared.

> Now, it shall not bee amisse to show how we were lodged, and to begin in the Cooke roome: there lay Bennet and the Cooper lame; without the Cooke roome, on the steere-board side, lay Thomas Wydbonfe ficke; next to him lay Sydrack Funer lame, then the Surgeon, and lobn Hudfon with him; next to them lay Wilson the Boat waine, and then Arnold Lodle next to him: in the Gin-roome lay Robert luct and John Thomas; on the Lar-board fide, lay Michael Bute and A- 20 dria Moore, who had never beene well fince wee loft our Anchor; next to them lay Michael Perce and Andrew Moter. Next to them without the Gun-roome, lay John King, and with him Robert Billet: next to them my felfe, and next to me Francis Clements: In the mid-fhip, betweene the Capftone and the Pumpes, lay Henrie Greene and Nicholas Simmes. This night lobn King was late vp, and they thought he had been with the Master, but he was with the Carpenter, who lay on the Poope, and comming downe from him, was met by his Cabbin-mate, as it were by chance, and fo they came to their Cabbin together. It was not long ere it was day : then came Bennet for water for the Kettle, heerofe and went into the Hold: when hee was in they flut the Hatch on him (but who kept it downe I know not) vp vpon the Deck went Bennet,

In the meane time Henrie Greme, and another went to the Carpenter, and held him with a 20 talke, till the Mafter came out of his Cabbin (which hee foone did) then came lohn Thomas and They bind the Bennet before him, while Wilfon bound his armes behind him. He asked them what they meant? they told him he should know when he was in the Shallop. Now Inet, while this was a doing, came to lobs King into the Hold, who was prouided for him, for he had got a fword of his own, and kept him at a bay, and might have killed him, but others came to helpe him : and so he came vo to the Mafter. The Mafter called to the Carpenter, and told him that he was bound; but, I heard no answere he made. Now Arnold Lodlo, and Michael Bute rayled at them, and told them their knauerie would shew it selfe. Then was the Shallop haled up to the Ship side, and the poore, ficke, and lame men were called vpon to get them out of their Cabbins into the Shallop. The Master called to me, who came out of my Cabbin as well as I could, to the Hatch 40 way to speake with him : where, on my knees I befought them, for the loue of God, to remember themselues, and to doe as they would be done unto. They bad me keepe my selfe well, and get me into my Cabbin ; not suffering the Master to speake with me. But when I came into my Cabbin againe, hee called to meat the Horne, which gaue light into my Cabbin, and told mea that Inet would ouerthrow vs all; nay (faid I) it is that villaine Henrie Greene, and I spake it

ter let gos.

Now was the Carpenter at libertie, who asked them, if they would bee hanged when they came home : and as for himfelfe, hee faid, hee would not flay in the Ship vnleffe they would force him: they bad him goe then, for they would not ftay him: I will (faid hee) fo I may have my cheft with mee, and all that is in it : they faid, hee should, and presently they 50 put it into the Shallop. Then hee came downe to mee, to take his leave of mee, who perswaded him to flay, which if he did, he might fo worke that all should bee well hee said, hee did not thinke, but they would be glad to take them in againe. For he was so perswaded by the Mafler, that there was not one in all the fhip, that could tell how to carrie her home; but (faith he) if we must part (which wee will not willingly doe, for they would follow the ship) hee prayed me, if wee came to the Capes before them, that I would leave fome token that wee had beene there, neere to the place where the Fowler bred, and hee would doe the like for vs : and fo (with teares) we parted. Now were the ficke men driven out of their Cabbins into the Shallep; but Iohn Thomas was Francis Clements friend, and Bennet was the Coopers, fo as there were words betweene them and Henrie Greene, one faying, that they should goe, and the other swea- 62 ring that they should not goe, but such as were in the shallop should returne. When Henrie Greene heard that, he was compelled to give place, and to put out Arnold Lodle, and Michael Bute, which with much adoe they did.

In the meane time, there were some of them that plyed their worke, as if the Ship had beene

enered by force, and they had free leave to pillage, breaking up Chefts, and rifling all places. One of them came by me, who asked me, what they should doe. I answered, hee should make an end of what hee had begun ; for I saw him doe nothing but sharke vp and downe. Now, were all the poore men in the Shallop, whose names are as followeth; Henrie Hudson, John Hudson, Thomames of Arnold Lodlo, Sidrack Faner, Phillip Staffe, Thomas Woodhouse, or Wydhouse, Adam Moore, Henrie the company King, Michael Bute. The Carpenter got of them a Peece, and Powder, and Shot, and some Pikes, exposed in the an Iron Pot, with fome meale, and other things. They flood out of the Ice, the Shallop being fall to the Sterne of the Shippe, and fo (when they were nigh out, for I cannot fay, they were cleane out) they cut her head fast from the Sterne of our Ship, then out with their Topfayles, and towards the East they stood in a cleere Sea. In the end they tooke in their Top-Lyles,

righted their Helme, and lay vider their Fore-fayle till they had ranfacked and fearched all places in the Ship. In the Hold they found one of the veffels of meale whole, and the other halfe fpent, for wee had but two; wee found also two firkins of Butter, some twentie fenen piece of Porke, halfe a bushell of Pease, but in the Masters Cabbin we found two hundred of bisket Cakes, a pecke of Meale, of Beere to the quantitie of a Butt, one with another. Now, it was faid, that the Shallop was come within light, they let fall the Main-layle, and out with their Top-fayles,

and five as from an Enemy.

Then I prayed them yet to remember themselves : but William Wilson (more then the rest) would heare of no tuch matter. Comming nighthe East shoare they cast about, and stood to the West and came to an Hand, and anchored in fixteene or seventeene fathome water. So they sent the Boat, and the Net athore to fee if they could have a Draught ; but could not for Rocks and great stones. Michael Perfe killed two Fowle, and heere they tound good store of that Weede, L. A fight of which we called Cockie-graffe in our wintering place, whereof they gathered store, and came a- the Shallops board againe. Heere we lay that night, and the best part of the next day, in all which time we faw not the shallon, or ever after. Now Henrie Greene came to me and told mee, that it was the Companies will, that I should come up into the Masters Cabbin, and take charge thereof, I rold him it was more fit for Robert Inet: he faid, he should not come in it, nor meddle with the Mafters Card, or Iournals. So vp I came, and Henrie Greene gaue me the Key of the Mafters Cheft. and told me then, that he had laid the Matters best things together, which hee would vie himfelfe when time did ferue : the bread was also deliuered me by tale.

The wind feruing, we flood to the North-east, and this was Robert Billets course, contrarie to Robert Inet, who would have gone to the North-west. We had the Easterne shoare still in fight, and (in the night) had a flout gale of wind, and flood afore it, till wee met with Ice, into the which we ranne from thone to thicke, till we could goe no further for Ice, which lay to thicke ahead of vs (and the wind brought it after vs afterne) that wee could not ftirre backward, nor forward : but fo lay imbayed fourteene daies in worle Ice, then ever wee met to deale withall, for we had beene where there was greater store, but it was not so broad upon the water as this: for this floting Ice contained miles, and halfe miles in compaffe, where we had a deepe Sea, and a Tide of flood and ebbe, which fet North-west and South-east. Heere Robert Inet Would have gone to the North-welt, but Robert Billet was confident to go through to the North-ealt, which he did. At laft, being cleere of this Ice, he continued his courle in fight of the Eafterne shoare, till he raifed foure Ilands which lay North and South: but we passed them fixe or seven leagues, Foure Ilands: the wind tooke vs fo short. Then wee stood backe to them againe, and came to an Anchor betweene two of the most Northermost. We fent the Boat ashpare, to fee if there were any thing there to be had, but found nothing, but cockle Graffe, whereof they gathered flore, and fo return ned aboard. Before we came to this place, I might well fee, that I was kept in the ship against Henry Greenes minde, because I did not favour their proceedings better then I did. Then hee began (very fubtilly) to draw me to take vpon me to fearch for those things, which himselfe had ftolne: and accused me of a matter no lesse then Treason amongst vs., that I had deceived the The wicked so company of thirtie Cakes of bread. Now they began to talke amongst themselves, that Eng. flee where

land was no fafe place for them, and Henry Greene Iwore, the shippe should not come into any none pursued place (but keepe the Seastill) till he had the Kings Majesties hand and Seale to shew for his fafetie. They had many deuices in their heads, but Henry Greene in the end was their Captaine, and so called of them.

From these Ilands we flood to the North-east and the Easter Land still in sight : wee rayled those Ilands, that our Master called Rummes Ilands. Betweene these Ilands and the shallow ground to the East of them, our Master went downe into the first great Bay. We kept the East shoare still in our fight, and comming thwart of the low Land, wee ranne on a Rocke that lay under water, and strooke but once; for if shee had, we might have beene made Inhabitans of that 6c place: but God fent vs foone off without any harme that wee faw. Wee continued our courfe and ravied Land a head of vs, which firetched out to the North : which when they faw , they faid plainly, that Robert Billet by his Northerly course had left the Capes to the South, and that they were best to seeke downe to the South in time for releife, before all was gone : for we had Small flore left. But Robert Billet would follow the Land to the North, faying, that he hoped in

A Rocke.

Note.

July 27.

Sauages.

God to find somewhat to releeue vs that way, as soone as to the South. I told them that this Land was the Mayne of Worsenhome Cape, and that the shallow rockie ground, was the same that the Master went downe by, when he went into the great Bay. Robert Inet and all said, in was not possible, vnlesse the Master had brought the ship ouer Land, and willed them to looke into the Masters Card, and their course how well they did agree. We stood to the East, and left the mayne Land to the North, by many small Hands into a narrow gut betweene two Lands. and there came to an Anchor. The Boat went ashoare on the North fide, where wee found the great Horne, but nothing elfe. The next day wee went to the South fide, but found nothing Cockle graffe, there, faue Cockle graffe of which we gathered. This graffe was a great releefe vnto vs. for without it, we should hardly haue got to the Capes for want of victual. The wind serning we should out, but before we could get cleane out, the wind came to the West, so that we were constrayned to anchor on the North fide.

The next day, wee weighed and doubled the point of the North Land, which is high Land. and so continueth to the Capes, lying North and South, some fine and twentie or thirtie leagues. To the North we stood to see store of those Fowles that breed in the Capes, and to kill fome with our shot, and to fetch them with our Boat. We raised the Capes with joy, and bare for them, and came to the Ilands that lie in the mouth of the streight : but bearing in betweene the Rockie lles, we ranne on a Rocke that lay vinder water, and there flucke fait eight or nine houres. It was ebbing water when we thus came on, so the floud set vs affoat, God guiding both wind and Sea, that it was calme, and faire weather; the ebbe came from the East, and the floud from the West. When wee were affoat, wee stood more neere to the East shoare, and there 20

The next day being the feuen and twentieth of July, we fent the Boat to fetch fome Fowle. and the ship should way and stand as neere as they could: for the wind was against vs. They had a great way to row, and by that meanes they could not reach to the place where the Fowle bred:but found good store of Gull, yet hard to come by, on the Rocks and Cliffes, but with their Peeces they killed some thirtie, and towards night returned. Now we had brought our ship more neere to the mouth of the Streights, and there came to an anchor in eighteen or twentie fathom water, vpon a Riffe or shelfe of ground : which after they had weighed their Anchor, and stood more neere to the place where the Fowle bred, they could not find it againe, nor no place like it: but were faine to turne to and fro in the mouth of the Streight, and to be in danger of Rockes, 30 because they could not find ground to let fall an Anchor in, the water was so deepe, The eight and twentieth day, the Boat went to Digges his Cape for Fowle, and made direct-

ly for the place where the Fowle bred, and being neere, they faw feuen Boates come about the Easterne point towards them! When the Sauages saw our Boate, they drew themselves together, and drew their leffer Boats into their bigger : and when they had done, they came rowing to our Boat, and made fignes to the West, but they made readie for all assayes. The Sauages came to them, and by signes grew familiar one with another, so as our men tooke one of theirs into our Boate, and they tooke one of ours into their Boate. Then they carried our man to a Coue where their Tents flood toward the West of the place, where the Fowle bred : so they carried him into their Tents, where he remayned till our men returned with theirs. Our Boat went to 40 the place where the Fowle bred, and were defirous to know how the Sausges killed their Fowle: Sausges man- he shewed them the manner how, which was thus, They take a long Pole with a snare at the acroffowling, end, which they put about the Fowles necke, and so plucke them downe. When our men knew that they had a better way of their owne, they shewed him the vse of our Peeces, which at one that would kill seuen or eight. To be short, our Boat returned to their Coue for our man, and to deliuer theirs. When they came they made great joy, with dancing and leaping, and flroking of their brefts: they offered divers things to our men, but they only tooke some Morses Teeth, which they gaue them for a Knife, and two glaffe buttons : and io receiving our man they came aboard, much rejoycing at this chance, as if they had met with the most simple and kind people

of the World. And Henry Greene (more then the rest) was so confident, that (by no meanes) we should take care to fland vpon our Guard : God blinding him fo, that where hee made reckoning to receive great matters from these people, he received more then he looked for, and that suddenly by being made a good example for all men: that make no conscience of doing euill, and that we take heed of the Sauage people, how simple soeuer they seeme to be.

The next day, the nine and twentieth of July, they made hafte to be ashoare, and because the ship rid too farre off, they weighed and stood as neere to the place where the Fowle bred, as they could : and because I was lame, I was to go in the Boat, to carrie such things, as I had in the Cabbin of enery thing somewhat : and so with more haste then good speed (and not without fwearing) away we went, Henry Greene, William Wilfon, John Thomas, Michael Perfe. Andrew, 60 Motor, and my selfe. When we came neere the shoare, the people were on the Hils, dancing and leaping : to the Coue we came, where they had drawne up their Boates: wee brought our Boate to the East side of the Coue, close to the Rockes. Ashoare they went, and made fast the

Boat to a great stone on the shoare, the people came, and every one had somewhat in his hand to barter : but Henry Greene Iwore they should have nothing, till he had Venison for that they had fo promifed him by fignes.

Now when we came, they made signes to their Dogges (whereof there were many like Sangers Mongrels, as bigge as Hounds) and pointed to their Mountaine, and to the Sunne, clapping their dogges. hands. Then Henry Greene, John Thomas, and William Willon, flood hard by the Boate head . Min chael Perfe, and Andrew Moter were got up upon the Rocke, a gathering of Sorrell : not one of them had any weapon about him, not fo much as a flicke, faue Henry Greene only, who had a piece of a Pike in his hand : nor faw I any thing that they had wherewith to hurt vs. Henry Sauages tree shewing the people. The Sauages standing round about them, one of them came into the Boats head to me to flew me a Bottle : I made fignes to him to get him ashoase, but he made as though

18 Greene and William Willon had Looking-glaffes, and Iewes Trumps, and Bels, which they were cheriche had not vinderstood me, whereupon I stood vp, and pointed him ashoare. In the meane-time, another stole behind me to the sterne of the Boat, and when I faw him ashoare, that was in the head of the Boat, I fate downeagaine : but fuddenly I fawithe legge and foote of a man by mee. Wherefore I cast vp my head, and faw the Sauage with his Knife in his hand, who strooke at my breft ouer my head : I cast vp my right arme to faue my breft, he wounded my arme, and strooke 20 me into the bodie vnder my right Pappe. He strooke a second blow which I met with my left hand, and then he strooke me into the right thigh, and had like to have cut off my little singer of the left hand. Now, I had got hold of the ftring of the Knife, and had woond it about my left hand, he striuing with both his hands, to make an end of that he had begunne, I found him but weake in the gripe (God enabling me) and getting hold of the fleene of his left arme, to bare him from me. His left fide lay bare to me, which when I faw, I put his sleeue off his left arme into my left hand, holding the ftring of the Knife faft in the fame hand; and having got my right hand at liberrie, I fought for fomewhat wherewith to ftrike him (not remembring my Dagger at my fide) but looking downe I faw it, and therewith strooke him into the bodie, and the

Whiles I was thus affaulted in the Boat, our men were set voon on the shoare. Iohn Thomas Trecherie inft and William Wilson had their bowels cut, and Michael Perfe and Henry Greene being mortally towninft Trays 20 wounded, came tumbling into the Boat together. When Andrew Moter faw this medley, hee tors. came running downe the Rockes, and leaped into the Sea, and so swamme to the Boat, hanging on the sterne thereof, till Michael Perfe tooke him in, who manfully made good the head of the Boat against the Sauages, that preffed fore vpon vs. Now Michael Perfe had got an Hatchet, wherewith I law him ftrike one of them, that he lay forawling in the Sea. Henry Greene crieth Greene flaine. Coracio, and layeth about him with his Truncheon : I cryed to them to cleere the Boat, and Andrew Moter cryed to bee taken in : the Sauages betooke them to their Bowes and Arrowes, which they fent amongst vs, wherewith Henry Greene was flaine out-right, and Michael Perfe received may wounds, and fo did the reft. Michael Perfe cleereth the Boate, and puts it from the shoare, and helpeth Andrew Moter in: but in turning of the Boat, I received a cruell wound in 40 my backe with an Arrow: Michael Perfe and Andrew Moter rowed the Boate away , which when the Sauages faw, they ranne to their Boats, and I reared they would have launched them, to have followed vs, but they did not, and our ship was in the middle of the channell, and could

Now, when they had rowed a good way from the sheare, Michael Perfe fainted, and could row no more ; then was Andrew Moter driuen to ftand in the Boat head, and wast to the ship, which (at the first) saw vs not, and when they did, they could not tel what to make of vs, but in the end they flood for vs, and fo tooke vs vp. Henry Greene was throwne out of the Boat into the Sea, and the rest were had aboard, the Sauage being yet aliue, yet without sense. But they died all there Wicked and that day, William Wilfon (wearing and curfing in most fearefull manner : Michael Perfe lived wretched end two dayes after, and then died. Thus you have heard the Tragicall end of Henry Greene and his of writched Mates, whom they called Captaine, these source the only have men in all the discount wicked men. 50 Mates, whom they called Captaine, these foure being the only lustie men in all the ship.

The poore number that was left, were to ply our ship too and fro, in the mouth of the streight, for there was no place to anchor in neere hand : besides, they were to goe in the Boate to kill Fowle, to bring vs home, which they did, although with danger to vs all. For if the wind blew, there was an high Sea, and the eddies of the Tydes would carrie the ship so neere the Rockes, as it feared our Master, for so I will now call him. After they had killed some two hundred Fowle, with great labour on the South Cape, wee stood to the East: but when wee were fixe or seuen leagues from the Capes, the wind came vp at East. Then wee stood backe to the Capes againe, and killed an hundred Fowle more. After this, the wind came to the Well, fo wee were driven to goe away, and then our Master stood (for the most) along by the North shoare, till he fell in-60 to broken ground about the Queene; Fore-land, and there anchored. From thence wee went to Gods Mercies, and from thence to thole llands, which lye in the mouth of our Streight, not feeing the Land, till we were readie to runne our Bosprite against the Rockes in a fogge. But it cleered a little, and then we might fee our felues inclosed with Rockie Hands, and could find no

Miscrie purfu-

608

ground to anchor in. There our Master lay atrie all night, and the next day the fogge continuing, they fought for ground to anchor in, and found fome in an hundred and odde fathomes of water. The next day we weighed and stood to the East, but before wee came heere, we had put our selues to hard allowance, as halfe a soule a day with the pottage: for yet we had some meale left, and nothing elfe. Then they beganne to make triall of all whatfoeuer: wee had flayed our Fowle, for they wil not pull : and Robert Inet was the first, that made vie of the skins by burning of the Feathers: so they became a great dish of meate, and as for the garbidge, it was not

After we were cleere of these Hands, which lie out with two points, one to the South-east. After we were cited out the standard with the fight as if there were no way through, we con- 10 tinued our course East South-east, and South and by East, to raise the Desalations, from thence to things our course for Ireland. Thus we continued divers dayes: but the wind comming against vs. made vs to alter our course, and by the meanes of Robert Ines who perswaded the company, that they should find great reliefe in Newfound Land, if our Country-men were there, and if they were gone before we came, yet should we find great store of bread and fish lest ashoare by them: but how true, I giue God thankes, we did not trie. Yet we flood to the South-weft, and to the West, almost to fiftie seuen degrees: when (by the will of God) the winde came up at Southweit. Then the Master asked me, if he should take the benefit of this wind, and shape his course for Ireland. I faid it was belt to goe, where we knew Corne grew, and not to feeke it, where it was caft away, and not to be found. Towards Ireland now wee flood, with profeerous winds for 20 many dayes together: then was all our Meale (pent, and our Fowle reftie and dry: but (being no remedie) we were content with the Sale broth for Dinner, and the halfe Fowle for Supper, Now went our Candles to wracke, and Bennet our Cooke made a meffe of meate of the bones of the Fowle, frying them with Candle-greafe, till they were crifpe, and with Vineger put to them, made a good dish of meate. Our Vineger was shared, and to enery man a pound of Candles deliuered for a weeke, as a great daintie. Now Robert Inet (by his reckoning) faith, wee were within fixtie or feuentie leagues of Ireland, when wee had two hundred thither. And fure our course was so much the longer, through our euill steeredge: for, our men became so weake. that they could not fland at the Helme, but were faine to fit. Then Robert Ivet dyed, for meere want, and all our men were in despaire, and said wee were 30

Robert I wets

paft Ireland, and our last Fowle were in the steep-tub. So, our men cared not which end went forward infomuch as our Mafter was driven to looke to their labour, as well as his owne: for fome of them would fit and see the fore-sayle, or mayne-sayle flie vp to the tops, the sheetes being either flowne or broken, and would not helpe it themselves, nor call to others for helpe, which much griened the Master. Now in this extremitie it pleased God to give vs fight of Land, not farre from the place, our Master said he would fall withal, which was the Bay of Gallowar, and we fell to the West of the Derses, and so stood along by the coast, to the South-west. In the end, there was a joyful cry, a layle, a fayle, towards which they flood, then they faw more, but to the neerest A fayle of Fory we stood, and called to him : his Barke was of Fory, and was at anchor a Fishing : he came to vs. are Hauen in and brought vs into Bere Hauen. Here we stayed a few dayes, and delt with the Irifh, to supply 40 our wanes, but found no reliefe: for in this place there was neither Bread, Drinke, nor mony to be had among it them. Wherfore they adulfed vs to deale with our Country-men, who were there a fishing, which we did; but found them so cold in kindnesse, that they would doe nothing without nhing, when we had none in the Ship. In the end, we procured one labs Waymenth, Mafter of the Barke that brought vs into this Harbour, to furnish s with money, which hee did, and received our best Cable and Anchor in pawne for the same. With this money, our Master with the helpe of lohn Waymouth, bought Bread, Beere, and Beefe.

Now, as wee were beholding to Waymouth for his money, fo were wee to one Captaine Taylor, for making of our contracts with Waymonth, by whose meanes hee tooke a Bill for our Cable and Anchor, and for the mens Wages, who would not goe with vs, vnlefle Wagmouth wold paffe 50 his word for the same : for they made shew, that they were not willing to goe with vs for any wages. Whereupon Captaine Taylor swore hee would preffe them, and then, if they would not goe, hee would hang them.

In conclusion, wee agreed for three pound ten shillings a man, to bring our Ship to Plimouth, or Dartmouth, and to give the Pilot five pound : but if the winde did not ferue, but that they were driven to put into Briffor, they were to have foure pound ten shillings a man, and the Pi-They arrive at lot fixe pound. Omitting therefore further circumstances, from Bere Hauen wee came to Phmoust, and so to an anchor, before the Castle: and from Plimonth, with faire winde and weather without flop or flay, wee came to the Downes, from thence to Granefend, where most of our men went a hoare, and from thence came on this fide Erith, and there ftopped : where our Mafter 60 Robert Billet came aboord, and so had mee up to London with him, and so wee came to Sir Themas Smiths together.

For a smuch as this report of Pricket may bappely bee suspected by some, as not so friendly to Hudson, who returned with that Companie which had so cruelly exposed Hudson and his, and therefore may seems CHAP. 18. Widhouses Letter and notes. Articles agains Iuet, erc.

to las beauser imputation, and rip up occasions further then they will believe ; I have also added the report of Thomas Widhouse, one of the exposed Companie, who aferibeth those occasions of discord to Tuet. I take not on mee to fentence, no not to examine ; I have prefented the Enidence inst at I had it : let the Bench censure, hearing with both eares, that which with both eyes they may see in those, and these notes : to which . I have first prefixed his Letter to Mafter Samuel Macham.

M After Macham, I hearfily commend mee unto you, Gec. I cau write unto you no newes, though I have fewe much, but fuch as enory English Fisherman haunting these Coasts cau report butter 10 then my felfe.

Wee kept our Whit funday in the North-east end of Island; and I thinke I never fared better in England then wee feasted there. They of the Country are very poore, and line miserably : yet we found there- Ilanders in store of fresh Fish and daintie Fowle. I my felfe in an after-noone killed so much Fowle, as feasted all poore. our Compunie, being three and tmentie perfous at one time, onely with Partridges; besides Curlue, Plauer, Mallard, Teale, and Goofe. I have frene two hot Bathes in Island, and have beene in one of them. Wee are resolved to trie the ottermost, and lye onely expecting a faire winde, and to refresh our selmes to auord the Ice. which nom is come off the West Coasts, of which wee have seene whole Ilands, but God bee The couse of thanked, have not beene in danger of any. Thus I defire all your prayers for vs. From Island this thir- their stay as tierb of May, 1610.

A note found in the Deske of Thomas Wydowfe, Student in the Mathematickes, hee being one of them who was put into the Shallop.

"He temb day of September, 1610. after dinner, our Master called all the Companie together, to heare and beare witnesse of the abuse of some of the Companie (it having beene the request of Robert Ivet) that the Mafter (bould redreffe forme abuses and flanders, as bee called them, against this I-30 uet : which thing after the Mafter had examined and beard with equitie what hee could say for hims selfe, there were prooued so many and great abujes, and musinous matters against the Master, and action by luct, that there was danger to have suffred them longer : and it was fit time to punish and cut off farther occasions of the like mutinies.

It was prooued to bis face, first with Bennet Mathew our Trumpet upon our first fight of Island. and bee confest, that bee supposed that in the action would bee man-flaughter, and proue bloodie to some. Secondly, at our comming from Illand, in hearing of the companie, hee did threaten to turne the head of the Ship bome from the attion, which at that time was by our Mafter wifely pacified, hoping of amendment.

Thirdly, it was deposed by Philip Staffe our Carpenter, and Ladlie Atnold, to bis face upon the boly 40 Bible, that hee per maded them to keepe Muskets charged, and Swords readie in their Cabbins, for they Should bee charged with Shot, ere the Voyage were over.

Fourtbly, wee being peffered in the Ice, bee had veed words tending to mutinie, discouragement, and flander of the action, which eafily tooke effect in thefe that were timorous; and had not the Mafter in time presented, it might easily have overstrowne the Voyage: and now lately become imbayed in a deepe Bay, which the Masser had despre to see, for some reasons to himselfe knowne, his word tended altogether to put the Companie into a fray of extremitie, by wintering in cold : lefting at our Masters hope to see Bantam by Candlemasse.

For these and diners other base standers against the Master, hee was deposed; and Robert Bylot, who had howed him felfe honeftly reflecting the good of the action, was placed in his flead the Mafters Mate. Also Francis Clement the Boasson, as this time was post from his Office, and William W

to the action. Alfo Adrian Mooter was appointed Boat fons mate : and a promile by the Master, that from this day luats wages should remaine to Bylot, and the Beat fous energins of wages should bee equally divided between Willon and one lohn King, to the owners good liking, one of the Omnan Mafters, who had very well carryed themselnes to the furtherance of the businesse.

Allo the Master promised, if the Offenders yet behaved themselves benceforth honestly, bee would bee ameanes for their good, and that bee would forget maries, with other admonitions.

These things thus premised touching Hudsons exposing, and Gods inst judgements on the Ex-6c polers, as Pricket hath related (whom they referued as is thought, in hope by Sir Dudley Digger his Master to procure their pardon at their returne) I thought good to adde that which I have further received from good Intelligence, that the Ship comming aground at Digges Iland, in 62. degrees 44. minutes, a great flood came from the West and set them on floate : an argument of an open pallage from the South Sea to that, and confequently to these Seas. The Weapons and

CHAP. XVIII.

The Disconcries of M. M. NICOLO, and ANTONIO ZENI, gathered out of their Letters, by FRANCISCO MARCOLINO: whereto is added Q VIRINO his Ship-wracke.

They are related by Maiter Haplait in his 3.vol pag 121.

Friefland

610



N the yeere 1380. Mafter Nicolo Zeno being wealthy, and of a haughtie spirit. defiring to fee the fashions of the world, built and furnished a Ship at his owne charges, and passing the Straits of Gibralter, held on his course Northwards. with intent to fee England and Flanders. But a violent tempeft affailing him at Sea, hee was carried live knew not whither, till at laft his Ship was carried away vpon the Ile of Frisland; where the men and most part of the goods were faued,

In vaine seemes that deliuerie, that deliuers up presently to another Executioner. The Handers like Neptanes, hungry groomes, or his base and blacke Guard, set vpon the men whom the Seas 20 had spared : but heere also they found a second escape, by meanes of a Prince named Zichmi, Prince of that and many Ilands thereabouts : who being neere hand with his Armie, came at the out-crie, and chasing away the people, tooke them into protection.

This Zichmui had the yeere before given the overthrow to the King of Norman, and was a great aduenturer in feates of Armes. He spake to them in Latine, and placed them in his Mauie, wherewith hee wonne divers Ilands. Nicolo behaved himselfe so well, both in fauing the Fleet by his Sea-skill, and in conquest of the Hands by his valour, that Zichman made him Knight and

Sain: Themes

After divers notable exploits, Nicolo armed three Barkes, with which hee arrived in Engreneland : where hee found a Monasserie of Friers of the Preachers Order, and a Church dedicated to 30 Saint Thomas, hard by a Hill, that cafteth out fire like Vefimus and Aina. There is a Fountaine of hot water, with which they heate the Church of the Monaftene, and the Friers chambers. It and the firange commeth also into the Kitchin so boyling hote, that they vie no other fire to dreffe their meate: effects thereof. and putting their Bread into braffe Pots without any water, it doth bake as it were in an hot Ouen. They have also small Gardens, which are covered over in the Winter time, and being watered with this water, are defended from the violence of the Frost and coll, and bring forth Flowers in their due seasons. The common people assonished with these strange estats, conceiue highly of those Friers, and bring them presen:s of Flesh and other things. They with this Water, in the extremitie of the cold, heate their Chambers, which alto (as the other buildings of the Monafteria per framed of those burning flones, which the mouth of the Hill casts foorth. They to cast water on some of them, whereby they are dislolued, and become excellent white Lime, and so tough, that being contriued in building, it latteth for euer. The rest, after the fire is out, serue in stead of stones to make walls and vaults, and will not dissolve or breake, except with some Iron toole.

Their Winter lasteth nine moneths : and yet there is a faire Hauen, where this water falleth into the Sea, not frozen : by meanes whereof there is great refort of wild Fowle and Fish, which they take in infinite multitudes. The Fishers Boates are made like to a Weavers shuttle, of the skinnes of Fishes, fashioned with the bones of the same Fishes, and being sowed together with many doubles, they are so strong, that in soule weather they will shut themiclues within the fame, not fearing the force either of Sea or winde. Neither can the hard-hearted Rockes breake these yeelding Veffels. They have also as it were a Sleeve in the bottome thereof, by which with 50 a subtill deuice, they conuey the water foorth, that soaketh into them. The most of these Friers fpake the Latine toppue.

A little after this, Nicolo returned and dyed in Friesland, whither his brother Antonio had before reforted to him, and now fucceeded both in his goods and honour; whom Zichmui employed in the Expedition: Eftotiland: which happened upon this occasion. Sixe and twentie yeeres before, foure Fisher-Boates were apprehended at Sea by a mightie and tedious storme; wherewith after mathy dayes, they were brought to Estoriland, aboue a thousand miles West from Frielland: vpon which, one of the Boates was cast away, and fixe men that were in it, were taken and brought to a populous Citie; where, one that fpake Latine, and had been cast by chance wpon that Hand, in the name of the King asked them what Country-men they were; and under- 60 flanding their cafe, hee acquainted the King therewith. They dwelt there five yeeres, and found it obec an lland very rich, being little leffe then I feland, but farre more fruitfull. One of them faid nee faw Latine bookes in the Kings Librarie, which they at this prefent doe not voider-

CHAP. 18. Cambals of Drogio. Icaria. Zichmuis Citie. Quirino.

fland. They have a peculiar Language, and Letters or Characters to themselves. They have mines of Gold and other Mettals, and have Trade with Engroneland. They fow Corne, and make Beere and Ale. They build Barkes (but know not the vie of the Compaffe) and have many Cities and Castles. The King fent these Fisher-men with twelve Barkes Southwards, to 2 Countrey which they call Dregio .: in which Voyage chaping dreadful tempelts at Sea, they presion encountred with Canibals at Land, which denoured many of them. Thefe Fifters flewing them the manner of taking Fish with Nets; escaped ; and for the prefents which they made of their Fuh to the chiefe men of the Country, were beloued and honoured. One of these (more expert is Gemeth then the reft) was holden in fuch account, that a great Lord made waite with their ford to to obtaine him: and fo premyled, that he and his companie were fent water him. And in this order was hee fent to fine and towentie Lords, which had warred one with another to get him in thisteene yeeres space : whereby hee came to know almost all those pares ; which he said; was a great Countrey, and (as it were) a new World The people are all rude, and voide of pood reffe they goe naked neither have they wit to cover their bodies with the Beails skinnes which they

take in Hunting, from the vehement cold. They are fierce; and cate their enemies, having divers Lawes and Gouernours. Their living is by hunting." Further to the South-west, they are more quill, and have a more temperate avre : They have 20 Cities and Temples dedicated to Idols, where they facrifice Men, and after eate them; and have alfo fome vie of Gold and Silver.

Hee fledde awey fecretly, and conveying him felfe from one Lord to another, came at length to Drogio, where hee dwelt three yeeres. After this time finding there certaine Boates of Ello. riland, hee went thither with them : and growing there very rich, furnished a Barke of his owne, and returned into Friefland : where hee made report whto his Lord of that wealthy Countrey. Zichmui prepared to fend thither : but three dayes before they fet foorth, this Fisherman dyed. Yet taking some of the Marriners which came with him in his flead, they profecuted the Voyageand encountred after many dayes an Hand : where ten men of divers Languages, were brought vnto them, of which they could vinderstand none, but one of I faland. Hee told them. that the Hand was called learis, and the Knighes thereof called lears, defeeteded of the ancient pedigree of Dedalus, King of Scots, who conquering that Iland, left his Sonne there for King, 20 and left them those Lawes, which to that present they retayned. And, that they might keepe their Lawes inniolate, they would receive no Stranger. Onely they were contented to receive one of our men, in regard of the Language, as they had done those ten Interpreters.

Zichmui fayling hence, in foure dayes descried Land, where they found abundance of Fowle. and Birds egges, for their refreshing. The Hauen they called Cap Trim, There was a Hill, which burning, catt out Imoake : where was a Spring, from which issued a certayne water like Pitch, which ranne into the Sea. The people of small stature, wilde, and searefull, hid themselves in Caues. Zichmini built there a Citie, and determining to inhabite, fent Antonio backe againe, with the most of his people to Friesland.

This Historie I have thus inserted at large, which perhaps, not without cause in some things, Abrah. Ortel. 40 may feeme fabulous; not in the Zemi, which thus writ, but in the relations which they received charle. from others. Howfoeuer, the beit Geographers are beholden to thefe Brethren, for that little Hattely. knowledge they have of these parts; of which none before had written; nor fince have there Beers. beene any great in-land Discoueries.

Honding, & ..

The Ship-wracke of Master PIERO QVIRINO, described by CHRI-STOFORO FIORAVANTI, and NICOLO DI MI-CHIEL*, who were present there : beere

contracted. T femeth to bee a convenient dutie to make a memoriall, and not fuffer to bee buryed in obli- in Ramufo, 1 uion, that most lamentable, and cruell Voyage full of innumerable and extreame miseries, Tom. 2. Out of which befell a Venetian Ship, wherein wee carryed about feuen hundred Buttes of Wine, Spices, heere added Cottons, and other Merchandifes of great value, furnished in Candia with threescore and eight diversannotamen, to goe towards the * West. The Master whereof was Master Piero Quini, a Venetian tions, Gentleman, in the yeare 1431. Who after many troubles , misfortunes, and wants befalne "The Italians him, after his departure from Candia towards the Weft, on the fixth of November, in the fore- call the faying him, after his departure from Candia towards the Wett, on the fixth of Problember, in the love-faid yeers of the Lord, by chance came into the mouth of the Channels of Flanders, and went terminas, the 60 larre beyond them, by a thorme from the South, towards the North-weft, about one hundred and Leusintor fortie miles, running field upon the Iland of Vifenti, where, by agreement, wee Christo. East; and ? foro Fioramanti, and Nicolo Michiel, fay, that at noone wee founded the bottome of the thenceint cean, and these parts the Ponent or West. * These are particularly related by Quirino the Patron or Owner. They lost their Rudder on a Rocke, not face from Cales in Spaine, and were faine to make thither to repaire it : and other diaft. rs followed,

* There is also the relation hereof by Dui rizohimicife. extant tode. ther with this

Sea with the Lead, and found our felues in flue and fiftie fathome of water, and afterward toward the Evening wee founded, and found our felues in ninetic tathomes and more, but the forme and furie of the windes was fo great, that it brake fine of the hinges off our rudder.

On the twelith, in the morning, the florme not crafting, but increasing every houre more and more, beat vpon our weake rudder with fo great violence and furie, that it broke away all that held it, in such fort, that it hung on theone fide, where, for the last remedie, wee fastened a great Cable vnto it, with the which, for three dayes wee drew it after vs, not being able to doe itotherwife, in which time in our judgement, wee thought wee had runne two hundred miles and

ore, against our wiss.

Afterward we tooke away the two Rudders, and with many pieces of Timber we made another, which might rather be called a shadow then a true Rudder, and wee put it in his place to guide and direct the ship. But it could not endure longer, then till the six and twentieth of Nonumber, when the violence of the Sea carried it all away: fothat then wee remayined deprined of all hope of gouernment and direction. On the fourth of December, the furie of the windegrew to outragious againe, that it carried away all this third fayle, and to being spoyled and bereft of Sayle and Rudder, we went at adventure vntill the eight day, alwayes wandering, not knowing by any meanes how to prouide for our lafetie. Afterward the winde alwayes increasing from the East, and with so great violence and furie, that the Sea beganne to fwell so high, that the waues seemed Mountaynes, and sarre greater then we had ever seeme before, with the darknesse of the extreame long night, so that we seemed to goe in the bottomlesse 20 depth of Hell : whereby you may imagine how great the anguishand trembling of our hearts was, because although we were living, yet at that inflant wee seemed to bee dead, expessing death euery houre, which we saw present : In this darknesse the Heaven was sometimes seene to open with the lightnings and fudden flashes of fire so bright, that they tooke away the fight of our eyes, And sometimes we seemed to touch the starres, the ship mounted so aloft, and then againe we faw our felues buried in Hell, infomuch as being all aftomfhed, we had loft our firength and force. And being in this miferable case we did nothing else, but with pittie behold one another: & running with so great violence for many houres, in the end a surge of the Sea came over the thip under the wind with such furie, that the water entred into it, filled it almost halfe full, whereby being now much weakened, it was readic to finke, and turned up the Keele, And fure- 30 ly that was the last houre, and our end, and truly we had beene swallowed up of the Sea, if our Lord Ieius Christ had not beene, who forfaketh not them that religiously call vpon him, who put such power and strength into our afflicted minds, that seeing the ship in so dangerous a case, full of water, as it could not be cast out by any humaneforce, we determined to cut downe the mayne Mast, and cast it together with the mayne Yard and Tackling into the Sea, and so wee did, whereby the ship being disburdened, pauled awhile, and we then taking courage, beganne to call out the water, which with our great rouble and about we our came in the end. In this manner wee went footring away all that long right. New when the day was almost come, they agreed to make readie the Boat and the Schuffe, with that little prouifion of victuall which was remayning, equally parted. And the Patron laid, With your confent I command you Ni- 40 colo di Michiel the Notaty, that you fet downe in a note the names of those that are willing to enter into the Schiffe and Boat! fo prefently he gave him fortie five persons in a note, who were willing to enter into the Schiffe, which was capeable but of one and twentie men only, and therefore it was necessary to cast Lots who should goe therein : and so it was done, and they prepared it, and fet it in order, and did the like to the Boate, into the which the Master They leave the with fortie feuen men entred. The one and twentie persons to whom the lot fell , entred the Schiffe, and a rate was given them according to the proportion of the victuall which was remayning of Bisket, and also of Frifoppi, three hundred pound weight, of Cheefe of Candia eightie pounds, of dried Bacon eight pounds, of Tallow to trim their Schiffe fortie pounds, of Oyle about two pound waight and no more: but besides wee bestowed there 30 feuen Carrattells of Tyrias Wine, which is a kind of Maluafic, for the Pinnasse or Schiffe would hold no more. In like manner fortie feuen men, reckoning the Master, entred into the Boate or Pinnaffe, vnto whom rateably fell their proportion of victuals, adding thereto a little Greene Ginger in Sirrope, and Sirrope of Limons, with fome small quantitie of Spices, which wee had taken. We were (in our judgement) distant from the neerest lland or Land about fine hundred miles or more, from the point of Land to Lee-ward of the North part, and we fayled with these Conserues in a quiet and calme Sea, that little time of the day together with our one and twentiecompanions, comforting our felues in that which we had feene the beginning of fo faire

and end, which our companions of the Schiffe were to haue, of whom we had now loft the fight, 60 to that we never faw them any more. The ninteenth day, the morning appearing, and not feeing any token of the Schiffe, it made vs suspitious of their death, whereupon our mindes were much troubled, doubting what might befall them, because the windes raged in such manner, that a wave of the Sea mounted with to

a fortune. But when the night came, a darke mist rose, which was a token of the euil! successes

great violence into the Pinnaffe, behinde the Poope, where wee Christopher and Nucholas were tet downe, that through the force of the furie thereof, two frayes were battered and bent, which left a token of vnsupportable trouble and griefe, by meanes that the Pinnasse was more charged with the weight of the water, then with her owne burthen. Wherefore to remedie it wee ranne all to lade it out with our hands, and being confirmed through feare and necessitie, for the freeing of her, wee were faine to cast out all that, whether with water or without, which came most fit and ready to our hands. The Pinnaffe becomming drie againe, prefently in this fforme. wee agreed to cast ouer-boord the greatest part of the Wine, and wee found our selves in fo great extremitie, that if wee would tafte thereof to comfort our troubled fentes, no more then one gob-Io let of Wine apeece fell to enery mans share for the whole day, and who so would drinke more, was confirmy ned to take the Sea-water : and this measure and quantitie of Wine held out eight

dayes, and normore. And after ward being drivento greater necessitie, wee brought our selves to a greater extremis tie, by reftrayning our proportion to halfe a goblet a day, and hone of vs could fecurely fleepe;

for the divers doubts and dangers, wherein wee alwayes prefently flood. Wee continued every day and night, foure or fixe of vs acthe Helme; and those that were at the Pumpe; flood alwayes firme and voright changing their courses, where wee endured cold beyond comparison faste Great Frontier greater then that, which not many veeres fince was in Ventes, when all the Channels were fro- Ventes. zen, fo that from Margara to Venice, not onely Men and Women, but Oxen, Horfes, Cares, 20 and Waggons, went ouer your the Ice in great multitudes, to the admiration of all the people,

because that Region is (without comparison) much colder then the Countrey of Italy. Now confider what our cale was, being without Clothes to couer yearnd not having any thing to eate, or drinke, or other necessary thing for the maintenance of mans life, except a few Frifsppi which were left, and the nights one and twentie hours long, and thour ke. Through the which cold, Engerme cold wee began to lofe the feeling of our feete, and by heele and little, the cold becomming more vehement, possessed the whole body, procuring a dogged and raging appetite and hunger, fo that every one lought to devoure that which was hid in a corner, and what better hee had next at hand, whereforeir hee could finde it, as well as hee mighe, with that weake and little frength which hee had remayning. Afterward, death feating v pout them, you might fee them shake the 30 head, and fall downe prefently dead.

In the which D. feafes, of feuen and fortie men (which wee found in the eafe) fixe and ewen. The death of tie yeelded up the ghost, and it was not any wonder; confidering wee could not have any fuc. fixe and twee cour, nay, it is a divine miracle that any one remayined aline. And those few of ve that are re-tie. mayning, live onely to commend to memorie, and highly to exalt the great power of God. Those fixe and twentie dyed, from the three and twentieth of December withit the fifth of January, now one, now two, and fometimes more, in one day, whom we buryed in the Sea.

The one and thirtieth of December, our Wine being wholly frent, and having scene the chuell and lamentable experience of our fixe and twencie Companions, who dyed with drinking of the Sea-water, necessities gaue vs a good stomacke, that is to say, to take our owne water to 40 quench our thirft. Now, there were some of the companior recedingly troubled with giddinelle: Great faith. for, wanting the abundant plentie of Wine, they were not able to indure thirlt, nor to expell it, but they accounted it a great fauour to bee able to obtayene of their companions, whereof there were some who denyed it to their desroft friend; to keepe le for themitglues. It is true, elast fome of vs warily mortified it, by mingling a little firmen of greent Ginger, or Limone therewith, which by chance we had remayning. During this time, whill she fifth of lannary, we were

The third of January, 1431, wee had fight of the first Land, which game ve great hope, al- Sight of Land. though it fo fell out, that it was very farre diffant, whose wer faw certaine Rockes to weatherward coursed to the top with infinite heaper of Snow, to the which the winder being conso trary, wee were not able to approach with the fayles, and much leffe with Bares, beckufe our armes were exceedingly weakened : wherefore wer those to come heere them with the winde, but paffing beyond them through the ourrent of the water, wee loft fight of them altogether.

every houre more accustomed to greater extremities. 111 21

And after difficult escape from the Rockes, fayling forward towards a very high Rocke, wee had fight of a Valley icitrated betweene the two next Mountaynes, into the which defiring to enter about the fourth houre of the night; the croell and outing ous windes would not fuffer vs. Notwithstanding, inflamed through an exceeding great defire to got on Land, wee tooks conrage and firength, and (through force of the Gares, and the helpe of God) entred into the layd Valley, at a point of Land in the least doubtfull and dangerons place, as it were at the vary be-

60 ginning and entrie thereof, in the which as from as they perceased the Pinnafe to touch vpon Hot from for the fand, fine of our companie being more defirous of drinke, then of any other refreshing and re- mackes to cold creation, leaped into the water without any regard, although it were very despe, and went small dimker their way toward the Snow, and to glurred themselves therewith, that He was an incredible

And sunning according to our judgement, as wee had runne in this Pinnafie for eighteene dayes, from the day that wee departed from the ship, vntill this fixth of lanuarie, sayling alwayes betweene the North-eaft and the Eaft, and not with leffe winde then after fixe miles an houre, wee had runne about two thousand fine hundred miles and more, without ener feeing On the fixth of lanuary, at the time of the folemne day of the Epiphanie, nineteene of vs went

on land in this defolate and drie place, called the Hand of the Sames, in the Coaft of Normey, 10

fubicat to the Crowne of Demante, leaving two other to looke to the weake Pinnaffe, that it

They goe on Iland of Saints way, See Orte-Scandia : hee placeth Santi and Ruffere in ly then they are from the North Cape. from which this Rocke ((aith Dniring) paffe, and callod in their Languagefor

remoteneffe

The arfe of the

614

might not bee broken with the beating of the Sea. And being landed there by meanes of an Oare, we endeauoured to kindle fire, and with a tynder boxe and fleele to firike fire, wee retired is his Map of Our felues into the closest place from the winde, and at the fight of the fire, nature thereby receiued a little ffrength. Finding this Hand not inhabited, and feeking to goe in the Pinnaffe to another Hand five miles off, shee so leaked, that part of vs landing, as it were all in the water, and some of vs vp to the 74.degrees, but middle in shallower water, wee strong to draw her on land, and despairing to bee ener able to goe in her againe, wee determined to fit her in fuch fort, that thee might ferue our turne to couer vs. after the best manner that wee could. Wee broake her into two parts : and of the greater 20 wee made a shelter, or Cottage for thirteene of vs, and of the lesser a shedde, capable of sine men. under the which were entred couring them with part of our fayles, and with the reft, and the cordage of the fayd Pinnasse, wee made continuals fire to preserve our lines. Now being veterly destitute of all sustenance of meate and drinke, wee went wandring vp-

ward 70 miles on the Sea shoare, where Nature gave vs food to maintayne life, with certrine Perewinckles other Rockes; or Shel-fifth and Barnacles. And of thefe, not as many nor when wee would, but in very fmall quantitie. And remoting the Snow in some places, wee found a certayne Herbe, which togeflant, fine in . Guarantee allow removes a source and a series a state of the series a state of the series and a state of ther, with small charitie amongst vs, by reason of the great scarcitie of all thinges and extreame famine, leading rather a brutish life, then the life of men-

Continuing in this rude and homely kinde of life, it happened, that through the intellerable wants foure of our companions of the greater retiring place, failed even where the affiicted Mafter was, with those remedies and sender comforts for their foules and bodies : so that you the extreame may thinke their bodies remayning neere vato ve, who being very weake had loft all our firength, wee were not able to remouse them two yardes out of fight ; and yet I will fav Foure dye and more, that wee had no fooner taken the frozen or wagene water in our mouthes, but prefently Nature of it felfe cast it vp againe, wee not beeing able to abstaine from it, nor almost to stand

The cold festion of the yeers had brought vs to fuch necessitie, that (to warme vs) wee stood 40 Great weakeclose thronged, in such fore, that wes feemed (as it were) to bee freed together. Wherefore I entred under the fayles, which covered both our Cottages round about downe to the ground. the imoake not being able to iffue foorth, which proceeded (as I thinke) from the Pitch which was within certaine peeces of the Pinnesse, which we burned, so that our eyes were swolne that Milerable cold wee could not see : neverthelesse wee indured all, that wee might bee warme. And our garments which wee neuer put off, were full of vermine, and the Lice fwarmed in fuch number. that taking them from our backes, wee cast them by whole handfuls into the fire, and they had entred into the fiefh in such manner through the skinne, even to the bones, that finally they Abundance of brought a young man of our company (that was a Notarie) cuen wate death, so that hee was neuer able to defend himselfe from so loatshome a little vermine. A thing of most manifest example, to abase and abate our pride, and baughtinesse of minde.

Now concord fayling among vs, surry one vied his owne proper adule, whereupon part of our companie wandring through the Sauge and va-inhabited place, came to the knowledge of a folitarie and anciene seturing place made by the Shepherds beretofore, for the time of their abode, and it was feated on the highest part of the Coast of the layd Iland towards the West, distant from ours about a mile and a halfe. Visco the which, fixe of the companie of the number of those eight, which were found in that first and greater retiring place, determined to remouse themselves to that new-found solutarie habitation, for their lefe inconvenience leaning the other two, their other companions alone, in an abandoned and forfaken place, as well because they were not able to travell, as also for that wee were altogether viable to con-

It came to passe, that those sime through the gracious goodnesse and gift of God, found an exceeding great Fift, to the which I know not what name to give, whether Whale, or Por piffe of the Sea, which were are to thinke was fent from the Diuine and excellent bountie to feed vs. And confidering that wee faw it call up by the Sea upon the shoare, atead, fresh good and great, and at the time of our so great necessitie, wee rendred thankes vnto our most gracious Lord God, who at that time would fuftayne our so weake and diseased bodies, with that foode, appealed peraduenture through the prayers of some vigilant and de-

CHAP. 18. Hunger good fance. Ilands of Saints and Rustene.

With this Fish, wee fedde our selues for nine dayes sufficiently. And as it happened those venout foule. ry nine dayes were forempe fluous with windes, rayne and fnow, that by no meanes the cruell

storme would have suffered vs to goe one pace out of our Cottage.

The miraculous Fith being ipent, the furious temped was fomewhat affwaged, wherefore not having wherewith to maintayne life, like Wolves that oppressed with famine, goe to seeke out other places of abode, wee arole out of the Cottage, and went wandring through the defert Rockes to finde any succour to sustayne our life with Perewinckles of the Sea and Barnacles; with the which were were of necessitie to bee contented, although they were very little thinges, and so wee maintayned our selues vntill the last of lanuary; 1431. 1422in Fe. and therefore were were leane, pale, afflicted, and but halfe aline. In which time raine accounts finding certayne dung of Oxen fcorched and dryed with the cold and winde, (whereof wee gathered every day to make a fire) wee certainely knew that place to bee frequented by Oxa en: which thing gaue vsaliured hope of some good end, and through this perlwation wee indu-

20 red part of our grieuous cares and forrowes. In the end the houre came, wherein our benigne Creator and most gracious Lord, purposed to conduct his little flocke fo much afflicted, into the Hauen of their fafetie : and it was in this manner. Two young Heifers of a Fisher-man neere vnto this Iland within fine miles, beeing tleaf Ruft manner. ftraved the former yeere from the place where hee vied to dwell, and neuer understanding any newes of them within the yeere, nor having any hope to finde them againe, on the very first day of February, 1421, at night, one of the Sonnes of the faid Fisher-man of Rustene (torio the faid Hand was called) being of the age of fixteene yeeres, dreamed that certainly the two Heifers were escaped, and gone up to the lland of Saints distant from them, where wee were lodged, at the point of the Weil part, vpon the which no man durst ever goe at the low 30 water. Whereupon the Sonne who had fuch a vision or dreame, prayed the Father, and an

elder Brother of his, that they would accompany him to goe to feeke them. And so, all three in a Fisher-boate tooke their way towards the sayd Iland, and came to the point where wee were, and the find young men landing there, left their Father to looke to the Boate, and having ascended a little vpon the Cliffe, they saw a smoake arise in the avre, from their retiring place which they had formerly vied. Whereupon through feare and aftonilhment they maruelled, and that not a little, how, whence, and by what meanes it might come to passe. Wherefore, they stood a long time much amazed. And desiring to know the cause, they began to talke one with another. And although wee perceived the noyse, and heard the voyce; yet wee could not conceine whence it should bee, but rather indged it to 40 bee the crying of Crowes, then the voyce of men. And wee were the rather induced there-

unto, becaule some few dayes before, wee had steene (vpon the miserable Carkastes of our eight companions cast to the winde) multitudes of Crowes, that rene the ayre with their crokings feeding themselves vpon them : whereupon wee thought it could bee no other. But continuing from good to better, the voyces of the children of God fent to faue vs,

wee cleerely perceined that they were the voyces of Men, and not the crying of Fowles. And at that instant Christophore Fiorassanti arose out of the Cottage, and seeing the two young striplings, crying with a loude voyce came towards vs, saying, Reioyce, behold two come to feekevs. Whereupon, inflamed with an earnest defire, wee rayled our felues on our feete, going rather with the heart then with the feete, and drawing neere vnto them, wee perceived that through the fudden and extreame frangeneffe of the matter, they were afraid, and their countenances began to waxe pale. But contrarily wee cheered our felues, and being comforted with an affared hope, thewed with actions and gestures of humilitie, that wee came not to offend them in any wife. Divers thoughts came in our mindes, whether wee should detaine one of them or both, or whether one or two of vs should goe with them. The first determination was against vs, because wee knew not with whom, nor with how many wee had to doe, for that wee understood not them, nor they vs. But being aduised by the holy Ghost, wee went downe to their Boate, in the best and most

amiable manner that wee could, where the Father was, who expected them : and when he saw vs, hee alforemayned aftonished and amazed. In this meane space, wee looked whether there 6c were any thing in their Boate to fuccour our necessities, to maintayne life : but wee found nothing there. So, they moved through pitie, feeing ws affamished, by fignes and actions which wee made vnto them, were contented to carrie with them Ghirardo da Lione, a Sewer, and Cola di Otranto, a Marriner, who had some kribwledge, and were able to speake the French and the high Dutch, leaving vs in great hope of present safetie and helpe.

Their

Their Boate comming to Ruftene with our two companions, all the people flocked together, and feeing the countenance and habite of our companions, aftonished at 10 great and strange a matter, they demanded among them felues, whence, & how fuch like fellowes as these appeared, or from what place they landed : and that they might be the better aduercised, they attempted to speake vnto them in divers Languages, but in the end an Almaine Prieft of the Order of the Preachers, spake with one of the said companions in the high Dutch, and by that meanes, they were certified what wee were, from whence, and how wee had arrived there. The which matter the morning following, which was the second day of Februarie dedicated to the glorious Mother of Christ, the faid Priest published to all the people of Rustens, exhorting them, that shrough our misfortune, they would bee mooued to pitie and to helpe vs, according to to

In this meane space, through the Catholike remembrance of the Almaine Priest, on the third day of February, 1431.at the very inflant of the day of Saint Biagio, the curteous and pittiful Inhabitants of Ruffene came vnto vs with great plentie of all fuftenance, which they vie for their prouisson, to feed vs and preserue vs, being desirous to conduct vs to their kinde habitations, torefresh our weake bodies. And so wee were guided and received into Rustene vpon the saydday, where wee had great restoratives, which were rather hurtfull for vs, through the exceeding abundance thereof, because wee could never fatisfie our selues with eating, and our weake ftomackes not being able to indure it, it made our hearts to grieue, so that wee thought wee

There were remayning in the first and greater of our two retiring places, two of the companie which were impotent and weake, who knew nothing of this our so miraculous succour. Wherefere giuing these Catholike Countrey people notice of them, and likewise of the other eight that were dead and unburied, affembling themselves together, they went with the Priest linging Pialmes and Hymnes, as well to burie those eight that were dead, as to conduct to the Hauen of safetie the two that were remayning behinde, and arriving at the Iland of Saints, they performed a worke of mercy to the eight that were dead, to the which number, one of the two remayning was added, whom they found dead. Now imagine, how the other could continue being depriued of companie and all humaine fustenance, and yet hee was brought to Reflene with fome little thew of life, where, at the end of two dayes hee departed this tran- 30

Eleuen of vs being come to Rustine, wee landed and went into the house of our Guide, Host, and Lord, as hee and the rest desired, whereinto our most prudent Master, Master Piero Quirini entring, ving his wifedome and difcretion, performed an action of exceeding great humilitie, as Gone as hee faw the companion of our Conductor and Sergeant Major, declaring by femblance that hee would acknowledge her to bee the Mistresse of the house, hee cast himselfe downeat her feet : but shee refused and listed him vp from the ground, embracing him and bringing him to the fire, and with her owne hand gaue him somewhat to eate. In this Iland there are twelue little Houses, with about one hundred and twentie persons, for

Rustine descrit the most part Fishermen, and they are by nature indued with understanding to know how to 40 make Boates, Buckets, Tunnes, Baskets, Nets of all forts, and euery other thing necessarie for their vie and trade. And they are very curteous one toward another and serviceable, desirous to please rather for loue, then for hope of any gift or good turne to bee done them againe. Fishes called Stock-fish, in all their payments and bartering, are vsed in stead of coyned money, and they are all as it were of one bigneffe and measure, of the which euery yeere they drie an infinite Bead of many; number in the winde : and in the time of May fraight themselves with them, carrying them through the Realmes of Denmarke, that is to fay, Sweden, Denmarke, and Norway, being all Subiect to the King of Dacis: where they barter and exchange the faid Fish, for Leather, Cloathes, Iron, Pulse and other things, whereof they have scarcitie,

Few other things for maintenance of life are found there, except Fifh, yet at certaine times, 50 they have some small quantitie of Beefe, and Milke of Kine, of the which, with Rice, and I know not what other mixture, they make Bread of a naughtie taffe. Their Drinke is sowre Milke, displeasing vnto them, who have not beene accustomed thereunto. They vse also Ale, that is to fay, Wine drawne out of Rie. Wee eate of the Plaice or Halibut fish, which are exceeding great, so that you would not beleeue it. Wee saw some of them somewhat longer then sixe feete of the common Venetian measure, aboue two foote broad vpon the Chine, and more then three quarters of a foote in thickneffe : a wonderfull thing to bee spoken. They cloath the men with redde Hides, and likewise blacke, able to defend them from the water, and they vse cloathes very course, of azure, redde, and ash-colour, brought from Demmarks, of small price and

Halibuts very

Their drinke

These Countrey people vie much to frequent the Church, because they are very deuout, and yeeld great reuerence to the worship and service of God. Avarice, is as it were altogether extinguished, for, they understand not in any fort, nor know not what thing of anothers may become theirs, but by barter : and therefore they vie not to locke Doore, House, nor Win-

dowes, nor any Cheft for feare to bee robbed, but onely by reason of the wilde Brafts.

The Inhabitants of this place both young and old, are of fo great simplicitie of heart, and o. Simplicitie, bedient to the Commandement of God, that they seither vinderstand know, nor imagine in any thus the Hewife, what Fornication, or Adulterie may bee: but vie Marriage according to Gods Commanin regard of dement. And to give you a true proofe hereof I Christophero fay, that we were in the house of their different our foresaid Hoft, and slept in one and the same Cottage, where hee also and his Wife slept, iealousie, and fucceffinely in one Bed neere adjoyning, were their Daughters and Sonnes of ripe age toge- which fearfly ther, necre to the which Beds we also slept, almost close adjoyning to them : so that when they Permits the went to fleepe, or when they arole, or when they flripped themielaes naked, and wee in like ar Brotherre no manner, we indifferently faw one another, and yet with that puritie, as if weehad beenelittle fleeperader children. But I will tell you more, that for two dayes together, our faid Hoft, with his elder the fame roofe Sonnes arole to goe a filhing euen at the time of the most delightfull houre of sleepe, leaving his with the Mo-

space of eight houres.

The Inhabitants of this Hand, especially the elder fort, are found so vnited in their wils to ber, their houthe imparitance of this party cafualtie of naturall death, which befalleth Father, Mother, of timber in Husband, Wife, Children, or whatforger other Kinfman, or Friend, when the houre of their round forms paffage vitto another life appeareth, prefently without any griefe of heart and complaining, they with one light affemble themselues together vnto the Cathedrall Church, to thanke and prayse the Heavenly in the top, Creator, who bath permitted such an one to line so many yeeres, and at that prefent, as his crea- which in winture vouchfafed to call him, or her into his gracious fauour, and neere vnto him : and at the appointed house they cause them to be washed cleane, to have them pure and neate, as they were portable cold borne. Whereupon rej voing and contenting themselves with his infallible will and pleasure, is covered they give him prayle and glorie, not shewing any passion either in words or gestures, as if proper- with skinnes of ly they had but flept. Surely we may fay, that from the third of February 1431. vntill the four- great file. teenth of May 1432, which amounteth to an hundred dayes and one, we were within the circuit great luftre, of Paradife, to the reproch and shame of the Countries of Italie. There at the beginning of May we saw great varietie and alteration. First, their women vie den after

30 to goe voto the Bathes, which are very neare and commodious, as well for puritie, as for the foure dairs old cuitome they obserue, which they hold agreeable vato Nature : they vie to come forth of their the same for houses starke naked, as they came out of their Mothers wombe, going without any regard to the snow to fall their way, carrying only in their right hand an heape of graffe, in manner of a broome, as they on them, that fay, to rub the tweat from their backe, and the left hand they hold your their hip, for eading it they may bee as it were for a shadow to couer their hinder parts, that they should not much appeare: where hardned for the cold. having twice feene them, we paffed away by them, as eafily as their owne people, the Countrey From the fire was fo cold, and the continual feeing of them, that it caused vs to make no account thereof. On of Febr. to the the contrary part, these very women were seene on the Sunday to enter into the Church in long 14-of May, it and comely Garments. And that they might not by any meanes be seene in the face, they weare almost alway 40 on their head a thing like a compleat Morion with a Gorget, which hath an hole to fee through fnow d. Their on their head a thing like a compleat Morion with a Gorger, which nath an hole to ree through germents are at the end, like the hole of a Pipe, through the which they behold within that, no further off of course clock from their eyes then the hole is long, so that they seeme to have it in their mouthes to pipe : and of London, &c. worse then that, they can neither see nor speake, volesse they turne themselves a yard or more, more then of from the hearer. I thought good to note these two extreame varieties, as worthy to bee vn. Funerall. derstood. From the twentieth of November, vntill the twentieth of February, the night continueth Long nights

and lafteth there about one and twentie houres or more, the Moon neuer wholly hiding her bodie Quino faith, or her rayes at leaft. And from the twentieth of May vntill the twentieth of August, either the months nich whole Sunne is alwayes feene, or elfe his beames never faile. In this Countrey there is infinite plentie of white Birds, in their Language called Muzi, but light of the we called them Cockes of the Sea, which by nature connerfe, and willingly abide where men Moone: and inhabit, whether they find them in Barkes or on the Land. And they are so domesticall and three others

tame as House doues are with vs. In this Iland, and in the Countries of Succia, we saw very white skins of Beares as white light or light at least of as Armelins, much longer then twelue Venetian feete. Wee abode in Ruftene three moneths and the Sunne. eleven dayes, expecting a fit time to paffe with our Hoft into Smeden, with his vivall fraight of Brds, Mark Stock-fish, which is in the time of May, when these Country people depart, carrying with They returne. them infinite plentie thereof through the Realmes of the aforefaid King of Dacia.

On the fourteenth day of May 1422, came the hours fo much defired, to turne our faces to-60 wards our amiable and beloued Countrey, as our minde and defire alwayes was, and leave the charitable place of Rustene, which was the last succour and refreshing to our miseries. So wee tooke our leave of our Domesticall friends of the House, and of our Mistresse and Hostesse, to whom in token of our loue we left, not that whereunto we were in dutie bound, but what wee had remayning : and that was certayne small trifling things of little value in our opinion, as

Wife and Danghters in the Bed, with that securitie and puritie, as if he had properly left them m Dairing in the armes and embracements of the Mother, not returning to his home in left time then the faithin the

with continual

Skiffe drow-Trondon.

Saint Olem.

the plankes and ribs of our Skiffe, whereby we plainly knew, that our companions which were in it, were perished and drowned, the first night that they departed from vs. The nine and twentieth of May 1432. we arrived with the laid Barke at Trendon, whon the Coaft of Norway, the Princely Seate of the King of Denmarke, where the Honourable bodie of glorious Saint Olam resteth. There wee slayed ten dayes to waite for passage; and a st time for our Voyage: but not finding it, because we would lose no more time, wee tooke leave of our beloued Hoft, his Sonnes and the reft, to proceed on our journey by Land.

Vollina.

The ninth of Iune we departed from Trenden, travelling on foot, going towards Vastenda place fubject to the King of Denmarks, within the Province of Sweden, where the cheek-bone and part of the bone of the head of Saint Bridget remayneth. Being there, wee vinderstood by the Vene- 20 tians, that the Inhabitants for the reuerence of their glorious King Saint Olam, vinto whom (as they well knew) our Signierie of Venice did great fauour in his going and returning from his Voyage to Hiernfalem, were disposed with deeds to prouide for vs by their counsell, helpe and money. And first, they aduised vs not to goe the direct way into Dacia, by reason of the dangers of wilde beafts, which might befall vs, but to addresseour selves to goe directly to Sticking. borgi, to find out a valiant Venetian Knight called M. Gionen Francisa, from whom wee should receue fauour and helpe in plentifull manner, for loue of our Countrey, although the way were thirtie dayes journey, quite contrary to our direct way. On the eighteenth day we came to the Court of the faid Canalier M. Gionan Francho, an Honourable Baron, and highly effected of the Crowne of Dacis, where (with great joy) we found our two straggling companions.

Venetian

The valorous Knight being now informed of our comming, with a cheereful conntenance declared well unto vs how great the loue of his Countrey was, and especially knowing the calamitie and penurie of vs his Countrey-men, and being easily able to releeue it. And therefore he could not sufficiently satisfie himselse in honouring, clothing and feeding vs, but gaue vs money for our necessities, and furnishing vs afterward with good Horfes, in his owne proper person, together with his only Sonne M. Maphee, with an hundred and twentie Horles of his owne Seruants he accompanied vs many dayes journeyes through his Territories, trauelling alwayes at his owne charge. Afterward, vpon his limits and bounds wee tooke our leave to depart, thanking him with the most reuerent and kind speeches that possibly we coold. Whereupon he being departed, left vs for our Guide, his faid sonne M. Maphee with twentie servants on Horie- 40 backe, who kept vs company vnto Vastena, the place from whence about fortie dayes before we had departed, vnto the which place, for the anoyding of two monethes trauell, wee were faine to returne : fo that on the thirtieth day of July wee entred into Vattera, where wee abode vntill the second of August, being alwayes accompanied, and our charges borne by the said

" Quirine fait foot on Eng-land, her ice-med to bee comme out of Hell and se-Hee came to

Vniuerfitie where a Bene-

On the second of August, we tooke our leave of the foresaid M. Maphie, yeelding him such thankes as we could. And being departed from him wee went to Lodefe, where wee arrived the eleuenth of the faid moneth; in which place we found two passages, the one for England, and the other for the Low Countries : and there we voluntarily divided our selves into two parts.

The two and twentieth of August 1432. we Christophere Fiorauante, one of the Councell of 50 the vnfortunate ship, together with Girardo da Lione, the Sewer, and Nicolo di Michiel of Venice the Notarie, now Writer of this present Discourse, departed from the other eight of our companions, they going towards London and we to Venice, by the way of Rostoch', pretending to goe to Rome for a Pardon: and after many troubles and molestations, passing over Mountaynes Valleyes, Riuers, sometimes on foot, and sometimes on Horse-backe, through the helpe of the Omnipotent God, we came vnto our fo much defired Countrey of Venice, on the twelfth of October, 1432. Safe and found, leaving the faid Girardo da Lien at Vafenech, who from thence went vnto his Countrey : and those that went into " England were these; Master Francesco Quirini, Sonne of Mafter Iacomo a Venetian Gentleman, being Merchant of the vohappie ship. Mafter Piero Gradenico, Sonne of Mafter Andrea, of the age of eighteene yeeres, a young Mer- 60 chant, Bernardo da Cagbire, Pilot of the ship, whose Wife being young, aswellebrough the long don, wherehe delay of time passed, as for that it was many times certainly reported, that the said ship with all them that were therein, were in great danger, and no token at all appearing to the contrary, moneths, &c. being adulfed more halfilly, then vpon mature confideration, as is the manner of needle women,

CHAP. 19. Liars reward. Arthurs Conquests. Edgars great Name and Titile, 619

the married her lefte at Zrimie. But hearing of our comming, and the certayne howes of her lining and true Husband, the prefently feparated the bond of the fecond Marriage and thusbee felfe vo in an honeit Monafterre, atwell to declare the Integritie of her minde, as to expert the returne of her true Husband, who about fome three moneths after came to Famor fale and found! and tooks her agains watco him, &c. streaky . And and a segment of a same of the rest of the

and tooks her against vato him, see a see

And the state of t crafible in poftentie. And shint (land Alexanders Multer, Anifothe) ners thinbe lying, that when he speakes truth his saugothe beleased. So hath it first with 20 that British worthy, King Arthw, whose Great Acts by great Flatterers, seeking to light can-

dles to the Sunne, have made others suppose it to be night, and his worth to be a worke of darkness and lyes. Neither doch the later posteritie know how to distinguish the ope from the othersand the Writers for and against the twist of the British storie, as lifter of the mount and William of Newbridge of old, and others fince, have feemed to me to let the truth (as in altercation

William of Newbridge of old and others fince, have feemed to me to let the fund as in alternation is wind! To fall down between the winter that is not to the total the same that the control of the same that the s

Saint Maille.

Aday chat famous founder of Mancheres, is had by Remarking Chapy (No. half the motifal Aday) chat famous founder of Mancheres is had by Remarking Chapy (No. half the motifal 40 vie foure them ind things, and by Plane's Misternachus Sparch and the half the Mancheres of the Compaint of the Maille Sparches of the Sparches in this chiefe which I do the Charter of the Consideration of the Confectional Edifficient fine Sparches in the Charter of the Consideration of the Confectional Edifficient for Sparches in the Charter of the Confection of Arthur wasa Briton by his strong shipping and well manned and mannaged Naute

Arbite Wash or an Organization Indian Imperiorated west managed and appropriate Peter Research in Florest Indian Region, Pacificial Res Adaption non-mining manger choice Anglia qualen Romalia, Remanis, (J. Fa. Perios, Altrinology Macadombias, Arganization Carolina Manussi Francis; and addeth, as before is rotunal. Les compaction managed 3600. tabulla file congregatoria mausi, exquibus l'afebal; mora fa flumapine giori schre 1200. file describe de consideration gens ad desensome contra exteros Regni sui, & sum suorumque ad bellicos ossu exercituins. Both sache South Florentinu and Malmerbury, and Mat. Westwinster record; that hee sitting at the Steine, was cossi also. 6c rowed by eight Kings his Tributaries; Kined King of Scots, Macolm of Cumberland, Macon of Man and many Ilands, Dufnal of Dometia, Siferth and Howel Kings of Wales, lacib King of Galwater, and Intel of Welfmar, having the same day there met at his summons, and sworne featie and affiffance to him by Sea and Land. These rowed him in the River Dec. to the Monattery from his Palace, and thence after feruice backe againe : So rightly did he inftile himfelfe in his Charter

to Malme ibury, Ego Adqueut toinu Albionis. Bafilent, per non M. witmormis feu infulenorum Reoun oircumhabitantium ére.

containing the Men (acrificed

This Sunne being let, darke and flormy times followed by reafon of Danis incurfions. Thele Danes (as. M. Condess according began to be known a such a world, shout the years of Christ 570. for their piracies colled Wiccings; of them Dudo de S. Quintino hach this tellimony. Danie See. tor their piracies cities or resenge; ou them some not a second or vegina, durafine makinda, the. The 16 Danes, like a finarme of Bees out of their bine, and a found on a literal me disorder and more and Dance, like a finerme of Bees out of their bine, and a fiverd out of a locath, in discrift ed memor and bor barrow custome leaped forth from Scanach (Scanach) effect that with petulant infit they bed multiplied their immemballs generation. The lebring growns, contraded with their practice and programmed their political, and currifuring their naime Banky, a multipasse of them (according to their ancient entires) political, and currifuring their naime Banky, a multipasse of them (according to their ancient entires) political, and currifuring their maine Banky, a multipasse of them (according to their ancient entires) from political political than folias. In the confirmation of the compile of the second of the confirmation of their behalf of munificant part from the state of passes their passes the confirmation of their behalf of passes the confirmation of their behalf fread of Hankes, to pacific their Gods. Hereby wee fee that by Daws, in our English Rovers, are intended not onely those which now we properly to call, but " Morregians also, Gottes, Vandals.

HONDIVS bu Map of NORVYEGIA and SVETIA.



eres per- Frieflanders, and the Inhabitants generally of those North-easterne parts, three Ships of whom, ambalation of in the yeare 787 Landed in the West parts, slew the Reene of Beerbtricke King of the West Saxons, and were by the Countrie people forced backe to their Ships. Ann. 795. a few Ships of them made the like affay in Soutland, and some after some of them entred Tynemouth Hauen, in the 60 North part of England, and returned with the spoyles of the Churches of Heremes and Tyumouth. Mat. Wolfmings. This was in the yeere 800. Thirtie three yeeres after, in the reigne of Egbert, they were beaten at Dunmers, but spoyled Sheepie, with murthers and robberies, entring Thames with thirtie fine

CHAP. 10. Danes fooyling, maffacre, reuenge. Hocktide. Canutus. S. Olauc.

fayle. The next yeere they preuailed in battell against King Egbert, and after that iovned with the Wellimen to inuade and destroy this Kingdome, but were both chased by the victorious power of the King; and An. 826. another hoalt of them was beaten. Another Fleet of thirtie foure Ships landed at South-Hamton, An. 838. and flew Duke Ethelhelm: after which they proceeded with continuall incursions (two Hydras heads still succeeding, when any English Hercules had cut off one) that it breeds horror to read or thinke of the (poyles, rapes, fires, murthers, barbarisme, heathenisme, desolation and destruction, which they brought enery where with them. And although Aifred, Edward, and Adelfane somewhat healed the Land of that pestilence; yet in Etbeldreds time fuch a mortall relapse happened, that first he charged the people with an insupportable tribute of Danegelt, arifing to 48000. pounds yeerely (euen after the account of those times) and Danegelt con-

buying herewith nothing but perfidie on their part, and beggerly on his, by the aduice of one Ha. traved till Edna the Generall of his Armie, he wrote Letters to all places, that on Saint Brices day (which is ward the Conthe morrow after Saint Martins night, the Danes not having digested that drunken folemnitie 4.1012. should be all massacred, which accordingly was effected on man, woman, and child, not sparing those which fled to the Altars. A few in London escaped, and caused Swejne with a Danish Army and vaspeakable crueltie zo repay that butcherie. Esbeldred fled with his wife and children into Normandie (the feed of a new Conqueft) for that Suanus " having made the sheepefold a shambles " This Swanus," Normandie (the feed of a new Conquett) to that Smanns: nature must the interpretate a mainter of same had and shepheardlesse, proclaimed himselfe King of England, which Canutus or Count and his two killed hista-

ionnes, Harold and Hardioannes, held after him fome thirtie yeeres fpace. And fuch was the Danife tyranny, that every Dane was filled Lord Dane, and had at his commandement the wives, daughters, and the whole houshold where hee became. But after the death of Hardicanutus, that title was turned into the reproachfull terms of Lurdane, and the day of his death "(as the Roman Fugalia) was celebrated with open pastime and feating in the fireets, called Hockiide or Hackiide, as it England (then absolutely freed) made a mocke or Hockiide have forme of her enemies. Canness by treason of Eadrike Streena obtained the Kingdome, first as partforme of her enemies. Cannens by treaton of Endrice Streams obtained the Kingdome, nrtt as partpublished a published and after his death the whole by other perfidie, flaying Endry brother fing in the of King Edmund, and lending Edmunds two fonnes, Edward and Edmund, to the King of Sweden (free the terente was consequently and the hating such squelcie, sent them to Salmen King of Hingary to men also in-bring vp, where Edmand dyed, and Edmard married Agaiba daughter of Henry the Emperour, by dinginthy of bring vp, where Edmand dyed, and Edward married regards adapted of Heart the Zangerous compelling, whom hee had Adam Athling, and Margaret married to Malcolm King of Scots (the mother them to loak

30 of Mand wife to Henry the first) and Christine a Nun. Constitu d'uided the Kingdome into foure parts, of which her referued West Sazenie to him-leite, East England hee committed to Easte Turkill, Mercia to Duke Ediske, and Northumberland night after to Earle Erike. Soone after, he caused Duke Edrike (which treacherously had advanced him to the Crowne) to bee flaine, (a suft reward of treason) and then banished Earle Tarkill and Earle Brike picking quarrell with them (weary of any stalking horses) the former of which was presently after his landing in Denmarte flain. And now did Cametus feeke to win the favour of the English by building and endowing Monasteries, making good Lawes, and marrying Emma the relict of King Ethelred. Thus having Denmarke by inheritance, and England by conquest & treachery, his ambition next aimed at Sweden, where first lie had the worle, but after compelled VIf and Eiglaf the Kines of that Countrie to composition with him, Earle Godwin, the Generall of the English, pro-

uoking and animating the English to recover their pristine glory, and by folid vertue to ouercome quest in Sasthem, who had ouercome their new Lord, whose fortune had subjected the English. Thus Came den. A. 1014. the pressailed by Godwiner policie and English valour, they by night without the Kings know-ledge, or affiftance of the Danish Armie, affaulting and overthrowing the Swedens: hee, the next day, milling the English, and fearing they had turned to the Enemy, till giving the onset with his Danes voon the forfaken Campe of the Enemy, he found there nothing but carkaffes

Anno 1027, having intelligence that the Norwegians contemned their King Olans for his Saint Olans fimplicitie, he fent great fammes of Gold and Silver to the Grandes of Normay, to corrupt them, and caused them to reject Olane, and to choose him for their King. For percerted with gifts they fent him word to come to them, whom he flould find readie to entertayne him. An. 1028. he went with a fleet of fifty fayle to Norway, and expelled Olane, subjecting that Kingdome to himselfe, Olane which had beene the King, Doctor, Preacher and Apostle of the Norwegians, (as Florilegus fileth him) the fonne of Harald King of Norway, was flayne, Anno 1030. and cruelly butchered by his treacherous Norwegians with an Axe or Hatchet, for dilanulling their Pagan superstitions, and hee since is there superstitiously worshipped for a Saint, whom then trayteroully they permitted not to reigne or breathe. The same yeere perished at Sea, or (as some fay) was flayne in one of the Orcades, Earle Hacun, whom Camutus fearing had banished in co-

6c lour of fending him Embaffadour. His greatnesse (having to wife his fisters daughter) made him grow suspicious : And according to the deuction of that time. Anno 1031. Canutus or Courte went to Rome on Pilgrimage, and there made magnificent Offerings, and obtayined divers Immunities of the Emperour and Pope. After his returne he inuaded the Scots, and onescame King Malcolme with two other

Canniu Rex tolisu Auglie, & Danemercie, & Norreganorum, & partis Sugnerum, Aethelinethe

Remijoringto. Constitue nea verice de signes, o Danomica, o Constitue de Primaribue de sei An-mage a proce Metropolitano & Alfreo Eboracenfi Archipifcopo, omnibulque Epifcopie & Primaribue de toit An-

chon for tv- glorum genii; iam nobiliou quam plebeyi, salutem. Retifico vobus me nomier inife Romam, eratum.

tannous viur. S. pro redemptio e peccaminum meorum & pro salute Regnorum, quique meo subiacent regimini populapations of the property of the profession of the property of the property of the property of the profession of the profession of the property of the profession of the profess

without refti- tibus bue vique per ficere non potui. Nunc autem ipfi Deo meo Omnipotents valde bumiliter eratus 4-

tution to the right Heires: as 80, qui mibi concessit in vitamea Santlos Apostoles suos Petrum & Paulim, & omne Santharium. richtHeiressas 5".

ji Peters pre- quod suxta urbem Romam aut extra addifere possiesere, & secundum desiderium meun presentiaif Peter pre- quea mara voems amonas au care municipo prima aparas, qui a faptembra adeci fellum Peter par electic y acre liter venerari er adriar e. Ob id ergo maximo bue parras, qui a faptembra adeci fellum Peter par 10.

tecrosis, mit.
a Pick lockse to postolum magnam potesitatem a Domino accepise ligands at a, soluends, classigerum a, esse Regni Celestis.

open Heauca & ideo freciale eins patrocinium and Dominum diligenter expetere valde ville duxi, &c.

herfelfe, and became a Nunne. Suesse King of Normey after fine yeares deceased, and Countage his

ill gotten English and Norwegian wings were quickly not only pulled, but out off.

The English had occasion of further intustion to and from Norwegs. For Smoone decoding, the Norwegium chose Magnus the Sonne of Saint Olaw for their King; which when Hardson Historia Daniel Storie fet forth by Erpeld Lindanbruch retificats) hee munded Normay with his English and Daville forces, where he and Magnus came to composition that Normey with an Largue and Lawrent prices, wante up and consigned annue to component that the Suminor flouid carpy both Kingdomes. When Hardwarene was dead, Sarse the Sonne of Effrid his Sifter, fucceeded, and Magues King of Normey fought with Sasse no obtayns his co. Second Build. penanted Kingdome of Denmerke, and outgrame him, Same fied into Sweden, and there abode Exp rill the death of Magnus, after which he recovered his David Scepten. Florenzine writeth that to Paren 10 Interested of Angele and Angel Magnes with a great Nauie fought with Snows and expelled him his Kingdome, which herei-

ter recouered. Harald Harnager the Sonne of Samuel King of Normey and Brother by the Mothers fide to Saint Office cheay ned Norway after his Nephew Magnes, and fent an Embriliage to King Ed-mend, whereby Peace and Amitic was concluded between both the Kings. He (after King Ed-The ERIES Language Monographic reverse in the superior and the superior and the superior of companion.

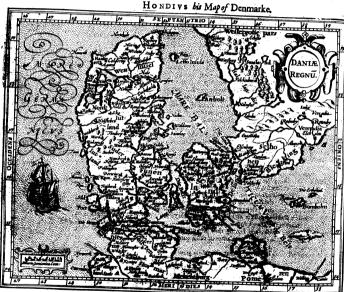
Earle Godow) fluch his Brother Tells and Harmage at Sampfurd Bridge, permitting his Sonne O-Lane to returns upon conditions to Noway, But whiles be concerned the floodle to his owner property, by the such this fluck to the English state a few days after in the battaple with profilement and the superior of the

those Northerne quarrels having had no other end but this succession. I shall not need to adde whee followed (the Norman Acts in Italie, Paleitims and other plan ces I have handled elle-where) little occurring of Mars, but Mercanio, of which I have by me wid for Lis. Cet I must manufe serve were interested to the first years of his Reigne to Hamm or Happin, then King 6.6.5.t. of Narmay, for mutuall Trafficks betwirst both their fibjeds. It is remarkable that the Northerne humour of spoile, daughter and bloud continued whiles they were Paguns, and expired in manner with their Paganilme both in Namegian and Daner: as if God would first by these in manner with their regaining both in Narmograms and Damar. As it Lied would first by them 30 puilt the vices of those times, and withall conquer the Conquerours, with the Religion of the Note. conquered, and by 16 firanges way bring the Northerne World (by this way of defloying) to filuation. Since that time, the State of Narmon, Hand and other parts hath decayed in manchers of filipping, courage of men, and other means of Earthly greatments. Somewhite yet for History and an Historians fake, I will adde of Marchan Faris an Englishmen his Voyage to

orney. In the years 1247. Matthew Paris recorder, that on the day of Saint Olaw, a famous Saint Ma.Paris. 981: in the Regions and Ilands of Normey, Hasse was crowned King, and folemeely anointed at in the Kegious ago i anneas or the supplementary of the Bright of Safety than Legate (from the Pope) in those parts. For the horocar Appendix of the Billiop of Safety than Legate (from the Pope 1), those parts insulable Gifts which the Legate himselfe had, and sur hundred Markes by him extorted (faith our Author) from the Pope the Church of that Kingdome. The King also receiving the Crosse for the Hop Land Expe- and his Ladirion, obtayned of the Pope the third part of the Ecclefiasticall Revenues of that Kingdome gates deere towards his charges. Which Lewis the French King knowing, writ in friendly termes to Hacon, to beare him company in the faid Expedition offering him full power (in regard of his Seaskill) over his Nauie, and over the French Army. This Letter was carried by our Authour Man-offers. SKIIJ OURT HIS VARIAL, AND OMEY HIS CYBER ARMY. I HIS LECTOR WAS CATHER BY OUR AUTHORS AND AUTHOR AND AUTHOR AUTHO and prouifions as need required. The Kings Answere thereto and Letters Patents were also deliuered to him by this our Author in this forme.

Ludonieus Dei gratia Francorum Rox, minerfi amirie & fidelibne finte, Ballierie, Maidribne, & His Lette. Landinen Les grants Cambrier de la Cambrier de La Cambrier Landinen Cambrier Landiner Hacon Roc. Norwegie in fabfaism Tursa fanilla transfrierase proposas, ficus nobis por final litera unimanis; como Roc. Merroga es projeumes à un promo est un resolution person personne per pasa inter a sessimant, versonne audient, partier par fait print Nanigemo per une o consignam terra soften transfer contingat, vel es Terram mofram, vel in frada môfra a diculo pafece, ifolime fin to benieve de beno-veffect recipatis, permittentes coffem in terra milira victualia muera, e fabi par foram la gromama de fabi necessaries providere. Altum apad Santtum Germanum in Laia, A. D. 1248.

When the King of Norway had read this (for hee is a diferent, and modelf, and well learned man) hee reioyced much, and was gratefull to the bearer, respecting him with Royall and M.Parhlisey. bountifull gifts. Thus writeth Matthew Paris of himselfe, and his employment. The cause of age to North his going into Norway he further relateth, that King Custo (or Camitis) having founded a fa- John Abbie.



Canutur before his death fet his Sonne Suanus in possession of Norway, and Hardecanutus his Sonne over the Danes. Harald and Hardecaputus divided England betwixt them after his death. Anno 1035 and Harald dying, Anno 1040, that quarrell was ended; and soone after, by the others death the Danish Empire in England; the small space of King Edward interceding that, and 60 another Conquest of the Normans, descended also of like Northerne, namely of Norwegian Originall, Carnetus his Daughter Curilda was married to Henry the Emperour, and being accused of Adultery, against a Giantly Champion appeared in her defence a childish English Dwarsse which ferued her, who flue the Giant and prefented his head to the Ladie, who thereupon discreed

Monker igno.

runt of their

mous Monasterv of Saint Bennet, of Holm in Norway Cof which title and order hee had founded another in England) it happened that the faid Abbie, with the appurtenances was abnost ruined by an impious Abbat, who forfaking his Order, and flealing away privily the Seale of the Chapiter, either fold, or by forged writings fraudulently engaged almost all the possessions thereof: wherein hee had the Sacrift, the keeper of the Seale, his copartner, both in this fugitive apoftacie and treacherie. Heerenpon the Archbishop of Nidrofia, in whose Diocesse the said Abbie was fituate feiled the fame and the appairrenances into his hands, alledging that the Monkes had only the habite, but were altogether ignorant of Monastike order, and Saint Bennets rule, some of them allo theenes and fugitines. The Monkes appealed to the Pope (which canfed the Arctibifhon to fulpend his proceedings) and the Prior recovering somewhat, and gathering together a summe of the hands and Lime-fingered money, went to the Roman Court, where the Abbat had beene a little before, and intangled by writings the faid house in fine hundred markes; which caused the Prior to returne frustrate and full of griefe. But in his way, hearing that the faid Abbat was dead, in the Abby of Saint Alban in Selio (in Norway) he and the Courat made choice of an Abbat, and this Prior, with another Monke, and three hundred markes in mony, together with the Kings letter, being fent to

> within one yeeres space. But their Spiritualities were much maimed, they by bribes purchasing delayes, left the Archbishop should take possession of the Iland which wholly belonged to the Abby, and of it also, expelling the Monkes. Now the Cardinall B shop of Sabine then comming Legate into Normay, the Monkes fought to him for fuccour, and hee counselled them to go and petition the Pope to provide them of an Instructor and Reformer, and he would write in their behalfe.

> Matthew Paris to take paines for their freedome, it was procured happing that the temporale ties of the faid house were freed from the Camfines (the Popes Viurers) then residing at London.

The Abbat therefore and Prior went with Letters from the King and Legate to the Pope, who gate them leave to chuse any man of whatsoever Region or Monasterie to be their Infin er. They answered the next day, that all the World had not Monkes of that Order living in more composed order then England, nor England any comparable by report, to Saint Albani:
of which House they defired Matthew to be their Reformer, of whose wisdome and faithfulnes they had had experience; a man also almost familiar and friendly to their King, and able by his meanes to order the rebellions and variety. Hereupon the Pope gaue them this Briefe to the Ab- 30 bat of Saint Albane.

Innocentius, &c. Dilecto Falso Abbati Santis Albani in Anglia Ordinis S. Beneditti, &c. Cum ficut ex parte delecti filiy Abbatis Monastery de Holm, Ordinie S. Benedicte Nistorfiensis Diocesis, fuit propitime orane nobus idem Monasserimen propter Pradecosforum seerum negizentiem, sit in bis qua ad Monassicum Ordinom periment desormations; nec innewiator in illis partibus aliquis qui statuta & observantia eius dem Ordmis bene feiat: Nos ad supplicationem emslam Abbatis, discretionem tuam rogamus, attentius & bortamur per Apostolica tivi scripta mandantes, quatemus discrium stiam tratrem Mattheum Monachum tuum que dicitus probata vita acreligionis experta, ad idem Monafferium ve dicham Abbatem & Monaches suos in regularibus disciplinas & statutis que ad cundem ordinem nertinent, informet & instruct, transmittere pro dinina & Apolialice fedis ac nostra renerentia non post- 40 ponus. Dasam Lugdani, &c. Hereto the Abbat obeying, and Matilier to his Abbat, the bus-neffe luckily succeeded, and Monkerie both in that of Holio, and other Norwegian Monasteries was reformed.

I might here flew 1 the great flirres which in the first Ages after the Conquest the Norme-

gians have caused in Ireland, Wales, Man, Anglesey, the Hebrides, and Oreades: as also of Harald (whom the Conquerous flue) his two fonnes and daughter fleeing to Snene King of Den-

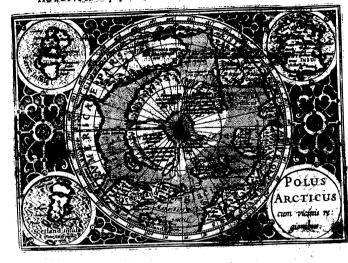
King Havalds

marke, who gave the daughter in Marriage to Ieruflans, or Waldemarns Ring of Ruffle and of Nicolas de Lyuna, a Franciscan Frier and Mathematician of Oxford, before mentioned, of whom Incobne Cuoyen faith in his Journall that he learned of a Priest who had descended of those which King Arthur had left to people the Hands of Norway, Anno 1:64. that in the yeare 1:60, the faid Frier had come into those Ilands, and proceeding further by Art Magicke, had described 50 a See pag. feq. those Antike parts (as the " Map presents) with fourt Whirl-pooles or In-draughts, Yea (as Master Frier of Lines Dee addeth) at the Northerne Hands, the Record whereof at his returne he gaue to the King of England, the Booke being called Innentie fortunata or fortuna, concavering a description from fiftie foure degrees to the Pole, I might also adde out of Thomas of Walfingham, the Travels of House Earle of Darbie, (afterwards Henrie the Fourth, King of England) into Profits and Lettow, or Lithuania, where by his helpe especially was taken Vilna the chiefe Citie (Skingalle the King of Lettow, having fled thicker for refuge) his Colours being first advanced on the walls, fourethouland flaine, of which the King of Polands Brother, and three thouland captived. Also T. of worldock. I might adde the Voyage of Thomas of Madfocke Duke of Glocefler, fonne to King Edward the Third, along the Coatts of Denmarte, Norway, and Scotland. Other Letters likewife of King 60 Edward the Second to Haquin or Hacen, King of Norway in behalfe of English Merchants there arrefted : with Entercouries betwixt the English and the Dutch Knights in Liefland. But hauing only briefe mentions of these, and them or the most of them recorded by Master Haklayes

B(16; 4.

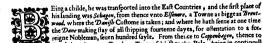
industrie before, I doe here but Index-wife referre the Reader thicher. I rather choose to sine new things and rare : and fuch may feeme these Notes which Anno 1603. I writ from the mouth of Maiter George Barkeley.

HONDIVE bis Map of the Arctike Pole, or Northerne World.



CHAP. XX.

A briefe Memoriall of the great Trauells by Sea and Land, of Matter GEORGE BARKLEY Merchant of London, in Europe, Afia, Africa, and America, and their Ilands.



his landing was Schagen, from thence vnto Elfennee, a Towne as bigge as Bront. Schagen, wood, where the Danifb Custome is taken; and where he hath seene at one time Elsense. the Done making flay of all thipping fourteene dayes, for oftentation to a foregreen comments of the Done making flay of all thipping fourteene dayes, for oftentation to a foregreen the Done of the Bornbolme, thence to Danke, a Towne subject to the Pole, being in continual Daniel. buildings, if by any meanes they may fortifie themselves against the Hilles over-looking the

Towne, a Rill running betweene, whence they have their fresh water: they spare no time Sunday nor other. There lyeth here in the Sea by casting vp of fands a long Iland called Prifta mering, where alongst, as on Samaiden , is gathered by the Danske Officers there, and here by the Iemes, that farme it of the Pole, Amber, cast up by the Sea in great abundance, pieces as bigge as Ambers a pecke, more or leffe. The Bores that find it and gather, have fo many firkins of some other 3sk.

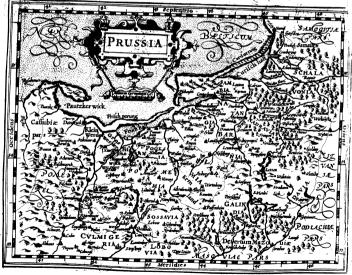
meane commoditie and it they keepe and fell it, they dye for it. Hee hath feene one piece of Amber taken vp, in the middest whereof was to be teen through the transparent Amber a Frog in fimilitude and full proportion : (Master Vaffall, his broiber, a friend of mine, told me of a piece of In minimises and the proportions (matter regas, the orestore, a frame) must, tead me of a piece of Timber to the skelet of ships, where by occasion of a fluer, one centing time incloss within the Timber e-nery may, be found a great liming I aid in the bollow thereof at Westwels Decruits eith is Fellowing. mery west, very own perms usume, a come is now comment in the comment of the comment of the comment of the Land is a great water friends, whereas taking drogge, day they begin to fish, of which there is exceeding plentie, and for three halfs pence one may buy a cultar much as they fish of draw the next time. One here in his Net drew vp a company or heape of Swallowes as bigge as a bushell fastned by the legs and bills in one which being carried to their stones, quickned and slew, and comming againe fuddenly in the cold Aire dyed-

The Trille.

From Danike he went to Marienberg, a Towne also standing on the Viitle, whereby it runne hin another channell, and betwikt both these makes an Hand wherein stands Nordeich. which Iland is compafied with a wall to fortifie it against the comming downe of the Villein the Spring at the thaw of the snowes, &c. This wall feemeth in some places as high as Paules Steeple, and other-where as high as Paules Church, where yet it hath fometime beene ourrflowne : full it is of Hoffes and Villages belonging to the Lords of Danike,

Marienberg is a free Towne for Religion (Danke then profeshing only Lutheran) faue certayne Friers and Nunnes lining in Cloyiters closely. There a Lauber as when he preacheth must make an end at his houre, and then a lefuit preachesh to the Rom, Catholikes as long, the former Duce Knights both company, and Preacher being auoyded of himfelfe, or by force. It was built by the Kreitsotom Ladie. herne (De-parini milites) Knights of the Croffe, who having loft their footing in the Holy Land, by consent of the Empire assaulted and conquered Profile, being in this Conquest fixtie foure

Hondivs bis Map of Borvssia, or Pryssia.



CHAP. 20. Ladie Knights order in Pruffia diffolued. Ruffian crueltie, &c.

yeeres, who after carried themselves so tyrannously, that the people yeekled themselves to the Pole, and destroyed the Kreizberne, save those that made a head about the North parts, with whom after some doubtfull fights, was made a league, that This Order should cease; Their Captayne (hould be married, and should have seventie two Townes in Profita, to him and his Heires Males, and in defect of fuch Heires to returne to the Pole. His Townes are not adjouned torether, but the Poles Townes betwixt. Kinning fourge is the Dukes Court.

Thence he went to Elbing, a faire Towne, where our Trade is now for Flaxe, which was before at Danke, thence remoued for their infolencies. Here our men only pay Custome: others are free, and this they did voluntarily, and have in this respect very much authoritie among the

To the Lords there : the Towne ftill flourisheth with buildings, &cc. Thence he went to Branferg, (the Poles Towne) where is a Colledge of Issuites : From this Branfers. place to Kinning berg, and thence to Libs in Carland, thence to Samaiden, and thence to Rice, or Riger Rie in Liefland alfo. (This Rees is vnder the Pole) thence to Derpe, and thence to Renel. At Derpe he went to schoole three yeeres : it is vnder the Pole. Linenia is exceedingly distracted betwint

HONDIVS bis Map of LIVONIA or LIEFLAND.



the Sweden, Ruffe, and Pole. King Stephen recovered part from the Ruffe, who before had partly 60 killed, and partly carried captine the Handicraft's men, in such desolate manner, that the Townes are ruinate, the ftone walls of Houses and Churches standing with trees of great bignesse grow. ing through their vncouered roofes, the Woods (whereof they have excellent flately) being ftrowed with bones of dead carkaffes; and himfelfe did once in one of those Woods eate Honey out of a Mans skull wherein a fwarme of Bees were, and bred as it hanged on a Tree, Hee con-

yeeres

CHAP.20.

Rene'l. Straw Caftle.

querest all faue Renell .: against which he made a Castle with water and firate, the frost binding queres an taue names ingainst waters nement a cante with the antique, the trot of noning them together as fast as they were laid. The Country is inhabited with the ancient Indigent, them together as rate as they were same and country as missiness with the amount students, called Manuele, and others of the Daich called by them Sac's. Who by occasion of hip wracke called Commerce, and others of the Limen Carrent by them one. The by occasion of importance Money? & San't being cast on these Countries, did buy of the simple Inhabitants so much ground as a Rose hide, denig case on creek contains, manager of another farre dillant Rie, and fo other Townes; by this oce, in pulsaing in one place arms, in another late. Deep was one Turfe of ground bought

Idolatry.

Marriage.

octore.

The Momefe: are almost Salmadees, retaining still their old superstitions, as to worship the Sun, or the first Beast they meet with, and especially they have in religious reckoning their Dease, unjor the first seast they meet with and expensive they made in the season of Trees, which it is religious to 10 Ints which they can be seeme, or or or ormer, the company of a tech, which it is religious to touch; and he knew a Datchman, Marim Telegiof Derpt, who breaking a bough was swelled a yeere together as big as his skinne would hold. Heere at Marriages and Burialis they pray, but yeare together as ong as his samue would note. Levels as makings, and buttains they pray, but without Image. Their morriage in thus, The man and his Bride are fet firidling on a Horfe, and blinded; and to led into Se-leane, there taken downeand married by their Rites; then fet vpabinded and to ten into or-name, there exact cover and matrice by their articles and enter pagaine, binded as before, and conceyed with their company, and Muncke to their house, finging Kofoku Kofoku Conițu. feamoha: there taken downe and had to bed, still blinded till the next morrow, in the meane white they rest drinking, &c.

They mourne when one is borne, reioyee and make merry at death. Their mourning (in Cur-Land) is then, and when they walke alone, or fetch wood, Terow, yeron yeron, maseuline babe: the dona) is then, and when they want thinke it to have remained fince that Babylong's Towre, 10 When the Momefes die, they are buried in their Leaner, with their knife vinder their arme, and their coate hanging ouer the graue. The Momeles are very ignorant, and aske who learne the Hares in the woods their prayers. At Rie the women haue a thing of Red veluet on their heads, made like a Ship with the keele vpward, at each end a lock of hayre. The women of the Saes differ in their falhion of attire each City from other, a pleted Petti-

Hospitalitie.

cote, with a damaske Vpper-body, a veluet Square on their heads, and thereon a Cloke, &c. The maid vincouered, if the haue had a child and refute to goe couered, the is brought to the Pillory, her. haire cut off, and there nayled, and a Kerchiefe put on. Here and in Norway, and in White Ruffle, &c. strangers pay fighling for entertainment, but salute, sit downe, and expect the Hosts expenoce. Their bed they mult bring with them, which is commonly a Beares skin, or elfe they there 30 haue a locke of straw. To offer money is a difgrace, which yet might seeme to arise of the basenesse of the coyne. Their houses are all of Timber beames laid square, and others laid on them in notches, fo till they come to the roofe, which they couer with ffraw, divided in two roomes; the inner being the Parlour or stoue, where they have as it were one Ouen ouer another: the middle hearth being of stones set grate-wife, the fire is put in on the Back-side or Hal-side, & there also the Sinke issueth. Before that mouth in the Stoue is set a vestell of water, which, when they wil have the heat exceeding, they befprinkle on those hoe stones. A fire lasteth a day, at night they renew it. Sometimes the old Prufees on the borders of Curland, according to their old heathenish Rites do facrifice their Priest in fire.

Ptibui.

Late

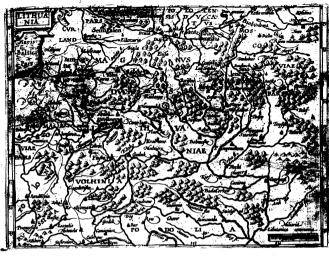
Vilna

Sowed Ships.

Houses.

From Derpt hee went to the Peibus, whereinto runne seventie two Rivers making a great 40 Lake full of rifh. In the Peibus betweene Plaste and Name, the Ships (whereof are many, and Yome an hundred Tunne, with one Maft) are fowed together with Ofiers, having no Iron workes, called Boidacks. They goe to Markets in Sleds, where comming to a walled Towne, and waiting the opening of the Gates, the Sled is drawne in sometime, with his Mafter fitting a before starke dead with cold. Thence he went to Name, which runneth out of this Lake, where the River being twice so bigge as the Thames, hath a fall a mile steepe on a Rocke. Here the Sweden (as is reported) made a Bridge ouer with the bodies of Ruffer, as the Ruffe had done before with his owne people about 40000, hence to Inanograd. These 40000, were onely bearded men flaine, &c. not women or children; these hee dashed by the heeles, the dryed braines whereof hee hath feene on the wals, &c. thefe all out of two Townes, Narme and Imano- 50 grod. The Cattle of Isanogrod is fo fortified, that it must bee thrice conquered before conquered, and built in a yeere, of Stone, which none elle is in Ruffia. Hence hee went to Teraflane, where he and his companion were apprehended by the Ruffer, for travelling without licence, and as they came at any Towne, blinded, and after some feares sent thence into Lette, or Lithnania: passing through Woods full of Bearts, Beares, &c. none hurtfull but en luxe, a kind of ounce or Cat-amountaine, with a tayle a handfull long, spotted, as big as a Dogge, in forme like a Cat, which would from off a tree leap on Trauellers and kill them. Here they came to the Weild or Vilna, the chiefe Citie where the old Dutchesse a Calminist (whom therefore they called the English Queen) kept her Court. Her two fons being fummoned to the Parliamene in Poland, went garded with 30000. Here they viually steale their wives; a man viewing one to his content comes with 60 his company to the place where the dwels, and lies in ambush till night when she comes forth to make water, and then they catch her, and on a Sled-carry her away, &c. her friends not knowing what is become of her perhaps a moneth, and yet know what to suspect because of the custome. Their Churches are thin, and in the Villages they have a Croffe of Wood, with a Pentife, and 2

Hondivs hu Map of Lithvania.



Crucifixe, and there say they their prayers once perhaps in a quarter, having a Priest come to them, or they goe to him in their Church twenty miles off. They worship alio a Snake, which they keepe vp in their houses, saying, they have reason for it, because it keepes their children: thefe Snakes goe often into the Woods, and thence returne, and before the fire vomit vp milke. which the men eate. Here they hunt the Vrochs, and other beatls. When the Lord will hunt, his Tenants or Slaues (as they are heere, and in Sweden, Poland, &c.) doe make fires in the Woods, Hunting, bringing the beatts into a corner, & there they affault them. From Valua he went to Grodno in the Mafe, where are the best Poles fouldiers, & they are Roman Catholikes. From hence to Craconia. From thence to Warfonia, where is a Bridge (couered ouer with a Pentice, where toll is paid, twice to long as London Bridge over Fiftula, which foone after he was passed over brake, and there were drowned many Polonish Gentlemen that came thither to the Parliament at that time there

To this Parliament came a Totar to fue for his two daughters, taken captive by the Christians: but not speeding he returned; and with him went our Author Mafter George Berkley, and stayed with him fixe moneths. This Taxtar lived with his hord of about a thoufand housholds of a His zoing into kindred. They fowed a three square graine (Totarke) had cattle, lived a texle, every day hunting; Totak. these worshipped Mahomet. Their manner is to make fudden Inrodes on the Christians, and prey on them, who therefore are readie for fuch affaults : the Polonib Gentleman at dinner hauing his two Peeces by him, and his Seruing-men, which are Souldiers with their Peeces also, when the Christians make head against them, they cannot most what find them. They are resolute, and wil ride with their Bowes in face of a Peece, If this Tartar could have gotten his daugh-60 ters, he would have bestowed one on him, &c.if he would have lived with him, and he faid he ne-

uer lived in all his lite fo pleafantly as with these Tariars. Hee returned into Poland againe. In Poland all are Gentlemen and Slaues. Punishable it is not for their Gentlemen to keepe Concubines, whole children they bring vp as their other, faue that they doe not inherit. There is freedome of religion. So many Cranes feathers as they weare in their Hats, fo many Tartars or

Turkes are holden to be flaine by them. No Townes very strong but Cammenieca built within a Rocke, the light let in atholes. The Turke went over it but could not win it.

The Polanders had a great murraine of beafts attributed to the Iewes: two Iewes comming to a 40 woman offered her mony for some of her milke, she answered, her child but then sucked, they left their glaffe there, promifing to fetch it anon and to fatisfie her: her husband meane while comming home and feeing fo strange a thing as a glasse, asked from whence it came, and why; being answered two lewes had left it there for milke for a medicine, bid her fleet Cowes milke and fill the glasse : which the lewes receiving, and having entertained a Boy, caused him to climbe vp one of the Ladders which there stand together with their three square gallowes made of stone, with woodden rafters croffe, and to poure it into the mouth of one of the dead men (which there alway hang after execution) his mouth, who presently cryed like a beast, as the boy reuealed, and they thereupon eryed they were cofined : a murren followed which should have been a plague. Manv lewes executed for it ; which yet the lewes faid to bee a pretence for their money. The 50 lewes that farmed the Custome at Samaiden in Carland, killed a Polonyh Merchant without punishment, beating out his braines for delaying to open his packe. Hee returned out of Poland into Pruffia to Torne, the first place obtained by the Kreuzberne, where they built a Castle about an Oake which standeth there still, but is dead. Thence along the Vifte (where the Poles haue their Masts, &c. with wares three miles together tyed downe the itreame) to Dantzike; thence into Pomerland farre more barren then Pruffia, to Caffubia, Cofslin, Colberg. Thence to Statim, every way exceeding pleafant and good. Thence to Roffock in Mackelberg. Thence to Labeck, a fairer Citie then Danske, so to Oldstoe, to Hamberg, to Brome, to Lamenberg, to Mansuels, to Bambere , and thence through Bohemia into Silesia, to Bresslaw, where hee went to schoole three yeeres : whence into Polonia againe, and thence to Pruff. Thence home into England.

Torne.

Hee went againe iuto Norway, to Nilm, Bafin, &c. It is a barren soyle, as being nothing but Rockes and Valleyes : the Rockes are couered with graffe, and the ground betweene they digge and fow with Corne, which yet is not able to fatisfie the Country. The difference betweene the

CHAP. 20, Sweden villenage, Loretto Ladies Legend, rich veftries, &c.

Gentlemen and Bore, is in his command, being otherwise, as raggedly apparrelled as hee, with twentie patches on his breech, and barefoot in winter.

In Sweden he was, at Stockbolm the chiefe Citie, These now vnder Duke Charles hold warre with their King, yet all things passing under hisname, but so having the Poles, that though of an- was there, other Nation, neither the long attire, neither their Gurb, or hooked Sword can paff. fafely among the Bores for suspinion of being Polon: and the rather because they were made beleeue that the Pole was ayded against them by the Tartars that were man-eaters. They are strong in hipping and had given the Dane the overthrow at the battle at Bornabolm, had he not beene affifted by the Lubeckers with money, &c. One also of whose Ships with a shot fired and blew we the Admirall of the Sweden. The Lubeckers therefore pay no custome to the Danes, and for their

cofts hold Borabolas till they be fatisfied out of the Reuene wes thereof. In Sweden (as in Friefland and other those Countries) the Lord holde th the other his Penants as Villaines and Slaues, and at his pleasure ships their Horses and Daughters to Renell, and there fells them; a bushell and halfe a Culmes of Sait for a woman, which yet is of person and complexion very comely , and very able to doe worke. He came againe to Leefland; and thence to

Finland, where hee was with an English Captaine in a Caffle : and thence into Limonia, and so in-

to Rullia, &c.

Beildes those his Easterne trauels, he hath bin in our neerer neighbor places, as in Belyia, France, trauells. Spaine, Portugall, Ge. and paffed to the West Indies by the Hands of Cape Verd : in three of which S. S. Ant on Vincent, Lucie, the Inhabitants cannot profper nor live long, faue in those llands which yet are vikind to other forrainers. He hath also brene in Guinea, in Barbary, in the Straits. at Caribage, where the old ruines remaine, and the stones of Marble, &c. worth the bringing home, in Italy, Slauonia, Morea, at Venice often, at Ferrara, Padua, Mat. Angelo, thence to Fermo, Lorana to Loretto (where he vilited the Ladie of Loretto) it is one fireet, walled about, the Temple faire. and in the Temple of our Ladies house, inscriptions innumerable of divers languages, affirming it to have fled the Turkes conquelts from Inry into Sciencesia, and from thence also hither. Here forfooth it was placed in a piece of ground belonging to two Brethren, which because of this new quest and request could not agree on the proprietie : and to auoyde further suite, in the night it was found remouued to a vac ant place by the high-way, and there this Temple built whither refort Pilgrimes in troopes, as to a Mart from divers Nations. The street on one side all Innes, on the other makers of Images, Beades, and such other holy bables heere fanctified by touch of Madonne.

The Temple is hanged about with Monuments of ther exploits, vpen vowes conceined in diffres of Warres, Difeafes, &c. heerehang the old Swords, &c. There are two Veffries of incredible wealth, and Priefts of divers Nations for their proper Pilgrimes. The House low and means builded with white Brickes, such as in Barbarie they burne in the Sun. There are two roomes, in one whereof the Chimney where thee dreffed het meate, and her difhes, &c. In the other her felfe, or statue with a Childe, aloft of blacke colour: to whom one whole office it is, on a staffe like a Musket-rest doth lift vp Beades, &c. by her touch to bee hallowed. The French Queene sent 40 her a Present to hang about her necke, which present would pull her in peeces by the weight. . It is round, two foot in diameter made like a Sunne, in the center a Carbuncle, the rest set with Diamonds, the rayes pointed with orient Pearles, the Brickes (miraculously) cannot bee remooued, to which end they report of a Bishops superstitious steale : who was not able to passe

Trauelling in divers places of Italy, Rome, &c. hee returned by the Alpes, from Venier to Mefire, thence to Trenife, to to Seranalle, a Towne of Blade-fmithes, which with Water-workes grinde and hammer their Mettals : thence vp the Alpes by a passage so marrow cut out of the Rocke, that sometime the Horse hoose hung ouer, it beeing a steepe mile high, a River running under. Thus to Bafill, thence backe to Tirol

After all these tranels in these parts of Europe better knowns, and those others in the more unknowns, 50 and in Africa and America, bee much affecting the Virginia businesses and especially that of Bermuda, went thither to order publishe affaires. And after all this (as you have heard) went in place of Cape Merchant to the East Inches, and being Captaine of the English House at Bantam, there and thence received to bit leng home. This I thought good to adde to the former relations, which I received many yeeres fuce from his same mount, beeing my loning and familiar friend, and for a general Traveller by Sea and Land, in hote and cold Countries of the old and new world, not easily matchable. Had bee lived, I would have better perfected thefe short Notes ; but Death it felfe bath not taken from mee his lone, shall not from the world his memory; I rather chasing to give the world these unpolished Notes, as his, then either to burie them with him, or by resining and illustrating to make them nine. The best illustra-60 tion feemes that of Mappes, some of which out of Hondius I have added.

CHAP.

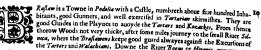
and Warre.

The fields Sau-

thofe parts:

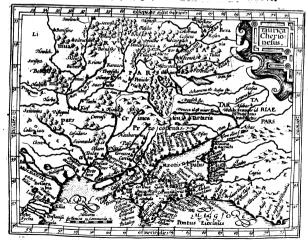
fand in the

rest of this



nea, where the organization sales given gure an array a sguint the externous of the Torters and Walacison. Down the River Torte or Hippenis, you may go almost to Occacon. In the way are the Rivers Triffener, Berfad, Offant, Samen (whence they are called the Fields of Sauran) a stone Bridge and Bathe sometimes belonging to Vitoldius, Great Duke of Luthnania, ruines and graues, Sinawod Riveret, the strong rockie Ile Probite, a good re-Duke of Lubinsania, rumes and graues, someon account of the land o many Ilands of Bogss to fish, armed with their Pieces) Certeles River the greater and the leffe. and that of Capeacles, and Hancocricus (the Tartars call it (bam) and the Lake Berezania, That Field is fiftie miles, or as they call it feuen dayes journey to a speedie traueller, from Braslaw to Oczacow. There are wilde Beafts, Bisonts, Elkes, Hories, Harts, Rammes with one horne. Goates, Swine, Beares : which ten yeeres fince were fayd to bee killed with the sharpnesse of the Winter, and huge heapes of their bones are found in the fields. They had also innumerable herds of Horses, Turkish and Tartarian; Kine and Sheepe which fedde there, by the borde-Sharpe winter, rers of Russia, Volsinia, Kinn, Podolia, and Moldania, not long since destroyed. The hills called Mogili, are tellimonies of Burials and Warres. The Field is fertile, rich of pasture and pleasure.

HONDIVS bis Map of TAYRICA CHERSONESVS.



Passing

Paffing ouer Prut or Hierat, a River of Moldania, you come to Stepanonetia or Iass. chiefe Towne of Valachia; or righter to Pritim Technia, a Towne and Fort of the Tirkes, not long fince Part of Mo'da. Towns of Valachia; or righter to Pritum I counta, a Towns and Fort of the Intres, not long fine uis or the low-tortified on the Neffer; and there are found some Moldanian passages in the Neffer, right into er Valachia.calthe champaines. It diffuleth it felfe into the Lake Pidous or Obidous (to called, as some fabulou- led tometimes lly conceine of Omidim) and soone after disembokes into the Eurine Sea, ouer against Bialogred Restaubia. (named by the antients Moncastrum) not long fince taken by the Turkes, from the Valachian or Like Viden in Moldanian Princes, & holden by them. In the very mouth of Tyras or Nefter, bearing name of Ne- Necter

phinfa on the left hand of the Rauer. After followeth Beriboneum with deepe and large ditches neere the Sea, washed by the Lake Beriboneum where fometimes was a good Port. Advigeli hath three Ditches, many falt Lakes nigh the Sea, Advigeli. where many Cozate relort and often kill each other in mutuall warres and quarrels, which Damina Etremakes at terrible to Trauellers. Then follow Domnina Delnia, and the Lake Berezania, and the Bay Caremum. Strabe placeth five hundred furlongs in the Sea, from the mouth of Tyras the Leuca

Hand Lenca facred to Achilles. Octaconia called antiently Olbia, Olbis, and Olbispolis, is feated on Boriffones or the Carcenite Octaconia. Bay : fometimes builded by the Meletions : the Tower is of Stone, the Towne but meane, is fub. ict to the Turkes. Borifthener or Neper, a deepe, wide and fwitt ftreame, runneth from the Borifthener or North into the Bay, and neere to Occasion into the Enxine. Four miles higher Bogm empties Bozas.

20 it felle into Boriftbenes. There the Turkes exact Cuftomes. The Istomus betwin Boriftbenes and The 18bmms. the Sea is a dayes journey, ouer fandie plaines, with Hills, Lakes, Salt-pits; with Decres, Beares, Goates, wilde Swine well stored. It is extended to Perceptia aboue thirtie miles in length, con- Theirhou'es taining Medowes, Rivers, and Tartarian Costages (which they call vinft) made of small pieces of and pasturewood, daubed with mud or myre and dung of beatts, and thatched with reed. The Tarters line progress. not in them in Summer and Autumne, but in April begin their progresse, with their wives, children, flaues, and houses which are round, couered with clothes, fearthy commodious for foure or free men, carried on two-wheeled carts, with one or two Camels or Oxen, together with their houshold. They carry with them Camels, Horses, Flockes, and Herds innumerable, leauing othere in commodious pastures. They goe towards Perecopia, and fometimes into Tamica, or Tanas or Don.

30 over against Perecopia, to Offen or Azaph, as the Turker call it, a Towne by the Don (Tanais, a great and swift River) sometimes fortified by the Greeker, and since by the Gemois; where the Turker now have a Garrison, and a Commander. They Hway travell into the Isthmu, or the large Plaines which are betwirt Borifthems, and the Lake Meetis, and the Pointing Sea, where they find best pastures. In October the raines, colds, and perpetuall windes force them to returne to their Cottages. For they are afraide of our Nizonian Cozels, which paffe downe the threame in Boats, and the Gunners, which then make incurfions on them. Never is frozen ouer in Winter. Prolemer calls that Ifthmus, Zenos Cherfonefus, and Strabo writes that the Roxans and Roxolans (whom we call Ruffians) pattured those Fields twixt Tanats and Berifibenes (describing their life like that of thefe later Tartars)

40 Perecopia (antiently called Enpateria, Pompeiopolis, Holy Grone, Achilles Race, Gracida, Hera- percona. clea) is feated in the confines of Taurica, or the Septian Cherfanefus, the Towne obscure and fmall, the Tower of itone, not well fortified; in which the Tartar Chans have their perpetuall Palatine or Beg, which keepeth the Marches and paffages of Borifibenes and Don, with all the borders, and is Generall Lieutenant over all the Tartars in the Playnes adioyning. Strabe writes that there was a deepe Ditch made, whence the Towne had, and fill in the Tartarian and Turkill language hath the name. When Sachinhgieres raigned there (hee overthrew the Nagar Tar. tars at Percepia with a memorable victory) there were fenenteene ftone Forts raifed in that Ditch, some of them of the Skuls of the flayne, and the ditch repayred. Heere the Tariars keepe continual Guard, permitting no Stranger thence to paffe without the Chans Letters. And there 50 in occasions of Warres is their principall affembling.

Collow is feuen miles distant on the right hand, on the shore, where the Char hath a perpetual Coffice. garrifon. Ingermenum is hence twelue miles or more: it hach a ftone Fort, a Temple, and Vanles Ingermanum. under the Cattle and ouer against it, with wonderfull Art cut in the stone, being situate in a great and high Mountaine; and therefore the Turkes gine it the name of the Vantes. It hath heene a wealthy Towne. Ouer against it the Promontorie trendeth some turkones broad, and three or foure miles long. There appeare evident figures in the flurie Mountaines, that the ancient Greekes thence cut huge ftones and carried them by Ships to boild Cherfona a Crite in those cheffara. times tamous, as the Grace Christians Still report. The Heraclians of Pomen fent thirlier a Colony. The Fort of Ingermenum was also built by the Greeker, as appeareth by Greeke Inscripcions

60 and Scutcheons therein : and thorow all the Isthmus to the walls were fun pruous buildings, and innumerable Wells digged. There were also two great High-wayes or Causies of flone. There were many good Vineyards and Gardens, now called Belbec, and possessed the Greeke Christians, or Italians, and lewes, and a few Turkes. Of the ruines the Turkes and Tartars make great Stalls and Enclotures for their beafts. This Cheronefus, Corfunum, or Cherfona the Turker called Sari

opiolomus as may feeme by Strabo, who there-awayes placeth Niconia on the right hand, and O- Bissorod.

Germenum, or Tellen Tower of the colour of that Tract; whereof admirable runes remaine to testifie the quendam iplendor. There are channells or conduits of hewen stone vinder ground foure miles to the Citie walls, still containing cleere water. From a place where is a Village of note, and not farre off, neere the Sea is a Greeke Monaftery of Saint George, with anniversarie denotion frequented of the Greekes remaining in Tasrica with great concourse. The Citie hath noe beene inhabited these many ages; the Walls and Towers sumptiously built are yet seene entire. been manufecturer many ages your vanish and services uniqueness of manufecturer of the Butthe Turk carry thence excellent Marbles and Serpentine Columnes and great flones by Sea, for the vie of their publike and printe buildings. Of the Temples the very mines are verify ruined, and the houles lye buried in that Monument and Selfe-lepulchre.

aned, and the houtes tye burses in that resonances and state appearance for and the ornaments. To spoyled. The Russian and Polonian Chronicles relate that Volodomir, great Duke of the Russian or Kisse, carried thence two doores of Corinthias Braffe, and some artificial Greeke Images which or Assa, carried thence two upones of commissions assaultants to the condition of personal pe rour : but after, marrying Anna the fifter of Emperour Basilina, and being baptized in that Ma. mastery after the Greeke Rites by a certayne Patriarch, hee restored it, as is still relaxed by the Christian remainders in those parts. Before the Citie was the Promontorie Parthenium with a Temple and Image of that Goddesse, and other Antiquities by Strabo related.

The Citie Be-

That which the Greekes called Iamboli, the Turkes have filled Balachei, as the Towre of filles. I are writen the createst causes among the arrest natural measures, as the series pipes, in regard of the plennie in that Sea. It was fortified in a high, great and flomis Mountayne by 26 the Genness, whiles the prood cowardly Greciens which held that part of Tauries quartelling amongst themselves, lost it to them. There they had a notable Port, a strong and sumptions Fortresse; and there the Towres, houses and walls with the Genneis Ensignes and Inscriptions, lye ruined. It is now inhabited of a few Greekes, lewes and Turkes, and frequented by fewer Merchants and strangers by Sea. Marcopia stretcheth further to the Mountaynes, and Woods, and is not so neere the Sea : it

Mongara Gity. hath had two Caffles, Greeke Temples and Houses sumptuous, with many cleere Rils running out of the stone : but eighteene yeeres after that the Turkes had taken it (as the Greeke Christians affirme) it was destroyed by a sudden and horrible fire. Neither hath any thing remayned of note but the higher Fort, in which is a goodly Gate, adorned with Greeke writing and store of 30 Marble, and a high house of stone. Into that house the Messengers of the Muscomites are by the barbarous Cheere sometimes thrust, and there endure hard keeping. There remaynes the Greeke Church of Saint Conflantine, and another meane one of Saint George. One Greeke Prieft and some Inves and Turkes dwell there; Oblinion and Ruine hath denoured the rest; nor are there men or Stories of the quandam Inhabitants, which I with great care and diligence enery-where fought in vaine. An old Prieft which I faw there, faid that a little before the Turkes befreged it. two Greeke Dukes of the Imperiall bloud of Constantinople or Trapezand, there refided, which were after carried aliue into Conflantinople, and by Selim the Turkifb Emperour staine. In the Greeke Churches on the walls are painted Imperiall Images and Habits. The Tower and Citie Marcopia is nigh to Cerceffigermenum a new Turbifb Fort taking name from Cerceffimm; but the 40 Turkes, and Turkers, and Greekes also have now lost the name. The Greeke Dukes are faid to have there committed much wickednesse. And in that stony Hill whereon it is seated, it hath houses cut with admirable Artifice in the Rocke, which still for the most part remayne entire, although the place be become wooddie. A Temple adorned with Marble and Serpentine Pillars, now laid profirate on the ground, teffifie the quandum glorie,

The Palaces or Houses of the Chans reach vnto the Mediterranean Taurica (as Strabo calsit.)

BACCA faren.

Cerceffinerme-

It hath a famous Towne, and a principall Store-house, called Baccasaray, wherein he perpetually resideth. That Towne is situated betweene two Mountaynes, and a little River flowes betweene, whereof the Towne is named. There is a stone Mosche, and the Chans Sepulchres built within the Townes Liberty of the Christians ruines, Not farre also from that Towne there is a Mahometan Monasterie, and very many Tartarian Graves curioully rayled out of the Grecian Se ruines. In the further end of that Towne, there is another Towne called Salaticum, adorned with faire buildings by the Turkes there inhabiting. The Royall Seate or Mansion of the Chans is sumptuously garnished by the ancient Tartarian Princes with Houses, Temples, Sepulchres, and exquisite Baths. When the Princes with their Wines, oft give themselves to ease, pastimes, pleasures, and recreation, they go thither. For that place or Region is commodious for huntings. it hath Orchards, Vineyards, Gardens, and many store of good grounds, and it is watered with Chrystaline streames. There are Mountaynes and store of Woods, wherein are seenevery many ruines of Houses, and large Forts and Cities , yet they remayne desert, and are of few or

Almaffaray at the meeting of the River Alma, is a house of the Kings , where he is woont 60 not often to refide, because he lives not there so commodiously, as in other places, and cannot lodge there with his Court : for there is only one base Village. There are some more obscure bordering Townes and Fortreffes, where they are woont to maintayne their Wives. Also not a few

Caffles where the Sultans, the Chans brothers, or their fonnes and wines perpetually dwell. That part of Charlem, which the Chan with his Tarters policife from Percepia, toward the Percepia Fenne or Lake to the Citic Crosson , is culcipated, plaine, champian, fettie, and pleinfull of Crosson graffe; but coward the Sea and the Palace of the Ches, and his Townes, Caffles, and Villages, the Country is Mountaynous, woodie, well husbanded, and very fruitfull. The Mountaynes in that Coast are huge and remarkable. But the greater is the highest of all, and hath in the top a Lake of notinall quantitie. And although I did not ascend it , yet it is well discerned many miles off, and demonstrates no ordinary height and greatnesse. Plentie of Rivers and no small ones runne from those Mountaynes. Also they have much fifth, but not of any greatnesse (for the River is shallow) yet very favourie and daintie. But because the Tartars doe not often feed on 10 fift, the Christians only and our ftrangers when they come thither take paines to catch them. There is also abundance of delicious Fowles , which sometimes Christian or Tarkil Gunners are woont to feeke after, feldome our itrangers. There is much game of Harts, Goates, Boares, and Hares neere the Sea under the Tarters and Turkes. Oftentimes also the Chan himselfe is wont to hant fome dayes there but more often he goes into the champion with Turkib and Tar-

tarian hunting Dogges. Sortaffus is a Tartarian Village adjoyning to the Chans Regall Mansion, wherein the Latton Suraffus oz and Musiconie Ambassadors doe often lodge; it is spacious and delightsome. But when Taurica or the Peninfula beganne fubiect to the Chans Dominion, divers Italian Gentlemen Gemeis after Capha was taken by the Tarkes, or Tartar Princes, having their Charters written and fealed of their right and proprietie (which I have feene among them) they held that Village with speciall Priviledges, or purchased it with that Gold which they carried with them out of their Countrey, or with their feruice to the Chans. In going Ambassador to Christian Princes, it was permitted them to build a Catholike Temple in that Village, wherein I fometimes entred while Labode there. There was in that Temple one Prieft a Franciscan Fryer , whom those Christians had then redeemed with their money from Turkib flauerie.

Cremmy or as the Tatare call it Crimmin, is a Citie and a Castle much volike in the antiquitie, cremme. magnitude, and height of the wall, am plenefie and renowme, to the other Cities of Taurica; It is vnlike the Mediarraneon (for so Prolomio cals it) perhaps this was called by Prolomio Taphres, but by Plinie Taphra, Now in these latter times before the comming of the Genees into Tames, Dut by Pinne Appres, Prow in their acters times because the community of the Charles. The Sandard and inhabited by a great Mahameten Nation, who remooused thicker out of Afra. For there are seens ancient Masser or Mahameten Temples not only in the Citie it selfe, but also beyond the Citie very many with Chaldador. Charlesters engraven in great flones. There are very few Turkilo or Turtar Inhabitants, yet the Greates are fewer, who report this, that their Ancestors have constantly delivered, that that Citie was whilome dwelt in by the Perfier Nation, and that it was a quonders noble and excellent Store-house of Mechanick Mysteries. A man may certainly conjecture by the ruines and largenesse of the place that it hath beene a famous Citie and a great Colonic of people. The Tarters are now vulgarly nomi- crim Tarters nated from that place Crims. They have a Mint in that Citie. In the Towre which is the grea- why so called 40 teft in the Citie, the Chars wives are alway kept and spend their lives.

Sidagios of the Greekes, but Sudacum of the Genoes, was called a Caftle and Citie. The Tartars Sidarias or Suare viterly ignorant of it. In aloftie rockie and spacious Mountaine standing neere the Sea in darum, the top of it, it hath a higher Towre, a second indifferent, and a third of baser esteeme. The Greekes or Italian Genees founded their Castles environed and fortified with Walls and Towres. There are seene innumerable Grecies Churches, and seeme but few, as though they were Chappels, not a few undemolished, but very many are ruinated, and lye ouerturned in the dust. The haughtie diffentious and idle Greeker being overthrowne and weakened by the Italian Genees, loft that Citie. There are seene no contemptible signes of the Genoes much more illustrious then those of the Greekes.

But it is evident by the ruines, that it was once a famous place, & fo it is reported by the Greek, 50 Christians, of whom there are a very few Relikes. Moreouer, many Christians have erected a multitude of Temples which they report to have beene some hundreds. There are three great Catholike Churches, Houses, Walls, Gates, and faire Towres with Arrace and Ensignes of the Genees, are seene in the lower Castle, I heard from a certayne Metropolitane a Greeke and an honest man, who then came thither from the Greeien Iles to visit their Priests , and entertayned mee, That when the most barbarous Nation of the Tarks had belieged that Civie with a great Armada, it was valiantly and manfully defended by the Genoes : but when the Genoes could no more hold out the daily siege and famine, neither could longer sustaine the violence of such a great Armie of Turtes, iome hundreds, or , as hee auouched, about a thousand stout-hearted men conveyed themselves into the greatest Church which yet abides entire, and some dayes hardly and couragiously preferring themselves in the lower Towre, into which the Turker forceably entred, hauing made a notorious and memorable flaughter of the Turkes, at the length they were all flaine in that Temple. The doores and windowes of that Temple being stopt vp with a wall by the

Turkes, the flaine bodies lye vinburied to this day. I was prohibited by the Saniak of Capha forme-

times a Time, that I should not enter into that Temple. The Custome of the Citie is not meaner it hath very fruitfull Vineyards and Orchards, which doe extend aboue two miles, now manuted by Caphaes, Turkes, Iewes, and Christians : For the best Wine of all Touries growes thereall that tract abounds with pleasant Rivers, which runne downe from the highest and middle Mountaynes and Woods, which are there very frequent.

Having now passed overthose vpper Cities, and at the last Sudace, also as farre as Theodolia which the Italian Genoes call Capba, the banke of Taurica in Longitude a thousand furlones. craggie, mountaynous, and tempessuous with North windes. Before the Citie the Promontorie that is there seene, doth hang out into the Sea on the South-side toward Paphlagonia, and the Citie Amastrum, and Strabo relates, that it is called of the Greekes, Orium and Oxon, the to Rammes forehead. And there is another Promontorie Carambis of the Paphlagonians opposite to it, whereby the Envine Sea is divided into the double Sea, and Envipue straightens them both. Strabe favth, that Carambis is diffant from the Citie of the Cherenefitay, two thousand fine hundred furlongs, but from the Rammes forehead, a farre leffer quantitie. Behind that hilly Countrey, as Strabo calls it, hee affirmes the Citie Theodofia to bee founded, and that it hath large Fields notable for fertilitie, and a Hauen able to receive a hundred Ships, and that that Limit Fichia notable for fertuite, and a flauer acre to feature a unique simps, and that that Lime was affigued to the territories of the Beftbernes and Tamete.

Capha or Theodofia, is the excellentedt and best defensed Citie of all Tameica. It was built by

Orism and

the Italian Genoes, and is placed by the Sea. It hath a Hauen alway frequented. It is perspicuous, that in the times of the Genoes, it was a wealthy and populous Citie. But after it was taken 20 from the Genoes by the Turkes aboue a hundred yeeres fince, the Italian Christians were brought into such a straight, that there are but a very few and obscure remaines of them left. The Citie hath in a manner loft her priftine iplendour. The Romish Churches of Christians are demolulaed. the Houses cast downe, the Walls and Towers, wherein are seene many tokens of honour of the Genoer and Latine inscriptions, are fallen. Onely two Cathelicte Temples and two Armenian remayne whole, in which it is granted them of the Twice, after their owne custome to maintaine their proper Priests, and to bee present at their publike deuotions. It is replenished with Tarket, Armenians, lewes, but very few Italian and Greeke Christian inhabitants : Now also it is famous ouer all that part of Taurica for Nauigation and the Hauen. It hath almost innumerable Vineyards, Orchards and Gardens. Men fayle often to Capba, from all the bordering and remote I. 30 lands of Greece, but oftner from the Citie Conflantimople; for with a prosperous winde they come thither by Ship, in the space of two dayes or little more.

Idolerere.

The Petigoren Prouince, or Colebis is inlarged, as farre as the Cafrian or Hircan Sea, and is much subject to Mountaines and very large Woods, which are now seene in these Confines. It is a very free people, and hath many brave Commanders, to whom all the Nations and Families obey. Moreover they professe themselves Christians, and it is manifest in the time of the Genes very many of them were Christians, but now wanting Priests and Churches, they onely retayne the opinion of Religion. Most and the greatest part of them are Idolaters, amongst themselues rapacious and cruell, but to Strangers hospitall and free-hearted. The Parents, although they bee of the more Noble or of the Ruftickes, fell their owne Children, their Sonnes 40 for Slaues, their Daughters for Wives to the Turkes and Tartars, also to many Christians, and those which they are wont to steale secretly among themselves, they fell closely beyond the Sea to barbarous strangers after a more then barbarous manner.

Betweene Perecopia, Cremum, and Customa, are Townes on the North. Taurica or the Peninsula is exceeding plaine, not very hilly, and altogether champaine. It hath a very fertile foyle, in great part flonie, but great scarcitie of good water. Yet there are found in divers places very many extraordinarie deepe Fountaynes or Wells of a wonderfull profunditie and difficultie, in times patt digged and made by the elder Greekes, or those great and antique Nations, who inhabited the Peninfula before the Greekes.

Sak Lake

From Perecopia the space of a mile, there is a great Lake congealed naturally of admirable Salt, 50 from whence the purest and best Salt is continually gathered, as if it were frozen; it hath many other Salt lakes. In certayne commodious and in very many places, in Mountaynes and Groues are found in great number, ancient huge Grecies ruines of Castles, Cities, Temples and Monasteries, which while they have many ages beene destitute of inhabitants, by reason of their antiquitie, have loft their names. All Tauries or that Poninfuls, from the West and North is plaine and champaine, and hath few Townes, many Villages; extends in length the fumme of fiftie miles. But from the South and East, it is mountay nous and wooddie, and hath every where maruellous high, large, flony Mountaynes. In which, betweene Cremum and Capha, it is reported that veynes of Gold and Silver, and the best Iron, were whilem found by the Inhabitants. It hath a very fruitfull ground, Floods, delightsome Rivers, Fishes, Meadowes, Pastures, abundance 60 of wilde Beafts, Harts, Goates, Boares, Beares, Vineyards, Orchards, Territories, Champaines, Townes, Villages, Hamlets, many and large Granges. Taurica or the Peninfula, is i pread in Latitudeafter a fort into a circle; in some places, the distance of one or two dayes journey, but in most places about the quantitie of one.

C. H. A.P. 21. Taurica feafons, foyle bounds, originall Princes.

The Cattles and Sea-cities, and the rest of all the Peninfuls, which are described in their order, with many Villages and Hamlets of Greeke Christians, except the Holds and Sca-townes. and many leffe suspected walled Townes in Perecopia and Casslonia, and a few Villages of Greeke Christians, are subject to the Turkish Emperour, and all obey his behests, and are kept with a fure Garrison. The Peninfula, which lyes in the middle from the East and South against Perecopie, hath a milde winter and temperate ayre. For in the end of December is the beginning of winter, but in the midft of Februarie the sharpeneffe of winter, which is more snowie then coldor fubicet to Ice, neither yet doth that endure about three dayes together, neither continues it any longer then to the beginning of March. Therefore about the beginning of the Spring, and al-In way in a hot Autumne the ayre is very contagious.

In Bratislania, the Sauranen, Oczacomien, and Bialodogroden, Plaines are situate betweene Hipanis or Bagus, Tyra or Nefter. From the North toward Neper or Borifbener and Bogas, are somewhat plaine and champion grounds, but from the West towardes the Riner Nester and Pruth or Hierafus, more wooddie and hilly. Podolia, Camenecia, and Moldania betweene the freames Nefter and Prath, every where border on the middle Tachnia and Bialos gred, which is by the Lake Usdono or Obidono, and the Eurine Sea, on the West confine on the Plaines, and on the Euxine Sea, on the South Bralogrod, Kibia, and the River Danubins. Oczacowis hath on the North Borifthenes, (into which Bogus there dischargeth it felte) and featious Plaines, on the South the Ename Sea, and the overflowing Salt meere Berezania, from the Weilt

the adioyning River Nester. Further, that Continent which is betweene Occaconia and Boristheres in the fallion of an Ile, hath into the West Boristones, as though it were betweene Boristones, the Fen Meette and the Enxine Sea : on the North the Rouers Tanais or Donum, on the South the Enxine Sea, and that Illbonus or Continent, but beyond Oczaconia and Borifthenes, as far as Perecopia, that Continent is verie narrow in many places ; but beyond Perecopia to the Caftle Offonum, a ranke foyle, and all champion and plaine : For in that neck of Land almost all the Perecopian and Offemen Tartars feed their Hockes and Cattle, and line there all Summer and Autumne. That Continent or Ifthmus from Oczacouia, as farre as Offonum, for there it is limitted, is firetched out in Longitude, as is manifest out of the Tartars Diaries more then a hundred miles, but in Latitude 30 not after an equall manner. For it is larger, as well beyond Perecopia, as toward Oczacouia, or

The Taurican or Cherfone fen Tartars, who are now called Perecopen or Crims, doe certainely feeme by the ancient Writers of the Schythians to have been the landgenfes, and to have had their original and appellation from Rba, or the River Folga. Moreover between the famous, deepe, and great Rivers of the North Tanais, or Don and Boristbenes, it manifelly appeare that they passed by little and little into the Plaines, and a hundred and fixtie yeeres fince, or very little more to have come into Taurica or the Peninfula.

The stocke of the Chans, or of their Tartar Princes was anciently called Cyngis race, from Cyngis. whom was Locbtonus a certaine Chan, of whom all the Chans take their originall. Hee was the Locbton,

40 first Emperour of Taurica or Chersonessus in Taurica, or the Peninsula. They have procreated the Sirinen, Bachinien, Manguten, and other Kinazy or Dukes, from whom are the Caiacei, who are the Chans Counfellours and chiefe Officers, who also marry the Chans daughters and fifters. The Vlani, which are anciently descended of the Chans bloud, and (if the lawfull posteritie faile) fucceed in the Regall Throne. It is very true that the Mursies are the noblest of each , now also their posteritie remaine & other warlike Tartars; of whom it is certaine he had divers Hords, of some ten thousand a piece in his company passed into Taurica, or the Peninsula with him.

The Chans predeceffors fincerely and constantly much esteemed the Grecian Chiefetaines, who inhabited at Mancopia, and Ingermene, and the Italian Genoes, who dwelt at Iambold and Capia, as also the other people they found in the Peninsula, with whom they had friendship, peace, and league, vntill they were ouercome by the Turkes, and confumed in warre: they had also many

yeeres common mony which I have feene there.

But Selim, Emperour of the Turkes, compelled and subjugated Mechmet Gererius Chan to his Selim. Empire. Those Nations being weakned, almost all the Castles and Cities of the Martime Penin- Gery Chan. fuls, being taken and possessed : Sachmates the Prince of the landgan Tartars put him to flight, with a singular and memorable slaughter having destroyed his Armie of a hundred thousand, Sachmates, Since which time the Chans acknowledge, as chiefe, the Empire of the Turkes. The Viceroyes, or Princes of the Tartars of Taurica, or the Peninfula are conflittuted by them, they receiue thence a Banner, and giue their fonnes and brothers Soldans for perpetuall pledges to

60 Notwithstanding, after the ancient custome of their Nation, they make a Galga or successor The Galbator to the Empire (as the French doe their Dolphines) the brother or eldeft sonne and more sufficient, heyre appawho hath the greatest sway in peace and warre, but the Chans themselves perpetually depute and rant. elect them, but with the approbation of the Tartar Nobles. And if also any diffention or war be raifed betweene the Soldans or the Chan about the Empire, the Turkifb Emperour neglects not to

diffratch the Soldans pledge, with an Armie and Standard into Tanrica or the Peninfula: and it is sufficient for him to be Prince, the Chan and Sultan being appealed or forced to goe away by warre, for which cause he hath alwaies many Innizaries in Tanrica, or the Peninsula.

Election of the The election of the Chars, after the ancient custome of the Nation, did whilelome confist in the free fuffrages of the Dukes, Murfies, and nobleft Tartars. Furthermore, for their frequent difcord and hidious warres which were occasioned by the Nogain Tartars bordering on Tawica, or Sachibeiereim. the Peninfula about the Empire, Sachibeiereim and Dealeingereins, being Chansouer the Tartare. hauing by lubtilty destroyed the more noble and potent Tariars, and cast them into fetters, began absolutely to domineere over the Tartars; and by force to draw the election to their posteritie, the Emperour of the Turkes ayding them.

But if the Chan will not conflitute his brother Galga, but his owne sonne, as it often fortunes, by reason of those discords and reciprocall butcheries among themselves hee circumuents craftily and fubtilly all the Soldans brothers, and couertly makes them away. Yet most of them five to the Twice, of whom they are bountifully entertained and comforted and

receive a perpetuall stipend of him.

The Soldans younger formes of the Chans are educated and tutered by the Tartars, or more noble Murfies , left that when they are at mans effate , by reason of their pluralitie, diffentions, or warres might arife : for each Chan acknowledge a supreme Dominion, and when they are growne vp, those that are fit are fet ouer certaine Tartar troupes, and allure many voluntary Tartars vnto them, notwithstanding they make leaders of the Nogaien Tar- 20 tars, and remunerate with monyes and horses most of their parents, whom they esteeme more speciall and substantial). Very often also through feare of treacheries or seditions among themfelues, being ayded by their Gardians fauour, they flye vinto the Christian or bordering Princes of their people.

Attalicia

Hamiati,

The Chan hath Attalike Councellours, whom they fo terms from the care of their women, parents, or their wives, by whom those Sultans also are continually from their youth educated and promided for : hee hath Hamiatts, who are the Agents for exotick Princes affaires with him, and also perpetuall Court Officers. But especially hee conuocates to him the Dukes, Coracei, Vlani, and the nobler Mursi, and alwayes vieth to confult with them in weightie affaires. Hee hath principall and meet men Ministers of his Court, whose service hee vseth in his Ambassages, and in his divers other necessary businesses and imployments, who also are exalted to Counsellours and Court Officers. He alwayes maintaines those who are chosen out of the more renowned and illustrious Tartarian youth, who are conversant in his Court by moneths interchangeably, and when they are made fit, are honoured with those dignities. Yet hee is chiefly and most delighted with the Cercefins, Nogaiens and Petegorens, who are very industrious, valiant, bold, and warlike. On the principall hee bellowes honourable gifts and annuall penfions, and of these his Court is alwayes replenished. In the Princes Court, the better reputed and nobler Tartars, are very richly and civilly decked, not to pride or superfluous luxurie, but for necessitie and decencie, For they are so inriched by the lazie cowardife, and especially by the irreligious impiety of the neighbouring Christians, through making often inrodes, and getting rich booties, that the greater nobler of them in private wealth and domeftick splendor, are little inferiour to the Tiokes. They 40 may have as many women by the Mahometicall Law as they will, and for the most part, they buy wines of the Petigorens, which although they fuffaine and maintaine, not proudly, but very comely and civilly according to the countrey guife, but those by whom they have iffue very ho-Arabiteletters nourably and gorgeously. They deliver their formes in their infancie to be instructed in the Arabike Letters, but they keepe not their daughtersat home, but commit them to the neerestin bloud to be prouided for. They place their fonnes growne to mans age in the Chans or Sulians

or Turkes. Those Tartars are Mahometans, and have Priests and Mosches, they vie the Chaldack or Arabike Letters, which they have received form what corrupted from the Tinks, although before they 50 came into Taurica or the Peninfula, they feeme to have beene a fauage and brutish Nation, and of very lauge conditions, which now also is very perspicuous by the rusticks : for they wanted then altogether those Lawes, Rites, Letters, and Manners. But the Tartars being taught by

Mahametan Religion.

Gouernment and Lawes. The Cadi and Begs.

they plead their owne

the Tarks humanitie, and that falle worlhip, the more nobler now generally practife hospitality. Law or Iustice, is administred in the Towns or Cities of the Chan & other Sultans among the Tartars after the Mahometane Law. There are alwayes presbiterall Cadi or Judges in the Villages. Begi or Inflices, who heare and decide particular injuries but causes of life, bloud, theft, which we call Criminall, or of Land, which we call Civill or Officiall; the Chan himfelte decideth with his No Atturnies Counsellours. In resoluting of which they need no Lawyer, nor vie tricks of law, calumnies, exnor Lawyers: culations nor procrast mations. The Tarters or Strangers, of meane condition, lay open them- 60 selves very freely their wrongs before the Judges and Chan, of whom they are alwayes heard and speedily discharged, for at any time any may have accesse to him. When hee comes in publike, men of the baself degree are not excluded, but being seene of the Chan are examined, to wit,

feruice, their mariageable daughters in wedlock to the more honourable and nobler Tartars

if they have any fuit, that they relate it. For they doe not onely performe great obedience to the Lawes : they adore and venerate their Princes in Gods fleed. All spiritual Iudges (after Mahomets Law) are accounted among them for Saints, men of all equitie and integritie. fideline and opinion. The Princes and Magistrates execute and dispatch whatsoeuer is bidden or com- Greet peacemanded suddenly and faithfully, with alacritie, promptnesse, and great feare. They are far from abknesse to controueries, oriminations, iuftices, vnnecessary and personall brawlings, enuy, hatred, filthy ex. the shame of ceffe, luxury, and ambition in their victualls and array. I abode their nine moneths, neither Goffellers, heard I Criminall or Ciuill Act to have happened among them, or any composition by reason

of enmitte.

In the Princes Court they weare not, nor at home Swords, neither Bowes nor any other No daily reweapon; except Wayfarers and Trauellers, to whom they are very courteous and friend- of weapons, le. They are alwayes secure from Spoylers; but except they keepe perpetuall watch, they are leffe tate from High-way-theeues, and Night-robbers, who fteale nothing from them but

their Horses. Although they have a rich foyle, yet very few Gentlemen, or Plebeians provide for the houshold effate, for many neither till nor fow their ground : they abound with Horses . Camels. Oxeng Kine, Sheepe and Flockes of all Cattle, and thereof line. Yet the Gentlemen have bread fielh, meate, diftilled * wine and Metheglin ; but the rufticks want bread, but vie stampe Millet, * Agnaute. and macerated with milke and water, which they vulgarly call Caffa, for meate (and for drinke Meatand 20 they vie Mares milke) and cheefe. They feed on Camels, Horfes, and Oxen vnprofitable for drinke.

burthen, and kill them when they are about to dye, fometimes eate sheeps flesh. The Gentlemen dwell not in the Plaines, but in the Villages of Taurica or the Pennfula. They which are neere Woods live in them, although many doe not possesse proper Villages; yet they have pecu-Jiar Lands and Manors. They vie the Vigarian, Ruffian, Moschonian, Valachian, or Moldanian Slaves flaues, which they keepe, and whereof they have great plentie, as beafts to every worke. Their houses are of Timber, much after the Turkish fashion : but the Greeke Christians, who are in a few Townes, labour and till their grounds as beafts. The Tartars serue the Chan or Tartarian Nobles. being hired at no price, but onely that they may have meate and apparell : but the reft, and the greatest part of them are alwayes idle. In the Cities or Townes are very few Merchants : but 30 fome few practife Mechanick crafts , and fome Merchants or Artificers are found there , either Merchants

Christian Slaves or Turkes, Armenians, Iewes, Cercessians, Petigorens, (which are Christians) Phylistins, or (ingans, men of obscure and lowest degree. Those Tartars, which live in the Plaines beyond Perecopia, or in the Peninfula have no woods, every where digge Wells. They vie in flead of Wood Beatts dung, which their Bond-mengather in the Fields, and dry in the Sunne and houfes of the same forme, whereof mention is made in the former description. Those Tartars, which are Slaves and Subjects of the Chans, Sultans, and other Noble-men, are drudges, and alwayes Taria flaves. keepe and paffure their Lords innumerable Herds of Cattle; and although they goe from place to place, into the Plaines and Pattures, in feuerall Streets, Hamlets, Townes, or Villages, by separated troupes (or hords) whereof they beare the Names, and of their Masters, so that men

40 may eafily find there, those Tartars Slaves which they seeke to buy. The Char hath alwayes by the leagues and agreements, an annuall Donative of the King of Tribute. Polonia, the great Dukedome of Lituania, the Palatine of Moldania, and Cercafian, and Nogaien Embaffidors. Tartars. The Legats, Orators, Meffengers, Truchmen of those Princes come to him yeerely. whom fometimes he entertaines benignely and bountifully, but fometimes receives, mifules, and detaynes a great while after a more then brutish manner. When therefore they come into Perecopie, one of the Chans men meets them in the Summer, in the Medow or Plaine, where they rest under a Tent : in the Winter they are opportunely and commodiously concayed into the Village of Alma, or Bacchafanium more fafely bordering on the Towne of the Kings Palace, But Alma. after they are lodged there, they are faluted by the Counfellours or Servants of the Court in the

50 (bans name, which procure them refreshing or victuals, two oxen, or one, some sheep, bread, wine, and barley, not liberally, but in a kind of hospitalitie, and moderately sufficient for once. But when they are called to the Chan, hee heares them, the Soldans, Tuians, Vlans, Marzies, chiefe Counsellours, and many other Ministers of his Court and principall Tartars being present, they are conducted onely by one man to the Chans gate, but are brought in by two Counsellours. When as therefore they are entred in, they reuerence the Chan, after the ancient custome of the Nation, and having faluted him on bended knees declare their meffige, and are admitted to eate with him. They are honoured with cups and goblets gilded and embofied with gems, filled with Mead or Methegline reached from the Chans hand, after the order of that people, in figne of clemencie and beneuolence, which they drinke on bended knees. And when they are dispatched. 60 the Chan inuites them againe to a Feast. The Feast being ended, they goe backe a little from the Palace doores, and are rewarded with Silke Vests wouen with Gold as low as the anches, prepared after the guile of the Nation, with one Horse or two, not seldome with Captines of their

owne people. And fo attired with those Vests they return again to the Cher. and render

thankes to him for his hospitalitie and liberalitie, and having saluted him, depart from the Ban-

ket. Sometimes a small prouision is procured for them by one of the Chans men in his Domis nions when he takes his journey, and he is conjuged by him as farre as Boriffhenes.

The Turkilb Emperours have made that authoritie conftant to the Chan, in Taurica, or the Easta of Carba, Peninsula, to that when the Bassa of Capba, or the Sansak dye, he rules all the Signiories in the Pea ninfula, vntill the Turke hath lent thither another Saniak, or whom he will preferre ouer Cabba. The Chan hath a common Custome-house with the Turke, at Percepia, Cassonia, Capha, 2ndother Cities of Tauries, or the Peninfula, which are of the Turkelb Empire. Hee demands annually a contribution of the Tartars, Armenians, lewes, Gercasians, Petigorens, and Grecian Christians, of whom he hath very few in his Dominion; the Turkes are only excepted : euery day are paid for a perpetuall stipend out of the Turkes Exchequer twentie fine Dollers to the Cher, twelue 10 a perpetualitipena out or the America Landaugue variation and bases to the Loran, twelve Dollers and a halfe to the Gaiga, to the Scham pledge two and a halfe, and to the same Hostage, Villages, and ample Farmes neere Advisionals, called Lambola, are given by the Tarke. To the Dukes, Caiaks, Vlans, and Murzies, and many others which take pay, are given conftant wages according to each of their estates. Notwithstanding the Chan alwayes payes curry yeers to the Turkel Emperour Captines taken in warre of both fexes, the most excellent and precious Furs, and allo baser. Butter and Salt, wherewith Taurica or the Poninfula abounds. And into whatso ener warre he shall bee sent or called, he may refuse; neither may hee wage warre with any, but the Duke of Moscho, without the Emperour of the Tinkes leaue or knowledge. The Chan exacts annuall pecuniarie Rents from the better fort of Captines taken in warre, three pieces of Gold; of the raskalitie one Doller, and a tenth of them; but from each of the Fountaines, which 20

Warres.

Money.

are many in his Dominions, in the Plaines of Taurica, or the Peninsula, one Horse of the Tartara but any necessitie enforcing the Chan, all the Tartars decree a certaine contribution to him. The Tartars Nobles, alwayes at home, and in warre also, yeeld him sustenance of divers forts; for hee neither tills nor fowes. Hee hath alwayes proper Herds of Horfes , Camels, Oxen, and infinite Flockes of Sheepe. Hee hath a peculiar money of base Copper, which is coyned in Crimum, a Towne of his Dominion , round money, whereof tenne are efteemed at a Tarkif Silver Afper. which makes one Polonian Groat or leffe. But I being present, there were flamped greater Copper money filuered ouer, which was valued at fine Afpers. In coyning it he hath a great and plentifull gaine; for in three or foure yeeres, of the fame money, which is carried by all the Tarter or Strangers into the Mint, new invented money is alway stamped. For in all Taurica, or the Pe- 30 nunfala, it is lawfull for none (Tartar or stranger) even in the Cities of the Tarkes Dominion, vnder a capitoll punishment and confiscation of goods, of what estate soener hee bee, to exchange Turkib pieces of Gold, or the Doller of Strangers, or the Turkes Silver Afper into Turtar coyne of the other value. Neither is it lawfull to buy with Gold or Silver coyne, but Tartarian, which all strangers (none excepted) perpetually receive by the Chans Edict.

Provision for

When the Chan is about to go to any war, he first fignifies to all the Tartars of his Dominions by the Seruitors of his Court, and commands them that they prepare themselves for war, within three (or at the most) in foure weekes, and that they provide for themselves victualls for three or foure moneths. That fustenance is carried in Leather-bags, and those Bags among the Gentlemen are carried on Horles. And they carrie with them food of Millet parched in the fire, or 40 flamped, or ground; for they have Mills, and thereof fleeped in water, the most make meate or drinke. They carry Cheefe and Flesh, and Mares-flesh dried in the Suntthey cut them in pieces boyled or drie, and taking out the bones put them in Sackes. They line with Mares-milke and Cheefe, and fowre milke, which they tempering with a certaine Art, hold an excellent food, The Chan hath only one Chariot with him for any danger of ficknesse; also a few Camels, whereon is carried for his owne person Aquanita, or some other prouision wherewith he is easily satisfied. But the Tartars severally set meat before him and his Courtiers, the gentlemen (yet very few of them) not feldome carry a little drie bread, and a little Aquanita on Camels, or in lighter Carts. But after the Chan hath determined any warlike Expedition, he prepares very speedily some

Art of warre.

exercifed men in an indifferent number, and choofeth them fometimes Tartars, but more fre- 50 quently Cercefians, Petigorens, and those which are accounted spies of Regions and Prouinces of other Princes, and expert Way-leaders, they verie well know each particular passage of Places and Borders, and Fords of Rivers. And when they come into the Marches, they goe into the neere confining circuits, and each in fundrie places view all things, and diligently feeke for Captines, which when they have intercepted, they returne with them speedily to the Chan, of whom vling interrogatories, the Chan quickly is acquainted with the estate of those Prouinces where his skouts have beene. Forthwith therefore hee assignes the day of progresfion to the Tartars, wherein hee stirres alone, and premifeth speedily some servants of his Court, through all that Hord or Prouince. They constraine and inforce to goe to warre and follow the Chan all Tartars and Christians of his government, men and youth, if they can but lit on horses (be- 60 fides impotent old men and children) who although they want Armes and Horses, yet are accommodated by the welthier in hope of spoyle. But in eight, or at the vemost in tendayes after the Chans departure, al of them follow him into certain new defined places, which are beyond Perece-I'm toward Boristbenes, the Galga, Soltans, Dukes, Murzies, & the most approved valiant and chiefe

Warriours and Souldiers, being gathered and convocated together: and they being called to his Councell, first the later Caprines and prinie Searchers alto are examined, at length they fuddenly confult of the feaforableneile of time, places, occasion of well ordering the matter, and whether the warre be then commodiously to be profecuted. And mutuall confent and counfell being made and determined; yet none of these things is consusedly disulged to the multitude.

From the same place therefore the Ministersof the Court of the Chan, Galga, and Soltans on ing before the companies of the Dukes, Marzons and other Tartarian Nobles (which they lead and rule according to the ancient claime of their kindred, and call them by various appellations in their Language) the Chan moues the Armie under the Enfignes, following in a meane order To after the ancient custome of the Nation: but after they have fet foot in their enemies Land, againe he sends before a certaine number of the most experienced and skilfullest Espials. They goe before the Atmie, and fen I backe to the (bar whattoeuer Countreymen or others they shall take and meet with; from whom hee may bee certified of the condition and armie of the enemies. But when the Chan is certainly informed that no armie of enemies comes out against him. he againe makes a Campe-councell with his Nobles and Peeres, how farre and wide he ought to endamige his enemies Dominions. Then at length he goeth flowly forward in a perfect order with all his Hoaft, and commands upon penaltie of their heads to kill all the obuious Ruftickes , left 22 after they should be taken by the Tariars, they should peraduenture make an escape, and certifie his enemies of his bands to the hurt of his men. Moreouer, they kill not women nor children, nor lay hold on them, nor dare lay hands of any of the prey, lett his armie should be furcharged

with it, and cause some stay in his proceeding. But when the Chan comes with his armie to the Cassles, Townes, Villages, Hamlets and manured places, he elects ten, or at the most fifteene thousand Souldiers with their Dukes . Marzons, and chiefe of his Court, and most notable, best tryed, and principali men of Armes of all his Hoaft, and leaves them in his owne jurisdiction in his standing Campes, or in the siege of fome Fortresse; then he makes ready the Galga, other Solians, Dukes, Marzons, and the rest of the Armie, which then is mustred some thousands. And that Armie being spread abroad in divers bands, ouer each of which the best esteemed and ablest men are made Captaynes, is extended in longitude more then ten miles, and in latitude as much. And as they affemble among them-30 felues at the farthest in feuen or eight dayes, but at the soonest in three or foure running about in troupes through divers places, and leading straying preyes, and washing with fire and Sword whatfoeuer they meet with, returne to the Campe : but if they come not backe at the prefixed day to the fortified Campe, they waite not for them, but all the Armie with wonderfull celeri-

the moue in their arrayes, out of the flanding Campe.

And when as then also the Chan is truly lignified that no Armie pursues him, he provides for places not medled with by his troupes, an Armie of some thousands of selected Horsemen, and as yet vowcaried. He employes as many more also in ambushes in divers places neere the Townes and Caffles obuious to the Tarters, left that Armie might without delay fall into the lying in waite on any of their companies. But if he bee certified by his Scouts of any numerous hoaft of 40 Enemies, he neuer commits the matter to an univerful fight, but goes forward flowly and cau-telously with his bands; but if the Chas be certainly assured that the Troups of his Adversaries are many and valiant, he retires a little, and feekes for the better husbanded and peaceabler places, and with wonderfull agilitie in his precipitious flight, spoyles them with fire and sword, and intends to returne home with the bootie that hee had hastily driven away. But if then hee hopes his enemies cannot ouertake him, he marcheth with his Armie, yet not too fecurely, almost in the order to his confines.

But affoone as the Chan is entred into his Borders, he takes the tenth of the principall Cap. The Chan tiues throughout all the Armie, But the Captaynes of companies, and they which have brought tenth. a greater number of captines, cull out of each Band the principall for themselves. The other Tartars of the promiscuous multitude divide the Prisoners among their troupes. Notwithstan-50 ding before they come to that partition, they first satisfie all those which running about by Bands haue loft Horses, Garments, or any thing else. They sell to the Tartars both Noble and

Ignoble captines, if they shall appoint no price whereby they may free themselves, because the Chambeing vitjated with the Merchants giftshath feta great value on them. The condition of captives is very miterable among the Tartars, for they are grieuously op- Milery of

preffed by them with hunger and nakednesse, and the Husbandmen with stripes, so that they rather delire to dye then to line. Many of them moned with the present calamitie, and follie, tell the Tartars that they are Gentlemen, and have wealthy and tich parents and friends. They promife of their owne accord a great and almost inestimable ransome, which the barbarous, im-60 pious, couetous, hungry, and cruell Nation feekes almost daily to increase with all kind of subtilcies and Examinations, tyes them in fetters, vieth them therefore more hardly. But when they understand that an Agent of their people is come to the Chan, they meete him with their captines, of whom sometimes they require the price fallly nominated by themselues, or some-

LIB.III.

Manner of redemption.

times promifed by the Prifoners: but the Agent who wel knowes the craft and deceitfulnesse of the Tartars, finds fault with the captines foolifhnesse, and tell the Tartars that they are neither noble nor rich, and that they knew not, nor will euer be able to pay the price, and as though they were neither moued with Pietie nor Religion r. ject them. Yet the Agent is diligent that they be inscribed in the Catalogue, and if they have a purpose to ransome any with their own mony, they hold it expedient to luborne leves or Tarters, and other Merchants being corrupted with mony : by whom, being as it were neglected and rejected by the Agent, they are releated at a far easier rate, Nothing therefore is more frequent to the captines, then to promise and offer to the Testary this price, for which they are fold to the Turker, lewer, and stranger Merchants, and others beyond the Sea , or a little more , or twice fo much , if they bee able to per- Ie forme it: but if they cannot learne of the Ruflickes or others what they are, as the Tertary are for the most part , went often to enquire of their captines, they are content with little. Neither doe they fell them to ftrangers, but rather to the Agent of their Nation : but if they are not redeemed by the Agent, they command them to write to their Parents or Kinffolke. Also many captines are delinered with the exchange of Tariar captines, in prouiding for and freeing of whom , the Tarters exhibite and thew farre greater pietie , friendlineffe and care, then our Christians. For difrepecting all price, they first demand their Tarter captines in exchange of ours, which often promifing the same and not able to performe it. vie to bring upon themselues a farre greater discommoditie. For they aske of them almost an vnualuable fumme, wherewith they prize their Tartars, which when they are not able to pay, 20 they fell them to barbarous Nations over the Sea for perpetuall flaves, for as great a price as they can, and very often at an excessive rate, or if the Tariars are wealthy, they condemne them to

The Chan hath all his Tartar Armie gathered of Horsemen, except some hundred Gunners Imizaries, Footmen, which are either Turkif Auxiliaries, or some of his owne which he maintaynes. He is accustomed to carrie with him fome smaller Ordnance to warre. From Taurica or the Peninsula the Perecopens, and Crims, Offoniens, Nogariens, Cercessians, are Tributaries and Souldiers for aide, the Duke of the Cerceffians, Perigorens are Stipendaries and Mercenaries, and are wont to goe voluntaries to the Chans warres. The Oczaconiens and Bialogradeus, also they who by the continuall couenants which they have with the Twiff Emperour, fometimes allo 30 the Dobrusen Tartars and Inhabitants of Dannbins, by the command of the Emperour of the Turkes follow him to warre. All that Hoaft collected out of those Turturs, is wont to make the number of a hundred and twentie thousand, sometimes also thirtie thousand more, but not seldome to exceed that Summe. I have bin truly informed by many credible Christians, which often follow the Chans warres, and by some captined Gentlemen of our Nation, who have many times feene his Armie.

All baue according to their vie Tartarian Horses, neat, excellent, stomackfull, swift, and indifferent good and commodious to vndergoe great labours. The Chan, most of the Solians, and Tartar Nobles vie in Warre Turkish; Caramanian, Arabian, and other Asian, Tartarian, and the best Out-landish Horses. The swiftest Horses are accounted among them at a great and almost ine- 40 stimable price. They alwayes feed them Summer and Winter in the Plaines of Taurica or the Peninfula, but very often as farre as the Rivers Borifibenes and Tanais: the Gentlemen nourish at home very few Hories, only for their vigent occasions, not for any arrogancie or luxurie. They seldome put their lades and unprofitable Horses for riding in the Waggon, for they doe all their bufineffe with Camels and Oxen.

Their Armes.

The Tartars vie their ancient weapons, a two-edged Sword, or Tartarian Cymiter somewhat long, and a Tarkif Dart, or a Persian, shorter and broader of the best Iron, and well wrought; a peculiar Tartarian Bow, along Arrow, and fwift, a Quiuer, sometimes a short Speare after the old guize of their people. They goe with Brest-plates and Helmets, and in Persian or Mosconian Armes, wherewith they abound being enriched by the spoyle of Christians. They 50 have ancient Saddles and Bridles after the custome of the Nation, very fitting, not for pride or superfluitie : the Nobles have them prepared very elegantly, strongly and compendiously for their vie. But most in the Tartar Armie are altogether vnarmed and cowards, and they carrie with them to warre by reason of their great Hoast, almost an infinite number of Horses. For a Store of Hor - Tartar even of the basest condition will scarcely be content with one or two Horses, but three, foure, and more, which he may have alwayes readie with him at his hand. Therefore the Armie of the Tartars is made fo numerous, great and terrible, which when it is seene afarre off, is decmed by our men almost an infinite and innumerable Hoast.

Now when the Tartarian Armie is come into their enemies Country, the Tartars ranke not themselves in bands or troupes, but all set forward and proceed leisurely. They dispose many 60 Watchmen in all parts throughout their companies, which they make greater or leffer for their Flight fayaed. Supply, but after that the foremost of them have described their enemy, they counterfeit a flight, that they may more easily allure them into those troupes, which they have laid in ambushments,

and so ouer-charge him. But when they espie a great Armie of enemies, they make a rectaite quickly and speedsly to their Armie, Rankes, and Banners.

There is great celeritie in conflictuting and governing their troupes, feeing that they are not ruled onely by the advertizements of the Generals and Przfects of their Regiments, but also by Their Diftithe thew of Whips, as is the long continued practice of the Nation ; and they are subject to to sime.

a becke, that they are very easily brought into their Ranges, when focuser it is neceffary.

The Chan is alwayes for tified in warre, with a band of fome thousands of noble and coura- His strength. gious Totars in number, some hundreds of Imitaries, Footmen, and some small Orlanace. In The principal, the Cham Regiment a very great white Mares tayle, and a piece of Greene and Red Silke of Engineer at very great white Mares tayle, and a piece of Greene and Red Silke of Engineer at the Cham Regiment a very great white Mares tayle, and a piece of Greene and Red Silke of Engineer at the Cham Regiment as the Cham Regiment as the Cham Regiment in the Cham Regiment in the Cham Regiment in the Cham Regiment is a support of the Cham Regiment in the Cham troupes of the other Tarters, many Ancients and Enlignes of various colours.

The more famous Souldiers, and they which are notable in reputation . dexteritie and warlike Prowes, and have archieved in warre fome Noble Spinace and Enterprize, are greatly honice proves, and nice accurate in warrange consequence agreement of the fact of the party more of the fact of the more noble Marteus. That dignitie among the Tarters in the greatest and Hereditary, for they going to warre able and experienced men which posteffe that place, are dignified by the Chan, 20 with the glorie of leading the Troupes. The Char also frees fome Tartar captives with the permutation of captines, and in ranfoming others be largely powres out his owne Treasure, and willingly comforts them as he is able.

CHAP. XXII.

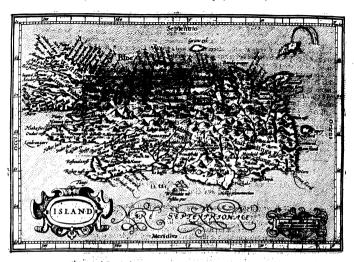
DITHMAR BLEFKENS bu Voyages, and Historic of Island and Groenland.

N the yeere 1565, " two Hamburg Merchants thips determined to fayle to a Hepable 10 Manual the Mariners, two monacons of the state of t Mand, the Mariners, by an ancient custome, defirous to have a Minister of Gods thed this Book Word with them, commend this care to the Ministers of the Church of Ham- dane 16074 burg, and intrest them to prouide them a Minister. One Doctor Paulus ab Etzen was then Superintendent of the Church of Hamburg. While therefore I flayd at Hamburg, expecting my Library from Reflects, I entred into some familiaritie with Pastus, and the refl of the Ministers. This Office was beflowed pron me, which I vadertooke the more willingly, because I had a longing defire to know strange things, and divers Countries, yeelding to their perswasion. Taking thip therefore the tenth of Aprill, wee sayled vpon the Coast of England and Sectiond, and passing beyond the Ilands Oreades, in number fifteene, whereof the most part lye vnmanured for the barrenesse; Foron and Hisland are inhabited : Here wee law a very high Rocke, which in the top representeth the head of a cooled Monke , where also there is a fafe Harbour against all winds, and this Monke delivereth many from prefent dangers. The fourteenth of June we descryed Island, which seemes afarre off, like winter clouds. The next day we attay ned the Land and Hanen of Haffenefords toward the South.

Ifeland is a rough, hilly and snow ie Land, which is supposed to bee twice bigger then Sicilia: it is thought to be a hundred leagues in length, which also Olans Magnus testifieth in his eleventh Booke. It hath the name of the perpetual Ice, and coldnesse of the Ayre, which is there most tharpe : for eight whole moneths it is troubled with Ice : It burneth not withstanding with heat and inward fire in many places. The extremitie of cold increaseth this heate in the bowels of 50 the earth, which cold continueth the greater part of the veere (a few Suramer months excepted) and so bindeth the pores in the vpper part of the Earth, that it can have no free vent. And this Hand hath fo great a Latitude from the Aquator, that the Arctick Circle digides it in the middeft, that is to fay, fixtie five degrees and a halfe. The Hands called Ebude, are object to the North part of this lland. But whether that be of thefe, which Ptolemie, and ancient Writers call Thule, or rather I feland, that great Hand, I dare neither affirme, nor altogether denie, because there is no Iland tound where Ptolemie fet Thule. Now, the later Writers make another manner of longitude about Scotland, and the bordering Hands, then Ptolemie ever thought.

I will draw the Descent of this Nation from their first originall, following the truth of the Ifeland Chronicles. In the years of Christ 900, in the time of Alebrand Bishop of Brome, cer-60 tayne of the Nobilitie of East Frifia, and of the Countrey of Breme, defirous to discouer thrange Countries toward the North, fet fayle from Wefer, and paffing beyond the Oreader, found this Iland almost in the vemost skirts of Europe, yet habitable, but full of Snow : which they called I feland, for the coldnesse and roughnesse thereof. And when they had fayled further towards the North about two hundred leagues, they found another Hand, which (by contraries)

HONDIVS his Map of ISLAND.



they named Groneland. Endeauouring to fayle further towards the North, through the frozen Mifts ordinary or congealed Sea, being long hindred by the Ice, at length with great labour getting out, they in those Seas. fell into whirle-pooles of the Sea, and thicke darkenesse.

In these whirle-pooles and darknesse, this Fleet (one onely Ship excepted) perished. They See of Island original the that were preferred, after many long labours and perils, fayling through the Tartarian Sea, came originall the next Chapter, into a very hote Countrey, and entring into a large Bay, they went on shoare vpon the next Antiquities Land. And when the Inhabitants had hid themselves in secret places, by reason of the great ate often my heate and foorching of the Sunne, they faw Gold, and other precious things fet heere and there, fical ormythi- without a guard. And when they had carryed away afmuch as they would, and hafted to the eal & fabulous Ship, they faw some pursue them with Dogs of strange bignesse. One, who was hindred and laden with a prey that bee could not estape; was torne in peeces of the Dogges. The rest, after long fayling, shunning these Whirle pooles, arrived in Musconia, thence by the Balincke Sea returning vato Breme, they brought backe these tidings to Alebrand the Bishop, with part 50

> Much about this time, the Nornegians, by example of the Helnetians in Iulius Cafars time, are supposed to have come out of Norway, who then long time possessed that part of France, which now also is call Normandie. And when they had performed great attempts by Sea and Land against the Britaines, they did not onely scoure the Sea by hostile incursions, but also expelled the Saracens, who at that time came into Italy, and fought to feat themselves in Calabria and Apulia. After they brought Colonies Northward into Hisland, Feren, and Island: which way, they learned of the Bremians, by meanes of the Nobilitie of Frisa aforesaid. And even the very proprietie of their speech doth testifie, that they came out of Norway: for the pronunciation of the Islanders doth agree with the antient Inhabitants of Norway. For vpon the Sea coalt of Nor- 60 mer, especially where the famous Hauen and Citie of Bergen is, by reason of the resert and familianitie with the Germaines and Danes, the Language is changed.

CHAP. 22. Iseland Bishops. Reformation of Religion. Tadde Bonde.

Of the Iselanders Religion.

N the yeere of Christ 1398. Woldemann, the second of that name governed the Danish King-dome, whereunto Norway was added, whose posteritie held it, vntill Ericus Duke of Pomerania, and Christopher Banar. Vnto this Waldemarns all the Arctoian Colonies obeyed. fo that now, under that Woldemarus, the I folunders were first instructed in the Christian Religion, when before they had worthipped ftrange Gods. And when almost all Christian people, in that lamentable darkeneffe and title of a Church, as it were by Witchcraft deceived, were detayned in most deepe bonds of superstition; it could not bee but they, who were surthest removed from the focietie of Learned men, and dwelling vader an vaciuill and barbarous Climate, should fall into most foule Idolatrie, when sometimes (as hereafter shall bee declared) they had Deuils to serue them, as familiar as domesticall servants. But after Luber began to bee knowne, Christianus the The Christian King of Demoirte procured purer Doctrine to himtelfe, and purged the Churches in the King - care of King dome of Denmarke, Normay, and all the Hands fubied vnto him; fending Ministers into Ifeland, Christian, to fow the feede of the Gospell there, Hee senta Printer also out of Denmarke, to fet forth the Bible, the common places of Philip Melantilion, the Workes of Vibanus Regins and others, in the vulgar Tongue, to the Paltors who were ignorant of the Laime, as at that time almost all of them were. And also sent for fit and apt young men out of Iseland, whom hee maintayned in the Haffnian Vniuerlitie at his owne costs, and gaue them charge over Churches

King Woldemare, as soone as they should professe Christian Religion in Iseland, ordayned them two Bilhops, one in Scalbelden in the East part, and another in Hollen in the West, whose Suc. Two Bishops ceffours at this day retayne nothing but a shadow, and a bare Title, for they have no other reve- in Ifeland mues but Butter and Fish. But when that reformation (whereof I spake) was made by King Christian in the Churches of Island, one of the Bishops in Scalbolden, confpiring with the people, rejects the Doctrine of the Gospell, and making a rebellion they kill the Kings Lieutenant. The yeere following, which was 1535. the King fent a Noble man of the Order of Knighthood, one Paul Hisfelt (whom I faw an old man in Demmarke) furnished with a Fleet, Souldiers, and Municion into the Iland. The feditious being flaine, hee renueth the reformation of the

30 Doctrine of the Gospell, and returneth into Demmarke, leaving a certayne Noble man to take charge of the Church and Hand.

The greatest man in Island at that time was one Tadde Bonds. Hee, after the Kings Armie Tadde Bonds. was departed, conspiring with the principall men (whom by his Authoritie hee drew to take his part) revolted from his Allegiance, and perswaded the rest of the Ilanders to follow. They meete together in a place called Walos, and conspiring to rebell, and cast off the Kings subjection, they impart their counsels together, and Tadde had his post stions not in one place, and many retayners, and for these causes hee thought they could not easily bee suppressed. The Bishop who dwelr in the East, had a speciall care to acquaint the Kings Lieutenant with all that was done (for the Lieutenant was absent in the West part of that Hand) and the Bishop hated Tadde a long time. For in that first Rebellion, hee had fallly accused him to the Lieutenant as guiltie, and au-

thor of the Rebellion. This acculation onely brought great and extreame calamitie v pon him. The Lieutenant being certified what was done, hee perswadeth by fit instruments, some of the Complices of the faction, to continue in their Allegiance, propounding rewards and punishments. Then many of them when they faw the greatnesse of the danger, leaving him, came humbly to the Lieutenant, and begge pardon, and obtayne it. Tadde therefore is adjudged an Enemie, both of the King and of his Countrey, they promife therefore by an Oath and giving of their Faith, that they will purfue him.

Then hee, through feare of the danger, with a few of his Domestickes which hee had gatheso red together, kept himselfe at the soote of Hekelueld, but being circumuented they were all flaine, and hee taken. They that tooke him, brought him to the Bilhop, to commit him to Prifon, but hee refused to receive him. Therefore they draw him to another certains man, of those who had the chiefe place in Iustice, neither would hee receive him, fearing the hatred of the people. There was at that time there a certayne Ifelander, Ionas by name, a man of courage. I know (fayth hee) to whom I will commit him, that will diligently keepe him, and foorthwith hee flew him and buryed him. And to the Sedition was appealed. And from that time vntill this day, the Word of God is taught among it Barbarous men, after the manner of the Couteffion

of Augusta.

The Life and Manners of the Iselanders.

IN the whole Iland, there are three forts of men, who are held in any reckoning and account: Three forts of for the common people, by reason of the scarcitie of Ships wherewith they fish, make them_ People. felues flaues to the richer. Of those three forts, the first is of them whom they call Lofbmaders,

Hibite.

Learning:

Bread.

feruse to him that is willing, and hee is accounted vacuuill who abhorreth this fashion. They Louing entertaine them that come voto them with a kiffe, and they behold and looke each on other, if paraduenture they may fee Lice creeping on their garments, which greatly trouble them for want of linnen : if thy fee any, each taketh them from the other, and as often as he taketh away

one, to often doth he thanke him, with his head diffcourred, and this they doe one to the other, as long as they fee one.

By night the Mafter of the house, with all his family, his wife and children lye in one roome, Lodging, covered with a cloth made of Wooll which they make. And the like clothes they lap vinder them, without firaw or hay put vader. All of them make water in one chamber-pot, with the which in the morning they wash their face, mouth, teeth, and hands; they alledge many reasons thereof, to wit, that this makes a faire face, maintaineth the strength, confirmeth the sinnewes in the hands, and preferueth the teeth from putrifaction. If Catile perish in the waters or (now (which often commeth to paffe) they fay, they are killed of God, and are accounted among the delicates. And it happened in the yeere 1,64, in a place called Ackermiffe, that in the month of lanuary fome Kine strayed in the darke, and the togge was so great, and the depth of fnow, that they could not be found. In the moneth of April they were first found vntainted, and without any euill (mell, and being distributed among the neighbours, fome part was brought to

commanded it to bee given to the poore. In the Winter time, before and after the Solfinisms, when the Sunne declineth, and being in Sagitarius, Capricornus, and Aquarius, it departeth from them, neither doth it afcend about the Long nights Horizon, while it touch Prices, therefore they have no light but of the Moone and Starres. In like manner about the Summer Solfitium, when the Sunne afcendeth to Gemini, Cancer, and Leo, it never seeth downe under the Horizon, therefore at that time they have no Night. In the Winter time, they keepe their Beds many dayes, and exercise themselves in the game of Chesse. Chesse.

the Gouernour, with whom I lued at that time, which was not lawfull for him to despite, yet he

the invention wherof is due to Xerxes the Philosopher: the meane while the fervants bring them 30 their meate dreffed to their beds. They keepe Lampes of the oyle of Fish continually burning, others burne Tallow candles.

In the moneth of Februarie, as foone as the Sunne afcends abone the Horizon by little and little the dayes grow longer, then they begin to Fish, whereof there is so great plentie, that it is scarce credible, for the Fishes which for three whole moneths swamme in the darke, as soone as they fee a fish of Tinne faitened to an Iron, they ranne to it in schooles, that they are not onely drawne vp by the jawes, but wherefoeuer the Iron toucheth them. Having taken them, they plucke out the bones, and lay vp their bowels, and make Fat or Oyle of them. They heape vp their Fish in the open ayre, and the puritie of the ayre is such there, that they are hardened one-40 ly with the winde and Sunne, without Salt, better furely then if they were corned with falt.

And if they kill any Beafts, they preferue the fielh without flinke or putrifaction, without falt, hardened onely with the winde.

Of the wonderfull standing Pooles, Lakes and Fountaines in Iscland.

'N divers places almost throughout the whole Hand are Bathes and fealding Fountaynes, which Hot Bathes I flow out in great abundance. This water as foone as it begins to coole, hath a Sulphurie fubstance in the top thereof. In these scalding waters, wherein I could scarse dippe my finger, red Dine-doppers are feene afarre off, if you come neerer, they vanish, if you depart, they appeare againe, fo all day long (if any pleafe) they play boe-peepe with men. Whether they bee Dine- Dine-doppers. 50 doppers indeed, I leave it to others to decide.

At the West of this Iland, there is a huge smoakie Lake, and very cold, which turneth all sconcemsking things that are cast into it into stones, and that in few dayes, and (which is worthy of great ad- water. miration) if you put afticke vpright into the bottome, the lower part which is flucke into the earth, hath the refemblance and hardneffe of Iron after two dayes, that which was in the water hath the hardnesse and show of a stone, the upper part which remayned about the water, keepeth his wonted forme : And I twice proued the truth of this thing, but when I put the lower Note, part (which represented Iron) to the fire that it might melt, it burned like a Coale.

There are two Fountaynes of most different qualitie, in a place upon the Sea coast, which is called Turlocks Hauen, the one cold, the other hot; these Fountaynes by pipes are drawne into 60 one place, and tempered for bathing, they make a most wholesome Bath. Not farre from these Fountaynes, there is a certaine other Fountayne, which bubbles foorth liquor like Wax, which French diseases

notably cureth the French difeafe, which is very common there. Not farre from the Hauen Haffnefordt, there is a cleft in a Rocke like to a Fountayne of vn-

that is to fay, Men of luftice : for Loch in their language, fignifieth Law. These men administer Inflice, and there are many of them, but twelve of them onely have the yeerely charge of Inflice. ces cach yeere All men obey their Judgement and Decrees. Another fort is of them, who are called Bonden: They are in the place of Nobles, and as every one of them is richeft in Shipping, and Cattle. fo hee hath most Fishers, and followers. This onely power they know. The third fort is of Bisshops and Ministers of the word of God, of the which many are found every where throughout the whole Hand.

There are many of the Ifelanders very proud and high minded, especially by reason of the strength of body which they have. I saw an Ifelander, who easily put an Hamburg Tunne full of Ale to his mouth, drinking off it as if hee had had but one small measure.

Both Sexes in Ifeland have the fame habite, fo that by the garments you shall not easily difeerne whether it bee Man or Woman. They want Flaxe, except it bee brought vnto them by our Countrey-men. The Women-kinde there are very beautifull, but ornaments are wanting.

The whole Nation of the Islanders is much given to Superfittions, and they have Spirits fami-Superstition liarly feruing them. For they onely are fortunate in Fishing, who are raised yo by sight of the and Witchctaft. Deuill to goe a fishing.

And although the Ministers of the Gospell vie all diligence in diffwading them from this im-Night Rauens, pietie ; yet this wickedneffe hath taken roote, and flicketh fo deepely in their mindes, and they are fo bewitched of Sathan, that they can admit no found Doctrine and Dehortation, Yea, by the Deuils meanes, if you offer them money, they promife a prosperous wind and performe it, which 20 I know, as hereafter shall bee spoken. The like Olaus Magnus wruteth of the Finlanders in his third

Books. They hold Ships also by inchantment almost immoueable, and that in a prosperous wind. Sweet factifice And truely it is a wonder that Sathan fo fporteth with them. For hee hath shewed them a refor the Deuill, medie in fraying of their Ships, to wit, the Excrements of a Maide being a Virgin : if they annount the Prow, and certaine planckes of the Ship, hee hath taught them that the Spirit is put to flight, and driven away with this tinke. In the rest of the carriage of their life, they thus behave themselves. The Parents teach their

male Children (euen from their child-hood) letters and the Law of that Iland. fo that very few men are found throughout the whole Iland, but they know Letters, and many Women vie our letters, and have also other characters, with the which they expresse some whole words of 30 theirs, which words can hardly bee written with our letters. They give themselves to hardnesse, and fishing from their Infancie; for all their life contists in Fishing. They exercise not Husbandrie, because they have no Fields, and the greatest part of their foode consisteth in Fish, ynsauerie Butter, Milke and Cheefe. In flead of Bread they have Fish bruited with a Stone. Their Drinke is Water or Whay. So they live many yeeres, without medicine or Phylitian. Many of them

Drinke. line till they bee one hundred and fiftie yeeres old. And I faw an old man who fayd hee had Anoldman or then lived two hundred yeeres. Nay, Olans Magnus in his twentieth Booke fayth, that the a lond lie. Ifelanders live three hundred veeres.

The greater part of Iselanders hath neuer seene Bread, much lesse tasted it. If our men at any time fell them Meale or Corne, they mingle it with Milke, and lay it vp for a long time, as de- 40 licates for Nobles. They call this fauce or mixture, Drabbet.

The Germaines that trade in Iseland have a place in the Haven of Haffenefords fenced by Nature, where vnder Tents they fet their Merchandise to sale, as Shooes, Garments, Glasses, Kniues, and fuch kinde of Merchandite of no price. The Ifelanders have Oyle molten out of the bowels of Fishes, knowne to our Tanners and Shoomakers: they have Fish, Brimstone, white Foxe skinnes, Butter and other things. They barter all these for our Commodities, nor is the

hargaine ratified, before they bee well stuffed with our Meat, Wine or Beere, together with their Wiues and Children whom they bring with them, how many focuer they have. Comming into the Hauen, they have their Daughters with them which are marriage-able:

they after they have inquired of our companie, whether they have Wives at home, or not, they promise a nights lodging for Bread, Bisket, or any other trifling things. Sometimes the Parents 50 yeeld their Daughters freely, even for a whole moneth, or as long as they stay. If shee proove with Child by that lying with her, the parents loue their Daughter better then before, and the Child being borne, they bring it vp some yeeres, while either the Father returne, or they give it to their Sonne in law that shall bee, for a Dowrie with their Daughter, who doth not despile it, because it is borne of the Germaine blood. If any Virgin have familiaritie with a Germaine, fliee is honoured among them, and therefore flee is fought of many Suiters. And the time was before this, that Whoordome, which was without the degrees of Confanguinitie and Affinitie, had no Infamie. And although Preachers crie out against it, and the offenders are seuerely puniflied, ver they hardly abitaine.

They lay not vp Wine and Beere which they buy of our Countrey-men, but quaffe it vp 60 Drinking and house by house by course one with another, and that freely or for nothing. While they drinke, they fing the heroicall acts of their ancestors, not with any certaine composed order or melodie, but as it commeth in every mans head. Neither is it lawfull for any one to rife from the Table to

measurable depth. If you looke into it, you cannot see the water, but if you cast in a stone, halfe an houre after you shall heare it falling, as if it fell into brazen Vessels, and forthwith the water arrifeth, and it is filled to the top of the Wels brimme, and it is a most cleere water, which note withstanding no man dare touch, nor taste, neither doth it flow out, but so long after, as the flone which is cast in, finketh to the bottome. There is another Lake in the middle of the lland. which cafteth forth a peftiferous fume, infomuch as it killeth Birds flying ouer it with the poy-

Of the wonderfull Mountaines in Island.

Here are three Mountaynes in Island very admirable, the one is called the Mountayne of the Crosse, the other Snenelstockes. These two pierce the cloudes with their height, whose heads, or tops no man euer faw, nor are they euer feene without Ice and Snow; in those Lightnings and horrible Thunders are daily heard, when neuerthelesse, in the neighbouring Valleyes the Aire is faire and cleere, as in Summer time. The third Mountayne lyeth on the North of the Hand, and not very high, but it hath burned very many yeeres; with what fire or matter, it is vnknowne; but feeing Brimftone is digged out of the Earth throughout the whole Land, it feemeth, that the Sulphurie matter is sometime inflamed. This Mountayne is not farre from the Sea, and the Sea on one fide beates vpon it : it is called Heela, fometimes it casteth forth flame, fometimes fierie water, then blacke ashes and Pumis stones, in so great abundance, that it darke. 20 neth the Sunne. No man also can dwell neere it by fixe mile, neither are there any pasturesabout it. Sometimes bold men, and fuch as regard not their liues, cast stones into the hollow placest for fometimes there is a wonderfull calme in the Mountayne; especially when the Westerne wind blowes, it caffeth backe the stones slung into it with an horrible noyse and found; the common people thinke the foules of the damned to be tormented heere : it is certayne that diners and horrible spirits are observed in this Mountayne and about it; for if a Battaile be fought in any place, the Islanders, especially they that sayle and fish in the Sea neere to Heela, know the day of the Battaile fought, although they know not where it be done : for they fee (as they report) wicked spirits going forth, and returning, and bringing soules with them. And such a storie is reported all I fland ouer.

ning Hill.

Purga:orie,

A Fisherman fayling by Hecla, met with another ship, both had a prosperous wind, and when (after the manner of Saylers) he was demanded who hee was and of what place, hee answered, that hee had the Bishop of Breme in hisship, whom hee would conuay to Heela: and it was men, or illust knowne that the Bishop dyed the same day, which not with standing, I would not set downe ons of Deuils.

Armym least on truth. If any perish by Sea, or otherwise dye, sometimes leaving their Friends and Acquain-Amunifond an Amunifond and Amu so be witched of Satan, that they thinke them the soules of the departed.

But because no man that is well in his wits, will thinke that Hell is in this Mountayne, yet it may be demanded, whence the Hill hath this matter, whereby it should bring forth somany 40 yeeres flames, so many ashes, and such abundance of Pumis stones ? For wee see the most follid and firme bodies, and all things to be confumed by fire and for that cause some thinke, that it shall come to passe that these shall once be extingished? for the cause fayling, they deny that any effects can follow. But heere (what I thinke) I will freely speake, yet sauing other mens judgements. It is manifest by watry Meteors, that there is a continuall generation of water, by the vapours gathered together in the cauities of the Earth; which issueth forth by Fountayns; but the efficient and materiall causes abiding perpetually, the effects also continually remayne: so allo in the bowels of the Earth, there are certayne places, which by their owne nature draw vnto them a hote and dry exhalation, and that it resolues it into flames, ashes, and Pumis stones, which may eafily be done in this Mountayne, by reason of the Sulphur matter, which is found in 50 Island throughout the whole Land. And as Fountaynessend forth more abundance of water in the Winter time, then in the Summer, nay, some of them are dry, because matter failes; so is it with this Mountayne : for sometimes matter failing, it hath neither flames, nor smoke, and all is quiet, whereby it appeareth that the matter and efficient cause faile. However it bee, I know this, that no man may come to the foot of the Mountayne without danger and feare, as hereafter shall be declared.

Strange Story.

The same yeere I was in Island, the nine and twentieth of November, about midnight in the Sea, neere Hecla, there appeared a flame, which gaue light to the whole Iland, fo that all of vs aftonished, wondred, and carefully expected the issue thereof: the elder fort and such as were skilfull in this matter, faid, that this light came from Hecla: an houre after, the whole Iland 60 trembled, as it should have beene moved out of the place : after the Earthquake followed a horrible cracke, that if all warlike Ordnance had beene discharged, it had beene nothing to this terrour. It cannot be thought, much leffe expressed by word , how horrible it was. Wee thought that the whole frame of the World would fall, and that the laft Day was at hand : but it was

knowne afterwards that the Sea went backe two leagues in that place, and remayned dry. About the beginning of July, at a certayn time of the yeere great flore of Ice fuddenly floteth to the Iland about Heele, and there goes a rumour through the whole Iland, nay it is beleeved, the the damned foules are tormented in this Ice by courfe, in the Flame, in the Mountayne, and Another wellafter in the Ice. This Ice for three whole moneths fwimmeth only about Hetla. If you take a- der. my part of this Ice out of the Sea, and wrap it in a linnencloth, and lay it vp in a Cheft, it remayneth folong vnmelted, as it swimmeth in the Sea; but if the Ice in the Sea vanish, which fuddenly in one night happeneth, this appeareth not, nor leaneth any figne of moyflure in the linnen cloth, which is not a hard thing for Satan to doe, to take away the Ice without movsture. To coincrease their incredulitie. Olass Offigens makes business of this lice in his element Busice. But because I determined to fearch out all things diligently, I sayled not without great feare wato this Ice, and I observed, that this Ice was violently cast against the Rockes by force of the winds, and so made a mournfull sound afarre off, as if miserable howlings were heard there. Hereupon the Islanders thinke the foules of the damned are tormented in this Ice.

Of the Riches of the Islanders.

Haue faid that I fland was a rough and snowie Countrey, and besides, it is full of Rockes and flones; and fo truly, that there is not a field in the whole fland : they have not fo much as OGardens, wherein they may haue Pot-herbes or Pulie: they know no kinde of Corne nor Apples, Peares, nor Cheries, nor any fruit of Trees. And, which is almost incredible, they neither Nofrains yle Bread nor Salt, yet they are well liking, and ftrong. There is no Citie in the whole Hand: they feldome have two or three dwellings together. They have their Cottages on the Sea fide for fishing, and wnder ground by reason of the sierce windes.

There is no lone of money among them, for wares are changed for wares. Brimftone groweth Barret. on the South part, and almost throughout the whole Iland, which is digged out in great abun- Brimfionel dance: they fell this stuffe purged for a small price. Mines of Gold or Silver, nor of any other mettall they have none. They vie Iron, but fuch as is brought wato them. You shall fearfe finde a man, who hath not Iron Nayles in a Bagge, wherewith Horfe-shooes are fastened.

All their houses are vnder ground, for they have no matter for building. There is not a tree in the whole Iland , except the Birch-tree , and that in one place, which also excee- Birch-tree. deth not the stature of a man in length , and that by reason of the venemencie of the winds. that it cannot grow higher. This Birch-tree after the Summer Solftitime beginnes firft to bud, the leaves have a most iweet smell, and of so fragrant a savour, that the Germaner put them in their Tents, and youn their meats for a lingular delight. Yet sometimes great abundance of Firetrees from Tartaria, or elfe-where carried by force of the waves and the Ice, arrived in Island. The chiefe vie of them is in building Cabbins under the ground you shall scarsly find a house out of the earth, by reason of the strong winds, which sometimes overthrow Horses and their Ri-Greatwinds ders. They have great plentie of Butter, for the fatnes of the grafferfor the Ifland graffe is fo fat, 40 that Oxen after a certaine time are to be driven from the Pastures, left they burft. And it is of Fax graffe. so pleasing a fent, that our men lay it vp in their Chests with singular care for their garments. The most part (for scarcitie of Veffels) lay their Butter aide in the corners of their Houses , (as we doe Lime or other matter) and that without Salt. They have domesticall cattle, as kine; but

They have very great sheepe, they keepe not a Hogge nor a Hen, for want of graine, if fodder or horses, and hav faile them in the Winter, they feed their cattle with fish. They have rough Dogs bred with-Dogs of more out tayle and eares for their pleafure, which they fell deere and greatly effeeme, when not withflanding they offer their children to any that will aske them, and that freely. Besides, this Iland children. hath white Foxes, and huge Beares of the same colour. They have no Birds but water-fowle, Beares and so whereof there are divers kinds and forts found there, vnknowne vnto vs. Crowes fometimes Fores.
White Crowes are changed white; and excellent Falcons, and some among them white, which being taken and gotten, with the great coft of the Spaniards and Portugals, are also carried away in great number, which thing was done, while I was in /fland, to my great profit. Ifland also hath white Partridges. There are also every where through the whole lland most pleasant Rivers, which yeeld Rivers, the Inhabitants fish in great plentie, Salmon Trowts, and Sturgeons. There is one only bridge in all the Iland, made of the bones of a Whale. They that goe from one part of the Iland to another Whale-boneby the Continent, have no way which they may follow, for the folitarine fle thereof: but as Say - bridge, lers in the Sea, fo they by the helpe of the Load-stone performe their journeyes. The depth of the Travell by lers in the Sea, to they by the helpe of the Load-trone performe their journeyes, the depth of the compaffe.

Sea neere I fland is very exceeding. In these gulfs there are Whales of wonderful hignes, and many Whales. 60 Sez-monfters which cannot be killed or taken of men , the Ice only through the force of the

sheare dead, whose length was thirty ells, his heigth more then a very long Warlike Pike. A Whale being dead or killed, the Inhabitants make Buildings and Dwellings of the Hugo Whale bones thereof with great dexteritie and skill, they make also seates, benches, tables, and other

many of them are without hornes. Al their Horfes are amblers & very fit for carrying of burdens. Their kine,

winds dasheth them against the Rockes, and killeth them. I saw such a Monster cast vpon the

C HAP. 22. Trials, sentence, execution. Pigmie-fancy. S. Thomas fountaine.

Note.

vtenfils, smoothing them so that they seeme like luory. They that sleepe in these houses, and faid alwayes to creame of shipwrack. And although it bee a huge and fearfull creature, and stue great strength, yet notwithstanding oftentimes he is not onely withstood, but our come of his capitall enemie (not fo great) which is called Orca; this fift hath the shape of a ship turned tofide-downe, and vpon his backe very sharpe and long finnes, wherewith hee wounders the loft of the belly of the Whale, and killeth him, and the Whale so search this fish, that in shunning him, he often dasheth himselfe against the shoare.

A Sea-mon.

The Island Sea bath a Monster also, whose name is vnknowne. They judge it a kinde of Whale at the fift fight, when hee shewes his head out of the Sea, hee so scarreth men that they fall downe almost dead. His fquare head hath flaming eyes, on both sides fenced with long to hornes, his body is blacke, and befer with blacke quills; if he be teene by night, his eyes are fiery, which lighten his whole head, which he putteth out of the Sea, nothing can either bee painted or imagined more tearfull, Olans Magnus makesh mension of this Monster in his twentieth Booke, and faith, that it is twelue cubits long. Such a Monster at that time tore in pieces with his teeth a Fisher-boate, wherein there were three Fisher-men, so that they were drowned, one of them, who held in his hand a little cord, wherewith hee vied to draw the hooke, and the fifthes, land hold of the boord which floted in the Sea; so he was saued getting out of the bottom yoon the planke and Iwam foorth, and declared this to the Kings Gouetnour in my prefence, adding moreover that he was fued from heaven, that he might get maintenance for his children, who otherwile were readie to perish with hunger, when the other two though married, yet were 20

Hacfal another

Another Monster also is often there feene and taken, of ten or twelue elles long, it is called Haefal, it is all fat; it is taken after a wonderfull manner: they have a very long pike wherunto they fasten an Iron with a forked point, that it cannot goe backe, vnto the statle a cord of a maruailous length is fastned; they sticke this speare in the Monster, which swimmeth vnto it for prey, perceining a man in the little boates; as foone as the Monfter teeles himselfe ftrooken and wounded, forthwith he hides himselte in the Deepe, and there (his bloud being powred out) dyes, afterward the Fishers draw him to the land by the long cords fashned to the speare.

Dog-fifh.

Besides, it hath divers Sea Monsters : a Dogge sish, which putting his head out of the Sea barketh, and receiveth his whelps [porting in the Sea again too his belly, while they come to more growth. It hath Horfes and Kine, and what not? and it as a marvell, how skilfull Nature iports, 30 in expressing the shape of all earthly Creatures and Fowles in the Sea. Neither should any man perswade me that these things are true, although ten Arifforles should affirme them vnto me, vnleffe I had feene most of them with mine eyes. Let no man therefore prefently cry out, that what he knowes not is fabulous,

Note.

The men of Lubeck, Hamburg, and Breme, were often wont to goe to this Iland, and leave their feruants in the winter lodgings; but now it is prouded by the Kings authoritie, that no Germaine, either by reason of trading or learning of the language, leave his servants there in the winter; but vpon what occasion this came to passe, the matter standeth thus. In the yeere of Christ 1561. there was a Citizen of Hamburg, one Conradus Bloem, left by an other in Ifeland in the winter lodgings with the Bishop in Scalbolden, for trading and learning of the tongue: the 40 Bishops fishers find a whole Vnicornes horne in the Ice, brought out of Groneland (as it is thought) where yet at this day Vnicotos are faid to be, & thinking it to be a Whales tooth, nor did the Bi-Inna Pools and Shop beleeve otherwise, they bring it to their Master, who gave it to Conradus begging it, he being fomewhat craftic, fold it after at Answerp for some thousands of Florins. When this thing came to the King of Denmarks cares, he forbad that no Germaine should winter in Ifeland in any cause.

Horne of a

Of the judgement of the Iselanders.

There is a most pleasant place almost in the midst of the Iland, you would say it were a Paradise in the Spring time, where sometimes there was a high Mountaine, which burned with inward fire, as Heela doth at this day; which matter after it was confumed, made a Plaine, but 50 the Rocks which were erected about the Mountaine, fland yet, therefore this place is fo fenced by Nature, that they that enter it, must goe one by one. This place is famous for two great falls of water, where two Rivers from the highest Rocks cast themselves steepe downe one against the other, with an aftonishing and horrible dashing of the waters against the Rocks. These Riuers meete together in the middle of the field, and by a great whirlepoole are swallowed up into the ground.

Heere yeerely the nine and twentieth of Iune, the Inhabitants who have any controversie, meete together: for in no other place or time Iustice is administred: after they are entted, standings are placed by the Gouernours guard, who admit all that defire to come in, no man hath libertie to goe out, without the confent and authoritie of the Gouernour. When they are come 60 thither, the Gouernour offreth his Charter to bee publikely read, whereby hee procureth credit to his Office, and having spoken before somewhat of the Kings goodwill, and his owne towards the Ilanders, he exhorteth them to communicate Iustice vnto all, without respect of persons, hee

after departe: h, and keepes himfelte in his Tent, having heard a godly Sermon, the twelve men, whom they call Lochmaders, as it were men of luttice, fit downe on the ground, each of them Manner of hath a Booke in his hand, contayning the Law of that Iland, written in the vulgar tongue. Ac- trials and cufation and answer being made, they goe apart into feuerall places, euery one reades ouer his futes. Booke diligently, going atterwards againe to his place, without Scribe, without replication or doubling, and juglings of fuch brabling Lawyers, they conferre of the fentence and pronounce it: If any thing bee worthy of deliberation, it is brought to the Gouernour for confultation and for his honours fake, when notwithflanding they leave no power of deciding it to him.

There are many acculations of Theft and Adulteries, they make no question of their Bonds, of Io their Fees, their Hereditarie fields, or any fumme of money : there are no controuerlies there. These twelue men, ouer which one is chiefe, are greatly honoured amongst them. These doe determine, and diligently inquire of all publike Controuerfies. If there bee any wicked Act committed that yeere, if Murther bee committed any where, if Theft, if Adulterie, if Cattle be flot- Sentence and len away (which vieth oft to bee done) then these men set downe the punishment. They that execution, are condemned to dye, are beheaded: the rest, who are any way to bee punished, they burne with a marke, this punishment with them is most grieuous : for they are marked in the forehead; they that are io marked are accounted in the number of wicked men : others are beaten with roddes ; and I faw when the Father and the Sonne for theft (for they were Cattell flealers) were

held Captines, that the Father was compelled to beate his Sonne with roddes, and hee after-

20 wards beheaded.

of Groneland.

Seland by Nature is fomewhat long, it hath Normay on the East, the Oreades and Scotland on the South, Groneland on the Weft, and the Hyperborean or Congealed Sea vpon the North. Although I purposed to passe ouer Groneland with tilence, yet seeing I touched vpon the Land, and faw fome few things, I thought it was to bee added. There was in a certaine Monasterie in Ifeland called Helgafiel, a certayne blinde Monke left (for the Abbot of the Monasterie had conuerted the Reuenues to the Kings vie) who lived miferably there : hee was borne in Groneland, of 30 a darke complexion and broad face. The Governour commanded him to bee brought vnto him, that hee might know some certaintie of the state of Groneland. Hee sayd, there was a Monasterie of Saint Thomas in Groneland, into the which his Parents thrust him when he was but young, and after that, hee was taken out by the Bishop of Groneland, when hee was thirtie yeeres of age, to faile with him into Norway, to the Archbishop to Nadrosia (or Dronten) to whom the Iseland Bishops are subiect: in his returne hee was left in a Monasterie by the Bishop, whose Countrey Groneland was: this was done (as hee fayd) 1546. Hee faid, that lland was called Groneland, Antiphraftically. For that it ieldome or neuer waxeth greene, and that there is fo great cold there throughout the whole yeere, except Iune, Iuly and August, that being clothed and couered with Furres, they could scarie bee warme; and that they had at home certayne round 40 peeces of wood, which being continually mooued with the feete, kept their feet warme. Hee fayd, it aboundeth as I feland doth with Fishes, and that they had Beares and white Foxes, nay Their Pienier

Pigmies, and Vnicornes, and that day did not appeare, till the Sunne had runne through Pifess. are Beatts and This Monke told vs maruellous strange things: that there was in the Monasterie of Saint The Vaiconnes.

mas (where hee lived) a Fountayne, which fent forth burning and flaming water, that this wa- Fiftee. ter was conveyed through pipes of stone, to the severall Cells of the Monkes, and that it made them warme, as Stoaues doe with vs ; and that all kinde of meates might bee boyled in this Fountayne and fierie water, no otherwise, then if it had beene fire indeed. Hee added moreouer, that the walls of the Monasterie were made of Pumice stones, out of a certagne Mountayne (not farre from the Monasterie) like to Heela: for if yee powre these burning Waters vpon the Dumice Hones, there will follow a flimie matter, which in stead of Lime they vie for Morter.

After the Gouernours conference with the Monke, I came privatly vnto him, to demand certayne particular things touching the Pigmies and other things; hee had little skill in the Latine tongue, hee vnderstood mee speaking Latine, but answered by an Interpreter. Hee sayd, the Pigmies represent the most perfect shape of Man, that they are hairy to the vetermost joynes of Pigmies, our the fingers, and that the Males haue beards downe to the knees. But although they have the men have not shape of men, yet they have little sense or understanding, nor diffinet speech, but make shew of seene such a kinde of hilling, after the manner of Geele; that his Abbot kept two of them in his Monasterie, male and female, but they lived not long, and that they were varealonable Creatures, and line in perpetuall darknesse. That some say, they have warre with the Cranes, that Of this the 6c hee knew not.

He affirmed, that the same maner of food was in Greneland, as in Island, to wit, of fish but not of was a sin this cattle, because they have no cattle, & that the country is not populous. Forthwith from Island be and the next gins the Hyperborean Sea, which beats vpon Groneland, and the Country of the Piemies, which at Book will this day is called Nona Zembla, & there the frozen Sea hath a Bay which is called the White Sea, light.

or Mare Albam, and there are there certayne passages whereby they sayle into the Sobythian O. of Mare Anoma, and once are once executive panages whereby they make the More cean, if they can for Ice. And the Gouernour had the King of Denmarkes Ship, furnished with all necessaries : but when hee heard (by the Monke) of these passages, and short cut into the annecessates: but which the meate (by the means) of these panages, and more or through the affected this commendation, that her might open thefe passages and lce vnto the Kingdome of China by the Tartarian Sea, which had often beene attempted by o.

The Authors Voyage for Difcoueric.

The last day therefore of March, in the yeere 1 564, hee commanded that Ship to sayle to those places, and mee alio together with them, being willing of mine owne accord: and enjoyned me to marke diligently the scituation of the places, and whatsoener wee met with worthy of fight to marke unigently the serious to us praces, and transparent as I felanders, and the 10 or report. Wee were in the Ship threefcore and four men, as well Daves as I felanders, and the 10 twentieth day of Aprill wee arrived at a certayne Promontoric of Groneland, and when wee found no Hauen, to the which wee might fafely commit our selnes, and letting downe the lead. wee had founded the depth of the Sea, it was such as wee could not anchor there, and the abundance of Ice was so great, that it was neither safe nor pessole to sayle netter to the Rocks s source and twentie therefore of vs armed, with great labour and danger went on shoare in our Skiffes among whom I allo was) to trie whether wee could finde a harbour, and what kinde of men Groneland had. In the meane time, the great Ship floated in the Sea and Ice, in a great calme, halfe of our companie abode in the shoare to keepe the Skiffe; another part (and I with them) ranne abroad to discouer: they that were left on shoare to keepe the Skiffe, going hither and thither, found a little man dead with a long beard, with a little Boate, and a crooked Hooke of 20 the bone of a Fish, and a leather cord : four fish Bladders were bound wnto the Boate (as is supposed) that it should not bee drowned, whereof three were sunke and fallen stat : This Boate (because it was very valike ours) the Gouernour sent to the King of Denmarke. Olaus Magnus in bes first Booke writeth, that there is a Rocke in the middest of Iseland and Grone-

In Sir Thomas Smiths Hall in

A Beare.

land, called Hutilocke, which wee sayled by , and that there they have Ships of leather, which bee testiful eth hee faw, but it was not fuch an one: but Petrus Bembus in his fenenth Booke, in the Venetian Hiflorie, describeib a Ship, which was like vinto this, where bee writeth thus : Whole a French Ship kept ber cone fe not farre from Britaine, free tooke a Boate built of Ofters the middeft beeing cut out, and the fo-Londonts a kind of Boate lid barks of Trees toyned together, whereim there were femen men of a middle flaure, Somewhat darks cokind of Boate the early of a targe and broad face, marked mith strange fearer and violet colour; these bad there par 30 or Barke Lowed ments of Fisher skinner. full of forts, they bere a painted Crowne of reede women in, as it were with fenen eares; they did eater aw Fleft, and drumbe Blood, as wee doe Wene; their speech could not bee understood, fixe of them dyed, one young man was brought aline to the Aulercos, where the King was. It is not unlikely to bee true, that this Ship with thefe feuen men, were driven out of Groneland, into the Britaine Ocean : feeing the description of Bembus his Ship agreeth with that found in

Wee wandred in the meane feafon, in a Land vinknowne vinto vs, which was covered with Snow and Ice, wee found neither footing of men, not any habitation, nor fit Port, but the Sea was closed and fenced on every side with craggie Rockes. Yet we met with a great white Beare, which neither feared vs, nor could be driven away with our cryes, but came full vpon vs, as to 40 his certaine prey, and when hee came neere vnto vs, being twice shot through with a Gunne, hee flood bolt vpright withhis fore-feet as a man flandeth, till hee was shot through the third time, and so fell downe dead : his Skinne was sent to the King of Denmarke. We agreed among st our selves before wee went on shoare, if wee found a sit Harbour, or else had need of their helpe, that wee should plucke vp our standerd, which wee carried out with vs for that purpose, and that they, if they would call vs backe, should fignifie the same with their Ordnance. A tempeft arifing in the meane while, the Mafter of the Ship gives vs a figne to returne, by the difcharging of a piece of Ordnance, and calls vs backe vnto the Ship : all of vs therefore returned with great labour after three dayes vnto the Ship with the Beares skinne; wee sayled therefore to the other side of the Iland toward the North, to the Countrey of the Pigmies or Nona Zem- 50 bla, that by the mouth of the White Sea, wee might come into the Scythian, or Tartarian Sea, from whence (they say) there is a passage to the Kingdome of China, and Cathay; but beeing hindred by the Ice, wee could not paffe the mouth of that Sea : therefore without doing any thing, wee returned into Ifeland the fixteenth of June.

The Authors

T fayd before, that the Ifelanders the nine and twentieth of Iune yeerely came together almost In the middle of the lland to ludgement, and after our returne, the Gouernour went thither, and I with him. Some of the next inhabitants of Hecle then came to Iudgement, whom the Gouernour inuited twice or thrice to dinner and supper. These men while they were at supper, reported wonderfull things of the Mountayne Heels, and other things; I was foorthwith in- 60 flamed with a defire to fee and heareall. Wherefore the Gouernour commended mee to these men, that they should bring mee thither, and commanded all things should be she wed me, which they knew there worthy to bee seene. This Governour was a Dane, a Noble man, and excellent. ly well learned : to this man furely I am much bound for his great liberalitie towards mee, in

that he caused me to be conveighed at his charge to divers places of the Hand, where any notable thing was to be feene. I accompanied with two Islanders, and a certaine Dane, who carried proution, and a Tent on Horse-backe, spent foure whole dayes, while we go through rough places. Hilly and defolate vato this Mountayne. For some Miles about Hecla, all was full of blacke ashes and Pumis stones. The Islanders admised me that I should goe no neerer, leading away the Horfe, which they had lent me;

CHAP.22. The Authors furuer of Hecla, and ficknesse thereupon.

I. because I purposed to see, and search out all things diligently; accompanied with the Dane. came neerer, as though I went to climbe the Hill, and although at the first fight we were afraid. vet I would not leave off my purpose, and by reason of my young yeeres, not understanding Io the danger, I went through the affies and Pumis stones alone to Hecla, leaving the Dane, There was there at that time a wonderfull calme, fo that I faw neither fire nor fmoke. But behold, fuddenly in the bowels of the Earth, a great noyte was heard, after this, followed flames of a greene colour, which had almost killed me with their Sulphurie and filtly flinke, so that I scarfe efcaped to my fortaken horses and companions. Vpon that sudden assonishment I fell into a fickneffe, and vehement cogitation, feeing these horrible flames were alwayes prefent before mine eves: info much that my Island companions were compelled to carry me away vnto their house, with whom I lay licke two whole monethes : while in the meane time the Dane returned to the Gouernour, and to the Hamburgers, and acquainted them with my flate. I lived miferably among it the Barbarians, ficke and voknownes they had Bisket which I fleeped in Milke, and 20 and fo for that time, I indured hunger, while (being ftronger) I might returne to the Governour.

The Hamburgers, by reason of the time of the yeere, least they should loose the opportunitie of favling, despairing now of my returne, set sayle (for they depart before the foure and twentieth of August, lest being hindered after by the Ice, they cannot get out) yet with special care commended me to the Gouernour (if at any time I did returne) leaving Bisket, Wine, and Beere. The Governour hath a dwelling fit enough for the manner and fashion of this Countrey, on the South of this Iland, not farre from the Hauen of Hafnefordt, the place is called Beffede. I was Hafnefordt. brought hither of the Islanders, to the Gouernour, who, for our common studies, entertayned Hisabiding me willingly and honorably. But although wee were plentifully furnished with all necessaries, there two winyet being very wearie of that life in such darknesse, I expected the ships out of Germany the ters.

20 next yeere with great defire.

There grew then warre betweene Ericus of Suetia, and Fredericke the Second King of Denmarke: which was continued with great courage for ten yeeres after. The Lubekers were Conforts and Confederates of Warre vnto the Dane. So most part of the Cities on the Sea-coafts vpon the Balthicke Sea, hindred or intangled with this Warre, intermitted their fayling into Mand this yeere, therefore wayting in vaine, I must stay. The yeere following, when I had wayted till the end of June, all hope of returning into Germany that yeere was taken away, and which was worfe, the yeerely thip came not from Denmarke: and bread and Wine failed vs almost foure monethes.

There lay Portugals at anchor at that time in Island in a small ship; who came thither to fowle, 40 they caried away excellent Falcons, and white ones among them, in great number. I thought good rather to croffe ouer into Portugall with them , then to wayte another yeere, either for Danes or Germanes . And when they gave the Governour his Custome, he dealt with them in my behalfe concerning the charge, that I might passe with them, and he liberally paid the charges, and honorably fent me away with a worthy Prefent. Not far from the Kings house, there was a certayn Minister, londs by name, he familiarly faluted me before I departed for the time I was in Island, I had some familiaritie with him, to whom also I left my Bookes when I departed: he for friendships sake, knit three knots in a handkerchiefe, and promised me a prosperous wind, say ing if by chance the winds at any time grow contrary at Sea, open these knots, and then remem- His National ber me. When therfore about the twentieth of September we had fayled, and now Spaine was in onson the so our view, there was fo great a calme, that we felt not a breath of wind, and that for three whole Goalt of Afridayes. In this calme my friends promife came into my minde, and I defired to proue it. I loofed ca, &c. hee the first knot, by and by, after one houre, there arose a very prosperous winde, but blowing very his Presace, gently, I write the second and the third, forthwith a Tempest beganne more and more to grow, which I have fo truly that after two dayes we ridde in the River Tagus, which beateth upon Liftone.

Kkk 2

CHAP,

 This learned Monder publi-

thed A. 1593.

one Booke of

Iffand which

lared and fer

Tome of his

forth in the firft

Voyages. This

worke is larger

in three Books out of which I haue taken

fome things

which I held

conducent to

our purpo e.In

futeth the er-

the former

write fally

Holain 65.de-

Erces 44. Bir

Dutes.

of illend.

Discouerer.

Farrellands.

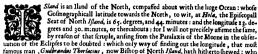
Sucland Naddoc first

M. Hat. tranf-

CHAP. XXIII.

Extracts of ARNGRIM IONAS " an Islander, bis Chrymogaa or Historie of Island : published. Anno Dom. 1600.

> I. Of Island, the Situation, Discouerie, Plantation and Language.



Sland is an Iland of the North, compafied about with the huge Ocean; whose Gofmographicall latitude towards the North, to wit, at Hola, the Epifcopall Seat of North Island, is 65. degrees, and 44. minutes : and the longitude 12. degrees and 30. m:nutes, or thereabouts : for I will not precifely affirme the fame, by reason of that scruple, arising from the Paralaxis of the Moone in the obserworks he con- uation of the Eclipses to be doubted : which only way of finding out the longitude, that most 20

rours of divers hath imparted vnto vs this longitude and latitude of his Sea : and was the first, that I know. Authors which among our Countreymen, who hath delivered any certaintie in Writing, concerning this matter. And furely, that which at this day, and io from the first entrance of Inhabitants, beareth the many things of

his Countrey. name of Island, (while as yet it remayned barren and desolate) had divers names allotted orgiuen vnto it from divers Discouerers : whereof three are mentioned. For first of all it was called Snalandia. For a certaine Pyrate called Naddocus, going towards

the Farensian Ilands (commonly called Farenar, for the multitude of Egges) was brought ynto Diuers names the shoares of East Island, through a Tempest, not farre from the Mountayne Reiderfiell (so called afterward) to the Bay *Reidarfiard*: who afcending the Mountayne, and beholding the bor-dering Countrey farre and neere, found it all Defert. And departing from the Coast about Autumne, he perceived the higher tops of the Mountaynes to bee covered with exceeding much Snow; and therefore, as the prefent case required, he called the Iland Snalandia, that is to lay, The Snowie Countrey Another following him, one Gardarus the fonne of Susuarus a Succian borne, perfwaded

found it, who arrived also neere the Easterne shoare, and from thence being carried about the

Iland, he abode in the Bay of North Mand called Skialfands, and wintered there in the yeere of

Christ 864, and called the name of the Hauen, Hulawich, from the wintering places, or houses

built there. But the Spring beginning, Gardarus being about to depart into Norway, the ship

there was a certayne Mariner called Natrare: from whom also this hauen had the name of Narfa-

rawicke. Moreover, Gardarus returning to his friends, called that new Countrey Gardarsholme,

Boat was driven away by a tempest, into an Hauen neere vnto the former, and in the same Boat 40

Gardar fecond through the report which Naddocus had brought concerning Snalande, went to feeke it : he

A.D.864.

Flece third Discouerer.

as it were, the Iland of Gardarus, neglecting the name of Snalanda. Moreouer, the defire also of vifiting a Countrey newly discouered, possessed many. For the third also, one Floco, and he a most famous Pirate purposing to visit Gardar sheime, fet sayle out of an Hauen of Norman, which lyeth neere the watch-towie or rather Pharms Flokawards, lituate in the limits of the Prouinces of Hordaslandia, and Rogalandia: and passing by Hietlandia, (misnamed by some Schetlandia) called a certayne Hauen by the name of Flokawogur, and there the deepest part of the Sea (where Geirbilds the daughter of Floco by chance was drowned) was caled Gewhildarwata, from her : no otherwise then that Sea was called Hellespontus, wherein by 10 misfortune Phryxus loft his fifter Helle. There was yet no vie of the Mariners Compafie: wherefore Floce leaving Hietlandia, tooke certayne Rauens vnto him : and when hee thought hee had fayled a great way, he fent forth one Rauen, which flying aloft, went backe againe to Hietlande, which the faw behind. Whereupon Floco perceiuing that he was yet neerer to Hietland then other Countryes, and therefore couragiously going forward, he fent forth another Rauen : which because she could see no Land, neither before nor behind, light into the ship again. But lastly, the third Rauen was fent forth by Flee, and haning for the most part performed his Voyage, through the sharpnesse of her quicke sight attayning the Land, which the Mariners desired, she speedily flew thither: whose direction Floco following, beheld first the Easterne fide of the Iland, as his Predeceffors did : and from thence directing his course to the South, found a very wide and open 60 Bay twelve Islandist miles broad, betweene the two Promontories or high Lands, afterwards called Renkanes, and Snafelfnes. And hearing by a certayne Mariner (whom he had with him) a See borne, named Faxe, that the Bay they now met with , was the huge mouth of a River or

CHAP. 22. S. 1. Island fo called of Ice. It is not Thule, Length and breadth.

Floud; Flore to reprove the folly of Faxe, supposing so huge a Bay of the Sea to be the mouth of a River called the name of the Bay inclosed betweene the foresaid Promontories, Faxaer, which fignifieth the month of Faxa. This Bay, by reason of the multitude of Hauens, was afterwads called Hafnafiordur : which name Hafnafiordur at this day is more specially vied of a most fafe Hauen of the fame Bay.

After this, Floco fayling along the West side of the Iland, entred somewhat within the Bay Breidafiord, remaining in a certaine Hauen of the Prouince Bardestraund, called Watnifierdur (for I yse the names given them afterwards) and there preparing wintering places, he lived very commodiously and well with fish of divers kindes, wherewith that Bay doth abound. But hano uing the Spring time here very vntemperate through cold, hee found a Bay(which entreth this

pare of the Land on the North) to be filled with Ice of the Sea, which wee call Gronelandif Ice. The name From which Ice, Floco deuised the third name for the lland, and called it Isand. Moreover also Isandofice Flow turning to the South fide, paffed another Winter in Ifland: and returning into Nerway (from the Rauens, which hee vied in stead of the Mariners Compasse) he allotted it the surname

of Rafnaflokes And Hand furely obtained these names consequently from the finders, or discouerers thereof. Mand is not For as touching the fourth, Thule, imposed wpon this Land by some, I cannot bee perswaded to Thule.

beleeue, it is true; chiefly by this argument; That Thyle, or Thule among the ancient Writers. was often in the mouth and writings not onely of Pliny in his fecond booke of Natural Histories 75. Chapter and fourth booke, and fixteenth Chapter (and Pliny flourished about the eightieth yeere of Christ) and of him who was more ancient then Pliny, Pythias Massiliensis: bu. also of Pub. Virgilius, who lived not aboue fourteene yeeres after Christ: but Island, till the yeere of Christ 874, remained altogether desert, as hereafter I shall speake, Thule therefore, which Vogil faid fhould ferue Augustus (Geor. 1. tibi feruiat vitima Thule : where even every child knoweth that Thule is Synecdochically spoken, for the Inhabitanes of Thule) not onely inhabited in the times of Augustus and Vergit, but also knowne to the Romanes, is not Island, which many ages after began firit to be inhabited. Besides, Plinie himselfe seemeth in the later place recited to reckon Thule with the Hands of Britaine : for , faith hee, Vlima omnium qua memorantur eft Thule : to Thule futibell wit, of the British llands, for hee speaketh of them. It is likely also that Forgit meant the same, of the British who said Thuis was the last, in the place before recited and likewise, Pensus toto durings orbs llea.

30 Britannes: that is to fay, the laft. Let me yet vrge the same argument further, from the age of Claudianns Alexandrinus, and Pub. Papinius Statius, farre more ancient then he. For Claudianus about the yeere of Christ 290, writeth thus concerning the successe of the Getick Wars atchieued by Theodofins.

Famaque ingrantes succinsta panoribus alai, Secum cuncta trabens, à Cadibus vique Britanun Terruit Oceanum : & nostro procul axe remotam Infolita Belli, tremefecit murmure Thulen.

Then blackwing'd Fame Feare girt, frights all the World with Warre. From Cades to Britaine, from Our World shakes Thale farre.

But did Report and Fame cause Island not inhabited, and desert to tremble ? And Statist more ancient by three hundred yeeres then Claudian, in his third Booke Sylms, writeth thus.

Quanquam etsi gelidas irem mansurus ad Aritos. Vel super Hesperia vada caligantia Thules.

Though I should dwel in Artike frosts, Or mystic shelves of Thules West coasts.

You heare, not onely a flight report of Thule came to Statius eares, but that the shallow places, quicke fand, or shelues found in approching to the Hand were sufficiently knowne vnto him, by 50 the often relation of Nauigators: of which fort in the circuit of Island, there are none that I know, * The Author which experience speaketh; but in comming to the Hands of Britains they are very ordinatie proceedsth in

and common, as they fay. The Longitude thereof from the East vnto the West, hath not hitherto beene expressed by a then our Reany certaine or affured measure that I know, nor yet the Latitude from North to South; der perhaps faue that in an ancient Codicall or Writing I found that the Longitude was twentie dayes jour- would permit ney : and the Latitude (where it is broadeft) foure dayes, but the journeyes, as elfewhere, fo allo vs. The learney : and the Latting (where it is proparty joure dayes, but the journeyease elewiners, to also ned and customers are the control of the con Go Latitude it felfe is not euery where the fame; by reason of Bayes on both fides, to wit, from the and more yet South and North entring the Land it felfe with vnequall diffances. The Easterly bound is in Orielius his

South and North entring the Land it felte with vnequal diffances. The Laterry bound is both Thefaurus.

Auffurbern: the Westerne Randesandur (for the Promontory Sua-fellouss lyeth more toward and Theatrum. who proucts out of Panpenius, Ptolemans, and Procopius, that Iflend is not Think but(as the name founds) Tylemante, a Region in Norma, or all Scandis, of which that is a part, fill retaining the name.

the South-well) but the North bound is Langanes, and the South Reikranes. The Iland also from the foure quarters of the World, is duided into North, South, East and West, and the Promontorie Langanes divideth North Island from East Island; fromWest Island, the Bay Rutafforder. trom South Island, the valt and buge deferts of rough, and inaccessable places extended the whole length of the Hand, But South Iffand, opposite to the North, through these rough and inaccessable places lying betweene the River localfu, running through the deferts of Solfeima ande, divideth from East / fland: from West / fland alio, a famous River, named Albis, emptying it selfe into the Bay Borg arford: So that, if it pleafed me to represent the sland in humane shape, East Island should haue the proportion of the head. The two more famous Promontories Languages and Reikranes or bounds; the one Northerly, the other Southerly(as hath been (aid)) should serve in stead of armes. 10 And the deferts extended the whole length of the Hand should make the backe, or backe bone: then North and South Island, the shoulders with the sides; the two opposite Bayes Borgar fords. and Ratafordar, the one on the South, the other on the North, should duide the forepart about the short ribs, from both the thighes or hips. But West Island should resemble the rest of the parts of a mans bodie, from the forepart about the short ribbes : which the Bay Breidifiordur comming in from the West, should contract and straighten into the right and left foot.

The Circuit.

The circuit also of the Hand, is no more certainely knowne; yet an ancient rumour and opinion (as in another place where it is noted) reckoneth one hundred and fortie foure Nornegian miles (as I thinke) that is to fay, two hundred eightie eight Germane miles, Chytrem accounting the Normegian mile, to equal two Germane miles, fayling from one Promontorie to the other, not by 20 the Bayes : whereof North Island is esteemed to have eleven, East Island, twentie one, South Mand fixe, and West Island seventie.

" Herald Harefagre finding many pattie Princes made an abfolete Monarchy of

Haraldus Pulcricomus * Swaying the Scepter in Norway, much neglected the chiefe Nobilitie of Normay : which the Nornegian Historie letteth downe at large, yet particular Histories of noble Families expulied by Pulcricomu, more largely profecute the fame, as hereafter wee pur-pole to write. For Pulcricomu not contented with Kingly authoritie, or chiefe four aignetie, that is to fay, with the right of Lawes, Magistracie, and appeale of Warre and Peace, challenged Normay, wher- all vnto himfelte, by the right of a proprietarie. Infomuch, as very many choic rather to leave their Countrey and rich inheritances, then to exchange their Generolitie for flauerie and trifought to free bates : for they thought it altogether vnworthy and ill beseeming their owne valour and their 30 ancestours. Hence, for the most part arose mutuall injuries against the King, or the Kings parriesiand hence takers; as murdering of the Kings friends, allyes, or faction; then the exercises both at Sea and arous the plan- Land were rapines and robberies. From these noble Families therefore, refusing the violence of ration of island Harald, this our Island, with the neighbouring Hands began first to be inhabited, and that almost by these steps and vovages.

A.D. 874. Ingulfus.

In the yeere of our Redemption 874 a certaine Inhabitant of Norway, one Ingulfus, going out of his Countrey, following the steps of Naddocsus, Gardarus, and Floco mentioned before, was made Standard-bearer of the Inhabitants which were to bee conveyed into Island, and that upon this occasion. Ingulfus was famous for his parentage and riches, whose father, called Orne, which fignifieth an Eagle, was Duke of Fyrdafilee in Norway; the fifter of Ingulfus was 40 Helga, a Virgin indued with all womanly ornaments, and his coulin germaine Leifus; who for a notable fword, which through his fingular warlike proweffe he got in Ireland, was named Hiorleifus. For Hir is a Sword. Moreouer, at that time among the Nobilitie of Normay, there were three naturall brothers, Hallftenn, Holmsten, and Herstenn; the sonnes of Atlas, or Atlantes, a certaine Baron of Norway: who bore certaine prime grudges to the foresaid Ingulfus and Hiorlesfus; which prefently after brake forth into cruell and bloudie flaughters. For when by chance they feafted together, after the manner of that age, they injoyned every one to make fome folemne Vow. Herstenus therefore first vowed, that he would take Helga, Ingulfus fifter to wife, or marrie none. Then presently Ingulfus wowed, that hee would admit none into his Fathers Inheritance with him, faue only Hiorlesfus: meaning thereby that his fifter Helga, by his confent should marry none but Hierleifus (contrary to the vow of Herstenus for the marrying of her only.) After that Helmstenus vowed, that if he were chosen Arbitrator betweene the aduerse parties, he would by no meanes be compelled, to suffer an vniust sentence. And so the rest after them. Not long after succeeded the Vow of Ingulfus, for Hiorlessus tooke his Coulin Germane Helga to wife. For at that time the Marriages of Coulin Germanes were lawfull. From hence arole the extreame hatred, and enmitte of Herstenus, against the foresaid Hierleifus, and Ingulfus : who therefore joyning with his Brother Holmstenn, with fixe thips filled with Souldiers, let vpon Hiorleifus vnawares, hauing but three ships only, preparing his Voyage into foreine Countreyes. Whose violence Hiorleifus a long time, and stoutly sustayning, holpen by a certayne friend comming in the meane-while, hauing flaine Herstenus got the upper hand. But Holmitemus providing for himfelfe by flight, and not a little exasperated and grieved through the violent 60 death of his Brother, after some few monethes, came with an armed power to Ingulfus and Hiorleifusto furprize them fuddenly at home. Whereof they being certified by Spies , receive him with an armed force, and kill him. Halftenus the third brother, wifer then the reft, who

and bloudic quarrells en-

conforted not with the vni ift routes of his Brethren, remayined yet alive: to whose arbitrement Insulfus with Hisrleifus commit the whole matter to be determined, holding him mindfull of his Vow, concerning equitie not fo be violated. Halstenns therefore pronounceth his brother Herflenus to be justly flaine : But not Holmflenus who compelled through bitter griefe, defired to reuenge the death of his brother, by any flaughter what focuer. For killing therefore of him he commanded them both to be banished out of the Prounce of Fydafille. They readily obey his award to whom they willingly committed the centure, & with a purpose to leave their Countrey, they fell their Lands and Poffessions for mony and Merchandizes, and conceive in their minds a worthy attempt of planting a strange people in a strange Country; and that not to gratific Halflenns (with whom through this agreement they returned into favour; with whom they might otherwise eably have contended in strength) but also for feare of Pulcycomus himfelfe, raging against his Country, and innocent Countrymen, for the obtayning (as both beene faid) not only of the Morarchie, but Pampella, of all their Poffetfions; nor was that to bee doubted, concerning the violence and oppression of Harald: for in the Historie of Haguinus Adalstenius his succeeding Some it is exprelly read, that he was concented with Kingly authoritie, and restored to every

one their owner which his Father vnjuftly challenged vnto himfelfe. It was the weere of Christ 870, wherein Ingulfus with Hierleifus hift visit Island, but they inhabit it not prefently, but foure yeeres after, in the yeere 874. as hath beene faid; bringing ma- Ifland first in-

ny Families thither. Moreover Ingulfus comming within view of the Hand, cafteth the postes of the houses which 30 he had in Norway into the water, after the manner of Ethnickes accounting it for an Oracle, that that place was fatally chosen for his Habitation, which the postes cast out upon the shoare Superstition: thould note or fignifie. That custome many of the Norwegians retayned by turning of the ground. But Inpulfus arrived not where he caft in the postes, but at the Promontorie of the South shoare (alfe-where erroniously, the West shoare) called by his name Inguishede. Yet not withstanding wanting the postes of the houses three whole yeers, at length he found them in that place, which is named Rerchiarwich, and there he erected his Habitation. But Hiorleifus more estranged from Ethnick Superflition, seated himselfe in the Promontorie Hirleifihofda; fokalled likewise from his name. There he built great houses : one of one hundred twentie fix, and another of one hundred fland had an thirtie fine feet long : who, the first yeere being ended, began to till the ground and sow feed. ciently fairer

3C In which worke, when he had exercised ten servants or slaves, which her brought with him out houses then In which worke, when he had exercise ten creams on many, many wilde Beare (for it was now, thaning in fland, they fayned that Hundigin his labouring beat was flane by a wilde Beare (for it was now, than ing afterwards manifelly knowne, that Mond hath no Betters, but figth as came thirther by Imber from Marse, see, the contract of th chance) which when Histleffus (with a purpose of reuenge) sought in the next neighbouring likewist Ti-Wood, he was deceitfully slaine by these slaues lying in ambush: together with some other lage was then companions which he tooke with him : the Servants aswell ravishing the Wives as spoyling the in vie. goods of the flaine; and flying into the Ilands not very farre diffant from the floare : which after Hierleifus flain. of the same slaves, were called Westmassar, because they were of Ireland. The Norwegians call the Westmassar and Westmassar and Ireft, Englift, and Scots Westmen, that is, men of the West : seeing those Countries are distant from Norman, to the West. Ingulfus pursuing these Murtherers, set vpour them suddenly, and de-stroyed them enery man in the same Ilands, being much grieved in minde for the vntimely and cruell death of his deere friend and allyes.

But Inguiffie found and poffessed Isand altogether barren and desolate; on euery side beset Woods. with very thicke Woods, and scarsly fertile of any but Birches, fo that hee was faine enerywhere to open the Woods with the Axe, for journeyes and habitation. Yet in the mesne space. we might gather by certayne fignes, I know not what Mariners had formetimes touched your certayne shoares of the Countrey, but not inhabited them. For Ingulfus found little facring Bels and Belsand wooden Croffes, and other things made by the workmanthip and arte of the Irifi and Groffes. Britagnes: but no tokens of culture, or habitation. Whereupon it is likely, that Irifh, or Scottifh Fishermen (as also the English at this day) accustomed to fish neere Island; as sometimes it commeth to paffe, went ashoare, and so by chance left facsing Belle and Croffes, the Vtensils of Chri-

ftian Religion. For at that time the Irib were instructed in Christianisme as they fav. And those whosever were the ancient Manders, they called Papa, or Papas: from whom, as seemeth probable to me, the Hand of East Island called Pager, derived the name; because they were often wont to touch there : or their Monuments (fuch as I fayd) were chiefly found there. This side of Island, to fuch as fayle from England, Ireland, and Scotland, is most exposed towards the North-west. Moreouer, what and from whence these Papa, or Pappa came, I cannot fufficiently speake : vnlesse peraduenture from the Ilands of Scotland, whereof one is named

Pappa, and another Wellrapappa, as we may fee in the Mappes : vnto which conjecture let every 60 one give what credit he pleateth. Furthermore, very many of the Normegians, atterwards boldly following the steps of Ingulfus going into Island, with their wives and children, and great multitudes of their Kindred and friends, restored themselves to libertie. Whose names and large Families are recited in the Chronicles; as by the fecond Booke is underflood. Befides it is there recounted what coasts, what shoares, what middle-land places every one possessed; and at what

time; and aliohow the first Inhabitants gaue name to Straights, Bayes, Hauens, narrow time; and atto now the first inhabitants gaue mame to straignes, Dayes, crauens, narrow straights of Load, Ferryes, Clysfes, Rockes, Mountaines, Hills, Vallies, rough and inacceffistraigns of Lena, perfyes, clyfics, rockes, acountaines, rames, roogn and maccedeble Places, Fountaines, Flouds, Rivers, Villages, Farmes or Habitations : whereof at this day ner Fraces, rountaines, froms, Ruers, viniges, raines of frantations. Whereof at this day many are yet retained and in vie. Which Topography, supposing it would be tedious, especially to a fortaine Reader, I have here omitted; applying my selferather to the description of the Insabitants, who in fixtie yeeres space so replenished with their multitudes, the habitable

Chap. 3. Of the language of the Nation. If mders only retaine the ancient Gottifb

ares or 1/4400 now ponenes.

Concerning the language of the Islanders, the matter it selfe speaketh, that it is the Nove. gran; I say, that old and naturall speech, derived from the ancient Gorball, which onely the gram; 1 12y, that old and natural spects, deflow a found in addition of which tongue to Islanders now vie vacorrupted; and therefore we call it Islands b. Of the letters of which tongue to we will first speake somewhat; and afterwards in the Chapter following there shall be a short

And furely that language feemeth to have double letters: to wit, the Old, and New. The New, which commonly wee vie at this day, are common almost to all Europe together with Two kinder of vs. Which, when they first began to be evided is not certainely knowne. Surely as yet, some eroffes written in ancient letters, are yet feene among our Country-men, which letters allo maregies written in another receives and yet result anguing our country and both reade, and write; and this naturall language it felfe is contained in the ame, nothing at all changed. Moreouer it feemed good to mee, thus to prefent the name and tame, norning at an energetic articles of the ancient Characters, such firely as was offered vinto mee, placing the New of Commaps or the ancient characters, incl. unrery as was online vinto mee; placing the frew or com-mon ouer against them, expressing the validitie thereof, adding also the agreement and differe 10 mon our against them, appearing the value of the Garbes: whom Ishames Theodorus, and Johannes I frael, brethren and Citizens of Francofort, report to have innented these letters by whose relation hee agreeth with vs in all things, saue where the disagreement shall bee noted here. Moreouer alfo, I thought it not amiffe to fet downe in writing the letters of certaine other Nations, to fome of our Country letters, out of the same Francofers copie, which the Types or Fi-

```
Biarkan
  Knesol
  Stunginntyr
  Stunginn Is
  Stunginn kaun 🗗
  Kaun
  Langur
                  or A : Ulphilathus A : it is also A , the Mosconit L.
m Madur
n Nand
                  Vlobila thus A
  Os
                 Vipbila thus A
              A Viphila thus XPCsb. Ctba. of the Arabians.
```

Here wee see twentie one Characters, but the ancient numbred onely fixteene. And the there we see we would not acknowledge for theirs; because a of the Gracker, that is to 62 fay st. or dt. (as they would haue it) they might write it in their language with diffind letters. But the fourth of from the cighteenth, they diffinguish with some point, or an overthwart line, almost thus a :otherwise it is altogether the same in shape and name, Tr. burd. Stronghous try, that is to fay, pointed Tyr, as P. Lannk, and pointed keen P. g. So Is pointed for e.

CHAP. 22. S. Letters and Grammer of Illand. First Northerne Inhabitants. 650

but Plaster resembleth B. with both the bellies open aboue and beneath. Besides these, the rest are numbred fixteene, as I faid, For they reckoned the Diphthones to the Syllables.

Moreover, it retained the last new Conforant of the old Alphabet, changed in name, but not in thape , which is p. This being fet after a vowell in the fame fyllable, hath the found of d, as Blue for Blad, which is a leafe : which kind of writing was more viuall with the ancient bur at this day is almost growne out of vie : but being fet before a vowell, it hath a peculiar force and pronunciation, not altogether Th, but founding fomewhat more grofly, as it were Tab, putting forth the tongue almost between the fore-teeth; as parthat is to fay, then In times past it had the name of Paff: at this day it is called Porn, or Thorn, if you put p. for th : and therefore it cannot be written or pronounced at all, but by it felfe.

They also of later time write the Conformat' f. after this manner g. The Moderne Writers also dee tomet mes afroirate L. W. R. the ancient very feldome and almost never : as Histor in old time Louar, that is a thing. Hinfor in times past (as also fometimes at this day) Knifer; that is to fay, 2 Knife Hruser in old time Ruser, that is to fay a Ram. In like manner tometimes lod, and Usf, or Land w. Conforants : as Hiel, that is, a Wheele: Hugher, that is, a Whale : which also I thinks the aricient did concerning lod, and Vaf.

In Vowels and Diphthongs, as also abbreulations proper to this language, the varietie is farre 22 greater, which I purpose not to touch. Moreover also, the due handling of the letters, as of the rest of the Etymologie and Syntaxis of this tongue, would bee the copious matter of a peculiar worke, especially it any would adde the Poetrie, purposing to write the Grammer of the Islandish tongue, which would bee no more difficult, then that wee have feene done, concerning the Germane and

About the yeare of the Lord 1216, one of our Country-men wrote in his Country language. Mand Gram. concerning the letters of the proper, or mother tongue : where hee affirmeth thefe ancient Cha- marian. racters to be peculiar to this language, and handleth them both, as well new as old after a legitimare and due manner of tractation, by his definitions and divisions of the letters into Vowels and Confonants, and of the five Titine Vowels, maketh eighteene of his language, diftinguished in found and pronunciation: He divident the Confonants habitrally into halfe Vowels, and Mutes, and those into Liquids and Pirmes, these into open and shut; performing the part of a pretie Lo-20 gician. And in delivering the force and pronunciation of the letters, hee artificially affumeth for euery definitionall the Inffruments of framing the voyce, as well the lungs and throat, as the auxiliary parts of the mouth and tongue. The letter p. alfo, he calleth the, peraduenture in imisation of the Greeke Theta (which almost, as we faid, although not altogether it expresseth) or Tax of the Hebrewes, which Hebrew letter, if th. or t. of the Latines rightly expresse, as is reported by fome, Than shall come nothing neerer to our p. then Theta. The same Country-man of ours, from absolute letters, proceedeth to set downe in writing, the figures of the word and sentence in the Mother tongue, and illustrate them with examples of our language, retaining the Greeketides of the Figures, or names of Epizeusis, Anadiplosis,&c.

And from this Writer of our Countrey, we received the Types of the old Alphabet : for there Norws of whom 40 are Historicall fragments yet extant, concerning Norus the Name-giver of Norway, and founder Norway is of the Kingdome, and thole Toparchi, or little Kings, whom hee vanquished before hee obtained named. the Monarchie.

ð. II.

A discourse of the first Inhabitants of the Northerne World, Supposed to be Giants expelled from Canaan. Of the Islanders Honfes, Fewell, Victuall.

Oreouer concerning some of the ancestors of Norus: among whom his father Ports Chap. 4.

(whom they call Thorre) King of Gotland, Finland, and Kuentand: an excellent Prince Inhabitants of the fifth Inhabitants of the fifth of of his age, from whom the moneth of the old Normegians, and now Islanders hath the the North name of Thorre, which in the Inlian Calender beginneth the 10.11.12.13.14.15.01 16. parts of the of January: for it hath a moueable beginning after the manner of their Calender. And feeing King world,

Therre this month accustomed to facrifice vnto his gods; the Kuenones instituted yerely facrifices Therre. in the same month to him, being dead, as to a certaine god, in token of an happy yeere, which they began with the winter, after the maner of the old Lacedemonians; & called the fame month Porre, 60 of Thorrosno otherwise then the Lacedemonians gave divine honor to Lycurgus being dead building a Temple in memory of him, where hee was honoured for a god; to whom his familiar friends inflituted fer Featting-dayes, and folemne affemblies which remained a long time, and the daies wherein the affemblies were celebrated, they called Lycargide: concerning which matter looke Cragine in his third booke of the Common-wealth of the Lacedemonians.

Or the Ancestors also of Norm, all are mentioned even to his Great-grandfather, who was Fermetin King of Finland: Moreover, one of the three fonnes of Fermetin, and therefore Great vocle of Nasas, called Logie, which fignifieth a flame; who for the excellencie of his beautie was called Halogie, that is to fay, an high or excellent flame. Hee was Monarch of the Halonie. ensian Pronince, bordering upon the Pronince of Nidrofia.

Goe also the daughter of Thorre, by the lifter of Norms, is there recorded, for recourse of whom, being ftolne away (as Cadmu was fent by his father Agents to feeke his daughter Large) Norms was fent by his father Thorro: which, that it might more happily succeed, Thorro instituted new facrifices to the Gods, in the moneth next following the former (afterwards called Thorra) and intituled the same moneth with the name of Gos, after the name of his daughter 10 Ge: which name of the moneth likewife the Islanders that now line doe yet retaine. Furthermore, ancient Histories make mention of Gorss, the naturall brother of Norss: 2s also the nepbew of Gorns, named Gylung, having the loveraigne authoritie in Succia, in whole time Odman hap. pened to come (others call him Others;) Standerd-bearer of the Afrey Immigration, made in the foure and twentieth yeere before Christ was born, which we mentioned before : and Gylasu hada father called Geiterus , and an Vncle Beiterus, the founes of Gorus; from Beiterus, the Hauen neces the Citie Nidrofia, is named Beitflod

I thought good to exhibit these things in a Table.

Fermetse King of Finland. Kere. The same also is esser, That is to say, the Winds, for which other-wise figuriseth in the number of the God of flead of Vulcan after death (as

Hiar. the Sea; hee is supposed an-other Neptune, to have dominion ouer the Sea.

in the number of the Gods after death, he is thought to be having power over the Fire) another Lolm, to rule the and for the excellency of his Windes. beautie was called Halogie, fo named of the Province of He- 30 logalande in Norway.

Frotte. Otherwise called lokal, both from the Froft and Cold

Smer. That is to fay, Sweet: furnamed the Ascient, because hee is reported to have lined three hundred yeeres; he left one fonne, and three daughters.

Dryfa. A mowy thower.	Porre. King of Goth- land, Kuenland, and Finland.	Famm. Signifieth Snowe gathered together in thicke heapes by a Tempest.	descending
Goe. A daughter.	Of whom Norm	Nor. Sy is named, and the	Gør. Beiter-Geite

From this Norm , Haraldon Pulcriconnus is the twelfth of them that descended from the right Line, whom some make the first Monarch The said After immiof Norway, but amiffe, being ignorant of Antiquitie: feeing hee was gration happened in the third Restorer of the Monarchy of Namay: for betweene him and the time of this Gylai, co. Norms, Hemneus the fonne of Odinus "obtayned the Monarchy alfo.

* This Odinus is faid to hane made his plan tation with his ers, about four and twentic yceres before Christ was borne.

Earth-bred or Land-fprung men, which ginall in that

These (I say) besides many other things, are the manifest tokens of the Inhabitants of the Northerne World, farre more ancient then the immigration of Odimer: of whose originall notwithflanding, there is not one word. But because it is most repugnant toa Christian man, knowing the Bookes of Mofes concerning Originals, to affirme themselves to be Assochema, as both others, but especially the Greeker did concerning their Ancestors (yet with better leave then the reft of the people of Europe: who next to the Chalders, Egyptians, and lower, might worthily boalt of Antiquitie in comparison of other people.) It were better truly to confesse the vaknown originall of Ancestors, then to be carried away with the opinion and error of Earth-bred men: 60 left furely wee should heare some fach thing , as sometimes one wittily vpbraided the Grecious with, fo much boafting by reason of their pretended selfe-original, to wit, that Mojes the Law giver of the leves, was more ancient then the Gods of the Gracians.

In the meane space, because through the onely confession of ignorance or doubt, truth doub

Giants first Inhabitants of the North, esc. C HAP.23.

not so some appeare; somewhat is to be alleaged touching the proposed question : that the hithoricall Reader may haue fome thing here which hee may either confuse or confirme. Wee are therefore by probable reatons to inquire, who were the first inhabitants of the Northerne World, and from whence they came: then, when they began to inhabit this our World: that from hence some coniecture may artie concerning the original of the language. And that I may here acquit my felfe without circumstances; I thinke the first inhabitants of the Northerne here acquit my iene without encumerate, nay, mere Giants; men that inhabited the mountaines Giants firft inworth, were of the manners of Clints hift in-of an luge and fomenimes a monitrous body, and of monitrous and exceeding firength'; and that habiters of the they were the posteritie and remnant of the Canaanites, expulsed from the Territories of Pale- Northerne In fina, about the yeere of the World 2500. by lofus and Caleb remouing into Palefina through parts of the find, about the yeere of the World 2500. Dy 10 Jun and Later temporary into I may limb the organ World.

Gods pleasure and direction: and that this Countrey of the World even vntill those times, or Their original

peraduenture longer, remayned altogether not inhabited. from the Saxe Grammaticus argueth in the Preface of his Dania. But (fayth he) the flones of exceeding bignesse fastened to the Tombes and Caues of the ancient, testifie that the Countrey of Den. Along difrecoung organize from the with the inhabiting of Giauts. But if any doubt, that it was done by courte of the monstrous strength; let him looke up to the high tops of certagne Mountagnes, and say, if he know Authours monstrous strength; let him tooke up to the bigh tops of certaine Manniaines, and jay, if we know proue that it well, who halb brought Rockes of such huge greatnesses to the tops thereof? For every one that considerath their have bin this Miracle, shall perceise that it is beyond common opicion, that the simple labour of mortalitie, or v- Giarts, : 0finall force of humane strength Scould rayse so huge a weight (bardly, or not at all moucable open the mitted,

20 Plaine ground) to fo high a top of mountaynous fublimitie. This Saxo writeth, who shall be a fufficient Author vito vs concerning the first Inhabitants of Denmarke, that is to Gy, his owne Countrey. So concerning Norway and Suecia, and the bordering Countreyes, as whatsoeuer is most ancient; so it most resembleth a Giant-like disposition and nature. Whereof examples are to be taken out of Histories, which would be tedious Giants in the here. For that I may omit ancient examples, those things are knowne of late memory to have time of Harbeene done : Concerning the Giant Doffre, unhabitant of the Mountayne Doffrefiell in Nor- elden Hereway; and Foster-father of Haraldus Pulcricomus King of Normay. Also concerning Dunubo fast and since who lived in the time of Droffon: from whom the Bay Boddick or Bothnicke: in time path was called Dumbshaff, who in a Sea-fight, encountring eighteene Giants alone, sent twelve of them 30 first to Hell before he himselfe was slaine. Of thirtie Giants at once destroyed by fire, by Dam-

bos Sonnes left, in reuenge of their Fathers death. There is yet a later example of certavne Giants of Norway, destroyed by authoritie of Olans Triggo King of Norway, about the yeere of Christ 995. But the latest in the yeere 1 338. Magnus the Sonne of Ericus, being King of Nor- 1338, 2 Giant Christ 995. But the latest in the yeere 1338. Magnus the Sonne of Ericus, being King of Nor-reportedois, was, that a Giant of fifteene Cubits was flaine by four mentas it is found recorded in the Chro-Cubits. nicles, Hereunto adde, that a certayne Prouince of Norway, or bordering vpon Finmauchia, in ancient time was called Rifalande, that is to fay, the Land of Giants (for En Rife, and Refe.fignifie a Giant) from whence lotum Heimar, that is, the habitation of Giants is not farre diffinant (whereupon as yet, En Ist, is fail to be a Giant) that I may Speake nothing heere of Istumland: by which name, that which at this day is called Intland, was sometimes called by our Countrey Intland.

40 men, and very many other also, the Land of the Cimbri, or Chersonesus: the same name also heine given it of Kemper, that is, fighting Giants of Nephilbeimar, and Karnephill, elfe-where, and peraduenture by others shall be spoken, as also of the Getthes, and Getts (peraduenture also letts) and fuch like others. Moreouer, the remnant of the Giants came into Island, whole Names, Habitations, worthy Ace and Enterprizes, are fufficiently knowne, and before our eyes. Seeing therefore Giants first inhabited this our World; it is demanded, when, or whence they came?

Gilb. Gemebrand. Chronol. Lib. 1. The first Age, layth hee, (from the (reation of the World unto the Flond) seemeth to have beene passed and spout within the mid-lands of the World, and that ther came not to the borders of Aira, Airica, and Europe. Bodinus fayth, that Mofes wrote the

50 Hiftorie of the whole World (he meaneth inhabited) euen to the yeere of the World, 2470-And Genebrand againe, Lib.1. Chronel. pag.11. Asthe first Originall of Manhind was in Atmenia, Mesopotamia, Chaldaa, and Syria : and men before the Floud dwelt only there : so other Countreves themselnes, were first inhabited after the Flond. Also Gonebrand fayth yet turther, wild. pag. 35. Before three thousand yeares (for bee wrote in the yeare of Christ 1 (97.) almost all Europe was emptie, that is, about the yeere of the World 2541. which is chiefly to bee vinderstood of the Northerne World, if of the reit of Europe. But hee faid , shmoft , not altogether , that hee might not take away the migrations of the Nations then presently beginning after the yeere of the World 2500. wee doe not therefore tye the time (wherein this further Europe began to bes inhabited) to the yeere of the World 2500. But wee fay, that that troublefome time wherein 60 the Nations (and among them the Giants of Canaan) were cast out of their places and dwellings, and compelled to leck new habitations, even in Europe, happened in this yeere; as was propoled by vsin the beginning. And that Europe received her Inhabitants from hence, among the Ancient. Procopius is my Author, a Writer borne at Cafaria of Palaftina, Collector of the worthy Act, of Infimianus, about the yeere of the Lord 530. who to proue this very thing, allea-

geth divers Writers of the Historie of the Phanicians. The words of Proceptus are thefe, inhis geth duers Writers or the Fintense of the Vandalls, not in one place only, cited by D. Officess: out of fourth Booke of the Warres of the Fanadus, not in one practionly, enterly of Chinese out of the which, among other things, I gather mine opinion. The Hebrewes (faith Procopins) of the which, among other things, a gather mine opinion. The section of I pale thing arocopius) of ter they returned out of Egypt, and remayined fit in the borders of Palethina, Moles (who led them ter they returned out of Ligype, and remayate he was not over very of a smalling, mines (who end them in their insuring) dieth: whom loting the some of Nun succeeded, who also brought the properties in their sournes) dueto: whom 10112 the joune of value jusceening, were up o orong to the people into Palastina, and sheeping strength and courage for beyond the nature of man obtained the Country where-Palettina, and linewing livength and courage yer veryond one nature of man non-agreed the London-by delivening Nations, he cashly vanegalled many Citiss feeming inexpignable with all Them therefore all the Country upon the Sea-coast, from Sciolone new to the borders of Egypt, was called Phomicis. all the Country upon the descent, from successions to second or a second property of the Promitting love which one long fines raigned, as all witness, who writ the ancient History of the Promitting love ouer which one long frace reagrees; as an uninege, woo were too entern, and only you know the thermitians here
great multitudes of people dwelt: the Gergalites, lebulites, and others admed in the Hebrew Volumes, la great multimates of people awest : to e Ucrystness technics, and others, amount in our citizenew estimate, who when they fam the Armie of the strangers to be inexpugnable feating their Country bounds went into who was the first the Arms of toe fix angers to be inexpanded element soon court founds were not being the Egypt next also print, and there increasing in number and patients, when they found not fufficient, and connection place for for grat a multitude, they cutted into Africa, where subshings cry many Catteryby consecuent yace profess a mututume, tog entrea une altitum more committed or many Lausthey peffified all has Coast, even unto the Pillers of Hercules, ving the basic Phoenician Tongue and Dia-ket, and built the Towne Tingen in Numidia, most strongly fortified in the fination thereof; where two led, and built the 10 was 1 lingen on reumious, most prongs) forsifies in see pissasses sources; where two Fillers of white flows are credied nears the great Founterne, whereon in the Phoenician Language this Letters are ingrauen. Nos fumus Cananes, quos fuguit lesse Latre. For lesse in the Hieren's Letters are my casen. You number canones, quot sugant sepas Laure. For some in the Herrows fifth of facts. This Precepts written, to which purpole the Historians of the Herrows are cited by Gandersond: loss a (faith be) partly expelled the Cananites; and partly flue them. The remnand single neer and a sojan (jane ve ; parsij express oor Ameelines, some parsij proc voem. A oe reomant of tage are reported to base gone into Germany, Sclauonia, and the next adsoyning Countryst, &c. Into So. 20 are reported to bear gone rate Germany, Sciauonia, and the next asseyming Louvirges, Oc. Into So-der Olam, Sc. Alfo: And furely in that Age that the whole West was empire and supeopled, saw that the Nations of the East came by little and line into the Country or thereof, it appeared by the effects fulion. This Genetrand writeth, And Bodmis Method. Hill chap. 9. The Canamites being callow of the Land of Paleilina, by the Habrewes, went into ligricum and Pannesia (to wit, by the of the Lamb of suspinary the Landsoner, while this options and Common (to wit, by time majorations and removes, which out of the place before alleadged by Procepus, were understand) as Rabbs Danid Kimchi witnesseth at the end of Abdiss.

The ancient /flander sceme to have been ordayned for great frugalitie, wherein first their A ne anxient special activities and before a supplied to the food and manner of apparell : and lattly, the reft of the exercises of their common life,

For first as touching their habitations, the Islanders have followed the first and most ancient 30 Separate dwel-FOR BITT AS COACHING, LICEN HARMAGOOD, ME SPECIALLY INDEED AND WELL LICENSE (PEACHTO I the Go-manner of dwelling. To wit, not by Cities and Townes; but as Tachus (peaketh of the Gomones of his time, they dwelt afunder, as a Field, as a Fountayne, as a Wood, as an Hill, or Valhoses of an intum, my new terms among, as a Kaba, as a Kobasayur, as a vroot, as an inin, or val-key, Shoare, or Bay of the Sea pleafed them: Not only initating here the example of the first Age of the World, but also of the latter Age : as the people of Albers and Laconie, in the beginning dwelt by Villages (as they write) not together or by Cities: and as in the time of Tantas, about the yeere of Christ 120 with the Germanes there was no vie of Mortar nor Tyles: (whereupon any man may rather judge the like concerning the Northerne World) to, nor after, with the Islanders, but they built their houses with Timber and Tursse. Nor furely was it momentany worke which lafted but a while, nor yet deformed in thew, the walks were fometimes made only of Turffe, fornetimes of rough Stones, adding Turffe in flead of Mottar : which at 40 terwards they couered with workmanship of plankes, as also the raftering it selfe; especially in terwards they coursed with worksmanning or putation, as and the interrupt is every pre-may in more motable buildings. And if you might fee the Roofe with the walls before mature old see our-growne with greene graffe every years, for you must volterfland, that the Roofe and walks were coursed with greene larte. Windowes were made in the Roofe, feldome in the walls, and certayne Roofes not very high, such as is reported the building of houses with the Easterne people was wont to be. The Inhabitants had flore of Timber, cast ypon the shoare by the swelling of the wanes of the Sea; through the miraculous testimonic of Gods Prouidence, confidence ring their Woods at home yeelding plentie, as I thinke only of Birches, were not sufficient for their huge houles : which yet were a great helpe also, with those which the Inhabitants, as oft as they would, ferched out of bordering Norwy, and peraducture allo out of Grandand: for the 50 Illumders sayled yestely to both a long time. Every one therefore had the houses of their Villages almost joyning together on their ground : befides the stalls of their Herds, seared some diges almost joy ning togetoes on user ground; center the totals of their sterios, tenes sometimes of their sterios, tenes sometimes of fuell, not altogether joyning together, to auoid the danger of fire : peraduenture also certayne store-houses, which being folitary, might

Some manayned their fires with home-growing Wood: others with clammic Turfe (as I thinke H. Assists aprly calleth it) whereof there are two kindes with vs: the one fort and spongie, growing under the superficies of the Earth; which wee call Soundar: Another more houge growing vasce ton upontance of the best of the deep charmes or kines, and therefore more weightes; which peradoenture wer may very well call digged Turfe, by the opinion of the fame I main: because it as taken out of the deep Charmes or kines, die 60 Reserve the Ingression of the Earth. And both kindes of Turfe (but this much more) must be sense of fifth baked with the Sanne and winde, before it be fit to burne. This latter kind we, as also fome Benter of Turfe-fewel in Of the Germanies call it Torff: the inventor whereof in the Orchades a certayne Orchadessan Duke is faid to become Einarus the Sonne of Rangunaldus a Norwegian Duke of Mare, in the

time of Pulericomus King of Norway, who was therefore called Torffeinarus. He had a brother railed Rolfno, whom Crantzins nameth Rollo, who possessed part of France, afterwards called Normandie of the Normans, or Normegians. The Inhabitants chiefly wanted fewell to expell the difference of cold, belides other vies fufficiently knowne : especially in the Winter time, Stoues when Hot-houses and Chimneyes are in vse, heaped together of Rocks and stone, through which the flame might eafily breake forth; which as foone as through the force of the fire they were throughly heat, and when the Hot-house began now to leave smoking, the cold parts of the Chimney were besprinkled with hote glowing stones : by which meanes heate vieth effectually to difperfe it felfe throughout the whole house, which also is very well so preferred by the wall. 10 and Roofe couered with Turfe.

Yet left the Islanders might seeme through meere pouertie or want of knowledge, to have v. fed rade buildings and poore houses; I can cal to remembrance certayne houses of an hundred and Greater house twentie fixe foot long, and fome of one hundred thirie fine, as I have before declared concerning (es in I fland, in the buildings of Ingulfus : and some of one hundred and twentie feet in length , and fixtie feet broad ; whereof we shall hereafter speake; some also, whose hollowed rafters, and boarded feeling of the walls carued by art, report the ancient Histories, of worthy and memorable Acts. They therefore inclosed their habitations built after this manner, with certayne spaces of fruitfull fields orday ned for tillage, which spaces through toylesome labour, they afterwards compaffed about with a banke cast up, to keepe out the Heards of cattle. Moreouer, sufficient huge pastures were assigned to every Farme or plot of ground, divided by certayne limits, or inclofures from others, whereof we shall speake in the eight Chapter. And every Farme or Habitation for the most part, and in like manner every plot of ground received the name from the first Founders : fometimes also from some other : so Mountaynes and Rivers as hath beene advertized before; fo that by this meanes the places themselves, even by their names only declared to all pofteritie their firft Inhabitants, and improper.

I proceede from buildings to their victuals, and tillage of the field and ground, which part- victuals and ly succeeded well to the first Inhabitants, to procure Corne and fruit from thence : but I know Husbandry. not whether every where alike. Yet in the meane space, that Hierleifus mentioned before, exercifed his flaues in tillage of the ground : and one Gunnerns of Lidarenda, fowing his Seed, was ently in vie. 20 wounded by the enemie on the ball of the cheeke : and likewife Hofebuldus Huitarnelgode bufi-

tayne places. Hence came that Law concerning the gathering together, and carrying of Corne after Harnest (where they speake of the services which the Lawyers call praduall.) All which

are manifest tokens of the tillage of the ground, amongst the first Islanders : which also,

even vnto this day, I heare, is practited by some Inhabitants of South Island, but with

leffe increase: the ground and temper of the Ayre degenerating from the first goodnesse

thereof after so many Ages : peraduenture also the care of the Husbandmen beeing leffe

diligent, may bee the cause; since Corne comming from forreigne parts began more to be in vie;

And because that tillage of the ground seemed in the beginning either not yied of all, or lesse

fently began : whereby they compafied with dunge those fields or spaces, which I said they inclosed within their owne circuit, especially with kowes dunge, at the mowing of the best hay, to the intent they may the betterfeed the Heards; and especially the Kine, that they might

yeeld the more plenty of Milke. Which tillage of the ground is yet retayned : and they only

exercise thesame for the most part, almost by mid-land Inhabitants: seeing such as dwel upon the

Sea-coast line most by fishing: whither also those more remote or mid-land people yeerely send

their Servants to fift, Both Plaines, that is to fay, the ground and the Sea, was to bee ploughed

after a fort by the Islanders, for the comforts of life. To whom besides insteed of victuals, Sheep,

40 fruitfull for Corne, and all manner of graine; a peculiar manner of tillage of the ground pre-

ly imployed in fowing the Seed, was flame. Hence from the fields there are proper names of cer-

Oxen , Swine and Kiddes , fufficiently abounded : and also fishes of divers kindes , besides 50 Sea-fish out of the Flouds , Lakes and Rivers , they met with every where: so that they Beaffy. might take them as it were out of a certayne weele, especially in that Age : also Milke Fowle. and White-meate, with goodly plentie of Butter from the Heards of cattle. Besides Fowle in great number, some tame, as Hennes and Domesticall Geese, or Fowle of another kind

liuing in the open Ayre, wandring also solitarily in Mountaynous places: which the possesfors marked in the feet, that every-one might more eafily demand his owne. They had others also not tame, which they tooke by certayne ginnes : as Geese and Duckes of the Medow, Partridges, and Swannes and very many Sea-fowle, whose names and properties I doe not know. But Fowle of either kind tame or wilde, they either presented their Egges or themselves, or both, for the vie of men. Besides the natural Drinke or pressed Whay of Milke (whereof the great plentie is fo much the better, as the Milke is more excellent : fo that halfe an Drinke, cunce of water mixed with an ounce of Whay, doth not wholly diminish the taste thereof; but Whay: that it relisheth more of the Whay then of the water) they also boyled Barley Flowre, formetimes adding thereto the Honey Combe , or Water mingled with Honey : fometimes Mead.

also a Liquour made of certayne Berries growing heere. Moreoner, the ancient Islanders, Ale.

Houles.

flomes and

manner of life.

Fewell.

brought in drinke made of Corne, from forreigne parts, as also all manner of graine, and other brought in drinks made of Come, inconsorting to pray, a mount manner of grame, and other things; for they were furnished with ships of their owne, wherewith they yearely whited at their pleasure, Denmarke, Norway, Suecia, Scotland, Saxonie, England, and Ireland,

Our ancient I flanders wanted not honelt Banquetings and meetings; and that furely without miserable sparing, whether we respect the number of the guests, or the time of the Banquets exhibited. For Theodorus and Thornaldus, brethren, and Citizens of Hialtedat of North fland, folemnizing the Funerals of their Father Histra, made a Banquet for fourteene dayes together, of twelue hundred persons, presenting the men of better note with some gift. And an getter, or twente numerea persons, presenting the ment of better note with some gitt. And an Inhabitant of West Island, furnamed Olam Pa, with his two brethren, were at the charge to banquet nine hundred men, euen for fourteene dayes fpace; not fending the chiefe men away 10

I find money was not vitall with the Islanders, I meane, those of ancient time: butfilter was weighed by the ballance: and bartering of Merchandizes was very commonly vied. Moreous, Rings of Gold, and Bracelets, were both often fent for tokens of remembrance from Superious to private men, or from one friend to another.

d. III.

Of their Politie, and Religionin old times.

Chap.6. mon-wealth Religion.

the Islanders going about to establish an Aristocratie, or State of Nobilitie (considering they dwelt scattered in the Countrey, and not together) first duided their Citie into Fourths or Tetrades, named from the foure principall quarters of the World, and diftinguished besides by setting of bounds (such also as was

the Geographical partition of the lland it felie, mentioned before at the end of the fifth Chapter) dissided into North, Eaft, South, and West quarter. And againe, they divided the Fourths into Thirds, except the North quarter: For this, as it was larger then the reft, was parted into Fourths. But these Thirds they subdivided againe into their parts: the rat, was parted into Fourties. Due there I must they audulined against into their parts: fome Tenths and others fomewhat otherwife. For the which not finding a fit name, I have retay-ned the proper name of the Country, that which with them is Hrepper, wee may counterfore. ly call Reppa: vnto the which also we may imagine no vnapt Esymon, from the word Repo. For here was the first applicate sopposia of them that executed any publike Office, for equitie either of opinion and judgement, and the equall ballancing of mindes, to be preferued in the reft of the Magistrates, worthily ought to begin there, volcife any would rather thinke they had respect heere vnto Reeb, that is to say, Coards, with the which the division was made, after the moit ancient manner of the Hebrewes themselues. Enery Reppa regularly contayned twentie Inhabitants at the least (for oftentimes it contayned more) limited by a certayne increase of the wealth of their Family, under which they might not be reckoned to the poorer Repres; to the

Seats of In-

Idols,

Per and Thers Freyr Nierdur and As. fame that We. des in our Saxon floric. Deuili) made

Moreouer in enery Third, as also in the Fourths of the North Tetrade, (which Iurisdictions 40 in times pall they called Page, at this day allo Sylus bread) they appointed three more famous places confectated to the Seat of Inflice and Indgements; before allo deducated to Ethnick Sacrifices, which they call Hoff: we call them Holy Places, and Temples. Euery Chappell atter the manner of this Countrey was sumptuously built: whereof wee reade of two, of one hundred and twentie foot long. One in the Iurisdiction of Wabdell of North Island: the other in Risdames of South Island: and this surely fixtie foot broad. Moreour, every fixth holy place had a kind of Chappell adjoyning. This place was most holy. Heere stood the Idols and Gods made with hands, vpon a low floole or a certayne Altar; about which the cattle which were to be facrificed voto them, were orderly placed. But the chiefe and middlemost of the Gods was Impier, by them called Por, from whom these Northerne Kingdomes yet call There day Therf. 50 dagb. The rest of the Gods were collateral vinto it; whose certaine number, and names I lique not heard. Yet in the ancient forme of oath (whereof mention shall be made hereafter) three besides Thoras, are specially noted by name : Freyr, Norder and As: whereof the third, to wit At, I thinke to be that famous Odinns, not accounted the fait among those Ethnicke Gods (of whom I made mention before) Synecdochically called As: because hee was the chiefe of the people of Afia, who came hither into the North : for in the fingular number they called him As, which in the plurall they called Afer, or Afer. This Odiones, as aforeleid, for his notable knowledge in Deuillish Magicke; whereby like another Mabonet, hee affected Sorcery(which a Diuinitie after his death, was reckoned among the number of the Gods: from whom at this day, Wednesday, is called Odens Dagur, the day of Odinus: whereupon peraduen-60 ture, I shall not emaptly call Odin Mercurie, as Ther Impiter. Yet the ancients honoured Odm in the place of Mars : and fuch as were flaine in the warres, they ay were facrifaced to Odin. And the companious, or Sonnes of Odin were Freyr and Novelier : who

CHAP. 23. S. 3. Ethnike rites and bumane facrifices . Deuill-circle. Christianitie. 665

through the same artes which their Father or Prince Odinus practited, obtayned an opinion of Diminitie. I have before advertised you, that chiefly in the North Country, Kings, after their death, are honoured for Gods. But the worthipping of them hath not yet come vnto the Islanders: wherefore we will speake nothing of them in this place. w meretore we will speake nothing of the in the forefaid Temples, flood an Altar credted, coursed The Altar. Before that feate of the Gods placed in the forefaid Temples, flood an Altar credted, coursed The Altar.

about with Iron, that it might not be hart with fire, which mult bee continually there. A Calarous with a ron, that a tingen move that a sign and of the factifices, with an Holywater dron also or braien veffell was fet vpon the Altar, to receive the bloud of the factifices, with an Holywater holy water sticke or sprinkle, to bedew the standers by with the bloud of the sacrifices.

My water sticke of spiritage, to below the table of copper) of twentie ounces, which being Holy Ring. Belides, on the Altar a silver Ring was kept (or of copper) of twentie ounces, which being Holy Ring. anointed with the bloud of the facrifices, they who executed any office pertayning to luftice, being now readie to take their oath, religioully handled while they were tworne. Foure-footed beatts, for the most part, were appointed for facrifices; to bee converted to the food of the Sa. Sacrifices.

beauts, for the most part, were appointed to incrinces; so open connected to the road or the 32-3 seneces, criffeers. Although in the meane base, I finde (a lamentable matter) that the bland Ethneet, or the foreign late of Raidensy tied also human facrifices: where at the doore of the Temple, was Human-inbuthe foreign late or Raidensy tied also human facrifices: where at the doore of the Temple, was Human-inbuthe foreign late of Raidensy and Human-inbuther foreign late of Raidensy and Raidensy a wery deepe Pic, wherein the humane lacrifices were drowned; which Pit was called Blottell mane facrifices

da, from the Sacrifice,
Alfo in Well Island, in the Prouince of Thornshing: in the middle of the Market place there was a round circle, into the which, men appointed to be facrificed to the Gods, were gathered : Deuill-circle who being violently smitten against an exceeding great stone set there, were cruelly slaine. The

indegnitie whereof, that those is reported to have declared many ages after, by the bloudy colour, which no shower of raine, or water, could euer wash away. An abominable crueltie surely, yet not wanting examples, derived even from the most ancient times. I omit those of later time, and found in the neare bordering Countries, as the humane factifices of the French, whereof Czcere pro Fonteio, speaketh : and also the custome of nearer bordering Countries. I doe not mention the Roman facrifices: among which, Laperca Valeria, appointed to be facrificed, was delinered from preient death by an Eagle. Let the maphrodistat , and facrificing of noble Virgins of the Greeter, not be remembted : with whom Helena was likewife freed from imminent perill of facrificing, by the benefit of an Eagle. But who is it, that can be ignorant of Benbennon or Gebennow of the Hebrawes, and their crustic farre greater then this, exercised not vpon flanes or guiltie

now of the Hebrewes, and their crueitie rare greater then this, exercited not you like so guilties perions, but even you their deared children? Concerning which matter I thought good to fee downe the wordes of Curiphos. Advisemmes Upibus. Gebruwes, lith the, was a place in the fair whis of Jerudiem over against the East, under the Manusapus of Offices, near the Fofipools of the write of Jerudiem over against the East, under the Manusapus of Offices, near the Fofipools of the Fuller, such placeform, the Tempe. In this Valley floods a Passinon, and the brasel add of Modoch, consider with the Carlot of the Carlot man, was armes processed joint a joint of the fire put under in the concavity of the Idell, burned amidit thefe curfed embracements: For when by the fire put under in the concavity of the Idell, is became all fery, then the most wicked parents, with incredible crueltie, delivered their descrip children, to mit their Somes and Dangbeers to be burned within thefe deseftable embracements. And leaft dren, to we there I ames and I anguest is we common muon note acciptance consucements. And they the military is the militar his cry of the shalten in borroble townsor the best moment being band, making the moment be best of the parents, Of this place the Fringles of Mooles filled the agree and this meant file was the bar h found of trampets, and firsting and their cree the Fringles of Mooles filled the agree and this meant file was the bar h found of trampets, and firsting and their cree up of Drummet, fo long as the facrifice contained. Whereupon also the place was named Tophet, which of the children

Sympleth a Drumone. This Adriconnus writerth. And least any might thinke, that the common confued with figuifieth a Dramano. This Additionant writtenh. And least any might thinke, that the common seminaring people onely of the fewer became thus blinde; behold King; **1.46a.a, **2.87a* | 6. 2.87a* aliay | 5. fluments and Manaffe; there in the 21. and 33. where also the ancient custome of the Nations may bee the reasonal But that crueltie, and those facrifices of Saturas feeme not to have continued long with the was called Ge-

If landers: and furely, they were vied no where elie, fame in the two places aftigued. Nor yet of beneat and Is all the Inhabitants of that Prouince, where it was exercised. For it is reported of Hurlisian, the companion of Lugalfus before mentioned, that he altogether abhorred the worthipping of idols. 50 And Helge also furnamed Books, descended from the Barons of Normay, an inhabitant of the Pro-

uince of Rislarnes fauoured the Esbaick Religion but a little : for he received an Irifo man, a banifhed Christian, into his neighbourhood; one named Ornulfus, with his families (which came with him:) and did not onely receive him, but also permitted him to build a Church confecrated to Saint Columbe, in the Village of Escuberg. A yong man also of the same Province, called Bos, destroied that most accurled Temple of humane lacrifices with fire, and burned all the Gods, although afterward it was repaired by the Proprietors.

Moreouer, Torchillus furnamed Mane (it may bee because hee honoured the Moone, called More, and the reit of the Starres , with more Religion then the reit) a man of a very vpright life, and famous among the Nebilitie of Island, a little before the agonie of death, caused him-60 felfe to bee fet forth ouer against the Surme, and openly admiring the workmanship of Heauen, and the whole World, commended his Soule departing when he was readie to die, to that God who created the Sunne, and the rest of the Starres. He lived about the yeere of Christ 970. The fame, or the like may be reported of very many others, while Ethnicifns yet continued. As of fallers a certaine inhabitant of South Island: who, because hee followed not the worthip of Hallerss a

Chap. 7.

Idols, was called Godlaus, that is to fay, as was also his sonne Helge. adols, was caused contents, that is to my, some, as was also his some energy.

The publique Offices, force of them are diffinguished from hence; others have their original Co. 2. The punisque Conces, some or chem are unemgented from name; others have their original of Magiliraces from tome other place. Those which are taken from hence, are a Ropagage (that I may dende Of Magificace from some other place. Those winch are exacution neares, are a copyagogue (that I may deather and Courts, a word) and the administration of Produces, to wit, as that partition into Reperand Produces, a word) and the automatication of a tomic 23, to was 25 that partition into represent Prounces, ended as it were in funding speeces, but both had some kinde of gouttoment joyned with it. For ended as it were in funding present, our outstrand tome almost or government toyined with it. For alwell the Reproposit (for to I may call the Masters of Repres) as the prominciall Governours, proalwell the Aspp. gog! (for 10 a may can one maniers on negres) as an prountern Courtisums pro-claimed Allemolies, effablished ludgements (enery one in their Court) and pumihed the guildie: claimed Allemolies, enablined 100 gements (euery one in their Court) and pumined the guiltie: whereby it is easilent that they also yield the Law of Appeale in forten Caules (for in their own, whereby it is ensuing that they and you are that the composition of Appeale for that I need not doubt that the Reproposit also were euen prinate men had interete of a ppeais, to that a new not uoung that the acpraging also were comprehended under the Title of a Magnifrate. Who is defined by Bodows to bee Hee, that bath 10

A Magistreet, part of a publique gonernment. Metho. bill. cap. 16. I added, saith he, the word Publique gonernment to the the word Publique, that it part of a protoque government, totatoo, out, esp. 10. 1 autout, taten ne, the word rubingue, that it might be diftinguished from the government of a Mafter, or a Father. If therefore any would might be dittinguineu from the government of a manter, or a matter, at unerctore any would define a more perfect diffinction of a Magistrate, it should be such: A Magistrate is inferior, or other a more perfect commercion of a magnitude, it mounts of fact in A magnitude is interior, or fuperior. The inferior is a Keppagorie or Governour of face men, which has inhabitants choice toperior. I ne microir is a keype gige of constituous of the micro, which not innapitants choice for gouernment of the Rapes, yield in every Repe, whom we are here compelled to call Repage. to government and improvement of the property of the second of the secon ges, and the posterior of immourable goods; validle concerning this latter, it feeme good

Care of the

Moreouer, the Office of the Represent, is limited by the care of the Poore. But that which Moreouer, the Once or the Appenger, is minical by the care of the Poore and that which the care of the Poore required, every one within the bounds of their Rope, endeuored to attain to the care of the Property one washing the country of the Property of the Proper by their two meanes. First, that they income produce, that none mound one modernly brought to extreme popertie : as much furely as confifted in mans policy. Secondly, how they might provide for fuch as were become Beggars, to be maintayned by the common aide. reunce for men as were necome neggars, to be manney near on the common and.

And furely, they attempted the first part of their office three manner of wayes: first, by ma-

And therey, they accompless the first part of their owner fault (fipeaking after the manner of men) beking Lawes against then as enfought their owner same typesaming after the matner or men joes against carse beggars : of which fort are choic, itial de exberedandis; esp. 3. Parenthus mendien natus, Came organs: www.tien not are viewe, since an remove, ap. 3. Estenioni monacci natur, & ife befination villum quesende educatus (nifi morbo effectus) beredicates undan adre &. that Coppensation vision of passesses companies (m); consist appears) concentration means cause Or. that is to key, So long as he listed from doore to doore: The 18. chapter of the lame; and the first is to 187, 30 using as no meet from a content of the service of the same; and the first three years, next from the time of begging, co. 20. Leaft any vader a feigned shew of vertue, three years, next from the time on negging, any an account any visica a lengthen linew of versus, should deceive and abuse the Lawes, Alic, Altera lex de sinsmoot mendicis impant coss madis, s. 30 should deceive and abuse the Lawes, Alw, Amera we are anymous menautes anymous capranass, e. tiams cam corondom nece consumition foret, titals, de positis, cap 23, to wit, Left living from doore tamit time erromants nece temmin son justs , num. as propuns, eap. 33. to wit, Lett ining from coore to doore, they might beget children like vito the parents, which afterwards should be a borden to the Commonwealth. Also, a third Law, De yellow mendics; non alends; titul, demendici ca. 39.63. (not repugnant to the commandement of the Apolile, Her this labourets not, it bins not 39.634 (not repugnant to the commission means of the apolition, save sour information not, see the sate, 2. Thef. 3.) and of not receiving them, so much as into their house, cap. 45. of the same: agricuous penaltie being inflicted, if any offended against this Law; in the same place.

By which Decree, what other thing I pray you is meant, then the cultome of the Astronomy by which determines the control of the particular Citizens, by what are extremely in times paff a mong whom the Artengane inquired of the particular Citizens, by what are extremely one lived; and provided to have them called in queftion, who gave themselves to filthy. and shothfull idlenesse what other thing, I say, then what was meant by the Decree of the 40. and invited where the latest the content of the latest was meaned by the latest of the life ; and lett any flouid practife either enprofitable or diffenent artes; they gaue no place to Players, counterfeit Lefters, Lughing Companions, fawcy Scoffers and Jugglers. To conclude, What other thing, then what the Decree of Selos meant, who ordayned a Law, that the chil-What Greet using, tiest what we believe or some mean, who only you a Law, that the cont-dren should owe no thanks nor fauour to their parents, by whom they had beene instructed in oren mount over no traums, un tationa, to then pateins, by whom they had been introduced in no bonels are to get their lining. The ancient World had fo great and vehement protocations no nonert arec toget then numg. A me allowed to the name to great and ventilent protocolations vinto Vertue, even without Countrimen, which in this laftage (ah, too degenerate) you may vator verue, euen warnom commentation, which in this state of the nonegenerate, you may finde wanting with griefe; all these Constitutions being taken away. Wherefore the number hade wanting with giver; at these continuous owing takin away. Wherefore the number of articles (that I may vie the word of Paul) is more abundantly increased, that is rosay, of them, who being void of all discipline, line infamous to themselues, and grieuous and trouble- 50 then, we obtain you as an analysis , the international manners; and greeness and thouses, fome to their common Country, in flothfull and fithy idleness; inserting and changing that order instituted by God himselfe. The care of which thing, if the Magistrate would yet vader-

The second meaner and way of preuenting pouertie, was a Law or Edict, concerning those who defined to be admitted into a Represor become Citizens of Repres. For none was to be receiued into a Reppe, valefic hee had first gone vato the solerane assembly of that Reppe, and defired ten into a kept, vincus need and in gone vincome mening animosy or tout kepte, and noneotiate he might be admitted; which they might not infly denie, vileffe to one considered of their, or otherwise of some other crime, or so poore, that therefore hee was write for the Empty, and of otherwise of forme of the former of the f that are count not must be preferred at this affembly, her was bound to intreat leaue of cobabitation 69 of fine inhabitants, hazing lands of their owne, and next vincolum, whom hee was about to goe vato. If any of honest same and rich in abilitie, would notwithstanding goe into the Repper without demanding lease, he retayned his labitation, but yet was excluded from the Law and primitings of the Ropes. But if any wicked and dulponet person had thrust himselfe in with-

out leave (although he had lawfully hired void and emptie land from the Lord and Owner therof) the fame was to be expelled by force : Trailes de Reppis cap. 48. To the fame purpose appersameth that Edict concerning feruants taken out of the Rep. cap. 47. of the fame.

The third Statute against pouertie was, concerning the restitution of private lose in the title recited before cap. 47. whereof an example shall be given, first in houses by chance confumed by fire ; and those of foure forts. For if a Store-houle, Kitchin, Bed-chamber, or Bed, and Chappel had been burned; the loffe received was to be valued within fourteene dayes, by five of the next neighbours, as well of the house it selfe, as of the most necessary things contained therein : as of the prouision of victuals, apparell, and houshold-stuffe daily vied onely, properly belonging to the Malter of the family, excluding other mens goods, as treasures, and other things more precious; because a man might bee a sufficient Citizen of Reppes without these. Then the halle part of the Ioffe valued by the whole Reppe, was to bee reftored within an appointed time, by Subfidies contributed in common, according to the abilitie of every Inhabitant. Another example of this liberalitie enjoyned by the Lawes, is, concerning Cattle destroyed by the Murren or Rot : for if the fourth part of any mans Cattle, or more dyed, the loffe likewife being valued within fourteene dayes after the Murren ceased, was to bee releeued by common supplies for the halfe part, as the former was. But concerning both, there was a caution added, that this benefit should not be performed the fourth time; least any thing through too much carelefnesse, and retchlesse negligence, should procure damage to himselfe, De Reppis cap. 47. 0 48.

The other part of the Office of the Reppagogi was imployed about the care of the poore, con-20 The other part of the Orince of the Array 8 certaing the maintaining of such with certaine contribution of almes as were now become beggers, either through fickneffe or age, or other casualties not in their owne power : and also concerning the excluding of others, who should not appertaine vnto the almes, and divers cases thereunto belonging. This almes was either private or publike. Private, for the which a law was Lawes of made concerning the receiving of the beggers, into the number of their family by their kindred, Almes. or coulins, one or more, inabled by a certaine increase of wealth limitted by law, and to bee maintained by certaine lawes, according to the degree of hereditarie fuccession: For as any was next to the inheritance of the begger, if hee possessed goods, so was hee accounted the first that fhould fuffaine him. But the next degree failing, or the same being poore, or not having where-30 with to maintaine himfelfe and his, besides that begger, that necessitie was imposed upon the se-

cond, or third degree of kindred,&c, to be releeved.

Publike almes was , as often as the kindred or confins of the beggar failed, they lived by the helpe and reliefe of the Reppes: every one was to bee maintained in his Repp; whereof there are prescript constitutions of lawes, to wit, what beggars should belong to what Ropp, and what not : and concerning the driving away and expelling of them by processe of law, who appertaine not thereunto. Therefore the Reppagogi partakers of a publike Office limited with thele bounds, proclaimed affemblies : Some furely both in time and place, flanding, or ordinary : others not flanding or extraordinary; that is to lay, as often as any new matter came pertaining to their charge to bee determined. Also private men might call extraordinary affemblies, to wit, they 40 who had any cause worthy of an assembly and indgement. But the figure and token of having an

affembly (after the thousand yeere, when they had now sworne to the Christian Faith, peraduenture before Impiters Hammer and battle Axe, Hamor pors) was according to the religion of that time, a woodden Croffe, which every Inhabitant carryed to his neighbour at the day, place, and occasion of the affembly proclaimed, of which signe intermitted or neglected, a certaine pemalrie was inflicted. There therefore the Repagogi, concerning the matters appertaining to their charge, confulted according to equitie and right, determined them, and punished the guiltie : There the guiltie person, if the innury were private, was cited into the Court of Iustice by him that was injured, even without publike authoritie (which also wee reade was vied by the Spartimes:) but if the injury were publike (or if the partie injured in a private offence would not cite the guiltie person, or could not) then was beceited by some of the Rappagosi. Private men also had libertie and power to fue the Reppagogi negligent in their Office . or otherwise injurious :

wherea penaltie of money fell to the Citizens of the Roppes: all which, and other things here belonging are handled, in codice legim de Reppagogijs, cap. 43. And concerning the inferiour Magiftrates, that is to fay, the Repraeogi onely, to wit, the birt frecies of the Civill Magistrate.

Nowfolloweth the superious Magistracie, which is distinguished into Governous of Probin-

ces, and Inflices. They were each of them Gouernours in every Province (which before I called Thirds, to wit, of every Tetrade) executing as well the publike Offices of the Courts of Iuflice, as of holy my fleries : or they were Interpreters of the Law, and matters of Religion : (although afterward the interpretation of the Law belonged more to the Iuftices.) As with the Romanes, 6c the Adiles also vsurped part of the Pratorian Iurisdiction. Among the ancient Hebrewes also the High Priests : also among the Romanes the High Priests were facrificers. Whereupon Horatius carm. lib. 2. Ode 23. Victima Pontificum fecures cernice singit.

Thefe Gouernours therefore, in that they had the charge of holy Mysteries, were Priests in that they had to doe with the Court of Iuffice and Iudgement, they were Iudges : we call them

Noble-men in this place, and the state of the Common-wealth governed by their overfight, an Noble-men in this place, and the frace of the Common-wearing governor by their overlight, an Arifforanie. The lame are called by our Country-men Goden, and Hoffgodar; from the Church Arilloratie. The lame are called by our Country-nier Orang, and a represent; from the Church or Temple (which is Hoff) as it were Ouer-feets of the Church, and their Office or Dignitie or Temple (which is Hoff) as it were Ouer-recision one condition, and until Onice or Dignitic was called Godord; to wit, their name being next derived from their Elbrick gods, which they calwas called Godora; to wit, their name being iteat between 1900 their account gous, which they called God : that even by the name it felfe, they (who almost represented the Name and Office of the led God: that even by the name it lette, they (who aimous represented the Name and Office of the Gods) might bee put in minde of the Vertues, Wisdome, and Iustice, &c. requifite in fuch a

iouernour.

And that they might thew themselues such, I suppose the same place was appointed to indge-And that they might mew themselves usen, I suppose the same place was appointed to sudgements of the seate of suffice, which was ordained for Sacred Mysteries; to wit, at the forelist ments of the feate of futire; which was orvained for savined mayneries, to wit, at the totelaid Temples. And also therefore, because the place of holy Mysteries, was religiously thought fitter 10 Temples. And allo therefore, because the piace or nony mynteries, was rengiously thought fitter for washes, or the taking of good counfell, whereof there is especiall vie in the Court of Inflice. for influence, or the casing or good counters, whereof one is a expectant we make court of nutice.

Moreouer, the Prounciall Gouernours had their two-fold affemblies, as the Rappages had, yette-Moreouer, the Productal Contributes had then two-total attendars, as the Kappager had; yeer-ly or ordinary meetings, and proclaimed or extraordinary, any necessitie requiring (those forly or ordinary meetings, and proclaimed for extraordinary, any incentific requiring (enote tor-mer affemblies, containing many dayes oid. Kampb. cap. 8. Torn. Log.) and that, as it is likely, mer allemblies, containing many dayes. von. Ampr. cay. o. 1070. Lorg., Janu trac, as it is likely, aftembled by some signe of holding a meeting as we have already faid of Represent: which surancomplet op some tigne or metoring a meetings we made attendy must compensate it which little ly, what it was in times path, is not well knowne; valeffe it were that, which afterwards, and by, what it was in times pair, is not with anowine; vinene is were that, which afterwards, and yet remaineth in vie; the forme of a Normegian axe of Wood, carried about after the fame manyet remaineth in vie time iorme or a verregion and or wood, carried about after the lame man-ner, among the prominciall Citizens: as we faid a little before, of the woodden croffe. This toner, among the prouncian circuens. As we and a little veloce, or the wooden crou ken of the Judiciall Court, is called Bod in our language, which fignifieth a meffage.

en of the indicinal Come, is cause Down to un ranguage, which against a meliage.

Moreouer, enery one paid fome yearely tribute or reuenue to the Temples; whereof the Guar- 20 Moreouer, energy one pass usine yeartry tribute or returning to the a timples; whereof the Cultr-dian or Ouerfeer of the Church was the Collector; for fpeaking of holy mysteries pertaining to dian or Ouerieer of the Church was the Conecon that pressure of the Things and Court the Church, I call every Noble man fo. To him also came the penaltic of the Temple, and Court the Charten, I can energy reconstitution a number of the penature of the 1 empte, and Court of furtice prophaned; who likewise ought to maintaine the Temple, or keepe it in reparations, of future propriated twito make the bugget of maintains are a completed accept it in reparations, at his owner charge. Laftly, the necessity, and specially care to amend and make good what source at his owne currge. Lattly the nectury, and specially safe to amend and make good what for the damage done who the Produce, or to forefee and preuent it being imminent, ving the helpe of damage done vnto the Fronnee, or to force and predefin to being imminent, viling the helpe of the Promincial, lay wholly ypon him: is that, for the deftroying of Theces and publique Rob-bers, you may finde some who were prodigall of their owne life. Contrarily, it is a lamentable bers, you may mose ome who were prougated each owne life. Contrarily, it is a lamentable cafe, how at this day we fee it every where come to pafe, where they make a great conficience to condemne a notorious Theefe by the Law, or any other connicted once or twice of any capitall condemne a notorious 1 neers by the Law, be any other committee other or twice or any capitals crime, much more to put him to death. These are the Gouernours of Proninces: The Nometho. 10 crine, much more to put that to death. Allow are the Color by the Color of Mice follow. The Nomephylax was the other kinde of the Superior Magistrate, somewhat later then these: of which fort, in the whole amotion: Citie of Island (for we yet described). What later then there: Or which note, in the whole amount the total or space (for we yet definite it) at one and the fame time, there was onely one: who of pronouncing or delivering the Law, 10) at one and the same time, there was onesy one; who or pronouncing or deliuering the Law, was called Leginson and Legingmons. For the Commonwealth began not fieldenly, but by little was carred Legislans and Legging manner, or one Communication organizes manning, our by utile and little to be framed: therefore the Prominciall Lawes were first, of the like meaning, though and attree to be traumed. Attractions the production between were unit, of the untermeaning, though peraduenture not every where the same, before they had them compact, and gathered into one peraduenture not every where the name, denote they had them compact, and gathered into one body; which when they attained, for the cultody and prefernation of the fame, they admitted body; which when they accumed, for the cultory and presentation or the same, they admitted trudie and wise men, whom I call Nomaphylacu; and whole Office I shall very well describe in trulis and wise men, whom I call Nomephylaces; and whose Office I shall very well describe in the works of D. Niesslaw Crassus, deckaring the Office of the Sportan Nomephylaces. The Office of the Nomephylaces (Table D. Crassis in I. scape, 6de Repolacem), was as we preceive by the 40 matter is felfe, to bean charge of the costeady and preferentiation of Leaves, for the benefit of the Committee in the first of the surface of the content of the state of the state of the content of the state of the s ten courter, compensative Inagrity active two given repermition of court, and execution of court dates, And further, we may thinks these very men were the interpreters of Lawes, if peraductives any thinks And further, we may toints these very men were the interpreters of Lewes, if perducuture any thing doubtfully set downs, or hardly understood, should come on disputation. This Crasim writests, the same demonstrance or analyse some property of the state of sufferences, the frequency of the state of ther with the reft of the Nobility, of changing, or renewing Lawes, and also inlarging them, as ther wan one retent the twomay, to coming any or the range have spand and manging them, as it were Orators and Counfellours; the conlent of the people being added. Therefore the Noa water various aim communities, tooke nothing way from the forme of an Arifferain: but were, 10 mapsylates of course function, scene menting any months course of an example of the Law, armed with publique auas men occur and octive, amountains, and presented of the saw, aimed with puonique authority for this purpole, in whole power alio] the cuffody of the Booke of the Lawes re-

attice.

But I day a proceeds no further with our Author to but Law Suites and Courts, left I be therein Dat 1 date processes no person must make an armour to con Low owner and vereit, top 1 or to reveal detained with Dermers and reduces deletes. I am a Transiter, and bomformer I base (not fo mach for astation with Demark and scanne usiness. I will a litareur, and componers came (not je much jurillan), as for the knowledge of the Actions antiquities) maded thus farre: I will not tire the Reader farther, but remus the more curious to the Author himselfe, who but added much of their Lawes, and a Jerson, our remail to more correct season to construct analysis, was one amount many of some Lawres, and a whole Books of their auncient Grands, and mother of their Kings, but been emitted. The Kings of Norway began to have dominious in fland, A. 1261. divers immunities referred which Kingdome defcentary open Margaret, by her was linked with the of Denmarke, and fo hath continued about 200.60

ENGLISH NORTHERNE NAVIGATIONS, AND DISCOVE-

RIES; RELATIONS OF GREENELAND.

GROENLAND, THE NORTH-WEST PAS-SAGE, AND OTHER ARCTIKE REGI-ONS, WITH LATER RYSSIAN OCCVRRENTS.

THE FOURTH BOOKE.

CHAP. I.

30 A Voyage fet forth by the Right Worshipfull Str THOMAS SMITH, and the rest of the Muscouie Company, to Cherry Iland: and for a further discouerie to be made towards the North-Pole, for the likelihood of a Trade or a passage that way, in the Ship called the Amitie, of burthen seuentie tuns ; in the which I IONAS POOLE was Master having fourteene men and one boy: A.D.1610.



HE first of March 1609. I wayed at Black-wall and went to Grausfend. The third day I went downe to the Noore-bead. The ninth, wee wayed and put out to Sea (bleffed bee God:) and by the fifteenth day I was in the Bay of Roffe, on the Coaft of Norway, in Latitude 65. degrees : at what time the wind came Northerly, and blew extreame fierce, with great store of Snow and Frost. The fixteenth day, wee had the like weather and winds, to that wee could not maintaine a * mayne-courfe, and * The Mainwe loft fome of our Beere. The fenenteenth day, we had Snow, favle without and all the Beak-head was fo laden with Ice, that it feemed a a Bonnet. firme lumpe, and the wind at North, which blew fo fierce

that we could not maintaine a * fore-courfe, and draue vs backe . The Foreto the altitude 63. degrees, 56. minutes. The fforme continued fo exceeding violent, that I The Forewas faine to spoone before it fortie eight houres, and the same wind and weather continued till Boans. the twentie one day, and in that time wee were driven as farre to the Southwards as Shottland. Andbeing faire by the Land, and seeing no likelihood of faire weather, I got a Fisher-man to conduct mee to a good Harbour, called Hamer found, not to much to effort whe flormy weather, Hamer found as to flop fome leakes, and so amend our rackling. I tartyed in Shottland till the twelfth of Shottland. April 1010, at which time the wind was Southerly. The former wind came to the North at midnight, with great store of Snow, which froze as fast as it fell : which wind continued 60 till the fourteenth at noone. At two of the clocke it came to the East north-east, and I frond to the Northwards, after many stormes, much cold, Snow, and extreame Frosts. I had North Care fight of the North-cape the second day of May. Then I stood towards Chery lland, the in 71 degrees winde being at West North-west. The third day at noone, the Cape bare South South-east; 20,minutes. fearenteene leagues off, we had much Snow with Frost. The fourth day, it was thicke weather May the us-

ENG-

Chery Hand.

with great flore of Snow and Frost, the winde at North-west and by North. The fift day, it with greatitore of Snow and Proft, the winde at Abeth-west and by Morth. I no net day, it was faire weather, the winde at North North-east. The fixt day, at two of the clocke in the was raire weather, the winde at youth routh-eath a nematicary, at two in the chocke in the morning, I met with fome Ice, but not very thicke, so that I held my course toward Chery Hand, morning, I met with some ice, but not very thirtae, no that a new my count toward toward the winde being at South; at five of the clocke, I faw the Ice to thicke, that I could not possibly the wines tering as South as me to the closes, a saw the described that a count not pointly get through it. Then I flood to the Welt wards with a fhort fayle, and founded, but had no ground get through it. I nen I frood to the Weit wards with a more rayle, and i dumbed, our had no ground at a hundred fathome: thicke foggie weather, at eight of the clocke it began to electe vp. and I at a numeror ratione: thicke roggie weather, at eight of the choice is began to energy and I floode into the Lee finding it feattered in fome places; and at twelve at moone, I found the Pole reduce into the ice moning it watered in name places; and at twente at noone, I found the Pole eleuated about the horizon 74 degrees 7 minutes, and founded, but had no ground at one humescuarea aboue the norizon 74- negrees 7-inimaces, and rounded, out not no ground at one nun-dred and featentie fathomes. From twelte till foure, I ran North North-west two leagues, and of May wee dred and featuentie rathomes. From twette thirtoure, a ran growth root in-west two reagues, and were in 74-de founded, and had a hundred and fixtie fathomes. Then Chery Island did beere, as I judged, North 10 North-west, about fifteene leagues off or more: from foure till eight it was calme, at eight of

North-weit, about nicetic regues on or most aroun toute the legal of was cause, at eight or the clocke the winde came Southerly, and I flood towards the Iland and found the Ice fo thicke, that the Ship had no roome to wend, and withall fisch a fogge that I could not fee one Cables length; in which time the Ship had many a knocke, but thankes be to God, no harme was done. By twelue of the clocke, the featenth day, I got out of the Ice and lay a hull till the North Sunne, at which time it began to be cleere weather: then I fet faile, and flood to the Eastwards, The eight day it was very foggie, the windeat North and by East, with Snow and Frost: I flood to the Eastwards, in hope to get the Easter end of the Ice, and so to Chery Island; and I troot to the azitwarms, in hope to get the senter that a the act, and no to way shall a same a ranne into a Channell betweene two firme bankes of Ice, and could finde no way through, but 10 Lay in the Ice till the ninth day at a South Sunne. Then I observed, and found the Ship in the

Abundance of

grees-30,mi-

* As Cobodines

altitude 74. degrees and 17. minutes, the winde being at North North-west, very faire weather, I failed in the abouefaid Ice, one while one way, and another while another, in hope to finde fome opening towards the Iland : but which way focuer I flood, I faw all the Sea couered with Ice. At a South Sunne, the tenth day, I observed both with my Astrolabe and Crossestatic, and 74. degrees 15. found the Poles height 74. degrees and 15 minutes: and the variation 12 degrees and 3 minutes. the North point Westerly: by a North Sunne I got out of the Ice into the open Sea, and to write. each courfe, way, and winde, with all other accidents, would be too tedious: but the thirteenth day of May, at midnight, I founded, being in very thicke Ice, and had a hundred thirtie eight 10 The Lyoneffee fadoms; there presently I espied the Lioneffe standing into the Ice, I kept her company till eight The Lyoneffel seasons; unrer presently a topics for Liouene standing into the acc, a acpt ner company this upper was feat to the seasons of the clocks at sight, and then I flerest as followeth, from eight aboue faid, till twelte at noone: 7 lind. The foureteenth day I failed North-well and by North twelte legges; the winde at South South-eaf, thicke foggie weather: from twelte till four at night, I failed fearn legges. North, the same winde and weather with raine. And by the fifteenth day at foure of the clocke in the morning, I had failed North twentie seauen leagues, the same winde and weather: at what time I supposed, that I was not farre from land, because I see great store of Sea-Foule about the Ship: at eight of the clocke I founded, but had no ground at a hundred and fortie fathome : very foggy weather : likewife I founded at twelue of the clocke at noone; no ground at a hundred thurte fine fathomes, where I met with Ice and great flore of Fowle, as before, winde at South, and 40

I frood through the Ice, till eight of the clocke at night, holding no course by reason of it, at which time I founded, and had mintle fine fathom greene oze, the weather being all one, and very much I ce from eight, till ten of the clocke. I fayled North, one legate and a halfe, and had fenentie fine fathoms rockie ground. From ten till twelne at midnight I sayled North one seague and a hale, and founded, and had thirtie feuen fathoms, the wind being at South, with great flore of raine and fogs, and abundance of Ice round about, but fomething broken. Then I flood off Weft and by South, and tooke in all the Sayles, except the fore-faile and maine top-faile; and at one of the clocke the fixteenth day founded, and had fortie fathomes oze: likewife I founded at two of the clocke, and had fiftie two fathomes: I could neither perceine Current nor Tide in all this time, and it did raine as fast as I have commonly feene in England: then I stood to the

East wards, and at three of the clocke sounded, and had fortie fathomes ozer and thus I failed among the Ice East and East and by South and East North-east, keeping no certaine course, by and then I faw the Land within two leagues and lefte ofme, bearing betweene the South and by East, and the North-west: then I stood in East and by South, supposing to have found a harborough within a ledge of rocks that lay off a low point, which seemed like an Iland, and standing in, I found depths, 10.9.8.7.6.7.4.2nd three fathomes, standing in it a shoald bay, and full

wards noone it elected up, and I did looke the Meridian altitude of the Sunne, which was 34. degrees and 20. minutes, the declination being 21, degrees and 10. minutes North, the Equator

Then I fleered a way North-welf and by Welf , and had fix , feuen, eight, and ten fathome foule ground; this part of this Land is foole ground a great way off, therefore come no neerer for this place then ten fathome, and that will carry you cleere of all dangers that I could fee. To-

must bee 13, degrees and 10, minutes about and beneath my Horizon. The Complement being 76. degrees and 50, minutes, the Poles height. Likewife I found by true observation the Comp.ff. to vary 15. degrees, and before I had fayled foure leagues I faw a Sound that lay Eaft and minutes Pole p.ff. to vary 15. degrees, and before I mad tayled today to the Fig. 1 fent the Skiffe on land in the height. mouth of the Sound, because I supposed I had seene Morses on the land, but they proued Rocks, de I followed into the taid Bay with the thip, but standing in I had a shifte gale of winde off the The North fhoa.e. which draue abundance of Ice out of the Sound, through the which I enforced the ship, in point we derly, moa e, which draue adminiance of the out of turning in I found thefe depths, thirtie fine, thirtie, Rockestwentie, and eighteene fathoms. The Boat came aboard about a North-west Sunne, and the men told me they tound deepe water within and foule ground; they faw great flore of Mohorfes of 10 lying on the Ice, but none on land, and they brought a piece of a Deeres horne aboord, therefore Hornfound.

I called this Sound Horne Sound , and a Mount that lyeth foure leagues to the South of it, the Mulcons Muscomy Companies Mount, because it was my first landfale. Then finding no benefit here to bee had, nor Hauen for the ship, I stood to Sea, and sayled For these pla-North-weit and by North foure leagues: at midnight it blew very hard, and I flood to the West- ces see Capain wards with a short sayle, and sayled foure leagues West by eight of the clock the seuenteenth Edger Mag. day. Then I flood to the Landwards, the winde being at South South-west thick weather : and three leagues from me I faw a Point, which I named the Ice Point, because there lay abundance Ice. point.

of Ice vpon it. Then I faw another Point beare North North-west fine leagues off, which I named Bell Point , because of a Hill formed like a Bell on the top , and to the Northwards of Bell Bell point. 30 Point goes in a great Bay with two Sounds in it, the one lieth in East South-east, the other Northeaft and by Eaft; the laft Sound you can hardly discerne, by reason there is a long Hand lying in the mouth of it. But the going into the faid Sound is on the North fide, yet there is an Inlet

under Point-partition, but very narrow and full of Rocks, and an exceeding strong Tyde setteth Point partiin there. This day I found the weather very warme and farre temperater then I have found it tion. at the Coper at this time of the years it his place lying in 77, degrees and 32, minutes, and The ayre com-the Coper in 71, degrees and 30, minutes; this place being to the Northwards of the Cape 6.de. Pratter grees and 5. minutes : and note, two leagues to the Southwards of Bell Point is a ledge of Rocks three miles off the shoare, and come no neerer the shoare then fifteene fathom : woon the North

fide of the Bay is low land, which I named Lowneffe Hand. I called the North Sound Lowe Sound. Lowneffe He. 3C Into the Bay I turned, the winde at East North-east faire weather; turning in I had no lesse Lowsound, then force fathoms close by the shoare, and in the middeft no ground at fixtie fathoms, and being neere the Point that parteth both the Sounds , the winde increased with raine. Then I faw the Sound frozen over from tide to fide, and ypon the Ice a Brare and great flore of Mohorfes, but The Sounds the winde blew fo extreme hard, that the Boat could not row to windwards, to trie if we could feafon. kill some of them. The fogs and raine continued till ten of the clock the nineteenth day, at Verythicke which time the raine ceased, and it did freeze with snow and winde and fogs, as before.

From twelve at mid-night the nineteenth day, till foure in the morning the twentieth day, I fayled three leagues South-west and by South, then I found the Ice thicker then before. It was

very thick fogs, with winde, froft, and fnow, and cold, that I thinke they did firite here which garrenne cold of them should have the superioritie. I put into the scafford aid in hope to get through, and af-weather. ter many a fore stroke with the ship in it, I got through at a South-west Sunne, at what time it began to befaire weather. Then I flood through the Ice towards the land againe, in hope that that land would proue worth the labour and trauell; and going to fet the mayne top fayle, it was frozen as hard as euer I faw any cloath in all my life time, so that all my company could ve- Sailes frozen. ry hardly let it; and whereas I supposed, and have often said, that this climate is not so subject to foggs in May and Iune, as it is in Iuly and August, it is contrarie; for I have not seene the Sunne on the Meridian thefe fine dayes, nor feene it at all in fixtie houres: I had not failed three leagues North-east, when it was as thicke as it was before with Frost and Snow: yet I stood shill

50 towards the Land. The twentie one, I faw the Land at an Eaft Sunne, and flood towards it, and at a South and by West Westerly, Loblerued the Sunne, and found the Meridian altitude of it 33.degrees 30.minutes, the declination being 21. degrees 76. minutes, &c. the altitude of the Pole was 78. degrees 26.minutes. The winde at North North-east : cold frostie weather : This place I called the Black point lie : I called a point (that lyeth foure leagues to the North-west of Black point) Cape- Black point ste cold, and to the South-east of Black point is a great found, which because it was courted with Ice, Cape-cold, I called lee-found, and standing necrer to the shore, I could not see any Sound or Harbour open; Ice-sound. therefore I determined to fland to the Northwards to feeke what good might be done that way to profit the Merchants, and also to get some Wood, for we had but little left. I sounded at the

6c Black-point, and had twentie three fathomes streamy ground. At two of the clocke I stood off, and at midnight stood to the shore againe, cold weather with frost, the winde at North and by East. The two and twentieth day, at an East Sunne, I was faire by the Land, betweene Casecold and Black-point, a league off where it fell calme, and I founded there, and had tweneie eight fachoms, where I tried for Fish, but could take none.

No fift.

lare paffage.

The three and twentieth day, at an East North-east Sunne, I was within three leagues The three and executions usy, at an east porther and uses, two within three legues of Capeald; this day it was faire weather, and I tooke the Sunnes height at twelue of the of capeers : unsury it was take measure, and a conserve states in gire at twelle of the clocke, and found it to be 32 degrees 30 minutes, the declination being 22 degrees 13 minutes. ctocke, and round it to be 31, orgices 30, minutes, the defination being 12, orgices 13 minutes, the diffance of the Pole from my Zeneth, was 11, degrees 17, minutes, the comnutes, the contained of the Four from my activen, was 11, degrees 17, minutes, the com-Fair-weather, plement thereof being 78, degrees and 43, minutes, the Poles altitude. All this day it was plement energy using 70 users and 45 humans, the rose actions. All this payer was calme all the forenone, warms funfilms weather, and whereas I named this place Copected, if calme at the foremone, warme fundame weather, and whereas a named the prace apeced, it I had false with it this day, or the like, I should have guen it another name. Here I tried to take filh, but could perceive none. Item, there is a point that beareth from Cope-cold North & by Weft ninguet come prrecine name, stem, over 15 a point one occasion from corp-son account of my west which I called Faire-forland: this Forland, and Cape-sold, and Black-point, are all one Iland. At fixe of the clocke at right, the winde came to the North North-west, then I determined to IO have of the circuse at ingus, one winner came to one arouted sported-weil, onen a determined to be view the lee-found better; but comming neere it, I perceived it packs ful of Ice, fo that I could fee view the recrusion deterious comming over any personal apparatus requires a condition on oead chereof at the Top-maft-head, neither could I fee any open water in it. At a North Sun,

no end inferent at the 1 op-mate near, mentior come 1 tee any open water in it. As a Northwards, as before, the wind came to the Northwards, as before. he wind came to the North-east, and by North, then a though to the North-east, as before.

The four and twentieth day, at a North-east Sunne, the wind came to the South-well, faire The total and twentierings, and across real summers with came of the South-well, rang weather and warme. At a North north-eaft Sun, I tooke the Meridian Altitude, which was eleweature and warms. At a troom and the tall out, tooke the matter and attenue, which was etc. uen degrees about the Horizon, and by working accordingly, I found the eleuation of the Pole nen degrees adduct the frontedly, allowy working accordingly, a round effection of the Fole about the Horizon, to be 78 degrees, 37 minutes. The five and twentieth day, at an East-fouth. east Sun, I fet the boat to the land, neere Faper-forland, and it being calme I sounded fortie flie fathoms, where I proued for fifth, but could find none, and within one league of the floare I had the same that th by the tea has 2000rd nated with vector, and some vertices into a ne men tone mee there was great is good fire. Here of Morfes in the Sea, about the shoare side, and about thirtie on Land. Immediately 1 fent Figor, may note of months in the sea, month the month more and about thirtie on man, immediately 1 feet of Dirfis woods, my Mate, Nubolas Woodcorf, with the Boat on Land againe, to fee if they could kill any of the but none for the state of the s rate atometres, and and external wines of the language in under the point and take were vinfrozen, they being nenciati, moreculer i was certuined, the antitle runos and takes were vintuoen; they being Fresh-water, which putteth mee in hope of a milde Summer here, after so sharpe a beginning as I haue had, and my opinion is fuch (and I affure my felfe it is fo) that a paffage may bee affooneatrauned this way, by the Pole, as any vinknowne way whatfocuer, by reason the Sundoth give a taying this way, by the a measury vinctowing way reliable the property of the common give a great heat in this climate; and the Ice, I means that that freezeth here, is nothing so huge as I

The fixe and twentieth day, at a North-east Sunne, the Boat came aboord againe, having slaine but two Morfes, at twelue at midnight the wind came to the North, and blew fo bard, that I was enforced to try with a Mayne-courfe, cold frofty weather, with snow. The sayd wind and weather continued till a South Sun, the feuen and twentieth day, a teight of the clocke at night, the wind came to the North-west and by West faire weather, then I stood towards the Land again, And at a South-eaft fun, the eight & twentiethday, I was within three leagues of Fager forgam, and standing in Hounded divers times, and had these depths 15, 17, 19, and 18, fathoms, dana, and transmig in a tounded uncers times, and that there depairs, 15, 17, 19, and 18, ratioms, within fine, fixe, and feven myles of the floare, and when Fager-forland did beare South and by East by the Compasse. It being two miles from me, I saw the Land beare North-east and by North, about nine leagues off, the which because it was full of knottie Mountaines, I called Knot. 40 tie-point, and betweene Knottie-point, and Fager-forland, I faw a great Bay, which because it was foggy on the fudden, I could not discover. In the Sea, about the Forland, I saw great store of Mohorses and Sea-fowle, I founded in the Bay and had nintic fue fathomes rockie ground. I flood to Sea, and had very foule weather, with fnow, and fogs, and frost, which weather continued till Thiny day of the thirtieth day, at four of the clocke in the morning, at which time I was within one mile of Fayer-forland in nine fathomes, and then I fayled East North-east about two miles, and had these dephs, 18.17.16.14. and 12. sathomes all rockes. Then I steered South with the like depths and grounds, but when I had runne South South-east three miles further, I had sandie ground, then did Feser-forland beare West and by North, about three leagues of the next cast I had tenne factories foule ground, and from thence I fleered two leagues South and by Kaft, having thefe Jo depths, 10.9. 8, and 7. fathomes, then I faw the Bay courred ouer with Ice. I turned out the wind at North, This Sound I named Fowle-found, for in this Bay are three Sounds; this I fpake wind at North. It is sound a name of rows-found, for its time may are times sounds; this I space last of, which lyeth in South, and goeth out at Black-point: another lyeth in East South-east, which I named Deve-found: another goeth in North, which is called Confe-cous, and being neere the point betweene Fowle-found and Detre-found, it fell calme, and I fent the Skiffe on Land, and flanding after, with a little wind at West, I found the fayd Point very shoale, with a ridge of Rockes, where I had thele depths, 4.5.6.7.9.10.18. and then 30. fathomes. At a South Sun, the Boat came aboord and brought Wood, and fome Whale-fins.

The last of May, at an East North-east Sun, I was within three leagues of Knetty point at which time I faw Ice all the Sea ouer betwixt the West and the Land: then I faw another Point foure leagues distant from Knotty :point, the one bearing of the other North and by East, and South and by West, and it is smooth Land, the which I named the Garnerds-nofe, indifferent warme weather : and finding the Ice to bee fo thicke that I could not paffe it, and the wind comming to the West, I stood to the Southwards againe, determining to search the Sounds better for a Road, and

for commodities, because I saw no good to bee gotten in keeping the Sea amongst the Ice, and at for commonties, occasie I law no glood to be gowner I had no ground at one hundred & twenty Notes fathomes, and yet I was within two Cables length of a funken ledge of Rockes, that lyeth on the Larboord fide of the Bay a mile from the shoare.

The first of Iune I found a good Road in Clofe-case, on the South-west fide, where I rid in Iune. feuen fathomes fand mingled with oze, at an East Sun I fent a Skiffe to a low Point, that I yeth on the North fide of the Bay, where they found some Whales fins , and three pieces of Mohorse teeth, and spon a little rockie Hand, they faw neere one hundred Mohorses, which were there fleeping. In this time I went towards the bottome of the Sound, and flue a white Beare. At a A Beare flainte South-woft Sun, I went towards the rocke, to fee if I could kill any of the Morfes that lay there, and as wee went by the shoare side Pespied Deere, three of them I slue, and one of my company one. But when I came to the rocke , the Ice that the beafts lay on was hollow, and the rocks that was bet wixt the Ice and the fea flood floping toward the Sea; the which when I faw, I determined to go aboord and let them alone, yet afterward I went on the rocke betwint the Ice

and the Sea : and as I with the reft of my company were killing them, the Ice brake, and Ice and bealts fird into the Sea together, and carryed one of the men with them, fo that he escaped out of that danger very hardly; for besides the weight of dead Mohorses, and Ice that bruised him, the beafts that were aline frook at him in the water, and brussed him very soare. I had beene in the fame cafe, if I had not beene the nimbler, and flipt on one fide. I killed three Morfes, whole teeth I cooke off. Then I espied the Beare, which my Mate had hurt before with a shot ; hee went into the Sea, when hee faw the Boate, where I flue him with a Lance, and brought A Beare flaines

him aboord.

The fecond day at a North and by Eaft Sunne, At a South Sunne, I went to the South shoare of Deere found, where I found a good quantitie of Fins, and came aboord, at a North North-west Sonne. The third day; being Sundays, I rid full, having the wind at West South-West much wind. Then you che tide of a Hill, a mile to the Westwards of the Road, I set up a Crosse, with A crosse for you wind, now your scenes was cause a more to not verticate on the story a territory particle from the particle of a writing young it graphing the day of my arrivall first in this Land, by when I was fet tristeness on; and the time of my being here. This Road Tealled Coffermal. At a South-east func A good Road the fourth day, I wayed the winder West South-west, and when I was almost out, the wind inoreafed with fogs, which made me purback into the Road, where I anchored the fame day at fix of the clocke, at attentione. The firth day, at a North east and by East finne I wayed, and it fell cilme, then I went to the East fide, and killed tome Fowle, which I found in great abundance: There is great and when I was readie to go aboord, I faw tourceene Deere, at which time I fpent all my powder, fore of Fowler

Land and Horewo Decretione. And at a South west fan I went on Eard and five a Dos and cook A buck flains, the Fatine, aline, and brought it about 1 bet it dyell the next day. The salme continued till the fixth day, at an East North-east funne (and we droug in the Bay, with a little foaking tyde that runneth there.) Then I fear the skiffe to the rocke aforefald, to fee what flore of Mohories were there; at three of the clicke they came about and told mee there was neere two hundred beafts. Three Derre 40 I tooke both the boat and skiffe, with all my company, and went to the rock, and in going flaine.

chitche P filte & Beare bur beiben Lame to the rocke, the books, began in gooing to to the fas, then I A sweet ake the prefently went on land? with all my company; and the eightic beafts, whole teeth I Bearet finner tooke, and in going shooted the mother party and the country of the same than tooke, and in going shooted the mother Beare, and came about the femants day, and a young the same than to the same than the sam eaft fin. Then I faw two white fifties; which at the first fight I fispposed to be Beares, they had three sides from I from the Sturgeoin, two flat First close by their glas, its bodies andl towards their tailes,

The centh day, I went on hoare and fine fine Doere; without which, and them that I fine Deere, before I lade leige thened our my wichtals, bleffel be the Creator of the World, "which hath not "fa. 45 to made any part thereof H walte, but fol that in these parts twisted bath learned ymposible 59 and 3 "A our Ancestors to bee transfer voto, by reason of the extreme leads which they supposed to bee to shord a 50 hefe) T'ffrid the ayre temperate in the Lands, and nothing the coldras I have tound at Chery Hand in flite fenerall Voyages. Moreouer, fir this Land Phane feenergreat store of Deere, which hand neither both nor tree to fielees them from the impring cold of Winter, nor yet any extraordinane pallore to refresh ellem. In these (Isby) having mothing but the Rockes for a house, and the Starry Canopie for a courting doe has here who they not man artisch bath all the lifts of God bette with short his for mis health and forcour find the lift of God bette with short find the lift of God bette with house from the short was been a short with the short with the short was the short with the short with the short was the short with the short was the short with the short was t

the Rockewhere's welfine our bearing; neare the same or a postern transport of the same of the Rockewhere's welfine our bearing; Bult when they salve to the Rockey; in beganner to blew hard at North North with! I than "Red welful one proceed any further," in beganner to be found at the salve of the salv

remus a spirre, and me may, and came another an armost a summer and the spirit an

and thot but one that; with the which I thie a fat Buck. The lame day, at a South fun, I went on in this Land.

Croffe-road.

mir ures.

Fine Deere

Faier-Hauen.

The fourteenth day, at a South-east Sonne I wayed, the wind at South-west foggie weather. at a Sonth-well Sunne, I went on Land and flew a Buck. The fifteenth day, at East Sunne, I son out of the Bay, at which time I faw abundance of Ice to the Sea-wards, but the wind came to out of the Bay, at which time a reverse the Ice and the Boare. At a North-west Sunne, Lene 10 the skiffe (with feven men in it) to the Land vinder Knettie-point, at which time the wind came to the North-east, and I stood to the North-wardes, where I had these depths, fifteene, Great flore of thirteene, and eleuen fathomes foule-ground. Thek depths were about a league, and to the Northwards of Knottie-point, I faw greatflore of Whales, the like Lfaw in Darre-found. The fixteenth day, the Skiffe came aboord, and brought a few Finnes, and fine Deere, and they told mee that within the Bay, that lyeth betwixt Knotie-point and Gurnerde-nose in a Hauen, in the entrance whereof is an Iland, and feuen fathomes going in, but within eight, nine, fifteene. and twentie fathomes good ground. This maketh Gunnerds-nofe, an Iland, for this Hauen goeth out on the North-weit fide of Gurnerds-nofe, I named this Hauen, the Farre-basen: I Abundance of found a great tyde heere, which runneth South South-west, the floud commeth from the 20

Then standing to the Northwards, I saw the Sea couered with Ice, which lay close to the Land which made me fland to the Southwards again, t observed at Gurner di-note, and found 74.degrees to. the Poles height 79. degrees, 50. minutes, At a North-west Sun, the fant day, I lent the skiffe the Poles height 79. oegrees, 90. minutes, 61. a 200 interpole, 2009, 2009, 2009, 2009 in the sequence of Land to fearth the Coalt to the Southwards of Kaute, 2004, where I founded and had tweenly foure fathomes Foole-ground, and in the Fayre-way I founded, having that depths, 30, 35, 45 The f r.befr and 48. fathomes all Rocky ground. By the fenenteenth day, I was in the entrance of Clouds places in the Voyage at a South Sun, at which time the Skiffe earne abourd, and brought a Beares skin, and a Buck, and ing the Voyage
This vaccous a good quantite of Whales Fins and an Vinicones horne, which was fine footand down indice
horne is the long, and in the biggeft part of it, it was felten inches and a halfe about. The eight term he day, at a 30 Herzeefs hill South Sun, I came into the Road, where I tid all that day, having very much wind and mine that wee could doe nothing. At a North Spine, I sent my Mate, with the Skiffe, and fixe men after in Baffe to feeke for more Fins, Sec. The ninteenth day, at a North Sun, they came abourd, haping flame ten Beares, three of their skins and far they brought abourd, and a good quantitie of Fins, and far paire of teeth. The twentieth day, to the morning, I fent both the Boat and Skiffe to flav the other feven Beares, the wind being at North faire weather. But they were no fooner gone, but it blew very hard at North, which brought abundance of Ice out of the bottome of the Sound, but did the Ship no hure. Aca West South West Sunne, the Boats came abourd with the Beares skins, the wind about faid fet fo much lee out of the found vpon the Ship, that it infarred men fet fayle.

The one and twentieth day, at a North Sim. I flood sowards Fayor for lond, and left out the

skiffe. The two and twentieth day , at a South-self fannt, they same abourd, with the skiffe laden with Fins, and killed fine Decre. Then I went on Land so fearth wine I could find, and I flew a Beare, and tooks a young one stime; and at three of the clocks in the afternoone I came aboord with the skiffe laden with Fine The three & twentieth day at a South east funthe Boat came abourd, and brought a good quantitie of Finnes, and a Beares skinne. Then I flood toward Cape cold, and the fame day, at a South finne, I fent the skiffe on Land to the Northwards of the Cape, where they found hatteepe Mohorfes on a rocke, which they fige ; and at a A Beare fisme North-east fun, the foure and course the day, they had brought all the teeth and blubbes of them Takeheed of aboord; at which time the wind came to the North-west, and blew vesic hard : then I stood tiwardes the lor-famil to feele what commodities it would yeel. At a North finge a was neere Black point, which hath a great many funken Rockes lying on the fouthermost end of it, therefore you must come no necres that shoure then twent is fine fathomes. The fire and twenttieth day, till a South funcie was palme, and the tyde drove the fain fofatre from the Land. that I could not fend the boat on thouse.

The fixe and twentieth day, at a South South-weft Soune, I came abourd, more laden with truch then commodities, at which time I fine a Buck. Then I fined toward les found, and at a Point which partech stants found and les found, but thirtie fathours one, & fo to ten belones. Rocket, then Fiftered Esthalong the shoare, and had between there and sifteene fathones Access, then recerve assuming use money, an assument and a North North world fairnessention to rand fairnessent and a North world for a North fairnessention as a North-week lung as a North fairnessential for commencings, a lot fourn and twentieth day of fune, at an East North-east fun, they came phoned and being fir a good parcell of fins. At fix of the clock I fent the Skitte to the Land agains, and fer layis with the furp. but it being calme, and the tide fetting the Ship towards a ledge of rocks, made mee to inches a

C H AP. I. Beares and Deere flaine. Young Beares taken. Sea-coale found.

gaine. At a South South-east Sun, they came abourd againe, and brought a good quantitie of fins ara South Sunne I feat the Skille towardes the mouth of Ice-found, and in the entrance thereof I found a Coue in the which was twentie fathomes, and fo to thirteene, but by reason of the tyde. and edy-winds, I could not get into it; here the Skiffe came aboord and brought a few finnes. Then I fleered to another Sound, in the Southfide of lee found, where I anchored in twentie iathomes oze, the same day at a North Sun. The eight and twentieth day I flayed at the place astoones one contained as a control of the stoone of the st ing at West. The nine and twentieth day, at a Sooth east Sunne, I fent the skiffe to fearth the

Coaff to Wile Westwards of this Bay, the wind at Novel west. The last of lune, the skiffe ABacket 10 rams shoold; ata South-east Sunne; and brought a few Finnes, and a Bucke, the wind

nund bit litt'e Lee, ti . i fent toet Skile to introll in The first of luly being Straday. I rid at the place aboutlaid, in hope to have more Mo. July the first. on Land 31 bblerued hoere ind fourdithip place in 78. degrees, 24 mitutes, and the va. 78 degrees, 24. riation Weltwards, letongene degrees. Then I fent the skifte to fee it any more beafts were 14. W. mi Land, The wind at Northwest, faire weather. The fecond day, at a North Northeaft Sunne; they came aboott and brought two IDeere. The third, wee flew a few Morfes, Two Deere whose teeth and blubber wee brought abourd, at a North well Sunne, at which time I flew a Greene harbent Pricket: this place I named the Green-basen, Immediately I fent the skiffe to take the reeth, one Deere and fat of from beafts, which lay thane in another office. The wind at Weft, thicke foggie weat flaine, so there. It floweth here on the Change day South, and by Weft, and hyeth fixe foot water, and runs

neth halfe tyde halfe quarter. The fourth day, wee rid full at the South-west with fogges and raine, and very much windsat the fame time I faw great flore of ice in les found. The fifth day at les. a North-call Sunne I wayed; the wind at Welt thicke weather; and in familing out wee flew a A Beareflaine. the Beare, and tooke herewo young ones Indifferent faire weather, we lay becalmed all this day. 100 ones The fixth day, I was off Lamelle (at a South Sunne) the wind being at East blew fo taken, thard, with raine and stricks weather , shad I was emforced to take in all the fayles fine a Mayn e-course, which storme continued till eight at night, at which time I let more sayle, and stood to the Southwarder, choping of get four goods that ways. The fenenth day, at moone the

30 wind came to the North-east, and then re began to bee bleete weather, at what time I saw the Land of Bel found, which i purposed to goe; yet edolpt not by retion of abundance of Ice, which lay about three leagues from the Land, which I could not possibly passe. At a North-west and by Well fun, I faw abundance of Icealt along the Land, to the Southwards of Bet found. The Ice. eight day; at twelve at moone; I shool into the Lee's hope so get to the shoare, the wind at North and by Wash hatie weather, Home found thating East North chi, nine leagues of, I frood to the landwards till foure of the clocke at which time I found the lee to thack that I was forced to fland to the Southwards to eschewit, I sayled by, and among the Lice, till a North North-weft Sunne, at which time I was within three leagues of the floare. Then I founded, and had thirtie fixe fathomes. Then I stood to the Wellwards, and finding all this part

To of the Land fullof Ice, I purposed to stand to the Northwards agains to search for commodities that way : the wind being at North-well, Towned to windwards, till the tenth day, at eight of the clicke before hoone, at which eine well bind a part of a dead Whale, which Adead Whale Exalled to bee made faft to the Ship, determining to get into I ome Harbour, there to make the best of it. I could get more Rel-found, at which time I have all the bottom of the Sound full of Ice, fo that there was no refuge for the Ship, Then I was faine to turne out with the winde at Wolfing and beganne to blow werie hard. At a North-west Sonne, it was favre weather, and I fent my Mare with the skiffe to fearch the Coafts towardes Bel point. The fourteenth day, at a North-east Sunne, the skiffe came abourd, and brought three Beares, which they had flaine. Immediately I fent the Boat for water and wood and then I Three Beares frood through the Ice, and got through it by a North Sun the fifteenth day, the wind at North-

west foggie weather. Then I turned to wind wards, to double Lowneste, and got cleere of it : at fixe of the chokeat night thicke toggie weather.

. The fixteenthiday, at fire of the clocke in the afternoone, I got to Black point, the wind comming to the South, thickeweather. Then I fent the skiffe to range the Coatt, and to fearch what they might find. The feventeenth day, at ten of the clocke they came abourd, and brought Three Decree fome Fine, and three Deere. Then I flood towards Croffe-road, and ankered there at a North-lim, Bilac. the wind and weather as about faid. The eighteenth day, about fue of the clocke in the morning, I fent the skiffe to fee at they could find any Morles on Land, on the Rocke, or in Deergfound, and in the meane time, I, with the rest of the company got drift-wood and water readie, A Beare with

se and about a South funne, a Brare with two young ones; the Dam I flew, and tooke the young ones taken ones abourd the thip, the wind Northerly, cold, foggie weather. The nine and twenrieth day, in Five Deere the morning, I went to the Eastfide, to the if any Mohorfes were on land; there I slew foure ex- slains ceeding fat Buckes and a Doe. In which time the skiffe came abourd and brought two Beares Two Beares skins, but found no beafts, and Dere-feared they found Sea-coales, which burnt very well.

Three Bucks

CHAP.2.

two Beauers.

The twentieth day, I fent the Skiffe into the bottome of Claffe come to fearth it for cammodities, the wind at South close weather with raine: at eight of the clock at night they came abourd. ties, the wind at SOUTH Close weather with rame, at right on the choose at highe they came about, but found nothing; immediately I got wood and water about, which was ready before, preparing to fee fayle the windiand weather aboutfaid, we flue there Deere. The one and owender, I wayed, the wind at North faire weather. The two and twentieth day, the wind came to the West, and then I stood to the Northward, at eight of the clocke half-weather. As swelter of the clocke at noone the wind came to the North and I flood to the Southwards by For forted The three and twentieth day, at an East north-east Same, the Boss brought same Whales finnes, and three Buckes, and one Doe: In which time I thought I had fewer Land bears Waft from po and three outker, and one row, in which there is a superior a superior and the control of the large is a superior and the control of the cont South, then I perceived it to be fogs. The foure and smentieth day, at four of the slocks in the afternoone I came into Bel-found and found but little Ice, then I fent the Skiffe to fecke for a arctinous retains into pre-pinou and round but interact, then a rent time same to section of Road for the Ship and also for commodities. The fine and swentieth day, at three of the electe in the morning, the Skiffe came abourd, haning beene in the mouth of the North Islae, which I call Low found, they went into it by Point-partition, but there is no good Channell that way for a Ship : neuertheleffe there feemeth to bee an Indetor Channell, but it is full of Rockes from fide

to fide, and the men told-mee, that you the Landley fome Mohorfes, which I ferit them to bill At eight of the clocke, the Skiffe came aboord, and brought the teeth of the layd beafts, and fome blubber. Immediately I fent them into Bel-found, to lecke for a Road for the Ship, the wind at West thicke foggie weather. About an North West Sunne, Lanchored in Bel-fewed, in fixten 20 A Beare flaine. fathomer ozie ground, this Harbour lyeth about two leagues about Pointe positives on the South A tat Bucke. fide of it, and here a flip may ride fafe from all windes. As a North Sonne, my Mare flue a Bear. were two and three inches

The fix and twentieth day in the morning, is blew hard, and I went on Land and the a Beare, I have not written of the and a Bucke which had cheer inches and an halfe in whickness of facous the haundhes. At this waternouse francisco of the clocke I feat both the Boats to feech the fat of those Mohories which invertibate the day before, and likewife to fearch if they could find any more the second at Morth with fogs. As fix of the clocke at night the Boats came about with the far, and brought two Buckes, but found ab the stocket at might the mount same across written and, and antiognous arrowants by the column in beatts on Land. Some across a stock of the batter of the party of the party of the party of the party of the stock of the same I wrighed the winds being at thicke of far. North and by West faire weather, and I sterred age. (betwitt an Hand and the point where I so Northand by Wett hare weather, and I necreature, therewire an mand and the point where I will South, week and by Weth, having these depths; 10-7; 6:5;, and 4; fathomes a then I was in the midded between the fail point, that a floud-only she hay South and North, one of the other and after keeping the some course, I had these depths; i.s., i.s., i.s., not z, and z; fathomes; and these depths I had fased, and after note. At fixe of the clocks, the windcame to the South wish these depths I had fand, and after note. At fixe of the clocks, the windcame to the South wish the te copens a narrang, and at the comments and at twelve, the right and twentieth day Law-with fogges, and I turned to the winds wards and at twelve, the right and twentieth day Law-sufficient North-east about four pleagues off, where I founded himse shiftle two fathomes fiream is ground with blacke flones, as which time it was calme; and continued to till the sine

and twentieth day at fixe of the closike in the morning, then the wand came to the North with

fogges, and I flood to the Southwards, and to fee what Commodities Locald find that way. regges, and 1 1000 to the somewhate, a more to be write to ommonther recent that the way.

Assume of the clocke I was netweethe (def-fense), where I mer with such lee, which put mer 40 from the Land, and I was enforced to fineer-Sputh-week 4000 you'll not formout; the windows

North-west which blew hard with forges. The retind-increased, I decod cowards Cherok Band (if possible I could attayne is) for forger and los. The thirtieffiday; it four of the clocks in the positions a source scarge and non-communications are consistent of the feet which I had part, the morning I flaw no leep sharing kept approximation of the present of the feet which I had part, the winde at North and by West, cold foggie weather with nine. From the time shooks fail rill twells of the clocke at stooks [Syred South ead], and name affected keapens, the fame wind and weather, at which time I founded it had eightie fathering greene occi like Kowets dongs. I founded as two of the clocke, and at fours of the clock, the first, eightie eight, the forend, eight tie two fathomes, and fayled fixe logues, the former course wind and weather. At which time I heard a breach which proued kee, then I fleered West to eschew it, the fogges being so thicke 30 that I could not fee one Cables length. The laft of July at noone, I had layled South and by Eaft halfe a point Southerly sight lognes

having little wind, and founded, and found one hundred and force farbomes thicks toggie weather, and in haling up the Lead, a fish followed it to the top of the water 1 thin 1 toyed to take fish but could not. At foure of the clocke in the afternoone, the winde came Southerly, and i

flood to the Westward, by reason the Ice lay both to the South and East of vs. at a Month Sunne it was cleare weather, and I faw the Ice round about vs, cold weather with fireft. The first of August, we beat in the Ice till moone; but shald finde no end thereof ; because it was to toggie, and the Loe packed very closes yet after many intricate courses, I got to the Westwards of it at mkl-night the same day, the windeat South-east, cold weather with raine and 60 fogges. And after I had seene so much kee that I could not come neere Cherry lland, to prosecute the reit of any voyage. I determined to fland for Englands. God would give melizare. From mid-night the first day, till eight of the clocke the second day before noone; I siyeld South-well and by South flue leagues, the wind at East South-east, thicke forger with raine. From the se-

cond day at eight of the clocke, till the third day at twelve of the clock at noone. I fayled West South-west fitteene leagues, the wind at South and by East, wet foggie weather. From noone about faid, till twelue at noone the fourth day, I fayled foure leagues South, the winde variable. and the most part of that time calme, and so continued till eight of the clocke at night at which time the wind came to the South and by East, and blew very hard; from the fourth day at noon till the fift day at noone I fayled South-west Westerly seuen leagues. The fixt day, the winde was at South-east cleere weather , at noone I found the shippe in 73. degrees , the North Cape bearing by my computation, East South-east Easterly. The seuench day at noone, I found the ship in 72. degrees 22. minutes, indifferent faire weather. And from the seuenth day at To noone, till the eight day at noone I fayled foure and twentie leagues, the course South South-

west, the wind at South-east and by East, at which time it beganne to be very foggie, and the winde came to the South, but immediatly it was calme, and continued fo till mid-night. Then the wind came to the North, little wind, and at a South Sunne the ninth day, I had fayled South feuen leagues. From the ninth day at noone till the tenth day at that time I fayled South , and ranne feuen leagues South, it being calme most part of the day, with much rayne and fogges.
From twelte the tenth day, nil noone the eleventh day, I sayled South and by West, and ranne fenenteene leagues, the wind Northerly. And from the eleventh day at noone, till the twelfth, 20 at that time, Hayled South and by West eighteene leagues, the winde at North North-west faire weather. From noone the twelfth day , vntill twelue at noone the thirteenth day, I (ayled South and by West fortie eight leagues, the wind betweene the North, and the West

North-west gustie weather. From the thirteenth at noone, till the fourteenth at noone. I savled South and by West fortie fine leagues, the wind betwixt the West North-west, and the West South-west gustie weather, latitude 64. degrees 21. minutes. From the sourteenth day at noone, till the fifteenth day at that time, I sayled South and by West nine and twentie leagues, at which time I observed and found the ship in 62. degrees 53. minutes faire weather, the wind at North, At foure of the clocke the same day, I faw Skut fueffe in Normay feuenteene leagues off, 15. minutes. and bearing South-east, from whence I hold it superfluous to write it, being a place well knowne. The last of August I arrived at London, Blessed be God for ever and ever. Amen.

A briefe note what Beafts, Fowlespend Fiftes were feene

BEafts: Buckes, and Does, white Beares and Forrer, of colour dunne and grey.

Fowles: white Partridges, a small land Bard, like a Sparrow, partly white, and partly browne, a Fowle with a combe and a tayle like a Cock, a redde Fowle of the bigneffe of a Pidbrowne, a Fowle with a Comer and a tayer nac a youn, a weeker rowre or the originate of a rich ageon; a white Fowle with a greene bill, the top of the bill of it and the eyes were rade, with The Columbia black feet. Wild Greefe, Coluidines, Galls, Sea-mewes, Willockes, Noddies, Ice-birds, Reeks, as Mailard. dine is as big and Sea-pidgeons. Fishes : great store of Whales, Gramposes, Mohorses, the white fish I spake of the seventh necrot of the

40 of Inne. a small fish like Cuplen, likewife I faw the bones of Cods, or Haddocks; but could colour, and take no fish: I often looked for Shel-fish, but could take none: divers of my company did fee the female browne.

CHAP. IL.

A Commission for I on As Poor E our Servant, appointed Master of a small Barke called the Elizabeth, of fiftie tunnes burthen, for Discouerie to the Northward of Greenland, giuen

the last day of March 1610.

Na much as it bath pleased Almightie God, through the industry of your selfe and others, to disconer unto our Nation a Land tying in eightie degrees toward the North-Poole entri-pole : We are desirous not only to disconer farther to the Northward along the said tayned by a Land, to find whether the same be an Iland or a Mayne, and which way the same certaine fitdoth trend, either to the Eastward or to the Westward of the Pole, as also whether the pend He was

Same be inhabited by any people, or whether there be an open Sea farther Northward then bath beene al- heard, milerareadie disconcred. For accomplishing of all which our desires, we have made choice of you, and to that bly and baiely end have entertayned you into our fernice for certayne yeares upon a fipend certayne : not doubting , but murthered beyou will securit your selfe in the businesse, for which you were so entertayned, as God may be glorified, twint Retasse our Country benefited, your selfe credited, and we in our desires satisfied. And for your better instruc-Ain to proceed in this your Voyage, we have thought good to fet downe our opinions what course wee from this thinke fit to be observed in the same: which is, That for ssauch as by your owne report of the great Voyage.

The three and twentieth day, at an East North-east Sunne, I was within three leagues of Corpeold: this day it was faire weather, and I tookethe Sunnes height at twelve of the clocke, and found it to be 32. degrees 30. minutes, the declination being 22. degrees 13 minates, the diffance of the Pole from my Zeneth, was 11, degrees 17, minutes, the com-Fair-weather plement thereof being 78. degrees and 43. minutes, the Poles alriede. All this day it was prement thereof neing 70. orgress and 45 minutes and Fine Fues actions. An time day it was colone a leie totennone, warme funfilme weather, and whereas I named this place Cape-celd, if I had I he with it this day, or the like, I should have given it another name. Here I tried to take fifth, but could perceive none, Item, there is a point that beareth from Cape-cold North & by West

which I called Faire-forland: this Forland, and Cape-cold, and Black-point, are all one Hand. At fixe of the checke at night, the winde came to the North North-weft, then I determined to 10 the or the loss found better; but comming neere it, I perceived it packt ful of Ice, fo that I could fee view the ice-sound petterpout comming neere it; percented it packetin of act, to that I could be no end thereof at the Tep-math-head, neither could I fee any open water in it. At a North Sun, the wind came to the North-east, and by North, then I flood to the Northwards, as before.

The four and twentieth day, at a North-east Sunnettle wind came to the South-west, faire weather and warme. At a North north-east Sun, I tooke the Meridian Alcitude, which was eleuen degrees aboue the Horizon, and by working accordingly, I found the eleuation of the Pole al one the Horizon, to be 78. degrees, 37. minutes. The fine and twentieth day, at an Eaft-fourtheast sun, I fet the boat to the land, neere Fayer-forland, and it being calme I founded fortie fine fathoms, where I proved for fish, but could find none, and within one league of the sheare I had

In this land five and thirtie, and thirtie fathome fireamy ground. At a South-east Soune, the Boat Came 20 In this had for an armore, and time to move account grown and form whales fins. The men told mee there was great by one a not such that is in the Sea, about the shoare side, and about thirtie on Land. Immediately I seat to good thee, there of Months in the Sea, about the shoare side, and about thirtie on Land. Immediately I seat o Duffiwe 24, my Mate, Nicolas Woodcock with the Boat on Land againe, to fee if they could kill any of the but n and count here. fate Moherles, and also to fearch what other thing they should hap to find that might proue benencoll. Moreouer I was certified, that all the Ponds and Lakes were vnfrozen, they being Fresh-water, which putteth mee in hope of a milde Summer here, after so sharpe a beginning as I haue had, and my opinion is such (and I assure my selfe it is so) that a passage may bee associated

Reprofa Po- tayned this way, by the Pole, as any viknowne way whatfoeuer, by reason the Sun doth give a great heat in this climate; and the Ice, I meane that that freezeth here, is nothing so huge as I

The fixe and twentieth day, at a North-east Sunne, the Boat came aboord againe, having slaine lut two Morfes, at twelue at midnight the wind came to the North, and blew fo hard, that I was enforced to try with a Mayne-course, cold frosty weather, with show. The sayd wind and weather continued till a South Sun, the feuen and twentieth day, at eight of the clocke at night, the wind came to the North-west and by West faire weather, then I stood towards the Land again. And at a South-east fun, the eight & twentieth day, I was within three leagues of Fajer-forland, and tranding in I founded divers times, and had thefe depths, 15. 17. 19. and 18. fathoms, within five, fixe, and feuen myles of the shoare, and when Fayer-forland did beare South and by East by the Compasse. It being two miles from me, I saw the Land beare North-east and by North, about nive leagues off, the which because it was full of knottie Mountaines, I called Knot. 40 tie-point, and betweene Knottie-point, and Fayer-forland, I law a great Bay, which because it was foggy on the fielden, I could not discouer. In the Sea, about the Forland, I faw great store of Mohorses and Sea-fowle, I founded in the Bay and had nintie fine fathomes rockie ground. I flood to Sea, and had very foule weather, with snow, and fogs, and frost, which weather continued till

Thirty day of the thirtieth day, at foure of the clocke in the morning, at which time I was within one mile of Fayer-forland in nine fathomes, and then I fayled East North-east about two miles, and had thefe dephs, 18.17.16.14. and 12. fathomes all rockes. Then I steered South with the like depths and grounds, but when I had runne South South-east three miles further, I had sandie ground, then did Fayer-forland beare Weit and by North, about three leagues of, the next caft I had tenne fathomes foule ground, and from thence I steered two leagues South and by East, having these 50 depths, 10.9. 8. and 7. fathomes, then I faw the Bay coursed our with Ice. I turned out the wind at North, This Sound I named Fowle-found, for in this Bay are three Sounds; this I spake lait of, which lyeth in South, and goeth out at Black point : another lyeth in East South-east, which I named Deere-found: another goeth in North, which is called Coffe-cone, and being neere the point betweene Fowle-found and Deere-found, it fell calme, and I fent the Skitte on Land, and ffanding after, with a little wind at West, I found the sayd Point very shoale, with a ridge of Rockes, where I had thele depths, 4.5.6.7.9.10.18, and then 30. fathomes. At a South Son, the

Boat came abourd and brought Wood, and some Whale-fins, The last of May, at an East North-east Sun, I was within three leagues of Knotty point, at which time I faw Ice all the Sea ouer betwixt the West and the Land : then I faw another Point foure 69 leagues distant from Knotty-point, the one bearing of the other North and by East, and South and

by West, and it is smooth Land, the which I named the Gurnerds no fe, indifferent warms weather : and finding the Ice to bee fo thicke that I could not passe it, and the wind comming to the Well, I flood to the Southwards againe, determining to fearth the Sounds better for a Road, and for commodities, because I saw no good to bee gotten in keeping the Sea amongst the Ice, and at a North Sun, I was in the entrance of Clofe-come, where I had no ground at one hundred & twenty North fathomes, and yet I was within two Cables length of a funken ledge of Rockes, that I veth on the Larboard (kle of the Baya mile from the shoare. The first of Iune I found a good Road in Clofe-come, on the South-west fide, where I rid in Iune,

feuen fathomes fand mingled with oze, at an East Sun I fent a Skiffe to a low Point, that Iveth on the North fide of the Bay, where they found some Whales fins, and three pieces of Mohorse teeth, and woon a little rockie Iland, they faw neere one hundred Mohorfes, which were there fleeping. In this time I went towards the bottome of the Sound , and flue a white Beare. At a ABeare flainte South-weft Sun, I went towards the rocke, to fee if I could kill any of the Morfes that lay there, and as wee went by the shoare side I espied Deere, three of them I slue, and one of my company one. But when I came to the rocke the Ice that the beafts lay on was hollow, and the

rocks that was betwirt the Ice and the fea flood floping toward the Seasthe which when I faw, I determined to go aboutd and let them alone, yet afterward I went on the rocke betwirt the Ice and the Sea : and as I with the reft of my company were killing them, the Ice brake, and Ice and beaits fird Into the Sea together, and carryed one of the men with them, fo that he escaped out of that danger very hardly; for befides the weight of dead Mohorfes, and Ice that bruiled him, the 20 beafts that were aliue strook at him in the water, and brussed him very foare. I had beene in the fame cafe, if I had not beene the numbler, and flipt on one fide. I killed three Morles, whole teeth His name was I tooke off. Then I espied the Beare, which my Mate had hurt before with a shot ; hee

went into the Sea, when hee faw the Boate, where I flue him with a Lance, and brought ABeare flaines

The second day at a North and by East Sunne. At a South Sunne, I went to the South shoare of Deere-found, where I found a good quantitie of Fins, and came abourd, at a North North-west Sunne. The third day; being Sunday; i rid full, having the wind at West South-West much wind. Then you she side of a Hill, a mile to the Westwards of the Road, I set up a Crosse, with A crosses to the Road. a writing ponit, lignifying the day of my arrivall first in this Land, by whom I was fet Coffe mad

out, and the time of my being heere. This Road Italied (roffe-road. At a South-east funne for all minds the fourth day, I wayed the windat West South-west, and when I was almost out the wind in-30 created with fogs, which made me purback into the Road, where I anchored the fame day at fix of the clocke, at afternone. The fifth day, at a North east and by Haft funne I wayed, and it fell calme, then I went to the East fide, and killed some Fowle, which I found in great abundance: There is great and when I was readie to go aboord, I faw fourteene Deere, at which time I fpent all my powder, flore of Fowle and thot but one that, with the which I flie a fat Buck. The lame day, at a South fun, I went on in this L Land and flor two Deere more. And at a South-welt fun I went on Land and flue a Dog and took A Buck flainer

the Faune aline, and brought it abourd, but it dyed the next day. The calme continued till the fixth day, at an East North-east funne failed we drone in the Bay, with a little foaking tyde that runneth there.) Then I fenr the skiffe to the rocke aforefaid, to fee what store of Mohorles were there; at three of the clocke they came abourd, and told mee there was neere ewo hundred beafts. Three Decre 40 I tooke both the boat and skifft, with all my company, and went to the rock, and in going thinker fifter a Better bor when I came to the both, the boath, began to goe into the far, then I prefently went on land, with all my company, and the eightic beath, whole teeth I Better than tooks, and moving above the mothed Better, and came above!! the fateenth day, pra North. Modafile.

eaft feb. Then I faw ewo white fiftes, which at the first fight I fopposed to be Beares, they had White fiftes. long fronts like Sturgeons, two flat Fins close by their gils, list bod and small towards their tailes,

The tenth day, I went on floare and flue flue Deere ; with the schich, and there that I flue Fine Deere, before I liante lengthened out my victuals, bleffed be the Ceater of the World, " which hath not " 1fa. 450 190 made any part thereof iti vaine, but fo that in these parts (which hash feemed vnposible so our Ancestors to bee tratielled voto, by reason of the extreme looks which they supposed to bee

50 here) I find the agreetemperate in the Lands, and nothing tho coldras I have tound at Chery Hand in flue fenerall Voyages. Moreouer, in this Land I have feene breat store of Deere, which have neither buff nor tree to shelter them from the mpping cold of Winter, nor yet amy extraordinane paftire to refresh them. If thefe (Ifay) hauma norhing but the Rockes for a house, and the Starry Canopie for a covering doe line here who may not man which hath all the gifts of God bellowed voon him for his health and fuccourse ::

The elettenth day if file morning T fent the skill oto a Beach ; sharlyeth Northwards from the Rocke where we fine our beafts, bite when they same to the Rocke, is beganne to blow hard at North North welt, that they could not proceed any further, wonthe Rocke they 60 found a Beare, and Bue him, and came aboord. In which time I tooke the beats and went

to the Eall'fide, and flue two Beares and two Deere. the marthus, and line two Beares and two Deere.

The twelfth day, at a North-east luide I wayed; and having very little wind, I lent the Two Beares. skiffe to goe to the place about syd, at a North funne, they came about and brought fume and two Deere Whales Finnes and a Beare, and told thee that it did blow very much wind at Sea, yet I had flaince

Deer - Cond.

in 79 de gres 15

it all this time calme in the Bay. Yet before I could get out of the Sound, the wind came to the North-west, and blew very hard, which made mee to put roome for Cross-road, where I rid till the fourteenth day, in which time I caused both the boates to bee trimmed, and the Compaffe vary thirteenth day at noone, I observed on Land, in this place, and found the Poles height 79.degrees, 18.degrees 16. fifteene minutes, and the variation of the Companie 18. degrees, 16. minutes North-weil : the fame day I flue a Bucke.

The fourteenth day, at a South-east Sunne I wayed, the wind at South-west foggie weather. at a South-west Sunne, I went on Land and slew a Buck. The fifteenth day, at East Sunne, I got out of the Bay, at which time I faw abundance of Ice to the Sea-wards, but the wind came to the South-east, and I fayled betwirt the Ice and the shoare. At a North-west Sunge, I fent to the skiffe (with feven men in it) to the Land under Knattie-point, at which time the wind. came to the North-east, and I stood to the North-wardes, where I had these depths, fifteene. Great flore of thirteene, and eleuen fathomes foule-ground. These depths were about a league, and to the Northwards of Knottie-point , I faw great store of Whales, the like Leaw in Deere-found. The fixteenth day, the Skiffe came aboord, and brought a few Finnes, and fine Deere, and they told mee that within the Bay, that lyeth betwixt Knottie-point and Gurnerde-nofe is a Hauen. in

Fine Deere

the entrance whereof is an Iland, and feuen fathomes going in, but within eight, nine, fifteene, and twentie fathomes good ground. This maketh Gurnerdi-nofe, an Iland, for this Haven 20eth out on the North-weit fide of Gurnerds-nofe, I named this Hauen, the Farre-hauen : I Yaur-Haurn. South South-west, the floud commeth from the 29

Then standing to the Northwards, I saw the Sea couered with Ice, which lay close to the Land which made me fland to the Southwards again, tobserved at Gurnerds-nofe, and found 74.degrees 50. the Poles height 79. degrees, 50. minutes. At a North-west Sun, the fame day, I fent the skiffe on Land to fearch the Coast to the Southwards of Knotis-point, where I founded and had twenty foure fathomes Poule-ground, and in the Fayre-way I sounded, having these depths, 30, 35, 45 Latitude of and 48, fathomes all Rocky ground. By the fetienteenth day, I was in the entrance of Clafe-cone The f r heft place of my be-ing this Voyage at a South Sun, at which time the Skiffe earne aboord, and brought a Beares skin, and a Buck, and ing this Voyage a good quantite of Whales Fins and an Vnicornes horne, which was fine footand sour inches ann y mann agus agus agus ann an the biggeft part of it, it was feuen inches and a halfe about. The eighteenth day, at a 30 Horne of a fin South Sun, I came into the Road, where I rid all that day, having very much wind and raine that wee could doe nothing. At a North Sunne, I fent my Mate, with the Skiffe, and fixe men after in Baffins to feeke for more Fins, Sec. The ninteenth day, at a North Sun, they came aboord, haping flaine ten Beares, three of their skins and fat they brought aboord, and a good quantitie of Fins, and fix Ten Beares paire of teeth. The twentieth day, in the morning, I fent both the Boat and Skiffe to flav the other feuen Beares, the wind being at North faire weather. But they were no fooner gone, but it blew very hard at North, which brought abundance of Ice out of the bottome of the Sound. but did the Ship no hurt. At a West South West Sunne the Boats came aboord with the Beares skins, the wind about faid fet fo much Ice out of the found vpon the Ship, that it inforced men

o let layle.

The one and twentieth day, at a North Sun. I flood sowardes Faser for land, and lent out the

skiffe. The two and twentieth day , at a South-east funnt, they same aboord, with the skiffe

laden with Fins, and killed fine Deere. Then I went on Land to fearth what I could find, and

I flew a Beare, and tooke a young one share; and at three of the clocke in the afternoone I came

abourd with the skiffe lades with Fine The three & twentieth day at a South-eaft fine the Boat

came aboord, and brought a good quantitie of Finnes, and a Beares skinne. Then I flood toward Cape-cold, and the fame day, at a South funne, I fent the skiffe on Land to the North-

wards of the Cape, where they found fixteene Moliorfes on a rocke, which they flue ; and at a

towardes the lee-found to feele what commodities it would yeeld. At a North funge a was 10

neere Black point, which hath a great many funken Rockes lying on the fouthermost end of

it, therefore you must come no neerer that shoure then twentie fine fathomes. The fine and twen-

tieth day, till a South fungie was palme, and the tyde droue the faip fo farre from the Land,

to fet fayle.

disconary.

flaine.

A Beare flaine North-east fun, the foure and twentieth day, they had brought all the teeth and blubber of them

Take beede of aboord; at which time the wind came to the North-west, and blew verie hard : then I sood

that I could not fend the boat on shoare, The fixe and twentieth days, at a South South-west Sunne, I came abourd, more laden with travell then commodities, at which time I flue a Buck. Then I flood toward Ice found, and at a Point which parteth Fould Sound and Ice found, I had thirtie fathomes oze, & fo to ten fathomes Rockes, then Thered Estualong the shoare, and had betwint thirtie and histeene fathomes oze and fand. Hi fifteen farhomes I anchosed haung the wind at North North-well fairs weather at a North-well fun, at a North fun, I fent the skiffe to the shoare to fearch for commodities, The feuen and twentieth day of Tune, at an East North-east fun, they came abourd, and brought a good parcell of fins. At fix of the clook I fent the Skiffe to the Land againe, and fer fayle with the thip; but it being calme, and the side fetting the Ship towards a ledge of rocks, made mee to anchor a-

gaine. At a South South-east Sun, they came abourd againe, and brought a good quantitie of fins ara South Sunne I fent the Skille towardes the mouth of lee-found, and in the entrance thereof I found a Coucin the which was twentie fathomes, and fo to thirteene, but by reason of the tyde. and edy-winds, I could not get into it; here the Skiffe came abourd and brought a few finnes. Then I fleered to another Sound, in the Southfide of les found, where I anchored in twentie tashomes oze, the same day are North Sun. The eight and twentieth day I flayed at the place abourfaid, and tried the Bestes greafe to bring it into oyle, and when we were all bushed, a Beare came (winstring outer the Bay, towards the Bip, which I shew, and split my Peece, the wind be. A Beareslaine, ing at West. The mine and twentieth day, and South east Sunne, I fent the skiffe to fearch the One south Weftwarde of this Bay, the wind at North weft. The laft of lune, the skiffe ABucke.

The first of fully , being Standay, I rid as the place aboutfaid, in hope to have more Mo. Iuly the first. ni Land, 44 bhlerued hecke insofeourdithis place in 78. degrees, 24. mitutes, and the va-riation Welthanis, letongeme degrees. Then I fent the skiffe to fee it any more beafts were riation vertical. The wind as Durthwest, Faire weather. The fecond day, at a North Morth-on Land. The wind as Durthwest, Faire weather. The fecond day, at a North Morth-daf Sume! they came aboott and brought swo Deere Thethird, wee flew a few Morfes, flaine. whole teeth and blubber wee brought aboord, Atra Northawell Sunne, at which time I flew a Green-harbard Pricket: this place I named the Green-harbarn, Immediately I fent the skiffe to take the teeth, one Detre and far of from beafts, which lay flaine in another place. The wind at Weft, thicke foggie wea- flaine.

20 ther. I false type halfe quarter. The fourth day, wee no fall at the Southwest with fogges and noth halfe type halfe quarter. The fourth day, wee no fall at the Southwest with fogges and raine, and very much windest the fame time! law grost flore office in hee found. The fifth day at lee. a North-caft Sunne I wayed; the wind at West thicke weather; and mitanding out wee slew a ABearessine,

The Bears, and tooks herews young odes Indifferent fairs weather, we lay be almost all this day. Two of Louisife (at a South Sunnt) the wind being at Eath blew fo taken. hard, with raine aild shielig weather , shae I was enforced to take in all the fayles fane a Mayne courfe, which flores continued till eight at night, as which time I tem most fayle, and flood to the Southwarder, hoping so get foint goods this sway: "The found that, at moon the flow of the time flow of the flow of the time flow of the fl

wino came to the value of the horizontal to goe; yet edulation by reason of abundance of Ice, which is about three leagues from the Land, which is about three leagues from the Land, which is doubt not politisly page. Are North-well and by West fun, I saw abundance of Levall alder the Land to the Southwards of Bel found. The Lee. and by Westing, and administration of the state of the st forced to fland to the Southwards to eichewit. I fayled by, and amongst the Ice, till a North North-west Sunne, at which time I was within three leagues of the shoare. Then I founded, and had thirtie fixe fathomes. Then! flood to the Wellwards, and finding all this part 40 of the Land fullof Ice, I purposed to stand to the Northwards agains to search for commodi-

ties that way : the wind being at North-well, Towned to windwards, till the tenth day, at eight of the clicke before noone, at which time well found a part of a dead Whale, which Adead Whale. I cauled to bee made faft to the Ship, determining to get fire Come Harbour, there to make the best of it. I could get into Bel-found, at which time I saw all the bottom of the Sound full of Ice, so that there was no refuge for the Ship. Then I was faine to turne out with the winde at Work, and begame to blow werie hard. At a North-west Sonne, it was favre weather, and I fent my Mate with the skiffe to fearch the Coasts towards Bel wint. The fourteenth day, at a North-east Sunne, the skiffe came abourd, and brought three Beares, which they had flaine. Immediately I fent the Boat for water and wood and then I Three Beares flood through the Ice, and got through it by a North Sun the fifteenth day, the wind at Northwest foggie weather. Then I turned to wind wards, to double Lownesse, and got cleere of it : at fixe of the chockeat night thicke foggie weather.

The fixteenthiday, at fine of the clocke in the afternoone, I got to Black point, the wind comming to the South, thicke-weather. Then I fent the skiffe to range the Coatt, and to fearch what they might find. The feuenteenth day, at ten of the clocke they came abourd, and brought Three Decree fome Fine, and three Deere. Then I frood towards Croffe-road, and ankered there at a North-fun, Bline. the wind and weather as about faid. The eighteenth day, about fine of the clocke in the morning. I fent the skiffe to fee if they could find any Mortes on Land , on the Rocke, or in Deerening, lienters and the trime, I, with the relt of the company got drift-wood and water readie. A Bete with found, and in the meane time, I, with the relt of the company got drift-wood and water readie, a bear with two young ones; the Dam I flew, and tooke the young ones taken,

ones abourd the fhip, the wind Northerly, cold, foggie weather. The nine and twentieth day, in Fine Deere the morning, I went to the Eastide, to fee if any Mohorfes were on land; there I flew foure ex- flaine. ceeding fat Buckes and a Doe. In which time the skiffe came aboord and brought two Beares Two Beares skins, but found no beafts, and in Deere-found they found Sea-coales, which burnt very well.

709

store of Whales in these Seas, wee are at an extraordinary charge this yeare, of setting out a stip and men for that purpose, which sop is called the Marie Margaret of London, in burthen one hundred and fiftie turnes or thereabout : Our meaning is, that you doe keepe company with the said ship, and not to leane her, till God lend you to the places, where she may make her Voyage: which by your report should be at a rlace named by you the last yeare 1610. Whale Bay,

And God sending you to the said place, we would have you to flay there the killing of a Whale, or two And God jending you to the Jacqueen, we would come you to pay lower to see though you are use, or two
of there for you better experience beardjer to expedite the buffering fit frough extremilies of the Let you
food to put from your Discourses. And in the means time while you are faring about thing of the
Wholes, you may couse from of your popules to be facilities the Could with this Studies for the finners,
Marfest teeth, Ambergree fo, or any other commodities, that may be found upon that Coulf. And basing 10 thus flaged a convenient time with the faid great ship for the purpose abone specified, wee would have you then to proceed on your Discourse for the saissing of our expeliations formerly mentioned, which is a Further disco. discours further to the North Pole as farre as possibly you can and how the Land attendis discours for the North Pole as farre as possibly you can and how the Land attendis discourse for the North Pole as farre as possibly you can and how the Land attendis discourse for the North Pole as farre as possibly you can and how the Land attendis discourse for the North Pole as farre as possibly you can and how the Land attendis discourse for the North Pole as farre as possibly you can and how the Land attendis discourse for the North Pole as farre as possibly you can and how the Land attendis discourse for the North Pole as farre as possibly you can and how the Land attendis discourse for the North Pole as farre as possibly you can and how the Land attendis discourse for the North Pole as farre as possibly you can and how the Land attendis discourse for the North Pole as farre as possibly you can and how the Land attendis discourse for the North Pole as farre as possibly you can and how the Land attendis discourse for the North Pole as farre as possibly you can also be a farre as possibly you can also be a farre as possible to the North Pole as farre as po trend, and whether there be any inhabitants in the faid Land, and whether there be an open Sea to the Northward beyond the said land. And in this your coasting the land, we doubt not but you will endeaser with home Seleps to gather up all the Whale firmes you can finde, and to kill the Morfes which you can come by on land, and to referve the teeth and blubber to the most advantage that may bee, the better to beare out the great charge which you know we are at in the fe Discoueries. And to that end we have lan

den in you eleven Tunnes of emptie caske. And having front so much time in this your Disconcrie, and in athering up of such commodities as 20 that Coast will affoord, and as the scason of the yeere will permit you, then we would have you returne for England, and in your way homeward to touch at the place where you left the Mary Margaret, to fee if Thee be not gone; and finding her there, and that the time of the yeers will permit, wee would have you melt your Blubber into Oile before your comming from thence, to aword the great trouble and inconnemell your plumeter me untergenze your commany, from tozenze, i a move un experient vousse and intermen-nience; pout kour be full into the difference 1610. by bringing the same Inther in Blubber. But if the said ship shill chance to be full sistence and a to be gone before; your comming student, yet we would beare you say there, or at Cheric Iland some small time to melt your Blubber; to which end we have appointed Thomas Edge, Thomas Edge our fermant in that hop to least a Copper and fact neceffaries as hall ferme your turne, for See [4], 13 ca. the performing of that businessly, believe him; and have delivered him the wife admertifement at that

place of their proceedings in the verage, and of their intent, what course they purpose to take, together 30 with their opinions, what cour (e they would have you take. In these matters of Discourries and uncertaine Voyages, the varietie of occurrences and Sea dangers is such, as we cannot drettly prescribe a course certaine to be beld: yet we held it fitting to fet downe Our opinions of the needfull: which are, that at your first dispursure out of England you keeps comfell together, and agree upon your places of meetings, if by tempatt of weather you chance to bee feparated; fill flaping your course dwells for Chery Iland, where we would have you flay. And if as your comming thither, you finde the same cheere of Ice, and that there be Merfes on theare, then wee would have you to worke upon them, as time and opportunitie will permit, alway having respect to your intended voyage. And baning diff arched your bufineffe in that place, wee would have you depart in company together The Whale Bay, as afarefaid, and to follow our infirmthens formerly fet demne to be done in that place, 40

And basing performed what may be done in the parts boyand Cherie Island, and fo returning bache agone for England, we bolds if you made, your Rendez you square at the faid Chris Hond, and there is find the state of the would have them frend the time in searching for the Lead Ora, or any other Minerall matter that may be like to be of worth upon the faid Land. And thus having stayed at Cheric Iland till the last of Angust the one for the other, and not meeting together, the flup fo staying having made her Popage, wes would have ber to returne directly for England, and to lease a Note in writing of the day of her departure. This is our opinion. Notwithstanding, if upon better grounds you shall among your selues sinde a convenienter course to be beld for the good of the Voyage, and the benefit of vs the Adventurers, wee leane it to your selves to agree upon, as time and opportunitie shall serve.

And for the anoyding of an Obsection beretosore used. That the want of sufficient withals hath

beene the cause of the overthrow of the Voyages by speedier returns home, then otherwise they would; wee have thought fit to let downe the quantitie of victuals delivered aboord your ship in this our Commission, to the intent to cleere our selues and our Agent of that imputation, and to lay the blame on your selmes, if by default the same be enil husbanded. The particulars are these. Beefe , 22.0 3, quarters , 1811, Bisquit 20.0 Beere 14. Tunnes. Fish, 200. of Huberdin, and halfe an hundred Lings. Cheese 300.0 weight. Butter three Firkins. Oyle three Gallons, Peafe ten Buftels. One-meale fine Buftels. Candels . fixe dosen. Aquavita , thirtie Gallons. Vinegar one rundlet of swentie Gallons. This proportion of victuals will last you seuen or eight moneths with good hubandry, together with the b lpes of Fish, Fowle, and Beatts that are to be had in abundance upon those Coasts. So that we hope 60 Jon shall bene no canse to the contrary, but obsersuily to goe forward in your businesse, whereby not onely the small Barke you goe in, but the great Ship may come home fully laden with one commodute or other, which we donot not but by your diligence and good endenours you may attayne vnto.

But if you healt chance by extremitie of les, or otherwise to be put backe from your discourse, or from
assuming commondates upon the coast of Greenland, whereby to lade both loops; then we would have you
flog at Cherie Hand, or other Hands threabout, so long time as possibly you can, and as the season of the peers will permit you, to finish the rest of your voyage. And if there bee sufficient lading betweene you both to lade the big ger hip, were would have ber to bee diffratched from thence with all freede . and route flay there as long as you may consumently for the good of the Voyage : which the more beneficiall it proueth, the more it will be for your credit, and we will not be unthankefull at your returne.

We would have you at enery place of meeting with the Mary Margaret, to deliner to Thomas Elee We would have you at every place of meeting with the Mary Margaret, to deliver to Thomas Ever or formant a particular Note of what goods you have taken into your life. And a your half lading here to we mould have you make a controll imagine of the whole Caryafon of goods laden in your lety, and baning figured the fame, to feeler to y, and dwrite the fame to our Agent refidence in London. And if you doe senance to market with the Mary Margarett as or fler your high two of lading, we would have you deliver a Copy of the faul muryee to our ferumer Thomas Edge for our better faits fattion, what cafaultes fower might happen by the war, and at any hand to have such an innoyce ever readic sealed, and for mortalises fake put up in fome fare place of enftodie.

We bold it fu , that you Iones Poole Should be as grand Pilot in this voyage to the Northward. And therefore we would have you to accompany the great /hip, and to bring her to the places of filling for the Whale; or to any other place, which you out of your experience shall thinke fit to bring her for the good of the Voyage and benefit of the Aduenturers. And our will is , That Steven Bennet Mafter of the 20 faid great hip together with the reft of the company in that ship , doe follow the faid Ionas Po. les dire-

dions, as they will answer she contrare upon their perils at their commune bonne.

And for that baretofore the Company have beene abused by level and bad people, who have imbessed part of that which by our great charges and adventures hash beene obtayned: Our monde and will is. That you longs Poole doe make fearch in your owne forp, that none of our Whale finnes, Morfes teeth, Oyle, or any other commodities gathered at our charge, he imbefiled or carried away by any of the Mariners, who will look to have the vitermost of their wages paid them, and to bee fed with meate and reners, woo was come to same not vicerous; of cour wages passecons, one to over yet who meets and druke sufficient. And God sending you note England, we would have you suffer new of your peoples to goe an source vossached: maker would we have you to leave the ship till your commons; into the River of Thames, then we give you order to the contrarie. And if you chance to be wonde bound topon the coasts. 30 you may fend up one of your people with your Letter, but not to come your felfe on Boare till our farther

The like order we would have Steven Bennet to vie in his ship, by vertue of this our Commission, which we have ordered to Thomas Edge our fernant to fee performed accordingly. And in as much as we have agreed here with a Tauner for all the Morfes bides which wee kill and Agreement Ann at more on we was agreement a now a leaver or an exercise some work of the country of the first plant of the flatting, and change of the flatting, with a Tance whereof we have appointed out to go in your love. We avoid have you referred the faid buder, and flore for Mories your flow there with in flead of ballaft. And if you obtay a greater quantities then you can bring away hades: with you, bearing alwayes regard to commodities of more value, which are Oyle, Teeth, and Whales finnes, that none of them be left behind; We would have you leave the faid overplus of hides in some conne-AO mient place, till the next yeare, that we fend more ftore of fripping.

A Commission for Thomas Edge our ferwant, appointed to goe as our Factor in the Ship called the Mary Margaret, of the burthen of one hundred and fiftie Tunnes, for the killing of the Whale and Morfes vpon the coast of Greenland, or any other place in the North Ocean : Giuen the 21. of March, 1611.

50 Y On menos ignorant of our imploying you beretofore in two fenerall Voyages to Cheric Iland. The first whereof, by reason of one Duppers going thinber, together with certains men of Hull, glutting Adventures A personately of responsive to a thoughout garge amount, required moderates men of 1701s, seming. Adventures the fail place, promoted to us though all pour puricipal. As if a inter-fection of Urgay, the and older in course you could not come to fit forting upon the fail Handly response the day the development of feel programs first bluewards that fame further leaves comply full the resente to give fully by which scapins now while though of faiting out that years adventure had been fully it be refuge to lade one flop backs against from Sant Michael'the Archaeged in Mills to date to before us; yet mountifylanding to table for, use that if yet that verage above fine hundred pounds. We entring into due consideration of the premises, doe not impute the camp of these our loss onto you; but to the accidents then happening contrarie to our expectation: pet thele loffes growing upon us in the times of your implayment, we can doe no leffe then put you in minde 60 thereof, to the intent to incomrage and ferre up your minde to doe your vitermost indenour to further the bufineffe in this your third imployment, that we may recover our felues of the loffes formerly fustained. And for that end we have made choice of you againe to goe as our Factor in the Ship Mary Margaret, of one bundred and fiftie Tunnees, the Mafter being Steven Bennet, for the killing of the Whale : And to that end, as rou well know, have bin at charge of procuring of fixe me of Saint loun de Luz, accusto-

Sixe Biscainers Whale (as I

" This was a conceir.as if all places had choic of all kindes, which experience taught other-

ther light.

med to that function : whosenames are as followeth : videlices, luan de Bacoyne, luan de Agerre, Martin de Karre, Mariene de Horifada, Domingo de Sarria, and Adam de Bellocke: which men wee would have to be viel very kindely and friendly during this their voyage, whereby being strangers and leasing their owne Countrie to doe vs fernice, they may have no infleasife of complaint, but rather to be have heard) by incouraged to doe to fernice bereafter, if there be cause. And although it be our meaning the should be encouraged by all good and curreous viage to be readic to doe vs fernice, yet we will have you together uile who had a meaning can you good and merton upage to not reasure to une to jerme, jet we will base you together limed and here, mit ho are were pople and Admirer; implyed in this V range, to observe and discently put in praisife the implyed with executing of that tonliness of firsting to tribule, as well as they. I add they to to home the better forts of the min Grand Whales from the worser, whereby in their striking they may choose the good, and leave the bad. And to that end we doe fet you downe bere under, the feur all forts of W bale; together with the differences of goodnesse betweener the one and the other, as we have gathered the same by information from men of excellencie nesse trustene the one and to enter, as we came gasorrea toe same us so your manus so we need as executable in that these so was a known to us, that there are eight severall kinder of Woder, all differing the one from the other in quantitie and qualitie. Which for your better mitration, we have thought good to The first fort of Whales, we called the Bearded Whale, which is black in colour, with a smooth skinne and I see just for a given access to even user or one, write a viac movine while a just a just a movine sums and white order the close; which Whale is the half of all the reft; and the elder it is, the more it date yields. This for a five hald do to peeled of half four chandred, and sometimes fine hundred finnes, and between

thungs onner the foreign of product dainy periode volcatiff foreign bounderd, and foreitmen fine bounderd finness, and between wise.

Secon the kinds of the force calour and follows to the fireness, but of momenta tiffe, and the finness not about one fathering, so the between the fine of the force calour and follows to the fireness. But of momenta tiffe, and the finness not about one fathering, which is and velocity in 0.0%, according to the longiff, sometimes a givine, forestimes a bounderd Hopfboads. The 10 decisions of the first fireness to the foreign of probable to called Transpa, being a long at the first, but me for there, the contraction of the contraction of the first fireness of the contraction of s one one extense in the second fine: whose bead is bigger then either of the two former, and in proportion as integer then his body. In the bead of this Whale is the Spermaceit, which you are to keepe in Cafee apart from your other Oyle: you may put the Oyle you finde in the bead and the Spermacett alloge-Spermacetic or form your other Oyle; you may put the Oyle you finde in the bead and the Spermaceti altogeneration of the standard of the Spermaceti altogeneration of the standard of the stan before mentioned. In this fort of Whale is likewife found the Amber greefe, lying in the entrals and out of the same, being of shape and colour like wnto Kowes dung. We would have you therefore your selfeto of the lame, being of jongs and course incourse course using, or e-would court you toerefore past jette to be prefers at the opening of this fort of Whale, and cause the refudue of the fade currents to be put into final Caske, and bring them with you mit England. We would be sure the Maiter affect to be by at the opening of this Whale, and to be made prime of the packing of those Earls. And although it is be that the Ambergreess is onely in this Whale and in none other, yet we would not because we absent at that the Ambergrees is weep means rouse man in more nousely are means and was you be adjust as the spening of any other; but they one secons to make a referencion of the entral of every whale, that you that precise to be couls of the least suffect to have any of the sud-Ambergrees, being a matter, ar you know, of good worth, and therefore no slightly to be regarded. The Teath identify of this fort of 40 Whale we would have you cause to be reserved for a triall; as also any other matter extraordinarie that you so all observe in the same. This Whale is said to yeelde in Oyle fortse Hogsheads, besides the Spermaceti. The fourth fort, &c. as Sup. 471.472.

And in as much as industrie and diligence are two principall steps to atcheese great enterprifes, and negligence and idlenesse are enemies to the same; we would have you in this charge committed wino you, negazence and succession to imbrace the one and to give that example of paines taking to the vest of the company of your Ship in your owne per son, as well in setting them on worke, as in putting your owne hand to the businesse when neede requireth, as that there be no idle time spent, but that every one be implosed in some businesse or other in helping to kill the Whale, or in searching the Bayes along the coast for Whales, Ambergreese, Morses teeth, or any other strange thing that may be sound upon that coast, or in killing the 50

Among reet, compareto, any over programmy, run may on you und upon to as waster in examp too.

Money a Bears or any thing that may make profit toward our great charges.

Touching directions for your keeping company touches with the Elizabeth, and of the courfe we thinke fitting for the Master of that Ship to observe, we have set the same down at large in our Commission deluered to Ionas Poole, a Copie whereof we deliner you herewith, for your better instructions, to observe what is to be done on both your behalfes for the good of the Voyage : which our Commission, we would have you strictly observe, unlesse upon some speciall occasion to on unknowne, and by the consent of the principall Officers in both the Ships you fall fee iuft cause to the contrary,

Ton have with you an order set downe by the Lords of his Maiesties prime Counsell, for the maintai-Therefine not ming of our Charter: which we would have you make knowne to any of our Nation, that you may chance Describes not may of our quarter sources as securious on many comments of the continue of the uttermost of your powers, orc.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

A briefe Declaration of this my Worney of discovery to Greeneland, and towards the Acheestrational with my reproject allegants in Ciccinciana, and toni West of it, a followed b: being fet forth of the right Worshipful Sir TROMAS SMITH Cohernous of the right Wor-(hipfull Company of new Trades of c. mile

will stendy Lay As Pants

The first as Black with the security of the security of the with four shippers.

E E for farle as Black with the security of the street of the security of the

Pumpe, but they you the belief, which great the marky we could been up 1941e to keeper the MarPumpe, but they you the belief, which great the marky we could been up 1941e to keeper the MarPumpe and the Marky of the Marky of the Marky we could been up 1941e to keeper the MarPumper were companie.

Ter by the threecenth daylof the Marky of the Marky o

ted 1300 min ways at language, and by my accounted was to the Southwards of it, neer the language stude 741 egrees, where I two shoundards of Whalesby the fides of the ke; for I failed all this Some of time formetimes in and sometimes by the faid for, and sounded most commonly each watch, Wholes but had no ground at 160.140,180,and 200,fathomes.

Then the winde came to the North-west, and I perceiting the Ice totrend still to the Southwards, determined toftand to Greeneland, from whence I came, there to make my Voyage and likewise to try the certaintie concerning the misplacing of the Land, but the next day, being about the featenand twentieth of Isus, the windecame to the North, and I flood for Cherie Iland, and came to it the nine and sweptieth of the fame Moneth, where I found that place of my being, when I supposed I should have found Land, did beare from Cherne Hand West and by cheric Hand. South, about one hundred twentie flue leagues. When I came to the Iland I faw about three

6c hundred Morfes on land, but a fforme comming they went all into the Sea. The twelfth of Iuly, we flue about two hundred; and by the three and twentieth day wee Mosies. had taken all their fat Hides and Teeth, which with the Victuals we had laded the flip; then Idetermined to hale vp a flulop to go to Greeneland, to fearch if I could finde any Land or I determined to hale vp a flulop to go to Greeneland, to fearch if I could finde any Land or I lands, that might proue beneficiall the next years, and likewife to fearch for Teeth and Whales

Finnes. The foure and twentie, and fine and twentie dayeshit was very much wind at North, which caufed the Sea to goe in high that we could not land. Yet at eight aclocke at night the wind crafted, and I went on land where I found critarys of the Many Many many whom wind ceased, and I went on land where I found certayne of the Manie Margarett men by whom har Margarett when though the Margarett men by whom hom working in Company, dec. with Styphen Benner Mafter of the faid fruit?; and others to the from two Boats in Greenhaud with time the line of the first the from two Boats in Greenhaud with time the line of the story and that they parted Immediately Marter Lage and Marfer Benner tame should be wished and should be such as a line of the story and t

Immediately Mafter Edge and Mafter Bounds tamb should; and I weighed and flood to the World ide of the Hand, and unchoose there, and put never one hundred Morie hicks so dand, and flood to the good the hand, and individe high flood. The fix and the morphish of the south-weighed high flood to the south-weigh fide of the Hand, and flood to the south-weighed the highest flood to the south-weighed the highest flood to the south-weighed flood and the highest flood to the south-weighed flood and the highest flood flo

wind at North, I was perfeaded by disers that had good the first that I will be a long of the the Mayer, but when I was almost through and might be the Mayer, but when I was almost through, and might of the property of the Mayer, but when I was almost through, and might of the was enough by disers that all good that was in the Mallon. Here we fixed every of god water the May Mer, but we first was in the Mallon. Here we fixed every of she was to have the Mayer, but disers the Mayer of the Mayer

Boats, went to the Hull thip, where we found but imall comfort; for Duke told vs plainly, wee

ficuld not come aboard his fhip, and caufed Pikes and Launces to bee brought to keepe vs out. Then Master Edge and divers others defired him to let mee come aboard, which hee did, and with much adoe I got aboard, having mine head broke to the skull, and my brow that one might with much according to according mine care I had a fore wound, likewife the ribs on my right fide were 50 all broken and fore bruifed, and the collar bone of my left shoulder is broken, besides my backe was fo fore, that I could not fuffer any man to touch it.

Was to over the result of the state of Marmaduke, is omitted. And I have here added out of his Brother Randolph Poole their returns; omitting the former part of his Relations of the

In this our great distresse, Thomas Marmaduke Master of the shippe of Hull, ptotested great In this our great currents, I common state remained extended to the impipe of zame, profession great kindnelle towards vs, promifing vs paffage, and that he would try if he could recour our hip: but hee deferred the time one whole weeke, till shee was full of oze, so that when wee came to weigh her, both her Cables burft, and fo we left her to all our forrowes, without hope of recouerie. Then we went aboard the ship of Hull, which God had prepared for our succour, where 62 ueric. I neu we went a award ine lind of eries, while I don had prepared for our incoor, while our Merchant agreeing for the fraight, we got the goods aboard; namely, about twentie, or one and twentie tunnes and an halfe of Oyle, and a Barrell of Beares Oyle, about tenne tunnes of Whales Finnes bound up in an hundred and fixe bundels, in every one thirtie Finnes, and in some more, fine Hogsheads of Morses Teeth, and one and twentie odde pairs. And if our ship had not miscarried, the Voyage had beene much better.

The nineteenth of August, we directed our course for England, the weather being reasona- They returne ble faire, and the wind for the most part betwixt the North and the West: and wee continued home ward. our course homeward all that moneth.

Voon Tuefday the third of September, about two of the clocke in the morning, we were im- September 3.

bayed with land, and were neere the shoare before we were aware. Wee steered backe North and by East: and at twelve of the clocke we found our felues to be on the West side of the Iles of Orkney, and steered East into a great found, called Pentlow Fryth, where wee beeing entred Orkney llands or crees, and one of the men directed vs Peatlow Frith, there came a Boat from the shoare, which brought vs fresh meat, and one of the men directed vs Peatlow Frith. through the Sound. This Sound lyeth in the latitude of 58 degrees and 36 minutes, and the course in 58, degrees to through, is East North-east, and West South-west, it floweth there on the change day, South

South earl and North . North-weft halfe a tyde, nine foore high or thereabout. At the entrance in ont he North fide, there is an high red Mountayne, and the Sound there is twelve miles ouer : but farther in the land is somewhat lower, and the Sound narrower. You may sayle along the North thouse two, miles off the land in fortie or fiftie fathomes; and on the faid shoare about foure miles East South-east. From the red Cliffe there is a Bay, into which you may fleere North by Welt, giving the West point of the entrances into the fall shay a good birth for three the water is hould and fowle ground: but in the middle of the entrance, 30,20,18,13,10,6, and , fathomes : but wecanchofed in 10. fathomes, fine fandie ground,

The fittof September at an Eaft South-eaft Sunne wee fet fayle, keeping our course about mentioned, leaving five small Hands on our larboord side, and one Hand on our starboord side; and fo keeping an high Cliffe, which lyeth into the Sea on Sectland fide, open of a low Land in the

found on the fame theare, we fayled out as before is faid.

You the day at a North Sunne, we anchored in Humber mouth; there it floweth on the change day West South-west. Vpon the eight day we arrived at Hall, safely and well in body, but much distressed and impayred in our states, which God at his good pleasure can restore. oy, our much currence and imported in our maces, which also are in good period can render.

A cour first comming to this Country of Greenland, the Mountaynes and Valleyes thereof, ex-ceptit were forme few places, were all coursed with from their ere we went away, the tops of the high Hils; and the lower Plaines appeared greene with Mosfey and some little quantitie of migname, am one owner reasons appeared greene wars moster, and some little quantitie of ingelfe. This Country, and likewife the first as in their parts, it re fublic to marcellous thicke and mittle weather openually when the funne with his most forethic hear melterth the Ice and snow, 30 mittle weather openually when the funne with his most forethic hear melterth the Ice and snow, whose vapours obscure the light of the sunne, making small difference betweene the day there, and the irkefome night in other places.

We found in this Countrey many fat. Deere, which we killed with our Peeces and Dogges at Many fat we rouncen con country many attention with many water were and proges at Many for our pleature, which was a great refreling to wis in that roundup falce imany white Beares, Deet, white with white, grey, and dame Foxes. We found it of abundance of Fowle's namely, Culuidines, Beares, white, with wints, gry, and unintervaces or house an annual of rowies interest, consumers, beares, white, fea Pidgeons, white land Partidges, wildGete, Willockes, and many other Powles. Among gry, and daw which in oted the nature of one, which we called an Ales; who (like to the great fifties, which should be a consumer of the consumer of which I noted the nature of one, which we called an Aken, who (like to the great mines, which abundance of eart vp the fmall, or like to fome great man, which denoure all the labours of the poore) when fundry Fowles. Tome smaller Birds have gotten any thing, then he leaveth not beating of them, till they have cast Allen a devoutome imates drive man gotternary coming men necessary or occur, or return to tray naucear. Men a decor 40 vp what they have eaters, which he laying bold of decorate hy: and fo with little meate in ring Fowle. their gorges, and few feathers on their backes, he leaven them, to get more, nor for themselves

There is great flore of fresh water in early Valley, which proceedesh most of the melted Moster, finow. On every Beech is great plends of drift wood, but sever a bull nor tree growth in those marriers of great plends of drift wood, but sever a bull nor tree growth in those quarters, as farre as we have hitherto discouered.

CHAP. IIII.

Relation written by IONAS POOLE of a Voyage to Greenland, in the yeere 1612. with two Ships, the one called the Whale; the other the Sea-horfe, fet out by the Right Worlhipfull the Muscouie Merchants.

He feuenth of Aprill, 1612. wee fet fayle at Blacke-wall, and went to Granefond. The third of May we came to Cherie Hand, where we found a thip of Holland, Cherylland. in which one Alan Salones an Englishman was Pilot. The fame day about a North finne wearchored on the West fide of the lland.

The fourth, we trimmed a shallop which I left there the last years and Alen Salowes went aboard our Admirall , and Mafter Ruffell fent for Mafter Thomas Edge, Mafter Arthington, Ishn Mafon, and my felfe: where wee had some speech about detaysing him, and to have brought him intde influed. but in the end hee was let goe. At a North funne we fent our faillop, to the South-east side of the Iland to fetch a shallop, which was left there the last yeere : but they could not get thither for Ice, and came aboard agains at an East

The eight, wee flood toward Cherie Hand againe, and were faire by it at a South funne: at which time the winde came to the South-east, and wee faw the Hollender standing with vs. Then we altered our courfe, and fayled West North-west, determining, if hee followed vs, to flay for him. At ten of the clock at night hee came to vs. and the Admirall fenthis shallon aboord of him to command him to be gone out of our companie; and are a North form hee ftood away from vs, and fayled North and by Eaft, and we lay by the lee.

The twentieth at a South Sunne we faw our Confort, and spake with them, and they told vs. that they had almost split their ship with a piece of Ice, which brake nine of their Timbers, so that they had five foot water in hold.

The one and two and twentie dayes, wee plyed to windward, the winde being at North faire weather. And at Blacke Point wee faw great flore of Ice driving to the South. At eight of the clocke at night Blacks Point did beare from mee East and by North nine leagues. And the Great flore of three dayes past we saw great store of Whales within ten or twelve leagues off the Land, Cape Cold.

The three and twentieth we were faire off Cape Cold; where Matter Edge and Matter off The three and twentiern we were name on Cape Cong. There were the form Whales thington went with the Backy in their Shallops for Groffe-rode, in hope to kill form Whales to

The fine and twentieth we got into Fonde Sound, all the Sounds being full of Ice; and the Foule Sound. Shallops came aboord and brought some Venison, which was very leane. And at facoif the clock the Backs went with the Shallops to Faire Foreland, to fee if they could kill a Whale and at a North-weit Sunne Mafter Edge went with a Shallop, to fee if Croffe-rode were quen.

The fix and twentieth, the two fhipsabouefaid dame into Fonde Sound : one of them was that Hollander before mentioned; the other was a thip of London, called The Diana, whereof one The Diana of

The manufacture of the Control of th Sounds. The twentie eight, we fent the long Boat and our Shallop to Brokemeffe, with a Shallop of ten Tunnes, there to be fet vp. The winde was at West with Inowe and frost. The fame Six Bifaguer: day the Bash; came aboord, but could kill neuer's Wibald. The winde came to the South South

west, with frost and snowe. The nine and twentieth, the winds was at South with much Inowe. The same day one of our men dyed, named Iohn Batcher , hanning layer fickelabout three weeks. The thirtieth , one Michael Perkins dyed abourd The Whats. The laft of May; the windle was at South; and wee

flood toward the Foreland in 79. degrees, The amentry somidnight, the Chyrurgeon of The content iday The first of June, we stood into Feeds Sound, where wee faw abundance of Ice drive out wich

the winde at East. The second day, the winde was at North and by Zast, rold frostie weather, 40 All which day wee lay under faile in the mouth of the Sound: The third day ; wee spake with Thomas Marmaduke of Hall, irra thip called The Hope well. Wee flent for him to come abourd. Tobase Transmisses of Early in the temperature of the transmisses of the temperature of t Northward; and as we were afterward informed, discouered as farre as 82. degrees; two degrees beyond Hakluyts Headland. The fourth, we fent our shallop on shore in Foule Sound, to see Manuality
Indicates: a fam harbour were open to ride in, and to put our Admirah on ground to flop her leake. The
st, degrees fame day, our long Boate came to va from Brokeniess. And we turned into the Sound, because
we faw the Ice drive out with the winder South and the whard The fift, we included in Poule Sound in seuenteone fithoms water and landie ground, where we faw the place where both the thins lay which wee loft the last yeere, coursed with Ice. The fame time wee fent our shallop with our Carpenters, to finish the aforesaid shallon at Brokennesse. The winde continued at South; and the Whale turned into the Sound by vs, and achnored there at a South-west by South Sunne. The nineh, the Admirals Boate and ours went with prouision and men to works woons Whale, which the Backs had killed; and we food toward the Foreland with the flips, where the Whale was killed, the winde at South, thicke foggie weather, And by an East North-east Sunne wee anchored in the mouth of Foule Sound in fifteene fachoms, giver fand with some fiells. At a Well funne the Boate came abourd for caske and other promision, and rold vs, that the Buke had killed two other Whales.

The feuenteenth, one Bate memed Chapel, tooke fine of our English men to him, and they 60 trimmed the shallop to kill the Whale. About a West North-west sunnethey went away, the winde at South. The twentieth, the Biscame shallop came abourd of vis from the Foreland, and told vs that they had ifrooken three Whales, which brake away.

CHAP.4. Nicolas Woodcock. Morfes and Whales. Basks and Hollanders. 715

The two and twentieth wee rid ffill, the winde being at North-west, with snowe and frost. The five and twentieth, we got the Whale on flote, having stopped her leake. We were no fooner off, but it blew most fiercely, so that the Whales long Boare and our shallop brake from the Whales sterne, and were split in pieces on the Ice, that lay on shoare. The same day about a South funne two men came from Fare Foreland, and told vs that Mafter Edge was come from the South in the Pinnasse, and had spoken with one Nicolas Woodcock an English min , which was my Mate to this Countrey of Greenland in the yeere 1610. The laid VVoodcocke was now Woodcock Pilot Piloto faship of Saint Sebastian in Beseay, and rid in Ice Sound. Moreouer, they spake with the of a Essay hip, men of the Boate of the Diana, and law the Hollanders Boate, but spake not with their men. The two men aboutfaid told vs likewife, that lohn Chapel our Baske with fine English men had The fourth

10 billed a Whale; and betwirt them and another shallop they had slaine another, and had them and such The feven and ewentieth we rid still, and our Carpenter went to worke to mend the knee of

our beake-head. And I went to fee what Morfes were on Land, where I found neere one hundred and fiftie. The eight and twentieth, the shallop that had all English men in her saue one Bake, came about for prouision, and told me, that they and lobannes Chapel, had flame a great The fix whale Whale clofe by our ship, which towed them off into the Sound, and our long Boate followed killed. them. At the same time we saw sixe Whales close by the ships side as we rode in harbour : and we faw great flore in the Sound , and within one houre there were fo many about our ships and in the Sound, that we could not count them. About a North-west sunne our long Boate brought 30 the men that strooke the Whale abouelaid, and towed their shallop on land : for the said Whale had funke her with his taile. The fame time our Carpenter went to worke on the broken shal-

lop, and I went to the place where the Morfes lay, where I found about three hundred on land. Three hundred Then I went abourd the Whale to get fome harping Irons: for they had all, but I could get but Mories. one, because the rest of the Backe had laid them vp, enuying that one Backe, that went with all English men, had done so much, because by their good wills they would not have vs to have any Biseniers can intent into this businesse. Moreover, hee that had the chiefest command in this voyage, did uic. greatly condemne the going of so many English men with that one Bake, either for feare they should kill none, and lole all their prouision for the faid vie, or for feare that our men should kill the Whale aswell , and as soone as they; yet was there none of the other Boates but had lost 30 more then they had loft. And as for killing, there was not one Whale killed with one Boate alone, faue ours, with all English faue the Buke aforefaid, which flue three without the helpe of any other Boate. This day the Backs flue another Whale at the Foreland.

The nine and twentieth, the broken shallop was mended, and I went to the Foreland, to fee Whale silled, whether the other shallops would come where the ships rode in harbour, where abundance of Whales were fill. The same time the Backs killed another Whale. Then I romaged my ship, The eight and put caske on land. All this day it was calme."

The last of lune, one came from the Foreland, and told vs, that the Basks had slaine two great Whales. All this day likewise it was calme : and there lay abundance of huge Whales in the harbour about our thips. One of the whales aboutlaid, Iobannes with the fine English men the 40 without any of the others helpe. For they flood on the land flouting, and faying, that it was vaposible for them to kill him, and would not once lanch their Boates to helpe them : yet hee was one of the greatest that were killed this yeere. All this day the whales lay so thicke about the ship, that some ran against our Cables, some against the Ship, and one against the Rudder. One lay vnder our beake-head and slept there a long while. At which time our Carpenter had hung a stage close by the water, whereon his tooles lay. And wee durst not molest the said whale for feare he should have overthrowne the stage and drowned all his tooles. In the end he went away, and carried the ships head round, his taile being foule of the Cable.

The first of July, at a North North-east Sunne, the shallops came to kill whales in the harbour where we rid, and strooke three, which all brake away. The same day, Iohannes strooke a 50 whale, that fmit in the fide of his shallop and split it. Now wee perceived the whales to begin to goe out of the Bayes. The fecond day, the Basks flue three great whales faire by our ships, in The ninth and leffe then foure houres; which were with our long Boate and men towed into harbour, and teach Whales made fast to our ship. And the Basks event with their shallops to Faire Foreland.

The feuenth day, wee had abundance of Ice about our ships, which with the winde and the twelfth and twee draue out off another Sound. The eight, vve rid ftill, and vvere troubled with much Ice, thinteenth by reason of a storme that blue at South-evelt and by evelt, &c. The rest is omitted as having Whales killed. nothing of note, but ordinarie accidents.



Y the prouidence of Almightic God wee departed from Queenborough the thirteenth day of May with fixe good Ships, viz. The Tigre, Admiralle the Matthew, Vice-admirall; the Sea-borfe, called the Gamaliel, the Io Reare-admirall; the Defire; the Annula; and the Richard and Banard; with the lobs and Francis shortly to follow.

The one and twentieth day, faire weather, the winde Southward, wee ftill making to the Northwards. This morning wee had fight of Land on the Coast of Norman. it lying Eaft and by North off about twelue or fourteene leagues. This day at noone, we were in the latitude of 61. degrees and 30. minutes, the variation of the Compasse at Scontes-men is eight degrees East, it being about ten or twelue leagues off: wee hauing made a North way halte East, about thirtie leagues.

The three and twentieth at noone, in the latitude of 65. degrees and 45. minutes, in which place, the Needle of Declination doth dippe vnder the Horizon 63. degrees and 30. minutes by 20 that Inftrument which declineth 54. at London.

The thirtieth day, about three of the clocke, wee espied the land of Greenland, being atayned meight bout eight or nine leagues off. The Southwardest part of it bare South-cast and by East off it. which shortly wee perceived to bee the Land lying in 76. degrees and 55. minutes, which is called Horne-found. This Land lyeth by our common Compasse North North-west, Within two houres after we had fight of Land, it began to fnowe, and was very cold. This evening the Compaffe was varied thirteene degrees Weft.

The one and thirtieth day, variable weather with snowe, and very cold, and the winde also variable : and in the afternoone the winde was at the North-east. In the morning , wee espied variance; and in the accumentation of the policy and their Mafter and Pilot came aboord of vs. And and their Mafter and Pilot came about the came aboord of vs. And and their Mafter and Pilot came about the came aboord of vs. And and their Mafter and Pilot came about the came about A thip of Saint wee knew them to bee that thip of Saint Iobn de Luz, , which had leave of the Companie to fifth. Tabin de Let. And they told vs, that there were eight Sponsords on the Coaft. Also, were efford another ship; on the coaft. Also, were efficied another ship; on the coaft. Which we supposed to be a French man, and had one Allan Sallar to their Pilot.

atter flaine in

The second of Lune, in the morning, about five of the clocke, our Generall sent our shallon to The Generall a small Pinke, that all this night we law along the shoare, to bid their Master and Pilot come awas Capraine boord vs, which presently they did. The Masters name was Clair Martin of Horne, and his Beniamin lofeph fhip was for Dunkerke, and he told vs that he was conforted with another ship that was his Admirall, the Captaines name was Fopp of Dunkerke, and that he was on the Coaft. Wee kept the Maiter and Pilot abourd of vs, and tent fome of our men abourd of her, and brought her vnder our lee : and then, we fent their Mafter aboord againe, charging them to follow vs. This after-40 noone we tooke their thallop with five or fixe men, whereof two were English men, and one Scot, at the Faire fereland.

Dutch ffip. 33, of May.

The fourth day also faire weather. This morning was the first Whale killed. Wee had no night fince the three and twentieth of May. The fift day, faire weather, but very cold, the winde North. Wee fayled along the Iland being about eighteene or twentie leagues in length; lying for the most part by the common Compasse North and by West halfe West ward. About nine of the clocke in the afternoone, we faw our other three thips, viz., the Gamaliel, the Defire, and the Richard and Barnard, which lay there to and fro, because they could not goe into their Harbour by reason of the Ice : and also, because there were foure other ships in a Bay or Coue. called Pooppy Bay, or Nickes Cone : and also other ships on the other side in Greene Harbour. We 50 fayled along the drift Ice vntill about one or two of the clocke in the morning, at which time, We came to an anchor in the entrance of the Sound, because the Ice came driving out so fast.

The fixt day, faire weather, the winde variable, till the afternoone : at which time it came to the Northwards. About three in the afternoone we weighed anchor, and about ten of the clocke we came to the foure ships lying in Poppy Bay: two of them being Hollanders, and one a Rocheller, and the other a ship of Burdeams. The Masters of the Hollanders came aboord of our fhip, to speake with the Generall, both of them being of Amsterdam, and brought a Commission granted by the Grave Maurice, for to fish in this Countrey. But, when they faw our Kings Maiesties Commission granted to the worshipfull Companie, they told our Generall, that they would depart this Coaft : having our Generals Ticket to thew to their Adventurers, that they 62 were there, and had made their Port, and how he would not fuffer them to fish. We anchored close by the French ship wherein was Allane Sallas, being readie to fight, if they refused to come

aboord vs. So, when we fent our shallop, the Master came presently and their Surgeon, who could

speake English. At the first, they denyed that Sallas was aboord of them : but, being hardly viged,

CHAP.S. Kings Armes and Croffe fet Dp. Th. Bonner Pilot to the Dutch.

they confessed that hee and one Thomas Fisher an English man were abourd, who were both prefently fent for. This Salles was their Pilot, and Fifter was their Gunner.

The seventh day faire weather, we road still at an anthor. This day I observed the latitude of the place, and found it in 78. degrees 24. minutes. The variation of the Compasse is in this Lat. 78. deg. place 15. degrees 21. minutes West. About a North Sunne a small thip of Bifeay came into the 24 minutes harbour where we roade.

The eight day, for the most part snow; the winde Southward. This day the Master of the Snowe. French thip, being a thip of nine fcore, or two hundred, called the Lagues of Bardeaux. agreed with our Generall that hee might fish on the coast our Generall was to have halfe the Whales to he could kill. Alfo, this day, the Mafter of the thip of Rochet, and the Mafter of the fmall thip

of Bilear, were agreed to depart from the coaft.

The mitch day, faire weather. This morning the Gamalies our Reare-Admirall, and the Defire weighed anchor to goe for Greens barbour, where two thips lay one of Dunkerle, and the Green barbour. other of Saint Sebastian in Bifeay. The Captaine of the Dankerke, called Fopp, had beene with our Generall, and told him that he would depart from this Coaft. Our Generall gave him leave to take the Pilot of the Small Pinke, and the other Dateb men he had taken of his keeping orily the English men and the Sours. Allo, the two thips of Holland , with the thip of Bifery , and that of Rochel weighed anchor, and departed from this Harbour. About fix of the clocke in the afternoone, came the Mafter of the ship of Saint Sebaffian aboord of vs, being brought by one of the Malters Mates of the Defire (they having taken two of his Shallops) to know our Generals pleature, whether he should have them againe, or no. Our Generall gave them him againe, vpon condition, that he would depart the Coaft. About a North North-west Sunne, we weighed anchor to goe for Horne-Sound, where we heard, that there were divers thips; the wind North-The tenth day, faire weather, the winde at North, being very close weather. About a North

Sunne we came to an anchor in the entrance of Low Sound, where we faw two ships ride at an- Low found. chor. Our Generall fent our shallop ro fee what ships they were, who found them to bee the two thips of Holland. Alfo our long Boate went on thouse to fet vp the Kings Maiefties Armes His Maiefties voon a low point of land , lying a great way off , called Low-wefe. We let vp a Croffe of wood, Armes and a

30 and nayled the Armes vpon it. The thirteenth day, in the morning, it inowed very fast, being very thicke weather, the Snowe. winde variable, we standing off from the land. About feuen of the clock it began to cleere vp, at which time we efficed three thips; and making toward them, at length we perceived them to be the three thips which came from the Bay where we road : the winde also was at Eaft and by South, and blew a very fliffe gale. Then we flood in for the floare, and fpent most of this day in turning vp Horne-Sound. And about a North North-west Sunne, at ten a clock wee espied fix thips lying at anchor on the South fide of the Sound, in a small Bay. The one of them was Captaine Fopt the Dunkerker, who came in before ve, and was appointed by our Generall to come into this harbour, and there to flay for vs. and to goe to the Foreland, to have his other thip 40 which we kept there. Foure of them were Bifcaines of Saint Sebastian; and one of them was in the harbour where we road and found the Front thip : The fixt was a thip of Amkerdam.

whetein Thomas Bonner was Mafter and Pilot, and about twentie English men more. All the Thomas Bonner Biscaines came abourd of vs as soone as we were at an anchoribut Thomas Bonner refused to come, English man, being fent for by our Generall. Our Generall commanded pur Gunner to shoot at him, he him- Master and felfe discharging the second Ordnance. Then presently be began to set faile, and cut his cable, Pilot, thinking to get from vs : but wee having shot him through three or foure times, they began to weave vs, fo we fent our shallop and he came aboord. There were fine or fixe more of the Englifb men fetched aboord, and some of our men fint to bring her to an anchor, where shee might ride fafe : for , fhee was almost run ashoare. This was about a North summe, or eleven a clocke. The Biscaines were charged presently to depart, so some as they had filled fresh water, which,

they faid, they wanted; and to bring what Whale finnes they had found, or had taken, or o-

The fourteenth day, faire weather, the winde at East North-east. This morning one of the Biscaines brought a few Whale sinnes aboord of vs, and the skin of a Beare, which they had killed. Then was our Boate-swaine sent abourd of them to search their ships, and to bid them depart. Our Generall kept the Holland ship, wherein was Thomas Bonner, to the vie of the Companie. This day I observed the latitude of this place by a Quadrant of foure foote Semidiameter, and found it to fland in 75, degrees cc. minutes: the Declination of the Needle vinder the Horizon, is 67. degrees 30. minutes, pointing to the Northwards : but pointing to the South-60 wards, it is 80. degrees. The variation of the Compaffe is 12. degrees 14. minutes west from

the true Meridian: but from our common fayling Compafie it is 17. degrees, because the 76.deg.51.min. Compafie is touched fine degrees and a halfe to the Eastward, and the variation is to the declination

This day in the afternoone, the foure ships of Bifesy departed from this Harbour, which is dog, 14 min. called

718

called Horne-Sound: and about a North funne, I, with the Mafter Thomas Sherin went afhore with other, to fet vp another Croffe with the Kings Maiefties Atmes, caft in Lead, nayled vp. on it. Then I observed the Sunne vpon his North Meridian, by my foresaid Quadrant, and found it elevated about the Horizon 10. degrees and thirtie minutes: But because his heigth at the South Meridian, and his height at the North did not agree, in finding of the Latitude, I did abate fine minutes from each, as the meane betwixt both; for his alcitude at the South Meridian was 36. degrees 40. minutes, the declination 23. degrees and 20. minutes.

The fifteenth day, faire weather, the winde in the morning South, but almost calme. This day about noone we weighed anchor with the thip of Amfterdam, and divers of her men were fetched aboord vs with their Shipper, and force of our men were fent aboord her with one of In our Matters Mates, called Mafter Spencer. All this day it was fo calme, that wee were faine to towe our fhip. Our Carpenter did trim vp two of the Bifcaine Shallops which they did leave behinde them, and they did leave divers Hoopes and Caske flaved afhoare,

The eighteenth day, faire weather, the winde variable, we flearing away Northward. This afternoone wee mer with another ship of Bises, being a ship of two or three hundred Tunner. Our Generall, as he did to the rest, caused her Master and Pilot to come aboord vs, to whom he shewed his Commission, charging them to depart this Countrey. They, feeing no remedie. were content, fo foone as they had filled fresh water. Wee met with them off the Southward part of the lland. Our Generall being to neere Greene Harbour, where the Gamaliel and the Defire road, wee went into the Sound to fee them, with this great ship of Bifen, and the ship of 40 Abundance of Amflerdam. We found that the entrance of Greene Harbour was quite stopped with Ice: and ran our ship into it, thinking to get through, but wee could not. Then weegot her out agame, and came to the Bay where wee roade on the other fide of the Sound in Poppy Bay, or

The ninetrenth day, faire weather, the winde Northward. This day about twelve of the clock we came to an anchor in the forefaid Bay. This afternoone there came another thip of Saint Sebattian into the Bay where wee roade : and about feuen of the clocke, the Captaine came aboord of vs, who told vs that he had lott fix of his men and a shallop vpon the coast of Grome-An Hand in 72 land, vpon an Hand in the latitude of 72. degrees or thereabouts. This was the Mafter which degrees on the had beene here the last yeere, and made a great voyage, Master Woodcocke being their Pilot. His 30 making fo great a voyage, was the cause that so many ships were here this yeere.

The twentieth in the morning, we had newes that the Iohn and Francis was come about two dayes agoe, and that they had killed one and twentie Whales at the Foreland, and had also twentie whales killed two at Greene harbour. This day it was very close weather with some snowe; the winde North-west. This afternoone the Captaines of the two Bifery ships were commanded to depart this Coaft.

The one and twentieth, wee perceived another ship standing toward vs. Wee lessened our failes and stayed for her to see what shee was. At length, we perceived her to bee another Bifcame. About a North finne we came to an anchor in Greene harbour, by the Gamaliel, and the Defire, and the ship of Burdeaux : and the Biscaine followed vs. So soone as they were come to an anchor, their Captaine came aboord of vs, to whom our Generall shewed his Commission as 42 he had done to the reft, charging him to depart those Coasts, and told him , that hee would take away some of their shallops. They earnestly intreated him not to take them away, and they would depart : the Captaine offering his bond to our Generall, that if he flayed either in Greenland, Groineland, or Cherie Iland, he would willingly forfait all he was worth. There was ano-A man flaine. ther Whale killed in Greene-harbour, in the killing whereof there was a man flaine, and a Boate

The three and twentieth day, faire weather, the winde Northward, Thisday, and the last night I observed the latitude of the place where we roade, and found it by both, to bee in the latitude of 78. degrees 7. minutes: the skie at both observations being very cleere, where I finde that there is no fensible error betweene a South observation and a North, the skie being 50 cleare. But if the skie be hasie, there will be some difference, as of eight or ten minutes, being observed on shoare by some large Quadrant or other Instrument for the purpose, also a South A South South-well Moone by the common Compasse, maketh a full Sea in this place.

ouer whelmed, by too much hafte of following him, after the harping Iron was in him.

The ninth of I.ly, faire weather, the winde at North. This day wee flood to the Southward along the Iland : but, toward night it fell calme, and then the winde came to the Weit-The tenth day, faire weather, but thicke and close, the winde South South-west. All this day we flood for Bell-Sound. Our Generall went on shoare this afternoone, and killed soure Deere, and brought a young Morfe aliue with him aboord,

The eleanenth day faire weather, but calme. This afternoone wee perceived five fhippes in 2 Bay in Bel-found. The winde was so calme, that we were faine to towe in our shippes, and about 60 a North North-walt funne, we came to an anchor by them, with our three ships, viz. the Tigre Admirall, the Mathew Vice-Admirall, and the Richard and Barnard, having made all things readie for to fight. These five shippes which rid here, the one was a great shippe of Biscay of seven

hundred Tunnes, and the two Hollanders, which we found the fixt of Isme in Pooppy-bay, and A Bifcayn thin hundred lunnes, and the dam, and another small shippe of Rochell. This great shippe of Bife ay, of 700, tuns. which we expected would have fought with vs, fent their Captaine aboord of vs before we came to an anchor, and submitted themselves vnto the Generall. The two ships of Amsterdam, whose Mafters names were thele viz. Cornelism Calias, William Vermogon, Admirall, and Iohn Iacob Vice-Admiral R thefe two would gladly have stood out with vs, it the Bifcaine would have affifted

The twelfth day faire weather. This day the ship of Iohn Incobe was valaden of such goods as thee had in her; as Oyle, Blubber, and Mories skinnes. The thirteenth day I was fent in a that-

10 lop to Greene Harberough. The foureteenth day, thicke close weather, the winde Northward; but toward noone it began to cleare up, and then it blew more winde. About a West funne, we came to a small lland, gan to create ap, and who fees vie to come where we found featen which we killed, and knocks Manyrecker or rather a note, where a many of the rockes, where are great multiendes of foule, and they are called Lizer, Hands. The Land all along is fo full of Rockes, that Lifer llands. it is enpossible for any hippe to come neere the Maine, but in the Sands which are very deepe,

and good to come in. All this evening and night wee rowed betweene this Iland and Ice-found, The fitteenth day, about nine or tenne a clocke, we came to the shippes in Greene-barberough where we found, that they had killed eighteene Whales in all. Foure of these ships were French. Eigh

30 mes, which had killed eight Whales for the Companis, according to the agreement which the Whales killed, Generall had made with them: which was, that they should kill eight for vs, and after, what they could kill, should be for themselves. Our English men had killed three in this place, and the Three Whates Bailes in the Defire also three. The Defire had taken in an hundred tunnes of Oyle when wee killed by the came there, and the was to be laden to foone as the could.

The scauenteenthoday also faire weather, the winde Northward. This day, toward a West Sunne, the Mafter of the French hippe came from Sea berfe Bay, who went thither to fpeake with our Generall because Marker Maffor and Marker Cooper had flayed his Shallops from going to Sea, in regard they would not observe the orders which the Generall had appointed them: which were that those Whales which our Englishmen did chase, they should not follow, nor our men should not follow, the Whales they chased. For the order of the Biscomer is, that who so doth

30 frike the first Harping Iron into him, it is his Whale, if his Iron hold. This evening, I say, he returned from Sea-borfe Bay, having loft his labour : for the Generall and Matter Edge were in Bellfound. We vaderitood by him that they had killed fome eight and thirtie Whales in all; and that there was one hundred and fixtie tunnes of Oyle ready made.

The five and twentieth day in the morning, the Defre weighed Anchor to go to the Generall, and the Mafter of the French thip also this morning went from thence to speake with the Generall, because of a Whale which was in strife betweenthis Biscaines and ours : when for pilfering and for some peremptorie speeches, two of the Rochellers were ducked at our Yard arme, the one on the one fide, and the other on the other. This day I also observed the latitude of this

place, and found it to be 77. degrees 40. minutes. Alfo, the variation of the Compaffe is 13. de- Lathude 77. grees 11. minutes Weit. This variation was observed the third of August in the morning : the degrees, 40. grees 11. minutes Well. I his variation was 17. degrees 24. minutes, and the declination was 14. Variation, 13. negat or the summe above the rotation was 17-taggers and assuments, and his Magnetical azimuth of degrees 41, minutes. North in the hairthyloof 77-taggers 42, minutes, and his Magnetical azimuth of degrees 41, minutes. North in the hairthyloof 77-taggers 42, minutes and his Magnetical azimuth of degrees 41, many the summer of the summer as he faid, he was bound to the fouthward to discouer beyond Point Looks and, having his direction from Master Edge, as he said. Our Generall rold him, that hee had hindered the Voyage more by his absence, then his discouerie would profit; and that it were best that he went backe Ladude 79.

with him to the Fore-land, and that he would give no licence to goe now for Discoverie, because degrees,14. with him to the Port-Land, and that he would give no free to go who had proceede. The twelfth him according to his Commiltion, to to proceede. The twelfth him according to his Commiltion, to to proceede. The twelfth him as Maday I obtained, and found the latitude of this place by an exact obtaining to the proceede. The twelfth him was Maday I obtained, and found the latitude of this place by an exact obtaining to the proceede. The twelfth him are made to the proceeder the p minutes. They in the Pooppy-Bay had feepe a thip of England off Black-point, and had spoken with London, her, who told them that they were come from Kildenni. The foureteenth day faire weather, the Winde at North North-east. This day about tenne a

clocke in the forenoone, we waied anchor to goe homeward, being fixe thips in company, viz. the Tigre Admirall, the Gamaliel Vice-Admirall, the lobn and Frances, the Annula, the ship of Burdeaux which the Generall agreed with to fifth in Greene-barborough, and the Bifcay thip which filhed in Sir Thomas Smabs Bay.

The fifteenth day very faire weather, all the forenoone almost calme; in the afternoone, an 60 easie gale at North-east. This day about twelue a clocke at noone, wee were again Fine Fore- Latinde 79. land, which is in the latitude of 79 degrees 8, minutes. This night was very electe and faire wea. degrees 8, minutes, ther, and also calme, by which meanes I had very good opportunitie to finde the suggest sefraction. on. For beholding it about a North North-east funne, by the common Compaste, at which time Sunnes refrathe funne was at the lowest, it was but one fift pare of his body about the Horizon, having about dion.

Nnn 2

deg. 7. min.

foure fifth parts below, fo neere as I could gelle. His declination for that inflant was 10, degrees 35. minutes North, being at noone in the 2. degree 7. minutes of Virgo, his daily motion was 58. minutes: whose halfebeeing nineteene to bee added 10 the former, because it was at twelue houres afore noone. I say his place at that inflant was 2. degrees 26. minutes of Verge, whose declination was as before to.degrees 35. minutes: the Latitude of the place was 78.degrees 47.minutes, whose complement was 11.degrees 13.minutes, the declination being fubftract d from the complement of the Poles eleuation , leaueth 28. minutes, foure five part of which 12, minutes; which being subifraced from 38, leaueth 26, minutes for the Refraction. But, I suppose the Refraction is more or lesse, according as the ayre is thicke or cleare, which I leave for better schollers to discusse : but this I thought good to note, for the better helpe of fach 10. as doe profesio this studie.

The fixteenth day also very faire weather, and for the most part calme: the winde that was was a North-west. This morning, we espied a ship out in the often, ouer against Cold-cape, which we flood with, and the also flood with vs. And when we came to her, wee found her to be the Defire, a thippe of Alborousb. Our Generall fent for the Matter and Merchant aboard of vs, who certification that they came from Killedaene, and that they had made but a bad Voyage of fit: and they were come to fee, if we could fraight them home. The Merchant was of London, whose name was Malter Cudner : the Mafters name was Fletcher, who also brought fixe men which Thomas Bonner had left at Cherie lland. These fixe men had killed but one Morse all this yeere at the Iland : who allo told vs, that William Gonrdon was gone, to the Northwards, At noone, the 20 Vanation 1. three and twentieth day, I observed the variation of the Compasse, and found it to be one degree degree semin. 5.minutes Eaft.

The three and twentieth day faire weather, with a finegale at North and by East. We stearing away South and by West halfe South : being armoone, by supposition, in the latitude of 69. degrees no minutes. Having failed fince yesterday noone; some thirtie leagues South, true.

The foure and twentieth day, very faire weather and cleere, the winde all the fore-noone Northwards, but about noone it came to the South-east. This morning I observed the middle starre in the Great Bearestayle, and found it to bee in the latitude of 68, degrees 24, minutes about two a clocke, at which time that flarre was on the Meridian under the Poic. Alfo I observed the starre in the Beares Rumpe about one a clock, and found the like latitude. Alfo all 30 Roffen.
65 de gno min. this day we had fight of Roff Hands, being about ten er eleuen leagues off vs. Alfo at noone I Th. variation observed the latitude by the Sun, and found vs to be in the latitude of 68. degrees no minutes, which did agree with the former Observations by the flarres. Also the warration of this place is 4. degrees 8. minutes East from the erue Meridian wee having runne fince yesterday moone fome two and twentie leagues South and by Well. Almost all the afternoon it was almost caline.

The fine and twentieth day also very faire weather, the winde this morning came to the East South-east a fine easte gale. We steered away South and by West halfe West ten leagues, being at noone in the latitude of 67. degrees 5. minutes. The variation of this place is 5. degrees drg. 3.minutes 3. minutes East, neere to the fet of our Compatie. This Eleming the winde came to the South South-west, which continued about two Watches.

The nine and twentieth day faire weather, with a good gale of winde at North North-eaft.

From two this last night to fixe, we stood away South, west and by Shuth, and at fixe we steered away South South-west, being at noone by observation, in 62, degrees no minutes. The land The bring at the daway South South-well, being at mone by obleration, in 62, degrees no minutes. Fine land the lind about about Southfield lyeth in this fort: from fixth three toward fixthe population independence leagues South South-weft halfe Weftward: from thence tenne leagues South and by Weft, which is two or three Hands, which see the Weltwardest land in Norses, lying in the latitude of 62 degrees 44. minutes. But whether these Hands, or a Point of Farid; which lyesh about three or source leagues more to the North, be called Sconteffeffe, I know not. The fixt of September we entred

CHAP. VI.

A Voyage of Disconerie to Greenland, &c. Anno i 61 4. Written by Ro. FoTHERBYE.



M. Cudger of

William Goar-

He ship Thomasine went downe from Black-wall to Woolwich the fixteenth of Aprill, and from thence to Granefend the three and twentieth, where thee remayned vitill the eight and twentieth of the same; and weighing from thence two Finnaffes all of the Gremland Fleet, set forth alfo at the charge of the faid Company, under the command of Mafter Beniamin Isfeph, Chiefe Captayne and Generall of the faid Fleet.

C. H. A. F. 6. Troubles by Ice. Hackluyes Head-land in Greenland.

We set sayle out of Telberie Hope the fourth of May, and came to an anchor the same day in Lee Road, where we stayed till the next morning, then wee fet fayle againe and went forth to We went forth

We proceeded in company of the Fleet, and met with firegling Ice the fine and twentieth of We proceed in company of the action of the parties which were partied without danger, hol10. minutes. ding on our courie all that day, till time of mid-night; then we found the Ice fo close packt together, that we were forces to tacke about, and frand to the Westward, till wee found more open paffage; wee plyed through it without any great danger, till the eight and twentieth day: but then being in fight of Land, we passed among it very much Ice all the fore-noone, which lav no great abandarice on both fides of vs: but a defire (as it feemes) to get through it, drew vs on to be the more intangled with it for about noone we could neither find a p. flage to goe forward, mor way to retyre backe agains, but being nine thips and two Pinnaffes (for the Professor and

the Defer lofbCompany through foule weather, the one and ewentieth of May, otherwise we had beene thirteene layle) we began very fuddenly to bee inclosed and that vp with Ice. Now maine, canied a flauter and a Grapuell cobe carried torth, and laid woon a great Hand of Ice, and fails the Ice. majors, cultivariants amore attraption sourcestricti cours, said said your agrees and or recand talks the lee-is were distributed Anchory and by chebreleness were thysic from forceable ruthing against other Ma. The said process affective and we had forth an anchorder furer word; and made fenders of an old Ca. It; which was hung ouer the ships sides to keepe the Ice from piercing of her plankes. Wee rid thus from the right and twentieth of May till the second of lung, fill floating as the wind droue vs

20 with our anchor, holding Hand, which now we seconfitted as the shoare, and made vie thereof accordingly, for vpon it our Carpenter fealed and trimmed our lefferfhallon.

Conchetecord of June we had a great homeming Sea, the wind being at North-west, whereby we judged we were not farte from an open Sea to windward of ys; there wee resolued to make tryall what we might doe, to free surfelues out of the Ice. In the afternoone about three a clock we got aboard our Anchor, letting full our fore top-layle, and putting forthour M zen; and clock we got about our Anchor, tetting full our roce top-bayte, and potting forthour M. zen; and fo droce a fleme for a while, cill the floating lland gaine ways then weeffield out top-layle, and attempted duers place where to pails, but that repails and fell afteron agains; nor withintanising at the length we prictuyled, and with multihador we recayled at rophs, Set at a North; and by we goe cleer West Sonner, parting very glady from thefie ill neighboring llands; which at our parting of the kee, from them game we or rather received from we force, but whileft we remay sed among it them they feemed much more perillous their they proued hurtfull, fo wee prayfed God for our fafe deliuerance, wifning that the rest of the thips which we left in the Ice, were as cleere out of

it as was the Thomafore, marte, mar y inches as was the 1 gomes present and the open Sea to the Westwards, we proceeded to the Northwards keeping Weemet wish the Ice full on our flarboord fide, and me with the TMay And Sarab, that got also free of the the Man And Lie the fifthed by that we come forth of its weekep company together till the next day when Santo being as high as Prince Cheric Halth we both dood in frostne floorer, the Mary An-Sarab going for Bel-found, her aff gned Harbour; but we proceeded to the Fore-land, where when wee Wecame to 40 came the fixt of lune, where met with two shallops that belonged to the Defire, wherein was the Fare land.

Cambers Applyard, and Wrilliam Schumer Harmoniers; by whom we wider flood, that the Proferous and the Define had more definedly profipered, thereall whe reft of the Fleet, they ecaped the danger that all the reft fell into, and came to the Fore-Land the third of Lune, finding the

Here was yet no works begunne, for they had not feene one Whale fince their comming into the Harbour, fo that for we there was no cause of stay to bee helpfull vnto them, and therefore we proceeded to the Northward, hoping to find the shoate fill as free from Ice, as it was at this We proceeded place; but it fel out contrary to our expectations, for being come as farte as Mandles Sound, in the to the Northlatitude of 70 degrees 34, minutes, we met with some stragling ke, and from the mayne top we Mandes nationed young the said Hartings Head-hand, which feemed to bee close to the floare, sended therefore we fent former men in a finding to Mandler Samuel to bee if it were open, that wee Hartings might harbour our ship there, and search for a leake which wee found her subject voto in fould Head land.

The Sound was open and we anchored in a good Harbour, but the Ice was not gone cleere in Minister from the fhoare, therefore we could not hale our thip aground, but we carined her and let vp our Biscaine shallop which we carried with we out of England in pieces.

The next day after our comming hither I went forth in a little fhallop (the other being then I went forth in wnfer together) to fee how the Ice lay at Hacklusts Head-land, and whether we might paffe with a shallon our ship that way or no. Being come forth of the Harbour, we perceited, that it was very foule weather at Sea, not with flanding I proceeded into Faire Hauen, where the South Harbour wis

then open, but much Ice lay then in the Sound unbroken from floare to thoare; other wife wee might have palled that way to Hackleys Head-land, betwist the Hand and the maytle Land, we flayed here till the next morning , then the weather beganne to cleere vp, and wee parforth to Sea againe, intending to goe without the llands : but being out of the Harbour wet found the

We fet favle followed the

degrees 40.

minutes. Wee flood a.

gaine for

fhoare.

foule weather to be such, as our little weake shallop was notable to endore, therefore we returned againe to out thip into Mandlen Sound, where we killed two Female Morfes, and took their Teeth, Hides and Blubber.

On the tenth of June we fet fayle out of Maniden Sound, and coasted along to the Northward, till we were pail Hacklayts Head land, but then we law the Ice lye before vs, extending wars, the wewer pair reseasons reson some times we saw the next to become r, executing close to the longer, do that nor vo to paffe further that way, it was not possible: therefore were turned to the Westward, to see if we could finde passage further from the shoar. We favled as the Ice trended Weft and Weft South-weft till the thirteenth day, and keeping fulla-Prince Charles longft it, we found it to trend neerest South and South South-west, we proceeded well thus far. till we came vnder the latitude of Prince (borles his Iland, in 78. degrees 40. minutes, being 10. eight and twentie leagues from shoare, but then we altered our course, and stood in for the Foreland, to goe and be helpfull to the other thips there for the furthering of their Voyage according to our Instructions (as some did vnderstand them) but contrary I am sure to some of our defires. When we came neere the Fore-land, we faw cleuen ships of Hollanders under fayle, plying to Eleuen Holland the Southwards; one of them came roome towards vs, and strucke her top-skyles twice, thips.
We anchored whereby we supposed they tooke vs for some of their Fleete, which they wanted, but wee in Sir T. Smiths held on our course still into Sir Thomas Smiths Bay, where we came to an anchor the fifteenth of lune, by the lobn-Anne-Francis, and the Defire, the Mary Margares being then underlyle to go

Here was yet no need of any helpe that we could make them, for they had hitherto neyther an killed nor feene one Whale fince their first comming in hither; therefore we thought it best not to flay here, but rather goe to Faire Haues, where wee should bee more readie to proceed on our Discourtie when the Lee would give vs leave, and in the meane-time wee might bee helpfull to Discourte with the temporal of the making of their Voyage, and to much the rather wee hafled, because we viderstood that the Hallanders also set forth a ship on Discourie.

We were driuen backe a-

Croffe-road.

We fee fayle

out of Croffe-

We fet fayle the feuenth of June, and met with the Proferow, that came from Crofe-road, and We went forth was going into Sir Thomas Smith; Bay, there to get some Bricke and Lime to mend their Fornace, as Nicholas Woodcocke the Mafter told vs, then we went forth to Sea, and being about foure leagues from the shoare, the winde began to blow so hard from the North-west, that wee were forced back agains to feek Harbour, and came to an anchor the nineteenth of Iune, in Croffe-read, 30 Here we stayed two dayes, much wind blowing at the North North-east, till the one and twentieth of Iune, and then in the after-noone the wind came to the East and by South, and the weather was faire, therefore at a North North-west Sunne, we weighed and let sayle againe, and so did the Thomas Bonauenture, that came to an anchor by ve this morning, beeing also bound for Faire Hauen.

This next day in the afternoone we were thwartof Mandlen Sound, and the weather being faire and calme, we fent a shallop to the Northward; to see what alteration there was amongst the Ice, and to feeke out some good Harbour for a shipy and also to fet up the Kings Armes at Hacklusts Head-land, or some other convenient place.

When Matte Affin was gone from the thip in the forefaid failiop, I went prefently into the 40 other shallop into Mandian Sond, there we to the when time and also to see if there were the other time any Mories come ashour; when I was within the Sond, I found no Beeches bare for Morfesto Maudien Sound. come vpon : for Ice and fnow lay vet vndiffolued from the shoare side, but I went to the Harbour, and there caused a Croffeto beset vp, and the Kings Armes to bee nayled thereon; vnder which also I nayled a piece of sheet Lead, whereon I ies the Moscoure Companies Marke, with the day of the moneth and yeere of our Lord. Then cutting vp a piece of Earth, which afterward I carried aboard our ship, I tooke it into my hand and faid, in the hearing of the men there in Trimitie Har. prefent to this effect.

Itake this piece of Earth, as a figne of lawfull possession (of this Countres of King Iames his New-land, and of this particular place, which I name Trinitic Harbour) taken on the behalfe of the 50 Company of Merchants , called the Merchants of New Trades and Discouries , for the vicof our Company of Cricicanus, causainos criscantes, of great Brittaine, France, and Ireland, whose Trainis Haber Royall Armsi are here fer up, to the end that all people who lball here arrise may take unite of his Mar.

testies Right and Title to this Country, and to every part thereof. God fane King lames. parallel of 793 . This is a good fafe harbour, and is voder the latitude of 79, degrees 34, minutes, as I have found by good observation, and have of Westerly variation 25, degrees. When I had here set up the We came to an Kings armes, I returned to ward our thip, which was come to an auchor at the entrance of Fabre benen, flaying till the floud came, because that at the Tide of Ebbe, there runnes a great current. out of the Sound; fo at the next floud, we came into Faire bauen and anchored by the Gamaliel and the Thomas Bonamenture, the three and twentieth day of Iune.

Then lobs Majon, Master of the Gamalies, came abourd of our ship, and I asked him if he had any worke for our men, for I would cause them to come a shore : he told me, that hitherto he had not seene a Whale come in, but his Furnaces and Coppers were already set vp, and therefore as yet he had no neede of helpe, but when occasion ferued he would imploy them. This day about

elemen a clocke Mafter Baffin returned in the Shallop from the Northwards : he faid that he had beene at Cape Barren, which is the point of an Iland three or four leagues from Hackluits head turned from land, but further then that he could not paffe for Ice which lay close to the shore, and he had not the North-Ger up the Kings armes in any place.

On Munday the feuen and twentieth day of Iune, I went forthagaine in the Shallon to the Gape Bartin Northward, partly to fee what alteration there might be in the Ice, with the Eafterly windes which had blowne hard fince the Shallop last returned, but chiefely to let vp the Kings armes in some place concernent, because there was none fet up to the Northwards of Mandlen found.

We rowed to Cape Barren, where formerly Mafter Baffin had bin, and finding the Ice there to gone from the shore, we proceeded further to an Iland which now we call the Saddle, in respect Saddle lied. of the forme thereof, more then a league diffant from Cape Barren. In our way thither it began to fnow, and grew to be a great and vehement from the West North-west, therefore we hafted and got to the lee fide of the aforefaid Hand, and there made fast our Shallop with a grapnell laid upon the leie shore, ving the best meanes we could with our shallops saile to keepe vs from the extremities of fo cold an harbour : we fluid here eight houres, and the florme continued drining the Ice still Eastward in great abundance and with wonderfull swiftnesse: when the weather began to cleere, I cauted the men to rowe to Leewards to another lland a league diffant,

20 which feemed then to be a Cape of the maine land, purpoling there to fet vp the Kings armes; but afterwards wee found it to be an Hand, and to the maine wee could not come for bro-This fformie weather continued from Munday night till Friday morning, during which time

we had beene but eleauen leagues at the furtheil from our ship, yet went we so tarre as we could hauegone, had the weather beene neuer so faire; for at foure leagues distance from Cape Barrenth: Ice lay firme and vnbroken two or three miles from the shore, and close agains to it lay the hattered Ice thronged together with this prefent ftorme. On Friday morning we came backe agains to Hackluits headland, and there I fet the Kings Iulie.

armes in the like manner as at Trositie Harbour : from thence we rowed towards our ship, and as we entred into Faire-basen, there came a Whale that accompanied vs into the harbour leaping The Whiles and advancing him felte almost quite out of the water, falling headlong downe againe with great began now to 30 noile; we halted aboord our ship, and I fent forth both our Silallops to strike this Whale if they coacin.

could, and told Mafter Majon of her comming in, who also went forth in his Shallop: but it feemes the Whale part under the Ice which lay yet unbroken betwixt the North harbour and the South harbour, for they could not fee her againe. The next day there came more Whalesin, and Robert Hambleton, our Masters mate strucke Two Whales

two, which valuckily elcaped; the first for want of helpe; the Gamaliels Shallop being in chase escaped, of another Whale, and our owne little Shallop not able to row against a head-sea to affist the other: fo that at length the Whale having towed the Shallop forth to Sea, the harpingiron came out : the fecond was also strucken within the found, and ranne under the Ice, which lay yet vnbroken at the East end of the Sound, and drew the Shallop upon it cleare out of the water; by 40 which meanes the Harpingiron came forth. Here we remained till the fixt of lulie, our men and Boates being helpefull at all times to further the Voyage.

The fixt of Julie we let faile forth of Faire-banen, intending to make triall if wee could to get to Westwards of the Ice, and so proceede to the Northwards, having fent away one of our Shal- We came forth lops the day before, prouided with twentie dayes Bread, to coast along ft the shoare, search the of Faire buten Beach for Commodities, and fet vp the Kings Armes at places convenient, hoping thereby to prevent the Hollanders, who now rid in the North harbour of Faire-hauen, and were ready for the first opportunitie, to discouer and take possession of other harbours, having two Ships to goe forth onely vpon Discouery.

We failed Weltwards from Faire-hauen feuen leagues, and then met with a maine banke of Ice which trended North & South, the Sea appeared to the Northwards to be open so far as we could We met with which trended North & South, the Sea appeared to the Northwards to be open to far as we could be so the Northon every fide, that we werebard from proceeding any further; then we flood in toward the flore, wards and being a little to the Northwards of Cape Barren, our Shallop had fight of vs, & came rowing Our Shallop to vs through the broken Ice, Maiter Baffin told vs the shore to the Eastward was much pestered came to vs. with Ice, and he had fet up the Kings armes at the entrance of a faire Sound , about foure leagues diftant from Cape Barren.

Now the weather being faire and calme, Master Sherwin, Master Baffin and I, went in the Shallop to the place where the Kings Armes were fet vp, purpoling (because the syre was very cleere) to goe vpon some high mountaine, from whence we might see how the Sea was pestered 60 with Ice, and what likelihood there was of further proceeding. According to this our intent, we ascended a very high hill, and from thence we saw the Icelye vpon the Sea so farre as we could different, to that the Sea feemed to be wholly toured with Ice, take onely to the Eastwards : we thought that we faw the water beyond the Ice, which put vs in some hope that we should ere long get paffage with our Shallops along the shore, if we could not passe with our shippe. Being

The (hallop re-

Weventned towards Faite

thus fatisfied, we returned abord our ship and plyed towards Faire basen, aduling amongst our felues of the best course we could to further the businesse committed vato vs. We refolued to make our discovery along the shore with both our Shallops, and to carry with

We intended

vs our prouision for the Whale-killing, conceiuing good hopes besides, of profit which the beaches would afford vs : therefore we intended when our ship was brought sate into harbour againe, to goe from her with both our Shallops, and to put in practife this our late resolution. But the weather falling calme, and a fogge succeeding, which continued three dayes, so that our ship came not into harbour till the twelfth of July; I went from her the eleventh day, intending to I went forth in fearch the Beaches, till Master Baffin came to me with the other Shallop, and then we to proceede both together: but before he came, I had gone so farre as that the Ice would not suffer mee to passe a Boates length further, and I had also searched a very faire Beach which was altogether IO Matter Baffin came to me at a place appointed the foureteenth day of Iulie, in the other Shal-

Mafter Baffin the other Shal-

lop, and we proceeded both together to the Eastwards againe, and found passage amonest the Ice about a league further then I had lately beene, fo that we came to the firme Ice, that lav almost two miles from the thoare of Red-beach, vnbroken vp this yeare. Here wee haled vp our Shallops out of the water, left the broken Ice which is carried to and fro with the winde, might plit them or brufe them : then Mafter Baffin and I with foure men more walked over the firme Ice and went ashore on Red-beach, where we trauelled about the space of three miles by the there file, but found no commodities as we expected to have done; for here had the Hulmen been Weehailedour in 1612. as we might know by fires that they had made, and gathered the fruites that many yeares before had brought forth. Thus as we could not finde that which wee defired to fee. fo did we behold that which we wished had not beene there to be seene, which was great abundance of Ice, that lay close to the shore and also off at Sea so farre as we could discerne; wherefore being thus fatisfied, and more wearie to know that we could paffe no further, then with trauailing to farre, we returned to our Shallops, and went abourd of our Ship in Faire banen on Sunto our Shallop day the feuenteenth of July, passing the neerest way betweet the llands and the maine Land, for

now the Ice was broken betwixt the South-harbor where we rid, and the North harbour, where The next day we fent our Shallop to the North-east side of Faire hauen, there to lye for the 10 comming of the Whales over against the Gamabels two Shallops that Iye on the other fide for the fame purpofe.

chor againe.

The twentieth of July, wee were vnder faile to goe forth of Faire banen with the Gamaliel. We were varieties of unity we were true and to got and anchor againe where we rid before.

Wekilleda

On the one and twentieth of July, our Harponiers killed a Whale, which iplit one of our Shallops and firucke the Harponier that was in her overboord; but both hee and the reft of the men were relieued and taken into an other Shallop ; then we fent our Carpenter to mend the Shallop 40 that was split; and on the five and twentieth day they helpt to kill another Whale. On the fixe and twentieth of July, I drew the plat of Faire banen, as it is here projected (but

here too coftly to infert.)

August. We went to the North-Shallops.

When this Scoale of Whales were past, we went out of Faire banen the first of August with both our Shallops, Mafter Baffin in the one, and I in the other, with fine men more in each Shallop, thinking that now we should finde the Ice broken and cleere gone from the shore, conceining fome good hope to proceede and make fomenew discourry, which was the chiefe occasion of our imployment. Wee passed ouer Red cliffe-Sound, which we found cleare of Ice; and from thence we proceeded to Red-beach, where we also found great alteration fince our last being there, not with standing the Ice was not cleerely voided from the shore; for in some places it was firme and wnbroken off, for the space almost of halfe a mile: so we rowed alongst it, till wee came neere 10 We port to the North end of the Beach which lyeth furthest into the Sea, and there we found an open way to the shore with our Shallops, and went on land; but seeing in all places great abundance of Beach with our broken Ice. we lay close to the shoare, and doubting that although perhaps with much adoe, we might get about the point of the Beach, yet should we still be pettered with Ice from proceeding any further, we resolved to walke over land, to the other side of the Beach, where we faw a hill about four miles diffant; from which we thought we should be satisfied, how much further it was possible for vs to proceede; so thither we traugiled, where when we came, wee faw a very faire Sound on the Falt fide of the Beach which was open within, but there lay very much Ice at the entrance of it, which although it was extended more then halfe over Sound, yet we doubted not but if we could get our Shallops about the Beach, we should finde either one way or other to 60 paffe over the faid Sound, & from the high land on the other fide, we should receive very good fatisfaction, if the weather continued faire and cleare as now it was, therefore we intended to make triall what we might do but before we returned we went down to the point of the Beach, at the

entrance of the Sound, and there fet up a Croffe, and nailed a fixe pence thereon with the Kings Armes. This being done, we returned to our Shallops, and according to our late determination. The kings Armes. 1 mis being about the point of Red beach, and with many crooked windings amongst the Ice, at you with many crooked windings amongst the Ice, at you with length we got ouer Wiches Sound (for fo it is now named.)

ngui we got out it have a series other fide, about two leagues from Red-beach, Mafter Baffir Wepaffed out and I clambred up a very high hill, from whence we saw a point of land bearing East North-east. Wither Sound: by the ordinary Compasse eighteene or twentie leagues diftant, as I supposed. Wee likewise saw another faire Sound to the Southwards of vs, which was much peftered with Ice, but we could not fee the end of it. Here vpon the mountaine wee fet vp a Warelocke, and then came downe

To againe with leffe labour, but more danger then we had in getting up, by reason of the steepinesse We found thereof: then we walked to the shoare fide, and there found many beach Finnes, whereby I conjedured that Mafter Marmadakes men in his first discouery, made in Anno 1612. had not beene woon this land to fearch the Beaches, for in all other places where we had beene heretofore, we could finde nothing at all. Now therefore we refolued to make further fearch along & this shoare. and to proceede with our Shallops fo farre as we possibly could : whereupon wee returned to our men againe whom we left with our Shallops, where we first landed.

Hauing flayed here a while and observed the latitude which I found to be 79. degrees \$4.minutes, we law a Shallop come rowing towards the extreamest point of this shoare, therefore we We met with nates, we law a Station office who were therein, and found them to be Mafter Marmadules men, Shalloo, larely come from their (hip the Hartf-eafe, which they faid they left at Sea amongst the Ice, about 20 a league from Red Beach : here they were fetting vp a Croffe, which they faid that they found a reague from Assa, and had beene formerly fet vp in the time of Master Marmadules first disco- Note, uery, by one Laurence Prestwood, whose name I law thereon engrauen, with two or three names more, and it had the date of the feuenteenth of August 1612. Vpon this Croffe they nailed the

arms arms. Fiere we parted from them, and according to our former determination we proceeded, some in the Shallops amongst the Ice, and others on shoare, till wee went about foure leagues further: in which space we found many more Finnes, and one paire of Morfes teeth, but now we found the I ce fo close packe together, that wee could not proceede any further with our Shallops : the 10e to the passes to the total and passes and passes any instant with our banapa; 30 wherefore Malter Amps and I intended to walke our-land writing the hould be better faitfail field how farre this Sound went in, for wee could as yet fee no end of it, and it feemed to make a

fenaration of the land; fo leaving our men here with the Shallops, wee travailed almost a league further will we came to the point of a fandie beach, that thot into the Sound, which was wonderfully ft ored with drift Wood in great abundance. From this point we received fuch fatisfaction mily it ored with a the we faw the end of the Sound which lies South in about ten leagues. It Theepd of Sir hath in it a good harbour that is landlockt, and doubtleffeit is a good place for the Whale-killing Thomas Smiths then any that I have feene in all the Conner, but nothing growing thereupon more than in or red, there places. This Sound is that which formerly had and ftill retained the name of Sir Thomas 40 Smiths Indet. if it be not every yeare as now it is peftered with Ice. Here I faw a more naturall earth and clay Inlet discoun-

Being thus fatisfied, we came backe againe to our Shallops, and feeing no way but one, we returned towards our Ship; but before we could get to Red beach, there arole a very great storme Werenurned turned towards our Ship; but Detore we could get to are-proper, there are to a way great with the from the Eaft North-eaft, after we had entered amongst the Ice in Wichet Sound, in that we were Shim from the East votertuesta, sittle we had entertue amongs the ten in 1992 persons to that we were Ship feparated the one Shallop from the other, whereby our danger was the greater: for whiles were A thornels-were both in company together, the one might haue beene helpfull to the other when neede te-gan when we quired, and more cafie it leemed to faue them both, then being separated to keepe either of them were amount from wracke; but God (who in his wonted mercie is ever ready to relieve the faithfull diffreffed) Ice. did not onely fo prouide that we met together againe, and indeede were helpefull the one to the other (other wife I doubt the one Shallop had miscarried, for the was in great danger) but also deother (other wife a wond amongst these perillous rockes of Ice, which it was very hard to shum, of the Ice.

50 and at the length brought vs into an open Sea, where with as scant a faile as we could make, we paft (wifely before the winde, the Sea comming divers times over the sternes of our Shallops, which wet our skinnes, that had scarse any dry cloathes on before to keepe them warme, b reason of a drizeling Snow which fell with the storme : then we went abourd our Ship into the We came a South harbout of Faire basen, the fift of August, with one hundred and fiftie Beach finnes, and one boord our ship. paire of Morfes teeth, giving thanks to God for his bleffing and mercifull deliverance.

ire of Morfes teeth, giving thanks to God for his blefting and merciful deliverance.

The minth of August, two ships of the Hollanders, that were appointed for Northerne Discourcers

very, were seene thware of Faire Hanen, sayling to the Southwards. The eleventh of August, we set sayle forth of Faire Hanen, the winde at South South-west, Our Ship 6c intending to make tryall, if yet the Ice would admit vs to have paffage to the Northwards or wentforth to the North-eastwards. We held our course from Cape Barren, North-east and by East, till seven Sea. the North-eattwards. We held our courie from Cape Barron, North-eatt and by East, this teen was a clocke at right, at which time having runne eight leagues from the floare, we met with the We englether which lay East and by South, and West and by North, and bore up alongst it to the East. It explicit floar wards, for the winde was now come to the North North-west; then wee tackt about to the the shore,

We plyed off

Westwards, and plyed off and on close by the Ice, till the thirteenth day at mid-night, sillexpecting a change of the weathr, that we might have made some adventure among it the shattend and on the lee wo dayes. Ice, for both on the twelfth and thirteenth day, the winde blew hard at North, and the weather was cold, thicke, and very winter-like with fall of frow: this winde being focontratie, droue both the Ice and our ship to leewards towards the shoare, so that wee were forced to put into Harbour againe, and came to an Anchor the fourteenth day in the North Harbour of Wee anchored Faire Hauen, where the Fleet of Hellanders lately rid, at which time the Harrfeafe was there are

North Harbor,

Now was the Land both Mountaynes and Plaines wholly courted with snow; so that almost all mens mindes were possessed with a desire of returning for England: But to prevent a sudden to refolution for a homeward Voyage without further fatisfaction, I made motion that once as aims we might goe forth with our shallops, to see what alteration there might bee found along the fhoare. It fell out that I was to goe in one shallop for this purpose, fo I tooke with me eight men. and went from our thip the fifteenth day of August. We rowed to Red-cliffe Sound, where we passed through much Ice that was newly congealed

I went to the Eastwards in a fhallop. Ice was newly go once to Point Defire.

Ice was newly We rowen to act as support of the sup and being ouer the Sound, we had a cleere Sea againe; then we proceeded to Red-beach, where finding the shoare cleere of Ice (which at my last being there was wonderfully pestered) I conceiued good hope to finde passage to the furthest Land from thence in fight, bearing East halfea point Southerly, nine, or ten leagues distant; to this end we put off from the shoare of Real-Beach, 20 and rowed a league and more in an open Sea, and then met with Ice which lay difperfed abroad. and was no hinderance to our proceeding, so that we continued rowing the space of fixe hours. in which time we had gotten more then halfe way ouer: but then we found the Ice to lye very thicke thronged together, so that it caused vs much to alter our course, sometimes Southward and fometimes Northwards, and even in this time, when we thought wee flood in most need of cleere weather, it pleased God to send we the contrary, for it beganne to snow very fait, which made the Ayre to thick that we could not see to make choice of the most likely way for vs to made the Ayer of things the design and the second and accordance must make way for visits partie, therefore I thought good to flay here a while, hoping that ere long the weather would be more agreeable to our purpole; to a Grapnell being laid forth vpon an Iland off, to hold fat our fhallop, a Tent was made of the shallops sayle to keepe the weather from vs, and we remayned 30 here fine houres, but finding no alteration in the conftant weather, I willed the men to take downe the Tent, and with faire tearmes perswaded them , that notwithstanding the wet weather, it were good to be doing fomething, to get ouer to the defired shoare, where we might refresh our selues, and haue fire to dry our wet clothes; they seemed well content with this motion, and so we rowed the space of foure houres more, the Ice still causing vs to hold a South and South South-east courfe, which carried vs further into Sir Thomas Smiths Inlet, and put vs from the place where we wished to be.

T could not

The thicke snowie weather continued all this time, which was very vncomfortable to vs all, but especially to the men that rowed; and as the snow was noysome to their bodies, so did it also begin to assomish their mindes, as I well perceived by their speeches, which proceeded upon 40 The original this occasion. The fnow having continued thus long, and falling vpon the smooth water, lay in fome places an inch thicke , being alreadie in the nature of an Ice compact, though not congealed, and hindred sometimes our shallops way; this I say caused some of them, not altogether without reason to say, that if it should now freeze as it did that night when we came ouer Red-

this time, and therefore I bade them row toward the shoare of Red-beach againe, where I intended to flay till the weather might happily be more convenient. So holding a West North-west course, so necre as the Ice would fuffer vs, wee came to the East-side of Red-beach, having beene 50 eighteene houres amongst the Ice, during all which time the snow fell, and as yet cealed not. When we had been here about an houre it began to cleere vp, and the wind to blow hard at East, which rather packe the Ice close together in this place then differst it, so that I was now out of hope to get any further then I had beene alreadie: wherefore I returned toward our flip, inten-Ireturned to- ding as I went to make a more particular Discouerie of Bread-bay, and Red-cliffe Sound, hoping wards our thips that one place or other would afford some thing worthy of the time and labour, When we were come to the West side of Red-beach, it began to blow much wind, where withall the Sea growing to be great, all men admied to passe over Broad-bay, whilst the winde and weather would ferue vs to fayle, for they faid it was like to be very foule weather : fo feeing that it was no conuchient time for coasting, we came ouer the Bay to Point Welcome (which I so named because it 60 is a place, where wee oftentimes rested, when wee went forth in our shallops) it is about source leagues distant from the North end of Red beach. At this point the Hollanders land fet vp Prince Maurice his Armes, neere vnto a Croffe which

cliffe Sesend, we should be in danger here to be frozen vp. Howsoeuer this search might bee a

meanes to difcourage the reft, that considered not of such a thing till they had heard it spoken of: yet true it is, that I faw no likelihood, by reason of the Ice, how to attayne my defire at

I had caused to bee set vp aboue a moneth before, and had nayled a sixe pence thereon with

the Kings Armes, but the men that were with me, went (without any such direction from mee) and pulled downe the faid Princes Armes, whilft I was gone vp a Mountayne to looke into the Sea, if I could fee any Ice and when I came downe agains they told me, that the fix pence was taken from the Croffe that I had fet vp, and there was another post fet by it, with the Hollandars Armes made fast thereon, which they had pulled downe; fo, because the fix pence was taken The Kines away, I caufed one to nayle the Kings Armes cast in Lead vpon the Crosse : which being done Armes are fet we rowed to the bottome of Red-cliffe Sound, and as we coafted along it the shoare, we searched up agains at two little Beaches, which had fome wood on them, but nothing that we found of batter value. Point Welcome. to little Beaches, which nad fome wood on them, our nothing that two leagues within the Someton the East fide there is an Harbour where shappes may Red cliffs

ride in good ground Land lockt, but if other yeeres be like this, I cannot fay that it man Har. Sand. 10 bour fitting for thips; because it is lase ere the Sound breake vp; for even now there key much Ice at the bottome of it, infomuch, that I was forefit to leave the shallop, because I coold not paffe with her for Ice, and walke two miles over flame Mountaynes, with another manitumy company"; to bee fairsfied to meeting a point of Land that they into the Sound, whether it were an Illudor 'rid', as thy all likelihood it feemed to bee "but when I came to the fartheft part of it, "Ylaw it joyne to the mayne Land , wherefore I called it Point Deseit, becaule it decei. Point Deteit,

ued mee formuch. From hence wee proceeded toward our shippe, and came aboord of her in the North Harbour of Febre Hauses, on Friday night being the hinteenth of August, where the out this.

out hip, rid alone; for Mafter Marmadule was gone forth to Sea that day.

The two and twentieth of August, Tehn Majon Master of the Gamaliell, came ouer from A Whole lay In the two and the charge of a Whale which had beene limbe four tenne dayes, in funker four-ties built Harbour for helpe to hayle op a Whale which had beene limbe four tenne dayes, in funker four-one hundred and twentie fachome depth, or elfe to pull the Warpe and Harping Iron out of her, tene dayes. for now it was time to take her or forfake her. Matter Shenois our Mafter caufed our long Boate to bee manined and went with him; when they came where the Whale was funke, they Boate to bee manned any wester-witnesses; where up of annewhere the written was season, they hated a high fire prefettly role; belief in didenly who with a chandring cracke made with the burding of the body of the season of th

anchoted by ward; and anchoted by but thing an house after.

A vision and find anchoted by but thing an house after.

A vision and finde my last returns hither in vision and finde my last returns hither in vision wear wear and warms were the first warms. the shallop from the Eastwards, the weather hash beene commonly warme, and the Mount ther in the end 30 taynes were now more chere of Snow, then they had beene any sime this yeere, notwith- of August. funding there had much showe fallen since the beginning of this moneth, but it was quite confumed, and a greater figne of warmth and thaw was now to bee observed then they time of the yeere herectione; namelyl, by the often falling of the Ice into the Sea from the huge inowiebank?, making a muyfe like Thunder, to that the time was very hopefull, but thus wee

made vie of occasion offered

The fenen and twentieth of August, it was faire and warme weather , calme till noone, We fer fishere then had wee a gale of winde from the South South-week, wherewithall wee fet tayle out the Esthward, Four-blane in the company of the Hamfalf, with white weekad beene in termer of confort-tion of the south of the Hamfalf, with whole weekad beene in termer of confort-to hip, but bothing was concluded. About this accompanying was west fixe leagues from Cape

the, bottletting was concessed. Amout that appeared an appeared with the processed of the total North-amount, and on the eight analysis mixtured the morning were had runner about twenties legging thom Cape Harvey in an East North-actively in the cordinary Company, but the cord the ordinary Compality, being open at Sit I beams Sames; same, must or tenne legges from the floare; at which time were were come to the Ice, that tredded Ealt Southieast? and West North-west, but the Sea being very being, week flood off spaint from the test in the afternoone The Thomson it fell calme, and at night we had a gale of winde at East, and the ship was steered West, and then recomes for South-west homewards.

The nine and twentieth day, the winde Eafterty an eafre gate; at foure a clocky in the noone Hardingto Hand, and box from vs South eaft by Eaft foure brights diffare; I in Coloning

50 was very warme. The thirtieth day, the winde at North eaft an eafle gale, at four a tlocke in the afternoon Mandlen Point bore Baft North eaft halfe a Point Entlerly above the a leagues in the afternoon the same of the Evening it fell calme, the weather not cold.

- The thirtieth day, faire Sunne-thine weather and calme till noone, and then we had a good gale of winde from the North-east, being five leagued diftant from the Fore-hand, which bore South-east; now wee altered our courle and frood to the West-ward; therefore so keeps vs ftill in the parallel that now wee were in which was 79 degrees 8 minutes, Weft Northwest Westood to

ruii in the paraitet that now were were in within was you regress which was you become was directed, in respect of the Variation, to make good a trivite West way.

This course were held till we had ruining about twentile leagues a and then were rantee twentile leagues more in a West, and by North course till one a clocke on Friday more sing; are which time it fell calme; and wee heard the Sea make a great noyle, as if wee had beens neere Land, but wee rather judged it to bee Ice, as indeed it proued to bee, for in the morning when it

727

I came about

bore in the contract of

We left the

for England,

A forme be-

ganne.

728

was light and cleere, wee faw the Ice about a league from vs, which trended Southerly, having now a gale at East North-east, wee steered away South and South South-east, but in the afternoone we were embayed with a long banke of Ice, which wee could not weather. Wee mer with therefore wee were faine to tacke about, and the winde having come more Southerly then it was in the morning, wee flood off from the Ice North-east and North-east and by Northand then to the Southwards againe, making fundrie boardes to get forth to wind-wards

> The shird day before noone, wee had fight agains of Ice to Westwards of ve, and at noone were winder the parallel of 78. degrees. 27. minutes, according to my Observation ; then wee flood a way South to keepe cleere of the Ice, for wee had a great homing Sea, although but 10 fittle winde : and therefore durft not be to bold to edge too neere it, especially the wind being Eaflerly as then it was.

On the fourth day our men faw the Ice againe from the may ne top-maft head, and therefore wee still maintayned a Southerly course; the next day it began to be foggie, and continued close weather and hazie for three dayes, fo that wee had no more fight of the Ice; neyther could wee at this time receine any further fatisfaction concerning the fame : therefree wee kept a Southerly course so neere as wee could, although wee had but little winde, and the fame very variable till the ninth day , but then weethad a good gale of winde at West

On the tenth day beeing Saturday, wee were by my reckoning fiftie leagues diftant from 20 Low-feet, which bore from vs East South-east halfe a Point Southerly; this day the wind shifted to the South-west, and at night came to the South with much raine; then came backe agains to the West North-west and began a great storme.

This meht the Mafter and others faw, a light vpon the Fore-honner, which the Saylers call a A Corpo Santo. Corpo Santo : it appeared like the flame of a Candle, and (as Sea-men observe) it alwayes prefa-It is often feen geth an enfitting fforme; which to verific, this foule weather continued the next day, and grew geth an entuling norme, which to verifie, that the Soptimizer president mere mexically, and grew to be so whemene on Sunday night, that the Soptimizer pure-raked our ship, and wee were faint to lye arry with our fore course onely, and our Mayne top-mast also strucke, which last thing (as Seamen say) is feldome done at Sea, then about one a clocke we were forced to take in our fore course, and to lye a-hull for fue houres.

The fourth day of October, the thippe came to Waping with the whole number of men that they carryed forth (my felfe excepted that was come before) being fixe and twenting all in perfect health. nerwigen and controlling of the control of the cont

A true report of a Poyage Anno 1 615. for Riscourge of Seas, Lands, and Handi, to the Northwards ; se is was performed by ROS. A.T. ROTHELLIN, M. & Pin. 40 naffe of twentie tumes called the Richard of London: fer forthat the charge of the Right Worthipfull Sir THOMAS SMITH, Knight, my very good Mafter, and Mafter RICHARD WICHE, Governours: and the reft of the Worthipfull Company of Merchants, called the Merchants of New Trades and Discourries, trading into Moscouia, and King
I A M 2 & his New Land.



Y the proudence of Almightie God I went forth of Harmith Harbourin the foreful Pinnafe, the twelfth of May, in the company of eight hippire of the foreful Pinnafe, the twelfth of May, in the company of eight hippire of the Fleet, for King Lames his New Land, who in foul eweather out highest his latitude 71, degrees, or thereabours. So I proceeded alone towards King Lames his New Land; and met with lee in latitude 73, degrees 30, minute; if flood Northern Carlwards for the waft of King James his New Land, and had fundy conflictly with the Joe in rainie and wer foggie weather, and had fight of Land the sleuenth of Lone; and on

the nineteenth of the fame I anchored in Faire Hauen. Here I stayed till the third of July for the Pinnaffe had received fome burt amongst the Ice, which to amend, I was faine to hale her aground, befides divers other things necessary to be done, which detayned mee longer then willingly I would have flayed there.

From hence Mayled Morthward, but met with Ice in latitude 79. degrees 40. minutes, being fix leagues from Hacklents. Head land, then I coafted the Iceas it lay in Points and Bayes to the 60 West wards and South-westward, and being thirtie leagues from the Land in laritude 70 degrees 10. minutes, I found it to trend Northward and North-westwards, and coasted it to the latitude

CHAP.7. Northerne Difcouerie, Error of Gronland, Kings Armes fet DP. of 70. degrees 50. minutes, but then I was embayed with Ice, and was faine to fland out againe and failed about ten leagues before I got cleere : when I was out of this Bay, I proceeded South Westerly with the Ice on the starboard to the laritude 78. degrees 20, minutes, where being fortie leagues from the shoare, I was againe embayed with the Ice, and having hall faire Perill and Sun-shine weather all the day, which made mee the bolder to stand so neere it, the weather escape. on a fudden fell foggie, and the wind beganne to blow hard at South, which put vs to great trouble and no fmall perill : but the Almightie power who hath mercitully delivered vs heretofore out of as great dangers, preferred vs alto from this : when wee were gotten cleere off the Ice, we had the Sca much growne, and the forme increasing, but being defined fill to keepe the sca, I flood close by the wind vader a payre of coarse, till the Pinnasse waxt leake with bearing too much fayle, and there was forced to lye stry voder a mayne coarse only : and although shee ftemmed South-east and South-east by South, yet was she hurried violently to the North-eastwards, and by the mercifull providence of God we fell right with the Foresland, in latitude 70. degrees, then I flood ouer Sir Thomas Smiths Bay for harbour in Crafe-read, where I anchored the thirteenth of July being Thursday. I flayed here foure dayes, in which time my men mended the Sayles and ships tackling that had received hurt by the late storme, and made a new mayne Sayle to ferue in time of need, and on the feuenteenth of July I weighed out of Crofferoad, and fayling Westwards from thence came to Ice agains in latitude 78. degrees 40. minutes, which I coafted as it lay neerest South-welt-or more Westerly, but with many Points & Baves.

wherewith I was fometimes intangled, yet, God be thanked, got cleere againe, either by helpe of Oares or Sayles without any hurt. In this fort I proceeded with good fathsfaction, although not with fo good content, till I came to the latitude of 76, degrees, beeing about one hundred leagues from Point Looke-ons, but then was croffed with a contrarie ftorme from the South-well and South South-weft, which droue me to the South-eastward, till I came in the latitude of 74. and sould sould share which most in the state of the stat at that time that I was neere Land by abundance of Fowle, which we faw in great flockes : but Fogges fuch thicke forges have continued for three or foure dayes together, that we might fooner heare

30 the Land if anywere, then fee it, and fo did we first find this Ice by hearing the rur, thinking till we faw it that it had beene Land, so that we were embayed with it, before we thought that we had beene neere it; then I flood out againe and coafted the Lee fill to the Westwards Southerly, but could fee no Land, as I expedied to have done, wrill wee came under the latitude of 71. degrees thirtie minutes, and then we espyed a snowie Hill very high in the cloudes, for this day High Hill. was very cleere at Sea, but the fogge was not yet cleered from the Land, fo that we could fee no part of it, but only the top of a mowie Mountayne, which appeared very high although wee were fourteene or fifteene leagues diftant from it, bearing off vs South-east and by South.

Then I flood in for the shoare, supposing it had beene part of the Mayne of Groynland: for the 40 fogge lay on each fide of this Mount, as if there had beene a great Continent under it but it proued otherwife, for as we came neerer to it, the fogge difperfed more and more, and when wee

were fine leagues diffant, the Land appeared in forme like an Iland.
When I came necrer the (hore, I could find no Harbor to anchor in, Notwith flanding, the weather being faire & calme, I hold out my Boat & went alhore with three men more, and fet vo the Kings Armes: then we fearched a Sandie Beach, which was abundantly flored with drift wood, Drift wood, but yeelded no other fruits, that we could find worth the taking vp, fo I returned abourd againe, and fent alhoare my Boat to fetch fome wood. But before the men had laid into her the little quantitiethat the was able to carrie, they came aboard againe, for the wind began to blow hard, and the Sea to go eloftie, so that here was no place for we so abide any beinger; otherwise I was proposed to laue fearched further along it he shoare, but this gale of winde comming Northerly I stood from hence to the Wethwards, being definous to see more Land or finde a more open Sea. And haung sayled about fafteene or sixteene leagues I mer with see again, in latitude 71. degrees,

and coafted it eight or nine leagues further Westward, and South-westward as it lay, but then the wind came to the South-west, and we stood close by it a white to the Southwards, but finding the gale to increase, and confidering that it was the most contrary which which could blow a: gainst my further proceeding (for the Ice as we found did erend neerest South-west, and besides if there had beene any high Land within twentie leagues of vs, wee might perfectly have made it, the weather was to faire and cleere.) in these respects, and for the Realins following, I tooks it, the weather was to raire and occurrence to the North-eastwards againe, being now about two hun-6C dred leagues from King Lames his New Land in latitude 71, degrees.

First, I purposed to tayle alongst the South-east side of the Land that I had discouted, to be better fatisfied what Harbours there were, and what likelihood of profit to enfire; and from thence to proceed to the place where I first fell with Ice in latitude 72, degrees when I was driuen to the South-eastwards with a Westerly storme, for I am yet verily perswaded, that being

there we were not farre from Land, although wee could not fee it by reason of thicke foggie weather. Then my aurther intent was, if I found no good occasion to spend my time there, for to coast the Ice, or try the open Sea to the Northwards, betwixt 73. and 76. degrees, where formerly I had not received defired fatisfaction by reason of aftorme that draw me off, and then I purposed, if time might seeme convenient, to proceed to the North Coast of King James his New Land, to have seene what hope was there tobe has for passage Northward, or for compass fing of the Land, which is most like to be an Iland.

I stood away East and by South, and being neere the foresaid Iland, the winde came to the West and blew a very hard gale, where with I passed alongst the South-east side of the Iland ynder a paire of coarfes, but without that fatisfaction which I expected : for the winde blowing fo Io fformie, and the Sea growne very great, I was forced to fland further from the shoare then willingly I would have done, and besides there was a thicke fogge vpon the Land, whereby I could not be fatisfied what Harbours or Roads were about it, yet might we fee three or foure Capes, or Head-lands, as if there went in Bayes betwixt them. I sayled about it, and then stood to the Northward againe, and being now affured that it was an fland, I named it Sir Thomas Smiths Hand.

This Iland is about ten leagues in length, and stretcheth North-east and South-west: it is high Land, and at the North end of it there is a Mountayne of a wonderfull height and bigneffe, all couered with Snow, which I called Mount Hack/nyt; the base or foot of it on the East fide is almost foure leagues long, it hath three such sides at the base lying out to the Sea, and from 10 the south fide doub the rest of the lland extend it selfe towards the South-west, which is also, as it were, a place fortified with Castles and Bulwarkes, for or each side there bee three or foure high Rockes which stand out from the Land, appearing like Towres and Forts. It lyes in the parallel of 71. degrees, where the Needle varieth from the true Meridian Westwards eight degrees. The Land is generally so farre as I have seene, Rockie and very barren, and worse then the Land that I have feene in King James his New Land, under eightie degrees, for there is no grafte but mosse, and where I first landed vpon low ground, all the stones were like vnto a Smiths sinders both in colour and forme, the fand is generally mixed with a corne like Amber, the Beaches are abundantly stored with drift wood and many stones, light like Pumis, which will swimme on the water. I saw many traces of Foxes and the footing of Beares, but not any figne of 30 Deere or other living creatures, and very small store of Fowle.

From hence I stood to the Northward according to my former purpose, but was croffed with a contrarie florme from the North. west which put me off to the Eastward: but as the wind shifted I made my way to the North-westwards all I could, and came againe to the Ice in latitude 74. degrees, from whence I proceeded towards King lames his New Land, and had fight of the Land the eighteenth of August, being in latitude 77. degrees 30. minutes, and having a hard gale of wind then at North-west, I stood close by it vinder a paire of coarses, but could not weatther Prince Charles Iland, and therefore I bore vp, intending to goe into Nicks Come, which is on the North fide of Ice. found, there to attend a faire winde, and in the meane time to get ballaft aboard the Pinnaffe, and all other things necessary. But comming to enter into the Harbour, I 40. thought it not a place convenient, because I could hardly have gotten out agains with a Southerly wind, which would carrie me to the Northwards, and therefore I stood over for Green-harbor, where I anchored at one a clocke in the morning, the nineteenth of August.

Here I caused my men to launch a shallop, and to get ballast and water aboard the Pinnasse, and before nine a clocke at night I was readie to proceed Northward with the first faire winde. I stayed here fine dayes, during which time it blew hard for the most part at North and Northwest, and on the foure and twentieth of August, the winde came to the East North-east as wee Supposed, till we were out of the Harbour, so I set sayle to proceed Northward, and had the wind Easterly out of Ice-found, wherewith I stood North-west towards: Cape Cold, but being cleare of the high Land, we found the wind to bee at North North-east; therefore I resoluted of another courie, which was this.

Hauing peruled Hudfons Journall written by his owne hand in that Voyage wherein hee had Hadiss Held. with beging. fight of certayne Land, which he named Hold with bepg; I found that by his owne reckoning it flioned as be. should not be more then one hundred leagues distant from King Lamer his New Land, and in the latitude of 72. degrees 30. minutes or thereabouts: therefore feeing I could not proceed Northward, I purposed to goe to the South-westwards to have fight of this Land, and discouer it, if wind and weather would permit. So I food away South-west, and sometimes West Southwest, till I had runne one hundred and thirtie leagues, and was by account in latitude 72. degrees 30. minutes, where having the wind contrarie to proceed further Westward, I stood Eastward till I had runne thirtie leagues, in which courfe I thould have feene this Land, if credit might be 60 given to Hudfour Journall, but I faw not any. And having a hard gale of winde ftill Northerly, I conceined no courfe so good to be taken at this time, as to speed homewards; and so stood to the Southwards, directing my course for England, this beeing the eight and twentieth of August. After which time the wind continued Northerly till the fixt day of September, and then wee

were on the coast of Scotland in latitude 57. degrees, and on the eight day of September had fight of the land of England on the coaft of Torkelbire. Thus by the great mercy of God have we elcaped many dangers, and after a cold Summer have some caste of a warme Autumne. All elorie therefore be to God the Father, the Sonne, and the Holy Ghoft. Amen.

CHAP.7. Fotherbyes opinion and aduice. King of Denmarks (hips.

B; this briefe Relation, and by the plat wherein I have traced the ships way vpon each seuerall trauerse it may plainly appeare, how farre the state of this Sea is discoursed betwirt 80, and 71. degrees of latitude, making difference of longitude 26. degrees from the Meridian of Hacklurts Headland.

Now it any demand my opinion concerning hope of a passage to bee found in those Seas; I To answer, that it is true, that I both hoped and much defined to have passed further then I did, but aniwer, that it is the state of peares not yet to the contrarie, but that there is a spacious Sea betwixt Groinland and King James his New land, although much pettered with Ice; I will not feeme to diffwade this worflipfull Companie from the yeerly aduenturing of 150. or 300. pounds at the most, full former difference be made of the faid Seas and Lands adjacent, for which purpose no other Yes fell would I aduise vnto, then this Pinnasse with ten men, which I hold to bee most concenient for that action , although heretofore I conceiued otherwise, but now I speake after good experience, having fayled in her out and in aboue two thousand leagues.

Ro. Fothersy.

A Letter of Robert Fotherby to Captaine Edge. written in Croffe-rode, July 15. 1615.

M After Edge , By the mercy of God I came into Crosse-road on Thursday Last , being drinen from Sea users shoure by extreme tempost. At the beginning of the storme I was unmittingly en-AVA from Sea actro-power op extreme tempty. As the negaming of the former is not unwittingly ordered with the above forthe leaguest from land, it alitated 78. Leaguest and 30 cminutes, but, thanked as 35 to God, if you cleare of 11,50 and mithout much trouble and great danger. Having pixel under two overles to and againe so long till my Pinnasse was made leaks with bearing, I tryed it under a mayne coarse and flem'd South-east and South-east and by South, notwithstanding I was burried to the Northward, and prem a some ocean enter some control more some or control more or control more or control more for the feel tight with the Forcland, which by reason of the mility florms we could not set till we were within a league of it, then I should not be the work of the some some to an anchor here, where I must be spread to stay till our league of it, then I should not set to stay till our teague of a; voen 1 pron oner roc var anne came to an amour over, where c must respectate s for side our fails to templed, and a new mayne course to temple, if not a first course falls. Then I properly to go as to Sa againe, and to proceed in costing the let to the Welfstand, if it binder me to proceed Northward. I have already conflicts from Hackluy to Headland to the latitude afressiad, and intend to beginne agains so meare as I can at the place where I was put off with the storme. I came from Paire Hauen the fourth of Inly, and then had there beene killed twelnew hales, besides one found dead, and another brought in by 40 Fra. Birkes, which he found at Sea before be came into Faire Hauen.

When I came in huber, here were three Soins and a Pissassife of the King of Denmarks; they rid in Ships of the dripe mater about a league and a half from the Read, but meighed from thence, and the Admirall came line of Dorn marke. to an anchor close by me, and sent to intreat me to come abourd of him; I went abourd and was cont-

trough entertayned by the Generall, who questioned one of the Country, and asked one by what right the English Merchants did refert and fish in this place: I told him, by the King of Englands right, who bad gracted a Patent to the Mulcouic Company of Merchants, whereby he authorizeth them, and for-hiddib all others to frequent these places. Then he entreated me to goe with him to Sir Tho, Smiths Bay, to the two Engl In Ships there. I told him, it would be loffe of time to me, because I bad some businesse here to doe, and then to goe forth presently to Sea agains to prosecute my Discourry. He faid, that he would to due me goe with him to be witnesse what passed betwick him and you, for he had matters of importance to acquaint you with all, which concerned our King and theirs, and therefore intreated me to give direction

presently to weigh and set saile, for I must needs goe with him: I replyed againe, that it would be a great lose unto me of time, and I knew not how to answer it; but he told me peremptorily that I must goe with im. So seeing no remedie, I had the Mister be readie: then he presently weighed and kept me aboord him, but afterwards meeting with the two Captaines that came from you, be returned and anchored againe in Crofte-road. I received very courteous entertaynment of the Admirall, Vice-admirall, and of Captaine Killingham: but Captaine Killingham being aboord of me, went away as be seemed, discontented, because I would not give him a young Morse I have abourd, which I denyed to doe, because I writ to m; Master from Farte Haven, that such a thing I have, and will bring alme into England, if I may. 6. When he went off about of me, he faid, he would shoot downe my stag: And some after there came a shoe which five ouer vs, out of the Admirall, and I expected another; but some after there came a man aboord of me out of the Admirall, to fee if any of your men that came in the Shallop, would gee with them

into the Bay, and be swore unto me that the shot was made to call their Boat abourd, because they were ready to weigh. As farre as I can perceine, their purpose is to see what Grant the King of England bath

made ento the Companie, for they seeme to pretend that the right of this Land belongs to the King of Denmarke, and neither to English nor Hollanders. Thus with my hearise commendations to your selfe, and Master Bredcake, together with my praiers for your prosperous voyage, I commit you

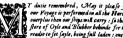
CHAP. VIII.

Diners other Voyages to Greenland, with Letters of those which were there employed, communicated to mee by Mafter WILLIAM HELEY.

An. 1616. Edges lland was discourred, and a prosperous voyage was made, all the ships being laden, under the command of Captaine Thomas Edge. An. 1617. Watches Hand was differuered; and what voyage was made appeareth in the Letter following, written to Mafter Decrow by William Heley.

Laus Deo, in Portnick the 12. of August, 1617.

Worshipfull Sir,



I dutic remembred, May it please you to understand, that through Gods blessing on Voyage is personand in all the Harbows in the Countrie this yeare, with a greater our plus then our first will carry ; sethat in some places weemist of force leave good store of Oyle and Blubber behinde for the next yeere. Wee are all for the most part readie to set sayle, being full laden : onely I desire to see the Coast cleere of Interlopers. whereby our pronisans may be left in securitie. We tooke a ship of Flushing, called the

Noahs Arke (Master, Iohn Verlile) in Horne-found , baning out of bim two bundred boolbeade of Blubber, and two Whales and a balfe to cut up, a great Copper, and diners other provisions, and fon 30 bins away ballasted with stones. There were two more of them who were gone laden with Blubber, before tion any rampice must provide the control of the co Cudner, be rid in Portnick, where he killed cleuen W hales, and made some seventie and odde tunnes of Orle, which is laden abourd him and his Finnes. In whom, if our firps had come together shither as I desired, I would have laden fortie or fiftie tunnes of Oyle in him, and displaced his men and sent him for actives, I would come time of view or spire immes of the sem, and diplaced to some and feet him for England; but do weather insuing own fine getting chither, and his fedden departure after our com-ming in with the Pleasure, shee being laden and not sufficiently fitted to surprise him, he escaped, but I sent her away in company with him, whereby he may not doe any have on other places to the Country. I would have had him to have taken in some Oyle, for which I effered him fraight, so I might put some men 40 into him to see to it, and that it might be brought safe to London: but be resulted, yet prosesses, be parposeth to bring his ship and goods to London: his voyage is by the thirds, so that his men will rather dre then forgoe that they have got. The small ship Iolin Ellis is returned from the South Eastward, having made some further discourry, and killed some eight hundred Seamorse, and laden the teeth, and thirtie made jome journey and the state of the state in Oile: be brought some Sca. bor se blobber with him. He met with Thomas Marmaduke of Hull in those parts, who had not done any thing when he saw him towards making a voyage, but went for Hope Iland, and no doubt but bee will doe much foile there. As for the Beare Shee departed for Hamborough the third of Angust out of Croste-road; and the Gray-hound Beate, free departies for England, who, I bope, is safely arrived, and by whom I bope you understand of 50

The Whales killed this yeere in the Country are about one hundred and fiftie in number, and the Oyle made will be about one thousand eight bundred and odde tunnes, besides the blubber left for mant of cashe. The lading of this spip is one bundred and eightic tunnes, as by the Bill of lading here inclosed. Thus having not further wherewith to acquaint your Worship, with all praying God to send all home in fafety with a good paffage; I bumbly take my leave, and doe rest

> Readie at your Worthips command in all dutifull feruice.

> > WILLIAM HELEY.

A Letter of Mafter ROBERT SALMON to Mafter SHERWIN. In Sir THOMAS SMITHES Bay, the 24. of lune, 1 6 1 8.

Oning friend Master Sherwine , I kindly salute you , wifting you as much prosperitie as vinto my felfs, &c. Since our comming into the Bay, we have been much troubled with Ice and Northerly winder, fo as we have not beene two dayes free of lee. We had a forme Northerly which brought in much Ice, fo as we were inclosed withall eight dayes : there went fuch a Sea in the Ice that did beate our lines 10 very much for foure and twentie boures, that I did thinke we flould have floyled our forps: but I sharks God we cannot perceine any burt at all it bath done to vs; also we have broken two anchors with the let; we have killed threeene Woaler; but they yeeld but little, in regard of the Ice which hath much hindred us in the works, for in teredage, we could not doe any works the Bay mas fo full of ice : the Bay mas full as more recognized that prefent the Ray is fall of bearing my len up receive bory adapted at low at Dox 100e, and non at this prefent the Ray is fall of floatened les, the winds banging Netherly keepts it in. Here is fine fall of Elemmings which beare festivene and fixteene pieces of Ordanane in a keepts it in. fing; and they die man ent eighteene Shallops, fo that with theirs and ours here is thirtie Shallops in the jung; and then many for us to make a veryage: there is at the least fifteene hundred tunnes of shipping of the Temmings; we have reasonable good quarter with them, for we are merry about of them, and they remnings; we cause respondent gent quester must own you are merty according town, and told of oil; they have good fire of Sacky and are very kade to very pricing or any thing that we must. I am of very doubtful of making a verge this years, yet I hope Cross-road will before ver for one stip, the Company must take another course the next yeere : if they meane to make any benefit of this Country, then runfany may the start must be at the se mane; out of this Country, but as farre as I can vader stand by them, they meane to make a trade of continuance of it : they have every one of them Grave Maurices Commission under his Hand and Seale: we will let them rest this yeere, and let who will take care the Commission water as cumman seed or a seed of the seed the rest of his friends: we are well at this present, I thanke God : I pray let us heare from you when you the reft of on fremus: we are well as one professionand. One is group to weather from you would be been any consuspance; I hope wee [had go chome in companie to gether as wee came out. Thus with best on any consuspance; I hope wee [had go chome in companie to gether as wee came out. Thus with best of the constant of the professional way to be the professional to t

A Letter of Mafter TH. SHERWIN: Bell-found this 20. of lune, 1618.

After William Heley, your Letter I received, wherein I anderstand you have tooke very great M After William Heley, Josen Letter I received, wherein I, quantificant you have took very great, the griefe, which I am ours four for hou I am m goad hope to come to yo may fifty one of their dayes, that I may comfort you with a good couple of Hennes and a bottle of Canary wine, but I pran bec carefull of your selfs and keepe you warme, and take besele the Nodes doen to pick, wet your eyes: but as for the Flemmings let them all go being thoughteen, and absouph you be set firong enough to medalle with them, yet the worst work are too good for them, the time may come you may be recurring do to them against. The yet the worst work are too good for them, the time may come you may be recurring do to them against. The Captaine wishes they would come all into Bell-found and beat us out, and carry us for Holland; bere is a great fleet of them in this Country. Here came in two Flemmings, but mee bondled them very bonefly, but the bondled them very bonefly, but for feere of fleet-class, on badit beene be dater part of the years, we would have handled them better, now they be gone for Horne-found, I would that they had all of them as good a paire of hornes ter; most not pe gone yor incitite-tolling, women ton very come as you a paire of arrest growing on their heads, as in this Constry, A concerning our wonge, Matter Salmon concertific pass both in Horne-found, and in our harbour. My brother Bulle, John Mattin, and I, dranke to you, you word in 10th - to the for pasty. We have so little to doe wee feare we shall all have the Scurny, but we bane pulled downe the Flemmilh house, and brought it neere more fit for our turne. Thus praying you to remember my lone to all at Faire-hauen, I cease, with my prayers to God, to send you and vi all a prospe-50 rows voyage, with all your good health, that we may goe merrily home together.

A Letter of I a mes Bevers Ham to Master Heley. From Faire-hauen, the 12. of July, 1618.

Maßer Heley, My commendations remembred to your felfe, Master Salmon, Maßer Smith, and Maßer Beymond, as also to Maßer Wilkenson, Mate Headland, Maßer Greene, A The arm consists any morning and any or reasons and the rest of our good friends with you, wishing all your beatless any owns; I am very forty to vinder that the amounts of the amounts of the temmings, both with you and other places; as also fibe small bope three is, in making a voyage this yetre. For our parts we are and base beens so perferred with lee those three is, in making a voyage this yetre. For our parts we are and base beens so perferred with lee those twentie dayes, that we have not beene able to goe out to Sea with our Shallops abone twice in the time neither have we beene able to doe any good by reason of foule weather and fogs, nor have seeme any more then

20

one Whale in all that time, which after sheewas killed turned vs to much trouble, by reason of soule weather, and forced us at last to leave her in the Ice, where the Beares made a prey of her, who I seare will sor, and provide the process of the part of the process of the pro nets stole one, for which they have promised sutufattion, but they are so shut up with see that they are not able to firre either Ships or Shallops. All the Sea to the Northward of Hakluyts headland, and both Enfemand and Westward thereof, is packt so full of Ice, that I scare it will overthrow our voyage, and preour hips in much bazard, the Lord release us of that miserie in due time. I neither have nor will be lack our join in muce valuar, toe war areasy even you amyser or man time, a neuron comment mus of ince. To do my high dechemous for the good of the vapage, the profile time whereof I doe much wife and defire both here and in all other places. I progremember my lone to the Captaine, by your next commy to the both over and in all other places. I pray rememour my some is one capiame, by your next consey to the
Southward, which my commendations to all the ref of our friends; thus for prefens withing your bealth, to
I knady take my least, and relifies a leasing friend,
I had thought to have added a large Discourse of occurrents between the Dusch and English in

Greenland this 1618, and had prepared it to the Preffe. But having alreading ginen some Relation thereof from Captaine Edge &c. and feeing the infolencies of fome of the Dates were intolerable to English ipirits, which then fuffered, or hereafter should reade them; I chose rather to passe them by; aduiting my Countrimen not to impute to that Nation what some frothy spirit yomits from amidit his drinke, but to honor the Hollanders worth, and to acknowledge the glorie of the Confederate Prouinces, how foeuer they also have their finks and slinking lewers (too officious mouthes, fuch as fome in this businesse of Greenland, beyond all names of impudence against his Maiefire, and his Leege people, as others eliewhere have demeaned themfelues) whofe lothlom 20 neffe is not to be cast as an aspersion to that industrious and illustrious Nation. Every Body hat h its excrements, every great House its Vault or Iakes, every Citie some Port exquiline and dunghils, enery Campe the baggage; the World it felfe a Hell : and so hath every Nation the retriments, soumme, dregs, rascalitie, intempered, diftempered spirits, which not fearing God nor reverencing Man, spare not to spue out that to the dishonor of both, which saving the honor of both can scarsly be related after them. A difference is to be made of relation and personall faults. of which we have faid enough in the East India quarrels, twixt ours and the Dutch.

A Letter of IOHN CHAMBERS to W. HELEY. Bel-found Iune 16. 1619.

Oning and approved good friend, Master William Heley, &c. I am fore's to write in teares onto you for the loffe of our Men, by the most uncouth accident that ever bejell unto poore men. The thirteenth of lune last we were put ashore in the Ice Bay, our Shallops being not about a foone as wee Terrible Dil- beard of it, we made what hafte we could, and haled our shallops upon the Ice, and went abourd our ship. beard of it, we made what hafte we could, and hated our foodings upon the let, and went about our flow, and have the means on the local term of the could not get from and, a maine peace of the Cliffelding, the fear falleft fight that ever I belock being then about, expelling nothing wife has death, with all the refl that were in her: But God of his great merce and providence delinered up, that were not then appointed to dp., that were past all hope of the; for the let fill for high and for much, that it corried may no free. Mall, from our manner. Malf, from one was bouldfree. and first his at a covers that the heaved a piece of Ordinance sucr-board from under one buff. Decke, how, me were board among fill the lates. the Ice in all the fea, and get I thanke the Lord I was never burt with a piece of Ice, although it pleased code they were fooded and killed fields were the most cours who as piece of cee, autosomy to placifed God liby were fooded and killed fields were Tought course found to pres of for you. The Captaine bill me write you pass for you, The Captaine bill me write you pass for a five into the Heler, whoth I way you fare me and it be possible: I have write the particular of our want; in my Brother Sheewim Letter, which I pay you far you be a measure to further nee in. Thus ceasing any further to trouble you, I commit you unto the Lord, unto whom I pray to blesse and profper you in this your present Voyage, wish all the rest of your dayes.

> The men that are killed are thefe : My Mate Money, Nicholas Greene and Allin the Butcher. There be many more hurt which I hope will recouer it by the helpe of God and the meanes of a good Surgeon.

Ouing friend Master Heley, I kindely falute you, &c. Tour Letter I received the fifth of this tre-Jent: whereves I onderstand of the backwarduesse of your Ooyage, the which I am harstly sorre for but you must be content, seeing it is the will of God it shall be so, and that other harbours take neighbours fare with you : our best hopes of our Voyage was open you, for of our selves we doe little, in regard we are much troubled with Ice, and have bin fo this ten dayes, which bath made us hale ashoare like or seaven 60 times for it : we have had the windes at North-east, and East North-east, and at North-west, which now keepes in the leo: we have killed ten Whales, whereof eight are made into Oyle, which hath made one hundred and eleanen Tuns & a balfe the other two were killed the fourth of this prefent, being very large fift,

not doubting but they will make fixe and thirtie or fortie turnes : we have the bundred tunnes abourd. the not constructing.

The Master Bathet Taketh in, in regard Master Buthes bippe is not fitted up, we final make ber forerest Master Bathet Taketh in, in regard Master Buthes bippe is not sitted up, we shall make ber foreMaster Grane agains and all things offe for this Voyage. The fourth of this present, George Winelden. came from Horne-found, where they have killed foure W bates, they have hin much troubled with windes Easterly also much Ice, there is so much Ice off of Point Looke out, that George could not get about. Later 19, saye must acc, covere 19 must access 19 ye unit Loune out, year very general are get about, .
This lee but p mis 19 may Duke of Hull into Horne-lound, his lips here must be must be the chair the part of the same about of 10, his name is Medicale; whom the Captaine dash detains, bit Upage is viherebout in ma doord of 10, his name is Medicale; whom the Captaine dash detains, bit Upage is vitrij sant throune, for he bush loft one finallep must fixe men, and another flallep broken with the lee, his tery mettorsome, you continue the statement and you can, and more try and you can the test let, his there is not being all bridge, but Stemme breds, any clofe to the Vicolange, all George and meete with the Filening, George is the state who bundred tone, the which be thinke is call any with let, for the let did beate ber very fore. I understand by M. Catchers Letter, that there is cleanen faile of Flemmines and Danes about them, I doubt not but we hall call them to account of how many tunnes of Oyle they bane made, at they did call vs the last Voyage to account : my lone is such unto them, that I protest I could wish made, at they and can write easy wonger to account: my tome 11 picto with them, that is present towns with the which all my bears that we might got and fee them, and to fleenth polit blooks it the rything of one wifemer wrongs. All o' winders bear by Kobert Koxe, that A irian of Flinking is one of them. I bould be vemer wrongs. All o' winders bear by Kobert Koxe, that A irian of Flinking is one of them. I bould be veoner virong. Aipo : omariseon of Rovell Rose, tone A trian of running et one of reem. Alonald be vi77 glad to fee him, that I might believe the account with him. The Captains willed meets write onto you
concerning the Rulleboufe, that if you cannot fet it op, that then you foodld make an English house of it, and to place the post of a Deales length, and to be three Deales in length, and so much in breadth. and so to cover it with Deales the next yeare, and so be thinketh that it will make two frames : also bee 20 could will that you would remove the Coppers more up into the Bay. I pray you commend me to my lowing friend Master Sherwine, Master Wilkinson, Master Henderson and Michael Greene; also my loue prema creater Sickwing, crapper ventation, example, restricted som unternet directicajo my ione remembred wire pour felfe, I take my leave, boyang up findle pe sua at the Fore-land are it be long: till when, fray God to bleffe you and profer you in all your proceedings. Refting full

> Bell-found the fifth of Íuly. 1619.

30

Your affored friend to command ROBERT SALKON Innier.

A Letter of I. CAT efter to Master Helet fom Faire-hauen. Laus Des, this feuenteenth of Tune 1620.

Oning Brother, with my heft loude I falsace out, millishy was better them we at this time, to have good litter of whole's topsake for you and out a Fryage, for we listed level hiddle flore of whole, but have killed some as yet, In the Flemith barbons there is three Flemith gibeat jimpons, whereof is one Statestman of Farre, who have fet as See eighteen healthy with three Headwise in mention fielding; and have having most forthe Keye of Commarked lines, who have fet on Shi founces the lines with three Headwise in cases (hallow the Keye of Commarked lines, who have fet on Shi founces the lines with three Headwise the Commarked lines, who have fet on Shi founces the lines with three Headwise the Commarked lines whole, and found tome Whate of the List years tilling. I in currie (tailog : the Hollanders bane killed one Whale; and from the order of the last years killing. It thought good to fend to you the fource, becauft we hope you have good for red breaker, that you may for you to you which for you for you not have you do for you to you, which for you for you man, for we can great about, but our hope is, if that you are not you for you to have been and a 20 years. For me false, not for Countries to which time, it may folded for the three weins as thank, and me wither false, for their wee house him one and fifther men, which is to kittle at you know, therefore if you can figure or the your folded for you will fland to imped feed if your Fonge comments in, there is to the Northward good fitter of frie which putter by in good feed if your Fonge comments in, there is to the Northward good fitter of frie which putter by in good ender if your Fonge comments in the Northward good fitter of frie which putter by in good ender if you have have no had not you have the your had not you had you had you had you had not you had come from Denmarke to one holour, but any ear one come; prop you commend vis of Majer Wil-kinton, Maier Greene, Maßer Hedlum, Maßer Cleyborne, Maier Alpho, and all the refi year good friends. Humfrey Moore is very ficke, fo that we shall want a Harponiere. I know not what to write more to you, for with griefe I write thu. Thus kindely taking my leane, befeething God to bleffe vs , and fend vs a good Voyage, with a merry meeting, 1 reft

Your louing brother to vie IOHN CATCHER.

A Letter of ROBERT SALMON from Sir THOMAS SMITH'S Bay, Inly 6. 1621,

Oning friend Master Heley, with my lone I falute you, &c. These are to certific you, that upon the affreenth of the last, we arrived at Sir Thomas Smiths unfortunate Bay: fuce which time we have killed fixe Woales, which are almost reduced into Oyle, being some seventie tunnes or somewhat more; fo within a day or two we may gee fleepe, for I feare we have our portion of Whales in this place : wee have not feene a Whale this forreteeme dayes, and faire weather is as fearfe as the Whales for ten daies together nothing but blow, sometime Southerly and sometime Northwely : I doe verily persuade my selfe that 736

God is smeth displeased for the blood which was less in this place, and I fears a perpetuall carefe still to remains yet; God I know is all sufficient, and may if is please him, fend a Congge in this place. Newes from Faire-hauen I can write you none, for as yet we have not beard from him the reason thereof I cannot concerne; I feare his Shallop is miscarried, for certainely else we should have beard from home of a consecutive section of the sect angle. I am in good boys that you have done forme good upon the Whale, we destine to my your little good upon the many faces of the property of the whole of the property of the which I defire may be. Other names I have man permit payone former arms or some former and in your proceedings in this your Poyage, I take my leave: 10

Your louing friend to command ROBERT SALMON IME

Nine Ships were imployed Anne 1622, of which one for Discourrie. Their disaftrous fucces. you may reade before, page 469. The last Fleete Anne 1623. Was fet forthby the former Aduenturers, vnder the command of Captaine William Goodlard, William Heley being Vice-admirall, Of the successe thereof you may read the Letters following.

Lans Dee in Faire-Haven, the foureand twentieth of June, 1622

Mester Heley, som bealth mished, as also abappy accomplishment of som pretended V-yage destroed, I had written you according to order, of all matters bappening since our arisall, had not contrarie winder and measter presented, and therefore have taken the first apportantics effering as

Wee arrined at our harbour with both our Ships in safetie upon the third of this present blessed be God. ree arruna at our navour wite peste our supprim jarent upon un terra of tots prejent, olejjed ve God, Jinding tek pera paft to base beene a versi hard fadfa, in rega and of the grant quanties of sums and let, but yet not very offensure to vit prefects of our good harbour. Tenching our proceeding upon our Pry 30 age, by the eight of this prejent we bad killed shirteens Whales, and then were all our Shalimp confrainge of the right of the profess we can quastron even to must, sometime mere an our Southers confirma-ncial, by refined follow exactor, with the fifteenth is licitic, and upon the fifteenth we kilde two more, which being all boyled has the faculty, and, then of invasted with bordly make pull registre Tames, which is a very fined quanties. The victorie continued had till the Quantite was, which and upon the three and truntierth we killed three more, which by probabilise will make severy favire Tames. Adultion were

An instruction or quantities to make, where of promounts were made never form 1 mores. Anatomistics during met and deperture the list exempth on France by the grace of God.

At touching our order for the Flemmings, we went as yelterday about them, supposing the mee found the Danes there, but they are not as yet arrived, but wee found that there fore failes of Flemmings, the Admirall fine bundred Tunnes, the Vice-admirall of the fame burthen, the other three were two bundred each blog huming also fifthe or fixing print among them, having four and tweeter by Shallon bullenging, to their five Strips, and are building House and I abernaciate to make if we be made and tweeter by the strips, and are building House and I abernaciate to make if we buy made new and substantially also they ind y, they expected one or two Shansoner currie day, after some time we had conference concerning the order given vs with the Generall Cornelius Ice, and declared was him We and conjecture sweetning sets wear grown of write the central consecution responded and therefore the the time generated hem to fill super King I large site New I land was expired, and therefore his the time generated hem to fill super King I large site New I land was expired, and therefore the time the time of the consecution of t Maistile bath granted to any Principals a Commiljian under the broad Se ale of lingland for the deprejfug of any Interriper or Flemming whose that we look meete which you thus Coast's yet naturals.

Handing it playfed any Principals to appears us to generate them, and in a leasing memore to informed them berrof, which if you will conducted unto and defts filting, one fined manifelt, own falsas friends to our Principals; if otherwise, you find all angeleties to compellely sures, who had a rather perfunde by lone.

Vinte which he an inverted that he heard of no fach matter in Holland, for if there were, it louds he certify to find by writing: to which we amforted, that Sr. Nowel Carroon their Agent was not informate fit. who strauld give information : and sauth be ,I have a Commission from the Prince of Orange, for the making of my Voyage upon this Coast, which was procured by my Merchants for my defence: and this is that could be gotten by words from bim.

Alfo at our first arrivall, there rode two Bishie shippes with the Flemming, but within a day or two they wated and flood for the Southward but inquired of the Flemmings what port they were bound for, they au swered, for the North Cape; but Master Mason is personaded they are at Greene-harbour : 10 toy an present or toe versus any ment to have been presented to be follow that goes to Belloond, to which purple it were to Malier Catcher, that he guest order to be follow that goes to Belloond, to Houdin for the barbour, to give the Captions true information. And Is for profest the Hi, introduce you to remember me to Malier Silmon and Malier John Hadland: and thus controlling my felles, left bir 60. winde of my words carrie me into the Ocean of discourse, bere I anchor : resting

NATHANIEL FARNE.

CHAP.8: Peter Goodlard drowned. Difference of Whales.

Mafter CATCHERS Letter the nine and twentieth of June, 1623.

Rether Heley, with my best love I falute you, withing your health with a professou Voyage, che Since our departure, we have bad much foule meabler and troubled with lee before we could get into harhow and after we came into barbour, we never let fall anchor, by reason of the Ice, till the fixteenth of this wonth, in which time we killed fixe Whales at the Fore-land, which made but eighteene Tunt and a halfer to and fince we have killed fixe Whales more, which I bope will make in all upwards of eightie Tunnes. We have fit nine Shallops verie well, and I thanke God not one of our Men faileth, same one that was shot acham fit mer Shalipp verte well, and I hampe God mer one of an Men faith, faire one that was lost ac-cidentally wish a Muster. I hope from of the Shalippen hambory will apply our meant; of there is any which I face there will a sure harbour, mean fay lith, is supplied to make a Frage, by reason that the Flammings special hand law of which play Godwies than flatger from ver. For Burer basters, I deally and han that gray he he have to play Letter, for you of the proceedings; has Maliter Shepving wir, that there is had been mind to the control of the state of the control of the Missians which the En-thern Flammings mendefulfier to fifth the whole the deal and a faithful would got for the North lith our Flammings mendefulfier to fifth. Cape; but I thinke they are in Greene-harbour, or gone to the Eastward; which if they be in Greene-harbour, our Shallop going to Bel-found hold touch there to fee, and so certifie the Captains, and know his will what be would have done in it : I hold it not fit that they fould harbour there. There are no Danes in the Countrie as yet, &c.

Captaine WILLIAM GOODEARD'S Letter : Bell-found this eight of July, 1623.

this eight of Iuly, 1623.

Long friend Mafter Heley, I kinder false year, willing bath to you with the reft of your companies.

Long friend Mafter Heley, I kinder false year, willing bath to you with the reft of your companies.

Long friend the Long false year good increive for your filling to the Long false year good in your false year.

Joint false false for the Sel-toung three and invest Whater, and left mains were by from broken, year I bage.

Joint false for the Sel-toung three and invest Whater, and left mains were by from broken, year for board our Ship, and make account fair to manner that you will fill sure bound. Our Whater berry prose write were done for hip, and make account fair to manner the world false, which makes be done for you will fill sure board. Our Whater berry prose write man from the Bore-land, at which impossing had killed fifteensy Whater verie famile, and, we veries doubtful of Young there is food famile for the west to be formed, in which we fall all and false, to leave for them it berry by accepting. The force and translates for law, there was killed at Faire-humer, beauty that, which you very figulity people, by their all the house killed fifteensy to the fair to the translate more thanged and in series many, beauty there, which they proved your fair for the world from a fower of thous. He manner to the translate your fair for the world for the world from the Estate, your was and my independent out to be remained from them, they bear the was a fair for the world for the wo

anie loffe, I thinke, went fo neere my beart dec.

Many other Letters I could have added, but doubt I have already wearied you with this vncouth Coaft, whereto our English Neptunes are now to wonted, that there they have found not onely Venison but Pernassus and Helicon; and have melced a Musan Fountain out of the Greenland Snowes and Icie Rockes. Whole Elaborate Poems haue I feene of Mafter Heley, as also of Iames Presson, there composed : but we have harsher Discouries in hand, to which wee are now shipping you. This I thought good at our parting to advertise, thee, that Master Heley Cold and beate hath affirmed to me touching the divertitie of weather in Greeneland; that one day, it bath beene fo ftrangely waitmain minime to the concentrative in executive to version in the read and in one verse or trenger varieties that one and it is more verse or trenger varieties to delete the five a fails: another and abile.

To bot, that the pice b metted off the first, for that her dry they could keeps their closaltes from polaritim vyes, be also force at midnight Tabaces lighted on freed by the Samue beams with a Cloffic. Lekemife for a Tobacco lighter for the control of the provided the with Polaritims in the large of the theory of the deliver Stowers relation to undersor a Whale formering at first only the same forms in forms from the before variety found of Circumstand: my fells also beauty fishen with faming at midnight.

diligent viewers thereof in Thanet where it was taken lulie 9. 1574, hooting bamfelfe on fore besides Ramme State in the Parish of Same Peter, and there dying for saken of bu Ocean parent. Hee came on Boare about fixe of the clocke at night, and died about fixe the next morning before which time he roared

and was beard more then a mile on the land. The length was two and twentie yards, the mether saw twelve foote in the opening : one of bis eyes (which in the Greene-land Whale is verie finall , not much prester shen the eye of an Oxe | being taken out of but head, was more then fixe Herfes in a Cart could draw: then the eye of an Oxe pring income on a sound staten. The thick neffe from the backe whereon be leg to

Pestilence and Famine in Russia, Goodnesse truest Greatnesse. L. B. HIII

man jewe tyre, on the present of the force long : his liner two Cart load : into his nostrils anie man might have creps : the Oyle of his head

CHAP, IX.

The late changes and manifold alterations in Russia fince IVAN VASI-LOWICH to this prefent, gathered one of many Letters and Obser-nations of English Embassadors and other Trauellers in those parts.

Of the reigne of IVAN, PHEODORE his fonne; and of Boris.

Gods mercy w England whiles warres haue infefted the fof the Eader, There prefent thee not what I would of Ruffien affaires, but what I could be Englishmen vader the government of his Maieflie, have enjoyed fach a Sunfine or peace, that our Summers day to many hath beene tedious; they have loathed their Mama, and longed for I know not what Egyptian field pots. For what elle are Warres but past set our the fire of Anger (how often of Furie, yea of Hell, the Furies or Deuris blowing the coales) and boyling mans fight whole 30

Families, Villages, Townes, Cities, Shires, Pronnees, not onely hurried thereby in confisions of State, harried and enflamed with combiffions of goods and goodnesse, but the skill of May Women, and Children, but thered and agit were boyled beyond the manifold shapes of Death, vnto the bones, into the Vapors, Frosh, Scumme, Chaos, nothing and leffe then nothing of Hovnto the bones, into the Vapors, Froth, Scumme, Chaos, bothing and leffe then nothing of Humanite! Such is the inhumanite; the immanite; the finantite of Warres! And flush Warres have made imprefinos into all our Neighbour Countries! (whiles were fit vnder the flushow of Beasi Paofics) have lightened on Tayles and balled the Service; have rebuilded in Barboris, have trome the edites there, and run the Griph Mape'in Edity; hind fishes or Fraces with earthquakes; have rayled Brigian fromes; Bibenses broyfes, Hungaries golfs, Germanies whitelewinds (thefe feller-funded in Ginill, that is, the vielder, vincillation affacters and worth of Warres) that Immention not the inundations and exundations of Filesal; the Spowless and Mifts of Sweder. the Danish Hailes and Frofts. But all these and more then all these Tempests, Turnado's , Tuffons have combined in Ruffia, and there made their Hell mouth centre, there pitching the Tents of Defruction, there erecting the Thrones of Defolation.

Peftilence and Famine had gone two yeeres before as direful Heralds, to denounce these dreadfull warres and mutations of State : the Pefulence poffeffing the Northerne parts of the World, and disposfessing it of many many thoulands : the Famine in Ruffia wanting necessaries to cate, necessarily denoured all things, not onely Cats, Mice, and impure Creatures, but mens slesh also, and that in neerest necessitude, Parents renoking to their wombes by vnnaturall passage the dearell pledges of Nature, which hausing even now dyed with hunger, were made prefervatives from like death to those which first had given them life. The Mightier made sale of the Poorer, 50 yea, Fathers and Mothers of their Sonnes and Daughters, and Husbands of their Wives, that price might bee had to buy Corne, which was now beyond all names of what soeuer price cre-

dible. But these things must be further searched.

Bloudineffe is a flipperie foundation of Greatneffe, and the Mercifull' have the promife to finde mers other wisdome (now ever feeming politice) is earthy, [mfuell, drailify; yea, name to the foole-wife Confutors, as appeareth in Parado's working wife; that is, cruelly, to preuent the multiplying I fraction. The greatest of Creatures on Sea and Land, the Elephant and Whale, liue on graffe, weeds, and fimpler diet, not on rapine and flesh or fish-deuonring prey : Thunders and all temperations fformes trouble not the higher aiery Regions, but the lower and those next the bafer earthy dregs, the fediment and finke of the World : nor doth ancient Philosophie rec. 60 kon Comets other then Meteors, or falling Starres to be Starres indeed, but excludes both from the heavenly Sphares. Had Alexander followed this rule, and fought Greatneffe in Goodneffe (like him which is Optimus Maximus, the Great God, the great Good of the World) and in him-

Gife rather then others, in being Mafter of himfelfe then Lord of large Territories; he neither had fighed after the conquests of other Worlds which Feelesophie had created before he had frene the t.nth part of this; nor had dyed by poylon in a forraine Countrie, forced to content himlelfe with possessing, nay, being possessed of a few feet of earth; then had he beene in very deed (now but in Title) GREAT Alexander. Great Goodnesse is the true and good Greatness.

I know not how fit a Preface this may feeme to the enfuing Ruffian Relation; this I am fure. that they which write of Inan Vafilowich, the Great Great Questian, doe lay hearie afperfions on his Father and Grand-father, but on himfelfe supersuperlatines of crueltie (that I mention not other vices) both for Matter and Forme. These things are deliuered particularly in the Hillorits of Alexander Ovagninus. Tilmennus Brederbachius. Paulus Oderbornus. Resoldus Heiden fen and others, in large Tractates written thereof purpolety. His merits of the English might procure a filence of his euils (wee of all men being in regard of respect to our Nation vnworthy to fpeake, that which hee , it those Authours have not been malicious , was worthy to heare) if fo dreadfull effects did not force an Hiltorian (that is, the Register of the execution of Acts of Gods bountie and inflice decreed in the Court of Diurne Proundence) to looke to the diretall Caufe in foregoing funes, that after Ages may heare and feare.

I will touch a few of these which Gwagninus alone relates. His owne brother being accused Al Gragnin An. 1570. by Wirkman, is laid without leave granted to cleare himfelie, to bee put to exqui- diring, Maic. An. 1570. by Wirkmati, is faid without leave granted to cleare nimetite, to bee pur to exquire brother fire cortures first, and after to death; his wife stripped and fer naked to the eyes of all, and onen to the Emperior nic cottures min, and attention unit may also with a rope into the River and drowned. Iohn Pistronich, a man for done to by one on horfe-backe drawne with a rope into the River and drowned. Iohn Pistronich, a man for done to control of principall command accused of treation, prefenting himselfe to him, not admitted to make a death. He

ny purgation, was set in Princely accountrements on a Throne, the Emperour standing bare-hea- addes principal ded before him and bowing to him, but soone after with a knife thrushing him to the heart, the Nobles, here Attendants adding other Furies till his bowels fell out; his body dragged forth, his feruants flaine, three hundred others in his Caille executed, his Boiarens all gathered into one house and blowne vp with poulder; their Wives and Diughters rauished before his face by his followers. blowne vp with pouncer; their wants and Diagnets samme objects as the six of purpolely let to gue them their fatall entertainment. His Chancellor Dubren fis fitting at table 30 with his two Sonnes, were allo youn accufation without aniwere cut in pieces, and the third

fonne quartered aline with foure wheeles, each drawne a diners way by fifteene men. Muessiedom/(cbly, supreme Notarie, displeasing him, his wife was taken from him, and after some weeks detayning was with her hand-maid hanged over her husbands doore, and so continued a fortnight, he being driven to goe in and out by her all that time. Another Notaries wife was rauished and then fent home and hanged ouer her husbands table, whereat he was forced daily to eate. In travelling if he met any woman whose husband he liked not, he caused her to fland with her nakednesse disclosed till all his retinue were passed. Cutting out tongues, cutting off hands and feet of his complaying Subjects, and other discrifted tortures I omit; as also the guarding his father in lawes doores with Beares cy of there, that none might goe in or out, hanging his fer-40 wants at his doores, torturing him for treasure; casting hundreds of men at once into the wa- 700, women

ter ynder the Ice; two thousand seven hundred and seventie thus and by other tortures execu- at one time; ted at Nonogred An. 1 169, besides women, and the poorer persons which Famine forced, did 378 priloners eate the bodies of the slaine, and were after slaine themselves; the Archbishop also let on a Mare at another, with his feet yed vnder the b-lly, and male to play on Bag, pipes thorow the Citiesthe Monks and Virgins floyled and flaine; Theodore Sirconi, the Founder of tweller Monasferies, tortured to flow his of noble blood receiption and the flaine; the flaint his flaint treasure and then flaine: Mazinity his Secretarie, by many dayes renewed tortures dying; hee expected to be treasure and then slaine. Macienty his Secretarie, by many cayes renewed tortures uying; nee supposed to the recreating hindless with letting Beares looks in throngs of people; Ielen Michelentech Wingswest and the throngs of people; Ielen Michelentech Wingswest and the Chancellos, his cares, lips, and other members one after another cut off by piece-meale, fight at only notwithstanding all protestations of his innocency; about two hundred other Nobles at the therime &c. for time variously executed, one his Treature, two other Secretaries; the Treatures wife fet "A Secretaries" on a rope and forcibly dragged to and fro thereon (by that torturing her naked fielh, to learne her curing off his

husbands treasures) whereof soone after shee dyed in a Monasterie, into which shee was thrust. All these are but 2 little of that which Granmus alone hath written. A taste and touch is too which the Emmuch of bloud, and in such immanities. He is also faid in a famine to have gathered many people, perour conin expectation of almes, on a bridge, and there guarded the bridge being cut to drowne them, as firming to be the readiest way for cheapnesse of corne. But I lothe such crudities. His last crueltie was on him-done purposethe readieft way for cheapnesse of corne. But I lothe such cruatites. His last cruetic was on num-felfe, dying with griefe, as was thought, for the death of his eldest some Issue, whom fally ac-there inflandy cufed he struck with a starfe wrought with Iron, whereof he dyed in few dayes after. Hee was a to eate whit man accuted for communicating in disposition with his father, and as a joyfull Spectator of his he had ut off.

But if any delight to reade the terrible and bloudie Acts of Inan Basilowich, he may glut, if not drowne himtelte in bloud, in that Hiftorie which Paul Oderborne hath written of his life , and both there and in others take view of other his vniuit Acts. I will not depose for their truth, though I cannot disproue it : adverlaries perhaps make the worst. For my selfe I list not to take

finkes against him, and would speake in his defence, if I found not an universall conspiracy of all Historie and Reports against him, I honour his other good parts, his wit, his learning (perhaps better then almost any other Ruffe in his time) his exemplarie seuericy on vniust Magistrates his Marciall skill, industrie, fortune, wherby he subdued the Kingdoms of Cafan and Aftreans which also the Turke sending from Constantinople an Armie of three hundred thousand to disposses him of, A. 1 609. betides his hopes and helpes from the Tartars, few returned to tell their difafters, and the destructions of their fellower) besides what hee got in Siberia and from the Pole, Sweden Prussian, extending his Conquests East, West, North, and South: yea, his memorie is sauourie fill to the Rustians, which (either of their feruile disposition needing such a bridle and whips or for his long and prosperous reigne, or out of distaste of later tragedies) hold him in little lesserputation (as fome haue out of their experience instructed me) then a Saint,

His love to our Nation is magnified by our Countrimen with all thankfulnesse, whose gainer there begun by him, have made them also in some fort seeme to turne Ruffe (in I know what loure or feares, as if they were still that up in Ruffia, & to conceale what fourer they know of Ruftien or teares, as it tiery were than you of mall torture with great paines of body, vexation of minds, and triall of potent interceding friends to get but neglect and filence from lone, yea almost contempt and scorne. They alledge their thankfulnesse for benefits received from that Nation, and their feare of the Duteb, readie to take advantage thereof, and by calumniations from hence to interuert their Trade. This for love to my Nation I have inferted against any Cavillers of our Ruffe Merchants : though I must needs professe that I distaste, and almost detest that (call it 20 what you will) of Merchants to neglect Gods glorie in his prouidence, and the Worlds inftru-Gion from their knowledge; who while they will conceale the Raffians Faults, will tell nothing of their Facts; and whiles they will be filent in mysteries of State, will reueale nothing of the histories of Fact, and that in so perplexed, diversified chances and changes as seldome the World hath in fo fhort a space seene on one Scene. Whiles therefore they which seeme to know moft, will in the fe Ruffian Relations helpe me little or nothing (except to labour and fruftrated hopes) I haue (besides much conference with eye witnesses) made bold with others in such books as in diners languages I haue read, and in such Letters and written Tractates as I could procure of my friends, or found with Mafter Haklayt (as in other parts of our storie) not seeking any whit to differace that Nation or their Princes, but onely defiring that truth of things done may bee 30 knowne, and such memorable alterations may not passe as a dreame, or bee buried with the Doers. Sir Ierome Horfey shall leade you from Inans Graue to Pheodores Coronation.

* Or Theoder Sir lerom HerThe most Colemne and magnificent coronation of PHEODOR IVANOVVICH, Emperour of Russia, &c. the tenth of lune, in the yeare 1584. (cene and observed by Master I EROM HORSEY Gen. tleman, and servant to ber Maiestie.

The death of

Lord Review. dopted as the

Hen the old Emperor Inan Vafilowich died (being about the eighteenth of April, 1384. after our computation) in the Citie of Mafes, having raigned fiftie four eyears, there 254, April 18. was some tumult & vprore among some of the Nobilitie and Comminaltie, which notwith tanding was quickly pacified. Immediately the fame night, the Prince Boris Pheodorowich Godonowa, Kn: 2 Iuon Pheodorowich, Mesthis Slafiky, Knez Iuan Petrowich Susky, Mekita Romanowich and Bodan I aconlewich Belikon, being all noble men, and chiefest in the Emperours Will, especially the Lord Boris, whom he adopted as his third fon, and was brother to the Empresse, who was a man very well liked of all estates, as no lesse worthy for his valour and wisedome : all these were appointed to dispose, and settle his Sonne Pheodor Inanomich, having one sworne another, and all the Nobilitie and Officers whosoeuer. In the morning the dead Emperour was laid into the Church of Michael the Archangell, into a hewen Sepulchte, very richly decked with Veitures fit 50 for such a purpose: and present Proclamation was made (Emperour Pheodor Inanomich of all Rusfa, &c.) Throughout all the Citie of Mofco was great watch and ward, with Souldiors, and Cunners, good orders established, and Officers placed to subdue the tumulters, and maintaine quietnesse : to see what speede and policie was in this case vsed, was a thing worth the beholding. This being done in Mosco, great men of birth and accompt were also presently sent to the bordering Townes, as Smolenske, Vobske, Kafan, Nonoggrad, &c. with fresh garrison, and the old fent Vp. As upon the fourth of May a Parliament was held, wherein were assembled the Metropolitane, Archbishops, Bishops, Priors, and chiefe Clergie men, and all the Nobility whatsoeuer: where many matters were determined not pertinent to my purpose, yet all tanded to a new reformation in the government: but especially the terme, and time was agreed upon for the 60 folemnizing of the new Emperours coronation. In the meane time the Empresse, wife to the old Emperour, was with her childe the Emperours son, Charlewich Demetrie Iuanowich, of one yeares age or there abouts, fent with her Father Pheodor Pheodorowich Nagay, and that kindred, being

fine brothers, to a towne called Ouglets, which was given vnto her, and the yong Prince her fonne, with all the Lands belonging to it in the fhire, with officers of all forts appointed, having The day of some, with all the Land october of the land, with allowance of apparell, iewels, diet, horse, &c., in ample manner belonging to the estate of a Prin- Pheader his coeffe. The time of mourning after their vieleing expired, called Sorachyn, or fortie orderly dayes, ronations the day of the folemnizing of this coronation, with great preparations, was come, being voon the tenth day of lune, 1584. and that day then Sunday, he being of the age of twenty fue years: at which time, Mafter lerom Horsey was orderly fent for, and placed in a fit roome to fee all the folemnity. The Emperour comming out of his Pallace, there went before him, the Metropolirane, Archbishops, Bishops, and chiefest Monkes, and Clergie men, with very rich Coapes and Prietts garments vpon them, carrying pictures of our Lady, &c. with the Emperors Angell han-

ners, cenfers, and many other fuch ceremonious things, linging all the way. The Emperour with his pobility in order entred the Church named Blaneshina or Blassednes, where prayers and service were vied, according to the manner of their Church: that done, they went thence to the Church called Michael the Archangell, and there also vied the like prayers, and feruice : and from thence to our Lady Church, Prechifta, being their Cathedrall Church. In the middeft thereof was a thare of majettie placed, wherein his Ancestors vsed to sit at such extraordinary times: his roabes were then changed, and most rich and vanaluable garments put on him ; being placed in this Princely feate, his nobilitiestanding round about them in their degrees, his imperiall Crowne was set vpon his head by the Metropolitane, his Scepter globe in his right hand, his fword of Iustice in his 30 left of great riches: his fix crow as alto, by which he holdeth his Kingdomes were fet before him. and the Lor i Boris Pheodorowich was placed at his right hand; then the Metropolitan read open-

ly abooke of a small volume, with exhortacions to the Emp-rour to minister true lustice, to inioy with tranquility the Crowne of his ancestours, which God had given him, and ysed these

Through the will of the almightse and without beginning God, which was before this world, whom we glorifie in the Trinitie, one onely God, the Father, the Sonne, and the boly Ghoft, maker of all thener, worker of all in all eury where suisiler of all things, by which will, and working, he both lines h, and gineth life to man: that our ovely God which enspire th enerse one of us his onely children with his word so discerne God through our Lord lefus Christ, and the holy quickning spirit of life, now in these perillous times estabijordus toke pethe right Scepter, and suffer us to raigne of our selines to the good profit of the land, to the lubining of the people, together with the enemies, and the maintenance of vertue. And so the Metropolitan bleffed and laid his croft vpon him. After this, he was taken out of his chaire of Maiefty, having upon him an upper reabeadorned with precious stones of all forts, orient pearles of great quantity, but alwayes augmented in riches: it was in weight two hundred pounds, the traine and parts thereof borne vp by ix Dukes, his chiefe imperiall Crowne vpon his head very precious: his staffe imperiall in his right hand of an Vnicornes horne of three foote and ta halfe in length befet with rich ftones, bought of Merchants of Authorge by the old Emperour, in Anna 1581, and coft him 7000. Markes sterling. This Iewel Master Horsey kept sometimes, before the Emperour had it. His Scepter globe was carried before him by the Prince Boris Pheodorowich: his ac rich cap befet with rich stones and pearles, was carried before him by a Duke : his fixe Crownes alfo were carried by Demetrius Inanowich Godonoua, the Emperours vnckle, Mehita Romanowich th- Emperors vnckle, Stephen Vafilimich, Gregorie Vafilimich, Iuan Vafilimich brothers of the bloud revall. Thus at last the Emperour came to the great Churchdoore, and the people cried, God faue our Emperour Pheodor Inanomeb of all Ruffia. His Herse was there ready most richly adorned, with a couering of imbrodered pearle and precious flones, faddle, and all furniture agreeable to it, reported to be worth 300000 markes fterling.

There was a bridge made of a hundred & fiftie fadomes in length, three manner of waies, three foot about ground, and two fadome broad, for him to goe from one Church to the other with his Princes and nobles from the presse of the people, which were in number infinite, and some at that So time prefled to death with the throng. As the Emperor returned out of the Churches, they were fored vader foot with cloth of Gold, the porches of the Churches with red Veluet, the Bridges with Scarlet, & stammelled cloth from one Church to another : and as soone as the Emperor was paffed by, the cloth of gold, veluet and scarlet was cut, & taken of those that could come by it, euery man defirous to haue a piece, to referue it for a monument : filuer and gold coine, then minted of purpose was cast among the people in great quantitie. The Lord Boris Pheodorowich was fumptuoufly and richly attired, with his garments decked with great orient pearle, befet with all forts of precious stones. In like rich manner were apparelled all the tamily of the Godonouaes in their degrees, with the rest of the Princes and nobilitie, whereof one named Knez Iuan Michalowich Glaska, whose roade, horse and furniture, was in register found worth one hundred thou-60 fand markes iterling, being of great antiquitie. The Embresse being in her Pallace, was placed in her chaire of Maietty also before a great open window: most precious, and rich were her robes. and shining to behold, with rich stones, and orient Pearles belet, her crowne was placed upon her head, accompanied with her Princesses, and Ladies of estate : then cried out the people, God preserve our noble Empresse Irena. After all this, the Emperour came into the Parliament

Ppp 2

house, which was richly decked : there he was placed in his royall feat adorned as before : his five crownes were fet before him vpon a Table; the Bafon and Ewreroyall of gold held by his knight of gard, with his men standing two on each side in white apparell of cloth of uluer, called Kindry with scepters and battle-axes of gold in their hands, the Princes and nobility were all placed according to their degrees all in their rich roabes.

The Emperour after a short Oration, permitted euery man in order to kiffe his hand ; which being done, he remoued to a princely feate prepared for him at the table : where he was ferued by his Nobles in very princely order. The three out roomes being very great and large were belet with plate of gold and filter round, from the ground vp to the vauts one vpon the other : among which plate were many barrels of filter and gold: this folemnitie and triumph lasted a whole Io weeke, wherein many royall pastimes were shewed and vsed: after which, the chiefest men of the Nobilitie were elected to their places of office and dignitie, as the Prince Boris Pheodoromich was made chiefe Countellour to the Emperour, Master of the Horse, had the charge of his person. Lieutenant of the Empire, and warlike engins, Gouernor or Lieutenant of the Empire of Caran and Astracan, and others: to this dignitie were by Parliament, and gift of the Emperour given him many reuenewes and rich lands, as there was given him, and his for ever to inherite a Prouince called Vaga, of three hundred English miles in length, and two hundred and fiftie in bredth. with many Townes and great Villages populous and wealthy: his yearely Reuenew out of that Prouince, is fine and thirtie thouf and Markes sterling, being not the fifth part of his yeare Reuenue. Further, he and his house be of such authoritie and power, that in forty dayes warning they 20 are able to bring into the field a hundred thousand Souldiours well furnished.

The conclusion of the Emperours Coronation was a peale of Ordnance, called a Peale royall. two miles without the Citie, being a hundred and seventy great pieces of brasse of all forts, as faire as any can be made; these pieces were all discharged with shot against bulwarkes made of purpose; twentie thousand hargubusers standing in eight ranks two miles in length, apparelled all in yeluet.coloured filke and stammels, discharged their shot also twise ouer in good order; and so the Emperour accompanied with all his Princes and Nobles, at the leaft fiftie thousand horse, departed through the Citie to his palace. This royall coronation would aske much time, and many leaves of paper to be described particularly as it was performed: it shall suffice, to vnderstand that the like magnificence was never feene in Ruffia.

The Coronation, and other triumphs ended, all the Nobilitie, officers, and Merchants, according to an accustomed order euery one in his place and degree, breught rich presents vinto the Empe-

rour, withing him long life, and joy in his kingdome.

The same time also Master lerom Horsey aforesaid, remaining as seruant in Russia for the Queens most excellent Maiestie, was called for to the Emperour, as he fate in his Imperial feat, and thealso a famous Merchant of Netherland being newly come to Mosco (who gaue him selfe out to be the King of Spaines Subject) called John de Wale, was in like fort called for. Some of the Nobilitie would haue preferred this fubiect of the Spaniard before Mafter Horfer feruant to the Queen of England, whereunto Master Horsey would in no case agree, saying, hee would have his legges cut off by the knees, before hee would veelde to such an indignitie offered to his Soueraigne the Queenes Maieftie of England, to bring the Emperour a present, in course after the King of Spaines 40 Subject, or any other what souer. The Emperour, and the Prince Boris Pheodorowich percening the controversie, sent the Lord Treasurer Peter Inanowich Galaum, and Uasili Shalkan, both of the Counfell to them, who delivered the Emperour backe Mafter Horfeys speech : whereupon he was first in order (as good reason) admitted and presented the Emperour in the behalfe of the Eng-Life Merchants trading thither, a prefent, withing him ioy, and long to raigne in tranquilitie, and fo kiffed the Emperours hand, he accepting the prefent with good liking, and auouching, that for his Sifters sake, Queene Elizabeth of England, he would be a gracious Lord to her Merchants, in as ample manner as ever his Father had beene : and being difmiffed, he had the fame day fent him, seauentie dishes of fundry kinds of meats, with three carts laden with al forts of drinks very bountifully. After him was the foresaid subiect of the Spanish King admitted with his present. 50 whom the Emperor willed to be no leffe faithfull & feruiceable vnto him, then the Queen of England fubicets were & had been, & then the King of Spains fubicets shold receive favor accordingly.

All these things thus in order performed, prayles were sung in all the Churches. The Emperour and Empresse very demoutly reforted on foote to many principal Churches in the Citie, and Youn Trinitie Sunday betooke themselves to a progresse in order of procession, to a famous Monafterie called Sergine and the Trinitie, fixtie miles diffant from the Citie of Mifco, accompanied with a huge armie of Noblemen, Gentlemen, and others, mounted ypon goodly Horles with furniture accordingly,

The Empresse of denotion tooke this journey on foote all the way, accompanyed with her Princeffes and Ladies, no imall number : her Guard and Gunners were in number twentie thou- 60 fand : her chiefe Counfellor or Attendant, was a noble man of the bloud Royall her Vicle of great authoritie, called Demetri Inanowich Godonoua. All this progresse ended, both the Emperour and Empresse returned to Mosco : shortly after, the Emperour by the direction of the Prince

Roris Pheodorowich, fent a power into the Land of Siberia, where all the rich Sables and Furres are gotten. This power conquered in one yeere and a halfe one thousand miles. In the performance of this warre, there was taken priloner the Emperour of the Country, called Chare Si- Chare Sibrish beriky, and with him many other Dukes and Noble men, which were brought to Mofeo, with a Prince of Sibeguard of Souldiers and Gunners, who were received into the Citie in very honourable manner, ris then prifoand doe there remaine to this day.

Hereupon the corrupt Officers, Judges, Judices, Captaines and Lieutenants through the whole Kingdome were remoused, and more honest men substituted in their places, with expresse commandement, under seuere punishment to surcease their old bribing and extortion which they had yied in the old Emperours time, and now to execute true inflice without respect of persons: and to the end that this might be the better done, their lands and yearly flipends were augmenred : the great taskes, customes, and duties, which were before laid vpon the people in the old Emperours time, were now abated, and some wholly remitted, and no punishments commanded to be vied, without fufficient and due proofe, although the crime were eapitall, deserving death : many Dukes and Noble men of great Houfes, that were vader dipleafure . and imprifoned twentie yeeres by the old Emperour , were now fet at libertie and reftored to their lands ; all prisoners were let at libertie, and their trespasses forginen. In summe, a great alteration vniuerfally in the gouernment followed, and yet all was done quietly, civilly, peaceably, without trouble to the Prince, or offence to the Subject : and this bred great affurance and hos nour to the Kingdome, and all was accomplished by the wisedome especially of Irenia the

Empreffe. These things being reported and carried to the eares of the Kings and Princes that were horderers upon Ruffis, they grew so fearfull and terrible to them, that the Monarch of all the Serthians called the Crim Tartar or great Can himselfe, named Sophes Keri Alli, came out of Sophes Keri Alli his owne Countrie to the Emperour of Ruffia, accompanies with a great number of his Nobi- King of the litie well horfed, although to them that were Christians they feemed rule, yet they were Crims arrivall perionable men, and valiant : their comming was gratefull to the Emperour, and their enter. at Mosco. tainment was honourable : the Tarter Prince having brought with him his wives also, receiued of the Ruffe Emperour entertainment, and Princely welcome according to their estates.

Not long after, one thousand and two hundred Polish Gentlemen, valiant Souldiers, and 30 proper men came to Mosco, offering their service to the Emperour, who were all entertayned : and in like fort many Chirkeffes, and people of other Nations came and offered fernice. And as foone as the report of this new created Emperour was fored ouer other Kingdomes of Europe, there were fent to him fundrie Ambassadors, to wish him joy and prosperitie in his Kingdome : thither came Ambaffadors from the Turke, from the Persian, the Bogharian, the Crim , the Georgian, and many other Tartar Princes. There came also Ambassadors from the Emperour of Almaine, the Pole, the Swethen, the Dane, &c. And fince his Coronation no enemie of his hath prevailed in his attempts.

It fell out not long after, that the Emperour was defirous to fend a meffage to the most ex- The new Emcellent Queene of England, for which feruice he thought no man fitter then Mafter Ierome Horpetor Phendre Grafuppoing that one of the Queenes owne men and subjects would bee the more acceptable to Lucies and her. The fumme of which meffage was, That the Emperor defired a continuance of that league, Requests to friendship, amitie and intercourse of trassque which was betweene his Father and the Queenes the Queene. Maiestie and her Subiects, with other private affaires besides, which are not to bee made

Master Horsey having received the Letters and Requests of the Emperour, provided for his Master Horsey iourney ouer Land, and departed from Mofco the fift day of September, thence vnto Oiner, to voyage from Torstook, to great Nemograd, to Vobike, and thence to Nybonse in Linema, to Wenden, and so to Masse to Eng.
Riga: (where he was beset, and brought forthwith before a Cardinall, called Ragenil, but yet land our linds

fuffered to paffe in the end :) From thence to Mito, to Golden, and Liben in Curland, to Memel, to Kening shargh in Prussia, to Elbing, to Dantzike, to Seetine in Pemerland, to Rostock, to Lubeck to Hamborough, to Breme, to Emden, and by Sea to London. Being arrived at her Maielties Royal Court, and having delivered the Emperours Letters with good favour, and gracious acceptance, he was forthwith againe commanded to repasse into Russia, with other Letters from her Maie-Rie to the Emperour, and Prince Boris Pheoderowich, answering the Emperous Letters, and withall requesting the favour and friendship, which his Pather had yeelded to the English Merchants : and hereunto was he earnestly also solicited by the Merchanes of London themselves of that Companie, to deale in their behalfe. Being thus dispatched from Landon by Sea, he arrived in Mosco, the twentieth of Aprill, 1586, and was very honourably welcommed, and for the 6c Merchants behoofe, obtayned all his Requests, being therein specially fauoured by the Noble Prince Boris Pheodorowich , who alwayes affected Mafter Horsey with speciall liking. And hauing obtayined primitedges for the Merchants, he was recommended from the Emperouragaine.

to the Queene of England his Miltreffe , by whom the Prince Boris , in token of his honourable and good op mon of the Queenes Marellie, fent her Highnessea Royall present of Sables.

Luzarns, cloth of Gold and other rich things. So that the Companie of English Merchants, next to their thankfulnelle to her Maiestie, are to account Master Horseys paines their special benefit, who obtayned for them those priviledges, which in twentie yeeres before would not

The manner of Master Horsey, last dispatch from the Emperour, because it was very honorable, I thought good to record. Hee was freely allowed post-horses for him and his servants, wictuals and all other necessaries for his long journey: at every Towne that he came vnto from Mosco to Vologda, which is by Land five hundred miles, he received the like free and bountifull allowances, at the Emperours charge. New victuall and proussion were given him vpon the full allowances, at the Emperous crarge. New victors are promoted to a good mine your tree Ruser Dword at energy Towne by the Kings Officers, being one thousand miles in length. When I to he came to the new Caffle, called Archangel, he was received of the Duke Knez Valid Andrewich I fuenegorodiky by the Emperours Commission into the Castle, Gunners being set in rankes after their vie, where he was sumptuously feasted: from thence he was disparched with bounafter their vie, which was a state of the Dukes Boat, with one hundred men to rowe him, and one hundred Gunners in other Boats to conduct him, with a Gentleman Captaine of the Gunners. hundred Countries in once Deas .

Comming to the Road where the English, Dutch, and French thips rode, the Gunners discharged, and the shippes shot in like manner fortie fixe pieces of their Ordnance, and so hee was brought to his lodging at the English house vpon Rose Iland.

And, that which was the full and complete conclusion of the favour of the Emperour and Bo-And that which was the tun and complete continuous to the radial of the Emperour and Boris Pheoderowich toward Mafter Horfo, there were the next day fent him for his further prouifion vpon the Sea by a Gentleman and a Captaine, the things following. Sixteene line Oxen, feuentie Sheepe, fix hundred Hens, fine and twentie flitches of Bacon, eightie bushels of Meale, fix hundred loaues of bread, two thousand Egges, ten Geele, two Cranes, two Swannes, fixtie five gallons of Meade, fortie gallons of Aquavita, fixtie gallons of Beere, three young Beares, foure Hawkes, store of Onions and Garleeke, ten fresh Salmons, a wilde Boare,

All these things were brought him downe by a Gentleman of the Emperour, and another of Prince Borss Pheodoronich, and were received in order by John Frese servant to Master Horfez, together with an honourable prefent and reward from the Prince Boils, fent him by Mafter Francis Cherry an English man: which present was a whole very rich piece of cloth of Gold, and

Wan Vasilowich is reported to have had seaven Wives, and of them to have left three children

I dermine, Theodere or Pederder and Demetrine a younging by his last wife, and a Daughter, which was the wife of L. Bons aforefad, whole fifter Phendre I have a first aforefad, life time, who would have caused her divorse for her barrennesse (as he had caused Iuan his cldeft some diversetimes to doe and his refusing it at last, was the occasion of that angry, last. and fatall blow, before mentioned) but being protracted by faire excules for a time, the dinorte of foule and body in the Father preuenced that in the marriage bed of the Sonne. Yet by his Testament he ordained, that if within two yeares she proued not fruitfull, hee should marrie amp-Disorce riged ther. The executers viged this after that terms expired but Germa or Irema, fo wrought with her 40 husband, that their counsels were frustrate: wherein she was affifted by the politicke wisdome of her brother Born, who was now become chiefe Pilot, though not the Mafter in that Ruffian thip; and is faid formerly to haue been no small doer in those cruel designes of Islandis deceased Matter; yet had he cunningly cast the blame on him now dead, and wifely infinuated into the peoples fauour, by mitigating the feueritie of his Decrees. You have read before of his great Revenues and wealth, recorded by eye witnesses. Thuanus faith, that three hundred of the Knazeys and Boistens, whereof the Senate of the Empire consisted, by adulfe of the Executors, had subscribed. Beris made the simpler Emperor beleeue, that it was a conspiracie against him: whereupon they were all committed, ten of which (whom he thought his most dangerous adversaries) were suddainly and primly executed : to the reft, he procured the Emperours pardon and fauour, feeming very 50 forrowfull that this elemency had beene so much foreslowed : and that the hastie execution had preuented his officious indeuors for their deliuerance. And that he might feem ferious, he got their

goods to be reftored to their heires : fo working himfelfe into the good liking of all degrees. But soone after, yong Demetrius the Emperours brother was slaine, as hee was going to Church betwixt two Boiarens, by a mad man (as he feemed) who was thereupon fuddenly flaines but the author which let him on worke, could not be found : whereupon Boris was suspected to Demeritualian affect the fourraigntie. Thuanus elsewhere telleth, that he corrupted those which were about formetell har. Demetrius : and the great Bell being rung as is viviall in cases of fire to bring the people together, Demetring at that noise running forth, some were set in that tumult to kil him, which accordingly was effected, as he was comming downe a Ladder: the rumour whereof, caused the tumultuous 60 people(making no curious fearch for the doers) to kil those of the Family which they met in their furie, to put the fulpition thereof from themselves : which notwithstanding, Born exercised senerer tottures and terrible executions upon them, and as one which harrily executed the fact, burned the fort to expiate the parricide. This place being farre remote from the Court, whi-

Thum bift lib. his coller flood awry,in mending it cut his "Ir wasinthe

C HAP.9. S.1: Pheodore dieth. Empresse a Nun. Boris saith nay oft, but takes. 745

ther he was thought purposely to have fent him, could not admit so open evidence of manifold tellimony; but that it gaue occasion of other Tragedies, by another supposed Demetrins, as shall anon appeare. Meane while, Boris could not escape aspersion of the fact path, and suspicion of like intended to the prefent Prince; and therefore was forced to consure vp his best wits to "Some write worke him into better reputation. He did hereof either take occasion, or make occasion by disthathe canfed ners fires in divers Cities of the Kingdome, the Houles being of wood, and eafily confumed : diversplaces in which loffe (made, as some deliuer by his own incendraries, he seemed much to commiserate, and Assistance in which tone (made, as tome details) red, and then by affected bountie, repaired those ruines out of the publique Treasure; others say, out of his price afterwards out uste purse :) thus, not onely raising so many Phamizes out of those ashes; but making denouring of his owne To fire, become fuell to his magnificence, and raking reputation out of the flames and cinders: thence colt repaired erecting a Thearricall fcene whereon to acte in popular spectacles, his many parts of cire, in-them.

dufty, alacrity, wisedome, power, bounty, and whatsoener might fether his nest in the peoples hearts, thus eatily ftoln and entercained in affection to him, whiles Theodore Lined, which was not long : he dying in the yeare 1598. on twelfe day , having luned thirty fixe yeares, and reigned neere foureteene. His impotency of body and minde, you have read before in part. Thus my affir. D. Flat. meth, that luan Vafilowich his Father faid, he was fitter to ring Bels in Churches, then to gouerne an Empire; aluding therein to his superexteeding denotion and most denout superflict. Death of The on. His death caused a new aspertion on Boris as procured, in some mens conceits (and reports) by

oyion. His dead body was buried with his ancestors, in Saint Michaels Temple in the Castle, and 20 Souldiours were prefently fent to the borders, to prohibite ingreffe or egreffe. Theodores will was read, and therein Gernia (or Irenia) his wife, and the Patriarch, entrufted with the administration of the State. Hereupon a g-nerall State affembly was affembled at Mofor, and their oathes The Empresse giuen to the Empresse. After this the Empresse went into a Nunnery, to passe there the fortie succeedeth. dayes defined to publique forrow: in which time (whether of ther owne or with her brothers accord) making shew of vnspeakable forrow for her deceased Lord, the renounced the world, and Rnsamvic of transferred the Imperiall government vpon the Knazeys and Boiseens, which her Husbandhad forme dives transferred the Imperial government vpon the Knazers and sources, which her instantial mourning for bequeathed to her; that they, according to their wildome, and knaze to their Countrie, might take an Emperous care thereof. This was done by her brothers counfill, to try what the people would doe : who death.

30 were so moued therewith, that they came thronging to the Nunnerie gates, lamentably imploring her care in so perillous a time, whom onely they were bound to serue. And when she bad them goe to the Knessey and Boiseous; they peateffed ag ninftthem, faying, they had fworte to her, and would be ordered by L. Bow, ber brother. Hercupon Boris Pheodorowich goeth out to appeale their tumult, and undertaketh for the fortie dayes of mourning, together with the Kuszers and Boistens to administer the Empire. In which time, the Emprese renounced se- The Oncene cular cares, and professed her selfe a Nunne; changing her name from Germa to Alex. surneth Nan.

The time of mourning being past, the people were called into the Caftle, and the Chancellour

made an Oration, perswading them to sweare-obedience to the Knazers and Boiarens . Which 40 they with out-cryes disclaymed, offering to doe is to the Queene and L. Boris. The Councell fitting to confider hereof, the Chancellor came forth againe, and commanded them to I weare to the Knazeys and Boiarens; the Queene thining mo w become a Nunnie. Whereupon they all na-med Boris her Brother, as one worthy of the State; to whom aboy were readie; to sweare. Hee Borishis willing being prefent, role vp and modeftly excused himselfe; protesting his viswilling stelle and vn wor- vn willing nesse, thindle, and bidding them chief from other more working in a twenting in a twenting in a continue thindle, and bidding them chief from other more working dayding in with bid into the Church, they laid in manner forecable hands on him, with food cryes and tamentations, befreehing him not to for sake them. Whereat he wepe and that refored, alleaging his infusiciteises and to kindle greater defire in the people and Nobles, absented and his himselfe with his Sister in the Nunnerie the space of a moneth. In which space the prople fearing his flight, besieged the place, and with continual clamours vrged the Queene, to perforate her Brother to accept of the Empire which the had refused. Shee againe fends them to the Knavey and, Bour for; the mention of whose names seemed to cast them into a fit of mutinie and sedition. Boris then commeth forth and tels them, if they were no quieter, he also would take Sack-cloth, and (as his Sitter had done) enter into a Monafterie. They made fo much greater ftirres, cafting out fore defperate threats of looking to themselues, where the Common wealth was desperately neglected. The Queene

command, praying for his bleffing therein. Boris after new excules, at last feeming ouercome by his Sifters intreaties, and to have held out 60 fufficiently to remoue enuie, affenteth to her, and thee fignifieth as much to the people, to whom the prefents him, praying them to be as loyall to him, as they had beene earnest for him. Borss also spake unto them : Forasmuch as it seemeth good to the Dinine Grace and Providence, whereby all Es is his specia things are gonerned, that by common confent and continual Prayers intreated, I take on mee the Principalitie oner you, and all the Proninces of Russia, I will no longer resist, how beamie socuer I concerne

then wonne by their importunitie perswadeth her brother no langer to refit Gods will, which

had put this constancie into the peoples mindes, and to accept that which thus God feemed to

this burthen to my shoulders, but have determined to undertake your protection with greatest sidelitie. being readie to fray the Russian Scepter and Government, as farre as Gods grace shall enable mee. On the other side bee you faithfull to mee and to my command, as God may you before. I am your most

loyfull acclamations followed, with all protestation of their fidelitie and future obedience. He entring into the Monasterie, after Prayers, received the first Benediction. The people retur-Born Emperor. ned full of joy, and the Bels (of which are numbred in Mosco, three thousand) resounded the publike Fettinitie. All the Magistrates and Officers, & such as received Salarie of the King, go pretently to the Monasterie and carrie Gold, Silver, Precious Stones, Pearles, Bread, and Salt, (after the folemme custome) with withes of long life & al happines, and defiring to accept in good worth 10 their Presents. He with thankes rendred, accepts only the Bread and Salt, Lying, these were his; the rest they should take to themselues. Then doth hee bid them to a Feast, and presently His Wife, Son, with Mary his Wife, Theodore his Sonne of ten yeeres old, and Arfonica his Daughter being fix.

with Many his Wife, I geome in some or very series only and Marymes on Mangater being fix-teene, he goeth out of the Monafetrie with pompous Procession to the Castle. Like Prefense were offered to his Wife and Children, which accepted only the Bread and Sale, remitting the reft to the Prefenters. When he was comne to the Caffle, he chose his Sifters Lodging; for that of the Prince deceased, as offensive by his death was destroyed, and after new built After Festivall entertaynment of innumerable people, solemne Oath was taken of all the

Tariare

Gouernours; those things being in action till May. Then came newes that the Crim Tarter; had entred the borders thinking to find all things troubled with an interregne; whereupon he affem. 20 bled an Armie of three hundred thousand, and went in person against them. But the Tartars hearing how things went, returned home and fent Embassadors to the Emperours Tents. He returned with them to Mose, where the next September (which is the beginning of the Rusfam New yeere, which enters in other places with Ianuary following) hee was publikely bleffed by the Patriarke, earrying a golden Crosse in his hand, and on the fourteenth of September. Bail cromned, before the Knazers, Boilerens, Bilhops and other Orders, had the Crowne feton his head by the

Ruffian New

Patriarke, and the Scepter put in his hand, with the Solemnitie in such cases accustomed, Twelue dayes together all Orders were feasted in the Castle, and the Magistrates and Officers had a yeeres pay given them. Merchants also of other Countries had Immunities and Priviledges granted. The Rustickes had their payments to their Boiarens reasonably rated, and their 30 persons made more free. Germane Merchants had moneyes lent them to repay seuen yeeres after without Viurie. Widdowes, and Orphans, and poorer persons received much Almes. Pheeseres Obsequies were solemnely performed, and the Priests zichly rewarded; and that Empire which feemed dead with the death of the boufe of Beals , now was as it were remised and receiued a glorious Refurrection.

Thus have we delinered you Thurnes his report touching Born manner of acquiring the Empire without publike emie, and cunning wiping off the afperions of *Pheedore* and *Demetris* their deaths. And as every bodie is nowished by Aliments correspondent to the Principles of the Generation, so did hee seeke by politike wisdome to establish that which by wise Policies he had gotten. Wherein his care was not hit leto multiply Treasure, and as at first hee had see- 40 med popularly prodigall, so after a small time of his Reigne, hee became providently penurious, the wonted allowances of the Court being much that tened from that which had beene in former times, as I have received from eye-witneffes. Likewife he was carefull to hold good tearmes with his Neighbouring Princes, and aswell by:plots at home, as by forreigne Aliance indeuoured to fettle on his Race this new gotten Empires. He is faid for this end to have fought a Wife for his sonne out of England, and a Husband for his Daughter out of Denmarke. His Wite was a woman of haughtie spirit, who thought hentoo good for any Hollop (so they call a slave, and fuch the efteemed all the fubjects) and on fuch tearmes flie is faid to have beene denied to a great man his best Souldier and Commander of his Armie.

But while his Sunne shined now in the height of his course, and with brightest and war- 50 mest beames of prosperitie, there arose grosse vapours out of Demetrine his grave, which grew quickly into a blacke darke cloud, and not only eclipfed that Imperiall glorie, but foone eagen-dred a blondie florme, which with a floud fweps away that whole Family, and ouer-whelmed also the whole Empire. Contraries set together cause the greater luftre; for which cause I will bring on the stage a Gentleman, which attended Sir Thomas Smith employed in Honourable Embaffage from his Maiestie of Great Brittaine to the then flourishing Emperor Borit and out of much to infult his large Relations deliuer you this which followeth in his owne words (omitting the most part * to our purpose not so pertinent) in the Booke printed, Anne 1605.

feemeth too

LIB. IIII.

ð. II.

Occurrents of principall Note which happened in Russia, in the time while the Honourable Sir THOMAS SMITH remained there Embassador from his Maiestie.

It Thomas Smith Knight, accompanied with Sir T. Challenor and Sir W. Wray Knights, diuers Gentlemen and his owne Attendants. June 1604. then lying at Greenwich, where by the Right Honourable the Earle of Saliburie he was brought to His Majestis presence, kisled his Hand, &c. The next day

he tooke leave of the Prince, and on the twelfth being furnished with his Commission, he came to Granefend, and next morning went abourd the lobn and Francis Admirall : and the two and twentieth of Iuly anchored within a mile of the Archangell. The fixteenth of September, hee came to Vologda : the five and twentieth to Periflame, and there flaid three dayes, and then departed to Troites, (that faire and rich Monasterie) io to Brattesheen and Rostonekin, fine versts from the great Citie of Musco. The fourth of October, the Prestane came and declared the Emperous pleasure that hee should come into the Mosco that forenoone : presently after came Mafter I. Mericke Agent, with some twentie Horses to attend his Lordship, which forth-with

was performed. Then we did ride, til we came within a little mile of the many thousands of Noblemen and Gentlemen on both fides the way, attended on hersebacke to receive his Lordship. Where the Embaffadour alighted from his Coach, and mounted on his foot-cloth Horie, and to rode on with his Trumpets founding. A quarter of a mile farther, met him a proper and gallant Gen:leman a-foot of the Emperours (table, who with Cap in hand, declared to the Embaffadour, that the Emperour, the young Prince, and the Mafter of the Horfe, had so farre favoured him, as to fend him a Jennet, very gorgeously trapped with Gold, Pearle, and Precious Stone: and particularly, a great Chaine of plated Gold about his necke, to ride vpon. Whereupon the Embaffador alighted, imbraced the Gentleman, returned humble thankes to them all, and prefently mounted. Then he declared that they likewife had fent horfes for the Kings Gentlemen. which likewife were very richly adorned, then for all his followers : which Ceremonie or State o performed, and all being horfed, he departed, we riding orderly forward, till wee were met by

three great Noblemen, severed from the rest of the multitude, and the Emperours Tolmache or Interpreter with them.

They being within speech, thus began that Oration they could neuer well conclude: Which was, That from their Lord and Mafter the mightie Empetour of Ruffia, &c. they had a meffage to deliuer his Lordship. The Embassadour then thinking they would be tedious and troublesome with their vivall Ceremonies; prevented their farther speech with this (to them a Spell) That it was unfitting for Subiells to hold discourse in that kind of complement, of two such mightie and renowmed Potentates on horsebacke. They (hereby not only pur by their Ceremonious Saddle-fitting, but out of their Paper instructions) allighted suddenly, as men fearing they were halfe valvor-

40 fed, and the Embaffadour prefently after them, comming very courteoufly all three, faluting the Embassadour and the Kings Gentlemen, taking them by the hands. Thus like a Scholer, too old to learne by rote (the Duke named King Volladamur Enanywich Mamfoliker) with his Lesion before him, declared his message; which was, that he with the other two Noblemen, were sent from the Great Lord, Emperour and great Duke Boris Phedorowich, felfe-upholder, great Lord Emperour, and great Duke of all Ruffia, Volademer, Moskoe and Nouogrode, King of Catan and Tedious Titles Aftracan, Lord of Vobskoe, great Duke of Smolenskoe, Tuer, Huder, Vghory, Perme, Viatsky, Bolgory, &c. Lord and great Duke of Nouogrod in the Low Countreyes, of Chernigo, Rezan, Polotskey, Rostoue, Geraslaue, Bealozera, Leisland, Oudorskey, Obdorskey, Condingskey. King

of all Syberia and the North Coasts, Commander of the Countreyes of Iuersky, Grysitisky, and Emperour of Kabardiuskey, of Chirkasky, and of the whole Country of Garskey, and of many other 50 Countreyes and Kingdomes Lord and Emperour, to know of his Maiesties health of England, the Queene and Princes. The fecond, being a Captayne of Gunners (the Emperours Guard) named Kazrine Danydowich Beabeerchoue, pronouncing the Emperout and Princes Title, faid hee was fent from them to know his Lord hips health and viage, with the Kings Gentlemen. The third, was one of the Secretaries, named Pheodor Boulteene, observing the former order did deliver what he had in command from the Emperor, Prince and Empresse, to informe the Embassador of their much fauour towards him, and the Kings Gentlemen, in prouiding for his Honourable enter-

tayne and case, a faire large house to lodge in : Also that they three were fent from the Emperour, Prince, and Empresse, to be his Pressant, to supply the Emperours goodnesse toward hint, to prouide his necessaries, and deliuer any sute it pleased the Ambassadour to make to the Emperour. To all which the Embaffadour very wifely gaue answere (as they made report vnto the

So we all prefently mounted againe, the Preflauer on either hand of the Ambaffadour his Horse and Foot-cloth being led by his Page, some small distance, his Coach behind that, and

fome fixe thousand Gallants after behind all: who at the Embeffedors riding through the guard. that was made for him, very courteoufly bowed himfelfe. Thus was he followed by thoulands. and within the three wals of the Citie, many hundreds of young Noblemen, Gentlemen, and rich Merchants well mounted, begitt the wayes on every fide: divers on foot alfo, even to the gate of the house where the Emballadour was to be lodged, which was some two miles. Whether being come, he was brought into his Bed-chamber by the Noblemen his Prestauer, where with many thankes for their honourable paines; they were dismitt, betaking themselves to their further affaires. The next morning came three other Pressames with the former, to know of his Lordships health, and how he had rested the night past: withall, that if his Lordship wanted any thing, they all, or any one of them, were as commanded, for readie to obey therein. Thefe, to with the Interpreter and fixe Gentlemen were most within the walls, lodged in a house over the gate, besides we had fittie Gunners to attend, and guard vs in our going abroad.

The eight of Ochober being the fourth day after our comming to Mufco, the Prefiance came to his Lordship to let him vinderstand, they heard he should goe vp the next day : wherefore they defired his speechand Embaffage to the Emperour: and the rather, that the Interpreter might (as they pretended) translate it. To this purpose, very earnessly at severall times they made demand. The Embassadour answered, that he was sent from a mightie Prince, to bee his Embaffadour to their Emperour, and being fent to their Mafter, he deemed it, not only a difficnour to him, but a weakneffe in them, to require that at his bands.

His audience. The leventh of October, his Lordship being fent for by his Pressaner there wayting, having 20 excellent lennets for himfelfe, the Kings Gentlemen, and good horses for the reft : as likewife two gallant white Palireis to carrie or draw a rich Chariot, one parcell of the great Present, with his followers and the Emperours guard, carrying the rest; on each fide the streets standing the Emperours guard with Peeces in their hands well apparelled, to the number of two thouland by efteeme, many Meffengers posting betwixt the Court and our Pressures. Thus with much state, foftly riding, till we came vnto the vtmost gate of the Court (having passed through the great Caftle before) there his Lordfhip dilmounted. Then met him a great Duke (named Knafe Andria Metewich Soomederone) with certayne Gentlemen, to bring him vp. So in order as we rode, we alcended the staires and a stone Gallerie, whereon each side stood many Nobles and Courtiers, in faire Coates of Persian Stuffe, Veluet, Damaske, &c. At the entry to the great 30 Chamber, two Counfellors encountred the Embaffadour, to conduct him through that Roome. round about which fat many graue and richly apparrelled Personages. Then we entred the Prefence, whether being come, and making obey fance, we staid to heare, but not vnderstand, a very gallant Nobleman, named Peter Basman, deliuer the Emperours Title : Then the particular of the Presents, and some other Ceremonies : which performed, the Embassadour hauing libertie, deliuered so much of his Embassage, as the time and occasion then associated: After which the Emperour ariting from his Throne, demanded of the King of Englands health , the Princes, and Queenes: then of the Emballadors and the Kings Gentlemen, and how they had beene vied fince they entred within his Dominions : to all which with obeyfance wee answered as was meete. Then the young Prince demanded the very fame.

The Embassador haung taken the Kings Letter of his Gentleman Vsher, went vp after his obeyfince to deliuer it, which the Lord Chancellor would have intercepted. But the Embassadour gaue it to the Emperours owne hands, and his Majestie afterwards deliuered it to the Lord Chancellor : who tooke it, and shewing the superscription to the Emperour and Prince, held it in his hand openly with the Seale towards them. Then the Emperour called the Embaffadour to kille his hand, which he did, as like wife the Princes, and with his face towards them returned. Then did hee call for the Kings Gentlemen to kiffe his hand, and the Princes, which they after obeyfance made, did accordingly. Afterwards, his Majestie inuited his Lordship, the Kings-Gentlemen and the rest to dine with him, as likewise Master I. Mericke Agent by name, who gaue his attendance there on the Embassadour, and was now (as divers times) very graciously v- 50 ied of the Emperour and Prince : no stranger (that I euer heard off) like him in all respects.

Being entred the Presence, we might behold the excellent Majestie of a mightie Emperour

feated in a Chaire of Gold, richly embroydered with Persian Stuffe : in his right hand hee held a golden Scepter, a Crowne of pure Gold vpon his head, a Coller of rich stones and Pearles about his necke, his outward Garments of Crimson Veluct, embroydered very faire, with Pearles, Precious stones and Gold : On his right side, (on equall height to his Throne) standing a very faire Globe of beaten Gold, on a Pyramis, with a faire Croffe voon it, vnto which before hee spake, he turned a little and crost himselse, Nigh that, stood a faire Bason and Ewer, which the Emperour often vieth daily.

Close by him in another Throne sat the Prince, in an outward Garment like his Fathers, but 60 not fo rich, a high blacke Foxe Cap on his head, worth in those Countreyes fine hundred pound, a Golden Staffe like a Friers, with the likenesse of a Crosse at the top, On the right hand of the Emperour, flood two gallant Noblemen in cloth of Siluer Garments, high blacke Foxe Cappes, great and long chaines of Gold hanging to their feet, with Pollaxes on their shoulders of Gold.

And on the left hand of the Prince two other fuch, but with Silver Pollaxes. Round about the benches fat the Councell and Nobilitie, in Golden and Perfian Coats, and high blacke Foxe Caps. to the number of two hundred, the ground being couered with Cloth of Arraffe, or Tapiffrie; The Prefents standing all the while in the Roome, within little distance of his Majestie, where he and the Prince often viewed them. Being now by our Prefianes and others come for to Dinner, who led vs through much presse and many Chambers to one very faire and rich Roome. where was infinite flore of mallie Plate of all forts; Towards the other end flood the Emperours Vncle, named Stepbean Vafelewich Godonoue, Lord High Steward, being attended with many Place Noblemen and Gentlemen, whom my Lord in his passage faluted, which with an extraordinary to countenance of aged Ioy, he received, making one of their honourable Nods. The Embaffador entred the dining Roome, where we againe viewed the Emperour and Prince, feated under two Chaires of State, readie to dine, each having a Scull of Pearle on their bare heads, but the Princes Dining rooms

was but a Coronet. Also their Veitments were changed. The former Duke, that for that day was the Embaffadours Prestane, came, as commanded Change of from the Emperor, and placed the Embaffador at a Table, on the bench fide, fome twentie foot from the Emperour. Then the Kings Gentlemen, Maiter Mericke, Maiter Edward Charrie, and all the reft were placed, to that our eyes were halfe opposite to the Emperour. Ouer against the Embeffadour fat his Pressauer uppermost. Also in this large place fat the Privile Countill, to the Two hundred number of two hundred Nobles at feuerall Tables. In the midth of this Hall might feeme to Nobles gueste and itand a great Pillar, round about which, a great heigth flood wonderfull great pieces of Plate. very curiously wrought with all manner of Beasts, Fishes and Fowles, besides some other ordi-

narie pieces of feruiceable Plate. Being thus fer (some quarter of an houre as it were, feeding our eyes with that faire Piller of Three bund Plate) we beheld the Emperours Table ferued by two hundred Noblemen, all in Coats of cloth dred noble of Gold. The Princes Table ferued with one hundred young Dukes and Princes of Caffan, A- Scruttors. Arican, Syberia, Tartaria, Chercasses and Russes, none about twentie yeeres old.

Then the Emperour fent from his Table by his Noble Seruitors, to my Lord and the Kings Gentlemen, thirtie Dilhes of meate, and to each a loafe of extraordinary fine bread. Then followed a great number of strange and rare Dishes, some in Silver, but most of massie Gold; with boyled, baked, and rofted, being piled vp on one another by halfe dozens. To make vous particular Relation, I should doe the entertaynment wrong, consisting almost of innumerable Di-

fhes: Alfo, I should ouer-charge my memory, as then I did mine eyes and stomacke, little delighting the Reader, because Garlicke and Onions, must befawce many of my words, as then it Garlike and did the most part of their Dishes. For our Drinkes, they confilted of many excellent kinds of Meades, befides all forts of Wine Meads. and Beere. Divers times by name, the Emperor fent vs D.fhes : but in the midit of Dinner hee called the Embaffadour up to him, and dranke our Kings health, where the Emperour held fome

discourse of our King and State. But at one time (thriking his hand aduisedly on his brest) Ob, faid bee, my deere Sifter Queene Elizabeth, whom I loued as mine owne heart, expressing this his Memory of Q. 40 great affection almost in a weeping passion. The Embassador receiving the Cup from his Prince. Elegabeth. by hand, returned agains to his owne place, where all of vs standing, dranks the same health out of the same Cup, being of faire Christall, as the Emperour had commanded, the Wine (as sarre as my judgement gaue leaue) being Alligant.

Thus passing some foure houres in banquetting, and refreshing our selues too plentifully, all being taken away, we did arise. The Embassadour and the Kings Gentlemen beeing called by name to receive from his Emperiall hands, a Cup (or rather as they call it a Tendonor) of excellent red Mead, a fauour among them neuer observed before, which Cups for they were great and the Mead very strong, we often sipped at, but without hurting our memories, we could not say Amen vnto : which the Emperour perceiuing, commanded them to be taken away; faving: Hee

SO was best pleased with what was most for our healths. Thus after our low courtefies performed, wee departed from his prefence, riding home with the same former guard and attendance to our Lodings; where our Pressures for that instant left vs, but shortly after they came againe, to accompany a great and gallant Duke, one of them that held the Emperours golden Pollaxes, named Knes Romana Phedorowich Troya Naroue, who was fent from his Majestie to make the Embassadour and the Kings Gentlemen merrie: likewise hauing instructions to drinke their Emperours, our Kings, and both the Princes healths, and divers Princes elie, which hee did himfelfe very freely and some of vs, as many of them as wee could with our owne healths, there being such plentie of Meades and other Drinkes, as might well haue made fortie Ruffer haue stumbled to sleepe. Thus light-headed, and well laded especi-6c ally if you take knowledge of the thirtie yards of cloth of Gold, and the two standing Cups

with couers, which the Embaffadour rewarded him withall, before he departed. But viwelcome newes within foure cayes after our audience so vihappily came, as not only our Affaires, but any elie, except counfeil against present danger, was not regarded. For this was Newcool Deheld for currant, that one who named himlelfe Demetrie Enanowich Beals, as the Sonne of their mering

late Emperor Iuan Vafillowich; hee that in the reigne of Pheodor Euanowich his brother was in his infancie, as was thought, murthered at Ongleets) is now reviued againe, and vp in armes for his right and inheritance: whereupon prefently was fent an Armie of two hundred thousand Souldiers, either to take or flay him, But he was fo ftrengthened with Poles, Coffacks, &c. that a number of Ruffes yeelded to his obedience.

Voon the one and twentieth of November, the young Prince of an ancient custome going to a Church within Mosco, the Kings Gentlemen vpon knowledge thereof (the Ambassador being vnwilling to be teene publike, as also for that the Emperor himselfe did not goe as hee was accuflomed) went and attended where his Excellency might feethem, and they fafely behold him. Princes pomps. who rode in a very faire and rich sled, having a gallant Palfrey lead by two Groomes to draw it, to many hundreds running before to sweepe the snowe away where he should passe, and were said to bee flaues . which I verily beleeue, because certainly they were his Subjects. Then came the Prince richly apparelled with two Tartar Princes standing before on his sled, and two young Dukes behind, with two hundred fleds following him.

The eight of Februarie, the Emperor fent vs sleds to ride abroad, and this day the rather, I me ergneter actionates the control of the control Drums brought in, with more glorie then victorie. About this time returned Peter Basman, one of the Generals, who had performed very honourable feruice, and certainly, he was the man of greatest hope and expectation in the whole Empire, who was brought into the Melon, with all 20 the Countell, Nobles, Gentlemen, and Merchants, a grace neuer performed before to any Subiect. But not without suspition of some extraordinarie secret herein, and 'des particular fauours, bountifull rewards, and a promise he should neuer goe againe vntill the Emperor himselse went, he was, being but a young man, made a Privie Counfellor. Forthwith one thing I will you shall observe the Emperors favour, and his then noble Spirit, he making divers times sure(as was thought) because they were in great danger, to goe againe to the warres, once profitated himfelfe to obtayne his defire, but falling downe too humbly, hee could not eafily rife againe. whereby the Emperor understanding of his many and great wounds, was said to weepe, rising himselfe vp to raise and helpe him vp, but extraordinarie Causes have the like Effects, as hereafter you shall understand

We were lodged in the same house where the young Prince lebn of Denmarke, brother to that King and our now Queene of England, did lodge, (who would have matried the young Princesse Ouck finia, the Emperors only daughter, but that he vulnappily there died) but not in any of those lodgings: for it is a custome there, that where a Prince dyes (especially a stranger) not of long time after to let any other lodge there.

Now the Ambassador vnderstanding of the convenience of his passage downe by sled-way, also rearing (as wise men had cause) what the issue of these warres would be, knowing the state here yied in any futes, bethought himfelfe aduitedly that it was high time, being the middeft of Februarie, to defire a second audience for his sooner dispatch, which he forthwith requested, and wrote a letter to that purpose vnto the Lord Chancellor.

Second audience.

Vpon the tenth of March, the Ambasilador with the Kings Gentlemen all richly apparelled, and all his followers decently attending, very honourably (as before) and with the like recourse of beholders, and guard of Gunners (but that they were faid to bee Citizens by reason of their Citizens Soul warres, but in like apparell) was attended to the Court, being received with the former grace, or more, he ascended the Presence : the Emperour and Prince holding their wonted state, onely changing their Vestments with the season, but for the riches nothing inferior.

So ioone as the Ambassador and the Kings Gentlemen were come opposite to his Throne, hee commanded feates that they might fit downe : then with a Maieflick countenance, reprefenting rather constraint then former cheerfulnesse, he declared, that He, his Sonne and Councell, had confidered his Maiesties Letter, the Maiestie of King lames of England, as also on whatsoever 50 elle was defired, and in token of his joyfull received antitie with the renowmed King of Eng-Land, as with his Predeceffor, he had wrote his Princely Letters to that purpose. Herewith the Chancellor from the Emperour deliuered the Ambaffadors his Highnesse Letters to his excellent Maiestie. Withall understanding by the Chancellor hee had some farther matter to intreas of, then in his Briefe to his Maiestie was remembred : therefore hee had appointed foure principall Councellors to confule with him of his Requelts, which was done. After, the Ambaffador yeelding courteous thanks for his Maiesties fauour, his Loruship attended by many Nobles, proceeded to the Councell Chamber, whither prefently after came foure Councellors, and the Emperours Tolmach: who after falutations, we withdrew to the next chamber, where wee palfed away an houre in discourse, among many young Nobles, having the Ambassadors Interpreter. 62 In the end, after three or foure goings and returnes of the Chancellor from the Emperour, wee went againe before him (where after hee had commanded vs to fit downe as before) by the mouth of the Chancellor was openly deliuered a Briefe of the whole Embaffie (and that dayes particular defire, according to the Ambassadors request, confirmed.) Also in good and pleasing

language, was declared the great defire that the Emperour had, for the continuance of peace and amitie with the renowmed Lawer King of England, as with the late Queene Elizabeth; with that that in due time (all actidents well cided) he would fend an honourable Ambaffador for further affaires, as likewife to congratulate with our King of his pappinelle in fo plaitible tomming to his Right and Inheritance. Likewife, a Grane of a new Privaledge for the Companie, which he faid (hould be wader the golden Seale, &c.

haid hould be vince use gonus scare, occ.
Which ceremonious ispects ended, the Emperor dailed for the Ambaffador and the Kings Golden Scale.
Geneticmen to kiffe his hand, and the Princes which done, with the Emperors nod or bowing to vs. as likewise the Princes, desiring the remembrance of his and the Rrinces commendations to this Maiethe, the Prince, and Queen of England, we were diffinished; but not before the Emperor field he would send home to vs. Thus we took out last leave of the Emperor Court, being more gracionily and especially entertayined then before, of their our any would take know, according to the same and t count, named Knar Enen Engineerich Courinen; was attended with many of the Empetors fer munts within our Gates: following him a dissuer; Rentirem wite Engrave by fone even hardled Great dinner, perfors, confifting of three hundred feuerall diffusion Pring (for it washow Lent) of furth flranged. neffe, greatneffe, and goodneffe (for their number) at it were not to bee believed by the report.

neffe, greatrighte, and goodened (not taker number) as a week not one observation by your propriet.

bit by a mans owne eye-gifte, with infinite foor of Meade, and Berei, m maffie placety.

The eighteenth of March, the Emperor fent by Pailly Onymous by Taipman, the Roll where

in was the Demands of the Ambaffador; and the particulars of the whole negotiation; as there

at large appears. The sintetenth, his Machite four on Adolphy Pailsions, value. Treature; a royall Preient to the Ambaffador of many particulars, alfo to each of the Kinge Genelemen, being rewarded, he departed.

The twentieth of March being honourably accompanyed with their and of Gallants of each Ambaffedors fide the ftreets all along as we pafted, the Ambaffador dep sered from the Citie of Mofe, with departure. the whole numbers of horie-men still becking vs, vill we came a flore male on this side the Citie where we made a ffand, and after fome complement betweene the Ambalistor and his kinde and where we made a fand, and a terr ione complement occurrence the a mountainer and an armor and no nonurable Profuse, the Duke Polagedame, with almost weeping on his part, the Atheliador ween from the Emperors filed to his zinchefür woom placking wild-damle ween think from the Emperors Sled-passage to hories, and betooke our felues to our eake and placking passage in flake, then plassage as this part of the World would wonderest; in which a man though her got a Markhey passage; into ye scaling reade as fleepe.

reade as therpe.

Thus accompanyed with Marker Islan Meriole, Marker walken Rappi, dometries: Agent for
the Durde, and many other Merchanets, "Proceedings that supply to Brighting their interior miles from
the Marker. The next morrow taking lettur of themself, we destinated on inquery fiftig and first
tie vertiz a day calify.

1330 man a literary Destination of the second of th

tie versik a day eastly.

Within few dayers ster wee sheard stower or enably be feld. Be prefete finded mind withmed penperer Bond earth, which, confidering assirbstoke Broghen the Governiest, or drifting, and noted would not his death, of en dayers after take knowledge of swe might in the helistic time hister doubted of the that his day Lordling had it from Malert Assault 1984, the test perticularly! Friedden was viewly diddin, and as it was in it felfe, very strange for within four two chickes after dimner; hatting: (as her and as it was in it felfe, very strange for within four two chickes after dimner; hatting: (as her and as it was in it lelle, very strange row within four two nintris after dimmer; having; (as her winally had) his Doctors with him; who left him in thell find within health; "it the good meale he made could winned; of heredined well, and feed plearability; though predictly after a may be thought, feeding ours-much, her feel whindleff in boothy health; but after by yield in his stomacte; preferrly went into his chamber; shad hindleff evipon his bed; feet for his Doctors (which always speeded) were before they same, her was path, being speeded his document of the was path. and foor after dying. Before he death (a specie as it was) he would bee shorte, and New shiften new christness when the cause was otherwise short the grieft; in which drown, with there and idiractions about the wares, and their had forcestly, shelly the published his part, could be so to ware the could be shorted to be sometiments of the shorted by the shell of the part, could be so to ware the could be shorted to be shorted by the shell of th

For the Emperous perion, he was tall and well bodied, reaching out of his authoritied- Emperors perbedience, of an excellent preferor, black and thin hantel; well faced; round and clofs thatred, fon.
frong limmed. A Prince framed between Thougheam Refoliation, as being out in lakety. but never till death delivered : never alling (though curry live ing) for in his Cloter of County Chamber. One rather obeyed then loved; being featest where hee was not ferved adopted in vpholding a true Maieftie and government in every pare; but iii his owne minde; that it is a question, whether he were more kindere Strangers; or Touche and full to his Subjects, of State-60 full and terrible to his Enemies. A father and a Prince, whose wordes, counsels obsernations, His respect to

mans infulnelle, and confidereth the one with the other, may bee fatisfied, if not con-

policies, refolutions, and experiments; were but the fife of his deaft Southe; "hell fidelings, has some entertayning, no not praying without him. In all Army fairs and Negotiations," Periodicity, has some has some entertayning, locally in the southern and the willing to spare his presence, desirous to have him at all occasions before his eyes. Thill mor doe

amile, to give a tafte of the fruit faring from fet flately a Tree. Being by a fearned and well trauailed Gentleman diners times particularly aduited ; to jet the Prince take some more (then no recreation) by which meanes he might abyell prolong his hire, as instruct his judgement and delight his minde: Oh, would the Emperourani were, one fonne is no fonne : nay . I am perfuse. ded, three fonnes to me is but helfes sense, But had: I fixe fonnes, then I might fately fay I had one, how then should I part with that at any time, I know not to bee mine for any time. This may gine fatisfaction to any violent anding book of his feares and ielonfies : his great lone. Ans may gue satisfaction to any reporter strong more of the strong more care and entournes in a great rouge, and much care. It was an windli docab with the Emperious vpon goodration to lay, has me the Becauche Lord and father of his france, are without. The new so each his frame, he are yet, flame.

Two policies of the fadd Emperious ob that walkingly acquaint you with, for divers below to

for him, then might lawfully One was, when hee crufed fire to bee kindled in four parts of LMsfor; whereas himselfe was noted to be very diligent, wish all his Mobics and Courtiers; and after sowas quenched ; before his bountie to them all, that builded anow sheir houses, and repaid all chein losses. And this was but to frop the rumour, then fo common, of his drange gayning the Empire by which dratagem of his, when his people were readie to mutinit, they were created anow good Subjects: yet did admire his not onely care, but goodnesse towards them all. A second, was at that time the Land was vitted with a mightie famine, and as great a plague

(fomefoure yeeres fince) whereof a third of the whole Nation is rated to have died; and the murmoring multitude laid the caule was , their eletting of a murderer to the Empire ; wherefore marmuring multitate-tape cape was a mass, and restoring of a marmurer is low empire; more questioned and defend only them. Wherepoop a, the capital Galleries to be builded round about the veromost wall of the great Gaine of Majors, and there appointed daily to be given to the poore, twentie thouland pounds feeling; which was accordingly performed for one moneth, whereupon the common peoples mouthes and belies were well ftopped,

then weel longed till the first of May being whated with the inconfiancie and ill-come news of flying reports, whateupon the time of the yeter requiring, the Ambaffador related to palledowne the Rimerto Commerce, as well that her might the fooner have newer from England, as happily to be out of feare of any difafter, the rumours being innumerable and well allow er on bisess

Peter Bafman Demetrius, re-

After the fulpicious death of the old Emperour Beris Pheederewich, &c. by the appointment of the Prince (then their expected Emperour) and the Counfell, Peter Bafman (that noble 30 Sparke) was speedily dispatched and sent as Generall watto their ill-succeeding warres, as their laft hope (indeed hee prooued fo in a contrarie fense) and the onely refuge to the Commons; whither being come, hee with himfelfe prefested mole of his command, as many as freely would offer themichues : Vader which were all the English, Scots, French, Dutch and Flowmings, what toener ; and with him , or mather before ben (as leaft suspected) Ries Vafile Enanch Goleeche, the other Generall, a man of great birth, and in the prioritie of place, to bee received before Poter Bafmen. All which, the now well knowne newly opinionated Emperour very graciously received, happily not without four ichouse of many particulars.

Demetrate now lent Mellengers with Letters which earted the Suburbs, where the Commons in infinite numbers brought them life, and the fraction Plaine before the Callle gate a within which, as daily they did vie, to now were alk the Counfellors in confutation; but 40 happily not in a fecret Counfaile ; also wherein was the Emperial Court.

Tumuk of the There their Beyerens, made demand for many of the Counfellots , especially for the Godonomet, to come to heare their right King Demetrine Entenmech speaking vato them by Letters : Who yet after refufall (and I cannoe condemne all) many cames the Commons being refolmed, elfe to feach themout. Then, by the Boyerestatout was read the Emperours Letters . to

That bee much wondeed at that time, wherein expedition was to bee accounted (afest policie, bessing Los see messes wanting on some time, were to concerning their approximation to be their lanfall privace, as long the form of Eann Vallovich shair loss Emperors . and the one provide of Phono Concerning their his concerning their instances of the one provides of Phono Concerning their replaces, of they meaning the same that the manifest dryaments and dreat 50.

Reasons to the manifesting their of, they (notwithshading his long patence and gracious remignife) Reafast to the manifoling threes), they (instrutisheading his long patience and gracious remifosft) mere my incipel, proud actor is an impress the principal latera, he had be gridingment as to return his Mellingers; whereby they made shounded apparatish to the life Viper, to the State in objecting him, that Trapture to him felter term, and right Engeners: by definating them: yet gaing him a fixing Angunest by their Silvace, of their guiltimess, and with the narmed 1 relative; me and opportunities of the control of the state of the s

All indistinuous life and by the (being confident to be some conficures, of his init Title, made the Principal patients and dangers) had in his Francia figures and dangers) had in his Princels wisdome and clements agains wrote these (but certaint) but less Peac-requiring and Grace-60 offering Letters: yea, was content to defire them be might), and doubted not foorth but to bould command, such growing as the good of the Communication and State in generall; us be that without much freedings of the Subsetts blood, defined the Kingdome.

Alfo to this end bee had fent men of great birth, viz. Rues Pheodor, Euanowich Methithfosky, and Rues Demetre, Euanowich Suskey; and given them Commission to difflace his Enemics, and Preltaue the Go.lonoues, and others, till his further pleasure were home, conse-ming those monstrom bloud suckers and Traytors, with returns of the Commons answere thereunto: Likewife to demand bis Messengers, and they to bee brought before the Commons, whom hee had reafon to beleeue were ill-intreated, if not murthered; witball, that if they did fubmit themselues now to him, at to their lawfull Prince and Soueraigne, (which hee was trucky resolued their consciences were quiltie of) that yet they should finde him a gracious and mercifull Lord; if otherwise, a sewere and inst Renenger of them, and their many muscheedes towards bim, as bee that had bis Sword To ever unfreathed to execute his vengeance on them all: and was casily persuaded they were not ignorant ener roycemene receems on vergeoner or comments as no macestry per peace represent new specied of the many Victories bee bad obtained from edit and wilding to fight with the world forms able and wilding to fight with but Southers: and how afficied and troubled becomes the gall were: But that now, in be had their chiefe and strongest Heads and Armes in his owne hand, the whole World mirbt not hea truth him they durif once frenke epoch against him. as affored that all (excepting a very few, and they of the worst) in heart, were but loyall Subjects, of the

But before this Letter was halte read, the Heares and Hands of the multitude were strangely combined together, not one freaking, but all confusedly like fettered and chayned Horles flamping; being indeed without any feare, but of not doing mischiefe enough, all (as one) running violently into the Caffle, where (meeting two of the pitifully tormented Meffengers) 20 they pawfed to heare them as furficiently as their infufficiencie would permit them, definer the vilde manner of their torturing, whisping, and roating, which was in deede a Whija and Spurre to drive them, wethout wit or humanitie, as if they had beene fired like Gun-powder with the very sparkes or heate : Such barbarous crueltie, beaftly actions, and inhumane spefacles, as without the great Deuill had beene their Generall, no particular could have a-Sted : laying violent hands on all they met : but not killing (the great mercy of God) any man of account.

man or account.

Thus the whole Citie was in an vproare, all the Counfellors houses, sellers, and studies ransacked, beginning with the Codomora; spoyling, renting, and stealing all they met with, but carrying little away but drinke, which they could not carry away.

30 Tie Commons (no doubt) would have made this day little inferiour to the maffacre of Paris, fo violent and deuillish were their fudden resolutions but that the Nobles (best beloued and obeyed) intreated, where none could command: of hers perswading, all wishing an end to this most miserable and neuer exampled mischiefe. But the multitude did what they would and could; especially on the greatest, which certainly were the worst : So as the Empresse fiving to a fafer lodging, had her coller of Pearle pluckt from her necke.

Then the Prince, Empresse, and Princesse, were prestaued (a second command being come from the Campe) with the Godonomes, and many others that were fufpected most : The Nobles ioyning in one counfell for the prefent ordering of these sudden accidents, and for answere to the Prince Demetria Engagement, who suddenly was by generall consent concluded 40 (by the particular knowledge of Bodon Beling a great Counfellor, that was printe to his departure, and forme others) to bee their right and lawfull Emperour, onely a few excepted. So as the young Prince was by many (but particularly by his mother) counfelled to leave the

Kingdome vtterly, before it forfooke him; to follow his Fathers example in murdering himselfe, and herein his mother (that Map of miseries, that Cradle of crueltie) and his onely deare fifter would affociate him. Letters were deuised, and Messengers framed to effect this desperate treacherie on his in-

nocent life; so as in very few dayes (for Mischiefe hath the wings of Thought and Resolution) they three did confent (an wnhappy coniunction) to destroy themselues; and rather to lay violent hands voon their hatefull lives , then make an Enemic feeme cruell in executing Iuflice on them : which " yet certainly this Emperour neuer dreamt of , but determined the " Thus hesbin

SC Prince should be within himselfe, not lesse then Absolute, and in a very great Dukedome, othersascribe The Princely Mother began the health of Death to her noble Sonne, who pledged her with a this murther The Princely Mother began the health of Death to her hand South, who proget the heat to Describe heartie draught, therein fo much strength did hee adde to his vile wicked obedience, that hee to Describe his command. prooued a banquerout prefently, and hand in hand embracing each other, they fell, and died as and this lefteone, the Mother counselling and a ding, while it the child bethought and suffered : yet fee Pro- murther was nidence and Commiseration, Constancy and Obedience : the Princesse dranke, but like a Vir- pretended to gin temperately : fo as modeftie (the want of which was the death of the Mother) now audid muy of prooued the life of the Daughter.

Death of Mother & Sonne.

60 However it was with Boris for other things, I thought it not amiffe to adde this testimonies of his refrect to the English Nation and Merchants in Priviledges granted them, as followeth,

Ne Almightie God without and before the Beginning, the Father, the Sonne, and the Holy Ghost, whom we glorifie in the Trinitie, our onely God, Creater and Preserver of all things energwhere, by which Will and Working, be lineth and gineth life vnto Man; Our onely God which suffirath enery one of ou bu Children with bu boly Word, ibrough our Lord le su Christ, the Spirit of Life, now in this latter times, establish vs to bold the right Scepter, and suffer vs of our selucs to reigne, for the good of the Land, and the happinesse of the People, together with our Enemies, and to the doing of

We the great Lord Emperour and great Duke Boris Pheodorowich of all Ruffia, fole Comman. der of Volodemer, Molco, Nouogrod, Emperour of Cazan, King of Aitracan, Lord of Vobsko, and 10 great Duke of Smolensko, of Twersko, Vhorskoy, Permskoy, Vatskoy, Bolharskay, and of a thers, Lord and great Dake of Nouagrod in the low Country of Chernego, Rezan, Polotskay, Roflouskoy, Verallauskoy, Belczerskoy, Leeflinskoy, Owdorskoy, Obdorskoy, Condinskoy, and ROUSKOY, ICIAINUSKOY, Detections, Jord and Commander of Euerskoy Land, and Cabardinskoy all Siberia, and the North parts; Lord and Commander of Euerskoy Land, and Cabardinskoy Country, and of Cherces, and Igarskoy Land, as also of many others Lord and Commander, with one Country, and of Cherces, and againable thank, or any of the base befored on the Merchants of England viz.

Sonne Prince Phedar Borisowich of all Russia. We have bestowed on the Merchants of England viz. Some France I was Delivery of the Webb, Knight: Richard Saltanstall, Alderman; Nicolas Moshley, Alderman; Robert Doue, William Garaway, John Harbey, Robert Chamberlin, Henrie Anderson, John Audwart, Francis Cherie, John Merick, Anthony Marlar; Wee bear granted and licenced them to come with their hips into our Dominion the Country of Dwina, with all 10 granted and incircus vorms or come freely from the Sea side and within our Dominions, to the Citic of our Empire of Molco. Also there made sute out out Sir Iolin Hart, Knight, and bis Companie, to gratifie them to trade to our Citie of Molco, and to our Heritage of great Nouogrod and Vobsko, and to all parts of our Empire, much their Commodities, and to Trade freely without custome: when which wee all parts of our compression and great Duke Boris Pheodorowich of all Ruffa, with our Sonne Prince Pheodor Borisowich of all Ruffia, have granted onto the English Merchants, Sir John Hart, Knight, PRODUCT DOTHOUGH OF AN ALLES, SOME AS A MORE FOR ELIZABLE PARTED AND THE PROPERTY OF THE STATE AND AND AND A STATE AND AND ASSAULT OF THE PROPERTY OF THE STATE AND ASSAULT OF THE PROPERTY OF h at their ples jure, Any we cause communica, not 10, and any times of Lustome for their goods, nor any subset Cultimes to their Boats or Plating by any place by Land, we for puffing by any place by Water; 30 not for Cultimes of their Boats or Headmaggs, our for puffing our strades and Eerries, nor for any entries of Waters: at alfold manner of alpha, Cultimes or Danies what feature we command hall not be taken of them : But they finall not bring paster mean goods into our Dominions, nor likewife recent your tagen of thems. Danied y from one congression of the second of the secon pawnes by them to owne or colour them, Likewife they frall not fend any of our Subjects to any Towns or Cuie to bay Commodities. But what Citie they came into them scheen shey shall sell their owne Commodities, and buy our Commodities. And when they shall come to our Heritage to great Vobsko and Nouagrod, or to any other Citie within our Dominione with their Commodities, that then our Gentle-Notifical, or to any ever time was one. Demonstra mine tour commonstrate, that tous our venter-men and Generatour, and all short effects field fifty and let them spill according to his and Leiter, and to take so manner of Casisans of them what fenur for any of their Commonities for passing by, my 40 for paling ever any Bridge: a their final they also keep appear Casino what flower or all our Dominions, and where speare they bappen to comm, and doe proceed to buy and full, as also where speare they had and the control of th them lease to trade in all parts of our Dominions with their goods freely without Custome. And livethem leaves to trade in all parts of our paramonane, amounting, grammy sea, partonic onjoinne, and incoming whosp leaves the English Merchantifolds de dispuss to his you of full, or harter them more without my self whosp leaves the English Merchantis wares whole fals, and not by technic (Citab by the Merchantis wares for wares, then fall they full their wares whole fals, and not by technic (Citab by the Merchantis wares whole fals, and not by technic (Citab by the Merchantis wares). pack and by Clothes and by remnants; and Damasks and Voluets by the Piece and not by the Tard, or pack and by Clothes and by remnants, and Dominas, and resures to your rece and not by the Tark, or adjecting, and lake for amountains is the feel of samples, not to feel from the finesh; that is to fay, by the Zolotnicks. Alfo they feel feel Wines by the Proplem Alfo to Hopfbeed, but by the Gallon, 50 Quart or Pas or Charles they feel met it is moreoure; they fould buy, fell and exchange their owns Commodities them selves, and the Ruffe Merchants shall not sell or exchange for them or from them their Commodities, neither hall they carry any mans goods to no manner of place under colour of their owne. and which of the English Merchants would at anytime fell his Gommodities at Colmogro on the Dwing, or at Vologda and at Yerallauly they may, and of all their Commodities throughout all our Cities and Dominion, our Gentlemen, Conernours, and all other Officers hall take no manner of Cuflome according to this our Imperial Letter of fanour. Alfo through all our Dominions, Cittes, and Townes then Shall hire Carriers, Boats, and men to labour or rowe in the faid Boats at their owne cost. Likewife when as the English Merchants shall defire to goe out of our Dominion into any other Kingdome, or into their owne Land, and bakwe thinks it good for them to take with them from our Treefine 60 any Commodities to sell or exchange them for us , for such Commodities as shall be fitting to our Kingdome, and to deliver them to one Treasurer : and with those their and our goods, our Gentlemen and Gomernours shall suffer them to passe through all Cities and Townes within our Dominions without Cu-

stome se before. And when they have ended their Market, and doe desire to goe from the Mosko, then they flull appeare in the Chancerie to the Keeper of our Seale, the Secretarie Vaffily Yacolo-wich Schellcalou. Likewife, if there happen to the English Merchants any extremitie by Sea, or that a flip be broken, and that it be neere any place of our Kingdome, then we command that all those goods shall bee brought out instly, and bee given to the English people that shall at that time bee in our Land, or if they be not here, then to lay them up all together in one place, and when the Englishmen come into our Land, then to deluer those goods to them Also wee have bestowed on the English Merchants the House of Yourya, in the Mosko by a Church of Saint Maxims neere the Marget. to dwell en it as in former time, keeping one House-keeper a Russe, or one of their owne strangers; but no other Russe folkes they shall not keepe any. Likewise these Merchants baue Houses in diuers our Chies as followeth: A House at Yeres, a House at Vologda, a House at Colmogro, and a House at Michael as journess. In John sell, being the fripping place: these fast Houses they sell keepe as in former time according to this our Imperial Letter of favour, or gratisted without paying any manner of Rent or anywher duties what foeuer, either at Mosko, Yerellaue, Vologda, Colmogro, or at the Caftle of the Archangell. neither shall they pay any taxe. Also at these Houses at Yereslaue, Vologda, Colmogro, and at Atchangell they fhall have House keepers of them owne Country-men, or Rufles of a meane fort that are not Merchants, amanor two in a House : to lay up their goods in those Houses , and tomake sale of their goods out of these Houses, to whom they will according to this our Imperial Letter of fanour, but their Ruffe House-keepers in their absence Shall not fell any of their Commodities. And the English 33 Merchants fhal come with their flip to their Port, as informer times they baue done to vinlade their goods out of their foips, and likewife to lade them againe with our Russia Commodities, at their owne charses of out of their loops, and uterange to that town against most very account a Commonweite, at their other darket of Boates and hire of men, and ferrying even the feet great from their hops to their House at the Caffle of Archangell. Lukewife our Officers, Custowers, and Swernemen shall take a sust note of all such goods as they have both of Ruffia and English Commodities , and the note to paffe under the Merchants Firms, because it may be knowne what goods passeth of the strangers and of the Russes. But they Shall not looke ouer their goods, neither unbind any packs in any place, and when they doe fend their owne Enplishmen from Archangell to our (tie of Mosko, or doe fend Russia Commodities into their owne Land, Then all our Officers and Customers shalllet them passe without dalay, according to this our Letter of fauour. And when foener the Merchants fhall be defirous to fend any of their owne Countreymen into their owne Land, or into any other Kingdome over Land: they (hall doe it freely with our Imperiall Maiesties order, was bout carrying any Commodatie over with them, and they shall bave their Letters of Passe vision them in the Embassidours Office. And concerning any matters of debate or controversic in Merchandize, or insurie, then they shall be indeed by the Keeper of the Seale, and Secretarie Vassily Yacolowich Shelcolou, doing right and Inflice to both parties with equitie and truth. and what cannot be found out by Law, or Inquisition, there shall be wied Lots. His Lot that is taken forth, shall bane Lot Live. right done unto him. Likewife, in what place elfe in all our Kingdome there doe happen any matter of discord in Merchandize or by miuris, then our men of authoritie, or Gouernours, and all manner of our Officers hall doe true Instice betweene them: and what cannot be sought out by Law shall be sought out by Lot : his Lot that is taken out shall have right done unto him as before mentioned, as also they shall not 40 take any custome or dutie of them for any Law matter, not in any place in our Kingdome. Moreover, this our Impersall Letter in all our Realme and Dominion, our Officers, and all manner of our subjects

coan me apoer or orace in a suppoint or monotonic properties the respective of fausair, that then those paper fall better on imperial Letter of fractivale, it given at one imperial Palece and Honfe in our Cities of Mosks, from the perce of the depriming of the World (107), in the month of Mosks of monotonic common to the monotonic depriming the World (107), in the month of Mosender's being underwritten as followeth. By the great Lord Emperour and great Duke Boris Pheodorowich of all Russia, selfe-upholder: bis Keeper of the Seale, and Secretarie by name Vassily Yacolowich Sheallcaloue.

shall not disober or breake it in any point what somer, but if there bee any that doth disober this our Im-

ð. III.

One pretending himselfe to be DEMETRIVS, with the Popes and Poles belpes attayneth the Ruffian Empire : his Arts, Acts, Marriage, fauour to the English, and mi-(erable end.

Auing thus prefented you Bris his Tragedie out of that printed Author, and his furely and mature view of this Pretender, against whom Born his defire of secrecie (permitting none guiltie of the murther to furuiue) had vnfurnished him of Arguments. He produced a Parfe given him by his Mother; with the Historie of his life after that fending him away and acknowledging another whom the was more willing to act that bloudy Q993

Scene then her own Son: with other particulars which bred strong confidence in such as (weary of Boris) were defirous it should be so. But for the death of the youg Emperor, & his mother, it is by most alcribed to Demetrius, who seeing the people of Musco his friends, and the Emperour and his Mother in hold, pretended he could not come thither whiles his enemies lined, wherevpon they in a mutime flue them; to auert the enuie whereof, it is probable that it was made to be their owne act, and their Keepers therefore by him imprisoned. Boris his daughter was thrust into a Numnerie, and so made dead also to the succession. But as I have before delivered out of the diligent, learned and incere Historian Thuann, Boris his attayning the Scepter, I shall likewife intreat your patience out of him to receive thefe Relations of Demetrius.

Tbn.L.135.

The I-faires

These your patience out or min to recent the true or falle) Demerrim, some yeeres after in 10 the horders of Polonia and Musconia, appeared one which called himselfe Demetrius, and in testimonie thereof, shewed a Wart in his face, and one arme shorter then the other (noted before in the true Demetrism) a man of sharpe wit, bold courage, liberall mind, gentle behauiour, and of parts composed to a Scepter-worthinesse. First, was he made knowne to the Ichnices of principal pall note in Poland, to whom he promised if he might receive helpe for the recovery of his just Inheritance, his first careshould be to reduce the Russians to the Vnion of the Romis Church. This thing was commended to the Pope as conducing to the enlarging of the holy See, by his avde, and furtherance with the Polsh King and Nobilitie, to be promoted; which also was done by the seliuites themselves, who brought him to George Miscins Palatine of Sendemir a man potent in that Kingdome, with whom he couenanted also to marrie his Daughter if hee succeeded 20 in his Ruffian Enterprize. He had lurked awhile in Liefland, cafting off his Cowle, and had there learned to speake and write the Latine Tongue : and had written to Pope Clement the Eighth, with his owne hand not inelegantly. And being by the faid Palatine, and Vifnouitzi his Sonne in Law, brought before King Sigismund, he made a pithy and Masculine speech, that he should remember that himtelte had beene borne in Prifon and Captiuitie, whence Gods mercie had deimpri and by livered him to learne him to fuccour others afflicted with like difaftre.

Thus by the Kings fauour, the Palatines money, the Iefuites industrie (not to mention the

Warres and prey, and leades with him tenne thousands of them. Paffing Borifthenes hee first 30

Popes Sanctitie) he procured an Armie of ten thouland Souldiers in Poland well furnished, and

in his Ruffian March, winneth to his partie the Coffaks a kind of men which follow forreigne

the Iria was

CoT.Is.

Zeraisa.

Patient veil-

charged vpon Zerniga, & fummoned them to yeeld to the true heire Demetring, which was done by Inan Takmeny, who had before conceived diflike against Boris. Coreles commanded the Coffair, a notorious Sorcerer. He was the Author of the fiege of Putimos a populous Citie, which Michelowich Solickoni held with eight thousand Coffee, whom also he wrought with, that hee admitted and followed Demetrine. Hereupon Borse lends an Army of an hundred thouland men again't him. He alfo fends Ambassadors into Poland, to put them in minde of the league betwixt both Nations, and earnestly desired this counterfeit Demetrine, a Prietts Bastard and notable Sorcerer, to bee deliuered vnto him aliue or dead, adding threats if they perifted, and withall working under-hand with the Nobles to deterre the King from his ayde. But by the Popes and Isluites preuayling power nothing was effected, the King and the Poles refoluing to affilt him, 40 as thinking it the best course to accord both Nations.

Both Armies met at Nouogrod, where Palatine Sendomir the Generall, in the end of Ianuarie

1605, thinking to find a revolt in the Ruffian Armie, gave a rash on-let, & was put to flight, and

atter returned to Poland. Demetring retyred himfelte to Rilskie Calile (in the borders) with a

few, and forfaken of others, he forfooke not himfelfe. Hee had brought with him two Dinines

Louiszi, which had beene Authors of the Expedition, and now encouraged him by their exhor-

The Pa'atine defeated.

Cifercians and of the Cifercian Order which returned home : two Issuites also, Nicolas Cherraconi and Andrew Iç uits-

Demetrise his configura Prayer.

tations and examples of patience. He confident (as hee made flew) in the julice of his caule, when he was to begin battell or skirmish, vied to call vpon God, so as he might bee heard of all, with his hands thretched forth, and his eyes lifted up to heaven, in such like words. O most inst Indge kill me first with a Thunderbolt, destroy me first, and spare this Christian blond, if vniustly, if 50 constoully, if wickedly I goe about this Enterprize which thou seeft. Thou seeft mine minocencie, beloe the inst cause. To thee O Queene of Heaven I commend my selfe and these my Souldiers. Which if they be truly related, and he not the true Demetries, he was either an impudent Ingler, or exceedingly gulled with fortunes daliance and prosperous successe, which condition in a Tragicall period. Part of Bors his Armie was now comme to Riliky, where in a battle betwire the horsemen of

Demetrius his

Bialogrod.

both parts, Demetrius got the better, and the lately conquered, and prefently fewer, became V.-Horseat the first encounter a thousand being flaine, two hundred taken, and the rest put to flight, leauing their footmen to the flaughter, and the baggage to the spoyle. Hereupon five neighbouring Callies with their feuerall Territories, yeelded to Demetrins, one of which, Bialogrod yecided him a hundred and fiftie Peeces of Ordnance. The Captavnes were delivered into his Co hands. Soone after Ialeka and Leptina yeelded, in which Hinsko Otiopeius that famous Sorce-Seuria yeelds. rer was taken : after which all Seueria, a large Principalitie, came in, and eight Castles ; Demetrius vling great modellie in this vnexpected victorie. Boris memewhile tent tome with large

promites to murther him, and the Patriarke excommunicated all which favoured him. Demerems writ hereof modeltly to the Patriarke, and to Bons alto, effering faire conditions to his Family, if he would refigne his viurped Empire, which he with indignation rejected. That havpetied when the Emballadors of Denmarke and Sweden were in his Cources youne leaguit with Borndyeth. him against the Pole. In that consultation Boris is faid to have beene in such rehate, that hee fell Some say, that downe fuddenly, much bloud passing from his mouth, nofthrils and eares; and in the end of A. bee had vid prill hee dyed; some say of an Apoplexie, others, of poyson which hee drunke " after he bad to poyson oreigned fenen yeeres. His Wife with her Sonne were advanced to the Throne after him, and the the shire Nobilitie Iworne to them. The dead bodie was baried without any pompe. Conflantine Filler 2 Nequeenin lex

10 Lieflander of Rie made an elegant Oration in his prayle, whole brother Gaffar tenied Boring in line was elegant Oration in his prayle, whole brother Gaffar tenied Boring in line was elected at Preferry Peter Baffaran was tent away with an Armie. * Hodmins (a neere Kintman 6) Bb. quam new arru) besieged Crom, to rayse whom, Demetrins vied this policie. Hee sent's simple main this ther, ring san, which besing deceived himselfic might deceive others, with Letters that fortie thousand wife some say of comming to ayde the befreged. He being taken (fent by a way which he could not escape) and 60000 min. examined with tortures confesseth the same with his Lesters : which caused a turnult in the Campe; and in the end, the befreged taking advantage of the rumour still increased by some sent purposely with reports that they had feen the new auxiliaries issued with a counterfeit shew of great numbers, and caused the Ruffians to consult of yeelding Basman also the new Generall Basman yeel ve lided and cried out with a loud voyce, that Demetrins was the true heire, and therefore all true dith. 20 heartel Museomie: should follow his example, which the most followed. Hedanin: was taken, and refusing to acknowledge Demetrin: was call in Prison. In the Tents were huge Ordnance

to nd. After this Campe-alteration, followed the like in Mofco, the people refounding the name of Demetrins. The En presse and her sonne were committed to ward, where some write that they poyloned themselves, some that Demetrius commanded it The Germanes flying out of the Boriffian Campe to Demetrius drew many with them.

From Crom do h Demetrius now march towards Mosco, the people all the way flocking to fee their new Prince, who in twentie remoues came thither on the 19. of lune, and entred with Demetrius compompous procession of Souldiers & Priests, the Russian Priests having Banners with the Pictures meth to Moles, his pompous of the bleffed Virgin and their Tutclare Saint Nicolas, in the end of al the Patriarch, and after him entrance. Demetrius by himlel'e on a white Palfray with a gallant trayne of attendants. Thus hee goeth to the Temple of our Ladie, and after Prayers, from thence to Saint Michaels Church in which his Father lay buried, and hearing that Boris lay there interred, he presently commanded his body to be taken up and to be removed to a meaner Chappell without the Citie. Paffing by Boris

his peculiar House, he could not endure the fight, but fent workemen prefently to race the lame; faying, they were infamous with Sorceries, and that an image was faid to be placed under the ground, holding in the hand a burning Lampe, having vnderneath ftore of Gunpouder buried : things to dispoted, that the Ovle failing, and the Lampe breaking, the fire should shad it not beene before spied and removed) blow vp that, and the houses adioyning. Thus had Boris impea-

ched him, and he now Boris of Magicail arts, which are vival acculations in those parts. Thence he went to the Imperiall Pallace, and beganne to governe the Empire, more inclining Poles advan-

to the Poles and forreiners, then to the Ruffes; which votimely expressing himselfe, hastned his cod ruine. Seventie nuble Families of Born his kin red or faction were exiled, that their Goods micht be hared among t ftrangers, and new Colonies of men planted, brought into Ruffia, His clemency was remarkable to Sunky, who being condemned for not onely refusing to acknow- Clementic to ledge this Emperour, but vttering allo reproachfull speeches of him (as being of bale Parentage, and one which had conspired with the Poles to ouerthrow the Russian Temples, & Nobility) and now his prayers ended, and the fatall ftroake on his knees expected, on the feauenth of July, by vnexpected mercy, even then received his pardon. The last which yeelded to him were the Plescouites. Some tell of exceeding Treasures also which hee found laid up for other purposes, so which through his profulenelle foone vanished. The first of September, was defigned to his in-

fes it was haltned, and his Mother was fent for out of a Monasterie (into which Boris had thrust her) far e from the Court. An honorable Conuoy was herein employed, and himielfe with Refres robin great hew of Pietie went to meet her, embraced her with teares, and bare-headed, on foot, at- Moihet. tended her Chariot to the Castle; whence afterwards she removed with her women into a Monaftene where the Noblest Virgins and Widdowes of Ruffia vie to fequetter themselves from the World. His Mother was noted to answere with like affection to him, whether true or d ffembled on both parts. At his entrance to the Kingdome, after Ceremonies ended, Nicolas Cnermacourus a Ieluite made him a goodly Oration : the like was done by the Senate. To the Ie- leftits,

appuration (being New yeeres day to the Ruffer, as sometimes to the lowes) but for other cau-

60 fuits was alotted a faire place of entertaynment not far from the Caffle, wherein to observe the Romile Rites and Holies : and even then by their meanes he had declared himselfe in that point, but for feare of Suiskie hee stayed till fitter oportunitie.

Having thus letled things, his care was to recompence the Poles, to enter league with that Na. Emb. fligt to tion, and to confummate the Marriage. For which purpose hee fent three hundred Horfemen Poland.

with

with Athanasius the Treasurer, who in November came to Crassus, had audience of King Sigifmund, where he with all thankfulneffe acknowledged the Kings forwardneffe with his No. bles to recouer his right, whereto God had given answerable successe beyond expectation; that bles to recome may; it; whereto the may guest and where meeting only one expectation; that he deploted the Turkely inclone is in Hamps and other parts it. vindicate which, he would willingly joyne with the Pale, and other Christian Princer: meane whiles hee was willing to make an enertlafting league with him, and to that end entreated his good leave to take write himfelte a Wife out of Poland, namely, Anna Maria, the Daughter of George Miccinfie the Palatine of Sendomir, to whom for money, men, and endangering of his owne lite, bee was so much engaged. The eight day after, the Contract was folemnely made by the Cardinall, Bishop of Cregaged. In engine usy areas, and course, and the Embaff alour with her Parents featled by the King. Demetrius had fent her and to

Thus farre have wee followed Thuanus, and hee lacobus Margaresus a French Captayne of Demetrius guard of Partifant, which published a Booke hereof. Now let vs present you a little English Intelligence touching this Demetrous and his respect to men of our Nation in those parts, and first his Letter to Sir John Mericke.

The Copie of a Letter sent from the Emperor DEMETRY EVANOWICH, otherwife called GRISHCOOTREAPY OV: the which Letter was sent to Master IOHN MERRICK Agent, out of the Campe, as Master MERRICK was ta-29 king his Iournie to the Sea fide, the eighth of Iune, Anno 1605.

TRom the great Lord Emperour and great Duke Demetry Evanowich of all Ruffia. To the Eng-I lith Marchant John Merrick, wee give to understand, that by the init indgement of God and bis Strong power, we are raised to our Fathers throne of Vladedmer, Mosko, and of all the Empire of Rus-12; as great Duke and fole commander: likewife we calling to memorie the love and amitie of our Fa-114, as great time and one commonant: energy is recamp to commerce use time and amoust of our ta-ther the great timed improves and great Duke from I all Williams for fall Ruffin, and our Brother Theo-der Eusnowich of all Ruffin which was bild, and kept by them and other great Christian Princes, the GOE ELIMONICA of an KUMLA PORCE OF AN ESCA, AMACEN OF INTO MORN OWNERS FOR A CITIZENE PTIME F. THE CE, IN the fame forme and manne does we kinemife intend, and pumples to hold and keep. Lone and amine: but spe-cially, and about all others, doe we intend to fend and to have love and frendly with your King Imms, 10 and all you his English Merchants, we will fauour more then before. Further, as soone as this our Letter and allyon out Eligetti reteriorative or minimum and allowed the the hipping large of Michael the Cart of Such and the Archangell, then to come up to Molco to behold our Maisties prefere. And for your post Hosfe I have commanded shall be given you; and at your comming to Mosco, then to make your appearance in our Chancery, to our Secretarie Ofanasy Vlassou. Written in our Maiesties Campe at Tooly, in the yeare of the world Anno season thousand one bundred and thirteene.

The Copie of the translation of a Passe given to Master I o HN MERRICK, which was given him in the time of his being in the Campe at Molodone with the Emperour DEMETRY EVANOWICH, otherwise called GRISHCO OTREAPYOVE.

Rom the great Lord Emperour and great Dince Demetry Buanowish of all Russia, from Mosco to our Cities and Cailles, as also to the Caille of Archangell at the Shipping place and haven to our Generals, Secretaries, and all other our Officers, &c.

There did mare suite unto us the English Marchant Iohn Merricke and his Company, that we would gratific them to be suffered to passe to the new Castle of Archangell, or to the Sipping place or hanen, in regard of trafficke of Merchandise.

Also, that if he doe send home any of his fellowes and servants from the shipping place, being of the English, that then they might be suffered to paffe into England. Alfo that to what seme Citie of ours the English Marchant lohn Mericke, and his fellowes, doth or shall come unto ; then all yee our Generals, Secretaries, and oll other our Officers, shall suffer them to passe enery where, without all delay. And as for our Cutiomes, as far paling by or for bead mony, our cutiome of goods, you hall not take any of them nor of their fermants. Likewife, when the English Merchants John Merricke mit bis fellowes and servants, Shall come to the Castle of Archangell, then Timophey Matphe wich Lazaroue, and our Secretary Rohmaneum Mocaryoue J, Voronoue, at the forefaid Cafile of Archangell, [hall suffer and permit the English Merchant, John and his companie to trade freely. Moreover, when at the stopping place they have ended and finished their Markets, and that then the faid Iohn Metricke Shall defire to 50 Send into England any of his fellowes or servants with goods, then likewise they shall be suffered to passe. But Rulls pergle, and about the integer of McGoldhalm to fufficied to pall further that if lohn Mer-Ticke with but fillowes and fernants doe not goe for England: but after them that worked doe purpose to come backe againe to Moloo; that then at the Castle of Archangel Timophey Matphewich

Lazaroue, and our Secretarie Rohmaneeu Voronaue; at alfo at all other our Castels and Cities, our Generals, Secretaries, and all other our Officers Shall let paffe the English Merchant John Merricke with his fellowes and fernants, without all flay or hinderance, and as for customs of them, their goods, or their fermants, there fhall not be any taken.

And after the Reading of this our Letter and Paffe, you Shall keepe the Copie of & by you : but this you hall deliner backe againe to the faid Iohn, and his companie. Written at our Campe at Molodone the yeare from the beginning of the World 7113, the eighteenth of Tune.

The last of July 1605. at Archangell.

- The Copie of the translation of a Commission that was sent from the Moske, from the Emperour DEMETRY EVANOWICH, alias GRYSHCA OTREAPYOVE by & Courrier named GAVARTLA SAMOTLOWICH SALMANOVE, who was fent downeto the Castle of Archangell, to Sir THOMAS SMITH, then Lord Embaffadour : as followeth.
- The great Lard Emperour, and great Duke Demetry Euanowich of all Russia, bath commanded Gauarcela Samoylowich Salmanoue, to goe to Vologita, and from Vologita to the new Casile of Archangell, or where seems to shall emersake the English Andassadars Sir Thomas Smith. Also when he bath ourrooke the Ambassadour, then Gauarcele shall send the Ambassadour his Interpreter Ri-chard Finch, willing him to certific unto the Ambassadour, that the great Lord Emperour and great Dute Demetry Evanowich, fole commander of Ruffia, bath fent unto him one of bis Courtiers, in regard of bis Maissies affaires: and after some two boures respite, Gauarcela himselfe shall ride to the Ambassadour, and deliner onto bim bis Maissies speechet, as soloweth.
- He great Lord Emperour and great Duke Demetry Evanowich of all Russia, and of many King. domes Lord and commander, Hath commanded thee, Thomas the English Ambassadour, to certific voto lames, King of England, Scotland, France and Ireland, that by the init indgement of God. certific two lattice, and y interesting southern statement and the state of the sta norie the fending, love and amistic betwixt our Father, the great Lord and Emperour, and great Duke Evan Valily wich of all Russia, of famous memorie: as also our Brother, the great Lord and Emperour and oreat Duke Feoder Euanowich of all Ruffia, fole commander, with their fister Elizabeth, Queene of England : in the like manner doe we purpose to bane sendings, and to be in low with your Lord King
- 40 lames, and more then bath bin in former time. And in token of our faid lone and amitte, we doe intend to favour all bis subjects in our Land, and to give vinto them freer libertie then they have had heretofore: and you his Ambasadour, we have commanded to dispatch without all delay or bundrance. Therefore we would have you to make knowne unto your Lord King lames,our Maiesties lone. And as some as God shall grant the time of our Coronation to be finished, and that we are crowned with the Emperiall crowne of our predecessours, according to ourmanner and worthinesse; then we the great Lard Emperor, and great Dube Demeetry Evanowich of all Ruffia fole Commander, will fend our mellenger to falute each other. according to the former manner. And concerning those Letters which were fent by you from Bostis Godenoue, we would have you deliner them backe againe to our Courtier Gauarcela, and after the delimerie of our freeches to returne him to the Emperour, under written by the Chancellour Ofanaly Euanowich Vialeou.

The Copie of the Translation of a new Priviledge that was given to the Company, by the Emperour DEMEETRY EVANOWICH, otherwise called GRYSHCA OTREAPY OVE, the which Priviledge was fent into England over-land by OLYVER LYS SET Marchant, and servant to the foresaid Company.

> OD, the Trenitie, before, and without the beginning, the Father, the Sonne, and the boly Ghoft Destablish us to hold and keeps our Scepter and Realme for the good of our Land, and the bappinesso of our people. Wee the resplendant and manifest, and not the miserable upholder, but sole commander, the great Duke Demetry Eurnowich, by the mercy of God, Cafar and great Duke of Rusha, and of all the Empire of Tartaria, and many other Kinodomes; as also of the great Monarchie of Moico. Lord Emperour and Commander, Have bestowed, and gratisted unto the English Merchants, viz. Sir

Thomas Smith, Knight, Sw Iohn Spencer, Knight, Sir Humfrey Wild, Knight, Robert Doue, Robert Chamberline, William Garaway, Iohn Haruey, Richard Stapers, Iohn Merricke, Richard Wryght, Richard Cocks, Thomas Farrington, Richard Wych, George Bowles. Bartholomew Barnes, Richard Bowldra, John Caften, Edward Chery, Thomas, the fonne of Alexander alias Hicks:we bane given them free liberty to come with their loops into our Realme and Dominson, and to the Country of Dwina, or to the Califle of Archangel, and to Colmogro, with all maner of commodities, and to trade freely, as also to come from the sea side by land or by mater, to our great dominion and Casiats (in) of Mosco, & great Nouogrod and Vobsko, and all other cities within our dominions, to trade with all manner of commodities, in the same forme and manner, su heretofore was bestowed on the English Merchants, in the time of our father of famous memory, the great Lord and Cafar, and great Duke Eun 10 Vaffilywich of all Ruffia, fole Commander, and as was granted unto them in the time of our Brother the great Duke Theodor Enanowich of all Ruffin fole Commander. And as for custome of their goods, or for passing by, as also for the custome of their boates, or for Head-money, or for going our bridges or Fer-Tes, or for entrie of goods, As also all manner of Custome what soener, we command shall not bee taken of them : Alfo the English Merchants shall not bring nor fell other mens goods in our Dominion, at their owne : neither shall our Subjects buy, or sell, or traff-que for. Also our Subjects pawnes they shall not keep by them, nor fend others about the Cities to buy goods: but what Cities they come into themselmes they fault rafficke and fell their owne commodities, and buy R. Ac commodities freely: And when they come into our Dominion of great Nouogrod and Vobsko, or to any other Cities within our Realme totre ficke with their goods, and that after the market is past, they field bee defirous to paffe for Mulco, or for Eng. 10 Land, then our Gentlemen and Concruours, and all people shall according to this our Castats Letter, let them passe without delay, and as for Customes for them and their goods they shall not take any. And whither foener they paffe with their goods, without buying any commodities, or felling their owne; Then thereofe in those Cities they shall passe, and not take of them any manner of Custome what sever as before: theory on toole that toog load pale, and not sake of them may menner of Unitoms now your and offers adjoint English Meccount foul traffice as fallworth. They final however their owns goods, by the solid Salectath by the Packe, and by the Clother: Damaske and Velust not by the preceding the attember of by resaile and retaile weights they hall not barter or fell. Alfo goods, which is foldby meight, by retaile, or by the 2 clotnicke they hall likew fe not fell. And Claret wine they hall fell by the piece, but by retaile, as by the Vender stop, or Pot and Charck they Shall not fell. Likewise they Shall buy and sell, and barrer their goods themselves : but the Russe Merchant shall not fell nor barter their goods for them ; neither 10 [ball they carry other ment goods in colour of their owne, not to any place what soener. Also if the English Merchants beeminded to make sue of their commodities at Colmogro, or on the Dwing, or at Vologda, or at Yeraslaue, then they shall doe st freely. And for their said goods in all our Cities within our Realme, our Genslemen and Governors, and all manner of our Officers shall not of them take any Tole or custome, according to this our Cafars Letter of Fanor. And in all our Cities within our dominion they Shall byre Carryers Boats, and men to row them freely as before. And as the order is of the Merchants within our Realme : fo likewife if the English Morchants be destrous to goe out of our Realme, into any when on scame, is necessify to engine exercises or university upon my our scame, into any other Kingdome, or into them owned (many) at all fifthey be defined in our Realme to the may state ple commoditie, and to early it into their owne Land, then shall they likensife by and traffices freely at pleasure, and those Staple commodutes which are fitting for our Calars Treasure, they hall like wife bring 40 pragners, com tony singer community more arranged by the management of the management of the second section is a second real section and the Critics, see Officers, fall not take any measure of Culteme: but they shall suffer them to pass without any shainey the management of the second section see that they shall suffer them to pass without any shainey to the Alfo when the English Merchants have ended their market, and shall defire to goe from the Mosco, then they shall appeare in the Embasadours Office, to our Chancellour and Secretarie Evan Cowrbathere to your appears as we save you not you have no constituted and unterstance that Constitute to the Handleton, Moreover, if that he to providence of God, the English Merchant besse any forwards, and that the faul foop be brough or dissent on my place within our Realise, thin our Celtine. mandament to tolof places where the ship is brought in, that our men in office dee feet out the English
Marchants goods will, and to give them to the English people that shall bee at that time in our Land.
But if at that time there bee none of them in our Realme, then to gather them together, and to lay them up in one place : and fo when the English Merchants doe come there, by our Cafars Order, to deliver 50 those goods to the said Merchants. And whereas the English Merchants according to their former Letters of Fanor had a honfe in the Molco by the Church of the holy Maxim by the market, which was granted unto them by our predecessour the great Lord and Cafar of Reffia, the faid English Merchants Shall dwell in the fard boufe as beretofore they have done: Keeping one boufe-keeper a Rulle, or one of their owne fir angers, but any other Russes they shall not keepe. Moreover the faid English Merchants baue bouses in other Cities, a bouse at Yerallaue, a bouse at Volugila, a bouse at Colmogro, and a bouse at the hipping place at the Castle of the Archangell : and those boufes they hall keepe and hold by them, according to our Calars Fanour or Gratitude, as in former time they base done, and for any subsidie, vent dutie, or any custome what seuer for the said houses there shall not be any taken of them: and their other boufes, as at Yerallaue, Vologda, Colmogro and Archangell, they foall have boufe-kerpers of 60 their owne countrie-men or Ruffes, but the Ruffes fall bec meane men, a man or two at aboufe: And they Shall lay their goods in those houses, and likewise Shall make sale of their goods out of their houses, to whom they will, according to this our Calars Letter of Fanour, and their house-keepers being Ruffes Shall not buy or fell any manner of commodities in their absence. Also they shall come with their ships to

the Shipping place, as before with their Commodities, and to unlade out of the Shippe their goods; and to lade their hippe with Ruffe goods with their swine bired labourers , as alfo to carry their owne goods oner in their owne Boats and Veffels, to their owne boufe at the Cafile of Archangell. And what former goods ther have, our chiefe Customer, and Officert, and Sworne men, Shall take a note of the goods under their owne firme, both of goods they bring in, and alfo of goods they carry out. Burshey |ball not looke over. neither unpacke their packes in any place; as also they hall suffer them to passe and places, without all flay or delay, according to this our Critats primitedge and Latter of famous. Alfo whenfemer the English Merchants fhall be defirom to fend out of our Realme into their owne Land any of their ferments. ouerland, or into other Kingdomes, then they final the role foud their people overland with our Cactars or-go der freely, has instruct carying any Commodistes, and their paffe final be given them in the Embaffadours office Emitter concerning any matter of contronerfie that any man fall have to doe with them either in barcaining, or in iminer, according to this our Calars order they fhall be indged by our Counfelon and Soereter E an Cowroaton Hramoteeu . Therefore, as before, whereformer they, or any of their farments, in all our Banlone, in what Civie foener, have any matter of controverfie in Bargaining, or in Inverse a. gamft any man, or that any man bane any matter against any of them, then mall our Cities, our Gentles gamps any man, or true and all other our Officers, Shall undge them, doing inflice between enter of them men, and Gonemours, and all other our Officers, Shall undge them, doing inflice between enters with equitie and truth. This primitedge or letter of fanour was given at our Calars Pallace of Molco. 20 From the world Anno 7113 in the moneth of December.

The Copie of the Translation of a Contract, made by the Emperour DEMETAY EVAN OWICH, otherwise called GRYSHCAOTE AFY OVE, and the daughter of the Palatine SENDAMERSKO, chiefe Generall of Poland, in the time of DEMETRY his being in Poland, the which was sent ouer by Master Io HN MERRICE, and translated out of Ruffeinto English for the Kings Maieftic, as followeth.

A True Translation of a writing out of Polish into Russe, given by a Monke who left his babit, called by the name of Gryshea Octrapyous, supposed to bethe Son of the Emperour Evan Vassiliwich, named Demeetry Eusnowich, who gane this affirence under his firme, to the Palatine Sendamersko, at alfo buth beene anouched by one Bewcheesko, principal Secretary unto the faid Derbetry before all the Nobilitie of Russia that this faid writing was written by the Generall his owne band, as

Wee Demetry Euanowich, by the mercy of God, Prince of all Ruffia; of Owgleets Demetry. uskoy, and Lord of all the Empire of Molco, and being of the Stocke of Prestrone; Calling to memorie our former life ; being not in that forme and manner, as is in other great Monarchies, as was in the time 40 of our Predecessions, and other Christian people. Neueribelesse, by the providence of Jed aimightnes from whom proceeds to a beginning and an end, and from whom comments life and death. We have by howespied whom proceedits a sequency one as each grow women commerce is a weak water. I want to a seal made choicy with our own fall fig. with good living, in the time of me being in the Kingdome of Pclush for Companies, of great and bowerable brits, and of gody education, and is fash a companies, with views we for the final by the meters of God, line paracasis; which is the refferents and Neghel Lady Matina, daughter to the great Palatine Sendemersko . And upon this occasion bane taken him for our Father, and baning requested of him to give vato ve his Daughter Maryna in mariage, and in regard that wee are not yet in our owne Kingdome, therefore doe we purpose bereafter to take order for her comming unto us with the Generall Sendamersko. Likewise, when I doe came to line in my owne Kingdome, then shall the Palatine Serdamersko remember bis fanhfull and true promofe with his Daughter, the Lady Marypa her vow, my felfe remembring my owne vow, and fo both of veto hold it faithfully with love and affection

30 on, and to shat end doe we binde our felues by any writings. Likewife, first and principally, in the name of the boly Trintie. I doe give my faithfull and true princely promife, that I will take in marriage the Lady Maryma. If an the contrary, I doe not , then, I wish that I might give this as a curse upon my felse: alfo to foone as I fhall make entrance into our Kingdome, and herstage of Musco, then will I give the Palatine, the Lord ber Father, aremard of tenne thousand peeces of Polith gold. And to the Lord Maryna our wife, in confideration of ber great and long lourney, as also for the providing and furnish, and make a ing of ber felfe, I will give out of my Treasure Veluets wrought with Silver and Gold. And the Melfengers that shall be sent to me from the Lord her Father, or from the Ludy her selfe. I shall not hald or keepe, but shall let them passe, and will reward them with gifts, which shall be a token of our Princely fai-60 Mont; and thereunto doe we give this our Princely promuso. Secondly as some as we shall come to the Imperiall throne of our Father, then prefently will we fend our Embassadour to the resplendant King of Po-

commentari.

e thefe at

disin and

disparage of

and the cast out

land to certific unto him, as also to intrease hims to take knowledge of this businesse now passed beswiret vs. and witball that he would be pleased to suffer us to conclude and effect this our said businesse, withous loffe or bindrance. Also unto the forenamed Ludy Mary na our mife, we give two Lordhops, viz. Noungrod

the great, and Vobiko, with all the Proninces belonging to the same, with Counsellors, Gentlemen, and the great, and v 000x0, we part to errome community with prime, who very compense, one attempts, and the free comments of the first part of the first part of the comments of the first part of the results of the comments of wholly gine and bestow all on the said Lady Maryna that is contained in this writing, as some as by Gods. woung gene ent outpers an one say has Long makey to have no sometimen of the string, as yourse as sy time below so had he married together, and theremus home giant to be an writing. I feeled with our present, Scale. But if by chance our wife bath not by us any children, then in the few or helpfus before presented, Sease, has go y consistent majo nato not of ut any construction, then to topic two temporal specified, feed had place men in amboritie of her twee, to generate and to dee luffice? and also is shall be free for the faid men in authoritie, to give Lands and Inheritance to their awno. Souldett, and to trade freely. the jana men in answering, in your to them, and as though it were in their owne true and lamful deminis 10 Promise of Ro. on, and tobnild Monasterer, and to fet up the Romish Religion, and to have Latine or Romish Price. Promife of Ro. van museumen reasonances, among per vy see Rominin transgens, nontre more reasone or woman Prings; mile Religion, and Schooles. But the her felfe to abide and remaine with its And concerning her Prinks; to have see many as shall be needefull to be kept for her some godly Romith Religion, without all let or bundrance and many ashall be used full to be tent for her some gody Romith Keingen, witness all ten or hundraness and an use one fifty to he survey of God are already mediand to be fame. I will, we definition that has a mee one fifty to the survey of God are already mediand by the function to the fame, I will be survey and to five y the Charch of Rome. Alfo, if God final done great vature or god faccoff, whereby the the performed without a yeare; then that the at the fameline of some Rather to figured me and another year. Then the survey has a deap ther Maryna. But if it field himsets for beare till another years, then doe I paffe bis. my Bold, writh my some

hand writing, and thereunto I have sworne my selfe, and given a vow according to the boly order, and all

on. Written at Sambore the fine and twentieth of May, in Anno 1604. Vinderneath washis firme to all

Ow let vs returne with Thusans into Paland, where with his Historical eies we see this glo-rious Spoule, her Father, Vincle, & trayne of women accompanying the Russian Embassico

in his returne; whom many Merchants out of Italia and Germanie followed in hope of gaine. In

prill, before they entred Mofes. And thefeuenth day after, Peter Baffmer with a great troupe

of Courtiers and Nobles, attended the Spoule to the Court, where thee was folenmely enter-

married to him by the Patriarch after Euening Prayer, Both of them also, folennely crowned, returned with found of Musick and Ordnance into the Cafele, and the night passed with great la-

bilee, Demetrius his mind being filled notwithfunding with cares. For a confpirable which had

beene hatching fixe moneths, now growing to riperiede, terrified film against which hee had armed himselfe with forreigne aides. At first hee had brought a guard of Germanes out of Pe-

land, which being without example of his Predeceffors, and freing in diffiked of his fullyects; hee

Prince Demetry of Owglets.

hand writing, and to comme to the property of the Rolle people to the Latine Religi. 20 in this Bill to hold and keepe carefully: as alfothat I hall bring all the Rolle people to the Latine Religi. 20

this lingring journey, they continued from the end of Jandary to the fixe and twentieth of A.

or courters and records, accessed the open as a second of the second of

definited operation with the calibered Polanders to the borders, whereaster committee many without her; is turned with the calibered Polanders to the borders, whereaster committee many out riggers to the greater discontent of the Ruffer. Many of them found greateness not withleading, in his to 40 much respect to the Poles and many made qualities of his birth. Many were suffered of con-Spiracie, and divers tortured, which was but quersching fire with Oyle, the flame growing greater. And now beganne Dometrine torepent of his haftie difmiffing his guards, and began a new Check-roll of Lieflanders and Gormanes, to which hee added at hundred English Halbers * I suppose diers and as many Sents (their Captaynes hee calleth Mathias Conssessand * Affert Lant) this should bee and an hundred French under laques Margiret armed with Partifant. Then also he inlarged his Alexander Gofenshie Corninus was fent Embaffadour from Poland with rich Prefents and Let-

this fore [aid as appeareth:

ten he rd of in ters from King Sigifmand to Dementer, which because they expressed not the Title of Emperous commentaries o shele afe faires which

that place of were not received nor opened. In excuse whereof the Embassiadom vied words insufficially femile, which Ruffien patience, that he should goe and deprive the great Tarke of those Tirkes. Demerring dif. 50 fembled not with flanding, in regard of his past experience, and hoped bedpes from the Pole. The dayes tollowing were spent in pastimes and sloth. Saturday was solemne to the Roffins; a Yeast then happening which they preferre before Eafter. The Emperour and Empresse fate clowned in the Hall, and made a great Feaft to their owne and to ftrangers ; in which the Fole Embaffafought to little dour refused to be prefent, except he might fit at the Princes Table , as the Millian Embussadour purpole in our Merchants had beene honoured at Cruconia. The Ruffes denied ftiffely , but Demerius at length yeelded. Many peremptoric and licentious passages happened, the Palet carrying themselves domineeringly to the Russes, as Victors to the conquered. Demerring at first over-bold, now beganne to feare, ty to the Ruffer, as y locals to bee warie, and fene for all his guards. On Friday, the Ruffer preparing 60 for offence, and the Poles for their defence (for they and not the Prince, feemed to bee then in danger) in the Euening the Nobles command the people to arme against the next day. The Empreile was this while fecure, and made ready a magnificent Feaft against Sunday. But on Satur-Blondie day. day (the fixteenth of the Kalends of June) the Confpirators affemble early, and a great cry is

rayled to kill the Poles and Demerries. Some greedie of spoyle runne presently to the Poles Lodgings, assault them and embreyle all with slaughters. Others runne to the Castle. Few of the guard were there, delay having bred fecuritie in Demetrins, nor were any of their Captaynes feene. Marearet then lay ficke as he after told me (Thuanns) which difeafe faued his life. Things were done with fuch furie and coleritie, that many Ruffes in Polab attise were flaine before they

were knowne. Peter Balman came running forth halfe naked, & was killed by one of his own feruants. Snirkie P. Balman flain. their Leader, carrying a Sword in one hand, a Croffe in the other, caused the great Bel to be rung in token of fire that Demetrias might be raifed & come forth of his Parlor. He awakned with the 10 noyfe, now feeing a greater danger then fire, taketh a Turkifb Sword, and fuddenly flips downe

out of a window, breaking his legge with the fall, whereby he was eafily taken by the people, and by Smirkers command carried into the greater Hall, where Embassadours have audience. ken and flaine: There some vpbrayding his impostures, he with his sword layd one on the ground : and then defired the Nobilitie to permit him to speake to the people, which was denyed. Some say that he obtayned of Sninker, that he might be tryed by the testimonic of Vasilowich his Wife; which being brought out of the Nunnery, affirmed before the Nobles on her oath, that her Sonne Demetring was many veeres before murthered by Boris his perfidies, which she at first freing the peoples fauour, and suft reuenge on Boris, willingly diffembled, whereupon they ranne vpon him, and with many wounds flue him. Thus writeth Peter Paterfon of Vofal which then was in Contumelious 20 Ruffia. When they had slaine him, they thrust a rope thorow his secret parts, and drew him tage.

thorow the myre into the Market place, where he remayned foure dayes lying all gorie and myrie on a boord, with Peter Basman vnder it, and an vely Vizar ouer it, a Bag-pipe in his mouth, with other lascinious cruelties exercised on his dead body.

The Palatine Sendomir (or Sandamershe) was blocked up in his House, and other Poles Hou- Poles flaine; fes rifled, many of which died not vareuenged, howfoeuer by numbers ouercomne. Viteneskie after much flaughter of the affayling Ruffes, when he faw Ordnance brought, fet forth a white flagge in token of yeelding, bidding his Servants caft abroad his money; which whiles the people were gathering, he and his made way with their Swords with great flaughter, & yeelded to the Beier ens which came from the Castle. The miserable Bride was not only spoyled of in- The Ottenes. estimable Treasure, but of all her Apparell, and Iewels, carefull only of her Father and Vncle, 30 and chinking it a happy purchase, if the might saue her hie and recour her Country. Meane-

while, without her Garment to couer her, without Bed to lye on, without securitie of life, shee while we respected in poore Weels the iffue of the peoples furie,

Many Merchants endured like fates. Ambrofe Cellar, befides the loffe of thirtie, thousand Merchants

Crownes, loft his life, Lanies Win was with his own Sword beheaded: Nathan loft one hundred footled. and fiftie thousand Florens: Nicolas Limborough fiftie thousand. Two of Anthone had lent two hundred thouland Crownes to Demetrius, which now was not to pay them. Marcellius loft an Rulles flaine. hundred thousand Florens. Twelve hundred Poles loft their lives; many were faced by the Boise rens. Foure hundred Ruffes were flayne. At night the tumult ceafed. Scarfly would the peo-40 ple giue leaue to bury the bodies after three dayes wallowing in the durt, in the Germant Church-yard.

After this tempest was calmed, the Boissens affembled in counsell about a new Election. where Smiskey made speech to them, professing himselfe forrowfull for that had paffed, in the execution of a just zeale to the Imperiall Family and his Countrey, and in hatred of a cruell Swifty speech. Tyrant: that Inan Vafilowich, how ever injuriously taxed by some, had left Kingdomes annexed to his Inheritance as Monuments of his great spirit; by whom he had beene fent to Stephen King of Poland to treate of peace, and ever fince had so carried himselfe in the State, that none could justly blame him : that Iohn being dead, Theodore succeeded, but another ruled, who murthered the yonger brother, and as was thought, after that poyfoned the other; fo attayning the Empire,

which how miserable was it all his time? that Demetrus therefore (whosoeuer he was) found friends, himselfe amongst others, but when their Religion was endangered, Forreiners advanced. Lawes violated, Exotike fathions brought in, liberties suppressed, he with stood with the peril of his life; which it grieued him to have enjoyed, as a Theeues benefit, by his grant which had no right to take it : yet feeing their forwardnesse in a cause so just (would God it had not beene so bloudy) more regarding his Countreyes fafety then rumours and reports, hee had beene their Cantavne to doe that which God the dispofer of Kingdomes by the fuccesse had appropued, fo that now they were freed from a cruel Tyrant, nor had they any Sorcerer or Impostor to mock them : that it remayned now, feeing the Imperiall Family was extinct, they should now feeke one of nobleft bloud, of wifeft experience, of most religious zeale, who might esteeme his peo-

60 ples hearts his strongest Forts, such an one as either is, or is thought to bee the best man to become their Prince. Thus was himsefe chosen Emperour the thirteenth of the Kalends of June. He is chosen A writing was published to justifie the killing of Demetrine, a runnagate Fryer called Grifike, or Emperous. Gregorie Strepy, professed in the Monasterie in the Castle (which therefore hee would neuer enter left hee should bee knowne) with other aspertions of Herefie, Sorcerie, affectation of indu-

often flande. red : and by ill willers, bad was this Deme-

cing Popery (the Popes Letters also challenging his promife produced) to give the lefuites Temples, Colledges, and other necessaries; with other ouer-tures to the Palatine, Sardan mersko, for Smolensko, and Nonogrod; his bringing in Poles in Ruffian Roomes, his luxurie, rior. pompe, referuing Boris his Daughter in a Nunnerie with intent of inceffuous luft, hauing murthered her Mother and Brother; making a filuer Throne with fixe Lions on each fide, and other pride; abuting Nunneries to lust and lasciniousnesse, &c. But wee shall give you hereof moreauis made worfe, thenticke tellimonie then this of Thurns in Snisters Imperiall Letter to His Majestie, Meane. while touching this Demerius we will produce a few English Testimonies extracted out of their Letters and Relations: wherein if some circumstantial discrepance appeare (in things done both fo farre and fo foule in tumultuous furie, where men had rather hade themfelues then be- to come witnesses, lest whiles they would bee Spectators, they should bee forced to bee Actors. and have their parts acted in that bloudie Tragedy)it is no maruell. I produce all Witneffes I can. in a cause of so remark cable consequence, and choose rather to bee proline then negligent, that the Reader out of to much enidence may better weigh and examine the truth.

part of this intelligence I found in Ma-Occasion of Beris ill gouemment.

"He late Emperour of Russia called by the name of Demetry Emanewich, is now credibly faid (as some of them say) to have beene the Sonne of a Ruffe Gentleman, named Gregorie Penpoloy, and that in his younger yeeres he was shorne a Frier into a Monasterie : from whence her afterwards privily got away, travelled into Germanie and other Countreves, but had his moft a-Papersithe la. biding in Poland, in which time he attayned to good perfection in Armes and Military know- 10 terby confe- ledge; with other abilities of lufficiencie; Afterwards finding a conceit taken by the Ruffes of a rene, &c. Son
Gerger Preproduces Series and that some other should be made away in his steed: And finding allotte general distalte
or Gregor Preproduces Series
rour; and that some other should be made away in his steed: And finding allotte general distalte ten Letter tol- of the government of Bors then Emperour, who after a faire beginning, did in his latter veeres vphold himfelfe, and his house with oppression and crueltie: And having also many circumstances and oportunities of time and age, and such other likelihoods, to aduantage and second his pretence, began first to broach his Title (as before) and by degrees found such a generall acceptation of all forts of people, that it fo daunted Boris, that (as it was then rumoured about) hee first. and afterwards his Wife, and his Sonne succeeding him , made themselves away by Poyson. Demetrial Em. Though now it goeth for certayne, that the poyloning of them was procured by the Pretender, 30 to make the easier way to the Empire, which thereby he obtayned, entring and continuing the fame with all the State, and greatneffe that fuch a place required : Vntill at length the Ruffer moued rather by other certainties, then by any thing discourred by himselfe, the fixt day after his marriage (which was kept with very great pompe and folemnitie) being the seuenteenth of May last past, taking a time when the Poles stood least on Guard; came to the Court with one confent of Nobilitie and Commons about three of the clocke in the merning, and mastring the Guards, drew the Emperour out of his bed from the Empresse, and charging him that hee was not the true Demetry Eugnowich, but a falfe Pretender, he confessed the Deceit, and was forthwith hewed in pieces by the multitude: Peter Bafman relifting was likewife flaine; and both brought into the Market place, where their bodies lay for a time to bee viewed of enery man. The old Queene denied him to bee her Sonne, excusing her former acknowledgement to have 40 proceeded from feare and the generall acceptance which he found among it the people. As many Poles as made relistance, were flaine to the number of feuenteene hundred. The new Empresse. her Father , his brother with the other Poles were committed to fafe keeping to the number of

Suistey Empe-

ble bloud. See fup in Fletcher

eight or nine thousand. And then proceeding to a new Election they chose Emperour Vasilee Enanowich Shorker, who not long before was at the Blocke to have beene beheaded, for reporting that hee had feene the true Demetry Enauerich after he was dead, and did helpe to burie him. But the Emperour did recall him, and afterwards advanced him to the chiefest place of dignitie about his person. He This might is the next of bloud I living, descended of the Race of the old Emperour Inan Vasilenich, of the berumoured: perumoured:
Others sayhee age of fiftie yeeres or thereabouts, neuer married, but kept vnder during Boris time, a Prince of 50 was not of that great wisdome, and a great fauourer of our Nation, as did specially appeare by the care heehad but of very no- to guard the English House from rishing, when the late Demetry was brought in by the Poles.

The late Pretender was o ftature low, but well fet, hard fauoured and of no prefence; howfoeuer otherwise of a Princely disposition, executing Iustice without partialitie; And not remitting the infolence even of the Poles; well feene in martiall practiles, and trayning his Noperson descri- bilitie to the Discipline of warre, to make them the readier against the Tartar, not given either to women or drinke, but very liberall and bountifull, which occasioned some grieuous Exactions Some say that to Women'to University to the same and the option of lich as knew him, not viewor-he was not like how to maintage the same and longer continued Empire, which hee lost chiefly through the greatthat he feemed neffe of his minde, supposing that none of his Subjects durft attempt any fuch matter against 60 a dozen yeeres his person, when as in the meane time the practice went on with luch a generall Conjuration, elder : but that the Ruffes were summoned by the ringing of a Bell tobee readie to enter the Court. And

mistake this for an other after Pretender calling himfelfe the fame Demetrius, &c. as after shall appeare, a deformed man.

to shake off that Government which would have made them a more noble Nation then formerly they have beene.

TT is reported by fome of Ours, that hee the rather was inclinable to our Nation in the refor & he bare to his Majestie, having read that his worthy Worke dedicated to Prince Henrie. Hee is faid also to have beene a resolute man of his hands, to have delighted in fighting with the Beare; active and ftrong. I have likewise heard that hee gave the command of his Guard confifting of strangers to Captayne Gilbert a Scot; to have made one Buchenstoy (a Learned and Reli. Captayne Gil gious Protestant) his Secretarie; and otherwise to have beene so alienated from Russian manners, Buchantes, so and so well affected to Strangers, that they compired as aforefaid. The people are faid to haue entred the Caffle (which was a quadrant, having a high bricke wall of feuen flories, and another of flone, and a Market place) with flones in their pockets (which are rare thereabours) and some Stones rare a

Some report from Captayne Gilberts Relation, that lying on his bed not long before his death (as hee thought; awake) an aged man came to him, which fight caused him to arise and Capraine Gilcome to Captayne Gilbert, and his guard that watched, but none of them had seen any thing. a Vision. Hereupon he returned to his Bed, but within an houre after he againe troubled with like appa-20 rition called, and fent for Buchinskie : telling him that he had now twice feene an aged man, who at the second comming told him, that though for his owne person he was a good Prince, yet the injustice and oppreisons of his inferiour Ministers must bee punished, and his Empire should hee taken from him. In this perplexitie his Secretarie gaue him good and holy counfell, faying till true Religion were there planted, his Officers would bee lewd, the people oppreffed, and God Almightie offended, who perhaps by that Dreame or Vision had admonished him of his dutie. The Emperour feemed much moued, and to intend that good which that Countrey was not fo happy to receiue. For a few dayes after (as that Relation auerreth) his Ruffe was not fo happy to receive. For a few dayes arer (as that retaiton auterren) nis anye Secretaric came to him with a Sword, at which the Emperour jefted, and hee fuddenly afrect Another mas-fawrie speeches assulted him, with many other Grandes of that Configuracie, and (like another net of him and the configuracies of t Take the present of the profit taken and imprisoned, the strangers murthered, the English except, who have in all changes been

d. IIIL

well beloned of the Ruffiens; as in leed they deferue, historia alway done good fertice to the Emperiors. And their interest faued the life of that worthy man Bushingley; which they required with

much obsernance to the succeeding Emperour Suite, who comes next to be spoken of; and first

you shall have his Letter to our Gracious Souereigne.

SVISKIN the Successour his Letter to our King, describing the former DEMETRIVS bis Acts and Tragedie.

The Copie of the Translation of a Letter sent from the new Emperour. Vassily Enanowich Shoskey to the Kings Maiestie by Master Iohn Mericke.

The love and mercie of God that guideth us in the wayes of seace, we glorifie with the Trinitie.

I find him called Shesher. Suiskey, Ziska, &c, the just

Rom the great Lord Emproor and great Duke Vassily Etanowich of all Russia, fale Commender of Voludomer, Mosko, Novogred, King of Cazan and Afracan, of Syberia, Lord of Volsko, and great Duke of Smolensko, Twerskoy, Yaulurskoy, Dearmskoy, Vatakoy, Bollhankoy, and of abor: Lord and great Duke of Novogred and the Low Country, of Chemcego, Rezanskoy, Polotskoy, Rothouskoy, Yerelladeskoy, Beallozerskoy, Leeflanskoy, Owdorskoy, Obdorskoy, Condinskoy, and Commander of all the North parts : alfo Lord of the Land of Ecuerskoy , Cattalinskoy , and over the Empire of the Got . gians of the Land of Cabardinskoy, and Echarskoy Land, likewife of many other Lordings Lord

To our belowed Brother James King of England, Scotland, France, and Ireland, Weegine to una derst and that Sigismund King of Poland, and great Duke of Letto, on Anno 7109 and Vind unto the late Emperous Boris, but Embelladon's munch Lewis Sapengo, being Chanceton of the givent Duke-demo of Poland, requisiting the full Empresses Boris , that the former league and pears made of concluded upon by the great Lord Emperour and great Dake Theodore Euanowich of all Ruffia, and

League with

bim Sigismond King of Poland, might be stedfastly bolden and continued till the time of that league were expired. As also that the Emperour Botts would inlarge the Said league for thirtie yeeres more. whereupon the Emperour Boris reelded thus farre unto the request of the King of Poland, that he would continue the old league till the full time were expired, and affent to a new league for twentie yeares more; and to that effect be tooke an Oath, to hold and keepe all the contents fastbfully, mentioned in the fuld Writing, touching the same league: and instead of the King of Poland, bus Emballadom Lewis. Sapeagor was sworne in the presence of the Emperour Boris. And after the Polish Embassadour was departed from the Mosko, the Emperour Boris fent unto Sigifmund King of Poland his Embellaasparted promotion recognises. Comperior to the state of the principle of the Princip Constitution of the Princip Council, called Michael Cleabowth Sallteccouse, with home others to end and finish the afterfaid chapter, to the which league the King of Poland homefree man from me in the 10 preferes of the Emperours Embassadam to build and keepe the said league saidfully, according to the teyour of their Writing.

But not long after Sigilmund King of Poland, with one Pauarade, entred into fuch a practife, as be therein fall fied his Oath, and made way to the shedding of much Christian blond : First, by retaying gainst the pre- and upholding one Gryshca Otreapyoue, a Runnagate, a Coniurer, and one that left his profession being a Monke, and ran away out of Rusta into Poland; and being come this ber, tooke upon him to be the Son of the ereat Emperour Euan Vaffilawich of famous memorie, and by name Demetry Euanowich: when as it was well knowne in our Kingdome, that before be was storne a Monke, bewas commonly called Yowihoo, Son to one Bowghdan Otreapyoue, dwelling at a place called Galitts: and when bee had committed much villanie, to sawe his life be shoare himselfe a Frier, and so runne from one Monasterie 20

A Frier. Magician,

to another, and lastly, came into a Monasterie called Chowdo, where bee was made one of the Clearkes being so placed there by the Patriarke of Mosko bimselfe: But be did not leane off his former life; for be continued fill in his most Devillesh altions, as be did before be was soone, committing villary, for saking God and falling to the fludie of the Blacke Arce, and to many fuch like enils he was inclined. Also there was found by him a Writing which showed how he was falne from God, and the same was made well knowne to the boly Patriarch of Mosko, and of all Rulla, and to the Metropolitanes, Archbilhops, and Bilhops,

and to all the holy Cleargie: whereupon the faid Rulers of our true Christian Faith, which is from the Greete Church Grecian Law, for these his most ungodly works, consulted to fend him to perpetual Prison , there to end his life. Whereupon this notorious Instrument of Satan, perceising this bis ouerthrow, and that his vile pra-Flight to Letto. Elifes were disconcred, ran away out of the Kingdome of Mosko, beyond the borders, and into Letto to a 30 place called Keevene : thus according to the Deuils instructing of him, as one for faken of God, be made

place collect necycus: tous according or one scenario superscripty own, no one projection of voice made this bis doing manifolify human to all people Jeaung off bis Mank: Habit, and mishall by the compilland addition of our Teamine the Polish King, and one off bis Polistines named Sandamersko Kourza, manifoli Duke Constantine, and Duke Velhamerskoy and bis Brethren with other Polish Lords that were of bis Councell, began to call him the Son of the great Lord, Emperour and great Duke Euan Vaffily wich,

by name Prince Demetry of Owelitts. As also by his villanous treacherie and the Denills persuading of him, he made much trouble in our Land, by sending abroad many of his intissing and provoking Letters, to divers places upon the borders of our Country: that is, to a place called Done, and to the Volgoe, to our Cossiacks and Souldiers, na-

ming him felfe to be the Prince Demetry of Owglitts. Moreoner, there came to our Kingdome of 40 Mosko many Polish Spies, which brought and differ ed Libel's bothin (itie and Townes, and in the high-wayes, practifing to rayle diffention in the Kingdome of Mosko. Alfo it is well knowne, not only to them in the Empire of Mosko, but likewife in other Kingdomes, that the great Lord Emperour, and great Duke Evan Vallily wich of famous memory, had a Some called by the name of Prince Demetry, and after his Fathers decease, there was given unto him and his Mother the Cuie of Owelitts. But in the recre 7095, being in the Reigns of the great Lord, Emperour and great Duke Theodote Euanowich of all Russia, this foresaid Demetry was murthered by the order and appointment of Boris Godenoue. And at his Funerall was his Mother now called the Empresse Martha, withher owne Bre-

Demetra af

Buriall.

thren by name Michaila and Greegory the Sonnes of Theodore Nahouo. Likewife to bis burying, there was fent from the Mosko Metropolitanes, and Archimandreets, and Abbots: and the oreas Lord Emperour, and great Duke Theodore Euanowich fent to his Funerall many Nobles and Courtiers of the Land which (aw him buried in the chiefest and principall (bureh of Owelists, Moreoner. Martha the Dutches and Empresse his Mother is yet living , and many of ber Brothers and Vnckles, which doe at this present time serve vs the great Lord Emperour, and great Duke Vassily Etianowich. of all Ruffia fole Commander: Likewife in thefe last yeeres past, as in Anno 7111. and in Anno 7112. and 7112. concerning that forefaid Traytour and Hereticke, the forfaken of God Gryfhca Otreapyoue, many of our Gentlemen, Captagnes and others our Officers did many times write from the North parts of the borders of our Kingdome into Poland and Letto, and to others their inferiour Cities, to the

Rulers and Governmers of the same; as also our spirituall people: the Patriarke, the Metropolitans, Archbifospi, and Bifosps wrote unto the fristnall people of Poland, declaring unto them what that Heretick 60 Lettetsto Ps- and Traytor was, the wife from whence be came and what manner of per son he was at also of his demea-land.

nour, and the wife of the occasion why her runne away to them out of the Land, at also the manner of the making away of the Prince Demetry, and withall requested the Rulers and Spiritual people of Poland, that they knowing what Runnagate this was , would not give credit wato him, nor to make a breach of the late le aque concluded upon.

CHAP.9. S.4. Ruffe ftory of Demetrius in Suiskys letter to King Tames. 767

But the Gouernours of the Dukedome of Poland and Letto, as also the frintual men . according to the King of Poland bu com nandment, game no credit unto our writings, but began, more then before to intice and persuade men to uphold the Traiter, and to aide him. Merconer, to make trouble and differtion in our Land, they tooke this for faken of God, Greelica unto them, and cald him by the name of Prince Demotry of Owglis: likewife the King gaue unto him a chaine of gold, with many Palificaldes. thousand peeces of Polish gold, to the defraying of bis charges; as also sent in armes to our borders with one of bus Lords, the Palatme Sendamers ko, and another of his chiefest Lords, with man trooper of Poles. But when the Emperour Boris understood bow that this Gryinca Ocreapyoue was called, by the name of Prince Demetry Euanowich of Owglits, and withall, that they did aide and below bim

againfithe Kingdome of Rullin: he could bis Compell to fend a melfenger, at from themselver, to the Sweening lent.

10 Polith Lord Panameterada, which Melfenger was named Smeetnay Otreapyone, being Vachleso the feid Gryfhea Otreopyoue being the Son of one lamateen Otrepayou, onely to declare unto them what this Grylhea was; but that Polith Lord Panameerada would not fuffer him, and his Unchlo to be brought face to face. But be made answer to the faid Messenger Smeetnay that they did not aide bins.

neither did they stand for him in any fort. So after be had feat away the Meffenger Smeetnay, the Kong of Poland, and the Lord Panameerada did aide Grythca Otreapy out with men and treasuremore liberally then before, purposing to make great firife and trouble, and to feed much bloud in the Kingdome of Mosco. Alfo at the fame time Sigreat just on a some to make ports more oversoon for temporary source. Expense part time starting affording the great part time starting affording the great part time starting asserting the Kingdome of Mosko; and crim Tatur, text ; and to that end be flouid and Cry flow with bis forces, against the Kingdome of Mosko; and crim Tatur, text ; and to the text of the confideration, did promifer a gime unio the forefaid Crim. Frince, what he would demand. Then

the Emperon: Bois understanding what praitifes were in band, being altogether contrary to the laque; thereupon purposit be sent to Sigitmund King of Poland, another Speciali Messenger, one named Polsweensyn property the swelf at the same time, the body Parriarke of Molco, and all Rushi, with the Me-nicke Agarcous; the welf at the same time, the body Parriarke of Molco, and all Rushi, with the Me-tropolitans, artebishops, and Bishops, with all the rest of the body Ciergie, sont their Messengers with Another Mcc Letters to the State of Poland, and fo the great Dubedome of Letto, to the Archbolhops, and Bahops, lenger, and to all the Spiritualite. Moreover, in the faid Letters, the Emperour Botis with the Patriarke, and all the boly affembly, wrote unto the Lord Panameerada concerning Grythca, making it knowne unto them what be was, and wherefore be rame away into Poland, and likewife that the Sonne of the great 30 Lord Emperour, and great Date Evan Vafiliwich, the Prince Demetry was dead: And to that

intent, that the King Sigifmund should not give crede to the said Grysnca, and that they should not full Christian blend nor violate the league. Bill Unristant comma row victate ing tengent. Hereupon Siri, sand further by word of mouth, Hereupon Siri, sand further by word of mouth, but be and Panametral deliuncies to the just unforger in his uniforge; that be edd to bela and keyen their Leque, and tomeroure, data are victate or break bit sath to measure of way: and them; ded write, that be did not ande that forefaid Gryfica, neithendid gine credit unto him : withall denying that he was with him in his Krugdome: and further he did write that if there were any out of Poland or Letto that did aide or affift hous, that then they found be executed. But after be had diffurehed a-

way the messinger of Botts, we regarding his oath, still more and more did aids and beipe that Crysti-40 ca Ottrapyoue. Affethe Palatine Sendamersko, and Mybala Ratanisko came into the Kingca Unicapyous, supera e mature schametesko, som, suprata takanisko come mio och kny-dome of Molco, to a place called the Land of Secuesko, putting the people of that Land in feare, and perfuading them there, this Grythics must be true Prince, and thus the King of Poland and Pan-meerada, had found out the certaintse thereof: and therefore they will have Poland and Letto stand for him. All o from out of many other Kingdomes they goe to aide and affect him: likewife other inferiour Kingdomes are willing to stand for him: marconer that Grythca in the fore faid Land of Securisko. and in other places of our Borders, by the meanes of his dimellish practises and consurations did intise and mover power y one Drawit, of the memory of the immunity products and known them to fall to him. Heavily the popule of high forefield place of the Lend of Securetko, and on the Bardart, bring fimple people, and reforming feldome to the Critic of Modero, and before the control of the Control of the Control of Control of the Securety of Control of the tree of the Critic of the Control of Control of the Critic of the Critic of the Critic of Control of Control of the Critic of the Critic

upon against those Polonians and Lettoes, and other enemies that were already entred the Kinedome of Mosco, the Emperour sent his Nobles with a great Armie: but by the appointment of God, the Emperson Bon's deceased's upon whose death, the chiefest of the Nobles departed the Campe. And after their departure, the Armie hearing of the death of the Emperour, and heing drawne thereto by seare and otherwife, at last reelded themfelues oner unto Gryfica, as the Borderers had done before.

Allo the fore faid Gryflica, by the belpe of the Dinell, and King Sigil nund, and Panameerada, come into the Citie and Kingdome of Molco, to the great disquietnesse and trouble of the whole Land by whom the Religion was corrupted, and by him were many true Christians put to exile, for denying his right and interest to the Kingdome of Molco. And Shortly after be was setled in the Kingdome, and he tooke to wife the daughter of one Sandamersko, as was appointed by the King of Poland and Pana-6c meerala: the which wife of his was in Molco with her Father and Brother Senatskoy, and with one Vestinenetskov, with their Polish and Letto Lords, and other people, by whom Religion was prophaned: as also we were forced and driven to receive many wrongs and insuries, which the people of the King. dome of Mosco could not indure. Also, at last this Greeshea, by the counsell of the Palatine Sanda- Mutation of mersko bis Father in Law, and by the counsell of Veshneustskoy, and other Polish and Letto people, Religior.

which he branght in with him, was purposed, by a secret politicke denise to have put to death the Me-tropolitans, drobbishops, and Bishops, and all the body mass previous distinctly, with the Nobles and Courto oppose and, an according to the accor on and lequites brought with him many leturtes.

The which we the great Lord and great Duke Vailly Eusnowich, of all Ruffia, with the Metrone. litans, Archbiftops, and Biftops, and with all the bols formual affembly, and with the Nobles, Court. ers, and Commons of the Kingdome of Molco, well-emfidering, and percessing what an alteration this To are common of the resident of the overthrow and otter undown to our whole Kingdome: we then mentade be to our Ubritismo faith, with two overcome amouser vanishes to our moise A segaine: we then convertify formed and Lementad, and which the trush proper to the daughts: Trimine our outs' Lard God, to that linesh and defendath mankinds, that it would place him be definer vis, and the Common mankin from those wile, cruell, discelles attempts, and desifes of theirs. Thus desiring the mercy of God, we all returned and flood fledfash to our former unspotted and true Christian faith, unainst that usurper and turned and posse pecupus o on young von young own time constitute jatto, against to at younge and
constraint of philox and the Constitution that of production to fland in the fame manifold; and a true to the
dash bosping and longing for the time that all people, and war the time and Sondain; and many other of the
Empire of Molco mughs come to garber thempoleus together, or that they might thempole percence and dis Emptre of recovering the control of of our Religion. The largenesse of the Kingdome of Mosco cannot be unknowne unto you our louing Brother, how farre it extendeth it selfe both to the Somith, and to the West, at also to other places, that in balfe a yeares space they could not gather themselves together. But when as the power and warlike Soul- 10 donns, and all other people were gathered seather, then through the mercie and fanour of God, this enemy of Gods Commonwealth was discoursed to all what he was. And the Empresse Martina, being Mother of the true Prince Demetry Euonowich, ded certific unto us before the Metropolitans, Archbishoppes, and Biskoppes, and before all the boly assembly, as also to the Nobles and Courtiers, and other by copies, and a specific, and a spire as two cost surmons, me and the street, and other Officers, and men of warth without mer Empire, did free deliver, thus her Some the Prince Demetry was marrhered beyond reason, at a place cald Owellies, by spiriments of Bosts Godenous, and that he dyed in her armses; yet did this Grythea fulfat, call himslift by the name of hims that was

marsteres.
Also we found in the cutteds of this Gryfica, the Copie of a wirling, which was the controll and
agreement that he made herwise him and the Paletine, before his comming out of Poland; in which 30
was written, that as some as he did come to the Kingdome of Mosleo, thus then he would take to write daughter of the Palatine, and would gine her two Proumees, culted great Nouogrod and Volsko, daughter of the Palatine, and wouse gine not two evolunces, causin great Novogood and volsko, with compell, Courtiers, Gentlemen, and Priests, fitting to a Confrequence, with inferior Castles and Lands, freely in the forefaid, to build and fer op Monatteries, and also to fet up the Romilli Religion; Lamas free or story; or you not or measure so from the sound of the so Jana preces of Voulth year, wento us on our Kullia account, twee awarea trousjana Markes: and to bis wife, so confluences of ber long Norman, be promised to since clust of Gold, and clust of Silver, and of all the boff things that was in the Preclavies of the Kingdome of Molico. Likewife, that here the fail Grylica, at his commission to Molico, would take order to bring thefe Hongs to Infle with all dispace, whereby he might draw all the Dominion of Molico from our true Circina Religion, and for the same ture. A ned vs into the Romilh Religion, and to have destroyed the boly Charch over all the Empire of Mosco. sea of into the comman actigent, some waste conveyed to the Country Country over a new among of patter of allow, and for being which they be for the performing of the the fail of Gryfhea was source to the Palatine Sandamersko, in the prefiner of the Landberr of the Land CHYPICE WAS PROTECTOR FAILURE ADDRIBUTED, ON THE PROJECT OF THE LAND, at the first plant of the Land, at the first plant of the executing to the some beath writing, would belt find the first common with all digenes, at the guide to the control of the Empire of Moleco to the Romifi Schopien. The whole commonst and expressed to the Control Standard hand be about the first first the control Standard hand to the the foreign of the Control Standard hand be the the foreign of the Chyrica were true, and both that the foreign of the Chyrica were true, and both that the trafted one to another : moreoner, the Palatine did certific unto our Nobles, bem Gryfica fent him a Lester under his owne hand and Scale, in which he promifed to give him Smolensko, with all the Prouinces belonging thereto, and another place called Securiow, as also gaste him liberty to set up Monastee 50

ries, and the Religion of the Church of Rome. Further, there was found by him Letters which were (ent to him from the Pope of Rome, and the Cardinals, and Priest, to that effect, that he should remember and withall be mindefull to take in hand speedit rebose matters and businesse upon which he had ginen to Sigi mund, and the Cardinals bis troth and vow, the which was, as before faid, to be him lefte of the Romish Religion, as also to bring all the people of the Kingdome of Ruifia into the same Romish Religion, not onely them that of them selves were willing thereto, but also others by compulsion, and to put them to death that fought to contrary the same. And not onely them of the Kingdome of Russia but the term to acate to manyong to content you prome. Arm not more yourself you a configurate of acusting out of the many of the good people of fearing Refigure and that doe from to the Kneydown of Mocion, as the debutch, and the Calamiff, them the myst be found feets to bring into the Romit Refigure with the district, and the Calamiff, them the myst be flound feets to bring into the Romit Refigure with the functions. Moreoner, Gryshca bim felfe, before vs. and our Nobles, and Constiers, and before our Com- 60 ms, did acknowledge as much, and thereupon yeelded himselfe to be in fault: as also shat be did all with belpe of the Dinell, having for faken God.

For which these his vile actions, this Gryshca, according to the true instice received an end to his life, and was by abundance of people stain in the Mosco, where be lay three dayes in the midst of the Citis, to the view of all such like vsurpers, and disturbers. And because his body was loathsome unto us, we caused Slaine & burniat to be carried out of the Citte, and there to be burnt.

This Enemie thus baning ended his life, then the Kings fonnes of diners Countries, now dwelling within our Kingdome, with the Patriarke, Metropolitanes, Archbishops, and Bishops, with the Nobles. Courters, and the Commons, made entreaty unto us Valil Euanowich, to raigne and governe over Election of them and ouer all the Kingdome of Mosco, as their Lord, Emperour, and great Duke of all Russia. Ac. Switte cording to which entreatie made unto usby the faid Kings sons of diners Countries as likewise by our Nobles. Courtiers, Merchants, and all the rest of the Commons of all the Kingdome of Molco. Wee are

come to the great Kingdome: of Volodemar, Mosco, Novogrod, and as also of the Kingdome: of Ca 2211, Astracan, and Siberia, and over all the Proninces of the Empire of Mosco: as also wee the great Lord Emperour, and great Duke of all Ruffia, are crowned with our Imperial Crown : and for the faid Kings sonnes of diners Religions, and our Nobles, Courtiers, and Souldiers, and all manner of Peaple, doe ferme our imperial Maiesty with defire and good liking voluntarity, and not by delusions and constructions, as the Poles and Lettoes were bewitebed by Grishca. But we the great Lord Emperour compressions, as the cuts comments and proceedings of the poles and rept Duke Valid Emmovich, with great ears flaved and referende on People from the flavel of the Poles and the Lettices, definding them from death; and withall have commended to be go emany of them into Pokahl and Lettic but the chieffest of them their were of the Comment, and that pratitions are the proceeding the comments of the pratition of the proceeding the process of the process o Ced to bring trouble and diffention in the Kingdome of Mosco, are now taken. And we to doe an konour unis the dead budy of the true Demetrie, have (upon conference with our Metropolisanes, Archbiliops, and all the boty Assembly, our Nobles and Courtiers, and all the Kingdome of Mosco) sent

and an anopy, and we see the second of the second of the Citie of Owglets a Metropolitan, named Filareta, of Rollow and Yeraliue, who we salled before he was made Metropolitan, Theodor Neckete, which being one of the Nobles in times past, and with him the Archbishops of Aftracan, called Feodosia, and our Nobles the Duke Eurn Michalowich with him the Archonopope of Attracts, cause a cocount, who are very ever too Duke Ellis Michalowich Vorotinskay, with the reft of his fellowes commanding them to bring op with them to bod of the Prince Demetric Eunowich, who was muribred by the appointment of Boris Godonous, and to bring it of to our Citie of Mosco with great honour, which bod, shall be buried in the principal Church of Mosco, to our citie of notice was great convent, whose very jeasure written in the principal (burch of Molco, called Michael sisk Archangel, neave to bit faither the great Land Emperous nead great Duke Euan Vallowisch of famious memorits, and by Gods power bit body fall mor be touched or abufed any manurer of way. Likewife will me, by the fautor of God, bower the Eventual of Demetric Evanowisch with special solutions, which body performatio many cures, and works to miraculously vine shown, that came to Miracket, him with Fasts to be cared of their disfasses.

And now most loning and deare brother, wee calling well to minde the great amitte and friendship that was betwirt the great Lord Emperour, and great Duke Eisan Vanly wich, and his Sonne Theodor Eunnowich, the Emperone Boris, and the great Lady Queene Elizabeth : the like brotherly lene doe we defire to have with you, most touing and deare brother, to be established and continued betwint us.as it was with them, during our lines. Therefore may it please you, our louing brother James, King of Eng. land, after the bearing of the se great and strange dangers past, to resoure with viz, that be bath delivered from such a vile enemy, and that be, our merciful God, bath divided and scattered that wicked coun-Cell, and that he hath turned their cruelty upon their owne head, to their fhame and confusion. And concerning your Merchants that were in our Kingdome, Iohn Mercicke with his fellowes, we have graced Six lohn Merchants

cerumy your nacrousn's some consistency at also beauty given unto the faid lohn Merricke, and his fellowes, ricke, a new primitedge, and Letters of famour, by which they hall come into our Kingdome, and to traficke two waters, the weathers, the consistency of the consistency of the constants. with all manner of goods freely, without paying any Custome what focuer, and as to them was gran-bad not time, in regard of many our Emperial affaires, but hereafter doe purpofe to fend, to vilue you in rour Kingdome. Written at our Emperial palace and Citie of Mosco, from the beginning of the World Anno 7114 the fourth day of lune.

Thus is Demetring painted out by his Enemies, which perhaps were not altogether led with Thu, L135 simplicitie of truth, but in many things made him worle, that they might make their owne caule (bad enough) to appeare better. They tell also of great outrages committed by the Poles, Polishin olen-(like those sometimes here in England by the Danes) their proud infulting over the men, rauffig. cies ments of women, fetching them out of their houses and husbands bosomes to serue their lusts : neither did Demetrine, as they fay, punish them; one onely being sentenced, and hee violently refcued from execution by the Poles. They fay also that Demetrion his body was plucked out of the grame and burnt, the affect throwne into the aire, the feeds, as the fequele feemed to fliew, of many Demetrij after.

Smiker is allo by some reported to have beene chosen by lot in this manner. The Nobles cast co lors foure times to receive a Successor, as it were, by divine sentence in lot-oracle: in query of Choosing by which times the lot fell vpon Suisker (tor as some fay, there were three or source neerer then hee) lot. he modeftly refuting and enforced by constancy of the various lot to accept that Scopter; whereof others thinke him as ambitious, as was modelt Boris before him. However, he hath left his name and memorie written in as blacke inke as either Borss or Demetrius, if Reports bee true.

1606.

one for

which fay that he proued a wicked Prince, partly by poison, partly by the Tartars, making away Suit-greices. all, whose bloud might by Nobilitie threaten a probabilitie of their prouing his Corriuals. Yea he is faid to haue fent for Witches and Sorcerers, Laps, Samueds, Tantars, or whatfoeuer other Nation yeelded fuch Hell-hags, incarnate Fiends, the Deuils blacke guard, to confult about his Empire and succession; and (the Deuill is a murtherer) to have sealed their predictions with bloud. Thus being told that one Muchalowich should succeed, he is faid presently to have plot-The like is told ted the death of three Grander of that name, his best Teruants: yet the superstitious people obof K. Edward ferue (after much chopping and changing) that in little time the State was fettled on one of that the fourth that Name, which still swatch the Scepter; Who then being a youth of no State-terror, was his attendant in Court, and bare an Axe (after their cuftome) before him.

Ghfer fuccee-A printed book

attendant in Court, and pare an ASE state that the country of the could not be admitted audience till Ianuarie. Hee thereby complayned of Sandomersker artes which obtunded that with G, he put Changeling on Raffia, whereby aboue two hundred of principall Nobilitie had loft their lines: demanding reflitution of the moneys which that Impostor had caused to bee transported into Dute of Clasrence his broPoland, and restitution of goods; otherwise hee would with Charles of Sweden Duke of Suderman, enter Poland with an Armie to bee reuenged for the league (which they had fworne) broken, &c. Sigismund answered modestly, with excuse of their helping the right Heire in their conceits, and that his defire was that peace should continue (being loth in times then tumultuons Aprinted book 1614 rels of a at home, to prouoke a forreine enemie, foncere in dwelling, foremote in affection) Sandemers be 1614, tello: a great man, na. ftill remayned prifoner in Russia. But things being better feeled in Poland, and growing worse in 20 med Trigue, Ruffia, by the diflike conceined against Swirker, a double danger grew to him both from another reuited Demetrius (yea many precending that Name and Title did after arife, as out of his diforfed aftes) within Ruffes; and from the Poles without, willing both to affift him vnder colour of Reuenge, and with hope of Conquest also, to inuade and fish for themselues in troubled As for that Demetrisse new rifen from the dead (not to mention the others of inferiour note)

and to preuent the furis of Suiskey Stabbed himielfe, &c. Cap, Gilbert, * Thuan tels

I shall relate Captaine Gilberts reports which knew him and was by him entertayned, as I receiued them of a indicious friend of mine, which had them from his owne mouth. Hee being at Coluga (as before is faid) receined a Letter from this new Demetrius , fo written that it appeathat fourteene red to bee of the former Demetrine his owne hand : and thus also he vied to doe to others being 30 able to counterfeit his writing, and to relate such other particulars as seemed impossible to any milling in the Kings flable on but Demetrius to doe. Hereupon Captaine Gilbert went with his Guard of Souldiers to meete kings state on him and the Polake Generall which came with him. And whiles he was yet a good distance off. the manner of the control of the con

to be the former Demetrius, had not he differed from this in person, as night from day. Thus also A ftrange lug- he faid he affirmed to the Pole Generall, asking him how he liked this Demetrius, that This and That were as like as Night and Day (for the former was of goodly personage, and this a very deformed wretch.) The Pole replyed, It is no matter, Captaine, this Demetrius shall serve our 40 turne to bee reuenged of the perfidious and bloudie Ruffe. And this Demetrius acted the other fo neerly, and could in cunningly and confidently relate particular passes of past-occurrents, that the Lady of Demetriae was by him bedded. Thus was miserable Rassia ground between these two Mill-stones, the pretending Demetrine and the super-intending Pole. Swiskey is helped not a little by the English, which brought him strangely and adventurously powder and munition to his Cattle to Mose, which yet at last by revolt of the Citizens delivers vp it selfe and him to the Poles. And as for that pretending Demetrius, he was afterwards murthered in his Campe by

a Tartar. But it is meet to take hereof larger view. Sigismund King of Poland layeth claime to Sweden, as sonne to King John (who is said to have

vniutly deprived Ericas of his life and Kingdome) whole yonger brother Duke Charles first re- 50 ceiued his Nephew King Sigifmund (then also elected and still continuing King of Poland) but vpon warres which after arofe betwixt them, the iffue was, that the Pole holds the Title; but Charles obtayned both Regall Title and Power, wherein his Sonne hath succeeded. Snickey takes hold of this difference, and Charles affifts him with an Armie fent vnder the command of Pontiss noted the solution of the solu Forreine aides retinue : and the Poles obtayned Articles of composition and departed. But milerable were the diffresses by famine, fire, fword, rapes, and other outrages in other parts of Russia, caused by other Poles; and yet these but as a beginning and prelude to other following. For the King of 60 Poland entred with a huge Armie (some say of an hundred thousand men) inuaded the Musemire, and especially laid siege to Smolensko. He is reported thence to have sent twentie thousand

Smister had fent to King Charles for more aide, which he procured out of England, and other

Countries, of which I had rather let you heare an eye-witnesse speake of this, as elsewhere other Committee, or when their country on the state of the sta you have feene tragedies of Princes and Grandes. And first you may reade King Charles his compact and promifed stipend to such voluntaries, which for the more violerstanding Readers deoht I have here inferted.

O: Carolus Nossus, Dei gratis Succorum, Gothorum, Wandalorum, Finnonum, Corelio-rum, Lapporum, Conanorum, Esthonumq; 10 Liuonia, &c. Rex. Notum facinum quod d. 10 luftrem & generofum nobis syncere dilettum Dominum Iacobum Spentzium, Beronem Wolmerschonum in ministrorum nostrorum numerum clementer receptum, amnium qui nostris nune militant, aut in posterum militaturs sunt auspicies, Anglorum, Scotorumq; ducem & prafectum constitumu, ea condipoperum mutatur jone anjpreys, angestumin Scotsamisti aucem y pages meconjirumitus, ac cendi-tiane via nosfrem, Regnig, aosfri visum, pedates mille, y coposes apmenentes, speciata virtuita inultes conferibat additisti, gianture vere ad 12 feithest Mai fequentia Ami 1600, in Regno sistat. (un noi additios militas tama vollegendos quàm in regnama traducendos, in pedates quidem unaum in equites vero quatu.r thalerorum imperialium millia & quingintos affiguaumus. Cum autem in regnum prafatus quain. T. trauct vi um muyet minim equos & arma subministrauctimus, ca peditum quidem singulorum dimidi equitum vero duorum de cum [q], lipendio menstruo ibalererum sugulis menstinu donce pro ar-mis & equit nobis satisfiat, detralisone soluenum. Ipsi duci primario Peditum vero singuiss cobortibut 20 (quarum queuis ducentis Capitaneo ceserifq, officiarys una comprehensis constabat) mille septingentos thaleros in mensem dabinous. Equidem autem cobors qualibet centum equites continebit. Quod si pauciores suernt, quot per sona in prima lustratione desecerint, totidem thalero menstruo Capitaneorum, Equicum d. Magistrorum stipendie detrabentur i In sequentibus vero lustrationibus que sus mensibus semel institut debent, si qui forte enterea ev bac vita decessormi, ant also quecun d, mede, militum nume-Tus fuerit ita diminutus, vi pedites cuiufq, cohortis ducentis panciores fint (non tamen in eam pancitatem redactus ot ad tuendum, ornandum q vexillum mode miluari pedites supares inveniantur) Capitanee nibilomerus, fipendium integrum ad jex menses persoluetur, qued si postea defultum non supplement, ipse officio Capitanei carebit & pedites mfins per cateras cobortes, adaarum supplementum distribuentur. Eogico (, quinni carrott O praiste pipas per catera cobor sa adarum finfolmentum dill'hountur. Est giuste vore cobortis consigs, fi cortam pascioris farria, Cheffel Fe quitum balbiamuna desce nam-gor no cargenario mator facto fipandium integram confequetur, 149, ad fex monfes domesca, His antem 30, no cargenario mator facto fipandium integram confequetur, 149, ad fex monfes domesca, His antem exaltis, nift prastitutum, centum equitum numerum jupplenerit, epfe munere suo prinabitur, & equites

per ceteras cohortes distribuentur. Magistro equitum centum, Vicario fen locum tenenti quadra emper exerus coornes unstrumento. Servicio e que mon sentento, e par se pensecem conect quatre que la Significo trigina, Decurioni vigini, finguls della chibus viginti, sad, baccionatore fex. Equitibu so est fongula dendecem tolatri, in fingulas monte monerabantar. Dello antembari generals, vo foquente officiarios fibi adiangeret elementer vermifimus. Vicarium generalem, cus quadringintos, prajeti un vigiliarum, cui nonaginta, Secretarium cui octogiuta, Pratorem cui sexaginta, Prafectum annona cui guarum, est nongrusa, occeretamen un verguna, e tunura un genegrusa, trejetum monot cui feregiuta, Palluren cui feregiuta, Chorny un cui quadra enta, Arthoistolodene un quadra guna 1, In-felturem armorum cui quidraguita, Tympauliqua cui fedecim florensi in singules menses promissi-mus. Primus autem si pandig mense intra decimam quintum diem a mistum un regium adueniu in-

omes, le companie proprime me que en comment que mente en me en regente datenta me de chadeter. Liberam que de babeit prefaire dat Primarias plenama; initias execucias perfetaren in omnes fise imperio fairettes, idej, in amos crimines genere excepto comme la fa Maieflatis; Pulitum cuicomes pos inferen persona, may aparent entre of reliquis efficiency fispeedy forgalis defined the measure of personal forgats the measure forgats and measure. Magistre militares desolvents for Victorio cite; specifier fex. cett. Decorrorios measures froquities extribuse redumm deliminates inc. Bactinatorio roman come demision, fingular vero equitabul deserving for the contract to the extreme deliminates in ... Bactinatorio roman come demision, fingular vero equitabul deserving for the contract to the cont timanem toderos dabimus; Semestri quolibot exacto babitag, decennia supputatione, quod de menstruo stipendio religium est, cis persoluctur, babita tamen ratione numeri quem in suguits delectibus sen mista jugemes reugeme es, en perjoueism journe auson rausen ennes ennes que es juguit atestima fen mine tim lufrationalus Capitansi egistiming. Mugiffs exhibitarins. Joned fi due suitaitus fusi ficendama aliquot pralums fectori, aut actem virbumg, aliquam vi expagnament, espif du quo ide emigient pruve finis nosus menho inchoshitus. Liberman quoje, ere i Duchoba fingalis ; quotestempelig esti accobarium finis nosus menho inchoshitus. SC Supplementum adducendum aliquem mittere, qui dum absens erit stipendium seum un'ulominus conseque-

tur, pro singulis autem qui in supplementum addulli fuerint daccon thalers numerabuntur. Quod si in pralys, velitationibus, excubije aut alio quonis cafu quenquam ducum, aut milisum in hoftum potestatem venire contigerit, ida, non frontanea deditione aut alia ratione subdola & frandulenta accidife compertum fuerit, is alius sua conditionis statufg, captini permutatione liberabitur. Hostium vero aliquis s captium ad nos nostrine exercitus Ducem à quoquam corum perductus fuerit, qued pro sui liberatione captinus pratium fo oponderit, id ei, qui captinum duxerit, numerabitur. Quod fi quifquam borum militum pila ictus tormentaria, aut alio quouis modo mutilus, aut mancus cuadat, sta ve spfe fe alere vi-Etuma, quarere nequeat, illi à nobis pro vi cuiufg, requirit flatus & conditio, bonestum fimendium per omnem vitam suppeditabitur : sin vero diutius in hoc Regno nostro commorari nolucrit, tum unius mensis 64 accepto flipendio integrum ei erit, quo libuerit commigrare. Cum cohortes, fine fimul, fine feperation ex-

anctorabuntur, singules officiaries & militibus mensis unius numerabitur flipendium. Si ant prafatus primarius aut alius infersorum Ducum vel Officiariorum à S. R. M. Britannie accerfetur, perfolute quad tune forte restabit sipendio, ipsoq, duce remunerato, libera dabitur discedendi facultas. In caretum ini-

dentierem fidem manus propria subscriptione Regis és, metris spella opprassime prasentes municipante. Ex Regia noitra Stocholmensi dec 7.00 obris, Anni Millasimi soccentissimo octana.

Subscript. CAROLYS.

1100-Souldiers shipped from

Bout a fortnight before Midfummer, which was A. 1609.4 companie of Voluntaries, to the A number of a thouland and two hundred Souldiers, were at feuerall times thipped from Eng-Land to passe into Sweden, to aide the King of that Countrie in his warres against the King of Poland. To which aide divers other Nations didlikewife refort, as Franch, high Dutch, &c. Of the Englis Companies that went thither, the first was commanded by one Calvine a Scot; who to by appointment was made Lieutenant Colonell, and chiefe of the other Captaines out the

Colonel Cal-

A tempeft.

After the first Companie was gone, a second number of three hundred men (of which I the Relator of this, was one) were put into one ship belonging to Sweden, and came from thence for vs. We were affaulted with a great tempest, and were toiled so long, that all our victuals were almost spent : the miferie of which, threw vs into more desperate seares : now were wee assulamout peaks the mine and Shipwrack) what course to take for our reliefe no man prefently knew. Continue without foode it was impossible, and as impossible was it for vs to recouer the Land in any short time, without the affured destruction of vs all. At this season, our

Commanders were these; Lieutenant Benfon, Lieutenant Walton, who was Prouost Martiall of 10 the field; and an Ancient of the Colonels companie. The common Souldiers vowed and refol-Another tem. ued to compell the Mariners (fesing the present mileries, and no hopes promising better) to set Another terms. vs all on shoare vpon the fift Land that could be discovered. Our Commanders did what they petro memu. vasal via money sport alter this generall resolution, because they feared it would bee the loss of the greatest part of our Companies, if they came once to bee scattered : and besides, they knew that it would redound to their dishonour and shame, if they should not discharge the trust impofed upon them by our Captaines, which truft was to conduct vs and land vs before, whileft our tea you men oy our espenies, when that was to solute ve the reft of our Companies. Yet all this not with flanding, Land being discoured, there was no eloquene in the world able to keep yet about our flip, but every man swore if the Mafter of the ship would not set vs on the shore, 30 the failes should be taken into our owne hands, and what was resoluted woon (touching prefent landing) (hould in despite of danger be effected. Vpon this the Master of the ship and the Mariners told vs. that if we put to land in that place, we should all either perish for want of victuals. which were not to bee had in that Countrie, or effe should have our throats cut by the people Wee resolued rather to trie our bad fortunes on the land, and to famish there (if that kind of death must needes attend vpon vs) then to perish on the Seas, which we knew could affoord vs no fuch mercy : and en shoare wee went, as fast as possibly we could. When our Officers saw, that there was no remedie, nor force to detay ne vs aboord, they then disheartned vs no longer, but to our great comforts told it, that the Master of the ship (which thing hee himselfe likewise openly confessed) knew both the Land and Gouernour thereof (as indeed we proued afterwards he did :) and therefore defired they all our companies not to mife-behaue themselues toward 40 the people, for that it was an Iland called Inthland, under the Dominion of the King of Denmarke, but subject to the command of a Lord, who vader the King (as his Substitute) was the

And that we might be the better drawne to a civil behaviour towards the Inhabitants, our Officers further told vs, that they would repaire to the Lord Governour of the Countrie, and acquaint him with the cause of our vnexpected landing there; vpon which we all promised to ofter no violence to the people; neither was that promife violated, because we found the Inhabitants tractable, and as quiet towards vs, as we to them : yet the greater numbers of them ran away with feare, at the first fight of vs, because (as afterward they reported) it could not bee remembred by any of them, that they euer either beheld themfelues, or euer heard any of theiran- 50 ceffors report, that any strange people had landed in those places and parts of the Iland : for they thought it impossible (as they told vs) that any ship should ride so neeee the shoare, as ours did by reason of the dangerous Sands.

Our Officers to foone as they were at land, went to the Gouernour of the Iland, whileft the Souldiers (who flayed behind them) ran to the houses of the Handers, of purpose to talks with the people, and at their hands to buy victuals for a present reliefe: but when weecame among them, they could neither understand vs nor we them; so that the Market was spoiled, and wee could get nothing for our money, yet by fuch fignes as wee could make, they understood out wants pitied them, and bestowed vpon ws, freely, a little of such things as they had. In theend, a happy meanes of our reliefe was found out by a Souldier amone ft vs who was a Dane by birth, 60

but his education having beene in England, no man knew him to be other then an English man. This Dane made vie of his owne native language, to the good both of himfelfe and vs , certi-

fying the people (who the rather beleeued him because he spake in their knowne tongue) of the cause that compelled vs to land vpon their Coast, and that we intended no mischiefe, violence. or money : to which report of his they giving credit, flood in leffe feare of vs then before, and thereupon furnished vs with all such necessaries, as the Countrie affoorded to sustaine our wants. The foode which wee bought of them was onely fish, and a kinde of course bread, exceeding cheape. Of which foode there was fuch plentie, that for the value of three pence wee had as Fish cheaper much fish as twentie men could eate at a meale, and yet none of the worft forts of fish, but even of the very best and daintieft, as Mackrels and Lobsters, and such like. In which our trading with the poore simple people, we found them so ignorant, that many, yea most of them regargo ded not whether you gave them a Counter, or a Shilling for the bigger the piece was, the more Ignorance

fish they would give for it : but besides fish wee could get no other sustenance from them, or at Bores, least, could not understand that they had any other. But observe what happened in the meane time that we were thus in traffique with the Handers for victuals, our Officers (as before is faid) being gone to the Lord Gouernour, who lay about twelve English miles from the Sea side, the Master of our ship on a sudden hoysed vp sailes, and away he went leauing one of his owne men at shoare, who accompanied our Officers as their guide, through the Hand. The cause of the ships departure, did so much the more amaze vs, by reason it was so vnexpected, and the reason thereof vnknowne to vs : But wee imagined the Matter of the ship and Mariners feared to receive vs into the Veffell againe, because some of our men at their being at Sea, threatned the Saylers, and 20 offered them abules before they could be brought to fet vs on land.

On the next day following, the Lord Gouernour of the Iland came to vs, bringing our Officers along with him, yet not being so confident of vs, but that (for any dangers that might happen) he came strongly guarded with a troupe of Horse-men well armed. And (vpon his first approca) demanding where our ship was, it was told him in what strange manner it stole away and for fooke vs : he then asked what we intended to doe, to which we all answered, that we would be ruled by our Officers: hereupon hee inquired of them, what they would have him to doe in their behalfes: they requested nothing else at his hands, but onely his fauourable Passe through the Countrie, and a thip to carry vs forward into Smeden: to which request hee made answere, that he could grant no such licence vntill he had made the King of Denmarke acquain-20 ted with our being there, for the Hand belonged to the King, he faid, and he was no more but

an Officer or Substitute vnder him. Yet in consideration that our ship had so left vs in a strange Land, he promifed to doe all that lay in his power to effect our good: but with all told vs, that the people had inward feares, and were possess with surprises that our intents of landing vpon fuch a Coait, were not, as we our felues affirmed, only to get foode, but rather to make i poile of the poore Inhabitants. And therefore, to remooue all such feares and realouses out of the peoples hearts, he held it most consenient for the generall safeties of both parties, to separate our numbers, and to spreade vs abroad in the Countrie, one and one in a house, where it was agreed that we should receive both a lodging, and meate, and drinke, vntill hee had sent to the King of Denmarke some of his owne men with our Officers , to understand his Maiesties pleasure, and

40 what should become of vs. To this we all agreed, and accordingly for that purpose, were by the Lord Gouernour, fafely by these armed horse-men which were his guard, conducted to his owne house. To that place were al the people of the Iland summoned together, they came at the appointed day to the number of fine or fix hundred, circling vs round with Bils, Holbards, two-hand Swords, and diners other weapons: And at the first fight of vs grew into such rage, that presently they would have cut all our throats, and hewed vs to pieces, but that the authoritie of the Gouernor kept them from offering violence, yet was hee faine to vie the fairest meanes of perswasion to allay their furie, For they would not beleeve but that our arrivall there was to destroy them. Yet the Governour the wed vnto them all our number, which was but three hundred men, and those all vnweaponed, and so consequently, neither likely nor able to vndertake any mischiefe against them:

50 Charging the vnruly multitude, vpon paine of death, not to touch the least finger of vs, but to divide vs equally into feuerall Villages, as it should feeme best vnto them, and so bestow kinde and louing entertainment upon we till they heard further from him, which command of his they accordingly performed.

Immediately upon this fetling of them and vs in quietnesse, one of our Officers with two of the Gouernours men, were fent away to the King of Denmarke, to vinderstand his Highnesse pleasure, which Messengers were no sooner dispatched about the businesse, but the Handers grow- Icalouse of the ing more and more suspitious, came againe to the Gouernour, and neuer would cease or give ouer people. troubling him, vntill they had gotten him to make Proclamation (in hearing of vs all.) That if 60 any of vs would freely diffeouer the true cause of our landing vpon that Coast, and reueale the

plots of any dangerous enterprise intended against them, he should not onely be rewarded with great flore of money, and have new apparell to his backe, but also should without tortures, impritonment, or death be fet free, and lent backe againe into his owne Countrie. This Proclamation ftrucke vs all with feare and aftonishment, because albeit we to our selves were not guiltie of Griffia a bafe coward and traitor to his

any plot, or villany intended to the place or people, yet wee knew this might be a meanes to endanger all our lives, how innocent foeuer. Our suspicion of danger fell out according to our changer an our mes, now museum owner. Our imprison or unger that our morning to our feares; from of Thomas (origina Welch man, one of our owner company, went and kneed before the Gouernour, and with a face counterfeiting a guiltinesse and fearfull destruction, told him that we came thither onely, and for no other purpose, then to surprise the Hand kill the Inhabitants, make spoile of their wives and goods, and having set fire of their Towner and Villages, to flye to Sea againe. Yet for all this would not the Gouernour beleeue him, telling him it was a matter very volikely, that so small a number, so distressed for want of soode, so weather-beaten and so disarmed, should venture vpon an enterprise so full of dangerous events; but the villaine the least Allarum given, other ships that lay hourring at Sea, and furnished both with men and armour, would on the sudaine, and that very shortly land for the same desire of spoyle, as these their fellowes had done, and therefore counselled the Gouernour to preuent such imminent mis-

The Gouernour being thus farre veged, presently called before him Lieutenant Walten, whose lodging was appointed in his house, and having related to him all that Griffin had discovered, and withall, demanding of Lieutenant Walton what he could fay to this matter of treason and conspiracie: the Lieutenant at the first stood amazed, and etterly denied any such intended villang. protesting by the faith of a Souldiour, that this report of the Welch-man proceeded from the rancour of a vile traitors heart, and therefore on his knees intreated the Gouernour, not to give 20 credit to fo base a villaine, who for the greedinesse of a little money, went about to fell all their liues, and co make all the inhabitants of the Hand become murderers. The rest lay scattered about and knew nothing of the matter. Now soone after, just as the traitor had told the Governour. that more ships were not farre off, but were ready to second vs vpon our arrivall, it chanced that in the very heat of this bufineffe, and their feares of danger where none was, two other shippes full of armed Souldiers came to the same place of the Hand where our shippe put in : These two fhips had brought Souldiours out of the low Countries (a ceffation of warres being there) and were going into Swetbland, as we were, but by croffe windes and fowle weather, lay fo long at Sea, that wanting victuals, they were driven in hither for fuccour. Whole fudaine approach and ariuall being fignified to the Lord Gouernor, the Welch-mans words were then thought true; all 30 the Hand was presently up in Armes to resist the strength and furie of a most dangerous supposed

enemy : and fo fecretly did the Inhabitants put on Armes, that we who were kept like prifoners amongst them, knew not of these vproares. But night approaching, the Generall gaue speciall charge that fecret watch should be fet and kept ouer every Souldior that lodged in any mans house : which by the common people was as narrowly performed, for they did not onely watch vs as the Gouernor commanded, but among a themselves a secret conspiracie was made, that in the dead of night, when wee should be fast asseepe, they should come and take vs in our beds, and there to binde vs with cords: it being an easie thing to doe so, when our company were diuided one from another ouer the whole Hand. At the houre agreed vpon, the plot was put in force, for they entred our Chambers, and bound every Souldier as he lay, making them all rea- 40 dy like so many sheepe marked out for the slaughter. For mine owne part, I had fine men and three women to binde me, who fo cunningly tyed me fast with cords, whilft I flept and felt nothing, nor deampt of any such matter, that with a twitch onely I was plucked starke naked out of my bed, and faid vpon the cold earth vnderneath a Table, with my armes bound behinde me, fo extreamely hard, as foure men could draw them together, my feete tyed to the foote of the Table, and my necke bound to the vpper part or bord of the Table.

In these miserable tortures lay I, and all the rest in severall houses) all that night, and the most part of the next day, our armes and legges being pinched and wrung together in such pittilesse manner, that the very bloud gushed out at the singers ends of many. The enduring of which torments was so much the more grieuous, because none knew what we had done that could in- 50 cense them to this so strange and spitefull cruelty, neither could we, albeit we inquired, learne of our tormenters the cause, because we vnderstood not their language.

Whileft thus the whole lland was full of the cries of wretched men, and that every house seemed a shambles, ready to have Innocents there butchered the next day, and that every Hander had the office of a common cut-throate or executioner; Gods wonderfull working turned the streame of all their cruelty: For the two ships that came out of the low Countries, and whose arrivall drave so many miserable soules almost vpon the rocks of destruction, having in that dolefull and ruinous night, gotten some prouision aboord, weighed Anchor, and departed towards Swetbland. Which happy newes being serued up at breakfast to the Lord Gouernour betimes in the morning, and that the Shippes had offerd no violence to the Countrey, but had paid for 60 what they tooke : About eleauen of the clocke the very fame day at noone, wee were all like vnto so many dead men cut downe, and bidden to stand vpon our legges, although very few had fearce legges that could fland.

Of one accident more that befell, I thinke it not amiffe to take note, which began merrily, but

ended tragically, and in blond; and that was this: Foure of our company being lodged in one Village, and they being bound to the peace, as you may percente the reit were; it happened that an Hoalf, where one of themtlay, had tipled hard, and gotten a Horfes difeafe, called the Seas I Effects of gers: In comes he stumbling, to the roome where the poore Englishman was bound to the Table drunkesnesses gers: introduced the state of the character of the charac thould not of cape with his Harobeotic cleft his bead. And thinking in that drunken murderous humour he had done a glosious act, away he reelessour of his owner house to that house where

the other three Souldiones lay bound, where beating at the doores and windowes, and the Hoaft In asking what he meant to make fuch a damnable ney le; he told him fo well as he could flammer is out, that the Lural Conternour had fent him thirther to put the three Emplify men to death. You on this, the divelland be (hand in hand) were det in, the one standing to close at the other efficier. shat he never left him till hedradcheft two of their heads, that lay bound i and being then were ry (in fould freme) with playing the butcher, he neuer cealed five aring and flaring, and foul rilling with his bloudy Axe about their heads, till the people of the house had hung the third man vpon a beame in the soome. But they basing left custing in the Hang-man trade, then will to practite it, eyed not the index to fait about his necke, as to frangle him: for that after he had hung an houre, hee was cut ddwine, rettined againe, was well, and afregwards was flaine

Fo Thus bloudy feaff being thus ended, and all flormes as we well hoped, being now blowne ouer to our freedome, and fitting at liberty from our tormereors; on the necke of their former miferies fell a milulifete more dangerous to vs then all the roll : for tidings were brought to the Governour, that our Auncient, who trausaled with the Governours two men to the King , had traverously murdered those his guides, and then ranne away hamfelfer upon this rumour, nothing but thundring and lightning flew from the common peoples inforthes : there was no way now with vs but one, and that one was to have all our throats cut, or our heads cleft with their Axes. Burthe Gourmorpittying our misfortunes, laboured both by his auchierity, & by faire specches, lealoufer to keepe that many headed dogge (the multihude) from barking. And in the end, when he faw

nothing but the bloud of vs poore Englishmen would farisfie their thirt; because they fill held 30 vs in suspicion and teare; he most nobly, and like a vertuous Magistrate, pawned to the inhumane Rafcals (to my knowledge) his honour, all that ever he was worth; "yea, his very life vnto them, that within three dayes the meffengers fent to the King, thould returne home, and that during those three dayes we should be of good behaviour to the Handers: and besides that, if they did not returne in fuch a time, that then he would deliver ve vp into their hands. Our Auncient with the Gouernours two men, came home upon the third day, to the Gouernours house, King of Detand brought from the King of Denmarke his heence, to carry vs not onely through the Country, but commanding that we thould be allowed thipping allow a consumerit place, to carry vs to Smeneland, whither we were to goe: And according to this Licence the Gouernour Caufed vs to be called all together the very next day; at which time, Thomas Griffinthe Welch Indee, who had

40 all this while lyen feafting in the house of the Lord Gouernour, began to tremble and repent him of his villanie, begging most bale forgivenesseon his knees, both from the Governour, and vs his Countrimen and follow Souldiours, protelling that what he did, came out of his feare to faue his owne life. But our Officers (vpon hearing him (peake thus) had much adoe to keepe the companies from pulling downe the houle where Griffin lay, because they would in that rage have hewed

the villaine in peeces. But leaving him and all fuch betrayers of mens bloud to the hell of their owne confciences, let vs fet forward out of this infortunate Iland, and not flay in any place elfe, till in small Boates wee come by water to Elzmore in Denmarke, where wee joyfully got aboard once more; Elzmore.

and are hoyfing vp failes for Sweneland. Yet even in this fun-fhine day a fforme fals vpon vs 50 too : for our Officers not having fofficient money to furnish vs with victuals, wee were enforced to pawne our Auncient and Lieutenant Walton , for the fafe returne of the Shippe , with condition, that they should not be released vittill a sufficient summe of money was lent to defray all charges. So that we left our Officers behinde vs; but the King of Sweueland did afterwards release them, and then they came to vs. But before their comming, wee having a good winde, landed at a place called Newless in Swene : and from thence were carried to Stockholme (the Stockholme. Kings leate)and there was the King at the same time; betweene which two places, it was a daies march on hortebacke.

Voon this our arrivall at Stockholme, wee met with the rest that had gone before vs, and with divers others of our Countrimen, that came out of the Low-countries, as before is re-60 lated. In this place we lay so long, and had such poore meanes, that wanting money to buy foode, wee wanted toode to maintaine life, and fo a number of vs were readie to flatue: till in the end, our mileries making vs desperate, we fell together by the eares with the Biergers of the Towne : in which scambling confusion and mutinie, every man got one thing or Milery after other, of which he made present money to relieue his body withall : yet lay wee at the misery,

walles of the Citie, crying our continually for money, money, till our throates grew hoarfe with bauling, but the Hones of the walles gaue more comfort to vs, then the Inhabitants. One day (aboue all the reft | wee heard, that the King was to ride a Hunting; and weeimagining that all the abuses, wrongs, and mileries, which wer endured proceeded from fome vinder-hand hard d'aling, and packing of our Captaines and Off. cers, refolued to gather about the King at his comming torch, and to cry out for money; but the King being angry (as wee supposed) cameriding amongst vs, drawing his Pistoll from the Saddle-bow, as if hee purposed to have shot some of vs : but seeing none of vs to thrinke from him, nor to be dilinayed, hee rode backe againe, wee following him, and defiring, hee would either gine vs money, or elfe to kill vs dur-right; one amongst the rest (whole name was William Attane) spake to the King aloud , thus : I hold at beneur to doch the bands of a King, but basely to Starne to death, I will mener suffer it. V pon these our clamours. the King looking better vpon our necessities, fent money the next day, and immediate. ly after gauevs a moneths meanes in money, and two moneths meanes in cheath, to make

Captaines cozenage.

Of the cloath wee received some part, but the money being payed, was by our Captaines fent into England to their wives; no part of it ever comming to the poore common Souldiours hands : for prefently upon this, wee were commanded abourd the Ships, with promife that when wer were aboord, wee should have our money. But being in the Shippes vnder hatches, away were wee carried with prouision onely of one moneths victuals; when by rea- an fon of the weather, wee were forced to lye eight weekes at Sea : in all which time, wee had nothing but pickelled Herrings, and falt Stremlings, with some small quantitie of hard dryed meates : by which ill dyet, many of our men fell ficke, and dyed. In the Shippe wherein I was, wee lived foureteene dayes without bread, all our best foode being falt Herrings, which wee were glad to eate raw; the belt of vs all having no better fire

Finland.

At the last, it pleased God to send vs to a place called Virasound in Frederic, where were landed, (Finland being fibited to the King of Swandand.) From Finland wee were to got to Wepborough, a chiefe Towne in the Countrie of Finland: where wee no sooner arrived, but our Souldiers ranne some one way, and some another, so long that the Captaines were left alone so with the Shippes : This running away of them, being done onely to feeke foode, fo great was their hunger.

Difperfing.

By this carelesse dispersing themselves, they lost the command of the whole Country, which they might easily haue had, if they had beene vnited together: and not onely were deprined of that benefit, but of Horfes also, which were allowed by the King for them to ride upon. So that , what by the reason of the tedious lourney (which wee were to trauell, being fourescore leagues) and what by reason of the extreame cold, being a moneth before Christmas, at which time the Snow fell, and neuer went off the ground vntill Whitfontide tollowing; but all the Raine, and all the Snow that fell, freezing continually, divers of our men were it arued to death with the Frost. Some lost their singers, some their toes, some 40 their noses, many their lines: insomuch, that when wee all met at Weyborough, wee could make no more but one thousand and foure hundred able men; and yet when we were landed at Vfrafound, wee were two thousand strong; the extremity of the cold Countrey having killed so many of our Souldiours in fo little time.

At our landing at Weyborough wee had good hopes to receive better comforts, both of money and victuals: for the Inhabitants told vs, the King had allowed it vs, and in that report they spake truth : yet contrary to our expectation, wee lay there about foureteene dayes, and had nothing but a little Rice, of which we made bread, and a little butter, which was our best reliefe. Drinke had we none, nor money : our Captaines gauevs certaine letherne pelches, onely made of Sheeps skins, to keepe vs from the cold.

Their mifers.

At this place we received armes to defend vs against the enemy, and fix Companies that were 50 allowed by the King for Horsemen, received Horses there. From thence wee were to march into Rullia, where our enemies continued. But the journey was long and vncomfortable: for wee marched from Newyeares day vntill Whitfontide, continually in Snow, having no reft, but onely a little in the nights. So that the miseries and misfortunes which wee endured woon the borders of Fynland, were almost infusferable, by reason the number of them seemed infinite. For all the people had forfaken their houses long before wee came, because they were evermore oppressed by Souldiours : by which meanes we could get neither meate nor drinke , but were glad to hunt Cats, and to kill them, or any beaits wee could lay hold on, and this wee baked and made them ferue for daily sustenance. The greatest calamitie of all was, wee could Wantof meate get no Water to drinke, it had beene so long frozen vp, and the Snow so deepe, that 60 and of Water, it was hard to fay, whether wee marched ouer Water, or vpon Land. So that wee were compelled to digge up Snow, and with stones redde hot, to melt in tubbes, and then

CE AP.S.S.4. Enhath provided by their fleding tuemien Cruel Poles.

This off-stion continued about twelve or four steene dayes, till we came into Russia. Vpon our very first entrance into which Kingdome, we marched ouer an arme of the Sea, that was eight leagues ouer, many of vs flaruing to death in that passage, by the cold freezing windes that blew the fame day. In which frofty journey, I faw to much bread as a man might buy for twelve pence, fold away in little bits, for the value of fortie fullings. But this mifery ended the next day, at our fetting footing Ruffis, where we found plenty both of corne and cattle; onely the people of the Countrey rame away, leaning all their goods behinde them, but so cunningly hidden, that the bell politics of ours could hardly finde them out. By this meanes of the peoples running away, we were glad to play the Millen, and to grinde all our corne our felies.

to bake our bread, and to drefte our owne victuals. Their marched wee vp to Newsgrod (a Nouogrodichiefe Citte in Ruffa) where wee were to receive all our meanes that refted behinde vnpayed: but our Captaines beguiled vs, and kept it for themfelies : yet to stoppe our mouthes, they told vs wee should goe into Mascony, and there all reckonings should be made euen.

Wee had scarce marched about three dayes towards Muscour, but that newes came. how a certaine number of our enemies lay in a sconce by the way; the strength of them was not perfectly knowne, but it was thought they were not about feuen hundred, and that we must vie some stratagem to expell them from thence : vpon which relation, our Captaines drew mies. forth to the number of three hundred Englis horfemen , and two hundred French horfemen : fo that in all we were about fine hundred that were appointed to fet vpon the supposed feuen hundred Polanders, (our enemies) that fo lay infconied : vpon whom we went. Our chiefe Com-mander in that feruice was Monfier to Veite, a French man, who to valiantly led vs on, that They fled,

the enemy hearing of our comming, fled ouer a water that was by the sconce; yet not with fuch speede, but that wee flue to the number of foure hundred of their fide, and loft onely three men of our owne: but we rooke the sconce. About the sconce stoods faire Towne calleded - Sconce taken men of our owner. our we consecutive in consecutive in the posterior and the first successful and the first successful and the first successful and the first successful and the consecutive first s riches, but also with a number of Polish Horses, and as many armes as served to arme five hundred men; our want of that commoditie being as much as of any thing befides : for of those five hundred men that went woon the service, there were not three hundred fixed armes; yet

through the hand of him that deales victories, or overthrows, as it pleafeth him beft, the day was ours. Quer this river Volen the enemies were never driven before, either by the Emperor of Ruffin,

or by the King of Swethland: for which caufe (as afterward wee heard) the next day when they departed from the other fide of the River, they burnt that halfe of the Towne on which fide they were themselues, and in most bloudy, barbarous, and cruell manner, made havocke both of men, women and children, albeit (not aboue halfe a yeare before) the Inhabitants on Ples cruelfier that fide had revolted from their owne Emperour, and turned to them. In which tyrannicall moft execrable

votors, their cultimes was, to fill a loud fulfor geople, and their cultimes with yearname years and years and their cultimes was a supering for the the house was fired about fair ears, a sup often times, were young children their by they begin, and, and to such my high fair ears, a sup often times, were young children their by they begin, and, and to such my high their series, and often times, the such that they have the property of the such as a supering the supering their their property of the such as were cultimestally and female, byte for the Pote, and were cultime Gallete, whose cruelty farre exceeded the Polish.

Whole clearly at my humburns to the earth, all the first cheufant (which, as I flid before, if ad our the filter, days of the fronces and were by we imposed of the tenen humbred came downs in full battaglion to the fixing lide with the forecoment, a st. jr refearly whey and they, hories would have fwom ouer, to ight with vs. which being perceited, our poore fine, hundred flood seady to refift them. But whether they feared our numbers to be greater then they want, and that wee had fome other fecret forces. I know not : but away they marched, the felfs lame day in which they came downe in that brauery, not doing any thing, of which, wee for our parts, were not much forry; because if the battailes had joyned, wee knew our felues

farre vnable to withitend them. And this was the fertice of the most neare, that wee Two or three other fronces and Townes we tooke from our enemies, they not once daring Gayriffe Canto refif vs. because they knew nothing of our numbers and force. But the different dealings taines.

of our Captaines, made the whole Armie discontenn; informach, that our Souldiers would of tentimes deny to goe forth vpon fernice, because they had beene almost a yeare in the Land. tentimes deny to goe from your reasons, occasion ency man ocean amoust a years in the sample.

So and had recytled no more bloom on Rubble (amounting to the value of ten fullings Equify.). So

that young heightificontents, fiftie of our men ranne away, to the enemy at one time, soil, difco,

that young heightificontents, fiftie of our men ranne away, to the enemy at one time, soil, difco,

the top annew young ranne was likewife kindling, but it was perceived, and quenched with the bloud of the confpirators, of which, the chiefe were hanged. On therefore we went ; when

758 Fuerhom the Finlander, P. le Guard Generall of English. Go. LIB. IIII.

HONDIVE bis Map of Muscouia.



we'came within fortie leagues of Musiconie, newes was brought, that the enemy had beleaguard feuen thouland Ruffer that were our triends, and that valefic wee forced the fielde to break vp, the feuen thousand Ruffes would enery man be flarted where they lay. This fad report," (albeit we had re olued neuer to goe voon any more fernice, whill wee had our pay) to wrought in our hearts, that wee much pirtied the mileries of beheis. Deckife wee our felues had tafted

Our Generall (whose name was Energorne) was a Fynlander, and with a company of Fynland Our Grierrai (winds interes was a mereware) was a primener, and wrisin a company or tymene blocks (as they termine them) well appointed on Horiebacke, wais by the King of Sensetleds. Femilial Good first fifer vs., as our Compos, until weethould come or Powerse to Gheerd, who was chiefe Grieral Good first whole armite of strangers that came into the Land. 6 to that according as he was neral out-the wilder arms of managers that came into the Lands 10 dayaccoroung at news fent and challed by the King, he out-rooks we before we came to 'briese. By the intractic got therefore of this Fysicser, and the flattering promise of our event ciptaines, we were con-related to got wron this feruies, and to deline the Angle, or to dye our felties in the action. Yet with childition, that (as they promifed to vs) we should by the way meete our chiefe Generall, Ponton le Guard, who with certaine numbers of English, French and Dutch (which the veare before were come into the Land) was voon a march out of Mulcony, not onely to sheete vs, but to toyne with vs, and pay vs all our money which remained good tovs; pro-uided likewife, that fo foone as ever wee should release the senen thousand Russes, our money should be payed downe. On these conditions (I say) wee yeelded to goe upon the

At length Powise le Gastal met vs (according to the promife) and with him was money brought to pay vs, and his word guide that prefently wee should receive it. But the lamentable eftate, in which the poore befledged Rafes were (within the fconce) being as the point of death for want of foode, required rather speedy execution, then deliberation's fo that the necessities of their hard fortunes crauing liaste, on wee went, having about nunreene or twenty

CHAP.O.S.4. Ruffe flight; French fight & flight: Englishbonor & copolition. 779

shouland Ruffes, that were people of the fame Countrey, joyned to our Armie, to aide them in this enterprize. But as we all were upon a march, the enemy having received intelligence of our approaching, let forward, to the number of eight thouland Lanciers and more, to intercept ys by the way : and being within one dayes march of the place to which were were likewife 20ing, they fet he pop three or foure Villages hard by the place where we lay at Graffe with our Horfes, for a token that they were comming. And this was done vpon Midiummer day laft in do. 1610. the morning, by breake of day. Then came they thundring wich shours and cries to fer vnon ve: but no fooner was the Alarum given, when the greatest part of those nineteene or twenty Bale Russe thousand Ruffer, that were soyned to vs as our side, fled most bately before any blow was al- flight To uen. This tudden cowardize of theirs somewhat amazed vs : but the houre being now come.

wherein we were not to talke of dangers, but to goe meete them, with our fixe companies of English harfe, we brauely relifted the Polanders, and with great hurt to them, but with little loffe ypon our part, charged them three (euerall times. Ar laft Pontus le Guard (our chiefe Generall) tooke his heeles and fled too. leaning vs vtterly P. de Guard

deflitute of all direction : which much attonifhed vs, as not well vaderstanding what to doe : fleein, for our greateft ftrength (being by their light) taken from vs, none but wee ftrangers were left in the field, and of vs there was not in all, about two chouland, and of that number there were shone fix hundred French horlemen, who leeing both the Generall gone, and the Ruffes fled, French flee. rurned their backs upon vs, and ranne away too most valiantly, yet not out of the field, but to

20 the enemy. Then were wee not about twelve or foureteene hundred at the most left to relist eight thoufand at the leaft : voon whom notwithflanding, our fix companies of English horsemen, charged three feuerall times, without any great lo le, but with much honor : And at the fourth time, for Englishmonut. want of powers to (econd them (which the French should have done) all our fix companies were feattered and overthrowne with the loffe of few of our colours. The Captaines over thefe fixe Companies of Horse, were these :

Captaine (rale,of whose company I was. Captaine Kendricke, Captaine Benson, Captaine Carre, Captaine Colbron, Captaine Creyton. Which in Capraines had not in all their companies aboue five hundred men. In this battaile.

20 Captaine Creyion was flaine in the field; Captaine Crale was fhot in the knee, and within a fhort time after dyed of that wound; not about twelve of his companie escaping. Captaine Kendrick was wounded in diners places of the head, and dyed. Captaine Benfon was shot in the hand, and wounded in the head, and yet escaped, and liued : onely Captaine Carre and his Cornet escaped, but all his companie scattered and lost. Diners other Officers were staine, whose names I can-

Thus were all our English horse-men dispersed and ouerthrowne, to the number of five hundred and vowards. Ou Generall Exerborne with his companies of Finland, or Finland, or were also put to retrait ; fo that there was not left in the field aboue fixe or feuen hundred, which were foot-men. And of these, one halfe was English, one halfe Dutch, who kept onely a cer-40 taine place by a wood fide, barricadoed about with wagons, having with them foure field pieces, wich which they did great spoile to the Enemie. But their number being but few, neither durft they venture on the Enemie, nor durft the Enemie enter voon them , but kepr them field (as it were belieged) in that place onely, because they could no wayes escape. The inconvenience of which cooping up in so narrow a roome, being looked into, and the dangers on every fide well confidered, it was held fitteft for fafetie, to fummon the Enemie to a parley. In which parley, the Enemie offered, that if they would yeeld, and fall to their fides, they should have good quarter kept. And if any man had defire to goe for his owne Countrie, hee should have libertie to goe with a Pasport from the King of Poland. Or if any would ferue the King of Poland, hee should have the allowance of very good meanes duly paid him. Vpon these compositions they

all yelded, and went to the Enemie; onely Captain Toke; and his Officers, with fome few of their Soulders, went backe mote the Countrie, and came not to the Enemie, as the reft had done: who from thence marched by to the Fells League, being ten miles diffant from the place, and there they continued. But fuch as defired to trauell to their owne Countries, were fent to the King of Polands Leaguer, which lay at that time at a place called Smolensko, and there accordingly had their Palle, to the number of one hundred, of which number I my felfe was one. What became of the reft I know not : but I with fine more held together in trauell. vntill we came to Dantzicke, a great Towne in Pruffia, being diliant from Smolenske one hun-

To make an end of this Storie of the Foxe and the Beare, the pretending Demetrius and con-60 tending Suiskey; it is reported, that Demetrius feeing these perplexities of Suiskey, rayled a great Armie of fuch Ruffer as voluntarily * fell to him (the Pole having now rejected him, except some . Some fay i.e Voluntaries) and againe laid fiege to Mosco; Zolkiewsky for Sigismund, beleagred another part had recoce. thereof with fortie thouland men, whereof one thousand and fine hundred were English, Scottish, which is sensity and French. Smither feeing no hope to withfland them, his Empire renouncing him . hee would credible.

feeme to renounce the Empire first, betaking himselfe to a Monasterie. But not the fanctitie of Moles yeelded. the place, nor facred name of an Emperour might protect or secure him. The Musiconites yeel. ded up their Citie and his Person to the Pole, and the Caftle was manned for Sogismand, All ioyne against Demetrins, who betaketh him to his heeles, and by a Tariar (as before is faid) was flaine in his campe. Charles King of Sweden dyed Octob. 30. 1611. and Gustamus his some fire. ceeded. Sigifmund obtayneth Smoleniko also after two yeeres siege and more : in which time the Defendants had held out fo refolutely, that the Polifo Peeres and States (which in that Kingdom beare great (way) had called the King to their Parliament, the rather in regard of the King of Denmarke warring vpon Sweden (in which warre diners thousands of our English voluntaries * Vader the affilted the Darry but the fittle defining to trie his fortune, carried the Citte with two bunders to what the pieces of Ordnance and other rich fpoile. Many were flaine, and divers great perform taken, of which was the Archbishop. Many were blowne vp (as was thought) by their owne voluntaries act, by fire cast into the store-houle, in which is said to have beene (if our Author mistake not) fifteene thousand veffels of poulder; whereupon feemed to returne the very Chaos, or in flead

John Poole,&c. A conjume, attended to the World. It is accounted one of the strongest Forts in Christendome, the quandets mile thereof a field into the world. It is accounted one of the intologist ports in continentiame, the opportunities of the walls able to be are two Carts meeting in the breach. It was taken the twelfth of Iuly, 1610. Suitey was carried into Poland and there imprisoned in Warmphorough Caffle, and after the Suiters impri- leffe of libertie and his Empire, exposed to scorne and manifold miseries, hee dyed in a fortaine countrie. But before that Tragedie, the Poles are faid to have more then acted others. For when they held him prisoner before his departure from Mosconia, they sent for many Grandes in Smil. 20 key name, as it he had much defired to feethem before his fatall farewell, to take a friendly and

Foith cruelie. honourable leaue of them. They come, are entertayned, and in a private place knocked on the head and throwne into the River; and thus was most of the chieferemayning Nobilitie destroyed. The Poles fortified two of the Forts at Mofeo, and burnt two others, as not able to man Their reward, them. But the Muscounte also there held them belieged till famine forced them to yeeld the Russians finding there fixtie barrels of pouldred mans field (it seemeth of such as had dyed, or Enters of mans Were I laine, that their death might giue life to the Suruiuers) a just, but miferable and tragical fleth forced to specificacle. We shall conclude this Discourse with giuing you two Letters, the one taken out of a Letter written from Colmogro Sept. 7. (the yeere is not dated) amidft thefe broiles; the other from Captaine Margaret before mentioned by Thuantet: and after them, for further illustra- 30 tion and profitable vie of this storie, is added part of a Letter of Doctor Halls.

recourred li-

herrie Rusia poyled by Tartars. Generall of the forces of Suitey in the A Dane borne fee Doct, Halls Fnifiles. Euan Valibr Suiter now The e of the

Citie nely. & Lieft inders that inhabit The fecond Demetrina, which was foone after flame by a Tertar. ier. in Fre gliffiaccount. The Peles in

* The Polish

On Thus sides morning came George Brighouse from Mosco, be bath besure three needers on the

Adapter man, but by reasons of his small storing bere. I can team that small occurrents, which is, still

ind Downite Mosco buttled him, of late s some of the Nobelitas signed out and game the Emerge team of the Nobelitas signed was and game the Emerge team Polish Gentle
hierary sharing, never songer thousand of them, tooke pressures as boundred and someties, whereas than 1. that was thanks "men gallant men, are almost flarmed in prifon. Sandomirsky " is entred the borders with a new supply Souldiers, the which Demetrie bis fonne in Law bath long fince expetted.

The Crim Tartar is returned from thence into bis some Country, bath taken more then twentie thou- 40 fand prisoners captimes out of Refan and thereabouts: Knez Scopin " is two nimities from Yerallaue. be meanes to march from thence to Molco, but by Georges speeches be makes no great hafte, Bouginsky that was Secretarie to Demetrie, is ftill under prestane with an Officer, was almost

starned with hunger , but Master Brewfter doth daily relecue him to bis great comfort. George Brighouse came Poste by Volodemer; the Princesse, mife to Buan Euanowich, that was eldess one to the a old Emperous (free to mbom you game the good intertainment to) is there at his going up and comming backs, made very much of him; be direct in the Preferee: after domer feat him a great Present of many dishes and drinkes for your sake, and often remembred you and your great kind-

a great treins of many more and according to your just.

In any little the real form of the second more than the s Muscources stand with him, and very few of the Nobilitie. Daily there issueth out by force or stealth disters of the Gentrie, most of the Dutch c, feetally the Women are gone one of the Moleo to the Tartar. It is supposed that the Emperour cannot long bold out , and " Demetrie Euanowich is reported to bee a very wife Prince.

> Captaine MARGARETS Letter to Master MERICK from Hamborough, lan. 29. * 1612.

 \mathbf{R}^{I} gbs worshipfull Sir , I could not omit this commoditic without commending my service to your worship, and also briefly to advertise you of the State of Mosco, which is not as I could wish. Also Mosto cheged I lest Master Brentter in good bealth at my departure; but three dayes after the Towns within the by the Roffis. red wall was burns with certaine fire Bals for in by the Ruffis, fo that there is but three boufes left whole,

the English bouse also being burnt. Master Brewster is constrained to base his dwelling in a Seller vn- English house der the Palace, without great friends except Misslofsqui. The Generall Cotqueuilfh is arrived there, butat and left a sufficient number of men to keepe the Castle, and the red Wall, hee himselfe with his Armie it gone towards Refan, and be bath fent with much to doe, and upon certaine conditions, to the Riner of Sagia towards the Volga, to bring vietuals to maintagne them that are in the Caffle befreged of the Mulcourses. The King of Poland is altogether refolaed to goe there in perfon this fummer, and if the Ruffes have no formaine beloe, as there is no appearance, no question it will come to passe as I writ last to your Werflow, that they will be forced to yeeld. I write briefly to your Worflow, because I hore to take my youage to France through England, and there to meet with your Worfhip; intreating your Worfhip to ac-10 cept thefe few itnes as a testimony of the fermice I have vowed to your Worlbip, erc. and fo I end in haste:

Thus have we finished source Acts of this Tragedie: the first, ending with the end of Beeles family; the second, with the raine of that of Boris; the third, with that (whatsoever) Demetrius; the fourth, with this Suiker, attended with that fladow or shoft of another Demerrius. Now as I have feene fometimes the Spectators of Tragedies whiled with discourse of a Chorne. or (as in our vulgar) enterrayned with mulicke, to remit for a time those bloudie impressions fixe ed in attentine mindes ; fo have we repretented Pheedres Coronation added to the firft ; Boris his Charter to the Englife to conclude the fecond; that of Demetrins to the third, and for this fourth I have here made bold with a Leeter of my worthy friend (fo am I bold to call that good Man, zealous Protestane, elegant Writer, industrious Preacher, learned Doctor, and Reuerend Deane Doctor Hall, a Hall adorned with fo rich Arras, and with all the ground, light, life, the All of thefe, Christian humilitie) which may fetue as a Letter of commendation to my intent. as it was intended to another worke, which had it beene publike, might have prevented the greateft part of this: A worke of Maiter Samuel Sombeby, in Sir Tb. Smith: Voyage mentioned, Mafter Sa. touching those Ruffian occurrents which he in part law. As a Traueller he deserveth place here, Sautheby. And howfocuer I have neither beene fo happy to fee the Worke nor the Workman, yet this Epiftle tells what we have loft, and my worke eafily proclaimes the defect of fuch a Wardrobe. point can what we made on, and my worker any programms the detect of fuch a Wardrobe, being (as you fee) like a Beggars cloke, all of dimerifyed parches; so much more labour to mee, in both getting and fittehing them, though so much left satisfaction to thee. Once, as I have getting and some some in the midth of Marine Discourries, to refresh the Reader a while on Land : fo amidit thefe tragicall, harfh Relations, I'thus feeke to recreate thy wearie fpirits with this chat of mine, and after thele Minds gates, more really, with this Letter fo viefull to the present subject, so pleasing in the stile. The whole, and the next following to Buchingki. the Reader may finde in his fo oft published Decades of Epistles.

Rauell perfittih wisedome; and observation gives perfection to travell; without which, a man may please his eyes, not feede his braine; and after much earth meassured, shall returns with a weary A plane to year, on seems one of the seems o 40 tion; fo, the end of observation is the informing of olders: for, what is our knowledge if smothered in our selves, so as it is not knowne to more? Such secret delight can content name but an ennione nature. You have breathed many and cold aires, gone farre, seene much, beard more, observed all. These swe yeares you have she m smitation of Nabuchadnezzats seven; connersing with such creatures at Paul sought with at Ephchis. Alas! what a face, yea what a backe of a Courch base you seven? what a manjouges with at Epinetus, Atlas: wost a jours jour on the first the with clofe Atheifine , Treachers with eners! what people! Amough thoom, input and Superflution firstes with clofe Atheifine , Treachers with Cruelts, one Deuill with amother; while Truth and Vertue doe not formuch as gine any challenge of refustance. Returning once to our England after this experience, I imagine you doubted whether you were on Earth, or in Heasen. Now then (of you will beare mee, whem you were wont) as you have observed what you have feene, and written what you have observed; so, publish what you have written: it shall not you have written. 50 be a gratefull labour, to vs, to Posternie. I am deceined, if the fickleneffe of the Russian State, have not

jeeilad more memorable matter of Historie sben any other in our Age, or perhaps m any Centuries of our Prodecessors. Hom shall I thinke, but that God sont you thusber before these bronles, to be the winnesse, the Register of so famous mutations? He loues to have those sust exils which hee doth in one part of the World, knowne to the whole, and those enils, which men doe in the night of their secretie, brought forth mto the Theater of the World; that the en: Wof mens sinne being compared with the enill of his punishment, may instific bis proceedings, and condemne theirs. Tour worke shall thus bonour him; besides your second service, in the benefit of the Church. For whiles you descourse of the open Tyra mic of that Rullian Nero, Iohn Basilius; the more fecret, no leffe bloudy plots of Boris; the ill successe of a stolne Crowne, though les upon the head of an harmelesse Sonne; the hold attemps and miserable end of a false, yet aspiring & challenge ; the perfidionfnesse of a service people, omworthy of better Gouernours ; the misse-carriage of wicked Gonernours, vieworthy of better Subjects; the viewit vsurpations of men, inst (though late) renenges of God; crueltie rewarded wab blond, wrong claimes with overthrow, treachery with bondage; the Reader, with some secret borror, Shall draw-in delight, and with delight instruction : Neuher know I any Relation whence hee fkall take out a more casie Lesson of Instice, of Loyaltie, of Thanke-

But abone all, let the World fee and commiserate the hard estate of that worthy and woble Secretarie. Buchinsky. Poore Gentleman bis diffresseralls ever to any thoughts Etops Storke, taken amongst the Buchinsky, ever continuous nie autregremani ener vom toonguse union stere talen amougit the Cranes: He now nourthes his base, onder the difficulte of a foreigne Prince; As one in the rance, and bangliment. Hee served as all Master; but, mit but boust beart, with cleane bands. The Masters ininstice doil no more infect a good Servant, than the truth of the Servant can infession in Master. A bad Worke man may ofe a good instrument; and oft-times a cleane. Naphin respetts a fine Majler. A bad Work mus may vie a good rosst numen : ann openmes a crease, iv age in mostic a fone mouth. It sopes me yet to ibnice, that his piete, as it ever beld friendling in Hausen, so mus a mount him friends in this our abort World: Lo, even from our Iland ynexpelled deliuerance takes a long stych, and Jeends in this our over rous is an energy prime.

Selffelt bim Reynold hope; per arbote , from Heisten, by the The God; moves benefirst, will be knowned to the feel and fearer human Christians, for a practitor of measure, a former of rout, at the rewarder of pietic. The mercy of our gracious King, the compassion of an honourable Complessor, the lone of a true friend, and (which wrought all, and fet all on worke) the grace of our good God; hall have lone of a true friend, and spoice wronger an, and see an or work;) we grace of our good coal; shall now lofe those bonds, and gine a flat welcome to his liberie, and a wiling farell to his diffress. He shall? boge) line to acknowledge thu; in the meane time, I doe for him. Those Russian Affaires are not more worthy of your Records, than your love to this frend is worthy of mine. For neither could this large Sed Worthy of your Keeras, than your some to wan pean as wat sy of muce. Let neather could the large Sad chrome or quently, now time and defence (mich as a want to heread ingring confumption of friendling) about the beats of that offiction, which has kindneffe bred, religious own flow. Both reactiff, and worth fadicumment this tree letter, which to [as free the bath bourn more large and of follows. Never times yeel, dad more love; but, not more fuiltle. For every man loves thought one womber, lower the of these to the

desc-1. No Age affoorded more Parasites, sewer friends: The most are friendly in sight. Serviceable in

expectation, bollow in love, trustleffe in experience. Tet now, Buchinsky, see and confesse thou bust found

one freend, which bath made thee many, Oc.

Of the miserable estate of Ruffia after Swiskers deportation, their election of the King of Polands Sonne, their Interregnum and popular estate, and chusing at last of the present Emperour, with some remarkabe accidents in his time.

Hus have we seene the Russian sinnes veterly rooting up so many Russian Imperial Families and persons : the whole Family of Inan extirpate, that of Boris succeeding, annihilate; two pretending Demetri and Suiskie extinct; and yet have wee greater abhominations to flew you. No Tyrant, no Serpent, no Dragon is so exorbitant and prodigious as that which hath many heads and therefore in divine Visions Monarchies (how euer excessiue and tyrannical) haue beene resembled by simpler and more vniforme beasts, but the 40

Dan.1467.68 D.will in a great red Dragon with seven heads and ten bornes, and the Beast likewise to which hee gase bis power and bis fost and great substrints, which opened his meach in blafthemic against God or.

1.40 17.1. of 17 now was Ruffia a Monster of many heads, that is, a bodie fallen into many pieces. One man possessed of the Wife of that double Demetrius, got to Afracan, there feating himselfe to set vp an vsurped shop of Rule; the Southerne parts choic Prince Vladylans, Son of K. Sigifmund of Poland; chofe of the North thought of other Princes; and at last when neither the Fig. trees freetneffe nor Olines fatnesse, nor cheering Wine from the Vine could take place in their inconstancie, the 50 Brambles conceived a fire whole deusers of the Ceders of Lubonus: a popular government happened, or if you will, a Confusion of the multitude bare (way, which killed and murthered enery Great Man, whom any Rascall would accuse to be a friend to the Poles, or to any of the dead Emperours, whom those popular injudicious Judges fancied not. And now Russia blushed with impudencie, that is with shamelesse fight of the daily effusion and profusion of her best bloud; now enery man was an Actor: and oh had they beene but Actors! too really did they present (not represent) bloudie Tragedies, of which their whole Countrey was becomne the Theatre; the Deuill the Choragus (a Murtherer from the beginning) and the whole World Spectator, itupid with admiration, quaking with horrour of fo vincouth a light!

Now for the ouertures betwixt the Muscouites, and Stanislam Stanislamich Zolkiewskie, Ge-69 nerall of the Polakes, touching their Election of Vladiflaus Sonne of King Sigifmund, and the Articles propounded : also the answere of Prince Vladiflaus to the same Articles , Anno 1612. I have here expressed in Latine as I found them: fearing I should be over-tedious to translate them, especially seeing the businesse came not to esfect : and the English Articles following of the

Popular go-

CHAP.O. S. Accord twist Poles and Russes about chusing the Emperour. 783

Pactainter Primarium Ducem Exercituum Regni Polonia, & inter Heroes Mofcoura.

C Erenissimi Potentissamig, Imperatoris Sigilmundi terty Dei gratia Regts Polonia, Magnig, Ducie DLithuaniz, Ruiliz, Pruffiz, Samogitiz, Kieuiz, Volitonia, Podoliz, Podlachiz, Succorum, 10 Ocitonorum, aliorumá, nec non bereduary Regis Succorum, Gottorum, Vandalorum, Finlandizque Principie. Palatinus Kijenieniis, Primarius Dux Exercitium Regni Polonia Capitaneus Rohatiuentis, Camænacentis, Katulcientis. Ego Staniflaus Staniflaides Zolkiewsky de Zolkwia, Manifestum facto prasentibus pattu, & confirmatis meu literis: Quod Ommipotentis in Trimitate adorandi Dei gratia, & voluntate, tum & benediktime venerabilis Hermogenis, Moscourtarum, totinsa, Russie Patriarchie, Metropolitarum, Archiepiscoporum, Episcoporum, Archimondertarum, iriamanorum unitesting generatolis (leri. Et post palta omnium Hervam, Comitum, Capitaneerum, Primartorum Daviferorum, Aulicorum, Tenutariorum, Aulicorum wetous Prafettorum, & Decurionum Sclopetariorum, necnon querumnus Molcouix beredum, Hereumg, liberorum, Aduenarum, Mercaturam exercentium, laculatorum, velitum Fabrerum termentariorum, & reliquorum incolarum magni mpe-

20 ry Molcourtarum. Herest, utpote Comes Atbertus Ingiboiz Miciflawskij, Due Vencellaus Vencefludes Galicz. ja, Albertus Iumouiz Seremetij, Dux Venceslaus Mieliechij, & Primari Debutati Venecilaus Telepnieuij, & Thomas Lugowskij, & viniuerfitotiu Molcouix Primates, Egetati veneriaus terepineur, or inomas tugowasi, or omner teina meteorie erunate; Ege-rust delbertustung, meens, de eligendo Imperatore, si Wholfiminiense voineursans, Moccoura rum Ingerema et redubrustu subi sam eviprinatam se elitamo, ebizationem or sarves ficum baptisma sur et redubrustu subi sam eviprinatam se elitamo proprina se estadores estadores subi se estadores estadores subi se estadores estadores subi se estadores estador

ficem bapissma siera Regue Mastitusie exofessias sunt sunt tentum Promitry Comites, selectum Herres, incultust Aules, Capitain, Promitry Supplers, Aules, Cubendary, Strutiores, Tomatary, Or Destroates Superariorisch submissis, sandistationers, volutie, Sant Tomatary, Organistationers, Capitainers, Promitris, Oranissis, Superariorisch submissis, sandistationers, volutie, Sant Tomatary, Oranissis, sunt services, Oranis services, Strutioners, Promitris, Valence Arbeitas, Capitainers, Oranis services, Oranis services, Strutioners, Oranis services, Superarioris, Capitainers, Primary Depleters, Anles, Cobinelariy, Strutioners, Oranis services, Superarioris, Capitainers, Santistaris, Oranis services, Superarioris, Capitainers, Strutioners, Oranis services, Superarioris, Capitainers, Superarioris, torem Sereniffimam Vladiflaum Sigilmundi filium facra Regia Maieftatis Imperio totius Molcouiz

40 co: situi leto exoptant anumo. Omnes etiam Heroes, Anliei Imperatori; Capitanei, Primari Dapife-ri, Equite: Cubiculari, Struitores, Decuriones' Sclopetariurum, Temtari; in arcibus Prafelli, Di-Benfatores, libers Heroups, Aduena, Mercatio am exercemes, lacidatores, velites, Fabri tormentary, om fig. conditionis semules, & libers incola Imperij Molicouie, Serent liftent imperatoris, bill Serentjinini Regu Posona: Vladilis Segitmuntoniz/& popuritais (fi que gifine fatura) exosculat sunt sacro-socilum vunificum barifine, bos spro underentes, se cium opi Imperatori, timo omosi aplius posteritat aternis temporibus seruisuos, omanas, prosperima exeptantes, in omnibus non secus vi superioribus hare-ditaris magnis imperatoribus, or Calatibus, Magnis stem Ducibus vinuers limperis Moscouitici, nec vilum malu n pfi, & eun posteritati contuaturos, machinaturos, cogitaturos, aut alium quempiam ex Molcouro Imperio, vicinifa Imperii; in imperiativem Molcouro, preter Sermiffumo Vlasifiamo. Sigmuntouro filimas Serumffimi Regió Polotia introductores, addipentura file. Quibus derò cum condi-

Signameoure jummoremyum are touties and justicessure, but de re Herset. Dux Albertus I-tonius in Imperatorem Molecouttes Imperie sem sint susceptivirum pallum. Ego ver d'irparitu dux. Reput Polorite, poft pallum ffait mosquirum pallum in partitus qualitus qualitus certain-conclusionem confetumus, "O' approbationis". Harung, conditionum approbandarum ratita (vidadi conclusionem confetumus, "O' approbationis". Herosbus Duci Alberto Itanocitz com Collegis ches obligationem, & confirman nica manilo subscriptione, & feilli appositione, & facrofanteum viaificum Bapofina exoculatus fum ego Primarius Dux rione, or igno approprience, or justification of the contributes [c]e obligando, pro Magno Imperatore exercitumen Reput Polonia & must Primipiti. Centuribites [c]e obligando, pro Magno Imperatore unfero Servenifiamo Viadeltao, Sigmuntouiz, & magno imperatore exercitimo via del magno imperatore exerc

pro magnis Imperis. Universes, magno Regno Poloniz, Magnog, Ducain Lithuatuz, & pro nobif-60 metrifit totagi exercitis, qui ul penet setrofuntam Regiam Maiethatena, & penes me Primarium. efenlem, omning, magnorum Imperiorum, totius Mulcoviz filimi facra fala Regie Maiefiaris V falif-

laum Sigmuntouiz. Cum verdiam Serenifimu Vladiflaus Sigmuntou z film Serenffimi Regu Po-Ioniz aduenerit ad Arcem Sedis Imperatorie Molecouiticz, sum coronabitur in Imperatorem Woodis. mirieniem, omnumg, totius Molcouix Imperiorum, ipsió, Imperatoria Corona, & Diadema impone tur à venerabils Hermogene Patriarcha toine Moscourz, & ab uniner so venerabils Clero Graca Religionis, secundum pristinum morem & dignitatem. Faltus verò Serenissimus S.R. Maiestatis filius Viadiflaus Sigmuntouiz Imperator Molcouiz, Temple Dei in Molcouia per omnes Arces, Vices, vo muersuma, Imperium Molcouix repurgabit, & augebit in omnibus ad pristinam consuetudinem (ab omni incommodo tutabitur, tum Sauttis Dei, & Dinorum imaginibus, & castissima Deipara, om, nibus ossibus Santtorum, que magna prodigia in Moscouia faciunt, debium cultum flexie gentiu practure, illag, adorare tenebitur. Et Politica, nec non Spirituali viriufg, fexus Christianitath 10 omnibusa, vere Christianis, vt sint vere Christiana legis Graca Religionu non probibebis. Ro mane Religionis disrume de company sollerum Religionis Temple, au Synagoge, in Moiconig-ci Imperij Archiu, & pagi, nulkis adpieur adset vi sidilminimu ur Arce Moiconis prefin e, tompe. Romanum Templum off poffir, proper bamines Polonos, & Lichuanos, qui penes lappraturem p lum Seremismo R. Polo. funt futuri , ca de re cum facra R. Maieftate , & venerabile Hermogene

Patriarcha Molcouix, omnibus spirstualibus, tum Heroibus, & Capitaneis collato institucuda. Religio auton acro fante forces unho in pulse volenda, au personbanda, voi also quespon min. Religio auton acro fante forces unho in pulse volenda, au personbanda, voi also quespon min. finta introducenda est, in ide, danda opera, vi fante, vera, Christiana Gizca Religio, Jaam integritatem, & cultum retineat, inxia morem antiquem, nec Imperium Moscounticum, einsg, incole vers Chijfinns, a Graca Religione ad Romanam, aut aliam quempiam, vi fem rabore, & fernitute, alis (g, bis fi- 20 milibiu modis abducantur.

Iulei in uniuer sum Moscouix Imperium causa Mercature, ant alterius cuius piam rei proficisi se permittantur. Vanerabilta & offa Sanitorum, ab Imperatore filio Serenffini R. Pol. Vladiflao Sigmuntouiz fanta cum veneratione debent venerari. Et venerabilem Hermogenem Patriarcham. Multicuitz, Johan andre vascrasion assens tourers. La vourraissem, estimagenem settement. Molecuitz, Metropolitas, Articipalicas, Episforga, Articipalicas, Artimanos, Falforas, Diamos, Of professe finite settement, vainer famo, Circum Chriftuse (articipalità Religione Circum, debite officer de more, se monthly for mar fire traductiva nogular (eff. unmerfectuo), des ma fire principalità del modifica del mo O qui debatte antiquem tempera tempera tempe atemp Molecuia, vippete farrati panes, legumina, famula of qui debatte, O bis de varige reducibus familia: bus presentus Ecclefic decesa, O musuum Impraesium. 30 ansiquerum Moscouiz, nec Herorum, ant alierum bominum devationes, fi qua Templis aut Monafe. antiquerum MOLCOUIL, nec Herrerum, ant afiarmo bominum danationes kūgam Templie aut Monafe-riy Dei dicamentu, ant dicarios funt, adiquere dobet, melle ferméam oni quam moram, confliuma via-lando. Spirituales, & Regularia faire multo moda mitingende . Unimenfarie unaia porta firituales & Regularia quibiu antiquitus dobantus astifice imperfusio amuja redefento, o felicamifant, & exitus-peratoris Thefanor in Temple & Monafferis, figura seriencum radiama angondo. Herest, lagor atori, munthu Imperaldom, Caltrenfous, & terrefitions, quite, in Archive Palatini, Capitanesi, fine Tem-tario et Telamosi. aut. die visional Deserbit de commis audicinia homisis. tarij & Telonarij , aut alij eninsmodi Prafelli. & mmie conditionie bamines , vi antiqua retineant Primilegia prost constitutum ett in Molcouitico Imperio, ab antiquis magnis Imperatoribus, in id Serenissimus Imperator incumbes serio.

Poloni vero & Lithuani, in Molconia mullis in terreffribus , forenfibus negotigs , ant Arcibus Palatinorum, Capitaneorumme offe debent, nec successiones Profesture, aut dignitatie in Arcibne illie

Quia autem Poloni, & Lithuani ex vereg, Imperio videtur confutum, ve preficiantur confinibus Arcibiu ad absolutum lenamen buini limpery, en de re Serenissimus Imperator cum Herothus collaitenem instituet suo tempore.

Lam vero univer fa Respublica supplex Serenissimon Imperatoram precatur, ne ad executionem perducat banc conditionem, antequam fuerit bac in parte viring, deliberatur

Qui vero Poloni & Lithuani pener Serenifimum Imperatorem Vladillaum Sigmuntoniz funt futuri, cos non folum honoraturi, sed etiam contentaturi pecaniali numer attene, & promoturi secundum. 50 Uninfeninfa, merita fumm.

Moscovitici Impery Heroes, Aulicos, Imperatorios, Capitancos, Primarios Dapiferos, Cubicularios, Presettos, Structores, Tenutarios, Arcium Presettos Sclopetariorum, cumeso, ad Aulam Imperatoriam pertinentes bomines, & liberes Heroum, Adnesas, Mercateres, laculatores, velites, Fabros termentarios, & comnis conditiones bellicofos homines, atefa, baredes Imperi Molcovitici, Serenissimus Imperator debet babere in dignitate, bonore, gratia, o anoure, ve fuit antiquitus apud primos magnos Molcovia Imperatores; Nec antiquos mares & flatus qui erant in Imperio Molcoviz immutare, vel Moscoviz Ducum, Herenna, viduas Adueme in patria, vel Tanutis elocare, ant deprimere.

Tribuia pecunialia, fipendia raddere, & bareditates quas aliquis possidant ad bac usq tempera, u 60 etiamnum, & in posterum possidare debet.

Haredstaria bona a nemnae abalienare, sed semper omnibus bominibus Moscovitici Impery provi ders perpondendo ferusta corum, preut aliquis de Republica meritus est. Admenis emmibus qui vocasi fuerant ax verijs Nationibus, à passaie Imperatoribus Molcovia,

necessarys promidere, pront antea solitum fuit: nec stipendia, Tenntas, & possessiones corum ab 130 Heroibus, Aulicis, Cubicularijs, Dapiferis, & liberis Heroum, omnibufg, Aula Imperatoria inferuienti'nis, Imperatoriam benenolentiam commonstrare, & falaria debita, fecundum antiquum mo-

yem reddere, Serenissimus Imperator tenebuur. Quod si verò alicus salarsa mudiplicabuntur, possessionesse, ant tenuta, supra eius disinitatemi, vel

contra alicui munuentur, prater culpamiofius, ca de re Serenistimus Imperator conferre, & consultare debet cum Herosbus Primarijs : & prout vnanimes decreuerint, ida, fecundum aquitatem, sta fit

Qui vero Aulici, aut liberi Heroum sumunt beneficio Imperatoris, ex Arcibus omnibus stependlaris. aubus beneficia tempore prateritorum Magnorum Imperatorum Moscoviz ob merita pforum dabantur , illis quoq iam & fispendia pecunialia , & alimentaria , ex Mandato Imperatoris

In Arce dicta Moscovia, aliffg, Arcibus , Indicia exequi debent, & obsernari ve folium; secundem flatuta Molcovitici Impery. Quod fi verò aliqua effent corrigenda, ad corrobor ationem Iudicos rum, conceditur Serenissimo Imperators, sed cum consensu omniamo Heroum Vniuersitutiu Moscovia. statamen, ve respondeant equitati.

Maonus autem Imperator Serenissimus Rex Poloniz, Magnus Dux Lithuanix, eniefg, totius Regni Poloni e, Imperia, necuon Magnus Ducatus Lithuania, cum Magno Imperatore filio Kegu Po-20 lon & Vla lillao, Sigmuntoviz, cum emmibus Imperijs Molcovia, in amicitia, (ocitate, amore, eternis temporibus inniolabiliter, nes contra se inuscem exercitus colligere, & bella concitare nullis

Quod st autem aliquis bostium tentarit impetus facere in Imperium Moscoviz, siue etiam in Regnum Polonia, & Magnum Ducasum Lithuania: contra istiusmodi omnes bostes iunitiu viribus infurgere virum á, Imperium tenebitur.

Caterum, in Tartarorum finibus quod fineceffum fuerit fernare verinfa, Impery milites, cum iam. coronatus fuerit films Serenifims Regu Polonia, Imperator Imperi Molcovitarum : bac de re collatio cum Heroibus instituenda, & cum magno Imperatore Sereuffimo Sigismundo Rege Polonize, ida de-custer, animo sincero, absa, ulla machinatione damni alicuius, aut Tyrannidis illationis in bomines Mos-26 courties Impery: bonorem, vitam, aut alind quippiam ifius modi nemins adimendo, cuinscun à conditio-

nis ille fuerit : Aut fi in Poloniam , vel Lithuaniam, aliag, Imperia Moscouitici Imperiy homines transmittendo, aut ex Lithuania in locum corum alicuius alterius generis bomines supponendo: Uxores, aut liberos alicuius dalose corrumpendo, vel sobolis procreanda gratia sumendo, & ad exteras Nationes parentes cum liberis transmittendo.

Oui autem ex quocung, imperio istiusmodi facinoris reus, & pana degnus inveniretus : Is in Impera-soris & terrestribus indicibus prous meruis puniendus est: & decresum per Imperatorem aut Heroes, vel Capitaneos de illo ferendum.

l'xores autem cerum & liberi, fratres, & qui iftud facinus nec perpetrarnat, nec ipfis fuit cognitum., aut illud perpetrandum consentière. Illi wedum puniendi , sed secundum aquitatem Privilegiorum suo-40 rum, patrimonia, tenutas, vitam, aulas, retinere debent,

Sin usro reus non possit explorari, nemo tum Indicio Imperatoris, at Heroum indicari, puniri, proforibi , vel incarcerari , aut ad alienos transmitti debet : sed vnusquisq, in suis Tenutis & Aulis

Steriles autem, quiaex hac decefferint vita, bona ab illis relicta, vel confanguineis ipforum, fine cuieung, ipsi leganerint, tradenda : id tamen non absg, mutua collatione,& consilio effe debet.

Perro quoniam tempere prafentis feditionis multi perire, & multos ex Molcovitis profratos conflat à Polonis, & Lithuanis, & contra Polonos & Lithuanos à Moscovitis : iftud faltum, & une , & imposterum, nec commemorandum, nec vila vindicta vering, pensandum esse debet.

Qui autem Poloni, & Lithuani Primipoli, Centuriones, aliga, dinerfa fortis bomines duxère capti-50 uitatem in Imperio Moscovix, quorum aliqui adhuc in vinculis tenentur,illi ex Moscovix Imperioreddendi, fine vila pecuniali liberatione. Tum quoque vice versa Aulici, liberi Heroum, laculatores, Velites, Fabri tormentary, omne (q, feruiles & liberi homines, Aulicorum liberi, Iaculatorum, Fabrorum) tormentariorum, Sclopetariorum, & horum similium. Item Matres, Vxores, Libers, & his similes, ex Imperio Moscovitarum, virilis ant muliebris fexus, in prasentem seruitutem prasente primo Moscovitarum, virilis aut muliebris fexus, in prafentem ferustutem prafente primo Molcouitarum Imperatore Vencellao accepti in Poloniam vel Lithuaniam, illi ab Imperatore Serenissimo Rege Polonia, restituendi à minimis ad maximos v sá absá pecuniali redemptione. Prouentus Imperatorios ex Aroibus, alifá, possessionibus, tum extenutu & arendis census, omnesá, reditus, debet Serenissimus Imperator exisere, ut antea fecere Primi Imperatores, & prioris Magistratus mores, & statuta absa consensuiu

Arces, aut Civitates, que bello vastate, ad cas mittere debet Serenissimus Imperator, & pracipere, ut con(cribantur Registra corum, que per vastationem periere : ut vicissim (umptis prouentibus aliande, fecundum conferspla registra poffint refarciri.

Quorum verò Hareditates, Possessiones, vel Tennta spoliata, ils lenamen dandum, sed nen absa

consensa Heroum. Es qua recens vastata Asces, illus quamprimum restaurare, confilso miso emm He-

Mercatores Moscouitici Imperý emnium (nutatum, in Polonia & Lithuania, fic Poloni, Lithuani, in Molcauta, Polonis, Lichumps, merces coemere debent more ofinate, or antea : I find temen ca ne in monagain, e comme, est tamen, me ment de de Christiani in Lithuaniam ex Rufia; et ex Lithuania se Rutham, sese transportando cum mercibus Heroes, & Aulici omnes, mancipia debest u

In Volda, Dona, & Tekiet Arcibus, velites, si illis opus suerit, seruari debent : do quibus Serenis. Sumus Imperator conferre debet cum Heroibus, & Nobilibus, postquam coronabitur.

Arces Moscouttici Imperiy, ad Imperatorem persinentes, tum ille, que m senutas Polonis, & Li-10 thuanis, tradite funt, vel quas sam Vor prefatte fub pateitatem fuam fubrectt : Ego Primorius Due exercitum Regni Poloniz, conflitu cum Herosbus Molcouix, quod Serenssimus Rex Poloniz, Filio facra fue Regia Maiestatis Serenissimo Vladislao Sigmuntouiz, bas acces, cum omnibus que fort vaffate, Molcouitico Imperio reil tinere debet. Illustres vere Legati Molcouientes, bos in mys. tio trattaturi sunt cum sacra Regia Maiestate de sumpribus, & expensis sacra Regia Maiestats in milites exposites, & de persoluendis Polonis, & Lichuanis, sunt quaque consultatmi, quemodo

Vot ausem prefatus, qui sese Casaridem Moscouitici Impery, Demetrium Euanouiz appellat : de illo, mibi Primo Duci Regni Poloniz constitum meundum, & omnie cura habenda, vi capi, vel penitu

Qui postquam capsus, vel occifus fuerit, Ego Primarius Dux Exercituum Regni Polonia, cum exercitu sacre Maiestatu a primaria Aree, sedis Imperatorie, Moscoutta prasata discedere ad Arcem exercine sorte orangiane aprimaria arres jone imprimora, providua prajuta nejecutre ad Arcem M. zauko, vel obi furii opu, post collationem cum Herobus institutam, ibig, Legatos Molconiz, & mandatum sacra Regia Maicstatis, prestolari tenebus. Qued si nibilomunus Vot presunt emtra simperatoriam arcem Moscoulum sic dictam tentanerit insidiari, aut sedatumes aliquas excitares. Ego Prio marını Dux Regni Polonia, illum profligare, & armis perfequi teneber.

marius Dux Keyn Pouline, umon projugare, O memo projugare umo Polonicum, & Lithua-Dominimo vero Sapicza, qui fe Vor prefato admixiti, ab tito & exercitimo Polonicum, & Lithua-nicum abducere; Quod si udem Vot prefatus, ex Moscouia com Ruthenis discussivi, militum auscum nicum abacere; Quea ji sam vor prefum, en municum nuturem superferi, metitim aucim Polonorum, o Untunnorum quessam apal se detimente; Ego Primerius Dan Kegin Polonie; cam exercita sucre Regie Maissaus, yna cum Hereibus Molonie, ne sametum ampsilerum ex- 30 ordiatne, sed Imperium pace publica assecuratum stabiliatur, dabimus operam.

Demetrius

fecundus.

ordister, sed imperium pace purius agieuratum stanuaim, uantumi aperum.

Demetri primi Muster vero, qua cum codem Vor prefato per Molcouiticum Imperium, cum exercitu passima pervoci. Pila- grassiatur, Imperatricem Molcouiz ses ventilanda; sili probbendam, ne condem se imposterum cognominare, vel quippiam sfiinsmedi, aut aliques difficultates, contra Imperium Molecuiticum motiri audeat : sed, quamprunum in Poloniam reducenda est. Imperator vero Serenssimos , silins Regu Polome Vlau flaus Sigmuntouiz in omnibus antiquitus, iura faucita, & patia Magnorum Legatorum Moscouix, cum Serenissimo Sigifmundo Rege Polonix, & confirmata primilegia unitari debet, Cintatem & Arcem smolinsk prefatum quod attinet; Ego Dux Primarius exercituum regni Polonie supplicabo apud S. R. Maiestatem, vi probibeat, ne milites in Conitate tanta bomicidia exer-

De Bapti mo

De ba tismase verò, vi tilud Imperator Vladislaus Sigmuntoniz, films sacre Regia Maiestatis suscipiat, & baptizetur in illorum Sacrosa italegii Graca religione, in illag, perseneret, vi & de alisi nonaum contraîtis actis, & conditionibus, & reliquis circumstantis antiquitus in Imperio Molcouitico, ad prasentem vsq, expeditionem belicam observatis: Inter Sevenissimos Imperatores & Imperia omda prejentem tijg, expansarem vermannskeptemme. Ander skrivering angeri, de conferens politic skrivering and de re. Ego Primarius; Dux militie, cum sam à S.R. Maisstate commons de de mandata multe skrivering and de re. contuls cum Heroibus, quid splis responsi sum daturus: sed primium cum sacra Regia Maisstate boc in negotio, tum etiam cum Serenissimo Imperatore Vladislao Sigmuntouiz filso sacra Regia Maisstatis,

Insuper, Ego Primarius Dux exercituum regni Poloniæ, m Arcem Moscoulam presutam, Po-50 lonos, Lithuanos, Germanos, & omnis generis belico fos, qui funt mecum, & cum Domino Sapieza, absq. permissa Heronm, vel ipsa necessitate, intromittere non debeo. In Arcem Moscoulam prefatam, Mercatorum Polonorum, & Lithuanorum, mercium coemendarum gratia, exomnibus Prosinciji regni Polon'a, cum meis Imperialibus testimonialibus literis, non vista viginti, vel paulo plutes sunt intromistends : abso literis à me datis testimonsalibus, in Arcem Moscoutam presatam, aut alibi, nemo

Ob mains verò robur, & co-firmationem Pallorum istorum, Ego Primarius reeni Polonia Dux exercitums, Stanislaus Stanislaides, Zolkiewsky de Zolkwia figillum menm apposisi, & manum propriam subscrips. Sic etiam Domini Primipoli, & Centuriumes exercitus, qui tum temporis mibi aderant, ad bac mea scripta nomina sua subscripsere. Datum in Castris, apud Arcem sedis Imperatoria 60 Moscouitici Imperatoris. Anno 1610. Augusti 27. die.

Respon-

Reponlum ad Pacta inter Primarium Ducem exercituum Regni Polome & Heroes Molconia, Serenissimi Regis Polonia, & Serenissimi V MANA DISLAI SIGMENTOVIZ Filij Sacræ

-Reetz Maieftatis.

Magnat Dei gratia Imperator Viatullauphignuntonite, Films Sereniffun Kegit Poloniz, Suc-Mciz, &c. Ampliffun Molcoutarum Imperi, minerio venerabili Clero, Ministri De vi. Man Dei grais Imperator Viciliang Segunnocogie, tiem derweifine ik ein Polonia, SueMan, C. Amphilim Mocionacium Imperio miner to ware able 100 no. Airestin Do rieitum flime, freinden, Canada partie freinische Amperio in der eine gestellt in der eine gestell quibus multam copiam fanguinis Christiani frustra effundi paffi fant, & totum Imperium diniferunt, The bac personacia, atque malata sua, Dei ser Opt. Max. castissimaq, Deipara voluntati, necnon Se-

To be printarie, annominata fora. Des tre Ops. Man catiffinad, Dispara voluntais, nicono Servatfina infolmand Dei jendis Rept Polinis unsquierdini, or spine beneute orga que anima demonstrate Nahifi, Servatfina l'apperauri incamentame expédiatione vini fait Rept foncts produite montante de la comprehence de la compre Sacrofantiam quog, Retigionem vostram Legis Grace permitimus, carumg, fecundum constitutiones Patrum Santiorum, inclumine, in mullo panti o violandam, & immutandam. Et vmuerfam venerabi-

Parrim Santèrem, inchbaigh, in multe paul e vollandem, & immutandem. Et vusuer fam viene ablaum parties, Mustikenshi 200 Confificierium vieteratie. Coviam, dabito so houve famis kahairi.
Heres, Alaices, & chaiffeuil, fortis aleu diliperi, promieste, patreum plaficierem pecunitem, aleumque consente positiforum, de uniterie dablematie. I el famo mocietage attributor pomatimus, setumque consente positiforum, de unitera dablematie y el famo mocietage attributor pomatimus, setumque consente productor. Ou acute uni mellita, & consentence (su proficarez en occifatoru),
tatem, & mercus productor. Ou acute uni mellita, & consentence (su proficarez en occifatoru).
Deum Oft Mac. Se attrificado cità Conirricem, firstiffacio illes glades panitures certo sciant: &
Deum Oft Mac. Se attrificado cità Conirricem, firstiffacio illes glades panitures certo sciant: & noftrum Imperatorium beneuolum animum, in iram , & vindictam untatum experientur. Non vult enim Deus Omnipotens, vt. ob malitiam, & contumaciam Rebellium, innocentium viterius sanguis affundatur, Templa Dei spolientur, & gloria fanti Nommis eins, magis, ac magis deprimatur. Vas omnes, apud animum vestrum diligentius perpendite, & his , qui adbus nobis tergiuer antur renunciate, ve animo mutato, ad veritatis agnitionem redeant, & feditiofos, & pacis publica diremptores re-

Iam vero, ad quas Arces, & Cinitates, he litera noftra peruenerint , Mandamus, ut corum Capitanei, & Tenniati, omnia ad viltum neceffatia, & pecuniam colligant, in paratifá, habeaut, ad nostrum aduentum. Interea Exercitas facra Regia Masestasis, Domini Parentis nostri, nostrig, propris, ne vi-lum detrimensum patiansur, sed una in fraterno amore, quoad venerimus, vinatis i Et donce Opt. Max.

1. 85

400

inf. : I

anna 1 i

eschalls

gainst the Rebels, and that even to this present, they doe keepe, and will keepe their oath

once made, and their due obedience vnto their Lord. And, in that Lepin was punished of God for his treacherie, and departed this life with so shamefull a death, wee thinke it to bee for the good example of others, to reduce them into their former estate, to revoke others vnto their fidelitie, and for keeping their oath alrea-

Therefore, after many circumstances, they inferred, that they would presently send their Therefore, atter many streamment: but mooued with the perf wasien of the honorable Lord Generall, to wit, that his Maiestie would bee contented with their fidelitie once made, and performed vader bath, and with their griefe for the same cause, and will cheerefully forgine them ; and doth not refule to give his Sonne to raigne over them. Adding withalf, that many them; and doth not reture to give me soome to rayine our them. Adding withan, that many Kingdomes, to wit, the Kingdomes of Hingdomes, the Kingdomes of Belemia, and a great part of Refile, doe earnethy requelt, that he would receive them wader the happy government of his Marethe: that they might entay the primitedges of Poland, and Liven, to which, none in the

whole world can be compared. But , because his Excellent Maieftie, as a Christian Lord , reichting all other Kingdomes,

and Dominions, will graciously receive vader his Rule and government the fact Dominions, and that he is forry for their destruction : he therefore now admonssherh them, if they will bee vnder his prosperous Rule, and enter into an vnion together with the Kingdome of Poland, and the great Duchy of Litow, and live friendly with them; if they will performe, and confent therevnto , His Excellent Maiestic promiseth to remit their offence , and to receive them under his The King as happy gouernment and authoritie, and refuseth, and by no meanes will alter or change their taith sense. and conscience, or places dedicated vnto God, or builded fordeuotion : neither will impose on them any other Religion, or alter their ancient Manners, or Customes, but will bestow on them tnem any other accogning on over their ancient organizers, or Customes, but with beflow on them privileges and offices: and that the Rights and Priviledges, which the Pelar, with the great Duchy of Liter doe enjoy, thall be conferred on them: and that they finall be equalled with the 30 Kingdome and great Duchy of Liter, &c. which illusticities and priviledges, in former times,

their Predecessors wanted. For this perswasson therefore of the honourable Lord Generall, which he had in charge from his Maiestie to make, they yeeld all thankes: but notwithstanding they propound, and plainly adde, that their oath shall be so, that his Maiesties sonne shall succeed in their government, with certaine additions, to wit, that they will have none other over them but onely his Maiefties fonne, and that the whole Land doth make it knowne, and propound their in gement and fen-tence, by way of denunciation, that by no meanes, but by offering his Maieffies fonne, these troubles of Molconia can be extinguished. Adding withall, that at that time, in the first troubles, when the honourable Lord Generall came into the Country of Mofconia , and required the

40 oath for the Kings Maiesties sonne : if his Maiestie had made any mention thereof, it is certaine, that the Commons and all the Nobilitie, would not have confented thereunto by any meanes, and that greater effusion of bloud had rifen thereupon : And that they had taken for their Prince Klutziniky, called the Wor, to whom all were not affembled, who also at that time had a great Klutziniky a power of men, as well of Poles, as Ruffes and Litomes. They therefore feeing the great discord was or Presenamong it the people, taking counfell, did freely choofe for their Lord and Emperour his Excel. der, schnowlent Maieflies sonne, vnto whom they had a great affection, and who had a long time before laven in their hearts : affuring themselves also, that by this election of his Maiesties sonne, many troubles and diffentions would be pacified, and so rejected the aforesaid Wor Klutzinsky: As alfo they received into their chiefe Citie the chiefe Generall. But, when it was heard that his Ex-

50 cellent Maieflie, would by no meanes give ynto them his fonne for their Lord, and to rule over them, they fell into such effusion of bloud and insurrections, As also the same time, the whole Country of Mocconia looked and expected nothing else then his Maiesties sonne. Calling to memorie, for their better aduice, that it was to be feared, least whilest his Maiestie came too late with his fonne, divers parts of the Land should choose vnto themselves several Lords. As to the Southward the Castles Stracken and others, to the King of Person; part of Pomerland and Si- Astronom. beria, to the Kings of Denmarke and England; Nouogrod, Plesco, Inamogrod, and others, to the Laplands King of Sweden and that the other Cities would choose to themselves other Lords separate from the reft. In the meane feafon, they defire his Excellent Maieffie, to make a speedy end of these warres, according to his Obligation and promife ratified by the oath of the honorable Lord Ge-

6c nerall, and the whole Armie : and that his Maiestie himselfe, with his sonne, would come into Molcouis. They request also, that his Excellent Maiestie would retayne with himselfe and his Sonne, Counfellors, and Me flengers of their Commonwealth, for the ordayning and concluding of perpetuall Conditions. They request also, that his Maiestie, in the name of his Sonne, would fend voto all the Inhabitants of the Townes, and write voto the feuerall Cities, fignifying his

The points of the Embassage of the Ruthan Messenger sent to his facred.

Primates.

The Wor.

Poland

Pramiflane.

B' what manner their naturall Lords ruled ouer them, they alleged, to wit, beginning from 10 Lord and Limpton Physical Engenese (i.e. Emperous of Low, such rate that I Lord and Limpton Physical Engeneses), in whom their Race craded.

This Bern Gedoman shipting with Phender Engenese, was created (by the ones force and power) Emperous or Lord: but after a little time, the pleature of God to working, being timed out of the Imperial Liest, departed this life thamefully, and by violent Leath, together with his Wife and Children.

Write and Children,

That Chriftophorus Orrophy the Roftrige, being of bale defects, ruder the Name which he did
bears of Emperour, otherwise Domeriy Ensequent, Lines as Orgetz, did fraudulently and by decist (wherewish he decisited the common people, and other that believed them) obtains the
Imperial Seate by force, without the confert of the Spiritualitie, and all the chiefe Bullops and as Gregorij Butro-Demetry Eus-Lords, and great men of the Kingdome, who durft not withfland the fame, dering the Commons to veeld thereunto.

Lord Palatin of How the excellent Lord Palatin of Syndomics, gage his daughter in marriage to the Roftrigo, and himselfe (many Gentlemen both of the Kingdomete Palatin great Ducky of Lines, co.

Vafili Eu**ano**-web Suir**iey.**

and himselfe (many Gentlemen both of the Kingdomess Polond, and great Duchy of Liero, accompanying him came into Mofemia.

Then, that Unit Enterwise Swing, with his brethern, and many others allocated to this attempt, and fifting by pother great men of the Land, did kill the Robing. with many Gentlemen of Polond, and the great Duchy of Lower, and put the red inpedience Calles. And himselfe
was made Emperour, although he were not elected by all the Sagtes. Whereupon many of our
for did not willingly acknowledge him Emperour, and many would not obey him:

How another named the Wor, this riv pat Losing, and caused himselfer to bee named Demoris, and to accounted. Whereof when many thoth Robins and Poles Jheard, they affembled vario
him, thinking him to be the true Downeys; and the Robins of much the more willingly draw
worth him. Decays of the mantherers.

Other Wers, or How others called Wers, did name and call themselves somes of the slaine Emperour, as luen, pretenders . 1. Peter, Pheoder, and by many and divers other names; and under the same names, did consume nan, Peter, the State, and thead much bloud. Pheeder.

How the Kings facred Maieflie, comming to Smolerike, lent his Meffengers the Lord of Pre-The King of miliane, and other noble men, who comming vnto the Campe, the forenamed Wore field away: but divers of the Refler came vnto his Maiestie. And taking counsell with the Beiseries, at that 40 The Lord of time remayning with Suckey in the chiefe Citie, we first our Mellengers to his Majeslie at that time, being at Smolenske, viz. Michael Salticene, and others, requesting that his Majeslie would

grant vs his Sonne to be our Lord. How they were dispatched away, and what answere they brought from his Maiestie , with conditions engroffed, and figned with his hand and feale.

The Articles are before

concitions engrosed, and ingress when his passes and the passes.

How that after the depoint of Sauker, the noble, Lond Generall of the Kingdome, comming into Mojessus, concluded all the faid businesses and traptice and traptice and confurned them with the oath of himselfe, and his fellow Souldien. And that they after that outh , likewife made their outh for the fame. Then, that for the greater defence of the faid principall Citie from the West, they fent Souldiers into the Citie, and fent also their Meffengers from the whole Countrie Fiderets, 50 Valle Galichin. the Metropolitan and Vafili Galichin, with others, vntothe Kings Maieffie, and required an oath in his Maietties behalfe, of all the feuerall Provinces,

How that his Maiesties Souldiers dwelled and behaued themselves in this capitall Citie of Moleo, before the troubles began, without injuring any man, punishing the enill according to

How the Boiarins handled other Gentlemen, and principall persons of the Ruffe Religion, although more inclined vnto them : but especially the Officers and Servants of the Wors, as also fuch as had fled ouer.

It followeth, how they often fent word vnto the Citie of Smolenike, and willed them to deliver up the Citie unto his Maiestie, to bee under his prosperous government and power. As for 60 the secret plots of their Messengers, Galechin and others, they faid, they were ignorant, as also of some vnknowne practifes, handled with the Wor called Halufin. But they faid, that they had written very often to the Citie of Smolensko, and commanded them to doe whatforuer flood with his Maiesties pleasure, and Liked him, without further effusion of bloud.

How

comming into their Dominions, and willing, that out of the feuerall Prouinces, all forts of men fend their Meffengers, to treate and conclude of the affaires of all forts of People, and of perpetuall tranquillitie. Promifing after the faid Charge and Letters to all people in generall. and notifying from their faid Lord, that (by Gods grace) there may bee throughout the whole Land of Moscosia, tranquillitie, peace, and securitie.

To conclude, they pray heartaly vnto the Lord God, to grant vnto his Maieslie in this busneffe begun, a prosperous and speedy end.

Thus haue wee feene diffolute refolutions, or refolute diffolutenesse, men onely conflant in inconstancy, resoluted vpon irresolution. As we often see sicke persons turning every way, and incontrancy, resource you memorial time longing for day, and in the day for night; such was now to the Ruffian ficknesse, they would and they would not, and yet would againe, and againe would not, they fearly knew what or why; fluctuating in an inward florme of diverlifyed hopes, feares, defires, distracted affections, no lesse then in that outward broile of State. For it was not long that they looked toward Poland, whether for breach of conditions of that part, or out of inueterate hate to the Pole, or their Nationall icalousie and diffrust of Strangers, or a naturall inconfrancy; they fell off from that Prince; and their Chancellor (Father to the now raigning Emperour) employed there with others in Embaffage) were detayned thereupon prifoners. It is also reported that they made secret ouertures to His Maiestie of Great Britaine, and that Sir Iobn Merick and Sir Willam Ruffel were therein employed : but the firong consulfions and sharpe agues and agonies of that State could not, or would not endure the lingring of such ag remote paticke; the wheele of Things being whirled about before such a Treatie might admit a pallage of Messengers to and fro. Once that Russian Head grew so heady and giddy, that Many-headd at laft it bred innumerable Heads, year the whole Body became Heads in the worst of tyran-body.

Many-headd and the property of the state of the stat ftroully multiplying two for each cut off) like this: for besides so many Wor's after the first and second Demetrins (which might make up that comparison) each limbe, nay almost each haire of this Hydra (not the Nobles alone, but the baleif which had nothing but themselves, and were nothing but Numbers) became so many prodigious Heads; they also like Pheraobs leane time denouring the fat, and upon light pretences beheading themselves in cutting off the heads and nobler Persons among it them.

When they had thus made away almost all the Grandes, and left the South parts to the spoile of the Poles, which once againe were drawing neere to Moses to besiege it; the Poles alio suffered some disafter, their Souldiers mutinying for want of pay, and banding themselves to returne into Poland, there inuaded the Mints and Custome-houses, and some governments, detayning them for their pay; fending also threatning Letters to divers Cities and Townes, forced divers Nobles and Plebeians to composition. The Turkes and Tariars brake likewise into Walachia, Moldana, and Polonia, fo that Zolkiewsky or Sulcosky the Generall was forced to go against them, of whom he made so great a slaughter, that the Great Torke committed the Polake Embaffadour at Conftantinople to Ward, and threatned the Poles with inuasion. These mytinous Souldiers continued meane while that and the next yeere to spoile Poland, doing much 40 damage to the King and the Bishops, challenging many millions due, as they faid, for pay. Yea they passed further into Prussia, and made sporte in every place, on the eight of November 1613. passing with a great prey to Thorn, being parted into three Bands, the Sapians, the Shorouians , and Smolenskians. Another companie of them terrified Silesia. The Tartars likewise made impression and committed great spoile in Podolia.

ruine of Rufsia.

Pezarsia cho-Treaturer.

Thus an Armie divided could not conquer, nor lo veterly exterminate Ruffia as otherwise opdence permits porcunity was offered : the Pole Souldiers being herem like angry Elephants which sometime recoyle vpon their owne troupes and doe more ipoyle then the enemy could either have effected or expected. But whiles the Inuaders were thus inuaded, the Ruffes were forward to worke those executions on themselues, which their enemies could have wished to them; till at laft awakened with the horrour of their owneeuils, some began to thinke of a better course. In the 50 Strange altera. North about the Dwina, a bold fellow, a Butcher, rayling at the Nobilities basenesse, and the tion of affaires Officers corruptions, said, if they would choose a good Treasurer and pay Souldiers well, they by a Bucher. might haue those which would fight and expell the Poles their Enemies : prouided, that they would first choose a worthy Generall, for which place he recommended to them a poore maymed Gentleman, called Powarsty, who had done good feruice, but being neglected, now had retyred himselfe not farre off. The multitude appround the Burchers counsell, and chose Powers-ky for their Leader, and that Burcher for a Treasurer, deliuering into his hands what money they had, which he so faithfully disbursed, Pozarsky also discharging so well the trust reposed, that a great Army was gathered, and the fiege of Mufco thereby rayfed. And joyning with Knes Demetry Mastroukswich (a kind of Tartar which commanded an Army of Costaks in fer- 60 uice of the Ruffe) they tell in confultation with Boris Liein, the third Great Souldier of that Countrey, vpon choice of an Emperour. Their mindes herein difagreeing (some naming one, fome another) fome named Maftronkrwich himtelfe, other for further securitie against the Poles,

and to recompense the fufferings and imprisonment of the Ruffian Chancellor in Poland, named and to recompense the fafferings and imprilionment of the Raylan Chancellor in Polana, named Micalamich his young Sonne Micalamich, under whose Empire (hauing a good Councell appointed) they Son to the mis young some Armies, This was first approved by the Coffake, and then by the other Armies, the Chancellor Burcher alio was taken to become a Counsellor, and those three Leaders aforesaid were made choica. Militarie Commanders for the present Emperour against the Poles. Embassadours also were sent to divers Princes to mediate betwixt them and the Fole, and betwixt them and the Sweden: and by his Mijellie of Great Brittaine (w.om God long preferue to reigne ouer vs) his counte-nance and incrrection, there hash been some agreement, and the young Emperour hash fetled has Dommions in peace, making at laft a truce for fourteene yeeres with the Polar, obtaying His Fathers 10 also in that Treatie his Father the Chancellour his libertie and returne out of Poland, who fince returne and is confecrated Patnarke of Ruffia.

His Embassadour to the Emperour came to Line in December 1613, and thence was conneigheu by the Emperours Officers to the Court, where hee had folemne audience, where after rich prefentsoi Furres and his Letters, he delivered his speech, that Michael Phedorowich was lange. now by vnanimous confent advanced to the Russian Empire, and willing to entertayne and coneinne the ancient confederacie betwixt both Empires : defiring the Imperiall Majeffie to dehort the Pole from his vinuit attempts, to deliver the Ruffe Captines, and not agains to infelt the recouered Musico, but to enter into prace, and abitayne from Christian bloudihed. Likewise to fend an Embaffadour to his Court, &c. This mediation Cafar promifed, and gaue the Embaffadour 20 liberall entertamment, and gentle dispatch.

Not long after in May 1614. the Ruffian Embaffadour had audience with the States of the United Provinces at Hages and before that in England. I was prefent both at his arrivall at Granefend, and his honourable entertaynment into London, and Lw him alio prefently after the running at Tilt at White-hall, the foure and twentieth of March, admitted to his Maieflies prefence, performing that Ruffian Rite of bowing with his face downe to or neere the ground, &c.

Anno 1615. The Turkish Embassador treated with the Cafarean Majestie about the mediation betweet the Pole and the Museomite, who employed to that purpose Erasmus Heidel and the Baron of Dobn. The Pole no: withitanding fent an Army in his Sonnes challenge (who was 30 Shortly to follow to Smolenske) into Musconia; Pontus Tellagard the Sweden Commander infefling allo the Ruffians at the same time. But the next yeere 1616. Sir John Merike Knight, negotiation.
a nan of great experience in those Northerne parts, was employed his Majesties Embassadour to Sir Dadso Dies. negotitte betwixt those two Great Princes, the Mosconite and the Sweden, the Articles of whose was also sent comp sition I obtayned by the mediation of Sir Thomas Smith (my ancient Benefactor in this Embassador in kind) and have here communicated to thee, but in another Chapiter as being now past our Tra- a troublesome kind) and have here communicated to thee, but in another Chapiter as being now part our fra-gicke Thunders: as also the following Ruffe-China Newes, that you may see not only the face of could not with Ruffis washed from her bloudy pollutions, but her hands further then ever extended (fortunate in fartie passe repetitions) from the bloudy pollutions of the treaty of Commerce) as far as China: likewise the Ruffe Patent to the English. Sweet is the name to Moseo for of Peace, and the thing it leffe a Heauen upon Earth. BLESSED ARE THE PEACEMA the enemis, in KERS (His Maieflies word elfe-where, here his deed) for they shall be called (said the only begot of Micalawich.

	ten Son) the Children of God; even the God of peace will make them his heires of Heaven, which
	(models of Deity) feeke to establish the peace of God vpon Earth. And let it not seeme tedious
Ċ	here to prefent these His Majesties Trauels, amongst our other Trauellers, but in a more glorious
	manner (I ker to God vommeable which moueth all things) who hath not only been our Sunne,
	and with lightfome heate and influence filled our Brittifb Hemisphere, but hath dispersed his
	bright rayes of Light, and warmed with tweet quickning beames of heat, those remoter frozen
	Chimates of Sweden and Ruffia, (not to mention, or but to mention the quarrels of Denmarke and
	Sweden) and after their long frostie Night (such is the nature, such was the state of those States)
	to reduce the faire day-light of Peace, the warmth whereof hath thawed the Icie hardned hearts
۵	of Enmity, and filled all things with tweets, and cheere of a returning Spring. Nalla falm belle,
	paceme te poscimuu omnes.
	patement pojement carriers

 			
		Ttt 3	Сна

CHAP. X.

A briefe Copie of the points of the Contracts betweene the Emperours Maiestie, and the Kings Maiestie of Sweden: at Stolbona the seuen and twentieth of Februarv. 1616.

plan King of

Chiasen of former quarter of the policy of t Norimis, and especially that all matters be set aside, forgotten, pacified, and renows. To nored and beloued Father, especially their high mighty Lord King Gustavus Adolphus of Sweden, his Kingly Maiesty and the (rowne of Sweden: As also both the Princes their Dominions, Lands, Ci. ties, and people, chance or hap of the Subjects, which happened or was done by robbery, harning, killing, or other enmittee what soener might bee, or by whom it was done, that all these griefes and troubles in all mat ters shall be set aside, and hereaster not be remenged or remembred of neither party, for ever and by this present strong conclusion of peace betwitt our great Lord Emperour and great Duke Michaelo 20 Pheoderowich of all Russa, Sam. and betwint their great mighte Lord, King Gustavus Adolphus of Sweden, Ge. and of other Dominions, Lands, Castles, aspell those of old, as those which by this conclusion of peace are given and recided up, and between all the Subjects and people to bee renewed, estabulped, confirmed and held unremoneable in the manner of a peace for ener and ever; and fore friend-fup perpetually: Alfo that the Emperours Maiest, and the Kmgr Maiest, shall define one another best in all matters, and neyther seeke a bester friend, but to deale faithfully and truly in all matters 2. Item, is ginen unto our great Lord Emperour and great Duke Michaelo Pheodorowich of all

Riffia, Sam. bis beires, Successors and bereafter comming great Lords, Emperors, and great Dukes of all Ruffia, and the Empire thereof, by their great Lord King Gustavus Adolphus of Sweden , for bim- 30 selfe, bis successors, and bereafter being Kings of Sweden, and for the whole Crowne of Sweden, doth deliner and cleere by the power of this conclusion of peace, these Castles of the Empire in Russia with the detimer and cuerte of the price taken in the fe greets, wantely, great Nouogrod, Stararouffe, Porcoue, grod, &c.retur-Lodiga, Odo, with their Territories, Somerskey, Volott, with the Villages belonging to the Emperors Honshold, to Metropolie, Monasteries, Gentlemens Lands, Inherstances, Farmes, with all their profits and renemnes according to former Borders and Limits, except those Castles which the Emperours Masse file dath yeeld by power of this Contract of peace, as hereafter more certainly shall be express.
3. Item, The Kings Maiestie of Sweden doth gine unto the Emperours Maiestie, with the afore-

Churches re-

their goods,

Great News

ned to the

faid Castles and Townes, all manner of Church ornaments which are in the Church of Sophia, The Sapience of God, and wishin all Churches and Monafteries in Nouogrod, and in other Cafiles and 40 Townes which the Kings Maiesty hath ginen to the Emperour's Maiesty without carrying any thing away. Alfo the Kings Maiefly doth gime the Metropolite and all the Spiritualtie, with all their goods, as also all manner of Russe people what calling some they be, which are in those Townes, Castles, and Territories, dwelling now or planting themselmes there with their Wines, Children, and all their goods what-Soener any bath. As also the Kings Maiesty shall give all manner of Writings and Bookes, which are in thole Castles and Townes to be found in Rosetades sudgement houses, or elsewhere with all Russe Ordtory Conflict and vote of word to the conflict and the Bells in the foreign described at sume crea-mance, Momities, and Promifien there belonging, and the Bells in the foreignd Caffles and Tomes, in Jack manner as they were the two wints of November left paff, according to agreement made with the Kings maß excellent Maieft, of Great Britaines Ambasfadour Sir John Merick, except these Bells which the people of Nouograd themselves did sell after that agreement, for the payment of Soulders, and 50 were carried away from Nouogrod, but those Bells which the Kings sernants and people did take perforce without busing, shall be in right manner fought out and brought backs agains to Nowogrod and re-flored there. Also which Bells the Kings Maiesties people bought at Nowycod, it hall bee free for the Nouogrod men to redeeme them backe againe at the same price they fold them for , and the Kings people

Libertis of

NOUSCIVE men to reteries term make a game as two jame price tool join terms of , and toe kings people bereafter had not boy son more file of the people of Nouogrod by no measure ment feeter.

4. Item, the Kings Muiesthes people of Sweden, at their departure out of the Emperours Maiesthes people of Sweden, at their departure out of the Emperours Maiesthes people of Sweden, at their departure out of the Emperours Maiesthes people of Sweden, at their departure out of the Emperours Maiesthes and Towns after fact, namely, great Nouogrod, Stataroule, Porcoue, Lodaza, Somersko, Voloico, &c. shall we no violence to the Emperors Maiesties people by burning, robbing, or killing, neyther earry any Ruffe people with them to the Kings Maiesties fide, neither men, nor women, nor children, nor any of their goods : and if any goods remajne of the Swethish people, at their going out of the aforeful 60 Towne, which at that time they cannot take all with them, such goods shall be kept in safetie by those with whom they are left, till such time as every one of them shall come thither for his evene goods, or send some bodie for them, and these people shall have free libertie to goe without all molestation or let, to come for their goods, and to returne againe at their owns conuenious time. 5. Item;

s. Irem, the Kings Maiesties Gonernours and Officers hall deliner onto the Emperous Maiefier Voyavodes and Commanders the abone named Towner and Caftles, to fay great Novogrod, Staratotte, rotton, Maiefties grent Ambaffadour Sir Iohn Merike Knight, Ge, or the faid Knigs 12mcs ang, o the month of the about fard great Ambassadour shall fend to that end clensing and Time of dellgining over the faid Castles and Townes, two weeker after this contract is confirmed betweene visboth, uctie,

great Commissioners by Writings, Hand, Scale, and Kissing of the Crosse of our side, and on their part.

by outh upon the holy Enangelists.

6. And after that the Cafile of Lodigs and Territories, shall bee delimered to the Emperours Ma 10 ieffiet Meffenger t by the Kings Maiefies Genernour, three weekes after the confirmation of this conreft. in presence of the abonesaid great Lords, lames King, &c. bis Gentlemen, which to that purpose the orest Ambassadon shall send, then the said Castle and Pronince to be redeemed and ginen up, with all the Ruffe Ordinance, people thereto belonging, none to be carried away, nor no violence to bee offered them by robbing, or otherwise sporting of them; nor no Rulle Ordnance to bee carried anon. But the Caffe of Odow, and Promise, and people is to remayne on the Kings Maieiff Guitavus Adolphus of Odow orth-Sweden, for a time, till this contract of peace be confirmed by but the Potentates, by their Writings, by mayne cantide the Emperours Maiesty with the Seale of the Empire , and by the Kings Masestyes hand and Seale of naty. tor comperious excessly onto one crame of the compert, some by the Kingdome of Sweden, as also by the Emperious Maighter kifting of the Croffe, and the Kingdome of Sweden, as also by the Emperious Maighter Cath you the both Emargelity confirmed, and the borders divided and medium of mility, and the Ambelff adam which both the Princes fail finds to that off all bearing been with both the Princes to the Compensation of the C

hall returne agains to the borders, having well concluded the busines, in then two weeks after that time the Emperors Maiesties Voyauodes and Commanders, which his Maiestie shall fend for the receiving of the faid Caffle and Pronince of Odow from Vlasquosball receive the faid from the Kings Maiesties Gonernours, with all the Rulle people and Ordannee with all their goods, and what they have, and as long at the Caffle of Odow is on the Kings Maieflies side, all the people of Odow and the Province thereof the capite of the Kings Miserty their former Corne , and doe fervice as before for the mayntagning of those Souldiers that remayne there, the Kings Masefines people in the means time shall do to those people of Odow no triolence nor robberg neyther carry any Ruffe people, or Ordnance from thence, wer canse any to be conneighed away.

7. Item the Kings Maiestie G.A. &c. best betined bisther Prince Charles Phillip, Prince heredit arie charles Phillip of S. dre fall bereafter lay no claime or challenge to the fe Castles, and Townes, namely great Novogtod, Prince of Sint Porcoue, Stararoule, Somerskey, Voloft, Odow, Ladogo, and infebeir confines, borders and Pronin- den not to lay cet : nor come upon them mith no manner of Warre, to Jose to atialine them : nor remember any more clayme, that oath which formerly the people of those places made to the Prince C. Ph. Also the Kings Maieflie

G.A. find promife not to gine any aide of men or money to bis about faid Brother C.Ph. against the afore-

(aid Castles and Townes in no wife. 8. And against or in liew of the abone faid our great Lord Emperor, and great D.M. F. of all Russia. b. exact a gain for in tien of the above fact with a first factor of the fact of the fa grod, from hunfelfe and the whole Empire of Rustia, effectally in respect of lone and friendforp, thefe Ca- places week

good, from tomicity and the whole Lempter of Audia, operating in reyror by mon many tempiophysis C. P. Places yeels, for your dand following whoshe hereofore dual dangem to the Dominisms of Nouvogrody, a manny d. day the Euanogrod Vann. Coppores, Oricicke, with all voteshem adopting. Thous, Louds, and Frontiers, historistic with all Tomns, and Villages in the Construy to them belonging; did not wors been according to their the Sweden former, intl., and american borders, with the people that direct, and place themselves, with all other profits, reuenewers, and paiments, with the shoares of Riners, with Laker, nothing exempted, the Emperours Maiestie hath yeelded, and gimen to their Kings Maiestie, G.A. of Sweden ore. as proper and rans: Unauxine many resease, any genera inter knys; praestre, U.A. of Sweete of knyspeer and
event to brand bis Maiefles facetifiers, and breafter bring Kings of Sweeten, and to the Crowned Sweeten for an extracting propertie for them to bold, without cashination or any contradiction, by
the Emperous: Mactifie, or bis Maiefles Saccessons whereafter bring Emperours, and great Dukes

The U.S. of the U of all Rullis, as also by the whole Empire of Rullia , and from the Dominion of Nouverted, for everlasting times, in all points, as former great Lords, and great Dukes of all Rustin, beld and keps the fame : namely the late, of bleffed memory, oreat Lord Emperour, and great Date Evan Valiliwich, of all Ruffia, Sam, and the great Lord Emperour, and great Duke, Pheodor Eumowich of all Ruifia, Sam. and she spiritually, as Monkes, and all others in those Castles and Townes, as well Gentlemen, as other inbabitants of the faid places, two weekes after the conclusion of this contract, when it hall be renealed unto them, they hall have free libertie, all such as defire to goe to the Emperiors Maiesties side, with their wines, children, families, all goods and chattels, which way focuer they will into the Emperours Maiether Lands and Townes. And that all Ruffe people, in the faid Castles, Ports, and Townes, might know 60 the same: it is here agreed and concluded that as some as the conclusion of this peace shall be effected and

confirmed between vs both, the great Potentates great Commissioners shall fend their Tosts and Messen-gers into all the aforenamed Townes and Castles, which they in presence of the Lord King Izmes his great Ambassadours, Messengers, shall openly remeate and proclaims, that all spiritualty, with their goods, Courtiers, Gentlimen, Burgeffer, and Townefmen, which are defirous to goe from thence within

Money to be giuen to the Smeden.

from thence, in the fore faid two weekes. 9. As also from the Emperours Maiestie, great Lord and great Duke M. F. of all Russia, Sam. Go. the Kings Maisfre, Go. (hallbane 2000, rubbles, in ready good current vinchangeable Silner dernings, and those momes immediately as sounce as this contract of peace shall be concluded and confirmed betweene vs Iball be ginen to the Kings Maiefire of Sweden great Commissioners. by the great Embassa donr of the Kings most excellent Masestie of great Brittaine bis great Ambasadour Sir Iohn Merricke, Knight.

Ordnance and remaine.

inc., a nym. 10. And as for the Russe Ordnance in these Castles which shall be given to our Lord Emperour and great Duke & c. from be Kings Maieste G. A. & c. which Ordnance shall remaine there, shall be given to bis Maielties Officers, and what munition of Artillerie, as proussion for Warres, and Bels, and olber to our orangest Office, matters, which there is the Land of Rulla out of those Casiles, before the 20 matters, which the Kings Matesties great Commissioners, and the great Lord King lames &c, great Ambassadour Sir Ioan Metricke, Knight, did erest, as the twentieth of Nouember, such Ordnance and promissions shall remaine to the Kings Maiesties wse, and Crowns of Sweden, wishout all contradiction

11. And because the late great Lord Emperour, and great Duke Vasilly Euanowich of all Russia. Sam. did gine and confirme by writings, unto their high, mighty, late Lord, King Chatles the ninth of The court of Veter Coeffin Sec. and to the Crowne of Sweden the Castle Corela, and the Promine thereof, for that faithfull and and the Terri. good willing aide which was done with bim, against the Polith people: in like manner dails confirme. totics, confir and establish the same by this contract of our great Lord Emperour, and great Duke M.F. &c. the same med to Swidin reelding and donation of the great Lord Zarg, and great Date Valily Euanowich, &c. for himselfe, 30 feliang and aumanon of the great come scales are greated by the property and present of the whole empire, and bereafty being Emperors, and great Deket of all Russia, and for the whole empire of all Russia, that the faul Callega, Corella, with all profess researces, and rents, by Lund and piecy an Activity, vom so Jam Caping provincing mounts properly interested, and tents, by Lana and by Water, according to their fromer augment, and now being bonderers, nothing exempted in all, accordingly as it was by former Emperater, and great Duketegfull Rustin, as they possife the delds of hereafter it shall remaine to their Kings Muselite, GoA.of Score, and to bus Manshes Successions, and bereafter following Kings of Sweden, and the Crown of Sweden, without all cassillation or contradiction for enertasting times.

ners o both fides to meet;

12. And that bereafter there be no more difficulty or variance concerning the borderers of the Land, it is concluded and agreed upon, that in this yeare 7124, upon the first of Inne, our great Lord Emperour, and great Duke M.F. &c. and their bigh, mighty King G. A. &c, shall fend on both sides, speciall good Courtiers, and Notaries, to meete between Lodiga and Orcicke, at the mouth of the River Lava whence it doth fall into the Lake of Lodiga, fothat they shall meete upon the faid River, on the midf of the Bridge, which of both fides their people fall make upon that Ritter, and when there the one fhall hand showed the other their ample Commissions, and shall appeare that they are worthy to measure out the bordersthereby, betweene the Emperours Maiefile, and the Kings Maiefiles Lands: fo that from the borders of Nouograd, Lodiga, and Odow, with their Prominces, and also from Somerskey, Volott, be desided from the annesent and former precinits, and borders of Oreleeke, Copora, Yam and Europe gorod, in suff manner as it ought to be, at the Jame time next enfang the first day of lane, then the faid Courtiers and Notaries, through presence in the faid manner on both sides, shall meete together open the borders of Nouogrod, betweene the Province of Olimets and Corela at Salomensky Towne, by the Lake of Lodigs,; which Courtiers also fall view the same Pronunces according to the former borders. and as the former are express, how they have bin, and confirme the same, and if they so chance, that they cannot bappen upon the former auscient bordars, then Shall they, by just inquisition, make new borders and Land-marker, in such manner, that hereafter there be no further controversic concerning those borders, and those Courtiers or Gentlemen shall not part asunder of neither side, till they have sufficiently and friendly ended that businesse in all manner, and what those Coursiers shall finish and effect in this manner. the same according as befitteth there shall expresse by writing upon parchment on both sides, and confirme the same by their subscription, Seales, killing of the Crosse, and oath interchangeable; and as concerning the desiding of borders, and the Gentlemen shall doe it; as namely of Novogrod, Lodigs, Odo, Somer key, Voloft, of one part, and also betweene Orefeke, Copora, Yam, and Euanogorod, on the other side, and also betweene the borders of Nouogrod and Corela, Shall be set downe and aritten, the 50 fame shall be wremouseable and fast for ever lasting times, by our great Lord Emperour, and great Dike Michall Fedorowich of all Russiacoc, and ebe Konge Maussiac Gultanus Adolphus, Sec. and ibser successioners, and bereafter being an both fides, for enertafting times, according to this contract of an enerCHAP. 10. Contract betwixt Michalowich E.R. and G. A. King of Sweden. 795

lasting peace: and for more sirme consirmation of the same, that it shall be held and kept : it shall be delaying further in the Letters of contract, which shall be bereafter given betweene both Princes. from the Emperours Maiestie, by hissing the Crosse, and confirmation of bu faid Letters by his great Scale. and by the Kings Maiesties oath upon the bely Enangelists.

12. As also the former, of bleffed and most famous memory, great Lord Emperour, and creat Duke Fedor Eugnowich of all Rullia, Sam. our great Lord Emperour, and great Duke Michail Fedorowich, of all Russia, Sam, oc. Vnckle meonclusion of peace made at Tavim, in the yeare 7102. did veelde and gine oner all bie pretention and claime to the Countrey of Leifland, at alfo the great Lord yeene smay be and groat Dute Vassiy Eunowich, of all Russia, Sam. in a conclusion of peace made at Emperour, and groat Dute Vassiy Eunowich of all Russia, Sam. in a conclusion of peace made at to Wyburgh, in the years 71 17, did renounce the same; so it is now here concluded and agreed, that our The title of

oreat Lord Emperour, and great Duke M.F. &c. and bis successours, and bereafter being Emperours Leisland telisand orest Dukes, shall at no time for ever challenge unto themselves any right, or pretence to the Countine for ever challenge unto themselves any right, or pretence to the Countine for ever challenge unto themselves any right, or pretence to the Countine for ever challenge unto themselves any right, or pretence to the Countine for ever challenge unto themselves any right, or pretence to the Countine for ever challenge unto themselves any right, or pretence to the Countine for ever challenge unto themselves. tres of Leifland; neither fall our great Lord Emperour and great Dake Mi.F. of all Ruffia, Sam. morbie "Dings, and rrey of Lemanu; neuner fone wer great Low a Emperame was great Long rute ey an Allens, Januar bette facelfourt, great Lords, Emperours, and great Dukes of all Rollis Jovensfor white voine their great Lords, 7:173,000 coal Roy Gillus Mallophus, no he facesform bereafter being Konge of Sweden, wer to the Oremon of timed.

Sweden, with the title of Leifland, or those Califor which the Emperours Maiefite bath new renewal sed to the Kings Maieflie for ener, neither by Lesters of confirmation to write themselves, or name themselves to them, nor suffer his Uoyanodes, Servants and Commenders, to write themselaes with the stille of Lestand, or the Townes aforesaid, neither in writing wee speeches, to name themselves. As also our great Lord Emperour, and great Dite M. F. of all Ruffia, Sam. bis successions; and bereafter being great Lord Emperour, and great Duke of all Rusha, in their writings and speeches ; Shall gime to their

Kings Matefie, and bereafter being Kings of Sweden, their accustomed title of Leitland, and Corella. Item, on both sides, the great Commissioners have agreed, since at this Treatie we could not accord upon the full title of both the great Potentates , As to intitle the Empereurs Muiefte, and of many other Dominion: Lard and Conquerour, and the Kings Maieftie, mab the title of Ingermanland, wee bane of both fides great Commissioners, referred the same to both great Potentates liking therein; and if that either Potentate will be pleased to write the other with the full title, as to the Emperours Maiestie , the Title to be Kings Maiefite doth write the full title with the word Longuezon; and that the Emperant Maiefite guen.
alfo doe write to the Kings Maiefite bus full title with Ingermanland, then both the Potentates are to

ge fend thofe sules by their Ambaffadours, and nominate the fame full sitle in one of their Letters of confirmation, and the other, Letter to be written according to this our present agreement : and if in both the Letters, the titles be written to the full at the Emperours Maiefties full sitle, with Conquerour, and the Kings Maieste with Ingermanland, then both fides Ambaffadours Shall (hem one the other the faid Let-Amps conserve who insert them, fall yet to each Prince with the fame; if there are inter fall the Perentials follows the theory and having flowers them, fall yet to each Prince with the fame; if there are inter fall the Perentials follows the theory, and fall find the fail Letter of confirmation with the flows that, according to the one prefers agreement: the Ambassadours of both sides shall in lake manner make known to fame one to

the other, and fo proceede therewith to both Potentates. 14. Alfo it is agreed and concluded, that there fall be free commerce of Trade betweene both the great Kingdomes, the Empire of Russia, and the Kingdome of Sweethen, and both Kingdomes Subjects: Trade,

Sam. Merchants of the Dominions of Ruisia, from Nouogrod, Plesco, and other Cities and Townes, paying their due cuftome, Shall baue free liberty without let to traffiche at Stockholme, Wiburgh, Reuell, Narue, and other Townes in the Countries of Swethland, Fynland, and Leifland, and they that dwell and plant themselves at Iuangrod, Yam, Copora, Nettingburgh, and Coreilla, what Nation foeuer, either Ruffe or other people, shall have free liberty mithout let to trafficke, and to trade, paying their due custome, in the right Custome houses, at Molco, Nouogrod, Plesco, Lodiga, and other Townes of Rulsia, with the Emperours Maiesties subjects, and also have libertie to travell through the Dominions of our great Lord Emperor, and great Duke M.F. Oc. for their trade of Merchandize within the 15. And by reason heretofore our great Lord Emperour and great Duke Michall Phedorowich, of

50 all Russia, & c. bis Maiefties subietts Merchants, had their free bouse of merchandize at Reuell, also now by contrail of Taulin and Wiburgh, it is concluded they flowed have a good place for a bowle, ap. Merchants of pointed them in Rettell, at all 6 in other the Kings Maiesties Townes, as at Stockholme, and Wyburgh, to both Kings ome and the stockholme, and Wyburgh, to be stockholme, and which we should be stocked the stockholme, and which we sho they shall have house and Dinine Service, according to their Religion, in the faid bouses, without let or and Churches binderance, but at Reuell in their Church, as formerly they have done; yet to fet up no Church, accor- in each others ding to their Religion. And as heretofore their Kings Masesties bis Subjects, base had a free house of Countries trade at Nouogrod, now also according to the contract of Tautina, and Wyburgh, they are to have a goodplace for a boufe, prepared them at Nouogrod, and the Empresur Maufius other Citier, at Motico and Plelco, boufe for the faid pumpic, and of their Dissue Service according to their Religion, in the boufe; but to build no Charches for that of e any where.

For breutie, I have omitted the following Articles to the 29.the lubstance whereof is as followeth. The 16. determineth what debts shall be recoverable. The 17. Free paffage of Subie &s thorow each others Territories. 18. Freedome of Prisoners, on both fides, 19. Liberty of Inhabitants to flay in the places surrendred. 20. Fugitiues to be redeliuered. 21. Borderers

to be restrained from robberies. 22. For ending of quarrels, if any happen. 23. 24. Confir. mation of former contracts, of Tanfina and Wiburge. 25. No prinate or publike practife to be made against each other. 26. Shewing of Letters of confirmation at the meeting of Ambassa. dours of both fides. 27. Honorable conucy for Ambassadours on either part. 28. And also for

29. Item, it is agreed and concluded, that if by the permission and pleasure of God, there happen an New Ambolia Alteration of government in Sweden or Rullia, then that Prince which hall newly tome to bis govern-New Ambula-docs in case of ment first, shall reneale by his Ambasador to the other Prince from himselfe, and after that the other new successors. Shall vife bim by his Ambajj adour.

An copy come of the Salvanian and something of both fides the Princes, as our great Lord, Go. O their great la 30. Item, if is fo fations as any important of outo pare use e rince; as our great Lora, Ore. Or incir great
Lord King Guitavas Adolphus fall feed one to the other their great; Ambaffadours, to confer of good torn king suttains accompany ambifindours open the borders ball meet without all controuers or so Place of Am either hetweeve Odowr and Eurogotod for betweene Lodiga and Orelcke, where they shall chinke mili Piece A Am enther between Odowrone Lumgowov or reverse Louige and Actica, water sug jout somke mile balldous mee-fitting for them an both fide: in the madf of the daulish of the borders, and there is conferre of this good masters in friendly and louing fore, epiber by the Princes Commission or other commandement, as

of productions.

31. Item, If it happenshus the Emperours Maiestes Subjetts and Merchants, their Boates, Lo-31. Action, 17 Agents shall go so Revell, Wybourgh, or other Townes and Cassiles of Swethen, Eynland or Liefland, or forps and other Deffels, whereupon the Emperours Maiesties Ambuffedows Fynlander Lienand er jong and over Ceijes; moerenpon soe Emperons exacesties exmensions and Melfengers faul be going to the Emperons Maiestie, to the Pope, into England, or any other King, 18

and Adefigency is the gening to the Emperors Naturities to the Pope, sate England, or any other King, It done, by the Kingdome of Swetchen, or encoming backe agains beered away and brought to the Swetchild Nature of the Sw Merchanis Vessels with Commodities, or other wise be cast away and brought to the Emperors Muesties Thours upon the Ladigo or Pleico Lake, then these people shall have free therety to goe away with all their goods which they can fame or get to be famed without let or binder ance, and the Emperors Maieffus scople

goods much uniform jour or get to me journal and the second of the secon Neither party Poland and Lettow, nor his Soune Ladislaus and the Crowne of Poland, and the Dukedome of Lettow, nor all the Dominious of Poland and Lettow, nor hall helpe him with men or treasine, nor flend tow, nor, 44 to Dominuoz of Poulina and Dellow, nor journey one miss men or reasine, nor jiand for him as one himselfe; nor any other Principle him had not practife or feek any thing against the King of Sweeden, Those Lands and Casiles which belongeth to the Kingdome of Sweeden of old, or those which now the Emperours Maiefty hath yeelded to the Kings Maiefty by this conclusion of peace, be shall not seeke to get them under him, or have possession of them. In like manner the Kings Maiest of Sweden fall not fland against the Emperous Maiefly &c. so assist the King of Poland and Lettow, and all the Dominions of Poland and Lettow, neyther with men nor treasure, and not to be with him as one, Neyther shall the Kings Maiety by himselfe or other Printes and Governours seeke any practise against the 40 Emperoure, Maichie and bus Land; and Castles which belong to the Emperour of Russia, bee shall by no Emper borness aurers and the source and a source course or the super me y thomas, over you by no means; force to get under how per fights the force. It is also greated and conclude between very that their Ambalfadours which the Emperous Mainly hall find to the Kings (Mainly, and the Kings Ambalfadours which the Emperous Mainly hall find to the Kings (Mainly, and the Kings Ambalfadours) to the Emperour: Maiesty for the confirmation of this conclusion of peace, Shall have full authority to confere between the Emperory Maighty and the Marge Maielty of Swetchind for a winin and irjust affifance og airst Sigtimond King of Poland, and the Crown of Poland, and the great Dukedown of Lettow in facto manner at shall be thought st and requisite by both the Princes. Lettow in free manner as found or from our firm affirmed, that all this here bath his concluded, and agreed on Confirmation, betweene visite about faid Emperiors (Maisfire, and Kings Maisfire) great, ample, and powerful

personer vision acoust and emperous community of the person visions great, ample, and powerful of Mindfaladors, by the mediation and intercelling rests of the person of the person of king the limit bit Mindful great of Ambalfadors, in the prefence, this conclusion is made, challefued, and further, and further affall by our great Lord, and great Duke M.F. of all Russia, Sam. and by his successours, and bereafter being great Lords, Lord, and great Ding out. of an Aussia, sum among our pacetymes, and occasive veing great Loru, Emperones, and great Dinkes, be kept faithfully firmety, and unmoneable, and shall be followed in all paints, and sinified without all fallowed or decept: and one great Lord; Emperones, and great Dinkes, Oc. by his commandment, wee his great Commissioners, Ocholuech and Namestincke of Sulvall Names of the Knefe Dannyll Euanowich Mezetskey. I the Emperours Maiesties Dwarenni and Namestinske Comissoners of Shatskey Olexsey Euanowich Zuzen. Ithe Emperours Maiesties Duke, Michcola, Micketein Nouokleno. I the Emperour: Maiefies Duke, Dobrenia Semenou, haue confirmed this contenn Pouvastenn. Leve Emperor.

Levelin of Space, with bekeffing of the fruite, and thereasts fit on board, and Scale: A field the Kingi.

Maisties of great Brittaines great Ambalfadom, Sir John Merticke Knyth, Continuous of the Mate. Materizet of great Britaines great Amonguator. At 10011 particles, any oi, Unitemor of out Ma-siglies prince Chamber, for the some sintelling of the fame, that this is also concluded here between vis, but firmed with his owne hand and Scale, both these obligations, and a construction, which were the Emperours Masesties ample Ambassadours, hane given to the Kings Masesties great Commissioners; and against that we have taken the like writing of confirmation, from the Kings Mauftes great Ambaffadeurs. Written at Scalbo, in the yeare from the creation of the World 72 \$ 5. the feater intatories neth day of February.

Auing here presented the fruits of his Maiethies mediation herwist the Majorese and Sequented des: I thought good affe to adde this other testimonic of Best Paristic, in the peaceable retures of his endeapours between the faid King of Sweden, and the King of Domestic allowing warres between them, in which the English volumentes were to great a part: of whom (if I warres Detwick Chem., in restorting any par rounding were to great a part: of whose (if I mithke my) four thousand for that right honorable the Lood strikeniels. The Articles of agreement between them are their far, concluded January 16. 1613, translated out of the Darie Copie, Printed at ("speakages fifth; and after at Elembargts 1).

I. That the King of Sweden fall have agains the Cities Calmar, with all that ha longeth unto it, excepting Artikery, which hall be reffered to the King of Denmanke, or

tobe fold for bis profit. 3. That the King of Denmarke hall have Elsborch and Orland, with all the forces and frength of Arenshorch, is paper for the passe furthe seers enfaine, for the law of freuent on of Gold, the which famos many the King of Sweden field paramee the King of Denmark mithinthe forefaid twelve geares, at certaine times, in confideration of to his charges during the faid warres.

3. That the Nanigation and passets by Seas and Land to Norway shall be wied free without am hinderance of thofe of Sweden.

4. That Lapland hall be free without giving of any contribution.
5. That the King of Degmarke hallhome Grone land free without paying of any con-

tribution vate the King of Sweden.

6. That the King of Denmarke flogi have the three Crompte mit hout any going for ing contradiction of the King of Sweeker (which was the first and principall canfe of these afore fald blondy and unneighbour tymarres , and continual irruptions.) Both Kings fub-30 scribing hereto.

. The property of the Company and Proceedings CHAPY MI

A relation of two Ruffe Collacks transites, but of Siborial to Carry, and other Countries adjusting thereinto, Alfo a Copic of the taft & seen from the Mulcouite, A Copic of a Letter written to the Emperour from bis Governeurs out of Siberia.

O our Lord Emperour and great Duke Michaele Federwick of all Ressles, your Mainstitute Vasials, Cases Karratin and Eases Asperaities, des toocks their heads, &cc.
Lord this prefent 7127, veres(or 1615) by wire ying your Maighiety. A Cornel Ambashadors or Tebules, Chemen Obselves, that there were come to Tebules Ambassadors or from care and
of the Dominions of Cates, and from the King of Adiese, with the people of 72tion to the Dominions of Lord Market Management. And with them cogether do go frapes, 197, as
to you great Lord Ambassadours, out of the Dominions of Lord Market Management. The Michael Chep from Startine Chep from Startine Chep from Startine Chep from StarStar Chement Chep from StarStar Chement Chep from StarStar Chement Chement

gis with prefents, the which we dispatche to your Maichie, with Burnale Nitemane, the fixt of luly, and before them wee dispatche to your Maichie English Petilin and Pany Kieall, by whom 50 we font voto your Maieftie a Letter from Tamber, King of Cather and a Copie of the King Alismes Letter translated, with a Card and description of the places, which way English Polin, & An- Rose she to drughte Madigene, passed from the Cassile of Toman, into the Dominions of Cass, as also in what residence the other Dominions they were. The Letter it selfe which came from Aline Cher, Labethers ben doth carrie to your Maieflie; but as for the Letter out of Catay, there is none in Toboliko to translate it.

The Conie of the Altine Chars, or golden Kings Letter to the Emperour of Ruffia.

O the Lord Emperour and great Duke; The golden King received your Letter. In former times (Lord) it came to my hearing, that your Princely good Ambaffadours, did feeke a way or passage to come to me, fince which time it is now thirteeneyeeres, but then the peo-

Fafterne Terter Nations.

Russian Pre-

ale whith iros, Tubiner, Marina, & blick Nolmake did not fuffer your Princely good Antha fladors. to come to me, but did rob and spoile them. Now since ten of your Maieffies people are come to me, and I haue fent to you Ichemen Kichenga, to do obeylance vnto your Maiesty, and see your Princely eyes, which your Majellie wouch ated to Mortheir obeyfainer and fee your Princely eves... And so me you felt it your Grace there Cups of Since ; a Bow, a Sword, two Confect would make the retreate he Amballadours doo halfe beed echoics who male tably, and poore, by ha for shele are rious fout final! warred between variet stand the blacke Kristate J. and blacke are but Imathintenth Tobalta Gaffle, and in sim Caffle and Amin, Date, Indifferent Empanyeone. Now if so be your Majestic will favour me, and defend me with these people from Karakus and of well the planted so promise for warn boshour owne sint want I sometime, that market will be will the placeds to present our warre no your consumer a non-nonming, that there will be considerable to use all algorithms the street was and a look on your Princels factory. Ambifiation may continually path between vs. Inset Turben Farchite and deep considerable to your year Mastites Princels (aggreen into the Domination of the Consumer of your Majetties and the princels of the street of the spillifeton of Consumer of the Consumer of the spillifeton of Consumer of the Consumer of the spillifeton of the consumer of the spillifeton of the spillifeton of the consumer of the spillifeton of the spi Tarchan of Latheir Letter is written that there is lette vitto your Majoritie three Leopards with their clawes. an Irbish with his clawes, three Lizernes with their clawes, azed and yellow Damaske you agold ground, a precent, Veluer, and an ambling Blorfe. And I am humbly to request your to Mightte, if it becyour Majesties favour to grace mee for your owns honour with a arment of Majette, it it one your majetters among to gaze user you your mumus with a garment of cloth of Gold, and of disergepours, for Garments of fine Chotha bindepiece, a flur of Male, a Syverd, a Bow, twentin Gunnes, a Flaggin of Gold, a Rettle of Suber, and two forts of Precious Stones, a cachione, a Termer, a Dwarfe, and Workmen to fully Guns and Powder, and two thousand pence. Your Maietties name is growne renowmed and thindus every where, therefore Edoc relatings when your Majettie, beautife when you links of the hours Country very land freedable and

Sirgos. Three Leo-

a Profess.

pards, &c. for

His requefts,

See for better

the fine effect Majating han central setter . And I respect that Antalidour may speedily reflected the entrance and control of the control of baffadours with speed to me backeagaine. Anno 7128, the three and twentieth of September in the Emperours Dominions at Soldins, 2 Cazacke of Siberia, called English Persian, did report, beeing examined of his Trauels. The uellers of their Voyage to Ca- last yeere past 7127, hee said that the Boisven and Voyaned Knez Euan Simonowich Koorockin. fent him from the Caftle of Tomo, and ba followe Andre De, to conduct the Kings Alimes Anbaffadours, as also to inquire or fearch the Kingdomes of Catay. They went from the Caffle of Toma near balladours, as allo to inquire or learch the Kingdomes or Cates. They went from the Callleet Child beyond 0. See 19.24 and 19.25 and transled letter 2 are 2 Angle. But much expectigious cenne ob. See 19.24 and 19.25 them thence is they passed intoght his Eddl find Welley by the Collins of Starrangery, where are regarded and the Collins of t very few at drice. Thus their whole trained from Tome Caffle to this gate, was tweltie weeker belides forme dayes that they flood fill, and from the gate to the great Empire of Catal tenne 90 dayes, and came to the Citie or Caffile of Cats, about the beginning of September, and were lodged in the great Embaffadors houfe : and having beene there in Catay Foure daves, there vied to come vnto them a Steretary with two hundred men vpon Affes very well apparelled, and did entertayne and feast them with Sacke and other Drinkes made of Grapes, and told them that the Emperour, or King Tambur had fent him to aske them wherefore they were come into the Dominions of Catay. Whereupon they answered that our great Lord and Emperour had fent them to discouer the Dominions of Catay, and see the King thereof; but hee answered them againe, that without prefents they could not lee the King, and withalf gate them a Letter, which Letter they brought with them to Talborke , and from thence is fent to the Emperours Maiestie by them. Out of Catay they went about the twelfth of October, and came to the Castle 60

of Tabolike about Whitfontyde the fame yeere 1619.

v 201571

THE YEAR OF THE WE

A Description of the Empires of Catay and Labin, and other Domimions alwell inhabited, as places of Pasture * called Vlusses and Hords, and of the great River Ob . And other Rivers and Land pallages.

Rom Kness to the River Bakanna is fixe dayes travell, and from Bakanna to Kinchike, is nine with their I dayes trauell, from Kinchike to the great Lake, (in which Lake Rubies or Saphires grow) beafts. is three dayes trauell, and the compasse of that Lake is twelve dayes trauell on horsebacke, There Their Journal, IO falleth also into the faid Lake foure Rivers, to wit from the East, South, West and North, yet the or daily jourfallethallo into the faid Lake rouse Kiners, to wit from the East, South, west and Ameri, yet the neyes from water doth not increase in the Lake, nor decrease. There falleth yet another Riner into the faid place to place Lake, which commeth from betweene the East and the North, and is called Kitta, ypon which Huge Lake, we went fifteen dayes to the head of it, where we found the King Altine in progreffe; the way is very stony. And from the King Aline to an Vluffes fine dayes travell; the Vluffes is called King Aline. Algunas, and the Duke in it is called Tormofine; from him to another Uluffer fine dayes, the V- Vieffer, or Tarluffer is called Chikursha, and the Duke in it is called Carakula; from thence to an Vluffer five dayes called Sulduffa, wherein is a King called Chaksara, from him to an Vinffe called Bifue, fine dayes, the Dukes name is Chichine; from him to an Vluffer called Iglethin, fine dayes, the Duke is Talebils Cherekta, from him to an Vluffes called Beshuta, fine dayes, the Duke is called Cherker.

20 from him to an Vinfes called Girnt, foure daies without water, the Duke is called Chickenge, From him to an Vinfes called If the fine dayes, the Duke of it is called Checken. From him to at Vinfes cilled Tulent Vnient foure dayes, the Duke is called Tayku, Kaim. From him to the Vinfles Toper fin three dayes, there is a King called Bak buta. From thence to an Viules of the vellow Mu. Yellow Mugali, galls called Mugolebin, wherein is a Dutcheffe called Manebika, with her Sonne Ouebai Taichie, it is within two dayes journey of the Land of Mugalla, a very dangerous passage through Mugalla, or the cliffes of the Rockes , which being past they came into the Land of Magalla, wherein are Tatavia Orien. two Caftles or Cities built of stone, they are called with them Balbim, in one of them is a Duke talk imm Bugcalled Talay Taifeen; and in the other the Duke is called Egiden Taifeen; there is also a third Citie in it called Lobin, wherein doth gouerne a woman called Dutchesse Manchika with her Soone, 30 the faid Dutcheffe doth command all the Cities of Magalla, and her command extendeth into Catay. If any man be to travell over the borders, and into Catay, he must have a Passe under her

Scale; which if they have not , they may not palle through Catay. The Land of Manalleis great and large from Bughar to the Sea; all the Cattles are built with stone foure foure; at the corners, Towers, the ground or foundation is layd of rough, grey frome, and are courted with Their builles, the gates with counterwards as our Raffe gates are, and vpon the gates abrum Bels or dings W. ceh-bels of twentie poode weight of metall, the Towers are covered with glazed Tiles : the houses are built with stone foure cornerd high, within their Courts they have low Yasits, also of ftone, the feelings whereof, and of their houses are cunningly painted with all forts of colours, and very well fet forth with flowres for flew. In the faid Countrey of Mugalla are two 40 Churches of Friers, or Lobaes, built of (quare flone, and fland betweene the Baft and the South;

vpon the tops of them are made beafts of itone, and within the Church just against the doore when the copy of the large of the forme of women of two and an halfe fathorne long, Friers. gilt all ouer from the heads to the feet, and fit a fathome high from the ground spoin heafts made of stone, which beafts are painted with all manner of braue colours. Those kolos heafts are their hand a Veffell, and there burne before them three tallow Candles, on the tight full of them Candles, are erected eight Idols more in the forme of men, and on the left full eight Idols more in the forme of men, and on the left full eight Idols more in the forme of Maydens, gilt all ouer from the head to the foote, their armes fireadhed out after the manner as the Mugall people, or Religious men vie to pray. And a little way from theile Idols fland two Idols more made naked as a man is in all parts, not to be differned, even as abough he 50 were aline, having before them Candles burning, as small as a straw, and butne without stame Candlebur.

only in an Ember or Coralf. Their feruice or finging in these Churches is thus. They have two Transpets of a greatile mith, flame. about two fathomes and an halfe long, and when they found on their Trumpets, and bears up gion. on Drummes, the people fall downe vpon their knees and clap their hands againe, adding their armes afunder, they fall to the ground and lye fo halfe an houre. They Churches are concred with glazed Tiles. As for bread in the Land of Mugalla there growe hall magnitude Coline, with graced a real solutions and the second property of the pr are not faire, but the women exceeding faire, and weare for their Apparell, Yelness and Dankette; Prople and

the Capes of their Garments both of the men and women hang downers sheir flourished. They arrive diffill Agnauite out of all forts of Graine, without Hops, As for Persons Stomer and Gold they have none, but for Silver they have great flore out of Casay. Their Books they weare of their Diffilled wins

Such are the Tartars dwellings or flee-

799

owne fashion. They have no Horses, only Mules & Asses in abundance; they till and plough their ground with great and small Ploughes, as we doe in Siberia at Tebolske. Their Cuttuffs are in our Language Patriarkes, and both in Mugalla and Catay are but two Cattuffs; the one was about Cutuffs or Patwentie, and the other thirtie yeeres of age. Within the Churches are made for them high places with leats whereupon they fit: the King doth honour them with bowing downe before Lobas or Friers them. Their Lobas: are in our Language Friers, which are short about twentie yeeres of age,

Continuation, and know no women from their Mothers wombe, they eate flesh continually every day, and shaue both Beards and Mustachoes: their Garments are of Damaske of all forts and colours, and their Hoods yellow, they say that their Religion and ours are all one, only the Resse Monkes are

Beyond the Land of Magalla are three other Countreyes or Dominions, stretching towards Three King. Burbar, the one called Orim, the Kings name there is Englar, the Citie is offtone, and the King-Ortus. Taleuth.

The other is called Dominions of Talguth, the Kings name is Sauelanche, his Cities are also of ftone, and his Kingdome rich. Sher.

The third Countrey where the chiefe Citie is, is called Shar, and the King thereof is called Zellezner, or Iron King, his Kingdome is rich, and not farre from Bugbar. From this Iron King come Diamonds, and all these three Kingdomes are under the South, and on the other side of the Blacke Mugali, blacke Mugalis are the yellow Mugalis, stretching all alongst the Sea, aswel Townes as walking

people, with their Families and Herds. From the Countrey of Mugalla, where the Dutcheffe Manchika dwelleth, to the Citie of Estate.

Walls of Catay, Shrokalga in Catay, is two dayes travell on horsebacke: and the bordering or frontier wals stand vnder the South towards Bughar, two moneths travell, all made of Bricke of fifteene fathome

high, whereupon they told about a hundred Towres in fight, on both fides of them, but towards Buebar, and towards the Sea, the Towres are not to bee numbered, and enery Towre standeth from another about a flight shot distant. The faid well are neth downe towards the Sea foure moneths trauell. The people of Catay tay, that this wall fretcheth alongst from Bugbar to the Tower becoms Sea, and the Towres vpon it fland very thicke; it was made, as they fay, to be a border betweene Mugalla and Catay. The Townes vpon it are to the end, that when any enemy appeareth, to kindle fires vpon them, to give the people warning to come to their places where they areap- 30

pointed upon the wall. At the entring without the wall dwell the blacke Mugali; and within is the Countrey and Cities of Catay. In the wall to Catay are fine gates, both low, and straight Cara Catay. or narrow, a man cannot ride into them vpright on horie-backe, and except these finegates But fiue gares there is no more in all the wall; there all manner of people paffe into the Citie of Sbrokalga. in the wall. Within the borders or wall is a Citie or Caftle of Catay, called Shirokalga, built of flone, the Shirecalga.

Gouernour thereof is called Duke Shubin, who is fent thither for a time from Tambur King of Catay, the Castle is very high walled and artificially built; the Towres are high after the manner of Moseo Castle, in the Loope-holes or Windowes are Ordnance planted, as also vpon the Gates or Towres; their Ordnance is but short, they have also great store of small shot, and the Watchmen euery-where vpon the Gates, Towres, and Wals, well appointed; and affoone as 40 they perceive the Sunne going downe, the Watch dischargeth their Peeces of Ordnance thrice, as also at the breake of day in the morning, they shoot out of their Pieces thrice, and doe not open the Castle Gates till the fixthoure of the day. Within the Castle are thops built of stone, and painted cunningly with divers colours, wherein they have all manner of Merchandizes, as Veluets, Damaskes, Dorogoes, Taffataes, Cloth of Gold, and Tiffue of divers colours, fundry forts of Sugars, Cloues, &c. in the Gouernours houle is a frong Watch of Partifant and Halberds, and their Drummes made like great Barrels. When the Governour goeth abroad, they carry a Canopie ouer him, and make way before him with Rods, as before our Emperour in Mojes.

And from Shirotalga to the Citie Tora is three dayes travell:this Citie is large, built of flone, and the circuit of it is two dayes trauell, with many Towres, and foure Gates to come in at, the 50 Markets in the Citie are well and richly accommodated, with lewels, Merchandizes, Grocerie, or Spices, the Citie well inhabited having no place void or waste in it. The houses and shops are buile with stone, with streets betweene; the Gouernours here are called Duke Bywand Duke Inchate, freere they have Post Stages as wee , their Markets have a very odoriferous smell

And from this Citie, to a Citie called Tayib, is three dayes journey, it is built of flone, large, and high walled, & is in compaffe two daies travel about, at the first comming to it are five gates barred and botted with Iron, very thicke and close, fastned with Nailes; the houses and shops, or Ware-houses are all built of stone, wherein are all manner of Merchandizes, Spices, or Grocerie, and precious things more abundant then in the aforefaid Cities, they have Tauernes or Drin- 60 king houses flored with all manner of Drinkes, as Aquanita, Meade, and Wines from beyond Seas in abundance, there they have also their Watch, Ordnance, and Munition in great store; the Governours of this place are one Duke Tuga, and the other Duke Zumia, there wee faw Sinamon, Annifeeds, Apples, Arbuzes, Melous, Cucumbers, Onions, Garlicke, Radifli, Carrets,

Parlenips, Turnops, Cabbage, Limons, Poppiseeds, Nutmegs, Rice, Almonds, Pepper, Rubarbe & many other Fruits, which we know not, so that they want nothing whatsoeuer groweth in the World; the shops are within the Citie, stored of all manner of Commoditie as is faid, as also vi-Stualling and drinking Houses, stored with all manner of Drinkes, where they have also Dicers and Whores, as with vs. Their Prifons in the Citie are of stone, for theft they hang the theenes, and for Robberie or Murther they stake the Murtherers, or elfe head them.

And from Shirokales to a Citie of Catay, called Shirooan is a dayes iourney: this Citie is built Shirooan of flone high walled, and large in compaffe, it is a dayes travell, it hath twelve Towres; whereupon, as also on the Citie Gates is planted Ordnance and small shot great store, with a continu-To all Watch or Guard, night and day at the first comming are fine Gates well turnished with Ordnance and Warlike Munition; and from one Gate to the other through the Citie is halfe a dayes going. The Gouernour of this place is called Duke Sanchik. For Victuals and Merchandizes. here is more then in the Cities mentioned, all their shops very full, and the Citie so populous, that one can hardly passe the streets for the throng of people. The Ambassadors Houses are also faire built of ftone, their Wels couered with Braffe, fo that this Citie is adorned more with pre-

Now from the Citie of Tayth, to a Citie called #bite Castle, is two dayes trauell: this Citie is white Castle. built of white stone, and thereof hath his name, it is high walled and large, being in compasse or circuit three dayes trauell, athe first entry it hath three Gates under one Towre, the Gates are high and wide with strong fron barres : and the Gates fastened with Iron Nayles whited with Tinne, it hath great Ordnance in the Gates and Towres : fome Peeces carrying fhot of two Poole waight, the shops within the Citie reach from Gate to Gate, and betweene them are ffreets paued with stone, all their shops and houses are built of stone before their shops. They haue grates painted cunningly, with all manner of colours, flowres and fuch like, and voon the shops are the houses painted cunningly with Pictures and flowres in divers colours, and the pain-

ting within is voon Paltboord adorned with Damaske and Veluets; heere is more abundance of Riches and Commodities then in any of the Cities afore mentioned. The Gouernours names here were Duke Toynan, and Duke Sulan. From this white Citie, or Caffle, to the greatest Citie of all Cataya, called Catay, is two dayes

iourney, where the King himlelfe dwellerh, it is a very great Citie, built of white ftone foure Citie of Catal, 30 fquare, and in compafie it is foure dayes journey, vpon every corner thereof are very great H Catar be the Towres high built, and white, and alongst the wall are very faire and high Towres , likewise same with the white and intermingled with Blue or Azure, vpon the Gates, Wall, and Towres, the Loop-holes me(as before in or Windowes are well furnished with Ordnance, and a strong Watch. In the midst of this white Gerand the Citie standeth a Castle built of Magnet, or Load-stone, wherin the King himselfe dwelleth, called ferued) many Tambun; this Castle standeth so in the midst of this Cirie, that every way you have halfe a dayes difficulties a. going to it from the Gates, through the ffreets which hath from thoppes on both fides with all rife, But this manner of Merchandizes; ypon their shops they have their houses built of stone, cunningly pain-nach the tot do not then the former Cities. The Castle of Magnet is curiously stee forth with all manner of contact themse

40 artificiall and precious deuices, in the middeft whereof standeth the Kings Palace, the top where- feeme to agree of is all gilt over with Gold. And they would not admit vs to come before their King without to place some Presents, saying, it was not the manner of Catay, to come before their King without some Cata, North Present , and though (faid they) your white Emperour had but sent with his first Am- from china, if baffadours to our King some thing of no great value, our King would have sent him many speake of the precious things, and difinified you his Ambaffadours honourably, and have fent his Am- wall The Tarbaffadours with you: but now hee only endeth his Letter to your Emperour. The Citie to names fo Danatous with your old now the only enter his Letter to your appendix, and is incomof Catay, where the King dwelleth, is baile voon an euen plaine ground, and is incompaffed round about with a River called Youga, which falleth into the blacke Sea, which is from
paffed round about with a River called Youga, which falleth into the blacke Sea, which is from
paffed round about with a River called Youga, which falleth into the blacke Sea, which is from
particular, that the Citie Catay feuen dayes trauell, fo that there come no thips neerer the Citie Catay, then fe- irishard to re-

50 uen dayes trauell off, but all things are transported in small Vessels and ship-boars. The Mer-concile them. chandizes the King doth send into all parts of his Dominions of Casay, and from thence are car- And the seuits ried ouer the borders, into the Land of Mnyalla, to the King Aline, to the black Kollmakes, make foure moneths to the Iron King, into Bagbar and other Dominions, their Patriarkes and Friers, trauell with the uell from the Commodities, as Veluets, Sattens, Damaskes, Siluer, Leopard Skinnes, Turkeffes, and blacke wall to Pequin, Zenders, for which they buy Horses, and bring them into Catar, for in Catar are but few hor- which shere fes, only Mules and Alles, and Cloth they have none, their Horses and Silver goeth into strange but a few Countreyes, or as they say, Nemufy, the Silver is made in Brickes, which they call Krisfy, va-wisy the Ruflued each Kriefy at fiftie two Rubles, their Apparell they weare with long broad hanging fleeues, for entred the like the Gentlewomens Summer-coats or Lettink; in Ruffia, the people are very faire but not will athe watlike, timorous & most their endenour is in great and rich traffick. They told vs that not long North East

60 before our comming, the people of Mugalla had taken two Castles from them by deceit, also part of it: thornesse of their journey admits not. Perhaps this chiefe Citie was but the chiefe of that Prouince where the Vice-roy resided, and they were willing to make the most of their travells Ruffies fide Yet the necrenesse of the Sea, there also cause the feruple. I sup-pose rather that their Ruffes entred China but a little way, and received the Vice-royes Letter only (thereobserved with Regall Rites) and had much by Relation, of that little which they tell. How ener I haue here offered this to thy view at more leifute to vie thy Vuu 2

Short Ord.

Tere.

Zajib.

they told vs that their King hath a flone which lighteth as the Sunne both day and night, called in their Language Sarra, and in our Tongue Iachant, or Rubie; another flone they fay hee hath. which driueth away water from it, it is also called a Rubie. There come to them Strangers, or Nemtsig energy yeere, with all manner of Merchandizes, and barter for Deere Skinnes, and Loshids, Sables, Beuers, Veluets, Tatlataes, and Zendews, or Calico; these strangers, they say, come to them out of the blacke Sea, from the East and the South, also, they say, there is a River called Kartalla Riner. Kartalla : which falleth into the great River Ob; but they know neyther the head, nor the fall of it, they imagine it commeth out of the blacke Sea, and falleth into it againe, vpon this River dwell many people with walking Herds.

> For a triple testimony of Sir Ishu Merikes honourable courtesse, I have added this succeeding Patent, which how focuer in some things it concurre with the former of Boris and Demorring Yet those being obscurely translated or written, this may illustrate them; and it also presenteth both larger Priviledges, the Patriarkes name loyned with the Emperours, and the Gol-

VV Etbe great Lord Emperour and great Duke Michaell Pheodorowich of all Russia, solo Commander of Volodemer, Moico, and Nouogrod, Emperour of Cazan, Emprour of Attracan, Emperous of Siberia, Lord of Plefco, and great Dake of Sapolensky, Twensky, Vgorrky, Pfermesky, Varsky, Bolgorsky, and abstr; Lord and great Duke of Nouograd, on the lower 10 Countreyes, Cheringosky, Rahansky, Rostouskey, Yaraslausky, Belozersky, Vdorskey, Obdorfkv. Condinsky, and of all the Northerne parts Commander, and Lord over the Country of lucraky, and Caberdynland, Cherkaskey, and of the Dukedomes of Igorskey, and of many other Kingdomes, Lord and Conquerour. Together with the great Lord Philletet Neketich , the boly Patriarke and Head of the Reuerend Clergie of the Imperial Citie of Molco, and of all Ruffia by the flesh our natural Father, and by the power of the Holy Ghoft our Spiritual Paster and Ghoftly Father.

Whereas there was fent unto us the great Lord Emperour, and great Duke Michaell Pheodorowich of all Ruffia, and to our Father, the great Lord, the boly Patriarke of Moleo, and of all Ruffia, with my maximing arms of lames, by the grace of God, Kong of England, Scotland, France, and Ireland; and of many others his Mainfins Ambuffedour Sir Iohn Merthe, Knight and Coultimos of 30 bis Masefies Prinie Chamber, upon both our Princely Affaires.

The faid Sir Iohn Merike, in the name of our faid loning Brother King lames requested our Imperiall Maiestie , and our Father the great Lord, the bely Patriarke, to bee pleased gracions to favour the English Merchants, to grant them leave to come with their stoppes onto our Port and Hauens of Archangell, with alkened of Commodising, and freely to radiouse from the Sea fide, to our Imperial Citie of Mosco, and to our Patrimonie of great Nouogrod and Pleico, and outs all other our Cities, Townes, and Countrejes of our Empire, with all forts of Commedities, without paying of Custome is at ample manner at formerly bath being gravied to the English Merchauss, and that our Imperial Maiestie, together with our deere Father the boly Patriarke, would be pleafed to grant a new our gracious Primiledges under our Princely Seale, according as our Prodecesfors Emperours, and great Dukes of all 40 Ruffia, bane beretofore granted unto them.

We therefore the great Lord Emperour, and great Duke Michaell Pheodorowich of all Ruffia, fole Commander; together with our degre Father the baly Patriarke of Molco, and of all Russia; for the lone we bear et our most lusing Browns the great Leviken Lance, with whom we are willing and defired ouer to remaine in the firingest bands of brotherly luse and friendly, have greatenly granted to be Kingly Mausties Subjects the English Merchants, Sir Thomas Smith Knight, Sir John Merike Knight, Sir Richard Smith Knight, Sir William Ruffell Knight, Sir George Bowles Knight, Hugh Hamersley Alderman, Ralph Freeman, Richard Wytch, Morris Abbot, Robert Bateman, William Stone, Rowland Healing, Iob Hanby, Richard Ironfide, Edward Iames, Iohn Caflen, Beniamin Deicrow, Fabyan Smith, and their fellowes free laane to come with their flappes into our King- 50 domes, into our Countreyes of Dweena, unto the Port of Archangell, and from thence to our Imperial Citie of Mosco, and of Nouogred the Great, and vnto Plesco, and into all other the Cities of our Empire, to trade and traffique with all kind of Merchandinas, free of all Customes, as well the great Customes as Tole : unlading of Vessels or Boats, passages through any place by water or Landentries, Head-money, Bridge-money, Ferryings, or any manner of Customes, or Duties whatforner can

The English Merchants being thus licensed to trade in our Kingdomes, free of all customes for their owne commodities, Shall neither colour ner fell strangers mares, as their owne; neither Shall our people fell for them any of their goods, wor yet shall they keeps any of our people under their protection : and into what Caties the English Merchants themselves, or their Fattors, or Sermants shall come with their goods, 60 it |ball be lawfull for them freely to trafficke and fell their owne commodities, in barter, or otherwife againft Commodities of our Countrey.

And when some the said Merchants shall come into our Patrimon; of great Neuogrod and Plesco, or into any other the Cities of our Empire; wee straightly command our Nobles in general, and all other our authorized people, that according to this our Imperial lettere of principles, should fer the fores faid Merchants to pafe without all manner of hindrance or lets, & without taking any manner of cuffanta fact Nerrounts to put; or for their gases; and ents who store forest stophed cover or and whether Identification, and had not defer to improve fill with our people; thefe our uniboricad parts four freely let them, palle mithoms taking any manner of suffernes, according to this our laparent wascome

And where former thin English Merchantes half happen to fell or being or any of chair accommodition with Marchantes the chair control of the chair accommodition with the chair accommodition of the chair accommodition with the chair accommodition of the chair accommodition with the chair accommodition of the chair acc [med med fire and meight, as by the pard, pound and ounces, that is to for about Closels by milede Stouther the doubtfull

and Lare; Democing and Coloris by the Cones; and all other wares that make he feld by meight accorp. Dallyce, page though, affle the wages from the cones of the Colorist that the cones of the Colorist than the

during Adjugate view to get the surface of the surf

Celues can agree.

Alfowhen the English Merchans therefolder, ne any of their Faltors, doe tranell om of am Dominions were their come, or alter for signs Kingdomer, and these weefhall be pleased to delener them of our Treasure, they feel take it with them, with fell, and beerer is for such commodities as wee shall think to fit and acceptance on the and technics, and Government, and allowed on the weight thinks and acceptance on the and technics, and the continuent, and allowed on the continuent, and the continuent of the continuent, that fight them and their people freely to page without taking any inflamment them who who who the he fight the decrease of the first that the continuent of t

Further, when any English Merchants shall come with their Shippes and Veffels by Sea, into our Do minions, and that any mispersime bappan unia them by loguerathe massing implomers or confirst our So-nernours and Officers Bollogues fearch to be minds for their grounds and loguesterand but parthems faithfully therein, and the goods gathered together that be restored to the English Merchanes, who shall be at that time is our Kingdomes, and if there shall be as that time some of the English Merchanes, or people in our Kingdomer, the faid goods fall be taken and laid up in fafty, and thingred without delay to the English Aderebants where they flash color into any Commerce, and that challenge

Further, of our gracious goodnesse, we gave free leave to the English Merchants, and Company, to keepe the boufe in Moleco by Saint Maxitime bebinds the Market place , and finil remains after their old manner, and therein fiell have one boufekeeper a Rustle, or elseone of storie wine. Sermants : but no 40 other Ruffe people : the houfer which the English Merchants bane in other places of our Dominions, as at Yerellaue, Vologda , Collin. and at Saint Michaelke drobungell, they fall keepe and wie at their pleasure, according to our former gracious fanour, without paying any duetie, rent, taxe, or any manpicajare, according to one jume to main among the part of the faid 1 momes take any thing of them, or theris, for any dustic what four the legal in the part of the faid 1 momes take any thing of them, or theris, for any dustic what four belonging to their busin; and the faid king Illh Merchants Ihall miny their faid bonies precedly to themselved; without the among accept they through or other to lodge in them, and the faid business the lodge in them, and the second to the medical problems of the second to the secon ther in time of their being there, or in their ablence.

And in their boufes at Yeretlane, Vologed, Collmogro, and Archangell, they foall likewife have a housekeeper of their owne people, or of our Subietts, a man or two of the meaner fort; but fo, that those

om people be so merchants.

on people be so merchants.

on the Hospkeper being a Rulle floul use ondertake to puddles or fall any of their mere suiteone themselies be prefers, and they be English Merchants, by vertue of the one gracious Letters of printledge, (ball lay their wares and commodities in their owne bonfes, and fell them to whom

And it Shall be lawfull for the faid Merchants, when they Shall arrive at our Sea Port, to lade and unlade their Merchandines, as in times past, at their pleasures: and when they lade or unlade their Shippes, it hall be lawfull for them to bire any of our Subjects to helpe them; and shall have leade to carry their goods to and fro with their owne Veffels, and howfe them in their owne Ware-houses : onely they shall give a note under their hand to our Governours, Customers, or swerne men, what goods they bring in, and Shippe out; Whereby it may be knowne what goods commeth in, and goeth out of our King-60 dames : but in no wife our Officers shall open or unpacke any of their Wares or Merchandize in any place

Also when the English Merchants shall Shippe or transport any of their Countrie Commodities from Saint Michaell Archangell, to our royall Citie of Molco, or Ruffe Commodities into their owne Countrie : our authorised Officers and Customers, by vertue of this our Imperial Letters of priviledge

50

hall suffer them to puffe with their goods in and out, without doing them any manner of him.

ance.

And mountower sons of the faid English Merchanis or Fatters final bane occasion to find encitive. And to many other many of the found to the first the fir

nongue.

And who fowner in any of one (tries, final trans any matrix against the Erre with Merichally ma of contention, we command that none of our Gonernous; not other of our Officer, we made the of contentions, we common the more of our concernment, our course of our species we may the English Chicago, there Fellews is people to enable that they found officers by the characteristic of marches or their, and then also not to be done, but of manifest that their officers in the thing lift there is characteristic and popular found may be the string, and is visible at min They that Cline of the characteristic and popular found may be the string, and is visible at min They that Cline of the characteristic and popular found may be the string, and is visible at min They that Cline of the characteristic and popular found may be the string. chans, sheir Taliwe nun pequajigms consymmetrian, man er ungge a new insperson 2.110 of million for vertue of this was reaccum Letter of principles, before our Chancellows in The Office of Maddle, and in no action place in Tuning, and he is bear other confer, and is fine infine, thereone divisioning and the conference of the following the conference of the following the conference of the following the conference of the con cording to equite undright; and where the truth causes be found out by Ente, it find be referred to eath arrain; in squares marryot; was a rest a south final to a fight and the state of saturation. A south final to a south final to a right to state of saturation.

And if any of the English Merchants, in any of our Cities within our Kingdomes, doe complained

Anai any of the Loughth Outcomers, many of our vitice misses our Kingdomes, des compliaine of any words of five of them by our people, for debts, priming by trade or obstraine; we command our Ge-neroous, and all after our ambies high people, what elsy professing months true inflice visits them; And for very wiving on other matter of contracts his base the Boghth Mercham final home qualify might of the Subjects, one Gomernance and other our antherifed people open their complaint for all controverses 30 Subjects, one Concreasing measure on autory year proper sym cours companie yor ne controverfue (matter of feld executed) found one one Subjects to of feeding your further, feiting them thins to appear as Moleo, to anywere the fame with the English Merchanet, face to face, before one Chairettee, in the Office of Embally: and in the femalities one Chancellows found made examine the buffinds, and ministry one Chancellows found made examine the buffinds, and ministry one. Office of Lineways . and what by examination cannot be found, shall be referred, as before, to onto and los : the Indees and Inflices through our Dominions final sake no kinds of ductie of the English Merchants for

we will und command, that these our Imperiall grassom Letters of printledge, be frittly obstraed in all points, in all parts of our Dominious, and by all our Subsects, Concruents, Secretaries, and other Officers.

points you parts of the state of thing.

And who fences facilities one princety and gracione Letters of printledge, but field offer wrong 30 to the English Merchants, thefe our Subjects shall be with us in our high displenture,

Those our gracious Letters of primited per, are fealed with our Imperiall Sente of Gold in our Princele Pallace of our Imperiall. Citie of Mo'co, in the years from the Worlds treation 7129, in the moneth of May, the elementh day.

Subscribed by our Imperiall Mainfline Chancollour of our Office of Embaffy, and our princie Chancellour Euan Corbatouesin Gramotin.

B^Pt it is now high time to least Ruths, and all that Barbarons flower, if Samottees and Tuttur sinely don, and where to beauth of few Barbarina; to floope us those to See. And although Finch, Gourdon, and where to beau in the fromer Booke officered for great light: 24 febres Matth bath enter-40 sainted where guides, we will take Sea by Ob, and thomas fee for the total discussion.

CHAP. XIL

Notes concerning the discourry of the River of Ob, takenout of a Roll, written in the Ruffian tongue, which was attempted by the meanes of Antonie MARSH, achiefe Factor for the Moscouie Company of England, 1584. with other notes of the North-caft.

Irst he wrote a Letter from the Citie of Mosco, in the yeare 7092. after the Russe accompt, which after our accompt was in the yeare 1 384. vnto foure Ruffer that vied to trade from Commero to Pechora, and other parts Eastward : whose anfwere was: By writings received from thee, as also by reports, wee understand thou

How to finde out Obfrom

Scaled with

the Golden

wouldest have vs feeke our the mouth of the River Ob; which we are content to doe; and thou must give therefore fiftie rubbles! It is requifite to goe to feeke it out with two Cochimaes, or companies; and each Cochima muft have ten men and wee muft goe by the River 60 Pechera vpwards in the Spring, by the fide of the Ice, as the Ice swimmeth in the River, which will aske a fortnights time ; and then we must fall into Onfon River, and fall downe with the freame before we come to Ob, a day and a night in the spring. Then it will hold vs eight dayes to swimme idowne the River Ob, before we come to the mouth : therefore fend vs a man that

can write; and affure thy felfe the mouth of Ob is deepe. On the Ruffe fide of Ob foiourne Samoeds, called Ugarskai & Sibierskie, Samoeds; and on the other fide dwel another kinde of Samoeds. called Monganet, or Mongafrity, Samoods. We must passe by sue Castles that stand on the Ruser Parties and of Ob. The name of the nirth Tesson Gorodob, which standeth upon the mouth of the Ruser Parties with don. The fecond small Cattle is No fore-gerodock, and it standeth hard vpon the side of 06. The third is called Nechelour-geskey. The fourth is Charedonada. The firt is Nadesneda, that is to fay, The Cafele of comfort, or traft; and it standeth vpon the River Ob, lowermost of all the former

CHAP. II. Anthonic Marshes intelligences of Ob & Ruffian icloudie.

Caftles toward the Sea.

Heretofore your people haue bin at the faid River of Obs mouth with a Ship, and there was Ashipwracke to made shipwracke, and your people were flaine by the Samords, which thought that they came at the mouth to rob and fubdue them. The Treesthat grow by the River are Firres, and a kinde of white, foft of 06. and light Firre, which we call Tell. The bankes on both fides are very high, and the water not fwift but full and deeps. Fish there are in it as Storgeons, and Cheri, and Pidle, and Nelma, a dainrwire, out that an early a state of the white Salmons, and Moucoun, and Sig, and Sterlid: but Salmons there are none, An Illand neets Not faire diffaint from the maintain are the mouth of Ob, there is an Illand, whereon refort many the mouth of wilde beafte, as white Beires, and tie Murfes, and fuch like. And the Sameed tell vs. that in the Ob. winter feafon, they oftentimes finde thete Morfer teeth. If you would have vs travell to fecke winter season, they obtendings must unter proper even a your woman many standard season when the most of Ob by Sea, we must gootly the fillest Ougant, and Nama Zembla, and by the Owner of the Season with the Company of the Season Sea mouth of Ob, by Sea, is but a finall matter to fiyle. Written at Pachera, the yeare 7092. the Matthewe land twenty one of February.

Master M A K S M also learned these distances of places and Ports, from Cattinos so Ob by Sea.

Rom Corners to the Bay of Medernske (which is fornewhat to the East of the River Perbera) coninet.

Its found dayes fayling. The Bay of Medernsky is over a day and a halfe fayling. From Me-40 demute Samereft to Corneces, is fixe dayer frying. From Corte Bay to the fartheft fide of the cardemite. River Ob, is pine dayer fayling. The Bay of Caroke is from fide to fide, a day and a mights Caroke.

He learned another way by Nona Zembla and Manhafeban Tar to Ob, more North-eastward. From Contines to the Hand of Colgoine, is a day & nights fayling. From Colgoine to New Zem. Contines, the are two dayes fayling. There is a great Ofer sor Lake your Nosa Zemble, where wonderfull Colgoine ftore of Geefe and Swannes doe breede, and in moulting time cast their feathers, which is about Saint Porere day 1 and the Ruffes of Columpro repaire thither yearely, and our English men venter thither with them fenerall shares in money othey bring home great quantitie of Doune-Feathers, dried Swannes, and Geele, Beares skinnes, and Fish, &c. From Naromske Reca or River Naromske.

thers, orted Swalins, and and the form of the Personal of the Personal of the Personal of the Mattulches Tal is to fay, To the warme passage ouer-land, compassing or fayling round about the Sands, is thirfathomes it allow water. The occasion of this highing of the water, is the falling into the Sand. of the three Rivers, and the meeting of the two Seas, to wite, The North Sea, and The East Sea, The two Seas that is, the which make both high water and great Sands. And you must beware that you come not with Northand the your Shippe neere vnto the Iland by the River Ob. From Mattuschan Tar to this Iland, is flue East Sea. dayes fayling. Massufban Yar is in some parts fortie Versts ouer, and in some parts not pathix The bignes of

The aforesaid Anthonie Marsh sent one Bodan his man, a Russe borne, with the aforesaid foure Rufer, and a yone youth, a Samoed, which was hkewife his Servant, what the different out that Anthonie Marie River of Ob, by Land, through the Countrie of the Sameeds, with good store of commodities to fent two of his trafficke with the people. And these his Servants made a rich Voyage of it, and had bertered men vpon the with the people about the River of Ob, for the valew of a thousand rubles in lables, and other discovery of Ob fine Furres. But the Emperour having intelligence of this Discouery, and of the way that Bo- by land with des returned home by, by one of his chiefe Officers lay in waite for him, apprehended him, and Beden Mafter rooke from him the aforefaid thousand Markes worth of Sables, and other Merchandifes, and de- Merch his man livered them into the Emperours Treasurie, being fealed up, and brought the poorefellow Bolom brought to to the Citie of Mofes, where he was committed to prifon, and whipped, and there detained a Mofes. long while after, but in the end releafed. Moreouer, the Emperours Officers asked Anthonie So Marth, how he durft prefume to deale in any fuch enterprise? To whom he answered, that by

the priviledges granted to the English Nation, no part of the Emperours Dominions were ex- Ruffien icalouempted from the Englift to trade and trafficke in : with which answere, they were not fo fatif- fic of discount fied, but that they gave him a great checke, and forfeited all the aforefaid thousand Markes worth of goods, charging him not to proceede any further in that action: whereby it fremeth

they are very lealous that any Christian should grow acquainted with their Neighbours that border to the North-east of their Dominions, for that there is some great secret that way, which they would referue to themselves onely. Thus much I vnderstood by Master

The report of Mafter FRANCIS CHERRY & Moscouic Merchant, and ceport of Majker FRANCIS CHEARIA MATTHE SCA to the
CMajker THO MAS LYND ES touching a marme Sca to the
South-cast of the River Ob, and a Note of
FRANCIS GAVILE.

Mafter Francis Cherry, one of the chiefe Merchants of the Majoray Companing, which was the Emperour Inan Bajilimich his Interpreter, and hash translick in periousnes Propaga farre to the East in Ruffia, laith, That he hath eaten of the Sturgeon that came out of the River of Ob. And that in those parts it is a common received speech of the Reffer that are great travai-A warme Sea , lers, that beyond Ob to the South-east there is a warme Sea. Which they expresse in these words in the Ruffe tongue; Za Obyreca moria Teupla, that is to fay . Bejond the Riner Ob is a warme in one Ange congret 2 no 197 con mora a cappe 1, was 3 co. 189, 2 symmetre caper, Up a a narmy
Mart 7 Bonnes See. Furthermore, Marter 7 Bonnes Lynde an honerard and discrete Evolft Marchane, which hart
Linde.

Mart 1 Anne See. Furthermore, Marter 1 Anne 1 Lynde a non-tented and discrete Evolft Marchane, which hart
Linde.

Linde 1 Linde 2 Lynde 1 Lynde 2 Ly report of the Raffes, that are travailers, fo warme, that all kinde of Sea fowles live there as well in the Winter as in the Summer, which report argueth, that this Sea pierfeth farre into the South

Third Volume Raneis Gaulle that passed the Ocean betweene layer and Nova Hispania, in the Latitude of of English voyages, pag 446. of Tartarie; running thus East and East and by North about three hundred leagues from Iapan, we found a very hollow water, with the streame running out of the North and North-west, witha full and very broad Sea, without any trouble or hinderance in the way that we past. And what winde focuer blue, the Sea continued all in one fort with the fame hollow water and farcame, vn- 30 till we had passed seuen hundred leagues. About two hundred leagues from the Coast of New Spaine we began to lofe the faid hollow Sea, whereby I perswade my selfe that there you shall finde a Channell or ilrait paffage betweene the firme Land of New Spame and the Countrie of Afia and Tartaria. We found all this way Whales, Tunnies, Bonicos, which are fiftes that ke. pe in Channels, Straits, and running Waters, there to differfe their feede, which further confirmeth me in that opinion.

See of thefe Tom.I.

But feeing thus we are sopped from Russia, and base againe taken Sea'chat which the permitted not to Se-pinn Burrough, Pet and lackman, ner others, English and Dutch, which have assembled that North east paffage; and that which Mafter Batten faid to me, that if he might have imployment, he would adventure to discouer from the Coast of China and Iapan on the North of Alia buberward; all 40 thu shall be suddenly permions to our swifter and unstayable aboughts, to fel us in a new discapers by Damih and English aflistance for a North-west passages footen, not so fortunately attempted, as by Rea-son is seemeth probable and almost certains, especially that may where Sir Th. Button and Nelson left. But we will disconer these Disconeries more methodically and bistorically to you, that you may see the English ancient right, as I may fay, to those parts of the new World.

O CHAP. XIII.

Discoueries made by English-men to the North-west : Voyages of Sir SEBAS- 50 TIAN CABOT, Mafter THORNE, and other Ancients: and of Master WEYMOVTH.



Voyages. The defire of Riches in some, of Knowledge in others, hath long wheten the mens industries, to finde out a more companies. ted mens industries, to finde out a more compendious way to the East Indies, by a shorter cut then the viuall passage, which in going to the places of principall

Trade there, and the returning thence by enforced compassings, is made no lesse a Voyage for time, cost, danger and labour, then the immediate compating of the whole Globe, 60 as in Master Candifier circumnauigation (not to mention others) is enident. But if either by the North-east, or North-west, or North, a passage be open, the sight of the Globe (the Image of the fite of the World) eafily sheweth with how much ease, in how little time and expense the same might be effected, the large Lines or Meridians under the Line contayning fixe hundred miles,

contracting themselves proportionably as they grow neerer the Pole, where that wast Line and Circumference it selfe becomes (as the whole Earth to Heauen, and all earthly things to heauenly) no Line any more, but a Point, but Nothing, but Vanitie. Hence such laborious fearches from Columbus his first discouene (that also occasioned by a conceit of finding the East by the West, whereupon he named Hispaniola Ophir, thinking he had then arrived at the East Indies) especially the English, seated commodiously for that discouerie, and to reigne ouer the Northerne and Westerne Ocean, haue herein beene more then industrious.

Doctor Powell in his historie of Wales faith, that Madoc fonne of Owen Guyneth left the Land in contention betwirt his brethren, and prepared certaine ships with men and munstion, and sought ad-To mentare by Sea, spling it et al. and leaving the Casif of Ireland 6 forer Nerth that see came vate a Land outcomen, where he saw many france thing. There he left many of his people An. 1170, and returned for more of his owne Nation and Friends to inhabite that large Countrie, a going the fecond time thither with ten failes. This westerne Land is like to be some part of the West In- Some thinks des, though the vnineriall lauagenes of those parts make it questionable where. But he which seeth that the Merid ther, chough the winnerfall langenes of those parts maker it questionable where, but he winch been user the above frome of our English in small time have growne wilde in Fested, and become in language and cas Minest [American] and a small profited that a continuation of the profited that the small profited that the s men are easier infected in a contagious aire, then sicke men recourred in that which is wholsome they were stranand found) will not wonder that in fo many Ages the halfe civilized Well-amongh Barbarian, gen) wrte without fuccession of Priests and entercourse of these parts, might wholly put on feritie. Meredub bence derived, 20 ap Rife 2Wellh Poet, which lived before Columbus had begun his discouerie, hath these verses.

> Madoc wrf, myedic wedd, Iawn Genau, Owyn Guynedd No finnum dir, fy enaid oedd Na da Mawr, ond y moroedd. that is.

Madoe I am the fonne of Owen Gwynedd, With stature large and comely grace adorned, No lands at home nor store of wealth me please, My mind was whole to search the Ocean seas.

Columbus also lent his brother Bartholomen to King Henrie the seventh, to make offer of his sernice in the New-Worlds discourrie, which fell by the way into the hands of Pirats . whereupon pouertie affaulted him with fickneffe in a forraine Countrie, fo that hee was forced to get some. D.F. Colon de vipouertie analyte in. ta paris Chrige what about him by making of Maps : one whereof had this more ancient then elegant in. ta paris Chriflopb. Col. 6.131 scription.

Columbus de Terra Rubra, opus edidit iftud Londoniy: An. Domini 1480, at q, in super amo Ollano decimaq, die cum tertia mensis February. Laudes (bristo cantentur abunde.

I anna cui patria est, nomen cui Bartholomans | Whose Countrie Gennais, whose name Bartholomen Colon de Terra Rubra, this worke fet forth new At London, A thousand foure hundred eightie Februarie thirteenth, fing praise to Christ on height

One of these Maps hee presented to King Herrie with the said offer, who cheerfully accepted the same, and sens to call his brother into England, who before he could effect it, was imployed 40 by the Kings of Castile.

Columbus his fortunes awakned others industrie, amongst the rest lobn Cabota a Venetian, and his three fonnes Lewis, Sebastian, and Sanciss, who obtay ned a Patent of King Hourse the seventh for discouene with fine ships with English Masters, Mariners, and Colours also, the same to erech in whatfoeuer Lands vnknowne before to Christians , to hold the fame to them and their Heires See Hal. tom. 4, as Vaffals and Lieutenants to the Crowne of England, paying the fifth part of their gaine at Pag. 5.

In the yeere 1497. Iohn Cabot a Venetian, and Schaftian his some (these are the wordes of the great Map in his Maiesties privile Gallerie, of which Sebastian Cabor is often therein called the Authour, and his Picture is therein drawne, with this Title, Efficies Schaff. Cabois Angli, fili, Ie. Ca.
50 Unnetions, Militie Aurais, &C.) discovered that Land which no man before had attempted Inn. 24. This Map.

about fine in the morning. This Land be called Prima vilta (primum vilam, or first feene) became fome say, was that was first descried from Sea. That I land which lyeth out before the land, be called Saint Iohns I taken out of that was first described from Sea. I that I tand worth systo out before the tand, be cause Saint tollis
Sir Sch. Cabair
land, because on that scaft day it was discoursed. The Inhabitants weare beasts skins and as much e
May by Clem. tand, peccaje on that jests day is was asjonneed. Doe insocutants weare beats tigns and as must be tay by Clen, fleeme them, as we doe germents melt processes. In their warres, they by off Bower, Armere, Villet, Dears, Clubs of wood and Slings. The fiele is barren in familyhaces and yielderh little fruit, but it is Alamn 1549, full of white Beares and Stage of vanifacth greatnoffs. It showards to with Fiftee and thely great, as Sealest and Satomous, Solest allow all led me, Electach three is great free of thely fiftee which they call community Bacallaos. There breede also Hawkes as blacke as Rauens, Partridger and blacky exceeding the second of the sec

Thus wee see New-found Land discovered by English Ships , Mariners and iurisdiction. Six Sebaltian Cabot, for his English breeding, conditions, affection and advancement, termed an En- Ramuf. Tom.: glift man, thus reported of this voyage; That vpon occasion of the admiration of Columbus his voyage into the East, where Spices grew, by the West, so rife then in the Court of King Henrie See Hat Ton. 3the fenenth, there arose in his heart a great desire to attempt some notable thing. And vnder- pag-76

fat. Tom. 3. as likewife he

standing by the Sphere (saith he) that if I should saile by the North-west, I should by a shorter Tract come into India; I thereupon cauled the King to be aduertised of my densie; who immediately commanded two Caruels to bee furnished with all things appertaying to the Voyage which was, as farre as I remember, in the yeere 1495, in the beginning of Summer. I beganne therefore to faile toward the North-west, not thinking to find any other Land then that of Co. to Florida dif- thay, and from thence to turne toward India. But after certaine dayes I found that the Land concred by the turned toward the North, which was to me a great displeasure. Neuerthelesse, sayling along by Englip: from the Coast to fee if I could finde any Gulfe that turned, I found the Land full continent to the 56. degree vnder our Pole. And feeing that there the Coast turned toward the East, despaying as he writ to Journal of the Coast of that Land toward 10 the Equinoctiall (euer with intent to finde the faid passage to India) and came to that part of this firme land, which is now called Florida; where my victuals fayling I returned towards England: was cause of the tumules and preparations of warres against Scotland caused that then no more consideration was had to this voyage. Whereupon I went into Spaine, &c. By the King and Queene there he was fet forth and discouered the River of Plate, and sayled into it more then sixe score leagues. After this he made many other voyages, &c. Sir Seb. Caber was after by King Edward the fixt See [40, 1,3,c.1, conflicted grand Filot of England with the annual stipend of one hundred and sixtie in pounds thirteene shilling and foure pence, and was Author of the Russian and North-easterne discourres. thirteen thillings and four penergana was among a manager at a superstance of the penergan pe These were clothed in beasts skins, ai d dideate raw fleth, and spake such speech that none could vn erftand them, and in their demeanour like to brust beafts, whom the King kept a long time after. Two yeeres after I saw two of them at Westminster, apparelled like English, &c.

Thern and Eliet Mafter Robert Thorne writes, that his Father and Mafter Hugh Eliet a Merchant of Briffell first finders of were the first discouerers of New-found Land; and if the Manners would have been engled and followed their Pilots minde, the West Indies had beene ours: so that it seemeth this Discourie was before that of Columbia. Master Haklust hath published the particulars of these things more fully, as also divers Treatiles touching the North-west of Sir Humpbrey Gilbert and others: to which I referre the Reader; and no lelle for the Voyages made by divers English into thole parts: three by Sir Marton Frobifor, in the yeeres 1576, 77, and 78. Two of Captaine lobs 30 Danies, in 86, and 87. that of Mafter Hore, An. 1536. that of Sir Humpbrey Gilbert, 1582, that of Mafter Charles Leigh to Ramea, An. 1597. and before in 1593. that of George Drake; with those of laques Carrier, and divers others. My purpose is not to fteale Mafter Haklerts labours out of the World , by culling and fleecing them for our purpose, but by this Index to in-Arnot men where they may have festivall store in this kinde. I had rather give you new things. Such are to the World, these that you had before in Hudsons voyages set together, as also those of Greenland: and fuch are those of Waymonth, Knight, Hall, Baffin, &c. And first, as foreman of our Quelt, we will give you Sir Humphrey Gilberts Letter, written with his owne hand from New-found Land, whereof he tooke formall possession to the Crowne of England, and was as a Martyr of those Discoueries. It was written to S.r George Pechbam (a great Aduenturer in that 40 voyage, and a greater in one of longer lire, his written Treatife of Westerne planting, extant in Mafter Haklusts third Tome) and I have here inferted, it being hitherto vnprinted, as a memorial of both their worths; and after it (though in time before) wee will recreate you with a plaine Mariners Letter endorsed in homely phrase, To the Honorable Kings Grace of England, here (as I thinke) given you from the Originall. I have also another written to Cardinall Wolfer touching the tame voyage in Latin , by Albertu de Prato ; for the antiquitie, rather then any remarkable raritie, worthy here to be mentioned.

> S Ir George, I departed from Plymouth on the elementh of Imme with fine failes, and on the thirteenth the Barke Rawley ran from me in faire and cleare weather, haming a large winde. I pray you solicute my brother Rawley to make them an example of all Knaues. On the third of August wee arrived at a Port called Saint lohns, and will put to the Seas from thence (God willing) fo foone as our ships will be ready. Of the New-found Land I will fay nothing, until my next Letters. Be of good cheare, for if there were no better expelation, it were a very rich demaynes . the Country being very good and full of all forts of victual, as fish both of the fresh water and Sea-fish, Deere, Pheasants, Partridges, Swannes, and ainers Fowles elfe. I am in haste, you shall by enery Messenger heare more at large. On the fifth of August, I entred here in the right of the Crowne of England; and have engraven the Armes of End and, divers Spaniards, Portugals, and other ftrangers, witnessing the same. I can stay no longer; fare you well with my good Lady: and be of good cheare, for I have comforted my felfe, answerable to all my bopes. From Sant Iohns in the New-found Land, the 8. of August, 1,83.

> > Yours wholly to command, no man more,

HVM. GILBART.

CHAP. 13. Ruts Letter to King Henric, and Pratos to Cardinal Wolfey. I mentioned before Master Thornes fathers finding New-found Land, with Master Eliot. Their animated King Henrie the eight to let forth two thips for discourre, one of which perished in the North parts of New-found Land. The Mafter of the other, John Rut, writ this Letter to King Henrie, in bad English and worse Writing. Ouer it was this superscription.

Master Grubes two ships departed from Plymouth the 10. day of June, and arrived in the New-found Land in a good Harbour, called Cape de Bas, the 21. day of Iuly : and after we had left the light of Selle, we had neuer fight of any Land, till we had fight of Cape de Bas.

Leasing your Honorable Grace to beare of your sermant John Rut, with all his Company here, in

Pleaging your thought of the day of Green of your frames Santial Configuration of the good health, thank he to God, and your Green of the Mary of Gillocd, with a description of the state and then wee came into 52. degrees and fell with the majne Land, and within ten leagues of the majne Land we met with a great Iland of Ice, and came bard by her, for it was flanding in deepe water, and fo went in with Cape de Bas, a good Harbor, and many fusall llands, and a great fresh River going op farre
one in with Cape de Bas, a good Harbor, and many fusall llands, and a great fresh River going op farre
unto the mayne Land, and the mayne Land all wildernesse and mountaines and woods, and no natural ground but all mosse, and no inhabitation nor no people in these parts: and in the woods wee found feeting of diners oreat beafts, but we faw none not in ten leagues. And please your Grace, the Samson and wee kept company all the way till within two dayes before wee met with all the Ilands of Ice , that was the first agricompany au roe way it witten two angre organ were not were also from an affect was the first of any of land an inhibit, and there role of great and a martinalism great forms, and much fourle weather; I truit is Almighte laft to heave good neare of her. And place from Grace, we were confidenting and a writing of all our order, how we would alway and when God does found foule weather, that with the Cape de Sper free should goe, and be that came first should tarry the space of fixe weeks one for another, and watered at Cape de Basten dayes, ordering of your Graces libip and fill-ing, and fo departed toward the Southward to feeke our fellow: the third day of August we entered into 30 a good Hauen, called Samt John, and there we found eleven faile of Normans, and one Brittaine, and a good remem, caused sum it with, some or we remember you by a visitiants, and and we proceed that the property of the property of the process of the proces of God, as we were commanded at our departing : And thus left faue and keepe your bonorable Grace, and all your honourable Reuer, in the Hauen of Saint Iohn, the third day of August, written in bafte. 1527.

By your ferwant lobe Rue, to his vecermost of his power.

I haue by me also Albert de Prate's originali Letter, in Latinstile, almost as harsh as the former English , and bearing the same date , and was inderfed , Remerend, in Christo Patri Domino Domino Cardinali & Domino Legato Anglia : and began , Renerendissime in Christo Pater (alutem. Renerendissime Pater, placeat Renerendissima paternitati vestra, scire, Deo fanente postquam eximmus à Plemut qua fuit x. Iuni &c. (the substance is the same with the former, and therefore omitted) Datum apud le Baya Saint Ioban in Terris Nouis, die x. Augusti, 1927. Rener. Patr. vest. bumilis ferung, Albertin de Prato. (the name written in the lowest corner of the sheet.)

The voyage of Captaine GEORGE WEYMOVTH, intended for the discouerie of the North-west Passage toward China. with two flye Boates.

N Sunday the fecond day of May, 1602. in the afternoone, I weighed anchor and fet faile from Reactiffe with two Fly-boates, the one called the Diffenery, of feuentic Tunnes; and the other called the God freed, of fixtie Tunnes, to discouer the North-west passage, having in my thips fine and thirtie men and boyes, throughly violualled and abundantly furnished with all neceffaries for a yeere and an halfe, by the right Worthipfull Merchants of the Moscome and Turkie Companies: who for the better successe of the voyage provided mee of a great travailer and nies. 60 learned Minister one Master John Cartwright. The Master under mee in the Discouerie was one Master Cart-William Cobreth, a skilfull man in his profession; and in the God freed, one loke Drewe, and Mate wright had bin in the faid thip one Iohn Lane.

The first of Iune, we descried Buquhamnes in the Latitude of 57 degrees. The second day former Tome, we faw she Point of Buqubammes North-west from vs, being a very smooth land; and the land Buqubamme,

and I agreed with one of the fisher men to carry me betweene the Isles of Orkney, because I was

not acquainted with the coast. The fourth day, at ten of the clocke, wee descried the lifes of

Orkner. Some of those Southerne Hands are prettie high land; but the Northerne Hand, which

is called the Start, is very low land. There is no danger, giving the shore a good birth, voletheir

be by the Norther point of the Start: there doth a ledge of Rockes lye a mile from the floare.

At noone I found my selfe to be in the latitude of 59. degrees and 30 minutes, the point of the

North, the winde at North-east, with fogge some three or soure houres, and then cleare again:

the ayre very warme, as in England in the moneth of May. The foureteenth was faire weather,

and the winde at East North-east, and our course West and by North. The fifteenth much raine

all the forenoone, our course West, the winde at East and by North. The sixteenth, the winde

was at North North-east, with much raine, winde and fogge. In the forenoone, being very cold,

and at noone, I observed the Sun, and found vs to be in 57. degrees and 35. minutes: we found the

variation to be eleuen degrees Westward; and by that meane I found my felfe to be one degree

more to the Southward, then we should have bin by our course; for we could not see the Sunne

twelfth day, we could not finde any variation at all. Then we flood close by a winde to the

Westward, the winde being at North North-east. The seauenteenth wee ranne North and by

West, the winde at North North east, faire weather. This day we saw many gray Gulles, and

fome Pigions. The eighteenth at noone I observed the Sunne, and found our selves tobe in the

lay North from vs, as farre as we could ken ie from the head of our maine topmast : and about

two of the clocke in the afternoone, we faw the South part of Groneland, North from vs forme

ten leagues. As we coasted this Ice to the Northward, we found it to be a maine banke of Ice;

for we law the other end of it to beare West North-west from vs; the winde being at South

teenth, the winde was at East South-east, with some small raine. The twentieth, our course was

againe. Seeing this change of water, in often to be thick, and cleare againe fo fuddenly, we imagi-

ned it had beene shallow water: then we founded, and could fetch no ground in one hundred and twenty fathomes; and the Sea was so smooth, that we could differe no current at all. At this

time I reckoned the Cape of desolation to beare North North-east twentie four leagues from vs.

The one and twentieth, the winde was variable. The two and twentieth, we were in the lati-

by West. The season and twentierh, the winde was at West South-west : then our course was 50

South-west, little winde : Then we ranne West South-west, to cleere vs of the Ice, The nine- 40

in 96 houres before this day at noone, and at our last observation before this, which was the

Orkney.

The Statt. 59.degi ees 30. Faire Ile.

Two fmall I-

Start bearing West: and at one of the clocke in the afternoone, we saw a faire lle, which bare Ster bearing Wett: and at one or time cooker in the authority, which care North eaft and by North from vs: and at eight of the clock eat night, wee were North of the North-eart and opposite Holm vs. and reeign of the december of the Holm I directed my course West and by North. The fifth day about ten of the clockern the morning, we ranne fome tenne leagues, and then we faw two fmall Hands, fome two leagues off: and a teight and nine of the clocke we faw foure or five Boats of Fisher-men, and spake with one of them, and they were Scottilb-men. The fixt, in the morning fell much raine, and lafted till one of them, and they were sermemen. In custing the mounting cut much raine, and lafted cill mine of the clocke; and at ten of the clocke it cleared up, and became very faire weather, and very temperate and warme, and our courfe was Well. The featernth, the wind was at East and by North, faire weather, and our course West. The eight, at noone I observed the Sunne, and found vs to be in 59. degrees and fortie feuen minutes, and we ran West South-west. The tweifth day we held our course West, the winde at East North-east, with sogge in the 57, degrees 55 morning: at noone I observed the Sunne, and found my selfe in 57, degrees, and 55, minutes, 10

min no variation here was nothing at all. The thirteenth at noone, our course was West and by

Variation ele-Westward.

No variation.

Guis and Pigions, 53.deg. st.min. latitude of 59. degrees, and \$1. minutes. And then we first descried a great lland of Ice, which Greneland.

A maine bank

Blackwiter as Well North-weit, the winde being at North and by East, little winde. This day sometimes we thick as puddle came into blacke water as thickers puddle, and in failing a little space the water would be cleare

so,deg.37-min tude of 60. degrees and 37. minutes : the winde being at West, wee ranne North and

North-west and by North, the weather faire and warme, as in England, in the moneth of Store of Guls, May. This day we faw great flore of Gulles, which followed our Ship fundry dayes, The eight and twentieth, the winde being at North and by West, wee directed our course to the Westward; and about twelve of the clocke the same night, we descried the land of Appe ed n 6 sees. The victorials and a degrees and 30 minutes; which we made to be Warwick; foreland, and a minutes; which we made to be Warwick; foreland. This Headland rose like an Hand. And when we came neere the Foreland, we saw source small llands to the Northwards, and three imall Ilands to the Southward of the fame Foreland. The Foreland was high isnd : all the cops of the his were conered with Snow. The three small llands to the Southward were also white, that we could not discerne them from Ilands of Ice : also there was great store of drift Ice vpon the Eastfide of this Foreland : but the Sea was altogether 62 voide of Ice : the Land did lye North and by East, and South and by West, being fix lesgues

The nine and twentieth, at fixe of the clocke in the morning, wee were within three leagues of this Foreland : then the winde came up at North-east and by East, a good stiffe gale with

force; and wee wereforced to fland to the Southward; because wee could not wether the togge: and were well-tolered than the food to the Southward along by Warmicks Foreland, we warmicks Fire could discerne none otherwise, bot that it was an Iland. Which if it fall out to be so, then to be an Iland. Lambers Inlet, and the next Southerly fifter, where the great Current fetteth to the Weft, The greatest must of necessitie be one Sex; which will be the greatest hope of the passage that way. The hope of the mun or secentific be one say, with fogge and Snow. This day wee came into a great North-west thirtieth, the winde was at North-east, with rogge and show. I his day wer came into a great passage, whirling of a Current, being in the latified of 61. degrees, and about twelve leagues from the A current

CHAP. 12. Current Maine banke of Ice. Blacke mater. Thicke forges.

coal of America.

The first day of July, the while was at Well, with fogge and Snow, the ayre being very gold, fastioned as to This day were cause into imany Outrilly. Which feethed to 'nume' a great cliteries; but give to the which way it did it. we could not well dideren. The greatest likelihood was, this is thought for the Well. But having contriry, whole field fixeren the greatest likelihood was, that A curren like it hold for the Well. But having contriry, whole field fixeren or guernesse dayer, we by note to the always lay its remember in more given the contriry. We have find a but yets to current in way.

The second day, wee descrited a maine Banke of Ice in the latitude of 60, degrees the winde A maine bank was at North North-well; and very faire weather. Wee wenting fielh water did sayle close of ice in codes was at North North North Tee, and hovied out our Boate, and loaded her twice with Ice, which made vs grees. very good fresh water. Within twenty leignes of the coast of "Imerica", wee should oftencoast of sanditimes come into many great outrfals. Which doth manifestly show, that all the coast of Amecasemen to

The third, the winde was at South-well, very foggie; and as wee flood toward the coast of America, wee met with another maine Banke of Ice. The fogge was to thicke, that we were hard by the Ice, before wee could fee it. But it pleafed God that the winde was faire to put vs cleare from this Ice againe; and presently it began to cleare up, so that wee could see two or three leagues off; but we would fee no end of the Ice. Wee judged this Ice to be some tenne leagues from the coast of America. We found the water to be very blackish and thicke like pud- Blacke puddle

The eight, the winde was at North North-west, very faire weather; wee standing to the 20 Westwards met with a mighty maine Banke of Ice, which was a great length and breadth, and it did reft close to the floare. And at elemen of the clocke in the forenoone, wee descried agains is the certains on marts. This is readed to the Lind of America, in the lating deep of 3 degrees and 5; aminutes, being very high Lind; and America, in the lating deep of 3 degrees and 5; aminutes, being very high Lind; the different is tild if it as lands, the toppes being coursel with Snow. This Land was South-west and by different mes. West, former fine lengths of the 3; we could come for nearly 16; of the great quantities of Lee, which deg. 13 minutes. refted by the shoare side.

The ninth, the winde being at North-east and by East, blew to extreamely, that we were forced to fland to the Southward, both to cleare our felues of the Land, and of the Ice: for the day before we passed a great banke of Ice, which was some sourcteene leagues to the Eastward of vs, when the storme began; but thankes be to God, we cleared our selues both of the Land and of the Ice. This day in the afternoone the fforme grew to extreame, that we were forced to

fland alone with our forecourse to the Southward.

The security mas very foggie, the winde being at East: and about two of the clocke in the afternoone, weesaw four great Hands of Ice, of a huge bignesse: and about soure of the clocke we came among fome fmall cattered Ice, and luppofed our felos to be neere fome great
Banke. The fogge was very thicke, but the winde large to fland backe the fame way wee in; or elfe it would have indangered our lives very much. And at nine of the clocke at night we heard a great noyle, as though it had bin the breach of tome thoare. Being defirous to fee what The loathlome it was, we flood with it, and found it to be the noyle of a great quantity of Ice, which was noyle of Ice, very loathforme to be heard. Then were flood North North-well, and the fogge contiso mued fo thicke, that wee could not fee two Shippes length from vs : whereupon we thought good to take in some of our layles; and when our men came to hand them, they found our fayles, ropes, and tacklings, so hard frozen, that it did feeme very strange vnto vs, being in the Sayles, worth

chiefest time of Summer. The eighteenth day, the winde was at North-east and by North, the ayre being very cleere frozen. and extreame cold, with an exceeding great frost; and our course was North-west. This day in the forenoone, when we did fet our fayles, we found our ropes and tacklings harder frozen then they were the day before : which frost did annoy vs so much in the vsing of our ropes and fayles, that wee were enforced to breake off the Ice from our ropes, that they might sunne through the blockes. And at two of the clocke in the afternoone, the winde began to blow ve-

through the blockes. And at two of the clocke in the atternoone, the winde began to blow ve-for ry hard, with thicke fogge, which freezed fo fall as it did fall vpon our layles, ropes, and tackling, freezing as fall that we could not almost hoyfe or strike our sayles, to have any vie of them. This extreame frost stirfell and long continuance thereof, was a maine barre to our proceeding to the Northward, and the difcouraging of all our men.

The nineteenth day, the winde was at North and by East, and our course to the Eastwards.

Mutinie.

The same night following, all our men conspired secretly together, to be are up the helme for England, while I was affeepe in my Cabin, and there to have kept mee by force, vntill I had fworn vnto them, that I would not offer any violence vnto them for fo doing. And indeede they had drawn in writing, the causes of their bearing up of the helme, and thereunte set their hands and would haue left them in my Cabin : but by good chance I vnderftood their pretence, and

The twentieth day, I called the chiefest of my Company into my Cabin, before Master lobe Carrieright our Preacher, and our Mafter, William Cobrath, to heare what reasons they could alleade for the bearing up of the Helme, which might be an onerthrow to the Voyage, feeing the Merchants had bin at fo great a charge with it. After much conference, they deducted mee in

Concluding, that although it were granted, that we might winter betweene 60 and 70. degrees of latitude, with latetic of our lines and Veffels, yet it will be May next before wee our diffuore them, to lanch out into the Sea. And therefore if the Merchants should have purpose to proceede on the discouerie of these North-west parts of America; the next year pose to proceede on the obscuber or these vortice were parts or **Districts*; the next years you may be in the aforefail altitudes for **England*, by the first of **May*, and so be surnished better with men and victuals, to passe and proceeds in the aforefail askind.

Seeing then that you cannot assure vs of a last harbour to the Northward, were purpose to

beare up the Helmefor England; yet with this limitation, that if in your wisedome, you shall beare up the Heimetor cogresse; yet with this limitation, that it in your whichome, you mall thinke good to make any discourty, either in 60 or 57 degrees, with this faire Northerly winds, 20 we yeelde our liues with your selfe, to encounter any danger. Thus much we thought needefull to fignifie, as a matter builded vpon reason, and not proceeding vpon feare or cow-

68.deg.53.min

Then, wee being in the Latitude of 68. degrees and 53. minutes : the next following, about eleuen of the clocke, they bare up the Helme, being all fo bent, that there was no meanes to periwade them to the contrary. At last understanding of it, I came forth of my Cabin, and demanded of them, who bare up the Helmer They answered me, One and All. So they hoysed up all the North, the fayle they could, and directed their course South and by West.

The two and wentieth, Hent for the chiefest of those, which were the cause of the bearing up of the Helme, and punished them seurely that this punishment might be a warning 30 to them afterward for falling into the like mutinie. In the end, vpon the intreatie of Mafter Carturight our Preacher, and the Mafter, William Cobreath, vpon their fubmiffion, I remitted some part of their punishment. At twelue of the clocke at noone, wee came hard by a great lland of Ice : the Sea being very smooth and almost calme, wee hoysed out the Boates of both our Shippes: being in want of fresh water, and went to this Iland to per some Ice A great Iland to make vs fresh water. And as wee were breaking off some of this Ice (which was verie painefull for vs to doe; for it was almost as hard as a Rocke:) the great Iland of Ice gaues mightiecracke two or three times, as though it had bin a thunder-clappe; and presently the mignice tacket two or unfectiones, as unsugnished our acumuler-cappe; and preferrly the Hand began to outerfrow, which was like to have finke both our Boates; if we had not made good hafte from it. But thankes be to God, we estaped this danger very happily, and came 40 aboord with both our Boates, the one halfe laden with Ice, There was great flore of Sea Foule vpon this Iland of Ice.

The fine and twentieth and fix and twentieth, the winde being at East, did blow a hard

The feuen and twentieth, the winde was at South South-east, and blew very hard, our course

came vpin a showreby the West North-west, blowing so hard, that wee were forced to put a 50

my selfe to be in the entering of an Inlet, which standeth in the latitude of 61. degrees and 40.

was West. The eight and twentieth and nine and twentieth, our course was West and by South, the winde blowing very hard at East South-east, with fogge and raine. The thirtieth, the winde

Shippes sicke, wee thought it good to returne with great hope of this Inlet, to bee a passage of more pessibilitie, then through the Straight of Danie : because I found it not much peffered with Ice, and to be a straight of fortie leagues broad. Also I sayled an hundred leagues West and by South, within this Inlet; and there I found the variation to be

35, degrees to the Westward, and the needle to decline, or rather incline 83, degrees and

like a thunder-Great flore of Sea Foule vp.

on the Ice. An Inletin 61. gale, and our course was West and by South, with sogge. This day in the afternoone I did reckon

The return out fore the Sea. Now because the time of the yeare was farre spent, and many of our men in both

Thevariation 35. degrees Westward.

The fifth of August (the windeall that while Westerly) wee were cleare of this Inlet agains. The fixth the winde was at East South-east with fogge. The seauenth, eight, and ninth, we pas-An Iland en the coath of a commence of the inches of the i deg. & 30.min. darke, we were forced to stand to the Northward againe. This night we passed by some great Ilands of Ice, and some bigge peeces which did breake from the great Ilan's: and we were like

to finke some of them two or three times : which if we had done, it might have endangered our Shippes and lines. Our confort, the Godfpeede, Brooke's little piece of Ice, which they The Godfpeede thought had foundred their Shippe; but thankes be to God they received no great hurt, for piece of lee;

CH AP. 12.

our Shippes were very firong.

The tenth day, the winde was at North-east and by North, with fogge and rame; and our course was to the South-eastward: for we could by no meanes put with the thoare, by reason of the thicknesse of the fogge, and that the winde blew right vpon the shoare, fo that we were forced to beare faile to keepe our felues from the land, vntill it pleafed God to fend vs a cleare: which God knoweth we long wanted. At fixe of the clocke in the afternoone, it was calme: and then I judged my felfe, by mine account, to be necrethe Land : fo I founded, and had ground in 160 factiones, and fine grey Ofic Sand : and there was a great Hand of Ice, a ground within a league of vs, where we founded, and within one houre it pletfed God to fend vs achtere. Then we well we law the land fome four leagues South-west and by South from vs. This land lyeth East and by South; and West and by North, being good high land, but all Hands, as farre as wee bould dif- Many Handt. cerne. This calme continued vitall foure of the clocke in the afternoone of the elebenth day; the weather being very cleere, we could not differ ne any Current to goe at all by this Land. This day the Sea did fet vs in about a league neerer the Land, fo that wee judged our felues three leagues off. Here we founded againe, and had but eightie fathoms.

The variation of the Compasse we found to be 22. degrees and 10. minutes Westward. At The variation 20 fue of the clocke there forung vp a fine gale of winde, at East South-east, and being so neere 32 degrees to night, wee flood to the Southward, thinking the next day to feeke fome harbour. But it pleafed God, the next day, being the twelfth, to fend vsa ftorme of foule weather, the winde being A Storme at East and by South, with sogge: so that we could by no meanes get the shoare. Thus wee were forced to beate up and downe at Sea, untill it should please God to fend vs better

The foureteenth, I thoughe good to hand to the Wellward to fearth in Inlett in the latitude of & 6. degrees. I have good hope of a passage that way, by many great and probable reasons. The fifteenth the windercontinued at the South with exceeding fame weather, and ou

course was West. We were this day at noone in the language of the degrees and 31. Suinter 300 (1.4 course) of found the variation to be 17. degrees and 13. minutes 3160 tile Westward: And about seven of variation 17. A round one variation to or 17,00 green as a symmetric to the variation and a fine of the similar of the clocks carried, we described the Land against being come fragues on the Edward of the sides remains later. This Land dis bacse from we South-week-weeks which which which we give all a boot nine of the They dried clocks the time sight, when wends currect the Week's Which thew right was not fix to from the the hand again. tring into this Inlet. a broken to be be and and of or

The fixteenth, the winde was at Wolf North-Welf , and was very faire weather , and our course South-west : about time of the clocke in the foreneone, we cante by a great fland of Ice; and by this Hand we found fome preces of Ice broken off from the faid Hand : And being in great want of fresh water, wee soyled out our Boates of both Shippes, and loaded them twice with Ice, which made vs very good fresh water. This day at moone wet found our felues to be in the latitude of 55 degrees and twentie minutes : when we had taken in our Ice and Boates, the \$5 deg. 20 min. weather being very faire and cleare, and the winde at Well North-well, we bent our course for the Land; and about three of the clocke in the aftermone; we whe within three feightly of a pleatint bor the floar. As is a very pleatint low Land; but all Itansi; and goodly founds going between them, toward the South-went. This Land oth Rand in the heativities of 3; deprive; and Minde found the variation to be so the Well 28. degrees and 24 we insure. This don't is voide of fee, ye. The variation leffe it be some great Hands of Ice, that come from the North, and so by windes may be differt 18.deg. and 12. woon this chaff. Also we did limbs the ayre in this place to be very temperate. Truely there is min.Weftward; in three fourfill places great hope of a passage, betweene she latitude of ou and y a degrees if the area. force doe not hinder it, which is all the feared have. At fixe of the clocke, wee being becaused Green bose of

so by the thorre, there appeared vnto vs a great ledge of rookes, betweene vs and the thorre; as a pallage him by the inorge, there appeared with 5 s great ledge of roomes, betweene verland she thickey, "as a pallage furnishough the Sea did she ouns it with a greatable light. As we all beheld it, did this who either choice in these places a fudden in vanishacket and ways; which formed very strange wife very light, and to the Estimate of the state of very function of very furnishing the color legges, without a great Rocket lying thing these leggeds of the land wire than Rocks strangly supposing a to the should water, by this tooken ground, founded, but could get no getting in one vanishing. In land with the land wire than the land wire that land wire a land wire land with the land wire land with the land wire land

But the leventeenth in the morning, the winde being at the South, it began to blow to excl -committee. treamely, that we durit not thay by the florare, for it was like to be a great florme ? then our courfe was East North-east, to get v. Sea roome. This fibre fill increasing, our flye Bosces det 60 receine in much water; for they wanted a Sparre decke, which wer found very dangerous for A Which inde the Sea. About twelue of the clocke at noone, this day there role vp a great showre millie West, Liking vp the and prefently the windexame out of this quarter with a whirle, and taking up the Sea into Sea, the avre, and bleve to extreamely, that we were fosced always to runne before the Still howle

to be soft

They returned

euer the winde did blow. And within, swelue houres after this storme beganne, the Sea was so much growen, that we thought our sive Boates would not have beene able to have gre-

The eighteenth, the winde was at North-west, and the storme increased more extreame, and lasted vntill eight of the clocke in the morning of the nineteenth day, fo furious, that to my remembrance, I neuer felt a greater: yet when we were in our greatest extremities, the Lord They were en-deliuered vs his vinworthy ferunts. And if the winde, with so great a storme, had bin either They were ear red 30 leagues Northerly, or Southerly, or Easterly but one day, we had all perished against the Rocks, or the Ice: for wee were entred thirty leagues within a Head-land of an Inlet, in the latitude of 16. degrees. But it pleafed God to fend vs the winde fo faire, as we could defire, both to cleare our to They returned to these of the Land and thee. Which opportunities can'ted we for this time to take our leases of the This Book was could open the Country of the Country of

The fourth, in the morning, wee deforted the Hand of Silly North-east and by East, some by w.c.shruik foure leagues off vs. Then were directed our course East and by North: and st tenue of the clocke in the forenoone, wee descried the Lands end, and next day were forced to put into

CHAP. XIV.

IAMES HALL his Vojage forth of Denmarke for the discourry of Greeneland, in the yeare 1605, abbreniated.

N the name of God Amen, we fet fayle from Copeman-bauen in Denmarke, the fecondday of May, in the yeare of our redemption 1605 with two Shippes and a Pinnace: The Admirall, called the Evel, a thippe of the burthen of thirty or for-Finance: 1 per numerous categories and chiefe commander of the whole Fleet, Captaine, and chiefe commander of the whole Fleet, Captaine, and chiefe commander of the whole Fleet, Captaine Islan Committee and Captaine Grantelmon, ferunit water the King's Maichite of Demmarks, my following principall Palot. The Lyon Viceadmirall, being about 30.

the foreiaid burthen, wherein was Captaine; one Gelfein Lindwelf, a Davife Gentleman, and Steereman of the fame, one Poer Kilon of Gentleman, but Steereman of the fame, one Poer Kilon of Gentleman. De Pinnace, a Barke of the burthen of twelter Lafts, or thereabouts; wherein was Kentruman or commander, one lobs Knight, my Ishn Rnight of Countrie-man. So setting sayle from Copennen-bauen, with a faire gale of winde Easterity, wee came voto Elfanere, where we anchored, to take in our water.

The third day we tooke in our water, at which time, the Captaines, my felfe, with the Lieutenants, and the other Steeremen, did thinke it consenient to fee downe certaine Articles, for the better keeping of company one with another, so which Articles or commants were were all fenerally fworne, fetting thereinto our hands.

The fixt we came to Fleerie, into which harbour, by Gods lielpe, we came at two aclocke 40 in the afternoone. The fewenth day we supplied out wants of wood and water. The eight day, about 1000 a clocke in the afternoone, we fet fayle for ab of the harbour of Fleen in abbut fix a clock it fell aime, tillabout eight, about which time, the Nafeof Norman, by the Daide manical-led Lyndis, 1946, bare next hand North-west of vs. fixe leagues off; as which time I directed my courfe West North-west, finding the compasse varied 7. degrees 10.minutes, to the Eastwards of The thirteenth, we had fight of the Hand of Fore Ile, and allow the South-head of Shorland,

called Smitherne bead, which are high Lands; at noone, the Hand of Faire He bearing West halfe a point Northerly a foure leagues off /I made observation, and found vs in the latitude of 5.9. degrees 20. minutes. This night about feuen a clocke, wee came about an English league to the Northwards of the North-well and of Farre He, wee met within great rice of a twee, as 50 Araca was ride though it had beene the rage of Portland, it feeting North North west. Being out of the faid race, I directed my course Wost and by North, having the winde North-east and by North. this cuering Faire Ile bearing Baft South-east foure leagues: Sweeterne bead, North-east and by North eight leagues: the Hand of Fole, North-east and by East, fenen leagues. I found by east observation, the compasse to be varied to the East-ward of the true North for degrees

The fourteenth in the morning, the winds came to the East Southeast, wee steering West and by North away; this morning the lland of Favalle did thew in my fight to be about ten leagues off at which time would deferie two of the Westermost Hands of Orengy, which did beare South well and by South ater or the year

The eighteenth, the ministent Month-well and by Well, wee laid it away South well and by Well, and fountimes South well. This day so mome weawere in the Latreade of 58 degrees

40. minutes. The nineteenthday, the winde at South-west and South-west and by West. wee lying as the night before, being at noone in the Latitude of \$9. degrees and a halfe. The foure and twentieth day, the winde at North-east and by East, we steering still with a fresh gale West South-well, this evening we looked to have feene Buffe Hand, but I doe verily suppose the same zuffe Hand to be placed in a wrong Latitude in the Marine Charts. The fixe and twentieth at noone, wee wrong placed. were in the latitude of \$7. degrees 45, minutes. The thirtieth day in the morning betweene feuen and eight, the weather began to cleere, and the Sea and winde to waxe leffe, wee looking for the Lion and the Pinnasse, could have no fight of them, we supposing them to bee afterne of ys, we standing still under our courses. This day the winde came to the North-east and by East. To being very cold weather, we lying North North-well away. Making my observation at noone,

I found vs in the latitude of 59. degrees 14. minutes, our way North North-west fortie leagues. This afternoon between one and two a clock we deferied Land, it bearing North North-east off ys about ten leagues off North-east & by North off vs about ten leagues, it being a very high rag- First fight of ged land, lying in the latitude of 49. degrees 50. minutes, lying along it South-caft and by South. Graniend, and North-west and by North.

This Head-land wee named after the Kings Maiesties of Denmarke, because it was the first Cape christian. part of Greenland, which we did fee. This afternoone about one a clock, bearing in for the shoare we faw an Hand of Ice, which bore West South-west of vs three leagues off, so having the wind at East South-east, we bore in for the shoare, where wee found so much Ice that it was impossible an either for vs or any other ship to come into the shoare without great danger : yet wee put our felues into the Ice as wee thought convenient, being incumbred and compaffed about with the The shorefull fame in fuch fort, as the Captaine, my felfe, the Boatfwaine with another of our companie, were of Ice.

forced to goe ouerboard woon an Hand of Ice, to defend it from the ship, at which time I thought it convenient to stand off into the Sea againe, and so being cletre of the Ice, to double Cape Defe- Cape Defel-Lation, to the North-westwards of which I doubted not bue to find a cleer coast, so standing away to all this night West South-west, to cleere vs of the Ice, which lay farre from the shoare, being very thicke towards the Land with great Hands of Ice that it is wonderfull. This evening, the Cape Christian bearing North-east and by East fine leagues, I found the Compasse varied 12, de- Compasse vagrees Ic. minutes to the North-westwards. Moreouer, standing to Seaward from the foresaid ried. 30 Cape, we came in blacks water, as thicke as though it had beene puddle water, we fayling in the Blackwaser. fame for the space of three houres.

The one and thirtieth in the morning faire weather, with the winde somewhat variable, wee fleering away North-west and by West, betweene foure and fine in the morning we had light of the Lion againe, but not of the Pinnaffe. They being a Sca-boord off and hauing efficiency, they Sight of the flood with vs. at which time the Captaine, Lieutenant, and Scereman came abourd vs. earnerfly Lion. intreating mee to bestow a Sea Chart of the Steerman , and to give him directions if by tempefluous weather they should lose vs, they protesting and swearing that they would never leave vs as long as winde and weather would permit them to keepe companie with vs. By whose special so theirs perswaded did give them a Sea Chart for those Coasts, telling them that is they

40 would follow me, that by Gods affiftance I would bring them to a part of the Land void without peffer of Ice, and also harbour the ships in good Harbour, by Gods helpe; they swearing and protefting, that they would follow mee fo long as possibly they could, with which oathes and faire speeches I rested satisfied, thinking they had thought as they had sworne, but it fell out otherwise. So having made an end with vs about noone, they went abourd againe, wee being this day in the latitude of 59. degrees 45. minutes, having flood all the night before, and this forenoone alfo, fo nigh the shoare as wee could for Ice, the Cape (briftian South South-east and North North-weft, and from the Cape to Cape Defaision, the Land lyeth East and by South, and West and by North about fiftie leagues. This day betweene one and two a clocke, the Viceadmirals Boat, being newly gone aboord, it fell very hafe and thicke, fo that wee could not fee 50 one another by reason of the fog , therefore our Captaine caused to shoote off certaine Muskets with a great peece of Ordnance, to the intent the Lion might heare vs , which heard of them they presently stood with vs, at which time the fogge began somewhat to cleere, wee having

fight one of another and to flood along it the shoare, as night as we could for Ice. The first of Iune, wee had a fresh gale of winde at South-west, wee steering North-east and Iune 1605. by North into the shoare, about three in the morning there fell a mightie fogge, so that we were forced to lye by the lee, for the Lion playing upon our D rum to the intent for them to heare vs, and to keepe companie with vs, they answering vs againe with the shooting of a Musker, wee trimming our failes, did the like to them , and to flood away North east and by East : larboard Ilands of Ice. tackt aboord halfe a glasse, when we were hard incumbred amongst mightie Ilands of Ice, being Mighie in-60 very high like huge Mountaines, to I caused to cast about and stand to the Westwards North- cumbrance of

west and by West. About twelve of the clocke this night it being still calme, wee found our Icc. felues fuidenly compatt round about with great Ilands of Ice, which made fuch a hideous novie Amichite curas was most wonderfull. fo that by no meanes wee could double the same to the Westward: North North wherefore wee were forced to fland it away to the Southwards, South South West, stem- wed.

ming the Current, for by the same Current wee were violently brought into this Ice, so being incumbred and much to doe to keepe cleere of the mightie Hands of Ice, there being as both and others did plainly fee vpon one of them a huge rocke stone, of the weight of three hundred pounds or thereabouts, as wee did suppose. Thus being troubled in the Ice for the space of two or three houres, it pleased God that we got thorow the same.

The second day in the morning about three a clocke, I came forth of my Cabin, where I found that the Shipper whole name was Arnold had altered my course which I had set, going contrarie to my directions North North-weft away, whereupon hee and I grew to fome speeches. both for at this time and other times hee had done the like. The Captaine likewife seting his bad dealing with we, did likewife roundly speake his minde to him, for at this instant wee were to nigh vnto a greatbanke of Ice, which wee might have doubled if my course had not been alrered, fo that we were forced to cast about to the Southwards, South and by East and South South east, with the winde at South-west and by South or South-west till ten a clocke, when we stood againe to the Westwards, lying West North-west and North-west and by West, being at noone in the latitude of 60, degrees 18. minutes, Cape Defolation is, I did suppose, bearing North and by West three or source leagues off, the weather being so thicke and hasie that wee could neuer fee the Land.

The fourth day betweene one and two a clocke in the morning, it began to blow a fresh gale Eafterly, we fleering away North and North and by West, webeing at noone in the latitude of 59. degrees 50. minutes, hauing made a West and by North way source and twentie leagues. This 20 euening about feuen a clocke we had very thicke water, and continued fo about halfe an houre: about nine a clocke we did see a very high Hand of Ice to the windward of vs. and about halfe an houre after with some drift Ice, they in the Lion thorow the fearefulnesse of their Commanders prefently cast about standing away larboord tackt, till they did perceine that I flood fill away as I did before, without impediment of the Ice, they cast about agains and followed vs.

The fift in the morning, being very faire weather with the winde at East South-east, our course North North-west, some of our people supposed they had seene the Land : our Captaine and I went aboord the Pinnasse, when after an houre of our being there wee did see the supposed Land to be an hasie fogge, which came on vs so fast that wee could scarce see one another. But the Lion being very nigh vnto vs, and it being very calme, weelaid the Pinnasse aboord of her, and fo the Captaine and I went abourd of them.

The ninth day about foure a clocke, it began to blow an easie gale at South-east and by South, I directing my course still North North-west, when some of our people would not be persuaded but they did fee Land, and therefore I stood in North and by East and North North-east, till about three a clocke in the afternoone, when wee met with a huge and high lland of Ice, wee Reering hard to board the same, and being shot a little to Northwards of it, there fell from the top thereof some quantitie of Ice, which in the fall did make such a royse as though it had beene the report of fine Cannons. This evening wee came amongst much drift Ice, being both windwards and to leewards of vs, yet by Gods helpe we got very well through the same, when 40 being cleare I directed my course againe North North-west.

816

Hand of Ice.

A mightie

The tenth day the winde at South-west and by West, I steering still North-west and by North. This forenoone also wee met with great Ilands of Ice, it being very hase and thicke weather, the which did drive them in the Lion into great feare, and calling to vs very fearfully periwaded me to alter my course and to returne homeward, saying that it was impossible for vs by any working, and course keeping to sease vpon the Land, which did drive all our companie into such a feare, that they were determined, whether I would or not, to have returned home, determined to had not the Captaine as an honeft and resolute Gentleman stood by mee, protesting to stand by me so long as his blood was warme, for the good of the Kings Maiestie, who had set vs forth, and also to the performing of the Voyage. Which resolution of his did mitigate the stubborne- 50 neffe of the people : yet nothing would perswade those fearfull persons in the Lion, especially the Steerman, who had rather long before this time have returned home, then to have proceeded on the action, as before the faid Steerman had done when he was imployed eight yeeres before in the faid action or discouerie. Therefore our Captaine and my felfe feeing their backwardnesse now, as before we had done, went our felues the same evening into the Pinnasse, having a mightie banke of Ice of our larboord fide, and spake to them very friendly, giving order both to our owne thip and to them, that they should keepe a Seaboord of vs (for I did suppose this banke of Ice to lye in the narrowell of the Streight, betweene America and Groenland, as indeed by experience I found the same to be) therefore I determined to coast the Ice alongst till I found it to bee driven and fall away, by reason of the swift current that setteth very forcibly through the said 60 Strait, and then by the grace of God to fet ouer for a cleere part of the coast of Groenland, so all this night we coasted the Ice as close aboord as we could East North-east and North-east and by East, till about midnight, when we found the faid banke to fall away.

The eleuenth day, being cleere of the Ice, I flood away North North-east till fixe a clocke,

when we met with another great banke of Ice, at which time the Commanders of the Lion being now againe very fearfull as before, came vp to our fhip, perswading the Shipper and Com. Another banke panie to leaue vs, and to ftand to Seaboord with them. But the Shipper who was also Lieftenant of Ice. of the ship, being more honestly minded, said, that he would follow vs so long as he could: with which answere they departed, vfing many spitefull wordes, both of the Captaine and mee. faving we were determined to betray the Kings thips, at which time they shot off a peece of Ord- The Lims denance, and so stood away from vs. I seeing their peruerse dealing let them goe, wee coasting partingsrom along it the Ice North North-east with a fresh-gale, it being extreme cold with snow and hayse. the Sea also going very high by reason of a mightie current, the which I found to set very force- A mightie cur-Io ably through this Strait, which being nigh vnto America fide, fetteth to the Northwards, and rena on the other fide to the contrarie, as by proofe I found. So coasting alongst this mayne banke of Ice, which feemed as it had beene a firme Continent till about eleuen a clocke, when weeefpyed the Ice to stretch to windward, on our weather bow wee tetting our starboord takes aboord, flood away East and by South with the winde at South and by East, till wee had doubled a Seaboord the Ice, at which time I directed my course directly ouer for the cleere coast of Groineland. East and by North, which course I directed all the Frost to goe, wee standing away our course all this night, it being very much fnow and fleete.

The twelfth day in the morning about fourea clocke, we espyed the Land of Groenland, be- Sight of Land, ing a very high ragged Land, the tops of the Mountaines being all coursed with flow, yet wee 20 found all this coast veterly without Lee, wee flanding into the Land efpyed a certaine Mount aboue all the reft, which Mount is the best marke on all this Coast, the which I named Mount Mount Cun-Cunning barn after the name of my Captaine. We comming into the shoare betweene two Capes zintbarn or Head-lands, the Land lying betweene them North and by East, and South and by West, the or Head Janus, the Land 1941g better die the Cape, after the name of the Queenes Mas Queene Most Southmost of which Forelands I named Queene Annes Cape, after the name of the Queenes Mas Cape, after the name Cape. Cape. of the Queene Mother. So standing into the Land, we came amongst certaine Hands, where sayling in still amongst

the same vnto the Southermost foot of the foresaid Mount, wee came into a goodly Bay, which wee did suppose to be a River, being on both fides of the same very high and steepe Mountaines, 30 wee named the same King Coristiansu Foord, after the name of the Kings Maieste of Denmarke. Christians Foord, So fayling vp this Bay, which wee supposed to bee a River, the space of fixe or seven Enelish leagues, finding in all that space no anchoring, being maruellous deepe water, till at the length we had favled up the Bay the foresaid distance, at length I brought the Ship and Pinnasse to an anchor in fixteene fathom shelly ground, at which time our Captaine and I went aland, giving Our anchothankes vnto God for his vnipeakable benefits, who had thus dealt with vs as to bring vs to ring. this defired Land into lo good an Harbour; which done, the Captaine and I walked up the Our first lan-Hills, to feet if we could fee any of the people, hauing our Boat to row along fix with vs. Hauing dings deries gone along it the Ruer fishe vpon the tops of the Hills the space of three or toure English miles, tend. at length looking towards our Boat, wee faw vpon the River fide foure of the people standing Our first fight 40 by their Houses or rather Tents, couered ouer with Seale-skins. Wee comming downe the of the people,

Hills towards them (they having efpyed vs) three of them ranne away vpon the Land, and the other tooke his Boat and rowed away leaving their Tents. Wee being come downe the Boat of Scale Hills called to our men in the Boat, and entring into her rowed towards the Sauage who was skins in his Boat made of Seale-skins. Hee holding up his hands towards the Sunne, cryed Tota; wee doing the like, and shewing to him a knife, hee presently came vnto vs and tooke the fame of the Captaine. When hee had prefently rowed away from vs, wee rowed a little after him, and leeing it was but in vaine wee rowed aland againe and went into their Tents, Our entring which wee found couered (as is aforefaid) with Seale-skins. Wee finding by the houles two into their Dogs being very rough and fat, like in thape to a Foxe, with very great abundance of Seale fift,

50 lying round about their Tents a drying, with innumerable quantities of a little fish like vato a Smelt (which fish are commonly called Sardeenes) of which fish in all the Rivers are wonderfull skuls, their fifthes also lay a drying round about their Tents in the Sunne in great heapes, with other fundrie kindes. Then entring into their Tents, wee found certaine Seale skins and Foxe skins very well dreft; also certaine Coates of Seale skins and Fowle skins with the feather side inward : also certaine Vessels boyling vpon a little Lampe, the Vessell being made after the manner of a little Pan, the bottome whereof is made of thone, and the fides of Whales finnes; in which Veffell was some little quantitie of Seale fish boyling in Seale oyle; and searching further, wee did finde in another of their Veffels a Dogs head boyled, fo that I perfwaded my Exters of felfe that they eate Dogs flesh. Moreouer, by their houles there did lye two great Boates, be- Dogs.

60 ing couered under with Seales skins, but aloft open after the forme of our Boates, being about twentie foote in length, having in each of them eight or ten tofts or feates for men to fit on, which Boates, as afterwards I did perceive, is for the transporting of their Tents and baggage from place to place, and for a faile they have the guts of some beast, which they dresse very fine and thin, which they fow together.

Alfo

Of the other fort of Boats There is one of their Boars in Sir T.Smiths Hall The manner of killing of

Their comming to our

Alfo the other forts of their Boats are fuch as Captaine Frebisher, and Master loby Danie brought into England, which is but for one man, being cleane couered ouer with Seale skins artificially dressed except one place to sit in, being within set out with certaine little ribs of Timber, wherin they vie to row with one Oare more i wiftly, then our men can doe with ten, in which Boates they fish being disguised in their Coates of Seale skinnes, whereby they deceive the Seales, who take them rather for Seales then men; which Seales or other fish they kill in this manner. They shoot at the Seales or other great fish with their Darts, vnto which they vie to tye a bladder, their great fifth which doth boy up the fifth in fuch manner that by the faid means they catch them. So comming aboord our ships having left certaine trifles behind vs in their Tents, and taking nothing away with vs, within halfe an houre after our comming aboord, the Sauage to whom wee had given 16 the Knife with three others, which we did suppose to be them which we saw first, came rowing to our ships in their Boats, holding vp their hands to the Sunne, and striking of their breftcrving Tota. We doing the like, they came to our shippe or Captaine: guing them bread and Wine, which, as it did feeme, they made little account of; yet they gave vs fome of their dryed fifthes, at which time there came foure more, who with the other barrered their Coats, and fome Scale skinnes, with our folke for old Iron Nailes, and other trifles as Pinnes and Needles, with which they feemed to be wonderfully pleased, and having so done, holding their hands towards

The thirteenth, there came fourteene of them to our ship, bringing with them Seale skinnes, Whale Finnes, with certay ne of their Darts and Weapons, which they bartered with our peo- 10 ple, as before. This day I made observation of the latitude, and found this Roadsted in the laof the latitude. titude of 65. degrees 25. minutes, and the mouth of this Bay or Sound, lyeth in the latitude of 66. degrees 20. minutes. Also here I made observation of the tydes, and found an East and West Moone to make a full Sea, vpon the Full and Change, more it floweth, three fathome and an halfe water, right vp and downe.

The fourteenth and fifteenth dayes we rode still, the people comming to vs , and bartering with vs for pieces of old Iron, or Nailes, Whale Finnes, Scales Skinnes, Morfe Teeth, and a kind of Horne which we doe suppose to be Vnicornes Horne, at which time the Captaine went with our Boat, to the place where we had feene their Tents, but found them remoued; and the other fish and the Seale fish lying still a drying : the Captaine taking a quantitie of the Sea fish into the 30 Boat, caused some of the Mariners to boyle it ashoare, the Sanages helping our men to doe the fame, the Captaine ving them very friendly, they having made about a barrell and an halfe of Oyle , leaving it aland all night, thinking to bring the same abourd in the morning. But the Sauages the same night let the same forth. Yet notwithstanding, the Captaine shewed no manner of discontent towards them.

The fixteenth day, I went into the Pinnaffe, to discouer certaine Harbours to the Northwards, the wind being at East South-east, I loosed and set faile, but instantly it fell calme, and so Our departing continued about an houre. When the wind came opposite at the West North-west a stiffe gale, in the Pinnaffe we spending the tide till the floud being come, I put roome againe, and came to an Anchor a from the thip. little from the Frost in twelue fathomes sandie ground. About one in the afternoone, the Frost 40 departed from vs further vp the Bay, which we did suppose to be a River, promising to abide our returne two and twentie dayes.

The seventeenth day, the wind continuing at the West North-west blowing very hard, wee rode full, the people comming and bartering with vs. The eighteenth day, the winde and weather as before, wee riding still. This forenoone there

The Sauages

came to the number of thirtie of them, and bartered with vs as they had done before, which done they went alhoare at a certaine point about a flight-shot off vs, and there vpon a sudden begin to fling began to throw itones with certaine Slings which they had without any injury offered at all; yea, they did fling fo fiercely, that we could fcarce fland on the hatches. I feeing their brutish time they went to their Boates, and rowed away. About one a clocke in the afternoone, they came againe to vs crying in their accustomed manner, Thone, they being fixtie three in number, the flipper inquired of me whether they should come to vs or not. I willed him to have all things in a readinesse, they comming in the meane time nigh to the Pinnasse, I did perceive certaine of them to have great bagges full of itones, they whifpering one with another began to fling ftones vnto vs. I presently shot off a little Pistol which I had for the Gunner, and the rest of the tolke to certainly tell, but they rowed all away making a howling and hideous noise : going to the same point, whereas in the forenoone they had beene, being no fconer come on Land, but from the Hils they did so affaile vs with stones, with their slings, that it is incredible to report, in such and bonnets two mens height, to fhield vs from the force of the stones, and also did hide vs from their fight; fo that we did ply our Muskets and other Peeces fuch as wee had at them : but their subtilitie was such, that as soone as they did see fire given to the Peeces, they would suddenly

dealing, caused the Gunner to shoot a Falcon at them, which lighted a little over them, at which so flones againe. discharge, which indeed they did, but whether they did hurt or kill any of them or not, I cannot fort that no man could fland vpon the Hatches, till fuch time as I commanded for to lofe failes 60 ducke downe behind the Chiffes, and when they were discharged, then fling their flones herce-

the meccenth day in the morning, about four a clocke, they departed away.

The americanth day in the morning, about four a clocke it beeing calme, I departed from this Roadsted, so causing our men to row along it the shoare, till the tide of the ebbe was beint at which time it began to blow a fresh gale at North-west and by West, we turning downer till ahout two a clocke, when the tide of floud being come : when I came to att Anchor Idan exceltent Hauen, on the South fide of Caming bans (Mount, Which for the goodnesse thereof, I hamed Denmarkes Hanen.

The twentieth day , in the morning the weather beeing very tamic with I little die and to of wind, I looked and caused to row forth of the foreshed Hatboar, and comming forth the weether the llands and the maine, the people being as it fremed looking for watfored vs : making a hi- Thanson lend deous noile at which time at an inftant were gathered together about Tenentie three Boats with come against decons notice at which times at an initiant were gethered together about tenerals three Bodd with men trowing to vo. I feeting them, thought include to present the worft became wewwither to time his present therefore to differents the nexter; I thought it best twenter into bailet with them for fome of their Darts, Bowes and Janvanes, I we testing injury one of them to be Pathlock and by furnished therewish fo rowing Bodt to Son strong the fellands, there furnished the at the manner of one hundred since he wire perfect to the manner of one hundred since he wire perfect to the presenting their desired makes retrieved Science on to make the son of the Bodt to the son of the son of the Bodt to the son of the son of the Bodt to the son of the son of the Bodt to the son of the son of the Bodt to the son of the son of the Bodt to the son of the son of the son of the son of the Bodt to the son of the son of the Bodt to the son of with our failes, to defend ve from their Stones, Arrowes and Darts. They feeling this, went certaine of them from vs rowing to certaine llands, to which they did thinke wee would come: The fibrillate leaning no more but about ten mentani Beater about ve, who rowed stongs the finate of an often Sauges bout with the making fages of fireadhig tow. At Engle perceibing, that with what in midded to goe forth among it that the leaning town which the rest of their folks were, they threw certaine theis and trifler into the Boat, making fignes and tokens to ferch them', the which my Boy called William Huntries did. He being in the Boat, they prefently thot him through both all this night North and by East along it she hand. p, wheeler all the Red charte berg. It is there, co.

A Topographical Description of the Land at did different court the same

Now having proceeded for the discourie of the Coast and Harborn lo sarre, and lo long time as the time limited to me, therefore I thinks it contented, to make a best te descrip-

Now as the time limited to me, therefore I chinke it constaining. So make a best deferration of the fame according as by my lifter experience I found the fame to preThe Land of Greenlands avery high, rigiged and mountainous Country, being all along the
Coat broken, llands, making very goodly Sounds and Harbours, having alfo in the Land wery
of many good Riuers and Bayes, into long of which I entred by ling very pic-lime the facts of each of twelve English leagues, finding the first very miligable, with great planta and of Greenland to the Climate wherein is lyeth for between the Richardynist was mad. pleasant Plaines and
Valleyes, in facts for the Sounds of Greenland to the Climate wherein is lyeth for between the Richardynist was mad. pleasant Plaines and
Valleyes, in facts for a lift lind has been the fame, I could lift in this pleasance, that find a strong write.
Land in these could bee in their Northeria Regions. There is allo in the fame great first of
Fowle, a Rikens, Croyche, Partridge, Phelanter, See him West, Judich, with other landry Sorreoffowle
forts. Of Behat I stourned from any exterpt falsche Footz, of which they are very many. Allo
lake Fores, as I doe hippoc there are maily Detter, Becault that comfining to creating places where the prople had had their Tents, we found very hamy. Hatter Horbes, with the bones of optic heafts
for much about the fame, Allo going ve into the Land week, fave the footing and dunging of diagraberth, which we did hoppoof to be detter; and other beath allo, the footing of one which wee
found to be eight inches coar, yet, notwirthanding wed did conneg of their is for going foun.

some about the inner acts of the property of t

anda i jar

They eartheir meat most part O: their apparell, Of their weapons.

perboyles, exher with blend, Oyle, or a little water, which they doe drinke. They apparell themselves in the skinnes of inch beafts as they kill, but electially with Seales skins and lowle skins, streffing the skins, very fofe and fmooth, with the haire and reachers on, wearing in Winter the haute and feather fides inwards, and in Summer outwards. Their Weapons are Slines. Daris Arrowes, haning their Bowes fast tyed together with finewes; their Arrowes have but two feathers, the head of the same being for the most part of bone, made in manner and some The state of the state of the same to the state of the st hipping the Sune. The Country (As is aforested) seament to be very fertile, yes could be very fertile who is the very fertile who is th no Wood.

Drift wood. T whence H commeth I know not. For coafting all this Coaft along it from the latitude of 66.de. Dritt-medal: The base experience is now note that the continuous in the continuous in the continuous continuou Pinnelle with me did carnefily intrease me to returne to the ship againe, alleaging this, that if the same of the which indeed had fallen forth, is the Capraine as an lonet Grathenan had not by Jenere meanes withfrood theirattempts, who would needes contrarie to their promises haue beene gone home within eight dayes after my departure from them. But the Captaine respecting his promise to mee, would by no meanes consent, but withstood them both by faire meanes, and other wayes. So that vpon the feuenth day of July, I returned again into the Kings 20 Foord, which they in the ship had found to be a Bay, and comming to the place where wee had left the flip hoping to have found them there, I faw upon a certaine point a Warlocke of flones, whereby high perceise that they were good downe the Ford. So the tide of ebbe being come, it being galine we spowed downe the Food, finding in the mouth of the fame amongh the liands, many good Sounds and Harbours.

Froft Iland,

Our meeting againe with the ship. Three of the

The renth day of July the wind being at North North-west, I beeing in a certaine Sound athe state of the lands, their gines have the week of the Welf forth of the Food going to Sea on the state of the food pines are the state of the sta the distribution personal and the same and the same with the same and the command when the same after the name of the thip: we expired on the South fides certaine Wallocke for vp, whereupon I dipected that the Froft might be there, commanded the Gunner: o those off a 30 Peece of Ordnance, they presently answered vs againe with two other. We seeing the smooth (but heard no report) begin to them, comming to an Anchor mayery good Sound by them, and found them all in health the Captaine being very glad of our comming, for a much ashe had very much trouble with the company for the caule aforefaid. Also in the time of our abfence the people did very much villanie to them in the ship, so that the Captaine tooke three of them; other of them allo he flew, but the three which he tooks he vied with all kindnesse, giuing them Mandillions and Breeches of very good cloth, all fole, shees and Shiris off his own backe. This afternoone, I with my Boy came againe about the hip, taking in this Euening all our prouition of water

Twe men (et

courle South South-welf till fixe aclocke when wee were among trough Drift Le, being to le-ward two points you our lee-bow, fochat I was forfit after of Welf North-welf till we were 19 cleere of the same, at which time I directed my courie South-west and by South, wee Lyling so all the night following.

The twelfth day, the wind at North North-east, were went away South-west and by South

The twelfth day, the wind at North North-east, were went away South-west and by South

The twelfth day, the wind at North North-east, were went away to the wind of North-

till ten a clock, when we were among fit more. Diff ice, wee borg againe to lie Well Northwell, to get cleere of the fame, which we did about noon, we laying this day and the Euring before a mightie hollow Sea, which I thought to be a current, the which fetteth thorow Frame. A greate inbefore a migrate hotion yea, which I thought to be a turrent, the which letters throw training
rentisting to Dasis to the Southwards, as by experience I provide 160 making obliquation this day at motion,
the Southwards.

Dasis to the Southwards, as by experience I provide 160 making obliquation this day at motion,
the Southbut in the latitude of 65. degrees 165 minutes, having made by account 85 bouth and by Well way
about ten letgers. This if the motion I displaced my courts, bouth 300 the 3-vell.

The thirteenth day, the wind as pefore, we freezed full South and by Well, being at moone in
standard to the south of th

the latitude of 60, degreed 17 minutes, going at the lame time away South and by East. This forefall gurrent I did find to let along if the Coast of Gradual South and by East. The forefall gurrent I did find to let along if the Coast of Gradual South and by East. The interent day, close weather, being an easie gale we steering South-east and by East. The interent day,

CHAP. 15. Store of Whales Hals fecond Voyage to Gronland.

fill close weather til noone, we steering as before, being in the latitude of co. degrees. This day at noone I went away East South-east; this afternoone it was halle and still weather, when we had moone I went away Battone and any close weather with the wind at North-west and by West, Drift Ice. our course East South-east til about ten aclock, when we met with a mightie bank of Re to wind. A mighty bank ward of vs, being by supposition seven or eight leagues long, wee steering South South east to of see get clere of the tame. We metal all along the this ice a might to feel of Whales. Moreover, we whates fight with a great current, which as night as we could suppose, fee West North-west our for A walls. merica. This day at moone, the weather being very thicke, I could have no observation, this Enening by reason of the Ice, wee were forced to Iye South and by West, and South South-To west, to get cleere of the same, amongst which we came by divers hoge Ilands of Ice.

The feventeenth day; being cleere of the Ice, about foure in the morning, I directed my A great cucourfe South-east by South till noone, at which time I went away East and by South, the weather being very hayse and thicke: about midnight it fell calme, the wind comming vp Easterly. The eighteenth day, the wind ftill Eafferly, welving Eaft South-eaft, away vinder a couble

of courses larboard tackt. This day in the forenoone, we faw certayine llands of Ice. The nine-

teenth day, the wind full Easterly with the weather very hafie. The first day of August also it was very thicke weather, with a faire gale at South-west and by West. This forenoone wee met with a foull of Herrings, so that I knew wee were not farre from the Iles of Orksey, so having a shrinke at noone, I found ve in the latitude of \$8. degrees 40. minutes, at which time I founded with the deepest Lead, finding 42. fathomes redde fandie ground, with some blacke dents. This Euening betweene fine and fixe a clocke wee sounded againe, when we had no more but twentie fathomes dent ground, whereby I knew that we were game, which we had no me of our men looking forth prefently, espired one of the Ilands of We fell with Orkener, it being very thicke, wee cast about , and stood with a small sayle to Scaboord againe. Orkener. welving West North-west off all this night.

The tenth day, about five in the morning, we came thwart of the Caftle of Elfonnere, where wed if charged certaine of our Ordnance, and comming to an Anchor in the Road, the Captaine with my felie went ashoare, and hearing of his Majesties being at Copennan-Hanen, wee presently went abourd againe, and fet fayle comming thither about two a clocke. The Pinnaffe also 30 which he had loft at Sea, in which my Countreyman John Knight was Commander, came also the fame night about foure a clocke, both they and we being all in good health, praifed bee Almightie God. Amen.

CHAP. XV.

The fecond Voyage of Mafter I AMES HALL, forth of Denmarke into Groenland, in the veere 1 606. contracted.



E departed from Copeman-Hanen, the feuen and twentieth of May, in the veere of our Redemption 1606, with foure ships and a Pinnaffe. The Frof beeing Admirall, wherein went for principall Captaine of the Fleet Captaine Godske Lin- Godske Line Godske Line deno a Danish Gentleman with my selfe, being under God Pilot Maior of the Fleet. In the Lyon which was Vice-Admirall, went for Captaine and Commanmander, Captaine Iohn Cumungham a Scottif Gentleman, who was with me the yeere before. Captaine Cum-In the Tenren went Hans Browne, a Gentleman of Normay. In the small ship called The Gillestonre, ningham.

went one Caffine Ricker for a Dans. In the Pinnaffe called the Car, went one flipper Analysis Han Bisme a 50 Noll, of Bargen in Names. So by the proudence of God, wee weighed and fet faile about fix Names. a clocke in the Euening, with a faire gale at South South-west, comming to an Auchor in Elfo- Richarlona

meure Road to take in our water. The nine and twentieth in the morning, we shot off a Peece of Ordnance, for all the Cap- Andres Not of taines and Commanders to come aboord of vs, who being come, our Captaine commanded the Bergen. Kings Orders to bee read, which done, they returned aboutd, at which time wee weighed with a faire gale at East North-east, standing away North and by West till I had brought the Cole North-east and by East off, when I steered away North North-west, and North-west and by North. This Evening about five a clocke, I fet the Annold, it bearing West halfe Norther-

ly, three leagues and an halfe. All this Edening wee stood away North-west and by North. The thirtieth day, the wind at East South-east, wee steering as before, this morning about fixe 60 a clocke, the Lefeld bore West and by North of vs sixe leagues off. At fine this Evening, the Seam bearing West South-west fine leagues , I directed my course West North-west, with the wind at North-east and by East.

The one and thirtieth in the morning, very halie weather with a stiffe gale at East North-

A great cur-

East, was recung. West North, west away, till about nine a clocke, when we had a firmler of the

Land which was the wester gate of Marde, we steering along it the Land, Wee came eq an an-Our comming, chor in Flaggre, where we were to make and take in wood and water. The lecond of June we weighed, and came forth of the Harbour, of Flecorie about fixe in the morning, having a fresh gale at East North-east. About eleven at noone, i fee the Nafe of Northmay, it bearing North North-weit fours Jeagues off. The fourth day in the morning about two a clock, we were taire by the high Land of the Teader, I caufing to caft about flood to the South wards, Well and by South and sometimes West. This day at noone, I found my felfe in the latitude of 57 degrees 45 minutes , the Nate of Normay bearing East North-east two and twenter tion or 57, organization of the Northwards, lying North with 10 leagues off. This day at moone also I cattabout and shoot to the Northwards, lying North with 10 the flemme, having the winde at North North-west. This afternoone died one of our Green. landers called Oxo. All ting quening, and the night following, the winde as before, we lying al-

One of our The fift and fixt moffwhat

Shot'and.

io North with little winde. The fewenth day, the winde at South-west and by South and South South-west , we steering West and West and by North. This day at noone we were in the latitude of 78. degrees 40. minutes. The tenth day about foure in the morning, it began to blow a fresh gale at Kaft and by

South, at which time we flood along ft the Land to the Southward, till I had brought the South Head of Shotland, called Swinborne Head, North-west and by North about three leagues off : and Fare He next hand South-west and by South eight leagues off, at which time I directed my course away West with a fresh gale at East South-east about halfe an houre to three. I fet the an South head of Shotland it bearing North-east eight leagues off, Faire Mexicxt hand South-east se-uen leagues off, foule next hand North foure leagues, wee still steering away West with a fresh gale at East South-east. All this afternoone and the night following it was very thicke and raynic weather, the winde continuing as before. This night at midnight dyed the Groenlander

der dved.

which we had aboord vs, named Omeg. The fourteenth day, the winde as the night before a faire gale, we steering as we did before, with havie weather having a shrinke, at moone I found ys in the latitude of 58, degrees 40. minutes, having made a West and by South way Southerly two and thirtie leagues, differing to the Westward from the Meridian of the Nase 19. degrees 45, minutes. This afternoone we had a faire gale at South-east with thicke weather, we steering away West.

The fifteenth day, the winde as before, we steering away West, being by my imagination in the latitude of 58. degrees 40. minutes. The three and twentieth day, the winde at the Northeast a faire gale, we steering betweene the West North-west, and the West and by North, being at noone in the latitude of 36. degrees 10. minutes, having by reason of a Northerly current contrarie to my expectation, made a West way Southerly two and twentie leagues. The Comraste

alios I do in perpendicular and a surface of the wellwards.

The first of luly wee faw Land being eight leagues off, with agreat banke of ice lying off South-well, wee fetting our tacks aboord had biff East and by South and East South-east, to double the fame, about two a clocke having doubled the fame, were went away Weft and by South all this euening and night following. This Land I did suppose to be Buffe I land; it lying 40 more to the Westwards then it is placed in the Marine Charts.

The second day thicke weather with the winde at North North-west, we steering West and by North. This afternoone we were in a great Current feeting South South-west. The which I did suppose to fet betweene Buffe Hand and Freseland over with America; wee steering West North-west with a faire gale at North. This night about nine a clocke, the Pinnasse came soule The Pinnaffe came foule of of the Vice-admirall, where with her anchor shee tore out about a foot of a planke a little about water, and broke downe the beakes head.

The fixth making observation, I found vs in the latitude of 58. degrees 50. minutes, contra-South current, rie to my expectation, whereby I did fee the Southerly Current to bee the principall cause. The fewenth day, the winde at North and by East, we lying West North-west, being at moone in the latitude of 59 degrees 40. minutes, our way North-west two and twentie leagues. This eue-50 ning I found the North Point of the Compasse to be varied 12. degrees 5. minutes, to the Wellward of the true North.

The eight day, the winde came vp more Southerly betweene the South-west, and the Southwest and by West with an case gale, we seering away North-west and by West; being at noone in the latitude of co. degrees 30. minutes, having by reason of the Current and Variation made a West way Southerly about ten leagues.

A current fetting South-Sight of Ame-

The ninth day clote weather, it being calme all the forenoone, wee perceiving by our ships which lay becalmed, a violent Current letting South-well. This day at noone, we were in the latitude of 59, degrees 40. minutes. The tenth about foure in the morning, the winde came vp to 60 the North North-weit. I cashing about stood to the Westwards, lying West with the stemme, being in the latitude of 60, degrees 16, minutes. We saw the coast of America about nine leagues res in 58.de off, at which time I made observation of the variation, and found the Needle varie 24, degrees to the Westwards of the true North.

CHAP. IS Observations of Convents and Variations in Groen poyage.

The Hill rops were covered with flow and the hours to the Northwards full with Ice, bot to the Southwards it feemed cleere; Here I found a great Current to fet West into the shoare, A Current. which about midnight did bring vs to bee incumbred with very many Hands of Ice, having much todoe toget cleere off the fame withour danger : but by Gods helpe it being faire weather with a freshigale at South-west . wenget cleere off the same, standing East South-east and South-east and by East.

The four exact in the morning being cleere of the Ice, I went away East North-east and North-east and by East till eight a clocke, when I directed my course North-east and by North , being an noone in the latitude of 19 degrees, the Cape or Head land which wee faw to that night bearing West South West inteene leagues oif. All this afternoone and night followme it was for the most pare this weather : this evening I found the variation 23, degrees 55, Variation ele-

The inteendufaire weather with a fresh gale at East South-east, our course as before, be-

ing in the latinuce of 60, degree, no immure, the thips way. North and by Bath northerly twen-tic leagues. This afternoon eaulithe nigher ollowing the wind as before, we fleering fall. Northeaft and by North.

The eighteenthalfo thicke steather, being forced to stand away North North-west to double a great banke with great Mountaines of Iceannoft ineredible to be reported, yet by the helpe of God wee rallen the fame, Jayling alkthis day by great and huge mountainous Ilands of Ice. 20 With the winds at South-west and by South; being at noone in the latitude of 63, degrees 44. minutes. Wee shid fee our telnes beset round about with mightie bankes of Ice, being forced to Compassed

make more take, and to lye to and againe all this night to keepe vs cleere of great and small about with Ise, Hands of hee, where many times we were in fuch danger, that we did looke for no other thing then prejent death, if God had not been emiercifull vato vs and fent vacleere weather, where by his additance we kept our fekies very hardly and with great difficultie cleere of the Ice. The nineteenth day in the morning cleere weather with a fresh gale at South-west, wee

plying amongst the Lee to fee if wee could get a gut to get cleere of the same, at which time wees law the Land of America about the latitude of 64, degrees, it lying next hand South and Land of America North, being high ragged Land couered with fnow, the shoare being all beset with Ice. So *ka. lying of and on a nongit me lee in great perill till about noone, when God of his goodnesse

fent vs to eine a little gut where wee went through, and flood South South east away, commine full by many llands of Hee. Heere I did finde both by my course and reckoning (the variation also of the Compasse respected) that were were carried with a mightie Current to the Amighie cur-Weltwards, as both now and arterwards wee did probably prooue and fee the fame. For I fee- rent feeting to ting my course from the coast of America in the latitude of 58. degrees and a halfe for the coast the westward, of Groenland North North-east with a compasse, whose wyers were placed more then two third parts of a Point to the Eastwards of the North, the variation being 23. degrees: 30. minutes Northwesting and 24. degrees, as by observation I found betweene the latitude of e8. Note. and a halfe and 54 degrees, yet I did finde my felfe contrarie either to mine owne, or to any of their expectations which was in the Fleet with mee, carried almost foure Points with the Cur-

rent to the westwards over our ind gements. The twentieth, wee still layled to the Eastwards by many great Bankes and Ilands of Ice, Here I did give The twentieth, were still layled to the natwards by many great status and reads of rection to being still compassed in, were being forced to stand to the Southwards to get cleere, where the other freebeing sometimes becalmed , weedid plainly see and perceine our selves carried into the Ice to manto direct the westward very violently. This Current setteth West North-west. The twentieth in the their course

evening I found the Compaffe varied 23. degrees.

The one and twentieth day in the morning faire weather, wee efpyed a gut through the Variation ob-ke, it learning cleere to the fouthwards of the same, where bearing into the same about noone. wee were cleere of all the Ice by the mercifull prouidence of God. Here I observed the lati-

tude, it being 63. degrees 33. minutes. Now having the one and twentieth day at afternoone caused the Admirall to call the other Captaines and Steermen aboord, with whom wee might conferre, and having shewed briefly my reckoning with the other events, which contrarie to my expectation had happened, the cause whereof at that instant they did plainly see and perceine: They confessing, the Current as they did now plainly see, to bee the cause of the same. The Current, So having done; I gaue to the other Steermen directions, that being cleere of the Ice they should goe betweene the East and the East and by North over for the coast of Greenland and not to the Northwards of the East and by North, because of the former events. And now at this instant, by Gods helpe, being cleere I called to them, giving the fame directions. This afternoone and the night following it was calme. This evening I found the Compafe varied 23. degrees 25. Variation ob-

The two and twentieth day at noone I found vs.in the latitude of 63. degrees so. minutes. The three and twentieth faire weather, the ayre very cold, as with vs in the moneth of Iamuarie, the winde variable betweene the East North-east, and the South-east and by East, being at noone in the latitude of 63. degrees, having made a South-east and by South way

eleuen leagues. This day at noone I cast about to the Westwards, the other ships doing the like lying North-east and by North with the stemme, finding this evening the Needle varied to the Variation ob-Wettwards 22. degrees 70. minutes.

The foure and twentieth, the winde variable betweene the South South-east and the Southeast and by South with raine and fogge. This day about cleuen a clocke wee did fee much been Iceward, wherefore I cast about to the Southwards, the winde comming to the East North. east, wee lying South-east with the stemme, supposing the ship to have made a North and by West way hale Northerly two and twentie leagues. This afternoone, by reason of the sogge we look fight of the Lion and the Gilliftonre, wee looking earnefly forth for them, and thooming both we and the Uris divers pieces of Ordnance, but wee could neither fee nor heare them . as IQ which time the winde came up Southerly, we standing away our comit betweene the East and

The five and twentieth , wee had fight of Greenland , being about ten leagues to the Southward of Queene Ames Cape. Wee flanding away East South-east in with the Land with the winde at South. All this night it did blow very much , wee iteening North be Week and North North-west. The feuen and twentieth day in the morning was reasonable cleere weather with a fresh sale

at South South-west. This morning betweene foure and fue of the clocke, I cipyed Queene Annes Cape to beare East by South next hand of mee, and King Christians Foord South Southeast of me , being thwart of Romels Foord , Queene Sophus Cape bearing North halfe westerly, 30 about fitte leagues off. Therefore I thought it contenient to put into Commendess: Food where the filter was, both in regard that I had swome to his Manestie as concerning the same; and also because were expedicly commanded to being home of the same. So hauing a saire gale at West South-west, were came into the aforesaid River, anchoring in a very good Sound, hard by the Vre infixteene fathoms , at the mouth of Cumminghames Foord, about fine of the clocke. There came pretently foure of the Countrie people vato vs after their old accustomed manner. This evening about time of the clocke the Vrim anchored by vs. This night the Admirall. my felfe, and Captaine Browne went on Land to fee the Myne of filter : where it was decreed, that we should take in as much thereof as we could.

On Sunday the third of August, the Sauages feeing our curtesie toward them , bartezed Seales 30

Barter for Scales skinnes and Whales

The filmer

The place of

Mync.

skinnes and Whales finnes with ve : which being done, were went to our Boat, and rowing away, three of them taking their Boats, rowed with vs vp the Foord, calling to other of the people, telling them and making figures to vs , of our dealing towards them. Then they also came to vs and bartered with vs for old Iron and Knines, for Seales skinnes and coates made of Seales skinnes; and Whales finnes, and rowed fill all with vs. In the end, having rowed fine or fixe leagues vp the Food, and feeing it to bee but a Bay, were returned alongst many greene and pleasant llands, where wee found good anchoring: the people still followed vs to the number of fine and twentie persons till about fixe of the clocke; when it fell thicke with fome raine, and the winde being Southerly, wee rowed in among the Sounds, at which time they went from vs : wee rowing our Boat to one of the Ilands went to supper. And having 40 Another foord, supped, wee rowed some three leagues up an other Foord, where we found very shallow water, in which place we stayed with our Boat all that night.

The fourth day in the morning about three of the clocke, wee returned to our fhip agains with a gale of winde Southerly, being formewhat shicke and raynie weather, fayling by the QueeneSubias Land among the Hands, till we came three leagues to the Northwards of Queene Subias Cape. when going without the llands, wee met with a very high Sea, fo that wee had much to doe. but by the providence of Almightie God, the Boat was preferred from being swallowed vp of the Sea. In the end, wee got againe among the Ilands, and to about noone wee came to our thips. The fift day, fome of our men went on Land among the Mountaines, where they did

Reine Deere.

Tes Bay.

The fixt day, I casting about, stood into the shoare South-east, till wee had brought Ramels Foord East and by North off vs , bearing roome for the same Foord. There goeth a very hol-Ramels Foord. low Sea betweene the Ilands of the Kings Foord and Remels Foord. The winde being some-A bollow Sca. what ftill, wee towed on head with our Boats till wee came thwart of a Bay, in which I was in the Vrius Boat, which I named Fos Bay, after the name of Philip de Fos , Pilot of the Urine But the Admirals wilfulnesse was such, that I could by no meanes counsaile him therein though night were at hand, but hee would goe up the Foord, till wee came on the starboard side of the Foord to fixe and twentie fathomes fandie ground. The Frm let fall anchor by vs , but the winde comming off the Land (our Captaine and Companie being to obflinate and willfull, that I could by no meanes get them to worke after my will) the thip draue into the mid- 60 in the middeft foord, where wee could have no ground at an hundred fathoms, till the Tyde of flood came, when the flood fet the ship to the shoare : but I laying out a Cage-anchor got the ship off; and fetting our forefaile, flood for another roade up the River.

The eight day about fourein the morning, wee came to an anchor in twentie fathomes fandie

ground, having very faire floatding within yes. About moone the Urin came and anchored by ve It flowerh in this River South-raft and North-weit, and at Randoth in the latitude of 65, For River in degrees and 25. minutes.

grees and 24, minutes.

The ningth-in the morning, our Captaine, with she Captaine, of the Uses, went with their A Town found Boates up the River, where they did come to dee they winter houles a which were builded with Wholes bones, the balkes being of Milales cibers, and the tops were courted with the River earth, and they had certaine Wester Australia and they had certaine Wester Australia and they had certaine Wester of Australia and the Milales deepe in the ground. Their houles were in number about forme fortice. They found also certaine Grauss made up of thenes over the dead bodies of their people, the cartoffen being wrap-

pped in Seales skins, and the flores laid in manner of a Coffee language skins straight in the flores and in manner of a Coffee language skins straight in the flores and the flores laid in manner of a Coffee language skins straight in the flores skins and the flores laid in the skins skins and the skins skins are skins skins skins and skins noone our men came about againe; and after Dimer formothe people came wat o was of whom Fine of the wee caught fur with their Bostes and flowed them in our lains; to bring the street Acordise people of the within a walk of the sector by their means of the state of their Countrie of Ground and Problem agains, 1821, 1821, 1821, 1822, 1821, 1822, 1821, 1822, 1821, 1822, 1821, 1822, 1821, 1822 King, which is sarried upon mens shoulders, when ev alongul his whom the same which has habitants. The create of has this in the recruing with a vanda being of hast four betalt we weighted and comme. came forth of Romber Foord, but being come forth to Sea amongit the lands . she wands came go wp.to the South-west and by South, the Set going manishes high we lying West and West and by Northee Sea, doubling certaine llands and Rocke. Where the Sea going, to wonderfullhigh

had fee waypon the Rocks ... where we had all dyen, ... it Golds his mercyas that initiate, when wee faw nothing before puneyes but present death, had most feat. ws a great gale of weinde at South South-west, whereby wee lay West North-west away with a flamme shear; wee doubling of thellands and Rockey Mere forest to good between containe little llands, which lye off Queene Sophist Capa foured a gues into the Sea. The which Hards I named the years before, Ranger thode, after thousance false Knight: So having green their Hands not without great Knight Hands, danger, was found between them many thinds Rocket and bring cleers in the Sea. The thirteenth at noone, we were in the latitude of 66 degrees 50 minutes, being off Cape Sollie. Well

teems at money, were Hause accusates and a second and a second at the se faw the floare riting like Hands, being very high and Arething South and by Eaftard North , lood as a and by Well about foure and twentic leagues, the thoute hearg befor all full with left fighther dorsains in that place it is impossible for any thip to come into the thouse. Although the Southeartest of advertised thele two Capes, lay fuch a great banke of the fluctohing into the Sean shawee were forced to ive West and by North to double the faste and the least of the state o

comming up to the East South-sale, we desired South South Ide were freed to heat-shot one cleere off the fame, the winde comming up to the South-east and by South , whe lay South west The two sticts, weed there the frees, had be very local and that the product of the two and the sticts of the two and the tw clocke we faw a faile Welkandley Southerry, we thanking to hum, for it was our Vicesation Wemerszams gall the Lim, who had beene greatly troubled with the Loc, wite being glad to meete one and with the Lim.

The eight and twentieth about four in shomorning che forme stafed ; the winds Tomming up to the West South-west. About spices clocks we let our failes standing South-east away. But being wader faile, we fixed great bankes and Hands of ice to leaward of ve white aff 50-East and by South, which lor Ldid indge to breeff Cape Defeteron about eight leagues officiente

which by real on of the forgo we pould not fee and it yet a real of T. had so will are. The nine and twentieth about fixe in the morning, the winde came up to the North leaf and by North, we making faile went South South-east away till noone with a stiffe gale, wee feeing in the morning pieces of drift-lee so, windward of vs. 1. having at noone hilbrinke of the fame I found vs in the latitude of so degrees 46, minutes, having from noone to noone made a Southeast and by South way eight leagues.

The one and thirtieth, the winde continuing, were holding O'll out course with The Winde fill at North North-west, with faire and electe weathenie blowing very much i forthat wee shood away, under a couple of couries low fee, the Sea very article grownel, being in the literade 50 of 59. degrees to minutes, Journa madean East South east way formethat Easterly fourcand thirtie leaguest This afternoone after my observation, well faw fome Lande of the Millatome drift Ice, I femething marrielling of the fame, knowing both by my account and my standards femation, that we were that contagre from my part of Greinland, that was tricubed in all bla-

and en V

Assiderate.

826

rine Chart. For the fouthermost part described therein is not in the latitude of 60, degrees, and we being now in the latitude of co. degrees ten minutes . Cape Defolation bearing West Northa we halle Northerly about fixtue our egges, and Cape Confises which was the next known part of Owendard Northerly about fixtue four lengues, and Cape Confises which was then ext known part of Owendard North-well and by Well welterly eight and third lengues, for holding our comfe East South-call away, about four as clock we hall eight of Land, being very high Land, it lying along the East South-east about fixteene leagues; the westermost part seemed either to fall away East North-east, and the fouthermost point bearing East northerly, fell away East and by North. This Land is very high, having the Hills covered with from, the sheare being very thicke with Ice : this place because I knew not whether it was of the Mayne or an Hand . I mai

med Froft Hand, after the mame of the ship.

The first of September, at moone, I made observation, and found vs in the laterack of e8. degrees, having made a South-east and by South way fourherly fixe and ewentie leagues. This day at noone I directed my course Battahid by South, This afternoone about fixe a crock it fell calme and fo continued all the night following. This cuening I found the variation to Megrees to mile nutes Northwesting.

The fourth day the winde at Britished by South, welving South and by East, hading a thrinks of the funne about noone, I did suppose vs in the latitude of 77 degrees 20. minutes, hauffire made a South-east and by South wir Fourtherly about ten leagues; all this day and the night fol-

lowing we lav as before.

The eight day faire weather, the winde as before, it being almost calme, wee going away as 20 before , being at moone in the latitude of 58, degrees 36, minutes, haning made an East North east way northerly twentie leagues by reason of the great southerly Sea. All this afternoone and the night following it was for the most part calme. This evening I found the Compasse var ind about two degrees as minutes northweiting.

The ninth day also faire weather, the winds tootherly a fresh gale, our course full East being

at noone in the littitude of §8. degrees 40. mirates; our way. East and by North enfectly twelte leagues. This afternoone the winde cambey to the South-or South and by East with rine, This right about midight biblish we distrib with the winde cambey. east, we lying East North-east and North-east and by East with the stemme.

The tenth day about two in the morning, the winds came up to the South South-weft, wee 50 fteering our course East, being at noone in the latitude of 19 degrees 10 minutes, having made an East and by North way saffedy four and fortis leagues, wer having a firsh gale weiterly. This day wee faw one of the Fowle the which are on the Hand of Bas in Seatland, called Bas

Wariation obferued to the

lands of Farre

Geefa This eneming I found the variation u. degree 4, minutes northeafung.

The eighteenth, this forenoone about nine a clocke, wee efpyed land, rifing form what rag. ged . the Eaftermoft point of the fame bearing South eaft and by South , and the Wettermoft get, one catternor pointed was autocorrespondent at no dy south, and the vettermost are formed by Well about gift leagues. The filluad by my account and obligation to a sign of Ferni. Tound obset the lianch of Ferni; 'being at mobile'in the obligation of 6a. degrees; minutes, the meternative file at lattle Rocking talled the below of why when the obligation of the oblig

end, it being about five a clocke, Eaft South-eaft of to three leagues off. This night about ten 40 a clocke it fell calme.

The twentieth , wee did fee the streame had fet vs to the Northwards. This streame fetteth wader the Hands of Farre next hand Baft and Weft. So cathing about wee flood to the weft-wards. fring Weft South-weft and formetimes Weft and by South, and some rimes South-weft, it being very raynie weather, about midnight it fell calme and so continued all night voto the

The first of October in the afternoone about foote of the clocke, we had fight of The Holmes. The second day, wee steered away South-east and by South and South South-east for The Col. And about eight of the clocke this night wee came into Twee, where wee rock all the day following. The third day at night the winde came to the North-east; fo wee weighed and came into Elfener Road. The fourth day, by the proudence of God, we arrived in our defined Port of Copen Hauen, 1606.

The senerall burthens and numbers of men employed in the shipsof the Fleet aforesaid, were as followers.

THe Trust being Admirall, was of fixtie tunnes, had eight and fortie men. The Lion Vice-admirall, was of feuentie tunnes, had eight and fortie men. The Vrm or Eagle Reare-admirall, of one hundred comnes, had fiftie men. The Gilliflowre was of fortie tunnes, had fixteene men. The Pinnaffe called the Cat, was of twentie tunnes , had twelve men. Brederanfies Food 60 is most Northerly. Comminghams Foord is next in fixtie feuen degrees and odde minutes. The Found wherein they law the Towns ten leagues up the fame, is two leagues to the South of Comsinghiam Foord. The Kings Foord is in fixtie fixe degrees and an halfe.

CHAP. 16, Pentle frith: SMargarites Hope, in Orkney. Their pourty.

William Hantris of Semborow in Torke-fhire, is Mafter Hall his man , and is allowed thirtie pound by the yeere of the King of Denmarke, for his skill in Nauigation.

I have alfo Matter Halls Voyage of the next yeers 1607, to Graenland from Denmarke, written, and with representations of Land-sights curionsly delineated by Iosias Hubett of Hull, but the Danes and with representations of Lana-Inguis currently accurate of collecting collections of the the Dance (embine perhaps that the given for Defended winded to attributed to the English Felse) after the Cention perhaps that the property of the Defended to the property of the Land [above degree of the property of the Defended of the property of the Defended of the Defe mased the prhale.

The Voyage of Master IOHN KNIGHT, (which had beene at Groenland eighteenth of April 1606.



Set fayle from Granefend in a Barke of fortie tunnes, called the Hope-well, well April 18, 1606; victualled and manned at the coll of the Worshipfull Companies of Moscouie, and the East Indie Merchants, for the Discouerie of the North-west Passage the eighteenth of Aprill 1606 and arrived the fixe and twentieth of the fame moneth in the Ile of Orkner, in a Sound called Pentlefrith. Heere wee were flayed Pentlefrith in

with contrary winds at West and North-west, and with much storme and soule Origing.

weather aboue a fortnight. In which meane space, I entertained two men of this Countrey, which are both luftie fellowes at Sea and Land, and are well acquainted with all the Harbours of which are outsined to the control of Other general rates, where we make a supplied to the area and a good was opined as on our Yoyage. In this Country we found little worthy of Relation. For it is poor a and hath no wood growing ypon it. Their Corne is Barley and Oases, Their fire is Turife, their houses

are low and vnfeemely without, and as homely within, are low and vnfeemely without, and as homely within.

Vpon Manday the twelfth of May, I fee thyle from Saint, Margarites Sound or Hope in Orkmy, at nine of the clocke in the moming, our courfe being Well fain by South 1 and at eight of
my, at nine of the fill called Hope, did bear Well Southerly eleuen or twelve leagues,
the clocke at night, the Hill called Hope, did bear Well Southerly eleuen or twelve leagues,
and the Stack South and by East Eafterly three leagues and an halfe, the winde beeing at Eaft

South-eaft.

This day was for the most part calme, and sometimes wee had a fresh gale of winde : our course was West and by South, halte a point Southerly. This day I passed by two small Hands. Two small 40 The one of them is called the Ciete, and the other the Row. They are diffant foure leagues the one Ilands. from the other. The course betweene them is South-west and North-east. The Southermost is called the Clete, and is the leffer of the twaine : it is diffant from the North-east part of Lewis, called the Bling-head, seven leagues : and the course betwixt them is North-west and South-east. The Bling-head Alio this Bling-bead is distant from the Farre Head, of the Hieland of Scotland West and by the Northest North halfe a point Westerly, and is distant seventeene leagues. Also the course betweene Blong- parto: Levis. bead and the North-west part of Lewis, is West and by South halfe a point Westerly, and faire low Land without Wood. There is good riding all along the shoare, the winde beeing off the Land, and in some places are very good Harbours for all winds. From eight to twelve at night, we ran fixe leagues West South-west.

This morning we had a fresh gale of wind at East North-east sour course was South-west and by West two houres fine leagues. From two to ten South-west, and by South 20, leagues. From ten to twelue West South-west fixe leagues. The latitude at noone was \$8. degrees 27. minutes. Fifty eight de-

From Wednesday at noone till Thursday at noone, was for the most part raine and fogge, the grees 27.min. wind at North-east and by East : our course was West halfea point Southerly : our latitude at noone being Thursday, 58. degrees 23. minutes. From Thursday at noone till Friday at noone, being the fixteenth, our way was West Southerly about twentie leagues: the latitude at noone was 58. degrees 19. minutes. This night the wind was fometimes variable betweene the South and by Well and South-east, with faire weather, the Magneticall Declination 18. degrees: the height of the Pole was 58, degrees 10, minutes. Also in the morning the Sunne beeing tenne Eighteene de-60 degrees aboue the Horizon, was diffant from the Eaft to the North-wards of the Eaft twen-

From Friday at noone vntill midnight was little wind Southerly, and fometimes calme, and from midnight till twelue at noone the next day a stiffe gale of wird at East North-east. This foure and twentie houres I judged our way to be made good West, something Southerly thirrie

Turce



leagues. The latitude at moone was 58, degrees 10. minutes. Also the summe did rise fiftie degrees to the Northward of the East.

From Saturday at noone being the fewenteenth, till Sunday at noone being the eighteenth.our courfe was Weft and by South a fiffe gale of wind fiftie leagues, being close weather, we made From Sunday at noone till Munday at noone I fteered away West and West and by South, ha-

uing a storme at East and by North : our courfe was West and Southerly fiftie leave From Munday at noone till midnight, our course was West and Southerly sind from the time till noone West and by North and West among. I judged wee sayled fortie leagues these ig fours and twentie hours, being for the most part foggie. The latitude at moone was 57. degrees

A corresponding

From Tuesday at noone till noone on Wednesday, our course was West and by North force fine leagues, being foggie weather without observation. Here wee had a current, which I indee fetteth to the Northwards.

From Wednerday at noone till Thurklay at noone, being the two and twentiesh, our course was West and by North sittie leagues with much fogge and close weather; and much winde

From Thursday at moone till midnight, our course was West and by North. Then the winde came to the North : wee tooke in our mayne course, and I spooned away with our fore-faile till Friday, the winde being at North North-east, I judged our way West South-west, the 10 twelue houres that I spooned about fifteene leagues, the other twelue houres West Norther-Many Gulles ly fine and twentie leagues. This three and twentieth day, wee faw many Gulles and much Rock-weed.

and much Rock-weed. A current to

From Friday at noone till Saturday at noone, I judged our way to bee made South-west and by West, but it proped West and by South, rather Westerly, twentieleagues by reason of a current, that I indge fetteth to the North-eastward. The latitude at moone was 57. degrees 52. minutes. The variation of the Compaffe was about a point to the Westward. This forenoone and all night the wind was at Northa very hard gale; wee spooned with our fore-sayle. Also this forenoone, we faw much Sea Tange and Rock-weed.

The variation

An Owle,

From Saturday at noone till Sunday at noone, our course was Southward about twentie 30 leagues, the wind being Northerly. This day we saw much Rock-weed and Drift-wood. The latitude was fiftie frum degrees. The variation was to the Wedhward threeme degrees or there about. The funne being fine degrees, bigh in the morning, was twentie foure degrees to the Northward of the East. "I

From Sunday at noone till two of the clocke the next day in the morning, beeing Munday, our course was West North-west, we made our way West and by North twentie leagues, having a tresh gale at South-east and by East : it fell calme till foure of the clockes then it blew an ease gale at West South-west, wee stemming North-west, &c. betweene that and North Northeast the wind being variable. The wind freshed toward noone. This morning we faw an Owle.

The latitude at noone the eight and twentieth, was 57. degrees 57. minutes. The variation 40 of the Compaffe was fourteene degrees and an halfe to the West. This day wee had blacke water, and many ouer-falls, streame leeches, and fets of currents, as it seemed to the Northward, and an halfe to the

grees of lati-White fowles. Dead Cowes.

The thirtieth, we found our latitude to be fiftie eight degrees. Heere it seemed that we were Fiftie eight de. in a tyde gate, which I judged to fet North and South, or that it was the Eddie of the currents, which we saw the other day. Also wee saw white Fowles, which cheeped like Spar-hawkes. Also we saw driving many dead Cowes.

The variation of the Compalle 24.degrees Northweftward.

The one and thirtieth, the funne being fiftie degrees about the Horizon, I found it to bee twentie feuen degrees to the Eastward of the South : againe in the afternoone, the funne beeing fiftie degrees high, it was distant from the South to the Westward fiftie one degrees : at noone 50 it was 55. degrees 6. minutes, the height of the Pole was 58. degrees 3. minutes. The variation of the Compasse was twentie foure degrees toward the North-west, Our way made these twentie foure houres was not aboue fixe leagues West, being little wind for the most part.

From Saturday at noone till two of the clocke it was calme: then it began to blow an easie gale at North. At night I observed the sunne setting, and found it to set twentie one degrees to the Westward of the North, the winde continuing variable betweene the North and the West North-west till noone, being the first of Iune. Then I found my selfe by observation to be in the latitude of 57. degrees 35. minutes. I judged our way from noone to noone West and by South or thereabout thirteene leagues.

From Sunday at noone till ten of the clocke the same Euening, it was calme. Then it began 60 to blow a stiffe gale of wind at South South-east. Our course was West till noone, the next day being Munday, twentie three leagues. This day wee faw many blacke Fowles like Willockes flying in flockes together.

The fourth my latitude at noone, was 56. degrees 40. minutes. The latitude next day at

noone was fifting fixe degrees. The variation of the Compaffe by the Scale was twentie degrees, Latiende se. noone was artistize degrees. The variational the Company of the funde was twente degrees. Landade and by my other Infrument twentie foure degrees to the Welt. The funde was twentie two degrees. degrees and an halfe high, and to the North of the West that ie degrees by the Inflament, and Variation 24. twentie fixe degrees by the Scale,

Our latitude at noone the theuenth, was fiftie eight degrees. And at night the funne did fee wire. Our latitude at noose the Estuanth, was not cognitive and at high the value of Fifty sight des-fourteene degrees to the Westward of the North, and did rife fifthe degrees so the Estward of greet.

The chirecenth, the Ice feemed to be dispersed thinner with the wind, or lome other accident: then I fet fayle with our two courses, but was forced to take those in sgaine; and moored to ano then I ret myste with our bouts mile so the Westward of the original lest Street forme I mal courses A fmall curto the South-weithward. For the great fisher of fee that webe for its what despidrate to the South- sent code ward, and the scher final ico which was flotic desire with the wind which was warfable betwine South-weit. the North-weft and the North. Here we were in fight of Land, which bore Weft Douth west Sight of Land from vs, flewing in some partialite Hands. Our laurede as moone was 47, degrees set infinites.

From Friday at moone call eight of the clocke as nighte, were consumed a moored cartificative.

faid Ice : then it fellicalme; and I looked and sowed so the Well ward with our Oares, hoping to set shorough, till twelne of the clocke, then the leegerw very thicks. I moored against till foure of the clocke the next morning. Then we rowed and layled with an easiegale of wind till eight or the clocke the next manage. Then we know an in ayearwing an easing size of wind till eight of the clocke the next morning being Standay. Then't object no blow a freith gale Editerly, and 20 we cannot the fine among the few with our Oars till noone. Our lantitude was first eight degrees. From Saturday at noone till midnight wee guided our shippe to the Westward among the Ice with our Oares, hoping to get thorough: but were were fuddenly compelled about with many great Hands of Ice, and continued fo diffressed with a fore storme of wind at South-east, being foggie and thicke weather twe were so bruised betweene mightie great Hands of Ice, that we were in danger every minute to be crushed in pieces with force of the heaving and fetting of the faid Ice with the great Sea that the wind made, had not God of his mercie provided for var for our owne endenours did little antile to our helpe, though wee employed all our industries to

The nineteenth, we descryed the Land of America, which rifeth like eight flands - the Nor- The Land of thermost part of it did beare North and by West about fifteene leagues from vs. I observed the Angua deflatitude, and found my felfe to be in 56. degrees and 48. minutes. The variation of the Compalle cryed in 56. latitude, and round my iene to be in you degrees at this Coaft shewesh like broken Land or Ilands; degrees 48, was twentie fine degrees to the Weitward. All this Coaft shewesh like broken Land or Ilands; minutes. and the tyde of floud commeth from the Northward.

the vetermost of our powres.

Tuesday the foure and twentieth all the morning, there blew a from Northerly, and such a showeth like fuffe of the Sea, and fo much Ice came in, that our fafts brake that were fast on shoare, and our broken lighted Rudder was driven from our sterne with the force of raightie Hands of leet to that we were forced to hale close into the bottome of the Cour to fane our clothes , furniture and victuals : wee did our best, but before we had done, our ship was halfe full of water : the night comming vpon vs being wearie, we tooke a little reft.

On Wednesday, we went hard to worke when the thip was on ground, to get the water out of her, and to ftop so many of her leakes as we could come by, and to saue so much of our bread as we could; and some went to building our shallop. Also I caused our Boate to be lanched our the Hand; and fent my Mate Edward Gorrell, with three others, to feeke for a better place where Edward Gorrell to bring our ship on ground, if it were possible, to mend her againe. But they returned without the Masters any certaintieby reason of the abundance of Ice, which choked every place. They found wood Mate. growing on the shoare.

Thuriday being faire weather.] Here Master Iohn Knight ended writing in this Iomrnall. On this Thursday the fixe and twentieth of lune in the morning, our Mafter caused some of our men to goe aboord our ship, to saue what things they could. And hee and Edward Gorrell his M. Ishn Knight Mate, and his brother, and three more of our Company tooke the Boate, 'carrying with them paffeth durite foure Piltols, three Muskets, fine Swords, and two halfe Pikes for to goe oner to a great Hand, a great Hand,

which was not about a mile from our ship, to looke if they could find any Harbour or any Coue, where he and to get our (hip into for to mend her. Also he carried an Equinoctial! Diall with him , and pa- three of his per to make a Draught of the Land. When they were passed ouer to the other side, our Master, his company seem per to make a Draught of the Land. When they were patied ouer to the other fide, our marrer, his to have bin in Mate, and his brother, and one more went on shoare, leaving two of vs. in the Boate with one tercepted by Musket, one Sword, and an halfe Pike to keepe it : which two flayed in the Boate from ten of the Sauages, the clocke in the morning, vittill eleven of the clocke at night, but could heare no newes of them after their departure vp into the top of the Hill. Then did the Trumpettor found two or three Their Trumtimes, and the other did discharge his Musket two or three times, and so they came away to the petror.

60 other fide to the West of the Company, where the ship was : where they were watching for our comming; who feeing vs two comming and no more, they maruelled where the reft of the company were. When wee came on shoare, they enquired for our Master and the rest of our company. But we could tell them no newes of them after their departure out of the Buat, but that we did fee them goe vp to the top of the Iland. Which report did ftrike all our men into a

Their Shallop nor finither?

great feare to thinke in what extremitip we were, because we did want our Matter and three of our best men, and our Ship lay funkey and we had nothing to trust to but our Shillion, which was not at that time halfe finished. This night lying curshoare in our Tent, which was between two Rocks, we kept very good watch, for feare of any peoples fudden affaulting wives: or if one They could two Rocks, the transfer and his company had trausiled fo farre, that they could not come against that sight, and would shoote a Musket, that wee might beare them. But they came not at all ...

The next day being Friday, and the feuen and twentieth of June, wee confulted to goe open fenen of va with our Boate, to try if we could fee or learne any news of our Matter, or any of our 10 men : foewe were afraid that they were either futprifed by; the Sauges of the Countrie, or effe denoured by the wilde Beafts. So we tooke with vi fourn Minkers, and Swords, and Targets, and fuch promition as we had in the Ship, and went downe to the Sea-fide, but wee could not get othen tree for Ices At length werecurned, with much adoe to get on shoate, land went to our Ship, to

faue what things we could all that day. On Sacurday, the eight and twentieth, we did likewife faue what things we could, and gat

all our, things out or our Jamp, and muor, naturation at nous, manufacture weathers, popular in con-troface her, and or mend all things, as well as we could; for the law yapon hard wherefore we kept her as light as we could, for beating and bruising of her hulf. That night about mine of 20 the clocke, it began to raine very fore, and so continued all night : and about one of the clocke at nielst our Boate-Swains and our Steward being at watch, and their watch almost out, the Steward went aboord the Ship to pumpe, leaving the Boate-Swaine at watch fome Musker shot length from our Tent; while he was in pumping, there came ouer the rocks a great fort of the the Countrie affaultourmen Countrey people toward the place where the Boate-Swaine was: who when they faw him, they shot their arrowes at him, running toward him as fast as they could. Whereupon hee difclockearnight, charged his Musket at them, and fled to our Tent as fait as hee could, thinking they had befet vs, they were so many of them in sight. The Steward hearing his Musket goe off; came out of

that were alleepe in our Tent, to come to rescue the Boare-Swaine, and the Shallop. We made what hafte we could; when we came towards them, and faw fo many of them in our Shallop,

we were afraid we were betraid. At this time it rained very fore; yetcalling our wits together,

we fent two of our men backe vnto our Tent, the reft of vs made toward them, and thot at them

fome three or foure Muskets : who when they faw vs shoote, they stood in our Shallop, and

held up their hands vntovs, calling one to another. Then thought we with our felues, that we

were better to dye in our defence in pursuing of them, then they vs, being but eight Men and a

great Dogge. When they law vs marching toward them to fiercely, our Dogge being formoft, they ranne away : but we durftenot purfue them any further, for it was in the night, and they

were in fight abone fiftie men. Thus we recoursed our Shallop. Then we fent fome more of our

before we could overtake them, they were gotten into their Boates, and were rowing away

through the Ice; which was fo thicke, that they could not passe away, but stucke fast; for their

Boates were very great : wee feeing them flicke fast in the Ice, fome fetting with Oares, and fome rowing, came fo neere them, as we could, and thot at them some dozen that, before they could get cleere: which that caused them to cry out very fore one to another; for their Boates

men to our Tent to keepe it; and the rest followed toward the place whither they fled. But 40

all our thingsout of our Ship, and made her cleane in hold, having faire weathers koping in God

the Ship, and as he was comming, faw the Sauages running to our Shallop, and cryed out to vs

Aboue fiftie Sauagesin

Very great

The descriptio werefull of men-As farre as we could judge, they be very little people, tawnie coloured, thin or

of the Sauages no beards, and flat nofed, and Man-eaters. . On Sunday, the nine and twentieth, all day long we gat fuch things as we could abourd our Shippe, for feare they should come ouer with more men, and befet vs, our Ship lying betweene two great Rocks, and all without so full of Ice, that we could not passe any way to Sea, no not with a Boate. That day, two of our men kept watch vpon the Rocks, to give vs warning, if they did come over with Boats. Then did our Carpenter make what shift hee could with our Shallop, and did tench her in some places, but neither calked her, nor pitched her. Then did

wee take her, and bring her downe close to the Shippe, and there shee did stand all night.

On Munday, the thirtieth day in the morning we went to worke to cut the Ice with Axes and Pick-axes, to get our Shippe; for all about the Iland was nothing but Ice, and no place to ride free neither with Shippe nor Boate. That night it pleafed God, that wee got her out, and came away rowing with our Oares; but the was exceeding leake, and our Shallop too; and, which was worfe, we had neuer a Rudder to firre our Ship withall. Wee rowed allthat night among

The first and second dayes of July, we continued also rowing up and downe among the floting and driving Ice, with little hope of recovering our Countrey.

A great Cur-

The third of July, we had a gale of winde at North, and a great current feeting to the Southward: Then made we fast our Ship to an Iland of Ice, and went to worke, and to stow her things within boord, to make her stiffe; for wee had neuera whit of balast in her. Then did our Carpenter make what shift he could, to hang our Rudder, having nothing convenient in our

Ship to make Gudgins, nor Pintels. Then were we forced to breake open our Maiters Cheft, and Ship to make triugins, nor Pintels. Then were we retected to order open and the live Chert, and to binde our finall trongins to take all the Iron bands off it, to make fast two Pick-axes, for two Pintels, and to binde our finall trongins Ruddertwithall. So, as it pleated God, that night we hanged our Rudder, having but two Pin-made faft to rels and a Cable through the middle of it, to keepe it to with two tacks. Then were we in good in Rudder, hope to get cleare of the Ice, because wee had some steerage, though it was but bad: for before, and hung the wedurft beare but little fayle, our Ship being fo leake, and her stemme to fore beaten with the Rudderte the rocks and Ice, and having no feerage, but were forced to rowe with our Qares, till wee were all Stern-post, &ce

fore and weary.

The next day about tenne of the clocke in the morning, the winde came to the West North-The next day about tenne of the closes in the land by North, to get vs out of the Bay:

They get out welt, and was rathe weatch being out, which was the third watch that we had after we came out of the Bay, of the Countrey (for before, continually we did watch all, to keepe our Shippe cleare of the Ice, where they or me country our country out the water and the recipe our shippe under or the fee, where as never as we could we began to Pumpe our Shippe, but could not make her (wike in a thou- rode, find throaker, if the had frood but one halfe houre vnpumped. Then were were forced to vnrom- see our Ship, to fee if we could find our leakes. We foom found a great many of leakes, but not that which caused ws to Pumpe so fore. At the last, we found it close abast our foresoot, whereher keele was fplintred in two or three places, where the Sea came running in fofaft, that it was not Our Shippes possible to keepe her free with both our Pumps, and wee could not come to it to stop it; for it Keelewas splins possible to keepe her tree with both our pumps, and wee could not come to it to hope; for it dintwo or was ynder the timbers. Then did wee take our maine Bonnet, and basted it with Occom, and three claces. was vinter to the control of the season of the control of the cont houre. Then vpon confultation had among our felues, wee refolued to shape our course towards to touch allest Newfound Land, to fee if we could get any place to mend our Ship, hoping there to meete with found Land.

fome Englib ur Freuch men. At this time we had one of our men very licke, and another had his hand very fore splitted; and most of vs all were so fore with rowing and pumping, that we were frarce able to ftirre, but that we must perforce. The fift of Iulie, wee shaped our course for New found Land, with the winde at West

The one and twentieth, the winde was at South South-west; and we fell with the Land, be- Broken Blands

CHAP. 17.

ing nothing but broken Ilands. Then we flood to the Westward, being in the latitude of 49. de. in 40.degrees 30 grees and an halfe. The two and twentieth was faire weather, and the winde very variable; and about fixe of the clocked night, the winde came to the Weft North-weft. Then we freered in among the I- Many broken la

lands, to feef we could finde any harbour to mend our Shippe; for the was very leake. When laids which we were come in among them, we found nothing but broken llands, and a great current, which were the files did fer from Hand to Hand, and had no ground at an hundred fathoms. That night we were ve- de Fogary fore intangled with funken Rocks, and in great danger of casting away our Ship, hauing very Sunken Rocks.

thicke weather : wherefore we kept to and fro all that night.

The foure and twentieth of Iuly, in the morning, we spied some dozen Shallops, which were Twelue Shalfilhing forme two leagues from vs. Then wee made what way wee could toward them, &c. lops of Fishermning tome two respections were a new were more waste way were come coward epicin, exc. support of We remained in this Bay of Fage, in repairing our Shippe, and refrencing of one felues, vacual menther two and twentieth of August. Then taking our leaser of our kinde and louing friends, with giving them noth hearite thanker for this goodness, for every ators, we pur forth to the Sea, with giving them noth hearite thanker for this goodness, for every ators, we pur forth to the Sea, much with an indifferent and reasonable good passage we arrived lafely in Dortmonth in Desonshire, and fent word to Lordon vnto our owners, of the loffe of our Mafter and his three companions, and of the dolefull faccesse our Voyage, the source and twentieth day of September, 1606. The rest of this Journall, from the death of Master John Knight, was written by Oliner Browne

one of the Company.

CHAP. XVII.

The fourth Voyage of I A MES HALL to Groeneland, wherein he was fet forth by English Aduenturers, Anno 1612. and flaine by a Greenclander. Written by WILLIAM BAFFIN.

Ednefday, the eight of July, 1612, in the morning I perceived the Sunne and the Moone, both very faire aboue the horizon, as I had done duers times before.

At which time I purposed to finde out the longitude of that place, by the Moones comming to the Meridian. Most part of this day I spent about finding of the Meridian line; which I did vpon an Iland neere the Sea, hanging at the extreames of my Meridian line two threeds with Plummets at them, instead of an index and fights.

Thursday, the ninth day very early in the morning I went on shoare the Iland, being a faire

morning, and observed till the Moone came just vpon the Meridian. At which very inflant, I observed the Sunnes height, and found it & degrees, 53 minutes, North: in the eleuation of the Pole 6c. degrees 20. minutes. By the which, working by the doctrine of iphericall trians gles, having the three fides given , to wit, the complement of the Poles elevation; the complex ment of the Almecanter; and the complement of the Sunnes declination, to finde out the quantite of the angle at the Pole : I say, by this working, I found it to be foure, of the clocks, 17 ani-nutes, and 24 seconds. Which when I had done, I found by mine Ephemerides, that the Moone came to the Meridian at London that morning at foure of the clocke, 25, minutes, 24, feconds: which 17. minutes, 24. leconds, substracted from 25.34. leaueth 8.10.0f time, for the difference of longitude betwire the Meridian of London (for which the Ephemerides was made) and the Meridian passing by this place in Groenland. Now the Moones motion that day, was 12. degrees 7. minutes : which converted into minutes of time, were 48. minutes, 29 legonds : which workminuted differences twintercongrette monitoring to suite years on minuted passeound a writer your research long; ing by the rule of proportion, the workers that is if a 8, minutes, 20,1000 piles the time that the med between Moone commeth to the Meridian fooner that day, then file did the day before, gine job, the Moone commerce of the earth, what shall 8 minutes to seconds give, to wit, 60. segress to minutes, or neere there about: which is the difference of longitude betweene, the Meridian of London, and this place in Groenland, called Cockins Sound, lying to the Westward of

Objection.

This finding of the longitude, I confesse is somewhat difficult and troublesome, and there may be some small errour. But if it be carefully looked vnto, and exactly wrought, there will be no 20 great errour, if your Ephemerides be true. But some will say, that this kinde of working is not for Marriners; because they are not acquainted to worke propositions by the table of signs, and an instrument is not precise enough to finde out the houre, minute, and second. For the bule of one minute of time, is the loffe of 7 degrees of longitude. I answere, that although the most part are not vied to this worke, yet I know lome of the better fort, which are able to worke this and the like propositions exactly. And those which yee cannot, and are desirous to learne, may in short space attaine to such knowledge as shall be sufficient for such things. And how near ceffary it is, that the longitude of places (hould be knowne, I leave to the judgement of all skiffill Marriners, and others that are learned in the Mathematicks.

This afternoone it was agreed by the chiefe of our Company, that our Master, Lames Hall, 30 should goe in the smaller Ship, farther to the Northward.

Variation 23. deg.58.min.

The forefuld Thursday in the eneming, he departed out of the Paisence into the Harrf. safe, to Cackim Ford in get forth of the Harbor, which our Master called Cockim-ford, in remembrance of Alderman Cackin. 6, degree in one of the Aduenturers : which place, is in the latitude of 65 degrees, 20 minutes. And the variation of the compane is 23 degrees, 58: minutes, to the Westward. That curning was very calme, and we towed our Shippe forth with the Shallops and Ships Boar. But within, an houre or two after we were got into the Offin; the winde being at North, it blew a great florme which continued all that night.

The foureteenth, our Mafter turned the Ship vp to the River againe, toward she River where The foureteenth, our Malter turned the Ship vp to the Kuter agains, toward the Riner where the fuppoled mine should be. But the tyde was to faire from titatewe good not get posses, but of were constrained to Anker in a roade at the South fide of the Riner, four thirtee leagues from the Paisene, in which place are many good Rode, steed to be found.

Thurlday, the fixteenth day, the winde wise a North, welf, and blew, to fitting again, that we could not get to Sea tharday. That night, eighteene of vice wene into the lands to which the could not get to Sea tharday. That night, eighteene of vice wene into the lands to which the

Greatfooting. fome Deere, but found none. But we perceiued the foote-ffeps of some great, Beath, which wee tome veres on the series of th

any meanes get to the River, where the supposed Myne should bee. Wherefore our Master bare roome for Ramelsford, being a River Southward of another, called Cunninghams ford, some twelue leagues. And we came to an Anchor at the entrance on the Southfide of the Ford, about feuen of the clocke.

Wednesday, the two and twentieth day, about nine orten of the clocke, the Sauages came to barter with vs, being about fortie of them, and continued about an houre and an halfe: At which time our Master lames Hall, being in the Boate, a Sauage with his Daro frooke him a deadly wound upon the right fide, which our Surgean did thinke did pierce this liner. We all mufed deadly woun-; that he should strike him, and offer no harme to any of the rest: vnlesse it were, that they knew him fince he was there with the Danes; for out of that River they carried away five of the people, whereof neuer any returned againe : and in the nexp River, they killed a great mumber And it should seeme that he which killed him, was either brother, or some neere kinfman to Ibme of them that were carried away : for he did it very resolutely, and came within soure yards of him. And, for ought we could fee, the people are very kinde one to another, and ready to revente any 60 wrong offred to them. All that day he law very fore pained, looking for death every hours, and religited all his charge to Matter Andrew Barker, Matter of the Harts-cafe, willing him to place another in his roome Mafter of the imall Ship.

Thursday, the three and twentieth, about eight of the clocke in the morning he dyed, being The death of resy penitent for all his former offences: And after we had throwded him, wee carried him in lames Hall the Shallop, to burie him in some out Hand, according to his owne request while he was lining. the Shanop, to build him, we went in the Shallop to seeke for the mine, which we had expected Overne South folong. All that day we rowed along toward the North, passing by a Cape called, One one Sophias as Cave.

Cape. That night we flaied at an Iland, some three leagues short of the River.

Friday, the foure and swentieth, in the morning, wee rowed along, and came to the place, Priory, the course also a vertice in a time investing, a weer rower stoney, a maxime to the place, the interior is on the South-fide of the entrance of Comming fount filter: And we found direct place, Comming fount is on the South direct place, Comming fount, which when our Goldinith, When the Dayse had digged; it was a kinde of failuring flone, which when our Goldinith, Rucci, to lames Carlile, had tried, it was found of no value, and had no mettall at all in it : but was like The supposed water Magenie Budde, and of a dietering colous. That day after we had dyned, we rowed up Mine found to unto Associate listone, and or a generaling contain. I have seen into the Mountaines, and the fine charge leagues, where clears of our company weathy into the Mountaines, and the clear in the Country. That carning we returned, the charge we returned to the country pleafains, then they had feen in the Country. That carning we returned to the country of the country and came to the place where the Dasse had digged their (uppofed Mine, and tooks fome of it in our Beats to carry with vs. and recurred toward our Ship. The night we rowed and failed, and

the next morning about nine of the clocke, we came to our Ship.

Sangday, the fue and twentieth, being Saint Lemer bis day, in the forenoone, we came to our Shippe, lying on the South fide of the River, called Ramels River. And as foone as our Mafter sample, 19 mg on the South as on more to trade with ve, he determined to depart with the Shippe Many of their an into the Kings Ford to the Passence: and rowing about the harbour, where we lay to finde some winter houses neerer way out to the Sea, we found among the flands, where many of their winter houses had in Ramels Rivet bin, and fome of their Tents were but lately carried away. In which place were also found one The fashion of of their lone Boates, made of wood, and bound together for the most part, with shuers of Boates. Whales fins, and coursed with Seales skinnes, being iome two and thirtie foote in length, and fome fine foote broad, having tenne thoughts or feares in it. That day about twelve of the clocke Rameli Ford in we weighed anchor, and departed out of Remair Ford, which list in the latitude of 67 degrees, and the variation of the companie is 24 degrees 16 minutes, being a very faire River, and one of 67 degrees. the most principall, which wer law in that Country, firetching in East and East and by South is 24 degrees This night, about one of the clocke, we came to the Patience, lying in the Kings Ford. Sunday, the fixe and twentieth, Master Andrew Banker, and our Merchant, Master Williamon

with other of the Company, were in conference about returning home, because that fince our Mafor was flaine, none of the Sausges would trade with vs, as they were wont.

Wednesday, the nine and twentieth, we were likewife occupied about taking in of ballaft; for our Shippe was very light; and that evening it was agreed, that a desires Barker, Mafter of the Hartf-esfe, should goe Mafter of the Passener, which was fore against the minds of William Goer- William Humite den : and William Hautrice was appointed Mafter of the Hartreofe, and John Gartenby , one of Mafter of the the quarter Malters of the Pasience, was Malters mate of the Hartiesfe.

Tuefday, the fourth of August, in the morning the winds being Northerly, a very small gale we They come out got to Sea, where the winds came to the Southward, and we tacked sometime on the one boord, of harbour.

40 and formetime on the other, making fmall way on our course. Munday the tenth, was raine and foule weather, as it had continued enery day fince wee came Thick and fogfrom harbour, fauing the feuenth day, which was fomewhat faire : For commonly while the gieweather, winde is South, it is very thick and foule weather. We tacked sometimes on one boord, and some- the winde betimes on the other, making a South by West way, at noone fixe leagues.

Wednesday, the twelfth, it waxed calme, we being somewhat Southward of a Cape, called Barnile Cape : and about three or foure of the clocke in the afternoone, the winde came to the North and by West, an easie gale, with faire weather.

The eighteenth at noone we were in 58 deg. 50 min. The feuenteenth day, I tooke the varia- Variation 13. tion of the compaffe, finding it to be 13. degrees 22, minutes, concrary to the observations of o- degr. 24, min. 50 therein this place. And if any doe doubt of the truth thereof, they may with a little paines proce

it. The eighteenth of August, the declination of the Sunne was 9. degrees \$8.minutes, for the Meridian of Landon. But we being almost foure houres of time to the Westward thereof, there are three minutes to be abated from the reft : and fo the declination was g. degrees 55 minutes; and his height about the horizon was 24. degrees 40. minutes in the latitude of 49. degrees 0. min. and his diffance from the South to the Westward, by the compasse, was 81. degrees. And for truth of the first observation, I tooke another shortly after, finding them not to differ about

Wednesday the nineteenth, the winde still continued with thicke and hasie weather, we being at moone in the latitude of 58, degrees 30.minutes, or thereabout, making a South South-east 60 way, about ten leagues.

Thursday the twentieth, was faire weather, the winde at East North-east, wee steered away South-east and South-east and by East, making at noone a South-east and by South way, about thirtie leagues, being at noone in the latitude of 57. degrees 20. minutes. This day in the after- Variation 11. noone, I tooke the variation of the compasse, and found it about 1 1. degrees 10 minutes.

of London and Ceckins Sound in Graculand.

Variation 7. degrees 23.

Variation 7.

The rme wari

ation 6. deg.

degrees 20.

minutes.

Friday the one and twentieth, faire weather, with the winde at North and North by Raft and we made an East South-east way, halfe Southerly twentie foure leagues, being at noone by obleruation, in the latitude of 56. degrees 50. minutes.

Saturday the two and twentieth, laire weather, the windat North and Nith by East, wee made an Balt way halfe Southerly, some twentie two leagues, being at noone in the latitude of 6. degrees 47. minuter.

Sunday the three and twentieth, faire weather, the wind at West North-west, we making an East and East by North way about twentie four leagues. This day I tooke the variation of the Compaffe, and found it to be 7. degrees 23. minutes, being 2t noone in the latitude of 57. de-10

Munday the foure and twentieth, being S. Bartbolomenes day, faire weather with an North North-west, wee making an East North-east way, halte Northerly about twentie seuen leagues and were at noone by observation in the latitude of 58. degrees 4. minutes. This day I observed and found the Compaffe to be varied 7, degrees 20, minutes,

Tuesday the fine and twentieth, faire weather and calme: the winde at North, wee made a North-east and by East way seventeene leagues, being at noone in the latitude of \$8.degrees 30. minutes. This day I found the common Compaffe to be varied one point, and the true variation to oee 6. degrees 4. minutes.

We drief lay the fixe and twentieth faire weather also, with the wind North North-west, we made a North-east and by East way halfe about twentie two leagues, being in the height of 50, 20

Thuriday the feuen and twentieth indifferent faire weather, with a stiffe gale of wind at the North North-west, we making a North-east way about thirtie one leagues, being at noone in the latitude of 60, degrees 10, minutes.

Friday the eight and twentiet, the wind at South-east with a stiffe gale, wee made good about noohe a North-east and by East way about twentie sine leagues. This day in the aftermoone it blest to great a ftorme, that wee were in great diffrese, the winde at East South-east. But about eleven of the clocke it came to the North-west, and North-west by I with. And we ranne fome twentie leagues.

Saturday the nine and twentieth, it blew fo ftiffe, that wee could beare nonebut our fore- 30 faile, making an East and by South way halfe Southerly, about thirtie leagues.

Sunday the thirtieth, all the forenoone it blew a very stiffs gale, and about noone the winde came Southerly; and it blew a very great storme, which continued all that day and that night in fach fort, that we could not faile at all, but all that night lay at hull.

Manday the one and thirtieth in the morning about foure of the clocke, the winde came to the South-west a very stiffe gale. At which time we set our fore-faile. The wind continued all this day and night, we steered away East and by South, making at noone an East North-east way about thirtie foure leagues.

Tuefday the first of September, the wind still continued at South-west, blowing a very stiffe gale, we steered away East and by South, making an East way about fiftie leagues. This day at 40 noone we were in the latitude of 60. degrees 45. minutes.

:Wednesday the second faire weather with the wind at South-west, wee made an East and by South way halfe a point Southerly about fortie two leagues, being at noone in the latitude of 60. degrees 10. minutes. This day I observed, and found the Compasse to be varied three degrees to

Thursday the third day faire weather, the wind at South-west : wee made an East by North way at noone about twentie leagues. This day in the after-noone, the winde being at North North-west, it blew a very stiffe gale for two Watches; and toward seven or eight of the clocke the storme so increased, that our shippe was not able to beare any faile. And all that night wee

Friday the fourth, the storme still continued, and we could beare no faile all that day till about foure of the clocke in the afternoone, at which time we fet our fore course, and our maine course. The night before in the storme, we lost The Hartf-eafe. This day wee made fome twelue leagues East and by North. And we fell to lee-ward lying at hull fome five leagues South by West.

Saturday the fift calme weather, but very thicke and close all the forenoone : the wind continued still at North North-west, we making from the time wee set our courses the day before, about ewentie leagues East halfe Southerly; beeing at noone in the latitude of 59. degrees

Sunday the fixt, faire weather, the wind at North North-west, we steering away East Northeast, and East and by North, made an East by North way, halfe Northerly some 29. leagues, 60 being at noone in 60. degrees 10. minutes. This day the Compasse was varied to the East fixe Ground found. degrees. This atternoone it was almost calme : and wee founded, and found ground at fixtie

eight fathomes. This Euening about ten of the clocke the wind came to the South-east. Munday the feuenth, very faire weather, the wind South-east and South-east by East, wee

eacked in the morning to the North-ward, and ranne East North-east and East by North vntill Land described. feuen or eight in the afternoone : at which time we tacked up to the Southward, and went away South-west till toward twelue a clocke that night twentie leagues.

Tuesday the eight, in our morning Watch I found our selves to be in 59. degrees 20. minutes: And about fine of the clocke I efpied Land, which we supposed to bee the lles of Oriney, as The Head afterward we found them to be the same. And toward three of the clocke, we came to an Anchor in a Channell running betweene the llands; where the people came to vs, and brought vs Hennes, Geefe, and Sheepe, and fold them to vs for old clothes and shooes, deliring rather them then money. There are about eighteene of their Hands, which are called by the name of the

Wednesday the ninth, it was thicke weather, and the winde so Easterly that wee could not

Thursday the tenth, faire weather, and the wind came to the North-west, and about noone we weighed Anchor; and toward fine of the clocke we were cleere of the lles. The Channell Thelying of for the most part lyeth North-west and South-east. All that might west ood away South-east. Friday the eleuenth, faire weather, with the wind at North North-west. And about nine of in Origina. the clocke in the morning, we fteered away South South-east. At which time wee had fight of

Bushbam-neffe: And about two of the clocke we were thwart of it. The feuent centh, we came Bushbam-neff. to an Anchor in Hull Road, for which the Lord bee prayfed. Here I thinke it not amiffe briefly to relate the state and manners of the people of Groenland, Hall.

for a much as I could learne : As also what likelihood there is of a passe into the Sea, which lyeth vpon Tartarie and China.

The Northwest part of Graniend is an exceeding high Land to the Seaward, and almost nothing but Mountaynes; which are wonderfull high all within the Land, as farre as wee could tarnet of floor thing out Mountaynes, which are wonder an ingual within the Band, so ther, and all gliffer very pure. ring, as though they were of rich value; but indeed they are not worth any thing. For our Gold-fmith Lesses Cerlile tryed very much of the Vre, and found it to bee nothing No profitable worth. If there bee any Mettall, it lyeth 6 low in the Mountaynes, that it cannot bee well Vre. come by. There are some Rocks in these Mountaynes, which are exceeding pure Stone, finer, 20 and whiter then Alabafter. The fides of these Mountaynes continually are coursed with Snow for

the most part, and especially the North sides, and the North sides of the Valleyes, having a kind of Molle, and in some places Graffe with a little branch running all along the ground, bearing a Cominual of Molle, and in some places Graffe with a little blacke Berrie, it runneth along the ground little blacke Berrie. There are few or no Trees growing, as farre as wee could perceive, but in one place forms fortie No Trees, miles within the Land, in a River, which wee called Balls River. There I saw on the South Balls River. fide of an high Mountayne, which we went vp, and found (as it were) a yong Groue of small A Groue Wood, some of it fixe or seven foot high like a Coppice in England, that had beene some two small wood, or three yeeres cut. And this was the most Wood that wee faw growing in this Countrey; be-

ing some of it a kind of Willow, Juniper, and such like. We found in many places much Asselica. We suppose the people eate the Roots thereof, for some causes. For we have seen them have many of them in their Boats.

There are great flore of Foxes in the Ilands, and in the Mayne, of fundry colours: And there White Hars. are a kind of Hares as white as Snow, with their furre or haire very long.

Alfothere be Deere, but they are most commonly vp within the Mayne very farre; because the people doe so much hunt them , that come neere the Sea. I faw at one time seuen of them together, which were all that wee did fee in the Countrey : But our men haue bought divers Coates of the people made of Deeres skinnes, and have bought of their Hornes alfo. Thee feem Befides, we have divers times feene the footsteps of some beaft, whose foote was bigger then to be Elkes, or the foot of a great Oxe. Furthermore, the Inhabitants haue a kinde of Dogges, which they Losses. 50 keepe at their Houses, and Tents, which Dogges are almost like vnto Wolues, living by fish, as Dogges, like the Foxes doe. But one thing is very strange, as I thought : for the Pizzels of both Dogges and Womes,

The people all the Summer time vie nothing but fishing, drying their fish, and Seales fielh Foxeare woon the Rockes for their Winter Prouision. Every one both man and woman have each of them bone: to allow a Boate made with long small pieces of Firre-wood, couered with Seales skinnes very well the Mortes a Boate made with long imali pieces or Fire-wood, concred with Seales sainles very with dreft, and fewed fo well with finewes or gues, that no water can pieces them through, beeing which I have fome of them about twentie foot long, and not past two foot, or two foot and an halfe broad, in by me one of forme of a Weavers shittle, and so light, that a man may carrie many of them at once for the sone, weight. In these Boates they will row so swiftly, that it is almost incredible: for no ship in the The great 60 World is able to keepe way with them, although thee haue neuer fo good a gale of wind : and switmeffe of world is a die to keepe way with them, atthough their Boate, and holding their Oare in Their Oares the middle, being broad at each end like our Oares, will at an instant goe backward and forward, broad at both

as they pleafe.

Salmons and Mories, &c. Angles and Lines.

In these Boares they catch the most part of their food, being Seales and Salmons, Morfes, and other kinds of fishes. Some they kill with their Darts, and other some with Angles, having a Line made of small shuers of Whales Finnes, and an Hooke of some fishes bones; with which Line and Hookes, we also have caught very much fish.

Their great Boars 32, foot

Also they have another kinde of Boate, which is very long. For wee have seene one of them thirtie two foot in length, open in the toppe like our Boates; having tenne feates in it. In which when they remoone their Dwellings, they carrie their Goods or House-hold-stuffe: for they remoone their Dwellings very often , as their fishing doth serue, liung in the Summer time, in Tents made of Seales skinnes, and in Winter in Houses some-what in the ground.

Wee could not particularly learne their Rites or Ceremonies : but generally they wor-They worthip fhip the Sunne, as chiefe Authour of their Felicitie. At their first approach vnto vs they vied with their hands to point up to the Sunne, and to firike their hands upon their breffs. crying llyont; as who would lay, I meane no harme: which they will doe very often, and will not come neere you, vacill you doe the like; and then they will come without any feare at all.

Their burials,

They burie their dead in the Out-Ilands neere the Scafide. Their manner of Buriall is this. Vpon the tops of the Hils they gather a company of stones together, and make thereof an hollow Caue or Graue, of the length and breadth of the bodie, which they intend to burie, laying the stones fomewhat close like a wall, that neyther Foxes, nor other such beasts 20 may denoure the bodies, courring them with broad flones, shewing afarre off like a pile of ftones. And neere vnto this Graue where the bodie lyeth, is another, wherein they burie his Bow and Arrowes, with his Darts and all his other Provision, which hee vied while hee was liuing. Hee is buried in all his Apparell : and the coldnelle of the Climate doth keepe the bodie from fmelling and flinking, although it lye about the Ground.

They burne

They eate all their Food raw, and vie no fire to dreffe their Victuals, as farre as wee could perceine. Also wee hane seene them drinke the Salt-water at our shippes side : But whether it bee viuali or no, I cannot tell. Although they dreffe not their meate with fire, yet they vie fire for other things, asto warme them, &c. Divers of our men were of opinion, that they were Man-eaters, and would have devoy- 30

They are not

red vs, if they could have caught vs. But I doe not thinke they would. For if they had bin so minded, they might at one time have caught our Cooke, and two other with him, as they were filling of water at an Iland , a great way from our ship. These three I say were in the ships Boate without eyther Musket, or any other Weapon, when as a great company of the Sauages came rowing vnto them with their Darts , and other Furniture , which they neuer goe without, and flood looking into the Boate for Nayles, orany old Iron, which they so greatly desire, while our men were in such a feare, that they knew not what to doe. At length our Cooke remembred that hee had some old Iron in his pocket, and gaue each of them some, as farreas it would goe, with his Key of his Chest. And presently they all departed without offering any harme aball. But this I speake not, that I would have men to trust 40 them, or to goe among them unprouded of Weapons.

Sauages. out the r wea-

CHAP. XVIII.

A true Relation of Such things as happened in the fourth Vojage for the Discourie of the North-west Passage, performed in the yeare 1615. Written by WILLIAM

Fter three fundry Voyages towards the North-west, to the great charge of the Adventurers : the last being under the command of Captaine Gibbins (in which was little or nothing performed.) Yet the Right Worthipfull Sir Dudley Digges Knight, Mafter Woffenbolme Efquire, Mafter Alderman Imes, with others being not there with discouraged, This yeere 1615 againe fet forth the Discoury, a ship of fiftie file tunnes or thereabouts, which flip had beene the three former Voy-

ages on the action. The Mafter was Robert Bileth, a man well acquainted that way : having beene employed in the three former Voyages : my selfe being his Mate and Affociate, with fourteene others and two Boyes.

The fixteenth, we weighed Anchor at Saint Kasharines, and that tydecame to Blackwall, the 60 winde being at South South-west. The seventeenth, wee went downe to Granefend, and the eighteenth to Lee, where we anchored that night,

Vpon

CHAP.18. Icie fles of Diffolution; the Ile of Resolution.

Voon the fixt of May, we faw Land on the Coast of Greenland, on the East fide of Cape Fare. Granded. well and that night we had a great storme : fo wee kept a Southerly course to get about the Ice Cape Fatemell which lay on that shoare, and then kept our course vntill the seuenteenth day of May, all which which may be sayled by many great Ilands of Ice, some of which were about two hundred foot High Icie torenoone we ray to any five the first proued by one shortly after) which I found to be two hundred and fortie Hadden high about water (as I proued by one shortly after) which I found to be two hundred and fortie Hands. foot high, and if report of some men be true, which affirme, that there is but one seuenth part of the Ice aboue water, then the height of that piece of Ice, which I observed was one hundred and fortie fathomes, or one thouland fixe hundred and eightie foote from the toppe to the bottome : this proportion I know doth hold in much Ice, but whether it doe fo in all, I know not.

This feuenteenth of May, about noone we were come to the firme Ice, as one would suppose. being in the latitude of 61, degrees 26, minutes or thereabout, being the latitude of the Sou h part of the Ile of Refolution: we comming to this Ice, our Marter asked my opinion concerning ile of Refolutions the putting into the Ice. My judgement was it would be best for vs to fland, and ply it vp to the Northwards, Hee answered, we were on the North fide of the South Channell, and much lee we must passe through, and if that we could get some two or three leagues within the Ice, it would every tide open, and we should get some thing onward of our way, having all the Channell to the South-wards of vs. So with this resolution we put within the Ice, the wind being at East North-east: this first entrance I liked not very well, scarce finding any place to put in our ships head, and being necrethirtie leagues from the shoare, towards Euening wee were fastamone the

20 the Ice. But fometimes each day the Ice would a little open, we making what way we could towards the North-west in for the shoare till the two and twentieth day, having had the wind all Southerly. Yet we plainly faw that we fet to the Southwards, for all that wee could doe.

The two and twentieth day, the wind came vp at North North-west : then our Master determined to stand forth againe. For if the wind should have come to the North-east, it would be vnpoffible for vs to fetch any part of the Channell, feeing wee droug fo fast to the Southwards. with Southerly winds, and having fo farre into the shoare, not having seene the Land.

Our Mafter was also determined to spend some twentie, or soure and twentie dayes in Frea tum Danis, to fee what hopes would be that wayes, supposing there would be little good to be 30 done in Hudfons Streights for this time limited : then we plying to get to Sea-ward, and so by eight a clock at night, the three and twentieth day, we were cleere of the thick Ice : againe. the Lord make vs thankfull, the wind at North-west and by North faire weather : but no sooner were we forth of the Ice, but that our Master changed his opinion: and beeing cleere of this thicke Ice wee stood to the Northward as much as the Ice and winde would give ve leave, running some thirteene leagues true North-east by North, being in the latitude of 61. degrees 50. minutes. The foure and twentieth day faire weather : the fine and twentieth day, also faire weather ther, the wind at North and by West, till fixe a clocke, we having made a North-east by North way about twelue leagues and an halfe, our latitude at noone 62. degrees 20, minutes, at fixe 2 clocke the wind was at the North North-east. The fixe and twentieth day, all the forenoone

40 faire weather and cold: but in the afternoone it blew very hard, being close hasie weather, that about two a clocke this afternoone wee tooke in our failes and hulled with our ship till the next morning at foure a clocke, all the time that we fayled this day we past through many ledges of Ice having great quantitie to the Northward of vs, and having runne about twentie one leagues true vpon a West course. And note where I put this word true, I meane the true course, the variation of the Compaffe, and other accidents allowed.

The fenen and twentieth day close foggy weather with much fnow freezing on our shrowds and tackling : the like we had not all this yeare before: but towards foure a clocke in the afternoone it began to cleere vp, and about five a clocke we faw Land, being the Hand of Refolution, and bearing West from vs about thirteene or sourteene leagues. This morning we set sayle, and slood so to and fro as the Ice would fuffer vs, and at ten at night, wee moored our ship to a piece of Ice, the wind being at West.

The eight and twenrieth day being Whitfunday, it was faire weather. but the winde was at the West, and West by North: al this day we were fast to the piece of Ice. Yet we plainly perceiued that we fet a great deale more into the Streights with the floud. Then we fet forth with the ebbe the nine and twentieth day, the wind was variable, and faire weather: about eleuen a clock we fet faile and tacked to and fro along by the Hand. And about two a clocke the next morning, the wind came to the South South-east, but we had so much Ice that we could doe but little good with a faire wind, the wind continued all this day and night a stiffe gale : this night (or No night tather Euening, because it was not darke at all) we were set within the point of the lland : fo

6c that now we were within the Streights. The one & thirtieth day also faire weather, the wind for the most part at North North-west. the afternoone being cleere wee faw the point of the South shoare, called Buttons Iles, to beare from vs due South by the Compaffe, which is indeed South South-east, somewhat Eastward, be- Variation 14 cause here the Compasse is varied to the Westwards twentie soure degrees.

degrees

Dogges,

Situation.

The first of Iune, wee had some snow in the forenoone, but very faire weather in the afternoone, the wind at West North-west. We perceiving the Ice to be more open close abourd the floare, made the best way we could to get in, and to come to Anchor, if the place were connenient; and by feuen a clocke we were in a good Harbour, on the North-west side of the Hand of Resolution, where an East South-east Moone maketh full Sea, or halfe an houre past seuen on the change day, as Sea-men account the water doth rife and fall, neere foure fathomes; the Compaffe doth vary to the West 24. degrees 6. minutes, and is in longitude West from London 66. degrees 24. minutes. The breadth of the South Channell, or the diffance betweene the Hand and the South shoare, is fixteene leagues, and the North Channell is eight miles wide in the

Vpon this Hand we went on shopee, but found no certaine figne of Inhabitants, but the track of Beares and Foxes, Rockes and stonie ground, hardly any thing growing thereon: it is indifferent high Land to the Northward, haung one high Hill or Hummocke on the North-east fide.

but to the Southward it falleth away very low. The second of Iune in the morning the wind came vp at East South-east, with much snow and fowle weather ; about noone wee weighed Anchor, and flood vp along by the Iland, so well as the Ice would give vs leave to get to the North shoare. Wee continuing our courses so neere the North shoare, as conveniently we could, with much variable weather and windes, but stedfait in continuance among Ice, till the eight day, having the wind full contrary to vs, and being formewhat neere a point of Land, or rather a company of Ilands, which after wee called Sauge 20

Iler, haung a great Sound or In-draught, betweene the North shoare and them. At sixe a clocke we came to Anchor neere one of them, being the Eastermost fauing one: But whiles weewere furling our failes, we heard and faw a great company of Dogges running vp and downe, with fuch howling and barking, that it feemed very ftrange. Shortly after we had moored our ship, we fent our Boat somewhat neerer the shoare, to see if they could perceine any people; who returning, told vs that there were Tents and Boats, or Canowes, with a great many Dogges, but people they faw none. After Prayer, when our men had fupt, wee fitted our Boate and our felues with things convenient : then my felfe with feuen others landed, and went to their Tents. where finding no people, we marched up to the top of a Hill (being about a flight shot off) where we faw one great Canow or Boat, which had about fourteene men in it, being on the furthest, 30

with 14. men. or North-west point of the Iland, and from vs somewhat more then a Musket shot. Then Icalled vnto them, ving some words of Groenlandih speech, making signes of friendship. They did the like to vs; but feeing them so fearefull of vs, and we not willing to trust them, I made another figne to them, flewing them a Knife and other Trifles, which I left on the top of the Hill. and returned downe to their Tents againe. There wee found some Whale Finnes to the number of fortie or fiftie, with a few Seale skinnes which I tooke aboord, leaving Kniues, Beades, Bagge of Ima and Counters instead thereof; and amongst their houses I found a little bagge, in which was a company of little Images of men; one the Image of a woman with a child at her backe, all the which I brought away.

Among these Tents being fine in number, all coursed with Seales skinnes, were running vp 40 Their Dogges described. and downe, about thirtie fine or fortie Dogges; most of them muzled. They were of our mungrell Mastiffes, being of abrinded blacke colour, looking almost like Wolues. These Dogges they vie in stead of Horses, or rather as the Lappinus doe their Decre, to draw their sleds from place to place over the Ice: their sleds are shed or lined with great bones of fishes to keepe them from wearing, and their Dogges have Collars and Furniture very fitting.

These people haue their Apparell, Boots, Tents, and other necessaries much like to the Inba-The people bitants in Groineland, fauing that they are not so neate and artificiall, seeming to bee more rude and vacuuill, ranging up and downe as their fishing is in season. For in most places where wee came ashoare, we saw where people had beene, although not this yeere; but where their I hotation or their abode in Winter is, I cannot well conjecture.

This Hand lyeth in the latitude of 62. degrees 30, minutes, and in longitude West from Long. don, 72. degrees or neere thereabouts, being fixtie leagues from the entrance of the Streights: here the Compasse doth varie 27. degrees 30. minutes , and a South-east Moone foure degrees East maketh a full Sea : it doth ebbe and flow almost as much water, as it doth at the Resolution. and here the floud commeth from the Eastward, although our Master was of opinion to the

The tenth day in the morning, at fixe a clocke we fet fayle, the winde at North, which continued not, but was very variable till noone, and then it came to North-west, we having sayled along by the shoare, about some nine leagues and an halfe North North-west, the Icelving to thicke in the offen, that wee could not well get out of it: then perceiuing a good Harbour betweene two small Ilands and the Mayne, wee went in with our ship, where wee moored her, 60 and flayed till the twelfth day at Evening.

In this place it is high water on the change day, at nine of the clocke, or a South-east Moone maketh a full Sea : the latitude of this place is 62 degrees 40 minutes; and the floud doth come

from the Eastward, although our Master was perswaded otherwise, as well in this place, as as Salusse Hands: for being among Hands, every point hath his fenerall fet and eddie. But I going to therop of the Hand, plainely perceived the Ice to come from the South-east, and from the North-west on the cibe. In this place is no figne of people, as we could perceive.

The fixteenth day, lying fill in the Ice, the weather being very close and hafey, as it hath heene these fix dayes : and being neere a great company of Ilands, in the atternoone, the winde being at Welt North-west, wee stood in amongst these Hands, and in the evening we moated our Shippe to one of them in a small coue, the better to defend her from the Ice. In this place wee flayed all the feuenteenth day; and upon the eighteenth, being Sunday, about eleuen a clocke naye art the characteristic alme, making the best way wee could to get forth. Here are a great Many Hands company of thands, each hath his fruerall sexand eddy, that the Ice doth so runne to and fro, and and sugrall

with fuch violence, that our Shippe was in more fafetie further off then in this place: the lati- tyde Strs. tude of the He we rode by is 63, degrees 26. minutes, and longitude Well from London, neere 72. degrees 25. minutes: the Compaile hath variation 27. degrees 46. minutes; and at a quarter of an houre after nine on the Change day, doth make a full Sea. This Euening, and the next morning, wee had a faire freering gale of winde at South-east, wee standing along by the Land, it beeing all imali broken llands; to a point of Land about twelue leagues in diftance from the lle wee put laft from : which Point, I called Broken Point, it being indeede Brain Point. a point of broken Iles.

On the nineteenth day, by twelve a clocke at noone, wee were about foure miles from the Point before named, fait inclosed with Ice, very faire weather; and well we might have called this Point Fairenesse or Faire Point, for from this day till the thirtieth day, the weather was fo faire, and almost, or altogether calme, that in few places elsewhere, finer weather could not be : and till the feuen and twentieth at night, wee were fo fast inclosed vp with Ice, that at some times one could not well dippe a paile of water by the Ship fides : while wee were thus fast in the Ice, you the one and twentieth day, I faw both the Sunne and Moone at one time, as indeede it is vivall in faire weather.

This one and twentieth, being faire weather, as afore is faid, and I feeing both the Sunne and Observations Moone fo faire : I thought it a fit time to make an observation for the longitude.

30 But the two and twentieth day being very faire and clease, and alfo calme, being almost as fleedy as on shoare : it was no neede to bid me fit my Instrument of variation to take the time of the Moones consuming to the Meridian, having also my quadrant ready to take the Sunnes almi-canter, it being indifferent large, as of foure foote femideamiter: have taken the variation of my needle as precifely as positible I could, which was 28 degrees 20 minutes West, and if any be defirous to worke the fame, they may, but my worke was as followeth.

The Sunnes almicanter, at the inftant when the Moone was on the Meridian, was 26. degrees 40, minutestand the Sunnes declination for thattime 23 degrees 6, minutes, By which three things given, I found the houre to be five a clocke 4 minutes 72 feconds, I third 4. fourths, or 76. degrees, 13, minutes, 16. seconds, of the equinoctiall afternoone : and according to Seales Ephe-40 merides, the Moone came to the Meridian at London at fourea clocke 54 minutes, 30. feconds: and after Origanue the Moone came to the Meridian at foure a clocke 52. minutes, 5. feconds, at Wittenberge the same day. Now having this knowne, it is no hard matter to finde the longitude of this place fought. For according to the Moones meane motion, which is 12.degrees a day, that

is in time 48.minutes; and to this account, if the be on the Meridian at twelue a clock this day, to morrow it will be 48.min.past 12.So I having the time found by observation at this place, viz. 5.

houres, 4. minutes, 52. feconds, 1. third 4. fourths : but in this I neede not come fo precife: and at

Landon, at 4 houres , 54 minutes, 30 feconds : which substracted from the former, leaueth 10. mi-

nutes, 22. feconds, 1. third, 4. fourths, now the Moones motion thae foure and twentie houres, was 22.degrees, 38.minutes : which converted into time, is 50. minutes 25. feconds 20. thirds : then the proportion flandeth thus; If 50.minutes, 25.feconds, 20. thirds, give 360. degrees, what 50 shall 10. minutes, 22. seconds, 1. third, 4. fourths give? the fourth proportionall, will be 74. degrees 5. minutes, which is West of Landon; because the Moone came later by 10 minutes, 22 feconds, and by the fame working by Origanus Ephemerides, the diffrance is 91 degrees, 35 minutes, West of Well. But whether be the truer, I leave to others to judge : in these workings may some errour be committed, if it be not carefully looked vnto : as in the observation, and also in finding what time the Moone commeth to the Meridian, at the place where the Ephemerides is supputated for, and perchance in the Ephemerides themselves: in all which, the best judicious may erre: yet if observations of this kinde, or some other, at places farre remote, as at the Cape Bo-

nasperanze, Bantam, Japan, Nona Albion, and Magellan Straits, I suppose wee should have a truer 60 Geography then we have. And feeing I am entred to speake of celetiall observations, I will note another which I made the twenty fixt of April, being outward bound at Sea, by the Moones comming in a right line, with two fixed Starres; the one was the Lyons bears, a Starre of the first magnitude; the other a Stane in the Lyons rumpe, of the second magnitude, as followeth : The circumference or outward edge of the Moone, being in a right or ftraight line, with those

two Starres before named : at the instant I tooke the altitude of the South ballance, which was 2. degrees 38.minutes, because I would have the time : but in this it is good to waite a fit time. as to have her in a right line, with two Stars not farre diffant, and those not to be much different in longitude, because the Moon will soone alter the angle or position, and such a time would be taken when the Moone is in the nintieth degree of the eclipticke about the horizon, for then there no paralell of longitude, but onely in latitude ; but who to is painefull in these businesses, shall foone fee what is needefull, and what is not : my observations were as followeth:

Righ: affention 46.deg.22.min.30.dec. To Right affention 46.deg.22.min.co.de.

Declination -- 13.deg.57, migadec. Declination -- 22.deg.32.min.co.de.

Lynu beart Longitude -- 24.deg.29, mig.4fec. Longitude -- 24.deg.32.min.go.de.

Lattude --- 00.deg.26.min.30.fec. Lattude --- 14.deg.32.min.co.dec.

Almiemer -- 33.deg.40.min.co.de.

Paralax — co.deg. 47.mm.46.fec. Moones Latitude — 03.deg. 20. min.00.fec. North. Almicanter - 37, deg. 00. min. co.fec. Latitude of the place - 56.deg.43.min.

These notes I have set downe, that if any other be desirous to trie, they may spenda little time therein; my felfe haue spent some therein, and more I would have spent, it leisure would have permitted : but finding it not to my minde, I have not here fet downe my particular worke: Mafter Rudflon, the working of this observation I received from Mafter Rudflon.

But if it had pleased God, we had performed the action we were bound for, I would not feare but to have brought fo good contentment to the Adventurers, concerning the true fcituation of notable places, that small doubt should have beene thereof: but feeing so small hopes are in this place. I have not fet downe fo many observations as otherwise I would

We lying here inclosed with the Ice with faire &calme weather (as before is faid) till the seuen and twentieth day at evening, at which time we fet fayle; the winde at South-east, an easie gales all the eight and twentieth and nine and twentieth dayes, we made the best way through the Ice we could; but the nine and twentieth day, the Ice was more open then it had beene these ten dayes before, and at noone we saus bury lland, it bearing due West from vs.

The first of July close foggie weather, with much raine, the winde at South South-east : by 30 noone this day we were some three leagues from the Land: but having much Ice by the thoare, we flood along the Hand to the Northward : and the next morning wee were faire by another small Ile, or rather a company of small Hands, which after we called Mill Hand, by reason of erinding the Ice, as this night we made proofe thereof: at noone, being close to this Ile, wee took the latitude thereof, which is neere 64 degrees. Here driving to and fro with the Ice all this day, till feuen or eight a clocke, at what time the Ice began to open and feperate; The Ice, as is faid, beginning to open : we had not flood along by the Ile, on the East fide thereof, an houre; but the Ice came driving with the tide of floud from the South-east, with such swiftnesse, that it ouer went our Shippe having all our fayles abroad with a reasonable gale of winde, and put her out of the streame, into the eduy of these Hes.

This Iland or Iles, lying in the middle of the channell, having many founds running through them, with many points or headlands, encountering the force of the tide, caused such a rebound of water & Ice (which can one way, and the streame another) our ship having met the Ice with the first of the floud, which put her so neere the shoare, that she was in the partition betweene the Ice, which the eddy caused to runne one way, and the streame the other, where shee endured great distresse; but God, which is still stronger then either Ice or streame, preserved vs and our Shippe from any harme at all. This continued till towards a high water, which was about one a clocke; then with no small trouble we got into the channell, and stood away to the Northwest ward. After we had past some distance from this Iland, wee had the Sea more open then it was fince we put first into the Straits; and failed all the next day through an indifferent cleare 50 Sea, with the winde at South-west: but towards eight a clocke at night, wee were come againe into much Ice; this Ice being more thicker and bigger then any wee had beene among: this place where we began to be inclosed againe, is fixe and twenty leagues distant from the fmall Iland we were at last : and our true course North-west by West : after wee were fast in the Ice, we made but fmall way, yet we perceived a great tyde to fet to and fro. The next day, wee founded, and had ground at one hundred & twentie fathoms, fofe Ofey ground: flanding more Northerly: the next morning we had ground at eightie fathoms, then the winde came to the North, and we letting lomewhat Southward, had ground at a hundred and ten fathoms. Thus feeing this great abundance of Ice in this place, and the more we got to the North-west ward, the shoulder it was, the Ice also being foule and durtie, as not bred farre from shoare: our Master determined to 60 stand to the Eastward, to be certainely informed of the tide.

The fixt day in the morning, we brake in a planke and two timbers in our Ships bow, which after we had mended, we proceeded for to get to the East fide, which we called the North shoare, because it is the Land stretching from the Resolution, on the North fide of the S. raits.

The fewenth day we faw the land, it being but low land, and the Sea is should, in respect of other places, having ten or twelve fathorn about a league off from shoare, some thirty fathoms five or fix leagues off thore, but further off tome twenty or eighteene leagues, there is a hundred or a hundred and fine factioms; having very good channell ground, as small flower & shells, some twelve or foureteene leagues from shoare, but the further off the more Ofey: and also here is a very great tide runnerh to the Northward, which this evening we found to be the tyde of ebbe, for comming with our Shippe neere the shoare, about seuen a clocke, we hoysed out our Boate, then I with fine other went on floare, and found it to ebbe : we flaied on floare about an houre and a halfer in which time the water fell about three foote and a halte, and a South-fouth East Moone ma-10 ketha full Sea, or halfe an houre past tenne, as Sea men account : we faw no igne of people to be here this yeare, but in yeares heretofore they have beene, as we might well fee by divers places where their tents had itood and perchance their time of fifting was not yet come, therebeing fuch great abundance of Ice as yet. Engrea administration and a year.

The eight day the winde was at West, and the ninth almost calme: wee recking necreto this

floare the tenth day, our Mafter determined to fland for Notting and lland to make trial of Notting came the tide there; yet the winde was at South-welt, so that we were forced to turae, but towards liand. night it came to the North North-weft, to that then we flood away to the Weft wards, leaning the fearch of Notting game Ile, having a great fwelling Sea, come out of the West with the winder which had blowne, which put ws in some hope: the eleuenth day in the morning, we saw Land 20 West from vs, but had no ground at one hundred & thirty fathoms to standing along by the Land which here lay about North-west by North, the next morne we were thwart of a Bay : then flanding over to the Northwards towards a faire Cape or head land which we law, in the afternone it was almost calme, and being about a league from shoare, we hoysed out our Boat, and sent fome of our men in her, to fee what tide it was by the shoare, and from whence it came; they went from the Ship at five a clock, and came aboord againe at eight, who brought vs word, that it was falling water, and that it had eb'd while they were on shoare somewhat aboue two foot: also they affirmed, that the flood came from the Northward in this place, the which we also perceiued by the fetting of our Ship, the fetting a pace to the Northward, although no whit of winder allowe might feeby the rocks, that the water was nowfalne: this put vs in great comfort and

30 hope of a pallage in this place. Then our Matter called this Cape or head land, Cape Comfort, for the reasons beforesaid; also Cape Comfort. we had one hun ired and fortie fathoms in depth, not a league from the shoare: and here a South by East Moone maketh a full Sea: the latitude of this Cape is 65 degrees 00. min, and 84 degrees 20. minutes Welt from London. But this our fudaine comfort was as foone quailed, for the next day having doubled the Cape, and proceeded not past ten or twelve leagues, but we saw the land trending from the Cape to the Weltward, till it bare from vs North-eaft by East, and very thicke peftered with Ice, and the further we proceeded, the more Ice, and the more Northerly, the flouider water and finall hew of any tide. At fix a clocke this afternoone, we founded, & had ground in o :e hundred and thirty fathoms, foft Ofey, having had at noone one hundred & fiftie fathoms.

This was the fartheft of our Voyage, being in the latitude of 65, degrees 26 minutes, and longitude West from London 86 degrees 10 minutes: for seeing the land North-east by East, from va about nine or ten leagues off, and the Ice fo thicke : our Mafter was fully perswaded, that this was nought elfebut a Bay, and so tacked and turned the Shippes head homewards, without any far-

The fourteenth day, the winde was for the most part at South-east, that we could make but fmall way backe againe: and the next morning very foule weather, we comming to an Anchor in a small Inlet, neere the Cape Comfort, on the North-west fide thereof; here wee found, as on the other fide, a South by East Moone, to make a full Sea; but from whence the floud came, we could not well ice, it being to foule weather at Sea : in the afternoone the winde came to North 50 by West then we waied, and stood along to the Southwards by the shoare, with a shifte gale of

winde, and very hafey. By the fixteenth day at noone we met with a great quantitie of Ice,lying some few leagues within the point of the Land: among this Ice we saw a great number of Sea Morfe, not teeing any more in all the Straits but here, and these very fearefull, not suffering a Ship or Boat to come neere them: by eight a clock we were come to this Southern point, which Sea Harle raises I called Sea Horsepoint, where we came to anchor open in the Sea, the better to try the tide ! here most apparently we found to all our companies fight, that in this place the tide of floud doth come from the South-east, and the ebbe from the Northwest. We weighed, and stood over with a stiffe gale of winde, which continued all this day, and toward night very foule weather & a fore florme: by tenn: a clocke we were come to Anchor on the North-weit fide of Nottinghams Ile, 60 where are two or three smal Iles, lyeth off from the greater, which make very good Sounds &Harbors: about this lie we had store of Ice, but nothing as we had heretofore in other places. We staied about this Hand il the feuen and twentieth day, having much foule weather, many stormes, often fogs, and vncertaine windes, many times we weighed anchor to goe to that fide of the Ile, where

this Ship road when Captaine Button was in her; finding in other places of this Ile the tyde of

842

Swan Iland.

Dieges lie.

floud to come from the South-east ward, and the time of high water on the change day, to be an halfe an houre past ten, and not at halfe an houre past seuen, as they supposed. In these ten dayes we staied about this lle, we fitted our Ship with ballast, and other necessaries, as we had neede of

Then proceeded as followeth the fixe and twentieth day, being indifferent faire weather, we paffed betweene Salisburies Ile and Notting bams Ile at the South Point thereof I meane of Notting bass Ile, where are many small low Iles, without the which had beenea fit place for vs to have anchored to have found out the true let of the Tyde. But our Mafter being defirous to come to the same place where they had rode before, stood along by this lle to the Westward, and came to an anchor in the eddy of these broken grounds, where the ship rode at no certaintie of Tyde.

The feuen and twentieth, the next morning the weather proued very foule with much raine and winde, to that our Reger anchor would not hold the ship at eightie fathoms scope, but was driven into deepe water , that wee were forced to fet faile, the winde being at East, and then come to the East North-east and about noone at North-east, still foule weather, being vnder faile, westood away towards Sea borse Point : our Master (as I suppose) was perswaded that there might bee some passage betweene that Point of Land and that Land which they called Swan Hand: to this afternoone we faw both Sea borfe Point and Noting bans Hand, the diffance betweene them is not past fifteene or fixteen leagues, bearing the one from the other North-west

The eight and twentieth day in the morning, wee were neers to Sea borfe Point, the Land trending away West South-west so farre as wee saw, and very much pessed with Ice. At seuen 20 a clocke our Master caused ws to tacke about, and stood away South-east and by South

The nine and twentieth the next day at eleuen a clocke, we came to anchor at Digges Ile, hauing very foule weather. At this place where we rode it lyeth open to the West, having two of the greatest lies, breake off the force of the Flood, till the Tyde be well bent; for after the water were rifen an houre and a halfe by the shoare, then would the ship ride truly on the Tyde of Flood all the Tyde after. Now the time of high water on the change day, is halfe an houre post ten or neere thereabout.

The thirtieth day, being faire weather, wee weighed and flood along close by Digger Ile, where we prefently perceived the Salunger to bee close on the top of the Rocks: but when they faw we had efpyed them, divers of them came running downe to the water fide, calling to vsto 30 come to anchor, which we would have done if conveniently we could. But in this place the water is so deepe, that it is hard to finde a place to rise in, which we seeing lay to and fro with our ship, while some of our men in the Boat killed about some sevents fowles, for in this place is the greatest number of fowles (whom we call Willacks) that in few places else the like are not seene, for if neede were we might have killed many thousands, almost incredible to those which have not feene it, Here also as we lay to and fro with our ship, wee had sufficient proofe of the set of the Tyde: but when our men were come aboord againe, we fet all our failes for homewards, making the best expedition we could; but on the third of August, were were forced to come to are chor about thirtie leagues within the Refolution Ile on the North shoare. The next day wee weighed anchor: And the fifth day in the forenance, we past by the Refolution Iland, but saw it 40 not: Thus continuing our courses (as in the briste lournall may be seene) with much contraine windes and foule weather.

Wee had fight of Cape Cleere in Ireland the fixt of September: the next morning by day light, we were faire by Seely, and that night at two a clocke the next morne, we came to anchor in Plymonth Sound with all our men linng, having onely three or foure ficke, which foone

The next years being agains employed in discourie, amongst other infrustions they received this. For your course you must make all possible halfs to the Cape Detolation, and from thence, you William Bassin as Plats, keeps along the Confl of Gronaland and ye Frection Davis, writing you come toward the 50 beight of eightst degrees, if the Land will give you leave. Then for four of monthlying, by keeping too Reproduce the course of the plats of the course of the plats of the course of the lating of fixth degrees; then divertly your course to the lating of fixth degrees; then divertly your course to the lating of the course of t you come to the latitude of facts aggress then arets from course to fai with the Land of Yesten about that height, faising your farmer of following the time of the years and winder will give you leave, although our defiret in, if your voyage prove for professor that you may beaus the years before you, that you goe force Southersty as then you may teach the North part of Ispan, from whose or from Yesten, if you can permyle is without adaps, we would have you to force before or from Yesten, if you can permyle is without adaps, we would have you to from home one of the men of the Country, and fo God bidfing you with all expedition to make your returns

60

CHAP.

CHAP. XIX.

To the Right Worshipfull Master Io HN Wostenholme Esquire, one of the chiefe Aduenturers for the discouerie of a passage to the North-west.



Orthy Sir; there neede no filling a Iournall or Short Discourse with preamble, complement, or circumflance, and therefore I will onely tell you, I am proud of any Remembrance, when I expose your Worth to my Conceit, and glad of any good fortune when I can avoid the imputation of ingratitude, by acknowledging your many funours: and (ceing it is not unknowne (to your Worship) in what estate the businesse concerning the North-west bath beene heretofore, and how the onely hope was in searching of Fretum Dathis, which if your felfe bad not beene the more forward, the action had well nigh beene left off : Now it remaineth

for your Worthing to know, what hath beene performed this yeere: wherefore I entreat you to admit of my Juryour er which to come, when we have be plaine bighway in relating the particulars, without which any refined phrases and eloquent speeches. Therefore briefly, and as it were in the forefront, I intend to shew you the whole proceeding of the vor-

therefore oriesy, and many there is no pallage, or boyed poligies in the North of Davis Streets, we age in a word: as namely, there is no pallage, no boyed poligies in the North of Davis Streets, we have age in a word is at one and if the Cocumplerence thereof, and finds it to be no other then a great Bay, as busing coaffed all or never all the Cocumplerence thereof, and finds it to be no other then a great Bay, as the Map here placed dath truly | hem: wherefore I cannot but much admire the works of the Almoghtic, Homiocuer the when I confider how vaine the heft and chiefest hopes of man are in things uncertains. And to speake of no passage this when I consider now wante we can amount of the North-meft; How many of the hess front of men hane set wy maxem other matter, then of the hopefull passing et at wayes, and not such in Conference, but asso in Writing and their whole undersort to prome apolloge that wayes, and not such in Conference, but as so in Writing and count disc. theer whose macrows to prome a justice com myst, some to energy or conjecture, and any or returns and former directions, and the world, year what great some or some parties some some that altern a year section of its world point early experience off. Neither would the vaine glorious Spaniard base scattered abroad so The Return world the vaine glorious Spaniard base scattered abroad so The Return resulting unan Many and Iournals, if they had not beene confident of a passage this way, that if a bad pleased (then by him many fulse Maps and Iournals, if they had not beene confident of a passage this way, that if a bad pleased (then by him many fulfe Maps and lowrals, if they had not neven complaint of a psyling visit way, treat if who presign which they may be used to clearly a partie of the Amentarers and tree when they may be used to clearly the way princip either Amentarers and tree when the contractive, and for my owne part, I would hardly have believed the contract, until mine eyes became into its limit is both with the contractive, and for my owne part, I would hardly have believed the contractive, until mine eyes became into its low to the contractive, and for my owne part, I would hardly have believed the contractive, until mine eyes the came. Discovered to the state of the time as we had almost coasted the Circumference of this great Eag. Neither was Master Davis to be and to the most hlamed in his report and great hopes, if he had anchored about Hope Sanderion, to have taken notice of indicious more blamed in his report and great hopes, if he had anthored about Hope Sainterion, to make taken notice of the aprobable; the Tydes: for to that place which is in 72. degrees 12. minutes the Sea is open of months and that by and that by and of a good colour, onely the Tydes keepe no certaine course, nor rife but a small height, as eight or nine that Tydes are ana of a good country, and the flood comments from the Southward, and in all the Bay beyond that place the Tyde is so small, gument from and not much to be tegarded, set by reason of som melting on the Land, the Ebbe is stronger then the the West, asia and not much to be treated, set by reason of some melting as the tama, the three is promper to entre the winds to lading Northely, the ferre, part file years, the great less of Multi Sing. Flood, by meaner whereof, and the winds to lading Northely, the ferre, part file years, the great less of Multi Sing. Mich Sing and the great to the Southward, some in Fretum Hudson, and others toward New Yound Land, for in nonespectation.

40 all the Channel where the Sea is open are great quartities of them driving up and downe, and till this reth. yeere not well knowne where they were bred. peere not well goomne mover tony were vreu.
Now that the worst is knowne (concerning the passions) it is necessarile and requisite, your Worship Bound understand what probabilitie or hope of profit might here he made hereaster, if the voyage hee at-tempted by sitting men. And sirst for the killing of sirbales, certaine it is that in this Bay are great numbers of them, which the Bilcainers call the Grand Baye Whales, of the same kinde which are killed as Greenland, and as it feemeth to me easie to be strooke, because they are not vsed to bee chased or beaten for we being but one day in Whale Sound (fo called for the number of Whales that wee faw there) Store of Grand Recping and lying aloft on the water, not fearing our frip or onght elfe ; that if wee had beene fitted with Ben Whales. men and things necessarie, it had beene no hard matter to have strooke more then would have made three men and toting rescapate, in the second water we can immerst to some privace more toom would name made three fine and that it is of that fore of brilled the second to some forest I being the differential, Beffix which as 50 rocke fulfilleries notice to know them agains; befide a dead Whale wee found at Sea, having all her finnes Greenland.

(or rather all the rough of her mouth) of which with much labour, we got one bundred and fixtie the same enening we found her; and if that foule weather, and a storme the next day had not followed, wee had no doubt, but to haus had all or the most part of them, but the winde and Sea arising shee broke from vs , and we were forced to leave her. Neither are they onely to be looked for in Whale Sound, but also in Sir Tho. Smiths Sound, Wostenholme Sound, and diners other places.

For the killing of Sea Morse, I can give no certaintie, but onely this , that our Boat being but once ahoure in all the North part of this Bay, which was in the entrance of Alderman Iones Sound, at the returne, our men told us, ther fam many Morfes along by the shoare on the lee; but our ship being under The hones is alias, and the winde comming faire, they present the same abourd mithout further search, besides the people shillkeps in the 60 inhabiting about 74. degrees, told vs by diners signes, that toward the North were many of those beasts, Robes at Wind-

baning two long teeth, and showed us diners pieces of the same. As for the Sea Unicorne, it being a great filb, having a long borne or bone, growing forth of his fore-head or nofirtil (fuch as Sir Martin Frobilher in his fecond voyage found one) in dusers places we faw of footlong and them, which if the horne be of any good value, no doubt but many of them may be killed.

creffed. &cf

And concerning what the Shoare will yeeld, as Beach finnes, Morfe teeth, and such like, I can little

fat, because we came not on so one in any of the places where beginning of spining shows.

But here some may obtect and aske, why we sought that so at the obster: is that I assume, that while
were the threshold, the weather was severed with solution, the weather was severed the sound to the missing the was called the the control of the weather than the severe the sound to the missing the was called the severe the sound to the missing the was called to the severe the sound to the missing the was called to the severe the severe the severe that the severe the severe the severe the severe that the severe the severe the severe that the severe the holme Sound, were prefently our flip drone with two anchors a head, then were we forced to fland forth with a low faile. The next day in Whale Sound, we lost an Anchor and Cable, and could fetch the place no more: then we came to anchor neere a small lland, lying between Sir Tho. Smiths Sound, and Whale no more to come to come to account and the come of the west of the come of the few men (as seventeene in all) and some of them very weake; but the chiese cause wee spent so little time 10 to sceke a Harbour, was our great desire to performe the Disconcrie, having the Sea open in all that part. and fill likelihood of a passage: but when we had consted the Land so farre to the Southward, that hope of passage was none, then the secre was too farre frent, and many of our men very weake, and withall me basung some beliefe that ships the next yeare would be sent for the killing of Whales, which might better doe

n town wee.

And feeing I baue briefly fet downe, what hope there is of making a profitable voyage, it is not vnfit
your Worship bould know what let or hinderance might be to the fame. The chiefest and greatest cause is, that some yeere it may happen by reason of the Ice, tying betweene 72. degrees and a balfe, and 76. degrees no minutes, that the |bips cannot come into those places, till toward the middest of July, so that want of time to stay in the Country may bee some let: yet they may well tarry till the last of August, in which face much businesse may be done, and good store of Oile made: neueribelesse if store of Whales come in (as no searce to the contrarie) what cannot bee made in Oile may bee brought bome in Blubber, and the Finnes will arife to good profit. Another hinderance may bee, because the bottome of the Sounds will not be so some cleere as would be wished, by meanes thereof now and then a Whale may be loss the same case sometime chanceth in Greenland) yet I am perswaded those Sounds before named, will all be cleere before the twentieth of Iuly: for we this yeere were in Whale Sound the fourth day among many Whales, and might have strooke them without let of Ice. Furthermore, there is little wood to bee expected, either for fire or other necessaries, therefore Coles and other such things must bee provided at home, they will bee so much the readier there.

Thus much I thought good to certifie year Worship, wherein I trust you will conceine, that much time 20 hath not beene frent in vaine, or the businesse over carelesty neglected, and although wee have not perforand mis overly first the delice, in the unjustice were uniquity projection, and interpose are come an perjor-med what we diffred (that is, to have found the pallage) yet what was promifed as to bring certaintie and a true difference intribuil make manifest, that I have not much orred. And I done shell figs (without booking) that more good discourse both not in scort rime (to my

varies on a sure eventy jet [mittems voajing] that more good discoverie bath not in storter time (to my remember once) beem done, force the allies was attempted, considering how much lee who have piled, and the discount of the discount of the left of the attempted in all other winters of the Compiled Variation of the store of the considerable degrees, a thing almost incredible and matchlesse in all the world beside, so that without great care, and good observations, a true description could not base beene bad. In fine, what seven my labours are or shall be, I est come them too listle, to express my thankefull minde for your many savours, wherein I shall be e-40 ner studions, to supply my other wants by my best endenours, and ener rest at

Your Worships command.

WILLIAM BAFFIN.

A briefe and true Relation or Journall, contagning such accidents as happened in the fift voyage, for the discouerie of a passage to the North-west, set forth at the charges of the right Worshipfull Sir Tho. Smith Knight, Sir Dudly Digges Knight, Master Iohn Wostenholme Esquire, Master Alderman Iones, with others, in the good ship called the Discouerie of London; Robert Bileth Malter, and my Selfe Pilot, performed in the yeere of our Lord 1616.

TN the Name of God, Amen. The forenamed thip being in full readinesse upon the twentie lixe of March, we fet faile at Granefend, being in number leventeene persons, having very faire 62 weather, which continued till the second of April: by that time we were off Portland, then the winde comming Westward with soule weather, we kept Sea till the fourth day, then being not able to fetch Plimonth, bore roome for Dartmouth , where wee flayed eleuen dayes , in which time was much foule weather and westerly windes.

The fifteenth day of Aprill, being cleere of Darmouth, we were forced the next day to put into Plimenth. The ninetcenth day we fet faile from thence, and the twentieth in the morning we nail betweene the Lands end and Silly with a faire winde. Continuing our course, as in the briefe Table or Journall is let downe, with enery particular from noone to noone, that here I need not make a tedious repetition, nothing worthy of note happing, but that we had a good paffage, and the first Land we saw was in Freum Danie, on the coast of Groinland in the latitude of 65. Grainland degrees 20. minutes. On the fourteenth of May in the forenoone, then fixe of the people being a filhing came to vs, to whom we gate small pieces of Iron, they keeping vs companie being very iovfull, supposing wee had intended to come to anchor: but when they saw vs stand off from

to shoare they followed vs a while, and then went away discontented, to our feeming. We profecuting our Voyage, were loth to come to anchor as yet, although the winde was contrarie, but fail plyed to the Northward, vntill we came into 70. degrees 20. minutes: then wee came to anchor in a faire Sound (neere the place Mafter Danis called London Coaft.) The twentieth of May at evening, the people espying vs fled away in their Boates, getting on Rocks wondring and gafing at vs, but after this night we faw them no more, leaving many Dogs run- Men and does.

ning to and fre on the Hand. At this place we flayed two dayes, in which time wee tooke in fresh water and other necessaries ; here we had some dislike of the passage, because the Tydes are so small as not arising about eight or nine foot, and keepe no certaine course, but the neerest time of high water on the change

20 day is at a quarter of an houre past nine, and the Flood commeth from the South. The two and twentieth day at a North Sunne, wee fet faile and plyed full Northward, the winde being right against vs as we stood off and on. Vpon the fixe and twentieth day in the afternoone, we found a dead Whale, about fixe and twentie leagues from thoure, having all her Dead Whale, finnes. Then making our ship fast, wee vied the best meanes wee could to get them . and with much toile got a hundred and fixtie that evening. The next morning the Sea went very high and much tone got a fing, the Whale broke from vs. and we were forted to leaue he and let faile, and having not ittood patt three or foure leagues North-werthyard, came to the lee, then wee tacked and food to the fhoare-ward, a fore florme enfined.

By the thirtieth day in the afternoone, wee came faire by Hope Sander for, the fartheft Land Hope Sander for, 30 Mafter Danie was at, lying betweene 72. and 73. degrees; and that evening by a North Sunne we came to much Ice, which we put into, plying all the next day to get through it.

The first of June, we were cleere of the Ice before named and not farre from shoare, the winde

blowing very hard at North North-east, then we put in among diners Ilands, the people see- Tents, Men ing vs fied away in all hafte leaving their Tents behinde, and vpon a finall Rocke they hid two and Womens young Maides or Women. Our finp riding not farre off, we elpyed them, to whom our Mafter with time other of our companie went in the Boate, they making figures to be carried to the Hand where their Tents were close adjoying. When they came thither, they found two old women more, the one very old, to our eftermation little leffe then fourescore, the other not so old. The next time we went on shoare, there was another Woman with a child at her back, who had hid 40 her selfe among the Rocks, till the other had told her how well wee had vsed them, in giving

them pieces of Iron and luchlike, which they highly efferme, in change thereof they give vs Seales skinnes, other riches they had none, faue dead Seales, and fat of Seales, some of which fat or blubber afterward we carried aboord, the poore women were very diligent to carry it to the water fide to put into our caske, making flew that the men were ouer at the Mayne, and at an other small Hand something more Eastward. Then making fignes to them that wee would shew them our ship and set them where the men were : the foure youngest came into our Boate; when they were aboord they much wondred to fee our ship and furniture : we gave them of our meat, which they tasting would not eate. Then two of them wee set on the sland, where they suppofed the men to be; the other two were carried to their Tents againe. Those that went to feeke the men could not finde them, but came as neere the flip as they could, and at evening wee fet 50 them over to the other.

This place wee called Womens Hands; it lyeth in the latitude of 71. degrees 45. minutes : Womens Handse here the Flood commeth from the Southward, at nep Tydes the water grifeth but fixe or feuen foote, and a South South-east Moone maketh a full Sea. The Inhabitants very poore, living chiefly on the fielh of Scales, dryed, which they cate raw, with the skinnes they cloathe themselves, and The people dealso make courrings for their Tents and Boats which they dreffe very well. The Women in their served apparell are dafferent from the men, and are marked in the face with divers blacke strokes or Women. lines, the skin being rafed with fome that pe inftrument when they are young, and blacke colour put therein, that by no meanes it will be gotten forth.

Concerning their Religion, I can little fay: onely they hade a kinde of worthip or adoration. Religion. to the Sunne, which continually they will point vnto and firike their hand on their breaft, crying Home; their dead they burie on the fide of the Hils, where they line (which is commonly on fmall Hands) making a pile of ftones over them, yet not fo close but that wee might fee the dead body, the aire being so pierling that it keepeth them from much flinking sauour. So likewise and Does. I have seene their Does buried in the same manner.

Vpon the fourth day we fet fayle from thence, having very faire weather, although the winde were contrary, and pived to and fro betweene the Ice and the Land, being as it were a channell of seuen or eight leagues broad : then on the ninth day, being in the latitude of 74. degree 4. minutes, and much pettered with Ice, neere vote three small llands, lying eight miles from the thore, we came to anchor neere one of them.

Thefe llands are vied to be frequented with people in the latter part of the yeare, as it feemed by the houses and places where the tentshad stood but this yeare as yet they were not come: here the tides are very imall, especially the floud, which ariseth not aboue fine or fix foot, yet the ebbe runneth with an indifferent ftreame, the cause thereof (in mine opinion) is the great abundance of Snow, melting on the Land all this part of the years,

The tenth day wee fet sayle from thence, and flood through much see to the Westward to try if that further from the shoare, wee might proceede; but this attempt was soone quailed. for the more Ice we went through, the thicker it was , till wee could fee no place to put in the Seeing, that as yet we could not proceede, we determined to fland in for the shoare, there to

abide fome few dayes, till fuch time as the Ice were more wasted and gone (for we plainely faus that it confumed very faft) with this resolution we flood in, and came to anchor among many Ilands, in the latitude of 73. degrees 45, minutes. On the twelfth day at night here wee continued two dayes without shew or signe of any people, till on the fifteenth day in the morning. 42 Inhabitants about one a clocke, then came two and fortie of the Inhabitants in their Boatesor Canoas . and an

gaue vs Seale skinnes, and many peeces of the bone or horne of the Sea Vnicorne, and shewed vs divers peeces of Sea Mors teeth; making fignes that to the Northward were many of them; in exchange thereof, we gaue them small peeces of Iron, Glaffe Beads, and such like; at four efence rall times the people came to vs, and at each time brought vs of the aforesaid commodities, by region thereof we called this place Horne Sound.

Here we flayed fix dayes, and on the eighteenth day at night, we fet fayle, having very little winde; and being at Sea, made the best way we could to the Northward, although the winde had been contrary for the most part this moneth, but it was frange to fee the Ice fo much confumed in fo little space, for now we might come to the three llands before named, and stand off to the Westward almost twenty leagues, without let of Ice, vntill we were more North (as to 74, 30 degrees 20 minutes) then we put among much feattered Ice, and plyed to and fro all this month. fill in the fight of shoare, and many times fast in the Ice, yet every day we got something on our way, nothing worthy of note happening, but that at divers times we law of the fifthes with They fee many long hornes, many and often, which we call the Sea Vnicorne: and here to write particularly out Snow, and often freezing, in to much, that on Midfummer day, our shrowds roapes and failes

Sca Vnicornes, of the weather, it would be superfluous or needelesse, because it was so variable, few daves with-Sharp froft on were fo frozen, that we could fearfe handle them; yet the cold is not fo extreame, but it may Midiummer well be endured. The first of July we were come into an open Sea, in the latitude of 75, degrees 40, minutes,

which a new reusued our hope of a passage, and because the winde was contrary, wee stood off 40 twenty leagues from the shoare, before we met the Ice : then standing in againe; when we were neers the Land, we let fall an anchor to fee what tyde went, but in that we found small comfort. Shortly after the winde came to the South-east, and blew very hard, with foule weather, thicke, and foggie: then we fet fayle, and ran along by the Land: this was on the fecond day at night. The next morning we patt by a faire Cape, or head land, which wee called Sir Dudley Digges Cape, it is in the latitude of 76.degrees 35.minutes, and hath a small Iland close adioyning to it, the winde still increasing, we past by a faire Sound twelve leagues distant from the former Cape, having an Iland in the midft, which maketh two entrances. Vnder this Iland we came to anchor: and had not rid past two houres, but our Ship drove, although we had two anchors at the ground. then were we forced to fet jayle, and fland forth : this Sound wee called Woffenbelme Sound : co hath many Inlets or smaller Sounds in it, and is a fit place for the killing of Whales.

The fourth day at one a clocke in the morning, the storme began agains at West and by South, to we hement, that it blew away our forecourse, and being not able to beare any fayle, wee lay a drift till about eight a clocke, then it cleared vp a little, and we faw our felues imbayed in a great Sound then we fet fayle and stood ouer to the South-east side, where in a little Coue or Bay we let fall an anchor, which we loft with cable and all, the windeblowing fo extreamely from the tops of the hils, that we could get no place to anchor in, but were forced to fland to and fro in the Sound, the bottome being all frozen over; toward two a clocke it began to be leffe winde, then we flood forth.

In this Sound we saw great numbers of Whales, therefore we called it Whale Sound, and doubtof leffeif we had beene prouded for killing of them, we might have strooke very many. It lyeth in the latitude of 77 degrees 30 minutes. All the fift day it was very faire weather, and wee kept along by the Land till eight a clock in the cuening, by which time we were come to a great banke of Ice, it being backed with Land, which we feeing, determined to stand backe some eight

leagues, to an Hand we called Hacklans ile, it lyeth betweene two great Sounds, the one Whale Sound, and the other Six Thomas Smiths Sound : this laft runneth to the North of feuenty eight Sir Thomas degrees, and is admirable in one respect, because in it is the greatest variation of the Compasse of Smith: Sound any part of the World known: for by divers good Observations I found it to be about me points in 78, drg. or fitty fix degrees varied to the Westward, so that a North-east and by East, is true North, and so Variation of of the rest. Also this Sound seemeth to bee good for the killing of Whales, it being the greatest the compasse and largest in all this Bay. The cause wherefore we minded to stand to this Iland, was to see if 56. degrees to and tagget an armous or fuch like on the fhore, and so indeed this night week came to anchor, the West, we could find any finness or such like on the Most may but with such foule weather, that our Boat could not limb. The next day were were forced to list. Which may to fayle, the Sca was growne to high, and the wind came more outward. Two dayes wee fpent nable D. G.d. and could get no good place to anchor in then on the eight day it cleared up, and wee feeing w bettirile.Tom, t company of llands lye off from the shoare twelve or thirreene Leagues, were minded to goo see 1.2. c.1. that company of handary control in the could Anchor. When we were fomething neere, the winde tooke vs where more them, to see if there we could Anchor. When we were fomething neere, the windered tooke vs where more floort; and being loth to spend more time, we tooke opportunitie of the windered left the sear-carrie floort; and being loth to spend more time, we tooke opportunitie of the windered left the sear-carrie floort. ching of these llands, which wee called Carejes Ilands, all which Sounds and Ilands the Map the compasses

doth truly describe.

So we flood to the Westward in an open Sea, with a stiffe gale of wind, all the next day and variation to So we food to the weltward in an open sea, with a time gate of which, an the next day and it. Now till the tenth day at one or two a clocke in the morning, at which time it fell calme and very the known continuous to the known continuous till the tenth day at one or two a clocke in the morning, at which time it fell calme and very the known continuous till the tenth day at one or two a clocke in the morning. forgie, and wee neere the Land in the entrance of a faire Sound, which wee called Alderman tinents of 464 20 lones Sound. This afternoone being faire and cleere, we fent our Boat to the shoare, the ship be- &c.must be vaing vnder fayle, and affoone as they were on shoare, the wind began to blow; then they returned speakably more againe, declaring that they faw many Sea Morfes by the shoare among the Ice, and as farre as then here there againe, declaring that they law many sea Mories by the invare among the tee, and as larre as they are they were, they have no figure of people, nor any good place to anchor in along the shoare. Then here is more having an eafie gale of wind at East North-east, we fanne along by the shoare, which now trend variation then deth much South, and beginneth to shew like a Bay.

deth much South, and beginneth to linew like a Bay.

On the twelfth day we were open of a nother great Sound, lying in the Latitude of pudgrees. Brighten a.

20. minutes, and we called it Sir Lamb Lank Latins' Sound: here our hope of paling beginn to be 3 minutes. Before the surface of the court of the surface of the su tweene the shoare and vs. but cleare to the Sea ward, we kept close by this ledge of Ice till the this and the ewent the induce and vs, but cleare to the Su way, we want to the latitude of 71. degrees 16, formet/opage minutes, and plainely perceited the Land to the Southward of 70. degrees 30. minutes, then we will having so much lee round about vs, were forced to shad more Eastward springing to have been of this iournal foom cleare, and to have kept on the off side of the Ice, vntill we had come into 70. degrees, then we were something to the company of the source of so have flood in againe. But this proued quite contrary to our expectation: for wee were for- troublefome ced to runne aboue threefcore leagues through very much Ice, and many times fo fait, that wee and too coffly could goe no wayes, although we kep can courfe due Eaft; and when wee had gotten into the conference open Sea, wee kept so neere the Ice, that many times we had much adoe to get cleare, yet could Sound. not come neere the Land, till we came about 68. degrees, where indeede we law the shoare, but Sir lames Loncould not come to it by eight or nine leagues, for the great abundance of Ice. This was on the caffer Sound. 40 inter and come on it of eight of mine registrations with recording more to fee if commented way of light entering the could come to anchor, to make trial of the tide, but the lot led w into the latitude of 6, de and find them grees 40. minutes. Then we left of feeking to the Welf foare, because were weren the future subside grees 40. minutes. Then we left of feeking to the Welf foare, because were weren the future subside in the complexity. indraft of Cumberlands Iles, and should know no certaintie, and hope of passage could Iles.

Now feeing that we had made an end of our discouery, and the yeare being too farre spent to goe for the bottome of the Bay, to fearch for dreft Finnes; therefore wee determined to goe for the Coast of Gromeland, to see it we could get some refreshing for our men: Master Hu-bers and two more, having kept their Cabins aboue eight dayes (besides our Cooke. Richard Waynew, which died the day before, being the twenty fix of July) and divers more of our company fo weake, that they could doe but little labour. So the winde fauouring vs, we came to anchor in 50 the latitude of 65, degrees 45, minutes, at fix a clocke in the evening, the eight and twentieth

day, in a place called Cankin Sound. The next day going on thoare, on a little Iland we found great abundance of the herbe called Scurnie Graffe, which we boyled in Beere, and so dranke thereof, whing it also in Sallets, with

Sorrell and Orpen, which here groweth in abundance; by meanes hereof, and the bleffing of Scuruy Graffe. God all our men within eight or nine dayes space were in perfect health, and so continued till our arrivall in England.

Wee rode in this place three dayes before any of the people came to vs; then on the first of August, fix of the Inhabitants in their Canous, brought vs Salmon Peale, and such like . which 60 was a great refreshment to our men : the next day following, the same six came againe, but after that we faw them no more vntill the fixt day, when we had wayed anchor, and were almost cleere of the harbour; then the same six and one more, brought vs of the like commodities, for which we gaue them Glaffe Beads, Counters and small peeces of Iron; which they doe as much esteeme, as we Christians doe Gold and Siluer.

20

In this Sound we faw fuch great Scales of Salmon (wimming to and fro, that it is much to be admired: here it floweth about eighteene foote water, and is at the highest on the change day. at feuen a clocker it is a very good harbour, and eafie to be knowne, having three high round hils like Piramides close adioyning to the mouth of it, and that in the middest is lowest, and along all this coast are many good harbours to be found, by reason that so many Ilands lye off from the maine.

The fixt of August, by three a clocke in the afternoone, wee were cleere of this place, having a North North North-west winde, and faire weather, and the Lord sent vs a speedy and good passage homeward as could be withed : for in nineteene dayes after, wee faw Land on the Id coast of Ireland, it being on the five and twentieth day : the feuen and twentieth at noone we were two leagues from Sely, and the thirtieth day, in the morning wee anchored at Doner in the roade, for the which and all other his bleffings the Lord make vs thankfull.

CHAP. XX.

A briefe Discourse of the probabilitie of a passage to the Westerne or South Sea, illustrated with testimonies : and a briefe Treatife and Mappe by Mafter



Thought good to adde somewhat to this Relation of Master Baffin . that learned-vulearned Mariner and Mathematician; who wanting art of words, fo really employed himselfe to those industries, whereof here you see so euident fruits. His Mappes and Tables would have much illustrated his Voyages, if trouble, and cost, and his owne despaire of passage that way, had not made

vs willing to content our felues with that Mappe following of that thrice lear-ned (and in this argument three times thrice industrious) Mathematician, Master Brigger, 30 famous for his readings in both Vniuerfities, and this honourable Citie, that I make no further Voyage of Discouery to finde and follow the remote Passage and extent of his name. Mafter Baffin told mee, that they supposed the tyde from the North-west, about Digges Iland was mifreported, by miltaking the houre, eight for eleuen and that hee would, if hee might get employment, fearch the passage from Iapan, by the coast of Asia, or (qua data porta) any way hee could. But in the Indies he dyed, in the late Ormus businesse, flaine in fight with a shot, as hee was trying his Mathematicall projects and con-

Now for that discouery of Sir Thomas Button, I have solicited him for his Noates, and receiued of him gentle entertainment and kinde promifes; but being then forced to flay in the Citie 40 vpon necessary and vrgent affaires, he would at his returne home, seeke and impart them. Since I heare that weightie occasions have detained him out of England, and I cannot communicate that which I could not receive : which if I doe receive, I purpose rather to give thee out of due place, then not at all. Once he was very confident in conference with me of a paffage that way, and faid that he had therein fatisfied his Maiestie, who from his discourse in private, inferred the necessitie thereof. And the maine argument was the course of the tyde: for wintering in Port Nelson (see the following Mappe) hee found the tyde rising every twelve hours fifteene foote (whereas in the bottome of Hudfons Bay it was but two foote, and in the bottome of Fretum Danis discouered by Baffin, but one) yea and a West winde equalled the nep tydes to the spring tydes; plainely arguing the neighbourhood of the Sea, which is on the Well fide of America. The 50 Summer following he found about the latitude of 60 degrees a strong race of a tide, running sometimes Eastward, sometimes Westward; whereupon Iosias Hubbard in his plat, called that place Hubbarts Hope, as in the Map appeareth. Now if any make scruple, because this discourry was not purfued by Sir Thomas Button, let him confider, that being Prince Henries Servant, and partly by him employed (whence I thinke he named the Country New Wales) the votimely death of that Prince put all out of joint; nor was hee so open, that others should have the glory of his dif-

And if any man thinke that the paffage is so farre, as the Maps vie to expresse America, running out into the West : it is easily answered, that either of negligence, or over-busie diligence, Maps by Portugals in the East, and Spaniards in the West, have beene fallely projected. Hence 60 that fabulous strait of Anian, as before by Francis Gaules testimonie and nauigation is euident: And hence the Portugals to bring in the Moluccas, to that moity of the world agreed vpon betwixt the Spaniards and them, are thought to have much curtalled Afia, and the longitude of those Hands, giving fewer degrees to them then in inft longitude is requisite. So the older Maps

of America make the Land from the Magelane Straits to the South Sea, runne much Weft. when as they rather are contracted somewhat Easterly from the North. The like is inftly supposed of their falle placing, Quinera, and I know not (nor they neither) what Countries they make in A. merica, to rum fo tarre North-westward, which Sie Francis Drakes Voyage in that See this Nous' Albien, being little further Westward then Aquarules) plainely enince to be otherwise. This cassile Yea the late Map of California found to be an Iland, the Savages discourses in all the Countries appeareth in Northwards and West wards from Virginia; fame whereof filled my friend Master Dermer with a fo much confidence, that hearing of ftrange Ships which came thither for a kinde of Vre or earth, Voisge, &com fo much confidence, that hearing or triange simps which cannot not be determined to be determined for paring that be-In cable to any parts of America, hee supposed them to come from the East, neere to China or In there with pan, and therefore he made a Voyage purpolely to discours: but croffed with divers disafters, hee returned to Firginia, frustrate of accomplishment that yeare, but fuller of confidence, as in a Letser from Verginia he fignified to me, where death ended that his defigne foone after. But how of-

ten are the vitall Charts rejected by experience in theis Nauigations, in this worke recorded?

Painters and Poets are not alwayes the best Oracles. For further proofes of a passage about these parts into the West Sea (or South, as it is called from the first discourry thereof to the South, from the parts of New Spaine, whence it was first descried by the Spaniards) there is mention of a Portagall (and taken in a Carricke in Queene Ehzaberhe dayes, of glorious memory) confirming this opinion; Sir Martin Frebilber alto from 20 2 Portugall in Gume, received incelligence of fuch a paffage, he faying he had patt it. The Pilots of Labone are fail generally to acknowledge fuch a thing; and the Almirall of D. Garcia Geoffrey Lass a of Cite-Real, in the time of Charles the fifth, is reported by the Coait of Bassalaes and Lass brader, to have gone to the Molaccas. Vasco de Coronado writ to the Emperour, that at Cibola he was one hundred and iffre leagues from the South Sea, and a little more from the North. Antonie de Herere, the Kings Coronifta Maior (part of whose worke followeth) maketh with vs also. in the diffunces of places by him described. But to produce some authority more full, I have here prefented Thomas Comlet a Marriner, and Malter Michael Locky Merchant, and after them, a little Treatife alonbed to Mafter Brugger, together with his Map. And if any thinke that the Spa-mard or Paringal would from have discoursed such a passage : these will answere, that it was Some of our 30 not for their profit to expose their East or Welt Indies to English , Dutch , or others , whom Merchants are they would not have sharers in those remote treatures by so neere a passage. First Thomas Cowles said not to be auerreth thus much.

Thomas Cowles of Bedmester, in the Countie of Somerset, Marriner, des act nowledge, that fire yeares paft, at my being at Lisbon, in the Kingdome of Portugall, I did beare one Martin Chacke, By ears paft, at my being at Lishon, in the Kingdimie of Portugall J did beare and Martin Chacke, and Portugall of Lishon, reade a Body of his some making, mich to had fe as if he prove before that time, in Print, in the Portugal is eagent, designing that the fad Martin Chacke bad frand, trother peares now paft, a my from the Portugal Indies, through a guile of the New for tomal Land, which he shought to be in my degrees of the cleaning of the New Body Body are to the beautiful as the land of ALLUL and prome power or some our court to commonar as, one of the medical control power on fine medic before the other four Solin of this company that he was formated from, a before find. And fince the fame time, I could never fee any of thos? Books, because the Kreg commanded them to be called in, and no more of them to be printed, less in time it would be to their bindrance. In witnesse where of I fee to my band and marke, the minth of April. Anno 1579.

A Note made by me MICHAEL LOK the elder, touching the Strait of Sea, commonly called Fretum Anian, in the South Sea, through the North-west passage of Metaincognita.

Hen I was at Fource, in Aprill 1596. happily arrived there an old man, about threefcore yeares of age, called commonly Inan de Fues but named properly Apostolos Valerianos, of Nation a Greeke, borne in the Hand Cefalonia, of profession a Mariner , and an ancient Pilot 6c of Shippes. This man being come lately out of Spaine, arrived first at Ligarno, and went thence to Florence in Italie, where he found one lohn Donglas, an Englishman, a famous Mariner, ready comming for Venice, to be Pilot of a Venition Ship, named Rayafona for England, in whole a pany they came both together to Venice. And John Donglas being well acquainted with n fore, he gaue me knowledge of this Greeke Pilot, and brought him to my fpeech : and in

CH AP.20.

talke and conference betweene vs, in presence of lobn Douglas: this Greeke Pilot declared in the Italian and Spanis languages, thus much in effect as followeth,

First he faid, that he had bin in the West Indies of Spains by the space of fortie veeres, and had failed to and from many places thereof, as Mariner and Pilot, in the fertice of the

Alfo he faid, that he was in the Spanish Shippe, which in returning from the Hands, Philippia Oantaine Gan. nas and China, towards Nona Spania, was robbed and taken at the Cape California, by Captaine Candish Englishman, whereby he lost fixtie thousand Duckets, of his owne goods.

Also he faid, that he was Pilot of three small Ships which the Vizeroy of Mexico fent from Mexico armed with one bundred men, Souldiers, vnder a Captain, Spinierd, to difcouer the Straits 10 of Anian, along the coast of the South-Sea, and to fortifie in that Strait, to reful the paffage and proceedings of the English Nation, which were feared to passe through those Straits into the South Sea. And that by reason of a mutinie which happened among the Souldiers, for the Sodomie of their Captaine, that Voyage was overthrowne, and the Ships returned backe from Ca-Isforma coast to Nona Spania, without any effect of thing done in that Voyage. And that after their returne, the Captaine was at Mexico punished by inflice. Also he faid, that shortly after the faid Voyage was so ill ended, the faid Vicerov of Mexico.

fent him out againe Anno 1 cg 2, with a small Caravela, and a Pinnace, armed with Mariners onely, to follow the find Voyage, for discourry of the same Straits of Anian, and the passage therect, into the Sea which they call the North Sea, which is our North-west Sea. And that he followed his course in that Voyage West and North-west in the South Sea, all along the coast of Nona Spania, and California, and the Indies, now called North America (all which Voyage hee fig-Land trending nified to me in a great Map, and a Sea-card of mine owne, which I laied before him) vittil hee in 47. degrees, came to the Latitule of fortie feuen degrees, and that there finding that the Land trended North and North-east, with a broad lislet of Sea, betweene 47.and 48.degrees of Latitude : hee entred thereinto, fayling therein more then twentie dayes, and found that Land trending still fometime North-west and North-east, and North, and also East and South-eastward, and very much broader Sea then was at the faid entrance, and that hee paffed by divers llands in that favling. And that at the entrance of this faid Strait, there is on the North-west coast thereof, a great Hedland or Iland, with an exceeding high Pinacle, or spired Rocke, like a piller 30

Also he said, that he went on Land in divers places, and that he saw some people on Land, clad in Beafts skins : and that the Land is very fruitfull, and rich of gold, Siluer, Pearle, and other

things, like Nona Spania. And also he faid, that he being entred thus farre into the faid Strait, and being come into the North Sea already, and finding the Sea wide enough every where, and to be about thirtie of fortie leagues wide in the mouth of the Straits, where hee entred; lice thought he had now well discharged his office, and done the thing which he was sent to doe : and that hee not being armed to resist the force of the Saluage people that might happen, hee therefore let sayle and returned homewards againe towards None Spania, where hee arrived at Acapillo, Anno 40 1502. hoping to be rewarded greatly of the Viceroy, for this femice done in this faid

Alfohe faid, that after his comming to Mexico, hee was greatly welcommed by the Viceroy, and had great promites of great reward, but that having fued there two yeares time, and obtained nothing to his content, the Viceroy told him, that he should be rewarded in Spaine of the King him felfe, very greatly, and willed him therefore to goe into Spaine, which Voyage hee did performe.

Alio he faid, that when he was come into Spaine, he was greatly welcommed there at the Kings Court, in wordes after the Spanish manner, but after long time of fuite there also, hee could not get any reward there neither to his content. And that therefore at the length he ftole away out of Spaine, and came into Italie, to goe home againe and Ilue among his owne Kindred and Coun-

trimen, he being very old. Also he faid, that hee thought the cause of his ill reward had of the Spaniards, to bee for that they did vaderhand very well, that the English Nation had now given over all their voyages for discoverie of the North-west passage, wherefore they need not feare them any more to come that way into the South Sea, and therefore they needed not his feruice therein any more.

Also he said, that in regard of this ill reward had of the Speniarde, and understanding of the noble minde of the Queene of England, and of her warres maintayned to valiantly against the Spaniards, and hoping that her Maiestie would doo him justice for his goods lost by Captaine Conside, he would be content to go into England, and lemether Maistin in that very get for the disposerie perfectly of the North-west pilage into the South Sea, and would put his life into the 50.

The students hands to performe, the fame, if the would furnish him work onely our ship of fortie s burden and a Pinnaffe, and that he would performe it in thirste dayes time, from one end to the other of the Streights. And he willed me to to write into England.

And upon this conference had twife with the faid Greeke Pilot, I did write thereof according ly into England voto the right honourable the old Lord Treasurer Cecill, and to Sir Walter Raterob, and to Maiter Richard Hakluye that famous Cofmographer, certifying them hereof by my Letters. And in the behalfe of the faid Greeke Pilot, I prayed them to disburse one hundred pounds of money, to bring him into England with my felfe, for that my owne purfe would not tretch fo wide at that time. And I had answere hereot by Letters of friends, that this action was very well liked, and greatly defired in England to bee effected; but the money was not readie, and therefore this action dyed at that time, though the faid Greeke Pilot perchance liveth fill this day at home in his owne Countrie in Cefalonia, towards the which place he went from me

10 within a fortnight after this conference had at Venice. And in the meane time, while I followed my owne basinesse in Umice, being in Law suit asainft the Companie of Merchants of Turkie, and Sir John Spencer their Governour in London, to recover my penion due for my office of being their Confull at Aleppe in Turke ; which there held from me wrongfully. And when I was (as I chought) in a readinesse to returne home into England, for that it pleased the Lords of her Maiesties honourable Prime Counsell in England, to looke into this Caufe of my Law fat for my reliefe; I thought that I should be able of my owner pur fe to take with me into England the faid Greeke Pilot. And therefore I wrote vinto him from Venice a Letter, dated in July 1596. which is copied here-vnder.

> Al Mageo. Sigor. Capitan Iv AN DE Frea Piloto de Indias, amigo mio charmo en Zefalonia.

N 17 bourado Senous, siendo 30 para buelnerme en Inglatierra dentre de pocas mores, y actuar dan-dame de lo tratisdo eutre un 3 18. M. en Venessa, sobre el viagio de las Indias, son ba pareficido bien de servinir esta carta à V. M. paraque si tenças, animas de anda con migo, paedas especibriosus persolo que manierra quereis conferiosos. I paredasi en beloranis vuestra cart «, c'u esta mos ingles que sta al Zante (fino ballais otra coientura meter) con el fobreferitto que dega, en cafa del Semor Elezzat Hyc 30 man Mercader Ingles, al tragetto de San Thothas en Venifia. T Dies guarde la persona de U. M. Fecha en Venefia al primer dia de Iulio, 1 596, amos.

Amigo de V. M. Michael Lok Ingles,

And I fent the faid Letter from Venice to Zante, in the thip Cherubin. And thortly after I fent a copie thereof in the ship Mynyon. And also a third copie thereof by Manes Orlando Patron de Name Venetian. And voto my faid Letters he wrote mee answere to Vence by one Letter which came not to my hands. And also by another Letter which came to my hands, which is copied here-vnder.

Al Illmo. Sigor. MICHAL LocH Ingles, in casadel Sigor. LASAR O Merca. der Ingles, al tragetto de San T H o M A s en Venesia.

Vy Illustre Segue. la carta de U. M. receni à 20, dias del Mese di Settembre, por loqual veo My (10)1971 2571 - autria de V., recessi a 30, sad ast resque sontimore, por oposa vece V. M. me manda, so tençbo animo de cempler Loche tenço promettudo d V. M./. 30 o foldo por otra carra che anife a V. M. perache me emblas i le dairero te enço eferito de V. M. Perache bene missa i le dairero te entro eferito de V. M. Perache bene flate V. M. como i ovure pour - porche me glieno Capitan Candis mas do folfonta mille ducados, So come V. M. bien fane : embiandome lo dicho, ire à sernir a V. M. con todos mis compagneros. I no spero otra cossa mas de la voluntad è carta de V. M. I con tanto nostro Siga. Dios guarda la Illustre per-Sona de U. M. muchos annos. De Ceffalonia à 24 de Settembre del 1596.

Amigo & servitor de V.M.

And the faid Letter came to my hands in Venice, the 16. day of November, 1 co6. but my Law fuite with the Companie of Turkie was not yet ended , by reason of Sir Iohn Spencers fuite made in England at the Queenes Court to the contrarie, feeking onely to have his money difcharged which I had attached in Venice for my faid pension, and thereby my owne purse was 60 not yet readie for the Greeke Pilot.

And nevertheletfe, hoping that my faid fuite would have fhortly a good end; I wrote another Letter to this Greeke Pilot from Venice, dated the 20. of November, 1 596. which came not to his hands. And also another Letter, dated the 24. of Ianuarie, 1596. which came to his hands. And thereof he wrote me answere, dated the 28. of May, 1,97, which I received the first of August

1997. by Thomas Nordon an Emplish Merchant yet living in London, wherein he promited fill to goe with me into England, to performe the faid voyage for discourtie of the North-wieft patigue into the South Sea, it I would find him money for his charges according to his former writing, without the which money, he faid he could not goe, for that he faid he was undone vetterly, when The Ship Sants to Was which came from Chims, and was robbed at California. And yet againt affect ward I wrote him another Letter from Penics, whereemto he wrote me aniwere, by a Letter written in his Greeke language, dated the 20.0 Oktober, 1998. the which I have full by me; wherein he promiteth full to goe with me into England, and performe the faid voyage of discourriered the North-west passings into the South Seasy by the faid strengths, which he calleth the The Sarehot.

The Streight of Nous Spans, which he faith is but thirtied alses woyage in the freights, if I will fend of Nous Spans, which he faith is but thirtied alses the thirtie dayes for that I had not yet recoursed my pension owing mee by the Companie of Turke aforefaid. Streight.

And fo of long time if they deform any furder proceeding with him in this matter.

And so of long time! they de from any furder proceeding with him the his matter.

And yet hilly, when I my fells was at Zante, in the moneth of lune 1602, minding to piffe from thence for England by Sea, for that I had then recoursed a little money from the Companie of Tarthe, by an order of the Lords of the Prine Controlled of England, I wrote another Letter to this Greeke Pilot to Cylaints, and required him to come to me to Zante, and goe with mee into England, but I had none aniwers tierest from him, for that as I heard atterward at Zante, he was then dead, or very likely to old of great fischnele. Whereupon I returned my left by Sea from Zante to Venice, and from thence I went by land through France into England, which I armied 20 are Christmas, An, 1602, laft(s), I thanke God, after my absence from thence ten yeers time; with great troubles had for the Company of Tarties business from the cet en yeers time; with great virubles had for the Company of Tarties businesses.

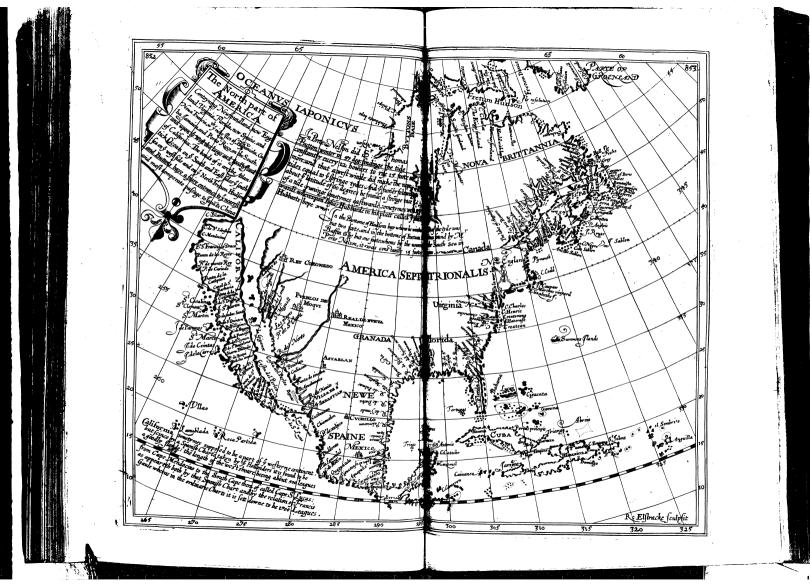
A Treatise of the North-west passage to the South Sea, through the Consinent of Virginia, and by Fretum Hudson.

The noble plantation of Virginia hash fome very excellent prerogatives above many other 30 famous Kingdomes, namely, the temperature of the aire, the fruitfulnesse of the toile, and the commodium sele of situation.

The aire is healthfull and free both from immoderate heate, and from extreme cold; for that both the Inlubitants and their Castell doe profiper exceedingly in flature and fitength, and all Plants brought from any other remote climate, doe there grow and fruelitie in agood or better manner, then in the fold from whene they-eape. Which though it doe manifeffly prooue the fruitfulude for the foller, yeelding all kindes of Graine or Plants committed voto is, with a rich and plentifull increase; yet cannot the fatneffle of the earth alone produce fuch excellent effects, whelfe the temperature of the aire be likewise for fauourable, that those tender iprouts which the earth doth abundantly bring forth, may be cherifiled with moderate heate and feafonable moi-tof flure, and treed both from korching drought, and nipping frest.

These blettings are so much the more to be element, because they are bestowed young place significant the strength of the surface of t

tuated to conveniently, and at fo good a distance both from Europe, and the West Indies , that for the mutuall commerce betwixt there great and most rich parts of the habitable world, there cannot bee deuted any place more convenient for the fuccour and refreshing of those that trade from hence thither : whether they be of our owne Nation, or of our Neighbours and Friends, the multitude of great and nauigable Ruers, and of fate and spacious Harbours, as it were inuiting all Nations to entertaine mutuall friendship, and to participate of those blessings which God out of the abundance of his rich Treasures, hath so graciously bestowed some upon these parts of Esrepe, and others no leffe defired vpon those poore people: which might fill have remay ned in 50 their old barbarous ignorance, without knowledge of their owne miferie, or of Gods infinite goodnesse and mercy; if it had not pleased God thus graciously both to draw vs thither with defire of fuch wealth as those truitfull Countries afford, and also to grant vs so easie, certaine, and fafe a meanes to goe vnto them : which paffage is in mine opinion made much more fecure and easie by the commodious Harbours and refreshing which Virginia doth reach out voto vs. The coasts of Florida to the West, being not so harberous; and of New England to the East, fomewhat more out of the way, amongst to many Flats and small Ilands not to fafe: Neither is the commodiousnesse of Virginia's situation onely in respect of this Well Atlanticke Ocean, but also in respect of the Indian Ocean, which we commonly call the South Sea, which lyeth on the West and North-west fale of Virginia, on the other fale of the Mountaines beyond our Fails, and openeth a free and faire paffage, not onely to China, lapan, and the Moluccaer; but also to New 60 Spaine, Peru, Chili, and those rich Countries of Terra Australia, not as yet fully discouered. For the Sea wherein Mafter Hadfon did winter , which was first discovered by him , and is therefore now called Fretum Hadfon, doth thretch fo farre towards the West, that it lyeth as farre West-



ward as the Cape of Florida: So that from the Falls aboue Henrico Citie, if we shape our journey rowards the North-weit, following the Rivers towards the head, wee shall undoubtedly come to the Mountaines, which as they fend divers great Rivers Southward into our Bay of Chefes sock, folikewife doe they fend others from their further fide North-westward into that Bay where Hadfon did winter. For fo wee fee in our owne Countrie, from the ridge of Mountaines continued from Derbifbire into Scotland , doe iffue many great Rivers on both fides into the Eaft Germane Ocean, and into the Westerne Irish Seas : in like fort from the Alpes of Switzerland and the Grizons, doe runne the Danubie Eastward into Pontsu Euxinus, the Rhene into the North Germane Ocean, the Rhofne West into the Mediterrane Sea, and the Po South into the Adriatike 10 Sea. This Bay where Hudfon did winter , ftretcheth it felfe Southward into 49 degrees, and cannot be in probabilitie fo farre diffant from the Falls as two hundred leagues; part of the way lying by the Rivers fide towards the Mountaines from whence it fpringeth; and the other pare on the other fide cannot want Rivers likewife, which will conduct vs all the way, and I hope carry vs and our prouifions a good part of it. Befides that Bay, it is not vnlikely that the Wefterne Sea in some other Creeke or River commeth much neerer then that place : For the place where Sir Thomas Button did winter, lying more Westerly then Master Hudsons Bay by one hundred and ninetic leagues in the fame Sea, doth extend it felfe very neere as farre towards the west as the Cape of California, which is now found to bee an Iland firetching it felle from 22. degrees to 42, and lying almost directly North and South; as may appeare in a Map of that Iland which 20 I have feene here in London, brought out of Holland; where the Sea vpon the North-well part may very probably come much neerer then fome doe imagine : who giving too much credit to our vivall Globes and Maps, doe dreame of a large Continent extending it felfe farre Westward to the imagined Streight of Anian, where are feated (as they fable) the large Kingdomes of Cebola and Onimira, having great and populous Cities of civill people; whose houses are taid to bee five stories high, and to have some pillars of Turguesses. Which relations are cunningly set downe by some youn set purpose to put vs out of the right way, and to discourage such as otherwise might be defirous to fearch a paffage by the way aforelaid into those Seas.

Gerardus Mercator, a very indultious and excellent Geographer, was abuted by a Map fent vento him, of four Euripi meeting about the North Pole; which now are found to bee all tur30 ned into a mayne Icie Sea. One demonstration of the crastic fallhood of these vitall Maps is this, that Cape Mendeine is see in them West North-west, distant from the South Cape of California, about fourtheen founded leagues, whereas Perasic Gant that was impliced in those discountries by the Vice-toy of New Spaine, doth in Hugo Lingbostem his booke set downer their distance to be onely fur bumbled leagues.

stance to be onely fine hundred leagues. Befides this, in the place where Sir Thomas Button did winter in 57. degrees of latitude, the conitant great Tydes euery twelue houres, and the increase of those Tydes whensoeuer any firong Westerne winde did blow, doe strongly perswade ve that the mayne Westerne Ocean is not farre from thence; which was much confirmed vnto them the Summer following; when fayling directly North from that place where they wintered, about the latitude of 60, degrees, 40 they were croffed by a ftrong Current running fometimes Eastward, fometimes Westward: So that if we finde either Hudfons Bay, or any Sea more neere vnto the West, wee may affure our selues that from thence we may with great ease passe to any part of the East Indies : And that as the World is very much beholding to that famous Columbia for that hee first discoursed vnto vs the West Indies; and to the Portugal for the finding out the ordinarie and as yet the best way that is knowne to the East Indies, by Cape Bona Speranza: So may they and all the world be in this beholding to vs in opening a new and large paffage, both much neerer, fafer, and farre more wholesome and temperate through the Continent of Virginia, and by Fretum Hudson, to all those rich Countries bordering vpon the South Sea, in the East and West Indies. And this hope that the South Sea may eafily from Virginia be discourred ouer Land, is much confirmed by the confrant report of the Sauages, not onely of Virginia, but also of Florida and Canada; which dwel-50 ling fo remote one from another, and all agreeing in the report of a large Sca to the Westwards, where they deferibe great thips not valike to ours, with other circumstances, doe give vs very great probabilisie (if not full affurance) that our endeaours this way shall by Gods bleiling have a prosperous and happy successe, to the encrease of his Kingdome and Glorie amongst these poore ignorant Heathen people, the publique good of all the Christian world, the neuer-dying honour of our most gracious Soueraigne, the mestimable benefit of our Nation, and the admirable and speedie increase and advancement of that most noble and hopefull Plantation of Virginia; for the good fucceffe whereof all good men with mee, I doubt not, will powre out their prayers to



VOYAGES AND TRA-VELS TO AND IN THE NEW WORLD, CALLED

AMERICA: RELATIONS OF THEIR

PAGAN ANTIOVITIES AND OF THE

REGIONS AND PLANTATIONS

IN THE NORTH AND SOVIH
Trars thereof, and of the Seasand
Hands adiacent.

THE FIFTH BOOKE. was a sign of the sign of the

The second of th A Description of the West Indies, by ANTONIO De HER-RERA bis Maiesties Chiefe Chronicler of the Indies, and his Chronicler of Castile.

To the Licentiate P & v & of Enguna, Prefident of the Royall and Supreme Councell of the Indies.

He Licentiate loun of Obinido", Predictifer of your Lording (be too and obtained whose come to Office of chiefe Ebronict of the Index in a siltent comments to the first with predict amborine, plantation, and investigation to Acts of the Cathliam inities IV on 1984, instantes, the districtions of the October 1880 Originals. the Act of two Cattlians mife even worse, some or neurosummen ny. Organical that which the other Chronicles; should write for I finds that at complained almost to all that is written no credit could be vision, for our much it also with the interest, wherevisib write this is was done) her view great difference ton, with great the write the country of increase, whereigns with their it was done) but voled great directic inn, with great in a gathering behinds critical feelings the property of as well as painted only the Indies, it is Spatine, if their which beingened in the Defouration greater plant for the property, it the from histories of their Townson and Coffience of mee & proling the people. And uniony years being pail after his death unitions making the property of the people. And union years being pail after his death unitions making the property of the Indies, showing the make it behinds, that death for withful and continued to the property of the Indies, showing them in act it behinds, that death for withful the continued to the Indies, showing them in act it behinds that death for withful the continued to the Indies, showing them in act it behinds that death for withful the continued to the Indies, showing the winds it behinds that death for withful the continued to the Indies, showing the winds the Indies of the Register of the

rude, obfure and is very many places viterly fenceleffe. But hasing more convince for men but my characteristics. I rather chorson amend thinks I could, then no resultate it arew. Librar fencel is a laye in French. The stated in exception fully first men as, which is note for their false which reade that and but years the fencel fully first men as, which is note for their false which reade that and but years the fencel fully first men as for the fencel false which reade that and but years the fencel for first false which reade that and but years the fencel for the fencel fencel for the fencel fencel for the fencel fencel fencel for the fencel fence tight Decadorof the Spanis Acts with Well takes, which gue great light to those parts, but would be too long for this Worke.

ofthe beafts, planes, Earch. Heauen, &c. for which hee there com-

Of the bounds

the World, in fhips. Remem -

The degrees of longitude, which are those that are reckoned by the . Equinoctiall, which 60 goeth from Bail to Weft, through the middeft of the Orbe, and Globe of the Earth, have not grees of longle beene able to bee taken well, because there is no fixed figne in the Heaten. Degrees of altitude are those which are taken, and reckoned from the Pole which fall our certayne, because it is a

of memorie hould no longer be buried, and that they should be written by a Royall Chronicler (seeing so much from to gotten of Historie, that it exceedet b fo much the Pillure, at the foule, the bodie, and the opinion of a moderne Writer.) Providing all the meaner necessarie with liberative and difference how beene the moere and onely Inffrument ; following the opinion of S. Augustine, that this Historie, and the ricably taxed: Description that followeth hath come to the present effate. And because it hath not beene of least inner. ready stace. Defermine that followers bash come to the profess of fact. And because is hash not because if least impurious the tools to more to because the state, considering them to be professed in the two constraints of the professed in the two constraints of the state of the done any tung though but the and ridiculous, that the Spanish Authors should take paints in writing the names and Country of these hellions, then which served in the matters of the Indies. Wherein he showeth the venime of the samie concessed of the glorsom deeds of thefe Catholike Kings, and of the Caftillian Nation, forme the Chronicles dee form to honour the good, and to reproch the enil, for an example of those to come; which could not be obtained with the opinion of this Ramutius, whom the faying of Cato against the Grecians doth fit. But the o-bee reknowledged of it eternally. God keepe your Lordship, from Vallyacolyeede the fifteenth of Odober 1601.

He compatie of the Earth is 360, degrees, which being reduced to leagues of Callile are 6200. and by the compalle of the Earth is vuderflood the Sea together with it, which two Elements make the Globe; whose vpper face in part is Earth, and in part is Sea : The Ancients diuided the Earth in three parts, and gaue to every one his name. The first they called Empe, more celebrated then any of the other. The fecond Affa, which is greater then the reft, and contayneth the great Kingdome of China. The third. Africa And men being in a supposition that contayned in great angulate on more then was refearfed, not contenting themselves with it, entred 30 in the dat of Naugating, and in the intention of libra of high building, first per misch order that they might abled the force of the wants of the Se, & in this Art it has parient have 1 The Spanierds Surpaffed all the Nations of the World. For whiles there reigned Ferdinand in Cafile and in hive furpatied Lyon, the famous Kings Catholike Ferdinande the Fift, and Ifabella a most wife, prudent, and most pursuant Queene; and Don John the Second, called the Pellican, raigned in Portugal, (hee that ever will be worthy of memory. Don Christopher Colon, first Admirall of the Indies, having lived many yeeres married in Spaine; with the counfell of Marin of Bobenia, a Portugali borne in the lland of Fayall, a famous Aftrologian, and especially a Judiciarie, and of others ber that a Spa- with whom he communicated it, gaue a beginning so the Discourry of that which at this day is counted the fourth part of the World, and the greatest of them all, and taking his course toward the Sunne setting, going from Palles a Village of the Earle of Miranda, in the Coast of Anda-40 Manuel, he fayled to much by the Ocean, that he found this great Land, which the Equinochial Line cutteth in the middel, and it gorth fo farre toward the South, that it reaches the Pole two degrees and an halfe, and open to high to the North, that it hides I refler vader the Pole

Articke, without a knowing any end. The greatnesse of this fourth part hath set the people in great admiration, whose description shall here be handled, under the name of stands, and firme Land of the Ocean Sea, because they are compassed with this Sea, and placed to the West, and are commanly called, the West Indies, and the New World, and comprehended within the limits of the Kings of Cafile and of Lym. and the New New New Andrew William and the New Andrew Could be the Market of Her Marke foot of a Caffiller yard, which men fay are fixtie Italian miles, from the Orient to the Occident, which the Sea-men doe call East and West. And this account of twentie leagues to a degree, is according to Ptolomie, and to the opinion of many curious men. It hath feemed to others that the miles of every degree are feventie, and that they make no more then feventeene leagues and an halfe of Caffile, which is held for the trueft account.

CHAP.I. How farre America hath bin discourred. Nature of the Loadstone.

fixed point, which is the marke that is taken, by the which it shall be shewed in this description. rea point, which is the marke that is taken, by the White South, from 66, degrees of Septentria What is differ-

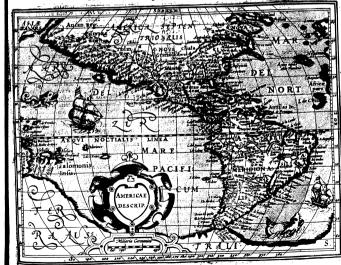
onal altitude, vnto fiftie three Austral, which are 1977, leagues of ground, which hath in breadth, uered and naonal attitude, vinto intie tistee Autura, which is the narowaft by Nomat the broadest 1300, and thence downervatus vino sign dinded this Land, leating almost the discoursed far bre de Dios, or Portobelo, vinto Panama, whereby Nature dinded this Land, leating almost the discoursed far bre as Dies, or corresponding to the South, which are the two parts of the bounds. The more: From third, is the llands and firme land, that lye to the East of Mallaca, where through passet the 81. in Green. third, is the lines and firme land, that by to the East or Manaca, where though partent me of the Line of the partition, between the two Growness of Castle and Pennyage, 1 we which although land, and from they are part of the East Indea, they are named of the Westin respect of Castle, as shall bee feene in the generall Map that followeth.

And because the Discourrie of all these Regions, from whence so great Riches have been And because the Discourrie or an time to Argonie, most within the feet a wonderfull of Amaruellous feet of his discoursed by Des Antonio Offerio, a Gentleman of Valladolid, and it is, that it doth effect of the communicate to the Iron, more attractue vertue then naturally it hath of it felfe; feeing that Loadfone, communicate to the Iron, more attractive vertue then naturally it nature it returns the interpretable part of the flow that hat most force, much more weight will be rap Don Annie spolying an Iron to the part of the flow that hat most force, much more weight will be rap. Don Annie for which it must be much a flow of the dead with the flow, then which the flowest fields; fo it bee loyned with it, in fort that to a Load spirit which we have the spirit which it is not that to a Load spirit which we have the spirit which is not that the long that the spirit which is not the spirit from that weighten no mote then two pound one quarter, and hath no naturall vertue for to keere of the lift more than fixe ounces weight, it made the Iron in my presence to lift fourteene pound of I Loadhans ron, and this vertue bath not the Load-stone of Spaine, a thing that causeth the Philosophers to

20 mule much vport.

The Author had bere inferred a Table or Generall Map of America; the defelt of which wee bane Supplied with this farre more complete of Hondius.

HONDIVS.bis Map of AMERICA.



Chap. 2. Of the Nanigation of the

How many

The Ocean that is toward the East, is called the North Sea, and that which falleth to the West, Mar del Sur, or the South Sea : this washeth Nona Hispania and Peru: that washeth those Regions which are situated on the South coast of Brafile toward the Magellan Streight: and effectially the North coast from Brafile toward Caffile, and other Septemrienal parts. These two vatt Seas are duided into other lefter Seas and Gulfes, and are sayled by foure principall Naugations. The first and most ancient, from Castile to Terra firme, and to Nova Hispania. The fecond, from Caftile to the River of Plate, and the Streight of Magellan, The third, from the coaft of Nona Hilpania to Guatimala, and Panama, to Peru, Chile, and the Streight. And the laft, and newest, from Nous Hispania to the Ilands of the West, and trafficke of China, as it is seene in the Table preceding.

The first Nauigation, because it is most vied, called Carrera de las Indias , The course of the Indies, is divided in two, one to the port of Saint John of Ulna in Nama Hift aria, whitherto from Simil is fayled about one thousand and seuen hundred leagues in two moneths and an halfe; and another to Nombre de Dies, and now to Porte belle, which is in the Kingdome which they call Terra firme; of one thousand and foure hundred leagues, in two moneths large, and both goe by one course, till they come to the Ilands of the North Sea, from Saint Lucar of Barrameda, whence yee cannot take Sea without a Pilot skilfull in the Channell, a fit winde and spring Tydes , and light of the day, or lights, for to fee the markes of the Barre.

going out of Saintlace In what times

Difficultie to

The Times for to begin these Nauigations, are divers. For Nona Hispania, the winter being 20 paft, from the beginning of April vnto the end of May, and not after, that they may not come tions are to be to the Hands of the North Sea after August, when the North windes begin to reigne, and the Vrecanes doe begin, which are stormes and great gusts arising of contrarie windes. And to Terra firme, the Nauigation is before the entring of the Winter, in all August and September, that they may come to Porte bello from Nouember forward, when by the beginning of the North windes that Coast is alreadie least diseased, and more healthad.

they goe.

What thing

From Saint Lucar they goe to the Canaries, whither there is about two hundred and fiftig legges of Nauigation, of eight or ten dayes, through the Gulfe de let Tegues, which in winter is very dangerous for flormes: and in the Port of Comps they cast anker when they thinks it good, or elle in the Port of Comms, which is the best of thook Bunde. Ten me Commiss they 30 good, or elle in the Port of Gomms, which is the best of thook Bunde. Ten me Commiss they 30 faile to Deffeada, which flands in 15. degrees and little more; and to Dominica, whither they make feuen hundred leagues, through the great Ocean, and they flay fine and twentie dayes. whereby they cannot returne, because the Brises are ordinarie, and contrarie at their returne. The Brifes are windes which comprehend all the Easterne windes with all their quarters and are fo ordinarie and firme, because the swift motion of the First Momer, doth carry after him the Element of the Aire, as the other fuperior Orbes : and so the Aire followeth alwaies the motion of the Day, going from East to Welt, never varying, and the effectuall motion of the Aire carrieth after him also the vapours and exhalations that doe arise from the Sea, and therefore the Brile winde which runneth from the East, is so continuall in those parts. This voyage from the Canaries to Dominica, Peter Aries of Anila, which was called Gentill and the Inster, made the 40 first, the yeere of 1914, when hee went with an Armie for Governour and Captaine generall of the Kingdome of Golden Caftile, now called Terra firme, fince which the Nauigation hath beene ordered, that vntill then went out of order.

Because it is now ordered that fresh water and wood be not taken in the Iland of Descada, and in Dominica, the Fleet of Nona Espanna goe hence to Occoa, a Port of the Iland Hispan-yola, to take refreshing, and they stay long because the stormes from (what doe overtake it. And they They take wa- that goe for Noua Efpanna, doe water in the Iland of Guadalupe, and there they divide the courter alreadie in fes. The fleet of Nona Espanna goeth in demand of the Cape of Saint Antonie, which is in the the He of Gua- furthest part and most Occidentall of the Hand of Cuba, to which place they faile about five hundred leagues in twentie dayes ordinarily, in fight of Saint Iohn of Porto Rico and of Espannola, two 50 leagues off the Port of Saint Domingo, running along the coast by the Point of Nizao, and betweene the Hands of Cuba and Lamagea, they goe with great heede of the shoales, which are cal-led the Lardines, neere to the middest of the coast of Cuba where many ships have beene lost, pasfing afterward in fight of the Hand of Pinos and Cape Correntes twelve leagues short of the Cape of Saint Antonie. From whence there are two courses to the Port of Venacruz, both of tenor twelve dayes; one which they call Wathin Land, of two hundred and fiftie leagues, for the Summer time from May to September, when there bee no North windes which are croffe windes on the coast of Tucatan, whereby they paste; and another which they call Without, for the time of Winter, of about two hundred and eightie leagues somewhat higher in altitude: and the best Nauigation, for to goe to the Port of Saint Iohn de Vina, is to leans to the coaft of Florida, and the Playnes of Almeria, that no contrarie wind stay him from scalonable attayning the Port of Saint

best Nauigation on from that Cape of S. An-

The fleets that went from Dominica, and now goe from Guadalupe to Terra firme (whither is about foure hundred leagues voyage of fifteene dayes) they goe in demand of Cartagena, farre off

the coast of Torra firme, where the Brifes are almost perpetuall; and contrarie to the returne and the Southerne windes continuall in Summer, and the Northerne in Winter; which are eroffe winder. They doe reknowledge by the way the Cape de Pella between Sana Martha and a Ve- a Officia winds. I have Cape del Again neere Carragena, where they valade the merchandife that are Penier. to gos to New Kingtonie; and those which are to pale to Pers, are carried to Perte belle, whis b Or of the thereo from Carrigeme are ninetle leagues, foure or fixe dayes fayling, reknowledging the Point Needle. of Captina, and from the Canaries to Cartagena is fine and thirtie dayes fayling.

Finole that good Hunduras and Guatemala, goe in companie with them of None Efrance, The voyage of write Cape Tiburen, the vitmost Westerne part of Espannela, from whence running along by Bundara and In the Hand of Landyes on the North fide, white the Point of the " Negrillo, the vitermost of it, c Or little the pair to Sealin demand of the Cape of the Camaron, the beginning of the Gulfe and Prounce black Mooie. of Handaras; from whence they goe to anker to Traville fifteene leagues to the West from the Capil; where the merchandize are maden that are to remaine there, and the rest doe, passe to the orbit of Carallas; and to Gossa Duke, along the coast by the Gulte of Handwas, to transport them

to Guatemala.

He returne from the Indies to Spaine, cannot be made by the course which they take in go- Chep. 3.

If ing thither, and therefore they must come to a reaser hereby. ing chither, and therefore they must come to a greater height, going out of the Tropicks Whereinhee to feeke fresh windes which doe blow from towards the North; all the Fleetes doe meete in the profequent 20 Port of Hansens, about the moneth of Inne, to come to Spaine before Winter; for the East winde sagainft them, and is traverse in the Channell, and the Southalso is traverse in the Coat under the Coath also is traverse in the Coath also is traverse in the Coath also is traverse. from the Cape Saint Vincent to Saint Lucar. The fleet of Terra firme, departeth from May for- The Fleets doe ward from Porte bille, when the North windes doe alreadie ceafe; and returneth to Caregena to returne to catake the freight of Silver and Gold from the new Kingdom of Granada: and also for to aword the file by another take the treight of Singer and Gold from the new Magdon of Oranna and and of the way.

Coaft of Verapua, and the fireame of Nicaragua, whence they can hardly get out if they ingulfe When theficers themselues by reason of the Brises, and contrarie and dangerous Currents that are in the way. oughtio depart From Cartagena they goe for Gape Saint Antonie, the further West of Cuba about two hun- to come for dred leagues, voyage of ten dayes, with care of the shoales that are in the way of Serrona and Calife Serranille, and a Destafrices, and from the Cape of Saint Assonie to the Asson, are neere fittie Husther the Serranille, and the flips that come from Husdaries, doe come also to reknowledge the Cape of from carage. Sint Antonic.

The fleetes of None Espanse doe depart in the beginning of May, while the North windes d Ortake adoe laft, which doe ferue for the returns to the Anna, afcending a little in altitude vnto the way fleepe, Sound, which they call In Tortugas, vnto which place they faile about three hundred leagues in The thips of fifteene daves.

The ships of Santa Martha and Venezuela, to come to Castile, came out betweene Cuba and Hispaniola, to reknowledge the Cape of Saint Nicholas in the Western part of it, from whence distinct Hispaniela, to reknowledge the Cape of Salit Problem in the World in the through the middeft of the Iles of the Lucayer, they goe take the course of the fleets, and when Fleets of News they come in fight of the Cape of Saint Antonie, they goe to the Anana for feare of Pirates.

From the Anana to Castile, having past the Channell of Bahama (which the Pilot Antonie of Alaminos tayled first of all, the yeere 1519.) they doe faile through the Gulfe which is called of The voyage of the North, or of the Sagarzo, about nine hundred or a thousand leagues or more (a fayling of five them of Sazas the North, or of the Sagarzo, about nine hundred or a thouland leagues or more (a 127 ling of nine Martha and and twentie or thirtie dayes with ordinarie windes) by two wayes, one for Summer, in a greater Voucoula. height, till they come to thirtie eight or thirtie nine degrees, in the which stand the Ilands of Azores; and another for Winter, by a leffer height, because of the stormes and showres which from the Add doe come alwayes neere vnto it, whereby they goe vnto thirtie nine degrees no more, where- ne to Capita.

in flandeth the lland of Santa Maria, one of the lles of Azores, and they aftend one degree more Naugation for to touch in the Tercera, where the fleets doe alwayes come to take refreshing, without permitting any one to goe ahoare. And from the llands of Azorg vnto Saint Lucar of Barraneda, Saint Lucar.

50 the Mariners make three hundred leagues of Nauigation in fifteene dayes, others in thirtie for

the many Brifes that doe reigne in this Gulfe of the Azores, whereby they faile till they come. woon the Coast of Portugal, and the doubling of the Cape Saint Vincent; and after in fight of the Coaft vnto the Port of Saint Lucar.

The Navigation from Caftele to the River of Plata (whitherto there is one thousand and fixe Navigation 10 hundred leagues , and to the Streight of Magelanes neere two thousand) hath beene much lon- the Ruser of ger in the time then in the diffance of the way, because being necessarie to come to those Prounces in their Summer, which is from September forward, they cannot depart from Caffile at fuch time as not to passe the Equinoctiall by June or August, when in it the Calmes are many and very great, and therefore they flay five moneths in the Voyage, which might bee made in two or three, if from Simil they did depart by August or before : and touching in the Canaries they goe 60 North and South, to eight or nine degrees on the other fide of the Equinoctiall, from whence

fome doe faile Eaft and Weft, to reknowledge the Cape of Saint Augustine in Brasile, and afterward in fight of the Land vnto the River of Place and the Streight. Others from the eight degrees have gone straight through the South Sea to the Streight, although few have come to passe

Cape of Saint

Naugation of the South Sea Path atwayers occur and the South Sea Path atwayers occur and the South Sea South windes are very continuall, and the Current of the Streight ordinarie to the North; The Namigation of Nauigation of Parame to the Citic of The Kings, is wont to continue two moneths, and the returns leffe then thirtie dayes, and the fame from the Kings to Chile, from whence to Pana. me are fayled nine hundred leagues in lefe then two moneths, eight being needfull for the going, which is alreadie shorter then it was: for purting to the Seathey finde, better windes to

The Nauigation to the Westerne Bands, Malucas and Philippinas, from Caffele to the to Streight of Magellane paffeth foure thouland leagues, and so for being so long as for the difficultie of passing the Streight of Magellerss, it is held for disticult to vie it, and from Nosia E. frame through the Westerne Gulle, which is in the South Sea. This Nanigation was made, promote unough one westerne counts, which is not south soon in a sessing profession to the part of the National on the Coals of Nova filmens; as this time is a seade from the Port of Acquite. Irom whence to the Malman and Philippinas, they doe make a voyage of one thoutand fix hundred, or a thousand and feven hundred leagues, which is tayled in two moneths, or two and a halte, departing in November which is the time most free from calmes. And the returne to Nona Espanna is longer, because not being able to returne the way they went, it is necessarie to ascend to 39. degrees, and depart in May and June, when the Brifes bee leffe, and they fray foure moneths in fayling two thousand leagues that may bee in the 20

of the North. Herewas infer. bath in be Indies of the North and in New Spaine
The wea-

Ature having divided these western Indies in two parts by the Ishmos or narrownesses from Perte belle to Parama, placed the one to the North, and the other to the South; wherefore wee will call them the Indies of the North, and of the South. The Kings of Caffele and Lion, with the aduice of the supreme Councell of the Indees, have ordayned, that in each place there red Map or with the aduce of the upreme counces or the same, and Sudyers, and the same of because the first discouerers (which were loba Grijalne and his Companions) having not seene in the Ilands houses of stone, nor other things as in Spaine, which here they found with people 30 apparelled, and more civill; They named it New Spaine: which exceedeth the other part of the Indies in pastures, and therefore they have innumerable Cattle of all forts : and it exceedeth ter, to which I also in husbandrie and fruits: it hath no wine, because generally the grages doe not ripen with perfection, the raines of July and August not suffering them to ripen. The * vpper llands have also great Pastures, and a picasant prospect: for all the yeere they are green and Bounthing, with great pleasantnesse, and great Arcainces, which are very thick Groues and Inclosures, and in the Playnes are great Lakes and Quagmires. Neither Bread nor Wine grow in them; for the great ranknesse of the ground doth not suffer it to ripen nor eare : the Rivers for the most part haue gold. Florida, Nicaragna, and Guatimala are almost in this manner, as of all more particularly wee will rehearfe in their place, and in the Table tollowing thall the bounds of these Northern 40 Great paftures Indies bee feene.

"He Court of the Iland Hifpaniola, which in time and place is the first, being neerest vnto Ca-I file, it hath of bounds East and West fine hundred and fiftie leagues, and North and South more then three hundred, wherein are included the Ilands and Governments of Hispaniala, Ca-Of the bounds ba, Saint Iohn, Iamayca, Margarica, and the fifting of the Pearle : the Province and Goof the jurifdi- nernment of Venezuella, and for neernesse the Proninces of new Andaluzia, Guayana, and Florida, with all the Hands of the North Sea, which doe passe a hundred which are named, and are aboue fixe hundred great and small: and those which doe leane toward the Coast of Terra firms, the Mariners doe call of the Letward, and the other to the Wouberward. The temperature of 50 them all is commonly moist and exceeding hoe, and although they be plentifull in Pattures and Trees, they are not to of the Seedes of Caftile, not of Wheat, Barly, Vines, nor Olives : but there is great store of great Cattell and small, as Kine, Mares, Swine, and Sheepe, and therefore their principall trafficke is Hides and Sugar, for there is great flore; and although in the most of them there is gold : it is not fought for.

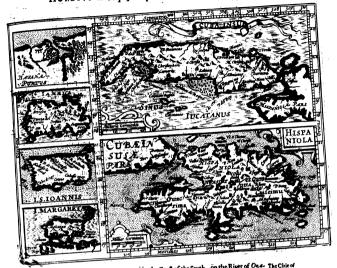
Chap. 6. Of the Iland

Cazabi bread. Townes.

The Countrie-men called the Iland of Hifpaniels, Apri and Quifqueys, which fignifieth Raughneffe, and a great Countrie. The figure of it is like a Chefnut leafe: it flands in nineteene degrees and a halfe of eleuation of the Pole, it compaffeth about foure hundred leagues and somewhat more, and hath in length East and West an hundreth and fiftie, and North and South from thirtie to fixtie where it is broadest, it is very plentifull of Sugar, and Cattell, and of Tace, the roote whereof maketh the Cazabi, the bread of the Countrimen. They have no Millet nor Wheat, although they begin to reape fome in the inward parts and coldeft. It is rich of Copper mynes and other metals, and some veine of Gold though but little is gotten, for want of workemen : it hath ten Spanife Townes.

CHAP. 1. Spanish plantations in Hispaniola, S. Domingo, Sugar planted. 861

HONDIVE bis Map of Hispaniola, Cuba, &c.



The Citie of Saint Dominicky or Domings nests the Coast of the South , on the River of Onds The Chie of ms. Itanda in the faid 19, degrees and a half- and 60, of Occidentall longitude from the Meridian Saint Domings. ma, random do um 19, degree and a name and do of October and the original Front and of Toles, from whence who it there may be by direkt line one thouland two hundred fortis found league; it that about fix hundred boofholds. There is refident in it the Audience or Countries of the Countries of t cell, the Officers of the Goods and Royall Treasure; a Mint house, and the Cathedrall Church. And the Archbishoprick hath for Suffraganes the Bishopricks of the Contestion de la Vega (which is writed with that of Saint Dominicke) those of Saint lobn, Cuba, Venezuela, and the Abbothip of lamages; and in the Citie are Monasteries of Dominicans, Franciscans, Mercenaries, and other two of Nunnes, a Grammar Schoole, with fourethousand * Pefer of Rent, and an Hospitall with * Pefe is foure twentie thousand. The Hauen which is great, and capable of many ships, is in the mouth of the fallings as 50 River Ozame, and hath the Citic on the West, which the Deputie Don Barbelomen Collen did 45%.

build the yeere 1494. On the Ealkide, better and wholfomer in fituation, and the chiefe Knight of Alcantara, Nicholas of Onasda being Gouernour of Hilpaniola, An. 1502. remoued it where now it is , from the other fide the River to the Batt, vpon occasion that the Citie had fallen by a great Earthquake. The Village of Salualyes of Tguer, eight and twentie leagues from Saint Do- Salualyes of miniche to the Eaft, of the Archbishoprick; the Captaine, John of Efgninel, did people it. The Tguq. winners to the East, or the Atthountspines, the Capanishicke to the East, toward the lland of The Village of Village of the Zepbo, twentic leagues from Saint Dominicke to the East, toward the lland of The Village of Saona: the Captaine also planted it in the time of Niebolas of Onando. The Village of Carny, Zepta. fixteene leggues from Saint Dominice to the North and very close in his circuit, Roderick Mexic El Comp of Trillo, founded it. The Village of Azas in Composella, in the coast of the South, foure and Azus. 60 twentie leagues from Saint Dominiete to the West, in his borders are many sugar Mills; it was

peopled by the Prefident James Vellas ques, it was called Compostella by a Galletian Knight, Who carried which held an Heritage in that fituation, and demo is the name of the place which the Indians to the Indian which held an Heritage in that ituation, and december is the maine or the place which the fugar had there. The first that carried sugar Canes to the Indies, and began to make triall of them. Ganes. there, was one Attenga, and the Bachellor Uelofa. The Village of Taguera, which they call to Taguera.

Santa Marie of the Port, feated on the Westerne coast of the Hand, is fiftie or fixtie leagues from Saint Dominicke, as betweene the North and the Weft; the chiefe Knight Niebolas of Onunda

The Citie of the Conception of the Valley, is in the Kingdome of Guarineex, which the first Admirall Don Christopher Collon built, neere to the which he obtayned the victorie in the great bartaile of the Valley Royall: it is twentie leagues from Saint Dominicke to the North-east, where is

a Cathedrall Church (although there is no Prelate, for it is wnited to the Church of Saint Dominicke) it hath one Monasterne of religious Franciscans, where is the wood of the Crosse which the The wood of the Croffe of Indians could not burne, cut, nor ouerthrow, which hath done many miracles. the Valley. Saint lago de los Canalleros is ten leagues from the Citie de la Vega directly to the North-eaft: Saint lage de

it was first a Fortresse which the first Admirall made in the Countries of the Cacique Guaracoust

It was more retresse when the next comment make the countries of the Cargos Unanaemil, for the fecuritie of the Valley, and the Fort Magdains which was four leagues of.

The chiefe Knight of Alessama, Niebslas of Onanda, An. 170.2 did people the Port of Plass in the North coasts, sue and thirtie or about fortie leagues from Saint Dominick, because the flags. of Castile might more commodicully trasficke, and because it was no more then ten leagues from the great Valler. where in other ten leagues stood the Village of Saint lames, and the Conception within fixteen, and within twelue the Mynes of Cibao, and it was of the Bishoprick of the Valler, the Port of Plate stands in little more then twentie degrees. The Village of Monte-Christe. is in the coast of the North fourteene leagues, to the West of Port of Plate, and fortie from Saint Dominiche, is of the Bilhoprick of the Valley; it hath a good Hauen, and certaine falt Pits in it; 20

Nicholas of Ouando did build it. LA Habella There was in old times in this lland the Citie of Ifabella, now difinhabited, which the fift Admirall built the yeere 1493, the Village of Verapaz in Xaragua, which James Velazques built La Verapaz. in the yette 1503, and the lame yetre peopled also Saluatierra of the Zabana, which fignifieth Playnes and Passures, in the Indian language: and that Province is plaine and faire. Hee also The Maguana,

peopled (betweene the two mightie Rivers Nepba and Tagni) the Village of Saint lobs of the Magnana, in the middeft of the Iland, where the Church continueth yet; and heere reigned Coanabo, who tooke Alfonso de Oieda. Hee also planted Villannena de Taquine vpon the Hauen, where Ords call himselite to fivin, being priforer in a ship, with two pairs of fetters; and it stands in the South coast, which the Admirall did call the Coast and Hausen of Brasile. The VII-30 lage of Bonao is necre vnto Cotay, which the first Admirall also built, where hee made a Fort for the securitie of the Mynes, which were the first that were found in this Iland. The Village

This land fourthed of much, that there were in the furthern chound a Castillane, may of
This land fourthed for much, that there were in the furthern chound Castillane, many of TADOO . SACRI-### there were them Noble people, and the Plantations of other parts which happened afterward, caused it to in the Hispania be difinhabited, for from it, and from the lland of Caba, went all the substance for the new Coun-

treyes that were found. The Ports, Roades, Capes, and Points most famous, and the Hands pertayning to the Coast of this Iland, are in the South Coaft, the Point of Nizae, ten leagues from Saint Dominicke to the 40 West. The Port of Ocoa, eighteene, which is a Bay where the Fleets which goe for Noua Epanis doe anchor and take refreshing, when they doe not anchor in the nooke of Zepezepin, Puerto Hermofo. Which is neere vnto it, or in another which they call the Faire Hauen, two leagues before they come to Ocea. Azus a Port and Towne twentie four leagues beyond Ocea la Calongia, a large

Point thirtie leagues, right against the Hands of Boats and Altobelo, fine leagues from the Coast, and the Beatados. Tagnimo about thirtie foure more to the Weit, and Abaque, an Iland neere the Cape of Tiburon, the furtheft West of Hispaniola: la Nabaza ten leagues to the Sea East and West from the Cape, and Cape Roje twelve leagues from it to the North : the Rookes, or Hermans; Trees, Ifle Oucillos neere the Coast that turneth to the East: Commite another little Hand betweene thefe, and Guanabo another Iland of eight leagues in length, in the nooke of Taguana. The Port 50 and Cape of Saint Nicholas, the furtheft West on the North fiele of the Iland, A little further the Port of " Mofquitos, in the North Coaft, and twentie leagues forward the Port of Valparayfe, or of the Conception, North and South, with the Tortuga an Iland neere the Coaft of hue leagues in length : Port Royall twelve leagues to the Well from Monte-Chrifte, which is as much. or a little more before Isabela, and this from the Port of Plate, other twelve leagues: Cabo Frances, and Cabo del Cabron, in the turning, which the Coast maketh to the East, before the Gulfe of Samana, which entreth fine or fixe leagues the Land inward, vnto the place where the Towne of Sanita Cruz flood. And in the River of Samana, was the first time that Armes were taken against the men of the Indies; because they would have done violence to the first Admirall. The Cape of Deceit, (Cabo del Enganno) is the further West of the Hand where the Coast returneth 60 by the South to the West, at the beginning of the which stands the Saona, an Iland which the fleets doe reknowledge, when they goe, and somewhat more towards Saint Dominiake is another little Hand, which is called Saint Katherine; and all the names rehearled were given by the

The Hand of Cuba which first was called luana, or loane, by the Father Don luan, and after Cuba. it was commanded to be called Fernandma by his Father. The Captaine Sebastian of Ocampo, made an end of compassing the yeere of our Lord 1508. by order of Nicholas of Onando: for entill then it was not wholly believed that it was Land, and the yeere Tell. the President Lames Velaz ques went ouer with three hundred Spaniards, by order of the second Admirall to pacific it. It hath two hundred and thirty leagues from the Cape of Saint Antonie, vnto the Point of Mayzi, going by Land, although by the Sunne, and by water there are not fo many. It hath in breadth from the Cape of Croffes, to the Port of Manati, fortie fine leagues, and then it hesinneth to threighten, and goeth to the last Cape, or Occidentall Point, where it is narrow, of 30 rwelue leagues, little more or lesse, from Matamano to the Anana. Her fination is within the

Tropicke of Cancer, from twentie to twentie one degrees, the Countrey is almost all plaine. with many Forrests, and thicke Woods: from the Easterne Point of Mayer, for thirtie leagues it hath most high Mountaynes, and likewife in the middest it hath some, and there runne from them to the North, and to the South, very pleasant Rivers, with great flore of fish. On the South fide it hath the little Hands, which the first Admirall called the Queenes Garden, and the other on the North fide, which lames Velazquez called the Kings Garden, the trees are of many differences, and wild Vines as bigge as a man a they gather do. Wheate nor other Seedes of Spaine. but great abundance of Cattle : it hath great Copper Mynes, and of Gold, and is it found in the

Rivers, though it be base in the touch. 20 James Velazquez peopled first the Citie of Saint James in the South Coaft, fortie leagues from S. 1840. the Cape of Tiberon, which is in Hiftaniela; and two leagues from the Sea, neere toa Port. one of the best in the World, for securitie and greatnesse. The Citie came to have two thousand Inhabitants; now it hath few with a Gouernours Deputie: the Cathedrall Suffragane to Saint Domingo, is resident in it, and a Monastery of Franciscas Priers. The Village of Baracea, is a Towne Baracea. furtheit Eaft of the Hand of Cute, at the beginning of the North Coaft 60 .leagues from the Citie of S. James toward the East North-east, which was also an inhabiting of the President James Velarquez. The Village of Bayame, which lames Velazquez also built, is 20. leagues from S. lames to Bayame the North-west, it is the foundest Town of the Hand, of a more open soyle, and of a good disposition, The Village and Port of the Prince, in the Coast of the North, is about fortie leagues from Puerts del Prince 30 Saint James to the North-west. The Village of Saints Spiritus, is a Port on the South side. betweene the Trinidad, and the Cope de Bases Percalle, of Figurea, about fiftie leagues from Saint Said Spirita.

Lames, a Colonie of Lames Velazquez. The Village and Port of Saint Christopher of the Albana, is in the North Coast, almost opposite to Florida, in twentie two degrees and an halfe is height, of more then fixe hundred Houholds; where the Gouernour refides and the Officers Royall. The Port is maruellous in greatnesse and securitie , especially fince that King Philip the Second , the prudent, fent the Campe-mafter lobn of Texeda, and Baptifla Antonelli, to fortifie it : in it all

the Fleetes of the Indies doe meete for to come for Spaine in company. It was first called the the greeces of the same a man lane; Falazquez built this Village, and all the ref to the land, with Parts de Ca-Port of Garonna: and Lame; Falazquez built this Village, and all the ref to the land, with Parts de Ca-Port of Garonna: and Lame; Falazquez de La Cafar, which afterward became a Dominieky Frier, remain and Bishop of Chiana.

The Ports and Capes, and point of the Coast of Cabe, and the Illands belonging to it besides those which are rehearsed are in the South Coast, the Port of the Citie of Saint Sames in twentie degrees, and twentie five leagues to the West: the Port of Santis Spiritse, Cape of the Croffe twelve leagues forward, and the Queenes Gardens, which is a great shelfe of Ilands and shoales: the Port of Trinitie in twentie one degrees, about thirtie leagues from the Cape of the Croffe, and ten more to the West, the Gulfe of Zagas, a great defence with some Hands, in the middest, and forward the Two Sifters, two Ilands at the beginning of the great shelfe, and Ilands, and shoales, which they call Camarco, betweene the Coaft and the Ilands, which is of ten leagues in length, 50 and seven in breadth twelve leagues from the Cape of Correntes, which is as many from the Cape

Saint Antonie, the furthelt Weft of this Hand. In the North Coaft fraudeth the Port of A- Wherefore it bana, and thirtie leagues to the East is the Port of Slaughters where was a Towne, and was called the ledde Matanças, of the Slangueers, because the Indians killed certaine Spaniards, which they car . Staugheers, ried in their Canoofe winder securitie to the other side, only one escaping, and two women whom they kept sometime with them. From the ' Maranças to the Port of Tucanaca, are fiftie ' Or Slaughleagues to the Kings Garden, which is a great shelte of little Illets and shoales, and at the end of ters. the Iland Obabana, eight leagues before the Port of the Prince, foure or fix from the Port of Fernando Alanse, and fix to the East of this, Cubana which is a point. The Port of Varocoa is about twentie leagues before the point of Mazzi, the fartheft Welt of Cuba, and the hidden Port and Gulfe neere to Cape f Rois, in the South-coaft, about twentie leagues from the Port of Pidge- f Or Red. 60 ens, which is about ten leagues from the Port of Saint I ames.

The

the first time avainft Indiane

El Bando.

La Ruenaueu

THe Iland of Iamasea was so abundant of victuals, and breedings, that it gaue great pro-uision of Cotton, Hories, Swine, and Cazabi, for the new Discoueries, and the first Admi. sall called it Saint Iames, when hee discourred it; and the first that passed to inhabitit, was the Captayne Ishn Efquuell, the yeere 1509. by order of the second Admirall Dom Diego Colon, It flands in seuenteene degrees and an halfe of altitude in the middest of it, and twentie leagues from Cobs to the South, and as many from Hift aniels, direct to the West. It hath in compasse one hundred and iffice leagues, it hath East and West fiftie, and twentie in breadth. There are in Simil, Melilla, it three Villages, Simil in which is the Seat of the Colledge, toward the North Coast somewhat 8. Oriflen, inha- Westerly; John Squinell a Gentleman of Simil peopled it : Meltilla, which stands in the 10 North Coast, fourteene leagues from Simil to the East: Orifton in the South Coast towards the West fourteene leagues from Simil, and are Plantations of the President Francisco de Garage which gouerned in it. But of the Towne dela Vega, whence the Admirals Lords of this L. land tooke the Title of Dukes, nor of other two Plantations painted in fome Maps, there is

Cape of Mo-

There is in the Coast of this Hand, the Point of Moranta the vetermost West of it, by the North Coaft ten leagues to the Weft, the Port of Iama, and tenne leagues forward the Port of The first civil Melilla, where they say the first Admirall arrived, and called it Santa Gloria, when hee returned warre among loft from Veragua; and heere happened to him the mutiny of the Porras of Simil and it was the the Speniards, first Civill Warre of the Indies. Other ten leagues thence standeth the Port of Simil, before the was in langua. Point Neerillo, from whence the Coast windeth, vnto the Cabo de Falcon, neere to Oriston, and goeth by the South to the Port of Guayans. And fine leagues from this Coast, are the Harmingat, a dangerous shoule, and seven leagues further las Viunas, small llands compassed with thoales, and to the South of them the Serrana, and a little Iland compafied with shoales, with other foure or fine neere vnto it, and to the North-west of it, the Serranille, and to the West of it the Roncador, another Rocke, and to the South-west of it, Saint Androwes, an Hand compasfed with shoales North and South, with Nombre de Dies, about fortie leagues from it, and neere from thence another called Santa Carilina, the . Commes directly West from Jameses, twenn Or Linguids.

Or Negrillo. tie flue leagues from the little Blackmoore, which are two little Hands fixe leagues the one from the other, and the great Common another Hand of feuen leagues in length, fifteene leagues an p Or open the from the Caymanes to the West, and to the North Coast, betweene Caba and Historials another

fhoale which is called P Abre-oio.

twelve and fifteene leagues from Hispaniela, to the East, of fortie five leagues in length . East and West; and from North to South, betwire twentie and thirtie, very plentifull of all that Hispaniols hath, and of Millet, Yuca, and of Mynes of Gold. The temperature is good, and almost one all the yeere, except in December and January. There is in it three Spanish Townes. with a Government, and a Bishoppricke : the Prefident lobn Power of Lion passed to discover this Iland the yeere 1 908, being Gouernour in the Province of Tyney, for Nicholas of Onando in Hifpaniola, and returned the yeere 1510. by order of the King to people it. The Citie of Saint 40 lobn, is in the beginning of the North Coast, on the East fide in eighteene degrees of height, and they call it of Port Rico, for the excellencie of the Hauen. The Bishop and the Governour are refident in it, and the Officers of the Kings Revenues : and it is Suffragane to Saint Dominge. Arrecibo ftands thirtie leagues to the West from Port Rice: the Towns of Guadianilla or Saint German the New, in the Westerne Coast three and thirtie leagues from Port Res to the

There was in old time in this Iland another Towne which was called Guanica, in the South

Coaft, at the end of it where now is the Port of Magains, which is very good, from whence it was removed to another fituation of the Westerne Coast, which they call Agrada, or the Was

The Iland of Saint Ishn of Port Rice, which the Indians called Barriquen, lyoth betwixt

The Arrecibes

terme, with name of Sone-Mayor: there is in this Hand a row of Mountaynes, that divide it in 50 the middeft Eaft and West vito the Ses, and Borders of Saint German, and heere is found the Tree called Tabernacule, which yeeldeth white Rozen, like Gumme-Anime, and it ferneth for Pitch for the ships, and for fire or light, and it is medicinable to take out the colde or num-

There are few Ports in this Iland, for all the Coast of the North is very foule with shoules. and Rockes : those that are, are to the East from the Port of Saine John. The River of Luris. The hauens of and that which they call Canoba, and la Cabeca; the fartheft East point of the Hand, neere to this lland. the Hill of the Lognillos, and in it a Bort which they call Saint Lames; three leagues further is another called Tabucos, and three leagues from the Couft, on this fide of the passage, is a little Illet, and at the beginning of the South passage, another which they call Boyan, and forward 60 the Iland of Saint Anne, Guayama's Port, and afterward the Rivers Neabon, and Xania, fix leagues before the Port of Guadianilla, two leagues to the East of the River of Mofquitos, in whole mouth is the River called Guanica, and fix leagues from it, the Cape Rois, the furthest West of the South Coast : and to the West of it, toward Hispaniela is the Iland of Mona, and to the North of it

C. H. A.P. I. Ginger Strong Current Canibals or Men-caters Friers dangerous food, 865

the Manice, and Zeches, other two little Hands : the Port of Pines, and the Port of Mayne nez and the Bay of Saint German the old, and the mouth of the Ruer Guenabe, or the Watering, and that of Guadataca more forward, and afterward in the North Coaff, that of Camer, and of Cahere, and Tos, neere to Port Ries, and in the middeft of the Coast of the South Sea, leaning water it the Haberianas, foure or fine little Hands. There is also much Ginger gathered in this Who carried vnto it the Habersanas, route of the little larnes. The brought from the East, the Ginger to the land, which is a Root like vnto Madder, or Saffron, which the Portugals brought from the East, the Ginger to the lands of to this Hand of Barlemente.

this Hand of Davissmen.

The Hands which are to the North of Saint Iohn, Hispaniola, and Cuba, of which none is Bhellands of Bhellands of inhabited with Spaniards, are called the Lucayor. One the most Septentrionall, is about twen-the Empto. 10 tie feuen degrees of altitude, which is called Lucayoneque, or Tucayoneque, which bath almost to

the West Babanne another lland in twentie fixe degrees and an halfe, of thirrdene leagues in length, and eight in breadth, from whence the Charmell of Babama betweene Florida and the Where the finales Deles Minister talerth the name, whereby the Currents of the Sea doe goe for with the Channellof the North, that although the wind be prosperous the ships cannot enter it, and although they Babonais. be contrary they goe with the Currents. e contrary they goe with a self ocalies of an Iland in the middeft of them, of five leagues in length, Earn de Binisi

which the first Admirall gave the name the first time became to fabe, and it is that which fobs Paul of Lyon didagree to inhabit. Abacoa, is another in the middeft of the faid fhelfe of twelve leagues in length : Cigateo of twentie fine. Cigateo , another fmall lland in twentie fixe de-

20 grees: and Guamma fireene leagues of length, and sen in breadth, and neere vnto it Guanabani, Guanabani the the first Land of the Indias, which the first Admirall discouered, which he called Saint Sanions; first Land that the first Land of the smart, where the mitt notation are recovered, which the talks of the smart, but the first land of tweener leagues, and eight in breath, in twentie four degrees and an halfe, which waidfourers I smart of tweener leagues, and eight in breath of the famous Queene Bound I shells his particular Prop in the fadon, the Admirall tumoud Jabobs, in becour of the famous Queene Bound I shells his particular Prop in the fadon, the Admirall tumoud Jabobs. tectreffe, and that gaue him this Dikouerie. Immeto in twentie three degrees and an halfe, fifteene leagues in length, to the North of Hispaniola, Samana feuen leagues over, betweene Inmete and Guamma, three square of eight leagues in length, in twentie foure degrees, Tabaque of ten leagues, in twentietwo degrees and an halfe. Mina-par-vos, are three little llands in tris angle, compafied with fielues, to the South of Immete. Mayaguana, twentie leagues in length and ten in breadth; iss twentie three degrees. Trages of ten leagues, in twentie degrees and an 30 halfe. The Carear, an Hand of five leagues, in twentie one degrees, and to the North of it is an-

other, called Hanana, and another Concina. Majarey flands in twentie degrees compaffed other, called Hamana, and amounter Constinue. Createry manes in twentie degrees compalied with findness. Abrevious a great fields of fifteen legues, the middleft of it in twentie degrees, and among their llands are many little ones without name.

The Handsthat are from the Hand of Saint lobe of Porte-Rice, to the East of it, toward the The Handsthat are from the Hand of Saint som of Porte-Rice, to the East of it, toward the The Louised coaft of Terra firms, were called the Canibels, by the many Caribes exters of humaine field that Ortalism coart or 1 erraprise, were caused the community of the many convergences for them and in their language, Cambba, 1 co by Pallows sizes; for they were held for lich America.

Or thought of the control o Sentle Cruz, to the South-west from it, in 16. degrees, and a halfe of fixteene leagues, and Set bell fignificht. ba las Virgines, two little illets compaffed with fhelies, and other eight or ten Hands, the greatest

of ten leagues: Virgen gords, and the Blances or White Hands, Westward from Virgen gords, La Ane gada, of seuen leagues in length, in 18. degrees and a halfe compassed with shelues, as Sambrero is, a little lland neere vnto it : and these llands which are called the Weather llands or Men hunger. Barlouento, the first Admiral discovered : and in particular, the men of Santia Cruz, and others, had a custome to goe and hunt for men to the lland of Saint losm, for to este, and at this day they of Dominica doe it. They did eate no women, but kept them for flaues. Now they fay, that within this little while, they of Deminies did cate a Fryer, and that all they which did cate his field, Frier von his had fix ha fluxe, that fome dyed, and that therefore they have left eating humane fieth : and it fome food. may be, because instead of men, with lesse danger, they steale Kine and Mares, for the great quantitie there is of them, and with this they fatisfie their raging appetite.

Anguille hath ten leagues of length, it standeth in 18 degrees. Saint Mertin in 17 degrees and a halte, it is of fixteene leagues, compafied with little Illess: and neers vnto it Saint Emflace, Saint Bartholomer, and Saint Christopher, euery one of terme leagues. The Barbade in 17.degrees and a halfe, compafied with thehies, neere to the Redonds and the Snowes or Niewes, and grees and a name, companies many one, in 15 degrees and a halfe. The Antique, Guadalope, of CM Conference, of the leagues energy one, in 15 degrees and a halfe. The Antique, Guadalope, about fixe and Tada's Santa-from 14, to 15 degrees. The Deffends to the East of Guadalope, about fixe leagues, the first which the Admiral Dan Christopher discoursed in the Island Voyage that the made to the Indies, in 14 degrees and a halfe, for which the fleete goe al wayes from the Canaries. Marigalante, the name of the Shippe the Admirall had, five leagues to the South-west from the Defired, and from the Dominica, in 13 degrees, twelve leagues in length, where the

60 Fleetes take in water and wood, for it hath good roades, although with danger of the Cambals. Neers vnto Deminica to the South, flunds Marinino, Santia Lucie, and the Barbudys, the which because they fall on the left hand of the Fleetes, when they goe, they call them already of the Ilands of the Leeward (de Sosauento) which appertaine to the coast of Terrafirme: and of them the greatest, the first, and the most Orientall is the Trinidad, neere two hundred leagues from

A 4 5 3

Historicla, North and South with the Dominica, about fixtie leagues from it. It hath fiftie The di conery leagues in leangth East and West, and almost thirty in breadth. The Admirall discoursed it the of the Hand of years 1498, the third Voyage that he made to the Indies, and called it the Trinitie, because hathe Trinitie, uning great trouble in the Voyage, he had promifed to God to give fuch a name to the first Land that he should finde, and presently the Mariner that was in the top, saw three points of Land. whereby the name fitted enery way to his vowe: then hee discouered also the mouthes of the Dragon, and of the Serpont, the gulfe of Paria, and all the firme Land vnto Commana, which in-

infile American Vesputio claimes to himselfe, whose name vinworthily is given to the port which they call Peninsula Australis or Indies of the South. This Iland of Trinidad is knowne that it is no good Countrie, though it hath many Indian; it hath thirtie fine leagues of longitude. and others say more, and twentie sue of latitude, it stands in 8.degrees: the most orientall pare of it, is a point on the North fide, which is called de la Galera : and to the North of it a small I. landar compassed with little Iles, which they call Tabago : and in the South coast a Cape which they call the Round Point : at the East, the point of Anguille, at the West in the gulfe of Paria, which is that that is from the lland to Terra frame, which may be eight leagues of diffance, he cause the firme Land maketh an oblique semicircle, as a Diadem; and in the entrance of the Rast is the distance recited; in the entrance of the West, the straightnes is much, and with great depth. and two little Ilands at the end of the North coaft; by the West, which is called the Dragons month; and to the North S. Vincent, and Granada, other two little Hands. The Iland of Margarita, to named by (Irristopher Colon, the first Admirall (as also all the rest, a most inficient proote of the Finder, to the contusion of those which deprived him of the glory

of the discouerie of the firme Land, attributing it to themselves, although changing the times) it is twentie leagues from Trinidad Westward, and one hundred and seuency from Historials; in hath fixteen leagues in length East and West, and yet some say twenty, and the halfe in breadth it hath no flore of water, although it is very plentifull of Pastures for Cattle. There is in it two Townes, one neare the Sea, which reacheth to a fortreffe where the Gouernour is refident, and another two leagues within the Land, which is called the Valley of Santta Lucie; there is in his coast a good port, and a nooke, and many beds of Pearles, whither the fishing of them is remoued, which before was in Cubagua, and they fay it went away from thence, for the rumour 30 Wherfore men of the ordnance of the many Shippes that reforted to this Hand, to the trafficke of the Pearles, do fay that the which was very great. Cubaqua stands one league from Margarita to the East, there is no water fifting of the in it, and yet the new Cadix was built there, and they carried their water feuen leagues, from the River of Cumana. To the Kast of Cubagua are foure little Illets, close by the shoare, which the first Admirall called Los " Frayles : and to the East betweene them and Granada, other foure of cubequato the nert Admiran caused Los Fragios: and to the Latt ortweene them and Granada, other toure the Materiala, or five, which he called (Los Testigos) the Witnesses, and to the West after Cubagua, another lit-Handof Cuba tle Hand which he named (Tortuga) the Tortugfe, neere to the point of Araja: and from hence the discourry being made from below Paris, he went to Hiffaniols, with a purpose to finish the discourry being manerrom usuow a semantic that be seen, he went after to discourr, and Orthe Frient the discourry of Terras from: and as here after thall be seen, he went after to discourr, and the discourry of Terras would be nafted Nombre de Dior. The found the Hands of the Guanaies, and from before Veragua, untill he passed Nombre de Dior. The 40 Officers and Royall treasure are in Margarita: and it, and the Hand of Cubagua, are in elegen de-

I with the new Andaluzia, from whence to the River of Haeba, and Government of Santia

it, because when the Belzares , Almaines, went to gouerne in this Province the yeare 1528, by

a couenant which they made with the Emperour, they thought to inhabit in a Rocke and hils

that are in the mouth of the Lake of Maracaybo, where it falleth in the Sea, a Towne which

they named Venezuela. It stands in 8 degrees, a little more, and from hence the Couernment

tooke the name. His first Towne is the Citie of Core, which the Indians call Coriana, which commonly they call now Venezuele, it stands in II. degrees of altitude, and 79. degrees one third part

from the Meridian of Toledo, one thousand and five hundred leagues from it : here the Governor

is wont to be refident, and there is the Cathedrall Church fuffragane to the Archbishop of S. Do-

miniche. John of Ampues built first this Citie, and then those that went for the Beleares made 60

He Gouernment of Venezuela parteth the bounds in the coaft of Terra firme, to the East. Chap.8. Martha, with which it ioyneth by the Weft, is an hundred and thirty leagues, and within the newFlorida, and Land about eightie, vnto the bounds of the new Kingdome of Granada. In this Countrie are vaines of Gold of more then two and twentie carracts and a halfe : it is plentifull of Wheate, because there is two haruests in the yeare, and most abundance of all kinde of Cattle, great and is the reft that fmall. There goeth from this Prounce great Rore of Meale, Bisket, Cheefe, Bacon, and much So Cotten-linnen: and in the port of Gasyra, in the Prouince of Caraea, are laden many Coweremainerh of the limits of this Counfell. Hides, and Sar [aparilla. There is in it eight Spanish Townes : and the name Venezuela was given

grees, a little more.

Wherefore in was called the. nezuela,or lit-

The Citie of

their abode in it, the first was Ambrofe Alfinger : it is so healthfull, and of so good an avre, that there is no neede of Physicians. The fecond place is our Lady of Carnalleda, in the Province of Caracas, necreto the Sea, East from Core eightie leagues, and with a bad Hauen : Don Prageifes Faierde built it the yeare 1560.

CHAP. I. Herreras Description of the Spanish Indies. Vene zuelas Gonernment. 867

which went for that purpose from the Margarita. S. lames of Lyon in the same Province, fepen leagues within the Land, and three from Carnalleda to the South, and fixtic from Coro. S.lago de Leon. where at this time the Gouernour is most residence. The new Valencia fixtie leagues from Core. and twentie five from S. lames of Lyon, feven from the port of Burburata, The Captaine Villa. cinda peopled it. The new Xerez about infreene leagues, almost South from the new Valencia, and Xerez, twentie from the new Segonia, and fixtie from Core to the South-east, a new Towne. The new Seconds, in the Prouince of Bariquizimite, twentie leagues from Xerez to the South , and tenne Tucine. from Tuenyo, and eightie from Coro to the South-east, where the Officers royall, the Gouernour. and the Lieuetenant are refident at times: John of Villeges peopled it in the yeare 1572. The Citie 10 of Twenyo is famous, because in it they slew the tyrant Lope of Agaire, it stands tenne

leagues from Segonia, to the South-west, eightie fine from Core; it is the habitation of the Captaine Carnajal. Truxillo, on our Ladie of Prace, in the Prouince of Cayess, about eightie Trutillo, leagues almost to the South, direct from Cere, somewhat to the East, and twencie fine from Tasuyo, directly to the West. The Auditor Valley discovered this the years 1 249; the Bacheller Tollofs being Governour in

it ; and the yeare 1 cco. the Captaine lamer Gareia of Pareder inhabited Traxillo : and there may be in this Gouernment more then 10000d. Indier tributaries, and in themare not comprehended from eighteene vnder, nor abour fiftie yeares, because the supreme Counsell of the Indee hath prouded, that in no place of this Orbe, these doe pay tribute: and because darly 20 they increase and diminish in number, it cannot be said precisely and perfectly how many

The Lake of Maracaybo, which the Castilanes call of our Lady, is of fresh water, it entreth The Lake Mefortie leagues within the Land, from the Sea, and hath more then tenne in breadth, and eighty racque, in compaffe, with many Townes vpon his Borders in the end of it entreth a River that deicendeth from the new Kingdome of Granada, by the which, and the Lake, Marchandile are transported which came to the new Kingdome of Castele, and to other places; some of the men of this Lake doe line in Boates, their houses being made in the Trees within the water, and at the Border, whence it tooke also at the first, the name of Venezuela; sayling by some parts of this Lake, ye can fee no Land : there enter into it other great Ruers, it runneth to the Sea . it hath

about halfe a league of mouth, and in it the shoale and rocks about faid. The Ports, Capes, and Points of the coast of this Government, and those annexed vnto it, are The ports and to the Well, Marcapana, the Frebila, an Ilina against the River Operare, neer to another called points of the Recke of the Hary and afterward the Cape of the Codera, and Parite Fleebards, and the hance of Generament Sardinas or Pilebers: and opposite the He of Aues or Birdr, before Burburata, a maruellous ha- of Ventue a uen, which the Bachiler Tolefa peopled, and is a Scale or Port for the new Kingdome (Nueno Remo & Prouinces of Pers, and after that is Gulfo trifle, and to the North of the Bonagre, an Iland of ten leagues in length, and eight in breadth, and afterward Punta feca, and right against it Caracao, and a little forward Caracaute, toureteene leagues in length, right against the Cape of S. Roman to the South of the Hand of Aruba. S. Roman entreth twentie leagues into the Sea, it 40 Randeth twelue from Coro, the Indians doe call it Paraguana, it lacketh a little to be an Iland : it

may haue in compasse twenty fine leagues and more of plaine ground, with a Mountaine almost in the middeft : it is discourred a great way into the Sea. There is at the beginning of the Gulfe of Venezuela, the entrance and channell of the Lake of Marscapho, and at the entrance of it the River Muare, and to the West the Montes, three little Hets close by the Point and Cape of Coquibocoa, where onely in all the Indies was found waight and touch for the Gold, and afterwards the deepe Baye (Balna Honda) and the Portete, the Cape de Vela, which the Captaine Alfonfus of Ojeda named, when Americo Vefpneio went with him the first time, much after that the Admirall discourred this coast, which stands in 12 degrees, somewhat more. And there is from the Cape de Vela, to the River of Hache eighteene leagues, without any stone in them, nor water, but raine water. This Gouernment remained destroyed, fince the time of the Almamer, because they would not inhabit, onely feeke to make flaues, and to waste the Countrie. They called first the River of Hache, our Ladie of the Snowes, and after of the Remedies, neere

wnto the Sea, betweene Venezuela, and Saulta Marta, to the Eaft, thirtie leagues from it, and fixtie from Core to the Welt, North and South with the Care de Vela, with eight leagues of bounds betweene Venezuela and Sanda Marta, without howes of Gold. It is governed by Alcaldes immediate to the Counsell of Hispaniola, and the Spiritualtie is of the Bushopricke of Santia Marta. The Towne is 1000 paces from the Sea, on a little hill ; the Hauen hath the North for trauers, it is a most ferrile Countrie, and yeeldeth whatsoeuer is in Cafile : there are many Tigers, Beares, Ants, and Lizards in the Rivers, much Gold, and Stones of divers vertues, for the Spleene, 90 the Kidneys, for the Milt, and Flix, and they have good Salt-pits. Nicolas Federman for the Belzares, was he that began to inhabit this Towne. The government of Serpa, which they call the new Andalucia, and in the indian Language Guayana, extends the limits From the lland of Margarita vinto the river Mas aujon, three hundred leagues to the Eaft, and as many North and South within the Land , wherein the Indians Omagnes are included , and the Omyga,

with the Prouinces of Dorodo, to the fouth of this Gouernment , wherein falleth by the Coaff the Province of Maracapana, in the bounds of Veneculela, where the mouths of Santia Fe were inhabited in whole Borders is the knob of Unere, and neere vnto it a great Lake with great flore of fish and falt, and the Indians which are called of Perso, twentie leagues within the Land and the Indians Palenques, fo called for the Poles wherewith they fortified themselves, and the Prounce of Cumana, North and fouth with the Margarita, where is a Towne of Spaniards, which is called new Gordona, which the Captayne Gongalo of Ocampo built, when he went to chaffife

the Indians of Cumana, for the destruction of the Monastery of the Religious Franciscans, And to the East or the lland of Trinidad, and the River of Saint John of the Amazones, is the Prounce of the Indians Armaca, part of the Camballs, and all Warlike, that neuer are quiet or

After the point of Paria, which stands in feven degrees, and the Dragons Month necre was Trinidad frands the point Del Galle, or Anegada, to the South of the Trinitie, and the River of Paria, or Orinico, which some call Tayapari, and others will have that thefe two, and the River of Saint lobs, and of Orellans be all one thing, and also the Maranyon; but in this they are deceined. There be other Rivers in the Province of the Arnaca that are well knowne , the River of Saint lobn or of Orellana ipringeth in the Andes of Perse, right against Cauce, from whence it runneth fifteene hundred leagues, or more, winding vnder the Equinoctiall, by Countreves well inhabited, though not well discouered, till it came to run into the North Sea, whose mouth hath in breadth fiftie leagues; and in the first five hundred from the mouth vpward, many llands inhabited; and eightie or a hundred leagues more to the West, stands the River of Moranne al. most in the bounds whereby passeth the Line of the Diussion betweene Cakile and Portugall and is great and terrible, having fifteene leagues of mouth, and the ftreame commeth from the paris of the South, and the Provinces of Brafill, and they fay that the spring is vnder Popayan, and the bounds of the new Kingdome of Granada,

The Iland of

Seuen leagues from Cumana stands the Hand of Cubagua, where stood as was faid, the new Cadiz, which was difinhabited because the fishing for Pearles fayled: this Iland had no water that could be drunke, nor trees, nor beafts; for all is brackish, except those Hogges that have Strange Hogs the Nauell in their backe-bone, and some small Conies, and having so great inhabiting, they went feuen leagues to the river of Commons for water, although there was an opinion that it bred webbes in the eyes. In this River and coast, happed in the yeare 1530. the first of September, 30 Terra firme, the the haven being cleare, the Sea did rife foure fadomes from his ordinary course, and entring into yeare 1530. vo. the earth it began to shake, and the fortresse which the Captaine Jacome of Castellon had built ry admirable by order of the Counsell of Hifteniela, fell, and the earth did open in many places, whereout forang much falt water as blacke as inke, and did ftinke of brimftone, and the mountaine of the gulfe of Cariaco remained open with a great rife : many houses fell, many people died drowned, and with feare, and taken with the earth quake. Margarita one league from Cubagua a more pleasant Hand, the Bachiller Marcelo of Villalobos did people it.

Marenit. Florida.

The Propince and Government of Florida, bordering on the Counfell of Hisbaniola, according to the Government of Peter Melendez, is all that which lyeth from the River of Palmes, which doth confine with the Government of Panaco in new Spaine, limits of the Counfell of Mexico, 40 which is neere the tropicke in 22 degrees, voto the point of Bacallass, which falleth in 48. degrees, and a halfe, in the which are 1258.leagues of Coalt, and from thence to 73. degrees of altitude to the North by the Coast, and within the Land all that which hee discouereth. Of this hath beene coasted and discouered, from the River of Palmes vnto the Point of Santta Helena. and the Ruer Iorden, which are about 600. leagues, it is a firme Land of a good climate. plentifull, and well inhabited in many places, as those that went through it with Hernands of Soto did know it the yeare 1536, and 1537. John Pards borne in Cuenca, went by Land from Florida to new Spane, in leffe then two yeares, and it is the neerest Europe of any part of the Indies, & from the Bay of S. Isleph, which is eightie leagues from Panaco. There is also discouered vnto New found Land, but that which is particularly taken for Florida, is the point that goeth into the Sea North 50 and South, with the Hand of Cabe, of a hundred leagues in length, and twentie five in breadth East and West, and (when it is most) thirtie. John Ponce of Lyon discourred it Anno 1 512. on Eafter day, and for this cause he called it Florida: and afterward returned the yeere 1 ; 21. and retired wounded to Caba, where he dyed, leaving a report that he fought the Fountaine or River which that renued the the Indians faid that old men washing themselves therin, became yong. This Province is according to the temperature of Caftile, and many fruits were found there like the fruits of Spain, and it feemeth fit for Cattle and Corne. There is no Gould, neither feemeth that the Indians did know it, nor Silver afor it hath beene seene that they have found the Chests with bars of it and money in ther Gold, Sil. their coafts and made no account of it : yet Hernando de Soto, within the inward parts of the 62

uer, nor Monie. great River, found great abundance of Pearles. There are but two Fortreffes in this Prouince with men in Garison, both in the Coast that looketh to the East: the one is called Saint Make, in the point of Saint Helena, about one hundred leagues from the Hanans, and another of Saint Augustin, which is the principall, because HONDIVS bis Map of Florida.



40 the hauen is good, and is neere the channell of Ballama. It flands about fiftie leagues from les Martyres, which are many little llands inhabited, which are neare the point of Florida, whereby it ioyneth most with the Iland of Caba, a league and a halfe, and lesse, the one from the other, and Points of with a ranke of thelues with mouthes, in twensiethree or twentie four leagues, which thefe Florida. Martyreshaue in length; whose beginning on the West side, is called the Point of the Martyres, and to the East, the Head of the Martyres; and there is an Iland of foureteene leagues in length, and very narrow, the Point of it is the first of Torra firme to the East, in 24 degrees and a halfe, where a Towne of Spaniards was built, which continued not, and to the North, almost direct the River Ass, and more Northward in 28 degrees, the Point of the Caues, and forward the River of " Gnats, before the River of Matanca, which is so called by that which Peter Melendez did to the Or Malanitus. Captaine Ribas, and his Frenchmen; and the Point of S. Augustin in 29 degrees three quarters, and Shugher of 50 ten leagues from thence the River of S. Mathen, from whence the Coast turneth to the North the French in

ten leagues from thence the Kiner of S. Azarora, from whence the Count United State Hellen, Florida. See
North-east, all with the Ilands and Bays leaning unto it unto the Cape, or Point of Saint Hellen, Florida. See which stands in 22 degrees and a halfe, which was discouered by chance the yeare 1 529. In all the rest of the Coast that is betweene the point of Santta Helena , by New found Land

In all the rest of the Coast that is betweene the point of Santta Helena, by Nier Johna Land The Coast of and the Bacallan, which the Land of Labrador, which reacheth and passet the height of England, the North water there is no Towne nor Government of Spaniards, although by divers times and Nations, it hath the Baccallass. beene discouered and Nauigated, and it is knowne there is aboue one thousand leagues journey of Land without gold, and the more in height the worfe, and leffe habitable. There be many Riuers, and Ports, that because they are not well knowne nor frequented, there is no mention made

60 but of the River of the " Stagger, by another name of Santia Marie, which is a very great and "Or Los Games. maine River, almost in the midit of the Coast betweene the Baccallass, from whence the great The great Ri-River Ochelage entreth within the Land toward the West, which divers times the strangers ver of S. Mario haue nauigated , beleeuing to haue found that way passage to new Spaine. And in the Coast of Florida, which looketh to the Weft, are the 'Tortoffer, feuen or eight Hands together : and to 'Lat Tortuga.

Peace did feeke

HONDIVS bis Map of New Spaine.

269 259 270 Septentys

40 The Councell is Refident in Mexico, and the Vice-roy governeth init, and three judges, the Officers of the Reuenue and Royall Treasure, a Founding House, and a Mint House, and the Suffrigures of Omeers or the Reuenue and Royau Treaure, a rounomy mone, man a sum a sum of the Control of Archiepticopall Metropolitane, that hath for Suffraganes the Bithoprickes of Tieschas, Guaraca, the Architeches, Mechaeles, more Galiciae, Chipaga, Tiencase, Garantala, Uringane, and the Philipman. And Dos price of Mechaeles, Mechaeles, Mechaeles, and the Philipman. And Dos price of Mechaeles of the Philipman. The Control of the Philipman. dols of stone which are sleene to this day, and the Bishop. Perfedent and Couernour of New histop leaves. Joseph Spaine, Don Scholithen Removes of Franked, continued the building with great speed. The first the Sware. Bilhop of Mexico was Frier lobs de Zumarraga of the Order of Saint Francis, of great ver- a From the Bishop of Mexico was Frier I alon de Zumarrage of the Order or saint France, or great vers World. the and example, borne in Durango, in the Lordship of Biskeye, which also was the first Vancious y

ence concern.

There are in Mexico Monasterles of Dominican, Franciscan, and Ansline Friers, the company of de detrine. 1 lefen, El Carmen, la Merced, the Bare-foot, and Trinitane Friers; ten Monafteries of Nunnes, one thinke he mes-Influ, FI Carson, In Merced, the Bare-foot, and Trinitane Frience; ten Monatenes of Nunner, one management of Colledge of Induse children, and another of Arrapentide, the Representate: a made a Recognition of Representation of R Colledges and Hospitals. And the Spaniards which inhabit the bordering Townes of the Indi- of which the and, and Granges, are about three thousand, and there are reakoned about two hundred and fittle Indian had and, and Granges are about three tinguiand, and interear reasoning about two financial and are all of the Towns of Indians, in which the chiefe places of Doctine are one hundred and fine and in them and the reasoning are fix thouland Granges, more then five hundred thouland tributure Indians, and and thereabours are fix thouland Granges, more then five hundred thouland tributure Indians, and brief a sea and therefore the none hundred and first Monafteries of Practices, Demails, and Administration of the Delivines (or Schooles) of Practic and Friers, to reach the Paith Catholike to the Indians, are them real men. 60 Without number, belides the Fathers of the Company, and Mercenarie Friers: there is also Re- After in (1), 5

fident in Mexico, the holy Office of the Inquition, whereof we will intreat hereafter. In the Coast bounding on this Archbishopricke towards the South Sea, and the Province of ding Fear Sec Acapales, is the good Port of Acapales, in seventeene degrees height, sixe leagues from the River with Cure. Topes, whereby the Archbishopricke is joyned with the Bishopricke of Tlascala. And other Penonoge.

the North of the point of los Minjagos, the Multo in here of viewer, And thirteen leagues to the nation North, the Bay of Charles, by another name of the Ponce of Lyon, and as much more forward. the Bay of Tampa, thirtie three leagues from the Bay of Tacabaga, by another name, of the Hob the Boy 1 tomps, thritte three leagues from the most planes, by another mines, of the fine of Godging of the french in the entering in each of the fine fine figures. The fine of the fine fine fine figures and in a late for the figure s, which properly is called Florida, Many have thought, that by this fide of Florida, thoward the land of Lideralay, there might a first the found to communicate the North & the South Seat roughter, saying that as it had been found to the South, there should be three on the North but experiment. doth shew, that the South passage is no streight, at the least prisalreadie in doubt, and by the North vitill now, though it hath beene much fought for it hath not beene found, and hee that went neerell to it was the Prefident Peter Melenden, by fome conjectures.

The Gulte of

All the Coaft on the West fide, wnto the Gouernment of Panne, which is about 300. leagues. is called The Gulfe of New Spaine, wherein is no Towne of Spaniards, thought was guen for a government to Pamphile of Narmanz; and to Hernando of Soso, and first to Francisco de Gares, and of his people in pareicular. The Country is very poore of victuals, and the people milerable, and although in it are many Rivers and Ports, no mention is made of them, because they are not well knowne. This Gulfe hath two entrances : by the one the currents doe enter furiously, betweene Tucatan and Cuba, and goe out with a greater force betweene the fame Hand of Cuba and the point of Florida and running doe-make the channell of Bahama, which taketh his name of the

The Changell

of Granada godent of S De-Don Schaftian

"He second Audience which was settled in the Indies, is that of New Spaine, and Nume de Guzonau Canallero de Guadalaiara was the first President, till a Gouernour were provided. and because he gaue no satisfaction, there was another new Councell quickly fent, and for Prefident of it Don Sebaftian Ramirez of Fuenleal, which of a Judge of the Chancerie of Grandle went for President of the Councell of Saint Dominicke, and Bishop of the Citie of the Concepti. Ramirez Indge on of the Valley, a person of great Learning, Vertue, and Valour, Hee had the charge of the Gn. uernment, Iustice, and disposition of the goods Royall, the Warre remaying at the charge of the Marquese of the Valley, with order to communicate with the President, that which appertayned thereto; and betweene them was alwayes great conformitie. The bounds of this Coun-Great confor- cell, on the one fide doth not comprehend that which commonly is called New Spaine, and on 30 mity betweene the other it comprehendeth more, because the new Gallicia, which is a Councell by it selfe, is part of New Spaine.

The Prounce of Tucatan, falleth within the bounds of it, which as now it is, may have in length about foure hundred leagues, from the furthest East of Tucatan, vnto where it parteth bounds with the Councell of new Gallozia, and North and South, about two hundred from the end of the Gouernment of Panaco vnto the South Sea, his bounds remayning open on the North fide, whose principall Prouinces are the Archbishopricke of Mexico, the Bishoprickes of Mechoacan, and that of los Angelos, or Tlascala, and of Guaxaca, and of Chiapa, and the Gouernments of Panneo and Tucatan, with that of Tobosco, and for circuit or commerce, the Ilands Phillipinas, and the dispatch of the Nauigation of China.

New Spaine.

New Spanne is one of the best Provinces of the new World, and the most habitable in a good temper, having abundance and plentie of Come, Miller, and Cattle, and all other necessaries for humane life, except Oyle and Wine, and although in many places of it there is Gold, Silver is most generall, whereof there are many good Mynes.

The Archbishopricke of Mexico, falleth betweene the Bishopricke of les Angelos, and that of Mechoacan, it hath in length North and South, one hundred and thirtie leagues, and in breadth eighteene, which it hath by the Coast of the South Sea, vnto fixtie within the Land, wherein are included the Prouinces of Mexico, and to the North-east of it Lateotlalpa, Mexician, Xilotepeque, and Panuco the most distant : and to the West, Matalzingo neere to Mexico, and Cultepeque the furthest off : and to the East, Tezenco neere to Mexico : and to the South-east, Chalco, so neere to that of Mexico: and to the South of it Suchmileo, the first, and after Tlalue, and betweene South and South-west Coxxes, and Acapulco, the furthest to the South. There are no Trinexition more in all but foure Townes of Spaniards, although in the Province of Mexico are many Spaniards, deferi- ards dwelling in the Townes of the Indians. They called Mexico in old time, Tenoxislanjic flands in nineteene degrees and an halfe of altitude, and one hundred and three degrees of longitude from the Meridian of Toledo, from whence it may be diftant by a direct Line, one thousand seven leagues.
That is, the hundred and fortie leagues, which are eight houres of 1 Sunne: it flands in the middeft of two great Lakes that doe compaffe it, the one of falt water, because his bottome is Salt-petrish; the other fresh having fish, and voydeth into the Salt one; each is of five leagues in breadth, and eight in length, and both doe compaffe thirtie three leagues. They goe into the Citie by three caufies of halfe a league in length, and there are in it foure thousand Spaniards, and thirrie thousand 60 Houles of Indians or more. In the foure ancient streets wherein the Citie was divided, in the time of their Paganisme, which at this day is called of Saint lohn, Saint Mary the Round, Saint Paul, and Saint Sebastian; and the Tlatelulco is the principall street which they call Saint lames.

Tenoxtitlan.

cight hours

eight more to the West, the River of Cittle, and eather source, the River of Ania. In the Couff of the North, it hath that which falleth in the Godernment of Tamee. In the limits of this Councell are the Mynes of Puchuca, fourteene leagues from Mexico, and the Mynes of Talcatwentie vo, those of Mangalo, which are clearly the area we are the Apret of Thompson, which are clearly the area with the and Sails Lewes of the Peace, and in them all there may bee about four chimand Spaniard which as her better with industrie and labour doe attend these Mynes, all of Silver except one, which as her better been said, is of Lead, and procuring that the Indians taking example of them, that live polis to tickly and the first that with marvellous cunning and wisdome, brought in the breedings of cattell and tillages, which have beene the mightielt meanes for the preferration of the Mynes, was the about faid Prefident Don Schaftian Ramirez of Fuenteal, originall and the foundation of all the good of those Realmes.

Prouisse of Partieto Richagriske of Mahala Kalleb of Artillo La W

S. tage de los

the Angels;

d Valcation

Tieftele.

The Protince of Panace to the North of Mexico, Nume of Guernan had in government; it breeding and hath fiftie leagues in breadth, and in length, and after it was incorporate with the limits of the Councell or Audience of Mexico. The Countrey that looketh toward New Spaine is the beft. plentifull of victuals, and hath fome Gold. That which runneth toward Florids is milerable. from whence till yee come to his bounds, are more then five hundred leagues. This government hath three Spanish Townes, Pannes, in somewhat more then twentie three degrees, and by ano- 20 ther name the Village of Saint Stephen of the Hauen, which Gonçalo of Sandonallbuilt, by order of the Marquelle Don Fornando Carter, when they went to refit Francisco Garay, and to pacific the ladians of Chila, the yeere 1 320, and it standeth fixtie five leagues from Mexico to the North North-east, eight leagues from the Sea, neere to a River whose entry is a Hauen : it is a chiefe Alealdia, or Institution promited by the Vice-roy of New Spaine. The Village of Saint Lames of the Valleyer, twentie five leagues from Painsco to the West. The Village of Saint Lane de Tampico, eight leagues from Panaco to the North-east, neere to the Sea : and although in the Coaft of this government are many Rivers, & fome rode vnto the River of Palmas, they are not knowne in the Gulfe of New Spain, but the River of Panaco, & his hanen, which is not very good.

The Bishopricke of Tlascala, which by another name is called de los Angeles, betweene 30 the Archbishopricke of Mexico, and the Bishopricke of Guaraca, is of 100. leagues, and more in length, from the Coast of the South to that of the North, and betweet the confines of the Archbishopricke, and of Guaxaca 80, and as many in breadth, by the Coast of the North Sea, and no more then 18. or 20. by that of the South. There is not in it all more then three Spanil Towns. which is the City or Towne of the Angels 22. Eigues from Mexico to the East, somewhat in-clining to the South, of 1500. housholds in foure streets: it is a Chiefe Instice-ship where the Cathedral Suffragane to the Archbilhoprick of Mexico is Refident, with Monafteries of Dominicks. Franciscan, and Austine Friers, one of Nuns, & one Colledge of more then coo. Indian children. to be instructed, with 10000. Pezos rent, which the Bishop Don Sebastian Ramirez built, which fent the Batchelor Salmeron Auditor of the Coungell to build this City, and although he had de- 40 termined to have made it in Tisfeste, he lett is becaule he would not endamage the festions, not touch their Lands, for he had a great regard in generall to the good of the Indians, and in particu-

The Citic was built in the bounds of Cholada, from whence went a 2000 mento warre, and it was feated in a Plame called Cuerlaxcoapa, neere to a Valley called Atulco, on the border of a fmall River that commeth out of the & Unlean, where they gather Wheate, Wine, and all the Frmits of Callile, Sugar and Flaxe, and all manner of Herbs. For it is a temperate Countrey, more hot then cold, although the Corne of the grounds neerest the Citie, are to me what blasted : and a little space from Tlascala, spring Pountaynes whence groweth a River that when it commeth betweene the Citie of the Angels and Cholula, it goeth very great and without fish, it past th through the Prouinces of Mechacan, and entreth into the South Sea by Zacatula, and there bee in it fo many Caymanes, or Crocodiles, that they have dispeopled some places.

In Tlascala to the North of the Angels, which stands in more then twenty degrees in height,

where the Cathedrall Church was till the yeere 1 550, when it was removed to the Cirie : the first Bishop was Frier Iulian Garces, the Valley of Atlifeo, which may have in breadth about Athiosfamous, one league and an halfe, where the Corne is neuer blatted, and there is gathered in it about 100000. Haneges, and there are more then 1000. Spaniards that do traffick in it, and 7. leagues from the Citie to the East, is the Valley of Ocumba: and in the Prounce of Tepeaca, the Marqueffe of the Valley built a Spanift Towne, which he called Segura : and in the Valley of S. Paul, may be other 1 300. housholds of Spaniards, in Farmes and Grangeries of cattle, that multiply to much, that there were men that with two shag-haird sheepe came to have about 40000.

La Veracru San Luan di

The Citie of Veracruz, one way stands fixtie leagues from Mexico, and by another fixtie five, it stands one quarter of a league from the Sea, it is of more then two hundred Spanife hou hholds. There is in it Treasurie Royall, and House of Contractation. The Port is called Saint John of VI-

na. a name which the Captayne John Gryalna, which discourred it the yeere 1518, and the frame of the Key that it hath, the Vice-roy Don Antonic of Mendoca began. It is fine leagues from the mouth of the River of Veracruz, between the Coast and the little Hand, which is about one league in compasse, compassed with shelues, and so low that the tydes doe couer it right aeainft the mouth of the River of Saint lobn of Flus. They goe into this Hauen by two Channels the most frequented is that of the Flat, the other is called the Gallifan Channell, which is very deepe, and there the ships doe fasten themselves to a great wall of more then source hundred foor with Rings of Iron and Braffe, and when the North winds are very strong, they are not very fure. The Veracruz flands in eighteene degrees, somewhat more, and there was wont to be to the valoading of the Fleets, and they stayed foure or fine monethes in valoading, because it flands five leagues from Saint Inan of Vina , therefore it is now made in the Port of Bustress. which is from the Port of Saint lohn of Vine about eight hunded paces, and it is finished in one moneth and an halfe, and it is called Buytron, by a House that was there of one called Buytron,

and they begin to make a Towne there in that fituation, There are in this Bishopricke two hundred chiefe Townes of the Indians, and one thousand There are in this Bilhopricke two hundred fiftie fine thousand Tributarie Indians, in thirtie fix hibitect, although there may be two hundred fiftie fine thousand Tributarie Indians, in thirtie fix charges of Doctrine of Priests, and thirtie Monasteries of Dominicke, Franciscan, and Au- Parish or · fline Friers: and in the Coast of this Bishopricke on the North Sea, is the River of Aluarado, Schoole diviwhere the bounds of the Bilhopricke of Guanaca, and the River of Almeria doe loyne neere to fion, San partie 20 the River of Saint John of Vlua, where the Towne of Medellin was built by Andrew of Tapia, the dos de destina, veere 1522. When the Marquelle Don Fernando Cortes fent the faid Andrew of Tapia, and Goncalo of Sandenall, to conferre with Chrispher of Tapia, which had Warrants to take away the Coterment of New Spaine from the Marquelle, and the Factor Salezar, and the Ouer-feer Perralmindez dispeopled. The River of Almeria springeth in the long Rome, in the Provinces of Totonaques, and Micantle, and betweene Mountaynes it goeth into the North Sea, and against this River is the Iland of Sacrifices, which the Captayne Grialua gave the name vnto , and the River of Zempodis to the North from Venerus, and vpward the River of Saint Peter and Saint Paul, which springeth in the same Rome , and the River of the Carones , Tufpa , and Tamiagua,

He Bishopricke of Guaraca (fo called by the Province wherein it is, and Antequera by the Chap. 10. Citie where the Cathedrall is resident betweene the Bishopricke of the Angels, and the Of the Bisho

1. Citie where the Cathedrall stretutent between the Ennoprise of the Languar, and the prickes of Guerral Enhanced and twentie leagues, from the prickes of Guerral Enhanced and twentie leagues, from the prickes of Guerral Enhanced and Enha of (biana, and one hundred in breadth by the Coatt of the South Sea, and fiftie by the North & of the Pro-Sea, wherein are included the Provinces of la Mifera, high and low; the high fortie leagues uince of Taba from Antequera to the Welt, & the low more to the South Sealobn Numer Sedenno, and Fernan . co, which is the from Antequera to the Welt, & the low more to the South Seal on 14 manes Southon, and I embaten of Badaioz inhabited first the Citie of Antequera: and after the first Councell of Mexico inhabounds debited it againe; the only Judges therein were Batchelour lobn Ortiz of Matienzo, and Delgadullo, fcribed. 40 which was the first, that as a man of Granada, began to breed Silke in Mexico. The Prefident and Gouernour, the Bishop Den Sebatisan Rammers, began the Cathedrall Church, the beginning of the good of those Kingdomes: the Church hath all the Pillers of Marble of one piece, very

great and bigge, and the Citie hath about foure bundred Spanif Housholds.

neere the Gouernment of Pannes

This Valley of Guarage, from whence the Marquelle of the Valley taketh his Title, begin- Guarage Title neth from the Mountayne of Cocole, in the bound of Gnax olotician. In it is gathered much Silke, of the Mar-Corne, and Millet; it hath the Zapoteca Tongue. There hath beene in it good Mynes of Gold, queffe of the The fituation of the Citie of Antequera (which as hath beene fait) they call Guaraca, was inha. Valley. bited with people of Mexico, which lay in Garrison by order of the second Motezuma, and the many Garrisons that the Kings of Mexico had through their Empire made general in it the Mozican Tongue. The River of this Citie doth finke under the ground; against Cimatlan, and ra-50 feth two leagues off, at the Mountaynes of Canlan, other two from Guaracu; and at a halfe a

league from the Citie right against a Hill that stands to the North, is a point of a little Hill, and there goeth a glade of a Valley alholaine, for the space of eight leagues, which is the aboutfaid faire Valley of Guantes, plealant, and temperate, and of a most healthfull Ayre, where plentis Stinking Rinte fully are gathered all kind of things, and especially fruits of Caffile, most pleasant. To the South west stands the Prouince of Tutepeque, which hath many Townes by the Sea-coast, and is of Tutepeque, more then fixtie leagues ; and that of the River of Aluarado , betweene the North and Northeaft : and that of the Zaporecas to the North eaft from Antequera, and Guazacoaloco in the Con-

fines of Tabasco, all rough Countrey, & notwithstanding the rich Mynes of Gold, little is gotten 60 because of the roughnesse. There are foure Spanish Townes. The faid Citie of Autequera is eightie leagues from Mexico, tonhe South-east in the high way of Chiapa, and Guatemala : and the first that entred to pacific this Promince, was John Nunnez of Mercado, the yeere \$522. by Commiffion of Don Fernands Cortes, and from thence were men of Was lent to ferue the King Quantity simoc, in the defence of Mexico, when Don Fornando Cortes fubdued it.

S. Alifonfo of S tower of

The Treasurer Alfonso of Estrada, when he did governe in Mexico, inhabited the Village of Saint Alifonfo de los Sapotecas, twentie leagues from Antequera, toward the North-eaft. They liue in it by Gold, Cotton-wooll, and Millet, there are about thirtie thousand Indians tributaries. It stands betweene most high Hils. Saint lago de Nexapa is in the Valley of Nexapa, twen tie leagues from Antequera to the East, in the way of Chiapa, and Guatemala. The Village of the Nexana. tie leagues from Antequera to the Ealt, in the way of Chiapa, and Guatemala. The Village of the al Elemino San-Holy Ghoff in the Prounce of Guazacoalco, at the Coast of the North Sea, in the Confiner of Tabalco, is ninetic leagues from Antequera. Gençalo of Sandonall inhabited it in the yeare 1622. It hath about fiftie Townes of Indians, it stands on the border of the River, on the fide of Chiapa : this River springeth in the Mountaynes of the Mixes , and Chomales, neere to Tecountenane, and with the waters of the Neighbour Prouinces of Chapa, and the Chomales, it in goeth into the North Sea, there enter into it thips of one hundred tun.

Cacas-money

In all this Bishopricke there is no River that doth not yeeld Gold, and the Indians doe live without want if they will worke, for they lacke nothing for backe nor belly : and they have the Cacao, a Fruit like Almonds, which feruerh for Money, and they make Wine of it, and it is eaten toffed, and is held for a great fuftenance. They are wholfome Countreyes, and pleafant. The Silke was before nourished by the Castilians, with the Mulberie Trees of the Coun. trey, wherewith the Indians ferued themselues, for to make Paper of the second barke: and the Spaniards have planted io many of Caffile, that they grow infinitely : and if the Indians did The Indians pay tithe of it, and of other things, fine Bishoptickes might be made; but none doe pay tithe Tithes.

This Bishopricke hath three hundred and fiftie Head-townes of Indians, and in them, and in

three hundred Granges of more then an hundred & fifty thouland tributary Indians, & one hun-

dred and twentie Monafteries of Dominicke Friers, and the rest Schooles of Priests for Doctrine. River of Alua- The Coast of the North Sea of this B thepricke, beginneth in the River of Aluaredo, that commeth from the Mountaynes of the Zapotecas, and betweene many other it goeth to the Prouince of Chinastla, and croffing overthwart the Mountaynes whence it fprung, goeth out into the North Sea, betweene the River of Guazacoalco, and Saint lobn of Ulna, and there is also the River called Agnalaice, whose mouth may serve for a Haven; and the divided Rocke, a point of the Land that commeth from the Mountaynes of Saint Martine, named by thips that have bin loft voon a thoale full of Rockes under water, which lye along the Coaft right against themin 10 the Coast of the South Sea. This Buhoprick hath the Hauen of Gnatules in fifteene degrees and an halfe, great, good, and frequented. The Prefident Don Peter of Aluarado fet this Province of Guatules in obedience, and the Port of Tecountepeque is neere, which also is reasonable; and the Towne is great, and there is in ic a great fishing for Shrimps, and other fish which they carrieto Guaraca, and in the high way of Cuyztata is a Myne of Christall-borill. Tecoantepeque is fortic fine leagues from Antequera, they paffe by the Mountaynes of the Choutales, Nixapa, and Mexalpeque, whitherto this Bishopricke extendeth, and hath many Townes subject by the Coast

The Bilhopricke of Mechacan (which is a Prouince betweene the Archbilhopricke of Me-

and fixtie within the Land, with open bounds, by the Septem rionall parts: in it are included

the Prouinces of Zacatula, and of Colina, both in the Coaft of the South Sea. The Citie of

Mechacan, or Pazenaro, in little more then nineteene degrees, and fortie feuen leagues from Mexico, of plaine way. In Guayang areo called Vallodolid, is Refident the Cathedrall Suffragane

to Mexico, with two Monasteries of Franciscans, and Anfine Friers. The Master of the field

Christopher of Olid built Mechanan, the Cathedrall was first Refident in Zinzonza, vinto the

yeere 1 544. that he removed it to Pazenaro. The Bishop was Don Basco de Quirogas and it hath

one Monasterie of Franciscan, another of Anfine Friers, and it stands seven leagues from Me-

ward the Zacatecas, wherein there are about fixe hundred Caffilians, in two Campes " which

they have with their chiefe Alcade or Commissioner, and the seate and dwelling of those that follow the Mynes is a Reall of Campe. The Village of Saint Michaell, in the Province of Me-

cheacen, is thirtie five leagues from Pazznare, to the North-east, in a rough Countrey. And the

Village of the Conception of Salaya, which was built by commandement of the Vice-roy, Don

Martin Enriquez, the yeere 1 570. for to affure the way of the Chichimecas. The Village of

The Mynes of Guamaxnato, are twentie eight leagues from Mechoacan, to the North, to-50

The Billio-pricke of Me. xico, and the new Galicia) hath in breadth by the Coast of the South Sea, about eightic leagues, 40

The Conception of Salaya. cheacan, to the Eaft.

The Village of Saint Philip fiftie leagues off Mechanan, toward the North, and fixtie two from Mexico to

the North-west, with one Monasterie of Austine Friers, in a barren sovie and cold: it was built for the securitie of the way of the Zacatecas. The Province and Village of Zacasula, in the Coast of the South Sea, stands in more then 18.de- 60 grees, and fortie leagues from Machoacan, to the South-weft neere the Sea: John Rodriguez, of Vilmorte, and Smon of Cuenes, built it the yeare 1923, it flands minetie leagues from Mexico, and the Proxince and Village of Calina, in Little more then 18. degrees, in the Couff of the South Sea, and in the confines of new Galicia, fiftie leagues from Mechacan, to the South-west, with a

CHAP.I. No Crosses in America till the Spaniards came. A Man 200. yecres old. 875

chiefe Commissioner, in a hot toyle, and plentifull of Cacao, and Cassia Fistola, with Gould, and well conditioned people. Gençale of Sandenal built it in the yeare 1522. All the Countrie of Methoacan is most plentifull of Wheate, Miller, and all kinde of Spanift Fruites, and Cattle, flored of Fish: it hath Graine, Cochinilla, and Cotten wooll, and the people is industrious, and given to labour.

There are in this Bilhopricke one hundred and thirtie Townes, the nintie foure head Townes with Schooles of Doctrine : this Bishopricke reacheth no Coast of the Sea of the North, in the South Sea are many Rivers, and in the furtheft Welt of the Province, almost in the border of the new Galeia, is the port of Nauidad, in the height of 19 degrees, good and frequenced, from to the Naugation is made to the Philipinas; and more to the Eaft, neere the Port of Saint Inner: there are very good Copper Mines in these bounds, of the which the Indians make very curious Veffels, for it is pleasant, and other so hard that they digge the ground with it instead of

Iron, which they could never doe till the Spaniards taught it.

The Prosince and Government of Tucatan (which tooke this name when the Captaine Francifcus Fernandez discouered it, and our Ladie of the Remedies , when John of Grigalna discouered Tucatari. Coismel) was at the first held for an Hand, because it was almost compassed with Sea, in sort that it may be called Penminda, and it compaffeth more then two hundred and fiftic leagues: it is in length where it extends it selfe East and West, about one hundred leagues, and as many North and South, from the Coast that looketh to the North, vnto the part that doth confine with the

20 Prouinces of Guatemala, whereby it hath ouertwhart about fine and twentie leagues. The tem-Provinces of Guaremala, whereoy it natu our twinit about meaning where tragges, a the terms of those which perature is hot, and very moift, and though there be no River, nor running water in it all, the wa- of those which perature is hot, and very moift, and though there be no River, nor running water in it all, the wa- fault the Crofperature is not, and very mode, and they finde fo many shels of Sea-fish under the stones, that this, and the crofter is so neare for Wels, and they finde so many shels of Sea-fish under the stones, that this, and the crofter is so neare for Wels, and they finde so many shell so so so that the crofter is so nearest the stones. Coast being so low, hath given occasion to suspect that it hath beene Sea in other times: it is of Lattenin much compassed with Wood: they gather no Corne, nor seedes of Castile, there is no Gould, nor Yacatas, whereany other kindeof Mettall, whence is knowne the invention (or deceit) of those which faid as there never any other kindedt raction, whence is another the Spaniard entred in it, Croffes of Latten, which was Croffe in the there were found in this Promince, when the Spaniard entred in it, Croffes of Latten, which was Croffe in the Indicibethat there were count in any Prouince of the Indies: it is very plentiful of game, especially wilde forethe Systems Boares and Deere, they breede vp in it greatstore of Poultrie: they gather much Cotten wooll, add. and Azure, the people multiplieth and liueth long; a man there was which attained to three hun- A Man of 3001 30 dred yeares: it hath all the kinde of Cattle of Spaine, and good Horses.

There are in this Gouernment without that of Tabasco, which goeth loyntly with it, foure Sognifb Townes, and one Bishopricke: and the Townes are buildings of the first Gouernour, the President Den Francisco of Monteio. The Citie of Merida is in twentie degrees height, almost in the middeft of the Prouince, neerer to the coaft of the North Sea, twelue leagues within the Land. In it are refident the Gouernour, the Officers of Reuenues, and treasure Royall, and the Cathedrall fuffragane to Mexico, with a Monasterie of Franciscane Frees, they called it Merida, for the great and auncient buildings that it hath like Meride in Caffile, and it caufeth admiration, that having no kinde of Mettall in the Province, fogreat Scones could be wrought, in the which were formed engrauen naked men, with eare-rings, whereof is inferred that they were Temples, AO and that it was a very famous Countrie. The Village of Valladolid is thirtie one leagues from Me. Valladolid.

rida, toward the South-east with a most sumptuous Monasterie of Franciscan Fryers, and 15000. tributarie Indians in the limits. The Village and port of Saint Franciscus of Campeche, in 20. de- Campeche grees, in the Coalt that looketh to new Spaine, about fiftie leagues from Merida to the West, declining to the South, it hath a reasonable Hauen, though little depth for being a Bay Don Frauvifem of Monteio gaue it the name. The Village of Salamanca the Prefident called fo by his Skimanca owne Countrie. In the Provinces of Bacalar, and Chetemal, seventie leagues from Merida, North and South, leaning to the West, and other seventie from Valladolid, neere to the Coast of the gulfe of Handuras : there are in this Prouince Monasteries of Franciscanes, and fix Schooles of Prietts for Doctrine.

Prietts for Doctrine.

The Coast of all this Prouince is so shallow, that in few parts ye can ride at anker at leffe then thing. foure or fue leagues from the Land, and to there is no Port but for small Shippes, and it floweth Tides. and ebbeth more in this Coast then in any other place of these Prouinces of new Spaine. The The Ports and Ports that are, be thefe: Ciclo, and Telisbaque, Cual and Cauquil: the River with two mouthes, points of this Campeebe in the Coalt that looketh to new Spaine, and in it the small Cape from whence the Gouernment. Coaft beginneth to winde to the East, and neere to the Point a little Iland which is called la Desconocida or the Vnthankefull, compassed with shelves: and to the West from this, about eighteene leagues, another which they call the Zarza, and the Triangle, which are three small Hands, close by another little Hand compassed with shelues, other hixteene leagues from a Cabo a Or Sharpe, Delgado, Ilands de Arenas (of Sandes) and the Redde (la Bermeia) and another Iland thirtie leagues

90 from the faid Cape to the North, and los Negrillos, three little llets compased with shelies, to the East from the B Redde, about thirtie fine leagues, and the & Scorpiones twentie leagues of the b Or Bermeia. coast North and South, with Merida, and the Cape of Contoche, the Point most to the East of c Or Alacrett, Tucatan, from whence goe foure little Hands, which are called de Mugeres of Women, leaning to the Coast in the which is the Hand of Commel, named by the famous Idoll Place in it, whither

Cccc 2

A famous worin Cozumel.

all the people of the Province went in Pilgrimage; it stands four leagues to the Sea, at the be-ginning of the Gulfe of Hundersa, almost North and South with Valladolid, more inward to the Gulfe, other three little Ilets with shelues, almost over against the Lake of Bacalal, which is within the Land thirtie leagues from the Lake of Chetemall, in the Coast that goeth painted with I-*Or take away lands vnto Salamanea, which is the first Pantoia, neere one thelfe called * Quita/nenno, and another Zaratan, and another Lamanay and the last Tiboh.

The Province of Tabalco, which goeth with the Gouernment of Tucatan, and falleth youn the Coast of the North Sea in the gulfe of new Spaine , hath in length East and West , about force leagues, from the confines of Tucatan, vnto the confines of Gonzacoalco, wherewith it ioyneth to on the East, and as much North and South from the North Sea, vnto the confines of Chiapa, It is all plaine ground of Marshes, Lakes and Quagmires, and so they goe ouer it in Boates, and Canoes; it is very moift, and hot, and therefore very plentifull of Pattures for Kine, and of Miller and Cacao, which is the greatest stocke or substance of this Prouince, wherein is onely one Town. which is Tabasco, and by another name, the Village of our Lady of the Victorie, so called for the Victory that Don Hernande Cortex had there of the Indians, when hee went to new Spaine, the yeare 1519. The tribute which the Indians doe pay in this Prouince, is two thousand Xiquipiles of Cacao, and enery Xiquipill are eight thousand Almonds, and one load maketh three X: quipiles or Terces. In the Coast of this Prouince besides other Rivers and Marishes, is found Riversofthis the Lake of Xicalango, or Port Royall, great and capable, with two little Hands at the mouth. and it was the Captaine Lewis Marin, that by order of Don Fernando Cortes, made an end of pa- 20 cifying this Prounce.

Lake of Xice.

Chap. II.

He bounds of the Counfell of new Gallicia or of Xalifeo (which Numo of Guzman faid hee had discouered, and Don Fernando Cortes, that the Captaine Goncale of Sandonall, did it in his name, when hee fent him to pacifie the Colomas) it parteth bounds with of Guadaluiara, the Counfell of new Spaine, neere by the Port of the Nativitie, and the Lake of Chianala. 20ing toward the North-east, whereby (and by the North, and somewhat of the West, for it is not all discouered) it hath the bounds open, for the rest to the West is all Sea: that which is inhabited on the one fide, and the other, may come to one hundred leagues, wherein are comprehended the Prouinces of Guadalaiara, Xalifco, the Zacatecas, Chiametla, Culi- 30 acan, the new Bizker, and Cinolos; and for Circuit the discouerie of the Provinces of Cibola and of Quibira.

The temperature of the Prouince, and borders of Guadalaiera, is good, and the Countrie plen-

tifull of Corne, and Millet, and other Seedes of Spaine, and many Vaines of Silver : there are in it Spanish Townes. Nunno of Guzman peopled the Citie of Guadalaiara, the head of this Kingdome, the yeare 1531. and gaue it the name of his Countrie: it stands in 106 degrees and a halfe of longitude from the Meridian of Toledo, 1780, leagues by a direct Voyage, & in 20. degrees one third part in height, eightie seuen leagues from Mexico, betweene the North and the West, more toward the West: in it is resident the Counsell, the Officers of the revenues, & Royall treafurie, and the Cathedrall Suffragan to Mexico, since the yeare 1570, forbefore it was commanded 40 to be built in Compostella: it hath one Monasterie of Franciscan, another of Austine Friers. Nunne The Haj Coople.

Sentia Marie of Guzzman built also the Village of the Holy Glouft in Topoque: and the Village of Santia Marie the Lakes.

of the Lakes, stands thirtie leagues from Guadalaiara to the South-east, with the chiefe Commissioner. It was built for to be sure of the Chichimecan Indies, that are in Countries between the North and the East, a barbarous people, which live scattered in the field, without any taste of humanitie or policie, liuing in Canes, & in the Groues like fauage beafts; they liue youn wilde chafe and fruits, they know no riches, nor pleafure; they goe naked, and some couered with Beafts skins: their weapons are Bowes and Arrowes, they are well bodied, great eaters, they make wine of cer-

Zalifeo.

The Chichime-

In the Prouince of Xalifco, which is plentifull of Millet, more then of Sheepe, or Horfes, there 50 is onely the Citie of Compostella neere the Sea, three and thirtie leagues from Guadalaxara, to the West, where the Counfell was at the first, and commanded to build the Cathedrall, vntill the yeare 1 960, that they removed to Guadalaiara to be more in the borders; there is in it a Monafterie of Franciscan Friers; and it was also inhabited by Nunno Guzman, the yeare 1531. which travelled two yeares in these Countries, which they called the greater Spaine, in emulation of Don Fernando Cartes, in all that time nothing being knowne of him in Mexico. The Village of the Purification, to the South-west, from Gnadalaiara, and thirtie leagues from it, neere the port of the Nativitie, in the confines of the bounds of this Counfell, and of that of Mexico, in a very hot and fickly Countrie : and vnto the end of the yeare 1531. Numo of Guzman discourred one hundred and fiftie leagues of Land by the Coast of Xalifeo, which stand 60 in somewhat more then 22. degrees.

taine rootes wherewith they drinke themfelnes drunke.

In the Prouince of the Zacatecas, are rich mines of Silver, and want of Water, Corne and Millet: there are three Townes of Spaniards, and foure Camps appointed of mines: those which they call of the Zacatecas are the principall, fortie leagues from Guadalas ara to the North, and

eightie from Mexico, wherein are ordinarie more then fine hundred Spaniards, fine hundred Shues. one rhouland Horles and Mules, and one Monasterie of Franciscane Fryers; and there is refident alwayes one of the Officers Royall of Gasdalsiers. In this Prouince also are the Mines of Agares, in the confines of the Zacatecas, and those of Saint Martin seuen and twentie leagues from the Zacatecas, to the North-west, wherein are wont to be about four hundred Spaniards. and Xerex of the Frontier, thirtie leagues from Guadalaxara, to the North, and tenne from the mines of the Zacatecas, in the way to them. There are besides these other Resies or Campes. whereof no mention is made, because they are so famous. The Village of the Erena, & the Mines The Erena whereon its mention at the first and twenty leagues from Zacatecas to the North-west, neere to "Or Saminarect called of the little" Hat, are fine and twenty leagues from Zacatecas to the North-west, neere to "Or Saminarect enter the of Saint Martin, and others that are in the limits. The Village of 'Nombre de Das, is fixthe 'the Nowed' by the house from the Civing Good date. eight leagues from the Citie of Guadalaisra, and tenne from the Mines of Saint Martin to the Gad.

North, with a Monasterie of Franciscan Friers, aboundant in Corne, and Millet, and good Mines in his Borders, The Village of Durango, in the Borders of the Mines of Saint Martin, and the Valley of Saint Saluador, eight leagues from Nombre de Dios, a wholesome Countrie, & many Rivers. with whole watering they gathered great store of Corne, and Millet, and of other Prouisons, and in the Borders are the Mines of Saint Luce, and a very good Salt-pit. And the Indians of this Kingdome in many places were in armes, and the Chiehimecas, and Gnachachiles did great hurt in the way of Guadalaura to the Zacatecas, and this warre was very coffly, and tedious, and was ended, the Marquelle of Villamanrique being Viceroy. The Indians are divided in this precinct in

20 one hundred and foure partitions or tribes.

The Prouince of new Bizkie, is North-west ward from the Zacatecas fiftie leagues from them; Name Project. a Countrie of Prouisions, and much Cattell, and of good Silver Mines, the Mines of Hindebe are in it, of SantiaBarbola, and of Saint John, and in it is the Prouince of Topia; and in this discourry, and inhabiting, Franciscus Tharra did many services. The Province of Chiametla, twenty leagues broad Chiametla, and long, in the Coast of the South Sea, about fortie leagues from Xalifeo, hath Mines of Silver, and in it stands Saint Sebastian, a Village of Spaniards, which was first of the Counsell of Mexico, and it flands in more then 22 degrees. Culiscon is a government in the South Sea, more to the Eaft, and West from Chametla; it is a plentifull Countrie of Victuals, and showes of Silver Mines. and west from Commerce; in a spicinist Commerce or recurs, and invest or insure states, whereof there is a Campe peopled, which they call of the Pripies. The Village of Saint Mis. Suitivest, charles the Enguestrom Compositeds, and one bundred and three from Guadalaises, Numes of charles the Enguestrom Compositeds, and one bundred and three from Guadalaises, Numes of

Guzmen inhabited it the yeare 1521. The Province of Civaloa, the last, and most Septentrionall of the new Kingdome of Galicia. Ciualea. two and fortie leagues from Culinean, one hundred and fiftie from Guadalaiara, to the North, was a Towne built in it that was called Saint John of Cinalon, of Spaniards, and could not be kept. This Prounce was discourred, Don Antonie of Mendoca being Viceroy in new Spaine, and they faid there was a Citie feene wrought with stone, which they called Granada, and that those Indiens were warriers, and that in the Countrie was great flore of Victuals. Quibira, flands in Quibira. fortie degrees, of a temperate and fruitfull foyle. Cibola, stands thirtie leagues from Cultacan, Cibola. toward the North, and Quibra two hundred from Cibola to the East; it is all of poore peo-40 ple; for that they have no Cotten, they weare Deere skinnes, and of the Countrie Kine,

which have a lumpeon the ridge of the backe, and long haire in the fore parts, the hornes leffer then ours; and in them conflitteth the greatest part of the sustenance of the people, for of the skinnethey cloathe, and make Shooes, and Cords; they eate the fielh, and make tooles of the bones: they have fundry languages in this Province, because they communicate little the one with the other. California is a great point of the Land that putteth out to the Sea in the vttermost West of California

new Spaine in two and twentie degrees height, from whence it extendeth to the North-west. nesre about two hundred leagues, although of it there is no certaine notice, nor of the Ports, and Ilands of the Gulfe California, which is made betweene the faid point, and Gulfe of new 50 Spaine, which goeth along that way, as to the North-west; in the which alchough there be many Riuers, Capes, and Points, and landing-places, there is no particular notice had of them. because they are not much frequented. At the beginning, and entrance of this Guise are very long and narrow Ilands along the Coast, and very close with it, which is called the Gray anall, that reacheth from the River of our Ladie, or of Sebastian of Bora, vnto the River of Christmas in Cultucan, The River of the Village of Saint Michael is called Cignatian; and neerer to new Syame is the River of Pafila, and against it the Defar Hand, and afterward the River of the Hoth Ghost. and the port of Kaliseo, and to the South of the point of California, is Annublada or the Cloudie Hand, and the Hand of Saint Thomas, and the Hand of Flores, and another which is called Las Monias.

T was first called the Counsell of Gustemala of the confines, because it was commanded first to Chap. 12. be built in the confines of the Provinces of Nicaragua, and Guatemala, without affiguing any of the Countil certaine Towne, It hath in length East and West two hundred and fortie leagues, and from the of S. James of Meridian from 84. to 98. of longitude, and North and South, in breadth one hundred and eigh. Guatemule.

a Or tiue Peace. b Or Rich coaft.

tie. from 9.to 10. degrees of height, vnto eighteene or ninereene, in the which are comprehelded the Provinces of Guatemala, Soconusco, Chiapa, Suchnepeque, the Verapaz Honduras and Cacos, Saint Saujour, and Saint Michael, Nicaragua, Chuluteca, Taguzgatja, and b Costarica; and in every one of these Provinces they alter in speech : and according to the opinion of Religious men, it was the worke of the Diuell, for to plant diffentions and discord betweene these National ons which were bloody and reuengefull. The Gouernment and Prounce of Guatemala on the Guerema's. South Sea coaft, in length of it may be about feuentieleagues, and in breadth North and South thirtie, it is a Countrie of a good temperature, plentifull of Millet, Cotten wooll, Corne and other fruits, though they preferue not the Seede of one years for the other : the waters are few, to but when it raineth they are very violent from Aprill to October, the windes are North and

South, and the North laiteth but fifteene or twentie daye, and it is very cold, and furious. There are in it fine Spanish Townes, buildings of the President Don Pedro of Aluarado, in the yeare 1524. and 25. The Citie of Saint lames of Guatemala, whose situation was called Cachequill. which fignifieth an Eagle, because the Generall of this Nation, when hee went to warre, did beare an Eagle for his Plume : it is the head of the Gouernment, where the Counfell is refident. in 24 degrees and a halfe of height, and 93 degr. from the Meridian of Tolede, from whence it may bee diffant by a greater circle of one thousand sixe hundred and sixtie leagues, and it is twelve from the Sea, and a towne of fixe hundred Spanish housholds: the Officers of the goods and Royall Treasure, are resident there, the melting house, and the Cathedrall Suffragane to Mexico. with one Monasterie of Dominicans, and another of Mercenarie Friars, and one Hospitall, and 20 in the bounds fine and twentie thousand tributarie Indians. This Citie is feated in a very pleafant Valley, with fruits of divers forts, and all kinde of provision and dainties,

Saint Saluador. The Citie of Saint Sautour, which in the Indian language is called Cuzcatlan, is fortic leagues

from Saint lames to the South-east, with one Monasterie of Dominicans. The Village of the Trinitie, which in the Indian tongue was called Conzonate, fixe and twentie leagues from Saint lames to the South-west, four leagues from the Port of Axacula. It is a chiefe Commissionership with title of his Maiestie, with one Monasterie of Dominicans, in a plentifull foile of Cacao, and the Indians of it are of the iunidiction of Saint James, it is a place of great trafficke, and the Porta touch for the ships of Pern, and of New Spaine. The Village of Saint Michael fixtie two leagues from Saint James, and two and twentie from Saint Sanieur to the South-west, two leagues from 30 the Sea and Bay of Fonseca, which scrueth it for Hauen, and in the bounds are eightie Townes of Zerez, Indians. The Village of Xerez of the frontier, in the Indian Speech called Chalateca, in the confines of Guatemala and Nicaragua, eightie leagues from Saint lames, and twentie from Saint Michael to the South-east, both plentifull of Cotton wooll and Millet, Neere the Citie of Saint I amer is that * Volcan fo famous of Guatemala, and in all the Indies are many of these Volcanes (but the mouthes like most famous are those of Guatemala, which hath burst out divers times, casting fire, stones, and

ashes, with great hurt of the Countrie.) That of Arequipa, of Tlascala, Quito, and others. In this Countrie are many fprings of water, hot, and of fundrie properties and colours; there is much and good Balme , which the Spaniards knew without learning it of the Indians , against the which some Author speaketh, and also liquid Amber, Gumme-anime, Copall, and Suchicopall, 40 and other Gummes, and Liquoris most perfect, and beasts that breed the Bezar stone, they gather Cacao deferi. great flore of Cacao, which is great riches; it is a meane Tree, the leaves like a Chefnut though bigger, it giueth flower and fruit enery Moone, and the fame doe in that Countrie the Orange trees. The Cacao is a tree that loveth moisture better then the Sunne, and therefore they plant

neere him another tree to shadow him.

The Ports of this Gouernment in the South Sea, beside the rehearsed, are the Bay of Fonseca Ports of this neere to Saint Michael, in twelve degrees and a halle of height, Gil Gonçales of Anila gave it the Gouernment name in the yeere 1 522. for the Bilhop lobn Rodrigues of Fonfeca, Prefident of the Councell of the Indies. And within the Bay is an Iland which he named Petronilla, by a Neece of the Bishop. The Port of Acazula, neere to the Trinitie, in twelve degrees height, is the best of this Govern- 10 ment for New Spaine and Peru, and the Bay of Guatemala twelve leagues from it, and the River of Xicalapa feuen leagues from the Bay to the Welt. On the North fide this Province hath no coalt, for it commeth not to the Sea by fortie leagues, vnto a landing place which they call the Port of the fresh Gulfe, from whence the merchandiz: that goe from Spaine, are conveighed by the Gulfe of Honduras, into the Land with carriages vnto Guatemala, Saint Sautour , and the Trinitie, and twelve leagues before Guatemalu, in the high way of Mexico, is the great Lake of Atu-

Soconufco.

lan, of ten leagues in compafie, and foure in breadth, without bottom. The Prounce and Government of Soconnico is the furthest West from Guatemala voon the coast of the South Sea, of length and breadth about foure and thirtie leagues, plentifull of Cacao (the greatest trafficke of it, and of all that in it is sowne except Wheat) there is no more then one 60 Spanish towne, which is called Guenesian, founded by Don Pedro de Aluarado, where the Gouernour is relident; her coall which is in the South Sea, beginneth feuen leagues from the River of Ayutla to the West, and presently the Rivers Coatlan, Capanercalte, Colarl, Hazzatlan, Amune, and Quizatatlan.

The Province and Bilhoprick of Chieps is Mediterranean, betweene Soconnico by the South, Chieps. and the vecermost of New Spaine by the West, and by the North and the East, betweene Tabal and the Verapac, in length East and West about fortie leagues, and some lesse in breadth, some " Or me lele fertile of Wheat and Millet, and other Seedes, and of Cattell, except Sheepe that are not peace. many, It hath one Towne of Cashlians, which is called (nie Royal, feuentie leagues from Saint Imes of Gnatemala toward the North-east, which by a particular priviledge is governed by ordinarie Julices. The Cachedrall is refident here with one Monasterie of Dominiche Friars, and many Indian Townes in her limits: Chiapa is the principillest Towne of them, from whence the Promince tooke the name. The Countrie-men haue skill in breeding of Horfes, that those of this IO Countrie become the best that are in New Spaine: they are Musicians and Painters, and learneany Trade that doth confift in arte: they were in old time of Nicaragua, and the Captaine lames of Mazarieges, the yeere 1531. built this Citie in a Valley where now it flands, round, of a marnellous firmation in 18. degrees and a halfe, fixtie leagues from the North Sea , and as many from

The Province of Verapes (4 name which the Dominiete Priars gave it, because they pacified Verapes. it with preaching) is also Mediterranean betweene the bounds of Seconsfee, Chiapa, Tacatan, Hondarss, and Gueremala, of thirtie leagues over, and as many from Saint lames of Guaremala; a most Countrie, and therefore the better for the Millet that in it is gathered twice a yeere, and for Wheat. There is Cotton wooll, and some Cacao, and much Fowle of those that give the co- Picture fra 20 loured feathers for the pictures which the Indiany doe make, which is a merchandize of this Pro-thers, uince, and the Kings of Mexico carried them from this Pronince, which was the most esteemed thing they had, and it was sudged for a great finne to kill these Fowles, but to plucke them and to let them file. There is in this Countrie but one Monasterie of Dominicke Friars, with one Indian let them me. I neve in its me countrie but one measurement of a service resistance from the fraction chairs children the area there, by order of the religious men for to infirmed. Towns of foundation that are there, by order of the religious men for to infirmed. Hence the better; for before they lived feattered and like faunges, and now they live like Christient the better; for before they lived feattered and like faunges, and now they live like Christient the feature of the featur ans, and in temporall things politikely.

In this Prouince there is no Governour, but a chiefe Iustice, prouided by the Councell. The River of Zacasula divideth this Prosince from the Province of Guatemala, from the which it extendeth vnto the fresh Gulfe, whither all the Rivers of it doe runne, whereby and by the many 30 falls of waters that descend from most high Hills, the Countrie was so moift, that the Millet rotrails of waters that unexula them mon inguisate, the sometime was up month that can alter order by it is bettered in the temperature, fine the cutting downs of the Woods : it high many ted; but it is bettered in the temperature, fine the cutting downs of the Woods : it high many ted in it is Lions, Tigres, and Buffes, whole sich that the lands are does cateful though it be laftious and foft; it is called the Profe Guife, for the multitude of the Rivers which on that fide doe enter into the Sea. Guife date. The water is freth, and there are exceeding great Filhes, and specially the Manati, which is the Manati a fifth See calle, which I wimmeth fodelicately, that being very great he maketh no noyle; when hee defended. Seeth he goeth to the Deepe, and waxeth angrie and fierce against them that seeke him , and giueth great frokes ; his flesh is very fat like vinto fat beefe.

THe Protince and Government of Hondaras hath in length East and Wesk, by the coast of the Chop. 13.

40 North Sea, more then one hundred and fittie leagues, and in bredth from the Sea witto the O' Hondaras. bounds of Coffa Reca and Gazemala, in parts eightie: is hath many Hills, and is plentiful of Sindayas, and bounds of Colla Rica and Chatemata, in parts eighte: Is nath many ritins, and is preparated of the Rick, or Millet, Wheat, and all forts of Cattell, and fome Hynes of gold and fither other is in it like Spa- the Rich Conf. mile Townes in one Bishopricke, and the first Bishop was Friar Islan of Talaners, Frior of Prade, Handers.

on the Oluce to Sime to Space.

The Citic of Falladolid, in the Indian language, is called Compagna, in more then fixteene degrees, finals fixtle leagues from Saint Laure of Guatemala to the East, and about fortie from the North Sea : mitis the Gouernour resident, and the Cathedrall, fince the yeare 1558, when it went from Traxillo, whereat first it was; and one Monasterie de la Merced. The Captaine Along of Cacerer pacified this Countrie, by order of Don Peter of Almerado: it flands in the mid- Or of our 50 delt of the two Seas, and from the one to the other are three and fiftie leagues, from the Port de Lady of the Canalles or of Herfes in the North Sea, wato the Bay of Fonfeca in the South Sea, and the Inginer Vilitation of Batifia Autonet visited this way, by order from the King ; because many thought that by it the the Inginer trafficke of the North Sea was more easie to the South Sea, and hee found that it had many in - Bestilla Antene

The Citie of * Gracius à Dies, is thirtie leagues from Valladeled almost to the West; the the Pote of Ca-The Citie of Gracius a Dies, is there i eagues from rangement almost to the wind the sales of Hurfet, Captaine Gabriel of Rojar peopled it 1530, for the benefit of the Mynes of gold that were there to the Bay of the the Bay of Laptaine Games of so par peoples it 1 330. for the perms of the suprae or goal that were interestable of shorts, and had great encounters with the Lankaux, which fall faced him many time in a Fort that Engles. The had, But the Gouermouro Houters and Nieuragues, not fuccouring him by realth program. Thanks been had, But the Gouermouro Houters and Nieuragues, not fuccouring him by realth program. Bes betweene them , hee was forced to forfake it. And in the year 1936. Captains Gonçale of to God 60 Alasrade, inhabited this Citie againe. The Village of Saint Perre is thirtie leagues from Co- Saint Perre managena to the North, forneswhat aside to the West, and eleven from the Port of Canalles, where the Officers Royall are refident, because the Port of Canallos is fickly, whither the difpatches of the fhips doe come. The Prefident Don Peter Alwarado built it 1536.

The Village of Saint Iohn of the Port de Canallar is in 15, degrees of altitude, cleuen leagues Saint Iohn.

88a

from Saint Peter, foure from Comayagua, it is inhabited with Factors of the Merchants and with Black-moores, because it is an vnwholsome Port; for although it be a Bay, it is a good one, it was called the Port of The Horses, because some were cast in the Sea by aftorme. The Citiens Truxillo is fixtie leagues from Comanagua to the North-east, and fortie from the Port of Horfes to the East, and one from the North Sea: the Cathedrall was here, the Hauen is called Saint Gid it is good, though it be a Bay dead and sheltered, where the ships that goe for Guatemala doe touch first. Francisco de las Casu, began to inhabit this Citie 1524. and because they were all people of Estremadura, he called it Travillo, and Don Hernando Corres ended the inhabiting of it when he went to the Theeras. The Village of Saint George of Olancho, is fortie leagues from Comayaona to the Baft, of fortie housholds, and in her borders sixteene thousand tribusarie Indians, and 10 much gold, chiefly in the River of Guayape, ten leagues from this Towne. This Valley of Olesche is very pleasant and profitable, and in it was much gold gotten, and the Gouernours of Henduras and Nicaragua, had in other times great differences: for every one would have it in his inriidiction , and therefore here it was where Gil Gonçales Danila tooke one hundredand twentie thousand Pefos of gold of Hernando of Soto, and difmified the people which Pedrarias Danila had for his defence; and here Gabriel of Rojas defended the entrance of Gonçalo of Sandonal, for Don Hervando Cortes did fend him from Traxillo, and here the Indians killed John Gryalus, a very famous Captaine, and others.

Points and

The coalt of this Prouince is all in the North Sea , in the Gulfe which they call de Honderes. which is all the Sea coast betweene this Province and Tucatus, to the place where it isyneth 20 with it by Verapaz, where it was called the Gulfe of Guanajas, the first Point is of the Thurras, fo called, because they first found many pompions on the Sea, which they call Thurs in the language of Hispaniola; it flands in fixteene degrees of height. Neere to the Frefb Oulfe a Port for Gustemala, where Saint Gil of Bonauifia was built, neere to the Cape of Three Points to the East from the Fresh Gulfe, and Gil Gonçales Danila peopled it 1524. And more to the East is the River Piche, and Rio Baxo, and the River of Ulna, by another name Balabama bafore the Port of Horfer, which stands in fifteene degrees. And afterward the River and Point de la Sal, and Triumpho de la Cruz, a Cape of three points, where the yeere 1,24 the Master of the field (brille, pher of Old planted; and the River Hubma or of Xegua, and to the North of his mouth the L land of Villa; and to the North-east, Guayana, Helen, and Guanaja, and Saint Francisc North 20 and South with the Point of Truxillo, which are the Hands of the Guanajos. The faid Point is called by another name, Cabo Delgado, the Small Cape, or of Honduras, from whence to the Cape Or Strimpe of Camaron, in fearch whereof they goe from Jamages, are thirteene Rivers, and at the Pointof the Cape a plazell or great shelfe of more then twentie leagues into the Sea, and in the middest of it neere to the Coaft a great Hand, which is called the Hand de los Bazos (of the flelues) and another to the North, neere the shelfe called Saint Millen, and having passed the shelfe, the Bay of Cartago, and the Deepe Bay, before the Cape of thanks be to God, which stands in fourteen degrees Cabe de Gracias one third part, and to the North of it three Hands, which they call the Viciofas, and Quita fuenne or Take away fleepe, and Roncador, the Suorter, two dangerous shelves, and having passed the Cape, the Gulfe of Nicmefe, where hee was loft in the yeers 1510, and the River of Tare in thirteene 40 degrees, where the Governments of Honduras and Nicaragua are joyned.

The llands of the Guangjes, which are the rehearfed, the first Admirall Don Christ opher Colon discoursed 1502. in the last voyage he made to the Indies, when he discoursed Torra firme in the coaft of Veragua, where his ill lucke appeared; for if as he went to Veragua, hee had gone to the other fide, he had discourred New Spaine.

The Province and Government of Nicaragna, which the Governour Iames Lopez of Salzede, called the New Kingdome of Lion, on the West ioy neth with Guatemala, and on the North with Honduras, and on the South with * Cofta Rica. It is of one hundred and fiftie leagues East and West, and eightie North and South, a plentifull Countrie of Miller, Cacao, Cotton wooll, store of Cattell, without Corne or Sheepe, it hath fine Spanift Townes. Lion of Nicaragua is one hutte 50 dred and four leagues from Saint lames of Guatemala about the South-east, and twelve from the South Sea, neere to the great Lake of Nicaragua, where the Governour is resident sthe Royall Officers, and the Cathedrall, and lames Alwarez Offerio was the first Bishop. It hath fine Monasteries of Mercenaries, and in her bounds one hundred and twentie thouland tributarie Indians. The Citie of Granada is fixteene leagues from Lion , which and Lion were built by the Captaine Franciscus Hernandez. 1523. and Granada stands by the border of the great Lake, and soure and twentie leagues from the Port of Realeis, betides the great Lake, stands the Lake of Lindiri, and Lake of Nica. the famous Vulcan or Fierie month of Maffayaten. The great Lake ebbeth and floweth, it hath Tokan of Mat. many Hands, it runneth into the North Sea, by the River which is called El Defaguaders, or The Vending, it hash great flore of Fish and many Lizards. At two leagues from it, and feuen from Gramade is the great fierie mouth of Mombacho, very high with many Groues of diners fruits, of co which much refresh the Countrie. A Friar perswading himselfe, that that maffe of fire that in to many yeeres burned without confuming within the mouth of Maffaya was gold, having made by a certaine arte certaine Cauldrons with their chaines to draw it, they fearcely came at the fire, when the Cauldron and the Chaine were melted like Lead.

CHAR. I. Harre B. deferiorible of foodbre America Andeser Signar of Priu. 881

The new Segonial which was the beginning of Rear Arrashis planeation, by thirtte leagues Segonia. from Low to the North, and as many from Grandia, from which Rorthward allo, in which limits much gold is gotten. And Isena Citie is thirtie leagues from the North Sca. in the end of the Isen great Lake, whereby the River which they call the Voyding, and the merchandize which are carried from Nombre de Dies, and now from Porte belle , are conuayed in it. The Village of Realeje one league from the Port of the Possession, which commonly is called of the Realers, flands in a Realers leven degrees and a halfe, and is one of the best Ports and fureft in all that Coast, wherein are made good ships by reason of the good prouition of Timber there.

There are in this Gouernment many Townes of Indians, and in them flore of tributaries, and 10 in the Confines of this Gouernment , and of Cofia Rica , and of Niceya eight and fortie leagues from Granda, in the South coalt, is a Corregidorship; in which, and in the lland of Chra, which is of the writington thereof eight leagues to the Sea, are many tributarie Indiana of the Crowne Royall, subiect in other times to the Councell of Panama, vnto the yeere 1573, at which time it was incorporated in Coffa Rica; whole Gouernour placeth a Depurie, and the Bishop of Nicaraqua & Vicar. There is in it a regionable Port, in the coaft of this Province on the North Sea. After this is the River Two that divideth it from that of Hondards, the River of Tarepa, before Pere and Ri-After this is one acted the think the control of the Rene and the Rene at the mouth, and after, fome other Rivers common to folia Rene. In the South See, it hash become fides the Realeis, the Port of Saint lames, before the Chira, and the Port of Parright against 20 Nicoya, in the Gulfe called of the Sair pirs , before the Point of Saint Lawren , and the Cape of De Sainen. Borrica, at the East fide whereof are the Hands of Saint Marie, Saint Martha, Cobaya, and Se-

baco, neere to the bounds of Veragua, common to Costa Rica. In the Coalt of Nuaragua, on the South fide, the Village of Brazelles was peopled \$729. and Brazelles In the Court of researages, on the South hat, the villege of Dracess was propied 1729, and Issues Lopes of Salcedo difinhabited it, becaule they had received in it Pedro de los Ries, Governour of Castille del Ore, which went to take the Gouernment of Nicaragua, where Saleede had thrust himselfe, and had gone from Hondaras his owne Gouernment vnto it. Captaine Francis cm Hernandez, planted it x 524. in the doubtfull Streight, in the feate of Vritina, and on the one fide it had the Sea, on the other the Playnes, and on the third fide the Mountaine of the Mynes, and in all this Orbe there are no Indians more expert in the Caffellan tongue then thole of Ni-

The Province and Gouernment of Costa Rica, the furtheft East of the Northerne Indies, and ColaRica Councell of Gustemala, hathin length Eaft and West ninetie leagues from the Confines of Veragua vinto those of Nicaragua, with which it ionneth by the North, and by the West In it are two Townes, it is a good Countrie, with many showes of Gold, and some of Siluer. The one Towne is the Village of Aranjues fine leagues from Chomes Indianes, a Towne of the in- dranjue, ridiction of Nicoya. The Citic of Carrage, fortie leagues from Nicoya, and twentie from the Sea almost in the middest of the Prouince, hath a Port and landing place in the Coast of the South Sea, and the North Sea, wherein there is fome Rivers betweene Nicaragua and Veragua, 40 of Unexam

of Veragua.

"He part of the Indies of the South is vniustly called America, it is all that is discoursed Chap. 14. from Nombre de Dies and Panama to the South, wherein is included Tarra firms, the Otthes Kingdomes of Pirm, the Pirm Chile, which the Indians call Chile; The Prouinces of the othersonia Streight, the River of Plate and Brafile, where are five Councels of Panama, new Kingdome of Granada , Saint Francisc of Quito, Lima, the Chareas , and the clouen Governments : part of their Coast toucheth in the North Sea, and part in the South : in the which for the most part reigneth the South and the South-west, which contrarie to his nature is there pleasant,

and doth mitigate the great heate, whereby that Countrie may bee inhabited, although it ne-50 per rayneth nor hayleth in it, but in a very little diffance. And the two rowes of Mountaines Agreat diffethat runne equally through all these Indies, have a great difference, though they are in one ale rence of t mcitule of the Pole: for the one is well replemished with Trees and it alwayes rayneth in it, and persure in the two towns of it is hot: the other is all bare, and cold in Summer and Winter. These rowes are called Andes, piru. and Sierra or the Monntayne; they have most high Hils, and goe in fight the one of the other one thousand leagues, almost equally. In the Hill are bred fundrie beasts, and in the parts where The two rowes they open they make Valleys, which is excellent dwelling, as that of Xanxa, and Guaylas, and doe runne altuey upen tuey make a mary, which is account whealing, as that or some a more and working and of the market file of the some and the some file of Colles, where are infinite Rivers, Lakes, and Paltures, without Trees or Wood, for Quilities of the difference of the Countrie, though wholesome and much inhabited. There follows the Prounce 60 eth after it the Prounce of the Charcas, hot and of great plentie, with very rough Hills of of collection

great riches of Mynes : and the figure of thefe ladies is trene in the Table before going.



He limits of the Counfell of Panama, which was first called Cafilla del Ore, and afterwards Terra Firme, are very small, for the Counsell is principally resident there, for the dispatch of the Pleetes, and Merchants, which goe and come to Pirm: it hath in length East and West. about nintie leagues, from the confines of the government of Cartagena, and Popayan, vnto the Castle of Vergens, and in breadth from the South Sea to the North fixtie leagues, and thence the countrie downeward vnto eighteene by Nombre de Dies, or Porto bello to Panama: it is a ground generalof Persona, and ly very rough with Mountaines, full of quagmires, the ayre close with vapours, most, hor, and for her bounds, this cause very fickly from May vnto November, a barren soyle, and destitute of many things: for this came very near recommendative there groweth nothing but Millet, and very little, though there be good Pastures for Kine, and breeding of Cattle. The government of Veragna Randsin the bounds of this Counfell, and in it, and in that of Panama these Towner following.

The Citie of Panama is in the coast of the South Sea, neere vnto it, in g. degrees of latitude, and 82.of longitude from the Meridian of Toledo, from whence it is diffant by direct way one thoufand fine hundred and fixtic leagues. It is a Towne of fix hundred housholds, the most are Merchants and dealers. And with the Counfell are resident the Kings Officers, and Royall treasurie, which doe goe already to Portobello, when there is any Fleete to the dispatching of it, and likewife the Cathedrall fuffragan to the Archbishopricke of the Kings (delos res) is here resident with three Monasteries, of Dominicke, Franciscane and Merced Friers. The Port of this Citie is reasonable, although at low water the Ships remaine dry, and therefore in Summer they ride in the 60 ftrand, and in winter in the hauen of Perice, two leagues from the citie. Pedrarias Danila peopled it, being Gouernour of Cashillo, del Oro, or of the Gold, against the will of the dwellers of Santis Marie, the auncient of Darien, the yeare 1519. and a little after the Cathedrall Church was removed thither; and it might have had a better feate, and more wholesome, and to the

CHAP.I. Porto bello, Strange case of a Lizard. River of Snakes.

purpole for the trafficke of the South Sea, not going very farre from whence the Citie now stands.

The Citie of Nombre de Dios, was by lames of Nicuesa first planted 1510. and afterward by lanes of Albitez, by order of Pedrarias, and he was the first Admirall that discovered her ports I is removed to Persobele for the first Admirall discovered it, and gave the name, because it was portebile. more wholeforner, and fitter for the loading and valoading of the Fleetes, and for their fecuritie, and of the new Citie of Saint Philip, which is built there ; the Inginer Baptifia Antonelli, bath made a Castle, and app sinced another on the other side the hauen , for to keepe the entrie. The Merchandize are carried from Portobelo to Panama by two wayes, one by Land with carriage, to which is eighteene leagues of leffe difficultie then by the way of Nombre de Dios : the other by

Sea, and the River of Chagre, whose mouth is eighteene leagues from Portobelo, to the West, whereby the Merchandize goe vp when the water reacheth to the vent of the Croffes and from thence they go in carriages fine leagues to Panama.

The Village of Nata (tands thirtie leagues from Panama to the West, in the Coast of the Saint James of South Sea, Captaint Franciscus Companion peopled it, by order of Peter Arias, for the warre Nata. with the Casique Urraca. The inhibiting of Acla, and Captaine Gabriel of Roise finished by commandement of Peter Arias in the Coaft of the North Sea, and entrance of the Gulfe of Vraha, Aila. right against the Hand of Pises, whereof at this present there is no more memory then that there was the death of that famous Captaine, whose memory will last eternally, the President Base 20 Numez of Balnsa, and of his company. In the breach of Almagro, and in the head of the River

Chiepo, there is Gold, and in times past was much gotten. In all these Rivers are many Lizards or Crockables, and very great, which put the first discouerers and pacifiers to great trouble, and did deuoure some men. It happened that a man being in a Boate neere to the Kings Astrange case Houle in Panama, a Lizard came and matched him from the Steame of the Boate, and carried of a Lizard, him a way to eate him on certaine Rockes, and having begunne to teare him in pieces, they flot at him with a Caliuer and killed the Lizard, fo that he before his death received the Sacraments

The Province of Veragua, which stands in somewhat more then tenne degrees, doth confine Veragua. with Coffarica, on the West isie: it hath in length East and West fiftieleagues, and in breadth 30 fine and twentie : aMountainous Countrie, full of bushes, without Pastures or Cattle, Wheate, Barley, little Millet or little Pulse; but full of Gold with many vaines of it, and rich Mines in the Rivers, and breaches, and those Indians that are, are in warre : it hath the Citie of the Conception fortie leagues from Nombre de Dies, to the West, where the Governour and the Officers (which they of Panama at this present doe prouide) are refi- The Conception. dent. The Village of Tringie stands fix leagues to the East of the Conception by Sea (for The Tringie. yee cannot goe by Land) neere to the River of Betblem , at three leagues from the Sca. The Citie of Sanita Fe stands twelve leagues from the Conception to the South, with mel. "Hely Faith, ting houses, and Deputie Officers. The Citie of Charles, in the coast of the South Sea, Charles. neere to the Sea, fiftie leagues from the Citie of Santta Fe, to the East : all the Indians of this

40 gouernment are in warre. There is no Port of name in the two Coasts South, and North, of this government, and in all The Ports the bounds of the Countell, are the Ritters, Ports, and points following. The Bay of Carabaso, or of Saint Harome, in the coalt of the North Sea, and the confines of Veragua, and to the East of it, and of the River of the Trintie, of the Conception, and of Bethlebem (where was the first inhabiting that the first Admirall made in Terra firme, of all that Orbe, in the yeare 1503. which continued not : and right against the Shield, and land, and the River of Chagre, and more to the Eleftude. East a league the Portete, to the place where the Admirall came discouring the same yeere, and the Ports of 2 Langeltas twelue leagues from Nombre de Dies, to the Welt, and the Port de 201 Langle Gallinas or of Hennes nine degrees, and the Port of Bonamenture ix, Portobelo five, and right against it the Hands of the Lookings, and those of the Proxissons or Bastimentos : and having Nombre de blu Miras.

50 Dies two leagues, the Ruer of & Sardinilla, and the Hand of & Sardina, foure; and the Ruer of c Or Little Pil-(Millet or Mayz, and the River of Snakes, or Culebras, eight; and at the entry of the Gulfe of thered, Vraba, where in the yeare 1509, the Bachiller Enerfo built the Citie of San a Marie of Darien. d'Or Pichard. This Bachiller Encifo was he that published that in the Province which was called Caftilla del Oro, there were places where the gold was filled with nets, which encouraged many people to goe to the Indies, which paffed in the yeare 1514. With Peter Arias Danila : and the Preident Bafco Numez of Balboa, went 1513. from the Darien in demand of the South Sea, and discourred it. The Point of the Hand of Captina, Handsright against the Mountaines of Saint Blas, and the Iland of Comagre, and the Iland of Pinos, more within the Gulfe of Uraba, and in the 60 inward Port of it, the Port of Nilcos, necre to the mouth of the River of Darien, which di-

uideth the bounds of this Counfell, and those of the Gouernement of Cartagena, and there is Culara de Uraba, where in the yeare 1510. Alonso of Oieda inhabited Saint Sebastian of Vraba. This Gulfe stands in 8. degrees, it hath foureteene leagues of longitule into the Lands, and in the entrie it hath fix in breadth, and a little forward fiftie,

In the South Sea stands the Cape of Santia Marie, and point (de Guerra) of Warte, and toward Panama, the Gulfe of Parita, or Paris where stands Nata, the point of Chiame, the Countrie of that Cazique Chiapes, the friend of Basco Nunnez of Balbos, which holpe him in his discourty: and passed the Port of Panama, the River of Chepo, and the Balfa, or of Congor in the inner part of the Gulfe of Saint Michael, North and South from the lland of Pearles, and the Point or Port of Pinyas, at the entrie of the Gulfe on the South fide, which is fiftie leagues from Panama, and twentie ouerthwart to the Gulfe of Vraba, and Puerto Quemado, or Burns Hauen, necre to the Cape of Corrientes, in 5. degrees of altitude Septentrionall.

Chap. 16. THe bounds of the Counfel of the New Kingdome hath in length East and West, three bundred

leagues, and as many North and South, wherein are comprehended the Prouinces of the New Kingdome, the governments of Sandia Mariba, and Cartagena, and part of that of Popagan; & for borders the Prouinces of the Derade, or new Stremadure : the Prouince of New Kingdome, which is that which the Counfell gouerneth: it hath in length from East to West foureteen leagues and is the new
Kingdome of eightie in breadth North and South of plaine ground, for the most part with Valleys and hils, and good Pastures for all fort of Cattle, which are in abundance, and in many places, Wheate, Miller. and the fruits of Castile, and generally much Gold and very fine, and Mines of Copper & Steele: and the Countrie men for the most part are able men, great traffickers, and doe weare Cotten 10 cloath, And the Townes that be in the Kingdome of Spaniards, are the Citte of Sanda Foot Bogota, which was built at the foote of Bogota, to called by the Cazique which was called Bogota, which the President Gonçalo Xmenes, of Quefada built, and gave the name to the Citic and to the Kingdome, because he was of Granada, though in the discovery the President Belalcazar, and Nicholas Federman had part : it flands 72 degrees and a halfe of longitude from the Meridian of Toledo, which by a greater circle may be one thousand soure hundred and fortie leagues, and 4. degrees on this fide of the Equinoctial, it hath more then fix hundred housholds, in it is resident the Counfell, the Kings Officers and Royall treasurie, and Melting house, the Cathedrall Metropolitane, whole fuffragans are, Popayan, Cartagena and Santia Marta, with a Monafterie of Dominiche and another of Franciscane Friers, and in her borders more then fiftie thousand tributarie Indiane 30 Lake of Gua- and the Lake of Gnatauita, which was a worthipping place of the Indians, where it is reported that they did cast great summes of Gold in offring to the Idols. The Village of Saint Michael in the bounds of Sancia Fe, twelve leagues from it to the North,

no Deaw in it. In all the Kingdome there is no generall tongue, that which is most enderstood,

are called Canupeis, fine and twentie leagues in length, to the North-weit of Bogota, a

rough Countrie, found, plentifull of Pastures, Gold, and Emeralds : there are two Townes;

the Citie of the Trinitie twentieleagues from Sanda Fe, to the North-well, which the Cap-

taine Lanchero inhabited the yeere 1,82. when hee went to warre with the Indians " Mofcas,

a quicke and fearefull Nation : and in these bounds stands the rich Mine of the Emeralds, with

many Indians which yet are peaceable, and in the Prouince of (biagnachi, which tignifieth

The Village of Palma in the Colimas, of a temper botter then cold, fifteene leagues from Sanita

Timia, which tooke the name of the Carigue, almost to the North, direct to that of Bogota, and 50 in all like vinto it: The Citie of Timia stands two and twentie leagues from Saulta Fe, to the

Fe to the North-weft, the Captaine Don Gutierre of Onalle built it 1572. in the Prounce of

North-east, on a high hill, a strong scituation, for the warre with the Indians. There goe out of this Citie aboue two hundred Horse-men, and it is the most aboundant of Victuals of all

the Borders, and there is the greatest Market in all the Realme : it hathone Monasterie of Do-

is that of the Panches. In the Province of the Mufos, and Columns, which by another name 40

was built for trafficke with the Pauche Indians, because being of a hot Countrie it did them burt to goe to Santia Fe, which is cold. The Citie of Tocarma fifteene leagues from Santia Fe, to the West, somewhat inclined to the North, with a Monasterie of Dominicke Friers, was inhabited the yeare 1545, by the Captaine Hernando Vanegas, in the border of the maine River Pais, which runneth into the River Magdalene. It hath no gold, and is most hot, and by night there falleth

Snailes, for there be many.

Or Flies.

The Palma-

"Or Crying.

Merida.

minicke, another of Franciscane Friers. The Captaine Gonçale Xuarez Rondon built it for the Prefident Gonzalo Ximenez of Pulfada. The Citie of Pamplona feuenty leagues frum Santa Fe to the North-east, hath one Monasterie of Dominick Friers; much Gold is gotten in it, it hath abundance of Cattle: the Bachiller Michael Diaz of Armendariz peopled it. The Village of Saint Christopher is thirteene leagues from Pamplona to the North, the Captaine Franciscus of Caceres built it neere the Prouince of " Grita, so called because the Indians came out of the high wayes to shoute and crie after the Spaniards, and to kill them : little Gold is gotten in it, and it hath commoditie, 60 for to breede Cattle. The Citie of Merida, in the bounds of the gouernment of Veneçuela, and the New Kingdome,

fortie leagues from Pamplona to the North-east : it is a plentitull Countrie of Mines of

CHAP. I. Thunderbolts. R. Grande or Magdalen. Sancta Martha ber Provinces. 885

Gould, and of Wheate. The Citie of Belez, thirtie leagues from Santta Fe to the North, and fiftrene from Tunia, hath one Monasterie of Franciscane Fryers : the Captaine Goncalo Ximenez Roudon inhabited it. It is a Countrie where many thunderboults fell, and there fall not fo ma- Thunderboksi ny fince the holy Sacrament of the Altar is there abiding; it hath one fierie month that caffeth many thones. The Citie of Auriquita of Thegue, by another name Saint Schaffian of the Gould, Marquita, is fortic leagues from Santia Fe to the North-west, the Captaine Pedrose peopled it 1551. in certaine Meadowes, leaning to the hill, the temper is very hot. The Citie of Thaque is three hun. Theene. dred leagues from Santa Fe, almost to the West : it is the first Towne of the New Realme, that doth confine with Popayan , the Captaine Andrew Lopez of Galarza peopled it 1551. by commission of the Counfell, for to eschew the harmes these Indians did with those of Tocarma, and Cartago, and for to open the way to the government of Papayan, it hath a Monafterie of

The Citie of the Viltorie of the Remedies, fiftie leagues from Santia Fe, to the North-west. Villoried in is very rich of Mines. The Citie of Saint Iobn of the Plaines, fiftie leagues from Santia Fe to Remedies, the South, is a Countrie of much Gould. The Citie of Tudela which the Captaine Peter of Vefus built, by order of the Bachiller Don Michael Dinz of Armendariz was difinhabited, becaple the Indian; " Moxeas received hurt by it. And there are of the limits of the Coun- Or Fhes. fell of the new Realme, feuen Townes of the gouernment of Papayan, Santia Fe of Antiochia, Caramanta, Arma, Anzerma, Cartago, Saint Sebaitian of the Sauer, and Saint Vincent 20 de las Pazes.

then one hundred and fiftie leagues, and in more then three hundred it is not waded: it commeth

acid Fase!
The Merchandize enters this Kingdome, by the great River of Magdalone, from the Baranea *Or Material
of Malomba, of the jurification of Cartagena, and the first that fent to discover this River, was comple. Garcis of Lerms. Governour of Sanita Martha 1531. It encreth into the Sea fo broad and ftrong, Ris Grande or that at the passing, the Ships are wont to be in danger, if they goe not somewhat distant, for the MagdierRiver, combat of the current, and working of the Sea. It hath an Iland in the mouth, it is nauigated more

from aboue Popayan from two Fountaines that are fortic leagues diffant, by which ioyning the River is made: it was called of Magdalene, because on that day was the mouth discovered, in 12.

degrees of height, and fix and twenty leagues from Cartagena. The Province and Government of Santia Marthain the coaft of Terra firme is feventie leagues Santia Marthain 30 in breadth and length, betweene Carthagena and the River of Hacke: it is a plentifull Countrie of Millet, and Potatoes, much Gould, and Copper, and some Emeralds, and other Stones: in it are fine Spanish Townes; and though there be many of the Countrie-men, the most are in warre. The Prefijent Bafidas peopled the Citie of Santia Martha 1529. neere to the Sea, in 10. degrees of latitude, and 74. of longitude, one thouland foure hundred and twentie leagues from Toledo, where is resident the Gouernour, and Officers Royall, and the Cathedrall fuffraganto the New Kingdome. The Port is redonable. This Gouernment hash four Prouis-ces, Pesigng, Beina, Chmica, and Toyrona, which fignifich a Forge, and with great reafon, because in that Countrie are an infinite quantitie of discritie of Mettals, and Stones of great

40 esteeme and value. Tenerife stands by the border of Ris Grande or the great River (which is that of Magdelene) Tenerife. fortie leagues from Sancta Martha to the South-well, part by the Sea, and part by Land : Franeifem Euriques did people it, by order of Gençale Perez which governed in Saulta Martha, by Tandameque, Commission of the President Luge. Tamalameque, or Village of the Palmes is fixtie five leagues from Santia Martha to the South, and twentie from Tenerife, two leagues from the Great Riner : the Captaine Baribolomew Dalma peopled it 1561. The Citie of los Reger in the Valley of Ppari, The Kings. is plentifull of Millet, Prouision, and Cattle, and of much Copper, to the South-east of Santia Marba, fiftie leagues from it, and thirtie from the River of Hache: the Captaine Santi Anne peopled it, by commandement of the Bachellor Michael Dinz., *La Ramada was built be- 25mRaRamada

to fore, called first new Salamanca, fortie leagues from Santia Martha to the East, and eight from the River of Plate, at the overflowings of the Snowie Mountaine. It flands in the Valley of Vpani, where there is as much Copper as Stone. The Merchandize of this Gouernment goeth vp to the New Kingdome by the marth of this Citie, which is eight leagues from it by the Sea, and afterward twelue vnto the Barranca of Malambo, in the great River. Ocanna is also in this Go- Ocanna. uernment, which the Captaine Franciscus Hernaudez inhabited 1972, and was first called Sanste Aune. There is in the Coast of this Gouernment the River of Bubia, necre Rama- bortoweri da, and the River of Piras, and that of b Palomine, where a Captaine of this name was drow- gen. da, and the River of Paras, and that of Palamine, where a Cape of a Agnia neere Santta COr Novemend, and the River of Don Lames, the c Ancones of Buritaca, and the Cape of a Agnia neere Santta d'Orthe Neidle.

Martha, right against the hill of Bonda, and the River of Gayra, to the West. The Province and Government of Cartagena, in the Coast of Terra firme, and the North Sea, hath in length East and West, from the River of the Magdalene, vnto the River of Darien, eightie leagues North and South, and as many vnto the confines of the New Kingdome, though men lay it is more in Voyage. The Countrie is Mountainous of Hils and Valleys, of high Trees, rainie and moift; the feedes of Caftile beare no feede, there is no Wheate, nor Gould, but in fome places.

The Citie of Carthagena trands neare the Sea, two leagues from the Point of Canon, to the West. in tenne degrees of laritude, and Teuentie fix of longitude, one thouland foure hundred and fixtie leagues from Toledo, of more then five hundred houlholds, among them about two thouland women, In it is refident the Gouernour, the Kings Officers, & treasurie Royall, and the Cathedrall fuffragan to the New Realme, with Monasteries of Dominick and Franciscan Friers. The scitturion is plain, and almost like an Iland, the Sea compasseth it on the North fide, & it is a rough coast, and very shallow; and on the land side it hath an arme of the Sea which reacheth to a Marish, which is to the Lake of Canapore, which ebbeth & floweth after the order of the Sea, & at the fame hours and they paffe from the Citie to Terra firme, by a Bridge and a manner of a Caufie, which hath about two hundred and fiftie paces. The Citie is built on Sand, & within two fathoms they finde fresh water, though sometimes it is vnwholesome, not so much as the coast of Nombre de Diesa for the avres in respect of the Marish are wone to cause diseases, but for the first partit is wholsome. The Hauen is one of the least of the Indier, though the great Ships doe ride farre from the Citie-It hath at the entrie an Iland like that of Efembrera in Cartagena of Caftile, whereby they called it Carta gena, and the Hand was called Codego, now they call it Cares, it hath two leagues in length & line tle more then halfe a league in bredth: it was wont to be anhabited with Indian Filhers, & it hath no water. The first that law Carthagena, in the year 1502. was Roderick Bastidas, & the year 1604. 20 Iuan de la Cofa or Iohn of the Thing went a shore, and found Lewes Guerra, and they were the first that began the warre with the Indians, which were proud and bould, and both men and women fought, with venomed arrows. Afterward returned Alanfoof Oieda with John of the Thing for Pilot Maior, & Americo Ve Spucio for Mariner, & some years after Gregorie of Obiedo took voon him to inhabit Cartagena, & performed it not. The year 1 32, went Dan Pedro of Eredia born in Madrid. and inhabited it, and pacified a great part of the Countrie, though with labour and cunning, becaute the people were very warlike, and there was a woman that before they could take her, being about eighteene yeeres old, flew with her Bow eight Spaniards. The Village of Saint lames of Tolu, is fix leagues from the Sea to the South-west of Cartagena

two leagues from it part by Sea (for by Land it cannot be gone) and part by the Marishes and 30

Amar misn

Saint lames of

Mountaines. It is a found Countrie, of great breedings, and tillage, and fruits of Callile: the Prefident Don Peter of Heredia peopled it. The Village of Marie thirtie two leagues from Cartagena, to the South, is also the inhabiting of Don Peter of Heregia, in the yeare 1534. The Village of * Hoy Croffe. * Sanita Cruz of Mopox is Cementic leagues from Cartagena by the Sez and River of Magdalene, being among Quagmires, A Captaine of Don Pater of Heredia peopled it 133, The yeare of 190

one in the Bachiller Englisors bath been faith intubited, a six of Manue, the auncient of the Daries, which is the Bachiller Englisors bath the faith in the fair of the six of

Alonfo of Heredia inhabited Saint Sebastian againe, for the President his Brother, in certaine little 40 bils, almost halfe a league from the Sea. And in the yeare 1527, the Bachiller lobn of Vadillo went out of Saint Sebastian, with a good number of Souldings, and passing rainy troubles, & most rough

Mountains, & thick woods, came to the Citie of Antiopasis, of the government of Papayas, & there was a Solution that from these came to the Citie of the Pass in the Charact which is 1200, less in the Taracteria of Antiopasis, which is 4 Solution that from the Charact which is 1200, less in the Earnaca of Antiopas, which is 4 Solution though of the intridiction of Cartagena, thrite leagues from it, on the border of the great River, and twenty from Santia Martha, & ix from the Sea, where the Merchandize that are carried by Land to the New Realme are vuloaden, & from the Barranca are carried up by the River in Canaces. Lower then Novex entreth the River of Canace into the River of Magdalene, which allo (pungeth about Popayan : & more toward Cartagena and to the Well, standeth the Knobbe, and the point of Zamba, and Butrie del gate or Arbitera, and the 50 feuen Cottages, and the point of the Canone, two leagues from Cartagena, and the point of Touces at the entrie of the port, right against the Hand of Carex, and the point of the Ship in Terra firme; at the other leffer entrie of the port, and almost to the North, is a little Hand which is called Sardina, and in the coast of Talu the Hands of Barn, which are fix, and at the entrie of the Gulfe of Vraba the fix, which are called of Saint Bernard, right against the River Zenn: and more within the Gulfe, the strong Hand, and the Tortonfe. The port of Zenn stands five and twenty leavues from Carragena, it is a great Bay that hath his entrance by the East, it is secure : here they make store of

Salt, and it tooke the name of the Towne Zenn, which fandeth on the River. In the Provinces of the Darade, or new Estremadura (which circuit pertaines to the bounds of the Counsell of the New Realme) many Captains have entired by Sea, and by fundry parts of the Land, and have never found the riches which the same promiseth. They fall on the other side of the River of Saint John of Amazones, by another name Orellana (which some erromoutly wil have to be the Merangon) and here is the Qrinico, and other great Rivers, and the Gulfe of Paris which maketh the firme land, with the Land of the Trimitie, & the mouthes of the Serpent, & the Dragon,

CHAP. I. Two Rowes and bigbonyes the wonders of Nature and Art in Peru. 887

which the first Admirall named, where he saw himselte in great danger, for the conflict which the fresh waters make there with the falt, whereof he had yet no notice, and here beginneth the Great Tydes. flowing of the Sea to be very great, vnto the streight of Magellan, and goeth continuing through

all the coast of Piru, and New Spaine.

The Prounces of Pira (whole name hath extended it felfe more than it was at the beginning) Pira, or Pura. include all the Empire of the Ingui, or more; for when it was won it was divided in two goperments, that of Don Franciscus Pigarro, called the New Cafile, from the Quite vnto the Cuzco. fixtic leagues below the Chincha: and that of Don lames of Almigro, called the New Toledo, two hundred leagues toward the Streight from Churche; which governments were distinct vatil to the Councell de los Reget was established, and a Vice-roy prouided for the Kingdomes of Prim, in whose government are included, the Councell of Saint Francis of the Quito, that of Lune (or de (as Reges of the Kings) that of the Charcas, the government of Chile, & countries of the Streights, the Hands of Salemen to the West, and for borders the Provinces of the River of Plate, and that

which determinately is comprehended under the government of the Vice-roy. It hath in length North and South from two thousand leagues vpward, and East and West, that which is discouered from the South Sea thehe North Sea. The two Romes that have beene spoken of, doe passe The two Romes red from the south sea to she worth sea, if he two street hades from Popayan, and yet ma- of the indies of ny will have, that from Terra firme and New Spaine, till it ends in the Strengte , and the other " Of Marellen. leffe, from the Quite vnto Chile, along the coaff, twelve leagues diftant, little more or leffe. The two wayes passed betweene these two Mountaines, the one which they called of the In- The two great

gas, by the Ander from Patto vnto (Bule ; which hath nine hundred leagues in length , and fine wayes of Pine. and twentie foote of Cawfie, and enery foure leagues very fumpenous houses, which they call Tamber, where was prouision of victuals and apparell, and every halfe league men that were in postes for to carry messages, and orders from hand to hand. The other way went through the Postes. middeft of the Playnes, along the coaft of fine and twentie foote broad, betweene two walls of a mans height, from Para vnto Chile, where both the swayes met. And it is to be noted, that all the Indies of the South are not to be winderstood by Pires, for as hath beene faid, it is not but Pire is not all that which beginneth from Saint Erancis of Quite, which is wader the EquinoCrial Line, and the Indies of runnet helong wrote Chies, going out side the Tropicke; which may be tire hundred leagues, thrifting and me mare of an and fire in breadth, shough toward the Charlespar there is more, and it is duisded in three parts : The Playnes , which have ten leagues in breadth, and in parts leffe, they are the coast Les Llane

of the Sea : The Hills, which have about twentie, and is all Hills and some Valleys: and the LarSierra. Ander other twentie, which are most thicke Groues and Woods , and in so little space as fiftie leagues equally distant from the Line and Pole: there is so great disersitie, that in the one place Disersitie of al noft it tayneth alwayes, and in the other almost neper; which is the Coast, and in the armer. third which is the Mountaines that fall in the middell of thele extreames, fometime it rayneth, and fometime not, for it hath his Summer and Winter as in Caffele: and the causes of not rayning in the Coaft, and rayne in the Ander, are spoken of in the beginning of

"He bounds of the Councell refident in Quite, and confining Northward with that of Pana- Chap. 17. I ma, in the Port of Bonamentura, and on the North-east with the New Realme, and on the Of the Coun-South wigh that, of Lame; hath in length by the South coaft, which is the place where it leng- cell of Saint thens most, about two hundred leagues from the Port of Bonanciane, which is in the Gulfe of Francisco the Panama, or of Saint Michael, the Port of Parts in the coaft of Pirs, and from thence cruffe to the vectermost of Popayan, more then other two hundred and fiftie, the limits remayning open on the East fide : in it is included three Governments, besides those of the Councell , which are Popayan, Quixes, la Canela, and that of Inande Salmas, of the Pacamoros, and Gualfango, divided in * Or Cynatwo Bilhopricks.

The Protince and Government of Quita, which the Councell governoth hach in length eightic al Quita. The Prounce and Courtment of Land and in it their Townes of Spaniarde folloagues, from neere the Equinoctiall to the other fide, and in it their Townes of Spaniarde follows. lowing. The heaven and earth thereof, although it flands under the Equinoctiall, is like to that of Castele, cleere and faire, rather cole then hot, and in parts wherethe how continuerh all the yeere, it rayneth from October to March, which they call the winter; and in the other mo- Aire and fesneths they cut their Graffe, which though it be not long into fit for the Cattell of Caftile, where fone. of there is great store; and of Wheat and Barley, and gold in some places : and in this Region they live pleasantly, for there is nothing more pleasant for immane life, then to enioy a wholetome and cleere skie, for they have no Winter to trouble them with cold, nor Summer to molest with heat. The Townes are, the Citie of Saint Franciscus of Ques , where Athanalya Emperous of Pinn As

was borne, it stands in halfe a degree of height from the Equinoctiall, and eightic two from the Meridian of Toledo, by a greater circle one thouland fixe hundred eightic fixe leagues from it, and fixtle from the South See ; it is of fine hundred houlholds : In it is resident the Countell for matters of Lattice, for those of the Government are at the Vice-roy his charge. There are also in this Citie the Officers of the Kings Renes and treasurie Royall, and the Cathedrall of this Bi-Dddd 1

shopricke, Suffragane to the Archbishop of The Kings (los Reyes) there are three Monasteries of Friars dela Dommiche, Franciscan, and Mercenarie Friars : and in her mridiction eightie seuen Townes, or parcial parcialities of Indians. In the fituation where this Citie was built, were certaine great lodgings which the King Topaynga built, and his sonne Guaynacapa beautified, and were called Into from whence the Citie tooke the rame; the President Sebastian of Belalcapar, a souldier of Don Francifem Picarro built it, a loyall man to the King, by order of the Prefident Don Iames of Almagro, which left him for Governour of the Province when hee went voto it, having ended the agreement with the Prefident Don Peter of Almarado.

Riner Bamba. Raine a wonder. Payta. Admirable bigh-way. LIB. V.

The River Bamba in the Province of the Parmaes, is a Countrie to Caffile in the temperature. of herbes, flowres, and other things: it is a towne of (hepheards, it flands fine and twentieleagues Io to the South-west of Saint Francisco of Quito, the way to the Kings, wherein are fortiethon. fand head of cattell, the greatest part sheepe. Here the Tages had certaine Royall houses, and here the President Belaleazar had a tedious battaile with the Indians, and overcame them, and in this place was the agreement rehearfed of Don lames of Almagro and Don Peter of Almarado and in it was the Citie of Quite firlt built. The citie of (wester (which the Marques of Canyete commanded to be built, being Vice-roy of

Zamera.

Pira, which by another name is called Bambs, one and nitie leagues from Quito to the South) is a Corregidership provided of the Vice-roy, with one Monasterie of Dominicke, another of Francifean Friars. In her inritiation are rich mynes of gold, tome of filter, and rich mynes of quickfilter, copper, Iron, and Brimitone. The citie of Loxa, otherwise called la Zarça, eightie leagues 20 from the citie of Quito toward the South, and thirtie from Cuenca, is a Gouernourfhip promided by the Vice-roy; it hath Monasteries of Saint Dominiche and of Saint Francis, it stands in the way from Cuzco to Quito, from whence it is eightie leagues, in the faire Valley of Cuxibamba. betweene two Rivers. Captaine Antonie of Mercadillo built it in the yeere 1 446. for to bacifie the countrimen which were somewhat disordered. The citie of Zamara, which is called of the Alcaydes, is ninetic leagues from Quite South-eastward, having passed the Rome of the Andez : it is a Gouernment prouided by the Vice-roy: it hath a Monasteric of Franciscans; they reape no Wheat because the countrie is very raymet it hath nich Mynes of gold, wherin they find graines of foure pound waight and more : the Captaine Mercabile peopledit the yeere 1 (49. by a couenant with Captaine Benauente : It stands ewentie lengues from Laza, hauing past the Rome 30 which divideth the banker of the South Sea from the North, the Indian did call it Zamara : that part of the countrie is called Poroance , which fightfieth Indians of warre : much gold is gotten there, and there hath beene graines brought to his Maiettie of twelue potind waight, and there

are Salt-pits of falt-water.

The Rivers

to the South H w the riners are palled in

The citie of Inen is fine and fiftie leagues from Loxa, and thirtie from the Chachapayas; Captaine Lames Palomine built it 1549. in the Prouinces of Chaquimaye, in that of Chacaynea. The citie of Saint Michael of Pinca is in the Prouince of Chila, one hundred and twentre leagues from Quine South-eastward, and fine and twentie from the Port of Payen, where the bounds of this Councell doth end. It is a Government at the providing of the Vice-roy : it hath one Monasterie of Mercenaries. Though in this countrie rayne is holden for a wonder, there are good wa- 40 tered grounds, that beare good Wheat and Miller, and the feedes and fruits of Castile. The port of Payte stands in the inrisdiction of this Citie, in fine Southerne degrees, which is good, great, and fecure, where the ships that goeffrom Guatemala to Pine doe touch. The Marques Doe Franciscus Picarro built it in the yeere 1531, the first of these Kingdomes, and where the first Temple was erected in the honour of God, and the holy Mother Church of Rome. All the Prouince and borders of the Valleys of Tumbez are drie, and the high-way of the Ingas paffeth through these Valleys of Piera, betweene trees and pleasant shadowes, and betweene the principall Valley are joyned two or three Rivers : the Citieswas built at the first in Tangarala, from whence it was remound because it was a fickly situation, and now it stands betweene two Valleys, and yet is immewhat fickly, especially tor the eyes, for the great windes and dusts of the co Summer, and great moiftures of the Winter.

The Citie of Saint Lames of Guayaquik by another name Las Culata, fixtie leagues from Quine, and fifteene from the Sea to the South-well; it is a Gouernment prouded by the Vice-roy: the Prefident Belalcazar peopled it, and many of the Indians having rebelled, and flaine many Spamierds, the Captaine Franciscus of Orellana peopled it againe 1537. it is a most plentifull and pleafant Countrie, and hath great flore of hony in the hollow places of trees : The waters of this River which runne almost under the Equinochiall, are thought healthfull for the French difeate, North Sea are rootes of Zargaparilla that are in the River: it is not very great, nor those that run to the South Seware fo bigge as those that runne into the North Sea, because they runne but a little way ; but notwithstanding they are strong and with sudden flouds, because they fall from the Mountaine. 60 The Indians doe vie many thirts for to paffe them; they have in some places a rope over it, and abasket on it, and the pallenger being put into it, they pull him from the other fide. In other Rivers the Indian goeth riding on a truffe of firaw, and carneth the paffenger behinde him tin other places they have a great Net of gourds; ypon the which they lay the cloathes and the perfons, and the Indians fattened with certaine coarder goe fwimming and pulling as coach-horres; and a thouland other arces they vie for to paffe the Rivers. The Port of this Citie flands neere and a circumstance are very broad, whereby they bring up the merchandile from the Sea, and they goe by land to Quite. The yeere 1 168, Captaine Contero planted the citie of Caffre, in the Caffre, Valley of Vols, the Licentiate Lope Garcia of Castro being Gouernour. Vift in in the Prouinces of Ville Burnig ando, Imdisono, and Gualapa, which they call the Prosence of the Emeralds, and he went ahout it from Ganganil, and discourred all these Prounces from Passao vnto the River of Saint

Iohn, which entreth into the South Sea. 10 . The Citie of Puerte Vieje is about eightie leaguer from Saint Francis of Quiteto the Welt, Ocali Port. though nor of open way, and other fiftie from Saint lames of Guayaquil, whereby yet goe from Quite: in her borders flands the Poffee, which is the first Port of the countrie of Pan, and from it, and from the River of Saint James, began the government of the Marques Don Franciscal Popular per and because this countrie is fo neighbour to the Equinoctiall line, that it flands in one degree; some beleeue it is vnwholfome but in other parts as neere the Line men line with much health, plentie and abundance of all things for the full enance of man, against the opinion of the ancients and so it is that the Indians of this countrie doe hor live long, and in many of them there breede certaine red warts in the foreheads and nofes, and other parts, which beside the dilease being gricuous, it disfiguresh them very much, and it is beleeved that it proceedeth of eating some fish. 30 In their bounds stands the towne of Manta, whither great riches have beene brought from with- Mania,

in the Land; and it is held for certaine, that here is a Myne of Emetalds, which are the best of How the Emein the Lana; and it is measter section, a manufacture anymous finestime, which are determined the selection and their grown in a floor like Cipfall, and they making like a veine; and by little and raids do gow, little congesting and refining themselves, and of halfe white and halfe greene, they goe repening and recouring their perfection. The Captaine Franciscus Pacheco peopled this citie 1535. by and recouring once pasternon and pasternon and pasternon amount of the pasternon order of Don James et Allmagre it hathmany ladany in ware: there is in it a Monatteric of Monatteric of Ton James to gather in Wheat for it rayper the eight moneths in the yeere from O-Moreone frame, they gather in Wheat for it rayper the eight moneths in the yeere from O-Moreone frame. Stober forward, and there are many good flower of gold.

Rober forward, and there are many good flower of gold.

In the coast of this Government are the Ports, Hands and Points following. The a faces of Port & Point In the coast of this Government are the Ports of Hands and Points of Mangles.

So for this shorter the Bay of Saint Mankey, which is fifteen leagues from the Point of Mangles at the South, and then the Bay of Saint Mankey, and after the Cape of Saint Francis; and past to Occidents, bour Ruser's before Princip, which the black Mangues that laude themfolders of co-Points of Port of Indians, where they lay the Equinochtall that differt, have the Manutain of Occasion. A consect a not the Bay of Carts which is before old Port, old Porged from the Equinochtall to the South, and the Bay of Carts which is before old Port, old Porged from the Equinochtall to the South, and the Bay of Carts which is before old Port, old Porged from the Equinochtall to the South, and the Day of Carts which is before old Port.

And Calment Sector the Point of Saint Edinochts, and the Point of Saint Edinochts. The Indian of Saint Patients in two de-Place, and forward the Ports of Calle, and Calange, before the Point of Saint Holes, in two degrees hight; the River of Tumbes in foure degrees, and the Hand of the Tume neer's vato it, and the Hand of Suntia Clara somewhat more to the Sea, and Cabbblance fifteent leagues from Tumbes to the South , and then the Point of Parisa, and to the South the Hand of e Labas , foure e Or white 40 leagues from the Port of Paper about aid, and is side, before the Point del Aguia, and the Port of f Or wookets

The men of this countrie fay, that in old time there tame by Sea in Balfas (which are many. The Girnt of the prices of timber faithened one vpon monther) men so bigg, that this a much from the kinese down the promise of timber faithened one vpon monther) men so bigg, that this a much from the kinese down the promise of timber faithened one vpon monther) men so the season that the promise of timber faithers are the season to the season that the promise of timber faithers are the season to the season that t ward, as an ordinarie man in all his body, and that they made certaine Well's most deepe in a quicke Rocke, which at this day are feene very treft and cold in the Point of Saint Helen, and that because that they wied most abominable sinnes, fire fell from heaven and consumed them all, and now are found in that fituation exceeding great bones of men, and pieces of teeth of fourteene ounces weight, and in New Spaine in the bounds of Tlafcala, are bones found of the like bignelle. There are in this Point of Saint Helen, eyes and veine of Tarre, to perfect that they might calke

50 with it, and it commeth out very hot.

He government of Poppy as one hundred and twentile leagues North and South, from the Confines of the Province of Ontic, under the Equinochialty no the confines of Caragema by, of Popular the North, and another one hundred from the confines of new Realme by the East vnto the South Quint South the North, and another one numerous from the commerce of the North, and part of the new Gualding.

Sea, wherein are some Spanife townes, part of the Councell of Quito, and part of the new Gualding. Realme. The countrie is commonly rough and very raynic, and therefore they have little Millet, which are the and lefte Wheat, and no store of Cattell, but it is rich of Mynes of gold, and the Townes are their reft of the

The citie of Popagan stands in two degrees and a halfe to the Septentrionall part of the Equinochall, and 78. and a halfe of longitude, one thousand five hundred and eightie leagues from To-60 Inde in it is refident a Lieftenant Gournour, the Cathedrall, and one Monasteric of Mercentric Popper. Friars. The Prefident Sebaftian of Belalcaziar peopled this citie 1537, the people of thele Pro. uinces are farre different from that of Pris, for thefe are of greater vader standing, and lived in more policie: the men of this government lived as in liberties. It was called Popeyan, of the name of

* Or great

The Citie of Cale stands in four degrees, and two and twentie leagues from Ropeyer, and eight and twentie from the South Sea, it was inhabited 1537, by the Captaine Michael Munic. and Sebastian of Belalcarar made it first in the townes which are called the "Gorrouer 3 it bath the seate in a plaine Valley, leaning to the foot of a Hill, the temper is hot, the Governour, the Officers, and the Kings treasure are resident in it; a melting houle, a Monasterie of Meremains, another of Anguffine Friars. The Port of Bonauenture falleth in his jurishiction in three degrees 10 and a halfe of altitude: in it are fome housholds retident for to receive the merchandize. The Inand a native of activation, and good Christians, their old Lord, was called Lipsoff. The village of Saint Fe of Antiochia, is more then an hundred leagues from Poppyarto the ports. eaft, in the borders of the River Canca, of the bounds of the Councell of the New Realme, and Bishopricke of Popagar, rich in Mynes of gold, neere to the Hill of Basitaca famous for the much gold that was in it; it is feated in certaine Plaines. The countrie people are good folkes, well gold that was in 1; it a reason in criains raine. An economic prope are good tokes, well made and white, and the temperature is fuch that they goe to fleepe on the boules, without any offence of the deaw, they breede much Cattell, many fruits, and this in the Rusers and Plathes: the Captaine Gaspar of Rhodes inhabited it by commission of the President Belalcarar, the

The Village of Caramanta is fixthe or seventie leagues from Papayan to the North-east, necre to the great River Canca, of the bounds of the New Kealme, government and B. shopricke of Page naran, plentifull of Miller and other feedes, without Wheat, and with little Cattell, though they haue many Swine, they goe by the River in five for fixe houres to Antischia, though it bee fiftie have many swine, they got by the function mean man notice to summan, though it been title leagues for it runneth very funft; it is the plantation of the Predictor Belalcoco. The village of Sunt James of Arms, which hash many Mynesof gald, is fittigle legues from Pepper to the Production of the Produ North-east, declining to the East, it is of the Council of the new Realme, the government and Diocesse of Popayan; without Wheat or feedes of Gustile, but plentifull of the countrie seedes. The President Belaleacer inhabited this village, and here hee beheaded the Marshall George Re-The remains personal instruction and wings, and the loc officered the magnitude were not before it financials fixene legisles from Jacoppa: the people of the countrie are so butcherly that 30 the quicke are the sipulcitie of the dead, for it hath been seene the shupped of case the weight brother the brother or lifer, the some the father, and having fatned any captine, the day that bround the drawn interaction plans for the part of the day that they are to eate him, they bring him forth which many, fongs, and the Lord commandeth that an Indian doe goe cutting off every member, aggle alive they goe eating him, and after the inhabiting of Arma they have eaten more then eight thousand Indians, and some Spaniards have allo fuffered this martyrdome.

of the Indian e the borders

Carrara

" Or Buffes.

The village of Saint Anne of Ancerma is fiftie leagues from Popayan to the North-east, in the border of Canea, of the Connell of tho, new Kingdome, government and Bilhopricke of Popagan; without Cattell or Wheat, very much annoyed with thunder bolts : the Captaine George Ros bled buile it by order of Laurence of Aldena. Likewise the men of this comitrie are eaters of 40 humane field; they goe naked, they have no Idols, nor any thing to worship : there are in this iurissiction good Mynes of gold; the climate is hot, and many thunder-bolts doe fall. The cithe New Realme, Government and Bishoprick of Popsym, without Whest or any feder of the New Realme, Government and Bishoprick of Popsym, without Whest or any feders of the New Realme, Government and Bishoprick of Popsym, without Whest or any feders of the lite is a temperate and whole fome countrie, of little gold, it rayneth much, they breede no other cattell but Kine, and Mares: they have many Mountaines, in the which breede many Lions, Tigres, Beares, and Dantas, and wilde Boares : they have a Monasterie of Franciscan Friers: the Captaine George Robledo inhabited it, and it was called Cartaga, because all the inhabiters were of Cartagena. The village of Timona is fortie leagues from Popayan to the South-east, and fixtie from Santa Fe of Bogota; and thirtie from the Provinces of Dorado ; here is a Lieftenant of 50 the Gouernour, which also hath at his charge Saint Sebaffian de la Plata: the Indians of their borders doe decay, for they are fo inhumane that in many places they have publike shambles of men which they take captine. They have their feare in the beginning of the Valley of Negua, the temper is most hot : in their bounds is a Mountaine where they digge the Load-stone, and the Indian Paezes are neere, and the Pixaos, which also are " Caribes.

Where the Load flone is

The Citie of Guadalmara of Buga, is lifteene leagues from Poparan to the North-east, is of the bounds of the Councell of Onico, and Diocesse of Popayan. The Citie of Saint Sebastian of the Plate, in the confines of this Government is thirtie five leagues from Popayan, and thirtie to the South, welf from Santa Fe, Diocelle of Popayan, where are many Mynes of filuer, and in her borders'twentie foure repartitions : it is three leagues from the Port of Onda , in the great River of 60 Magdalen, where those that come vp from Carragena doe land: it is built in a Plaine, neere to the River Guala: there are many Eirthquikes, and in Winter it is more but then gold. The Countryc Or cambals. Men goe to decay; because the . Caribes which they call del Rincon do eate them and have pub-

like hambles of them, without any remedie for it : and the Prelident Belalenzar built this Citie.

CHAP.I. Vulcans described. Government of Pacamoros and Gualfango.

The Citie of Almaguer is twentie leagues from Popajan to the South-east; it is intentiful of Almaguer. Wheate and Millet, and other feeds, and cattle, and it hath Gold : the Captaine Alonso of Fuemajo, by order of the Licentiate Brizenjo Guuernour, and d Indge of Accounts, of Poparan d Hip ludge of peopled it, heing feated in a Hill of Zahana, and the climate is fresh, and the people dbe weare Residentia.

S. lobn of Truxillo, and by another name Ticauce is thirtie leagues from Popayan to the South. Truxillo. eath. The Citie of Madrigall, or Chapanchica, thirtie five from Popayan about the South, a rough Countrey, where they neither reape Wheate, nor breed cattell, though they gather Millet twices yesteintheir jurisdiction: and for the roughnesse of the Country, the men are suilt to to pacifie, and in this Citie, and in the Citie of Agreda, and Almagner, are Mynes of Gold. Agreda, Agreda

and by another name Malga, flands forcie flue leagues from Popayan to the South-west. The Citie of Saint lobn of the Passare, focalled because it is a Countrey of many Pattires, it flands Saint lobn de fiftie leagues from Popayan, about the South-well, and as many from Quito about the North-call, Poffer. and in the degree from the Equinocial Dioceffe of Quite, in a good toyle, of a good timite, and plantiful of Millet, and other prouisions, with Mynes of Gold; In her borders are 24000, change and present fee, which are not Cariball, but of euill vilages, filthy, and fimple : they had no Idols mention in the time of their Paganisme, they beletued that after death they should goe to Rue in more joyfull places. The Riner which they call Whoate, is betweene Pasta, and Popayan, it is of a very delicate water, and passed this River is the Mountayne whither Gongalo Picarro did follow 20 the Vice-roy Blasco Nunsez Vela, and vnto the River Angasmayo, which is in this Province came

the King Guaynacapa. Beyond the River Caliente or hor River in a Mountayne, is a firie month, that casteth store of (moake, and it brake forth in ancient times, as the Countreymen doe fay. The Philosophers being willing to declare what their firie mouthes or Etnaer are, doe fay, that as in the Earth are What the Etplaces that have vertue to attract a vaporie fubftance, and to convert it into water, whereof the mass are, and places that have save made: there are also places that doeattract to themselves dry and hote exhalations, which are connerted into fire and smoake, and with the force of them they cast also another groffe substance which is diffolued into ashes, or into stones, and these are the fierie another groun concease without to months a months, without topics, and there are the steries and months. Saint John de Pagho hath Monafteries of Diaminete, Prantifica, and Martenarit Friess sain as it is a cold Country, with abundance of victuals, it hath Sugar Mills, and many Fruits of the 121.58

Country and of Caftile : when the Capteine Laurence of Aldona built it, het called it . Villa e Griberanie viciofs de Pafto, i: ftands fortie leagues from the South Sea, towards the Iland Gorgona. There hath beene difinhabited, or daninished in this Protince, the Citie of Antischia, the

Village of Negua in the Valley of Negua, twentie leagues from Tamana, and it was through the Negua. rigour of the Indian Paczes, and Pixass, and for the Manipes, in the Villey of Saldanda, and the Citie of Saint Vincent of the Parzes, fixtie leagues from Saint lobe of the Plaints, in the confines Saint Discont of Popular, which Dominger Lozane built, and the Citie of los Angeles, twentiet we leagues The Angels, or rougher, which the government of the coaff which this government extendeth Rivers Gaves on the South Sea, from the Capref Corriences, that stands in fine degrees Septentrional from the and Robbusof 40 Line, the River of Solman, betweene the Caps of Cerrièmes and the Iland of the Palmel' in fourt she Gasti of the green one third pure, and in the Coaft that lyeth vino Corgona, the River of Saint This arising this agencies.

many other which make the Country boggie, and right against the mouth, the lland of Gorge ment. ma, two leagues compafie, where Dou Frantifens Picarro was forfaken of all his men, with his threeene companions. The River of Saint Linear, and the River of Nicardo, before the River of f Zedros, in two degrees from the Line, in which flands the He del Gallo, and after the Pott of the f Or Cedars. Croffe, and the point of Manglares, where beginneth the Coaft of Quite.

Of the government of the Quizor, and Camela, there is no more notice, but that it falls to the East of the Province of Quito, and parcof the South, toward the government of John of Saloras; there are in it three Spanish Townes, with a Gouerdour which the Vice-roy of Pira prouideth, and in spirituall respect it is of the Behopricke of Quite : the Countrey is rough and 10 Mountaymous, without Wheate, and little Miller, with certayne Trees which feeme of Cina-

mon. The full Towne is Barra, eighteerie leagues from Banit Francis of Thiro, toward the South eaft, where the Gonemon HReident : the Citie of Archidona'is twentie leagues beyond Barga. the Citie of Anila Stands to the North of Archidona.

The government and Province of Pacameres and Gualfaires or of Jahr of Salites which bounds garagestant.

The government and Province of Pacameres and Gualfaires or of Jahr of Salites which we are affined thin to the East, from twiching Tagings Salites and an interest one hundred leagues, which were affigued thin to the East, from twiching Tagings Salites are before the Circi of Zamora, in the Rome of the Ander, and as many invite North and Solith, it Gold where they have pieces of great bigneffe : there are in refoure Townes of clie Billiopricke and entire

60 of Quito, for the Captaine John of Salinas did build theirs. The Civie of Valladolld is in telen degrees height, twent: e leagues from Long to the South east, having fall the Rong of Find, the Citie of Londa, or Cumbruania is fixteene Pearies with Eaft fith Valladid the Otie of Saint Lames of the Mountaynes, fittie leagues from Logola, roward the East, and in her botders much gold, and very high in touch, and as touching the gold we need not intreat of his excellencies,

In how many being holden for the Supreame power in the World. It is gotten in these Mynes in three manners: The first is in Poppers, which are whole pieces without mixture of any other Metall, the need not to be purified by fire, and these graines commonly are like a Pompeon Seed, and some times bigger : of this gold is found but litle, in respect of the rest. The second fort is in flowe, which is avaine that groweth in the stone it selfe, and these stones are found in the government of selfe. of Salinas very great, all passed through with gold, and some which are halfe Gold, the which is found in Pits and Mynes, and it is hard to worke. The third, is gotten in powder, and is the greatest quantitie, and this is found in Rivers, or in places where some streame of water hath passed test quantitie, and this is to the control of the control of the Rivers of the Courte, New Realine 10 and the Rivers of the Courte, New Realine 10 f Granada, and in the beginning of the Discourries, there were many in the 8 Weather L. Jands. The highest in touch is that of Carabaya in the Pirm, and that of Valdinia in Chile, for it reacheth to twentie three Charracts and an halfe, and vet it paffeth.

Mountaines

Hat which is called Prus, is proper and particularly the bounds of the Councell of Us Reys, and is comprehended North and South, from fixe voto feuen Southerne degrees of altitude. Of the Councel Which are two hundred and twentie leagues, though in Voyage they put three hundred from the of medicance of point del Aguia, beyond Parta, whereby it is not with the Councell of Quito, till passing the The Kings, or Citie and Port of Areguipa, where beginneth the Councell of the Chareas, Eaft and West. The inhabited part of this Councell hath about one hundred leagues from the Coaft of the South Sea toward the East, whereby her bounds remayne open vnto the Prouinces of the River of Plate, and 20 of Brafil, that which is from the Rome, where, as hath beene faid, it rayneth continually, vnto the Sea, they call the Plaines of Pirm, in the which it neither rayneth nor thundreth, became raymeth not in the great height of the Mountain doth shelter the Plaines in such fort, that it permitteth nowind from the Earth to blow, whereby the Sea wind reigneth, which having no contrary doth not represse the vapours that doe atise to make raine, in fort that the shelter of the Hill hindereth the thickning of the vapours : and this want of matter caufeth that in that Coast the vapours are fo thinne, that they make no more then a moy ft or dankish mist, which is profitable for their lowh Some are of ings, which have not without the h mift fo much vertue, be they never fo much watered. The apinion that Countrey is all fandie grounds, except the Valleyes which are made by courses of the Rivers. opinion that all plants and that defeend from the Mountayne, where much Corne is gathered by the waterings, Wine, 30 trees are nou- Oyle, Sugar, and the other Seeds, and Fruits, of Calide, and of the Countrey. In the skirts and either day yes. Dyte, Jougan, and the other Secon, and returned to Country and on the Country. In the skirts and pourty-either his fides of the Mountayne, are great Pathures and breedings of cattell, and the temper variable, the vapours of and as would be defired; for the height is cold, and the low hot, and the middlemoff partakers of the blood now the extreames, as they are more or left neere them. The government of this Councell, and of rithlining Quite, and of the Charcas, is in the charge of the Vice-roy, and there are the Townes following.

Creatures. So in the circuit of this Council. Ges. 2 miff in in the circuit of this Councell. The Citie of the Kings (or of Lima, because the Valley is so called, which was the name of

the Cazique, and it is the greatest and broadest Valley, of all those that are from Tambez vnto

it) flands neere the South Sea, in twelue degrees of Southerne altitude, and eightie two from the

greater circle : it hath aboue three thousand housholds : the Marques Don Franciscus Picarro

buile it, in the beginning of the yeere 1533. because suspecting that the President Den Peter of

Aluarado would come downe to the Sea coast, when her went with an Host from Gnatemale

meanewhile that Don lames of Aluarado went to reful him to the Proninces of Quito, hee went

to intercept him the paffages of the Sea. Neere this citie, on the Eaft fide, paffeth a River from

whence all the houses doetake water, and their gardens, wherein are excellent fruits of Castile

Meridian of Toledo, distant from it about one thousand, eight hundred and twentie leagues by a 40

Paradife,&c. The Sunne as Head of the Harr as Sunne in the Body, rithment by

The Citie of

and of the Countrie, and it is one of the best Climates, of the World, seeing there is neither famine nor peftilence; nor doth it rayne or thunder, nor fall there any thunder-bolts or lightnings, but the Heaven is alwayes cleere and very faire. In this Citie is refident the Vice-roy, the Royall Councell, an affembly of chiefe Iuftices, the 50 Officers of the Kings Rents, and treaturie Royall, the Tribunall of the holy and generall Inqui-Fittion, which was founded when the Inquilition of New Spaine was. The Inquilitor general in these Kingdomes was then the Cardinall Don Iames of Estimosa Bushop of Signers, it having proceeded with mature deliberation, for the augmenting of our holy Catholike Faith, and Chriilian Religion, There is also in this Citie an Universitie, where very learnedly the Sciences are Such hadinette read. and Schooles of divers languages of the Indians, in the which the Fathers of the Companie of Ielus are very diligent, to reape fruit in the preaching of the Gospell. In this Citie is the Archmeanesto e. fablish is force episcopall refident, whose Suffraganes are the Bishops of Chile, Charcas, Carco, Quito, Panama, gluing lips and Nicaragua, and the Riner of Plate. There are three Parilhes, and fine Monasteries of the foure gluing lus and Arearagems, and the Companie of Iclus, and two of Nunnes. Casso which is not run, and of the Companie of Iclus, and two of Nunnes. Casso which is not run, and the companie of Iclus, and two of Nunnes. Casso which is great, capable, and very good, where are flore of houses, one of Indice, a cultome leagues from it, great, capable, and very good, where are flore of houses, one of Indice, a cultome Orders, and of the Companie of Iefus, and two of Nunnes. Callee which is her Port, is two 60 and the Water fet to coole in the Sea in flaggons, whence it is inferred that the Ocean hath the vertue to temper and refresh the ouer-much heate. Many doe affirme that in this Citie are

twelve thousand Women of all Nations, and twentie thousand blacke-Moores. The Village of Arnedo in the Valley of Chancas, is ten leagues from The Kings, and halfe a Negros. I-ague from the Sea, with a Monafterie of Dominiche Friars, rich of Vines : the Earle of Numa hult it. The Village of the * Parrilla, or Santa, is by the Valley where it flands, fiftie five leagues * Or Gridinate from The Kings, and fifteene from Truxillo neere the Sea, neere to a great and faire River, with a good Hauen, in nine degrees, where the ships that faile by the coast of Pris doe touch. The Cia good many, in the Valley of Chime, which Don lames of Almagre plotted fult, and after Trustile, ward the Marques Don Franciscus Picarro built it in the yeere 1533. It hath many Vines and fruits of Castile, and Wheat : it is all watered ground, and a wholesome Countrie, and there bea To great Orchards of Oranges, and breeding of Poultrie, It stands in seven degrees and a halfe, eigh-

tie leagues from Lime neere the Sea, with Monasteries of Saint Dominiche, Saint Francis, and Saint Angustine, and another of the Mercenaries, and Officers Royall, prouided by the Vice-roy: and in her bounds about fiftie thouland tributarie Indiane, in two and fortie repartitions. The Port is two leagues off in an open Bay, eaill, and of little fecuritie. The Village of Mirafores is Mirafores in the Valley of Zana, ninetic five leagues from the Citie of The Kings to the North fide. and neere to the Sea. The Citie of Chachaperas, or Saint lebe of the Frontier, is about one hundred charbaneau and twentie leagues from the Citie of The Kings to the North-eaft, it hath one Monafterie of the Mercenaries, and another of the Franciscans: in her bounds are Wheat, Millet, and Flaxe, many Mynes of gold, and more then twentie thousand tributarie Indians, which held out valorously 20 a long time against the Ingu, but in the end they were ouer-come, and for greater quietnesse of

the Countrie they carried many of them vnto (nzco, and they inhabited in a Hill which is calthe Countries and These are the whitest and best favoured Indians of all the Indies, and the Women Faire Indians. very faire. The Marthall Alfonfos of Alumado, entred in this Prouince the yeere 1526, by order of the Marques Don Francisco Picarro, and pacified it, and built the faid Citie in a throng fituation called Lenanto, and afterward he passed to the Prouince of the Guancas.

The Citie of Saint Lames of the Valleys, or Meyohamba, more then one hundred leagues from Saint Lames of The Kings North-eastward, and fine and twentie from Saint lebs of the Frontier, stands in a ve- the Valleys. ry rayme foile, and plentifull of Cattell. The Citie of Lion of the Guernece, fiftie leagues from Lion of Guethe Citie of The Kings to the North, neere the high-way of the Ingas, formwhat diffant towards were 30 the East, hath Monatteries of Dominicans, Franciscans, and Mercenaries, and in her bounds thirtie

thousand tributarie Indians, Anno 1539. for the warre that the Tyrant Thotops made to this Prouince, the Marques Don Franciscus Picarro sent Captaine Gomes of Alaarado which built it, and afterward it was difinhabited, and Peter Borrofo reedified it, and after the battell of Chapes the Licentiate Vaca de Cafro, fent Captaine Pedro de Puelles to make an end of the plantation. It flands in a good and wholesome situation, abundant of victuals and Cattell: it hath Mynes of filter, and the people is of good capacitie. They reape much Wheat, for the Indians have learned to be good husbandmen: for as before in their Indias there was no Wheat, nor Barley, nor Millet, nor Panick, nor any feede of the bread of Caffile of Europe, and they knew other kindes of the Labora has Countries have feed on the breath of Large and they knew other kindes of the Labora has considered and Rootes, only of the which May 2 or Millet was the principall, being found in all the Labora has considered have been considered as the Countries have Countries have feed to the Labora has considered as the Countries have feed to the Labora have the Indies; the Countrimen have fince delighted much in it, and have received it well in those Qualities of places where it is gathered, because the Mayz is not so strong nor of so much substance as the the Miller, Wheat: it is fatter, and hot, and engendreth bloud, it groweth in Canes, and beareth one or two

bunches, and some Spaniards doe eate it where they have no other shift, The Citie of Guamanga, or Saint Iman of the Victorie, fixtie leagues from Lima to the South- Guamanga. eaft, in the way of the Ingas, Bishoprick of Cuzco, hath Monasteries of Dominicans , Franciscans, and Mercenaries, and one of Nunnes, and in her bounds more then thirtie thousand tributarie Indians : it is plentifull of Wheate and Wine , and rich of filter Mynes, The Marques Don Francifem Picarro built this Citie 1539, and placed it the first time in a towne of Indians called Guamanga, necre to the great Row of the Andes, and left for his Lieftenant the Captaine Francisco de 50 Cardengas. Afterward it was removed to the Playne where now it is, neere to certaine small

Hills on the South fide, and nigh to a Brooke of good water. In this Citie are the best boules in Pirm, of stone and bricke; the seate is healthfull, without offence of the Sunne, the Aire, the Deaw, or the Moisture, or the Heare. There are found in her borders certaine great buildings Great boil-(which the Indians fay certaine white men with beards, which came thither before the Ingas, dings, did build) much differing from the building of the Ingas ; the most of the Countrimen of this Countrie are Mitmaes, which is to fay, Transplanted, for the Ingas did vie for the greater fecu-Transplanting rite of the Empire, to take from one Prounce the people they did not truft, and lend them to as of Egyptians

Guamanga is fixtie leagues from Cuzco, and in the way are the Hills and Playne of Chupas, Ificulter, 2 Reg. where Vaca de Cafro, and Don lames de Almagro the yonger did fight; and forward are the buil-60 dings of Vilcaf, in the high way in Andabaylas, eleven leagues from Gnamanga, which was the centre of the Ingut; and here was the great Temple of the Sunne. The Promince of the Anda- Temple of the baylar is long and hath much time Cattell, and victualls; from thence they come to the River of Sunsc. Abancay, nine leagues neerer Cazco, where the President Don lames of Almagro the elder over-

Women and

threw and apprehended Alfonfo of Aluarado, Generall of the Marques Don Francisco Pigarro. There followeth the River of Apurima, eight leagues from Paffado, or the Paffage, which is very great; and then the Hill of Vilcaconga, where the faid Prefident Almagro ouer-came a great batrell of the Indians, before he won Cuzzo, and the Valley of Xaanixaana is neere betweene two rowes of Hills, not broad nor long, where the Prefident Pedro la Gafca, by the vertue of those yaliant and faithfull Captaines Trojofa , Peter of Valdibia, Gabriel of Rojas , Alfonfus of Aluarado. and others (of the which in their place shall be made mention parcicularly) did ouer-throw Gome galo Pigarro, and tooke him : and from this Valley to the Citie of Cazco are fine leagues : and in this Valley they gather great store of Wheat, and have great store of Cattell,

remayneth of the Councell of the Kings.

TIght or ten leagues from the Citie of Guamanga, fome what North-westward, are the Mynes of Guancabelica, which they call El Affiento de Oropefa, where ordinarily are refident more then three hundred Spaniards. The Indians did worke in them to take out the red Oaker, to paint themselves when in the time of their Paganisme they went to warre, which is the Vermillion : and the Licenciate Lope Garcia of Caffro, governing in Pirs in the yeere 1566. a Ports. gall called Henrie Garces, considering that of the Vermillion the quick-filter is gotten, went to make a triall, and found it to be fo. This metall the Romanes carried from Castile in stone, and out of it they got quick-filter, and held it for great riches. The Indians knew it not, nor minded any more then the vermilion. The greatest profit it yeeldeth, is to purifie the filter from the earth. Profit of quick Lead, and Copper, wherewith it groweth : it eateth all the other metals, and pierceth them as 20 the Tin, Iron, and Lead, and therefore they carry it in leather, or veffels of earth. Quck-filuer

feruethalfo for other effects, and medicinall matters.

Spring turning k lling. Hot and cold Barbes.

In this feat of Guania Velica is a fpring , that as it fpringeth it congealeth in a foft ftone: of the which they make their houses, and the Men or Beafts that doe drinke it, die: for within the body it converteth into a stone. In the Bathes that are called of Inga neere the Cuzco, are two fromts of water the one neere the other, the first is hot, and the second cold, that it feemeth God did place them there for to temper themselves. In the same bounds is a Spring, that as it fpringeth it becomes good and white falt : in this place the two great Rowes doe begin to fenarate themselves, and make in the middest a great Champaine ground, which is called the rowes divided. Province of Collao, where are very many Rivers, and there is the great Lake of Titicaca, and 30 great pafture grounds. Though it be a plaine Countrie, it hath the same height and distemperature of the Hills; it hath no Trees, nor Wood; the bread that is eaten are rootes that are called Papas, which grow also in all Pirm; it is a healthfull Countrie, and much inhabited, and multiplieth enery day; it hath flore of Cattell of all forts.

The Lake of Titicaca compaffeth eightie leagues, and in some places it hath eightie fathom deepe, and in this, and in the waves are rayled when there is any winde, fo that it feemeth as a Bay of the Sea, from which it stands about fixtie leagues, twelve or thirteene Rivers enter into it, and many Brookes, and from it goeth a River into another Lake, which they call the Anlagas, which hath no voyding place, though because some Eyes of water have beene scene that vnder ground goe into the Sea, it is judged that it might bee the water of 40 these Lakes did goe, opening a way through the entrailes of the Earth vnto the Sea. Round about the great Lake are many Townes, and in it great Ilands, with great Tillage in them , and there were the Indians wont to keepe their most precious things for greater fecuri tie. The great Citie of Cazco, Seate Royall of the Ingas, and Head of their Empire (and now

of the Kingdomes of Pirm, by a Title which it hath of it from the Kings of Caffile and Lion) flands in thirteene degrees and a halfe height, feuentie eight of longitude, one hundred and fine and twentie leagues from the Citie of The Kings to the South-east, of more then one thoufand Spanifb houtholde; the Marques Don Franciscue Picarro founded it. It hath eight Parithes, and foure Monasteries of the foure Orders, of Saint Dominiche, Saint Francis, Saint Augustine, 50 the Mercenaries, and the Companie of Iefus, and one of Nunnes. Heere is resident the Cathedrall, Suffragane to the Archbishopricke of The Kings. There goe from this Citie fince the time of the Ingas from the Market place foure high wayes towards the foure parts of the world; one called Chinchafaye to the North, toward the Playnes and Province of Quito : another Condefago , to the West toward the Sea : the third called Collaofuyo , to the South and Chile: and the fourth to the East, which they call Andeluje, which goeth to the Andes and skirts of the Mountaine. It stands in a foile of a good temper, moderately fresh and healthfull, free No rememous from all venemous wormes, and plentiful of all things, with a thousand kindes of fruits of wormes.

Castile, and smelling herbes and slowres at all times which are of great delight. In her icrifdiction is the Valley of Torma : there is great trafficke of Coca, and showes of Gold, Silver, 60 and Quick-filuer; and there may bee in her borders about an hundred thousand tributarie Indians. It all the parts of these Indies the Indians have a great delight in carrying ordinarily in the mouth Rootes, Boughes, or Herbes, and that which they most vie in all Pra, is the Coca, for as they fay, they feele little hunger, and finde themselves with great vigour

Foure high wayes most admired.

chewing it alwaies, though it rather feemeth a custome inherited, or a vice. This is planted, and groweth to small trees, which are cultimated and cherified, and yeeld a leafe like myrtle, and dried they carry it in baskets to fell, and much mony is gotten by it. In the Valley of Valcabamba, stands Saint Francis of the victorie in Andefuyo, between the Row Saint Francis

of the Ander, about twentieleagues from Cazes to the Eath file, with a Governour prouided by the Vice-roy: it is of the Bilhapricke of Cuece, in a rough ground, and of great Mountaines.

The village of Saint Laborato Ore, is in the Province of Carabaya eightic leagues from Caree to Saint Labor of the East South-east, and thirtie to the East from the Like of Collas, and it is called del Oro, of the the Gold. Gold for the great store that is in her borders. The Citie of Arequipa is in fixteen degrees some- Arequipa to what more, one hundred and thirtie leagues from the Citie of The Kings , almost to the South-

saft as eine Coult runnetth, and fixite from the Citie of Cazes, of the Bilhopricke of Cazes it hath Monatheries of Deministry, Prantyfans, and Merchanie; it hath fittle thouland tributarie judiens; and is of most pleasant compensate to line in of all places in Pros. They gather in her borders great flore of Wine, and Whete: The Port is at the entrie of the River Chile, which palfeth neereche Chie where the merchandine is vnladen

Arequipe Gands in the Valley of Quiles, fogrecene leagues from the Sea. In her iurifdi ction is the Product of Condeling, the Townselof the Hubina, Gollagua; Chiquiquanita, and Quimiflaca; the Marques Don Francisco Picarro built it 1534. it is very lubitet to earth-quakes as all these Indies, especially the Sea coasts. In the year 1582, there was an earth-quake that almost Earth-quaket ao minated this Citie, and fince there hath beene another, and a breaking out of a ferie mouth, in the ladies

whereof they tell ftrange things, in the yeere 1 586. There was another in the Citie of the Kings very terrible the ninth of July, which ran one hundred and feuentie leagues in length by the Sea fide, and fittle and frange. within the Land; it spoyled the Citte, indangered few people, because they went out into the fields, and a little after the earth-quake was pait, the Sea went out of her bounds, and entred a great way within the Land fourteene fathom deepe. Such another earth-quake was in Quito the next yeare, in the Cities & Paz in the yeare 1981 a great high Rocke fell which tooke vnder it a great many Indian witch trees, and the earth which fell did run one league and a halfe. In Chile was another great earth-quake that oner-threw Mountaines and Valleys, stopped the Current of the Riners, brought the Sea out of her limits the space of some leagues, cast downe whole rent of the Anten, storage that so a beautiful so a superior some regions and the many men. The Bhalobean fay that the earth-quake proceeds from the From whence heate of the Sunne, and of other celeficial Bodies, which not onely doe draw the exhibition to the earth-

themselves, and the vapour of the superficies of the earth, but that also which is in the bowels of quakes doe it, which comming out engendreth winker and rayner; and if it happen that the earth is fo close proceeds. that the exhalation cannot come out any way, then it moment from one part to another through the pores of the earth, with greatwiolence breaking forth, as the powder in a Myne', tearing with fisch a furious rage, that tegenheth the earth where it is, and openeth it felled way with ereat furie, and so much more furiousitive how mach more the exhalation inclosed is creater.

The Village of Saint Michael de la Ribera is fixe leagues from the Sea , in the Valley of Cas Saint Michael 1 ne v mag or same Control of the state of t Tos, five and thirtie leagues from the Citie of The Kings, ven from the Port of Sangallis, is of the inrildiction of The Kings, and of the Archbilhopricke; herborders are plantifull of Wheat, Mila

let, and Fruits, and of much Wine. The Village of Casyste, or of Gueres, by the Valley where it flightly is diffant from The Kings Gueris, fine and twentie leggues to the South, one leggue and a hille from the Search her bounds are plentifull of bread the best of this Kingdome, whence is carried great quantitie of meale to Terra firme. Before the comming to this Valley, are the Valleys of Chilca, and Male; in the first it neuer rayneth, neither, paffeth any Fountaine nor Brooke through it; and they drinke of the Wells, and it is full of arable grounds, and fraits, which grow onely by elsevenw of the Heaven. Fertilisis with 50 They catch many Pilcherds in the Sea, and with every graine of atthet they not into the hole outraine.

where it is fowen one or two of the heads, and with that moy flure to proweth well. In the Pikhards Valley of Mala , Don lames of Almagro, and Don Franciscon Picture being in quartell, the father Bonadella of the Merced or Mercenarie Order , as an Arbitrator resolved their differences; through this Valley paffeth a great River, which does them great pleasure. Fine leagues for-ward is the River of Guarco in a Valley most plentifull in all things, where the Countrimen maintagned the warre foure yeeres against the Lingut , and to preferue it they cansed to build 'a Citie, and called it Cuzco, and erected for the triumphof the victorie a great Fortrelle an a Hill, that the waves of the Sea doe beare vpon the ftayres, Sixe leagues from Gaares is the Valley of Chineba, famous, pleatant, and very plentifull; where a Monafterie of Dominiote Pelars was 60 built in flead of the Temple of the Sunne which the Indans had , with the Monatterie of the

Virgins. Then followeth the Valley of Tea, which is no leffe, nor leffe plentifull & going out of the Valleys, and Rivers of the Nafea, and the principall is called Caramales, where excellent Wines are made. They goe from these Valleys to that of Hacari, where thinds Ocama; Camaria, Ocam and Quilea, which is the Port of the Citie of Arequips, and forward are the Valleys of Edwar and Leee Tambo-

Tambopalls, and the Deylo, and them of Tarapace, Rivers and pleatifully, with good Myrnes of 6th-uer, and necre the Sea : the Indusers of the Hands of The Seales doctory great fiore of Fowles dung for their grounds, wherewith of a barren, they make a plentiful ground.

of The Kings.

There are in the coast of this Councel from the Point del Agma, of the Needle, where'st involved with that of Queto, in fixe degrees of Southerne alsignde, the Hands and Ports following two llands which they call de Labor in feuen degrees, the one foure largues from the Couft, and the other more to the Sea; and forward another called of Saint Reste to the South waft, piere to Pazcamayo, and forward Puerto de Mai Abrigo, ton leagues beforeshe Port of Travilla, in feuen degrees and a halte, and feuen leagues from the Port of Guanque; and of Santhe impine de grees, and five leagues from this to the South, Porte Farnel; and fixt from it that of Contact and afterward eight leagues the Port of Guarmey at the mouth of a River ; and the Barrisca twentie leagues to the South; and the Port of Gaure where is a very great Sale pit; and after this the Hand of Lines, at the entrie of the Port of Coller; and swentie leagues, to the South the Point of Guerco, and one Hand de Lobes Marines, or Seale fiftes necrettris, and the Point of Chica in fitteene degrees, and neere to the Nafes; and forward the Point of Saint Lawrence, in the Valley of Quiles, and neere the River of Arequipa a and the Creftee of Challen; and after-ward the River of Nombre de Dies, where the limits does loyate by the Coaft of the Coaftles of The Kings, and of Charcas.

Chap. 21. The bounds of the Counfell of Charcas (which parteth limits with that of The Kings, stands of the Bounds in twentie degrees and a halfe of Southerne altitude, by the Ruser of Nambre de Diss. and or the Goundel the beginning of the Lake of (ollso) hath in length three hundred largues vinto the Valley of or Audience of Copiago, beginning of the Prouince of Chile in eight and twentir degrees of height, though in voyage they are reckoned neere foure hundred leagues East and West, that which is betweene of the South Sea vnto the North Sea, or South which answereth to the Provinces of the River of Place, which though it is not altogether discoursed it is understood that by placing all the Comtrie of this Counfell in much altitude, it is more cold then hot.

The Government of this Countell, is at the charge of the Vice-roy of Pirs, as that of the Countell of Quito, and of The Kings: there are two Governours, and two Bilhopricks, thatof Chareas and Tacumen. The Prouince of the Chareas (which commonly is named that which is to from the bounds of the Counfell of The Kenge; cillinking paste Poses) bath in length North and South about one hundred and fiftie leagues, and as many East and West; a Countrie not very plentifull, though abundant of Cattell, especially in Calles, that is from the Lake of Taicees ynto Charcas, where the Winter and Summer are constant to Europe: it is a plentifull Countrie of all Cattell, especially of sheepe, which are many; and of a very fine wooll.

In this Prouince are foure Townes of Spanish of One: Bifnopricke, which are the Cirie of the Plate, which the Captaine Persuance inhabited, in the yeomogh 3. by order of the Marques Des Franciscus Picarro. It stands in seventie two degrees of longitude from the Meridian of Toledo, from whence it may be diffant by a greater circle one chousand fener hundred and eightie leagues, and in mineteene degrees of latitude, one hundred feventie fine leagues from Carca to the South, or to Antartick Pole within the Tropicks, in the extermost of the Torrid Zone. There are in the ber ders of this Citie in Chauses (which are manured grounds) eight hundred Spanish houshelds. It is a Countrie extreme cold, whereas it should be temperate or bot, according to the height of the Pole it frands in : the Counfell and the Cathedrall is refident in this Citie; and there are Monasteries of Dominicke, Franciscan, Anguffines, and Mercenarie Friars, and in her inrisdiction fix tie thousand tributarie Indians, duided in nine and twentie repartitions, and the feedes of Caffile doe grow well, and there are many rich mynes of falues.

Our Lady of

Chicuita Orepefa.

The Citie of our Lady of the Peace , by another name the New Towns , and Chuquiabe , in the middeft of the Collas, one hundred leagues from Carces, and eightig from the Plate, bath Monafleries of Franciscane, Augustines, and Mercenaries, with flore of Wines and Cattell. Captaine et Alfonfau of Mandoca built it 1949, when was Prefident the Governour of Pira, the Licenciate Pedro de la Gafea, attenward Bishon of Signança. The Prominer of Chicaito in Callad, formewhat North-east from the Prominee of Plata, more then an hundred leagues from it, inhabited by Indians, with a Spanish Gonernour, of the Bishopricke of Charcas, and one Monaiterie of Dominicks. hath much Carrell, and it flands at the bottler of Titicaes. Orepefat, is a plantation of the Vice-roy, Dan Francisco de Toleda, in the Valley of Cechahamba, twentie leagues from the Citic of le Place: their husbandrie is crops of Whese, Millet, and Cattell.

The Imperial Towns of Petof is in mineteene degrees of altitude, eighteene leagues from the Citie of the Plate, and about eight from the Lake of the Anlager to the East, in the skirt of the Hell of Potofi, that looketh to the North-east ; it hath five hundred housholds of Spaniards 60 which doe attend the mysits; and of Merchants, and about 10000. Indian of ordinarie goers and comments the trafficke of the filter. And though it be a Towne of it felfe, it hath no Ruler, but State of the citie de la Plana. There refide the Officers, and Royall treasurie of this Protince, for the mynes of the Hill of Petofi, which a Gastillane discounted 3 445 called Villared, by meaning of cer-

taine Indians; and it is called Posofi, because the Indians doe fo call Hills and high places; and the filter was fo much that they got at the beginning in the yeere 1549, every Saturday, that when they cast it, there came to the Kings fifts from fine and twentie to thirtie thouland Pefos. The Hill is flat and bare, their habitation drie and cold , unpleafant , and altogether barren. It bringeth forth no fruit, graine or herbe, and because of the filter it is the greatest inhabiting of the Indies, which hath about two leagues in circuit, and where all kinde of dainties are found. and plentie, though brought thither by carriages. The colour of the ground of the Hill draweth towards red, darke. The forme is like a Sugar loafe, that ouer-peareth all the other Hills that are necre it: the going vp is rough, and yet they goe vp on horle-backe; it extended to a league, and from his top to the foote is about a quarter of a league. It hath on all fides rich veines of liker, from the top to the foote, and the Port of Arica whereby the merchan. Arica

dize come, and the filter of this Hill is carried, is from it about ninetic leagues, almost West. Sixe leagues from the aforefaid Hill in the way of the Port of Arica, is the Hill of Porce, an Porce, ancient feate of Mynes of filuer : whence it is affirmed the Ingas got the greatest part of the filuer that was in the Temple of the Sunne of Curionche, whence yet is and will much filter be gotten.

Santa Craz de la Sierra frands one hundred leagues from the Charcas to the East, in the way The holycroffe whereby they goe from the Charcas to the Affumption, in the Provinces of the River of Plate, of the Hill. whicherto they make three hundred leagues sourney, with a Gouernour prouided by the Viceroy, of the Diocesse of the Charen, and one Monasterie of Mercenaries, in a Countrie scarce

of water, though plentifull of Wheat, Wine, and Miller. This Prouince hath neighbour-to how with many Nations of Infidel Indicate, and many of them are alreadic baptized, and the first that strooke a denotion in the Countrimen , was a Spanish Souldier, " that was among them, " This Apostle fied for faults; which for a great anguilh they were in for water made them a great Croffe, after his miraand perfuaded them to worthip with great denotion that fame Crofic, and to aske water; cles, many was and God for his mercy heard them, and fent them much raine in the yeere 1560. The Capand God for his mercy neard them, and ient them much rame in the years 1906. The Caphanged at Petrans Numbs of Change went out of the Citie of the Afternion in the River of Plate, to discower, and comming to Santta Cruz of the Hill, having made great discourries, the people came 6.27.

whto him, and ferming to him that hee was neere to Pirm, went to the Citie of The Kings, where the Marques of Campte was Vice-roy, and with his order, and for Lieftenant of his 30 fonne Don Garcia of Mendoça, the Captaine Nufle of Chanes went againe to inhabit this Citie, though he came out of the River of Plate, with purpose to discover the Provinces of the Dorade.

In the Coast of this Councell, which beginneth in seuenteene degrees and a halfe in the Ri. Ports & Points uer of Nombre de Dist, or Tambopalle ; is the Port of Hilo neere to a River, in eighteene de fell. grees and a halfe, and more to the South, El Morro de los Diables, and the Port of Arica in nimeteene degrees one third part, and that of Tacama in one and twentie, and the Point of Taremare to the South, and more forward the River of Pies, and that de la Hois, or of the Leafe. and of Mentele, the Port of Medillows, and more to the South the Point of the Beacenes, or La Farallemen. Morto Morens, before the Bay And River of Santia Clara, and more to the South the Breach. and the White point , and the Deepe breach , and the River of Santa Clara ; about thirtie Panta Blonca. 40 leagues from the River of Copiago, where the Coast of Chile beginneth, and the Coast of the Quetrala House Charges from the Rant of The Province and Government of Tuchman, is all Mediterrane; her bound Province of begins from the Countrie of the Chichas, which are of the surification of the Imperial Village of Taxanas. Potefi: it flands in the fame Line of the Citie of the Affamption of the River of Plate , about

an hundred leagues from the South Sea coaft; it doth confine with the Province of Chile, it is a Countrie of a good temper, reasonably plentifull, and wntill now without Mynes of filuer. or gold. There is in it fome Spanish Townes in one Bishopricke, which are of the Citie of Saint Laro del Estero, which at the beginning they named del Varco, or of the Boate, in eight and Saint lames of twentie degrees of altitude, one hundred eightie fine leagues from Potofi to the South, declining the Marth. fomewhat to the East : the Governour and the Officers of the goods, and treaturie Royall, and 50 the Bishop, and the Cathedrall are resident here.

The Citie of Saint Marie of Talauera, is five and fortie leagues from Saint Lames to the North, Saint Michael. and fortie from Potof in fixe and twentie degrees. The Citie of Saint Michael of Tucuman New Lon eight and twentie leagues from Saint lames to the Welt, in the way of the Charcas in feuen and h Hiff. Nuesa twentie degrees. There were inhabited in this Gouernment in the time of Don Garcia of Mena Cuidina. doga, his father the Marques of Cangete berng Vice-roy, the New London, and Calebaque, Thinke that which they called a New wifedome, in the Prouince of the laries, and Draguita, which after ward were dishabited within a few yeeres. The people of this Countrie gooth clothed in wool-femme four len, and in wrought leather, made by arte like the guilt or wrought leather of Spaine : they breed inches fruite, much Cartell of the Countrie, by reason of the profit of their wooll : they have the Townes ve- and as high as ty neere the one to the other, and the Townes are fmall, because there is but one kindred in eue backe, and ta-

ry one, they are compassed round about with I Cardones, and thornic trees for the warres that keth much they had among themselves. They are great husbandmen, and it is a people that is not dranke, ground, hat for they are not given to dranke, as other Nations of the Indias. There are in the Province feven there grow mayne Rivers, and more then eightie Brookes of good waters, and great passures ! the Winter many out of

and the Summer are at fuch times as in Spaine; it is a healthfull Countrie and of a good temper.

and the first that entred in it, were the Captaines Diego de Roju , Philip Gutterres , and Nicolas

de Heredia; they discouered on this side the River of Plate vnto the Fortresse of Gabeta.

Chap. 22.

On Diego de Almagro was provided the yeere 1534, in Toledo for Gouernour of two hunof the bounds

Of the bounds

On Practice Pieuro, toof the King-dome of Chile. ward the Streight of Magellan, intituling this part, The new government of Toledo. Hee went to pacific this Countrie, and because he forlooke it, it was given in charge to the Marques Dow Franesseo Picarro 1537. and he commended it 1540. to the Captaine Peter of Valdinia; who were thither with one hundred and fiftie Spaniards. All the Countries of this Kingdome lye to the to South of the Equinoctiall, in a more Southerne altitude then the Kingdome of Pirm, and her Prouinces within the Torride, from the Equinoctiall vinto the Tropicke of Capricone, which paffeed 2 Defart, which they call of Aracama, which is from twentie three to twentie fixe degrees and then beginneth the Kingdome of Chile, which the Indians call Chille, and before the inhabited Countrie is the River of The Salt, in three and twentie degrees and three quarters, which from the East fide of the Row of Mountaines, runneth to the West into the Sea, through a very deepe Valley, and though it hath the water very cleere; all that the Horfes are wet with it when they drinke, is congealed with the heate of the Sunne; and it is so meere talt that it cannot bee drunke, and in the borders it is congealed : the River is before the enering in the first Province of Chile two and twentie leagues where the Xagueres are, which are Wells of water, for there is an no other in the two and twentie leagues, and all the Kingdome stands within the Zone, which

> This Government taken largely unto the Streight, bath in length North and South, from the Valley of Copuspo where it beginneth in feuen and twentie degrees, fine hundred leagues, and in breadth East and West, from the South Sea to the North Sea, from foure hundred to fine hundred of ground to be pacified, which doeb ftraighter it felfe, till it remayneth by the Streight in ninerie or in an hundred leagues. That which is inhabited of this Government, may bee three hundred along the North Sea coast, and the breadth of it twentie leagues and leffe, vnto the Rose 30 of the Andes, which doe end neere the Streight, and it passeth through this Kingdome very high, and almost covered at all times with snow, All the Countrie is plaine, at the least there is mo great roughnesse, except where the Rose of Pira doth reach, and doth end within two or three leagues of the Coast.

the ancient men called Deferte, which is inhabited with white Indians, and it is fituated on the

borders of the South Sea, which is Mare Magnum, which is included betweene her Coast and

The temper and qualitie of it (though it bee not without some difference for the varieties of the heights it standeth in altogether) is of the best, and most inhabitable that is in the Indies, in temperature like vnto Castile, in whose opposite altitude is salletti almost all, and in abundance and goodnesse of victuals, and plentie of all things, riches of Mynes and Metals, and force and vi gour of the Countrimen, which for being so great warriors have alwayes beene cuill to pacific, and there bee many out in the Mountaines, and Breaches of the end of the Rowe, the Prouinces of 40 Aranco, Tucapel, and the Valley of Paren, the bounds and borders betweene the Citic of the Conception, and los Confines, and la Imperial,

In this Government are eleven Spanish Townes, with a Governous placed in the matters of the Government to the Vice-roy, and Councell of Pirm, after the Councell that was in the Countrie was taken away; and thereisin it two Bilhopricks Suffraganes to the Archbilhoprick of the Kings. In the Bilhopricke of Saint James are foure Townes. The Citie of Saint James in the time of the first inhabiting of Chile, founded by Captaine Peter of Valdinia, it stands in thirtie foure degrees and a quarter of aktitude, feuentie feuen of longitude, one thouland nine hundred and eightie leagues from Toledo by a direct Line, fifteene from the Sea, and ten beyond the Valley of Chile, which they named at the first New Extreame. In it is the Cathedrall refident 50 with Monasteries of Dominicke, Franciscan, and Mercenarie Friars, in a plentifull foile of wheat, Wine, and other things, and of very rich Mynes of gold, and in her jurisdiction more then eightie thousand Indians in fixe and twentie repartitions. This Citie is served of the Port of Valparayle at the mouth of the River Topocalma, which paffeth neere vnto it.

Captaine Valdinia peopled also la Serena in the yeare 1944 neere to a good Hauen; it is the first Towne of Spaniards, at the entite of Chile fixtie leagues from the Citie of Saint James, somewhat North-weil neere to the Sea in the Valley of Coquimbe , with Monasteries of Franciscan , and Mercenarie Friars. It raymeth in it but three or foure times a yeere, and in the Countries before it is sever savneth. The Port which they call of Commed, flands in two and thirtie degrees, it is a good Nooke where the this of Pira doe make a stay. In the Prouince of Chucuite, 60 which is on the other side of the Rose of the Andes, in a cold and barren Countrie, doe ftand the Citie of Mendece, and of Saint lebe of the Frontier; for Den Garcia of Mendece peopled them both. The Citie of Mendoga is of the fame height with Saint Lamer, about tortie leagues from it, of a difficult way, for the inow that is in the Andre. The Citie of Saint lobe of the Frontier flands to the South of the Citie of Mendosa

In the Bistiopricke of the Imperiall are leven Spanife Townes, Which are and Citie of the Conception in feuen and thirtie degrees of height, feuentie leagues to the South of the Citie of Saint James, necre to the Sea, Peter Valdinia inhabited it in the yeere 1550. The Gouernours apprecident in it, fingesthe Comment, (thus were those from the years 150 to 15 Infantes, or la Confinet; Don Garcia of Mendogs peopled it and the Confinet; Don Garcia of Mendogs peopled it and the Confinet Regent Nonvillaged commanded it to be called the lay Confined. It stands fixteened legists from the Concoming to the the Infantal fide of the Streight, eight leagues from the Row of the Ander, and four from that which goeth & 10 along the Coaft. It hath one Monatterie of Dominicans, another of Franciscan Friest. The warlike Indian come to the bounds of this Citie, and the mayne River Bishioly them, and others which doe enter into it, and the River Ninequeten.

which doe enter into it, and the futer the funeral 13 to which is in nine and thirtie he. The lapoint grees of height, nine and thirtie lagues from the Companion toward the Streights feld futer legges from the Sea, where the Cathedral is resident whether the Monthletin of Francisco fig., and ther of Mercenarie Friars; and in her bounds are more then eightie thousand Indians; with many other that in her bounds are in armes. The River Canten paffeth neere it , which is nauigable to the Sea, though the Hauen bee not good nor secure. Captaine Valdinia peopled rie of Franciscans, another of Mercenaries, in a Countrey cold and barren of Bread and d Cordifina

The Citie of Valdente two leagues off the Sea, and fiftie from the Conception to the Valdinia, Streight ward: peopled alto by Captaine Valdinia, with Monasteries of Dominicans, Francifcant, and Mercenaries, in a plentifull Countrie of Wheat, and Seedes, and in places of essential and neutronous and partition of the properties of the pr the Conception to the port of the Streight , feuen leagues from the Sea. It hath one Monasterie 30 of Dominicans, another of Franciscans, with another of Nunnes, in a cold Countrie, scarce of victuals, but of much gold, and in her bounds two hundred thousand Indians of repartition. The Citie of Castro, which was inhabited by the Licenciate Lope Garcia de Castro, being Go- Castro uernour of the Kingdomes of Pirm, the which is called in the Indian tongue Chilae, which is the last of the inhabited in Chile, in an Iland of those that are in the Lake of Anend, or Chilne, and the Archipelagus stands in three and fortie degrees of altitude, one and fortie leagues to the South of Oferno, with a Monasterie of Franciscans, with twelve thousand Indians of repartition in her bounds, for it is an Iland of fiftie leagues in length, and from two vntill nine in breadth, which the Sea made with other great ones, tearing the Land vnto the Row of the Andes. It is a mountaynous Countrey, and close, plentifull of Wheate, and 40 of Millet . and Mynes of flying & Gold , on the Strand a thing fewe times , or fel- g Ore helador

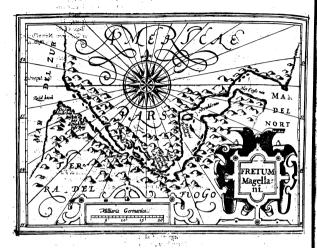
The Governour Villagran tooke away the name of the Citie which was Canyete, that Don Pormand Ri-Garcia of Mendoga inhabited, and commanded to call it Tucapel, and afterward difinhabited uers of this goit. There are in this Gouernment which beginneth in two and twentie degrees, the Port and uernment. River of Copeano, and to the South of it, the Port of Guafcoin another River, and the River of Coquimbo in two and thirtie degrees ; and past this the Port of the Cigua in the River, and the Port of Ominters at the mouth of the River of Concagua, before the Port of Saint Lames, or Valpararso, and the Port of Topocalma in the River of Maya: and past the River of Maule the Port of the . Herradura, at the mouth of the River Itata, before the Port of the Conception e Or Horles 50 in the great River of Biobie to the North, the Hand of Saint Marie right against the State of theore.

Arance, and the Port of Campete, and the Hand of Mecha more to the South, and the Port of Canten, which is that of the Imperial, and to the South the landing place and the River of Tolten before the Port of Valdinia, and past this the Point of the Galley, and more to the South the great Bay or Port of Oforno in the River de las Canoas , and to the South of it about thirtie leagues to the Lake de les Coronades the broadest River of this Realme, and at the end of this Realme the Lake of Ancud.

En doe call the Streight of Magellanes, that which is past the River of Plate by the South Chap. 24. Men doe can the Streight of Phile, vnto the Streight two hundred leagues before it, from two Of the Pro and fortie or three and fortie degrees of altitude, vato two and fiftie and more, for although ces of the 60 men haue fayled through both the Seas divers times, and feene people in them vnto the Streight Streight. it felfe, it hath not beene pacified, nor made inhabiting, but that which the fleete that Diego Flores de Valdes carried to the Streight left in the mouth of the Streight on the North fide, in the yeere 1 582. Which was called the Citie of Saint Philip, which for being in fo much altitude could

Herreras description of the West Indies. Sir Richard Hawkins. LIR V

HONDLYS bis Map of the MAGELLAN Streight.



not be preserved for the great cold, and therefore that navigation is difficult and dangerous for the continual tempetts, and great stormes of windes that are at all times. The Ports, Capes, and Points of the Coast of the one and the other Sea vnto the Streighr, al-

Ports , Capes, and Points of

though they be many, and some are not pointed in the Cardes of Nauigation, it appeareth not wholly, neither is there any certaine relation of all. And the most knowne of the Coast from Chile vnto the Streight, which runneth from Valdinia about an hundred leagues to the West South-west are, the Cape of Saint Andrew in seuen and fortie degrees, from whence the Coast turneth directly to the South vnto the Streight, by the Cape of Saint Roman in eight and fortie degrees, and neere vnto it the Iland of Saint Catalina, neere to the great Bay which they call if. Alear & Hartichoked, and within it the Bay of our Lady, and the Hand of Santa Barbara, and more forby of the ward the Ports of Hernan Gallego in eight and fortie degrees two third parts, and the Bay of The Kings eighteene leagues from the Port of Hernan Gallego, and the Bay of Saint John in hitiede to grees one third part, the Cape of Saint Francisco in one and fiftie, whereby some Channels doe enter into the Land, and the Iland de la Campana, or of the Bell, eleven leagues from Saint Franes : also with some Channels which have not beene navigated within the Land, and the Bay of Saint Lazara in two and fiftie degrees, with Channels on the fides, which enter very broad and long to the one and the other parts, which have not beene navigated, and a great Sea of le lands which alwayes was faid to bee at the South fide neere to the mouth of the Streight, the which Sir Richard Hawkins denyeth; for hee faith, That at this mouth of the Streight on the South fide, he found no more then foure imall Ilands, and one in the middelt like a Sugar loofe, and that at the least they are distant from the mouth of the Streight fixe leagues, and the great Sea is on the one fide, and he holdeth for certaine it is that which they fay is the firme Land of 60 the South fide of the Streight, and that there is no firme land. The Streight though they have past it from the South to the North fide, by order of the Vice-roy Don Franciscus of Toledo, Pt ter Sarmiemo , and Antonie Pablo Corfo , and it is knowne it stands from 52. to 52. degrees of

altitude, where it draweth most to the South, and that in length it hath one hundred and ten

CHAP. I. Herreras description of the Magillane Straits, and the River of Plate. 901

eagues, or one hundred and fifteene, little more or leffe, and in breadth from one to tenne: it hard never beene navigated to an end from the South Sea to the North Sea, nor the Pyrats that This is not have past it from the North to the South, are videritood to have returned by it. The above faid true: for Caphave past it from the Notes to the South, are vincined by the The about Ind.

Sir Richard Hawkins faith, that he failed many dayes by the Straight, and affirmeth that all the others have Countrie on the South fide is no firme Land, but many Hands which reach to 56.degrees; the done it which which he might know, because he sayled to the same 56. degrees through the middest of those howseuer he Hands, and feeing he found nothing but Sea, hee followed his course against through by the cals Pliats, yet Straight, and that this cannot be so tarre, the differences of Seas, which the many entrings doe they have been Straight, and that this tather the habiting of them is of people on the North fide, ter descouered these that are among those llands, and that the habiting of them is of people on the North fide, these Straights which doe passe to those llands to sustaine themselves of fishings, and in their seasons returne to then the Straights their Countries; and that he comprehended this of many things especially of not having seene ads. any feated inhabitating, but some Cabbins which the Indians doe make for a time. The same said Sir Prancis Drate, that it hapned him when he paffed the Straight, the yeare 1 979, who after his comming our into the South Sea, he ran along with tempests compassing this Sea, vato the mouth of the North Sea, and by the fame way he had runne, he made fure his nauigation to the

The parts most famous of the Straight at the entring of the South are the Cape Descado, or Defired, in 53 degrees, and the Channell of all Saints, two and twentie leagues from the mouth, very broad, and large, and path it the port of the Treason, and afterward another great large Chanan nell which runneth to the North-west, and Rowlands Bell, a great Rocke in the middest at the beginning of a Channell. They gaue it this name of one of Magellanes tellowes called Romland. who went to reacknowledge it, which was a Gunner: the point of possession which is foure wno went concatation with the state of the s ledge the Straight, for it had beene commanded long before for to feeif it were amore eafie naugation to the South Sea, then that of Panama: they viewed the two narrow places, that at the entrie of the North, and it feemed to Peter Sarmiente, that the one was fo narrow, that with Artillerie it might be kept, and so much he perswided it, that although the Duke of Alua Orordinance. affirmed it was impossible, the Armie which James Flower tarried vastruitfully was l'ent about it. and in the end was knowne that that natingation is dangerous, and the flowing of two Seas which come to meete in the middeft of the Straight, doe withdraw themselves with such furie, ebbing in fome places more then fixtie fathoms, that when the Shippes did carry nothing but Cables to preferue themselves from looking that which they had sayled, they would goefull

In foure hundred leagues, there is of Coast from the mouth of the Straight, vnto the River of Plate, which runneth altogether North-eaft and South-weft, there is the River of Saint Hefonius twelve leagues from the Cape of the Virgenes, the a Gallician River, and the Bay of Saint lames, "Hift rio Galle. foureteene leagues from the River of Santia Cruz, in 50. degrees, and at the mouth an Iland called to of the Lyons, and the Port of Saint Intian in 49 degrees, and the River of Iohn Serrana to the South 40 of the Hands of Ducker, in 47, degrees, the River of Cananor in 45, degrees, the Cape of Saint Dominicke, before the Cape of three Points, and the Land de les Hamse or of the Smaler, in 33 degrees, the Point of Smale Hellem, and of Saint Apallonia, in 37 degrees before the White Cape, at the entrie of the River of Plate on the South fide.

Of the Prount Of the Prount Of Plate 1515, and Sebastian Gaboe an English-man, going ces of the Riwith an Armie by order of the Emperour, in purluit of the Fleete which Frier Garcia de Lo- uer of Plate & of a Commander, had carried to the Hands of the Malners, and conceiuing hee could not ouer of Brafile. take them, he thought good to busie himselse in something that might be profitable; and entred Schaffun Gabothe yeare 29. discouring the River of Plate, where he was almost three yeares; and being not the River of the Years 29, alreading the River of to Castile, having gone many said, which is leagues vp the River, he found Plate or Silver among the Indians of those Countries, for in the called of the warres which these Indians had with those of the Kingdomes of Pirm they tooke it, and from Plats. He was hence it is called the River of Plate, for before it was called the River of Solis. These Provinces an English mass are joyned with those of Brafil: by the line of the markes they have no determined bounds, but borne a Deneby the Coast of the Sea that falleth to the North, and entrance of the Riner of Plate, of the which tim, but spenthe Countrie hath taken the name, and the mouth of this River may Rand fixteene hundred ding most pare leagues from the Bay of Saint Lucar of Barrameda.

All these Provinces are very plentifull of Wheate, Wine, and Sugar, and all other seedes and fruites of Cattle doe grow well : they have great Pastures for all forts of Cattle, which have ments. 60 multiplied infinitely, especially the Horses, and though they have beene many yeares without See the former thinking there were any Minesof Gold, or of Silver, they have already found a showe of them, Booke. and of Copper, and Iron, and one of very perfect Amathifts. All these Provinces are of one Go. Plentifulnesse uernment, with title Royall, subordained for nearenesse to the Vice-roy of Pira, with one Bi-Shopricke wherein are three Spanish Townes, and a great multitude of the Countrie men, of big ner of Plate.

bodies, and well conditioned. And the Townes are; the Citie of our Lady of the Affumption, the The Assumpt first inhabiting, and the head-of this Prounce, it stands in 25. degrees and a halfe of attitude; the Captaine John of Salazar huilt it by order of the Gouernour Don Peter Mendoga, The territory thereof was first called Gurambare: it hath Brasil at the right hand two hundred and eightie leagues, and in this compasse it hath the Citie Royall at eightie leagues, which the Indians call Guayra. And on the fide of Piru, which is East and West, it hath at foure hundred and cightie His Isagues, the Citie of la Plata, and at two hundred and eightie, the Citie of Santa Cruzdela Sierra or of the Hill, which Nuflo of Chanes built. To the South fide which is toward the Straight of Marelane, it hath very great and rich Countries, and this Citie stands, three hundred leagues from the mouth of the Ruer of Plate, built neere to the River Paraguage, on the East fide 1. with four hundred Spanish Housholds, and more then three thousand children of those that were botne to them in the Countrie (which they call Meffizer) in it are refident the Governour, and Officers Royall, and the Cathedrall which is called the Bishopricke of the Plate, suffragan to the Archbishoprick of the Kings, and in her jurisdiction more then 400000. Indians, which

Cirded real.

Note.

Citie Royall was called by another name Ontineros, built by Ruidias de Melgareio; it stande eightie leagues from the Affamption North-east, toward the Land of Brafil, neere to the River Parana; it stands in a good soyle of Victuals, and Vines, and much good Copper, and great number of Indians, which also doe much increase. In this River Parana, neere the Citie Fallor Gata- Royall, there is a great fall, that no man dare come neere it by Land within two bundred rack very terri- paces, for the great noyle, and mittof the water, and by the Riner no Canoe, nor Boatedine 0 come neere by a league; for the furie of the water doth carry it to the fall, which is about two hundred fadomes off a fteep Rock, and it is to narrow, and the water goeth to close, that it feems

ve may throw ouer it with a dart.

* Buenos ayres is a Towne which in old time was difinhabited neere the place where now it is *Or Good open . Guenos sper 15 a 1 www. return to the Morocotes, in the borders of the River of Plate, in a plential foyle, where all things of Castile doe grow very well; the Gouernor Den Peter of Mendocabuilt it 1535, which caused all that which Gabete for soke to be discourred. All this Countrie is commonly plaine: for except the Cordilleres or Rowes (which are on the Sea coast, and may be twentie leagues toward Brasil, afterwards compassing all the Countrie toward the River Maranyon) and 30 the Rower of the Kingdomes of Prw, all is plaine, except some small hils.

There are knowne in the Coast of these Provinces from the Land of Brafil, vnto the River of Plate five or fix reasonable Ports; the Port of Saint Vincent, in 33.degrees height, right against Buenabrigo, an Iland where the line of the repartition paffeth; and fix leagues to the South the Riuer Vbay, and the Port, and the Hand de la Cananea in 35 degrees; and forward the River de la Barca, before the Port of Babia or River of Saint Francis, and the Hand of Santa Catalina, by another name the Port of Vera, or Port of the Duckes (de Peres) and the Port of Don Roderigo, twen-Hill, P. enter. tie leagues to the South from South Catalina, an lland 29 degrees and more to the South, fine rate, Republish, leagues, Clofe Hauen, and fifteene the b Inhabited River, and as much the Dope-Bay from this, and the River Teraqueri, in 32 degrees and a halfe, before the Cape of Saint Marie, which is in 35. 40 degrees at the entrie of the River of Plate,

This River is called in the Indian language Paranaguage, and commonly Parana, bath his entrie and mouth in the South Sea, from thirtie five voto thirtie fix degrees of altitude, between the Capes of Saint Marie, and Cape Blanke, which is from the one to the other about thirtie leagues of mouth, and from thence inward other tenne leagues in breadth, with many Ilands in the middest, and many very great maine Rivers, which enter into it by the East and West side, vnto the Port of the Kings, which is a great Lake called of the Xarages, little leffe then three hundred leagues from the River of Plate, where enter many Rivers that come from the skirts of the Andes and they may be of those Rivers that proceede in the Provinces of the Charcas and Cuzeo, which runne toward the North, whereby entreth another maine arme into the faid Lake, which hath guen occasion to thinke that this River doth communicate with the River of Saint Iebs of the Amazoner; others say that it commeth from the Lake of the Dorado, which is fifteene journies from the Lake of the Xarages, though there be opinions that there is no Darado.

The chance of the Captaine the yeare 1545. a Spaniard being in his bed and his wife by him on the out fide, in the night

there came a Tigre and gaue the man a blow that he killed him, and carried him away, and betweene certaine Caues he did denoure him: in the morning the Captaine Salaz ar went forth with fiftie Souldiours to feeke the Tigre, and going through a wood, hee went alone by a path, and as foone as hee discoured the Tigre, hee being flesh fet vpon him, and at the time hee lifted up the pawe for to ftrike him, the Captaine let flee the Shaft out of his Croffebowe, and itrooke him to the heart, and it fell downe dead: an exploit of great courage, 60 heede and dexteritie.

The Captaine Salar ar governing in these Provinces by the death of Don Peter Mendoga,in

He Provinces and Countrie of Brafil in the Coast of the North Sea, and Terra firme, is called all that which falleth to the East from the line of the repartition, from twentie nine de- Of the Proting grees of longitude from the Meridian of Toledo, vnto thirtie nine, which are two hundred cos and Counleagues from East to West, and foure hundred and fiftie North and South, from two degrees of tricof Brasil. Southerne altitude, by the Cape de Humos or of Smaakes, vnto hue and twenty, by the lland of Vicent Times Buenabrigo or Good-harbour. And from the first inhabiting, vnto the last of Brafil, there are Pinzon borne three hundred and fiftie leagues. Vincent Tanes Pinzon discouered first this Countrie by comman-in the Village dement of the Kings Catholike, and presently after him lames of Lepe, in the yeare 1500, and of Palus difco. 10 fix moneths after Poraluarez Cabral, going with a Portugall armie to India, which to avoide veredthe safet the Coast of Guinea did put to much to the Sea that he found this Countrie, and called it Santia de Lepe. Cruz, because on that day he discouered it. All of it is very hot in Winter and Summer, and very rainie, and compafied with Woods and Mifts, vnhealthfull, and full of venemous Wormes.

plentifull in Pastures for Cattle, and not for Wheate, nor Millet; there are in it great showes of Silver and Gold, but as the Portugals, have no stocke to make any profit of the Mines, they leave The principall foode of this Countrie is the Cazabi which they make of the Tuca , and the greateil trafficke is Sugar, and Cotten Bumbath, and Bratil Wood, which was it that gaue it

the name. There are in all the Prouince nine Gouernments, which are called Captainthips, and 2) in them seuenteene Portugal Townes: init may be about three and thirtie hundred housholds, and great multitude of warlike Indians, which have not fuffered the Portugals to build but on the Coaft, in which are many Rivers, Landings, and many Ports, and very fate, where any Ships may

come in be they never to bigge.

The Colonie of the first Captainship, and the most auncient is Tamaraca, the second Pernam- Inhabitings of buce, fine leagues from Tamaraca to the South, in eight degrees of altitude, and there is a house the Coast of of the Fathers of the Companie of Lefus : the other is, that of all Saints, one hundred leagues Brafil, from Pernambuce in thirteene degrees, and there the Gournour, the Billion, and the Auditour generall of all the Coalts are refident, and it hath a Colledge of the Company: the fourth Captain- Many lesistes Thip of the Ilands is thirtie leagues from the Bay of All Saints, in foureteen degrees & two shird Colledges. 20 parts, it hath a House of the Fathers of the Companie. In this Captainship is found a Tree where

out they take a precious Balme. The Captainship of the Sure-hanen is thirtie leagues from the I. Puntofegio. lands in fixteene degrees and a halfe: it hath three Inhabitings, and a House of the Fathers of the Companie. The Captaineship of the Holy-Ghost fiftie leagues from Puerto leguro, in twentie degrees, where they gasher much Brafil, and there is one house of the Company. The Captainthis of the River of Genero is fixtic leagues from the Haly-Ghoft, in twentie three degrees and one third part, with a house of the Fathers of the Company, and they cut in their insidiction much Brasil Wood; the River is very faire, with fine and profitable borders. The last Captainethip is Saint Unicest, fixtie leagues from the River of Genera, in foure and twenthe degrees, it hath a tor-trelle in an Iland for a defence against the Indian; and Pirates, and a house of the faid Fathers,

40 which have done great profit in the inhabiting of this Comerie, and conversion of the Indians, and their libertie. The Cattle that are in the e Promites are many and great breeding of Swine, and Hens, they gather much Amber which the Sea cafteelivo with Hormes at the foring tides, Ambar. and many persons have inriched themselves with it. Then Summer's from September to February, and the Winter from March vnto August; the dayes are almost as long as the nights, they increase and diminish onely an houre, in the winter the winders alwaies at South and South eaft.in Summer North-east and East North-east.

There are in this Coast eight or tenne Ports more principali then the rest, which are the River The principalof Saint Dominicke and de las Untudes to the North-east of Pernambuco, and Tamaraca, which this Cooft. is an Iland, and as it is faid, the first Plantation, and before the Cape of Saint Aufline, which stands in nine degrees, the River of Saint Francis in ten degrees and a halte, which is great and 50 mightie : the Bay of All Saints three leagues broad, and thirteene into the Land vato Saint Sa-

mions, the River and Port Trenado, where the Ships doe couch that goe this Voyage, and the River of Canamum in thirteene degrees and a lafte, the River of the Beater or of Saint Auftine is foureteen degrees and a halfe; and the River of the Virgenes in fixteene. Porte fictive in feventeen degrees: the River of Perayua in ewentie degrees, neere to Sandts fromas: the Biner of Gos Cabe Frie. nevel neere, to Saint Sebastian, and Gold Cape in three and twentie degrees beyond Saine Vincent .

Notes of the West, are all the Hands and firme Land comprehended within the markes of the Octobershitt of Crowne of Cafile and of Lyon, a the Occidentall end of the faid bounds; whole line as is indices in the said of the faid bounds; whole line as is indices in the said of the faid bounds; whole line as is indices in the said of the faid bounds; whole line as is indices in the said of the faid bounds; who is the faid bounds; where fa faid palleth on the other side the world, through the Citie of Malaca from whence toward well, which are the East, and New Spaine, is a great Gulfe of infinite Hands great and small, and marry pieces of the Hands Phi Goalts, and firme Land, which are divided into the Ilands of the Spicerie, or of the Malnes, I. lippmas, conft of lands Philipmas, the Coast of China, Ilands of the Lequint and Impensis, Coast of themew Guinea, the Lequint.

Ilands of Salomon, and of Ladrones or the Theenes: the temper of all these Ilands and Lands in senerall is moilt, and temperately hot, plentifull of Victuals, and Beafts, with some Gold, but base no Silver, flore of Wax, and the people of fundry colours, and the ordinary colour like Indiana and tome white among them, and some cole-blacke. The Ilands of the Spicerie (which properly are called fo, because all the Pepper, Cloues, Sinza

mon, Ginger, Nutmegs, and Masticke that is spent in Europe, is brought from them) are ma. ny, though the molt famous of that Gulfeare fine small Hands vnder the Equinochiall in one hundred nintie foure degrees from the Meridian of Toledo, included in the morgage which the Emperor Charles the fitt made of them to the King of Poringall for three hundred and fiftie thous Of these tee L sand Duckets, which are Terrenate of eight ornine leagues compasse, with a Port called Tales. In Of their tee L. act, and other game, and in it raigned Corala, which yeelded himselfe for subject to the King of Castile, when Action of one of the Shippes that remained of Magelanes fleete found their llands. The Iland of Tidore flands one league from Terrenate to the South, it hath tenne leagues compasse. The Hand of Mail, or Mutier is of four leagues compasse, and is vnder the Equinoctiall, and Maquin three leagues See Magistres
Voyage. Tom, to the South, of feuen in compaffe, and tenne leagues to the South. Batan or Bagnian is twentie leagues in compasse. In the Iland of Tidore raigned Almanzor, which also gave himselfe for Certaine Tree subsect of the King of Castile, the which, and Carala did write and Iohn Sebastian of the Case. bearing a kind borne in the Village of Guitarea, in the Province of Guipuzcea brought their Letters; the which departing from Tidere in the years 1522 touched in the Hand of Zamatia, and going up to al-

departing from I tume in the Antarticke Pole, he arrived at the Iland of Saint I most fortie two degrees toward the Antarticke Pole, he arrived at the Iland of Saint I may of 20 the Greene Cape or Cabo Verde, and from thence to Simil with the Shippe called the Viting. having fpent leven moneths time little leffe in comming from the Iland of Tidore. Patien is the fift Iland like the other; Moores inhabited in it, and Gentiles alfo, which knew not the immortalitie of the foule. And when the Shippe of the fleete of Fryer Garcia of Loayfa came. Retame raigned in Tidore of thirteene yeares of age, and againe acknowledged the King of Cafile. and also the King of Gilolo called Sultan Abdertameniani, and confirmed it with an oath, Gilolo is an lland under the line foure leagues distant from those rehearsed; it is of two hundred leaves compasse, without Spicerie; the Iland of Ambon in three degrees and a halfe to the South, from the Iland of Gilolo without Spicerie. The Ilands of Bandan are in foure degrees of Southerneal titule, where the Nutmegge is gathered, and Mace; and the Burro, which is to the Westof Ambon, and Timor, another Hand to the South-west from Bandan, almost one hundred leagues, without Spicery, but richtof Sandalo, Zeinda, fiftie leagues from Timor, to the North-west of forty leagues compasse, plentiful of Pepper, and the Iland of Celebes, which is very great, & Borner great ter, neere the straight of Malaca, which is made in the firme Land; & Zamatia, which in old-time they called Taprobana. There be other manie great Hands, and small, which remains to the South fide, neere lana Maior & Misor, and to the North toward the coaft of Chyna : the Portneals have a fortreffe in Terrenate, and other in the Citie of Malaca at the entrie of the Archivelanus.

The Ilands Philippinas are a Sea of thirtie or fortie great Ilands, besides many other small ones which are together in leffe then two hundred leagues in length North and South, and one hundred in breadth betweene New Spaine, and the Gulfe of Bangala, and they are about feuenteene fa hundred leagues from the Port of the Natinatie in New Spaine, from fix to fifteene or fixteene degrees of Septentrional altitude, of a reasonable temperature; and plentiful of victuals, specially Cinamon and of Rice, and some base Gold in some places, and in some llands are Cinamon trees, and long long Pepper. The Countriemen are of a good shape, and in some Hands they are blacke, and those which line in the center of the Countrie are whiter then those that line in the Sea coasts. There are good Ports, and Timber for Shipping, the names of the principalleit Ilands are Mondow, which is the greateft, and most Southward, of a hundred leagues in length, and three hundred in compasse, a rough Countrie, but plentifull of Millet, Waxe, Rice, Ginger, and some Cinamon, and Mires of Gold, with good Hauens, and Rodes : the Hand of Good tokens, and Saint lobuleaning to Mundanas, on the East fide; of twenty leagues in length North and South; Bebol, ten leagues more to to Mindanas on the North fide, nineteene leagues in length.

The lland of Buglas or of Negros, by reason of those that are init, is in the middest of that Sea to the West, of fortie leagues in length North and South, and source een in breadth, and in her coast are some Pearles: the Hand of Zubs in the middest of all, of thirtie leagues in length North and South, and in it a Spanish Towne, called the Village of Iefus, on the East fide, with one good Hauen, beides other that are in the Hand, the Captaine Perdmando Magellanes discouered this !land, in the yeare 1520, the King yeelded then himfelfe for jubice to the Crowne of Cathe, and before he discouered the Ilands, which he called de las Velas Latinas, because they failed in In Mates it was their Shippes with fayles of Mats made of Palme tree leaves after the Latine fashion; and from where of them. Zubu Magellous went with the King, to warre against the King of Maran, in a little Hand close 60 to that of Zubuon the South fide, where being too valiant and confident he was flaine; and the Spaniards following their Voyage in demaild of the Hands of the Spicerie, they discovered Quepinds, Pubsen, and Burney, which is a great, rich, and plentifull Iland of Rice, Sugar; Goates, Swme, Cammels : it wants Whate, Affen, and Sheepe; it hath Ginger, Camphire, Mirabolans,

and other Drugges. Aluaro of Sannedra discovered also the Philippines, and tooke possession of them in the yeare 1527, for the Crowne of Caftile, which by order of the Marqueffe of the Val- Alaroof Scane them in the yeare 1527, for the Crowne or Lagrie, which by order of the Marquete of the Oale era took pol-ler went from the Port of Guitlaneio in New Spaine, in demand of the Hands of the Spicerie, and fellion of the particularly he was in Mindanao : and this digrettion hath not bin out of purpose,

Returning to the order of the Phillippines, there followeth the about fand Abayo, or Babay thirtie the Crowne of leagues in length North and South, and tenne in breadth, in which are good Mines, and Pearles. Cality, in the in her coast : Tandayala most famous of all, which for being first discoursed, is called Phillipine, years 1517. of which all take the name, in memory of the intincible King Don Philip the fecond. the Pradent. It hath fortie leagues on the North fide, and of the East North North-east, and South South-

west, and twelue leagues in breadth where most, with good Hauens and Roades : Marhat a meane Hand to the West of Tandaya, of seventeene leagues in length, and fifteene in breadth, with one Hauen: Mindore of fine and twentie leagues in length North and South, and halfein breadth: there is Pepper in it, and Mines of Gold the Hand of Luzan, called the New Caffele, as great or greater then Mindanao, the most Septentrionall of the Phillipines, in the which is built Manila, 2 The Cities Citie of Spaniards, with title of Famons, where the Gouernour, Officers of the goods, and cheft Manille Royall, and the Cathedrall are refident; it is a plentifell foyle of Victuals, with many Mines of Gold: the Hauen of this Citie is bad, and for all that there is great trafficke with the Chynas. which bring Porcelane Veilell, Tinfels, coloured filkes, and other Merchandize : Lucon hath in length two hundred leagues, and it is very narrow.

In all these Hands are many Mahometanes, wither they came by the East India, and could ea-20 fily plant their fall hood among it those blinde Gentiles. Captaine Magellanes as aboue faid disconered their Hands, the yeare 1 720, going with an Armie of the Crowne of Caffile, in fearch of the Hands of the Malucoes, and tooke possession of them, and afterward Michael Lopez of Legazaji made an end of discouering them, the yeare 1564. with an Armie which hee tooke from hauebeiore.

New Space, by order of the Vice-roy, Don Lewis of Uelasco: it is in ged that those Ilands 11000.llands. doe amount to eleauen thousand great and small. There are pacified about fortie of them, and converted more then a Million of men vnto the Catholike Faith, with fo many expences of the Growne Royall, not having had vntill now any profit from those Countries; for every Religious man of those that are sent thither, doth cost to set there one thousand Duckets. Those which hitherto have laboured in that Vineyard, with most great fruite of the soules, are

30 the Religious Dominicans, Franciscans, Barefooted, and Austine Fryers, and the Company of lefus; and from these Hands hath beene begun to bridle the Mahometans, which from the Coast of Afra went by little and little extending through these, and other Hands, and also to the (bi- Since, the Holnes and lapones, and the Portugals had already loft the Hands of the Malacos, if the Spaniards landers have of the Prominces of the Philippines had not holpen and fuocoured them divers times and ma-

There is already a plainer notice had of the Chynas, by the commerce of the Philippines, and China: fee our their riches and plency is knowne: it is of the richeft and mightieft Kingdomes of the World , former Relaand from Manila may be to the coast of China three hundred leagues, of eight dayes fayling, and tion,

the coast of that Countrie goeth running as to the North-east, more then seuen hundred leagues, from twentie one to twenty two degrees of Septentrional latitude, and vpward, and it is known that croffe over the Countrie in ward is a Voyage of five or fixe moneths, to the confines of Tar. taria; being a Countrie of great Cities, with many Townes, and the people politicke, and prepared for their defence, but not warlike, and the Coast much inhabited with maine Riuers, and good Hauens: it extends from feuenteene vnto fiftie degrees North and South, and East and West it occupieth two and twentie: the Citie of Paquin, where the King bath his Court, stands in fortie eight degrees of our Pole, it is diuided in fifteene Prounces, fixe Maritime, and nine Medicerrane; and the one are desided from the other with certaine Mountaines like the Pirineis, and there are but two passages whereby they doe communicate.

Thomas Perez Ambaffadour of the King of Portugal, was from Cantan to Nanghi four The Provinces Moneths, travelling alwayes to the North : and to the largenesse of this Kingdome is joyned the and Kingdoms plentie of the Countrie, which is great; for the which the multitude of the nauigable Rivers of thems. that do water it, are a help, where with it feemes a pleasant Forrelt or Girden, and the abundance is doubled by many wayes, for the Kings spare no cost to make the Countrie watered in enery place, outting great hile and making great Valleys plaine; and the heate not wanting in any place, for all the Countrie almost is contained in the bounds of the temperate Zone, nor the moiflure by the clemencie of tractire, and by the industrie of men it is incredibly all multiplied, and all being compelled to busis externs elius in femething, there is not one foote of ground left vn. profitable. In Canton among other notable things they fay there are a great number of blinde

omen that doel about in formerhing, every one as he is able, and being forbidden the going out of the Kingdome without litence, the which's never granted, but for a limited time it is necessary that the propagation increasing continually, the number of the people be without end. elbecially that they hold for a certaine, that for flue persons that doe dye, there are seven borne . and the purenesse of the ayre is so much, that they doe not remember, there hath beene any vni-

verfall plague, and with all these good things they have their troubles also, for there are earth. quakes that destroy whole Cities, disinhabit the Countrie, and suppresse the auncient Rivers and raife others, and doe make great Mountaines plaine, with a miferable misfortune of

The yeare 1555, there burst out of the intrailes of the earth such abundance of water, that is ouer-flowed the space of fixtie leagues, and destroyed seven Cities with their surifications. And this as touching the continent of China. There is through all the Coaff a multitude of !land: the greater part are voto vs vnknowne. Not farre from Nanqui, is the Cape of Lampo, the lland of Aluming, Abarda, Sumbar, Lanqui, and the Hand of Horfes, of the which no particular ne-tice is had. Paffing the Citie of Chincheo, stands Lamao, and a great number of Hands are about Cantan, and thefe are the most celebrated, Lantao, Macao, Veniaga, where is the Port of Tamo Lampacao, Sancoan, in all the which the King of China hath Garrifons on Sea and Land except in Lampacao which is not inhabited.

In Macao, by another name Macan, the Portugals have a Towne, and the Chinas knowing the valour of the Portugals, and the fauour they have of the Castillans of the Phillipines . Infler it with an eurll will, but the Portugals feeke to preferue themselues, for their profitable commerce in China. Sancon is thirtie leagues from Cantan, where foractimes the Portugali have touched, and no Iland of China is of greater importance then Anian in the mouth of the Gulfe of Cauchinchina, fine leagues from the Firme Land, and one hundred and eightie from the Phills. Ortera firme pines, and it is so bigge, that they affirme it to have thirtie Fortrefles; in it is a filing 20 for imall Pearles. It is aboundant of Victuals, and of many Fruits : vinder the Government of Cantan, the principall Port of China, and the Countrie men are große and rude people.

Japan is many Ilands divided with small armes of the Sea, in three and thirtie Kingdomes whose head is the Citie of Meace, distant variable from China, and they count from the Iland of Goto in Iapon to Liampo in China fixtie leagues, which is the neerest. The Laponer doe greatly moleft the Chinas, more with piracies, and thefts, then with just war, because lapan being divided in fundry Ilands, and divers Princes, they can make no warre against the Chinas, but with weake forces. They are more warlike and valiant then the Chinas: it is a temperate Countrie, plentifull of Seedes, Cattle and Fowle of Europe, it hath Mines of Iron and Steele: the Countrie men are firong, valuant, and for much labour : those Hands stand in thirtie five degrees of the Pole, little more or leffe, according to the diffance of every Hand. The Impones doe not understand the Chinas but by writing, because of the Characters, or Letters being one for them all, and though they

the figures of Arithmeticke, that if a 9, be fet, the French, the Castillan, and the English man doe understand it, that it signifieth 9. but every one doe name it after their owne fashion. By another fide the Lapones doe confine with the Phillipines, from whence there is commerce with them, and a great incouragement is given to the Fathers of the Company, for to labour in the concertion of the people of those Kingdomes, where notable fruite thath beene getten, for it the which these Ilands are much celebrated in the world, and by the comming of the Ambasiadours of the new Christendome to the Pope, and to the King Philip the second, the Prudent: and fo as nature placed them in a scituation separated from the rest of the Land, the men of that Region are differing in customes from other people. In the yeare 1592. Nobumanga which caufed himselfe to be called Emperour of Imper,interprised with eightie Vessels, and 20000, men, certaine Prouinces tributarie vnto China, and wan it.

fignifie the fame, they have not the fame name, for they are to declare things, and not words, a

From the lland of Simo, which is among them of I man the greateft is extended a row of small Ilands, called the Lequies, and doe prolong themselues toward the Coast of China; the two greater, which is enery one of fifteene or twentie leagues, neere the Coalt of Tapan, are called the greater Leguna, and other two also great, though not so much, which are at the end of the Rowe, they call Legma the leffer : some are inhabited of well shapen people, white, politicke, well apparel. 50 led, warlike, and of good reason, they abound in Gold more then others of that Sea, and not leffe in Victuals, Fruits, and good Waters. Neere vnto the lefter Leguio flands Hermo [a,or the beautiful Hand, which hath the same qualitie, and say it is as big as Sicilie.

Chap. 27. "He Coast of new Guiena beginneth one hundred leagues to the Bast of the Hand of Gilolo, in Of the new little more then one degree altitude, on the other fide of the Equinociall, from whence it is Guinea Hande of salaman, and prolonged toward the East three hundred leagues, till it come to five or fix degrees. It hathbeene doubted vitill now, whether it be an Hand or firme Land, because et doth enlarge it selte in fo great a Voyage from being able to loyne with the Countries of the Hands of Salomen, or Provinces of the Straight of Magellanes by the South fide; but this doubt is refolued with that which to those do afterne that failed out the South fide of the Straight of Magelanes, that that is not a 500-1 The Loga or. tinent, but Ilands, and that prefently followeth a spacious Sea, and among those that decaffement: Sit K. Hawen, is Sir Rubard Hawkins, an English Knight, which was fine and forcise dayes among the fame Hands. station of what only in the re-

From the Sea the Land of this doubt of Guiness feemeth good, and the men that have been feene are cole black, and in the coast are many llands with good roads, and ports whereof is no particu- llands and larnotice; for having failed it few times, those which are found in some earls are Agnada or the coaff of Guing watering to the East thirty fine leagues from the first Land, with one degree of Southern altitude : and eighteene forward the port of Saint lames, and the Hand of the (refper of fixteene leagues long neere the coaft, right against the Port of Saint Modrey, and neere to it the River of Saint Peter and Saint Paul, before the Port of Saint therem, and a finali Iland never the athruft out Point, a Or could 40. leagues from S. Austin, which they call of Good perco, and more forward from it, the Shelter, built Puntifeand Enill people, two little Hands, and the Bay of Samt Nicholas, fiftie leagues from Proce afalida, lida and among other lands one of white men, and the Mother of Godbefore Good Baye, and of the Burna per Nativitie of our Lade, the left of that which is discontred, and as to the North from it the Care

mana, an Hand without in the Sea among others which have no name. The Meridionall coaft is not wet known the first that discovered the new Guine was Aluare of Samedra being loft with many flormes from his course, returning to new Spain, when in the year 1 c27, the Marques of the Valley tent him that on that fide he frould feek the llands of the Spicerie. The Hands of Salomon are eight hundred leagues from Pra, & the opinion that is weld of their Hands of Sale riches, gave them this name, the which properly are called of the Well, because they fal to the West mon from the Prouinces of Pira, from the place that Almere of Mendoga made discourry of them by order of the Licentiate Lope Garcia de Caftro his Vnckle, Gouernor of the Kingdomes of Pira, in the

20 years 1567, the first that saw the Land of these Hands was a yong man, called Tree, in the top of Ship: they are from feuen degrees of altitude on the other fide of the Equinoctiall about 1 500. leagues from the Citie of the Kings, they are many in quantity & greatnes, and eighteen the most famous, some of 300. leagues in compasse, and two of 200. and of 100. and of 50. and thence downward, befides many which are not yet made an end of coaffing, and they fay that they might beaconfinent with the coalt of the new Guiney, and the Countries to be discovered toward the West of the itraight; the Countrie of these Hands feemeth of a good temper, and habitable, plentifull of victuals, and Cattell: there were found in them fome fruits like those of Caltele. Swine & Hens in great number; the Countrie men tome of a brown colour like Indians, others white & ruddie, and fome cole blacke, which is an assument of continuance with the Countries of the new Guinie whereby there may fo many differences of memple be maingled of those which refort to the Hands of the Spicery.

The great of and most renowned are Santha Tfabel, from eight to nine degrees of altitude, of more then 150 leagues in length, and eighteene in breadth, and one good port called of the Star : Saint George or Borbi to the South of S. I Jabel one leagun and whalfe, of thirty leagues compalle Saint Marcos, or Saint Niebolas of one hundred leagues compate to the South-east of Saint Ifabel: 1de Arreifes the Hand of the Shelnes as great as the former to the South of Saint I fabel and Saint I erome to the West of 100 leagues compalie; and Guadalcanal to the South-west greater then all: and to the East of Saint I abel, the Hand of Buenauista, and Saint Dimes, and the Hand of Florida of twenty d Or Good Bibs. leagues circuit every one; and to the East of it, the Hand of Ramos of 200. leagues compasse, and Qr Boughes. necre to it Malayta, and f Arregueda of thirty, and the three Maries, certaine little Hands, & the for Francice. Hand of Saint lobs of twelve leagues compaffe betweene the Arreguads and the Hand of S. lames to the South. Malata of 100. leagues circuit, and to the South-eaft of 1t, the Iland of Saint Christopher as bigge as it : and Saint Anne, and Saint Catherine, two small Hands fall by it : the Name of God a small Hand diffiant from the other fiftie leagues, in fewen degrees of altitude, and in the same "Hift

Rumbe to the North of Saint Ifabel, the Shelmes, which they call of & Candeloria. There is in the voiage that as made from Pine to the Hands of Salomon, an Hand called of S. Paul. in fifreen degrees of altitude, 700. leagues from Pun, nineteen degrees, 200 leagues of Land, others which may be those that they called of Salomon, and they say also that they might be others which this little while have beene discourred in the same Rombe of Chit.

The llands of the Theenes are a row of 16, smal Hands together which runne North and South, with the middelt of the coast of Guiney, from twelve degrees of altitude vitto feventeene Septentrionall or more, not farre from the Phillippines to the East. They are all barren ground, and miferable, without Cattle, or Mettals, fcarce of Victuals, inhabited with poore people, well flupen, naked, and much inclined to steale, even to the nayles of the Shippes that came there, whereby Magelene named them of the Themes, in the yeare 1 520. when he came to them going in demand of the Spicerie. Their names are, the English, the most North, and after it Ora Ladwige. M.10. Chemechoa Gregua, Agan, ot Pagan, Oramagan, Gugman, Chareguan, Natan, Saepan, Bo- La inelefa. ta. Volia. There are among their Hands Philipmes, other eighteene or twenty, called of the The Kngs. 60 Kings, Archipelagus, or llands of the Corrall and the Gardens, another quantity of little llands, llands of teral and Pialogo, Saint Vilan, another little lland, the Gardens, and the Iland of the Matalores, and that of the Spelues, and of Saint lohn, or of Palmes, neere the Maluces, and on the North fife of the hor Enill bane Theenes, fine or in little Hands together, called the h Volcanes, where is store of Cochittilla; and "A Tree fo i Maloelo another small Iland, where are "Cinaloes very fine, and on the East fide of the Theener, called.

deth that

the two Sifters, two little llands in ten degrees, and Saint Bartholomen in foureteene and more S. Bartholomen S. S. Bartholomen.

Marin.

toward new Spaine, the Shelnes, Look bow thon goeft, Take away fleep, or See thou fleep not; & neere in toward new Spaint, the Spaint, and Saint Paul, another small Hand with shelues, and the imbabited the Marin them the same of same of Samedra was also in the lland of the Threner, in the yeare 1527 returning from the Hand of Spicerie to new Spaine.

Chap. 28. the fpirituall tronage. Counfell of

"He Catholike King of Castile, and of Lyon continuing in their auncient, and Christian piete. pretently after these new Countries were discourred, and toyned with this faire Monarchie Of the uprem A preturn y area to clearly and fettle the Catholike Religion in them, and temporall pollicie, with 10 mash procured to plant and settle the cannot these Kingdomes. For as the discoveries did increase the care and adure of the wifelt men of these aninguouses, for as the unconclus and uncrease the butineffes, they formed a particular Counfell with Prefident and Councellours, that buffing is commenter, and the state of the tained to the lettuce of our sous sous, and from the beginning have laboured, and ferred in mention main be made of the Indies, which hath carried fo great a waight vinto this prefent house, the upresume Country of the spiritual and temporal government, and the rest worth the knowing. that the order of that Monarchie may be understood, with all breuitie, The first thing that these godly Kings did charge and command the first Discouerer, and from

the first thing that there goals a line sourcers and Governours of that new World with very firaight orders, was that they should procure that the people which they carried, with the Chrifleaght orders, was true truey incomes, should give such example to the Indians, that they might a be glad to insitate them, and should binde them vnto it; entring first according to the Eusnetis call Law, the religious men preaching it, that fo rather with the iweetness of it, then with the force and noy fe of Armes it should be admitted, and that justice should be administred with sigh equalitie to all men, that it might be much respected & esteemed. All went forward, the towns went augmenting in fuch manner, that with the zeale of the feruice of God, and good of the men's hath come to fuch a point, that at this day there are found built and effablished in all that Orie of this Crowne postessed, as before hathbeene scene, fine Archishopricks, swentis fenen Biloprick, two famous Vninerfires, where with great learning and doctrine al the Sciences are read, more than fence bundred Monasteries of religious Dominicks, Franciscans, Augustines, Mercenaries, and the feet concern secondary and the secondary secon Converts, and Heremites, and Chappels in the high-way erelled on pillars, baning Crucifixes in them, without number. All the which was begun at the charge of the Crowne, and at this day it goeth forward where there is no maintenance for it. In effe A, this Catholike pietie by the clemency of God goeth from good to better, augmenting with to much reverence and honour of God, that in no place of Christendome it is done with more order or care, by the care of the supreme translator had, Councell of the Indee. Of the which is inferred, that the Concession of the Apostolike Roman Set sine bath Pa- made to the frome of Cafile, and of Lim, of the Patronage Ecclesiaficall of that new World was a very great remedie, in the which our Lord God (as Hee which onely is Hee that feeth, and presentethall things to come) did a thing worthy of His greatnesse, seeing Hee hathshewed the 40 experience that if this had beene governed otherwise, it had beene impeffible to have proceeded with the harmonie, and even concent as it hath, of Religion, Juffice, and Government, with fo much obedience and quietneffe.

How the Ec-Patronage is

Archbishop

ri.ks, Bifhop-

ricks, Mona-

Doctrine are

res is faid to

fteries, and

The Eccletiasticall Patronage is gonerned in the same manner that in the Kingdome of Graneda, the Kings Cath-like prefenting to the chiefe Bishop onely the Archbishops, and Bishops, that from his holy hand they may receive these Prelacies, and may dispatch their Bulls, procuring alway that they be persons of a religious life, and great learning. All the other Dignities and Benefices are prouided by the King, and confultation of the supreme Council of the ludies, and they go not to Rome for Buls : and their rents confift in turnes and first fruits which arise of the Speni inhabiters. For in the most places of thele ladies the Countrie men paie not, and where the tithe 10 are wanting, it is supplied out of the goods royall: and touching the tithes and first fruits that are to be paied, many ordinances and rates are made according to the stile of these Kingdomes, that the men of each Colony, it is just it Gould follow her customes. And though the Kings of Castile, and of Lymare Lords of the tithes by Apostolike concession, & might take them to himselfe, supplying where it wanteth with that which in other places doth exceede, he leaueth them to the relates & Chusches, progiding of his own goods Royall with the liberality of fo Catholik Pris ces, to all the necessities of the poore Churches, giving to every one that is built anew the greatest part of that which is spent in the building, with a Chaliz, a Bell, and a painted Table.

Of langes

That the diffribution of that which proceedeth of the titles, and of that which is bestowed out of the goods Royall in maintenance of the Prelates, Dignities, and Or that which is Delicated 65 Churches, and Benefices, Cures, and persons that are occupied in the divine Service, and instructing of the Indian, may be fruitfully imploied according to the holy intention of the Kings; the fupreme Counsell hath made good ordinances. First, that all the faid persons be of an approved life and customes, & especially those that doe med. He in the Dastrines, being first examined touching

CH AP. I. Ecclesiasticall Government and spiritual provisions in and for the Indies. 900

learning, and after in the language of the Indians; for it would little auaile, that the Disciples thould not understand the Maister : and that these do continually reside : and that no Gurate, or Teacher may have two Benefices; and that those which shall from these parts passe to the Indies be more appround, it is commanded that no Priest doe passe without licence of his Prelate and of the King, and that if any be there found without it prefently they should fend him to Spaine.

And that the manner how she Royall Fatronage is gouerned may better be understood, feeing. He con inuch it appertaineth to this Crowne, because that it hath discovered and acquired that New World; and the governehath also built and endowed, out of the goods Royall, so many Churches, & Monasteries, as by the Eccles in the Apostolike concession, that for no cause the said patronage, nor any part of it, either by custome, or Patronage. 10 prescription, or other title may be separated from iteit is ordained what care the Vice-roies. Counfels, Gouernors, & Rulers, are to have in it, and what penalties the transgressors should incur. First. that no Cathedrall or Parish Church, Monasterie, Hotpitall, nor votice Church, should be founded

without confent of the King. That when in the Cathedrall Churches there are not foure Bene- Or Pentiment fixed me, refulent, prouided by royall presentation, & canonicall provision of the Prelate, because the other Prebends be voide, or absent for more then eight moneths (though for a lawfull cause.) The Gid Prelate, till such time as the King doth present, may chuse to the accomplishing of the foure Clarks (besides those that are prouided and resident) of the most sufficient of those that shall offer themselves, without that the faid provision be in Titule (to be removeable at pleasure) & that they have no feate in the Quire, not voice in Countell. That no Prelate may make canonicall in-

of fitution, nor give possession of any Prebend, or Benefice, without presentation Royall, & in such a case that without delay they make the prouision, and command to refort with the fruits. That in all the dignities, & Prebends, the learned be preferred before the vulcarned, and those which have ferued in the Cathedral Churches of Cafile, and have more exercise of the service of the Quire, before them that have not ferued in them. That at the least there be presented for every Cathedrall Church a graduate Lawyer, & a Dinine for the Pulpet, with the obligation that in the feKingdoms the doctoral Canons, & Magistrates haue; & another learned Dinine to read the facred Scripture: and another Lawyer or Dinine for the Cannonship of Pennance, according to the facred Counfell of Trent. That all the other Benefices, Cures, and timples, fecular, and regulars, and the Ecclefialticall Offices that shall be voide, or prouided anew. That they may be made with leffe delay, and the 30 Royall patronage may be preferred, it is commanded that they be made in the forme following.

That any of the abouefaid Benefices, or Offices being voide, the Prelate shall command to make edicts with a competent tearme, and of those that shall offer themselves having examined them, and being informed of their behaulor, shall name of the best; and the Vice-roy or Gouernor of the Province, that chuse one and remit the election to the Prelate, that he make the provision, Collation and Cannonicall inflitution by way of recommendation, and not in a perpetuall title, fo that when the King doth make the presentation, and in it shal be expressed that the collation be made in a perpetual title, the Canonical Inflitution shall be in title, and not in recommendation : and the presented by the King be alwayes presented before the presented by his Ministers.

That in the repartitions, and Towns of the Indians, and other places where they have no bene- Provision of 40 fice to elect, or means to place one to administer the Sacraments, the Prelates shall procure there the Prebends be one to teach the Dollrine, making an edich, and having informed himselfe of his sufficiency and and Benefices goodnes, he shall lend the nomination to the Ministers Royal, that they do present him one of the two nominated, and if there be but one, that, and in the vertue of such a presentation the Prelate shall make the provision, giving him the instruction how he is to teach, and commanding him to give notice of the fruits. That in the presentations of all the dignities, offices, and benefices, the helt deferring, and that most exercised in the conversion of the Indians, and the administration of the Sacraments shall be prouided; which, & those that best speak the language of the Indians, shall

be preferred before the other. That he which shall come or fend to request his Maieflie to present him to some dignitie, office, or benefice, shall appeare before the Ministers of the Pronince, and de-50 claring his petition, he shall give information of his kindred, learning, customes & sufficiency, and the Minister shall make another of his office, and with his opinion to fend it, and that the pretendant do bring also an approbation from his Prelate; for without these diligences those that come shall not be admitted. That none may obtaine two Benefices, or dignities in one, or in fundry Churches. That the presented not appearing before the time contained in the presentation before Chap. 29. the Prelate, it shall be voide, and they may not make him a Cannonicall institution.

BEfides that which is rehearfed, it is prouided that they doe not permit any Prebendary in the of Mendacea.

One of Mendacea.

Cathedrall Churches, to emby the rents of it, except it be feruing & being refident; and that id-of the the Benefices of the Indians be Cures, and not imples and that in the new discoueries, and plan-matried; and 60 tations that shall be made, there be presently an Hospitall built for the poore, and sicke persons, of of the boy of fickneffee that are not contagious, which shall be placed neere the Temple, and for a Cloyfter fee of she holy of the same; that for the ficke of contagious diseases, the Hospitall shall be set that no hurtfull winde passing by it doe strike in the other inhabiting, and if it be built on a high place it will Buiking of an be better. And because the King being informed that goods of the descassed in those parts do not Hospitall.

all Governe-

2 ... 5 1

come fo wholly as they might, nor to foone to the hands of the heyres, by will of the faid deces fed, for many causes, whereby the heires received great damage, and the testaments were not ner Orders for the formed; for a femedy, it was provided, that what foeuer Spaniard shall come to any Vallage, of Fowne of their parts, he shall prefent himselfe before the Clarke of the Countell, where he shall Regifter the name, and furname of fuch a one, with the place of his aboad or birth, that his design happening it may be knowne where those that are to be his heires may be found. That the ordinate nary fustice; with the most auncient Ruler, and the Clark of the Counsell shall take charge of the goods of the persons that shall dye, and shall set them in an Inventorie, before a Scrivener and Wir. helfest and the debts that he did owe, and were owing him, and that which is in Gold & Silier. nemer and uter things finall be fold, and put in a Cheft of three Locks, whose Keyes the three persons about aid shall keepe. That the goods be fold in a publike out cry, with the Left to mony of a Scriuener : that if neede be an Atturney shall be constituted. That the faid Justices de take occompt of all those that have charge of dead mens goods, and recover all that they are be hinde hand without any appeale, and doe put it in the Cheft of the three Keyes. That hauling any Will of the deceased where he dyeth, and the Heires or Executors, the luftice fiall not mediled any thing, neither take the goods, taking only notice who be the Heires of the laid deceased The the faid Justices, Rulers, and Scriveners doe fend also to the Contrataction-house of Scuil, all the which they shall recover of the goods of the deceased, declaring the name, surname, and aboad of of enery one deceased, with the Copy of the Inventory of his goods, that they may be given to his Herres, by the order that touching the fame is given. That when they take accompt of those that haus had goods of men deceased, it shall be sent to the supreme Counsell of the Indies, with a very particular relation, and reason of all. That the Instices doe with care enforme themselves carefully of those which have in polletion the goods of men deceated, whether they have done any fraude and prejudice to the goods they have had in possession, & fend to the Counsel notice thereof the they may give accompt with paiment to the Iultices about faid. That accompt be given every veere and the memoriali of the dead that have beene that yeere shall be shewed to the Governor of the Country, & of the goods they had, that they may be fent to Senil, & be given to his heires. and the Teltaments be fulfilled, with good accompt and reason that is behoouefull. For in every Counfell, one of the Justices is Judge of the goods of the deceased, the one succeeding another, from the vongest to the eldest, by their turne, which dothsend his Commissaries through the bounds to take accompt of the houlders, and there be any careleffeheffe, the Iustices are charged therewithin the vilitations which are made of them, and before when there are any Plaintifes.

Those Catholike Kings being informed that in the Indies were many married Spaniards, which Touching marrid men. Incel Separated from their wices, of the which, befoles the offence that was done to our LordGod, there followed a great inconvenience to the Plantation of those Countries, for that such not liting feated in them, were not continued, neither did they attend to build, plant, breed, nor fowing, nor doing other things, which the good inhabiters are wont to doe, whereby the Townes doe not increase, as is behoofefull, and as they would do if there came inhabitors with their wines & childremas true Townsmen; being willing to remedy the abouesaid, commanded that all and every person or persons that should be found to be married, or betrothed in these Kingdomes, should 40 come vnto them for their wives, and not returne to the Indies without them, or with fufficient proof that they are dead. And the fame order was given for all the Kingdomes, of that new world, and fundry times hath beene reiterated, and commanded to be executed upon grieuous penaltus.

The holy Of-

Proceeding from the yeare 1492, when the discouery of this Orbe was begun, in directing and fetling the spirituall gouernment, as hath beene seene, for greater perfection, and enduring of it: The Catholike King Don Phillip the second, called the Prudent, confidering that among the great benefits that the Indians have received, their illumination to receive the Evangelicall Doctrin was the greatest, which hath extended it selfe, and considering also the singular grace which God for his mercy hath vied with them, in giving them knowledge of our holy Catholike Faith; that it was necessary to have a speciall vigilancy in the conseruing of the deuotion, and reputation of the so inhabitors, and Castillane pacifiers, which with so many labours procured the augmenting of the Religion, and exalting of the Catholike Faith (as in those parts like faithful & Catholik Christians, and good naturall and true Castillans they have done) & seeing that those which are out of the holy Catholike & Apostolike Roman Church, obstinate, and stubborne in their errors, and heresies, do alwayes procure to peruert the faithful Christians, labouring to draw them to their falle opinions, feattering certain damned Books, wherof hath followed great hart to our facred Religion; and beuing fo certain experience that the best meanes to preuent these euils, confisteth in the separating the communication of heretical persons, punishing their errors, according to the disposition of the sacred Canons & laws of these Kingdoms (which by this holy means, by the dunine elemency have beene preserved from this wicked contagion, and is hoped they will be preserved hereafter) to the & end that the Orbe doe not receive fo much hurt, where the inhabiters of these Kingdomes have given to good example of Christianity, & the Country-born have not percerted themselves with erronious doctrines of the hereticks: It feemed good to his Maiestie, with the aduice of the Cardinal D. James of Espinosa, Bulhop of Signença, Inquisitor generall in these Kingdoms, a man of great

prudence, and of many rare parts and vertues, for the which he hade election of his person, to help him to beare the burden of to many Kingdomes, and Lordships, and of the Counsels of the holy. and generall Inquisition, and of the supreame Counsell of the Indies (for it behoued to place one Counfell of the holy Office in Mexico, for the Kingdomes of New Spaine, and the reft of the Indies of the North, and another in the Citie of the Kings, for the Kingdomes of Pirm, and the adherents, which are called the Indies of the South) which the authority that the Councels of thefa Kingdomes haue, fo that as yet they should not meddle with the cases of the Indians, but onely of the Castillanes, & other Nations that should be found in the Indies, and so that the appeals should come to the impreame Countell that is relident in this Court, as it is done in Spaine, and in the accomplishing thereof, in the yeare 1570, the King Don Phillip the second, called the Pradent, 22ue 2 generall power to the Towne of Madrid, the 16.0f August, that the Apostolike Inquisicours that should be named for the present, and for hereafter against the hereticall peruersnesse, & Apoltacie : and the Officers and Ministers necessary for this holy Office, which was commanded to be seated in the Cities of Mexico, and of the Kings, should exercise & vie their Offices, and royall warrants, that Don Martin Enriques, and Don Franciscau of Toledo, Viceroyes, and Captains generall in the Kingdomes of New Spaine, and Pirm, and the Counfels, and Iuftices, Gouernours, and other persons

should give all side and faccur to the holy Offices, and the inquisitors, and Officers were nomina-

ted; as in their owne place shall be spoken more at large.

Hele Catholike Kings, most wisely constituted the Supreme Counfell of the Indies, that they Chap. 20. Thinks Camounter rungs, more weary commenced in a supreme compress of one analyst, trace cities (Chap. 3.0.

might helpe chem to better to great a flutton, as is salready the government or that Orthe, and Orthe forms the Countiell constitutes in one or Profident, and eight or more Commission, as necefficiar requireth, with one Atturner, Secretaries, Clerkes of the Chamber, Relators, and other Officers, and an Office of Acone Attuney, Secretaria, Correct of the goods Royall of those parts. And that proceeding might fell of the inbe according to rule and order, they declared first that the Counsell should meet three hours seuery day in the morning, and two in the afternoone, three dayes in the weeke that been o holy Infliction of ry day in the manants, and there the Warrants that should be delinered for these Kingdoms; but the Counsels, that those that were for the dadies, should have the feale Royall: and that in those parts it should and Chanceries that those supreme intriduction, and might make Lawes, and Decrees, to see and examine whatsoener parts. Statutes, Conflictions of Prelates, Senates, Chapters, and Concerts of the Religious, and of the

Vice-royes, Courts, and Counfels; and that in the Indies, and in thele Kingdoms, in matter dependant of them it should bee obeyed: that the government of the ladies should bee like this of thefe Kingdomes, and that more in particular the Counfell doe occupie it felfe in the matters of government. That in Suiters remitted those of the Councell Royall shall come to give their voyces Appealen to that of the Indies, and that two voyces that make a Sentence infinites of 500. 4 Pefos, or vnder. That there be a fecond Supplication in a cafe of 10000. Pefos : that they deale not in the reparti- dWhich is 1000 That there be a tecond supplication in whate or roccifies well peruled in the Courts according to a Pound English tions of the Indians in those pares, but the Processes well peruled in the Courts according to a raking two Ry Law. called of Malinas (for there it was made) they shall come to the Supreme Counfell: touch- als serone shill. ing order to be held in matters of feruices, that the Counfell doe fee them all; and in matters of ling.

40 rewards, that which the greatest part doth determine, shall be done, and that in these there be a Supplication, and that no expedient fuite be feene the third time : and that in the matters they doe resolute with breuitie, that the charges be given to the best deserving, and that they be not giuen to the allied and kinfmen of them of the Counfell; neither may fuch bee Solicitors, nor Atturneys; in the prouidings of the Offices no price shall be admitted: nor that they of the Countries; fell have any Indians of repartition, and they shall assist in their houses, that the Suiters may find them there, when they goe not to Counfel; and that due fettery be kept in all things, and about e Which as we all that the Counfell haue a particular care of the Conversion and good Instruction of the Indians, accompt 441. and of the spiritual government; and that of * 600000. Marmed z yoward the appeale shall come pound § shill to the Countell; that they may appeale from the Sentences in the sue Cases of naturall death, or lings and one; 50 mayming of a member, or other bodily punithment, publike shame, or racking, and the appeales

thall come to the Counfell, with many other laudable orders, which are omitted for breuties fake. That the President being a learned man, shall have a voice in matters of Government, gratuities, He continues and fanours, rifications, and accompts, and not in fuits, because he may be the more free for the the orders of government of the Counfell; and being vulcarmed he shall have no voice, but in matters of grace, the suprement gouernment, and fauour, and that he may affemble the Counfell in his owne house, and have a noate of the businesses, and that the Counsellours doe not accompany with the Suitors. And because it seemed a necessary thing that one Fiscal or Atturney should assist in Counsell, it was commanded he should have the same stipend that the Counsellours, and that they deliver him the dis-60 Patches of the Office, that he have a care to know how that is accomplished which is prouided for the Indies; that necessary Papers be given him for his Office, that he doe fee the visitations before Counfell: that he have a book to register all the capitulations that are taken with the King, another wherein he may fet down the Atturneys Pleas : that he delay not the fults: that his demands, or those that are against him be admitted, if the Counsel think it good: that he keep a book

of that which is concluded for the cafes; that he have a care to know the Officers that doe omit

Ffff 2

to fend a relation every yeere to the Counfell.

012 The severall Spanish-Indian Courts, their Residences and iurisdictions. LIB.V

Ir flicution of the Courts royall of the

Having ordained all that which appertaineth to the Counfell, which is the head of this Go. uernment, with many other orders which are not rehearfed for breuitie; they proceeded in ordering all the Prouinces of the Indies, in the matters of inflice, as neede required; and thefe Catholice Kings defiring the common good of that new world, that their fubices that should posselle it, hauing a zeale to the feruice of our Lord God, good, profit, & eafe of the faid Subiects, & to the Peace. and queeneile of the Towns, as the King is bound vnto God, and to them, for to accomplish with the Office that he hath in earth, hee thought good to command to place the Cours and Royali Chanceries, that (as hath beene faid) are in the Indies, with the Statutes, and orders that hath beene given them, that the Ministers may doe their office, and instice be well administred, and the Townes obtained the benefit pretended.

the Hi parro a. Or Ordinary The Court of

Mexico.

The first Court that was established, was in the Citie of Saint Dominicke in the Hand Historie la. with one Prelident a learned man, though now because of the warre he is a Souldiour, with the the of Captaine Generall, and foure lustices that beare rods, like an a Alcalde, and deale in citals and criminall matters, in a degree of apeale, and in the inftance in matter of Court, and the Orie uernment is onely commended to the President (which now is Iri. Don Antonio Office and the limits thereof. The fecond Court was established in the Citie of Mexico, in New Spaine: the first President which was Nunyo of Gueman, had mourthoritie, for he was placed butfur a fee fon: with the fecond Court, the Bishop D Sebailian Ramirez (for he was fo in the Court of His pantola) he had the Gouernment of the Kingdomes, and the supreame authoritie, and hee left that, established that which belonged vinto it, and vinto rustice, as at this prefent it is. The Prefer to dent of clas Court is the Vice-roy (which now is the Earle of Monterney) there are eight lather which doe in gein civil matters, and in the appeale of the cases of government which the Vice. roy ettablilitin. There are three luft.ces of criminal cafes, which bear and deale in criminal cales, and two Atturnies, one of civill, another of Eriminal Caules, and hee prouiderh the Release charges that are not referred to the King, and the other Officers, and helpes of coft in releafes and vacacions in the limits of this Court of Mexico, and in that Countell of new Galicia, The third Court was that of Panama in Terra firme for this name was given to it, because it was

the first place where from the llands the Castillanes went to inhabite, and as their common speech

was to lay that they went and came from the Firme Land, though other Prosinces were found

wherewith the Kings commanded it should be called: and when the affaires of Pers grew gree-

ter, in the yeare 1542. It was thoughe good that this Court should be removed to the Citie of

The Kings, where the Vice-roy (which how is Dor Louis of Velageo) hath at his charge thego-

of the Kings eight luthices, three luthices of Court, and twee Atturneys; in the fame order as in

Mexico: and the Vice-roy is refident in the Citie of the Kings, and is the Prelident of this Court

in the firme land of that Orbe) this Prouince continued this name, loofing that of Castilla del Ore. 3

The Court of

Wherefore it was called Terva firme.

Court of the uernment of their limits, and that of the Courts of the Churcas and Queto. There is in this Court

The Court of

The Court of

and shall be in the other two, when he is prefent in them, and doth dinide all the repartitions of Indians that are voide in the bounds of them. The fourth Court was established in the Province of the Confines; and feeming it was needlesse it was diffulued, and the yeare 1 970. it was established againe in the Citie of Saint lames, of the Kingdome of Gnatemala: in it is one President which is the Doctor Criados Cafile: foure Inflices with rods, and one Attorney. They fit on civil and criminall cases, in appeales, and in the first instance : in matters of Court the President onely hath the Government, and assigneth the Indians, prouideth the Rulerships, and other Offices temporali. The fift Court was established in the Citie of Santa Fe de Bog ata ar the new Kingdoms of Granada, with one Prefident which The Court of now is the Doctor Francisco de Sande) foure Inflices with rods and one Actorney, with the same the new King authority that the former, The fixt was established in the Civie of Guadalaura, of the new King-The Court of dome of Galleria, with one Regent, three chiefe Juftices, which dispatched a great while withthe new King out Seale, and the matters increasing, the Seale was given, and a Register, and a President was pladome of Gricial ced, which now is Doctor Sandrage de Vera: and three Inflices with rods, one Atturney, and the Viceroy of New Spain hath the Government. The federath Court, was placed in the Citie of Sail Francis of Quite, of the Province of Pira, where there was also a Regent, chiefe Iustices without Seale, and afterward the Court was established with a President (which now is the Licentiat Mignel de V warar) with three Inflices with rods, & one Atturny with the fame faculty of Guadelaiara, the government, & the rest remaining to the Vice-roy of Pirm, as about faid. The eight Court was in the Citie of the Plate, in the Prosince of the Chareas, with a Regent and chiefe Inflices:after there was placed a Prefident, foure Inflices with rods, Atturney, Scale, and Register, and now is President the Licentiat Cepeda, with referuation of the prouiding the charges, and the rest to the Sc.a Soldiout. Vice-roy of Pirw. The night Court, is that which was chablished againe in the Citie of Panama, The Court of with a President of Sword and Cloake, because of the matters of warre, which is now Don Alons to che Philipine. de Setomajor, with the title of Captaine Generall of Terra firme : there are three Iustices with roddes, which doe deale in Appeales of civill and criminall cases, and at first instance in matters of Court, and it hath onely the Gouernment. In the Citie of Saint lames, of the Promince of Chile, was placed the tenth Court, and because it feemed needeleste, it was diffolned, and a Gouernour was provided, which dependeth on the Vicerovide Rivs. In the Citie of the Philippinas, called Manila, was a Court, and it was ulfoloed because it tremed needelchie: a few yeares fince it was established againel, with a Cantaine Generall which is Don Peter of Acres a which is President, and foure lutices, and one Acturney, with the fame authorstic that the other Courts. For the Catholico Kings of Caffile, with the adulte of the funreme Councell'of the Indies, doe alwayes proude with a fincere and just minde; that which: is consequent for the preferration and augmenting of the spirituall and temporall things of those parts, without any (pare of expenses, or labor; and every Court hath according to she wie of their Kingdomes, Secretaries, Relators, Sargeants, Porters, and the Officers which are necessaries.

Kingsomes, occretaines, assessories, one general concernant one Officers remainded and the Chap. 27.

The hast opine and agreement of this great Monarchier is sluch, that to enery Minifter hack. Chap. 27.

The hast opine the authoritie that as well by realou of erlare, as for the reputation of inflice. Of the things hath feemed to be conuenient, referring to the supreme Maieste that which hath beene indeed that are prominaturacement, see connection in the first to the Vice-royes and Prefilents, that they may have to preme Counreward the well-deferuing, and they be more respected, there are Offices affigned which they cellof the Inmay produide, and masters wherein they may gratine, under the quounding of the Person Royall des with cold have remayned, wish confidention of the furreme Counsell of the littles the offices following.

For the Kingdome of Chie a Governoor and a learned Justice; with facultie to incommend or Kings. authorifente Indians, anotherior Tucuman, with the fame facultie; another for the Provinces of The Boulen. 20 She River of Place, tor Popayan, Saulta Mariba, Cartagona, and Verague, weth their Governour mens which Rhe River at Plate, for Popayan, Santa Mariba, Cartagona, and Foragene, with their Goulf, one: in every one with the fame power. In the Provinces of Nicaragua, and the Rich Goaff, one: in und thin the the lland of Cuba one Gouemour, and Captaine which is relident in the Citie of Saint Christe- Indian. pher of the Auna ; there are beiidesthe Gouernours of the Hand of Saint John of Porte-rico, Venezuela, Soconusco, Tucatan, Cozumel, and Tabusco, which is all one government with authoritie to commend the Indiana. His Maieftie promiderh allo the governments of Hondaras, the Margarite, Florida , new Bisquie, Darado, those of the new Realme of Lion, and that of Pacamoras, Tquallange, which are for terme of life, and the fame in the Protinces of Choco, Quixos, the Cynamon, Hands of Salotnon, Sanita Cruz of the Hill, and the last is that of the new Andalufia. Likewife there are prouided by his Maieftie the Ruletfhips following. The Cuzco, the Citie ThoRuletfhire

20 of this Plate, and the feate of the mynes of Posefi, and the proutnee of Chicuite, the Ander of Cue-thickins Maicco, the citie of Truxilla, Arrequipa, Saint lames of Guayaquil, Guamanga, the citie of the Peace, flie doth pro-Chiquiabo, Saint lobro of the Frontier, Lion of Guanuco, Old Haven, Zamora, the inhabiting of the uide, mynes of the Zacatecas in new Galiera, Euenca, Loxa, Tunja, the citie of Mexico, the citie of the Kings, the profince of Nicoya. Chiefe Inflicethips, are those of the village of Saint Saniour of the province of Gnatemala, the inward part of Haff aniolis, Nombre de Dios, the village of Challetes, prounce of the Chiana, Zapotlican, the village of Mata, Santia Marie of the victorie in Tabafca. of God. And the chiefe Bayliwickes are, in the citie of Saints Dominiche in Mexico, in Guadalogara, Saint lames of Guatemala, Panama, holy Faith of Bogota, Saint Francis of Quito, the citie of the Kings, the Plata, Inche Cities recited in every one is a chiefe Bayliefe, which hath a voice in Councell 40 as a R. ler, and Deputies named , for the vicof his Office , and in every Court is another chiefe

Bay liefe with facultie to name other two Deputies. For the government of the goods Royall are provided by his Maieflie, with the opinion of the fupreme Councell of the Indies, many Officers, Factors , Treasurers , Tellers , and Ouer-leers, which all doe give affurance in Caffile and in the Indies, of good and faithfull administration : and because this new Commonwealth doth augment so much, it feemed behoofefull to the service of God, and of the King, to ennoble and authorize it more, with placing two Vice-royes, one in New Spaine, another in the Kingdomes of Pinn, that in the Kings name they should governe and provide the things belonging to the service of God, and of the King, and to the conversion and inttraction of the Indians, fultayning, continuing, inhabiting, and ennobling of the faid Kingdomes, which experience hath thewell, chartet hath beene convenient : to the which Vice-royes sinitractions are given very particular of that which is secited, and that they may have in prote-Aion the holy office of the Inquifition, and with their strong arme to defend and protect it, that this conformitie as a fast knot, may be the pure and true preservation of the spiritual and temporall Estate, which is the best and truest estate, and most according to the Euangelical estate.

The Vice-royes are commanded also, and likewise the Judges, not to have houses proper, nor That which is to trafficke, nor contract, nor be ferued of the Indians, neither have any "Grangeries, nor meddle forbidden the in Armies, nor Discoueries; that they receive no guifts nor presents of any person; nor borrow Vice-royes, in Armies, nor Discoueries; that they receive no guitts nor presents of any perion; and ludges, mony, nor any thing to eate; nor pleade, nor receive arbitrements. That no Lawyer may plead "Where here's "Where here's where his father, father in law, brother in law, coufin, or fonne is Iudge. That no Vice-roy, of Cattellare 60 Prefident, Iultice, Judge of the criminall Cafes, Solicitor, nor their children may marry in the /#- bred. dies. That no Gouernours, Rulers, nor their Deputies , may buy Lands , nor build Houses , nor trafficke in their iurildiction. That they may not farme the Bayliwickes, nor laylorships, nor other offices. That no Gouernour, Ruler, nor chiefe Bayliefe, during the time of his office, may marry in the bounds of his jurisdiction. That no Judge be prouided for a Ruler, neither shall the

faid Judges, or Bayliefs, baue any charge in which they are to make any absence from their cotan mages, or saying, each titlice be given to the fonnes, fonne in law, brothers in law, no ses : neturer man any officers, nor Solicitors, nor to the Officers of the Courts, and of the fathers in law of Frenchis, and of the rest and the same is commanded the Vice-roye; goods royan nerves to resource to the about Aid Ministers, doe accept warrant for recoveries nor other things, nor ferue themselves of the Indiens without paying them. That no Advocate, Scrivenes nor R. nor terue tremitted to the house of Iudge, nor Bayliefe, nor the Suiters serve the Iudges. That the ludges of Paname, doe not accompanie themselves with the Dealers, nor give leave to their wives Judges or remems, outcome accompanie to accompanie them. And that no Inflices of all the Courts, shall have much communication to accompanie tuent, and that the surface of the Surface, and Atturneys: neither in body of a Court to goe to Mariages, Fuwith the success, numerate, and accept the avery weighty matter: neither wifite any Neighbour for any cause. That they doe not meddle in matters of the Commonwealth, nor any Justice, nor other minister of the Court, may have two offices in it. And besides these many other Ordinances, and good Lawes, which are all concerning administration of juffice.

Chap. 32. Whiteinhee continuerh the matter of the good gothe Indies.

No because these Catholike Kings have left nothing which most wisely they have not pro-A tradectant there can be so their dutie, the first thing they command the Vice-royes; and all the A Ministers in generall and particular is, the good viage of the Indians, and their preferation, and Ministers in general and particular which are made as touching this, for to punish the Offenders the accomplishing of the Unders without are made as accomplishing policie, and can complishe and the Indians doe learner the Cashidas policie, and can complishe and a second the Indians of the Indians according to the Indians of the Indians according to the Indians of the Indians of the Indians according to the Indians of the Indians know in what things they receive wrong, for their greater eale it is provided, that they give no place that the ordinarie writings be made in the fuites betweene, or with the Indiany, mether place that the dumant of the malice of forme Aduocates, and Atturneys, but that furnmarily they be determined, keeping their vies and customes, not being manifelly in-Interpreters, iuft, and that by all meanes possible, they doe prouide the good and short dispatch of them. And having notice that in the interpretation of the Indian; languages, there were some fraudes, for to preuent all, it was ordayned, that every interpretation be made by two Interpreters, which shall not confer both together about that which is controuerted by the fudian : and that before there be received to the vie of the office, they shall take their oath to administer it faithfully, and that they receive no guifts of the Indians futers, nor of others. That they doe affift at the Agree. ments, Courts, and visitations of the Prisons. That in their houses they heare not the Indian but to carry them to the Court. That the Interpretees be not Solicitors, not Atturneys of the Indians. That they aske them nothing. And for their greater good, it is prouded, that the Atturney of the Supreme Councell of the Indies, bee Protector of the Indians, and defend them in their fuites, and aske in the Councell all thenecessarie things for his infiroction, preferration, and politike life : and now there are appointed Protectors in the Kingdomes of Pins. and Nim Spaine, with new orders for their better viage.

It is also commanded, to fet up Schooles of the Caffidens tongue, that the Indians may learne it, and may doe it from their childhood; and that no vagabond Spaniard doe dwell or temayne in the Townes of the Indians, nor among them, but that the Vice-royes and the Courts, doe put & learne the Spe- all diligence in driving such out of the Land, thipping them for Cafile: and the "Countrie borne be compelled to ferue and to learne Trades. And as well to the Prelates, as to the Vice-royes, Second the Courts, Governours, and Rulers, and other what focuer Rustices, is cordayned, and particular care Gountriwo is had they doe accomplish it, that they doe prouide how the offences that were done to God may ceale, in the Indiana marrying whiles they are children, without having respect of age: the Caziques marrying with more then one woman, though he be an Infidell: in hindering that when some Cazique did die they should kill another to bee buried with him , and other like abominable vies. That it be permitted to the Indians that they may dispose of themselves what they lift, as free men, and exempted from all manner labour, though it shall bee procured that they doe labour and not be idle, and may have libertie to difpose of their goods, the Lands being set to fale by out-cry thirty dayes, and the moueable nine, the Iuftice being prefent. That the Lands remayning of any Indian deceasing without a Will, shall remayne in the Townes where they dwelt. That they make the Markets freely, and fell in them their merchandize. That their good vies and ancient customes be approued. That they may fend to these Kingdomes Indian Atturors neys for three yeeres. That the Refidencies be published in the Indian Townes, to fee if any will of the ludges, demand inflice. That in every Towne of the Indians there bee an Hofpitall with the things

That they be

In this matter of the Indian flaues, there were in the beginning of the Discoueries divers opinions, and orders, governing themselves as the time required and the state of the things : but after the Bishop Don Sebastian Ramirez came for Preident of New Spaine, this vie was absolutely 60 abolished, not with standing the ancient one which the ladians had to make themselves slaves one to another : neither might they buy of them , nor receive them , neither that any person may bring to these Kingdomes any Indian in title of a slave, though he be taken in lawfull warre and for this are fo flraight orders given that they are effectually kept, and fo in no place of the Indies

CHAP. I. Indian Lawes. Contractation house. Councell for the Indies.

are Indian flaues, though they be out of the bounds of Castile and Lion. And to either this inconvenience the more, the bringing Indians to these parts for whatsoever title it bee, is

And the quietnesse for the Commonwealth being about all very necessarie, ficultie is given to About ynquiet the Vice-royes, Prefidents, Gouernours, and other Inflices, that they may drive away, and ba- persons. nish from the Indies all viquiet persons, and fend them to theie Kingdomes, Judging it to to hee convenient for the quietnesse of those, but that it bee not for hatred or passion, nor for an

And that it may be some bridle to the Superiors, they are commanded, that they frindlered man the writing to the King, to his Councell, and to other perform, what they will heigher of nen, nor take any papers, or letters, under great penalties, and that they permit to paffe and renalle through the Countrie them that will, prouiding wayes and beidges in the places where

they are wanting. As touching the matters of Watre, it is also provided with great deliberation, for the Vitel Matters of roves greater authoritie, facultie is given them to have a Guard on foot, and on Horfe-backe to warre. make a cashing place for Ordnance and Bullers, and a shirlding for munitions, to levy men, aime thips, and make fortifications, and prouide all the referencement for the defence of these Kings

domes, and how the excelles of the Souldiers may be eschewed, as well by Land as by Sea; and to them that goe in the fleetes, committing the punishing of them to whom it belongeth, for to excufe competencies of inriduction. It hat halready beene faid how all the Government of this Orbe, depends of the forreme and The house of

Royall Councell of the Indier, that are neere the Perfor Royall. But as it is necessarie that the exe- contration entions of those parts have correspondence in these and here also there be they that may brounde of Smil. in effecting that is behoofefull for the matters there: it was necessarie to place in Sinit, where all the trafficke of the Indies doth come, a House Royall of contrataction of it, that medical not but in the difpatching of those bufineffes, and dependants of them, without any perfor nor luftice doe intermeddle in any thing belonging to the Indian affaires: and it is in tiboftante, a Tribonall of great authoritie, in the which is a President, which now is Don Bernardino Deleadino of Anellaneda, a Teller, a Tresiurer, one Factor, einet learnett hitiges, one Solicitor, one Relator, one

30 Sergeant, Scriueners, Porter, Leylor, and other Officers. In the Hairds of Tenerife and Palma, are placed two learned Judges, called Officers Royall, or Judges of the Registers, to cause Orders to be kept that are ginen for the lading and Registers of thole Hands, and Nauigation of that voy age. The house of the Contrataction hath her instruction and ordinances , how her innition is to be governed and exercised, and the learned sudges have it also for their vie and exercise , keeping in the leeing of the plea, betweene parties, the order that is held in the Courts of Valladolid. and Granada: and because the particular care of the officers of this tiquie, is the dispatch of the Fleetes and Armies, that they may depart in due times, they employ themselves in it with great diligence, and in recoming them that come, and ferting in fafeguard the Gold, Silver, Tewels, and other things that doe come, with a diffinction of the waight and carracts, charging themselves

40 with all, that there may be more account and reason, and for to make the provisions of the Fleetes and Armies. There are fo good orders given, that neither the Ministers doe exceed, nor the Subiects receive wrong, for all passeth very conformable to the intention of these Godly and Catholike Kings, by meanes of the great diligence of the fupreme Councell of the Indies.

And because the busineffes of the Indies have increased so much , that the supreme Councel Instruction of could not dispatch them with the breutie convenient to the good government of that Orbe, and the Councell the benefit of the Suiters, with the aduice of the President and supreme Councell; the King Don of Haushold. Philip the third our Lord, in imitation of his Catholike and Godly Predecefors, for the greater good of his fubicats, hath inflituted a Prime Councell, where all the bufmeffes of spirituall and temporall warrants, fauours and rewards may bee conferred and dispatched : and besides this, there

to are two Halls instituted, where on dayes appointed they may intreat of matters of Warre, with the President and three Counsellors of the Indies, and two or three of the Counsell of warre, and other dayes, of the matters of the goods, by the Prefident and Counfellors of Indies, and two of the Counsell of the goods, Atturney, and Secretarie of the Counsell of the Indies, the President naming those that he first thinke best for it.

And as these Catholike Kings doe alwayes looke to the benefit of the people of that Orbe, That the swige confidering that the propagation of the holy Gospell in no part of it could goe more prosperously shall not bee by any other hands then his, nor bee attended for his preferration, and to have the Conquerous allenated. and Inhabiters of those parts more fatisfied, seeing all were his Subjects, and borne in these Kingdomes, declared by their Royall warrants, dated the yeere 1 (20. in Valladolid, and in the verre 60 1523, in Pamplona, that their Maiesties , nor any of their Heires , in no time shall alienate from the Crowne Royall of Castile and Lion, the Hands and Provinces of the Indies . Towne , or any

part of them, and so they promised it and gaue their Royall word.

484 gadi 614

The Presidents, Counsellors, Secretaries, and Atturneys, which unto this present day bane ferned, and doe ferue in the Supreme Councell of the Indies, from their first Discouerie.

PRESIDENTS.

I Obu Redriguez of Fonseca, brother to the Lord of Coca and Alaejos, Archbishop of Rolano, and Bahop of Burges, being Deane of Simil, governed that which appertayned to the difpatching of the Fleets and Armies of the /ndies, till the Catholike King Don Fernando V. called him, to the end that in his Court hee might take charge of the Indian affaires, and he did it till the Emperor came to reigne, which commanded that the Doctor Mercurine Gatimara his great Chancellor, should be Superintendent of all the Councels, and all the difpatches paffed through his hands, and intermeuled in all the Affemblies that were made,

Friar Garcia of Loan la Generall of the Order of Saint Dommicke, the Emperours Confelfor, Bishop of Ofme, which was Archbishop of Similand Cardinall.

Don Garcia Maurique, Earle of Oforno, which being Affiltant of Sinil, did governe till the Cardinall came from Rome.

Don Lewis Hurtade of Mendoça, Marques of Mondejar, which after was Prefident of the Royall and fupreme Councell of Caftile.

The Licensiate Don Franciscus Tello of Sandonal, which having beene of the Councell of the Indies, went for President of the Royall Chancerie of Granada, and from thence came to governe in the Councell of Indies.

The Licenciate Don John Sarmiento was alfo of the Councell of the Indies, and after went to gouerne in the Royal Chancerie of Granada. from whence he returned to be Prefident of the Royall and supreme Councell of the Indies.

Lewis Quixada, Lord of Villagarcia, and of the Councell of Warre.

The Licenciate Iohn of Obando, of the fupreme Councell of the holy Inquifition, did prefide in the Councell of the Indies, and of the goods Royall.

The Licenciate Don Ansonio de Padella, of the Royal and supreme Counfell of Castale, pasfed to be Prefident of the Councell of the Orders, and after to the supreme Councell of the Indies.

The Licenciate Hernando of Vega and Fonfeea, of the supreme Councell of the holy and generall Inquifition, paffed to the Councell of the goods Royall, and from it to the Royall and supreme Councell of the Indies.

The Licenciate Don Pedro de Moya of Contreras, the first Inquisitor that went to Mexico for to frate the holy Office in that Citie. Hee was Archbishop of that Citie, and President of the supreme Councell of the Indies.

The Licenciate Paul of Laguna, of the Royall and supreme Councell of Castile, and of the

in the Councell of the goods Royall and Tribu. nals of it, and was after President of the fapreme Councell of the Indies and in his time began the Royall Councell of the House-hold.

COVNSELLORS. HErnands of Vega, Lord of Grajal, which was chiefe Knight of Lion, and President of the Councell of Orders. Licenciate Levi Zapata, Licenciate Moxica. Doctor S.lame. Doctor Palacies Penbios. Doctor Gençale Md. donade, which was Bishop of the citie Redrige. Matter Lewis Vaca, Bithop of Canarie. Dector Agairre. Doctor Mota, Bishop of Badajoz, Doctor Sofa. Dector Peter Martyr of Angle- 20 ria. Abbot of lamayea. Mefiar of Laffas, of the Emperours Chamber, and of the Council of Eltate, Licenciate Garcia of Padella, of the habit of Calatrana. Doctor Beltran, Doctor Galindez of Carnajal. Doctor Bernal, Licena ciate Peter Manuel. Licenciate Redrick of the Court, Licenciate Montoya. Licenciate Mercade. Licenciate Antonie of Aguilera. Licenciare Den Hernande of Salas. Licensiate lobs Thomas. Doctor Villafanye. Licenciate Bonel. 30 bo Maldenado: Licenciate Otalora. Licenciate Tames Galga of Salazar. Licenciate Gambos. Doctor Gomez of Santillana. Licenciate Effadero. Licenciate Don lames of Zunngo. Liceno ciate Lopez of Sarria: Licenciate Enao. Do-Ctor Lope of Bayllo, Licenciate Gedeon of Tree 10/4, of the habit of Saint lames, Licenciate Villafanne. Doctor Antemie Gonçalez. Licenciate Franciscus Balcazar. Licenciate Medina of Saranz. Licenciate Don Lowis of Mercado. 40 Doctor Peter Gutierrez Flores, Licenciate Peter Dayes of Tudança: Licenciate Benitte Rodriguez Valtodano, Licensiate Austine Almaren of Toledo, and of the Chamber. D. ctor De Roderick Zapata, Licenciate P r Brane of Soomayor. Licenciate Melina of Medrano, of the habit of Saint lames, & of the Chamber, Commillioner of this Historie. Licenciate James of Armenteros. Licenciate Alonfo Perez of Salazar. Licenciate Gonçalo of Aponte, and of the 90 Chamber. Licenciate Don Iolin of Ocean, of the habit of Calairana, Licenciate Hernands of Samedra. Licenciate Don Thomas Ximenez Ora tiz. Licenciate Engenius of Salazar, Licenciate Don Franciscas Arias Maldonado. Licenciate Andrew of Ayala. Licenciate Benauente of Benanides. Licenciate Roocke of Villagutierre Chumazero.

SECRETARIES.

Oban Colona. Michael Perez of Almazan. Gaspar of Gricio. The Knight Lope of Comholy and generall Inquisition, passed to governe mander of Lam. John of Samano. The Commander Franciscus of Erafo. Antonie of Eran | Liebana. Licenciate lerome of Vilon. Licenfe. The Commander lebs of There.

ATTWRNEYS or SOLLICITORS. THE Licenciate Franciscui of Vargas, Li-cenciate Prado. Licenciate Mariin Ruyie of Agreda. Doctor Franciscus Hernandez of

ciate Gamboa. Licenciate Lopez of Sarria. Lipenciate Scipion Antolmez. Licenciate Negron. Doctor Valenquela. Doctor Marem Care. Licenciate Bennet Rodriguez of Valsadano. Licenciate Alonfo Perez of Salazar, Licenciate Roocke of Villageriette Chimazero.

The Governours, and Vice-royes, which have governed until this time, the Kingdomes of New Spaine, and of Piru.

In New Spaine.

On Fernando Cortes Marques of the Valtaine generall.

The Licenciate Lewis Pance, of the House of the Duke of Arces, Judge of * Residencie with facultie to take the government, and by his death the Licenciate Mareus of Aguilar, natu-

20 rall of the Citie of Ezija, was subrogated his Deputie, and because of his death succeeded within two moneths; hee substituted his authorities in the Treasurer Alonso of Eftrada, borne in Citie Royall : and the death of Lewis Pance being knowne in Castile, it was prouided that Marcus of Aguilar should governe, and in defect of him, Alons of Estrada, till the first Court came , with order that Name of Guzman . Knight of Guadalajara , Gouernous 30 of Panuco, a President did come : and because it was contienent to take away thole ludges, o-

thers were fent in their places, and for Prefi dent in the government vniverfall of New Spaine, Don Schaftian Ramires, of Fuenleal, Bithop of Saint Dominicke, and of the Conception, late Prefident of the Court of Saint Dominicke. a man of great learning, and that after many dignities sied in Castile Bilhop of Cases, and 40 then the charge of Captaine generall was gitien anew to the Marques Don Hernando Cor-

ter, that he might governe the matters of warre, with the adulte of Don Sobaltian Ramirez, The first that had title of Vice-roy and Captaine generall of New Spaine, was Don Antonia of Mendeca, brother of the Marques of Mon-

Don Lewis of Velafce , a Gentleman of the House of the high Constable of Castile.

Don Gafton of Peralta, Marques of Falces. Don Martine Euriquez of Almanfa, brother of the Marques of Alcannizes, the Kings Ste-

Don Laurence Xuarez of Mendoça, Earle of Corunna, which deceased being prouided for Pirm, and by his death Don Peter Moya of Contreras, Archbishop of Mexico, gouerned in the

Den Alnaro Maurique of Zunniga, Marques 60 of Villamannique, brother of the Duke of Bojar. Den Lewis of Velafco, fonne to the aboutfaid Don Lewis of Velafco, which paffed to gouerne | Don John Pacheco, Duke of Efcalona.

the Kingdomes of Pow, where at this prefent

Don Gaft ar of Zunniga and Fonfeca Earle of Monterrey, which governoth at this day,

In the Kingdomes of Piru.

On Franciscus Picarre, Marques of the examination Chareas, Gouernour, chiefe luftice, and of a ludge or Captaine generall.

The Licericiate Vaca of Cafre, of the habit after their time of Saint James, of the supreme Councell of Ca- is expired, to Rile, carried Title of Gouernour generall.

Blase Numez V.l.4, a Gentleman of Anila, complaine of was the first that carried the Title of Vice-roy done so him in and Captaine generall of the Kingdomes of that time, and

The Literciate lames de la Gafca, of the mage of fullet-Councell of the holy and general! Inquifition, fault, carried the Title of Prefident of the new Court that was fent to the Citie of The King ; and of Gouernour generall, with facultie to give the government of Armes to whom hee thought best. He died Bishop of Signenga, and his Funerall and Trophees are seene in Magdalene Church in Valladolid, and in his absence the gopermment remayned to the Court of the Citie

of The Kings.

The second that carried Title of Vice-roy and Captaine generall , was Don Antonio of Mendoga, that governed the Kingdoms of New

Den Andrew Hartalo of Mendeca, Marques of Campete. Don lames of Zangga and Velafco , Earle of

The Licenciate Lope Garcia of Caltro, of the Royall and supreme Councell of the Indies, caried title of President and Governor general.

Don Francifius of Toleds, brother to the Earle of Oropefa, Steward to the King. Don Marin Enriquez, from the charge of

New Spaine, passed to gouerne the Kingdomes of Pars.

Don Garcia of Mendoga, Marques of Canyote. Don Lewis of Velageo, from the charge of New Spaine , paffed to the Kingdomes of Perm, where now he is, and at the instant of the impreffion of this Worke, is prouided for Viceroy and Captaine generall of those Kingdomes,

Printed at Madrid by Inan Flamenco. Au. 1601.

Coma Profile

Oblernations gashered out of the First , Second , Third , and Fourth bookes of TO TEPHYS ACOSTA a learned Tefuite, touching the naturall his Force of the Heaven, Ayre, Water and Earth at the well Indies. ... Alfo of sheir Dealts, Fishes, Fowles, Plants, and other remarkable rarities of Nature.

> of the faffion and forme of Heanen, at the new-faund World, and of the Ayre and Windes.

Like, cans.

Any in Europe demand, of what forme and falhion Heaven is in the Southerne parts, for that there is no certaintie found in ancient Books, who although the grant there are Heapen of this other part of the World, yet come they not to any knowledge of the form either part of the World, yet come they not to any knowledge of the form either part, although its must they make mention of a goodly great Statute Legue in those parts, which shey call Grangen. Those which the things of this Heaven, that it is very bright, hairing many goodly frames and in effect, things which gome furre, are commonly described sych careate. But it is seenes contraine vitto method.

ding it for certaine, sigt in our Region of the North, there is a greater number and bigger flares; finding is of farres in these parts, which exceeds the Fifter or the Charies in bignetic. It is true. that the Croff in the ceparts is very fare and pleasing to behold : we call the Croff, four notable and spearing flares, which make the forme of a croffe, set equally and with proportion table and apparaturers, which make the country of the state of the sta their higgs thereby, as wer are acquirence to one by one postenessre. Due usey are occurse, and direction, why saylest does it in this fort, as for that in the South parts there is no final Harry that markes the Fale, as the North Harry does to our Pole. And therefore they take their beings by the fare that markes the Fale, as the North Harry distinct from the true and fixed Pole Antarticle beings by the North Harry is difficult from the Pole Antarticke three degrees of Intel mone, And for its more difficult to take the high in those parts, for shart he faid there at the footest the Crofe mult be right, the which chanceth but in one houre of the night; which is in duers Teafogs of the yeere in divers houres, and oftentimes, it appeareth not in the whole night, fo sit is very difficult to take the height. And therefore the most expert Bilots regard not the Cross, taking the height of the Sunne by the Astrolabe, by which they know in what height they are: wherein commonly the Portugaliare more expert, 24 a Nation that hath more shift ourse in the 40 Arte of Natigation then any other. There are also other flaring in these Southerne parts, which in tome fort refemble those of the North. That which they call the Millen way, is larger and more resplendent in the South parts, appearing therein those admirable blacke spots, whereof

Via lattea.

teft quanticie off; and con-

we have made mention. Confidering with my felfe oftentimes, what thould caufe the EquinoCiali to bee fo moift, as reason why the I have faid; to refute the opinion of the Ancients, I finde no other reason, but the great force of Sunne without the Sunne in those parts , whereby it drawes voto it a great abundance of vapours from out of the Ocean, which in those parts is very great and spacious : and having drawne vnto it this great abundance of vapours, doth suddenly dissolute them into raine, and it is approved by many of waters when tried experiences, that the raine and great flormes from Heaven proceed from the violent heave 10 of the Sunne : firft (as we have faid before) it raines in thole Countries , when as the Sunne cafts his beames directly upon the earth, at which time he hath most force ; but when the Sunne retires, the heate is moderate, and then there falls no raine : whereby wee may conclude, that the force and heate of the Sunne is the cause of raine in those Countries. Moreover we observe, both when it is nee- in Perw, new Spains, and in all the burning Zone, that the raine doch vitally fal in the afternoone, reft. La. chep. 7. when as the Sunne beames are in their greatest force, being ftrange to fee it rine in the morning. And therefore Travellers forefeeing it , begin their journeys early , that they may end and rest before noone, for they hold that commonly it raines after noone. Such as have trequented and transfel those Countries, can sufficiently speake thereof. And there are, that (having made some abode there) 14,, that the greatest abundance of raine is, when the Moone is at the full; 60 but to fay the truth , I could never make fusicient proofe thereof , although I have observed it. Moreouer, the dayes, the yeere, and the moueths, thew the truth hereof, that the violent heave of the Sunne cauteth the raine in the burning Zone: experience teacheth vs the like in artificiall things, as in a Limbecke, wherein they draw waters from herbs and flowers; for the veheCHAP.2. Strange effetts in natural caufes. Exceptions to general rules.

mency of the fre forceth and driueth vp an abundance of vapours, which being preffed, and finding no iffue, are concerted into liquor and water. The like wee fee in gold and filuer, which we refine with quick-filter, the fire being small and flow, we draw out almost nothing of the quickrenne war a quas- and violent, it dots greatly cusporate the quick-filter, but if it be quick and violent, it dots greatly cusporate the quick- filter, which encountring the head abone, dots prefently sume into liques, and begins to drop downe: Even fo the violent the head abone, dots prefently sume into liques, and begins to drop downe: heate of the Sunne produceth these two effects, when it findes matter disposed, that is, to draw we the vapours on high, and to dissolve them prefently, and turne them into raine, when there up the vapours on mgn, and to make the management ty, and turns came into faine, when there is any oblitale to confume them. And although their things feeme constraire, that one Sunne within the burning Zone, being nerre, should saide raine, and without the Zone starre off should within the burning Zone, being nerre, should saide raine, and without the Zone starre off should within the property of the contract within the burning Lone, being meric, mount quies raine, and without the Lone started Hould breed the like effect; for it, that all well configured, there is no contrartie. A thouland ef-fects in naturall cause proceed of contrarie things by diutes meanes; we drie linnen by the fire,

and in the aire, and yet the one heats and the other cooles; Passures are dried and hardened by and in the airs, and profession moderate, exergife proposes fleepe, being too violent, it hindereth if you lay no wood on the fire, is dyech; if you lay no wood on the fire, is dyech; if you lay on too much, it likewife quencheth; for the onely proportion entertaines and makes it to continue. To well discerne a thing, it must not be too neere the eye, nor too farre off, but in a tealogable diffance proportionable; being too farre off from any thing we lose the fight, and too neere likewise we cannot see it. If the Sunne beams on from any change we also to make the man continues that the restriction refers if the sudne beams be weake, they draw up no fogge from the Bluers, if they be violent, hailing drawne up the vapours, they prefently disolute and confume them; but if the heat be moderate, it drawes up and 20 preferres it : for this reason the vapours rise not commonly in the night, nor at noone, but in the

morning, when as the Sunne begins to enter into his force. There are a thouland examples of naturall causes vpon this subject, which wee see doe often grow from contrarie things: whereby we must not wonder, if the Sunne being neers, engenders raine, and being farre off, works the like effect : but being of a moderate and proportionable diffance, causeth none at all. Yet there remaines one doubt, why the neernesse of the Sonne causeth the raine under the burning Zone, and without when it is farthest off. In my opinion the reason is, that in Winter without the Tropicks, the Sunne hath not force I ficient to conlume the vapours which rife from the Land and Sea; for these vapours grow in great abundance in the cold Region of the aire, where they are congealed and thickned by the extremitie of the cold; and after being prefled, they diffolia 30 and turne into water. Therefore in Winter when the Sunne is fartheft off, the dayes thort, and

and turne into any his heat hath small force; but when the Sunne approachet, which is in the Summer time, his force is such as it drawes up the vapoors, and suddenly consumes and dispersions. feth them; for the heat and the length of the dayes grow through the neernelle of the Sunne-But within the Tropicks vnder the burning Zone, the farre diffrance of the Sunne workes the fame effects that the neernesse doth without the Tropicks; by reason whereof, it raines no more under the burning Zone when the Sunne is farre off, then without the Tropicks when it is necreft, for that in this approching and retyring, the Sunne remayns alwayes in one diffance whence proceedes this effect of clearneffe. But when the Sunne is in the period of his force in the burning Zone, and that he cast his beames directly upon the Inhabitants heads, there is neither cle er-40 neffe nor dryneffe, as it ieemes there should be, but rather great and strange showers : for that by

this violent heat, he drawes up fuddenly a great abundance of vapours from the Earth and Ocean, which are so thicke, as the winde, not able easily to disperse them, they melt into water, which breedeth the cold raine in fo great abundance : for the excessive heat may soone draw vp many vapours, the which are not fo toone diffolied; and being gathered together through their great abundance, they melt and diffolue into water. The which wee may early differne by this familiar example : roaft a piece of Porke, Mutton, or Veale, if the fire be violent, and the meate neere, wee see the fat melts suddenly and drops away, the reason is, that the violent heat drawes forth the humour and fat from the meat, and being in great abundance cannot diffolue it, and fo it diftils more away : But when the fire is moderate, and the meat in an equall distance, wee fee 50 that it roafts handfornly, and the fat drops not too fuddenly, for that the moderate heat drawes

out the moistnesse which it consumes suddenly. And therefore Cookes make a moderate fire, and lay not their meate too neere nor too farre off, lest it melt away. The like may bee seene in anoother experience in candles of tallow or waxe, if the wike bee great, it melts the tallow or the waxe, for that the heat cannot consume the moultnesse which rifeth, but if the flame bee proportionable, the wax melts nor drops not, for that the flame doth wafte it by little and little

But this is not to hinder the exceptions which Nature hath given to this Rule, making some Exceptions to Regions of the burning Zone extremely drie. The which is reported of Ethiopia, and wee have generall rates.

feene it in a great part of Pers. , where all that Land or Coast , which they call Playnes , wants 60 raine, vea, land waters, except some Vallies where Riners fall from the Mountaines; the rest is a fandie and barren foile, where you shall hardly finde any Springs, but some deepe Wells. But with the helpe of God, we will shew the reason why it rayneth not in these Playnes (the which many demand;) for now I onely pretend to shew, that there are many exceptions to naturall Rules, whereby it may happen, that in some part of the burning Zone it raines not when the

Sunne is neerest, but being farthest off, although wmo this day I have neither seene nor heard of it : but if it be fo, we must attribute it to the particular qualitie of the Earth cand also, if sometimes the contrarie doth chance, we must have regard that in narrall things there happens many contrarieties and lets, whereby they change and diffolue one another. For example, it may be the Sunne will cause raine, and that the winder will hinder it; or else cause more abundance then hath beene viuall.

The Authors

When I passed to the Indies, I will tell what chanced vato mee: having read what Poets and Philosophers write of the burning Zone, I perfereded my felle, that comming to the Equinochiall. I should not indure the violent heate, but it fell out otherwise; for when I passed, which was when the Sunne was there for Zemith, being effected into Aries, in the moneth of March, I 10 felt to great cold, as I was forced to goe into the Simhe to warne me, what could I elfedoe then, but laugh at Ariffeiles Meteors and his philosophie, seeing that in that place, and at that season, when as all (hould be footched with heat, according to his rules, I, and all my companions were a cold ! In truth there is no Region in the world more pleasant and temperate then under the Equiportiall, although it be not in all parts of air equal temperature, but have great divertities. The burning Zone in tome parts is very temperate, as in Quitte, and on the playnes of Perm; in discribitd fome parts very cold, as at Potozi, and in some very hot, as in Ethiopia, Breil, and the Molincipues, compers of the This discriptic being knowne and certaine vnto vs., wee must of force seeke out another cause of cold and hear then the Sunne beames, seeing that in one feafon of the yeere, and in places of one height and distance from the Pole and Equinoctiall we finde so great diversitie, that some are in- 20 uironed with heat, fome with cold, and others tempered with a moderate heat.

Confidering this matter generally, I finde two generall causes, which maketh this Region

temperate: the one is that before mentioned, for that this Region is very moist and subject to under the Line raine, and there is no doubt but the raine doth refresh it, for that the water is by nature cold; and within the and although by the force of the fire it be made hot, yet doth it temper this heat proceeding one-Tropicks. In from the Sunne beams. The which wee fee by experience in the inner Arabia, the which is burnt with the Sunne, having no showres to temper the violence thereof. The cloudes and mists are the cause that the Sunne offends not so much, and the showres that fall from them. refresh both the Aire and the Earth, and moisten likewise how hot soener it be. They drinke raine water, and it quencheth the thirft, as our men have well tried, having no other to drinke. So as 20 realon and experience doth teach vs, that raine of it felfe doth temper the heat; and having by this meanes shewed, that the burning Zone's much subject vato rame, it appeares that there is Second cau'e, matter in it, to temper the violence of the hear: To this I will adde an other reason, which deferues to be knowne, not onely for this matter, but for many others; for although the Sunne be very hot and burning under the Equinostiall, yet is it not long, fo as the heat of the day being there shorter and of lesse continuance; it causeth not so violent a heate; the which it behooses to specific more particularly. Such as are practifed in the knowledge of the Spheare teach very well, that the more the Zodiake is oblique and trauefing our Hemisphere, the more vnequall are the dayes and nights; and contrariwife, where the Spheare is ftraight, and the fignes mount directly, there the dayes and nights are equall. And therefore in all that Region 40 which is betweene the two Tropicks, there is leffe inequalitie then without them, and the more wee approch the Line the leffe inequalitie we finde, the which wee have tried in those parts. Those of Quitto, for that they are vnder the Line, have not throughout the whole veere the dayes and nights more short at one season then at an other, but are continually equall. Those of Lima being distant almost twelve degrees, finde some difference betwixt the dayes and the nights, but very little, for that in December and Ianuarie the dayes increase an houre or little leffe. Those of Poroze finde much more difference both in Winter and in Summer, being almost vnder the Tropicke. But those that line without the Tropicks finde the dayes in Winter shorter and in Summer longer : the more remote they are from the EquinoCtiall and come neere the Pole, as wee fee in Germanie and in England, the dayes are longer in Sum- 50 mer then in Italie and in Spaine. It is a thing which the Spheare doth teach, and experience doth plainly shew vs. Wee must adde an other Proposition, which is likewise true and very considerable for all the effects of Nature to understand the persenerance and continuation of the efficient cause to worke and mooue. This presupposed, it any one demand of me, why under the Equinoctiall Line the heat is not so violent in Summer, as in some other Regions (as in Ande-Therethere bee loufis in the moneths of July and August) I will answere, that in Andeloufis the dayes are lonomerreatons besides the forcer; and as the day being hot, inflames and causeth heat; so the nights being cold and moift, give a refreshing. According to the which, at Pers, there is no such great heat, for that the dayes in Summer are not long, nor the nights short; so as the heat of the thew, that the day is much tempered by the freshnesse of the night.

burning Zone

Being a thing concluded, that the two fore-named properties are common and valueriall to is temperate, especially a lithe Region of the burning Zone: and yet in the same there are found some places very hot, longif the O. and other exceeding cold: Also, that the temperature is not there equall in all places, but winder gean, Chap, 11. one climate, one part is hot, another cold, and the third temperate, all at one leafon; wee are

forced to feeke out other reasons, whence this great divertitie should proceede in the burning Zone. Discoursing therefore you this question, I doe finde three apparant and certaine causes, and a fourth more obscute and darke. The apparane and sertaine causes bee : The first is the O cean ; the second, the struction of the Land , and the third, the nature and propertie of many and fundrie windes. Befides there three which I hold for manifest, I believe there is a fourth hidden and leffe apparant, which is the propertie of the fame Land inhabited, and the particular influence of the Heatens. Among the special causes and reasons, I have first placed the Sea. for without doubt, the neernelle thereof doth helpe to temper and coole the heat : for although the Water be falt, yet is it alwayes water, whose nature is cold.

But is wee thall yet fearch more particularly; when that not finde in all this Land an equall temperature of heave, although it bee in equall different from the Sea, and in the fame degree. feeing thapin fome pared there is great beite; and in fome very little. Doubtleffe , the cause thereof in that the one is lower, and the other higher | Which canfeth that the one is hot . and theother cold, Leismofticeruine, that the tops of the Mountaines are colder then in the bottome of the Vallies, the which processes; not onely for that the Stittne beames have greater repercusions your lower places, although it be a great reason; yer there is another, which is, that the Region of the aire is colder when it is farthest from the ground. The cause why the middle Region of the aire is more cold, buth beone shewed before : for that the Region of the aire next to the fierie exhalation, the which (according to Ariffele) is vpon the Spheare of the aire, repells and thrusts backe all thoughd, the which retires it selfe into the middle Region 30 of the aire, by Autiparist afe, as the Philosophers speaker Now, if any one should question with

me in this manner; If it be fa that the size is hot and moult , as Arifold holds, and as we commonly fay; whence then proceedes the cold which is congealed in the middle Region of the aire, feeing it cannot come from the fierie Spheare? For if it come from the Water, or the Earth, by wift Me.
this realog the lower Region of the aire floudd be colder then the middle.

To answere truly what I shinke, I will confess, that this Argument and Obiection is so difficult, as I am almost readie to follow the opinion of furless reproue the qualities , seteements and difagreements, which a Areflotle ginds vinto the Elements, laying they are but imaginations, who for this occasion hold the aire to bee dold by natures. And to this end they vie many arguments and realons, whereas we will proposed one very familiar and well knowne, leaving the 30 reft apart. In the Caniculandayes we are accultomed to beset the aire with a fan , and wee finde that it dort refresh ve; so abahese Authors, affirme, that heate is no private propertie of any other Element, but of fire andly, which is disperfed and mingled with all things (as the great De- Bionflets. ais doth teach vs.) But whether it be fo, or other wife (for I will not contradic Aristotle, but in cal bere that which is most certaine) in the end they agree all, that the middle Region of the aire is colder then the lowest next to the Earth, as experience doth shew vs; seeing that in this middle Region are congested, Snow, Haile, Frosts, and other signes of extreme cold. The middle Region

then which they call the burning Zone, having on the one fide the Sea, and on the other the Mountaines, we must hold them for sufficient causes to temper and coole the heate.

The temperature of this Region ought chiefly to be attributed to the propertie of the winde That the cold Ane temperature of this arguatourate them who have the providence of the great God windsabee the that blowes in that Country, the which is pleasure mid-fresh, The providence of the great God windsabee the Creator of all things hath better such, as he hath ordayined fresh and coole windes in that Region to make the

where the Sunne makes his course (which seemes should be burnt up) that by their coolenesse burning Zone the excessive heate of the Sunne might be qualified. Wee see in one climate, some Regions and temp Cities hotter then others, onely for that they feele leffe winde to refresh them. The like is in Chaptaother Countries where no winde blowes, the which are all on fire like vnto a furnace. If we shall It is dotted by other Countries where no winde blowes, the which are all on fire like vitto a turnace. 11 we mail transfers that neerly looke into the confideration of the winde, whereof we have spoken, we may resolute ma- there is a hot. ny doubts which some object, and which seeme strange and wonderfull : wherefore the Sunne winde some of cafting his beamer vpon the burning Zone; and particularly at Perus, and that more violently inner neare to, then in Spaine in the Canicular dayes, yetchey defend the heat with a light conering, fo as with Bellew and Gr.

a flender couering of matsor thraw, they are better preferred from the heate, then in Spains will will all and of the course of the spains of as hot and trouble some as in Spaine? Wherefore on the highest tops of Mountaines, even amongst and understy, the heaper of showe, you shall sometimes facle great and insupportable heat? Wherefore in all his them, has the Pronince of Colas, when yee come into the shade, now little locuer, you feele cold : Bue lobeles phlerus the Promine of Colas, when yee come into the shade, how lattle joeuer, you recrecion : Due a Court wind comming into the Sunne beames, you presently finde the heate excellent. Euery morning the to blow updue winde from the Sea doth ceale, and the Simne begins to east his beames; and for this region they boures from feele the greatest heat in the morning, vntill the returns of the same windes, which deherwise the Sen, and they call the tyde or winde of the Sea, which makes them first to feele cold. Wee have tries all other twelve 6c this , whileft wee were at the Hands of Birlanente , where in the mornings wee did sweat for conflant heat, and at noone we felta tresh aire; for that then, a North Easterly winde which is fresh and

coole, doth commonly blow. Confidering with my felfe, the pleafing temperature of many Countries at the Indet, where Temper of the they know not what Winter is , which by his cold doth freeze them , nor Summer which Joth Indies.

trouble them with heat, but that with a Mat they preserve themselves from the inninies of all weather, and where they fearce have any neede to change their garments throughout the vere-I fay, that often confidering of this, I find that if men at this day would vanquish their passions. and free themselines from he inares of constouineds, leauing many fruitless and pernicious de-fignes, without doubt they might line at the Indian very pleasant and happily: for that which other Poets fing of the Elifam fields & of the famous Tampe, or that which Plans reports or feigure of his Atlantice Iland; men should finde in these Lands, if with a generous spirit they would

Causes of babitablevesse swixt the Tropicks, Vulcars. Winder LIB.V.

their differen-

might come shither, and on of the picks is falfe: for the daily raines when he Sunne is neereft, the long nights 8 dewes,thebreefant course of great Lakes & Riners, beight of Hills, &c. make those parts not onely habitable, but more bear at, and on this picks then yn-

but cull our

choile things for better vu-derstinding the naturall hilforde of

choose rather to command their filter and their defires then to remayine to it flaues as they are. Haung difcourfed in the two former Bookes of that which concernes the Heautre, and the habitation of the Indies in generall, it behoops we now to treat of the three elements, Aire, and Water, and Land, and their compounds, which be metals, plants and beafts; for, as for the fire, I fee no speciall matter at the Indias which is not in other Regions; whiefe some will say, that the manner to firike fire in rubbing two ftones one against another, as fome Indian etc. or to We have ab-bresisted and boile any thing in gourds, casting a burning stone into it, & other such like things, are remarkable to preuent te- whereof I have written what might bee poken. But of those which are in the Valence and uneffe cut Mouthes of fire at the Indias, worthy doubtleffe to be observed, I will fpeake in their order, treaof a great part ting of the discritice of grounds, whereas they finde these fires or Falcans. Therefore to begin of Acasas ob with the windes, I say, that with good reasons, Saloman in the great indigement which God had forusions in with the winners, 1875 state with programming the winners and their properties being very admit the two former giuten him, effectives much the knowledge of the winners, and their properties being very admit booker, asha- rable; for that fome are moift, others drie; fome wawhollome, others found; fome hoe, others ag with infinite other differences. There are some windes which blow in certaine Regions and are rimage Las. as it were, Lords thereof, not admitting any entrie or communication of their contraries. In thewedwhence fome parts they blow in that fort, as fometimes they are Conquerors, fomtimes conquered : of men and beafts ten there are divers and contrarie windes, which dec minne together at one inftant, dividing the way betwixt them, fomtimes one blowing about of one fort, and another below of an other fort. fomtimes they incounter violently one with another, which puts them at Sea in great danger : there are fome windes which helpe to the generation of Creatures, and others that hinder and on of the worlds valuabi- are opposite. There is a certaine winde, of such a qualitie, as when it blowes in some Countrie. rablenefie be- it caufeth it to raine Fleas, and in fo great abundance, as they trouble and darken the aire, and co. 39 swint the Iro- uer all the Sea-shoare : and in other places it raines Frogs. These diversities and others which are fufficiently knowne, are commonly attributed to the place by the which thefe winder paffe. For they fay, that from thefe places they take their qualities to be cold, hoe, drie, or moift . fickly or found, and fo of the reft, the which is parely true, and cannot be denyed; for that in a small diflance you shall see in one winde many diversities. For example, the Solome or Easterne winde is commonly hot and troublefome in Spaine; and in Marria it is the cooleft and healthfulleft that is, for that it passeth by the Orchards , and that large champaine which wee fee very fresh. In Carthagene which is not farre from thence, the same winde is troublefome and viewhollome. The Meridionall (which they of the Ocean call South , and those of the Mediterranean Sea . Meze giorno) commonly is raynie and boy flerous, and in the fame Citie whereof I fpeake, it is whole. 40 tome and pleatant. Plane reports that in Africke it raines with a Northerne winde, and that the Southerne winde is cleere. He then that thall well confider what I have spoken of these windes. he may conceine, that in a small diffance of Land or Sea, one winds hath many and divers qualities, yea fometimes quite contraries, whereby weemay inferre, chachee draweth his propertie from the place where it passets, the which is in sightfort travelathough we may not say infallibly) as it is the onely and principall cause of the discrines of the winder. It is a thing we easily find, there and force that in a River contaying fiftie leagues in circuit (I put thus for an example) that the winde for many life; which blowes of the one part, is hot and moift; and that which blowes on the other, is cold and which makes me rather to say, that the windes bring these doubties with shem, whereby they give vnto them the names of their qualities. For example, we attribute to the Northerne winde other. wile called Cierco, the propertie to be cold and drie, and to diffolue mife; to the Southerne winde his contrarie, called Lessfebe, we attribute the contrarie qualitie, which is moift and hot, and ingenders milts. But it is needfull to feeke further, to know the true and originall cause of these so itranse differences which we fee in the windes. I cannot conceine any other, but that the fime efficient cause which bringeth forth and maketh the winds to grow, doth withall gine them this original qualitie: for in truth, the matter whereon the winds are made, which is no other thing (according to Arifold) but the exhelation of the interior Elements, may well cante in effect a (accepting to driftens 1940 tole Camerana of the marked line of the said more most. But yet this is popetainen reason, seeing einer greate eit ein one stegion, where the vapours and exhalations of the said was the said of the said was the said of TRACE and fort and qualitie, that there sife windes and effects quite contrarie. We must therefore

der to the Author himieste. Occasionally our poreschall clucidate those things also, which are in the Tent omitted. * Polent; as the Medical Real Res. Sulphurous earth whence are illustic. "Concrall winder, Montons, Winder receive their qualities from the places by which they palle.

referre the cause to the higher and celestiall Efficient, which must be the Sunne, and to the motion and influence of the Heauens, the which by their contraffe motions, give and caufe divers influences. But the beginnings of these motions and influences are so oblique and hidden from men, and on the other part, io mightie and of io great force, as the holy Prophet Desid in his propheticall Spirit, and the Prophet Lerenie auntiring the greatnesse or the Lord, speake thus. propue una profes ventes de the faurie fuie. Hee that drawes the windes out of his Treasures. In truth Pfaine 134. these principles and beginnings are rich and hidden treasures: for the Author of all things holds to the principles and beginnings are rich and hidden treasures: them in his hand, and in his power; and when it pleafeth him, fendeth them forth for the good or chaftilement of men, and fends forth such windes as he pleateth : not as that Eoles whom the 10 Poets doe foolishly feigne to have charge of the windes, keeping them in a Caue like vnto wilde beafts. We see not the beginning of these windes, neither doe we know how long they shall con-

tinue, or whither they shall goe. But wee see and know well the discrife effects and operations they have, even as the supreme Truth, the Author of all things hath taught vs , saying , Spriim whi walt first, & vocem eim andis, & neseie unde venst, ant quò vadit. It is true, that the Northerne winde is not viually cold and cleere there as here. In some parts

of Pern, as at Lima, and on the Playnes, they finde the Northerne windes troublefome and vnwhollome, and all along the Coast which runnes about fue hundred leagues, they hold the Southerne windes for healthfull and coole, and (which is more) most cleere and pleasant; yea it neuer raines, contrarie to that wee fee in Europe, and of this fide the Line. Yet that which chan- Heerabath 20 ceth vpon the coaft of Pers is no generall rule, but rather an exception, and a wonder of Nature, the wed the neuer to raine vpon that coaft, and ouer to have one winde, without gluing place to his contraneuer to rame voor the Hills to beet rie, whereof we will hereafter speake our minde. It is no generall rule there, that the Northerne cause of the winde is neither hot nor raynie there, as the South winde is on this fide; but contrariwife, it windes conminue is meaning to minde blowes there, as wee fee in all the Sierre or mountaine of Pers, flace, and in Chile, and in the Countrie of Cange, which is on the other fide of the Line, and farre advanced raines range. into the Sea. And in Posoza likewile, the winde which they call Tomahani (which is our North) if my memorie faile me not, is extremely cold, drie, and unpleafant, as it is here with vs. Yet

doth not the Northerne winde difperfe the cloudes viually there, as it doth here : but contrari-

wife, if I be not deceived, it doth often cause raine. There is no doubt, but the windes doe bor-30 row this great disertitie of contrarie effects, from the places by which they paste, and the neere Regions where they are bred, as wee fee by daily experience in a thousand places. But speaking in generall of the qualitie of the windes, we multrather looke to the cossts or parts of the World from whence they proceede, then to observe, whether they be on this side or beyond the Line, as it feemes the Philosopher held opinion. These capitall windes, which be the East and West, haue no fuch vanuerfall qualities, nor io common in this Continents, nor in the other, as the two for-mers. The Solum or Easterne winds, is commonly here trouble some and wawholsome, and the Westerne or Zephirm, is more milde and healthfull. At the Indies, and in all the burning Zone, the Easterne winde which they call Brife, is contrariwise very healthfull and pleasant. Of the West, I cannot speake any thing certaine or generall, for that it blowes not at all, or very seldom 40 in the burning Zone, for in all the naugation betwixt the two Tropicks, the Easterne winde is

mene ourning a contract and for that it is one of the admirable workes of Nature, it shall bee good to vinder twinthe Trofland the cause and the beginning thereof. The wayes at Sea are not as at Land, to returne the same way they passe. It is all one way That the bar-

The wayer at her are not to at Land, to returne use time way have passed at the noneway and (faith the Philosopher) from Athers to Tables, and from Tables to Athers; but it is not for a ming Zone, the for the recome way and returne have noteen. The first which discoursed the Fast and West. Only the form of the recommendation of Sea, for wee goe one way and returne by another. The first which discoursed the East and West feely windes, Indies, laboured much with great difficultie to finde out their course, wntill that Experience (the doc continual Mistrelle of these secrets) had taught them, that to faile through the Ocean, is not like the pas- ly blow, and Miftrelle of their tecrets; not tauget them, that to have through the Court, is not not use the parties of fige in helder, through the Mediterranean Sea, where in their teruter, chey obleme the lame Ports. Zone & Wegner and Capes they had fight of in their pallage, attending fill the benefit of the winde, which chan-firms, and that the court of the winde, which chan-firms, and that the court of the winde, which chan-firms, and that the court of the winde, which chan-firms, and that the court of the winde, which chan-firms, and that the court of the winde, which chan-firms, and that the court of the winde, which chan-firms, and the winder winder winder with the winder winde 50 geth infantly, and when that failes, they have recourie to their Oares; and to the Gallies goe the Essery and come daily, osafting along the shoare. In some parts of the Ocean, they may not looke for areordinarie any other winde then that which blowes, for that commonly it continues long. To conclude, alwayes there. that which is good to goe by, is not fit to returne with : for in the Sea beyond the Tropicke, and cospa that which is good to good, the Eafterly windes raine continually, not fuffering their contraries. in Decade 1. In the which Region there are two strange things, the one is, that in that Zone (being the great like, caps. teft of the fue, into the which the World is divided) the Eafterly windes (which they call Bri. They goe one (et) doe reigne, not fuffering the Welterne or Southerne (which they call lower winds) to have way to the intheir courfe at any feating the vertex the or southerne (winds they can nower winds) to have their courfe at any feating their courfe at any feating their courfe at their cou

60 should be more frequent, being a part of the World, most fubiest to the heat of the Sunne, but it is contrarie, for you shall hardly finde any Calmes there, and the winde is cold and continues longer, which hath beene found true in all the Nauigations of the Indies. This is the reason, why the voyage they make from Spaine to the West Indies is shorter, more easie, and more affured, then the returne to Spaine.

Gggg 3

The

The Fleetes parting from Simil, have more difficultie to passe the Canaries, for that the guite of Tegues or of Mares, is variable, being beaten with divers windes, but having passed the Care. ries, they faile with a Westerne winde vntill they come to the burning Zone, where presently they finde an Easterly winde, and so they faile on with full windes, so as they have scant any need to touch their failes in the whole voyage; for this reason they called this great gulfe, the gulfe of Dames, for the calmnesse and pleasantnesse thereof. Then following their course, they come to the llands of Gundelupe Dominique, Defired, (Marigualants, and the rest, which in that place, be as it were, the Suburbs of the Indies. There the Fleetes separate and divide themselves, whereof fome (which goe to new Spanse) take to the right hand towards Hilpaniela; and ha uing discouered Cape Saint Antony, they passe vnto Saint lobs Delus, alwayes vsing the same 10 Easterly windes. Those for the mayne Land, take the left hand, discouering the high mountaine of Tayrone, then having touched at Carthagene, they paffe ento Nombre de Dies, from whence they goe by Land to Panama, and from thence, by the South Sea to Peru. But when the fleetes returne to Spaine, they make their voyage in this fort : The fleete of Pern discouers Cape Saint Anthony, then they enter into the Hanana, which is a goodly Port in the Iland of Cuba. The fleet of new Spaine doth likewise touch at the Hanana, being parted from Vera Crist, or from the Iland of Saint Iohn Delma, the which is not without difficultie, for that commonly Easterly windes blow there, which is a contrarie winde to goe to the Hanana. These fleetes being joyned together for Spaine, they feeke their height without the Tropicks, where presently they finde Westerly windes, which serue them vntill they some in view of the Acores, or Terceres, and 20 from thence to Simil. So as their voyage in going, is of a small height, not about twentic degrees from the Line, which is within the Tropicks. But the returne is without the Tropicks, in eight and twentie or thirrie degrees of height at the leaft, for that within the Tropicks, the Easterna windes continually blow, the which are fitteft to goe from Spaine to the West Indies, for that their course is from East to West; and without the Tropicks (which is in three and twentie degrees of height) they finde Westerly windes, the which are the more certaine and ordinarie, the farther you are from the Line, and more fit to returne from the Indies; for that they are winder blowing from the South and West, which serve to runne into the East and North,

The like discourse is of the Naugation made into the South Sea, going from new Spaine or Tens, to the Philippines or China, and returning from the Philippines or China to new Spains, the 30 which is easie, for that they faile alwayes from East to West, neere the Line, where they finde the Easterly windes to blow in their Poope. In the yeere 1584, there went a thip from Calloa in Lima to the Philippines, which fayled two thousand and seven hundred leagues without fight of Land, and the first it discourred, was the Hand of Luffon, where they tooke Port, having performed their voyage in two moneths, without want of winde or any torment, and their course was almost continually under the Line; for that from Line (which is twelue degrees to the South) he came to Manilla, which is as much to the North. The like good fortune had Aluaro de Mandana, when as he went to discouer the Hands of Solomon, for that he had alwayes a full gale, vntill he came within view of these Ilands, the which must bee distant from that place of Pers, from whence hee parted, about a thousand leagues, having runne their course alwayes in one 40 height to the South. The returne is like vnto the voyage from the Indies vnto Spaine : for those which returne from the Philippines or Ching to Mexico, to the end they may recouer the western windes, they mount a great height, vntill they come right against the Ilands of Iapon, and discouering the Caliphornes, they returne by the coast of new Spaine to the Port of Acapulce, from whence they parted. So as it is proued likewise by this Nauigation, that they faile easily from East to Welt, within the Tropicks, for that their Basterly windes doe raine : but returning from West to East, they must feeke the Westerne windes without the Tropicks, in the height of feuen and twentie degrees. The Portugals proue the like in their Nauigations to the East Indies, although it be in a contrarie courfe.

Cause of the

Let vs now speake of that which toucheth the Question propounded, what should be the rea- 50 fon why voder the burning Zone we faile eafily from East to West, and not contrarie : wherein we must presuppose two certaine grounds. The one is, that the motion of the first Moouer, which they call Dinmall, not onely drawes and moones with him the celeftiall Spheares, which are inferiour vitto him , as wee fee daily in the Sunne, the Moone , and the Starres ; but also the Elements doe participate of this motion, insomuch as they are not hindered. The Earth is not mooued, by reason of her heauinesse, which makes it immoueable, being farre from this first motor. The Element of water moones not likewife with this Diurnall motion, for that it is united to the Earth and make one fpheare, fo as the Earth keeps it from all circular motion. But the other two Elements of Fire and Aire, are more subtill and neerer the heavenly Regions, to as the other two exements of the arrival of the participate of their motion, and are driven about encularly, as the fame celeftial bodies. As for the Fire, without doubt it hath his spheare (as Aristotle and other Philosophers have held) but for the Aire (which is no point of our fubiect) it is most certaine that it moones with a motion Diarnall, which is from East to Welt, which wee see plainly in Comets that moone from the East vnto the West, mounting, descending, and finally turning in the hemispheare in the

fime fort as the Starres move in the firmament; for otherwise these Comets being in the region and sphere of the ayre, whereas they ingender, appeares consum'd. It should be impossible for them to moue circularly, as they doe, if the element of the aire doth not moue with the same motion that the first motor doth. For theie elements being of a burning substance, by reason they fhould be fixt, without mouing circularly, if the fphere where they are did not moue; if it be not as we faine, that some Angell or intellectuall Spirit doth walke with the Comet, guiding it circularly. In the years 1577 appeared that wonderfull Comet (in forme like vnto a teather) from The Comet the horizon almost to the middest of heaven, and continued from the first of November, vntill 1577. seene the eight of December: I say from the first of Nouember, for although in Spaine it was noated eight dayer but the ninth of November (according to the testimonie of Writers of that time) yet at Pern, where I was then, I remember well, we did fee it, and observe it eight dayes before, and all the time after. Touching the cause of this divertitie, some may delate vpon it particularly: I will onely flew, that during those fortie dayes which it continued, wee all observed (both such as were in Spaine, and we that lived then at the Indies) that it moved daily with an vniverfall motion, from East to West, as the Moone and other Planets, whereby it appeares that the sphere of the aire, being its Region, the element it selfe must of necessitie moue after the same fort. We noted alfo, that besides this vniueriall motion, it had another particular, by which it moued with the planets from West to East, for every night it turned more Eastward, like voto the Moone, Sunne, and Planets of Venus. We did also observe a third particular motion, whereby it moued 20 from the Zodiacke towards the North; for after some nights it was found never vito the Seprentrionall fignes. And it may be this was the reason why the great Comet was sooner feene by those that were Southerly, as at Pern, and later discovered by them of Enrope: for by this third motion (as I haue faid)it approached neerer the Northerne Regions. Yet every one may well obferue the differences of this motion, lo as we may well perceive, that many and fundry celefish hodies, give their impressions to the sphere of the ayre. In like fort it is most certaine, that the avre moues with the circular motion of the heaven, from East to West, which is the first ground before mentioned. The second is no lesse certaine, which is, that the motion of the avre in those

20 parts that are vnder the Line, or neere vnto it, is very swift and light, the more it approacheth to the Equinochiall; but the farther off it is from the Line, approaching neers the Poles, the more flow and heavis this motion is. The reason hereof is manifest, for that the mouing of the celeftiall bodies, being the efficient cause of the mouing of the ayre, it must of necessitie be mote quicke and light, where the celeftiall bodies have their fwiftest motion.

Alongo Sanches was of opinion that this motion of the ayre was not a winde, but the ayre moued by the Sunne. This is learnedly fpoken, yet san wee not deny it to be a winde, feeting the Brize for there are vapours and extalations of the Sea; and that we forcetimes fee the Brife, or Eafterly motion of the windes itronger, fometimes more weake, and placed in that fort, as fometimes shey can hardly air minite carry all their layles. We must then know (and it isters) that the agree moved, drawten vnto it heavens) is a the vapours it findes, for that the force is great, and findes no refiftance, by reafon whereof the winde. Eafterne and Westerne windes are continual, and in a manner alwayes alike, in those parts which 40 are neere the Line, and almost vader all the burning Zone, which is the course the Sun followes

betwixt the two circles of Cancer and Capricorne. who fo would neerely looke into what hath bin spoken, may likewife whiderstand, that going why without the come in a from the West to the East, in altitude beyond the Tropikes, we shall finde Westerne windes. for from the West to the East, in attitude beyond the Tropines, we man-ninde Westerne windes, for granter alti-that the motion of the Equinoctiall being so swift, it is a cause that the ayre moueth whiler it made we find according to this motion, which is from the East to West, drawing after it the vapours and alequies Weexhalations that rife of either fide the EquinoCtiall or burning Zone, incountring the course and first winders motion of the Zone, are forced by the repercusion to returne almost to the contrary, whence grow the South-west windes so ordinary in those parts. Euen as we see in the course of waters, the which if they be incountred by others of more force) returne in a manner backe: So it feemes to be like in vapours and exhalations, whereby it growes that the windes doe turne and fepa-

rate themselues from one part to another. These Westerly windes doe commonly raine in a meane altitude, which is from twenty and leuen to thirty and feuen degrees, though they be not fo certaine nor foregular as the Brifes that are in a leffe altitude. The reason is, for that the South-west winds are no causes of this proper and equal motion of the heaven, as the Brifes are, being neere to the Line. But (as I have faid) they are more ordinary, and often more furious and tempeftuous. But paffing into a greater altitude, as of fortie degrees, there is as small affurance of Ofthe excepwindes at Sea as at Land; for sometimes the East or North winde blowes, and sometimes the tions to the South, or Welt: whereby it happeneth their nauigations are more vacertaine, and more forefaid Rules

That which we have spoken of windes, which blow ordinarily within and without the Zone, and calmes both at Land must be understood of the maine Sea, and in the great gulphes; for at land it is otherwise, where and at Sea. we finde all forts of windes, by reason of the inequalitie which is betwixt the Mountaines and Chap. 8. the vallies; the great number of Rivers and Lakes, and the divers frituations of Countries, Caulcof the the vallies; the great number of Rivers and Lakes, and the unters letter lines of Countries,
whence the groffe and chick vapours arife, which are moved from the one part or the other, acwinders.

cording to the diversitie of their beginnings, which cause these divers windes the motion of the

ayre, caused by the heauen, hauing not power enough to draw and moue them with it. And

this varietie of windes is not onely found at land, but also youn the Sea coast, which is under the burning Zone, for that there be forraine or land windes which come from the land, and many which blow from the Sea; the which windes from the Sea, are commonly more wholesome and more pleafant then those of the land, which are contrariwise troublesome and vnwholesome. although it be the difference of the coast that causeth this diversitie : commonly the land winder blow from mid-night to the Sunne rifing, and the Sea windes votill Sunne fetting. The reason perhaps may be, that the earth, as a groffe substance, fumes more when as the Sunne shines not vpon it, euen as greene wood, or scarfe dry, smoakes most when the slame is quenched. But the Sea, which is compounded of more subtile parts, engenders no sumes, but when it is hot, euen as straw or haie, being moist and in small quantitie, breedes smoake when it is burnt, and when the flame failes, the fume fuddenly cealeth, Whatfoeuer it be, it is certaine that the Land winde blowes by night, and that of the Sea by day. So that even as there are often contrary, violent, and tempethous windes vpon the Sea coaft, fo doe we fee very great calmes. Some men of great experience report, that having failed many great passages at Sea under the Line, yet did they never fee any calmes, but that they alwayes make way little or much, the ayre being moued by the celefiall motion, which is sufficient to guide a Shippe, blowing in poope, as it doth. I have already said, that a Shippe of Limagoing to Marilla, sailed two thousand seven hundred leagues, alwayes vnder the Line, or not about twelue degrees from it, and that in the moneths of February and March, when as the Sunne is there for Zenith, and in all this space they 20 found no calmes, but alwayes a fresh gale, so as in two moneths they performed this great voyage. But in the burning Zone and without it, you shall viually see great calmes voon the coasts. where the vapours come from the Ilands, or maine land. And therefore stormes and tempests. and the fudden motions of the ayre, are more certaine and ordinary upon the coasts, whereas the vapours come from the Land, then in full Sea, I meane vnder the burning Zone, for without it and at Sea, there are both calmes and whirlewindes. Notwithstanding, sometimes betwixt the two Tropickes, yea, under the Line, you shall have great raine and sudden showers, yea farre into the Sea; for the working whereof, the vapours and exhalations of the Sea, are fufficient, which moving fometimeshaftily in the ayre, cause thunder and whirlewindes, but 30 this is more ordinary neere to the Land and vpon the Land. When I failed from Pers to new Spaine, I observed, that all the time we were voon the coast of Peru, our voyage was (as it was ordinary) very calme and easie, by reason of the Southerne winde that blowes, having alwayes a fore winde, returning from Spaine and new Spaine. As we passed the gulph, lanching farther

into the Sea, almost wader the Line, wee found the featon coole, quiet, and pleafant, with a full winds, but comming neere to Niteragua, and to all that cost, wee had contary winds, with great flore of raine and fogges. All this Naiigation was vader the burning Zone: for from twellow degrees to the South, which a Lima, we failed to the featurenth, which is Can-

takeo, a port of new Spaine; and I believe, that fuch as have observed their navigations, made vnder the burning Zone, shall finde what I have faid, which may suffice for the windes which raigne 40

nellous effects of the winder, which are in (bap.9. Silkewormes killed wich Zeb 17. Ofte 12. Dan.3. The like Linfueth in the

at Sea, vnder the burning Zone.

Sea fickneffe

It were a very difficult matter, to report particularly the admirable effects which some windes cause in divers regions of the world, and to give a reason thereof. There are windes, which naturally trouble the water of the Sea, and makes it greene and blacke, others cleere as Christall, fome comfort and make glad, others trouble and breede heauinesse. Such as nourish Silke-wormes, have great care to flut their windowes, when as the South-west windes doe blow, and to open them to the contrary : having found by certaine experience, that their wormes diminish and dye with the one, and fatten and become better with the other ; and who so will neerely obferue it, shall finde in himselfe, that the diversities of windes, cause notable impressions and changes in the body, principally in ficke parts and ill disposed, when they are most tender and 50 Exac. 10.0 14. weake. The holy Scripture calleth one aburning winde, another, a winde full of dewe and fweetneffe. And it is no wonder if we lee fuch norable effects of the winde, in Plants, Beafts, and Men, feeing that we fee it visibly in Iron, which is the hardest of all mettals. I have feene Grates of Iron in some parts of the Indies , so rusted and consumed , that pressing it betwixt your fingers, it dissolved into powder, as if it had beene hay or parched itraw, the which proceedes onely from the winde which doth corrupt it, having no meanes to withstand it, But leauing apart many other great and notable effects, I will onely make mention of two. The one, although it caufeth pangs greater then death it felfe, yet doth it not breede any further inconuenience. The other takes away life without feeling of it. The ficknesse of the Sea, wherewith fuch are troubled as first begin to goe to Sea, is a matter very ordinary; and yet if the nature 60 thereof were vnknowne to men, we should take it for the pangs of death, seeing how it afflicts and torments while it doth last, by the casting of the stomacke, paine of the head, and other Agitation and troublefone accidents. But in truth this fekneffe fo common and ordinary happens vinto menby the change of the second sec the change of the ayre and Sea. For although it be true that the motion of the Ship helprs much,

in that it mous more or lefte and likewife the infections and ill favours of things in the Shiptvet the proper and naturall cause, is the agree and the vapours of the Sea, the which doth to weaken and trouble she body and the fromacke, which are not accultomed thereunto, that they are wonand trouved and changed : for the ayre is the Element, by which we line and breath, drawing it into our entrailes, sho which we bathe therewithall. And therefore there is nothing that fo fuddenly, and with fo great force doth alter vs, as the change of the ayre we breathe, as we fo luddenty, and with a great rores upon a nervy, as the stange of the syste we breath, as we fee in their which shy so if the plages. It is approaced by many expertences, that the syre of the see, is the chiefe cause of this frames indisposition; the one is, that which there blowes from see, is the chiefe cause of this frames indisposition; the one is, that when there blowes from Sea, is the control cause of thus strange mon pointion; one one is, that when there blowes from the Sea saftening breath; we fee them at the Land as it wire Sea-Ricke; as I my (lifte hade often to found. Another is, the farther wee goe into the Sea; and frety is from Liand., the labels were ate tound, answere in the state of motion and agitation may case this fick neffe, feeing that we fee Tome are rates there with passing mount management on the fore going in Coucher and Carolches, according to the dustre complexions of the Scenarius as conference in the fore going in Couche and Carolches, according to the dustre complexions of the Scenarius as conference in the complexions of the Scenarius as conference in the part and trouble lines. focurt the Sta be, doe neuer feele it. Wherefore it is a matter certaine, and tried, that the ayre of the Sea, doth commonly table this effect in fach as newly goe to Sea, I thought good to speake or the sea, soon common which happens in the many goe to sea, a congress to speak this, to thew a frange effect, which happens in fome prixed to it fallow; where the syste and the this, to thew a frange effect, which happens in fome prixed to it fallow; where the syste and the this, to thew a frange grant maker arm dazle, not leffe, but more then at Sea. Some holdie for a fable, co-wind that many maker arm dazle, not leffe, but more then at Sea. Some holdie for a fable, co-wind that the state of the state o

wante trase earge managements of the management of the state of the st alteration itbred, I were as well prepared as I could, according to the influctions which was on at Perisaga atteration scores, a west as were prepared as exonon according to the introduction works was a strending guerne, by fuch as they call Veguiness, for expert men; but nowing thinking all my promise you are one, when I aim so mountain degrees, as they called them; which is the top of this mountaine, there, on, when I came to mount me seryers, as early caused users, which is the top or can mentionate I was fulfield by furracted with 10 mortals and to firring a pang, that I was ready to fall from the top to the ground: and alchough we were many in company, yet carry one made hafte (without any tarrying for his companion), to free friendlife speedily from this ill passage, Being then alone any tarrying for his companion, no feet himlesse specially from this ill passage. Being then alone with one land an, whom I increased to shelpe to say she; I was surprized with such passage is straight in a case of the passage of the ining ard catting, as I change to cast why she being too so the passage of the ining ard catting, as I change to cast why she being to consider the same of the straight of the straight of the same of the

ooth not more act harmo, enery this, paine and troubletions diffialls while it endures? And not only the passage of Partners hat this propertie, but side if this ridge of the Monitariate, which only the passage of the Monitariate, which have been seen to be made of the count of the Monitariate of the Monitariate of the more than the passage of the more passage of the Monitarian passage of the Monitarian passage of the Monitarian passage of the more passage of the Monitarian passage ming, and alwayes in this passage I have felt this alteration, although in no place to strongly, as at the first in Fariacaca, which hath beene tried by all such as have passed it. And no doubt but the winde is the cause of this intemperature and firange alteration, or the ayre that raignes there. winde is the cause of this intemperature and tringge interaction, or the systems raighter torter. For the best remedy (and all they findle) is to froppe their softs, their earre, and that mounter, so much as much as may be, and to couer themselves with distinct, especially the stomacke, for that the

ayre is fubtile and piercing; going mee the entraites, and not onely men feele this alteration, but ayre is subtile and piercess; Bong into us clustering and the property under ever under extending you go also beafts that sometimes thay there, so a there is no spurre can pake them go for overal. For my go also beafts that sometimes that there is no spurre can pake them go for overal. For my go also beafts that sometimes are not a sound in my do into the sound in that space and many houses, in regard of hie Towers. I cherefere personale my felfe, that the save working Halis, are as ordinary houses, in regars or me a owers: I uncrease personance any tents, and the house of chains became of the syric in these for identiciand delicated, as it is not proportionable with the house of what became of the syric in the form of the syric in the form of the syric in the syric i thing of man, which requires a more grow and emphase ayer, and a better a boundary that the shows that do to be made, and other of Emph, which I have read growing already parties of the more the water with since Nomade, and other of Emph, which I have read growing already in the year of the more than the same of the beines (Venues, and octor) or Lawrey, which a rule retent, among neaver or count, igness, and their fence of doth front men to wear-front electric solds doth nor tike away the appeting, from make is made meate, but contravius it is prounter; pittifier doth it can any calling of the frontacks, but copy, gotter of the contravius it is prounter; pittifier doth it can be not called the contravius of the contr

the enerales within : and that which is more admirable, when the Sunne is hot, which maketh me imagine, that the griefe wee feele comes from the qualitie of the ayre. Which wee breathe : Therefore that is most subtile and delicate, whose cold is not fo sensible, as pieroing. All this

ridge of mountaines is, for the most part, defart, without any Villages or habitations for men. for as you hall karce finde any small Corrages to lodge such as doe pass by night : there are no Beafts, good or bad, but fome Vicuses, which are their Countrie Muctons; and haue a firange and wonderfull property, as I thall thew in his place. The Graffe is often burne, and all blacks with Great Defirte the ayre, and this Defare runs five and twenty or thirty leagues overthwart, and in length above

Punas avre kil.ing.

There are other Defarts or places inhabited, which at Peru they call Puna (Speaking of the second point we promised) where the qualitie of the ayre cutteth off mans life without feeling. In former time the Spaniards went from Pern, to the Realme of Chile by this Mountaine. but at this day, they doe passe commonly by Sea, and sometimes along it the fide of it. And though of that way he laborious and troublefome, yet is there not fo great danger as by the Mountaine, where there are Plaines, on the which many men has perified and dyrd, and formitimes hast scaped by great hap, whereof some have remained lame. There runs a small breath, which is not very firong por violent, but proceeds in fach fort, that men fall downedead, in a manner without feeling, or at the least, they toofe their feete and bands : the which may feeme fabulous , vet Strange Story, is it most true. I have knowne and frequente d long the Generall Iarme Coffile, the auricient peopler of Unfee, which had loft if ree or foure toes, which fell off in pating the Defart of Chile, being perilbed with this agre, and when he came to looke on them, they were dead, and fell off without any paine, euen as a rotten Apple falleth from she tree. This Captaine reported , that of a good armie which he had conducted by that place, in the former yeares, fince the difcoueof a good arms which he had conducted by that place, 10, the former yeares, fince the discounyeares, of this Kingdome by Almagre, a greet part of the more remained deather; whose bodies
he found lying in the Defart, without any limits or corruptions adding thereunco one thing year
a day by throngs, that they found a yong Boye alms, and being examined how the had lined in the
place; her fail, that he lay hidden in a king flows, whence her came to cut the felth of a dead
Horie with a little Knife, and thus find he nounthed himslelfe a long time, with I know not how incre with a little Knife, and thus had he acquired high close the came to cut the field of a deal little with a little Knife, and thus had he acquired highest along time, with know not how many groups among the third of the control of the contro

Vs at the Maggelas Straits.

of the Ocean that innirens the Liddes, and of the North and South Seas, their ebbing, flowing; Fiftes, fifting, Lakes, Rivers, and Springs.

lenor to and roman and other noise of the state of the angle of the same of the same

valuations of paraditions of all the the

mong all waters the Ocean is the principall, by which the lader have beene discous-ted, and are injureded therewith, for either they be Hands of the Ocean Segor maine Lind, the which wherelocust it ends, is bounded with this Ocean. To this day they Haue not discouered at the Indees any Mediterranean Sea, as in Europe, Afia, and Affrica, names from the recommendation and applications of the state of the sta ters alone into the Indian Ocean; and the Caspian Sealoynes not with any other: to that at the latter we finde not any other Sea then this Ocean, which they divide into two, the one 60 they call the North Sea, and the other the South; for that the Indies which were first discovered

by the Ocean, and reacheth vinco Spaine, lies all to the North, and by that Land thereafter difcourred a Sea on the other lide, the which they called the South Sea , for that they decline vntill they have passed the Line : and having loft the North, or Pole-articke, they called it South. CHAP.2. S.2 Supposed Streights to the South Sea. Ebbing and flowing of the Sea. 020

For this cause they have called all that Ocean the South Sea, which lyeth on the other lide of the East Indies, although a great part of it be feated to the North, as all the coast of new Source. Newsanns, Guatumala and Panama. They fay! that he that first discourred this Sea. was called Billionness of Bills, the which hedd by this part which we now call Maine Land, where it Tora pine, growes narrow, and the two Seds approach is never the one to the other, that there is but femel leagues of distance from Kindingh they misk the the way Seds approach is never the one to the other, that there is but femel leagues of distance from Kindingh they misk the the way eighteene from Nowber de Duit to Pas Smightofland nen reagues of durance rior archough they make the way tighteen the way but drawing a direct line, the but cight leage one Sea thall not be found more diffant from the other. Some have discourfed and propounded & South Seasto cut through this peffage of fluen leagues, and to inyne one Sea to the other, to make the paf-

To fage from Pers more commodious and eafle, for that thefe eighteene leagues of Land betwiret Numbre de Disc and Poissess, in more paintefull and chargeable then 2300; by Sea, whereupon fome would fav. it were a meaner to drowne the Land, one Sea being lower then another. As Hendelm in times past we finde it written, that for the fame confideration, they gave over the enterprize to winne the red Sea into Nile, in the time of King Seloffre, and fince, in the Empire of the Oshousers. But for my part, I hold fuch diffcouries and proportions for vaine, although this mccin-lenism, uninence should not happen, the which I will not hold for affored. I believe there is no huministic powerable to beate, and breake downe those strong and impenetrable Mountaines, which God hath placed betwire the two Seas, and hath made them most hard Rockes, to withstand the furie of two Seas. And although it were possible to men, yet in my opinion they should feare 22 punishment from heaven, in feeking to correct the workes, which the Creator by his great pro-

uidence hath ordained and disposed in the framing of this vinuerfall world.

Leauing this discourse of opening the Land, and ionning both Seas together, there is yet another less rain, but very dissent and dangerous to search out. Whether these two great gulfes doe joyne in any other part of the world, which was the enterprize of Fernando Magellan a Portugall Gentleman, whole great courage and constancie in the research of this subject, and happy fuccesse in the finding thereof, gave the name of eternall memory to this straight, which builty they call by the name of the disconerer Magellan, of which straight we will intreate a little, asof one of the greatest wonders of the world. Some have believed, that this Straight which Marellan had discoursed in the South Sea, was none, or that it was straightned, as Don 20 Alonfo d'Arfile writes in his Amacane: and at this day there are some that fay, there is no such Experience for

Straight, but that they are llands betwint the Sea and Land, for that the maine Land ends Drakes and straight, dut the end whereof are all flands, beyond the which the one Sea loynes fully with the Maint voyage there, at the end whereof are all flands, beyond the which the one Sea loynes fully with the Maint voyage other, or to speake better, it is all one Sea. But in truth it is most certaine, there is a straight them no. and a long and ftretched out Land on either fide, although it hath not yet beene knowne how ftraights but farre it stretcheth of the one side of the straight towards the South. After Magellan, a Shippe of broken Hands the Bilhop of Plaisance passed the Straight, Don Guitteres Carnaial (whose Maste they say is yet to the South, at Lima, at the entrie of the Pallace) they went afterwards coasting along the South, to dilco. contrary to uer the Straight, by the commandement of Don Garcia of Mendoca, then Gouernor of Chille, here, according to that which Captaine Ladrillero found it and passed it. I have read the discourse and 40 report he made, where he faieth, that he did not hazard himselfe to land in the Straight . but

haning discourred the North Sea, he returned backe, for the roughnesse of the time, winter being now come, which caused the waves comming from the North, to grow great and swelling, Secos this Sir and the Sea continually forming with rage. In our time, Francis Drake an Englishman , passed Francis Drakes his Straight. After him, Captaine Samiente paffed it on the South fide. And laftly, in the yeere Voyage. 1s. 1887. other Englishmen paffed it, by the instruction of Drake, which at this time run along all ted Saminates the coast of Pers.

Euen as Magellan found out this Straight vpon the South, fo fome have pretended to difco- The supposed uer another Straight, which they say is in the North, and suppose it to be in Florida, whose coast Straight in runnes in such fort, as they know no end thereof. Peter Melendez the Adelantade, a man very Florida.

expert at Sea, affirmeth for certaine, that there is a Straight, and that the King had commanded him to discouer it, where in he shewed a great defire: he propounded his reasons to proue his and flowing of opinion, faying, that they have feene fome remainders of Ships in the North Sea, like vitto those the Indian O. the which the Chinois vie, which had beene impossible, if there were no passage from one Sea cean. Chap. 14. vnto another. Moreouer, hee reported, that in a certaine great Bay in Florida (the which runs The Philoso-300. leagues within the Land) they see Whales in some season of the yeare, which come from ing the cause

One of the most admirable secrets of Nature is the ebbing and flowing of the Sea, not onely for flowing haue this strange property of rising and falling, but much more for the difference there is thereof in easily erred. this strange property of ribing and rating, but much more for the united to the diuers Seas, year in diuers coasts of one and the same Sea. There are some Seas that have no daily following the diuers Seas, year in diuers coasts of one and the same Seas. 60 flowing norebbing, as we fee in the inner Mediterranean, which is the Thyrene Sea, and vet it flowes and ebbes every day in the vpper Mediterranean Sea, which is that of Venice, and inftly knew not the giveth cause of admiration, that these two Seas being Mediterranean, and that of Venice being Ocean, and no greater then the other, yet hath it his ebbing and flowing as the Ocean, and that other Sea could not therof Italie none at all. There are some Mediterranean Seas, that apparantly rise and fall enery fore know the

moneth, and others that neither rife in the day, nor in the moneth. There are other Seas at the Spanife Ocean, that have their flux and reflux every day; and besides that, they have it more nethly, which commeth twice, that is to fay, at the change, and at the full of enery Moone, which they call Spring-tides. To fay that any Sea hath this daily ebbing and flowing, and not monethly, I know not any. It is strange, the difference we finde of this subject at the Indian for there are some places whereas the Sea doth daily rise and fall two leagues, as at Personal and at a high water it rifeth much more. There are other places where it doth rife and fallefo little, that hardly can you finde the difference. It is ordinary in the Ocean Sea to have a daily flowing and ebbing, and that was twice in a naturall day, and ever it fals three quarters of an houre fooner one day then another, according to the course of the Moone : so as the tide fals not 19 alwaies in one houre of the day. Some would fay, that this flux and reflux proceeded from the locall motion of the water of the Sea; to as the water that rifeth on the one fide, fals on the other that is opposite vinto it : fo that it is full Sea on the one fide when it is a low water on the opposite, as we see in a Kettle full of water, when we mooue it, when it leanes to the one side the water increaseth, and on the other it diminisheth. Others affirme, that the Sea riseth in all parts at one time, and decreaseth at one instant : as the boyling of a Pot, comming our of the centre it extendeth it felfe on all parts, and when it ceafeth, it fals likewife on This second opinion is true, and in my judgement, certains and tried, not so much for the

reasons which the Philosophers give in their Meteors, as for the certaint experience wee may

He answered that it was not so, but they might see plainely, that the tides of the North and

South Seas rife at one instant, so as the waves of one Sea incountred with the other, and at one

instant likewise they began to retire, every one into his Sea, saying, that the rising and falling

was daily feene, and that the incounter of the tides (as I have faid) was at threefcore and tenne

waters really rife and increase at one instant, and in others, they diminish, as the boyling of a Pot, whereof I have spoken. It were impossible to comprehend this point by experience, if it were

make. For to fatisfie my felfe vpon this point and question, I demanded particularly of the 20

* Hernands A. faid Pilot, how he found the tides in the straight, and if the tides of the South Sea did fall lone which when as those of the North did rife. And contrariwise (this queffion being true) why the inwith Sarmiente crease of the Sea in one place, is the decrease thereof in another, as the first opinion holdeth. had cone to the Straights to feeke Captaine Drage.

At the Downes leagues to the North Sea, and thirtie to the South. Whereby we may plainely gather, that the ebbing and flowing of the Ocean is no pure locall motion, but rather an alteration : whereby all 20 not in the Straight, where all the Ocean both on th'one fide, and on th'other iownes together: other from the for none but Angels can fee it, and judge of the opposite parts: for that man hath not so long a fight, nor so nimble and swift footing as were needefull, to transport his eyes from much varietie.

Of fundry F thers, and -beir manner of fifthing at the

The Manatia ftrange fift. The Whales alfobring farre leffe then foode is also

one part to another, in fo short a time, as a tide will giue him respite, which are onely fix houres. There are in the Indian Ocean, an infinite number of fishes, the kindes and properties whereof the Creator onely can declare. There are many fuch as we have in the Sea of Europe, as Shads, and Alofes which come from the Sea into the Rivers; Dorads, Pilchards, and many other, There 40 are others, the like I doe not thinke to have feene in these parts, as those which they doe call Cabrillas, which doe somewhat refemble the Trowt, and in new Spaine they call them Bobos, they mount from the Sea into the Rivers. I have not feene any Befugues there, nor Trowts, although fome fay there are in Chille. There are Tonins in some parts upon the coast of Peru, but they are rare, and some are of opinion, that at a certaine time they doe cast their spawne in the Straight of Magellan, as they doe in Spaine at the Straight of Gibraltar, and for this reason they finde more voon the coalt of (bille, although those I have seene there, are not like to them in Spaine. At the Ilands (which they call Barlonente) which are Cuba, Saint Dominicke, Port rique, and Ismaique, they finde a fish which they call Manati, a strange kinde of fish, if we may call it fift, a creature which ingenders her yong ones aline, and hath teates, and doth nourish 50 them with milke, feeding of graffe in the fields, but in effect it lines continually in the water, yong alue, and and therefore they eate it as fish; yet when I did eate of it at Saint Dominique on a friday, I had some scruple, not for that which is spoken, but for that in colour and taste it was like vnto morfels of Veale, so is it greene, and like vnto a Cowe on the hinder parts. I did wonder at the that huge creating creating of the Tiburons, or sharkes, when as I did see drawne from one (that was taken in the Port) out of his gullet, a Butchers great Knife, a great Iron hooke, and a piece of a Cowes head with one whole horne, neither doe I know if both were there, or no. I did fee in a creeke made with that Sea, a quareer of a horse for pleasure hanging vpon a stake, whither presently came a company of these Tiburens, at the smell thereof: and for the more plealure, this Horse-flesh was hung in the ayre, I know not how many hand breadth from the wa-60 women. Their ter; this company of fifth flocke about it, leaping vp, and with a strange nimble nesse cut off both fleth and bone off the Horse legge, as if it had beene the stalke of a lettuce; their teeth being 28 sharpe as a rasour. There are certaine small fishesthey call Ramber, which cleave to these Tiber ross, neither can they drive them away, and they are fed with that which falles from the

C. H. A. P. 2. S. 2. Flying fishes. Crocodiles. Whale how taken. Indian fishing.

Thursens. There are other small fishes, which they call flying fishes, the which are found within They have the tropickes, and in no other place, as I thinke: they are purfued by the Ducader; and to escape the tropicaes, and in flowers process a good way in the ayre, and for this reason they are called whereby they flying Fifter : they have wings as it were of linnen cloath, or of parchment, which doe support cleave and fixing Fifter: they have wings as it were of interferences of the Ship wherein I went, the which ficke faft to the Ship wherein I went, the which the ship was the ship wherein I went, the ship was the ship wherein I went, the ship wherein I went, the ship was the I did fee, and observe the fashion of his wings.

In the Indian Histories there is often mention made of Lezards or Caymans (as they call them) and they are the very fame which Plinie and the Auncients call Crocodiles, they finde them on them with their the Sea fide, and in hot Rivers, for in cold Rivers there are none to be found. And therefore they fwift motion to finde none voon all the coasts of Pers unto Payra, but forward they are commonly seene in the of whose offall finde none vpon all the coalts of Peru vnto Peru, but forward they are commonly tente in and allo they live.
Rivers, It is a most fierce and cruel beast, although it be flow and heavie. Hee goes hunting and Crocodiles. feekes his prey on the Land, and what he takes aline, he drownes it in the water, yet dothlie not *Yerfo as ener ete it, but out of the water, for that his throate is of fuch a fashion, as if there entred any was and anon hee ter, he should easily be drowned. It is a wonderfull thing to see a combat betwixt a Caymant dipsit in the and a Tigre, whereof there are most cruell at the Indies. A religious man of our company told water his and a Tigre, whereof there are most cruelt at the indies. A rengious man or our company tool on successful me that he had seene these beafts fight most cruelly one against the other; whom the Sea shoare the so short the sea shoare the season of the seaso me mar ne man seme unen o cana ngenoment cuary our egant un originary, postume seme la face, that Caymant with his taile gaue great blower voto the Tygre, firtuing with his great force to cattry o heavisk behin into the water; and the Tigre with his pawei refulted the Caymant, drawing him to Land, could not feel him into the water; and the Tigre with his pawei refulted the Caymant, drawing him to Land, In the end the Tigre vanquished, and opened the Lezard, it seemes by the belly, the which is most lowit. 20 tender and penetrable, for in every other part he is so hard, that no Lance, and scarce a harquebuze Tigre hils a can pierce it. The victory which an Indian had of a Caymant was yet more rare : the Caymant had carried away his yong childe, and sodainely plunged into the Sea, the Indian moved with choller, cast himselfe after him, with a knife in his hand, and as they are excellent swimmers and divers, and the Caymant swimmeth alwayes on the toppe of the water, hee hurt him in

and cluers, and the Caymant feeling himselfe wounded, went to the shoare, leaon a Ctocodile
on a Ctocodile uing the little infant dead. But the combat which the Indians have with Whales is yet more admirable, wherein appeares

the power and greatnesse of the Creator, to give so base a Nation (as be the Indiana) the industrie and courage to incounter the most fierce and deformed beaft in the world, and not onely to fight 30 with him, but also to vanquish him, and not to triumph ouer him! Confidering this, I have often with numbur and to vandamin min, and as one of the While, Drawife quem formali ad illuden-remembred that place of the Palmes, freaking of the While, Drawife quem formali ad illuden-damenms. What greater mockerie can there be, then to fee in Indian leade a Whale as bigge as a Whale killed Mountaine, vanquished with a cord . The manner the Tabiliar of Flivida vie (as some expert men by the Sauges have told me) to take these Whales (whereof there is great flore) is, they put themselves into a Cance, which is like a barke of a tree, and in fivinming approach neere the Whales fide, "then with great dexteritie they leape to his necke, and there they ride as on horfe-back expecting his time, then he thrufts a sharpe and stong flake (which he carries with him) into the Whales noftrill, for fo they call the hole or vent by which they breathe, prefently he beates it in with another stake as forcibly as he can; in the meane space the Whale doth furiously beate the Sea, and ment for this trouble, hee beates another flake into the other vent or nofthrill, fo as he stoppeth him quite, and takes away his breathing, then he betakes him to his Canoe, which he holds tied with a cord to the Whales fide, and goes to Land, having first tied his cord to the Whale, the

40 raifeth Mountaines of water, running into the deepe with great violence, and sprefently rifeth agains, not knowing what to doe for pains: the Indian fill firs firme, and to give him full paints. which he lets run with the Whale, who leapes from place to place, whileft he finds water enough; being troubled with paine, in the end he comes neere the Land, and remaines on ground by the hugenesse of his body, viable any more to moue; then a great number of Indians come vito the Conquerour, to gather his spoiles, they kill him, and cut his flesh in peeces, the which is bad enough : this doe they dry and beate into powder, vling it for meate, it doth last them long : wherein is fulfilled, that which is spoken in another Plalme of the Whale, Dedifti eum efcam pos pulis Athiopum, Peter Mendez the Adelantade did often ipeake of this kinde of fishing. Whereof Monardes makes mention in his Booke.

There is another fishing which the Indians doe commonly vie in the Sea, the which, although it beleffe, yet is it worthy the report. They make as it were faggots of bul-rushes or dry fedges well bound together, which they call Balfas: having carried them voon their shoulders to the Sea, they cast them in, and presently leape vpon them: being so set, they lanch out into the deepe, rowing vp and downe with small reedes of either tide : they goe a league or two into the Searco fish, carrying with them their cords and nets vpon these faggots, and beare themselues thereon. They calt out their nets, and doethere remaine fishing the greatest part of the day 60 and night, vntill they have filled vp their measure, with the which they returne well satisfied. Truely it was delightfull to fee them fish at Callas of Lima, for that they were many in number, and enery one fet on horie-backe, cutting the waves of the Sea, which in their place of filhing are great and furious, refembling the Truons or Neptunes, which they paint voon the water, and being come to Land, they draw their barke out of the water v pon their backes, the which they

which shoe are forced to carry

presently vindoe, and lay abroad on the shoare to drie. There were other Indians of the Vallies of Toa. which were accustomed to goe to fish in leather, or skins of Sea-wolues, blowne vp with winde, and from time to time they did blow them like bals of winde, left they flould finke, Inthe vale of Canete , which in old time they called Guaron, there were a great number of Indian filhers ; but because they relifted the Ingua, when he came to conquer that Land , hee made thew or peace with them, and therefore to reaft him, they appointed a folemne fishing of many thoufano Indians, which went to Sea in their veffels of reeds : at whose returne, the Inona (who had laid many Souldiers in ambush) made a cruell butcherie of them, so as afterward this Land remained unpeopled, although it be aboundant and fertile. I did fee another manner of fifthing, whereunto Don Francis of Toledo the Viceroy did leade me, yet was it not in the Sea, but in a River fo which they call great in the Prouince of Charcas, where the Indians Chiraquanas plunged into the water, and iwimming with an admirable swiftnesse, followed the fish, where with darts and hookes (which they vie to carry in their right hand, onely fwimming with the left) they wound the fifth, and fo hurt they brought them forth, feeming in this more like vnto fithes then men of the Land. But now that we have left the Sea, let vs come to other kinde of waters that remaine to be spoken of. In place of the Mediterranean Sea, which is in the old world, the Creator hath furnished this

Of Lakes and Pooles that be at the Indies. Ch42.16.

ing the Scripture calleth that of Palestina fo, which is not so great as some of these. The most famous is that of Titicaca, which is at Pern, in the Province of Callao, the which as I have faid in 20 the former booke, containes neere fourescore leagues in compasse, into the which there runs ten or twelue great Riners. A while fince, they began to faile in it with Barkes and Ships, wherein they proceeded fo ill, that the first Ship was split with a tempest that did rife in the Lake. The

new with many Lakes, whereof there are some so great, as they may be properly called Seas see-

water is not altogether fower nor falt, as that of the Sea, but it is fo thicke, as it cannot be drunke. There are two kindes of fiftes breede in this Lake in great abundance, the one they call Suches, which is great and fauorous, but phlegmaticke and vn wholefome : and the other Bogos, which is more healthfull, although it be ! He and fuller of bones : there are great numbers of wilde-ducks and Wigens. When as the Indiana will feast it, or shew delight to any one that paf-

feth along the two bankes, which they call Chuento and Omajugo, they affemble a great number of Canoes, making a circle and injuroning the fowle, vntill they take with their hands what 30 they please; and they call this manner of filling Chace. On the one and the other banke of this Lake, arothe best habitations of Pers. From the issue thereof there growes a lefter Lake, although it be great, which they call Paris, wpon, the bankes whereof, there are great numbers of cattell, especially Swine, which grow exceeding fat with the graffe vpon those bankes. There are many other Lakes in the high Mountaines, whence proceede Brookes and Rivers, which after become great flouis. Vpon the way from Arequippa to Cellas, there are two Lakes, vpon the Mountaines of the one and other fide the way, from the one flowes a brooke, which growes to a floud, and fals into the South Sea; from the other, they fay the famous River of Aporima takes her beginning from the which fome hold that the renowned River of Amazons, other wife called Maragnen proceedes, with so great an affembly and abundance of waters, which iowne in these 40 Mountaines. It is a question may be often asked, why there is to many Lakes in the tops of these Mountaines, into the which no river enters, but contrariwile, many great freames iffue forth, and yet doe we fearce fee these Lakes to dim inish any thing at any season of the yeare. To imagine that thele Lakes grow by the Snow that melts, or raine from heaven, that doth not wholly fatisfie me : for there are many that have not this abundance of Snow, nor raine, and yet wee fee

no degreafe in them, which makes me to beleeve they are Springs which rife there naturally, although it be not against reason, to thinke that the Snow and raine helpe somewhat in some leafons. These Lakes are so common in the highest tops of the Mountaines, that you shall hardly Great frivers finde any famous river that takes not his beginning from one of them. Their water is very pleare and breedes little flore of fish, and that little is very small, by reason of the cold which is there so

flow from

Notwithstanding, some of these Lakes be very hot, which is another wonder. At the end of Hot Lake, and the Vallie of Tarapaya neere to Potezi, there is a Lake in forme round, which feemes to have many wonders beene made by compafe, whose water is extreamely hot, and yet the Land is very cold; they are accustomed to bathe themselves neere the banke, for elfe they cannot endure the heate being farther in. In the midit of this Lake, there is a boiling of about twentie foote square, which is the very Spring, and yet (notwithstanding the greatnesse of this Spring) it is neuer seene to increase in any fort : it seemes that it exhals of it felse, or that it hath some hidden and vnknowneillie, neither doe they fee it decreafe; which is another wonder, although they have drawne from it a great streame, to make certaine engines grinde for metrall, considering the great quantitie of water that iffueth forth, by reason whereof, it should decrease.

Likes of Mexico falt and

Butleauing Pers, and paifing to new Spaine, the Lakes there, are no leffe tobe observed; especially that most famous of Mexico, where we finde two forts of waters, one salt Lakelike to that of the Sea, and the other cleere and sweete, by reason of the Rivers that enter into it.

In the midft of this Lake, is a rocke very delightfull and pleafant, where there are bathes of hot water that iffue forth, the which they greatly efteeme for their health. There are Gardens in the middett of this Lake, framed and fleeting upon the water, where you may see plots full of a thouland forts of hearbes and flowers, & they are in fuch fort as a man cannot well conceine them without fight. The Citie of Mexico is feated in the fame Lake, although the Spaniards have filled up the place of the feituation with earth, leaving onely fome currents of water, great and finall, which enter into the Citie, to carrie fuch things as they have neede of, as wood, hearbs. fone, fruites of the Countrie, and all other things. When Cortex conquered Mexico, hee caufed Brigandins to bemade, yet afterwards he thought it more fafe not to vie them : therefore they vie Canner, whereof there igreat flore. There is great flore of fifth in this Lake, yet have to I not feene any of price: notwithstanding, they say the reuenue of this Lake, is worth threehundred thousand Duckets a yeere. There are many other Lakes, not farre from this, whence numeres chousen by the Mexico. The Prouince of Mechonacas is so called, for that it aboundeth Reh Lakes

greatly with fish. There are goodly and great Lakes, in the which there is much fish, and this Promince is coole and healthfull. There are many other Lakes, whereof it is not possible to make mention, nor to know them in particular, onely wee may note by that which hath beene discourfed in the former Booke, that vader the burning Zone there is greater abundance of Lakes, then in any other part of the world. ten in any other part of the world, great diversitie of Springs, Fountaines, Ofmany and There is at the Indies as in other parts of the world, great diversitie of Springs, Fountaines,

There is at the indies as in other pairs of the working great another to prings, a Mines of duers springs and Rivers, and some have strange properties. In Guancaniles of Pern (where the Mines of and Fountains and Fountains and Kiners, and tomorgan and Four Quick-filter be,) there is a Fountaine that easts forth hot water, and in running, the water Chapter. turnes to rocke, of which rocke or flone; they build in a manner all the houles of the Village. Hor Spring This flone is 10ft, and easie to cut, for they cut it as easily with Iron as if it were wood, it a nis itone is ion, and take on beafts drinke thereof, they dye, for that it congeales in the Scone. very entrailes, and turnes into stone, and for that cause some Horses haue died. As this water turnes into stone, the which flowes, stoppes the passage to the rest; so as of neceffitie it changeth the courie, and for this reason it runnes in divers places, as the rocke increaseth. At the point of Cape Saint Helaine, there is a Spring or Fountaine of Pitch, which Fountaine of at Pers, they call Copper. This should be like to that which the Scripture speakes of the sauge Pach. Valley, where they did finde pits of Pitch. The Marriners vie their Fountaines of Pitch or 30 Coppey, to pitch their ropes and tackling, for that it serues them as Pitch and Tarre in Spaine,

When I failed into new Spaine by the coast of Peru, the Pilot shewed me an Iland, which they call the Ile of Wolses, where there is another Fountaine or Pit of Coppey or Pitch, with the which they anoint their tackling. There are other Fountaines and Springs of Goultranrozen, which the Pilot (an excellent man in his charge) told me he had feene, and that fometimes failing that waies, being to farre into the Sea, as he had loft the fight of Land, yet did he know by the smell of the Coppey, where he was, as well as if he had knowne the Land; fuch is the fauour that iffues conti-

nually from that Fountaine.

At the Bathes, which they call the Bathes of Ingua, there is a course of water, which Cold and hot 40 comes forth all hot and boiling; and ioyning vaco it, there is another whole water is as cold Springs togeas Ice. The Ingua was accustomed to temper the one with the other; and it is a wonderfull then thing to fee Springs of fo contrarie qualities, fo neere one to the other. There are an infinite number of other hot Springs, specially in the Province of Charcas, in the water whereof, you cannot indute to hold your hand the space of an Ane Maria, as I haue seene tried by wager. In a Farme neere to Cufco, fprings a Fountaine of Salt, which as it runnes turnes Salt Soring into Salt, very white and exceeding good, the which (if it were in another Countrie) were which yieldes no fmall riches, yet they make very small account thereof, for the store they have there. The Sal without waters which rune in Gusyaquel, which is in Prus, almost vader the Quintocal Line; are boiling, held to be heldsfull for the French discase, and other such like, so as they come from many 50 places farre off to be cured. And they fay the cause thereof is, for that in that Countrie there is great aboundance of rootes, which they call Salepareille, the vertue and operation whereof is Pockes pringe

to knowne, that it communicates her propertie to the waters wherein it is put to cure this difeafe. Bilcanota is a Mountaine the which (according to common opinion) is in the highest part of Peru, the top whereof is all couered with Snow, and in some places is blacke like coale. There Mueth forth of it, two Springs in contrary places, which prefently grow to be very great brooks, and fo by little and little become great flouds, the one goes to Calloa, into the great Lake Tincaca; the other goes to the Lands, and is that which they call Tucay, which icyning with another runnes into the North Sea, with a violent and furious courfe. This Spring, when it comes out of Smoak Springs the rocke Bilcanota, as I haue faid, is of the colour of lie, having an affire colour, and cafts a fame as a 60 thing burnt, the which runs far in this fort, vntil the multitude of waters that run into it, quench Index, 800

this smoak and fire which it drawes from the Spring. In new Spain I have feene a Spring as it were Ink, Comewhat blew, in Pers another, of color red like blood, where vpon they cal it the red River. Of Rivers. Amongst all Rivers, not onely at the Indies, but generally through the world, the River Ma- Chapas.

ragnon, or of Amazons, is the chiefe, whereof we have spoken in the former Booke. The Spa. Marguer or

niards. Amazans

miards have often failed it, pretending to discouer the Lands, which by report are very rich especially those they call Dorado and Paytini, Ican de Salnies, the Adelantade, made a memorable entrie, though of small effect. There is a passage which they call Ponge, one of the most dance. rous in all the world; for the River being there straightned, and forced betwixt two high steepe Rocks : the water fals directly downe with fo great a violence, that comming fleepe downe, is caufeth fuch a boyling, as it feemeth impossible to passe it without drowning : yet the courage of men durft attempt to paffe it, for the defire of this renowmed Dorado: they slipe downer from the top to the bottome, thrust on with the violence and currant of the floud, holding themselves fast in their Canoes or barkes : and although in falling they were turned topfie turnie, and both they and their Canoes plunged into the deepe, yet by their care and industrie they recovered to themselues againe; and in this fort the whole armie escaped, except some few that were drown Golden thirst. ned. And that which is more admirable, they carried themselves so cunningly, that they neither loft their Powder nor Munition. In their returne (hauing fuffered many troubles and dangers) they were forced, in the end, to passe backe that same way) mounting by one of those high Rocks.

flicking their Ponyards in the Rocke,

other parts of the Indies.

Cantaine Peter d'Orsus made another entrie by the same River, who being dead in the same Voyage, and the Souldiers mutinied; other Captaines followed the enterprile, by an arme that comes into the North Sea. A religious man of our company told vs, that being then a fecular man, he was present in a manner at all that enterprise, and that the tides did flow almost a hundred leagues vp the River, and whereas it enters into the Sea (the which is vnder the Line, or 20 very neare) it hath feuenty leagues breadth at the mouth of it, a matter incredible; and which exceeds the breadth of the Mediterranean Sea, though there be fome others, who in their descripti-

ons give it but twenty five or thirty leagues breadth at the mouth,

Next to this River that of Plata, or of Silver holds the fecond place, which is otherwise called increasing as Paragnay, which runs from the Mountains of Perm, into the Sea, in thirty fine degrees of altitude to the South : it rifeth (as they fay)like to the River of Nile, but much more without companion, and makes the fields it ouerflowes like vnto a Sea, for the space of three moneths, and after returneth againe to his course, in the which Shippes doe faile many leagues against the streame. There are many other Rivers that are not of that greatnesse, and yet are equall: yea they surpasse the greatest of Europe, as that of Magdalaine, neere to Saint Maribe, called the great Riner, and 30 that of Almarado in new Spaine, and an infinite number of others. Of the South fide, on the Mountaines of Perm, the Rivers are not vivally fo great, for that their current is not long, and that many waters cannot loyne together, but they are very fwift, descending from the Mountaines. and have fodaine fals, by reason whereof they are very dangerous, and many men have perished there. They increase and overflow most in the time of heate. I have gone over twenty and feuen Riuers vpon that coaft, yet did I neuer passe any one by a foord. How they passe The Indians vie a thousand denises to passe their Rivers. In some places they have a long cord

that runnes from one fide to th'other, and thereon hangs a basket, into the which he puts him felfe

that meanes to passe; and then they draw it from the banke with another cord, so as he passeth

in this basket. In other places the Indian paffeth, as it were on Horfe-backe, vpon a bottle of 40 Arraw, and behinde him he that defires to paffe; and so rowing with a peece of a boord, carries him ouer. In other places they make a floste of gourds or pompions, vpou which they fet men with their fluffe to carry ouer, and the Indian haung cords fathend to them, goe furnisming before, and draw this floate of pompions after them, all Hofes does a Coach: other gee behinde thrulting it forward. Hauing passed, they take their barke of pompions vpon their backe, and returne swimming: this they doe in the River of Saint at Pern, We passed that of Almarado in new Spain wpon a table, which the Indians carried vpon their shoulders, and when they lost their footing, they fwamme. These denises, with a thousand other wherewith they vie to passe their Rivers. breede a terrour in the beholders, helping themselves' with such weake and vissure meanes; and Haire and yet they are very confident. They doe vieno other bridges but of haire or of straw. There are 50 Straw Bridges, now yoon some Rivers bridges of Stone, built by the diligence of some Gouernours, but many fewer then were needefull in fuch a Countrie, where so many men are drowned by default thereof, and the which yeeldes so much Silver, as not onely Spaine, but also other strange Countries make fumptuous buildings therewith. The Indians doe draw from these flouds that runne from the Mountaines to the Vallies and Plaines, many and great Brookes to water their Land, which they viually doe with fuch industrie, as there are no better in Murcia, nor at Millan it felfe, the which is also the greatest and onely wealth of the Plaines of Peru, and of many

d. III.

of the qualitie of the Land at the Indies in generall. Properties of Peru, and of new Spaine, and other parts : Of Vulcanes and Earthquakes.

C. HAP. 1. S. 3. Indians wasted. Pastures and mines in bils. Coast-commerce and wine, 025

E may know the qualitie of the Land at the *Indies*, for the greatest part (seeing it is 1.3.6.19). The fait of the three Elements, whereof we have propounded to treate in this Rooke 1. by the discourse we have made in the former Booke of the burning Zone, seeing that the greatest part of the Indies doth lye vnder it. But to make it knowne the more particularly, I have observed three kindes of Lands, as I have passed through those Regions: particularly, I have concrued times at manager Lamus, as a mate paned enrough above Accidents whereof there is one very low, another very high, and the third which holds the middle of their two extreames. The lower is that which lyeth by the Sea coasts, whereof there is in all their two extreames. parts of the Indees, and it is commonly very hot and moift, fo as it is not fo healthfull; and at this day we fee it leffe peopled, although in former times it hath beene greatly inhabited with Indians, as it appeareth by the histories of new Spanne and Peru, and where they kept and lived, for that the folle was naturall vnto them being bred there. They lived of fishing at Sea, and of feeds, drawing brooks from the Rivers, which they vied for want of raine, for that it raines little there, and in some places not at all. This low Countrie hath many places vinhabitable, as well by 20 reason of the Sands which are dangerous (for there are whole Mountaines of these Sands) as also for the Marishes which grow by reason of the waters that fall from the Mountaines, which finding no slice in these flat and low Lands, drowne them, and make them vnprofitable.

one no sine in the greatest part of all the Indian Sea coast as of this fort, chiefly you the South Decay of pead And in truth the greatest part of all the Indian Sea coast of this fort, chiefly you the South Decay of pead And in truth the greatest part of the South Decay of pead And in truth the greatest part of the South Decay of pead And In truth the greatest part of the South Decay of pead And In truth the greatest part of the South Decay of pead And In truth the greatest part of the South Decay of pead And In truth the greatest part of the South Decay of pead And In truth the greatest part of the South Decay of pead And In truth the greatest part of the South Decay of pead And In truth the greatest part of the South Decay of pead And In truth the greatest part of the South Decay of pead And In truth the greatest part of the South Decay of pead And In truth the greatest part of the South Decay of pead And In truth the greatest part of the South Decay of pead And In truth the greatest part of the South Decay of pead And In truth the greatest part of the South Decay of the Sout parts of the people that inhabited it, there wants twenty nine; and it is likely the reft of the by the Spesi-Indians will in short time decay. Many, according to the varietie of their opinions, attribute

this to divers causes: some to the great labour which hath beene imposed vpon these Indians; others, ynto the change and varietie of meates and drinkes they yie, fince their commerce with the Spaniards: others, to their great excesse and drinking, and to other vices they have : for my 30 part. I hold this diforder to be the greatest cause of their decay, whereof it is not now time to difcourse any more. In this low Countrie (which I say generally is vnhealthfull, and vnfit for mans habitation) there is exception in some places which are temperate and fertile, as the greatest part of the Plaines of Pers, where there are coole vallies and very fertile. The greatest part of the habitation of the coast encertains all the traffike of Spain by Sea: whereon all the estate of the Indies dependeth. Vpon this coast there are some Towns well peopled, as Linus and Truxillo in Poru, Panama and Carthagena vpon the maine Land, and in the Hands Saint Dominique, Port Ricco, and Hanana, with many other Towns which are leffe then thefe, as the True Croffe in new Spain, Tos, Arigus and others in Pers: the Ports are commonly inhabited, although but flenderly. The

to fecond fort of Land is contrary, very high, and by confequent, cold and dry, as all the Mountainer are commonly. This Land is neither fertile nor pleasant, but very healthfull, which makes it to be peopled and inhabited. There are Pastures and great store of Cattle, the which, for the most part, entertaines life, and by their Cattell, they looply the want they have of Corne and Graine, by trucking and exchange. But that which makes their Lands more inhabited and peopled, is the riches of the Mines that are found there, for that all obeys to Gold and Siluer, By reason of the Mines there are some dwellings of Spaniards and Indians, which are increased and multiplied, as Potoci and Gancaselicque in Peru, and Cacatecae in new Spaise. There are also through all these Mountaines great dwellings of the Indians, which to this day are maintained: yea some will say they increase, but that the labour of the Mines doth consume many, 50 and some generall diseates haue destroyed a great part, as the Cecoliste in new Spaine: yet they finde no great diminution. In this extremitie of high ground they finde two commodities, as

I have faid, of Paftures and Mines, which doe well countervaile the two other that are in the lower grounds along it the Sea coast, that is, the commerce of the Sea, and the abundance of Wine which groweth not but in the hot Lands. Betwixt these two extreames there is ground Corngresands of a meane height, the which, although it be in some parts higher or lower one then other, yet doth it not approach neither to the heate of the Sea coast, nor the intemperature of the Mountaines. In this fort of foyle there groweth many kindes of Graine, as Wheate, Barley, and Mays, which growes not at all in the high Countries, but well in the lower; there is likewife flore of Patture, Cattell, Fruits, and greene Forrests. This part is the best habitation of the three, 60 for health and recreation; and therefore it is best peopled of any part of the Indies, the which I

haue curiously observed in many Voyages that I haue undertaken, and have alwayes found it true, that the Province best peopled at the Indies be in this scituation. Let vs looke neerely into new Spaine (the which without doubt is the best Province the Sunne doth circle) by what part Soeuer you doe enter, you mount vp; and when you have mounted a good height, you begin to

Hhhh 3

whereof we will now proceede to fpeake.

descend, yet very little : and that Land is alwayes much higher then that along the Sea

All the Land about Mexico is of this nature and scituation; and that which is about the Val can, which is the best foile of the Indies, as also in Peru, Arequipa, Guamangua and Cusco, although more in one then in the other. But in the end, all is high ground, although they descend into deepe Vallies, and clime vp to bigh Mountaines: the like is spoken of Quitte, Saint For, and of the best of the New Kingdome. To conclude, I doe believe that the wiledome and providence of the Creator would have it so, that the greatest part of this Countrie of the Indies should be hillie, that it might be of a better temperature : for being low, it had beene very hot ynder the burning Zone, especially being farre from the Sea. Also all the Land I have seene at the Indier, 10 is neere to the Mountaines on the one fide or the other, and sometimes of all parts : So as I have oftentimes faid there, that I would gladly see any place, from whence the horizon did fashion it felfe and end by the heauen, and a Countrie stretched out and euen, as we see in Spaine in a thousand champaine fields; yet doe I not remember that I have ever seene such sights at the Indies, were it in the Ilands, or vponthe maine Land, although I have travelled above feven hundred leagues in length. But as I haue faid, the necreneffe of the Mountaines is very commodious in this region, to temper the heate of the Sunne. To conclude, the best inhabited parts of the Indies are as I haue faid : and generally, all that Countrie abounds in Graffe, Paffures, and Forrefts, contrary vnto that which Ariffork and the ancients did hold. So as when we go out of Esrepe to the Indies we wonder to fee the Land fo pleafant, greene and fresh. Yet this rule hath some an exceptions, and chiefly in the Land of Pers, which is of a strange nature among stall others.

We meane by Pers, not that great part of the world which they call America, feeing that

of Outto. which is vnder the Line, and runs in length to the Realme of Chille, the which is

without the Tropickes, which were fix hundred leagues in length, and in breadth it containes

no more then the Mountaines, which is fiftie common leagues, although in fome places, as at

Indies. The first is, that vpon all the coast it blowes continually with one onely winde, which

is South and South-west, contrary to that which doth viually blow under the burning Zone.

The fecond is, that this winde being by nature the most violent, tempestuous, and vahealth-

full of all others, yet in this Region it is maruellous pleafing, healthfull, and agreeable : fo as we may attribute the habitation of that part thereunto, without the which it would be trou-

blesome and inhabitable, by reason of the heate, if it were not refreshed with the winde. The

third propertiess, that it never raines, thunders, snowes, nor hailes in all this coast, which is a matter worthy of admiration. Fourthly, that a little distance from the coast it raines & snowes

terribly. Fiftly, that there are two ridges of Mountaines which runne the one as the other, and

part of the yeare, being very hot; and the other is all naked and bare, and very cold : fo as win-

ter and immmer are divided on those two Mountaines, and raine, and cleereneffe it selfe. For the

better understanding hereof, we must consider that Permis divided as it were into three parts long and narrow, which they call Lanes, Surras, and Andes; the Lanes runs along ft the Sea coaft; the

Sierras be all hils, with some vallies; and the Andes be steepe and craggie Mountaines. The La-

nos or Sea coast, haue some ten leagues in breadth, in some parts leffe, and in some parts a little

more. The Sterra containes some twenty leagues in breadth : and the Andes as much, sometimes

more, sometimes lesse. They run in length from North to South, and in breadth from East to

West. It is a strange thing, that in sosmall a distance as fiftie leagues, equally distant from the

place, and neuer in the other. It neuer raines vpon the coaft or Lanes, although there fals fome-

times a small dew, which they call Guarna, and in Castill Molling, the which sometimes thick-

ens, and fals in certaine drops of water, yet is it not troublefome, nor fuch as they neede any co-

uering. Their couerings are of mats with a little earth vpon them which is sufficient, Vpon the Andes it raines in a manner continually, although it be sometimes more cleere then other.

In the Sierra which lies betwixt both the extreames, it raineth in the fame feafon as it doth in Spaine, which is from September voto Aprill, but in the other feating, the time is more cleere.

Line and Pole, there should be so great a contrarietie, as to raine almost continually in one so

in one altitude, notwithstanding on the one there are great Forrests, and it raines the greatest 40

Charbapayas, it be broader. This part of the world which wee call Pers, is very remarkeable, and containes in it strange properties, which serueth as an exception to the general rule of the 30

of Principanio Kingdomes is Pern, but onely that part which lies to the South, beginning at the Kingdome

Of the proper-ties of the land therein is contained Bresil, the Kingdome of Chille, and that of Grenade, and yet none of these

and thereby

936

The Plaines (up.inHerera.

Raine almost euer, and al-most neuer.

which is when the Sunne is farthest off, and the contrary when it is neerest. That which they call Ander, and Sierra, are two ridges of most high Mountaines, which runne about a thoufand leagues, the one in view of the other, and almost equally. There are an infinite number 60 of Vicagnes, which breede in the Sierres, and are properly like vnto wilde Goates, very nim-Diuers Beafts. ble and swift. There are also of those beafts which they call Guanacos and Pacos, which are sheepe, which we may well tearme the Alles of that Countrie; whereof we small speake in their place. And vpon the Ander they finde Apes, very gentle and delightfull, and Parrots in great

CH AP.2. \$2. Fruitfull Vallies, Indian bread. Caufe of raine. Peru wine. numbers. There also they finde the herbe or tree which they call Coca, that is so greatly effecmed by the Indians, and the trafficke they make of it, is worth much mony.

That which they call Sierre, canfeth Vallies, where as it opens, which are the best dwellings of Pern, as is the Valley of Xauxa of Andaguaplas, and Tucay. In these Valles there growes
Wheat. Mays, and other forts of fruits, but lelle in one then in the other. Beyond the Citie of Cufee (the ancient Court of the Lords of those Realmes) the two ridges of Mountaines feparate themselues one from the other, and in the midst leave a Playne and large Champaigne, which they call the Prouince of Calles , where there are many Riners and great store of fertile Pastures: there is also that great Lake of Titicaca. And although it bee a full soile, and in the to fame height and intemperature, that the Sierre, having no more Trees nor Forrefts, yet the want they have of bread is countervailed with the rootes they fow, the which they call Paper and they grow in the earth. This roote is the Indians foode; for drying it and making it cleane. Their bread

they make that which they call Chappes, which is the bread and nourillment of those Prouinces. There are other rootes and small herbes which they eate. It is a healthfull fole, best peopled, and the richeft of all the Indies, for the abundance of Cattell they feede, as well of those that are in Europe, as Sheepe, Neat, and Goates, as of those of the Country, which they call Guanacor and Paces , and there are flore of Partridges. Next to the Prouince of Callas, is that of Charcas, where there are hot Vallies very fertile, and very high Rocks; the which are very rich in mynes, so as in no part of the World shall you finde better nor fairer.

For that it is rare and extraordinarie to fee'a Country where it neuer raines nor thunders : The reason men defire naturally to know the cause of this drangenesse. The reason which some give that why traines haue neerly looked into it, is, that vpon that Coait there rife no vapours, fufficient to engender raine for want of matter; but onely that there bee small and light vapours, which cannot coast, chepat. breede any other then mifts and deawes, as wee fee in Emope, oftentimes vapours doe rife in the morning, which are not turned into raine, but into milts onely : the which growes from the substance, which is not groffe and sufficient enough to turne to raine. They say, the reafor why that which happens but some times in Europe, falls out continually upon the Coaft of Peru, is, for that this Region is very drie, and yeelds no groffe vapours. The drinesse is knowne by the great abundance of Sands, having neither Wells nor Fountaines, but of fifteene Stades 30 deepe (which is the height of a man or more) and that is neere wnto Rivers, the water where-

of, piercing into the Land, gives them meants to make Wells. So as it hath beene found by experience, that the course of Risers being turned, the Wells have beene dried up, writil they returned to their ordinarie courfe : and they give this reason for a materiall cause of this effect; but they have another efficient; which is no leffe confiderable, and that is the great height of the Sierre, which comming along the Coalt, thatlowes the Limer; fo as it fuffers no winde to blow from the Land, but aboue the tops of their Mountaines. By meanes whereof, there reignes no winde, but that from the Sea, which finding no oppofire, doth not prefie nor firsine forth the vapours which rife to engender raine; so as the shadow of the Mountaines keepes the vapours from thickning , and converts them all into mifts. There are some experiences agree

40 with this discourse; for that it raines vpon some small Hills along the Coast, which are least fladowed, as the Rocks of Asico and Arequips. It bath rained in some yeeres when as the Northerne or Easterly windes have blowne : yea, all the time they have continued, as it happened in seuentie eight, vpon the Lanes of Tragille, where it rained abundantly, the which they had not feene in many ages before. Moreouer, it raines vpon the fame Coast in places, where as the Easterly or Northerne windes be ordinarie, as in Gueyaquit, and in places where as the Land rifeth much , and turnes from the shadow of the Mountaines, as in those that are beyond Ariqua. Some discourse in this manner, but let every one thinke as he please. It is most certaine, that comming from the Mountaines to the Vallies, they doe viually fee as it were two Heauens, one cleere and bright aboue, and the other obicure, and as it were a gray vaile spread So ynderneath, which couers all the Coaft : and although it raine not, yet this mift is wonderfull

profitable to bring forth graffe, and to raife vp and nourish the feed : for although they have plentie of water, which they draw from the Pooles and Lakes, yet this moisture from Heauen hath such a vertue, that ceasing to fall upon the Earth, it breedes a great discommoditie and defect of graine and feedes. And that which is more worthy of admiration, the drie and barren Sands are by this deaw to beautified with graffe and flowers, as it is a pleafing and agreeable fight, and very profitable for the feeding of Cattell, as we fee in the Mountaine called Sandie, neere to the Ci-

New Spaine paffeth all other Prouinces in paffur's, which breedes infinite troopes of Horfe, Of the proper-Kine, Sheepe, and other Cattell. It abounds in fruit and all kinde of graine. To conclude, it is a tie of new 60 Country the best furnished and most accomplished at the Indies. Yet Pers doth surpasse it in one Spaine, of the thing, which is Wine, for that there growes store and good; and they daily multiply and in- other Lands. creafe, the which doth grow in very hot Vallies, where there are waterings. And although there chap.22be Vines in new Spaine, yet the grape comes not to his maturitie, fit to make Wine. The reason Peru wine. is, for that it raines there in July and August, when as the grape ripens : and therefore it comes

not to his perfection. And if any one through curiofitie would take the paines to make wine in

should be like to that of Genna and Lombardie, which is very small and sharpe, having a taste like vnto Verjuyce. The Ilands which they call Barlouente, which bee Hiff aniela, Cuba, Port Ricco. and others thereabouts, are beautified with many greene pastures, and abound in Cattell, as Neat,
Sugar workes and Swine, which are become wilde. The wealth of these llands, bee their Sugar-workes and Hides. There is much Cassia fistula and Ginger. It is a thing incredible, to fee the multitude of these merchandizes brought in one fleete, being in a manner impossible that all Europe should waste so much. They likewise bring wood of an excellent qualitie and colour, as Ebone, and que thers, which ferue for buildings and loyners. There is much of that wood which they call Lienum fantium or Guage, fit to cure the pox. All thefe llands and others thereabouts, which are 10 many, haue a goodly and pleafant aspect, for that throughout the yeere, they are beautified with graffe and greene trees, fo as they cannot discerne when it is Autumne or Summer , by reason of continuall moisture ioyned to the heat of the burning Zone. And although this Land bee of a great circuit, yet are there few dwellings, for that of it felfe it engenders great Arcabstos, as they call them, which be Groues or very thicke Coppies: and on the Playnes there are many ma-rishes and bogs. They give yet another notable reason, why they are so smally peopled, for that Indians wasted, there have remayned few naturall Indians, through the inconsideratnesse and disorder of the first Conquerors that peopled it ; and therefore, for the most part, they vie Negros, but they cost deare, being very fit to till the Land. There growes neither bread nor wine in thefe llands . for that the too great fertilitie and the vice of the foile, fuffers them not to feede, but casts all forth in graffe, very vnequally. There are no Olive trees, at the leaft, they beare no Olives, but many greene leaves pleafant to the view; which beare no fruit. The bread they vie is of Capane, whereof we thall hereafter speake. There is gold in the Rivers of these llands, which some draw forth, but in small quantitie. I was little lesse then a yeere in these Ilands, and as it hath beene told me of the mayne Land of the Indies, where I have not beene, as in Florida, Nicaragua, Guatimala, and others, it is in a manner of this temper, as I have described : yet have I not let downe euery particular of Nature in these Prouinces of the firme Land, having no perfect knowledge thereof. The Country which doth most refemble Spaine and the Regions of Europe, in all the West Indies, is the Realme of Chille, which is without the generall rule of these other Provinces. being feated without the burning Zone, and the Tropicke of Capicorne. This Land of it felfe is coole and fertile, and brings forth all kindes of fruits that bee in Spaine; it yeelds great abundance of bread and wine, and abounds in Pastures and Cattell. The aire is wholfome and cleere, temperate betwixt heat and cold, Winter and Summer are very diffinet, and there they finde great store of very fine gold. Yet this Land is poore and smally peopled, by reason of their continuall warre with the Amicanes, and their Affociates, being a rough people and friends

West.Chap-23.

There are great conjectures, that in the temperate Zone at the Antarike Pole, there are great and fertile Lands : but to this day they are not discovered, neither doe they know any other Land knows Land, and the diner. in this Zone, but that of Chille, and some part of that Land which runnes from Ethiopia to the sitted a whole Cape of Good Hope, as hath beene said in the first Booke; neither is it knowns if there bee any 40 habitations in the other two Zones of the Poles, and whether the Land continues and firetcheth to that which is towards the Antertike or South Pole. Neither doe we know the Land that lyes beyond the Straight of Magellan, for that the greatest height yet discoursed, is in fifthe fixe degrees, as bath beene formerly faid; and toward the Artike or Northerne Pole, it is not known how farre the Land extends, which runnes beyond the Cape of Mendoçin and the Calipbornes, nor the bounds and end of Florida, neither yet how farre it extends to the West. Of late they have discovered a new Land, which they call New Mexico, where they say is much people that speake the Mexican tongue. The Philippines and the following Ilands, as some report that know it by experience, ranne aboue nine hundred leagues. But to intreat of China, Cochinchina, Sians, and other Regions which are of the East Indies, were contrarie to my purpose, which is onely to 50 discourse of the West: nay, they are ignorant of the greatest part of America, which lyes betwixt Pers and Brefil, although the bounds be knowne of all fides, wherein there is diversitie of opinions; some fay it is a drowned Land, full of Lakes and waterie places; others affirme there are great and flourishing Kingdomes, imagining there be the Paytin, the Dorado, and the Calast, where they fay are wonderfull things. I have heard one of our companie fay, a man worthy of credit, that he had feene great dwellings there, and the wayes as much beaten as those betwixt Salamanca and Villadellis, the which he did fee, when as Peter d'Orfua, and after, those that incceeded him, made their entrie and discouerie by the great River of Amazons, who beleeving that the Dorado which they fought, was farther off, cared not to inhabit there, and after went both without the Dorade, which they could not finde, and this great Prouince which they left. 60 To speake the truth, the biabitations of America are to this day vnknowne, except the extremities, which are Peru, Brefil, and that part where the Land begins to ftraighten, which is the Riuer of Silner, then Tuennan, which makes the round to Chille and Charcas. Of late we have vnderstood by Letters from some of ours which goe to Saint Croix in the Sierre, that they goe dif-

couring of great Prouinces and dwellings, betwixt Brefil and Pers. Time will reueile them, for as at this day the care and courage of men is great , to compaffe the World from one part to another; fo we may beleeve, that as they have discovered that which is now knowne, they may likewife lay open that which remaynes, to the end the Gospell may bee preached to the whole World, feeing the two Crownes of Portugal and Caffile have met by the East and West, toyning their discourries together, which in truth is a matter to be observed, that the one is come to Chime and lapan by the East, and the other to the Philippines, which are neighbours, and almost ioyning vnto (bine, by the West : for from the Hands of Luffen, which is the chiefe of the Philippia ner, in the which is the Citie of Manille, vnto Macas, which is in the Ile of Camon, are but foure

to fore or a hundred leagues, and yet we finde it strange, that notwithstanding this small distance from the one to the other, yet according to their account, there is a dayes difference betwixe them; foasit is Sunday at Macae, when as it is but Saturday at Manille, and foof the reft. Those of Macao and of China have one day advanced before the Philippines. It happened to father Alons Sauches, of whom mention is made before, that parting from the Philippines, hee arriaed at Macae the fecond day of May, according to their computation, and going to day the Malie of Saint & Liberafim, he found they did celebrate the feath of the Investion of the body Croffe, for that they did then reckon the third of May. The like happened vnto him in another voyage

ocyona tt.
Some haue found this alteration and diuerfitie strange, supposing that the fault proceedes from 20 theore or the other, the which is not so: but it is a true and well observed computation, for according to the difference of wayes where they have beene, we must necessarily (ay, that when they meet, there must be difference of a day; the reason is, for that fayling from West to East, they alwayer gaine of the day, finding the Sunne rifing fooner : and contrariwife, those that faile from East to West, doe alwayes lose of the day, for that the Sunne rifeth later vnto them; and as they approach necret the East or the West, they have the day longer or shorter. In Pers, which is Westward in respect of Spaine, they are aboue fixe houres behinde ; so as when it is noone in Spaine , it is morning at Perm; and when it is morning here , it is mid-night there. I haue made certaine proofe thereof, by the computation of Eclipses of the Sunne and Moone. Now that the Portugals have made their navigations from West to East, and the Castillans from 20 East to West, when they came to loyne and meet at the Philippines and Macao, the one hatte gayned twelve houres, and the other hath loft as much ; fo as at one instant, and in one time , they

finde the difference of foure and twentie houres, which is a whole day. Although we finde vents of fire in other places, as Mount Acres and Vefenie, which now Of the Unices they call Mount Some, yet is that notable which is found at the Indees. Ordinarily these Venus of Venus of be Rocks or Pikes of most high Mountaines , which raise themselves about the tops of all other fire. (hep. 240 Mountaines; woon their tops they have a Playne, and in the midft thereof a pit of great mouth, which descends even vnto the foote thereof; a thing very terrible to behold. Out of these

mouthes there issues smoake, and sometimes fire : some cast little smoake, and have in a manner no force of Volcoms, as that of Arequipa, which is of an vnmeafurable height, and almost all land. 40 It cannot be mounted up in leffe then two dayes, yet they have not found any flew of fire, but onely the reliques of fome facrifices which the Indians made while they were Gentiles, and fometimes it doth cause a little smoake. The Volcas of Mexico which is neere to the Village of Angels, is likewise of an admirable height, whereas they mount thirtie leagues in turning : from this Volcas issues to not continually, but sometimes, almost energy day, a great exhalation or whirle-winde of smoake; which ascends directly up like to the shot of a Crosse-bow, and growes after like to a great plume of feathers, vntill it ceafeth quite, and is prefently converted into an obfoure and darke cloude. Most commonly it rifeth in the morning after the Sunne rifing, and at night when it fetteth, although I have feene it breake out at other times. Sometimes it doth cast forth great store of ashes after this smoake. They have not yet seene any fire come from it;

50 yet they feare it will iffue forth and burne all the Land round about, which is the best of all the Kingdome : And they hold it for certaine, that there is some correspondencie betwixt this Undcan and the Surre of Tlaxcala, which is neere vnto it, that caufeth the great thunders and lightnings they doe commonly heare and fee in those parts.

Some Spaniards have mounted vp to this Volcan, and given notice of the myne of fulphur to make powlder thereof. Correct reports the care he had to discover what was in this Volcan. The Volcans of Guatimala are more renowmed, as well for their greatnesse and height: which those that faile in the South Sea discouer afarre off, as for the violence and terrour of the fire it casts. The three and twentieth day of December, in the yeere 1586, almost all the Citie of Gnatimala Terrible earthfell with an Earthquake, and some people slaine. This Volcan had then fixe moneths together, quake at Gua-60 day and night cast out from the top, and vomited as it were, a floud of fire, the substance falling timals. vpon the fides of the Volcan, was turned into affees like vnto burnt earth (a thing paffing mans judgement, to conceive how it could cast so much matter from its centre during fixe moneths.

being accustomed to cast smoake alone, and that sometimes with small flashes,) This was writ-

ten vnto me being at Mexico, by a Secretarie of the Audience of Guatimala, a man worthy of

Courtous

940

credit, and at that time it had not cealed to cast out fire. This yeere past, being in Quitte in the Citie of Kings, the Volcan which is neere thereunto, cast such abundance of ashes, that in many leagues compasse thereabout it darkned the light of the day : and there fell such store in Quinto, as they were not able to goe in the ftreets. There have beene other Volcons feene which cast netther imoake, flame, nor yet alhes, but in the bottome they are feene to burne with a quicke fire without dying : fuch a one was that which in our time a couetous and greedie Prieft feeing, perfwaded himfelfe that they were heapes of gold he did fee burning, imagining it could be no other matter or substance, which had burnt to many yeeres, and not consumed. And in this conceit he made certaine kettles with chaines, and an inftrument, to gather and draw up the gold out of this Pit or Volcan: but the fire scorned him, for no sooner did his Iron chaine and Caldron ap- 10 proach neere the fire, but fuddenly they were broken in pieces. Yet fome told me, that this man was still obstinate, seeking other inventions for to draw out this gold as he imagined.

Some haue held opinion, that these Volcans confume the inner substance they have of Nature: and for this reason they believe, that naturally they shall end, when as they have consumed the fuell (as a man may fay) that is within them. According to which opinion wee fee at this day, some Mountaines and Rocks, from whence they draw a burnt stone which is light, but yery hard, and is excellent to build with, as that which is carried to Mexico. And in effect there are some shewes of that which hath beene spoken, that these Mountaines or Rocks had somtimes a natural fire, which hath died after the matter was confumed; and fo these stone semay. ned burnt and pierced with the fire as wee fee. For my part, I will not contradict it, that in those places there hath not beene fire sometimes, or Volcans. But there is some difficultie to be. 20 leege it should be so in all Volcans, considering the matter they cast out is almost infinite; and that being gathered together, it could not bee contayned in the same concavitie from whence it goes. Moreover, there are some Volcans, that in hundreds, yea thousands of yeeres are alwayes of one falhion, casting out continually smoake, fire, and ashes. Plinie the historiographer of naturall things (as the other Plinie his nephew reports) fearthing out the fecret how this should paffe : and approaching too neere the exhalation of fire of one of these Volcans, died; and thinking by his diligence to find an end thereof, had an end of his life, For my part, youn this confideration I thinke, that as there are places in the earth, whose vertue is to draw vaporous matter, and to convert it into water, which bee the Fountaines that alwayes runne, and have alwayes 20 matter to make them runne, for that they draw vnto them the jubstance of water. In like fort there are places that have the propertie to draw vnto them hot exhalations, and to convert them into fire and smoake which by their force and violence cast out other thicke matter which diffolues into alhes, into pumice ftone, or fuch like substance; and for a sufficient argument to prove it to be fo in these Volcans, they fometimes cast smoake, and not alwayes, and sometimes fire, and not alwayes, which is according to that it can draw vnto it, and digeft, as the Fountaines which in Winter abound, and in Summer decrease; yea some are quite dried up, according to the force and vigour they have, and the matter that is presented : even so it is of these Volcans, which cast fire more or leffe at certaine seasons. Others say, that it is Hell fire, which issueth there, to ferue as a warning, thereby to confider what is in the other life : but if Hell (as Diuines 40 hold) bee in the centre of the Earth, the which containes in diameter aboue two thousand Baffi.Pal. 18. . leagues, we cannot judge that this fire is from the centre: for that Hell fire (as Saint Bafil and others teach) is very different from this which wee fee, for that it is without light, and burneth without comparison much more then ours.

Some have held, that from these Volcans which are at the Indies, the Earthquakes proceede, quakes. Capade. being very common there : but for that they ordinarily chance in places farre from thote Volcans, it cannot be the totall cause. It is true they have a certaine simpathy one with another, for that the hot exhalations which engender in the inner concauities of the Earth, feeme to be the materiall substance of fire in the Volcans, whereby there kindleth another more groffe matter, and makes these shewes of flame and smoake that come forth. And these exhalations (finding no ea- 50 fie iffue in the Earth) moue it, to iffue forth with great violence, whereby wee heare that horrible noise under the Earth, and likewise the shaking of the Earth, being stirred with this burning exhalation; Euen as Gun-powlder in mynes, hauing fire put to it breaks Rocks and Walls: and as the Chefnut laid into the fire, leapes and breakes with a noise, when as it casts forth the aire (which is contayned within the buske) by the force of the fire : Euen fo these Earth quakes doe most commonly happen in places neere the water or Sea. As wee see in Europe , and at the Indies , that Townes and Cities fartheft from the Sea and waters are least afflicted therewith ; and contrariwife, those that are seated upon Ports of the Sea, upon Rivers, the Sea coast, and places neere vnto them, feele most this calamitie. There hath happened in Peru (the which is wonderfull, and worthy to be noted) Earthquakes which have runne from Chille vnto Quito, 60 and that is aboue a hundred leagues, I fay the greatest that ever I heard speake of, for lesser be more common there. Vpon the coast of Chille (I remember not well in what yeere) there was so terrible an Earthquake, as it ouer-turned whole Mountaines, and thereby itopped the courie of Rivers which it converted into Lakes, it beat downe Townes, and flue a great number of people.

confine the Sea to leaue her place forme leagues, fo as the ships remayned on drie ground; farre from the ordinate Roade, with many other heatie and horrible things. And as I well remember, they fay this trouble and motion, caused by the Earthquake, ranne three hundred leagues a. long ft the Coaft. Soone after, which was in the yeere eightie two, happened that earthquake of Arequips, which in a manner over-threw the whole Citie. Since in the yeere eightie fixe, the ninth of July, fell another earthquake in the Citie of Kings, the which as the Vice-roy did write, had runne one hundred threefcore and ten leagues alongft the Coaft, and ouerthwart in the Sterre fiftie leagues. The mercy of the Lord was great in this Earthquake, to forewarne the Novichefore people by a great noile which they heard a little before the Earthquake, who taught by former the earthquake, to experiences, preferrly put thenickies in fafetie, leaving their Houles, Streets, and Gardens, to goe inte the fields ; fo as although it ruined a great part of the Citie, and of the chiefeft buildings, yet there died not about fifteene or twentie persons of all the Inhabitants. It caused the like trouble and motion at Sea, as it had done at Chille, which happened prefently after the nee trouve and motion at Jer, is a to made one of the young a suppersed presently after the Earthquake, fo sathly might feethe Sea throught office or of her bounds, and to minit neers two leagues into the Land, trifing aboue fourteene fathom: it counted all that Playne, fo as the Ditches and pieces of wood that were there; fwam in the water. There was veranother earthquake in the Realme and Citie of Quitto; and it feemes all these notable Earthquakes upon that Coaft, have succeeded one another by order, as in truth it is subject to these inconveniences. And therefore although woon the coast of Pers, there be no torments from Heaten, as chunder and so lightning, yet are they not without feare vpon the Land; and so every one hath before his eyes, the Heralds of dinine luttice, to moone him to feare God. For as the Scripture faith, Freit hae ve imedium. Returning then to our purpole, I fay the Sea coult is most subject to these earthquakes, Why the Sea the reason is, in my judgement, for that the water doth slop the conduits and passages of the coast is subject entreariouss, in my morganism, for that the water authority size conduits and patiages or the coarse, and the horexhalations should pale, which are engendered there. And allo the human and the fundamental the formula of the coarse, and the exhalations for good the formula of the fundamental the fundamental the fundamental of the fundamental the fun elofe together and encounter violently in the bowels of the earth, which doeafterwards breake Some haue obferded, that fuch Earthquakes haue vitalischapned, when as a ravinciealon falle after fomedrie vertes. Whereupon they fry, that the Barthquakes are moft fare, where are 30 most Wells, the which is appround by experience. Those of the Citie of Mante (hold enlarge mot vecus, me winter a approach of a sparinter. A most of the Lake whitecon its feated, is the carlot of the lake dukes that happen shirts? Afficient the Lake whitecon its feated, is the carlot of the lake dukes that happen shirts? Afficient they be not very vioient: and it is most extaine, that the Towner and Premires, "fare within they be not very vioient and it is most extaine, that the Towner and Premires, "fare within

they be not very violent; and it is note certains, that the Townes and Products, "farth within the Land, and satisfied from the Sex, receive formerines greate lottes by these Exactionables is each collice of Chechopyas at the Anger, and in Italic that of Forms , whitely propositive shabile it Lambounke at Chine of Chechopyas at the Anger, and in Italic that of Forms , whitely propositive shabile it Lambounke at Chine of the Chechopyas at the Anger, and in Italic that of Forms , whitely shad the Chechopyas at the Anger, and the Chechopyas and the Chechopyas at the Anger and the Chechopyas at the Chechopyas at the Anger and the Chechopyas at the Chechopy cilled Angeles (White many Thems dwelt that were Sorcerers and Idolaters) fell fuddenly to in amount ruine, fo as a great part thereof was rayled up and carried away , and many of the Indiani find- som . 40 thered, and that which feemes incredible (yet testified by men of credit) the earth that was ruinet and to beaten thowne, did runne and flide voon the Land for the space of a league and a halfe asit had beene water or wate holten, foas it stopt and filled vp a Lake and remayned to spread agential ouer the whole Countrie.

edyan si Walandi Deriva

è. I I I I. Of Metals in the Indies and especially of the Gold and Silver, and Quick silver.

Ecals are (as Plants) hidden and buried in the bowels of the Earth, which have fome Meals grow as conformitie in themselves, in the forme and manner of their production; for that we plants, see and diffeouer even in them, branches, and as it were a bodie, from whence they grow and proceede, which are the greater veines and the leffe, fo as they have a knitting in and proceeds, which are the greated vertices and, the telle, as as trey make a metring in themselves; and it feemes properly that their Minerals grow like vertor Plants, not that they have any involved regenties, the being only proper to Plants; but they are engendered in the bowels of the tarth, by the vertue and force of the Sunne and other Plants, and in long contimance of time, they increase and multiply after the manner of Plants. And even as metals bee plants hidden in the earth, fo wee may lay, that plants bee high Creatures fixed in one place, 60 whose life is maintayned by the nourishment which Nature furnisheth from their first beginning. But lining Creatures furpsile Plants, in that they have a more perfect being; and therefore Animalis. haue neede of a more perfect foode and nourishment; for the search whereof, Nature hath given them a mooning and reeling to discouer and discerne it. So as the rough and barren earth is as a Subflance and nutriment for metals; and that which is fertile and better featoned a nourithment

for Plants. The same plants serve as a nourishment for living creatures, and the plants and living creatures together as a nourishment for men, the inferiour nature alwayes serning for the mainte. nance and fuftentation of the superiour, and the lesse perfect yeelding vnto the more perfect. whereby wee may fre how much it wants, that gold and filter and other things which men fo much efteeme by their couetouinesse, should bee the happinesse of man, whereunto hee should tend, feeing they bee fo many degrees in qualitie inferior to man, who hath beene created and made onely to be a lubiect to ferue the universall Creator of all things, as his proper end and perfeet reft; and to which man, all other things in this world, were not propounded or left, but to

The divertitie of metals, which the Creator hath that up in the closets and concavities of the earth, is fuch, and fo great, that man drawes profit and commoditie from every one of them, Some serve for curing of diseases, others for armes and for defence against the enemies, some are for ornament and beautifying of our persons and houses, and others are fit to make vessels and L. ron-workes, with divers famions of inftruments, which the industrie of man hath found out and put in practice. But about all the vies of metals, which be simple and naturall the communication and commerce of men hath found out one, which is the vie of money, the which (as the Philosopher (aith) is the measure of all things. And although naturally, and of it selfe, it beebut one onely thing, yet in value and estimation we may fay, that it is all things. Money is vnto vs as it were, meate, clothing, house, horse, and generally whatsoever man hath need of. By this meanes all obeyes to money, and as the Wifeman faith, to finde an invention that one thing to should be all. Men guided or thrust forward by a naturall instinct, choose the thing most durable and most maniable, which is metall, and amongst metals, gave them the preheminence in this invention of money, which of their nature were most durable and incorruptible, which is filter and gold. A Wifeman faid, that what a father doth to marry his daughter well, is to give hera great portion in marriage; the like hath God done for this Land fo rough and labourfome, giuing it great riches in mynes, that by this meanes it might be the more fought after. At the west Indies then there are great store of mynes of all forts of metals, as Copper, Iron , Lead, Tinne, Quick-filter, Silver, and Gold: and among ft all the Regions and Parts of the Indies, the Realmes or Permabound most in these metals, especially with Gold, Silver, Quick-silver, or Mercurie, whereof they have found great flore, and daily discouer new mynes. And without doubt, ac. 20 cording to the qualitie of the earth, those which are to discover, are without comparison, farre more in number then those which are yet discovered; yea, it seemes that all the Land is fowed

with these metals, more then any other in the world that is yet known vnto vs. or that ancient

Writers have made mention of.

are not imployed at the fed them. 64. Chap.3. Plin.lib.5. de Eufeb. lib.8. de prepar. esane.

Of the qualities The reason why there is to great abundance of metals as the Isaber (effectally at the well of and manered for James 1, and the well of the Centeror, who had imparted his girts as it pleated him the controller of the actual that the center of the cente writes, faying, that gold, filter, and metals, grow naturally in land that is most barren and vnall these metals fruitfull. And wee fee, that in Lands of good temperature, the which are fertile with graffe and fruits, there are feldome found any mynes; for that Nature is contented to give them yigour to 40 bring forth fruits more necessarie for the preservation and maintenance of the life of beatts and men. And contrariwise to lands that are very rough, drie, and barren (as in the highest Mountaines and inacceffible Rocks of a rough temper) they finde mynes of filuer, of quick-filuer, and of gold, and all those riches (which are come into Spaine fince the West Indies were discovered) have beene drawne out of fuch places which are rough and full, bare and fruitleffe : yet the tafte of this money, makes these places pleasing and agreeable, yea, well inhabited with numbers of people. And although there be, as I have faid, many mynes of all kindes of metals as at the Indies, yet they wie none but those of gold and filter, and as much quick filter as is necessarie to refine their gold and filuer. They carry Iron thither from Spaine and China. As for Copper, the Indians have drawne of it, and vied it for their armes, the which were not viually of Iron, but so of Copper. Since the Spaniards possessed the Indies, they have drawne-very little, neither doe they take the paines to feeke out these mynes, although there bee many bufying them selues in the fearch of richer and more precious metals, wherein they spend their time and labour. They we no other metals, as Copper, and Iron, but onely that which is sent them from Spaine, or that which remaines of the refining of gold and filter. Wee finde not that the Indians in former times vied gold, filter, or any other metall for money, and for the price of things, but onely for ornament, as hath beene faid, whereof there was great quantitie in their Temples, Palaces, and Tombes, with a thouland kindes of veffels of gold and filuer, which they had. They vied no gold nor filuer to trafficke or buy withall, but did change and trucke one thing for another, as Plin. lib. 33.63. Homer and Plinie report of the Ancients. They had some other things of greater effeeme, which 60

went currant among it them for price, and in stead of coine : and vnto this day this custome con-

times amongst the Indians, as in the Prouinces of Mexico, in stead of money they vie Cacao,

(which is a small fruit) and there with buy what they will. In Pers they vie Cocs, to the same end (the which is a leafe the Indians effectme much) as in Paraguay, they have stamps of Iron for

No money of

60 Now we will shew how they discouer the mynes of Silver, their veines, rootes , and begin- Of the Silver brightnesse, beautie, and lound, the which is cleere, and agreeable, for the colour is more confor-

coine , and cotton wough in Saint Groot, of the Sierre. Pinally, the manner of the Listine trafficke, and their buying and telling, was to exchange, and give things for things; and although there were great Marts and famous Faires, yet had they no neede of money, not of Brokers, for that every one had trained what he was to give in exchange for every kinde of interchandife. Since the Spaniards entred, the Indians have vied gold and filter to buy withall and in the beginning there was no coine; but filuer by weight was their price and money; as they report of gining success. Since, for a greater benefit, they have forged coloress Mexico and Pers, yet Plin, lib. 33.4.4. was this day they have not in the West Lastes coyned any money of Copper or other metalt but onely of filter and gold : for the richnelle of that Countrie bath not admitted nos received to fuch money as they call bullion, nor other kindes of alloy, which they vie in Italia, and in other

Prouinces of Europe; Although in fome llands of the Indies, as Saint Dominique, and Pers Ricce, they vie coine of leather, which is fquare, the which are current onely in those llands ; haming Coine of lea little filuer or gold. I fay little, although there be much; for that no man digges it and refines in there. But for that the riches of the Indies, and their manner to labour in the mynes, confifts of gold, fitpur, and quick-filter, I will speake something of thele three metals, beating the rest for bustime. r, and quica-much, a was a sath been alwayes held the most excellent; and wish reason, Of gold which

being the most durable and incorruptible of all others; for fire which confluines and disminisher they digge and the reft, amends it, and brings it to perfection. Gold which hath often passed through the fire, refine at the keepes his colour, and is most fine and pure; which peoperly is called (as Plinie faith ? Obrife, 20 whereof the Scripture makes to often mention and vie, which confirmeth all other metals if as whereor the scripture mans to white gold, nor yet built it, neither is it eater, nor grow- Plin, lib. 33. 6.16 ethold, And although his flibstance and body bee firme sad fold; yet doth it yeeld and bow wonderfully; the Beaters and Drawers of gold know well the force it hath tobee drawne one without breaking. All which things well confidered, with other excellent properties, will give men of judgement to vnderstand, wherefore the holy Scripture doth compare Charitie to gold,

To conclude, there is little neede to relate the excellencies thereof to make it more definable. For Cant. 2. the greatest excellencie it hath, is to be knowne (as it is) among it men, for the supreme power Pfal. 67. and greatnesse of the World. Comming therefore to our fubiet; at the falles there as great a. 3. Reg. 6. bundance of this metall, and it is well knowne by appround Histories, that the highest of Pers did 30 not content themselves with great and small vessels of gold, as Pots, Cups, Goblets, and Flagons; yea with Kowles or great Veffels, but they had Chaires alfo, and Litters of maffie gold; and in their Temples they had fet vp mayine Images of pure gold, whereof they finde there yet at Mexico, but not fuch those as when the fift Conquient came into the operand the other King-dome, who found great treasure, and without doubt strett-wis mark incre hidden in the earth

by the Indians. It would feeme ridiculous to report that they have made their horseshoots of filter for want of Iron, and that they have pand store bundred cross nei for a bottle of same; and other flarage things; and yet in truth this hatti compete pafe; yea and greater matteria: They See before in draw gold in thoic parts after three fores; or at the least; I have freme all there, yieds flowers. I, des Sones, erla levit. di elenv va v and in Herre 4 ther they finde gold in graines, in powlder, or in Rone. 40 The most famous gold is that of Caranana in Peru, and of Paldinia in Chille, for that is tifeth

with his alloy and perfection, which is twentie three Carrats and a halfe, and fometimes more. They make account likewife of the gold of Verague to be very fine. They bring much gold to Moster from the Philippine; and China, but commonly its weake and of bate alloy: Gold's commonly found mixt with Silar or with Copper; but that which is mixed with Silar or with Copper; but that which is mixed with Silar or commonly of every Carrast then that which is mixed with opport; If there a fift part of silar or commonly of every Carrast then that which is mixed with opport; If there a fift part of silar or commonly of every Carrast then that which is mixed with opport; If there a fift part of silar or commonly of every carrast the silar of silar or commonly of every carrast the silar of silar or commonly of every carrast the silar of silar or commonly of every carrast the silar of silar or commonly of every carrast the silar of silar or commonly of the silar of silar or commonly or com the light of the fire, then fine gold or fine filter. That which is incorporate with copper its commonly of a higher value. They refine powldred gold in basons, washing it in many waters, vne till the Sand falls from it, and the gold as most heavie remayneth in the bottome. They refine it 50 likewife with quick-filuer and ftrong water, for that the allum whereof they make this water

hath the vertue to leparate gold from droffe, or from other metals. After it is purified and motten, they make Bricks or small Barres to carry it vnto Spaine; for being in powlder, they cannot transport it from the Indies, for they can neither custome it, marke it, nor take fay, wntill it bee molten. In the fleet where I came, which was in the yeere 1585, the declaration of the firme Land was of twelue Caffons or Chelts of gold, every Caffon at the leaft weighed foure Arobes, that is a hundred weight; and a thouland fiftie and fixe Mates from new Spaine, which was for the King onely, belides that which came for Merchants and private men being regulared; and much that came vnregistred. This may suffice touching the gold of the Indies, and now wee will

nings whereof lob speakes. And first I will fay, that the reason why they give silver the fecond at the ladies. place among all other metals, is, for that it approacheth neerer to gold then any other, being more Chap. 5. durable and leffe indamaged by the fire, and more mallable then any other: yea it pateth gold in

mable and refembling the light, and the found more piercing, more linely, and more delicate. The mynes of faluer are commonly found in Mountaines and high Rocks very defart, although they have fornetimes beene found in Playnes and Champaines. There are two different kindes, the one they call fireging, the other fixed and feeled. The fireging, are pieces of metall found in creraine places, the which drawne away, there is no more found. But the fixed veines, are those which have a continuance in depth and length, like to great branches and armes of Trees; and when they finde any one of them, they commonly finde many in the fame place. The manner to purge and refine filter which the Indiana have vied, was by melting, in diffolining this made of me. tall by fire, which casts the earthly droffe apart, and by his force separates Siker from Lead. Tin from Copper, and other metals mixt. To this end they did build fmall Furnaces in places where as the winde did commonly blow, and with Wood and Cole made their refining, the which Furnaces in Peru they call Guayras . Since the Spaniards entred, befides this manner of refining which they wie to this day, they like wife refine filter with quick-filter, and draw more by this meanes then in refining it by fire. For there is some kind of filter metall found which can by no meanes be purged and refined by fire, but onely with quick-filter. But this kinde of metall is common-ly poore and weake, the which viually they finde in greatest abundance. They call that poore which yeelds leaft filter, and great quantitie of other metall, and that rich which yeelds most file uer. It is ftrange to foe, not onely the difference betwixt the refining of metall by fire, and without it by quick-filter, but also that some of these merals, which are refined by the fire, cannot well be molten with any artificiall winde, as with bellowes; but when it is kindled and blowne with the naturall aire, or naturall winde. The metall of the mynes of Porce is easily refined with bellowes, and that of the mynes of Potesi cannot bee molten with bellowes, but onely by the breath of their Guerras , which are finall Furnaces upon the fides of the Mountaines , built exprefly where the winde lies, within the which they melt this metall; and though it be hard to yeeld a reason for this difference, yet is it most certaine and approved by long experience : so as the greedie defire of this metall to much valued amongst men, hath made them seeke out a thoufand gentle inventions and devices, whereof we will hereafter make mention. The chiefe places of the Indies from whence they draw filter, are new Spaine and Pern; but the mynes of Pern

farre furnifie the reft : and amone it all others of the World, those of Potent.

Different effects of prificial and natural winds Potoris described .: Lany

Of the Mount The Mountaine or Hill of Potozi fo famous, is lituate in the Province of Chareas, in the King-

taine or Hill of dome of Perm, diffrant from the Equinochiall towards the South, or Pole Antartike, one and Potent, and the twentie degrees and two thirds : 10 as it falls under the Tropicke , bordering upon the burning difference and yet this Region is extremely cold, yea, more then old Caftie in the Kingdome of thereof, the cold space, and more then Flanders it selfe, although by reason it should be not or temperate, in regard of the height and elevation of the Pole where it is feated. The reason of this so cold a temperature, is the height of the Mountaine, whereas cold and intemperate winds continually blow, especially that which they call Thomakani, which is boistrous and most cold. It raines most commonly in June, July, and August. The ground and soile of this Mountaine is drie, cold, and very vnpleafant, yea altogether barren, which neither engenders nor brings forth any fruit, graffe, por graine ; it is naturally vnhabitable, for the intemperature of the Heaven, and the barrennesse of the Barth. But the force of filter, which drawes voto it the defire of all things, bath peopled this Monstaine more then any other place in all these Kingdomes, making it so fruitfull of all kindes of meaces, as there wants nothing that can be defired, yea, in great abundance; and although there be nothing but what is brought by carriage, yet enery place abounds fo with Fruit, Conferues, exquifite Wines, Silkes, and all other delicates, as it is not inferiour to any other part. This Mountaine is of colour darke red, and is in forme pleating at the first fight, resembling perfeetly the fashion of a Paulion, or of a Sugar-loafe. It exceeds all other Hills and Mountaines about it in height. The way whereby they afcend, is very rough and vneuen, and yet they goe vp on horle-back. It is round at the top, and at the foot it hath a league in circuit. It containes from the top to the bottom 1680, common yards, the which reduced to the measure of Spanish leagues, 50 makes a quarter of a league. At the foot of this Mountaine there is another small Hill that rifeth out of it, in the which there hath beene fomtimes mynes of metall dispersed, which were found as it were in puries, and not in fixed or continued veines; yet were they very rich, though few in number. This fmall Rock was called by the Indians, Guayna Potozi, which is yong Potozi; at the foot wherof begins the dwellings of the Spaniards and Indians, which are come to the riches and worke of Potaz, which dwelling may containe fome two lesgues in circuit, and the greatest traffick and comerce of all Perm is in this place. The mynes of this Mountaine were not digged not discovered in the time of their Ingua, which were the Lords of Peru, before the Spaniards entred, although they had digged and opened the mynes of Porco, neer to Potozi, diffant only fix leagues. An Indian called Gualpa, of the Nation of Chumbibilea, which is a Province of Cusco, going 60

one day comme for Venifon, passing towards the West whither the beast was fled, hee began to runne vp against the Rocke, which at that time was covered and planted with certaine Trees they call Quinns, and with thicke bushes, and as he strived to get vp a way which was somewhat rough and vnease, hee was forced to lay hold upon a branch, which issued from a veine of a

filter myne (which fince they have called Rich) which hee pulled vp , perceiuing in the hole or roote thereof, metall, the which he knew to be very good, by the experience hee had of the mynes of Pores: and after finding vpon the ground certaine pieces of metall, which lay broken and dispersed neere to this veine, being scarse well able to sudge thereof, for that the colour was fpoyled and changed by the Sunne and raine; he carried it to Porce to trie by the Guaran (which is the triall of metall by fire) and having thereby found the great riches and his happy fortune, he fecretly digged and drew merall out of this weine, not imparting it to any man, vatall that an Indian called Guarca, of the Valley of Xaura, which is voon the borders of the Citie of Kings. who remayning at Porce neere wheo Gualpa of Chumbibiled; perceived one day that hee made a To refining, and that his Wedges and Bricks were greater then fuch as were vitally made in chose

places : and alfo increating in his expence of apparell, having till then lived but bafely. For this resion, and for that the metall his Neighbour refined was different from that of Parce, hee thought to different this feeret; and wroughe fo, that although the other kept it as feeret as hee could, yet through importunitie hee was forced to carry him unto the Rocke of Potozi , haning enjoyed this rich treature full two moneths, And then Gridpa the Indian willed Guesca for his part to take a veine, which he had discourred neere to the rich veine; which at this day is cal-led the veine of Diego Contento, that was not lesse rich, but more hard to digge and to draw forth; and fo by agreement they divided betweene them the richest Rocke in the world. It chanced after; the Indian Guanoa finding fome difficultie to digge and draw forth his metall

20 being most hard, and the other Gualpa refusing to impart any of his myne vnto him , they fell at debate; fo as Guanca of Xaura grieued therewith, and with some other discontents, difcovered this fecret voto his Master called Villared a Spaniard, who then remayned at Porco. This Fillared defirous to vinderstand the truth , went to Posses , and finding the riches his Tanacona or feruant had discovered voto him, caused the Indian Guanca to be inrolled, vodertaking with him the faid veine, which was called Gentene, they call it Vadertaking, that is as much as to note and marke the myne, and so much ground in circuit for him, which the Law graunts vnto thole that discouer any myne, or vnto thole that digge them : by meanes whereof hauing discourred them to the luttice, they remayned Lords of the myne, to digge and draw forth the filter, as being their owne, paying onely their duties vato: the King; which is 30 a fife part. So as the first discouerie and inregistring of the mynes of Petasi, was the one and

twentieth of Aprill, in the yeere of our Lord 1545. in the Territorie of Porce, by the faid Fallarged a Spaniard, and Guaves an Indian. Prefently after they discovered another veine, which they called the Forme of Time, the which is very rich , although it be rough and very painfull to works in, the metall being as hard as fiint. Since the thirtie day of August in the lame yeere
1545, the veine called Mondiers was inrolled, and these are the soure principall veines of Poroce. They fay of the rich veine, the first that was discourred, that the metall layaboue the ground the height of a Lance, like vato Rocks, rayling the superficies of the Earth, like vato a crest of three nundred foot long , and thirteene foot broad , and that this remayned bare and vncouered by the deluge, this veine having refifted the violence and force of the water, as 40 the hardest part. The metall was forich as it was halfe filter, and this veine continued in his

bountie fiftie or threescore Stades (which is the height of a man) and then it fayled. Bresently after that the discouerie of Petozi was knowne in Pero; many Spaniards; and the most part of the Bourgeois of the Silver Citie, which is eighteene leagues from Potozi, came thither to take mynes : yea, there came many Indians from dinets Provinces, especially the Guayanderes of Porce, fo as within a short space it was the best peopled habitation of all the Kingdome. When as the Licenciate Pollo gouerned that Province, the which was many yeeres after the

discouerie of this Mountaine, they did euery Saturday enter a hundred and fiftie and two hundred thousand pieces, whereof the Kings fift amounted to thirtie and fortie thousand pieces; and for enery yeere a million and a halfe, or little leffe. So as according to that computation they did draw every day from this myne thirtie thouland pieces, whereof there came to the King for Every piece 50 his fift, fixe thousand pieces a day.

There is yet another thing to bee spoken of, to shew the riches of Potozi, that the account ttene Rials which hath beene made, was onely of filuer that was marked and customed. And it is well knowne in Peru, that they have long vied filuer in thefe Realmes , which they call Currant, which was neither marked nor customed. And they hold it for certaine which know these mynes, that in these dayes, the greatest part of filuer drawne at Potozi, was not customed, and this had course amongst the Indians, and much amongst the Spaniards, as I have seene continued to my time; fo as it may appeare, the third part of the riches of Potozi, yea the one halfecame not to light, neither was it customed. There is yet a more notable consideration, in that which 60 Plinie faith, they had digged a fifteene hundred pases in the myne of Bebelle; and that continu- Plin. lib. 23: c.f.

ally they found water, which is the greatest hinderance they have to draw forth their metall. But in this of Potozi, although they have digged two hundred stades or heights of a man in depth; yet did they neuer finde any water, which is the greatest happinesse of this Mountaine. But the mynes of Porce, whose metall is good and very rich , are at this day left for the discomliii 2

moditie of water, which they have found in their worke; for they are two insupportable las bours in fearching of the metall; first, to digge and breake the Rocks, and then to draw out the wrater all together. The first of them, that is, to cut through the Rocks, is paine enough; yea very hard and excessive. Finally, at this day the King receives for his fift yeerly, from the mynes of Peress, a million of filter, befides the wealth that growes by quick-filter, and other Royall prerogatures, which is a great treasure. Some men of judgement having cast up the accounts. fay, that what hath beene brought into the custome House of Possai, vnto the years of our Lord 1586, amounteth vinco a bundred shouland millions of pieces of Effay, whereof every piece is worth thirteene Rials and a fourth part, not reckoning the filter which hath beene carried a war without custome, or that hath beene entred in other Royall custome houses, or the filest that In hath beene wrought in the Countrie, which is not entred, the which is innumerable, although the first Registers of Entries are not so exactly kept as at this day; for that in the beginning and first difcoueries, they made their receit by Romans, so great was their abundance.

But by the instructions and remembrances of Don Francisco de Toledo the Vice-roy . in the yeere of our Samour Christ 1574, they finde seventie and fixe millions to that yeere : and from that veete to eightie five inclusive, it appeares by the Royall Registers, there were thirtie five millions more entred. They fent this accompt to the Vice-ray from Paret, in the yeere I have mentioned, being then in Perm; and fince the wealth that hath come from Perm by thip, hach amounted to much more. In that fleet where I came in the yeere 1, 87, there were eleuen millions transported in the two fleetes of Perw and Mexico, whereof two thirds were in that 20

of Pers, and almost the one halfe for the King.

This Rocke of Potozs, containes as I haue faid, foure principall veines, that is, the Rub veine, that of Comene, that of Time, and that of Mendieta, All thefe veines are of the Eaft part of the Mountaine, as looking to the Sunne rifing, for on the West part there is not any. The foresaid veines runne from North to South, which is from Pole to Pole. In the largest place they have fixe foot, and in the narrowest a span breadth. There are others of diners fashions that runne out of the faid veines; like as out of the great armes of Trees, there commonly forout forth lefe. Every veine hath divers mynes which are parts and portions of the same, distinct and diuided betwire diners Masters, by whose names they are commonly called. The great myne containes four corresponding to the least containes for containe foure. All these mynes are at this day very deepe. In the Rich myne they reckon seventie eight mynes, which are eightie yards deepe, or a hundred stades or height of a man; and in some places two hundred. In the veine of Comieno are source and twentie mynes, whereof some are seuentie or eightie stades deepe, and so of the other veines of this Mountaine. For a remedie to this great profunditie, they have invented mynes, which they call Seccabones, which are causs or vents made at the foote of the Mountaine, the which goe croffing till they incounter with the veines : for we must understand, that although the veines runne North to South, as hath beene faid, yet is it in declining from the top to the foote of the Mountaine, which may be as they believe by coniecture, about twelve hundred stades. And by this account, although the mynes extend in fuch a profunditie, yet there remaines fixe times as much space vnto the bot- 40 tome of roote, the which they fay, are most rich and aboundant, as the body and spring of all veines. Although vnto this day we have feene the contrarie by experience, for the higher the veine is to the superficies of the earth, the more rich they finde it : and the deeper it goes, the poorer it is, and of the bafer aloy. They then invented the Soccabons, by which they enter to worke in the mynes very eafily, with leffe charge, paine, and danger. They have eight foot in breadth, and a stade in height, the which they shut with doores. By them they drawe forth their metall very easily, paying to the proprietarie of the Secreben, the fift part of all Preinsa person the metall they draw forth. There are nine alreadie made, and others are begun. They were nine and twentie yeeres in making of one Soccabon, as they call it, of the venome that flowes from the rich veine. It was begun in the yeere 1550, the eleventh yeere of the discoverie, and 50 was ended in the yeere 1585, the eleventh of August. This Soccabon croffed the rich veine thirtie fine flades from the roote or fpring, and from thence where it met to the mouth of the myne, were a hundred thirtie five stades. So as they must descend all this depth to labour in the myne. This Soccation containes from his mouth vnto the veine of Crufero as they call it , two hundred and fiftie yards, in which worke were fpent nine and twentie yeeres, whereby wee may fee what great paines men take to draw filuer out of the bowels of the earth. They labour in thele mynes in continuall darknesse and obscuritie, without knowledge of day or night. And foralmuch as those places are neuer visited with the Sunne; there is not only continual darknesse, but alioan extreme cold, with fo groffe an aire contrarie to the disposition of man, so as, such as newly enter, are ficke as they at Sea. The which happened to me in one of their mynes, where 60 I felt a paineat the heart, and beating of the stomacke. Those that labour therein, vie candles to light them, dividing their worke in tuch fort, as they that worke in the day, rest by the night, and to they change. The metall is commonly hard, and therefore they breake it with hammers, fplitting and hewing it by force, as if they were flints. After they carry up this metall

Intolerable paines and darknelle in the Mynes, and if in the Mindes farte more intolerable remay-

upon their shoulders, by Ladders of three branches, made of Neats leather twisted like vicces of wood, which are croffed with states of wood; so as by every one of these Ladders they mount and descend together. They are ten stades long a piece : and at the end of one beginnes another of the fame length, every Ladder beginning and ending at plat-formes of wood, where there are feates to reft them, like vnto galleries, for that there are many of these Ladders to mount by one at the end of another. A man carries ordinarily the weight of two Arrabes of Euery Atabe is metall vpon his shoulders, tied together in a cloth in manner of a skip, and so mount they three 25, pound, and three. He that goes before carries a candle tied to his thumbe: for (as it is faid) they have no light from Heauen, and so goe they up the Ladder holding it with both their hands, to nount so great a height, which commonly is aboue a hundred and fiftie flades : a fearfull thing, and which breedes an amazement to thinke voon it, fo great is the defire of Silver, that for the game thereof, men endure any paines. And truly, it is not without reason, that Plinie treating of this fabriect, exclaimes and layes thus, Wee enter even into the bowels of the Earth, Plin in comm and goe busing after riches, even to the place of the dammed. And after in the same Booke her ib 33, 19.6. faith : Those ibat feeke for metals , performe workes more then Gients , making boles and caues in the taitin : Louis sons seeze for mesaus, performe workes more some sons; making overs and causes in the depth of the Earth, pareting Mountainst so deepe by the light of Cardles; whereas the day and the night are able; and an many mount is they see no day. So as often the walls of their mynes fall, sons. night are able, and as many moments toey jee no any. So as a given toe wall of them mynes jall. I most stering many of them that labour therms. And afterwards hee addes, They piere the bard Rective with bammers of Iron maighing one hundred and fiftie passed, and draw out the metall upon their with bammers of Iron maighing one hundred and fiftie passed, and draw out the metall upon their polantials, thereing has and night, one delinering his charge to another, and all in dark welfs, onely the last fees the light: with bredges and Hammers they breaks the Einst, how hard and firong former, for the bunger of gold is yet more fharpe and firong. The veines as I have faid, where they finde filter, runne betwixt two Rocks, which they call How they re-

The Chafe, whereof the one is commonly as hard as fline, and the other foft and easie to breake. fine the metall This metall is not always equall, and of the fame bountie, for you shall find in one and the fame of filter.

This metall is not always equall, and of the fame bountie, for you shall find in one and the fame of filter, which they call Carilla, or Tacana, from which they draw [hap-amuch filter : and another is poore, from whence they draw little. The most rich metall of this Mountaine, is of the colour of Amber, and the next is that which inclines to blacke. There is other fomewhat red, and other of the colour of alkes; finally, of divers and fundrie colours, which

30 feeme to fuch as know them not, to bee finnes of no value. But the myners doe prefently know his qualitie and perfection, by certaine fignes and small raines they finde in them. They carry all this metall they draw out of these myses, you fasting sheeps, which force them as Asset to array it to the Mills; the reinfest metall is refused by melting in those small Furnaces, which they carry it to the Mills; the reinfest metall is refused by melting in those small Furnaces, which they call Guerras, for that is most leadie; by reason whereof ; it is most subject to melt, and for the better melting thereof, the Isdians calt in a matter, they call Soroche, which is a metall full of Lead. The metall being in their Furnaces, the filth and earthie droffe, through the force of the fire, remaints in the bottome, and the Silner and Lead mele 3 to as the Silner feeinmings you the Lead, vntill it bee purified; then after they refine the filter many times, after this manner of melting. They have viually drawne out of one Quintall of metall, thirtie fortie and fiftie bieces 40 of filter, and yet I have feene fome most excellent that have beene shewne me, where they have

drawne in the melting two hundred, yea two hundred and fiftin pleses of filter of a Quincall of metall; a rare wealth, and almost incredible, if we had not seene the triall thereof by fire, but metall; a tare wented, and among accounts in that which yields two, three, fine, or fixe pieces, or little more. This metall hart commonly little Lead; box is drie, said therefore they cannot refine it with fire. And for this reason in Proces, there was great flose of these poore metals, whereof they made no great account, but were rejected like flraw, and at the skinn of the good metall, vntill they found meanes to refine it by quick-filter , whereby the skim they called Ometan, vicin tray como menassa remiera oy quice-moter; wineteey, nor-samm rany cance oy quiebe was of great profit, for the quick-faller by a frange and wonderfaller propertie, parifies the filter, and is app for their metals which are drie and poore, wherein they confume left quick-fil-titure, and is app for their metals which are drie and poore, wherein they confume left quick-fil-So uer then in the richer : for the richer they are, the more need of quick-filter they have. At this

day the most vivall manner of refining in Potoni, is by quick-filter, as alfoin the mynes of Cacasecus, and others of new Spains. There were in old time upon the fides and tops of Pasaza, aboue fixe thousand Guerra, which are small Furnaces where they melt their metall, the which were nxe tnomano oseysus, which are the should by nighty carfing a light afaire off like a flam of placed like lights (a pleafant fight to behold by nighty carfing a light afaire off like a flam of free. But at this day there are not about two thouland, for that (as I haus faid) they will likely melting, but refine it by quick-filter, the which is the greatest profit. And for that the properties of quick-filuer are admirable; and that this manner of refining of filuer is remarkable, I will discourte of Quick-filuer, of the Mynes and Worke, and what is requisite for that subject.

Quek-filuer, fo called by the Lainer, for that it runnes and flides fuddenly from place to place, 60 among it all other metals hath great and wonderfull vertues. The first is, although it bee a true metall, yet is it not hard, neither hath it any certaine forme nor fubfillance like to other metals, but is liquid, not like vntogold and filter molten, but of his owne proper nature; and although it be a liquor, yet is it more heavie then any other metall : and therefore all others fix im about and finke not to the bottome, being more light. I have feene two pounds of Iron put into a

Sympathic with gold.

barrell of quick-filter, the which did fwimme about like vnto Wood or Corke vpon the Wa-Plm. 1.33. c.6. ter. Plonie giues an exception hereunto, faying, That gold alone doth finke and not fwimme aboue it. I haue not feene the experience; but it may bee this growes, by reason that quickfilter by nature doth intiron gold, and couers it, which is one of the most important properties it bath; for it joynes with gold in a strange manner, it seekes it where it lyes, and innirons it in such fort, as it doth diftinguish and separate it from any other body or metall wherewith it is mixt; for this reason such take gold as will preserve themselves from the dangers and discommodities of quick-filuer. They have vsed a remedie to those (in whose eares they had out quick filuer, to cause them to die secretly) to put little plates of gold into their eares (for put quick thurr, to came to the party of the control and after they drew out thefe plates all white to with the quick-filter, it did flicke vnto them. Being one day at Madril, I went to fee the with the quick-iner, it on make vince time. Doing one way a conserve, a went to let the exquirite workes which Learne de Trees, (a rate worke-man of Miller) made for Saint Learne rence the Royal, it was my hap to be there one day, when as they gilded certaine pieces of a countertable of braffe; which is done with quick-filuer; and for that the fume of Mercurie is mortall, he told me that the worke-men preserved themselves from this venome, by swallowing a double Duckat of gold rolled vp; the which being in the stomacke, drawes vnto it all the quick-filter that enters in fume by the Eares, Eyes, Nostrils, and Mouth, and by this meanes freed themselves from the danger of quick-silver, which the gold gathered in the stomacke, and after cast out by the excrements: a thing truly worthy of admiration. After the make, and are purified and purged gold from all other metals and mixtures, hee is likewife 20 feparated from the gold his friend by the heate of the fire, the which purifies it from all quick-Plin.1.33.6.6, filuer. Plinie layes, that by a certaine arte and invention they did separate gold from quickfilter. It seemes to me the Ancients had no knowledge to refine filter by quick-filter, which at this day is the greatest vie, and chiefe profit of quick-filter; for that he sayes plainly, that mick-filter iownes with no other metall but with gold; and when hee makes mention of refining of filuer, hee speakes onely but of the manner of melting; whereby wee may inferre that the Ancients had no knowledge of this fecret. In truth, though there be a league and fimpathy betwixt gold and quick-filuer, yet where as the Mercurie findes no gold, it ioynes with filuer, though not in the like manner as with gold; but in the end, it doth clenie and purge it ther, stough not in the intermental as with gous; out in the time, it contactent and purge it from Earth, Copper, and Lead, among fifthe which the filter growes, without any neede of fireto melt it; yet must they wis fire to sparate it from the filter, as I will then therefore. Quick-filter holds no account of other metals, but of Gold and Silver; but contrariwite, it doth corrupt them, force and confume them, and flyeth from them as much as may bec. The which is likewife admirable, and for this carefe they pat it in earthen veffels, or in beafts skins, For if it bee put in veffels of Copper , of Iron , or other metall , it prefently pierceth and corrupts them. And therefore Plinie calletivit the poyfon of all things, for that it confirmes and spoiles all. Wee finds chick-silver in the graves of dead men, which after it hath confirmed the bodies, comes forth pure and whole. There hath beene likewise found in the bones and marbodies, comes form pure and winute, a pretriant neural meets at the control of th What comman percent our wife were comperfilles gother mortall a creature. It his want the propertie, which is, to runne and make a humoried boulind (mall disps.) wheredone one is loft, bee they never for little, bot they returne
curry ways to him lugars. It is almost incorposible; haung nothing in a manner that may
continue at. And therefore Plinic about the exemplifiers. It hash yet another propertie, that althougher doch leparate Gold from Copper, and sill other metals; yet they that will gild Copper, Braffe, or Silver, wie quickefilmerate the meanes of this vinion; for with the helpe thereof ther ellaborates. Amongst all the wonders of this drange liquor that feemes to mee most worthy oblemation, that although it bes the weightieft thing in the world, yet is it connected into the lightest of the world, which is imouke, and fuddenly the fame imouke which is fo light ashing, turnes againe into so heanica substance, si is the proper house of quick-siher, where into it is dissoluted; for this simulte encountring the install on high, being a solid body, or comming into a cold Region, fuddenty it thickens and is converted into quick-filter, and if you fer bim once againe to the fire, he doth likewise returne into smozke; to be refolled againe m-

Of the place filuer, and how they discouemynes in Gu-Chap.II.

Dick-filter is found in a kinde of flone, which doth likewise yeeld Vermillion, which the Ancienta called Musiam, and at this day they call the Images of crystall Miniades, which are painted with quick-filter. The Ancients made great account of this Ministra or Vermillion. holding ic for a facred colour, as Plinie reports, faying, That the Romans were accustomed to paint the face of Inpuer, and the bodies of shofe that triumphed in Ethiopia: yea, their Idols and their Gravernours likewife had their faces coloured with this Minimi. And this Vermillion was 60 so effected at Rome (which they brought onely from Spaine, where they had many pits and mynes of quick-filuer, which continue there to this day) that the Romans fuffered it not to be refined in Spaine; left they should steale some of it, but they carried it to Rome, sealed up in a masse as they drew it out of the myne, and after refined it. They did yearly bring from Spaine, especially

from Andalufie, about ten thousand pound weight, which the Romans valued as an infinite treasure, I have reported all this out of that Author, to the end that those which doe see what passeth at this day in Pers, may have the content to know what chanced in former ages, among the mighrieft Lords of the world. Ispeake for the Inguas Kings of Pers, and for the natural Indians thereof, which have laboured and digged long in these Mines of Quick-filter, not knowing what Onck-filter was, feeking onely for Cinabrium or Vermillion, which they call Limps, the which they efteeme much, for that fame effect that Plinie reports of the Romans and Ethiopians, that is, ropaint the face and bodies of themselves and their Idols : the like hath beene much practifed by the Indians, especially when they went to the warres, and wie it at this day in their feafts no and dancing, which they call slubbering, supposing that their faces and visages so slubbered, did much terrifie, and at this day they shold it for an ornament and beautifying; for this cause there were strange workes of Mines in the Mountaines of Guancavilca, which are in Peru. neere to the Citie of Guamangua, out of the which they drew this Mettall it is of such a manner, that Labininthe

if at this day they enter by the caues or Soccabones, which the Indians made in those dayes, they loole themselves, finding no passage out : but they regarded not Quick-filter, which naturally is in the same substance or mettall of Vermillion, neither had they knowledge of any űch matter. The Indians were not alone for folong a time without the knowledge of this treasure, but

likewife the Spaniards, Who vntill the yeare 1566, and 1567. (at fuch time as the licentiate Ca-Hre governed in Peru) discourred not the Mines of Quick-filter, which happened in this manner. Her governed in Persymptoserre in our the Anties of Concessioner, which nappened in this mainter.

Of A man of indepenent called Menrique Guerre, a Portugal borne, hairing a piece of this coloured Mercall, as I have faid, which the Indianic call Limpi, with which they paint their faces, as he found, beheld it well, found it to be the fame which they call Vermillion in Cafide : and for that hee

knew well that Vermillion was drawne out of the fame mettall that Quick-filmer was, he coniectured theie Mines to be of Quick-filuer, went to the place whence they drew this Mettall. to make triall thereof. The which he found true, and in this fort the Mines of Paless. in the territorie of Guamanena, being discouered, great numbers of men went thither to draw out Quick-filuer, and to to carry it to Mexico, where they refine Silver by the meanes of Quick-filper, wherewith many are inriched. This Countrie of, Mines which they call Guarcanilea, was then peopled with Spaniards and Indians that came thicker, and come full to worke in thefe

then peoples with a passaged and summer can came uniter; and very plentiful! but of all their Mines of Qick-filler, which are in great mumbers, and very plentiful! but of all their Mines that which they call designed be Competed, or of Sairtis, it goodly and notable, it is a Rocket of most hard Stone, interfaced all with Qick-filler; and of the greatifie, that it is greated about fourescore Vares or yards in length, and fortie in breadth : in which Mine they have many pits, and ditches, of threefcore and tenne flades deepe, fo as three hundred men may well worke together; such is the capacitie thereof. This Mine was discoursed by an Indian of Amater of the brees, called Names and the Village of Acoria, the which Amader of Cabrers caused to be registred in his name. He was in finte spainst the Procurer fifcall, but the viulinite was adjude ed to him by fentence as the diffouerer. Since he fold his interest to another, for two hundred

40 and fiftie thouland Duraces; and afterwards chinking he had bindeceived in the lafe. he seem-menced an action against the buyer, being worth, at they lay, abote field industred thou-find Ducates; yea, lone helds to be worth a Milition of Gold, a are thing to fee a Mine of that wealth.

When as Don Francisco of Toledo governed in Pern, there was one which had bin in Mexico and observed how they refined Silver with Mercury, called Pero Fernandes de Valefco, who offree to refine Silver at Paseza, with Mercury : and having made triall thereof in the yeare 1571-performed it with credit; then began they to refine Silier at Potozi with Quick-filger, which they transported from Guancanelicque, which was a goodly helpe for the Mines; for by, the meanes of Qick-filuer they drew an infinite quantitie of mettall from thele Mines, whereof they made o no accompt, the which they called Scrapings. For asit hath beene faid, the Quick-filmer purifies the Silver, although it be drie, poore, and of base alloy, which cannot be done by melting in the

fire. The Catholike King drawes from it Quick-filger mines, without any charge or hazard, almost foure hundred thousand pieces of a Mine, the which are foureteene rials a peece, or little leffe, befides the rights that rife in Potozi, where it is imployed, the which is a great riches. They doe yearely one with another, draw from these Mines of Guancanilea, eight thousand quintals of

Let vs now ipeake how they draw out Quick-filuer, and how they refine Siluer therewith. The manner They take the flone or mettall where they finde the Quick-filter, the which they put into the how to draw fire in pots of earth well luted, being well beaten, fo as this mertall or stone comming to melt out Quick sil-6c by the heate of the fire, the Quick-filter feparates it felfe, and goes forth in exhalation, and they teline fometimes even with the smoake of the fire, vntill it incounters some body where it stairs and Siur. congeales, and if it paffe up higher, without meeting of any hard jubifance, it meunes up until chap.12. it be cold, and then congested, it tale downe againe. When the melting is fulfilled, they yet flon the nots and draw forth the mettall, fometimes flaving untill it he very cold, for it there

were in danger of death, or to be benummed of their limbes, or at the least to loofe their reeth. And for that they found an infinitie quantitie of wood, in the melting of these mettals, a Miller called Rodrigo de Tores found out a profitable invention, which was, to gather certaine fram which growes throughout all those Mountaines of Pern, the which they call Tebe, it is like vnto a hard reede wherewith they make their fire. It is a strange thing to see the force which this ftraw hath to melt and diffolue these mettals, the which fals out, as Plinie fales, that there is gold which melts more easily with the flame of straw, then with hot burning coales. They put the Onick-filuer thus molten into skinnes, for that it keepesbest in leather, and in this fort they lay it into the Kings fore-house, foom whence they carrie it by Sea to Arigna, and so to Potezi 10 by Land vpon their sheepe. There is yeerely spent in Posses for the refining of Mettals, about fix or feuen thousand quintals of Quick-filter, besides that they draw from the Plates (which is Force of Straw the earth or droffe of the first walkings of these Mettals, which are made in caldrons.) The Pinl33.c4 which plates they burne in their furnaces, to draw out the Quick-filter which remaines in them and there are aboue fiftie of these Furnaces in the Citie of Potoxi, and in Tarpara. The quantitie of mettals which they refine, (as some men of experience haue made the account) doth amount vearely to about three hundred thousand quintals; from the earth and droffe whereof being molt and refined, they may draw yearely about two thousand quintals of Quick-filter. We must vinderstand there are divers forts of mettals, for some yeelde much Silver, and waste little Orick-filuer: others confume much Quick-filuer, and yeelde little Siluer: and there are others which confume much Quick-filuer, and yeeldes much Siluer; and others that confume little 20 Quick-filbier, and also yeelde little Silver: and as men incounter in these mettals, so they grow rich or poore in their trafficke. Although tommonly the rich mettall yeeldes much Silver, and confumes much Quick-filuer; and likewise that which is poore, yeeldes little Siluer, and confumes as little Mercurie. They first beate and grinde the mettall very small, with hammers and

other inftruments, which beate this Stone like vnto tanne Mils, and being well beaten, they

fearce it in a copper fearce, making the poulder as small and fine, as if it were horse haire ; these

featces being well fitted, doe fift thirtie quintals in a day and a night; then they put the poulder

of the mettall into the veffels vpon furnaces, whereas they anoint it and mortifie it with brine,

Salt seperates the earth and filth, to the end the Quick-silver may the more easily draw the Sil-

putting to every fifthe quintals of poulder, fine quintals of Salt. And this they doe for that the 30

remained any fume or vapour, which should incounter them that should vnstop the pots, they

ner vnto it. After they put Quick-filter into a peece of Holland and preffe it out vpon the mettall, which goes forth like a dewe, alwaies turning and thuring the mettall, to the end it may

Before the invention of these furnaces of fire, they did often mingle their mettall with Ouick. Tiluer, in great troughes, letting it fettle fome daies, and did then mixe it, and ftir it againe, vntill they thought all the Quick-tiluer were well incorporate with the Siluer, the which contihued twentie daies and more, and at the leaft nine daies. Since they discouered (as the defire to get is diligent;) that to shorten the time are did much helpe: to incorporate Siluer the sooner with Quick-filter, they invented their furnaces, whereon they fet veffels to put in their mettall, 40 with Salt and Quick-filuer, and underneath they put fire by little and little, in furnaces made for the nonce vinderneath; fo as in five or fix daies the Quick-filter is incorporate with the Siluer. And when they finde that the Riercuin hath one in part, and affembled all the Shier, lea-uing pothing behinde, but is well imbured, as Spange dockwater, disusing it from the Earth, Lead, and Copper, with the which it is engendered. Then sizes they freper the illewise from the Quick-filner, the which they doe in this lore; they put the Metrall in Galdrons, and veffels full of water, where with certains wheeles they turns the mettall round about, as if they should make Multard, and to the earth and droffe goes from the Mettall with the water that runnes away : The Silver and Quick-filter as most ponderous remaining in the bottome : the Mettall which remaines, is like vuto Sand : then they take it out and wash it agains in great platters of 50 wood, or keelers full of water, still drawing the earth from it, vntill they leave the Silver and Quick-filter well clenfed. There flippes away also some small portion of Silver and Quick-filter with the earth and droffe, which they call malbings, the which they after wash againe and draw out the remainder. When the Silver and Quick-filver are clenfed and begin to fine and that there remaines no earth, they put all the Mettall into a cloth, which they ffraine out very forcibly. fors'all the Quick-filter paffeth out, being not incorporate with the Silter, and the reft remaines as a loafe of Silver, like to a marke of Almonds prefled to draw oyle. And being thus preffed, the remainder containes but the fixt part in Silver, and five in Mercurie. So as if there remaines a marke of threefcore pounds, ten are of Siluer, and fiftie of Mercurie. Of these markes they make pinnes (as they call them) like pine apples, or fugar loanes, hollow within, the which 60 they commonly make of a hundred pound weight; then to separate the Silver from the Quickfilter, they put it into a violent fire, which they couer with an earthen veffell, like to the mold of a Sugar-loafe, or vnto a capuchon or hood, the which they couer with coales, and fet fire vntoir; whereby the Quick-filuer exhals in smoake, the which striking against the capuchon of

parth, it thickens and diffils, like vnto the smoake of a pot couered; and by a pipe like vnto a limbecke, they receive the Quick-filter which diffils, the Silter remaining without changing the forme, but in weight it is diminished fine parts of that it was, and is spungious, the which is worthy the observation. Of two of these loaues they make one barre of Siluer, in weight fixtie five or fixtie fix markes: and in this fort they carrie it to the touch, cuftome, and marke. Silver drawne with Mercurie, is so fine, that it neuer abates of two thousand three hundred and foure- Fine Silver for fore of alloy, and ic is fo excellent, that the worke-men are enforced to alayit, putting fome worke mult be mixture to it, as they doe likewife in their Mints, whereas their monie is frampt. Siluer indures mixture to 11, 40 they do the may to call it) to be refined, the which if we consider well, it is a to hody framed where they grinde, fift;kneade, lay the leuen, and bake the Silver : befides all this.

they wash it and wash it againe; they bake it and bake it againe, induring the pettels, slices, they want to and want to again to a said finally, by the water and fire. I speake this, for that Mar 4. freing this art in Potors, I did confider what the Scripture speakes of the jult, Colabit confi per Eccles gabit quasi argentum: And that which they speake in another part. Since argentum pargamm Pilit. terra, purgatum feptuphum. So as to purific Silver, to refine and cloufe it from the earth and stone where it engenders, they purge and purifie it fouentimes; for in effect it passed their hands feuen times, yea oftner, vntill it remaines pure and fine; fo is it in the word of God, where the

uen times, yea ottner, which it remembes pure same, a contrast to write a close, writer the fooles must be purified, that fills linioy the beauenly perfection.

To conclude this fubiect of Silver and of Mettals, there remaines yet two things to fpeake of, To conclude this subject of singer and or naverally, an action and yet two tamps to appear of, gint to grade the one is of their Engins and Mils, the other of their elay or triall ! I have faid before, how the Mettall. they grinde their Mettall: for the receiuing of the Quick-filter, which is done with divers in- and of their ftruments and Engins, fome with Hories like vnto hand-mils, others like Water-mils; of which mill of Shaets two forts there are great numbers. But for that the water they doe vie commonly, is but of Chap. 13. raine, whereof they have not sufficient but three months in the yeare, December, Ianuary, and February: for this reason they have made Lakes and standing Pooles, which contains in circuite

about a thousand and fix hundred rods, and in depth three stades; there are seuen with their fluces: fo as when they have neede of any water, they raife vp a fluce, from whence sunnes a little streame of water, the which they stop voon holy-dayes. And when the Lakes and Pooles doe fill, and that the yeare abounds with raine, their grinding doth then continue fix or feuen 30 moneths: so as even for Silver sake mendenre a good year of raine in Potozi, as they doe in other places for bread. There are some other Engine in Tarapage, which is a valley three or source leagues diffant from Potozi, whereas there runnes a Riner as in other parts. The difference of thefe Engins is, that some goe with fix pestels, some with twelve, and others with sourceene. They grinde and beate the Mettall in Morters, labouring day and night; and from thence they

carry it to be fitted, vpon the bankes of the brooke of Potozi. There are fortie eight Watermils, of eight, ten, and twelue peffels, and foure on the other fide, which they call Tanacoeungno; in the Citie of Taranga, there are two and twentie Engins all vpon the water; befides there are thirtie goe with Horfes in Potozi, and many others in diners parts, fo great the delire of man

is to get Silver, which is tried by deputies appointed by the King.

40 To give the alloy to enerie piece, they carrier the pars of Sultury unto the Affay Mafter, who give to sury one his number, for that they earlie many at once, hee cuts a small peece of enerie give to sury one his number, for that they earlie many at once, hee cuts a small peece of enerie one, the which he weighs juffly, and puts them into a Crafes, which is a small vessell made of burnt bones beaten; after he placeth euery crufible in his order in the furnace, giuing them a violent fire, then the Mettall melteth, and that which is lead, goes into Imoake, and the copper and tinne diffolues, the Silver remaining most fine, of the colour of fire. It is a strange thing, that being thus refined, although it be liquid and molten, yet it neuer spils, were the mouth of the crushole turned downewards; but it remaineth fixed, without the losse of a droppe. The Affay Mafter knoweth by the colour and other figures, when it is refined, then doth he draw the anny matter knowcet by the toward and other types, when it is retined, then does no draw the first method in the first and weighes enery poece curiously, obseruing what enery one wants of 50 his weight; for that which is of high alloy, waftes but little, and that which is baker, diminisheth much; and according to the waste, he sees what alloy he beares, according to the which

he markes every bar punctually. Their ballance and weights are so delicate, and their graines so fmall, as they cannot take them vp with the hand, but with a small paire of pincers : and this triall they make by candle-light, that no ayre might mooue the ballance. For of this little the price of the whole barre dependeth. In trueth it is a very delicate thing, and requires a great

Of Emeralds. Pearles, Indian Bread, Trees, Fruites, Flowers naturall, and carried thither from Spaine.

T shall not be from the purpose, to speake something of Emeralds, both for that it is a precious thing, as Gold and Silver, as also that they take their beginning from Mines and Mettals, as Plinie reports. The Emerald hath bin in old time in great effectne, as the same Author writes, giuing it the third place amongst all Iewels and precious to

flones, that is , next to the Diamond and Peaule. At this day they doe not so much esteeme the Emerald, nor the Pearle, for the great abundance brought of these two forts from the Indiesone. ly the Diamond holds the principalitie, the which cannot be taken from it, Next, the Rubies come in price and other Stones, which they hold more precious then the Emerald. Men are for delirous of fingularities and rare things, that what they fee to be common, they doe not effeeme. They report of a Spaniard, who being in Italie when the Indies were first discourred, she wed an

A presty florie Emerald to a Lapidary, who asking him the value thereof, after he had well viewed it, being of an excellent luftre and forme, he prized it at a hundred Duckets; he then shewed him another greater then it, which he valued at three hundred Duckats. The Spaniard drunke with this difcourse, carried him to his lodging, shewing him a Casket full. The Italian seeing so great a num- 20 ber of Emeralds, faid vnto him, Sir, these are well worth a crowne a peace. The Kines of Mexia

co did much esteeme them; fome did vie to pierce their nostrils, and hang therein an excellent Emerald: they have them on the vilages of their Idols. The greatest store is found in the new Kingdome of Grenado, and Peru, neere vnto Manta and Port Vieil. There is towards that place How Emeralds a foile which they call, the Land of Emeralds, for the knowledge that they have of abundance to be t here : and yet vnto this day they have not conquered that Land. The Emeralds grow in stones like vnto Christall; I have seene them in the same stone, fashioned like a veine, and they freme by little and little to thicken and refine. I have feene fome that were halfe white, and halfe greene; others all white, and some greene and very perfit. I have seene some of the big-

nesse of a Nut, and there have bin some greater found : but I have not knowne that in our time 30 they have found any of the forme and bigneffe of the plat or Iewell they have at Genes . the which they effeeme (and with reason) to be a lewell of great price, and no relique; yet without comparison, the Emerald which Theophrasis speakes of, which the King of Babylon presented to the King of Egypt, surpasser that of Genes; it was four cubits long, and three broad, and they fay, that in Inpiters Temple, there was a needle or pyramide, made of foure Emeralds

fromes of fortie cubits long, and in some places foure broad, and in others two: and that in his time there was in Tirus in Hercules Temple, a Pillar of an Emerald. It may be (as Plinie faieth) it was of some greene stone, somewhat like the Emerald, and they called it a false Emerald. Church of cor. As some will say, that in the Cathedrall Church of Cordone there are certaine Pillars of Eme-

rakls which temaine fince it was a Mesquite for the Kings Miramamolins Moores, which reig- 40 ned there. In the fleete, the yeare one thousand five hundred eightie and seven, in the which I came from the Indies, they brought two chefts of Emeralds, every one weighing at the least foure Arobes, whereby we may fee the abundance they have.

Now that we intreate of the great riches that comes from the Indies, it were no reason to Of Pearles. forget the Pearle, which the Ancients called Marguerites, and at the first were in so great estimation, as none but royall persons were suffered to weare them : but at this day there is such

abundance as the Negres themselves doe weare chaines thereof; they grow in shels or Oysters, in eating whereof I have found Pearles in the middeft of them. Thele Oysters within are of the colour of heaven, very lively. In some places they make Spoones, the which they call Mother of Pearle. The Pearles doe differ much in forme, in bigneffe, figure, colour and polithing; so so likewise in their price they differ much. Some they call Aue Marace, being like the small grains of beades: others are Pater nosters, being bigger. Seldome fliall you finde two of one greatneffe, Plu lib 3, ea. 35. forme, and colour. For this reason the Komans (as Plinie writeth) called them Unions. When as they doe finde two that are alike in all points, they raise the price much, especially for eare-rings.

I have feene some paires valued at thousands of Ducats, although they were not like to Cleopatraes two Pearles, whereof Pluie reports, either of them being worth a hundred thousand Ducates, with the which this foolish Queene wonne a wager she had made against Marc Antony, to spend in one Supper aboue an hundred thousand Ducates, so at the last course sheedilfolued one of these Pearles in strong Vinegar, and dranke it vp. They say the other Pearle was cut in two, and placed in the Pantheon at Rome, at theares of the Image 62

They fish for Pearles in divers parts of the Indies, the greatest abundance is in the South Seas, Pearle filhings. neere vnto Panama, where the Ilands of Pearles be, as they call them. But at this day they finde greatest store, and the best, in the North Seas, the which is neere to the River of Hache.

C. H. A.P. 2. S. 5. Pettle-divers long-breathed Mays described, divers roles thereof. 052

did fee them make their filling, the which is done with great charge and labour of the poore flues, which dine fix, nine, yea twelne fadomest into the Sea, to feeke for Oyfters, the which commonly are fathened to the rockes and gravell in the Sea: they pull them vp, and bring them Manner there shone the water to their canoes, where they open them, drawing forth the treasure they have of, within them. The water of the Sea in this part is very cold, but yet the labour and toile is greatell in holding of their breath, fometimes a quarter, yea halfe an houre together, being under Long winded the water at their filling, and to the end these poore flaues may the better continue and hold flaues, their breaths, they feede them with drie meates, and that in Small quantitie, to as concrouncife makes them abitaine and fast thus against their wils. They imploy their Pearles to divers works. and they pierce them to make chaines whereof there is great flore in enery place. In the yeare of

10 our Lord 1881: I did fee the note of what came from the Inder for the King : there were eighteene Maces of Pearle, beisdes three caskets; and for particulars, there were twelue hundred threefore and foure Marks, and besides them the measures me pierced, which heretofore we would

They have (as we have hert) a proper name, whereby they note and fignific bread, which at Bread, and of Pers, they call Tanta, and in other places by another name. But the qualitie and fubfiance of the bread the Indians vie differs much from ours : for we finde nor they had any kinde of Wheat or Barley, nor any other kinde of graine which they vie in Emope to make Bread withall ! inflead whereof they vied other kindes of graines and rootes, among the which Mays holds the We call it alis first place, and with realon, in Castile they call it Indian Wheat; and in Italie they call it Turkey Vogitambeat

20 graine. And euen as W heate is the most common graine for the vie of man, in the regions of the old world, which are Europe, Afia, and Affrica: So in the new found world, the most common graine is Mays, the which is found almost in all the Kingdomes of the West Indies, as at Pern, new Spaine, in the new Kingdome of Granado, in Gantimalla, in Chille, and woon the maine Land. I doe not finde that in old time, in the Hands of Barlomente, as Cuba, Saint Dominique, lamaique, and Saint lean, that they vied Mays: at this day they vie much Tuca and Cacami, whereof we will presently intreate. I doe not thinke that this Mays is any thing inferiour to our Wheate, in frength nor fubitance, but it is more bot and groffe, and engenders more bloud, whereupon they that have not beene accultomed thereunto, if they extetoo much, they swell and become scab- How it growell bed. It growes vpon Canes or Reedes; enerie one beares one or two branches, to the which the

30 graine is faltened, and although the graine be bigge, yet finde they great flore thereof ; fo as in forme clusters I have told feuen hundred graines. They must plant it with the hand one by one, and not verie thicke ; it defires a hot and a moift ground; and growes in great abundance in ma- I have had it ny places of the Index. It is not firange in those Countries to gather three hundred Fassgair, or ripen reasons measures for one sowen. There is difference of Maylas there is of Wheate, one is great and by in my Gate very nourithing, another small and drieg which they call Moreche; the greene leanes and canes dea in Ifen. of Man, is a good foods for their Males and Horfes, and it forces them for flraw when it is dried : the graine is of more nourishment for Horses then Barley ; and therefore in those Countries, they vie to water their Hories before they eate, for if they frould drinke after, they would fwell as when they cate Wheate. Mays is the Indians bread, the which they commonly cate

40 boiled in the graine hot, and they call it More, as the Chinos and Ispanis care their Rice fodden with the hot water : fometimes they cate it baked, There is force Mars round and bigge as that of Lucaras, which the Spaniards care rofted as a delicate meat, and harh a better tafte then Buarbenfer, or rofted peafon. There is another kinde of eating it more pleafant, which is, to grinde the Mays, and to make small cakes of the flower, the which they put in the fire, and then bring them hot to the Table. In some places they call them Areps. They make also round bowles of this paste, and so trimme them that they continue long, eating it as a daintie dish.

They have invented at the Indies (for friandise and pleasure) a certaine kinde of paste, they doe make of this flower-mixt with Sugar, which they call Biscuits and mellinders. This May ferues the Indians, not onely for bread, but also for wine : for they doe make their drinke there-50 of, wherewith they are sooner drunke then with wine of Grapes. They make this wine of

Mays in divers forts and manners, calling it in Peru, Acua, and by the most common name of the Indies, Chiche. And the strongest is made like vnto Beere, steeping the graine vntill it breaks. Male & ftrong After they boile it in such fort, that it growes fo strong, as a little ouerthrowes a man. In Perm drinke made of they call this Sore, it is defended by the Law, for the great inconveniences that grow thereby, it, making men drunke. But this Law is ill observed, for that they vie it still; yea they spend whole daies and nights in drinking carowfes.

There is another mamier of making this Acres or Chiebs, which is to champe the Mays, and make a leuen thereof, and then boile it : yea the Indians hold opinion, that to make good leuen, ti must be champed by old withered women, which makes a man sicke to heare, and yet they doe drinke it. The cleridiest manner, the most wholesome, and that which least harmeth, is to roalt the Mays, which the most civill Indians doe vie, and some Spaniards, yea for physicke: chica good a For in effect they finds it a very whole tome drinke for the reines, to as you shall hardly finde gainst the any one at the Indies complaine of paine in the backe, for that they doe drinke of this Chicha. Stone.

The Spaniards and Indians, care this Mays boyled and roafted for daintineffe, when it is tender in the grape like milke, they put it into the pot, and make fauces that are good to eate. The buds of Mays are very fat, and ferue inftead of Butter and oyle : for as this Mays at the Indies terues both for men and beafts, for bread, wine, and ovle.

O'Tucas, cora- In forme parts of the Indies they wie a kinde of Bread they call Cagani, which is made of a cer-O Transpage Chart tains roote they call Trace. This Trace is a great and groffe roote, which they cut in small morand Sac Charts (els, they grate or scrape it, and then post it in a preffe to straine, making a thinne and broad cake thereof, almost like voto a Moores Target or Buckler; then dee they drie it : and this is the Bread they eate. It hath no taffe, but is healthfull and of good nourshment. For this reason we faid, being at Saint Dominicke, that it was the proper foode for great eaters, for that they to might eate much, without any feare of furfetting. They must of necessitie water this Cacase before they eate it; it is flarpe, and eafely watered with water or broath, wherein it is very good, for that it (wels much, and so they make Capirotades, but it is hardly steeped in Milke. Hony of Canes, or in Wine, for that these liquors cannot pierce it, as it doth Bread made of Wheate. Of this Cagani there is one kinde more delicate then any other, which is that they make of the flower called Xauxau, which they doe much efteeme in those parts. For my Juice of Casani part, I efteeme more a morfell of Bread, how hard and blacke foener. It is a ftrange thing that the invce or water that commeth from this roote when they firaine it, which makes the Cacani, is a deadly poifon, and kils any that drinkes thereof : but the fubflance that remaineth, is a very wholesome Bread and nourishment, as we have said,

There is another kinde of Taca, which they call Sweet, and hath not this poifor in the juyce:

those parts,

this is eaten in the roote boiled or roafted, and is good meate. Cagani will keepe long, and therefore they carrie it to Sea instead of Biscuit. The place where they vie most of this Bread, is at Wheat, why it the Handspot Barlowente, which are Saint Dominicke, Cuba, Port Ricco, lamaique, and some ogoweihnorin thers thereabouts; for that the foile of thefe Hands will neither beare Wheate, nor Mans; for when as they sowe Wheate, it comes up well, and is presently greene, but so vinequally, as they cannot gather it; for of the feede fowen, at one instant some is ipindled, some is in the eare, and fome doth but bud, one is great and another little, one is in the graffe and another in the graine : and although they have carried labourers thither, to fee if there were any tillage or Art to be yfed, yet could they finde no remedy for the qualitie of the earth. They carry Meale from new 30 Spaine or the Canaries, which is so mouth, that hardly can they make any profitable Bread . or of good taffe. The Wafer-cakes wherewith they fay Maffe, did bend like to wet paper by reafon of the extreame humiditie and beate which are joyntly in that Countrie. There is another extreame contrarie to this, which hinders the growing of Mays or Wheate in some parts of the Indies, as on the height of the Sierre of Peru, and the Provinces which they call of Colag. which is the greatest part of this Realme, where the climate is so cold and dry, as it will not fuffer any of these seedes to grow : instead thereof the Indians vie another kinde of roote, which they call Papas : these rootes are like to ground Nuts, they are small rootes, which castout many leaues. They gather this Papas, and dry it well in the Sunne, then beating it, they make that which they call Chano, which keepes many daies, and ferues for bread. In this Realme 40 there is great trafficke of Chano, the which they carry to the Mines of Potozi: they likewife eate of thele Papas boiled or roalted : there is one sweete of thele kindes, which growes in hot places, whereof they doe make certaine fawces and minced meate, which they call Lacro. To conclude, these rootes are the bread of that Land; so as when the years is good, they reioyce. much, for that oftentimes they freeze in the earth, fo great is the cold of that Region : they carrie Mays from the Valley or Sea-coast, and the Spaniards which are daintie, carrie likewise from the same places Wheate-meale, whereof they doe make good Bread, because that the Land

Belides Papas, which is the principall, there is Ocas, Tanococas, Camotes, Vatas, Xiquimas, Tuca, Cochacha, Cam, Totora, Mani, and an infinite number of other kindes, as the Patatres, which 50 grow at the in they care as a delicate and toothsome meate. They have likewise carried fruites to the Indies from these parts, the which prosper better there, then the Indian Plants doe, brought into Eurepe. There are other rootes that lerue them for dainties, as the Cochucho: it is a small sweete roote, which some proudle for more delight. There are other rootes fit to coole, as the Piquima. which is the qualitie very cold and moift, and in Summer it refresheth and quencheth the thirth; but the Papas and Ocas, be the chiefe for nourshment and substance. The Indians efteeme Garlike Of divers forus about all the rootes of Europe, and hold it for a fruite of great force.

call Concombres.Pines.oc

Seeing we have begunne with the leffer Plants, I might in few words, touch that which conand Pulles, and cernes Flowers and Pot-hearbes, and that which the Latines call Arbusta, without any mention of Trees. There are some kindes of these shrubbes at the Indier, which are of verie 60 good tafte. The first Spaniards named many things at the Indies with fuch Spanish names, as they did most resemble, as Pines, Concombrer, and Primes, although they be very different fruites to small fruits of thosewhich are so called in Spaine. The Pines, or Pine-aples, are of the same fashion and forme ontwardly to those of Castile but within they wholly differ, for that they have neither Apples,

nor scales, but are all one flesh, which may be eaten when the skin is off. It is a fruite that hath an excellent imell, and is very pleafant and delightfull in tafte, it is full of inyce, and of a fweete Pines, and flarpe tafte, they eate it being cut in moriels, and fleeped a while in water and falt. They grow one by one like a cane or stalke, which rifeth amongst many leaues, like to the Lillie, but fomewhat bigger. The Apple is on the top of euerie cane, it growes in het and moift erounds. and the best are those of the Ilands of Barlomente. I have seene in new Spaine, consernes of these Pines, which was very good. Those which they call Concombres, are no trees, but shrubbes. continuing but one yeare. They give it this name, for that some of this fruite, and the most part, is in length, and roundnesse like to the Concombres of Spaine: but for the rest they differ 10 much, for they are not greene, but violet, yellow, or white, neither are they thornie or rough, but pollished and euen, having a verie different tafte, and farre better then that of Spaine. for they have a sharpe sweete talte, very pleasant when it is ripe, yet is it not so sharpe as the Pine. They are very coole, full of liquor and of easie digestion, and in time of heate fit to refresh. They take away the rinde which is white, and all that remaines is meate. They grow ina temperate foile, and require watering. And although for the refemblance they call them Concombres, yet are there many of them round, and others of a different fashion : so as they have not the figure of Concombres. I doe not remember to have feene this kinde of fruite in new Spaine, nor at the lands, but vpon the Lanes of Pers. That which they call the little fruite of Chille, is of the fame fort, verie pleafant to eate, and comes neere the tafte of Cherries,

20 but in all other things it differs much; for that it is no tree, but an hearbe, which growes little and ipreads upon the earth, casting forth this little fruite, the which in colour and graines, resembles almost the Mulberie, when it is white and notripe, yet is it more rough and bigger then the Mulberie. They say this little fruite is naturally found in the fields of Chill, where I have seen of them. They fee it vpou Plants and branches, and it growes like any other shrub. Those which they call Pranes, are verily the fruits of trees, and have more refemblance then the reft to our Plumbs, But to returne to Pot-hearbs, I finde not that the Indians had any Gardens of divers Hearbes and Plants, but did onely till the Land in some parts for pulses, which they vie, as those which they call Frifeles and Palares, which serue them as our Lentils, Beanes, or Tares: neither haue I knowne that these Pulles, or any other kindes that be in Europe, were there be-30 fore the Spaniards entred, who carried Plants and Pulles from Spaine thither, where they now grow and increase wonderfully, and in some places exceede greatly the fertilitie of these parts. As if we speak of Mellons which grow in the Vallie of Tues, in Pers, whole roote becomes a stalk Palies, Melons

that continues many yeares carrying Mellons yearely, and they trimme it like vnco a tree; a carried out of thing which I doe not know to be may part of Spains. But that is more monitous of the Cat Hunger out thing which I doe not know to be may part of Spains. But that is more monitous of the Cat Hunger and their or I said to Pompions, and the greatness they have as they grow, especially those which channing better are proper to the Countrie, which they call Capalles, the which they care most commonly in these. Lent, boiled and trimmed with some other sawce. There are a thousand kindes of Calibas- These calibastes fer, some are so deformed in their bignesse, that of the midde cut in the middest and clen- feemeth. Gainfed, they make as it were baskets to put in all their meate for their dinner. Of the sp Genral care 40 leffer they make Vellels to eate and drinke in, and doe trimme them handlomely for ma. itid from the

They have not found at the West Indies an ickinds of Spices, proper or peculiar to them, as Of Airor Indies. Pepper, Clours, Cinamon, Nutmegs or Ginger, although one of our companie, who had transport. uelled much, and in diuers parts, told vs , that in the Defarts of the Hand of Iamaigne he had Chapao. found trees where Pepper grew. But they are not yet affured thereof, neither is there anie trade of these spices at the Indus. The Ginger was carried from the Indies to Hispaniela, and it hath multiplied fo, as at this day they know not what to doe with the great abundance they have. In the fleete the, yeare 1987, they brought 22073, quintals of Ginger to Senille: but the natural fpice that God hath given to the Welf Indice; is that we in Coffill call Indice Popper, and at so the lindies, Axi, as a generall word taken from the first Land of the Ilande, which they conquered. In the language of Cufco, it is called Vobs, and in that of Mexico, Chili. This plant in well knowne, and therefore I will speake a little, onely we must winderstand, that in old time it was much eftermed amongst the Indians: that they carried into places where it grew not, as a Mar-

chandise of consequence. It growes not voon cold grounds, as on the Sierre of Perm, but in hot Vallies, where it is often watered. There is of this Axi of divers colours, some is greene, some red, some yellow, and some of a burning colour, which they call Caribe, the which is extreamely sharpe and biting; there is another fort not so sharpe, but is so sweete, as they may eate it alone as any other fruit. There is some of it verie small and pleasing in the mouth, almost like to the smell of Muske, and is verie good. That which is sharpe and biting in this Axi, be the veines 60 and the grain onely; the reft is not : for that they eate it greene & dry, whole and beaten, in the pot, and in fawces, being the chiefe fawce, & all the spice they have at the Indies. When this Ani is taken moderately, it helps and comforts the stomack for digestion; but if they take too much, it hath bad effects, for of it felfe it is verie hot, fuming, & pierceth greatly, fo as the vis thereof is presudiciall to the health of yong folkes, chiefely to the foule, for that it prouokes to luft, They

vie Salt to temper this Axi, having great force to correct it, and so they moderate one with the other by the contrarietie that is in them. They vie also Tomaters which are cold and very wholesome. It is a kinde of graine great and full of inyce, the which gines a good tafte to fawce. and they are good to eate. They have generally throughout the Indies of this Indian Pepper, at the Hands, new Spaine, Paris, and all the reft that is discourred. And as Mays is the generall graine for Bread, fo Axi is the most common spice for sawces. The thing wherein was most resemblance, in my opinion, betwirt the Planes at the Indies.

trce.Cbap.21.

and those which the Ancients did celebrate, is the greatnesse of the leaves, for that these have them very great and coole. But in truth there is no more comparison not relemblance of the one with the other, then there is (as the Prouerbe faith) betwixt an Egge and a Chefnut. For first, the ancient plane carries no fruite, at the leaft, they made no account thereof, but the chiefest reason why they effeemed it, was, for the shadow, for that there was no more Sunne under a Plane than under a roofe. And contrariwife, the reason why they should regard it at the Indies , yea make great accompt thereof, is by reason of this fruite, which is very good; for they have little shade. Moreouer, the ancient Plane had the body so bigge, and the boughs so spread, that Plinie Plin. lib. a. cap. 1: reporteth of one Licinius a Romane Captaine, who with eighteene of his companions dined at ease in th'hollow of one of these Planes: and of the Emperour Caine Caligula, who with eleven of his ghefts feasted vpon the top of another Plane, where he made them a sumptuous banquet. The Indian Planes have neither fo great nor hollow bodies, not fo broad bouchs.

Pillib, 11. ca. 16. The leaves of the Indian Plane, are of a wonderfull bigneffe, and are, in a manner, fufficient to couer a man from the foote to the head. It is a Plant that makes a stocke within the earth, out 20 of the which forings many and fundry fiens and fprigges, divided, and not toyned together. These sprigges grow bigge, every one making a small tree apart, and in growing they cast forth these leaues, which are of a fine, greene, smooth, and great as I have faid. When it is growne to the height of a stade and a halfe, or two, it puts forth one onely bough of fruite, whereon sometimes there are great numbers of this fruite, and sometimes lesse. I have told vpon some of these boughs three hundred, whereof every one was a spanne long more or lesse, and two or three singers bigge; yet is there much difference herein, betwixt fome and others, they take away the rinde, and all the rest is a firme kernell and tender, good to eare, and nourishing. This fruite inclines more to cold then heate. They are accustomed to gather the boughes or clusters, as I have faid, to being greene, and put them into veffels, where they ripen, being well coursed, especially when there is a certaine hearbe mingled with it, which ferues for this effect, If they fuffer them to ripen on the tree, they have a better tafte, and a very good fmell, like to Campiffes or fweete Apples. They last almost all the yeare, for that there are atwaies your ones that grow out of this stocke; fo as when one ends, another beginnes to yeelde his fruite, the one is halfe ripe, and the other begins to bud answ, fo as one foogedes another, and the fruite continues the whole yeare. In gathering the cluster, they cut the forigge or stalke, for that it beares but one; and never but once but as I have said, the stalke remaines, and casts forth new sienes or stalkes, with it growes old and dies. This Plane continues many yeares, and requires much moniture, and a very hot ground. They put after at the foote of it, for the better entertaining thereof, and they make to imall groues and very thicke: the leafe is as broad as a sheete of Paper, or little lesse, and foure Section 1819 Although the Plane be the most profitable, yet that Cacao is most esteemed at Mexico, and the

Of Cacas and

then Almonds, yet more fat, the which being roufted hath no ill taffe. It is fo much effeemed amongfi the Indian (yes and among the Spaniards) that it is one of the richeft and the greatest traffickes of new Spaine: for being a drie fruite, and that keepes long without corruption, they carrie whole Ships loaden from the Bronince of Granting Mar. The last years an Eng & Pirat did burne in the Port of Guatules in never Spains, about a hundred thousand charges of Cacao. They vieit inflead of money, for with fine Cacaos they buy one thing, with thirtie another, and with so a hundred another, without any contradiction; and they wie to give it to the poore that beg for almes. The chiefe vierof this Cooto, is an adrinke which they call Chocholate, whereof they make great accompt in that Country, foolibly, and without reason; for it is loathsome to such as are not acquainted with it, having a skum or froth that is very upplealant to tafte, if they be not very well conceited thereof. Yet it is a drinke very much effeemed among the Indians, wherewith they feaft Noble men as they paffe through their Countrie. The tree whereon this fruite prowes, is of reasonable biguesse; and well fashioned, it is so tender, that to keepe it from the burning of the Stannt, they plant neere vnto it, a great tree, which feroes onely to shadowit, and they call it the minter of Cacao. There are places where they are like to the Vines and Oliuc trees of Spaine. The Promince where there is greatest abundance for the trafficke of Marchandis, 63 is Guatimalla. There growes none in Pers, but Cocal wherein they hold another great superfittion, which feemes to be fabulous. It is a kinde of Marchandife, by the which all their Markets and Faires are stade with great expedition. This Coca whereof they make fuch account is a small greene leafe, which groweth vpon small trees about a fadome high, and in hot and mostly grounds;

Coca in Perm, in which two trees they have great superstition. The Game is a fruite little lesse

eury foure moneths it caffs forth this leafe, which they call Trefmitte or Trement it requires ereat care in planting, being very tender, and much more to keepe it, when it is gathered. They lay it in order in long and narrow baskets, and fo lade their sheepe of the Gountry, which goe in troopes, with one, two, or three thousand baskets of this marchandise.

They bring it commonly from the Ander and vallies, where there is an extreame heate. and where it raines continually the most part of the yeare : wherein the Indians endure much lawhere it raines continuously the most party die; for that they goe from the Sierre and cold Of Marine The places to till and gather them in the Ander. Their vie is to carry it in their mouthes, chaw- nel Carreille. ing it, and fucking out the inice, but they fivallow it not. They lay it gives them great con- Anti- and conto rage, and is very pleafing vinto them. They willingly imploy their money therein, and vie it as ton Chap. 13.

Marney is a tree of wonders, whereof the Notaries or Chapetons (at the Indians call them) are Marney.

wont to write miracles, in that it yeeldeth Water, Wine, Oyle, Vinegar, Honie, Sirripe, Thred. Needles and a thouland other things. It is a tree which the Indians effective much in new Spaine. and have commonly in their dwellings fome one of them for the maintenance of life; it growes in the fields, and hath great and large leanes, at the end whereof is a ftrong and fharpe point, which ferres to fasten little pins, or to few as a needle: and they draw out of this leafe as it were which terues to taited in the print, or the body which is bigge, when it is tender, wherein Manifold coma series of times which the fub flance mounts from the roote, and is a liquor which they modifies of the 20 drinke like water, being fweeteand fresh. This liquor being sodden, turnes like Wine, which Mayer.

growes to Vinegar, fuffring it to foure, and boiling it more, it becomes as home, and boiling it halfe, it ferues as firrope: which is healthfull enough, and of good tafte; in my judgement it is better then the firrope of Raisons. Thus do they boile this liquor, and whe it in divers forts, whereof they draw a good quantitie, for that in some season they draw daily some pots of this liquor. There are also of these trees in Peru, but they are not so profitable as in new Spaine. The wood of this tree is hollow and foft, and ferues to keepe fire, like to the match of a harquebuze, and preferues it long : I have feene the Indians vie it to that end. The Tunallis another famous tree in new Spaine: if wee may call a tree a heape of leanes ga- Tunall tree.

thered together one vpon another, it is the ftrangelt fashiond tree of all other: for fift there 30 growes one leafe out of the ground, then another vpon it, and so one vpon one, till it commeth to his perfection; but as the leaves grow vp, and on the fides, those vnderneath doe become great. and loofe in a manner the forme of leaues, making a body and branches, which are fharpe, pricking, and deformed, to as in fome places they doe call it a Thiftle. There are Thiftles or wilde Tamall, the which doe carrie no fruite, or elfe iois very pricking without any profit. There are likemans, the winch control which they will planted Timalls which they will planted Timalls which yeelde fruite much effected amongst the Indians, the which they call Timas, and they are much greater then Plennbes, and long. They open the shell which is far, and within it is meate and finall graines, like to chose of figges, which be very sweeter, they have a good talke, especially the white, which have a pleating finell, but the red are not visually so ood. There is another fort of Tunalle, which they efteeme much more, although it yeeldes no 40 fruit, yet it beares another commoditie and profit, which is of the graine, for that certaine small

wormes breede in the leaves of this tree, when it is well husbanded, and are thereunto fastned. couered with a certaine small fine web, which doth compasse them in daintily; and this is that /ndien Cochenille, lo famous, and wherewith they die in graine. They let it drie, and being dried, carrie it into Spane, which is a great and rich marchandife. The arobe of this Cochenille or graine is worth many ducats. In the fleete, the yeare 1587, they did bring fine thousand fix hundred feuentie feuen arobes, which amounted to two hundred fourescore three thousand feuen hundred and fiftie peeces, and commonly there comes every yeare as great a wealth.

These Tunally grow in temperate grounds inclining to cold. In Peru there growes none to this day. I have feene some Plants in Spaine, but they deserve not estimation, I will speake some. I thinke hee 50 thing likewise of the stars, although it comes not from a tree, but from an hearbe, for that it or indice of ferreth for the dying of cloth, and is a marchandife which agrees with the graine; it groweth which fee To I, in great abundance in new Spaine, from whence there came in the fleete I mentioned \$263.aro- I ain Fliebel bes, or there abouts, which amounted to fo many precess. Cotten likewife growes vpon small townall. shrubs, and great trees like to little apples, which doe open and yeelde forth this webbe, which cours, being gathered, they ipinne to make stuffes : and the yeare that I spake of, there came 64000. arobes.

These Plants we have spoken of, are the most profitable of the Indies, and the most necessarie of Maners. for the life of man : yet there are many other that are good to eate, among the which the Ma- Guandates, and

mers are efteemed, being in fashion like to great Peaches, and bigger, they have one or two stones Paison Chap. 14. 60 within them, and their meate is somewhat hard. There are some sweete, and others some what fowre, and haue the rinde hard. They make conferues of the meate of this fruite. which is like to Marmelade. The vie of this fruite is reasonable good, but the conferues they make thereof, are better. They grow in Ilands. I have not feene any in Pers. It is a great tree, well fashioned, and a reasonable faire leafe. The Guanyanos be other trees which commonly

carrie an ill truite, full of fowre kernels, and are like to tittle Apples. It is a tree Hede effermed woon the firme Land and at the Hands, for they tay it finels like to the Pannifes. The taffe and fauour of this fruite is verie groffe, and the substance visiolesome. In Saint Domingue and other Hands, there are whole Mountaines full of these Guspaner, and they fay, there was no fuch kindes of trees before the Spaniards came there, but that they brought them they know no from whence. This tree bath multiplied infinitely, for that there is no Beaft that will eate the kernels or the graine, fo asbeing thus feattered on the earth, being het and moift, it including in this fort. In Peru, the Guapane differs from others, for that the fruite is not red, bet white, net-ther lath at any ill finell, but is of a very good take; and of what fort of Guapanes focure is be. the fruite is as good as the best of Spaine, especially of those which they call Grayanes de Mars, and of other little white Guagnilles. It is a fruite reasonably holesome, and agrees with the str. mack, being of a ftrong digeftion, and cold. The Palias commonly are hore and delicare. The Palias is a great tree, and carries a faire leafe, which hath a fruit like to great Peares : within it hath's great flone, and all the reft is foft meate, fo as when they are full ripe, they are as it were Bus. ter, and hape a delicate tafte. In Perm the Palias are great, and have a verse hard skale, which may be taken off whole. This fruite is most vivall in Mexico, having a thinne skinne, which may be pulled like an Apple; they hold it for a very holefome meate, and as I have faid, it declines a little from heate. Their Mamayes, Guayanos, and Palios, be the Indians Peaches, Apples, and Peares; and yet would I rather choose them of Europe.

Chicopotes.

The Marmalad is that which they call Capter, or Chice capter, which have a sweete taste, and neere vnto the colour of Marmalade. Some Crolles (for io they talled the Spaniards borne at the Indus) fay that this fruite paffeth all the fruites of Spaine in excellencie : yet am I not of that opinion. Those Chicocapetes or Capetes, wherein there is little difference, grow in the hotest parts of new Spaine, neither haue I knowledge of any such fruite in the firme Land of Pern. As for the Blanckemanger, it is that Annena or Guanamena, which growes in the firme Land, which is fallitoned like vinto a Peare, a little tharpe and opened, within it is white, tender and foft like Butter, iweete and of a pleafing tafte : It is no white meate , though they call it Blancke. There are some groffe Fruites, as those which they call Lucumes (of which fruite they soeake

Of many forts in a Prourte, that it is a counterfet price, The Guanes, Pacayes, Hubes, and the Note Which they call Imprised; which fruites feeme to many, to be the fame kinde of Nuts we have in Spaine, monds of the doe not thinke it good to palle away vnder filence the Coces or Indian Palmes, by reason of a verie Ander, and Al- notable propertie it hath. I call them Palmes, not properly, or that it beares Dates, but that they monds of Cha- are trees like to other Palmes. They are high and ftrong, and the higher they grow, the broader they firetch out their branches. These Coon yould a fruite which they likewise call Coon, whereof they commonly make veffels to drinke in, and fome they fay have a vertue against poison, and to cure the paine in the fide. The nutte and meate being dried, is good to eate, and comes neere in take to greene Chefnuts. When the Coce is tender voon the tree, the fubffance within it, is as it were Milke, which they drinke for daintinesse, and to refresh them in time of heate. I have seene of these trees in Saint Iean de Port Ricco, and other parts of the Indies, and they report a wonderfull thing, that every moneth or Moone, this tree casts forth a new branch of this Cocor; fo as it yeeldes truite twelue times in the yeare, as it is written in the Apocalips: and in truth this feemes like vato it, for that all the branches are of different ages, some beginning, others being ripe, and fome halfe ripe. These Cocor are commonly of the forme and bignesse of a small Melon. There is of another kinde, which they call Coquilos, the which is a better fruite, whereof there be some in Chille. They are somewhat leffe then Muts, but more round. There is another kinde of Coces, which have not the kernell fo oylie, but within they have a great number of fmall fruits like Almonds. like voto the graines of a Pomgrapat.

These Almonds are thrice as bigge as those of Castillo, and relemble them in taste, though they be more sharpe, and likewise most and oylie. It is a good meate, they vie it also in feasing, for so lacke of Almonds to make Marchanes, and such other things. They call them Almonds of the Andes, for that these Coces grow abundantly vpon the Andes of Pern; they are so fireng and hard, as to open them, they must beate them with a great stone, when they fall from the tree. If they chance to hit any one on the head, he hath no more neede of any Surgeon. It is an incredible thing, that within the hollow of these Cocos, which are no bigger than the rest, or little more, there are fuch a multitude of these Almonds. But as touching Almonds and other fruits, all trees must yeelde to the Almonds of Chachapeyas, which I cannot otherwise call. It is the most pleafing delicate and wholesome fruite of all that I have feene at the Indies.

divers flowers, The Indians are great louers of flowers, and in new Spains more then in any other part of the world, and therefore they are accustomed to make many kindes of Nofegaies, which there they 60 trees which yeelde onely a call Suebiller, with fuch prettie varietie and art, as nothing can be more pleasing. They have a cu-flower, & how from among & them, that the chiefest man offer their Suebilles or nosegayes in honour to Nothe Indian doe blemen, and to their ghests; and they presented vs with such abundance as wee passed giethem, ch.17. through that Countrey, as wee knew not what to doe with them; and at this day they vie

the principall flowers of Castile, to that end, for that they grow better there than here, as Gilliflowers, Roles, Ialmins, Violets, Orange flowers, and other forts which they have transported nowen, noise, namine, notes, viring nowers, and outer once which they have transported out of Spaine. The Rofe tree growest to fail in 16 mer place; , lo as they better file Rofe. It chanced one day that a Rofe tree was burned; and the fem which forward one, prefemly bare "kickident prosbundance or Rofes, and thereby they learned to principation, and to cut off the litherfulous better dues not are then, to as at this day they yeelde reasonable there of Rofes, But befides these kindes of flowers, which have beene transported from hence, there are many others whole names I doe not know whereof fome are red, blew, yellow, violet and white, with a thousand different colours, which winerot tome are suppressly times and wines with a monator direction country which the Indians did vic to carry on their heads, as feather fit to nomment. The it is, that may of these 10 dowers are onely pleasing to the fight, haung no good lutour, either they are groffe, or elfe they haur none attall; and yet there be fome of an excellent fent. As 'those which grow you won a tree tearmed by them Floripondio or carry flower, which beares no fruite, but onely these flowers, which are greater than the Lillie, and are like to little Bels, all white, which have within them fmall threds, as we fee in the Liffie; it leanes not all the yeare to beare thefe flowers, whose smell is wonderfull sweete and agreeable, especially in the coole of the morning. The winds men is wounded to the forces with King Phillip, as a thing worthy to be planted in royall Gardens. In new Spaine the Indians effecting much of a flower, which they call Dasfacht, which fignifieth flower of the beart, for that it beares the forme of a heart, and is not much left. The flower of Granadille is held for an admitable thing, and they fay, it hath in it 20 the markes of the Passion, and that therein they note the nailes, the piller, the whips, and crowne of thornes, and the wounds, wherein they are not altogether without reason, and yet to find out

and obserue these things, it requires some pietie to cause beleefe : but it is very exquisite and faire to the eye, although it have no fmell, &c. The balme which comes from the West Indies, is not of the same kinde of right Balme which Of Balme, they bring from Alexandria or Caire, and in old time was in Indies, which Indies (as Plinie writeth) did of all the world possesse this greatnesse, vatisl the Emperous Vessasses brought it to pissibita.c.15.
Rome and into Italie. At the Indies I have seene the Tree from whence they draw the Balme, Chap. 32.

which is as big as a Pomgranae tree, and something neere the fashion ; and if my memorie failes me not, it hath nothing common with the Vine, although that Strake writes, that the ancient Strak-lib.16.

20 tree of Balme, was of the bigneffe of a Pomgranae tree. But in their accidents & operations, their Grograp. liquors are alike, as likewise they be in their admirable smels, & in the cure and healing of wounds in colour and substance, seeing they report of other Balmes that there is some white, yermillion, greene and blacke, the which is likewife feene in that of the Indies. And as they drew forth the ancient in cutting and making incisions in the barke, to cause the liquor to distill cut, so doe they with that at the Indies, although it diffils in greater abundance. And as in the ancient there is one kinde which is pure, the which they call Opobalfamum, which be the verie teares that diftill, fo as there is another fort which is not fo exquitite, the which they draw from the barke and leaves strained and boiled on the fire, the which they call Xilobal amount. The like is also in the Indian Balmes; there is one pure that distils from the tree, and others that the Indians draw out 40 by straining and boiling the leaves and wood. The Apostolike Sea hath given libertie to give Creame of Balme at the Indies, and that they should vie it in Confirmation and other ceremonies

Next to Balme, Amber holds the second place; it is another liquor which is likewise sweet Of Amber, and and medicinall, but more thicke, and turnes into a paste of a hot complexion, and a good per-other Oyles, fume. This Amber comes from new Spaine, which hath that advantage aboue other Provinces Gumme in Gummes, Liquors, and juyce of Trees, whereby they have fuch abundance of matter, for per Drugs, which finne and physicke, as is the Asimit, whereof there comes great flore, Loyal or Suebsengal, which they from it another kinde, Storax and Interast, which have excellent operations, and have a very good finell chapter. fit for fumigations, Likewise the Tacamabaca and Carama, which are also very medicinall. They bring likewife from this Prouince oile of Afrike, which the Phylicians and Painters vie much the one for plaifters, the other to vernish their pictures. They bring also for the Phylicians (A)

fin fistula, the which growes plentifully in Saint Dominique. It is a great Tree, which carries thele Caf. Fiftula. Canes as his fruit, They brought in the fleet wherein I came from Saint Dominique fortic eight Sakeparille. Quintals of Cassia fiftula. Salcepareille is not lesse knowne, for a thousand remedies wherein it is vied. There came in the same fleet fiftie Quintals from the same Iland. There is much of this Salcepareille at Peru, and most excellent in the Province of Guayaquil, which is vnder the Line. Many goe to be cured into this Prounce, and it is the opinion of some, that the pure water onely which they drinke, gives them health, for that it passeth by rootes as I have said, from whence it drawes this vertue, fo as there needes no great courring or garments to make a man fweat in

60 that Countrie. The wood of Guayac, which they call Lignum faultum, or Indian wood, growes Lignum vila; abundantly in the same Ilands, and is as heavie as Iron, so as it presently finkes in the water; hereof they brought in the same fleet three hundred and fifeie Quintals, and they might have brought twentre, yea, a hundred thoutand of this wood, if there were vie for it. There came in the fame fleet, and from the same Iland , one hundred and thirtie Q intals of Brefil wood , the which is Kkkki

heav red, Is well knowne, and much vied in dying and other things. There are at the Indies inhere reg. 19 years anowate, anomatical Woods, Gummes, Oiles, and Drugs, loas it is not possible to name them all, neither doth it now much import. I fay onely, that in the time of the Kines In-Auncien Phys. 2 see of Ceffer, and the Mexican Kings, there were many great personages expert an unung of scients.

diteales weith simples, and und goodly cures, having the knowledge of the many vertures and groot perties of Herbs, Rootes, Woods, and Plants, which grow there, and whereof the Ancients of Europe have had no knowledge. There are a thousand of these simples fit to purge, &c.

Woods are to many and great, that it hath beene needfull (passing through some parts of the Indies, especially where they newly entred) to make their way , in cutting downe Trees, and pulling vp Bulhes, fo that (as fome religious men have written that have tried it) they could 10 not fometimes have passed about a league in a day. One of our brothers (a man worthy of credit) reported vnto vs, that being strayed in the Mountaines, not knowing which way hee Strange travil, should palle, he fell among such thicke Bushes, that hee was forced to goe vpon them , without fetting foot to the ground by the space of fifteen whole dayes: and to see the Sunne, or to make fome way in this thicke Forest full of wood, hee was forced to climbe to the top of the highest Trees to discouer. He that shall reade the discourse of his travell, how often he was lost, and the wayes hee paffed, with the strange adventures that happened vnto him, the which I have written briefly, being to worthy the knowledge, and having my telfe travelled a little over the Mountaines at the Indies, were it but the eighteene leagues betwirt Nombre de Doos and Pana Mountaines at the annues, well and great Forests there are. So as having no winter in those parts, to nip them with cold, and the humiditie of the Heanens and Earth being fo great, as the Mountaines bring forth infinite Forests , and the Playnes which they call Samanas , great plentie of graffe;

there is no want of Pasture for feeding, of Timber for building, nor of Wood for fuell. It is impose fible to fet downe the differences and formes of to many wilde Trees, for that the names of the greatest part are vnknowne.

Cedars in old time fo much efteemed, are there very common, both for buildings and fhips and they are of diuers forts, fome white, and fome red, very odoriferant. There are great flore of Bay trees, very pleatant to behold upon the Andes of Perm, upon the Mountaines, in the Handsol Nicaragua, and in new Spaine. There are also infinite numbers of Palmes and Ceiuas, whereof the Indians make their Canoes, which are Boates made of one piece. They bring into Spaine 30 from the Hanana, excellent timber, In the Iland of Cuba, there are infinite numbers of like trees. as Ebene. Caonana, Grenadille, Cedars, and other kindes which I doe not know. There are great Pine trees in new Spaine, though they be not fo strong as those in Spaine; they beare no pignous or kernels, but emptie apples. The Oakes as they call them of Gnaragnil, is an excellent wood and fweet, when they cur it; yea there are Canes or most high Reeds, of whose boughs or small reedes they doe make Bottles and Pitchers to carry water, and doe likewife vie them in their buildings. There is likewise the wood of Mauste or Firre, whereof they make masts for their thips, and they hold them as ftrong as Iron. Walle is a tree of many vertues, which cafteth forth small boughes, whereof the Indians make wine. In Mexico they call it the tree of Peru, for that it came from thence : but it grows also in new Spaine , and better then those in Pers. There are 40 a thousand other Trees, which were a superfluous labour to intreat of, whereof some are of an exceeding greatnesse, I will speake onely of one which is in Tlaco Changa, three leagues from Guaraca in new Spaine: this tree being measured within, being hollow, was found to have nine fadome, and without, neere to the roote, fixteene, and fomewhat higher, twelve. This tree was firooke with lightning from the toppe to the bottome, through the heart, the which caufed this hollownesse: they say that before the thunder fell vpon it, it was able to shaddow a

in giam of

this day there doth remaine some boughes and verdure, but not much. They know not what kinde of tree itis, but they fay it is a kinde of Cadar. Such as shall finde this strange, let them Plin. lib.i2. e.r. reade what Pliniereporteth of the Plaine of Lidia, the hollow whereof contained four escore for and one, and feemed rather a Cabbin or a Houle, then the hollow of a tree, his boughes like a whole wood, the shaddow whereof couered a great part of the field. By that which is written of this Tree, we have no great cause to wonder at the Weaver, who had his dwelling and Loome in the hollow of a Chefnut tree and of another Chefnut tree, if it were not the very fame, into the hollow whereof there entered eighteene men on Horsebacke, and passed out without diffurbing one another. The Indians did commonly vie their Idolatries in their Trees, fo strange and deformed, even as did the auncient Gentiles, as some Writers of our time doe report.

thousand men, and therefore they did assemble there for their dances and superstitions; yet to

Of Plants and Chap.31.

The Indians have received more profit, and have bin better recompensed in Plants that have bin brought from Spaine, then in any other Merchandife, for that those few which are carried from the Indies into Spaine, grow little there, and multiply not, and con trariwise the great num-60 ber that have beene carried from Spaine to the Indies, prosper well and multiply greatly : I know not whether I shall attribute it to the bountie of the Plants that goe from hence, or to the goodnesse of the soyle that is there. Finally, there is at the Indies any good thing that Spaine brings forth ! in some places it is better, in some worse, as Wheate, Barley, Hearbes, and all

CHAP.2. S.4. Spanish-Indian berbs and fraits. Strange fig. tree, Wines. Sugars: 961

kinds of Pulses, also Lettuce, Coleworts, Radishes, Onions, Garlike, Parsley, Turneps, Parsemeps, Becengenes, or Apples of loue, Siccorie, Beetes, Spinage, Peale, Beanes, Fetches : and finally. mens, pressed there of any profit, to as all that have woyaged thither, have been curious to carry Seeder of all forts, and all have growne, although diversity, fome more, fome leffe. As for carry Secure or an notes, and an nate growner, announcing, some unit; some sene, As for shore trees that have most abundantly fructified, be Orenge-trees, Limons, Citrons, and other of that fort. In some parts there are at this day, as it were whole Woods and Forrests of Orange crees: tha which feeming strange vnto me, I asked who had planted the fields with formany O. range trees : shey made me answer, that it did come by chance, for that Oranges being fallen to Natures had the ground, and rotten, their feedes did fpring, and of those which the water had carried away bandrie

into diners parts, these Woods grew to thicke: which feemed to mee a very good reason, I have faid that this fruite hath generally increased most at the Indies, for that I have not beene in any place but I finde Orange trees, for that all their foile is hot and moift, which this tree most defires. There growes not any wpon the Sierre or Mountaine, but they carrie them from the vallies or Sea coaft. The conferue of Oranges which they doe make at the Illands, is the best I have feene any where : Peaches, Preffes, and Apricockes have greatly multiplied, especially in new Spaine. At Pern there growes few of thele kindes of fruites, except Peaches, and much leffe in the Ilands. There growes Apples and Peares, yet but fearcely: there are but few Plumbs, but aboundance of Figges, chiefly in Pers. They finde Quinces in all the Countrie of the Indies, and in new Spaine, in fuch aboundance, as they game vs fittie choice ones for halfe a risk. There is 30 great flore of Pomegranats, but they are all fweete, for the sharpe are not there efter med. There are very good Melons in some parts of Pera, Cherries both wildeand tame have not profipesed well at the Indies, the which I doe not impute to want of temperature for that there is of all forts, but to careleineffe, or that they have not well observed the temperature. To conclude, I doe not finde that in those parts there wants any daintie fraite. As for groffe fruites, they have no Beilbetes nor Chefinuts, neither doe I finde that any baue geowner there to this day. Almonds growthere, but rarely. They carry from Spine, for fuch as are daintie mouthed, both Almonds, Nuts, and Filberds: but I haus not knowns they had any Medlers or Seruices, which im-

There growes no Wine nor Grapes in the Hands, nor firme Land, but in new Spaine, there Of Grapes, are fome Vines which beare Grapes, and yet make no. Wines. The caule is, for that the Grape ri- Vines, Oliues, ners not well, by reason of the raine that fale in the Montals of July and August, which him. Muberies, ders their ripening, fo as they ferue onely to cate. They carry Wine out of Spaine, and from and Canes of the Concres, to all parts of the Indees, except Personnel the Realme of Chile. There are fome Sugar, then it places where the Vinesare not watered, neither from hearth nor earth, and yet they increase in great abundance, as in the Valley of Tea, and in the disches that they call Villacera, in which places they finde dirches, or thearth funke downs among the dead Sands, which are thorowout the yeare of a wonderfull cooleneife, and yet is raises not sheet at any time, neither is there any manner of meanes to water it artificially: the reason is, because the soile is spongious, and fucks up the water of the rivers that fall from the Mountaine, which moisten these Sands, or

succes up the monithess of the Sea, as others suppose, which passing our this Sand, is the cause of the its is the monithess of the Sea, as others suppose, which passing our this Sand, is the cause why it is not harren nor upprofitable, as the Philosopher teaches. The Vines have so increased why it is not harren nor upprofitable, as the Philosopher teaches. there, as for this cause onely the tithes of the Churches are multiplied fine or fix times double there, as for this cauc onesy the titles of the constants are managed one of its titles double within these twentie yeares. And it is strange, that in the Citie of Capies you shall finder programs and the Capies all the Capies yeare long: the tradon is (as they say) for that those Vallies bring forth fruits in years. divers moneths of the yeare, either for that they cut their Vines in divers feafons, or that this varietie proceedes from the qualitie of the foile : but whatfoeuer it be, it is most certaine, there are fome Vallies which carrie fruite all the yeare. If any one wonder at this, it may be he will wonder much more at that which I shall fay, and perchance not beleeve it. There are Trees in Pers, whereof the one part yeeldes fruite one fixe moneths of the yeare, and the other halfe part Strangefrues

To weeldes fruite the other fix moneths. In Malla which is thirteene leagues from the Citic of fying. Kings, there is a Figge tree, whereof the one halfe which is towards the South, is greene, and veeldeth his fruite one feafon of the yeare, that is, when it is summer vpon the Sierre, and the other moitie towards the Lanes or Sea coast, is greene, and yeeldes his fruite in the other contrarie feason, when it is summer vpon the Lanes, which groweth from the divers temperature, and the ayre which commeth from the one part, and the other. The revenue of Wine there is not fmall, but it goeth not out of the Countrie, But the Silke that is made in new Spaine is transported into other Countries, as to Pers. There were no Mulberrie trees in the Indies, but fuch as were brought from Spaine, and they grow well, especially in the Province which they call Miffeeque, where there are Silke-wormes, and they put to worke the Silke they gather, white-60 of they make verie good Taffataes : yet to this day they have made neither Damaske, Sattin, nor Veluet. The Sugar yet is a greater reuenue, for they not onely ipend it at the Indies, but allo they earrie much into Spaine, for the Canes, grow exceeding well in manie parts of the Indies. They have built their engins in the Hands, in Mexico, in Peru, and in other parts, which yeeldeth them

a very great reuenue.

Oliues but

It was told me, that the engine for Sugar in Nafes, was worth yearly about thirtie thousand pieces of reuenue. That of Chicana ioyning to Truesile, was likewife of great reneme, and those of new Spaine are of no leffe; and it is a ftrange thing to fee what flore they confirme at the Indies. They brought from the Hand of Saint Dominique, in the fleet wherein I came, eight hundred ninetie eight chefts of Sugar, which being (as I did fee) thipped at Port Ricco (every cheft (in my opinion) weighed eight Arobes, every Arobe weighing five and twentie pounds, which are two hundred weight of Sugar) is the chiefe revenue of thete Hands, fo much are men givense the define of sweet chings. There are likewise Olives and Olive trees at the Indies, May in Mexic so and in Pers, yet hath there not beene to this day any Mill for Oile, for that they cate all their Olines, and dreife them well : they finde the charge is greater to make Oile then the profit, and to therefore they carry all the Oile they doe fpend from Spaine. And here we will end with plants. and will paffe to fuch beafts as be at the Indies.

ð. VI. Of Beafts and Fowles in the Indica.

ring wooll, and of Kine, Cap. 33.

Of beafts beas Finde there are three kindes of beafts at the linder, whereof some have been sarried from Spaine; others are of the same kinde we have in Europe, and yet not carried by 20 the Spaniards; and others are proper to the Indies, whereof there are none in Spains. Of the first kinde are Sheepe, Kine, Goats, Swine, Horses, Asses, Dogs, Cats, and on

ther fuch beatls, for there are of all these kindes at the Indies. The smaller Cattell have greatly multiplyed, and if they could make profit of their woolls by fending them into Europe, it were one of the greatest riches the Indies had, for there the flocks of sheepe have great pastuers, where Store of theen, as their feeding failes not. In Peru there is fuch flore of pattures and feedings, as no man hath any proper to himfelfe, but every man feedes his troups where he pleafeth. For this reason there is commonly great store of flesh, and very good cheape, and all other things that come from sheepe, as Milke, and Cheese. For a time they loft their woolls; vntill that some began to hulheepe, as mine, as mine bank cloth and courrings, which hath beene a great helpe for the poorer fort of 30 the Countrie, for that the cloth of Countrie, for that the cloth of Countrie, is very deare there. There are many Clothiers in Pera. but more in new Spaine, yet the cloth that comes from Spaine is farre better, whether the wooll bee more fine, or the workmen more expert. In former times there were men that did poffefe three-core and ten, yea a hundred thousand sheepe, and at this day they have not many lesse. If this were in Europe, it were a very great fubliance, but in that Countrie it is but a meane wealth. In many parts of the Indies , and I thinke in the greatest part, fmall Cattell doe not increase and profit well, by reason that the graffe is high , and the foile so vicious , that they cannot feede fo well as great Cattell.

tame and goe in troups, as in the land of Charca, and other Provinces of Pera, as also in all new 40 Spaine: from these tame Kine they draw such profit as they doe in Spaine, that is, the Flesh, Butter, Calues, and Oxen to till the ground. The other kinde is wilde, which live in the Mountains and Forests, and therefore they tame them not, neither have they any master to whom they are proper, both for the roughnesse and thicknesse of the Forest, as also for the great multitude there is, and he that first kills them is the master, as of any wilde beast. These wilde Kine haue so multiplyed in Saint Dominique, and thereabouts, that they troupe together in the fields and woods by thousands, having no master to whom they appertaine. They hunt these beasts onely for their hales, they goe to the field on horse-backe with their weapons to hough them, courfing the Kine: and when they have ftrucken any and ftayed them, they are their owne, they flay them and car-Killed only for ry the hides home, leaving the flesh, which every one neglects for the abundance there is, foat 40 fome have testified in this I land, that in some places the aire hath beene corrupted with the abundance of these stinking carkasses. The hides they bring into Spaine, is one of the best revenues

And therefore there is an infinite number of Kine, whereof there are two kindes. Some are

of the Hands, and of new Spaine. In the fleet the yeere 1 , 87, there came from Saint Dominique 35444. hides, and from new Spaine 64350. which they value at 96532. pieces, so as when they hides trans discharge one of these fleets . it is admirable to behold the River of Senile . and in the Arcenall ported at (where they valade) so many hides, and so much merchandize. There are also great numbers of once. How Goats, whose chiefe profit is their tallow, besides their Kid-milke and other commodities, for rich might that both rich and poore vie this tallow for lights. For as "ere is a great quantitie, fo doe they Virginia bemake very good account of it; yea, more then of oile, but all the tallow they vie is onely of the come, if ! Males. They vie their skins for shooes, yet I hold them not so good, as those which are car-

Horfes,

Horses have multiplyed there, and are very excellent in many places; yea in many parts there are Races found as good as the best in Spaine, as well for passing of a Carrier, and for pompe, as also for trauell : and therefore they vie Hories most commonly , although there bee no want of

CHARIZ. S.6. Dogs wild Indian banting & game. European beaffs bow known. 052

Movies, whereof there are many . especially where they make their carriages by land. There is no great numbers of Affes, having no great vie for them, neither for travell nor feruite. There are Affes tome few Camels ; I have teene tome in Perw, that were brought from the Counter; and have Camels tome two values. A vase the substitute of the su troppes through the fields. Such that kill them are tewarded like to them that kill Wohes in Spaine. At the fielt there were no Dogs to the Indies but fome beafts like vnto little Dogs. the Spanse. At the truther was to Dogston the same which the Indians call Also, and therefore they call all Dogs that goe from Spanse, by the fame name, by realion of the referriblence that is between the Indians doe so love these like Indians Dogs. no Does, that they will spare their meat to feed them, so as when they travell in the Country, they carry them with them pows their shoulders, or in their bofoms, and when they are ticke . they

keepe them with them, without any vie, but onely for companie.

keepe them with them, without any vie, but onely for companie.

It is certain that they have carried/from? James all their beaffs whereof I have fpoken; of Offomebrash which kinder there were mose at the fador? When they were first discoursed about a hundred of Raige; vertes since; for befines that in may be well approached by witnesses at this day luting; It is allow which the fulficient argument to for that the fadors in their totague, have no proper words to figurise they specified beautiful the fulficient argument to for that the fadors in their totague, have no proper words to figurise they specified words. It is not sharply to be falso Spenish words. The form they to correct the vortex of the fadors and the fadors are the fadors of the fadors and the fadors are the fadors of the fadors. It is not sharply cooke the word common to those places from whence they came. I have found this latest and the fadors are the fadors of the fadors are the fadors of the fadors. a good rule, to differine what things the Indians had before the Spannish came there; and what found paffe
go they had not for they gave names to those they had and knew before and have given new names thinker.cap.go. to their that are newly come vnto them which commonly are the same Spanifo names although Note. they pronounce them after their manner, as for a Horse, Wine, and Wheat. They found of some forts of beaths that are in Europe, and write not carried thirther by the Spaniards. There are Lions, Tieres, Beares, Boares, Foxes, and other fierce and wilde beafts, whereby we have treated in the first Booke, so as it was not likely they should passe to the Indus by Sea, being impossible to swim the Ocean : and it were a folly to imagine that men had imbarked them with them. It followes therefore that this world toynes with the new in some part; by which these beasts might paste, But where? and so by little and little multiplyed this world. The Lions which I have seene, are not red, nel- our Nasigati. ther have they fuch haireas they viurily paint them with. They are grey, and not fo furious as on beyond to they forme in pictures. The Indians affemble in troopes to bunt the Lion; and make as it were a so, hase they they feeme in pictures. I he indians attended in troupes to ment the along and make as it were a edopen and circle, which they doe call Chare, wherewith they intain them; and after they kill them with wide Seas beftones, flaues, and other weapons. These Lions vie to climbe trees, where being mounted, the twizz Indians kill them with Lances and Crofic-bowes, but more easily with Harquebuzes. The Tigres Liens are more fierce and cruell, and are more dangerous to meet, because they breake forthand affaile Circles are v. are more herce and crueti, and are more dangerous to meet, pecasis they breake forth and affaite burces are we men in treason. They are sported, as the Hiltoriographers describe them. I have heard some re-by repring port that these Tigres were very force against the Inkiliary, yet would they not advanture as all Tenan, so, vpon the Spaniards, or very little; and that they would choose an Inkiliar in the middest of ma-Tigres.

ny Spaniards, and carry him away. The Beares which in Cufes they call Ossioness, be of the fame kinde that ours are; and keepe Beares, so in the ground. There are tew (warmes of Bees, for that their hony-combs are found in Trees, or Beth vnder the ground, and not in Hines as in Castile. The hony-combs which I have feene in the Prouince of Charces, which they call Chiguests, are of a grey colour, having little juyce, and are more like vnto iweet straw, then to hony combs. They say the Bees are little, like vnto Flies; and that they swarme vnder the earth. The hony is sharpe and blacke, yet in some places these is better, and the combs better fashioned, as in the Province of Tucaman in Chille, and in Carthagene. I have not feene nor heard speake of wilde Boares, but of Foxes and other wilde beatls that Foxes and eate their Cattell and Fowle, there are more then their Shepherds would willingly have. Be- beats of fides these beasts that are furious and hurtfull, there are others that are profitable, and have not spoile. beene transported by the Spanierds, as Stags and Deere, whereof there is great abundance in all to the Forests. But the greatest part is a kinde of Deere without hornes, at the least, I have never Deere without feene nor heard speake of other, and all are without hornes like vnto Corcor. It feemes not hard out hornes.

to believe, but is almost certaine, that all these bearts for their lightnesse, and being naturally wilde, have passed from one World to another, by some parts where they toyne, seeing that in the great I lands farre from the mayne land I have not heard that there are any, though I have made diligent inquirie.

We may more easily believe the fame of birds, and that there are of the fame kindes that wee of Fowles haue, as Partri ges, Turtles, Pidgeons, Stock-doues, Qualles, and many forts of Falcons, which which are they fend from new Spaine and Pern, to the Noblemen of Spaine, for they make great account of bere and are them. There are also Herons and Engles of divers kindes; and there is no doubt but these birds at the Indies, them. I here are also Iterens and Engles of divers kindes; and there is no doubt but their bittle and how they 60 and fuch like, have fooner passed thither then Lions, Tigres, and Stags. There are likewise at the could passe Indies great numbers of Parrots, especially upon the Andes of Pern, and in the llands of Port dinher. cap. 35. Ricco, and Saint Dominique, where they flie by flocks, as Pidgeons doe here. To conclude, birds with their wings may goe where they will; and truly, many kindes might well paffe the Gulfe, feeing it is certaine, as Plinie affirmeth, that there are many that paffe the Sea, and goe into Plinibitos age

heavie, as Effridges, whereof there are many in Pers; which doe vie fometimes to terrifie the Indian theepe as they doe goe with their burthens.

But Igazing these birds that governe themselves without the care of man, but onely for haw-Hennes, king, let vs now speake of tame Fowle. I wondred at Homes, seeing there were some at the Indies before the Spaniards came there, the which is well approued, for they have a proper name of the Countrie, and they call a Hen Gualpa, and the Egge Ponto, and they vie the same prouerbe we doe, to call a Coward, a Hen. Those that were at the discouerie of the Hands of Soloman, doe an report that they have feene Hennes there like vnto ours: wee may conceine that the Hen being fo tame a Fowle, and fo profitable, men might carry them with them when they paffed from one place to another, as we see at this day the Indians in their travell carry their Hen with them, or chicken upon the burthen they have on their thoulders; and likewife they carry them eafily in their Cases of reedes or wood. Finally, there be at the Indies many kindes of beafts and birds.

fuch as wee have in Europe, as I have specified, and other forts which I leave to others todifcourse of.

It were a matter more difficult, to shew, and proue, what beginning many and fundrie forts of be possible, that beafts had, which are found at the Indies, of whose kindes we have none in this Continent. For if the Creator hath made them there, we may not then alleadge nor flie to Noahs Arke . neither 30 be any forts of was it then necessarie to saue all forts of birds and beafts, if others were to bee created anew. beafts, whereof Moreoner, we could not affirme, that the creation of the World was made and finished in fixe the like are no dayes, if there were yet other new kindes to make, and specially perfit beafts, and no less excellent then those that are knowne vnto ws : If we say then that all these kindes of Creatures were

preserved in the Arke by Noab, it followes, that those beafts, of whose kindes wee finde not any but at the Indies, have pasted thither from this Continent , as wee have faid of other beafts that are knowne vnto vs. This supposed, I demand how it is possible that none of their kinde should remayne here ? and how they are found there, being as it were Trauellers and Strangers? Truly

The fame pro-uidence which it is a question that hath long held me in fulpence. I lay for example, if the sheepe of Peru, and those which they call Paces and Guanaces, are not found in any other Regions of the world, 40 beaffs and fowles from all their native divertified refidencies therow who hat irearried them thither or how came they althe word to the Arke (which no neural mindian is not any although the property of the same to the sa

the fune (crush might here made for beath, &c.in other parry the brought forth where 'It may bee God hath made at unper of the Aix, or of the place where the Airectele, nesages—new creation of beaths I'll Tau which If peak of their ing naturally to the Zebrz, Elephant, Ricce-houfe, Crocodile, and Paeer and Gasmacie may be faid of a thouland differency of the Airectele and Airectele and the Airectele and Airectele and the Airectele and A beenesteempted by Ours, a little boat comming homefrom Bermada they found themselves so well, as they would not

bounds of their babitation, Ad. 17.20.

beeneute mpeted your park boat comming nome from seemans of the state of the best open boat comming nome from the state of wites and be carried by a higher converking ouer-ruling proundence not proper and peculiar alone to the Indies, but geto people thin new World, which (it is likely) at disent times and by nerall to many other Nations and Prountees of Addient meaners exceeded in industrients (God with made all men). one blond, alotting roall Adams fonnes their portions and the feuerall fin, Europe, and Affrike, where they fay there are certaine kindes of Creatures, that are not found in

other Regions, at the least if they be any where elfe, they are knowne to be carried from thence. Seeing then these Creatures came out of the Arke, as for example, the Elephant which wee finde onely in the East Indies, and from thence have beene imparted to other Regions, wee may fay as much of these Creatures of Perm, and of others of the Indies, which are not found in any other

We may likewise consider well upon this subject, whether these beasts differ in kinde. and effentially from all others, or if this difference be accidentall, which might grow by divers accidents, as wee fee in the linages of men , fome are white , others blacke , fome Giants , others Dwarfes : and in Apes, some haue no taile, others haue : and in Sheepe, some are bare, others haue to fleeces; fomegreat and strong with a long necke, as those of Pen; others weake and little. having a fhort necke, as those of Castile. But to speake directly, who so would by this Discourse. shewing onely these accidentall differences, preserve the propagation of beasts at the Indies, and reduce them to those of Europe, hee shall vudertake a charge hee will hardly discharge with his honour. For if wee shall judge the kindes of beafts by their properties, those of the ladies are fo divers , as it is to call an Egge a Chefnut , to feeke to reduce them to the knowne kindes

Of Fowles that are proper to the Indies, and Venison.

20 THere are many kindes of notable Fowles at the Indies, either of the same fort that ours be, of of different. They bring certaine birds from (Bina, that have no feete, and all their bodies See Ishian are almost feathers. They sit not voon the ground, but hang voon boughs, by strings or feathers Tom. 1.19, of which they have, and fo reft themselves like Flies or ayrie things. In Perm there are birds which fuch in Guinere they call Tommeios, for small, that often-times I have doubted feeing them flie, whiether they Tommeios. were Bees or Butter-flies; but in truth they are birds. Contrariwife, those which they call Condores, be of an exceeding greatnesse, and of such a force, that not only they will open a sheep Condores and eate it, but also a whole calfe. Those which they call Anna, and others Ponlazer (which in my opinion are of the kinde of Rasens) are of a strange lightnesse, and have a very quitke sight, Rasens. being very fit to clense Cities, for that they leave no Carrion nor dead thing. They passe the short 30 night on Trees or vpon Rocks, and in the morning they come to the Cities and Towners, fitting 22 more on the tops of the highest buildings, where they attend their prey. Their yong hane white fea-

thers, as they report of Rauens, and fochange into blacke. The Guacamayac be birds bigger then Parrets, and refemble them fomething; they are effecmed for the varietie of their feathers, which be very faire and pleafing. In new Spaine there are abundance of birds with excellent feathers, fo as there bee not any found in Empirithe comes neere them, as wee may fee by the Images of feathers they bring from thence, die which are (with great reason) much valued and eftermed, giving cause of admiration, that with the feat Feather plant thers of birds, they should make so excellent a worke, and so perfectly equal , as they seeme properly to be the true colours of a Painter, and haut so lively and pleasing a regard, as the Pain-

40 ter cannot exceede it with his pencill and colours, Some Indians which are good laid expert workmen in this Art, will represent perfectly in feathers, whatfocute they fee drawns with the pencill, to as the Painters of Spaine, have in this point, no advantage over them. Dow Philip the Prince of Spaine his Schoole-mafter, die give vnto him three figures or portraitures made of feathers, as it were to put in a Bremarie. His Highnelle did fhew them to King Philly his father, the which his Maiestie beholding attentionly, laid, that he had never seene in so small a worke, a thing of fo great excellency and perfection. One day as they prefented to Pope Sixtim Quintw., another iquare bigger then it, wherein was the figure of Saint Frantis, and that they had rold him it was made of teathers by the Indians, he defired to make triall thereof, touchling the table with his tingers, to fee if it were of feathers; for that it feemed ftrange, to fee them to properly

50 fitted, that the eye could not judge not differne whether they were naturall colours of feathers, or artificiall done with the pencill. It is a goodly thing to fee the luffre which a greene, an orange cawnie like gold, and other fine colours doe cast, and beholding them another way they feeme dead colours. They make the best and goodlieft figures of feathers in the Province of Ma chongran, and in the village of Pascaro: The manner is with small delicate Pinfors they pull, the feathers from the dead fowles, and with a fine paste they cunningly loyne them together. They take the small and delicate feathers of these birds , which in Pern they call Tomine jor, or others like vnto them, which have the most perfect colours in their feathers. The Indians (besides these Images) did vie feathers in many other most excellent workes, especially for the ornament of

50 Kings and Noblemen, their Temples and Idols. There are also other great birds, which have excellent and fine feathers, whereof they make plumes of fundriecolours, especially when they goe to warre, inriching them with gold and filuer very artificially, which was a matter of great price. They have the fame birds fill, but they are not fo curious, neither doe they make fo many gentill dedices as they were wont. There are other birds at the Indies, contrarie to these of fo rich feathers, the which (besides that they are

د الاسالية. د الاسالية

A

ill-favoured) ferue to no other vie but for dung, and yet perchance they are of no leffe profit. have considered this, wondering at the providence of the Creator, who hath so appointed that all Creatures (hould ferue Man. In fome Hands or Phares, which are in young to the coast of Pre-The like is in rm, we fee the tops of the Mountaines all white, and to fight, you would take it for Snow, or for The hiers in 7m, we test the tops to the heapes of dung of Sea fowle which goe continually thither; and there is so great abundance, as it rifeth many Elles, yea, many Lances in height, which seemes but a fable. They goe with boates to these Ilands, onely for the dung, for there is no other profit in them. And this dung is fo commodious and profitable, as it makes the earth yeeld great a bundance of fruit. They call this dung Guane, whereof the Valley hath taken the name, which bundance of fruit. 1 Dry can the valleys of Pern, where they vie this dung, and it is the most ferrile 10 of all that Country. The Quinces, Pomegranets, and other fraits there, exceed all other in bonntie and greatnesse; and they say, the reason is, for that the water where with they water it, pas-

like small Hogs, which have this fingular to themselves, to have their Navill vpon the ridge of their backs : these goe by troupes through the Woods, they are cruell and nothing searfull, but contrariwife they affaile, and haue their tallents sharpe as Rasors, wherewith they make dancome presently in troupes, biting the Tree when they cannot hurt the man, and then with

feth by a Land compafied with this dung. Befides the Beafts of Chafe, whereof wee have spoken, There are beafts called Saines, made

gerous wounds and incisions, if such as hunt them put not themselves in safetie. Such as hunt them (for the more fafer killing of them) climbe vp into Trees, whither the Saines or Hogs their Lances they kill what they will. They are very good to eate, but they must of necessitie ent off the round piece where the Nauill growes vpon the backe 3 for otherwise, within a day they corrupt. There is another kinde of little beaft like to fucking Pigges, and they call them Guadatinaias. I am in doubt whether there were any Swine at the Indies, before the Spaniards came thither, like to these in Spaine, for that in the discouerie of the Hands of Soloman, it is * These might faid, they found * Hennes and Swine of Spaine. But howsoeuer it be, it is most certaine, that come from the this Cattell hath greatly multiplyed at the ludies. They eate the fielh fresh, and hold it to bee East parts this as wholesome and as good, as if it were of Mutton; as in Caribagene in some parts, they are there by means of those llands become wilde and cruell, the which they hunt like wilde Boares, as wee fee in Saint Domiof those llands which you see mique, and other llands where the beafts line in the Forests. In some places they seede them an with the graine of Mays, and they grow wonderfully fat, to have the greafe, which they vie for want of Oile; in some places they make Gamons, as in Tollines of new Spaine, and in Paris at Pers. Returning then to such beasts as are peculiar there, even as the Saines are like vnto Swine, though somewhat leffe; even so the Dantes resemble small Kine, but more vnto Mules . hauing no hornes. The Hides of these beasts are much esteemed for jerkins and other couerings, they are so hard as they resist any blow whatsoever. And as the Dantes be defended by the hardnesse of their Hides , so those which they call Armadilles are by the multitude of their feales, which open and thut as they please like to a Curaffe. There bee little beafts which goe through the Woods, called Armadules, by reason of the defence they have hiding themselves within their scales, and opening when they list: I have eaten of them, and doe not hold it 40 for a meate of any great worth; but the fiesh of the Tomoras is a better meate, but more horrible to the eye : for they are like to the very Lizardes of Spaine, although they bee of a doubtfull kinde, for that they goe to the Water, and comming to Land they climbe the Trees woon the bankes; and as they cast themselves from the Trees into the water, the Boates watch underneath to receive them. The Chinchilles is an other kinde of small beafts, like Squirrels, they haue a wonderfull smoothe and fost skin, which they weare as a healthfull thing to comfort the floracke, and those parts that have neede of a moderate heate; they make Coverings and Rugs of the haire of these (binchilles, which are found on the Sierre of Perm, where there is likewile a fmall beaft very common, which they call Copes, and which the Indians hold for a very good meate, and they are accustomed often to offer these Copes in their facrifices. They are like small to Conies, and have their borrowes in the ground, and in some places they have undermined all the Land : fome are grey, fome white, and fome speckled. There are other small Animals which they call Viscachas, and are like to Hares, although they bee bigger, they hunt them and cate the fielh. Of common Hares there are great store in some parts. There are also Conies in the Realme of Onitto . but the good are come from Spame. There is another strange beast, the which for his great heavinefle, and flowneffe in mooning, they call Perso-ligere, or the little light Dogge, hee hath three nailes to every hand, and mooves both hand and feete, as it were by compasse and very heavily : it is in face like to a Monkey, and hath a shrill crie; it climeth Trees,

Throughout all the Mountaines , either of these Ilands of the firme Land , or of the Ander, 63 there are infinite numbers of Mices or Monkeys, which are a kinde of Apes, but very different, in that they have a taile, yea a very long one. And amongst them there are some kindes which are thrice, yea foure times bigger then the ordinarie; some are all blacke, some bay, some grey, and some sported. Their agilitie and manner of doing is admirable, for that they

freme to have reason and discourse to goe voon Trees, wherein they feeme to imitate Birds. Going from Nombre de Dies to Panama . I did fee in Capira , one of thefe Monkeys leane from one Tree to an other, which was on the other fide of a River, making me much to wonder. Luftie leape. They leave where they lift, winding their tailes about a branch to flake it : and when they Swange fight will leane further then they can at once, they vie a pretie dedice, tying themselves by the tailes one of another, and by this meanes make as it were a chaine of many : then doe they lauch themselves forth, and the first holpen by the force of the rest, takes hold where he lift, and fo hangs to a bough, and helpes all the reft, till they be gotten vp. It were long to report the fooleries , tricks , trauerfes , and pleasant sports they make when they are taught, which seeme

not to come from bruit beafts , but from a manlike vnderstanding. I faw one in Caribagene in Monkey lastthe Gouernours house, so taught, as the things he did seemed incredible : they fent him to the ned Tauerne for wine, putting the pot in one hand, and the money in the other; and they could not possibly get the money out of his hand , before he had his por full of wine. If any children met him in the fiseet, and threw any ftones at him, hee would fet his pot downe on the one fide, and caft ftones against the children till hee had affired his way, then would hee returne to carry home his pot. And which is more, although he were a good Bibber of wine (as I haue oftentimes feene him drinke, when his Mafter hath given it him) yet would hee neuer touch it vntill leave was given him. They told me moreover, that if he faw any women painted, he Zealous,

would fall youn them, pull off their attire, and would fecke to bite them. Among ft the most remarkable things at the Indies of Porn; be the Vicugnes, and sheepe of Or vicuents. the Countrie, as they call them, which are tractable beatls and of great profit; the Vicugues and Tarugues of are wilde , and the Sheepe are tame. Some thinke that the Viengenes are those which Ariffotle, Pera Chap 40. are wilde, and the sheepe are tame, some timize that the range is a tense which arrivates, which are wilde Goats, and in trust they have four partitions, which are wilde Goats, and in trust they have four partitions referriblance, for the lightnesses they have in the Woods and Mountaines, but yet they are no faith to the Goates, for the Viengues have no hornes, as those have, whereof Ariffele makes mention; neither are they the Goates of the East Indies, from whom they draw the Bezar stone; for if they be of that kinde, it were a dinerie one, as in the race of Dogs, the Maftife is dinerie from the Grey-hound. The Vicingnes of Perm are not shofe beafts which carry the Bezar stone, in

the Pronince of new Same, which there they call Betaers, for that they are a kinde of Stags 30 and Venison; yet doe I not know in any part of the World there the any of these beafts, but in Porn, and in Chille, which are Countries toyoling brieff another. These Viengues are greater then Goates, and leffe then Calues. Their halle is of the colour of dried Roses, somewhat clearer: they have no hornes like Stags and Goates. They frede youn the highest tops of the Mountaines, which they call Pages. The Snow nor Frost dock not offend them, but contrariwise they seeme to delight in it. They goe in troupes, and runne most lightly; when they meete with any Trauellers or Beafts, they flie away, Teeming very fearefull, and in Sying they drive their yong ones before them. They doe not finde that they multiply much : and therefore the Kings Ingues did defend the hunting of Viengnes; if it were not for their feasts, or by their commandement. Some complaine, that fince the Speriards entred there, they have

40 given too much libereie to hunt the Viewgees, and by this meanes they are much diminished. The manner the Indians vie in their hunting, they affemble many men together, to the num- Indian bunber of a thousand or two thousand, yea more, and insuroning a great circuit of wood, they ting hunt their game vntill they have compafied is in on all parts, and by this meanes they commonly take three or foure hundred, and so chooling what they lift, they let goe the reft, especially the Females for breede. They are accustomed to theere these beasts, and of their steace to make Courrings and Rugges of great value, for that this wooll is like to white filke, which lasts long: and as the colour is naturall and not dyed, so is it perpetuall. The stuffes that are made of this wooll, are very fresh and good in Summer, and they hold them profitable for the inflammation of the reines, and other parts, tempering the excessive heate. This wooll hath

so the like versue when it is made in Quilts, and therefore fome vie it to that end, for the triall they have made thereof. They fay moreover, that this woolf or conerings made thereof, is phylicall for other indifpolitions, as for the gowt : yet doe I not know that they have made any certaine triall thereof. The flesh of thele Victioner is not good, although the Indians eatert, and drie it. For the effects of phylicke, I will lay what I have seene voon the Sierre of Pers, come ming one night into a Tambe or line, being much afflicted with paine in mine eyes, thinking they would fall out (the which doth commonly happen in those parts) for that they palle Experiment through places covered with fnow, which is the cause of this accident. Being troubled with this for the eyes. paine, and out of patience, there came an Indian woman which faid to me, Father , lay this to thine eyes, and thou fhalt bee cored. It was a piece of the field of Victories newly killed and all

60 blondie. I vied this medicine, and prefently the paine ceafed, and foone after went quite awa. Belides thefe Chacos which is the most common manner of hunting at the Fidies , they have ve fed another more private to take them, which is, that comming neere, they doe cast certains lines with plummets of lead, which intangle their legges, fo as they cannot runne, and by this meanes they take the Visugne. The chiefe reason why this beaft is esteemed, is, by reason of

the Bezars from they finde in them, whereof wee will intreate hereafter. There is another kinde of bealts, which they call Taragues, which likewife are wilde, and more numble then the Vicuones. They are greater of body, and more hot. They have fort cares and hanging : they goe not in troupes as the Viengues. I have not feene them but alone, and most commonly in high places. They also draw Bezars stones from these Taragues, which are greater, and have more on peration and vertue.

OF Parm Gua

There is nothing at Pers of greater riches and profit then the Cattell of the Country , which our men call Indian Sheepe, and the Indians in their generall language call them Leme, For all things well confidered, it is a beaft of the greatest profit and least charge of any that I know: from them they draw meate and clothing, as from the theepe of Spaine. Moreover, they have the beater nefit to carry all things they have need of, ving them to beare their burthens : and they have no need either of thooes or faddles, nor yet of oates, but he ferueth his Master for nought, feeding on the graffe he findes in the fields; fo as God hath furnished them of Sheepe and Mares, and all in one beaft. And as it is a poore Nation, so would hee in this point free them from charge, for that there is much pasture ypon the Sierre: and this kinde of Cattell hath no need of any other charge. There are two kindes of these Sheepe or Lamas, the one they call Paces, or sheepe bearing wooll, and the others are bare, and have little wooll, so are they better for burthen; they are bigger then great Sheepe, and leffe then Calues, they have a very long necke, like to a Camel whereof they have good need: for being high of flature, they have need of a long necke, elle should they be deformed. They are of divers colours, some all white, others all blacke, some grey 30

and some spotted, which they call Maromore. The Indians had great superstitions in choosing the beafts for facrifices, of what colour they should bee, according to the diversitie of Seasons and Sacrifices. Their fielh is good, although it be hard, but that of their Lambs is the better. and the most delicate that can be eaten ; yet they eate not many , for that the chiefe fruit and profit they yeeld, is their wooll, to make clothes, and their feruice to carry burdens. The Indians make stuffes of this wooll wherewith they clothe themselves : the one is groffe and common , which they call Hanaca , and the other fine and delicate , which they call Cambs , they make Carpets and Couerings, and other exquiste workes, which last long, and have a very faire luster. like halfe filke: and that which is most rare, is their manner of wearing their workes, being both fides alike, fo as you shall not finde any end in a whole piece. The large 30 King of Pers had many chiefe workmen, to make this worke of Combin and the which, for the most part, were reficient in the Province of Capachica, loyning to the great Lake of Tricaca. They die this wooll into diners fine colours, with fundrie kindes of herbs, whereof they make many forts of workes both course and fine. All the Indians, both men and women, worke in the Siere, and have their Loomes in their houles, having no need to buy any states for their necef-farie vies. Of the fielh of their sheepe they make Cufchargui, or dryed fielh, the which will last

theepe with burthens, and to goe in bands, three hundred, five hundred, yea a thoufand in a companie, with Wine, Mays, Cosa, Chuno, Quick-filuer, and all other kindes of merchandist, and of Silver, which is the best of all. They carry barree of Silver from Petens to Arigna, which 40 is three Core and ten leagues. I have often wondered to fee these troupes of sheepe haden with a thouland or two thouland barres of Silver, and much more, which is about three hundred thoufand ducats, without any other guard or refore then fome Indiane, which sense onely to guide thele fleepe, and to lade and volade them, or at the most, some few Spaniards: and they sleepe all night in the middeft of the fields, without other guard : and yet in fo long 2 way and to weake a guard, they never finde want or loffe of any thing in fo great a treasure of Silver, fo fafe is the way in Pers. The burthen which one of the leftespe doth commonly carry, is of four or fise

very long, whereof they make great account. They are accustomed to drive thouses of these

Sixe Arobes is Arrobes : when their voyage is long they goe not about two, three, or fourt leagues at the most a hundred and on a day. Those that guide those troupes, have their ordinarie lodgings, where they are affired to have water and patture, and there they valade and fet up their Tents, making fire, and dref- sa fing their meates, which is not painfull, although it be a flegmatike and flow manner of travell. When there is but one dayes icurney, one of these sheepe will beare eight Arrobes in weight, or more, and beares this burthen eight or ten leagues in a day, as the poore Souldiers were wont to doe, when they marched through Pers. This kinds of Cattell delights most in a cold aire, and for this cause they line vpon the Sierre, and die in the Laner, by reason of the heate. Sometimes these sheepe are all coursed with Ice and frost, and yet they continue found and wells The bare theepeare pleafant to behold, for they will flay vponthe way, raying vp their necks, and will looke voon any one very willly, and so they remaine a long time, without mooning or any thew of feare, which greeth occasion of laughter, freing them thus to feand. And yet foractimes they doe grow amazed fodeinly, and runne away with their burthens, enen to the 60 higheft Rocks, to as not being able to come vnto them, they are confirmand to kill them with an Harquebuze, left they should lote their barres of Silver, which they sometimes carry. The Paces will grow reaftie under their burthens, lying down, and will endure to be cut in a thouland pieces before they will rife when this humor takes them: wherof the prouerb growes in Perm, to lay that

ie reaftie, to fignifie, he is obitinate; for that when any of these beafts is moodie, it is with exrefle : the remedie they have is, to stay and fit downe by the Pace, making much on him, vntill the fit be past, and that he rife : and sometimes they are forced to stay two or three houres. They hate a difeafe like to fcabs, which they call Carache, whereof they commonly die. The Ancients had a remedie, to burie them quicke that had the Carache, left they should infect the reft. being a very contagious difeafe, and goes from one to another. An Indian that hath one or two of these sheepe, is not reputed poore, for one of them is worth fixe or seuen pieces of allay. and more, according to the time and places.

The Bezauer flone is found in all these beasts before mentioned, which are proper to Pers, Of the Bezaur 10 whereof fome Authors of our time have written whole bookes, which they may reade that de- flone, chanas

fre to haue a more particular knowledge. For the present subject it shall be sufficient to say, that this stone which they call Bezaar, is found in the stomacke and belly of this beast, sometimes one alone, sometimes two, three, and foure. They are very different in forme, greatnesse and colour, for that some are small like Filberds, and lesse; others like Walnuts; some like Pidgeons egges, and others as bigge as a Hens egge : and I have feene some as bigge as an Orange : in forme fome are round, others in fashion like to Lentils, and many other formes. For their colour, fome are blacke, some white, some grey, darke greene, and others, as if they had beene silded. It is no certaine rule to judge the best and most fine by the colour or forme. All these stones are made and fashioned of divers films and skins one vpon another. In the Province of Xaura and 20 other Prouinces of Pers, they finde these stones in divers kindes of beafts, both wilde and tame, other routiness, Paces, Vicugues, and Tarugues, some adde an other kinde, which they say are sain the Guances, Paces, Vicugues, and Tarugues, some adde an other kinde, which the Industrial Known wild Goates, which the Industrial Known in Pers, whereof we have alreadie discoursed. The Guanaces or Countrie sheepe, or Paces, have commonly the leffer flones, and blacke, neither are they fo much approved for the vie of phyficke. They draw the greatest Bezaur stones from the Viengnes, and they are grey, or white, or of a darke greene, which are held for the better. They esteeme those of the Tarngues for the most excellent, whereof there are some reasonable bigge : they are commonly white, inclining

to grey; and they have the filmes commonly bigger and thicker then the reft. They finde the Bezaar stone equally both in Male and Female. All beafts that ingender it, 30 chaw the cuid, and commonly feede voon the Snow and Rocks. The Indians report and teach by tradition from their Fathers and Ancients, that in the Prouince of Xaire, and in other Prounces of Pers, there are many herbs and venemous beafts, which poison the water and the paflures where they eate and drinke, and where they breathe : amiddeft which venemous herbs there is one very well knowne of the Vicagne, by a naturall inftinet, and of other beafts that in-gender the Beam stone, which eate this herbe, and by meanes thereof they presente themselues from the portoned waters and pastures : and they tay, that of this herbe the stone is compounded in the stomacke, whence it drawes all the vertue against poison, and other wonderfull effects. This is the opinion and tradition of the Indians, discourred by men of great experience in the Kingdome of Pern, which agrees with reason, and with that which Plinte reports of the Plin L 10. 1.75

40 Mountaines Goats, which are nourished and fed upon poison without suffering any harme. The Indians being demanded, why the Sheepe, Kine, Goats, and Calues, fuch as are in Caffile, haue not the Bezas ftone, feeing that they feede on the fame Rocks: their answere is, That they believe not, that those beatts of Caffile eate of that herbe, or that they have found the Bezaar stone in Stags and fallow Deere. This seemes to agree with our knowledge, for that in new Spaine they finde the Bezaar stone, although there be no Vicuones, Pacos, Tarnenes, nor Gueraces, but onely Stags, in some of which they finde these stones.

One thing is worthy admiration, that they grow and are fashioned vpon very strange things, as voon the tagge of a Point, voon a Pin, or a piece of Wood, which they finde in the centre of this stone, and yet doe they not hold it falle, for that the beast might swallow 40 it, and the flone thicken vpon it, and growes one vpon another, and fo it increaseth. I did fee in Peru, two stones fashioned vpon Pignons of Castile, which made vs to wonder much, for that in all Pern, wee had not feene any Pines or Pignens of Caftile, if they were not brought from Spaine, which feemes to mee very extraordinarie. This little may fuffice touching the Bezaars frome. They bring other physicall fromes from the Indies, as the frome of Hyiada, or of Rate, the bloud ftone, the stones of Milke, and of the Sea. Those which they call Corneria nas, for the Heart, whereof there is no neede to speake, having nothing common with the fubiect of beafts, whereof wee have intreated : which gives vs to vnderstand how the great Master and Author of all, hath imparted his benefits and wonderfull secrets, to all parts of the World; for the which he is to be glorified for euer.

R Eader, I have here added this worke, for the better and wore particular knowledge of the Naturalli Historic of the West Indies. Thu Authors Gonzalo Ferdinando de Ouicdo did first write a Summarie to Charles the fifth (out of which the most part of this is taken) An. 1525, and after that

writ his Generall Historie, enlarging what be bad written before this Summarie; and in the dividing is writ bit Questian including entaging some se come written wifer come commons; a men to a manage it in which we pertit be frield which containing principally the Dynnikh akit and N a terrila deformation; in the lland, in truevate Beeker, wee house in Ramulion thead Tames of Vongege: the feemed for which he writes of the Contente of New Ognane, and the brind of Pettu and the Southerne America, with about four bundred pittures of the Plants, Beafit, and other Creatures of those parts, were means published; joint amount in the state of the state of the fe parts. As for the Spanish alls we have them sufficient, by written by others. But Acolta and Outcoo have best defenced of the student of Nature, that is, of the knowledge of God in his workes. In which respect I have added many things omitted by Master Eden, and Master Willes in the former publication, both examining this, and translating the rest from

CHAP. III.

Extracts of Gonzalo Ferdinando De Oviedo his Summarie and Generall Historie of the Indies.

Of the mynes of gold, and the manner of working in them.



His particular of the mynes of Gold, is a thing greatly to be noted, and I may much better fpeake hereof then any other man , forasmuch as there are now twelue 20 yeeres pait fince I ferued in the place of the Surueyor of the melting shops, pertayning to the gold mynes of the firme Land, and was the Gouernor of the mynes of the Catholike King Dov Ferdinando, after whole departure from this life, I ferued long in the same roome in the Name of your Maiestie. The myne or veine

Manner of Searching for

Gold in

which ought to be followed, ought to be in a place which may fland to faue much of the charges of the Labourers, and for the administration of other necessarie things, that the charges may bee recompenced with gaynes. The greatest part of the wrought gold which the Indians haue, is base, and holdeth somewhat of Copper: of this they make Bracelets and Chaines, and in the fame they close their Iewels which their Women are accustomed to weare, and esteemed more then all the riches of the World. The manner how gold is gathered, is this, either of fuch as is to found in Zauana, that is to fay; in the Plaines and Rivers of the Champaine country being without Trees, whether the Earth be with graffe or without, or of fuch as is sometimes found on the Land without the Rivers in places where Trees grow, fo that to come by the same, it shall be requilite to cut downe many and great Trees. But after which focuer of thele two manners it be found, either in the Rivers or Breaches of waters, or elfe in the earth, I will shew how it is found in both these places, and how it is separate and purged. Therefore when the myne or veine is discourred, this chanceth by searching and prouing in such places as by certaine signes and to-kens doe appeare to skilfull men apt for the generation of gold, and to hold gold: and when they haue found it, they follow the myne, and labour it, whether it be in the River, or in the Playne as I have faid. And if it be found on the Playne, first they make the place very cleane where they 40 intend to digge, then they digge eight or ten foot in length, and as much in breadth : but they goe no deeper then a fpan or two, or more, as shall seeme best to the Master of the myne, digging equally, then they wash all the earth which they have taken out of the said space, and if herein they finde any gold they follow it, and if not, they digge a fpan deeper, and wash the earth as they did before : and if then also they finde nothing, they continue in digging and washing the earth as before, untill they come to the hard rocke or flone; and if in fine they finde no gold there, they follow no further to feeke gold in that place, but goe to another part. And it is to be understood, that when they have found the myne, they follow it in digging, in the same meafure in levell and depth, vntill they have made an end of all the myne which that place contayneth, if it appeare to be rich. This myne ought to confift of certaine feet or pales in length or to breadth, according to certaine orders determined, and within that compaffe of earth, it is not lawfull for any other to digge for gold: And where as endeth the myne of him that first found the gold, immediatly it is lawfull for any other man that will, with a flaffe to affigne himfelfe a place by the fide of the same, inclosing it with stakes or pales as his owne. These mynes of Zanone (that is, fuch as are found in the Playnes) ought ever to bee fought neere to fome River of Brooke, or Spring of water, or Dike, or standing Poole, to the end that the gold may be washed, for the which purpose they vie the labour of certaine Indians, as they doe other in digging of the myne. And when they have digged out the myne, they fill certaine Trayes with that earth, which other Indians have the charge immediatly to receive at their hands, and to carry those Trayes of earth to the water, where it may be washed : Yet doe not they that bring it wash it, 60 but deliver it to other, putting it out of their owne Trayes into theirs, which they have readie in their hands to receive it. These Walhers for the most part are the Indian women, because this Women gold worke is of leffe paine and trauell then any other. These women when they wash, are accustomed to fit by the water fide, with their legges in the water even up to the knees, or leffe, as the

CHAP.3. Manner of gathering Goldin Mines, Riners, graines Graine great.

place ferueth their purpole : and thus holding the Trayes with earth in their hands by the handes thereof, and putting the same into the water, they mooue them round about after the manner of fifting, with a certaine aptnelle, in fuch fort that there entreth no more water into the Traves then ferueth their turne, and with the felfe fame apt motting of their Traves in the water, they ever avoid the foule water with the earth out of the one fide of the Veffell, and receiue in cleane water on the other lide thereof, fo that by this means by little and little, the water washerh the earth as the lighter frostance of the Trayes, and the Gold as the heavier matter refleth in the bottome of the same, being round and hollow in the middlest like vnto a Barbars Bafen. And when all the earth is avoided, and the Gold gathered together in the bottome of the to Tray, they putita part, and refuthe to take more earth, which they wash continually as before.

Furthermore it is to be noted, that for every two Indians that walh, it is require that two o- Other Labour ther ferue them to bring earth from the Mine, and other two to breake the fame 'Imall', and fill rers, their Trayes therewith. Also beside these Labourers, it is necessare that there be other people in the place where they worke and reft in the nighte: these are such as make their bread, and pronide for victuals, and other necessaries. So that to conclude, there are in all, fine persons ordinarily affigued to every Tray of washers.

There is another manner of working the Mines, in Rivers or Brookes of running waters : and this is, that in auoyding the water of his courfe, after that the beds of the Rivers are dry and vtterly'emptied, they find Gold among the breaches, clifts, and rifts of stones, and among all that 20 is in the bottome of the Channell, and where naturally the River runneth of greatell force 150 Gold in Rivers that it chanceth fometime, that when the bed of the River is good and rich, they find in it great or poulder.

quantitie of Gold. And therefore your Maiestie ought to voderstand for a generall rule, as it a peareth in fact, that all Gold is ingendred in the tops and highest places of the Mountailles; and Goldengen incontinuance of time is by little and little brought downe to the Vales and Plaines by thowres dred on hill of raine, and the fals of Springs, Rivers, and Brookes, having their originall in the Mountaines, tops. and descending from the same, notwithstanding it is oftentimes found in the Plaines farre from the Mountains. But when it chanceth to be found in great quantity, it is for the most part among the Mountaines, and in the Ruers, or their branches, more then in any other part of the Plaine: and in these two manners it is commonly found most abundantly. And for the better proofe

30 that Gold is ingendred on high; and is brought downe into the low places, I have one great token thereof, which causeth me to beleeue it for certaine : and this is, to connder that coles never putrific nor corrupt winder the ground, if they be made of fitrong wood. Whereby it chanceth, that digging the earth by the foulds or indented places of the Mountaines, or on the fides, and His resion, breaking a Mine in the earth, where it had beene broken before, and having now digged one or two or three Poles in measure, the Miners found certaine coles of wood vnder the same levell where they found Gold, and this I fay in the earth which was taken for a Virgin , that is to fay, fuch as had not before beene opened for any Mine : the which coles could not naturally bee ingendred there, or enter in by any meanes, but when the superficiall part of the earth was equall with the levell where the coles were found, it is like that the coles were left there by fome occa-

40 fion of fire, and that they fastened there in time, and that afterward in long continuance of time they were by little and little coursed with the earth, which the often flowles of raine washed from the Mountaines, fo that by the course of yeeres the earth overgrew the coles voto the faid levell and measure, which had before time beene the superficiall part of the earth, where the Some may coles and Gold were found together: whereby it may appeare that the Gold was no more ingendred there then were the coles, but brought thither from the Mountaynes by the falls of waccoles, theis at ters as we have faid, forafmuch as the Mountaines are the Matrices and Bowels of all rich Metals, other laddyrd ters as we have faid, foralmuch as the Mountaines are the Matrices and bowers of all non netural.

Further and befide this, I fay that in how much more the Gold is gone faire from the naturall rally grow place of his generation to the place where it is found, it is fo much the more purified and fined, there. and of a better caract, and the neerer that it is found to his proper Mine or veine where it is ingendred, it is fo much the bafer, fouler, and more crude, and of a bafer alay and caract, and doth

walte fo much the more in melting, and remayneth more Brickle. Sometimes there are found graines of Gold of great quantitie, and of great weight about Gold in the earth, and conctimes also under the earth. And the greatest of all other that was found to generate this day in the Indies, was that which was fold in the Sea about the Indies, was that which was fold in the Sea about the Indies, was that which was fold in the Sea about the Indies, was that which was fold in the Sea about the Indies, was that which was folded. three thousand and two hundred of Caffellans of God, which are in value foure thousand a hundred thirtie and eight Ducats of Gold, which weigh one Arross and Euen pound, of thirtie and two pound; after twelve ounces to the pound, which make threefcore and four Markes of A' Marke is a Gold. And I faw in the yeerer 315. in the hands of Michel Paffamonte Treaturer to your Mass pound of 8.

ieffie, two graines, of the witich one weighed feuen pounds, which are fourteene Markes, and ounces flumma, ieffie, two graines, of the winch one weighed reuen pounds, which are routed and of ten Marks, 16. pound 60 are in value about three fooreand flue Durats of Gold every Marks; the other was of ten Marks, 16. pound which are fine pounds of like value, and of very good Gold of two and twentie caracts, and bet onness, and ter : There are also found many other great graines, although not equall whto thele in bignefic. 12. ouncests And for a function of Gold, I have thought good to declare for what how the In- the pound of diam can very excellently gild fach Vellets of Copper and bale Gold as they make I for they can Indian States.

give them fo faire and flourishing a colour, that all the maffe which they gilt, appeareth as though it were Gold of two and twentie caracts, and better. This colour they give with a certaine hearbe, as though it were wrought by the art of any Gold-fmith of Spaine or Italie, and would of them be efteemed as a thing of great riches and a fecret manner of gilding. For the define that our men haue to Gold, they nothing efteeme the Copper, although there might great commoditie and profit be had thereby, and also by other Metals, which they nothing regard, except Silver, which is found abundantly in that part of the firme Land which is called New Spaine.

Of the manner of fishing for Pearles.

The Indians exercise this kind of filhing for the most part in the Coasts of the North in Ca. 10 bagus and Cumans, and many of them which dwell in the Houles of certaine particular Lords in the Ilands of San Dominico and Saniti Isbannis, refort to, the Iland of Cubagua, for this purpose. Their custome is to goe fine, fixe, or seuen, or more in one of their Canoas or Barkes. earely in the morning to some place in the Sea thereabout, where it appeareth vnto them that there should be great plentie of those shell fishes (which some call Muscles, and some Oysters) wherein Pearles are ingendred, and there they plunge themselves vnder the water, even vnto the bottome, fauing one that remayneth in the Canoa or Boat , which hee keepeth still in one place as necre as he can, looking for sheir returne out of the water : And when one of them hath beene a good while vader the water, he rifeth vp, and commeth swimming to the Boat, entring into the same, and leaving there all the Oysters which he hath taken and brought with him (for an in these are the Pearles found) and when he hath there rested himselfe a while , and eaten part of the Oysters, he returneth against to the water, where hee remayneth as long as hee carrendure, and then rifeth againe, and swimmeth to the Boat with his prey, where hee refleth him as before, and thus continueth course by course, as doe all the other in like manner being all moff expert Swimmers and Diuers : and when the night draweth neere , they returne to the Iland to their houses, and prefent all the Oysters to the Master or Steward of the house of their Lord, who hath the charge of the faid Indians, and when he hath given them fomewhat to este. he laveth vp the Oysters in safe custodie, vntill he haue a great quantitie thereof, then he causeth the layern vp the Oyters in and they find in energy of them Pearles, other great or small, two, or three, or foure, and fometimes fine or fixe, and many small graines, according to theliberalitie of nature. They faue the Pearles both small and great which they have found, and either eate the Oysters if they will, or cast them away, having so great a quantitie thereof, that they in manner abhorre them. These Oytters are of hard fiesh, and not so pleasant in eating as are ours of Spaine. This Hand of [ubagua, where this manner of fishing is exercised, is in the North Coast, and is no bigger then the Hand of Zeland. Oftensimes the Sea increaseth greatly, and much more then the Fishers for Pearles would , because whereas the place is very deepe, a man cannot naturally reft at the bottom, by geafon of the abundance of airie substance which is in him. as I have oftentimes proped. For although he may by violence and force descend to the bottome, yet are his feet lifted wp. 22 aine, for that hee can continue no time there : and therefore where the 40 Sea is very deepe, the fe Indian Fishers whe to tye two great stones about them with a coard, on each fide one, by the weight whereof they descend to the bottome, and remayne there vntill them lifteth to rife againe, at which time they value the Hones, and rife variat their pleafure. But this their aptnesse and agalicie in swimming, is not the thing that causett men most to mar-Men continue uell : but rather to copfider how many of them can fland in the bottome of the water for the space of one whole hours, and some more or leffe, according as one is more app hereunto then an customed to fish for Pearles, being but little and narrow, will not in short time be veterly with-

other. An other thing there is which teemeth to me very firanger and this is + that whereast have oftentimes demanded of some of these Lords of the Indians, if the place where they are acout Oyfters, if they confume them to fast: They all answered mee, that although they be confumed in one part, yet if they goe a fishing in an other part, or an other Coast of the Iland, or at shi 50 other contrary wind, and continue fifthing therealfo votill the Oysters bee like wife confumed; and then returne againe to the first place, or any other place where they fished before, and emptied the same in like manner, they find them agains as full of Oyflers as though they had never beene filhed. Whereby we may judge, that thele Oysters either remove from one place to an ob ther, as doe other filhes, or elle that they are ingendred and increase in certaine ordinarie places. This Iland of Comming and Cabagua, where they fifth for these Pearles, is in the twelfth degreeof the part of the said Coast which inclineth toward the North. Likewise Pearles are found and gathered in the South Sea, called Mare del Sur, and the Pearles of this Sea are very bigge, vet not fo bigge as they of the lland of Pearles, called de las Perlas, or Margarita, which the Indiani call Terarequi, lying in the Gulfe of Saint Michael , where greater Pearles are found , and of 60 greater price, then in any other Coast of the North Sea, in Cumana, or any other part. I speake this as a true tellimonie of fight, having beene long in that South Sea, and making curious inquifition to be certainly informed of all that percaynesh to the filhing of Pearles. From this Iland of Hinge Pearle. Terarequi, there was brought a Pearle of the falbion of a Peare i weighing thirtie and one

Caracts, which Petras Arias had among a thouland and fo many pounds weight of other Pearles, By the compuwhich he had when Captaine Galpar Morales (before Petrus Arias) piffed to the taid Iland in ration of Ver the yeare 1515, which Pearle was of great price. From the faid Iland also, came a great and ve-nice, foure ry round Pearle, which I brought out of the Sea, this was as bigge as a small peller of a Stone- graines make how, and of the weight of twentie and fixe Caracts : I bought it in the Citie of Panama, in the a Caract, Sea of Ser, and paid for it fixehundred and fiftie times the weight thereof of good Gold . and and it three yeeres in my custodie, and after my returne into Spaine, fold it to the Earle of Nanfer Marquefle of Zoneta great Chamberlaine to your Maieftie, who gaue it to the Marquefle his Wife, the Ladie Memia of Mendoza. I thinke verily that this Pearle was the greatest, fairest. to and roundeft that hath beene feene in those parts. For your Maiethe ought to vnderftand, that in the Coast of the Sea of Sir, there are found a hundred great Pearles round after the fashion of Peare-pearles a Peare, to one that is perfectly round and great.

Of the familiaritie which certagne of the Indians have with the Deuill. and how they receive answere of him of things to come, and other Superstitions.

WHen the Indians beginne their battaile, or goe to any combate, or attempt any other great mater, they have certaine elect men, whom they reverently efteeme, and call them Teaming, which in their tongue is as much to fay as Mafters : notwithflanding that they call every man, that is cunning in any Science, by the fame name, as Fishers, Fowlers, Hunters. or makers of Nets. Their Tequinas therefore, they call the Mafters of their Answeres , because they speake with Tuyra, that is, the Denil, and bring them answere what he faith, either as touching fuch things as they have to doe, or shall chance to them the day following, or many dayes sture. to come. For the Deuill, being fo ancient an Aftronomer, knoweth the times of things, and feeth how they are naturally directed and inclined, and maketh them believe that they come fo to nalle by his ordinance, as though he were the Lord and mooner of all that is and shall be and that he giveth the day light, and raine, cauleth ten pelt, and ruleth the stations of times, giving life, ao or taking away life, at his pleafure: By reason whereof, the Indians being deceived of him. and feeing also such effects to come certainly to pase as he hath told them before, believe him in all teeing amount nices to Ouic returnly o pages with Sarrifaces of the Bood and liuse of men, and color firms, and hoosen him in many places with Sarrifaces of the Bood and liuse of men, and colorficrous Spaces; And when God disposite the constant, by which the Devall liasth fooken in Oracle, whether he is proposed a Lyer, because the perfected the proposed to perfect the transfer of the proposed to perfect the transfer of the proposed to perfect the perfect the proposed to perfect the perfect the perfect the proposed to perfect the perfect that the perfect the perfect that the perfect that the perfect the perfect the perfect that the perfect that the perfect the perfect that the perf he hath changed his mind and fentence for some of their sing, or denileth some such lye as liketh him best, being a skilfull Master in fuch subtill and craftin degices, to deceine the simple and ignorant people, which hath small defence against to mightig, and craftis an Aduersarie. And as they call the Deutli Tura, fo doe they in many places call the Christians by the fame name, thinking that they greatly honour them thereby, as indeed it is a name very fit and a greatle to many of them, having laid apart all honefte and vertue, luning more like Dragons then men,

among their fimple people.

Before the Inhabitants of the Iland of Hiftaniols had received the Christian Faith, there was among them a Sect of non, which lived folicarily in the Defarts and Woods, and led their life in Silence and Abstinencemore streightly then ever did the Philosophers of Pythagoras S. Ct, Pythagoras abstaining in like manner to on the eating of all things that line by bloud, contented onely with Piaces, such Fruites, Herbes, and Kness, as the Deserts and Woods ministred vnto them to eate: The inch Frunces, accessed, and the Deterts and Woods ministred visit of them to cate? The Profession of this Seck were can Praces. They gave themselves to the knowledge of natural things, and visid certains force Agicall Operations and Superfitions, whereby they had familiatine with Spirits, which they dived into their owne bodies, as such times as they would take vpon them to rell of things to ome, which they did in manner as followeth. When any of the Kings had occasion t call any of them sucof the Defarts for this purpose, their custome was to fend them a portion of their fine Bread of Cazabi or Mais, and with humble request and fuite to defire them toell them of fuch things as they would demand. After the request granted, and the place as day appointed, the Piaces commeth with two of his Disciples wayting on him, where the one bringeth with him a Veffell of a fecret Water, and the

other on the other, even the presence of the King and certaine of his Nobles (for the common rings or conpeople are not admitte othere Mysteries) and turning his face toward the Delart, he bee sultations. 60 gameth his Inchantatt, and calleth the Spirit with loude voyce by certaine names. which no man underndeth but hee and his Disciples. After hee hath done thus a while. if the Spirit yet dete his comming, hee drinketh of the faid Water, and therewith waxeth hot and furi, and inverteth and turneth his Inchantment, and letteth himfelfe blond with a thorne, maruvully turmoiling himfelfe, as we read of the furious Sybils, not ceasing

other a little Silver Bell. When hee commeth to the place, hee fitteth downe on a round feate made for him of purposewhere having his Disciples the one standing on the one hand, and the

vatill the fairit be come : who at his comming entreth into him, and ouerthroweth him. as it were a Greyhound should ouerturne a Squerell, then for a space, he seemeth to lye as though he were in great paine, or in a rapte, wonderfully tormenting himfelfe; during which agome, the other Disciple shaketh the Silver Bell continually. Thus when the agonie is past; and he liveth quietly(yet without any fence or feeling) the King, or some other in his stead, demandeth of him what he defired to know : and the spirit answered him by the mouth of the rapte Piaces, with a direct and perfect answere to all points: Infomuch that on a time certaine Spaniards being prefent at these mysteries with one of the Kings, and in the Spanish tongue demanding the Piaces of their Ships which they looked for out Spains, the spirit answered in the Indian tongue, and told them what day and houre the Ships departed from Spaine, how many they were, and what to they brought, without failing in any point. If he be also demanded of the eclipse of the Sunne Prognofficati- or Moone (which they greatly feare and abhorre) be giveth a perfect answer, and the like of tem pelts, famine, plencie, warre or peace, and fuch other things. When all the demands are finished, his Disciples call him aloud, ringing the Silver Bell at his eare, and blowing a certaine powder into his nostrils, whereby he is raised as it were from a dead seep, being yet somewhat heavy headed and faint a good while after. Thus being againe rewarded of the King with more bread, he departeth againe to the defarts with his Disciples. But fince the Christian faith hath beene difperfed throughout the lland, thefe diuellish practifes have ceased, and they of the members of the Diuell, are made the members of Christ by Baptisme, forsaking the Diuell and his

works, with the vaine curiofity of defire of knowledge of things to come, whereof for the most

Rea on why men kill themfelues to ferue

part it is better to be ignorant, then with vexation to know that which cannot be avoided. Furthermore, in manie places of the firme Land, when any of the Kings dye, all his houshold feruants, aswell women as men, which have continually served him, kill themselves, beleeving as they are taught by the Diuell Tayra, that they that kill themselues when the King dyeth, goe with him to heaven, and ferue him in the same place and office as they did before on the earth while he lived : and that all that refuie fo to doe, when after they dye by their naturall death or otherwise, their soules to die with their bodies, and to be diffolged into ayre, and become nothing, as doe the foules of Hogges, Birds, Fishes, or other bruite beafts: and that onely the other may enjoy the priviledge of immortalitie for ever, to serve the King in heaven. And of this falle opinion commeth it, that they which lowe come, or fet rootes for the Kings bread, 20 and gather the same, are accustomed to kill themselves, that they may enion this priviledge in heaven, and for the same purpole, caufe a portion of the graine of Mair, and a bundle of Ince (whereof their bread is made) to be buried with them in their graves, that the fame may ferue them in heaven, if perhaps there should lacke feedes to sowe, and therefore they take this with them, to begin withall, vntill Tayra (who maketh them all thefe faire promifes) prouide them of greater quantitie. This have I my leffe feene in the top of the Mountaines of Guaturo, where having in prilon the King of that Prounce (who rebelled from the obedience of your Maieftie) and demanding of him to whom percained those Sepultures or graves which I saw in his house: he answered, that they were of certaine Indians which flew themselves at the Jeath of his Father. And because they are oftentimes accustomed to bury great quantiles of wrought gold 40 with them, I caused two graves to be opened, wherein was nothing found but a vessell full of the grains of Maire, and a bundle of Incea, as I have faid. And demanding the cause hereof, of the King and the other Indians: they answered, that they that were best detree, were the labourers of the ground, and men skilfull in fowing of feedes, and makis of bread, and fernants to the Kings father, and to the end that their forfes should not dye vith their bodies, they flue themselues at the death of the King their Mafter, to line with firm heaven, and to the intent that they might ferue him there in the fame offee, they referre that Mais and laces, to five it in heaven. Whereunto I answered them in this manner, Band how your Type deceiveth you, and how all that he teacheth you is falle. You fee how a follong a time fince they are dead. they have not yet taken away this Mair and Incom which is now purified and worth nothing, to and not like to be fowen in heaven. To this the King replied, faying In that they have not taken it away, nor fowen it in heaven, the cause is, that they chanced a finde enough there, by reason whereof they had no neede of this. To this error many thingwere said, which seemed of it the force to remove him from his falle opinon, and especially anytch as at that age are oc-cupied of the Diuell, whom they paint of the felfe same former and cohe, as he appeared vino them in divers shapes and formes. They make also Images of Gold, Ciper, and Wood, to the fame fimilitudes, in terrible shapes, and so variable, as the Painters are aufformed to paint them at the feete of Saint Miehael the Archangell, or many other place, whethey paint them of moftzorrible portrature. Likewile when the diuell greatly intendeth theare them, he threatneth to fend them great tempests, which they call Furacanas, or Haurahnas, and are so vehement, that they ouerthrow many houses, and great trees. And I have seen Mountaines, still of 60 many and great trees, that for the space of three quarters of a league the luntaine hath beene

Subverted, and the tree overthrowne, and plucked out of the earth with thootes.

The guite of Praba, is diffant from the Equinostiall line, from an handrand twentie, to 2

kundred and thirty leagues, and three quarters of a league, after that accompt of feuenteen leagues and a halfe for entrie degree from Pole to Pole: & thus for a little more or leffe, goeth all the coaft. By reason where f, in the Citie of Santia Maria, Antique, in Dariene, and in all that course of the forciail gulfe of Vraba, at all times of the yeere thedaies and nights are in manner of equall length; and if there be any difference betweene them by reason of this small distance from the Egymoctiall, it is so little, that in source and twentie houres, making a naturall day, it cannot be perceived but by the indgement of speculative men, and such as vnderstand the sphere. From hence the North Starre is feene verie low.

Of diners particular things, as Wormes, Serpents, Beafts, Foules, Trees, &c.

Will first speake of certaine little and troublesome Beasts, which may seeme to be engendred of nature to moleft and vexe men, to flew them and gine them to vnderstand, how small and vile a thing may offend & disquiet them, to the end that they may remember the principall end for the which they were created, that is, to know their maker. In manie parts of the firme, Land, by the which as wel the Christians as the Indians do trauaile, there are such marishes & waters in Small Wormes the way, that they are faine to go without breeches among the heurbes & weeds, by reason when moublelone, of, certain small beatts or wormes (which they call Goraphies) much like vnto Ticks, cleaue fast to or, certain man orans of the state as the pouder of beaten Salt, & cleane fo faft, that they can by their legs. These worms are as little as the pouder of beaten Salt, & cleane fo faft, that they can by 20 no meanes be taken away, except the place be nointed with oyle: & after that the legs be nointed a while with oyle, or the other parts where these little Tickes are fastened, they strape the place with a Knife, & to take them away. But the Indians which have no oyle, smoake them, and pure them with fire, and abide great paines in taking them away by this means. Of other little Beafts which trouble men, and are engendred in their heads or other parts of their bodies, I fay that the Christian men which trauaile into these parts, have them but seldome times, and that say that the Children men which canada incourse parts, sade them out reacometimes, and that not past one or two, and this also very seldome: For passing by the line of the Diameter where the compasse maketh difference of saling by the winde called Green (that is, North-east) and the compane make in unretine or saming by the winne cancel urses (mar. is, North-earl) and
Magilful (that is, South-well) which is in the course of the llands of Lear, they faile but
a little way following our voiage by the West, but that all the Lice which the Christians carrie

30 with them, or are engendred in their heads, or other places of their bodies, die and vtterly conwith them, or are engangered in the first and are not engendred in India, except in the heads of little children Lice forfake in those parts, as well among the children of the Christians which are borne there, as also among them, the natural Indians, who have them commonly in their heads, and fometimes in other parts of their bodies, and especially they of the Pronince of Cuesa, which is a region containing more then a hundred leagues in length, and embrafeth the one and the other coast of the North Sea, and of the East. When these Indians are inteded with this filthinesse, they dresse and cleanse one another: And they that exercise this, are for the most part women, who eate all that they take, and haue herein such dexterity by reason of their exercise, that our men cannot lightly take, and naue never in the description of thing greatly to be confidered : and this is, how the Lice finde

40 Christian men, being there cleane from this filthinesse of India, as well in their heads as the rest them against of their bodies, yet when they returne to come agains into Emps, and begin to arrive in that place of the OceanSea where we faid before that these Lice died and for fookse them, fodainely in their repassing by the same clime (as though these Lice had tarried for them in that place) they can by no meanes avoide them for the space of certaine daies, although they change their thirts two or three times in a day. Thele Lice are at the first as little as Nits, and grow by little and little, vntill they be of the bigneffe that they are in Spaine. This have I oftentimes proued, hating now foure times passed the Ocean Sea by this voiage. Beside these wormes and vermin wherof we have spoken, there is another little mischieuousworm, which we may number among whereor we have sponsor, the Peftilence the Indians call Nigua, and is much leffe then a Flea: it pear- Nigua,

50 ceth the flesh of a man, and so lancheth or cutteth the same (while in the meane time it can neither be seene nor taken) that from some it hath cut off their hands, and from other their feete, untill the remedy was found to annoint the place with Oyle and scrape it with a Raior, feete, vntill the remeny was the or Beragua, there are many Vipers like onto them of Spaine's Vipers, In the firme Land in golden Castile or Beragua, there are many Vipers like onto them of Spaine's Vipers, they that are bitten of them, dye in short space, for few line to the fourth day, except present remedy. Of thele, some are of lesse kinde then other, and have their taile somewhat round, and leape in the aire to assaule men; and for this cause, some call this kinde of Vipers Tyrotheir biting is most venomoust, and for the most part incurable. One of them chanced to bite an Indian Maide which ferued me in my houfe, to whom I caufed the Surgians to minister their ordinary Answer which revocall doe her no good, nor yet get one drop of blood out of her, but onely a yel to water, for that the due the third day for lacke of remedie, as the like hath chanced to divers to low water, for that the due the third day for lacke of remedie, as the like hath chanced to divers

others. This Maide was of the age of fourereene yeares, and toake the Spanish tongue as if the had beene borne in Caffile: the faid that the Viper which bit her, on the foot, was two spans long, or little leffe : and that to bite her, the leapt in the aire for the spaces more then fix paces, as I have heard the like of other credible persons. I haue

Adders.

I have also seene in the firme Land a kinde of Adders, very small, and of seven or eight foos long: thefe are fo red, that in the night they appeare like burning coles, and in the day feeme as red as blood, these are also venemous, but not so much as the Vipers. There are other much lesse and shorter, and blacker a these come out of the Rivers, and wander sometimes farre on the Land. and are likewise venemous. There are also other Adders of a ruset colour : these are somewhat bigger then the Viper, and are hurtfull and venemous. There are likewise another fort of man ny colours, and very long : of thefel law one in the yeare of Christ 1515 in the lland of History nola. neere vnto the Sea coasts, at the foote of the Monntaines called Pedernales. When this Adder was flain. I meafured her, & found her to be more then twenty foot long, and somewhat more then a mans fift in bigneffe : and although the had three or foure deadly wounds with a Sword, yet dyed fhe not, nor ftunke the fame day, in so much that her blood continued warme all that time. There are also in the Marishes and defarts of the firme Land many other kindes of Lylarte.

Dragons, and divers other kindes of Serpents, whereof I intend not here to fpeak much because I haue more particularly entreated of these things in my generall historie of the West Indies. There are the Spiders of maruellous bignesse, and I have seene some with bodie and legges bigger then a mans hand extended every way, and I once faw one of fuch bigneffe, that onely her body was as bisse as a Sparrow, and tull of that Laune whereof they make their webbes : this was of a darke ruffet colour, with eyes greater then the eyes of a Sparrow, they are venemous, and of

Toades.

terrible shape to behold. There are also Scorpions, and divers other such venomous wormes. Furthermore in the firme Land, there are many Toades, being verie noious and hurtfull by reason 20 of their great multitude, they are not venemous, they are seene in great abundance in Darrens where they are so big that when they die in the time of drought, the bones of some of them (and especially the ribs) are of such greatnesse, that they appeare to be the bones of Cats or of some on Their renging, ther bearts of the same bignesse. But as the waters diminish, &the moissure consumeth in the time

of drought (as I haue faid) they also contume therewith, vntill the yeare next following when the raine and moisture encrease, at which time they are seene againe. Neuerthelesse, at this prefent there is no fuch quantitie of them, as was wont to be, by reason that as the Land is better cultured by the Christians, as well by the felling of Woods and Shrubs, as also by the Pasture of Kine. Horses, and other beasts, so is it apparant that this poison diminisheth daily, whereby that region becommeth more holesome and pleasant. These Toades sing after three or source 20 fort for some of them sing pleasantly, other like ours of Spaine, some also whistle, and other some make another manner of noise: they are likewise of divers colours, as some greene, some suffer or gray, and some almost blacke, but of all forts they are great and filthie, and noious by reason of

their great multitude, yet are they not venemous as I have faid,

Singing.

There are also a strange kinde of Crabbes, which come forth of certaine holes of the earth, ther Tortoifes, that they themfelues make : the head and bodie of these make one round thing, much like to the hood of a Faulcon, having foure feete comming out of the one fide, and as manie out of the other : they have also two mouthes, like vnto a paire of small Pincers, the one bigger then the other, wherewith they bite, but doe no great hurt, because they are not venemous: their skin and bodie is smooth, and thinne, as is the rkinne of a man, fauing that it is somewhat harder; their 40 colour is ruflet, or white, or blew, and walke fidelong, they are verie good to be eaten, in so much that the Christians travailing by the firme Land, have beene greatly nourished by them, because they are found in manner euerie where : in shape and forme they are much like vnto the Crabbe which we paint for the figne Cancer, and like vnto those which are found in Spaine in Andalufia in the River Guadalchiber, where it entreth into the Sea, and in the Sea coasts there about, fauing that these are of the water, and the other of the land : they are sometimes hurtfull, so that they that cate of them dye, but this chanceth onely when they have eaten any venomous thing, or of the venemous apples wherewith the Caniball archers poilon their arrowes, whereof I will ipeake hereafter, and for this cause the Christians take heede how they eate of these Crabbes, if they finde them neere vnto the faid apple trees. Furthermore in thefe Indies, as well 50 in the firme land, as in the Ilands, there is found a kinde of Serpents, which they call Tuanat, which some call Inannas, these are terrible and fearefull to fight, and yet not hurtfull, they are verie delicate to be eaten, and it is not yet knowne whether they be beafts of the land, or files, because they live in the water, and wander in the woods, and on the land : they have foure feet. and are commonly bigger then Connies, and in some places bigger then Otters, with tailes like Lyfarts or Eutes: their skinne is spotted, and of the fame kinde of smoothnesse or barenesse. although of divers colours : vpon the ridge of their backes, they have manie long prickes, their teeth are very sharpe, and especially their fangs or dogge teeth, their throates are 1 ng and large, reaching from their beards to their brefts, of the like skinne to the refidue of their bodies : they

are dumbe, and haue no voice, or make any noile, or crie, although they be kept tied to the foote 60 of a chelt, or any other thing, for the space of twentie or fine and twentie daies, without any thing to eate or drinke, except they give them now and then a little of the bread of Cazabi, or some such other thing : they have foure feete, and their fore-feete as long as a mans hinger, with clawes like the clawes of a bird, but weaker, and tuch as cannot grafple or take hold of any

thing : they are much better to be eaten then to behold, for few that fee them, will have defire thing; they are much occurred to be eaten then burboness, the new man we them, by realon of their horrible (hape, except fuch as have beene accultomed to the bealts of their regions, which are more horrible and fearefull, as this is not, but onely in apparatus pears of their fielh is of much better tafte then the fielh of Connies, and more holesome, for it Nete. harreth none but onely fuch as have had the French poxe, in fo much, that if they have beene touched of that infirmitie, although they have beenewhole of long time, neuertheleffe they feele burr, and complaine of the eating of these Issuesses, as hath beene oftentimes proued by

There are found in the arme land certaine birds, so little, that the whole bodie of one of them Small Birds.

to is no bigger then the top of the biggeft finger of a mans hand, and yet is the bare body without Tameses. the feathers not halfs fo bigge: This Bird, befide her littleneffe, is of fach velofitie and fwiftneffe in flying, that who fo feeth her flying in the aire, cannot fee her flap or beate her wings after any other fore then doe the Dorres, or humble Bees, or Beetels : for that there is no man that feeth her flye, that would thinke her to be any other then a Dore : they make their nefts according to the proportion of their biguesse, and I have feene that one of these Birds with her neft pat in a paire of gold weights altogether, hath waide no more then 2. Tomini, which are in polic 24 graines, with the feathers, without the which the should have waied somewhat lesses And doubtleffe, when I confider the fineneffe of the tlawes and feete of these Birds, I know not whereunto I may better liken them, then to the little birds which the lymners of bookes are 20 accustomed to paint on the margent of Church Bookes, and other Bookes of Dinne Seruice,

Their Feathers are of manie faire colours, as golden, yellow, and greene, befide other variable Inter products any unaquine take colours, any sames, yearow, and greene, ceince other variable colours: their beake is verie long for the proportion of their bodies, and as fine and inbtile as a fowing needle: they are verie hardy, so that when they fee a man clime the tree where they have their nefts, they flye at his face, and firike him in the eyes, comming, going, and returning with fuch fwiftnele, that no man would lightly belease it, that hath not seene it: and certainly thele birds are foliatle, that I durit not have made mention hereof, if it were not that divers others which haus feene them as well as I, can beare witnesse of my saying : they make them oches, which have copie, cannot be venues 1, can ocate venues my myng; they make they notice flocks and cotten, whereof there is great pleated in these regions, and ferrests well for their purpose. But as specifying the Barla, Fosler, and Beafts of these Jahra; because they are 30 innumerable, both little and great, i intend not to i peaks much here, becaste I have floken more

largely hereof in my generall Hiftorie of the Indies. There is another hinde of Brafts feens in the firme Land, which feemeth very firange and manutilous to the Christian men to behold, and much differing from all other Brafts which have beene in other parts of the world : theile Beafin are called Borderigand are foure footest, having sherr taile and all the reft of their bodies to-Details are valued or immediate the coperture of a barbes horse, for the checkered shift of a Lifart of mailler; a Crocodile of colour betweene white and rufer; inchming issuewhet store to white: This Beaft kinde of Moke is of forme and hape much time too barbed derie, with his bisbes and fantees twill points, and from under that which is the barbe and coperture, the taile commeth forth, and the feere in their

place, the necke alfoand the cares in their parts, and in fine all things in like fore as in a barbed 40 courfer : they are of the bignesse of one of these common Dogges, they are not hastfull, they are filthie, and have their habitation in certaine hillockes of the earth, where digging with their feete, they make their dens verie deepe, and the holes theseof, as like manser as doe Connies: they are very excellent to be eaten, and are taken with nets, and foine also killed with Crofs bowes : they are likewise taken of continues when the Husbandmen burne the Rubble in sowing time, or to renew the herbage for Kine and other Bearls. I have oftentimes eaten of their fieth which feemeth to me of better tafte then Kidder fielh, and holefome to be eaten. And if their Beafts had ener beene feene in thefe pares of the world, where the first barbed Horfes had their originall, no man would isage but that the forme and fathion of the copertuse of Horkes formitted

od for the warres, was first deured by the fight of these Beafts. There is also in the firme Land another beaft, called Orfe Promitimes, that is, the Ame bear e. Bearth This beaft in haire and colour, is much like so the Beate of Spation ; and in minner of the lame making, faue that he hath a much longer fromt, and is of entiting to they are oftentimes taken only with itaues, without any other we apon, and are not knowled, they are also taken write Dogges, because they are not naturally armed, although they bite for swhat, they are found for the milt par about and mere to the hillockes where are gener abundanced where. For the the best part and the milt par about and mere to the hillockes where are gener abundanced where. For the the Regions is inguisted a cereains kind of Antos, very kinds and blacks; in the Fields kind Antos Plaines whereas grows no Trees, where by the inflingt of Nature blade Antes feparate them. felues to insender harse from the Woods for feree of thefe Bearsty due which became they are fearefull, vile, and marmed (as I have faid) they harpe ever in places full of Trees; with very

60 famine and necessitie, or the great delite that they have to feedle on these Kartas, Sanfe theil to come cut of the Woods to hunt for them : thefe Antes make a hillsthe of earther the heigh co a man, or somewhat more or leffe, and as bigge as a great Cheft, and sometimes as bigge and But or a Hoghead, and as hand as a flone, so that they seeme as though shey week shoes; ite-yfte mint the reals and confuses of certaine Lands. Within these hillockes, made at most hard earth;

are innumerable and infinite little Ants, the which may be gathered by bushels when the hillow is broken : the which when it is fometimes moy fled by raine, and then dried againe by the here of the Sunne, it breaketh, and hath certaine small rifts, as little and subtill as the edge of a Knife, and it feemeth that Nature hath given fenfe to these Antes to find such a matter of earth, wherelessementions with they may make the faid hillocke of fuch hardnesse, that it may feeme a firong pattement logismentions when the lime and ftone; and whereas I have prooted and caused some of them to be broken, I haue found them of fuch hardnesse, as if I had not seene, I could not have beleeved, informach

that they could featily be broken with Pikes of Iron, so strong Fortresses doe these hittle beats make for their fafegard against their aduersarie the Beare, who is chiefly nourished by them, and make for them satisface according to the common Properbe which faith, None alimin perform 19 guen them as an enemie, according to the common Properbe which faith, None alimin perform 19 filibera, a chimanchi il fue Bargelle, that is, There is no man fo free, that hath not his Perfection Grentwonders or prime Enemie. And here when I confider the manuellous providence which Nature hath gi in leaft creamon to printe Business of Plinie, where speaking of uen to their little bodies, I call to remembrance the writte Sentence of Plinie, where speaking of the hit led beaths, he saith thus, Why do we merved in the Town-bearing shoulders of Elephans, and not rather where Nature hash placed so many souls and such suddyry in such the bades! Where in the Horing, Smelling, Seeing, and keeting, you, where are the Veines and Arteries (without whole beats can sure or move) to these so the subject some are so small that their whole behing can said so so the sure some so the subject is such so that so so the said can sure the said can sure so the said can sure so the said to said the said the said the said to said the said to said the sa But to returne to the Historie. This Enemy which nature hath given to these little Beasts.

wheth this manner to affaile them : When he reforteth to the Hillocke where the Antes lychid as in their fortreffe, he putteth his tongue to one of the rifts whereof we have spoken, beeing as fubrill as the edge of a Sword, and therewith continual licking, maketh the place most, the foame and frosh of his mouth being of such propertie, that by continual licking the place, it inlargeth the rift in such fost by little and little, that at the length he easily putteth in his tongue, which he hath very long and thinne, and much difproportionate to his bodie, and when he hat the shure of the bodie, and when he hat the shure made free passage for his tongne in the hillocke, to put it cassly in and out at ship leasure. then he thrusteth it into the hole as farre as he can reach, and so letteth it rest a good space, vntill agreat quantitie of the Antes (whose nature reioyceth in heat and moysture) have laden his 30 tongue, and as many as he can containe in the hollownesse thereof, at which time hee suddenly draweth it into his mouth , and eateth them, and returneth againe to the fame practice in mediarly, vntill hee haue cateo as many as him litteth, or as long as hee can reach any with his tongue. The flesh of this Beast, is fifthy and valanourie, but by reason of the extreame shifts and necessitie that the Christian men were put to at their first comming into these parts, they were inforced to prooue all things, and fo fell to the eating of these Beasts : but when they had found more delicate meates, they fell into hatred with this. These Antes have the appearance of the place of their entrance into the hillocke; wnder the ground, and this at folittle a hole, that it could hardly bee found, if certaine of them were not feene to passe in and out : but by this way the Beares could have no fach power to hurt them as about at the faid rifts; as I

There is anoother strange beast, which by a name of contrary effect, the Spaniards call Cagmole leggiere, that is, The Light Dogge, whereas it is one of the floweft beaits in the World, akind of Ca. and to heating and dull in mooning, that it can fearly goe fiftie pales in a whole day : their bealts are in the firms Land, and are very strange to behold for the disproportion that they have to all other beafts: they are about two fpans in length when they are growne to their full bigneffe, but when they are very young, they are lome what more groffe then long; they have foure fubill feet, and in energy of them foure clawes like vnto Birds, and loyned together, yet are neither their clawes or their feet able to fufteine their bodies from the ground, by reason whereof, and by the heatinesse of their bodies, they draw their bellies on the ground their neckes are high and 50 fireight, and all equall like the petile of a Morter, which is altogether equal even vnto the top, without making any proportion or fimilitude of a head, or any difference except in the noddle. and in the tops of their neckes takey have very round faces much like vnto Owles, and have a marke of their owne haire after the manner of a Circle, which maketh their faces feeme fomewhat more long then large they have small eyes and round, & nostrils like wato Monkeyes they have little mouther, and moone their neckes from one fide to another, as though they were aftomilhed : their chiefe defire and delight is to cleave and sticke fast vnto Trees, or some other thing whereby they may climbs alofs, and therefore for the most part, these beasts are found voon Trees, whereupaccleaung saft, shey mount up by little and little, flaying themselves by their long clayers; the colour of their saire is betweene ruffet and white, and of the proper colour of 60 Le hairpof h Wofell : they hatteno tayles, and their voice is much differing from other beafts, fra her lang oned a in the night, and that continually from time to time, finging ever fixe notes one higher then other for higher than the other fixe notes one higher than the other fixe notes is the highert, and the other an abaler tune, wif a man thould lay, La, fol, fa, mi,re, at, to this beat faith, Ha,baba,ba,ba,ba,ba

And doubtlesse, it feemeth to me, that as I have faid in the Chapter of the beast called Bardati. that those bealts might be the original and document to imbarbe Horses: even so, the first inmention of Musicke might seeme by the hearing of this beast, to have the first principles of that Science, rather then by any other thing in the World. But now to returne to the Hiltorie. If av charin a fhort space after this Beath hath sing, and hath pauled a while, shee returneth agains to the felfe-fame Song, and doth this onely in the night, and not in the day: By reason whereof. and also because of her euill sight, I thinke her to be a night Beast, and the friend of darknesse. Sometimes the Christian men find these Beasts, and bring them home to their houses, where alfo they creepe all about with their naturall flownesse, mismuch that neither for threatning or to pricking they will moone any fafter then their naturall and accustomed pace. And if they finde any Trees, they creepe thither immediately, and mount to the top of the highest branch thereof. where they remayne continually for the space of eight, or ten, or twentie dayes, without eating of any thing, as farre as any man can judge. And whereas I my felfe have kept them in my houte, I could never perceive other but that they live onely of Aire; and of the same opinion, are noute, a could never personal receive the plane never feene them eate any thing, but ever in manner all men of those Regions, because they have never feene them eate any thing, but ever turne their heads and mouthes roward that part where the wind bloweth most, whereby may he confidered that they take most pleasure in the Ayre. They bite not, nor yet can bite, having very little mouthes; they are not venemous or noyous any way, but alrogether brutish, and veterly unprofitable, and without commoditie yet knowne to men, fauing onely to mooue their 20 minds to contemplate the infinite power of God, who delighteth in the varietie of creatures, whereby appeareth the power of his incomprehensible wisdome and maiestie, so farre to exceed

the capacitie of mans understanding.

ne capacitie of mans voucertaining.

In these Regions there are likewise found certaine Fowles or Birds, which the Indians call Foules and In these regions there are much bigger then Geese, the greatest part of their feathers are of russet co-Birds. Alcarrat. Pure are much 1956. Birds. lour, and in fome parts yellow, their bils or beakes are of two fpannes in length, and very large Alcarrat. neere to the head, and growing small toward the point, they have great and large throates, and are much like to a Fowle which I faw in Flanders, in Bruffels in your Maiesties Palace, which the Flemmings call Haina: And I remember that when your Maieftie dined one day in your great Hall, there was brought to your Maiesties presence a Caldron of water with certaine fishes a-30 line, which the faid fowle did eat vp whole, and I think verily that that fowle was a fowle of the Sca. because she had feet like fowles of the water, as haue also these Alcatrazi, which are likewise fowles of the Sea, and of such greatnesse, that I have seen a whole coate of a man put into the throats of one of them in Panama, in the yeere 1521. And foraf much as in that Coast of Pama, there paffeth and flyeth a great multitude of thele Alestrand, being a thing very notable, I Panema. will declare the manner hereof, as not onely I, but also divers other now present in your Maie-Ries Court have oftentimes feene. Your Maiestie shall therefore understand, that in this place (as Ihaue faid before) the Sea of Sur rifeth and falleth two leagues and more from fixe houres to fixe houre so that when it increafeth, the water of the Sea arriveth fo neere to the houses of Parama, as doth our Sca (called Mare Mediterraneum) in Barzalona, or in Naples: and when

40 the faid increasing of the Sea commeth, there commethalfo therewith such a multitude of small fiftes called Sardones, that it is fo maruellous a thing to behold, that no man would beleeve it that Pilchards hath not seene it. Insomuch that the Cacique (that is) the King of that Land, at such time as I dwelt there, was bound daily, as he was commanded by your Maiesties Gouernour, to bring ordinarily three Canoas or Barkes full of the faid Sardines, and to valade the fame in the Market place, which were afterward by the Ruler of the Citie divided among the Christian men, withplace, which were accessed by the Albert of the three under annual the Albert out any coff or charge to any of them: I flowings that if the people had been a much greater multitude then they were, and as many as are at this prefent in Taledo, or more, and had none o. ther thing to line by, they might have beene sufficiently susteined by these Sardines, beside the ouerplus which should have remayned. But to returne to the fowles, whereof wee have spo-50 ken. As the Sea commeth , and the Sardines with the fame, euen foslikewise come the said Alcatrazzi therewith, and flye continually ouer it in fuch a multitule, that they appeare to

couer the vpper part or floore of the water, and thus continue in mounting and falling from the ayre to the water, and from the water to the ayre, during all the time of their fishing wand af-Some as they have taken any of these Sardines, they flye about the waters, and eate them incontinently, and fuldenly returne againe to the water for more, continuing thus course by course without ceasing : in like manner when the Sea falleth , they follow their fishing as I haue faid. There goeth allo in the company of these fowles another kind of fowles, called Cada inforcata, (that is) the forked tayle, whereof I have made mention before, and alloone as the Aleatrate moun-60 teth from the water with her prey of the Sardines, folderly this Code inforcats giveth her fo many strokes, and so periecuteth her, that shee causeth her to let fall the Sardones which shee hath in her mouth : the which affoone as they are fallen, and before they yet touch the water, the Coda inforcata catcheth them even in the fall, in fuch fort, that it is a great pleasure to behold the combat betweene them all the day long. The number of these Alcatrazza is such, that the Christian men are accustomed to send to certaine Hands and Rockes which are neere about Pa-

CH AP.3, Pintadellis preuention against Monkeyes, Song-birds. Coco-wonders, 981 There are other Birds called Pintadelli, which are like vnto certaine greene Birds, which the Pintadelli.

Itelians call Fringuelli, and are of feuen colours: thefe Birds for feare of the Monkeyes, are ever

wont to make their Nests ouer the bankes of Rivers, or the Sea, where the branches of Trees so

nama, with their Boates or Barkes to take their Alcatrazzi, while they are yet young, and cannot flie, and kill as many of them with flaues as they will, varill they have therewith laden their Barkes or Canoas : thefe young ones are fo fat and well fed, that they cannot bee eaten, and are taken for none other intent, but onely to make Greafe for Candles to burne in the night, for the which purpose it serueth very well, and giueth a cleere light, and burneth easily. Aiter this manner and for this purpole, innumerable of them are killed : and yet it feemeth that the number of them that fish for Sardines doe daily increase. There are other fowles called Paffere sempie, that is, simple Sparowes: these are somewhat lesse then Seamewes, and have their feet like voto great Malards, and stand in the water sometimes, and when the ships faile fiftie or a hundred leagues about the Ilands, these fowles beholding the ships comming toward them, to breake their flight, and fall downe vpon the Saile yards, Mafts, and Cables thereof, and are for imple and foolish, that they tarrie vntill they may easily bee taken with mens hands, and

were therefore called of the Mariners simple Sparrowes : they are blacke, and vpon their blacke. have their head and shoulders of feathers of a darke russet colour : they are not good to bee eaten, although the Mariners have fometimes beene inforced to eate them. There is another kind Picuti, Birds of Birds in the firme Land, which the Christians call Pscuti, because they have very great beakes. in respect of the littlenesse of their bodies, for their beakes are very heavie, and weigh more then their whole bodies beside : these Birds are no bigger then Quailes, but haue a much greater bulhment of feathers infomuch that their feathers are more then their bodies; their feathers are very faire, and of many variable colours; their beakes are a quar-toter of a vard in length or more, and bending downe toward the Earth, and three fingers broad neere vnto the head : their tongues are very quils, wherewith they make a great hiffing; they make holes in Trees with their beakes, in the which they make their Nefts. And furely these Birds are maruellous to behold, for the great difference which they have from all other Birds that I have feene, aswell for their tongues (which are quils as I have faid) as also for the ftrangenesse of their fight and disproportion of their great beakes, in respect of the rest of their bodies. There are no Birds found that prouide better for the safegard of their young in the time of their breeding, to be without danger of wilde Cats, that they enter not into their Nests to destroy their Egges or young, and this aswell by the strange manner of building their Nests, as also by their owne defence : and therefore when they perceive that the Cats approach toward 30 them, they enter into their Nests, and holding their beakes toward the entrance of the same. stand at their defence, and so vexe the Cats, that they cause them to leave their enterprize. There are also other Birds or Sparrowes, which the Christians by contrary effect call Matti.

Foolish Spa-

that is Fooles: Whereas neuertheleffethere is no Bird that sheweth more wit and craft in defending her young from perill. These Birds are little, and in manner blacke, and somewhat bigger then our Thrushes; they have certaine white feathers in their neckes, and the like fagacitie or sharpnesse of sense as have the Birds or Pyes called Gazzanle: they seldome times light vpon the earth : they make their Nelts in Trees separated from other, because the Monkeyes are accustomed to leape from Tree to Tree, not descending to the ground for seare of other beasts, except when they are enforced by thirst to come downe to drinke, at such times as they are sure 40 not to be molefted, and for this cause doe not these Birds make their Nests but in Trees farre diuided from other, they make them of a Cubit in length, or more, after the manner of bagges or little fackes, large at the bottome, and growing narrower and narrower toward the mouth, whereby they are fastened, having the hole whereat they enter into the facke, of such bignesse as may onely fuffice to receive them. And to the end that the Monkeyes may not devoure their young, if they chance to mount upon the Trees where they have their Nefts, they vie another craft, which is, to make their Netts in thicke branches of Trees, and to defend the same with sharpe and strong thornes, implicate and set in such order, that no man is able to make the like. fo that the Monkeyes can by no meanes put their legges into the hole of the Neit to take out the young Birds, aswell for the sharpnesse of the thornes, as also for the depth of the Nests, in the so bottome whereof, the young Birds reft without danger of their enemie : for some of their Nests being three or foure spans in length, the leg of the Monkey cannot reach to the bottome thereof. They vie also another policie, which is, to make many of their Nests in one Tree, the which they doe for one of these two causes: that is, that either of their owne naturall disposition they are accustomed to goe in great multitudes, and reioyce in the company of their owne generation , as doe the Birds which we call Stares, or elfe to the intent that if it should so chance that the Monkeyes should climbe the Trees where they make their Nests, they might bee a greater company to relift and molest the Monkeyes, at whose approach they make a fearefull and terrible cry, whereby the Monkeyes are put to flight, Furthermore, in the firme Land, and in the llands, there are certaine Birds called Piche, or Gazzuole, somewhat like 60 wato those which we call Wood-wals, or Wood-peckes, being lesse then ours of Spaine : these are altogether blacke, and goe hopping and leaping, their beakes are alto blacke, and of the fame falhion as are the Popingiayes beakes, they have long tayles, and are somewhat bigger

reach ouer the water, that with a little weight they may bow downe to the water : their Refts are made so neere the tops of the branches, that when the Monkeyes come thereon, the branches hend roward the water, and the Monkeyes turne backe againe for feare of falling: For although no beaft in the World be more malicious then this, yet whereas the most part of beasts are naturally inclined to fwimme, this Monkey hath no manner of aptnesse thereunto, and is therefore foone drowned or strangled in the water, and by a prime fense of Nature feareth the danger which he cannot escape. These Birds make their Netts in such fort, that although they bee wet and filled with water, yet doe they fo fuddenly rife vp againe, that the young Birds are not thereby hurt or drowned. There are also many Nightingales, and other Birds which fing maruellous ly with great melodie and difference in finging t these Birds are of maruellors divers colours the one from the other, some are altogether yellow, and some other of so excellent, delectable, and high a colour, asit were a Rubie, other are also of divers and variable colours, some of few conigh a colour, asterwise nume, butter are allows stuces and various colours, some of rew co-lours, and other formeall of one colour, being all fo faire and beautifull, that in brightness and finding they excell all that are in Spaine, or Italia; or other Protunces of Europe. Many of these things they excell all that are in Spaine, or Italia; or other Protunces of Europe. Many of these are taken with Nets, lime-twigs, and Springes of divers forts. Divers other forts of great fowles Great Fowles are taken with News, inter-ewigs, and springes or micra sources order source forces or great rowled to the winto Engles, and fush other as line of persy, are found in the firme Land, of fush district, 100 that it is in manner impossible to describe them all particularly; and forafmuch as I haue more largely intreated hereof in my generall Historie of the Indies, I thinke it not requisite heere to make any further mention of the fame. Of Trees, Fruits, and Plants. Here is both in the firme Land and the Ilands a certaine Tree called Coco, being a kind of coco. There is both in the firme Land and the Italias a certain greatnesse, as have the Date Trees

Date Trees, and basing their leaves of the selfesame greatnesse, as have the Date Trees which beare Dates, but differ much in their growing, for the leaves of this Coco grow out of the trunkes of the Tree, as doe the fingers out of the hand , wreathing themselues one within ano-30 ther, and fofpreading abroad : these Trees are high, and are found in great plentie in the Coast of the Sea of Sur, in the Province of Cacique Chiman, These Date Trees bring forth a Fruit after this fort; being altogether wintes as it growth on the Tree, it is of greater circumference then the head of a man, and from the fuperficiall part to the middelt, which is the fruit, it is involved. and coured with many Webs much like vant too like induced, wants the rinar, is a mounted and coured with many Webs much like vant too like linds of Towe which they vie in Andalafie.

Of this Towe or Web, the East Indians make a certaine kind of Cloth, of three or foure forts, and Cordes for the Sayles of Ships: but in thefe Indies of your Maieftie, they paffe not for thefe Coards, or this Cloth that may be made of the Fruit of Coco, by reason of the great plentie that they have of the Bombage or Cotton of Godampine Trees, The Fruit which is in the middeft of the faid Tow, is (as I have faid) as bigge as a mans fift, and fometimes twice as bigge, and more : 40 It in forme like vnto a Walnut os some other round thing, fomewhat more long then large, and very hard, the rinde or burke hereof, is as thicke as the circle of Letters of a Riall of Plate, and

ly offend the tafte, as to be cast away. While this Cocas is yet fresh and newly taken from the Tree, they vie not to eate of the faid carnofitie and Fruit, but first beating it very much, and then 50 ftrayning it, they draw a Milkethereof, much better and sweeter then is the Milke of Beafts, and of much substance, the which the Christian men of those Regions put in the Tartes or Cakes which they make of the grain of Maiz whereof they make their Bread, or in other Bread I have fease Cakes which they make of the grain of Mana whereof they make their bread, of in other bread one of thele as we put Bread in Portage: fo that by reason of the said Milke of Com, the Tartes are more ex- Fruits opened. as we pur Dieau in cottegs. Johns of Jeans of the American Barbana of the India opens cellent to be exten without offence to the fromacks: they are fo pleafant to the tale, and leaue it the which as wield fastisfed as though it had beene delighted with many delicate Difhes. But to proceed when it was afwell farished as though it had been designed with many desicate Diness. But proceed with further, your Maieltie shall vinderstand, that in the place of the stone or cornell, there is in the whole, if it middelt of the said carnolities a void place, which neuertheless is full of a most cleers and excellent the water was the water was lent water, in fuch quantitie as may fill a great Egge fhell, or more, or leffe, according to the big - hardshogge nesse of the Cacas, the which water surely, is the most substantiall, excellent and precious to bee therein as it 60 drunke, that may be found in the World; infomuch that in the moment when it passet the pa, were in a Borlate of the mouth, and beginneth to goe downe the throate, it feemeth that from the fole of the tle, but in time

within, there cleaueth fast to the rinde of the Nut a carnolitie or fubstance of coornell, of the

thicknesse of halfe a finger, or of the least finger of the hand, and is very white like vnto a faire

Almond, and of better tafte and more pleasant. When this Fruit is chewed, there remayne cer-

taine crummes, as doe the like of Almonds : Yet if it be swallowed downe, it is not unpleasant.

For although that after the suyce or moyfture be gone downe the throat before the faid crummes

be swallowed, the rest which is eaten, seeme somewhat sharpe or sowre, yet doth it not so great-

foot, to the crowne of the head, there is no part of the bodie but that feeleth great comfort was partly thereby : as it is doubtleffe one of the most excellent things that may bee tasted upon the earth, congested into and fuch as I am not able by writing or tongue to expresse. And to proceed yet further, I say that a file substance Mmmm 2

when the meate of this fruit is taken from the Veffell thereof, the veffell remayneth as faire and Good against neate as though it were polished, and is without of colour inclining toward black, and thineth or gliftereth very faire, and is within of no leffe delicatenesse. Such as have accustomed to drinke in flone Collick. rhefe Veffels, and have beene troubled with the Difease called the fretting of the guts, say that they have by experience found it a maruellous remedie against that Disease, and that it breaketh the stone, and prouoketh vrine. This fruit was called Coca, for this cause, that when it is taken from the place where it cleaueth fast to the Tree, there are seene two holes, and aboue them two other naturall holes, which altogether doe represent the gesture and figure of the Cattes called Mammons. that is, Monkeyes, when they cry, which cry the Indians call Coca, but in very deed, this Tree is a kind of Date Tree, and hath the same effect to heale fretting of the 10 guts, that Plinis describethall kinde of Date trees to have. There are furthermore in the firme Land. Trees of fuch bigneffe that I dare not speake thereof, but in place where I have so many witnesses which have feene the same as well as I. I say therefore, that a league from Dariene or

the Gitie of Santa Maria Antiqua, there paffetha River very large and deepe, which is called Cut, ouer the which the Indians laid a great Tree, to traverfing the tame, that it was in the flead of a bridge, the which I my felfe with divers other that are at this prefent in your Majeffies Court, haue oftentimes paffed over. And forafmuch as the faid Tree had lyen long there, and by the great weight thereof was fo fhrunke downeward, and partly coursed with water, that none could paffe ouer it, but were wet to the knee, I being then in the yeere 1523, the officiall or luflice in that Citie at your Maiesties appointment, caused another great Tree to beelaid in that to place, which in like manner trauerfed the Riuer, and reached more then fiftie foote oper the further fide : This Tree was exceeding great, and rested about the water more then two Cubits. in the fall, it cast downe all such other Trees as were within the reach thereof, and discovered certaine bynes, which were to laden with blacke Grapes of pleafant tafte, that they fatisfied more then fiftie persons which ate their fill thereof. This Tree, in the thickest part thereof, was more then fixteene spannes thicke, and was neuerthelesse but little in respect of many other trees which are found in this Prouince. For the Indians of the Coast and Prouince of Cartagenia. make Barkes or Boates thereof (which they call Canous) of fuch bigneffe, beeing all one whole Great Canoas Tree, that fome contains a hundred men, fome a hundred and thirtie, and fome more, having neuerthelesse such void space within the same, that there is left sufficient roome to passe to and fro to throughout all the Canons. Some of thefe are fo large, befide the length, that they conteine

more then tenne or twelve spannes in breadth, and faile with two failes, as with the Master faile

and the trincket, which they make of very good Cotton. The greatest Trees that I have seene in these parts, or in any other Regions, was in the Proumee of Gusture, the King whereof rebel-ling from the obedience of your Maiestie, was pursued by me, and taken Prisoner: at which time I with my company, passed ouer a very high Mountaine, full of great Trees, in the top whereof, we found one Tree, which had three roots, or rather divisions of the roote about the Earth, in forme of a Triangle, or Treuet, fo that betweene every foot of this Triangle or three feet, there was a space of twentie foot betweene every foot, and this of such height about the Earth, that a laden Cart of those wherewith they are accustomed to bring home Corne in time of Haruest in 40 the Kingdome of Toledo in Spaine, might early have passed through enery of those partitions or windoores which were betweene the three feet of the faid Tree. From the Earth vpward to the trunke of the Tree, the open places of the divisions betweene these three feete, were of such height from the ground, that a Footman with a lauelin was not able to reach the place where the faid feet toyned together in the trunke or bodie of the Tree, which grew of great height in one piece, and one whole bodie, or ever it spread in branches, which it did not before it exceeded in height the Towre of Saint Romane in the Citie of Toledo: from which height and vpward, it spread very great and strong branches. Among certaine Spaniards which climbed this Tree, I my felfe was one, and when I was afcended to the place where it begunne to ipread the branches, it was a maruellous thing to behold a great Countrey of fuch Trees toward the Pro- 40 uince of Abrame. This Tree was easie to climbe, by reason of certaine Besuchi, (whereof I haue spoken before) which grew wreathed about the Tree, in such fort that they seemed to make a scaling Ladder. Euery of the foresaid three feet which bore the bodie of the Tree, was twentie spannes in thicknesse, and where they joyned altogether about the Trunke or bodie of the Tree, the principall Trunke was more then fortie and fine ipannes in circuite. I named the Mountaine where these Trees grow, the Mountaine of three footed Trees. And this which I have now declared, was seene of all the company that was there with mee when (as I have faid before)I took King Guaturo Prisoner in the yeere 1522. Many things more might here be spoken as touching this matter, as also how there are many other excellent Trees found of divers forts and difference, as sweet Cedar Trees, blacke Date Trees, and many other, of the which some are 60 to heavie that they cannot float about the water, but finke immediately to the bottome, and other againe as light as a Corke. As touching all which things I have written more largely in my generall Hiltorie of the Indies.

And for as much as at this prefent I have entred to entreate of Trees, before I paffe any fur-

ther to other things. I will declare the manner how the Indians kindle fire, onely with Wood Kindling of and without fire, the manner whereof is this. They take a peece of wood, of two fpannes in fire withou length, as biggeas the leaft finger of a mans hand, or as an arrow well pullished, and of a strong fire. kinde of wood which they keepe onely for this purpose : and where they intend to kindle any tire, they take two other peeces of wood, of the drieft and lighteft that they can finde, and binde rhem fait together one with another, asclose as two fingers joyned : in the middeft or between theie, they put the point of the first little staffe made of hard and strong wood, which they hold in their hands by the top thereof, and turne or rubbe it round about continually in one place betweene the two peeces of wood which lye bound together upon the earth, which by that vn-10 cellant rubbing and chafing, are in short space kindled, and take fire. I have also thought good Purified word

here to foeake formewhat of such things as come to my remembrance of certaine Trees which night. are found in this Land, and iometime also the like have beene seene in Speine. These are certaine putrified trunkes, which have been follong rotting on the earth, that they are very white, and thine in the night like burning firebrands, and when the Spaniards finde any of this wood,

and intend privily in the night to make warre and inuade any Province, when case so requireth that it shall be necessarie to goe in the night, in such places where they know not the way, the formoft Christian man which guideth the way, affociate with an Indian to direct him therein, taketh a little starre of the said wood, which he putteth in his cap, hanging behinde on his shoulders, by the light whereof he that followeth next to him, directeth his journey, who also 20 in like manner beareth another starre behinde him, by the shining whereof the third followeth the same way, and in like manner doe all the rest, so that by this meanes none are lost or stragle

out of the way. And for as much as this light is not seene very farre, it is the better policie for the Christians, because they are not thereby disclosed before they inuade their enemies, Furthermore, as touching the natures of Trees, one particular thing feemeth worthy to be noted, whereof Plinie maketh mention in his naturall Historie, where he faith that there are certaine Trees which continue euer greene and neuer loofe their leaues, as the Bay-tree, the Cedar, the Orangetree, and the Olive-tree, with fuch other, of the which in altogether he nameth not paft five or fix. To this purpofe, I fay, that in the Hands of their Indier, and also in the firme land, it is a Almost illisfix. To this purpole, I say, that in the Hands of their leaves, and and in the little land, it is a thing of much difficultie to finde two Trees that lofe or caft their leaves at any time for although inner two

30 I have diligently fearched to know the truth hereof, yet have I not feene any that lofe their greene. leaues, either of them which we have brought out of Spaine into thefe regions, as Orange-trees, Limons, Cedars, Palmes, or Date-trees, and Pomegranate-trees, or of any other in thefe regi- Caffic. Limons, Cedars, ed. Miles, or Date-freet, and rome-granten areas, year a submounting appropriate to it. Each host loss, ons, except one of Coffee, which lofeth his leaves, and hard a greater thing appropriate to it. Each host loss, fellicoper in the control of further into the ground, by reason of the great heate which is found beneath that depth, yet reason doth Casses pearle further into the ground, vntill it finde water: which by the Philosophers o- flux. pinion should be the cause of a thinneand watery radicall mostlure to such things as draw their

nourithment thereof, as fat and vnctuous grounds with tempetate heate, yeelde a faft and firme to moisture to such things as grow in them, which is the cause that such Trees lose not their leaves, as the faid thinne and waterish moisture is cause of the contrarie, as appeareth by the faid effect which is teene onely in Caffia, and none other Tree or Plant in all these

Of Reedes or Canes. 'N the firme land there are many forts of Reedes, fothat in many places they make their hou-

les thereof, couring them with the tops of the same, and making their wals of them in like manner, as I have faid before : and among thele kindes of Reedes, there is one fo great, that the Canes thereof are as bigge as a mans legge in the knee, and three spans in length from ioynt to 50 ioynt, or more, in io much that every of them is of capacitie to containe a little bucket of water. In this kinde, there are found some greater, and some lesse, of the which some they wie to make quivers for arrowes. There is found another kinde, which furely is marueilous, being lit- Reed-springs tlebigger then a lauelin, the Canes whereof are longer then two ipannes : these Reedes grow or fountain. one faire from another, as fometimes twenty or thirty paces, and fometimes allo two or three of water-leagues: they grow in manner in all Prounces in the Indust, and grow nerre to very high Trees, whereunto they leane, and creepe up to the top of their branches, which they imbrace, and descend againe downe to the earth. Their Canes are full of most cleare water, without any manner of tafte or fauour, either of the Canes, or of any other thing, and fuch as if it were taken out of the freshest Spring in the world, nor yet is it knowne that ever it hurt any that 60 drunke thereof. For it hath oftentimes to chanced, that as the Christian men have transited in

thefe regions in defolate waies, where for lacke of water they have beene in great danger to dye with thirst, they have escaped that perill by reason that they found the sand Reedes, of the water of whole Canes they have drunke a great quantity, without any hurt thereof enfuing. Therefore when they finde thele in any place, they make water veliels of the Canes thereof, and carry

Plavani, or

Figges.

There are also certaine Plants, which the Christians call Platani. They are as high as trees. and become as bigge in the trunke as the knee of a man, or more. From the foote to the top, they beare certaine long and large leaues, being more then three spans in largenesse, and about ten or twelue in length : the which when they are broken of the winde, the stalke remaineth whole in the middett. In the middett of this Plant, in the highest part thereof, there groweth a cluster with fortie or fiftie Plantans about it, every of chem being a span and a halfe inlength. and as bigge as a mans arme in the imall, or more, or leffe, according to the goodnesse of the toile to where they grow: they have a rinde not very thicke, and easie to be broken, being within altogether full of a substance like vinto the marie of the bone of an Oxe, as it appeareth when the rinde or barke is taken from the fame. This clufter ought to be taken from the Plant, when any one of the Plantans begin to appeare yellow, at which time they take it, and hang it in their houses, where all the cluster waxeth ripe, with all his Plantans. This cluster is a very good fruite, and when it is opened, and the rinde taken off, there are found within it many good drie Figges, which being rofted, or flewed in an Ouen, in a close pot, or fome such other thing, are of pleafant tafte, much like to the conferue of Hony: they putrifie not on the Sea fo foone as fome other fruites doe, but continue fifteene daies and more, if they be gathered fomewhat greene : they feeme more delicate on the Sea then on the Land, not for that they any thing encrease in goodnes on the Sea, but because that wheras on the Sea other things are lacking, whereof is plencie on the Land, those meates seeme of best tatte, which satisfie present necessitie. This trunke or forig which bringeth forth the faid clufter, is a whole yeare in growing and bringing forth fruite, in which time it hath put forth round about in ten or twelue fprigges, as bigge as the first or principal, and multiplieth no leste then the principall in bringing forth of clusters with fruits likewise at their time, and also in bringing forth other and many sprigges, as is said before. From the which iprigges or trunkes, as foone as the cluster of the fruite is taken away. the Plant beginneth to drie and wither, which then they take out of the ground, because it doth none other then occupie it in vaine, and without profit. They are fo many, and doe fo marueiloufly encrease and multiplie, that it is a thing in manner incredible. They are excee. 30 ding moilt, in so much that when they are plucked vp from the place where they grow, there iffueth forth a great quantity of water, as well out of the Plant, as out of the place where it grew, in such fort, that all the moisture of the earth farre about , might feeme to be gathered together about the trunke or blocke of the faid Plant, with the truites whereof, the Antes are fo farre in loue, that they are feene in great multitudes in the branches of the Plants : fo that for the multitude thereof, it fometime fo chanceth, that men are enforced to take away the Plants from their policifion : these fruites are found at all times of the yeere. There is also another kinde of wilde Plants that groweth in the fieldes, which I have not feene but in the Iland of Hilpaniels, although they be found in other Ilands of the Indies: thefe they call Tunas. They grow of a Thiftle full of thornes, and bring forth a fruite much 40 like vnto great Figges, which have a crowne like Medlers, and are within of a high colour, with graines and the rinde like vnto a Figge; they are of good tafte, and grobe abundantly in the fields in many places : They worke a strange effect in such as eate them, for if a man eate two, or three, or more, they cause his wrine to be of the very colour of bloud, whith thing chanced once to my felfe. For on a time as I made water, and faw the colour of my Vrine, I entred into a great suspition of my life, being so assonished for feare, that I thought the same had chansed to me vpon some other cause, in so much that surely my imagination might have done me hurt, but that they which were with me did comfort me immediately, declaring the cause thereof, as they knew by experience, being auncient inhabitours in those regions. There groweth also another Plant, which the people of the so Countrie call Bibaor: this putteth forth certaine ftraight branches, and very broade leaues, which the Indians vie for divers purposes: for in some places they cover their houses with the leaves thereof, couched and laid after the manner of thatch, whereunto it serveth very well : Sometimes also when it raineth, they cast these ouer their heads, to defend them from the water. They make also certaine chefts, which they call Hance, weamed after a strange fort, and intermixt with the leaves of this Bibaos. These Chests are wrought in fuch fort, that although it raine vpon them, or they chance to fall into the water, yet are not fuch things wet as are within them : they are made of the branches of the faid Bihast, with the leaves weared together therewith. In these they keepe salt, and other subtile things. They vie them also for another purpose, which is this : that finding them in the fields at such time as 60 they have scarfenesse of victuals, they digge up the rootes of these Plants while they are yet yong, or eate the Plant it felfe, in that part where it is most tender, which is from a foote vnder the ground, where it is as tender and white as a Reede or Bulruth. And for as much as we are now come to the end of this narration, it commeth to my remembrance to make mention

CH AP.3. Venemous Apples. Camibals. Gulfe Vraba. Tree Xagua.

of another thing, which is not farre from my purpole ; and this is how the Indians doe flaine or dye cloath of bombage cotton, or any other thing which they intend to dye, of diuers colours, Dying of 25 Blacke, Tawny, Greene, Blew, Yellow, and Red, which they doe with the Barkes, or Rindes. and Leaues of certaine Trees, which they know by experience to be good for this oractife: and by this are they make colours in such perfection and excellency, that no better can be de- A firange mied. But this seemeth a strange thing, that they doe all this in one selfe same Vessell: so that things when they have caused the said Rindes and Leaues to boile together, they make in the same Veffell without any change (as I have fail) as many colours as them lifteth. Which thing I suppose to come to passe, by the disposition of the colour which they have first given to the to thing that they intend to dye or colour, whether it be Thred, Web, or Cloth, or any thing that they intend to colour.

Of venemons Apples, wherewith they posson their Arrowes.

He Apples wherewith the Indian Canibals invenome their arrowes, grow on certaine Trees couered with many Branches and Leaues, being very greene, and growing thicke. They are laden with abundance of these euill fruites, and have their Leaues like the Leaues of a Peare-tree, but that they are leffe and rounder e the fruite is much like the muscadell Peares 20 of the lland of Sicilie or Naples in forme and bigueffe, and are in some parts stained with red foots, and of very liveet lauour : these trees for the most part, grow ever by the Sea Coasts, and neere vnto the water, and are so faire and of pleasant fauour, that there is no man that feeth them, but will defire to eate thereof, infomuch that if it may bee spoken of any fruit yet growing on the earth, I would say that this was the wnhappy fruit whereof our first parents " Adams and Ene rafted, whereby they both loft their felicitie, and procured death to " It was not a them and their posteritie. Of these truits, and of the great Ants whole byting cauteth venemousiace fivelling (whereof I have spoken elsewhere) and of the Emes, or Liferts, and Vipers, of the stumbate fwelling (whereof I haue spoken estewaere) and or one Emis; or Espans and purch other venomous things, the Canibals which are the chiefe Archers among the India bedience in and then could be poylon their Arrowes, wherewith they kill all that they wound : earing contra-20 These venomes they mingle together, and make thereof ablacke Masse or composition, which is 10 Gods. appeareth like vnto very blacks Puch. Of this poylon I canled a great quantitie to ber burnt; commince in Saulta Maria Antiqua, in a place two leagues and more within the Land, with a great mul ment, which in Santa Charles Antique, in a parce two reagues aim more white also the house wherein they possessed at titude of their innenomed Arrowes and other minitions, with also the house wherein they possessed at titude of their innenomed Arrowes and other minitions, with also the house wherein they were reserved : This was in the yeere 1514 at sucht time at the Armie arrived there enthune, the with Captaine Pedreras de Villa, at the commandement of the Catholike King Des wages shreef with Captaine remember de Londo, as one commandemento une bestiones auto ever seger succes. Ferdinendo. But to returne to the Hildrice, Ehref Apples 7 as I haus-space 3, provin eners it d. alb., vivot the Sex tech Christians which facut year Maiofite in these patries, suppose that there Cassishi monther. write the Seattne Unrittians watern terue your anaugute in meet pattiet, suppore timet such nome their is no remedie fo profitable for fuch as are wounded with these Arrowse; as is die wa- Arrows. ter of the Sea, if the wound bee much waited therewith , by which meanes form haue perma dries. 40 escaped, although but few : yet to say the truth, albeit the water of the Sea, have a certaine caustike qualitie against poylon, it is not sufficient remedie in this case, nor yet The water of

to this day have the Christians perceived that of fiftee that have beene wranded, three the Sea, haue recourred. But that your Maiestie may the better consider the force of the venome of these trees, you shall further understand, that if a mandoe but repose himselfe to sleepe a little while under the shadow of the same, he hath his head; and eyes so swoke when he reseth, that the eye lids are inyned with the cheekes, and if it chance one drop or more of the deaw of the fail tree to fail into the eye, it vittely destroyeth the fight. The pestilent nature of this tree is fail tree to fail into the eye, it vittely destroyeth the fight. fuch, that it cannot be declared in few words. Of thefe, there groweth great plentie in the gulfe of Praba, toward the North coalt, on the Wesk and East fide. The wood of these trees when it The gulfa of 50 burneth, maketh fo great a flinke, that no man is able to abide it, by reason it causeth so great a Praise.

paine in the head. Among other trees which are in these Indies, as well in the Ilands, as in the firme land, there is another kind which they call Xagua, whereof there is great plentie: they are very high, and Xagua, ffreight, and faire to behold. Of these they wie to make Rikes, and I agelins of divers lengths and bignefic : they are of a faire colour , betweene ruffet and white : this tree bringeth forth a great fruit as big as Papaner or Poppis, and much like thereunto, Strie very good to be eaten when it is ripe. Out of this they get a very cleare water, where with they wash, their legs, and sometimes all their bodies, when they feele their fich weary, faine; oc loofe : the which water, beilde chat it hach a binding qualitie, it hach all of the properties, that whatfour it of the country, it has the country of the country, it has the country of cannot bee taken away in leffe space then tenne or twelme dayes : And if the nayle bee but

touched therewith, it is fo stained, that it can by no meanes be taken away, vntill it either fall of, or growout, and be clipped away by little and little, as I my felfe have ofteneimes feene by experience...

There

There is another kinde of Trees which they call Hobi: these are very great and faire, and confe wholesome aire where they grow, and a pleasant shadow, and are found in great abundance their fruit is very good, and of good tafte and fauour, and much like vnto certaine Damfons of Prunes being little and yellow, but their stone is very great, by reason whereof they have been little meate : their Barke or Rinde boyled in water, maketh a wholesome Bathe for the legges, because it bindeth and stayeth the looienesse of the fiesh, so sensibly that it is a martiell to entite der. It is surely a wholesome and excellent Bathe against such faintnesse, and is the best Tree that may be found in those parts to sleepe under: For it causeth no heavinesse of the head, as ide divers other Trees, which thing I speake, because the Christians are much accustomed in those Regions to lie in the fields. It is therefore a common practice among them, that wherefoeuer in they finde these Trees, there they spreade their Mattresses and Beds wherein they sleepe.

Dare rrees.

The Inhahi tan s of the Sea of Sur.

There are also a kinde of high Date trees, and full of thornes: the wood of these is most excellent, being very blacke and thining, and to heavie that no part thereof can fwim about the water, but finketh immediatly to the bottom. Of this wood they make their Arrowes and Darts. also Iauelins, Speares, and Pikes: and I say Pikes, because that in the coasts of the Sea of Sur. beyond Esquegue and Vrache, the Indians vie great and long Pikes, made of the wood of their Date trees. Of the same likewise they make Clubs, and Swords, and divers other weapons; Also vessels and houshold stuffe of divers fores, very faire and commodious. Furthermore, of this wood the Christians vie to make divers musicall instruments, as Claricymbals, Lutes, Gitterns. and such other, the which beside their faire shining colour like vnto jeat, are also of a good found. and very durable, by reason of the hardnesse of the wood.

An herbe that

After that I have faid thus much of Trees and Planes, I have thought good also to speake somewhat of Herbs. You shall therefore vnderstand, that in these Indies there is an herbe much like vnto a yellow Lilly, about whose leaves there grow and creepe certaine Cordes or Laces, as the like is partly feene in the herbe which we call Laced favory, but thefe of the Indies are much bigger, and longer, and in ftrong that they tie their hanging beds thereby, which they cell Hama-Cabaia and He. cas, whereof we have spoken elsewhere : these Cordes they call Cabaia, and Henequen, which are all one thing, fauing that Henequen is lefte and of a finer substance, as it were Line, and theother is groffer, like the wike or twift of Hempe, and is imperfect in comparison to the other: they are of colour betweene white and yellow, like vnto abarne, and some also white. With Henequen, which is the most subtile and fine threed, the Indiens faw in funder Fetters, Chaines.

A ftrange

or barres of Iron, in this manner: They moone the threed of Henequen vpon the Iron which they intend to faw or cut, drawing the one hand after the other as doe they that faw, putting cut now and then a portion of fine Sand spon the threed, or on the place or part of the Iron, where they continue rubbing the faid threed, to that if the threed be worne, they take another, and continue in their worke as before, vntill they have cut in funder the Iron, although it bee never fo bigge, and cut it as if it were a tender thing, and eafie to be fawen. And forasmuch as the leaves of Trees may be counted among Herbs, I will here speake some-

Leanes

what of the qualitie of the leanes of certaine Trees which are found in the lland of Hispaniela. These trees are so full of thornes, that there is no trees or plant that seemeth more wilde and de- 40 formed: fo that I cannot well determine whether they bee Trees or Plants : they have certaine branches full of large and deformed leaves, which branches were first leaves like vnto the other, As the branches made of these leaves grow forth in length, there commeth other leaves of them: so that in fine it is a difficult thing to describe the forme of these trees, except the same should be done by a Painter, whereby the Eye might conceine that wherein the Tongue faileth in this be-Aleafe of great halfe. The leaves of this tree are of such vertue, that being well beaten and spred vpon a cloth, after the manner of a plaister, and so laid to a legge or arme that is broken in many pieces, it healeth it in fifteene dayes, and maketh it as whole as though it had never beene broken: During the time of this operation, it cleaveth to fast to the field, that it cannot without much difficultie be taken away, but afficone as it hath healed the fore, and wroughe his operation, it loofeth it felfe to

from the place where it was laid, as I my felfe, and diners other which have proued it, know by Of Fishes, and of the manner of fishing.

IN the Sea coasts of the firme Land, there are divers and fundrie kindes of fishes, much diffe-I ring in shape and forme. And although it be impossible to speake of all, yet will I make mention of some. And first to begin at Sardines, you shall understand that there is found a kinde of these fishes very large and with red tailes, being a very delicate fish. The best kindes of other filhes are thele, Moxere, Diabate, Brettes, Dabaos , Thornbacks , and Salmons : All thele , and 60 diversother which I doe not now remember, are taken in great quantitie in Rivers. There are likewife taken very good Crenifies. There are also found in the Sea, certaine other fishes, as Soles, Mackerels, Turbuts, Palamite, Lanze, Polpi, Chieppe, Xaibas , Locusts , Oisters , exceeding great Torsoifes, and Tiburoni of maruellous bigneffe : alto Manates, and Murene, and many other fifthes,

CHAP.3. Tortoifes and Sharkes bow taken. Defeription of them and the Manate. 087

which have no names in our language, and thefe of such diversitie and quantitie, as cannot bee exorefied without large writing and long time. But to let pife to intreate particularly of the multitude of fishes, I intend to ipeake chiefly, and somewhat largely, of three forts of most nomanufactor ames, a the first is, the great Tortoifes, the second is called Tiberon, and the third Great Tortois Manate, And to begin at the firft, I fay that in the lland of Gube, are found great Torsofes fet. (which are certaine shell fishes) of such bignefie that ten or fifteene men are scarlly able to life one of them out of the water, as I have beene informed of credible persons dwelling in the same Hand. But of that which I my felfe haue frene, I can teftifie, that in the firme Land , in the village of Aela , there are of this fort some taken and killed of such bignesse, that sixe men with 10 much difficultie could fearfly draw them out of the water, and commonly the leaft fort of them are as much as two men may carry at a burden : that which I w lifted up by fixe men, had hef shell a yard and a quarter in length , and in breadth more then hue yards. The manner of taking them, is this : It fometimes chanceth that in their great nets (which they call shoote nets) there are found certaine Terteiles of the common fort, in great quantities, and when they come out of the Sea, and bring forth their egges, and goe together by companies from the Sea, to feede on the Land, the Christians or Indians tollow their steps which they finde in the Sand, and some ourtake them, because they are very heatie and flow in going, although they make all the hafte they can to returne to the Sea, affoone as they elpy any body. When they that puriue them have ouertaken them, they put a stake or staffe under their legs, and ouerturne them on their backs as they are yet running, to that they can goe no further, nor yee rife againe or turne, and thus they fuffer them to lye fill while they follow after the sell, which they ouerturne in like manner; and by this meanes take very many, at fuch times as they come forth of the Sea, as I haue faid : This

fish is very excellent and wholesome to be eaten, and of good tafte. nn is very excesses, and wantesome of the second of the three files whereof i have footen, it the Thomas this is a very great file, Tahmas of and very quick and i write in the water, and a cruell Desourer: these are often times taken, siwell Sharks. when the ships are under faile in the Ocean, as also when they lye at anker, or at any other time, and especially the least kinde of these fishes. When the ships are under size, the bigget fort are and especially the season and when the Tiberen feeth the ship sayling, hee followeth it swimming

behind, the which things the Mariners leeing, catt forth all the filth of the ship into the Sea for 20 the fift to eate, who neverthelesse followeth them with equall pase, although they make never such haste with full winde and sales, and walloweth on cuery lide and about the ship; and thus followeth it sometime for the space of a hundred and fiftie leagues, and more, and when the Mariners are disposed to take them, they cast downe by the sterne of the ship a hooke of Iton, as biege as the biegeft finger of a mans hand, of three spans in length, and crooked like a fifth-hooke, with beards according to the bigueffe thereof, and faitned to an Iron chaine of five or fixe linkes neere vnto the end, and from thence tyed with a great rope; faitning also on the hooke for a bait, a piece of fome fifth, or hogs flefth, or fome other flefth, or the bowels and intrals of another Tibus ron which they have taken before, which may rafily bedone, for I have feene nine taken in one day, and if they would have taken more, they might alfo. Thus when the Townson hath pleafant-

40 ly followed the ship a long voyage, at the length he swalloweth the bait with the hooke, and aswell by his thriting to flee or cicape, as also by the swift passage of the ship, the hooke overthwarteth and catcheth hold of his chaps: the which fift when it is taken, it is of fuch huge bigneffe, that twelve or fifteene men are carfly able to draw it out of the water, and lift it into the ship, where one of the Mariners gueth it many knocks on the head with a club or beetle, vitill he have flaine it: they are fometimes found of ten or twelve foote long, and of five, fixe, or feuen spans in breadth, where they are broadest : they have very great and wide mouthes, to the proportion of the reft of their bodies, and have two rowes of teeth, the one somewhat separate from the other, of cruell shape, and standing very thicke. When they have slame this fish, they cut the body thereof in small pieces, and put it to drie, hanging it three or foure dayer at the 50 Cordes of the salle clothes to drie in the winde, and then eate it: It is doubtlesse a good fift, and

of great commoditie to serve the ships for victualls for many dayes: the least of these fishes are most wholesome and tender, it hath a skin much like to the skin of a Sole whereunto the faid Ti- Plinice buron is like in shape : Which I say , because Plinie hath made mention of none of these three fifthes, among the number of them whereof he writeth in his Naturall historie. Thele Tiburous come forth of the Sea, and enter into the Rivers, where they are no leffe perillous then great Lizards or Crocodies, whereof I have spoken largely before : For they dewoure Men, Kine, and Hor- crocodies. fes, even as doe the Cracodiles: they are very dangerous in certaine walking places or Pooles by the Rivers fides, and where they have denoured at other times. Divers other fifthes both great and small, of fundrie forts and kindes, are accustomed to follow the ships going under faile, of the

60 which I will speake somewhat when I have written of Manue, which is the third of the three Manates. whereof I have promifed to entreat. Manate therefore, is a fish of the Sea, of the biggeft fort, and much greater then the Tiburon in length and breadth, and is very brutish and vile, so that it appeareth in forme like vnto one of those great vestels made of Goats skins, wherein they vie to sarry new wine in Medina de Campo, or in Arenalo : the head of this beaft is like the head of an

Oxe, with also like eyes, and hath in the place of armes, two great stumps wherewith he swimmeth : It is a very gentle and tame beaft, and commeth oftentimes out of the water to the next thoure, where if he finde any herbes or graffe, he feedeth thereof. Our men are accustomed to kill many of these, and divers other good fishes, with their Crosse bowes, pursuing them in Barkes on Canoas, because they fwim in manner about the water : the which thing when they fee, the draw them with a hooke tyed at a small corde, but somewhat strong: As the fish sleeth away, the Archer letteth goe, and prolongeth the corde by little and little, vntill he haue let it goe many fathoms: at the end of the corde, there is tyed a corke, or a piece of light wood, and when the fifth is gone a little way, and hath coloured the water with his bloud, and feeleth himselfe to faint and draw toward the end of his life, he reforteth to the shoare, and the Archer followeth, gathe- to ring up his corde, whereof while there yet remaine fixe or eight fathoms, or fomewhat more or leffe, he draweth it toward the Land, and draweth the fifth therewith by little and little, as the waves of the Sea helpe him to doe it the more easily : then, with the helpe of the rest of his companie, he lifteth this great beaft out of the Water to the Land , being of fach bigneffe, that to conner it from thence to the Citie, it shall be requisite to have a Cart with a good yoke of Oxen. and sometimes more, according as these fishes are of bignesse, some being much greater thenother some in the same kinde, as is seene of other beafts: Sometimes they litt these fishes into the Canoa or Barke, without drawing them to the Land as before, for as foone as they are flaine, they flote about the water: And I believe verily that this fifth is one of the best in the world to the tafte, and the likeft vnto fielh, especially so like vnto beefe, that who so hath not feene it whele an can judge it to be none other when bee feeth it in pieces then very Beefe or Veale, and is certainly to like vnto fieth, that all the men in the world may herein be deceived: the tafte likewife. is like vnto the tafte of very good Veale, and lasteth long, if it be powdred : so that in fine, the Beefe of these parts, is by no meanes like vnto this. This Manate hath a certaine flone, orrather bone in his head within the braine, which is of qualitie greatly appropriate against the difeale of the stone, if it be burnt and ground into small powder, and taken fasting in the morning when the paine is felt, in such quantitie as may lye vpon a peny, with a draught or good white wine : For being thus taken three or foure mornings, it acquieteth the griefe, as divers have told me which have proved it true, and I my felfe by testimonie of sight, doe witnesse that I have seen 30 this stone fought of divers for this effect.

The Sword

The fift Ma-

A remedie a-

Flying fishes.

There are also divers other fishes as bigge as this Manate, among the which there is one called Vibrella. This fifth beareth in the top of his head a fword, being on every fide full of many flato teeth; this (word is naturally very hard and strong, of foure or fine spans in length, and of proportion according to the same bignesse: and for this cause is this fish called Spade, that is, the Sword fifb. Of this kinde fome are found as little as Sardines, and other so great, that two yokes of Oxen are fearfly able to draw them on a Cart. But whereas before I have promifed to speake of other fishes, which are taken in these Seas while the ships are under faile, I will not forget to Speake of the Tunny, which is a great and good fish, and is oftentimes taken and kild with Trout ipeares, and hookes, caft in the water; when they play and fwim about the ships. In like manner also are taken many Turbuts, which are very good fishes as are lightly in all the Sea. And here is to be noted, that in the great Ocean Sea, there is a strange thing to be considered, which all that Note. have beene in the Indies affirme to bee true: And this is, that like as on the Land there are some The Sea some Provinces sertile and fruitfull, and some barren, even so doth the like chance in the Sea: So that at some windes the ships faile fiftie, or a hundred, or two hundred leagues and more; without taking or feeing of one fish; and againe, in the felfe fame Ocean in some places, all the water is feen tremble by the mooning of the fishes, where they are taken abundantly. It commeth further to my remembrance to speake somewhat of the flying of fishes, which is doubtlesse a strange thing to behold, and is after this manner. When the thips faile by the great Ocean, following their viage, there rifeth fometimes on the one fide or on the other, many companies of certaine little filhes, of the which the biggelt is no greater then a Sardine, and so diminish leffe and leffe from @ that quantitie, that fome of them are very little : these are called Volutori, that is , flying filbes: they rife by great companies and flocks, in such multitudes that it is an aftonishment to behold them : Sometimes they rife but little from the water, and (as it chanceth) continue one flight for the frace of an hundred paces, and fometimes more, or leffe, before they fall agame into the Sea, formetimes also they fall into the thips. And I remember, that on an evening when all the companie in the ship were on their knees, singing Salue Regina, in the highest part of the Castle of the poope, and failed with a full winde, there passed by vs a flocke of these flying fishes, and came for neere vs, that many of them fell into the ship, among the which, two or three fell hard by mee, which I tooke aline in my hand, so that I might well perceives hat they were as higgers Sardines, and of the lame quantitie, having two wings or quils growing out of their finnes, like vnto thoir 60 wherewith all fishes swim in Rivers; these wings are as long as the fishes themselves. As long as their wings are moift, they beare them up in the aire, but alloone as they are drie, they can continue their flight no further then as I have faid before, but fall immediatly into the Sca, and fo rife againe, and the as before from place to place. In the yeere 1515, when I came first to enforme

your Maiestie of the state of the things in India, and was the yeere following in Flanders in the time of your most fortunate successe in these your Kingdomes of Arragon and Castile, whereas at that voyage I fayled about the Iland Bermuda, otherwise called Garza, being the furthest of all The Iland of the llands that are found at this day in the world, and arriving there at the depth of eight yards Bermuda. of water, and diftant from the Land as farre as the thot of a piece of Ordinance, I determined to fend some of the thip to Land, as well to make fearch of such things as were there, as also to leave in the lland certaine Hogs for increase. But the time not seruing my parpose by reason of con-trarie winde, I could bring my ship no necree the Iland, being twelve leagues in length, and sixe in breadth, and about thirtie in circuit, lying in the three and thirtieth degree of the North fide. To While I remay ned here, I saw a strife and combat betweene these stying fishes, and the fishes mamed Gilt heads, and the fowles called Sea-meines, and Cormorants, which furely feemed vnto me a thing of as great pleafure and solace as could be deuised, while the Gilt beads swam on the brim of the water, and sometimes lifted their shoulders about the same, to raise the flying fisher out of the water to drive them to flight, and follow them fwimming to the place where they fall , to take and eate them fuddenly. Againe on the other fide, the Sea-mewer and Cormorants, take many of these flying fishes, so that by this meanes they are neither fafe in the Aire, nor in the Wa- Nottoo hie ny of thele flying fines, to that by this means they are littled and in the third, in a no certaine for the Pie, ter. In the felfe fame perill and danger doe men line in this mortall life, wherein is no certaine Nor too low fecuritie, neither in high estate, nor in lowe. Which thing furely ought to put vs in remembrance of that bleffed and fafe refting place which God hath prepared for fuch as love him, who 20 fhill acquiet and finish the trauailes of this troublesome world, wherein are so many dangers, and bring them to that eternall life where they shall finde eternall securitie and rest.

Of the increase and decrease (that is) rising and falling of our Ocean Sea, and South Sea, called the Sea of Sur.

Will now speake of certaine things which are seene in the Prouince, or at the least in the Citie of Golden Castile, otherwise called Beragna, and in the coasts of the North Sea, and of the Beragna. South Sea, called the Sea of Sea, not omitting to note one fingular and marnellous thing which I have considered of the Ocean Sea, whereof hitherto no Cosmographer, Pilot, or Mariner, or any 20 other, haue satisfied me. I say therefore, as it is well knowne to your Maiestie, and all such as have knowledge of the Ocean Sea, that this great Ocean casteth from it selfe the Sea Mediterraneum by the mouth of the Straight of Gibralterra, in the which the water, from the end and The West furthell part of that Sea, even voto the mouth of the faid Straight, either in the East toward the Ocean coast commonly called Lenante, or in any other part of the faid Sea Mediterraneum, the Sea doth The Sea Medit not fo fall nor increase, as reason would judge for so great a Sea, but increaseth very little, and a small space ; Neuerthelesse, without the mouth of the Straight in the mayne Ocean, it increaseth and falleth very much, and a great space of ground, from fixe houres to fixe boures, as in all the coafts of Spaine, Britaine, Flanders, Germanie, and England. The felfe fame Ocean Sea in the firme Land newly found, in the coasts of the same lying toward the North, doth neither rise nor fall, 40 nor likewife in the Ilands of Hiff aniels and Cubs , and all the other Ilands of the famelying to. Hiffaniels. ward the North, for the space of three thousand leagues, but onely in like manner as doth the Ocean without wast Menorm, one in let pace or in ere nonunarisegues, prespect to that increase and decrease being and the summer of the pace of the control of the pace of the Citie of Panama, and also in the coast of that Land which lyeth toward the East and West from The ebbe at that Citie, as in the Hand of Pewles or Margarita, which the Indians call Tarrarequi, and also in Pazama falleth Taboga and Otoque, and in all other Ilands of the South Sea of Sur, the water rifeth and falleth fixe miles fo much, that when it falleth, it goeth in manner out of fight, which thing I my felfe haue feene

oftentimes. And here your Maieftie may note another thing, that from the North Sea to the The South South Sea, being of fuch difference the one from the other in rifing and falling, yet is the Land Sea. 50 that divideth them not past eighteene or twentie leagues in breadth from Coast to Coast : So that both the faid Seas, being all one Ocean, this strange effect is a thing worthy greatly to bee confidered of all fuch as have inclination and defire to know the fecret workes of Nature, wherein the infinite power and wisedome of God is seene to be such, as may allure all good Natures to renerence and lone to dinine a Majestic.

Of the straight or narrow passage of the Land lying betweene the North and South Sea, by the which Spices may much sooner and easilier be brought from the Ilands of Molucca into Spaine by the West Ocean, then by that way whereby the Portugals faile into the East India.

The firme Land in fome parts thereof is fo ftraight and narrow, that the *Indians* fay, that from the Mountaines of the Province of Efquegua or Viriaca (which are betweene the one Efqueguand Sea and the other) if a man ascend to the top of the Mountaines, and looke toward the North, Vriata.

he may fee the Water of the North Sea of the Prouince of Berague : and againe looking the contrarie way, may on the other fide (towards the South) fee the Sea of Ser, and the Propins ces which confine with it, as doe the Territories of the two Lords or Kings swithe faid Proting ces of Frace and Efguegus. Some measure this way in this part, to bee from Sea to Sea eight teene leagues, which I suppose to bee rather twentie, not for that it is any more by measure. but because it is rough and difficult, as I have faid, and as I have found it by experience; ha uing now twile paffed that way by foote, counting from the Port and Village of Nombre the Dies, vnto the Dominion of the Cacique of luanaga, otherwise called Capira, eight leagues,
The River of and from thence to the River of Chagre, other eight leagues. So that at this River, being fixreene leagues from the faid Port, endeth the roughnesse of the way : then from hence to the

maruellous Bridge are two leagues, and beyond that, other two, vnto the Port of Panana. So that all together, in my judgement, make twentie leagues. It is a marvellous facilitie to brine Spices by this way which I will now declare. From Panama to the River of Chagre, are foure leagues of good and faire way, by the which Carts may passe at pleasure, by reason that the Mountaines are but few and little, and that the greatest part of these foure leagues is a plaine ground void of Trees; and when the Carts are come to the faid River, the Spices may be carried in Barkes and Pinales. For this River entreth into the North Sea five or fixe leagues lower then The Hand Ba- the Port of Nomen Dei, and emptieth it felfe in the Sea neere vnto an Hand called Balliments. where is a very good and fafe Port. Your Maiestie may now therefore consider, how great a thing, and what commoditie it may be to convey Spices this way, foralmuch as the River of 20

Chapre, having his original onely two leagues from the South Sea, continueth his course, and emprieth it felte into the other North Sea. This River runneth fast, and is very great, and in commodious for this purpose as may bee thought or defired : the marnellow Bridge made by the worke of Nature, being two leagues beyond the faid River, and other two leagues on this fide the Port of Panama, fo lying in the mid way betweene them both, as framed naturally in fuch fort, that none which palle by this voyage doth fee any fuch Bridge, or thinke that there is any fuch building in that place, vntill they be in the top thereof, in the way toward Panama: But affoone as they are on the Bridge, looking toward the right hand, they fee a little Riuer under them, which hath his Channell distant from the feete of them that walke outrit. the space of two speares length or more. The water of this River is very shallow, not passing the 30 depth of a mans legge to the knee, and is in breadth betweene thirtie and fortie paces, and falleth into the River of Chagre. Toward the right hand, standing on this Bridge, there is no-Naturall flone thing feene but great Trees. The largenesse of the Bridge contayneth fifteene paces, and the length thereof about threescore or fourscore paces : The Arch is so made of most hard stone, that

no man can behold it without admiration, being made by the High and Omnipotent Creator How things that are of one kinde, differ in forme and qualitic, according to the nature of the place where they are engendred or grow, and of

the beafts called Tigres.

And in this forme may fo many things be faid, that time shall not suffice to write, whereas my

intent is onely to produe that this bealt may be a Tigre, or of the kinde of Tigres, although it

IN the firme Land are found many terrible beafts, which some thinke to be Tigres. Which thing neuerthelesse I dare not affirme, confidering what Authors doe write of the lightnesse and agilitie of the Tigre, whereas this beaft, being otherwise in shape very like vnto a Tigre, is notwithstanding very slow. Yet true it is, that according to the maruailes of the World, and differences which naturall things have in divers Regions under Heaven, and divers conftellations of the same, under the which they are created, wee see that some such Plants and Herbes Plants and as are hurtfull in one Countrie, are harmelesse and wholesome in other Regions. And Birds which in one Prouince are of good taile, are in other fo vnfauourie that they may not bee eaten. Men likewise which in some Countries are blacke, are in other places white : and yet are both 50 Men. these and they, men. Euen so may it be, that Tigres are light in some Region, as they write, and may neuerthelesse be flow and heavie in these Indies of your Maiestie, whereof wee speake. The Sheepe of Arabie draw their tailes long and bigge on the ground, and the Bulls of Egypt have their haire growing toward their heads: yet are those Sheepe, and these Bulls. Men in fome Countries are hardie and of good courage, and in other naturally fearfull and bruirish. All these things, and many more, which may be said to this purpose, are easie to bee prooued, and worthy to bee beleeved, of such as have read of the like in Authors, or travelled the World, whereby their owne fight may teach them the experience of these things whereof I speake, It is also manifest that Iucca, whereof they make their bread in the Iland of Hispaniela, is deadly poison if it be eaten greene with the juyce : and yet hath it no such propertie in the firme Land, 60 where I have eaten it many times, and found it to be a good fruit. The Bats of Spaine, although Bats. they bite, yet are they not venemous : but in the firme Land, many die that are bitten of them.

bee not of fuch lightnesse and swiftnesse, as are they whereof Plinie and other authors speake, Plinie. describing it to bee one of the swiftest beafts of the Land, and that the River of Tyeris for the fwift course thereof was called by hat name. The first Spaniards, which faw this Tyger in the The Tiere. firme land, did fo name st. Of the kind of thefe, was that which Don Diego Columbe, the Admiral fent your Maietty out of New Spaine to Toledo. Their heads are like to the heads of Lions, or Lioneffes, but greater: the reft of all their bodies, and their legs, are full of black fpors one neere vnto another, & divided with a circumference, or fringe of red colour, flewing (as it were)a faire work and correspondent picture, about their croopes or hinder parts, they have these spots biggest and leffe & leffe coward their bellies, legs, & heads. I have teen fome of three spans in height, and more then five in length. They are beafts of great force, with strong legs, and well armed with navles and fanges, which we call Dog-teeth : they are to fierce, that in my judgement; no reall Lyon of the biggeft fort is to firong or fierce. Of these, there are many found in the firme Land, which denoure many of the Indians, and doe much hurt otherwise : but fince the comming of the Christiest, many haue beene killed with Croffe-bowes after this manner. Affoone as the Archer hath The hunding knowledge of the haunt of any of these Tygers, hee goeth searching their trace, with his Croffe. of Tigres, bow, and with a little Hound or Begle, & not with a grey-hound; because this Beast would soon kill any Dozee that would venter on him : When the Hound hath found the Tigre, he runneth about him baying continually, and approacheth so neere him, snapping and grinning, with so quicke flying and returning, that he hereby so molesteth this fierce Beatt, that hee driueth him no to take the next Tree, at the foot whereof he remayneth fill baying, and the Tigre grinning and the wing his teeth, while in the meane time the Archer commeth neere, and twelue or fourteene paces off, ftriketh him with the querell of his Croffe-brow in the breft, and flyeth incontinent, leaving the Tigre in histrauell for life and death, byting the Tree and eating earth for fierceneffe : then within the space of two or three hours, or the day following , the Archer returneth thither, and with his Dogge findeth the place where hee lyeth dead. The Indians (and especially they of the firme Land in the Prouince which the Catholike King Don Ferdinando

20 only with a small coard, and plaid with her so familiarly, that I maruelled greatly to see it, yet not without certaine beliefe that this friendshipwill not last long, without danger of life to the Keeper, forasmuch as furely these Beasts are not meet to be among men, for their sercenesse and cruell nature that cannot be tamed.

Of the manners and customes of the Indians of the Firme Land, and of their women.

commanded to bee called Golden Castele) call this Beaft Ochi. This thing is strange that chan-

his keeper that then kept him in a Cage, was in few daies after made fo tame, that he led her tyed tam

ced of late : that whereas the Tigre whereof we have made mention before, would have killed A Tigre made

He manners and customes of these Indians, are diners in diners Prominces. Some of them I take as many Wives as them lift, and other live with one Wife, whom they for lake not 40 without confent of both parties, which chanceth especially when they have no children. The Nobilitie aswel men as women, repute it infamous to joyne with any of base Parentage or Stran- The Indian gers, except Christians, whom they count Noblemen, by reason of their valiantnesse, although women-they put a difference betweene the common fort and the other to whom they shew obedience, counting it for a great matter and an honorable thing, if they bee beloned of any of them; infomuch that if they know any Christian man carnally , they keepe their faith to him, so that hee be not long absent farre from them, for their intent is not to be Widdowes, or to live chafte like religious women. Many of them have this custome, that when they perceive that they are with childe, they take an Hearbe wherewith they deflroy that is conceined : for they fay that Vanaturall abo only well aged women should be are children, and that they will not forbeare their pleasures, Large breasts and deforme their bodies with bearing of children, whereby their Teates become loofe and Child-birth hanging, which thing they greatly dispraise. When they are delivered of their children, they goe to the River and wash them, which done, their bloud and purgation ceasieth immediately: And when after this they have a few dayes absteined from the company of men, they become so Areight, as they say which have had carnal familiaritie with them, that fuch as vie them, cannot without much difficultie fatisfie their appetite : They also which neuer had children, are euer as Virgins. In some parts they weare certaine little Aprons round about them before and behind, as low as to their knees and hammes, wherewith they couer their pring parts, and are naked all their bodie beside. The principall men beare their Prinities in a hollow Pipe of Gold, but the common fort have them inclosed in the shells of certaine great Welkes, and are be-fide veterly naked: For they thinke it no more shame to have their Cods seene, then any other part of their bodies: and in many Provinces both the menand women goe veterly naked, without any fuch concerture at all. In the Province of Cuena they call a man Chuy, and a woman Ira,

which name is not greatly disagreeable to many both of their women and of ours. Thele Indians give great honor and reverence to their Casiques (that is) their Kings and Ru-Nana

The King is lers. The principal Carique shath twelve of his most strong Indians appointed to beare him, when borne on mens he removeth to any place, or goeth abread for his pleasure. Two of them carrie him fitting vpon a long peece of wood, which is naturally as light as they candinde, the other ten follow next wired him as footenen; they keepe continually a trotting pase with him on their shoulders. When the two that carrie him are wearie, other two come in their places, without any diffurbance or flavi And thus if the way be plaine, they carry him in this manner for the space of fifteene or twente leagues in one day. The Indians that are affigued to this office, are for the most part flates, or Na.

Letting of bloud.

borits, that is such as are bound to continual feruice. I have also noted that when the Indians perceive themselves to be troubled with too much bloud, they let themickies bloud in the raife of their legges, and brawnes of their armes : this doe they with a very tharpe stone, and sometimes with the small tooth of a Viper, or with a sharpe reede or thorne. All the Indians are commonly without Beards, in so much that it is in Thry have no a manner a maruell to fee any of them either men or women to have any downe or hairs on their faces, or other parts of their bodies: Albeit I faw the Cacique of the Prouince of Cata-

their bodies.

rapa, who had haire on his face and other parts of his body, as had also his wife in fuch places as women are accustomed to have. This Cacique had a great part of his body painted with a blacke colour, which neuer fadeth, and is much like vnto that wherewith the Moores paint themselves in Barbarie in token of Nobilitie. But the Moores are painted specially on their visage and throate, and certaine other parts. Likewise the principall Indians vie these paintings on their armes and breafts, but not on their visiges, because among them the sauss are to marked. When the Indians of certaine Provinces goe to the battaile (especially the Canibal 10

The Canibals Archers) they carrie certaine shels of great welkes of the Sea, which they blow, and make therewith great found, much like the noise of Hornes: they carrie also certaine Timbrels. which they vie in the stead of Drummes: also very faire Plumes of Feathers', and certains A:mor of gold, armour of gold, especially great and round peeces on their breasts, and splints on their armes. Likewife other peeces, which they put on their heads and other parts of their bodies : For Their gallant- they effecme nothing fo much as to appeare gallant in the warres, and to goe in most comely

order that they can deuise, gliftering with precious Stones, Iewels, Gold, and Feathers. Of the least of these welkes or perewincles, they make certaine little Beades, of divers forts and colours: they make also little Bracelets, which they mingle with gandes of Gold, these they roule about their arms from the cloow to the wrest of the hand. The like also doe they on their legges from the knees to the foles of their feete, in token of Nobilitie, efpecially their Noble Women in divers Provinces are accostomed to weare such Iewels, and have their neckes in manner laden therewith: these Beades and Iewels, and such other trinkets, they call Caguiras. Befide thefe alfo, they wearecertaine Rings of Gold at their eares and noffrels, which they bore full of holes on both fides, fo that the Rings hang vpon their lippes. Some of these Indians are poulde and rounded; albeit commonly both the Men and Women take it for adecent thing to weare long haire, which the women weare to the middeft of their shoulders, and cut it equally, especially about their browes : this doe they with certaine hard Stones, which they keepe for the same purpole. The principall Women, when their teates fall, 40 or become loofe, beare them wp with barres of Gold, of the length of a spanne and a halfe, well wrought, and of fuch bigneffe that some of them weigh more then two hundred Castelans or Ducades of Gold: these barres have holes at both the ends, whereat they tye two fmall cords made of Cotton at every end of the barres: one of these cords goeth over the shoulder, and the other under the arme holes, where they tye both together, so that by this

meanes the barre beareth vp their teates. Some of these chiefe Women goe to the battaile with

their Husbands, or when they themselves are regents in any Provinces, in the which they have

all things at commandement, and execute the office of generall Captaines, and cause themselves

How the women beare va their toates

The Iland of

to be carried on mens backs, in like manner as doe the Cariques, of whom I have fooken before. The flaure & lands : they are for the most part of the colour of an Olive : if there be any other difference, it 30 colour of the is more in bigneffe then otherwise, and especially they that are called Coronati, are fironger and bigger then any other that I have feene in thefe parts, except those of the Iland of Giants, and mains and the south fide of the Hand of Hifpaniola, neere vnto the coasts of the firme Land, called Corenais. which are on the South fide of the Hand of Hifpaniola, neere vnto the coasts of the firme Land, and likewife certain other which they call Incares, which are on the North fide. All which chiefly, although they be no Giants, yet are they doubtlesse the biggest of the Indiansthat are known to this day, and commonly bigger then the Flemings; and especially many of them, as well women as men, are of very high stature, and are all archers both men and women.! These Coronati inhabit thirtic leagues in length by these coasts, from the point of Canea to the great river which they call Guadalchiber, necre vnto Santa Maria de gratia. As I traversed by those coasts, I filled 2 60 butt of fresh water of that river, fix leagues in the Sea from the mouth thereof where it falleth into the Sea. They are called Coronats (that is Crowned) because their haire is cut round by their eares, and poulde lower a great compaffe about the Crowne, much like the Friers of Saint Angustines Order. And because I have spoken of their manner of wearing

CHAPIZ. Hard Sculs. Rarities of Hilpaniola, Beafts, Foules, erc.

wheir haire, bere commeth to my remembrance a thing which I have oftentimes noted in these Indians : and this is, than they have the bones of the feets of their heads foure times thicker, and The feet's of much stronger then ours, to that in comming to handbroakes with them, it shall be requisite not indistributed to firike them on the heads with fwords, for fo have many fwords beene broken on their heads, with little bart done.

of the chiefe Hands, Hifpaniola and Cuba.

He Indians which at this present inhabit the Hand of Hisperiola, are but few in number. and the Christians mitto many as they ought to be, for as much as many of them that were in this lland, are gone to other Hands, and to the firme Land. For being for the most Men are defin part yong men vnmarried, and defirous daily to fee new things, wherein mans nature delightpart yong men vimination, amountments of the continue long in one place, they were not willing to continue long in one place, they extend of all other white, Lands discourted, where they thought they might former fill their Purfer, by being prefent at the first spoile: Wherein neaerthelesse their hope deceined many of them, and especially such as had houses and habitations in this Iland : For I certainely believe, confirming my selfe herein with the judgement of many other, that if any one Frince had no more feignories then onely The common this Iland, it should in hort time be fuch, as not to give place either to Sicilie or England, dites of Historic whereas even at this present there is nothing wherefore it would malice their prosperity, not be- midd and and

20 ing inferiour to them in any felicity, that an manner the Heavens can grant to any Land : being ing interiors to them in any observation to the control of the con quantitie, In this Iland, nature of her felfe bringeth forth fuch abundance of Cotton, that if it Cotton were wrought and maintained, there should be more and better then in any part of the world. There is fo great plentie of excellent Caffia, that a great quantitie is brought from thence into Caffia Spaine, from whencee it is carried to divers parts of the world, &c.

In this lland furthermore are many Sheepe, and a great mumber of Hogges, of the which (as Sheepe and allo of the Kine) many are become wilde, and likewife many Dogger and Cats, of those which Hogs. were brought out of Spaine: These (and especially the Dogs) doe much burt among the Cattell, Dogs and Cast were brought out or opames a treat can be presently the real of the many Horses, Mares, and Mules, become wilde, 30 by reason of the negligence of the Heard-men. There are also many Horses, Mares, and Mules, become wilde. and such other Beaits as serue the vie of men in Spaine, and are much greater then they of the

first broode brought thither out of Spaine. Saint Deminge was built by line and rule: the Houses of Stone very faire, There is also a Ca- A Cathedrall thedrall Church builded of late, where as well the Billiop according to his dignity, as also the Church and theoran Canons are well endowed. This Church is well builded of Scone and Lime, and of good work-in Hiffenista. manship. There are furthermore three Monasteries, bearing the name of S. Dominket, S. Francis, and S. Marie of Mercedes, the which are al wel builded, although not focuriously as they of Spain. There is allo a very good Hospital for the aid & succor of poore people, which was found by Mi- An Hospitall. chael Paffemont, treasurer to your Maiestie. The people of this Iland are commonly of somewhat 40 leffe fraure then are the Spanisrds, & of a shining or cleare brown color: they have Wines of their The people, own, and abstaine from their Daughters, Sitters & Mothers: they have large foreheads, long black

haire, and no beards or haire in any other parts of their bodies, as well Men as Women, except very few, as perhaps scarsly one among a thousand. They goe as naked as they were borne, except that on the parts which may not with honestie be feene, they weare a certaine leafe as broad as a mans hand, which neuertheleffe is not kept close with such diligence, but that sometimes a man may fee that they thinke sufficiently hid. In this Iland are certaine Glowormes, that Ciesas a kinde of Glowormes thine in the night as doe ours, but are much bigger, and give a greater light: In so much that when the men of the lland goe any journies in the night, they beare some of these wormes made fast about their seete and head, in such for that he that should see them a farre, and ignorant of 50 the thing, would be greatly aftonished thereat. By the light of these also, the women worke in their houses in the night. These wormes they call Conas. Their light lasteth for the space of three dayes, and diminisheth as they begin to drie vp. There is also a kinde of Crowes, Crowes slinkwhole breath stinkethin the morning, and is sweete in the afternoone : the excrement which ing and week.

they avoide, is a living worme. ey aurone, is a numing wormer.

In Cuba, is a certaine kinde of Partridges, being very little, with their feathers much of the partridges, colour of Turtle Doues, but are of much better taite to be eaten: they are taken in great number, and being brought wilde into the houses, they become as tame within the space of three or foure dayes as though they had beene hatched there: they become exceeding fat in short space, and are doubtlesse the most delicate and pleasant meate that euer I have eaten. But 60 to let passe many other things that might be here said, and to speake of two marueilous

things which are in this Hand of Cuba: whereof the one is, that a Valley containing two or three leagues in length betweene two Mountaines, is full of a kinde of very hard Stones, Bullets for of fuch perfect roundnelle, and like vnto Pellets of Gunnes, that no art can make bet. Guns wrought ter or more exactly polished. Of theie, some are as small as Pellets for Handgunnes, and by nature. Nnnn 2

Artillerie, although they be of big nelle to receive one or two or more Quintales of powder. Aftilities, attnough they been nighten to recent cuts a troot more equatures or powder, enter Quantale containing one hundred weight, or of what other quantitie fower they be, Their Pellets are found throughout all the Valley within the earth, as in a Mine, which they digge, and take out fuch as they neede of all forts. The other manufolds thing of A Fountaine of the Flich of this Iland is this: That farre from the Sea, there issueth out of a Mountaine a certaine liquor, much like the Clay of Babylon, called Bitmen, or like vnto Pitch, in great quantitie, and fuch as is very commodious for the calking of Shippes : this falleth continually from the Rocke and runneth into Sea, in such abundance that it is feene floting about the water on every fide and fundern into yea, in their abundance of the place by the winde, or course of the water. Quintus Curtiss Quintes Curtiss writeth in his Historie, that great Alexander came to the Citie of Menti. where is a great Caue or Denne, in the which is a Spring or Fountaine that continually auri-

Pitch-fountaine, Reverso and wilde voole chase Indian Arcitos I . . . W.

other fo encreasing bigger and bigger from that quantitie, that they may serue for all fores of

Bitumen of Ba. deth a great quantitie of Brismen, in fuch fort, that it is an easie thing to beleeve that the flones of the wals of Babylon might be laid therewith, according as the faid Author writteh. I have feene chis Mine of Bitumen, not onely in the lland of Cuba, but also such another in new Spaine, in

Thus farre I have given you from Master Eden his Edition; wherein bosause many things necessary to the natural History of the Indias are in the Authors Summarie, and in his 20, Books of a larger Historie. I bane added bitber fuch things as I thought fitteft. The Visu are like great Rats, and the Cories like Conies, of which the people in Hispaniola

eate. as also of the Tuends. Chemi and Mohni are lirde creatures also in that Hand ; which and their little mute Dogges were all the foure footed Beafts they had, faue that of Rats there is some question. The Indians of Immeica and Cuba vie to catch fish with the fish Ronerso, as ftrange fith to Huntimen or Falconers vie Hounds or Haukes in their game. The Indians take it former imes in their Nets, of which I have eaten : and when they will bring up one of them they feede it in the Sea and carrie it tied to their Canar by a strong line, which when they fee a fish fit for pray, they loofen and vie words to excite courage and valour in this fift; which prefently flies like an arrow at that fifh and fastens thereon, and the Indian lets the line runne out at length (being oiled, of many fadomes, and having a peece of wood at the end to buoy it,) till the fifth be weati-Rauer's is the ed: this little fifth (little aboue a spanne long, vnsightly to looke on) full bolding fait, till the sociates one lands was gathering in his cord, prepares to shoure to take the greater fish, with much commendation that the sociates of th Sharke and is tion and words of encouragement to this chafe-fish, perswading him to let goe his hold, which by him carried otherwise should sooner by violence breake in peeces this Huntsman, then force him to vinfain all his Cha- ften. Thus will he fasten on the belly of a Tortrase so great that two Indians and sometimes fes, feeding on fixe have enough to doe to carrie the fame to their houses. This fish Romerfo hath scalles Staire fashioned, or like the roofe of a mans mouth, and on them certain prickles very sharpe and strong. whereby he fattens himselfe to what fift him pleafeth : and their prickly scales he hath on the most pare of his body.

They have likewise a cunning wild-goose-chase, in a great Lake cashing in certaine great emptie Pompons in the feafon when Geefe refort thither, wherewith they being accustomed grow out of feare and will be on them to bee carried. Being thus acquainted, the Indian puts one of these emptie Pompons on his head, and with much dexteritie of swimming enters amonest the Geese, and when one hath made him his Porter, no part of his body being seene. he swimmes from the rest, and then with his hand pulls her in, and hangs her thus strangled at

his girdle, and begins a fresh game.

Houles of

When their Caciques are dead they lay them on a piece of wood or stone, and make a fireabout the fame which may not burne them, but by degrees draw forth all the movifure in fweat, leaving onely the skin and bones, and then in a place separate repose the same with the Anceftors which before had beene so dealt with; this being their best Booke of Heraldrie to recount the Names and severall Descents in that Pedegree, If any die in battell, or so that they cannot to recover his body, they compose Songs which the Children learne touching him, and the manner of his death, to supply that memoriall. These Songs they call Areytor. As for Letters they were fo ignorant, that iceing the intercourse of Spaniards by Letters, they thought that Letters could speake, and were very cautelous in their carriage of them, lest the Letters might accuse them of ill demeanor by the way. When they will disport themselves, the Men and Women meet and take each other by the hand, and one goeth before which is called Tegnine or their Mafter, with certaine paces measured to his singing in a low voice what commeth in his minde, and after him all the multitude answereth in a higher voice with like measures proportioned to the tune, and fo continue they three or foure houres, with Chiche or Mayz-wine among : fometimes also changing the Tequina and taking another with a new tune and long. Their Houses are com- 60 monly round like a Tent, and sometimes with a double water passage (which they call Bubio) of good Timber, thatched with Straw or long Graffe, the Walls of Reed pitched into the ground In the Prouince of Abrayne in Golden Caffile and thereabouts, there are many Villages of Indians which dwell on the tops of Trees in Houses or Roomes there made, to which they ascend

by certaine staires of Beface, which growes about * Trees, and is vied to binde their Walls and . Befaces scemes by certaine name. A Difference before mentioned. Beneath, the ground is fenny and covered with wa- to be as bindto be as bind-ter not fo high as a man : and where it is deeper, they vie Canoas, and therewith passe to drie weed or luie, Land to low their Mays and Incea, Battates and Aies. In those houses they are secured from wild but fronger Reafts. Enemies and Fire. They are not Archers, and vie Clubs. In the Gulfe of Vraba where and more Dearts, Line Pales and Land Palme trees in the middest of the River growing neere together, on the tops whereof are houles made as the former and much bigger, in which many Inhabitants dwell together, and haue their beds tyed to the lower parts of the faid Palme trees: Thefe beds they call Hamacas, being couerlets of Cotten of good threed and well wouen, of two or three braces long, but narrower, with cordes at the ends. The cordes are of Cotton, or of Henequen or Cabuya, this the courser threed, that the finer and able to cut Iron; made of the leafe of a certaine herbe. These Indians fight also with Clubs, and did much harme to Captaine Vasco Names di Balboa his men, which returned with losse not able to ouer-come them. I haue allo observed that these Indians have the bones of their skulls foure times as thicke as those of the Christians , so that to strike them with a Sword must be warily done, the Swords being thereby

Befides the Tigre and other beafts before mentioned, in the firme Land are the Beeri (the The beafts of Chriftians call them Dants, not that they are fuch, but for some resemblance, as is also said of the those parts. Tiere) of the bignesse of a meane Mule, without hornes, ash-coloured : they know not to dresse

20 and tanne their hides. They take them with Dogs, but if they take water, they are fierce and cruell. The Gatto Ceruiere is as bigge as the Tigre and very fierce, more dreadfull to the Christie. Gatto Ceruiere. ans, the (wifteit beaft yet found in those parts. The Lions are a little leffe then those of Barbarie and not fo full of courage, but fearfull and fugitive, and hurt none but such as affault them. The Leopards are like those of Barbarie, and are swift and fierce, but neither these nor the Lions have Leopards. vet done Christians any harme, nordor they eate the Indians as the Tigres doe. The Foxes are Foxes like those of Spaine, but in colour blacker then blacke veloet, and somewhat lesse then of Spaine. The Red Deere are as those of Spaine, but not so I wift. Their Fallow Deere are like those of Spaine, Red and falbut both Red and Fallow exceed the Spanish in tafte. Their Conins or Hares are somewhat like low Decre ours, but liker Hares then Comies, yet leffe then the Conies of Spaine. The Masterns are like to Materis. 30 thole of Spaine in bigneffe , biting and otherwife : fome of them are kept tame and are as full of Sport and lesse filthy then the Monkeys. The Monkeys are of innumerable forts and shapes: Monkeys.

fome of them to futtle as they imitate the actions of men, as breaking of Pine-apples and Almonds with stones : iome will throw stones at passengers, or breake boughs to fall on them as they passe by to breake their heads, and retort the arrowes shot at them, and doe other things incredible. Some are as little or leffer then a mans hand, and some as great as a meane Mastiffe. The Indian Dog: are little and barke not, some hayrie and some bare, but wagge the taile and leape on Dog. those which feede them, and are not so tame as ours. The Churchia is as bigge as a small Conie, churchia tawnie, sharpe-snowted, dog-toothed, long-tayled and eared like a Rat. They doe great harme to their Hennes, killing sometimes twentie or more at once to sucke their bloud : And if they 40 then have young, thee carrieth them with her in a bagge of skin vnder her belly, tunning along the the fame like a Satchell, which thee opens and thut at pleafure to let them in and out : and if a-

ny come with light when the Damme and young are at their Hen-bloud dainties, thee receives them into this bagge, and runneth away with them : and if thee finde the way Ropped, thee climbeth vp aboue the Hen-rooft, and is fometimes taken aliue or dead in this manner; as I have feene. Her Teats are within her bagge. It is a stinking creature. Of Fowles, they have Eagles, Hambes, Buzzands, Rauens, &c. as in Spaine. Other differing Fowles.

forts they have so many that they need rather a Painter then Relator to describe them. Of Par. Parest, ross I carried ten or twelve fores at once to King Ferdinand. They flie by couples, a Male and Female together: and doe much harme to their Corne grounds. There are Night-framewer which Night-framewit of file by night onely, and strike at the Bass, holding a pleasant puriote after them. They are big-

ger and swifter then Swallowes, having a row of white feathers overthwart the wing, The Bats Bats, draw much bloud by their bitings; and if they bite one man among ft an hundred persons, the fame Bat will in the nights following fill fingle the fame person. They flanch the bloud with hot aftes, or water as hot as may be endured, and fo I have been cured. There are Peacecks, ome yellow, some blacke, with tailes like those of Spaine: they are better meat: some are wilde, and fome tame, which are brought home young. Other Peacocks they have, of which the Hens are Peacocks and ill shaped, the Males have not so great a taile as ours : their necke also is bare of feathers, but Turign. coursed with a skin which they change after their phantasie into divers colours. They have a 60 horne as it were on their front, and haires on the breait (the last forme Turkeys.)

The Sea-Crowes are so many which on the coast of Panama follow the Pilchards or Sardines Sea-crowes. (as is before (aid of the Alestranzi) that lighting or houering on the Sex, they feeme to couer the same with a blacke carpet of cloth or veluet, going and comming with the Sea. There are Wilde Heer as great as Peacocks, blacke, the head part of the necke gray skins, and not feathe- wilde Homes. red : they eate Carrion and are of vnsauourie taste to be eaten; smell like muske whiles they are

Nnnn 3

triches are gray, as fauourie as those of Spaine, and as great as the Spanish Hens: they have their brawnes or fielh double, one ouer the other. Their egges are as bigge as Hens egges, but rounder. and coloured like a fine Turkesse stone. The Indians making a found like theirs, draw them to theirs nets. There are alfo a leffe kinde. The Pheafants are not in feathers like those of Spaine Pheafatta. nor so goodly, but very sauourie meate like the great Partriches, but are not so great; they are gray, haue long legs and railes, make a loud whittling noise, and are easily shot.

Flies, and Waffes, Flies are not there so many as in these parts of Europe. Their Waspes are greater and sine Fire, and Wife, I are all too the to the state of the sta and Combes which hold foure times as much Honie as ours : their Honie is white. Anti are great, many, and doe much damage to the Trees, Sugars, and other provisions. There are of many ny forts, fome little and black (of which and the Ant-beare is spoken before) some called Conixen halfe Ant, halfe Worme, very hurtfull; they carry earth on their heads, and therewith on trees, walls, or where they please build their nests, three or foure spans large, and are as hurtfull to houses as Moths to clothes. There are others greater of divers forts, some as bigge as Bees with vs, fo poyfonfull that herewith the Indians infect their arrowes fo remedileffe, that not foure of Mil.G. lis.c.t. Hornets or Horfe-flies (Tafani) are many forts, tedious to expresse. There are also Scorpions in 10

an hundred which are wounded escape: and if this Ant bite a Man he presently falls into a grienous feauer, and the place swelleth much. There are others red, yellow, and some winged. Of the firme Land. An. 1519. and two yeeres after the Ants destroyed in Hispaniola their Canna-Historia Gen. fistola. Oranges, and fruit Trees, neither in their houses could they keepe victualls for their mula titudes, detroying all like the African Graffe-hoppers, in fo much that Saint Domingo was nigh difpeopled by them.

They laugh in India to heare the difeafe called French by the Italians, and Neapolitan by the Beginnings of the fouledis- French, which may indeed be called Indian, where the best remedie Lignum Sanct um, and Gnaiacan grow; God to in judgement remembring mercy, that where our finnes produce a punishment, he also lends a remedie. I had acquaintance with divers which went in the first and second voyages of Columbia : of which was Peter Margarite Commendator in the second voyage, of most respect with the King and Queene, who complay ned of those paines. Soone after, in the yeere 30 1496. began the disease to arrest some Courtiers; but in those beginnings, it was onely amongst bater persons of small authoritie : and it was thought that they got it with having to doe with common women. But afterwards it extended to principall Persons, and the Physicians could not tell what to thinke of it, fo that many dyed. When after this Gonz alo Fernandes de Cordons

was sent with a great Armie by the Catholike Kings, in behalfe of Ferdinand the second King of Naples , against Charles the French King, some diseased persons went with that Armie , and by dealing with the women , and by conversing , spread the disease to the Italians and French-men, which thence got the names aforesaid, but indeed came from Hispaniela: where it is ordinarie, and the remedie also. Our Author 1. 17, c.4, and Ramusio in his Preface to his third Tome so, That the Souldiers of Pamislo de Nauaz having the small pocks infested the Indians, which never before 40 bad beardof that difede: in f much that of 1600000, fouls in that Iland there are for the fit, of and by you foul beare. The Niguas allo, creatures left then Fless, which eate in the fich very dangerously, are rife in that Iland. The people of that Iland when first they were dissided amongst the Spanjo Planters, were deemed a Million or more (fone by 1600000, of which

and of their posteritie in the yeere 1535, were not aboue fine hundred left, little and great, the rest which then were there being Slaues brought thither from other parts. The conetournesse of the Myne-workers, neglect of Diet, change of Gouernours growing worfe and worfe, caufed them to poyfon, kill, and hang themselves, besides those which were consumed by instatious * Those before or pestilentiall pocks * and other diseases : Their owne vices, also Sodomitrie, Idolatrie, &c. mantioned out prouoked dinine Inflice against them. No provision could hinder their consumption. The King so tent Religious men of divers Orders , but this I know that the Dominicans and Franciscans contradicted each other, and what one approved the other difallowed, although after the other had

not absolue them except they franchised the Indians, and the other absolued them neverthelesse. Lib.4. c.2. Much diffrutation hath beene about the Indians teruice amongst the Thomists, Canonills, and famous Lawyers and Diuines, but their differences have done little good to the Indians or the plantation; and in a short time both this Iland and the three adiopning, Saint Iohn, Jamaica, and (wha, remayned defolate, being by the Friars meanes (which I thinke, meant well) disperied nion that if a Christian Prince had this Iland of Hispaniola onely, hee might make it as good as either England or Sicily: fuch is the store of Gold, the prosperous successe of things carried from

left that opinion, the Contradictors would embrace it, still agreeing in disagreeing : which cau-

fed much danger not onely to new Converts, but also to old Christians : whiles one Order would

thorow the Hand, to leffen their labours, which the Gentlemen imposed on them. I am of opi-Spaine, the Beenes (which I knew first carried thither from Spaine) being alreadie so multiplyed that they kill them for the Hides, leaving the field in the fields of fine hundred at once :

C H A P.2. Strange Huracans, Spout, Monster, Hawk. Great burts by least Dermin. 997

and Roderigo di Baffidas Bifhop of Venefuels hath therein 16000. Beeues, and the Treasurer Paf-Comonte as many ; others 8000. or more, likewile in other Beafts, Seeds, Oranges, Limons Figs. Pomegranets, &c.

Of their Zemes, Idols, Sepulchres, and other things concerning their Religion, the Reader may fee Outdos 66 enough in the minth Booke and fourteenth Chapter of my Pilgrimage; and of the Spanish first voyages this their in the beginning of this worke, which Ouicedo handleth in his former Bookes.

Their Huracans (to they call tempetts of winde and raine together) are very excelline. An. 1508, on the third of August, all the thatched houses in Saint Domingo were throwne to the Lib.6.63. ground, and some also of stone; all the houses also in the Towne Bonanentura, which might thence be named Malauentura: in the Hauen were funke twentie Ships and Caruels, a North-

wind first and after a South-wind playing their furious prizes, one carrying out the Vessels in despight of all prouisions to Sea, and the other as terribly forcing them agains to the Hauen (it the loffe of thips and men may permit that name) yea on Land many men were carried in the ftreets and fields divers bow-shots before they could stay themselves. Hell feemed to have Superfictions beene opened, and the Deuils to have carried things to and fro, Yet in Iuly following was a conceit the worse, which now are allayed and not so violent have the Blessed Sacrament hath beene placed Sacrament, worse, which now are allayed and not so violent times the bletted sacrament nath been placed in Churches. I have seene the space of a Crosse-bow shot or two, all the ground courted ned against with Trees plucked up by the Windes from the Rootes, and ours have sometime by dangers of the Hardings the way beene forced to climbe from tree to tree ouer fuch a passage, with rents and perills of the conscion enough.

The Cocks in Spaine crow at mid-night and towards day: but here in the shutting in of the e- Libr. 610. uening, or two houres within night, and two houres before day, and not at all at mid-night: Cocks & Cars fome crow in the first watch and not elie all night. Their Cats also vie their lusts all the yeere differing from and without walling noile, which in Spaine, France, Sicily, and other places in Europe and the Spains Afrike which I have teene goe on Catter-walling onely about Februarie. In the Ile of Nanaza Entill dee Wellward from Hilbaniola in the way thence to lamaica, the Rocks are seene under the water: much agree and amongst them a fathome and five foote under the falt water there ariseth a spring of good with the ladies fresh water vpon the Sea, spowting vp bigger then a mans arme, higher then the salt water Strange water that it may easily be taken in. I have not feene it, but Stephen Rocca a person of credit teftifieth four,

30 this of his owne fight and tafte. But I have feene in the Iland Dommica at the River Acquata, twentie paces wide, and not deeper then the arme pits, there is a hot spring, that if one take vp the Sands they feeme like embers in his fift, and to is the water a fpan deepe about the Sands, which on the top is fresh and like other water.

Ouiedos 8, 9, 10, and 11. Booker are of Plants and Trees in those parts. The 12. of Creatures Uh. 13, e.s. before mentioned: the 13, of Fishes, in which he telleth that An. 1529, going from the Gulfe of O. rotigua to Panama two hundred leagues Eastward , neere the mouth of the Gulfe , wee faw a Filhor great Water-monfter, which at times lifted it felfe right vp aboue the Water fo farre Sea Monfter that the head and both the armes might bee feene, which feemed higher then our Carauell and flupendious: all her Mafts. Thus did fhee rife and fall divers times beating the water firongly, not caffing

40 any water out of the mouth. A younger or less of the same kinde did likewise, swimme a little distant from the greater. Some judged it to bee a Whale with her young one, which co thers denyed, faying, a Whale had no armes. To my judgement each arme might be five and twentie foote long, and as bigge as a Butt or Pipe: the head fourteene or fifteene foote high and much more in breadth; and the rest of the body larger. That of her which appeared about water, was aboue five times the height of a meane man, which make five and twentie paces." Loren- " 25, 1915, 20 Marino Canon of the Church of Golden Cassile, Sancio di Tudola, &c. were with me : and we whichiome were all afraid when the came neere our final Carulel. Shee fermed to disporte fisher a special approching, which fuddenly arose much to our purpose, from the West, and brought vs in fadous.

In Hispaniola and the neighbouring Hands is a strange bird of prey, as bigge as a great " Gania Lib.14.67. and much like it : fhee preyeth on the Land on birds , &c. and on fish in the Water , fhee is An Italian footed like water-fowles and goeth like a Goofe, but hath talons like Hawkes, and fastens fowle. therewith on the fifthes which thee eates (fo taken) either in the Water or on the Rocks , or Water hawkes. as thee flyeth in the Aire holding it betweene her feete. The Christians call them Affori

What feath the Ants did in Hispaniola, is before mentioned, in the yeere 1519. and the next L.tf.c.t. following, and the Citie of Saint Domingo, was almost dishabited by this great Armie of little Greatestharme creatures, as in Spaine a Citie was dispeopled by Conies, and which lately happened to the Ile by least crea-Porto Santo; in Theffalia (which almost tell out to the English Colonie in Bermuda) to another tures. 60 Citie by Rats, to the Acarinta by Frogges, to the Minnimes by Fleas, to Amuele in Italie by

Serpents, and to another part thereof by Sparrowes; to divers places of Africa often by Locusts: to can the Great God arme the least creatures to the destruction of proud vainglorious men. And this milerie fo perplexed the Spaniards, that they fought as strange a remedie as was the difeafe,

Ga!.4.

Ep. 4.

Iob-14.

Col.z.

Heb.13.

Epb.s.

1.lab.4.

Mat II.

Num.11.

ler.2.13.

1.Tim.4.

Vocertainty of which was to chuse some Saint for their Patron against the Antes. Alexander Giraldine, the Bi-Superfluon. Shop having sung a solemne and Pontificall Masse, after the Confectation and Elevation of the Sacrament, and demout Prayers made by him and the people, opened a Booke in which was a Catalogue of the Saints, by lot to chuse some he or the Saint, whom God should please to appoint their Aduocate against that Calamitie. And the Lot fell vpon Saint Saturnine whose Feath is on the nine and twentieth of Nouember : after which the Ant-damage became more tolersble and by little and little diminished, by Gods mercie and intercession of that Saint : I note in the rather, because the Bishop and that Saint were both Romanes, and as that Martyr had made mute the Idols in Toledo, (as is written in the Hillorie of his Martyrdome) so now was Idolatry (and I pray what was this?) destroyed in Hispaniola? Hee might have faid exchanged ! a piti. full case that when God bath sont bis owne Sonne made of a woman, made under the Law, Gre. Who hath dred for our (yea, that Martyrs) finnes, rifen for our Instification, ascended on high to gine gifts to mens and is there, and therefore, fet downe at Gods right hand to make intercession for vs summers, to take possession for vs mortals, to accomplish, as our Amen, all the promises of this life, and that which is to come, whether against Ants or Deuils; and in him it hath pleased the Father that all falnesse Should dwell; yea (beyond and it pleased) in him dwelletb the fulnesse of the Godbead bodily, and we are compleate in him, and he is all in all, rofterday, to day, the fame for ever; which bath loved vs, and ein men himselfe for us, which is lone, which hath inuited vs, Come to me all ye that labour, which hath incited vs by all attractives : that after all this, men, Christian men should goe cast Lots for an Interceffor, and neglecting Christ, dreame of Romane carnall phancies, or runne mad with Romails 20 superstitious phrenies; wherein if the bodie be delinered, as happened to the Insting I fractices. with their Quaile-flore, the burthen is made double to the foule, when God heareth in his anger. Such Cifternes doe they digge which forfake the Fountaine of lining waters, enen broken Cisternes which can hold no waters: the belt of Saints like the wife Virgins, having no more Oile then will fuffice their owne Lampes, and that also received out of anothers fulnesse, of whose fulnesse wee all base receined grace for grace; faid a principall Saint,

There are Caterpillers, which shine in the night fiftie or a hundred paces off, only from that part of the bodie whence the legges iffue; others only have their head shining, I have seene iome a spanne long very fearefull, but for any thing I have heard, harmeleffe. Flies are leffe, but more hurtfull then in Spaine : but these in kindes and colours are so diversified that it is impossi- 20 ble to write them : and fo may be faid of other small creatures in those parts.

L.16.c.15.

Lawyers dan-Spanifo Indies.

In his fixteenth Booke he declareth the Conquest of the Ile Borichen, or Saint John and the quarrels betwixt the Spaniards, the learning of some breeding such differtions, that not without cause (faith our Author) in Golden Castile and in other parts, the King forbad Law-learned men and Proctors should passe thither, as men infectious by sowing strife where they ought not. In this Ile , the people and other things are at before is faid of Hifpaniola ; there are more Birds in Saint lobe , rich Mineralls of Gold , certaine Battes which the people eate; and Lignum Santhum groweth there . more excellent then the Guaiacan for the French Difease and others.

L-17-6-4-Filchy Mar-

In his feuenteenth Booke he writeth of Cuba. The people and other things are much like to 40 Hiftaniola, Intheir Mariages, all the guells of the Bridegroomes ranke (as Caciques, if hee bee a Cacique or Principall, or Plebeians as he is) lye with the Spoule before he himfelfe may doe it: after which the with her fift bent comes crying with a loud voyce, Manicato, Manicato, that is forced and full of force, as glorying in her thame. They are in vices like those of Hill aniela, and will be no better Christians then other Indians, whatforuer Peter Martyr writeth from Encifes Relations. For I have feene more Indians then they both, and by experience of those Nations know, that none or very few of them are Christians of their owne will and accord : and when any are baptized being of age, he doth it more for some by-purpose then for zeale of the faith: He thinkes it a for there remaines to him nothing but the name, which also soone after he forgets. Perhaps there are some faithfull, but I beleeve they are very rare.

Fable that is cold of Groffes found in I wea-

The Creatures and Plants of Spaine profper well there, as doe the natural which are the fame which are in Hifpaniola. The people were exhaufted when they first went into New Spaine, and with the fecond Armie of Grigialus, and with the third of Cortefe, and with the fourth of Pamphilo di Narbaez, all by order of Lieutenant Velasco: whereby Cuba was in manner dispeopled, and by the former causes mentioned of Hispaniela, and by the contagion of the small Pockes which was vinuerfall in all thefe Ilands : So that the Great God hath in manner wholly extinguished them for their (not without others) sinnes. They have much Gold and Brasse: vie to fifth much with the Roser so before mentioned, as also that Wild-goole chase. There are innumerable Cranes, fuch as are in Spaine; the Boyes take infinite Egges and young ones. There ges of Fowks are Turtles greater then in Spaine. Euery yeare there paffe from the end of Cuba infinite numbers 60 of divers forts of Birds, which come from the North of the firme Land, and croffe over the Alacrain Hands and Cuba, and flye oue: the Gulfe Southwards. I have feene them paffe over Darien and Nombre de dios and Panama in divers yeeres, in the Firme Land; so many that they co-

ner the Skie : and this paffage or march continueth a moneth or more about the moneth of March, I thinke they flie round about the World; for they never are feene to returne toward Linears. the West or North : and we see them not every yeers one after another; from morning to night the aire is coursed, and fome flie fo high that they cannot bee feene, others lower yet higher then the Mountaines tops. They come from the North-west and North to the Southwards, and then turne South-weft, occupying in length more then the eye can different, and a great space in breadth, The lowest are Eaglets and Eagles, and all seems Birds of prey of many kinds and plumes : The higher cannot bee discerned in their plumes, but in manner of flying and q antitie appeare of divers forts.

There have beene Serpents killed in Cuba, as bigge as a mans thigh, and five and twentie, or thirtie foot long and more. They are tame, and the ledient cate them, and find sometimes it their bellies fixe or feuen creatures bigger then Conies, which they swallow whole.

I am loth to lead you with this Author along with Grigialua, in his long Expedicion from Lize 18. hence to Incatan and other parts. Neere to Porto de termini, he found two Trees feering let by hand, standing alone, and sittene paces off discret look of Chalke. They saw two Images made Abomin ble of the wood Copes, in manner of Sodomitical villenie joyaed together; and another of Chalke deue long. with his circumcifed member betwixt his hands.

Immics was in people, vices, creatures and other things like the former: they were the In. Lises, unnors of the reserfs-fifting and Goofe-catching with Gourds or Pompions aforefaid, which 20 fometimes they practifed allo with leaves and greene boughes on their heads, and vied that Garland, as is before faid of the Pompions. Of Cubagua the Pearle Hand, and of the Pearle-silhing L 19 c.s. is spoken before. In Cabagua is a bituminous Fountayne, having otherwise no water to drinke, Pi ch Found nor Hearbes, nor Trees but a few of Guaiacan, nor any liming creatures , though at first comming taine. of the Christians there were a few Conies. At the East point is the Fountayne running into the Sea with an Oily substance floating on it, profitable for Medicine there called Desils Dang.
They that live there, fetch their water seven leagues off from Commans, on the firms Land, and wood from Margarita. The Kings fifth of the Pearle-fishing hath yeelded 1,000. Duckets yeerly : a thing not knowne that so many Pearles have beene taken from so small a space, the

Hand of Conseques not compating about three leagues. In the Gulfe of Ornigues, and the Hands Legislation of the Province of Nieurgas on the South Seagues many the definite of a long former, Two though the Consequence of th pened they have a fishie substance within them , and thing within as the Pearle-oysters doe, Pearles. halfe their length, thence by degrees loofing that hining toward the broader end. The Pearles within them are not fo fine as the other. The Indiana via the their too digge their loofe ground,

faitning the shell to a handle of wood, binding it fast and making a kind of Spade thereof faithing the lifeti to a name of wood, bunding treat and manning a nine or space to trees.

In the yeare 1517. An Englishman * videt colour, of Dictourry came with a great hip to roube with a wind a faith of the Wards Braillon the Firme Land, and thence transfet the Hipminia, and came neere the Hauen saint, A.1517. of Saint Dominge, and fent his Boat full of people on thosre, and defired Trade. But the Cap-Livelly taine of the Fort thot from the Caftle at the Boate, because thee came directly to the Port 3 and " He cale him

taine of the Fort mortion the cantes at the same of the same at the cantes at the same at ded victuals and prouitions for their thip, complaining of the wrong done them at Saint Domingo, comming thither for Trade, to buy with their Mony, and to barter Commodities. There they Penet. got some victuals for which they paid in wrought pieces of Pewter and other things: and so returned towards Europe, where it is likely they came not; for thete was neuer any more heard

The next years a French Pirat guided by a Spanish Pilot, came to trade in the Iland of Pearles L.20, and a Portugall Carauell which he had taken on the Coaft of Brafil, and would have landed his Boats full of men, but was relifted, and a Battel betwixt both parcs followed, in which thirteene 50 Frenchmen were flaine, and two of ours. Three or foure Nanarreis and Biskainers field from them and faid the French were Theeues and came to take the Iland: whereupon they went with all

their firength, and tooke her Boat, and the fhip fled out of fight, &c. Omicdes twentieth Booke is of shipwrackes and disaduentures which have happened to the Spanards in those parts. One which happened 1514, is admirable, the thip finking and fine and twentie persons escaping in the Boat, hast forbidding prouision of Card, Compasse or vi-Quall, to faue their lines. Thus lived they twelve dayes at Sea ; neither had they any thing to eate or drinke : only a young man had faued two pounds of Bisket, which beeing divided amongit them, he which had most had not aboue an ounce and halfe. Vrine, or the Sea was their drinke. In this case they made Vowes to our L die of Antica in Simil: and on the twelfth day 60 having made a Saile of their fhirts, they came to Silner-port in Hifpaniola. Their Pilot Anto Calno told me the Storie. The same yeare in the Pleet of Pedrarias de Anilla a Portugal youth, being scoffed at, and flooted by the Spaniards, leaped into the Sea in a fresh gale, and not without the wonder of all men was taken up by another ship aline, whom after I saw vaunting of this folly, and faying that no Cathlian durit have done it; which I easily believe, as having more wit then this

Ouiedo writ o:her Bookes Land, which are not extant

Foole. Yet will I imitate alittle this foolish Portugall, and leape out of Oniedos Spanifo (fre who will not feare such dreadfull shipwrackes as this Booke, the last which hath come "to other hands, is full of?) and fwim alhoare, or feeke other passage with scotta, in a new or rather an old Voyage for Discouerie of the Mexican Antiquities.

CHAP. IIII.

Mexican Antiquities gathered out of the Writings of Ios H-PHYS ACOSTA a learned lefuite.



Very Historie well written is profitable to the Reader: For at the Wifeman faith, That which hash beene, is, and that which thall been, is that which hash. which hath beene, is, and that which hall bee, is that which hath bene: Haman et his pe have made refemblemen in hemificus, and fome grow wife p his which happened to others. There is no Nation, how harbarous found, that have no found they in them, good, and worthy of commendation; is in Common-weste found in dear the refer to the product of the second to the second the

mon utilitie, to be a Relation or Historie of things, the which in the effect of truth have happened, it 10 most vitalite, we make the defense of the profitable thing, neither ough it to bee reicited, for that it concerns the Indians. As wee fee that those Authors that treate of naturall things, write not onely of generous Beasts, notable and rare Plants, and of Precious Stones, but also of wilde Beasts, common rous Bestit, restance are remain; army excession counce, on any of muse destre, common Hearber, and hafe and only ar Stoner, for that there is almayer in them fome properties worthy obser-uation. If therefore there were nothing else in this Discourse, but that it is a Historie, and no fables nor sixthms, it were no unmorthy Subject to be written, or read. There is yet another more particular. reason, which is, that we ought berein to esteeme that which is worthy of memorie, both for that it is a Nation little effermed, and also a Subsett different from that of our Europe, as these Nations he, wherein wee should take most pleasure and content, to understand the ground of their beginning, then 10 wherein wee founds take most pleafure and content, to underfland the ground of their beginning, then 38 measures of fift, with their happies and voltappies. Admentates. And their factorist is not easily pleafast and agreeable, but also profitable, especially we facto as base the charge to rate and queerne them; for the knowledge of their Adix unites vs 10 gives credit, and also partly teach bow they ought to be intreased, real to the content of the content of the content of the content of the profits of the most possible that the Adix unites vs 10 gives for the most possible them, fopping that the Adix and the most pleafure of the foreign that the foreign the content of the content that we cannot clear this cream better, then by the transport of the Atix and Adix and the traffic of the content of the cont the glorie of his Dinine greatnesse, and some profit to these people, to whom he hath imparted the Law an of bis boly Gofbell.

ð. I

Of the ancient Inhabitants of New Spaine, and of the fixe Linages of the Nauatlacas, of the Mexican Exodus, and Adventures by the way : the foundation of Mexico, their first King and Tribute.

Chichimecas.

He ancient and first Inhabitants of those Prouinces, which wee call New Spaine, were men very barbarous and fauage, which lived onely by hunting, for this reason they were called Chichimecas. They did neither fow nor till the ground, neither lued they together; for all their exercise was to hunt, wherein they were very expert. They Their furge together; for all their extends was beaft-like, without any policie, and they went all course of life, lived in theroughest parts of the Monntaynes beaft-like, without any policie, and they went all naked. They hunted wilde Beafts, Hares, Conies, Weezels, Mowles, wild Cats, and Birds, yea vicleane beafts, as Snakes, Lizards, Locusts and Wormes, whereon they fed, with some hearbs and roots. They flept in the Mountaynes, in caues and in bulhes, and the wives likewife went a hunting with their husbands, leauing their young children in a little panier of Reeds, tyed to the boughes of a Tree, which defired not to fucke vntill they were returned from hunting. They 60 had no Superiours, nor did acknowledge or worthip any gods, neither had any manner of Cere-

There is yet to this day in New Spaine of this kind of people, which line by their Bowes and Arrowes, the which are very hurtfull, for that they gather together in troopes to doe mil-

phiefe, and to rob : neither can the Spaniards by force or cunning reduce them to any policie or obediende: for having no Townes nor places of relidence, to fight with them, were properly to mint after fauage beatts, which featter and hide themselues in the most rough and courted places of the Mountaynes. Such is their manner of living even to this day, in many Provinces of the Indies. Thole in New Spaine, which they call Octomies, were of this fort, beeing commonly Octomies. poore Indians, inhabiting a rough and barren Land, and yet they are in good numbers, and liue sogether wich some order, and firch as doe know them, find them no lesse apt and capeable of matters of Christian Religion, then others which are held to be more rich and better gouerned. Comming therefore to our librech, the Chichimeca and Ottomies which were the first Inhabito rants of New Spaine, for that they did neither till not fowe the Land, left the belt and most fertile of the Countrey vnpeopled, which, Nations that came from farre did possess, whom they called Nanatalcas, for that it was a more civil and politicke Nation; this word fignifies a people that footer well, in respect of other barbarous Nations without reason. These second peoplers Neueralens, came from other farre Countreyes, which lye toward the North , where now they have discovered a Kingdome they call New Mexico.

There are two Prounces in this Countrey, the one called Azelai, which is to lay a place of Artlan. Herme: the other Tuculbuacas, which fignifies a Land of fuch, whose Grandfathers were dinine. Tuubmean, The Inhabitants of these Provinces have their houses, their Lands tilled, Gods, Customes, and Ceremonies, with like order and government to the Nanatalcas, and are divided into Jenen Tribes 20 or Nations rand for that they have a custome in this Province, that every one of these Linages

hath his place and private Territorie, the Namaraleas paint their beginning and first Territorie in foure of a Caue, and fay that they came forth of fewer Cause to come and people the Land of Mexico, whereof they make mention in their Hiftoric, where they paint feuen Caues and men comming forth of them. By the supputation of their Bookes , it is about eight bundred yeares Their beginfince these Namadeas came forth of their Country, reducing which to our accompt, was a nings 900, bout the years of our Lord 720. When they left their Countrey to come to Mexico, they haved years ages, four efeore yeares when the ways and the cause of this their long flay in their Voyage, was, that their Gods (which without doubt were Denils, and space visibly wnto them) had persuaded them to feeke new Lands that had certaine figures. And therefore they came discourring the

30 whole Land, to fearch for these tokens which their Idols had given them; and in places where whole Land, to learn to the course which they had first peopled; and before the Land, and as they discoured better Country's, they left those which they had first peopled; leaning full some, especially better Country's, they left those which they had first peopled; leaning full some, especially better countreyes, they set those winto also had not peopled; reating this more je peculity the agod, ficke folkes, and the wearie; yes, they did plant and build there, whereof wee fee the remainders at this day. In the way where they polito, they foint four-clore yeeres in this manner of leifurely trauell, the which they might have done in a moneth. By this meanes they entred the Land of Mexico, in the yeere 902, after our computation.

tred the Land of Mexico, in the yeare 902, after our computation.

These seven Linages I have spoken of, came not forth allogether: the first were the Sochimil. How the fax
or, which signise a Nation of the feeds of slowers. Those peopled the bankes of the great Lake of
Mexico towards the South, and did build a Citic of their name, and many Villages. Long time
Mexico towards the South, and did build a Citic of their name, and many Villages. Long time
positive towards the South, and did build a Citic of their name, and many Villages. Long time
specially so five the south of the second to the second the Lake towards the vect, and they include any, an Ants Noft, and they continued long time Accopatales, which is to fay, an Ants Noft, and they continued long time Accopatales. mightie. After them came those that peopled Tescueo, which be those of Culbus, which is to say, Tesc a crooked people : for that in their Countrey there was a Mountaine much bending. And in this Cuibaa. fort this Lake was enuironed with these foure Nations, these inhabiting on the East, and the Tepanecas on the North. These of Tesones, were held for great Courtiers, for their tongue and pronunciation is very sweet and pleasant. Then arrived the Tlalluicans, which signifies men of

so the Sierre or Mountaine. Those were the most rude and grosse of all the rest, who finding all Tlasuicente the Plaines about the Lake postessed even vnto the Sierre, they passed to the other side of the Mountaine, where they found a very fertile, spacious and warme Countrey, where they built many great Villages, calling the Metropolitane of their Pronince Quahunachua, which is as Quahunathua much to fay, as a place that founds the voice of an Eagle, which our common people call by corruption , Quernamaca, and at this day they call this Province, the Marquifate. Those of the fixt Generation, which are the Tlafcaltecans, which is to fay, Men of bread, paffed the Moun-Tlafcaltecans taine towards the East, croffing all the Sierre, or Mountaine of Menade, where that famous Uniem is betwixt Mexico and the Citie of Augels, where they did find a good Countrey, making many buildings. They built many Townes and Cities, whereof the Metropolitane was called

60 by their name Tlascala. This is the Nation which fauoured the Spaniards at their entrie, by whose helpe they did winne this Countrey, and therefore to this day they pay no Tribute, but enioy a generall exemption. When all their Nations peopled their Countreyes, the Ebinchimecans being the ancient Inhabitants, made no resistance, but fled, and as people amazed, they hid themselves in the most obscure of the Rockes. But those that inhabited on the other side of the

Mountaine where the Tlascallecans had planted themselues, did not suffer them in quiet, as the Mountaine where the stagestones and part themselves in defence to preserve their Country, and being Giants as the Histories report, they lought to expell the last Commers, but they were vanquisht by the policy of the Tiascatteeans, who counterfeiting a peace with them, inuited them to a great banquet, and when they were buileft in their drunkennesse, there were some laid in ambush, who secretly stole away their weapons, which were great Clubs, Targets, Swords of wood, and other fuch armes. Then did they fuddenly fet vpon them , and the Chichimecon fee. king to defend themselues, they did want their armes, so as they fled to the Mountaines and Ro. refts adjoyning, where they pulled downe Trees, as if they had beene stalkes of Lettuces. But in the end, the Tiascalteeans being armed, and marching in order, they defeated all the Giants, no. 18 leauing one aliue. We must not hold this of the Giants to be strange, or a fable; for at this day we finde dead mens bones of an incredible bigneffe,

When I was in Mexico, in the yeere 1586, they found one of those Giants buried in one of our Farmes, which we call Jefu du Mont, of whom they brought a tooth to bee feene, which (without augmenting) was as bigge as the fift of a man, and according to this, all the reft was proportionable, which I faw and admired at his deformed greatnesse. The Tlascaltecans by this victorie remayned peaceable, and so did the rest of the Linages. These sixe Linages did always victoris remayared peaceasis, and conductor to the samples a note that allowed the samples and always entertrains amitte together, marrying their children one with another, and disuding their limit quietly then they studied with an emulation to encrease and beautife their Commonwests. The barbarous Chichimecans, seeing what passed, began to vie some government, and to apparell to Beginnings of themselues, being ashamed of what had passed; for till then they had no shame. And having a

bandoned feare by their communication with these other people, they began to learne many things of them, building small Cottages, having some policy and government. They did also choole Lords, whom they did acknowledge for their Superiors, by meanes whereof they did in a manner quite abandon this bruitish life, yet did they al wayes continue in the Mountaines dinded from the reft. Three hundred and two yeeres after the former two Linages had left their Country, toinha-

Of the Mexicans departure, bite New Spaine, the Country being now well peopled, and reduced to some forme of govern-

otheri tour ment, Thice of the feuenth Case or Line arrived, which is the Chescions Nation, the which ping the Pro. lines of Me. like vnto the reft, left the Pronince of Azalas, and Tenculouseau, a politike, courtlike, and was 10 times of Me. like Nation, They did worship the Idol! Vizilpatzli, the Deuill that was in this Idol! spake, 10 times of Me. thince or 22.

chouse as the and gouerned this Nation easily. This Idoll commanded them to leave their Country, promising to make them Princes and Lords over all the Provinces which the other fixe Nations did pol Deuills emula: feffe, that he would give them a Land abounding with gold, filter, precious stones, feathers, and rich mantels : whereupon they went forth, carrying their Idoll with them in a Coffer of Reedes, supported by foure of their principall Priests, with whom he did talke and reueale vnto them in fecret, the successe of their way and voyage, adusting them of what should happen. He likewise gaue them Lawes, and taught them the customes, ceremonies, and saerifices they should observe. They did not advance nor mooue without commandement from this Idoll. He gave them notice when to march; and when to stay in any place, wherein they wholly obeyed him. The first thing 40 they did wherefoeuer they came, was to build a House or Tabernacle for their false god, which they fet alwayes in the middeft of their Campe, and there placed the Arke vpon an Altar, in the fame manner as they have vied in the holy Christian Church. This done, they fowed their land for bread and pulses, which they vied : and they were to addicted to the obedience of their god, that if he commanded them to gather, they gathered, but if he commanded them to raise their Campe, all was left there for the nourishment of the aged, ficke, and wearie, which they left purposely from place to place, that they might people it, pretending by this meanes, that all the

Land should remaine inhabited by their Nation.

tion of that works of God in bringing the defert to Tabernacle.

> We may well judge what this Vuzlipuzli was, for that there was never feene nor heard speake of customes more superstitious, nor sacrifices more cruell and inhumane, then those which hee taught them. To conclude, they were invented by the enemie of mankinde. The Chiefe and Captaine whom they followed, was called Mexi, whence came the name of Mexico, and of the Mexican Nation. This people marching thus at leifure, as the other fixe Nations had done peopling and tilling the Land in divers parts, whereof there is yet some shewes and ruines : and after they had endured many trauels and dangers, in the end they came to the Prouince of Mechonacan, which is as much to fay, as a land of fish, for there is great abundance in goodly great Lakes, where contenting themselves with the situation and temperature of the ground, they refolued to flay there. Yet having consulted with their Idoll vpon this point, and finding him vnwilling, they demanded license to leave some of their men to people so good a Land, the which he granted, teaching them the meanes how to doe it, which was, that when the Men and Wo-62 men should be entred iuto a goodly Lake called Pascnare, to bathe themselves, those which remayned on Land, should steale away all their clothes, and then secretly raise their Campe, and depart without any bruit, the which was effected, and the rest which dreamt not of this deceit (for the pleasure they tooke in bathing) comming forth and finding themselves spoyled of their

CHAP.4. S.2. Details Oracles, Apifb emulations, Murtberous infructions.

garments, and thus mocked and left by their Companions, they remayned discontented and vexed therewith : fo as to make shew of the hatred they had conceiued against them , they fay that they changed their manner of life and their language, At the least it is most certaine, that the Mechanicans have beene al wayes enemies to the Mexicans, and therefore they came to congratulate the Marqueffe De Valle, after his victorie obtayned when he had conquered Mexico.

From Mechonacan to Mexico, are aboue fittie leagues, and vpon the way is Malinalco, where Of that which it happened, that complaying to their Idoll of a woman that was a notable witch, which came happened in in their company carrying the name of their fifter to their god, for that with her wicked artes Malmale Tale thee did them much harme, pretending by certaine meanes to bee worshipped of them as their tener, Chep. 5. 10 goddeffe : the Idoll spake in a dreame to one of those old men that carried the Arke, commanding

gooten: rate footh gaste in average to one or amore a man since and that they floodd leave this him to comfort the people, making them new and great promiles, and that they floodd leave this his fifter with her family, being cruell and bad, raying their Campe at mid-night in great falence, leaning on thew what way they paffed, So they did, and the Witch remaying alone with Wich for falence, leaning on thew what way they paffed, So they did, and the Witch remaying alone with Wich for falence, the same of the work of the work of the same of the work of t her family in this fort, peopled a Towne which they call Malmales, the Inhabitants whereof, ken. are held for great Sorcerers, being issued from such a mother. The Mexicans for that they were greatly diminished by these divisions, and by the number of sicke and wearied persons, which they had left behinde, meant to repayre themselues, and to stay in a place called Tula. which figuifies a place of Reedes. There their Idoll commanded them to flop a great River, that it might couer a great Playne, and by the meanes he taught them, they did inuiron a little Hill called 20 Costepes, making a great Lake, the which they did plant round about with Willowes, Elmes,

Sapines, and other Trees. There began to breede much fish, and many birds came thither : fo as to became a very pleafant place. The fituation of this place, feeming pleafant voto them, and being wearied with trauell, many talked of peopling there, and to patie no farther: wherewith the Deuill was much displeased, threatning the Priests with death, commanding them to returne the River to her courfe, faying, that hee would that night chaftile those which had beene Deui's proud turne the River to her courte, laying, that nee would mist night charter under white measurement of the dilute delibedient as they had deferted. And as to doe ill is proper to the Devill, and that the dilute, equation in Inflice doth often fuffer fuch to be delivered into the hands of fuch a Tormentor, that choole punishing dilutered to the following Campe, and in the morning going thither, they found those dead that had talked of staying therous facti-20 there. The manner of their death, was, that their fromacks were opened, and their hearts pul- fices,

led out. And by that means, this good god dupth thele poor militable Creatures, the kinder of facrifices that pleafed him, which was, to opening the flowards, to pull out the board, as they have finee practiced in their horrible facrifices. Seeing this punishment, and that the Playare was dryed, the Lake being emptied, they asked counfell of their god what to doe, who commanded them to paffe on, the which they did by little and little, vntill they came to Chapattopee, a league Chapattepee. from Mexice, famous for the pleafantneffe thereof. They did fortifie themselves in these Moun-From Macros, manus to the plantature current. In my out touch temperate in the mean rate in the states, feering the Nations which inhabited that Country, the which were opposite vinto them, especially for that one named [*pst.] finne to this Sorteredli, left in *Malinako*, had blamed and fooken ill of the *Macross* for this *Total by the commandement of his mother; awhile after

40 followed the Mexicans course, labouring to incense the Tapaneens, and other neighbours against them, even vnto the Chalcus: is as they came with a strong Armie to destroy the Maxicans. Capil in the meane space stood vpon a little Hill in the middest of a Lake, called Acopiles, attending the destruction of his Enemies, and they by the aduice of their Idoll, went against him, tooke him fuddenly, and flue him, carrying his heart to their god, who commanded them to cast Metamorphos it into the Lake, fayning that thereof did grow a plant called Tamal, where fince Mexico was fish built. They came to fight with the Chalcas, and other Nations, having chofen for their Captaine, a valiant man, called Vitzilonilti, who in an encounter, was taken and flaine by the Enemies. But for all this, they were not discouraged, but fought valiantly; and in despisht of their Enemies they brake the fquadrons, and carrying their Aged, their Women, and young Children in the midit of their battaile, they passed on to Atlaces among, a Towns of the Culbums, whom they Atlaces among, found solemnising of a Feast, in which place they fortified. The Chalcus, nor the other Nations

did not follow them, but grieued to be defeated by fo small a number of men; they being in so great multitudes retyred to their Townes. The Mexicans, by the aduice of their Idoll, fent their Meffengers to the Lord of Culbuacan, Of the warres

to demand a place to dwell in, who after hee had imparted it to his people, granted them the black in place of Treaspon, which fignifies white waters, to the end they should all perish there, being full the most call. of Vipers, Snakes, and other venemous beafts which bred in a Hill neere adiopning. But being buscen, Change perswaded and taught by their Deuill, they accepted willingly what was offered, and by their Treasen. deuillisharte, tamed these beasts, so as they did them no harme; yea, they vied them as meate, 60 eating them with delight and appetite. The which the Lord of Culhuacan feeing, and that they had tilled and fowed the Land, he refolued to receive them into the Citie, and to contract ami-

tie with them. But the god whom the Mexicans did worship (as he is accustomed to do no good. but ill) faid vnto his Priefts, that this was not the place where hee would have them flay, and that they must go forth making warres. Therefore they must seeke forth a Woman, and name her

I occy.

Queene of the Goddeffe of Difcord. Whereupon they refolued to fend to the King of Culhuatan : to demand Licord made his daughter to be Queene of the Mexicans, and mother to their god, who received this ambaffage be the King of willingly, lending his daughter presently gorgeoutly attired and well accompanied. The fame night thee arrived, by order of the murtherer whom they worthipped, they killed her critello and having flayed her artificially as they could doe, they did clothe a young man with her strik and theraupon her apparell, placing him neere their Idoll, dedicating him for a Goddeffe and the mother of their god, and ever after did worthip it, making an Idoll which they called Toter, which is to fay, our grand mother. Not content with this crueltie, they did maliciously innite the Kine of Culbuacan, the father of the young Maid, to come and worship his daughter, who was now confecrated a goddesse, who comming with great Presents, and well accompanied with his prople, he was led into a very darke Chappell where their Idoll was, that he might offer facrifice to his daughter that was in that place. But it chanced that the Incense that was woon the harth. according to their cultome, kindled in such fort, as he might differne his daughters fraire, and hauing by this meanes discouered the crueltie and deceit, he went forth crying aloud, and with all his men he fell voon the Mexicans, forcing them to retyre to the Lake , foas they were almost drowned. The Mexicans defended themselves, casting certaine little darts; which they yied in the warres, wherewith they much galled their enemies. But in the end they got Land, and leauing that place, they coafted along the Lake, very weary and wet; the Women and little Children crying and making great exclamations against them and their god that had brought them into this dustrelle. They were inforced to passe a River that could not bee waded thorow, and 20 therefore they aduised to make small Boates of their Targets and of Reedes, wherein they passed, Then afterwards, having left Culbuacan, they arrived at Iztacalco, and finally to the place where the Hermitage of Saint Anthony now is, at the entrie of Mexico, and to that quarter which they now call Saint Paul. During which time their Idoll did comfort them in their trauels . and incouraged them, promiting great matters.

Of the four-

The time being now come, that the Father of lyes should accomplish his promise made to his dation of Mex- people, who could no longer fuffer fo many turnings, travels, and dangers, it happened that some old Priefls or Sorcerers, being entred into a place full of water-lillies, they met with a very faire and cleere current of water, which feemed to be filter, and looking about, they found the Trees, Meadowes, Fifth, and all that they beheld to be very white: wondering hereat, they remembred a prophesie of their god, whereby he had given them that for a token of their place of rest, and to make them Lords of other Nations. Then weeping for ioy, they returned to the people with these good newes. The pight following, Uitzliputzli appeared in a dreame to an ancient Priett, faying, that they should feeke out a Timal in the Lake, which grew out of a stone (which as hee told them. was the same place where by his commandement they had cast the heart of Copil, Sonne to the Sorcereffe their enemie) and woon this Timal they should see a goodly Eagle, which fed on certaine small birds. When they should fee this, they should believe it was the place where their Citie should be built, the which should surmount all others, and be famous throughout the World. Morning being come, the old man affembled the whole people, from the greatest to the least, making a long speech vnto them, how much they were bound vnto their god; 40 and of the reuelation, which (although vnworthy) he had received that night, coincluding that all muit feeke out that happy place which was promifed them; which bred fuch denotion and ioy in them all, that prefently they undertooke the enterprise, and dividing themselves into Bands, they began to learch, following the fignes of the reuelation of the defired place. Amiddelt the thickest of these water-lillies in the Lake, they met with the same course of water they had seene the day before, but much differing, being not white, but red, like bloud, the which diuided it felie into two streames, whereof the one was of a very obscure azure, the which bred admiration in them, noting some great mysterie, as they faid. After much fearch here and there, the Tunal appeared growing on a stone, whereon was a Royall Eagle, with the wings display-Eagle glorious ed towards the Sunne, receiuing his heat. About this Eagle were many rich feathers, white, red, 50 yellow, blue, and greene, of the same fort as they make their Images, which Eagle held in his tallants a goodly bird. Those which saw it and knew it to bee the place foretold by the Oracle, fell on their knees, doing great worship to the Eagle, which bowed the head looking on every fide. Then was there great cryes, demonstrations, and thankes unto the Creator, and to their great god Vitzliputzli, who was their father, and had alwayes told them truth. For this reason they called the Citie which they founded where, Tenexistran, which fignifies Tunat on a flone, and to this day they carry in their Armes, an Eagle vpon a Tunal, with a bird in his tallant, and standing with the other vpon the Tunal. The day following, by common content they made an Hermitage adiopning to the Tunal of the Eagle, that the Arke of their god might reit there, till they might have meanes to build him a sumptuous Temple : and so they made this Hermi- 60 tage of Flagges and Turfes couered with straw. Then having confolted with their god, they refolued to buy of their Neighbours, Stone, Timber, Lime, in exchange of Fish, Frogs, and young Kids, and for Ducks, Water-hens, Courlieus, and divers other kindes of Sea fowles. All which things they did fifth and hunt for in this Lake, whereof there is great abundance. They were

Tenaxtiltan.

Tabernacle uils Arkc.

CHAPASI. Mexican Oracle, Oration, election of their first K. Acamapixtli. 1005

swith these things to the Markets of the Townes and Cities of the Tapanecans, and of them of Telenco their neighbours, and with policy they gathered together by little and little, what was neceffarie for the building of their Citie: so as they built a better Chappell for their Idoll of lime Stone Chapter and thone, and laboured to fill up a great part of the Lake with rubbish. This done, the Idoll pell. inake one night to one of his Priests, in these termes; Say unto the Mexicans , that the Noble - Oracle men divide themselves every one with their Kinsfelts and Friends, and that they divide themselves into foure principall quarters, about the house which you have built for my rest, and let every quarter build in his quarter at his pleasure. The which was put in execution : and those be the foure principall quarters of Maxico, which are called at this day Saint Iean , Saint Mary the round, Szint Pani, to and Saint Sebaftian. After this , the Mexicans being thus divided into thele foure quarters, their god commanded them to divide amongst them the gods he should name to them, and that they should give notice to every quarter, principall of the other foure particall quarters, where their gods should bee worshipped. So as under enery one of these foure principall quarters, there yeere many leffe comprehended, according to the number of the Idols which their god commanded them to worship, which they called Calputetco, which is as much to fay as God of the quarters. In this manner the Citie of Matrice Tenoxillion was founded, and God of the

grew great. ew great. This diuftion being made as aforefaid, fome old Men and Ancients held opinion, that in Ofthe sedition the diufion, they had not respected them as they deferred : for this cause, they and their of those of Tilethe diulion, they nad not respected them as they describe not this came, they and their relates and of the first kines of the first kines Lake, they found a small piece of Ground or Terrasse, which they call Tlotelon, where they the Mexicon inhabited, calling it Tlatellules, which fignifies Place of a Terraffe. This was the third diuffon did shoote.

of the Mexicans, fince they left their Country. That of Mechonacan being the first, and that change of Malinalco the fecond. Those which separated themselves and wene to Tlatellulco, were tamous men, but of bad disposition : and therefore they practifed against the Mexicans their neighbours, all the ill neighbourhood they could. They had alwayes quarrels against them . and to this day continues their hatred and old leagues. They of Tenoxtilian, feering them of and to this day contained white them, and that they multiplyed, feared that in time they might furnount them : hereupon they affembled in countell, where they thought it good to choose a 30 King, whom they should obey, and strike terrour into their Enemies, that by this meanes

they should bee more vnited and stronger among themselues, and their Enemies not prefume roo much against them. Being thus resolued to choose a King, they tooke another adunce very profitable and affured, to choose none among themselves, for the anoyding of differtions, and to gayne (by their new King) some other neighbour Nitions, by whom they were inuitoned, being destitute of all luccours. All well confidered, both to pacifie the King of Culbancan, whom they had greatly offended, having flaine and flayed the daughter of his predeceffor. and done him to great a fcorne, as also to have a King of the Mexican blond, of which generation there were many in Culbnacan, which continued there fince the time they lived in peace amongst them; they resolved to choose for their King, a young man called Acamapixil, Acamapixil, on to a great Mexican Prince, and of a Lady; daughter to the King of Calbiacian. Pre-first King of

fently they fent Ambassadors with a great Present to demand this man, who delittered their Ambassage in these termes; Great Lord, wee your Vassals - 4 Servants, placed and sout op in the Weeder and Reedes of the Lake, alone, and abandoned of six the Nations of the World, led onely and guided by our god to the place where wee are, which falls in the impribition of your limits of A(caputalco, and of Tescuco: Although you have suffered visto line and remains there; jet will weens, neither is it reason to line without a Head and Lord to command, correct, and gowerne vis. mee me, newest is required to the control of the co gine bine us for Lord, wee will esteeme him as bee desernes, seeing bee is of the Linage of the Lords of

Mexico, and the Kings of Culhuacan.

The King having confulted upon this point, and finding it nothing inconvenient to be allied to the Mexicans, who were valiant men, made them answere, That they should take his grand-child in good time, adding thereunto, that if he had beene a woman, hee would not have given her, noting the foule fact before fpoken of , ending his discourse with these wordes . Let my grand-child goe to scrue your god, and be his Lieutenant, to rule and gouerne his Creatures, by whom we line, who is the Lord of Night. Day, and Windes: Leshim gee and be Lord of the Water and Land, and possesses the Mexican Nation, take him in good time, and ose him as my some and grand-

60 child. The Maxicans gave him thankes, all inyntly deliring him to marry him with his owne hand, so as hee gaue him to wife, one of the noblest Ladies amongst them. They conducted the new King and Queene with all honor possible, and made him a solemne reception, going all in generall forth to fee the King, whom they led into Palaces which were then but meane, and having feated them in Royall Thrones, prefently one of the Ancients and an Orator

water, and great abundance of munition. He raigned in peace and rest fortie yeeres, having beene alwayes zealous for the good and increase of the Commonweale. As he drew neere his end, he did one memorable thing, that having lawfull children to whom

he might leave the succession of the Realme, yet would be not doe it, but contrariwise hee spake freely to the Common-weale, that as they had made a free Election of him, fo they should shoole him that should seeme sittest for their good Government , aduling them therein to have a care to the good of the Common-weale, and feeming grieved that he left them not freed from Tribute and lubicction, he dyed, having recommended his wife and children vnto them, he lefe all his people forrowfull for his death.

firme to gratifie, and give them contentment, seeing thou knowest we live upon their Lands, and within their limits. And ending, he repeated their wordes; Thou art welcome, Thou and the Queene our How Orations Miftris, to this your Realme. This was the speech of the old man, which with other Orations (which the Mexican Hittories doe celebrate) the Children did vie to learne by heart, and so they were kept by Tradition, some of them deserue well to bee reported in their proper termes. The King aniwering, thanked them, and offered them his care and diligence in their defence and aide in all he could. After they gave him the Oath, and after their manner fet the Royall Crowne voon his head, the which is like to the Crowne of the Dukes of Venice: the name of Acamapixels their first King signifies a handfull of Reedes, and therefore they carry in their Armouries a hand holding many arrowes of Reedes,

much estremed amongst them, did rise up, speaking in this manner, My sonne, our Lord and King, thou art welcome to this poore House and Citie, amongst these weeds and mud, where thy poore is.

thers, Grand-fathers, and Kinsfolks, endure what it pleaseto the Lord of things created. Remember

Lord thou commest bither to be the defence and support of the Mexican Nation, and to be the referen

blance of our god Vitzliputzli, whereupon the charge and government is given thee. Thou knowest wee

are not in our Country, seeing the Landwe possesse as this day is anothers, neither know we what stall become of us to morrow, or another day : Consider therefore that thou commest not to rest or recreate the

felfe, but rather to indure a new charge under so beany a burden: wherein thou must continually labour.

being flame to this multitude, which is fallen to thy lot, and to all this neighbour people, whom them must

coronation. Of the ftrange mi ure the Mex calls nave ed to them of Azcapuzalca.

The Mexicans hapned to well in the ekction of their new King, that in fhort time they grew 10 to have fome forme of a Commonweale, and to bee famous among strangers; whereupon their neighbours moved with feare, practifed to fubdue them, especially the Tapanecans, who had Azcapuzalco for their Metropolitane Citie, to whom the Mexicans payed tribute, as frangers dwelling in their Land. For the King of Azcapuzalco fearing their power which increased, fought to oppresse the Mexicans, and having consulted with his subjects, he sent to tell King Acamapixili.

that the ordinarie tribute they payed was too little, and that from thenceforth they should bring Firre trees, Sapines, and Willowes for the building of the Citie; and moreouer, they should make Garden in the him a Garden in the water, planted with divers kindes of Herbes and Pulfes, which they should bring vnto him yeerly by water, dreffed in this manner, without fayling; which if they did not. he declared them his enemies, and would roote them out. The Mexicans were much troubled at this commandement, holding it impossible: and that this demand was to no other end, but to feeke occasion to ruine them. But their god Vitzliputzli comforted them, appearing that night to an old man, comanding him to say to the King his sonne in his name, that he should make no dif-ficultie to accept of this tribute, he would helpe them and make the meanes easie, which after happened: for the time of tribute being come, the Mexicans carried the Trees that were required, and moreouer, a Garden made and floating in the water, and in it much Mays (which is their Corne) alreadie gravned and in the eare : there was also Indian Pepper, Beetes, Tomates, which is a great fappy and fauourie graine, French Peafe, Figs, Gourds, and many other things, all ripe, and in their featon. Such as have not ieene the Gardens in the Lake of Mexico, in the middeft of the water, will not beleeue it, but will say it is an inchantment of the Deuill whom they wor- 40 thip: But in tryth it is a matter to bee done, and there hath beene of the seene of these Gardens floating in the water; for they cast earth upon Reeds and Grasse, in such fort as it neuer wastes in the water; they fow and plant this ground, so as the graine growes and ripens very well, and then they remoue it from place to place. But it is true, that to make this great Garden easily, and

to have the fruits grow well, is a thing that makes men judge there was the worke of Vitzliputz-

li, whom otherwise they call Patellas, specially having never made nor seene the like. The King of Azcapuzalco wondred much when he faw that accomplished which he held impossible faying vnto his fubiects, that this people had a great god that made all easie vnto them, and he faid vnto the Mexicans, that feeing their god gave them all things perfect, he would the yeere follow-New Pharamining, at the time of tribute, they should bring in their Garden a milde Ducke, and a Heron, string sold was:

on their egget, in such fort, that they should hatch their young ones as they should arrive, without fayling of a minute, vpon paine of his indignation. The Mexicans were much troubled and heauie with this proud and strict command : but their god, as he was accustomed, comforted them in the night, by one of his Priests, saying, that he would take all that charge voon him, willing them not to feare, but beleeve that the day would come, when as the Azcapuzalcos should pay with their lives this define of new Tributes. The time being come, as the Mexicans carried all that was demanded of their Gardens, among the Reedes and Weedes of the Garden, they found a Ducke and a Heron hatching their egges, and at the same instant when they arrived at Acce-putation their young ones were disclosed. Whereat the King of Azcapuzation wondring beyond measure, hee faid againe to his people, that these were more then humane things, and that the 63 Mexicans began as if they would make themselues Lords over all those Provinces, Yet did hee not diminish the order of this tribute, and the Mexicans finding not themselves mightie enough,

ð. II.

Of the second King VITZILOVITLI, and of his Successours and their Acts watill the Reigne of Motezva

He Obsequies of the dead King performed, the Ancients, the chiefe of the Realme, and some part of the people assembled together, to choose a King, where the propounded the necessitie wherein the chiefe of the Realme, and tome part or the propure aucunoscu organics, ou move a hung, where the anti-entity propounded the necessite wherein they were, and that it was undeful to choose for propounded the necessary of the propulse of the common meale; for in very dead they found by the fauthers of his vings, the syn-former there of the Common meale; for in very dead they found by fauthers of his vings, the syn-former roor of 100 Common water; for in very generatory promains to see granters of our wrongs, the eye-browst of bit 1904, and the best of the large that it was needfully like the very tailant, being needfull flowerly to their frest, as their God boad prophylifed. Their resolution in the end was to choose a sonne of the Predectsfor, wing the like good office in accepting his soone for Successor, as hee had done to the Common-weale, relying thereon.

This young man was called Fitzslouitli, which fignifieth a rich feather. They fet the Royall virginais of Growne vpon his head, and anointed him as they have been accustomed to do to all their Kings, left a King. with an Ointment they call Dissore , being the lame vocation wherewith they did anoint their

written Ommen sery and Jermen, being use land years wherever usery una mone ther Idoll. Prefently an Orator made an eloquent speech, extherring him to a mee bandify suite bear, one fire them from the translet, learnir and missive they, suffered, being approfes by the Academy, which done, all did him homage. This King was not married, and his Countell held opinion, that it was good to marry him with the Daughter of the King of Acceptates, to him a friend by this alliance, and to obtains fome diminution of their heavie burthen of Tributes imposed upon them, and yet they feared left he should diffaine to give them his Daughter . by reason they were his Vasials ; yet the King of Ascaparates yeelded thereunto, having humbly required him, who with courteons words gaue them his Daughter, called Asancheras, whom they led with great pompe and toy to Mexico, and performed the Ceremonie and Solemnitie of 40 Matriage, which was to tie a corner of the mans Cloake to a part of the womans Veile, in figure

of the band of Marriage. This Queene brought forth a sonne, of whose name they demanded Marriage to aduice of the King of Acceptuales, and calling Lots as they had accustomed theing greatly given remones to Southflyings, especially upon the names of their children) hee would have his Grandschilde Los and to Southlyings, especially yous use names a coeff callustratures would name and Strand-called Chesalpopes, which fignifies A Target caffing finder. The Queten his Daughter feing the Southlying contentment to King of Acapacades had of his Grand-childe, tooke occasion to intreate him to relieue the Mexican, of the heatile burthen of their Tributes, feeing hee had now a Grandchilde Mexican, the which the King willingly yeelded vnto, by the aduice of his Counfell, granting (for the Tribute which they paid) to bring yeerely a couple of Duckes and fome fifth, in ligne of tubicction, and that they dwelt in his Land. The Maxicaus by this meanes remained

50 much eased and concent, but it lafted little, For the Queene their Protectrix died foone after: and the yeere following like wife Varidentili the King of Mexico died | leaning his some (b) Kings death malpopaca tenne yeeres old; he reigned shirteene yeeres, and died thirtie yeeres old, or little more. He was held for a good King, and carefull in the feruice of his Gods, whole Images hee held Kings to be; and that the honour done to their God , wasdone to the King who was his Image. For this cause the Kings haue been so affectionate to the service of their Gods. This King was carefull to winne the loue of his neighbours, and to trafficke with them, whereby hee augmented his Citie, exercifing his men in Warrelike actions in the Lake, disposing them to that

which he pretended, as you shall fee prefently. thich he pretended, as you that tee pretentity.

Of Chimelogo
The Mexicans for fuccessor to their deceased King did choose his sonne Chimalpopoca, by comcathe third mon confent, although he were a child of ten yeeres old, being of opinion that it was alwayes King, and his necessary to keepe the favour of the King of Azeapurales, making his Grand-childe King, cruelldesth,& They then let him in his Throne, giving him the Enlignes of warre, with a Bow and Arrowes in the occasion They then let him in his Throne, guing him the Enignes of waits, with a Dow and Arrows in one hand, and a Swerd with Rafers (which they commonly vie) in the right, 'ligalifying thereby the Mexicans O000 3

endured this fubication and flauerie the space of fiftie yeeres. In this time the King Acamapanis

died, having beautified the Citie of Mexico with many goodly buildings, threets, Conduits of

CHAP. L. C. Inauguration of Mexican Kings. Tlacacilees wildome & Valour, 1011

(as they doe fay) that they pretended by Armes to fed them felucrat libertie. The Mexicon but great want of water, that of the Lake being very thicke and muddie, and therefore ill to drink. so as they caused their infarrt King to define of his Grand father the King of Azenmanies , the water of the Mountaine of Chapalteper, which is from Maxico a league, as is faid before, which they basidy obtained, and by their industrie made an Aquaduct of faggoes, weeds and flagges by the which they brought water to their Citie. But because the City was built within the Loke. and the Aunaduct did croffe it, it did breake forth in many places, to as they could not enjoy the water, as they defired, and had great (carcitie: whereupon, whether they did expresty feeke it toquarrel with the Tapanecans, or that they were moved vpon small occasion, in the end they fent a reloute Ambassage to the King Azcapuzalco, laying, they could not vie the water which he had grac toofly granted them, and therefore they required him to provide them wood . lime. and flone, and to lend his Workmen, that by their meanes they might make a Pipe of flone and lime that should not breake. This message nothing pleased the King, and much lesse his subiects. feeming to be too prelumptuous a message, and purposely insolent, for Vasals to their Lord. The chiefe of the Counfell distayning thereat, said it was too bold, that not contest with permission to line in anothers Land, and to have water given them, but they would have them goe to ferme them : what a matter was that? And whereon presumed this fugitime Nation, Sout up in the mud? They would let themknow, bow fit they were to worke, and to abate their pride, in taking from them their Land

In these tearmes and choller they left the King, whom they did somewhat suspect, by season of his Grand-childe, and confulted agains anew, what they were to doe, where they retolued to make a generall Proclamation, that no Tapanetar should have any commerce or traffique with any Mexican, that they should not goe to their Citie, nor receive any into theirs, vpon paine of death. Whereby we may understand that the King did not absolutely command ouer his people, and that hee gouerned more like a Confull, or a Duke, then a King; although fince with their power, the command of Kings increased, growing absolute Tyrants, as you shall fee in

cans, intreated them first to steale away the young King his Grand-childe, and afterwards doe

the lait Kings. The King of Acceptuales feeing the refolution of his fubicets, which was to kill the Mexi-

what they pleafed to the Mexicans. All in a manner yeelded hereunto, to give the King con- 20 tentiment, and for pittie they had of the childer but two of the chiefest were much opposite inferring, that it was bad counfell; for that Chamaipepeca, although hee were of their bloud, yet was it but by the Mothers fide, and that the Fathers was to be preferred, and therefore they concluded that the first they must kill was Christalpopees King of Maxico, protesting so to doe. The King of Azcapuzates was so troubled with this contradiction, and the resolution they had taken, shat soone after for very griefe he fell sicke, and dyed. By whose death the Tapanecanti. nifling their confultation committed a notable Treason: for one night the young King of Maxi-King murthe co fleeping without guard, or feare of any thing, they of Azcapuzaleo entred his Palace, and flue him fuddenly, returning vuseene. The morning being come, when the Nobles went to falute the King, as they were accustomed, they found him slaine with great and craell wounds; then go they cryed out and filled all their Citie with teares : and transported with choller, they presently fell to Armes, with an intent to revenge their Kings death. As they ranne up and downe full of fixed and diorder, one of their chiefel Kinglish flep forts, ladouring to appeale them, with a grave admonition: White gave yee (fail he) O yee Maxicans? quier year felters, confider that things done without employation are use well guided are come to good water 1 faporely may right, confideration of the confideration o survey assessment of the property of the prope farther, but flayed to make the Obseques of their King, whereunto they immed the Lords of Tefence, and Culbuaces, reporting vnto them this foule and cruell fact, which the Tapanerans had committed, moouling them to have pittie on them, and incensing them against their enemies, concluding that their resolution was to die, opto bee revenged of so great an indignitie, intreating them not to favour lo vnjuka fact of their enemies; and that for their part, they defired not sheir aule of armes or men, but onely to be lookers on of what should passe, and that for their maintenance, they would not flop nor hinder the commerce, as the Tapanecans had done. At thereforeeches they of Tessue and Culbracan made them great shewes of good will, and that they were well fartafied, offering them their Cities, and all the Commerce they defired, that they defired, the they defired the they defined they defined the they defined the they defined the they defined they defined the they defined the they defined the they defined they defined the they defined the they defined the they defined they defined the they defined the they defined the they defined they defined the they defined the they defined the they defined they defined the they defined the they defined the they defined they water. After this, the Mexicon intreated them to flay with them, and affift at the election of their King, the which they likewife granted, to give them contentment.

The Electors being affembled, as old man that was held for a great Orator; role up, who (as In the Lictoria sent of pales in this manner, The light of your year, O Mexicalli, it disclosed, but not King calce.

of your hearts: for although you have left how then was the light and quad of the Mexican. Common-regard, et al.

wants, you that it has been remaines to confide that that the high they have fleather to man, yet here are the names. weater, yet total of the over remained: is conjust; that attempts over come plane were man, yet total evident chains may imply with admentage, there are two two house of him: the Tax exam Nobelistain is not extine. Shift the Caregidal threely, nor the bloom Republicacyord. Twine your yet and looky about you, you find for the passess.

Arbitists of Mexico, fet in order, not one or two him many and excellent Princes, Son to Acamipixell. Notices of Section for an order, not one or two four many and executes? Frences, Sont to Accomplexity, our tree and surpful Kings and Lord, Herie you many about a town planfuler, (pings), I will then man, and not that. If you have foll a Palifer, heavy-one may find both Father and Mether: under occasion of Mexicans, the tot Somme is classified and adopting for a time, and will return findeday), If Mexico Mexicon the tot Somme is classified and adopting for a time, and will return findeday), If Mexico Mexicon the term dark mad by the death of your King, the Simme will found from , in changing another King. Long to whom, and commission you find to 30 years exist and worked whom your boat is inclined to the control of t

to the latisfaction of all men. In the end, by the conferr of this Counfell, Izcoals was chosen King, which fignifies a Snake of Rafors, who was Sonne to the first King of campixili, by a flane of his: and although he were not legitimate, yet they made choice of him, for that hee exceeded the reft in behaviour, valour, and magnanimitie of courage. All feemed very well fatisfied, and about all, thefe of Tefence, for their King was married to a lifter of Ifcoalts. After the King had beene crowned and let in his Royall Seat, another Orator stept up, diffourfing how the 20 King was bound to his Commonweale, and of the courage he ought to flew in travell, freaking thus, Behold that day we depend on thee, it may be shown it fee fall the barthen that her open by Soul-

thus, Reinda has day we depend on these, is may be show wit the 1 fail the bart how that the upon thy Soudders, and fuffer the hard has an advantage, the Opplement and the reindant to profit." They paire of the Indians that give a comping to the Apre, who many partie if our compines to the company to the Apre, who many partie if our compines to the company to the company to the common partie, and the the common partie, made thus affected only the the flower of the valey; and up i she desired. Vetering many other words upon this tabletic, the which, (all them take) they derate by heart, or the exercise of their children, and after dud beach them as a Leffon to those that began to hearns the faintie.

In the meane time, the Tapanicans were refolute to deftroy the Mexicans, and to this end 20 they had made great preparations. And therefore the new King tooke counted for the proclamine of Warre, and to fight with those that had so much wronged them. But the common people, items their Aduer ferries to exceed them faire in numbers and muniforn for the warre, they came amazed to their King, prefing him not to vuldertike fo dangerous a warre, which they came amazou to their house, preming into the contracts to the process when would defrey their poors Citizand Nation: whitercupon being demanded what admice were fitted to take, they stude ashwerd that the King of Accompanies was very pittifull; that they should demand beads, and offer to force him; dawing their forth, those Marthey, and fills her faculd gove them besifes and lands among his fabjects, that by this meanes they might depend all voos one Lord. And for the obtaining hereof , they frould carrie their God in his Little for an Intercellor. The criese fish people were of their force thating fome Nobies that approximed their opinions preferring the Litter and their Opinions preferring the Litter and their Code, to performe the Voyage. As this was preparing, and curry one yielded to this treatie of peace; and

to fubject themistics to the Topicseen, a galline young man, and of good fort, first our among the people, who with a refoluce countenance spake this vinco them, What means; this O mong ene peope, who were a resource consecurity and the analysis of the people of the man was called Timeslee, Nephew to the King, he was the most valiant Captaine and greatest Counsellor that ever the Mexicans had, as you shall see hereafter. Izevals encouraged by that his Nephew had is wifely spoken; retained the people, faying they should first fuffer him torry another better meanes. Then turning towards his Nobilitie, he faid wate them, Tou are all beere

my Kinsmen, and the best of Mexico, he that birth the courage to carrie a message to the Tapanecins, in him referent. They looked one woon another; but no main stirred nor offered himselfer to the word. Then this young man Tlacaellee rifing, offered himselfe to goe, saying, that seeing hee mult die, it did import little whether it were to day or to morrow : for what reason should hee fo carefully preferte himfelfe? he was therefore readie, let him command what he pleafed. And although all held this for a rath attempt, yet the King refolued to fend him, that he might thereon waderfand the will and disportion of the Ring of Assentiales and of his people; holding it better to halten his Nephewed death, then to hazard the honour of his Common-weale. The 60 caellee being readie, tooke his way, and being come to the Guards, who had commandement to

kill any Mericans that came towards them, by cumning or otherwise : hee perswaded them to fuffer him to path to the King, who wondred to fee him, and hearing his Ambaffage, which was to demand peace of him under honest conditions, answered, that he would impart it to his subjects, willing him to returne the next day for his answere. Then Thecaellec demanded a

Ceremonies of defiance. rurned to Mexico, gluing his words to the guards to returne. And although the King of Acceptuallo defired peace, being of a milde disposition, yet his Subjects did to intensishim, as his answer was open warre. The which being heard by the Messenger, he did all his King commanded him, declaring by this ceremony, to give armes, and annointing the King with the vnction of the dead, that in his Kings behalfe he did defiehim. Hauing ended all, the King of Azeanazalco fuffering himfelfe to be anointed and crowned with Feathers, giving goodly armes in recompence to the Meffenger, wishing him not to returne by the Pallace gate, whereas meny attended to cut him in peeces, but to goe out fecretly by a little false Posterne that washpen in one of the Courts of the Pallace. This yong man did fo, and turning by fecret waies, got le pen in one of the Courts of the Painte. I ms young man unau, and utming by letter wates, or away in fafetie in fight of the Guards, and there defied them, faying, Tapanecans and Azerpuzaleans, you dae your office it, ouder fland you fload all dys, and not one Tapanecan float remains a dim. In the meane time the Guards fell youn him, where he behaved himstelfe so valiantly, that he flew fome of them : and feeing many more of them come running, he retired himfelie gallant. ly to the Citie, where he brought newes, that warre was proclaimed with the Tabarcant, and that he had defied their King. The defie being knowne to the Commons of Mexico, they came to the King, according to

Of the barraile gaue to the

their accustomed cowardise, demanding leave to depart the Citie, holding their ruine certaine.

The King did comfort and incourage them, promiting to give them libertie if they vanquished gaue to the Tae King end contrort and incourage thems, promising to gue them liberts if they vanquished Trapsecaniam their caemies, willing them not to tear. The people replied. And if who he vanapuble, what flaul of the videric their observable, while the same the value of the videric theory obtained.

Chip. 13.

Chip. 13.

The King end contrort and incourage thems, promising to gue them liberts if they vanquished, what flaul in their control their caemies, and if you are the same and because they if you hade to farfier death, east only flow in your flow and he reassigned you. It shall be a favor (19) when they if you hade to be professed on the variety of the videric to be your Transactive, to taken in you thought, to flow your ground, to carrie your arms and hargenge when you go so the warret for east, we can do not defendant after us. Their accords made between the control the control that the control the control that the c the People and the Nobilitie (which they did after fully performe, either willingly or by conftraint, as they had promised) the King named for his Captaine. Generall Tlacaeller: the whole Campe was put in order, and into fquadrons, giving the places of Captaines to the most valiant Campe was put in closer, and most changing in pastes of appraises or the most valuant of his kinsfolks and friends; then did he make them a goodly speech, whereby he did greatly incourage them, being now well prepared, clusging all men to obey the commandment of the Generall whom he had appointed; he distuided his men into two parts, commanding; the most valiant and hardie, to give the first charge with him, and that all the rest should remaine with the King Izcoals, vntill they should see the first affaile their enemies. Marching ther in order, they were discouered by them of Azcapazalco, who presently came furlously forth the Citie, carrying great riches of Gold, Silver, and Armes of great value, as those which had the Empire of all that Countrie. Izecalt gave the figuall to battaile, with a little Drumme be carred on his floulders, and prefencly they raifed a general flower, crying, Mexics, Mexics, Mexics, they charged the Toposcosus, and although they were farre more in number, yet did they defeate them, and force them to retire into their Cities, then adamosed they which smained behinde, crying Taucoslos Victorio Victorio Victorio all Iodainly entred the Cities where they he kings commands. ment) they pardoned not any man, no not old men, women, nor children, for they flew them all, and spailed the Citie being very rich. And not content herewith they followed them that fled, and were retired into the craggie rockes of the Sierres or neers Mountaines, striking and making a great flaughter of them. The Tapanerans, being retired to a Mountaine east downe their Armes, demanding their lives, and offering to ferue the Mexicans, to give them Lands and Gardens, Stone, Lime and Timber, and to hold them alwayes for their Lords. Youn this condition Tlacaelles setired his men and ceased the battaile, granting them their lives vpon the former conditions, which they did folemnely fweare. Then they returned to Azeamataleo, and fo with their rich and victorious spoiles to the Citie of Mexice. The day following the King affembled the Nobilitie and the People, to whom hee laid open the accord the Commons had go made, demanding of them, if they were content to perfift therein : the Commons made answer,

that they had promised, and they had well deferred it, and therefore they were content to

This done, Izcoals returned to Azcapuzalco (by the aduife of his Counfell) he divided all the Lands and Goods of the conquered among the conquerours, the chiefest part fell to the King, then to Tlacaelles, and after to the reft of the Nobles, as they best deserved in the Battaile. They also gave Land to some Plebeans, having behaved them selves valiantly; to others they distributed the Pillage, making small account of them as of cowards. They appointed Lands in common for the quarters of Mexico, to every one his part, for the Service and Sacrifices of their 60 Gods. This was the order which afterwards they alwayes kept, in the diufion of the Lands and spoiles of those they had vanquished and subdued. By this meanes they of Azcapuzales remained fo poore, as they had no Lands left them to labour, and (which was worfe) they tooks their King from them, and all power to choose any other then him of Mexico.

Although

ferue them perpetually. Whereupon they tooke an oath, which fince they have kept without

Dinifion of

Although the chiefe Citie of the Tapanecanes, was that of Azcapuzalco, yet had they others with their private Lords, as Tuenba and Cayoacan. These seeing thestorme passed, would Of the warre gladly that they of Azespazako had renewed the warre against the Mexicans, and seeing Mexicans had them danted, as a Nation wholly broken and defeated, they of Curoacan resolued to make against the Ciwarre by them felues; to the which they laboured to draw the other neighbour Nations, who tie of Caponan would not ftirre nor quartell with the Mexicans. In the meane time the hatred and malice in_ Chap. 14. creating, they of Curocan began to ill intreate the women that went to their Markets, mocking at them, and doing the like to the men over whom they had power: for which cause the

King of Mexico defended, that none of his should goe to Cuyoacan, and that they should receive To none of them into Mexico, the which made them of Euroacan reiolue wholly to warre : but first they would prouoke them by some shamefull scorne, which was, that having inuited them to one of their tolemne Feasts, after they had made them a goodly Banquet, and feasted them with a great daunce after their manner, they fent them for their fruite, womens apparell, forcing them to put it on, and fo to returne home like women to their Citie, reproaching them, that they were cowards and effeminate, and that they durft not take armes being fufficiently prouoked. Those of Mexico say, that for revenge they did vnto them a foule scorne, laying at the gates of their Citie of Cayoacan certaine things which smoaked, by meanes whereof many women were deliuered before their time, and many fell ficke. In the end, all came to open war, and there was a battaile fought, wherein they imploied all their forces, in the which Tlacaelice,

20 by his courage and policie in warre, obtained the victorie. For having left King Izcoalt in fight with them of Cnyoacan, he put himfelfe in ambush with some of the most valiant Souldiers, and fo turning about, charged them behinde, and forced them to retire into their Citie. But Temple, feeing their intent was to flie into a Temple which was very itrong, he with three other valiant Soul liors, pursued them eagarly, and got before them, seifing on the Temple and firing it. fo as he forced them to flie to the fields, where he made a great flaughter of the vanquished, purfaine them two leagues into the Countrie, vnto a little hill, where the vanquished casting away their weapons, and their armes a croffe, yeelded to the Mexicans, and with many teares craued pardon of their ouerweening folly, in ving them like women, offering to be their flaues: fo as in the end the Mexicanes did pardon them. Of this victory the Mexicans did carry away 30 very rich spoiles of Garments, Armes, Gold, Silver, Iewels, and rich feathers, with a great number of Captiues. In this Battaile there were three of the principals of Culbuacan that came to

aide the Mexicans, to win honour, the which were remarkeable aboue all. And fince being knowne to Tlacaellee, and having made proofe of their fidelity, he gave them Mexican deuiles. and had them alwayes by his fide, where they fought in all places very valiantly. It was apparant that the whole victory was due to the Generall, and to these three; for among so many captines taken, two third parts were wonne by these foure, which was casily knowne by a policie they vied : for taking a Captine, they prefently cut off a little of his haire, and gaue it to others, lo as it appeared that those which had their haire cut, amounted to that number, whereby they wonne great reputation and fame of valiant men. They were honoured as Con-40 querours, giving them good portions of the spoiles and Lands, as the Mexicans have alwaies vsed

to doe, which gaue occasion to those that did fight, to become famous, and to win reputation

The Nation of the Tapanecans being subdued, the Mexicans had occasion to doe the like to Of the waste the Suchimileos, who (asit hath beene faid) were the first of the feuen Caues or linages that and vide peopled this Land. The Mexicans fought nor the occasion, although they might prefume as which the Mexicans they imagined, fall into it. The Suchimileos held opinion, that the Mexicans, by reason of their victories past, should attempt to subdue them, and consulted hereon among themselues. Some

50 among them thought it good to acknowledge them for superiours, and to applaud their good fortune, but the contrary was allowed, and they went out to give them battaile : which Izcoals the King of Mexico understanding, he sent his Generall Tlacaellec against them, with his armie: the battaile was fought in the same field that divides their limits, which two Armies were equall in men and armes, but very divers in their order and manner of fighting; for that the Suchimileos charged all together on a heape confutedly, and Tlacaellee divided his men into fquadrons with a goodly order, fo as he prefently brake his enemies, forcing them to retire into their Citie, into the which they entred, following them to the Temple whither they fled, which they fired, and forcing them to flye to the Mountaines: in the end they brought them to this point, that they yeelded with their arme acroffe. The Generall Tlacaellec returning in Temple filed,

60 great triumph, the Priests went forth to receive him, with their musicke of Flutes, and giving incense. The chiefe Captaines vsed other Ceremonies and shewes of ioy, as they had beene accustomed to doe, and the King with all the troupe went to the Temple to give thankes to their

The day following, the King Izcoale went vnto the Citie of Suchimiles, causing himselfe to

1014 Tlacaellecs victory by Children. Immane cruelty in humane Sacrifices. LIB, V.

be sworne King of the Suchimiles : and for their comfort he promised to doe them good. In to. ken whereof he commanded them to make a great Cawley fretching from Mexico to Such Caultymade. miles, which is foure leagues, to the end there might be more commerce, and trafficke amount them. Which the Suchimiles performed, and in thore time the Mexican government feeded fo good vnto them, as they held themselves happy to have changed their King and Common weale. Some neighbours pricked forward by enuie, or feare, to their ruines, were not yet made

Cuitlanaca.

Childraga was a Citie within the Lake; which though the name and dwelling be changed. continueth yet. They were ectime to fwim in the Lake, and therefore they thought they might much indomage and annoy the Mexicans by water, which the King vnderstanding, he resol. 10 much maching and among the machine But Therefore it the effecting this warre, holding it dishonorable to lead an Armic against them, made offer to conquer them with the children onely: which he performed in this manner: he went vnto the Temple and drew out of the Couent fuch children as he thought fittelt for the action, from tenne to eighteene yeares of age, who knew how to guide their Boates, or Canoes, teaching them certaine policies. The Children in order they held in this warre, was, that he went to Cuitlanaca with his children, where by the Courne. his pollicie he profled the enemy in fuch fort, that he made them to flye; and as he followed them. the Lord of Cuitlanaca met him and yeekled vnto him, himfelfe, his Citic, and his peo-

Carrines fa-

ple, and by this meanes he stayed the pursuite. The children returned with much spoyle, and many Captiues for their Sacrifices, being folemnely received with a great Procession, Musicke 20 and Perfumes, and they went to worship their gods, in taking of the earth which they did eate, and drawing bloud from the forepart of their legs with the Priefts Lancets, with other fupertitions which they were accustomed to vse in the like folemnities. The children were much honored and encouraged, and the King imbraced and kiffed them, and his kinfmen and allies accompanied them. The bruite of this victory ranne throughout all the Countrie, how that Tlacsellee had fubdued the Citie of Cuitlanaca with children: the news and confideration whereof opened the eyes of those of Tescace, a chiefe and very cunning Nation for their manner of life: So as the King of Tescuce was first of opinion, that they should subject themselves to the King of Mexico, and inuite him thereunto with his Citie. Therefore by the adule of his Counfell, they fent Ambassadours good Orators with honorable presents, to offer themselves vnto 30 the Mexicans, as their Subiects, desiring peace and amity, which was graciously accepted; but by the aduise of Tlacastlee he vied a Ceremony for the effecting thereof, which was, that thole of Tescue should come forth armed against the Mexicans, where they should fight, and presently yeelde, which was an act and ceremony of warre, without any effusion of bloud on either fide. Thus the King of Mexico became foueraigne Lord of Tefeuco, but he tooke not their King from them, but made him of his Privie Counfell; fo as they have alwaies maintained themselues in this manner vntill the time of Moseçuma the second, during whose raigne the Spaniards entred. Hauing subdued the Land and Citie of Toseuco, Mexico remained Lady and Multris of all the Lands and Cities about the Lake, where it is built. Izcoalt having Results death, entoyed this prosperitie, and raigned twelue yeares, dyed, leaving the Realme which had 40 beene given him, much augmented by the valour and counfeil of his Nephew Theselee.

Of the filking For simuch as the election of the new King, belonged to four chiefe Electers, and to the of Masses, cal. King of Telestes, and the King of Telestes, by especiall priviledge: Tlacetic allembled their For a fmuch as the election of the new King, belonged to four chiefe Electors, and to the led Materiors, in perforages, as he that had the fourraigne authority, and having propounded the matter vithe fift of that to them, they made choile of Moreguma, the first of that name, Nephew to the fame Threader. same, chapage. His election was very pleasing vnto them all, by teason whereof, they made most felemme featls, and more flately then the former. Prefently after his election they conducted him to the Temple with a great traine, where before the dimne barth (as they call it) where there is continual is, they let him in his royall throane, putting vpon him his royall ornaments. Being there, the King drew bloud from his eares and legs with a Giffons talons, which was the Sacrifice where- 52

Griffons ta.

in the discill del ghted to be honoured. The Priests, Ancients, and Captaines, made their Orations, all congratuling his election. They were accustomed in their elections to make great Feaths and Dances, where they wasted many lights. In this Kings time the custome was brought Blondy and die in, that the King should goe in person to make warre in some Province, and bring Captines to ualish inflicus folemnize the feath of his Coronation, and for the folemne Sacrifices of that day. For this capit King Motecuma went into the Province of Chalco, who had declared themfelues his enemies: from whence (hauing fought valiantly) he brought a great number of Captines, whereof he did make a notable Sacrifice the day of his Coronation, although at that time he did not fubdue all the Prouince of Chales, being a verie warlike Nation. Manie came to this Coronation from diuers Prouinces, as well neere as taire off, to fee the feaff, at the which all commers were verie 50 bountifully en ertained and clad, especially the poore, to whom they gaue new garments. For this caufe they crought that day into the Cirie, the Kings tributes, with a goodly order, which confitteden Stuffes to make Garments of all fores, in Cacao, Gold, Silver, rich Feathers, great bur-

thens or Cotton, Carumbers, fundrie forts of Paires, many kindes or Sea affr, and of the fresh

CHAP.4. S. 2. Wilde fortitude: Tlascalla. Tlacaellecs great spirit. Deuils Temple, 1015

warer, great flore of Fruits, and Venison without number, not reckoning an infinite number of Prefents which other Kings and Lords fent to the new King. All this Tribute marched in order according to the Prouinces, and before them the Stewards and receivers, with divers markes and Enlignes, in very goodly order: fo as it was one of the goodlieft things of the feath, to fee the entrie of the Pribate. The King being crowned, he implosed himselfe in the conquest of many Promitees, ant For that he was both valiant and vertuous, he still increased more and niore, ving in all his affaires the counfell and industrie of his Generall Tlacaellee, whom he did alwaies lone and effeeme very much, as he had good reaton. The warre wherein he was most troubled and of greatet difficultie, was that of the Prounce of Chalco, wherein there happened great matrers, whereof one was very remarkeable; which was, that they of Chalcas, had taken a brother

10 of Motecumaes in the warres, whom they refolued to choole for their King, asking him verie curteoully, if he would accept of this charge. He answered (after much importunitie, fill perfifting therein) that of they ment planely to choose him for their King, they should plant in the Market-place, a Tree or very high stake, on the top whereof, they should make a little scaffold, and meanes to mount voto it. The Chaleas supposing it had beene some ceremonie to make himfelfe more apparant, presently effected it: then affembling all his Mexicans about the flake, he went to the top with a garland of flowers in his hand, fpeaking to his men in this manner, O valiant Mexicans, thefe men will choose me for their King, but the godi will not permit, Hottible couthat tobe a King I hould commit any treason against my Countrie, but contrarinise, I will that you rage.

learne b) me that it bebooneth v: rather, to indure death, then to aide our enemies Saying these words. he cast himselse downe, and was broken in a thousand peeces, at which spectacle, the Chalcas had fo great horror and despite, that presently they fell upon the Mexican and flew them all with their Lances, as men whom they held too proud and inexorable, faying, they had diuellish hearts. It changed the night following, they heard two Owles making a mournfull cry, which they did interpret as an unfortunate figne, and a prefage of their neere destruction, as it succeedel : for King Motegama went againft them in perfon with all his power, where he vanoutshed them, and ruined all their kingdome : and paffing beyond the Mountaine Menade; he conquered Will even vnto the North Sea. Then returning towards the South Sea, he subdired many Provinces; foras he became a mighty King: all by the helpe and counfell of Tlacaellet, who in a mainer conquered all the Mexican Nation. Fet he held an opinion (the which was confe

firmed) that it was not behoonefull to 'conquer the Prouince of Tiefcelle, that the Merikan Tiefelle 19. might have a frontier chemy, to keepe the youth of Merikan in exercise and allarme " and that Mexico, a con they might hand mambets of Captines to Sacrifice to their Idole, wherein they did wafte (as hath thage to Rome. beene (and) infinite numbers of men, which should be taken by force in the wars. The honor must beginen to Moteçuma, or to fpeak truly, to Tlacaeller his Generall, for the good order and pollicy fetled in the Realme of Mexico as also for the Colinfels and goodly enterprises, which they did execute: and likewise for the mimber of Judges and Magistrates, being as well ordered there , 'as in any Common-weale, yea, were it in the most flourishing of Emope. This King did also great ly increase the Kings house, gruing it great authoritie, and appointing many and fundry Offi-40 cers, which lerued him with great pompe and ceremony. He was no lefte remarkable touching the deution and fertifie of his Idols, increasing the mumber of his Ministers, and instituting new

ceremonies, whereunto he carried & great respect:

Hebuilt that great Temple dedicated to their god Vizziloutill, whereof is fpoken in the o- Great Temple ther Booke. He did Sacrince at the dedication of this Temple, a great number of men, taken in built. fundry victories: finally, inioying his Empire in great prosperitie, he fell ficke, and died, having Deuilish de-raigned twentie eight yeares, volike to his fuce ffor Tiessee, who did not resemble him, neither wortons. in valour, nor in good fortune.

The foure Deputies affembled in counfell, with the Lords of Tefouco and Tacuba, where Tla: How Ilecatiles The foure Deputies attempted in counteil, with the Lords of Tejouco and Tactor, where The refuted to be caelled was Prefidence in the election, where by all their voices Tlacaelled was cholen, as defer- King, and of uing this charge better then any other. Yet he refuted it, perfwading them by pertinent rea- the election fons, that they thould choose another, faying, that it was better, and more expedient to haue and deedes of

another King, and he to be his inffrument and affiliant, as he had beene till then, and mor Tuocis Chapit to lay the whole burthen v pon him; for that he held himfelfe no leffe bound for the Common. weale, then if he wire: King; feeming to Bim, though he were not King, yet in a manner, that he commanded Kings, fulf ring him to carry cereaine markes, as a Tiers or ornament for the head, which belonged buely to themselves: as in a Comedie he deferues most commendation! Fit smilitude, that represents the personage that imports most. In recompence of his modesty, and for the Ye inect which the Mexican Electors bare him, they demanded of Tlacaellee (that feeing he would not raigne) whom hee thought most fit: Whereupon he gaue his voyce to a Sonne

60 of the deceated King, who was then very young, called Ticocic : but they replied; that his shoulders were very weake to beare to heatile a burthen. Tlacdellee answered that his was there to helpe him to beare the burelien, as he had done to the deceafed ? by meanes whereof, they tooke their resolution, and Tiesere was chosen, to whom were done all the accultomed ceremonies.

No@hrils pier-

They pierced his nofthrils, and for an ornament put an Emerald therein: and for this reason. in the Mexican Bookes, this King is noted by his nofthrils pierced. Hee differed much from his Father and Predecessor, being noted for a coward, and not valiant. He went to make warrefor his Coronation, in a Prouince that had rebelled, where hee loft more of his owne men then hee tooke captines; yet he returned faying, that he brought the number of captines required for the Kingpoyloned Sacrifice of his Coronation, and to hee was crowned with great folemnitie. But the Mexicant discontented to have a King so little disposed to warre, practifed to hasten his death by poison. For this cause he continued not about fourt yeeres in the Kingdome. But this loffe was well re-

Of the death cans. Chap.18.

razed.

parted by a Diother of the detected with a duice of Tlacaellee, wherein hee happened better to Now was Tlacaellec very old, who by reason of his age, was carried in a chaire voon mene shoulders, to affift in countell when businesse required. In the end he fell sicke, when as the King (who was not yet crowned) did visit him often, shedding many teares, seeming to loose in him his Father, and the Father of his Countrey. Tlacaellee did most affectionately recommend his children vnto him, especially the eldest, who had shewed himselfe valiant in the former warres. The King promifed to have regard vnto him, and the more to comfort the old man, in his prefence hee gaue him the charge and enfignes of Captaine Generall, with all the preheminences of his Father; wherewith the old man remained to well fatisfied, as with this content he ended

paired by a Brother of the deceased, who was also sonnerto great Motoguma, called Azaga.

The Mexicans made his Funerall as the Founder of that Empire, more sumptuous and state. 20 ly, then they had done to any of their former Kings. And presently after Axayaca (to appeale the forrow which all the people of Mexico flewed for the death of their Captaine) refolued to make the voyage necessary for his Coronation. He therefore led his Armie with great expedition into the Province of Tequantepec, two hundred leagues from Mexico, where he gaue battell to a mighty Army, and an infinite number of men affembled together, as well out of that Prouince, as from their Neighbours, to oppose themselues against the Mexicane. The first of his Campe that advanced himselfe, to the combate was the King himselfe, defying his enemies, Campe fract assumes numeric, so me compare was use any numeric, so ying use common from whom he made fiew to five when they charged him, writtl hee had drawne them into an Ambufcadoe, where many Souldiers lay hidden under firaw, who findering since forth and they 30 which fied, turned head : fo as they of Tignantepee remayned in the midft of them, whom they charged furiously, making a great slaughter of them : and following their victorie, they razed their Citie and Temple, punishing all their Neighbours rigorously. Then went they on farther, and without any flay, conquered to Guarales, the which is a Port at this day well knowns in the South Sea. Axagaca returned to Mexico with great and rich spoiles, where he was honourably crowned, with fumptuous and stately preparation of Sacrifices, Tributes, and other things, whither many came to see his Coronation. The Kings of Mexico received the Crowne from the hands of the King of Tesence, who had the preleminence. Hee made many other Enterprises, where he obtained great victories, being alwayes the first to leade the Armie, and to charge the enemie; by the which he purchased the name of a most valuar Captaine; and not content to 40 fubdue strangers, he also supported his Subjects which had rebelled, which neuer any of his Pre-

which they called Tlatelules, whereas now Saint lagues is.

These being revolted, held a faction apart, and encreased and multiplyed much, refusing to acknowledge the Kings of Mexico, nor to yeeld them obedience. The King Axayaca fent to aduise them, not to liue divided, but being of one bloud, and one people, to joyne together, and acknowledge the King of Mexico: wherupon the Lord of Tlatelulco made an answer ful of pride and diffaine, defying the King of Mexico, to fingle combate with himfelfe : and prefently muftred his men, commanding some of them to hide themselves in the weeds of the Lake; and the better to deceive the Mexicans, he commanded them to take the shapes of Rauens, Geele, and other Beafts, as Frogges, and fuch like, supposing by this meanes to surprize the Mexicans as they should passe by the wayes and cawfies of the Lake. Having knowledge of this defie, and of his Aduerfaries policie, he divided his Armie, giving a part to his Generall, the fonnne of Thecaellee, commanding him to charge this Ambuscadoe, in the Lake; and hee with the rest of his people, by an unfrequented way, went and incamped before Tlaselules. Presently he called him who had defied him, to performe his promife, and as the two Lords of Mexico, and Tlatelulco advanced, they commanded their Subjects not to mooue, untill they had feene who should bee Conquerour, which was done, and prefently the two Lords encountred valuantly, where having fought long, in the end the Lord of Tlatelulco was forced to turne his backe, being wnable to indure the furious charge of the King of Mexico. Those of Tlatelulco feeing their Captaine flye, fainted, and fled likewise, but the Mexicans following them at the heeles, charged them furiously; yet the Lord of Tlatelules elcaped not the hands of Axayaca; for thinking to faue himselfe, hee

fied to the top of the Temple, but Areyaca followed him fo neere, as hee leized on him with

deceffors euer could doe, or durst attempt. Wee haue alreadie shewed how some seditions of

Mexico had divided themselnes from that Common-weale, and built a Citie neere vnto them,

CHAP.4.S.2. Tlatelulco Frogs. Autzols conquests. Cuyoacon cunning Sorcerer. 1017

great force, and threw him from the top to the bottome, and after fet fire on the Temple, and

Whileft this paffed at Testelules, the Mexican Generall was very hote in the revence of those Thullis that pretended to dereat him by policie, and after hee had forced them to yeeld, and to cry for fired. mercy, the Generall faid he would not pardon them, vntill they had first performed the Offices of those figures they represented, and therefore hee would have them cry like Frogges and Ranens, every one according to the figure which he had undertaken, elfe they had no compolition : which thing he did to mocke them with their owne policie. Feare and Necessitie bee perfect Teachers, fo as they did fing and cry with all the differences of voices that were commanded 10 them, to faue their lives, although they were much grieved at the sport their enemies made at them. They fay that voto this day, the Mexidans vie to jeaft at the Tlatelulcans, which they beare impatiently, when they put them in minde of this finging and crying of bealts. King Acarece tooke pleasurest this toone and difference, and presently after they returned to Mexico with great jay. This King was effectived for one of the best that had commanded in Mexico. Hee

Among the foure Electors that had power suchoofe whom they pleafed to be King, there was Of the deeds one endured with many periections, named Anted. This man was chosen by the reft, and this of Autod the one enducd with many perfections, names exames. I nis man was enoten by the rer, and unselection was very pleasing to all the people of for bodies that he was valiant, all held him courselections and affable to cutry man, which is one of the chiefe qualities required in them that com-20 mand to purchase loue and respect. To celebrate the Featt of his Coronation , hee refolied to flory cale him

make a Voyage, and so punth the pride of those of Quaralation, a very rich and plentifull Pro-Tipetiantinince; and at this day the chiefe of New Spame. They had robbed his Officers and Stewards, that Quaralellane carried the Trib site to Mexico, and therewith all were rebelled. There was great difficultie to reduce this Nation to obedience, lying in fuch fort, as an arms of the Sea Rope the Mexicans palfape: conside the which a fuzel (with a ftrange deuice and industry) caused an Ilani to be made in the water, of faggots, earth, and other matter; by meanes whereof, both hee and his men might paffe to the enemie; where guing them battell, he conquered them, and pumified them at his pleature. Then returned he vnto Mexico in triumph, and with great riches, to bee crowned King , according to their custome . Autzel extended the limits of his Kingdome farre, by many 30 Conque Rs, euror ato Guatimatas, which is three hundred leagues from Mexico. He was no left plortill their salisant from when as the Tributes as the which (as I have faid) came in great

abundance, heaweneforth of his Palace, gathering together all the people into one place, then commanded he cobing all the Tributes, which he dissidil methods that had need. To the poore he gaue Stuffestomake chem apparell, and meate, and what bear they had need of in great ahundance, and shirtes of value, as Gold, Silver, lewels, and Reathers, were divided amone of the the Captaines, Souldiers, and Servants of his House according to every mans meric. This Astzel was likewife a great Politician, hee pulled downe the houser ill buffe, and built others very

It feemed wnto him that the Citie of Mexico had too little water, and that the Lake was 40 very muddie, and therefore heerefolued to let in a great course of water, which they of Capeacas vied. For this cause hee called the chiefe man of the Citie vinto him, beeing a famous Sorcerer, having propounded his meaning vnto him: the Sorcerer willted him to bee well admited what he did, being a matter of great difficultie, and that he understood, if hee drew the River out of her ordinary courte, making it paffe to Mexico, hee would drowne the Citie. The King supposed these excuses were but to frustrate the effect of his Designe, being therefore in choler, he difmiffed him home, and a few dayes after he fent a Prouoft to Cayoadon, to take this Sorcerers who having understanding for what intent the Kings Officers came, he caused them to enter his house, and then he presented himselfe vnto them in the forme of a terrible Eagle, wherewith Famous Sor the Propost and his companions being terrified, they returned without taking him. Auzal in- cres, or Indian cenfed herewith fent others, to whom he presented himselfe in forme of a furious Tigre, so as

they durft not touch him. The third came, and they found him in the forme of a horrible Sergent, whereat they were much afraid. The King mooued the more with these doings, fent to tell them of Caroacan, that if they brought not the Sorcerer bound vnto him , hee would raze their Citie, For feare whereof, or whether it were of his owne free will, or being forced by the peo-ple, he fuffered himselfe to be led to the King, who presently cansed him to bee strangled, and then then did he put his resolution in practice, forcing a channell whereby the water might paffe to Mexico, whereby he brought a great current of water into the Lake, which they brought with great Ceremonies and Superfittions, having Priefts casting Incense along the bankes, o-

thers facrificed Quiles, and with the bloud of them sprinkled the channell bankes, others soun-60 ding of Cornets, accompanied the water with their Muficke. One of the chiefe went attired in a habit like to their Goddeffe of the water, and all faluted her, faying, that the was welcome. All which things are painted in the Annalls of Moxico: which Booke is now at Rome Mexican Ane in the holy Library, or Vatican, where a Father of our Company, that was come from Mexico, nalls in the did feeit, and other Histories, the which he did expound to the Kreper of his Holineffe Library, Varican,

taking great delight to understand this Booke, which before hee could never comprehend Finally, the water was brought to Mexico, but it came in such abundance, that it had welneete drowned the Citie, as was foretold : and in effect it did ruine a great part thereof, but it was presently presented by the industry of admirel, who caused an illus to bee made to draw forth the water : by meanes whereof hee repayred the buildings that were fallen , with an exquifite worke, being before but poore Cottages. Thus he lefe the Citie invironed with water. like another Conice, and very well built : he reigned elegen yeeres, and ended with the last and greatest Successor of all the Mexicans.

- A candy july nor ang ti - **松道様**投資 at Kinsey nor a segablesin nor hadi - in the property in july nor analysis of the assemble in a segable in the included

Of the Election of great MOTRZNMA, the aff King of McKico bu nings, of his ruine, and the Spanish wells marked a Conquest. on ball said and are folled anne els mon el

encition.

Hen the Spenieral : curred New Speins, being in the peetro of our Land 2523. Addison.

matecond of that name, was the laft King of the Marinear : hithyrhic laft, although they of Mexico, after his death, chofe another King, yea, in the aft of the fine at 10 tocume, whom they declared an enemy to his Country, as who shall fee horesten. But he that succeeded him, and he that fell into the hands of the Marquelle de Valle, had bottle names and titles of Kings, for that the Kingdoms was in a manner all weelded to the Somiord. foas with reason we account Moresume for the last King, and to her came to the pened of the Mexicans power and greatueffe, which is admirable beeing happened among Barbarians. For this cause, and for that this was the season, that God had chosen to reseale vitto them the lenner. ledge of his Gofpell, and the Kingdome of Irans Chrift, I will selate more as large the Acts of Motecuma then of the reft.

Before he came to be King, then was by disposition, very grant and stayed and spake little fo as when he gauchin opinion imphe printy Countell, whereas he unified, his free cless and the counter made every one to admiss bits, for a summitten he as an forcedual selected. The retwind himielle vitally succe Chappell, appospeed for him in the Temple of principant. It where they faid their ideal figures must have a where they faid their ideal figures and denous. For their fedeli figures and of some this causa here was held very religious and denous. For their perfections, then, being most note hand as figures couring this distinction was floor and easily as a many years whom all passes yets white faxed, as worthy, of such a charge y finding in religious. of this election, he hid himfelfe inchis Chappelliof the Temple, whether it were by high ment (apprehending fo beauty and harda burthen) as to goudent fuch a people, or rather, as I beleeue, through hypocrifie, to shew that hee desired not Empery : In the end they found him, leading him to the place of Councell, whither they accompanied him with all possible too; he mached with such a grantey, as they all said the name of Margamer agreed very well with 40 his nature, which is as much to by, as an angry Lord. The Electors did him great reserved, giting him notice, that her was chosen King : from thence hee was led before the hearth of their Grode, to give Incense, where he offered Secretices in drawing blood from his cares, and the cabes of his legs, according to their custome. They attyred him with the Royall omaments, and pierced the griftle of his notherils, hanging thereat a rich Emerald, a barbarour and grouplous cuflome ; but the delire of rule, made all poine light and cafe. Being feated in his Throne, hed one audience to the Orations and Speeches that were made unto him, which according water their custome were eloquent and artificiall. The first was pronounced by the King of Testes, which being presented, for that it was

co Oration. Inti. The concerning and with of supers upon the afeliane, is a ffiftient retimante (most roble point man) of the happenelle the Realme laulit estima, as well deserving to be commanded by thee, a Mexica grant also for the general applicable which all des formy mones thereof, Whereve they have great reason. allo for the Empire of Mexico doth alreadso fo farre extend it felfe, that to generae a World, as it is, and to beare so beanie a burthen, it requires no lesse dexteritie and conrage, then that which is resident in thy Their prince of the same a buriton, a requires notify exercise and coverage, tons was uneven a system in my officer and value bear, nor of show is described in the form of the mightle God lough that (Rie, feining the bath given understanding to chosf what was fit. For the mightle God lough that (Rie, feining the bath given understanding to chosf what was fit. For the mightle God lough that (Rie, feining the bath given understanding to chosf what was fit. For the mightle God lough that the fit is not the state of the control of the state of the state of the control of the state thee in matters of greatest need? Who will not perfunde himselfe but the Mexican Empire is come to Elegant Profits the freight of their Security in the freight of Lord Security in the freight of their Security is the freight of their Security in the freight of their Security is the freight of their Security in the freight of their Security is the freight of their Security in the freight of their Security is the freight of their Security in the freight of their Security in the freight of their Security is the freight of their Security in the freight of their Security is the freight of the freight of their Security is the freight of their Security is the freight of the freig

lately delinered, and very worthy to bee heard, I will fet it downe word by word, and thus hee 10

CHAP. 4 S. 2. Oration to Motocuma His demofficall policipall polemicall behaviour. 1010

bappie Landate whome the Creater hathyings a Prince, as a firme Pillarte, fispore thee, which find by Pillare to forward and the defence his advantage of the description of the defence his policy of the period and clearness. Then had a fix also been reported his place as not necked to King Olic, duly so, we also forecasted in the defence of the defe manuse, kind prese, prosponyon perpana ma gronori provinci provinci ne activate unit amo unter labo unit super un falle for faile al 160 majli fauntis metat, kaning dis fifrits i traisformed mini de imagination de sisty gand. Tell yar then (O. fuggios kanket) of Libunu var rasjon to for fishes thus augistest reisyra, desimple faund facts a King; And deputable young man, and our most weightest kard, he confidence, and of a gend courage, that fering the Lond of things created bath ginen thee this charge , bee will also gine thee force and courage to manage it and then majet well bope, that bee which in since past bath wird fo great seatory agreement they will not one dony thesite greater persistent by the best given the for greate a thory or which infinite to every many years. King, All organo ways years are to this Distance which being ended, they by they was a trivially of the redespound this continue to this Distance which they are the season of the could being ended, they day her was fortenjised, char endeapouring trinsact answere hand, her could not lepske, heing operation with tearst, which hey side dones in deer the word of the indigence of the humbley. In the stall being come to himselfits, he finake briefly, I save too bland, gived King of desergement humbley. In the stall being come to himselfits, he finake briefly, I save too bland, gived King of desergement of the land to the stall finake, upon me, briefly the fames to bland, gived King of desergement of the land Realme, i save save in save to see the means, the stall finake to that the land to the save finake to the land finake to save the save the save to the land finake to that, the stall finake to the land finake no fanour mee, and I intreate you all to pray unto him formes. Thele words vetered, hee beganness

can prefently to discouer his aspiring thoughts. The first was, her commanded that no plebeian me ordered gan prejuntly to discours managing stong ma. An arraw are the commanded that the placetam be fermed of thould ferm in his houle, not beare any Royal Office, as his Predeceffors had well the hospitalism be fermed of the metals would be fettaled by men of bale condition, commanding the tall the noble and months. mous men of his Realme should line wishin his Palace, and exercise the Offices of his Court, and made for his Honfe, Whereunto an old man of great authoritie (who had for times bin his Schoolema feer for Coronation, poled himfelfe, aduling him, to be careful what he did, and not to thruft himfelfe into the dancer Chep. at. posture international manufacture active research and an active for great inconvenience, and feparating him help from the values for common people, for a chief price before 30 food long dare to looke, then in the face, lifeting the inflative foresteed-by time. He answerighted the talk is true in a refolution, and that he would have the Plebraians thus to goe mingled among the Nobles, as they had done, Jaying, that the temice they did, was according to their condition; to as the Kings got no reputation, and thus he continued firme in his refolution. Her prefently commanded his Councell to difmiffe all the Plate and from their charges and offices as well those of his Houshold as of his Coner, and to promise Kingling; the which was done. After hee went in perion to an enterprize necessary for his Coronación. At a his une a Pronince lying farre off towards the North Ocean was studied from the Crown awhither heled the flower of his people, well appointed. There he watred with fuch valour and dexteritie, that in the end hee lithdued all the Prouince, and punished the Rebels feueraly, returning with a great number of 40 Captives for the Sacrifices, and many beher fooyles. All the Cities made him folemme recepti-Captules for the secritisky, and taken youter powers. An the Cities and on introducing the times of tenuns, a thing not yield by any of his Piedeciffor. Such was the feart and trigging the times of tenuns, a thing not yield by any of his Piedeciffor. Such was the feart and trigged the times of tenuns, a thing not yield by any of his Piedeciffor. Such was the feart and trigging the times of I man, a thing not yield by any of his Piedeciffor. Such was the feart and trigging the times of I man, a thing not yield by any of his Piedeciffor. Such was the feart and trigging the times of I man, a thing not yield by any of his Piedeciffor. Such was the feart and trigging the times of I man, a thing not yield by any of his Piedeciffor. Such was the feart and trigging the times of I man, a thing not yield by any of his Piedeciffor. Such was the feart and trigging the times of I man, a thing not yield by any of his Piedeciffor. Such was the feart and trigging the times of I man, a thing not yield by any of his Piedeciffor. Banquets, Lights, and other inventions for many dayes. And there came fo great a wealth of Tributes from all his Countreyes, that firangers waknowne came to Mexico, and their very enemies reforted in great numbers difguifed to fee thefe Feafts, as those of Tlafcalla, and Mechonacan: the which Motocume having discourred, he commanded they should be lodged and gently intreated, and honoured as his owne person. He also made them goodly Galleries like voto his owne, where they might fee and behold the Feafts. So they entred by night to those Feafts, as So the King himfelte, making their Sports and Maskes. And for that I have made mention of thefe Provinces, it shall not be from the purpose to understand, that the Inhabitants of Mechanican, Tlascalla, and Tapeaca, would never yeek to the Mexicans, but did alwayes fight valiantly asainit them; yea, fometimes the Mechouseans did vanquift the Mexicans, as also those of Tapeace did. In which place, the Marquelle Don Forrand Cortes , after that hee and the Spaniards were expelled Mexico, pretended to build their first Citie, the which hee called (as I well remember) Segure dela Frontiere: But this peopling continued little : for having afterwards reconmember) Segure dela Frontiere: But this peopling continued little; for haung atterwards recon-quered Mexico, all the Spannards went to inhabite there. To quotlude, those of Tapeaca, Tagealla, Frontiere. and Mechanacan, have been alwayes enemies to the Mexican; although Motecuma faid vnito Certes, that hee did purpotely forbeare to lubdue them; to have occasion to exercise his men of Of the bebe-60 warre, and to take numbers of captines.

This King laboured to bee respected, yea, to be worshipped as a God. No Plebeian might looke greatnesse of This King laboured to oce respected, year to be worningped as a South list foot on the ground, but him in the face; if he did, he was punished with death; he did never let his foot on the ground, but More was. was alwayes carried on the shoulders of Noblemen; and if he lighted, they laid righ Tapistrie His proud whereon hee did goe. When hee made any Voyage, hee and the Noblemen went as it were flate. Pppp 2

He that in his el-Stion made fuch frew of humility and mildneffe, feeing himfelfe King; bes How Merces

in a Parkethi compafied in for the nonce, and the reft of the people wene without the Parke

true effect of

the Douds

foretellings.

God fore-

warneth

on bentill in a Parken, computer with enter, and the ren or the propie weth without the Juine, which is minimized to one carefully state on early files; she made in the minimized to one carefully she can be proposed with about once parken; and the ren or which had bentered to the should be shoul ponish it rigorously. And also to differ he how his Ministers did execute their Offices, het offen His policie to difguiled himselte, offering gifts and prefents to the Judges, prouoking them to doeir sjudies.

dif guieummere, our way guitant patient of the death, without remiffique or refrect, were they Noblemen, or his Kinforen; yea, his owne Brethren. Hee was little connerfame with his people, and feldome feene, retyring himfelfe most commonly to care for the government of his Realme. Bendes that, he was a great lufticier and very Noble; he wasvery valiant and happy, by meanes whereof her obrayined great victories, and came to this greatedle, as in written in the Common Little or after to write what the Books and Hiftories of the Indies make mention of the which the Spewill Writers baue not oblighed, having not fufficiently understood the secrets of this Countries.

the which are things very worthy to be knowne, as we shall see hereafter. the which are things very worthy, to occanowing as we man reconstruct.

It chanded the distrement butting regimed in any versit in great profiperitie, and do put wp in his conceit, such exactly thinkelf to be ferred and feared, year to be worthipped as a God, that he was the confirming of the confir Almighty Lord began to chaftice him, and also to admonth him, suffering even the very Devils whom hetworkspeed, to tell him thefe heavy tydings of the ruine of his Kingdome, and to tor-ment him by Viñons, which had neuer beene feene; wherewith hee remayned to melancholy

and troubled as he was void of judgement.

Querrassall; " The Idolkof those of Chelala, which they called Querzacealt, declared, that a ftrange people came to possesse his Kingdomes. The King of Telente (who was a great Magitian, and had conference with the Denill) came one day at an extraordinary houre to vifit Mosecume, affusing him that his Gods bad toldbim, shabshere were great loffes preparing for him, and for his whole Resime: many Witches and Sorgerers went and declared as much, amongst which there was one, did very particulary forced them what should happen and as hee was with him her told him, that the pulse of his facts eath liked failed him the trouble with their so newes, commanded all thoir Sourcerrane be apprehended; but they wantled prefently in the Prion, wherewith he graw into these args, teacher makes and chalden as defently in the Prion, wherewith he graw into these args, teacher makes not chall them; as he put their wites and chalden to death, defroying hear Hopfen and Tamber. Seeing limited importuned and troubled with these advertisements, hee sought to appeale the anger of his Gods : and for that taufe bee laboured to bring a huge stone, thereon to make great Sactifien: For the effecting whereof hee sent a great number of people with Engine and Instruments to bring it : which they could by no meanes moone, although (being obtlinate) they had broken many Instruments. men to bring them to repen- But as they fix oue fill to raise it, they heard a voyce joyning to the flone, which faid they laboutance: the De ted in vaine, and that they should not raise it, for that the Lord of things created would no more uillo fillthem infer thologhings to be dope there. Morecume understanding this; commanded the Sacrifice withfeates, perfidious and tobe performed in that place, and they say the voyce spake againe; Hame I not told yet, that it is cruell realou. not the pleasure of the Lord of things created, that it should bee done? did but you may well know fies, fiprificous ibas is us fo, 1 will suffer my felfs to becreams ported a lutter; then after yes shall not motion met.

thirty, and to Which happened to indeed, for presently they carried it a small distance with great facilitie,

minimals his. then afterwards they could not moone it, till that after many Prayers, it suffered it felfe to bee credit, by his dining, fee. transported to the entry of the Citie of Mexico, where fuddenly it fell into the Lake, where king to proone feeking for it, they could not find it, but it was afterwards found in the same place from whence

which is beere in enident) in of a Pyramide, which begame to appeared in the Element a great flame of fire, very bright, in the forme to this which begame to appeare at midnight, and went fill mounting until the Sonne Gods inflice rifing in the morning, where it flayed at the South, and then vanished away. It shewed it lets him know felfe in this fort the space of a whole yeers, and euer as it appeared the people cast forth great he will do to cryes as they were accustomed, beleeuing it was a presage of great misfortune. It happened also that fire tooke the Temple, when as no body was within it, nor necre vinto it, neyther did there fall any lightning or thunder; whereupon the Guards erying out, a number of people ranne Prodgie of any lightning occummers was appearant was all confirmed; and they fay the fire feemed Drallin Ms. with water, but nothing could helpe, to a it was all confirmed; and they fay the fire feemed brailin Ms. to come forth of pieces of timber, which kindled more by the water that was caff upon it, There was a Comet seene in the day time, running from the West to the East, casting an infinite number of sparkles, and they say the forme was like to a long tayle, having 60

his dininity(al they had removed it, wherewith they remayned amazed and confounded.

The great Lake betwirt Mazios and Tefenco, without any minde, earthquake, or any other apparant figne, began fudainly to fwell, and the waues green in fuch fore; as all the buildings CHAP.4.S. 2. Prodigious Foule Laborers Difton Spaniards arrival certified by picture 1021

woman in paine, which faid fometimes, Omy children, the time of your destruction is come: and other whiles it laid, O my chicaren, whither feall I carry you that you perift mot strarty? There appeared likewife many Monflers with two heads, which being carried before the King, fudainly Monflers, anished. There were two that exceeded all other Monters, being very frange; the one was, the Fithers of the Lake tooke a Bird as bigge as a Crane; and of the same colour, but of a Prodigious thrange and unfeene forme. They carried it to Morecania, who at that time was in the pallace of teares and mourning, which was all hanged with blacke; for as he had many Pallaces for his recreation, to had he also others for times of affiction, wherewith he was then heavily charged and cornered, by reafon of the threatnings his gods had guiten him by these forrowfull adjust-

tifements. The Filhers came about noond tetting this Bird before him, which had on the top of his head a thing bright and transparent, in forme of a Looking-glaffe, wherein he did behold a warlike Nation comming from the East, armed, figheing, and killing. He called his Diimes and Aftronomers (whereof there was a great number) who having feene thefe things and not able to yeelde any reason of what was demanded of them, the Bird wanished aways, to as it was never more seene : whereupon Motopusas remained very heavy and forrowfull. The other which happened, was a Laborer, who had the report of a very honeft man; he came wnto him? telling him, that being the day before at his works, a great Engloslew towards him ; and tooks him y in his talents, without horting him; carrying him acts acrained case, where it lefe him; The Eagle pronouncing these words, adeas maybritand; I have brought him when their to have commanded me: This Indian Laborer looked above on every side, to whom he spike, but he

faw no man. Then he heard a voyer which faid ware him . Dooft thou not know this man, whom thou feelt lying your the ground hand looking themon, he perceined a mail to lye very heavy afleepe, with royall enfignes, flowers in his hand, and a flaffe of perfumes burning . as they are accustomed to vie in that Country : whom the Labourer behalding, knew it: was the great King Motecoma, and answered presently: Great Land, this resombles our King Motezuma. The voice said againe, Thou fayest true, behold when he wi und how hee sint assesse, carelesse of the oreat unferies and afflictions prepared for him. It is now time that he pay the great number of offences great majertes to God, and hot at he receives the painfilment of five stay manner, and great great, and the first bless consulfile to less him done to God, and hot at he receives the painfilment of five stayment, and great prime field how corrulfile to less him hot how more mijers, and takem may feeling. But to the such thou most how more filed to the best for the fifte of perfuence hot hold however, their heads, and you it to their face; the holds the most head had not been to the face; the holds the holds and may be to the face of the holds the holds and may be to the face of the holds the holds and may be to the face of the holds the holds and may be to the face of the holds the holds and may be to the face of the holds the holds and the holds are holds and the holds are holds and the holds and the holds and the holds and the holds are holds and the holds and the holds and the holds are holds and the holds are holds and the holds and the

post temp past em when perme and power among user they approach terre rum, and does a he was commanded, for the great feare they all had of tileveling. But the work rid, 'Have no feare, for law without companion greater than the Kregistons driven him, and defined him, due there-fore what I command thee. Whereupon the Laboret rooks the filler of performer out of the Kings hand, and put it burning to his nofe, but he moved vior, abolisowerkany feeling. This done; the voice faid voto him, that feeing he had found the King to Steepierthe thousage awate him, and tell him what he had feene. Then the Eagle by the fame commandement, tooke the man in his talents, and fet him in the same place where he found him; and for accomplishment of that which he had spoken, he came to aduertise him. They say, that Motegame looking on his face. 40 found that he was burnt, the which he had not felt till then, wherewith he continued excee-

ding heavie and troubled.

In the foureteenth years of the raigne of Moteguma, which was in the years of our Lord Ofthe news 1517. there appeared in the North Seas, Shippes, and men landing, whereat the Subjects of Metegumare-1517. there appeared in the North Seas, Shipper, and mentalining, whereat the Subjects of Chief Of the Motegama wondred much, and defirous to learne, and to be better fatisfied what they were, Spaniards artithey went abourd in their Canoes, carrying many refreshings of meases and stuffes to make ualinhis Coun apparrell, youn colour to fell them. The Spaniards received them into their Shippes, and in ex- try, and of the change of their victuals and stuffes, which were acceptable vnto them , they gave them chaines Ambassage he of falle Stones, red, blew, greene, and yellow, which the Indians imagined to be precious stones. fine thim, The Spaniards informing themselves, who was their King, and of his great power, dismissed them, willing them to carry those Stones wato their Lord, Gaying, that for that time they could not soe to him, but they would prefently returne and wifite him. Those of the coaft went prefently to Mexico with this meffage, carrying the representation of what they had seene, pain- Relation of ted on a cloath, both of the Shippes, Men, and Stones which they had given them, King Moto- writingby Pie cuma remained very penfine with this medage, commanding them not to reveale it to any one. cures, The day following, he affembled his Counfell, and having thewed them the painted cloathes and the Chaines, he confulted what was to be done; where it was resolved to let good watches

at Sea, in the which was the Marquife of Valle Don Fernande Cortes, with his companions, newes which much troubled Moreguma, and conferring with his Counsell, they all faid; that without doubt, their great and auncient Lord Queztzaleoult was come, who had faid, that he Effects of full would returne from the East, whither he was gone. The Indians held opinion, that a great perfluiousle-Prince had in times past left them, and promised to returne. Of the beginning and ground of gends. which opinion shall be spoken in another place. They therefore sent fine principall Amhaffadors

voonall the Sea coafts, to give prefent addertifement to the King of what they should discover, The yeare following, which was in the beginning of the yeare 1918, they discovered a Flecte

neere vato it fell downe to the ground. They fay at that sime they heard many voices, as of a

shen Christian

exceedingly vexed herewith : some of the people and other Negromanciers adulted him to hide himselfe, offering to place him whereas no creature should ever finde him. This feemed base vnto him, and therefore he resolved to attend them, although it were dying. In the end he left his Houses and royall Prilaces to lodge in others, leaving them for these gods

with rich presents, to congratulate his comming, saying, they knew well that their great Lord Queetraskeast was come, and that his servant Mosecumes sent to visite him for so he accounted himfelfe. The Spaniards understood this meslage by the meanes of Marina, an Indian woman whom they brought with them which understood the Mexican tongue. Fernande de Cartes findivine worthing ding this a good occasion for his entry, commanded to decke his Chamber richly, and being fee. agreeing more in great state and pompe, he caused the Ambassadors to enter, who omitted no shewes of hamilia tie but to worthip him as their god. They delivered their charge, faying, that his fernant Motecume fent to wifit him and that he then Christian religion, which held the Country in his name as his Lieutenant, that he knew well it was the Topicin which had beene promifed them many yeares fince, who should return againe voto them. And therefore they brought him such Garments as he was wont to weare, when he did converte among fi them, befeeching him to accept willingly of them, offering him many prefents of great value.

Corres receiving the presents, answered, that he was the same they spake of, wherewith they

were greatly farisfied, freing themselves to be curteously received and intreated by him. To conclude, the day after this Ambaffage, all the Captaines and Commanders of the Fleete, came vnto the Admirall, where understanding the matter, and that this Realme of Motegama was mighty. and rich in it feemed fit to gaine the reputation of brave and valiant men among this people, and and rich; it termed nevo game the representation and a state of the state of this meanes (although they were few) they should be feared and received into Mexica.

To this each they discharged all their Artillery from their Shippes, which being a thing the Indicate had neutr heard, they were amazed, as if heaven had fallen upon them. Then the Span 19. mards beganne to defiethem to fight with them : but the Indians not daring to hazard themfelues, they did beate them and intreate them ill, shewing their Swords, Lances Pertuifans, and other armes, wherewith they did terrifie them much. The poore Indians were by reason hereof fo fearefull and amazed, as they changed their opinion, faying, that their Lord Topilein came: not in this troupe, but they were fome gods (their enemies) came to destroy them. When as the Ambaffadors returned to Mexico, Moteçuma was in the house of audience; but before he would hear them, this mileable mancommanded a great number of men to be facificed in his prefence, and with their bloud to tprinkle the Ambaffadors (fuppoing by this ceremony) which they were accustomed to do not in folemose Ambaffages) to receive a good andwer. Buswinderstanding the continued to the continued ding the report and information of the manner of their Ships, Men, and Armes, he flood per- 20 plexed and confounded : then taking counfell thereon, he found no better meanes, then to labor to ftop the entry of these strangers, by Consurations and Magicke Arts. They had accustomed often to vie this meanes, having great-sonferente with the Deuill, by whose helpe they sometimes obtained strange effects. They therefore assembled together all the Sorcerers, Magitians, and Inchanters, who being perswested by Morgana, they tooke it in charge to force this peo-Protean faifts, ple to returne vnto their Country, For this confideration, they went to a certaine place which they thought fit for the inuocation of their Douils, and practifing their Arts (a thing worthy of confideration) They wrought all they could; but feeing nothing could prevaile against the Chri-Stians, they went to the King, telling him that they were more then men, for that nothing might hurt them, notwithstanding, all their Conjurations and Inchantments. Then Motecu- AO me aduited him of another policie, that faining to be very well contented with their comming, he commanded all his Countries to serue these celestiall gods that were come into his Land. The whole people was in great heatineffe and amazement, and often newes came that the Spaniards inquired for the King, of his manner of life, of his house and meanes. He was

> I pretend not to intrease of the acts and deedes of the Spaniards, who conquered New Spaine, 50 nor the strange adventures which happened vnto them, nor of the courage and invincible valour of their Captaine Don Fernando Cortes : for that there are many Histories and Relations thereof, as those which Fernande Cortes himselfe did write to the Emperour Charles the fift, although they be in a plaine stile, and farre from arrogancy, the which doe give a sufficient testimony of what did passe, wherein he was worthy of eternall memory, but onely to accomplish my intention : I am to relate what the Indians report of this action, the which hath not to this day beene written in our vulgar tongue. Motecuma therefore, having notice of this Captains victories, that he advanced for his conquest, that he was confederate and joyned with them of Tlafcalle, his capitall enemies, and that he had severely punished them of Cholola his friends, he studie ed how to deceive him, or elfe to try him in fending a principall man vnto him, attyred with the lake ornaments and royall enfignes, the which should take vpon him to be Motecuma, which fiction being discourred to the Marquise by them of Tlascalla (who did accompany him) he tent him backe, after a milde and gentle reprehention, in feeking to deceive him: whereupon Moregame was to confounded, that for the feare thereof he returned to his first imaginations

CHAP.4. \$.2. Cortes entertained at Mexico. Spaniards perfidieufly cruell. 1623

and practiles, to force the Christians to retire, by the inuocation of Conjurers and Witches. And therfore he affembled a greater number then before threatning them, that if they returned without effecting what he had given them in charge, notany one should efcape, whereauto they all promised to obey. And for this cause, all the Deuils officers went to the way of Charles, by the Tecculous a which the Spaniards should passe, when mounting to the top of a hill, Tezcalipnea, one of their Denill god. principall gods, appeared vnto them, as comming from the Spaniards campe, in the liabit of [balest, who had his paps bound about eight fold with a cord of reedes, he came like a man befide himfelfe, out of his wits, and drunke with rage and furie. Being come to this troupe of Witches and Conjurers, he stayed, and spake to them in great choller, Why come you bither? what dorb No

and connectes, he tray to any space to them in great enough, we given you conter most arts No.

10 tectume we tend to due by your meaner? He bad abussed himselfs too late for it is now determined, that his Kingdoma and homore shall be taken from him, with all that he possifies, for pumponent of the great syramuse he hash committed against his Subjects, having generated not like a Lord, but this, a trustoir and tyrant. The Inchanters and Conjurers hearing there words, knew it was their idoll, and humbling themselues before him, they presently built him an Altar of Stone in the same place, consring it with flowers which they gathered thereabouts, but he contrariwife, making no account of these things, began againe to chide them, saying ! What come jou bither to due, O je traitouri ! Resurve presently and behold Mexico, that you may orderstand what shall become thereof. And they fay, that returning towards Mexico to behold it, they did fee it flaming on fire. Then the Des uill vanished away, and they not daring to passe any farther, gave notice thereof to Moteran

20 m4, whereat he remained long without speaking, looking heavily on the ground; then he faid, What hall we doe if ead and our friends tease vs., and contravile, took teles and faiture are comited.

I am now refolute, and we ought all to refolue in this point, that happen what may, wee must not five nor bide our feluer, or foew any figne of cowardife. I onely putie the aged and infants, who bane netther feete nor bands to defend themfelnet . Hauing fpoken this, he held his peace, being transported into an extraine. In the and, the Marquelle approaching to Maxies, Motrasma refolued to make of necessity a vertue, going three or four leagues out of the Cuie to receive him with a great maiefly, catried upon the shoulders of four Noblemen, under a rich Canapy of Gold and Feathers. When they met, Motezams descended, and they fainted one another very curteously. Don Fernando Cortes faid vinco him, that he should not care for any thing, and that he came not 30 to take away his Realme, nor to diminish his authority. Motezama lodged Corter, and his com-

panions in his royall Pallace, the which was very flately, and he himselfe lodged in other priwate houses. This night the Souldiers for ioy discharged their Artillery, wherewith the Indians were much troubled, being vnaccustomed to heare fuch Musicke. The day following, Corres caused Motezame and all the Nobles of his Court to affemble in a great Hall, where being set in a high Chaire, he faid vnto them, that he was seruant to a great Prince, who had fent them into these Countries to doe good workes, and that having found them of Tlascalle to be his friends (who complained of wrongs and greenances done wrote them daily by them of Mexico) he would Good filing vnderstand which of them was in the blame, and reconcile them, that hereafter they might no in troubled more afflict and warre one against another; and in the meane time, he and his brethren (which 40 were the Spaniards) would remaine still there without hurting them : bur contrariwise, they

would helpe them all they could. He laboured to make them all understand this discourse, wing his Interpreters and truchmen. The which being understood by the King and the other Mexican Lords, they were wonderfully well fatisfied, and shewed great signes of lone to Cortes and his company, So it is, that by some occasions, many complaints, griefes, and iealousies grew on ei-ther si le. The which Corses finding, & that the Indians mindes began to be distracted from them, he thought it necessary to assure himselfe, in laying hand vpon King Moteçuma, who was seized on, and his legges fettered. Truely this act was firinge vinto all men, and like vinto that other corte his two of his, to have burnt his Shippes, and thut himfelfe in the midft of his enemies, there to vanquish france ator to dye. The mischiefe was, that by reason of the vnexpected arrivall of Pamphilo Naruaes tempts. at the true croffe, drawing the Country into mutiny, Corter was forced to ablent himfelie from

Mexico, and to leave poore Mateguma in the hands of his companions, who wanted discretion nor had not moderation like vnto him: fo as they grew to that diffention, as there was no meanes to pacific it.

When as Cortes was absent from Mexico, he that remayned his Lieutenant, resolued to pu- Of the death nish the Mexicans severely, causing a great number of the Nobilitie to be staine at a maske, which of Mose una they made in the Palace, the which did fo farre exceed, as all the people mutined , and in a fuz and the Spanithey made in the Palace, the which did to farre exceed, as all the people mutilied, and in a rus departure rious rage, tooke Armes to be reuenged and to kill the Spaniards. They therefore befieged them out of Mexica. in the Palace, preiling them fo neere, that all the burt the Spaniards could doe them with their chapas. Artillerie and Crosse-bowes, might not terrise them, not force them to retyre from their enter-

60 prife, where they continued many dayes, stopping their victuals, not suffering any one to enter or issue forth. They did fight with stones, and cast Darts after their manner, with a kind of Lances like voto Arrowes, in the which there are foure or fixe very sharpe Rasors, the which are fuch (as the Histories report) that in these warres, an Indian with one blow of these Ralors, almost cut off the necke of a Horse, and as they did one day fight with this resolution and suries

Indian armics

the Spaniards to make them ceafe, shewed forth Moregama, with an other of the chiefe Lords of Mexico, vpon the top of a plat-torme of the houle, coursed with the Targets of two Sculdiers that were with them. The Mexicans feeing their Lord Motecuma, flayed with great filence. Then Metergens cauled the Lord to adulte them to pacific themfelues, and not to warre against the Spaniards, feeing that (the being a prifoner) it could little profit him. The which being you deritood by a wong man, called Quienviennee, whom they now refolued to make their King, here foake with a loud vovce to Morecuma, willing him to retyre like a Villaine, that feeing he had beene fuch a Coward, as to futler lumfelfe to bee taken, they were no more bound to obey him. but rather fhould punish him as he descrued, calling him Woman for the more reproach, and then he began to draw his Bowe and to thoot at him, and the people began to cast stones at him, and 10 to continue their combate. Many fay that Motecume was then burt with a flone, whereof hee dved. The Indians of Mexico affirms the contrarie, and that hee dyed as I will flew hereafter. Allnaro, and the reft of the Spaniards feeing themselves thus pressed, game intelligence to Captaine Cortes, of the great danger they were in : who having with an admirable dexteritie and valour, ginen order to Narmaer affaires, and affembled the greatest part of his men, heercurned with all speed to succour them of Mexico, where observing the time the Indians reft (for it was their custome in warre, to rest every fourth day) Hee one day advanced with great policy and courage, fo as both he and his mon entred the Palace, where as the Spaniar de had fortified them. felues: they then shewed great fignes of loy, in discharging their Artillerie. But as the Mexicans fury increased (being out of hope to defend themselves) Cortes refolued to passe away se- 20 cretly in the night without bruit. Haung therefore made Bridges to paffe two great and dange. rous passages, about mid night they issued forth as secretly as they could, the greatest part of his people having passed the first bridge, they were discovered by an Indian woman before they

could passe the second, who cryed out their enemies fled, at the which voyce all the people range together with a horrible furie : fo as in paffing the fecond bridge, they were fo charged and purfiled, as there remayned about three hundred men flaine and hurt in one place; where at this day

there is a small Hermitage, which they unproperly call of Martyrs. Many Spaniards (to pre-

ferue the gold and jewels which they had gotten) perished, and others flaving to carry it away.

were taken by the Mexicans, and cruelly facrificed to their Idols. The Mexicans found King

Emperor, writes the contrary, and that the Mexicans killed him that night with a fonne of Meregeme, which led with him among it other Noblemen, faying, that all the trealizer of gold, ifones, and filnes, fell into the Lake and was never more feene. But how focuer, Metremand yed

miserably, and payed his deserts to the inst judgement of our Lord of Heaven for his pride and

Motecoma dead, and wounded as they fay with Poniards, and they hold opinion that that 20 night the Spiniards flue him with other Noblemen. The Marquesse in his Relation fent to the

write the best

non mor salis.

tyrannie; his body falling into the Indians power, they would make him no Oblequies of a Kine, no not of an ordinarie person, but cast it away in great disdaine and rage. A servant of his having pitie of this Kings miferie (who before had beene feared and worshipped as a God) made a fite thereof, and put the after in a contemptible place. Returning to the Spanisrds that escaped, they were greatly tyred and turmoyled, the Indians following them two or three dayes very refo. 40 lutely, gining them no time of reft, being so diffressed for victuals, as a few graines of Mays were divided amongst them for their meate. The Relations both of the Spaniards and Indians agree, that God delinered them here miraculously, the Virgin Mary defending them on a little Hill, You here hear whereat this day three leagues from Mexico, there is a Church built in remembrance thereof. a Icluit. Gold called our Lady of Success. They retyred to their ancient friends of Tlafcalla, whence (by their aide, and the valour and policy of Cortes) they returned afterwards to make war against Mexico, by Water and Land, with an invention of Brigantines, which they put into the Lake, where after many combats, and aboue threelcore dangerous battailes, they conquered Mexico, on Saint Hoppolium day, the 12. of August, 1521. The last King of the Mexicans (having obstinately maintayned the warres) was in the end taken in a great Canoe, whereinto hee fled, who being 50 brought with some other of the chiefest Noblemen before Fernando Cortes, this petie King with mes this facer a ftrange resultion and courage, drawing his dagger, came neere to Corses, and said vnto him, wrought mira. Vntill this day I have done my best indenour for the defence of my people : now am I no further bound, cles in all the but to give thee this dagger to kill me therewith. Cortes aniwered, that he would not kill him, nei-Spanish indies, ther was it his intention to lurt them: but their obstinate folly was guittie of all the milerie and and full doch affilchions they had fuffered, neither were they ignorant how often he had required peace and aar Samus amorphism steep year interest, and in mitte at their hands. Hee then commanded them to be intreated curtecosfly. Many strange and fibrines, and in mitte at their hands. Hee then commanded them to be intreated curtecosfly. Many strange and European pil. 2 Imirable things chanced in this Conquest of Mexico: for I neither hold it for an untruth, nor ge miges, and an addition, which many write, that God favoured the Spaniards by many miracles.

Purgarorie vi- It is most certaine by the Relations of many, and by the Histories which are written, that in 60 Great is (cryed divers battailes which the Spaniards had, as well in New Spane, as in Peru, the Indians their enethe farine-ma- mice did fee a Horteman in the ayre, mounted on a white horfe, with a Sword in his hand, fighkers) D and of ting for the Spaniards, whence comes the great reverence they beare at the Indies to the glorious the Experience. Apolle Saint, lames. Other whiles they and fee in fome battailes, the Image of our Lady, from

CHAP. 4. \$2. Spanish Indian policy of force Nim & Alex praferred to P. o P. 1025

whom the Charleians have geterined in those parts incomparable fauours and benefits, &t. And therefore we neight not to condemne all these things of the first Conquerors of the incomparable is the condemne all these things of the first Conquerors of the incomparable is the condemne and these things of the incomparable is the conquerors of the incomparable is the condemne all these things of the first Conquerors of the incomparable is the condemne and the condem religious and seamed men have done, doubt leffe with a good zeale, but too much affected . For although for the most part they were controus men, cruell; and very legional in the course that was robe ublevised with the Infidel, who had never offended the Christian, yet can we not des siege (might nie, but on their part there was much malite against God and our Men, Which forced their to vie America (a) moour and chaftilement.

Euery one may vederstand by the Relation and Discourse I have written in these Bookey at continuelld well at Perm as in New Spanne, when as the Christians first fet footing, that these Kingdomes (Hispane) in-10 and Monarchies were come to the height and period of their power. The lagues of Pera, possel- digres on facefine from the Resime of Chile beyond Queto, which are a thouland leagues, being mot abin restance. dant in gold, filuer, fumptuous feruices, and other things : as alfo in Mexico , Marenand commanded from the North Ocean Sea, vinto the South , being feared and worfhipped not as a man. manage from the forth Ocean See, who the booth high Lord had determined that this fifther of Daniel, which disclosed the Realmest and Knigdomes of the World , should also disclose 'fisher' when this new World. And as the Law of Christ Carm' which is the Robert Monachie with it for example.

this new World. And as the Law of Chrift came when as the Ronky Monarchie was at her reflecting regentifie; by did it happen at the Welf Marky, wherein yet lee the information color of the Welf World and For being then in the World, I mean in Ewise, here one head and teniple all Lod; 24 fit field; Sworks, with Doctors doe notes, whereby the Goffell might more talkly bee impaired to forming Prediction greede soul. 20 Nations: Euen fo hath it happened at the Andre, where having given the knowledge of Chrift den 17 he to the Monarchs of for many Kingdomes, it was a meaning that attenuards the knowledge of Chrift den 17 he to the Monarchs of for many Kingdomes, it was a meaning that attenuards the knowledge of their composed Goffell was impacted to all the people; yea, there is herein a focial their probe of beingal? I had feet me mon as the Lords of Cafes and Universe conquered new Lurds; for they breight in their twice ham collished, it can be able to the condition of the conditi guage: for although there were (as at this day) great diverfitie of tongues, yet the Courtly freech to bee a flaine of Cufco , did and doth at this day runne about a thousand leagues , and that of Mexico day not Lamb, thethe of Cufee, did and doth at this day runne about a thousand leagues, and they of cure and the world might extend farre leffe, which hath not beene of finall importance, but hath much profited in making. World might be fared mottes the preaching case, at such a time, when as the Preachers had not the gift of many tongues, as in slay a world old times. He that would know what a helpe it hath beene for the competion of this people in that himselfe these two great Empires, and the great difficultie they have found to reduce those Indians to mich be a co-30 Chris which acknowledge no Souraigne Lord, lething or offends, Jord, the Addit; and teconomically many other places, where they have not presulted for much by their pretching in fifth years, query, hard as they have done in Para and in two Sparre in lifet; their files. If they will fingure thickedic for the or descated

riches of the Country : I will not alcogether denie it. Yet were it impossible to have lo great had been fitter wealth, and to be able to preferue it, if there had not beene a Monarchie. This is also a worke of Preachers in God in this age, when as the Preachers of the Gospell are to cold and without zeale, and Mer- this kinde then tool in this ge, when is not reversalise or the Conjecture to consider whether the the test of conference or the Conjecture to command, fracth sight discours may be conjectured to the conjecture to the conjectu left : which is (as hee declareth) by hum me and earthly meanes, which they feeke more com" Pizerro follows to monly then Islus Christ. It was also a great proudence of our Lord, that when as the first sign and the Christian flammic of minds arrived there, they found aide from the Indians themselves, by reason of their partiastics those parts and great divisions.

This is well knowne in Perathat the division between the two prothers Mahadas and Guel, the Sword ben ca, the great King Guanacapa their father being newly dead, game entrie to the Marquelle Don the Word, as es, the great King Guanacapa their father being newly dead, gaue entrie to the Marquene Lon Francis Pixarre, and to the Spaniards, for that either of them defited his alliance being builted in bookes de 110. warre one against the other. The like experience hath beene in new Spaine, that the aide of those cwande Ind. of the Prounce of Tlafcalla, by reason of their continual hatred against the Mexicans, gave the fall hath shewvictorie and fiegniorie of Mexico, to the M rquelle Fernando Cortes and his men, and without ed, as is thewthem it had beene impossible to have wonne it, yea, to have maintayned themselves within ed fante. 1.12.

They are much deceived that fo livile effeeme the Indians, and judge that (by the advantage days), ub. 2. de the Spaniards haue ouer them in their Persons, Hories, and Armes, both offensue and defensige) som cum c. 36. they might eafily conquer any Land or Nation of the Indies.

Chille Hands yet, or to lay better, Aranco and Tuecapel, which are two Cities, where our greatest helpe of the Semith Spanierds could not yet win one toot of ground, although they have made warre there about couqued ladi. fine and twentie yeeres, without paring of any coft. For this barbarous Nation , having once on quartels loft the apprehension of horse and thot, and knowing that the Spaniards fall as well as other made that eamen, with the blow of a ftone or of a dart, they hazard themselves desperately, entring the Pikes sie which their vpon any enterprife. How many yeeres have they leuted men in new Spatne, to fend against the gold made de-60 Chrebymeques, which are a small number of naked Indians, armed only with bowes and arrowest Divers Naciyet to this day they could not be vorquified, but contrariwile, from day to day they grow more ons which the definerate and resolute. But what shall we say of the Chines, of the Chinaguanas, of the Pifceco Spanists wes, and all the other people of the Andes? Hath not all the flower of Peru beene there, bringing could neuer with them to great proution of Armes and Merras we have feene? What did they? With what this way.

victories returned they 'Surely , they returned very happy in fauing of their lines; having loft their baggage and almost all their hories. Let no man thinke (speaking of the Indians) that they are men of nothing; but if they thinke fo, let them goe and make triall. Wee must then attribute the glorie to whom it appertaynes, that is, principally to God, and to his admirable die polition : for if Morcouna in Mexico, and the lugua in Peru, had beene refolute to refiff the Somiards, and to ftop their entrie, Corter and Pizarre had prevayled little in their landing, etthough they were excellent Captaines. It hath also beene a great helpe to induce the Indiana to receive the Law of Chrift, the subjection they were in to their Kings and Lords, and also the feruitude and flauerie they were held in by the Deuils tyrannies and insupportable yoke. This Was an excellent disposition of the dimine Wiledome, the which drawes profit from ill to a good end, and receives his good from an others ill, which it hath not fowen. It is most certaine that no people of the West Indies have beene more apt to receive the Gospell, then those which were most subject to their Lords, and which have beene charged with the heaviest burthers, as well of Tributes and Services, as of Customes and bloudie Practifes. All that which the Mexican Kines and those of Pres did possess, is at this day most planted with Christian Religion, and where there is leaft difficultie in the Gouernment and Ecclesiaficall Discipline. The Indiana were the wearied with the heavy and insupportable yoke of Satans lawes, his factifices and ceremonies. whereof wee have formerly spoken, that they consulted among themselves, to seeke out a new Law, and an other God to serue. And therefore the Law of Christ seemed vinto them, and doth

at this day feeme just, sweet, cleane, good, and full of har pineffe, And that which is difficult in our Law to believe so high and sourraigne Mysteries hath beene easie among them, for that the Deuill had made them comprehend things of greater difficultie. and the lefte-fame things which hee had stolen from our Euangelicall Law, as their manner of Communion and Confession, their adoration of Three in One, and such other like, the which against the will of the Enemie, have holpen for the easie receiving of the Truth by those who before had embraced Lyes. God is wife and admirable in all his workes, vanquishing the Adversarie euen with his owne weapon, hee takes him in his owne snare, and kills him with his owne fword. Finally, our God (who had created this People, and who feemed to have thus long forgot them) when the houre was come, hee would have the same Deuils, enemies to mankinde, whom they fally held for gods; should give a testimonie against their will, of the true Law, 30 the power of Christ, and the triumph of the Cresse, as it plainly appeares by the presages, prophelies, fignes, and prodigies, here before mentioned, with many others happened in divers parts, and that the fame ministers of Setan, Sorcerers, Magicians, and other Indians haue confeffed it. And wee cannot denie it (being most enident and knowne to all the World) that the Deuill dareth not hiffe, and that the Practifes, Oracles, Answers, and visible Apparitions, which were fo ordinarie throughout all this Infidelitie, have ceased, whereas the Croffe of Christ hath beene planted, where there are Churches, and where the Name of Christ hath beene confessed, And if there be at this day any curfed minister of his, that doth participate thereof, it is in Caues. and on the tops of Mountaines, and in fecret places, farre from the name and communion of Christians. The Soueraigne Lord be blessed for his great mercies, and for the glorie of his holy 40 Name : And in truth, if they did gouerne this people temporally and spiritually, in such fort as the Law of Iefus Christ hath fet it downe, with a milde yoke and light burthen, and that they would impose no more upon them then they can well beare, as the Letters Patents of the good Emperour of happy memorie doe command, and that they would imploy halfe the care they have to make profit of these poore mens sweats and labours, for the health of their soules, it were the most peaceable and happy Christian part of all the World, &c.

CHAP. V.

Of the ancient superstitions of the Mexicans and Indians of America. gathered out of the fifth Booke of Iosermys

If It, although the darknesse of Insidelitie holdeth these Nations in blindnesse, yet in many things the light of Truth and Reason workers somewhat the company of the comp they commonly acknowledge a supreme Lord and Author of all things, which they of Peru called Vnachocha, and gaue him names of great excellence, as Pachacamac, or Pachayachachic, which is, the Creater of Heaven and Earth : and U- 60 Sapu, which is, admirable, and other like names, Him they did worship, as the

ledge one fu-

chiefest of all, whom they did honor in beholding the Heaven. The like wee see among st them of Mexico, and China, and all other Infidels. Which accordeth well with that which is faid of Saint Paul, in the Ails of the Apostles, where he did see the Inscription of an Altar; Ignoto Deo: CHAP. S. Mixican Phoologies and Idelatuie to the SunnesStarres Thunder. to the only some Gad. Whereupon the Apolitic tooks occasion to preach was them, faying, Hee

to me configurate time. In the suppose the experimences consists to present many effect, and the suppose the suppo then God and Lord our ally and that this is the Christians God, and the time God, And yes it bath caused great admirationipomee, sharulthough they had this knowledge, yet had they no posper Name for God; if weedhall feeke into the hadran tongue for a word to an inserte to this No rose Mamerit God; as in Latin, Dow; in Greeke, Theory in Hebrew; El; in Arabike, Allas but we minister God; shall not finde any in the Coffee or Menerarangues. So as fuch as preach or write toche Indi-formuch as mandhing, if in been no by our very name caybe in truth they had forme little knowledge, and elesectors in Man this finate thints rich Temple; which they called Pachecamat as hich was hie principals Canch und colories graines a And as is fidely been faid, whis overed of Pachecamat hier principals Canch und colories graines a And as is fidely been faid, whis overed of Pachecamat. web die princepalt Sanstaum enterste figne. Manes is interberen send, the sevence of Pankacimac, is as much to fay, as the Creator, yet in this Temple they yet de their Holstandis proflepping
mac, is as much to fay, as the Creator, yet in this Temple they yet de their Holstandis proflepping
the Douill and Figures. They likewise made Sacrifices and Offerings to Unrecebs, which held
therchiefe place-immoglobe invitation which he kinds fragment in the Enterth Clays called the
Spaniards Veraches, sonthat holy and of Spaniards Veraches, to distinct a Deink ent Paul and Begundenrichting das our Lapinguand therebits Mer. Mr. 1919
and the Company of the Company of

cuir, lo would they offer factifices voon them, as vant gudra and as the Bonerieu of the on the p which is Matte) Seeing char the Wiper did northage the Apolle; they called him God A Nate to Mexicola; or their lipidena Godf, about which on of commonly they have said dae. Of the first adore amongst the Infidels, is the Sunner and after, that this matrix.

adore amongst the Infidels, is the Sunne; and after, those things which are most samarka-kinde of Idoable in the celeftiall or elementarie nature, as the Monte, Searter, Sea) and Land. The Grigen, or Oratornes, which the lagrant Lords of Piers had in greatest reverence, next to Windsche and the Same, washed Thomas, which they called by timerdigation counties, Chapute, Consider, and things, they have been supported to the same in herman, with a Sling and a Mass, and that it is in his power Same their fe-Institute, Upporing at the small instance and all the reft that appearaines to the Regionnes the Agropushers cond God: and the counter Raine, Haile, Thunder, and all the reft that appearaines to the Regionness to all the 1st the notice of the Conderschapeader. It was a Greece (for facebry called their Owanories) generall totall the 1st the usually Bother Conderschapeader. 30 diese of Peru, off-ring voto histimany facrifices : and in fifes , which is the Cours and Marco-polican Citie stinguish facrifice children who him, as to the Sante. They did worthin chiefa there, order. Wiracocha, the Susse, and Thuidee, after another mannet then all the reft, as Palle swrites, who Temples to the Forecode, the Same, and Theodor, 1800 a repeture manner them an operate, an electron, who I employ to the had inde desight the most pay of the pay as it was a Gameler of Glove youndary hands, when they Thouse their deblict them my to wording them. They did wording the Garth; which they salled Respections, but of the Anciente did the gendleds of the salled the first them my to wording them. They did wording the Garth; which they salled Respections, but of the Anciente with the grant of the salled for the salled mongit the Starres they are interestiners offices to dimers Starres, and choice which had neede of their thipped. 40 fayour did worfing them, as the Shepherd did facrifice to a Scarre, which they called Frembiller. which they hold to be a Sheepe of divers colours, having the care to preferne their Cattell; and they imagine it is that which the Aftronomers call Lynn : Thele Shepherds worthin two other Starres, which walke neers voto them, they call them Camebiller, and Frenchiller; and they

from hurring of them. They afcribe power to another Starre, which they called Chan chay (which is as much as Tigre) over Tigres, Beares, and Lions, and they have generally beleened, that of all the beafts of the earth, there is one slone in heaven like visco them, the which bath care of their procreation and increase. And so they did obserue and working divers Starres, as those care or near processors and the state of the in the fame manner atter the inprome God, worthipped the Same. And therefore they called a tribe and Honando Cortex (as he hath written in a Letter fent vato the Emperor Chortes the fifth) Same fin the Sande of the Sanne, for his care and courage to compaffe the Earth. But they made their greatest adoration to an Ideal; called Vazlipuzi, the which in all this Region they called the most putting. and Lord of all things: for this cause the Missions built him a Temple, the greatest, the hinest, Temple the highest, and the most sumptuous of all other. The situation and beautic thereof, may well be conjectured by the raines which yet remaine in the midft of the Citie of Mexico. But here the

fayne them to be an Ene and a Lambe .: Others worthipped a Starre which they called Mathe-

ener, to which they attribute the charge and power over Serpents, and Snakes; to keepe them

Mexicans Idolatrie hath beene more pernicious and hursfull then that of the laguar, as wee shall 60 fee playner hereafter, for that the greatest part of their adoration and Idolatrie, was imployed to Idols, and not to naturall things, although they did attribute naturall effects to these Idols, as Raine, multiplication of Cattell, Warre, and Generation, even as the Greekes and Latines have forged Idols of Phabus, Mercurie, Inpiter, Minerua, and of Mars. To conclude, who forhall neerly looke into it, shall finde this manner which the Deuill hath wied to deceme the Indians,

rice the fame to all their Idifferent. Lares; as Poof interceffion. h dihen me of ad and os : hand with bowing of the body,&c. See Min Fel.

10b 21. Of the Idola try the Indians vícd o parti-

to be the fame wherewith he hath deceived the Grockes and Romans, and other ancient Grace tiles . giving them to vaderfland that thefe notable creatures, the Sunne, Moure, Starrer, and Enlements had power and authority to doe good or harme to men. Their manner to pray to Virge to all their I towers, that Ports and the Starres, and the reff of their Idols, was to open their hands. and to make a certaine found with their mouthes (like people that killed) and to aske that which every one defired in offering his Sacrifices; yet was there great difference betwist the words they wied in speaking to the great Tiemwiere be, to whom they did attribute the chiefe power and commandement over all things; and those they vied to others, the which every one did worshippe prinately in his house, as Gods or parties. others the wines they were their Interceffors to this great Teccini records. This manner to lor Lords, laying, that every were event intersections to only great incompensate. It is manner of working, opening the hands, and as it were "eigling, bath formething like to that which lad in horrour, as fit for Idolaters, taying, If I have lyfted my bands mit my month, beau bolding the Sume when it for its Mome when it is light, the maints is a great iniquitie, and is about the most great God.

> He Deuill hath not beene contented to make thefe blinde Indiana to worthippe the Summe Moone. Starres, Earth, and Sea, and many other generall things in nature, but he hash na fed on turcher, giving them for God, and making them subject to base and stick things, and for the most part, fishy and infamous : for they worshipped Rivers, Fountaines, the monthes of Rivers, entries of Mountaines, Rockes or great Stones, Hill and the tops of Mountaines, which they 20 call Apachtas, and they hold them for matters of great devotion. To conclude, they did worthin all things in nature, which feemed to them remarkable and different from the rest, as acknowledge. ing some particular deitie.

> Their shewed me in Caxamales of Nascaa little hill or great mount of Sand, which was the chiefe Idoll or Guaca of the Ancients. I demaunded of them what diminity they found in it They answered, that they did worship it for the wonder, being a very high mount of Sand, in the midft of very thicke Mountaines of Stone. We had neede in the Citie of Kings, of great ftore of great wood; for the melting of a Bell, and therefore they cut downe a great deformed Tree. which for the greatnesse and antiquity thereof had beene a long time the Oratorie and Guaca of the Indians. And they beleased there was a certaine Disanity in any thing that was to extraordinary and strange in his kinde, attributing the like vnto small Scones and Mettals; yea vnto rootes and fruites of the earth, as the rootes they call Papas. There is a strange kinde which they call Lallabuss, which they kiffed and worthipped. They did likewife worthip Beates, Lyons, Tygres and Snakes; to thend they flould not hurt them: and such as their gods be, such as the things they offer unto them in their worthip. They have vied as they goe by the way, to caft, in the croffe wayes, on the hils, and toppes of Mountaines, which they call Apachitem; olde floors, Feathers, and Coca chewed, being an hearbe they vie much. And when they have nothing left, they calt a Stone as an offring, that they might palle freely, and have greater force, the which they fay increaseth by this meanes, as it is reported in a provinciall Counfell of Pers. And therefore they finde in the hie-waies great heapes of Stones offred, and fuch other 40 things. They vied another offring no leffe pleasant and ridiculous, pulling the haire from the eyebrowes to offer it to the Sunne, Hils, Apachittas, to the Windes, or to any other thing they feare. Such is the mileries that many Indians have lived in, and doe to this day, whom the Demill doth abufe like very Babes, with any foolish illusion whatforuer.

They report of one of the Kings Ingmis, a man of a fubtile spirit, who feeing that all his predeceffours had worshipped the Sunne) faid, that he did not take the Sunne to be God, neither could it be, for that God was a great Lord, who with great quiet and leafure performed his workes, and that the Stane doth never ceafe his course, saying, that the thing which laboured fo much could not feeme to be God.

kinde of Idola-

They came to the height of Idolatry by, the fame meanes the Scripture maketh mention of : 50 first they had a care to keepe the bodies of their Kings and Noblemen whole, from any ill scent or corruption about two hundred yeeres. In this fort were their Kings Ingues in Cufco, every one in his Chappell and Oratory, loas the Marqueffe of Canene beeing Viceroy, to root out Idolatry, caused three or foure of their Gods to be drawne out and carried to the Citie of Kings. which bred a great admiration, to fee thefe bodies (dead fo many yeeres before) remayne to faire and also whole. Every one of these Kings Inques left all his Treature and Revenues, to entertayne the place of worship where his body was laid, and there were many Ministers with all his Family dedicated to his feruice : for no King Successor did vsurpe the Treasures and Place of his Peedeceffor, but he did gather all new for himfelfe, and his Palace. They were not content with this Idolatry to dead bodies, but also they made their figures and representations: and euery King in his life time caused a figure to be made wherein he was represented, which they called Guangui, which fignifieth Brother, for that they should doe to this Image, during his life and death, as much honour and reuerence as to himfelfe. They carried this Image to the warres, and in procession for raine or faire weather, making fundry Featts and Sacrifices vinco them. There have

CHAP. S. Wily Portugall escapes Indian cruelty. Their Purgatory and Funerals. 1020

beene many of these Idols in Cusco, and in that Territory, but now they say that this Superficion of worthipping of stones hathaltogether ceased, or for the most part, after they had beene discourred by the diligence of the Licentiate Pollo, and the first was that of the Ingines Roche, chiefe of the faction or race of Hanam Cases. And we find that among other Nations they had in great estimation and reuerence the bodies of their Predecessors, and did likewise worthin their Images.

He Indians of Peru beleeved commonly that the Soules lived after this life, and that the OfSuperficial good were in glorie, and the bad in paine; so as there is little difficultie to perswade them to ons they red 10 these Articles. But they are not yet come to the knowledge of that point, that the bodies should to the dead, rife with the Soules. And therefore they did vie a wonderfull care, as it is faid, to preferue the moneralist of bodies which they honoured after death : to this end their Succeffors gaue them Garments, and foules beleemade Sacrifices with them, especially the Kings Ingman; being accompanied at their Funerals, ucules believe with a great number of servants and women for his service in the other life; and therefore on the surection of a with a great number of returnes and with a great number of returnes and Officers, the bodies:
day of his decease, they did put to death the woman he had loued best, his Servants and Officers, the bodies:

as 6.17. that they might ferue him in the other life.

When as the Gasascapa dyed (who was father to Aisqualps, at what time the Spaniards entred) they put to death about a thouland persons of all ages and conditions, for his service to actually one attend one

treo) they put to use a neouse a transmission persons of an agree and continuous, for his terrace to account of the more appointed to death, held themselutes happy. They did factifice many things wato them, effectivity your children, and with the bloud they made a fronke on the dead mans face, from one eare to the other. This superstition and inhumanity, to kill both men and women. to accompany and ferue the dead in the other life, hath beene followed by others, and is at this day wied among it some other barbarous Nations. And as Pollo waites, it hath beene in a manner generall throughout all the ludies. The reverent Beda reports, that before the Englishmen were Superflines connected to the Goipell , they had the same custome , to kill men to accompany and serve of the old and the dead. It is written of a Portugall, who being captive among the Barbarian's hall being his the dead, it is written of a Portugall, who being captive among the Barbarian's hall being his will have factified him to accompany a Paragil will; Nobleman that was dead, he faid votto them, that those that were in the other life, would 30 make small account of the dead, if they gave him a blinde man for a companion; and that it were better to give him an attendant that had both his eyes. This reason being found good by the Barbarians, they let him goe, Besides this superfittion of Sicrificing men to the dead, being wied but to great Personages, there is another fatre more generall and common in all the Indies, which is, to fet meate and drinke vpon the graue of the dead, imagining they did feede thereon: the which hath likewife beene an errour amongst the Americans, as Saint Austine writes, and therefore they gave them meate and drinkes. At this day many Indian Infidels, do fecretly draw their dead out of the Churchyard, and bury them on hils, or upon passages of Mountaines, or elfe in their owne houses. They have also wied to put Gold and Silver in their mouth, hands. and bosome, and to apparell them with new Garments durable, and well lined under the AO herfe. They believe that the foules of the dead wandred up and downe and indure cold, thirft, hunger and trauel, and for this cause they make their anniversaries, carrying them cloathes, with leacnds.

were much folemnifed, and full of notable follies. It was the office of the Priests and religious dead among of Mexico (who lived there with a strange observance, as shall be said hereaster) to interre the and sindry of dindry of dead, and doe their obsequies. The places where they buried them, was in their Gardens, and thet Nations. in the Courts of their owne houses : others carried them to the places of facrifices which were chap. 8. 50 done in the Mountaines : others burnt them, and after buried the afhes in their Temples; and Places of buthey buried them all, with whatfocuer they had, of Apparell, Stones and Iewels. They did riall, put the aftes of fuch as were burnt into pots, and with them, the Iewels, Stones, and Earerings of the dead, how rich and precious foeder. They did fine the Funerall offices, like to ant weres, and did aften life up the dead bodies, doing matry ceremonies. At these mortuaries they did eate and drinke; and if it were a person of quality, they gave apparell to all such as came to the interment. When any one dyed, they laid him open in a chamber, vntill that all his kinffolks and friends were come, who brought preferes witto the dead, and faluted him as if he were lining. And if he were a King or Lord of fome towner, they offered him flanes to be put to death

60 Prieft, or Chaplaine (for every Mobleman had a Prieft which administred these ceremonies with Chapleman in his house) and then they kalled him, that he might execute his office with the dead. They other Officers likewife killed his Cook, his Burter, his Dwarfes, and deformed men, by whom he was most fer- killed. ued:neither did they spare the very brothers, of the dead, who had most ferued them; for it was a greatnesse amongst the Noblemen, to be served by their brethren and the rest. Finally, they

with him, to the end they might ferue him in the other world. They likewife put to death his

Hauing reported what many Nations of Pow have done with their dead, it shall not be from Ofthe munner the purpose, to make particular mention of the Mexicon in this point, whose mortuaries of burying the

put to death all of his traine, for the entertaining of his house in the other world: and left pouerty should oppresse them, they buried with them much wealth, as Gold, Silver, Stones, Curtins of exquifite worke, Bracelets of Gold, and other rich peeces. And if they burned the dead, they vsed the like with all his Servants, and ornaments they gave him for the other world. Then tooke they all the ashes they buried with very great solemnity. The obsequies continued tenne dayes with fongs of plaints and lamentations, and the Prieffs carried away the dead with fo many ceremonies, and in so great number, as they could scarce accompt them. To the Captaines and No. blemen they gaue trophees and markes of honour, according to their enterprifes and valor imployed in the wars and gouernments; for this effect they had armes and particular blafons, They carried these markes or blazons to the place where he defired to be buried or burnt, marching before the body, and accompanying it, as it were in procession, where the Priests and officers of the 10 Temple went with divers furnitures and ornaments, some casting incense, others finging, and fome founding of mournfull Flutes and Drums, which did much increase the forrow of his kinffolkes and subjects. The Priest who did the office was decked with the markes of the Idell which the Nobleman had represented; for all Noblemen did represent Idals, and carried the name of Come one; and for this occasion they were esteemed and honoured. The order of Knighthood did commonly carry these foresaid markes. He that should be burnt, being brought to the place appointed, they inuironed him with wood of Pine trees, and all his baggage, then fet they fire ynto it, increasing it fall with goomie wood, vntill that all were converted into after, then came these forth a Priest attired like a Deuil, having mouthes vpon every joynt of him, and many eyes 20 of elasse, holding a great staffe, with the which he did mingle all the ashes very boldly, and with fo terrible a gefture, as he terrified all the affiftants. Sometimes this Mimiter had other different

mages and Idols.Chap.g. Images the

and matters, which they worshipped for Gods, and in Perm they called them Guacas, being commonly of foule and deformed beafts, at the leaft, fuch as I have feene, were fo. I of goding the commonly of foule and deformed beaffs, at the leaft, finch as I haue feene, were fo. I regarded the beleque verily that the Deutly, in whose honour they made these Idols, was pleased to Abstractatiol and installs to be worthipped in these deformities, and in truth it was found so, that the Denill spake and answered many of these Gnacas or Idols, and his Priests and Ministers came to thefe Oracles of the father of lies, and such as he is, such were his Countels and Prophe- 30 fies. In the Proninces of New Spaine, Maxico, Tefcuco, Tlafcalla, Cholula, and in the neighbour Countries to this Realme, this kinde of Idolatry bath beene more practifed than in any other Relation of the words, And it is a proffigious thingro heare the fuperfittions rehearfed that they have yield in that point, of the which is shall not be vapleafant to speake something. The chiefest Table of the color of szure, in absankerd or little, at every corner was piece of wood like to a man, let wood a fonce of the color of szure, in absankerd or little, at every corner was piece of wood in forme of a Serpents thead. The stoole signified that he was set in heaven : this Idoll had all the forehead Azuge, and had a band of Azure wider the nose from one care to another: vpon his head he had a rich plume of Feathers, like to the beake of a small Bird, the which was coursed on the top with Gold burnished very browne : be had in his left hand a white Target, with the figures 40 of fine pine A pples, made of white Feathers, seeing crosse: and from about issued forth a crest of gold, and at his fides he had fouredarts, which (the Mexicans fay) had beene fent from heaten to doe those acts and proweffes which shall be spoken of: In his right hand he had an Azured staffe, cut in fashion of a waving snake, All these ornaments with the resthe had carried this sence as the Mexicans doe thew the name of Vitziliputzli fignifies the left band of a forming Feather,

I will speake hereafter of the proud Temple, the Sacrifices, Feasts and Ceremonies of this great Idoll, being very notable things. But at this prefene we will onely frew, that this Idoll-thus richly apparelled and decke, was fee vpon an high Altar, in a small peepe or boxe, well covered with linnen cloathes, lewels, Feathers, and ornaments of Gold, with many randles of Feathers, the faireft and most exquisite that could be found : he had alwaies a curtaine before him for the greater veneration. Loyning to the chamber or chappell of this doll, there was a peece of leffe worke, and not fo well beautified, where there was another Idollithey called Walse. These two Idols were alwaies together, for that they held them as companions, and of equal power. There was another Idoll in Mexico much effeemed, which was the god of repentance, and of Inbilies and Panis miary. pardons for their finnes. They called this Idoll Texeallipues, he was made of a blacke fhining front like to layel being attired with some Gentile deuises after their manner; it had earerings of gold and filter, and through the nether lip a small canon of Christall; in length halfe a foote : in the which they fometimes put a greene feather, and fometimes an azured, which made it resemble fometimes an Emerald, and fometimes a Turquois : it had the haire broided and bound vp with a haire-lace of gold burnished, at the end whereof did hang anieste of gold, with two firebrands of smoake painted therein, which did signifie the praiers of the laffic ted and sinners that he heard, when they recommended themselves vnto him. Betwixt the two eares hanged a number of small herons. He had a lewell hanging at his necke, so great that it conered all his stomacke : vpon his armes bracelets of Gold; at his nauill a rich greene ftone; and in his left hand a

habits, according to the quality of the dead. The fourth & There hath been great curiotity at the Indies in making of Idols and Pictures of divers formes CHAP, Indian Nemelis, Indulgences, Mercury, Adonis, Goddeffer, Feafts. 1031

Raine of precious Feathers, of Greene, Azure, and Yellow, which came forth of a Licokingelaffe of Gold, fliming and well burnished, and that signified, that within this Looking elaffe he faw whatfoeuer was done in the world. They called this Glaffe or Chafton of gold Ir his here which fignifies his Glaffe for to looke in. In his right hand he held foure darts, which fignified the chaftsfement he gaue to the wicked for their funes. And therefore they feared this Idoll molt, leaft he should discouer their faults and offences. At his feast they had pardon of their mon, teart ne mound ancourt since yeares, as shall be declared hereafter. They held this I- Their Nemefret doll Tescalipnea for the god of drought, of famine, barrennesse and pestilence: And therefore they painted him in another forme, being fer in great maiethy vpon a stoole compassed in with a red

To Curtin, painted and wrought with the heads and bones of dead men. In the left hand it liad a Current pantees and wronger with five Pines, like vato pine Apples of Cotton: and in the right a little dare with a Paro makes rarget with most rines, and the arms (fretcht out, as if he would cast it; and from the Target this difference came foure darts. It had the countenance of an angry man, and in choller, the body all painted betwin Relicame foure darts. It had the counternance or an angry man, soon to country, our bowy an gamete we mark it is blacker, and the head full of Qualtes feathers. They vied great inperfittion to this blodie forthe global as which is a Commonwealth of Mexico, they worthipt a famous Priffition. Fearer they had o'f. In Chebala which is a Commonwealth of Mexico, they worthipt a famous Priffition. It is a commonwealth of the common the common priffic and the common

led it Quetzaelevalt. This Idoll was in a great place in a Temple very high : it had about it, Gold, Silver, Iewels, vi boften. very rich Feathers, and habits of diners colours. It had the forme of a man, but the vilige of a lit-20 tle Bird, with a red bill; and aboue a combe full of warts, having rankes of ceeth, and the tongue

hanging out. It carried vpon the head, a pointed myter of painted paper, a fithe in the hand, and many toyes of gold on the legges; with a thousand other foolish inventions, whereof al! had their fignifications, and they worthipt it, for that he enriched whom he pleased, as Memnon and Pluties. In truth this name which the Chothanos gaue to their god, was very fit, although they vnderftood it not : they called it Quere saleoale, fignifying colour of a rich Feather, for fuch is the dewill of conetoufnesse. These barbarous people contented not themselves to have gods onely, but they had goddeffer also, as the Fables of Poets have brought in, and the blinde gentility of the Greekes and Romons worthipt them. The chiefe goddeffe they worthipt was called Tozz, which Goddeffes. is to lay, our Grandmother, who as the Histories of Mexico report, was daughter to the King of 20 Culbuccan, who was the first they stayed by the commandement of Vizzipmzli, whom they facri- See former

ficed in this fort, being his fifter; and then they began to flay men in their facrifices, and to clothe Chape need in this tore, being in a interpeat their day began to may men in their sectiones, and to crottee the litting with the skins of the facrificed, having learned that their gods were pleafed therwith-as allo to put the hearts out of them they facrificed, which they learned of their god, who pulled out the hearts of fuch as he punished in Tulla, as shall be faid in his place. One of these goddesses they worthipt had a fon, who was a great hunter, whom they of Tiascalle afterwards tooke for a god, and thole were enemies to the Mexicans, by whole aide the Spaniards won Mexico. The Province of Tlafcalla is very fit for hunting, and the people are much given therunto, They there fore made a great fool vnto this Idoll, whom they painted of fuch a forme, as it is not now needfull to loofe any time in the description thereof. The feast they made was pleasant, and in this 40 fort : They founded a Trumpet at the breake of day, at the found whereof they all affembled with their Bowes, Arrows, Nets, and other inflruments for hunting : then they went in procefwith their Idoll, beingfollowed by a great number of people to a high Montaine, you the top whereof they had made a bower of leases, and in the middeft thereof an Altar richly deckt, where-vpon they placed the Idoll. They marched with a great bruit of Trumpets, Cornets, Flutes & Drums, and being come vnto the place, they inuitoned this Mountain on all fides, putting fire to it on all parts: by meanes whereof many beafts flew forth, as Stags, Conies, Hares, Foxes, and Woolnes, which went to the top flying from the fire. These hunters followed after with great cries and noise of divers instruments, hunting them to the top before the Idoll, whither fled fuch a number of beafts, in fo great a preffe, that they leaped one vpon another, vpon

ther near that a similar or occasion to great a period, shared they appear one vipor another, you for the people and whom the Altar, wherein they took great elight. Then tooks they a great number of thefe beaffs, and facrificed them before the Idoll, as Stagges and other great beafts, pulling out their hearts, as they vie in the facrifice of men, and with the like ceremony: which done, they tooke all then prey vpon their shoulders, and retired with their Idoll in the same manner as they came, and entered the City laden with all these things, very joyfull, with great store of mulick. Trumpets, and Drums, vntill they came to the Temple, where they placed their Idoll with great reuerence and folemnity. They presently went to prepare their venison, wherewith they made a banquet to all the people; and after dinner shey made their playes, representations, and dances a panquet to an ene people, a great number of other Idols, of gods and goddeses; but the chiefe to eate and were of the Mexican Nation, and the neighbour people as is faid.

S we have faid that the Kings Ingus of Pers caused Images to be made to their likenesse, Of a france Awhich they called their Graces or brothers, causing them for to be honored like themselves: manner of ideeven to the Mexican have done of their gods, which was in this fort. They tooke a captine, fuch larry produced even to the Mexican mue done of their good, which was in this like I key coure a capture just a monoft the as they thought good, & afore they did factifice vnto him their Idols; they gave him the name of Mexican this

They fat down drinke and

fentation lasted, which was for a yeare in some Feasts, in others fix moneths, and in others lesses

they reperenced and worshipped him in the same manner, as the proper Idoll; and in the meane

time he did eate, drinke, and was merry. When he went through the streetes, the people came

for the worthin him, and enery one brought him an almes, with children and ficke folkes, that

he might cure them, and bleffe them, fuffering him to doe all things at his pleafure, onely he

was accompanied with ten or twelue men left he should flye. And he (to the end he might be

reservenced as he passed sometimes sounded vpon a small Flute, that the people might prepare to

him, making a folemne facrifice of him. It followes that we treate of their Religion, or rather

worthip him. The feath being come, and he growne fat, they killed him, opened him, and eate Io

Beginning then with their Temples, even as the great God would have a honfe dedicated, 20 where his holy name might be honoured, and that it should be particularly vowed to his

Religion and Sacraments.

1032

Superfittion, which they vie in their Sacrifices, Temples, Ceremonies, and the reft. That which God by his wifedome hath decreed for his honour and feruice, and for the good and health of man, the Deuill striues to imitate and to peruert, to be honored, and to cause man hathlaboured to make him to be damned : for as we see the great God hath Sacrifices, Prieste, Sacraments, Religious Proto make him to be damined to a surface of the new felies quail var phets, and Ministers, dedicated toshis diuine Seniice and holy ceremonies: fo the Deuill hath his to Gou, and to Sacrifices, Priefls, his kindes of Sacraments, his Ministers appointed, his feeluded and fained holiinitite him in neffe, with a thousand forts of false Prophets.

Chap.11. Of the Temples that were

teruice; euen fo the Devill, by his wicked practifes, perswaded Infidels to build him proud Temples, and particular Oratories and Sanctuaries. In every Province of Pers, there was one principall Guica, or house of adoration; and besides it, there was one Generall throughout all India, Chapara. the Kingdome of the Inguas; among the which there hath beene two famous and notable, the one which they called Pachamana, is foure leagues from Lima, where at this day they fee the raines of a most auncient and great building, out of the which Francis Pizarre and his people drew infinite treasure, of vessels and pots of Gold and Siluer, which they brought when they tooke the Ingua Aliaqualpa. There are certaine memories and discourses which say, that in this Temple the Deuill did speake visibly, and gaue answers by his Oracle, and that sometimes 30 they did fee a spotted Snake; and it was a thing very common and approved at the Indies, that the Deuill spake and answered in these sales Sanctuaries deceiuing this miserable people. But where the Gospell is entred, and the Crose of Christ planted, the father of lyes becomes mute, Flu lib. de traff. as Plusarch writes of his time, Cur cuffaverit Pubias fundere or acula : and Infine Marter treates Tuffin apolito amply of the filence which Christimposed to Denils, which spake by Idols, as it had beene before much prophefied of in the holy Scripture. The manner which the Infidell Ministers and Inchanters had to confult with their gods, was as the Deuili had taught them, It was commonly in the night, they entred backward to their Idoll, and to went bending their bodies and head, after an vely manner, and fo they confulted with him. The answere he made, was commonly like vnto a fearefull hiffing, or to a gnashing which did terrifie them; and all that he did adver- 40 tife or command them, was but the way to their perdition and ruine. There are few of these Oracles found now, through the mercy of God, and great power of Jefus Chrift. There hath beene in Peru another Temple and Oratory, most effeemed, which was in the Citie of Cusco, where at this day is the Monastery of Saint Dominicke. We may fee it hath beene a goodly and a stately worke, by the panement and stones of the building, which remaine to this day. This Temple was like to the Pantheon of the Romans, for that it was the house and dwelling of all the gods; for the Kings Inquas did there behold the gods of all the Nations and Provinces they had conquered, euery Idoll having his private place, whither they of that Province came to worship it with an excessive charge of things which they brought for his service, And thereby they supposed to keepe fafely in obedience, those Provinces which they had conquered, holding 50 their gods, as it were in hoftage. In this same house was the Pinebao, which was an Idollof the Sunne, of most fine Gold, wrought with great riches of Stones, the which was placed to the East, with so great Art, as the Sunne at his rising did cast his beames thereon : and as it was of most fine mettall, his beames did reflect with such a brightnesse, that it seemed another Sunne. The Inguas did worthip this for their god, and the Pachayacha, which fignifies the Creator of Heanen. They fay, that at the spoile of this so rich a Temple, a Souldier had for his part this goodly plate of gold of the Sunne. And as play was then in request, he lost it all in one night at play, whence came the prouerbe they have in Peru for great gamefters, faying, that they play the Sunne before it rifeth.

He Superstitions of the Mexicans, have without comparison beene greater then the rest; as well in their ceremonies, as in the greatnesse of their Temples, the which in old time the Spaniards called by this word Cu, which word might by taken from the Handers of Saint Do-Menuo, Cha. 13. minique, or of Cuba, as many other words that are in vie, the which are neither from Spaine,

ner from any other language now viuall among the Indians, as is Mays, Chico, Vagniano, Chapeten, and other like. There was in Mexico, this Cu, the famous Temple of Vitzliputzli, it had a very great circuit, and within a faire Court. It was built of great itones. in falhion of Snakee eved one to another, and the circuit was called Contepantle, which is, a circuit of Snakes : voon the top of every Chamber and Oratorie where the Idols were, was a fine Pillar wrought with fmall Hones, blacke as jeat, fet in goodly order, the ground rayled up with white and red, which below gaues great light. Vpon the top of the Pillar were battlements very artificially made. wrought like Snailes, supported by two Indians of stone, fitting, holding Candle-sticks in their hands, the which were like Croifants garnished and enriched at the ends, with yellow and greene 10 feathers and long fringes of the fame. Within the circuit of this Court, there were many Cham-

bers of religious men, and others that were appointed for the feruice of the Priests and Popes, for Mexican fo they call the fourraigne Priests which serve the Idoll. This Court is so great and spacious, as Popes. eight or ten thousand persons did dance easily in round, holding hands, the which was an vitall

custome in that Realme, although it seeme to many incredible.

There were foure Gates or Entries, at the East, West, North, and South : at every one of these Gates began a faire Cawley of two or three leagues long. There was in the midft of the Lake where the Citie of Mexico is built, foure large Cawleys in croffe , which did much beautifie it; voon every Portall or Entrie, was a God or Idoll, having the vilage turned to the Cawley, right against the Temple gate of Vitaligutzdi. There were thretie steps of thirtie fathome long, and 30 they divided from the circuit of the Court by a fireet that went betwixt them; voon the top

of these stere was a walke of thirtie foot broad, all playstered with chalke, in the midst of which walke was a Pallisado artificially made of very high Trees, planted in order a fathome one from another. Thele Trees were very bigge, and all pierced with small holes from the foote to the top, and there were rods did run from one Tree to another, to the which were chayned of tyed many dead mens heads. Vpon every rod were twentie Sculls, and these rankes of Sculls continue from the foot to the top of the Tree. This Pallifado was full of dead mens Sculls from one end to the other, the which was a wonderfull mournfull fight and full of horror. These were the heads of such as had beene sacrificed; for after they were dead, and had eaten the fielh, the head was delivered to the Manifters of the Temple, which tyed them in this fort untill they

30 fell off by morfels ; and then had they a care to fee Bthers in their places. Voon the top of the Temple were two Stones or Chappels; and in them were the two Idols, which I have fooken of Vizzilipuszli, and his companion Tlabs. These Olimppels were carued and graven very artificially, and so high, that to ascend up to it; there was a flaire of storie of fix score steps. Before these sy, and tongs, tome consensor yet in lower was a Court of the Consensor of Chappels, there was a Court of foresthed Figures; in the middle whereof, was a high flone of faur hand breadth, pointed in fallhori of a Pyrathide, it was placed there for the facrificing of men; for being hairdont their backs, it was placed there for the facrificing of men; for being hairdont their backs, it was a fall for the fairly and for the fairly of th them and pull out their hearts , as I shall shew hereafter. There were in the Citie of Mexico. eight or nine other Temples, the which were joyned one to another within one great circuit, and had their private Stayres, their Courts, their Chambers, and their Dortoires. The entries of

of fome were to the East, fome to the West, others to the South, and some to the North. All these Temples were curiously wrought, and competted in with divers forts of Battlements and Pi-Cures, with many figures of thones, being accompanyed and fortified with great and large Scotter or Plat-former. They were didicated to divers gods : but next to the Temple of Vizapureds, weathar of Tescalipues, which was the god of Penance and of Punishments, very high and well built.

There were four steps to ascend: on the top was a Flat or Table of sixscore foot broad, and ioy. ning wato it was a Hall hanged with Tapittrie and Curtins of diners colours and workes. The Doore thereof being low and large, was alwayes coursed with a vaile, and none but the Priests mighe enterin. All this Temple was beautified with divers Images and Pictures most curiously : so for that thefeward Temples were as the Cathedrall Churches; and the reft in respect of themas

Parifles and Hermitages: they were so spacious, and had so many Chambers, that there were in them places for the Ministerie, Colleges, Schooles, and Houses for Priests, whereof wee will

The Deuil counterfaiting the vie of the Church of God, hath placed in the order of his Priefls, Of the Priefls fome greater or superiors, and some leffe, the one as Acolites, the other as Lenites, and that which and their bath made me most to wonder, was, that the Deuill would viurpe to himselfe the service of offices Ch.14. God; yea, and whe the same name: for the Mexicans in them ancient tongue called their high had his Popes Priests Papas, as they should say Someraigne Bifbops, as it appeares now by their Hastories. The or Vicars at Priests of Vitalipinals succeeded by Linages of certaine quarters of the Citie, deputed for that Mexico for the 60 purpole, and those of other Idels came by election, or being offered to the Temple in their infan- new World, as purpole, and those of other loss came by election, or being offered to the 1 emple in their infanta-cie. The daily exercise of the Priests was to east Incense on the Idols, which was done foure old and now times in the space of a natural day. The first at breake of day, the second at moone, the third at for both, Sunne fetting, and the fourth at mid-night. At mid-night all the chiefe officers of the Temple Mid-night

did rife, and in stead of Bells, they founded a long time upon Trumpets, Cornets, and Flutes Mattins.

Q999 3

very heavily, which being ended, he that did the office that weeke, stept forth, attyred in a white Robe after the Dalmatike manner, with a Cenfor in his hand full of coales, which bee tooke from the harth burning continually before the Altar; in the other hand he had a Purf-fift of Incense, which he cast into the Censor, and as he entred the place where the Idols was, he incented it with great reuerence, then tooke he a cloth, with the which he wiped the Altar and the Curtins. This done, they went all into a Chappell, and there did a certaine kinde of rigorous and auftere penance, beating themfelues, and drawing of bloud, as I shall shew in the Treatis of Penance, which the Deuill hath taught to his Creatures; and hereof they neuer fayled ar these Mattins at mid-night. None other but the Priests might entermeddle with their facritheie Mattins at mid-night. Assessment of the dignitie and degree. They did likewife fices, and euery one did impley himfelfe according to his dignitie and degree. They did likewife preach to the people at some feasts, as I will shew when wee treat thereof. They had Reuenies and great Offerings were made vnto them. I will speake hereafter of their Vnction in conferrating their Priefts. In Peru the Priefts were entertayned of the Reuenues and Inheritance of their god, which they called Chacaras, which were many, and also very rich.

Of the Monas Deuill bath inuented for histeruice. Chap-15.

There were in Peru many Monasteries of Virgins (for there are no other admitted) at the least one in every Province. In these Monasteries there were two forts of women, one ancient, which they called Mamacomas, for the instruction of the young; and the other was of young Maidens. placed there for a certaine time, and after they were orawne forth, either for their gods or for placed there for a certainte time, a manage that the form of the f power to choose whom he pleased, of what qualitie soeuer, being under eight yeeres of age, if they feemed to be of a good stature and constitution.

Thef. Virgins thus that up into thefe Monasteries, were instructed by the Monacomas, in digins, or Nunns pers things needfull for the life of man, and in the customes and ceremonies of their gods; and afterwards they tooke them from thence, being aboue fourteene, fending them to the Court with fure guards, whereof fome were appointed to ferue the Guacas and Sanctuaries, keeping their Virginities for euer : fome others were for the ordinarie facrifices that were made of Maidens, and other extraordinarie facrifices, they made for the health, death, or warres of the Ingua; and the rest ferued for Wines and Concubines to the Ingua and vnto other his Kinsfolks and Captains, 30 vnto whom hee gaue them , which was a great and honorable recompence : This diffribution was vied euery yeere. These Monasteries possessed Rents and Reuenues for the maintenance of these Virgins, which were in great numbers. It was not lawfull for any father to refuse his daughters when the Appopanaca required them for the service of these Monasteries. Yea, many fathers did willingly offer their daughters, supposing it was a great merit to be sacrificed for the Inqua. If any of these Momacomas or Aclassowere found to have trespassed against their honor, it was an ineutable chastisement to burge them alue, or to put them to death by some other kind

The Deuill hach euen in Mexico had some kinde of religious women, although their posses fion was but for one yeere, and it was in this fort; Within this great circuit whereof wee haue Spoken, which was in the principall Temple, there were two Houses like (Topfers, the one oppolice to the other, one of Men, the other of Women: In that of women, they were Virgins onely, of twelve or thirteene yeeres of age, which they called the Maides of Penance: They were as many as the men, and fined chastely and regularly, as Virgins dedicated to the service of their god. Their charge was, to sweep and make cleane the Temple, and enery morning to prepare meat for the Idoll and his Ministers, of the Almes the religious gathered. The foode they pripered for the Idoll were small loaues in the forme of hands and feet, as of March-pane; and with this bread they prepared certaine fawces which they cast daily before the Idoll, and his Priests did eate it, as those of Baal, that Daniel speaketh of. These Virgins had their haire cut, and their they let them grow for a certaine time : they rofe at mid-night to the Idolls Mattins, which they daily celebrated, performing the same exercises the Religious did. They had their Abbiffes 50 who imployed them to make cloth of divers fashions for the ornament of their Idolls and Temples. Their ordinarie habit was all white, without any worke or colour. They did their penance at mid-night, facrificing and wounding themselves, and piercing the top of their eares, they laid the bloud which issued forth vpon their cheekes : and after (to wash off the bloud) they bathed themselues in a Poole which was within their Monasterie. They lived very honestly and difcreetly; and if any were found to have offended, although but lightly, presently they were put to death without remission, saying, she had polluted the House of their god. They held it for an augure and aduertifement, that fome one of the Religious, Man, or Woman, had committed a fault, when they faw a Rat or a Mowse passe, or a Bat in the Chappell of their Idoll, or that they had gnawed any of the vales, for that they fay , a Rat or a Bat would not admenture of commit 60 fuch an indignitie, if some offence had not gone before, and then they began to make fearch of the fact, and having discouered the Offendor or Offendors, of what qualitie somer they pre-

None were received into this Monasterie, but the daughters of one of the fixe quarters, named

for that purpole : and this profession continued, as I have faid, the space of one whole veere : during the which time, their fathers, and they themselves had made a vow to serue the Idoll in this manner, and from thence they went to be married.

I doe not know that in Pers there is any proper houles for men, but for the Priests and Sorce- Of the M-narets, whereof there is an infinite number. But it feemeth, that in Mexico the Deuill hath fet flerics of relirets, whereof there is an immite numer to the retaining th rore man occur and, one of man, one of man, or inserted for eighteen or twentic yeeres of age, which they called religious. They weare shaued crownes, as the superstition. Friers in these parts, their haire a little longer, which tell to the middest of their eare, except the Chip. 16. hinder part of the head, which they let grow the breadth of foure fingers down to their shoulders Indian shauen hander part of the near, which they yet given that ferued in the Temple of First.part.fill. Finss, & their and which they tyed vp in trelles. Their young men that ferued in the Temple of First.part.fill. Finss, & their and which they tyed vp in trelles. The five young men that ferued in the Temple of First.part.fill. Finss, & their and which they have the first part of the profession of the trelles of the tr ned poore and charty, and the first houers they five pt and made cleane the holy places, bringing ty, thattiy, &c. Wood for a continuall fire to the harth of their god, which was like a lampe that fill burnt before the Altar of their Idoll. Besides these young men, there were other little boyes, as novices, that ferued for manuall vies, as to deck the Temple with boughs, rofes, & reeds, give the Priests water to wash with, give them their rasors to facrifice, and goe with such as begged almes to carry it. All these had their superiors, who had the government over them, they lived to honestly, as when they came in publike, where there were any women, they carried their heads very low, with their eyes to the ground, not daring to behold them: they had linnen garments, and it was lawfull for them to goe into the Citie foure or fixe together, to aske Almes in all quarters : and when they gave them none, it was lawfull to goe into the Corne fields, and gather the eares of Corne. or chifters of Mays, which they most needed, the Master not during to speake, nor hinder them. They had this libertie, because they lined poorely, and had no other revenues, but Almes. There might not be aboue fiftie lue in penance, rifing at midnig it to found the Cornets and Trumpets to a-wake the people. Every one watched the Idoll in his turne, left the fire before the Altar thould die : they gaue the Cenfor, with the which the Priest at midnight incensed the Idoll, and alio in the morning at noone, & at night. They were very fubicat and obedient to their superiors, and passed not any one point that was commaunded them. And at midnight after the Priest had an ended his centing, they retired themselves into a secret place, apart, sacrificing, and drawing blood from the calfes of their legs with sharpe bodkins : with this bloud they rubbed their temples, and vader their eares : and this facrifice finished, they presently washt themselves in a little poole appointed to that end. These young men did not annoint their heads and bodies with any Perum as the Priests did their garments were of course white linnen cloth they doe make there. These exercises and strictnesse of penance continued a whole yeere, during which time they lived with great aufteritie and folitarinefie.

It hath beene faid that the Priests and religious of Mexico, rose at midnight, and having cast Of Pesance & Incense before the Idoll, they retired themselves into a large place, where there were many the strickness. Incenie before the Idoll, they retired themishes into a large place, where there were many the interior of the Idoll, they retired themishes into a large place, which is the rota analysis the Indian the Indian Chapter of Indian Ch calfes of their legs necre to the bone, drawing forth much bloud, with the which they anointed waston. 60.17.
their temples, and dipt these bookins or lancers in the rest of the bloud, then set they them vpon the battelements of the Court, flickt in gloabes or bowles of ftraw, that all might see and know the penance they did for the people : they doe wash off the bloud in a lake appointed for

that purpose, which they call Exapangue, which is to say, water of bloud. There were in the Temple a great number of bodkins or lancets, for that they might not vie one twice. Moreouer, these Priests and Religious men, vied great Fastings, of sine or ten dayes Their sucre together, betore any of their great Feafts, and they were vnto them as our foure Ember weekes : Fafts. they were fo fired in continence, that fome of them (not to fall into any fenfualitie) flit their

50 members in the midit, and did a thousand things to make themselues vnable, lest they should Monsters of offend their gods. They drunke no Wine, and flept little, for that the greatest part of their exer- Wil-worthipcifes were by night, committing great cruelties and marryring themselues for the Deuill, and all to bee reputed great fatters and penitents. They did vie to discipline themselues with cords full of knots, and not they onely, but the people also vied this punishment and whipping, in the proceffion and teaft they made to the Idoll Texcalipnes, the which (as I have faid before) is the and of penance; for then they all carried in their hands new cordes of the threed of Manguer a fadome lone, with a knot at the end, and wherewish they whipped themselves, giving great lag thes over their shoulders. The Priests did fatt five dayes before this Featt, eating but once a day. and they hard apart from their wines, not going out of the Temple during those fine dayes, they fodid whip themselves rigorously in the manner atorelaid.

The Perm to folemnize the feath of the Tra, which was great, all the people fasted two daves: during the which, they did not accompanie with their Wives, neither did they eate any meate with Saltor Garleeke, nor drinke Chica. They did much vie this kinde of fafting for some fins, and did penance, whipping themselves with sharpe stinging Netsles, and often they strooke

Of the Sacrifices the Indi-

the Deuill, & where of Chan 18. Sacrifices of things infenfithemselves over the shoulders with certayne stones. This blind Nation, by the persuasion of the Deuill, did transport themselves into craggie Mountaynes, where sometimes they sacrificed themselues, casting themselues downe from tome high Rocke,

Wee may draw all the Sacrifices the Infidels vie into three kindes, one of infentible things; another of beaits, and the third of men. They did vie in Peru to facrifice Geca, which is an hearbe they efterme much, of Mays, which is their Wheate, of coloured feathers, and of Chaquira, which otherwise they call Mollo, of shels or Oysters, and sometime Goldand Silver, being in figures of little beafts. Also of the fine stuffe of Combi, of carved and Iweet wood, and most commonly Tallow burnt. They made these Offerings or Sacrifices for a prosperous winde, and faire weather, or for their health, and to be deliuered from some dangers to and mishaps. Of the second kind, their ordinary Sacrifice was of Cayes, which are small beaft like Rabbets, the which the Indians cate commonly. And in matters of importance, or when they were rich men, they did offer Pacos, or Indian sheepe, bare, or with Wooll, observing curiously the numbers, colours, and times. The manner of killing their Sacrifices, great or fmall which the Indians did vie according to their ancient Ceremonies, is the same the Moores vie as this day, the which they call Alguible, hanging the beaft by the right fore-legge, turning his eves towards the Sunne, speaking certayne words, according to the qualitie of the Sacrifice they flue : for if it were of colour, their words were directed to Conquille , and to the Thunder , that they might want no water: if it were white and smoothe, they did offer it to the Surge with they might want no water the certaine words: if it had a fleece, they did likewise offer it him with some others, that he might to thine vpon them, and fauour their generation: It it were a Gnanaco, which is gray, they dire-Cred their facrifice to Viracecha. In Cufco they did enery yeere kill and facrifice with this Ceremony, a shorne sheepe to the Sunne, and did burne it, clad in a red Waste-coate, and when they did borne it. they cast certayne small baskets of Coca into the fire, which they call Vilcaronce: for which Sacrifice, they have both men and beafts appointed which ferue to no other vie. They did likewife facrifice small Birds, although it were not so visuall in Pers as in Mexico, where the facrificing of Quailes was very ordinary. Those of Pern did facrifice the Birds of Puna, (for fo they call the Defart when they should goe to the Warres, for to weaken the forces of their aduerlaries Guacas.) They called these Sacrifices Cuzconicca, or Contenicca, or Hualanicca, or Sophanica, and they did it in this manner: they tooke many kinds of imell Birds of the Delart, 10 and gathered a great deale of a thorny wood, which they call Tanlli, the which beeing kindled. they gathered together these small Birds. This aftermbly they called Quico, then did they cast them into the fire, about the which the Officers of the Sacrifice went with certayne round fromes carued, whereon were painted many Snakes, Lions, Toades, and Tygres, yttering this word F. fachum, which fignifies, Let the victorie be ginen onto vs, with other words, whereby they fayd

brought certayne blacke Dogges, which they call Apparer, and flue them, cafing them into a Playne, with certayne Ceremonies, causing some kinde of men to eate this field, the which Sa-Fatting in firs appeared, Crifices they did, left the Ingua thould bee hurt by poyfon; and for this cause they fasted from morning untill the startes were up, and then they did glat and defile themselues like to the Moores. This Sacrifice was most fit for them to with stand their enemies Gods : and although at this day a great part of these customes have ceased, the warres being ended, yet remaynes there fome Relikes, by reason of the private or generall quarrels of the Indians, or the Caciques, or in Shel-offerings, their Cities. They did likewife offer and facrifice shels of the Sea, which they call Molle, and they offered them to the Fountaynes and Springs, faying, that these shells were daughters of the Sea, the mother of all waters. They gave vnto their fhels fundry names, according to the colour, and also they wie them to divers ends. They wied them in a manner in all kinde of Sacrifices, and yet to this day they put bestes fhels in their Chies, for a superflition. Finally, they thought it convenient to offer Sacrifices of every thing they did fow or raile vp. There were Indians appointed to doe these Sacrifices to the Fountayne, Springs, and Rivers which passed through the Townes, or by the their Charcas, which are their Farmes, which they did after Seed time, that they might not cease running , but alwayes water their grounds. The Sorcerers did conjure, to know what time the Sacrifi es should be made, which beeing ended, they did gather of the contribution of the people, what should be facrificed, and delivered them to such as had the charge of these Sacrifices. They made them in the beginning of Winter, at such time as the Fountaynes, Springs, and Rivers, did increase by the movifures of the weather, which they did 60 attribute to their Sacrifices. They did not facrifice to the Fountaynes and Springs of the Defarts. To this day continues the respect they had to Fountaynes, Springs, Pooles, Brookes, or Ruers, which paffe by their Cities or Charcas, even vnto the Fountaynes and Rivers of the Defaces. They have a speciall regard and reverence to the meeting of two Rivers, and there

Blacke sheepe, the forces of their enemies Guacas were confounded. And they drew forth certayne blacke

sheepe, which had beene kept close some dayes without meate, the which they called Pres, and in killing them they spake these words; As the hearts of these beasts bee weakened, so let our

enemies be weakned. And if they found in these sheepe that a certay ne piece of siesh behind the

hear were not confumed by falling and close keeping, they then held is for an ill Augure. They 40

they wash themselves for their health, annoynting themselves first with the flower of Mays, or some other things, adding thereunto divers Ceremonies, the which they doe likewife in their Bathes.

The most pittifull disasser of this poore people, is their slavery vato the Devill, sacrificing Of the Sacrific men vato him, which are the Images of God. In many Nations they had vied to kill (to ces they made accompany the dead, as hath beene declared) fuch persons as had beene agreeable vnto him, and whom they imagined might best serue him in the other World. Besides this, they vied in Pars, to facrifice young children of foure or fixe veeres olde vnto ten : and the greatest part of 10 thele Sacrifices were for the affaires that did import the Ingua, as in ficknelle for his health : and when he went to the warres for victory, or when they gave the wreathe to their new Ingua, which is the mark of a King as here the Scepter and the Crowne be. In this Solemnitie they facrificed the number of two hundred children, from foure to ten yeeres of age, which was a ctuell and inhumane spectacle. The manner of the Sacrifice was to drowne them and bury them with certayne representations and ceremonies: sometimes they cut off their heads annoynting them-ficed.

They did like wife facrifice Virgins, fome of them that were brought to the Ingua from the Monaiteries, as hath beene faid. In this case there was a very great and generall abuse : If any Indian qualified, or of the common fort, were ficke, and that the Divine told him confidently 20 that he should dye, they did then facrifice his owne forme to the Sunne, or to Vrachoca, defiring Particide. them to be fatisfied with him, and that they would not deprive the father of life. This crueltie is like to that the holy Scripture speaks of which the King of Most vied in facrificing his first-born Sonne you the wall, in the light of all Ifrael, to whom this act feemed fo mournfull, as they would not prefle him any further, but returned to their houses.

felues with the bloud from one eare to another.

Lthough they of Pers have furp-fled the Mexicans in the flaughter and Sacrifice of their Of the horris

ber of men which they had facrificed, and in the horrible manner thereof. And to the end wee vied. Chap. 20. 20 may feethe great milery wherein the Deuill holds this blind Nation . I will relate particularly the custome and inhumane manner which they have observed : First the men they did facrifice were taken in the warres . neyther did they vie thefe folemne Sacrifices but of Captines : fo as it Captines only feemes therein they have followed the custome of the Ancients. For as some Authors say, they facrificed. called the Sacrifice Veltima, for this reafon, because it was of a conquered thing : they also called Villing & it Hoftig quafi ab hofte, for that it was an Offering made of their enemies, although they have applyed this word to all kinds of Sacrifices. In truth the Mexicians did not facrifice any to their Idols, but Captines, and the ordinary warresthey made, was onely to have Captines for their Sacritices; and therefore when they did fight, they laboured to take their enemies aliue, and not to kill them, to enjoy their Sacrifices. And this was the reason which Moreguma gaue to the 40 Marquise du Val, when he asked of him, why being so mightie, and having conquered so

many Kingdomes. he had not subdued the Prouince of Tlascalla, which was to neere! Motecuma answered him, that for two reasons he had not conquered that Province, although it had bin easie, if he would have undertaken it : the one was for the exercise of the youth of Mexico, lest they should fall into idlenesse and delight : the other and the chiefe cause why hee had referred this Prouince, was, to have Captines for the Sacrifices of their Gods. The manner they yied in Manner of his these Sacrifices, was, they affembled within the Palistadoe of dead mens Sculles (as hath beene mane (immane) facrification faid) fuch as should be sacrificed, vsing a certayne Ceremony at the foot of the Palissadoe, placing cing. a great guard about them. Prefently there flept forth a Prieft, attyred with a thor: Surplice full of taffels beneath, who came from the top of the Temple with an Idoll made of Parle of Wheate and Mays mingled with Honey, which had the eyes made of the graines of greene glaffe, and the teath of the graines of Mays, he descended the steps of the Temple with all the speed he could, and mounted on a great stone planted upon a high Terrasse in the midst of the Court. This stone was called Quanxicalli, which is to fay, the flone of Eagle, whereon he mounted by a little Ladder, which was in the fore-part of the Terraffe, and descended by another staire on the other file,

fill imbracing his Idoll. Then did he mount to the place where those were that should be facrificed, thewing this Idoll to every one in particular, taying vnto them; this is your God. And hauing ended his she w, he descended by the other side of the staires, and all such as should dye, went in procession vato the place where they should bee facrificed, where they found the Minifters ready for that Office. The ordinary manner of facrificing was, to open the ftomake of him Bloudie Rices, 60 that was facrificed, and having pulled out his heart halfe alive, they tumbled the man downe the staires of the Temple, which were all imbrewed and defiled with bloud : And to make it the more plaine, fixe Sacrificers being appointed to this dignitie, came into the place of Sacrifice, foure to hold the hands and feet of him that should be facrificed, the fift to hold his head, and the fixt to open his stomake, and to pull out the heart of the facrificed. They called them Cha-

A Children (for I have not read nor understood that the Mexicans used any such Sacrifices) of men which yet they of Mexico have exceeded them, yea all the Nations of the World, in the great num- the Mexicans

chalmua, which in our Tongue is as much, as the Ministers of boty things. It was a high dignitie. and much efteemed among it them, wherein they did inherit and succeed as in a Fee-simple. The Minister who had the Office to kill, which was the fixt among ft them, was effeemed and honorred as the Sourreigne Priest and Bishop, whose name was different, according to the difference of times and Solemnities. Their habits were likewise divers when they came forth to the Sacrifice, according to the diversitie of times. The name of their chiefe dignitie was Papa and Topilzin, their Habite and Robe was a red Curtayne after the Dalmarike falhion, with tallels below. Crowne of rich Feathers, greene, white, and yellow vpon his head, and at his eares like pendants of Gold, wherein were fet greene stones, and vnder the lip vpon the middest of the beard

he had a Peece like vnto a small Canon of an azured stone. These Sacrificers came with their fa-The other fine ces and hands coloured with a shining blacke. The other fine had their haire much curled, and tyed vp with Laces of Leather, bound about the middest of the head : vpon their forehead they carried small Roundelets of Paper painted with diners colours, and they were attyred in a Dal matike Robe of white, wrought with blacke. With this attyre they represented the very figure of the Deuill, fo as it did itrike feare and terrour into all the people, to see them come forth with so horrible a representation. The Souereigne Priest carried a great Knife in his hand, of a large and sharpe flint : another Prieft carried a coller of wood wrought in forme of a Snake : All fix out themselues in order, soyning to this Pyramidall stone, wheref I have spoken, being directly against the doore of the Chappell of their Idoll. This stone was so pointed, as the man which was to be facrificed, being laid thereon, vpon his backe, did bend in such fort, as letting 20 the Knife but fall vpon his stomack it opened very easily in the middest. When the Sacrificers were thus in order, they drew forth such as had beene taken in warre, which were to bee facrificed at that Feast, and being accompanied with a guard of men all naked, they caused them to mount vp these large staires in ranke, to the place where the Ministers were prepared : and as euery one of them came in their order, the fix Sacrificers tooke the Prisoner, one by one foote, another by theother, and one by one hand, another by the other, casting on his backe vpon this Deuillish dex. pointed stone, where the fift of these Ministers put the coller of wood about his necke, and the High Priest opened his stomack with the Knife, with a strange dexteritie and nimblenesse, polling out his heart with his hands, the which hee shewed smoking vnto the Sunne, to whom hee did offer this heate and fume of the heart, and prefently he turned towards the Idoll and did caft 30 the heart at his face, then did they cast away the body of the sacrificed, tumbling it downe the flaires of the Temple, the stone being fet io neere the staires, as there were not two foote space

betwixt the stone and the first step, so as with one spurne with their foote, they cast the bodie

from the top to the bottome. In this fort one after one they did facrifice all those that were ap-

pointed. Being thus slaine, and their bodies cast downe, their Masters, or such as had taken them,

went to take them up, and carried them away : then having divided them amongst them, they

did eate them , celebrating their Feast and Solemnitie. There were euer fortie or fiftie at the

least thus facrificed, for that they had men very expert in taking them. The neighbour Nati-

one did the like, imitating the Mexicans in the Cultomes and Ceremonies of the Seruice of

their Gods.

Idols-Idol-fa-

Of other kinds Here was another kind of Sacrifice which they made in divers feafts, which they call Recaof Sacrifices of men which a supervitis zii, which is as much as the fiszing of men. They call it fo, for that in some Featls the Mexican they tooke one or more slaues, as they pleased, and after they had flayed him, they with that vi'd. Chap. 11. skinne apparelled a man appointed to that end. This man went dancing and leaping thorow all Flaying Sacri- the houses and Market places of the Citie, every one being forced to offer fomething vinto him: and if any one fayled, he would firike him ouer the face with a corner of the skin, defiling him with the congealed bloud. This invention continued untill the skinne did flinke: during which time, fuch as went, gathered together much almes, which they employed in necessary things for the Seruice of their Gods. In many of thefe Feafts they made a Challenge, betwixt him 50 that did facrifice, and him that should bee facrificed thus : they tyed the slave by one foote to Challenge fa 2 Wheele of stone, giving him 2 Sword and Target in his hands to defend himselse: then presently steps forth hee that sacrificed him; armed with another Sword and Target; if hee that should bee facrificed defends himselfe valiantly against the other, and relisted him, hee then remayned freed from the Sacrifice, winning the name of a famous Captayne, and so was reputed : but if hee were vanquished, they then sacrificed him on the stone whereunto hee was was tyed. It was another kinde of Secrifice, when as they appointed any flaue to bee therepresentation of the Idoll, saying that it was his Picture: They every yeere gave one slave to the Priests, that they might neuer want the lively Image of their Idoll. At his first entry into the Office, after he had beene well washed, they attyred him with all the ornaments of the Idoll, 60 giving him the same name. Hee was that whole yeere reverenced and honoured as the Idoll it felfe, and had alwayes with him twelue men for his Guard, left hee should flye, with which Guard they suffered him to goe freely and where he would : and if by chance he fled, the chiefe of the Guard was put in his place to represent the Idoll, and after to bee facrificed. This Indian

had the most honourable lodging in all the Temple, where hee did eate and drinke, and whither all the chiefe Ministers came to serue and honour him, carrying him meate after the manner of great Perionages. When her went through the streets of the Citie, hee was well accompanied with Noblemen, hee carried a l'atle Flute in his hand, which fometimes hee founded, to give them knowledge when he passed then presently the women came forth with their little children in their armes, which they presented vnto him, saluting him as God. All the rest of the people did the like; at night they put him in a strong Prison or Cage, left he should flye; and when the Feast came, they facrificed him, as hath beene faid.

By these and many other meanes hath the Deuill abused and entertayned these poore wretto ches, and fuch was the multitude of those that had beene facrificed by this infernal crueltie, as ficed. it feemes a matter incredible, for they affirme there were fome dayes fine thousand or more. and that there were aboue twentie thousand sacrificed in diners places. The Deuill to entertaine this murther of men, vied a pleasant and strange invention, which was, when it pleased the Priests of Satan they went to their Kings, telling them how their Gods dyed for hunger, and Deuill hunger that they should remember them. Presently they prepared themselves, and advertised one a- formans fluck nother, that their Gods required meate, and therefore they should command their people to bee readie to goe to the Warres; and thus the people affembled, and the companies appointed went to field, where they mustred their forces; and all their quarrell and fight was to take one another for facrifice, striuing on either fide to take what Captives they could, fo as in these battels they 20 laboured more to take, then to kill, for that all their intention was to take men aliue, to give them to their Idols to eate, for after that manner brought they their Sacrifice voto their Gods.

And wee must vinderstand, that neuer King was crowned vitill he had subdued some Prouince, from the which he brought a great number of Captines for the Sacrifices of their Gods, fo as is was an infinite thing to fee what bloud was fpilt in the honour of the Deuill.

Many of these Barbarians were now wearied and tyred with such an excessive crueltie, in How the 1st.

(Shedding so much bloud, and with so tedious a Tribute, to bee alwayes troubled to get dians grew Captines, for the feeding of their Gods, feeming vnto them a matter insupportable; yet left they weary, and Captines, for the feeding of their Gods, feeming voto them a matter iniupportable; yet left they could not enkept them in, and the cunning wherewith they abuled this poore people. But inwardly they tie of Satan. defired to be freed from so heavie a yoke. And it was a great providence of God; that the first Chap.az. which gaue them knowledge of the Law of Christ, found them in this disposition : for without doubt it feemed to them a good Law, and a good God, to bee ferued in this fort. Heereupon a grave religious man in New Spaine told me, that when he was in that Countrey he had demanded of an ancient Indian, a man of qualitie, for what reason the Indians had so some received the

Law of Iefus Chrift, and left their owne, without making any other proofe, tryall, or diffoute

thereon, for it feemed they had changed their Religion, without any fufficient reason to moous

them. The Indian antwered him, Beleene not Father, that we have embraced the Law of Chrift fo rashly at they say : for I will tell you, that we were alreadie wearie and discontented with such things 40 as the Idols commanded us, and were determined to leave it, and to take another Law. But when as wee found that the Religion that you preached had no cruelites in it, and that it was fit for vs, and but init and good, we understood and believed that it was the true Law, and fo we received it willingly. Which answere of this Indian agrees well with that we reade in the first Discourse, that Fernand Cortes fent to the Emperour Charles the fift, wherein hee reports, that after he had conquered the Citie of Mexico, being in Cuyoacan, there came Ambassadours to him from the Province and Common-wealth of Mechoacan requiring him to fend them his Law, and that hee would teach them to vinderstand it, because they intended to leave their owne, which seemed not good vnto them, which Cortex granted, and at this day they are the best Indians, and the trueft Christians that are in New Spaine. The Spaniards that faw these cruell Sacrifices, refol-

50 used with all their power to abolish so detestable and cursed a butchering of men, and the rather, for that in one night before their eyes they faw threefcore or threefcore and tenne Spa- Spaniards factimarde factificed, which had beene taken in a battaile given at the Conquest of Mexico: and ficed. another time they found written with a Coale in a Chamber in Tezensco these wordes; Heere such a miserable man was Prisoner with his Companions whom they of Tezcusco did

There happened a very strange thing vpon this subiect, and yet true, beeing reported by men worthy of credit, which was that the Spaniards beholding these Sacrifices. baning opened and drawne out the heart of the lufte young man, and cast him from the rop of the stayres (as their custome was) when hee came at the bottome, hee said to the Aman speaker Spannards in his Language, Knights, they have flaine mee, the which did greatly moone our after his heart

men to horrour and pitie. It is no incredible thing, that having his heart pulled out, hee might is out. speake, seeing that Galen reports that it hath often chanced in the Sacrifice of beafts, after the Galen like de heart hath beene drawne out, and cast upon the Altar, the beasts have breathed, yea, they did His & Plates bray and cry out aloude, and fometimes did runne.

placit, cap.a.

will harb la-

In the first moneth, which in Peru they called Rayme, and answereth to our December, they made a most solemne feast, called Capacrayme, wherein they made many facrifices and ceremoboured to imi- nies, which continued many dayes : during the which, no stranger was suffered to becatche tate and coun. Court which was in Cufco. These dayes being past, they then gaue libertie to strangers to enter. terfair the Sathat they might be partakers of the feafts and facrifices, ministring to them in this manner. The comets of the Manacoma of the Sunne, which were a kinde of Nunnes of the Sunne, made little loaues of the flower of Mays, dyed and mingled with the bloud of white Sheepe, which they did factifice that day; then prefently they commanded that all strangers should enter, who set themselves that cay; then pretently they commanded that an analysis model with a principle of the first which were of a certaine Linge, defeending from Linguippapagi, gave to enery one a moriell of their imall loaus, faying voto them, that they gave their pretent to the end they flouid be control and confederate with the lingua, and that they admired them not to finde too! thinke any ill against the Ingua, but alwayes to beare him good affection, for that this piece foodle bee winesse of their intentions and will, and if they did not as they ought, hee would discover them and bee against them. They carried these small loaues, in great Platters of gold and silver appointed for that vie, and all did receive and eate these pieces, thanking the Sunne infinitely for fo great a fathat vie, and at our create and tate there preces, tomaking the South financity for to great a re-tour which he had done them, 'preaking wordes and making fignes of great contentment and deutotion: protesting that during their lives, they would neither doe not thinke any thing against the Sunne nor the Ingua: and with this condition they received this foods of the Samne, the which the same not the square and with the same of their fidelitie which they observed to the Sunne and to the Ingua their King. This manner of deutillish communicating they likewife yield in the tenth moneth, called Cojarajmo, which was September, in the folemne feaft which they called Crius, doing the like ceremonies. And besides this Communion (if it be lawfull to vie this word in so deuilluh a matter) which they imparted to all strangers that came, they did likewise send of these loanes to all their Guacas, Sanctuaries, or Idols of the whole Realme, and at one inflant they found people of all files, which came express to receive them, to whom they faid (indethey touth people at the same bad fort them that, in figure that he would have them at te worth and honer him, and thewife did find them in honer of the Cacipues. Some perhaps will hold this for a fable and a fiction : yet is it most true, that since the Ingua Tupangs (the which is heethat hath made most Lawes, Customes, and Ceremonies, as Nama did in Rome) this manner of Communion hat not there's continued, with that the Goffell of our Lord (fus Christ thruft our all thefe fuper-graphics), guing them the right foode of life, which vnites their foures to God: who fo would intissic himselfe more amply, let him reade the Relation which the Licenciate Pollo did write.

counterfait holy Sacra-

TT is a thing more worthy admiration, to heare fpeake of the Beaft and folemnitie of the Comner the Deuil Amunion which the Deuill himselfe, the Prince of Pride, ordained in Mexice, the which (alhath laboured though it be somewhat long) yet shall it not be from the purpose to relate as it is written by men of credite. The Mexicanes in the moneth of May, made their principall Feaft to their god Vite the reast of the ziliputzdi, and two dayes before this Feast, the Virgins whereof I have spoken (the which were fhut vp and secluded in the same Temple, and were as it were Religious women) did mingle a quantitie of the feede of Beetes with roafted Mays, and then they did mould it with honey, ma- 40 king an Lioll of that pafte, in bigneffe like to that of wood, putting in stead of eyes, graines of greene glasse, of blue, or white; and for teeth, graines of Mays, let forth with all the ornament and furniture that I haue faid. This being finished, all the Noblemen came and brought it an exquilite and rich garment, like vnto that of the Idoll , wherewith they did attyre it. Being thus clad and deckt, they did fet it in an azured Chaire, and in a Litter to carry it on theirshoulders. The morning of this feast being come, an houre before day, all the Maidens came forth attyred in white, with new ornaments, the which that day were called the fifters of their god Vitaliputali, they came crowned with Garlands of Mays reasted and parched, being like vinto Azahar or the flower of Orange, and about their necks they had great chaines of the same, which went bauldrickwife under their left arme. Their cheekes were dyed with Vermillion, their armes 50 from the elbow to the wrift, were couered with red Parrots feathers. And thus attyred, they tooke the Idoll on their shoulders, carrying it into the Court, where all the young men were attyred in garments of an artificiall red, crowned after the fame manner, like vnto the women. When as the Maidens came forth with the Idoll, the young men drew neere with much reuerence, taking the Litter wherein the Idoll was, vpon their shoulders, carrying it to the foote of the staires or the Temple, where all the people did humble themselves, laying earth upon their heads, which was an ordinarie ceremonie which they did observe at the chiefe feast of their gods. This ceremonie being ended, all the people went in Procession with all the diligence and speede they could, going to a Mountayne which was a league from the Citie of Mexico, called Chapulto 60 seper, and there they made facrifices. Presently they went from thence with like diligence, to goe to a place neere vnto it, which they called Atlacuyanaya, where they made their fecond station : and from thence they went to another Burgh or Village a league beyond Caroacen, from whence they parted, returning to the Citie of Mexico, not making any other station. They Went in this fort about foure leagues in three or foure houres, calling this Procession Trayna Vitz-

CHAP.5. Indian Transubstantiation, Communication, Confession et c.

lipstali. Being come to the foot of the flaires, they fee downe the Brancard or Litter with the [doll, tying great Cordes to the armes of the Brancard, then with great objectuance and reutrence. they did draw up the Litter with the Idoll in it to the top of the Temple, fome drawing about, and others helping below, in the meane time there was a great noyle of Flutes, Trumpets, Cornets, and Drummes. They did mount it in this manner, for that the flayres of the Temple were very fleepe and narrow, to as they could not carry up the Litter upon their floulders, while The Deuillisthey mounted up the Idoll, all the people ftood in the Court with much reuerence and feare, king that va-Being mounted to the top, and that they had placed it in a little Lodge of Rofes, which they christian, and held readie. prefently came the young men, which firewed many flowers of fundrie kindes, productous of 10 wherewith they filled the Temple both within and without. This done, all the Virgins came pinion of transout of their Couent; bringing pieces of paste compounded of Beetes, and roasted Mays, sistiffantision, which was of the same paste whereof their Idoll was made and compounded, and they were and the confeof the fashion of great bones. They deliuered them to the young men, who carried them vp tion, adoratiand laid them vp, and laid them at the Idols feece, wherewith they filled the whole place, on refernation that it could receive no more. They called these morfels of paste, the fiesh and bones of Vite- on corpuctoriliputali. Hatting laid abroad thefe bones, prefently came all the Ancients of the Temple, Prieffs, fimad folem-Leuites, and all the reft of the Ministers, according to their Dignities and Antiquities, für latrous proherein there was a ftrict order among ft them, one after another, with their vailes of divers coffiont with colours and workes, every one according to his Dignitie and Office, having Garlands vpon rites beyond 20 their heads, and Chaines of flowers about their necks : after them came their gods and goddeffes any former whom they worshipt, of divers figures, attyred in the same liverie; then putting themselves Paganisme, in whom they worming, or diders inguite, any state of they wied certaine ceremonies with finging true Sicraand dancing. By meanes whereof they were bleffed and confectated for the fielh and bones of ment, failly this Idell.

This ceremonie and bleffing (whereby they were taken for the flesh and bones of the Idoll) be- their Idoll an ing ended, they honored thole pieces in the fame fort as their god. Then came forth the Sacri
fice which ham ficers, who began the facrifice of men, in the manner as hath beene spoken, and that day they coff so many did facrifice a greater number then at any other time, for that it was the most folemne feast thousand they observed. The facrifices being ended, all the young Men and Maides came out of the Tem- their bloud in

30 ple attyred as before, and being placed in order and ranke one directly against another, they fire and other-danced by Drummes the which founded in praise of the Feast, and of the Idolf which they did celebrate. To which fong all the most ancient and greatest noble-men did answere, dancing a disputing of bout them, making a great circle as their vie is, the young Men and Maides remayning alwayes Christsnaus in the middeft. All the Citie came to this goodly spectacle, and there was a commandement ve- rallbody and in the similater. An increment was goody journal to the fact of the Ideal Franklingura, is despiting as they should act on other meate, but this patte with hony, whereof the Ideal War amade. And supplies the should act on other meate, but this patte with hony, whereof the Ideal War amade. And supplies Ideal War and the Ideal War and the Ideal War and the Ideal War and Ideal War after noone : they held it for an ill figne, yea for facrilege, to doe the contrarie; but after the nothing finer after noone: they held it for an ill ligne, year for factinge, to due the contraint of this ceremonie, to transport ceremonies eaded, it was lawfull for them to eate any thing. During the time of this ceremonie, to transport

to drinke any water; which if the widthen, admonthing all such as had the vice of reason, not to drinke any water; which if they did, the anger of God would come vport them, and they contraine to should die, which they did obserue very carrfully and strictly. The ceremonies, dancing, and sense, reasonfacrifice ended, they went to vnclothe theralelues, and the Priefts and Superiors of the Temple religion, hufacrifice ended, they went to violothe themselves, and the Frients and outperiors of the Legislation tooke the Idoll of patte, which they spoyled of all the ornaments it had, and made many pieces, wherein more wherein more as well of the Idoll it felfe as of the Tronchons which were conferrated, and then they gaue to triumpho. them to the Communion, beginning with the greater, and continuing vnto the rest, both Men, uer mankinde Women, and little Children; who received it with fuch teares, feare, and reverence, as it was an in all thefe, admirable thing, faying, that they did one the fleft and bones of God, wherewith they were grie- then this bruued. Such as had any licke folkes demanded thereof for them, and carried it with great reueand blondie 50 rence and veneration.

All fuch as did communicate, were bound to give the tenth of this feede, whereof the Idoll heredeferiwas made. The folemnitie of the Idoll being ended, an old man of great authoritie flept vp into bed. a high place, and with a loud voice preached their Law and Ceremonies.

THe father of Iyes would likewife counterfait the (Romifh) Sacrament of Confession, and in Of Confession.

Of Confession his Idolatries feeke to be honored with ceremonies very like to the manner of Christians. and Confession. In Perm they held opinion, that all difeates and advertities came for the finnes which they had from which the committed : for remedie whereof they vied facrifices : moreouer, they confessed themselves ver- indian vied. bally, almost in all Provinces, and had Confessor appointed by their Superiors to that end, there Referred ea 60 were some sinnes reserved for the Superiors. They received penance, yea somtimes very sharply, ses as in Papall especially when the Offendor was a poore man, and had nothing to give his Confessor. This of penance.

fice of Confessor was likewise exercised by Women. The manner of these Confessor Sorcerers whom they call Tchurs or Tchurs, bath beene most generall in the Provinces of Collasute. They hold opinion, that it is a haynous finne to conceale any thing in confession. The Teburi or Con-

fessors discourred by lots, or by the view of some beast Hides, if any thing were concealed, and punished them with many blowes with a flone vpon the shoulders, vntill they had revealed all. Then after they gaue him penance and did facrifice. They doe likewife whethis confellion, when their children, wines, busbands, or their Caequer be icke, or in any great exploit. And when their Ingua was ficke, all the Prounces confelled themselves, chiefly those of the Province of Collas. The Contessors were bound to hold their Confessors (ecret, but in certaine cases limited. The finnes that they chiefly confest d, was first to kill one another out of warre, then to steele to take another mans wife, to give poylon or forcerie to doe any harmer and they held it to be a gricuous tinne, to be forgetfull in the reverence of their Guncar, or Oratories, not to observe the Fealts, or to speake ill of the Ingua, and to disobey him. They accused not themselves of any fe- 19 cretacts and linnes. But according to the report of tome Priefts, after the Christians came into that Country, they accused themselues of their thoughts. The Ingua confessed himselfe to no man, but onely to the Same, that hee might tell them to Viracheca, and that hee might foreign them. After the Ingua had been confessed, he made a certaine bath to cleanse himselfe in a ninning River, faying thele wordes: I have told my finnes to the Sunne, receive them, O thou River, and carry them to the Sea, where they may never appeare more. Others that confessed, vied likewise these baths, with certaine ceremonies very like to those the Moores vie at this day, which they call Guadoy, and the Indians call them Opacuna, When it chanced that any mans children dyed, hee was held for a great finner, faying, that it was for his finnes that the sonne dyed before the father. And therefore those to whom this had chanced, after they were confessed, were bathed 30 in this bath called Opacuna, as is faid before. Then fome deformed Indian, crooke-backt, and counterfait by nature, came to whip them with certaine Nettles. If the Sorcerers or Inchanters by their lots and diminations, affirmed that any ticke body should die, the ticke man makes no difficultie to kill his owne fonne, though he had no other, hoping by that meanes to escape death. faving, that in bis place he offered his sonne in sacrefice. And this crueltie hath beene practifed in of deuillith di- fome places, euen ince the Christians came into that Country. In truth it is strange, that this cuftome of confessing their fecret finnes, hath continued to long amongst them, and to doe fo first penances, as, to fast, to give apparell, gold and silver, to remaine in the Mountagnes, and to receine many fripes upon the floulders. Our men fay, that in the Province of Chiquito, even at this day they meet with this plague of Confesors or Teburu, where as many sicke persons repaire vn- 30 to them : but now, by the grace of God, this people begins to fee cleerly the effect and great benefit of our Confession, whereunto they come with great deuction.

Penances.

I will report the manner of a strange confession the Deutl hath invented at Ispon, as appeares by a Letter that came from thence, which is th thus : There are in Ocaca very great and high and fleepe Rocks, which have pricks or points on them, above two kundred fathom high. A. mongft these Rocks there is one of these pikes or points to terribly high, that when the Xamabu. fis (which be Pilgrimes) doe but looke vp vnto it, they tremble, and their baire stares, fo fearfull and horrible is the place. Vpon the top of this point there is a great rod of Iron of three fathom long, placed there by a strange denice, at the end of this rod is a billance eyed, whereof the scries are to bigge, as a man may fit in one of them : and the Goguis (which be Devils in humane share) 40 command these Pilgrimes to enter therein one after another, not leaving one of them : then with an engine or instrument which mooueth, by meanes of a wheele, they make this rod of Iron whereon the ballance is hanged, to hang in the aire, one of thele Xamabufir being fet in one of the fcales of the ballance. And as that wherein the man is fet hath no counterpoise on the other fide, it presently hangeth downe, and the other riseth vntill it meets with and toucheth the rod: then the Gogues telleth them from the Rocke, that they must contesse themselves ot all the sinnes they have committed, to their remembrance, and that with a loud voyce, to the end that all the rest may heare him. Then presently hee beginneth to confesse, whilest some of the standers by doe laugh at the finnes they doe heare; and others figh, and at every finne they confesse, the other feale of the ballance falls a little, vntill that having told all his finnes, it remaines equall with the other, wherein the forrowfull penitent fits : then the Goguis turnes the wheele, and drawes the rol and ballance vnto him, and the Pilgrime comes forth; then enters another, vntill all have peffed. A laponois reported this after he was christned, faying, that hee had beene in this pilgrimage, and entred the ballance feuen times, where he had confessed himselfe publikely. Hee faid moreover, that if any one did conceale any finne, the emptie feale yeelded not : and if hee grew obilinate after inflance made to confesse himselfe, refusing to open all his sinnes, the Gogais cast him downe from the top, where in an instant he is broken into a thousand pieces. Yet this Chri-Of the shami nable Viction flian, who was called lokn, told vs, that commonly the feare and terror of this place is so great to all fuch as enter therein, and the danger they fee with their eyes, to fall out of the ballance, and to be broken in pieces, that feldom there is any one but difcouers all his finnes. This place is called by another name Sangenotocore, that is to lay, the place of Confession.

The Priefts of the Idols in Mexico were anointed in this lore; they anointed the body from the roote to the head, and all the haire likewise, which hung like treffes, or a Horie era tachinate, for that they applyed this Vaction wet and moift. Their haire grew to, as in time it

hung downe so their hammes, fo heavily, that it was troublefome for them to beare it, for they Haire-fuperdid neuer cut it, vntill they dyed, or that they were difpenfed with for their great age, or being filicen. employed in gouernments or fome honorable charge in the Commonwealth. They carried their haire in trelles, of fixe fingers breadth, which they dyed blacke with the fume of Sapine, of Fire trees, or Roin; for in all Antiquitie it hath beene an offering they made vnto their Idols, and for this cause it was much esteemed and reuerenced. They were alwayes dyed with this tincture from the foot to the head, so as they were like vnto shining Negroes, and that was their ordinary Vaction : yet when as they went to facrifice and give Incense in the Mountaines, or on the tops thereof, or in any darke and obfcure Caues, where their Idols were, they yied an other kinde of

CHAP.S. Wicked effects of denillift unction; Dininations, Sorcerers.

voction very different, doing certaine ceremonies to take away feare, and to give them courage. This vnction was made with divers little venemous beatts, as Spiders, Scorpions, Palmers, Salamanders and Viners, the which the Boyes in the Colledges tooke and gathered together, wherein they were fo expert, as they were alwayes furnished when the Priests called for them. The chiefe care of these Boyes was, to hunt after these beasts; if they went any other way, and by chance met with any of these beatts, they stayed to take them, with as great paine, as if their lines depended thereon. By the reason whereof the Indians commonly feared not these venemous beafts, making no more account then if they were not fo, having beene all bred in this exercile. To make an ointment of their beafts, they tooke them all together and burnt them voon the harth of the Temple, which was before the Altar, vntill they were confumed to affice ; then and did they put them in Morters with much Tobacco or Peturn (being an herbe that Nation vieth

much, to benum the fielh, that they may not feele their trauell) with the which they mingle the after, making them lofe their force; they did likewife mingle with these after, Scorpions, Spiders, and Palmers aliue, mingling all together, then did they put to it a certaine feede being grownd, which they call Ololuchqui, whereof the Indians make a drinke to fee vitions, for that Vision oints the vertue of this herbe is to deprine man of fenfe. They did likewife grinde with thefe aftes ment. blacke and havrie wormes, whole haire onely is venemous, all which they mingled together with blacke, or the fume of Rolin, putting it in small pots, which they set before their god, fayine it was his meat. And therefore they called it a divine meat. By meanes of this ountment Like line, like they became Witches, and did fee and freake with the Deuill. The Priefts being flibbered with Lettuce.

30 this ointment, loft all feare, putting on a Spirit of crueltie. By reason whereof they did very boldly kill men in their facrifices, going all alone in the night to the Mountaines, and into obscure Caues, contemning all wilde beasts, and holding it for certaine and approved, that both Lions, Tigres, Serpents, and other furious beafts which breed in the Mountaines, and Foreits, fled from them, by the vertue of this Petum of their god.

And in truth, though this Petum had no power to make them flie, yet was the Deuils picture fufficient whereinto they were transformed. This Petum did also ferne to cure the ticke, and for children; and therefore all called it the dinine Phylicke; and fo they came from all parts to the Superiors and Priests, as to their Sauiours, that they might apply this dinine physicke, wherewith they anointed those parts that were grieved. They faid that they felt hereby a notable case.

40 which might be, for that Tobacco and Ololuchqui haue this propertie of themselves, to benum Benuming the fielh, being applyed in manner of an emplay fter, which must bee by a stronger reason being bacco mingled with poylons, and for that it did appeale and benum the paine, they held it for an effect of health, and a diuine vertue. And therefore ran they to these Priests as to hely men, who kept the blinde and ignorant in this error, perswading them what they pleased, and making them runne after their inventions and deuillish ceremonies, their authoritie being such, as their wordes were fufficient to induce beliefe as an article of their Faith. And thus made they a thousand superstitions among the vulgar people, in their manner of offering Incense, in cutting their haire, tying small flowers about their necks, and strings with small bones of Snakes, commanding them to bathe at a certaine time; and that they should watch all night at the harth, left the fire should

50 die, that they should eate no other bread but that which had beene offered to their gods, that they should upon any occasion repayre unto their Witches, who with certaine graines told for- Divinations, tunes, and digined, looking into Keelers and Pailes full of water. The Sorcerers and Ministers of the Deuill vied much to beimeare themielues. There were an infinite number of theie Witches, Dininers, Enchanters, and other falle prophets, There remaynes yet at this day of this infection. although they bee fecret, not daring publikely to exercise their facrileges, deuillish ceremonies and superstitions, but their abuses and wickednesse are discovered more at large and particularly in the confessions made by the Prelates of Pers.

There is a kinde of Sorcerers among it the Indians allowed by the Kings Inguis, which are as Strange Sorit were Sooth-fayers, they take upon them what forme and figure they pleafe, flying far through ceres. 60 the aire in a short time, beholding all that was done. They talke with the Deuill, who answereth them in certaine stones or other things which they reuerence much. They serue as Conjurers. to tell what hath palled in the farthest parts, before any newes can come. As it hath chanced fince the Spannards arrived there, that in the diffance of two or three hundred leagues. they have knowne the Mutinies, Battailes, Rebellions, and Deaths, both of Tyrants, and of

which the Priefte and

those of the Kings partie, and of private men, the which have beene knowne the same day they chanced, or the day after, a thing impossible by the course of nature. To worke this divination. they that themselves into a house, and became drunke vntill they lost their fenses, a day after they answered to that which was demanded. Some affirme they vie certaine Vnctions. The la dians fay, that the old women doe commonly vie this office of witchcraft, and specially those of one Pronince, which they call Coaillo, and of another Towne called Manchey, and of the Prouince of Guarochiri. They likewife shew what is become of things stollen and lost. There are of these kindes of Sorcerers in all parts, to whom commonly doe come the Anaconas, and Cyna, which ferue the Spaniards, and when they have loft any thing of their Mafters, or when they defire to know the fuccifie of things patt or to come, as when they goe to the Spaniards Cities 10 for their private affaires, or for the publike, they demand if their voyage shall bee prosperous. if they shall be sick, if they shall die, or returne sate, if they shall obtaine that which they pretend: and the Witches or Cor jurers answer, Yea, or No, having first spoken with the Deuill, in an obfeure place: so as these Anaconas do well heare the found of the voyce, but they see not to whom thele Conjurers speake, neither doe they understand what they say. They make a thousand ceremonies and facrifices to this effect, with the which they mocke the Deuill and grow exceeding drunke, for the doing whereof, they particularly vie an herb called Villes, the juyce whereof they mingle with their (buca, or take it in some other fort.

the ancient Law of Mefes, and some to those which the Moores vie, and some approched

neere to the Law of the Golpell, as their Bathes or Opacuna, as they call them : they did wash

He Indians had an infinite number of other ceremonies and cultomes, which refembled to Of other Ceremoni sa d Customes of th · Indiane which are like voto curs. Mexican Bap-

themielues in water, to clenie them from their finnes. The Mexicans had also amongst them a kinde of Baptifme, the which they did with ceremonie, cutting the eares and members of young children new borne, counterfaiting in some fort the Circumcision of the lewes, This ceremonie was done principally to the sonnes of Kings and Noblemen : prefently upon their birth the Priefts did wash them, and did put a little Sword in the right hand, and in the left a Target, And to the Children of the vulgar fort, they put the markes of their offices, and to their Daughters inftruments to fpin, knit, and labour. This ceremonie continued four dayes, being made before Marriage co fome Idoll, They contracted marriage after their manner, whereof the Licenciate Pollo hather written a whole Treatife, and i will tpeake fomewhat thereon hereafter. In other things their cultomes and ceremonies have some shew of reason. The Mexicans were married by the hands of their Priefts in this fort, The Bridegroome and the Bride flood together before the Prieft. who tooke them by the hands, asking them if they would marry; then having underflood their wills, he tooke a corner of the vaile where with the woman had her head covered, and a corner of the mans gowne the which he tyed together on a knot, and foled them thus tyed to the Bridegroomes house, where there was a harth kindled, and then he caused the wife to goe senen times about the harth, and to the married couple fate downe together, and thus was the marriage contracted. The Mexicans were very jealous of the integritie of their wives : fo as if they found they were not as they ought to bee (the which they knew either by fignes or dishonest wordes) they 40 prefently gaue notice thereof to their fathers and kinsfolks of their wives . to their great shame and diffionor, for that they had not kept good guard ouer them. When they went to the house they made an Inventorie of all the man and wife brought together, of prouitions for the house, of land, of jewels and ornaments, which Inventories every father kept, for if it chanced they made any divorce (as it was common amonest them when they seree not) they divided their goods according to the portion that every one brought, every one having libertie in fuch a cafe, to marry whom they pleased : and they gave the Daughters to the Wife, and the Sonnes to the Husband. It was defended your paine of death, not to marry againe together, the which they observed year ry ftrictly. And although it feeme that many of their ceremonies agree with ours, yet differ they much for the great abomination they mingle therewithall. It is common and generall to 50 have vivally one of these three things, either Crueltie, Filthinesse, or Slouth : for all their ceremonies were cru: Il and hurrfull, as to kill men and to spill bloud; or filthy and beaftly, as to eate and drinke to the name of their Idols, and also to pille in the honour of them, carrying them vpon their shoulders, to anoint and befineare themselves filthily, and to doe a thousand forts of villanies, which were at the leaft, vaine, ridiculous, and idle, and more like the actions of children, then of men. Whereas the temporall power was greatest, there superstition hath most increafed, as we fee in the Realmes of Mexico and Cufco, where it is incredible to fee the number of Idols they had : for within the Citie of Mexico there were about three hundred. Mango Ingus Tupangui, among it the Kings of Cufco, was he that most augmented the service of their Idols, inuenting a thousand kindes of sacrifices, feasts, and ceremonies. The like did King Iscoalt in 60 Mexico, who was the fourth King. There was also a great number of superstitions and sacrifices in other Nations of the Indians, as in the Province of Guatimala, at the Ilands in the new Kingdome, in the Province of Chille, and others that were like Commonwealths and Comminalties. But it was nothing in respect of Mexico and Cufco, where Satan was as in Rome, or in his

The Inguas Lords of Pera, had two kindes of Feaths. Some were ordinarie, which fellout Bross critical in certayne moneths of the yeere : and others extraordinarie, which were for certayne today them of caules of importance, as when they did crowne a new King, when they Legame Calco man w fome warre of importance, when they had any great need of water or drought, or o- the Duil. ther like things. For the ordinary Feafls, wee must vnderstand, that enery moneth of the would imitate yeere they made Feafts, and divers Sacrifices, and although all of them had this alike, that the holy frome they offered a hundred sheepe: yet in colour, and in forme they are very diners. In the first tin changes, moneth which they call Rayme, which is the moneth of December, they made their first Feath, Rayme teast. which was the principall of all others, and for that cause they called it Capacrayme, which is to 10 fav. A rich and principall Feast. In this Feast they offered a great number of theene and Lambre

in Sacrifice, and they burnt them with fweet wood, then they caused Gold and Silver to bee brought vpon certayne sheepe, setting vpon them three Images of the Sunne, and three of the Thunder, the Father, the Sonne, and the Brother. In these Feats they dedicated the Inques children, putting Guaras, or Enfignes vpon them, and they pierced their eares : then fome old man did whip them with flings, and announted their faces with bloud, all in figure that they should be true Knights to the Ingua. No ftranger might remayne in Cufco during this moneth, and this Feast, but at the end thereof they entred, and they gave vnto them pieces of the paste of Mays with the bloud of the Sacrifice, which they did eate in figure of confederation with the Inquis.

as hath beene faid before. It is strange that the Deuill after his manner hath brought a Trimitie 20 into Idolatry, for the three Images of the Sunne called Apomti, Churunti, and Intiguacqui which Indian Times fignifieth Father and Lord Sunne, the Sonne Sunne, and the Brother Sunne. In the like manner. they named the three Images of Chuquilla, which is the God that rules in the Region of the Avre. where it Thunders, Raines and Snowes. I remember, that beging in Chamface, an honourable Priest shewed me an information, which I had long in my hands, whereit was prooued that there was a certayne Guaca or Oratory, whereas the Indians did worship an Idoll called Tangatanga, which they faid was one in three, and three in one. Comming then to the Feast of the second moneth, which they called Camey, besides the Sacrifices which they made, they Camey-Seastdid cast the ashes into the River, following five or fixe leagues after, praying it to carry them into the Sea, for that the Virochoca should there receive this present. In the third, fourth and

30 fift moneth, they offered a hundred blacke sheepe, speckled, and grey, with many other things. which I omit for being too tedious. The fixt moneth is called Hatunenz qui Armores, which aniwereth to May, in the which they facrificed a hundred sheepe more, of all colours : in this Moone and moneth, which is when they bring May from the fields into the house, they made a Feast, which is yet very vivall among the Indians, and they doe call it Aymore,

This realt is made comming from the Chara or Farme vnto the house, saying certayne Songs, and praying that the Mays may long continue, the which they call Managora. They takes certayne portion of the most fruitfull of the Maysthat growes in their Farmes, the which they put in a certayne Granier which they doe call Pirna, with certayne Ceremonies, watching three nights: they put this Mays in the richeft garments they have, and being thus wrapped and dref-40 fed, they worthip this Pirna, and hold it in great veneration, faying it is the Mother of the Mays of their Inheritances, and that by this meanes the Mays augments and is preferred. In this moneth they make a particular Sacrifice, and the Witches demand of this Pirua, if it hath ftrength sufficient to continue vntill the next yeere : and if it answeres No, then they carry this Mays to the Farme to burne, whence they brought it, according to every mans power; then make they another Pirus, with the same Ceremonies, saying that they renew it to the end the Seed of Mays may not periff, and if it answers that it bath force sufficient to last longer, they leave it untill the next yeere. This foolish vanitie continueth to this day, and it is very common amongft the Indians to have these Piruas , and to make the Feast of Aymorey. The seventh moneth answereth to Iune, and is called Ancaycuzqui Intiraymi, in it they made the Feath that is called Intiraymi, in the which they facrificed a hundred sheepe called Guanacos, and faid it was the Feaft of the Sinne. In this moneth they made many Images of Ouinus wood carried, all Imitemitical

attired with rich garments, and they made their dancings which they doe call Caye. At this Feath they call flowers in the high wayes, and thither the Indians came painted, and their Noblemen had fmall plates of Gold upon their beards, and all did fing; we must understand that this Feath falleth almost at the same time, when as the Christians objecte the Solemnitie of the hote Coreus Christians Sacrament, which doth refemble it in iome fort, as in dancing, finging and reprefentations. And day recembled for this cause there hath beene, and is yet among the Indians (which celebrated a Feast somewhat like to outs of the holy Sacrament) many Superifitions in celebrating this ancient Feaft of Intiraymi. The eight moneth is called Chahua Huarqui, in the which they did burne a hundred theep 60 more, all grey, of the colour of Viscacha, according to the former order, which moneth doth anfwere to our Iuly. The ninth moneth was called Tapaguis, in which they burnt an hundred

sheepe more, or a Chefnut colour; and they doe like wile kill and burne a thouland Cuyes, to the end that neither the Frost, the Ayre, the water nor the Sunne should burt their Farmes; and this moneth doth answere vnto August. The tenth moneth was called Coyarami, in the which

1046 Peruan Drunken Feast Situa; Itu-fast and procession. Mexican Inbilee. LIRV

they burnt a hundred white sheepe that had sleeces. In this moneth which answereth to Sentember, they made the Featt called Situa, in this manner. They affembled together the first day of the Moone before the rifing thereof; and infeeing it they cryed aloude, carrying Torches in their hands, and faying, Let all harme goe away, firiking one another with their Torches, They that did this, were called Panconcos: which being done, they went to the common Bath, to the Rivers and Fountaines, and every one to his owne Bath, fetting themselves to drinke foure dayes together. In this moneth the Mamacomas of the Sunne made a great number of small Loanes with the bloud of the Sacrifices, and gaue a piece to enery firanger; yea, they fent to enery Guaca throughout the Realme, and to many Curacus, in figne of confederation and loyaltie to the Sun and the Inoua, as hath beene faid.

The Bathes, drunkennesse and some Relickes of this Feast Sinna, remayne even unto this day. 10 in some places, with the Ceremonies a little different, but yet very secretly, for that these chife and principall Feasts have ceased. The eleventh moneth Homaraymi Punchaiquis, wherein they factficed a hundred theepe more. And if they wanted water, to procure raine, they fet a blacke theene tyed in the middeft of a Plaine, powring much Chica about it, and giving it nothing to eate wntill it rayned, which is practited at this day in many places, in the time of our October. The twelfth and laft moneth was called Aymara, wherein they did likewife facrifice a hundred sheepe, and made the Feast called Raymicantara Raquis. In this moneth which answered to our November, they prepared what was necessary for the Children that should bee made Novices, the moneth following, the Children with the old men made a certayne flew, with rounds 20 and turnings: and this i east was called Ituraymi, which commonly they make when it raines too much, or too little, or when there is a plague.

Among the extraordinary Feafts which were very many, the most famous was that which they called Ten. This Feath Ten hath no prefixed time nor leafon, but in time of necessities To prepare themselves thereunto, all the people fasted two dayes, during the which they did neither company with their wines , nor eate any meate with Salt or Garlicke , nor drinke any Chica. All old affemble together in one place, where no ftranger was admitted. nor any bealt : they had Garments and Ornaments, which ferued onely for this Feast, They marched very quietly in Proceifion , their heads couered with their Veiles, founding of Drummes, without speaking one to another. This continued a day and a night; then the day 30 following they danced and made good cheere for two dayes and two nights together, faying, that their Prayer was accepted. And although that this Feaft is not yied at this day, with all this ancient Ceremony, yet commonly they make another which is very like, which they call Anna, with Garments that serue onely to that end, and they make this kinde of Procession with their Drummes, hauing fasted before, then after they make good cheere, which they vfually doe in their vegent necessities. And although the Indians forbeare to facrifice bealts, or other things publikely, which cannot be hidden from the Spaniards, yet doe they still vie many Ceremonies that have their beginnings from thele Featls and ancient Superflitions : for at this

day they doe couertly make this Featt of Yin, at the dances of the Featt of the Sacrament, in

making the dances of Lyamallama, and of Guacon, and of others, according to their ancient Ce- 40

the Mexicans

Of the feaft of THe Mexicans have beene no leffe curious in their Feafts and Solemnities, which were of I fmall charge, but of great effusion of mans bloud. We have before spoken of the principall Feaft of Unzaliputzli, after the which the Feaft of Tezcalipuca was most folemnized. This Featt fell in May, and in their Kalender they called it Tozcole: it fell every foure yeere with the feaft of Penance, where there was given full indulgence and remission of tinnes. In this day they did facrifice a Captine which refembled the Holl Texcalipnen, it was the nineteenth day of May: vpon the Euen of this Feaft, the Noblemen came to the Temple, bringing a new Garment like vnto that of the Idell, the which the Priest pnt vpon him , having first taken off his other Ger- so ments, which they kept with as much, or more reuerence then wee doe our Ornaments. There were in the Coffers of the Idoll many Ornaments, Iewels, Earerings, and other Riches, as Bracelets, and precious Feathers which ferued to no other vie, but to be there, and was worshipped as their God it felfe. Belides the Garment wherewith they worthinged the Idoll that day, they put you him certayne enfignes of Feathers, with fannes, shadowes and other things, being thus attired and furnished, they drew the Curtayn or Veile from before the doore, to the end he might be seene of all men; then came forth one of the chiefe of the Temple, attyred like to the Idoll, carrying flowres in his hand, and a Flute of earth, having a very fharpe found, and turning towards the East, he founded it, and then looking to the West, North and South he did the like. And after he had thus founded towards the foure parts of the World (shewing that both they that were prefent and abfent did heare him) he put his finger into the Ai. e, and then gathered vp earth, which hee put in his mouth, and did eate it in figne of adoration. The like did all they that were present, and weeping, they fell flat to the ground, inuocating the dark reffe of the night, and the winds, intreating them not to leave them, nor to forget the n, or elfe to take away

CHAP. S. Rogations for rain. Tezcalipuas Litter-procession. Manguey whippings. 1047

their lines, and free them from the labours they endured therein. Theenes, Adulterers, and Murtherers, and all other offenders had great feare and heavineffe, whilest this Flute sounded; to a some could not diffemble nor hide their offences. By this meanes they all demanded no other thing of their God, but to haue their offences concealed, powring forth many teares, with great repentance and forrow, offering great store of Incense to appeale their Gods. The couragious and valiant men, and all the old Souldiers, that followed the art of Warre, hearing this Flute, demanded with great denotion of God the Creator, of the Lord for whom we line, of the Sun, and of other their Gods, that they would give them victory against their enemies, & strength to take many Captines, therewich to honour their Sacrifices. This Ceremony was done ten dayes beto fore the Featt : During which ten dayes the Priest did found this Flate, to the end that all might doe this worship in eating of earth, and demand of their Idoll what they pleased ; they every day made their Prayers, with their eyes lift vp to Heauen, and with fighs and groanings, as men that were grieued for their finnes and offences. Although this contrition was onely for feare of the corporall punishment that was given them, and not for any feare of the eternall, for they certainly beleeued there was no fuch feuere punishment in the other life. And therefore they offered themselves voluntarily to death, holding opinion that it is to all menan affured reft. The first day of the Feat of this Idoll Texcalpuca beeing come, all they of the Citicassem-

bled together in a Court, to celebrate likewife the Peaft of the Kalender, whereof we have already fooken, which was called Toxcoalib, which fignifies Adry thing : which Feaft was not 20 made to any other end, but to demand raine, in the fame manner that wee folemnize the Rogatione; and this Fealt was alwayes in May, which is the time that they have most need of raine in those Countreves. They beganne to celebrate it the ninth of May, ending the nineteenth. The lait day of the Feast the Pricits drew forth a Litter well furnished with Curtaynes and Pendants of divers falhions. This Litter had so many armes to hold by as there were Ministers to carrie it, All which came forth besmeered with blacke and long haire, halfe in treses with white frings, and attyred in the livery of the Idoll. Vpon this Litter they fet the personage of the Idoll, appointed for this Feast, which they called the refemblance of their God Tezcalipuca, and taking it voon their shoulders, they brought it openly to the foot of the staires: then came forth the young men and Maydens of the Temple, carrying a great coard wreathed of chaines 30 of roafted Mays, with the which they enuironed the Litter, and putting a chaine of the fame about the Idols necke, and a Garland vpon his head. They called the coard Toxcals, fignifying the drought and barrennesse of the time. The young men came wrapped in red Curtaines, with Garlands and chaines of roafted Mays. The Maydes were clothed in new Garments, wearing chaines about theirs neckes of roasted Mays; and voon their heads Mytres made of rods coursed with this Mays, they had their feet covered with feathers, and their armes and cheekes painted. They brought much of this roafted Mays, and the chiefe men put it vpon their heads, and about their neckes, taking flowres in their hands. The Idoll being placed in his Litter, they strewed round about a great quantitie of the boughes of Manguey, the leaves whereof are large and

pricking.

This Litter being fet vpon the religious mens shoulders, they carried it in Procession within the circuit of the Court, two Priests marching before with Cenfors, giving often Incense to the Idoll; and every time they gave Incense, they lifted up their armes as high as they could to the Idoll, and to the Sunne, faying, that they lifted up their Prayers to Heauen, euen as the smoke ascended on high. Then all the people in the Court turned round to the place whither the Idoll went, every one carrying in his hand new coards of the threed of the Manguey. , a fadome long, with a knot at the end, and with them they whipped themselues vpon the shoulders even as they doe here vpon holy Thursday. All the wals of the Court and Battlements were full of boughes and flowres, fo fresh and pleasant, asit did give a great contentment. This Procession being ended, they brought the Idoll to his viuill place of abode. Then came a great multitude of 50 people with flowres, dreffed in divers forts, wherewith they filled the Temple and all the Court,

lo as it feemed the ornament of an Oratory. All this was put in order by the Priests, the young men administring these things vnto them from without. The Chappell or Chamber where the Idoll remay ned was all this day open without any Veile.

This done, every one came and offered Curtines, and pendants of Sandally . precious Stones, Iewels, Incence, sweet wood, Grapes, or eares of Mays, Quailes : and finally, all they were accustomed to offer in fuch folemnities. When as they offered Quailes (which was the poore mans offering) they yied this ceremonie, they defluered them to the Priefts, who taking them, pulled off their heads, and cast them at the foote of the Altar, where they lost their bloud, and fother did of all other things which were offered. Every one did offer meate and fruite accor-

60 ding to their power, the which was laid at the foote of the Altar, and the Ministers gathered them up, and carried them to their Chambers. This folemne offering done, the people went to dinner, every one to his village or house, leaving the feast suspended vntill after dinner. In the meane time, the yong Men and Maidens of the Temple, with their ornaments, were builed to ferue the Idoll, with all that was appointed for him to eate : which meate was prepared by

other women, who had made a vow that day to ferue the Holl. And therefore fuch as had made other women, who had made a von the day, offering themselves to the Deputies of the Temple, that they might command them what they would have done, the which they did carefully performe. They did prepare such variety of meates, as it was admirable. This meatebeing ready, and the houre of dinner come, all these Virgins went out of the Temple in procession, energone carrying a little basket of bread in her hand, and in the other, a dish of these meates; before them marched an old man, like to a steward, with a pleasant habit, he was cloathed in a white Surples downe to the calues of his legges, vpon a doublet without fleenes of red leather, like to a jacket. he carried wings inflicad of fleenes, from the which hung broad ribbands, at the which did have a small Calibaffe or pumpion, which was couered with flowers, by little holes that were made in it, and within it were many inperfittious things. This old man thus attyred, marched very 10 humbly and heavily before the preparation, with his head declining; and comming neere the foote of the staires, he made a great obessance and reuerence. Then going on the one side, the Virgins drew neere with the meate, presenting it in order one after another, with great reuerence. This service presented, the old man returned as before, leading the Virgins into their conuent. This done, the yong men and ministers of the Temple, came forth and gathered vp this meate, the which they carried to the Chambers of the chiefe Priests of the Temple, who had faited fine dayes, eating onely once a day, and they had also abstained from their wines, not once going out of the Temple in these sine dayes. During the which they did whip themselnes once going out or the a compact in the characteristic means (for fo they called it) what they could, was it lawfull for any other to eate thereof. All the people having dined, they affembled againe was it awant to any other to the feath, whither they brought a captine, they attempted agains in the court to fee the end of the feath, whither they brought a captine, which by the space of a whole yeare, had represented the idoll; being attired, decked, and honoured, as the idoll it felfe, and doing all reuerence vinto him, they deliuered him into the hands of the fact ficers, who felte, and doing an extract remodels, taking him by the feete and hands. The Pope did open his from act that inflatan preferred themselues, taking him by the feete and hands. The Pope did open his flomacke, and pull our his heart, then did he lift up his hand as high as he could, flewing it to the Sunne, and to the Idoll, as hath beene faid. Hauing thus facrificed him that reprefented the the same and the represented the Idoll, they went into a hely place appointed for this purpose, whither came the yong Menand Virgins of the Temple, with their ornaments, the which being put in order, they danced and fung with Drummes and other instruments, on the which the chiefe Priests did play and found. Then came all the Noblemen with enfignes and ornaments like to the yong men, who danced round about them. They did no: vfually kill any other men that day, but him that was facrificed, yet every fourth yeare they had others with him, which was in the yeare of Iubile and full pardons. After Sunne set, every one being satisfied with sounding, eating, and drinking, the Virgins went all to their conuent, they tooke great diffes of earth full of bread mixt with hony couered with small panniers, wrought and fashioned with dead mens heads and bones, and they carried the collation to the Lioll, mounting vp to the Court, which was before the doore of the Oratorie: and having fet them downe, they retired in the same order as they came, the fleward going still before. Presently came forth all the yong men in order, with canes or reedes in their hands, twho began to runne as fail as they could to the top of the flares of the Temple, 40 who should come first to the dishes of the collation. The Elders or chiefe Priests observed him that came first, second, third, and fourth, without regarding the rest. This collation was likewife all carried away by the yong men, as great Relicks. This done, the foure that arrived first were placed in the midft of the Ancients of the Temple, bringing them to their chambers with much honour, praising them, and giving them ornaments; and from thence forth they were respected and reuerenced as men of marke. The taking of this collation being ended, and the feast celebrated with much joy and noise, they disinffed all the yong men and maides which had sepued the Idoll; by meanes whereof they went one after another, as they came forth. All the small children of the Colledges and Schooles, were at the gate of the court, with bottomes of rushes and hearbs in their hands, which they cast at them, mocking and laughing, as of them that 50 came from the service of the Idoll: they had liberty then to dispose of themselves at their pleafure, and thus the Feast ended.

Otherent A Lthough I have fpoken fufficiently of the feruce the Greatest was true and of fiches, will I speak formething of the feat they called Generacout, which was the god of riches, of Marchans, A will I speak formething of the feat they called Generacout, which was the god of riches, for the Marchans to the Marchans to bught a fluor Lthough I have fooken fufficiently of the fervice the Mexicans did voto their gols ; yet which those of the which was solemnifed in this manner. Fortie dayes before the Marchants bought a flaue celebrate.cb.30 well proportioned, without any fault or blemifb, either of ficknelle or of hurt, which they did attire with the ornaments of the Idoll, that he might represent it forty dayes. Before his cloathing they did clenfe him, washing him twice in a lake, which they called the lake of the gods; and being purified, they attired him like the Idoll. During these forty dayes, he was much respected for his sake whom he represented. By night they did imprison him (as hath beene faid) left he should flye, and in the morning they tooke him out of prison, setting him vpon an eminent place, where they ferued him, giuing him exquinte meates to cate. After he had eaten, they put a chaine of flowers about his necke, and many nolegates in his hand. He

CHAP.S. Sower fauce to sweet meat. Temple and Drum-bels. Comedies & Masks. 1010

had a well appointed guard, with much people to accompany him. When he went through the Citie, he went dancing and finging through all the streetes, that he might be knowne for the rejemblance of their god, and when he beganne to fing, the women and little children came forth of their houles to falute him, and to offer vnto him as to their god. Two old men of the Ancients of the Temple, came vnto him nine dayes before the feast, and humbling themselues before him, they faid with a low and fubmiffe voyce, Sir, you must understand that nine dayer bence the exercise of dancing and singing doth end, and thou must then dye; and then he must anfwer, In a good houre. They call this ceremony, Nejola Maxiltlextli, which is to fay, the adnertifement : and when they did thus aduertife him, they tooke very carefull heede whither he

to were faid, or if he danced as joyfully as he was accustomed, the which if he did not as cheerefully as they defired, they made a foolish superstition in this manner. They presently tooke the factificing rasors, the which they washed and clented from the bloud of men, which remained of the former facrifices. Of this washing they made a drinke mingled with another liquor made of Cacao giving it him to drinke; they faid that this would make him forget what had beene faid ynto him, and would make him in a manner infentible, returning to his former dancing and mirch. They faid moreouer, that he would offer himselfe cheerefully to death, being inchanted wich this drinke. The cause why they fought to take from him this heaninesse, was, for that they held it for an ill augure, and a fore-telling of some great harme. The day of the Feast being come, after they had done him much honour, fung, and given him incense, the facrificers tooke 10 him about midnight and did facrifice him, as hath beene faid, offering his heart vnio the Moone,

the which they did afterwards cast against the Idoll, letting the body fall to the bottome of the flaires of the Temple, where fuch as had offered him tooke him vp, which were the Marchants, whose feath it was. Then having carried him into the chiefest mans house amongst them, the holy was dreft with divers fawces, to celebrate (at the breake of day) the banquet and dinner of the feast, having first bid the Idoll good morrow, with a small dance, which they made whilst the day did breake, and that they prepared the facrifice. Then did all the Marchants affemble at this banket, especially those which made it a trafficke to buy and fell slaues, who were bound enery vere to offer one, for the refemblance of their god. This Idoll was one of the most hono- Stately Temred in all the Land: and therefore the Temple where he was, was of a great authoritie. There ple.

30 were threescore staires to ascend vp vnto it, and on the top was a Court of an indifferent largeneffe, very finely dreft and plastered, in the midit whereof, was a great round thing like nto an Quen, having the entrie low and narrow : so as they must stoope very low that she enter nito it. This Temple had Chambers and Chappels as the rest, where there were conuents of Priests, yong Men, Maides, and Children, as hath beene said : and there was one Priest alone refident continually, the which they changed weekely : For although there were in enery one of thele Temples, three or foure Curates or Ancients, yet did every one ferue his weeke without parring, His charge that weeke (after he had instructed the children) was to frike vp a Drum Droms vied in every day at the Sunne-ferting, to the same end that we are accustomed to ring to Euensong, stead of Bels, This Drum was fuch as they might heare the house found thereof throughout all the parts of the 40 Citie, then every man that vp his merchandife, and retired vuto his house, and there was so great

a filence, as there feemed to be no living creature in the Towne. In the morning when as the day began to breake, they began to found the Drum, which was afigne of the day beginning, fo as trauellers and firangers attended this fignall to begin their journies, for till that time it was not lawfull to goe out of the Citie. There was in this Temple a Court of reasonable greatnesse, in the which they made great

dances, and pastimes, with games or comedies the day of the Idols feast; for which purpose there was in the middeft of this court a Theatre of thirty foote square very finely decked and trimmed, the which they decked with flowers that day, with all the art and invention that might be, being inuironed round with Arches of dives flowers and feathers, and in some places there 50 were tied many small Birds, Conies, and other tame beafts. After dinner all the people assembled in this place, and the Players presented themselues, and plaied Comedies, some counterfeit Comedies the deafe, and the rheumatike, others the lame, fome the blinde, and without hands, which came to feeke for cure of the Idoll , the deafe answered confusedly, the rheumaticke did cough, the lame halted, telling their miferies and griefes, wherewith they made the people to laugh; others come forth in the forme of little bealts, some were attired like Snailes, others like Toades, and some like Lizards : then meeting together, they told their offices, and every one retyring to his place, they founded on small flutes, which was pleasant to heare. They likewise counterfeited Butterflies and small Birds of divers colours, and the children of the Temple represented thele formes, then they went into a little Forrest planted there for the nonce, where the Priests

60 of the Temple drew them forth with instruments of musicke. In the meane time they yied many pleafant speeches, some in propounding, others in defending, wherewith the affistants were pleafantly intertained. This done, they made a Maske or Mummerie with all these personages, and so the Feast ended : the which were vsually done in their princivall Featls.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Civill Customes and Arts of the INDIANS takenout of ACOSTAS 6. Boooke.

cupied themselves onely in visiting one another, and so spent the time: the secriticers of the Temple did likewise cease their factifices. These sine dayes being past, they began the computa-

tion of the yeare, whereof the first moneth and beginning was in March, when the leaues be-

gan to grow greene, although they tooke three dayes of the moneth of February; for the first

day of their yeare was, as it were, the fix and twentieth day of February, as appeareth by their

tarion of rimes and the Kalende h Meri cans vied.Cha.z.

Mexican yeare

Will first shew in what fort the Mexicans counted and divided their yeere, their moneths, their Kalender, their computations, their worlds and ages. They diuided the yeare into eighteene moneths, to which they gaue twentie dayes. wherein the three hundred and threefcore dayes are accomplished, not compre. Io hending in any of these Moneths the fine daies that remaine, and make the year hending many of these Monorths the man dealed them the dayer of sething:

perfect. But they did reckon them apart, and called them the dayer of sething. Messem years during the which, the people did not any thing, neither went they to their Temples, but oc-

Their Kalen-

Kalender, within the which ours is likewife comprehended and contained with a very ingenious Art, which was made by the ancient Indians that knew the first Spaniards. I have leene to this Kalender, and haue it yet in my custodie, which well deferueth the fight, to understand the difcourse and industrie the Mexican Indians had. Euerie one of these eighteene moneths had his proper name, and his proper picture, the which was commonly taken of the principall Feast that was made in that moneth, or from the diversitie of times, which the yeare caused in that moneth. They had in this Kalender certaine daies marked and diftinguished for their feafts, And they accounted their weekes by thirteene dayes, marking the daies with a Zero or cipher, which they multiplied vnto thirteene, and then began to count, one, two, &c. They did like dans for years.
See this in the wile marke the yeares of these wheeles, with four figures or figures, attributing to eueric yeare Mevican Chro- a peculiar figne, whereof one was of a House, another of a Conie, the third of a Reede, and the nick in their fourth of a Flint. They painted them in this fort, noting by those figures the yeare that did 10 owne figures runne, laying of so many Houses, of so many Florts, of such a Wheele, happened such a thing. For we must understand that their wheele, which was an age, contained source weekes of yeares, eueric weeke containing thirteene yeares, which in all made fiftie two yeares. In the midft of this wheele they painted a Sun, from the which went four beames or lines in crosse to the circumference of the wheele, and they made their course, even as the circumference was divided into four equall parts, euerie one with his line, having a diffinct colour from the reft, and the foure colour were, Greene, Blew, Red, and Yellow: enery portion of these source had thirteene separations

enery figne a yeare, and vpon the head of this figne they painted what had happened that yeare. And therefore I did fee in the Kalender mentioned the yeare when the Spaniards entered 40 Mexico, marked by the picture of a manclad in red, after our manner, for such was the habit of the first Spaniard, whom Fernando Cortes sent, at the end of the two and fiftie yeares, which finished the wheele. They vsed a pleasant ceremonie, which was, the last night they did breake all their veffels and stuffe, and put out their fire, and all the lights, saying, that the world should end at the finishing of one of these wheeles, and it might be at that time: for (laid they) seeing the world must then end, what neede is there to prouide meare to eate, and therefore they had no further neede of Veffels nor fire. Vpon this conceit they passed the night in great feare, saying, it might happen there would be no more day, and they watched verse carefully for the day; when they faw the day begin to breake, they prefently beat many Drums, and founded Corners, Flutes, and other instruments of ioy and gladnesse, saying, that God did yet prolong the to time with another age, which were fiftie two yeares. And then began another wheele. The first day and beginning of this age they tooke new fire, and bought new Veilels to dreffe their meate, and all went to the high Priest for this new fire, having first made a solemne Sacrifice, and given thanks for the comming of the day, and prolongation of another age. This was their manner of

which had all their fignes or particular figures, of a House, a Conie, a Reede, or a Flint, noting by

How the Kings

How the Kings A Lthough this supputation or times practicular mongrature of the Money and decrains, for men that had no learning; yet in my opinion they wanted difcourfe and largest account which the confidence of the Money. Lthough this supputation of times practifed amongst the Mexicans, be ingenious enough confideration, having not grounded their computation according vnto the course of the Moone, nor distributed their months accordingly, wherein those of Pers haue farre surpassed them: for 60 Berter comput they divided their yeare into as manie daies, perfectly accomplished as we doe here, and into eation of times tweltie moneths or Moones, in the which they imploied and confumed the eleuen daies that remaind of the Moone, as Polo writes. To make the computation of their yeare fure and certaine, they yfed this industrie; vpon the Mountaine, which are about the Citie of Cufce (where the

accounting their yeares, moneths, weekes, and ages.

CHAS 6 Suns 12 Pillars Writing by letters, characters pillares Images fooles books TOKI

Kings Inguas held their Court, being the preatest fanchuatie of those Realms, and as we should say another Rome) there were twelve Pillars fet in order , and in foch diffance the one from the other, as severise moneth one of chele Pillars did note the tifing and setting of the Suine. They 1, Pillars of called them Succanga, by meanes whereof they taught and shewed, the Feasts, and the seasons the Sonne. fir to fowe and reape, and to doe other things. They did certaine facrifices to these Pillars of the Sunne. Enery moneth had his proper name, and peculiar Peafts. They began the yeare by ianurie as we doe. But fince, a King Inqua called Pachacato, which fignifies a reformer of the Tomn/e, begantheir yeare by December, by reason (as I confecture) that then the Sunne returneth from the laft point of Capricorne, which is the tropike neerest vinto them. I know not wheno ther the one or the other have observed any Bifexte, although some hold the contrarie. The weekes which the Mexicans did reckon, were not properly weekes, being not of feugn daies : the Inqualikewife made no mention thereof which is no wonder, feeing the count of the

weeke is not grounded upon the course of the Sunne, as that of the yeare, nor of the Moone, as that of the moneth; but among the Hebrewer it is grounded upon the creation of the world. as Morfes reporteth and amongit the Greekes and Latins upon the number of the feuen Planets. of whole riames the daies of the weeke haie taken their denomination ; vet was it much for those Indians, being men without bookes and learning, to have a yeare, seatons, and featis, so well appointed as I have laid.

Exters were invented to fignifie properly the words we doe pronounce, eyen as words (according to the Philosopher) are the fignes and demonstrations of mans thoughts and con- Thatno Naticeptions. And both the one and the other (I jay the letters and words) were ordained to make on of he Indies things knowne. The voice or fuch as are pretent, and letters for the absent, and fuch as are to found to have come. Signes and markes which are not properly to fignific words, but things, cannot be called, bad the vicos neither in truth are they letters, although they be written, for we cannot fay that the picture of Letters, Chap, 4 the Sunne is a writing of the Sunne, but onely a picture; and the like may be faid of other figures and characters, which have no refemblance to the thing, but ferue onely for memorie; for he that invented them, did not ordaine them to fignific words, but onely to noate the thing : neither doe they call those characters, letters, or writings, at indeede they are not, but father ciphers. 30 or remembrances, as those be which the Spheritts of Astronomers doe vie, to fighthe divers tignes

or planets of Mars, Venus, Impiter, &c. Such characters are ciphers, and no letters : for what name focuer Mart may have in Italian. Such charáchers are ciphers, and no letters: for what name focuer CMer may have in statum, France, or Spould, this characher doth advikes fignifie it, the which is not found in letters: too of remem-although they lignifie the thing, yet is it by meaned of words. So as they which know not be brance too pothing, underftand them not : as for example, the Greekes nor the Hebrews, cannot conceine what flerity; letters. this word Sol doth fignifie, although they fee it written; for that they understand not the Las as we have; pie tine word : fo as writing and letters are onely practifed by them , which fignifie words there are onely practifed by them, which fignifie words there. with. For if they fignifie things mediately, they are no more letters not writings, bit ciphers red. ts, as in

40 flories and Antiquities may be preserved by one of these three meanes, either by letters and wri- Such fool said tings, as hath beene vied among it the Latines, Greekes, Hebrewes, and manie other Nations; or that wife counby painting, as hath beene vied almost throughout all the world, for it is said in the second Nie fell make the cone Countell, Painting is a Booke for fooles which cannot reade: or by ciphers and characters, as the indecrecing ! cipher fignifies the number of a hundred, a thouland and others, without noting the word of a mages not onehundred, or a thousand. The other thing we may observe thereby, is that which is pro- ly to be bookes pounded in this Chapter, which is, that no Nation of the Indies discouered in our time, for such accanpounded in this Chapter, which is, but of the other two forts, Images, and figures, obieds of wor The which I observe, not onely of the Indies of Pern, and New Spaine, but also of Inp- ship to karned pon, and China.

It is difficulate vinderstand how the Chineis can write proper names in their tongue, especially of strangers, being things they have never seene, and not able to invent figures proper vnto them. I have made triall thereof being in Mexico with the Chinois, willing them to write this propolition in their language, lofeph Acofta is come from Pors, and fuch like: whereupon the Chinese was long pentiue, but in the end hee did write it, the which other Chinese did after reade, although they did vary a little in the pronuntiation of the proper name. For they vie this deutle to write a proper name : they feeke out some thing in their tongue, that hath refemblance to that name, and fet downe the figure of this thing. And as it is difficult among for many proper names, to finde things to refemble them in the prolation, so is it very difficult and trou-bleiome to write such names. Vpon this purpose, Father Allenso Sanchez told vs, that when he

Cowas in China, being led into divers Tribunal Seates, from Manderin to Manderin, they were long in putting his name in writing in their Capbas, yet in the end they did write it after their manner, and foridiculoutly, that they scarce came neere to the name : and this is the fashion of Letters and Writings which the Chinois vied. That of the Iapponous approached very neere, although they affirme that the Noblemen of lappon that came into Europe , did write all things

and pictures : whereby we may observe two notable things. The one, that the memorie of His chine.

very casily in their Language, were they of our proper names : yee, I have had some of their Writing showed me, whereby it seemes they should have some kinds of Letters, although the greatest part of their Writings, bee by the Characters and figures, as hath beene said of the

An Indian of Peru or Mexico, that hath learned to read & write, knowes more then the wifest Mandarm that is among ft them : for that the Indian with foure and twentie Letters which hee Manager, that is among a than hard in the World; and a Mandarin with his hundred thousand Letters, will be troubled to write some proper name, as of Marsin, or Alongo, and with greater reason he shall bee lesse able to write the names of things hee knowes not. So as the writing in China, is no other thing but a manner of painting or ciphering.

Of the fashion of Letters and writings which the Mexicans vied. Char.7.

VE find among the Nations of New Spaine a great knowledge and memorie of antionititie; and therefore fearthing by what meanes the Indians had preferred their Hillories, and fo many particularities, I learned, that although they were not fo fubrill and curious as the Chinois, and those of Lappon, yethad they some kind of Letters and Bookes amongst them. whereby they preserved (atter their manner) the deeds of their Predecessors. In the Province of Tucatan, where the Bishopricke is, which they call de Hondards, there were Bookes of the leaues of Trees, folded and squared, after their manner, in the which the wife Indians contained the diffribution of their times, the knowledge of the Planets, of beafts and other naturall things, Bookes of the diffinencia of their Antiquities, a thing full of great curiofitie and diligence. It feemed to some Pendant to heere folium that all this was an Inchantment and Magicke Arte, who did obstinately maintayne, that they liber, or codex, from the fine ought to be burnt, fo as they were committed to the fire. Which fince not onely the Indiana found to be ill done, but also the curious Spaniards, who defired to know the secrets of the Coun-

Ancients writ, trey. The like hath happened in other things: for our men thinking that all was but Superflie tion, haue lost many memorials of ancient and holy things, which might haue profited much, This proceedeth of a foolish and ignorant zeale, who not knowing, nor seeking to know what concerned the Indians, fay preindicately, that they are all but Witch-crafts, and that all the Indians are but Drunkards, incapable to know or learne any thing. For fuch as would be curiously informed of them, have found many things worthy of confideration. One of our company of Iesuits, a man very wittie and well experienced, did affemble in the Prouince of Mexico, the 20 Ancients of Tefence, of Talla, and of Mexico, conferring at large with them, who shewed vnto him their Bookes, Histories and Kalenders, things very worthy the fight, because they had their figures and Hierogliphicks, whereby they represented things in this manner : Such as had forme or figure, were represented by their proper Images, and such as had not any, were represented by Characters that fignified them, and by this meanes they figured and writ what they would. And to observe the time when any thing did happen, they had those painted Wheeles, for every one of them contayned an Age, which was two and fiftie yeeres, as hath beene faid; and of the fide of those Wheeles, they did paint with figures and Characters right against the yeers, the memorable things that happened therein. As they noted the yeere when as the Spaniards entred their Countrey, they painted a man with a Hat and a red lerkin, vpon the figne of a Reed, which did 40 rule then, and fo of other accidents. But for that their Writings and Characters were not fufficient as our Letters and Writings be, they could not fo plainly expresse the words, but onely the substance of their conceptions. And foras much as they were accustomed to rehearse Discourses and Dialogues by heart, compounded by their Oratours and ancient Rhethoricians, and many Capbas made by their Poets (which were impossible to learne by their Hierogliphickes and Characters) the Mexicans were very curious to have their Children learne those Dialogues and compositions by heart. For the which cause they had Schooles, and as it were, Colledges or Seminaries, where the Ancients taught Children thefe Orations, and many other things, which they preserved amongst them by tradition from one to another, as perfectly, as if they had beene written; elpecially the most famous Nations had a care to have their children (which had any in- 50 clination to be Rhetoritians, and to practife the Office of Orators) to learne these Orations by heart : So as when the Spaniards came into their Countrey, and had taught them to reade and write our Letters, many of the Indians then wrote these Orations, as some grave men doe witneffe that had read them. Which I fay, for that some which shall happily reade these long and eloquent Discourses in the Mexican History, will easily believe they have beene invented by the Spaniards, and not really taken and reported from the Indians. But having knowne the certains truth, they will give credit (as reason is) to their Histories. They did also write these Discourses after their manner, by Characters and Images ; and I have feene for my better fatisfaction, the Pater noster, Anie Maria, and Symboll, or generall Confession of our Faish, written in this manner by the Indians.

And in truth whosoeuer shall see them, will wonder thereat. For , to signific these words, 1 60 a Sinner doe confesse my felfe, they painted an Indian vpon his knees, at a religious mans feet, 20 one that confesseth himselte : and for this, To God most mightie, they painted three faces with their Crownes, like to the Trinitie, and To the glorious Virgin Marie, they painted the face of

our Lady, and halfe the bodie of a little childe : and for Saint Peter and Saint Paul, heads with crownes, and a Key with a Sword : and whereas Images failed, they did fet Characters . is Wherem I have finned, Ge. whereby we may conceine the quicknelle of spirie of these Indians. feeing this manner of writing of our Prayers and matters of Paith hath not beene taught them by the Spaniards, neither could they have done it, if they had not had an excellent conception of that was raught them. And I have feene in Peru, a confession of sinnes brought by an Indian. written in the fame fort with Pictures and Characters, painting every one of the tenne Commandements , after a certayne manner , where there were certayne markes like Ciphers. which were the finnes hee had committed against the Commandements. I nothing doubt but if 10 any of the most sufficient Spaniards were imployed to make memorials of the like things by

by their Images and markes , they would not attayne vnto it in a whole yeere, no riot

PEfore the Spaniards came to the Indies, they of Perm had no kind of writing, either Let. Of Registers ters, Characters, Ciphers, or Figures, like to those of China and Mexico, yet preferned and the manthey the memory of their Antiquities , and mayntaine an order in all their affaires, of Peace, net of re ko-Warre, and Policie, for that they were carefull observers of Traditions from one to another, and mains of Prin the young ones learned, and carefully kept, as a holy thing, what their Superiors had told them, yied, Chang. and taught it with the like care to their Posteritie. Besides this diligence, they supplied the

20 want of Letters and Writings, partly by painting, as thole of Moxico, (although they of Peru were very groffe and blocks(h) and partly, and most commonly by Quippos. These Quippos are Quippos. Memorials or Registers, made of Bowes, in the which there are divers knots and colours, which doe fignifie divers things, and it is firange to fee what they have expressed and represented by this meanes : for their Quippos ferue them infleed of Bookes of Histories, of Lawes, Ceremonies. and accounts of their affaires. There were Officers appointed to keepe thele Quippos, the which at this day they call Outpocamajos, the which were bound to give an account of every thing, as Notaries and Registers we heere. Therefore they fully beleeved them in all things, for according to the varietie or bulinelle, as Warres, Policies, Tributes, Ceremonies and Lands, there were fundry Quippos or branches, in every one of the which there were fo many knots little and great.

30 and ftrings tyed vnto them, fome Red, fome Greene, fome Blue, fome White; and finally fuch dinerlitie, that even as wee derive an infinite number of words from the four and twentie Letters, applying them in divers forts, so doe they draw innumerable words from their knots, and diversitie of colours. Which thing they doe in such a manner, that if at this day in Pers, any Commissary come at the end of two or three yeeres, to take information vpon the life of any Officer, the Indians come with their small reckonings verified, saying, that in such a Village they given him to many Egges which he hath not payed for, in fuch a house a Henne, in another, two burthens of graffe for his Horse, and that he hath payed but so much mony, and remaineth debtor so much. The proofe being presently made with these numbers of knots and handfuls of coards, it remaynes for a certaine testimonie and register. I did see a handfull of these strings,

40 wherein an Indian woman carried written a generall confeilion of all her life, and thereby confeffed her felfe, as well as I could have done it in written Paper. I asked her what those ftrings meant that differed from the reft : the answered me, they were certaine circumstances which the Writing with finnerequired to be fully confessed. Beside these Quippos of threed, they have another, as it forall stones. were a kind of writing with small stones, by meanes whereof, they learne punctually the words they defire to know by heart. It is a pleasant thing to see the old and the imposent (with a Wheelemade of small stones) learne the Paser nofter, with another the Aue Maria, with another the Creed; and to remember what stone signifies, Which was conceived by the Holy Ghost, and which, Suffered under Pontsus Pilate.

It is a pleafant thing to fee them correct themselves when they doe erre; for all their correction consisteth onely in beholding of their small stones. One of these Wheeles were sufficient to make me forget all that I doe know by heart. There are a great number of these Wheeles in the Church-yards for this purpole. But it feemes a kind of Witch-craft, to fee another kinde of Onippos, which they make of graines of Mays, for to east up a hard account, wherein a good Arithmetician would bee troubled with his Penne to make a diuffion : to fee how much every Accounts by one must contribute: they doedraw formany graines from one fide, and adde formany to ano-graines of ther, with a thousand other inventions. These Indians will take their graines, and place five Mays. of one fide, three of another, and eight of another, and will change one graine of one fide. and three of another : So as they finish a certaine account , without erring in any point : and they sooner submit them selves to reason by these Quippos, what every one ought to pay, 60 then weecan doe with the Penne. Heereby wee may judge if they have any understanding, or bee brutish ; for my part, I thinke they passe vs in those things, whereunto they doe apply

1052 Divers formes of writing and government. Peru and Mexico compared L'1B. V

hold in their Writings. Cb.o.

Diuers man-

T Thall be good to adde hereunto what we have observed, touching the Indians Writings : for their manner was not to write with a continued line, but from the top to the bottome, or in circle-wife. The Latines and Greekes doe write from the left hand vnto the right, which is the vulgar and common manner wee doe vie. The Hebrewer contrarribile beganne at the right to the left, and therefore their Bookes began where ours did end. The Chinois write neither like the Greekes nor like the Hebrewes, but from the top to the bottome, for as they bee no Letters but whole words, and that every figure and Character fignifieth a thing, they have no neede to affemble the parts one with another, and therefore they may well write from the toppe to the bottome. Those of Mexico, for the same cause did not write in line, from one side to another. but contrary to the Chinois, beginning below, they mounted vpward. They vied this manner of 10 writing, in the account of their dayes, and other things which they observed: Yet when they did write in their Wheeles or Signes, they began from the middeft where the Sunne was figurred. and so mounted by their yeeres vnto the round and circumference of the Wheele.

By words. Pictures, and these Memorialls, the Kings were often advertised of that which palled. For this caute there were men of great agilitie, which ferued as Curriers, to goe and come, whom they did nourish in this exercise of Running from their youth, labouring to have them well breathed, that they might runne to the top of a high Hill without wearineffe. And therefore in Mexico they gave the Prize to three or foure that first mounted up the stayres of the Temple, as hath beene faid in the former Booke. And in Cufco, when they made their Solemne Feaft of Capacrayme, the Nouices did runne who could fafteft vp the Rocke of Traceuri, And the exercise of running is generall; much vied among the Indians. When as there chanced any matter of importance, they fent vnto the Lords of Mexico, the thing painted, whereof they would adjustife them, as they did when the first Spanish ships appeared to their fight, and when they tooke Topanchan. In Peru they were very curious of Footmen, and the Inquality them in all parts of the Realme, as ordinary Posts called Chalquis, whereof shall bee spoken in his place.

Diners formes

Many Nations of the Indies have not indured any Kings, or absolute and source ene Lords. but liue in Comminalties, creating and appointing Captaynes and Princes, for certayne occafions onely, to whom they obey during the time of their charge; then after they returne to their former estates. The greatest part of this New World (where there are no setled King- to domes, nor established Common-weales, neither Princes nor succeeding Kings) they governe themselues in this manner, although there bee some Lords and principall men raised about the common fort. In this fort the whole Countrey of Chile is governed, where the Anracanes, those of Tencapell and others, have so many yeeres refisted the Spansards. And in like fort all the new Kingdome of Granado, that of Gnatimalla, the Ilands, all Florida, Brefil, Lufon, and other Countreyes of great circuit : but that in tome places they are yet more barbarous, scarcely acknowledging any head, but all command and gouerne in common, having no other thing, but will, violence, industry and disorder, so as hee that most may most commands.

They have onely found two Kingdomes or fetled Empires, that of the Mexicans in New Spaine, and of the Inquas in Pern. It is not easie to be faid, which of the two was the mightiest 40 Whether the Kingdome, for that Motecuma, exceeded them of Peru, in Buildings, and in the greatnesse of his Mexican or Pe. Court : but the Ingues, did likewise exceed the Mexicans, in treasure, riches, and greatnesse of Provinces. In regard of Antiquitie, the Monarchie of the Inguas, hath the advantage, although it be not much, and in my opinion, they have beene equall in feats of Armes and Victories. It is most certaine, that these two Kingdomes have much exceeded all the Indian Provinces, dilcouered in this New World, as well in good order and government, as in power and wealth, and much more in Superfittion and Service of their Idols, having many things like one to another But in one thing they differed much, for among the Mexicans, the faccession of the Kingdome, wasby election, as the Empire of the Romanes, and that of Pers, was hereditary, and they fucceeded in bloud, as the Kingdomes of France and Spaine.

Of the gouernment of the Kings and /m. guas of Peru. Chap.Tz.

He Ingus which ruled in Poru, being dead, his lawfull Sonne fucceeded him, and fo they held him that was botne of his chiefe Wife, whom they called Coya. The which they have alwayes observed fince the time of an Ingua, called Tapangui, who married his fifter: for these Kings held it an honour to marrie their Sifters. And although they had other Wives and Concubines, yet the succession of the Kingdome appertayned to the Sonne of Coya. It is true, that when the King had a legitimate Brother, he succeeded before the Sonne, and after him his Nephew, and Sonne to the first. The Curacus, and Noblemen , held the fame order of succession in their goods and Offices. And after their manner they made excessive Ceremonies, and obsequies for the dead. Being dead, they prefently held him for a God, making Sacrifices vnto him, Images, and 60 fuch like. By this meanes, there was infinite Treasure in Pern: for every one of the Inguas, had laboured to have his Oratorie and Treasure surpasse that of his Predecessors. The marke or entigne, whereby they tooke posteffion of the Realme, was a red roll of Wool, more then tine filke, the which hung in the middett of his forchead ; and none but the Ingua alone might

CHAP.6. Peruan bolies for their Inga, Inflice, Polity, Tribute, Provinces.

weare it, for that it was as a Crowne and Royall Diademe : yet they might lawfully weare a Roll hanging on the one fide, neere vnto the eare; as fome Noblemen did, but onely the Inoua might carrie it in the middeft of his forehead. At fuch time as they tooke this Roll or Wigathe. they made tolemne Feafts, and many Sacrifices, with a great quantitie of veffell of Gold. and Silver, a great number of small formes or Images of sheepe, made of Gold and Silver, great ahandance of the stuffes of Cumby, well wrought, both fine and courser, many shels of the Sea of all forts, many feathers, and a thonfand sheepe, which must bee of divers colours . Then the chiefe Priest tooke a young Childe in his hands, of the age of fixe or eight yeeres, pronouncing thele words with the other Ministers speaking to the Image of Urracocha, Lord me offer this unto thee, that thou mayest mayntayne vs in quiet, and belpe vs in our warres, mayntaine our Lord the Ingua in his greatnesse and estate, that hee may alwayes increase, giving him much knowledge to go-

There were present at this Ceremonie and Oath, men of all parts of the Realme, and of all Guacas and Sanctuaries. And without doubt, the affection and reuerence which this people bare to their Kings Ingues, was very great, for it is neuer found that any one of his subjects committed Treafon against him, for that they proceeded in their governments, not only with an abiclute power, but also with good order and luttice, suffering no man to bee oppressed: The Ingua placed Gouernours in divers Proninces, amongst the which, some were Superiours, and did ac. Exact suffice; browledge none but himselfe, others were of lesse command, and others more particular, with 20 fo goodly an order, and fuch granitie, as no man durft be drunke, nor take an eare of Mays from his Neighbour. Thefe Inguas held it for a Maxime, that it was necessary to keepe the Indians alwayes in action : and therefore we fee it to this day, long cawfies and workes of great labour, No idleneffe

the which they lay were made to exercise the Indians, left they should remayne idle. When hee permitted. conquered any new Prouince, hee was accustomed presently to fend the greatest part, and the chiere of that Countrey into other Prouinces, or elle to his Court, and they call them at this day Transmigrain Peru, Mitimas, and in their places he fent others of the Nation of Cufco, especially the Oreiones, which were as Knights of an ancient house. They punished faults rigoroully. And therefore fuch as have any understanding hereof, hold opinion, that there can be no better government

for the Indians, nor more affured, then that of the Inguas.

O relate more particularly what I have spoken before, you must vinderstand, that the dis- Of the distrifribution which the Inquisi made of their valids, was so exact and distinct, as hee might bution the gouerne them all with great facilitie, although his Realme were a thousand leagues long: for their Vassals. having conquered a Province, he presently reduced the Indians into Townes and Comminalties, Chap. 12. the which he divided into bands, he appointed one to have the charge over every ten Indians, o- Governours per enery hundred another, over every thousand another, and over ten thousand another, whom they called Humo, the which was one of the greatest charges. Yet about all in enery Province, there was Governour of the house of the Inguas, whom all the rest obeyed, giving vnto him euery yeere particular account of what had pasted, that is, of fuch as were borne, of those that 40 were dead and of their troupes and graine. The Gouernours went energy years out of Culco, where Tribute years they remayned, and returned to the great Feast of Rayme, at the which, they brought the tribute ly paid at Casico.

of the whole Realme to the Court; neither might they enter but with this condition. All the Kingdome was divided into foure parts, which they called Tabuantinfuno, that is, Chinchafuno, Fourefold Collasuro, Andesuro, and Condesuro, according to the foure wayes which went from Cusco, prominerall where the Court was relident, and where the generall affemblies of the Realme were made. These waies and Provinces being answerable vnto them, were towards the foure quarters of the world, Collafuro to the South, Chinchafuro to the North, Condefuro to the West, and Andefuro to the East. In every Towns and Village, there were two forts of people, which were of Hanan aya, and Vrinfaya, which is as much to lay, as those abone, and those below. When they commanded any 50 worke to be done, or to furnish any thing to the Ingua, the Officers knew prefently how much enery Prouince, Towne, and Family, ought to furnish: 10 as the diution was not made by equall portions, but by Cottization, according to the qualities and wealth of the Countrey. Soas for example, if they were to gather a hundred thouland Fanegues of Meys, they knew

presently how much every Province was to contribute, were it a tenth, a seventh, or a fit part. The like was of Townes and Villages, Aillos, or Linages. The Quipocamagos, which were the Officers and Intendants , kept the account of all with their thrings and knottes, without fayling, fetting downe what every one had payed, even to a Henne, or a burthen of wood, and in a moment they did fee by divers Registers what every one ought to pay.

THE E lifices and Buildings which the Inques made in Temples, Fortreffes, wayes, Countrey Of the Edifices He E three and roundings which the argument had to a suppose that the houses, and furth like, were many in number, and of an excelling labour, as doth appeare at and manner of building of the houses, and mentace, were many horh in Cusco, Tyaguanaco, Tambo, and other places, building of the this day by their runnes and remaynders, both in Cusco, Tyaguanaco, Tambo, and other places, liganachap.14. where there are flones of an vnmeaturable greatnelle : as men cannot conceine how they were

1056 Indian skill and stoneworkes, Strawbridges, Tributes. Lands facred. LIB.V

cur, brought and fet in their places. There came great numbers of people from all Prouinces, to worke in these Buildings and Fortresses, which the Ingua caused to bee made in Cusco, or other parts of the Realme. As these Workes were strange, and to amaze the beholders, wherein they yied no Morter nor Ciment, neither any Iron, or Steele, to cut, and fet the stones in works Negative in they had no Engines or other Instruments to carrie them, and yet were they so artificially wrought, that in many places they could not fee the joynts; and many of these stores are jo bigge, that it were an incredible thing, if one should not see them. At Traguanace, I did measure bigge, that it werean increasing and in the wall of the Fortresse of Cusco, which is of Moallon, there are stones of a greater bignesse. And that which is most strange, these slowes being not cut nor squared to joyne, but contrariwise, very vnequall to one with another in forme and greatnesse, yet did they ioyne them together without Ciment. after an incredible manner. All this was done by the force of men, who endured their labour with an innincible patience. For to loyne one ftone with another, they were forced to handle and trie many of them often, being vneuen. The Ingma appointed energy yeere what numbers of and trie many of them orten, being vincient, and right appears appeared to the vincient numbers or people though about in their thousas and buildings, and the thadast made a distinon amongst them, as of other things, so as no man was opportfled. Although their Buildings were great, yet were they commonly ill appointed and vnfit, almost like to the Mosquites or Buildings of the Barbarians. They could make no Arches in their Edifices, nor Morter or Ciment to build them withall-

when they faw Arches of wood built vpon the River of Xanra, the Bridge being finished, and 20

Arches

the wood broken downe, they all began to runne away, supposing that the Bridge which was of stone should presently fallibut when they found it to stand firme, and that the Spaniards went on it, the Cacique faid to his companions; It is reason we should serue these men, who in truth seeme Bridges.

to be the children of the Sunne. The Bridges they made were of Reedes pleited, which they tyed the bankes with great flakes, for that they could not make any Bridges of stone or wood. The Bridge which is at this day vpon the current of the great Lake Chiquitto in Collao is admirable: for the course of that water is to deepe, as they cannot fettle any foundation, and so broad, that it is impossible to make an Arch to passeit: to as it was altogether impossible to make a Bridge Straw Bridge. either of wood or stone. But the wit and industry of the Indians invented a meanes to make a firme and affured Bridge being only of ftraw, which feemeth fabulous, yet is it very true : For as 30 we have faid before, they did binde together certaine bundles of Reeds, and Weeds, which doe grow in the Lake that they call Torora, and being a light matter that finkes not in the water, they cast it vpon a great quantitie of Reeds, then hauing tyed those bundles of Weedes to either fide of the River, both men and beafts goe ouer it with eafe : paffing ouer this Bridge I have wondred, that of so common and easie a thing, they had made a Bridge, better, and more assured then the Bridge of Boates from Sewille to Triane. I have measured the length of this Bridge, and as I remember, it was about three hundred foote; and they say that the depth of this Current is very great: and it feemes aboue, that the water hath no motion, yet they fay, that at the bottome it hath a violent and very furious course. And this shall suffice for Buildings.

Of the Inguas Tributesibes imposed vpon the Indians.

He Inguas riches was incomparable, for although no King did inherit the riches and treafure of his Predecessor, yet had he at command, all the riches of his Realmes, aswell Siluer and Gold, as the stuffe of Cumbi, and cattell, wherein they abounded, and their greatest riches of all, was their innumerable number of vaffals, which were all imployed as it pleased the King. They brought out of every Province what he had chosen for tribute. The Chicas fent him sweet and rich woods; the Lucanas tent Brancars to carry his Litter; The Chumbilbicas, Dincers; and to the other Proumees fent him what they had of abundance, befides their generall Tribute, whereunto every one contributed. The Indians that were noted to that end, laboured in the Mynesof Gold and Silver, which did abound in Pern, whom the Ingua entertained with all 50 they needed for their expences : and what soener they drew of Gold and Silver, was for him. By this meanes there were to great treasures in this Kingdome, as it is the opinion of many, that what fell in the hands of the Spansards, (although it were very much, as wee know) was not the tenth part of that which they hid and buried in the ground, the which they could never difcouer, notwithflanding all the fearch couetoufnesse had taught them. But the greatest wealth of these barbarous people, was, that their valials were all slaves, whose labour they vied at their All flaues and pleature : and that which is admirable, they employed them in fuch fore, as it was no feruitude vito them, but rather a pleasing life. But to vinderstand the order of Tributes which the Indians payed anto their Lord, you must know, that when the Ingua conquered any Cities, he disuded all the Land into three parts, the first was, for Religion and Ceremonies, so as the Pachayachaqui, 60 which is the Creator, and the Sume; the Chuquilla, which is the Thunder, the Pachamana, and Lands facred, the dead, and other Guacas and Sanctuaries, had every one their proper Lands, the fraits whereof were spoyled and confumed in Sacrifices , and in the nourishing of Mini-Alers and Priefts; for there were Indians appointed for every Guaca, and Sanctuarie, and

CHAP.6. Common Lands. Negligence punished. All Peruans were of all Trades. 1057

the greatest part of this revenue was spent in Cusco, where was the universal and general santuarte, and the rest in that Citie, where it was gathered; for that after the imitation of Cusco. there were in euery Citie, Guacus, and Oratories of the same order, and with the same functi- Order in their ons, which were ferued after the fame manner and ceremonies to that of Cufes, which is an ad_ Religion. mirable thing, and they have found it by proofe in about a hundred Townes, fome of them diffant about two hundred leagues from Cufco. That which they fowed or reapt upon their Land, was put into houses, as Granaries or flore-

houses, built for that effect, and this was a great part of the Tribute which the Indians paied. I

cannot fay how much this part amounted vnto, for that it was greater in fome parts then in o-10 ther, and in some places it was in a manner all : and this part was the first they put to profit. The fecond part of thefe Lands and inheritances was for the Ingua, wherewith he and his houl- Royall dea hold were entertained, with his kinsfolks, Noblemen, Garrifons and Souldiers. And there- mefacs. fore it was the greatest portion of these tributes, as it appeareth by the quantity of Gold, Silver, and other Tributes, which were in houses appointed for that purpose, being longer and larger then those where they keepe the reuenues of the Guacas. They brought this Tribute verie carefully to Cuice, or vinto fuch places where it was needefull for the Souldiers, and when there was ftore, they kept it ten or twelue yeares, vntill a time of necessitie. The Indians tilled and put to profit the Inguas Lands, next to those of the Guacas; during which time they lived and were nourished at the charges of the Ingua, of the Sunne, or of the Guacas, 20 according to the Land they laboured. But the old men, women, and ficke folkes were referred and exempt from this Tribute, and although whatfoeuer they gathered upon those Lands were for the Ingua, the Sunne, or the Guacas, yet the propertie appertained vnto the Indians and their fuccessours. The third part of these Lands were given by the Ingua for the Comminaltie, and they have not vet discovered, whither this portion were greater, or leffe, then that of the Ingua or Guacas. It is most certaine they had a care and regard, it might be sufficient for the nourish- in common. ment of the people. No particular man pofferfied any thing proper to himselfe of this third portion , neither did the Indians ever possesse any, if it were not by speciall grace from the Ingua : No proprietie and yet might it not be engaged nor divided amongst his heires. They everic yeare divided these of Lands. Lands of the comminaltie, in giving to every one, that which was needefull for the nourilla-30 ment of their persons and families. And as the familie increased or diminished. so did they encrease or decrease his portion, for there were measures appointed for everie person. The Indians paied no tribute of that which was apportioned vnto them : For all their tribute was to till Their Tribute, and keepe in good order the Lands of the Ingua, and the Guaca; and to lay the fruits thereof in what their store-houses. When the yeare was barren, they gaue of these fruits thus reserved to the needie, for that there is alwaies superabundance. The Ingus did likewise make destribution Cantelldiste of the cattell as of the Lands, which was to number and divide them; then to appoint the paflures and limits, for the cattell belonging to the Guacas, and to the Ingua, and to euerie Town : and therefore one portion of their regenues was for religion, another for the Ingua, and the third for the Indians themselves. The like order was observed among the hunters. being forbidden to

40 take or kill any females. The troupes of the Inguas and Guacas, were in great numbers and ve- Hunter lawes rie fruitfull, for this caule they called them Kapaëllama, but those of the common and publike, were few in number and of small value, and therefore they called them Bacchallama. The Ingua tooke great care for the prefernation of Cattell, for that it hath beene, and is vet, all the wealth of the Countrie, and as it is faid, they did neither facrifice any females, nor kill them, neither did Prouisons for they take them when they hunted. If the mangie or the feuruie which they call Carache take anie beait, they were prefently commanded to burie it quicke, lest it should infect others. They did sheare their cattell in their season, and distributed to everie one to spinne and weave Stuffes for the service of his Family. They had fearobers to examine if they did employ themselves in Negligence these workes, and to punish the negligent. They made Stuffes of the wooll of the Inguas cattell, punished 50 for him and for his family, one fort very fine, which they called Combi, and another groffer, which they likewife called Abasca. There was no certaine number of thele Stuffes and garment, appointed, but what was deliuered to every one. The wooll that remained was put into the Horehouses, whereof the Spaniards found them full, and with all other things necessary for the life of man. There are few men of judgement but doe admire at fo excellent & well fetled

a government, feeing the Indiani (being neither religious nor Christians) maintained after their

manner, this perfection, nor to hold any thing proper, and to provide for all their necessities, en-

tertaining with fuch abudance matters of Religion, & that which concerned their King & Lord.

SILLS

60 The Indians of Peru had one perfection, which was, to teach their children all arts and ocoffers and cupations necessary for the life of man; for that there were no particular Tradef-men, as offices which among ft vs, Taylers, Shoomakers, Weauers, and the reft, but every one learned what was neede- the Indians did full for their persons and houses, and provided for themselves. All could weave and make their exercises to garments, and therefore the Ingua furnishing them with wooll, gaue them cloathes. Every man All menotall could rill the ground, and put it to profit, without livring of any labourers. All built their own trades,

houles, and the women, which vaderflood most were not brought up in delights, but served their Husbands carefully. Other Arts and Trades which were not ordinary and common for the life of man, had their proper Companies and workemen, as Goldsmiths, Painters, Potters, Water or man, and players of Instruments. There were also Weavers and workemen for exquisite workes. which the Noblemen vied: but the common people, as hath beene faid, had in their houses all things necessary, having no neede to buy. This continues to this day, fo as they have no neede one of another for things necessary; touching his person and family, as shooes and garments, and for their houle, to fowe and reape, and to make Iron workes, and necessarie instruments, it is worthy obternation, although the Indians be simple in their manner and habits, yet doe we see great diverfitie amongst the Provinces, especially in the attire of their head, for in some places to they carried a long prece of cloath, which went often about, in some places a large prece of

cloath, which went but once about, in some pares asit were little morters or hats, in some others as it were high and round Bonets, and some like the bottome of sacks, with a thousand Vaiformity of other differences. They had a straight and inviolable law, that no man might change the fashion of the garments of his Prouince, although he went to line in another. This the Ingua held to be of great importance for the order and good government of his Realme, and they doe observe is to this day, though not with fo great a care as they were accustomed.

There were many Posts and couriers which the *Ingus* maintained throughout his Realme, whom they called *Chasquis*, and they carried commandements to the Gouernours, and re-10 the Inaums did turned their adulfes and aduertilements to the Court. Thele Chalquis were placed at energy vic, Chap.17. courie, which was a league and a halfe one from another in two small houles, where were four Indians of enery Country, and they were changed monthly. Having received the packet or meffage, they ranne with all their force vntill they had deliuered it to the other Chafquis, such as were ao runne, being ready and watchfull. They ran fiftie leagnes in a day and night, although the greatest part of that Countrie be very rough. They served also to carry such things as the Ingua defired to have with speede. Therefore they had alwaies Sea-fish in Cusco, of two daies old or little more, although it were aboue a hundred leagues off. Since the Spaniards entred, they haue vied of theie Chafquis, in time of feditions, whereof there was great neede. Don Marin the Viceroy appointed ordinary Posts at every foure leagues, to carry and recarry dispatches, which were very necessary in this Realme, though they run not so swiftly as the ancients did, neither are there so many, yet they are well paied, and serue as the ordinaries of Spaine, to whom they giue Letters which they carry foure or fine leagues.

which the In-

Adultery. Marriage fo-

bishes, and of ther, theft, and adultery, with death, and fuch as committed incest with accendants or descentheir mariages dants in direct line, were likewise punished with death. But they held it no adultery to have so many wives or concubines, neither were the women subiect to the punishment of death, being found with any other, but onely the that was the true and lawfull wife, with whom they contracted marriage; for they had but one whom they did wedde and receive with a particular folemnitie and ceremonie, which was in this manner: The Bridegroome went to the Brides house, and led her from thence with him, having first put an Ottoyavpon her foote. They call the shooe which they vie in those parts Ottoya, being open like the Franciscan Friars, If the Bride were a maide, her Ottora was of Wooll, but if the were not, it was of Reedes. All his other wives and concubines did honour and ferue this as the lawfull wife, who alone after the decease of her husband carried a mourning weede of blacke, for the space of a yeare; neither did she marry vntill that time were past; and commonly she was yonger then her husband. The Ingua 50 himselfe with his owne hand gaue this woman to his Gouernours and Captaines: and the Gouernours or Caciques, assembled all the yong menand maides, in one place of the Citie, where they gaue to euerie one his wife with the aforefaid ceremonie, in putting on the Ottoye, and in this manner they contracted their marriages. If this woman were found with any other then her husband, she was punished with death, and the adulterer likewise : and although the husband pardoned them, yet were they punished, although dispensed withall from death. They inflicted the like punishment on him that did commit incest with his Mother, Grandmother, Daughter, or Grandchilde: for it was not prohibited for them to marrie together, or to have of their other kinsfolke for concubines; onely the first degree was defended, neither did they allow the brother to have the company of his fifter, wherein they of Pers were very much de- 63 ceiued, beleeuing that their Inguas and Noblemen might lawfully contract marriage with their

Te Ven as fuch as had done any good service in warre, or in the government of the Common-Eweale were honoured and recompensed with publike charges, with Lands given them in proper, with armes and titles of honour, and in marrying wives of the Inguas linage: Even fo they gaue seuere punishments to such as were disobedient and offenders. They punished murfitters, yea by father and mother : for in truth it hath beene alwaies held valawfull among the Indians, and defended to contract in the first degree; which continued vntill the time of Topa Ingua Tupangui father to Guaynacapa, and grandfather to Atahualpa, at luch time as the Spaniaras

entred Perm: for that Topa Ingua Yupangui, was the first that brake this custome, marrying with Mamagello, his fifter by the fathers ide, decreeing that the Inques might marrie with their fifters by the fathurs fide, and no other.

This he did, and by that marriage he had Guaynacapa, and a daughter called Cora Cullilliman: finding himselfe at the point of death, he commanded his children by father and mother to marrie together, and gaue permiffion to the Noblemen of his Countrie, to marrie with their fiflers by the fathere fide. And for that this marriage was vulawfull, and against the law of nature. God would bring to an end this Kingdome of the Inguas, during the raigne of Gualcar Inqua, and Atahualpa Inqua, which was the fruite that fprang from this marriage. Who

to fo will more exactly understand the manner of marriages among the Indians in Pern. lee him reade the Treatife Polo hath written at the request of Don Iesonimo Logifa Archbishop of Kings: which Polo made a very curious fearch, as he hath done of divers other things at the Indies.

BY the commandement of Don Phillio the Catholike King, they have made the most diligent Of the Original exact tearch that could be, of the beginning, customes, and pruviledges of the Inguas, mallot the inthe which was not fo perfectly done as was defired : for that the Indians had no written Re- Peru, with their cords : vet the haus recoursed that which I shall write, by meanes of their Quippos and Regis Conquests fters. First there was not in Perwin old time, any King or Lord to whom all obeyed, but they and Victoriese were Comminalties, as at this day there is in the Realme of Chille, and in a manner. in all Chap.19.

20 the Prouinces which the Spaniards have conquered in those Westerne Indies, except the Realme of Mexico. You must therefore understand, that they have found three manner of Gouernements at the Indies. The first and best, was a Monarchie, as that of the Inguas, and of Motecams, although for the most part they were cyrannous. The second was of Comminalties . where they were gouerned by the aduste and authority of many, which are as it were Couniellors. Thele in time of warre, made choise of a Captaine, to whom a whole Nation or Province did obey, and in time of peace, enery Towne or Comminalty did rule and gouerne themselves. having tome chiefe men whom the vulgar did respect, and sometime (though not often) some of them affemble together about matters of importance, to confult what they should thinke neceffary. The third kinde of Gouernment, is altogether barbarous, composed of Indians with-

30 out Law, without King, and without any certaine place of abode, but goe in troopes like fange bealts. As farre as I can conceine, the first Inhabitants of the Indies, were of this kinde. as at this day a great part of the Bresslians, Chinagmanas, Chunchos, Tjeytingas, Pilecount, and the greatest part of the Floridians, and all the Chichimagnas in new Spaines Of this kinde the other fort of government by Comminalties was framed, by the industry and wisdome of some amonest them, in which there is some more order, holding a more staied place, as at this day those of Auracano, and of Tencapell in Chille, and in the new Kingdome of Grenado, the Moscas. and the Ottomittes in new Spaine : and in all thefe there is leffe fierceneffe and incivilitie, & much more quiet then in the reft. Of this kinde, by the valor & knowledg of some excellent men, erew the other government more mighty and potent, which did institute a Kingdome and Monarchy.

40 Ic appeares by their Registers, that their Gouernment hath continued about three hundred Communes yeares, but not fully foure, although their Seigniorie for a long time, was not about five or of their Mo fix leagues compaffe about the Citie of Cufco : their original and beginning was in the valley of narchy. Cufco: where by little and little they conquered the Lands which we call Pers, paffing beyond Quitto, vnto the river of Paffo towards the North, ftretching even vnto Chille, towards the South, which is almost a thousand leagues in length. It extended in breadth vnto the South Sea towards the Welt, and vnto the great champains which are on the other fide of the Ander, where at this day is to be seene the Castell which is called the Pucara of the Ingua, the which is a fortreffe built for the defence of the frontire towards the East. The Inguas advanced no farther on that fide, for the abundance of water, Marshes, Lakes, and Rivers, which runne in those parts. 50 Thefe Inguas paffed all other Nations of America, in pollicie and government, and much more Strife twize

in valour and armes, although the Canaries which were their mortall enemies, and fauoured the Inques and Spaniards, would never contesse it, nor yeelde them this advantage : fo as even at this day, if they canaries. fall into any discourse or comparisons, and that they be a little chased and incensed, they kill one another by thousands vpon this quarrell, which are the most valiant, as it hath happened in Culco. The practife and meanes which the luquas had to make themselves Lords of all this Countrie, was in faining that fince the generall deluge (whereof all the Indians have knowledge) the world had beene preferued, restored, and peopled by these Inquas, and that feuen of them came forth of the Caue of Pacaricambo, by reason whereof, all other men ought them tribute and vaffalage, as their progenitors. Belides they faid and affirmed. 60 that they alone held the true religion, and knew how God should be served and honoured : and for this cause they should instruct all men. It is a strange thing, the ground they give to their

customes and ceremonies. There were in Cusco about foure bundred Oratories, as in a holy 400. Oratories land, and all places were filled with their mifteries. As they continued in the conqueits of Pro- in Cuice.

unces, fo they brought in the like ceremonies and customes. In all this Realme the chiefe Idols

they did worthip, were Firacocha, Pachayachachic, which fignifies the Creator of the World and after him, the Sunne. And therefore they faid, that the Sunne received his vertue and being from the Creator, as the other Idols doe, and that they were interceffors to him.

Of the first Ingua, and his Succeffors. Chat. 20.

 $T^{\rm He}$ first man which the Indians report to be the beginning and first of the Inguas, was $M_{an.}$ gecaps, whom they imagine, after the deluge, to have issued forth of the Caue of Tambs, which is from Cufeo about fue or fixe leagues. They fay that hee gaue beginning to two principall Races or Families of the Inguas , the one was called Hanancufco , and the other Orincufco: of the first came the Lords which subdued and gouerned this Prounce, and the first whom they make the Head and Stemme of this Familie, was called Ingareea, who founded a Familie or 10 Aillo, as they call them, named Vicaquiquirao. This although he were no great Lord, was ferued notwithfla ding in veffell of gold and filter. And dying he appointed that all his treasure should be imployed for the feruice of his Body, and for the feeding of his Familie. His Succeffor did the like : and this grow to a generall custome, as I have said, that no Ingua might inherit the goods and house or his Predecessor, but did build a new Palace. In the time of this Inguaroca, the Indians had images of gold; and to him fucceeded Tagnar guague, a very cld man: they fay, hee was called by this name, which fignifies teares of bland, for that being once var quithed and tag ken by his Enemies, for griefe and fortow hee wept bloud. Hee was butled in a Village called Paullo, which is voon the way to Omasugo: he founded a Familie called Accuillyanaca. To him fucceeded his fonne Vracocha Ingua, who was very rich, and made much veffeil of gold and filuer : he founded the Linege or Familie of Cocopanaca. Gonçales Piçarre fought out his body, for the report of the great treasure buried with him, who after hee had cruelly tormented many Indians, in the end he found it in Xaquixaquana, whereas they faid Picarre was afterwards vanquished, taken, and executed by the President Guasea. Gonçales Piçarre caused the body of Viracocha Ingua to be burnt; the Indians did afterwards take the albes, the which they preferued in a small veffe'il, making great facrifices thereunto, vntill Pollo did reforme it, and other Idolatries which they committed upon the bodies of their other Inguas, the which hee suppressed with an admirable diligence and dexteritie, drawing these bodies out of their hands, being whole, and much imbalmed, whereby hee extinguished a great number of Idolatries which they committed. The Indians tooke it ill, that the Ingua did intitle himfelfe Viracocha, which is the name of their God : and he to excuse himselte, gave them to vinderstand, that the same Viraceoha appeared to him in his dreame, commanding him to take this name. To him succeeded Pachacuti Inqua Tupangui, who raigned seventie yeeres, and conquered many Countries. The beginning of his conquests, was by meanes of his eldest brother, who having held the government in his fathers time, and made warre by his confent, was over-throwne in a battaile against the Changuas, a Nation which inhabites the Valley of Andaguayllas, thirtie or fortie leagues from Cufco, vpon the way to Lima. This elder brother thus defeated, tetyred himfelfe with tew men. The which Ingua Tupangui, his younger brother feeing, deuifed and gaue forth, that being one day alone and melancholy, Vracocha the Creator spake to him, complayning, that shough bee were universall Lord and Creator of all things, and that he had made the Heanen, the Sunne, the World, 40 and Men, and that all was under his command, yet did they not yeeld him the obedience they ought, but contrariouse did equally bonour and worship the Sunne, Thunder, Earth, and other things, which had no vertue but what he imparted vnto them : giving him to vnderfland, that in heaven where hee was, they called him Viracocha Pachayachachie, which fignifieth winer fall Creator; and to the end the Indians might believe it to be true, he doubted not although hee were alone, to raife men under this title, which should give him victorie against the Changnas, although they were then victorious, and in great numbers; and make himfelfe Lord of those Realmes, for that hee would fend hum men to his aide innifibly, whereby he prevayled in fuch fert, that under this colour and conceit, he began to affemble a great number of people, whereof he made a mightie Armie, with the which he obtayned the victorie, making himfelfe Lord of the whole Realme, taking the go- 70 uernment from his father and brother. Then afterwards he conquered and ouer-threw the Changass, and from that time commanded that Unacocha should be held for vniverfall Lord, and that the Images of the Sunne and Thunder, should doe him reuerence and honor: And from that time they began to fet the Image of Viracocha aboue that of the Sunne and Thunder, and the rest of the Guaras. And although this Ingua Tupangui had given Farmes, Lands, and Cattell to the Sunne, Thunder, and other Gnacas, yet did he not dedicate any thing to Viracocha, faying, that he had no neede, being vinuerfall Lord and Creator of all things. Hee informed his Souldiers atter this absolute victorie of the Changuas, that it was not they alone that had conquered them, but certaine bearded men, whom Viracocha had fent him, and that no man might fee them but himfelfe, which were fince converted into itones; it was therefore necessarie to iecke them out, 6 whom he would know well. By this meanes he gathered together a multitude of itones in the Mountaines, whereof he made choice, placing them for Guaca, or Idols, they worthipped and factificed vnto; they called them Pururaucas, and carried them to the watre with great devotion, beleening for certaine, that they had gotten the victorie by their helpe. The imagination

CHAP.6. Ingas worshipped, Guanacapas 300 Sounes Spaniards esteeme Cc. 1061

and fiction of this Ingua was of fuch force, that by the meanes thereof hee obtayned goodly victories : He founded the Familie called Tnacapanaca, and made a great Image of gold, which hee called Indillapa, which he placed in a Brancard of gold, very rich, and of great price, of the which gold the Indians tooke great flore to carry to Xaxamalca, for the libertie and ranfome of Atabalpa, when the Marquelle Francis Pigarre held him prifoner. The Licenciate Polo found in his house in Cufee, his feruants and Mamacomas , which did feruice to his memorie , and found that the body had beene transported from Patallalla to Totocache, where the Spaniards have fince founded the Parish of Saint Blaife. This body was so whole and preferred with a certaine Rosin, that it feemed alive, he had his eyes made of a fine cloth of gold, to artificially fee, as they feemed very 10 naturall eyes, he had a blow with a stone on the head, which he had received in the warres , hee was all grey and hayrie, having loft no more haire then if he had dyed but the fame day, although it were feuentie and eight veeres fince his deceafe. The forefaid Polo fent this body with fome others of the Inquas, to the Citie of Lima, by the Vice-royes command which was the Marquelle of Canerte, and the which was very necessarie to roote out the Idolatrie of Cusco. Many Spanis ards have feene this body with others in the Hofpitall of Saint Andrew, which the Marqueffe built, but they were much decayed. Don Philip Caritopa, who was grand-child or great grandchild to this Ingua, affirmed that the treature hee left to his Familie was great, withich should bee in the power of the Tanaconas, Amaro, Toto, and others, To this Inona Incceeded Topainqua Tupanqui, to whom his fonne of the fame name forceeded, who founded the Familie

TO this latter Ingua succeeded Guaynacapa, which is to say, A young man, rich and valiant, Of the greatest and to was he in truth, more then any of his Predecessors, or Successors. He was very wife, and most faplanting good orders throughout his whole Realme, he was a bold and refolute man, valiant, and called Ganvery happy in warre. He therefore obtayned great victories, and extended his Dominions much agrees, Chas. farther then all his Predecessors had done before him; he dyed in the Realme of Cairto; the which he had conquered, foure hundred leagues diffant from his Court. The Indians opened him after his decease, leaving his heart and entrailes in Quitto, the body was carried to Culco, the which was placed in the renowmed Temple of the Summe. Wee see yet to this day many Caw-

20 called Cupac Aillo.

30 feys, Buildings, Fortreffes , and notable workes of this King Shee founded the Familie of Teme Bamba. This Guaynacapa was worthipped of his subjects for a god, being yet aline, as the old Guaynac men affirme, which was not done to any of his Predeceffors. When hee dyed, they flue a thou- worshipped for fand persons of his houshold, to serve him in the other life, all which dyed willingly for his fer- 2 god. nice. infomuch that many of them offered themselues to death, besides such as were appointed : his riches and treasure was admirable. And Forasmuch as the Spaniards entited foone after his death, the Indians laboured much to conceale all; although a great part thereof was carried to Xaxamalca, for the ranfome of Atabulpa his fonne. Some worthy of credit, affirme that he had His 300, fonnes aboue three hundred ionnes and grand-children in Cufco. His mother called Mamacella was &c. much esteemed amongst them. Polo sent her body with that of Guaynacapa very well imbal-

40 med to Lima, rooting out infinite Idolatries. To Guaynacapa succeeded in Casco a sonne of his called Titocuffiqualpa, who fince was called Guafpar ingua, his body was burned by the Captaines of Atabuaha, who was likewife sonne to Guaynacapa, and rebelled in Canto against his brother, marching against him with a mightie Armie. It happened that Quifquets and Chilleuchi, Captaines to Atabualpa, tooke Gualpar Ingua in the Citie of Cufeo, being received for Lord and King (for that he was the lawfull successor) which caused great forrow throughout all his Kingdome, especially in his Court. And as alwayes in their necessities they had recourse to factifices, finding themselves vnable to set their Lord at libertie, aswell for the great powerthe Captaines had that tooke him, as also, for the great Armie that came with Atahuaspa, they resolved (some fay by the commandement of this Ingua) to make a great and folemne facrifice to Viacocha Pachayachachie, which agnifieth vniner (all Creator, defiring him, that fince they could not deliver 50 their Lord, he would fend men from Heaven to deliver him from prifon. And as they were in this great hope, voon their facrifice, newes came to them, that a certaine people come by Sea,

bualpa in Xaxamalca, as alfo, for that is chanced after their factifice done to Viracocha, and there- firemed men by they began to call the Spaniards Viracochiu, as they doe at this day. And in truth, if we had fent from God, given them good example, and such as we ought, the Indians had well applyed it, in laying they were men fent from God. It is a thing very well worthy of confideration, how the greatnesse and providence of God, disposed of theich rie of our men at Perm, which had beene impossible, Perm could nee

60 were not the differtion of the two Brethren and their Partifans, and the great opinion they had have beene of Christians, as of mentent from Heatien, bound (by the taking of the Indians Country) to la-but by distinsion bour to win foules vnto Almightie God.

was landed, and had taken Atahualpa prisoner. Hereupon they called the Spaniards Viracochus, beleeuing they were men sent from God; as well for the small number they were to take Ata- Spaniards g-

Of the laft Succesiors

The rest of this subject is handled at large by the Spanish Writers in the Histories of the Indies, and for that it is not my purpose, I will speake onely of the succession of the Inguist. Ingam, Chonas. Atahualpa being dead in Xaxamalca, and Guafear in Cufco, and Francis Picatre with his people having feifed on the Realme, Mangocapa fonne to Guannacapa belieged them in Cufco very ftraightly : but in the end he abandoned the whole Country, and retyred himlelfe to Vilca Banba, where he kept himfelfe in the Mountaines , by reason of the rough and diffcult accesse , and there the Successors Inguas remayned, vntill Amaro, who was taken and executed in the market place of Cufco, to the Indians incredible griefe and forrow, feeing inflice done vpon him publiquely whom they held for their Lord. After which time, they imprisoned others of the Lingge of these Inguas. I have knowne Don Charles, grand-child to Guaynacapa, and sonne to Polo. 10 who was baptized, and alwayes favoured the Spaniards against Mangocapa his brother, when the Marquelle of Canette governed in this Country Sarritopaingua, went from Vilcabamba, and came vpon affurance to the Citie of Kings, where there was given to him the Valley of There and other things, to whom increeded a daughter of his. Behold the fucceffion which is knowne at this day of that great and rich Familie of the Inguas , whose raigne continued about three hundred yeeres, wherein they reckon eleuen Successors, vatill it was wholly extinguished. In the other Linage of Vrincusco, which (as we have faid before) had his beginning likewise from the first Mangocapa, they reckon eight Succeffors in this fort : To Mangocapa succeeded Cine characa, to him Capac Tupangui, to him Lluqui Tupangui, to him Mayraca paef Tarcooumam. vnto whom fucceeded his forme, whom they name not, to this forme fucceeded Doulean 20 Tambo. Maytapanaça. This sufficeth for the originall and succession of the Ingua, that governed the Land of Peru, with that that I have spoken of their Lawes, Government, and man-

Of the manner of the Meri cant Com. monweale. 6 bap. 14.

A Lthough you may fee by the Historie written of the Kingdome, succession, and beginning A of the Mexicans, their manner of Commonweale and Government, yet will I ipeake briefly what I shall thinke fit in generall to bee most observed : whereof I will discourse more amply in the Historie. The first point whereby wee may judge the Mexican government to bee very politike, is the order they had and kept muiolable in the election of their King : for fince their firft, called Acamapach , vinto their lait , which was Moteguma, the fecond of that name, 30 there came none to the Crowne by right of succession, but by a lawfull Nomination and Election on. This election in the beginning was by the voice of the Commons, although the chiefe men managed it. Since in the time of Ifeast the fourth King , by the adulfe and order of a wife and valiant man, called Tlacael, there were toure cersaine Electors appointed, which (with two Lords or Kings fubicat to the Mexican, the one of Tefance, and the other of Tuenba) had power to make this election. They did commonly choose young men for their Kings, because they went alwayes to the warres, and this was in a manner the chiefe cause why they defired them to. They had a speciall regard that they should bee fit for the warres , and take delight and glorie therein. Atter the election they made two kindes of feafts, the one in taking possession of the Royall Eflate, for the which they went to the Temple, making great ceremonies and facrifices whon the Harth, called Dinine, where there was a continual! fire before the Altar of the Idoll, and after fome Rhetoricians practifed therein, made many Orations and Speeches. The other feath, and the most solemne, was at his Coronation, for the which hee must first ouercome in battell , and bring a certaine number of Captines, which they must facrifice to their gods; hee entred in triumph with great pompe, making him a folemne reception, aswell they of the Temple, who went all in procession, founding on lundrie forts of instruments, guing Incense, and singing like fecular men , asalio the Courtiers , who came forth with their denites to receine the v croious King. The Crowne or royall Entigne was before like a Myter, and behinde it was cut, fo as it was not round, for the forepart was higher, and did nie like a point. The King of Tescuco had the privilege to crown the King of Mexico. In the beginning when the Mexicans were but poore 50 and weake, the Kings were very moderate in their expenses and in their Court , but as they increased in power, they increased likewise in pompe and state, vntill they came to the greatnesse of Motegama, who if he had had no other thing but his house of Beasts and Birds, it had beene a proud thing, the like whereof bath not beene feene; for there was in this house all fores of fish. birds of Xucamamas, and bealts, as in an other Noabs Arke; for Sea fish, there were Pooles of faltwater; and for River fish . Lakes of fresh-water; birds that doe prey were fed, and likewife wilde beaffs in great abundance: there were very many Indians imployed for the keeping of there beafts : and when he found an impossibilitie to nourish any tort of fish fowle, or wilde beaft, he caused the Image or likenesse to be made, richly cut in precious stones, filter, or gold, in marble, or in itone : and for all forts of entertainments, he had his feverall Houses and Palaces, fome of 60 pleafure, others of forrow and mourning, and others to treat of the affaires of the Realme. There was in this Palace many Chambers, according to the qualitie of the Noble men that ferued him, with a strange order and distinction.

Royall Diadem. See the picture ftorie.

House of li-

CHAP.6. Indian titles of honour and Knighthood. Diligence of Priests.

He Mexicans have beenevery curious, to divide the degrees and dignities among it the noble Of the Titles men and Lords, that they might diftinguish them to whom they were to give the greatest and Dignities honor. The despite of their foure Electors was the greateft, and most honorable next to the the industry. King, and they were chosen presently after the Kings election. They were commonly brothers, fed. Chap.25. or very neere Kinimen to the King, and were called Tlacobecalcals, which in nifes Prince of darss, Gors. the which they cast, being a kinde of armes they vie much. The next dignitie to this, were thole they doe call Tlacatecasi, which is to fay, Circumcifers or Cutters of men. The third dignitie Meneunters. were of shole which they called Eznabnacals, which lignifies, A fledder of blond, All the which Blond fled. Titles and Dignities were exercised by men of warre. There was another, a fourth intituled, ders,

to Tillancalani, which is as much to lay, as Lord of the blacke bonfe, or of darkneffc, by reason of cer- Lord of darkes tame Inke wherewith the Priests anointed themselves, and did serve in their Idolatries. All these nesses foure Dignities were of the great Countell, without whose adule the King might not doe any thing of importance: and the King being dead, they were to choose another in his place out of one of those foure Dignities. Besides these, there were other Counsels and Audiences, and some Other Office. fay there were as many as in Spaine; and that there were divers Seates and Jurisdictions, with their cers. Counsellors and Judges of the Court, and others that were under them, as Corrigidors, chiefe See the pi

ludges, Captaines of Iustice, Lieutenants, and others, which were yet inferior to these, with a dure histories very goodly order. All which depended on the foure fift Princes that affifted the King. These foure onely had authoritie and power to condemne to death, and the reft ient them inftructions 20 of the Seutences they had given. By meanes whereof they gave the King to vinderstand what had paffed in his Realme.

There was a good order and fettled policie for the Renenues of the Crowne, for there were

Officers divided throughout all the Provinces, as Receivers and Treasurers, which received the Tributes and Royall Reuenues. And they carried the Tribute to the Court, at the leaft enery moneth; which Tribute was of all things that doe grow or ingender on the Land, or in the water, as well of Iewels and Apparell, as of Meat. They were very carefull for the well ordering of that which concerned their Religion, Superstition, and Idolatries; and for this occasion there were a great number of Ministers, to whom charge was given to teach the people the custome Priests and and ceremonies of their Law. Hereupon one day a christian Priest made his complaint that the Teachers of 30 Indians were no good Christians, and did not profit in the Law of God; an old Indian answered the Law. him very well to the purpole, in these termes: Let the Prest (faid he) implor as much care and di-

lisence tomake the Indians Christians, as the Ministers of Idols did to teach them their ceremonies; for with halfe that care they will make vis the best Christians in the world for that the Law of lesus Christ is much better; but the Indians learne it not, for want of men to infruct them. Wherein he toake the very truth, to our great shame and confusion.

He Mexicans gave the first place of honour to the profession of Armes, and therefore the How the Mexi-THe Mexicant gaue the hitt place of nonour to the protein out of them and their valour and cast made war.
Noble-men are their chiefe Souldiers, and others that were not noble, by their valour and cast made war.
and of the Ore

reputation gotten in warres, came to Dignities and Honors, fo as they were held for Noble-men. and of the Or-40 They gave goodly recompences to fuch as had done valiantly, who inioyed priviledges that none hood, Chipade. else might haue, the which did much incourage them. Their Armes were of Rasors of sharpe cutting flints, which they fet on either fide of a staffe, which was fo furious a weapon, as they affir - Their Armete med that with one blow, they would cut off the necke of a Horse. They had strange and heavy Clubs, Lances, fashioned like Pikes, and other manner of Dares to cast, wherein they were very expert: but the greatest part of their combate was performed with stones. For defensive armes they had little Rondaches or Targats, and some kinde of Morions or Head-pieces inuironed with feathers. They were clad in the skinnes of Tigres, Lions, and other fauge beafts. They came presently to hands with the Enemie, and were greatly practised to runne and wrestle, for thir chiefe manner of combate, was not fo much to kill, as to take Captines, the which they yied in 50 their facrifices, as hath beene faid. Motequina fet Knight-hood in his higheft splendor, orday-

ning certaine militarie orders, as Commanders, with certaine markes and enfignes. The most honorable among ft the Knights, were those that carried the crowne of their haire tied with a Eagle-order little red Ribband, having a rich plume of feathers, from the which, did hang branches of feathere you their shoulders, and rolls of the same. They carried so many of their rolls, as they had done worthy deeds in warre. The King himfelfe was of this order, as may be feene in (hap alteper, where Morecuma and his fonnes were attyred with those kindes of feathers, cut in the Rocke, the which is worthy the light. There was another order of Knight-hood, which they called the Lions and the Tigres , the which were commonly the most valiant and most noted in Order of Liwarre, they went alwayes with their Markes and Armories. There were other Knights, as the ons and Ti-

60 Grey Knights, the which were not formuch respected as the rest: they had their haire our round gres, about the care. They went to the warre with markes like to the other Knights, yet they were Gray Knights. not armed, but to the girdle, and the most honorable were armed all ouer. All Knights might carry gold and filter, and weare rich Cotton, vie painted and gilt veffell, and carry shooes after their manner : but the common people might vie none but earthen veifell , neither might they Knights prior-

carry thooes, nor attire themselves but in Nequen, the which is a groffe stuffe. Every order of theie Knights had his lodging in the Pallace noted with their markes; the first was called the Princes lodging, the second of Eagles, the third of Lyons and Tigers, and the fourth of the eres Knights. The other common officers, were lodged vinderneath in meaner lodgings: if any one loiged out of his place, he fuffred death.

Of the ereat

There is nothing that gives me more cause to admire, nor that I finde more worthy of com-mendations and memory, then the order and care the Mexicans had to nowish their youth: gence the Mex for they knew well, that all the good hope of a Common-weale, confilted in the nurture and ingenerins Mex for they knew went, that an one government of this bookes De Legibus: and for this reason to find their youth chapter, they laboured and tooke paines to fequefter their children from delights and liberties (which are the two plagues of this age) imploying them in honeft and profitable exercises. For this cause See the picture there was in their Temples, a private house for children, as Schooles, or Colledges, which was feperate from that of the yong men and maides of the Temple, whereof we have diffcourfed as large. There were in these Schooles a great number of children, whom their fathers did willing. ly bring thither, and which had teachers and mafters to inftruct them in all commendable exercites, to be of good behauiour, to respect their superiours, to serve and obey them, giving them to this end, certaine precepts and infructions. And to the end they might be pleasing to Noblemen, they taught them to fing and dance, and did practife them in the exercise of warre: fome to shoote an Arrow, to cast a dart or a staffe burnr at the end, and to handle well a Target 30 and a Sword. They suffered them not to sleepe much, to the end they might accustome themfelues to labour in their youth, and not be men given to delights. Besides the ordinary number of these children, there were in the same Colledges, other children of Lords and Noblemen, the which were inftructed more privately. They brought them their meate and ordinary from their Their employ- houles, and were recommended to ancients and old men to haue care ouer them, who continually ments and tri- did aduite them to be vertuous and to line chaftely; to be fober in their diet, to fait, and to march grauely, and with measure. They were accustomed to exercise them to trauell, and in laborious exercises: and when they see them instructed in all these things, they did carefully looke into their inclination : if they found any one addicted vnto warre, being of sufficient yeares, they fought all occasions to make triall of them, fending them to the warre, vnder colour to carrie 30 victuals and munition to the Souldiers, to the end they might there fee what paffed, and the labour they fuffered. And that they might abandon all feare, they were laden with heame burthens, that shewing their courage therein, they might more easily be admitted into the company of Souldiers . By this meanes it happened, that many went laden to the Armie, and re-

turned Captaines with markes of honour. Some of them were so desirous to be noted, as they

were either taken, or flaine : and they held it leffe honourable to remaine a prisoner. And there-

fore they fought rather to be cut in peeces, then to fall captines into their enemies hands. See

how Noblemens children that were inclined to the warres were imployed. The others that had

their inclination to matters of the Temple; and to speake after our manner, to be Ecclesiafti-

order of Ecclesiasticall men. There had they Prelates and Masters, to teach them that which concerned their profession, where they should remaine being destined thereunto. Their Mexi-

cans tooke great care to bring up their children : if at this day they would follow this order, in

building of houses & colledges for the instruction of youth , without doubt Christianitie should

call men, having attained to fufficient yeares, they were drawne out of the colledge, and pla- 40 ced in the Temple, in the lodging appointed for religious men, and then they gave them the

expectation of flourish much amongst the Indians. Some godly persons have begunne, and the King with his present and Counsell have favoured it: but for that it is a matter of no profit, they advance little, and pro-

Plains and dances. Military

thens,as their

externallgain. ceede coldly. We have not discovered any Nation at the Indians, that live in comminalties, which have not their recreations, in plates, dances, and exercises of pleasure. At Peru I haue seene plates in man- 50 ner of combats, where the men of both fides were sometimes so chafed, that often their Paella (which was the name of this exercise) fell out dangerous. I have also seene divers forts of dances, wherein they did counterfait and represent certaine trades and offices, as shepheards, labourers, fishers, and hunters, and commonly they made all those dances, with a very grave found and pale: there were other dances and maskes, which they called Guacones, whose actions were pure representations of the deuill. There were also men that dance on the shoulders one of another, as they doe in Portugall, the which they call Paellas. The greatest pars of these dances. Exo.32. athing were superfictions, and kindes of Idolatries: for that they honoured their Idols and Guacas in that manner. For this reason the Prelates have laboured to take from them these dances, all they thens, as their Connecties, &c. could : but yet they fuffer them, for that part of them are but sports of recreation: for alwayes 63 they dance after their manner. In these dances, they vie fundry forts of instruments, whereof, fome are like Flutes, or little Canons, others like Drums, and others like Cornets : but commonly they fing all with the voyce, and first one or two fing the fong, then all the rest answer them. Some of these songs were very wittily composed, containing Histories, and others were full of

superfittions, and some were meere follies. Our men that have conversed among them, have laboured to reduce matters of our holy faith to their tunes, the which hath profited well : for that they employ whole dayes to rehearfe and fing them, for the great pleasure and content they take in their tunes. They have likewife put our compositions of Musicke into their Language, as Octaves, Songs, and Rondels, the which they have very aptly turned, and in truth it is a goodly and very necessary meanes to inftruct the people. In Perm, they commonly call Dances Tagui, in other Provinces, Areittes, and in Mexico, Mittottes. There hath not beene in any other place any fuch curiolitie of Playes and Dances, as in New Spaine, where at this day we see Indians to excellent Dancers, as it is admirable. Some dance vpon a Cord, some vpon a long and streight Carious Date

10 flake, in a thousand fundry forts; others with the foles of their feet and their hammes, do handle, cerecast vp and receine againe a very heavy blocke, which feemes incredible but in feeing it. They doe make many other shewes of their great agilitie, in leaping, vaulting, and tumbling, sometimes bearing a great and heavy burthen, fometimes enduring blowes able to breake a barre of Iron. Great agility.

But the most vitual exercise of recreation among the Mexican is the follower Matotte, and that is a kind of dance they held to brave and to honourable, that the King himfelfe danced, but not ordinarily, as the King Don Pedro of Arragen with the Barber of Valencia. This Dance of Mittette, was commonly made in the Courts of the Temple, and in those of the Kings houses. which were more spacious. They did place in the midit of the Court two Instruments, one like

to a Drumme, and the other like a Barrell made of one piece, and hollow within, which they

20 fet vpon the forme of a man, a beatt, or vpon a Pillar. Their two Inftruments were fo well accorded together, that they made a good harmony and with the'e Instruments they made many kinds of Ayres and Songs. They did all fing and dance to the found and measure of these Instruments, with so goodly an order and accord, both of their feet and voyces, as it was a pleasant thing to behold. In these Dances they made two Circles or Wheeles, the one was in the middeft neere to the Inffruments, wherein the Ancients and Noblemen did fing and dance with a loft and flow motion; and the other was of the reft of the people round about them, but a good diffance from the first, wherein they danced two and two more lightly, making divers kinds of paces, with certayne leaps to the measure. All which together made a very great Circle. They attyred themfelues for thefe Dances with their most pre-20 cious apparell and lewels, enery ene according to his abilitie, holding it for a very honourable thing : for this caute they learned thele Dances from their infancie. And although the greateft part of them were done in honotir of their Idols, yet was it not fo inflittuted, as hath beene faid,

hut only as a recreation and pattime for the people. Therefore it is not convenient to take them quite from the Indians, but they must take good heed they mingle not their superfittions among it them, I have feene this Mutotte, in the Court of the Church of Topetzotlan, a Village feuen leagues from Mexico: and in my opinion, it was a good thing to bufie the Indians voon Festiuall dayes, feeing they have need of some recreation : and becaute it is publike, and without the prejudice of any other, there is leffe inconvenience, then in others which may be done privately by themiclues, if they tooke away their.

To the Reader.

R Eader, I here present unto the the choise, t of my Iewels. My transling fancis but innied min my Readers to many my labours in ftrange births already, Q z regio in terris noftri non plena las boris? Iaponian and China rarities fo remote from our world, are neere to our worke, and their chara-Elers communicated here to the Reader ; not their arts alone, Thou half here also Industran, Arabike, Perfian, Turkish, add other Letters, and not onely the transcript from their languages. At for translations and tollettions, thou haft them here also out of the Hebrew, Auncient and Moderne Greeke, Aballine, Tartarian, Russian, Polonian, Egyptian, and innumerable other Nations Christian, Iewish, Mahumetan, Ethnike, Civill, Barbarian and Swage; winumerable wayer dinerfified. Tet all thefe in letters, ar choracters. In hieroglyphical mysticall pictures the aucteur Egyptians and Echiopians, base by may of Emblemes observely and darkly delinered their observe on steries, uncertaine, waxens, plant concontstathe world; fome of which our Pilgrimage bath mentioned. But a Historie, yea a Politiche Ethine, Ecclefiaftike, Occonomike History, with tust distinctions of times, places, acts and arts, we have net tions, executions, we of a some Nation, he is the whole neight and high apprehensive terms and broth apprehensive terms and about a some some land and the sound have the sound have. Such as we use here prefers, a prefers thought fit for him whom the fenders of them also are ferentially presented in the present of Privacy, and yet one preferred to the hands before st could are rine in his presence. For the Spanish Gonernour having with some difficultie (as the Spanish Preface imports) obtained the Booke of the Indians, with Mexican interpretations of the Pictures (but ten daies 60 before the departure of the Ships) committed the fame to one skelfull in the Mexican Ilinguage to be interpreted; who in a very plaine file and verbatim performed the fame, wfing alfo fome Moriles words, as Altaquiand Mezquitas (for Prieft and Templer) import. This Historie lbus written, (ent to Charles the fifth Emperour, was together mub the Shippe that carried it taken by Frenchmen of war,

from whom Andrew Theuet she French Kings Geographer, obtained the fame : after whose death;

cMaster Hakluyt (then Chaplaine to the English Embassadour in France) bought the same for 20. French crownes, and procured Master Michael Locke in Sir Walter Raleighs name to translate it. It seemes that none were willing to be at the cost of cutting the Pistures, and so it remained among shie papers till his death, whereby (according to his last will in that kinde) I became possessour thereof, and papers till bud death, whereby (according to this said, whi is none spence) to become paying our interest, and beauc obtained with much corrussfulled the entiting thereof for the Presser, the rather was Leagust volce-ment berein, as being a thing adjoired by that most industriesse of integraty, indicense Scholler, Religious Gentleman, our Ecclificities Secular, the Churches champion, Sir Henry Spelman, Kinght; whom so honors (ake I name, that his name may honour our ruder lines; a name so fitting to the Man, at offe which borors face a name, tout us summer may some of burnane learning, and is ready, with mains consecution in in regard of his wife spell and science in divine & humane learning, and is ready, with mains consecution ban, in regard of his wife tyell and science in muon. On the exhibit homselfe in deede what some and alcertite to show homselfe the Churches Man, and to exhibit homselfe in deede what some any 10 man can field, out of Spel-man. The commending from fuch a friend (let the Music impetrate pardon for so bold a name) was a commanding unto me, which here I againe commend to Him and thee.

is town.

It is divided into three parts; the first being the Annales and Mexican Chronicle: the second. their Exchequer or the Accounts of their fenerall Tributes paid them from the Nations and peoples their Excheques or the Accounts of usern features triumest pain exemption the Relieuts and peoples tributary, whereby may be seen to be Naturall riches of those party peculiarly seried; the thord the Mexican Occosemus and Policies on warre and pasee, religious and feeture, theory rivate and public vites from the grause of the wombe, to the wombe of the grause. Observe places I have explained ble vites from the greate of the mome, is our women of the free vites from a separated befuled what define in Acolds thom half read formpring the translation with the cripmall, delay man my of mine owne: and perhaps there is not any one Hiftery of this kinds in the moral comparable to this, in so fully expressing so much without Letters; hardly gotten, and easily lost, that thou mail here

CHAP. VII.

The History of the Mexican Nation, described in pittures by the Mexican Author explained in the Mexican language; which exposition translated into Spanish, and thence into English, together with the faid Picture-bistorie, are here presented,

The Mexican Chronicle.



Ere beginneth the Historie and foundation of the Citie of Mexico, founded and inhabited by the Mexicans, who at that time were called Megiti; whose origi-40 nall beginning of being Lords, and their acts and lives are declared briefely in this Historie, according as it is fignified and fet out successively by the pictures and paintings following,

In the yeare 1324. after the comming of our Lord and Saujour Iefus Chrift, the Mexican people first arrived at the place of the Citie of Mexico, and because they liked well the greatnesse and the scituation of that place, afterthat they had trauailed in their Iournies, and wandered many yeares from Country to Countrey, & in some of them had made their abode, for some yeares, being come from far Countries in following their Iournies, and not being contented with the other places where they had made their about, they came and fetled themselves in the place of Mexico. The which place at that time was all drowned with water, and was coursed with great bogs and bankes of moorish shegs and bulrushes, which they call Tuli, and it had Carrizales, and great plats of dry ground couered with shrubbes, bushes, and briars like woods. And through all the space of that place there went a spaing & streame of fair cleere water which was free from all legges and bulhes, which water streams went through it crosswife, in manner of Saint Andrewes croffe, as it is shewed in the picture : and about the middle of that place of that water-fireame, the Megiti found a great rocke of flone, and growing thereon a great Tree or bush called Tunal, wherein a great Eagle Candal had her baunt and abode for her foode, so as all about that place was scattered full of bones and feathers of divers Birds and Foules of divers colours. And they having gone throughout all that place and Countrie thereabout, and finding it very fruitfull and full of wilde beatls, wilde Foules, Birds, and Fishes, and things of the wa- 60 ter, wherewith to fuffaine themfelues and to profit themfelues in their businesse in dealing with the l'owner thereabouts, and finding the water-courses of that place so commodious, and that their Neighbours could not trouble nor hurt them, and for other things and causes to their good liking they determined to pile no further on their journeyes in travelling, but to feetle

themselves and dwell still. And according to their determination, they did settle themselves there effectually. And made themselves a trong Citie of defence with bankes and walles about the waters, and on the plate of ground among the Wegges and Bushes of Tulis and Carriages. And for a beginning of that their feate and habitation, it was determined by them, to give name and title to that place, calling it Tennititian. By reafon and cause of the Tunal growing out of the Rocke (for Tenuchtitlan interpreted in our Callilian Spanish Tongue is Tunal growing upon

The same of the Mericas people had with the same of their dioutinous ten petions named, October, Ourses, Accessis, Accessis, Accessis, Theorem, Theorem, Accessis, Acc chiefe Gouernour and Lord to governe them, sea perion especially cholen thereto and fit for it, having in him all parts and abilities o exercise Lordship. and they appointed the other shiefe Gouernours, that they should be Agents and Captaynes, Gouernours vnder him.

And after some yeeres were past, dost their swelling in that prace, and the people multiplied, the Citie likewise was named Marie, so named and derives of the Mariena, calling it the

place of fething of the Markan copie;
And when the people were one what multiples like following warlike people they took beginning of couragious mindeain premaying over their Ociophons, and to the wed them takes in force of arms, whereby they bublied and nather that are of them two Townes next ad-20 joyning to Mexico, named Colhuacan , and Tenamen; as likewife is fet forth in the pictures: Tenublition. the which doings pasted in the sine of the gouvernment of the chiefe Lord Tenneh, which was Mexican Lords

the frace of fiftie one yeares, at the end whereof he died. Concerning the Pictures of blew in the margents of this Historie, it is to be vader floor that Mexico. every feuerall space or partition doth fignific one years, and they bee the numbring of years a colbuston and it is to be understood that every federall space or partition figurifie the one severall years, and so Tenament tubthey accounted & numbred energy years (neurally, proceeding by, the number of rundles or pricks therein contained, beginning actone, and proceeding to thirteene rundles. And from thence they began againe at the beginning in their accomptroms only begin or nundle, and to accordingly they did proceede in numbering against, till they came to thirteene. And although that in 30 the partitions or spaces severally there be durers severall figures, yet the principall accompt of numbering is that accompt of the pictures or rundles therein contained. And although the names of the yeares that they give to enery partition-from the number of the first point till the thirteenth be to fome purpole, yet for to adscribe the Reader thereof; here is made by at felfe a declaration of the names, with their interpretations,

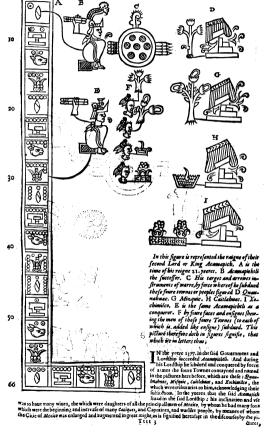
In the order and rule of the partitions which are numbered for yeares, that partition where there is a branch with a foote like a flower, it doth fignifie a bitter and ynfortunate yeare which the Mexicans had, and did feare, saying that their predetellours time out of minde did give them warning that such yeares which befell every two and sistieth yeare, were dangerous, and vnfortunate, and bitter yeares, because that in such yeares there were floods generally, and like-40 wife darkenesse of the eclips of the Sunne, and vniuerfall earthquakes. And likewise in such yeares they made great facrifice and ceremonies to their gods, and gaue themselues to repentance, and did abstaine from all vices against the very day and houre of frich a yeare. In the which day generally they put out all their lights and fires till that day were past; and being pase fed they kindled new lights being had out of a Mountaine by a Priess.

This is a weeke of yeares after the Mexican computation (all coloured blew , the Mexican names written ouer in red) the first of which they call Setuchtli, that is, one Conie: the second Omeacalt, or two Canes: the third Yeytecpath, three Flints: the fourth Macuilituchtli, which fignifieth foure honfes: the fifth Criquacenacatl, that is fine Comes: the fixth, fixe Canes: the fenenth, fenen Flints: the eight, eight Houses : the ninth, nine Conies : the tenth, ten Canes : the elementh, elemen Flints : the twelfth, twelne Honfes: the thirteenth, thirteene Contes.

This Pilline prefess the number of 51 years: that is, the time of Teache reigns: in this whole or spasse (which, as ill the ble representations) were so in the original pilline achieved blev I be prefessed spread up that the Lands of General Sofice measured that a manner attributed in the original Pollines, which he was under the lands on married of origin to a following following following the Achaeuth, B. Quapea, C. Oethem, D. Agureat, E. Teache, F. Teach, C. Kaminit, H. Kaspal, K. William, M. R. William, C. Oethem, D. Agureat, E. Teache, F. Teach, C. Kaminit, H. Kaspal, K. William, C. Oethem, D. Agureat, E. Teache, F. Teach, C. Kaminit, H. Kaspal, K. William, C. Oethem, D. Agureat, E. Teache, F. Teache, C. Kaminit, H. Kaspal, K. William, C. Oethem, D. Agureat, E. Teache, F. Teache, C. Kaminit, H. Kaspal, K. William, C. Oethem, D. Agureat, E. Teache, F. Teache, C. Kaminit, H. Kaspal, K. William, C. Oethem, D. Agureat, E. Teache, F. Teache, C. Kaminit, H. Kaspal, K. William, C. Oethem, D. Agureat, E. Teache, F. Teache, C. Kaminit, H. Kaspal, K. William, C. Oethem, D. Agureat, E. Teache, F. Teache, C. Kaminit, H. Kaspal, K. William, C. Oethem, D. Agureat, E. Teache, F. Teache, C. Kaminit, H. Kaspal, K. William, C. Oethem, D. Agureat, E. Teache, F. Teache, C. William, C. Oethem, D. Agureat, E. Teache, F. Teache, C. William, C. Oethem, D. Agureat, E. Teache, C. William, C. Oethem, D. Agureat, E. Teache, C. William, C. Oethem, D. Agureat, E. Teache, C. William, C. Oethem, D. Agureat, C. Oethem, D. Oethem, D. Oethem, D. Oethem, D. Oethem, D. Oethem, D. Oethem, D.

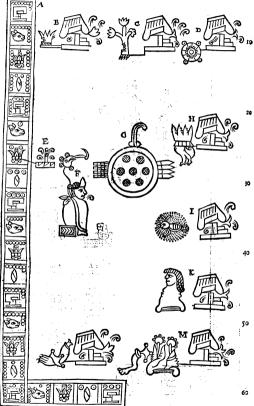
CHAP.7. S.I. Mexican bistorie in pictures. Chronicle without priting.

tequi. K. Atal. L. Tranchitlen, reprefeating the armse which they of ed in the campuell of that place, which they is initiated as M. the Transl federated green spreaming and of a feel. N. the Engle. O. their failing to bishitation. P. the people of Collina. com. Q. Tranguents, both which histories. R. Transles compared for face of rows, a separette. S. they dished that the bringing under. I with this of four and saint Andrews craffs. The former relation dath more faily by open help things.





chure, with their dechrations. The two pictures with their tiles & names of Atomopiobe cone inner thing to distort eff. Cds, for the first flowers his beginning and accreffiction of the first Lordhip, and the fectual the west the years of the form of the fraction as the find Lordhip, when the beginn to conquer and fallotion the first flowers from the first continued to the first flower for the first description of the first Atomopies dyed and departed the perfect of the first Atomopies dyed and departed the perfect for the which fail departure was in the perfect 136.

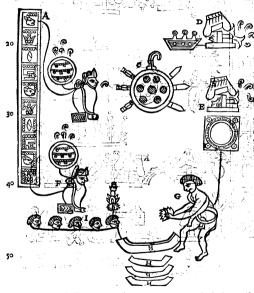


A 21. secres. B Towns and People of Tolisilan. C Quauxiilan. D (halco. H Tulancinco. 1 Xaltocan. K Otunpa, L Acolma. M Texcuco. E The Cutter hath set letters to diners figures

CH AP.7. S.I. Mexican historie in pictures. Chronicle without writing.

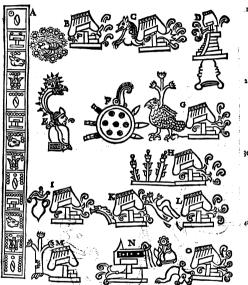
whereof I can give no interpretation: and fuch is this, except perhaps it significals that in his fewenth year he began his conquestio. For I doe here interpret duers in which the Spansh is siltent, if the conte-stane former, it is known I straightfull. I be before the significant of warre.

IN the yeere 1396. in the faid Lordship succeeded Huicilibuit Sonne of Acomapich, and during the time of his reigne in his Lordship, he conquered by force of armes eight Townes, which are contayned in the pictures here before, which the names of the same Townes intituded, the which were made tributane to the Mexican Lordship acknowledging seruitude. The said Huigilibuit was valiant in warres, and inclined to haue many wiues by whom he had many sons, 10 wherewith the power of the Mexicans was augmented. The time of the Lording and life of the laid Haigilibuil therein was 21. y ceres; at the end whereof he dyed and departed this pre-fent life, according as by the protures of blue are numbered.



A tenne yeeres, B Chimalpupuca, C Target and Darts, to intimite his forcible conquest of D Teguixquiac and E Chalco, F showeth his death. Gi the Towns of Chalco in rebellion, H the foure Canass and 1 the fine men aboutfaud of Mexico, mbitch the Rebell fine. Ton fee this King' and enery other both King and Towne diffingualised by special Armes or Scatchions, with other par-60 ticulars, which here and in all the rest I lease to each Readers owne industrie and fearch.

In the yeere 1470, after the death of Hincilibrial succeeded Chimalpapaca in the fald Lordship of Mexico, some of the said Hincilibrial, and during his time hee subdued by force of arms the Townes of Tequinquiae, and Chalco, which Chalco is a great Towne and acknowledging feruitude: they paid tribute to the Lordship of Mexico, according as the pictures doe shew. And hauing the said Towness thus in subscitcion, at the end of certaine yeeres the said Towne of Chateo, being mighter, exhelded against the Mexicons, and in the rebellion there grew danges to the Checcons, insomuch that they sue since of them, and brake them soure Canoas, according as here is signified by the pictures. The time of the life and Lordship of the said Chimashpusca was ten yeeres, at the end whereof hee dyed, according as is numbred by the blue pictures in the margent. And likewise the said Chimashpusca, in the time of his life had many wines and sons for it was accounted a matter of reputation.

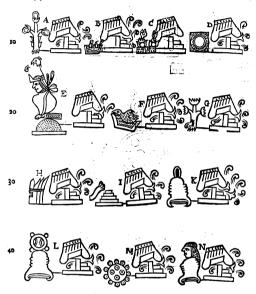


The explanation of the first Table A 13, years. Yecoatci. F by force of Armes (fignifiedby 50 this Tayet and Darts) finddaed the Towner, and Terratives of B Accapicalco, C Coyuccus, D Teocalbucyacan. G Guaguagan, H Tlacopius, I Aslamibusyan, K Mixeone, L Quauximalpan, M Quaubiustan, N Tupan, O Acchimacan.

An the yeere 1427, in the faid Dominion of Menies, after the death of Chimalpopuea, fucceeclodd Tecestp; Sonce of Assumpties, which had beene Lord of Menies, and during his time her conquered by force of Armes four & Curventie Towners which are here pictured, which Townes he made fubleck to the Lordhip of Maries, at one inusifien which he made; for he was as valuint and warlike in Armes as the faid decomptie, and was a man of good ludgement, and wrife in ma-67 ny matters, and by his good indufries he fubbleed the faid Townes which gaue him tribute, and did acknowledge fentitude. The faid Towney's had many Concluines, by whom he had feurn Sonnes and Daughters and he reigned in the iaid Lorddhip thirteene yeeres at the end whereof the faid Towner's dyval and departed this prefetchiffe.

CHAP.7.S.I. Conquered Townes. Gueguemotecumas reigne and life.

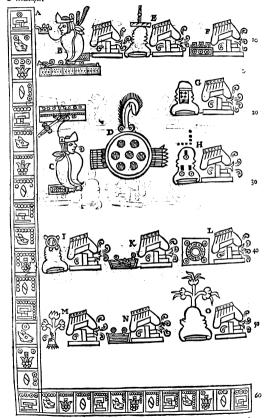
In the other Table (in the cripinal being another Page) follow A Minguic B Cuitlabuar. C Xochinalicopu. D Chalco, E Quambilatos the Lord of Tlatifulce 5 the Torme also added. F. Huicilapon, G Quambinabuar. H Cuccalan, I Caqualpan, K Interpre L Xushiepec, M Toalan. N Trepanacoulico.



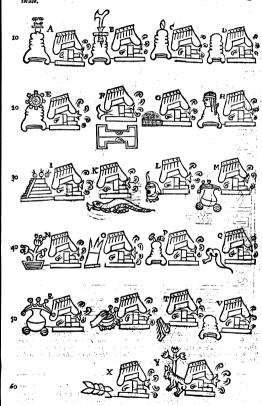
The hyere 1.440, after the death of Transary increeded Gueguemeteruma in the Lordhip of Mexico, the Sonne of Guizhibuit which had been Lord of Mexico and during his time, heconquered by force of Armes three and thirtie Townesaccording as they are pickured in that 50 compafie where the Picture of Gueguemeteruma flandeth. And hauing fubdued them to the faid Lordhip of Mexico, they payed him tribute, acknowledging their fubication.

This Guegaemotices was a very feuere and graue Lord, and ginen to vertue, and was a man of a good nature and vndertlanding, and an enemie to all culli views and gioen to vertue, and good inclination, feed downe Orders and Lawes in his Common-wealth, and to all his Sertuants how they ought to liue, and allo ordayned gineuous penalties for the breach of them; which penalties were executed without any remition you hole that brake the Lawes. He wasnot cruelly but rather gentle, and defirous of the welfare of his Subieds, not vicious in women; hee had two Sonnes, hee was very temperate in drinking, for in all his lifet ime hee was neuer feen to bee drunk eas the naturall /addows which are extremely inclined to drunkennesse, but rather he common manded him to be corrected and punished that committed such a fact. And by his securitie and Institute and good example of life, he was steared and reurenced of all his subjectles, all his lifet time, which was the space of nine and twentie yeeres. At the end whereof he dyed, and passed out of this professor is professed in the analysis of the subjectles.

A nine and twintie peeres. C. Hashuemoteccuma, D by force of Armes fahland. B Lord Atoud and bis Towne Cosyxtlabuseen. E. Mamallinextepec. F. Teneuco. G. Tesechtepec. H. Checoguiumbeo, I. Xinbiepec. K. Tesolapan. L. Chalco. M. Quanhushnar. N. Atlatlanbea. O. Husstepe.



In the feemat Table. A Taubrepec. B Tepuritan, C Teparacines. D Tacapabilan, E Tooltea pec: K Tlackee, G Tlackeeaskistion. H Tepepascules. I Quiyanteepur. K (bundeceatur. L. Hairpuchlus, M Automilic. N Asceepus, O Tiden. P Xistappe, Q Tsquinentifiquitis. R Atomilics. S Tlapacepus, T Chapolixula. V Tlatlashguntepec. X Cuestaxtion. Y Quantteches.



1076 Mexican bistorie in pictures. Chronicle without writing. Axayacaçi. LIB.V.

N the yeere 1479. after the death of Gueguemotezuma, succeeded in the Lordship of Mexico Axayacaci tonne of Tegogomoetliquieto, which was the tonne of Yzcoals Lord of Mexico. And during the time that the laid Axaracaci was Lord, he conquered and won by force of armes feuen and thirtie Townes, as hereafter are pictured and named. Amongst which Townes hee fishdued under his Lordship by force of armes the Towne of Thailulco, a thing of great importance. e Mognibus was Lord of Tlatitules at that time, who being a mightie person of great strength and of a proud nature, began to give occasion of diffention and warres to the Lords of Mexico. having heretofore held them for friends : by occasion whereof hee had great incounters and battailes, wherein the faid Montibuix Lord of Tlatifules dyed in throwing himselfe downe from a Cu (or a high Mezeita, or Temple) for he seeing himselse so hard beset in the battaile, being almolt ouercome, entred into a Mizena to faue himielfe, because hee would not be taken pritoner. And an Alfaqui (or Priest) which was in the Mezquito, or Temple, reproung him for it and imputing cowardife vnto him, he threw himfelfe downe as aforelaid. At which time the Merk cans had the victorie. And thenceforth the Towne of Tlavilales was fubicet to the Lord of Mexic co, paying tribute and acknowledging fubication. Axayacaci was very valiant and warlike in armes, and was viciously given to women, having had many wives and fonnes: he was also proud and warlike, whereby all his subjects feared him extremely; hee did maintaine and hold for good all the Lawes and Ordinances that his predecessor Guequemors name had made, according as hath beene mentioned in his Historie; and hee continued the space of twelve yeeres in the faid Lords thip of Mexico, at the end whereof he dyed and departed out of this prefent life.

A tivelue years. B Axayacact. C by armed force lubdaed thefe Tourses follow expeffed to picture | Thailulco, Atlapuleo, Xalatlanhio, Tlacotepee, Motepee, Tapulnac, Ocopia Quanbpanoayan, Xochiacan, Teotenanco, Caliymayan, Cinacantepec, Tulucan, Xiquipileo, Tenancinco, Tepeyacac, Tlaximaloyan, Oztomac, Xacetitlan, Ocuilan, Oztoticpac, Matlatlan, Cuez comatiyacac, Tecalco, Cuetlaxilan, Puxcanhilan, Alcuilizapan, Tlaolan, Mixilan, Cuecaloztoc, Tetzapotiilan, Miquiz etlan, Tamuos, Tampatel, Tuchpan, Tenexpepac, Quanbilan.

Tlatilu'ce Sub-

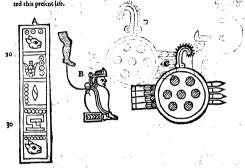
as Acella laith

wire fubica

N the yeers 1482 after the end and death of Axagasaci, succeeded in the Lordship of Mexico, 60 1 Ticocicatzi, forme of the laid Axayacaei , and during the time of his raigne he conquered and Title Ilecatecat! got by force of armes fourteene Townes. The faid Tipogicatzi was very valiant and warlike in armes, and before that he succeeded in the Lordship of Mexico, he had done dangerous feates of valiantnesse in his owne person in the warres, whereby hee obtayined the title of Tlacatecash,

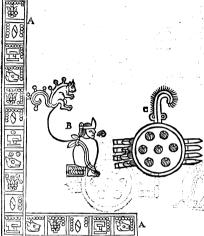
CHAP.Z. St. Mexican historie in pictures. Chronicle without writing.

which they efteemed for a Title of great honour and eftate: and it was a degree whereny that the Lordship of Mexico being vacant, he which had the same degree and title succeeded in the place of the fame Dominion of Mexico, which title in like manner his Predeceffors. Brothers, and Father, and Grand-father had, whereby they came to bee Lords of Mexico. Alfo the faid Ticocicatzi by the effate and authoritie of the faid Lordinip of Mexico, had many Wi ues and Sonnes which hee had by them, and he was a grave and feuere man in commanding and was feared and reverenced of his Subjects, hee was likewife enclined to good and vertuous things, and was good for his Commonwealth. He commanded the Lawes and Statutes to bee kept and appropered for good, that his Predecessors had amplified and kept since the time of Gueto guemotezuma. And he was zealous in punishing and chastning the eull vices and offences that his Subjects committed. And so the Mexican Commonwealth was well ordered and governed the time of his life, which was the space of fine yeeres, at the end whereof he dyed and depar-



F A Fine yeeres. B Ticocieatzi C by armes Subdued these Townes, Tonabymoquezayan, Toxico. Eeatepee, Zilan, Tecane, Tuluca, Tancuitlan, Tlapan, Atezcabuacan, Mazatlan, Xocbi. yetla, Tamapachco, Ecatlyquapochco, Miquetlan.

N the yeere 1485, after the death of Tizizocatzi, succeeded Abaizotin, brother to his Predes ceffor Tizozicatzi, in the Signorie of Mexico. And during the time of his Lordship, he conquered by force of armes fine and fortie Townes, according as hereafter are pictured and named. The faid Abuzozin was like to his Predeceffor and Brother Twizeenzi in valiantneffe and feates of warre, whereby he got the title of Tlacatecatl, which fignifieth a great Captaine, and from the fame title he came to be Lord of Mexico. The faid Abuixazin was by nature of a good inclination, and given to all vertue, and likewise in the course of his life hee had his Commonwealth ru-50 led and gouerned well, and he fulfilled and kept the Lawes and Statutes that his Predeceffors had maintayned fince the time of Gueguemotezuma. And as the flate of the Lordship of Mexico was brought to great Majestie, and had the greatest part of this New Spaine fubitet, acknowledging their service, and by the great and rich tributes which they gave the faid Mexican Lordinip, came to much renowme and mightinesse. And he like a mightie and great minded Prince, gaue great things and preferments to his fergants, and he was temperate of condition and metcifull, whereby his fernants loued him exceedingly, and yeelded him great renerence. And likewife hee had many wives, and children by them, because it was a thing adiogned to the Lordship, and a point of great estate. He was of a morrie condition, whereby his fernants did feast him continually in his life time with great and divors kindes of feafts, and mulick, and longs, and influences, as 60 well in the night as in the day : for in his place the Muficians and Singers neger ceased with many Instruments of mulicke. The course of his life in that Signiorie was fixteene yeares, at the end whereof he dyed and peffed out of this prefent life.



A fixteene yeeres. B A. huizozin. C conquered by armes the townes following, Tziccoac, Tlappan, Molanco, Amaxtlan, Zapotlan, Xaltepec, Chiapan, Totote-pec, Xochtlan, Xolochubylan, 13 Cozaquanbienanco, Cocobuipilecan, Coynacac, Acatepec. Huexolotlan, Acapulco, Xinbhuacan , Apancalecan, Tecpatepec, Tepechiap. co Xicochimalco Xinhtecza. catlan, Tequantepec, Coyo-lapan, Tatattlalocan, Teocuitlatlan , Hnebaetlan Quanhxayacasıılan, Yzbu. 24 atlan, Comitlan, Nantzin. tlan, Huspilan, Cabualan Titatlan, Huiztlan, Xolat. lan, Quanhnacaztlan, Maeatlan, Ayanhtochimitlatla. Quanhelan, Cuccalcutlapi. la, Mapachtepec, Quanbpi. lolan, Tlacoropec, Mizqui-

Moteruma.

IN the yeere 1,02, after the end and death of Abuiçoçin, succeeded in the Lordhip of Mexi-Les, Motezuma. Mexico was now growne into great Majestie, Renowme, and Authoritie ; and he by his granitie and severitie enlarged exceedingly the State and Dominion of Mexico, vez a great deale more then his Predeceffors. Morezzeuma was the fonne of Angraçaci, which had beene Lord of Mexico, and before hee came to the faid Lordhip hee had the delerts of a worthy Captaine and a valiant man in warres, whereby hee had the title of Tlacatecail, 45 and folice succeeded in the Lordship of Mexico, as is before rehearled, and being in the faid His wesle and Lordship he did greatly increase the Mexican Empire, bearing the rule ouer all the Townes in

this New Spaine, infomuch that they gave and payed him great mibutes of much riches and

Maiestie.

value : He was feared vary much of all his fernants, and likewife of his Captaines and Principals, intomuch that not one when they had any businelle with him, for the great reuerence they had him in, durft for feare looke him in that face, but that they held downs their eyes and their head low and enclined to the ground a said many other extraordinarie sespects and catemonies they did unto him for the Majestie he represented unto them, not mentioned here for anyoyding of tedioufnelle. After Meserane had forceeded in the faid Lordfhip, hee conqueted foure and fortie Townes hereafter named; and bee fubdued them under his Lordhip and Empire, and in their 50 acknowledging of femitude all the continuance of his life, they payed him many and great tri-

butes, as hereafter by their pictures and declarations is made manifeft. Morecuma was by nature wife, and an Afrologor, and a Philosopher, fubtile and skilled generally in all artes, as well of warres as all other matters temporally. And for his granitie and estate he had of his Lordship the beginning of an Empire, according as his feruants did reverence him with great honor and power, that in comparison of him , not one of his predecesfors came to halte to much estate and Majestie.

Lawer.

The Statutes and Lawres of his Predecessors, since the time of Gueguemotecuma untill his time, he commanded to bee kept and wholly fulfilled with great zeale. And because hee was a man to wife, by his good nature he orday ned and made other Statutes and Lawes which he thought de- 60 feeding for the execution of the former, not abrogating any, all which were for the welfare and good government of his Commonwealth and Subjects. Hee was the lined to keepen many houles Many women, and women, which were daughters of the Lords his Subjects and Confederates; and by them he had many children; and to have fo many wives was for to fet forth his Majette the more, for they hold it for a point of great estare. Among which the daughters of the Lords of great au-

CHAP.7. S.I. Mexican historie in pictures. Chronicle without writing.

thoritie he held for lawfull wines, according to their rights and ceremonies, and them hee kent within his Palaces and dwelling houses; and the children that came of shem were had in renutation as more lawfull children then the others which hee had by the other women. It were a See before in large historie to tell the order he had in keeping of them, and conversation with them. And be- soils, and atcaufe this present historie is but briefe, it is lett vnrehearsed.

The quantitie, value, and number of the tributes and kindes of things that his fubjects did pay ha ions of Ma. for tribute vnto him, shall be seene and vnderstood hereafter, as by the pictures and declarations terama, in a is fignified. And he made a ftraight order that the tributes which they payed him, thould be ful- wilde kinds of filled according as they were levied by him: for the fulfilling whereof he had in all his fulfied. flate and mato townesh its Capitagues and Factors, which were as Gouernors, that ruled, commanded, and go. inflict equally userned them; and hee was for much feared that none durit difform or transgrelle his will and history, in four commandement, but that they were kept and wholly fulfilled because he punished and corrected exceeding

the rebels without remission. And in the fixteenth yeere of the reigne of Motezuma, the Mexicans had knowledge of of the elder certaine Spaniards, which were discouerers of this New Spaine, that at the end of twelve First notice of

moneths there should come a fleet of Spaniards to ouercome and conquer this Country; and the Spaniards the Mexicans kept account thereof, and they found it to bee true, for at the end of the faid twelve moneths was the arrivall of the faid fleet at a Hauen of this New Spaine, in the which fleet came Don Ferdinando Cortes, Marques del Valle, which was the feuenteenth yeere of the reign 20 of Motezuma; and in the eighteenth yeere he made an end of the continuance of his Lordfain and Raigne; in the which yeare he dyed and departed this prefent life. At the time when Mo- Mutetuna texume came to his government, he was fue and thirtie yeeres old little more or leffe, fo that at death, his decease he was three and fiftie yeeres of age. And straight way in the year after his death, this

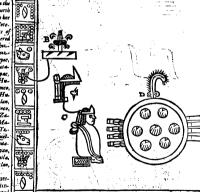
Citie of Mexico, and other Townes adjoyning, were ouercome and pacified by the faid Marques

del Valle, and his Confederates. And to this New Spaine was conquered and pacified. A The number of 19, seeres (18. yeeres of his raigne, and that other which followed to his Successor, wherin Mexico was 20 conquered, as you may fee in the next chapter) B the fourth yeere of bis raigne in which bee began his conquest. G Mote-zuma. D the instruments of warre by which bee conquered Actnoslan, Zozolan, Nochez. tlan Tecurepec Zulan Tlanz tlan , Huilotepec , Tepatepec, Tasactlalocan, Chick bualtasa

cala, Tecaxis, Tlackinoliscpac, Xoconochco, Zinacantlan. Huizilan, Piazilan, Molanco, Zagsantepec, Pspsyoltepec, Hu. eyapan, Tecpatlan , Amatlan, Caltepec, Pantepec, Tecazinco, Tecozanhela, Teochiapan, Zacatepec, Tlachquiyanhoo, Ma-linaltepec, Quimichtepec, Tzquintepec, Zenzontepec, Quet-

50 zaltepec, Cuezcomayattabuacan , Huexolotlan , Xalapan, Xalisachnizco, Yaloxovernila. Atepec , Millan , Yztitlan, Tliltenec. Comalsenec.

Theie townes were gouer-ned by the Cafiques & Principals of Mexico, appointed by the Lords of Mexico, for the good defence and gouernment of the naturali



people, and for the fecuritie of the lownes, that they thould not rebell, as also for the charge they had to gather, and command to be gathered the Rents and Tributes, that they were bound to give and pay to the Dominion of Mexico.

Citialispec, Quanticoheo, Mixcoatl, Tlacatettica Governous, Zonpaneo, Xultocan , Tlacatettica Vuuu 2

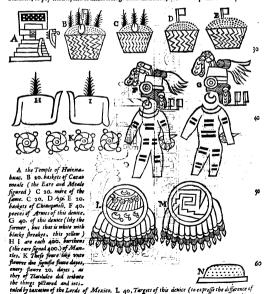
Gouernour, Acalhuacon, Tlacochtellis a Gouernour, Huaxac, Yzteyocan, Coatitlan, Huixachtillan Tlacatellis a Gouernour, Tlacochtelli a Gouernour, Zozolan, Poetepec, Coatlayancham, Acolnabaas , Puputlan, Tztacolco, Chalcoatenco, Tlacochtelly a Gouernour, Tlacatecatl a Gouernour, Oztoma, Atxacan, Atlan, Omequub, Texcacoacatl a Gouernour, Thlancalqui a Gouernour, Xacanochco. Tecapotitlan.

ð. I I.

The fecond part of this Booke contagning the particular Tributes which every Towne Subdued paid water the Lords of Mexico.

Ere follow pictured and intituled the kinds of things, that they of Tlatitules (which at this day is called by the Spaniards, Saint Lames) did pay in tribute to the Lords of Rexico, and the faid tribute tummed here, is that which followeth.

They were charged for tribute, alwayes to repaire the Church called Huiznahuac. Item, fortie great Baskets (of the bignetic of halie a Bushell) of Cacao ground, with the Meale of Maiz (which they called Chianpinols) and every Basket had fixteene hundred Almonds of Ca-cao. Item, other fortie Baskets of Chianpinols. Item, eight hundred burthens of great Mantels. Item, eightie pieces of Armour, of flight Feathers, and as many Targets of the fame Feathers, of the devices & colours as they are pictured. All the which tribute, except the faid armes and targets they gaue every 24. dayes, and the faid armes and targets they gave for tribute but once in the whole yeere. The faid tribute had his beginning fince the time of Quantilaton and Moquibuix, which were Lords of Tlatilulco. The Lords of Mexico, which first enioyned to those of Tlatifulco, to pay tribute, and to acknowledge their fubication, were Tacoatci and Axiacaci.



CHAP.7. \$ 2. Mexican historie in pictures. Tributes paid to Mexico.

colours in each particular were too tedious.) N Tlatilulco. The names of Quantilatoa and Moquihux Lords of Tlatilulco are added, because in their times it began; as also of Tennatislan, Izcoaci and Apayacan to intimate that thefe two Lords of Mexico or Tenuxtitlan subdued them. The Pillures of them (as of many Townes before) were omitted : being but such descriptions of men and Townes as you have feene alreadie.

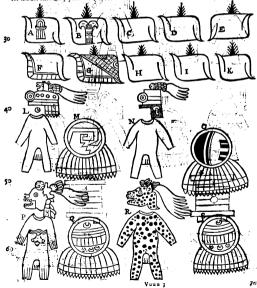
THe Townes pictured in the two Pieces following, and fummed heere be twentie three Townes as appeareth by their Titles, and they had a chiefe Gouernour appointed by the Lords of Mexico, called Petlacalcatt, although neuertheleffe, enery Towne had his Calpixque, 10 which is at it were a Steward or Bayliffe, whose charge was to gather the Rents & tributes that the faid Townes did tribute to the Dominion of Mexico, and all the faid Stewards came to the faid Petlacalcatl as their Gouernor, and the things and kinds that the faid townes did tribute, are these which follow; 2400, burthens of great Mantels of twisted Yarne. Eight hundred burthens of little Mantles, rich attyre, of the colcurs as they are pictured. Four hundred burthens of Maxilac, which ferued for little clothes. Four hundred burthens of Huipiler and Nagnas, all the which they gave for tribute every fixe moneths.

Item , They gaue fine pieces of Armour, of rich Feathers, and as many Targets of the

20 many Targets of the colours and deuices as they are pictured.

many targets or the corons answerines as mere are presented.

1 tem, They tributed one Traxes of Frifales, and another Traxe of China, and another
Traxe of Mays, and another of Ginguit, which is the feed of Blates. All the which things of
the init Armour and Targets, and Traxes of Frifales, and the other feeds the faid Townes did pay for tribute once enery yeere. -

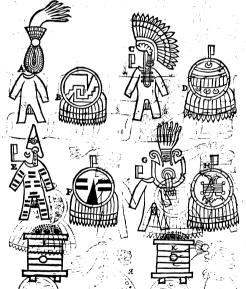


20

Petlacalcail a Concernour (the piltures of men and townes are beere and in the following omitted Petlacatesti a Cusarmour (incpitares of monana unnes are users anam non jouweng emited, busy no other those as you have alreadie fense) the tenmes at Asarajam, Topico, Topicalacio, Tucha-pan, Topichan, Tequemecan, Huigilo Puchoo, Colonaçines, Cocnian, Teppalan, Olac, Asarajan, Topichan, Olac, Asarajan, Cocnian, Teppalan, Olac, Asarajan, Cocnian, C ран, гересории, георичиский, глании столог, история, со, Торас, Тесако, Тасохинко, Nex-

A 400. burthens of Maxtlac of thu worke, which be little clothes. B 400. burthens of Naguas, and Hupiles of this worke. C 400, burthens of great Mantels. D 400, burthens of great Man. and truptet of tow work. O 400 continent of great reconcert. D 4000 entagors of great Man-tells. E 400, burthons of great Mattels, F 400, burthons of lattle Mantels, of this works each dualition of fenerall colours, Red, Blue, Tellan, Greene, G 400, burthons of lattle Mantels of this works. H 400, burthons of great Mantels, I 400, burthons of great Mantels, K 400, burthons of great Mantels. L. A piece of Amour of this denice of rich Feathers yeerely, M. A Tweet of rich Feathers of this denice. N Apiece of Armour of this denice of rich Feathers recrely. O A Trage of role Feathers of this denice, P. A piece of Armon of rich Feathers of this denice percent.

9. A Target of rich Feathers of this denice, R. A piece of Armon of rich Feathers, of this denice yearely. S AT arget of rich Feathers of this denice.



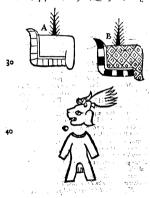
A spice of drawing of rich finders of this depict secrety. B A Torget of rich finders of this depict of the secrety of the sec

CHAP.7. S. Mexican bistorie in pictures. Tributes pand to Mexico.

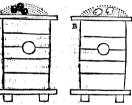
These Townes pictured and named, ensuing and summed heere, are sixe and twense townes. wherein from the time of their conquests by the Lords of Mexico, they had fet Calpingues, as it were Bayliffes in every of them, and in the principall Towne a Governour bare rule above all the reft, because he should may regaine them in peace and justice, and make them performe their tributes, and that they should not rebell. The tributes that all the faid townes hereafter contayned, did pay together, are these which tollow.

Two thouland burthens of great Mantels twifted. Item, 1200. burthensof Canahnae, which be rich Mantels, wherewith the Lords and Cafignes were clothed of the colours as they are nice tured. Item, 400, burthens of Maxilacil, which be little clothes. Item, 400, burthens of Huis piles and Naguas, all the which they paid for tribute twice a yeere. Item, they gave more tribute three pieces of Armour garnished with sich feathers, and as many Targets of the colours and deutes as they are pictured, the which they gave in the space of one yeers. Item, one hundred pieces of Armour garnished with feathers of small value, and as many Targets of the denices and colours as they are hereafter pictured, the which they tributed once a yeere. Item, foure great Troxes of wood, full, the one of Frifoles, and another of Chian, and another of Maiz, and another of Guantli, which is the feed of Bleibos. Every Troxe might contayne foure or five thoufand Hanegas, the which they tributed once a yeere.

Acolmecult. Calipixque. Acolbuncan, Huicitan, Totolcinco, Tlachyabnalco, Tepechpa, Aztaquemeca, Teacalco, Tonanitla, Zenpoalan, Tepetlagenoc, Achnatepec, Ticatep, Contlan, Taquenecan, 90 Matixco, Teneazcalapan, Tyzaincan, Tepetlapan, Cabahualco, Tecoyncan, Ilaquilpan, Quanhque. mesan, Epaçumcan, Ameyalco, Quanhyocan, Evatepes.



A 400, burthens of Mantels of this can low (red) and worke (edged Blue Greene, Red, and Tellow) B 400. bundles of Man-tels of this worke (Blacke and Black) -C Twentie pieces of Armes of rich feathers of



A Fallowing two Trokes of Frifoles and Chies. Bewo Trazes, the one of Mart, the other of Humali (thew corne.) Therest are omitted in Peterre, beeing resembled as the former, and for the Historie, on have it be-

The towness returned and named, and sumbred here are fixteene townes, the which towness. I did pay for tribute to the Loyis of Mexics, the things pictured and intituded, Andbecoule they floudly be well ruled and ogourned, the Torols of Mexics had feet Calipague in cutry town, and aboue all them for Gouernour, a principall man of Mexico; the Calpixques alto were men of Mexico: which was done by the laid Loids for the fecuritie of the townes, that they should not rebell, and also because they should minister Justice, and line in policie. And the said Tributes that the faid townes gave as appeareth by the faid Pictures, and fummed heere, are those which follow.

First, they did gribute twelue hundred burthens of great, Mantels of twisted Yarne.

Trim, Eight hundred burthens of small white Mantels, of the apparell which they did wears. Item, T welve hundred burthens of fmall white Mantels, richly wrought, which is apparell that the Lords and Cafiques did weare.

Item, Foure hundred burthens of Maxilatile, which are small clothes that they weare.

Item, Foure hundred burthens of Huiples and Naguas, which is apparell for women, all the which they tribute twice a yeere; to that they gaue tribute every fixe moneths.

Item. They did tribute eight pieces of Armour, and as many Targets garnished with rich seathers of divers colours as they are pictured, the which they paid for tribute once a veere.

Isem, Foure great Traxes of wood, full of Maiz and Frigies, and Chan, and Huantli, which is the feed of Bielon, cury Traxe might contayne 5000. Hangess or Buthels, the which they did tribute once a yeare.

Item, Eight Reames of Paper, of the Countrey, which they tributed twice a yeere; so that in all it was every yeere sixteene thousand sheets of Paper.

Item, In euery tribute 2000. Xabarus, or drinking Cups, which they gaue twice a yeere.

The Townes were Quaubnahuse. Tescalcines, Chimaleo, Huiceslapan, Acatispae, Xochiepae, 10
Miscatla, Molotla, Coulan, Xinbtepee, Xoxontla, Amacertiilan, Trilan, Oepayacan, Triepae,
Alikebolomau.



fand Beeter of Paper, of the Cenntrey, B Four humdred Xuarau, or
Cop-differ of this 20
worke, C Foure
bundred of this
worke, D Foure
bundred of this
worke, E Fure
hundred of this
worke, E Fure
hundred of this

A Eight thou.

are Yellow and Red. The rest need no presenting in Pillure, beeing but as formerly si seene.

The townes following, and numbred here are fix and twente, which did pay tribute of the things pichtured and entituled to the Lords of Maxico and likewife there was tefident a Gosenour, and Maxico Calipyane, as in the other townes afore mentioned, which were ordained by the Lords of Maxico Calipyane, as in the other townes afore mentioned, which were ordained by the Lords of Maxico. And the tributes that they payed, appearing by the Pichtures are their which follow. Fifty, they did ribute 400 huntries of Maxico in the Lords and Principals of Maxico twitted yarme. Item, 800 out them so from Mantles, that the Lords and Principals of Maxico were clothed with, of the colours as they be pichtured. Item, 8000. Reames of Paper of the Cobinsrey, all the which they do gaue in every tribute, which was entered in moneths. Item, They tributed 40 pictors of Armour, and as many Targets garnified writtright feathers did of diugs colours, as appeared by the Pichtures. Item, Six pieces of Armour, and as many Targets garnified with they feathers of the decices and colours as they be pichtured. Item, Poure great Traxes of wood like those aforefulful of Maxic and Priplar, and Chain, and Gosanli, all the which they styched choice a years.

The townes names are Hastepee, Normanication of the theory of the course of the course



ABCDE 50 are each of them. foure hundred Xi-carmor Cup-diffees.



P Eight thousand 6. Sheets of Paper, the Pictures of the rest are omitted.

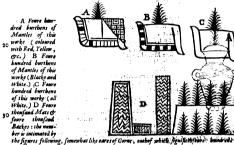
The

THe Townes pictured and named here are fenen, which paid tribute to the Lords of Mexico,

A is in the other parts aforefaid have beene mentioned, and the things they tributed are
there that follow.

First, Foure hundred burdens of Mantels of rich workesynad foure hundred burdens of plain Mantels, of the coloras they be picktured. I new Four chouldned Petater, which are Mars, and other foure hundred backes with their festes made of Segs and other Herbs, the which they did ribute energy fix months. Irm., "You proceed of Armour, and a smary Targets grantished with rich Feathers of the deuices and colours as they be picktured. Irm., Fortie precess of Armour, and as many Targets, grantished with high Feathers. Time, Foure great Trocky of wood of the bigs no effect of the direction, they are for the they good for the they are for the they good for the process of the process of the direction, they are for the they good for the process of the proces

The Townes are Quantitlan, Tehniloyeean, Ahnexoyoean, Xalapan, Tepoxace, Cuercomo huacan, Xilogines.



The Townes pictured and named are tenne, which did paie tribute to the Lords of Mexico, as afore faid, and the things that they did tribute doe follow.

First, eight hundred burdens of rink Mantles, and whrough as appeareth by the titles and pictures. Item, Four chundred Burdens
of white Mantles, with their border of blacke and white. Item,
Eight hundred burdens of white Mantles; Item, Fough handred
burdens of Nagass and Happier, Item, Fough chundred great # ots
of thick Honic of Magass; all the which they tributed curry like
moneth. Hem, They did tribute two peccess of Armon, 'garphled
with rich Feathers, and as many Targets of rich Feathers, of the deuices as they be jeduced and initiated. Item, Fortie pecces of Armoungarnished with flight Feathers, and as many Targets, of the
deuies as they are pictured. Item, Four general Travest of wood, of
the bigoeffe of thoir that are fignified in the parts before, the one of
Maiss, and the other of Frijfent, another of Chun, and another of
Gasanti leeks of Beleds: All the which they tributed once a year.
The Towness are Asseemed, Artens/Reprose, Xehibbigusaff mo-

buayan, Tezcatepec, Myzquienbuala, Yzpeyanilyan, Tlanto

Terpatepec.

A Four ebounded Pets of thicke Honic of Magues: this is for the nouse figure pillured, the reft not, being as the feature in their for use.

The number of the Towner enfuing, are feuen, and they did tribute to the Lords of Mexico, after the order declared in the parts aforefaid; and the things which they did tribute are those which follow.

First, Foure hundred burdens of Mantels of aich workers which was apparell that the Lords and Casiques did put on. Item, Foure hundred burdens of white Mantels, with their borders of white Mantels, with their borders of white



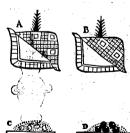
white and black. Item, Eight hundred burdens of great Mantell of twifted Yarne. Item, Foure hundred burdens of Chalk; all the which hey did ribute usery fix moneths. Item, they did ribute two precess of Armour garmhed withinth Feathers, and two Targets, as any pracerthy the deutices and pitters. Item, Foure great Traves of worning and as many Targets garnished with high Feathers, as appearethy the pictures, duces and relate. Item, Foure great Traves of word of the bignetic of those before, the one full of Mate, another of Fifteds, another of Claim, and another of Gonzalit; all of the which they lide ribute once a yeare. The Towness are Antonines, Guapat. Scale, Queen dimances, Ancelon, Fathenberg, Vileagens, Nation.

A 400 buribens of Chalke or Lime: the marke on the top significith
400 the signe is the sorme of their buriben. Other signres neede not be
presented.

The number of the Townes following, are nine, according as they be pictured and named. And they paid tribute as followeth.

First, foure hundred burdens of Mantels of tich workes, which 10 the Lords and Jaspuerital put on. Item Foure hundred burdens of white Mantels, with their edge of white and blacke. Item, eight hundred burdens of white Mantels of Enequen. Item, Foure hundred Bots of thicke Home of Magnee. All the which they tributed entry fix moneths. Item, Two peaces of Armour, and as many Targets, gamilded myst the Freshers, of the colours and deutifess they be pictured definitedled. Item, three four peeces of Armour, and as many Targets, gamilded with flight Freathers, of the colours and actualists at they be engined and pictured. Item, Foure great Treat of wood, of the big Bott aircrefail full, the one of Many, and another to of Frijden, nothing the Policy and another to Cassathy. All the which they tributed once packets. The Towness are Hueppublia, Xalae,

Tegnizenian, Tesleguiniegus, Xiantineces, Series, The Towners are Huspachita, Xales, A 400. Pers of Home of Adques, palenter fix months.



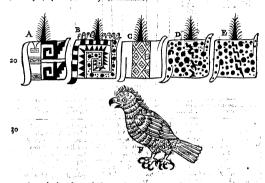
The number of the Townes following be fix: and they paid tribute as followeth.

Firit, Eight hundred burdens of rich 40 Mantels apparel that the Lords of Mexise did cloath themfelves with, as appeareth in the faid fide by the pictures and titles. Item, One thouland fix hundred burdens of white Mantels of Enequen; all the which they did tribute to the Lords of Mexico every fix moneths. Item, Foure peeces of Armour, and as many Targets, garnished with rich Feathers of the colours and deuiles as they are pi- 10 Ctured and intituled. Item, Foure great Trexes of wood, of the bignesse of the other, full of Maiz, Prifeles, Chian, and Guantly. All the which they did tribute once a yeare. The Townes are Arms. nilco, Acaxochisla, Xnachquecaloyan, Hueyapan, Iszibuinquilocan, Tulancingo. A Foure hundred burthens of rich Man.,

A lowe bundred burthens of rub Man. As of the worke. B Fame bundred burthens of rub Mansist of this work. C 60 Two trocks, one of May sthe other of Chuan. D Two trocks, the one of Frifiles, the when of Guantis Other pittures are omitted, being like the former.

The number of the Townes are feuer: and they paid tribute as followeth. First, 400. burthers of very rich Nagma and Haiplits, which is apparell for women. Item. 400.burthers of rich Mantels, Lords apparell. Item, 400.burthers of rich Mantels, Lords, 400.burthers of rich finall Mantels. Item, 400. burthers of Radawethers of Radawethers

Item, A liufing Eagle, two, three, or more, according as they could finde them. Item, two pieces of Armour and two Targets, garnified with rich feathers, of the deuice and colour as they are pictured. Item, Four gets I Travet or wood, full of Many. Frifder, Chien, and Gassatti sall the 10 which they tributed once a yetre. The towness names are Xistopee, Tlacker, Tagmalquipa, Mychaellog, Treptillam, Acceptabile, Trepti



A 400 burthens of very rish Nagues and Haipites, B 400 burthems of rish Mantels of this work, D 400 burthers of Nagues of this works. D 400 burthers of frieh Alansels of this works. E 400 burthers of rish Alansels of this works. E 400 burthers of rish Alansels of this works. F A line English they brought in every pribute, sometimes three, other times fower on less.

The number of the Townes following are thirteene. And they payed tribute as followeth.

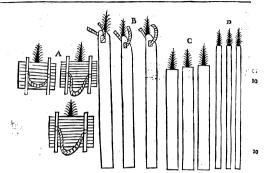
First. Soo, burthens of rich finall Mantles of this worke, as they be pictured. Item, 800.

burthens of small of Engagen : all the which they did tribute curry list moneths. Entire pieces of Armour and a Target garmlined with rich feathers. Hem. Rottle pieces of Armour and as many Targets garmlined with flight feathers: the which Armour they tributed to Armour and as many Targets garmlined with flight feathers:

Item, Foure great Troxes of wood of the bignesse aforesaid, full of Maiz, Frisles, Chian, and Guauth, which likewise they tributed once a yeere.

Itim., 1200. burthers of wood, which they tributed eatry four dayes. Item., 1200. great Brames of Thinke, which they tributed eatry four dayes. Item., 1200. great Boards or Planks, which they tubuted usery four dayes. The Townstate, Quadisseen, Item., Chepstologyan, Thatalanew, Animote, Amyoleo, Costopic, Thuisquiscen, Cestryed, Quadispanos, on, Tlalackso, Checkeyanabila, Phinzylinder, Costopic, Thuisquiscen, Costopic, Quadispanos, on, Tlalackso, Checkeyanabila, Phinzylinder, Costopic, Checkeyanabila, Phinzylinder, Checkeyanabila,

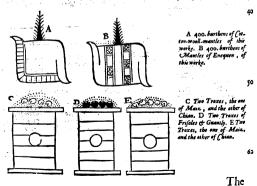
1088



A 400, burthers of most. A 400, burthers of mood. A 400, burthers of mood. B 400 great beames, or siteets finisher. B 400 great beames, B 400 great beames. C 400 great placks of inheles: C 400 great placks of inheles. C 400 great placks of one of the placks of the place of the

He number of the townes pictured are twelve. And they tributed as followeth. First. 400. barthens of Cotton-wooll, Mantles white with an edge of Greene, Yellow, Red, and Olive colour. Item, 400, burthens of Mantles of Enequen, wrought and spotted, with Red, 10 White and Blacke, Item, 1200, burthens of white Mantles of Eneguen : all the which they tribu ed enery fix moneths. Item, two pieces of Armour, and as many Targets garnished with rich feathers of the colours and deuces as they are pictured. Item, twentie pieces of Armour, with as many Targets, garnished with slight feathers of the colours and deuices as they are pictured. Item, fix great Troxes of wood of the bignetle aforefaid, full of Frifeles, Maix, Chian, and Guantly: All the which they tributed once a yeere.

The townes names are Tubuea Calinalabuacan, Xicaliepec, Tepell macon, Olgiepec, Capulico-



The number of the townes incitaled and pictured, are fixe. And they paid tribute as followerh

First, they did tribute 800. burthens of rich Mantels of Enequen, of the workes as they be pi-Stured A.

Item, 400. burthens of Corton-wooll Mantles rich of the worke as they

be pictured, B. Item, 400. rich Mantles of Enequen, of this worke pictured. C.

Item, 2000, Loques of fine white Salt refined &c. made in long moulds, as letter D each of which 20 figuifie 400. (as the Eare aboue declares.) It was fpent only for the Lords of Mexico, all the which

they tributed every fixe

moneths. Item, a piece of Armor. with a Target of rich feathers, of the colours and deuices as they be pictu-30 red. Item, Twentie pieces of Armour, and as

many Targets garnished with flight feathersof the devices and colours as they are pictured. Item, Foure great Traxes of wood, of the bign ff- of

those before full of Maix, Frifales, Chian, and Guantly. All the which they tributed once a yeere? The Townes, Oculan, Tenantinco, Tequaloyan, Tenatinho, Contepet, Zincozcar.

THe number of the townes pictured are three. And they paid tribute as tolloweth, First, 1200. burthens of great white Mantles of Enequen, A B C.

50 wrought Mantles of Enequen , all the which they tributed every fixe mo-



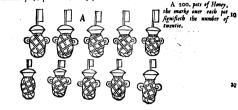
Item, They tributed once a yeere eight great Troxes of wood, of the bigneffe aforefaid, two of Maiz, two of Frifoles, two of Chian, and two of Guantly. The towner were Malynalco, Zonpahnacan, Xocositlan.

60 THe number of the Townes following are ten, of a hot Countrey, and they paid tribute as

First, 400. burthens of rich Mantles made of Cotton-wooll, of the worke as they be pictured. Item, 400. burthens of Naguas and Huipiles. Item, 1200. burthens of white Mantles of fmooth and fafe Enequen. All the which they did tribute every fix moneths.

lism, 200. pots of Bees Honey. Item, 1200. Xearas varnished Yellow. Item, 400. Baskets of white Copale to perfumes. Item, 8000. lumpes of varefined Copale years in the leasues of a Palme tree. All the which they tributed entry 400. days. Item, You pieces of Armour, and as many Targetts garnished with rich feathers, of the deute and colour as they are pictured. Item, Two great Traver of wood of the bignessed those aforesaid, full, the one of Mase, and the other of Chasa. All the which they doe tribute once a yeere.

The Townes are, Tlackee, Acampixilabuacan, Chontalcoatlan, Teticpae, Nochtepee, Teotizztee can, Tlamacazapan, Tepezabnalco, Tzicapuçalco, Tetenanco.





B 400. Baskets of Co. pall refined.



C 8000, humps of Capall variefued, wrapped in the leaves of a Date Tree: the typer Figure figurifies the Copall, the later (like a Purse with three Tessels annexed) is the Coardier of eight thou. fand, as before in the special, 40 of Paper is seen.

The number of the Townes of the hot Countrey pictured, are fourteene Townes. And they paid tribute as followeth,

First, 400, burthens of quilted Mantles, Item, 400, burthens of Mantles striped with blacke and white. Item, 400, burthens of rich Mantles. Item, 400, burthens of Nagues and Hospits. Item, 400, burthens of white Mantles, Item, 1600, burthens of great Mantles. All the which they did this energy fix months.

they did tribute every fixe moneths.

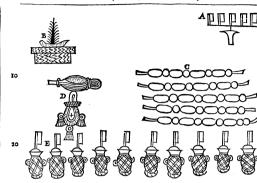
**Item, They tributed 100, Hatchets of Copper. **Item, 1200, **Xearast of yellow varnish. **Item, 200, posts of Bees Honey. **Item, 400. little baskets of white Capadion Pertiumes. **Item, 8000. Limps of Copad variefined, which was spent likewise for Persumes. **All the which they tributed

Item, Two pieces of Armour, with their Targets garnished with rich feathers of this deuice, as they be pictured. Item, Twentie pieces of Armour with their Targets, garnished with slight feathers.

teathers. Item, Fine flings of rich Bead-flones, which they call [balchibnit]. Item, Foure great Trotem, Fine flings of rich Bead-flones, which they call [balchibnit]. Item, Foure great Trotes of wood, of the bigneffe of those before full of Maic, Frifeles, Chian, and Guantly, all the

which they tributed once a yeere.

The Townes names are Tepequacuileo, Chilapan, Ohnapan, Huttzeco, Tlachimalacae, Totllan, 60
Cocolan, Arlahmiztlan, Chilacachapan, Teligrapan, Octoma, Tebelistopan, Alahmiztlan, Cueçalan.



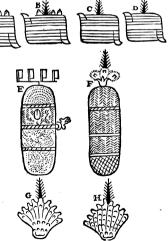
A The Hatchets, the forme below, the number above each signifying 20. B 400 little Easkets of white Copall, C Fine strings of stones. D 8000 lumps of Copall wreefined, E 200 Posts of Honey.

The number of the Townes of the hot Countreies pictured, and incituded in the next diufion, are twelue. And they paid tribute as follow-

First, fixteene hundered burthens of great Mantles, hited with Orangetawnie, as is feene in the letters A B C D each marked

50 400. Item, 1400 burdens of great Mantles of twifted yarne. Item, 400. burthens of Cacao, of brown colour, as in letter E. Item., 400. packes of Cotton-woell,

Comarked Letter F. Item, 400. Conchas, which are red fiels of the Sea, (mar-



the Sea. (ware ked G II. each 400.) after the falhion of Veneras, all the which they tributed entry fixe moneths.

XXXX 2





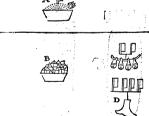
	D []
Α	
	1
В	
C	
С	
С	
С	

THe number of the Townes, of the hot Countreyes pictured following are 14. and they payed tribute as followeth. First, 400. burthens of Nasuarand Huipiles. Item, 400. burthens of Mantles In ftriped with red. Item, 800. barthens of great Mantles, Item, 800. Xicaras, which they call Tecomates of the best, wherein they drinke Cacao, all the which they tributed euery fixe moneths. Item, Two pieces of Armour, with their Targets garnished with rich feathers of the deuice and colour as they are pictured.

Item, Twenty Xicaras full of Gold in powder, and every Xicara might con-20 tayne two handfuls, with both hands let-

Item, tenne Plates of Gold of foure fingers broad, and three quarters of a yard long, and as thicke as Parchment figured heere, A B C, all the which they tributed once a veere.

The townes names Tlapan, Xocatlan, Tebeatepecpan, Amaxac, Abnacatla, Acocozpan Toalan, Ocoapan, Huitzamela, Asuitlapan, Malynaltepes, Totomixtlahussan. 30 Tetenanco, Chipetlan.



He towne named, is called I Tlalcocauhtulan, a hotte towne with the other feuen townes in the first partition, did #0 pay tribute as followeth. First, 400. burthens of great

Mantles. Item, 100, pots of Bees hony. Item, Twentie pannes of Tecocabuit!, which is a yellow varnish wherewith they painted themselues (here figured, Letter A) which they tributed every fix moneths.

Item, A piece of Armour with a Target garnished with rich feathers, which they tributed once

The Townesare, Tlalcocanhtitlan, Tolymany, Quanhtecoma, Tebeatlan, Tepozitilan, Achnaçiçinco, Mitzinco, Cacatla.

The Townes pictured and intituled in the fecond partition, are fixe, and they being of a hot Countrey, tributed as followeth.

Firit, 400. burthens of great Mantles. Item, Fortie great Belles of Copper. Item, Foure Copper Hatchets : both represented in the Picture, C Beis D Hatchets.

CHAP.7. \$ 2. Mexican bistorie in pictures. Tributes paid to Mexico.

Item. One hundred Pots of Bees Honie : all the which they tributed enery fix moneths. In tem, A peece of Armour with a Target of rich Feathers. Kem, A little Panne full of imall Turkels Stones : figured letter B. All the which they tributed once a yeare.

The Townes names are Quianbrespin, Olynalan, Quanhtecomatia, Qualac, Tebeatla,

ICQ2

THE Townes pictured and intituled in the third partition, are fix Townes of the hot Countrie; and they did tribute as followeth.

First, 400, burdens of great Mantels: Item, 100. Pots of Bees Honie, which they tributron, 100. Nonether, Item, A pecceid fromour within Target gaminds with rich Fea-thers, of the denice and colour as it is picketed. Item, Fortic Plates of Gold, of the bignelle of a Cake, and a finger thicke, figured letter F. Each Cake with his vane intimating twen-ty. Item, Tenne halte faces of rich blew Turkey Scones.

Item, A great Truffe full of the faid Turkey Stones; figured letter F. All the which they tributer once a yeare.

apan, Patlanalan , Txicayan , Tchçaa-The fixe Townes are Yoshepec, Zhuacaleo , Tallat toyac.

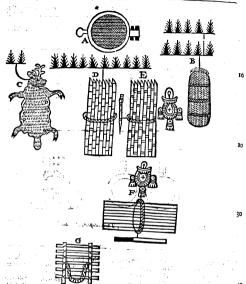
He number of the Townes following are fix, and this paid tribute as followeth. First, 800 burdens of great Mantels, which they tributed eithry fix moneths. Item, they tributed ted two peeces of Armour with their Targets garnified with rich Feathers of the colours as 40 they are pictured. Item, Eight great Troxes, of the bigneffe of those before, full of Maiz, Frizoles, Chian, and Guantly. Item, Foure great Troxes of wood, of the faid bignesse, full of Maiz, All the which they tributed once a yeare. The Townes are Chalco, Tecmiles, Tepuzzlan, Xeceyoltepec, Malynaltepec, Quanxumulco.

He number of the Townes of the hot Countries pictured in the next partition are two and twenty : and in every Towne there was placed Mexican calpingues, and the fame order, rule, and gouernment as in the other Townes and Prouinces heretofore declared. And so is it to 50 be understood was the state and government of all the other Townes hereafter named, though for breuities fake it is not rehearled any more. And the things which thefe Townes did pay for

tribute to the Lords of Mexico, are these following.

First, They tributed 4000 burdens of Lime. Item, 4000 burdens of Massie Cane States; which they called Otlatl. Item, 8000. burdens of Canes, whereof the Mexicans made Darts for the wars. Item, 800. Deere Skins. Item, 8000. burdens of Acayatl, which are Perfumes which the Indians vie for the mouth. Item, 200. Cacaxtles, which are frames like to Pannels, where with the Indians carry burdens on their backes : all the which they tributed enery foure dayes. Item, Foure great Traxes of wood of the measures and greatnesse of those before declared, full, two with Mair and two with Prifales, the which they tributed once a yeare.

60 The Townes names are Tepeacan, Questilate, Tecamachaite, Acazineo, Trealeo, Tecobinaneo, Quantimechan, Christian, Qualtatanhean, Tepixie, Texucan, Quantimechan, Teomochinian, Quantimechan, Christian, Quantimechan, Teomochinian, Huechneilan, Tetenanco, Coat-Teopanilan, zanco, Xpatlan, Nacochilan, Chiltecpintlan, Ozeotlapechco, Atezeahnacan. Xxxx 3



A Marget and Club which they resed for a Sward, garnished with Rasors points. B 4000. burthens of Lime. C 800. Deere skinnes. D 4000. burthens of Cane Stanes. E 8000. burthens of Canes to make Darts. F 8000. burthens of Acayetl. G 200. Cacaxtles.

The number of the Townes of the warme and temperate Countries pictured and intimled in the next figures are cleuen and that which they did tribute followeth.

First, 400. burdens of quilted Mantels of rich worke. Item, 400. burdens of Mantels striped 50 red and white. Item, 400. bur Jens of Mantels striped red and blacke.

Item, 400, burdens of Maxtlaetl, which ferued the Indians for little cloathes, or

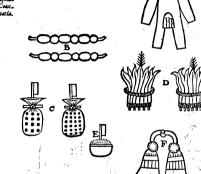
liem, 400. burdens of Guipiles, and Naguas. All the which they tributed to the Lords of Mexica every fix moneths.

Item, They tributed two pieces of Armour, and as many Targets, garnished with rich Feathers, of the colours and deuifes as they are pictured; letter ...

Item, Two ftrings of the Bead-ftones of Chalchibmitl; rich Stones, greene : letter B. Item, 800. hands full of large and rich greene Feathers, which they call Quecaly, letter D. Item, A peece of Tlalpilony of rich Feathers, which ferued for a royall Banner, of the fashion pictured : 60

Item, Fortie facks of Graine, which they call the Graine of Cochmilla: Letter C. Item, Twenty Xuaras of Gold in dust, of the finest : letter E. All the which they tributed once CHAP.7. S.2. Mexican bifforie in pictures. Tributes paid to Mexico.

The Townes names are Conyx tlahuacan, Texopan , Tamaço!adan Zancuitlan, Tenzeninian . Nochiztlan, Xaltepec, Tamaçolan Mittlan, Coax. 10 omalo, Cuicatla.



The number of the Townes of warme and temperate Countries, pictured and entituled in the next dinision, are eleven Townes : And they tributed as followeth. First, They did tribute 400, burchen of quilted Mantels of nich worke. Item, 800. burchens

of great Mantels, the which they tributed to the Lords of Mexico every fix moneths. Item They tributed foure great Troxes of wood, of the bignesse of those aforesaid, full, two of them with Maiz, another with Frifeles, and another with Chian. Item, Twenty plates of fine Gold of Gold. the bigneffe of a middle difh, and an inch thicke: letter A. Item, Twenty fackes of Graine of Cochinilla: letter Cochinilla: B. All the which they did tribite once a yeare. The Townes are Corolan, Etlan, Quanxilogitlan, Guanxacac, Camotlan, Teseuntatian, Quautzontepec, Octian, Teicpac, Tinicuechahnayan, Machilxochic.

> Lachquiarico, Achiotlan, and Capot-Warme Coun-Councies, And the things which they did tribute to the Lords of Mexico, are thefe that fullow First, 4 burdes of great Mantels, which they did tribute every fix moneths. Item, They tributed a piece of Armor with a Target, garnished with rich Peathers of the cofours motured.
>
> Item, Twenty Xicaras full of the Gold Gold. in powder : letttr . Item, Fine Sacks of Graine of Cochinilla : letter D. Cochinilla Item, 400. hand fuls of rich greene Feathers, which they call Quegaly : letter C

at the which they tributed once a yeare.

Emerald

Amber.

Criffall.

THe number of the Townes of warme and temperate Countries, pictured and incituded in the next figure, are two and twentie. And the things which they did tribute to the Lords of Mexico, are thefe that follow.

First, they did tribute 1600, burthens of rich Mantels, apparell which the Lords and Casianes did weare. Itom, 800. burthens of Mantels lifted with red, white, and greene. Item, 400. burthens of Nagnas and Hupiles : all the which they tributed every fixe moneths. Item, They tributed a piece of Armour with a Target garnished with rich feathers, with this deuice of a Bird and colours'as are pictuited letter A. Item, a Target of gold, letter B. Item, a deuice for Armour like a wing of rich yelldw feathers, letter O. Item, a Diadem of gold of the fashion as is picturedletter D. Item, a border of gold for the head of a hand breadth, and of thicknesse as parchreal eter D. 1100, a power of goat or the nearbor a land or dealer, and or the sheet as parch-ment, letter E. 1600, evaluating of Beades, and a collar of gold F. G. 1100, three great rich of flones of Chalebbird H. I. K. 1100, three three great or touch beades not flones of Chalebbird. L. M. N. 1100, forthe frings of beades of Echalebrinds, roth Romes. 1100, when the Expers of cleere Amber garnifhed with gold, letter T. Item, other ewentie Begotes of Beriles or criftall V. cieer a more garming wing golg, elected 1. 1000, ounexwerne negative of strike or circlal 1. 1000, So. handfuls of green gich feathers, which they call Quegaly 10. 1100, four pieces of green rich feathers like hands full, garnished with yellow rich teathers 1. 100, 1100 hands full of rich greene feathers c. Item, 100. Pots or Cauters of fine liquid Amber d. Item. 200. burthens of Cacao, letter Z. Irem, 1600. round lumps like balls of Oh, which is a gumme

of trees, and caffing the faid balls on the ground, they doeleape vp very high, letter X, all the which they tributed once a yeete. The Townes are Tochtopec, Xajaco, Ollahtlan, Coçamaloapan, 20 Mixtlan, Michapan, Agetzintepec, Michtlan, Teorilan, Oxillan, Tzynacanoztoc, Tototepec, Chinantlan, Ayogmtepec, Cuezcomutitlan, Puetlan, Tetentlan, Txmatlatlan, Ayotlan, Toztlan,

30 60

CHAP.7. S.2. Mexican bistorie in pictures. Tributes paid to Mexico.

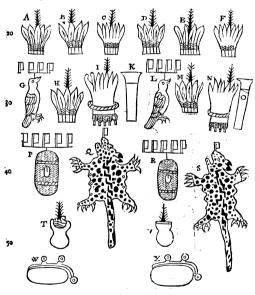
He number of the Townes of the warme Countries, pictured and intituled in the next partition are eight. And the things which they tributed to the Lords of Mexico, are thefe First, two great strings of Chalchibnit! rich stones. Item, 1400, handfuls of rich feathers

blue, red, greene, turkefed, red and greene, as they are pictured in fix handfuls, A B C D E F. Item. Foure whole skinnes of birds of rich turkeled feathers, with murry breafts, of the colours as they are pictured G. Item, other foure whole skinnes of the faid birds L. Item, 800. handfuls of rich vellow feathers H M.

Item, 850, hands full of large rich greene feathers, which they call Quecaly I N. Item, Two Becotes of cleere Amber garnished with gold K O. Item, 200. burthens of Cacao P R.

Item, Fortie Tigres skinnes Q S. Item, 800. rich Tecomates wherein they drinke Cacao T V. Item. Two great pieces of cleere Amber of the bigneffe of a bricke W X. All which they Ambere tributed enery fixe moneths.

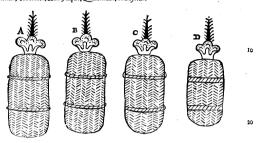
The Townes names are Xoconoches, Oyotlan, Coyoacan, Mapachtopec, Macatlan, Haiztlan, Acapetlatlan, Huchnetlan.

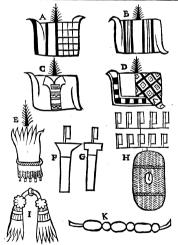


66 THe number of the Townes of warme and temperate Countryes in the next picture, are fouch. And the things that they tributed to the Lords of Mexico, are these that

First, 400. burthens of great Mantels, which they tributed every fixe moneths. Item, Twentie burthens of Cacao.

Item, 1600. Packs of Cotton wooll (represented A B C D. each marked foure hundred) Cotton wooll. all the which they tributed once a yeere. The Townes are Quantiocheo, Tembcolizapotlan, Tototlan, Tuchconco, Ahnilyzapan, Quanhtetelco, Ytzteyocan.





THe number of the towns of warme & temperate Countries are fixe, in the next figure. And the things which they tributed to the 30 Lords of Mexico, are thefe that follow.

First, 400. burthens of Guipiles & Naguas, which is womens apparell A. I. tem, 400. burthens of Mantels halfe quilted C. Item, 400, burthens of litle Mantels, with a white & black edge B. Item , 400. bur- 10 thens of Mantels of foure Bracas euery Mantell, halfe litted with black & white, and halfe after the fathion of net vvorke of blacke and white D. Item, 400. burthens of great white Man. tels, of foure Bracas every Mantell. Item, 160. burthens of very rich Mantels wrought, apparell for the Lords & Cafiques. Item, 1003 burthens of Mantels lifted more with white then with blacke : all the which they tributed every fixe moneths. Item, Two rich pieces of Armor with their targets garni'hed with rich

feathers, according as they are pictured. Item, A ftring of Chilchibnil rich ftones K. Item, 400. handfull of rich large greene feathers, which they call Quegaly E. Item, Twentie Begores of Be. 60 reles or Criffall fhadowed blue, and fet in gold F. Item, Twentie Begotes or cleere Aniber garnithed with gold G. Item, 200. burthens of Cacao H. Item, a Quezuiclaspitans of rich greene feathers of Quezust, which served to the Lords of Mevice for a Royall Entigne, of the making as it is pictured I. All the which they tributed once a year..

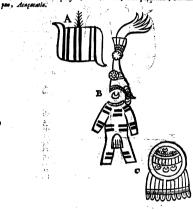
CHAP.7. \$.2. Mexican biftorie in pictures. Tributes paid to Mexico.

The Townes are Cuetlaxtlan, Mictlanguanhila, Tlapanicytlan, Oxichan, Acoza pan , Teoriocan.

He number of the Townes, contayned, pictured, and intituled in the next division. are feven Townes. And the things which they tributed to the Lords of Mexico, are these that follow.

First, 400, burthens of Mantels listed blacke and white A. Item, 800, burthens of great white Mantels , the which they tributed every fixe moneths .-

liem, They tributed once a yeers two pieces of Armour with their Targets, garnished with rich feathers of the deuice and forts as they are pictured. B Armour C Shield.
The Townes are Tlapacoyan, Xolomochislan, Xochiquanheislan, Tuchtlan, Cenque, Arna-

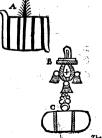


The number of the Townes pictured next are e-leuen. And the things which they tributed to the Lords of Mexico, are these that follow.

First, 1600, burthens of Mantels listed blacke and white A. Item, 8000. loaues or lumps of liquid Amber for perfumes , which they call Xochiococot! (B is 8000. C the lump of Amber) all which they tributed enery fixe moneths.

Item , They tributed two pieces of Armour with their Shields, garnished with rich feathers, of the fashion as they are pictured , which they tributed once a yeere.

The Townes are Tlatlanhquitepec, Atenco, Teznitlan, Aynencheo, Tayanquitlalpa, Xonocela, Teotlalpan, 60 Tiztepec, Txcoyamec, Taenahuac, Caltepec,

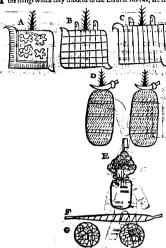


Criftall,

Pepper.

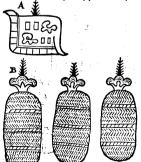
Precious

The number of the Townes pictured and entituded in the next fide are fency Townes, And the things which they tributed to the Lords of Mexico, are these which follow.



First, 400. burdens of Mantels like nets of black and white, B. Item, 400 burdens of rich Mantel wrought, red and white, Lords apparell A. Lien, 400 hurdens of Man-tiatie, which feruel for Io fmall cloathes. Item, 400. burdens of great white Mantels of foure bracas a peece. Item, 800.burdens of Mantels of eight bracas a pecce, lifted orange tawmis and white. Item, 400. Mantels, of eight bracas a Mantell. Item, 400.bur- 20 dens of Mancels Lifted with greene, yellow, and red, letter C. Isem, 400. burdens of Naguas & Guipiles. Item, 240. burdens of rich Mantels wrought with red, white & blacker very curious, wherewith the Lords and Calignes were cloathed, all the 30 which apparell they tributed every fix moneths. Item, They tributed two pieces of Armour, with their Targets, garnished with rich Feathers of the fash ion as they are pictu-

red, Item, 800. burdens of dry Anton West Indian Pepper. D. Item, 200. kets of small white Feathers wherewith they trimmed Mantels. E. Item, Two strings of Chalchbimid rich Stones. Item, One string of Beades of rich Turkey Stones F. Item, Two pieces like Plat-40 ters decked or garnished with rich Turkey stones. G. All the which they tributed once a yeare. The towns names art Turkey, Tarkingsus, Cibenter, Mantila, Declarage, Matilia,



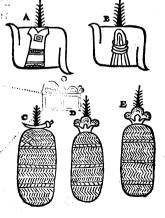
A Tion and Triepseities take *pp Abext distinct, which they did go tribute to the Lord of Mexics Fift, 800, burdens of rich Mantels wrought ead and white, with an edge of green, red, yellow, and blew. A. tiem, 400, burdens of Mexicall, 1 tem, 400, burdens of Mexicall, 1 tem, 400 burdens of great white Bantels, of four braces a Mantell; all the which they tributed enery fix months. A tem, They tributed once a years 1200, packed of Octen Woll.little. B.

THe Towne of Oxitipen, did tribute to the Lords of Mexico,
First, 2000 Journelm of great Mantels,
of two bratas 2 Mantell, Hem, 800.
De burdens of great Mantels, Hifed wich
yellow, blew, red, and greene, of fourbraces Mantell, All the which sppared they tributed enery fix months.
Hem, They tributed out you know the
Add, which is their Pepper A. J.
tom, Al line Engle, and fomenimes two
or three, as ettey could catch them.
B. All the which they tributed once
a yeare.



Thiesee. Middless, Cocacassian, Tebatter and Yasyona, paid their tributes to the Lords: of Mexice. First, 400. burdens of white Mantels with their edge of ved, blew, greene and yellow. Hem, 400. burdens of Fer cloathes B. Hem, 800. burdens of great white Mantels of thee briess eury Mantell. Hem, 400. burdens of Negue and Huppter, which is womans

through the Manager and Hoppites which they tributed energy fix moneths, them, they tributed one of the Manager and the Manage



Yyyy

d. III.

ð. III.

The third part of this Booke containeth the private behaviour in Mariages, education of Children, and Trades: with the Martiall, Ecclesiastike, and Civill policie of the MEXICAN people.

Relation of the manner and cuttome that the naturall Maximus had when either a boy or Girle was bopn visio them? The vie and ceremonites in gitting names to their and the content of the

warres, according as by the inclures is fignified, and briefly declared.

The Woman being delicted, they laid that hilde in a Cradle, according as is pictured, & foure daves after the birth of the childe the Midwife tooke it in her armes naked, & brought it forth to the yard of the childe wives hoult and in the yard were prepared Bultushes or Sedges, which A kinde of they call Take, and they for your them altitude pan by water, wherein the faid Midwire walked Baptime with the talking the talk think of the talk of the talk



A Thewomen that is delinered, B Thefe fours Rofes famile fours dages wherein the Midwife brought from the childs then was lastly borne to mafe. C The tradele with the childe. D The Mid-wife. E The figure, infirement, and the boad (Shield and Darr): F G H the three Bear which for name the childe. I The Buirushes with the pan of mater. K The Broome. L The Spindell and the Distaffe. M The Basket. N The high Priest. O The childe in his cradle which his Parents offer in the Temple. P The Master or Teacher of boyes and youg men. Q The childes Father. R The childes Mether.

ready, was set in a little pan before the said Boyes, that they might eate it. And after the said bathing or washing, the said Midwife aduertised the said Boyes, that they should with a loud voice give a new name vnto the childe that she had so washed, and the name that they gave it was that which the Midwife would impose.

When the childe was brought forth to wash, if it be a man childe they bring him forth with his figne in his hand, and the figne is the Instrument wherewith his Father did exercise himselfe, as well in the Military art, as other arts, as of a Goldsmith, a Grauer, or any other office whatsoe uer: And after they had done all the aforefaid, the Midwife brings the childe to his Mother. And if it be a woman-childe, the figne wherewith they bring her to wash, is a Distaffe, a Spindel, To a Basket, and a handfull of Broome; which are the things wherewith the should exercise her felfe, being of age thereto.

And the bond of the Manchilde with a Shield and Darts for a figne which he brings with him when they bring him for to wash; they offer it to that part and place where are likely to happen warres with his enemies, where they burie it under ground. And so likewise of the Womanchilde, her bond they buried vnder the Metate, which is a stone to grinde Cakes vpon.

And after the aforesaid, at the end of twenty dayes, the childes Parents went with the childe Presentation to the Temple or Mixquita, which they called Calmecae, and in the prefence of the Priefts in the Temple they presented the childe with his offering of Mantels, and Mastelles and some meate: And after the childe being brought vp by his Parents, and being of age, they committed the childe to 20 the high Priest of the faid Temple, because there he might be taught that hereafter he might be

And if the childes Parents were determined that he (being of age) should ferue in warlike affaires, then straight way they offered him to the Maiter thereof, making him a promite of him (the Master of Boyesand yong men they ealled Tenebeanch or Telpuchilate) which offering was made with his present of meare and other things for the celebrating thereof. And the childe being of age, they committed him to the faid Master.

He declaration of the pictures contained in the deutifion following, wherein is declared at what age, and in what manner the raturall Parents did give countell to their children, how they ought to liue, as facceffuely a pictured in foure partitions, and so the foure partitions of this side are declared in order which are these that follow.

I The first partition, whereit is declared how that the Parents corrected their children, in giuing them good counfell when they were three years of age; and the portion of meate that they gaue them enery meale was halfe a cake of bread.

2 The second partition wherein is pictured in what things the Parents did instruct their children when they were of the age of four yeares, and how they began to exercise them to ferue in small things. And the portion of meate which they gaue them at a meale, was a 40 whole Cake.



A The Boy his Father. B Three yearst of age. C The Boy. D Haife a Cale. E The Gulden Mather. F Haife a Cale. GA Girle of three yearst of age. H The Father of the Boy. I ABoy of four-created age. K A Cale. L The Mather of the Girl. M. A Cale. N. A Girle of four-press of age. K of Cale. L The Mather of the Girl. M. A Cale. N. A Girle of four-press of age. A Spindell mith a lacke of cotten world hing on a Mat.

1104

2 The third partition, wherein is shewed that the Parents did exercise their children in bodily labour at five yeares of age, in loding their Sonnes with Wood and other things in finall burdens, of small weight, and to carry packes of small weight to the Tyangues, or Market place. And they exercised their Daughters of that age, in shewing them how they should handle the Spindell and Diffaire for to Ipin. And their allowance of meate was a whole Cake of Bread.

4 The fourth partition, wherein is pictured how the Parents instructed their children of fix yeares old, and exercised and occupied them in bodily service, that they might profit their Parents in fome thing, as in the Tyangues, which are Market-places that they might gather from the ground, the cornes of Maiz and Frifeles that were fpile there by him, and other small things that the buyers and others had left and toll there. And this was the Boies worke. But the Gitles were put to fpinne and to doe other profitable feruices, because in time to come, by meanes of the faid feruices and occupations, they should not spend their time idelly, and should avoide cuill vices that are wont to grow through idlenesse. And the allowance of meate that they gave to their children was a Cake and a halfe of Bread.



Q A Cake, R O The Father of the Boyes . P Two Boyes of fine yeares of age Q A Cake. R . A Cake. S The Mother of the Girle holding the Spindle and Rocke. T A Cake. V A Girle of fine years old. W The Father of the two Boyes. Two Boyes offix yeares old. X A Cake and a balfe, X The mother of the Girle. Z A Cake and a balfe. A Girle of fix yeares old freming Cotten wooll

Declaration of the figure following, wherein is shewed, at what age and in what things the naturall people of Mexico did instruct their children, and in what manner they corrected them, that they thould avoide all idlenetic, and alwayes should be exercised in some profitable things, asflicceffinely is pictured in foure partitions.

I The first partition, wherein is pictured how the Parents vie their children of seuen yeares old that is the men children they applyed them in giuing them their fishing Nets. And the Mothers did exercise their Daughters in spinning and in giving them good counsell that they should alwayes apply and occupie their time in doing some thing for to avoide idlenesse. And the allowance of meate that they game to their children at enery meale was a Cake and a halfe of



K'The Father of the Byer. B Thefe fewer four of them figurific fewer yeares. C F A Cute and a 60 halfs. D A Boy of fewer neares old money Father formet him book be found fifth with the band. his hand. E The mother of the children. G A Girle of fenen yeares old, who fe mother is teaching

3 The fagord partition. Wherein is pictured, how the Parents slid challen their children of the age of sighty evers, in lying before them with terms and teases that the more of the factors, that in being negligeous and dishedener, to their Parents they though bee, shallow them is failed shortes, and, he for they found they have a subject to the position is figured. And their allowance for a meate, which they gave them by meature, was a Clake and a halfo.

1. 3 . The third partition, Wittein is pictured, how the parents punified shakehilden of nine yeers of age, because they were disobedient and schollens to their fathers, they did that this them with the faid thornes of Magnes, binding them taked hand and thos, they birult the faid chorne into their body and faulters. And they picked and the writes and hands of the 10 Challes with the fault through, a sain, the faul gent cannot problemed. And their allowance musy meals was a Challes of the fault of thread with a continuous and the fault of the fault was a Challes of the fault of the fault of the fault was a Challes of the fault of the fau

yeares of age, that is being rebellious they did challife them in beating them with a miggell, and threatning them otherwise aganche fourth persition is pictured, And the allowance which they had given them at a meale, was a Cake and a halfe.



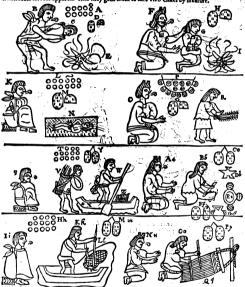
H The father of the children emtayned in this row. I Those eight spots signific eight speres. K N a cake and a baile. L a Boy of eight speres id, whole father in threatning him that he be not embapy, because he will chassisc him in thrusting thornes of Magnetinia his body. M The mother of the chilercease on was sensite to me a company women's prougacement and one, and we move of the character consequent in the row. I. O Thorns of Maguez. Pa Girls of eight paren eld phome ber muster 50, shreatnesh bor was thorness of Maguez, that four bor not substance. O The father of the children consequed in this falls. R.W. a Cabe and a balf. S. Thofe ince fast figure in my server. I a Boy of mine years and, because the circumvestible, bis father thrustands thorness of Maguez into his body. V The mother of the children contayned in this row. X a Girle of nine yeeres old, that for her negli-V the motion of the construction may now that you. A. A quit of some peters out tool for an eight-gence and identifie, her mother did chaffife bether of the chaffer contamed in this towns of Maguert. Y Thefe tensifiest, fraging ten years, X The father of the chaffer contamed in this row. Z B a cake and abuff. A. The mother of the children contamed in this row. & a Boy of ten years old, whom his anun ung ex von a moncer oj voc contaren contapnea in toje rom. & a Boj of ten yeeres old whom his father is choffing with a cudgell fluffe. C. a Girla of ten yeeres, whom her mother is challifung in bea-ting her with a tudgell fluffe.

Declaration of the first partition of the picture following. The Boy or Girle of eleuen A Declaration of the first partition of the picture rollowing. The 200 of the parents did veeres old, which would not bee reformed with wordes nor stripes, their parents did chaftife, giving them into the Nose the smoke of Axi, which was a grieuous and cruell torment. to the intent they should be reformed and not be vicious persons and vagabonds, but should employ and ipend their time in profitable things. And to the children of that age they gaue bread, which are cakes, by measure, only a cake & a halfe at a meale, because they should not be gluttons. Тууу з

2 In the freeond partition; The Boy or Girle of the age of twelve yeares, which would not rectine quietly counfell nor correction at their Fathers hands; the Father tooke that Boy and tyed him hand and foot naked, and firetchedhim on the ground in a divirie wer place, where he lay fo a whole day, because he Boudl be chaffield and feared thereby. And the Girle of this age, 1802 Rother made he frency, En that in the night be before it were day fore final of briege all the back and the firete, and that alwayes shee might be occupied in bodily fenion. And fo likewise that Parents gue them meat by mediare a Cake and a shelfer every made.

3 In the third particion, the Boy or Girle of thirreene yeeres old, their Fathers employed in bringing wood from the Mountaine, and with a Canoa-boat to bring boughs and other herby for the fertuce of the house. And the Girles thould grinde and make Cikes and other meater his for their Parents. And they gave their children meat by mediate, two Cakes carry meale.

4 In the fourth partition; The Boy or Girle of fourteen yeters old, their Parents did imploy in fifting in Lakes and Rivers with his Canoa, And the Girle was fet to weate yarm of whatfower for for apparell. And they gaue them to eate two Cakes by medium.



A The clean (1907) that (1906) the construct. B The fallow of the children. C a by of faring year als, which form is delight from prodespore and an experiment in the child. B c clean along E of form prodespore are reported in the children. The control of the children is the children. C a climate from your and, which the Court hash not for well expected. For the makes of the children. C a climate from your and, which was the children. L to make the children. L who there will be children. L worker years. M a Cade and while, N a Boy of modespores all, yet hand and for and laid while the children. L toward years. M a Cade and while, N a Boy of modespores all, yet hand and for and laid while the last write and make growth. P the pullment grighting the night. R a Grid of which is formed a bolf. R a Grid of which is created had made from the children. Therefore years. A so is control before his come. X a case any district of the children of L Court of the C. Y. Through, A a The makes of the children. B be a climed district supers, which applies and J. Court of the C. Y. Through and the children. K is the super furniture years in the product of the children which cases. M m Two Cakes. N n The pulme for the Children. K is L in a 1907 (furniture years in the Children of Court of the Court of the Children which cases. M m Two Cakes. N n The makes, O n a Gail of furniture years in The

"Hat which is pictured in the first parettion, doth signific that the Father having two some young men, of yee're able to serve, brought them to the two houses that are pickured, either to the Matthes house that as deep house the state when the same when the server is the same house that did repeated their either to the high Priest, or elle to the Matthes of Boyes to the end they might be taught; the youth being stiften weren of server to the Matthes of Boyes to the end they might be taught; the youth being stiften weren of server.

An the focuse function is pickined, the manner and law they had and kept in their Mariage that they made lawfully. The celebration therefor was, that an Assaying (which is a Brokes) carried the Byde on her becke at the beginning of the fright, and their wene with them focus women with Torches of Pine-tree rolined burning; where with they had being come to the Bridgerome cane can exceed the being come to the Bridgerome cane can exceed the Coart of the house to resente her; and they carried her most stall of fome place wherethe Bridgerome carried for her. And the betterchet folkes were fifteen Mar with their fastes neces pan of fire, and they tyed the onivous her other with a corner of their appitell, and made a pit from of Copule to their goal; and twice the other goal; and two do measured wood dwinten were preferred was mineral. Then the married folke dined, and afterwards the old folkes. And when dinner was done; the old men and women feparated the married folke by themselves, guing them good counted how they should behaus themselves aliue, and how they should behaus themselves and itse, and how they fhould measure you'd then, goal and the counter of the place and calking they had taken you them, that they might his swift quiesten.



A Th fadout place no poster. B a guest of filtums prove all committed to an high Alfamia or Print. C Thomsection, and the Print Print Program of the Thompse of the third prints of the control of the Co



Touthes which are laden with logs of wood for so keepe fire in

the Temple.

G A with

C'HAP.7. S.3. Exercises of Priests. Punishments Ded in Mexico.

I. WHen they entred to bee Priedlyn, the clide Briefly occupied him dring way in the body former for their Temples, that Africa way in the way in the body former for the Temples, that Africa way is the might be a dillall when they were cliefly further, that affects he way for sather had been a distributed by the property Nowices that bodd be aster them. These Briefly are all association and washed one to be the money.

ofter, Nowices that liquid the after them. I first, strains are all assumed, we allowed our ** Option main an object or straying the property of the strain and the strains are allowed to the strains are all force and the strains are allowed to the strains are all the strains a

editally dies laniate wards the oldfolies. And w. or diener are cone, the median lines A Time Individual gate on the part of the solution of the stream part is not Allion A Time Individual Solution and the part of the solution of the solution and the part of the solution of the solution and the part of the solution of the solution and the solutio that is charoed to sweep. B A nonice Priest that cometh from the wood lade with boughes for to dreffe the Temple. C Anonice Priest laden with thornes of Magnez, for to draw bloud with all to offer facrifice to the dewill. D.A nosice Priest mbich is laden with oreen cane for the Temple for to make States and Toe.E A voub which is laden with a great log to keepe fire in the Temple.

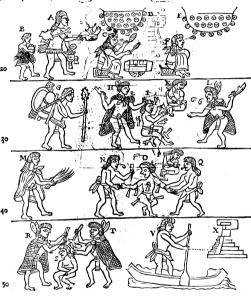


laden with boughes for to dreffe the Temple. H This chiefe Priest is qualifying the nonice Priest because be was negli-gest in his office. I The nonice Priest. K The chiefe Priest. L The nonice Priest M Another elder Priest Then. are pumiling this nature Frief, pricking him with home of Magnut throughout his body, because home a trickle and distinction and suggiare in to hat he was commanded to due. No This two fif pringing the hat provides Profit that to be he was commanded to due. No This two fif pringing to their provides to the hong to there twee days to they pumiling, distinct principles that the control of the principles and the trickle of the pumiling that the first principles are executed by the sum of the pumiling that the principles of the pumiling that of the pumiling that the principles are executed by the pumiling that warlike affairet, and to carrie him to the warret. R. The yeath who is publike frinant to the vullous man that goath to the warre with him, carrying his baggage on his backe with his owne Armonic S Teginna, william months go eth armed to the marres.

Eteis declared how the chiefe Priefts did exercife and occupie them felues in the night time, whereof fome occupied themselves in going to the Mountaynes, to offer farmine to their Gods, others in Muneke, and others were obseruers of time by the Starres of the Eiement, and others in other things of their Temples.

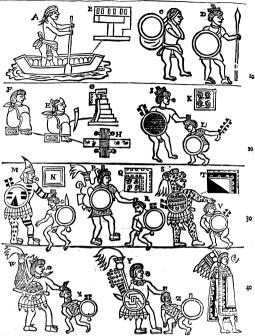
2 In the fecond partition is declared the punishment they did vie to the young men, according as the Pictures doe reprefent. The which was executed according to the Lawes and Statutes of the Lords of Mexico.

4 The punishment that the Beadles Telpuchslates did vie to the vicious young men, which went about like Vagabonds according to their Lawes, and the rest pictured and declared in the 10 fame partition.



A chiefe "rich which enth in the night with his fire burning to a Mountaine to doe penance. And hee carrieto in his hand a parle of Capaly, which is Perfume to offer Sacrifice to the Devill. And at his backe Porfor in a veffell for the fime Sacrifice, a partey (444), moto u exquant us gio state part von etwam, and una monace (1436 and usquant von general von general etwampe, and he cartelis has physics skiet to he get Sartifice. And had after dim a nature tript, but had and inframent after things the katefie. B. A nature tript. C. A chiefe trift, which is playing on the Teponacity, which and inframent of Musfire, and he exercisely himself-pleasant is the tight. D. This extile with high state for fight the hight. The West This William with the destruction with the forest of the Element by might, so lee what bourest is in the night, which whis charge and office. G A young man that goeth to warte, laden with finife and influences of A mour. H Telpuchtlato- I The youth. K I be woman. L Telpuchtlato The two Telpuchtlato, do fignifie Beadles to rule youths, that where any year is did failin lone with any woman, they challifed the young man, throwing burning fire brands at him, and parted their lout. M Achiefe Priest whose office is to sweepe the Temples, or command them to be sweet. N A chiefe Priest. O The nonice Prieft. P The woman. Q Achiefe Prieft. The declaration of the pictures of thefe two chiefe Prieftsu, that if the nonice Priest was negligent or had accesse to any woman, or fell in lone, he chiefe Priests did chefife him, thrusting thornes of Pine tree maie like prices m all bis body. R Telpuchtlino, a Beadle. S The young man. T Teach, auh, the Beadle. By their Pillures is acclured that if a young man ment about like a Vagabond, the two Beadles did correct him in ponling and findying his bead with fire. V A joung man that is occupied in carrying fiones with his Comon to repaire the Temfle. X The Temple.

There



This Picture expresses the Priesta employments. A A numic Priest scapical in carrying of Saust in this Causs, for the execution of the Temple. B The Temple cashed Nyumbeshy. C. A numic Priest temple to the water with a chief Priest corrying in package. D. A chiefe Priest that good to subject the Warrington, and under whom Corromatic in the Warrin.

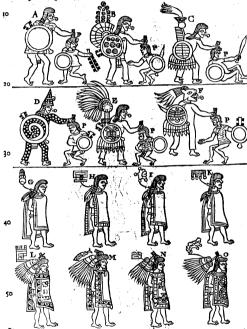
Cetemate in the Works.

Their Armas, which figues of Armes were made of more authoristic from degree to degree, according 2s the worthradic of the man of water was knowne, and the number of the Captiuse that they tooke. As is thewed fifth intentity in the Polluruse with their inject and Armes, and thishmost of state, and the degree whereby they came to be valuan men in Waters. The first degree.

E Teculyse, and and a subject of the Land of the Series. F An Officer that followed the Teculy, as his Sequent, O A Temple saled shimed to the Caption of the Land of the Series of the Series

E Teculyas, andable and inflict of the Land of Mexico. F. An Officer that followed the Teculy, a six its equat, of A Temple called Shinances, M. It he before my of their winh a landing of word. A syman men, who if he to two any Prilane in the waters, into gase thin for reserved a heasile of the fillens, of thoughout with his followers, in select of the advances of the Tech assigned to the time of Pollower flows, the the assigned in response the first selected than with the fillens of several to the the selected than with the fillens of several to the the time of the tech assigned to the fillens of several to the the several to the time of the several to the several to the time of the several to the several to the time of the several to the several t

The chiefe Priests did exercise warlike affaires, & according as they proued in valiant acts, and as the number of the Captimes were that they tooke, so the Lords of Mexico game them ticles of honour, and Blatons of Armes with deuters of their valantances, as is thewed by the Pictures, and by the Armer they haucen. In the third partition are the titles of honour, which they obeyaned by the exercise of war, whereby they came to a higher degree, the Lord of Mexico making them Captains and Generals of the Souldiers. And those of the one fide senue for Metiningers and Executioners of that which the Lords of Mexico determined and commanded, and in things touching, the Common-wealth of Mexico, as also no other towns of their dominions.

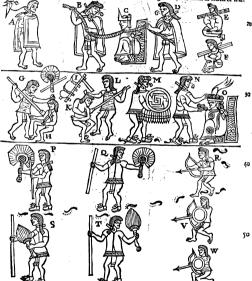


A A pink that expired one entitle in the warres. B The land Prink electrical hexaely be trade to recommiss in the warres, but a remarked with the date of Armone but has to. C The electric electrical pink in within-mell be trade three ments, he is trearded with the date of Armone he has no. P P P Caption. D The James Prink dough, descrip be to the four central in the warres, for a richer by the action of the armone with the date of Armone he has no as the armone that the device of Armone he has no. Bathe and white. E The James Prink located to took for a be seen in marries, for a tope of the standard with the dense of Armone he has no all real. F The first Prink for that he take fine our win in the warres, for a tope of the first and values, the Land of Mexico removale and the standard of the standard with the dense of Armone he has no all real. F The first Prink for that he take fine our win in the warres, for a tope of the first and values, the Land of Mexico removale, and the standard of t

The Cafigue (that is, a Lord of a Towne) because hee rebelled against the Lordship of Marko by the Executioners afore contayned, had a rope cast about his necke wherewith for his rebellion, he was condemned by the Lords of Marko to die, and his wife and children to be taken and brought printeness to the Court of Marko. And for the accomplishing of the condemnation the officers are executing the penalties wherein he was condemned as is fignished by the pictures.

2 He together with his feruants and towne are condemned to be defitogood, and to the Executioners, by the commandement of the Lords of Mexics, are giving him to vaderfland of the fail condemnation, in token whereof they marke him with the lignes that ney fer a his head, and the Target that they prefent him with because he flould not be ignorant of h. "fluedion, And the pickures of men with mortal wounds, doe fignise that they were Merchants and Occupiers of Mexics, which came with things to the Countrie and Towne of the fail Gessian; and the feruants of the Cast of the Cas

3 In the third partition: The foure Officers or Ambaffadors of the Lords of Mexico, doe fignific that they have warned the laid Cafigue contayned in the feccand partition before this, axis abouthaid, at the returning of the Executioners towards Mexico, there canps out to the high-way certains ferunts of the laid Cafigue to miffic-vfe them, shooring arrows at them in robes nof war.



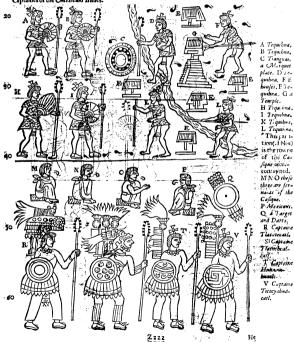
A Husenshustlan effore and executioner as a Sergeant. B Executioner. C Cafique. D'Executioner. E The wife of the Cafique imprifunctarith a syste of Iron about her necke. F The some of the Cafique taken prisoner with a syste of Iron. G The fortunent of the Cafique. M Executioner. N Executioner. O Cafique. P An Executioner of the Cafique. M Executioner. N Executioner. O Cafique. P An Executioner of the Cafique of the Cafique of the Cafique of the Cafique of the Cafique. W and Executioner of Ambalfidator of the Lard of Mexico. R a servant of the Cafique of the Cafique of the Cafique. W a servant of the Cafique which showed that the Ambalfidator of the Lard of Mexico. V a servant of the Cafique which showed that the Ambalfidator of the Lard of Mexico.

The Tequichna fignifieth Spies, lent to the Towne of the Cafique by the Lord of Mexico, that in the night time they might goe and walke it fecretly onknowne to their enemies, to adure if and gue warming voto the Souldiers, where they floud enter with the bataile. And fo the Tequichna goe round about the Towne, Houses, Market place, and Church, a
the time that they of the Towne are allepea and at reft, for to finde a place where they may give
the onset with the left touble and resistance.

CH A P.7. S.2. Mexican Spies, Warring, Captaines and Armes pictured.

A dec' ration of the pictures in the fecond partition. The Maxieus that is pictured and at his shoul 's sa Target and Darts, doth signific the Maxieus being moound to delitory a certaine Towne by warres, because they had rebelled against the Lordinp of Maxieu. And the otomether that are pictured and set over against the Maxieus are fermunt of the Grippe. which doe signifies that the whole Towne of the Grippe being affaid of the warres and definication that the Maxieus would bring upon them, they come to Maxieus or current a peace, submitting themselius for servantion of Maxieus, and protecting to acknowledge the Lordinp, by meanes whereof they receive them in friendship and for their feruants, laying adde that which was determined by their comfell.

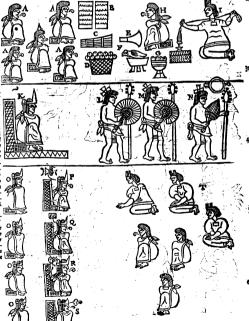
The foure valiant men pictured and intituled, with their Speares in their hands, and made readie for the warres, and the denices of Armour that they have on, doe fignific that they are Captaines of the Captaines armies.



HE that is let and at his backe a woman spinning, signifieth that it is his wife new married, and because he had taken the state of matrimonie vpon him, having been a Messenger with the rest that are pictured before him, which are fine, named Tespuchely, which are Messengers likewise. The married mangin per them a reason why hee leavest the charge of a Mellenger by reason of his marriage, and that hee will reft and leave off his fernice patt. And to please them more, and that they should grant his request, hee maketh them a banquet in guing them well to eate and drinke, and moreover the prefent that hee giveth them is a handfull of perfumes, a copper Hatchet and two Mantels, as by the pictures of these things are intituled. And by this folemnitie the married man is free from the faid Office.

2 In the second partition : Hee that is set downe and intituled, doth signifie the Lord of Mexico. that when any Messenger Telpuchtly pictured in the partition before this had given a good account of his office, and having taken upon them the flate of marriage, the Lords of Mexico from that they were but Meffengers, did promote them to a be ter title and degree, in so much that he made them Teguibna, which is signified by the pictures and titles of Tegubus, with their Speares and Fannes, giuing them authoritie to bee his Ambassadors and Officers in the warres, which they held for an office of great honour.

The Alcaldes doe ignific Iustices, appointed by the Lords of Mexico, that they should heare matters aswell Civill as Criminall. And the pictures of men and women which are before them, are Pleaders and Suitors which doe aske juffice. And the foure pictures that are intituled Teetly, shat are behinde the Alcalas. are principall young men that joyne with the Alealdes in their audience, to learne and infruct themselves in matters of ju gement, and afterwards to succeede in the Offices of the Alcaldes. From these Alcaldes, there was an appellation before the counfell Chamber of Moteguma, as hereafter is pictured.



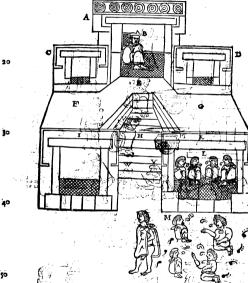
AAAAA The Telpuchtly or your men which are of ficers or messengers. B Two manzels. Cabandju of perfumes. DTamales or bread. E a copper hatchet. F a boyled hen. G Xicara with Ca-Tetpuchtly maried

I The wife of the maried Telpuchtly K The Lord of Mexico. L Te-N Te-OOO quibna. N Te-quibna. OOO Teelly. P Teelly Mixcoatlaylotlac a Iuflice life an Al-calde. Q Ezgua-gacatl Alcalde. R Acatiyacapanecatl
Alcalde. S Te-Alcalde. T Thefe of men and three of women, are plea-ders and fuitors

CHAP.J. S. a. Mexican Palace, Councell chambers and Royall magnificence.

THe fathion of the Counfell Chambers of the Lord or King of Mexico, and of his Royall Houses and Courts, and the steps where they entred in, and the Throne and Seate of Mose. game, and in the spaces of every thing is declared and intituled what they signife, and so in this declaration it is not repeated. But that in one Counsell Chamber, when that by way of offence they were agricued, and having a just cause not being sentenced and determined by the Alcalder, then by degree of appellation they appealed from the Altaldes before the Counfell, And if it were a matter of importance they appealed from the Counfell Chamber before Moregama the King himselfe, where the matter was concluded.

In the Chamber, that is intituled, The Counfell Chamber of warre, were prouided Captaines IO and Armies for the warres, as was appointed by Mosegama.



A The Thomas and Maistite of Meteguma where he fait on Come dayin and on indocement. B Morteguma. Chapter other the Lords of Tanayusa, Chienambila, and Colbuacan, were lodged that were tecuma. Na abouje where the Lords of Jennyeda, Queenmusta, and Cultunacan, were longed that were friend and confidences of Moreyman. Da a house where the locks Lords of Teconopiaculus were longed that were Mategorana that the longer of the period tongles of Mategoma. I the MK Thefi laws to that you report as the fless to the Courts of the repul houseful of Mategoma. I The sample Chamber of water, K. The confid Chamber of Mategoma. I, Thefy four were a Mategor of the comfed of Mategoma, after more. N. Placter and Super that in the degree and appellation from the Mategora, the confidence of the Mategoma, and Super that in the degree and appellation from the Mategora of the Comfed of the Mategoma, and Super the Mategora of the confidence of the Mategora of the Comfed of the Comfed of the Mategora of the Comfed of the Mategora of the Comfed of the Comfed of the Mategora of the Comfed of th

"He father and the some that sit against each other face to face, signific that the father glueth his sonne good counsell, that he be not vicious, laying before him for example, that those which come to vertue come afterwards in credit with the Lords and Cafignes; In that they give 1115

them honest offices, and doe vie them to be their Messengers, and they doe admit Musicians and Singers vato their feasts and weddings for the credit they beare.

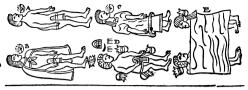
a The pictured in the houfe, where they meane to talke and provide for publike affaires, and the Steward that intent therein, doth fignifie that there are before him weeping, because it hath hippemed vato them to be occupied in bodily labour, that the Cose and Gussafer doe reprefent. And the Steward is guing them good counfell, and exhorting them to fiee idleneft, it the eather they come to be Theeues and players at the Ball, and players at Patol, after the manner of Dice, from which Games doe fpring therefor to fatisfie and fulfill fuch vices.
3 The Carpenter, Lapidane, Painter, Gold-fmith, and garnifher of feathers, figuifie that those dartificers teach their fones their occupation from their childhood, that when they are 10 the fatificers teach their fones their occupation from their childhood, that when they are 10 the fatificers teach their fones their occupation from their childhood, that when they are 10 the fatificers teach their fones their occupation from their childhood, that when they are 10 their fatificers.

3 The Carpenter, Lapidane, Painter, Gold-fmith, and garnifier of feathers, fignifie that thiofe Artificine seach their foundes their occupation from their childhood, that when they are I men they might follow their Trade, and fpend their time in things of vertue, giving them counfeill that of inflentife commeth entil vices, and fo cuill tongues, tale-bearing, drunkenneffe, and theeturie, and many other cuill vices.



A a Missionger. B CD The father compiler bis some so apph himselfe to all vertex. E On basing a phili, entirity with B Massion. FCI a basing where they must for publike assure. E On Perlandents, KM. Coa and Guesda. In Nomber. O a congadom. P a physica at the fail. O. 8 Thirty, B. a physica of Robert Dice after their manner. S a Competter. I The Computer some V a Lepideric W. The Ladders in Jones. X a Painter V The Painters pome. Z a Coll. 60 smith. B. The Coll. I must be some. A a Achil tenguad man and tale-bearer. B b Amerifier the gamille but the fathers, Co. The artificre some, D a devalved, E c a demokrad and things, the last impri like a balter seems to signification and which fathers. Co. C the artificre some, D a demokrad. Ec a demokrad and things, the last impri like a balter seems to signification could make which father come to. The particular pump-ments solving that interpretation.

CHAP.7. S.3. Punishments of Drunkennesse, Adultery, Theft. Pravileges of Age. 1117





A These two Philares signific that the young men that were dranks with Wone, dyed for that according to the Law. B A young mon that was dranks. C A young woman if her were dranks with Wine was killed herer according to the Laws of Mexico. D A Thisse, they found him to death according to the Laws of the Lords of Mexico. E These two Pillires layed and interest with clother, doe from that if any man had carnall dealing with a married woman, they should them both to death, according to the Laws of the Lords of Mexico. F An old man of 50 thress fore audience serves, but his constant which were twick prints they are and armosphere was not problem to go An old moman, wife to the old man above pissord, had primiledge to be dranks as well as her Haspand, because free had children, and children children and to all blog of the his egg dundennesse was to forbidden them.

€0

Zzzz 3

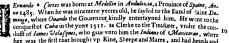
HAD

CHAP. VIII.

Conquest of Mexico and New Spaine by HERNAN-

a Gemarahis third part of dies translated into Englishby

owne large



flockes of them ; and with his Indians he gathered great quantitie of Gold, so that in short time he was able to put in two thousand Castlins for his stocke, with Andres de Duero, a Merchant. At this time Christopher Morante had fent (Anno 1517.) Francis Hernandes de Cordona, Who first discouered Nucasan, whence he brought nothing (except the relation of the Country) but stripes: whereupon Lames Velasques in the yeere 1518. sent his Kinsman Iohn de Grijalna, with b Of this voy. two hundred Spaniards in foure ships: he traded in the River of Tanasco, and for trifles reage. Reade P. turned much Gold, and curious workes of feathers, Idols of Gold, a whole harneffe or furniture age Reade P. turned much Good, and Carlotte Barrys fourth for an armed man of Gold thin beaten, Eagles, Lions, and other pourtratures found in Gold, &c. 20 But while Grisalus deferred his returns, Velasques agreed with Cortes to bee his partner in the Difcouery, which he gladly accepted, and procured licence from the Gouernours in Domineo. & of all which and prepared for the Voyage.

followes in Velafanes afterward vied all meanes to breake off, in fo much that Cortes was forced to engage this Chapter. all his owne stocke, and credit, with his friends in the Expedition, and with five hundred and P. Mart. Des s. Gom, vbi furra. fiftie Spaniards in eleuen thips, fet faile the tenth of February 1519. and arrived at the Hand of and Cortes his Acufamil. The Inhabitants at first fled, but by the kind entertainment of some that were taken. they returned, and received him and his with all kind offices. narration to

They told him of certayne bearded men in Tucatan, whither Cortes fent; and one of them. the Emperour, Geronimo de Aquilar came vnto him, who told him, that by shipwracke at Iamaica, their Caruell 20 being loft, twentie of them wandred in the Boat without fayle, water or bread, thirteene or fourteste dayes, in which space the violence of the current had cast them on shoare in a Prouince called Waise, where, as they trauelled, seiten dyed with famine; and their Captayne Valdmia and other foure were facrificed to be Idols by the Cacite, or Lord of the Courtey, and eaten in a folemne Banquet, and he with fixe other were put into a Coope or Cage, to bee fatned tor another Sacrifice. But breaking Prison, they escaped to another Cacine, enemy to the former, where all the rest dyed, but himselfe, and Gonfalo Guerrer a Mariner. Hee had transformed himfelfe into the Indian cut, boring his riole full of holes, his eares jagged, his face and hands painted; married a Wife, and became a Captaine of name amongst the Indians, and would not returne with this Aguilar.

Cortes with this new Interpreter passed up the River Tanasco, called of the former Discouerer, Grislas; where the Towne that floor thereon, retuing to victual him, was taken and lacked. The Indians herewith inraged, affembled an Armie of fortie thouland, but Cortes by his Horse and Ordnance preuayled; the Indians thinking the Horse and Rider had beene but one creature, whose gaping and swiftnesse was terrible vnto them, whereupon they submitted themselues. When they heard the Horses ney, they had thought the Horses could speake, and demanded what they, faid : the Spaniards aniwered , Thete Horfes are fore affended with you, for fighting with them, and would have you corrected : the simple Indians prefented Roses and Hens to the beafts, detiring them to eate, and to pardon them.

Certes purpoled to discouer further Westward , because hee heard that there were Mines of co Gold, having first received their Vaffallage to the King his Master, to whom (he said) the Monarchie of the Vaiuerfall did appertagne. These were the first Vassals the Emperour had in New Spaine. They named the towne, where these things were done, Villarie, before called Pozonchan, contayning neere fine and twentie thouland houses, which are great, made of Lime, Potentian cal- and Stone, and Bricke, and some of mud-wals and rafters, couered with straw; their dwelling led Villary . - is in the vpper part of the house, for the moylinesse of the soyle. They did eate mans fielh

The Spaniards fayled Westward, and came to Saint Iohn de Vibna, where Tendills the Gouernour of the Countrey, came to him with foure thousand Indians. Hee did his reverence to the Captayne, burning Frankincense (after their custome) and little strawes, touched in the bloud of his owne bodie : and then prefented vnto him victuals and lewels of Gold, and other curious 60 workes of feathers; which Cortes requited with a Collar of Glasse, and other things of imall value. A woman-flaue, giuen him at Potonchan, vnderstood their language, and shee with Agui-Lar, were his Interpreters. Cortes profesied himselfe the servant of a great Emperour, which had

Ernando a Cortes was borne at Medellin in Andulozia, a Province of Spaine, An-

had beene no fuch Prince in the World, as his Master and Soueraigne, the King of Mexico, whole Vafiall he was, named, Mutezuma. To him he feut the reprefentations of these bearded men and their Horses, Apparell, Weapons, Ordnance, and other Rarities, painted in Cotton-clothes. their ships and numbers. These painted Cottons he sent by Posts, which deliuered them from one to another with such celeritie, that in a day and night the mellage came to Mexico, which was two hundred and ten miles diffant. Cortes had demanded, whether Mutezuma had Gold! Tendilli affirmed, and Cortes replyed, That he and his fellowes had a dilease of the heart, whereunto ble ticknesses Gold was the belt remedie.

fent him thither, whose power he so highly extolled, that Tendilli maruelled, thinking there

Mutezuma fent him many Cotton-clothes of divers colours, many tuffes of Feathers, two Wheeles, the one of Silver, with the figne of the Moone, and the other of Gold, made like the Sunne :- which they hold for Gods, and give vnto them the colours of the Metals most like them. Each Wheele was two yards and a halfe broad. These with other parts of the Present were esteemed worth twentie thousand Duckets. Mutezuma also protessed ioy, to heare of so great a Prince, & fo strange people, & promised prouision of all necessaries, but was very vinwilling that Cortes should come to tee him, as he pretended. Yet Cortes persisted in that his defire of seeing Mutezuma, that he might further acquaint himfelfe with the knowledge of those parts. The filly Indiane having neuer feene fuch strange fights, came daily to the Campe to fee them

and when they heard the Ordnance discharged, they fell downe flat, thinking the Heauens had faine : the ships they thought were the God of the Ayre, called Quezalconols, which came with 20 the Temples on his backe, for they daily looked for him. Among it the reft, or rather aloofe off from thereft, were certayne Indians of differing habit, higher then the other, and had the grittles of their Nofes flit, hanging ouer their mouthes, and Rings of Iet and Amber hanging thereat: their neather lips also bored, and in the holes, Rings of Gold and Turkesse-stones, which weighed fo much, that their lips hung ouer their chinnes, leaning their teeth bare. This vglineffe they accounted gallantry, and fuch vacouth deformitie to be the only brauery. And thou Gallant, that on-mongeris readeft and derideft this madnefic of Fashion, if thine eyes were not dazeled with lightnesse (light I cannot call it) of selfe-reflected Vanitie, mightest see as Monster-like fashions at home, and a more fashionly Monster of thy felfe; thy clothes and oathes, thy gestures and vestures, make thy maked Deformicie worfe then their thus deformed nakednoffe ; both in deed feeme to haue re-

30 celued fome hellish Character (if there may bee bodily representation) of that olde Serpent in these new fashions, striuing who shall shape himselfe, neerest to that misse-shapen vglinesse, wherein the Indian-jagges himselfe out of humane lineaments, the other swaggers himselfe further out of all Civill and Chrittian ornaments. But thefe Fashion-mongers haue made mee almost out of my fashion, and to forget my felfe, in remembring their forgetfulnesse.

These Indians of this New-cut, Cortes caused to come to him , and learned that they were of Zempoallan, a Citie distant thence a dayes journey, whom their Lord had sent to see what Gods were come in those Tencalis; that is Temples (fo, it feemeth, they called the ships:) which held no conversation with the other Indians, as being not subject to Matezama, but onely as they were holden in by force. He gaue them certaine toyes; and was glad to heare that the Indians

49 of Zempoallen, and other their Neighbours were not well affe ded to & Matezama, but readie, as farre as they durft, to entertayne all occasions of warre with him. Hee fayled from thence to Pa. Parises. muco, and passed the River farther, till he came to a little Towne, where was a Temple, with a little Towre, and a Chappell on the top ascended by twenty steps, in which they found some Idols, many bloudy Papers, and much mans bloud, of those which had beene facrificed, the blocke also whereon they cut open those Sacrifices, and the Razors made of flint, wherewith they opened their brefts, which strucke the Spaniards with some horrour and feare. They passed a little further, and there having taken poffession, in the Emperours name, of the whole Countrey, they founded the Towne De la vera Crux, Cortes religning his authoritie, and Officers being elected; Vera Crux, and lastly, all with generall confent appointing Cortes their Captaine.

Cortes went forward to Zempoallan, where hee was folemnely received and lodged in a great house of lime and stone, whited with playster, that shined in the Sunne, as if it had beene Silver; fo did the Silver-conceits of the Spaniards imagine, the defire of that Metall having made fuch an impreffon in their imagination, that they told Cortes before hee came at it , they had feene a house with wals of Silver. Here, and at Chianiztlan, Cortes incited thear to rebell against Mnrecuma, and to become feruants to the Spaniards, which they did and he voder-hand to wrought, that Mutezumatooke him for his friend,

All his intent was to fift in troubled waters, and to fet them both by the eares, that hee might watch oportunitie to benefit himicife. His owne people rebelled, fome of whom he chaflied with the halter and the whip for example to the relt : and after caused all his ships to bee 60 funke clotely, that they should not minde any returne. He left 1 50. man for the guard of the new Towne, under Pedro de Honrico, and with 400. Spaniarde, fifteene Horfas, and fixe Peeces of Artillery, and 1300 Indians, they went from Zempoallan, and came to Zactoran, the Lord whereof was Olimler the subject of Mutezama, who to testifie his joy, and to hangur Corres, commanded fifty men to be facrificed, whose bloud they faw, new and fresh. They

They carried the Spaniards on their shoulders, sitting on Beeres, such as whereon they we ro carry dead men. He bragged as much of the power of Mutezuma, as their Spaniards of their Em-Blandy Sacri- perour. He faid he had thirty Vaffals, each of which was able to bring into the field an hundred thouland men of Warre, and facrificed 20000. men yearely to the gods : in this he somewhat exceeded; the other was true, although some yeares, the Sacrifices also were thought to amount to coooo. This Towne was great, and had thirteene Temples, in each of which were many Idols of ftone, of diuers fashions, before whom they facrificed Men, Doues, Quailer, & other things with great perfumes and veneration. Here Mulezums had 5000 Souldiers in Garrison. Cottes passed from thence to Mexico by the Frontiers of Tlaxcallon, which were enemies to Muses ma, whom he might eafily have overcome, but referred, partly for the exercise of his Subiects to the Warre, par ly for the Sacrifices to his gods.

These iowned an hundred and fifty thousand men against Cortes, taking him for Mutezuma's friend : and yet euery day fent him Guinney-cockes and Bread, partly to espie his strength, and partly in a brauery, left their glory should be obscured in the conquest of men already started. But when in many skirmishes and lights they could not prevaile against that handfull of Speniards. they thought they were preserved from harme by inchantments: and sent him three presents with this meffage; That if he were that rigorous god which eareth mans flesh, he should eare those fine flaves which they brought him, and they would bring him more: if he were the meeke and sentle god, behold Frankinsence, and Feathers: if he were a mortall man, take here Fowle. and gentie god, penois Frankintenes, and gentie god, and fubmitted their City tohim. Their and fubmitted their City tohim. Their City Tlaxcallan was great, planted by a Rivers fide, which iffued into the South-Sea. It had foure Streetes, each of which had their Captaine in the time of Warre. The government was an Aria focraty, hating Monarchy no leffe then tyranny. It had eight and twenty Villages, and in them an hundred and fifty thousand Housholds, very poore, but good warriors. They had one Marketplace fo spacious, that thirty thousand persons in a day came thither to buy and fell by exchange:

for money they had none.

Mutezuma had fent before to Cortes, and promifed tribute to the Emperour, whatformer should be imposed; onely he would not have him come to Mexico. And now he fent agains. that he should not trust that new friendship with the beggerly Nation of Tlaxealler; and they againe counselled him not to aduenture himselfe to Matezama. Cortes held his determination 20 for Mexico, and being accompanied with many of the Tlaxcantlexas, he went to Chelella, a little from whence Murezuma had prepared an Army to intrap him in the way; but he finding the trechery, it redounded upon the Cholollois, the fame day they had thought to have executed the fame upon him. For this end they had facrificed ten children, fine males, and as many females. three yearesold, to Quezalconati their god, which was their custome when they began their Wars. He out-going them in their owne art of fubtilty, intrapped their Captains in Counfell, and fent his Army to spoile the City, where were slaine thousands. There were twenty Gentlemen, and many Priefts which ascended up to the high towre of their Temple, which had an hun-

dred and twenty steps, where they were burned, together with their gods and Sanctuary.

This Citie had twenty thousand Housholds within the Wals, and as many in the Suburbs. It 40

Tlayeallan a

ples and deuge hewed outward very faire and full of Towres, for there were as many Temples as dayes in the yeare, and every one had his Towre. The Spaniards counted foure hundred Towers. It was the Citie of most denotion in all India, whither they travelled from many places farre distant in Pile grimage. Their Cathedrall Temple was the best and highest in all New-Spaine, with an hundred and twenty steps up to it. Their chiefe god was Quezalconatl, god of the Ayre, who was (they fay) founder of their Citie being a Virgin, of holy life and great penance. He instituted failing, and drawing of bloud out of their eares and tongues, and left precepts of Sacrifices. Hee neuer ware but one garment of Cotten, white, narrow, and long, and vpon that a Mantle, befet with certaine red crosses. They have certaine greene stones which were his, and are kept for great relikes : one of them is like an Apes head. Eight leagues from Chololla is the hill Papaca- 50 tepec, or imoake-hill, which the Earth seemeth to have erected as a Fort to encounter and affault the Ayre: now with fmoky mifts endeuouring to choake his purer breath, another while with violent flames, and naturall fire-workes threatning to joyne league with his elder and fuperiour brother to difinherit him: fometimes with showers of ashes and embers, as it were, putting out the eyes, and fometimes with terrible and dreadfull thunders, rending the eares of that Airy Element ; alwayes (luch is the event of warre) hurting and wasting it selfe, to indamage the enemy. The Indians thought it a place of Purgatory, whereby tyrannicall and wicked Officers were punished after their death, and after that purgation passed into glory. The Spaniards ad-

uentured to fee it, but two lonely held on their journey, and had there beene confumed, had they not by a Rocke bin shadowed from the violent eruption of the fire which then hapned. It 60

chanced that the Earth, weary it seemeth of the warre, as having spent her store and muniti-

on, agreed on a truce which continued ten yeares : but in the yeare 1540, it brake forth into

more violent hostility then before, quaking and renting it selfe with vibridled passion. and

whereas the Ayre had alwaies a snowie Garrison about her high tops and frontiers, to coole and

CHAP.8. Corteles entertainment. Mutezumas Religion Oration death.

quench her nery showers, yet these did but kindle a greater flame, the ashes whereof came to Huexozince, Quelaxcopon, Tepiacac, Chololla and Tlazcallan, and other places; ten, or as some fav. fifteene leagues distant, and burned their hearbs in their Gardens, their fields of Corne, Tracs and cloathes that they laid a drying. The Unlean, Crater, or mouth whence the fire iffued, is about halte a league in compasse. The Indians killed their garments (an honour done vnto their gods) which had adventured themselves to this dreadfull spectacle.

mici nad aduentated the interior, Musezama feared, faying, Thefe are the people which our Musezamas toands faid should come and inherit this Land. He went to his Oratory, and there shut vphim-ligion. telie alone, abiding eight daies in praier and fasting, with facrifice of many men, to aslake the To fury of his offended detties. The Deuill bids him not to feare, and that he should continue those bloudy Rites, affuring him that he should have the gods Vizziliputzli and Teleaslipuca to preferue him, faying, That Quezalconatt permitted the destruction at Chololla, for want of that bloudy facrifice. Cortes paffed a Hill fix miles in hright, where, by the difficulty of the passage, and of the cold (being alway courted with Snow) the Mexicans might eafily have prevented his passing further. Hence he espied the Lake; whereon Mexico and many other great Townes did Hand. Interest reflective the capital state of tooo housholds, Corecan of fix thousand, Vizilopuchili of five thoufand. Thefe Towns are adorned with many Tymples and Towres, that beautifie the Lake. From

Iztacpalapan to Mexico is two Leagues, all on a faire cauley, with many draw-bridges, thorow which the water pafferh. Musezama received Cortes with all folemnity on the eight of November A (19. into this great Citie, excusing himselfe of former vnkindnesses the best he could. Of his house, and Maiestie, and the diuine sonceit the people had of him, we shall speake after more fully, as also of the Temples. Priefts, Sacrifices and other remarkeable things of Mexico.

Mutezama prouided all things necessary for the Spaniards and Indians that attended them: euen beds of flowers were made, in place of litter for their Horles. But Contes disquieted with thole thoughts which commonly attend Ambition (discontent in the present, hopes and scares of the future) vied the matter fo, that he tooke Mutezame priloner, and detained him in the place appointed for the Spaniards lodging, with a Spanish Guard about him, permitting him otherwise to deale in all private or publike affaires, as before. Hereupon Cacama, Lord of Texas-

30 co, Nephew to Materima, rebelled, but by treachery of his owne people was prefented prilo- a The like ner to Muterma. He, after this fummond a Parliament , where hee made an Oration vnto his speech he had Subjects, faying, * That He and his Predeceffours were not Naturals of the Country, but his made at fift to Subjects, faying, * That He and his redecemous were not granted again and the Country, such as Fore-fathers came from a farre Country; and their King returned agains; and faid, he would fend, fily wrought fuch as should rule them. And he hath now sent these Spannards, faith he. Hereupon he counselled on that aduanthem to yeelde themielues Vassals to the Emperour, which they did at his command, though tage applying with many teares on his part and theirs, at this farewell of their liberty. Matezama prefently this Trackion with many teares on his part and the part and the part quantity of Gold and other Jewels, which amounted to fixteene hundred thousand Castlins of Gold, besides Silver, 5.V/ **

Cortes had hitherto a continuall victory in Mexico without any fight: but news was brought

40 him of Pamphilo de Naruaes, who was fent with eighty Horfe, and some bundreths of Spaniards by Velafquet, to interrupt the proceedings of Cores : who leaving two hundred men in Mexico, with two hundred and fifty other came fuddenly in the night, and tooke Warners priloner, and returned to Mexico with Naruses his Company, now his followers: also, where he found his men exceedingly diffrested by the Cirizens for a murther committed in the great Temple at a folemne Feast, wherein a religious dance they were saine, for the rich garments and Iewels they terms recat, wherein a tengous same oney were same, to two tenting gaments and reversely ware, by the Spaniards. Cortex came in good time for the reliefeof his men: and Materiana Automatical Cauled the Marketan to thoride their rage, which prefently was tenewed; and when Material death.

May was againe by his Guardians, the Spaniards, cauled to fpeake to the people, ablow of a from

on his Temples wounded him, whereof three daies after he died.

Corter had some thousands of the Tlavelieras to helpe him, but was driven to flye from Mexico with all his Spaniards and Indians, which he did closely in the night, but yet an alarme was raifed, and the Bridges being broken, much flaughter of his people was made by the Mexicans, and all his treasure in manner lost. They pursued after him also, and had two hundred thousand in the field : when it was Cortes his good hap to flay the Sandardbearer, whereupon the Indians forfooke the field. This battell was fought at Ocumpan,

At Tlazcallan, he and his were kindely entertained; they had prepared before 50000. men to goe to Mexico for hishelpe, and now they promifed him all offices of loyalty and feruice. With their helpe he subdued Tepeacac; and built certaine Brigandines, or Frigats, which were carried many leagues on the backes of thole Indians, and there failned and finished, without which he

could neuer haue won Mexico. In Tezeneo certaine Spaniards had beene taken, facrificed and eaten, which Cortes now revenged on them. Eight thousand men had carried the loose peeces and timber of this Nauie, guarded with twenty thousand Tlancallans, and a thousand Tamemez, or Porters (which carried victuals) attending. They calked them with Towe, and for want of Tallow and Oyle, they vied

CHAP. IX.

Larger Relations of things most remarkeable observed by the Spaniards at their first comming: Cholollas holies; Popocatepecs ashes. Mutezumas multiforme magnificence and maiestie. Mexican Citie and Temple, with other antiquities gathered out of the Third part of the Historie of Francis

ted and pub-Lopez * de Gomara.

Hololla is a Citie as Tlaxcallan, and hath but one person who is Governour and it by the Itagenerall Captaine, choien by the confent of all the Citizens. It is a Citie of of Applica di twenty thousand housholds within the wals, and in the suburbs as much more, Crewitz : for It sheweth outwards very beautifull, and full of Towers, for there are as many the Samilbori-Temples as dayes in the yeare, and every Temple hath his Tower. Our men ginall have counted foure hundred Towers. The men and women are of good disposition, not,

well fanoured and very wittie. The women are Goldsmiths and also Carners, the men are warriers, and light fellowes, and good Maisters for any purpose : they goe better apparelled then any other Indians yet feene. They weare for their vpper garment cloakes like vnto Morifcos but 20 after another fort. All the Countrey round about them is fruitfull and errable ground well watered, and fo full of people, that there is no walte ground, in respect whereof, there are some poore which begge from doore to doore. The Spaniards had not feene any beggers in that Countrey before they came thither.

Chololla is a Citie of most devotion and religion in all India, it is called the Sanctuary, or holy place among the Indians, and thither they translled from many places farre distant in Pilgrimage, and for this cantle there were fo many Temples. Their Cathedrall Temple was the best and higheft of all the New Spaine, with a hundred and twenty steps up unto it, The greatest I-doll of all their gods was called Quexalconately, God of the Aire, who was (lay they) the founder of their Citie, being a Virgin or holy life, and great penance. He instituted fasting, and 20 drawing of bloud out of their eares and tongues, and left a precept, that they should facrifice but onely Quales, Doues, and other foule. He neuer ware but one garment of Cotten, which was white, narrow, and long, and voon that a mantle befet with cartaine red croffes. They have cer-

taine greene Stones which were his, and those they keepe for relickes. One of them is like an Apes head, Here they abode twenty dayes, and in this meane while there came fo many to buy and fell, that it was a wonder to fee. And one of the things that was to be feene in those faires, was the earthen veiled, which was exceeding curious and fine.

The bill called Popocatepec.

Here is a hill eight leagues from Chololla, called Popocateper, which is to fay, a hill of smoake, for many times it caffeth out imoake and fire. Cortes fent thither ten Speniards, with many Indians, to carry their victuall, and to guide them in the way. The ascending up was very troublesome, and full of craggie rocks. They approached so nigh the top, that they heard such a terrible noise which proceeded from thence, that they durit not goe vnto it, for the ground did tremble and shake, and great quantity of ashes which disturbed the way : but yet two of them who feemed to be most hardie, and defirous to fee strange things, went vp to the top, because they would not returne with a sleeuelesse answer, and that they might not be accounted cowards, leaning their fellowes behinde them, proceeding forwards. The Indians faid, what meane these men? for as yet never mortall man tooke such a journey in hand.

Thefet wo valiant fellowes passed through the Defart of Ashes, and at length came under a great smoake very thicke, and flanding there a while, the darkenesse vanished partly away, and then appeared the vulcan and concauity, which was about halfe a league in compafie, out of the which the avec came abounding, with a great noise, very thrill, and whiftling, in such fort that the whole hill did tremble. It was to be compared vnto an Ouen where Glaffe is made. The fmoake and heate was so great, that they could not abide it, and of force were constrained to returne by the way that they had accended; but they were not gone farre, when the vulcan began to lath out flames of fire, albes, and imbers, yea and at the last, stones of burning fire : and if they had not chanfed to finde a Rocke, where under they shadowed themselves, undoubtedly they had there beene burned. When with good tokens they were returned where they left 60 their fellowes, the other Indians kiffed their garments as an honour due voto gods. They prefen-

ted vnto them fuch things as they had, and wondred much at their fact. The simple Indians thought, that that place was an internal place, where all such as govern Purpstorm ned not well, or vied tyrannie in their offices, were punished when they died, and also believed. that after their purgation, they passed into glory. This Vulcan is like vnto the Vulcan of Sicilia,

Mans Greafe, of fuch as had beene flaine in the Warres. For fo the Indians vied, to take out the Mans Greate, or numes mad occur manner in the hundred Spannarde, of which fourescore and fix were Horle-men, three cast peeces of Iron, sifteene small peeces of Bralle, and a thousand weight of Powder, and 100000. Indian Souldiers on his side. He made a fluce or trench about twelve for broad, and two fathome deepe, half a league long, in which 40000. men wrought fifty foot broad, and two ratioms weeps, many dayes. He lanched his Veffels, and foone ouercame all the Canoas of the Lake, of which were reckoned in all five thousand. The Spaniards brake the Conduits of sweet water, where with the

Onabutimee, now the new King of Mexico, receiving incouragement from the Denillish O. racle, caufed to breake downe the Bridges, and to exercise what focus with or frength could doe 10 racle, cauted to breake downe one prings, and for a six doubtfull chance of warre) conon accence or his Citie, Johnstones ordained a new King, a Christian Indian, of the royall bloud, who quered. Cover man in science. The Spaniards being Lords of the Lake, and of the Cauleyes, by much autree min in this nego. helpe of their Galliots and Ordinance, they fired a great part of the Citie. One day the Mexihelpe of their Gamos and Guantage, and thereupon celebrated a Feaft of Victory. The Priefts went cant had gotten tome addanage, and therefore the performance of five their went vp into the Towers of Tlatelules, their chiefe Temple, and made there perfumes of fiweet Gums, vp into the Lowers or Liestense, the control of the phase the captines, opening their in token of victory, and facrificed forty Spaniards (which they had taken captines, opening their in token or victory, and acrinced loss years breeks, and plucking out their hearts) fprinkling their bloud in the Ayre; their fellowes looking on and not able to reuenge it. They flew likewile many Indiant, & four Spaniards of Alsarade on and not sole to receige in the open fight of the Army The Maxicas danced, drankthem felues 16 company, whom they we in the period of the property of the period of the Didaine, and all the Furies that Paffion or Compassion could coniure vp, had now filled the Spa-Diotains, and an energy and their Indian partakers: and Cortes, that hitherto had hoped to refer to fome part of the Citie, now did the vtmost that Rage and Reuenge could effect, helped no leffe with in with Famine and Peftilence, then with Sword and Fire without. At last Mexico is razed the Earth and Water sharing betwixt them what the Fire had left, and all which had sometime Earth and Water maring feetwate them white the transfer and the state of the an whiten had former the definition of the state of the st build the Citie, if conquered, for them; if conquerors, for the Spaniard: It was re-builded with a hundred thousand houses, fairer and stronger then before. The Siege lasted three Moneths, and 30 had therein two hundred thousand Indiant, nine hundred Spaniards, sourescore Horses, seuenteene Peeces of Ordinance, thirteene Galliots, and fixe thouland Canoas. Fiftie Spaniards were flaine, and fixe Horfes : of the Mexicans, a hundred thousand, besides those which died of Hun-

This was effected Auto 1521, on the thirteenth day of August, which for that cause is kept festivall every yeare. For the Description of the Country wherein Mexico is situate. Cortes in his focund Narration to the Emperour faith, it is entirioned with hils : (He telleth of fome hils his please a Correspond to the Emperous matth, to enhance within in: (the testem of tome and alloin his isomere, wherein discrete his plaine of 70, leagues compaffe, and therein two Lakes which extend the circuit of 70, leagues; the one fit. which ebbeth and flowerh (an argument for Parriston his opinion, that faltnesse sa chiefe caute 40 of that viciffitude of ebbing and flowing, in the Ocean) the other fresh : When the water of the Salt Lake increaseth, it sunneth I'ke a, violent fireame into the fresh Lake, which when it decrea-

feth, is repaired againe by the like iffue of this into the former.

b N. di Guf.

Numme di Gusman hath written his expedition into Mechoacan and other Countries of New-Spaine 1530. Subduing and taking possession for the Emperour: He found some of them Sodomites, others Sacrificers of mens flesh, and some closly practifing this butchery after they had profeffed themselues Christians : none of them which durft looke a Horse in the face; but were aclip. Ada.

clip. Clip. Ada.

clip. Godn ap. Ram. of the Auntient Mexicans, one of Cortes his Gentlemen hath written a Treatife 4 extant in Re- 50 minister, wherein are described their Citie, Temples, Rites of Sacrifice, and the like; as after followeth out of him and others.

CHAP.

it is high and round, and neuer wanteth fnow about it, and is feene afarre off in the night, it lathe single and tounds, and there is neere about this Hill many Cities, and Huexoxinco is one of the nighest. In tenne yeeres space this strange hill of working did expell no vapour or smoke thus in the years I (40. it began agains to burne, and with the horrible noyie thereof, the Neighbours that dwelt four leagues from thence were terrified, for the especiall firange smoakes that then were seene, the like to their Predecessors had not beene seene. The ashes that proceeded from thence came to Huevozinco, Quelaxcopan, Tepiacae, Quaubquecholla, Chololla, and Tlaxcallan which standeth ten leagues from thence, yea fome fay, it extended fifteene leagues distant, and burned their hearbes in their Gardens, their Fieldes of Corne, Trees, and cloathes that lay

irying. He left the way that the *Mexicans* had perfuaded him to come, for it was both euill and dangerous, as the Spaniard which went to the Vulcan had feene, he went another plainer way. and neerer. He alcended up a Hill conered with inow, which was fixe miles of height, where and neerer, requestion of them, they might easily have taken them, by reason of the great cold : and from the top of that Hill, they discouered the Land of Mexico, and the great Lake, with his Villages round about, which is an excreding goodly fight. But when Cortes faw that beautifull thing, his joy was without comparison.

There came twelve Lords from Mexico, among whom was Cacama, Nephew to Mniezuma who was Lord of Tezence, a young man of fine and twentie yeeres of age, whom the Indians did much honour; he was carried vpon their fhoulders, and when they fet him downe, one went before with a Broome to I weepe the dust out of his way. In this order hee came to Iztacoalanan Euery two houres came meffengers betwixt Cortes and Mutezama: then came Cueilenge Lord of that Towne, with the Lord Culbuacan his Kinfman to receive him, who prefented vnto him flaues, garments, and feathers, and to the value of foure thousand Duckets in Gold, Cuetualse received all the Spaniards into his owne house, which hath very faire Lodgings all of stone, and Carpenters worke, exceeding well wrought, with high and low roomes, with all kind of fernice: The chambers were hanged with cloth of Cotton very rich, after their manner. There were faire Gardens replenished with many sweet flowres, and sweet trees garnished with Networke, made of Canes, and couered with Roses and other fine hearbes, with fundry ponds of fweet water. There was another Garden very beautifull of all forts of fruits and hearbes, with 20 a great pond walled with lime, and stone, and was foure hundred paces square, made with faire fleps to descend voto the bottomen many places, and was full of diners kinds of fishes, and manv kind of water Birds, which formetimes covered the pond, as Guls, and Mewes, and fuch like. Iztaepallapan is a Towne of 10000 housholds, and is planted in a Lake of Sale-water, the one halte of the Towne built on the water, and the other on the Land.

The folemne

From Izzacpallapan to Mexico is two leagues all voon a faire Calley, woon the which eight pompe where. Horsemen may passe on ranke, and so directly straight as though it had beene made by line. And with Cortes was who focuer hath good eye-fight might discerne the gates of Mexico from thence. Coroncan is a receiuedinto Towne of fixe thousand dwellers, Vizilopuchtli is of fine thousand. These Townes are planted in the Lake, and are adorned with many Temples, which have many faire Towres, that doe 40 beautific exceedingly the Lake. There is great contractation of Salt, which is made there, and from thence is carried abroad to Faires and Markets, which thing was a great rent to Mitezus. ma. Vpon this Calley are many drawne Bridges built vpon fairearches, that the waterpaffeth

> Cortes passed this Calley with 400. Spaniards; and 6000. Indians his friends : their passage was with much adoe, by reason of the great multitude of dudiant which came to see him, and comming neere the Citie, there adjoyned another Calley with a broader patage; where frandeth a ftrong Bulwarke of itone, of the heigth of two fachome with two Towers on each fide, and two gates very firong. Here at this Fort came three thouland Courtiers and Citizens to receive him. and every of them touched the ground with his right hand and kiffed it, and paffed forwards in 50 the order as they came. These salutations endured an houre and more. From the Bulwarke the Calfey lyeth directly, and before the entrance into the fireet there is another draw Bridge made of timber ten paces broad, under the which the water paffeth too and from Are this Bridge came Mutezama to receive Cortes under a Canopie of greene feathers and gold, with much Argentery hanging thereat, which Canopie foure Noble-men did carrie: And the two Princes (netlanac and Cacama his Nephewes, did leade him by each arme; all three were rich apparelled and all of one fashion, except Mutezume, which had a paire of sapoes of gold beter with precious Stones, and the foles were tyed to the upper part with latchets, as is painted of the Antikes. His Gentlemen went by two and two, laying downe and taking up Mantles and Couerlets upon the ground, because his feet should not touch the same : then tollowed him as in Procession, 200. 60 Noblemen bare-footed, with garments of a richer Livery then the full three thouland. Mutezama came in the middeft of the freet, and the others came behind him as night he wall as they might, their faces towards the ground, for it was a great offence to looke him in the face. Cortes alighted from his Horle, and according to our vie went to embrace him, but the Princes who led

Muterumas

him by the armes, would not fuffer him to come fo nigh, for they held it for finne to touch him. but yet faluted each one the other.

Cortes put about Matezama his necke a coller of Margarites , Diamonds, and other stones all of glaffe. Mutezuma received it thankfully, and went before with one of the Princes his Nephewes, and commanded the other to leade Cortes by the hand, next after him in the midft of the ffreet; and proceeding forward in this order, then came the Gentlemen in the richeft Liuery to welcome him, one by one, touching the ground with their hands, and after returned to their standing. And if the Citizens had come as they requested, all that day would not have ferued for falutations. The coller of glaffe pleafed well Mutezama, and because hee would not

10 take without giving a better thing, as a great Prince, hee commanded to be brought two collers Spanistagive of red Prawnes, which are there much efteemed, and at enery one of them hanged eight Shrimp's grand galler of gold, of excellent workmanship, and of a singer length enery one, he put these collers with scrool and his owne hands about Cortes his necke, the which was effected a most great favour, yez and the glory. Indians maruelled at it. At this time they were come to the street end, which was almosta mile long, broad, fireight, and very faire, and full of houses on each fide, in whose doores, windowes and tops, was such a multitude of Indians to behold the strangers, that I know not who wondred moit, our men to fee fuch a number of them, or elfe they to fee our men, their Ordnance and Horles, a thing to strange vnto them. They were brought vnto a great Court or house of Pdols, which was the Lodging Axaiaca, at the doore whereof, Mutezuma tooke Cortes by the 20 hand, and brought him into a faire hall, and placed him vpon a rich Carpet, faying vnto him, Sir, now are you in your owns house, eate and take your rest and pleasure, for I will shortly come and visit you againe, Such (as you heare) was the receiving of Hernando Cortes by Mutezuma a most

mightie King, into his great and famous Citie of Mexico, the eight day of November, 1, 19. The houle where the Spaniards were lodged was great and large, with many faire chambers The Otation fufficient for them all: it was neate, cleane matted, and hanged with Cloth of Cotton, and or Muleralina Feathers of many colours, pleafant to behold. When Maiszama was departed from Cortes, niads, hee beganne to let his houle in order and placed the Ordnance at his doore, and having all his things in good fort, he went to a fumptuous Dinner that was prepared for him. Affoone as Mu-

texums had made an end of his Dinner, hearing that the Strangers were rifen from the Table, 30 and reposed a while, then came hee to Cortes; faluting him, and fate downe by him. He gave vnto him divers Iewels of Gold Plate, Peathers, and many Garments of Cotton, both rich, well wouen, and wrought of strange colours, a thing comely, that did manifest his greatneffe, and also confirme their imagination. This gift was deliuered honourably, and then beganne his talke as followeth : Lords and Gentlemen , I doe much reisyce to have in my house such valiant men as yee are, for to use you with courtesse, and intrease you with bonour, according to your desert and my estate. And where heretosore I deserted that you should not come hither, the onely cause was, my people bad a great feare to see you, for your gesture and grimme beards did terrific them, yea, they reported that yee had such heasts as smallowed men, and that your commine was from Heauen, bringing with you Lightning; Thunder, and Thunder-bolts, wherewith 40 you made the Earth to tremble and to Chake, and that yee flue therewith whom yee pleafed. But now I doe fee and know that you are mortall men, and that yee are quiet and burt no man : alfo I have

feene your Horses, which are but your Sermants, and your Gunnes like unto shooting Trunkes. I doe now bold all for Fables and Lyes which have beene reported of you, and I doe also accept you for my metre Kinsman. My Father told mee that hee had heardhis forefathers say, of whom I doe dismy metre conjunction that they beld spinion bow they were not Naturals of this Land, but come hither by chance, in companie of a mightie Lord, who after a while that hee had abode here, they returned to their natural! A ftinge open forle: After many secres expired, they came againe for those whom they had left beere behind them, nions but they would not goe with them, because they had here whahited, and had Wines and Children, and

on tay we make the Land. Now hole mights Lord legis that they were of fulfilled me, and the continues of the for this consideration, wee have alwayes suspected and beleeved, that such a people should come to rule and converse us, and considering from whence you come. I doe thinks that you are they whom, wee looked for, and the notice which the great Emperour Charles had for us, who had now lent you buther. Therefore Lord and Captaine, bee well affored, that wee will obey you, if there bee no ferned or decentual master in your dealings, and will also divide with you and yours all that we have And although this which I have faid were not onely for your vertice, fame, and deeds of valiant Gentlemen. I would yet doe it for your worthinesse in the battailes of Tauaico, Teocazinco, and Chollolla, being fo few, to overcome fo many.

Now againe, if yee imagine that I am a God, and the walls and rooffes of my boules, and all my velfell of feruice, to be of pure Gold, as themen of Zempoallan, Tlaxcallan, and Huexozinco, bane informed you, it is not fo, and I indge you to bee so wise, that you give no credit to such Fables. Tou shall also note, that through your comming onther, many of my substitutes are belied, and are become my



mortall enemies, but yes I purpose to breake their wings. Come feele you my bodie, I am of flesh and mortal exempes, on year your pole or one no God, although as a King I doe esteeme my felfe, of greater dianitie and preheminence then others. My boujes you doe also fee, which are of timber and earth . and the principallest of Masons worke , therefore now you doe both know and see what odious byers those Tale bearers were. But troth it is , that Gold Plate, Feathers, Armour, lewels, and who fort togic tue nearry were, one never no.

Keekes, I have us the Jraching of my Forefathers a long time preferred, as the ofe of Kings is, white
which you and your foul enter as a fumer. And now it may pleafe you to sake your reft, for leave which you are your span entry as an more.
that you are weary of your iourney. Coates with infull countenance humbled himselfe, seeing some that you are weary of your romany. Caring onto him, open the trust I have had in your elemencie, I teares sail from Milleruma bus eyes, young conversion, young non-conversion common young commence, to ensified as commendate to fee, and take with your Highouffe, and now I know that all are speciable to hath before told nece. The like your Highouffe hath beard reported of v., affine your selfe, that the Emperous King of Spainess your natural Lord, whom yes have expected, hee is the onely heire from whence your Linage doth proceed, and at touching the offer of your Highnesse treasure, I do most beartily thanke you.

After all this communication, Musezuma demanded whether the bearded men which came with him; were either his vallels, or his flaues, because hee would enterrayne each one according to his estate. Cartes answered, that they were all his brethren, friends, and fellowes, exsent lome that were his feruants.

Then he departed, and went home to his Palace, and there informed himselfe particularly who were Gentlemen, and who were not, and according thereunto, fent enery one particular to gife or present. To the Gentlemen he sent his reward by his Comptroller, and to the Mariners and other Servitors, by a Page of his houshold.

Mutezamus was a man of a small stature, and leane, his colour tawnie as all the Indiana Muteruma de are. Hee had long haire on his head, fixe little haires vpon him, as though they had beene put in with a Bodkin. His thinne beard was blacke. Hee was a man of a faire condition, and a Joer of Iustice, well spoken, graue and wife, beloued and feared among his subjects. Mutezume Joth fignifie Sadnelle. To the proper names of Kings and Lords, they doe adde this fyllable Cin, which is for courte-

Cin.

fie and dignitie, as we vie Lord. The Turke vieth Zultan. The Moore or Barbarian calleth his Lord Mulley, and to the Indians fay Mutezumazin, His people had him in fuch reuerence, 20 that hee permitted none to fit in his fight , nor yet in his prefence to weare shoots, nor looke him in the face, except very few Princes. Hee was glad of the convertation of the Spaniards, and would not suffer them to stand on foote, for the great estimation bee had of them, and if hee liked any of the Spaniar de garments, hee would exchange his apparell for theirs. He changed his owneapparell foure times enery day, and bee neuer clothed himselfe againe with the Garments which hee had once wome, but all such were kept in his Guardrobe, for to give in Prefents to his Sequents and Ambastadours, and voto valiant Souldiers which had taken any enemy Prifoner, and that was efteemed a great reward, and a title of priviledge. The coftly Mantles whereof had beene diversient to Cortes , were of the His Wardrobe, fame Guardrobe.

Change of

His diet-rites.

Mantezama went al wayes very neate and fine in his attyre. Heebathed him in his Hot-house foure times every day. Hee went feldome out of his Chamber , but when hee went to his meate. Hee eate alwayes alone, but folemnely, and with great abundance. His Table was a Pillow, or elfe a couple of coloured Skinnes. His Chaire was a foure-footed ftoole made of one piece, and hollow in the middeft, well wrought and painted. His Table-clothes , Napkins, and Towels, were made of Cotton-wooll, very white and new, for hee was neuer ferued but once with that Naperie. Foure hundred Pages brought in his meare, all fonnes of great Lords, and Magrificent placed it vpon a Table in his great Hall. The meate being brought in , then came Mutez uma to behold the Diffres, and appointed those Diffres that liked him beft, and Chafing-diffres were prepared to keepe that meate warme, and feldome would be cate of any other Difh, except the 50

Lord Steward or Comptroller should highly commend any other Diff. Before hee fate downe, came twentie of his Wines of the fairest and best esteemed, or else those that served weekly by turne, brought in the Bason and Ewre, with great humblenesse. This done, hee sate him downe, and then came the Lord Steward, and drew a woodden Nette before him , because none should come nigh his Table. And this Noble man alone placed the Diffies , and also tooke them away , for the Pages who brought in the meate , came not neere the Table , nor yet fpake any worde , nor no man elle.

Bare-footfer-

While the Lord Mutezuma was at his meate, except some leaster, they all serued him bare-footed. There affitted alwayes fomewhat a farre off, fixe ancient and Noblemen, vnto 60 whom he vied to give of the Dish that best liked him, who received the same at his hand with great reuerence, and eate it incontinent, without looking in his face, which was the greatest humilitie that they could vie before him. Hee had muficke of Fiddle, Flute, and of a

Snaile-shell, and a Cauldron covered with a skinne, and such other strange Instruments. They had very ruill voyces to fing. Alwayes at dinner time he had Dwarfes, crocke-backes, and other deformed counterfeits, all for majestie and to laugh at , who had their meate in the Hall among the letters and Idiots, which were fed with part of the meate that came from Matezama his lefters. table, all the rest of the meate was given to three thousand of the guard, who attended ordinarily in the yard or Court, and therefore they fay that there was brought for his Table three thousand dishes, and as many pots of wine, such as they vie, and that continually the Buttrey and Pantrey flood open, which was a wonder to fee what was in them. The platters, diffies, and cups, were all of earth, whereof the King was ferued but once, and fo from meale to meale new. He had likewise his sernice of Gold and Plate very rich, but hee vied not to bee serued with it

(they fay) because hee would not bee ferued twice therewith, the which hee thought a base plate. Some affirme, that young children were flaine and dreffed in divers kinde of diffies for Matezume his table, but it was not io, onely of mans fielh facrificed he fed now and then. The table being taken To, then came againe the Gentlewomen to bring water for his hands, with the like

reperence as they yied at the first, and then went they to dinner with the other wives, fo that then the Gentlemen and Pages waited as their course fell.

When his table was taken up, and his Seruitors gone to meate, Matezuma fate ftill : then came in the fuiters that had any affaires to deale with him, have-footed, for all the persons did 20 vie that reverence, except some Princes his Kinsmen, as the Lords of Tesence, and Tlacopan and a few others : and beeing cold weather, they vied to weare olde ragged clothes voon their rich State ceremogarments. All furters vied to make three or foure courtefies, not looking toward his face, and mes. ipeaking vnto him their heads dowwards, and in that order retyred backe againe. Mutezunta answered his futers very granely, with low voyce, and in few words, and not to all futers for others his Secretaries or Counseliers that flood by, answered for him, and having their answere. they returned backwards, not turning their tailes to the Prince. After these bufineffes done . he vied fome recreation, hearing letters or Songs, wherein he delighted much, or elie to looke voon letters and the Players, who play with their feet, as we doe with our hands. Thele haue a cudgell like vn- Players. to a Paillers rowler, which they tolle high and low as it were a ball in the Ayre, ftrange to be-

40 hold. They vie other Playes to paffe the time, in fuel an order, that it feemed manuellous to the Gimes. lookers on. Cortes brought into Spaine tome of thefe Phyers. Allo they vie Matachine s.in fuch fort they doe play, that there fand each voon other flouders, and hee that flandeth highest, the weth many feates. Sometime Mutezama did behold the Players, who played at a game called Pacolizati, which is much like our Tables, and they play with beanes, squared like Dice, which they call Patolli, and throw them out of both their hands upon a matte, or else upon the ground, where are made certain strikes, voon which they fet downe the chance that is throwne: and at this game they play all that they have, and many times they value their owne bodies, and play that into captiuitie, and to remayne a flaue, I meane, fuch as are common Gamesters of

40 Sometimes Mutezuma went to the Tennis Court, Their ball is celled Pillamalizzli, and is The Tennis made of the gumme which commeth from a tree called UB. This tree growth in a hot Coun- play in Mexico. trev. The gumme being kneaded together, and fo made round, is as blacke as pitch, and fomewhat heavie, and very hard for the hand, but yet good and light to rebound, and better then our

wind-bals. They play not at Chafes, but at Bandy, or at Check, that is, if the ball touch the wall it loofeth. They may strike the ball with any pact of their body, but there is alwayes a penaltie if they onely ftrike not with the buttocke or fide, which is the finest play : whereof they yie a skinne upon each buttocke. They play io many to io many for a packe of Mantles, or according to the abilitie of the Players. Also they play for gold and feathers, and sometime for their owne bodies, as they vie at Patolli, which is there permitted and lawfull. The Tennis So Court is called Tlackee, and is a Hall long and narrow, but wider vpwards, then downewards.

and higher on the fides then at the ends, which is an industry for their play. The house is alwayes white and smooth in the side walles they have certaine stones like vnto Milstones, with a little hole in the middeft that paffe; h through the ftone, the hole is fo fmall, that fcarcely the ball may palle through, but he that chanceth to thike the ball into the hole, which feldometh happeneth, winnerth the game, and by an ancient Law and cuftome among Tennis Players, he ought to haut the Cloakes of all those that stand and behold the play, on that side that the ball went in and in fome Tennis Courts, the halfe of the garments of them that fland looking on. The Winner is then bound to make certaine Sacrifice to the God of the Tennis play, and to the ftone where the ball entred. The beholders of the play would fay, that fuch a Winner should be a Thiefe and an Adulterer, or elle that he should die quickly.

They vied in the Temple of the Tennis play, two Images of the God of the Ball, which flood God of the Ball, which flood youn the two lower walles. The Sacrifice was celebrated at mid-night, with many Ceremonies and Witch-crafts, and Songs for that purpole. Then came a Prieft from the Cathedrall Church. with other Religious persons to bleffe the Sacrifice, faying certain denillish Prayers, and throw-

ing the ball foure times in the Tennis Court. In this order was the Tennis play confectated and after this confectation it was lawfull to play, or elie not, for this diligence was first to bee done when any Tennis Court or play was newly built. The owner of the Tennis Court alfe would neuer fuffer any to play, vntill he had first offered something to the Idoll, their Superstition was

His Palace.

Twentie

CMutezuma had many houses as well in Mexico as without, for his recreation and pleasure. as also for his ordinary dwelling. To write of all it should be tedious, but where his continual abilding was, he named Tepac, that is to fay, Palace. And that Palace had twentie doores or pates which had their out-comming into the common streets. It hath three Courts, and in the one Three Courts. standeth a faire Fountaine, many Hals, and a hundred Chambers of twentie three, and thirtie foot long, an hundred Bathes and Hot-houses: and although the building was without nayles. vet very good workmanship. The walles were made of Masons worke, and wrought of Marble. Iafpe, and other blacke stone, with veines of red, like vnto Rubies and other Stones, which sliftered very faire: the roofes were wrought of Timber, and curiously carued: the Timber was Cedar, Cyptesse, and Pine-tree: the Chambers were painted and hung with Cloth of Cotton. and Cloth made of Conies haire and feathers. The beds were poore and of no value, for they

were nothing but Mantles laid vpon Mats, or vpon Hay, or elfe Mats alone : few men lay with in those Houses. Multitude of

There were a thousand women, and some affirme that there were three thousand, accounting Gentlewomen, Seruants and Slaues : the most were Noblemens Daughters, Mateunma tooke of 20 them for his felfe, those that liked him best, and the others he gaue in mariage to Gentlemen his Seruants. The faying was, that hee had at one time a hundred and fiftie women his wines with childe, who through the perswasion of the Deuill, tooke Medicines to cast their creatures, because they knew that they should not inherit the State : these his wines, had many old women for their Guard, for no man was permitted to looke vpon them.

His Armes hee

The shield of Armes that is set in his Palace, and likewise carried to the Warres, is an Eagle Conie was his foaring vpon a Tigre his tallons, bent as taking prey. Some thinke it is a Gryffon and not an armes, but this Eagle. The Griffons in time past, say they, did cause the Vale of Anacatian to bee dispeopled, Eagle was ge- for they were great denourers of men, and that their abiding was in the Mountaines of Teorem: nerallto all the they approue that these Mountaines were called Contachtepelt, of Contachti, which is a Gryffon, 30 Mexicas Kings they approue that these Mountaines were called Cuttachtepelt, of Cuttachtli, which is a Gryffon Gryffon-tale, bigger then a Lion: but the Spaniards did neuer see any of them. The Indians by their old Pictures doe paint those Gryffons to hauea kind of haire and no feathers, and also affirme, that with their tallons and teeth they breake mens bones. They have the courage of a Lion and the countenance of an Eagle : they paint him with foure feet, and teeth, with a kinde of downe, more like wooll then feathers, with his beake, tallons, and wings. There are also other Lords that give the Gry ffon in their Armes, flying with a heart in his tallons.

A house of

Mutezama had another house, with very good lodgings and faire galleries, built vpon Pillars of laspe which extendeth toward a goodly Garden, in the which there are ten ponds or moe, fome of falt-water for Sea-fowle, and other some of fresh water for River-fowle, and Lakefowle, which ponds are deuited with finces to emptie and to fill at their pleafure, for the clean-40 nesse of the feathers. There is such a number of Fowle that scarcely the ponds may hold them, and of fuch divers kindes both in feathers and making, as fure it was an admiration for the Spaniards to behold, for the most of them they knew not, nor yet had at any time seene the like. And to enery kind of Fowle they gave fuch bayte as they were wont to feede of in the Fields or Rivers. There did belong to that house three hundred persons of service some were to clense the ponds: other some did fish for baite; other some served them with meate; other did loofe them and trimme their feathers : others had core to looke to their Egges : others to fet them abrood: others cured them when they were licke : and the principallest Office was to plucke the Feathers : for of them was made rich Mantles , Tapiffary , Targets, tuffes of Feathers, and many other things wrought with Gold and Silver: a most per- 50

their feathers, fit worke. fowlefor haw- Fowle , not because there are more then in the other , but because they bee bigger and king and other to hawke with all, and are Fowle of rapine, wherefore they are effeemed as more nobler

There are in this House many high Hals, in the which are kept men, women and children: in some of them are kept such as are borne white of colour : which doth very seldome happen : in other some are Dwarfes, Crooked-backes, Burstenmen, Counterfeites, and monitrous Perfons, in great number : they fay , that they vied to deforme them when they were Children , to fet forth the Kings greatneffe : euery of thefe perfons were in feuerall Hailes by 60 themselues.

There is another House with large quarters and lodgings, which is called a House for

In the lower Halles were great Cages made of timber : in some of them were Lions, in other Tigres, in other Ounces, in others Wolues : in conclusion , there was no foure-footed beak that wanted there, onely to the effect that the mightie Mutezama might fay that hee had fuch things in his house. They were fed with their ordinary, as Ginea cockes, Deere, Dogges, and

There was also in other Hals great earthen vessels, some with earth, and some with water, wherein were Snakes, as groffe as a mans thigh, Vipers, Crocodiles, which they call Cap- Snakes, &c. manes, or Lizarts of twenty foote long, with fuch Scales and head as a Dragon hath: Alfo or her little Lizarts, and other venemous Beafts and Serpents as well of the water as of the land, a terrible fight for the lookers on .

There were also other Cages for foule of rapine of all forts, as Hawkes, Kites, Boyters, and at Foules of prey the least nine or tenkinde of Haukes. This house of foule had of daily allowance five hundred 10 Gynea cockes, and three hundred men of feruice, besides the Falconers and Hunters. which are

infinite. There were many other forts of Foules that our men knew not, which feemed by their beake and talents good to Hauke withall .

To the Snakes and other venemous Beafts they gave the bloud of men facrificed , to feede them, and some fay, they gave vnto them mans flesh, which the great Lizarts doe eate very well. The Spaniards law the floore couered with bloud like a iellie in a Slaughter-house. it flunke horribly. It wasftrange to fee the Officers in this Houfe, how every one was occupied. Our men tooke great pleasure in beholding such strange things, but they could not away with the roaring of the Lyons, the fearefull hufing of the Snakes and Adders, the dolefull howling and barking of the Wolnes, the forcowfull yelling of the Ownzes

20 and Tigres, when they would have meate. Most certaine, in the night feason it seemed Deuils dena Dingeon of Hell, and a dwelling place of the Deuill, and euen to it was indeede for neere at hand was a Hall of a hundred and fiftie foote long, and thirty foote broad, where was a Chappell with the Roofe of Siluer and Gold in leafe Wainefcotted, and decked with great store of Pearle and Stone, as Agattes, Cornerines, Emeralds, Rubies; and diversother forts, and this was the Oratory where Matezama prayed in the night feafon. and in that Chappell the Deuill did appeare vnto him, and gaue him answere according to

He had other houses like vnto Barnes, onely for the feathers of foules, and for mantels which Store-houses proceeded of his rents and tributes, a thing much to be feene: vpon the doores was fet his armes, 30 which was a Conie. Here dwelled the chiefe Officers of his house, as Treasurer, Controller, Receiners and other officers appertaining to the Kings reienews. Materian had no house wherein Officers

was not an Oratorie for the Deuill, whom they worthipped for the Iewels there. And therefore those houses were great and large.

Mutexume had some houses of Armor, vpon the doores wherof stood a Bowe and Arrows. In these houses was great store of all kinde of Munition which they vie in their wars : as Bowes, of Mutequant Arrowes, Slines, Launces, Darts, Clubbes, Swords and Bucklers, and gallant Targets more trim then strong, Skuls and Splints, but not manie, and all made of wood, gilt or concred with leather. The wood whereof they make their Armour and Targets, is verie hard and ftrong, for Armese they vie to toaif it at the fire, and at their Anow ends they encloie a little peece of Flint fone, 40 or a peece of a Fish bone called Labifa and that is venemous, for if any be burt therewith and the

head remaine in the wound, it so festereth, that it is almost incurable. Their Swords are of wood, and the edge thereof is of flint stone, enclosed or joyned into 2 Wodden flaffe, with a certaine kinde of glew which is made of a roote called Zacole, and Tenxalli, which Swords with is a kinde of strong sand, whereof they make a mixture, and after kneade it with bloud of Bats stone edees. or Rearemice, and other Foule, which doth glew raruellous ftrong, and lightly neuer vncleaueth: of this stuffe, they make nailes, pearcers, and augers, wherewith they bore Timber and

ftone: with their Swords they cut Speares, yea and a Horfe necke at a blow, and made dents in-to Iron, which feemed a thing unpossible and incredible. In the Citie no man may weare weapon, but onely in warres, hunting, and among the Kings Guard.

Befides the forefaid houses, he had manie others for his onely recreation and passime, with ex- The Gardens cellent faire Gardens of medicinall Hearbes, sweete Flowers, and Trees of delectable sauour. of Mulecuma. In that Garden were a thousand personages, made and wrought artificially of leaves and flowers. Mutezuma would not permit that in this Garden should be any kinde of pot Hearies, or Note of a things to be fold, faying, that it did not appertaine to Kings to have things of profit, among magnificent their delights and pleasures, for such things (laid he) did appertaine to Merchants. Yet not minde. withflanding he had Orchards with manie and fundrie fruites, but they flood farre from the Citie, and whither seldome times he went : he had likewise out of Mexico pleasant houses in fure, Woods and Forreits, of great compaffe, enuironed with water, in the which he had Fountaines, Rivers, Ponds with fish, Warrens of Conies, Rockes and covert where were Harts, Bucks, Hares,

62 Foxes, Wolues, and fuch like, with wildernesse for euerie fort. To these places the Lords of Mexico vied to goe and sport themselves, such and so many were the houses of Mutezuma, wherein few Kings were equall with him.

He had daily attending upon him in his private Guard, fixe hundred Noblemen and Gentle-Aaaaa a

The Court and men, and each of them three or foure feruants, and some had twentie fernants or moe, according Guard of Mas- to his estate: and in this manner he had three thousand men attendant in his Court, and some affirme more, all the which were fed in his house of the meate that came from his table. The feruing men alwaies abode below in the Court all the day, and went not from thence till after

apper. It is to be thought that his Guard was the greater, because the strangers were there, although in effect of truth it is most certaine, that all the Lords that are vinder the Mexical Empire (as they fay) are thirtie perions of high efface, who are able to make each of them a hundred thous fand men. There are three thouland Lords of Townes, who have many vastis. These Noble-State-caution, men did abide in Mexico certaine times of the yeare, in the Court of Materama, and could to not depart from thence without especiall licence of the Emperour, leaving each of them a forme or brother behinde them for fecuritie of rebellion, and for this cause they had generally houses in the Citie: fuch and to great was the Court of Mutezuma,

Tribures and

There is not in all the Dominions of Mutezumaany fubiect that paieth not tribute vnto him. The Noblemen pay their tribute in personall service. The Husbandmen called Macenalin with body and goods. In this fort they are either Tenants, or elfe heites to their poffessions. Those which are herres, doe pay one third part of all their fruite and commoditie that they doe reape or bring vp, as Dogges, Hennes, Foule, Conies, Gold, Silver, Stones, Salt, Waxe, Hone. Mantels, Feathers, Cotten, and a certaine fruite called Casas, that ferneth for money, and allo to eate. Allo all kinde of Graine, and Garden Hearbes, and Fruites, whereof they doe main- 10

The Tenants doe pay monethly, or yearely, as they can agree, and because their tribute is great, they are called iliues, for when they may have licence to eate Egges, they thinke it a great fauour. It was reported that they were taxed what they should eate, and all the refishe was taken from them. They went verie poorely cloathed, yea and the most of their treasure was an earthen Pot, wherein they boiled their Hearbes, a couple of Milstones to grinde their Come. and a Mat tolye vpon. They did not onely paie this Rent, and Tribute, but also ferued with their bodies at all times when the great King should command. They were in such great subis Rion to their Prince, that they durft not speake one word although their daughters should be taken from them to bevied at pleasure, All the aforesaid rents they brought to Mexico vpon their to backes, and in Boates, I meane fo much as was necessarie for the promition of the House and Court of Mutexame, all the reft was fpent among Souldiers, and bartred for Gold, Plate, Precious stones, and other rich Iewels, esteemed of Princes, all the which was brought to the Treasurie. In Mexico was large and great Barnes and Houles to receive and keepe the Corne for provis Secompicare fion of the Citie, with Officers, and underofficers, who did receive the fame, and kept account thereof in Bookes of painted figures.

Receivers.'

And in enery Towne was a Receiver, who bare in his hand a rod or a bush of Feathers, and thole gaue up their accounts in Mexico. If any fuch had beene taken with deceit and fallhood, death was his reward, yea and his kinred punished with penalties, as of a linage of a traitour to his Prince. The Husbandmen, if they paid not well their Tribute, were appreliended for the 40 fame, and if they were found to be poore through sicknesse and infirmitie, then they were borne withall, but if they were found to be lazie and floathfull, they should be vied accordingly : but in conclusion, if they paied it not at a day appointed, then they should be fold for slaues to pay their debt, or elfe be facrificed.

There were many other Prouinces, which paid a certaine portion, and reknowledged feroice. but this Tribute was more of honour then profit, In this fort Mutez uma had more then fiffitient to prouide his house and wars, and to heape vp great store in his Treasury Moreover, he spent nothing in the building of his houses, for of long time he had certaine Townes that paid no other Tribute, but onely to worke and repaire continually his Houses at their owne proper coft, menslabours and paid all kinde of workemen carrying vpon their backes, or drawing in fleds, Scone, Lime, 50 Timber, Water, and all other necessaries for the worke. Likewise they were bound to prouide all the firewood that should be spent in the Court , which was a great thing , and did amount to two hundred and thirty weight a day, which was fine hundred mens burdens, and fome dayes in the winter much more. And for the Kings Chimneys they brought the barke of Oake trees, which wes belt esteemed for the light thereof, for they were great Sorcerers. Mutezuma had one hundred Cities with their Prouinces, of whom he received Rents, Tributes, and Vaffalage, where he maintained Garrison of Souldiers, and had Treasurers in each

His dominion did extend from the North fea to the South fea, and fix hundred miles in longitude within the maine Land, although in very deede there were some Townes, as Tlaxeal 63 lon, Mechacan, Panuco, and Teocantepec, which were his enemies, and paid him neither Tribute nor Seruice : but yet the Ransome was much, when any of them was taken Al'o there were other Kings and Noblemen, as of Texento, and Tlacopan, which were not in jubication vnto him, but onely in homage and obedience, for they were of his owne linage, vnto whom Matezuma married his Daughters.

Description of Mexico as it flourished in those times.

Exico at the time when Cortes entred, was a Citie of fixtie thousand houses. The Kings Ment and o her Noblemens houses were great, large, and beautifull, the other were small and meane, without either doores or windowes; and although they were fmall, yet there dwelleth in some of them, two, three, yea and ten persons, by reason whereof, the Citie was wonder-

10 fully replenished with people.

This Citie is built vpon the water, even in the fame order as Venuce is: All the body of the Three forts of Citie flandeth in a great large Lake of water. There are three fores of ftreetes very broad and Streetes faire, the one fore are onely water, with many Bridges : another fore of onely earth: and the third of earth and water : that is to fay, the one halfe earth to walke upon, and the other halfe for Boates to bring promition of all forts. These fireetes are kept alwayes cleane, and the most part of the houses have two doores, the one towards the Cawley, and the other towards the water at the which they take Boate to goe where they lift. And although this Citie is founded ypon water, yet the same water is not good to drinke, whereof there is brought by conduit water from a place called Capaltepec, three miles diffant from the Citie, which fpringeth out of a

20 little hill, at the foote whereof standeth two Statues or couered Images wrought in stone with their Targets and Lances, the one is of Mulezuma, and the other of Axaiaca his Father. The water is brought from thence in two Pipesor Canals in great quantity, and when the one is foule, then all the water is conucied into the other, till the first be made cleane. From this Fountaine all the whole Citie is prouided, fo that they goe felling the fame water from freete

to threete in little Boates, and doe pay a certaine tribute for the same.

This Citie is divided into two threetes, the one was called Timelalco, that is to fav. a little Hand and the other Mexico, where Mutexuma his dwelling and Court was, and is to be interpreted a Spring. This streete is the fairest and most principall, and because of the Kings Pallace there, the Citie was named Mexico, although the old and first name of the Citie was Tenuch-30 sitlan, which doth fignifie Fruite out of stone, for the name is compounded of Tetl, which is.

Stone, and Nuchtle, which is a Fruite in Cuba and Hiffanield, valled Tunat; the Tree (or to ipeake properly, the Thiftle) that beareth this fruite, is named Noval, and is nothing almost but leaves It growth als of a footebroad and round, and three inches thicke, some more, and some leffe, according to the to in Bermidde growth, full of thornes which are venemous; the leafe is greene, and the thorne or pricke ruffer. After that is planted, it encreaseth, growing leafe veto leafe, and the foote thereof commeth to be as the body of a tree, and one leafe doth onely produce another at the point. but at the fixles of the fame leaves proceede other leaves. In some Provinces where water is scant, they vie to drinke the juice of these leaves. The fruite thereof called Nuchili, is like vnto Figges, and even fo hath his little kernels or graines within, but they are fomewhat larger, and crowned 40 like vnto a Medler. There are of them of fundry colours, fome are greene without, and Car-

nationlike within, which have a good taste. Others are yellow, and others white, and some speckled; the best fore are the white : it is a fruite that will last long. Some of them have the tafte of Peares, and othersome of Grapes: it is a cold and a fresh fruite, and best esteemed in the heate of Summer. The Spaniards doe more efteeme them then the Indians. The more the ground is laboured where they grow, the fruite is to much the better. There is yet another kinde of this fruite red, and that is nothing effeemed, although his tafte is not euill, but because it doth colour and dye the eaters mouth, lippes, and apparell, yea, and maketh his vrine looke like pure bloud. Many Spaniards at their first comming into India, and eating this Fruite, were in a maze, and at their wits end, thinking that all the blood in their bodies came out in vrine : yea and 50 many Philitions at their first comming were of the same beliefe; for it hath happened, when

they have bin fent for vnto fuch as have eaten this fruite, they not knowing the cause, and beholding the wrine, by and by they ministred medicine to stanch the bloud: a thing ridiculous, to fee the Philitians fo deceived. Of this fruite Nuchtle and Tetl, which is a Stone, is compounded Tenuchtlatan. When this City was begun to be founded, it was placed neere voto a great Stone that stood in the middeft of the Lake, at the foote whereof grew one of their Nopal crees, and therefore Mexico giveth for armes and deurse the foot of a Nopaltree springing from a flone,

according to the Cities name.

Mexico is as much to Tay, as a Spring or Fountaine, according to the property of the vowell The name of and speech, Others doe affirme, that Mexico hath his name of a more ancient time, whose first Mexico. 60 Founders were called Mexits, for voto this day the Indian dwellers in one ffreete of this City are called of Mexico. The Mexiti tooke name of thir principallel Idoli called Mexitli, who was in as great veneration as Vitzilopuchtli, god of the warre. Mexico is environed with I weet water. and bath three waves to come vnto it by cawfie, the one is from the West, and that cawfie is a mile and a halfe long. Another from the North, and containeth three miles in length, Eastward

Two Lakes, other treft, El bing and winde. Some hance mound. design the cause of the Scar flowing from the faltneffe. Caule of the Glmsfie.

the Citie hath no entrie. But Southward the Cawfey is fixe miles long, which was the way that Cortex entred into the Citie. The Lake that Mexico is planted in, although it feemteh one, vet it is two, for the one is of water faltish, bitter, and pestiferous, and no kinde of fish liveth in it. And the other water is wholesome, good, and sweet, and bringeth forth small fish. The salt water ebbeth and floweth according to the winde that bloweth. The fweet water standeth higher. flowing by the fo that the good water falleth into the cuill, and reverteth not backward, as fome hold opinion, The falt Lake contayneth fifteene miles in breadth, and fifteene in length, and more then five and fortie in circuit, and the Lake of fweet water contayneth even as much, in fuch fort, that the whole Lake contayneth more then thirtie leagues, and hath about fiftie townes fituated round about it, many of which townes doe contayne fire thousand housholds, and some ten thoufand, yea and one towne called Tezenco, is as bigge as Mexico. All this Lake of water springerh out of a Mountaine that flandeth within fight of Mexico. The cause that the one part of the Lake is brackish or ialtish, is, that the bottome or ground is all sale, and of that water great quantitle of falt is daily made.

200000.C2-

In this great Lake are about two hundred thousand little boates, which the Indians call Acalles, and the Spaniards call them Canous, according to the speech of Cuba and Santo Domingo, wrought like a kneading trough : lome are bigger then other fome, according to the greatnelle of the body of the tree whereof they are made. And where I number two hundred thousand of these boats. I speake of the least, for Mexico alone hath aboue fiftie thousand ordinarily to carry and bring vnto the Citie victuall, prouision, and passengers, so that on the market day all the ffreets of water are full of them.

The Market

The Market is called in the Indian tongue Tlanquizzli: every Parish hath his Market place to place of Mexis buy and fell in : but Mexico, and Tlatelulco onely, which are the chiefest Cities, have great Faires and places fit for the same, and especially Mexico hath one place where most dayes in the veere is buying and felling, but every fourth day is the great Market ordinarily : and the like cuftome as vied throughout the Dominions of Muteranna. This place is wide and large, compafed round about with doores, and is fogreat, that a hundred thousand persons come thither to chop and change, as a Citie most principall in all that Region. Wherefore the refort is from farre parts Order of Sel. vnto that place. Every occupation and kinde of merchandile hath his proper place appointed,

The diuers

which no other may by any meanes occupie or diffurbe. Likewife pefterous wares haue their 30 place accordingly (that is to fay) stone, timber, lime, bricke, and all kinde of stuffe vnwrought, being necessarie to build withall. Also Mats both fine and course of sundrie workmanship, also Coales, Wood, and all forts of earthen veffell, glafed and painted very curiously : Deere skinnes both raw and tanned in haire and without hare, of many colours, for Shoomakers, Bucklers, Targets, Ierkins, and lining of woodden Corfelets: also skinnes of other beafts and fowle infeathers readie dreffed of all forts, the colours and strangenesse thereof was a thing to behold. The richeit merchandise was Salt, and Mantels of cotton wooll of divers colours, both great and smal, some for beds, others for garmen's and clothing, other for tapillarie to hang houses, other cotten cloth for lining breeches, thirts, table clothes, towels, napkins, and such like things.

There were alfo Mantels made of the leaves of the tree called Metl , and of Palme tree , and 40

Cony haire, which are well efteemed, being very warme, but the Couerlets made of feathers are the best: they sell threed made of Cony haire, pieces of linnen cloth made of cotton wooll, also skaines of threed of all colours : also it is strange to see the great store of fowle, some wilde, some tame, some water fowle, and other some of rapine. All the brauerie of the Market, is the place where gold and feathers toyntly wrought is fold, for any thing that is in request is there Indian worke- lively wrought in gold and feathers, and gallant colours. The Indians are so expert and perfect in this science, that they will worke or make a Butter-flie, any wild Beast, Trees, Roses, Flowers, Herbs, Rootes, or any other thing, fo lively, that it is a thing marvellous to behold. It hapneth many times that one of these workmen in a whole day will eate nothing, onely to place one feather in his due perfection, turning and toffing the feather to the light of the Sunne, into the so shade or darke place, to see where is his most natural perfection, and till his worke be finished he will neither eate nor drinke. There are few Nations of fo much patience. The Art or Science of Gold-fmiths, among them is the most curious, and very good workmanship engrauen with Gold miths tooles made of flint, or in mold. They will cast a platter in mold with eight corners, and every corner of feuerall metall, that is to lay, the one of gold, and the other of filuer, without any kind of folder; they will also found or cast a little caldron with loose handles hanging thereat, as wee vie to cast a bell : they will also cast in mold a fish of metall with one scale of filter on his backe, and another of gold : they will make a Parret or Popinjay of metall, that his tongue shall shake, and his head moone, and his wings flutter: they will caft an Ape in mold, that both liands and feet shall thrre, and hold a spindle in his hand seeming to spin, yea and an Apple in his hand, as though he would eate it. Our Spaniards were not a little amazed at the sight of these things. For our Gold-Imiths are not to be compared vnto them. They have skill also of Amell worke, and to fet any precious ftone. But now as touching the Market, there is to fell Gold, Silver, Copper, Leade, Latton, and Tin, although there is but little of the three last metals mentioned. There are

pearles, precious stones, divers and fundrie forts of shells, and bones, spunges and other Pedlers ware, which certainly are many and strange forts, yea, and a thing to laugh at their Haberdash toyes and trifles. There are also many kinde of Hearbs, Roots, and Seedes, as well to bee eaten. as for medicine, for both men, women, and children, have great knowledge in hearbs, for through pouertie and necessitie, they seeke them for their fustenance and helpe of their infirmities and disrafes. They fpend little among Physicians, although there are some of that Art, and many Apothecaries, who doe bring into the market Ointments, Sirrops, Waters, and other drugs, fit for ficke persons; they cure all diseases almost, with hearbs; yea, as much as for to kill Lice, they

haue a proper hearbe for the purpofe. The severall kindes of meates to bee sold are without number, as Snakes without head and taile, little Does gelt, Molls, Rats, long Wormes, Lice, yea and a kinds of earth, for at one fea- Victoall of dis fon in the yeere they have Nets of maile, with the which they rake vp a certaine dust that is uers forts. bred you the water of the Lake of Mexico, and that is kneaded together like vnto Oas of the Sea : they gather much of this victuall, and keepe it in heapes, and make thereof Cakes like vnto brick-bats: they fell not onely this ware in the Market, but also fend it abroad to other Faires and Markets afarre off: they eate this meate with as good flomacks as wee eate cheefe, yea and they hold opinion that this skum or fatneffe of the water, is the cause that such great number of they note opinion to the Lake, which in the winter featon is infinite. All the Sellers pay a certaine fimme for their shops or standings to the King, as a custome, and they to bee presented and de-

20 fended from thecues: and for that cause there goe certaine Sergeants or Officers vp and downe the Market to efpie out malefactors. In the middeft of the Market flandeth a house which may bee feene throughout the Faire, and there fitteth twelue ancient men for Iudges to dispatch Law matters: their buying and felling is to change one ware for another, as thus, one giueth a Hen for Barreting a bundell of Maiz, other give Mantels for Salt, or money which is Cacao, and this is their order to chop and change : they have measure and strike for all kinde of Corne, and other earthen meafores for Hony and Wine, and if any Measure bee falfified, they punish the offenders, and breake

The Temple is called Tencalli, that is to say, Gods Honse; Tens!, signifieth God; and Calli is The great a Hosse, a name very fit, if that house had beene of the true God. The Spaniards that vnderstand Temple of

30 not the language, doe ptonounce and call those Temples Cuer, and the God Vitzitopuebili , Vebi Mexico. lobes. There are in Mexico many Churches with Towers for their Parithes and Streets, wherein are Chappels and Altars where the Images and Idols doe stand, and those Chappels doe serue for burial places of their Founders; for others are buried in the ground about them or Churchvards, All their Temples are of one fashion, therefore it shall bee now sufficient to speake of the principall Church. This Temple is fquare, and doth contayine every way as much around as a Croffe-bow can reach levell : it is made of ftone, with foure doores that abuteth wpon the three Cawfeys, and vpon another part of the Citie, that hath no Cawfey but a faire ftreet. In the Cawleys, and vpon another part of the Close, the natural no Cawley out a late tireer. In the middelt of this Quidern flandesh a mount of earth and flone, figure likewing, and fiftie fathon Chief-Temple long energy way, built yeward like wrote 2 Pyramide of Egypt, fauing the top is not flarpe, but described plane and flar, and ten fathom figure: ypon the Welf fide, were steps up to the top, in number

an hundreth and fourteene, which being fo many, high, and made of good ftone, did feeme a beautifull thing. It was a strangesight to behold the Priests, some going vp, and some downs with ceremonies, or with men to be facrificed. Vpon the top of this Temple are two great AL. Two Ahars with ceremonies, or with men to be facrificed. tars, a good space distant the one from the other, and so nigh the edge or brim of the wall, that fearly a man may goe behinde them at pleasare. The one Altar standard on the right hand, and the other on the left : they were but of fine foot high, each of them had the backe part made of the other on the test with monthrous and foule figures, the Chappell was faire and well wrought of Maions worke and timber, every Chappell had three lofts, one about another, furfayned vpon pillars, and with the height thereof it shewed like vnto a faire Towre, and beautified the Citie 50 afarre off: from thence a man may fee all the Citie and Townes round about the Lake, which was yndoubtedly a goodly prospect. And because Cortes and his companie should see the beautie

thereof; Mutezama brought him thither, and shewed him all the order of the Temple, even from the foot to the top. There was a certaine plot or space for the Idoll Priefts to celebrate their from the foot to the top. There was a certaine plot or space for the Idoll Priefts to celebrate their fruite without disturbance of any. Their generall prayers were made toward the rising of the fruite without disturbance of any. Sunne. Vpon each Altar ftandeth a great Idoll. Beside this Towre that standeth vpon the Pvramide, there are fourtie Towres great and fault belonging to other little Temples which fland Forik townes. in the fame circuit, the which although they were of the fame making, yet their prospect was not Westward, but other wayes, because there should be a difference betwire the great Temple Scuerall Tem-60 and them. Some of their Temples were bigger then others, and other one of a journal God, plesso frue-

among the which there was one round Temple, dedicated to the God of the aire, called Queenl, rall gods, among the same as the aire goeth round about the Heauens, even for that confideration they made A firange his Temple round. The entrance of that Temple had a doore, made like vnto the mouth of a doore. nis rempire sound was painted with foule and deuillish gestores, with great teeth and gums wrought, which was a thing to feare those that should enter in thereat, and especially the Christians

vnto whom it represented very Hell, with that vgly face and monstrous teeth-

There were other Tencalles in the Citie, that had the alcending wp by steps in three places: all these Temples had houses by themselves with all service, and Priests and particular Gods, Ac Temele-halls, every doore of the great Temple standetha large Hall and goodly Lodgings, both high and low round about, which houses were common Armories for the Citie, for the force and strength of every Towne is the Temple, and therefore they have there placed their store-house of munition They had other darke houses full of Idols, great and small, wrought of fundrie metals, they are

Blondte v Deuillifh Psicfts.

all bathed and washed with bloud, and doe shew very blacke through their daily sprinkling and anointing them with the fame, when any man is facrificed: yea, and the walls are an inch thicke with bloud, and the ground is a foot thick of bloud, so that there is a deuillish slingh. The Priests 10 or Ministers goe daily into those Oratories, and suffer none others but great personages to enter in. Yea, and when any tuch goeth in, they are bound to offer tome man to bee facificed, that those bloudie Hangmen and Ministers of the Deuill may wash their hands in bloud of those so facrificed, and to fprinkle their house therewith. For their feruice in the Kitchin they have a Pond of water that is filled once a yeere, which is

scoo. refi-

brought by conduit from the principall Fountaine. All the refidue of the foresaid circuit serves for places to breede fowle, with Gardens of herbs and fweet trees, with Roles and flowers for the Altars. Such, so great and strange was this Temple of Mexico, for the service of the Deuil who had deceived those timple Indians. There doth reside in the same Temple continually five who had deceived those imperations thousand persons, and all they are lodged and have their living there, for that Temple is marvellous rich, and hath divers Townes onely for their maintenance and reparation, and are bound to fulfaine the same alwayes on foot. They doe sowe Corne, and maintayne all those fine thoufand persons with bread, fruit, flesh, fish, and fire-wood, as much as they neede, for they spend more fire-wood then is frent in the Kings Court : thefe persons doe line at their hearty case. as fernants and vallals vnto the Gods. The Gods of Mexico were two thousand in number, as the Indians reported, the chiefelt

The Idols of 2000. geds.

were Vitzilopuchili, and Tezcailipuca, whose Images stood highest in the Temple vpon the Altars: they were made of stone in full proportion as bigge as a Giant. They were couered with a lawne, called Nacar. Their Images were befer with pearles, precious stones, and pieces of gold, wrought like birds, beafts, fifthes, and flowres, adorned with Emeralds, Turquies, Calce- 20 dons, and other little fine stones, fo that when the lawne Nacar was taken away, the Images feemed very beautifull to behold. The Image had for a girdle great Snakes of gold, and for Collars and Chaines about their necks, ten hearts of men made of gold, and each of those Idols had a counterfait vitard with eyes of glaffe, and in their necks death painted : each of these things had their confiderations and meanings. Their two Gods were brethren, for Texeatipuca was the God of Providence, and Vitxilopuchis God of the Warres, who was x or fhipped and feared more

There was another God, who had a great Image placed upon the top of the Chappell of Idois, and he was efteemed for a special! and singular God about all the rest. This God was made of all kinde of seedes that groweth in that Country, and being ground, they made a certaine paste, 40 tempered with Childrens bloud, and Virgins facrificed, who were opened with their Rasors in the breafts, and their hearts taken out, to offer as first fruits vnto the Idoll. The Priests and Minifters doe confecrate this Idoll with great pompe and many ceremonies. All the Comarcans and Citizens are present at the consecration, with great triumph and incredible deuotion. After the confecration, many denout persons came and sticked in the dowie Image precious stones, wedges of gold, and other jewels. After all this pompe ended, no fecular man may touch that holy Image, no nor yet come into his Chappell, nay fearly religious persons, except they were Tlamacastli, who are Priests of order. They doe renew this Image many times with new dough , taking away the old, but then bleffed is he that can get one piece of the old rages for reliques, and chiefly for Souldiers , who thought themselves fure therewithin the warres. Also at the confe- 50 cration of this Idoll, a certaine vessell of water was blessed with many wordes and ceremonies, and that water was preferred very religiously at the foot of the Altar, for to confecrate the King when he should be crowned, and also to blesse any Captaine generall, when he should be elected for the warres, with onely giving him a draught of that water.

mens Sculls.

The Charnell Without the Temple, and ouer against the principall doore thereof, a stones cast distant, stanhouse, or place deth the Charnell house onely of dead mens heads, prisoners in warres, and facrificed with the knife. This monument was made like vnto a Theater, more larger then broad, wrought of lime and stone, with accending steps, in the walls whereof was grafted betwixt stone and stone a Scull, with the teeth outwards. At the foot and head of this Theater, were two Towres, made onely of lime and foulle, the teeth outward, and this wall having no other fluffe, feemed a 60 firange fight. At and voon the top of the Theater, were feventie Poles, flanding the one from the other toute or fine foot diffant, and each of them was full of stanes from the foot to the top-Each of their states had others made fast vnto them, so that every of them had fine sculs broched h ou the Temple. Andrew de Tapia did certifie me, that he and Gonçalo de Vmbria did rec-

kon them in one day, and found a hundred thirtie and fixe thousand sculls on the poles. states. and items. The other Towres were replemified out of number, a most cruell custome, being onely mens heads flaine in facrifice, although it hath a thew of humanitie for the remembrance there placed of death. There are also men appointed, that when one scull falleth, to set vo another in he place, to that the number may never want.

> Other Mexican Antiquities , Letters , Numbers , Teeres . Daves . Weekes . erc.

Here hath not beene found Letters at any time in the West India , onely in new Spaine were vied certaine figures which ferued for letters , with the which they kept in memorie and preferned their Antiquities. The figures that the Mexicans ofed for letters are great, by reason whereof they occupie great Volumes: they engrave them in stone or timber, and paint them upon walls, and also upon a paper made of cotton wooll, and leaves of the tree Metl. Their bookes are great and folded up like unto our broad cloathes, and written upon both fides. There are some bookes rolled up like a piece of flannell. There pronounce not v, g, r, f, y, therefore they ofe much p, c, l, x. This is the Mexican speech and Nahual. which is the best, playnest, and the most eloquent, in all new Spaine. There are some in Mexico that doe understand each other by whistling, which is ordinarily vied among Louers, and Theenes, a freech trais 20 to wonder at, and none of our men could come to the knowledge thereof.

Their reckoning by numbers was in this fort.

Ce.	One,	Chicoace, Six,	Maslactlioce,	Eleuen,	Matlattlichicoace,	Sixteene,
Ome,	Two,	Chicome, Seuen,	Matlactisome,	Twelue,	Matlattlichicome,	Seventeene,
Ei.	Three,	Chicues, Eight	Matlačilomei,	Thirteene,	Matlactlichicuei,	Eighteene.
Naus,	Foure,	Chiconani, Nine,	Matlactlinasi,	Fourteene,	Matlattlichiconaui	Nineteene,
Масия	Fine,	Matlac, Ten,	Mariactinacui	,Fifteene,	Cempoalls,	Twentie.

Euery number is simple untill you come to sixe, and then they count, sixe and one , sixe and two , sixe and three. Ten is a number by himselfe, then you must count ten and one, ten and two, ten and three, ten and foure, ten and fine. Then you count, ten, fine, and one; ten, fine, and two; ten, fine, and three. Twentie post by himfelfe, and all the greater numbers.

The Mexican reere is three hundreth and fixing dayes, for they have in their reere eighteene moneths. and enery monet b contayneth twentie dayes. They base other fine odde dayes, which goeth by themselnes, in the which they vied to celebrate great feasts of cruell and blondy facrifice, with much denotion. And reckoning after this fort they could not choose but erre, for they could not make equal the punctual course of the Sunne. Tea the Christian years is not perfett, although wee have learned Aftronomers. But yet thefe simple Indians went neere the marke.

The names of the moneths. Tlacaxipenalizeli, Tozcutzli, Huei Tozeuzeli. Toxcalt . Ecalcoalizth, Tocuilhuicineli, Hucitecuilhuiel, Miccailhuicintli, Veymiccailhuitl, Vehpaniztli, Pachtli, Huei Pachtli, Quecholli, Panquecaliztli, Hatemuztli, Tititlh, Izcalli, Coa Vitleuac,

The names of Dayes , were Cipacilis, A Spade ; Hecast, Aire or Winde ; Calls, A Houfe ; Cues Pali, A Lizzitt; Conalt, A Snake; Mizquintli, Death; Macatl, A wilde Hart; Toobili, A Cony; Atl, Water; Izcuynti, A Dogge; Osumatli, An Ape; Malinalli, A Broome; Acath, A Caue ; Oceloti, A Tigre ; Coanti, An Eagle ; Cozcaquabnil , A Buzzard ; Olin , A Temple ; Tepatlb, A Knife; Quianitl, Raine; Xuchul, A Rofe.

Although the se twentie names serve for the whole yeere, and are but the dayes of every moneth, yet therefore every moneth beginneth not with CipaQli, which is the first name, but as they follow in order. 50 and the fine odde dayes is the cause thereof. And also because their weeke is of thirteene dayes. which changeth the names, as by example, Cecipacti can goe no further then unto Matlactiomeiacati, which is thirteene, and then beginneth another weeke : and we doe not fay Maclacilinaus Oceloth, which is the fourteenth day, but wee fay Coccolot , which is one, and then reckon the other fixe names unto twentie. And when all the twentie dayes are ended, begin agains to reck on from the first name of the twentie, but not from one, but from eight. And because yee may better understand the matter, here is the example.

Cecipactli, Omehecatl, E. Calli, Naui Curzpali, Macuilcouatl, Chicoacen Mizquinth, Chie come Macatl, Chicuci Tochtli, Chiconauiatl, Marlaciz Cuintli, Mailactlioce Ocumatli, Matlactliome Malinalli, Matlactiomei Acatih. The next weeke following doth begin his dayes from one. And that one is the fourteenth name of the moneth and of the dayes, and faith : Ceotelotl, Omecoaut-60 li, Eucozca quahutli, Naui Olui, Macuil Tecpatl, Chicoacen Quantil, Chicome Xuchitl, Chicoei

Cipacli. Inthis fecond weeke, Cipacti came to fall on the eight day , being in the first weeke the first day. Cemacatl, Ometochtli, Eiatl, Naui Izcuintli, Macuil Ocumatli. And fo proceeds on to the third weeke, in the which this name Cipacili entreth not, but Macatl, which was the fenenth day in the 1125

first weeke, and had no place in the second, and is the first in the third. The reckoning is no darker then ours, which we have in a, b, c, d, e, f, g. For they also change with time, and tun in such fort, that a. which was the first letter of this mone; b, commeth to be the fift day of the next moneth, and the third me. neth he counteth to be the third day, and fo orderly doth the other fixe letters.

These Mexicans had another order to receon their jeeres, which exceeded not about four ein number ting of yearce. as one, two, three, foure, wherewith they account a hundred, fine hundred, a thousand, and as many mee as they lift. Those foure figures or names, are, Tochtli, Acatlh, Tecpath, Calli, and doe fignific a Cont. a Cane, a Knife, and a House, saying : Ce Totchili, One yeere; Ome Acatlib, Two yeeres: Ei Tecpatib, Three yeeres; Nam Calli, Foure yeeres; Macmil Tochtli, Five yeeres; Chioacen A. eath, Six yeters, Cleame Teopath, Seuen yetres; Chienes Calh, Eight yetres; Chiemani Tache.
14, Nine yetres; Mailailli Acath, Ten yetres; Mailaillince Teopath, Eleven yetres; Mailaillince Teopath, lattliome Calli, Twelue yeeres; Matlattliomei Tochtli, Thirteene yeeres. So that the rectoning palleth not abone thir teene, which is one weeks of the years, and endeth where he began.

The fecond weeke. (e Acasth, one yeere; Ome Tlepath, two yeeres; E. Calle, three yeeres. Nan Tochili, foure yeeres; Machil Acailh, five yeeres; Choacen Techailh, fixe yeeres; Choacen me Calli, seuen yeeres; Chicaei Tochili, eight yeeres; Chiconani Acailh, nine yeeres; Matlaft. li Tecpatib, ten yeeres; Matlatilioce Calli, eleuen yeeres; Matlatiliome Tocbili, twelue yeeres; Matlatiliomes Acailb, thirteene yeeres. The third weeke of yeeres. Ce Tespath, one yeere; Ome Calli two yeeres; Es Toebels, three yeeres; Nans Acasth, foure yeeres; Macuel Tespath, five yeeres; Chicacan Calli, lixe yeeres; Chicame Tochili, leuen yeeres; Chicaei Acarlh, eight yeeres; 20 Chiconaus Tespatilo, nine yeeres: Matlattis Calls, ten yeeres; Matlattisome Tochtiseleuen yeeres

Matlattlione Acath, twelue yeeres; Matlattliome Tecpath, thirteene veeres.

The fourth weeke. Ce Calle, one yeere, Ome Tochili, two yeares; Es Acash, three yeares: Na. ni Tecpails, foure yeares; Macuil Call, five yeares; Chicacen Tochtle, fix yeares; Chicage Acate leuen veares ; Chienes Tecpatil, eight yeares ; Chiconani Calli, nine yeares; Mailacili Tochtli, ten yeares; Matlatilioce Acath, eleven yeares; Matlatitiome Tecpath, twelve yeares; Matlatilio. mes Calli. thirteene yeares. Each of thele weekes, which our men call Indition, doth contains thereene yeares, fo that all the foure weekes make two and fiftie yeares, which is a perfect number in their rechening, and is called the yeare of grace, for from fiftie two yeares, to fiftie two yeares, they vied to make for lemme feasts, with strange, Ceremonies, as hereafter Shall be declared. And when fiftie two yeares are 20 ended, then they begin againe, by the same order before declared, untill they come to as many moe, begaming at Ce Tochthi, and fo forward. The abstract they do not at the Contification. So that in the former of preciously leeps and have in memory, things of eight hundred and fiftie years: and by this Cornellie to by soon in what you every though and have in memory. The most continue to the game and the many chile formatic top how me what you every thing they many chile. dren they bad, and all things elfe that importer b to the effate of the gonernment of the Land.

The Indians

The Indians of Culhua did believe that the Gods had made the World, but they knew not how . Tel they believed that since the creation of the world foure Sunnes were past, and that the fift and last is the Sunne that now giveth light to the World, They beld opinion that the first Sunne perilled by mater, and five ages were at the same time all liming creatures perified likewise. The second Sunne (say they) fell from the beawens, with whose fall all living creatures were flaine, and then (faid they) were many Giants in that Coun- 40 trey, and certaine monstroms Bones, which our men found in opening of graues, by proportion whereo Some (bonid seeme to be men of twenty spans high. The third Sunne was consumed by fire which burned day and night, so that then all living creatures were burned. The fourth Sunne finished by tempost of Agre or Winde, which blow downe Honfes, Trees, yea and the Mountaines and Rockes were blowen a funder, but the linage of Mankinde perifled not, fawing that they were conserted into Apes. And touching the fift Sunne, which now raigneth, they know not how it shall consume. But they far, that when the fourth Sunne perished, all the world fell into darkenesse, and so remained for the space of fine and twenty yeares continually, and at the fifteenth yeare of that fearefull darkeneffe, the Gods did forme one man and woman, who brought forth children, and at the end of the other ten yeares, appeared the Sunne which was newly borne upon the figure of the Conic day, and therefore they begin their account 53 of yeares at that day, and reckening from the yeare of our Lord 1552 their age or Sunne is 858. so that it appearreth that they have vied many years their writing in figures: and they had not onely this vie from Cetocili, which is the beginning of their yeare, moneth, and day, of their fifth Sunne, but also they had the same order and vie in the other foure Sunnes which were past : but they let many things slip out of memory, saying that with the new Sunne, all other things should be likewise new. They held also opinion, that three dayes after this last Sun appeared, all the gods did dye, and that in processe of time, the gods which now they bane, and worthip were borne.

The Corosia-

Although one brother was betre to another among the Mexicans, and after their decease, did inherit the Soune of the eldest Brother yet they tooke no possession of the state or name of King untill they were an-Kings of Mex- nointed and crowned openly.

At foone as any King of Mexico deceased, and his Funerals ended, then were called to Parliament 60 the Lord of Tezcuco and the Lord of Tlacopan, who were the chiefest estates, and then in order all other Noblemen, who owed any fernice to the Mexican Empire. And being come together; if any donbt of the in-

heritance of the Crowne happened, then the matter was decided with all hafte: then the new Kong being knowne, he was firioped flarke naked, except a cloath to comer his prime parts, and in this fort was carried among them, to the great Temple of Vitzilopuchtli with great filence, and without any toy or pleafure: Two Gentlemen of the Citie, whose office it was led him up the staires of the Temple by the armes. and before him went the Princes of Tezcuco and Tlacopin, who that day didweare their reabes of Coronation, whereupon was painted their armes and title. Verie few of the Lattie went up into the Chanpels, but onely those that were appointed to attire the new King, and to serve in other Ceremonies, for all the residue flood upon the steps and below to behold the Coronation. These Magistrates being above in the Chappell, came with great bumility and renerence, kneeling downe upon their knees before the Idoll to of Vitzilopucheli, and touched the earth with one finger, and then kiffed the same. Then came the bieb

Priest clouthed in his pontificall vestments, with many others in his company, who did weare Surplices: and without (peaking any word, they painted or coloured the Kings person, with Inke made for the parpofe, as blacke as any coale. After this Ceremonie done, they bleffed the amointed King, and formled The ointment.

him four etimes with a certaine boly water, that was made at the time of confecration of the God made of done or paste, wish a sprinkle made of bower of Cane leaner, Cedir, and Willow leaner. Then they put upon his head, cloth painted with the bones and fenls of dead men, and next they cloathed him with a blacke garmont, & upon that another blew, and both were painted with the figures of dead mans sculs and bones. Then they put about his necke certaine laces, whereas did hong the armes of the Crowne. And beginde his back they did hang certain little bottels full of powders, by vertue wherof he was delinered from peftilence 20 and difeafes , according to their opinion : yea, and thereby Witches, nor Witcherafts could not burs him.

nor yet cuill men deceiue him. In fine, with those relicks he was sure from all perill and danger. Upon hit left arms they bound a little bagge of incense, and then brought unto him a chassing-dish of imbers made of the barke of an Oke tree. Then the King arase, and with his owne hand threw of the same incense. into the chaffing -dish, and with great renerence brought the same to the god Vitzilopuclitli, and after be bad (monked him therewith, he fat him draine, then came the high Priest and tooke his outh to maintaine the religion of the gods, to keepe alfo all the lawes and customes of his predeceffours, to maintaine inflice and not to as granate any of his vaffals or subjects, and that he should be valiant in the warres. that be should cause the Sunne to give his light, the clouds to yeelde raine, the rivers to runne, and the earth to bring forth all kinde of graine, fruites, and other needlfull hearbs and trees. Thefe and many o-20 ther impossible things the new King did sweare to performer and then be gane thankes to the high Priest.

and commended himfelfo to the gods, and to the lookers on, and they who brought him up in the fame order, carrieth bim downe againe. Then all the people cried, the Gods preserve the new King, and that he may raigne many yeares in health with all his people. But then some began to dance, other to play on their instruments; howing outwardly their inwardinger of beart. And before the King came to the foote of the steps, all the Noblemen came to yeelde their obedience, and in token of louing and faithfull subjects, they presented unto him Feathers, frings of Snaile feels, Callers, and other lewels of Gold and Silver, also Mantels painted with death, and bare him company unto a great hall within the compasse of the Temple, and there left him. The King sitteth downe under his cloath of estate . called Tlacatecco, and in foure dayes departeth not out of the circuit of the Temple, the which bee frends in 40 prayers, facrifice, and penance; he eates then but once a day, and enery day be bathes himfelfe, and a-

gaine in the night in a great pond of water, and then lets himfelfe blond in his cares, and fenfeth therewith the god of water, called Tlaloc : be likewife fenfeth the other Idols, unto whom he offereth Bread. Flowers, Papers, and little Canes, died in the bloud of his owne tongue, no se, bands, and other parts of bis body. After the foure dayes expired, then come all the Noblemen to beare him company to his Pallace, with great triumph and pleasure of all the Citie, but after his consecration few or none dare looke

And now with the declaration of the Alls and Ceremonies that the Mexican Kings are crowned, I shall not neede to rehearse of other Kings, for generally they all doe vie the same order, sawing that other Princes one not up to the top of the Temple but abide at the foote of the fleps to be crowned and 50 after their Coronation they come to Mexico for their confirmation, and then at their returne to their Countrey they made many drunken feasts and banquets.

The Mexicans did beleene that the Soule was immortall, and that they received either toy or paine of the Mexiaccording to their deferts and lining in this world, unto which opinion all their religion did attaine, and conscene chiefly appeare at their burials. They held for an affured faith, that there were nine places appointed ning the Soule for foules, and the chiefest place of glory to be neere unto the Sunne, where the foules of those which Nine places were cood men flaine in the warres, and those which were facrificed were placed, and that all other fort; for Soules. of entil per fons their foules abode on the earth, and were denided after this fort, children that were dead borne went to one place, those which died of age or other disease went to another, those which died of sudden death to another, those which died of wounds or contagious difeases went to another place, those which 60 were drowned went to another, those which were put to death for offence by order of Iustice, at for robbery and adultery to another : Those which flew their Fathers, Mothers, Wines or Children, to another place by themselves : also these who slew their Masters or any religious person went to another place. The common fort of people were buried but Lords and rich men had their bodies burned, and their affect

buried. In their provides they had a great difference, for many dead bodies were buried better apparel-

When any K1-2 of Mexico happened to fall sicke, they wsed forthwith to put a visor wpon the face of The buriall of Tezentispica, or Vitzdopuchtis, or some other Idoll, which Usfor was not taken away, untill they saw whether the King did amend, or elfe dye: But if be chanced to dye, then word was fent throughout all his Dominions to bemaile his death, and also other postes were sent to call the Noblemen that were his nighest kinsmen, and to warne them within foure daies to come unto his bursall.

The dead body was laid upon a faire Mat, and was watched four enights, with great lamentation and mourning : then the body was mashed, and a locke of haire cut from the crowne of his head, which was preserved as a great relicke, saying that therein remained the remembrance of his soule. This done, a fine Emerald was out in his month, and his body shrowded in seventeene rich Mantels, of colours, both rich and coffly wrought, Vpon the upper Mantle was fet the desife or armes of Vitzilopucitli or Tezcalipuca, or some other Idoll, in whom the King had great confidence in his life time, and in his Temple Should the body be buried. Upon his face they put a visor, painted with fonle and Denilish iestures, befet with many lewels, Precious fiones, and Pearles, Then they killed his flue, whose office was to light the Lampes, and make fire unto the gods of his Pallace. Thefe things done, they carried the dead body unto the Temple : some followed bim with dolefull tune, others sung the death of the King by note for so was 20 the custome.

The Noblemen and Gentlemen of his houshold carried Targets, Arrowes, Males, and Ensiones to throw into the fire where the body should be buried in the Temple. The high Priest and all the Clerose received him at the Temple gate, with a forrowfull fong, and after he had faid certaine words, the body was throne into a great fire made for the purp fe, with all the levels that he had about him, and all the other things which was brought to honour the burtall : alfo a Dogge newly strangled with an Arrow, which was to ouide him his way. In the meane while that the King and Doege were burning the Priests facrificed two bundred perfons , howbest in his Ceremonie there was no ordinary taxe , for sometimes they facrificed many mue : they were opened with a Rafor of flint in the breafts, and their hearts taken ont and throwne into the fire where the Kings body was. These miserable persons being sacrificed, and their bodies throwne into a bole; they beleened affuredly that those should serve for his saues in another world: fome of them were Dwarffes, monstrous and deformed persons, with some women. They placed about the dead body of the King before his buriall, Ruses, Flowers, and sundrie dilhes of meate and drinke, and no creature durft touch the fame, but onely the Priests, for it seemed to be an offering.

The next day following, all the ashes were gathered together, and the teeth with the Emerald that was in his moush, the which things were put into a Chest, painted on the inside with horrible sigures of deuils, and the locke of haire which was cut from his crowne, and another locke of haire which was preferued from the time of his birth. Then the Cheft was lockt, and an Image of wood made and cloathed like unto the Kings person, which was set on the top of the Chest. The objequies endured source dayes, in 40 the which the wines and daughters of the King offered great offerings at the place where his body was buried, and before the Cheft and his Image.

On the fourth day after the buriall, fifteene flaues were facrificed for his foule; and on the twentieth day, other fine persons were also sacrificed; likewise on the fixtie three and fourescore, which was like vino

The order of Kings of Mi.

The Kingdome of Michuacan is almost as great as the Empire of Mexico, and when any King of that Countres bappened to be visited with sicknesse, and brought to such extremitie, that hope of life were past, according to the opinion of Phistions, then would be name and appoint which of his Sonnes (bould inherite the estate; and being knowne, the new King or heire, incontinent sent for all the Gouernours, Captaines, and valiant Souldiors, who had any office or charge to come unto the buri- 50 all of bu Father, and be that came not, from thenceforth was held for a Traitour, and fo punified. When the death of the old King was certaine, then came all degrees of Estates and brought presents to the new King , for the approbation of his Kingdown , but if the King were not throughly dead , but at the point of death, then the gates were fout in, and none permitted to enter, and when his life was departed, then began a generall cry and mourning, and they were permitted to come where their dead King lay, and to touch him with their hands : this being done, the carkaffe was wefred with fweete waters, and then a fine/hirt put upon him, and a paire of shoes made of a Deere skinne put on his feete, and about his anchies were tied certaine Bels of Gold, about his wristes of his hands were put Manillus of Turkies, and other Bracelets of Gold, likewife about his neckether hung other collers of precious stones, and gold, and rings in his cares, with a great Turkise in his neather lippe. 60 Then his body was laid upon a large beere, whereon was placed a good bed under him: on his one file lay a Bowe with a quiner of Arrowes, and on his other fidelay an Image made of fine Mantels of his owne stature or highnesse, with a great tust of fine feathers, shoots upon his feete, with Bracilett, and a coller of gold. While his works was a doing, others were bushed in majoing the men and we

men which should be slaine for to accompany him into Hell: these wretched folke that should be slaine were banqueted and filled with drinke, because they should receive their death with less paine. The new King did appoint those who should die for to serve the King bis Father, but yet many of them bad rether have beene without his feruice, notwithit anding some simple foules esteemed that odone death for a thing of immortall glory, First, seuen Gentlewomen of noble parentage were appointed to die, the one to have the office of keeper of his lewels which he was wons to weare, another for the office of Cup-bearer, another to give him water with a Bafon and Ever, another to give him alwayes the Vrinall, another tobe bus Cooke, and another to serve for Laundresse. They slew also many woman-slanes, and free maidens, for to attend upon the Gentlewomen, and moreover, one of every occupation within the

10 Citie. When all thefe that were appointed todie were majted, and their bellies full with meate and drinke, then they painted their faces yellow, and put garlands of sweete flowers upon each of their beads, Then they went in order of procession before the beere whereon the dead King was carried, some ment playing on Instruments made of Snailes shelt, others played upon bones and shelt of Sea-turtile, others went whistling, and the most part meeping: the Sonnes of the dead King and other Noblemen carried upon their |boulders the Beere where the Course lay, and proceeded with an easie pace toward the Temple of the god Curicaueri: his infinen went round about the Beere, finging a forroufull forg. The officers and boughold fermants of the Court with other Magnitrates and Kulers of instice bare the Standarts and divers other armes.

About midnight they departed in the order aforefaid, out of the Kings pallace, with great light of 10 fre brands, and with a beame noise of Trumpets and Drammes. The Citizens which dwilt where the Corfe pasted, attended to make cleane she freete. And when they were come to the Temple, they went some times round about a great fire mide of the wood of Pine tree, which was prepared to barne the denabody: then the Beere was lied upon the fire, and in the meane while that the body was burning, ther mawled with a club those which had the Garlands, and afterward buried them by four e and foure,

The next day in the morning, the alber, hones and lewels, was gathered and laid upon a rich Mantle, the which was carried to the Temple gate, where the Prufts attended to bleffe those dene lish relicket, whereof they made a dough or palle, and thereof an Image which was apparelled like a man, with a vifor on his face, and allother forts of lewels that the dead King was wont to weare, so that it seemed a gal-

30 lans I doll. As the foote of the Temple flaves they opened a grane ready made, which was square, large, and two fadom deepe, it was also hanged with new Mass round about, and a faire bed therein, in the which areligions man placed the Idol made of a hes with his ejectoward the East part, and hing round about the wals, Targets of Gold and Silarr, with Bowe and Arrowes, and many gallant tuffes of Feathers, with earthen restell, as Pots, Dishes, and Platters, o that the grave was filled up with houshold flusse. Chests concred with Leather, Apparell, Ieweis, Meate Drinke, and Armor. This done, the grane was fout up, and made fure with be ames, boards, and flored with earth on the top.

Allthose Gentlemen which had served or conched any thing in the buriall, washed themselves, and went to dinner in the Court or yard of the Kinzi house without any table, and having direct, they wiped their bands upon certaine locks of Cotten woll, banging downe their heads, and not speaking any wordex-Deept it were to aske for drives. This Ceremonie endured fine dayes, and in all that time no fire was per-

mitted to be bindled in the Citie, except in the Kings boule and Temples, nor yet any Corne was ground, or Market kept, nor none durit goe out of their boules, soewing all the fortow that might be possible for In Mexico were tweltie ludges, who were all Noblemen, graue, and well learned in the Mexican Indgess

Lawes. These men lined onely by the rents that properly appertaine to the maintenance of Instice, and in any cause sudged by them, it was lawfull for the parties to appeale unto other twelve sudges, who were of the Princes bloud, and alwayes abode in the Court, and were maintained at the Kings owne coff and charges. The inferiour ludges came ordinarily once enery moneth to confult with the by ber. And in enery fourescore dayes came the ludges of enery Pronunce within the Mexican Empire, to consult with the Indges of Mexico, but all doubtfull carfes were referred to the King, onely to paffe by his order and determination. The Painters fermed for notaries, to paint all the cafes which were to be reful. Painters, ned, hatno suce passed aboue sourescore dayes without finall end and determination. There were in that Citie twelve Sergeants, whose office was to arrest, and to call parties before the Inages. Their gar - Sergeants. ments were punted M ental, whereby they were knowne a farre off. The Prifors were under ground, Pittons. moult and durke, the cause whereof, was to put the people or feare to offend. If any witnesse were called

to take an oath, the order was, that he found touch the ground with one of his fingers, and then to Witnesseand louch his ton ne with the same, which sentied that he had sworne and promised to speake the troth with cathes. his tongue, taking mitneffe thereof, of the earth which did maintaine him. But some doe interprete the outh that if the partie for are not true, that then he might come to fuch extremiting as to eate earth. Sometins the name and call upon the God of the crime, whole canle the matter touched.

ne the ranne real east you con usury our arme, my company to the effice, which mat accounted a most Bibery. The large that about brokes or gets, is forehunth put out of the effice, which mat accounted a most Bibery. tile and brought repressio. The Indian, did affirme that Necauthincine did bang a Inige in Tezbeed an orange expense, be hunfulfe known the contrary. The Murbert a executed Murber.

Disquise of sexe, private Duells, wilfull abortion, or . Capitall. LIB.V.

1140 Theft Difguife of

without exception. The woman with childe that wisfully castech her creature, suffereth death for the same. The Theose for the sufference, was made a same, and hanged for the second. The Trainr to the King and Common-weale, was put to death with extreame torments. The Woman taken in Mans apparell died for the same, and likewise the Man taken in Womans attire. Euery one that challengeth another to fight, except in the warres, was condemned to dye. In Tezcuco the sinne of Sodomie was punified with death, and that Lawwas instituted by Necaualpincinth, and Neca-

Duels capitall.

ualcoio, who were ludges, which abborred that filthy sinne, and therefore they defended great grasse, for in other Provinces that abbominable sinne was not punished, although they baue in

those places common Stewes, as in Panuco.

The end of the fift Booke.

ENG.





AN ALPHABETICALI. TABLE OF THE PRIN-CIPALL THINGS CONTAI.

NED IN THE FIVE BOOKES

of the third Part of PVRCHAS

his Pilorims.

The first Number notes the Page, the fecond Number directs you to the number noted in the back-margent of the Pages, Right against which or betwirt that and the next number, the note is to bee found. Observe, that whereas many words may bee well written with I. or with Y. the Reader is to looke to both. Observe also, that Name of Saints or Knights, are not set under S. bat in the Alphabes of their proper Names.



Baccu,is the Caspian Sea. 69.60. The largeneffe of #,

bafeia, or Habaifia, a Ind:a media, 106.50. in Marg. Richm 2 € 2.60

Abedalcuria. Abortion confed by an Herbe ,991. Acapalco, the Pronince and Port in the West Indies ; the Latitude,

Acias or Akas : fo the Tartars call the Alanian Christians, 10. 10. Enemies to the Tartars, 12.40 Achbaluch Mangi, which in Tartars Language is , the White Citie of the Mangi, Accents the Chinois base fine feue-

Accounts cast by graines of Corne,

Accord betweene Poles and Ruffes. about chusing their Emperour, 788.789 Acquaintance the Ceremony of be-

Acacron the Armenian Prophet

Acon the Citie; Arabicke and Syriack underflood there, 12.00 Adams Sepulcher in Zeilan, 106. 1. More of that Fable. Adams - Apples grow in Perfia, 71.

Adders of India, their fenerall fort s Adem, the Soldan of it difcomficed,

Admirals Iland, 474.40. Sea bor-Adoration, the manner of it in

Mexico, 1027. 20. & 1028.1. Ø 1046.60 Adoption practifed in Russia, 740.

Adulterie punished with Death in 1058.40 Adultreffes Dowries ginen to poore Girles. 276-10 Adulterie & Witaldrie, the punish-

Adulterers bow punished in Chi-Ædgar the King, his mightse Nawie,619.40. Empereur of the O.

Egeland and Halgeland discone-

Equinoctiall, under it moyst and raynie, and why, 918. 40. Not fo bo: as the Antients beld it: very cold in March, caufes of Aingharan the Region,

the temperature , though the Summe bee very bote ; the dayer and night; equall, 920. No Calmes under the Line, 922. 60. 926. The Are under er neerest fwifter then the Ayre about the Poles, and mby, 929. 30. Eafterne and Wefterne winder contimuall under the Line. 025.40. See Torride Zone.

Egrinoctiall, whisher healthfull liumo vader it; Æthiopian Patriarch, Affirmtie in a different Sirname binders not Matrimonie in China,

Age, to the Saracens file the Mecca Age,much honoured in China, 293.

1.0 369.20. Olde Age begins Age of three hundred veres attained to,in the West Indies, 875.20 Ages of the world, the Mexicans represent by so many Sunners

1136.40. Their odde opinions. thereabout. Agilitie of the Mexicans, excellent. Ague, a Soneraigns Ayre for the Cure of st,

A jax or Giazzo, the Hauen, where. abouts.

Alalli a projet of lattail; cance CHILDS. TO THIS ICE AND 50. Loft in the Sea, found a. 40. Of Gothland, Find and Acias or Akas, they are Chri-Amacao in China, mhat, 319. 30 Kuenland, Anchorites in China, 6337.40 Stress of the Greeke Church. The Fortugals build a Cure Ants of India, their admit ab Ancon an Iland dispeopled, 308, there: it is made a Bifiops Sea, They vie Greeke Bookes. They tiffing themfelatt agam. pray for the Dead. A simple ibid. How situated, Beares. Aman a Citie in Sytia taken for Andabaylas the Pronince in Peru. people, 10.10.20 Ants of Weil India, toer the Christians, Albama the Countrey, where, 16. the Temple of the Sunne in it. 122.60 fome are porfes, 996. 104 Amathitis a Mine of them, where burt they derable & 94 7 892,60 Albeafe or Albeas, one of the King-Andanico and Azzaio Mmeralis. 901.50 Spaniards choole a Sani Amazones, where unitenily, 55.1 domes of Georgia. Albis a Kiwhere. tres against them, mer of . Hami. Amber flore of it in Bratill; bow Andes the Mountaines of India. 656.1 Apes in Peru, on the Mount Albert or Albior the Mountaine, the disserfitie of their tempera-903.40 110.30 Amber great flore and oreat ture, length, Beasts, Soyle, &c. Apes perfumed in Bones, and Alcatraz, an Indian Cormorant depreces, where, 614. 60. A 831. 50. 887. 20. 30. Conered for Pigmeyes, 103-40. H scribed. Frogge inclosed in a peece of it, with Snow, where : their March, bigge as men, Apoltica Palares and seed in Alchim e much fludred in Chini, Amber caten by the King of China, ' Angaman, where Men have Dogges 369.30. And doted upon, 396. to sustaine life, 186.50 Apparell of the Chincin. Ale of Ric, 616.50 Amber liquid, where, 878,40 Angle lines of to bale finnes , Age Gownes. Alehouses in Russia pay tribute. Ambergreece taken in the Whale. gle bookes of Fish bones in Apparell of Tartars, 429.30. The wicked abuses there-Apparell of the Rutians, M place where it lies, and the co-Groenland. 431.40 710.30 \$ 471.50 Anian Streights, fome fabuloure-Women. Apparell the verference of Aleppo monne by the Taitars, Ambaffadours bom entertained by pores of them; 848.60. 6 853. the Crim Tartars, 639.40.50 20. A note of them by Mafter Pera. Alliacen his Storie of Tamerlane, Apparell of Fib den Ambaffadours diners resident in the Lo ke, 849.50. Discourred by Tartarian Court: 140.40 a Greeke Pilat for the Spani-45.40 Amhaffadours anmerfeit patifit Allaying of Silver the curufitie, Appeales mais to the Enga ards : bopes of the North-west with Death by the Tarrars, 8. to Ruffia. 951.40 Paffage that way, the asscription Apples of India perferent Allen the Fowle in Greenland, the Their libertie of fresch in Tartaand widene fe of them. roves purfaced water nature of it ... 713.40 Anian Hand by China, the many fetts thefe that floore " Almanaches in China, . 346.10 Ambailadours bow bonoured and Forts and Pearle-fishings there, Almesfor the Dead in China, 274. Tree. priniledged in China. 189.10 Apram, or a drinks of Charm - 3.3 . 1.20.30 Ambassadours bow entertained in Anill or Indico , bow it groves, in Tartarie. Almes the Chinois will que none, Agus-vitz, a Rose Wate, Amhalladour, when first fent huber 175.20 Annoynting, the King of Nor-Arabacha she Tartersan, he Almonds of Coco Nats , Marchfrom Rutha. :: Way annosted at his Coronation. follow of Cherth, pase made of them. 958.50 Amballages counterfeit to China, Arabian Lotters wood in Cl Allome in Turkie, foreftalled by the Annointing of the Mexican Kings \$14.70 Italians, America Disconered, in 61.62. C Arabicke Letters in Tura Allome feverates Gold from Draffe, 63. Degrees, the Coast and Soa-Answere a frange one of a Mahufous there described 811. In 64. metan. Aracci the Plane. Alphabet of Gotish Letters, 6,8 Antarticle Starre the Indians faile Degrees, 823.20. Frost there in Ararat is not all Areren Alphabet the Chinois bane none, by, and not by the Compaffe, 139. July, 811.60. Aw Hand there 384.40. ner Syllables, ibid. in 55. Degrees 30. Minutes, 812. Ararat Mountaines, aimig Altaithe Mountaine, where all the Antereda the Ile, 123.30 red math Smow. Tartar Princes are buryed, 78. America first discourred by the Anthonie March, bis dilitence for Araxis the River, 49. 17. English before Columbus, 808. the Disconering to the River mab Cus ,49.20. The be Altarsin the Ruffian Courch, 450. Ob. 804.805 America described by Herrara, S. Anthonies, the West of Cuba, Arbor Secon, where, 68.: Aitars and Altar Chathes in Chibons much of it under the Spania 858. The best way thence to ards, 846. How farre descenethe Port of Saint Iohn de Vlua, Archbishop of Natrofia Altars in China remerensed, red, by the Spaniards, and by the \$58.60 English, 857.1. and in margent, Antigur liands, 260.45 Archbithops of Ruffia, 4. 1 Altarina Fort the Nestorians had. The Seas of 11, the Spanish No-Antients or Enfignes, of Silles to the two Metropol tal 37.40 aigations, Course and Customes China, they to the Paramet, 44 Altar of Leather, ibid. in them 8 . 8. Named by a wrong Antioch manice from the Christians

Disguise of sexe, primate Duells, wilfull abortion, coc, Capitall. LIB.V.

1140 Thefr.

Disguise of

Ducls capitall.

writbout exception. The woman with childe that wiffully calletel her creature, suffereth death for the same. The Theose for the sirst officers, was made a please, and hanged for the second. The Trains to the King and Common-weale, was put to death with extreame torments. The Woman takes in Mans apparell died for the same, and likewise the Man taken in Womans attire. Enery one that challengeth another to fight, except in the warres, was condemned to dye. In Tezcuco the sum of Sudomie was punified with death, and that Lawwas instituted by Necaualpincinth, and Necavalcoio, who were ludger, which abborred that filthy finne, and therefore the

deferued great praise, for in other Prosinces that abbominable une was not pumified, although they bane in those places common Stewes. ar in Panuco.

The end of the fift Booke.

F.NG.



AN ALPHABETICALL TABLE OF THE PRIN-CIPALL THINGS CONTAI

NED IN THE FIVE BOOKES

of the third Part of PVRCHAS

his Pilvrims.

The first Number notes the Pages, the fecond Number directs you to the number noted in the back-margent of the Pages, Right against which or between that and the next number, the note is to bee found. Observe, that whereas many words may bee well written with I. or with Y. the Reader is to looke to both. Observe also, that Name of Saints or Knights, are not set under S. bat in the Alphabes of their proper Names.

Baccu.is the Castian Sec. 69.60. The

bafeia, or Habafe fia, ir India media, 106. 50. in Marg. Richin 252.60

Abortion canfed by an Herbe ,991. Acapalco, the Pronince and Port in the West Indies ; she Latitude,

Acias or Akas ; fo the Tattars call the Alanian Christians, 10.10. Enemies to the Tartars, 12.40 Achbaluch Mangi, which in Tartars Language is, the White Citie of the Mangi, Accents the Chinois have fine fene-

Accounts cast by graines of Corne, Accord betweene Poles and Ruffes. about chufing their Emperour,

Acquaintance the Ceremony of be-Acaron the Armenian Prophet

Acon the Citia ; Arabicke and Syriack underflood there, 13-50 Adams Sepulcher in Zeilan, 106. P. More of that Fable. Adams - Apples grow in Perlia, 71.

Adders of India sbeir fenerall fort : and natures. Adem, the Soldan of it difcomfired,

Admirals Iland, 474.40. Sea borfestbere, Adoration, the manner of it in

Mexico, 1027, 20, & 1028.1. Ø 1046.60 Adoption practifed in Russia, 740

Adulterie punished with Death in Peru, 1058.40 Adultreffes Dowries ginen to poore Girles, Adulterie of Witaldrie, the punish-Adulterers bow punished in Chi-

Edgas the King, bis mighte Na-. wie,619.40. Empereur of the O-Egeland and Halgeland difcone-

Equiportiall, under it most and raynie, and why, 918.40. Not fo bo: as the Antients held it: very cold in March, canfes of Aingharan the Region,

the temperature though the Summa bee very bote ; the dayer and nights equall, 920. No Calmes vuder the Line, 922. 60. 926. The Ayre under or neerest froifter then the Ayre about the Poles, and why, 929: 30: Enferne and Westerne winder contimuall under the Line, 925. 40. See Torride Zone.

Egrinoctiall, whisher bealthful li. umo under it. Ethiopian Patriareb, 327-30 Affirmtie in a different Sirname binders not Matrimonie to China,

Age, to the Saracens flile the Mccca Age, much honoured in China, 393. 1.0 369.20. Olde Age begins at fiftie,

Age of three bundred yeres attained to,m the West Indies, 875.20 Ages of the world, the Mexicans represent by so many Sunner. 1136.40. Their odde opmions. thereabout.

Agilitie of the Mexicans, excel-1064. 10 Ague, a Soneraigns Ayre for the Cure of st.

A jax or Grazzo,the Henen, where-

206.20

267.1

20 1

Altars in China remerenced,

Altarina Fort the Neftorians bad,

Altar of Leather, ibid.

Alteene Ruffian Come moorth fine

peuce,416.1. See alfo page,552.

spot of the Conserve Anchors applied for a fulf, At. Amacao in China, what, 319. 30 The Portugals build a Citie there; it is made a Bishops Sea, ibid. How fitnated, Aman a Citie in Sytia taken for the Christians. 123.60 7 Amathitis a Mine of them, where. Amazones, where unitently, 58.1 Amber fore of it in Brafill; bow Amber great flore and great Peter, ware, 619. 60.7 A Frogge inclosed in a peece of it, Amber eaten by the King of China, to sustaine life. 186.50 878.40 Amber liquid, where, Ambergreece taken in the Whale. place where it lyes, and the co. 710.30 0 471.58 Ambaffidours bom entersairedity the Crim Tartars, 639.40.56 Ambaffadours diners resident in the Tartarian Court: 3 45.40 Amhafladours minter fest pointhe with Death by the Tarrages 8. to Their libertie of freich in Parta-Tie, " 43 fo primiledged so China, 1850ro Ambaffadours bow entersained in Ruffia, Amhaffadour, when first fent bither fromRutha. 272 Amballages counterfeit to China. America Difconered, in 61,62, & 63. Degrees, the Coast and Seafous there de feribed 811. 1064. Degreet, 823.20. Frost there in Inly, 811.60. At Hand there # 55. Degrees 20. Minutes. \$12. America first discoursed by the English sofers Columbus, 808. America deferibed by Herrava, bow much of it under the Spanie ards, 846. How farre tifconered, by the Spaniards, andby the English, 857.1. and in margent, The Seas of it; the Spanish Na signtions, Course and Cuffernes inshem, 8,4, Named by a wrong Father,

beads.

Chin.

866.1

918,60

America, andifconered within land,

Antiquities form of Norway 6 .6.6 gaine. Kuenland, 659.660 Ants of India, their admirable for-Anchorites in China, 6237-40 Ancon an Hand dispeopled, 308. Regres. Andabaylas she Province in Peru, Ants of West India, their forts : the Tample of the Sunne in it. Andanico and Azzaio Mmeralls. where Andes the Mountaines of India. Apes in Peru, on the Mountaines the dinoffitie of their temperature, length, Beaffs, Soyle, &c. 881. 50. 887. 20. 30. Conered with Snow, where : their March, bie ee as men, Apoitles Pictures imitated in Chi-Angaman, where Men bane Dogges Angle lines of 11 bale finnes - Ace gle bookes of Fift bones in Groenland. Anian Streights, fome fabulom repores of them: 848.60. 6 842. 20. A. more of them by Mafter Locke, 849.50. Discourred by a Greeke Pilot for the Spaniards : bopes of the North-well Paffaye that way, the enfeription and widenesse of them, 850 Anten Hand by China, the many CForts and Pearle-fifbings there, Tree. Amill or Indico , bow it grower, in Tartarie. Announting, the King of Norway annoyted at his Coronation. feffienef Chrift, Annointing of the Mexican Kings 10cg. 10 Answere a firange one of a Mahu-Antartiche Bierre ibe Indians faile Aracci the Plane. by and hot by the Compaffe, 139. Antereda the Ile. C. 123.10 Anthonic March, ba diligence for red with Snow. the Discouring to the River Ob, 804.805
S. Anchonies, the West of Cube, 878. The best way thence to the Port of Saint Iohir de Vluz, \$58.60 Antique Hands. 260.40 Antients or Enfignes, of Silke in Antioch wente from the Christians Their renenewes, the occasion, 118.20 Antiquities; the Chinois Audious Antiquiries

Antiquities of the Indians, forlifely burnt by the Spaniards. 40. Of Gothland, Finland, and 659.660 tiffing themfelnet against the 978 feme are poyfon, 996.20. The Spaniards cheefe a Sales-Patron against them, ten 998 Apes perfumed in Boxes, and Vaida for Pigmeyes, 103.40. Where at 106.10 Apparell of the Chinois, like long Gownes, 360 Apparell of Tartars, 6.20 Apparelhof the Ruffians, Men and 12410 Apparell the uniformitie of it, in 1058.10 Apparell of Fifb skimmes, 642. Appeales enely to the Emperour in Apples of India porfouous: Ar-rower performed with them : in-fetts those that flore onder the Apram, or a drinke of Charmonilke, Aqua vita, & Ruffe Wine, 4,9.1 Arabacha the Tarcarian, he Con-: 39.60 Arabian Letters ofed in Chalden Arabicke Letters in Turquestan Ararat is not all Armenia, 55-·. 1d Ararat Mountaines, alwayes come-Araxis the River, 49. 10. Meetes wath Cur 49.20. The bead of it. Arbor Secco, where, 68.30. & 70. 40, & 72.20 Archbishop of Nidrosia . Nor-Archbishops of Russia, 4. Inferiour to the two Metropolitans : as they to the Patriarch, 446. 301 Arch-Deacons in the Ruffian 147.10

Arches triumoball. common m Chi Ba Sweet 1, 200.86 170.300.1/n one Street, Archmandrites of Ruffis , 766. Architect reperted was leffer of Ejet. Ardoc . River. 226. 20. & 227. Arequa or Arequiera, fbee Tree, to China. Acequipa Citie in Peru, the Lani. o tade: diffance from other places. Inhabitants , natint Commedities, (abied to Earthquakes.erc. 801.10 Arethmeticke in China, an odde way for it, 334.1. Europæan Arethmeticke first sanght them, Arethmeticke of the Mexicans, HI 35.20 Arriron. a Citie in Armenia, 60. Argon a King of India, 68. 1. Sends for a Wife into Cathaya, ibid. Hee dyer before fbee came, 68.20 Arima the Kingdome, 222.30 Arious a Towns in Resting through which the Volga roomer, the manner of Boates there, 777 Ariftocracie, the old Government of Aritotles errour about the Torride Zone. 920. 10. Some of bis Rules diftuffed, 921.20.&c. Armadillos, a West Indian Beatt. with skales, 966.30.977.30 Armes of the Ruffians, Horfe and Armes of the Pronince of Aucheo Armenof the King renerenced, 392. Armes or Enfigues of the Kings of · Pern. 1027-20 Armer or Enfiques of Mexico. 1004.40. 1006.10 Armenia the Greater, salled Araxat of the River Araxis, 49.10. Two Kings 19. Verfes, 45. & 37. Expounded. Armenia the Leffer is Cilicia, 12. Armenia the Leffe, described, 69. throwne there, Arches in building, the manner in Armenia; Haithon the King ga- Conquests,

esbto make a League with Mane gu Cliabi, 114. 1. Mis lenes Propositions to the Tattars, ibid. Their Antwere ibid. Her hecomes a Monke, 118.50 Armenia the bounds, 110.10, They ofe me foresof Lener; shid. Atmeniate Menker change their oxfort Chineston Lineau Armenian Monky bir damen Min ou Chany Come, spielen & 23. 50 40. & 23. & 34. Hu Manicianan Blapbrane ubone she Creation of Man, 14-1 Armenian Priest be micharitable neffe to Ionas the damy Priest, 28. 10.40. Hee confutent with Southfayers. Atmenian Bifbops, are all Menter: Armenian Christians in Taurica. T incinantiad Armenians cato as Fift in Line 35. Armemans Fast of fine dayes, 21.1 Armenians pus not off their Gints " mi 1950 100 Armenians via Frankinklink Hely water, 40. 20, Their bei ment to the Croffe, ibid. Their Churcher the chafe to Praces. ibut. Ther chiefe Compries. where they exercife their Religiou, Armeniani koom oor extrogram on-Stion, nor Confession, 198120 Armemans their two chiefe Prophoto, 49. 50. Their Prophecies of a Mation of Archet which found Conquer the Bullerne World, ibid. & 40.1. Whith is as firmely believed at the Golbell. Armenians Loffe in a retreate from the Holy Land. Armories or Enfignes of honour in Mexico, Arnerim longs, bis Hifters of Ileland. **5**₹4 Arquico. Arie of the World, where, 644. 30. Arlengan the Citie is Armenia. The great Earthquake there 34. Arlerum the Citie, where, 49.46 Art of momory first taught in Chine. Armenia barraffedby the Saracensi Art learned by Accident, 950.1 12430. The Saracens oner- PArtacke a Benit in Tarturie, 6. Armenia Popled by the Saracens, Arthur Pethis Voyage, 462.40 118.30 Arthur the Kong, bis Nertherne 619

Artilleria

Artilerie nene in China. ... 200. I Acrona in Lapland, 283:40. & Acquient the chiefe Gitie in Armemashe greater a tott = 69.50 Airelines the Frien Cost from the Rope to she Turara AQ.L. His Mollage and the Tantars Aufiners & Letters to the Postabid. Alhas remedia laman . . . 226.20 Afia dinidedente sme perat. 107.60. Aliz she graner can beg affanlied but by three passages, aut of Alia shalest, 20 ap. And which then meferhees sat antil e. ibid. Affansale Land 19.1 Affaifini a people. Ailes casellers 70.50 Allower Alaph in Crim-Tartarie. :622.20 Assumption Citie by the River of Place, the Latitude 902.1 Allumption point the Latitude, 4 -: 558.20 Adracan wome by the Rulle, 439. 30. Furthest part Southward of cher Dentiniens, :: :442:50 Aftracam send Cafan Gangnered by AFRUSE SON SOLE OF CHO.I Affricanthe Citio Inforited, 233. 1000m The made that 222.00. Alimean, upon Volga, the Latitude of the Sam mareine. The variat. sime of the Compaffe shees, 244 Aftrolabes in Chiva . 3463d Astrologyrs confulled with al. 99.20 Afteologie in China, 246: 10. A Mountaine where it is fludged, ibit. They Colledge, Aftennomie of the Chinois, 384. co.&c. Their Aftrologers, 385. \$122 · · · · A-teie, a Sea terme, what, 583. Marg. Afher a Cetie. 311.40 Atlifoo the famous Valler in the West Indies. 872.50 Aucheo the Cuie, 300. & 301.40. Unwholfome, and lubicit to inun. dations, 302.1. How farre from Cincheo. Auguries by Birds in China. Auricular Confession in Russia,453. Auricular Confession twitated by the Deall in his Idell-Caremonies. 1041.40. Some cafes referned for Superiour Priests : Women Confuffours : noobing to bee comcealed, ibid. When moftly vfed,

OMANCE after Confessions : nitO42 | Auttria attempted by the Tastars 11420 Their King drawned in Denubius, المنطو Analla markin a learne hetwiset she Greeke Emperour and Tameslane, seem & the Turkes, it's me AD. Hernines the Turkes, Tho. 1. Is made Governour of Quin. Ane, seguired by the Tattars for o tribute. (1420 Ane Colemnely served about to luc decarares, in Itland, 668aro

Axes, she Juitlanders meere at their gudles, 234.1 Aver Reld no Element in China. siles a fairiO sen 945.90. Ayer under an nerver to she Equimottiall, in higher and further, then that neere the Poles, 925 Aver fuddenly changed, the effects of #,027. 1.10. Ayer may be too fubile for mens bodyes, andmbers # 16 fo. 927-40.50 Aver of Chile the Portes off the Toes, and belle Paffengerender.

are the relative for are

Avenum or Hainam the Iland, 254. The fortune ofit, 294t Azeros ller ther Landede Sug 46 Thomas and different themente S. Lucar in Spinne, ' sibid. Azou, monne by the Turke, 241.26 8 spon the Enxine or blacke See, interest a tracky war on thick Asture gotten in the West Indies, 875-20 Azure-flower the bellin the warth. wbere, - 93950

Contract of the second

Action of the action of the con-

В

B Seldome vied by the Chinois, not pronounce it, 18.60 Babes mem barme hardred with C:Surv. .ur.**8**77 Babes entoyned to house Faffing dages in Ruffia. Baccafaray, the Court of the Chan of the Cran Tartars, 634 50. Described . whid. Bacchu, the Medomes, * 49:20 Bachu the Past deferibed, 245.40 Badascian Tengi, what, 312.30 W. Baffins Death at Ormus, 848.

Bahama the Hand and Chinell in New Spaine, . . . 870110 Baiazet turnes from Conftantitoand for what finnes : the King ple to fisht with Tamerlane. confosfed himselfe onely to the 197:1. He encampes nere bim, Saune ; the Ceremony of that Peibid. The mouner of his Murch

. 1 97.50: Hee fights on fost in the middeft af bie lanizaries, 148.1 Hin farce, the charges, is wounded and talun aline by Axalla, 158 30:40150. Hu flont answers Tamerlaine, 195.20. His rate after bermat prifaner. Ufed for Tamerlanes footfoole ibid. Carreed in Chaines into Tartary 160.40 Bachanna ariner in Tartena.791-1 Baked money caten fieft and broths Belgams Science; and the Learning the Arabians wher 190

00.000 Bulalles us, procioni fene, where 11 fames 04 201 151 17 73.40 Balancim in Perfia, 75 40. Their Kings defended from Alexanderibid. They are called Zulearnen ibid. Deleutnem (seorbance) that is two-borned for fais Alexander the Great called of bid Sepposed Father God Ame o mun, who was worthipped in the neffe of a Roume, Balayes pare precious flones found in

Balaris: 1704 Belchia is Walachia. 54.10 Baldwine the Emperon's Conquell of Constantinople, 65 70. 2 in A. : suc e} ... Baldachyyb. to Cierber Gold Ac. There, and Their Califa takenby the Tartars, 70120 Balke or Bulgh, the trigition, 241.10 Balme and Balme-trees of the Welt Indies : the kinder, cologie and mauner of getting : Creams

Balfara and the mountain Dates Manny there. Banquetting-house w sarrow oue, 141 12204/20 Banquets of the Chinois, a fin-Banquets in Chinerebe moff ferious defcourfe is fill at them; 391.40 The rediens complements at them.

mounts, for Creation of excite

392.10,20.00. Banquetting in Ching: their breding it, 374.40. Istakes up balfe their times. Baptisme imitated by the Devillin Mexico, the manner of it, 1044 20.0 1102

Bapsilme, the mener in Ruffia, 229 20. Godfathers promits for the Child, to for (ake, the Denill, Oc. and to bing it up in Religion, at wer Phinich doth . 220,20,40 Baptiline the order in Rullia aco 60. Wilbin eight dares of the berth, ib.d. Dagodin a Tub) in-Bead of a Fourt. The Demilexorched any of the mater bid Godfather's expersed Ocal The stue forme in the name of the Trinity haps. Oyle and Sals added after which the (bild is admitted ento the Church, and presented: and forme of the barre dipt and laid to.

Barbaring with flower in the Weil Indicate Topology Bardelland Promise in Walt Illind Spread Spread Spring to

the King of Mexico, 1126.60 1187420 Birges of China deferibed 364 213 Bargus Tartarian Prosinces :: 70 Barlouente Hands of the West Indies, which they be, 919.40 Barlouette Mande , their Manne Commodities, 938. What will not growahere, ibid.
Bartey a Boire as Rice, 544,20
Bermakk Filb, Racher-ju bei 146
pian Sed,
pan Sed,

Barret of Commodities graphen mo-ney, pled the little graphen for Balcon the Promines, where 14.1 Their Jurbansmens and levels,

Balil mortused a Schallen . 0540 Baliling in Englishmans Son fond in Taraty, 1320 Baliling in Bulling in Russial 1220 marg.

Balons beaten before ereat men 3 12 Baftards emento Spiter de part of the Debry, in Illand, 640,50 Baths medicable in Ormus, 72.1 Baths bot in Ifland, 597.50. And cold.

Baths or Greenland, boyle flelh, and bakebrend ; and both, 610.10. They keepe the Hauen from freezine, and draw wildfowle thitber, Baths bot & medicinable in Grone

land. Baths bot and cold in Peru, 894.20 Bath-ftoues in Ruffia pay Tribme, 429.30. Ufed infleed of all Phy-459.10 ficke, Batampina the Riner, what it fignifies, 265.1. Runnes through the midft of China, Bategaria, or Latton Veffels made in China. 177.20

Came man, bom their freing is en- 1-c Englifte 963 Enpowdred ure un. red Their fight mith the Somreast. 995.50 Baughtesta the Land 2.24 Banebeata the Hand Buy of Soint Micholas, 218,00, 4 222.50 Bay of Saim Ninholas first traded grate by the English , 462.50. 403 40. When the Mothershill des first madel thinkers, 464.20 Bay of Nanquin, 260.30. The frong Corrent there ... ibid. Bay of Buxupalemy aco. co. Of Calindana Anguin and actiff Bay of Saint Iohn in Newfound Land: " nod :sal \$4.00.20.48

Baia de Sibabas. 284.60 Bends of Pearla wal ha she King of Malabat, 10 10 104 40150 Beads mared open in China. 403. Beads weed in the Ruffe Church. Beala the firmame of the Ruffian Em

perours, in whom it expired, 746 304 bruce richen in 9.40 . Hete it attaqued to the Fingers ward I Beare-barrings or Buffe shembul 751,657.30. Mak marmba are 1740a ded with being made drunk, 1111da The materials sele Bellie Material West Long described on 17 BOREST ST. TEST TON SPECIAL OF THE STREET ST 304 (Tr. Comment) shellen 190464 Beng, 100. pound of fat taken out of gue of their sufficients

Lampefor Orle 305 20 Strongel Springer Bearque 1 Confreshing A753 &c. vique ad 504. &c. Join Densin flation populati They cate Brickes and Paintel Beages liner ventions, 506.30. They goe ente the Secretor the Lee 30 mules 100 and They see another, 510

Beares farming in the Sens 1208 Beares at Sea 27. leagues from Progretates line upon See filling 168
40. Affault cowards, 561. Ente dead to bales, 734. 1 . A Sery of

Bats of West India, fill bite the Bearen pendred and waten by the 1 the Change gore, bid The com-

belefatte, \$70.50; Beares will ad desamble beat; "598.50 . 486 30 More in Illand, 557.20 Beards son Indians base ment, 992 10 . 27 .20-20, Set on Beard fine foot tong bloffed, 150,10 Beatles on militarine 10277.1: Of Bouls of Mel West Indies there - come share, shoulders provide to 2 Beath frange mer in Lapland, 112 435 Beaffs farned with fill Braits confulted met for Gratles todads er jured by the ive Beatle drowned in the Snow, grea

Series in 15 come alle de come alba

Beddende promited by the Bride in Ares of the West Ladies the flag The of the West Indian will fill to the working, and Hongs, 963-40 Beatle and Beatle and Best Indian with the fill to the same for the fill to the work for the beatle areas for the fill to the work for the beatle areas for the fill to the work for the work for the work for the work of Illand, 666.20. They were is be Beheading is the most abouthing bedidined a flow and u gninear of the control of th Bel-forming and white thing Belandenging weeks New Night

Belsowinimen pard, onc 138.80 Bels board south house the state of the state by the stat Belseuf welling and and and Bols me balancia Manharit in Chi-08:28873: 365.10.20. Or feelle. Belgian the Mountaine : 99 1 31 And Mail Cowards, 61, Late of the Enterpt of the Comment of the Company of the Enterpt of the Comment of this office of the Comment of the Co

panners , ibid. Affanted by Bir a f affte in Syria. Thornes, 311.313. His redient bourney . 21 2.30. Gentes to the Kute of Catenting 1 Ges to the King of Quotany this Godle forand an ibid. Rafulle to smoke Mahomet, 313.20-30. Sets on to Cathay , 303.yo. Danvelb ibid. Comes to Carl 18, of deft mes 334 19,20. Houres of his fellow Lefusts, ibid Boldlyprofofos bim-Selfe a Christian ; told . I stoff in the wight, and how found araine 234.1. Graves rich de trainell abid Sends Lattets pobis fellones. arte fent forby them, 315.50. Is di freffed ibid. Der. 316.1. No Prieft: bis Als. Bengala the Kingdome, the Commadries of it, Bengala conquered by the Tarrars Benfamin Woods ewe foise in China. Ben Lofeph bu Vapage, 466.50 Benlon a Lieutenan leader three

bundred English Were Sweden 77220 Ha and them danger in Iui land. Beige the Topmes by Norway, 61 Burgen the James Mare of North Way the Language altered there. Bermida Hand called Gazza: the forthest land gat found; in the Bellarabia; what Country, 633.1. Bellede in Illand , she refidence of the Danish Governour, 643.20. Betre, Befele, Berel, Tembul er Aceces, on ber backgellest for the Bishops of Mahd. Leefb. Bewrie preferred before Nobbes Bezar-ftone, what bearts beme it. and where 967 nes & 968.1 Magreabouts in their senerall bigs messes, colours, mult viertues, she best time knowne, how bred in the

Heanny 05 370. 6 277.1 Blacians or Hacians an olde prople.

But herer a Wine made of at 221. Birch tree onely propes in Illand; of o fraerant fent. 640.20 Bird with a Looking-glaffe on bis 1021.10 Birds of the West Indies 979, Oc. 2000 Birds wubout foet, bem they fit , otheir at final at Bers, 964.20 Birds breeding in the frezen Cliffes. CI 2.10. No afraid of men, their mored Nests and laying, ibid. Birds that dispeopled a Countrey, Bieds and fifbes bonght to let go; 271 Birth-day of their Prince, the Tare tars yearely observe, 84.30. The folemente of it,84.30. His Subselts fend Presents to bim , 84. Birth-dayes Feftmall in China, 102.10. 6 394. 1:180.60. 374 Bifcavners fills at Greenland, for-Adden 57 the English, 717.50.0 Bilhops on Rullin, fomeridaes thefere rem of the Weblier, 769/10.0 Billion of Buffig be fit they libit. The Course of the Course donate, their Chileter of Prills. or Spice, ibid. Their Revenues of the English of the Proposition of the English of their observations and of their observations. for out of Monafteries, onmar wied, and frome, thid. They preach bas twice a yeare : their Sermen Bishops of Island, water the Arch May of Nidrofia in Norway. 65 1:30 ibid. Bishop of Groneland, Bringer, the greatueffe of the King, Bittor a Sed-teime, what, 582.marg. beaft; an admirable thing of their Billogroden Moldana rates ovid Bitumen in de Myne of Cuba : [bips ealked , and bonfes built with it. Big ypotim, the Chinois Pather Blacke theepe preferred by the Tar-260.20 Blacke Foxe; the chiefe Farre of 441.50 Bihaol etree of Indie, the ofe,984. Bildit in Media. Mg Vointine of the Compafe there, 246,30 Ruffe, 728.crc. Blacke Point, Blacke Carpet , at the Coronation of Bils of Exchange, to bear ecomed in the Great Chan, 111.30

where 18.60. Whence defeended Bleffer dbe Greeke Bykopi doe, buth somo fingers, Bielled berthe Lord God of lived. ofed in the Rullian Service, 450 Blinghead in Orkney, 827.40 Bloud dranke as a peace-making Blood raised 198.30 Bloud-letting in India, the manner. Blouddetting for the Demis fermee if Mexico, 1014-0 1035-30 Blubber se the fat of Whales, 470, 66. The Blue Sen, 234.10 Boars of fill this in theses, excel. Line, T Board Seale-thing, 817.60 Boats at Ruff a of bollen trees, 777 Boats of Groneland fwifter then forpr, \$33. Sewed with finewes or Bocara, er Boghar er Bactria, 66. 10. in mare. Boghar & Citie in Backris, 239, 10 Perlian tongine floken there, bid. The Proft depofes the King, bid. Ring not about three narres, 239 50. The Copper money there, bid. The commedities fold at Boghar, 240.20. The Citie hefieged, 341 Boghar or Burgauia. Bogns or Hispanis, the River in Po-dolia, 632.10 Rives into Borntenes, 033 Bohemia entred by the Tartars, Bothol the Hand, 285.30 Bondage for debt : the manner of it. ... 285.30 217.10. Voluntary for pure med Bones feafing one mother each New Meone, 275.20. Peoples Oblations to these banes, ibid. Bonzi of China , their dotages, Bonzi are inferiour to the Manda rines, 347. Held the bafest people of China, 359.20 Bonzi, she Iaponian Priests, 322 co. A Military order of them. Bookes made of the leaves of trees. in New Spaine. 1052.10 Boots an Enfigue of Magistrates in China , and the Ceremony about them, Boots: the Bryde in Ruffia pulls off

the Bridgersomes and the Cere-

Rante

monse of that,

Borichen the It by Hifpaniola, 998 Boris Pheodoro wich, bis great Of. fices . Freuenuss in Ruina. 742 10. Hu Prefent to Queene Elizabeth, 743.60. His power, 744 40. And policie to become popular, 745. Made Emperour, ibid. Modefily refules the Empire. Accepts it, 745. His Wife, Son. and Dangbier, Coronaism Extars. Hu policies. The beginning of his disafters, Seekes a Wife for his Sonne out of England, 746 Defires a league with King lames. Dierfaddenly. Would bee new Christned before bis death, 741. His care of bis Sonne : polices & 0.752. Hu Wife and Sen perforing them felues, the Danobter lines, 753,50. Hu Pasent to the English Mulcouse Mer-chants, 754. Reports of the death

Boots and Shoes embroydered in

China, 176.60. Shoes of Stram,

Barthenes, the course of it, 633 Bornaholm configned to the Lubec-Botta affrange head ire of the Tat-tatian worden, 6.60. 67.1 Bougiusky fometimes Secretary to Demetrius of Ruffia, almoft flas ned there. Reliened by the Eng. glift, 780,40, Escapes into Eng-land; and is releved. 780,10 Boy of Cay wrestling and playing trickes with a lin me Boy \$49.40
Boyes of Mckico; then bald having of Serpents, 1942.10 Boyes put betimes to earne their li-Boyling Fountaines in Groneland.

Boyling meates in Gourds, bycafling in a burning flone to the li-Boxe of curious art wronght in Ia-Bralapifacon, a Hauen, 353.20 Bramble-berrieseure the laofemille. Brames the people Lords of P. gu, Oc. Rich in Gold and Rubies.

Bramenes, most true Merchants, 105.50. They line abundred and fifty yeares, ibid. Their Difcipline,

Bramenes are Witches. The names

166.30, 40. Them (elnes yet a-

Brailaro m Podolia. tino it.

272.90 1.165.40. Rice fedden, instead of 11, ibid. Bread of Wheate them, . Assis without cruft, bow made, 365.50 Bread made of fift fod and dried, 537-40 China. Horsedang, 646.30 Bulgai chiefe Secretary to Mangu-Bread and drinke none, where, 223. Chan. 20 Bulangazi , the Tactariza Officer Breaking the Seutebooms , or day of for last things, - 86.1 mourning . 352.40 Billers for Guns wronght by mature,

> Burnto shall md 34.20 of a Caldron branchomeere #. 880 60. The canfe of the burners Bot

Buryall, in new Sheer, 270.40. In a Coffin, with a Teffemonial, bid. The manner in Ruffia, 220 Buryall places of the Chimois, \$ 68 40. Their Sorgery about the of their Gods which they wor hip, Brimthone enery where digged to a choice of it, ibid. None barrea

line are nor hipped for Gods. 166 co Their authoray, ibid, Their degrees of Religious men : 167.1 Branding of Theenes in China.

Branding for Theft in Island, 651 Brafile, would not grow at Venice,

Brafile Pronince, the latitude, difconery, temperature foyle, chiefe Bende goes crying to Church in Traffique, Plantations by Portus 11. Rulla, 220 Chi. Led brown nabed gats, and their Latitudes, their of upon, 230.10. Shee is called a Parts, Rivers, Ore. And sheer Lat by Dincheffe, 17 ... ibid.

Brangery, 274.10 Bread, the Tartass mache ve for ea. Buesphalus breed. Bread the Chinois este not common. Bread of Straw in China, 230.50 Bread very hitter in Ormuz, 72.1 Bread of Roots and barke, 416.1

Bread efebe Weft Indies 953,954 Bread fodden in the recke of water, Breed bated in Oze dung or in Horfednig, 34-30 Bread & Corne unknowne in Illand

Brash belden halfo en beuretoge-

Brewing with Hoh-mater in Ruf-Bribery in courfe of Luffice, bow presented in China, 184.10

Brickes preferred before flone m Chins, Bridge, an admirable one, 295.30. # 299.50. # 89.1. # 199.70 Bridge made with men purpofely

Bridge of natural flone, 990.30 Bridges of Straw, Bridges of Haire and Stram where,

Bridges, 12000. In one City, 98 Bridges, fee Toll. M. Briggs bis Treatife about the probabilities of the North-west

Paffage,

648-10.0 649.20 Bales, fee East winds, 8,8,20. A Pour obkell realon for them , ibid: Most ofwall in the Terra Firma, .

Brittaines fifting at Ifland eight - bundred yeares finee, 657.40 Brick the Riner where Gold is . founds and 104.1 | Beather preferred before the Sunne in Peres

12, 632.19 A Her gifts, portion and apparell, Brazen Serpent, musthe Assilvy of 10 183 hours and apparent, bird.

1but reprefered in China Barriegroomoranded Duke in Rid.

Buskeranum, 20.60. in marg. Buffaloes roaks in the Plonet, 200. 60. How they gonerne and sted

Buildings , foure admirable to De-Buildings be light in China, 182 Buildings of Ruffia, the manner,

Buliano the Port, bowfarre from.

Bulgaria the greater , are moft earnest Saracens. Bilgaria menne bythe Tartate, 114

Bunpo the Kingdome, 328120. Speaker the Inponing Teneue.

Buquhannes, che Latinde, anddefeription of the Coaft, 809.810 Burning Mountaines or Votchnes mabe Indies .. 878.30 One of them melted the Copper and Iron

Burnils Cape in Greenland: siebe Latitude and Variation there.

to

80

in their Cities. ibid. I Buryall of the laponians, 327.10 Burvall of the Chinois, 393.30.See Funerals and Mourning. Burvall of Tartars without their Ci-Buryall of the Gronelanders, 825 1. 6 826.10 Buryals the Chinois Superstitions Buryals of the Mordwit Tartar, Buryals of the Mamoles of Curland 658.20 Buryals of the Mexicans, 1029.40 Buryals of the West Indians, 994. Buffe Hand discourred, ₹82.20 Boile I land falfe placed m the Cares, 815.1. # 812.40 Buffarmans what, 218.40 Buskins worne in Ruffia, inflead of Stockens. 459.0 460 A Butcher in Ruffia , chefen Lord Treasurer, Author of bis Coun-

Abul, a Mart Towne, 311.50

Butter-weeke in Ruffia, 217.60

Butter made in Tartaria Philofo-

Buttons Iles . The Variation there,

phically, 5.60. Kept in Rammes

tries liberty.

.skins.

Cacabe, a Caftle in Syria, 123 Cacao a West Indian fruit described; vied instead of money, and tomake drinke of , the tree and forle, 956.40,50 Cacao Nuts, of which is made mower . wine and meate for the Indians, 874.10. The tree deferi-Gieices, the Priefts of Cafcar, 313 Caelar, the title first affermed by the Emperour of Rullia, 760. 30 (by the lefuts instigation) & 78%. 40.0 787.10 Caffa wonne by the Turke from the guth. Crim Tartar,44.20. Upon the Euxine Sea. fo called. Changle, or Kangitta, a people, 18. 40. A great Countrey, 19.10 Caim the great City, 96.30 Caindu the Promince, Calacia, where Chamblets are made,

80.10

410.30

Calcia, the people deferibed, 312.10 | Candles of Birch,

Calamba wood for beedes , whence,

and the price.

ther.

Candles in the Greek Church, 228

\$17.60

THE TABLE Catempluy, an Iland. 260.30 Califa of the Saracens refiding at Baldach, 70.10. Hee is taken by the Tartars, ibid. How he proued the Christians by remooning a Mountagne. Caliph of Baldach, bis inst panish. ment California Pronince in the West Indies, the Latitude, not much discovered, the Rivers and Ilandi of 11,877.40,50. See alfe, pag. Callao Pronince the richest of the West Indies. 927.10 Calles of Horfe-barre in China. 366.60 Callinos or Candinaes, 53 Tito.Inbabited by the Spaniards, 543,20 Caluerifts fome in L turnia, 528.50 Cam the Reser bis courfe, 525.30 Cama the River. Camath, a City, where Euphraces bendeth to the South, sowards Halapia, Camaron the Cape, by Hunduras m the Indies. 8,9.10 Cambalus Pequin m China, 314 Cambalum Catha: rbe Erymon. 342. 40. Signifies The Great Tartar of the North The Great Chams Court, 82.10. Pin Palace there, ibid. His Argenall, or Amunnities Honfe there, 82.20 Cambalu fignifies , the Citie of the Lurd 82.40. Remouned over the River, ibid. Called Taidu, ibid. Camboia the Kingdome , 253.30 Subielt to Siam, 166, 20. The King a Bramene, ibid. Allbis Subjects besides the Priests are Slaves, 167.10. Hee feazeth dead mens goods ibid. The King drinen out by the Mogores, 254 Cambrickes and Lawner where Camelion, fee Light-Mogge. Camfire trees, 101.30. Seld weight for weight with Gold, 104.10 Campion, the chiefe Citie of Tan-Cape Defolation, the latitude, 816 Can, why the Tartarian Princes are Canaanites expelled by Josuah, whi-Capes of King lames, Queen Anne, ther they went. 661. er 662 Canaries, the diffance from Spaine, Capes: Kegor, 223,20. Swetinots, 8 58.20 Candle-light many monthes toge-Capha or Theodolia in Taurica.

Candles burning without flame, in Capherstante & Cuie : the Saraa Corall Stone, cens muft not enter st. 211 Candlemas day, Comthing like is, in China, Cap an Imperial Ornament of Rul-194.10 Candinaes , the East point of the White Sea , 485,60,0515. Cap assumed in Chim at Mans estate, 394. 10. The fashion of Cangigu, the Pronince ; and manthis Cap or Camle. Caps of their Learned, fquare, and ners of the people. Canibals or Man-caters, where, round. Cap of the Learned in China, Caniball Iles in the West Indies: their fenerall names, and Lati-Cap of China Schollers she falbion tudes, inhabited by Man-eaters. Cap, an Enfigue of dignitie in Chi-Caniball fignifies a valiant man. why they left eating of men. Their diffances from Saint Domingo, na. 184.20. 6 200.20. Gruen to the Graduates, Caps of the Louteas deferibed, 292 Canopie an Enfigne of dignitte in Caps. Girdles and Boots of the Chi-China. Confangui Cafcio, what, 313.1 na Officers, 390.10 Capon , a Philosophicall conclusion Canton the Citie described, 319.40 with him. Cantan the Citie deferibed, 170 270.20 Cappadocia, is on the Weft of At-50. & 171. Ge. The Mangifrates Honfes described, 171 menia the Greater divided from it by the Euphrates, 52.60 30. Their primate Honfes dels-Capthac, the Tartarian name for she Comanians, 11.1 Canton , the true name of u, 321 Captines eled, in the Ornaments of Indian Idels and fo wer-Canutus the King , his greatneffe, 1022.1.10. & 1018.60. The Cape Cod , the Latitude, 588.10 mamer, 1046.50.67c. Captives why the Mexicans de-The Sowndings by it, 587. 0 fired totake, then to kill, 1027 Cape Bapo, 474-30 Cape Swetinos, Cape Swetinos, 532.20 Cape Comfort the latitude, and Cara in Tartarian fignifieth blacke. 540.0 14.50 longitude from London, 841.30 Cara-Cathay , 314. 1. 404.40. No bope of the North-west Pof-Beginning of the Tartaes greatfage that way. ibid Cape Cant by Noua Zembla, she Caracarum a mightie Citie , 77 faritule. Cape de Bas in New-found-land. Carcharon described. 809.1 Caracarum the Citie of Mangu-Cape Naffaw, 475.40. The lati-Chan, 35.40. His Progreffer ibid. Cape Truft, described, 26. 1. A Nesto-Cape Deffeado, or Defired in the rian Church there, 26,20, Se-Magellane Streights . the latio merall Nations of Christians. there. Cape Christian in Groneland, 815

10. Of Queene Anne & Queene

Sophia in Groenland, 817.20

and of Prince Henry, 599.20

Caphars, fo the Tartars call Chri-

ftians, 234. 10. # 238.50. #

222,10

bid. Grace,

647.30

416.40

20. 6 217

Caracarum . two monether and ten dayes sourney from the Volga 47 Garacas, the Province in the West Indies . 866.60. The chiefe Townes and their diffances, difcovered, tributary Indies. Ports, Capes , Points , Lakes, Gulfes , Rivers, Soyle, Beafts, medicinable Stones . Governments, etc. 867.868 Caracolus cleere Kenes Milke, 27

Carambis the Promontory, 636. Caramoram the Riner. 280.40 Caran the neonle. Caraunas a mungrill people; 71.20 421.10 their Inchantments. Carbuncle or Rubie , imitating the Carrie . Card-play frequent in China, 395 ıbi.l. Cardandan the Pronince, 92.20 Carianfu the Cuie; the Commods. ties thereabouts. Cartagena in the West Indies , the Scite, Soyle, Rozen, Gummer Balmes, Oc. Lastende of the Co.

tie, and de feription of it, 885.1 Carthage the goodly rumes of it, Carts with forty wheeles, drawne by fine bundred Horfes, 165.50 Carualleda, in the West Indies: the diffance from Venezula mber beedt Carawood, what in Tartarian, 243 Carazanshe Countrey and Citie, 91 50. Gold found withe Rivers and Mauntamer

Catale, now called Afon, 54.40. in margine. Cafan conquered by the Ruffe. 740.1 Cafehar she Prosince. Cafchar the Kingdome, 312.50 Catibin in Pertia. Cafitan , the Horfe-guards to the Tartarian Princes. 84.10 Caskar & Citie, 240.40 Cafpian Sea, or the Hyrcanian. and ply? \$2.90. Whence fo cal-Calpian Sea is a Lake, the extent of it,109:60. Hath fenerall Gulfer,

236.20. The bound of it, 16:10 No Bay, Calpian Sea, well described, 242.1 How farre from the Euxine, ibid. The water both froft and Sale ibid. See alfo pag. 245. Frozen, 247.60 Caffaria or Cafarie, a Pronince of the Sea of Pontus, Y. 60. Thhabi.

sed by Greckes, ibid The Merchandife of thefe parts, 2,10. Is she Taurica Cherfonelus, 53.30 Caffia Fiftula m the West Indies. 875.1 Caffia the tree, bievotes fearches downeward for water, 982.

30. Where and bow is growes, Caftle built of Straw 628.1 Caftles, fine on the Banker of Cattro Citie in Chile, the latitude, Gataneus the lefuite in China. Catava she blacke or Kara Cataya, farre remote from the other Citaya,

Cathay, the mightineffe of the Kingdome , 108. 40. shinks the rest of the World blinde , ibid. An winderten the people, ibid. The bounds,

Cathay & China Catay the greatest Citie of Catay, whetherit bee Pequin in Cuna. 801.30. in marg the Merchane difes there. Catharans described 311.1. Their Apparell, 18,40
Their skill in Physicke, 23.00

Cathaians write mub Penfits, and m Characters. Catechilme of China, Citen in the Tartatian tongne is Lady. Catchpowles in Ohina their Lie meric.

Catimparu, a Towne, Catouga the River runneth out of the Samuted's Countres into Ca Cat a meant ajne, easts men, 628

Cats of Hispaniola, their crowling.

Cattle fed with filb: Cauchin- China the Kingdam, 281, 50. Where, 168.20. Their manners the fame wab the Cinors, but their language is afferent,

Cauchin China, tributary to Chi-Dauchin Chins, tronian ; is na 419. The Kingi stibute paid in wood, ibid. The people deferia

Caulalus the Mountains, 20,10 Called Coral, 100,40 Caucary, where and bow made, 417 10.6 418.20

Cavillations to get Money, 431. Caufeves admirable ones , 271.30

Cayo, China Wood. Cazan the Citte deferibed, 292.E Wonne bythe Roffe. 419.20 Ceracina, drinke of Rice, 27, 40. 0

Gercaffian Chriftians in Tauryca. 639.640. Their Duke Sipendary tothe Tartar. Cedars common in the West Indies,

Cemainum , fignifies eight, in Armenian , 50. 10. A Cun fo named, neere which Noaha Arke rested. Certificate for Merchants, 190

Chagre Riner betwixt the South et North Seas, bu bead, courfe & Chaldza, the bounds. 110.50 Chamis what, in Iapon, 324.60 Chamlets where made. Chamul the Cuie and Pronince, where 76.10. Their abominable

kinde entertainment of Guests, They are most kinde Cuckolds, Chancell none enters but the Priest in Rullis,450.20. Not the Dea-

Changle, avoide people; where, 16.10. Descended from the Ro-Changle the manner of Diet and

trauell ibere, 19-20.30.00: Cliaplaine to the Emperour of Molcoma, fits at table with the No. Chaplens of Noblemen in Mexico.

Chappels in Chinas 340.20 Chappell lund with Silam, 265

Characters , the Chinois bene for ty thoufand fewerall, as many as mords, 384.370.20. 6 ten thoras fand in daily ofe, ibid. They are not A.B.C. or any way like

Characters of the Chinois and Ia. pan are the fame : they figuifie the things , and not bare names,

Chargas Province mabe West Indics, the latitude, limits, lurifdi-Uson, two Governours and Bi-Joops: the fourechiefe townes of Spaniards, and ther latitude (tempfratures, forles, Mynes, crc.
896. Beginning of the Inrifdic

Chare Sibersky Prince of Siberia, brought prifener to Molco,743.1) Charles lackman bie Voyage, 462)

Charles Phillip, brother to Guitabus King of Sweden, 793, Layer downe bie claimse to part of Ruffia,

Charles King of Sweden andes the Rulle ugainft the Pole. 770.50 His Commission and premise of remard to bu forreigne aides, 771 | 60.

His title, which His death, 780.1 Charles Wayne not feene in Sama-Chautubo an Iland, 307.50 ...

Commonwealth. Cheapneffe of all shings in China, Chequian Prosince in China, 408

Cheremiffen Tartars , their Com-

trey, 442. Two forts of them. Peace with them bought by the Russe, a inst dealing people, 442

Cheremizzi, a land of Tartars. Cheremizer, che people balfe Gen

tiles. 392.00 Cherry Iland, or Beare Iland, 464 30. Mulitude of Wholes and Sea-berfes, ibid. The larande, 464.40. How fore from Eng.

Cherry Hand, Store of fowles there, 557. And Foxes like Dogger, the lautade, ibid. Mories and Morfes seet , ibid. Hiby wamed fo, 558, Part of the lie in 74. degrees and 55.minutes, 559 Beares there , 60. 161. How bet in lune, 560.40. Proft and Snew where in Inne, 562. 50 Poffeffion taken of it for the Englifa Muscoura Generary, 963130 Lead Mynes found there + 1816 564. And Seaceles, 594. They make their hoft Voyages ou the North fide of the Iland, vol6. 1 The West fide laskes like Hipcockes, 573.50

Cherfona the City weere the Euxine Sea, built, wonne, & reftored, \$23 Chelmur she Promince, where, " 1. They are the greatest In chanters and Idolators in the World, ibid. Their Heremites

and customes, Cheffe-play as China, the manner 394 30 Cheffe-play in Bed, in Ifland, 647.

Chetera Bougeris on Ilandon44 Chetfird Ruffian Meafare, what Chia she Herbe vfed in all corpe tainments, 3 26.60. & 375.30

Chia, bem wfed in Drinker, 382 Chiacato , Lond Pasteller of Axgon is India , bis Golden Tables ginen ac. Paulus Vanetus,

Chiai Catai, an Herbe excellent for she Gont &c 164-10 Chiamonay or Cunebetee, a Late,

Chiana Pronince in the Well Indies , the Seite , Commodities . Arts of the Inhabiting Indians: Latunde of the Citie, 879.1 Chiautaifo baptifed, Chica drinke good for the Stone,

Chichimecas , Savages of West Indies, then Fastions

Chierman the Kin dome , where, 71.1. The Commodities there.

Chile Kingdome in the Westindies, the bounds; more Son. there towards the EquinoRial then Peru : the true Scite. Extent of the Concrument , bom much inhabited, temper, warlibenesse of the geople; the feveral Spa-nish Colomies, in it; their latitudes and distances from other places, 898. Bishoprickes, Me-masteries, other townes and their lattender, and first pholing the name taken from Caltro, which two coulded Chillic's ble Laber, I - lands, Mynes, Ports, 62, and those lavinder, 899 The difference of Name action between it and Patterns,

Chile Kingdome , neere the tempersone of Spame, a rich foile & A poore people, 938.30 Chille Kingdome, fee Chile.

Child of Cathaya, who affirmed the transmigration of Soules, 42-10 Children dedicated to Denils on their birth-day. Children exposed bow provided for,

Children fall cheape in China, 367 Chaldren fold or bild in China, 396 Childrens desposition gheffed at

The three Children in the Onen, the memory celebrated in Ruffin, and Children bow baptifed named & dedicated to the Church or wars in

Mexico, YYo. How corrected of infrulted, ibid. How exercifed at feneral Ages, 1104. Gc. Chimia, Limia and Simia, three Sciences, what and where profef-

China & MAna, 856.20 China a perilons Conft , 258.30 When fufest fuyling there, ibid. 2 mit e . | 6840 | China, what part of it the

Tartars beld, 140: 10. The Chinois bedresonered or beld it for-IT YEATES. China, admirable for all proutsions,

China the way to it by land through Ruffia.

China calls it felfe Tame or Tamin. and the people langis , 152.60 Described. this

China knowne by that name to their Neighbours, 167.30. They call themfelnes Tangin , and their Country Tame, China a part of Scythia, 167.40

Their Dominion of olde, ibid. They are no Tranellers, 168 de 190.20. Hath flore of Shipping, 173.30. The Camois Pronerbe of that thid. The natural riches. 173.50. Their manner of Seafights, 174.1. Then Owes or Lioflios , 174-10. Bancones Lanteas, or fmall ships and Gallies 174.10. They dwell in their flips , ibid. Poore men line well there, ibid. Their bips of gward for Merchants. 175.1,10 Chinois are delicate liners, and yet industrious people, 175.10
They base latenesse, and their Priests for being fo, 174.20. The tribute they pay , ibid. Their Countrey well bullyanded ibid. Their mast artificial Ploughes, and Pumps for their Shippes, 176 To. Their Proper player , ibid. Their prouision for impotent perfons, ibid. Trades. 176.50.00. Rub men carried in Chatter, 177 10. Renonnes of the King, 177 eq. Mealeres ibid &c. The lone Porke exocedingly, 178.30 They have two or three Harnests

China most excellently full of Rivers and waters. China fubicat to yearely tempefts of -wind, 197.90. Hathtbirteene Shires, 199.1. The Kingdome is The monthes poft over , 199.10 Street; large and fraite, 200.1 The Government by Officers, 183 et 200. Quinions of the Soules departed, and of Reward after dearb, 201. 40. Their Lawes, 203.10. Execution of Inflice, 203.30. Curious of Newes and Noueltses, China.

of Rice to a years, ibid. Then

Victualing bouses, 178.50.

Infinitely peopled 266.60. & 267 10. Hath diners Silner Mynes,

bow such a world of people is maintagned 270.10. Teslas two or three Harnests in a yeare, 270 MO. T 26c. Reafon of the oreat trading, 271.20. The admirableft place in the World, 271.40 The distance of the Townes, 294. 60 Wonderfully tilled, ibid. The High wayes broad there, 295.20 Caftles none in China, 295.40 Their Houses but low, and why. ibid. Earthquakes frequent, ibid. The cheapuffe in China, 302.60 How for from the Philippinaes, 308.40. It # Cat 1ay, 342.314 40. They differ onely in name, 214 50.215.0. Tu great Catay, 404 He that Stayes there wine yeares. may not returne to bis Countrey, 215-10. The least mother Citie in China , bigger then Lisbone, 319 40. The Prominces bane Decultar Languages, 220,20. They mourne three yeares for their dead, 327.40. Their high wayes much travelled, 330 60. Their tranel by Litters on mens Shoulders, very cheape, 330. And fo for Boat bire. 331.39. Commoditie of their Rivers , 336.20 Heate and sold much there, 341 20 Greatnes of one of the 15. Prouinces , 342. 30. Their North

parts best. hina foure fquare, 360.50. The true fituation and quantity, ibid. The exact description of it, ibid. 261 dec. 280.50. The two errours of our Maps of China, 261.40 All one of with Catage, 351.50 @ 362.20. Why the Neighbour Kings cannot innade China, 362 40. How dinided from Mogot. 361.40. The division : and Choregraphicall Bookes , ibid. The greatneffe of their Cities and Villages, 362. 362. The tranell there u most by water, 363.50. The canfe of the plenty, 363.40. The cheapneffe of their commods

hina needs no forreiene traffique. 264.1. Europæan Commodities deare there, 367.1.274.30. The gonernment, 372.1,10 Halfe the time there frent in complements. 374.50. The ancient names of China, 280.20. The King changeth it at pleasure, ibid. The greatest Kingdome of the World, 280. 40. Tu under the temperate Zone, ibid. # 381.20. The number of Cities and people, 281 1,10. Exceedingly fortified by nature bid. The naturall commodities of it, ibid. Their mummerable fipping, bid. H by the Countrey w fo cold, 38 2.1. Their Metals, Glaffe, Paper, Spices, &c. 382. Their Artizans net comparable to ours, ibid. & 383 10 Their writing, and Learning, Oc. 284. The Language subuct to Lauinocations, ibid. Meft confuled, ibid, Severall Languages Spoken in China, 402.70. Extreame difficulty of their Language 403.50. Particular deferibe tions of places and things in China, fee page, 402 40, Oc. The Authours suspition of a Kingdome to the North of China, 404. Christians not Suffered to he in their Cities a nights, 411 i

China King. He writes upon plates of Gold 226

60 Kmgs of China where I weed 260.20. 275.20. Holpstali for Pilorems that come to vifit their tomber 261.50. Henderine wall about their burial place, 262.1 260. Hermitages in tt, bid. The babit of the Hermites there, and bis admirable aufweres to Parias ibid. Alars there , much renerenced, 263.1. Refled by Faria the Portugall, 262. 6 262. Fatia drowned, 263.50. His Palace described, 342 His closeneffe, 357 King of Chinaes Armes, 266.10 Ø 275.10. Ø 296.1. Ø 219.50 # 392.20. # 392.40. Begine ning of the Kingdome of Chinas 267. sc. The King is fworn: to refide at Pequin, 275.1. His renennes bow beflowed, 276.30 264.30. Hu bonfe of entertainment in every Citie, 292.30. Hee holds bimfelfe Lord of the vi orld. 309.50. The pride retorted by the Spaniards, 210.20 Hecares notto enlarge his Dominion, 390 20.315.1. His nobleneffe, 315 20. Hee is gulled by counterfere Ambaffages ibid. & China vinted into a Monarchie

when , 276. 20. The renenue and expenses of the King, 376.50. He cares not to excreate bis Dominion ibid. His brothers and Comfins, of little authoritie, 379.20 His tribitary Kingdomes, 181 10. His Pensions to Souldiers, Officers, &c. ibid. His intle, 387 5. Does nothing but by his Offcers directions, 288 10. His Kesiennes he cannot laufh as he pleafer, ibid. Net focken vito bne

345.10 | Cheu, a great Citie.

Van van Siu, Athoufand thoufand Hien, atowne, 381.1. # 389.40

by his Eunuches, or by Petition	, yeares,
392.40. His Armes or Enfigne	Tantu, the Priests of the
remerenced, ibid. & 405. The	Tanta, the Triests of the
that speake to him, coner the	Cafila, a Caranan or co
monsbes, 392.50. 405. He fel	Manch and arrange of co
dome gines prefence, ibid. He s	
yellow, and none elfe may be, inc	· Ibings,
His Robe and Palace, bid. The	
rickon by bu Reigne, 393.1 Wh	7 in marg. & 386. 50
be comes not abroad,396.30. H	
se the High Priest, 397.1	Zinzin, an Interiection of
China words.	A contract 2
Hiam-xan, a Mayor, 327-3	
Anfam, the fame that Hiam-xan	
327.30	end no worden ans Confe
Hien a Citie , and Ci-hien Goner.	M and N.
mour of a Citie, 327	
Ci-hien a Gouernour of a Citie, 3 27	
30	Cilam . an Allifant in In
Aitao, the Admirall, 327.50. He	
is Gouernour ouer all Strangers:	Choli, Magistrates extrac
See Strangers.	3,000
Chaen, the Pronincial Visitor, 327	Zauli, Magistrates extra
Ciai,-yuen, the fame that Chaen,	Orin the Come of the F.
_ & 389 60	
Ci, a Gouernour. So Ci-hien, the	thus Nanquin fignifies :
Gouernour of the City, 327.30	
Ci-fu, the Gouernour of Sciau-	
quin, 328. 1	Nan; Sauth, or Southerne,
Thien Chu, the Lord of Heauen,	Pucinfu, and Naganzafu
	ftrates,
Lin-ci-tau, a Gonernour of three	Tauli, an order of Magistra
	Yuce, laipar of Catais or
	l
Tutan a Viceroy, or Lord Deputy,	Totoqui, the Law,
330.20	Ofciami, a Sect of Priests,
Sancei, three Wayters, 333.60	Ciaicum, Fasters,
Ci-lau, or Scilau, the Indge of the	Lauzu, the old Philosopher,
Countrey of Warre: 336.10	Hoei, Sects of Strange Religio
Naughan, The Southerne Inn.336	
30	Fu, ashire in a Province,
Sciepathau, Eighteene Streames,	Sciandai, on the Sea,
336.50	Xi; Fiat, 407. 40. (fo 1
Yamfu, the Sonne of the Sea, 337.40	Ti Cam. Pluto.
La Pu, the Councell of Magistrates,	Ti Cam. Pluto.
339.60.388	A China-prouer be Emglif
Chian, the greateft Riner, 340.39	1
Cho, a Riner, 340.29	Foe, Gods,
Horfes, a swifter fort of fhipt, 341	Zo ye: Cringing,
20	Paytre, a paper of Visitatio
Lu,the Tartars, 342.40	
Pa, or Pe, the North parts, 342.40	Than, exceeding large,
SZID boly or Saint. 245.10	Yu, Reit,
Scingin; a Saint : the greatest title	Hia, great,
ginen to some learned in China,	Sciam, Adorned.
344.19. & in marg.	Cheu, Perfect.
L, vfed for N, in some Dialects.	Han, the muke way in Heauer
228.10	Min, Splendour.
B, Jeldome vfed by them. 242.40	Ta-min, the Kingdome
Holy Pao, God. 245.10	Splendour.
Scin mu, boly Mother, 245.10	Chiumbos, a Garden,
M., a Mother, 345.10	Fu, a Prosence,
Nian a Queene.	Chen a speed Citie

THE TABLE.	
yeares, 347.10	Mui, Sea-coale,
antu, the Priests of the learned,	Quohoa, the Court Language, 384.20
247-40	
Tafila, a Caranan or company of	Tihio, The Examiner or Pofer, 389
Condures, a Coine worsh senen far- things, 365.39	Siducai, the degree of Bachelour of
Colai, the Conneell of State, 372.40	Kingili, Master of Arts. 385.40
in marg. & 386. 50. & 388	Quianjuen , the Senior Brother at
40	Commencements, 386
inzin, an Interiection of Vebanity,	Citi-lu. Daffarfhin
373.20	Hoami, Supreame Monarch, 387
They want B.D.R. 403, 50. They	
end no worden any Conformut but	Lauye, or Laufie, Lord or Father,
M and N. 408.40	Chinois or people of China, their
iam Ciu, a President of a Court,	Persons and Habits described
388.50	179-40, 50, OCC. : Carmirres in
ilam, an Affiftant in Indoment,	ther Harreshid Homelon C.
holi, Magistrates extraordinary,	Inter and their common Course for of musting men to Victualing
388.60	bonfes, 180.10. Their enters ain.
auli, Magistrates extraordinary,	ments of Guests, and manner of
388.60	Feasting, ibid. 30. By night, 1814
in, the Court of the King .: and	I. They weare no Weapons, ibid.
the Nanquin fignifies the Son-	1 CO. I beit Funerals and Monn.
therne Court, and Pequin the Notherne Court, 289.20	Ding, ibid. 50. 0 182. 1. Their
Notherne Court, 389.30 an; Santh ar Southerne, 389.30	TO COLUMN CONSTONERS, MINE ADDRESS.
icinfu, and Naganzafu; Magi-	Painting and retirednesse, ibid.
frates 280.40	shid 90. Sec. Magifrates mit
uli, an order of Magistrates, ibid.	their Creation , Prinsledges and
ice, Iaspar of Catai, or Calcar,	maintenauce, 182.20. Influer.
390.10 otoqui, the Law, 397.50	Prisone, and Scheeler, 184. and
ciami, a Sect of Priests, 398.10	203. Manner of administring
aicum, Fafters, 398.30	Inflice, 186.10: Admirable di- ligence in their Sermants, ibid. &
uzu, the old Philosopher, 398.40	187. Pompe of their Magistrates
ci, Sects of strange Religious, 400	in the Streetes, 200.187.0 193.
20	Their babite, ibid. Their manner
, ashire in a Province, 403.40	of examination of witnesses, 188.
iandai, on the Sea, 406.50	200. Their Briberie, 186. 90. &c.
fignes.)	&c. They have Temples for them,
; Fiat, 407. 40. (fo the King fignes.) Cam. Pluto. 407.60	and Oratories mother Ships, 196.
I China-prouerbe Englished, see	I. Slight esteeme of their Gods,
oe, Gods, 409.10	190.10. 6 197.1. Hard to bee
oe, Gods, 409.10 373.20	made Christians, and why, 197.
aytre, a paper of Visitations, 373	Chinois, the esterme of their King
40	258 40. # 260. 20. Their -
han, exceeding large, 380.30	pinum of the Remard after death,
u, Reit, 380.30	262 6 263.1. And of the bar-
ia, great, ibid.	ming of the World, 266. 30. Sil-
heu, Perfect.	ner buryed with them, and why, 263.10. Their Hospitals, 264.
an, the mike way in Heaven.	They give their goods to Idali,
in, Splandour.	and to have their foules prayed
a-min, the Kingdome of great	for, 264 40. 0 270.1. 0 277.1.
Splendour. 280.20	Religious Orders amongst them,
hiumbos, Garden, 380.30	264.60. & 32. Sewerall Sells.
hen a great Citie	265.50. 0 272.40. Their Gods

of fire, Tempest, Sea, &c. 266.

Their opinion of Hell, 267.1.

Some Christians in Sampitay. 267.30. Chronicles and Levends of China, 267 50. Their prayers to their Gods , 267. 10. And vowes, 269.20. They beare their Idels, 319.60. Their Priests fhauen. 319.50 Chinois femetimes Lords of India, 269.marg. Their infinite varie. tie of Trades : no mean must meddle with anosbers Trade , 270. 271. They ever Snakes Snakes. or any thing, 270. 30. Their ex treame Superflitions, 271. Their workes of Piesie, 271.10. Their Rately Tribunnie, 272.11 Their Sepulchers, ibid. 30. 274.20. Sacrifices of wilde Birds and Beafts, ibid. Their foure chiefe Sects, 272.60. Their inkling of the Resurrection, 274.20, Their Gods, ibid. 40. They Marry and get Starres, ibid. Their knowledge of the Flood of Noah, 27c. 40. Skerne to be taught, 227.60. Their owne people beld wafts for Gonernours, 276. Their Women bee white, ibid. They hold the tran finigration of Soules, 277.1. They are but meane Mariners. 291.1. Their Compafe, & want of the Card, ibid. 10. They werfbip Saints Images, ibid. 20. Their Customes in comming a Shoare, 292.10. Their Banquets described, 302. 20. 292. 40. 6 298.20. What Mulicke they ofe, ibid. of 302. 30. They are excellent Porters, 294.50. They weare no Weapons, 295. 20. Their State Ceremonies, upon the knee, 296. 40. of 298. 20. of 100. The inferiour layes afide his frate before bu Superiour, 297.1. Ceremonies to the Sunne, before their Feasts, 202. Their Mufters, Attinitie, and Martiall discipline, 305.10. They inwoake the Denill in a tempest , 308. 60.6 318.20. They thinke it barbarous to bee called by their owne name, 230 40. Much addifiedto Alchimie, 322. 60. o 334.1bid. Their manner of shankes giving, 333.50. They are apt to Learning, 335.1. How men suffected, are made to finde out the parties offending, ibid. 20. the abstinence of their Idolaters. ibid 20.their testimonie of bidding a man welcome, 339.40. Riding on Horsebacke not magnificent enough for them, 342.20. Their

Language confists most of Mo-

nosillables, 342,60. Then Lear. umg not fo admirable, 343.50. what : their Arethmetiche with Linuan instruments and Beades. 224.1. Some formers of Locution vied by them, 244. 10. and in mare. They bowe their foreheads to the ground in fainting their Superiours, 344. 1. 30. Their chiefe Anthers, ibid. 20. The prinacie of their Women, 200.1. @ 344.60. They weare not fe much as Knines, ibid. 40. Their babne, ibid. Ther diffining of themselnes, ibid. 50. Their Carechifme, 344, 1. Their knowledge of enertafting pame or reward, ibid. Tangle to worfbig Saints, &c. 345. 10. Their opis mienaf Echples, ibid. 40. Their fine Elements and senorance in Philosophy, ibid. 50. Their No. bilitie, 246.50. Their Learning reckened up, 348.20. Their want of Logicke, ibid. Their Philofo. phers bold them (elnes canall with the Creater, 348. 20. 30. They are greedy of precious Stones, 353.10. Their Southfaying abent their Buriali, 3 57.10. They call their Kingdome the World, and are amazed at an univerfall Mappe, 358.50. The hopes and binderances of their Connersion. 259. They may follow what Religson they pleafe, ibid. 20. Their good Capacities, ibid. Their incredulity of things after this life. 259. 20. They keepe as many Wines as they are able ibid. Defiroms of Learning, 360. 30. Their Enddings and other things all alike, 363,40. Their Shipping of two forts, 364.10. Their Dyet and feeding they are great Sallet-eaters, 305. 50. They eate Herfes, Mules, &c. ibid. 60. They know not how to dreffe their Silker, 266 40. Il Drers, ibid. Their Apparelllong, ibid. Their lang Hayre, ibid . Their Hats and Capt ibid. # 376.1. Their perfons and Complexions, ibid. 10. Their trades, ibid. None rich. nor idle, ibid. 30. They have no Nobility by descent, ibid. Therr Marriages, ibid. Their Fanerals, 1bid. 60. 6 368. &c. Ther Idolatrie, 269.1. They are Sorcerers, 269.10. Their two great follies, 369.20. Most can write

there.

Chinois bighly conceited of their

Cingis-chan, bis victories, 77/50.

the Papacie, 375.20. Closeneffe of their women, 375.50. Their apparell, ibid. Their premention of rebellions , 376.30. Then lour. ntes but flow and frall, 409. mare : How and why their women make their fare betle, 410, 60. Line long and bealthfull, and why . 191 sor Their haire worne bofe , till they bee twenty, 394 Their ver four defembed exaction 394.20. Their Bores and Girles babies, ibid. The apparell of men end women ibid. The change of their names often , 394.76.60. Their Games at Cards & Dice. Cc. 395.20. Their Superfinens. de. 294.40.0 296. Their cruel. see to their owne (bilaren, 206.10 and felues, ibid Their Setts ibid. The lefutes hope many of them. were faned. hinchintales the Proninces, 76 baire makes clotb. 966.40

Chincilles an Indian beaft, whofe Chingis Chan bis Vision to conquer all the World, 111.20. Ghos fen Emperour, ibid. His Limes. 111.50. His fecond Vision, 112 40. His death. 117.26 Chingis the great King of Tartary, Chingis fignifieth the found of Iton,

farers.77.60. The manner of it. with a Reed 78.1. Slame and bur rud. 78. 10. His Successors all buried by him, 78.20. The Tarrars going to burietheir Prince, kill all ibe) meete, Cingie Chan, Ancester to the Crim Tarcars. Chiutaifo, a Chinois much furthers the lefustes in China, 335. To. &c. Hu Letter to bis Mafter Ricius, Chircailes Tartars, neere Lituania. more Ciuil and comely then the other Tarrars, fime acknowledge the King of Polonia, and are Christened. hololla, a Citte gone to in Piloria

mage by the Indians, the deferip. tion, 1120. & 1123.20 Cirimin Silkeworme, 442.50 Christians which Croffes Inke upon their bands. Christians in China, 359.60. But decayed, 400.1.10. Called Terzai in Pertil,400.20. Some nem made in China, own learning, 375. They applande Christians

Christians in China, the fumme of their Religion, 267. 30. & 269. 50. A Chriftian Martyred in Coina, 260.00 Christins or Cathay & Repat, 211 1. Their babites, Blacke and Red. ibid. All thefe are fabulous reports. Christians many in Cauchinchina. Chriffians, what manner of ones the West Indians are. 998.40 Christian Chappell, & Croffe, found in Tartarie, 26,30. An Armeman Monkemat. ıbid. Chriftians of the East will vie no Rells, and why. Cariffians of Saint Thomas, but in one Citie. T10.1 Christianitie decayed in Taurica. 626.20.20 Christianitie by what meanes adwanced by the letteres in China. 401.1.10. The way to Preach it in China. 197.30 Christianitie receined in Islani. 640.1 Christianitie, why she West India ans embraced it fo foone, 1039. Christall of the Rocke, where had, Christall boryll, Mines of it in the Weit Indies, 874-30 Christmaff: day, December 25. in Ruffia, C ronicles of China, bow written, and by whom, 389.10.20 Chroniclers for the Indies in Spain, Chronologie of the Mexicans, 1050.1052. And of the Peruui-1053.10 Cialis the Kingdome, 313.10. The vimost bounds towards China, Ciangalu the Citie. 94.60 Ciarcan the Province, where, It bath diners precious Stones, 75. Cilicia how it came to bee called Armenia. Ciment not ofed in the Stone-works of the Indians, Cimbria, the Etimon of it. Cimmerian darkeneffe, 110.40 6 Cin a Tetle of the Mexicans, 1126. Cinamon tree described, 138.40 Cities, wonderfull, 12000. m China.99.60. wub Garrifons, ibid. Citie moncable, on the Water, 270.

Cities of Ruffia the chiefe, 418.30 S. Claraes Hands. Clergie of Rullia their efterme, 422. 10. Mocks in their Parliaments. 42 2. 10. 20. Called to their Parleaments in Ruffia, Clergie of Roffia vulcarned, they Preach but twice a yeare, the Substance of their Sermon, ibid. They purpofely keepe out Lear-Clerke of the Councell in Ruffia. Clete Hand, and of the Orkneyes. 827.30 Cleus, the chiefe Cute of the Ruthenione 61.40 Cliffe falling, kils fome English, 734 Cloath deare in China, 367.1 Cloath made of Barkes, 94-40. Of Gold and Silver. ibid.co Cloath made in the West Indies. 962.20 Cloath made of the Cosa Nut in the East Indies. 981.30 Cloath of Conies baire & Feathers. 11 28. 10. Of Feathers alone ibid. Cloath made of Earth, which endures the Fire. 76-40 Cloues flore, 91.10 Clockes & Larums in China, their Clockes unknowne to the Chinois. 356.40. They learne to keepe them, ibid. And the learners aduanced. Coach wub one & beele in China, Coapeswerne by the Greeke Cler-448.20 Co.pes of the Ruffian Clergie, 227. Cobinam a great Cuie in Perin, Coca Tree described, continually cheweaby the Indians of Peru, the vertues. Coca Trees and fruit described, 98 1. 30. Medicinable for what, who called Coca, 982,10 Coca, a leafe of Peru, the efterme. they chew it continually, & vie it for money Coco trees of the West Indies, the to a Palme-tree, the excellency of the Nut, and medicinablenelle of the Shell, the Nuts have Al. monds in them. The Tree beares twelne times a yeere, 958. 20.erc. Cockes of Hispaniola, when they Crowe.

Coffins for buriall, the Chinois curiofitie about them, 368,30.40 Coffin of Campbere, preserues the Corpes, 181. Cogno, & Iconium in Armenia, 69.40 Cohilouzas a Citte in China onerthrowne with an Earthquake, for Martyring a Christian, 269.50. 60.8 270.1 Coia Acem, the Pirat, bie Story, Coiat, the Tartarian word for their Mafter of the Ceremonies, 12.60 Coiganzan the Citie, 96.20 Coilac a Citie of Merchants in Can Coyne of Ruffia with a Horfeman and ou Whip, the occasion of it, 410.10 Colla in Lapland, Colan, the Tartarian wame for an Affe. Colchis, the extent . Wooddy and Mountainous, called the Petigoten Prouince, 626. Idelaters. their Customes. Cold extreame, in the vttermeft of the Torride Zone, where it (bould be hote or temperate, 896.40 Cold under some places of the Torride Zone,920 60. In the middie Region the caufe, 921.20 Cold neers the North Pole, not fo vehement as in 72 degrees, 702. Cold extreame in Tartarie, 27.L Cold thickning the breath, 415.1. And freezing men dead, and cutting off their Nofes, Toes, &c. Coldraifes blisters on mens faces. Cold innincible, where, 497.60. When it began to relent in Noua Zembla 499. And increases aibid. 6 503.50 Cold of Rullia, the experiments of it. Cold Bronger then Fire, 496,20. 498. It remedies ft:flings, ibid. Cold freezing the Cleathes on mens backes, Cold flopping the breath, 221.2 Cold prefernes from Putrifaction, Cockins found in Groenland, the | Cold in Nova Zembla, makes the

diffance betwier London and it.

812.10. The Latitude and Va-

riation there, ibi d. & 847.50 Cochinel flore where, 907. 60. 12

Coda Inforcata an Indian Fonte.

bus fighting for Pilchards, 979.

growes of Wormes, bow.

Beares and Foxes and Deere, i Snow-white. Colgoiene Hand, the latitude, 533 co. Deferibed. e 26.10 Colima the Pronince and Village in the West Indies, the Lattinde. and distance from the Choacan. 874. 60. The Commedities, faiting after it, Collars worne in flead of Bands, Comolen Hands. Colledge in China, 386.1. # 389. 20. of 198. The credite of the Dollars therem. Collins Cape in Greenland, 971. Colmacke, the Country, 235.20 40. See Variation. Colmans Point. 192.20 Colmogro in Rullia, 214-19. 6 223.50 Colours aboundance in Iapon and China. Cools the Towns, 517.50 And Ri-Portugali. ner, Colti, what, 466.40 Concha in China. 102.10 Columbus bie Preselition to our Henry the fementh, 807.20.00. forts and conditions. Comanians, are the Cumani, 53. 40. Whence they have their 114.20 Comanians, where autiently feated, 310. 6 12.50. Ouerrume by the Tartars, ibid. & 114. 30. Called Valanos and their Conntrey Valania by the Dutch. Combats for sryall, fill in Mulcouie, 216.60. The Combatants (weare upon the Crucifixe, 722 Combustions about the Succession in Ruffia. Comedies of the Mexicans, 1049. 40. Birds, Flyes, Toades, O.s. Per (mated in them, 1049.50 Comedics in China. 181.10 Comet feene by Day in Mexico, 1020.60 Cornet feen in Iapon, Anne,1 505. 326.30 Comet 1577. feene fenen dayes foomer in Peru then in Spaine, and wby,925.10. Its motion. Comhay a Port. 246.40 Commencements in China, 200. China, 285.40.50. Their Commencement Henfe, 386.1. The manner of their Examination, ihid. Common, all is among # Tartars, Common-wealth first to bee refeeffects. 443.1

Commodities of Pechora, Siberia,

the Tinguifies,

Permia, Ougoria, and among

Commodities experted out of Chia Communion, received but once a veere in the Ruffian Church 452.1. Confession before it, the Order, first to gine both in a Spoone and then both kindes fenerally, 452.10. Their murth and Comoron beautifull Women, 242. Compale made to goe falfe by Iron Compafie, the vie of it. 241.50 Compaffe waries not in Shotland Hes, \$67. Nor in Lofoote, \$81. Complements as China, 291. 20. ₫ 272.20 Complement in Æthiopia, 253. Composition betwirt Spaine and 330.10 Concombres a Indian fruit, the 955.10 Concubines freely kest in Poland. Confession bow exterted in Tarta-Confession Sacramentall, not known to the Nefterians or Armenians Confession auricular, initiated by the Douil in his Idell Giremonies, 1941. 50. See Aurichlar Confession alomed vied swiapon, a borrible Story of that, 1042.20 Confutius, the Prince of the Loarned in China, 347.40. Hononred with a Holiday Sacrefices. Temple and Musicke, with, & 397.30, His Age, worker and Authoritie, 384.50.0 185 wed in China, 306.40. The fuperflitions ofed then, ibid. c. 207 Conquerous are to prounke the Enemy to fight fuddenty, but the Defendant is to prostact time. 148.60 Constellations 24. numbered in Contagion in Sammer, occupioned by milda Wenters 627-2 Contomanni, a people in Cataye, Contratie canfes producing the the 915:10 Concroversies ended by kiffing the Croffe 434.10. The Order, when

Spaniards, 1024, 1024, 20, 18 Connicted by Law are fined to the Empgrour of Rollin, 429.30. How much 43 2.20. How aftermatels which Cookerie in Cathava Copies of Patents kept in China, Copper Mines were hard in the 875.10 West Inches Copper worker, Copperated by the Indians for to make their Artisme of. 941. 50. defesfed now. Copper mext with Bold in the Mine. Commbo River in Chile, the Lasmade... Corai the Kingdome, 324.20. Entred in belile manner by the Iaponians, 225, 30. They wanted Artillerie, Corafnie the Citie and Kingdome. 109.20. Walest Learning or Religion, Corchy the Iland. 208. T Cardage of Reedes, 97.30 Cordage of a Woods, very fromg, se faver frem in secces 486.200 ch Gordage of Wooll and Horse-bairs M Tartarie, 6.40 Cordi che Mountainens people, el fewerall Religions, 70.10 Corea, under the Chinois 709.60. 377.10. Innaded by she 1200nians ibid. Roloites by the Chinois againff lapon, ibid. Quatedbribe China King, Corela in Rullia, granted to the Cotelizabe Comercy : 443.40 Comment Fifting, 361.80.0 ATT. to. The Fiftermen pay a tribute for it. Cormorant Fifting in China, 179. Corne flung on the new Married, the meraning, 454.50 Commune groves in the cold parts of Ruffia. Corne burged with the Indiana to fewe in the wext World, 1974.20 Corne and Wine, who will be Nous · Haspania . 11. 10 Lange 1 20.11 Corne or the ground, the Indian · Ceromonies for the growing of it, . L.O. .. Coronation of the Emperour of Ruffia, the forme tothe 747. Who The expedding State of it, , abid. Coversions of the Indians by the | Coronation of the Kings of Mek :-

co. 10 6.10. Hu Charge, ibid. & 1000.20. His Oath falbien of bis Crowne, and Enfiques, 1006, 10. His Americang, 1000.20. Hu Throne and Enfigues of Warre then ginen bim. ibid.60. Orations made to bim, of his Charge, 1006.1.108 9.20. 1011.20. Foure chiefe Elettors. 3014.40. He is led to the Tem. ple to the continual Fire before be Coronation bid. The Feaff and other Ceremonies ibid. They must goe to Warre before their Coronation, to fetch in Prefoners to facrifice to their God, at the Imauguration, 1006.1009.1017 20. The King offers Incense and drawes Blood of bimfelfe with a Griffons talon. 1014. & 1018. 40. His Rober, and Emerald bung in he Nofrils, ibid, of 1016.1. Maskes, Ore. at their Coronation, 1019.40 Coronation of the Inguas of Peru, 1019.40 the Ceremontes, 1055.1.10 Corpo Santo what of feene at Sea, 718.20 Corpus Christi Featt of the Papolls, morated by the Mexicans, 1040 40. 50. And in Peru. Corrientes the Cape in the West

Indies, the distance from the E. quinoctiall. Cortezabe Spaniard bie france attempts in Mexico, 1023.40. His Alls there, 1024 Oc. Hu vabour, See all the Page, 1118. Cofackes of Ruffia, 766.30.0 777. 40. They are Barkemen in Rul-

112.242.20. Of the Law of Mis. humet, 240. 40. Their Gind Warres 633.10. Fights with the Tartars, Cofin Germans marged in Norway.

Colmos and Caracolmos, a drake of Mares milke, bow prepared by Tartars, 9.40. A tribute of Mares milke for their Princes. 5.50. The effects of Coimos drunke by a Stranger, 9.10 Cofmon mbolefome for a hunger-

Herwed man. Colmos finit powed out to their I. dols by she Tartare, before them-School drinke of it, 4. 30. 40.00.

Colmos of mone Mares, no Subiett must demberaf 80.60. The Prince Sacreficeth with it, on the 28. of ibid. Crasioyare,

Colmos, the Christians of the Greeke Church, bold themfelnes Excommunicate if they drinke it 9. 50. & 10. 30. And thinks themselves damned for u, 10. They bold that and Carrion abominable, as things frangled and offered unto Idels, ibid. 10. The necessitue of thu Drinke, keepes the Tartars from being Christs.

Coina the River. Cotam the Pronince, where, 74.60 Coran the Kingdome, 311. 50. Where, Cotavan Marble or laftar, deare fold in China. fold in China, 362.20 Cofta Rica, the furthest part of the Wett Indies towards the North, the extent of its Inrifdiction, the Townes, Mines dec. Cofting Sarch, & Nous Zembla.

Cotton Tree described, 106.20 Cotton great ftore of, Cotton Weell growes like Apples, Cotton infinite flore in China, 381.

Coulam, 106. Christians & Iewes mixt there. The Commeditues. ibid. To Councell of Warre in Tartarie, 68,

Councellours of State, emblished in Ruffia,425.1. Some vfed onely for State, and not for Conncell, 427.50. Their Names in Do-Office, Sitting dayes, and boures,

Countries betwint Ruffia and Ca-Court of the Taxarian Prince, 16. Court of the China Kings varied vate.

Courtiers the vie of them, Courcihip of the Tartars, 88.60 Courtelie required, 219.1 Courtefie is the fifth Cardinall ver-Cowes with lampes on their backet. 877.30 Cowes fung to, at milking, 57.40

Cow-bayre Garments in Ruffia, 460.20 Cowes tayle for a Prefent, 242.30 Crac, a Fortreffe of the Templers in the Holy Land, 29.1 inmarg. Cranes offine fenerall fores, 80.20 Crane Feathers werne, for killing of Tartars.

248.30

Creatures of the fame kinde, diffee in forme and qualitie, according to their natural places, 950.40 Creation not beard of in China

Creeples bow fet to worke in Chia Crimme the Land, and Crimme

Tartars, they bee Mahumetans

Crim Tartars their Countrey, 414. Crim Tartars inhabite the Taurica Cherionefus, 622. Called Porecop Tartars, ibid. They inhabite the Conneries of Moldatia, Podella, de. Amengit the Turkes and other Namues, 633. Their Cottages, Forts of skulls, &c. ibid. They enerthrow the Nagayan Tartars. Diners of their chiefe Townes, ibid. The chiefe Palace of their Chan, 634.40. Their Segulchers, ibid. Their Countres and the Commodities, their Citie Crimum (whence their name of Crims,) 635. Their Mint there.

ibid. They are the old Ianolgens

ces. How and when they came in-

to Taurica, 637,30. Defcended from Cingis Chan : their Nobilittle, Princes, and other notes of Policie, and their (ubie Etion to the Turke, ibid. Elettion of their Chans, 638. 10. The Princes jounger Sonnes, are called Soldans, ibid. His Prime Councell. 637 40.0 638.20. They learne Arabicke, the education of their Children, Oc. ibid. Their Rels. gion, Lawes without Lawyers, no delayes or cubid. No wranglers. mer exceffine ,639. 1. Till not their Ground : their Diet Liming , Sermants, Merchants, Tribute, Amballadours etc. bid. The Princes composition with bis Neighbours, ibid. 40. And with the

Crim Tartars, their Warres with Ruffia, 439. 20. The cause of their quarrell, ibid. His Herle eates Oates out of the Ruffian Emperours Cap 440.1. The simes of his immading the Russe, ibid. 10 Then Fights, Armes, and Apparell like the Turke, ibid. How they paffe a Riner : their bardi-

Turke, 640.1. Then Warres and

what belongs to that, ibid . 641.

Their flore of Horfemen, their

Armes, redempsion of Prifoners.

Stratagems, &c.642. Difcipline,

Enfigues, Miluarse rewards,

nelle, subulties, ibid. A Storie of their deceining the Hungaria ans mub their owne Scale, 440. 30. Their Seiges, Stratagems, and contempt of Death, ibid Defire of Captines, their promifi. on to carry them. Ther Religi. on, Idols, remerence to their Prinses Image. Sorcerie, Marriages, Nobilitie, Dyet , and dwellings, 441. They let their Horse blood and drinke it, ibid. Their bords or wandring Cities,442.1. Their Frantiers, Complexions, Perfons, Speech, Songs , Archerie, &c. ibid. The fenerall fores, Tribes. and appellations of Tartars, ibid. 20. They naturally bate the Ruffe. 451.30. And that hinders their Connersion

Crimum, a Citie of the Crim Tattars, 635. The Storie of it. Criminall matters how proceeded in, in Ruffia,

Crimfon colour , the derination of the word. Crying of Commodities about the freetes in China. Crit or Merket, Neftorian Chrifti.

ans in Catay. Crocodiles, fee Lezards. They line onely in hote Rivers : (low Creatures, their manner of feeding: their battels with the Tygres: Wormer, Storie of an Indians killing a Crocodile, 931.10.20 Crocodiles dispeopling the Coun-

872.50 1055.1. Of those of Mexico, Croier Staffe carryed before the Be-Stops of Ruilia, 447.1 Crosse much vsed in the Greeke Crowne of the King of Mexico, Church, 455. 10. They figne

themfelues with it ibid. Which is Crucifixe fworne upon, 217. 1.10. their ordinary Thanke forming for Sleepe, Meate, &c. They arme See Croffe. themselnes with it, and account it the chiefe figne of a true Chri-flian, bid. They sweere by it in

Contronerlies. Croffes of Chalke made oner their Doores on Twelfib-day, 455. Crufado Preacht against the Tar-Croffe vied at the Ordination of Priests in the Greeke Church,

Cuba Iland, the first Names, first Discourred, the length and Croffe the figue vfed at the Bijhops breadth, Latitude, Description, benediction at a Coronation, 421. Mountaines, Rivers, Iles, Trees, Mines, first peopling, Villages, Croffe, the Mulcourte Priefts bleffe Ports, Capes, distance of plawithall, 227. V[cd in Baptifme, costre.

Croffe carryed to Allemblies for Indicature, 667.40

Croffe kiffed to end Controverfies. 434 10. Where this Ceremony se performed, ibid. This is their Corporall or booke Oath, ibid. See Crucifixe. Croffe made by the Neftorians and

Armenians without Christ vpon 13.50.0 22.10 Croile, Rubarbe , and Holy water, bom they cured a Tartarian Lady

Croffe advanced for an Enfigne by a Tartar Prince : The lewes derideit, & Cublai Chan defende Croffe, the Chinois expresse by the Character of Ten, 400.1. Renerence a by them. Croffes of Latton in the Well In-

dies, before the Spaniards came thather, Croffe a Confiellation feene in the Indies, Latitude taken by it, but Inbiell to errour : the diffance from the South Pole, 918.30 Croffes Iland described, 475.30. 531.1. Croffe Hand, 223.50

Crofie Road in Greenland, the Latitude 704 1. And variation of the Compaffe, thid. & Croffing after the Iaponian men-

Crowes, whose dang is liming Crownes fixe of the Ruffian Em. Crowne of the Kings of Peru.

like that of the Duke of Venice,

Crucifixe, a Chinois fufpition Indgement upon it. 355.40. The report that wen abroad of it,

Crucible made of burns bones beatars, 61. 1. 6 63. 10. Against the Emperour by the Pope, 62.30

Cubagua Hand, but three Leagues compaste, 999. 20. The Pearlefilbing removed thence to Margarita. The Iles by it, 866. 30. The Latitude, ibid. See alfo 868.

Cublai Chan, the chiefe of all the Tartarian Princes, 66.10. Nicolo and Maffio their Iourney of a years long, to bis Court shull Their entertainment. His que-Stions to them about the Christia ans, 68.30. Sends to the Pope for Preachers, ibid. His Death,

Cublai Chan, fignifies Lord of Lords, 81.40. A most mightie Prince, ibid. His descent, Age, Wefedome, &c. ibid. His De. feription, 82.40. His Children

Cublai Chan, 114.10. A Chriftia Cublai Chan, kiffes the Goffiels folemnely, 82.20. How hee rea wards bis Souldiers , 82.30.

Cuchimiocos what in Chinese.

Cumania or Comania the Kingdome de Couhed 100.40 Cumberlands lles, the Latertude, 847.40 Cuncbetee the Lake,

281.40 Cunninghams Mount in Croneland. Cunninghams Foord, a Silver

Mine there, 824.20. The Latin Cups of China, like Nas-flelle,

Cups of Coco Nut-fbells, their ver-Cur or Cyrus the Riner, which

gimes name to the Curg , or Ged Orgians, 49. 10. Falls mie A. taxes. Curcum a Hanen of Cilicia, where-

abouts, 51.30. & in marg. Curdiftan in Perfia, Curds dried as bard as Iron in Tartaria 5.60. How kept, and ea-

Cure of a Tartarian Lady by an Armenian Monke, 32.40 Curfeo Bell in Cambalu, Curia Muria, 252.60 Curland, the people Idolaters, & ca 628. Called Curonia, Curonia is Curland.

Currantoes in China, 373. 10. 6 Customes payed by Merchants mi China, and Cockets taken out, 190.30. Howeftmated. 194.1. How gotten by the Officers, 206.

Cuftomes

D, the Chinois want it, 228. Dacia is not Denmarke, 60. 20. in margine, It comprehended Tranfiluania, Walachia, and Molda-Davi er the Vo in Iapon, the Office, 324.10. Tunlar Kings, ibid. er 226.1

Diman the Hand, 168, 20, Hath the Damasks, the Chinois learne to make them. Damaicus wonne by the Tartars for the Christians, 122. co. Betraved againe by Caifach to the Saracens, 133. 10. Befieged a. gaine, but in vaine.

Dampes and darkeneffe of the Sil ner Mines, 946.50 Dancing curious in Mexico, on the Rope. 1064-10-20 Danes Fishing in Greenland, 731 Danes came ous of Scandia, 620.10. When first : their bumaine Sacrifices and Duinations, ibid. The extent of the word Danes. and their fenerall innations of England, ibid. &c. Their forlings of England. Their Malla-

ere, and renenge,621. More of their Storie, ibid. Danegelt, 621.10 Danieloue Stolbe, on the Coast of Lappia, Darkeneffe in the day time where.

494 50. How long it beld, 499. Darziz a Citie in Armenia, 69.50 Date-Wine medicinable for the Philicke, Dropfie & Spleene, 103.

Dates the best, where. 70.10 Daughters dishonestie, a shame to the Parents. 1044.40 Dauis, bis three Voyages, 463.50 Day of time ftrangely lost within a very Short Pace, 939. 10. The Philosophicallreason for it, ibid. Day and Night of many Moneths 107.10 Day light, three Moneths together, 617:40 Day long time together, 574. 575. Day ten weekes long, \$80.50

Dayes good or bad, observed in Ćhina. Dayes many Moneths long in licland. 647.30 Dayes names of the Mexicans.

1135.40 Daves, the fine odde ones lost enery geere at Mexico, 1050,10 Dayes and Nights made longer or Shorter, by the Obliquenes or rightneffe of the Zodiacke, why longer in England then in Italy or Spaine : Difcourfes about this Proposition, 920. 40. 50. Day, fee Night.

Dayntic meanes negletted by the Tartare. Deacon, one under enery Parish Priest in the Greeke Church. 448.30. His Office, ibid. Ma-ny in their Cathedrals, ibid. Deacons of the Rutenian Christians marryed, Dead not forled by the Tartars.

Dead bedies and their figures wor-(bipped by the Indians, 1028.50 Dead eaten in the Indies, where, 890.30

Deformed people kept by the Mexican Kings, 1128 Dead, the Tartars abomination of them, 36.60. And these that

Dead the Chinois burne Incenfete. 268.10. How carried to the buriall, their Superstitions about their Coffins. Dead. their Honfholdfinffe purged

with Fire in Tartaria, 44.1 Dead bow conferned whole by the West Indians, a Philosophicall Dead kept unburged all Winter in Ruffia, Prayers faid oner their

Graves. Dead worfhipped by the West Indians, and their Figures alfo, 1028. 50. Children Sacrificed tothem, 1029.20. People killed to ferme them in the next World : their opinion of the State of the Dead. Gold and Garments burged with them, and meates bronobt to their Graves, ibid. Their buryall of the Dead,

Deanes m the Ruffian Church,447. Dearth, the Tartars prenifion against it, 87.50. Fatherly Roy-

Dearth provided against, 276.20 Debters ernelly vied, 434.30. Enforced to fell Wines and Children,

and to bee their Creditors Bond. Debters , a Circle drawne about them, which they passe not, till they bane pased all, 105.10 Debters bem vfed in China, 204.10 Deepes Cape, 599 40 Deere all without Harnes in the Well Indies, Deese lamed, and why, 270.40 Deere in Greenland. Deere white, in Nous Zembla, 577.

Degrees of Learned men, three in China, 385. 30. Ther babite. bow distributed into the Proninces and Cities, ibid. 286.60 Degree,is 20. Spanish leagues, 8,6 Dely and Chytor, the Kingdome,

Demetrius, diners others Impoffers that name after bim. The Storie of the fecond Demetrius. 770. 20.30. Counterfeits the band-writing of the former. His freech to the Scottish Captains of his Guard, Upholden by the Poles, ibid. Forfaken by the King of Poland, befieges Mofo with an Armie of Ruffuns, 779. 60. The Poles and Ruffes inning against bim, bee is murtue-red by a Tartar, 780.1. His true wame was Vor, 786.10. The Poles promife to kill him, ibid. Hee marries the Wife of the former Demetrius, and for leades an Armie of Ruffes and Poles ibid. Other presenders of that name,

Demetrius the Greeke, bis Tranels 311.6 c. Stayes at Cabul, 212. Comes on to Hiarchan, 313. In danger there ibid. Threatned to be laine. Derbent, or the Porta Ferrea, 12. co. Neere Perfin, Derbent is Miralis. 110.10 Derbent in Media. a Garrison of Turkes. The English Merchants trade thitber, 245.0 246. Variation of the Compasse there, 247.10. The Wall described, ibid. Derbent at the foot of Caucafus, 113 20. Deftrored by the Tartars, ibid. Demerrius Prince of Ruffia murthered, 744.50. Boris Sufpetted for it, 745.1. Hee or an Impofor in bis name, claimes the Empire in Boris bis time, 750.1. A falfe Victorie ouer bim bruited at

Mosco. His Letters to the No-

bilitie at Mosco, after the death

of Boris,752. His Meffengers

tortured, 753. 20. Acknowled- | Diall in China. ged for the true D metrius by A Prime Counfellour . shid 40. His pretences, 755. 60. His Ande from the Pope and Poland, 756. Makes bimfelfe knowne first, to the lefattes in Poland, 576 to. The Conditions of Affiftance. Is ayded by Poland : his first fortunes. A Priests bastard, bis prayer before any Battell, is defeated, and defeates. Some places yeeld to bm,757. He proffer to Boris refused, bee and Boris impeach one another of Magicke, ibid. 30. Gets the Empire, bie first Ads in famour of the Poles and lefuites,575. Senas for a Wife into Poland, offers a League ater to the English Agent, and palle to him. Fauours the Englith. 7 c 8. His true name, ibid. 20. 40. Sends to certific the King of England of all. Commands the Emperour Boris bis Letters to King lames, from Sir Thomas Smith. Grants a new Commission to our Merchants. 759.0 760. His Articles of Contract with bie Wife, 76 1. 30. er. Her lornture. His promile to bring in Poperie : both Crowned, a Confiracie against him, bis Guards of forreyners, quarrels betweet the Polift Ambaf-Sadour and bim, 762. Proued an Impostor by his owne witneffe. Is flaine in a Conspiracie, bis Carcaffe contumelioufly vfed: bis Wife otbe Poles il vfed, 763 His vices ript up, his Parentage and Education. His person, and manners, 764. His intention for change of Religion, bee srufts Strangers, bit Usions before his Death which is reported another way, 765. His Acts and death described by his Successour, which beoins. Page.764 Derbent, new Fortifications built by it, by the Tartars, 126.50 Desolation, false layd downe in the Cart, 596. An Iland in the West

of Groneland. 597.60 Defolation or Groineland, 463.60 Defire pronoketh : the Land, 596.

Deffeada, the Latitude, 858.30 Diadem of the Kinos of Peru. 1054.60. What and bow worne, 1055. 1. Of the Mexicans,

Diamonds fore in Shar by Bactria

Diamonds found. Diamonds where, and how found, 104.40 Dice-play frequent in China, 395.

Digges Iland, the Latitude, 609. 60. The South-Sen open to

Dingo a Ruffian Coyn worth a Pen-Dinie a Frait, eaten fer Drinke.

236.40 Diraford in Island. 597.40 Discoueries of Spaine and Portugall by East and West, meete at China and the Philippinaes,

Discourrie of a Passage in 47. De-grees, from the South Sea to the North Sea. Dileale of the Spaniards bearts, cured by Indian Gold. 1111.1 Disputation of Frier William with

the Idelaters & Nettorians, 41. 50.0 42.10.00. Difoling veed by the Maxicans in their Lents. 1024.40.60

Distances of the chiefe Harbours betwiet Spaine and the Indies.

Dithmar Blefkins, bis Tranels to Island, 643, Into Groneland. 651. Almost killed with the Mountaine Hecla, 635. Paffes inte Portugall, Diue-doppers ftrange ones in Ife-

land, Diuell could doe nothing, when a Christian was by,

Divell innoaked in a Tempest , 208. 60. Answers to the Chinois, 309.1.10. Warshipped, 283.10. 196.30. And wby, 201.50. The West Indians familiaritie wub bim, his Imposture, and Sacrifices : bee bath bis Confuters. and Pythagorean Monkes, the manner of their Coniurations, 973.974. Images of his, his threatning of Tempests, &c.974. For what end bee foresells things to come, 1020. 30. in margine. Hungry for Mans flelb, 1039.10

Diuels carrying away men in Cathaya. Diuell painted white, and their Idols blacke, where, 105.40 Diucls consulted with in China. 395.60

CCC 2

346.30 Divell how worfbagged a Shipboord by the Chinois, 318.20. 30.40. His power in illand. 646.10

Dinine Apothegme of the King of France. Divinitie thought by the Indians, to be in any thing that was rare in its kinde. Diminations of the West Indians. 1042. co. Their trickes, 1044.1

Diumers, are the Tartarian Priefts 8.30. Called Can, 14.50 Diumation vfed m China, 369. Dinorce for barrennesse vrged in

Rutha, Divorce in Mexico, and the Conditions. Diuelt is in supportable, 1026.10 Dieiners are the Tartars Prieste, 22.20. Like boujbold Chaplaines. ibid. Their Offices, ibid.40 Diumations by litting of Dust, 38.

Divination in Tartarie, by ibe Shoulder bones of Rammes, 31.

20. 30.00. Dinell imitates Christian Ceremo-Dials going with water, firangely, Dialling first brought into China.

329.60.0 339.20 Diet of the Chinois, Dying of Colours in the West Indies a strange way, 985.1 Dyes of China, naught, Dyuers for Pearles, bow long they hold their breath, 953.1 Dyuing an boure together, 972.

Doctorstitle, before their deeres in China, 370. They are the Noblest people, 371.10. Their refo-Intion to doe inftly, Doctorship, a great Dignitie in China. 347-20 Doffrefiall Mountains in N Tway 661.20 Dogs eaten in China, 381.40 Dig-Filb, barker,

Dogs anno vied, to expell Porfon, Dogs of Groneland described. v. fed so draw like Horfes, 828.40 Dogs dearer then Children mileland. Dogs drawing in Sleds, their (wiftneffe, Dogges, the Indians companions,

Divels carrying away Men, 75.20. Dogs bow drest and eaten in Chi-Ø 79.50

600.20

'Dono, a title of Hovenr in Ispon, Dor a Cathayan King, and bu foce Court, 89. 20. Hu Penance, Dofhaikes or Boates in Ruffia, 243

Downies great in Ruffia, 454.1 Dragon, the Armes of the King of China. Dragons in the West Indies, 976

Dragons, the Chinois Superstition about them, 395.60 Dragons, 91.50. How taken, 92.1. Their Gall medicinable, ibid. Drie Sea, by the River Pechora.

Drinke made of Rice, Mell and Heney,4.50. And of Mares milke, 5.30. And of Comes Churne milke. Drinke bot in China, 366 I

Drinke-Offerings in China, 392.1 Drinking cames, Drinke of Rice, excellent, 25.50. Like white Wine, Drinke of the Mexicans to procure infulacfie before Death.

Drinkes bote in China, good for the Stomacke and the Stone, 391.

Drinking Feasts of the Tartars, 4. 20.40. oc. Mulicke at them.

Drinking Feafts of the Islanders, Drinking away ones felfe & Chil-

Dioina River in Ruffia Nanigable one thousand miles. Dronden in Norway is Nidrofia. An Archbifbons Sea, 651.30

Drugs of the West Indies the kindes, and vies, 959.40.50. 960.1 Drums buge ones, 438.1

Drums, to make their Horfes goe,

Drunkards are for the Emperours

fernice in Rullia, 43 1.40. Why ther increase. Drunkennelle not punisht in Tarra-432.40 Duckes going and returning, at found of Drumme.

Duckes bow fedde in China, 174. 40. Artificially bred Sir Dudley D gges bu Cape, the Latitude. Duina the Riner, 213.60, @ 222. co. Duina the Rimer, 415.40 Duina she Riner, where it falls into the white Sea.

C22.20

Dake of Brabants Stile, me the Dukes in Ruffia of the fourth deores of Nobilitie: their descent from younger Brothers, 425.30. They bane no inberitance, glad to bee Sernino-men.

Ding a good Commeditie in Chie Dung, Bread baked in it. Dung bonghe by found of Taber. Dung of Birds a ftrange report of it

Dutch differbe the English at Greenland, 466. See, Netherlandets. And agame, 467. 1. 6 ibid.20. The English take fome of their Fun from them, bid, At difference with the English there, ibid.60. They Fish perforce, branes and threatens the English, and is furprized, 468. 1.10. They returne to Greenland to drine away the English. ibid.40. They affault the Eng. lish, ibid. Beate and rifle them, and overthrow their Voyage, \$69.1.10. So doe they the next two or three yeares after, they (poyled the Greenland Desconeries 472.60. Some Discoueries of theirs, towards Nous Zembla. 473.00. Their bard Voyages thitber, ibid. 474. cre. Ther are forced to Winter and build a House thereabouts , 490. 6. Their often and dangerous Fights with the Beares, ibid. The Elenation under which they Wintred. 497 10. They like upon Foxes. 495.0c. They get to Sea a. gaine, 508.1. Their dangerous

Voyage into Ruffis, 509. Their admirable returne into Holland, 518

digge Gold and make Armour. Dutch Knights, their Alts in Pruf-

Dutch Fift at Greenland, 716.30. Forbidden, ibid. Wubftand the English. Durch men pull downe our Kings

Armes in Greenland, 727.1. Their intollerable infolencies D wellings all underground in lies

land.

E Agle found by the Mexicans by Oracle, and worthipped : the Storie of it, 1004. 40. Strange florse of another Eagle there,

Earthquakes m Island, Earth in China fhining like Gold, 265 Mary. Earth thought to be fquare, 329.40 Earth why it mones not about with

the Primum Mobile, 924-50 Earthquake in China, Earthquakes, a Philosophical die com fe of them, 940.0c. Affinis tie between burning Mountames and them : they bappen nearest to the Sea, and why some ranne a bundred leagues, ibid. Their effects, noyfe they make before,

when they mostly happen, 941 Earthquakes in China, 198. 10. Earthquakes frequent in Peru, whence they proceed, 895.20

Earthquake a prodigious one in the West Indies, Earings generally worne by the Ruffe Women.

Kulle Women, 460
East winder aignes within the burning Zone, 923. 50. Healthfull, called the Brife, ibid. Caufe of the

Eafter the Ruffes bane a Festimall greater then it, 762.50. This is about the fourteenth or fixteenth of May. Conferre the places page 762. with page, 764.

Eafter in Ruffia how kept, 227. 60. They falute and kiffe one another, 228.1. On the Ene they sleepe in the Church, 227.50 Easterne people generally bane little

Eyes, Eating neere, a Tartarian Honour, Eating of Men facrificed in Mexi-

226.1 Dutch men in Tartarie, fet to Ebbe and flowe much or little, what

THE TABLE

Seas doe, and what do not, 989.30 Ebbing and flowing of Coneral Seas.

A great fecret, 9 29.9 30. Opmions of it. Ebone wood whence brought , 9:8

Ecliples the Chinois opinion of

345.40.346.1 Ecliples the Chinois opinion of them, 385-10. Beli beaten then,

Elges Hand disconered, 732.10 Edenborow in Scotland mere Northerly then Mosco, and yet not fo cold; and why, 472.40 Edeffa the Citie, or Robais, 110.50 Eddie winds, Leges at Eafter gimen to the Priefts. 227.50. Diedred or gilded, and

carried in the band, then, ibid. Exchanging them with their friends, 228.1 Egregaia the Pronince. 80.10 Elements worfbipped by the Mexi

Elements fine in China, 345.50 Elephants carrying woodden Ca-

Elkes or Loshes, men ride upon Elbing, the English trade for Flaxe there,

Elfenore in Denmarke, bom big ge, Emanuel Sina bis mifebance, 318

Ember-weekes of the Heathen Mexicans Embaffie of the Ruffian Lords to the King of Poland : the points

Emeralds a Myne of them where, 884. 40. # 885.30. How they 889.20

Emeralds have the third place amongst Precious Scones; his va-Inc now. A prettie flory of them. where in the Indies is the greatest flore, and bow used by the indians: the Myees and manner of growing : greatneffe of some moderne and ancient.

Enchanted fleepe, 45. 10. Sleepe mchanted, of three dayes long, 45 Enchantments of the Islanders:

how they hinder ships from fay-Engines of battery. Engines of wood to two fbips, 341.1 Engl fh aydes fent into Sweden,

772.1. The conditions of their entertainment, 771.1.10. In di-

fireffe at Sea, and lauded in Initland, ibid. Reliened by a Dane : the flip that brought them failes away. They are billetted in fenerall Honses, in danger of the people, 773. Fally accused by Gritfin a Welchman, 774.1. Bound in their beds, orbound, 774.40. & c. Foure of them flaine, all in danger againe, relieved by the King of Denmarke , enforced to pawne their Lientenant, arrive in Sweden, 778. Fall foule mit the Burgers of Stockholme for meare, ibid. Relieved by the King, (hips into Finland , and distreit there at Sea, dye of cold in Finland. Their miferable march into Ruffia, 776. They defeat fixe then fana Poles, 777. They meete the Ruffian Army, being engaged upon an Enemy, their owne ermy and Generall for lakes them , their valour , their Horfe

defeated; the foot receine quarter. English right to the North west puffages, \$65.40. Their Difcone ries that war.

English conquests in Sweden, 6:1 40. And Norway, 623. Two 0ther places, English finde America before Ca-

lumbus bis Voyage thither, 808 English flagge aduanced in the Caipian Sea English bonfesin Ruffin, 755.10

mult at Mofco. 763.20 An Englifh nan bis ftrange Ad. mentures amonost the Tariars.62 40. Hu relation of them, ibid. Sent as the Tartars Mellenger and Interpreter to Hungaric, 64 10. His tranels, 64.10,20.0c.

English Voyages to the River Obi, English Voyage to the West In-

English (bips on the Coast of C ina. 309.40. Sufected by the Chinois, ibid. The Spaniards would purish them as Enemies, 310.40 English fuffer shipwracke in Media,

246.40 Enfigne of the Tartars, Entertainments in China : the fa-Shion, 373.20. A particular garment for it, ibid. Entertainments in China, 392.1

Epethites of the feneral Europæan Nations. 63.1 Era reckoned by in Iapon, 323.40 Ergibul ibe Kingdome in Tangut, Estoriland the Ite : Latine spoken

there, 610. Their Language, Mynes of Gold, trade & c.611.1 Eftridges in Peru serrifie the feepe,

Ethicks the Philosophy of Chin., Ethicks and Politicks are the lear-

ning of China 343 Ethicks the learning of China, 384 Etilia or Volga dividet it felfe, and where, 48.10. Fromen ouer, 48.

Etilia or Edel is Volga, Ecilia is the River Volga, 12.40 Euerialting punilments, not better med by the Indian, 1047.10 Eunuches on China, and wby, 183

Eunuches great men in Ghina, 346 & fæpt. Eunuches are bed-chamber men to

the Tartarian Emperours, 310

Eunuches ferne the Kings of China bow made, erc. Their nombers and choice. Eunuches their authority in China, 349.20. 4 348.40. Their baleneffe,353.20. And conetonfueffe,

Euphrates the head of it, 49.40 Euphyates bends Southward at Ca-English Merchants flaine in atnmash. Europe when first peopled, 661.50

And wheree. Europe parted from Alia, by the Don. Examination in Russia, is all by torture,434. The eruelties, ibid.

Examinations bow taken in China. 188.20, \$ 192.50, \$ 202.50 Excelle in luxury dyet and apparell. unknowne to the Tartars, 639. 1 Execution done by freezing to death. Executions of death in Ruffia.

Exorcifme in Baptifme vfed in the Rull an Church, Exorcifing of Deuls in China: the manner, Extreme-vnction , Ruffian Sa-

crament, Extreme-vnction , not knowne to the Neitorians or Armenians,

Eye-salue a prefent one, 967.50 Epitcopia a Monastery in Cyprus, Eyes all the Chinois bane blacke,

267. 10. Their opinion of grey Ezina the Citie, where. 77.20

Factio isin Ruffia rayfed by the Empereur, 424.1. The wicked vie be made of it, and his reason Falanks what, in Chinefe, 319 20 Filcons the belt in the World. 71 1 Fall of a River very terrible, where,

Famine a mighty one in Rullia,752

Finfur, a Kingdome of Jana, 104 Fans vied in C 1102, 283.50. How made, ibid. The ordinary prefent,

Faria bis Alnentures, 252. to 263 Wracked and relieved by a Kyte, 256. Elcapes admirable. Faft of the Neitorians three weekes

before Line 21.1. When beganne and ended, ibid. They eate flesh on Frydayes, ibid, O.ber of their River.

Faft of the Armenians, fine dayes before Lent , for Saint Sorkis,

Falting from flefb not obsernedin M igaila, Faiting in China from flefb, fijh, Faiting before visitation of Sepulchres. Falting broken by neceffitie, 19.30 Faitings of the Mexicans in honour of their Gods : the extreame

Arictnelle. Faits in time of drought in China, 406.10 Fate, all affayled to it in China,

Faxiba Cicugendono, vimps all in Iapon: his doings, and intended conquest of China, 324.20. His Letters to the Spanish Viceroy, ibid. Vnites the Iaponian Dominions, ibid. He forbids the Iefuits to preach, 325.1. Calls himfelfe Taicoloma, 325.30. Mufters bis men for China, ibid . His crnelise to his Nephew, bid . Defeats the Coraians by his Lientenant Augustine, ibid. Sends 200000. Isponians to inhabit Corai, ibid. And is yet faine to gine it oner, 325.60. Receines the China Ambaffidours with flate, 326. Builds moft buge Palaces, ibid. His policie to keepe the Ia-

ponian Lords about bim. 226, co | Fish lined voon. His buildings onerthrowne with Earthquakes, 326. Receines a Crown (ent by the Chinois, ibid. Refuses to restore the Kingdome of Corai, 227.1. Dies, 227.1 Would be made a God: His Image and Temple ibid. His posteritie rooted out. Faire-foreland in Greenland . the latitude, 719. Sunnes refraction there, ibid. Fayre-hauen , and Whale-fifting Fayers, begun in the New Moone,

Fealts , the order of the Tartar Princes at them , 84.10.20,30 Serned on the knee, ibid. Musicke whileft be drivkes, ibid. Ther feaft enery New Moone, 84.40 The Tartarian Princes gine shange of Rayments when they

Feails their fashion in China, 180 30.60 Feafts in China; vid. Banquets.

Feats of Admitte. 349.40 Feathers, the trade for them in Rui-Feather-pictures, fee Pictures. Feathers rich ones as the Weft In-

dies. Feather works of the Indians, 1 132

Feauers gotten by the byting of an Fret bow warmed in Groneland 651.30

Feet, a great beautie for women to bane them little in China, and wby, 376.1. How the Chinois make them little, 182.20 Felons goods confiscate, 429.40 Felt much vfed in Tartaria, 3.40 O 4.20. O 6.40. Images of it, 6.40

4.30. How made. Ferdinandus the lesnite, recouers Goez bis goods , by eating of Porke. 216.20 Fertilitie without raine, 895.40 Festivall dayes in Peru, the occasions

of them. The Sacrifices offered, 1045. And in Mexico, 1046 1047.0℃. Fidelity of an Infidell, 238.50 Fight of the Indian fowles for filb,

Finmack Coaft described , 223.1 Firre-tree, moft ofefull for Ruffia,

419.30 Fishes and fishing of the West Indies, 986.987. The varietie, Fish vied for Bisket , and Beaftsmeate. Fish fained with Oxe dung in China, 205.60. Pondredmib Pen-Fish for feeding of Cattle, 649.40

Fish that gine Inche, ibid. & in Fiftes that fire. Fishes ftrange ones, 260.60. Hom

bred. 261.1 Fishes charmed for denouring of Pearle-fifters, 104.40 Fishes delight in the light, 647.30

The abundance in Ifland, with the manner of preferning them, ibid. Fishing with a fift in India, 994.20 Fishing with a fish of time in Island,

Fishing for the Whale in India, the frange manner, other fashions of Indian Fishings, 931.50.932.1

Fish sking for coners of bonfes, they gine a lustre, 617.20.marg. Fity Cuffes , the Chinois end their 181.50 quarrels withall. Fiunga the Kingdome, 332.20 Flaying of men, and putting others in their skins , wfed in Mexico.

1031.30.0 1038.40 Flushingers Lead, where, 488-20 Flutes of earth in Mexico, 104.50 Is made maletactors confesse iber Floco disconers Island by Ranens,

Flokawogur, a Hanen in Sheltland Flood knowne to the Chincis, 376

Florida disconcred firft by the Eng-

Florida the extent of the gonernment of it : the altitude disconered and peopled. A firme Land next to Europe of all the Indies. yeares sourney by Land shence into Spaine : occafion of the name ; fable of a Spring in it shat reftores jouth, the Aire, Soile, Pearles, no Gold Forts, &c. 868. 40. Cc. The Hanens, Ports distance from Los Martyres and Cuba : altitudes of places, the places where neither Gold nor People is : the Riners and Iles of it,869. Beginning of that Country properly called Florida. No passage that way out of the North into the South Seas,

Flowers the plenty in China, 181 Howers Flowers much esteemed in the West Indies. Flowers of Europe shrine better there, the varietie there,

Fives infinite flore, come to the fifb, Plyes, Waspes, &c. Of the West Indies.

Flying fiftes described, 988.50. prety battle between them of the Guilt-beads and Cormorants

Flying in the Aire, the Mexican Sorcerers believe they doe, 104;

Fogge proceeding from Ice, 5 21.10 Forges at Sea looking like the land.

Fogo Ilands the latitude, 821.20 Foolish Sparrowes of India defershed, their admirable Nests to keepe off the Monkeyes, 980

Foot-posts of the Indians, 1054

For-doers of themfelues, how buried in China. 189.1 Forfeitures extreme ones, 282.50 Fortifications in China, the man-301.50. ₾€. Fortune-telling in China, 395.50 Fos Bay in Groneland, 824.50

Fount of Baptifine, the bleffing, Fount of Baptifme, wherein the Em perours vie to be chriftned, killed & fworne upon in Ruffia, 783.20

Fowles a flory of strange flights of theirs, 998.60.00 Fowles carefully kept by the Mexican Kings, and why, 1128.40 Fowles of the West Indies, their

kındı. Fowles proper to the West Indies

Foxenose beadland. 223.40 Foxes white : good meate, 494.10 The times of their roming abroad, ibid. of Foxes black in Groneland, 819.40 Frankes, why the Westerne Chri-

strans are all called fo, 219.20.in Franke tongue floken in Turkey, et what it is, 140.50. Why fo called ibid.in marg. Fredericke the fecond Emperour married our Henry the thirds

Free-Schooles in China . 276.1 French Poxe the first beginning of

French Difease and sure common su

Iffand. Frenoima in Iapon, Fresh fish pressly carried about in China, 179.20. 205.50 Fretum Hudson, the extent of st Weftwards, 852.60. And Southmade. Fretum Davis desconered, 464.1 Fretum Dauis, a great Bay: no

bope of a Northwest paffage that way, 842.20. Store of Whales there, ibid. The laterade, 845 1 Freezing violent and incredible,

Frifland the Ile. 610 Frobishers Streights disconerea, 462.20. Sir Martin Frobishers three Voyages,

Frozes in engendring time eaten by the Englith at Sea, Frogges, men ouercome made to per-Sonate them: a prety flory of it,

1017-1-10 Frost in 63. degrees in America, in Iuly, 611.60 Froft at Midfummer in Groneland. 846.30 Frost Iland and Sound in Grone-

land.

820.0 826.1 Frozen liquors lofe their firength, where that firength lies, 493.10 Fruits of China, 381.30 Fruits of West India, there forts and qualities, 995. Thofe of Europe thrine better there, ibid. See, 0 , 8

Fryer Andrew in Tartary, and 16.10.0 25.10 Fryer Iohn de Plano Carpini en Tartary , 17.1. Meffage and Precepts to the Tartars, 60.1.10 His iourney into Tartary, Cy-

prus and Perlia,

Fryer Matthew in China, 314.30 Ø 315.30 Fryer Nicolo Dauicenza, and Fryer Guilmo de Tripoli fent for as Preachers into Tartary, with Papall authoritie, 67.20 They dare not proceed, 67.30

Fryer Martine de Herrada, goes inta China 200 Fryer unholfome meat to the Cani-865.49 hale.

Fryers of Mugalla, Shorne and chaft, 800.T Fryers quarrels in the West Indics, undid the Country, 996.50 Fryers of the Papacie, imitated by the Heathen Mexicans, 1035

Their names and company, ibid.

12. 201.60. c 202. Ther allow ance of Diet, 293.1. They are carried on mens shoulders, 293 60. They receive Prefents of Silke, 203. 30. 0 294.50. Made to kneele before the Governours of China, 296.40. & 298.20. @ 300. They chide with Omascon about it, 301.30, Certificates banged at their deores, 301.40 Carried in Chaires (uffered to view the Citties , 302.50. Re-Strained, 303.10. Not permitted to feethe Vice-roy , ibid. Not Suffered to buy Bookes of China, 303.50. Susfeited for Spies. 304.1. Discouraged, ibid. A Courcell called concerning them, ibid. Commanded to returne to fetchthe Parat Limahon, 205, I

reconer too Manilla in the Philippinaes, ryers in Ruffiz their numbers, none admitted but be that brings them Some maintenance, 448.40. The manner of their muesting, they vow to abstrine from marriage of flesh, their riches and exercise of Merchandsfe, 448.50.60.Their ionerance.

Ships prepared for their depar-

ture,305.50. They depart, 206

20. Pronisions for their Voyage.

ibid. & 307.20. A ftorme takes

them at Sea, 308.309. They

Fryday much observed in Russia. 422.60 Fredayes fasted by them , 21 . 1 Except the weeke after Lents,

Fucaes Discoueries of a Passage, 850. Ill rewarded in Spaine, 29.10 Funerals of the Chinois, 293.20 See Buriall and Mournings, 99

> Funerals and mournings of China, 267 60. 6 768.20. 6 181.50 Funerals of the Norwegians, 617 Funerall Feafts of the old Islanders.

Funerall Rites in Tanguth, 75.50 Funerals of the Mexicans, 1029.50 continued ten dayes. Their Funerall Scutcheons, Mulicke, &c.

1020. 1.10 Furlongs in China, their proportion, Fryers fent into China , 290.40 | Furniture of the China Honfes,

Their kind v fage in the (bip, 291 Futtes great flore, 107.1. Where 20. And at their landing in Chi-

Furres of Ruffia, 213.60. Paidto the Emperour of Rustia, 430.20 Farres in Groneland, 521.10 Furres and Beamer in New-tounds land. Furres, blacke Foxe is beft, 459.40 Fyrdatylce a Dukedom in Norman, Fyre , where it is not fo bright or bote, as in other places, 74.30 Fyre worfbipped in Teray , 242.50 Kindled by rubbing of flicks 983 Fyre perpetuall in the Mexican Temples. Eyre put out overy fifty two years; at Mexico, 1050.40. 0 1067.40 Fyres in the Earth in Island, the Fyres feene after a florme at Sea, 728.20 Fyre-blower of Hell, Fyre-brands frozen. 2 20 60

G

Ame of the Prince, the Tar-Lars forbidden to destroy, Ganges the Citie, where, 49.20 Gardens floating on the waters, Garlike much vfed mithe Ruffian Cookerse, Gardarfholme . a name of Ifland Gates are the firength of the China Cities, Gaun a people, the posteritte of thofe that flow Saint Thomas the Apofile they cannot come, or be carrud neere bu Tombe, 105.1 Gauil-kind in Ruffia. Geefe perfed red, where, 484.50 Thought to be Barnacles, ibid. Geele pretily catcht by the Indians, Gehennon , the place of Molochs Sacrifices described. Geirhidawarta, whence fo named. Gelding of Beggars in Itland, 666 Gelding of themfelnes in Fafting, where fed. 1035.50 G netis, 2.6, Naturally expounded. 892.20. & in marg. See alfo, p. 895.40.0 937.50 Genoesi mbabit Taurica Che fo. 625.0-626 Gene als in China their pompe, 293

der Officers, Marshals, Colonels, and Captaines. Generals of the field, enoblized in Ruffia, their children wrue themfelues Generals, 425.30. Their precedencie. Gentiles where. Gentlemen their Effares in Ruffia. Gentlemen in Ruffia none but Souldiers. Gentry of Norway described, 631 Georgians, their name is Curgi, 49 Saint George is the Duke of Mulcouics Scale. Saint Georges Armes is the Hela lespont, George Barkley, bis tranels, 625 50. His going ime Denmarke, ibid. Inte Pruffia, the Eafterlings and Ruffia, 628. Into Poland,629. Into Bohemia, Sile-

Georgia called Zorzania, 69.50 The King is alwayes called David Melicz, ibid. The Inhabitants described. Georgians onercome by the Tartars. 113.40 Georgia divided into two kingdoms, 110.20.Whence called Alania, or Albania, ibid. The Cimmerian darkneffe in Georgia, ibid. Geologers in China, 396.1 Germanes forbidden to winter in Island, 650.40 Germany when first peopled, 662

fia, Pruffia, and backe into Eng.

land, Norway, &c. 620. His

other trancis, 62 1. Dres at Ban-

Geta the Riner on the Frontiers of Cataia, the way thinker, out of Ruffia, 30.10, 20 Ghoffel expounded at dinner time, 218.10 Giants bones found in Peru, 889 Giants, the Iland of themwhere,

Giants of old in Mexico, 1002.15
Giants fife Industrian of the North, 661. Their original from Canan, Some in Norway, Damarke, Socia, Initland, Iland, &c. tibd. and differing in them where and whose they came, one lasts found fifteen Cubici long, the social found fifteen cubic long, and the social found fifteen cubic long, the social field for the social field for the social field for the social field for the social field field for the social field field for the social field fi

Genoein mobiler Taurica Cherlonefux, 635.0° 636
Gene als in China their pumpe, 293
Grierals in Rulia, profety chosen
vimartial men, and why, 43 63.0
Here jobst remedied, jibid, Har Glizzon Armenia 660.7 fee Gideli, 311,50
Gilhfidi in Russia monne from the
Tartars, 518
Gillin the Fronince, 244,30

Gilding Gold fairer with an harts,

Gilbert a Scottish Captains, bis

All in Russia, 764, & 770

Ginger where a growt; 184-10

Ginger scope,

Ginger scope, 264-10

Ginger, a Root when first planted in the Indies,

All Gincoginana, the great God of

Pegu,

Greles of the Louteacs defertion,
Girdle is an Enfigue of dignate in
China,
Girdle is made by the Monkes of
Burlam, 70.50
Glatic of Mulcouia, born getten, 417

Globes first broughs into China, 329
Globocke in Russia, the altitude,
545-20, Variation of the Compasse that women worke of
them light,
93-40
Glue of sand and Bats blond, 1129

Goat facrificed in China, 307.1 God effermed the Anima mundi, 397.10 God punifles nos with beth band, 225.20 God bolden to bee the Anima mundi, 38.20

Godfathers in the Russian Church,
Gods of the Mexicans, were 2000.
The description of their two chiefe Idds, 1134. The Sacrifices to them, Go.
Goddesses of the Mexicans, 1031

Godonoe, the potent Family in Ruffia, 424.4. Their advancement and practifes, ibid. & 425 Gocanthe Iland, the Commodities 284.50. The people goe naked,

Gog and Magog shut up within Dethent, Go. 16.1 Gog and Magog sheir Country, So. 20. The sail themselves Yng & Mongul. (Moal perchance after the Easterne pronunciation of the Hebrew y grain,)

Gog-Cham the Tartarian, 58 50
Formeof bis Election, ibid.
Gold exchanged for trice the
weight in filter, 411-10
Gold

Gold estermed by the Spaniards for the Supreame Power in the World, 892. I. Senerall wayes how at lies on the Mynes, and manner

of getting it.

Gold, other discriptions of the sinding of the Assens, working method, with the sinding the Metall, dec.

See p28, 970. All Gold geomes in the Manutayues, and how it comes into the Manutayues, and how it comes into the Rivers, surther from the Myor the sines, for the from the Myor the sines, 22,40.

Gold in the Philippinaes, 285 Gold why uset orderned to bee the happiness of man, 942. 1. Why chosen, bid. How vsed by the Indians, ibid.

Gold much to bee bought in China, 366.30. Not vsed for Money,

Gold, the chiefe of Metals, and why, the Indians badgreat Veffelt, Charres, Luters and Images of maffie Gold, 93,220 Gold found of three forts, where the buff and the worft Gold is

found: the measurer of refusing and the quantity that came yearly into Spaine from the Indies, 943:40,50 Golden Tablet of the Tartarian

Golden Tables of the Tartarian Emperours, 29.40 Golden Bull of the Tartars, 66.50 The Authorsty of 11, 1bid. & 68

Gold-smiths eurious ones in Me. xico,1132. They cast all kind of Creatwest in Metall, which mone the the tife: they enamell and fet flower, they excell over, ibid. Gomera, the best of the Canary,

Illands, 858 30
Goncalidan Monntaynes, 280.70
Goofe-bribe, a Stery of u, 400
Good-Fryday how kept in Ruffia.

227.50. They let loofe a Prifaner then, ibid. Gothes , fome in Tartaria, 3.10 They speake Dutch, ibid. Gothe-Language remaynes pure in

Island, 658 Gotis & Getæsbeir Esymon, 661 40 Goto Ilands, 257.10. Submitso

Gouza, the City in Cathay, 89
10
Gouernours received no Presents,

China,

Gouernments, the feneral formes in the West Indies, 1054.30

Gownes of Dogges skins in Tartaria, 6.30 Graine of Gold worth 4138, Duckets, 971.50

Graines of Gold found, weighing swelive pound and wore, where, \$883.30
Granada the New Kingdome in the Well ludies, the limits of the Irrifdelline, the extent, actural Commodities, Mynes, the diffuse from the Adjunctical and spaine, the bestef City and suns.

ber of Spaniards in it stre. Uillages about it, ir ibutary Indians, folle of the Country, 884,885 Granadille an Indian flower, which bath the markes of our Sautours Puffon, Acollacs Indgement opon it.

Grapes ripen not kindly in the West Indies, and why, 961 30. Ripe all the yeare long, ibid. Grapes of China not good, 381

Graffe odoriferous and battening in

Island, 640

Greeke Christians in Taurica flames to the Tattars, but few, 639.20 Greeke Church trainfly blamed for

Greeke Charch initially blamed for mulanderstanding Saint Paul, 447.60 Greeke Christians in Coralme,

Greeke Christians in Ingermenum, 633.50. In most Townes of Taurica Cherlonelus, 637
Greekes put not off their Caps, 34

Greenland, the elemation, on part of #1,571. Hot there, ibid. Greenland w Willoughbies land,

Greenland first discoursed, 46,230
The other names of it, 463,10
The other names of it, 463,10
First named in, 464,66
Greenland, forme llands to the East
of it discoursed, 466 60. The
Dans first commung to Greenland, 467.1. They demanded of
the English for the spling,
ibid, More Discourses Eastmard, bid. Described.

Greenland nothing greene, 472
10.485.1. Deere line there, but no popole. The latitude, and cold, The darknes and creatures there, third. How farmes differenced: the feneral Harbours: the Map of Greenland, 47.2

Greenland, names of some places along the Coast, 701. The Meddd ridian aliande and declination of the Sunne there about, 701.50 O 702.1. Sowndays along the Coast, that &c. More temperate the Chetty iland, 703.50 Whales, Sea-horfe, 704. Other, Creatures, tore, 707.0. 713 40. Names of places, 714

Greenland attained in eighteene dayet, 716. 20. Our Kings

«Armet let up in duner placet.
ibtre, 723.724.725. &c. August weakbor ibere, 727.30.
Sudden alteration of beate and
cold there, 737.50

Greene beaded Tartase or lefeil-

bas, 165,20 Griffin a Welchman fally kerrages the English in Initiand, 774.1 He villary almost confirmed, Discovered, his basenesse, 775.

Griffons painted; and reported to be alive above Mexico, 1128.30 Griffons talent, 1014.50 Groineland, called Defolation, 463

Groneland not focold a Norway of Island, the natural Commodities there, \$20,40. & 321.1. Admice for Translers thinker,

Groneland, a description of the Cousts and Courses, Hennes, Crooks, &c. At large, 518. &c. Christianitic and Bishops there; 119.20.40

Groneland and Gronelanders Groneland nothing greene, 651.30 Their Buildings, burning Mountaynes, boyling Fountaynes, Fancies of Pigmies and Vnicornes. ibid. Miflaid in Sea Charts. 729.30. The appearing of the Land. The Habis, Tents, Dies and Boats of the Gronelanders. 817. Their pretty way to catch Seale-fifb, 818.1. A Tropographicall description of Groneland, the beafts, and fishes there. The peoples complexion, 819. Therr Dyet, Apparell, Weapons and Religion, 820. Their boufes and granes, 826. The true name of Groneland, their report of their King. They intercept fome Eng. hith on Shoare, 829. And attempt the English shallop, their personages,830. The Northwest pars of it described, 83 5. The fashion and swiftnesse of their Boates, ibid. Their Images , 828, 20. They will not cate our meate : their

women warked on the face, 845

Groves and trees , venerated in Curland. Ground not to be thamed, 491.60

Gry-ur, or Tartarian Curds, 6.1 Guadalaiana . m the West Indies, the bounds of its Inrifdi-Bion : the latitude and diffances of longuade from Toledo. The City of that name, Villages about

it. che. Guamange the City in Peru, deferibed, 893.40. Good temperasure, erc.

Guard to the Emperour of Ruffia, 458.50 Gramboy, a Port, 254.50 Guatulo the Hauen and Pronince

in the West Indies, the latitude. 874.30 Guatemala in the Indies, the Spaniards may thither , 859.

Guatemala Pronince in the Weil Indies, the Inridiction of the Counfell, 377.60. The latitude. Proninces and Languages under it, Commodities, great Raines, Winds, Spanish Townes and their latitudes, chiefe Citie, and diffances of other Cities from it. Ports of it, latitudes of fome of

Guzuanuto Mines in the West Indies , the Villages of Spaniards about them.

Guarco the Village and River in Peru: the fruitfull Valleyes and

places about it, 895.40
Guaxaca the Bishopricke and Proextent, the beginning of the bounds : the Language, Silke, Gold , feituation of the City. Ayre, Townes, &c.873.30.00. Other Townes and Rivers yeilding Gold. Indian Townes tribu-

tary to st. Guayauos and Guayuilles , fruits of India.

Gueos, the Nation. 280.20 Gueft placed in the chiefe place, 373 20.374-10 Guefts baue the chiefe place , 391

Guiana or El Dorado in the West Indies, the great Rivers, 886.60 Great Tydes there, and bow farre | Halufin the Ruffe, an Impostor, 788 they fes, 887.1

Guiana or El Dorado, the admirable and disperate paffage of the Spaniards to find it , 934.1. | Hamceu in China, where, 400.10

Guineathe New, where it beginnetb . it is all Mands : the extent and latitude, 906.60. Colours of the people, the Iles , Ports, Rivers, de. Of Guinea Coaft.

907.10 Guintoo an Ile. 256.50 Guilders of Metals, bow they preferne them felues from the fames

of Quickefilner, 948.10 Gulica valt one. Gulfe of New Spaine, by Florida a miferable Countrey : the two entrances of the Gulfe, with the Currents and the Channell, 870

Gummes of the West Indies, 959

Gumme of Tabernacul, where st growes, the vie of it, 864.50.0ther Gummes. Gunnes of China , at long at Pifiels, but unsermiceable, 403

Gunnes of China but a fan long Gunnes of wood. 280.60 Gun-powder much in China 382

Gurnerda Nofe in Greenland, the latitude. Guftavus incceedes bis Father King Charles of Sweden, 780 Hu warres and accord with the Ruffe. Guts of beasts fewed together for a Sayle to Boats in Groneland. 817.60

н

Habit of the China-Indges, Habits and falbions of Europe, ri. diculous to the Chinois, 406.1 Habitations bow anciently chefen, Hacfall a Sea-monfter, the manner

of taking, 600 Gudderi, are the Muske-cats, 90 Hackluyes Head-land, 714.40.0 Hackluyts Headland, 464 40 Hackluyts River. Haffeneford Hauen in Island, 643

40. Secalfo, 655.1 Halappi, or Aleppo, 116.60.0c. Halongienfian Pronince in Nor-

Hamerfound in Shorland , 699

A moft buge Cuy, ibid. Auc. nice. The delicate feitnation. ibid. Whither et bee Quinfay er Hamfem, the darke Country, 110

Hand and Eye for a Gonernours Enfigne,

Hands elaft together in falatations. Hands inmed in Marriage by the

Rulles. Hanlin Colledge in China, 389

Hanse Townes voon the Balticke Sea, 462.30. Their Confederas cie to keep in the Northerne Nations , their Priniledges there-

Haoa, a Chinefe word, 186.60 Harlots, bane a Corporation at Cambalu, 84.1. Their order.

Harten or Raine Deere their fuift. nelle in drawing the Slede 480 Haruefts two or three a yeare in

China, Halsflines, or a Nation of Assis nates or Muriberers in Cathav.

Hat, the Mogores and Saraceus Hauticke River runnerh from Raffia-ward mto Cathay, 545.20 Christians dwell there, 551.

Hawkes flore in Ruffia. Hawkes fnow-white in Ruffia, 522

Hawkes whistled to the fift, 85 Hawkes the plenty, and the manner of Hawking in Tartary, 6. Hawking at the Horfe', 237.20

Hawking at the Bucke and Hare, Hayre dyed yellow, 296.60 Hayre bow the Indians weare it.

992.40 Hayre how the Priests of Mexico meare and anoint it, 10424043

Hayre, let grow in R sia, by thefe in disfauour with the Em-Berour. Hayres rained in Iapon , 326-

Haython the Armenian, howprocured to write his Story , 107.50 His Story beginnes, pag. 108. He was present in the Warres which

be writes off, 122, 30. Hee surnes Monke, 125:50. The eredit of bu Story, 125.60.

Heate beyond 80. degrees North, Heate in Tartary, extreme in Sam-

mer time. 11.20 Heate under the Line , compared with the cold under the North Pole, 474.1 Heates under the Torrid Zone bow allared. Hearts of men to be facrificed plucks out by the Mexicans, 1031,30

The manner, 1033-30. 0 1037 60.1028.1 Heart of a Man beeing plucks ent , bee feakes after it 1029

Heaven and Earth facrificed unto in China, Heauens feuenteene, and thirteene Hells by the Bramenes account.

Heavens two feene at once in Peru. and the manner. 937-50 Hebrew Pentateuch 600. yeares

Hecla Mountaine castetb out fire against fowle weather, 507.40 Hecla the burning Mountaine in Island, the fabulous reports abent it, 648. Dangerous to bee approached, the Philosophicall reason of the burning. Strange Story about it, ibid. Ice floting abeut it , de. 649. The Sul-

phurious flames prooned unbole-Heights fureft taken by the Sunne in the West Indies and why 018

Heilicke Ilands, 222.50 Hell described in China, 408.1.10

Hell, thought to bee in Mount He-648. Oc. Hell, the capacity Geometrical of it,

Hellespont, called Saint Georges Hempe and Flaxe in Russia fores why the Trading is decayed, 417

Hens without feathers and bairie like Cats, 101.20 Hennes that [mell like Muske, but dying loofe their fcent, 995

Hennes in the West Indies, the Indians enery where carry with 964.20 Henry Greene a Villaine : 14ken into the Shippe by Henrie Hudfon , betrager bim. 60s. Slaine by Sanages, 607

Henrie Hudfon bie Voyage to the East Indies by the Pole. 967. He fets out, ibid. Findes no paffage betweene 78. degrees and an halfe, & 82.572. & 573 10. His fecond Veyage by the North-east, 574.10. Fundet no paffage by Noua Zembla, 177 20. His third Verage , 581 His Voyage for the North west Paffage, 596. Sayles a bundred leagues further then an English-

man before bim , 198.20. His bard wintring and dyet at Sea, 602. Bound in his owne Ship, ted, 604. 30. Turned one by hu oune men into the Shallop, 605. 1 Iuct the can(e of the first muteny,

Heraldry of the West Indians, 994

Herbes which eaten by beafts, make them saft their boofes, 76.60 Hermites in Ruffia, their bardineffe boldneffe, and opinion of bolineffe, 449.30. Canonized for Saints and counterfeit Miracle-mongers, ibid. A beldneffe of one of them to the Emperour, tooks well.450.1. Sometimes fecretly

muribered. Hexali what, in Chinese, 219.50 Heires at Commen Law to any mans Inberitance, were to mayntaine him, if hee fell into cafuall beggery, in Island, 667.20,30 Hiarchan the chiefe City of Cafchar, 3 1 2. The way from thence to

Cathay, Hiberi , a people in Tartary, 2020 Hieras, the River Prut, in Molda-633.1

Hietlandia, mifnamed Schetland, Hinimilau, a Chinele Pyrat, why

he turned from Christianity, 255 40. His Story. Hirace the Pronues, Hispaniola an excellent Iland, and

the Commodities of it, 993. The bounds, Intifdiction native commodities, latitude, &c. The naterall name, figure, and mynes, 860.40. The Villages mit, ibid. 6 862. The Ports, ibid. The chiefe places where the Spaniards souch there, in their Indian Naweations, 859.10

Hittories of China for 4000.

Hiftories recorded three marks 1051.40. How in Peru, 1053

Historie of the Mexicans in Pt-Sures, beginnes at Page, 106%. And continues to Page, 1117 Hydes of Ruffia. Hydes of Kower abundance bronobe from the West-Indies se Spaine.

962.50 Hyperborean Sea. 641.60 Hyrcania, where. 49.20 Horquan, an Idell with three ever-The God of Eye-fight in China,

Hocata-Chan the Tartar, 113 Hocktyde, when and why institu-

Hogge faerificed in China, 307.1:

Hoggeswith their nauels on their backes, their description, fierceneffe , and manner of hunting them, 966.10.20. 6 868. 10 Hohi an Indian Tree, the excel-

lent nature of it, 986. I Hola, the Bifbops Sea of North Ifland. Hold with hope, the Land, where

or whither any such, 730.50 & 596. The Latitude, 768. Hollanders denied entrance into

China, 406, 30. They take the lefuites Shippe of Lapon, Holoen , a Character weed in Ar-

menia, divers from the Armenian Charatter, 110:20 Holy-dayes in Tartary , 600 kept , 29.50. Christian Priefts then blofe the Princes Cup.

Holy Ghoit, the Greekes Herefie about bine,

Holy Land , the Tartars often attempt the Recovery for the Christians. See Pages , 116 117. 118, 119. The Defiene ginen oner , vpon the Chan Tartars turning Saracen, 120 10. The Christians much affi-Eled by this alteration, ibid. The Defigne fet on foot againe, 122 30. Or. An Expedition thither ginen ouer, 123.20.30. And another . 122.40

Holy water ufed in Ruffe, 455 40. Sent to the Emperour farre and weere. Holy water, the Armeniatts of

Frankincense in stead of it, 50

Honev bred in a mans skull, 627.60 Honey made of the (ap of a tree,

Honduras, the extent of its Jurifdia Gion Commodities Mynes Latunde of the chiefe Cuy, and of the other Townes, 879.40. Guife and Coast of it, Ports, Bayes, all in the North Sea de. Honors wearing out in China. 287

Hope Hand discovered, 466.40 Hope Sanderion in the Northwell. the latitude, 843.30.0 845.30 Horda , in Tartarian fignifies the middest, 16.40. Wby the Cans Court is called fo. ibid.

Hordalladia pronince in Norway, 65 Horne of a Seafifo, miftaken for an Unicornes. 650.40

Horn-neffe the East part of Island, <18.co

Horne-Sownd in Greenland, the latitude of variation of the Com. paffe, 717.50. Altunde of the Sun there, lun. 14.718. See allo 846.20 Horne Sownd , and W bale fifting

Horie confulted withall in Tartary.

Horse of China enserniceable in marret Horfe fich wby eaten by the Tar-

tars, 441. 50. They let their Hor(eblome and drinke st, ibid. Horie foes of filner , for want of I. ran in the Indies, Horses for the warres, the Tartars bring two, one to cate, 441.40 How to carrie their Horfe legges,

Horfes melt excellently beefed, 73

Horfes of the Spaniards; the Indians thought they could frake

1118.40 Sir Jerome Horfeyes Ruffian Ste. 11. 740. An honourable Act of hu,742.30 . Sent Ambaffadone by the Emperour to Queene Elizabeth, 743. Returnes, ibid. Hu fanour in the Ruffian Court, 743.50.60. Returnes honourable againe sute England. The fanours hee did for the Mulcouie | Hunting of the Mexicans, the man-Company. The Emperours fa- ner of it,

wours towards how Holanna fung ou Palme Sunday in Ruffia. Hofpitals and Free-Schooles for Children their faftien, 205.40 In China, 276.1. Pat to trades, ibid. # 44.50

Hofpitals for lame Souldiers, 272 Hoftia, the Etymon of it, 1037.30 Hot-houfes, the Ruffian Phyficke.

Houre-glaffes going with water or

Houses of Tartars described, 3.30. Their largeneffe, 3.40. Carried upon Carts drawne by two and twenty Oxen, 3.40. Their order of placing foure, ten andnine fenerall quarters of men and women, 4.30 Houses of the Indians of Cuba, 994 60. Dwelling on the tops of trees. where, ibid, er

Houses concred with Elkes skinnes, 522.50 Hoyce Hill in Orkney, 827.30 Hubbards Hope, the latitude, 848

Hudion bis Difconery, Hall men trade to Greenland, 467 co. How they first came thither 455.30. They bring backe the Zelanders to moleft the Londoners fishing, 468.2. Their Voy-Cherry iland 562. Other Dif. coneries. umane Sacrifices of the Mexi-1014.1015.30 Sir Humphrey Gilbarts Voyage to Newfoundland, 808.50 Humvu, a valiant Chinois who ex-

Kingdome continues in his Hunduras in the Indies, the Spaniards way thither, 859.10. The chiefe places along the Coaft, ibid. Hungary ouerrune by the Tartars, 61.40. When they departed from it,63.50. They returne, 114.40 Hungaria the Effate se Rubruquis his time £2.10 Hungarians bow furprifed by the

pelled the Tartars, 287.40. The

Tartars, the Story of U, 440.30. Hunnes whence descended, 18.50 Hunting vied by the great C am, described, 85.30. And bis bar-Hunting in Lithuaniz, the manner,

744 | Husbands difloking their Wines turne Fryere in Ruffia, 455-1 Husbands felling their Wines for want of meanes. Husbandmen exempt from the Warres. Husbandry of Nature, 961.10 Huuph, a China word, 187.20 Huzamguee, the chiefe Cuy of Cauchin.

Aci the Cuie.

Iacobite berefie in Africa, 217 Iacolit she Easterne Patriarch, and bie Inrifdicton, Iacolfu a Rimer in Island, the courfe.

Iagac, a mighty Riner, where and whence it rifeth. laic or lagac, the River, where, 18

Iamayca the Hand on the North of Hispaniola. Lamayca Iland in the West Indies. when first desconered, altitude. distance from Cuba and Hispa-niola, Filages, Plantations, Port, distances of places in 11,00, 864 lamboli or Balachei, the (11), 634

Iames Hall flaine by a Gronelander, Sir lames Lancafters Sownd, the latitude langi, in the Courts of Tartary, 28

60. # 24.40 langumur or Ciangamur in the Tartarian,ie while Lake, 80.30 langui the noble City. 96.50 Izon, is three leagues, 254.10 Izpan is fundry les, they contains thirtie three Kingdomes; their

Piracies upen China, distance from China and the Philippinaes, valour of the people, 906 Iapon, how and when discourred. 318.10. Diftance betwint that and Milaca, 318.20. The Seas troublesome, 318.40 Iaponian Ambassage to the Pope,

322.10. What Hands goe under that name, 322.50. The babit of there Ambaffadors. Their cutertarument at Rome, 323.10.Q12bacondono syrannifes ouer al the Princes there , 323.40. Meaco the chiefe City , 324. The three chiefe mentbere, 324.20. Their change of sules ib. Their Pope, ib. The Lords of Tenta command all therestord. It containeth about

THE TABLE

Their Theologie, ibid. 60.0 325.1. Their manner of fending their L ers, ibid. 10. And then curious workemanship, itnd. The number of Ichuites there, ibid. Parted from China by Corai. ibid. Earthquake:, Comets, and prodicione Raines there, 226. They burne their Dead, 327.10 They are fooner Connerted to Christianitie, then the Chinois 232.20. Tangbe to paint , ibid. poore Countrey, 344-30. Their Alphabet, 384. But foure and twentie boures fayle from China,

408.40 Laruflane Citie, the fituation, 419.

Inscot of Gold, worth ten Markes in Tartarie, Tartarie, 21.50.6 34.10 Iafdi, agreat Citie of Trade in Per-

Infpar, deare fold in China, 362.20 Laffi the chiefe Towns in Walachia. Yaua maior , the greatest lland of

the World, 103.10. Gold there, ibid. The description and Commodites. Lauolgenies, ancefters to the Crim Tartars. 637

Ice paffed ouer in Sleds. 107.10 Ice with Ponds of fweet water in them at Sea, 598.40 Ice one hundred and fortie fathome

deepe, Ice at Sea, the original canfe of it,

Ice 1680. foote thicke, 837. The English tranellower it, 248.10 Ice fine and fiftie fathome thicke, 487.10. Makes a thunder as it breakes, ibid Lifts up Ships, 488.

Ice as bigge as Townes. Ice breaking like a Tlounder ctap 812. It makes a leathforne 811.40 Ice, a Market vpon it, 225. 30.

Condemned per fons thrust under, Ice preserved in China, and why,

Icoxos ubat, in Iaponian, 323000 Idifa in Tartary, Idlenesse not permitted in Peru, 1055.20

Idlenesse inneighed against, 666.40 Idlenesse lated in China, 175.30 Idolaters, all are between the Mountaines of Caucafus, Co. 24 1 Idolaters in Catay, 20.60 Igla the Iland. Idolaters in Colchis, 636.30 | Hacians or Blacians.

fixtic Iurifdictions, 324-40. | Idolatets diners in the Petsian Pro- | Ilands of Men alone, and of tvo-Idolaters in Curland, and Pruffia, 628.10 Idolaters in Tanguth, their Cere-77-10-2 Idols, are the Oldeft men in the boufe, where, 92.30 Idols feene two dayes Iourney off,

> Idols of the Mexicans, their beaft. ly flages, 1030.20. And deck-Idels their Temples & Sacrifices of eld in Illand, 664.40 Aliars, &c.

Idols bellies filled with lewels, 408. 20. How the Chinois maintaine

their Idolatry. Idol-Sacrifices of China, 369.1. In filthy flinking boufes, ibid. Idols one bundred and eleuen in one

Chappell. 303.60 Idols bure ones. 77-1 Idols, men kill themfelnes in benour of them.

Idols of the Groenlanders, 838.30 Idols in Myters & wheeles, 263.20 Idols of the Mont Tartars, 799.40 Idols made to fleake by Magicke,

Idols, why vfed in China, 334-30 legur a frange Corne, 136.40 Ienifce, a mighty River, 527.20. O. uerflowes like Nilus, ibid. Two Rivers of that name, 530.10. The lourney thither out of Ruffia, ibid. See Yemifce.

Ieraslaue in Russia. Iefuites m China, 214. 20. In 12-

pan, 316. Their Conner fions dif-Icluite whips to death in China, 406.40 Iesuites change their Names, 339.

Iefuite fet on the Pillorie in Chi-22040 Iefuites Colledges in Brasill, 903.20

Ieluites make Connerts in China, 320. 40. Their first Station there, 221.50 lefuires, the Abetters of an Impofor in Ruffia, 756 10.40 6 768. 1. Iciuites m China their pro-

ceedings : See in Ruggierus, & in Ricius. with them.

Iewels of the Mexicans buryed 1029 lewes kept within inclosures, 49. 10 18.60

men alone. Tlands 12700. in the Indian Sea.

Hands of Hispaniola. 862.40.50 Iland Santa Maria one of the Azores, the Latitude. Iland of Saints in Norway, Inbiett to Denmarke, not Inbabited, 614. 20. The Latunde, ibid, in mare.

Fine miles from Ruftene, 61 5.20 Ilands of Theeues or Ladrones in the West Indies, their Latitude, number, powertie,neereneffe to the Philippinaes, the People, names. Diners other Hands there abouts, and their Latitudes, 907.30 Ilands of Farre, on the South-east

part of ! fland, Ilands of Moluccas, their fenerall name and Laturdes, Ilands of Matfloe and Delgoy,

Ile of Resolution, the Launde, 827.10. The variation, and longitude from London, 838.1 He of Merchants, 222.20 He of Saint John of Porto Rico, in the Welt Indies, the firft name, diff ence from Hispaniols, de. Commodities, temperature of the Ayre, Towner, first Dicoucie, Ports, Riners, &c. 864.865

Iles of Gods Mercus Iles of Farre, their Latitude, 574.1. Mifplaced in the Care, 182.1 Illiricum when first peopled, 662.

Illocos the Hands. lefuites lined twenty yeares in Chi- Images of Christ, our Lady, and the Apoftles, miffaken by a low, or worfhipped, 400.40 Images with shace Heads in China. 303.1. And with eight Armes.

and other Monsters, Image in China like that of our Lady, Image of Christ, most folemnely ho-

noured m China, Images of their Kings worthipped by the Indians. 1028.50 Images Painted and not Carned bonoured, 217.30. Christened, bid. Images offered in Temples of Chi-

Image Point. Images of the Tartars, made of Felt. 4.30. Many in one house, ibid. The Tartase Lat , or boufhold Images great flore in Ruffig prazed

unto 228. Very rich, bid 20.0 229.1. Chilaren committed to

Images

741.20.30 Incense where it growes, 959.40 Incense vied by the Mexicans, in gining of Welcomes, and in Saerifices, 1004.10.1013.60.00. Inceffuous Marriages of the Kings of Peru, 1054. 50. 0 1058.60. The Successe, Indians white and faire, where, 892.

Indies of the West, are not the West Indies, the Countries which they containe properly, 903.60.in marome. Their temper colours of the Indians, &c. Indian delayes for aduantage, 285.

Indians 60000, to Guard the paffapri in Pertia. Indians of the West, their Stature and Complexions.

Indies why they goe to them ore way, and returne another, 923.40.50. 65. The going thinber Iborter then the returne. The Spaniards Contes in Nanigation thuber, nes, ibid. The Scafons of the Towerall Flacts Herica of the South deferibed, 887,

Their extent, Prominces, Gouerna Indian Seu baie diers Kingdoms, feepage, 168,10.20.30.49 Indico or Anill, bow it grower, Industan the Kingdome, the old Names, 31 Inferiour, layer afide bis State in presence of his Superiour, 297.1

Interiour natures made for the fernice of them next Superiour, 042.1 Infants confulted as Oracles, 395.

Information of all, monethly given to the King of China, 189.30. His Spies. Ingermanland the Title of Sweden descust, Ingermenum in the Crim Tartars.

built by the Greekes, 633.50. Inhabited by Creeke Christi-Inger-Sound;

223.10

Their Diadem, Greatneffe, Riches Honours after deathetre. 1054. Their Coronation ceremonies, exact Inflice, Policy, Oc. 1055. Their publicke buildings. renerues, &c.1056. They bane the third part of the Land, 1957. Their Originall, Conquests and Storie, 1059.00. Enery Ingua builds a new Palace, et c. 1060. 10. Their Succession for 2. bandred seares toresber, 1062.10. Their Attire Dut, de, 1126.40. See pag. 1130 Ingulius of Norway, his fortunes, 656.657. Peoples Itland first.

Inheritance the manner of it in China. Inheritances in Peru went to the Brother and not to the Sanne. 1054.50 Inke-making, a liberall Art, 283.50 Innes in China. 185.50 Innes or Lodging in Tartarie none,

657. The Story,

Innes in Tartarie, the provision for them, 87.10. 20. Gr. Seneral Stages, Inquitition Spanish in the West Indies, where exercifed and bow. 910.911.871.50 Inquifition Spanish, gotten into the West Indies,

Inquisition for Religion none in Ruffia. Inflruments firings in China, made all of Silke. Intelligence given by Birds, & how,

Inuitations the Ceremony in Chi-Inuitations to a Feast, the forme, Iob, 21. Verfe 26.expounded, 1028.

logowr the people. Sir Iohn Hawkins, bis Indgement of the Magellane Straights, 900. Iohn Knight flaine by the Gronelanders, 289.50

Innas Poole bis Voyage, 464.60 Ionas Poole bis Voyage to Greeneland,699. Hom farre bee difcowered, bid. His Commission for a second Voyage, 707. Hee sets foortb. 711. Hu thad Voyage,

Iohn Prince of Denmarke, our Queene Annes Brother goes & wooing mto Ruffia, djes there,

Inguas , the Kmes of Peru. See Peru. | Ioynters none required in Ruffes

Irenia Empreffe of Ruffia, her Wifedame, 743. She refuses the Em. pire, and turnes Nume, 745-30 Irifhmen were at the first peopling of Island, 657. 30.50. Build & (burch there. Iron greatly defired by the Grone. landers. 826 Iron frozen in pieces. 493-20 Iron mouldered to dust by the wind. Iron famne a fander with a Weed,

986.6 995.10 Iron touched with the Loadfone, will lift more weight then the flore 817.10 Ifa, fo the Saracens call Iefus, 313. 20. And Christians Ilauites

Maac the Armenian, bis Travels. ibid. unto page, 316. Relates bie owne Story Ifaurica in Cilicia. Island and Islanders. The forme,

greatneffe, & lee of Ifland,643.

Under the Article Circle, ibid.

Original of the Nation, ibid.

The Norwegians comming first

Graffe : their Harfe, Kine, Dogs,

and other Creatures, and riches.

649. Some Sea-monsters , their

Termes for Law-fuves, 650. Sen-

tence of Influce, 651. Their Bi-

Shops, are under the Archbishop

of Nidrofia in Norway, 651.30

Situation, Discouery, Planta-

tion, Names and Language,

694.8c. Called to of the Ice.

655.10. It is not Thole, ibid.

The greatnesse and bounds, ibid.

Ifland bow it lies, 691, 20, The

thirber, 644. 50. Their freeb, ibid. Their Religion , Bifhops, firft: Commerfion, Lutheranifme. Printing, Seditions about Religion, subsettion to the Dane, 645. The distinction and degrees of people, Inflices, firength of body, indiffinction of Apparell, Witchbuild of Stone, craft, Learning, long lines, Fi-Juangorod the River, Skings, Diet, Drinkings, Commo. Iubilee in China, ditses, Wheres, c. 646. Their Complements, want of Linnen, lowfie Lone, ledging, games, long N. gbes, Bashes and other wonderfulls avers, 647. And Moun-Indges corrupt punished with death taines,648. No Fields nor Gar-Mexico. dens there, nor Corne, Fruit nor Indges their corruption in Ruffia, Cities. Their dwellings underground, no trees but Birch, treus Indges Spiritual accounted Saints. bled with Windes . Flore-wood= the fatuelle and sweetnesse of their fudicatures and confulsations in the

> Ingures their Temples, &c. deferibed. 21.40. Their Language and Writing downwards as the Chinois,22.10. Their belufe of one

God, 22.20, Their Images to reprefent their dead Friends, 22. 20. Their Country, 22.60. They THE TABLE

The shape like a Man, the Circust, diustions, first Plantations, Initland, named fo of the Grants. 656. It bath no Beares, 657.20 Their Language, an Alphabet of luitland under the King of Dettheir old letters, 6 . 8. Ther ancies marke , Fift good cheape there. Manners, Cuftomes, Pewell, Buil-The peoples synorance of monie. dings, Turffe, 662. Their large An Iland, the number of the Honfes, Stones, affiguement of lands, Husbandry, Beafts, Fowle, men there, 773. They weare axei at their Girdles, 775.1. The Go-Fish, meate, and drinke, 662. nernours Wisdome and Noble. Their Banquets, Money, ancient meffe to the English distreffed Religion, Founders, and Policie. there, 664. Their old Ethnike rites huluory Table , worne oner the King mane Sacrifices, and Christiani. 110, 665. Magistrates Courts, pronifiens for the Poore, dinifions before their monthes. of the Proninces Hundreds, tv Iustices Stinerant in China, 184.30 things, &c.666. & 667. The du-Their fate in the Circuit, 187 ties of their Nobilitie and Infti-

Inflice oner-awed in Rullia, 422 Island fome of the Coafts described \$18. The Course from thence to Iustice and Mercy, a pretty Em-Groneland. Groneland, 520 60 Island, the Northeast fide full of damtie Wild-fowle. 609.10

owne, the Tartarian Maxime. Mraclices difperfions, fome into China. 400.40 Iuftice the manner in Island, 650 Juan Vanlowich bie Crueltie, 422. Iuan Vatilowich of Ruffia, a Regiluftices twelne yearely in Ifland.

fter of bis abominable Cruelings. 729. His good parts and ba-Inflice exact so Peru. lour.740.1. His fanours to the Inflification , she Ruffes erreur a-Englith. Held a Saint almost bout it, by the Ruffians, And Death, ibid. Had feven Wines . and 744-30 luanogrod the onely Citie in Rutlia T Ait Caftle.

628.50

Kalendar of the Mexicans, 439,10 the prety manner of it, 1050. Of 275.60 the Perunians, lubilee of the Mexicans, 1031. The Kangittæ er Changle, a people, 18 time and manner, 1046.1047 Iudas Thaddaus where Martyred, Kartalla Riner in Catay, falleth in

Ken-Cham of Tartary Same, 25 1010.10 Renchat, a Tartarian Towne, 19

bleme of them.

434.40 Kerkis the people. 33.40 Kerlis the Country, 6.30. Christi.

Churchen Illand, and wbr. 668.1 Kerloua the chiefe City in Caffalugures, an Idolatrom people, 21.1 Their Ceremonies , 21.20 Oc. Kettlewike Iland, Kildwin in Lapland, 516.40.0 They bane Images, Aliars and

> Kill themfelnes , why the Indian Sernants doe, when their Mafter Kine wild and tame in the West In-

dies, the wild, kild onely for their bider. King of Armenia paffed through bane the originall of the Turkith | Tartary , 47.20. Reliene Ru-

23.10 | bruquis companions. King of Mexico bis charge, 1006

Kings carried on mens fhoulders,

Kings of Peru made Gods after 1054.60 Kings, a Tartar people, 240 40 Kirgis a Dukedome in Siberia, fubtect to the Rulle, 798.30. The way thence into Catay , through the Moall Tartars Country, 799

Kiffe, the Patriarch of Mulcoura of China, bis Crowne, 392.50 keffes the Emperour, They that feake to bim, Int one Killing at entertainments in Illand, Killing ofed in the Greek Church.

Klutzinsky the Ruffe Impofter, acknowledged Emperour, 789.40 Resetted. Kneeling to great Officers in Chin

184.20 luffice to bee done but towards our Kneeling on one knee, more due to menyand on both, to God, 17.10 Knife fent by the Crim Tartar to the Ruffe Emperour to kill bim-

Knights fee in Mulcouie, 216.1 Knights Itands as Groneland, 829

646. I

1055.10

237.40

Knighthood in Mexico carried the marke or Armes of fome Idels, 1030.10. And fe in Peru, 2049

Knighthood the fenerall Orders in Mexico. Kuenland the Country, 659.50

V fed for N, by Some Chinois. Laches Father of the Polanders, Lakes of two bundred miles long in Ruffia. Lake without a bottome where, 878

Lake a huge one, where Rubies and Saphires grow, Lakes of Titicaca and Aulagas in Peru. Lake that hills Birds flying oner it,

648 I Lake admirable one. 337.30 Lakes their originals from Snowes and Springs, Rivers flow out of them, why they breed lutle fift, a wonder they should be fo hote, why they neither increase nor decreafe. Varieties of their tempers and tafts. 922.50 Lambri, a Kingdome of Iaua, 104 I

mentioned in any Sea Card, 568. 40. Called Hold with Hope itil. Atemperate land, ibid. The Sun is long together about the Horizen there 569.20 Lands fet apart for facred vies in

Peru. 10:5.60 Lands in P. ru, how the profits are distributed, according to each Mans recession, 1057-30 Langa and Solanga, a Tartarian people, 22.20. Their habits, ibid. Langenes in Nous Zembla, 474

20.0 513,1 Land-lords, Indges over then Te-Language of China discoursed up-

Language and writing, the fame through all China, 101.50 Language of Island, is the sure old Gorish or N rwegian, 658.1 Languages forty fenerall ones , forken m fo many Castles in Kerio-

Languages diners in Perfian Pro-Language of Ruffa, different from

the Polith, Laos Siones Maons a great King. dome where, 168. 20. Hath Muske and Gold, ibid. Their complexion and babit ibid. A mighty River amongst them: & a wonder of that, 169.1.19 Lapland, the length and breadth, 443.50. It bath two forts of peo. ple, ibi t. To whom Subject . Their poore lining, fome are wild, and the great off witches so the world. 444. Excellent Bowmen and

Gunners, their Commodities and Faires. Faires, 444-1,10.223-20 Laplanders their miserable liming , 516. 1. Their fwiftneffe,

Laque a Perfume in China, 106.1 Latitudes which the Spanish Fleets observe in going and comming to the West Indies, 924. See Cour. fes and Namigations.

Laua Riner in Rullia, bie mouth and fall snto the Lake Lodiga , 794

Laulo the Iland, 207.50 Lautimey in China fired by the Tartars. 278.40 Law of Nature : the lefuits hope, that the Chinois were faued by

Lent, the Armenians and Nefto-396.60 Law altogether finded in Chi-

185.20 ! Lawes made by Kings in China, Law-futes in China, moft about

their Barial places. Lawes of Island Some rebearfed, 666.667.ctc. Lawes in Ruffia, 435.20. Nene

wruten, but all freaking Lawes, ibid. 216.0 217 Lawes of the Tartars, 443-1

Lawyer, none may plead in the West Indies, where bis Kinfman is ludge, Lawyers bribes taken, and ginen to

bonest men, Lawyers forbidden to goe to the Spanish Indies, and wby, 998.30 Lawing of the Rulles , the order,

433.40. Their feneral Courts and ludges, ibid. Lawing, unknowne to the Tartars.

Saint Lawrence in Canada difeo-Mered. Saint Lawrence Bay,477.20, The Istande.

Lauzu, China Self, 298.40. Their Legends and Fooleries, their Pa-

Lay-Committaries to Bifhops in Ruffia, appointed by the Emperour, 446 40. They over-rule the Clergie, Lead Myne in Cherry Iland, 558

50.0 564 Leafe in India, that beales a broken Arme professly, 986.40

Learning only gives Wealth, Ho-nour, and Nobility in China,

Learning feared by Tyrants, 447 Leave-rites m Curland, 628.10 Lechias, a rare Frant in China, 178

Left-hand most benourable, where, Left-hand nos vied to touch their

meatewith it, where, 105.1 Legends and Prophefies, the effects of them. 1021 Legend of Huinnfuns, billing the Dragon, and flying into Heamen,

337-20 Legend of Leus, 298.40 Legges, Armes, beads, &c. Offer red by ficke Meuto their Idels,

Lent-time to the people of the Eaft, rians, eate us fift in Lent, 35

Lents foure in a yeare, 217.60, cf 227. They begin on Munday the endings of all foure, 218.1, No flefb ner White-menter cates in Lent.

Lents foure in Russia, and when and Leopards ofed like Hounds, 80.50

Leprous people are Toll-parterer in Tartary. Lequios Ilands by Iapan and China , richm Gold , &c. 906.50 See Lucaios.

Leigi , a Tartarian people , 12.50 Their border. 16 10

Letany of the Tartan for their Prince. 85.10 etters of the Iflanders 646.30 Letters of Demetrius of Ruffia, to the Nobility, 752. Of him to the English edgent, 758.20 Letters of Mexico, their manner,

1125.10 Letters of Almeida to Ed. Sand. 330.40. Of Longobard and Tailo,343.40.344. Of Pantoia to Luys de Guzman, 350 Letters of the Visitor of Concheous

China, to the Governour of the Philippinaes, 309. The answere to them, 210. Of Lerome Xanies

Letters of the Russian Emperour, Letter of the Dake of Brabant, concerning the Tartars, 60.00

And of the Emperour to the King of England, 61.20 Letters of the Tartarians to the French King , 45.50. To the Pope, 59. 30. Of one Tarta-

tian Prince to. another , 59.50 etters, the Welt Indians senes rance of them , they thought the Spaniards Packets of Letters could speake, 994.50 Letters a out businesse of Green-

land fifbing 731.732.733.734. 1.735.736.737 Letters unknowne to the Well In-

. 1051.40 Letter of Sir Humphrey Gilbert from New-found-land, 808.50 Of lohn Rut & Mariner to King Henry the Eighth, 809. Of Albert de Prato to Cardinall Wolfey, 809. Of William Baffin to Mafter Woftenholme, 843 Letters of Mafter Locke to 4

Greeke Pulet, and their aufwers, Letters of Suiskey Emperous of Ruffia, to our King lames, 765 Of English Merchants concerTHE TABLE

ning Ruffian troubles, 780. Of Dofter Hall

Letters of Xauier the lefaite, 218. 10. Of the King of Bungo to the Pope, 322. 30. Of the King of Arima to the Pope, 323.20. Of the Iaponian Tyrant, to the Spanifh Vaceror.

Lettow, & Lithuania, 624-50 Leuca Iland, where. 622.10 l enconia, where. 53-40 Lawfoot /lands, 212, 10. 6 222.

Lewis in Orkney. 827-40 Lezards are Crocodiles. Lampeo, where, 190.00 Liampoo a Portugall Towne in China, raced by the Chinois.

259.50 Libanus inhabited by Christians.

Lice fold for meste in Mexico. 1133.10 Lice eating men to the bones, 614.

Lice for fake Saylers, and finde them againe comming to the fame place Licence written on a board, 292.20.

Licotice where; described, 233.1 Liefland bow duided, between the Ruffe, the Sweden, and the Pole

Light-Dogge of the Indies, bu ftrange beauinesse, described, 966.50. Sings musically, 978.

Lignum Alees where it growes, 102.60.0 102.10 Lignum Guacum, er Sanctum she vie, and where it growes, 938.10 Lignum Sanctum, better for the French Poxe then Guyacum.

Lignum vitæ er Guayac, whence bronght,959.60. See Guzcum. Life, much finded in China, 369.

Lying in China is prudence, 339.

nan, anderetts a Fort, ibid.40

Lima Citie in Peru. See Los Reyes. Limahon a Chinefe Pirate, 286. co. His Storie, 287. A mighty Electe made out against bim, ibid. How bee came to the Phi-Lofoot on the Coaff of Finmarke, lippinaes, ibid. Goes to fur-₹€1.10.781.40 Logicke, the Chinosswane it, 348. prife the Spaniards there, ibid. Comes before Manilla, 288.1. Burnes the Citie, ibid. Seates Lorasbay described. bimfelfe on the River Pangalia

bim, ibil. They fee upon bim at two fenerall places; 289. Hee flees to bis Fort, they befree bim. three Moneths, ibid. Hu fine Stratagem to efcape, 289. 30 0 208.20. Omoncon the Chinese comes with Commission to take

bim, ibid. Lime and Stone built withall in China. 292.10 Lincin in China. 352.60 Linns or the Frier of Linne, bu

Linnen and maperie of the Cotton 5 13 1 1 3 2.40 Lions taught to Hunt like Hounds 85. 20. And Liopards and Wolnes, ibid. The maner of it, ibid.

Lions bow Rune. 94 40.50 Lions of West India war to fierce as ours, ordinarily banted by men,

L'quos the people, where, 168.1 Lucts Hands on Greenland, 719.

Literate Sell of China, then fine Detrines, Lichuania, their Marriager, Reli

gion, fewneffe of Churches, work Ship of Snakes, Hunting, &c. 629 Lituania, what Towner the Riske bane in it 438 60. The Natmes destroyed, and Rusies placed there

Liturgie or Sermee of the Ruffinal. 450. Read at the Altar. ibid. Liuonia, Lit to the Pole by the 478,60 Lizard or Crocodile, a firange cafe of one of them,

Loute divided in the Ruffians Marriage, the Ceremonie and mea-Loadfone found it the Indies, 890.

Loadstone, a Palace built of it, Loadstone comprinettes more frength to Iron souched mit it. then the Stone it felfe bath, 857.

Lobsters in New found, Land, Lodigs Lake and Tome on Ruills,

474.40 London Coast, by Fretum Dauis, the Latitude. 844.16 The Spaniards topne against

be reckoned 8 c6.50. An incertaine reckoning, Longuide of Places, how to bee found by Art and Inflruments. 8:0.840

Longi ule, the Degrees are torger or shorten as they are faire or nearer to the Poles. Lop, a great (the where, Tie Dea fart of Lop, 75.20. Spirits duell Lor in Perlia: Lords Prayer in the beginning of the Ruffian Seruce.

Lords Spirituall named before the Lords Temporall in Ruffi , 700. 1 20.0 7841 5 783 6 787 Leretto m lesly, the Towne, Tema

ple and Idolatry there, deferiord. Los Reves, the Inrifdiction and Li-

mits, the Soyle morffened with vapours, the native Commidities: Latitude of the chiefe fire. diffance from Toledo, munber of Houlbolds, excellency of the Glimate, the Unsuerfite Monafleries, Oc. 892. Number of Women and Negroes. Villages in the Countrey, with their Luce sudes, and differences of Common dities, Mines, Complexions of people, oc. 893. Vermition and Quickefilner, Springs, Bathes, admerable high waves, do vente mous Wormes, &c.894. Fruitfull Vellages under n . Earth. quakes, de. 895. The Iladi. Peres, Points, Capes, &c. 896.1. 10. Vide Pertt.

Los Frayles, the Hes in the West Indies. Los Testigos the Iles in the West Indies. 8:6::0

Los Angelos or Thafcala, the Bi-Shopracke in the West Indies, ile extent, the Commodutes of the Soyle, and Townes thereabouts : the numbers of Spaniards in them 872. 30. 40.50 The Ri ners, and Townes in it, 873.10

Los Marryres, the Iles by Clorida, Lost things, an Officer for them,

Lots efed by the Chinois, 209. 1. 6 318 20.40. If the Lots bee unluckie, they beate their Idois,

Lots, the Emperour of Ruffia elelled by them, 769. The manner, ihid. Longitude, bow the Degrees areto | Lots in China, 196. The maner, ib.

Lots determiners of Controverfies, 434-20 Lotelan in Roffin. Lot-tan in Kullia, 755.30 Loutea, what Office, and how Creased in China, 184. 20. & 200.

Lowneffe in Greenland, our Kings Armes fet up there, 717.30 Lowlie Lone in Illand, 647.1 Lubeckers pay no Cuffome to Denmarke, why, 631 Lucavos Iles of the West Indies . where ther Names . Altitudes, Diftances, 865.10. See

Lequios. Lumleys Inlet in America, the Latitudo Lufus the Chinefe, bis Legend,

334 1. Hee put Lice into bis fless againe, ibid. His Strine, Lutheranisme w Island, 645. 10.

Luxitay an Iland, 246.60 Luzon the Kingdome, 200, 20, The Chineles Came there by the Spaniards. ibid & 210

MAcao in China, hop fare Maces and Rods borne before the China Officers, 187.10 Magastar the great Iland , 106.

Magdalene, the Riner in the West Indies, the head, Current mouth. length, and Latitude, 884, 20. Called Rio Grande, ibid. His Head.

Magellane Straights, the Spanish Indian Pronuces in them, where the Straight begins, the Alts-sude, 899.60. The Ports, Caper, Bayes, Ilands, and their Latitudes : What degrees of Lati-Sir John Hawkins Indgement of thefe Strawbis. 900. Whence they bad the Name of Magellanes ; why the Nanigation through it is dangarous, the Riwers. Points, Capes, Ilands, and their Latitudes by it. Magellane Straights, 282.10

Magellanus Martyred, ibid. & 285.50 Magellane Straights, the diffances and Seasons of Nanigation from Caftile thitber,859.50. Defficule 86a Magi that came to Christ. See Magicall Image in Ruffis, 757.

Magicians buancries. Manifirates called Lords or Fathers 188. 10. Their immediate addreffe to the King, ihid. Magnitrates bow bonoured in China, 393.10. Being deposed, they loose not all Honour. They

base Temples , Alters, and I. mares cretted to them., 393. Magistrates of China, the fixe Chiefe, 388.30. Their marner of proceedings, ibid. Then ba-

bites and Enfigues, 390.10 Magistrates of China Sacrifice like Preits. Magnificat, at Eneming prayer in the Ruffun Church, 450.

Maguey, the wonder Tree . Welt India described : it reelds Water, Wine , Oyle , Vineger, Honey, Sirroy, Threed and Needles; and how they get all shefeont of it, 957.10.20 Mahumetanume the extent, 317.

Mahumetanes in she Moluccas and the Philippinaes, 905.20. How they gate thuber and further. ibid. 30

Mahumetanes many in China 299.50. But ignerant and cantemmed, ibid. When they gate in,

Mahumetanes visiting of Tombes, 234-20. Conneed holy there-Mahametane diffinizione for liberty to druke Was.

Maifters much bonaured in China. Maifter of the Coremonies in Chi-300.50.388.40 Maifter of the Horfe in Ruffia bis Greatneffe and reverence, 425.

Malabar, called India the Greater, 104.30. Foure Kingdomes in it. 104.30

Malaca, bow farre from Macao, 410.20 Malucaes Ilands : the Warres there berwine the Spaniards and the

Portugals, 282.20 Maluccas, the Nanigation thither from Spaine, 860.10. The di-Barce and Seafons, Mameys an Indian frais described, | Mangu-Chans Instice done upon

Mamoles, the old people of Curland : Idelaters, barbareus, de. Their Rites, Marriages, Enria als, Habites, Hofbitalitie, de.

Manare a West Indian Fifb descrip bed bow taken : bee bath a Stone good against the Stone

Manati a Fish that gines sucke,930. 40. Their description. Mancherole, the chiefe Cris of the

old Tartare, 15.30. Where they fill elett their Great Chan,

Mandarines, their honour in China, 370.30. Sets up Flags bes fore bis Honfe, and Arches tria umphall ibid. Some examples of their Nobleneffe, 371. Diffofed in all Cities, 372. There be fixe of them chiefe. 372.30 Mangat or Marcopia the Cities

634.30 Mangi what part of China, 404.

Mangi accounted barbarons by the Chinois, Mangi buth nine Vice-royes wader the Great Tartar. Mangi or China, 95,20, The fecuritie of it fometimes bid. Innededby the Tartars, 9 , 60. A.d taken,96.10. The name of Mangi difenffed, 96. 10. in margine. And fee effecially page 102.

Mangi ; the Kingdome, 89.10. It is the nine Southerly Prominces of China, Mangu Chan bis mellage to the King of Franckes, 29.30. His golden Bull, and the authoritie of

Mangu chofen Cham of Tartarie. 25.10. Kill Siremen, 25.30. His conference with Frier William, 27. 30. His defeription. ibid. Hu Court and Firing, ibid. 30. His proud Answers,

Mangu Chan bis Proclamation concerning a Diffutation of Reli-gion beld before bino, 41.50. His last discourse with Frier William,43. Hu letters to the French

Mangu or Mango-Chan, 114.10. Baptized, 115.60. Djeth, 117.

ibid. | Mangani, what, 957 | bu owne IFife, 44.50.0 45.1 Mangutlane. Manguflane, a Port, 235.30. The people described. M.milla the Iland, 286.10. A Bi-Phops Sea there, that

Minna-hota the Riner in Virgi-199 Manie and Taute, llanders of Ca-

34.10 Mansfielh eaten in the Siege of

Mofco. Map-makers and Globe-makers, create Lands and Hands at plea-Map of China, the best with notes,

Mappes of China their Errour.

Maps purposely made false by the Spaniards. 842.30 Maragnon, or the River of Amazo. nes in the Well Indies, the chiefest of the World, 933.60. Sementy leagues broad at the mouth.

Marble a kind of it much eftermed in China, 315. 312.1. Like to Iafpar, ibid. Gotten out of the Rivers, and forced with Fire.

Marchpane in China, 292. 50.0 Marcopia or Mangat the Citie,634

Marcus Paulus Venetus, made one of Cublas Chans Clerkes, 67.40. He learnes foure Languages. ibid. Sent Ambaffadour by him to Caranan, ibid. 50. Writes a Iournall of his trauels, ibid. Continues a long time with the Great Chan, ibid. Goes to Atgon m India,68.30. To Trebefonde, Constantinople, Negroponte, and to Venice againe, ibid.40. Where no body knew bim, ibid.50.60. Taken Prifoner by the Genowayes, might not be redeemed, 69. 1. He writes his transiles, ibid. Marcus Paulus Venetus bie Booke, 65.40 Mares tayle, the Tartars Enfigne,

Mares white , all Confecrated in Tartarie, when, and how A4.10. Much like to the Papists falbion fatt Rubruquis,

Magarita Iland in the West Indies : the distance from Hifpaniola and Trinidad, the Villages in it. Pearle-fishing there the Latitude. 866.20

Margarites Sound in Orkney,827.

Marienberg by Danske, she Lu-

theran and Romane Religions exercifed there,626.20. Built by whom, ibid

Market-wares of Mexico, 1132.

Mermalades of West Indian fruit. 957.60.958.20 Marriages of the Chinois, 367.50. One wife, and many Concubines. which they buy and fell agains : their Children inherite ibid. They Marry not any of their owne

ibid

Marriages, publiche Vtenfiles for 99.10 Marriages of the Mamoles of Curland, 628. Of the Lithuania

Marriages in China.

Marriages of the Chinois, 393.60. See Weddings. Marriages of the Mexicans, 1009.

Marriages of the Samoieds, 555.

Marriages the third or fourth, not well allowed in the Greeke Church, 428, 26. The manner of Solemization in Rulla, 453 Held valanfull without confont of Parents, 454.1. Large Dowries and no logaters, ibid.10. They goe on Horfebacke to Church, bid. The Ceremonies at Church like ours, ibid. Performed at the Alter, with Ring and toyning of bands, flee knockes ber Head upon his Shooe, and he theowes the lappe of his Garment oner her, ibid. The Cermony of the Loafe, and Meade, and Corne flung upon them, and the Brides filence, ibid. The Merriage Feast, and the Bridegroome and Bride called Dake and Dacheffe, . Marriages of the Crim Tartars, what degrees are forbidden them. their Dowries.

441.30 Marriages of the West Indians. 991.40. 993.40. 6 998.40. Ofthe Mexicans, Marriages incestinous of the King of Peru. 1054.5

Marriage Solemnities. 1058 Marriage Rites of Mexico, 1107.

Martauan in Pegu, Santa Martha Proumce in the West Indies, the Extent. Site, natine Commodities, Mines, precions Stones, Latstude.

Martyrs of the Dinels making, 70. eec 2

Maskes de, at the Coronation of the Kings of Mexico, 1019.40 Masking in China. Maffis.the Mountaine where Noalis

Arkerested Mafunga the Iland. Mathematickes first taught in China, 329.60. 6 339.20,30 The meanneffe of their former

skill that way, 344.20. Their In-Aruments. 346.20 Mattiga the City, where, Matrimony, the forme in Ruffia, 229. 50.07 220.T

Matepheone or Mathewas Land. Mattufchan Yar in Ruffia, the way thence to Ob,

805-30 Maudlen Sownd in Greenland, the @ Latitude. Maundy Thurfday, the Ruffian Emperour receines the Sacra-

ment upon, May-featts and May Flowers brought by the Indians, to their boufes. 1045.30 May-pole of from.

492-10 Mays or Indian Wheate, makes men scabbie, bow it growes : differences of the graine, bow dreft and eaten, malted for Beere, 953 It fernes for Butter, Bread, Wines and Oyle, and for man & beast.

Meani, are Temples in China, 201. Meades of seneral forts, 231.1 Meates, some holyer then others in

Ruffia, 453. Their Superstitions abstimence. Meates prepared for Idols in Mexi-

Meate-forker of Gold, Mechoacan, the Bilbepricke ct Prouince in the West Indies, the Extent, Altunde of the Citie, other Townes under it, 874-40. O

Mechouacans for faken by their koufmen of Mexico, how, 1002. 60. They bate the Mexicans there-Mecriti, or Meditæ, a Tartarian people of Bargu, Media, now called Sheruan, 245.40. Conquered by the Turkes, ibid.

Poffeffed by the Turkes , 244. Mediator, the Ruffes errour about Meditæ er Mecriti, in Tartaria,

Mediterranean Sea, none of note in all America 50 Megna

M goa in China, footed by fiftie Iaponians, 200 Malons of West India described, 955.30 Men with tayles. Men, beafts , and fowle , bow ther came into America; a discourse of it. Men-eaters, 101.20. 6 103. 50. eating their owne kindred, 10% Mendez, his designe and performance. 278.20 Merchants poore in Ruffia, 432.50 Merchants Feast of Mexico, the manner of u, 1048. Oc. They eace the Man which they had Sacrificed 1049.20 Merclas, fo the Tartars call the Merdui, M rdui a people, in Tartarie, ibid. Mergates Straights. Merida Citie in the West Indies. the Lattinde, 875. . O. The de-Meridin the Pronince, where, 69. Sir Io'n Mericke Agent in Ruffia 748. 740. Sent Ambastadour thither, 791. Makes the Peace

betwint Rulia & Sweden, 792. Merites onely adnance in China. Merkit er Crit, Nestorian Chrifts ens in Catay, Mermayd feene and deferibed Melopotamia the bounds, 110.50 Meltizos, or Children gotten by Spamards upon Indian women, 3.thon-Sand in one Pronince, 902.10 Meta incognica disconered by Sir Martin Frobilher, 462.30 M stall, beld by the Chinou for an Element, Metals grow like Plants, a Philofo. phicall discourse of their produ-Stion,941.942. Their dinerfities

and vie:, of the qualitie of the earth where they grow : in barren places, the finest Metals on the top of the Mine, 946.40. All Metals but Gold (wimmes in Quickesilner. Metemplycholis, or the transmigration of Soules in Coins, 268. Metempsychosis, the opinion of it, canjes Mothers to kill their

396.20 Metemplychofis, the Indge for st, 408.10

Methodius the Armenian Pro- Mexico as mell an ordered King-

Metropolitan of Mufcoura, bu State, bee fits while the Emperour Rands, 226.50. The Emperour leades bis Horfe, 227.30. The people foreads their garments under bim. Hee bleffeth them. ibid. The Emperour dines with him on Palme-funday, 227. 40. All matters of Religion the Emperour referres to him.

Metropolitan of Mosco, made a

Platriarch, 445.40.50. The ma-

ner, ibid. Hu imagined Inrifdi. Elion oner the whole Grecke 446.20 Church. Metropolitans of Noungrod and Roftoue, under the Patriarch of Motco. Mexico in the West Indies, the limites of the Councell, the Archbuleariche and its Invidition: the Indian Names of Mexico. the Longstude and Latitude, diflance from Toledo : boures of Sun-rife : lituation and defeription of the Citie, 870. Suffragane Bifbens to the Archbifbop: Monafteries and the Unsuerfi-

Mexico the new, where, 1001.10 Mexico, bow and when first peopled ibid. Their fenerall lournezes, Plantations,& Accidents : ledde by the Dwell : their Conquelts, they tame the Snaker. 1002. Their Idoll Tocci. bow Conferrated.

ty there, and the Spanish Inqui-

Mexico Coie founded by an Oracle : the odde Story of that, 1004. The four anarters of the Citie divided by Oracle : their other Gods. A new Colonie goes ent: they chuse a King, 1005. Hu rocesumg, Coronation, & charge, beautifies M xico, 1006. 60. Their focond King : they are siuen to South (aying, Mexico Citie built in a Lake, they quarrell with their Nasgbbours, upon which their King is murtherad: their League with their other neighbours to remenge it. 1010. They proclaims Warre apainst the Murtherers of their King, 1011. Their willery, 2012. Pronoked by other Neighbours, they onerthrow them too, ibid. And other neighbours, 1012. And others, 1014. And others,

dome. as any in Europe, ibid. O. ther victories of the M xicans. 1016. Other Conquesti,1017. They force a River to their Citte. ibid. Which being almost drow. ned by it , the King rebush libe another Venice, 1018. 1. The greatneffe of their Empire, 1b.d. 60. The flately Seruice of their Kings, 1019.30.6 1126. 1130. Strange prodigies foretelling the ruine of their Empire, 1020. The Spaniards arrive there , whom they superstitionsly beleene to bee their old King, 1021. Their ancrent Religion, 1026, 1027 che Their Idels, Shapes, or aments. Sacrifices and Peftinals, 10:0. 1031. Ge. They mutated Gods (burch berein, 1023.50. Their Saperfitions tricker, 1041.40. Their Sorceries, ibid. Conquered by Cortes the Spaniard. 1118. The Citic destroyed by bon, 1122,20. And rebuilded. ibid. Defeription of M. XILO 4 it flourifted at the Spaniards commung thaber, 1131. 1132. de. Their Markets and Wares, ibid. 1133. Their Temple, ibid. 40. Other Antiquities of their Letters, Number , Times, Oc. 1135. Oc. Their Chronologie,

Mexicans, their Marriage, Ceremenies, 1044. 30. Their Feftiwall dayes, 1046, & 1048, &c. Their civill Cuftomes, Arts, Kalendar, &c. 1050. Their Bookes, Writing, Schooles , &c. 1052 Their Foot-pofts, 1054. Their Kmes chojen by Election, how, ty, Officers, Priefts, Knighthood. Warfare, Oc. 1062. Education of their Youth, Playes, & c. 1064. Their Rope-dancing and agilitie, 1065. Their Story in Pictures, begins at Page. 1067- and contiwees to page, 1117. The tributes of sheir Kings, 1080 de. Their prinate behaniones, 1102.00. How they doe with their new borne Children , 1102. 1103. Their Marriage rites, 1107.00. The Kings Armes . 1128. 20. Then Policy & Common-wealth

Mezen in Ruffia, 528. The way thence to Pechora, Obi, and Yeniffe Riners, and through Siberia to Cathay, 520 of \$40,50 From thence to Candinos, &c. to Pechora, \$38. Furres trading for

Michalowich, foretold to be Emperour of Ruffia. Mienthe Kingdome and Citie , 93 20,50. Conquered by the Tar-Miles long ones in Podolia, 632.20 Miles of Norway. 656.20 Military bonours among St the Tar-Military degrees bow given in Chi-Milicary rewards. 287 60 Milke formed up by Snakes licks up by men, 629.40 Millet, achiefe Diet of the Tar-640.40 Millet Mayz or Indian wheate, the qualities of it, 893.40. Growes in Canes. Minuoo the Citie: the Commodi-Mines of Silver in Xolor, 281.40 Mines of New Spaine, the names of them. Their distance from Mexico, 872.10 Mines in China ftopt up, eilltbe King bad need of money, 348 40 Miniaires what Images they are, 948.50 Miracles believed to bee wrong by by the dead in Ruffia, Miracles , believed foolifbly by the Spaniards in their Conquest of Mexico. 1024.00 Miracle-worker in the Indie bangea afterwards by his owne 5p2-897-10.10 marg. Miracles of the Denill in Mexico, Miralis, & Porta ferrea, or Der-110.20 Mirobolans grow in Cauchin Chi-Mists make the Earth more fruitfull then the raine. Mitersin China, 263.20. 6 274 co.Mitre of the Patriarch of Molco with a Ball on the top, and why,

Moan the Plaine, where, 49.10

Moldauia, some places in it, 633

Molucas, or the Hands of Spicery,

which fine of them bee the chiefe:

they are under the Aguinodiall.

then bignoffes, &c. Names and

latitudes of the rest, pawned to

the Portugals.

there

tation of Religion, 1025.10. Emperours Sacriledge, land. Begging, &c. Moldausa, gomfev. tarne the Emperour, Monkish Re(ne)lation . ting all places, Moal , the name of the Tartarian Nation, 14.40. Whence derined. Moal Tartars where and who, 799 20. See Tartars of the East.

Mogores their ancient bounds, 280 Monarchie, a great affiftant to plan-1026.1.10 Monafteries in Ruffia, the Nabilia tie thruft into them, 424.30,50 Suffered to bee made rich for the Monalteries are Santinaries in Rutfiz, 448,40. The greatnesse and wealth of some of them, 449.1 Monaiteries in Island and Grone-6 1.20 Monaftery of S. Bennet of Holm. m England and Norway, 624 1. Story of it, ibid. Monatteries of Peru for women, their Orders and Remembes, 1034.10. For men,1035.1. Then Habit, Shaning, Offices, Orders, Penance, Moncastrum, or Bialogrod in 633.1 Monfarts Relation of China, 410 Monganet, Samoeds on the Ob. in China. 805. r Monginoco che Empire, 281.40 Mongozey in Ruffia, the Trade thi. ther,537.30. See alfo pag. 528 # 139. Or. What it is, \$40.1 Furres there , ibid. See Mol-Monfons. Mongozey , written Molgomiey, Monkes of Ruffia, bow promided for 228.10. More of them, fee, ibid. Merchants, ibid. They enterdayes. Monkes in China, 196.50. Seaslars . ibid. Their Babit, 274.40 Monkesin China bad Coneubines, and were bigb way Thieues,334 26.40 Moukish Order of Same Francis not Catholicke or univerfally fit-26.60 Monkeyes of India, their kinds, 966. Strange rarities of them.: one tanght to buy Wine & to bite painted women. How they paffe Rswers admirably 967.1. Their feats and features, Monkeyes bunt for Birds Nefts 980.40. & 981.1. They feare, the water, Money of Paper, or Barke in Tartary, month. Money of Paper in Cathaia, 34. Mordwit Tartars , most barba-10 How made, ibid. Of forted ross, 442 40. Hee worships and Mogor bow divided from China, | Sweares by , for his God , that

Moneyes of the Crim Tartars, 640 Money of Paper, Barke, or Porcellane, where the Gola growes, fee Pag.91.92.94.96.98 Money not of Gold where Gold growes : 942. Of Fruits leanes. Coca; Iron, ibid. Of Leather. Cotton, de.943.956. Of Silner by weight uncorned. Money not of Gold but of Fruits in the Indies. Money answeres to all things, 942 Money of Silver barres in China, 366.30. Of Braffe, Money of Silner Rods weighed, 164 60.0 166.1 Money of twigs of Gold, 91.30. Of Salt, ibid. Of Porcelane, 91.50 & 92. Of Paper. Money of Porcellane, 94.30 Money of Corall, 90 40 Money neglected, the advantage made of it, by the Tartar, 442 Money makes the Issuits prenaile Monfter of the Sea , a fingendious Monftero feene in Mexico, 1021 Monfters of Braffe, 266.20 Monftrous Statues 267.X 307.50 Monful the Country 104.40 Months of the Mexicans, 1135 Month of the Mexicans of twenty Months of Peru, which of theirs answere to which of ours, 1045 1046 Moone feene continually after October the 24.where, Moone : the Chinese keeps the Change folemne, . 392.40 Moone, accounted Heaven, 277.1 Moone, at the Full, welcommed with Fire-workes, Moone, the yeare reckened by it, in Tanguth, 77.10. In lapon, 323. 20.40. /n China, 199.10.344. 30. The Tartarsreckon by 11, 28.50 Moores feme in China, 207.10 Slanes trade into China, 362.1 Moores ginen to coozenage, 285 Moreuyon, the River in the West Indies , the head , courfe, and

which he meets first in the morning , ibid. Kils his best Horse when his Friend dyes, & why, ib . M riouits, the Country, receives Christianity. Mories, or Sea-borfe-fifting, 465 20. His description, and manner of killing bins. Moiles roare and make a noyle, 557 10. Ther gaft their teeth , ibid. Their manner of fighting, 558 30. They come not on land while any Ice is neere the Sheare, 559 One brought aline into Engla .d. decible. 560.50 Morfes teeth where taken, 214-1 The vic of them. 41749 Mortar unknowne to the Indians, 10,6,10 Mortar made of Pumice-ftones, Motezuma King of Mexico, bu granitie feemes to refule the Kingdome, 1018. Is eletted, bu valour and extreme pride, 1019 His produgality, [currity, and policie, would bee worshipped as a God: is firetold of his raine, his Visions and Productes, 1020.Taken by the Spaniards, pag. 1023 4). Forfaken of bie Subjects, or flame, 1025 See alfo, pag. 1121 Mother and ber Daughters, 478 Mothers kindred married withall in

againe, 780.1. The way by lana

from thence to Emden, 743.50

The distance from Vologda,

the Occa, 231.30. The River

ballowed: and the manner, 455.40

Ginen to ficke folkes.

744-1.0 747-10 Moscothe Riner, losses his name in

Molco the City and Countrey, 214 20. Described. Mofco the City , the way from babitáble. thence to Vologda, 224. From thence to Boghar in Bactria, 231 Nothing sealous, Mosco the City, the beginning and ple m it. Their Silkes, description of it. Scitnated in the edge of Europe and Afia, 418 40. Burnt by the Tartar, ibid. Greater then London, ibid. The miferable feltacle at the burning, 429.50. Claymed by the Tartar. Mosco greater then London, 214 20. Stands in 55. degrees 10 Mullas what, Mofco City the gonernment , 427 20. Taken in by the i oles. Lost

ibid. Murthers ordinary in Ruffia.

Moscoby the people Mofcumbia & Lake. Moles foure last Bookes, not read in the Ruffian Church , and why, Moful the Pronince, where, 69.50 Moful the City, now Seleucia, 110 Mourners are a trade in Ormuz, 71 Mourners beare no Office in China. Mourning the time of forty dayes in Ruffia. Morning Religion in China, 345 Mourning in China, with cour le Woollen next the skin, 182.10 Mo rning in white, 368.1. It holds for three yeares in China, ibid. And why . 292.20. The manner of it. They change their Habits. Utenfils, Paper, and names, ibid. See, pag. 393.20 Mourning Garment in Spaine is blacke Bayes, in China white lin-Mount Hackluyt, 730.10. The Latitude and Variation, 1bid. Mountayne the bigbeft in the world Mountayne removed by a Shoomaker : A Holyday in memory of it, Mountaynes wenderfull in Island 648. 10. In the middle Region,or Mountaynes under the Torride Zone, make it more temperate & Moxel, a Tartarian people, 12.30. Moxul ar Moiul , the feneral peo-Muc a people of Catay, 23.40 Mules vied to packes in China, 295 Mules for the Streets in China. Mulibet or Hafaffines in Cathaya, 39.10 212.30 Multitude their inconstancy and 790.10.50.6% Mummeries of the Mexicans, broad Seale is the George, 221 1049 40. His Court on bigb dayes, Munday the Ruffes begin Lant vpfurnished with Merchants clad like Nobles, 249.50. His buge 217.60 Munition Honfe of the Kings of place, ibid. His Prefence Cham-Mexico, ber and Dining Roome. All mon Murfili or Monful, the Countrey, there su white, and conered, 214

for Purres.

228.1. Medletb not with Religi-

on ibid. His treasure, ibid. His

His Service all in Gold. He fends

bread to enery quest in particular,

280,30 | Murders of the poore, not accounted for by the Nobility in Rulia,43e He changes bis Imperial Crowne Murfe is a Prince in Tartarian,232 thrice in a meale, 215.10. See also in pag. 224.40. 6 225. Serned by Dukes, 225, Hu forces Mus, or Meridin , the Nation, 70 all Horsemen, no Husbandmen nor Merchants. Their Armes, Musauites, a Name of the Iewes. undsscipline, their bardy bodies, and their bardy Horfes, ibid. Mulicke in China, and their fenerall Gmes no pay, 216.1. Thereafon Instruments, 181. 10. Crano. of that, 225.60. Their Law and Suites, 216.40 Without Lawrers, Muficke of China , the manner. ibid. Triall by Combat, 216.60 Musicke of the Chinois, meane, 371 In case of debt, 217. They bang none for the firft offence, 217.20 Musicke of the Mexicans, 1065,1 Very decentul, and extreme prore, wild. Their Religion and Muticke to comfort the dead, 277 Superstation, 217.30. 6 :29. Most Superstitions in their Gre-Musihet Mountagnes, cian Rues, ibid. Their falkions Mulcouia Merchants, firft feiling, in the Church. Their ignorance in 463.10. Their Patent, 464.10 the Lords Prayer, Creede and Mulcouy Company, then Names, Commandements, ibid. Calles Patent, and Primiledges of trade balfo Christians, ibid. Their in Rullin . 754. O 760. They pay no Customes. They are to fell bu Prayers, As bodi pomele, ibid. & 229.10. They vie the Sacras whole (ale, and not by retaile, ibid, ment in both kinds, ibid, & 229 To fell then Wares themfelnes. Their Oblations of Candles and Money, ibid. They have a Teibid. Wrecks at Sea not to betaken of them, 755.1. English boufimonial to Saint Peter, laid in fes in the Cuies. Their packs wes their Coffin, 218. Their foure to be opened. Inflice to beedone chiefe Saints, 218.1. Their frut. them by lot. Difturbers of them neffe in Lents , 218.10. Their to be provifeed, 75 5. See also, 758 Seruice at burch thrice a day, 218.10. Ther Nationall vices. Muscouie Merchants their loffes at 218.10,20. 225. Women kept

Mulcouia Merchants, and Eaft In-Mulcouites babit, 215.30. & 226 dia Company ione in a Voyage, 1. Abitinence in Lent, 227.1. 468. 30. The Muliquia Com-Their squorance of Monies, 228 pany loofe by it, ibid. They dif-folme, and delimer oner the trade. 10. And of Religion, 229.10. All weare a Croffe, 229. Their 469.30 Mulcouiz Company of Merchants, Matrimony, 229.50. # 230. They whip their Wines once a ther last Patent from the Empe-Weeke, 230.20. Painted, ibid. rour, 802. Oc. Denied to trade Ride aftride, ibid. Many flarned 230.20. An vamerciful people, Muscouian Emperour bis fiele ordeibid Defeates bid. Panilhed for nary, 215.10. At large, 221.10 breaking Fasting dayes , 231.10 His Letters to King Edward, They ballow their Rivers. See 221. He is Hoire generall to the Ruffian Emperour. Laity, 216,10. And Abbots. 218. Sits ordinarily in lustice.

Muscouia & Muscouites, fee Ruffia & Ruffes. Muske, where the Chinois have it. 168.40. What it is, Muske, bow gotten, 362.30. The best in be World, where, 79.50

The Muske Cat described ibid. Muske Cat as bigge as a Hound, 242-50 Muske-melons in Tartary or Car-

236 Muffers in Ruffia, their manner,

and the Ceremony and flate of it. | Musters in China enery New Moone. Mutalla, the Dominions, where, 798

Muipman a Port, 253.20. Silner brought thither, and whence, ibid. And other Wares, ibid. Mynes of Quoangiparu; 260.30 Of Conxinacau. Mynes of the West Indies of what metall. OA2. The best metall on the top, 946.40. The huge paines in working a Silner Mine, the

darknelle & damps of the Myne. Mynes, where they are, the trees looke all blasted, 595.1,30. In Virginia,

TAcapirau, the mather of the Starres, 274.30. Her Sta-IM. Nagavan Tartars , their Countres. Nagavan Tartars berder upon the

Crims.618.1. That are the belt Souldiers of allebo Tartar Nations, but the cruelleft, 442.30 By Religion they are Manometans, 232. All deftrored, bid.ch 233.20,40

Naium the Tartar bis Rebellion 81.co Oneribrowne, 82.10. He is a faife Christian. His Enfigne was the Croffe, bid. Many Chris frans flaine with bim, ibid.

Nakedneffe of the Indians, 991.60 Nakednelle no (bame in Ruffene. Names changed at entring of Monafteres,745.30. The Armeni-

an Monkes change them, 118. Names, the Chinois adde and take often, 394.50. The women bauc

Names of firangers bard to write in the Chincle Language, 1051 Names, the manner of imposing

them vied in Mexico, 1102 Nancian in China : an Vninerficie, 338.60 Princes of the bloud fudieshere.

Nangalak in Ispon. Nanquin the City described, 265 The Commodities Na quin or Quintay in China de-

feribed, 26: 1. The length of the fireets, and paning, ibic. Foure

times as populous as Rome or Lisbone, ibid. Called the (it's of Heanen, ibid. The building to nothing faire, ibid. How ferned with promifion 1,364.10. 10000. (hips belong to it, Nanquiner Quinfay, what it fig-

nifies, when the Court was remoned thence to P. quin, 389.30 Sa Quillav. Napery not bfedin China, 202,40

Naramiie Sea, 546,20.0 551.1 Narfarawike Hanen in Ifland, 654

Name the River in Liefland 628 40. Firft traded vete, 250.40 The Roffes error there, Nafe of Norway, or Lyndis Nofe. The Variation of the Compasse

Nailades, or Rusian Boates described, 2 24.10. Built without Iron,

Nafficke a Turtarian Carpet, 30

Natigai, the Tartars God of Earthly Natiuities caff in China, 395.50 Nauatalcas she first peoplers of Me-

B bence the name of Mexico Navided Port in the West Indies, the latitude. Navigation the benefits of it, 473

Nauigations from Spaine to the Indies, foure fenerall, 8 .8.1.10 The times and comfestitid. The way backe againe by other Courfes , and why . \$ 59.20

Nauigation from the Avana to Cafile, from the Azores to Saint Lucar. To the River of Plate. 859.40,50, &c. Frem Panama to Los Reyes, and to Chile 860 Naxnan the Cafile , where, 49 40 Sometimes the head of Armenia.

Nayles of Iron well fold, 284.50 Nayman, a Christian people in Tax-Needles and thred of fiftbones and

finewes, Needles metmarion, 89 degrees and an halfe, in 75. degrees and 22. minutes.

Needles inclination in 89: degrees and an balfe, 576. 6 in 74. degrees 35. minutes, 576.50. And about the North Cape, 575.1 And in 61.degrees 11. minutes. 567.30. In 65. degrees 45.minutes, 7:6. In 76. degrees eg.

minutes,717.50. In 77.degrees 40. minutes, 719.40. In 61. degrees 40 minutes, 81 2.50. In 58 degrees 10. minutes. 827.00 Negligence in fernants feneraly pu-186.20 N per, is the Burifthenes , 633 Nederich an Hand in the River Viftula, 626. 10. Encompaffed with a Wall as bigh as Paules Natter the River in Maldania, the Course and Fall , 622.1. Called Tyras and Meoptolemus, ibid. Neitor an Herefie,the extent, 317 40. Disperfed throught all India, 138.40 Neltorian Priefts in Tartary, 27 10. They ve the Syrian tongue, N. Storians in Tarcary, 14.60. Great Liars, 14.60. Some in Calchar, 74.40. And so Carchan. Neitorians in Tanguth, 75.40. In Chinchintalas, 76.30. In Suceuir. 76.50. In Campion, 77.1 Neltorians neere M. labar . under the Bishop of Soccoters, 106.30
Great Enchanter, ibid. Nettorians eine war to the Tarta-Tians Serceries, Neitorians, Saracens, and Idelaters dwelltegether in Tartary, 2111 Egregaia, 80.10, 20. In China,

Neftorians in Erginul, 79.50. In 97 40. 0 100.40. In Chaldra. 1 10.50. In Carianfu, 89.40. In laci, 91-40 Nettorian Christians many in Cathay,24.1. Their rites,24.10.6 Nestorians drunke at Church, 21.1 Their falt of three weekes before

Lens called the Faft of Ionas, 21 1. They cate no fift in Lent, 35 Nestorians baptize at Easter, and ballow the Fount folemnely , 30.

Nestorians how they make and confecrate the bread for the Sacrament . 27.10. Their manner of giuing the bread, ibid. They baytile upon Easter Eene, 37.10 Their Patriarch relideth at Bal-

Nettorians fing Mattens, their Solemnsties at Church,in Tartary, 30. 30 40 50. The Tartarian Emperour and Ladies come to their Service, 30 30,40. Ge. Ule Beads, and fing their Prayers, 15

40. Know not Extreme-unition. nor Confession. Nestorian Patriarch gines Orders enen to Infants.

Nettorian Chronicles omit the Paffion of Christ, 41.30 Netherlanders, when they fir# traded into Mulcouia, 464.10 Forbidden by their owne Somereigne to miterrupt the English there, ibid. Their incroching, ibid. c 466. 20. Forbidden by the English, ibid. See Dutch. Neuftat befreged by the Tartars,62

Newleas in Sweden; bow for from. Stockholme. New Age of the Mexicans, 1000 See alfo, pag. 106740 New Bizkie in the West Indies. the Silner Mynes in it , the lati-New-found-land descenered 808 20. Taken poffeffion of for Eng-

land: New-found-land, the Banke, 584 20. The Variation of the Compaffe there, ibid. Fifte by Frenchmen, ibid, Cods and Herrings there, 585.1. The bergth, ibid. The people report of Gold and Silmer Mines to be there, shid. Fine Hands by it, ibid. Lobfters there, 186.10. And Furres and Beawer baught by the French , ibid. New-tound-land, the Latitudes. Variation of the Compaffe, and

Sowndings alongst the Coast, 584.585.586.587.588 New-land # Greenland , 463

New Moones kept Festinall in Tar-New Moones Festimal in China,

New Moone musters in China, 205 10. Held good to begin bufineffe New Moone, brings tempefts, su China, 256.50. Beft fayling

there , at the Full and Change, New Moone, welcommed with fireworkes, 345, 20. How welcommed in Peru, 1046.1. Bells rung on it. 275.30

New-yeares feafing (like to our Christmaffe) lasts fifteene dayes, 374,60 New-yeares gifts, New-yeares gifts in China, 202

Nicaragua Pronince in the Weit Indies, the Iurifdittion, Commo-

dities. Tributary Indians, Lake of that name, Cities, Rivers, de Niceneffe, ridiculous. Nidrolia, & Dronten in Norway, 651.30. A Pronince it is,660.1 Saint Nicholas, the Ruffes ereas Saints: bu three hundred Angels. Saint Nicholas day, bor kept in

Ruffin. Saint Nicholas the towne in Ruffia, in 63 .degrees 50. minutes, 415 Nicolo and Maffio , their Voyages to the Tartars , 65. 50. 6 66. fons Ambaffadours from Cublai Chan to the Pope 66.40 Returne to Tartary, 67-40. They goe mito India.

Night none at all, where, 218.60 483.10.0 574.0c. Night none in Greenland, from. May the three and twentieth, to lune the fourth. 716.40 Night none in ten weekes together, 180.50

Night one and twenty boures long. 613.20. For three monethites gether, Nights long in Island, 647.20

When and when no night at all, Night shall be as cleere as the day, fay the Chinois.

Night, fee day. Nightingales freeteff in Ruffia,415 Night-Sparrowes, fight with the Bats in the Well Indies, 995

Nigua a fmall Indian Vermine, bites off mens feet, &c. Nilus m Norway, 620.60 Nine a number of esteeme mTartary,84.60. The reason, 112.50

113.20 Nyle-Nouogrod in Ruffia, 231 Nixiamcoo in China, taken by the Tartars.

Noahs Arke where it refled, 50.10 The City Comminum, or Eight. built in memory of it, ibid. Armenian Fables of those Hilles

Noble Families decayed, relieved by the Prince in Tartary, 38

Nobles of Ruffia oppreffe the people. 421 60. They exercise absolute authority, 422.40. The priviledge

Nobility of Ruffia, their foure forts, 423.40. The ancient Honfes enforced to write them elnes the

Emperours Villaines, ibidem. How ftill kept under, and made away, 424. The Names of the chiefe Families, 424.50. The fe-The third and fourth degrees,

Nobilitie of Ruffia, are fometimes made Bisbops. They change their # smes them 769.20 Slaine .770 Nobilitie and power not Suffered to

meete m Rufia. 436.40 Nobilitie of the Crim Tartars their Seruice in the Emperours Warres with two Horfes, 441 Nobilitie of China. 346.50 Nocuerais a Sanage Hand of Spices,

Nombre de Dios first peopled and discourred, destance from Porto hello.

Noone facrificed unto in Mexico, 1049.20 North not alwayes the coldest, and

472-30- 0 474-10 North parts of Europe, last peopled, North-flarre from about the . A ..

quinoctiall Line, is feene very low, North-ftarge not feene in laua Maior, 103.30. Where feene a-

North wind causes Raine in Africa, 922. Where, mifty and oubole (ome : 923.10.00. North winds at certaine Monthes.

307.50.6 308.40 North Sea which, 858.1. The fenerall courses of Nanigation in it, ibi 1,600. iles mit, 860.50 North and South Seas of the Weil Indies but eight leagues diftant : wby not let one into another.

where each begins, 929. The Tydes of botbrife, encounter, and retire at the fame 1 me , 930.20 Northerne Seas and Paffages, why fo long conscaled : the oceasion of

disconering that way, 462.40 North Cape, 223.10. The latitude, 699,60,marg. North Cape, the variation there, 574 60. The latitude.

Northerne Paffage beyond So. degrees, the probabilitie of it. What hip connenientes to discover it, 731.10. Voyages and Obsernation ons towards the North Pole, 699 700. Ó.

North-east Paffages ginen oner, North-eaft parts , the right way to

disconer them. North-west Paffages attempted, 463.20. The commodity of it.

North-west Passage, the greatest bopes of it,811.1. & 813.40. 6 841.30. Discouered as farre as the latunde of 55. Dee, 26, Min. by Baffin,841.40. Hozes another way,843. marg. Sir Thomas Button fatisfied the King concerning the bopes of the Paffage, 848.40. A Discourse about the probabilities, 848.849. Concealed by the Spaniard, 849. A Treatife of it by M. Brigges, 8 42 Norus, the manner of Norway, 650

Norway, some of the Coasts described . 18. Barren, Norway, fometimes fubielt to Eng-

land,621.50. Senerall Expedition ons of the English Kings thuber. 623. The King of Norway inmades England, 623.20. Trafficke between England of Norway, 622. Matthew Paris bie Vojage thither ibid. Norwegians Expedition to the Holy. Land abid. Monafical Honfes and Orders destroyed there, and

reformed, 624. Peopled by King Arthur out of Brittaine, 624.40 Norwegian Iles peopled by Brit. taines,619.30. The people feeled

Norwegian Antiquities, some 656 40.0 661.20 Norwegians their first breaking out, and their exploits, 644.50 Notegayes a great present in India, 9<8.60

Nofegay of Silver, ginen for a Re-Noua Albion of Sir Fran. Drake,

Nous Hispania, first disconered, & wby fo wamed , it is the North Indies, the Natine Commodities of it. 860.30,40 Nous Hifpania called the beft Coun-

trey in the World , a bigh Land, 935.60. Rich in paftures, 937.60 The temperature, Graine, Silmer Mynes, &c. 870.40, Thecuflomes of the people. ICOO

Nous Zembla disconered, 463. 20 The Sea frozen there, 473.50 Nothing green in it, 474.1. How farre from the Low Countries, 474.20. Why so cold, 527.50 And why that way unpassable, 528.1. No paffage that way to the East Indies, 577.30. See al-

6, 578.40. 5 579.30. The Hel-

landers misolace it . in their Maps, 979.40. Called Cotting Sarchabidat bence the Ice comes thither, 579. 10. The Elenation and Declination of the Sun there. 474.30. &c. Ice there in luly and Auguit, 477.10. Hands by it, 478.60. The length of it 408 60. The difference in longitude from Venice, 500.30. The longitude of Noua Zembla, ibid. The distance from Ruffia, 514.50 Day and Night for many Moneths together there, 494.0 505 The fire ch of the Land from one point of the coaft to another exally fet downe, and fo forth to Ruffia, Nouda m China taken by Portugals, 258. The rich finite, 250

Noueltre , China will admit wone; Nonogrode, or Gratancue, 214

Nouograd in Ruffia, as bioge as London, 418.60. The vimping Slanes defeated bere by the Whip. 419.10

Novies berrible in Island, whence, Nunez the lefuite bis landing in China, 319.40. His repartes of

China. Nunnes of the Gentile Indians, 1034.20. They were either facrifixed or made Concubines, ibid. And in Mexico, and their Offices, ibid. By what the people, ghe fed that the Nunne bad bin delbonest, Nunnes of the Chinois, 274.

Nunneries in the Greeke Church. 449. 20. Noble women thrust into them.

O

Come let vs worship . &c. The Pfalme faid before the Pfalmes for the Day, in the Ruffian Sernice booke ; as we do.

Oares like fiftes finnes, 354.20 Oathes of fenerall Nations - 203 Oath of olde Island , the manuer,

Oath of the Chinois, 258.30 Oathes , Witneffest in China not examined upon; and wby ,188.20

Oath ween the boly Pount, 782. 20, 40. Upon Wheate Eares,

264.30 Oathes taken in Temples , 397 Ob the Riner in the Samoieds

Countrey, \$22.0 523.50. The Ruffes first paffe it, ibid. The Grange creatures there . ibid. They suffer the Ruffes to build Cafiles upon it, 524.40. Boats drawne upon it, 526.40. Na-uigable, two bundred leagues up, goodly Countreyes uninhabited upon it, ibid. The consessencie of paffing by it through the Samoieds Countrey, 529.30. See alfo pag. 539.60. A Summers

day fayling oner, Ob, the way and charges of disconering it from the River Pechora in Russia by Land, 804.60 The Inhabitants on each banke of it, and the fine Caftles; the wood on it , fift in it , wild beasts frequenting it, the way to discouer it from Pechora by Sea, Sos. The way thither from Caninos by Sea. ibid. A warme Sea berond it.

Obedience to Parents, 344.60 Obedience of the Tartars to their Prince and Spiritual Indres. Obligations the forme in Ruffia, 434.40. No interest mentsoned till the forfeiture , ibid. Speedy Instice upon Bonds, bid. Occa the Riner, 231.30. Falls in-

to the Voles. ibid. Ocerra the Citle. 109.20 Ocha, a China word. 196.1 Octhers Vorage, 619.30 Oculus Tauri bis Elenation and Declination in Noua Zembla, 499.10

Oczacouia in Podolia, the olde names of st, 622.10 Offenders fewed up in raw Hides, 102.50 Offerings of Paper, 196.40

Offices none Hereditary in Ruffia, Officers of the Houshold to the Emperour of Raffia, 458.30 Officers the foure chiefe in Ruffia.

426. 1. Their !urifdictions and Pensions, ibid. Their Commissions and Under-Officers. ibid. They put none to death, They are of no authority , and are often changed, ibid. Suffered to forle . that may bee foyled, 430. They come to the Who.

Officers Names kept vpon Record.

Officers continue but three yeares, 200.20. The Crimes for which they are condemned, ibidem. None is Indge in bis own Conntrey, ibid. Their Children and Sernants prevented from taking

of bribes. Officers of Mexicans killed to ferme their Lords in the next World 1029.60 Ogafha Shama, feizes the Sonereigntie of Iapon,

Olaus the King and Saint of Norway where buried, 618. 10. Honoured, ibid. His Ste-

Old Testament undernalmed, by the Ruffes. Olimets Pronince in Ruffia by Nouogrod.

Ololuchqui, a feed of Mexico, the benumming quality of it : v fed in their Densilyh Oyntment, 1043

Omittoffois, the Gods of China. 196.1. Their Offerings , ibid. They raile on them. Omithofon, Idels, 201.60 Omoncon first carries the Spanish Friers to preach in China. 290, 20. Hee falles out with Sinfay, 304. 20. They are

made Loycias, 307.40. Returnes to the Philippinaes, 308 Orellana, the River in the West Omur the Prince of it, comes to the Pope. Onam Kerule, the Court of Chin-Orefeke Towne in Ruffia, by Lodi-

gis-chan , 25. 40. The proper Country of the Tartars, ibid. & Organs blowne with the mouth 347 One God acknowledged by the Me. Organam , a Countrey in Catay, xicans. 20. 30. 60. The Neftorians Onecko the Ruffe , bis Storie , there flill called Organa, for 522. His Trading with the their skill on the Organs, ibid. Samoieds for Furres; and Ormus, the Countrey and Iland.

bie growing rieb, ibid. Builds Their Commodities , 71. 30, Churches , 523. Difcouers the Secret to the Emperour, 40. Ormus the Citie, is bead of Chermain, ibid. The descripis bonoured in Court; 523. 10. The encrease of his Ho-Ornaments of the Mexican Idels,

11:111 , 524. 30. Their Lord. 1020-1021 Pops in the Citte Ofaili, ere. Orphans provided for in China, Opobalsamum what properly, 959 Ortus the Kingdome betwint Mu-

galla and Bactria. Opprefficn publike in Ruffa, 427 Offouen Tartars, 627.20 Oftachies the people, where, \$ 27.10

Oppressors punished, and the op-

Oracles of the Denill to the Mexi-

cans, 1005.1. Of Peru, 1022

30. The posture so which his

Priests came to confult with

him : the manner of the An-

Swere, ibid. See alfo, pag. 1043

Orange Hande, the latitude there,

Oranges great flore in China,331

Oranges, Lampions and Pome tie

Oranges flore in the West In-

Orangei, a people in Tartary, 33

Orations made by Indians to

Oration of Frier William to Man-

Oration of the King of Mexico.

Orca the Fift , kills the Whele,

Orchardes infinite in China,

Orders of Knighthood in Mexico.

Ordnance bad in China, 301.60

& 305. marg. Short ones in Ca-

Indies, the bead, course, and

bugb mouth , 868.10. & 886.

miledges,

their Degrees, Ensignes, and Pri-

to Hernando Cortes the Spani-

1125.30

their Kings , 1005. 40. 1006

1. 1010.40.1011.20.40.1018

dies, how they first graw, 961

treus in China.

420.20

preffed not reisened.

THE TABLE

Ottoya , or the Bride food in Peru, the Ceremony of a, 1058 Oueak a City,

Olaman of the Mountagne, bie Paradece, 72.30,40.00. Fooles Paradice , 72. 40. Destroyed, 72.60. The vie made of #, 72

Old men that never accused any much beneared in China, 333 Oule River in Ruffia, 553.40. The Riners that fall mie it ibid. And . 524. It falls so so Pechora, and where, gea.

Outon the Riner, by Ob , 804 Ouft-Zilma in Ruffia: Furres

there, 537.40. & 544.10. De-Owles vied for Hankes in Tarra-Owles-feathers, why the Tartars

O wles of Ruffia ftrange ones, 418 One facrificed in China, 307.1 Oxen frange ones, which draw

sbe Tarcars benfes, 23.1.71.20 79.50 Oxus the Riner , bath changed bis con-fe,

Oyle in Baptifme, 229.20 Oyle in Baptisme in the Ruffe Church, Ovle of Olines most preciously accounted of , 108. 50. For

this reason perchance a Tarta-1120 Prince was the more defirow to bane of the Oyle of the Ovle of B. alugos in Ruffe, The manner of fishing for them, 549

Oyle of Afpick whence brought, the vies, Oyle made of the fap of a tree, 957

Oyle from Apples in China, 382 Oyle of Seales or Trane oyle, 416

50. How made, 417.10. Sope Pantogia bis being in China, 407 Oyle of the Lampe before Chrifts Seculcule , Defired by the Tartar Prince, 56. 40. Hee receives it renerently, 67.

Oyntment of the Mexicans, Denill : meade of Poyfon and feare no wilde Beaftes, 1043

TAatebenam . a Riner. 261 Pacamoros and Gualfango, the

Promince in the West Indies. the extent of its Inviduction, the natural Commodities . Mynes. Townes and their Latitudes, 801.60 Pacauca, Pacauca, Pacauca, are

the King of Malabars Prayers, Pachin, what in Chinese, 199

Padou. a Riner by the Ob. 805 Pagodes, the Temples in China. 544.20 Palace of the King of Mangi de-

feribed, 100. 10. His Concu 86.20 Palinguindoens or Tartarian F12.10 Trumpets. Palmes the Iland in the West in-

dies , the distance from the .E. aumottiall. 891.40 Palace Penfile, or banged upon Pil-Palme-funday Proceffion in Ruffia,

227,20 236.20 Pamer, the Plante 74.30 Pamphilia m Cilicia, Pan, a Kingdome, 255.50 Panama in the Weft Indies, the

City and Pronince , the Inrifde-Stion of the Counsell , the exsent of it ; the Soyle , Ayre, Latitude and Longitude from Toledo, when first peopled, 882 Townes in it. 822.1,10

Panama the Nanigation too and agame to the City De los Reyes, and Chile, 860 Pancakes at Shronetide in Ruffia,

Pannonia when firft peopled, 662 Panouras or China Shippes, 260

Panghin the City.

Panuco Pronince in the West Indies; the extent, the difference of Soyle, the Townes and Latetudes of them. 872.10,20 Papa, the Samoits Priests, 443 40. And the Ruffians , 447

which make them fee the Papas Roots, are the bread of Pe-894.30 Tobacco. It made them | Paper made of the second barke of the Mulbery Trees , 874;

Paper of diners matters made in China. Papers or notes fent before in Vifites

tions and fending of Prefents. Paper-facrifice of China, 369.1 Paper of Iapon. 325.10 Papey or East illand, whence fo cale Papions skins vfed for clothing in

Tartary, Pappa and Pappas, what, 657 Paps, bow the Indian wines beare them up.

Paquin defribed, 272.20. Befreged by Tariars. 280.10 Paradice, the Chinois would go vn-

Paraoner an Officer in China, 339 Parents bonoured in China, 393

Parents much respetted in China, Parents felling or eating their owne

Children. Pariacaca Mountaine in the Well Indies, the ftrange fubtleneffe of the Aircibere, and the admirable effetts. One of the bighett Lands in the World, 926.20,30

5 2.60 Parishes onequally divided, the inconneniencie, 447.60 Parity a Peace-breaker, 277.20 Parliaments their order in Ruffia,

422.50. Begun commonly on Friday, bid. The meeting fitting and confulting, Parrots breed on the Mountaines of Peru.

Parrots fill fige by comples, 994 Parchenium the Promontory, 634

Parthia is now called Sachetay, 96.20 Zagetai or Sochtay, 141.10 Partridges of the West Indies, described, bow taken, Partridges white and plenty in Ruffia, their Feathers fold, \$36

> Partvidges flying into a Ship , 247 Paruam, the bounds of the Mogores

Dominion towards Catay, 312 Percatir, feake the Hungariant

torque, 18 50. Their trades and borders, ibid. The Hunnes came



Pafcatir, that is . Hungaria the Palcha, a Christian Woman of Mentz, found in Tartary, 28

Palius the lefuite bie tranels, 221 His fortunes and death, 322-1 Pafport to Hell. 406.30 Paffage by the Pole, the bopes, 702

Passage probable betwixt New Spaine, and Afia or Tartaria, 806.10 Paffaur & City. 311.40 Paffe for Tranellers, the forme vfed in Roffia

758.40 Patanes the people and Kingdome, 169.50 Patching of clothes, one of Tarta-

rian Commandements, the rea-Patient bearing in Indges, 201.1 Patriarch of Conftantinople nego-

tiates a league againft the Turk, 445. A league beiwixt Spaine and Mofcouis : That bem broken off, ibid. He colourably resigneth bie Patriarchate , to the Metropolitan of Molco, ibid, Goes away enriched. Patriarch of Moico, the Emperours

Father chofen to be, 791.10 Patriarch of Moico, fignes Patents with the Empereur, Oc.802,20

Patriarch of Russia made to play on a Bagpipe, 739.40. Crownes the Emperour, Patriarch of Molco, when first made, 445 His Inrifaction ouer the Ruffian Metropolitanes . Archbishops, &c. 446.30. His renenues 445.60. His babit, 447 1. The Emperour holds bis borfe bridle. 456.10 Pauing with Pitch, 199.40

Paynting upon Paft-board in Ca-800.10 Paynting in China, without fhedowing,

Paynting in China, 357.1,10,20 Paynting of their bodies, vied by the Indians. 992.10

Paynting ofed by the Ruffe women, they have allowance from their Hulbands to buy their Colours.

Peacockes of the West Indies deferibed, Peace mediated betwint the Rulles and Poles, and the Rulles and

are fashioned like a Peare, 973 Paynted women. Pearles, found in fhels, two feldoms 230.30 of one bigueffe : Stories of fome Pearles. Where in the Indies are the most and best , 952.50,60. The marner of dising for them, Sweden, and by whom, 791 Peace betwint the Ruffe and Swe- | Pearle-fifhing in Margar ta, 866 |

20. And in Florida 868.60 den. 702. The conditions of the Pearles found in two fenerall Shelaccord as followeth. Forgetfulneffe of insuries, 2. The Sweden fiftes, and which is best, egg youlds up the Caffles before taken, 2.Sweden was to refere Church Pearles great flore, Ornaments & Bells , 4. Persons Pearles whence they come, 70.20 Pearle-filhing, 254.50. Shops of and goods to bee freed on both fides, c. The time for Swedens Strangers barnt, that come then, delinery of the Townes, fet downe, 6. Lodia Callle to beerendred. Pearles the fifting for them and and Odoro to remayee Cantio the manner , 104.40. Vfedike wary to S reden, 7. Sweden not Beads to pray upon, Pechincow Monafery to ande bis brother in bis clarme Pechingo in Lapland, 558.10 to Noungred, c. 8. What places the Ruffe peilds to Sweden, Pechora, the trade for Farres there. \$46. The way thence ener land 9. And what money, 10. Sweden to keepe the Ordnance which bee 10 Ob, 551.60. And the bead and course of she Riner, 552.2 The Riners that fall into it, 553 bad taken, 11. Sweden to retaine the Signiory of Corelia, 12. Where the Commissioners on both 554. The way thence to Tumen sides are are to meete, determine m. Tartary, 556.20 Pechora, 530. Is bath 22, menthes. of the bounds, and confirme the Articles, 12. The Ruffe to sine oner bis title to Liefland, the titles of both Princes to be agreed up-

Article, 20. Ambaffages where

to meete, 31.Wrecks by Sea not to be taken of each, others Subjects,

22. Neyther partie to ande the

Pole but to treat of a joint league

againft bim, 22. The Confirma-

tion , and names of the Commif-

sioners. All which is acknow-

ledged to be effected by the media-

Peace betwint Denmarke and Sweden : and the Conditions.

Peaches weighing two pounds a

Peares weighing ten pounds spiece,

Pearle-fishing largely described,

972. The Oyster they are found

in, manght. Whither they grow

where they are found or remoone

thither; where the best Pearles

are found , ibid. Mention of

great and round Pearles: most

tion of our King lames.

\$22.1. The Rulles that trade thicker, 534.20. The Commedia ties there to be bad, 535.30. Com on, 1 4. Commerce of trade to conmensencie of transportation, ibid. The Inhabitans feare to trails tinne, 15. Merchants on both fides to bane free exercise of Rewith Strangers , ibid. The way ligion, 16. Perfonall wrongs , &c. from thence to Mongozey, 539 And Amhaffages , bow to bee ordered : From the 16. to the 29. Pechora the Towne described, and

bowthey line there, 536. Froft there in August, 542.30. Sume at Christmaffe fcarce feene. Pechora wonne by the Ruffe, 439 20. Their Language diners from

Pechora the Riner, disconered,463 Peibus the Lake in Liefland , 628

the Ruffe,

Peim, their adulterous liberty and cultome. Penance of the Mexicans, 1025

Pencils of baires, haire for writing.

People decared in the Indies by the Spaniards, 935.0 938.10 Pentions taken away from unferniceable men, 216.10 Pentle-frith Sound in Orkney. 827.20

Pentlow-frith in Orkney Hands. the latitude, 713. The courfe and trates there. Pepper infinite flore of, 101.

Pepper the daily expence in one Ci-Pepper Tree deferibed, 138.50 Pepper of West India, the fenerall forts, qualities and vies,955.50. 60. Salt corrects the ill quality

of it, 956.1. The common Spice and fawce of India. Pequin m China, is Cambalu. 2 14.

Pequin, other names of it, 301.50.

Pequin in China, is in a barren Joyle, 341. Very bote, ibid. In 40. Degrees, 341. 50. The way rom thence to Nanquin and Canton, ibid. Well de [cribed and compared with Quinfay, 342. unpaned and direr bid. All men

ride the firetes in Veyles, ibid. They burne See-coale : their Beds made with Bricke, lika States, ibid. The people duffer beere,

Pequin & Cambalu, the Etymon of u,342. & 361.60. It is fixe bundred leagues from Macao, 363.50. When, why and by whom the Cours was removed thisber from Nanquin,

Po quin, ie the Northerne Cours, ibid. The King fworms to refide

Pericopia, inhabited by the Crim Tartars, 622. The olde Names

Perfumes burst in the Sacrifices to the Deader China, 364.50 Permia some by the Ruffe, 439.20 Of Tartarian Organal, 443.10

Petlia containes eight Kingdomes, The names of them, 70.50. The Commodities. Perlia wonne by the Tartars, 116.1 Perfia, first traded into by English,

250,30 Perfian Artificer : good, 70.60 Perfians weare redde Turbants,

Persian Queen ouertbrem the Turks

Perfian trade into Syria and the Leuant, 242. Why the trade is fmall, ibid. English Cloub there,

Peru, the strange properties of the Land, one Winde onely there, and the nature of it : no Tempests meere the Coaft, but terrible ones by the Hills, and it Raines continually on the Mountaines, 926. Reason of the Rames, 937.20. H me in Peru, wby, ibid. The tafte,

928.1 Peru, the beate kept off there with thinne Mats : the Nights unt fo bete there as in Spaine, 921.50. It never Raines there: It bath alwayes the fame Winde, 923. Petu, the fourefold partition of it, and the tribute which each part pages, 1055.40. Lands in Commen there, 10 . 7.20. Enery men there is of all Trades abid. Their Laves, rewards for passible Sermice, oc. Marriage folemuities, niards when they bad Cinell wars.

Pen in the West Indies, the extent dissifion of the Inrifdiction, Vaien againe, Difconery, Proninces under it, Mountaines, two grans High-wayes, Pofts for Letters super them.

Peru comprehends not all the Indies of the South, begins at the Aquinettiall, the Content, Dinifion into three parts, 887.10. The Woper hounds of Peru, \$92.10. See Los Reves

Perualock a Towne, the figuificati-Pettilence in the North of the World.

Peter Balman a Ruffian Dake. 748.20. A brang General, 750. 20. Sent the fecond time us ainfl Demetrius, be remelteth, 752. 757.10. Vibers the new Empreffe to Court 762.20. Slaine. Petigorens in Taurica, are Chrifi-

639.30

Petigoren Pronince, or Colchis, 626.20 Petition in China, a farme of one, 407.10. How the King figues

Petition not answered, is granted for denyed, 354-1-0 358.30 Petiors River, the head and fall.

Petum. fee Tobaceho. Pharaohs Rats, their farre, 107.1 Pheafants as bigge as Pagcockes, and three a Great. Pheafants exceeding great, Pheafants three agrest, 89.40

Pheodore Iuanowich, Emperour of Ruffia, 740.40. His promife of fanour to the English, 742.40. His good beginning, 743.10. His neighbour Princes defire a league with him, and be with the Queen of England, 743. His fimpliesty and Death, 745-10

Philippinacs, the Nanigation this ther from Spaine, 860,10. The distance, and fealous, Philippinzes Hands. 282. First defconcred by Magellane, ibid. The fecond Voyage thither, ibid. The third Voyage thitber , 282.20.

Civill warras in the Ilands, ibidi Conquered and named by Kme Philip,ibid, Ther receine Basfilme, 282.69.4 282.40. Three wer bipt the Sunne and Moone. 28 2-1. The Franciscane oor she ther, of alfo the Dominicks of Ic. fuices, 282, 10. Their Priests were Women Wachen bid. Ther wanted not goe to beauch, becamfe the Spenigrde mene this ber. 184. 1. The riches of the Her, hid. 10 & 285.1. The first Plantation there, ibid. They under france the Malayan Teagre 285.60. The differes from China, 291.10 And from Mexico, Philippinaes called the Kingdome of Luzon, by the Chinois, 209. 20,30. # \$10. Semetimes tria butary to China. hilippinas, the course thence from Lima in Peru, is fell puder

the Line, Philippinas Ilands, the latitude et diffance from Spaine. Deferipeson and Natine Commodities of fome of them, 904. There bed I 1000. of them; many Christi-Stians there and Mahometans.

Philosophy little knowne in China, 343, 60. 345. 50. 346. T Philosophical Discourses of beate and sald, 919.920.921.0%. Of zbe Winds, Philosophers facrificed vate, 347

40.359.50 Phylicians of Mexico care all with Heerbes, Physicians mibeWest Indies. 060.1 Phylicke little wied in Ifland, 646.

Phylicke not much offeemed in China, 385.20. Degrees taken in the Art.

Phylicke dinine (or dinelift) of the Mexicans, Piaces, or Indian Manierans, their

Lafe and Art, 973. 40. Their direct and true answeres to the Spaniards. Piantu the Citie. 80.20 Pictures of frange Creatures eus in

precious Rome or Gold, in Mexi-1062.50 Pictures of Execution of Inflice, to

terrifie Prisoners, 271.60 ctures the King of China affaid of, 356. He shought them aline,

Pictures of Feathers the Art of making them, and their curiofity. Pictures

Pascatir, that is . Hungaria the Palcha, a Christian Woman of Mentz, found in Tartary, 28

Palius the lesuite bie tranels, 221 His fortunes and death, 322-1 Pafport to Hell, Paffage by the Pole, the bopes, 702

Paffage probable betwixt New Spaine. and Afia or Tartaria. 806.30 Paffaur & City. Paffe for Tranellers, the forme vied 758.40

Patanes the people and Kingdome, 160.00 Patching of clothes, one of Tartarian Commandements , the rea-

Patient bearing in Indges, 203.1 Patriarch of Conftantinople negotiates a league againft the Turk, 445. Aleagne betwirt Spaine and Molcouis: That bow broken off, ibid. He colourably resigneth bis Patriarchate , to the Metropolitan of Molco, ibid. Goes awar enriched.

Patriarch of Moico, the Emperours Father chofen to be. 791.10 Patriarch of Molco, fignes Patents with the Empereur, Oc.802.20

Patriarch of Russia made to play on a Bagpipe, 739.40. Crownes the Emperour, Patriarch of Moleo, when first made, 445 . His Inrifdiction ouer the Ruffian Metropolitanes, A: chbifhops, &c. 446.30. His renenue: 445.60. His babit, 447 I. The Emperour helds bis berfe bidle. 456.10 Pauing with Pitch. 199.40

Paynting upon Paft-board in Ca-Paynting in China, without Shadowing, Paynting in China, 357.1,10,20 Payming of their bodies, wfed by the Indians, Paynting vied by the Ruffe women,

they have allowance from their Hulbands to buy their Colours,

Peace mediated betwint the Ruffes Sweden, and by whom,

Paynted women. 230.30 Peacockes of the West Indies deferibed. and Poles, and the Rolles and

den. 702. The conditions of the accord as followeth. Forgetfulneffe of iniuries, 2. The Sweden reside up the Caffles before taken. 2. Sweden was to reftore Church Ornaments & Bells , 4. Perfons and goods to bee freed on both fides, s. The time for Swedens delinery of the Townes, let downe, 6. Lodia Castle to bee rendred. and Odoro to remaym Cantiomary to S reden, 7. Sweden not to ande bis brother in bis clayme to Noungred, &c. 8. What places the Ruffe reilds to Sweden, Q. And what money, 10. Sweden to keepe the Ordnance which bee bad taken, II. Sweden to retaine the Signiory of Corelia, 12. Where the Commissioners on both fides are are to meete . determine of the bounds, and confirme the Artieles, 13. The Ruffe to gine ower bis title to Liefland, the titles of both Princes to be sereed upon, TA. Commerce of trade to continne, 15. Merchants on both sides to bane free exercise of Relioson. 16. Per fonall wrones . erc. And Amhaffages, bow to bee ordered : From the 16, to the 29. Article, 30. Ambaffages where so meete, 31 Wrecks by Sea not to be taken of each others Subietts. 22. Neyther partie to ande the Pole but to treat of a tornt leadue against bim, 22. The Confirmation , and names of the Commifsoners. All which is acknowledged to be effected by the media-

tion of our King lames, Peace betwint Denmarke and Sweden : and the Conditions. 797.10

Peaches weighing two pounds a Peares weighing ten pounds epiece,

Pearle-fishing largely described, 972. The Oyster they are found in, nanght. Whither they erow where they are found or remoone thither; where the best Pearles are found , ibid. Mention of great and round Pearles: most are fashioned like a Peare, 973

Pearles, found in Shals, two feldome of one bigueffe : Stories of fome Pearles. Where in the Indies are the most and best , 952.50,60. The manner of dining for them,

Peace betwint the Ruffe and Swe- | Pearle-filling in Margar ta, 866

20. And in Florida 868.60 Pearles found in two fenerall Shelfiftes, and which is best, 999

Pearles great flore, 91.7 Pearles whence they come, 70.20 Pearle-fifthing, 254.50. Shops of Strangers burne, that come then,

Pearles the fifting for them, and the manner , 104.40. Vfedlike Beads to pray woon. Pechincow Monaflery, 223.20 Pechingo in Lapland. 458.10 Pechora, the trade for Farres there, \$46. The way thence over-land 10 Ob, 551.60. And the bead and course of the Riner, 552.1 The Riners that fall into it, 553 554. The way thence to Tumen m. Tartary, 556.20 Pechora, 530. It bath 22. monthes. 522.1. The Ruffes that trade thicker, 534.20. The Commedities there to be bad, \$35.30. Com

meniencie of transportation, ibid. The Inhabitans feare to trails with Strangers , ibid. The way from thence to Mongozey, 510

Pechora the Towne described, and bow they line there, \$26. Froft there in August \$42.20. Same at Christmaffe fcarce feene.

Pechora wonne by the Ruffe, 439 20. Their Language diners from the Ruffe,

Pechora the Riner, disconered, 463 Peibus the Lake in Liefland , 628

Peim, their adulterous liberty and

cultome. Penance of the Mexicans, 1025

Pencils of baires, haire for writing.

People decayed in the Indies by the Spaniards. 915.0 928.10 Pentions taken away from unferniceable men. 216.10 Pentle-frith Sound in Orkney. 827.20

Pentlow-frith in Orkney Ilands, the latitude, 712. The course and tydes there, Pepper infinite flore of, 101.

Pepper the daily expence in one Ci-

Pepper Tree described, 138.50 Pepper of West India, the fenerall forts, qualities and vies. 955.50. 60. Salt corrects the ill quality

of 11,956.1. The common Spice and famce of India. Pequim China is Cambalu. 214.

Pequin, other names of it, 201.50.

Pequin in China, is in a barren forle, 341. Very bote, ibid. In 40. Degrees, 341.50. The way from thence to Nanquin and Canton, ibid, Well de [cribed and compared with Quinfay, 342. unpaned and direy, ibid. All men ridethe freetes w Veyles, ibid. They burne Sea-coale : their Beds made with Bricke, the States, ibid. The people duffer beere,

Pequin & Cambalu, the Etymon of #,142. 0 261.60. It is fixe bundred leagues from Macao. 262.50.W ben, why and by whom, the Cours was remained thitber from Nanquin, 389.30 Pe-quin, ie the Northerne Court,

ibid. The King fworne to refide Pericopia, inhabited by the Crim

Tartars, 622. The olde Names,

Perfumes burnt in the Sacrifices to the Dead in China, 364.50 Permia wenne by the Ruffe, 439.20 Of Tartarian Original, 443.10 Perlia containes eight Kingdomes, The names of them, 70.50. The

Commodities. Perlia wonne by the Tartars, 116.1 Perfia, first traded into by English,

Perfian Artificers good. 70.60 Perfians weare redde Turbants,

Perfian Queen ouertbrem the Turks

Perfian trade into Syria and the Leuant, 242. Why the trade is [mall, ibid. English Clearly there.

Pero, the firange properties of the Land, one Winds onely there, and the nature of it : no Tempests meere the Coaft, but terrible ones by the Hills, and it Raines coutinually on the Mountaines, 926. Reason of the Raines, 937.20. W me in Peru, wby, ibid. The tafte,

Peru, the beate kept off there with thinne Mats : the Nights not fo bete there as in Spaine, 921.50. It mener Raines there: It bath alwayes the fame Winde, 923.

Peru, the fourefold partition of it. and the tribute which each part paper, 1055.40. Lands in Commen chere, 1057.20. Enery men there is of all Trades ibid. Their Laves, rewards for malike Sermice, oc. Marriage folemnities, de,10,8. Conquared by the Spaniards when they had Cinell wars.

Pem in the West Indies, the extent distilion of the Invildition, Vaica againe, Disconery, Proninces un. der it. Mountaines, two grant High-wares, Pofts for Letters went them.

Peru comprehends not all the Indies of the South, begins at the Aquinattiall, the Contant, Dinifion into three parts, 887. 10. The proper hounds of Peru. \$92.10 See Las Reves Perualock a Towne, the figuificati-

wie Ruffe. Peftilence in the North of the Peter Balman a Ruffian Dake. 748.20. A brang Generall, 750. 20. Sent the forond time us ainst Demetrius, be remelteth, 752. 757.10. Vibers the new Empreffe to Court 762.20. Slaine. Petigorens in Taurica, are Christi-

Petigoren Pronunce, ar Colchie, Petition in China, a farme of one, 407.10. How the King figues

Petition not an swered, is granted for denyed, 354-1-0 358.30 Petiora River, the head and fall,

Petum, fee Tobaceho. Pharaohs Rats, their farre, 107.1 Pheafants a bigge as Pagcockes, and three a Groat, Phoafants exceeding great,

Pheafants three a great, \$9.40 Pheodore Iuanowich, Emperour of Ruffia, 740.40. His promife of famour to the English, 742.40. His good beginning, 743.10. His neighbour Princes defire a league with him, and be with the Queen of England, 743. His fimplicity and Death, Philippinaes, the Nanigation this

ther from Spaine, 860.10. The distance, and feafous, Philippinaes Hands. 282. First defconcred by Magellane, ibid. The fecond Voyage thither, ibid. The third Voyage thither , 282.30.

Civill warras in the Ilands, ibid. Conquered and named by Kine Philip ibid. They receing Baytilme, 282.69.04 282.40. Three wer bipt the Sunne and Moone. 283.L. The Franciscans one ship ther, of alfo the Dominicks of les luites, 282, to. Their Priefts were Women Wachen ibid. They wanid not coe to beauch, became the Spaningede mont this ber. 284. 1. The richar of the Her, with 10

& 285.1. The fir# Plantation there, ibid. They under fland the Malayan Tangne, 285.60. The diffance from China, 291.10 And from Mexico. Philippinaes called the Kingdome of Luzon, by the Chinois, 209. 30,30. C 410. Semetimestria butary to China,

Philippinas, the courfe thence from Lima in Peru, is full order Philippinas Ilands, the latitude et diffance from Spaine. Deferines on and Native Commodition of force of them, 904. There bed 1 1000. of them; many Christi-Rians there and Mahometans.

Philosophy little knowne in China, 343, 60. 4 345.50. 346. 2 Philosophical Difcourfes of beate and seld,919.920.921.06. Of the Winds. Philosophers facrificed vase, 347

40.259.50 Phylicians of Mexico care all water Hearbes, Phyficians in the West Indies of 1 Phylicke little vied in Ifland, 646.

Physicke not much effectued in China, 385.20. Degrees taken in the Art. Phyticke dinine (or dinelift) of the

Mexicans. Piaces, or Indian Magicians, their Life and Art, 973. 40. Their direct and true answeres to the Spaniards. Piantu the Cure. 89.20

Pictures of frange Creatures ent in precious frome or Gold, in Mexi-Pictures of Execution of Inflice to terrifie Prisoners.

Pictures the King of China afraid of, 356. He thought them aline, Pictures of Featbers the Art of

making them, and ther curiofity.

P:Curce

ting, de. Pillars onely of Wood in China. 341 Pillorie Comes, 191.60.0 202.20 Pillow ofed by the Kings of Mexico for a Table. 1126.40 Pine-tree, Cities built withall,259. Pine Apples of the West Indies, the manner of growing and qua-955.1

662.10

Pinego River, 223.60 Pintadelli Indian Birde, their admirable promisions against the Menkeres. 981.1 Pintados Ilands. Pintos bis bard aduentures, 353 Piracies in Cauchin-China, 254. Piru, fee Peru.

Pilars of the Sunne in P. ru, which

shewed the Sun-rifing and fet-

Pifida the River, where , 9 28 20.the description of the people dwelling on it, & of other things : the Ruffes gine oner the Difconery, ibid. Thought to touch upon China, 529.1. Tolling of Bels beard. and Mountaines casting out fire,

Pissing at Table is great civilitie in Island, 647.1. They wash in Pille, and why, Pitch fringing out of the Earth, Pits ebbing and flowing like the Sea,

Pizzles of Dogs and Foxes of bone, in Groneland, 825,50. Of Seaborfes of Stone, ibid: in marg. Plaice Felb fixe foot long, 616.50 Plane tree of West India described: the miebrineffe of the Leanes. goodnelle of the Fruits or Nut. presity ripowed, 956.10.20 Plantations of the West Indies by 861.862 the Spaniards. Plantan Tree of West India. and bie Fruit described, it beares Figges, ·· 984 Plantius a furtherer of Disconeries.

478 30 Plate of the Ruffian Emperairs. 742.1.749.1.20 Plate Riner, when discoursed, the courfe, whence fo called , the Prosince of Plate, the pleatiful. neffe of it, &t.901.40. &c. The Townes in it and their Latitudes, Distances, Sortes, Commodition the Ports Points, Iles, Capes, &c. Wub their Latitudes, the Indian name of thu River, bie mouth. Latitude, cov.

titude. 896.40 Place Riner, encreafes like Nilus: the breadth and Latunde, 924. Pleafures in China, all end wich eas

Plate Cuie in West India, the La-

Plowing with Buffales in China. Plutoes Image in China described. Poafts their manner in China, 189.

Podolis, fome places in it deferi-Sed. Poelie of China. 270.60.0c. Point Truft by Nous Zembla, the · elenation. Polackes the natural Etymen of

Poland King, written great Duke of Letto, 765.50. 6 783.50. 6 King of Sweden, Poland foyled by its owne Souldi.

Poland enerous by the Tartars, 62.1 Policies of Boris to winnethe pea-Policie maintagned beit, by Policy,

746.40 Poles entreat a League with Ruffin. and breake #, 766. 1. 10,20. Their outrages in the Citie of Mofco, 769.50.6 777.40 Poles what Towner they have in Pruffia,627. And in Liuonia,

Poles, abet an Impostor of Ruffin. and beloe bien to uttaine the Empire 756. Promre the Tattare to ayde him, 767. 10. Compelled to cate Mans fleft, 780,20 Policie of the Portugals to keepe one the Spaniards from the Philip. ninses. 285.40 Polygamie litigiom, 375-40 Politiques findied in China, 342.

Politic and Officers of China, 182. Oc: The perfone of great Officers free : they may commit any offending them, to Prifon. They band Penfions from the State, 185. They take their eafe in age, with Dignity, and their former Penfions. Pompions of Weft India then bugeneffe" 955. Whence they came

ibid. to. Mare.

Ponchaft what, m Chinefe, 913. Pongo frange water falls, 934.r Sir John Pooles Vejage to Denmarke, 780.10 Poore drowned in a Famine, to fane Corne Poore, the promisions for them in Hen

land, 666.20 667.1.10.20 Fopayan Pronince in the West Indies; the extent, under the E. quinoctiall, Soyle, Mines of Gold Townes and their distances from the Animoctiall, the people wifor then thofe of Peru, 889.50. 60. Christians in st, temper of the Ayre, Mines, babites and Keligion of some people, Beaits, distances of Townes, Cambals, 800. Other Townes , People,

Soyles, Riners, barning Moun-taines, Townes disinhabited, Iles, Capes, Points, Oc. Sor. Pope of Ispon. Pope receives the Iaponia Ambal-Sadours, 222.10. His answere to

Pope of Mexico, 1033.10.50. His babite;1078, He cuts the Men to be Satrificed, 1048.20 Pope of the Tartars, 281.20. His chiefe Sea,

Pope, the Tartars believed bon to be fisse bundred yeares old,

Popes affiftance of an Impostor in Rullia to attaine the Crowne,755. 60.768.50. The Pope diffurbes the Emperour protects bis Rebels. whilf the Tartain breaks into Christendens 62.30. The Emperour willing to pacific bim, to expel them, ibid. The Pope prinately

rewards and conferres with the Tartars. 62.20 Porcelane, the forts and manner of making. 177.40 Porcelane. 382.10 Porcelane where and how made. 101.40 Porke the Dainties of China, 197. Ø 207.20 Porcupines where. Porta Ferrea, or Derbent, bude by Alexander, 12.50. Paffage that way out of Perlia, and Turk ie to Bulgaria, Porta Ferrea built by Alexander throwne downe by an Earthquake 55.50. Built with most wonder-full Lime, ibid, 50. Gog and

Magog font up in it, 56.1. Bro-ken by the Hunnes, \$6.40 Porta Ferrea deferibed, 48.40.6 Ports of Hispaniola, their differen from Same Domingo, 863.40 Porters of Hell, ... 274.50 Portugals their Trade in China. 190. For Silkes and Muske. ibid. Intromble, 191.00 Portugals in China, refide at Ama-

Cao, 319-30-315-10. Account. ted natural subjects, but permitted their Religion, ibid. And at Sancian, 318,60. The Chinois sealous of them, 319.20 Portugals brought upon the Stage in China, 406.1. Made ediens for their babites, ibid. Perfecuted upon a Witches answer : ibid.

A tumult among St them, . shid. Poafts in Tartaric, their exceeding finfineffe, 87. 30. Their Print-ledges, 84.40. Foot Poatts, ibid. Their great feed, 31141 Poalts-falling, an omen of babitati-on there to be made, 697-30. (As ours of the Staffe-falling) The

custome of Norway. Poait Horfes in Tartarie the promifion for them. 87. 10. 20. erc. Lamb in the Tartarian figmfies Poalt-borfes.

Potozi more of the Mountains and the Mines, the Senerall vernes and the great riches, and the manner of the Discourse, 944.945. 946. How they digge, and refine the Silmer,

Potofi, the Citie and Mountaine of Siluer mines in the Well Indies, the Latitude, Inhabitants, 896.60. Signification of the Name, richnesse of the Mines: the Hill otterly barren, the forme and colour of the Earth, big-

nelle.coc. Pot in Ruffia, the Ceremony of trea. ding on it, Powder of Gold found in Rivers, 892.1. Where most in quantitie, Praying towards the East, vied by the Mexicans, Prayers at a Coronation the formes Prayers faid by the Priest, more haly then uttered by the Latte.

Praying, their poflure in Mugalla, Precious Stone good against Thun-47.10 Precious Stones plenty in Zvilan.

104.20 Precious Stones much worne in Ruf-459.460 Prechan, the King of Cauchine China, Prieft of Mahometans bis bloody Aile.

357 Priests bow refelled, Priefts garments, 196.40.50 Priefts two forts in China, 196.50 Priefts of Mexico, ben educated taught, exercifed, corretted, &c. 1108.00

Priefts in China Shanen, bead and beard. Priefts of the Mexicans, their Degrees, Succeffion, Offices, Cononto call boures, Oc. 1033.50. Veft. ments, Incenfe, Preachings, Ramennes, Confectation, & c. 1934. Their babate, 1038.1. 1041.10. Their two Vactions, Priefts in Ruffia their Ordination,

447.40. Shorne, not Shauen, annormied with Oyle, and cleathed with the Surpleffe and Creffe, their Office and numbers . the may Marry once, 447.50. Their maintenance, & benefit by Prayers for princis occasions, 448, 10 Their Offerings and other perquifites on the By,ibid. Habite abroad, and at Church, Priefts, women Witchet, 283,20 Priefts Wines their great reputation

in Ruffia. Priefts of the Tartars, are South-Sagers ,43.50. Their description, ibid. They bene one chiefe Priett. ibid. His boufe at Court, and Office, ibid. Their maintenance, ibid. Their Muliche in an Ecclafe, like to the Corybantes, 44. 1. Their fee for purifying, ibid.

Prieits of the Ruffians, Marry once. 225.40. & 229.1. And bene Children, 227.40. Differ, onely wither Niebt-caps from the fecular babite, 229. 1. Crownes Shauen , and their baire long;

Priefts burnt for Sacrifice in Curland Preients ginen by the lefuites, to the King of China, 352.20 Prefents fent by the Ruffe Emperour , to the King of Altine, Prefents demanded by the Altine of she Ruffe,

Presents fent to the Spaniards from China, 306.0 307.20 Prefents in Baskets carrieda Gof-Presents the fashion of sending them,

Prefter Ichn of Afia, Presbicer Ioline Countrey in Can thay the black or Kara-Cathaya 56.50. But falfely; and at little true as thefe tales of bim in E. thiopia, Prefter Iohn of Tartary, or Vma

chan, Presbyter Iohn in Tartarie, sa. 60.33.50 Prefter John of Tartarie, tributarie tathe Successioners of Chingis

Chan, 80.20. His fucceffburs want a George, be is a Chriffi. an Priest. Primum Mobile, a Phylosophicall Prince Charles bis Iland, the Entitode

Princes of the Blood, bow pled m China, 391. 1. Their muniber et ?. Princes of the Bleed, reftranced in

China 208. They onely are fly-Led Lords ... Psince dying, no man lyes in bis Loda gings a long while after in Ruffin.

Prince of Ruffin bis State and babue, 748.60.0 750.1 Princes venerated as Gods by the Tartars, Printing in China. 240.10 Printing, the fashion in China, 370.40.50. Printing white Let-Printing brought into Ruffis, 447. 40. The Printing bonfe buent,

10. Their practices, 45. 10. Printing first carried into Hand 645176

Prophecying legends, their effects, 1021.60 Prophets not read in the Ruffian Church Prucheni a people, Pruffix bow dissided between the Pole Grbe Dutch Knights, 627.00c. Prut or Hieras, a River of Molda-Pruteni, Curlandi Liuonij, Eftonij, Semigalli, & Leuconii, all Pagans,

Protum Techina, a Fort of the Turkes in Walachia, 633.1 Pinytha, to 416.1 Puddings of Herfe-fielb eaten by Tartars, 4.10 Publangen, a Riner in Tartary, 80.1 Pulle Quirien.

256 Pulle Hinhor. Pulla Cambim & Riner, where, 253 Bullo Champeiloo an Iland, 254

Pumice-ftones baile withall, 651 Pumps for Ships, that goe with the 176.10 Punas Mauntayne in the West Indies , the Ayre of it kils Paffen-

926.10 Punnus inhabits Island, and gives them Lawes. Purfe, not iniustice quarrelled againif. 435.10

Purgatory Mountaine, of the West Indians, 1120.50. The deferip-1123.40 Purgatory, arefemblance of it in

Puftozera, the way from thence to Colmogro by Sea, 545.546. By land. Pufforeza the Towne. whom the Riwer of Pechora in Ruffia, 533 20. Netre Ruffig but not in it, 543.60. The altitude, Pyramides conered with Gold, 92

Pyramide of fire feene at Mexico,

Q Vabacondono, vifurpes in Iapon, 323.50. What his name figmifics, 324.20.325.30. Made to cut out bis owne bow-Quangeparu a (ity, 255.30 Quanty taken by the Tartars. Quon the Isponian God, 323.60 Christian Festivals viedto bim.,

Quarrels in China, 370.10. Soone ended in China, Quali, drinke in Muscouia, 218.10 & 228. How made. Quayles (acrificed in Mexico, 1047

Queene of France Stirres ber Sonne againft the Tartary. Queene of Heanen in China, 274 Deenzanfu the City, the Commo-Mies there. Quetzalcoale, the Mexicans God of

Pithes . honoured by the Merchants, 1048. His Festinall Cere-Quian the great Riner, 90.10 Quickliluer Mynes, the manner of them. How it growes and is getten, crc. 894. 10,20. Where,

Quickfiluer refines that Metall, which fier cannot 944.10. 947 of Quickfilier, 947.648. All Metals but Gold fwimme in it: its fympathy with Gold; refining with it unknowne to the Ancients : it is the porton of all Metals but Gold and Silner : ftrange properties of it. Places where it is found 048. Found in Vermilian. 948. How the Mynes were first disconvered: Richnesse of one Myne, how it is drawne out of the

Myne 949. The dangerin mel-

ting it, melted with Straw, kept

with it , bow after refining it is Separated from Silver. Quinquagelima Sunday is the fecond Lent time, to all the people of the East.

Quintay called Nanquin described 338. Not comparable to the European buildings, the chiefe of China, bow foreified, ibid. Twg dares iourner about, ibid. Quintay deferibed, 162.20, The King why bee comes thither but once in ten yeares 162.60 Quintay a discussion whither it bee

Hamceu, or no, 409.50. The tribate it payer. Quinlay is the City of Housen, 97 40. Deferibed, 98.1,10,20 006 The Carizons deferthed, 98.60. Their riches and white, 99 1. 20. The generament of it, 99. 40, 50. It bath a Garrison of 20000 Quippos or Registers of Peru, made of knots. 1053.20 Quitalol , what in Chinefe, 306

Quitiroan the Kingdome, 253.30 Quito in the West Indies . the In. rifdition and extent , Goneraments under it , under the E. quinoctiall; the Ayre, Seafons, and Townes, 887.40, 50. Townes under it , Heards of Cattle, Ruine wondred at Ports of their latitude , bieb waves admirable. Rivers and bow the Indians peffe them. 888. Emeralds, Perts. Hes , Points, Tales of Giants,

Quinira false placed in the Maps 849.1 Quixos and Canela, Pronince in the West Indies, the Spanish

Townes in it, the feyle, &c. 891 Quoaman, where, 256.40. Silver Quoo, & Yes, in Chinefe, 187.1

Quocum, the Nobility of China,

R. the Chinois cannot protars Tatos, 170,20,0 219,20 Racke, the Indian word for drinke of Rice. 27.50 in marg. Rambos a Fish that eleanes to the Sharkes their description, 930. best in Leather: manner of refining | Ramels Foord in Groneland : the

THE TABLE

Ramufius taxed and defended, 856

Rapes (our word of Politie) the Etymon, 664-30. & 666.10.50. Rafors flung upon Darts by the Mexicans, the danger of the weapon, 1023.60. Vied by them

Rauens (4 ant of North Arke) fent out of a Ship to disconer Land, 654.50. Illand salled . Rafnatloke of those Rivens,

Raw Fift the Gronelander food. 8 26, 20 Rawe meate ferned in, in China,

Raine, the Chinois fable of it, 274. 30. It is Gods Aimes, Raine where feldome, or nener, 898.

Raine, the tricke in Peru to keepe it off, or to procure it , 1044. 6. ... 1046. 19.20. Rogations for st. Raine nor Hayle, where it never does . 88 1. Occasioned by the Maun. taines, 892. 30. And where it does continually ···· ibid. Raine very scalling bote, 198.40 Raines, the reason of much or little under the Equinoctiall, Tor-

Tropickes, 918. 40. Why under the Torride Zone in the Afternoones, and at the full Moone : fome Phylosophicall discourses a bout thefe, 918.40.50.60.60. Rine when most beate under the Torride Zone, 919. 49. They allar beate under the Torride

ride Zone, within or without the

Zone. 021.1 Raining of Fleas, Frogges, &c. the .: reason, 922.30. Where cansed by Northerne winder, ibid. And by Westerly, 925.50 Raines ever and never, where, 936.

The reason. Rainebow with both ends opwards, Rainebow the fable of st, 275.40

Raine-Deere backnyed out, \$37.20. They feed upon white M.fe,548 . 10. The chieferiches of the Samoieds. Regions of a Northwest Paffage,

848 849 Rebaptization ofed by the Rulle, 451. 6 786. 40. Their Cate. chifing and other Ceremonies,

Reductibe Kingdome,

Latitude, and variation there, | Rebellion how preuented in China,

Records of the Perunians, kept by knots. 1053.20 Red, the King of Chinaes Colour.

208.20 Red Painting forbidden to primate Houses in China, 407.60. The peculiar Colour wherein Usfiters come to the Kings throne, 405.

Red Sea, or the Straight of Mecca. Redemption of wilde Creatures

Reedes exceeding bard and great, 382.20 Reedes or Canes of the Well In-

dies, Houses and Quiners made of them : their knots full of pure 987.50 Refining of Gold, wherewithall 943

50. Of Silver, 944. 1.10.6 947 The manner. Region of Darkenesse, where the Sunne appeares not in Winter .

107.10.0 F10.40 Religion in Mufcoun, 217. 5 218. Ø 227. Ø 238.217.30 Religion of Musconia, 444. 445. . de. According to the Greeke

Church. Religion of Mugalla, like the Ruf-Religion of the Crim Tartars,441

10. Their opinions of Christ, ibid. Their Idols. Religion of the Mexicans, 1026.

Religion in Peru the uniformitie of it enery where. Remission of fentence, is Almesdeedes 272.10 Rendacalem the Citie, 281.30 Renkanes Promontory in East Ile-

land. 654.60 Reobarte the Countres. Refurrection, an inching of it in China, 274.20. And after that, all shall remaine in the Moone,

Reidarfiall Mountaine, in Island, Reidarfiard Bay in Island, 654-30 Reuelation not read in the Ruffian Church. Reward after Death, the Chinois

opinion of st, Rherorike, the Fauorite-fludy of China, Rhinocerotes, where, called Badas, their Horne good against the

Piles, 169.10. Ufed to Carria-

Rhuharb, 362.40. Where it grower, 76.40. In China, Rhubarb described, 164. 40. The price of it there, ibid. Called Ro-

uen Cini 3 Rialarnes Province in Ifland, 66e Ribbes of the Examined broken, or pinchs.

Rica or Rie in Liefland, 627.10.Or Rigaco, Rice the King of Chinaes tribute

payed in 364. The chiefe food of China. Rice growes in Marifles, 178.0 Rice Bread Richard Relfe a debauched Englifhman, rebaptized by the Ruffe,

Richest Pronince in the World is Malabar.

Ricius the lefuit, fent for into Chie na,320.50. Carries a fine Watch with him. Is made Governour of the Colledge in Amacao, 321.40. Disappointed of his purpose, and returnes to Amacao, ibid. Returnes into China, 327.30. He and Ruggierus fent to the Aitao. ibid. Commanded away by bim. ibid. Gets leane to build. 328. 40. 50. Their Bookes admired 329. 1. How boutsered, ibid. Slandered and confirred against, and freed, ibid. 20. Hee prints a Mappe in the China Characters. ibid. Metes Spheares, Globes, and Dyals, reades upon them, and is admired, ibid. of propofition for an Embaffie from Spaine to China, eroffed, 330. 10. He is troubled in Sciauchin. Calues all web bribes, 333.30. But is after banifbed ibid. Bailde another Station or boufe at Xauceum, 334-50. Teaches Mathematickes, 335. 1. His bonfe abused, and the Offenders puni-Ihed, ibid to. A Confirmacy de gainst bim , ibid. Taken for a Bonzi, and infamous; whereupen be alters his babite, 336.1. Goes funcher inth China, 337. 1.10. Cc. Arriner at Nanquin, 338. 10. Is shared thence, and goes to Nancinn : hes vession, ibid. 50. He bath the Art of memory, 339.10. Gets into great stedite, writes a Booke of friendship, ibid. Goes to Nanquin againe, but not suffered to fray, 340. I. 10. His lowrney to Piquin, the Cuie Rojall, 34% Pofferthe fireets unknower, 342 40. Makes a China Dillionary, and Grammar, 342.5 :42. Res.

turnes againe to Nanquin, 343 Richis bonoured againe at Nanquin, 345.20. Teaches Mathemas sickes, bid. & 346. Baleened to bane lined forme Ages, 347.39. Diffutes with the famous Chinois, and is admired, 348. His Prefents to the King, and the loffe of their Ship, ibid, so, or 252. Hie China name it Sithai, 349. 1. In danger of an Eunuch, ibid.

1. Is befriended and feasted by that great Emnuch ibid. & 353. 10.20. His lourney to Court, ibid. His Petition unanswered 354-1:40.50. Pilleged by an Ennuch and perusoned against 255. 20.20. 40. Oc. Is feut for by the King, 356. 20. Exceeding welcome, bid. Vrged to be made a Mandarine, 357.40. Is font up lome Moneths, and petitioned against, 358. 10. Hath leave to bire a Honfe, and bath allowance of the Kings purfe, and bonoured againe, ibid @ 259. Hu Booke of the defeription of China begins page, 380. The lewes offer to make bim Ruler of their Synagogne,400.60. Hath liberty to Bay at Pro in and maintenance, 405. 40. One writes against bim, falls sicke and dyes, 407.1 Ring vsedm Marriage by the Rus. Rings, the Chinois weare in their Eures, but not on their Fingers, 349.30. Worne in the Nofthruls by the Indians. 992.30 Ripering of greene Nuts in a Vef-fell, a Philosophicall way, 956.30 Riphzan Miuntames, where, 53.30 The fables of them, 220.40 Rifalandia a Pronince in Norway, the Etymon. 661.30 River made by band in China, 97. River changing his Courfe, 236.20. Ard mby, 236.40 Riner Lett in the Earthabid.20. & 237.40 River finking underground, andri-873.50 fing againe, Rivers reelding Gold, 874.10 River Quian in China, the greateft in the World, 97.10. Much tra. ded upon. Rivers of Rullia, the chiefe, 415.30 River of Molca ballowed, 225.10. # 226. And the Volg2, 244. 10

River of Plate, the Voyage, distance

Spaine thither,

and feefous of Nanigation from

859.50

River of Sals in Chile, the Lati. | Rubic that drives mater from 1,802

Rivers m China all frozen in Win-343.I Rivers frozen for fine moneths in Ruti a. 414.50 Rivers of Podolia. 622.20 Rivers of Siberia, 525.526.00c. Rivers of Saint Lucar, Nicardo and Zedros, in the West Indies, their destance from the Aquinottiall, 891.40 Rivers, Mountaines, orc. wor forpped in India. 1028.20. Their Sacri-Robes moft exceeding rich m Rullia, Robais or Edeff. the Citie, 110.50 Rocke arisficiall one, 346.60.6c. Rocke of Diamonds. 253.40 Rogations imitated by the Dintell in Mexico. 1047.20€€. Regalandia Pronince in Norway, 654.40 Roman fortitude of a Mexican Captime, Romith rues found in China, 397. 60. A. fingle Life, Singing, Sernice, long Robes, Purgatory, and Abjolution upon money gruen to the Precit, bis ibaning Mankery, and balo oftenee. 398.1.10 Romift Pelgrimages, beld a prote-Bion for tyrannous Venrpation, 622.marg. Rootes whereof the Indians make Bread or Meate. 954-955 Rope-tumblers in China, 349.40 Rope-walking admirably in the West Indies. 1064.10 Rofe Iland in Ruffia by Archangell Castle, an English bonfe there, 744.10. The way thence to Mosco. Refomakka, a ftrange Beast deferi-Roft Hands, where, 21 2.10.0 222. Rofting the Examined on a Spit, Rouerio a Fift, wied to catch other Fiftes described, where innented, 999.10 Roxani and Roxolani in Strabo, arethe Ruffians. Roxellani, are not the Ruffes, 413. Rubarb wfed in a Ingling cure by an

Armenian Monke, 32. 40. 6

Rubies where they grow moftly, 104.

20.160.40. One a bigge at a

mans arme, and valued at the

worth of a Cuie. ibid. of 110 10

thitber.

Run Hand one of the Orkneys, 827

898 | Rubble, a Ruffian fumme, a Marle. Robruquis the Frier bis Iournall to the East parts of the World, I. His meffage to the Tartarian Proces Sattach, 13.20. Oc. And to Baatu. 17. 10. 20. Or. His Journey to Mangu Chan, 18.1. Shaned himfelfe in Tartarie, 27. 10. His Oration to Mangu Chan, 27,50. His refolution to keepe company with Sercerers, 26 40. Examined at Caracarum. Rubruquis bis learned Discourse with the Saracens, and by Conference with the Courtiers of Mangu Chan, 40,50,60. His anfiver to Mangu Chan concerning bis comming into his Countrey, 41.10. His diffute with the Neftorians. 4 \$. 20.00 c. Nat (affered to flay in Tartarie,43.40. He departeth from Mangu Chan, 42. 50. His way from Volga into Perfiz,48.20. Returnes to Baztues Court, 47.50. He gets bis Bookes againe, 48,20. His was from Euphrates to Tripolis, 51. 10.crc. His admice to his Kme concerning the Tartare, 41.50 Ruck the Bird, which carries away an Elephant, 106.40 Ruffes or Bands not worne by the Ruffes. Ruggierus, learnes the China tenene 320. 20. In famour with the Generneur, 320. 40. Catechifes at Amacao, ibid. Sens tothe Viceroy about fetling at Amacao, 321
Fals ficke, ibid. Obtaines a Charter for the lefuites, ibid. Returnes into China, 2 27.30. Petitions the Gonernour, but is commanded backe to Amacao, 327.60. As Editt fet up against him, 328.1.
Procures a Charter of continuance in China.ibid.zo. Returnes for Supplies to Amacao, 329. 10. Baptifes fome, 3 30. Sent to fetch Feathers for the King ibid, Goes with the Gonernour into Sciauchin ibid. Gets a House there. 332.1. Much benouved there, ibid. Makes forty Christians. ibid. 20. Goes to Mount Vo-tan. ibid .40.Wronged by a falfe Conwert, ibid. & 333.10. Returnet inte Europe, Rule to know natine Commodities and Creatures the Indians had, before the Spaniards comming

Ruffia of old called Sarmatia, 412. 40. Whence called Ruffia, wid. The bounds, and Shires, 414.1. The length and breadth of it. ibid. 20. A pleafant Countres in Summer, 415. 10. Hotter then England, ibid. Natine Commodures, ibid. 60.00. 6 416.10. Is baib no Mines but Iron 417. 60. The ftrange Creatures of st. ibid. 7 418. The chiefe Cities. 418.30. The Tawnes of Brenoth 419.10. The fours Frantier Townes, 427. 10. Their wooddanbuilding , 419.20. The foure great Invidentions, and the go-nernement of the Preninces, 426. 1.10. The tribute payed by the Prominces, 429.1. The Towner of chiefe trade, ibid. The nereb. bouce and benderers, 439:20. The Church Gouernement, 444. . et c. They depended voon the Par triarch of Constantinople or Rudis, the late alterations there force ; the Raigne of Iuan Valilowich, famine and Swand there, 7:8. ... The buge larger fe of the Em-... pire, 768. 20. An later-regnun and popular Gourrement shere. 782.50 In danger to bee timi-... ded amongst duers Lords 789. OZ Men . . . cir Priest. Emperour of Ruffia: His Dominions naturall, and by Conquest. ATA. His Customes vo-Ruffin tompues the original Selze on Sele, 417.40. One of she FE - Bings,418.20. His tyle changod from Duke to King : milliked and why, itsel 40. Hu Syrname, Ruffians, they care not to benerant 426.10. Hee derines him Celfe thing beforemend 417,432.Forfrom the Hungarman, 419:40. G.Their first getting the Duke. domes Wola landers 420 . The frit antituling tham falue: Empe-11 mome, bid. Gress Dake of Hof-1 50,420-10. Manner of bu mmuthin of without A20.20 Great anguration ibid. His Stile re-Drunkardi 471.40 . The Store peated at bis Garanation, \$21. mons dare not looke on a Gentle. 30m His Gangropsent, ibid. & mar, 4721 toi Thin Andinaire 1. 422 His abfofute Soperatenty, . sommon or anfenche stade Their ibide Has befremes all Offices, . well wratabed condition. linging at + ibid . His Emprefor fuffeted to Some at in an Enemies Countrey, deale in Inflice bid Home be white Employed up before a 13 mahned the Nobelitie, 4221 50. Tandend & T. . Kept View Being - His Garagell of State, 427. 40. an St Buller and which eye point make lers, His Customes and Revenues. stord all come borne some deteraine . 438.30. The Receivers of thein, minchipter, ibid. Is is winderous bid. His Frees 429. 20 His toened then equal to Men ibid. - Gord 429.50 0 445.40 Hu Their luftice and procuedings in reperty prome, 430, to. Their Low.423. Them Statistingafer. Metances to impofe Taxations. wibid 40. His ordinary Sacribades

and robbing of the Monasteries. 430.60.6 43 1. A wretched pohey of his to get money, 431.t. Hu tyrunneall engroffing of com. medities, ibid. Ther vagodly cawillatums, 42 1. 50.60. His lealoufie of Strangers, 433.20. Hu expences to bes Souldsery 434. He bath Socoo. Hor | ener in areadeneffe, 436. 10. And of Foot twelse thenfund, ibid. Of Strangers 4200.bu mamiayning of his Conquetts by Colomes 418. His old bomage to the Tartar derved. 440-1. Helds the Patriarchs Horfe bridle, and bath a Penfion ferst 456.10. An earely refer. bis Month & douations, 456. 60. His falutations to his Empreffe, going to Church, and groung pre-Sence to bis Nubility 457.10.20. the. Nether enter nordyes with his Empreffe, but when this His Sernice at ibe table ibid. His after-monievecreations, which His ben hold and great Officers, 448. 30. Emperour of Ruilia, bis Funerals, Maninings, and Corona #4164.740.741 0 c.d. 745.20. Hu Tule 747.40. Ho gong o State, 748. 20.20 10 His vettomanar ou great Dages cittale 749. His title of Sciry appliplder, 755.60. Of Calan 760, 10: His title, 765. 802. Electres of ban by Lot, 769. See Muteoring the General forted, "433:30 briden to drinke Book of Mende franctimies as 8,600, Willein Corne ande, 412.60.0 432.10.0 435 The few sale of the or of the Empire 427:00 They belowell amboth

wards & backwards, ibid. Bester to keepe a Cafite, then in the field. 438.40. Their desettedneffe being taten Prefoners, 441.1. Counted double dealers, by the Tartars, 442.460. They bene preferned no Antiquities ,444.40. When Connewed so Christianity, ibid, co: And Connerted by the Greekes, 445.30. Their errows in Dotime.452.30. Their Scriptures m the Polonian tougue, 4536 Abay bold other Christians no better then Turkes, & why, 455. 30. They vinally Grepe after dinner. 497, 50.6 499.1. Their perfons de feribed, 458.60.00c. Dyet, 439. Wby the Women are fo tame my, thid to: Them bushands allow auce for Painting, ibid. The mens parisace of beate and cold, ibid. Their Apparell for wen o women ibid.460. Their wits and capacities, and fearnete learne 460,40 They are all syrauss so they Inferesertabled . Their begger o deferate begging ibid. Their dif-Sambling of increaming; ibid. Ruffans, they deterster Letterd from the years of the world, 755. so.ch 748.00. Their Language differentfren the Politin 761.20 They account the Rough Religion 60. 0 768.30. They Perition the King of Poland to make bis Souther Emperor 784.1 C. And that they may entry the printledge of his other Subictivolair miferahe incompaner, 799 new Tory fall from the Pole fountifully their their their beir beir the 1020. They lett their Chantellours Son Emperous, who frante,791. Their carious obfer-Lande 6 14.10 marg. Defert bed,616.70. The prople are good Christians, charingle: kample site Bonetom , and contented; ibid, & bique Third Many is Stack fift. their Drinke & Bread, and Apparell,626. They bear weather Robbens anor Fornicition, 617. Ther Faveral s, and Bathes, ibid. Snowes there from February to mid May, 617. 90. ming. Their batter and arada for Stock-file. ibids Then Hanft deferibed, ibid.mare. Renewites Schoonian, 14. Committy may according to the forest of the feether and a translation on the safety of Sabach 7 See Their Money 34.10

S Aboath in China enery fort-Sabboatus of the Chinois, 397.1, Sabboath of the Mexicans enery fourth day to the Warres, 1024 Sables the best where, 416.20 Sables, the Farre of the beaft Rona des. Sacampico Prenince in the Weft Indies, the extent of the Inrifdiction, benneds and Rivers 878 Sacotora. 242.60 Sacraments three in the Ruffian Church. Sacrament in Ruffia . in both binds. 217. The Bread fopt, and given with a Spoome. milifuly imitated by the Mexi-CARS, 1040-10. & 1041.40 & m Petil. the Nefturains, 27.10. They put Fat it it in fload of Leaven . ibid. The bigueffe of their Hoaft,

Sacrament of the Communion De-Sacrament in both kinds, 217.40 Sacramenalli Bread , bow made by Sacrifices of old Illand, 669.1. Of Men you'T Secrifices of the Mexicani. 302 1. 20. 10. 1022. 1. The mainer. Tottera The three kinder of things Sacrificed, 1036. Manmer of believe the Beast and Bard. ibid Marie and reasons Sacrificing .: shoir offering of Bhels to the Rivers O'c. 1016 Human Saerlfices, and the mainer. 1027.1038. Fine thouland men Sacrificco in me day, 1999.10 Sacrifices of Peru. 1045 Sacrifedge ordinary of the Ruffin Sacriledge panifor by Death, enen among & Tartars. Sac's the people in Curland; 628. : 10 Sachion the Citie, where, ... 94.40 Saddles of Wood & Singers \$26.1 Saggi, a Tartasia piece of Gold, 82.

fian Emperour,

: pres leanes!

where. Saints in Russia, for every day in the weeke. Salceperilla, where flore and good w : the Cures it does, 959.50 Salmons, pence a piece, 537.1. A great trade for them. Salmons forem Ruffia. 212.50 Salmon and Salmon Peale in Groneland. 847 Salemons Ilands in she West Indies, discourred, their Latitude. distance from Peru, many and great, effected rich. Colours of the people, the chiefest of them named, their greatneffe, diftanen Arc. Salomensky Town in Ruffin where. Salt, naturally made by the Sea, 417 Sale bow made in Ciangalu, 95.1 Salt made of water without boyling, Salt hanging open Horfes that demke of the Riner of Salt, 898. Salt-Lakes in Taurica. 626. co Sal femerates Mestall from Droffe. 950.30. Ufed in Refinings, ibid. Corrects Pepper, 956.1 Saltuelle, a cause of the obbing and flaming of the Sea, 1122.40 Sal pits exceeding rich ones in Tar-Barie, Salesmelberainer, 7103 73.10 Salt the best in the world. sibid. 20 Salistations the fastion in China. 180.10 Samag or Samagi, a great Citie, Samara che Kingdome, 103.50 Samer the Reser, Samarchan, the great Citie, where A VIOL Semercand se Parthiz where Tamerlane was borne, the fituation, 04.441 TO BE ... 3.10. Great Semeron a Citie of Tewes, where, S. 10. Sandant, mbere then germ, 128.40 Sand reguedes Ispon, . 326.30 Sanguis Draconis : where getten, TIMES STATE STATE STATE Carrettade, their Alaumil, mainers, A west Townels . Riches . Wines . Marringer, Rebeiter and Fane-rule, 1955. Their Indgement, Online; Perfort, Diningian, Prinferand the bardineffe of their Var 18 - 12 40 Salamander, we where, 76.40 Salamandere venemen, 1043 10 Souring a Tremwical ofe, of a Ruf-350man, 556 470.20 Samoiedavise propili, 114 250.30 Sayles made of Mas of Palme-Sameids their trade men Rollia with 07.460 Saylers not admitted to be witneffer, Farres, their manage of life, 422. Space Hands , where men bane

er.de.

beads like Dogges & \$46.20. The Ruffe Empereus fends to discouer them, 523. Some Sauran fields and Riner, 632.20 of them fubmit to bim, and pay a Scacati, a Tartarian Lord, **<.20** tribute of Sables, ibid. 50. They Seanza, & Scandia. 620,10 admire the Rullan falbions, and Scarletem reg seft in China, 333 fubmit themfelnes voluntarily. 524.20.30. Their Country made Scallem the City in Perfia, 73.30 the finke of base people, ibid. It is called Siberia, ibid. The descrip-Schetlandia missamed for Hierlandia. 61440 tion of the wayes and Riners out Schallers more martiall then Soulof Ruflia thieber, 525. Their & diers in China. The King more Countrey omilled, ibid. 60. The admifes with them, 390.20. They Ruffes build Towner there, ibid. beate and corrett the Captaines \$26.00 Power diffes deare fold Schooles of China the menner' to them, 534.50.522. Their tents of Skinnes : pitche by their Won Schollers in China get whole books men, 548.20. They carry their Families was them, ibid. Their 339.10 by bears. Schollers, bow encouraged or pani-Language and Religion different Red .. China, 184.50.0 185.1 from the Ruffe, 122.00 Their The great Officers and Gomer-Apparell, transis, and (morfitio nours shofen out of them, 184.60 Samoieds their Babitation, Lau-At the Kings charge, S. janhai se Chi a described. 406 guage,apparell, perfouages, King, co. The iribute st payes the King. manners, Oc. 480.20. Their L. mages, and Sacrifices of Hans, Scin mbet, in Iapon, 324.60 Samoits, the people, fabrett to the Ruffe,447. They ease raw Car-Scintaciman. Salaui the people some ant of Sarmatia, 423. Wby they called themries : Ancient, ibid. They were (hip not the Golden bagge : but Selmes fo. Salaura figuifics Fame or Glory, the the Sunne, dre, Their Sarcaries. Signification innerted by the Itaaparell, and fanageneffe, gener. hans ibid. ned by their Priest, Sapurgan, a Citie m Perfia, 73.10. Sclauomamben first peopled, 662 Pompions the best in the World. Sclauopian sengue of Ruffe. different from that of Poland, 761 Saracens in the Holy-land ourthrowne by the Tartais, and pur-Sclaugnan tongue comes from the 122.TA Ruffian Saracens as Ecmins in Catav fice-Scolds fined to maintaine the dumbe. king Perfian, 276.10 Sarai, a new Towne upon the Volga, Sco. land Ptolomeys error mebe Longunde. Sarmatia the white and the blacks, Scots filb at Island, 800. yeares 413.40. Their old limits, ibid. fine. The name not derined of Alax-S. rippines, to bee interpreted by the G. ceke Church folely, the Rulles Sarrach, the Tertars prefent to the E rost, French King, Scurvey graffe caressbe fcouring, Sartach a Tartarian Prince, bie Scurucy-graffe in Groneland, the Comt, 12. 60. Rubruquis she Frier bis Butaffage to bim, 13.1 bonefit of it at Sea. 847.50 Hu merodement 12, 20,000. Scythian Cherfonelus, which, 633 Saverdayes, the Ruffes eare fleft pon, 218.1. That before Baffer, Scythia extends from Danuhius, They freepe whehe Church, 227 ouen to the East. 8.20. It com-

Sea free.en Sleds. England. them, Sea of Sand faria mir. hid. matters, prehende Tartary, ibis. Sea Guife, a near Swimmar, bu protheir Parents. perties; 879.30 Sea-coale in Cathay, 88.10.6 in ີ ເປກປີ | 2**0,3**ວ marg. Seates of momen knowne from the Sea-coale vapeur fiftes, 496.40 | . mens,

Sea-Water (weetned by the froft, 568 47.60 Sea frozen, and passed ouer wib \$18.20 Sea-kytes, reliening of Portugals. 216.10 Seas blacke , blue and greene, 470. Sea-tickneffe whence canfed, 926 60.070. Sea fomewhere barren, and fomewhere fertile, as the Land, 088 Sen-horice andanger at Mane life, 703.20. Their Hades towned in Sea the mereneffe of it to the Porce ride Zone , tempers the beate, Sea-monsters in Liland, 649.60.0 650. Sonerall deferntions of Sea of Sand by China, 404.40 265.40 See of Pontus, called the great Sea, 1.50.The length of st. thid. Two Proninces of Syncpolis and Cale Sea the meereneffe to it , deffolues Soon and tomperathe winter, 724 20. Frozen to what Laurade Securator good against poplon,98 5 Saa horfe or Morfe deferibed, 476 . 30,40. Then care of their young, and courage to training o ber felfe. Their teeth as good as Inory, i-512.60 Sea coale in Greenland, 705.60 Seale-fishes the chiage sustanance & benefit of Graneland, 817.40. 40. Fishermen clad in Scale skimmet, to descine the Felber, Seales in China, the faftien, 387 pp. Not imprinted in Waxe, but with Inke, ibid. Cut in feneral Scales of China Magalirates, 200. I Kep: as wardy as our Lord Kee-Seale fifb bow bunted for , 416.60 . Their naturall policy to breaks Seale, the Muscouites is the George , 251, 40. Pendent to Sections of the returns of the Spinnith Fleets from the Indies, 859 Servants cheape in China, and why,

104.10 | Sca cooles, bote maters, 892.60 | Sebaftian de Guetaria bie Voyage, Sebastian Cabota, Gonernour for Discourries. 249.20 Sebattian Cabot , bis Mappe at White ball, bu attempt to asfeoner, 807. His course at Seam English Ships; the occasion why Kong themey the Senonth neglected she fecond. Diffenery. Hee is for forth agains by the King of Spaine ; disconers the River of Plate. Made Grand Pilot of Eveland bie Penfien, 808 Sehaite the City, in Armenia the : leffe :-Sebatto2 or Sebatte, the Regall Citrain Armenia : be loffe: 69.30 Secanunga, the true name of Groneland, Secretaries of Townes in Ruffia. 425.50. Their Amberity, 426. Segin a City of Cathay, and a Ne-Segouia the New in the West Indies, its lurifdilion , Villages, Parts, &c. Selte-upholder, a Tytle of the Ruffran Empereurs. Selencia she Cay, new Mohit. 110 Selizure a Caftle, Sentence of buffice gimes by the King of China, the furnes at large 197.0.194.00 Sentence the ofnall one in China. is whoppeny; 372.50 Septungelima Sunday is the Eafter to the Armeniana Sepulchres of the Chim Kings vi-Sepulchres of the Chinois, 292 Seres the people of Cataya the greater, whomee came the Serieum or Sergeants at Armes in China, 300 Sericum or Silke, whence derined, Serpents delicate meate where, 976 Serpents demouring whole Stagges, 410.40. A tale of one of them, Serpents nearified in the Mexican Kinga Court, 1129.1. Fed mith mans flesh, Serpence why the Mexicans feare them mes. 1043.10

395.1 Seruants in Ruffia billed , and not

Samee Iles in Groneland, 828.20

Their Lanuade, and Longitude

from Langitude; with the Viria-

tion of the Compaffe and Thies,

30

6.10

answered for Seruice in the Mother tonome. 217 40. 0 2 29.10 Service in the Mother tongue, 217 40. Before day light in Ruffia, 218.10 Seueria a Ruffian Promince, 756 Scuerity tan much of it breedinglett of authority, 186.20 Sexes undistinguished by Apparell, Seylerach, ftrange Birds that gine Intelligence of the Enemies upproach. 126,60 Seynam Iland. 212.20 Shalcan Tartars, bi ibr. Cafpian Sea, 442. Necroto Altracan & Media, 442.50 Shallownes, a fure token of Land 201-10 Shambles of mans fleft, where, 890 Shar . she Kingdome of the Iron King, 800. 10. Rich in Diamonde, where, ibid. Sharke filbes denouredrong bornes. anything, fmell from for to land. and one on land for their pray. Their quicknes 910. 50.60. How troubled with she Rambos.

they are good meine, 987-40,50 Shoun getbrade thefe, vied by the Russiano Sheepe of India their profitablenes, 968 son Delargemin refer for comages , vfages afeten, ib ir anditories ben? scibid o 969 Sheepe m the Indies ofth for bealt, of entinge.): 990.10.957.6 Sheencof Gold and Silver to Peru. Liggin Lis of the . Sheepe facrificed m P ru, 1045 Shoepe w higge as edfes, 71.10 Shanmatten that bone 100000. . Sharpe in the West Indies, and yes Sheepe weighing 80. pounds, 237 Sheepe with most wiebtie horner.

Sharke filhes described, bom taken.

Sheromogula the Countrey, where, 798.40 Shifts of the Indians to paffe Rimers, 888.60. & 934 40,50 Shin-beating for debays 1434130 Ships a thoufand in one River, 295

74-30

Shipping of China, for pag. 173. . ST4.06. Shippingon the freshmarer, as me | Siegnia the China Sett : the opiniwith the Romal Pare is it is a state of the Romal Pare is it is the state of the Romal Pare is it is it is a state of the Romal Pare is it is it is a state of the Romal Pare is it is a state of the Romal Pare is it is a state of the Romal Pare is it is a state of the Romal Pare is it is a state of the Romal Pare is it is a state of the Romal Pare is it is a state of the Romal Pare is it is a state of the Romal Pare is it is a state of the Romal Pare is it is a state of the Romal Pare is it is a state of the Romal Pare is it is a state of the Romal Pare is a sta

Shipping of India described, 102.1 Ships fewed with Ofters, 628.40 Ship a glorious one, 349.30. 6 354 Sinps firangely made in Ormuz, 71 Ships with one fayle, 97.20 Saips of Leather of Ofers , 692 Ships sulked with Mans greafe by - she Spaniards se the Indies. Simps of the Spaniards accounted Gods of the Agre with Temples on their backer g by the Indians. Ships, people dwelling in them 262 10. As weary at on the Land. Ships in Tartary with four e mafts, and nine Sayles apiece, 68.20 Sharoan Citiem Catay, 801.1. De-Scribed. Shirokalga City in Catay; 800.20 Shirts she Chinais weare not, 394 Shoes of Silke in Ching 367. 1 Shoes of Sale embroydered, 394.40 A Shoemaker a Christian platet son bis makeya, po. io. Hat the she should af Monaster; bid. Shoes of Rugge and Felt, 503.60 Shooting, the prize for it, 201140 Shorne why Monkes are, 448.60 Shorland Hes, wheir Alustude sas . Variation of the Compaffe there, 367.30 Palfe fet downe intbe 1.1 " 4 596 Semeard Shoulder bones of Sheepe dinthed chy, 238.10. Found true, bid. Shagano, a Raser, 243220

Mynes of the Indies, 944. How the richhoffe of the Ure is difeerned by the colour, 947.20. Manner of refinedgit, and working it into barres, the triall and allay: Stant the Kingdone, called Sorriau, Sam the King walked the Sornau of Sinntu three yeares befreged by the Sindicin, the City. Tartars, 96.60. Taken, ... 29.1 Siberia, se the Samoreds Courses. \$24.50. See Samoieds : penquered by the Rulle, 439.20.6 THO " ... THE 1743.I Sibierskie, Samoeds on the Ob, ' w red f.r . . Sicke new in Tartary charmed Molthe, and a frange tale of thus 44 Siras ia Perlia. is a sinue ol∕ sés . Sirtope very fiveet, made of the fap Sioke wir frangled upon cuffome of a wee; 1 -410 087.20 Sidon deller gulbythe Tartanit 27 Synopolis a Promince in the Sea of Ponetrey 60, Under the Turks, ibid. The distance flow Con-Asriemople, der andiene '3 m all the world 30 ms, 397. 50. Stone tree in some symptotic and some symptotic Romith Execution Syrian

Syrian

graced, 39° . 1. Their Colledge. Sigisfrund the third King of Paland , breakes his league with Ruia, an affits an impofter to get the Crowne , 766.767, But denies it, ibid. Affitts another Demetrius, 770. His claime & tale to Sweden, 770.50. Enters Ruifia with a bage Army, ibid. Reiette Demetrius, 779. Takes in Moleo and Sinolensko. 780 Silke the abundance of it in China, 380. 20. They bene fore and good, Jes connor dreffe it well. Silke much growes in the West In-873.874 Silke-wormer their ordering in China, 411,20. What winde is good or bad for them in the Indies, 526.40. Remued by banging under (beldrens armes, 442.50 Siluer mbere, 255.20,30. 6 256 Silver Myne in Groneland, 824 20. 6 520. 40. Nothing worth. Silver miede in Brickes, 801.50. .. The Chinois finder to make it. Silver Images franding abroad, vnstanche, 411.1 Silver, why the second of Metals, O pieces or vemes, Manner of refinings, with Aire , Bellowes, or Quickefilmer : the chiefe Silner

the Etigines to doest, 95% Sindinfu the Countrey and Citie,90 Singhan the Mether City of Scian-Singui , is the Cay of the Earth, the bugeneffs of it, 97.50 Sio, or Chio, the Partialthite of Conftantinople remound this ther, 444.40. And from Sio to 445.30

trade there, 548.30 Sliding upon the Ice with bones like Sparres. 33.50 Sluttery a Fast-breaker, 516.20 Smiths Bay, Poles, 780, 10. Burnt to the

the Spaniards,

owne fernstudes .

Warre weare red Caps, 183.10

They carry Corne 1000, miles.

214.10. They go post, 220. Their

Beed, 226.10. Their farmiture,

ibid. Not veed in Summer, 230

30. Called Telegas, 242.50 Sleds in Ruffia, a great bonour to be

taken up into a Noblemans.

\$23.20. Some drawne by Dogs,

Sleda, an eafie and commedious tra-

Slobatia a Towne in Mezen, 547

40. The elenation, ibid. The

Sleds much v fed in Ruffia, 219.50

Ø 194.40

751.20

Syrian tong ne vied by the Neftoriorowed. 780.60 ans in Cathaya. Snakes worfbippenin Lithuania, a Sernames few in China, de. 394 flory of that. 629.46 Smefelsneffe Promontory in Eaft-Svenames, not abone 300. in all Ifland. China, 367. 40. All of one fil-Snælandia, a name of Island, 654 lable, ibid. None marries any of bis owne Syrname, 367.50 Snow extreme. Skerlengers dispeople Gronelani, Snow higher then the Honfe , 448 Skialfands. a Bay in North Illand. Snowes fall in the end of Aprill; in 654.30 Tartary: Skins of three men come off , by ea-Snow in August in Greenland. ting the Liner of a Beare , 506 727.30.0 250.30 Snow haftens the Spring, 415.10 Skule of the Indians extreme thicke Snow prefernes from putrefaction, and hard, 993.1. \$ 994.10 Skuls fold := Chins, and mby, 271 647.20 Snorting in their fleepes offenfine to the Tartars. 82.60 Skumme of the water eaten for Sodome # Ruffia. meate in Mexico, 3222-10 Sogomamber-Can, the Godof the Skutineffe in Norway, 707.20 Tartarian Idely 8 2. 20. The first The Latitude Variation and De-Idol-founder. chnation there,716. 10,20. How Soeus abeaft in Tarcary. the land yeth about it, dec. 720 Som the River. 525.40 Solanga, a Tarcarian people, 23 Slaves to the Tartars, their miferse, 641. The Tartars earnestnesse to Soldala she Citie, where, 2. Greeke redeeme bie owne fubietts, 643

Aukentbere,9.50. It is Chriften, Slaves of Scythia rebelling servified Soldan of E-ypt sucribrowns by with the fight of their Mafters Christians and Tartars, 119 Slaves the Indians are no longer to Soldan of Turkey bis Countre, 50 Slaves of Peru , pleafed with their Soldini, Christians in Coralme of the Greeke Church, 109.40 1056.50 Slauery in Ruffia to Creditors, 434 Solinas the Riner in the West Indies, the distance from the Equi-Slauery in China, bow it comes, 182 noitiall. 891.40 50. Thoje that are taken in

Soma a measure in China, 98.50 Soncara in Perfia, Sonne of the Sun, the King of Chinace file, 254.50. & 256.1 Sonne factificed for the Fathers beaub, 1037.20. & 1042.20 Soothlayers in Tartary , their Maeicalltrickes, 81. 1. Their Maneating and Sacrifices to their I. dols,81.10, Their Monafteries,

Shaumes, Abstinence. Habits. and other Customer, 81.10,20, Some of traine Orle. Sorcery of foure Swords in Tarta-· fila. 22.10 Sorcery of the lewes , aftery of u,

Sorceries of the West Indians. 1043.60. Things done farre off, renealed by them , ibid. And things left , and to come, 1044 Smolensko in Rutha saken su by she | Sorcerer of Mexico surnes himfelfe into Brange Shapes : the Story of

bim, 1017.40. And fo in Peru, Saint Sorkis the greatest Armenian Saint. Sortaffus, a Tartarian Village, 033 Souldiers all Gentlemen in Ruffia.

435.20. Wad their Children allo ibid. Lande allowed them. The inconnentence of That, ibid. How kept from Rebellion, 426.1 Souldiers trete refetted in China! 169,40

Souldiers of Mexico their Prayer; 1087.1 South Pole: but bno fixed Starre to markett, at the North bath, 918

South Sea which 8 , 8. 1. The lenerall courfes of Nanigation in it, ibid. How to bee manigated.

South Sea : the chbing and flowing there, the destance from the North Soule the Chinois esisten of it. 201 go. The Tartars opinion of it, 88

Soules immortality the Chinois epinion of st, Soule of the World.

Soules immertality acknowledged by the Indians, 1029.10 Soules immortality and transmitra-Soyles of the West Indies, the ve-

raties 1935. Where the bett are. 936.1.937.10 Spean in Perfia. Spaniards kell 20000. Chinois, 200 40. And makes Galley-flanes of

therest, ibid. They offer a league to the Chinois. 310.40 Spaniards based in the Philippi-Spaniards bragger , and their

falfe Sea Cards, 843. 20.848 Spaniards in Peru effeemed as men

fent from God : called Viraco-1061.40 Spaniards perfidionfly cruell in Mexico, 1023. They are admitted into the City, they ferfe on the King, are besieged by the Indians to the Caftle 1022. Driven out. and flame , 1024. Their foolift be tufe of being affisted by Me. with the Indians, 1024. 1. Their belpes and binderances in winning and cornerting the Indians, 1025 & 1036.10. Diuers of them (aereficed in Mexico, 1029. co. Of

466.40 Spanish plants threw better in India and the Indian worfe in Spaine, 960.961 Spanith Chroniclers curiosa rather

to fet downe the Names of their oppe Nation Aluenturers in the Indies, then of the Beafts, Birds, Spanish reports of a Vision, 28;

Spiwnes of Fiftes taken, and bred in Citternes in China, 179.10 Speake a man did, after bis beart 1039.60 Spelling by Strings, Knots, and Colour en Feru, as we do by Letters,

1 1053.30 Sperma Ceti. 710.20 Sperma Cari, or Permafitie, where gotten, 471. le lyes inche it bales

ibid. Sphere - China, 346.20 Spices of China, Spice the forts and fore in the Mo

luccas and Philippina's, 902 bring them from the Molucas inte Spaine, 900,10

Spidars as big ge at a Sparrow, full of their Cobmeb Lapne, 976, 10 Spirits fet oner diners things in China, 240-cel

Spitsbergen, & Greenland, 463 Spodio and Turia, where and how

Spoone, the Ruffian Webilety weare at their Girdle. 459.40 Spots blacke feene wishe via lact.,

Spring of water, which converts the Selfointa a ftone , kile shofe that dring of 11, 894.20, Neather Spring conversed into white Salt

Spring of fresh water in the fea,997 30. On the top of a bot Spring,

Springs of Senerall vertues, 933.20 On Some congealing its owne watez into ftone. Others fending forth Puch. Others becomming good Sale. Some good for the French Paxe, andmby, Another furning out smoke, some of the Colours of Inke or Bloud, 933 Spring-tydes when, 930.1 Ruffia,

then conquest of Mexico, fee | Spring why it comes on a Sudden in very cold Compenses, 1415.10 Squirrel, that fire. 1.814. Stadin Norway, . 18.7be Lanude.

Staffe falling , this way or that way. Why of old accounted a direction,

Stanfew barbahr where, 212-10 Starres begotten of the Gods, 274 20. They die when Starres falls ibid. Senerall Stars worthspeed by the Mexicans:their edde sone ceis of them, 1027.40. More and greater in our Notsberne Heanens, then in the Indies, 918

Starres continually feene in the day time where and when, 496,50 Start Iland one of the Otheres 810.10.The latitude.

States Iland, 478.10.0.481.30 Many Hares there, ibis. The Sea frozen there, 482-10 Stealing one of the eight Commandemonts among the Tartais,447

Stealing bow punified amongs? them. 770020 Streic-glaffes, where made, 72 Siephanouetia, or I.H. the chiefe Towns of Walachia, ... 653.1 Sticks, inflead of mease-forkes, 180 Swek-fish inflead of Money, 616 Stone in Groneland, to make pars,

which the fire cannot burt, 520.1 Stones mighty ones in a Bridge 294 Stones round and bollow, and fowles

banged in them Scone-worke, of the Indians, 1056 1.10 Stones caft out of burning Mountames in Groneland, 610.40

. They make Lime and walls indif-Coluble. Stone, a difeafe, polinowne in China.

291.50 Stone (Difeafe) a remedy for it. 988.20. China good for it, 953

Stones medicinable for the Spleene, Milt, Kidneyes and Flixe, where, 867.50

Storax where it growes, 959.40 Stoues in Illand, the manner, 663.1 And in Groneland, 651.40 Strangers made Slaves in Tartary, Strangers not willingly suffered in Strangets provided apainft in Chi. na. 197.20, Wby How admitted inte China , 268. 10. The enfrome of China, concerning them, 11.0.5

Strangers in China Bine a Gonera nour 1919.50. Why fo fasted Strangers of what fores are att. word China, 399. Being once in must not ges out againe

Stratageme a fine meet differn Tarrare, 102.40. Insibet of theirs to finde the may in the daks, Stratageme of the Tartais against the Soldan, 122.60

Strategemes of the Crim Tartais open whe Hungarians , and in Of Demetrius the Ruffin to rayfo a fiege, 757110. Of the Spadarke, vescene to their Enemies. 983.20.Of the Mexicans, 1016 50. of prety flory boon that.

Streams of Rivers, fill above, and Swift at the bottome, 1056.30 Serentspinned, and not paned, 419

Streight of land but eight leagues betweene the North and South Seas, Streights Magellane are not Strengber but broken llands. Streights of Florida, but imagi-

Streight of Mecca, or the Red Sea, 252.50. in marg. Stromo one of the Handrof Fatte,

Students free from tribute, 381 Sturgeons flore and cheape in Rui-

231.10.0 233.1,30 Style of she Ruffian Emperour, bis and his Subietts pride in it. Quarrels for not repeating it all.

421.40,50 Style ridiculous of the great Chans Letters, 45.50.6 c. 6 46 Style of the King of China, 254 40 # 256.1. # 258.40. # 260

Su, in Tartarian is water! Subo the Iland, 285.50. Christian.

Sucana Riner. Succuir : be City described. 164.20 Suceu m China, anather Venice, 343.10. Described. 433-10 Sucheo m China , the incredible

THE TABLE

trading there, and tribute it | Sunne seene both night and day in Suem & Hiberi , the people in Tare taria, not fubiett to the Tartars. Sugar cheape in China, 365.10. & great ftores Sugar-hout sin China, 270,20 Sugar bowrefined, 101.30 Sugar-canes first carried to the West Indies Suiskoy the Ruffe, takes part againft Demesenas the Impofter, to taken and pardonedby bim, 757.40 Conspiras meninti Demetrius, & kils bim, 763.10. His Oration to the Lards, b: a thofen Emperour of Ruffiz, 763.50 764.40. His care of the English, ibi ! Har let.

ters to King lames, defershing his Pradecellours Acts, 765. Other missings of bitmame, ibid in mar. gine. Inmighes againft the King of Poland , ibid. & 766.767. Cals bimfolfe Vauls Euano-Wich, 769.10. Crowned, ibid. Chofen by lot, and the manner of st. 769.60. Makes away the Nobilay, and confults with Watches. Sonds an Embaffage into Poland to complaine, and threaten. Atded by the English and Sweden. 770. 0 771. A second Impostor De netrius fit up againft bim., 770. Forfaken, be remances the Empire, it given into the bands of the Pole , who imprifous him in

· Sumerkent, ar Aftracan, the Village vers Volga, in a6. degrees of lattitude 48. marg. Sumhepadan a Rmer. Summer and winter when they be.

Poland, where he dyes,

Sumbrero'es vied in China, 394.

gime and end, in Bratill, 903 Summer and Autumne not difcernable in the Hands of Barlouente and why. 078.10

Sanne and Moone vied for Engfignes by the Tattars . 82.1.40 Sunne u the Chinois chiefe D:117, 148.30. The King flites bimfelfe Lord of the World, and Child of the Sanne, 1 52.50. The Ceremenies performed to st by the Chinois before their Feafti, 302.20 Sunne worfkroped in Groneland. 820.10. Adored by the Maxicans, 1027. 10. Prettly demed by an Indian, 1028. 40, His Image,

Noua Zemola, where it beginnes 10 doc fo. unne fine Degrees, 35. Minutes high, at midnight, \$74. 6 fenen degrees bieb, in what beigth of

the Pole, \$75.20. 6 576.40.5 Sunne going downe North, andrifing North North-east, where and when

Sunne but intle abone the Horizon in Winter, where and when, 494 20.70. Where u refeth and fettetb there, ibid. When it appeared no more there, ibid. The Moone after that feene continually, ibid. When the Sunne began to appeare againe, 499 60. A Philosophicall discourse upon it, Sunnes three & foure Raine-bowe. at once Spoliffan in Perfia.

Supererrogation, beleeved in (h -Superstitious Religion best igrees with tyrannicall gonernment, 422

Surgout Towns open the River Obe what Nations trade this ther, 552. 10. The Ruffian Emperours Customes of Merchants there for one years, ibi-

Surpleffe, the Priefte in Ruffia. minested with it at their Ordinatim , 447. 50. And worne in Service time at Church , 448 Swallowes found in the bottome of the Sea, which resined at the fire, 626.1

Swe len Villanage, 631.10. They Selleber Tenants Danghters for Swifenesse admirable in some Tar-Swords of wood with edges of flut.

1129. 40. Their frength and making, Sword-fith deferibed, 988.30

Abab amightio River, 526 Tabafco Pronince in the West Indies, the tribute of Cacao paid by the Indians there to the Spaniards : places there , 876 Tabetnaculo , the tree yeelding

Gumme : the vife of that

864.50 Tabin Point in Tartaria tomaraes Catha , 478. 1. The diffance from Nous Zamble. Tables of things to be fold hung out. in Clima,

Tables in China the fashion, 392.1 vid. Banquets : midit the chiefelt place. Tables of bonour in China, 329

Table of Gold , reverenced , 205 Tadde Bond bis doings in Island, Taes Riner falles into Obi, 546

Taicofoma what in Iaponian, 325 Taidu, the new Name of the Citie

Cambalu in Tartary. The bigneffe, 83.40. The description of it, and the twelne Suburbs, ibid. Tainfu the Kingdome, 39.10
Taking of leane, the fashion in Chi-Talas, or Chincitalas a City in Tar-

Tale of a Pronince in Cathava. where men ener continue at the fame age, 34.10 Tales of the Tartarian Sorcerers,

Talguth Kingdome , betwirt Mugalla and Bactria. Talleyes where vied, Tallow flore transported out of Ruffia , and the Reafon , 416

Tam, a Tartarian Phylicke for the bead. Tambur , King of Cathay, 797

Tame, the naturall Name of Chi-Tamen, why China was fo called,

Tamegines (or Chinois) the Etvmon. Tamerlane an excellent Scholler. 140.50. Hu White, Red, and Blacke Tents , a Fable, 141.1. His Father Og borne sn Sichetay or Parthia, his person deforibed. He was lame , the fienification of his Name, 141.10 20,30. Cr. His firft Battleagainft the Mulcourtes : the order of it, ibidem. His wound receinedin it, and the Victory. 142. 1 10. His Marriage with the Great Chans Dangbier, 142.

40. He was of all Religions, ibid.

Tamerlane turnes backe to fight with him., 144. 50. Axalla, a Ge. uois one of Tamerlanes Captaynes, takes Calix Prifo-

Tametlanes Victory. Tamerlane pardons Cathava, 145 10. Gets the orinion of Clemency, ibid. Hee is faluted Emperour by bis Souldiers, bilem. & 146, 20. His Oration to bis Army, and returne towardes Cina , 146.20, His March and comming to his Rendezuous. ibid. Hee games a Lord Marcher of China to bis party, 146 60. That Lords Oration unio Tamerlane, Hee offers to lead fifty thousand Tartars into Cin-11a besides the wall, 147.10,20. e. Calibes adusce up n the

Tamerlane keepes his owne reso'ntion feeret, 147.60. Hee delsuers fifty thoufand Men to the Prince of Thanais and the Chinois Lord, to paffe the Moun-taynes, whileft himfelfe and his Army make shew of assaulting the wall . 148, 10. The Chimais overthrowne, and the wall wonne at once, 148.30. The Chinois affrightment, and new

Tamerlane rewardes the Chinois Lord , and beat s downe the wall, ihid. Makes Axalla Generall of the Foote, 149. 1. O mar great March of fixty miles a day,

Tamerlane advancetb with bis Armie further up the Countrey. ibid. Beleavers the Cuie Paguintou, 149.10. The Countrey thereabouts renolts to bim, ibid. Axalla winnes a Suburb of Paguinfou, the forte of the Towne, ibid. Battered, the wall wonne and lodged upon by the Tartars, 150.1. The Gonernour flame. The Towne yeelding, bath faire quarter giuen it, 150. 10. Axalla refuses the Gonernment, the Prince of Thanais accepts st. with the Title of Uice-Roy, ibidem. The Chinois Armie aduances the Golden Magnificenee of it.

His Armie against China, 142 | Tamerlane chooses the place of battell. His order, 1 50.40, 50,00c. The Chinois deforderly March, 151.20.The fight.

Tamerlanes Vauntguard ouerthrowne. Odmar re-enforces the fight, 141.40. Axalla and Tamerlane preffe upon the King of Chinois Guards, wound him and take bim Prisoner. The Victory, 152, 1,10, The King of Chinos Brother rallees (ome Horfe together. Hee takes in Pannibu. The Modesty of Tamerlane, and the proude Speech of the King of China to Tamerline , 152. 40. The Chinois fertifies Quantoutu. 185.1. Which Tamerlane befieges. The Chinois thinker to reliene it by a Bridge of Boates , which the Tartars burne with Wild Fire, and kill fiftie thousand Enemies, 153. 20, 30. The Towne is reelded. ibid. A Peace treated and concluded betweene Tamerlane and the Chinois, the conditions, 154.1, 10. 20. 20. ere. The bounds of Tamerlanes Conquests, Hee commands one God to bee wor-Songed. He returnes home, 154. 50. Hee boneurs and rewardes Axalla, and is welcommed bome by the Great Chan, at Camba. 155.10,20 Tamerlane admifes Briazet the Great Turke, to forbeare medling with Greece, 155. His no-

table Saying, and Dreame, bis preparations against the Turke. 156. 1. 10. His March by Molcouie so Trepilond and Georgia, amerlane fill beginnes with Prayers , ibid. Hu Martiall Discipline , ibid. Hee muffers 200000. Horfe and 500000. Poste, 156. 50, 60. Hu Rendeznous at Gianich, 157.1. His Stratagem to delude Baiazet, ibid. What Tamerlane vied toreade before a Battle, \$ 57.40 The Armies meete , bus directions for the fight, shid. Hee over expects the charge, 148.30. The Victory gotten by bu owne Wifdome, ibid. 60. The number of the flame, 159.1. He gets Baizzeta Children, 159.30. Sends Bajazets Sword to the Great Chan, 160.10. His Modesti and demeanour after Victorie, Heereturnes to Samarcand, 160 30. Hu Vow to God. Hu fudie to encrease the place of his Birth , 160.50. Rewardes bie Souldiers . 161. 1. Gines new Conditions of Peace to the Chinois, Buries the Great Chan.

161.20 Tamerlane made Chiefe Emaca rour of the Tartars, 161. 40 Would have his Sonne goe barebeaded and why, 162.20. His notable Sayings concerning bis Successions , and bis owne Recreations,162.40,50. He publikely fits in Instice thrice a Weeke, 163.50. Seldome changed his Sernante , ibidem. His death

Tanais the Riner, dimideth Alia frem Europe , 11.40, Breath of it , 11. 60. It is the limit of the East part of Ruffiz., 12. 1. The bead of it. ibid. The length of it, It fals ente the Enxing See, ibid. Rubruquis Errour concerning st, 12.1. in margine.

Tanais bead in the Ripl man Mountagnes, Tanais er Don, parts Europe from Alia falls mes Micoris,415.40 Paffage by it to Constantinople. Tanais called the Don, 233.10.

Falls into the Euxine, ibidem. Whereabouts, 2.10. 0 12.1 Tanauquir & Riser, 255.1. Portugals fight wub the Preats there.

Taniampura in Iaus, 253.40 Tandoia, the Ile, 285. 10. And Catie. Tangarruan the Hand, 208.40.

Tanguth the Proumes, where, 22. Tanning with Milke thicked and falted, in Tartary, ... Tapers borne by condemned cer-

Taprobana the Iland, now called Zeilan or Celan, Tarremade of the Fir-tree,417.40

Taria the Kingdome, whence the three Kings or Wifemen came to worfbip our Sauwur, 109. Hence the Tarcars precend to innade Christendome to fetch home thois three Kings from Culkin. Their Race are not Idolaters but Chrifians , ibid. Tartar Emperour married a Daughter of theirs, 116.50. 6 117.40 Tartaria , the Carriages vied there, 2. 50. And, 10. 40. None comes to their Prince without a Prefent, 2.60. 69.

Tartars their true and naturall place

of beginning, 15.10 Tartars, the vulgar Errour concerming their Originall, 60.40. & in margine . & 61.30. They innade Poland, Boliemia and Hangarie, and when, 60.60. 6 61.1,10. The Cruiado preacht against them. , 61.1. Fafting, Prayer and Alme Ageds done againft them. Tartars mbabu Scythia, 3.30

Confine upon Perfiz, 74. 6 75 Tartars Dominions in Perfia, 78

79. On both fides the Danue

Tattars of the Eaft , the wames of their Countries, 798.1. in marg. Betweet Ruffia and Cathay. Their Countries , and fowerall Dukes, Tartars, the beginning of their

Reigne, & their feure Brethren,

Tartars beyond the Riner Viltula, their Invendes upon Polarid, 629 50. Their Customer, Mahome-Tattars hold shemfelnes Lords of the

World, 59.50. & 64. 30. They command the Pope to doe perfo. nall bomage to them, 59.40. Their fatall Expedition, and the miraculant way left them by the Sea, 112,60. & 113.1. They fend three Armies to conquer Afia , 113.40. Ouerrame the Georgians, 113.40. ertudebe Turkes, 1341. And India the Leffe, 114.40. And Perfia, 116 1. And Baldach, 116.20. And Aleppo,

117.1 Tartars their Original, 77-30 Their Princes descents, 78.10 Their first Habitations, 111.10 Why they will bee called Moal, and not Tartars,

\$7.20 Tartars, their marfare, 79.10. The Officers of their Armet, their promisens, numbers, and borfes,

Tartars their Bowes, 61.40. Stronger in the ormes then others, ibid. Excellent Archers, 63.10. 6.64.50. Their flanghens made in Comming and of the Ruthenians and Hungarians , 61.40,50. The Hungarians require aide against them, 61.60. They dinide their Army into three parts, 62.1 Their perfons described, 62.10.5 64,40. Their dispositions,64-30

Tartars paffe Rivers upon Skinnes Sewed together, and blowne full of wind, 62-10. How they line in the warres, 62.10. Their Spice in Christendonse , 62.30. The Pope suffects them fer up by the Emperour, 63.10. The Emperour Bares up Christendome against

artars, the Civill warres between them, 117.40. They and the Christians fall out in the Holy Land, 117. 50. Beaten out of the Holy Land by the Saracens, 117.60. The Soldan of Agypt foweth discord amongst the Tar-

Fartars bane Small flore of Armanry 48.40. W.bar they beca 48 Tartare Enfignes, are the Smine

and Moone, 8244,40. And Ger-... falcon Two Tartars energbranne, 60, 20

When shey brake out , ibid. I. Ther Conquests in Europe, 60 50. They flee from the Christian Army, 64 t. Their Founders shoy call Gods , 64.30. And Sommes of God, 19 50. Their Fe-Smalle for them , 64.30. The Suddenne Je of their Expeditions. 64:50. Their refolutions, ibid. Their pretences to imade Chris Rendome, 64.60. 0 65.1. Defrated neere Damafeus, by ope ning the Sluces, 124.30.40. Tarters their Manners and Ceremonies of Drinking and Feasts, 7.30,40, 50 de And 39.20. Thrifiy in Food and Rayment, 52 20. Este no Swines fleb, 15.50 Ave Man-caters, 119.10. Their

windsdryed flets still. Their Cocker, 5.20. Their Feafis, 5. 10. Their Slaves will dine with puddlewater, 6,20. Their mens Apparell , 6.20; 6:40. They weare swo gomes as once, 6.30 Their womens Apparell, 6.60.0 7. 20. They walnut them Ap parell, 7.20. How they cat their

feeding upon Carrion, 5.10. Ana

baire. Fattars fhane their upper-lips and warra with the Perlians, for not doing fo , 239. 40. Influe in one of them., 240. Tartars true ones, 107.1. Their impudent begging of Strangers , 8. 40. & 9. 30. Their Ingratitude . 9. 1. They hold themfelnes Lords of all Men. 9. 1. They are bold theener; 10. 40. Their beastlineffe, 11

Tartars dealing with Tranellers, 25. 40. Their Pride, 26:1. They bebeld the Bare footed Fryars , as they had beene Monsters , 26, 20. Their lealonfie of Strangerr, 27.30 Their Apparell, Armer, Va-lours, Obedience, and Religion , 78: 50. de. Their Idell Natigat, ibid. Then Honfes, described

Tartars finke a forreigne , 169 themselves with blond, and wby, ibid. Their Habir, 170. 30. Their manner of builting, 6.

Tartars confesse nothing by torming , ibid. Their (Putities where they conquer, 61.20. &

Cartarians Cake it ill , of Their Giftibee not accepted 46.40.
Their Refigion described 88.
40. Their Castomes ibidem. Their Religion, Marriages, Warfare, Hospitality, Gc. Deferibed , 127. 1, 10, 20. &c. Defire much , to bane Men Their Queffiens concerning France , '28. 10. They life their right Hands of whome they aske purden, 28.30. Den fire to dye the death of Chris stians, 42. 40. They confessa one God 43.1. Their Opinion of the Christians down contray to the Seriptorer , ibidem. Though Christined , at will not bee called Clrissians 4. 40. Tangent to worshippe the Crosse, 31. 40. 32, 1,60. Their Sicklemen visited, 8.30. How washed, why, ibidem. Their Monthity for their Priends

8. 10. Their Sepalchres, ibi-Tartars hanges of Felt , are to represent their dead Priendes, and not God , 22. 30. Their Marriages and what Dekeeps , 7. 40. Their Wildowet dos not Marrie ; and

wby . 7.40. The Bridgroome forces has wife, Tartarian wines moft faithfull, 73 20. Obedient and industrions, 78 30,40. Their Marriages. 78. 20.30. They marry their dead children that dre unmarried, 79.1 . Their women fat and flat no fed beld faireft, 7.20. They greafe their faces, ibid. And annorms shem with blacke Orntment 9.40. They lye not in , after Child-birth, ibid. They ride astride . ibid. Their workes and Duties to milke Kowes, as the mens is . to milke the Mares and to churne Colmos,7.20,30. Their flattifbnes,

Tartarian Ladies Shanen to the ebult. Tartars their general Rules,443 I. Their Lawes and Instice. 7. 60, What effences punifbt with

Tartars bow they choofe their Emperents, 58.50. Princes chiefe Palace at Ciangamur, 80.

Tartarian Courts their Order. and then langi, 28.60.5.20. Three fenerall Princes of them, are fubielt to their Great Chan, 126. 10. His Residence in Cathay, at long, or lons. The power of thefe Princes, 126.20. Tartarian Princes fit upon beds, 27

Tartarian Princes kespe correspon

Tartars reserence to sheir Princes Court , 40. 1. They get their victories under colour of peace.

Tartarians meete their Princes mef feners with Bread and Drinke, as Metchiledecke did Abraham, or at the Germanes des Ambaffadours, 20. 1. They go finging before them , 20, 40. Subsetts treade not on the Princes threfbold. 17.1. 4 31430. Rubruquis companion kept Prefaner for flumbling at the 31.40. O

Tartarian Princes Fleete of fifteene thousand Sayle, where Tartars Fuftian letters to the Pope.

c8.20

Tartars, twelve Mafters of Re-84.40 Tartars, the renemnes of the rich, fribed,

for drinke, 5.50. Oc. And for 1 Bread . 6.1. Their strucking with Rammes and skins, 6.1. & with apparell, 10.20 Tarrars trade for Furres into Siberia. e 26. 10

Tarrars yeare becommes February, the first, 84.30 Tartarian dayes post, is threefcore and foure miles English, 53.40 & in margine. Tararians questions about : Popifb

Images. 70/50 Tartars admirable sentence upon the negligent Califa , 70. Tarrare.

The colour of their Ensienes, 478

I. Manner of embattelling, ibid. Scaling Ladders, and warlike Engines, Tartarian Complements , 278.50

& 279.1. State of their Campe Royall, 279.1. Their Kings State, and Tributary Kings, 270.20. His Habit Royal, ibid. His wondring at the bignesse of the World , ibid. They retire out of China, 280.16. Then Monkes and Names Chaffinie, 281.10. Their Opinion of the

Burial place , .281.20. Their theeneries in the Borders 214 60. Their Cuftome to ceafe upon the Goods of Strangers doncafed, 313. & 316. 10. Wben They conquered China; bow long they beld it, and how expel-

Referration, ibid. Their Kings

376.20 led. See. Tartars, vide Crim Tartars. Nagayan Tartars , Mordwit Tartars, Chicaice Tarears & Che-

remife Tartarts, &c. Tatami, are Iaponian Mass, 326

Taurica Chersonelus, now Caffaria, faurica Cherfonefus deferibed, from pag. 6 22. Unto 643. The lenesh of the banke, 676.1. The forle, 636250. The Senfons, Sorle Bounds, Original, Princes, dre. 637. Part belongs to the Turke, and part to the Tar-

Taurinum she Citie, where, 49 95,20 | Tauris in Perfia, the Merchandife of H. Taute and Manfe, Handers of Ca-34.10 thaya, . .

Tayth Cars in Catay, 800.50. De-

Tebeth the Pronince, now a Wile derselle, 90.20. How Trawellers paffe st , ibid. They defire Strangers to take their Daughters Mayden-beads, 90 40. They are great Negromancers , 90. 60. And 91

Tebet, a Tartarian people, that for pitty eate their Dead Parents, 23. 1. They make Cups of their Scalles , 23. 10, 30. They have much Gold , 23.

Teeth concred with Gold . 92 Teeth , the fame of Quick-filner makes them fall out.

Telegas, or Wag gons in the Ruff an. Temple of the Sun in the Indies. 802.60. Connerted mto a Monaftery, 895.60 Temple and Status eretted to a Go-

Temple, a most huge one, 281 1. Wubgilded Steeples, 265.6 Temples of Peru . 1022. Of Me.

xico described, 1933. & 1132 Temples of Mexico described,

113 1490. Their Municon kept in them, 1124-1 Temples of tibe Mexicans base Clostlers and Conents, 1049

Tempelts yearely in China, and firence ones, 198.1.39.60 Tempetts cruell ones, in the Mountagnes of Cathay, 36.20 Laged, Tempefts extreme ones in Hilpaniola.

Tempelts viual at the new Moone. Tempefts rayfed by the Denill,974 Tenduch the Promince of the Tar-

tarian Presbyter fohn , 710. intro-Tenerife in the West Indies . the fine and diffance from Santa Martia, Villages about it, Mynes,

de. 885.40. Rinder. Tennis play of the Mexicans . she fashion of st . 1127. 40.

Tenfa, the Lords of R command all in Papon, 324.20. They are at Hetres apparent, 325.40 Tenth of the Spoples , due to the Primee of the Crim Tarcars,641 Tenths

THE TABLE

Tenths of Wooll, the great Cham batb. 88.22 Tents, the buge number and rich. neffe of the Tartarian Princes. 86.20 Tenure in Capite in Ruffia, 424. Tephelic or Tiflis, the Georgians chiefe Cuie. Terme for Law fuites in Illand. Terzas,the Armenian Christians in Pertia, Tettimoniall in the Ruffes Coffin.

Tezcalipuca, the Mexican Idell. bis great Foftimall the cause and Thucan or Thracian the Caftle,

where, 73.20 Thebeth, Chefmir, Senfim, and Bachfi, orders of South fayers su 81.1.20

Theeues, their Thumbes cut off, 264. Theeues bow punifbed in China,

Theenes all the way between the Dominion of the Mogores and Cathay, 311.312.6 c. Theeuerie, sgnominions to Pofteri.

Thett defenfed withall upon Confession before the Sacrament, 37

Theodofia er Capha the Citte m Taurica, 636. 20. Chriftiantie de ayed there, ibid. How farre from Conftantinople, Theologie of the Chinois. Theodulus of Acon bu foolish mef.

Sage to Mangu-Chan, 29. 10. Thiftles with Stalkes fours inches fquare, in the Indies, 897.60 Tholoman the Pronince, Gold plen-

tsfull there. Thomas Edge bis Voyage, 464.60. Hu returne, 466.1. And fecond Voyage, ibid. His fecond Voyage and Commiffien, 709. Hu third Voyage, 467.10. His Iland, ibid. His fourth Voyage, ibid. Another Voyage, 468.30. Another, 469.

Thomas Perez Ambaffadour to China, bow v fed, 267.20 Sir Thomas Button, confident to finde the Northwest Passage,848.

Sir Thomas Smith Embaffedour into Ruffia 747. His fately inserramment puts the Ruffes out of their Complement, ibid. Denies | Tiflis the Metropolitan Citize of the to give the Copie of bu Embaffage beforeband, 748.10. His Andience, ibid. His entertainement. 749. His fecond andsence, 750. 40. Takes bu leane and returnes for England, 751. 20. A meffage fent to bim from Demetrius

Sir Thomas Smiths Hand, 730.10. Abarren place. ibid. Ser Thomas Smiths Inlet, difconered to the furthest end, 725.

Sir Thomas Smiths Sound, the Latitude. Saint Thomas buryed in Malepur,

178.40 Saint Thomas bis Tombe, ft. a.ge things concerning it, 105. 1.40.

Thornsting Proxince in West Island Thorro King of Godand, Oc. Made and a God, 659.50

Thred made of Indian Nats, and here: Thred of Conies baire. 1132.47 Three gotten out of a Leafe . 557.10 Threshold the Tarars touch not,

. . \$4.20 Throne a most flarely one, 279.30 Throne of the King venerenced in his absence. 792,40 Thole, whether it bee Island, 643.

Thule w not 'fland, 655. 10. But one of the Brittith Hes, or Scandia, or Tylemarke in Norway, 655.50.marg. Thunder in 70. Degrees, 42 minutes

North. Thunder worshipped by the Mexicans, their odde opinion one,

1017-20 Thunderboles frequent in the West Indies, where, 885.1.890.40 Thunderbolt, one Beaft killed with it, exempts the Hoard from tri-87.50

Thurlday the Etymen, 664.50 Fibaldo de Vesconti di Piacenza. the Popes Legate at Acon, 67.1. Chofen Pope, and called Gregorie the centhe 67. 10. Senderb Preachers into Tartarie, ibid. iburon the Cape, on the West of Hispaniola, 859.10 Tickes of the water troublefome in

Tien tantec, what, w Chinefe, 201. | Titubul the Citie.

Georgians, Tiget denoures a man, .. ftory of it,

Tigres their battels with the Croco-Tieres of the Well Indies, can diflinguish an Indian from a Spa-

Tigres of India deferibed, bow biked a Tigre samed. 991 Tigris the bead of it. Timber bow Island is supplyed week 662.40

Timochaim in Perfia, 70. 50. 6 Tingoch the people described, 527. 30.551.40. Speake like Turkie-Cockes, ibid. Nations beyond them, 528. 10. Their dexterity to take Fowle, Fift, and Ventfon, ibil. Secalfo, 530. 20. Neere te China. \$43.60.0 546

Tingui the Citte. 96.40 Tinguigui the Cuie, Drunkenneffe well ouertaken there. Tinna the chiefe Citte of the Ruffes in the Samoieds Countrey, 526.

Tinlau a River, 257-30 Tipany in Lapland, Tides in the Sea, where none, 518.

Tides a difcourfe of them, 930.1. 10.30.de.

Tids their Course come from the North. Tides the chiefe Argument of the Northwest passage, 848.40, Tylemarke in Norway is Thule.

655.Warg. Time of the day finely declared, 400 Tyras, the Riner Nefter in Molda-

Tithes payed in Groneland, 520.1 Tithes payed in the West Indies.

Titicaca Lake, the greatneffe, thickneffe of the water, forts of the Fi-(bes, and Fowles, and the taking of them. 932.20 Title of the King of Sweden, 771. Of the Emperour of Ruffia, See Ruffian Emperour, or Emperour

of Ruffia, of the King of Poland, Titles the Chinois Ambition of them. the West Indies, then care, 975. Titles a great Merchandize in Ian

324.10 40 | Tlacaellec, a valiant Mexican Ge-

976.20 Tobaccho the bennuming qualitie, of it, vfed by the Mexicans in their Dinellish unition, and Phy-1043.40 Tobacco lighted by the Sunne at mid-night in Greeneland, 737.

Tobacco Pipes of Earth and Copper, 187.50. Cape Cod, ibid, 20 Graves and Rofes and Tobacco grow neere it, ibid. Discouered. 588.10 Tobalsko Caftle in Siberia, neere to the Dominions of the King of Alteene, 798. 1. How farre thence, through Alteene to China, ibid, 60. The Commedities

Tocoatican the Iland. Tocci the Mexicans Idell, a Tonngman warfbipped in a Womans skin, 1004.1.0 1031.30 Tococ what, in Chinefe, 306.10 Toera the Riner, nanigable after a Thanes

and Trading there, \$44.50. The

way from Pechora shither, ibid.

Tors with two Nayles, Tolle and Cuftomes payed at Bridges in China. Toll taken at Bridges in Ruffia

Tombe a ftrange one, 265. 6 266. Infcriptions upon them in China, ibid.go Tome Maftangue es Armenian, bis adventures.

Tomineios, an Indian Bird as [mall as a Bee or Fly, 965.20.977.10 Tomo Cafile in Siberia, bom farre from the Dominions of Altine and Cathaya, 798.0 527 Tongue of a Bird like a Quill, 980.

Tooles made of Cowes bones, where,

Tooles that cut Stone, made of a Comment of fand and blood, 1129. 40. And of Flint for Goldfmiths and Grauers, 1132.50 Tooma the new Citie, where, \$27.1 Tooth of a Grant found, as big ee as

a mans first. Torchillus the Iflander, bis last Will. Tortoifes of India, which take fif. teene men to draw them out of the water, the manner of taking them : they lay Egges and feede on [hore, 987.10 Tortoifes of the West Indies, defcribed : when good Meate, and when Porson. 976.40 Tortuga Ile in the West Indies, 866.30 Tofa an Iland. 25 3.20 Towers wonderfull ones in China. 204.60 Tower of ton Stories bigh, 328.20 Trades einen ouer in Ruffia, and Trades. none bound unto in China. 367.20 Tradefmen in Tartarie, worke one day in the Weeke for the Prince, Trading in Muscouie granted to the English, 221 Traditions made equall with Serip-Traditions & China. 106.00 Traditions learned by bears in Mexico, 1052. And in Peru, 1052-10 Travaile, the difficulties of is in the North and North-Eastern parts, 66.20.60 Transiling fifteene dayes together voon Bulbes. Frauailing by the Compaffe in Heland, 649.50 Travellors out of Ruffia punifit wub loffe of Life and Goods, and why, Travellors in Russia, what they must Transubstantiation imitated by the Denill in bis Idoll-Ceremonies

1941.10.0 mare.

2.20

274-20

Trapefunda the Citie.

the Pole.

Traytors punishment in China,

Treason ferfens all Priniledges,

Treason valuard of in Peru, 1055.

Treasurer of the bones of the Dead,

Treatic of a League betwies Ruffia,

Denmarke and Sweden againft

Tree borne in Procession, 227.20

Tree of the Sunne, where, 72.20

Tree, whose pith is Meale for Bread

104. The wood finkes in the wa-

ter. Lances made of it, &c. ibid. Tree of Silver, a most Artificiall one in Tartarie, 35.50. Deferibed. Trees that base hen fince Noahs Flood. Trees none in the frozen Countries of Noua Zembla, Lapland, &c. Trees in Peru, balfe of which yeelds fruits for one fixe Moneths, and the other fide, another, 961.50 Trees taken up by the rootes, er carried by Elephants, to the Great Chams Gardens, 87.70 Trees of the West Indies, loofe not their Leanes, 98 3.30. Not deepe rooted. Trees and Thickets of the West Indies,960.10. Huge Trees, bid. Trees, Fruites and Plants of West India. Trees bollow that will bold a bundred Tribunals stately ones. Tributes payed to the King of Mexico, fee page, 1080. Oc. Some preise Story about that, 1006.20 Tribute of the Ruffe, payed in Comwodities, Trigantine, his difcome fe of China Trimecau, aftrange Sell, 277.1 Trinidad Iland , difconered , the (bape, &c. 866,1.10 Trinity Harbour in Greenland. our Kings Armes fet up there. 722.40. And possession taken for bim, ibid. The Latitude and Variation. Trinitie fome mention of it, 397. Trinitie imitated by the Denill in Peru, Trondon the Towne in Norway. 618. 20. The King of Denmarkes feate, ibid. Saint Olaus the King burredthere. ibid. Tropickes, the canfes of temperature and babitableneffe betwixt them, 921.922. Conftant Brifes betwiet the Tropickes, 924. Wefterne windes without them alwayes, and why. 925.40 Tropickes, when most rayne within or without them, and the reason,

918.50. in margin. & 919. 20.

20. Canfes of temperature there,

Trumpa the kinde of Whale that

geelds the Sperma Cati, & Am-

194.30

471.50

Trumpets

Truth well rewarded.

ber Greece.

THE TABLE

Trumpets of the Cannibals of fhels of Weelkes. 992-20 Tiaritzna the Iland. 24:.60 Tucaman Pronince in the West Indies, bounds of its lurifdiction, Townes in it and their Latitudes. Mines, Wooll, Gilt-leasber, Hufbondry, Rivers, Ge. 897.40 Tudintu, a noble Kingdome \$5.10. Great trading there, ibid. Tufaune, a Tempest vinil in Cuina

Tuinians, a people of Cathay, 24. Tuinians opinion, that the Soule of enery thing, is the God of it, 41. 40. They will not base the ferrets of their Religion fearched into. 41.60. They are Manichees,

Tumblers in China. 302-40 Tumen in Tarcarie, the trade there, the way thither from Pechora in Ruffia, Tumen e Tartarian money worth ten Markes, 34-10 Tumultuous multiende, an example of them in Ruffia, 753.20 Tunall Tree of India, the france

growing of it, which beares fruit. and Cochinell, 957. 30. One su Mexico, growing out of a Mans beart, the Strange Storie of u, Tinall Tree, agame deferbed, with bis fruit, 1131.30 Tunas a West Indian frun, makes the trine like Blood, 984.40 Tundi or Bifbops in Iapon, 324.

Turffes in flead of Morter in Island 662. Two fores of Tutffes, innen. ter of Turffer, Turkes their manner of lineng 69.

Turkes trade into China, 362a10.
Their Commodities and gulling the China King, with a femile tribute, Turkie waffed by the Tartars, 119.

1. The Kingdome of it refused b, the Armenian, 119. 20. The weake Estate of st, in Rubruquis bis time, 51.60.6 52.1.10 Turkemannia the Country, 237. 1. Their manner of living and feeding, ibid. Turkemannia, inhabited by Turkes,

Grecians, and Armenians, 69. 40. All under the Tartars, ibid.

Turkie Carpets, Turkiffes where found Turlock Hanenm Illand, 647-50 Turquestan the Kingdome, 109. 20. Wonne by the Tartars, 114.

Tufce, what in Chinefe, 312.60 Tutelare Gods refeelled in China, Tutia and Spedie, where made and

Tuna good for the Eyes. third Twelte-dayer folomenties, 498,60, Kept lanuary the fourth in Ruffia 200

7 Achen the Country , Gen. tiles, aigats Straights and Iland Difconcred, 463. 20. Inhabited by the Somoeds, ibid. Impaffible for Ice,463.40. It ss an Iland, 250.

Vaigates Straightes whence fo full of Ice and floring Wood, 527.50. Sometimes open from the lee, 526.40. The Riners and Inlets about it, 545.1. The way thence to the Rener Obi, 550.60 Valgate or Wrygates, 477.60. A great Sea beyond it, ibid. An I. land South of it, 478.10, The Rocker by it, 479.1. The cleus.

tien, and Creatures there, ibid.

20. Neere to the Tartarian Sed,

ibid. The Course of Weygates, 480. 1. The Samoeds there freake the Ruffian Valaniand Valania, the people and Countrey of the Comanians, 11. 1. Where feated, and the extent of w,ibid. Called Alania by Ifi.

Vandals Beake the Sclauonian or Bohemia Tongue, Valignanus the lefuite, goes into India and China, 320.1. His Books of China; ibid. Goes to Lapon, ibid. Sends for Ricius, 320.40. Influmes Tefuites at Amacao. Carries Princes to Rome, Valour of the West Indians, 1025 Vapours nourish Plants, bow, 892.

20.0 mmare. Varella the Riner, 253.60. The Vari arcolini, Beatts that beare Furres, Turkin Armie overthrowne by the Variation of the Compage, in 57. Degrees 35. Minutes, 810.20. 740

50. In 55. Deg. 30. Min. 812. 20. in 55. Deg. 31. Mm. abid. 30. la 55. Deg. 0. Minibid. 40.
At the Nafe of Norway, 814.
40. By Fare Ile, ibid. 50. In 59. Deg. 50. Mm. 815.20. In 56. Deg. 10. Min. 822.30. In 59: Deg. 40: Min. ibidato, In 58.Deg. 30. Min. ibid. 60 Ju 59. Degrees O. Min. 823.10. In 58. Degr. 30. Mw. ibid. 24. In 62. Deg.33 Minuter ibi 140. de 63 Deg. 20. Min. 824. In 98. Deg. 36. Min. 836.20. In 59. Deg. 10. ibid. 20. In 57. D. orees 53. Min.828.20. In 57. Deg. 57. Min. ibid 49. In 58 Deg. 3. min. ibid. 50. In 56. Deg.o. Minutes 829.1. In 56.Deg. 48 min. 829. 30. In 65.deg-25.min.832.30. In 67.deg.a.min.833.20.ln 58. deg. 50 min. ibid. 40. In 57 deg. 20.mm.ibid.60. In 50 degr. 26. 10./n 5 8.deg 30.min. bid. 10./n 60.degr.10.min.ibid.40. In 60. deg. 10 min ibid. 60. In Buttons Iles, in about 62 Deg. 837.60 In 61 deg. 30. mm. 838.1. In 62. des 24 min 838.1. in 63.
des 24 min 839.10. Admirable france and sudden Variation nears the North-west Adjac.
844.30. Where the great of Variation in the world it, 847.1. In 37: Degrees, 23. Minutes, 589. 10. In 37-deg-45.minutes, ibid.1. In 38.deg-13.minutes, 588.60. In 39 deg. 11.minutes, ibid 50. In 42 deg. 56.min 586. 60. In 43. degrees, 56. minutes, ibid. 40. In 44. degrees, 27, min. \$85.10. In 44 degrees, 10. minutes, 584. 40. In 43. degrees 41.min.ibid.30. In 43. deg. 16. Min. ibid. 10. In 44. degra 58. min. 583.40. In 91. deg. 14. min. ibid. I. About the North Cape. 574.60. In 61.deg.14.minutes 567. In 74.deg. 15.min.700.20 In 76 degr. 50 minutes, 701-1. In 79 degrees, 15 minuts, 204-1. In 78. degr. 24 minutes, 705 Ja

61.deg.30.min.716.10. In 76.

deg. 55.min.ibid. 20. In 78. degil

24. MIM. 717. 1. /# 76.degreet 95.

www.717.50. In 77.deg.40.min.

719.40. In 69. degr. o. min. 720.

20. In 68, degr. 0.mm. 720.30.

In 67. degrees, 5 minutes, bid. 30

In 79. degrees, 34.min. 722. 90.

In 79. degr. 8. minues, 727:50.

In 71 degrees, 0.mm. 750,20

In 61. Degrees 40. Min. 812.

Compaffe.

Variath excellent in China, 354. 20-40. Whence IF W. 282.40 Varnich bitumenous and fbining, Valco Caluo his Fortunes, 277.40 Vales da Gama; firft Difconerer olebe Indies. 2 52.50 Vertices, Mellowers, Vallens ih Sweden, febiett to

Denmarke, 618 Vaine zhry in a Chinois Captarne 191.40 de. Vehcor what, in Russin, 244 30 Viders of Cowes and Mares, placed in the Tartar boufes, 4.30 Venemons Wormer none about

Cazca to Peru,

Venemous Apples of India, 985. Venezuela, in the Worl I dies, the diffance from Granada the new. sho Mines in it. The Harnefts in a seare, Commodifies which it Counts foorth, Towner first with -

biting, occusion of the Name, Vergeruz, a Citte to the West Indies, the Sunatton; the Latitude,

Veragua be the West Indies, the Lutende and Extent , Gold Moss, Soyles, Townes, Warres of the Indians, Ports, Rivers, Bases Points and their Laterades 881.884

Verspzz Pronince in the Well Indiesabe Site. Extent: Commo-Saltion Pitteres of Feathers, Beasts, Fift, Ruers, &c. 879.

Vermillion found in Silner Mines, 894.10. Quickefiluer getten out of at ibid. This Onickefiluer makes a por foneus colour in Pain-

Vermilion, feepage, 948.949 Veritagebe meafure in Roffis, 223. 60. 0 224. 30. About a mile 241.60 Verft of Ruffia, is three quarters of

an Englift mile. 414.30 Vessels of Whale finnes, to boyle 817.50 mente in, Veyles, mon ride in them in Pe-342.20

Veyles worne at Church in Nor-Veolita, a Coast Towne upon the Riner Ob or Oby in Tartaria.

Veorskai, Samoeds on the Ob, 80c. 1 Via Lactes called, The Hall of Heanen, Via Lactea, more bricht in the South parts ; blacke fots feene in Vinuella, the Sword-fift deferibed; 988.20

Victima, the Etymon of it, 1037. Victuals the price in China, 109. Victuals of the Mexicans, 1133.

Vicugnes a West Indian Beaff de-Cribed how Hanted : Cloath meanimable made of their Haire, bu tieft smeraigne for the Eyes, 967 20 00 ieils bow obfermed in Raina, 456. 30, There great Vigil, ibid. The Empereur their exter and

lyes mub bu Empreffe; 437. Villa Lohos, bis. Voyage to the Phi-Aipphace, 201 Viliges forfaken in Ruffig and Vilna in Lituania, Calnenifme there. Vancentius Beluacenfis bis Relânion of the Tartars, 58.40 Vineger made of the Soppo of a

Viners of West India, lespe up to bite, the dendineffe of their Poyfor, 975.50 Virginia, the excellency of the Ayre and Soyle, 852.30 The commodical wells of the Situatiwi. A Paffage that way to the

South Sea or Indian Ocean, Gc. Vision of a Labouring mean in Mexico. 1021 Visions of the Denill in Mexico, bow precured, 1043.20.30 Vilitations performed by fending Papers beforehand, 391.30. Ther tedionfaeffe, Vification of the Sicke, not ofed in Tartarie.

Visitors of Colledges, and other Officers in Chille, 184. 30. 40. Virzliputzli, the Denill-Idoll of the

Mexicans, bis Storie, 1002.

1002. His borrible Sacrifices. ibidi 20. His Image, 10,0.20. His Festimall day, 1040 Vladislaus Prince of Poland, ele-

Sted Emperour of R. Mia, 782. 40. 46. The Articles between him and the Rull's, 783.784. 785.786. Not to alter their Religion, to have one Romane Church in the Moscho, to Juffer the lewes Atll is Ruifa, not to Spoyle the Churchmen, or Tempe ralite, His Poles, not to bee Ind. ges in Courts, not to alter prinate men's conditions, 784. To contimue the former Pensions to Strangers, and Officers, to continue the League with Poland, Ininries to bee forgotten, Captines releafed, demolifhed Cities to bea repaired, 785. Merchants to bane free trade, Garrifon Townes to bee continued, or reflored to Ruffa. Vor, or Demetrius the Inspofter to bee flaine. Hu Wife tobe taken off Viadillans to bee Ribaptized in the R. fic Religion. Not to fend forreine Souldserimo Malco, 786. Hu An-(were to the former Demands of the Ruffrant, 787. Promilles to come in Per fon mio Rullis. The high Style of his Letters. Per-Clergies : sbreatens Rebels,ibid. The Articles confirmed in bie Name byethe Polifh Generall, 788.40. And affented unto by the King bu Father, 789. 20. Rejected againe by the Ruffes, His great defigne veterly dinerted by other Warres, 790. His

behalfe of him, an Accord made. Vinfles a Tartarian bord, 790, 10. 20.6 c. Severall names of them.

Pather fends another Armie in

ections or Annayntings of the Mexican Priests : with Porlen and Tobacco, a bideous Storie of 1043.10 Vneut. faire Women in Tartarie. for the Great Chans Concubines. 82. 50. The manner of their

Chaife and vlage, Vnicornes er Rhinocerotes, 93-Vnicornes, their description, 103. 40.0 104.I

Vnicornes borne, for the Ruffian Emperouri Staffe, 741.30. Coft fewen thoufand Markes, ibid.

Vnicornes (or Sea-fiftes) borne, [

Vnicornes, are but Fifter, 651.40. Vnicorne is a Fift, fore of them wbereabouts, 843. 60. & 846.

Vniuerfities in China, in what manner, 3 3 8.60. &c. 344.40. In

enery Mother Care, ibil. 345. Vnimerlitic in Tartary, 280.60 Vanuerficie of Mexico in the In-

dies, 871.50. Of Los Reyes, or Vobsko in Ruffia, belieged by the Pole, the Enemy repelled by Sury koy 424 cc. Suskoy thruit in-

to a Monastery and killed, ibid, Vochan the Pronince, Vogel Hooke, where, ... 569.49 Voisuod fignifies a General, 436.70 Volcans, or burning Mountainer; many in the West Indies, 870. 30. One melted a Caldron, 880. 60,891.20. Duters wanted and

de foribed, 933. Philosophicall deforibed, 933. Philosophicall defourse of them, 940. Thought to cause the Earthquakes, ibid. Volga a mighty Rust, 12.40. The Courfe of se, ibid. The deftance from Tanais,

Volga the River, called Rha or Biel. 523.30.fals into the Caftian fea, 3bid. The head and breadth of it, 16.1. Two shoufand miles long, 242.10. Fine weekes tranell en the banke of a ,18. It bath fenentie monthes. Volga, the Countrey about it con-

anexed, .5 231.60 Vologda se Ruffia, 214. The Commodities, the Houses described, 224.20. The may from thence to Mosco, bid. Hemfarre from the Mosco,

Vologda Riner in Ruffianthe bead. it falls into the Calpian Sea, 41 47

Vor the Ruffe Impoffer, the trou. bles raifed by bim. See Demetrius. Diners of that name preten-Vowes of wally made as Feasts, in Norway, 656.40 Vowes of Women for fruitfulneffe,

Voyces beard in Mexico before the Rune of their Empire, 1020 40; 60:0 1021 Vraha the Gulfe, how farre from the

Equinottial : the Morth Starre from theuce is fame very love,

Vrgence, a Chie, Vrnes of the dead Mexicans, their Lewels buried with the Afbes,

1029.00 Vtofci is Gold beaten into powder, 325.20. Curious enamelling with it, ibid. And Painting, 326,10 Viting Cuie, 224.1.0 243

VV Alachia, some places in it. Walking Copeanie in Ruffia, bis Walking Caftle in Ruffia, 438.10 Wall of China against Tamer-

lanes inmafions, 142.60.0 146. 40. Impreguable, 147. 20. The Guards, Guards, 798.40 Walt of China, described, the berebt. Materials Towers, Beacons, the

length, marker of Gates, 800.20. Wall of China, the building, deferi-

bed 268. Called Chanfancau. bid. Interrupred by Bile and Rivers, ibid. The Fortifications of that Wall on both fider, iBid. Manuelby Slaves or Condens they are fust hope, 273.20. They o farmathere fixe yeeres, 273:30. O The number there, ibid.

Wall of China, the length, de. 315. VI. C'in mary Aparticular Go wermour it bath. ibid. Wall three hundred miles long , 268

Walls of mighty bredib; 342.8' Walls of Towner have a Surneyw in China, Walls of Thefiles in the Indies, 897.

Wardhoule, the frongeft Hold in Finmarke, 21 2. Deferibed, 223.

Warpe, a Sea tearme, what 564. Warres of the Mexicans, mofth, to Labe Preforers for their Sacrifices :1039 20. The Ceremonies of dewancing it in Mexico, 1018.1 Weatfere of the Crim Tartars, 640.

Werfare the manner in Ruffia, 436. 437 Gc. Their Officers , Mufters Armes, Marchings, Provisions for the Field Daforpline, Enfigues, Chargings, Ambushes, Engines, Ordnence, Remerds, &c. 438 Watfare of she Weft Indiane, 99 2.

Wares growing on mens faces under the Equinoctiall, occasioned by eating of Fift, 889.10 Warwickes Forel and in America.

the Latitude, and the fenen I. lands by it. How the Land beares and appeares, 810. 50. The Inlets and fetting of the Currents abour is

Water; Why it is not mooned about wieh the Primum Mobile, 924. Water of the Sea, good against Pop-

Water Burfling foorth of the Earth, that definoid a Country, 900.1 Waters wonderfull ones in Ifland, that thrine Wood into Iron and Store, cure the French Difeafe, and other Marmailes, 647.648

Waters of the West Indies, of fenerall properties, Water freaming as it falls: 200 Nater warme mixed with the Wine

in the Sacrament in Rollia, and Water clarified with Allowe, 764.

Water alone, not dranke by the Tartars. Water producing loofiness, 72:1 Water compling probbes in the Eyes, 868:30. Belsened in tostore Touch, 868:40

Nater fall a few of all one, the defterate attempt of forme Spaniards to

Water-Hawkes in Hispaniola, 997-Watches, admired in China, 321.

Watch and ward, the manner in Cately, Watch and Ward duely in China, 395.20. A prese Order for u.

Watching all night at Churth 436.

Watnsfiordur Hanen in Ifand, Waxe boyling out of a Fountaine, Waxe Cavilles in China, 292.40 Way from Calcar to Catayof 142,

Wayer fours admirable met in the Way-Markes in Tartarie, 8-Weapons not worne by the Tablats,

639. Y. Nor by the Chillies Weaters of the West Indies, 968. Ale month and the tree the th

Warlouia on the River Viffula, 629 Weavers to China, - That Tally

Marriages. Wedne flayes faited by the Ruffians, 218.1. But upen a felfe rea-Wednesday the Etymon of u, 664.

We praife thee O God, wied m the Ruffian Service. 450.40 Weeding of Ruce by Duckes in China, 174.40 Weskes of the Mexicans of therteene daves. 1010.20 Weekes of yeares in Mexico, 1126.

Weight, all things fold by in China. Welchmens ancient fayling to the Weft Indies, a difcourfe of that 807.10

Wendouers Rolations of the Tartars. 60,20 Wennes in mens throates, by drinking bad water, 74.60

West, the Mahumetans surve towards in Prayer, & wby, 313.30 Weft Indies disided into two parts, 860.20, Vice-rey in each Dinifion, bid. How much of them vader the Spanish Dominion: 8 . 6. 39. They are not loyned to our World, 963 20, in marg. How Men, Beasts, and Famles . come first thinber, in Acostace indee-

962.964

West Indies, the Supreame Coun-Sell, Profident, &c. The number of the Archbishops, Bishops, Monaftaries, and Vnigerfities, bow the Clergie is maintained there. 908. Church gonernment, promfiens for Prebends , and other Church businesse 909. Names of all the Officers, 916: Orders for the goods of the Deceased, for Marred men, Spanish Inquiftion or c.910. Orders for the Supreme Counfell, 911. Indian Courts diners, 912. Officers, 913 Other Orders for Gonerement,

914. Laves, 913.00 c. Welt Indians aminified by the Spaniaris 996. 40 Troubled en their Religion, Westmen, who in the Norwegian fo geab. 657.30 Wexestes, fee Valents.

Whales fore, neary the North-west Pallage, 844.40. Difficulises of Whale monfrous one, taken in the

a Cart loade, bis Liver two Cart loade. to s. 737. O.C. Whale endangers a Ship, 571.20

Whale bu bigneffe, thickneffe, Finnes, &c. Desconered by bis owns spowting of water, the manner of Hunting and killing bim. How be renenges bimfelfe. He Bontes blood, How they take bis fat 470. The making of bis Oyle, 471.20. His Finnes bom taken, bid. Eight fenerall fors: of Whales, 471.40. What fores yeeld Oyle, Whale-bone, Sperma Cats and Imber-greece, and what, nothing ibid. And which is good meat, 472.10. The manver of taking him described in a

Mape, Whales eight forts of them. 710.20 Their Cenerall quatities of Oylo. Whales not afraid of Ships, 715.40 Whalesbure, 223. 1. Cry in ingendring,

Whales gine fucky to their young, 930.50 marg. Whale built within I fland, 649.60. The dwellers in them dreams of Shipperacke 650 Whale-filling beginn in Greenland,

While-fifbing an admirable moner, mebelnaies; / 931-30-40 Whale-fifbing in Gronchand, ere. Die 1C Whale killing taught vs by Biskay-

Whale Sound, be Lastende, 846,60 Whale Bay. Whay the Illanders drinke, 663.60 Wheat cheaps in Russia, 416.1.10 Wheat where in the Indies is will

not growe, and why .954.20. See Baruclents. Wheele of the Mexicans contact ning fifty two years, the Art of 1050.30

Whips and 14 hipping, the manner in China, 188.40. Worfe then banibid. # 202.40 Whipping with Cames, the manner. 319.50.0 396.30 Whips of Sinewes, or Whit-leather,

Whirle-poole of Malestrand, 222.

Whirl-pooles bunder fayling, where Whiftling Arrowes in Tartatie.

20.20 Whilling Language, men underfland one another in # in Mexico, 1124.10

He of Thane t described. His Eye | Whooses in China are all blinde,

176.50. And all Slanes, 182. 40. An Officer fet oner them.

Whoredomes unpunished in Ruffige

460.50 Whoredome for a morfell of Bread. 646.40. Scarce punished in Ife-

White, the Tartars bold for a figne of good lucke, 84.50 White the Festinal Colour of the Muscouites, 214. The mourning colour in China, 368.1.165.

White Creatures in cold Countries, White people ouder the Torrido Zone 848.20 White mon rarely borne in Mexico 1.128.40

White Caftle, & Citie in Catay, deferibed. 801.10 White Sea, 319.40. The breadth. it is upon Lapland, ibid. See 521.

Wiccings, are Piracies, Wichida in Ruffa made babnable. 432.50. The protellers of it ry-

Wichida she River, the Samoieds trade by it inte Ruffiz, 512. 20. The bead. Widowes in Tartarie Marry not,

and why. Willowes continuing fo, rewarded in China, 344.50. And bonen-William Baffin bis Vojage to

Greenland. William Helye bis Actions in Greenland, 468.469.6c. William Barents bis fust Vojage, 474. 20. Returnes into Holland, 478.10. Sets out againe, ibid. Returnes, 482. 30. His

third Voyage, 483.1. Dies by Noua Zembla, 508 William Bouchier a French Gold-Smith found in Tartary , 28.40. His christs Workman (hip 35.50 O 37. 40. How hee came this

ther, Williams Hand , the beight of the Sunne iberë. 474.60 Willoughbies Vorage to Denmark.

Willoughbie Land, 462.60. and 21 2. 90. It is Greene-land, e 79 Windowes first made in the Rosfes of boufes:

Winter nine Monethes long in Groneland, 651.30.0 609 Winter not knowne in fome places of the Indies, 921.60. Il bere, THE TABLE

listle or none is. 526.66 Winter fort and milde in Taurica. 627.1 Winter and Summer, where con-

trary to cars in Europe, 896. Wilcra the River his bead contre

Witch of Malinalco, ber Store, Witches of Peru, their Arts, 1041

Witches Sound in Greenland, the Latitude. Wyle of a Portugall, to fame bis

lefe, 1029.30
Wild beafts of China, 381.60
Wild beafts more acceptable in Sacrifice, then tame, 272.60 Winde in Winter, none in Tartary. and why, 27.1

Winde extreme hate in Ormuz : it fifted an edray, 71.50 Winds profesus from correspond 647-40

Win les fold to Son-faring men in Und, 653.0 646.20 Winde, fold to Marciners by the vitches of Lapland's Fable,

Windes temper the Fortid Zone, 921-40. Their difference; pro-perties, and Confes in generall, Windes which the Spaniaris are

to the West Indian and bow farze cach carries theme 924. O fa, to and from the Prolippines, ibid. A Reinforcial Difrante of Winds, from the 522 210 pag. 923 Strange official of Windes,

Wine of Datermelicimbis, 1936 SSE Of Indian Nuts, ibid. Wine of Rice, 366, 10 Drante ber otter: ibid

Wine of Peru, thetafte, 938.1 Wine of Palme-tree. 284.20 Wine made of the fapofatree, 947

Wine drinking beld a finne, 100.10 Wine-drinkers not admitted to bee Witneffes. 104.10 Wines the Chinois keepe as many as they are able, 359.60. They are bought and fold 367.50 Wines fis at table, and Concubines

waite, 394. They bring no portions, Wines, abe failers shand for after was and and or of the for fur.

Wives and fernants flaine to waite on their Master in the next World. 1920.20 Woden, in our Saxon Stories, is

Odinus. 664.50 Women the fairest in the World. Women in China bane me namet. -- 194.40. They are feldome feine.

They abe all the worke within derres to China. Women, Gettiffinitis and Carners in the West Indies, 112310

Women Warmers in the Indies, Women brought to bed, the Men

Women feld ar Sweden, 63 1110 Womens //mede in Grontland, the Lautade: Wonders of Hand; 647.648 Wood beld by the Chinois for an E-

o loment. Woo'l in Orman a bich will not en Wood making, 71.50

Wood fleating in the See , \$31. - Whence a seems, \$27,50 Wood former in the night, 983, 20 Wooing-preliens in Ruffia, 454

Wooll in China and world made o of u 1.28 Permer Tules, Wor, for Vor. Workes of Piety in China, 271, 30 to obferue in their Nanipations

World, the Mexicans beliefe of the mdefu, 1000.40 Wormes troublesome ones in the Indies, to facto

Morine breeding to many legs, 230

Of an Ell large bow got ears, bill.

Witting with Penfils and in Character, 13,2 18, 20 70 130. From:

the 13,2 18, 20 70 130. From:

the 13,20 humary to be 17, bill.

Yeneral, bird. Derritand, bild. Witing of China , from the right band to the left , and the lines drawe downsward, 384. Faire writing beil draws there, 340

Writing by Piltures in Mexico, Writing and reading in Peru by knots upon coards : and by Small flower open a Whelehow Wis. ting the lines up or downe, 1054

LONBOM,

Welt Indies, the Conneell, and bounds of it. 876.20. The Bilbon Sea removed thence to Guadalaista : when first disconcred . 4 fickly country, the latitude, 876,50 amabulis , Pilermes of lapon : their Confessions a fearefull Sto-

ry of sha, 1042.30 Kancheum in China deferibed, 334 q. 40 80.40 Randu the Citie, Katar and Xambalta for Catay and Cambalu,

Xauerius the lefuite , called the Indian Mottle , 317.39 Canemixed at Rome; 316.60. Boafts to bane connerted 300000 foules 217.30. His tranels, 218.1. Goes to Cangoxima in Iapon, or there

publifies the Decalogue, 318 40 Opposed by the Iaponian Priefts, ibid. Returnes to India to fetch au Ambasadour, gers bimselfe made the Popes Nuntio opposed by Aluarus, who falls into a Reprofie,

Cauters seale and behaviour towards bim, 319.1; Gets himfelfe tarried into China, where he is forfaken and dies, 319.10 Kauxan, a flower that makes bread

werteftidies, 954.10 Kylobalfamum sbas proserb,959

Minaleygrau, the Signiery, 281.30 Y Zabolica).

casta non il un YAik a River, 241.90 Yamfuthe River, the course of 11,340.401 Roines by thesmo fit.

Yara Cuyin Catay, Boolgo. De Paskentye Cities 16 10 240.40 Yehuni, the Mexican Priests that beard Confessions to 1041.60 Icare of the Tartars beginnes in Februgaisajo: The witho [4 lemme fe day about They facil the

mmber garmente 84 go. Their New yeares gifts, ibid. They recbon their yeares by Twelnes, and bow, Yeare in Roffia begins with September, 447.20. And the September before ours , 746.28. @

care when it begins in China, 392 Glemmed 394.1. Their Teare

begins in March. 10. How they make bread of it! Yeare begun in the middle of Januathe luice is poy for and the fub-TY IN Norway of old, 659.50 flance bread, where too bread is Yeare of the Samoieds is but balfe mest v[ed, 954.10 a Yeare. Yucatan Pronince in the West In-556 Yeares of the Mexicans. 1135.30 dies under the Gotternment of 1136.1. Their manner of recko-Mexico,its bounds, & 6. 870.20 ning them, 1050. The beginning, end and lest dayer of it, ibid. Yeare of the Peruians, 1051.1 A Peninful, the extent, tempes rature, no River in the mer metall. long lines people, Tommes & their Yeare in Peru beging in December. latitudes, &c. 87,19,20. &c. Yun loebe China Kang. 389.30 Xun de Nirbona by Leuer and Diffeente about the Tarrars, 63 Yedzo land : the lastinde, 842,50 Yeilding , the Ceremony of it, in Yeriqing, the Cerement of u, in Mexico. 1013,20,50 Yellow Mugals, 799,20 Yellow Ringrin China, the cente, 340,5 artificed prins, bid. 10000 lining in it. Promerbe of u, libd. Acatecas, the Promince in the Welt Indice, the me Silver Mywes; three Temmes of Spanie Yellow, the King of Chinois colour, ards in it : diftance from Guada. which none elfe may boof 392.50 laisea 876. And from Mexico. Yellow hats a great honer, 201.20 Other Mynes there Villages, coci Yem, the River, 235 20 Yempsa Towne, 224 I Yenitle or Tenifle Riner, fallesbin-Zacatula the Propines and Village cing the West Indicasthe latinde, to the Sea Naromzie, 546. 20. No force from China bid guanas a frança Well Indian kalif ibat but furgues and klimbe tross, ikin ban 3066,40 diffance from Mexico. Zamachie in Media, a Steple for Silke 44 2.300 Fin Ruffe trades obuber of gancianese the Eng-celling the Commodities, ibid. Tapratize me fland of the Moluccie;
A Taprobana, 900, 30 Emperours Tules, 793.30 Zauorat in Russia, the latitude, 549 Yopes the Riner in the Well Indies Youga Riner in Catay, falls into Zeilan she best Hand of the World the Blacke Sea, 800.40 104, 20. Tu Traprobani i to 10 Youth bow educated in Mexico. Zenam Hand, 2234 , NA 1064 Zeni, two Brethram their Fermas, Yes, a going Peoft if Peru the folem-bitte aftit On: 1140 7000 6.c. Ages Cherfoncius where 632 20 Com the Two was the in the Web Indian chairly such that Web Indian chairly such that I MEEDS, Salt made there, 820 Visanzare Whell Indian Sergens dehallunght for the Prench Poxe. Adopt, the westcan P. 1. 1 Ophina to the left and the lines Powers wie of the Water the Realist may for the struce given him over the hand of the Letter & In I think richt and an of the America. This printed action of the first of the firs New year or of travel. They rec-

the serve courte sand by final how here to we sail here for the serve to the serve

There were ! . Weigel A

tember, 447.20. eRedice Site renter before sars , 746.08. &

757.50

Zere, the Iland. Zichmun Prince of Frifland bis Sto. 610.00 Zielenfa Hards, 543.30.InReffia. Zikia the Cities Zipangu the golden Iland, 102.20 Taken by the Tartars, ibid. The Handers call Mangi, Chin, or China 102.50 Zodiake, as it is more freight, or mere oblique makes the dates or wights, of diners lengths,920.40 Zona Torrida, why in some places onder it, the raine fill fall in the afternoone,918.50.11 by fo much wader it, when the Sunne is bot-208,919.20, 10,40. Wby in fome places wader at there falls no raine, nor are any fprings, de. 919 60. Temperate in many places, in others bote, cold, oc. Artibe canfes, 920, 10, 20, 30 OT. Reacauses 930.10,20,30.07. Kehn-fams of the whost being britisher; 921. The besis being britisher; jet spraid: the greatest beate in the morning, and why, 921.50. We-flexive mindblowes soldome those, 913.40. Tris the greateft of the fine Zonesip 27. Why men fale under it from Eaft to West, and not backe of hime , 924.50. See ... Enanthings. cools it by wight, and the Sea-: winds by day, 926.10. Calmes often vuder it bid. Many Lakes under feme parts of it, 933.10. Meft Indies he vuderit, 994 1 to The Commeries buder it, art all billy of wby, 936.1 Torride Zone, well indabited of all the West Indies; and by white Men, and shop wol warlike? it is of the comperature of Spaine few .. V. CL 898.10,#8330 Zorzania, & Georgia Zubu the Iland,

LONDON, DEFINED ON Hilliam Standy Trans Faster fone; and arthe ligne of the Role, 1625.

Wine-utilities admi sectobee West or and reading in Perich.

Vives 412 Clinois keere 11 2 249 arther colle region ites

villes in a grad (meneral